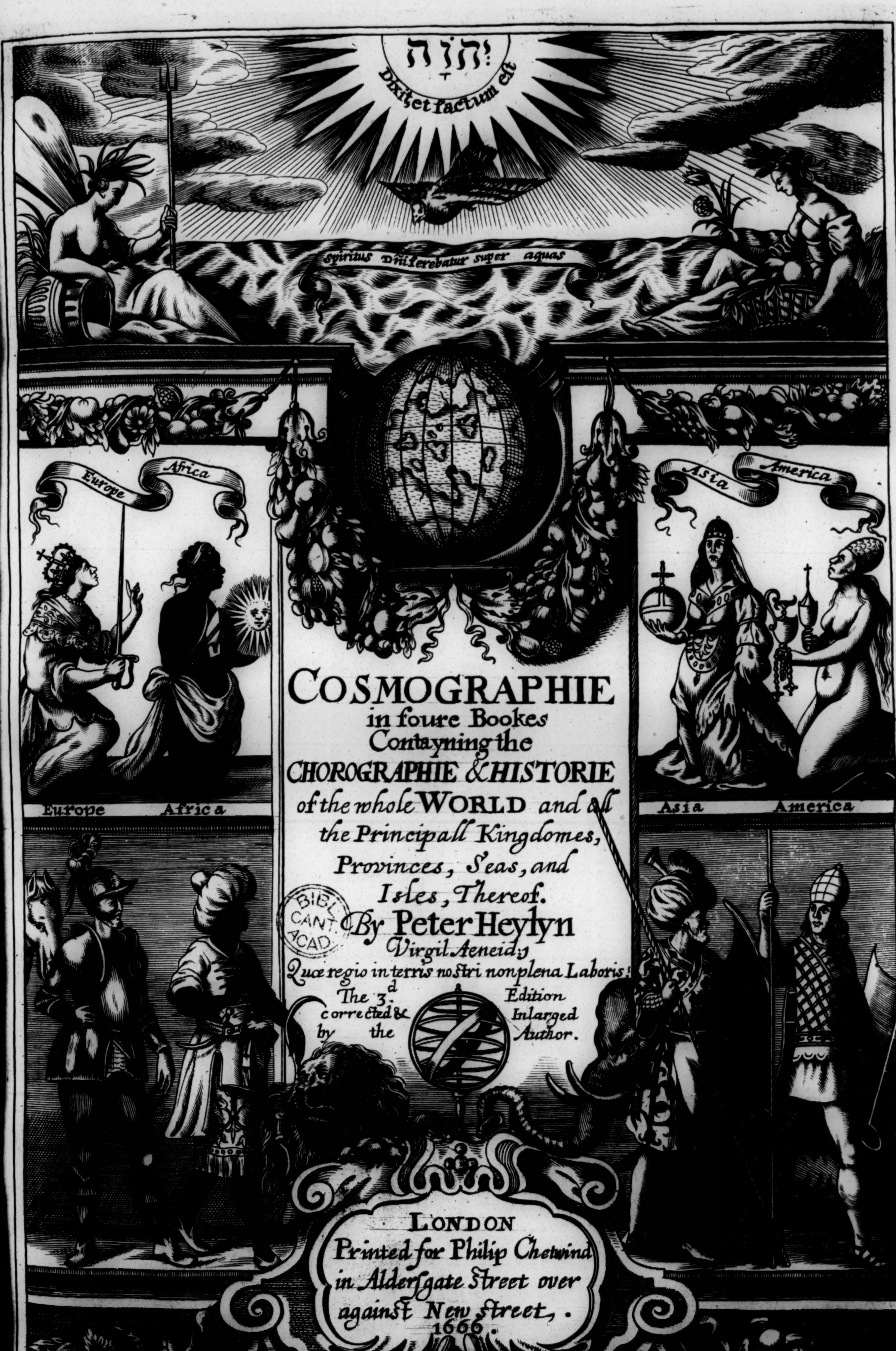
יְהֹוָה
Dixit et factum eſt
Spiritus Dñi ferebatur super aquas
Europe
Africa
Asia
America
Europe
Africa
Asia
America

COSMOGRAPHIE
in foure Bookes
Contayning the
CHOROGRAPHIE & HISTORIE
of the whole WORLD and all
the Principall Kingdomes,
Provinces, Seas, and
Isles, Thereof.

BIBL CANT. ACAD.

By Peter Heylyn

Virgil Aeneid 1
Quæ regio in terris noſtri non plena Laboris!

The 3d Edition
corrected & Inlarged
by the Author.

LONDON
Printed for Philip Chetwind
in Alderſgate Street over
againſt New ſtreet.
1666.

844:94

Schi: Lich: & Cosm:

COSMOGRAPHIE,

IN FOUR BOOKS:

CONTAINING THE

Chorographie and Hiſtorie

OF THE WHOLE

WORLD,

AND ALL THE

5-2-2

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

With an accurate and an approved INDEX of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Iſlands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Foreſts, *&c.* of any Remarque in the whole World; Much wanted and deſired in the former, and now annexed to this laſt Impreſſion, Reviſed and Corrected by the Author himſelf immediately before his death.

Acts 17. 24, 26.

Deus qui fecit mundum, & omnia quæ in eo ſunt; fecit ex uno omne genus hominum, inhabitare ſuper univerſam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.

BIBL CANT. ACAD.

Plin. in Proœm. l. 7.

MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Inſulæ, inſignes Urbes, ad hunc modum ſe habent.

LONDON,

Printed for *Philip Chetwind*, *Anno Dom.* M.DC.LX.VI.

Academiæ Cantabrigiensis
Liber

844:94

COSMOGRAPHIE
IN FOUR BOOKS.
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHIE
AND
HISTORIE
Of the whole
VVORLD,
And all the principal KINGDOMS, PROVINCES, SEAS, and ISLES thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

The Third Edition.

Acts xvii. 24, 26. *Deus qui fecit Mundum, & omnia quæ in eo ſunt; fecit ex uno omne genus Hominum, inhabitare ſuper univerſam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.*

Plin.in proœm.l.7. *MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Inſulæ, inſignes Urbes, ad hunc modum ſe habent.*

LONDON,
Printed for *Philipp Chetwind*, Anno Domini 1665.

TO THE READER,

The Authour rendreth this Accompt of his Undertaking and Performance in the following VVORK.

IT is a great complaint with many, that they want Time, either to undertake great matters, or to accompliſh thoſe they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not ſo much want as waſte it. *Non parum temporis habemus, ſed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle too much of our precious time, as he well obſerveth, *Aut malè agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or elſe things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want time convenient to perform thoſe duties, which are expected from us, in our ſeveral places. Nor have we only time enough to ſpend, but ſome time to ſpare; ſome privacies and retreats from buſineſs; ſome breathing fits from the affairs of our *Vocations*; and even of them, thoſe times of leiſure and receſs, we are to render an accompt in *Cato*'s judgment. *Otii reddendam rationem judicabat* Cato, as we read in *Tully*. In which accompt as all men generally are concerned, ſo I am intereſſed therein as much as any. For being by the unhappineſs of my Deſtiny, or the Infelicity of the times, deprived of my preferments, and diveſted of my Miniſterial Function (as to the ordinary and publick exerciſe thereof) I cannot chooſe but ſay, I have leiſure enough; the opportunity of ſpending more idle hours (if I were ſo minded) than I ever expected or deſired. And though, perhaps, I could have ſpent thoſe times of leiſure, which the change of my affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my ſelf, and more to the advantage of my private fortunes: yet that of *Cato* did ſo over-ballance me, that I was willing to do ſomewhat which might witneſs to enſuing times, how I had paſſed away thoſe hours, and imployed that leiſure. And when I was conſidering of ſome particulars within the compaſs of my power, and anſwerable to that ſmall ſtock of Books which I had recruited (mine own being taken from me, and diſpoſed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requeſted by ſome friends, of no common quality, to review my *Geographie*; to make it more complete and uſeful to an *Engliſh Reader*: my vacancy from buſineſs, uſed by them as an argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when firſt made, with neglect enough, my deſuetude from thoſe younger Studies, my great want of Books, the ſad complexion of the times, and the unhandſom entertainment which my endeavours for the publick had lately met with, ſeeming ſufficient to diſſuade me from the undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to enjoy my own; or to employ my ſelf in order to a *publick* ſervice, when not alone my private fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church was deſtroyed and diſſipated. But afterwards, being preſſed unto it by ſome Members of Parliament, whom I found loth to be denyed, and by ſome others of great rank, but ſuch different *Intereſſes*, that I wondred how they could all center upon the ſame *Propoſal*; I thought it at the laſt a more *Chriſtian* duty to ſatisfie the honeſt deſires of ſo many men, than to ſacrifice any longer to my own privacy and retiredneſs, to which I had intended to devote my ſelf. So I reſolved to venture on it, though well I ſaw, that my condition in ſo doing, might be reſembled unto that of the *Iſraelites* in the Land of *Egypt*; of whom the *Task-maſters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denyed them their accuſtomed allowance of *Straw* and *Stubble*. My caſe in this, not much unlike that of the Duke of *Alva*; Who, being under the diſpleaſure of the King of *Spain*, in quality of a priſoner, without the leaſt aſſurance of recovering the King's favour, or his own liberty, and yet employed in that Conjuncture, for the conqueſt of *Portugal*; was wont to ſay, *That he was ſent to conquer Kingdoms with Fetters on.*

And here I cannot but remember a pretty accident which befell me in the Moneth of *January*, An. 1640. at what time it had been my ill fortune to ſuffer under ſome miſapprehenſions which had been entertain'd againſt me, and to be brought before the *Committee for the Courts of Juſtice*, on the complaint of Mr. *Prynne*, then newly return'd from his confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, I confeſs, I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience; but moſt deſpitefully reviled and perſecuted with exceſſive both noiſe and violence, by ſuch as thronged about the doors of that *Committee*, to expect the iſſue; it being as natural to many weak and inconſiderate men, as it is to Dogs to bark at thoſe they do not know, and to accompany each other in thoſe kinds of clamors. And though I had the happineſs to come off clear, without any cenſure, and to recover by degrees amongſt knowing men, that eſtimation which before had been much endangered, yet ſuch as took up matters upon truſt & hear-ſay, looked on me as a perſon forfeited, and marked out for ruin. Amongſt others, I was then encountred in my paſſage from *Weſtminſter* to *White-hall*, by a tall bigg Gentleman, who thruſting me rudely from the Wall, and looking over his ſhoulder on me in a ſcorning manner, ſaid in an hoarſe voice theſe words, *Geographie is better than Divinity*; and ſo paſſed along. Whether his meaning were, that I was a better *Geographer* than *Divine*; or that *Geographie* had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of men, than *Divinity* was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But ſure I am, I have ſince thought very often of it, and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on thoſe younger Studies, in which I was reſolved to have dealt no more; and thereto, in the Preface to my *Microcoſm*, had obliged my ſelf.

And it is poſſible enough, that in reſpect of that general promiſe, I may lie under the cenſure of inconſtancy, and breach of *Covenant*, in that I had ſolemnly declared in the aforeſaid *Preface*, that the Reader *ſhould not fear any further inlargements, which might make him repent his* (then) *preſent Markets; that it had received my laſt hand, and that from hence forth, I would look upon it as a ſtranger onely.* But it was meant withall, and expreſſed accordingly, unleſs it were for the *amending of ſuch Errors, of which, by the ſtrength of mine own judgment, or any ingenuous information, I ſhould be convicted.* And *Errors*, I muſt needs ſay, I have found ſo many on this laſt peruſal, and thoſe not onely *verbal*, but *material* too; as not onely free me from that *Obligation*, but did oblige me to a further *review* thereof. For, being written in an Age, on which the pride of youth and ſelf-opinion might have ſome predominancies, I thought it freer from miſtakes than I ſince have found it: And thoſe miſtakes, by running through eight Editions (ſix of them without my peruſal, or ſuperviſing) ſo increaſed and multiplied, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that in caſe the importunity of friends had not enforced me, in a manner, upon the employment, the neceſſity of conſulting my own fame, and leaving the Work fair behind me to ſucceeding Times, would have perſuaded me in the end to do ſomewhat in it. Which, though the laſt, was not the leaſt of thoſe inducements which inclined me to the undertaking of this preſent *Work*.

Having thus plainly and ingenuouſly laid down the reaſons which did induce, though not incourage me unto this performance: It is now fit I ſhould declare what I have done in it, and know what the Reader may expect from ſo great inlargements. And firſt, the Reader is to know, that my deſign originally, was only to look over the former Book, to give it a *Review*, to purge it of the *Errors* which it had contracted, and not ſo much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more ſeriouſly conſidered of it, I found ſufficient reaſon to change that purpoſe, to make it new, both in form and matter, and to preſent it to the world with all thoſe advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived ſhould the benefit be which might from thence redound to thoſe who ſhould pleaſe to read it: And I would willingly ſo fain comply with all expectations, that the ſhort Taper of my life ſhould give light to others in the conſuming of it ſelf; *Non nobis ſolùm nati ſumus*, may well become a *Chriſtian*'s mouth, though an *Heathen* ſpake it. But if all expectations be not ſatisfied in the completeneſs of the *Work*, as I fear they will not, I deſire it may not be aſcribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties which I was to ſtruggle with. Books I had few to help my ſelf with of mine own; nor live I near ſo rich a *Clergy* (moſt of the Benefices of theſe parts being poor and mean) as to ſupply my ſelf from them with ſuch commodities. The greateſt helps I had, was from *Oxford-Library*, which, though but nine or ten miles off from my preſent dwelling, yet the charge and trouble of the journey, with the loſs of time, made my viſits to that place leſs frequent, and conſequently the Neighbourhood thereof leſs uſeful to me, than the generality of the deſign might well comport with. So that when all things are conſidered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondred at, by an equal Reader, how I could come to write ſo much, with ſo little helps, upon a ſubject of ſo large and diffuſed variety, than that in any part thereof I have writ too little. And to ſay truth, the Work ſo proſpered in my hand, and ſwelled ſo much above my thought and expectation, that I hope, I may with modeſty enough uſe thoſe words of *Jacob*, *Voluntas Dei fuit, ut citò occurreret mihi quod volebam*; The Lord God brought it to me, as the *Engliſh* reads it.

In the perſuance of this *Work*, as I have taken on my ſelf the part of an *Hiſtorian*, and *Geographer*; ſo have I not forgotten that I am an *Engliſh-man*, and which is ſomewhat more, a *Church-man*: As an *Engliſh-man*, I have been mindful upon all occaſions to commit to memory the noble Actions of my Countrey; exploited both by Sea and Land, in moſt parts of the World, and repreſented on the ſame *Theaters*, upon which they were acted. And herein I have followed the example of the great *Annaliſt*, *Baronius*. Who pretending in that great and laborious Work, a ſincere Hiſtory of the Church, and no more than ſo; yet tells the *Pope* in his *Epiſtle*, that he principally did intend the ſame, *pro Sacrarum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Autoritate* Romanæ *Eccleſiæ*; to manifeſt therein the Antiquity of ſuch Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this day are taught and exerciſed in the Church of *Rome*. And ſo much I may alſo ſay of my ſelf in this performance, though without any by-deſign to abuſe the Reader, that though the *Hiſtory* and *Chorography* of the World be my principal buſineſs, yet I have apprehended every modeſt occaſion, of recording the heroick Acts of my native Soil, and filing on the Regiſters of perpetual Fame the Gallantry and brave atchievments of the People of *England*; Exemplified in their many Victories, and ſignal ſervices in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Scotland*, *Belgium*, in *Paleſtine*, *Cyprus*, *Africk* and *America*, and indeed where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great zeal and piety in converting to the Faith ſo many of the *German* and Northern Nations; *Franconians*, *Thuringians*, *Haſſians*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, *Friſons*; as alſo amongſt the *Scots* and *Picts*, together with thoſe of *Lituania*, and the People of *Norwey*; by that means more inlarging Chriſt's Kingdom than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to record the Actions, ſo have I been as careful to aſſert the Rights of the *Engliſh* Nation: inherent perſonally in their Kings, by way of publick intereſs in the Subjects alſo; as the whole body doth pertake of that ſenſe and motion, which is originally in the Head. And of this kind I reckon the true ſtating of the Title of the Kings of *England* to the Crown of *France*; demonſtrating the Vaſſallage of the Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*; vouching the legal Intereſs of the *Engliſh* Nation, in right of the firſt Diſcovery or *Primier Seiſin*, to *Eſtotiland*, *Terra Corterialis*, *New-found-land*, *Novum Belgium*, *Guiana*, the Countreys near the *Cape of good Hope*, and ſome other places, againſt all Pretenders: inſinuating the precedency of the *Engliſh* Kings before thoſe of *Spain*; their Soveraignty and Dominion in the *Britiſh*

Ocean, with the great benefit which might from thence ariſe unto us, invaded and almoſt ingroſſed by the *Hanſe* and *Hollanders*. And yet there is another thing which ſpeaks me more an *Engliſhman*, than all theſe together; which I ſhall fall on ſoon enough, and indeed too ſoon, the ſadneſs of the ſubject being well conſidered.

Next, as a *Church-man*, I have taken more ſpecial notice of the antient and preſent face of *Chriſtianity*, in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the *Heterodoxies* and opinions of thoſe ſeveral Sects into which it now doth ſtand diſmembred. By which it will appear moſt clearly, amongſt other things, that the Doctrine and Government of the Church were of equal ſtanding; that this Government was no other than that of *Biſhops*; and that whereſoever *Chriſtianity* did find any admittance, *Epiſcopacy* was admitted alſo as a part thereof: the Goſpel being in moſt places firſt preached by *Biſhops*, or growing into eſteem and ſtrength under their Authority. And it is found on theſe *Recherches*, that as *Epiſcopacy* was co-æval with the Church it ſelf: ſo the *Subordination* of *Biſhops* to their ſeveral *Primats*, and the *Coordination* of thoſe *Primats* among themſelves in the common Government thereof, was of ſuch antiquity (as being ſettled and confirmed in S. *Cyprian*'s time, who flouriſhed in the year 250.) that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it. *Debere* Epiſcopos *in commune* Eccleſiam *regere*, is a noted *Maxime* in S. *Hierom*; but practically true in the *Communicatoriæ* and *Formatæ*, of the elder Ages: Which happy courſe, had it been preſerved, *Epiſcopacy* had been ſo far from being *made a ſtirrup for* Antichriſt *to mount into his Throne*, as the *Smectymnuans* falſely charge it; that it had ſerved rather as a *Martingal* to have kept him down from lifting up his head too high above the reſt of his Brethren. And that this courſe was not preſerved, came not intentionally from the *Popes* (for that by *Antichriſt* they meant the *Popes* of *Rome*, is a thing paſt queſtion) but from the Inundation of the barbarous Nations: though, I confeſs, the *Popes* were apt enough to make the beſt advantage of thoſe various Accidents, which the diſtreſſes of the Church did repreſent unto them. For by the overflowing of the barbarous Nations, *Chriſtianity* was either quite extinguiſhed, or the authority of the *Primates* troden under foot; or that intelligence and commerce which had been antiently amongſt them, interdicted on good reaſons of State, by ſuch *Heathen* or *Mahometan* Princes, under whom they lived. And then how eaſie was it for the *Pope*, in the new planting of the *Goſpel* in the Weſtern parts (done either by his Miniſters, or by his incouragement) to give unto the *Biſhops* of his own appointing ſuch a limited power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his commands, and afterwards to leſſen their Authority, as he ſaw occaſion, by granting large *Exemptions* to Monaſteries, Convents, and Cathedrals; with *Juriſdiction* over the *Parochial* Churches which belonged unto them? So that it is moſt evident in the courſe of Story, that the *Popes* never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superſtitions and Novations on the Church of CHRIST; till they had weakned, by degrees, the *Epiſcopal* power. Followed in that deſign, though on different ends, by *Wickliff*, and ſome others in the Ages ſince; who have driven on their private projects, under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Epiſcopacy*, as it was coæval with the Church of CHRIST, ſo was it the beſt and ſtrongeſt Butreſs in that ſacred Building. The weakning or ſubverting of which Primitive Order, did either proſtitute the Church to the luſt and tyranny of that proud Uſurper, or expoſe the Patrimony thereof unto ſpoil and rapine; or finally, ſubject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiouſneſs of *Heterodoxies* and confuſed *Opinions*. But I fear I have digreſſed too far in this ſpeculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact, in giving unto every Province its peculiar bounds, in laying out their ſeveral Land-marks, tracing the courſe of moſt of the principal Rivers, and ſetting forth the ſituation and eſtate of the chiefeſt Towns; and did once think of beautifying the *Work* with as many Maps as the ſeveral States & Kingdoms which are here deſcrib'd. But upon further conſideration, how much it would increaſe the Book, both in bulk and price, and conſequently make it of leſs publick uſe than I did intend it; I laid by thoſe thoughts, and reſted ſatisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World: by which the Reader may diſcern how each Countrey lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much leſs all the Towns and Cities which are here expreſſed; and on the other ſide, may meet with many Towns of inferiour note, which are here omitted. And herein I have took ſome pains in ſearching out the firſt Inhabitants of each ſeveral Countrey, as far as I could ſee by the light of Letters, or go by probable conjectures; in finding out the place of ſuch antient Cities as are now decayed, and eaſily viſible in their ruines; and adding to ſuch Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Original names. A thing as neceſſary to the underſtanding of the Hiſtories of thoſe elder times,as the knowledg of the preſent names is to the more delightful reading of our Modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note,fit to be ſpecified and inſiſted on in a Work of this nature; yet would I not have the Reader look for ſuch a punctual enumeration and deſcription of them, as he may meet withall in thoſe who have written the *Geography* of ſome Countrey onely; or think himſelf unſatisfied in his expectation if he find not here the ſituation and affairs of each Town of Warr, or the Quartering place of every Company or Troop of Souldiers, which are preſented to him in the *Weekly News-Books*. In all Countreys there are many places which either by advantage of their ſituation, or ſome preſent exigency of affairs, are fortified and made Towns of Warr; or otherwiſe remarkable for ſome ſignal battel,in theſe late buſtles and commotions of the Chriſtian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and conſequently, not within the compaſs of this Diſcourſe: and yet,perhaps,may grow as famous and conſiderable,in the times to come, as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that ſhall think the Work imperfect (though I confeſs it to be nothing but imperfections) for ſome deficiences in this kind, may be likened to the Countrey-Fellow in *Ariſtophanes* (if my memory fail not)who picked a great quarrel with the Map,becauſe he could not find where his own Farm ſtood. And ſuch a Countrey-cuſtomer I did meet with one, a ſervant of my elder Brothers, ſent by him with ſome Horſes to *Oxon*,to bring me and a friend of mine unto his houſe; who, having loſt his way,as we paſſed through the Foreſt of *Whichwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Tract, did very earneſtly intreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him paſt the Woods to the open Fields. Which, when I had refuſed to do, as I had good reaſon, alleging that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him; *That's ſtrange*,ſaid he, *I have heard my old Maſter your Father ſay,that you made a Book of all the World,and cannot you find your way out of the Wood?* Which being ſpoken out of an honeſt ſimplicity,not out of any pretence to wit,or the leaſt thought of putting a blunt jeſt upon me, occaſioned a great deal of meriment for a long time;but I hope to meet with no ſuch Readers. The greatneſs of the bulk,and conſequently the price,makes me ſomewhat confident, that none but men of judgment and underſtanding, will peruſe theſe Papers: and ſuch as they will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a general Diſcourſe will fitly bear. Perfection and exactneſs is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is obſerved by *Ariſtotle* in the ſecond Book of his *Ethicks*, ἐφ' ὅσον ἡ τοῦ πράγματος φύσις ἐπιδέχεται, as far forth as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And ſo much, if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reaſon be expected from me. To look for more, were as improper and abſurd (in the words of *Ariſtotle*) as for an *Artiſt* to expect Tropes of *Rhetorick* from a Mathematician, or Demonſtrations from an Orator.

Laſtly,as an *Hiſtorian*,I have traced the affairs of each ſeveral Countrey from the firſt Inhabitants thereof (ſuch as the *Latines* call *Aborigines*, and the *Greeks* Αὐτόχθονες) till theſe later times. Which that I might be ſure to do on a good foundation, I have took more than common care, to ſettle all the firſt Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*)in their right Plantations: and that too in the way of an *Introduction*,that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs with the leſs diſturbance. The reſt of their *Occurrences* I have ſummed into ſo ſhort an *Abſtract*,as may be uſeful to the learned in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the leſs knowing man, in the way of a *Tutor*: Brevity in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but ſo as to avoid all obſcurity alſo. Nor have I onely kept my ſelf to the Story of Kingdoms, or of the great *Signeuries*, Eſtates, or Nations, which are or have been of the greateſt conſideration in the ſway of the World; but looked on the Eſtates of ſuch Dukes,Earls, and inferiour Princes, as in their times have had the Government of thoſe parts which gave Title to them; whoſe actions and ſucceſſors are diſtinctly ſpecified, and all ſuch alterations noted,as have hapned either in the ruine of ſuch Eſtates,or the tranſlating of them from one Houſe to another. The Catalogues and Succeſſions of which Royal and Illuſtrious Families, I have drawn down unto the year 1648. towards the expiring of which year, I began to ſet my ſelf upon this imployment. And there I fix as on the top of ſome dreadful *Precipice*, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of ſuch a nature, that either to ſpeak of them, or to hold our peace,is alike unſafe. In ſuch a caſe it is beſt keeping at a diſtance.For though truth be the beſt Miſtreſs which a man can ſerve (*Magis amica veritas*, ſaid the great *Philoſopher*) yet it is well obſerved withall, that if a man follow her too cloſe at the heels, ſhe may chance to kick out his teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as alſo out of that compaſſionate affection which a true *Engliſh-man* ought to bear his native Countrey, although in my approaches towards theſe preſent times, I have took notice in ſome other places of ſuch battels, ſieges and ſucceſſes in the chances of Warr, as have hapned in theſe later days: I have forborn to take the leaſt notice of thoſe Tragedies of bloud and death which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confeſs,that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the Warrs amongſt our ſelves: in which there have been more pitched fields, more ſtrong pieces taken, more notable traverſes of State, and exploits of Warr, than all the World can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *Engliſh* bowels to pleaſe my ſelf in the recital, or to look back on thoſe unfortunate Adventures which I ſhould rather chooſe to cover with the *Act* of *Oblivion*, or bury in the grave of perpetual ſilence. How gladly I could have recorded theſe exploits of Warr, had they been exerciſed on a ſubject more proper for them; my willingneſs to take notice upon all occaſions, of the actions and atchievments of the *Engliſh* Nation,will bear witneſs for me. But the employing of that valour againſt our ſelves, as if not to be conquered but by one another,ſtrikes ſuch horror in me, that I cannot think thereof without much affrightment, nor intimate thus much of it without great *reluctancies*. I fear it may be ſaid too truly of our late embroilments, as the Hiſtorian of the Civil Warrs betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*; *Cauſa hujus Belli eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*;that they were principally occaſioned by a ſurfet of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own proſperities; and that that Prayer and paſſage in the publick Liturgie (*Give peace in our time O Lord*) did not reliſh with us; how happy had it been,if we had found ſome other field to have tried our valour in? and made ſome forein Countrey that *Aceldema*, which ſo fatally was made at home? The diſhonour that we ſuffered at the Iſle of *Re*,when beat thence ingloriouſly by the *French*;the forcible & long detention of the *Palatinate* by the power of the *Spaniard*; the barbarous butchery at *Amboyna*, and the beating up of the *Spaniſh* Fleet within the protection of our Caſtles,by thoſe of *Holland*; the inſolencies of the *Scots*,and the rebellions of the *Iriſh*,might well have ſtirred ſome indignation in an *Engliſh* breaſt. And had we fought upon thoſe ſcores,or on none but them,our victories had deſerved the honour of a ſolemn *triumph*, denied by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civil Warr: But our infelicity (as it ſeems)was like that of *Rome*,in following thoſe unnatural Wars with ſuch animoſities; when the unrevenged death of *Craſſus*, the bloud of ſo many thouſand of their ſlaughtered Citizens, and the ſhameful loſs of ſo many of the *Roman* Enſigns, ſhould rather have invited them to the conqueſt of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which thus feelingly the Poet;

Cumque ſuperba foret Babylon *ſpolianda Trophæis,*
Bella geri placuit, nullos habitura Triumphos.

And when proud *Babylon* ſhould have been conſtrain'd
To give us back again our Enſigns gain'd;
We rather choſe ſuch Quarrels to perſue,
For which no *Triumph* could be juſtly due.

But ſuch is the condition and viciſſitude of humane affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much leſs of certainty. The greateſt Monarchies of the World, the *Babylonian*, *Perſian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their periods, nothing remaining of them now, but the name and memory. And what is now become of thoſe mighty Cities of the Eaſt, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Ecbatana*, *Suſa*, with the reſt mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Claſſical* Authors? Are not their very ruines now become inviſible? Where are the puiſſant Families of the *Achæmenides* of *Perſia*, the *Seleucidæ* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolemies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæſars* of *Italy*, the *Merovingians*, and *Carolovingians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets* of *England*? Are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by benefit of Story, and ſome antient Monuments? And if it be ſo, as it is, with the greateſt Monarchies,the moſt mighty Cities of the World, we muſt not think that ſmaller Kingdoms and Eſtates can either be ſo evenly ballanced, or ſo ſurely founded, as not to be obnoxious alſo to the ſame viciſſitudes. And being that ſaying of *Optatus* is moſt undoubtedly true, *Eccleſia eſt in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Common-wealth, we muſt not hope to find it in a better poſture than the Civil State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it ſubſiſts and flouriſheth. The Church muſt needs miſcarry in the ruine of the *Civil State*, and may miſcarry many times, although the *Civil State* receive no ſuch alterations. Compared for this reaſon to the Moon by the antient Fathers, who had obſerved her in her prime, in her Increaſes and her Full; and finally, had not onely ſeen her in the *Wane* alſo, but ſometimes too under ſome horrible *Eclipſes*. Which various condition of the *Militant* Church, the Scriptures and ſucceeding Stories have ſet forth ſo fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonſtrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philiſtins*, the Temple deſtroyed by the *Chaldæans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apoſtaſie of ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a ſhort time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and eſtate of the *Jewiſh* Church. And find we not the ſame for the *Chriſtian* alſo, in the removing of the *Candleſtick* from the *Aſian* Churches; and making them, together with thoſe of *Greece* and *Egypt*, and all the flouriſhing Churches in the Eaſt and South, to languiſh and decay remedileſly under the mercileſs incroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He muſt be more than blind that ſees not, more ſavage than thoſe mercileſs men that grieves not, at their ſad condition: but a dead member, at the moſt, of Chriſt's myſtical Body, who feels not in himſelf the ſufferings of thoſe wretched *Chriſtians*.

If now we look into the cauſes of that deſolation which hath hapned in the Civil State of thoſe mighty Empires; to what can we impute it but their crying ſins? the pride of the *Babylonians*, the effeminacy of the *Perſians*, the luxury of the *Greeks*: and ſuch an aggregation of vices amongſt the *Romans* (or Weſtern *Chriſtians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a ſcandal unto *Chriſtianity*. *In nobis patitur* Chriſtus *opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex* Chriſtiana *maledictum*, as the devout *Salvian* then complained. Thus alſo in reference to the Church, did not the Idolatries of the ten Tribes haſten in the *Aſſyrians*? the ſhedding of the bloud of ſo many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldæans* firſt, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do we not find the *Arianiſm* of the Eaſtern Churches to uſher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatiſm* of the South to have ſet open a wide Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianiſm*, as ſoon almoſt as entertained amongſt the *Britains*? If ſo, as moſt undoubtedly it was in the days of old, why ſhould we think, but that the Superſtitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the ſacrilege and faction of the Churches of the Reformation, ſhall at the laſt receive the like Retribution: Or that the Divine Juſtice is ſo faſt aſleep that our ſins muſt cry as loud as the Prieſts of *Baal* did unto their God, before it be awakened by us? Aſſuredly we are no leſs ſinners than any of thoſe on whom the *Tower* of the Divine vengeance hath ſo heavily fallen, whoſe bloud the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their ſolemn & religious *ſacrifices*: and therefore have no cauſe to hope, but that *unleſs we do repent*, we ſhall likewiſe *periſh*.

The ſerious conſideration of all theſe particulars hath made thoſe alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongſt our ſelves, the leſs ſtrange unto me. For, is there any of theſe *things whereof it may be ſaid*, Ecce hoc eſt novum, *Behold, this is new? Eccleſ.* 1. 10. Have they not been already in the Times before us? Do we not find it poſitively affirmed by the wiſeſt man that ever was, *That which hath been, is now, and that which is to be, hath already been; Nihil enim novum eſt ſub Sole*, for there is no *new thing* under the Sun, *Eccleſ.* 3. 15. and 1. 11. And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably ſay thus much of my ſelf, that the obſervation of the fall of ſo many great and puiſſant Empires, the Extirpation of ſo many mighty and renowned Families, the deſolation of ſo many flouriſhing *Chriſtian* Churches, as the compoſing of this Book did preſent me with (though formerly no ſtrangers to me in the courſe of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my Soul under the mighty hand of God, than either the ſenſe of my misfortune, or any other moral conſideration which had come before me. And I could wiſh the Reader may receive ſo much benefit by it (beſides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them)

them) that the mighty man may learn hereby, not to glory in his great ſtrength, nor the wiſe to glory in his wiſdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great deſigns. Let the great Leaders of theſe times in the Art of Warr, conſider the ſad ends of *Joab* the General of *David*'s, and of *Beliſarius* the Commander of *Juſtinian*'s Armies: whereof the one was ſlain ingloriouſly at the *Horns of the Altar*, after all his ſervices; the other forced to begg his bread at the *Gates of the Temple*. Let the great Maſters of wit and *State-craft* have before their eyes, the unſucceſsful ends of *Achitophel*, the *Oracle* of the times he lived in; and of *Cæſar Borgias*, propoſed by *Machiavel* for the pattern of a politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent hands upon himſelf, beauſe his *Counſel was not followed*; the other, after the defailment of all his projects, and a long impriſonment to boot, forced to flie his Countrey, and ſlain obſcurely in an Ambuſh. Let all men lay unto their hearts, the ebbs and flouds, thoſe alternations and viciſſitudes, to which all humane power is ſubject; the ſlippery foundations of that might and greatneſs, which is not laid upon the Principles of Juſtice, and regulated by the *Maximes* of Chriſtian Piety; and that even thoſe which have dominon over others, have a God too above themſelves, to whom they are to render an accompt of all their Actions. Not ſuch a God as that of *Lewis* the 11. of *France*. Of whom it is reported, that he wore a Leaden Medal in his Bonnet in the form of a *Crucifix*; which, when had cauſed any man to be killed whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands and kiſs it, deſiring it to pardon him that one murther more, and it ſhould be the laſt which he would commit. Such mockeries as theſe may be well put on a *Leaden God*, but the God of Heaven and Earth will not be ſo *mocked*; who being *totus oculus*, and *totum lumen*, as the Father calleth him, can eaſily diſcern our intents and purpoſes, notwithſtanding thoſe diſguiſes which are put upon them; and ſee the nakedneſs of ſin in its uglieſt ſhape, though apparelled with the *Fig-leaves* of the beſt pretences, which the ſelf-deceiving wit of Man can patch up together. God is the ſame God now as in former times, *Primus ad extremum ſimilis ſibi*, Yeſterday, and to day, and the ſame for ever; and will not put up thoſe affronts which the impieties of men do afflict him with; though in regard of his great patience and long-ſuffering, they may flatter their poor ſouls, and ſay, *Tuſh, God doth not ſee it.*

Laſtly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other *Patron* than himſelf, to whom to dedicate this *Work*, and from whom to receive protection and incouragement in it. The time was, when I might have ſaid with *Seneca*, *Vnus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one man was to me inſtead of all men: the Powers of all the *People* being vertually united in him. But now, as the caſe ſtands, I muſt be fain to invert the words, *Populus mihi eſt pro uno*; the *Body* of the *Nation* is to me, in this reſpect, as the *Head* before. Unto them therefore I preſent it, and that not improperly: A General ſurvey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Succeſſes of it, requiring a more general *Patron* than particular Tractates. But becauſe all the *People* in the Body *Collective* have not abilities to read, and much leſs to judg; and that many of thoſe who can do both, may neither have the liſt nor leiſure to peruſe theſe Papers: I look on the *Nobility*, *Clergie*, *Gentrie*, as their *Repreſentatives* in this kind; to whoſe favourable and ingenuous acceptance I ſubmit the ſame. Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no ſmal comfort to me, in the midſt of ſo many ſorrows as are round about me, that I have been uſeful to the publick; or added any thing by my Studies, unto the honour and content of the *Engliſh* Nation: whoſe peace and happineſs is heartily commended to Almighty God, By

The Author of theſe following Papers,

PETER HEYLYN.

To my Brother the Author.

T*Hy firſt* preſt-grapes *did yield approved* Wine,
Such as did praiſe it ſelf; *yet to indear*
Our Approbation, thou doeſt here refine
Thoſe former Fruits; *and for our better* Chear
Preſent'ſt us with a pure and ſtronger Vine:
Leſt elſe ſome curious taſt might it diſtaſt.
If ſo, what needs my ſecond Buſh? *'Tis* Waſt.

Theſe Verſes prefix'd before the ſecond Edition of the former Book *Anno* 1624. I have made bold to borrow and imprint with this, to preſerve the memory of the Author, who died in *Febr.* 1640.

Yet well thy choice Minerva *merits this,*
This Ivie-Garland, *everlaſting green*;
Which like the Muſes *cup proportion'd is,*
Whereout thou drink'ſt, wherein their Liquors *been.*
Nor would'ſt thou ſcape the laſh of Nemeſis,
If with Diogenes *thou ſhould'ſt refuſe,*
To let the thirſty *drink there hence. 'Twere* News.

Thy Book's an Ark *which all the* World *contains,*
And well may bear a ſhort Encomion.
'Tis ſlender meed, yet who ſuch pay diſdains?
Good Wine *may have a* Buſh, *though it* need none.
Nor let theſe Lines of mine ſeem partial ſtrains.
Thy Work *ingenious is*; *and* Vertue's *brood*
Like it, increaſeth with due praiſe. 'Tis Good.

Much pains it coſt, much coſt, and labor more;
Fame's *breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchaſe* Praiſe,
The Muſes *ſeat aſcends an hundred ſcore,*
And Honour's *journey lies not in plain waies.*
Who to Parnaſſus *high-crown'd top will ſore,*
Muſt with elaborate Quill climb up; *and ſuch*
Thy tender Genius *boaſteth thee. 'Tis* Much.

Too much indeed it were, but that in part
The Guerdon *of well-doing is the doing.*
Fame *and* Reward *but wait upon thine Art*;
Which yet deſerves that in this Forward *going,*
Thy Fortunes *may even-balance thy Deſert.*
But Fortune's baſe, and ſells the Wages *due*
To Worth, *unto her* Favourites. *'Tis* True.

The Earth *thy Ground-plot is*, Geographi'd;
Kings *ſometimes are thy ſubjects peopling it.*
Thy ſtory, Hiſtory *hath beautifi'd,*
Penn'd by the vigour of an Home-bred *wit*;
Whoſe Art *hath travell'd all the World beſide,*
And can of every Countrey *well declare*
Th'Occurrents, Nature, Site, and Bounds. 'Tis Rare.

Thus that the Earth, ſo young thou compaſt haſt:
Is Rare, True, Much, Good, News; *and my* Buſh Waſt.

Edw. Heylyn *J. C.*
è Soc. Int. Temp.

A GENERAL INTRODUCTION to the following Work:

Containing the Creation *of the World by Almighty God, and the* Plantation *of the ſame by the ſons of men; the neceſſary uſe of* Hiſtory *and* Geography, *as well for underſtanding the affairs of the* Ages *paſt, as for converſe and correſpondence with the* Nations *preſent; together with a brief view of ſome* General Præcognita *which neceſſarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.*

WIth great both Piety and Prudence did the Apoſtles in their Summary of the *Chriſtian* faith, joyn our Belief in *God the Father Almighty*, with that clauſe or Article of making or *Creating* the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (*Is not he thy Father which hath made thee?* ſaith the Prophet *Moſes, Deut.* 32. *v.* 6.) ſo who but an Almighty Father could by his meer word, without any Pre-exiſtent matter, create that goodly edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with ſo much wonder and applauſe? A work ſo full of wonder to the antient *Gentiles*; that ſome of them made the world a God. *Vis Illum (i. e. Deum) mundum vocare? non falleris*; as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the *World*, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the *World* a God, as God to be the Soul of the *World*, yet might they very well have ſaid as one ſince hath done, That the World is nothing elſe but God unfolded, and manifeſted in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus univerſus quam Deus explicatus*, as *Cuſanus* a late Cardinal hath it. For certainly the ſpecial motives which did induce God unto this great work, were a deſire and purpoſe to manifeſt his power, to exerciſe his providence, and declare his goodneſs. Not that God needed to have made the *World* in regard of himſelf; for the *World* we know was made in the beginning of time, but God is infinite and eternal before all times: but that it ſeemed good to him to *create* it at laſt, as a thing moſt conducible to his praiſe and glory; the *Heavens declaring the glory of God, and the Earth ſhewing his handy work*, ſaith the Royal *Pſalmiſt*. Some meaſuring the God of Heaven by their own affections, and finding nothing ſo agreeable to their own diſpoſitions as to be in company, conceive that God being at laſt weary of his own ſolitude, did create the *World*, that he might have the company of the *Angels* in Heaven, and make a ſtart into the Earth (when he ſaw occaſion) to recreate himſelf with the ſons of men. *Qua beata eſſe ſolitudo queat?* What happineſs (ſaid *Hortenſius*) can there be in ſolitude? To which *Lactantius*, Lib. 1. cap. 7. not being furniſhed with a better, doth return this Anſwer; That God cannot be ſaid to be alone: *habet enim Miniſtros quos vocamus Nuntios*, as having the ſociety of the *Angels*. But then *Lactantius* muſt ſuppoſe that the *Angels* were co-eternal with God himſelf (which were to make all Gods, and no God at all;) or elſe his Anſwer is no Anſwer, as to that Objection. How much more appoſitely might he have thus replyed unto *Hortenſius*, That the ſupream contentment poſſible to Almighty God is by reflecting on himſelf, and in himſelf contemplating his own infinite glories: which being co-eternal with himſelf, even from all Eternity, he needed no more company before the World was made, than he hath done ſince. *Lactantius* being himſelf a man of a very great reading (though indeed a better *Humanitian* than *Divine*) could not but know thoſe ſweet delights which a man habited in learning takes in contemplation, and the good ſociety he hath of his own dear thoughts, when he is moſt retired from the ſight of men. And if the wiſe *Gentile* could affirm ſo ſadly; *nunquam minus ſolum quam cum ſolus eſſet*, that he was never leſs alone than when he was by himſelf, what need can any rational man ſuppoſe in Almighty God, of having more company than himſelf, to delight himſelf in? If this ſuffice not for an anſwer to that needleſs queſtion, *What God did before he made the World*; let him take that of *Auguſtine* on the like occaſion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is ſaid to have returned this Anſwer; *fabricaſſe inferos curioſis*, that he made Hell for all ſuch troubleſome and idle *Queſtioniſts*. Which reſolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late *Dutch* Poet, moulded into this handſom Epigram.

Dum Chriſtum Libycis *Pater* Auguſtinus *in oris*
Aſſerit, & peragit munus in ade ſuum;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi,
Eſſe docens verbo cuncta creata Dei;
Impius aſſurgit, verbiſq; procacibus, Afer,
Ergo Opifex rerum quid faciebat, ait,
Aut quibus intentus fallebat tempora curis,
Mundus adhuc nondum cum fabricatus erat?
Præſul ad hæc Libycus, *fabricavit tartara, dixit,*
His quos ſcrutari talia mente juvat.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

When reverend *Auſtin* did in *Africk* preach,
And in Gods Houſe the ruder people teach,
As he the Worlds Creation prov'd, and taught
That God made all things by his Word, of nought:
A ſawcy Swain upſtarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time beſtow;
And what to ſpend his thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made:
To which the Father tartly thus; He then
Made *Hell* for thee, and ſuch audacious men.

But not to ſpend more time in anſwering ſo vain a Caption, ſuffice it us to know, that it pleaſed God at laſt, when it ſeemed beſt unto his infinite and eternal Wiſdom, to create the World, and all things viſible and inviſible in the ſame conteined. A time it had, in which it firſt began to be, which before was not; This *Moſes* cals *Principium*, a beginning ſimply. *In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth*, in the firſt words of the Book of *Geneſis*: which is all one as if he had ſaid, the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that this unformed *Maſs* or *Chaos* which he entituled there by the name of *heaven and earth*, was the *beginning* or firſt draught of thoſe ſeveral things which after were created in their proper times; that is to ſay, the firſt in order of time, becauſe made before them, not in order of cauſality, as the cauſes of them. *Cœlum & terra in Principio*, i. e. *ante omnia facta ſunt*, ſaith *Simon Pottius* in his *Scholies* on S. *Johns* Goſpel. So that whether we do expound thoſe words, that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that *Moſes* by theſe words did mean, that out of that matter which he cals *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning, or firſt matter, all things were created, it comes all to one: becauſe it is thereby acknowledged that the firſt matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of neceſſity to have a *beginning*. And to this truth we have not only the authority and conſent of Scripture, but of the greateſt part of the old *Philoſophers*; guided thereto by this impoſſibility in nature, that any viſible work, whether it be *natural* or *artificial*, ſhould either give it ſelf a being, or have that being which it hath, from no cauſe precedent. For from that Principle *Tully* argueth very rightly in his moſt excellent Book *de Natura Deorum*, that as a man coming into a goodly houſe, in which he found nothing but Rats and Mice; could not conceive that either the houſe had built it ſelf, or had no other maker but thoſe Rats and Mice which were neſted in it; ſo neither can it be imagined, that either this World ſhould be eternal, of a ſelf-exiſtency; or was compoſed by any natural Agent of what ſort ſoever. And this is that which is more briefly and expreſly ſaid by the Apoſtle, *viz.* that *every houſe is built by ſome man, but he that built all things is God*, Heb. 3. v. 4. It is true, that *Ariſtotle* being a very great enquirer into the works of Nature, conceived the world to be eternal; and yet not alwaies conſtant unto that opinion. But then it is as true withall, that there was ſomething elſe that inclined him to it, than a meer admiration of the works of Nature. *Democritus* and ſome others had been of opinion, that the World was made in the beginning, *fortuitis atomorum concurſionibus*, by the accidental union or conjunction of thoſe ſeveral parcels, of which the Univerſe conſiſted; and that Man himſelf was but *voluntaria elementorum concretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the elements, as *Minutius* hath obſerved out of their writings. To which abſurd opinion (as it was no better) though it found a general imbracement amongſt many of the old Philoſophers, when *Ariſtotle* knew not how to ſubmit his moſt exquiſite judgment; and yet was deſtitute of ſuch further light, as might more fully have inſtructed him in its true *Original*: he rather choſe to grant the world to be eternal, than to be made of ſuch ridiculous, and unſound, though eternal *Atoms*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab æterno eſſe, quam aliquando ex æterna deformitate emerſiſſe.* *Valeſius* in his Book *de Sacra Philoſophia* ſo pleads the caſe in his behalf; and I thank him for it: who am (I muſt confeſs) a great friend of *Ariſtotles*, whom ſome account for the *Præcurſor* of our Saviour Chriſt *in rebus naturalibus*, as *John the Baptiſt* was *in divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reaſon tell us only this, that the whole World had a beginning, but by the help of Scripture, and the works of ſome learned men, we are able to point out the time when it did begin; or to compute how many years it is preciſely from the firſt beginning, without any notable difference in the calculation. For though it be moſt truly ſaid, *Citius inter Horologias* *quam Chronologias*, that *Clocks* may ſooner be agreed than *Chronologers*; yet moſt *Chronologers* in this point come ſo near one another, that the difference is ſcarce obſervable. From the beginning of the *World* to the Birth of *Chriſt*, in the accompt of *Beroaldus*, are 3928 years; 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*; 3960 in the eſteem of *Luther*; and 3963 in the calculation of *Melanchthon*: between whom and *Beroaldus* (being the leaſt and the greateſt) there is but 35 years difference, which in ſo long a courſe of time can be no great matter. Now if unto the calculation made by *Beroaldus*, which I conceive to be the trueſt, we add 1648 ſince the Birth of *Chriſt*, the total of the time ſince the worlds creation, will be 5576 years, neither more nor leſs. A thing which I the rather have inſiſted on, becauſe that from this *Epoche* or *Æra* of the *Worlds creation*, we ſhall compute the times of ſuch Kings and Princes, as reigned and flouriſhed in the world before the *Incarnation* of our Lord and Saviour.

I being then reſolved, as a thing undoubted, that God made the World, and that he made it in ſuch time as himſelf pleaſed; let us next look upon the *matter* and the *method* which it pleaſed the Divine Majeſty to make uſe of in this wondrous work.

Firſt, for the *matter*, out of which all things were created, I take it, as before was ſaid, to be that which *Moſes* in the firſt words of *Geneſis* cals the *Heaven and the Earth*, becauſe they were ſo *in potentia*; but after telleth us more explicitely, that that which he calleth *Earth*, was *inanis & vacua*, without form and void; and that which he called *Heaven* was but an overcaſt of darkneſs, or *tenebræ ſuper faciem Abyſſi*, as the vulgar reads it. Of which *Chaos* or confuſed Maſs we thus read in *Ovid*, who queſtionleſs had herein conſulted with the works of *Moſes*, being before his time communicated to the learned Gentiles:

Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Cœlum,
Unus erat toto naturæ vultus in Orbe,
Quem dixêre Chaos, *rudis indigeſtaq; moles,*
Nec quicquam niſi pondus iners, congeſtaq; eodem
Non bene junctarum diſcordia ſemina rerum, &c.

Which I ſhall Engliſh from *G. Sandys* with ſome little change.

Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were fram'd
One face had nature, which they *Chaos* nam'd;
An indigeſted lump, a barren load,
Where jarring ſeeds of things ill-joyn'd abode.
No Sun as yet with light the world adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waining horns;
Nor hung the ſelf-poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,
Nor had the Ocean the vaſt Shores imbrac'd.
Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt; the Earth unſtable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one aſſign'd,
This that reſiſts; for in one body joyn'd
The cold and heat, the dry and humid fight,
The ſoft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or firſt matter, did God raiſe the world, according to thoſe ſeveral parts and lineaments which we ſee it in, not as out of any pre-exiſtent matter which was made before, and had not God for the Author or firſt Maker of it; but as the firſt preparatory matter which himſelf had made, including in the ſame potentially both the form and matter of the whole Creation, except the Soul of Man only, which God breathed unto him. And therfore it is truely ſaid, that God made all things out of *nothing*; not out of *nothing* as the matter out of which it is made, for then that *nothing* muſt be *ſomething*; but as the *Terminus à quo*, in giving them a real and corporal Being which before they had not, and did then firſt begin to have by the meer force and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be a *Maxim* in the Schools of Philoſophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*, that *nothing* can be made of *nothing*; that every thing which hath a Being doth require ſome matter, which muſt be pre-exiſtent to it; yet this muſt either be condemned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divinity, or elſe be limited and reſtrained to *Natural agents*, which cannot go beyond the ſphere of their own activity. *Inviſible* and *ſupernatural* Agents are not tied to Rules, no not in the production of the works of Nature; though Nature conſtituted and eſtabliſhed in a certain courſe, work every thing by line and meaſure as a certain Rule. And ſo it was with God in the World's Creation; he did not only make the world, but he made it out of nothing, by his Word alone: *Dixit & facta ſunt*, he ſpake the word and they were made, ſaith the royal *Pſalmiſt*, *Pſal.* 33. *v.* 9. There went no greater pains nor matter to the whole Creation, but a *Dixit Deus*. And this not only ſaid by *Moſes*, but by *David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati ſunt Cœli, & ſpiritu oris ejus omnis virtus eorum*, *v.* 6. *i. e.* by the word of the Lord were the heavens made, and all the Hoſts thereof by the *breath* of his mouth. In which it is to be obſerved, that though the *Creation* of the *World* be generally aſcribed to God the *Father*, yet both the *Son* and the *Holy Ghoſt* had their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the *Word* of the Lord were the Heavens made, ſaith the Prophet *David*: *In the beginning was the Word; all things were made by him, and without him was nothing made*, ſaith St *John* the Apoſtle. The *Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters*, ſaith *Moſes* in the book of the Law: *Et ſpiritu oris ejus*, and by the breath (or Spirit) of his mouth were all the Hoſts of Heaven created, ſaith *David* in the Book of *Pſalms*. Made by his *Word*, and yet not made together in one inſtant of time. In the firſt day he laid the foundation, and no more; in the five next he raiſed the building: and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words and actions; and to ſet forth withall unto us both his Power and Wiſdom. His Power he manifeſted in the *Method* of the whole Creation, in that he did produce what effects he pleaſed, without the help of natural cauſes: as giving Light unto the World before he had created either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitful, and to bring forth plants, without the influence or motion of the Heavenly bodies. And for his Wiſdom he expreſſed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the very Beaſts of the field before he had provided them of fodder and ſufficient herbage; nor *made Man after his own Image*, before he had finiſhed all the reſt of his works, fitted his houſe, and furniſhed it with all things neceſſary both for life and pleaſures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at laſt comes *Man* into the world; and he doth make his entrance with a greater pomp, than any of the reſt of the Creatures which were before him. They came in with no other Ceremony, than a *Dixit Deus*; but in the workmanſhip of *Man*, there was a Conſultation held by the bleſſed *Trinity*. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make Man; each Perſon contributing ſomewhat (as it were) to his compoſition. For God the Father as the chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him form and feature; in which he did imprint his own heavenly Image. The Son who is the living and eternal *Word*, gave him voice or ſpeech, that ſo he might be able to ſet forth God's praiſes. The *Holy Ghoſt*, the *Lord and giver of life*, (as the *Nicene* Fathers truly call him) *breathing into his Noſtrils the breath of life*, whereby he became a living Spirit. In this one *Creature* was amaſſed whatever thing was excellent in the whole Creation; the quantity or ſubſtance of Inanimate creatures, the life of Plants, the ſenſe of Beaſts, and the underſtanding of Angels. In this one Creature did God ſhew the excellency of his Power and Wiſdom, in printing on him his *own Image*, and giving him Dominion over all the *works of his hands*; which *Image of God* they look for in a very wrong place, who hope to find it in Man's Body, though of a gallant compoſition, and erected ſtructure. The Heathen Oratour was able in this point to inform ſome erroneous *Chriſtians*, *Ad Divinam imaginem propius accedit humana virtus quàm figura*, Man doth approach more near to the Image of God, in the endowments of his mind, than in the ſtructure of his body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that Dominion which God gave him over the works of his hands, the Patent is at large laid down in the firſt of *Geneſis*. For God no ſooner ſaid, *Faciamus Hominem*, let us make Man after our own Image: but preſently he addes this *Charter* of Supream Authority, *And let him have dominion over the fiſh of the Sea, and over the fowls of the Air, and over the Cattel, and over all the Earth*. A more particular explication of thoſe ſeveral points, wherein that *Image* and this *Power* do conſiſt eſpecially, I ſhall not take upon me or endeavour now; as being not of this place and purpoſe: Which only is to ſhew that as Man in the very act of his Creation participated more of the *Divine Image*, than all other Creatures; ſo was he by God's ſpecial grant infeoffed with a larger *power*, than any of the reſt could pretend unto. *Man*, though made lower than the Angels, is in this above them; that all the Creatures of the World were made to be his ſervants, and to attend upon his pleaſure. And yet this great and mighty Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Creatures in it (ſetting aſide the dignity of his firſt Creation) doth come into the world in a worſe condition, than any of the Creatures which were made to ſerve him: naked, and impotent, and ſpeechleſs, without uſe of reaſon, neither of power to help himſelf, or ask help of others. Whereof *Lactantius* in my mind gives a very good reaſon, who telleth us, that God ſends Man into the world, *nudum & inermem*, naked, and weak, and undefenced againſt all violences and dangers; whereas all Creatures elſe, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata ſunt*, are naturally both armed and cloathed, and able to relieve themſelves. And this he doth unto this end, that Man being naturally deſtitute of thoſe outward helps, might make uſe of his inward faculties of judgment, wit, and underſtanding, in furniſhing himſelf with that which he wants by nature. For hereunto the firſt original of all Manufactures and mechanick Arts is to be referred, as is moſt plain and evident from the Book of God; in which we ſee, that preſently upon the procreation of mankind, *Abel* betook himſelf unto keeping ſheep, and *Cain* to huſbandry; *Jubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and ſuch Muſical Inſtruments; and *Tubal-Cain* to work upon braſs and iron, two metals very neceſſary to moſt kind of Trades. The like may be ſuppoſed in all other Myſteries and Arts of living, though there be no expreſs mention of them in thoſe early daies; except it be the Art of building, or the Carpenter's Trade, which no queſtion is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain's* City, and *Noah's* Ark is moſt clearly evidenced. God made the world, and fitted it with all things neceſſary for the life of Man, leaving Man to provide himſelf of ſuch Additions, as rather ſerve for comforts and conveniences in the way of his living, than the neceſſities of his life.

Here then we have the works of God, and the works of men to be conſidered in perſuit of our preſent Argument. The works of God, in ſhadowing the Earth with *Trees* and *Forreſts*, interlacing it with Cryſtal *ſtreams*, and capacious *Rivers*; inriching it with fruitful and *delicious Vales*; adorning it with lofty Mountains, and ſtocking both the Hils and Vales with all ſorts of *Cattel*. But nothing more ſets forth the Power and Wiſdom of Almighty God, as it relates to theſe particulars, than that moſt admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffick and Commerce with one another: ſome Countreys being deſtitute of thoſe Commodities, with which others abound; aud being plentiful in thoſe, which the others want. Inſomuch that as in the Body of Man, that *Microcoſm*, or little Word, the Head cannot ſay that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other members of the reſt: ſo neither in the Body of the World, can *Europe* ſay to *Aſia*, or *Spain* to *England*, I have no need of your Commodities; or am not wanting in thoſe things, whereof thou boaſteſt an abundance. Something there is in every Countrey, which may be ſpared to ſupply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandiſe: Of which, thus *Du-Bartas* in his *Colonies*.

Hence come our Sugars from Canary *Iſles.*
From Candie, *Currans, Muſcadels, and Oyles.*
From the Moluccoes, *Spices; Balſamum*
From Egypt; *Odours from* Arabia *come.*
From India, *Gums, rich Drugs, and Ivorie.*
From Syria, *Mummie; black, red Ebonie*
From burning Chus; *from* Peru, *Pearls and Gold;*
From Ruſſia, *Furs, to keep the rich from cold.*
From Florence, *Silks; from* Spain, *Fruit, Saffron, Sacks;*
From Danemark, *Amber, Cordage, Firs, and Flax.*
From France *and* Flanders, *Linnen, Woad, and Wine;*
From Holland, *Hops; Horſe from the banks of* Rhine.
From England *Wooll. All Lands, as God diſtributes,*
To the Worlds treaſure pay their ſundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* ſpeaks of the preſent times, ſo queſtionleſs the ſame, or the like Commerce held good in the firſt Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furniſhing all Countreys from the firſt beginning with ſome *Staple-commodities*, for the benefit of themſelves and others; for the maintaining of that entercourſe between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the cloſer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end alſo ſerve thoſe ſeveral *Manufactures* wherewith ſome Countreys do abound in reſpect of others; but looked on in the preſent Book as the works of men. And of this kind alſo are the ſeveral *Polities* and forms of Government. For though all *Magiſtracy* in it ſelf be from God originally, and that the *Monarchical* form comes neareſt to the Government uſed by God himſelf: yet being that ſome *Polities* are meerly but humane inventions, and that to *Monarchy* it ſelf, the conſent of men is either explicitely or implicitely required; All Government or Magiſtracy is called an *Ordinance of man* in holy Scripture, 1 *Pet.* 11. *v.* 13. But thoſe particular Works of men which are the moſt conſiderable part of our preſent ſubject, are *Caſtles*, *Towns*, and *Cities* of moſt eminent note; which thrive and proſper in the World, according as they do partake of thoſe Conveniencies, which conduce moſt to their Magnificence and Greatneſs. Of theſe *Boterus* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of thoſe many we ſhall touch upon the principal only; paſſing by thoſe of leſſer note, as pleaſantneſs of Site, fruitfulneſs of Soyl, ſalubrity of Air, and ſuch like obvious Obſervations. Firſt then, there is required to the Magnificence and Splendour of Cities, a Navigable River, or ſome ſuch eaſie paſſage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourſe and trade of Merchants; as at *Venice*, *London*, *Amſterdam*. Secondly, ſome Staple-Manufactures or Commodities, which will draw the like reſort of Merchants, though the conveniency of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in *Nurenberg* in *Germany*, a dry Town, but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; For *ubi Imperator, ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all ſorts of Trades: And by this means *Madrid*, not long ſince a poor beggarly Village, is grown the moſt populous City in all *Spain*. Fourthly, the Reſidence of the Nobility, beautifieth a City with ſtately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of *Italy* ſo much excell ours in *England*, their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the moſt part in their Countrey-houſes. Fifthly, the Seats, or *Tribunals* of Juſtice, on which both *Advocates* and *Clients* are to give attendance; as in the *Parliamentary* Cities in *France*, and *Spires* in *Germany*. Sixthly, Univerſities and Schools of Learning to which the Youth from all parts are to make reſort; which hath been long the chief cauſe of the flouriſhing of *Oxford*, *Cambridge*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls and Taxes; moſt men being moſt deſirous to inhabit there, where their In-come will be greateſt, their Privileges largeſt, and their Diſburſements leaſt: So *Naples*, *Florence*, *Venice*, having been deſolated by Plagues, were again ſuddenly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And laſt of all, the opinion of Sanctity, either for the *Reliques* of Saints, or ſome noted Shrines, or the reſidence of ſome famous man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the leaſt *Adamant* which draws people to it, to the great enriching of ſome Cities: And of this, *Rome* it ſelf can give us two moſt pregnant evidences: the one in reference to the *Popes*, and theſe latter times, that famous Town not otherwiſe ſubſiſting now, than by the conſtant reſidence of the Popes and Cardinals; whoſe abſence, while the Papal Sea was kept at *Avignon*, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almoſt in its own ſad ruines: the other, in the perſon of *Titus Livius* the Hiſtorian, to ſee which man there came ſo many from the Coaſts of *France* and *Spain*, that S. *Hierome* elegantly ſaith, *Quos ad ſui contemplationem* Roma *non traxerat, unius hujus hominis fama perduxit; qui jam urbem tantam ingreſſi, aliud extra* Urbem *quærerent.*

Such are the cauſes of the Greatneſs and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might poſſibly be looked at by the firſt Builders of Cities. I mean by *Cain* before the Floud, and by *Nimrod* after it; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and ſelf-preſervation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular wealth of thoſe amongſt whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expreſly in the Book of God, That being poſſeſſed with this fear, that *every one that found him* *would lay hands upon him and ſlay him*, in revenge of the bloud of *Abel*; *He builded a City and called it by the name of his ſon* Enoch. *Gen.*4.17. *Builded a City*? For what reaſon? To fortifie and ſecure himſelf againſt all revenge, as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppreſs his Neighbours, as *Joſephus* witneſſeth. Neither was this the only City of the firſt Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture ſaith of *Jubal*, that he was the *Father of ſuch as dwell in Tents*, and of ſuch as have Cattel; that is to ſay, he was the firſt of thoſe which lived upon Paſturage, and followed their cattel up and down with their movable Tents, not having any certain home or habitations, as the wild *Arabs* now, and the ancient *Nomades*: is proof ſufficient, that the reſidue of all Mankind lived a more civil kind of life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in theſe things, I think, he is) he will inform us, that the City of *Joppa* was built before the Floud; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of ſtone. But whether this be ſo, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the Weſt, whereon *Joppa* ſtood, as the *Land of Nod* on the Eaſt ſide of *Paradiſe*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Floud: and ſo were moſt of the other parts of the *World* beſides: And if well peopled in all, or moſt parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for neceſſary habitation, as for ſtrength and ſafety. Now, that the World was throughly peopled before the Floud, ſeems clear to me by that great and univerſal Deluge, which God was pleaſed to bring upon the *Face of all the earth*: For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guilty of oppreſſion, in the ſight of God? Beſides, it is expreſly ſaid in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the *Floud*, in the largeſt accompt, and not 300 in the ſhorteſt; there were Kings of *Egypt*, and of the *Philiſtims*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinaar*, *Ellaſar*, *Ellan*, and of the *Nations*, who queſtionleſs had their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea*, and *Meſopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham*, had their ſeveral Cities; as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan* in the other; and that *Damaſcus* the chief City of *Syria* was then founded alſo: Not to ſay any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the land of *Shinaar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Reſen*, *Rehoboth*, and *Chalah* in the land of *Aſſyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10. of *Geneſis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Aſſyrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having ſubdued the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia*, invaded *Bactria* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horſe, and 10600 armed Chariots; and was encountred by *Zoroaſter* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thouſand. The credibility whereof, if it were diſputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* againſt the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Cteſias* for his Author, *Semiramis* the Wife of *Ninus* invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of men, and upwards; and yet was over-matched, and ſlain by an *Indian* King. If then within the ſpace of 400 years, we finde the Eaſtern parts to be ſo well planted, ſo many Kings poſſeſſed of their Regal Thrones, and many of them able to impreſs ſuch infinite Armies; why may not we conclude, that in the courſe of 1656 years (for ſo long it was from the Creation to the Floud) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; eſpecially conſidering the long lives of men, amounting to 800, or 900 years, and conſequently the long time they had to apply themſelves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Mercators* opinion; who placing the 16 Dynaſty of the Kings of *Egypt* (where *Euſebius* begins to calculate the *Egyptian* times) at the firſt planting of that Countrey by the Sons of *Noah*; reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the *Floud*, and to reach very near the times of the firſt *Creation*. That *Miſraim* the Son of *Ham* was poſſeſſed of *Egypt* within two hundred years after the *Floud*, is a truth undoubted. Nor ſee I any cauſe to doubt, but that in the like ſpace of time from the firſt Creation, it might be planted alſo by the Sons of *Adam*: conſidering, as we ought to do, that in the infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were moſt perfect, and of greateſt vigour, they obſerved no degree of Kindred or Conſanguinity; nor tied themſelves ſo ſtrictly to one woman, as they ſhould have done. And for the names of all the Kings of thoſe ſeveral Dynaſties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, ſuch as that of *Seth*; or upon Altars of ſtone, as in thoſe of *Joppa*; or *Miſraim* might have them by tradition, from the hands of *Noah*; and ſo deliver them by tale unto his poſterity; the *Egyptians* being generally very good *Heralds*, and ſtanding very much on their own Antiquity. And if this may be ſaid of *Egypt* (as for my part I ſee no reaſon but it may) then may the like be ſaid of all Countreys elſe, that they had their ſeveral Kings and Rulers, and ſet forms of Government: The Fathers of Families in thoſe times, having the command and ſoveraignty over all that deſcended of them. Nor make I any queſtion of it, but they had ſeveral Languages and forms of Speech, at leaſt as to the *Dialect* and pronunciation; although the *Radicals* of the Language might remain the ſame. But being there are no *Remainders* of this firſt *Plantation* (unleſs we will give credit to ſome *Jewiſh* Fablers, who tell us of ſome Giants who ſaved themſelves upon Mount *Sion*; or that of *Maſius Damaſcenus*, who ſpeaks of ſome that ſaved themſelves on an high Hill called *Baris*, in ſome part of *Armenia*) I ſhall the leſs inſiſt upon it. Nor had I ſtood ſo long upon theſe firſt Ages, which *Moſes* paſſeth over with ſo ſhort a Narrative; but that it is affirmed by *Pererius*, a right learned *Jeſuite*, that neither *Egypt* nor *Aſſyria*, nor the reſt of the *World* was planted and inhabited before the Floud; and that upon no ſtronger reaſon, for ought I can find, but that it is affirmed in the laſt words of the tenth of *Geneſis*, That, *by theſe* (that is to ſay, by the poſterity of the Sons of *Noah*) *were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Floud*. Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo ſignificatur talem diviſionem non fuiſſe ante diluvium*; By which it doth appear (ſaith he) that in the times before the Floud was no ſuch diviſion.

'Tis true, that this diviſion of the world by the Sons of *Noah*, hath the beſt evidence in Scripture; becauſe there is expreſs Text for it, which is not for the firſt Plantations. But looking on the great increaſe of mankind before the Floud, that ſaying of *Beroſus* will prove *tantamont* to a Text of Scripture, *Ad comparandas novas ſedes neceſſitatem compuliſſe*, that they were driven by neceſſity to ſeek new dwellings; the neceſſity of providing victuals for themſelves and their families, being as ſtrong a motive unto ſuch diſperſions, as the *Confuſion of Tongues* was afterwards. The difference is, that that which ſuch *neceſſity* would have done in long tract of time, the *confuſion of Tongues* did in an inſtant: not only making thoſe proud *Builders* to give over the finiſhing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themſelves with ſuch, whoſe language came moſt near to that which themſelves were Maſters of. It was high time, no queſtion, to deſiſt from this proud attempt, when the Labourer underſtood not what the Workman called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But becauſe ſome Plantations had no reference to the *Confuſion of Tongues*, but were made before it, or on the ſending out of ſuch Colonies as were neareſt to the place where the *Ark* did reſt; I think it not amiſs to reſolve that queſtion touching the reſting of the Ark, on which the Plantations of the Eaſt have ſo great dependence. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the *Ark* reſted on the *Mountains of Ararat*; but where thoſe Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Joſephus*, and ſome other, of more eminent note (but ſuch as ground themſelves upon his authority) affirm thoſe Mountains of *Ararat* to be the Hills of *Armenia*. Which they do chiefly on theſe Reaſons: Firſt, becauſe *Armenia* is called *Ararat* in the Book of God, as it is confeſſedly; and ſecondly, becauſe of an old Tradition, countenanced by *Beroſus*, and ſome others of the ancient Writers, cited by *Joſephus*, affirming, that on the *Gordiæan* Mountains in *Armenia Major*, ſome of the Reliques of the *Ark* were remaining in their times, and uſed as a Preſervative againſt Inchantments. Which notwithſtanding, I incline rather to the opinion of *Goropius Becanus* (who amongſt many ſtrange whimſeys broached ſome notable truths) by whom the Ark is ſaid to reſt on the top of Mount *Caucaſus* in the Confines of *Tartarie*, *Perſia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greateſt conſequence: the firſt whereof is grounded upon evident reaſon; the ſecond on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon reaſon, is the exceeding populoſity of thoſe Eaſtern Countreys, into which none of thoſe by whom the world was planted after the Confuſion of Languages, are yet reported to have travelled with their ſeveral Colonies, by any who have took moſt pains in this diſcovery. Thoſe infinite numbers which *Staurobates*, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians*, brought into the field againſt *Semiramis*; and the vaſt Army of *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province againſt *Ninus*; are proof enough, that thoſe Countreys were of an elder Plantation, than to be a ſecond or third *Caſtling* of ſome other *Swarm* ſettled in *Perſia*, or *Aſſyria*, after the *Confuſion*. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I muſt needs look upon it, as a thing impoſſible, that thoſe vaſt Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raiſe out of all her Dominions, ſhould be encountred by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; If that one King, and thoſe his Subjects had been ſome late Colonie of thoſe new Plantations, and not poſſeſſed of a Countrey peopled and inhabited before that *Confuſion*. Nor was it but upon ſome good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucaſus*) were generally eſteemed the moſt ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitours, with this publick Verdict, *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*: which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the *Ark* unto them (though perhaps that ground long ſince forgotten, was not ſtood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his children near the place of the *Ark*, till numbers, and neceſſity compelled them to inlarge their Borders. And in the inlarging of their Borders, I ſhall make no queſtion, but that ſuch parts as lay neareſt, were peopled and poſſeſſed before thoſe which lay fartheſt off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages ſince. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it falls ſhort of that which comes from the Text it ſelf, both in authority and weight; where it is ſaid of the Heads of thoſe ſeveral Families which afterwards joyned together in the building of *Babel*, that, *As they went from the* Eaſt, *they found a Plain in the land of* Shinaar, *and there they abode*, Gen. 11. v. 2. If then they came from the *Eaſt* to the land of *Shinaar*, as the Text ſaith plainly that they did; it might well be that they came from thoſe parts of *Aſia*, on the *South* of *Caucaſus*, which lie Eaſt of *Shinaar*, though ſomewhat bending to the North; impoſſible they ſhould come from the *Gordiæan* Mountains in the greater *Armenia* (ſuppoſed to be the Hills which the *Ark* did reſt on) which lie not only full North of *Shinaar*, but many degrees unto the Weſt. For *Babylonia*, or *Shinaar*, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 35, and the *Longitude* of 79, and 80. the *Latitude* of the *Gordiæan* Mountains in 41, and their *Longitude* in 75. By which accompt thoſe Mountains are 6 Degrees more Northwards, and 5 Degrees more Weſtwards than the Land of *Shinaar*: by no means to be reckoned on the Eaſt of that Valley, except we make *Moſes* (whoſe hand God guided in his Books) to ſpeak God knowes what, or in plain tearms, to ſpeak plain non-ſence. And though this Scripture be ſo clear, that it needs no Commentary, yet the perplexities I find amongſt thoſe of the other opinion, in ſhifting out of the authority of ſo plain a Text, do add in my conceit ſome moment and weight unto it. For ſome will have the Mountains of *Ararat* to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinaar*, but with ſome bending towards the Eaſt; which were it true, as nothing is more truly falſe, *Moſes* had never told us that they came from the *Eaſt*, but from ſome Countreys of the *North*, which lay toward the *Eaſt*. Others will have a double progreſs of the *Heads* of their ſeveral Families: Firſt from the Mountains of *Ararat*, or the Plains of *Armenia*, to the Fields of *Aſſyria* and *Suſiana*; And ſecondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinaar*. But of this firſt journey, there is *ne gry quidem*, not ſo much as any one ſyllable in all the Scripture; beſides the needleſneſs of making them go ſo farr about, and to croſs over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; whereas they had a ſhorter, and an eaſier paſſage. *Capellus*, ſingular by himſelf, quarrelleth with the Tranſlation (received without diſpute by all other Criticks) and will not have the Hebrew *Kedem*, to be rendred *Eaſt*, but to ſignifie that Region, whatſoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedem* the Son of *Iſmael*, of whom we find mention *Gen.* 25.15. But then beſides his quarrel with all other Tranſlations, he ſuppoſeth a former progreſs from the Mountains of *Ararat* to that land of *Kedem*; and conſequently falleth into a part of the Errour before refelled. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Aſſyrians* called all thoſe parts of their Empire beyond *Tigris*, the Eaſtern, and thoſe on this ſide of it, the Weſtern; would thence conclude, that theſe *Heads* may be ſaid by *Moſes* to have come from the *Eaſt*, becauſe they came from one of the *Eaſtern* Provinces of the *Aſſyrian* Empire. Every way faulty in this point: For beſides that the greateſt part of *Armenia* lieth on the North of *Tigris*, and the leaſt part of it on the Weſt, and therefore not within the compaſs of the Eaſtern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this diviſion was in uſe in the time of *Moſes*; we may as rationally conclude, and with leſs abſurdity, that the firſt Inhabitants of *Britain*, might have been ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the *Weſt*, (though he well knew they came from *Gaul*, which is plainly *Eaſt* of it) becauſe *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the *Weſt* parts of the Empire.

Having thus fortified our opinion both with Scripture and Reaſon, the Arguments produced againſt us will be eaſily anſwered. For though *Armenia* be granted to be the Countrey of *Ararat*; yet the Mountains of *Ararat* may extend beyond the Countrey. That mighty Ridg of Mountains, which, beginning in *Aſia* the leſs, run as far as *India* (by the Antients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Moſes* the Mountains of *Ararat*, becauſe that was the firſt Countrey of the greater *Aſia* by which they paſſed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly. Juſt as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it waſhed many Shores beſides: Or as ſome Hills with us are called *Malvern* Hills, becauſe they are higheſt near that Village, though they extend themſelves into other Lordſhips. And as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Teſtimony of humane Writers, which (as before was ſaid) are brought in for an help, touching ſome Reliques of the *Ark* to be ſeen on the *Gordiaan* Mountains; I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For firſt *Beroſus* (followed herein by all the reſt) reports it only on the ground of uncertain hear-ſay; which is a weak ſtaff for ſo heavy a cauſe to lie upon. Secondly, to balance the authority of *Beroſus* (if of any credit in this caſe) we have the teſtimony and authority of *Portius Cato*, as antient almoſt as he, affirming poſitively, in *Scythia Saga renatum eſſe mortale genus*, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Scythia* which after was poſſeſſed by the *Sacans*: And they, we know, dwelt in thoſe parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucaſus*. And thirdly, unto one *Tradition* to oppoſe another; thoſe of Mount *Caucaſus* do averr, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah*'s Plantation; of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Tartarie*.

It is now time I ſhould go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide diſperſions, for whom it was high time to conſort themſelves with ſuch as they could underſtand; the neceſſity of diſcourſe and conference on that fatal Accident, making them lay aſide their old acquaintances, and joyn themſelves to others of their own new Language. I know that many learned men, according to the number of names laid down in the tenth of *Gen.* being 70, have made ſo many Languages to have been ſpoken upon that *Confuſion*: And that of thoſe, 26 being the Poſterity of *Sem*, diſperſed themſelves about *Aſia* the greater, 30 others of the loyns of *Cham*, peopled *Africk*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the 14 which remain, being the iſſue of *Japhet*, withdrew themſelves towards *Europe*, and the leſſer *Aſia*. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a conceit; though many, more improbable, have paſſed for currant. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongſt them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the land of *Canaan*. And as for *Joctan* and his Sons, being 13 in number, conſidering that he was the younger brother of *Phaleg*, in whoſe time this *Confuſion* hapned; it is moſt probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the deſign for the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and conſequently could not be within the curſe of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the 70 to be taken off; as poſſibly might all the Sons of *Miſraim* be, if it were worth the while to inſiſt upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the diſperſion into the ſaid three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but falſe enough, if underſtood of any preſent ſeparation of the Sons of *Noah* into parts ſo far remote and diſtant one from another. For what needed any ſuch remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and ſo enjoy that civil intercourſe and mutual ſociety which the nature of Mankinde doth moſt delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joyning themſelves to men of the ſame Language with them, did firſt ſet down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinaar*: and from thence propagated and diſperſed themſelves into further Countreys, as either the neceſſity of providing of Victuals; or ſeeking better and more fruitfull habitations for themſelves and theirs; or the deſire of being out of the reach of ſome potent Neighbours, whoſe yoke they found too heavy for their necks to bear; did enforce them to it. And being ſo ſetled to their minds, the addition of a few more years brought the like neceſſity of ſending *Colonies* further off as they grew more or leſs populous in their generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongſt whom one *Swarm* ſends out another, that begets a *Caſtling*, till the whole ground or Garden grow too ſmall to hold them. For thus (to ſeek no further for an inſtance of it) the *Gauls* firſt planted *Britain*, the *Britains Ireland*, the *Iriſh Scotland*, and the Iſles. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to ſuſtain, and too narrow to contain their multitudes, *anguſtos ſe fines habere arbitrantes*, as in *Cæſar*'s Commentaries; intended to plant themſelves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Phenicians* flying the dreadful ſword of *Joſuah* the Son of *Nun*, ſought them out dwellings further off from the preſent danger, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements, did the firſt people after the Floud diſtribute and diſperſe themſelves into ſeveral parts, as their Poſterities have done ſince, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability; giving their own names, or ſome names of their own impoſing, upon the Countreys planted or diſcovered by them. And though the length, and conſuming nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the names impoſed by the firſt Adventurers, I mean, the firſt Planters after the Floud: yet all the footſteps of Antiquity are not ſo defaced, but that ſome Nations and Cities have preſerved the memory of their firſt Founders and true Parents. In the diſcovery whereof, as *Joſephus* in his Book of *Jewiſh Antiquities*, did firſt lead the way, and gave good light to thoſe who have travelled in it: So a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the tenth of *Geneſis*, Sir *Walter Ralegh* in his excellent Hiſtory, and lately by *Bochartus*, a *French* Writer, in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. Out of whoſe Labours, and ſome Animadverſions of mine own, I ſhall here ſay ſomewhat concerning the Plantation of the world by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctual deſcription of it unto the Hiſtory of thoſe ſeveral Lands and Countreys which were planted by them.

Firſt therefore, to begin with the Poſterity of *Sem*, as thoſe who fixed themſelves in *Aſia*, without wandring further, we find *Sem* to have had five Sons, that is to ſay, *Elam*, *Aſſur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, and *Aram*, of whom there is no iſſue on Record in holy Scripture, but onely of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*; and of theſe two, there are but four Sons given to *Aram*, viz. *Uz*, *Hul*, *Gether*, and *Meſech*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*. To *Selah* was born *Heber*; to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Anceſtor of *Abraham*, and *Joktan* the Father of thoſe thirteen Sons, whoſe names we ſhall rehearſe hereafter, if occaſion be. From *Elam* who is the firſt named, did deſcend the *Elamites*, a people bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times joyned together in the Scriptures, as, *Go up*, *O* Elam; *beſiege*, *O* Media. *Eſa.* 21. v. 2. *And all the Kings of* Elam, *all the Kings of the* Medes, *Jer.* 25. v. 25. And in the ſecond of the *Acts*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in rank and file, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this people was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the ſecond of *Maccab. Chap.* 6. *v.* 2. Sufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there conſecrated to *Diana*. A City ſeated on the banks of the River *Eulaus*, and neighbouring cloſe to *Suſiana*, which therefore is ſometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan.* 8. v. 2. *I was* (ſaith he) *in the Palace of* Suſa, *in the Province of* Elam; where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* onely, but as it gave denomination unto all thoſe Nations whom they after maſtered. The ſecond Son of *Sem*, is *Aſſur*, of whom there is no mention made amongſt the Learned, but that he was the father of the *Aſſyrians*, called *Aſſyres* in ſome old *Greek* Writers: not of the whole people of that great and unweildy Empire, who ſomtimes generally paſs by the name of *Aſſyrians*; but of the people of *Aſſyria* ſtrictly and properly ſo called, as it denotes the Countrey about *Ninive* (the Regal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Juxta hunc circuitum* Adiabene, Aſſyria *priſcis temporibus vocata*, as in *Ammianus Marcellinus*, lib. 33. *Arphaxad* comes next after *Aſſur*, and him *Joſephus* makes to be the father of the *Chaldæans*, called antiently *Arphaxadai*, if he tells us true. But others tell us, and that more probably, perhaps, that he planted in that part of *Aſſyria*, which was firſt called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arrapachitis*; by which name it occurreth in the Tables of *Ptolemy*. *Lud* the fourth Son, is generally ſaid to be the father of the *Lydians*, a people of *Aſia* the leſs; the names of *Lud* and *Lydi* (or Λύδοι, as the *Grecians* call them) being much alike. And it is poſſible enough that ſome of the poſterity of this *Lud*, might afterwards ſettle in thoſe parts, and call the Countrey by the name of *Lud* their common Anceſtor; as the poſterity of *Abraham* took unto themſelves the name of *Hebrews*, from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* ſhould in perſon go ſo farr from the reſt of the Sons of *Sem*, I cannot eaſily imagine. For *Aram* the fifth and laſt (as they ſtand in order of the Text) ſets himſelf down cloſe by his Brethren, in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites*, was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the ſeveral Provinces which were hence denominated, we ſhall hereafter ſpeak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Onely take now this teſtimony and acknowledgment from the Pen of *Strabo*; *Quos nos* Syros, *ipſi Syri* Aramenios, *&* Arameos *vocant*. Thoſe (ſaith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themſelves *Aremeans*, or *Aramenians*. In and about the ſame parts, did the four Sons of *Aram* ſet themſelves and their families; *Uz* in that part of *Syria*, which is called *Syria Damaſcena*, or *Aram Dammeſek*: the building of the great City of *Damaſcus*, being generally aſcribed unto him: and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damaſcus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hul*, or *Chul*, the next Son of *Aram*, whom *Joſephus* and Saint *Hierom* ſettle in *Armenia*, or *Aramenia*, as in *Strabo*: And that not improbably, conſidering that there is a Region in *Armenia* which *Stephanus* calls *Cholobetene*; and divers Cities in that Tract, which ſtill preſerve the Radicals of *Hul*, or *Chul*, as *Cholua*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimna*, *Colſa*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolemy*. For *Gether*, the third Son of *Aram*, it is not yet agreed on where to find his dwelling. *Joſephus*, contrary to all reaſon, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer*, with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the leſſer *Aſia*, and *Acarnania* of *Greece*. *Junius* ſets him down in the Province of *Caſſiotis*, and *Seleucis*, near his father *Aram*, where *Ptolemy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nation called by *Pliny*, *Gindareni*: *Bochartus* on the banks of the River *Centrites*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjectureth it might be, the controverſie were at an end. But being that we find in *Ptolemy*, a City of *Albania* (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the ſame Countrey called *Getras*; I ſee no cauſe why we ſhould ſeek further for the ſeat of *Gether*; though the *Greek* Copies (more ſubject to corruption in the times of ignorance than the *Latine* were) in ſtead of *Getara*, read *Gagara*. But if this be too farr to ſet him, we ſhall find *Mas*, or *Meſch*, the laſt Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern parts of *Syria*, towards *Meſopotamia*, near the Hill called *Maſius*; at the foot whereof there is a people, which *Stephanus* calls *Maſieni*; and thereabouts a River, which in *Xenophon* is named *Maſca*. Both which do evidently declare from what root they come.

Come we next to the ſecond branch of the Houſe of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*; whom we left ſettled in the Region of *Arrapachitis*, in, or near *Aſſyria*. Not farr from which in *Suſiana*, a Province of the *Perſian Empire*, there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Ptolemie*'s Tables; and in the 23 Book of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. Add unto this the authority of *Euſtathius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, Σάλα ἀφ' ȣ̃ Συσιανοὶ, The people of *Suſiana* came from *Sala*. But this, I conceive, muſt be underſtood onely of that part of this people, which lived in and about the City of *Sala*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Suſians*, or *Suſiani*, which borrowed their denomination from another root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the people of the *Hebræi*, or *Hebrews* do derive their name. And to him *Phaleg* his firſt-born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, ſituate on the River *Euphrates*, not farr from *Seleucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book *de Urbibus*, and by *Ptolemy* in his *Geography*; where it is placed right on the banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Charboras* mingles waters with it; but there corruptly called *Pharga*, in ſtead of *Phalga*.

But the great increaſe of *Sem*'s Poſterity came by *Joktan* the ſecond Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whoſe names are on Record in the tenth of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount in the Eaſt*. And here I muſt crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath thronged *Joktan* and his Sons into a little corner of *Arabia Felix*, where I can find no room for them, and leſs reaſon to place them. For being that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his Poſterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himſelf confeſſeth, it muſt needs be, that they had ſpread themſelves over all the Countrey before any of the Sons of *Joktan* were of age ſufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Joktan* is credibly ſuppoſed not to have been born when ſuch of *Noah*'s poſterity as are mentioned, *Gen.* 10. diſperſed themſelves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledg in two ſeveral places. Firſt, granting that neither *Phaleg*, nor *Joktan* were preſent at the building of *Babel*, *multo minus* Joktanis *filii poſt aliquot annos geniti*; much leſs the Sons of *Joktan* begot many years after; *Lib.* 1. *cap.* 16. And ſecondly, affirming that *Joktan* and his children came not within the curſe of *Confounded Languages*, *quia nondum erant geniti*, becauſe then unborn, *Cap.* 15. Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable, that *Joktan* and his children ſhould find room in the beſt parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his Poſterity had inhabited ſo long before. And as it is improbable that the Sons of *Chus* would plant themſelves in the worſt part of the Countrey for ſo many Ages; and leave the beſt and richeſt of it for ſome new Adventurers: So it is impoſſible, that the Sons of *Joktan* ſhould either be removed ſo farr from the reſt of the Houſe of *Arphaxad*, who are all planted on the Eaſt of the River *Tigris*, as was before ſhewed; or that they ſhould be able, had they been ſo minded, to break through the whole Countreys of the *Aſſyrians*, *Chuſites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmoſt coners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, muſt have a ſtronger Faith than mine; but it ſhall never conduce any thing to his *juſtification*. Nor am I moved at all at that which ſeems to me to be his weightieſt Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joſeph Be Abdallatif*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers, affirm, that *Joktan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine, and ſervant of *Abraham*; becauſe that people ſo report it for their greater glory.

And for the ſeveral Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whoſe original he aſcribes to the Sons of *Joktan*, I ſee ſo many tranſpoſitions of ſyllables, alterations even of *Radical* Letters, ſuch and ſo many wreſted *Originations*, as by the liberty of making *quidlibet ex quolibet*, it were no difficult matter to find place for them in any Countrey whatſoever. For how extorted and unnatural are the derivations of the *Allumæote* from *Almodad*, of the *Manitæ* from *Abimail*, of the *Jobaritæ* from *Jobab*? How impoſſible is it, that *Jarech* ſhould give name to the Iſle which *Ptolemy* calleth Νῆσος Ἱεράκων, *Inſula Jeracum*, or *Accipitrum*, as the *Latine* hath it, that is to ſay, the Iſle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks*, which were therein bread: There being another Iſland of the ſame name near unto *Sardinia* (ſo called for the ſelf-ſame reaſon) and a Town called *Jerax* in *Hammoniaca*, a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jarach* might as well lay claim (if that wou'd carry it) as to this *Jeracum*, or *Accipitrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* ſhould give name to *Urphre*, a poor Iſle of the *Red Sea*, *Obal* to *Sinus Avalites* in *Æthiopia*, on the other ſide of that Gulf? Or, that *Dicla* muſt be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reaſon, but becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm-tree*, of which that Countrey yields good plenty; as if ſome other Countreys did not yield as much? Theſe, and ſome other reaſons hereafter following, have made me bold to differ from that learned Man in this particular, whoſe induſtry and abilities I do otherwiſe honour; and rather to look for *Joktan* and his Sons in the Eaſt part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with reference to the Wilderneſs, or Land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Geneſis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet ſo farr I muſt yield to that learned man, that ſome of the Deſcendants of *Joktan* in long tract of time, moved with the rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themſelves upon the Sea-coaſts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this day, moved with the wealth and trade of *India*, have poſſeſſed themſelves of many of the Ports and Pieces on the ſhores thereof.

Now, the Text tells us of the Sons of *Joktan*, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount of the Eaſt*; ſo that by theſe two boundaries, *Meſha* and *Sephar*, their habitation muſt be found. I know *Bochartus* would have *Meſha* to be *Muſa*, a noted Port-Town on the South-weſt of *Arabia Felix*; and *Sephar*, to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-Eaſt of that Countrey; that City giving name to ſome Mount adjoining. But being they both lie directly South of the place in which *Moſes* wrote, I cannot ſee how this poſition can agree with the word of Scripture: and therefore we muſt look for both in ſome other place. And, firſt to find out *Meſha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himſelf, who maketh *Meſh*, the laſt of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem*, (according to the general opinion of moſt Writers elſe) to be planted in the mountainous tracts of *Meſopotamia*, from him called *Mons Maſius*; more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a *Mount of the Eaſt*; if it be the Southern part of Mount *Imaus*, by *Ptolemy* named *Bitigo*, by the Moderns *Gates*, extending from Mount *Caucaſus* to the *Cape Comari*, in the hither *India*, as *Poſtellus* a right learned man doth conceive it to be; We have without wore difficulty found out the dwellings of the Sons of *Joktan* according to the bounds laid down in Holy Scripture. But for fear this may not ſatisfie, for want of ſome Seconds to *Poſtellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Aria*, directly Eaſt from *Mons Maſius*, or the dwelling of *Meſh*, both in the Eaſt parts of the World, with reference unto the place where *Moſes* writ: *Mons Maſius* being placed by *Ptolemy* in the 74 degree of *Longitude*, and the 37 of *Latitude*; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more towards the Eaſt, but with no more than two degrees of *Latitude* ſuper-added to it. And this agreeth to the Poſition aſſigned to the Sons of *Joktan*, by *Joſephus*, *Euſebius*, and Saint *Hierom*; the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Joſephus*, that the *Joktanites* poſſeſſed all that Tract, ἀπὸ Κωφῆνος ποταμοῦ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς, ϗ τῆς πρὸς αὐτοῦ Συρίας τινὰ, which lieth about *Kophenus* a River of *India*, together with ſuch parts of *Syria* as did border near it. Theſe words being borrowed from *Joſephus*, both by *Euſebius* and Saint *Hierom*; the firſt in ſtead of *Syria*, reads *Seria*, and the other *Jeria*, but neither rightly: there being no ſuch place in the World as *Jeria*; and *Seria* (or the Countrey of the *Seres*) lying too farr off to border on *Cophenus* a River of *India*. *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we ſhould there read *Aria*; and withall, granting, as he may, that *Aria*, in the largeſt latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Paropamiſus* and *Arachoſia*, extendeth as farr Eaſtward as the River *Cophenus*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the Sons of *Joktan*, betwixt *Mons Maſius*, and *Siphare*, a Town of *Aria*: which probably might give name to ſome Mount adjoyning, as *Saphar*, by *Bochartus*, is ſuppoſed to do to ſome of the *Arabian* hills bordering near unto it. And as theſe ſituations do agree exactly with the meaning of thoſe antient Writers; ſo is it alſo very ſutable to the other Plantations of the Sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all diſpute, that *Phaleg* and *Joktan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when ſo many of the reſidue of *Noah*'s Poſterity removed toward *Shinaar*; kept themſelves under the tuition of their Grandfather *Noah*; or at leaſt wandred not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*: till *Joktan's* Sons being grown to be Fathers of *Families*, were forced to caſt about for new habitations. And when neceſſity compelled them to ſeek new ſeats, I would fain know, why they ſhould think of making themſeves a Way to *Arabia Felix*, through Countreys peopled, and poſſeſſed a long time before; when they had Elbow-room enough on the Eaſt of *Tigris*, and the unpeopled Countreys of ſome parts of *India* lay ſo near at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence, and as little forced, for ſome of their Plantations in the Eaſtern parts, as *Bochartus* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodad* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the *Metropolis* of *Meſopotamia*, not farr from *Meſha*, or *Mons Maſius* the Weſtern Boundary: and *Jarach* of the Nation of the *Arachoſians* inhabiting near *Siphare* the Eaſtern limit, aſſigned unto the Sons of *Joktan*. With what an eaſie change might *Obal* or *Chobal* be ſuppoſed to be the Father of the *Cabolites* of *Paropamiſus*? *Hadoram* of the *Orites* an *Indian* people near unto the other? But theſe North eaſtern parts being peopled, or not very pleaſant, how many of the Sons of *Joktan* ſhall we find in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bochartus* himſelf confeſſeth that the Land of *Ophir* (another of the Sons of *Joktan*) was a part of *India*, but whether *Sumatra*, *Taprobane*, or *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I diſpute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whoſe name are found in *Sabalaſſa* one of the mouths of the River *Indus*, *Sabana*, a City of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, a River in the ſame Tract, named *Sabanus*, and a City called *Sabe*: beſides the whole Nation of the *Sabai*, mentioned by *Dionyſius* in his *Periegeſis*. And though ſome late Criticks read it *Siba* in ſtead of *Sabai* (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Siba*, is confeſſed on all ſides) yet ſeeing *Euſtathius* finds the *Saba* in this Countrey alſo, I cannot ſee but that there ſhould be room enough in *India* for both people to dwell in. For *Abimail* another of the Sons of *Joktan*, we find more evident footſteps of him in the *Mali*, or *Malli*, an *Indian* people, in *Maleta* and *Maliba*, two Towns of *India*, in *Malaus* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally, in *Malai Colon*, a Promontory of *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, than in the *Manita* of *Bochartus*. For, if *Abimail* ſignifie the Father of the *Mali*, as he ſaith it doth; he was more like to be the Father of the *Mali*, commonly and literally ſo called, whom we find in *India*; than that we ſhould be forced to look for them in the *Manita*, or look for the *Manita* in the houſe of *Abimail*. If *Dicla* muſt be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reaſon, than becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Countrey; I doubt not to find as many *Palms* to plant by amongſt the *Indians*, as *Bochartus* doth among the *Arabians*. And finally, if *Chatramis*, or *Chatramatitis* an *Arabian* Region, have ſuch reſemblance to the name of *Chatſarmaveth*, as to take that Appellation from him, as *Bochartus* telleth us it did: we may conclude with equal, if not better reaſon, that the *Chadramotitæ* an *Indian* people, ſeated upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whoſe ſtreams ſome of the reſidue of his Brethren had their habitations, had their firſt Original from that *Chatſarmaveth*. For *Havilah*, or *Chavilah*, the Antients generally ſet him in the *Indies* alſo, not farr from *Saba* and *Ophir*, two of his Brethren: to whoſe Authority I ſubmit, becauſe I find a *Province* in the Golden *Cherſoneſe*, called the Kingdom of *Ava*, and though it be ſo called from this very Man. And I conceive the like alſo of the reſt of the *Joktanites*, whoſe habitations might be found in *India*, or near *Meſh* and *Sephar*, if one would take that liberty of *Criticizing*, altering and tranſpoſing Letters, as *Bochartus* doth onely to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this ſhort Eſſay may inform the Reader, that *Bochartus* was too confident a lover of his own Opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium* Sephar *nomine, nec ulla poſterorum* Joktan *in* Aria, *aut* India *veſtigia ſupereſſe*; that is to ſay, that there is no ſuch place as *Sephar*, nor any tract or footſtep of the Sons of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is ſo clearly evidenced.

Theſe were the Generations and Diſperſions of the Sons of *Sem*, contracted in a narrower compaſs, than either the Poſterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*; of whom the firſt, beſides the great footing which he had in *Aſia*, did poſſeſs all *Africk*; and the other, beſides his ſhare in the greater *Aſia*, filled almoſt all the leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Iſles thereof, with his fruiful Progeny. And firſt beginning with *Cham*, we find him the Father of four Sons, that is to ſay, *Chus*, *Mizraim*, *Phut*, and *Canaan*; of which onely *Phut* the third Son hath no iſſue aſſigned him. To *Chuſh* the eldeſt Son were born *Seba*, and *Havilah*, and *Sabta*, *Nimrod*, *Sabtecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Dedan*. And unto *Mizraim* the ſecond Son, were born *Ludim*, and *Amamim*, *Lehabim*, *Naphtuhim*, *Pathruſim*, *Caphtorim*, and *Caſluhim*, who was the Father of *Philiſtim*. Of *Canaan*, and his iſſue we ſhall ſpeak hereafter. In the mean time we will diſpoſe of the firſt branches of the ſtock of *Cham*, beginning firſt with *Chus* the eldeſt, and ſo deſcending to the reſt of this firſt Line. And firſt for *Chus*, though it be generally ſaid by the *Greek* and *Jewiſh* Writers, that he was the Father of the *Æthiopians* in the heart of *Africa*; yet upon better ſearch, he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, poſſeſſing himſelf of a good part of that which is called *Petræa*, and ſome part of *Arabia Felix*: For whereas *Zippora* the Wiſe of *Moſes*, was daughter unto *Jethro* the Prieſt or Prince of *Madian*, *Exod.* 2. v. 16, &c and yet is called an *Æthiopian woman*, in the 12. of *Numb.* v. 1. it muſt needs be, that by *Æthiopian* in the laſt place, muſt be meant an *Arabian*: for *Madian* doubtleſs was a City of *Arabia* near unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Joſephus* for the *Jews*, *Ptolemy* for the *Grecians*, and S. *Hierom* for the *Latine* Writers. But we ſhall canvaſs this more throughly in its proper place: the ſtrength of reaſon ſerving for a ſupplement of that one defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the name of *Chus* in any of the Cities, Promontories, Hills or Rivers of that Countrey, by which his planting there might be made more evident. *Seba*, the eldeſt Son of *Chus*, ſets himſelf down on the ſhores of the *Red Sea*, as near his Father as he could; becoming the Original of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Sabæans*; the ſo much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the beſt Frankincenſe, being their *Metropolis*, or head City. A Nation ſeated in the moſt Southern part of this *Peninſula*, ſubject in *Solomon*'s time to that famous Lady called in the old Teſtament from her Coutrey, the Queen of *Sheba*; and in the new Teſtament from the ſituation of it, the Queen of the South: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable teſtimony.

For *Havilah*, or *Chavilah*, the ſecond of the Sons of *Chuſh*, moſt probable it is, that he poſſeſſed himſelf of that part of *Arabia*, which lay neareſt unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to incompaſs, *Gen.* 2. v. 21. ſome footſteps of his name remain in the *Chaulotai* of *Eratoſthenes*, the *Chaulaſii* of *Feſtus Anienus*, but more plainly in the *Chavelei* of *Pliny*; being all three but one People, though thus diverſly named; and all of them planted towards the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo to *Babylon*. On the ſame ſhore of the *Perſian* Gulf, we are to look for *Sabta* the third Son of *Chus*, where *Ptolemy* informs us of a City called *Saphta*, and of an Iſland in the ſame Gulf called *Sophtha* alſo. From whence in probability, ſome of this people might paſs over into *Perſia*, on the other ſide of the Gulf, and there give name to the *Sabtai*, which by the tranſpoſition of the Lette *T*, are by *Ptolemy* called *Stabai*. That *Nimrod* the fourth Son of *Chus*, did firſt plant himſelf in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is ſo plain and poſitive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabteca* the fifth Son, I confeſs I can find no track in any of the antient Authors. For why we ſhould admit of ſo great a change, as firſt, of *B* into *M*, and then, of *T* into *D* (which could not eaſily be done by very careleſs Tranſcribers) and ſo find *Sabteca* in *Samidace*, a City or Countrey of the *Carmanians* on the *Perſian* ſide of the Gulf, I can ſee no reaſon: And therefore rather chuſe to mingle him and his Poſterity with the Sons of *Sabta*, and the children of his brother *Regma*, all planted on the ſame ſhore of the *Perſian* Gulf. For that *Regma* (our *Engliſh* Bibles call him *Raama*) was ſettled on the banks of the Bay of *Perſia*, hath ſo good authority, that there is no diſpute to be made of that: *Ptolemy* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regama* it is called in the *Latine* Tranſlation) by which name it occurreth in *Stephanus* alſo in his Book *De Urbibus*, Καὶ Ῥῆγμα περὶ τὸν Περσικὸν κόλπον. *And Regma on the Perſian Gulf*, as his words there are. And not farr thence we are to look for his Son *Sheba*; both being joyned together in the Book of God; and both there ſaid to buſie and employ themſelves in the trade of Merchandizing; *The Merchants of* Shebah, *and* Raamah (ſaith the Text) *they were thy Merchants*; *they occupied in thy Fairs with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold*, Ezek. 27. *v.* 22. So that the Nations of the *Sabeans*, though deſcended at the firſt from ſeveral parents, inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix* from one Sea to the other ; as evidently appeareth by thoſe words of *Pliny* ; where he informeth us moſt truly, that the *Sabæans*, an *Arabian* people, well known for their abundance of Frankincenſe, *ad utraque maria porrectis gentibus habitare*, had ſpread themſelves over all the Countrey, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Perſia*. Finally, in the ſame track we find *Dedan* the other ſon of *Regma*, and the laſt of all the ſons of *Chus* : there being on the mouth of the *Perſian* Gulf (but on the *Arabian* coaſt thereof) not only a City, but a Province called by the name of *Dedan*, which both *Ortelius* and ſome other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than ſo, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joyns him with his brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the ſame trade of Merchandiſe ; *The men of* Dedan *were thy Merchants*, chap. 27. 15. Sheba, *and* Dedan, *and the Merchants of* Tarſhiſh, chap. 38. 13. *They brought thee horns of Ivory and Ebony*, ſaith the Prophet in the former Text.

The head of the next houſe of the race of *Cham*, was *Miſraim* the ſecond ſon, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder brother *Chus* and his poſterity, in the rich and delectable Countries of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylon*, or the land of *Shinaar*, he went with his own ſons, and his Brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no queſtion amongſt the Learned, though all the tracks and footſteps of *Miſraim* be quite worn out : unleſs any thing of it were preſerved in the word *Meſori*, by which the *Egyptians* antiently called the firſt moneth in the year : or in that of *Meſre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt* to his day : But being *Egypt* is called *Miſriam* in the *Hebrew* bibles, that only is ſufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*, let us look after his ſon *Ludim*, whom he ſent out to people *Æthiopia*, the next Countrey to him. For that this *Ludim* was the father of thoſe *Æthiopians*, many good reaſons are alleaged. Firſt, from the Text of *Eſaiah*, chap. 66. 19. and *Jer*. 46 9. where *Lud* is ſaid to be very *skilful in drawing the Bow* ; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Ethiopians* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the antient Writers. Secondly, from the joyning of the children or people of *Ludim* with thoſe of *Phul*, in the place of *Eſaiah* before cited : which *Phul* may very probably be the City which the *Gracians* call *Philæ*, ſituate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Ethiopia*, and antiently inhabited both by the *Ethiopians* and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and ſome others of the Antients witneſs. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the children of *Lud* or *Ludim* ; with thoſe of *Chus*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and thoſe of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*, both next neighbours to them ; as in *Ezek*. 30. ver. 5. and that of *Jer*. above-mentioned ; (where our Engliſh very ſtrangly rendreth *Ludim* by the name of *Lydians*) which dwell too far off both from *Chuſh* and *Phut*, to be joyned together in one action. But of this, more than enough already, the Arguments being ſo ſtrong, and ſo moſt demonſtrative. I go on therefore to the next ; only obſerving by the way, that the *Ethiopians* mentioned in the Texts of our *Engliſh* Bibles, are not theſe of *Africa*, but the *Chuſites* of *Arabia Felix* ; our Tranſlators alwaies rendring *Chus*, by *Ethiopia*. The *Anamim*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unleſs they were the ſame with the *Amantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammanientes* of *Pliny*, a people ſeated on the ſea-ſide neer the greater *Syrtis*, to which the neighbourhood of the *Lehabim* may give ſome countenance ; who ſeem to be the ſame with the people of *Lybia*, a Province ſeated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenaica*, and were called *Lybiægyptii* by the old Geographers, to difference them from the Inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, wherof more hereafter. For the *Naphthuhim*, I am alſo at a loſs, unleſs we find them ſomewhere in *Cyrenaica* ; and that ſome remnant of the name be in *Aptuchi fanum*, which occurs in *Ptolemy*. But for the *Pathruſin*, I think no queſtion need be made, but that they were the people of that Province of *Egypt*, which in divers places of the Scripture is called *Pathros*, as *Eſay* 11. 11. *Jer*. 44. 1. *Ezek*. 29. 14. and ſeems to be that part of *Egypt*, which is called *Thebais*, where *Ptolemy* placeth *Pathyris*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebe*. (And *Pathuris* the *Greek* or *Septuagint* term *that*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Pathros*.)

Hitherto we have found the Nations which deſcended from the ſons of *Miſraim*, in *Egypt*, and the Countries adjoyning to it. And there, or thereabouts we are to look for *Cophtorim*, and *Caſluhim*, the two ſons remaining. I know there hath been great pains taken to find the *Caſluhim* in *Colchis*, and the *Cophtorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus* ; not far from *Trabezond* ; where notwithſtanding there is no track of the names remaining But this being ſo far off from *Egypt*, in and near which, both *Miſraim* himſelf, and all the reſt of his ſons were planted ; I can by no means yield to it, though to content ſuch learned men as would fain have it ſo, I think it poſſible enough that ſome of the *Egyptians* in ſucceding times, moved with the fame of that great wealth which *Colchis* was ſuppoſed to yield to ſome Adventurers ; might leave their native ſoyl to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the learned *Junius*, that the *Caſluhim* were firſt planted in the Region of *Caſſiotis* (not far from *Damiata*, a chief town of *Egypt*) which retains ſomewhat of the name ; and ſo doth *Coptus*, an old City of *Egypt*, of the name of *Cophtorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Cophti*, which at this day is given to the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, may not be thought to have its firſt riſe from *Cophtorim*, rather than that they are [illegible]lled *quaſi Ægophti*, corruptly for *Ægyptii*, I muſt needs ſay I am not ſatisfied. Beſides, it being clear in Scripture, that the *Caſluhim* and *Cophtorim* dwelt neer together, and that the *Philiſtims* are ſaid to deſcend from *Caſluhim* ; if *Caſluhim* ſhould go for *Colchis*, and *Cophtorim* for *Cappadocia*, we muſt firſt carry them I know not how far off from the reſt of their Brethren, againſt the method of all Plantations ; and then bring the *Philiſtims* back again from *Colchis*, to find a dwelling on the borders of the Land of *Egypt*, from whence their Anceſtors and Allies were ſo far remote. Whereas by ſetling theſe two Nations amongſt the reſt of their Brethren, the journey of the *Philiſtims* unto *Canaan*, and ſetling themſelves in the poſſeſſions of the *Avim* (a *Canaa-*

nitiſh people) whom they had ſubdued, *Deut.* 2.25. is both eaſie and natural. But before we follow theſe *Philiſtims* further in their new Plantation among the *Canaanites*, we will firſt ſee what became of *Phut*, the third ſon of *Cham*. And if we guide our ſelves in this Labyrinth by the clew of Antiquity, we ſhall find him ſetled Weſt of his Brother *Miſraim*, and ſo to the *Atlantick* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their dominions. Some Relicts of the name there were in the time of *Joſephus*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Pliny* makes mention of it alſo. *Ptolemy* takes notice of a River in thoſe parts called *Pthuth*, which comes very neer it. And ſo doth *Iſidore*, Origin. l. 2. But St. *Hierome* in my mind puts it out of doubt, whoſe words I will put down, and ſo leave *Africa*; Phut *Lybiæ, à quo & Mauritaniæ fluvius uſque ad præſens* Phut *dicitur, omniſque circa eum Regio* Phutenſis; *cujus rei multi Scriptores tam Græci quam Latini teſtes ſunt.* Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*; and many antient Writers both *Greeks* and *Latin* called to witneſs to it.

And now we ſhould proceed to *Canaan* and his ſons (eleven in all) being the fourth and laſt branch of the houſe of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or neer the land of *Canaan*, we ſhall find them there; or meet with them in ſuch Plantations and Colonies as they ſent abroad, under the title of *Phœnicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whoſe Tents God hath promiſed to enlarge, as indeed he did; ſpreading his branches over *Europe*, the leſſer *Aſia*, and a great part of the greater alſo. To him were born ſeven ſons in all, that is to ſay, *Gomer*, and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal*, *Meſech*, and *Thyras*: Of which, the Iſſue of two only are upon record, viz. *Aſchenaz*, *Riphath*, and *Togarma*, the ſons of *Gomer*; *Eliſha*, *Tarſhiſh*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, the ſons of *Javan*. And firſt for *Gomer* and his ſons, they firſt poſſeſſed themſelves of convenient dwellings in the greater, and the leſſer *Aſia*. *Gomer* himſelf firſt planting in the mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long retained his name; and after changing that unpleaſant, and unfruitful dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeris*, in the daies of *Pliny*, did preſerve his memory. For that the poſterity and people of *Gomer*, called at firſt *Gomerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimbri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongſt the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himſelf in the greater *Phrygia*, ſo did his eldeſt ſon *Aſchenaz* in *Phrygia minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, ſpreading himſelf along upon the *Helleſpont*, and thoſe Greekiſh Seas, as far as *Bithynia*. In all which places there were left ſome memory of this Plantation. For in *Bithynia* there is a Bay called *Sinus Aſcanius*, together with a River, and a Lake of the ſame name alſo. And in the leſſer *Phrygia*, and the Countrey of *Troas*, there was both a City and a Province adjoyning, antiently known by the name of *Aſcania*; and the *Aſcania Inſula* alſo on the coaſts thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in honour of this *Aſchenaz*, the Kings and great men of thoſe parts, took the name of *Aſcanius*. Of which name, beſides *Aſcanius* the ſon of *Æneas*, we find a King mentioned in the ſecond of *Homers Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the ſiege of *Troy*. In the ſame quarters of the World we find *Riphath* alſo, the founder of the *Riphai*, a people dwelling in the Eaſt parts of *Bithynia*, and ſpreading alſo over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are ſome remnants of his name to be found amongſt the antients. For beſides that *Joſephus* ſaith expreſly, that the *Paphlagonians* antiently were called *Riphai*; there is mention in *Apollonius Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebaus*, which riſing in *Bithynia*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Pontus Euxinus*, neer to *Paphlagonia*, of which River *Pliny* alſo doth inform us; and *Stephanus* doth not only acquaint us with the River it ſelf, but tells us alſo of a Region of the ſame name, and of a people thereabouts, which are called *Rhebai*. Nor need we look much further to find out the ſeat of *Togarma* the third ſon of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joyneth with his father, as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judæa*; Gomer *and all his bands, the houſe of* Togarma *in the North quarters, and all his bands*, cap. 38.6. So that they do not gheſs amiſs who place *Togarma* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Country not only bordering neer to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the north of the land of *Canaan*, but very well ſtocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horſes, as *Strabo* teſtifieth in the 11 Book of his *Geography*; with which commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the ſame Prophet tells us of them, cap 27.14. But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarma's* dwelling muſt be found in *Cappadocia*; we muſt firſt know that the Greek Tranſlators call him generally by the name of *Torgama*; and then, that antiently there was a people in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trocmi*, and *Tully*, *Trogmi*; by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmeni*, and *Trogmades* in the Council of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyriacus* Biſhop of the *Trogmades* (Κυριακὸς Ἐπίσκοπος Τρογμάδων) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the ſons of *Gomer*, we will next perſue the reſt of the ſons of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his four ſons we will keep together. And the next ſon of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much diſpute and difference amongſt our Antiquaries; ſome making him the Father of the *Scythians*, ſome of the *Goths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that ſuch a terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but ſuch terrible Nations. And poſſible enough it is, that ſome of his poſterity in ſucceeding times, finding their own ſeats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be the founders of ſome *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nations; but that *Magog* himſelf in his firſt Plantation, ſhould wander ſo far out of the way from the reſt of his brethren, when he had elbow-room enough amongſt them, I cannot eaſily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogareus*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Colchis*; and read in *Pliny*, that the City of *Cœle-Syria* which the *Grecians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themſelves called *Magog*: I ſhall not trouble my ſelf to look for *Magog* any where elſe, than in thoſe Countries where they have left ſuch evident Land-marks to diſcern themſelves by.

But this we ſhall the better ſee by looking out the dwellings of his two brethren, *Meſech* and *Tubal*, who being joyned together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek* cap. 38.2 and 39. 1. are very unlike to have their dwellings far aſunder: or that they could concur in any publick action againſt the *Jews*, according to the ſcope and purpoſe of the holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Meſech*, whom the Antients named *Moſech*, ſeated himſelf on the North and the North-Eaſt of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and ſo unto the *Caſpian*, or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that tract runs a ridge of Hills, which *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moſchici*, diſterminating *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and moſt like to be the dwelling of *Meſech* or *Moſech*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, becauſe *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally joyn together with *Meſech*, is by moſt Writers ſaid to have ſettled himſelf in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Joſephus* alſo telling us, that antiently the *Ibers* were called *Thobeli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on ſome new occaſion. And hereunto the conſtant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives ſome good authority, who boaſt of their deſcent from *Tubal*: which can no otherwiſe be granted, than as they were a Colony of theſe *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principal Rivers is ſtill called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Son of *Japhet*, it is moſt plain by the authority of Scripture (were there no proof elſe) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who in the book of *Daniel*, and that of *Heſter*, are repreſented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of thoſe who fix'd themſelves in either, or in both the *Aſia's*; let us look on *Thyras*, *Javan*, and the Sons of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the *leſſer Aſia*, filled all *Europe*, by degrees, with their numerous progenies. And firſt, beginning with *Javan* as the Elder brother, moſt Authors make him the Original of thoſe *Greek* Nations which paſs under the general name of *Iones*; and there is very good ground for the aſſertion, conſidering that the *Greek* Tranſlators of the Bible, inſtead of *Javan*, read *Jovan*, and that all thoſe who elſewhere ordinarily are called *Iones*, are by *Homer* one of the antienteſt of the *Greeks* named *Joanes*. Now *Javan* and *Jvan* ſound ſo like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the ſame. A name not only proper to the *Athenians*, and their *Colonies*, (though probable enough firſt belonging to them of *Attica*) but comprehending the *Bœotians* and *Achæans* alſo; yea, and extending alſo into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan.* 8. 21. where *Alexander* the Great, in the Hebrew is called King of *Javan*, which we *Engliſh*, *Gracia*. Nor do we much disjoyn *Javan* from the reſt of that ſtock, by carrying him croſs the ſeas into another part of the world; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his ſecond Plantation; And leaving him well ſettled in the *greater Phrygia*, and his ſon *Askenaz* in the *leſſer*; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) paſs over the *Helleſpont*, and plant himſelf in *Attica*, called at firſt *Ionia*, ſaith *Plutarch* in the life of *Theſeus*. Or if any one notwithſtanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecatæus* that the *Iones* came out of *Aſia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpoſe) I ſhall not much contend againſt that opinion: ſo it be alſo granted on the other ſide, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the ſhores of *Aſia*, paſſed over into *Greece*, as a land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Eliſha* his eldeſt ſon, the Father of the *Æoles*, or *Æolians*, on the *Aſian* ſide, as *Joſephus* hath it; and the founder of *Elis* in *Peloponneſus* and planter of the *Grecian* Iſles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, 27. 7. are called the Iſles of *Eliſha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Iſles of *Greece*; which by the Prophet is affirmed of the Iſles of *Eliſha*; namely, that the inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blue* and *Purple*: in which ſome of the *Grecian* Iſles were ſuch excellent Artizans, that *Carpathus* had the name of *Porphyris*: and *Cythera* was called πορφυροῦσα, only from the abundance of *Purple*, which they had amongſt them. Not to ſay any thing of *Coos*, *Niſyrus* and *Gyarus*, and ſome other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors for that commodity. A ſhorter journey, but withal a far ſhorter Territory fell to the lot of *Tarſhiſh* the ſecond ſon; whom *Javan*, when he travelled further upon new diſcoveries, left ſettled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the leſſer *Aſia*, where either he, or ſome of his poſterity, in honour of them, built the City of *Tarſus*, the Principal City of that Province. For that *Tarſhiſh* in thoſe early days ſhould go into *Spain*, and there build *Tarteſſus*, I take to be a ſtrange (if not idle) *Romance*; that town being built by the *Phœnicians*, many ages after, without relation unto *Tarkiſh*, or his memory either. What Voyages or Plantations thoſe of *Cilicia* or *Tarſus* made in times ſucceeding, as I no where find, ſo is it not material to my preſent purpoſe; which principally is to ſettle the Sons of *Noah* in their firſt habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim* the third ſon of *Javan*, whom *Joſephus* ſettleth firſt in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Citium*, the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, thence ſurnamed Κιτιεὺς, *Joſephus* is herein followed by St. *Hierome* in his Notes on *Geneſis*, in whoſe time (as *Pintus* tells us in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the town of *Citium* was ſtill ſtanding; ſo do *Euſtathius* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* ſets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. *After that* (ſaith the Author) Alexander *the Son of* Philip, *went forth of the land of* Chethim, *and ſlew* Darius *King of the Perſians and Medes*, cap. 1. v. 1. And after in the 8. chap. of the ſame Book. v. 5. *Perſeus* King of *Macedon* is called King of the *Cittims*. But this doth no way contradict that of his firſt Planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reaſon of the neighbour-hood of his brother *Tarſhiſh* (*Cilicia* and the City of *Tarſus* lying near unto it;) But finding in time that Iſland to be either too barren, or too ſmall for his people; and that the other Parts both of *Greece* and *Aſia* were taken up already by the firſt Adventurers, he might finally fix himſelf, or ſome of his poſterity, in *Macedonia*, as a ſpare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he or any of his ſons planted firſt in *Italy*, which I ſee *Bochartus* would fain have, were againſt the method of Plantations; and he muſt give them wings to fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet mankind was not taught the uſe of ſhipping, or not accuſtomed at leaſt to make long voyages. But that in courſe of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contein its multitudes, ſome of the race of *Cittim* might paſs over into *Italy*, the paſſage thither from ſome of the Ports of *Greece* being ſhort and eaſie, I am apt enough to believe, and in its proper place ſhall declare my ſelf for it. Nor can I otherwiſe agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom againſt all right and reaſon he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Country, to be named of him; whom the *Greeks*, miſtaking the Letter *Daleth* for that of *Reſh* (as indeed the Letters are ſo like that one may very eaſily be miſtook for the other) moſt commonly preſent unto us by the name of *Rhodanim*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to ſettle *Rhodanim* for a while in the Iſle of *Rhodes*, lying ſo neer the dwellings of his other brethren; till wanting room for the increaſe of his poſterity in ſo ſmall an Iſland, he might coaſt along the ſhores of *Peloponneſus*, and fix himſelf finally in *Epirus* by his brother *Eliſha*, where in the Province of the *Moloſſians*, we ſhall find a City called *Dodona*, without any ſuch miſtake or change of letters, as before is mentioned. For that the 3 furtheſt parts of *Europe* in reſpect of *Aſia*, ſhould be planted all at once by theſe ſons of *Javan*, is ſo incredible an imagination, that he muſt have a very ſtrong fancy, or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally, as for *Thyras* the laſt Son of *Japhet*, having accompanied his brother *Javan* to the ſhores of *Aſia*, and ſeeing him paſſed over the Seas to *Greece*, he took the opportunity of the next ſtraight or *Fretum* (ſince called *Thracius Boſphorus*) and fixed himſelf in *Thrace*, which Countrey he gave name unto, as moſt writers teſtifie. Nor want there ſuch apparent footſteps of the name of *Thyras*, beſides the names of *Thraeia* (as ſome ſpell the word) which may add good authority to this general Teſtimony, there being both a River and an Haven-Town not far from *Bizantium*, which *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and *Mela* call *Athyras*, a River and Town called *Tyras* in the Province of *Mœſia*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof moſt of all the old *Geographers* have taken notice, and finally the *Thracians*, calling their God *Mars*, by the name of *Thuras*. Not to ſay any thing of *Tereus*, *Therops*, and ſome others of the Kings of *Thrace*; whoſe names come very near unto that of *Thyras*, as the firſt founder of their Nation.

Thus have we ſeen the ſeveral Generations and Diſperſions of the Sons of *Noah*, ſo far forth as their names are regiſtred in holy Scripture: theſe being the heads and leaders of thoſe ſeveral Tribes which joined together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards diſperſed themſelves, as before was ſhewn. But that no more than theſe (I mean heads of Families) deſcended in ſo long a time from the loyns of *Noah*; that they ſhould have towards the new peopling of the world, in 100 year (for ſo long time it muſt be at leaſt from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more then 16 ſons in all; and 10 of thoſe 16 go childleſs alſo to the grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the people which were born ſince the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by inſpiration; or being met would joyn together in a work of ſo little profit; or that if *Noah* or *Sem* had been there amongſt them, they would not have diſſuaded them from that fooliſh enterpriſe. And therefore I ſhould rather be of their opinion; which think that *Noah* fixed himſelf in thoſe parts, which lay neareſt to the place where the Ark took land: and having planted as far Eaſtward as he thought convenient, ſent out the ſurpluſage of his people under the Conduct of one or more of theſe *Undertakers*, directing them perhaps to the land of *Shinaar*, where himſelf had dwelt before the *Flood*. Where being come, and deſtitute of graver and more ſober counſels, they fell upon that vain attempt which became their ruine; and made them ſcatter and diſperſe themſelves into ſo many companies. For in my mind Sir *Walter Raleigh* pleads the point exceeding ſtrongly, that it muſt needs be that *Noah* was ſettled in the Eaſt, and had well peopled all thoſe parts which lay neareſt to him, before he ſent this *Troop* abroad upon new diſcoveries. For being it is expreſly ſaid in holy Scripture, *that as they went from the Eaſt, they found a plain in the land of Shinaar*; it muſt needs follow without controverſie, that they came from the *Eaſt* Countreys into *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, and not from any part of *Armenia* (as the Vulgar opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countreys whence they came were not left utterly deſolate upon this remove, but very ſufficiently provided both of men and Cities, appeareth by thoſe huge Armies which *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*, and *Staurobates* a King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the Field. Of whom the firſt being invaded by *Ninus* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, encountred him with an Army of 400000. fighting men; the other on the like occaſion out-vied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did conſiſt, as we read in *Diodorus Siculus*, of three millions and an half of men, beſides 10000. armed Waggons, whereof if we believe but the third part, it may ſerve to prove that the Eaſt muſt needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For, Conſidering that *Ninus* the husband of *Semiramis* was but the third in deſcent from *Nimrod*, (that is to ſay, the Son of *Belus*, the ſon of *Nimrod*) it had been a moſt impoſſible thing that ſuch a vaſt increaſe ſhould be made onely out of *Colonies* in ſo ſhort a time, as needs muſt be between the planting of the Countreys before ſpecified, and theſe two great actions; unleſs God raiſed them out of ſtones, or by ſome ſuch miracle, to abate the Pride of theſe Uſurpers over other Nations. Without a miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wiſe man would expect to find) it is, *I ſay*, a thing impoſſible that *Staurobates* ſhould exceed *Semiramis* in number of men, as *Diodorus* ſaith he did; he being but a Caſtling of a ſecond ſwarm, and ſhe the great Commandreſs of that part of the World from whence he came upon a ſecond or third Plantation. Adde unto this, that thoſe who have Recorded the Acts of *Alexander* the great, aſſure us that he found more Cities, and Sumptuoſities in that little Kingdom of *Porus*, which lay ſide by ſide to the Eaſt of the River *Indus*, than in all his other Travels and Undertakings: And this may ſerve inſtead of a further Evidence, that the Eaſt Countreys were not planted after this diſperſion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under the forms of Government, as ſoon as any in the World. Nor know I elſe where to find either *Noah* himſelf, or *Sem* and *Japhet*, unleſs they ſtaid behind with their father *Noah*, or were diſpoſed of by themſelves in their ſeveral quarters: there being none of thoſe, though moſt diligent men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this diſperſion, that either ſpeak of any Nations planted by them, or of their ſetling in the Colonies of any one of their deſcendants. Which is to me a very ſtrong Argument that they came not with the reſt to the plains of *Shinaar*, but tarryed ſtill in thoſe habitations wherein God had placed them.

Againſt this I can ſee but two Objections of any moment; one from the Text, the other from an old Tradition amongſt the Jews. That from the Text is gathered from the words of *Moſes*, where having made his Catalogue of the Families of the ſons of *Noah*, he adds, *And by theſe were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood, Gen.* 10. *v. ult.* But theſe words, as I take it, do relate only unto that diviſion which was made upon occaſion of the *confuſion of Languages*, when they were forced to give over their work, and ſort themſelves into ſeveral Companies: and not to ſuch Plantations as were made before: who being all of one tongue, though in divers dwellings, could not be looked upon as ſeveral and divided Nations. For the Tradition of the *Jews*, 'tis this, That from the beginning of the world to the building of *Babel*, that Language which in after-times was called the *Hebrew*, was the common Language of Mankind: & that it did continue uncorrupt in the houſe of *Heber* (whence it had the name) becauſe he joyned not with the reſt in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may poſſibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-ſpring of *Noah* which came not with the reſt to the Plains of *Shinaar*, and conſequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curſe of *confounded Languages*, but muſt needs ſpeak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as thoſe deſcended of the loyns of *Heber*. But againſt this Tradition, and the conſequents of it, there are ſome things to be objected. For firſt it is but a *Tradition*, and therefore of no ſure foundation to build upon. And ſecondly, it is ſuch a *Tradition* as holds no good coherence with the truth of Story; it being a moſt clear & demonſtrative truth, that the *Hebrew* tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Meſopotamia*, but that which he found ſpoken in the Land of *Canaan* at his coming thither, to which both he and his poſterity did conform themſelves. Or had it been the Language of *Heber*, as they ſay it was, (but moſt undoubtedly was not) yet thirdly, had this been a privilege conferred on *Heber*, that he and his poſterity ſhould ſpeak the Original Language without alteration or corruption, it muſt have been extended to all thoſe of the houſe of *Joktan* which deſcended from him; as alſo to the houſe of *Laban* in *Padan Aram*, and to the *Moabites* and the *Ammonites* as the ſeed of *Lot*; and finally to the *Iſhmaelites* and *Idumaans*, deſcended of *Abraham* and *Eſau*; and not be limited and confined only to the houſe of *Jacob*. Either all theſe muſt be partakers of ſo great a privilege, becauſe their father *Heber* had obtained it for himſelf and his; or elſe it was not ſuch a privilege, or given ſo univerſally and incommunicably to the houſe of *Heber*, as they ſay it was. So the Tradition falls to the ground as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that thoſe who ſtaid behind with *Noah* ſpake the ſame Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the *Hebrew*, or what elſe ſoever it was) I ſee no reaſon to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into ſeveral Languages or Dialects of the ſame one Language, by the commerce and intercourſe which they had with the Nations of a different ſpeech; as well as thoſe of *Judah* in ſo ſhort a time as the Captivity of *Babylon* had loſt the purity of that Language which they ſo much brag of; and could not underſtand their own Bibles at their coming home, but by an Interpreter. Of which ſee *Nehem.* c. 8. v. 7, 8.

But to proceed: On this diſperſion of the families of the ſons of *Noah*, it came to paſs, that though they all deſcended from one common Root, yet by the Situations of their ſeveral dwellings, they came to be of ſeveral tempers and affections; in which they were ſo different from one another, that it might ſeem they had been made at firſt out of ſeveral Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Du Bartas*,

> *O ſee how full of wonders ſtrange is nature,*
> *Sith in each* Climate, *not alone in ſtature,*
> *Strength, colour, hair; but that men differ do*
> *Both in their humours, and their manners too.*
> *The* Northern *man is fair, the* Southern *foul;*
> *That's white, this black; that ſmiles, and this doth ſcowl.*
> *Th' one's blithe and frolick, the other dull and froward;*
> *Th' one's full of courage, th' other a fearful coward,* &c.

The ground or reaſon of which difference is to be attributed to the different tempers of thoſe Countries in which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on thoſe ſeveral Countries: which do continue ſtill the ſame, though many times the Countries do ſhift and change their old Inhabitants. *Hinc illa ab antiquo vitia, & patriâ ſorte durantia, qua totas in hiſtoriis gentes aut commendant aut notant*, ſaith a Modern, but judicious Author. Two or three evidences of this truth will make it clear and evident to a practical judgment, which otherwiſe might appear obſcure in the ſearch of cauſes. *Florus* hath told us of the *Gauls*, *Primum eorum impetum eſſe majorem quam virorum, ſecundum minorem quam feminarum.* Which is the ſame which *Rob. Dallington* hath told us of the Modern *French*, That he begins an action like thunder, and ends it in a ſmoak. *Ut ſunt* Gallorum *ſubita* *ingenia*, ſaith *Cæſar* of the antient *Gauls*: and I believe the preſent French are altogether as raſh and hare-brain'd as the others were. *Gallia fœcunda Cauſidicorum*, was part of the Character of the *Ganls* in the time of *Juvenal*; and it is told us of the *French* by ſome late Obſervers, that there are commonly more Law-trials amongſt them in one year, than hath been in *England* ſince the Conqueſt. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholy rooted out of the Countrey, the ſeveral Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britons*, *Normans*, and *Goths* being in poſſeſſion of their ſeveral dwellings. Thus alſo it is ſaid by *Tacitus* of the antient *Germans*, *Diem noctemque continuare potando*, *nulli opprobrium*; that it was no diſgrace to any to ſpend the whole day and night in drinking: and more than ſo, *De jungendis affinitatibus, de bello denique & pace in conviviis conſultare*, that they conſulted over their Cups of their weightieſt buſineſſes. Since which time though all *Germany* hath ſhifted almoſt all her old inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Suedes*, *Avares*, *Thuringians*, *Danes*, *Sclaves*, *Hunns*, *Saxons*, and other Nations; yet ſtill thoſe ill cuſtoms are as much in uſe amongſt them, as ever formerly. To go a little further off; the old Philoſopher *Anacharſis* tells us of the antient *Grecians*, that at the beginning of their Feaſts they uſed little Goblets, πλησθέντες δὲ ἐν μεγάλοις πίνουσι, and greater towards the end, when they were almoſt drunken: which cuſtom ſtill remains amongſt them, as *G. Sandys* obſerveth, notwithſtanding the great length of time, and all the other changes of ſtate and people, which have hapned ſince. I ſhall not ſpeak here of the effeminateneſs of the *Aſiaticks*, or the cruelty or implacableneſs of the *African* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithſtanding the great and numerous Plantations of the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Saracens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, ſucceſſively, and reſpectively, in theſe ſeveral Countries. And therefore I conclude this point in theſe words of *Barclay*, *Hæret itaque in omni gente vis quædam inconcuſſa, quæ hominibus pro conditione terrarum in quibus naſci contigerit, ſua fata diviſerit.*

Nor is this all the conſequent of this diſperſion of the families of the ſons of *Noah*; the ſeparation of their perſons producing, firſt an alteration of affections, and that engendring natural Animoſities: which ſeconded by their ſeveral intereſſes and Reaſons of State, hath left almoſt no people without ſome ſuch enemy which doth particularly and perverſly croſs them in all their Counſels. Concerning which, take here the Obſervation of that notable Stateſman and Hiſtorian, *Philip de Comines*; which though it be with reference to the *Meridian* of his own time only, yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages, “ *In rebus humanis ita comparatum eſt*, *ut nullus fere ſit populus qnem non* “ *æmulis aliquis exerceat* &c. It is (ſaith he) ſo ordered in the ſtate of humane affairs, that there is almoſt “ no Nation without a more particular enemy. The *Engliſh* are enemies to the *French*, the *Scots* to the “ *Engliſh*; the *Portugueze* have the like inveterate hatred againſt the *Spaniards*. The Princes of *Italy* “ enjoy great poſſeſſions without any good title; but are continually oppoſed by the more potent Cities “ of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Luca*. The *Aragonian* Kings of *Naples* have found perpetual enemies of “ the Dukes of *Anjou*; as have the Dukes of *Milain*, of the houſe of *Orleans*. The Princes of *Italy*, and the “ *Florentines* have a ſtitch at *Venice*; as the States of *Genoa*, and *Sienna*, have againſt the *Florentines*. In “ *Germany* the animoſities have been great and of long continuance, between the houſes of *Auſtria* “ and *Bavaria*; the hatred grown beyond all hopes of reconciliation, which is between the *Switzers* “ and the *Auſtrian* family. The Dukes of *Cleve* and *Gulick* are alwaies upon ill terms with their neigh- “ bours of *Gelderland*: and in the North, the Cities on the *Baltick* Seas have their continual quarrels “ with the Kings of *Denmark*. Nor are the enmities any thing leſs, if they be not greater, which are “ diſcernable amongſt the people of *Aſia* and *Africk*, than thoſe that are above remembred. So far and to this purpoſe ſaith that notable and judicious Writer.

The conſideration of which points, if there were no other, were of it ſelf ſufficient to ſhew the neceſſary uſe of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as well for the underſtanding the affairs of the Ages paſt, as for commerce and correſpondency with the Nations preſent. For had no *Hiſtories* been written in the former times, in what a dull ignorance had we lived of all thoſe occurrences which do ſo much concern the whole ſtate of Mankind, and are our principal directors in life and action? in which reſpect the Orator moſt truly calleth it, *Magiſtram vitæ*. For upon the credit of this Hiſtory, the examples of our Anceſtors, the grounds of civil prudence, and the fames of men do moſt eſpecially depend. And certainly to draw back the mind to the contemplation of matters long agoe paſſed; to ſearch out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expreſſion, ſuch things as are found out on a diligent ſearch; to repreſent unto our eyes the changes of Times, the characters of Perſons, the uncertainties of Counſels, and the conveyances of Actions, the ſubtilties of Pretenſions, aud the ſecrets of State; muſt of neceſſity be a work of as publick uſe, as it is of great both pains and judgment. Beſides, it gives a kind of eternity to all ſuch men, who by their Counſels or Atchievements have deſerved nobly of thoſe Kingdoms, and Common-wealths, wherein they lived. And thereupon the *Orator* doth not only call it *Magiſtram vitæ*, but *Lucem veritatis*, *Teſtem temporis*, *Nuntiam vetuſtatis*, *& Vitæ memoriam*. According to which character, I find theſe Verſes ſet before a Chronicle of ſome Kings of *England* (more worth than all the Book beſides.)

For though in theſe daies Miracles be fled,
Yet this ſhall of good Hiſtories *be ſed,*
They call back time that's paſt, and give life to the dead.

Nor want there other motives to endear unto us the uſe of *Hiſtory*, beſides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding times; and the eternity (if I may ſay ſo) which it conferreth on the *Actors* themſelves, by the preſervation of their names from the ruines of Time, and the pit of Oblivion. For firſt, it ſtirreth men to Virtue, and deters them from Vice, by ſhewing forth the glorious memories of virtuous men, and the ill ſavour which is left behind men of ungodly life; and eſpecially keeps perſons of moſt eminent place from letting looſe the reins unto all licentiouſneſs, by repreſenting this to their conſideration, that all their actions ſhall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, it hath been a principal Conſerver of moſt Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of ſo many of the old Philoſophers; out of which a perfect body of Philoſophy, and others of the Liberal Arts hath been collected and digeſted. Thirdly, it is the beſt School-maſter in the Art of War, and Teacher of Stratagems, and in that can practically afford more punctual directions than can be otherwiſe obtained: and is withal the beſt Aſſiſtant to the Stateſman or Politician, who from hence draw their Obſervations and Concluſions, and become thereby ſerviceable to their Prince and Country, though never travelled more than amongſt their Books. So *Archimedes* in his Study, and *Demoſthenes* in his Orators Gown, endangered more the Enemies of their ſeveral Countries, than the *Athenians* or *Syracuſans* did by dint of ſword. And laſt of all, beſides theſe civil benefits and conſiderations, and the great help which it affords in the way of diſcourſe, there is no particular branch of knowledg more uſeful for the true and perfect underſtanding of holy Scripture, than that of Eccleſiaſtical and Profane Hiſtory; or which gives clearer light to many dark paſſages thereof, eſpecially in the Prophetical Writings of either Teſtament.

This, as it ſhews the neceſſary uſe and benefit which redounds from *Hiſtory*, ſo doth it ſerve to uſher in that commendation which belongs to the ſtudy of *Geography* alſo; without ſome knowledg wherein, the ſtudy of Hiſtory is neither ſo pleaſant, nor ſo profitable, as a judicious Reader would deſire to have it. It is true, *Geography* without *Hiſtory* hath life and motion, but very unſtable, and at random; but *Hiſtory* without *Geography*, like a dead carkaſs, hath neither life nor motion at all, or moves at leaſt but ſlowly on the underſtanding. For what delight or ſatisfaction can any man receive from the reading of Story, without he know ſomewhat of the places, and the conditions of the people, which are therein mentioned? In which regard *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian hath deſerved very well of all his Readers, premiſing to the Actions of every Country ſome brief deſcription of the place and chief Towns therein. For though the greatneſs of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledg of the place, which adds delight and ſatisfaction unto the reading of the ſtory, which conveys it to us. *Hiſtory* therefore and *Geography*, like the two Fires or Meteors which Philoſophers call *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, if joined together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threaten both with a certain ſhipwrack: and are like two Siſters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almoſt ſaid impiety) to be kept aſunder. So as that which Sir *Philip Sidney* ſaid of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

> *Her being was in him alone,*
> *And ſhe not being, he was none;*

may be as juſtly ſaid of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as of thoſe two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the ſtudy of *Geography*, which is exceeding uſeful to the reading of the holy Scriptures, as in diſcovering the ſituation of *Paradiſe*, the bounds and borders of thoſe Countries which are therein mentioned; eſpecially with relation to the travels of the *Patriarchs*, *Prophets*, *Evangeliſts* and *Apoſtles*, yea of *Chriſt* himſelf; not otherwiſe to be comprehended and underſtood, but by the help of *Geographical* Tables and deſcriptions. Beſides this, it is uſeful to moſt ſorts of men, as to *Aſtronomers*, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in ſeveral Countries; their ſeveral influences and aſpects, their riſing and ſetting, according to different *Horizons*. Secondly, to *Phyſicians*, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of mens bodies, according to the *Climes* they live in; the nature and growth of many *Simples* and Medicinal Drugs, whereof every Country under Heaven hath ſome more natural and proper to it ſelf than to any others. Thirdly, to *States-men*, who from hence draw their knowledg of the nature and diſpoſition of thoſe people, with whom they are to negotiate: the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms and the neighbouring Countries, with the extent of their reſpective Dominions both by Sea and Land: without the exact knowledg of which there would be a perpetual Seminary of Wars and diſcord. Fourthly, to *Merchants*, *Mariners* and *Souldiers*, the ſeveral Profeſſors of which kinds of life find nothing more neceſſary for them in their ſeveral Callings than a competent knowledg in *Geography*, which preſents to them many notable advantages, both for their profit and contentment. Finally, by the ſtudy of *Geography*, a man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far leſs danger and expence, acquaint himſelf with the particular deſcriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns and Caſtles, with all things conſiderable in the ſame, together with the cuſtoms, manners, and diſpoſitions of all Forein Nations: and that too in as full a manner, as if he had ſurveyed the one, and obſerved the other, by a perſonal viſit of the places repreſented to him.

Such is the neceſſary uſe which men of ingenuous Studies and Profeſſions do and may make of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, in the courſe of their Callings and Imployments. And there are ſome things alſo neceſſary to the knowledg of each, that we may ſtudy them with the greater benefit and contentation. To *Hiſtory* it is only requiſite that it be defined, diſtinguiſhed from ſuch Writings as do ſeem to challenge the name of *Hiſtories*, and that ſomewhat be premiſed of thoſe ſeveral *Epoches*, from which all people do begin their computations. But to *Geography*, it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate thoſe Terms, or ſecond Notions, which are not obvious to the underſtanding of every

Reader. Firſt then for *Hiſtory*, if we conſult the name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱστορεῖν, *i. e. videre*; and therefore properly doth ſignifie a Relation of ſuch remarkable actions at which the Author was an Eye-witneſs, if not an Agent. *Apud veteres enim* (ſaith *Iſidore*) *nemo ſcribebat* Hiſtoriam, *niſi is qui interfuiſſet, & ea quæ ſcribenda eſſent vidiſſet.* But now the cuſtomary uſe of the word hath taught it a more ample ſignification. *Hiſtory* being defined to be a *perfect Relation of all Occurrents obſervable happening in the State whereof it is written, deſcribed by the Motives, Pretexts, Conſultations, Speeches and Events*; *a ſpecial care being had both of time and place.*

As for the Writings which do challenge the name of *Hiſtory*, but indeed are really diſtinguiſhed from it, they are *Commentaries*, *Annals*, *Diaries*, or *Journals* and *Chronologies*. Firſt, *Commentaries* ſet down only a naked continuance of Events and Actions, without the Motives and Deſigns, the Counſels, Speeches, Occaſions and Pretexts of buſineſſes. So that *Cæſar*, with more modeſty than true propriety of ſpeech, applied the name of *Commentaries* to the beſt *Hiſtory* in the World. An Hiſtory commended by King *James* to his Son Prince *Henry*, above all other profane Authors, both for the ſweet flowing of the ſtyle, and the worthineſs of the matter it ſelf. "For I have ever (ſaith he) been of this opinion, "that of all *Ethnick* Emperours, or great Captains, he hath fartheſt exceeded both in his practice, and "in his precepts, for Martial affairs. Which makes me the more wonder at the ſtrange and unjuſt Cenſure of *Juſtus Lipſius*, who calls them *Nudam & ſimplicem narrationem*; for being entituled *Commentaries*, they do (ſaith he) *nil polliceri præter nomen* with pride and arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next, they are a bare recital only of the Actions happening every year, without regard had to the cauſes and pretexts, or any of the chief Ingredients required in Hiſtory. So that *Tacitus* had no other reaſon to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is diſtinguiſhed by the years of the Conſuls. Otherwiſe there is no great difference, as unto the matter, betwixt an *Hiſtory* and an *Annal*, the ſubject of them both being matter of State; and not ſuch trivial things as Triumphs, Pageants, and ſuch like, which ſtand not with the gravity and authority of Hiſtorical *Annals*: betwixt which and a *Diary* the ſame *Tacitus* (ſpeaking of ſome magnificent Structures which were built that year) doth make this difference; *Res illuſtres* Annalibus, *talia* diurnis *Urbis actis mandari*, that matters of the greater moment were committed to *Annals*, and unto *Diaries* the Acts and Accidents of a meaner nature. 3. But *Diaries*, beſides this difference in point of matter, are diſtinguiſhed from *Annals* alſo in point of time; a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the name imports, containing the Actions of each day; of which kind was the Chronicle called for by *Ahaſuerus*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in which he found the relation of the Treaſon intended againſt him by his Eunuchs. And of this kind was that of King *Edward* the ſixth, mentioned in the Hiſtory of his Life, by Sir *John Hayward*. 4. Laſt of all, for *Chronologies*, they are only bare ſupputations of times, with ſome brief touch upon the Actions therein happening, ſuch as are thoſe of *Euſebius*, *Functius*, *Calviſius* and *Helvicus*; of which laſt I dare give that teſtimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovid*, *viz.* that he is *perfectiſſimus in forma operis ſui*; though he and all the reſt are debtors to *Euſebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of theſe four, as out of the four Elements, the *Quinteſſence* of Hiſtory is extracted; borrowing from *Annals* time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* matter, from *Chronologies* conſent of time, and co-etanity of Princes; and thereto adding of her own all ſuch other Ornaments in which theſe four are found defective.

That which remains is to premiſe ſomewhat of theſe ſeveral *Epoches*, from whence particular States, Nations and people make their computations. Theſe have been very different in former times, according to the ſeveral occaſions took in ſeveral Countries. The *Jews* had ſeveral *Epoches* peculiar to themſelves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Thoſe which they had amongſt themſelves were firſt from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of time: Secondly, from the univerſal Deluge, which happened *Anno mundi* 1656. Thirdly, from the Confuſion of Tongues, *Anno mundi* 1786. Fourthly from *Abraham*'s Journey out of *Chaldæa* into *Canaan*, *Anno mundi* 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of *Egypt*, *An. mund.* 2453. Sixthly, from the firſt year of *Jubilee*, *An. mun.* 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomon*'s Temple, *Anno* 2932. And laſtly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, *Anno* 3368. That which they had common with other Nations was the *Æra* or *Epoche* of the Victory of the *Greeks*, which took beginning on the firſt Victory which *Seleucus* had againſt *Antigonus*, which was in *An mun.* 3637; an Account much uſed by the *Jews*, *Chaldæans*, *Syrians*, and other Nations of the Eaſt. But the *Chaldæans* alſo had their own *Epoche* or Account apart, reckoning their time from the firſt year of *Nabonaſſar* (*Salmanaſſar* he is called in Scripture) which being 438 years before this of *Seleucus*, muſt fall in *An. mun.* 3201. Next for the *Grecians*, they reckoned a long while by *Olympiades*, the firſt of which is placed in the year of the World 3174, (of which more hereafter.) But this Account periſhing under the *Conſtantinopolitans*, they reckoned after by *Indictions* (an Account deviſed by *Juſtinian*,) every *Indiction* containing 15 years, the firſt beginning *An. Chr.* 513, which amongſt *Chronologers* is ſtill uſed. The *Romans* reckoned firſt from the foundation of their City, which was *An. mun.* 3213, and afterwards from the ſixteenth year of *Auguſtus* his Empire (being that which properly is called the *Roman Æra*) *An. mund.* 3936. An Account uſed by the *Spaniards* (where it firſt began) till the reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Aragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions *Anno Chr.* 1350, followed therein by *John* the firſt of *Caſtile*, *An* 1383; and then at laſt by the King of *Portugal* alſo, 1415. The *Chriſtians* generally do reckon from the Birth of CHRIST, but this they did not uſe till the year 600, following in the mean time the Account of the Empire. And finally, the *Mahometans* begin their *Hegira* (for ſo they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Mecca*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylarchæ*; which happened *Anno Chriſti* 617. Of theſe we ſhall make uſe generally but of two alone, thoſe namely of the World's Creation, and our Saviours Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to thoſe ſeveral States.

Next for *Geography*, we will firſt define it, and after explicate ſuch tearms, or ſecond notions, as are not obvious to the underſtanding of every Reader. Firſt, for the definition of it, it is ſaid by *Ptolemy*, to be a *deſcription of the whole Earth*, or *the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it.* Ἡ Γεωγραφία μίμησίς ἐϛι διὰ γραφῆ (and not διαγραφῆς, as it is commonly, but corruptly read) τῦ καληλειμμένυ τῆς γῆς μέρυς ὅλυ μετὰ τῶν ὡς ἐπίπαν αὐτῷ συνημμένων, as his own words are. In which we look not on the Earth ſimply as it is an Element, for ſo it belongeth to *Philoſophy*; but as it is a *Spharical* Body, proportionably compoſed of Earth and Water, and ſo it is the ſubject of *Geography*.

Firſt, for the *Earth*, which is the firſt part of this Body, as it is affirmed by the beſt Writers to be 21600 miles in compaſs; which is demonſtrable enough. For, being there are in every of the greater Circles 360. degrees, every degree being reckoned at 60 miles; let 360 be multiplied by 60. and the *product* will be, 21600, as before is ſaid. So that if it were poſſible to make a path round about the *Earth*, an able Footman going conſtantly 24 miles a day, would compaſs it in 900 days.

The *Earth* is divided { In reſpect of men, into the right hand and the left.
In reſpect of it ſelf, into parts Real and Imaginary.

To *Poets*, which turn their Faces towards the *Fortunate Iſlands* (ſo memorized and chanted by them) which are ſituate in the Weſt; the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Augures* of old, and in our days to *Prieſts*, and men in Holy Orders, who uſually, in their Sacrifices and Divine Oblations, convert themſelves unto the Eaſt; the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Aſtronomers*, who turn their Faces towards the South, becauſe that way the motions of the *Planets* may be beſt obſerved; the Weſt is the right hand, and the Eaſt the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who by reaſon they have ſo much to do with the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, do turn their faces towards the North; the Eaſt is the right hand, and the Weſt the left.

The *Real* parts of the *Earth*, are divided commonly into { Continents,
Iſlands.

A *Continent* is a great quantity of Land, not ſeparated by any Sea from the reſt of the World; as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Aſia*, *Africa*; or the Continent of *France*, *Spain*, and *Germany*.

As an *Iſland* is a part of *Earth*, environed round about with ſome Sea or other; as the Iſle of *Britain*, with the Ocean; the Iſle of *Sicily*, with the Mediterranean: and therefore in *Latine* is called *Inſula*, becauſe it is ſituate *in ſalo*, as ſome derive it.

Touching the Continent, I have nothing in general to enlarge, till we come to the particular *Chorography* and deſcription of them. But for Iſlands (leaving the diſquiſition of their being, or not being before the Floud) there are four cauſes to which they may be thought to owe their Original. 1 An *Earthquake*, which works two ways towards their production: Firſt, when by it one part of a Countrey is forcibly torn away from the other; and ſo *Eubœa* was divided from the reſt of *Attica*: And ſecondly, when ſome vehement wind or vapour being ſhut up in ſuch parts of the *Earth*, as be under the Sea, raiſeth the *Earth* above the Water; whereunto the Original of moſt of thoſe Iſlands which are farr remote from any part of the Continent, is probably to be referred. 2 Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea, carry with them abundance of gravel, dirt, and weeds; which, if the Sea be not the more working, will in time ſettle to an Iſland. So the Corn which *Tarquinius* ſowed in the *Campus Martius*, being cut down by the people, and caſt into *Tiber*, ſettled together, and made the *Holy Iſland*. So the River *Achelous* cauſed the *Echinades*, as we ſhall more at large declare; and ſo the Iſland of *Loanda* in the Kingdom of *Congo*, is ſaid to have been made out of the Sands of the Ocean, and mire of the great River *Laanza*, caſt into an heap, and at laſt formed into an Iſland. 3 The Sea violently beating on ſome ſmall *Iſthmus*, weareth it through, and turneth the *Peninſula* into a compleat *Iſle*. Thus was *Sicily* divided from *Italy*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Wight* from the reſt of *England*. And 4 ſometimes as it eateth and worketh out ſome places, ſo it violently leaveth and abandoneth others, which in ſome time grow to be *Iſlands*, and firm land under foot. So it is thought the *Iſles* of *Zeland* have been once part of the main Sea: and *Verſtegan* proveth it, becauſe that the Huſbandmen in tilling, and manuring the ground, find ſometimes Anchors here and there fix'd, but very often the bones of huge and great Fiſhes, which could by no other accident come thither. To theſe kind of Iſlands, *Pythagoras*, in *Ovid*, alluding, ſaith,

——Vidi factus ex æquore terras,
Et procul à pelago conchæ jacuere marinæ,
Et vetus inventa eſt in montibus anchora ſummis.

Oft have I ſeen that earth, which once I knew
Part of the Sea; ſo that a man might view
Huge ſhells of Fiſhes in the upland ground;
And on the Mountains tops old Anchors found.

As concerning the ſituation of Iſlands, whether commodious or not, this is my judgment. I find in *Machiavel*, that for a City, whoſe people covet no Empire, but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; becauſe that in ſuch ſeats, they are compelled to work and labour, by which they are freed from idleneſs, and by conſequence from riotouſneſs: But for a City whoſe inhabitants deſire to enlarge their Confines, a fertile place was rather to be choſen than a ſteril, as being more able to nouriſh multitudes of people. The like I ſay of Iſlands. If a *Prince* deſire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode, than an Iſland; as being by it ſelf and Nature, ſufficiently defenſible. But, if a *King* be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Iſland is no fit ſeat for him; becauſe, partly by the uncertainty of Winds, and Seas, partly by the longſomneſs of the ways, he is not ſo well able to ſupply and keep ſuch forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath, even to admiration, repelled the moſt puiſſant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the cauſes above mentioned, cannot ſhew any of her winnings on the firm Land, though ſhe hath attempted and atchieved as many glorious exploits as any Countrey in the World.

The Continent and Iſlands are ſub-divided into
- *Peninſula.*
- *Iſthmus.*
- *Promontorium.*

Peninſula, *quaſi pene Inſula*, is a tract of land, which being almoſt encompaſſed round by water, is joined to the firm land by ſome little *Iſthmus*; as *Peloponneſus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*.

Iſthmus is that little narrow neck of land, which joineth the *Peninſula* to the *Continent*; as the Straights of *Dariene*, in *America*, and of *Corinth* in *Greece*.

Promontorium, is a high Mountain which ſhooteth it ſelf into the Sea, the outmoſt end of which is called a *Foreland*, or *Cape*; as the *Cape of good Hope* in *Africk*, *Cape Comari* in *India*, &c.

The *Imaginary* parts of the *Earth* are ſuch, which not being at all in the *Earth*, muſt yet be ſuppoſed to be ſo, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the *Earth*, anſwerable to them in *Heaven*, in name.

Theſe Circles are either the
- Greater,
- Leſſer,

In both which there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater than thoſe in the leſſer; and every Degree in the greater is 60 miles.

The greater Circles are either
- Immutable, as the *Æquator*,
- Mutable, as the
  - *Horizon*,
  - *Meridian*.

The *Æquator* is a great Circle, going round about the Terreſtrial Globe, from Eaſt to Weſt. It paſſeth through *Habaſſia*, *Sumatra*, *Guiana*, &c. The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Latitude* of any *Town*, *Promontory*, &c. Now, the *Latitude* is the diſtance of a place South or North, from the *Æquator*, or middle of the World; and muſt be meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle, rounding the earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a man liveth; but the chief and firſt *Meridian* paſſeth through the Iſland S. *Michael*, one of the *Azores*. The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Longitude* of any place. Now, the *Longitude* of a *City*, *Cape*, &c. is the Diſtance of it Eaſt and Weſt from the firſt *Meridian*, and is uſually meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, deſigning ſo great a ſpace of the earth, as a quick ſight can ken in an open field. The uſe of it is to diſcern the divers riſings and ſettings of the Starrs.

The leſſer Circles either are
- Noted with ſome name, as
  - Tropical of
    - *Cancer*,
    - *Capricorn*,
  - Polar, either
    - *Arctick*,
    - *Antarctick*.
- Noted with no diſtinct name, and are the *Parallels*.

The *Tropick* of *Cancer* (ſo called of the Celeſtial ſign *Cancer*) is diſtant from the *Equinoctial*, 23 Degrees Northward, and paſſeth through *Barbary*, *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hiſpania*.

The *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, equally diſtant from the *Æquator* Southward, paſſeth through *Ethiopia inferior*, and the midſt of *Peruana*. And this is to be obſerved in theſe *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, our days are at the longeſt; and when he is gone back to the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, the days are at the ſhorteſt. The firſt they call the Summer, the laſt they call the Winter *Solſtice*; the firſt hapning on, or about S. *Barnabies* day in *June*; the laſt on, or about S. *Lucies* day in *December*.

The *Arctick* Circle (ſo called, for that it is correſpondent to the conſtellation in Heaven, called the *Bear*, in *Greek*, *Arctos*) is diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, 45 Degrees, and paſſeth through *Norway*, *Muſcovy*, *Tartary*, &c.

The *Antarctick* (ſo called, becauſe oppoſite to the other) is as much diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and paſſeth through *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*. The uſe of theſe four Circles, is to deſcribe the *Zones*.

The *Zones* are ſpaces of earth included betwixt two of the leſſer nominate Circles. They are in number five, one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Torrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually ſcorched with the preſence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are ſituate between the two *Polar* Circles, and the very *Poles*, continually wanting the neighborhood of the Sun.

The two *temperate Zones* are betwixt the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and the *Arctick*; and 'twixt the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and the *Antartick* Circles; enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold: ſo that the parts next the *Torrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

Theſe five *Zones* are diſpoſed according to the order of the Zones in Heaven: of which thus *Ovid Metamorph.* 1.

Utque dua dextra cælum, totidemque ſiniſtra
Parte ſecant Zonæ, *quinta eſt ardentior illis*;
Sic onus incluſum numero diſtinxit eodem
Cura Dei, totidemque plaga tellure premuntur.
Quarum quæ media eſt, non eſt habitabilis æſtu;
Nix tegit alta duas: totidem inter utramque locavit,
Temperiemque dedit, miſta cum frigore flamma.

And as two Zones do cut the Heavens right-ſide,
And likewiſe other two the left divide,
The midſt in heat excelling all the reſt;
Even ſo it ſeem'd to the Creator beſt,
That this our World ſhould ſo divided be,
That with the Heavens in Zones it might agree,
The midſt in heat; the outward-moſt excel
In Snow and Ice, ſcarce fit for men to dwell:
Betwixt theſe two extreams two more are fixt,
Where heat and cold indifferently are mixt.

Parallels, called alſo *Equidiſtants*, circle the Earth from Eaſt to Weſt, and are commonly ten Degrees aſunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are ſet down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another ſort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Clime*. Theſe are called *Artificial Parallels*: becauſe they ſhew the difference of the *Artificial* days, and are of an unequal bredth, as we ſhall ſee in the Table following. The uſe of theſe leſſer *Parallels* is to ſhew the *Climates*.

Now a *Clime*, or *Climate*, is a ſpace of the Earth contained betwixt three *Parallels*, the middlemoſt whereof divideth it into two equal parts, ſerving for ſetting out the length and ſhortneſs of the days in every Country. For under the *Æquator* the days are of the juſt length of 12 hours; but afterwards they increaſe the length of half an hour for every *Clime*, till they come to the length of 24 hours, without night at all; which length attained, they increaſe no more by hours, but by weeks and months, till they come to the length of half a year. So that we are to reckon 24 *Climes* North-ward, and as many South-ward: Thoſe North-ward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle *Parallel* of the *Clime* doth paſs; as *Dia Meroes*, *Dia Syenes*, *&c.* Thoſe on the South by the ſame names, with the addition of *Anti*, as *Anti-Dia-Syenes*, *Anti-Dia-Meroes*, *&c.* It is true, the antient *Coſmographers* made but ſeven *Climes* in all, at the moſt but nine; nor needed they to add more, as the caſe ſtood with them: the extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles not being ſo fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, becauſe thoſe *Climes* are not of equal bredth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard it is impoſſible to deſcribe them under any Rule; I have thought fit to add this enſuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the Works of *John de Sacro Boſco*, and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of the uſe of the Globes*. The whole divided into ſeven Columns. In the firſt whereof is ſhewed what *Climes* are inhabited by the *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, and *Heteroſcii*, which terms we ſhall anon expound: in the ſecond is ſet down the number of the *Climes* themſelves: in the third the number of the *Parallels*: in the fourth the length of the days in Summer: in the fifth the diſtance of every *Clime* and *Parallel* from the *Æquator*: in the ſeventh the name of the Town or [illegible], through which the middlemoſt of the three *Parallels* doth paſs, in this manner following.

Here followeth the Table of the Climes.

A ſecond uſe of theſe *Parallels*, and other Circles, is for diſtinction of men in their ſeveral dwellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geography*) divided, in reſpect of their ſhadows, into *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, *Heteroſcii*; and in reſpect of their ſite and poſition, into *Antœci*, *Periœci*, and *Antipodes*.

1. *Amphiſcii* are ſuch as dwell between the two *Tropicks*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are both ways: ſometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; ſometimes (when the Sun is South) to the North.

2. *Periſcii* are ſuch as dwell beyond the *Polar* Circles; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are on all ſides of them.

3. *Heteroſcii* are ſuch as dwell in either of the two temperate *Zones*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows reach but one way; *viz.* in our Zone, to the North only; as in the other, to the South only.

4. *Antœci* are ſuch as dwell under the ſame *Meridian*, and the ſame *Latitude* or *Parallel*, equally diſtant from the *Æquator*; the one North-ward, the other South-ward: the days in both places being of a length; but the Summer of the one being the others Winter.

5. *Periœci* are ſuch as dwell in the ſame *Parallel*, on the ſame ſide of the *Æquator*, how diſtant ſoever they be Eaſt and Weſt: the ſeaſon of the year and the length of days being to both alike; but the ones midnight being the others noon.

6. *Antipodes* are ſuch as dwell feet to feet, ſo as a right line drawn from the one unto the other, paſſeth from North to South through the Center of the World. Theſe are diſtant 180 Degrees, which is half the compaſs of the Earth. They differ in all things, as ſeaſons of the year, length of days, riſing and ſetting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned ſo ridiculous, and impoſſible (if not ſomewhat worſe) in the former times, that *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* happening to ſee a Tractate written by *Virgilius* Biſhop of *Saltzburg* touching the *Antipodes*, and not knowing what damnable Doctrine might be couched under that ſtrange name, made complaint firſt to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zachary*, *Anno* 745. by whom the poor Biſhop (unfortunate only in being learned in ſuch a time of ignorance) was condemned of Hereſie. But *Boniface* might the rather be excuſed, in regard that many of his betters fell alſo on the ſelf-ſame errour. For venerable *Bede*, a man whoſe Books Archbiſhop *Boniface* was not worthy to carry, eſteemeth the Opinion touching the *Antipodes* to be no better than a Fable; *Neque enim* Antipodarum *ullatenus eſt fabulis accommodandus aſſenſus*, in his Book *de Ratione temporum*, *cap.* 32. And yet the marvel is the leſs, conſidering that he lived in the darker times of the Church, when the ſtate of Learning was in its declination; when S. *Auguſtine* and *Lactantius*, and ſome others of the Antient Writers, who lived when Learning was at the very height, condemn this point of the *Antipodes* for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whoſe words I could put down at large, did I think it neceſſary. So that we of theſe Ages have very good cauſe (to uſe the words of the late L. *Verulam*) to congratulate the preſent times, in that the World in theſe our days hath *through-lights* made in it after a wonderful manner; whereby we clearly ſee thoſe things, which were either unknown, or but blindly gheſſed at by the Antients.

But to proceed, the ſecond part of the *Terreſtrial Globe* is the *Water*, which, making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, firſt, becauſe it is a body not ſo heavy: Secondly, it is obſerved by Sailers, that their Ships move faſter to the ſhoar than from it; whereof no reaſon can be given but the height of the Water above the Land. Thirdly, to ſuch as ſtand on the ſhoar, the Sea ſeems to ſwell into the form of a round hill, till it puts a bound upon our ſight. Now that the Sea, hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not over-whelm it, muſt be aſcribed only to his Power and Providence, who *hath made the* Waters *to ſtand on an heap, who hath ſet them a bound that they ſhould not paſs, nor turn again to cover the Earth.* The other affections and properties of the Sea, as motion, ſaltneſs, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philoſophers, than this preſent Argument.

The *Sea* or *Water* is divided into { 1. *Oceanus.* 2. *Mare.* 3. *Fretum.*
{ 4. *Sinus.* 5. *Lacus.* 6. *Flumina.*

Of which and other *Waters* thus ſaid *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*:

Tum Freta *diffudit, rapidiſque tumeſcere ventis*
Juſſit, & ambitæ circundare littora terræ.
Addidit & Fontes, *&* Stagna *immenſa*, Lacuſque,
Fluminaque *obliquis cinxit declivia ripis*, &c.

Which may be Engliſhed to this purpoſe:

He ſpread the *Seas*, which then he did command
To ſwell with Winds, and compaſs round the Land;
To thoſe he adds *Springs*, *Ponds*, and *Lakes* immenſe,
And *Rivers* which their winding Borders fence.
Of theſe not few Earth's thirſty jaws devour,
The reſt their ſtreams into the *Ocean* pour;
When in that liquid Plain with freer Wave,
The foamy Cliffs in ſtead of Banks they lave.

And

A Table of the Climates belonging to the three ſorts of Inhabitants: Pag.

Inhabitants belonging to ſeveral Climates	*Climes.*	*Parallels*	*The longeſt ſummer day*		*Latitud and elevation of Pole.*		*The breadth of the Climats*		*The places by which the Climes paſs.*
			H.	*Scr.*	*Deg.*	*Sc.*	*Deg.*	*Se.*	
Amphiſcii.	0	0	12	0	0	0	4	18	*The beginning from the Æquator.*
		1	12	15	4	18			
	1	2	12	30	8	34	8	25	*Sinus Arabicus, or the Red ſea.*
		3	12	45	12	43			
	2	4	13	0	16	43	7	50	*Meroe an Iſland of Nilus in Egypt.*
		5	13	15	20	33			
	3	6	13	30	23	10	7	3	*Siene a city in Africa.*
		7	13	45	27	36			
Heteroſcii.	4	8	14	0	30	47	6	9	*Alexandria in Egypt.*
		9	14	15	33	45			
	5	10	14	30	36	30	5	17	*Rhodes and Babylon.*
		11	14	45	39	2			
	6	12	15	0	41	22	4	30	*Rome and Helleſpont.*
		13	15	15	43	32			
	7	14	15	30	45	29	3	48	*Venice and Millain.*
		15	15	45	47	20			
	8	16	16	0	49	21	3	13	*Podalia and the Leſſer Tartary.*
		17	16	15	50	13			
	9	18	16	30	51	58	2	44	*Batavia and Wittenberg.*
		19	16	45	53	17			
	10	20	17	0	54	29	2	17	*Roſtoch.*
		21	17	15	55	34			
	11	22	17	30	56	37	2	0	*Ireland and Muſcovy.*
		23	17	45	57	34			
	12	24	18	0	58	26	1	40	*Bohuſe a Caſtle in Norwey.*
		25	18	15	59	14			
	13	26	18	30	59	59	1	26	*Gothland.*
		27	18	45	60	40			
	14	28	19	0	61	18	1	13	*Bergen in Norway.*
		29	19	15	61	53			
	15	30	19	30	62	25	1	0	*Wiburg in Finland.*
		31	19	45	62	54			
	16	32	20	0	63	22	0	52	*Arotia in Sweden.*
		33	20	15	63	46			
	17	34	20	30	64	6	0	44	*The mouth of Darecally a river of Sweden.*
		35	20	45	64	30			
	18	36	21	0	64	49	0	36	*Divers places of Norwey.*
		37	21	15	65	6			
	19	38	21	30	65	21	0	29	*Suecia, Alba Ruſſia.*
		39	21	45	65	35			
	20	40	22	0	65	47	0	22	*With many Iſlands*
		41	22	15	65	57			
	21	42	22	30	66	6	0	17	*Thereunto adjoyning*
		43	22	45	66	14			
	22	44	23	0	66	20	0	11	*Wanting ſpecial names*
		45	23	15	66	25			
	23	46	23	30	66	29	0	5	*And Land-marks.*
		47	23	45	66	30			
	24	48	24	0	66	31	0	0	*Iſland under the Arctick Circle.*
Periſcii.	*Here the Climates are accounted by the moneths, from 66 Degrees 31 min's where the day is 24 hours, unto the Pole it ſelf ſet at 90 Degrees, where the artificial day is ſix Moneths.*		*Menſes*						
			1		67	15			*Theſe Climats are ſuppoſed to paſs by divers Iſlands within the Arctick circle, as Groenland, Iſeland, Greenland; wherein, as yet, for the narrowneſs of theſe climates coming neer together, and the uncertainty of obſervation, no ſpecial places have been aſsigned, as to the other.*
			2		69	30			
			3		73	20			
			4		78	20			
			5		84	0			
			6		90	0			

And firſt *Oceanus*, the *Ocean*, is that general Collection of all waters, which encompaſſeth the Earth on every ſide. A point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laugh'd at by *Herodotus* in the former times; who counted it a groſs abſurdity for any man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or encompaſſed about with the main *Ocean*. But modern Navigations have found that to be true, which he held ridiculous; and which the moſt learned in thoſe times knew rather by conjecture, than by demonſtration. Nor were thoſe Ages ſo acquainted with thoſe ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all thoſe other Seas and Rivers which have intercourſe with it, as the meaneſt Saylor at the preſent. The natural cauſes of the which, ſeeming ſo full of difficulty to the beſt of the Antients, Experience hath taught us to aſcribe wholy to the *Moon*, at whoſe *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever higheſt, and the Sea moſt furious. For as ſoon as the Moon cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to ſwell, and floweth towards the Eaſt, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her company) till ſhe come unto the height of our *Meridian*: after which till her ſetting or Weſtern fall, the Sea abateth or decreaſeth; which we call the *Ebb*. And when ſhe paſſeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*, the *Ocean* begins to ſwell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our *Hemiſphere* doth again abate. In brief, from the New Moon till the firſt quarter the Sea decreaſeth, from the firſt quarter to the full it is ſaid to ſpring: from the full to the laſt quarter it is ſaid to nepe; and from the laſt quarter to the prime it ſprings again. As for the uncertainty of the Tides, varying every day, it is not ſo perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof, know well when to look for it; the next daies Tide coming, for the moſt part, one hour 10 minuts after the time it hapned on the day fore-going.

2. *Mare*, the Sea, is a part of the main Ocean, to which we cannot come but through ſome *Fretum* or *Straight*; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, Firſt, either from the adjacent ſhore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Tyrrhenum*, from the Coaſt of *Tuſcany*; Or, Secondly, from the firſt Diſcoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus* who firſt found it; Or, Thirdly, from ſome remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*; from the drowning of *Icarus*, the ſon of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Straight*, is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into ſome Sea, or out of ſome Sea into the *Ocean*, as the *Straight* of *Helleſpont*, *Gibralter*, *Fretum Davies*, &c.

4. *Sinus*, a *Creek* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling ſhore, wherewith it is almoſt environed; as *Sinus Perſicus*, *Corinthiacus*, *&c.* And this is ſometimes called a Gulf, as the Gulf of *Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great body or collection of waters, which hath no viſible intercourſe with the Sea, or influx into it; as the *Lake* of *Thraſymene* in *Italy*, the *Lacus Aſphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea* in the Land of *Canaan*. And of this kind properly is the *Mare Caſpium*, though by reaſon of the greatneſs of it, it is called a Sea.

6. *Flumina* or *Fluvius*, is a watercourſe continually running whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a ſtanding Pool, iſſuing from ſome Spring or Lake, and emptying it ſelf into ſome part of the Sea, or ſome other great River, the mouth or out let of which is called *Oſtium*: *Tiberinaque longe Oſtia*, as the Poet hath it. Theſe are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual ſuſtenance from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or *Chaſma's* of the Earth, and congealed by the extreme cold of that Element, diſſolves into water (as we ſee the Air of winter-nights to be melted into a pearly dew, ſticking on our glaſs-windows): and being grown to ſome quantity, will (like an *Annibal* in the *Alpes*) either find a way, or make a way to vent its ſuperfluity. Which beginning is ſeconded by the Ocean, which running through the hidden paſſages of the earth, joyneth it ſelf with this aerial vapour, and continueth the begun current. The Sea water (though in it ſelf of a ſalt and brackiſh ſavour, yet) paſſing through divers windings and turnings of the earth, is deprived of all unpleaſantneſs, and by how much the ſpring-heads of rivers are remote from the Sea, by ſo much uſually are their waters affected with a delightful reliſh. Rivers having thus entred themſelves into a good courſe, are never without the aſſiſtance of neighbouring ſprings and waters; by whoſe addition they augment their ſtreams, till they diſchannel themſelves into the Sea. Now there is of rivers a treble uſe. Firſt, that out of them drink may be afforded to man and beaſt: Secondly, that running through the earth, as blood through the body, by interlacing it, and ſometimes over-whelming it, it might make the earth able to produce thoſe fruits which are neceſſary for the life of Man. The laſt uſe of Rivers is, eaſineſs and ſpeedineſs of conduct; and hereto are required four conditions. Firſt, the depth, becauſe deep waters ſuſtain the bigger burdens, and on them navigation is more ſafe. Secondly, pleaſantneſs, whereby the paſſage is eaſie both with the ſtream, and againſt it: whereas in a river of a violent current, or ſuch as fall down by great *locks* or *Cataracts*, the ſailing or rowing up the water is as dangerous as laborious. Thirdly, the thickneſs of the water; for by how much the more ſlimy and groſs a water is, by ſo much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for Navigation, by reaſon of its fatneſs, than the pure and thin waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, the broadneſs of the channel, that ſhips and other veſſels may continually wind and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philoſophers* reputed this conduct ſo dangerous, that one of them being asked whether he thought the living or the dead were the greater number, would not declare himſelf, becauſe he knew not in which rank to place ſuch as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that men never committed greater folly in their lives, than in venturing to go by water, when they might have gone by Land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that ſaid, *Dulciſſima eſt ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram.*

The chief Rivers of *Europe*, are *Danubius*, and the *Rhene*; of *Africa*, *Nilus* and *Niger*; of *Aſia*, *Ganges*, and *Euphrates*; of *America*, *Orenoque*, and *Maragnan*. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over theſe particulars both of *Earth* and *Water*, which are conſiderable in *Geography*, and come within the compaſs of thoſe *Annexaries* of each, which *Ptolemy* calleth τὰ συνημμένα; And having ſo done, may diſcover where the difference lieth between *Geography* and *Chorography*, which to ſome men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, ſeem to be the ſame. For however a *Chorographer* doth deſcribe a Countrey by the bounds, rivers, hills, and moſt notable Cities; yet it is ſtill but the deſcription of ſome place or Countrey, and not of the whole *Earth* univerſally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorographie* differeth from *Geographie* as a part from the whole: that being, as *Ptolemy* doth very handſomly expreſs it, like the planting of an eye or an ear, or ſome other member; this, as the picturing of the head, or whole body of man. But *Geographie* in its full latitude comprehendeth not *Chorographie* only, but *Topographie* and *Hydrographie* alſo. Of theſe the laſt is the delineation of the Sea by its ſeveral names, Ports, Promontories; Creeks and other affections; as alſo of great Lakes and Rivers: which is moſt neceſſary for the uſe of *Mariners*, and is beſt don by *Petrus de Medina*, *Peter Nonnius* in his *Regula Artis Navigandi*, and *Johannes Aurigarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*; the chief Writers in the Art of *Pilotiſm*.

2. *Topographie* is the deſcription of ſome particular place or City; of which kind was the Book of *Stephanus* περὶ πόλεων, or *De Urbibus*, among the Antients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Bruinus* in theſe later times; *Stows* Book of the *Survey of London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and ſuch as theſe. And of this kind is the deſcription of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and thoſe of the *Elyſian* fields, the gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Heſperides* in the antient Poets.

3. *Chorographie* (as before was ſaid) is the exact deſcription of ſome Kingdom, Country, or particular Province of the ſame; unleſs this laſt may fall more properly under the notion of *Topographie*. Of this kind the deſcription of the ſeveral eſtates of *Greece* written by *Pauſanias*, is of moſt uſe and reputation of all the Antients: as that of *Camden Clarenceux*, for the Iſle of *Britain*; of *Lewis Guicciardine*, for the *Low Countries*; *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongſt the Moderns.

4. *Geographie* finally is an aggregate of all theſe together, borrowing from *Hydrographie* the deſcription of Seas and Waters; From *Topographie*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular places; and from *Chorographie*, the delineation of Regions, Provinces and Kingdoms: which brought into a body, make up that Portraiture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every conſiderable part thereof, in writing; which, according to *Ptolemies* definition before-mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geographie*. In the advancement of which ſtudies, thoſe which have took moſt pains, with the greateſt benefit to Poſterity, are the ſaid *Ptolemie*, *Plinie*, and *Strabo* for the elder times; *Mercator*, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius* for the later Ages: Of which the two firſt lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the Roman Emperour, *Anno Chr.* 141. or thereabouts; the other, in the reign of *Tiberius Caſar*, the unworthy Succeſſor of *Auguſtus*; the three laſt flouriſhing in the daies of our Fathers, about ſome 80 years ago.

Thus I have briefly ſummed up thoſe general *Præcognita*, which I conceive are neceſſary to the knowledg and underſtanding as well of *Hiſtorie* as of *Geographie*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariſeth that univerſal Comprehenſion of *Natural* and *Civil* ſtory, which by a proper diſtinct name may be tearmed *Coſmographie*. And this may well be reckoned amongſt mixed ſtories; for it hath from *Natural Hiſtory* or *Geographie*, the Regions themſelves, together with their Sites, and ſeveral Commodities; from *Civil Hiſtory*, Habitations, Governments and Manners: and from the *Mathematicks*, the Climates and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coaſts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the Utility and excellency of which ſtudy I need ſay no more, than what hath been already ſpoken in the ſeveral parts, whereof this is only the reſult: deſiring pardon of the Reader, that I have chriſtened theſe imperfect and unworthy Papers by ſo noble a name: which I deſire they may deſerve, though I fear they will not. However I will give the venture, and make as profitable a diſcovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the moſt obſervable things therein, according to the beſt light which the reading of *Hiſtories* and *Geographical* diſcourſes hath ſupplied me with: beſeeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him ſeems beſt, to bleſs me in the undertaking, and furniſh me with fit Abilities both of ſtrength and judgment to go through with it. *Ipſe enim eſt qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*, as the Scripture hath it: And ſo on in Gods name.

COSMOGRAPHIE.

The Firſt BOOK,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHIE
AND
HISTORIE
OF
ITALY, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*,
SPAIN, and *BRITAIN*; with the
ISLES thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

Florus in Procem. l. 1.

Populus Romanus *a Rege* Romulo *ad* Cæſarem Auguſtum *ita late per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non* unius Populi, *ſed* generis humani *facta diſcant.*

Velleius Patercul. Hiſt.

Quemadmodum Urbium Imperiorumque; *ita &* Gentium *nunc floret fortuna, nunc ſeneſcit, nunc interit.*

⁂

LONDON,
Printed for *Philipp Chetwind*, Anno Dom. 1665.

COSMOGRAPHY.

The Firſt Book:

Containing the *CHOROGRAPHY* and *HISTORY* of *ITALY*, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*, with the *ISLES* thereof.

OF THE WORLD,

And firſt of

EUROPE.

OF the *Creation* of the World by Almighty God, and the *Plantations* of the ſame by the ſons of Men, ſufficient hath been ſpoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all thoſe parts united into one *Compoſitum*; called therefore by the *Grecians* Τὸ Πᾶν, & Τὸ Ὅλον, becauſe the *Summa totalis*, and general comprehenſion of all things exiſtent. In which reſpect called by the *Latins*, *Univerſum*, a name of multitude, but of a multitude united, (*Univerſi qui in uno loco verſi*, ſay the old *Grammarians*.) The great Body of the World, like the body of Man, though it have many parts and members, is but one Body only. A Body of ſo perfect and exact a form, of ſo compleat a *Symmetry*, in reſpect of the particular parts, and all thoſe parts ſo beautified and adorned by the God of Nature, that from the elegancy and beauties of it, it was called Κόσμος by the *Grecians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*; both names declaring the Compoſure of it to be full of *Ornament*, and all thoſe Ornaments conducting Mankind to the knowledg of God. For, (as the *Chriſtian Advocate* reaſoneth very ſtrongly,) As he which comes into an Houſe, and ſeeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comly order, *utriſque præeſſe crederet Dominum, &c.* muſt needs conceive, both that the Houſe had ſome wiſe Lord and Maſter who had ſo contrived it, and that ſuch Lord and Maſter of it was of more worth and excellency than the Houſe and Furniture: So (ſaith he) whoſoever doth obſerve the moſt eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, muſt needs conceive there is ſome great and more glorious Power who did firſt create it, diſpoſing of all things therein in ſuch excellent manner.

This Contemplation, together with the Notions of a *Deity*, which naturally are ingraffed in the Soul of Man, hath trained up all men in the practice of ſome *Religion*, though few (comparatively) ſo happy as to be practiſed in the true. For though the knowledg and worſhip of the true God, by reaſon of ſome acceſſions in *America* and the *Indies*, be more generally diffuſed than in former times; yet is the leaſt part of the World poſſeſſed by them who make profeſſion of that worſhip. For dividing the whole World into thirty parts, it hath been found by ſuch as have labored in this ſearch, that nineteen of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worſhip ſtocks and ſtones for gods, even the work of mens hands. Of the eleven parts which are remaining, ſix are poſſeſſed by *Jews*, *Turks* and *Saracens*; who though they have the knowledg of the God that made them, yet abnegating or not worſhipping the Lord *that bought them*, they have no part nor portion in the true *Religion*. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion; the other three being divided betwixt thoſe of the Church of *Rome*, and ſuch as otherwiſe differing in ſome Opinions, paſs generally by the name of *Proteſtant*, or Reformed Churches. Which as it ſheweth how ſmall a portion of the World is poſſeſſed by *Chriſtians*, who only (though not all of them) have reaſon to pretend to the true *Religion*: So doth it ſhew (I note this only by the way) how falſly thoſe of *Rome* make Multitude of Profeſſors to be a ſign of the True Church; and then conceive themſelves to be ſuch a multitude as correſponds unto that ſign. Faulty alike both in the *Poſition* and the *Application*. For if the multitude of Profeſſors be a ſign of the Church, the true Church ſhould be found rather amongſt the *Heathens* or *Mahumetans*, than amongſt the *Chriſtians*: or if they do reſtrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to thoſe who make profeſſion of the *Chriſtian* Faith; thoſe of the *Greek* Communion, poſſeſſing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the members of the Church of *Rome*, though poſſibly of leſs eſteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that Brag of *Bellarmine* (though otherwiſe more modeſt than the reſt of the *Jeſuits*) affirming poſitively and expreſly, *Romanam Eccleſiam univerſum plane orbem poſſidere*; *i. e.* That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it ſelf. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more ſpecial notice of the ſtate of *Religion* in the ſeveral Provinces of the World, to which now I haſten; premiſing firſt this Scheme of thoſe ſeveral parts, into which it doth now ſtand divided.

The World is divided into two parts.
- *Unknown*, or not fully diſcovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Auſtralis*: the laſt taking up the whole *Southern* Continent; the other lying on the *North* of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we ſhall ſay ſomewhat at the end of this Work.
- *Known*, either
  - Antiently, as
    - *Europe.*
    - *Aſia.*
    - *Africa.*
  - Lately, as *America.*

Europe is joined to *Aſia* by that ſpace of earth which is between the heads of *Tanais* and *Duina*; *Aſia* is joined to *Africk* by the *Egyptian Iſthmus*; *America* is divided (as moſt conjecture) from all of them. *Europe* is ſeparated from *Aſia* by a line drawn from the Bay of Saint *Nicolas* to the head of *Tanais*, from thence by that River it ſelf all the length of his courſe; then by *Palus Mæotis*, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian Boſphorus*, the *Provontis*, the *Helleſpont*, and the *Ægean*. *Aſia* is parted from *Africk* by the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: and *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than *Europe*, *Aſia* than *Africk*, and *America* than *Aſia*.

They which have entertained a fancy of reſembling every Country to things more obvious to the ſight and underſtanding, have likened *Europe* to a *Dragon*, the head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two wings *Italy* and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiouſly impertinent in reſembling *France* to a Lozenge or *Rhomboides*, *Belgium* to a Lion, *Britain* to an Ax, *Ireland* to an Egg, *Peloponneſus* to a Plantane leaf, *Spain* to an Ox-hide ſpread on the ground, *Italy* (which indeed holdeth beſt proportion) to a mans Leg; with divers the like *Phantaſms* of a capricious brain: theſe Countries no more reſembling them, than Pictures made when Painting was in her infancy; under which they were fain to write, *This is a Lion, and this is a Whale*, for fear the Spectators might have taken one for a Cock, and the other for a Cat.

EUROPE, though the leaſt (as being in length but 2800, in bredth but 1200 miles) is yet of moſt renown amongſt us. Firſt, becauſe of the *temperature* of the Air, and fertility of the Soil: Secondly, from the ſtudy of *Arts*, both ingenuous and mechanical: Thirdly, becauſe of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies: Fourthly, from the purity and ſincerity of the *Chriſtian* Faith: Fifthly, becauſe we dwell in it, and ſo firſt place it.

EUROPE is generally ſaid to be ſo called from *Europa*, the Daughter of *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the ſhape of a *Bull*; or, as ſome Hiſtories ſay, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others, in a Ship whoſe beak had the portraiture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Iſle of *Crete* ſhould give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Iſland is ſo inconſiderable and ſo ſmall a part, I muſt confeſs I ſee no reaſon. *Goropius* Becanus, who holds the high *Dutch* to be the primitive language which was ſpoke in *Paradiſe*, and loves to fetch all names from thence; not thinking it convenient, that *Europe*, being firſt inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, ſhould be beholding to the *Grecians* for its name, will have it called *Europe*, *quaſi Ver-hop*, by the tranſpoſition of the laſt two letters; *Ver* ſignifying excellent, and *Hop* a multitude (whence we uſe to ſay, *as thick as Hops*) becauſe *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent people. And on the other ſide, *Bochartus*, a *French* Writer, loving as much to bring all names from the *Phœnician* or *Punick* tongue, will have it called *Europe* from *Ur-appa*, which ſignifieth in that language a *beautiful Countenance*; becauſe the *Europæans* much excelled the *Africans* in whiteneſs of skin, and clearneſs of complexion. But in my mind *Herodotus* hath beſt determined of the controverſie, who telleth us plainly, Ὁκόθεν τὸ οὔνομα τοῦτο, οὔτε ὅστις ἦν ὁ θέμενος, *&c.* That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who firſt called it ſo. And yet conſidering there is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (whereof more hereafter,) why might not the *Aſiaticks* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay neareſt to them; as the *Romans* did the name of *Africk* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they firſt brought under their obedience?

Or as the *Europaans* gave the name of *Aſia* to the greateſt of the three known parts of the World, which properly and originally belonged unto *Aſia minor* (as it ſince was called,) or rather to thoſe parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in convenient place.

The firſt Inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been ſhewn in part already, and ſhall be ſhewn more fully in its proper place, were the Sons of *Japhet*; amongſt whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *the Iſles of the Gentiles were divided*, Gen. 10. *v.* 5. which includes all the Continent of *Europe* and the Iſles adjoining. For beſides that it is compaſſed about with the *Cyclades*, and other Iſles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Iſles of *Candy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, the Iſles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; *Europe* it ſelf was formerly taken for an Iſland, as being invironed round with water, ſaving where it is joined on the North-Eaſt to *Aſia* the Great, which very few of the Antients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countries of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the poſterity of *Japhet*, but ſo many *Peninſula's* or *Demi-Iſlands* invironed almoſt round with one Sea or other? Nor was the name and memory of *Japhet* ſo much forgotten by the Children which deſcended of him, but that the *Greeks*, who were the firſt of their *Europaan* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Iapetus*, whom they make to be the ſon of *Cœlum* and *Terra*, and the father of the wiſe *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *Satus Iapeto*, in the firſt Book of his *Metamorphoſis*. So that we ſee how punctually the firſt part of Gods bleſſing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would *inlarge the borders of Japhet*, Gen. 9. 27. The ſecond part thereof, that he *ſhould dwell in the Tents of Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accompliſhment, yet it came at laſt; and that both in the literal and myſtical ſence. Firſt in the *literal*, when the poſterity of *Japhet*, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, made themſelves Maſters of *Judæa*, or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eaſtern parts, promiſed to and poſſeſſed by the ſeed of *Sem*: Next in the *myſtical*, when God was pleaſed to break down the *partition-wall*, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the houſe of *Japhet* into the Body of the *Church*; which for a long time was reſtrained to the Line of *Sem*.

Europe may be conſidered as it ſtands divided into the *Continent* and the *Iſlands*: the *Continent* lying all together; the *Iſlands* as they are diſperſed in the *Greek*, *Ægean*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *Britiſh* and *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we ſhall diſcover them, and diſcourſe of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into 1. *Italy*, 2. the *Alps*, 3. *France*, 4. *Spain*. 5. *Britain*, 6. *Belgium*, 7. *Germany*, 8. *Denmark*, 9. *Swethland*, 10. *Ruſſia*, 11. *Poland*, 12. *Hungary*, 13. *Sclavonia*, 14. *Dacia*, and 15. *Greece*; and ſpeaking of the ſeveral *Iſlands*, as they relate to ſome or other of theſe great Countries.

In all which Countries and Iſlands belonging to them, beſides the *Latin* Tongue, which is now rather *Scholaſtical* than *National*, and beſides the *Italian*, *French* and *Spaniſh*, being but as ſo many corruptions of the *Latin*; and beſides the *Engliſh*, which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latin* and *French*; there are in all fourteen Mother-Tongues, which ow nothing at all to the *Roman*: that is to ſay, 1. *Iriſh*, ſpoken in *Ireland* and the Weſt of *Scotland*: 2. *Britiſh* or *Welch*, in *Wales* and ſome parts of *Cornwal*: 3. *Cantabrian* or *Baſquiſh*, in *Baſcay*, about the *Pyrenæan* Hills, and near to the *Cantabrian* Ocean: 4. *Arabick*, in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpuxarras*: 5. *Finnick*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*: 6. *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects,) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swethland*: 7. *Cauchian*, which the *Eaſt-Friezlanders* (or *Cauchi*) ſpeak amongſt themſelves, though to ſtrangers they ſpeak the Common *Dutch*: 8. *Sclavoniſh*, in *Sclavonia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and almoſt all the parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire: 9. *Illyrian*, on the Eaſt-ſide of *Iſtria*, and the Iſle of *Veggia*: 10. *Greek*, in moſt Provinces and Iſles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themſelves: 11. *Hungarian*; and 12. *Epirotique*, in the Mountainous places of thoſe Countries: 13. *Jazygian*, on the North-ſide of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*: and 14. *Tartarian*, in the *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, and other *Europæan* parts of that barbarous people. And this ſhall ſerve for *Europe* in the general notion. Deſcend we now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Iſlands of it; beginning firſt of all with *Italy*, contrary to the uſage of moſt *Geographers*, who commonly begin with *Spain*, or *Ireland*, as being the furtheſt Countries Weſt-ward, and conſequently neareſt to the firſt *Meridian*, from whence the *Longitude* was reckoned: which we ſhall do by reaſon of that great influence which the *Romans* had in moſt parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World beſides, in matters as well *Civil* as *Eccleſiaſtical*; which much depended on the Power of that Empire formerly, and on the Uſurpations of that Church in the later days.

OF

OF ITALY.

ITALY, once the Empreſs of the greateſt part of the (then known) World, is compaſſed with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tyrrhenian* Seas, except it be towards *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alps*; ſo that it is in a manner a *Peninſula*, or *Demi-Iſland*. But more particularly, it hath on the Eaſt the lower part of the *Adriatick* and the *Ionian* Sea, by which it is divided from *Greece*; on the Weſt the River *Varus*, and ſome part of the *Alps*, by which it is parted from *France*; on the North, in ſome parts the *Alps*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the other parts the *Adriatick*, which divides it from *Dalmatia*; and on the South the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Seas, by which it is ſeparated from the main Land of *Africa*.

It containeth in length from *Auguſta Pratoria* (now called *Aoſt*) at the foot of the *Alps*, unto *Otranto* in the moſt Eaſtern point of the Kingdom of *Naples*, 1020 miles: in bredth, from the River *Varo*, which parts it from *Province*, to the mouth of the River *Arſia* in *Friuli*, where it is broadeſt, 410 miles; about *Otranto*, where it is narroweſt, not above 25 miles; and in the middle parts, from the mouth of *Peſcara* in the *Adriatick* or Upper Sea, to the mouth of *Tiber* in the *Tuſcan* or Lower Sea, 126 miles. The whole compaſs by Sea, reckoning in the windings and turnings of the ſhoar, comes to 3038 miles; which added to the 410 miles which it hath by Land, make up in all 3448 miles. But if the coaſt on each ſide be reckoned by a ſtreight Line, then it falls very ſhort of this proportion, amounting in the total, as *Caſtaldo* computes it, to no more than 2550 miles. The whole Country lieth under the fifth and ſixth *Climates* of the Northern temperate *Zone*, which it wholly taketh up: ſo that the longeſt day in the moſt Northern parts is fifteen hours, and three fifth parts of an hour; the longeſt in the Southern parts falling ſhort a full hour and no more of that length.

But theſe dimenſions muſt be underſtood of *Italy* in the preſent latitude and extent thereof, and not as it was called and counted of in the times of the *Romans*, neither in the growth nor flouriſhing fortunes of that State: the bounds of *Italy* on the Weſt and North-weſtern parts being then the River *Rubicon*, which runneth into the *Adriatick*, not far from *Ravenna*, and the River *Arno*, which runneth into the *Tyrrhenian* Seas by the Port of *Ligorn*. All that lay Weſt-wards towards the *Alps*, as it was poſſeſſed by the *Gauls*, ſo had it alſo the name of *Gallia*, and, for diſtinctions ſake, of *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina*, and *Togata*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lombardy*. And it continued (though a Province of the *Roman* Empire) diſtinct from *Italy*, until the Empire of *Auguſtus*; who, dividing *Italy*, for the better Government thereof, into eleven Provinces or Regions, divided *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina* into ſeveral parts (whereof more anon) and reckoned them as Provinces or Members of the Body of *Italy*.

The names hereof, ſo bounded as before, are ſaid to have been very many, according to the ſeveral Nations which were antiently of moſt power and authority in it; or to the ſeveral fancies of the Name-giver: whereof ſome, being the names only of particular Provinces, were by a *Metonymy* taken for and applied to the whole. Of this laſt ſort, to omit others of leſs note, were *Latium* and *Auſonia*; the *Auſones* being a People dwelling about *Cales*, a Town of *Campania*; and *Latium*, that particular Province which lieth on the Eaſt of *Tiber*, ſo called, as moſt Writers are of opinion, *à latendo*, from hiding, becauſe *Saturn*, being driven from *Crete* by *Jupiter*, *hic latebat abditus*, did here live concealed;

> ——————*Latiumque vocari*
> *Maluit, his quoniam latuiſſet tutus in oris*; as the Poet hath it.

Nor was this *Virgil*'s fancy only, but a Tradition generally followed and allowed of by the greateſt Writers, as by *Eutropius* and *Herodian*, and by *Minutius Felix* alſo: though *Varro*, pretending to more than ordinary knowledg in Antiquity, would have it called *Latium*, *quòd lateat inter præcipitia Alpium & Alpennini*, as *Servius* in his Notes on *Virgil*; becauſe it lieth hidden (as it were) under the præcipices of the *Alps* and *Apennine* hills; which cannot poſſibly be ſaid of *Italy* properly and antiently ſo called, no part whereof came near the *Alps*. The more general names of the whole Country were, 1. *Heſperia*, from *Heſperus* the ſon of *Atlas*, as the Poets ſay; or rather, as *Macrobius* is of opinion, from *Heſperus* the Evening Star, as being ſeated Weſt-ward in regard of *Greece*. 2. *Oenotria*, either from the abundance and excellency of the Wines, Wine being called οἶνος by the *Grecians*; or, as moſt think, from *Oenotrius* an *Arcadian* King, one of the firſt Planters of the Country. And 3. *Italia*, the name at firſt of that part of this Continent which was after called *Calabria*; ſhut up firſt between *Golfo de Chilaci* (called antiently *Sinus Scylleticus*) on the South, and *Sinus Lameticus*, part of the Bay or Golf of *Tarentum*, on the South-ſide of it. For ſo ſaith *Ariſtotle* in the ſeventh Book of his *Politicks*, cap. 10. Τὴν ἀκτὴν ταύτην τῆς Εὐρώπης Ἰταλίαν τοὔνομα λαβεῖν, *&c.* that is to ſay, *That part of* Europe, *which lieth between the Bay* Scylleticus *and the Bay* Lameticus, *took the name of* Italy, *the Golfs being diſtant from each other about half a days journey*. And this Tradition he received (as he there affirmeth) from the beſt Antiquaries of that Country. The like occurrs in *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus*, out of *Antiochus Syracuſanus* a more antient Author: the like in *Strabo, lib.* 6. So named from *Italus* a chief Commander of ſome Nations who firſt ſetled here, and by degrees communicated to the reſt of this Continent. Of theſe three laſt, thus the Poet *Virgil:*

> *Eſt locus*, Heſperiam *Graii cognomine dicunt,*
> *Terra antiqua, potens armis, atque ubere gleba,*
> Oenotrii *coluere viri*; *nunc Fama, minores*
> Italiam *dixiſſe, ducis de nomine, Gentem.*

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

> That which the Greeks *Heſperia* call'd, a place
> Great both in Arms and Wealth, firſt planted was
> By the *Oenotrians*: ſince, if Fame not lie,
> Was from their Chieftains name call'd *Italy*.

Who and from whence this *Italus* was, we ſhall ſee ere long. Mean time we will take notice of the conſent or harmony which is betwixt *Ariſtotle* and this Poet; it being ſaid by *Ariſtotle* in the ſeventh of his *Politicks*, cap. 10. that *Italus* having taught the *Oenotrians* the arts of Husbandry, who before were wandring Shepherds only, he cauſed them by his own name to be called *Italians*. Let us next take a view of thoſe honorary Attributes which have been given unto this Country, ſo denominated from him; by *Ethicus* called *Regina Mundi*, the Queen or Empreſs of the World; by *Mamertinus* one of the old *Panegyriſts*, *Gentium Dominam*, the Miſtreſs of the Nations; by others, *Paradiſus Mundi*, the Terreſtrial Paradiſe. But what need more be ſaid than is ſpoken by *Pliny*, who hath adorned *Italy* with this following Panegyrick? Italia *terrarum omnium alumna, eadem & parens, numine Deûm electa qua Cœlum ipſum clarius faceret, ſparſa congregaret imperia, ritus molliret, tot populorum diſcordes linguas ſermonis commercio ad colloquia diſtraheret, & humanitati hominem daret.* *Italy* (ſaith he) the Parent, and withal the Foſter-child of all other Nations, was elected by the Providence of the Gods, to make (if poſſible) the very Heavens themſelves more famous; to gather the ſcattered Empires of the World into one Body, to temper the barbarous Rites of uncivilized people, to unite the diſagreeing Languages of ſo many men by the benefit of one common Tongue; and, in a word, to reſtore Man to his humanity. A very high *Encomion* doubtleſs, and yet not much more than the place deſerves, with reference to the times when the Author lived.

The people antiently (and to this day they ſtill partake ſomewhat of thoſe qualities) were wary of behaviour, ſparing of expence, and moſt greedy of glory, according unto that of *Tully*, *Semper appetentes gloria prater cateras nationes ſunt Romani:* by which he doth not mean thoſe only who lived within the walls of the City of *Rome*, but alſo their *Italian* Neighbors and Aſſociates, *Romans* by privilege and freedom, though not by birth. They have twice given the Law to the faireſt and moſt puiſſant parts of the World; once by their *Valour*, when the greateſt part of the (then known) World was brought under the obedience of the State of *Rome*, the ſtanding Body of whoſe Armies was principally compounded of *Italian* Bands: And ſecondly, by their *Wit*, by which they have ſubdued a great part of *Chriſtendom* to the obedience of the Pope and Court of *Rome*, the ſtanding Body of whoſe Council (though he have Miniſters of all tempers and Nations) do ſpecially conſiſt of *Italian* Heads. In former times here lived the renowned Captains, *Camillus* the Sword, and *Fabius Maximus* the Buckler of *Rome*; the two *Scipio's*, one of which ſubdued *Africk*, and the other *Aſia*; *Pompey* the Great, who extended the *Roman* Empire Eaſt-wards to the banks of *Euphrates*; *Cæſar*, the greater of the two, enlarging it Weſt-ward to the *Britiſh* and the *Belgick* Ocean: beſides infinite others of leſs note in reſpect of theſe, though moſt deſerving in themſelves. Here flouriſhed alſo the famous Orators, *Cicero*, *Hortenſius*, and *Antonius*; the renowned Hiſtorians, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, and *Saluſtius*; the memorable Poets, *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, and *Propertius*; *Plautus* and *Terence* the Comedians; the Satyriſts, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Perſius*. So equally were they favoured both by *Mars* and the *Muſes*, that it is not eaſie to determine whether they were moſt eminent in Arts or Arms. What men of ſpecial eminence it hath ſince produced, we ſhall ſee hereafter, when we are come to take a view of *Italy* as it ſtands at preſent; and to that place we ſhall defer our Obſervations of the Air, and Diſpoſition of the Soil, with ſuch other particulars as have received little or no alteration in the change of times.

Italy was antiently divided, as moſt Countries elſe, into *Tribes* and *Nations*, as the *Latins*, *Sabines*, *Tuſcans*, *Samnites*, *Campans*, *Picentini*, *Piceni*, *Ligures*, *Tarentini*, *Lucani*, and others of inferiour note; whom we ſhall meet with in the deſcription of thoſe ſeveral States, into which it doth now ſtand divided. But all thoſe Nations being ſeverally vanquiſhed by the *Roman* puiſſance, and made up into one Body, whereof *Rome* was the Head; it pleaſed *Auguſtus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was ſaid; that is to ſay, *Liguria*, *Hetruria*, *Latium*, *Campania*, *Vmbria*, *Samnium*, *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia Tranſpadana*, *Venetia* and *Hiſtria*. In the time of the Emperor *Antoninus* the Provinces of *Italy* were increaſed to ſixteen, the bounds of the former Regions being ſomewhat altered; and the three Iſles of *Sicily*, *Corſica* and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhætia's*, firſt and ſecond, added to the number. But this diſtribution alſo received ſome change in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, who altering both the names and bounds of the former Provinces, and adding one more to them, made ſeventeen in all; that is to ſay, 1. *Tuſcia* and *Vmbria*, 2. *Picenum Suburbicarium*, 3. *Campania*, 4. *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Samnium*, 7. *Lucania* and the *Brutii*, 8. *Sicily*, 9. *Corſica*, and 10. *Sardinia*, which made up the præfecture of the City of *Rome*; 11. *Flaminia* and *Picenum Annonarium*, 12. *Venetia*, 13. *Æmylia*, 14. *Liguria*. 15. *Alpes Cottiæ*, 16. *Rhætia prima*, and 17. *Rhætia ſecunda*, which made up the Dioceſs of *Italy*, properly and eſpecially ſo called, whereof *Millain* was the firſt Metropolitan City, *Aquileia* afterwards.

The Language heretofore was divers, according to the ſeveral Provinces and people of it. In *Apulia* they uſed the *Meſſapian* tongue; in that which is now called *Calabria*, they ſpake the *Greek*; in *Hetruria* they uſed the *Tuſcan*; and the *Latin* in *Latium*: which laſt ſo altered in ſhort time, by reaſon of the commerce they had with the conquered Nations, that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, at the expulſion of the *Tarquins*, could not be underſtood (as *Polybius* ſaith) by the beſt Antiquaries of his time. And yet the time between the making of thoſe Articles, and the time of *Polybius*, who was contemporary with *Scipio Africanus*, paſſed not above three hundred years. That the *Latin* tongue was afterwards at any time ſpoke generally in all parts of the *Roman* Empire, or of *Italy* it ſelf, as I ſee ſome hold, I can by no means be perſuaded; it being by ſpecial favour granted to the *Cumans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the walls of *Rome*, that they ſhould uſe the *Roman* language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* people dwelling out of *Latium* had uſed it formerly. And yet this happened not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and great part of *Spain*. It is true, the *Latin* tongue in ſucceeding times came to be underſtood in moſt parts of *Italy*, by reaſon of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted amongſt them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continual reſort to *Rome* on their ſeveral buſineſſes: it being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and Judgment pronounced by the *Prætors* for the ſeveral Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the ſubject Nations, ſave only in the *Latin* tongue, their own proper language. Yet for all this, it never grew to ſuch extent to be the Language of the whole Empire, no nor of *Italy* it ſelf; no more than the *Engliſh* tongue is natural or national to the *Welch* or *Iriſh*, though it be generally underſtood (for the very ſame reaſons) by all of the better ſort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French* and *Spaniſh*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* tongue, occaſioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations: but rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein proceeded from that weak impreſſion which the *Latin* tongue had made amongſt them whileſt they were under the obedience of that puiſſant Empire: and that the *Italian* tongue, as it is now ſpoken, could not receive ſo great a change from the barbarous Nations, none of which tarried long amongſt them but the *Goths* and *Lombards*; nor they ſo long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eaſtern parts) as to be either the occaſions or authors of the alteration. So that the preſent Language of *Italy* is a Decompound, made up eſpecially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*: ſome notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the North and Weſt, ſome of the *Gothiſh* in the midſt, about *Rome* it ſelf; and not a little of the *Greek* in the Eaſt of *Naples*.

And as the Language, ſo the Religion of the Country hath received ſome change. The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached in *Rome* it ſelf, and in *Rome* firſt preached by Saint *Peter*, who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two Apoſtles *Peter* and *Paul* are generally ſaid by the Antient Writers to be the firſt who preached the Goſpel in that City. *A duobus Apoſtolis* Petro & Paulo, *Roma fundata & conſtituta eſt Eccleſia*, ſaith the old Father *Irenæus*, Lib. 4. cap. 3. To one of theſe the firſt preaching of the Goſpel there is to be referred, both being Biſhops of that City; that is to ſay, Saint *Peter* of the Churches of the *Circumciſion*, Saint *Paul* of thoſe which conſiſted ſpecially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Goſpel was preached there before *Paul's* coming, is evident by his Epiſtle written to the *Romans* at *Cenchrea*, the Port-Town of *Corinth*, ſix years at leaſt before his being brought to *Rome*; in which he teſtifieth that their *Faith was famous over all the World*; and therefore could not count him, who had never been there, for the Planter of it: And as Saint *Peter* was the firſt Preacher of the Goſpel at *Rome*, ſo he ſent his Diſciples to promulgate it in moſt parts of *Italy*. The *Roman Martyrologies* reckon up eight Biſhops of Saint *Peters* making, for ſo many of the principal Cities of this Country; that is to ſay, *Epaphroditus* (not he whom Saint *Paul* ſpeaks of in his Epiſtle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*, of old called *Anxur*; *Hermagoras* for *Aquilia*, *Paulinus* for *Luca*, *Apollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Atina*, *Proſdocimus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracuſe*, and *Pancratius* for *Tauromenium* in the Iſle of *Sicily*. But whether Saint *Peter* planted it, or Saint *Paul* watred it, certain I am that GOD only *gave it the increaſe*. It could not elſe have proſpered under ſuch a tyranny, as many, if not moſt of the Roman Emperours, did earneſtly endeavour to ſuppreſs it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum ſemen Eccleſiæ*; the watering of it by the blood of ſo many Martyrs, made it grow the faſter. And this ſmall grain of Muſtard-ſeed waxed ſo great a tree, as over-ſhadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only ſtand it out againſt all Tempeſts, but in concluſion did ſuppreſs that Superſtition and Idolatry, for whoſe ſake all thoſe Princes till the time of *Conſtantine*, did, more or leſs, labour to deſtroy it. How much it hath receded ſince thoſe times from its primitive purity; and how it did degenerate into Worldly pomp, and Secular policy, by the deſign and arts of thoſe who boaſt themſelves to be Succeſſors to that great Apoſtle; ſhall be a little touched at in the ſtory of the *Roman Papacy*. Suffice it in this place to ſay, that all the people of this Countrey, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the *Inquiſition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the *Proteſtant* Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monſtrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternal life, having either been ſtopped, or elſe corrupted by the Popes of *Rome*; the Rivers which do water this moſt flouriſhing Garden, ſtill preſerve their beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the ſame channels,. as before they did. And of theſe, *Italy* hath as many as any one Countrey, but none of any long courſe, by reaſon that all parts of it are ſo neer ſome Sea; moſt of which riſing from the *Alps*, or the *Apennine* Hils, by melting of the Snows in Winter, and caſuality of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often over-flow the Countrey, and for the moſt part leave an ill Air behind them. Thoſe of chief note are, 1. The River of *Po*, or *Padus* (the *Greeks* call it *Eridanus*) into which *Phaeton* is ſaid to have been drenched, when he fell from Heaven. It riſeth in the *Alpes*, runneth through *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Ciſpadanam* and *Tranſpadanam*; and having taken in 30 leſſer ſtreams, falls with ſeven mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea, not far from *Venice*. 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſutello*, antiently the North-bound of *Italy*; *Hic fluvius quondam Italiæ finis*, as it is in *Pliny*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea, not far from *Rimini*, or *Ariminum*, now the Port-town to *Ravenna*, the Haven of *Ravenna* being long ſince choaked; but of this River more in another place. 3. *Arnus*, which riſing in the *Apennine* falleth into the *Tuſcan* Sea, and antiently divided *Italy* on that ſide from the *Ciſalpine Galls*; on the banks hereof ſtandeth the fair City of *Florence*. 4. *Ticinus*, which gave name to the City of *Pavy*, called of old *Ticinum*; it riſeth in the *Alpes*, and emptieth it ſelf into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5. *Liris*, now called *Gariglia*, ſtained with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards*, in their quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*; and no leſs unfortunately memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medices*. 6. *Cuique fuit rerum promiſſa potentia*, Tibris;

> *And* Tiber *unto which was given*
> *The power of all things under Heaven.*

It riſeth from the *Apennine* Hills, not far from *Aretium* (now *Arezzo*) a Town of *Tuſcany* (which is parted from the *Roman Latium*, and the Land of the *Sabines*) and gliding gently neer *Cita de Caſtello*, *Perugia* and the old *Ocriculum*, paſſeth by *Rome*, and falleth into the *Tuſcan* or lower Sea, at *Oſtia*. Here is alſo the Lake of *Thraſymene*, neer which *Annibal* defeated *Flaminius* the Conſul, and his whole Army, opening thereby his paſſage to the gates of *Rome*: and the famous river of 7. *Metaurus*, where the Romans overcame *Aſdrubal* the brother of *Annibal*; and thereby made a way to the ruin of *Carthage*. Others of leſs note ſhall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Countrey, thoſe of moſt note are the *Alpes*, and the *Apennine*, of which the reſidue in a manner are but ſpurs and branches. Of theſe, the *Alpes* being alſo appertaining to *France*, and *Germany*; or rather containing many large and entire Provinces, which belong to neither; deſerves a Tractate by it ſelf. The *Apennine*, being proper only to this Countrey, but ſo that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, ſhall be ſpoken of here. A ledg of hills which take beginning neer *Savona*, a Town of the Common-wealth and Countrey of *Genoa*, ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, and fetching a little compaſs Northwards, extend to the furtheſt part of *Italy*, dividing it almoſt in the very middeſt: that part thereof which lieth towards the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuſcan* Sea, being called *Ciſapennina*; *Tranſapennina*, that which lay towards the *Adriatick*. Paſſing in one entire body as far as *Aſcoli*, a Town of *Marca Anconitana* (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the higheſt; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereof one runs out to the Mount of *Gargano*, and ſo unto the land of *Otranto*; the other ſpreadeth it ſelf as far as *Calabria*, thoſe being the moſt Eaſtern Provinces of this noble Continent. Called the *Apennine*, as ſome ſay, *à Penna*, by which word the *Latins* uſed to ſignifie the top or ſummit of an Hill; by reaſon of the heighth and ſharp points thereof; as others ſay, *quaſi Alpes Pœnina*, becauſe firſt overcome by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the Roman Writers call by the name of *Pœni*. The Inhabitants hereof by *Virgil* named *Apenninicolæ*; but otherwiſe reducible to ſome of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain moſt of the Hills of *Italy* from *Savona* Eaſtwards, are but the excurſions; which being of leſs note, ſhall be ſpoken of as they lie before us in the way.

To proceed now to ſo much of the Hiſtory of *Italy* as concerns the generalls; we are to know that the firſt Inhabitants of it (not to ſay any thing of the fiction of *Fryer Annius* under the name of *Beroſus*, who will needs have *Noah* himſelf come hither ſhortly after the Flood) were doubtleſs of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth ſon of *Javan*, one of the ſons of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of *Greece*, which was ſince called *Macedon*, and after ſpreading themſelves further as their numbers increaſed, peopled *Ætolia* and the Countrys adjoyning to it: From whence deſirous of a warmer and more fertile ſoil, they came in tract of time to the Coaſts of *Dalmatia*; and thence to this Countrey ſince called *Italy*. That they did ſpring originally from the ſeed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim*, as the *Greek* pronounce it) wants not very good Authors. For thus *Euſebius*, Κίτιοι ἐξ ὧν Λατῖνοι καὶ οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι; that is to ſay, from the *Kitians*, or children of *Kittim*, deſcended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The ſame occurs alſo in the *Chronicon* of *Alexandria*. So alſo ſaith *Cedrenus* in his *Annals*, but with more punctuality. *Telephus* (ſaith he) the ſon of *Hercules*, reigned in *Italy*, and after him his ſon *Latinus*, ὃς τοὺς Κηταίους ἐπωνόμασε Λατίνους, from whom the *Keteans* were named *Latins*. The ſame in other words ſaith *Suidas*. Nor want there ſome remainders of this name in approved Writers, beſides theſe authorities: there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, mentioned in *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſeus*; and a River named *Ketus* not far from *Cuma*, whereof *Ariſtotle* ſpeaketh in his book *de Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediatly from the *Ætolians*, beſides the other Arguments which *Reineccius* uſeth in this point, the neerneſs, or identity rather of the names doth ſeem to intimate. For *Ætolia* being written in the *Greek Aitolia*; and the letter *O* being changed into *A* according to the *Æolick* Dialect, which was that uſed by the *Ætolians*: the alteration of the name of *Aitolia* and *Aitolians*, to *Italia* and *Italians*, will be thought very eaſie, if not natural; the rather, in regard there is an Iſland neer *Italy*, in the *Tuſcan* Sea, peopled originally by theſe very *Ætolians*, which in antient times was called *Æthalia*. And if by ſuch an eaſie alteration of one Letter only, *Italy* may derive its firſt Plantation from the *Ætolians*, as no doubt it may; then may that *Italus* the Chieftain of whom *Virgil* ſpeaks, be no other than *Ætolus*, ſome man of principal mark, and eminency, amongſt that people, who had the conduct of this Colony when they came for *Italy*. And this I ſhould believe much rather, than that this *Italus* was the name of a King of *Sicily*: It being more probable, that *Sicily* ſhould borrow its firſt planters out of *Italy*, than *Italy* ſhould borrow either name or people from ſo ſmall a Kingdom: eſpecially conſidering that the name of *Aitolus* was famous in thoſe parts of *Greece*, ever ſince *Aitolus* the ſon of a King of *Elis*, was founder of the *Ætolian* Kingdom. The way thus ſhewn, and the paſſages into *Italy* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelaſgi*, another *Greek* Nation, found the way into it; after whom, *Saturn* out of *Crete*, and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their ſeveral followers, came and ſetled there. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe ſeveral Colonies, which coming out of *Peloponneſus*, and the parts of *Achaia*, planted themſelves ſo thick in the Eaſt of *Italy* now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Grecia*. So that the *Grecians* made the main groſs or body of the *Italian* people; to which the coming of ſome *Tuſcans* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, a Prince of *Lydia*, in *Aſia minor*, ſerved but as an *Acceſſary*, and altered nothing of the Principal. The laſt that ſettled here, were ſome of the Relicts of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Æneas*, who flying from their native Countrey, and enraged Enemies, were firſt caſt upon the coaſts of *Africk*: where having ſtaid a while to refreſh his Companys (we ſhall hereafter take occaſion to conſider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he ſet ſail for *Italy*, being the place aſſigned him by the Gods for his ſeat and Empire; whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according the rate which *Thucydides* alloweth to the Veſſels then uſed, to the number of 12000 men. And there he landed, as it proved in an happy hour: For he was no ſooner arrived, but he was lovingly cheriſhed, and entertained by *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latium*; whoſe chief City or Seat Royal was then called *Laurentum*; who much eſteeming of this Stranger, as a man whoſe fame had been his Harbinger, thought he could neither maniſeſt his love ſufficiently, nor bind him faſt enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia*, his only daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Æneas*, and *Turnus* King of the *Rutili*, a former Suter; which being ended in the death of the *Rutilian* Rivall, confirmed *Æneas* and his *Trojans* in a ſure poſſeſſion. For now growing with the *Latins*, or *Laurentini*, into a more conſtant bond of Friendſhip, by many inter-marriages, and mutual kindneſſes, they built the Town of *Lavinium*, called ſo in honour of their Queen, intending it for the Seat Royal of the Princes of the *Trojan* line. But long it did not hold that ſtate. For *Aſcanius* the ſon of *Æneas* by his former Wife, to avoid all occaſions of contention with his Mother in Law, left her (*Æneas* being dead) in poſſeſſion of *Lavinium*, and built *Longa Alba*: which being ſurrendred by *Iulus* ſon of *Aſcanius* to his half-brother *Silvius*; became the conſtant habitation of the *Silvian* Kings, till the building of *Rome*, and finall ending of the race of the *Latin* Kings. The names of whom (for there occurrs little of their actions) we are next to ſhew; taking along with us thoſe few Kings which reigned in thoſe parts of *Italy*, before the coming of *Æneas*.

The Kings of *Italy* of the *Aborigines*.

A. M.

2637 1 *Janus*, the firſt King of the *Aborigines*, who lived in the ſame time with *Boaz* and *Ruth*. He received *Saturn* flying out of *Crete* from *Jupiter*, and left him his Kingdom at his death. He is ſaid to be the founder of the City of *Genoa*, and to have given name to the Hill in Rome called *Janiculus*, on which it was ſuppoſed that he had his dwelling.

2 *Saturn*, who taught the people the uſe of dunging of their lands, and for that cauſe was honoured by them as a God, under the name of *Stercutius*, as St. *Auſtin* hath it. He reigned firſt together with *Janus*, and afterwards by himſelf alone: the whole time of both their reigns was 38 years.

2670. 3. *Picus*, well ſkilled in divination by the flight and chattering of Birds, and therefore feigned by the Poets to be turned into a *Pye*. He entertained *Evander* and his *Arcadians*, giving them the Hill (called after *Aventine*) to build upon. 37.

2707 4 *Faunus*, the ſon of *Picus*, and the huſband of *Fatua*, in whoſe time *Hercules* came into *Italy*, vanquiſhed the Giants of *Cremona*, and killed the Giant *Cacus*, who had fled from him out of *Spain*. 44.

2751 5 *Latinus*, the ſon of *Faunus*, who entertained *Æneas* coming from the wars and deſtruction of *Troy*, and gave him his daughter *Lavinia* to wife, with his Kingdom after him in Dower. 36.

2787 6 *Lavinia*, daughter of *Latinus*, and Queen of the *Latins*, marryed to *Æneas*, whom ſhe outlived, he being ſlain in his Wars againſt *Mezentius*, the King of *Tuſcany*; the ſon or ſucceſſor of that *Mezentius* (an ungodly Tyrant) whom *Æneas* had before ſlain, in his war with *Turnus*, and the *Latins*. 7.

Kings of the *Latins*, of the *Trojan* or *Silvian* Race.

A. M.

2787 1 *Æneas*, ſon of *Anchiſes*, and Huſband of *Lavinia*, ſlain in his wars againſt *Mezentius* King of the *Tuſcans* or *Hetrurians*, as before is ſaid. 3.

2790 2 *Aſcanius*, the ſon of *Æneas* by *Creuſa* his former Wife, for fear of whom, *Livinia* being great with child, fled into a Wood, and was there delivered of a ſon called *Silvius*. He removed the Seat Royal from *Lavinium*, to *Longa Alba*, a City of his own building. 38.

2828 3 *Silvius Poſthumus*, the ſon of *Æneas* by *Lavinia*, preferred unto the Kingdom by the love of the people, before *Iulus* the ſon of *Aſcanius* (the founder of the *Julian* family) from whom all the Kings of this Race had the name of *Silvii*; *Iulus* being honoured with chief Prieſthood (an office next in dignity to that of the King) which he tranſlated afterwards unto his Poſterity. 29.

2857 4 *Æneas Silvius*, 31.

2888 5 *Latinus Silvius*. 50.

2938 6 *Alba Silvius*, ſo called becauſe of his beautifying and repairing the City *Alba*, then in ſome decay: Or probably becauſe there he had his birth.. 39.

2977 7 *Capetus Silvius*. 24.

3001 8 *Capys Silvius*, ſaid to be the founder of the City of *Capua*; which ſhews that he extended his dominion further than the Province of *Latium*. 28.

3029 9 *Capetus Silvius*. 13.

3042 10 *Triberinus Silvius*, from whom the River *Tiber* derives that name, being formerly called *Albula*. 8.

3050 11 *Agrippa Silvius*. 40.

3090 12 *Alladius Silvius*, who to make himſelf the more terrible to his Subjects, ſtudyed a way to imitate the Thunder, but was killed at laſt by a reall Thunder-clap from Heaven. 19.

3109 13 *Aventinus Silvius*, who gave name to the Hill *Aventine*. 37.

3146 14 *Procas Silvius*. 23.

3169 15 *Amulius Silvius*, the younger ſon of *Procas*, ſetting aſide his Brother *Numitor*, obteined the Kingdom for himſelf; ſlain at laſt by *Romulus*, and *Numitor* ſetled in the Throne. 42.

3211 16 *Numitor*, the 21 King from *Janus*, and the laſt King of the *Latins*, reſtored by *Romulus* to the Throne, and after the ſhort reign of one year only, deprived by him both of life and Kingdom. After whoſe death the *Latins*, or *Albans*, had no more Kings, but kept themſelvs as a Free-ſtate till ſubdued to *Rome*. 1.

Concerning this it is to be underſtood, that *Amulius* having chaſed his eldeſt brother *Numitor* out of the Countrey, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Throne, cauſed his brothers daughter *Rhea* (for preventing any iſſue by her) to be ſhut up in the Temple of *Veſta*. Where ſhe proving the mother of two ſons, was according to the Law buryed quick, and her children by the cruel Tyrant caſt out, to be devoured of wild Beaſts. They were found by *Fauſtulus* the Kings Shepherd, nurſt by his Wife, for her infamous life called *Lupa* (whence came the Fable, that they were ſuckled by a Wolf) and being grown to mans eſtate, ſlew the Tyrant *Amulius*, placing their Grand-father *Numitor* in the Royal Throne; whom not long after they deprived both of life and Kingdom. Of theſe the eldeſt was named *Romulus*, and the younger *Rhemus*, who leaving *Alba* to the ſhort poſſeſſion of their Grand-father *Numitor*, laid the foundation of the moſt famous City of *Rome*; which *Romulus* firſt handſelled with the blood of his brother *Rhemus*, who had diſdainfully leapt over the walls of his new City. This City he made an *Aſylum* or place of Refuge for all comers, of what deſperate eſtate ſoever, and having ranked them unto order, made himſelf their King. A people of ſo baſe a nature, that their neighbours refuſed to give them any of their daughters in marriage: So they were deſtitute of Wives, and conſequently not like to continue a people long; till on a Proclamation made of ſome plays and paſtimes, many of the *Sabine* women flocked thither to behold the ſports, whom the *Romans* ſeiſed on, and forced an unwilling conſent from them, to become their Wives. From ſuch a baſe and low beginning did this City riſe, to be the Empreſs of the World.

The Kings of *Rome*.

A. M.
3213 1 *Romulus* the founder of *Rome:* he made peace with *Tatius* King of the *Sabines*, coming againſt him to revenge the raviſhment of their women: incorporating him and his into his new City, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory. 37.
3251 2 *Numa*, the firſt Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies. 43.
3294 3 *Tullus Hoſtilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the conqueſt of *Alba*, the mother-City of the *Latins*, and vanquiſhed the *Fidenates*. 32.
3326 4 *Ancus Martius*, who built *Oſtia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City. 24.
3350 5 *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who ſubdued many of the *Tuſcan* Nations, encreaſed the number of the *Tribes* and *Senators*, and added the *triumphal* ornaments. 38.
3388 6 *Servius Tullus*, who firſt cauſed the people to be *inrolled*, and brought into cenſe. 44.
3432 7 *Tarquinius Superbus*, ſon to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquiſhed the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Adea*, *Ocriculum*, and *Sueſſa Pometia*; but for his own inſolent behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatine* by his ſon *Sextus*, he and his whole Race were driven out of the Town, *Anno Mund.* 3457. *V. C.* 268.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, cauſed two Officers to be choſen out of the *Patricii*, or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Conſuls*, *à conſulendo*, from counſelling of, and conſulting the good of the Common-wealth, *ut conſulere ſe ſuis civibus meminerint*, ſaith the Hiſtorian, their name being a *Memento* of their charge or duty. And in this office they reſolved to have always two, and thoſe but onely for a year, *Ne vel ſolitudine vel morâ poteſtas corrumperetur*. And though ſome had the fortune to be *Conſuls* two or three years together, yet every new year they were anew choſen, and ſo their Offices reckoned as ſeveral; neither do we find any to have been elected for leſs than a year, unleſs upon the death or depoſition of a former, untill the Civil wars. But then, *cum belli civilis præmia feſtinari cœperunt*, when the ſervices done in the Civil wars required a quicker turn in requital, the *Conſulſhip* was given only for ſome part of the year, and ordinarily for two Months: the firſt *Conſuls* being named *Ordinarii*, in whoſe names the writings made for the whole year were dated; the other *Minores*, or *Honorarii*, which onely ſerved to make up a number, for ſo ambitious were the *Romans* of this honour, that when *Maximus* dyed in the laſt day of his Conſulſhip, *Caninius Rebilus* petitioned *Cæſar* for that part of the day that remained: whence that ſo memorated jeſt of *Tully*, *O vigilantem Conſulem, qui toto conſulatus ſui tempore ſomnum oculis non vidit!* And when *Cecina* was by the Senate degraded from this honour on the day in which he was to have reſigned it, one *Roſcius Regulus* obteined the office from *Vitellius*, for the day remaining: but as the Hiſtorian noteth, *magno cum irriſu accipientis, tribuentiſq;* Now as the *Romans* did exceed the firſt number of *Conſuls*, ſo ſometimes fell they ſhort of it. The firſt that was ſole *Conſul* was *Pompey*, in the beginning of the Civil Wars, *viz.* *A. V. C.* 703. The next, one *Varanes*, *A. Ch.* 410. This Office, from the firſt inſtitution to the finall period of it, continued at the leaſt in name (for the Emperours had of long time aſſumed the Power and Prerogative appertaining to it) the ſpace of 1084. years, though not without many intermiſſions of the name and Title, by the ſeveral interpoſings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Conſular Tribunes*,) of which more anon. The laſt Conſul was one *Baſilius*, in the time of *Juſtinian*, *A. Ch.* 542. The two firſt, *Collatinus* the husband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whoſe inſtigation the people had took Arms againſt the houſe of the *Tarquins*. A man ſo zealous in defence of the common liberty, ſo reſolutely bent to make good what he had begun, and ſo extreamly oppoſite to the Royal Race, that he not onely cauſed *Collatine* ro reſign his Office, within the year, becauſe he was of the blood of the *Tarquins*, but executed his own ſons, for holding correſpondence and *intelligence* with them. But though the Government were changed, the old deſign was followed, which the Kings had laid for the enlarging of their Empire; but followed with ſo ſlow a pace, by reaſon of their factions and diviſions, that it was full 500. years before they could be Maſters of *Italy*. A matter not unworthy of our conſideration, that the *Italians* ſhould hold out ſo long a time againſt the puiſſance of the *Romans*; when in leſs than half that time enſuing, they did poſſeſs themſelvs of almoſt all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdoms and Provinces both in *Aſia* and *Africk*. So difficult a thing it was (as is ſaid by *Florus*) *dare caput Italiæ*, to contract the many limbs of *Italy* into one body and unite them under one head.

But to proceed, after *Italy* was fully conquer'd by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their neereſt Neighbours; whoſe overthrow in the end of the firſt *Punick* War, *A. V. C.* 512. gave them the full poſſeſſion of *Sicily*, (except the State of *Syracuſa*) and the Iſle of *Sardinia*. After that being moleſted in their Trade by the *Illyrian* Pirates, and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War againſt her, and brought that puiſſant people to become their Tributaries, *A. V. C.* 525. The ſecond *Carthaginian* war, managed by *Annibal* in the bowels of *Italy*, had almoſt put a period to the glories of their Common-wealth. But that being alſo ended to their advantage by the conqueſt of *Spain*, they quarrelled *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace on their own tearms, and after outed his ſon *Perſeus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the reſt of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a quarrel with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*, made him abandon his poſſeſſion of the *Leſſer Aſia*, and finally prevailed ſo ſucceſsfully in all their actions, that there was neither King nor Common-wealth that could ſtand in their way, until the State being burdened with its too much greatneſs, began to totter of it ſelf.

Two things there were, which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their power and greatneſs, beſides the Providence of God which had ſo diſpoſed it: which were the great encouragements which they gave their Souldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they uſed to beſtow upon their *Generals*, when they returned home with honour and victory. For when any of their *Generals* did ſo return, he was permitted to enter ſitting on a glorious Chariot, the ſpoils which he had got in war being carried before, the priſoners he had taken following bound at the heels of his Chariot; his Souldiers compaſſing him about with their ſeveral Crowns, according to the quality of their well deſervings; and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Prieſts, and principal Ladies, going out to meet him. The firſt beginning of which cuſtom is aſcribed to *Romulus*; who in the war with *Acron* King of the *Ceninenſes* made againſt him in revenge of the rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine* women, ſeeing his people give ground, called for help *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Acron*, to offer up his Armor to him. *Acron* being vanquiſhed, the Conqueror cutteth down a fair young Oak, and hangeth on it all the Armour of the vanquiſhed King: then girding his Gown cloſe unto him, and putting on his head a Garland of Lawrel, he laid the Oak upon his ſhoulders, and marched towards the City, his Army following him, and ſinging an *Epinicion* or ſong of victory. To this we muſt refer the original and beginning of *Triumphs*. But *nihil eſt inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the ſaying is. *Tarquinius Priſcus*, long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the Purple Robe, and the Triumphant Chariot drawn with four Horſes. The other pomps came afterwards, as they grew both in power and pride: Now of theſe *Triumphs* there were two ſorts, the Greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*, and the Leſſer, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumſtances. For, 1 The *Triumpher* made his entrance in a Royal Chariot, and was met by the *Senators* in their Robes; but the *Ovator* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2 The *Triumpher* had a Lawrel Crown, and entred with the noiſe of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovator* had only a Garland of Fir, with Flutes and Haultboys playing before him. 3 The *Triumpher* was attired in a Garment of State, which they called *Veſtis Trabeata*; but the *Ovator* in a plain Purple Gown only. 4 In a *Triumph* the Souldiers cryed out, *Io Triumphe*; but in an *Ovation* they ingeminated only *O, O, O*, from the often doubling of which words, it had (as ſome think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5 And laſtly, the *Triumpher* uſed to ſacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovator* a Sheep only; from whence the name is properly to be derived.

Now there were three caſes in which the Conquerour was to be content with this leſſer Triumph. 1 If the number of the enemies whom he ſlew in battel exceeded not 5000 men; or that he had not ſo much overcome them by force, as perſuaſion, or ſubtilty: 2 If the War had been ſlight, curſory, or not lawfully managed: And 3 If it were againſt an ignoble Enemy. And of this laſt we have a fair inſtance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the victory in the *Servile* War, (a victory of great importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*; *ne Triumphi dignitatem* Servili *inſcriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumphs* they were indeed very full of magnificence, the pomp whereof, who liſt to ſee may find it in the Triumph of *Paulus Æmilius* deſcribed by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been ſaid, we may conjecture ſomewhat at the glories of it.

And yet this honour was not always vouchſafed to thoſe who had beſt deſerved it, there being many ways whereby it might be forfeited or denyed in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatneſs of the Men of War. For, 1 Sometimes it was denyed a victorious General, by the ſtrength of a contrary Faction; and ſo *Pompey* denyed *Metellus* the honour of a *Triumph* for the conqueſt of *Crete*; 2 Sometimes the Conqueror himſelf was willing to decline it, for fear of envy: And ſo *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his conqueſt of *Sicily*, having *Triumphed* twice before, refuſed that honour, his reaſon was, ϗ φθόνον ἔχει ὁ τρίτος θρίαμβος, for fear his third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy. 3 Sometimes the Souldiers having been ill paid, or otherwiſe not well treated by their Commanders, oppoſed them in their ſuit for it: and this was the caſe of *Paulus Æmilius*, who queſtionleſs had miſſed this honour, for not dividing amongſt them the Spoils of *Greece*, as he once had promiſed, if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own caſe, had not ſtickled hard for him with the Souldiers. 4 It was ſometimes denyed, becauſe the General had born no publick office in the Common-wealth: For ſo in *Livy*, when *Lentulus* coming *Proconſul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the Fathers anſwered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that honour, but that they had no precedent for it, *ut qui neq;* Conſul, *neq;* Dictator, *neq;* Prætor *res geſſiſſet* Triumpharet. 5 Sometimes the *Generals* themſelves omitted it for the furtherance of ſome of their other purpoſes. And ſo *Cæſar* coming towards *Rome*, a Victor, at the ſame time the *Conſuls* were to be choſen, laid aſide his demand of the *Triumph*, to ſue for the Conſulſhip; it being the Cuſtom, that ſuch as demanded the *Triumph*, ſhould abide without the City; and ſuch as ſued for the Conſulſhip, muſt of neceſſity be within. 6 Sometimes it was denyed, when the War had been undertaken without the command of the *Senate*: in which reſpect the *Triumph* was denyed unto *Manlius* on the conqueſt of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargement of their Empire; *quia cauſam Belli* Senatus *non approbavit*, becauſe he had no commiſſion from the Senate for it. 7 There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been *Civil*, becauſe in all ſuch Wars whoſoever was Conqueror, the Common-wealth was a loſer by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquiſhed *Sertorius* and his party in *Spain* would have it called a *Forein*, not a *Civil* War, becauſe they would not loſe their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quam* Civile *videri voluerunt, ut Triumpharent*. 8 If the victory had not been obteined without great loſs on the *Romans* ſide; in which regard *Valerius* after his conqueſt of the *Galls* was denyed this honour; *quia magis dolor civibus amiſſis, quam gaudium fuſis hoſtibus prævaluit*, ſaith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9 And laſtly, the *Triumph* was denyed a *General*, if the ſervice had not been performed in his own Province: And ſo we find that when *Livius*, and *Nero*, being Conſuls, had vanquiſhed *Aſdrubal*, *Livius* onely had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the man that had won the day; becauſe the field was fought in the Province of *Livius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Acceſſary*, or aſſiſtant to him.

And theſe are all, or at the leaſt the principal cauſes, of hindering or omitting this great honour, indeed the greateſt that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after, when the Common wealth was changed into a *Monarchy*, it began to be laid aſide for altogether, as too great for ſubjects; and was firſt purpoſely neglected by *Vipſanius Agrippa*, the Eſtabliſher of *Auguſtus* in the *Roman* Empire; who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Aſia*, and his quiet ſetling of that Countrey; to give poſterity an example, refuſed to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occaſioned that this cuſtome was in ſhort time quite laid aſide; and that no man under the degree of an *Emperour* Triumphed ſolemnly; all others from hence-forth, being content with the *Triumphal* Ornaments, μόναις ταῖς ἐπινικίαις τιμαῖς, in the words of *Dion*. And though *Beliſarius* having ſubdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, is ſaid (600 years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph*; yet, in propriety of ſpeech, it was nothing but an honourable preſenting of himſelf and his priſoners before the Emperour; and was ſo far from the magnificence of a *Roman Triumph*, that it wanted many of the ſolemnities uſed in an *Ovation*. Nor did the Emperors themſelves much affect his honour, either becauſe too popular, or two chargeable, or that they thought it was beneath the *Imperial Majeſty*; the laſt (as I remember) that made uſe thereof to ſet forth his glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his victories over the *Germans*, and the *Blemyæ*, a people of *Africk*, in or about the year 284 of our Saviours birth.

In the next place look we on the incouragements and rewards of the common Souldiers: For beſides the ſetting out of Lands and dwellings for the poorer ſort, in which they might reſt themſelves when they were paſt ſervice, and beſides the large *donatives* which the *General* in his *Triumph* did beſtow upon them; they had their *mural Crown*, for him that firſt ſcaled the Wals; a *naval Crown*, for him that firſt boarded the Enemies Ships; a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Caſtrenſis*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy; a *City Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preſerved the life of a *Roman* Citizen. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe Chains, and Bracelets, which Souldiers of inferiour merit were adorned withal. By which incouragements, and the good conduct of their Counſels in the Senate, the *Roman* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, and their Dominions were enlarged ſo immenſly, that never any Common-wealth had ſo large a growth.

And yet the greatneſs of this ſtate is neither totally, nor only, to be attributed to the *Conſular* Government. For though the wals of this great building were raiſed by the *Conſuls*, yet the foundation of the ſame was laid by the Kings, and the roof thereof laid on by the Emperours. Nay, be it ſpoken to the honour of *Monarchical* Government, whenſoever any great and imminent danger did ſeem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aſide their confidence in the rule of their *Conſuls*, and betake themſelves to the command of ſome Sovereign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and other the changes hapning in the State of *Rome*, take this ſhort abſtract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "*Urbem Romam* " *à principio Reges habuere*, &c. The City of *Rome* was in the beginning governed by Kings. Liberty and " the Conſulſhip, *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dictators* were choſe but for a time; The *Decemviri* " paſſed not two years, neither had the *Conſular* authority of the *Tribunes* of the Souldiers any long " continuance, not *Cinnas* nor *Syllas* dominion. *Pompey* and *Craſſus* quickly yeelded to *Cæſars* forces " *Lepidus* and *Antony* to *Auguſtus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of theſe publick changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were inſtituted only on a particular occaſion for the reforming of the Laws by thoſe of *Athens*; and the *Military Tribunes* of *Conſular Authority* ordeined to divert common people from ſeeking after the *Conſulſhip*; I ſhall here ſay nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a ſupreme power, and ſuch as made for the Emperors in the cloſe of all; I ſhall inlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators à Dictando*, becauſe they preſcribed what they pleaſed unto the people; which they were bound to execute and not diſpute. Hence that memorable jeſt of *Julius Cæſar*, who being told that *Sylla* had reſigned his *Dictatorſhip*, though by decree of Senate made perpetual to him: returned this Anſwer, that *Sclla* was an unlearned man, *dictare neſciit*, and therefore knew not how to *dictate*, or to play the *Dictator*. They were alſo called *Populi Magiſtri*, or the peoples Maſters, becauſe from them lay no Appeal unto the people (as did from all the reſt of the *Roman* Magiſtrates) during the whole time of their command; which ordinarily continued for ſix months; yet ſo, that if they did in the mean time ſettle the affairs of the Common-wealth, they reſigned it ſooner; if the neceſſities of the State required a longer continuance in it, they were choſen again. The names of as many of them as I have met withall, I have here ſub-joyned, together with the ſervices they did the publick, in the time of their Office.

The *Dictators* of *Rome*.

A.V.C.

253. 1 *Titus Largius*, choſen upon occaſion of a general War, made by the *Latins* upon *Rome*, the firſt that ever had this Office.

257. 2 *Aulus Poſthumius*, choſen to perſue that war, which ended with the ſlaughter of 30000 of the *Latins*.

295. 3 *L. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, choſen to this office from the Plough, overcame the *Volſci*, choſen again *An. V. C.* 314. to ſuppreſs the ſedition raiſed *Sp. Melius*.

318. 4 *Æmilius Mamercus*, overcame the *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven years called unto this Office.

338.

338. 5 *Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquiſhed the *Fidenates*, and the *Lavicani*.

354. 9 *Furius Camillus*, who finally deſtroyed the City of the *Veii*, and being choſen a ſecond time *A. V. C.* 362. preſerved his Countrey from the *Galls*: thrice choſen after this upon new occaſions.

375. 7 *Tit. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, choſen in the War againſt the *Latins*.

385. 8 *L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous peſtilence, to find a way for the appeaſing of the gods.

396. 9 *C. Sulpitius*.

418. 10 *Martius Rutilius*, the firſt *Dictator* choſen out of the *Commons*.

11 *L. Papyrius* ſubdued the *Samnites*.

448. 12 *Coſſus*, by whom the *Samnites* were again vanquiſhed.

13 *Æmilius*, who alſo overcame the *Samnites*.

14 *Lentulus*, who triumphed alſo over the *Samnites*.

451. 15 *I. Bubulcus*, who finally ſubdued the *Æqui* and the *Volſci*:

16 *Corn. Rufinus*.

467. 17 *Q. Hortenſius*, choſen for appeaſing a difference betwixt the Senate and the Commons, who had fortified themſelves in *Janiculus*, one of the Hills whereon *Rome* ſtood.

505. {18 *Cl. Glizias*, forced to reſign his office to.

{19 *Atilius Colatinus*, the firſt that exerciſed his office out of *Italy*, he was choſen in the firſt *Punick* War.

536. 20 *Fabius Maximus*, choſen in the war againſt *Annibal*.

537. 21 *M. Junius*, choſen upon the great defeat which the *Roman* forces had at the battel of *Cannæ*.

545. 22 L. *Manlius Torquatus*, choſen upon the death of *Marcellus* the Conſul ſlain by *Annibal*.

192. 24 *L. Sylla* (deſcended from that *Corn. Rufinus*, who had been formerly in this office) having by force of Arms ſuppreſſed the faction of *Marius* and *Cinna*, made himſelf Maſter of the City, and cauſed himſelf to be choſen *Perpetual Dictator*, after the office had been intermitted, for the ſpace of 127 years: which office having exerciſed with a great deal of cruelty, he reſigned with as great a confidence.

707. 25 *C. Julius Cæſar*, deſcended from *Iulus* the ſon of *Aſcanius*, who was the ſecond King of the *Trojan* Race, having conquered *Britain*, and added all *Gaul Tranſalpine* to the *Roman* Empire; and finding himſelf unworthily requited by the faction of *Pompey*, paſſed with his Army after him into *Greece*; and having vanquiſhed him in the fields of *Pharſalia*, and made himſelf abſolutely maſter of the *Roman* Empire; took to himſelf the ſupreme Government thereof under the title of *Dictator*; which having managed for the ſpace of five years, he was murthered in the Senate houſe by *Brutus* and *Caſſius*.

Before the time of the *perpetual Dictators*, the *Romans* having ſome enemies or other that oppoſed the progreſs of their fortuues, had not the leiſure to contend with one another, in a publick way; or if they did, their differences and ſeditions were ſoon compoſed. But being grown ſo great as to fear no Enemy; and the eſtate ſo vaſt, that it was grown too mighty for a *Popular* Government, then they began to practice on the peoples patience, and to project the ſharing of the Empire amongſt the great ones. Concerning which, take here this ſhort *Epitome*, which I find in *Tacitus*. “ *Rebus modicis æqualitas facilè habebatur, &c.* While (ſaith he) our dominions were but ſmall, Equality was eaſily main- “ tained among us. But after we had ſubdued the World, and deſtroyed all Kings and Cities that ſtood “ in our way, or might work our annoyance; when we had leiſure to ſeek after Wealth without peril, “ there aroſe hot contentions betwixt the *Nobility* and the *Commons*. Sometimes the factious *Tribunes* “ carried it away; ſometimes the *Conſuls* had the better: and in the City and common *Forum*, ſome “ little skirmiſhes (the beginning of our Civil Wars) were ſometimes ſeen. Afterwards *C. Marius* “ one of the meaneſt of the Commonalty, ond *L. Sylla* the moſt cruel of all the Nobility, by force of “ Arms overthrowing the *Free-State*, reduced all to an abſolute Government. To them ſucceeded “ *Cn. Pompeius*, a little cloſer in his projects, but nothing better minded to the Common-wealth: *Et* “ *nunquam poſtea niſi de* Principatu *quæſitum*, and never after that was any other point debated, than who “ ſhould get the Soveraignty unto himſelf. So *Tacitus*, and he ſtateth it rightly. For after Pompey had revived the controverſie, and had found *Cæſar* a better diſputant than himſelf; *Auguſtus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus* (on the death of *Cæſar*) made good the Argument, attracting all power unto themſelvs by the name of *Triumviri*: till *Auguſtus* having out-witted *Lepidus*, and vanquiſhed *M. Antony* at the battel of *Actium*, became ſole Sovereign of the State, by the name of Prince; *Et cuncta bellis civilibus feſſa, nomine* Principis *ſub imperium accepit*, as that Author hath it.

But touching thoſe great alterations in the State of *Rome*, the contentions for the chief command, and the Reduction of it to a *Monarchy* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; I publiſhed a Diſcourſe in the year 1631. (but written many years before) under the title of *AUGUSTUS*, or *an* Eſſay *of thoſe Means and Counſels* whereby the *Common-wealth of* Rome *was altered, and reduced to a Monarchy*. Which being but ſhort ſo pertinent to the Preſent buſineſs, and ſo well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to ſubjoyn it here. The Reader may either peruſe it, or pretermit it, as his fancy guides him. And here it followeth in theſe words.

Auguſtus.

THey which have heretoſore written of *Common-wealths*, have divided them into three *Species*: The Government of the *King*; ſecondly, of the *Nobles*; and thirdly, of the *People*. Either of theſe is again ſubdivided into *good* and *evil*: The *evil* form being only the *good* corrupted; the *good* nothing elſe but the *bad* refined. So is the Government of a *King* divided into a *Monarchy*, and a *Tyranny*; Of the *Nobles*, into an *Ariſtocracy*, and an *Oligarchy*; Of the *People*, into a *Republick* and *Democracy*. All theſe, as well in general, as in the ſeveral couplets, have a ſecret inclination to change the one into the other; and to make a *Pythagorical* tranſmigration (as it were) into each others Being. I need not ſtand on many inſtances. The Common-wealth of *Rome* (into whoſe Stories whoſoever looketh, will judg them rather to contain the Acts of the World, than a particular Nation) will ſerve for all. *Romulus* at the foundation of his City, reſerved unto himſelf the chief Soveraignty, leaving it entire to his Succeſſors. *Numa*, *Ancus*, *Tullus*, *Tarquin* the Elder, and *Servius*, governed themſelves ſo moderately, and the people ſo juſtly, that they affected not *Tyranny*, nor the Common *Liberty*. They appeared more deſirous to fill the Coffers of their Subjects, than their own Treaſuries: And when neceſſity compelled them to a Tax, they rather ſeemed to ſheer their Sheep than fleece them. But *Tarquin* the ſecond, commonly called *Superbus*, a man of inſupportable Vices, having by violence enthronized himſelf in that Chair of State, which (had not his ambitious ſpirit been impatient of delay) would have been his rightfull Inheritance; made his Government anſwerable to his entrance, cruel and bloody. How many men, eminent as well by their own vertue, as their Parents Nobility, did he cut off? How many did he for no cauſe promote, to make their fall the more remarkable? What part of the *Senate* was free from ſlaughter? What corner of the City from lamentations? Yet this was not all. The miſerable *Romans* were viſited with three Plagues at once; *Pride* in the Father, *Cruelty* in the Mother, and *Luſt* exorbitant in their Son *Sextus*, a true Copy of the old Originals. Either of theſe had been more than enough to exerciſe the peoples patience. But meeting all at one time, it ſeemed that nothing could now be added to the wretchedneſs of the one, and the wickedneſs of the other. *Brutus* (a name fatal to Tyrants) did eaſily perſuade the Commons to ſhake of this yoak. For they, as well deſirous of *Novelties*, as ſenſible of *Oppreſſions*, had long ſince murmured at the preſent *A.V.C.244.* State; and wanted nothing but a head to break out into actual Rebellion. So the people got the *Freedom*, and the *Kings* loſt their *Soveraignty* of the City.

2. *Brutus*, although he wanted no fair Title to the *Crown*, yet, either perceiving how odious the name of *King* was grown; or perhaps, willing to be rather the firſt *Conſul*, than the laſt *Prince*; inſtituted a new form of Government; Wherein the ſway of all was referred to the *Fathers* of the City; out of whom, two were annually choſen as chief of the reſt. And herein certainly he dealt very adviſedly. For, had he ſought to confirm himſelf in the *Kingdom*, what could men judg, but that, not love to his Countrey was the cauſe that ſtirred him to take Arms, but deſire of Rule? Again, beſides that ſecure *Privacie* is to be preferred before hazardous *Royalty*; what hope had he to keep the ſeat long, having by his own example, taught the people both the *Theory* and *Practice* of Rebellion? Under this new *Ariſtocracy*, the *Roman* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, their Dominions were inlarged ſo immenſly, that it may well be queſtioned, whether the *Roman* fortune cauſed their greatneſs, or their valour commanded their fortune. For the Governours not ſeeking wealth but honour, or not their own wealth, but the publick, did ſo demean themſelves, both in Peace and Warr, that there was between all, a vertuous emulation, who ſhould moſt benefit his Countrey. An happineſs which was too great to continue long. The people had as yet no written *Laws*; Cuſtom bearing moſt ſway, the reſt of the *Law* locked up in the breaſt of the *Judges*. To avoid ſuch inconveniencies as might hence enſue, there were ſome men, conceived to be as ſound in judgment, as honeſt in their actions, deputed by a general Commiſion, to take an abſtract of the *Grecian Laws*; according to the tenor whereof, the *People* were to frame their lives, the *Judges* their ſentences. Here followed the *Oligarchy*, or *Decemvirate State* of *Rome*, but long it laſted not. For theſe new *Lords* joining forces together, made *A.V.C.304.* themſelves rich with the ſpoil of the People, not caring by what unlawfull means they could purchaſe either profit or pleaſure. *Appius Claudius*, one of the *Decemviri*, was the break-neck of this Government. He, unmindful of *Lucretia*, and the *Tarquins*, luſted after *Virginia*, a Woman, though of low condition, yet ſuch a Woman, in whom beauty and vertue ſtrove for the preheminence. The iſſue was, that ſhe (to ſave her honour) was ſlain by her own father in an open Aſſembly of the People; *Appius* forced to make away himſelf in priſon; and the reſt of that *Magiſtracy* abdicating their Offices, the *Conſuls* were for a time reſtored.

3. The *People* fleſhed with this Victory, and calling to mind how their Anceſtors had in like manner baniſhed the *Kings*, began to know their own ſtrength, and ſtomached it exceedingly, that they on whoſe ſhoulders the frame of the State was ſupported, ſhould be ſo much under the Command of others, that they who were *Lords* abroad, ſhould be below the condition of *Slaves* at home. Hereupon they raiſe a tumult under the Conduct of their *Tribune Canuleius*. Nor could they by any perſuaſions be induced to lay down Arms, till they had obtained a decree, That from thenceforth, the *Nobles* and the *Commons* might promiſcuouſly be married. And this was the firſt ſtep to the *Republick*. *A.V.C.308.* The gaining this new *Privilege*, put them in poſſibility of obtaining greater. They now ſue to be capable of the *Conſulſhip*. The *Fathers* conſulting of this demand, wiſely fore-ſaw, that to grant their Petition or to deny it, was alike dangerous. For were it utterly daſhed, it was to be feared the *People* would again forſake the City; and yet make their ſtay more inſolent and inſupportable, if it were granted. *C. Claudius*, one who by his honourable behaviour, was by both parties had in an equal degree of reverence, quickly propoſed a middle courſe, whereby the fury of the multitude might be ap-

peaſed, without blemiſh to the *Conſular* Dignity. He conſtituted ſix Annual Officers, equally choſen out of the People and Nobles, calling them *Tribuni Militum Conſularis poteſtatis.* This Office continued, but not without many *Interſtitiums*, the ſpace of 78 years. A.V.C.310. Which time expired, and ſome experience being had of the Peoples Government; the *Lords* of the *Senate* did decree, That one of the *Conſuls* ſhould from henceforth be choſen by, and out of the *Commons*; that they ſhould be capable of all *Magiſtracies*; yea, even of the *Dictatorſhip*. A.V.C.388. So that now *Vertue* was as ſpeedy a Ladder to climb unto Honours, as *Nobility* of Birth, and a *Good* man as much reſpected as a *Great*. A rare felicity of the times.

4. The People being thus mixt with the Nobles, as well in Marriages as Honours; one would have thought that this Common-wealth, being thus equally poiſed, had been immortal. But as in the Natural Body, there can be no exact and Arithmetical proportion of the Humours and Elements, without ſome *predominancy*: ſo in the Body Politick, can there be no equal mixture of *Plebeians* and *Patricians*, without the ſupremacy of the one or the other. The People had preſently after the inſtitution of the *Conſuls*, raiſed a Commotion, and withdrew themſelves into *Mount Aventine*. Nor could they be intreated to return into the City, till there were granted unto them peculiar Officers called *Tribuni Plebis*; or Protectors of the Commons. A.V.C.426. Theſe being not long after by the Common Council pronounced to be *Sacroſancti*, and inviolable, began to heave the *Popular State* too high, and thruſt the *Ariſtocratical* too low, not regarding to loſe the love of the one, ſo they may get the applauſe of the other. In ſo much, that matters of judgment were devolved from the Fathers to the Commons; and the Authority of the *Senate* trod under foot by the People. Nay, they proceeded ſo farr, that *Marius* being *Tribune*, threatned to ſend *Cotta* the *Conſul* unto priſon. And *Sulpitius* in the ſame *Office*, made the *Conſuls* forſake the *Senate-houſe*, and ſlew on of their Sons, whoſe heels were not nimble enough to flie away. And now were the *Romans* governed by that form of *Rule*, than which there is no lower. So that as well by an inevitable neceſſity in *Nature*, as the ordinary courſe of *Polities*, there muſt be a reverting to the firſt, and *Monarchical* Authority. For queſtionleſs, it fareth many times with a Common weath, as with the *Sun*, which runneth through all the Signs of the *Zodiack*, till it return to the place where its motion firſt began. And the *Platonick* year of reducing all things to the ſame beginning, continuance, and period, how falſe ſoever in the Books of *Nature*, is in ſome ſort true in the change of Government.

5. The way down-hill is eaſie and ordinary, but to aſcend unto the top requireth both wit to frame the ſteps, and courage to give the attempt. So was it here alſo with the *Romans*. They had naturally, and almoſt inſenſibly, faln from a *Monarchy* to a *Populacy*, or *Democracy*: But to aſcend from a *Populacy* to a *Monarchy*, required many ſteps and degrees in many, much induſtry in all. *Marius* and *Sylla*, well skilled in feeding the humours of the People, were the firſt that attempted, and ſeverally mounted to ſuch a height of command, as never durſt any promiſe to them, nor they hope for themſelves. *Marius* was of a harſh and ſtern nature, equally cruel to the Enemies in Warr, and the People in peace; one whoſe birth the *Romans* might have had juſt cauſe to curſe, had he not ſaved them from the *Cimbri*. *Sylla* was one whoſe carriage none could enough commend before, or ſufficiently condemn after his proſperity. A man whoſe peace was farr more bloudy than his Warrs; a better *Subject* than a *Prince*.

Theſe two gave way each to other, [illegible]oth to death. Next theſe, as well in faction and deſigns, as bloud and alliance, ſucceded *Cæſar* and *Pompey*; Two men never truly parallel'd ſince their own times. *Cæſar* had a wit to invent ſo pregnant, a heart to execute ſo ſtout, and to both a Fortune ſo favourable, that he durſt undertake what no man dared; and his performances commonly were anſwerable to his undertakings. *Pompey*, a man greater than his own or friends wiſhes, had triumphed over all the parts of the known World; and could he but have brooked *Equal*, he had never met *Superiour*. Had theſe two lived in divers Ages, or exerciſed their valour on the common Enemy, the World had been too little to yield them imployments But turning their forces one againſt the other, *Pompey* overthrown in the *Field*, was baſely murthered in *Egypt*; and *Cæſar* victoriouſly Conquerour in *Theſſaly*, was barbarouſly maſſacred in the Capitol. And though none of theſe four *Worthies* could ſettle the *Monarchy* in himſelf; yet this ſhall be to their eternal memory recorded, that they firſt opened the paſſage to others, and firſt moved the ſtone, which rowling along tumbled the People out of the *Government*.

6. After the overthrow of *Pompey*, and death of *Cæſar*, the Common-wealth might have recovered Liberty if either *Cæſar* had left no heir, and *Pompey* no children; or rather, if *Antonius*, a man of an unquiet and turbulent ſpirit, had not begun new troubles. For he, knowing the affection of the Common People unto young *Octavius*, *Cæſars* heir; and hearing the continual report of his approach to *Rome* for his Inheritance; did by *Decree* of the *Senate* reſtore *Sextus* the Son of *Pompey* to his bloud and honours; Hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers hatreds, would like Pellets in a Boys Pot-gun, drive out each other; and ſo he might remain *Lord* of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be ſo fetch'd over; and had moreover more deſire to revenge his fathers death on *Brutus* and *Caſſius* than turn himſelf upon an enemy, that neither had done, nor could do him any hurt. At his firſt entrance into *Rome*, he declared himſelf *Cæſars* Heir; though ſome regarding more his welfare than honour, diſſuaded him from it. His retinue at his entrance was but ſmall, his behaviour gentle and courteous; ſo that all had cauſe to love him, none to fear him. His firſt buſineſs was to *Antonius*, then poſſeſſed of all *Cæſars* Eſtate. His words as modeſt, as his Petition juſt. *Antony*'s Anſwer ſomewhat churliſh, forbidding him to meddle in matters of *State*, adding that he was too young to take upon him the Name of *Cæſar*; and ſo diſmiſſed him unſatisfied, and with diſcontentments. *Auguſtus* (for by that name we mean to call him, though he was not yet ſo called) perceiving that

Antony's

Auguſtus.

Antony's Anſwer, though in ſhew but a *delay*, was in effect a *denial*; inſinuated into the acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capital Enemy of *Antony*; by whoſe means the *Lords* of the *Senate* began to caſt great affection towards him. Next, in a ſolemn Oration to the *People*, he let them know, how he intended to diſtribute his Fathers wealth among them, and how *Antonius* did unjuſtly detain it from them both. Certainly, there is not any thing prevaileth ſooner with the Ignoble many, than hope of gain. No ſooner hath he finiſhed his Speech, and given away that to them which he thought impoſſible to get for himſelf, but all was in a tumult. None was ſo ſparing of his words, but he had ſome curſe in ſtore for *Antonius*; every one vowing the deſtruction of that man, whom they ſuppoſed to deprive them of *Auguſtus* Donative.

7. In this hurly burly, *Antony* quits the Town, and by the general voice of both Houſes declared an Enemy to the *State*. An Army is given to *Hircius*, and *Panſa*, then *Conſuls*: *Auguſtus*, aged but eighteen years, being proclaimed *Imperator*, and made Head of the League againſt the common Foe. *Auguſtus*, as he loved not to be abſent from a neceſſary Warr, ſo he always uſed to reſerve himſelf from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole enterpriſe unto the *Conſuls*; well knowing, that though the Officers and Souldiers took moſt pains to get the Victory, yet would the honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas, if any thing fell out to the Army, not well, his being a *Non-agent* in the buſineſs, would bring his honour off without ſtain. The *Conſuls* therefore proceed in this Warr againſt *Antony*; who ſeeing little poſſibility of prevailing, reſolved to ſell the loſs of his own Liberty, and his Souldiers lives, at a dear rate. And indeed, the fortune of the day was ſo equally ſhared, that as the *Conſuls* might boaſt of the vanquiſhment of *Antony*, ſo *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Conſuls*.

Auguſtus had now as much as he could deſire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his ſervice. He therefore applies himſelf to them, that giving that among them which he had in preſent; and promiſing them greater favours, according as his fortune and their valour ſhould advance him, he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of allegiance, and made them the firſt ſtep by which he aſcended the *Royalty*. The *Lords* of the *Senate* hearing of the young mans fortune, thought it beſt to ſtrangle theſe hopes even in their Cradles; and to that end, decree the honour of overcoming *Antony*, not to belong to *Auguſtus*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whoſe defence (being beſieged by *Antony* in *Mutina*) their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this froſt of unexpected unkindneſs ſufficient to nip the bloſſome of his hopes; but they denied him the *Conſulſhip*. Theſe harſh proceedings compelled *Auguſtus* (his honour now lying at ſtake) to enter *Rome* as *Conquerour*; and force the *Fathers* to grant him his deſires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at; he generally ſhewed himſelf grateful to all, and particularly to ſome of his Souldiers; paying them what was behind by promiſe, and openly proteſting, that without their aid, he durſt not have adventured into the *Capitol*. So by the keeping his day with the *Military men*, and ſhewing his noble and generous nature in a thankful commemoration of their ſervice; he added ſtronger bonds to ſuch as were already his own, and won many daily to his ſide, which before were either *neutral*, or *adverſaries*.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was not idle, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puiſſant Army, he poſted thither; and ſo farr prevailed with the Souldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp; where the *General* entertained him with all expreſſions of love and welcom. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, ſoon perſuaded him to lead his Forces into *Italy*, promiſing himſelf no leſs than the Lordſhip of the World, if he durſt but ſhew his face to the *Romans*. *Auguſtus* having continual news of this combination, and fearing much the proweſs of *Antony*, now ſtrengthened; conceived no courſe ſo fitting and convenient to his ends, as to join friendſhip, and to enter into confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either; but becauſe, being deſtitute of means to reſiſt them, and alſo to revenge the death of his Father *Julius*, wich he much laboured, he might with their forces oppreſs *Caſſius* and *M. Brutus*, and after, as occaſion fell out, deal with them being ſevered. This League was ſolemnly confirmed by a bloudy Proſcription immediately following. Wherein, to be revenged on their *enemies*, they betrayed their *friends*. A lamentable and ruthful time, good and bad, rich and poor, being both alike ſubject to the ſlaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Cæſars* Government thought to be the *Golden Age*; and every one began to curſe *Brutus* and *Caſſius* as the Autors of theſe preſent miſeries; whom they but lately honoured as the Reſtorers of the Common liberty. Nay, the very *Kings* were deemed tolerable, and ſuch as lived in their days, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrants*. Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us men, that we know not our own happineſs in the *fruition*, but the *want*. Two of theſe *Triumviri* glutted themſelves with bloud, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the *People*. *Auguſtus*, on the contrary, ſhewed himſelf much grieved at this barbarous cruelty; ſo that his conſent ſeemed rather forced than voluntary. But this Proſcription, though in it ſelf cruel and tyrannical, produced ſome good and profitable effects in the *Republick*. For when by this Proſcription, and the enſuing Civil Warr, the ſtouteſt of the *Nobles* and *Commons* were made away, few being left which durſt endeavour to recover the old *Liberty*; *Auguſtus* did the more eaſily eſtabliſh his *Monarchy*, and reſtore peace to the City. Moreover, the proſecution of this cruelty ſo incenſed the people againſt *Antony* and *Lepidus*; that *Auguſtus*, whom moſt held excuſable, found them always his faſt friends, if not for love to him, yet in ſpight to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *Auguſtus* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joint-forces march againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius* both overthrown by *Antony*; whom *Auguſtus* did therefore put upon that ſervice, as well to diminiſh *Antony*'s forces, as to keep his own entire. As for

Auguſtus.

himſelf, either he in policy ſuffered himſelf to be driven out of the field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or elſe indeed durſt not abide the battel. Such end had *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, two men whom fortune ſeemed to be in love with on the ſudden, and did as ſuddenly forſake them. *Brutus* the more accompliſhed man; *Caſſius* the more expert Souldier. I paſs over AVGVSTVS VVars in *Italie*, *Antonies* in *Aſia*, the diſcontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, ſiſter to the one, and wife to the other Emperor. As alſo how joyning forces together to oppreſs *Sextus*, then Lording it over the Sea, and proud with the Conqueſt of *Sicilia*; they received him into the Confederacy, and joyned the Iſland of *Sardinia* to his other Conqueſts. To recompenſe which kindneſs, *Sextus* invited the two Generals abord his Admiral Galley: and after a bountifull entertainment, return'd them ſafe to their Camps. I ſcarce have ever heard of ſo great an over-ſight, among ſo many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my ſelf, upon what confidence AVGVSTVS and *Antony* durſt ſo far truſt their perſons to a reconciled Enemy: or on what reaſon *Sextus* having both of them in his power, would let ſlip ſo ſlightly that advantage; greater than which was never offered to a diſcontented and ambitious perſon. This I am ſure of, that he afterward repented it, and could have wiſhed that he had hearkned to the voice of *Menas* his old ſervant, who had perſwaded him to make his beſt of that opportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Aragon*, of old enemies made new friends, had the like enterview at *Savona*: which that notable Hiſtoriographer and States-man *Guicciardine* deſcribeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet in the like caſe, have many, and, as I think, worthily condemned *Lewis* XI. of *France*, and *Charls* of *Burgundie*, the Arch-politicians of thoſe daies; in that *Lewis* at *Peronne* put himſelf into the hands of *Charls* his Enemy, who alſo after a ſhort reſtraint diſmiſſed him.

A.V.C.711.

10. Theſe ſolemn expreſſions of amity between the three Generals being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*, AVGVSTVS then began to contrive his eſtabliſhment in the State, though with the ruine of his Colleagues. He beginneth firſt with *Sextus*, having by gifts and promiſes drawn *Menas* unto his ſide; who by reaſon of his inwardneſs with his Maſter, knew moſt of his deſigns. By directions of this *Menas*, and the aſſiſtance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sextus*; who flying death into *Europe*, by the hand of *Auguſtus*, found it in *Aſia*, by the command of *Antony*. After this Victory, *Auguſtus*, either having, or pretending a quarrel againſt *Lepidus*, entred into his Camp, ſeizeth his perſon, and depriving him of all honours, and confineth him to *Rome*. A man that half againſt his will, ſtumbling upon the Government, had beyond any deſert of his, enjoyed ten years continuance of Empire and Proſperity. An action of a very high nature, and ſuch as *Auguſtus* durſt not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italy*. He therefore adviſedly removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the ſame. It hath been ever a chief *Maxime* in *Court-policy*, to remove that man out of the way, under pretence of ſome honourable charge, whom we intend either to caſt from his preſent honours; or elſe to make leſs potent with Prince or People. For which cauſe alſo, *Auguſtus* perſuaded *Antony*'s abſence from the City, to bring him at the laſt into diſcredit and contempt. For well he knew, that his dotage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many inconveniencies: neither could his neglecting the *State*, to riot with his *Lemman*, be other than diſtateful to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his Siſter *Octavia* to leave her huſband *Antony*'s Houſe; yet privately he perſuaded her to live there ſtill, and bring up his children; that ſo the *Romans* ſeeing her noble demeanour and love to her Huſband, might the more heartily deteſt him, who ſo ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more fuel to this flame of hatred, he readeth *Antony*'s Will unto the People; in which, many of the *Roman* Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra*'s children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewiſe preferred many Bills againſt *Auguſtus*, as that he had depoſed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italy* amongſt his own Souldiers onely; that he had not reſtored the Ships borrowed to make Warr againſt *Sextus*.

11. Theſe diſcontents, ſeconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both reſolute to referr all to the deciſion of a Battel. *Antony* had a Fleet conſiſting of 500 Ships, high-built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph, than a fight. His Land forces conſiſted of 100000 foot, and 12000 Horſe. *Auguſtus* had the like number of Horſe-men, 80000 foot, and 250 good Men of Warr, ſnug and cloſe, built more for uſe than oſtentation. The Randezvous is *Actium*, a place ſeeming to be marked out for notable deſigns: here being ſought alſo in our fathers days, that famous Battel, wherein the *Venetians* gave the World to underſtand, that the *Turks* forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the offenſive ſide, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onſet by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whoſe words were *Oracles*, perſuaded him to the Sea-fight; not that ſhe thought it more ſafe, but that if *Antony* loſt the day, ſhe might with more facility eſcape. To this reſolution, when moſt of the Captains had for fear agreed; one of the old Souldiers thus bluntly gain-ſaid it. “What a miſerable ſecurity art thou poſſeſſed with, moſt noble Emperor? Where
“is that antient fore-ſight, wherewith thou haſt formerly prevented all diſaſters, and turned the
“Enemies devices on their own heads? Conſider with thy ſelf, moſt noble *General*, what uncertain
“friends the *Wind* and *Sea* are? To how fickle an Element thou doſt truſt thy fortunes? Let the
“*Egyptians* and *Phœnicians*, old *Mermaids*, born and nurſt up in the Sea, follow this kind of war fare.
“But let us thy true *Roman* ſpirits, try out our valour on the firm Land, and there fight for thy *Empire*,
“and our own *Lives*. Perhaps thou doſt miſtruſt our faith, look here *Antony* (with that he opened his
“boſom) and thou ſhalt ſee many an hononourable ſcar got in thy ſervice. We are now too old to
“learn new Treaſons: Alter therefore thy reſolution, and, to pleaſe a Woman, caſt not away ſo many
“of thy faithful followers. Certainly, the unreſiſtible powers of heaven when they decree a mans

de-

Auguſtus.

deſtruction overthrow thoſe counſels by which he ſhould eſcape it. *Antony* turneth a deaf ear to this Souldiers wholeſom Advice; and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three kiſſes (as if from the fountain of her lips he had derived all his courage) without any more ceremony, prepareth himſelf unto the battel.

12. AUGUSTUS on the the other ſide, ſeing a neceſſity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Veſſels were more uſeful and better manned, though fewer than his enemies: that his men to him were faithful, and by reaſon of their many Victories, in good heart; From *Antony* were daily revolted ſome Kings and Captains of note, to the great incouragement of the one ſide, and diſheartening of the other. The whole charge of the Warr he committed to *M. Vipſanius Agrippa*; who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Galleys whatſoever might be impediments to the valiant, or ſhelter for the cowardly; all that was comberſom to his own men, or advantagious to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the battels ready to join, *Auguſtus Cæſar*, ſtanding where he might ſee and be ſeen of all, is ſaid to make this or the like Oration. “Fellows, and Com-
“ panions in Arms, I ſuppoſe it needleſs to hearten you, which never were acquainted with fear; or bid
“ you overcome, which never yet knew what it was not to vanquiſh. Conqueſt hath always ſat upon
“ the edges of your Swords, and Victory been written in your fore-heads. Be not now backward to
“ add this one to your other Triumphs. When after the death of my Father *Julius*, of famous memory,
“ I firſt dealt in matters of Warr, I rather found, than made you good Souldiers. And during this twelve
“ years ſervice under me, neither have you been wanting in the duty of faithful followers; nor I (I
“ hope) of a vigilant and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expreſſed my ſelf as farr as I could, and more I
“ would, had I been able. Let not the number, nor the greatneſs of the adverſe Galleys any ways affright you.
“ The hugeneſs of their Bulks maketh them unapt for imployment; and the multitude,
“ one clogging and hindring the other, may as much further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us
“ in multitudes of *Men*, we them in number of *Souldiers*. The meaning of the word *Pilot* is unknown
“ among them And for their *Mariners*, the beſt of them are but *Carters*, *Reapers*, and *Harveſtmen*,
“ raked out of the field; the reſt the excrement of common Priſons, wherewith their Veſſels
“ are loaded, not manned. The *General* is indeed a fit *Captain* for ſuch a ſelected Company. It is
“ the ſame *Antony*, whom you once drave out of the Field, before *Mutina*. I verily perſuade my ſelf,
“ that neither he dares think of recovering, or you of loſing your former glories. It is the ſame *Antony*,
“ who being ſhamefully chaſed out of *Parthia*; onely in that he was not vanquiſhed, proclaimed himſelf
“ *Victor*. It is the ſame *Antony*, who intended to make *Rome* ſubject to the *Egyptians*; and to
“ diſtribute the *Provinces*, purchaſed with the bloud and vertue of our Anceſtors, amongſt *Iras* and
“ her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay, indeed, it is not *Antony* at all, but the ſhadow onely of that ſubſtance
“ which now is hid in *Cleovatra*'s Cabbin. Courage then brave men of Arms; be, as you ſtill
“ have been, Conquerors. To ſpeak more, were to detain you from Victory. Onely this, call to mind
“ your antient valour. Remember that I am *Cæſar*, you *Romans*.

13. This ſpeech animated the new Souldiers, and confirmed the old; So that with a general acclamation they gave the aſſault. Death, wounds, and blows, diſhed in divers faſhions, and ſerved in by ſeveral men; were the beſt delicates prepared for theſe unwelcome Viſitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battel, and doubting the ſucceſs; through the thickeſt of *Antony*'s Fleet, made away with the 60. Galleys appointed for her Guard. This diſorder made the breach, at which the Victory entred. *Antony* ſeeing her flight, left his Squadron alſo; and being taken into her Galley, hoyſed ſail for *Egypt*; herein playing the part of a cowardly Souldier, whileſt each of his Souldiers executed the office of a couragious *General*. For they ſo abſolutely perſiſted in the Fight, that AUGUSTUS was fain to offer them mercy ſooner than they would demand it; and divers times before they would accept it. At laſt, they all ſware allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, AUGUSTUS (no loſer of advantages) ſpeeds into *Egypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a Province; making the people pay for Fine, twenty millions of Gold. By receiving this money, he ſo weakned them, that they had no ability to raiſe an after-warr; and by diſtributing part of it among his Souldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he ſeeing his fortunes deſperate, redeemed the honour loſt in his life, by a noble and heroick death. And *Cleopatra* ended her life not long after alſo. A Woman more well-favoured, than fair; well-ſpoken, rather than either. *Antony*'s Courtiers had ſeen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; men being chained to her by the ears, rather than the eyes.

A.V.C.713.

14. I willingly omit AUGUSTUS entry into *Rome*; as alſo the ſtate and magnificence of his Triumph. His Victory he uſed ſo juſtly, that none felt the fury of the Warr, but ſuch as were ſlain in the Battel. To aſſure himſelf of *Antony*'s adherents, was his firſt care: to which end he burnt in the *Common Forum*, the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his friends in *Rome* had been incloſed: well knowing, that as long as any thought themſelves ſuſpected Adverſaries, they would never ſhew themſelves true friends. To the *Senators* and *Magiſtrates*, he made ſumptuous Feaſts; to the *Common-people*, he exhibited magnificent and pleaſing Stage-plays; and with all variety of pleaſure, baniſhed from both, as well ſorrow for the old Proſcription, as fear of a new. But this was onely as a preparation to his main deſign. There were two men moſt dear unto him, and privie to his Counſels, *Mecenas*, and *Agrippa*; which in the object of their love differed onely in this: *Mecenas* was a lover of AUGUSTUS, *Agrippa* of the *Emperor*. *Mecenas* was of the ranck of Knights, a man of good and bad parts equally compounded. When his buſineſs required care, vigilant and circumſpect; at leiſure time, exceſſively riotous. *Agrippa* was the firſt of his Houſe; a man alike fit for Camp and Counſel; one neither careleſs of a good name, nor covetous of a great.

For

Auguſtus.

For although he only was the man which vanquiſhed *Sextus*, and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the humours of Princes, he gave *Auguſtus* the honour of all his Conqueſts; making the vertue, not the reward, the end of his actions. So by doing nobly, and ſpeaking modeſtly of it, he was without envy, but not without glory. With theſe two AUGUSTUS withdrew into a private Cloſet, and then brake unto them in this ſort. He made firſt unto them a long diſcourſe of the Civil Wars; Then added,
“That having by his fortune, and the valour of his Souldiers, put an end to the troubles; he was
“unreſolved what to do; Whether to reſign the Empire to the People, or retain it ſtill in his
“own hands: That in a buſineſs of ſuch importance, he durſt not relie altogether on his own wiſdom;
“That he had made them his Judges, as men that could ſpeak ſoundly, and durſt ſpeak freely;
“That he knew them to have more care of his honour, than profit; but of the Common-wealth,
“more than both: That his Counſels, which courſe ſoever he took, would not be by them eliminated.
“He therefore intreated them to conſider what was to be done, and to give up their opinions
“in it.

15. *Agrippa* after a ſhort ſilence thus began. “I know, thou canſt not but marvel, O *Cæſar*, that
“I, who under thine Empire, am ſure to be beyond precedent exalted; ſhould perſuade thee to live
“private. But I eſteem more thy honour, than my profit; the publick good, than my particular
“preferment. And yet perhaps my Counſel ſhall be as profitable, if not as plauſible, as the contrary.
“I know thee to be no way delighted with lies and flattery; and will therefore deal with thee freely
“and plainly. Thou haſt indeed put a period to the Civil Wars; but to what end, unleſs thou doſt
“reſtore unto the Common-wealth that Liberty for which the Wars were raiſed? What benefit can
“the people reap from thy Victory, if thou doſt uſe it onely as an inſtrument for their greater bondage?
“Doſt thou think that the *Romans*, having ſo many hundred years maintained their Liberty, will
“now be willing to forgo it? No, *Caſar*, no; Flatter not thy ſelf with theſe hopes. *Marius* the
“yonger, and *Sertorius*, were quickly cut off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius* thy Father
“of happy memory, did not long live, after his actions ſeemed to bring the Common Liberty in
“hazard. And ſhall we think that there is no true *Roman* ſpirit ſurviving; No *Brutus* living to attempt
“the like againſt thee? Believe me, *Caſar*, believe me, it is far better not to meddle with the
“Empire at all, than to be forced to abandon it. But ſay Divine Providence will ſo protect thee, that
“thou maieſt out-live ſuch practices, and ſhalt thou alſo not out-live thy glories? This preſent age
“perchance will not cenſure thine actions, becauſe it dares not: But Poſterity, free from all reſpects
“of love or hatred, cannot but call them into queſtion, and brand thy enterpriſe with Ambition, and
“perhaps Tyranny. If thy deſigns proſper, they will judg thee to have riſen unjuſtly; if otherwiſe,
“to have fallen deſervedly. How much better then were it, now when thine honour is without blemiſh,
“and thy reputation unſtained, to reſign thy Authority. Indeed when *Sextus* lorded it over
“the Sea, and *Antony* over *Egypt*, it might have been thought want of ſpirit, to have depoſed thy ſelf
“from the Government. But now to do it, when thou art without Rival in the Empire; now, when
“thou art ſole Commander of the Worlds Forces; now, when the People and Senate lie proſtrate at
“the feet of thy mercy; were to ſtrike dumb detraction, and to make the World admire thy temper.
“Thou art at this preſent the joy and comfort of the World; there is wanting to thee neither Wealth
“nor Fame. Here then fix thy foot. For go but one ſtep beyond this *Non ultra*, and thou
“wilt run into a boundleſs Ocean of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy life and reputation.

16. “Not ſo, excellent *Agrippa*, replyed *Mecenas*. I never heard good *Pilot* find fault with Searoom;
“or of more veſſels caſt away in the Ocean, than in the Straights, and narrow paſſages. Our
“Republick is a Ship fraught with divers Nations. She hath been long toſſed on the waves of Civil
“diſſentions, long driven up and down with the wind of Ambition; and there is now no place ſo fit
“for her ſafety, as the unlimited Ocean of one mans power. This Empire at firſt riſing, ſeemed not to
“require a Monarch; but it is now grown too unweildy, to be without one. Take then upon thee,
“O *Cæſar*, this Empire; or to ſay better, do not forſake it. I ſhould never thus adviſe thee, did I conceive
“any poſſible inconveniences The Senate doth allow thee a competent Guard of valiant and
“faithfull Souldiers; whom then ſhouldeſt thou fear? Nay, ill may I proſper, if I ſee any cauſe of fear,
“were thy Guard caſhiered. Enemies thou haſt none. For ſuch as were, are either already ſlain by thy
“valour, or made thy faſt friends, by thy bounty and clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will
“a little touch at thy Father *Julius*. He, too good a Souldier to be a Statiſt, was too heady and
“violent in eſtabliſhing his Government. Nor could he cunningly temporize, and ſuffer the people
“inſenſibly, and by degrees, to drop into bondage; but oppreſs them all at once. Again, he committed
“a great Solœciſm in State, when diſcharging his Guard, he ſought to retain that Empire by fair means,
“which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, O *Cæſar*, to be of a more wary and cunning behaviour.
“Learn alſo to work out thine own ſafety, by *Pompey's* misfortunes. He after the finiſhing of
“the *Pontick* War, at *Brunduſium*, disbanded his Army, and thereby merited to be accounted
“an honeſt and moderate man. Certainly, he ſhewed himſelf in the courſe of this action, rather
“vertuous, than fortunate or politick. For preſently he began to be contemned, and by his improvident
“weakning of himſelf, made an open paſſage to his own ruine. I commend his modeſty, more
“than his brain; neither did he himſelf, on better conſiderations, approve his own doings: and
“therefore he reſolved, had he been Victor in *Pharſalia*, never to have committed the like overſight.
“So it is, and ſo it will fall out with thee, O *Cæſar*, if in this action thou propoſe him
“to be thy pattern. It is not ſafe, *Agrippa* ſaith, to take the Empire; leſs ſafe it is to refuſe it.

Auguſtus.

“A ſetled and innative vice it is in Man, never to endure that any not above our own rank ſhould over-top us. *Rome's* ſecond founder *Camillus*; *Scipio*, that ſcourge of *Carthage*, were diſgraced; and *M. Coriolanus* baniſhed by our Anceſtors: only becauſe their worth had lifted them above the ordinary pich of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fare better than thy Predeceſſors. Heretofore, perchance, thou mighteſt have ſought the Empire, to ſatisfie thy Ambition. The Empire muſt now be thy refuge and *Aſylum*. Credit me, the Lords of the Senate, after ſo many years of Obedience, know not how to Govern; neither canſt thou, having ſo long been a Governour, learn Obedience. True it is, that in matters of domeſtical buſineſs, a man may ſtop and deſiſt where he will: but in the getting of an Empire, there is no mean between the death of an Enemy, and the life of a Prince. Thou haſt already gone too far to retire. Now thou muſt reſolve to be *Cæſar*, or nothing. To ſay more were ſuperfluous: Thine own diſcretion will ſuggeſt unto thee better Arguments. Only this, I know that thou haſt in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an Emperor.

17. *AVGVSTVS* ſeemed to incline to this latter opinion: whether moved with *Mecenas* Oration, eſpecially his inſtance in *Pompey*; or that he was before reſolved to follow that courſe, is uncertain. However, ſeeming with great attention to obſerve their ſpeeches, and gathering their ſeveral reaſons and motives together; he made this Reply. “A moſt hard thing it is, for a divided mind to make a well-joyn'd Anſwer. Divided I am, and troubled, between your two opinions; loath to follow either, ſithence in ſo doing I muſt offend one. Yet ſithence there is a neceſſity of Reſolution, I intend, though I like well of thy advice, *Agrippa*; to follow thine, *Mecenas*. In doing which, I am but an inſtrument of the Deſtinies, to put their wils in execution. Often have I heard my Father *Octavius* report, how *Nigidius*, Famous for his skill in Judiciary Aſtrology, told him once in open Senate, That he had gotten an Emperor for the *Romans*. As alſo, how *M. Cicero*, ſo renowned for Wit and Eloquence, dreamed that he ſaw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the Capitol, with a Whip in mine hand. Certainly, if the powers of Heaven promiſe me ſo great an Empire; I will not be wanting to my ſelf; but will add by my induſtry, to their influence. To further my deſigns, I do deſire you, nay I conjure you both, that as you have been ever ready in your Counſels; ſo you would not now be backward in any neceſſary aſſiſtance. This ſaid, they preſently enter into a new conference, how to manage a buſineſs of this weight; what Senators to acquaint with their intent; how to diſpoſe of the Army, not yet caſhiered: with what Plummet it were beſt to ſound the minds of the common people, and to oblige all ſorts unto him. This Conſultation ended, *AVGVSTVS* continued his affability to the People, and reſpect to the Nobles. An opportunity he had to expreſs himſelf to both. There was at that time a Famine, which ſhrewdly raged among the Commons. To the poorer ſort, he diſtributed Corn, *gratis*; to others at a mean price. Riches and honours he communicated to both ſorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the antient freedom. Such parts of the City as were deſtroyed by caſualty of fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil Wars*, he re-edified. Houſes of Common aſſemblies he repaired; Temples, conſecrated to the gods, he ſpared no coſt to adorn and beautifie. And finally, ſo freely diffuſed his bounty, that there was no part or member of the City which had not ſome taſte of it. Next, he diſmiſſed his Souldiers, aſſigning them Lands and habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: that ſo the People might conceive his Reſignation to be real; and yet, if need were, his forces might be quickly re-aſſembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* wanting, for their parts, to promote the cauſe: but carefully acquainted ſome of the Senate with it, who ſtood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had ſtood indifferent.

18. The foundation thus laid, and the Senate ſate, *AVGVSTVS* roſe from his ſeat, and ſpake to this, or the like effect. “When I conſider with my ſelf the infinite extent of the *Roman* Empire; I proteſt I ſtand at a maze: marvelling how ſuch, as heretofore have raiſed combuſtions in the State, durſt undertake the ſole adminiſtration of it. What Nation in the World, hath not either begged their Peace at our Gates; or felt the fury of our Wars at their own? What Countreys have we not harried with Fire and Sword; making the riſing and ſetting of the Sun the bounds of our Dominions? It muſt queſtionleſs proceed from an over-weaning conceit in them, of their own abilities; who thought themſelves ſo fit to undergo that burden, which none but the immortal gods can carry. Of my ſelf I will not ſay much. Only, I hope, I may ſay with modeſty, that I am not inferior to *Cinna*, nor it may be to *Sylla*: Yet have I found in my ſelf, by late experience, how unable I was to manage the affairs of State, even then when I had two Coadjutors. There is no *Atlas* of ſtrength ſufficient, to bear up this Heaven; No Star of influence ſufficient, to animate this Sphere; No one form of vertue ſufficient, to actuate this matter. Neither indeed is it fit, that the Republick, which ought to be immortal, ſhould depend only on the life and welfare of one man. There never was, ſince the beginning of time, a City repleniſhed with greater ſtore of worthy and able men, either to conſult or exerciſe. Never was there ſeen ſo grave and diſcreet a Conſiſtory; Never ſo many of both ſorts, ſo fit to govern. I have by your Directions, and the Valour of your Souldiers, put an end to all home-bred quarrels. I have been your inſtrument to reduce Peace internal and external, to your City; and deſire now no other Guerdon or recompence for any former ſervices, than a quiet and a private life free from all ſuch dangers and inconveniences, as are inſeparably annexed to the Soveraignty. Now therefore, and may my action be auſpicious and fortunate to my Countrey, do I reſign my authority, committing my ſelf, and the Common-wealth, into the hands of the Senate and People of *Rome*.

19. This Oration ended, there followed a ſoft and ſilent buzzing in the Houſe. Some ſuppoſed this

Speech

Auguſtus. ſpeech not to have ſo much truth, as art and cunning; yet ſmothered their conceits for fear of after-claps. Others were Creatures of his own making; and they hoping to riſe in the fall of their Country, would not hear of a Reſignation. Some few of the wiſer ſort thought it not expedient, to put the Reins again into the hands of the Multitude. The reſt out of a ſluggiſh and phlegmatick Conſtitution, choſe rather the preſent eſtate with ſecurity, than to ſtrive to recover the old with danger. All therefore with a joynt-conſent proclaim him ſole Emperor; and ſolemnly entreat him to ſave the Common wealth, otherwiſe running to inevitable ruine. He, for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly perſiſted to deſire him. At laſt, wearied with the clamours of all in general, and importunity of ſome in particular; he by little and little yielded to their requeſts, taking upon him the Empire for ten years, with this *Proviſo*; that if before that time expired, he could fully ſettle and order the preſent State, he would give up his charge. *A.V.C.725.* This he gave out, not with a purpoſe of performance; (for at the end of every *Decennium*, he renewed his Leaſe of the Government;) but that the people ſeeing ſo nigh a poſſibility of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practiſe againſt him. Whereas, had he for term of life received the ſupreme Authority, he had (no doubt) haſtned his own overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithite *Perpetual*, was the deſtruction of *CÆSAR*: And yet a great reſpect was had alſo in the choice of the Title. The name of *King* he refuſed, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much deſired it; leſt they ſhould ſuppoſe that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the people called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments, deſiring them to diſcharge him of a name ſo hated; and being once called Lord, (*Dominus*) he forbad alſo that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted: well knowing, that the like glorious attributes were heaped on his Father *Julius* by them which leaſt loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred, he might the ſooner be diſpatched. Nor was he ignorant that the *Common people*, led more by appearances, than truth, diſcerned names more plainly than executions: and that the only courſe to make greatneſs ſtand firmly, was to receive extraordinary power under a Title not offenſive. The name alſo of *AVGVSTVS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been ſomething in him more than mortal) he refuſed not, as a Title expreſſing more dignity and reverence than authority. And having pleaſed himſelf in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the eſtabliſhment of his Power, which he thus perſued.

20. When firſt, at the hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts* of *Prætorian Souldiers*, for the guard of his Perſon; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double wages of a *Legionary Souldier*, to make them the more vigilant and heedful in their charge. Over theſe he appointed two Prefects or Governors, (*Captains of the Guard*, we may beſt tearm them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed danger; to more, confuſion. *Agrippina*, to ſettle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom ſhe had at her devotion, the ſole Captain: and *Nimphidius*, fallen from his hopes of ſetting *Galba* beſides the quiſhon, deſired the command of the *Guard*, as the next ſtep to the Soveraignty. In choice of theſe Captains, he obſerved two Rules. Firſt, he ever choſe them, *ex ordine Equeſtri*, not *Senatorio*; leſt that ſo high a dignity, joyned to ſo high a birth, might ſtartle their reſolutions to ſome deſigns againſt his quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two ſuch, as were of contrary humours, and ſomewhat at ods; that ſo the ill intents of the one (if they ſhould harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both, in a noble emulation, ſhould contend to be moſt forward in his ſervice. The next courſe which he took for his own ſecurity, was a law he made to curb the wils and attempts of the *great ones*. For whereas it had been formerly unlawful to queſtion a *Bondman*, in matters concerning the life and death of his *Lord*; *AVGVSTVS* paſſed an Act, that all ſuch *Bondmen* ſhould firſt be ſold to him, or the Common-wealth. By means whereof he kept the *Lords*, before preſuming on the ſecreſie of their ſlaves, from all cloſe and private Conſpiracies againſt him. Having thus ſtrengthned his perſon, he aſſumed to himſelf the *Imperial*, *Cenſorial*, and *Tribunitian* authority, together with the *Sacerdotal* dignity. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could preſs Souldiers, raiſe Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very beſt and ſtouteſt of the Senators. As *Cenſor*, it was in his power to reform corrupt manners, enquire after mens carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he liſted; to place and diſplace the people from an honourable Tribe, to a leſs honourable. Yet would he not be called *Cenſor*, as a name too inferior; but accepted the Prerogatives of it, after the ſurrendry of *Manutius*, and his aſſociate, two men ſo unfit for that Magiſtracy, that they could object no crime to old or young, of which themſelves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian* authority enabled him to hinder any thing attempted againſt his liking. It preſerved his perſon from all contumely and injury; giving him power to puniſh, as an execrable perſon, (yea, and without any formality of the Law) whoſoever had offended him either in word or deed. As for the Pontifical Dignity, it made him a little more reverenced, not more potent. Only it added to his title the ſtile of *Pontifex Maximus*, or Chief Biſhop; and made him of authority amongſt the Prieſts, and in ſacred matters, things that concerned Religion. The light of Reaſon taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a Prince, to have command on all his people; He had been elſe but half a Monarch, ſuch as ſome Princes are with us, who quit their Clergy to be governed by a Forein Head.

21. Theſe ſeveral Prerogatives annexed together, ſeemed not yet ſufficient: and therefore he ſo cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the Coactive power of the Law. Which once obtained, he ſeriouſly bends his thoughts to ſettle the Common-wealth, and ſo to ſettle it, that by uniting all parties, and giving ſatisfaction to all Intereſſes, it might not be obnoxious to ſuch frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein, when he

had conſulted the antient Platforms, he found no ſmall difficulty. The Form deſcribed by *Plato*, ſhewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Ariſtotle*, though bred in the Free States of *Greece*, was a friend to Monarchy; but his diſcourſes dark, and ſpeculative, and not eaſily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority, the Nobles too little, the King none. The old *Carthaginian Legiſlator* attributed too much to Riches, too little to Vertue. The *Perſian* Law-makers indulged the King too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other ſide, *Licurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, aſcribed too little to the King, and too much to the Senate. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of ſome particular Laws, than the Framer of a Common-wealth. *Phaleas*, and *Hippodamus*, as inimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old Patterns did come home to his purpoſe; and withall conſidering with himſelf, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by conſequence ſubject unto change: he reſolved to frame his Common-wealth out of the perfections of the three good Forms, their imperfection being rejected, reſerving to himſelf the Supreme Majeſty, to the Senate eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a juſt and fit proportion. And to ſay truth, he did ſo mix the Soveraignty of one, with the Liberty of all; that both the Lords and People, without fear of bondage or ſedition, injoyed their accuſtomed Freedoms. The Conſuls and Nobles of the City aſſembled, as formerly they uſed; Matters of State they handled by themſelves; Ambaſſadors of forein Nations they heard, and diſpatched. The Commons aſſembled in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws and elect Magiſtrates, as in the free Common-wealth. Yet ſo that nothing was done without the conſent and privity of the Prince, who for the moſt part, nominated the ſucceſſive Magiſtrate, leaving the confirmation of him to the People. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent, and at once, but by degrees, and by the ſilent approbation of both Eſtates, as ſeeming to conſiſt more in the alteration of the Magiſtrate, than of the Laws.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the firſt care he took, was to confirm Religion in the ſame ſtate in which he found it. I mean Religion, as the *Romans* uſed the word, for thoſe particular, though idolatrous Forms of Worſhip, which to their ſeveral gods had been uſed among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or chief Biſhop of the City; yet very wiſely he forbare it. It is not ſafe for Princes that are ſetled in a long deſcent of Government, to be too active in ſuch changes: but it is dangerous to attempt it in a green State, and in an Empire not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more ſenſible of the ſmalleſt alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raiſe more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* ſpecially were exceeding tender in this point. The antient *Ædiles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external, either gods or ceremonies, to be introduced into the City. And by *Æmilius* it was enacted for a Law, *That none ſhould offer ſacrifice in any publick place, after a new and Forein faſhion.* Excellent therefore was the counſel which *Mecenas* gave him, when he firſt undertook the *Empire*, *viz.* “That “he ſhould follow conſtantly the Religion which he found eſtabliſhed, and compel others alſo to do “the like. For Forein and ſtrange Rites (ſaith he) will offend the people, work many inconvenient “alterations in the Civil State; yea and moſt likely will occaſion many both ſeditions and conſpira“cies. Words which he ſpake not to the air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehenſive of the beſt advice. Nor did *AVGVSTVS* ever ſhew himſelf more careful in any one Art of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecenas* noted, we find true in theſe later Ages; in times more skilful of obedience, than the moſt quiet hour of *AVGVSTVS* Government. No one thing more hath cauſed ſo frequent and ſo general Rebellions in the States of Chriſtendom, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious reſolution in a late mighty Monarch: *Better ſome few corruption ſhould be ſuffered in a Church, than ſtill a change.*

23. Religion thus eſtabliſhed, in the next place the welfare of the whole Empire conſiſted chiefly in reforming of the City; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the City the corruption was moſt apparent in the Senate it ſelf. With them therefore he beginneth, well knowing that crimes in men of eminent place end not in themſelves; but by degrees become diffuſed among their Clients and Followers. Now in the Senate were many, and deſertleſs men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour ſuch as were moſt potent. Of theſe he expelled none by his own power; but making a ſpeech to them in the Senate of the antient order and preſent confuſion of the houſe, he firſt exhorted them to look back on their former lives, and to judge of their own abilities and merits, for ſo honourable a room. Then he deſired ſome of them to pick out ſuch among them, as were in diſpoſition factious, and in life faulty, but loath to conceive ſo ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that *the great Thief leadeth the leſſe to the Gallows*; and as *Commines* obſerveth, that after the Battel of *Monlikerry*, Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on ſuch as ran ten miles beyond them: ſo remained many in the Senate, neither leſs vitious, nor leſs violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than ſome others whom they had removed. *AVGVSTVS* therefore joyning to him *Agrippa*, proceedeth to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the ſetling of his affairs, that none ſhould have a voice in that famous Councel, but ſuch as were of able judgments, honeſt repute, and wel-affected to his ſervice and the Common-wealth. An enterpriſe which he eſteemed ſo dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no Senator till he were ſearched: himſelf wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the moſt couragious and beſt beloved of the whole Company. Such as he found in either kind inexcuſable, he diſcharged from their attendance; electing ſuch in their places, which were either ennobled for their wiſdom, of noted moderation, or otherwiſe ſtrong in their dependants.

Auguſtus.

dependants. Yet ſo that greatneſs of Revenue was eſteemed neither a fit Patronage for any, if they were offenſive; nor a juſt cauſe to challenge intereſt in the houſe. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the mind, than thoſe of fortune, he relieved with honourable Penſions: and finally he beſtirred himſelf ſo reſolutely, that all confeſſed that they had need of ſuch a wiſe Phyſician, to cure that dull Conſumption, whereinto the Common wealth was fallen.

24. In other things he ſeldom did proceed againſt them as of himſelf; but when that any of them had conſpired his ruine, he referred them to the judgment of their fellows. And this he did partly to reſerve unto the Court the antient Prerogative, partly, not to be Judge and Party in his own Cauſe: but principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretchleſs contempt of his Adverſaries; uſed, when he was leaſt ſuſpected, under hand, and by publick Officers, to work their deſtruction. Many alſo of them whom the Senate had condemned, he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the queſtioning of men of high calling, would produce as much terrour, though it argued not as much rigour, as the puniſhment. Yet if extremity of law was uſed towards ſome few, it was to ſettle quietneſs in the whole; and as it were a particular bloud-letting for the general health. Thoſe who had followed the factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not ſo only, but by manifeſting his words by his deeds, and adding truſts and honours to his pardons; he made his Chair of State more ſetled, and immovable. So *Cæſar* by erecting the faln and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own ſtatues ſtand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the Nobles, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italie*. For well he knew, that in an Empire unſetled, and Provinces not quieted; the preſence and authority of men of that rank, might raiſe greater troubles, than could be eaſily ſuppreſſed. Examples he wanted not, that eſpecially of *Gato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, ſtirred ſuch a War againſt *Cæſar* in *Africk*, that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether, to impriſon them, he licenſed them at their pleaſure, to viſit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonoyſe*; Provinces cloſe to the Continent of *Italie*, altogether unfurniſhed for Wars; and indeed ſuch, as by reaſon of the variety of pleaſures in them uſed, were more likely to weaken their minds, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the Senate ſome ſweet meat to their ſowr ſauce; he as much honoured and reverenced that Order, as ever it was in the Free-ſtate: ſubmitting himſelf to their Judgments, and appearing of his own accord, at moſt of their daies of Seſſion. Out of thoſe he choſe 15 alterable every half year, to be of his Privy Councel; but then changing them for others: that ſo all of them might participate that honour; and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his ſecrets. At his entrance into the Senate, he uſed courteouſly to ſalute the Lords; and ſo likewiſe at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julins*, ſo much to ſlight the Lords of that Houſe, as he alwaies did: never making to them any obeyſance, no not then, when they came to tell him what honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the great ones, ſoon made the lower ſort more careful; both to obſerve good order, and to learn obedience. Yet did not *AUGUSTUS* refer all to Preſident, but ſomewhat to Precept. The *Roman* Knights he enforced to yeeld an account of their lives; an Order full of health and wiſdome: Idleneſs being the root of all private vices, and publick diſorders. To the Commons in their *Comitia* and other meetings, he preſcribeth Laws and Orders as himſelf liſted. The old authority of the *Tribunes*, daſhed in the Dictatorſhip of *Sylla*, he would not reſtore. He ſuffered them to intercede for the People, but not to prefer or hinder any Bill, to the advancement or the prejudice of their Eſtate. Without this Curb, the Common ſort would never have ſuffered him to ſit faſt in the Saddle. For had the People had their *Tribunes*, and had the *Tribnnes* had their antient dignity and power, which they had uſurped: there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the Common people, eſpecially if nuzled in a factious Liberty, from the deſigns of Soveraign Princes.

26. The City thus reformed in the principal errors and defects of it; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleaſures; as ſhews of Fencers, Stage-plaies, Combats of wild beaſts, publick Dancings, with variety of other delighſul ſpectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as fearing leſt their cogitations, for want of other objects, would fix themſelves upon his actions, and the old freedom. And therefore when ſome of his more ſevere and rigid Counſellors adviſed him to interdict all ſuch publick paſtimes, alledging that the meetings of the people at thoſe ſports, & in ſo great numbers, might at laſt end in ſome great tumult and ſedition, to the endangering of his perſon, and deſtruction of his whole eſtate; it was thus over-ruled by *Mecenas* (his moſt truſty Favourite) *Expedit tibi, O Cæſar, plebem ſic occupatam eſſe*, that it beſt agreed with his affairs, to have the minds of the people taken up with theſe ſports and paſtimes, by which being ſweetned and appeaſed, they were the leſs ſenſible of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horſe-races, Tilts, and Tornaments, as he gladly cheriſhed them, ſo he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That ſo that City being the Sea-Town of his Empire, might be ſtored with good Horſes, and expert Riders. Such of the Commons as were behind hand, he relieved: and when that many of them had made him Heir to their goods; he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any Prince but a Tyrant, preſently reſtored to the Children of the deceaſed the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AUGUSTUS*; as true a Guardian of Orphans, as a Father of his Counttey. Such Princes as gape covetouſly after other mens Poſſeſſions, ſeldome enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treaſures of Kings are then greateſt, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he ſeemed to leave unto the people, which they thought moſt pleaſing; Liberty of Speech:

Wherein ſometimes they were ſo licentious, that they ſpared not *Agrippa* himſelf, ſo potent with the Emperor. But he, good man, never uſing the Princes favour to the prejudice of any, ſeemed not to mark their taunts and ſlanders; whether with greater moderation or wiſdom, I cannot tell. Neither did *AVGVSTVS* ſcape their fooliſh Paſquils and infamous Libels. All which he winked at, knowing that contumelies of that nature ſlighted and contemned, ſoon vaniſh of themſelves; but if repined and ſtormed at, ſeem to be acknowledged. A temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of wiſdom in both of them. It is the miſery of the beſt Princes, even when they do well, to be ill ſpoken of. And therefore many times ſuch follies are with more policy diſſembled than obſerved, by the greateſt Kings.

27. As for this Laviſhneſs of the tongue, it is a humour that ſpringeth for the moſt part, rather from a delight in pratling, than any malice of the heart: and they which uſe it are more troubleſome, than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the fat men, but the lean and ſpare. And ſo *AVGVSTVS* thought, that not men liberal of ſpeech, but ſilent, cloſe, and ſparing of their words, were moſt likely to raiſe tumults. Moreover, as long as the common people retained this liberty of ſpeech, they were the leſs ſenſible of the loſs of Liberty in State. Whereas in the daies of *Domitian*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their ſecret ſighs and tears were regiſtred: then began they to look back with a ſerious eye on the old and common Liberty. Neglect is the beſt remedy for the talking vein. When the humour is ſpent, the people will ceaſe on their own accords: till then, no forces can compel them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping by force to hinder the continual reports of *Veſpaſians* revolt; that being the only way to increaſe, not diminiſh the rumour. And as much he extolleth (I will not ſay how fitly) the Reign of Prince *Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the Subject to think what he would, and ſpeak what he thought.

28. Theſe courſes though he took to rectifie the Senate, and content the people, yet he ſtayed not here. There were too many of both ſorts, dangerous and unquiet ſpirits, who ſtomached his proceedings; and under pretence of the antient Liberty, were apt to any bold attempt, and ſudden alteration. Theſe as he winked at for the preſent, ſo he employed them (as occaſion ſerved) in his Forein Wars. Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Souldiers had diſpleaſed him, in their Mutinies and Tumults, would lead them preſently unto ſome deſperate and dangerous ſervice: So weakning both his Foes, which lay next unto him, and puniſhing thoſe Souldiers which had diſobeyed him. For though *AVGVSTVS* had thrice ſhut the Temple of *Janus*, and cheriſhed Peace, no Emperor more, of ſo large a Territory: Yet when he ſaw his times, and that mens minds were active, and their thoughts diſquieted; he could find preſently occaſion for ſome new imployment. In this a Body Politick may be compared moſt fitly to the Body Natural. When we are full of bloud, and our ſpirits boyling, there is not any Phyſick better than Phlebotomy. But if a vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our eſtate commonly is dangerous, and almoſt incurable. So Princes, when their people are tumultuous and apt to miſchief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkning after action: do commonly imploy them in ſome ſervice far from home; that there they may both vent their Anger, and employ their Courage. For let them ſtay at home to confirm their practices, and grow at laſt into a Faction; the State will ſuffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer inſtance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth *Henry*, and the times next followiug: Whoſe forein Wars kept us all quiet here at home, waſted thoſe humours, and conſumed thoſe fiery ſpirits; which afterwards, the Wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29. But his main work was to content the Souldiers, and to make them ſure. Some of which he diſperſed, as before I ſaid, all about *Italie*, in 32 Colonies; as well for the defence of the Country, as for their more ſpeedy reaſſembly, if need ſhould require. Abroad amongſt the Provinces, were maintained upon the common charge 23 Legions with their aids; beſides 10000 of his Guard, and thoſe which were appointed for the bridling and ſafety of the City. As to all of them he ſhewed an excellent thankfulneſs, for their faithful ſervices; ſo in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whoſe name the Hiſtories of that Age have not remembred. This later had valiantly behaved himſelf at the battel of *Actium*: and being ſummoned to appear before the Lords of the Senate, in a matter which concerned his life, cryed to *AVGVSTVS* for ſuccour; who aſſigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breaſt, and ſhewing him the marks of many wounds; *Theſe* (quoth he) *have I received* (AUGUSTUS) *in thy ſervice, never ſupplying my place by a Deputy*. Which ſaid, the Emperor deſcending to the Bar, pleaded the Souldiers cauſe, and won it. Never did Soveraign Prince, or any that command in Chief, loſe any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly ſpreading it ſelf over all the Provinces, did ſo indeer him to the Military men, that they all thought their ſervices well recompenſed, in his graciouſneſs to that one man. And now were they ſo far given over to him, that the honours conferred on *Agrippa*, could not increaſe their love; well it might their admiration. *Agrippa* was of a mean and common Parentage. But ſupplying the defects of his birth, with the perfections of his Mind; he became very potent with *AVGVSTVS*; who not only made him Conſul, but his companion in the Tribunitian authority, and Provoſt of the City. So many titles were now heaped on him, that *Mecenas* perſuaded the Prince, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife; affirming it impoſſible for *Agrippa* to live ſafe, conſidering how open new Creatures lie to the attempts of malicious men, unleſs he were ingraffed into the Royal Stem of the *Caſars*. On which cauſe queſtionleſs, for the ſtronger eſtabliſhment of his new honours, *Sejanus* afterward attempted, but not with the like ſucceſs, the like match with *Livia*, *Tiberius* Daughter-in-Law.

30. The Senate, People, and Men of War, thus ſeverally reduced to a Mediocrity of power & content;

the next labour is to alter the old, and eſtabliſh a new Government of the City it ſelf. To effect which, he daſhed all former Laws, by which the Allies and Confederates of the State were made free Denizens of the Town. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole Empire into one City; and by the monſtrous growth and increaſe of that, to make poor the reſt. Therefore this privilege he communicated unto a few onely; partly, that in the times of dearth, the City might not ſo much feel the want of ſuſtenance, and partly, that ſo antient an honour might not be diſeſteemed; but principally, leſt *Rome*, repleniſhed with ſo huge a multitude of ſtirring and unruly ſpirits, ſhould grow too headſtrong to be governed in due order. The greateſt and moſt populous Cities, as they are proneſt unto faction and ſedition; ſo is the danger greateſt, both in it ſelf, and the example, if they ſhould revolt. This provident courſe notwithſtanding, there were in *Rome* men more than enough; and among them not a few malecontents and murmurers at the preſent ſtate, ſuch as contemned the Conſuls, and hated the Prince. To keep theſe in compaſs, *AVGVSTVS* (it being impoſſible for him to be ſtill reſident at *Rome*, and dangerous to be abſent) conſtituted a Provoſt of the City, for the moſt part choſen out of the Senators: aſſigning him a ſtrength of 6000 men, called *Milites Vrbani*, or the *City ſouldiers*. To him he gave abſolute and Royal Authority, both in the Town and Territory near adjoyning, during his own abſence. To him were appeals brought from the other Magiſtrates; and finally to his Tribunal were referred all cauſes of importance, not in *Rome* onely, but the greateſt part of *Italy*. *Meſalla* was the firſt Provoſt, but proof being had of his inſufficiency, the charge was committed to *Agrippa*: who did not onely ſettle and confirm the City, but did the beſt he could to free the adjoyning parts of *Italy* from Thieves and Robbers; and ſtopped the courſes of many other troublers of the preſent State. And yet he could not with that power either ſo ſpeedily, or ſo throughly reform all thoſe miſchiefs, which in the late unſettled times were become predominant, as he did deſire. *Auguſtus.*

31. It is recorded that in the Civil Warrs of *Marius* and *Sylla*, one *Pontius Teleſinus* of the *Marian Faction*, told his General, that he did well to ſcour the Countrey; but *Italy* would never want Wolves as long as *Rome* was ſo fit a Forreſt, and ſo near to retire unto. The like might have been ſpoken to *Agrippa*; That he did well to clear the common Roads and Paſſages, but *Italy* would never want Thieves, whilſt *Rome* was ſo good a place of Refuge. For though he did, as far as humane induſtry could extend, endeavour a general Reformation, both within the City and without; yet neither could he remedy, nor foreſee all miſchiefs. Still were there many, and thoſe great diſorders committed in the night ſeaſon; when as no eye, but that to which no darkneſs is an obſtacle, could diſcern the Malefactors. For in the firſt Proſcription, many men uſed to walk the Streets well-weaponed; pretending onely their own ſafety, but indeed it was to make their beſt advantage of ſuch men, as they met either in unfrequented Lanes and Paſſages, or travelling as their occaſions did direct them, in the Night. To repreſs therefore the foul inſolencies of theſe Sword-men, *AVGVSTVS* did ordain a Watch, conſiſting of 7000 Free-men, their Captain being a Gentleman of *Rome*. In the day time, the Guard of the Town was committed to the Provoſt, and his City-ſouldiers; Theſe Vigils reſting in their ſtanding Camps. In the night ſeaſon, one part took their ſtations in the moſt ſuſpicious places of the City; another, in perpetual motion traverſed the ſtreets: the reſt lying in the *Corps du Guarde*, to relieve their Companions. By which means he not onely remedied the preſent diſorders, but preſerved the City from danger of *Fire* alſo: Yea, and ſecured himſelf from all night-tumults, which carry with them (though but ſmall) more terrour and affrightment, than greater Commotions in the day. Never till now were the Common People Maſters of their own, both lives and ſubſtance. And now was travel in the Night, as ſafe, though not ſo pleaſant, as at Noon.

32. The People and City thus ſetled, his next ſtudy is to keep the Provinces in a liking of the Change. But little Rhetorique needed to win their liking, who had long deſired the preſent form of Government: miſtruſting the Peoples Regiment, by reaſon of Noblemens factions, covetouſneſs of Magiſtrates, the Laws affording no ſecurity, being ſwayed hither and thither by ambition and corruption. Theſe Provinces, when he firſt took the Government, he thus divided. *Aſia*, *Africa*, *Numidia*, *Betica*, *Narbonenſis*, *Sicilia*, *Corſica*, *Sardinia*, all *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, being quiet and peaceable Provinces, of known and faithful obedience, he aſſigned unto the *Senate*. But the new conquered Regions, ſuch as had not digeſted their loſs of liberty, with whom any Rebellion or Warr was to be feared; he retained under his own Command. Such were *Tarraconenſis*, *Luſitanica*, *Lugdunenſis*. *Germany*, *Belgica*, *Aquitanica*, *Syria*, *Silicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Myſia*, *Pannonia*, *&c.* And this he did, as he gave out, to ſuſtain the danger himſelf alone, leaving unto the Senate all the ſweets of eaſe: but the truth was, to keep them without Arms, himſelf always ſtrong and in a readineſs. The notable effects of which Counſel did not diſcover themſelves onely, by the eſtabliſhment of the Empire in his own perſon during life, and the continuance of it in the houſe of the *Cæſars* (though men of moſt prodigious Vices) after his deceaſe: but in ſome of the Ages following alſo. For when the Family of the *Cæſars* was extinct in *Nero*, the Imperial Provinces being ſo ſtrong, and perceiving the Conſular ſo weak, aſſumed to themſelves the creating, and eſtabliſhing of the following Princes. Thus *Galba* was made Emperour by the *Spaniſh* and *French* Legions, *Vitellius* by the *German*, *Veſpaſian* by the *Syrian* and *Pannonian*: The Conſular Provinces never ſtirring, either to prevent their attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could do, was but to betray the poor old man and all his Family to a tragick end. And yet he did not ſo appropriate thoſe Provinces to the *Senate*, but that they alſo (as well as thoſe which he reſerved unto himſelf) were ſpecified particularly in his private Regiſter. In which (the better to manage the affairs of the Empire) he had ſet down what Tributes every of them payed, what Preſents they ſent

Auguſtus. ſent in, what Cuſtoms in them were levyed. That book alſo comprehended the wealth of the publique Treaſury, and neceſſary charge iſſuing out of it: What number of Citizens and Allies there were in Arms; what ſtrength there was by Sea: with all other circumſtances, the extent, ſtrength, riches, and particulars of his eſtate. *William* of *Normandy* did the like at his firſt entrance into *England*, when he compoſed that Cenſual Roll of all this kingdom, which we call *Dooms-day Book*, or the *Roll of Winton:* according unto which, Taxations were impoſed, and Aids exacted. The greateſt Princes have not thought it a diſparagement to be good Husbands; to know the riches of their Crowns, and have an eye to their *Intrado*.

32. *Britain* was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either becauſe from hence there neither was much hope of profit, nor much fear of hurt; or elſe becauſe being more deſirous to keep than inlarge the *Monarchy*, he thought it moſt expedient to confine it within the bounds appointed by Nature. *Danubius* on the North, Mount *Atlas* on the South, *Euphrates* on the Eaſt, and the main Ocean on the Weſt, did both bound his Empire and defend it. Some Kingdoms have their limits laid out by Nature, and thoſe which have adventured to extend them further have found it fatal. The *Perſians* ſeldom did attempt to ſtretch their Territory beyond *Oxus*, but they miſcarryed in the action. And what was that poor River, if compared unto the Ocean? Many who loved *action*, or expected preferment by the Warrs, incited him unto the conqueſt and plantation of theſe Countreys. Affirming, “That “the barbarous people were naturally bad Neighbours; and though for the preſent not very ſtrong, “nor well-skilled in Arms, yet might a weak enemy in time gather great ſtrength. That he ought to “perſue the Warr for his Father *Julius* ſake, who firſt ſhewed that Iſland to the *Romans*: that it “yielded both refuge and ſupply to Malecontents of *Gaul*, and Enemies in *Germany*: That he would “loſe the benefit of a wealthy Couutrey, ſtored with all manner of proviſion; and the command of a “valiant Nation, born (as it were) unto the Warrs. That it was an Apoſtaſie from honour, to lye ſtill “and add nothing to the conqueſt of his Anceſtors: That he was in all equity bound, as far as in him “was, to reduce to Civility from Barbariſm, ſo many proper and able men. But to theſe motives he “replyed, That he had already refuſed to wage Warr with the *Parthian*, a more dangerous neigh-“bour, and far worſe enemy than the *Britains*: That he had waſte and deſert ground enough in his “own Dominions, for many a large Plantation, when he ſaw it needfull: That he had conſtantly re-“fuſed, though with great facility he might, to conquer any more of the *barbarous Nations*: That as “in the *Natural body*, a ſurfet is more dangerous than faſting; ſo in the *Body Politick*, too much is “more troubleſome than too little: That the *Roman* Monarchy had already exceeded the *Perſian*, and “*Macedonian*; and to extend it further, was the next way to make it totter, and fall by its own “weight. That he had learned in the Fable, not to loſe the Subſtance, by catching at the Shadow. And “finally, that many puiſſant Nations lay in and about *Britanny*, againſt whom Garriſons muſt be kept; “and he feared the Revenues would not quit the Coſt. And ſo the enterpriſe of *Britain* was quite laid aſide.

33. For the aſſurance of the Provinces already conquered, he diſperſed into them 23 Legions, with their Aids; whoſe pay onely, beſides Proviſion of Corn, and Officers wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our Engliſh Pounds, and ſomewhat more, were ſo duly paid unto the Armies, that we read ſeldom in the Hiſtories of that Empire, of any Mutiny among the Souldiers, for want of Pay. An happineſs whereof theſe Ages have been little guilty. For the amaſſing of this treaſure, and defraying of this charge, *AUGUSTUS* made not uſe onely of his own Revenue. Warrs which are undertaken, and Souldiers that are levyed, for the common ſafety, ought in all reaſon to be maintained on the Common Purſe. The Grandeur and Security of an Empire, concerns in all reſpects, as much the People as the Prince. For which cauſe he erected an Exchequer in the City, which was called *Ærarium militare*, or the *Souldiers Treaſury*; whereto the twentieth part of every mans eſtate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was eſteemed an heavy burden at the firſt, and indeed it was, but that the people felt the ſweetneſs and effects of it in the Common Safety. In that reſpect, the Intereſt was greater than the Principal. Subjects that have a care either of the common peace or honour, will not repine at payments and taxations, though more than ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that Princes either are able, or obliged, to maintain the VVarrs without Aſſiſtance from their People: or that the treaſures which in theſe reſpects they give the King, they do not give unto themſelves. I may perhaps repute him for a cunning Sophiſter, but never for a faithfull Subject, which coyns diſtinctions betwixt the welfare of the King, and the weal of the Kingdom. Theſe Legions he employed as occaſion was, either to curb the Natives, or ſecure the Borders. The *Roman Empire* ſeldom had ſuch perfect peace, but that there were employments alwayes for the Souldiers. If that they had in any place a ſhort ceſſation from the warrs, yet they were not idle. Idleneſs doubtleſs is the greateſt enemy to Martial Diſcipline. Therefore he kept them at ſuch times perpetually buſied, either in paving Bogs, or in draining Mariſhes. By means whereof, he made not onely many of the barbarous Countries, both fruitfull in themſelves, and profitable to the Chequer: but thereby alſo he ſecured his own affairs, and diſarmed his enemies. For many times the barbarous people truſting to ſuch advantages, were apt too often to rebell, and having got themſelves within thoſe Myres and Faſtneſſes, ſtood on their Guard, as in ſome faſhionable or defenſible Fortreſs. The ſureſt means to keep a conquered people from all occaſion of revolting, is to lay waſte their *Woodlands*, and make all parts paſſable. The opportunity of a ſafe retreat, makes not more *Thieves* than *Rebells*.

35. Thoſe whom he placed over his Provinces and Armies, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer ſtay might teach them too much cunning,

in

Auguſtus.

in practiſing on the diſpoſitions of the people, and perhaps prompt them to work into the favour of the Natives, and the Men of Warr; and ſo at laſt to eſtabliſh in themſelves a Soveraignty. *Caſars* long ſtay in *Gaul*, (a ſecond five years being added to that which was firſt allowed him) made him ſo potent with the people, and gracious with the Souldiers, that in the end he brought the *Roman Empire* under his ſubjection. And on the other ſide to take them from their charges under three years continuance, were to have called them home, before they were well-learned in the Cuſtoms and the Nature of the Provinces; ſo making them unable to inſtruct their Succeſſors. As for the men whom he employed in thoſe Commands, he culled them always out of the moſt valiant and upright in the Camp and Senate. A Prince more willing and deſirous not to employ men likely to offend, than after the offence to puniſh and chaſtiſe them for it.

36. Beſides his forces by Land, he alſo maintained at Sea two invincible *Armadoes*. The one lay at Anchor near *Ravenna*, in the upper Sea, to awe and defend *Dalmatia*, *Crete*, *Greece*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, *&c.* The other at *Miſenum* in the lower Sea, to protect and keep under *Gaul*, *Spain*, *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* Neither was this the onely uſe of two ſuch puiſſant Fleets, but in all probability they were to cleanſe the Sea of *Pirates*; to have a care to the conducting of the Tributes and Cuſtoms into the Exchequer; and ſerved alſo for tranſporting Corn, and other neceſſary Proviſions, for the ſuſtenance and relief of the City. In the enſuing Civil Warrs, theſe two Navies proved to be of great importance: The revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one ſide, as a comfort to the other. The principal aſſurance of *Otho* in his Warrs, was the immovable fidelity of the *Miſenian* Fleet; and the ſiding of the other with *Veſpaſian*, brake the hearts of *Vitellius* beſt followers.

37. Now as he thus ſtrengthened the Provinces in general, ſo did he caſt an eſpecial eye on three particulars, *viz.* *Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Egypt*. *Italy* rounded *Rome* the *Metropolis* of the Empire; and therefore he ought to be well-aſſured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Bellum Sociale* raiſed by the people of that Countrey, in the *Free State*, more ſhook and endangered the Empire, than the Invaſions of *Pyrrhus* or *Annibal*. Therefore, as formerly he planted in it two and thirty *Colonies*, of old and truſty Souldiers, to keep it ſure unto himſelf; ſo now he did divide it into eleven Regions, each having peculiar Magiſtrates and Under-officers. This not ſo much to eaſe the City Prætor, although he had employment enough at *Rome*; but becauſe it was thick ſet, and as it were overlaid with people, whoſe riſing might endanger the Common-wealth. So by his Colonies he kept a Garriſon upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt: and by his Officers and Juſticiers (as I may call them) he ſet ſo ſtraight a Watch about them, that they durſt not practiſe.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile Countrey, ſtored with a people, valiant in all attempts, and in many deſperate. A people with which the old *Romans* fought, rather to maintain their own liberty, than to encreaſe their Dominions; a Tribe or Colony of which had ſacked the City of *Rome*, and endangered the *Capitol*. A people, finally, with whom the *Romans* durſt not make warr, till they had almoſt all the reſidue of the world in ſubjection. Remembrance of their antient Reputation, and ſtore of money, might occaſion many deſperate practices againſt the quiet of the Empire. The readyeſt way to keep them in obedience, was to keep them poor; for without wealth high *Stomachs* may well feed on the hope of *Liberty*, but digeſt it never. *Licinius* his *freed*-man, was the fitteſt fellow for ſuch an Office, who is preſently made the Task-maſter of the Province. The *Gauls* uſed to pay a Monethly Tribute, which he much inhaunſed (beſides private and petty means of proling) by making fourteen Moneths in a year. The Solicitors of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AUGUSTUS*. He ſometimes yielded unto them, ſometimes excuſed his *Freed-man*; ſome things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he diſſembled. *Licinius* to make up his peace, ſent to the Emperour all his Treaſure, and that huge Maſs of Gold and Silver by thoſe unlawfull means heaped up together: which he not onely willingly received, but his turn being ſerved, and the *French* not a little impoveriſhed; he recalled *Licinius*, and ſent *Tiberius* to ſettle the Province. So old and common a thing it is with great Princes, to ſuffer their Vice-Roys, and Under-Officers, to ſuck, like Spunges, the wealth of the Subject, till they are quite full; and then to ſqueeze them into their own Coffers.

39. But the Province, whoſe tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt*; not ſo much for the valour and courage of the Inhabitants, as the natural ſtrength and ſituation of the place. *Alexander* of *Macedon* having annexed it to his Empire, never committed the entire Government and Juriſdiction thereof, to one man; fearing leſt he preſuming on the wealth of the People, and ſite of the Countrey, would ſettle the Poſſeſſion in himſelf. And ſo *AUGUSTUS* calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconſtancy of the Natives; that it was very rich in coyn, and the *Roman Granary* (as ſerving the City four Moneths yearly with Corn) not onely truſted not the rule thereof into the hands of any of the Senators, but expreſly forbad any of that Order (without his ſpecial permiſſion) to ſojourn there. It is a principle in State, never to licenſe men of great Houſes, and Credit among the people, to have free acceſs into that Countrey, whoſe revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Wherefore it was a weakneſs doubtleſs in the Council of King *Henry the Sixth*, to ſuffer *Richard* Duke of *York*, to paſs at pleaſure into *Ireland*; where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought ſupply both of Men and Money. But to return to *Egypt*, *Germanicus* entring once into *Alexandria*, onely to ſee the Antiquities of it, and return; ſtirred ſuch ſuſpicions and diſtractions in the jealous head of *Tiberius*, that he ſpared not ſharply to rebuke him for it. *Veſpaſian* alſo being by the *Syrian Legions* choſen Emperour, firſt aſſured himſelf of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land, with a ſmall power, againſt a ſtrong hoſt eaſily defended. This place he reſolved to make his Sanctuary, if his deſigns ſucceeded not luckily. And to this place he haſtened after the defeat of the *Vitellian* Army,

that

Auguſtus.

that ſo detaining the ordinary proviſion of Victuals, he might by Famine compell the City of *Rome* to ſtand at his devotion. The Government of this Province was by *AVGVSTVS* always committed to ſome one of the *Roman* Gentry, as leſs able, by reaſon of his low condition, to work againſt the Princes ſafety. Neither would he allow his *Deputy* the glorious attributes of *Lieutenant*, *Legatus*, *Proconſul*, or *Prætor*. *Captain* or *Preſident* of *Egypt* was their higheſt *Title*; there being even in *Titles* no ſmall motives to *Ambition*.

40. *AVGVSTVS* having by theſe means reduced both the City and Provinces under his abſolute Command, and being now declining in ſtrength, by reaſon of a ſudden and violent ſickneſs; began to call his wits to Counſel, how to diſpoſe of the Eſtate after his deceaſe. *Male-child* he never had any. His Daughter *Julia*, a woman of immodeſt carriage, never made further uſe of her fathers greatneſs, than that ſhe ſatisfied her Luſts with the greater inſolence. *Marcellus*, his Siſters ſon, and *Julia's* husband, was a young man of an ingenious diſpoſition, and ſeemingly capable of the fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, *AVGVSTVS* preferred to the *Pontifical* Dignity, and *Ædileſhip*: Yet once, upon his ſickneſs, he privately determined to chooſe a Succeſſor in the Commonwealth, rather than his own Family; and not to leave the Empire to *Marcellus*, whom he held unable to undergo it, but to his Companion in Arms, *Agrippa*; a man daunted neither with adverſe, nor altered with proſperous fortunes. This *Marcellus* afterwards ſo ſtomached, that he began to grutch at *Agrippa's* greatneſs, and to bear a vigilant eye on his Plots and Actions. Contrarily, *Agrippa*, unwilling to offend him, under whoſe future Government he was in all likelyhood to end the reſt of his dayes, with much ado obtained leave to retire unto *Lesbos*: that ſo his abſence either might allay, or remove the diſpleaſure, conceived againſt him by the young Prince. An action full of wiſdom, and magnanimity. For though *AVGVSTVS* chief end was, to diſcountenance the popular Dependencies of his Son, by the favours heaped on his Servant: yet did *Agrippa* know, that a Favourite ought to have ſo much in him of the *Perſian* Religion, as to worſhip the *Riſing Sun* alſo; and that he ſhould reſemble old *Janus* with the two faces, with the one looking on the *King regnant*, with the other on the *Prince ſucceſſive*.

41. *Marcellus* being dead, *Agrippa* returning, marryed his Widow, and on her begat two ſonns, *Caius* and *Lucius*, whoſe actions afterward afforded ſuch variety for cenſure, that there was wanting neither much reaſon to commend, nor little to condemn them. On theſe two, or at the leaſt one of them, *AVGVSTVS*, now grown aged, reſolves to ſettle the Eſtate; and if they failed, upon ſuch others, as by the liberty of the Laws, he might *adopt*: *Adoption*, in the eſtimation of the *Roman* Laws, being indeed *another Nature*. Poſterity, whether it be *natural*, or onely *legal*, is the beſt *Supporter* of the *Arms Imperial*; ſuch as both fortifies the Prince, and aſſures the Subject Yet this he did not without much reluctancy, and a great conflict in his mind. “Sometimes his thoughts ſuggeſted “to him, that the deſigned Succeſſors draw to them all the attendance and reſpect, from the Prince “in poſſeſſion; That they have alwayes a lingring deſire to be actually ſeated in the Throne; That “they ſuppoſe the life of the preſent Prince too tedious, not caring by what means it were ſhortned; “That ſometime it is pernicious, yea even to the appointed Succeſſor himſelf alſo. On the other “ſide, his better thoughts prompted him to conſider, in what a miſerable diſtraction he ſhould leave “the Empire, if ſudden death ſhould take from him an ability to nominate his heir; The fear conceived in the whole City, at his laſt ſickneſs; That *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, was of all hands condemned, “for leaving his Kingdom to the ſharpeſt *Sword*; That the Common-wealth faln into diſſenſions, “could not be ſetled again without a lamentable Warr, and a bloudy Victory; That the people “ſeeing him childleſs, would not onely contemn him, but perhaps endeavour to recover the old *liberty*, though with the ruine of the State; That it was the Cuſtom of Tyrants, to deſire the eternizing of their deaths, by the downfal of their Countreys. His mind thus diſtracted and perplexed, at laſt he brake in this manner. “Thou haſt, *Octavian*, a Wolf by the ears, which to hold ſtill, or to “let go, is alike dangerous. Many inconveniences may enſue, if thou doſt not declare thy Succeſſor; more if thou doſt. The good of the Republique conſiſteth in knowing the future Prince; “thine own welfare dependeth on the concealment. The Common good is to be preferred before “any private; Yet ought *Charity to begin at home*. No, *Octavian*, no; As thou haſt received, ſo “ſhew thy ſelf worthy of the title of *Pater Patriæ*. Yea, and perhaps this deſignation may ſecure “thine own Eſtate. For what will it profit the people to conſpire againſt thee; when they ſhall ſee “a Succeſſor at hand, either of thine own body, or thine own appointment, ready to take thy place, “and revenge thy wrongs?

42. Thus reſolved, he adopteth *Caius* and *Lucius*; deſiring, though he made ſhew to the contrary, they ſhould be *Conſuls Elect*, and called *Princes of the Youth*. Yet wiſely forecaſting the dangers incident to himſelf, if they ſhould make their abode in *Rome*; he ſendeth them with honourable charge into the Provinces abroad: as well to exerciſe them in *feats* of *War*, as to take away all cauſe of faction in the Court, and ſedition in the City. Which *myſtery* of State, as it was antiently practiſed by moſt *Princes*, ſo at this day by the *Grand Seignieur*: who alwayes ſendeth his eldeſt Son unto *Amaſia*, as Governour thereof; from whence, till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In theſe journeys dyed the two young *Princes*; a misfortune which *AVGVSTVS* bare nobly; neither baniſhing grief, with a *Stoical Apathy*; nor ſpending the time in womaniſh lamentations. Having performed due Rites to the dead he adopted his Wives ſon *Tiberius*. A man for the conveniency and ripeneſs of his age, not *unfit*; in *feats* of *Arms*, not *unexpert*; in *humane learning*, not *ignorant*; but withal ſuſpected to be cruelly given, and poſſeſſed with the hereditary pride of the *Claudian* Family. A ſtrange medley of vertuous and vitious qualities. *Tiberius*, ſuch was the will of his Father, to eſtabliſh

bliſh

Auguſtus.

bliſh the ſucceſſion, with more ſtayes than one, adopted *Germanicus*, his Brother *Druſus* ſon, then commanding over eight Legions in *Germany*: which done, he ſpeedeth to his charge in *Illyricum*. This man *AVGVSTVS* appointed to be his Heir, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the Party; but to win honour to himſelf: and to make the *Roman* people again wiſh for him; when they ſhould ſee that infinite diſproportion in all Royal and Kingly qualities, between the old and new *Emperours*. A fetch after imitated by *Tiberius*, in the adoption of *Caius Caligula*.

43. The laſt (though not the leaſt) help of the *Empires* eſtabliſhment, was the long life and reign of our *AVGVSTVS*: as having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the *Soveraignty*, by the Senate and People. All the young men in the City were born after the firſt *Decennium* of the *Monarchy*. Moſt of the old men dyed during the Civil Warrs. Few had ſeen what was the antient form of Government in the Common-wealth; many did not deſire it. For at the preſent, enjoying Peace both at home and abroad, and hearing what ſad and tragical Reports their Fathers made of the former troubles and proſcriptions, they contented themſelves with the new Government; as more eſteeming a ſecure and happy ſubjection, than a dangerous and factious liberty. By which long time of Empire, and the Policies already recited, beſides many others, which I can neither learn by relation, nor gather by preſumptions, did *AVGVSTVS* ſo firmly ſettle the *Roman* Monarchy, that it continued ſome hundred of years without alteration: though all his immediate Succeſſors were in a manner Monſters, incarnate Devils, and indeed any thing rather than men. *Tiberius*, *Caius*, *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, both by their own Tyrannies, and their Bondmens Extortions; would have ruined any Monarchy not founded by *AVGVSTVS*.

44. To ſpeak concerning the domeſtical affairs of this Emperour, is beyond my Theme. As either how far he ſuffered himſelf to be ordered by his Wife *Livia*; or whether he uſed variety of women, not ſo much to ſatisfie a diſordinate appetite, as by ſo many women to fiſh out the ſecret deſigns of many men. He was too exact a Stateſman to be perfect in Souldiery; and in all his Warrs was proſperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his Captains Valour than his own. The Common-wealth which he found weak and in Rubbiſh, he left Adamantine, and invincible. In behaviour he was affable and gracious: in his diſcourſe, ſententious: to the good, of a moſt ſweet diſpoſition: to the lewd and diſhoneſt, harſh and unpleaſant. *Friendſhip* he contracted with few, and that ſlowly; but to them, whom he once loved, conſtant and bountifull to the laſt. Finally, ſuch a one he was, of whom I will onely ſay what I find ſpoken of *Severus*: It had been an ineffable benefit to the Common wealth of *Rome*, if either he had never dyed, or never been born.

Thus having drawn the Picture of this puiſſant and prudent Prince (though I confeſs with too much ſhadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the *Roman* Emperours: in which I ſhall take notice of ſuch of their Actions only as had relation to the Publick, either in the Improvement or Decreaſe of their Power and Empire; or point to any ſignal matter which concerns the Church.

The *Roman* Emperours.

A. M.

3918. 1. *Julius Cæſar* the laſt of the *Dictators*, and the firſt of the *Emperours*, in memory of whom the following Emperours were called *Cæſars*, till the time of *Adrian*; when it became the title of the heir apparent, or deſigned Succeſſor; the firſt who had it in that ſence being *Ælius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.

3923. 2. *C. Octavianus Cæſar*, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Auguſtus*; who added unto the *Roman* Empire the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhœtia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdom of *Egypt*. In his time the Lord *CHRIST* was born. 56.

A. C.

17. 3. *Tiberius Nero*, the Son in Law of *Auguſtus*; ſubdued many of the *German* Nations; and added *Galatia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire. In his time *CHRIST* ſuffered. 23.

39. 4. *Caius Caligula*, the ſon of *Germanicus* (ſon of *Druſus*, the brother of *Tiberius*) and of *Agrippina* Neece to *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by his daughter *Julia*. 3.

43. 5. *Claudius Cæſar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, brother of *Germanicus*, and ſon of *Druſus* by *Antonia*, Neece to *Auguſtus* by his Siſter *Octavia*; added *Britain*, and *Mauritania*, to the *Roman* Empire. 13.

57. 6. *Domitius Nero*, ſon of *Ænobarbus*, and *Agrippina* daughter to *Germanicus*; the laſt of the *Cæſars*. He made the *Cottian Alpes* a Province of the Empire, and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the *Roman* Emperours: and was the firſt that raiſed any publick perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 67. 13.

70. 7. *Sergius Galba*, choſen by the *French* and *Spaniſh* Legions.

8. *Salvius Otho*, made Emperour by the *Prætorian* Souldiers.

9. *Aul. Vitellius*, elected by the *German* Legions.

71. 10. *Flavius Veſpaſianus*, choſen by the *Syrian* and *Judæan* Armies, ſubverted utterly the Common-wealth of the *Jews*, by the valour and proweſs of his ſon *Titus*: and brought *Achaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria Comagene*, under the form of *Roman* Provinces. 9.

80. 11. *Titus Veſpaſianus*, the fortunate Conqueror of the *Jews*.

82. 12. *Fl. Domitianus*, who raiſed the ſecond perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 96. 15.

97. 13. *Nerva Cocceius*, a noble Senator, but no *Roman* born; as all the reſt had been before him, but not many after him.

14. *Vlpius*

99. 14. *Ulpius Trajanus*, by birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*: he made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire, carryed the *Roman* Armies over *Euphrates*, ſubduing *Armenia*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*; and raiſed the third Perſecution againſt the *Chriſtians*. *An.* 110. 19.

118. 15. *Ælius Adrianus*, who utterly exterminated the *Jewiſh* Nation, and continued the Perſecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.

138. 16. *Antoninus Pius*, whoſe friendſhip was ſought by the very *Indians*. 24.

162. 17. *Marcus Antonius*, ſurnamed the Philoſopher, aſſociated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whoſe valour he ſubdued the *Parthians*. He raiſed the fourth Perſecution againſt the Church. *An.* 167. 19.

181. 18. *L. Antonius Commodus*, ſon to *Marcus*, the firſt Emperour that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.

194. 19. *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperour againſt his will.

20. *Didius Julianus*, who bought the Empire of the Souldiers.

195. 21. *Septimius Severus*, took *Cteſiphon* from the *Parthians*, ſubdued the Province of *Oſroene*; and raiſed the fifth Perſecution. *An.* 195. 18.

213. 22. *Baſſianus Caracalla*, ſon to *Severus*.

220. 23. *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperour by the men of Warr.

221. 24. *Varius Heliogabalus*, the ſuppoſed ſon of *Caracalla*.

225. 25. *Alexander Severus*, Couſin of *Varius*.

238. 26. *Maximinus*, a fellow of obſcure birth; who being advanced to the Empire, raiſed the ſixth Perſecution. *An.* 237.

241. 27. *Gordian*, elected by the Senate againſt *Maximinus*. 6.

247. 28. *Philip*, an *Arabian*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be a Chriſtian. 5.

252. 29. *Decius*, ſlain in Warr againſt the *Gothes*; the Author of the ſeventh Perſecution raiſed againſt the Church. *An.* 250. 2.

254. 30. *Gallus Hoſtilianus*. 2.

256. 31. *Æmilianus*, the *Moor*.

256. 32. *Valerianus*, the Author of the eighth Perſecution. *An.* 259. He was taken Priſoner by *Sapores*, King of *Perſia*, and made to ſerve him for a foot-ſtool.

33. *Gallienus*, ſon to *Valerianus*, in whoſe time the 30 Tyrants ingroſſed unto themſelves ſeveral parts of the Empire.

271. 34. *Claudius* II who, after a ſhort and troubleſome time, left it to

272. 35. *Quintillus* his Brother, who enjoyed the ſame but 17 dayes.

273. 36. *Valerius Aurelianus*, reſtored again the antient diſcipline, ſuppreſſed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquiſhed the *Gothes*, but was a great Perſecutor of the Church. *An.* 278. 6.

279. 37. *Annius Tacitus*, deſcended from *Tacitus* the Hiſtorian.

38. *Florianus*, an Emperour of two Moneths onely.

280. 39. *Valerius Probus*. 6.

286. 40. *Aurelius Carus*, together with his two ſons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.

288. 41. *Diocleſian*, firſt aſſociated *Maximianus* by the name of *Emperour*, or *Auguſtus*; and afterwards *Galerius* of *Dacia*, and *Conſtantius Chlorus*, by the name of *Cæſars*. He had continual Warrs againſt the *Perſians*, and raiſed the tenth Perſecution againſt the Church, *An.* 295. Which held ſo long, and was ſo vehement withal, that as St. *Hierome* writes, there were 5000 ſlain for every day in the year, ſave the firſt of *January*. He afterwards reſigned the Empire, and lived in private at *Calona*. 20.

308. 41. *Conſtantius Chlorus*, a friend to Chriſtians. 2.

310. 42. *Conſtantine*, ſon of *Chlorus*, ſurnamed *Magnus*, or *The Great*, the firſt Emperour that countenanced the Goſpel, and embraced it publickly; which he is ſaid to have done on this occaſion. At the ſame time that he was ſaluted Emperour in *Britain*, *Maxentius* was choſen at *Rome* by the *Prætorian* Souldiers; and *Licinius* named Succeſſor by *Maximinus*, the aſſociate of his Father *Chlorus*. Being penſive and ſolicitous upon theſe diſtractions, he caſt his eyes up towards Heaven, where he ſaw in the Air a lightſome Pillar in the form of a Croſs, wherein he read theſe words, ἐν τȣ́τῳ νίκα, *in hoc vince*; and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Viſion, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he ſhould overcome all his Enemies. This he performed, and was accordingly victorious, from which time he not onely favoured the Chriſtians, but became a very zealous Profeſſor of the Faith and Goſpel. I know *Zoſimus* an Heathen Hiſtorian, partly out of malice to the Chriſtians in general, and partly a particular grudge to the Emperour *Conſtantine*, reporteth otherwiſe of the cauſes of his Converſion: But the authority and conſent of all Chriſtian Writers, who deliver it as before is told, is far to be preferred before the teſtimony of one ſingle Heathen, had he not been biaſſed (as he was) by his diſaffections.

Before this time it is obſerved, that few (if at all any) of the *Roman* Emperours dyed a natural death, as after they generally did. From *Julius Cæſar* unto *Conſtantine* there were 40 in all. Of which *Julius* was openly murdered in the Senate; *Auguſtus* made away by his wife *Livia*; as *Tiberius* afterwards by *Macro*; *Caligula* was ſlain by *Caſſius Chæreas*; *Claudius* poyſoned by his wife *Agrippina*;

Nero, and *Otho*, laid violent hands upon themſelves; *Galba*, and *Vitellius*, maſſacred by the Souldiers, *Domitian* by *Stephanus*, *Commodus* by *Letus* and *Electus*; *Pertinax* and *Julianus* by the Souldiers of their guard; *Caracalla* by the command of *Macrinus*; *Macrinus*, *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Maximus*, and *Balbinus*, ſucceſſively by the men of War; *Gordianus* by *Philip*; *Philip* by the Souldiers; *Hoſtilianus* by *Gallus*, and *Æmilianus*, and they by the Souldiers; *Valerianus* dyed a Priſoner in *Parthia*; *Florianus* was the Author of his own end; *Aurelianus* murdered by his houſhold ſervants; *Gallienus*, *Quintillius*, *Tacitus*, and *Probus*, by the fury of the military men. And yet I have omitted out of this Accompt ſuch of the Emperors as were tumultuouſly made by the Army, without the approbation of the *Senate*; as alſo the *Cæſars*, or deſigned Succeſſors of the Empire; moſt of which got nothing by their deſignation and adoption, but *ut citius interficerentur*. Some of theſe were cut off for their miſdemeanors; ſome, for ſeeking to revive again the antient Diſcipline; & ſome, that others might enjoy their places. The chief cauſe of theſe continual maſſacres, proceeded originally from the *Senate*, and Emperors themſelves. For when the *Senators* had once permitted the Souldiers to elect *Galba*, and had confirmed that election; *Evulgato* (ſaith *Tacitus*) *Imperii arcano, principem alibi quàm* Roma *fieri poſſe*; more Emperors were made abroad in the field by the *Legions*, than at home by the *Senators*. Secondly, from the Emperors alone, who by an unſeaſonable love to their *Guard-Souldiers*, ſo ſtrenghthned them with privileges, and nuſled them in their licentious courſes, that on the ſmalleſt rebuke, they which were appointed for the ſafety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their ruin: ſo truly was it ſaid by *Auguſtus* in *Dion*, *Metuendum eſt eſſe ſine cuſtode, ſed multo magis a cuſtode metuendum eſt*. The laſt cauſe (be it *cauſa per accidens*, or *per ſe*) was the largeſs which the new Emperors uſed to give unto the men of Service; a cuſtom begun by *Claudius Cæſar*, and continued by all his Succeſſors: inſomuch that the Empire became ſaleable, and many times he which bad moſt, had it. As we ſee in *Dion*, when *Sulpitianus* offering twenty *Seſtertiums* to each ſouldier, was (as if they had been buying of a ſtock at *Gleek*) out-bidden by *Julianus*, who promiſed them five and twenty *Seſtertiums* a man. So that *Herodian* juſtly complaineth of this Donative. *Id initium cauſaq; militibus fuit, ut etiam in poſterum turpiſſimi contumaciſſimiq; evaderent, ſic ut avaritia indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad ſanguinem uſq; proveherent*. That is to ſay; From this occaſion and beginning, the ſouldiers every day grew more ſhameleſs, and leſs regardful of their *Prince*: ſo that their covetouſneſs encreaſing, and the contempt they had of their Emperors waxing more and more, ended at laſt in the frequent ſhedding of their bloods, in hope to have a better Market of the next Succeſſor. So as the Emperour *Conſtantine* wanted not good reaſon, beſides their ſiding againſt him for *Maxentius*, to caſhier theſe Guards, as grown more dangerous than uſeful to *Imperial* Majeſty. And ſo accordingly he did, levelling their *ſtanding Camp* to the very ground, disbanding the whole company, or putting them under other Officers and to other Services; by means whereof they were not able to create the like diſturbances, or diſpoſe of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of theſe *Guards* which before were two (*Præfecti Prætorio* in the Latine) he encreaſed their number unto four (one for each quarter of the Empire) giving them a Civil Juriſdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before, and caſting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own deviſing.

As for the extent and latitude of the *Roman* Empire, whilſt it remained one entire Body (as it was before the time of *Conſtantine*, who at his death divided it among his ſons) it was in length about three thouſand miles; namely, from the Iriſh-Ocean Weſt, to the River *Euphrates* on the Eaſt, and in breadth, it reached from the *Danubius* Northward, to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thouſand miles, And though the *Romans* had extended their Dominions ſometimes farther Eaſt, and North, yet could they never quietly ſettle themſelves in thoſe conqueſts. Nature (it ſeemeth) had appointed them theſe bounds, not ſo much to limit their *Empire*, as to defend it. For the enemies found thoſe Rivers, by reaſon of the depth of the Channel, and violent current of the ſtream, as a couple of impregnable Fortreſſes; purpoſely (as it were) erected to hinder them from haraſſing the *Romans* Countreys.

The Revenues of it, *Lipſius*, in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*, eſteemed to be about one hundred and fifty millions of Crowns; and that they were no leſs, may be made more than probable by theſe reaſons. 1 It is affirmed by divers, and among others by *Boterus*, that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount unto one hundred and twenty millions of Crowns. And if this be true (as few queſtion it) we cannot in proportion gheſs the whole Empire of the *Romans* to yeeld leſs than one hundred and fifty millions, eſpecially conſidering what Arts-Maſters the *Romans* were, in levying and raiſing their Taxes and cuſtomary Tributes. 2 The *Legionary* Souldiers, which were diſperſed over the *Provinces*, received in ordinary pay (beſides proviſion of corn, apparel, and Officers wages) five millions, 516062. pounds and ten ſhillings of our money; which amounteth unto ſixteen millions of Crowns or thereabout. In the City it ſelf, were kept in continual pay, ſeven thouſand Souldiers of the Watch, four thouſand or ſix thouſand for the defence of the City, and ten thouſand for the Guard of the Emperours perſon. The two firſt had the ſame wages, the laſt the double wages of a *Legionary* Souldier. Add hereto the expences of the Palace, and other means of disburſals, and I think nothing of the ſum can be abated. 3 We read that *C. Caligula* ſpent in one year two millions and ſeven hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; how *Nero* moſt laviſhly gave away two millions and one hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; and how *Vitellius* in few months, was nine hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums* in Arrearages; every *Seſtertium* being valued at ſeven pound ſixteen ſhillings three pence: all of them huge and infinite ſums. 4 When *Veſpaſian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was ſo impoveriſhed, that he profeſſed in open Senate, that he wanted to ſettle the Common wealth forty millions of *Seſtertiums*, amounting to three hundred and twelve millions of our Engliſh mony: which Proteſtation (ſaith *Sueton*) ſeemed probable, *quia & malè partis optimè uſus eſt* Now, unleſs the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have ſpoken, by what means could this extraordinary ſum be rais'd? 5 We may gheſs at the general Revenue by the monys iſſuing out of particular provinces; and it is certain that *Egypt* afforded to the *Ptolemies* twelve thouſand talents yearly; neither had the Romans leſs, they being more perfect in inhancing, than in abating their Intrado. *France* was by *Cæſar* ſeſſed at the yearly tribute of twenty millions of Crowns. And no doubt the reſt of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6 And laſtly the infinite ſums of mony given by the Emperours in way of largeſs, are proofs ſufficient for the greatneſs of the in-come. I will inſtance in *Auguſtus* only, and in him, omitting his Donatives at the victory of *Actium*, and the reſt, I will ſpecifie his Legacy at his death: He bequeathed (by his Teſtament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common ſort, and the reſt of the people, three pound eight ſhillings a man; to every ſouldier of the *Pratorian* bands ſeven pound ſixteen ſhillings three pence; and to every *Legionary* ſouldier, of the Roman Citizens, four pound ten ſhillings ſix pence: which amounted to a mighty maſs of money.

The Arms or Enſign of this Empire, when it was up and in the flouriſh, was the Eagle: not born, as now, in colours, and a banner, but in an Image or Portracture on the top of a ſpear, or other long piece of wood, to be fixed in the earth at pleaſure. This Enſign, Spear and Eagle together, they called the *Labarum: Quæ ſigna, quod quaſi labantia haſtis appenderentur* labara *dixerunt*, ſaith *Lipſius*, *Epiſt. Quaſt. Ep.* 5 The uſe as of this, ſo of other ſtandards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the 2d of *Numb.* namely, *ut ad eorum aſpectũ, bellatores dividantur & uniantur*, to call together, & diſtribute the ſouldiers according to occaſions. And certainly for this end and purpoſe were thoſe Enſigns firſt invented. Afterwards they were applyed to the diſtinguiſhing of *Tribes* and *Families*; and at laſt beſtowed by Kings and Princes as the honorary marks of well deſervings: thoſe which had been the Enſigns of War, ſo becoming the Ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in colours, I have not yet read. It is now an Eagle *Saturn*, in a Field *Sol*; which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *moſt rich.* It was firſt born by *Ca. Marius* in his ſecond Conſulſhip, and in his wars againſt the *Cimbri*: from him conveyed to *J. Cæſar*, who was allied to him in deſign and perſon, and ſo derived unto the Emperours, his Succeſſors.

But to proceed, *Conſtantine* having ſetled his affairs in peace, and caſhiered the *Pratorian* Guards, fell to new modelling of the Empire; which he conceived to be too cumberſome and unwieldy to be governed by the former Polity, as indeed it was. And firſt of all he augmented the Roman Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts; over every one of which he ordeined a particular *Preſident*, that had his reſidence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced theſe Provinces under fourteen *Dioceſes*, (for ſo he called the greater diſtributions of his Empire) ſeven of which were in the Eaſt-parts thereof, that is to ſay, the *Dioceſe* of *Egypt*, of the *Orient*, of *Aſia*, of *Pontus*, *Thrace*, *Dacia*, and *Macedon*: and as many in the *Weſt*, *viz.* the *Præfecture* of the City of *Rome*, (which I count for one) the *Dioceſe* of *Italy*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*, of *France*, *Spain*, & *Britain*. Finally, inſtead of the two *Præfecti Pratorio* which had the command of the *Pratorians*, he ordeined 4 for the quarters of the Empire: that is to ſay, the *Præfectus Pratorio Italiæ*, under whom were the Dioceſes of *Italy*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*; 2 *Præfectus Pratorio Galliarum*, who had under him the *Dioceſes* of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*; 3 The *Præfectus Pratorio Orientis* who had command over the *Dioceſes* of *Egypt*, the *Orient*, the *Aſian*, the *Pontick* and *Thracian* Dioceſes; And 4 the *Præfectus Pratorio Illyrici*, under whoſe ſuperintendence, beſides *Illyricum* it ſelf, were the *Dioceſes* of *Macedon* & *Dacia* only; each of theſe *Præfects* having a *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant, in the ſeveral *Dioceſes* under his authority, who fixed their reſidence in the head City of the *Dioceſe*. And this I have the rather noted, becauſe of the relation which the *Polity* of the *Chriſtian* Church had to this Diviſion: it being ſo ordered in the beſt and pureſt times thereof, that in every City where the Emperours had an Officer, whom they call'd *Defenſor Civitatis*, the *Chriſtians* ſhould have a *Biſhop*; in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan*; and over every *Dioceſe* an Arch-biſhop, or Primate, from whom lay no Appeal unto any other. And ſo far *Conſtantine* did well; if at the leaſt the caſting of the Empire into ſo many Dioceſes was of his deviſing. But I have reaſon to believe that it was more antient: the Patriarchs or Primates of *Rome*, *Carthage*, *Alexandria*, *Antioch*, and others of the greater Churches, being ſetled in a preheminence of juriſdiction over the Provinces, and *Metropolitans* aſſign'd to them long time before the Councel of *Nice*, and conſequently before the Empire (nay the birth) of *Conſtantine*, who poſſibly might act no more in this great buſineſs, than the aſſigning of a *Præfectus Pratorio* to each ſeveral quarter, and the allotting of the *Dioceſes* unto each *Præfectus*. But whether it were ſo or not, certain it is, that he committed divers errors, which did more prejudice the Empire, than any thing that had been done by his Predeceſſors. Firſt in tranſlating the Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Byzantium*; by which tranſplantation the Empire loſt much of its natural vigour: as we ſee by the experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their natural growth, loſe much of their vertue which was formerly in them. On which reaſon, *Camillus* would not ſuffer the *Romans* to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Veii*, newly conquer'd by him: but to prevent them in it, ſet fire on the Town, and ſo conſumed it, *ut nunc* Veios *fuiſſe laboret Annalium fides*, as my Author hath it. A ſecond fault of this *Conſtantine*, was the dividing of the Empire amongſt his ſons, which only concerned himſelf. For though it was quickly reunited in the perſon of *Conſtantius* (his brethren dying without iſſue) yet his example being followed by others; the Empire was after torn into many pieces to the deſtruction of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperors uſed ſometimes to aſſociate ſome partner with them; but ſo that they did manage it as one ſole Eſtate: *Conſtantine* (if I remember rightly) being the firſt which parcelled it into ſeveral Soveraignties, each independent of the other, allotting to *Conſtantius*, *Greece*, *Thrace*, and all the Provinces of the Eaſt; to *Conſtans*, *Itally*, *Illyricum*, *Africk*: to *Conſtantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, & *Britain*. The third fault of this Emperor was his removing the *Legions*, & *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eaſtern parts of his dominions, pretending to uſe them as a Bulwark againſt the *Perſians*; laying thereby thoſe paſſages open, at which not long after the barbarous Nations entred, & ſubdued the Weſt. For though inſtead of theſe *Colonies* he planted garriſons and forts in convenient places; yet theſe being filled with Souldiers, for the moſt part out of other Countries, fought not as in defence of their native Soil, (as the *Colonies* would and muſt have done) but on the firſt onſet of thoſe *Barbarians*, abandoned them to the will of the enemy. So that *Zoſimus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he bewrayeth much malice) doth call him, not untruly, the firſt Subverter of that flouriſhing Monarchy. To theſe three we may add a fourth, which concerns the Emperors in general, namely, their ſtupid negligence and degenerat ſpirits, which ſhewed it ſelf moſt viſible in the laſt of

The *Weſtern* Emperors.

341 1 *Conſtans*, the youngeſt ſon of *Conſtantinus Magnus*, his brother *Conſtantine* being dead in the third year of his reign, remained ſole Emperor of the Weſt. 13.

354 2 *Conſtantius*, the other of *Conſtantines* ſons, ſucceeded *Conſtans* in his part, after his deceaſe, uniting the divided Empire into one Eſtate.

3 *Valentinian* Emperor of the Weſt, his brother *Valens* ruling in *Conſtantinople*, and the Eaſtern parts.

4 *Valentinian* II. youngeſt ſon of the former *Valentinian*.

399 5 *Honorius* the ſecond ſon of *Theodoſius* the Emperor, in whoſe time *Alarick* with the *Gothes* invaded *Italy*, ſacked *Rome*, and made themſelves Maſters of the Countrey, which afterwards they left in exchange for *Spain* 26.

425 6 *Valentinian* III. during whoſe time *Attila* and the *Hunnes* made foul work in *Italy*, and the *Vandals* ſeized upon *Africk*, as they did on *Italy* and *Rome* alſo after his deceaſe: Murdered by *Maximus* a Roman (whoſe wife he had trained into the Court, and raviſhed) as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter on another occaſion. He was ſon unto *Conſtantius Cæſar* by *Placidia* Siſter to *Honorius*, and Widow of *Anthaulfus* King of the *Gothes*.

455 7 *Maximus* having ſlain *Valentinian* the third, ſucceeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Eudoxia* the wife of *Valentinian* (who had ſome inkling of the manner of her huſbands death) had drawn into *Italy*, he was ſtoned to death by his own ſouldiers. 1.

456 8 *Avitus*, choſen Emperor in a military tumult.

457 9 *Majoranus*. 4.

461 10 *Severus*. 6.

467 11 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five years was ſlain (as were the three before him) by *Recimer* (a *Suevian* born) the chief Commander of the Armies; who had an aim to get the Empire for himſelf, but died as ſoon as he had vanquiſhed and ſlain *Anthemius*.

471 12 *Olybrius*, an Emperor of four moneths only.

472 13 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As alſo was

14 *Julius Nepos*, depoſed by *Oreſtes* a Noble Roman, who gave the Empire to his ſon called at firſt *Momillus*, but after his aſſuming the Imperial Title he was called, as in contempt, *Auguſtulus*.

473 15 *Auguſtulus*, the laſt of the Emperors who reſided in *Italy*, vanquiſhed by *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* and *Turingians*. An ominous thing, that as *Auguſtus* raiſed this Empire, ſo an *Auguſtulus* ſhould ruin it.

But though *Auguſtulus* loſt the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not ſuffered to enjoy it long: *Zeno* the Emperor of the Eaſt ſending *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes* to expel him thence; and to poſſeſs himſelf of *Italy*, the reward of his valour. And this the Emperor did the rather, partly becauſe the *Gothes* were Chriſtians, and in good terms of correſpondency with him: but principally to remove that active Nation ſomewhat further off, who lay before too neer the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might diſmiſs them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodorick* a *Patrician* of the Roman Empire; an honour firſt deviſed by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, and of ſo high eſteem from the firſt Inſtitution, that they who were dignified therewith, were to have precedency of the *Prætorio Præfecti*, who before took place next to the Emperor himſelf. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* ſet upon it any lower eſtimate, in caſe he did not add much unto it; when to the Title of Emperor of the Romans he added that of a *Patrician* in the ſtile Imperial. *Theodorick* thus authorized and encouraged, marches toward *Italy*; and having vanquiſhed *Odoacer*, ſecures himſelf in his new Conqueſts by divers politick proceedings; firſt by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortreſſes at home. To fortifie himſelf abroad, he took to wife *Adelheida*, daughter to *Clodoveus* (or *Clovis*) King of the *French*, marrying his ſiſter *Hemelfride* to *Thoriſmund* King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; *Amalaſunta* a ſecond daughter to *Eutharicus* a Prince of the *Gothes* in *Spain*; and *Ammelberge* his Neece, to *Hermandfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus backed with theſe Alliances with his Neighbour Princes, (all equally concerned in the ſubverting of the Roman Empire) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alpes*, and the ſhores of the *Adriatick*, to impeach the paſſage of the barbarous Nations into *Italy*. His Souldiers and Commanders he diſperſed into moſt parts of the Countrey; partly to keep under the Italians, of whoſe wavering and unconſtant nature he was ſomewhat doubtful; partly to unite both people in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Cuſtoms; and partly that he might more eaſily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. *Italy*, which before was made a thorow-fare to the barbarous Nations, and quite diſordered by the frequent inundations of Luſt and Rapine; he reduced to ſuch a peaceable and ſetled Government, that before his death they had quite loſt the memory of their former miſeries: in ſtead whereof a general felicity had diffuſed it ſelf over all the Countrey. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, ſtrengthned, and beautified. In his wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of peace, and in his private carriage diſcreet and affable. Finally (as *Velleius* ſaith of *Morobodus*) he was *Natione magis quàm ratione Barbarus:* And went the moſt judicious way to eſtabliſh his dominion in *Italy*, of any of the barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the Roman Provinces; which he left thus confirmed and ſetled unto his Succeſſors.

A.C. The Kings of the *Gothes* in *Italy*.

495 1 *Theodorick* of whom before; who to his Conqueſt of *Italy* added that of *Illyricum*, as alſo the appendant Iſlands to both thoſe Countries; and wreſted *Provence* in *France* from the *Gothes* of *Spain*.

527 2 *Athalaricus*, Nephew to *Theodorick* by his daughter *Amalaſunta*, who in the minority of her ſon managed the affairs of the *Goths* in *Italy*. Fearing ſome danger out of *Greece*, ſhe reſtored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their ayd drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilſul in the Languages of all thoſe Nations which had commerce with the Roman Empire; inſomuch, that *pro miraculo fuerit ipſam audire loquentem*, ſaith *Procopius* of her.

534 3 *Theodatus*, the ſon of *Hammelfride*, the ſiſter of *Theodorick*, ſucceeded on the untimely death of *Athalaricus*. Who being in War with the Romans, (or rather with the *Greek* Emperors, endeavouring to recover *Italy* from the hands of the *Gothes*) and deſiring beforehand to know his ſucceſs; was willed by a *Jew* to ſhut up a certain number of Swine, and to give to ſome of them the names of *Gothes*, and to others the names of *Romans*. Which done, and going to the ſtyes not long after, they found the Hogs of the *Gothiſh* faction all ſlain, and thoſe of the *Roman* half unbriſtled: and thereupon the *Jew* foretold that the *Gothes* ſhould be diſcomfited, and the *Romans* loſe a great part of their ſtrength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called Ονοματία, and hath been prohibited by a General Councel. The loſs of this battel (won by *Beliſarius* Commander of the Armies of the Emperour *Juſtinian*) drew on the loſs of *Rome*, and the Eaſt parts of *Italy*, (with the Realm of *Naples*) and occaſioned the death of *Theodatus*, ſlain ſhortly after theſe great loſſes by the *Gothes* themſelves. 3.

537 4 *Vitiges*, choſen by the *Gothes*, beſieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the ſaid *Beliſarius*. 3.

540 5 *Idobaldus*, Governour of *Verona*, on the calling home of *Beliſarius*, choſen by the *Gothes*, and by them not long after ſlain. 1.

541 6 *Ardaricus*, of whom nothing memorable. 1.

542 7 *Totilas*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predeceſſors, and ſacked *Rome* in the ſight of *Beliſarius*, then returned into *Italy*, and not able to hinder him, Vanquiſhed and killed in fight by *Narſes*, in the 11 of his reign. 11.

553 8 *Teyas*, the laſt King of the *Gothes* in *Italy*, who being vanquiſhed by *Narſes* in the fourteenth year of his Reign, ſubmitted himſelf to the *Eaſtern* Emperors: but after breaking out again, he was finally diſcomfited, and ſlain by *Narſes* not far from the City of *Nocera*, *An.* 567. After which time the *Gothes* and the *Italians* mingled in blood and language, became one Nation.

But the miſeries of *Italy*, and thoſe Weſtern parts, were not ſo to end. No ſooner had God freed them from the rod of his viſitations, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Perſecution*, formerly remembred, and given them peace within their dwellings; but they became divided into *ſchiſms* and *factions*: and after wallowed in thoſe ſins, which a continual ſurfeit of proſperity hath commonly attending on it. Inſomuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about theſe times, complains of that high hand of wickedneſs, wherewith they did povoke the patience of Almighty God; the lives of *Chriſtians* being grown ſo deplorably wicked, that they became a ſcandal to the Faith and Goſpel. *In nobis patitur* Chriſtus *opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex* Chriſtiana *maledictum*, ſaith that godly Biſhop. So that their ſins being ripe for vengeance, God ſent the barbarous Nations as his *Executioners*, to execute his divine juſtice on impenitent men; and made them ſenſible though *Heathens*, that it was Gods work they did, and not their own, in laying ſuch afflictions on theſe Weſtern parts. *Ipſi fatebantur non ſuum eſſe quod facerent; agi enim ſe & perurgeri divino juſſu*, as the ſaid godly Biſhop doth inform us of them. On this impulſion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they firſt waſted *Spain*, and then harried *Africk*: And on the ſame did *Attila* the *Hun* inſert into his Royal Titles the ſtile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*; acknowledging thereby his own apprehenſion of ſome ſpecial and extraordinary calling to this publick ſervice. Nay, as *Jornandes* doth report, ſome of theſe barbarous people did not ſtick to ſay, that they were put on this employment by ſome heavenly viſions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In proſecution of the which, in leſs time than the compaſs of 80 years, this very *Italy* (though antiently the ſtrength and ſeat of that Empire) was ſeven times brought almoſt unto deſolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, viz. Firſt by *Alarick*, King of the *Gothes*, who ſacked *Rome*, *Naples*, *&c.* 2. By *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, who razed *Florence*, waſted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the ſpoil of *Rome*, by the interceſſion of Pope *Leo*: 3. By *Cenſericus* King of the *Vandals*, who alſo had the ſackage of *Rome* it ſelf: 4. By *Biorgus* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperor *Majoranus*: 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli*, who drove *Auguſtulus* the laſt Weſtern Emperor out of his eſtate; and twice in thirteen years laid the Country deſolate: 6. By *Theodorick* king of the *Gothes*, called in by *Zeno* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, to expel *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*: And 7 by *Gundebald* King of the *Burgundians*, who having ranſacked all *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving poſſeſſion to the *Gothes*. As for theſe *Gothes*, being the firſt & laſt of thoſe barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the ſpoil of *Italy*, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the ſpace of 72 years, they were at laſt ſubdued by *Beliſarius* & *Narſes*, two of the braveſt Souldiers that had ever ſerved the Eaſtern Emperors; & *Italy* united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Juſtinian*. But *Narſes* having governed *Italy* about 17 years, & being after ſuch good ſervice moſt deſpightfully uſed by *Sophia* (never the wiſer for her name) the wife of the Emperor *Juſtinus*, abandoned the Countrey to the *Lombards*. For the Empreſs envying his glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government, but ſent him word, *That ſhe would make the* Eunuch (for ſuch he was) *come home & ſpin among her maids*. To which the diſcontented man returnd this anſwer, *That he would ſpin her ſuch a Web, as neither ſhe nor any of her maids ſhould be able to unweave*. And thereupon he opened the paſſages of the Country to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*, who coming into *Italy* with their wives and Children, poſſeſſed themſelves of all that Countrey which antiently was inhabited by the *Ciſalpine Galls*, calling it by their own names *Longobardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy*. Nor ſtaid he there, but made himſelf maſter of the Countries lying on the *Adriatick*, as far as to the borders of *Apulia*: and for the better Government of his new Dominions, erected the four famous Dukedoms, 1 Of *Friuli* at the entrance of *Italy*, for the admiſſion of more aids if occaſion were, or the keeping out of new Invaders, 2 Of *Turlu*, at the foot of the *Alpes* againſt the *French*: 3. Of *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, againſt the incurſions of the *Greeks*, then poſſeſſed of *Apulia*, and the other Eaſtern parts of that Kingdom: And 4 of *Spoleto* in the midſt of *Italy*, to ſuppreſs the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more, unto his Succeſſors.

The *Lombardians* Kings of *Italy*.

A. C.
568. 1 *Alboinus*. 6.
574. 2 *Clephes*. 1.
Interregnum annorum. 11.
586. 3 *Antharus*. 7.
593. 4 *Agilulfus*. 25.
618. 5 *Adoaldus*. 10.
628. 6 *Arioaldus*. 11.
639. 7 *Richaris*, or *Rotharis*.
655. 8 *Radaldus*. 5.
660. 9 *Aribertus*. 9.
669. 10 *Gundibertus*. 1.
670. 11 *Grimoaldus*. 9.
679. 12 *Garibaldus menſ*. 3.
679. 13 *Partarithus*. 18.
698. 14 *Cunibertus*. 12.
710. 15 *Luitbertus*. 1.
711. 16 *Rainbertus* 1.
712. 17 *Aribertus* II. 12.
723. 18 *Aſprandus menſ*. 3.
723. 19 *Luitprandus*. 21.
744. 20 *Hildebrandus m*. 6.
744. 21 *Rachiſius*. 6.
750. 22 *Aſtulphus*. 6.
756. 23 *Deſiderius*, the laſt of the *Lombards*, of whom more anon.

In the mean time we will look into the ſtory of ſome of the former Kings, in which we find ſom things deſerving our conſideration. And firſt beginning with *Alboinus*, the firſt of this Catalogue, before his coming into *Italy* he waged war with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepida*; whom he overthrew, and made a drinking Cup of his Skull. *Roſumund* daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that deteſted Cup; which ſhe ſo ſtomached, that ſhe promiſed one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her ſelf and the Kingdom of *Lombardy*. This when he had conſented to, and performed accordingly, they were both ſo extreamly hated for it, that they were fain to fly to *Ravenna*, and put themſelves into the protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a deſire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be poſſeſſed of that maſs of Treaſure which ſhe was ſaid to bring with her; but principally hoping by her power and party there, to raiſe a beneficial War againſt the *Lombards*; perſuaded her to diſpatch *Helmichild* out of the way, and take him for her husband; to which ſhe willingly agreed. *Helmichild* comming out of a Bath called for drink, and ſhe gives him a ſtrong poyſon; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the ſtrange operation of it how the matter went, he compelled her to drink the reſt: ſo both dyed together. 2. *Clephes* the ſecond King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*: but was ſo tyrannical withal, that after his death, they reſolved to admit of no more Kings, diſtributing the Government among 30 Dukes. Which diviſion, though it held not above 12 years, was the chief cauſe that the *Lombards* failed of being the abſolute Lords of all *Italy*. For the people having once caſt off the yoak of obedience, and taſted ſomewhat of the ſweetneſs of licentious freedom, were never after ſo reduced to their former duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in ſuch Atchievements as tended more unto the greatneſs of the King, than the gain of the ſubject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14 King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly requited. For being to encounter with *Alachis* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled againſt him; one of the Clergy knowing that the Kings life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thruſt himſelf into the head of the Enemy, where he loſt his own life, but ſaved the Kings. 4. *Aribert* the 17 King, gave the *Coltian Alpes*, containing *Piemont*, and ſome part of the Dutchy of *Millain*, to the Church of *Rome*: which is obſerved to be the firſt Temporal Eſtate, that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the foundation of that greatneſs which they after came to. 5 The 19 King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia* and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchate*; having firſt won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchy* thereof, *An.* 741. the laſt *Exarch* being called *Eutichus*. But the *Lombards* long enjoyed not his Conqueſts. For *Pepin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen* the third, ſolicited to come into *Italy*, overthrew *Aſtulphus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The laſt King was *Deſiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the firſt, and beſieging him in *Rome*, was by *Charles* the Great, Succeſſor to *Pepin*, beſieged in *Pavy*, and himſelf with all his children taken priſoners, *Anno* 774. And ſo ended the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italy* 206 years. *Lombardy* was then made a Province of the *French*, and after of the *German* Empire: many of whoſe Emperors uſed to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Biſhops of *Millain*, with an Iron Crown; which was kept at *Modoecum*, now called *Monza*, a ſmall Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Fathers former donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marca Anconitana*, and the Dukedome of *Spoleto*. For theſe and other kindneſſes, *Charles* was by Pope *Leo* the fourth, on *Chriſtmas* day crowned Emperor of the Weſt, *An.* 801. whoſe Succeſſors ſhall be reckoned when we come to the ſtory of *Germany*. At this diviſion of the Empire, *Irene* was Empreſs of the Eaſt; to whom and her Succeſſors was no more allotted than the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, (the Eaſt parts of the Realm of *Naples*) being then in poſſeſſion of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given, by this Emperour and his father, almoſt all the Lands which they poſſeſs at this day; although afterwards extorted from them by the following Emperors, or under colour of their Titles, by many ſeveral waies and means brought again unto them, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *ſui juris*. The reſt of *Italy*, containing all other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuſcany*, *Frinli*, *Treviginna*, and whatſoever is at this day in the poſſeſſion of the Duke of *Millaine*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Montferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piemont*, together with *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*; was reſerved by *Charles* unto himſelf, and in his life-time given by him to *Pepin* his ſecond ſon, with the ſtile or title of King of *Italy*. But long it did not reſt in the houſe of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wreſting it from the line of *Charles*, and after weakning and dividing it by their ſeveral factions;. till in the end, inſtead of an united Kingdom, there roſe up many ſcattered Principalities, as ſhall hereafter be declared. But firſt we muſt proceed to the Kings of *Italy*, of which we ſhall endeavour as exact a Catalogue, as the confuſions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italy*, of the *French*, *Italian*, and *German* Lines.

1 *Pepin*, ſon of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2 *Bernard*, ſon of *Pepin*.
3 *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
841 4 *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldeſt ſon of *Ludovicus* 15.
856 5 *Ludovicus* II. Emperor, eldeſt ſon to *Lotharius* 20.
876 6 *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the youngeſt ſon of *Ludovicus Pius* 2.
7 *Caroloman*, nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his ſecond ſon, ſurnamed the *Antient*.
8 *Carolus Craſſus*, or the Fat, Emperor, brother of *Caroloman*, the laſt King of *Italy* of the houſe of *Charles*, he died *Anno* 888.
888 9 *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, both of the *Longobardian* Race, for the Kingdom of *Italy*; and in fine, carried it againſt him.
894 10 *Lambert* the ſon of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Formoſus*.
11 *Ludovick*, ſon of *Boſon* of *Ardennes*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by ſome Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italy*, and is made King.
917 12 *Berengarius*, Duke of *Friuli*, vanquiſheth *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italy*; and at laſt overcome by the *Hungarians*; who having waſted the Countrey returned back again.
13 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy Tranſ-jurane*, called into *Italy* againſt *Berengarius*, reſigned it in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Couſen
926 14 *Hugh D' Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kindom of *Italy* upon this reſignation; but after many troubles, was at laſt outed of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France*.
946 15 *Berengarius* II. ſon of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the Italians as Protector to *Lotharius* the ſon of *Hugh*; beſieging *Adelhais* the next heir of *Italy* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken priſoner by the Emperor *Otho*.
16 *Otho*, called into *Italy* by *Adelhais*, daughter to *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italy*, marrieth the Lady, and in her right is King of *Italy*.
974 17 *Otho* II. ſon of the former *Otho*, married *Theophania* neece to *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dower. 20.
984 18 *Otho* III. Emperor, and King of *Italy*, in whoſe minority the Kingdom was uſurped by
19 *Harduicus*, a man of great power in *Italy*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*; till being broken with long wars by *Henry* the ſucceeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
26 *Henry*, the ſecond Emperor of that name, having thrice vanquiſhed *Harduicus*, got the Kingdom of *Italy*, and left the ſame unto the Emperors his Succeſſors: the Title of *Italy* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Countrey governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by ſuch Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time ſent thither. But long it ſtaid not in that ſtate. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Polity, to weaken the Imperial power in *Italy*, without which their own Grandeur could not be maintained; ſtirred up continual factions and wars againſt them; and by that means, and by the Cenſures of the Church which they denounced according as they ſaw occaſion, did ſo aſtoniſh and diſtract them; that in the end the Emperors began to lay aſide the affairs of *Italy*, by which they reaped more trouble than the profit came to. Inſomuch that *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*, a valiant and politick Prince, finding the ill ſucceſs which *Henry* the fourth and fifth, and *Frederick* the firſt and ſecond, Emperors of more puiſſance than himſelf, had found in their Italian actions and pretenſions; reſolved to rid his hands of that troubleſome and fruitleſs Province; and to that end made as much money as he could of that commodity, which he ſaw he was not like to keep. And yet he ſold good penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their liberties but ſix thouſand Crowns, the Citizens of *Luca* ten thouſand: others as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reaſon why he went not into *Italy* to look to the affairs thereof, as his predeceſſors had done before him: he is ſaid to have returned for anſwer that conceit of the Fox, for his not going to attend (as the other beaſts did) at the Lions Den,

——— *Quia me veſtigia terrent*
Omnia me adverſum ſpectantia, nulla retrorſum.

That is to ſay,

I dare not go, becauſe no track I ſee
Of any beaſt returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident reſolution being followed by too many of his Succeſſors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themſelves the great diſpoſers of the affairs of *Italy*: but many petit Princes thereby took occaſion of getting all they could lay hold on for themſelves, and others. For by this means, the *Scaligers* made themſelves Maſters of *Verona*, the *Paſſarines* of *Mantua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Baillons* of *Bononia*: and by the ſame the *Florentines* got *Piſtoia*, and *Ferrara* was poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry* the 7. provoked by theſe indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities to their former obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron Crown, as were alſo *Ludovicus Bavarus*, and *Charles* the 4. two of his Succeſſors: yet found they in concluſion ſuch ſmall benefit by the enterpriſe, as did not quit the charg and trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italy* was left wholly in a manner to the Popes diſpoſing, who gave away to others what they could not manage: or otherwiſe confirmed thoſe men in their uſurpations, whom they found already poſſeſſed of the Emperors Countries: and bound them by that means the faſter to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their eſtate in fee: the Emperors having nothing left them but the empty title, nor exerciſing the Imperial power there any other way than by changing Earldoms into Marquiſates, Marquiſates to Dukedoms, which they often did either for ready money, or reward of Service, or to preſerve ſome ſhadow of their antient Intereſt.

And now we are to look on *Italy* as under a new face of things, not only in regard of ſeveral Principalities and forms of Government, but as replenished with new Colonies or ſets of people, differing from the old in manners as well as language. And though the Soyl be now as it was before, yet hath that alſo found ſome change in the different production of the natural fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and works of Art. For now beſides their Corn and Wine, which antiently were the ſtaple Commodities of this Countrey: they ſupply the reſt of Chriſtendom with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffaties, Sattans, Grograins, Raſh, Fuſtians, Gold-wire, Allom, Armour, Glaſſes, and ſuch like commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy: who being for the moſt part, Gentlemen of Noble houſes, not only loſe not the eſteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandiſe (as in other places;) but by reaſon they are poſſeſſed of eſtates in land, which they manage by their Bayliffs and other ſervants, they are become the welthieſt Merchants of all *Chriſtendom*.

Nor do the Gentry come behind them in all manner of affluence, which can be poſſibly enjoyed in ſo rich a Soyl. Their Lands they ſet not at a rent, but at thirds or halfs, according as the Soyl is more or leſs fruitful; ſeldom abiding in the Countrey, but only for a moneth or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themſelves with their Muſick and Miſtreſſes under the fragrant hedges and ſhady bowers, in as much ſolace and delight as may be deſired. The reſidue of the year they ſpend in Cities and places of ſome reſort, for change of company. But on the other ſide the Countrey Farmer lives a drudging and laborious life, liable to all the Taxes and Impoſitions which are laid on the Land; the Landlords part coming in clearly without any diſburſments or defalcations; inſomuch that it is proverbially, but moſt truly ſaid, that *the rich men in* Italy *are the wiſeſt, and the poor men the pooreſt, in all the World*.

The people generally are grave, reſpective, and ingenious. Excellent men (ſaid once an *Hiſpaniolized Italian*) but for theſe three things: that is to ſay, in their luſt they are natural, in their malice unappeaſable, in their actions deceitful. To which might be added, that they blaſpheme rather than ſwear, and murder a man ſooner than ſlander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of ſome particulars: it being obſerved by moderate and impartial men, that they are obedient to their Superiors, to Inferiors courteous, to their Equals full of all Civility, to Strangers affable, and moſt deſirous by all fair and friendly offices to win their loves. In apparel they are ſaid to be very modeſt, in the furniture of their houſes ſumptuous, at their Tables neat, ſober of ſpeech, enemies of all ill reports of others; and of their own reputation ſo exceeding tender, that whoſoever ſlandereth any one of them, if it come unto the parties ear, he is ſure to die for it. Of money and expence he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more coſt, than he is ſure to ſave by, or receive great thanks for; but otherwiſe for civil carriage and behaviour, ſurpaſſing all the Gentry in the World beſides. Only in ſtrictneſs to their wives they exceed all reaſon, of whom they are ſo extreamly jealous, that they ſhut them up all the day from the common view, and permit them liberty of diſcourſe with few or none. The lock uſed by a Gentleman of *Venice*, to be aſſured of his wives chaſtity in the time of his abſence, is ſo known a ſtory, that it needs no report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous humour in moſt Southern Nations, we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet if that be true, which is proverbially ſpoke of the women of *Italy*, the husbands have more reaſon for this ſtrict reſtraint, than other Nations are aware of. For although they be for the moſt part witty in ſpeech, and modeſt in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is ſaid of them in the way of proverb, that *they are as Magpies at the door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devils in the houſe, Angels in the ſtreets,* and *Sirens in the windows*; not wanting on this ground to ſet out themſelves with all advantages of Art, there being few amongſt them who uſe not *painting*, and other the ſophiſtical helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a Saying, *If God make them tall and fat* (for the title of a *goodly woman* is much prized among them) *they will make themſelves fair.*

The language of both Sexes is very Courtly and fluent, all of them ſpeaking the *Courtezan*, or Court-language, notwithſtanding the diverſity of Dialects which is amongſt them. For though there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Millaneſe* and the *Roman*, the *Neopolitan* and the *Genoeſe*; yet it is hard to be diſcerned by the tone or pronunciation what language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is beſt ſpoken in the Great Duke's Country, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Sienna*, but in *Florence* eſpecially; in which City *Guicciardine* the Hiſtorian, *Boccace* the Author of the *Decameron*, and other great Maſters of the *Italian* language, did live and flouriſh in their times.

For other men of note, both for Arts and Arms, *Italy* hath afforded many ſince the fall of the Empire, *viz.* *Æneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the name of *Pius* the ſecond: 2. *Marſilius Patavinus*, a ſtout defender of the Imperial Rights: 3. *Petrarch*, a *Roman* born: 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Reſtorer of polite Literature in *Italy*: 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*, and 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians: 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Aſtrologer: 8. *Arioſto*, and 9. *Taſſo*, the moſt renowned Poets of their times, and the later never followed ſince: 10. *Sixtus Senenſis*, one of the beſt Antiquaries of the Nation, and a great Divine: 11. *Bellarmine*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Buttreſſes and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms, 1. *Ludovicus Conius*, the firſt Reſtorer of the honour of the *Italian* Souldiery: 2. *Forti-Bracchio*, and 3. *Nicolao Picinino*, two of his training up in the feats of Chivalry: 4, 5. *Sforza* the father, and the ſon; of which the ſon attained by his valour to the Dukedom of *Millain*: 6. *Chriſtopher Columbus*, a *Genoeſe*: 7. *Americus Veſputius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebaſtian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Diſcoverers of *America*: 9. *Andrea D'Oria*, Admiral of the Navy to *Charls* the fifth; and 10. *Ambroſe Spinola* (both *Genoeſe*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*: Which laſt, being once upbraided by *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, as iſſued from a Race of Merchants (though otherwiſe of a very antient and noble Family) returned this tart and ſudden Anſwer, that *he thought it a greater honour to him, being a* Merchant, *to have the command of ſo many* Princes, *than it could be unto the other, though a* Prince *by birth, to be under the command of ſo many* Merchants.

The uſual Diviſion of *Italy* is into ſix parts: 1. *Lombardy*, 2. *Tuſcany*, 3. the Land of the *Church*, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviere de Genoa*, and 6. the Land of *Venice*: and of them there is paſſed this Cenſure according to the principal Cities, *i.e.* *Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Millain* for Beauty, *Genoa* for Statelineſs, *Florence* for Policy, and *Venice* for Riches. But take it as it ſtands at the preſent time, and

Italy is beſt divided into
- The Kingdoms of
  - *Naples.*
  - *Sicily.*
  - *Sardinia.*
- The Land or Patrimony of the *Church.*
- The great Dukedoms of
  - *Vrbin.*
  - *Tuſcany.*
- The Common-wealths of
  - *Venice.*
  - *Genoa.*
  - *Luca.*
- The Eſtates of *Lombardy*, *i.e.*
  - The Dukedom of
    - *Millain.*
    - *Mantua.*
    - *Modena.*
    - *Parma.*
    - *Montferrat.*
  - The Principality of *Piemont.*

The Kingdom of NAPLES.

THe Kingdom of *NAPLES* is invironed on all ſides with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian* and *Tuſcan* Seas, excepting where it joineth on the Weſt to the *Lands of the Church*; from which ſeparated by a line drawn from the mouth of the River *Tronto* (or *Druentus*) falling into the *Adriatick*, to the Spring-head of *Axofenus*. By which account it taketh up all the Eaſt of *Italy*; the compaſs of it being reckoned at 1468 miles.

It hath been called ſometimes the Realm of *Pouille*, from *Pouille* or *Apulia*, a chief Province of it; the firſt poſſeſſion of the *Normans* (the Founders of this Kingdom) in theſe parts of *Italy*: but called moſt commonly the Realm of *Sicil*, on this ſide of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Iſle of *Sicil*, lying on the other ſide of the *Phare* or Strait of *Meſſana*. The reaſon of which improper appellation proceeded from *Roger* the firſt King hereof, who being alſo Earl of *Sicil*, and keeping there his fixed and ordinary reſidence; when he obtained the favour to be made a King, deſired (in honour of the place where he moſt reſided) to be created by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and antient name of the Kingdom, the name or title of King of *Naples* not coming into uſe till the *French* were diſpoſſeſſed of *Sicil* by the *Aragonians*; and nothing left them but this part of the Kingdom, of which the City of *Naples* was the Regal Seat, called therefore in the following times the Kingdom of *Naples*; and by ſome of the *Italian* Writers the *Kingdom* only.

This is eſteemed to be the moſt fertile place in all *Italy*, abounding in all things neceſſary for the life of Man, and in ſuch alſo as conduce to delight and Phyſick; *viz.* many Springs and Medicinal Waters, Baths of divers virtues, ſundry Phyſical Herbs. It hath alſo an excellent breed of Horſes, which may not be tranſported but by the leave of the King, or at leaſt the *Vice-roy*; great ſtore of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choiceſt Wines, called antiently *Vina Maſſica*, and *Falerna*, frequently mentioned by the *Poets*. And as for Merchandiſe, to *Alexandria* they ſend Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wine, and to *Venice* Oil, *&c.*

The Noblemen, or Gentry hereof, live of all men the moſt careleſs and contented lives; and, like the Tyrant *Polycrates* in the elder ſtories, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckoned in this Realm in the time of *Ortelius*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marqueſſes, 90 Earls, and 800 Barons; and thoſe not only Titular, as in other places, but men of great power and revenue in their ſeveral Countries; inſomuch that the yearly income of the Prince of *Biſiguan* is ſaid to be an hundred thouſand Crowns, one year with the other; the Prince of *Salern* and Saint *Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to ſerve the King in his Wars, which gives them many privileges, and great command over the common Subject: whereby, as they were made the abler to aſſiſt the King upon any forein Invaſion; ſo are they in condition alſo of raiſing and countenancing ſuch defections as have been made from King to King, and from one Family to another, as ſorted beſt with their ambitious and particular intereſſes. For not alone the Nobles, but in general as many of the common people as can be ſpared from Huſbandry, are more addicted to the Wars than they are to Merchandiſe: the Nobles out of perſute of Honour, and the Paiſant out of deſire of being in action; ſo that the greateſt part of the Forces which ſerve the *Spaniard* in the *Low Countries* are ſent from hence. To which, the humour which they have from the higheſt to the loweſt, of going bravely in Apparel, ſerves exceeding fitly. An humour which is ſo predominant in both Sexes, that though the Paiſant lives all the reſt of the week in as great ſervility and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity; yet on the *Sundays* and *Saint-days* he will be ſure to have a good Suit to his back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his belly. And for the women, ſhe that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be ſo pranked up on the Sundays and other Feſtivals, or when ſhe is to ſhew her ſelf in ſome publick place, that one, who did not know the humour, might eaſily miſtake her for ſome noble Lady.

The principal Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Sybaris*, 2. Baſentus, 3. *Peſcara*, 4. *Trontus*, 5. *Aufidus*, 6. *Salinellus*, 7. *Vomanus*, 8. *Sarinus*, and 9. *Gariglian.* The moſt famous of which are *Aufidus* and *Gariglian.* The firſt as being the only River of *Italy*, which riſing South-ſide of the *Apennine*, forceth a breach through it to the upper Sea: but more for the great battel fought on the banks thereof, called the battel of *Canna*, of which more hereafter. The other no leſs famous for thoſe many battels, which have been fought near it between the *French* and the *Spaniard*, for the Kingdom of *Naples*: eſpecially that famous Battel between the Marqueſs of *Saluzzes*, General of the *French*, and *Gonſalvo*, Leader of the *Spaniards*; the loſs of which Victory by the *French* was the abſolute confirmation of the Realm of *Naples* to the *Spaniards*. More famous is this River for the death of *Peter de Medices*, who being baniſhed his Country at the coming of King *Charls* the eighth into *Italy*, and having divers times in vain attempted to be re-impatriate, followed the *French* Army hither, and after the loſs of the day took ſhip with others to fly to *Cajeta*; but over-charging the veſſel, ſhe ſunk and drowned them all. But moſt famous it is, in that *Marius*, that excellent, though unfortunate Captain, being by *Sylla*'s faction driven out of *Rome*, hid himſelf ſtark-naked in the dirt and weeds of this River; where he had not lain long, but *Sylla*'s Souldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the *Minturnians*, being not far off. Theſe men, to pleaſe *Sylla*, hired a *Cimber* to kill him, which the fellow attempting (ſuch is the virtue of Majeſty even in a miſerable fortune) run out again, crying, he could not kill *C. Marius.* This River was of old called *Liris*; and towards its influx into the Sea expatiated into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of *Minturni*, from a City of that name adjoining.

It is divided into the Provinces of, 1. *Terra di Lavoro*, 2. *Abruzzo*, 3. *Puglia* or *Apulia*, 4. *Terra de Otranto*, 5. *Calabria Superior*, 6. *Calabria Inferior*, and 7. the Iſles of *Naples.* Some of which have ſome ſmaller Territories adjoining to them, which we ſhall meet withal as they come in our way.

TERRA DI LAVORO is bounded on the North with *Abruzzo*, from which ſeparated by the *Apennine* Hills; on the Eaſt with the River *Silarus*, which parteth it from the lower *Calabria*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Sea; and on the Weſt with *Latium* or *Compagna di Roma*; from which divided by the River *Gariglian*, called in old times *Liris.* Called antiently *Campania Felix*, in regard of the wonderful fertility of it, and that it was the ſeat or dwelling of the *Campans*; by ſome modern *Latiniſts* named *Campania Antiqua*, to difference it from *Latium*, which they now call *Campagna di Roma*, or *Campania Nova.* And for the other name of *Terra di Lavoro*, or *Terra Laboratoris*, it was given to it, from the continual labour of the Husbandman in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof; but neither the reaſon, nor the name ſo new, as ſome men ſuppoſe. But I am ſure, as old as *Pliny*, who calleth theſe parts ſometime by the name of *Laboria*, ſometimes of *Campus Laborinus*, and gives this reaſon of the name, *quòd ingens in eo colendo ſit labor*, becauſe of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

The Country ſo exceeding fruitful in Wines and Wheat, that by *Florus* the Hiſtorian it is called

led *Cereris & Bacchi certamen*, and deſervedly too. For in this noble Region one may ſee large and beautiful fields, over-ſhaded with the rich Vines, thick and delightful Woods, ſweet Fountains, and moſt wholeſom Springs of running waters; uſeful as well for the reſtoring of mans health, as delight and pleaſure: and, in a word, whatſoever a covetous mind can poſſibly aim at, or a carnal covet.

Towns of note here were many in the elder times. The principal whereof, 1. *Cajeta*, ſeated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedneſs whereof it is thought by *Strabo* to have took the name; the word in the *Laconian* language ſignifying crooked. Others will have it ſo called from Καίω, *uro*, with reference to the burning of the Fleet of *Æneas* by the *Trojan* Ladies; for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been ſo extreamly toſſed in their former Voyages. But why that Fact, committed on the furtheſt coaſts of *Sicil*, ſhould be ſo ſolemnly commemorated here on the ſhoars of *Italy*, I can ſee no reaſon; and therefore we may far more probably derive it from *Cajeta*, the Nurſe of *Æneas*; in memory of whom, being buried here, or hereabouts, *Æneas* is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, *Æneid. lib.* 7.

Tu quoque Littoribus noſtris, Æneia *nutrix*,
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, *dediſti.*

That is to ſay,

Æneas Nurſe, *Cajeta*, by her death,
Did to theſe ſhoars an endleſs fame bequeath.

But on what ground ſoever it firſt had this name, it is aſſuredly a place of great ſtrength and conſequence; and of ſo ſpecial importance for the Eſtate of this Kingdom, that (as *Comineus* hath obſerved) if King *Charls* the eighth had but only fortified it, and the Caſtle of *Naples*, the Realm had never been loſt. 2. *Naples*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, a beautiful City, containing ſeven miles in compaſs. It was once called *Parthenope*, and falling to ruine, was new built, and called *Neapolis*. Among other things, here is an Hoſpital, the Revenues whereof is 60000 Crowns, wherewith, beſides other good deeds, they nouriſh in divers parts of the Kingdom 2000 poor Infants. In this City, the Diſeaſe called *Morbus Gallicus*, or *Neapolitanus*, was firſt known in Chriſtendom. This City is ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, and fortified with four ſtrong Caſtles, *viz.* 1. Caſtle *Capodua*, where the King's Palace was: 2. *Ermo:* 3. Caſtle *del Ovo*, or the Caſtle of the Egg; and 4. Caſtle *Novo*, or the new Caſtle. But Nature hath not done much leſs to her Fortifications, than the hand of Art; the Town being for the moſt part invironed by Sea, or Mountains not to be aſcended without great difficulty and diſadvantages. Which Mountains, as they ſerve on that ſide as a bank to the City, ſo do they furniſh the Citizens with moſt generous Wines; and being once aſcended, yield a gallant proſpect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the ſeat of the *Vice-roy*, and the continual reſort, if not conſtant reſidence, of moſt of the great men of the Realm; which makes the private Buildings to be very graceful, and the publick ſtately. And yet it had increaſed much more in Buildings, than it is at preſent, if the King had not forbidden it by ſpecial Edict. And this he did, partly at the perſuaſion of his Noblemen, who feared that if ſuch a reſtraint were not laid upon them, their Vaſſals would forſake the Country to inhabit here, ſo to enjoy the privileges and exemptions of the Regal City: but principally upon jealouſie and point of State, the better to prevent all Revolts and Mutinies, which in moſt populous Cities are of greateſt danger. 3. *Capua*, once the head of the *Campans*, ſeated in a delicious and luxurious Soil, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the ſeat of the Empire; the other two being *Carthage* and *Corinth*. Being diſtreſſed by the *Samnites*, they were fain to caſt themſelves into the Arms of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but ſuffered them to live according to their own Laws, as a Free Common-wealth; rather like a Confederate than a Subject State. Which Freedom they enjoyed till after their Revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when, being reduced to their obedience by force of Arms, they loſt all their Liberties, and hardly ſcaped its fatal and final ruine; drawing the whole Nation of the *Campans*, with divers leſſer States which depended on them, into bondage with it, *A.U.C.* 542, *Appius* and *Flaccus* being Conſuls. The pleaſures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after the great defeat given to *Terentius Varro* at the Battel of *Cannæ*; whence came the Saying, *Capuam eſſe* Cannas *Annibali*. 4 *Cuma*, a City once of great power and beauty, till *Campania* was ſubdued by the *Romans*; after which it decayed in both. Near hereunto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Sibyls*, called from hence *Cumæa*; and not far off the Lake called *Lacus Avernus*, the ſtink whereof is ſaid to have poiſoned Birds as they flew over it; ſuppoſed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally, from this place it was, that *Æneas* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernal Ghoſts to talk with his Father. 5. *Nola*, where *Marcellus* diſcomfited the Forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to underſtand, that he was not invincible. 6. *Puteoli*, a ſmall Town ſtanding on a Creek of the Sea, juſt oppoſite to *Baiæ*, on the other ſide of it; from which diſtant about three miles and an half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridg built betwixt them by *Caligula*, compoſed of ſundry veſſels joined together in ſuch ſort, that there was not only fair and large paſſage over it, but Victualling-houſes on both ſides of it: Over which Bridg, thus made, he marched and remarched in triumphal Robes, as if not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made ſubject to him. And this he did (as himſelf afterwards affirmed to ſome of his friends) to aw the Ocean; and imitate (if not exceed) the like Acts of *Xerxes* and

Campania.

Darius, mentioned in the antient Writers; as alſo to terrifie the *Britains* and the *Grecian* Nations, with the report of ſuch a notable exploit; or (as ſome thought) to fulfill the Propheſie of one *Thraſibulus* a Fortune-teller of thoſe times, who had been often heard to ſay in the liſe-time of *Tiberius* (his next immediate Predeceſſor) that it was as impoſſible for *Caius* to ſucceed in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on Horſeback from *Baul* to *Puteoli*. 7. Not farr hence, on a *Semicircular* Bay, ſtands the City of *Baia* (whereof *Baul* before mentioned is a part) ſo called, as they ſay, from *Baius* one of the companions of *Ulyſſes* in his Navigations. A City in the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire of five miles in length, and two in breadth; ſo wonderfully endued by Nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the world was thought comparable to it:

Nullus in Orbe locus Baiis *prælucet Amœnis.*

Few places in the World there are
With pleaſant *Baia* to compare. As it is in *Horace*.

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitudes of *Baths*, or *Bannias*, Imperial Palaces, ſtately Buildings, and the adjoining Mannor-houſes of the principal *Romans*, whom the pleaſures of the place invited hither; and was indeed too great and ſenſible a Monument of the laſciviouſneſs and luxury of that proſperous People, of which the *Ambubaia* mentioned in the *Satyriſt* is ſufficient proof; (though ſome fetch the *Etymologie* of the word farr enough from *Rome*, deriving it from *Ambub*, a *Syrian* word ſignifying a Pipe, from whence the *Latines* give this name to their Minſtrels) now ſo demoliſhed by Warr, and devoured by Water, that there is nothing of it to be ſeen, but ſome ſcattered ruines. 8. *Miſenus*, ſeated near a great Hill or *Promontory* of the ſame name, at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious harbour; where *Auguſtus* keeping one Navie, and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole *Roman Empire*. But theſe were places of renown in the former times, all which, excepting *Naples*, are now onely known by what they have been, not by what they are. The principal Cities at this times, are (next to *Naples* it ſelf) *Seſſa*, the *Sinueſſa*, or *Suiſſa* of the Antients, and now the Title of a Dukedom to the Houſe of *Cordova* in *Spain*, derived from *Gonſalvo* the great Captain, of whom more hereafter. 2. *Averſa*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence, ſecond to few in all the Kingdom; but forced to yield (though the Earl of *Monpenſier*, then Vice-roy of the Realm for *Charls* the Eighth were in perſon in it) to the good fortune of *Gonſalvo*, ſpoken of before: the whole Kingdom following after. 3. *Ceano*, 4. *Salvi*, 5. *Venafre*, and 6. *Caſerte*, with others, to the number of twenty two, beſides 166 Caſtles, or defenſible places. Here is alſo in this Tract, the Hill called *Gallicanum*, where *Annibal*, that great Maſter in the Art of Warr, frighted that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the ſtratagem of two thouſand Oxen, carrying fire in their horns; by which device he freed himſelf out of thoſe difficult *Straights* in which he was at the preſent. And in this Countrey there is alſo the Hill *Veſuvius*, that caſteth out flames of fire, the ſmoak of which ſtifled *Pliny ſenior*, coveting to ſearch the cauſe of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly alſo during the reign of *Titus*, caſting out not onely ſuch ſtore of ſmoak, that the very Sun ſeemed to be in the *Eclipſe*, but alſo huge ſtones; and of aſhes ſuch plenty, that *Rome*, *Africk*, and *Syria*, were even covered; and *Herculanum*, and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italy*, were overwhelmed with them There were heard diſmal noiſes all about the Province, and *Giants* of incredible bigneſs ſeen to ſtalk up and down, about the top and edges of the Mountain; which extraordinary accident, either was a cauſe, or preſage, of the future Peſtilence, which raged in *Rome* and *Italy* long after.

On the Eaſtſide of this *Campania*, and properly (as antiently it was eſteemed) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonſo* King of *Naples* cauſed to be called the *Principate**; bounded upon the Eaſt, with *Calabria inferior*, or that part thereof, which is called the *Baſilicate*; from which, parted by the River *Silarus*. It extends in length 33 miles, and 16 in breadth: and was of old the ſeat of the *Picentini*, a Colony of the *Piceni*, dwelling on the *Adriatick*. Principal places of it, 1 *Maſſa*, by the *Italians* called *Marſo*, of more note for the Hills adjoining, than any great beauty or antiquity it hath in it ſelf. Thoſe Hills now called *Monte Marſo*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Montes Maſſici*; of ſpecial eſtimation for the rich *Wines*, called *Vina Miſſica*. 2 *Nuceria*, 9 miles from the Sea, in a very plentiful and delicious ſoil. 3 *Rivelli*, a City not long ſince built, which for the elegancy of the Buildings hardly yields to *Naples*. 4 *Malſi*, or *Amalphi*, an *Archbiſhop*'s See, in which it is ſuppoſed that the Mariners Compaſs was firſt found out. It is ſituate on the Sea ſide, and giveth name unto the Coaſt of *Amalfe*, fenced with Hills or Mountains of ſo great an height, that to look down into the Valleys, or the Sea adjoining, makes them ſick and giddy. A Town of great note (were there nothing elſe to commend it to our obſervation) for the finding out of the *Mariners Compaſs* (as before is ſaid) deviſed and contrived here about the year 1300, by one *John Flavio*, a native, or inhabitant of it. 5 *Salern* about a mile from the Sea, the Title of the Prince of *Salern*, and an *Univerſity*, but chiefly for the Study of Phyſick, the *Doctors* of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerni*, dedicated to a King of *England*: not to King *Henry* the Eighth, as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it written by *Arnoldus Villanovanus* (who lived about the year, 1313) muſt needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated either to King *Richard* the Firſt, or King *Edward* the Firſt, who in their journeys towards the *Holy Land*, might beſtow a viſit on this place, and give ſome honourary encouragement to the Students of it. Beſides theſe, there are ſaid to be in this ſmall Territory, fifteen other good Towns, and two hundred and fifteen Caſtles, or walled places; but theſe the principal.

II. North of *Campania*, lieth the Province now called *Abruzzo*, bounded on the Eaſt with

Puglia,

Abruzzo. *Puglia*, or *Apulia*; on the Weſt, with *Marca Anconitana*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea, and on the South, with the *Apennine*. It is called *Aprutium* by the *Latins*, but the Reaſon of the name not agreed upon; divided antiently between the *Picentes* and the *Samnites*: the *Picentes* taking up thoſe parts which lay next the *Adriatick*; the reſt (being far the greater part) was poſſeſſed by the *Samnites*. Theſe laſt (for of the others we ſhall ſpeak elſewhere) a people which held longer wars with the ſtate of *Rome*, than almoſt all *Italy* beſides; as keeping them in continual action for the ſpace of 70 years together, beſides many after-claps. In which long courſe of Wars, the *Romans* were ſo hardly put to their ſhifts, that they were four times fain to have recourſe to the laſt refuge; which was the chooſing of *Dictators*; and yet came off ſo often with ſucceſs and victory, that it afforded them the honour of thirty Triumphs. But theſe *Samnites*, as they were a potent, ſo they were alſo a compound Nation; conſiſting of the *Ferentani*, *Caraceni*, *Peligni*, *Præcatini*, *Veſtini*, *Hirpini*, and *Samnites* properly ſo called; into which name the reſt of the inferiour Tribes were after ſwallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Samnium*, whence they had their name; which in the concluſion of the War was ſo defaced by *Papyrius* the *Roman* Conſul, *ut hodie* Samnium *in ipſo* Samnio *requiratur*; that not improperly (ſaith *Florus*) a man might ask where *Samnium* ſtood, even in the middle of the City. Which hapned *A.V.C.* 481.

The River of *Peſcara* runneth through the middle of it, and divideth it into two parts, whereof the one conteineth 5 Cities, and 150 Caſtles, or walled places; the other, 184 Caſtles, and 4 Cities. The principal Cities of the whole, 1 *Arpinum*, once the chief Town of the *Arpinates*, and the Country of *M. Tullius Cicero*, that famous Orator, now a poor Village called *Arpino*. 2 *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we find in *Pliny*, becauſe the Winds hereabouts were ſo fierce and violent, that men could not ſit upon their horſes; but had at laſt that name of *Beneventum*, from the pleaſant Plains and ſpacious Valleys which lye round about it; in like manner as the Countrey of the old *Allobroges*, exchanged the name of *Malvoy*, into that of *Salvoy*. It was one of the four Dukedoms which the *Lombards* erected, when they firſt came into *Italy*, for the better aſſuring of their Conqueſt: and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo* the ninth of the Church of *Bamberg*, where the ſaid Emperor was born; and is ſtill under the command of the Popes of *Rome*. 3 *Aquila*, built by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Naples*, to aſſure the Realm upon that quarter. 4 *Lanciano*, four miles from the *Adriatick*, a Town of great Trade, and much reſorted to by Merchants at her Annual Marts. 5 *Ortona*, the Port-town unto *Lanciano*. 6 *Teranum*, or *Teran* (*Ptolemy* calls it *Inter-Amna*) antiently the *Metropolis* of the *Precatini*. 7 *Citta di Chieti*, ſituate on a Hill ſome ſeven miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. 8 *Aquino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas* the great School-man, who firſt brought the ſcattered limbs of Popery into a Body. Here ſtood alſo 9 The old Town *Corfinium*, the chief City of the *Peligni*, made good a while by *Domitius Ænobarbus* againſt *Julius Cæſar*, in his firſt following after *Pompey*, then retired from *Rome*. And ſeven miles hence, 10 *Sulmo*, honoured with the birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himſelf teſtifieth,

> Sulmo *mihi Patria eſt, gelidis uberrimus undis,*
> *Millia qui novies diſtat ab* Urbe *decem.*
>
> Full of cool ſtreams *Sulmo*, my native land,
> From the great City ninety miles doth ſtand.

There belongeth alſo to *Abruzzo* the Countrey of *Moliſi*, in which are 104 walled places or Caſtles, and four conſiderable Towns; the principal of which is *Bovianum*, or *Boiano*, now a Biſhops See, in former times a Colony of the *Romans*, by *Pliny* called *Bovianum Undecumanorum*, to difference it from another in this Tract of the ſame name, which he calls *Bovianum vetus*. 2 *Luparetha*, of which little memorable. In this Countrey alſo (I mean *Abruzzo*) are the ſtraights called *Furcæ Caudinæ*, in which when the *Samnites* and their confederates had ſo incloſed the *Romans*, that there was no poſſibility to eſcape, they ſent to *Herennius*, a man for his Age much honoured, and for his Wiſdom much followed by them, to know what they ſhould do with the captive Enemy. Word was returned, that they ſhould ſend them home ſafe, and without diſhonour. Thinking the old man had not been well informed of the ſtate of the buſineſs, they ſent to him again, and he adviſed, that they ſhould put them all to the ſword. Theſe contrary Anſwers made them judg amiſs of the old mans brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they ſpoyled the *Romans*, and diſarmed them, and deſpightfully uſed them, and ſo ſent them home. Which when *Herennius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of ſo raſh an action; but much more the deſtruction of his Countrey, as a conſequent of it: Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a ſafe and honourable deliverance from the preſent danger, they had made them their friends for many Ages; or had they put unto the ſword ſo many of their Souldiers and chief Commanders, they had diſabled them for long time from perſuing the War: The middle which they had taken, would be their undoing: and ſo accordingly it proved. For the Romans not being made their Friends by ſo idious a benefit, but hatching revenge for the diſgrace, ſoon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papyrius* ſubdued the Countrey, and handled the poor conquered people with the like deſpight. An excellent Precedent unto Princes and thoſe in power, how to proceed towards men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under; which muſt be, *either not to ſtrike at all, or to ſtrike home and to the purpoſe*. *Nic. Michiavil* in his *Florentine* Hiſtory taxeth *Rinaldo* of *Albizi* for committing a great *Solœciſm* in point of State, in that hating *Coſmo*

Apulia

de Medices, and deſiring to remove him from the publick managery of affairs, he thought it was ſufficient to procure his baniſhment; which *Coſmo*, afterwards returning, paid in better coin. Whereupon he inferreth this notable *Aphoriſm*, that *Great perſons muſt not at all be touched, or if they be, muſt be made ſure from taking revenge.* Yet do I not interdict a Prince or any ſupreme Governours the uſe of *Mercy*; I know it is the richeſt Jewel which adorns the Crown, nor dare I take upon me to direct the uſe of that excellent vertue; onely I ſhall obſerve what uſage hath been commonly afforded towards ſuch perſons after their *Delinquencies*, whoſe liberty or life may create danger to the publick. The firſt is preſent execution; for *Mortui non mordent*, as the ſaying is, a courſe more to be allowed of where it cannot, than commended where it may be ſpared. The ſecond is either cloſe impriſonment under truſty Guards, or elſe confinement to the houſe and cuſtody of ſome truſty States-man, in which great caution alſo is to be obſerved; for beſides, that nothing is more ordinary than the eſcape of great Priſoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their Keepers: we find in our own Hiſtories how Dr. *Moton* Biſhop of *Ely* being committed to the Duke of *Buckingham* by King *Richard* the 3. not onely procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary faction. The laſt, which is in all times the gentleſt, and in ſome caſes the ſafeſt, is not onely an abſolute pardon of life, and a grant of liberty, but an endearing of the party *delinquent*, by giving him ſome place of honour, or committing unto his fidelity ſome office of truſt; it being the nature of moſt men, that where they are not truſted, they are never true, and that as long as they lie under ſuſpect and jealouſies, they will be apt to entertain ſome thoughts of their loſt condition. And of this kind of dealing with a perſon *delinquent* we have a pregnant inſtance in the Emperour *Otho*, who not onely pardoned *Marius Celſus*, one of *Galba*'s faction, and a chief one too, but put him in place neareſt to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders in the following War againſt *Vitellius*; his reaſon was, *Ne hoſtis metum reconciliationis adhiberet*, leſt lying aloof as a pardoned enemy, he might conceive the breach were but badly made up. And on the other ſide, *Marius Celſus* proved ſo ſenſible of the obligation, that he continued faithful to him to the very laſt, and loſt his life in the purſuance of his quarrel; ſhewing thereby, that perſons of a generous and noble diſpoſition are more obliged by favours, than reſtrained by terrour. But it is now time I ſhould free my ſelf of theſe *Furcæ Caudinæ*, and ſport my ſelf a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

But I muſt note before I take my leave hereof, that theſe two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo* make up the greateſt, richeſt, and beſt peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*; and therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority both of claim and power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to theſe two for wealth and greatneſs, and were aſſigned over to the *Spaniard*, as lying moſt conveniently for the Realm of *Sicilie*.

III. ***PUGLIA*** is bounded on the Weſt with *Abruzzo*, on the Eaſt with *Terra di Otranto*; on the North with the *Adriatick* Sea, on the South with *Calabria*; it contains the whole Country called of old *Apulia*, from whence the ***Puglia*** of the *Italians*, and the ***Pouille*** of the ***French*** are to be derived.

The whole Country containeth in it, beſides Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Caſtles and walled places, with 13 Cities of good note, the moſt conſiderable of which we ſhall meet withall in our ***Chorographie*** of the ſeveral parts, divided anciently by *Ptolemie*, and ſince him by *Leander*, into ***Apulia Daunia*** and ***Apulia Peucetia***; the former ſubdivided into the ***Capitanute*** and ***Pouille the Plain***, the later into ***Bari*** and the Land of *Otranto*; for that the Land of *Otranto* (though now a Province of it ſelf) did ſometimes paſs in the account of ***Apulia*** ſeems to me moſt probable, in that all the Eaſt parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors (after the coming in of the *Lombards*) by no other names then thoſe of ***Apulia*** and ***Calabria***, and by no other names then thoſe were aſſigned over unto ***Otho*** the 2. of *Germany*, on his marriage with ***Theophania***, Neece to one of thoſe Emperours; and I conceive that it was then laid unto ***Apulia*** rather then to ***Calabria***, firſt, in regard that the old inhabitants were the ſame in both, the *Iapyges*, ***Meſſapians***, and ***Salentini***, poſſeſſing promiſcuouſly all this Tract from Mount *Garganus* in ***Daunia***, to the Promontary called ***Iapygium*** in the moſt Eaſtern angle of the Land of ***Otranto***. And ſecondly, in regard that the people of both have a diſeaſe peculiar onely to themſelves, occaſioned by the biting of a little Serpent called a *Tarantula*, not curable but by Muſick onely. This ſaid, we will proceed in our ſurvey of the parts, and firſt,

APULIA DAUNIA is that part hereof which lieth next to ***Abruzzo***, from which parted by the River *Phiternus*, (now called ***Fortore***) and ſo extending Eaſtwards to the River *Aufidus*, (***Lofanto*** the *Italians* call it) where it meets with ***Peucetia***: the reaſon of the name is not yet agreed on, but I find no more probable conjecture of it than that it ſhould be called thus of ***Daunus*** the ſon of *Danae* by *Pilumnus*, once the King of this Country, it being reported in the Legends of thoſe elder times, that *Danae* being delivered of *Perſeus* whom ſhe had by *Jupiter*, was by his father the King ***Acriſius*** expoſed to the mercy of the Seas, by which ſhe was waſted with her young ſon to the coaſts of this Province, here taken up by a poor fiſher and by him carried to the Court, where the King became ſo enamoured of her, that he took her to wife, and by her was father to this ***Daunus***. But ***Daunus*** had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his father, when either by force or compoſition he was fain to leave it to ***Diomedes*** King of ***Ætolia***; who at the end of the *Trojan* War, wherein he was a principal actor, hearing of the libidinous courſes of his wife ***Ægiale***, abhorred the thought of living with her, and ſo came with his people to this Country, where he fix'd his dwelling, and built the City of *Argyripa*, whereof more anon. But as for ***Daunus***, though he was not able to keep the poſſeſſion of this Country, yet he bequeathed his name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into ***Latium*** with ſuch of his ſubjects as were willing to follow his adventures, he became there the chief or head of the ***Rutuli***, *Apulia.*

tuli, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief ſeat at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italy*, betwixt whom and *Turnus* the ſon of this *Daunus* grew that deadly fewd, ſo celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

In this part hereof is the Lake of *Leſſina*, ſo called from a City of that name adjoyning to it, made of the waters of *Phiternus* and ſome other Rivers which there loſe themſelves, in compaſs 40 miles, and well ſtored with fiſh, the Eels hereof the largeſt that have been ſeen. Another Lake called *Arduarius*, more memorable though not ſo great, it being ſaid hereof by *Pliny*, that the waters of it are neither diminiſhed by drawing, nor increaſed by Land-flouds. Here is alſo the Mount *Gurganus*, known by that name in *Virgil*, but now called S. *Angelo*, high, ſteep, and full of cragged rocks, 20 miles in compaſs, but that extent diverſified into hills and moſt pleaſant vallies, well wooded, and well ſtored with waters, here being one Lake (beſides many others) called *Lacus Varanus*, ſaid to be 30 miles in circuit; a place defenſible by nature, and ſo ſtrong by art, that it is commonly the laſt piece in the Realm of *Naples* which is given up to the Invader, as appears plainly by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens* for many years, after the *Normans* had poſſeſſed themſelves of the reſt of the Kingdom.

The whole divided by *Alfonſo* (in his new modelling of this Kingdom) into two parts, the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing called *Pouille* the *Plain*, from the condition of the ſoil which is plain and level, not ſo much ſwell'd with hills as the reſt of *Apulia*, for which cauſe called *Puglia Piana* by the modern *Italian*. Interjected betwixt which and *Abruzza* lieth a ſmall Territory, by the ſaid King *Alfonſo* called the *CAPITANATE*, deſtitute both of Woods and Rivers, and conſequently not ſo populous as the reſt of this Province, well furniſhed notwithſtanding with all ſorts of grain, and ſtored with large and ſpacious Paſtures, which breed ſuch infinite herds of Cattel, that the Tribute thence ariſing was valued at 80000 Crowns *per annum* in the time of *Guicciardine*, and by him reckoned one of the beſt Revenues of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which Tribute, when the *French* could receive no part, by reaſon that on the diviſion which they made with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* (ſpoken of before) this Territory, as a part of *Apulia*, did belong to the *Spaniards*, they brake out into open war, pretending that the Country appertained to them, (as indeed it lay very near their part) and thereby gave a juſt occaſion to the *Spaniards*, a more diligent Nation, and more intent upon their work, to worm them by degrees out of all the Kingdom.

Chief places of the whole *Daunia*, 1 *Luceria*, the *Nuceria* of *Ptolimie*, and the *Rudra* of *Suetonius*; as rich as it is ancient, and honoured with an Epiſcopal See. 2 *Aſcoli*, of old called *Aſculum*, and ſometimes *Aſculum Satrianum*, to difference it from another of that name in *Anconitana*; the Style and Honour of a Duke. 3 *Troia*, a Dukes Title alſo, built by the Eaſtern Emperors in a place of ſtrength and great advantage to reſtrain the inſolencies of the *Sarazens*, then infeſting this Country. Theſe three in that part of it which is call'd the *Capitanate*. Then in the other part call'd *Pouille* the *Plain*. 4 *Sipontum*, once a *Roman* Colony and an Archbiſhops See, which honour it enjoyed till deſtroyed by the *Sarazens*. 5 *Maufredonia*, founded near the place of the former by *Maufred* the Baſtard, King of *Naples*, the better to aſſure theſe parts of his Kingdom. A ſtately and magnificent City, the ſeat of the Archbiſhop of *Siponto*, beautified with a capacious Harbour for receipt of Ships, and an impregnable Caſtle for defence thereof. 6 *Salpe*, of great antiquity, but not elſe obſervable. 7 S. *Severine*, of a newer date, but more rich and populous. 8 As antient and as famous as the beſt amongſt them the poor Village of *Canna*, ſituate near the mouth or influx of the River *Aufidus*; *ignobilis* Apuliæ *vicus*, as it is in *Florus*, but ſuch as afterwards grew more notable for the great defeat which *Annibal* there gave to *Paulus Æmilius* and *Terrentius Varro* the *Roman Conſuls*, of whoſe Army he ſlew 42700 on the very place; which Victory had he husbanded as he might have done, he had utterly ſubverted the State of *Rome*: ſo that it was moſt tartly (as moſt truly) ſaid by *Maharbal* General of his Horſe, *Vincere ſcis* Annibal, *victoriâ uti neſcis*; that he knew better how to get than to uſe his victory. 9 But of moſt note in this part of *Apulia* was the Town of *Argyripa*, or *Argyrippa* as ſome call it, founded by *Diomedes* in the skirts of Mount S. *Angelo* towards the Sea, and in that part of this Country which then (or afterwards) was held by the *Iapyges*. Of which thus *Virgil* in the 11 of the *Aneids*:

> *Ille urbem* Argyripam, *patria de nomine Gentis*
> *Victor* Gargani *condebat* Iapygis *arvis*.
>
> And being Victor he a City builds
> Near *Garganus* in the *Iapygian* fields,
> And call'd it *Agyrippa*, by the name
> Of ſome known place in th' land from which he came.

By which we alſo may conclude, that it took this name with reference to ſome Town of *Etolia*, which was the native Country of *Diomedes*; For although I know that many of the antient Writers ſuppoſe it to have been firſt called *Argos Hippium*, with relation to a famous City of that name in *Peloponneſus*, and after by contraction or corruption to be named *Argyrippam*, yet theſe words of *Patria de nomine gentis* do perſuade me otherwiſe, *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Country of *Argolis* where that City ſtood, nor in the whole Demy-Iſland of *Peloponneſus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called alſo *Diomedia*, and *urbs Diomedis*, becauſe of his foundation, and his Royal ſeat, after his fixing in this Country; but at the laſt it came to be called *Arpy*, and by that name was known in the time of the *Roman* greatneſs. Now no where to be found but in the ruines of time, and the Records of Antiquity, unleſs it be in a poor Village, called *Sarpy*, whence *Niger* findeth it.

Terra di Otranto.

APVLIA PEVCETIA, extendeth from the Banks of the River *Aufidus* on the Weſt, to the Land of *Otranto* on the Eaſt. So called as ſome conceive, from *Peucetius*, the Brother of *Oenotrus*; which may be probable enough, this being the firſt Countrey at which *Oenotrus* touched, when he came into *Italy* with his people. *Bochartus*, a great enemy to all Traditions, will have it called, *Peucetia*, ἀπὸ τῶν πευκῶν, for that great quantity of Pitch which theſe Countreys yield, as the word ſignifieth in the Greek. But whatſoever was the reaſon of the antient name, that of the preſent is well known, and agreed upon from *Bari* the chief City hereof, being now called *Barry*.

places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Barry*, ſeated near the Sea, but without an Haven, but ſeated in ſo rich a ſoyl, and ſo well inhabited, that it is a fair and wealthy City, and the chief of this part of *Apulia*, taking name from hence. 2 *Barlette*, by the Modern *Latiniſts* called *Barulum*, ſituate in or near the place of the old *Cannſium*; an Haven Town, and of great importance, reckoned for one of the four ſtrong holds of *Italy*, in theſe later Ages; the other three being *Crema* in *Lombardy*, *Prato* in *Tuſcany*, and *Fabrianum*, now called *Fabiano* in *Ancenitana*. 3 *Monopolis*, a Port-town alſo, not very large, but of a neat elegant building; new built, and the Title of a Marqueſs. 4 *Tranum*, an antient City, and an Archbiſhop's See, but at this time better built than peopled, by reaſon of ſome defects in the Harbour upon which it ſtandeth. Theſe three laſt, together with *Maufredonia* in the other *Apulia*, pawned by the King of *Naples* (when firſt invaded by the *French*) to the State of *Venice*: but recovered from them not long after by *Ferdinand* the Catholick, when poſſeſſed of that Kingdom. 5 *Bitonto*, an Archbiſhop's See alſo, one of which was a notable ſtickler in the Council of *Trent*. 6 *Polignano*, on a rocky hill, the Honourary Title of a Marqueſs, and a See Epiſcopal. 7 *Molfette*, which gives Title to a Prince, but not elſe conſiderable. 8 *Vigilia*, now called *Biſigli*, a Biſhop's See, ſituate near the *Adriatick* among craggy rocks. 9 *Venoſa*, a ſtrong piece, and of great importance; one of the laſt Towns which held good for the *French*, in the recovery of this Kingdom from *Charls* the 8. The *Vennſium* of the antient *Romans*, and the Birth-place of *Horace*, hence called *Vennſinus*. Nothing conſiderable of theſe people in point of Story, but that confederating with *Tarentum* againſt the *Romans*, as the *Calabrians*, *Brutii*, and *Lucani* did; they were all forced to ſubmit to the power of *Rome* at the end of that Warr. *A.V.C.* 481. *Papyrius Curſor*, and *Sp. Carvilius* being the ſecond time Conſuls.

IV. *TERRA DI OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eaſtern part of *Apulia Daunia*, unto which it joineth, from which parted onely by a line drawn from *Brunduſium* to *Tarentum*, of which more anon. Thus called from *Otranto*, the chief Town hereof, the ſeat and habitation in the elder times of the *Salentini*, the *Iapiges*, and the *Meſapiani*, and is accordingly entituled in antient Authors by the ſeveral names of *Iapygia*, *Meſapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the laſt people of *Italy* which held out againſt *Rome*, and ſunk immediatly after the *Tarentini*, upon whoſe Fate they did depend, *Anno V.C* 487. *Iunius Pera*, and *Fabius Pictor* the two Conſuls then triumphing for it. Of theſe three Nations, the *Iapyges* were of greateſt Fame, or of greateſt Infamy. *Cretans* originally ſent in queſt of *Glaueus* the Son of *Minos*, whom, when they could not find, and durſt not return without him, they fixed here their dwelling, *Iapyx* the Son of *Dedalus*, being their Captain, and Conductor, and from him denominated. Growing into eſtate and power, they became not onely ſo luxurious in their courſe of life, and effeminate in their dreſs and habit, that they were a ſcorn and ſcandal to the neighbour Nations; but ſo regardleſs of their gods, that in the end, they threw down all their Images, and deſtroyed their Temples: puniſhed at laſt for theſe high inſolencies by balls of fire falling on them from the heavens, with which the whole Stock of them were almoſt extirpated. The Promontory, called *Iapygium*, being the extreme point of this Countrey, towards *Greece*, now better known by the name of the *Cape* of S. *Mary*, did take name from this people; and from thence the North-weſt wind (or the Weſt-north-weſt) which the *Latines* generally call *Caurus*, frequently blowing from this coaſt, had the name of *Iapyx*; occurring by that name in the 8 of *Encids*, and in *Horace*, Carm l. 1. ode. 4.

But to proceed, this Countrey is invironed on all parts, with the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas, ſaving where it joyneth to *Apulia* by an *Iſthmus* of about 30 miles in breadth; reaching from *Brunduſium* in the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, to *Tarentum* on the Gulf or Bay, thence named, in the *Ionian* Sea. And is from land to land, as you go by Water, about 200 miles in compaſs. The ſoyl hereof is very fruitfull if well manured, abounding in Corn, Oyl, Melons, Citrons, Saffron, and other commodities of good price; for which they never want the company of the Merchants of *Genoa*. They are many times much endangered by *Graſhoppers*, which commonly devour all whereſoever they come, and would in one night, conſume whole fieds of ſtanding Corn, if divine Providence, by ſending the Birds, called *Gaines* amongſt them, did not provide a remedy for ſo great a miſchief. The greateſt defect hereof is the want of waters, and therefore probably enough may be the *Sitieuloſa Apulia*, ſpoken of by *Horace*; which notwithſtanding, they have very rich Paſtures. The people are conceived to be the ſimpleſt or moſt void of craft, of any in *Italy*: perhaps, becauſe they have ſo little commerce with their own Countrey-men, and ſo much with ſtrangers.

The chief Towns are, 1 *Lecci*, *Aletium* in Latine, a rich Town, well built, and very well peopled. 2 *Caſtro*, a Sea Town, but not well fenced by Art or Nature, which made it very often a prey to the *Turks*. 3 *Gallipolis*, a Town, but on ſo craggy a rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4 *Brunduſium*, the head Town of the *Salentini*, once glorying in the moſt capacious Haven of all the World; from whence there was continul paſſage into *Dalmatia*, *Epirus*, *Macedon*, and the reſt of *Greece*. Here was it that *Pompey* took ſhip to flie from *Cæſar*, and *Cæſar* took ſhipping alſo to perſue after him: when to encourage the Pilot who was afraid of the ſtorm, he cryed out, *Cæſarem vehis &*

fortunam ejus. It was firſt built by the *Ætolians*, under the conduct of one *Diomedes*, and called *Bronteſion*, which in the *Meſſapian* Tongue ſignifieth the horn or head of a Stag, which it much reſembleth: from whence the *Latines* gave it the name of *Bronduſium*. At this day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being ſo choked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very antient Town, and yet ſtill reaſonably well peopled, having a ſtrong Caſtle upon a Rock for its defence, and a capacious Port for Traffick; the principal, at the preſent, of all the Province, which is therefore called *Terra Hydruntina*, by our modern *Latiniſts*. It is now called *Otranto*, and is a place of ſuch importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the Great, *An.* 1481. put all *Italy* into ſuch a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandoned. Not well inhabited again till the expulſion of the *Turks* in the year next following.

Paſs we on next to the two *Calabria's*, ſo called from the *Calabri* an antient people of this Tract, inhabiting that part hereof which formerly had been called *Magna Grecia*, now *Calabria Superior*, with part of the Countrey of the *Salentini*, lying on the Northern ſide of the Gulf of *Tarento*, now called by the name of *Otranto*. But the *Greek* Emperours being poſſeſſed of theſe parts of *Italy*, when the more Weſtern parts thereof were under the *Gothes* and *Lombards*, extended the name of *Calabria*, as far as to the Strait of *Meſſana*, taking the County of the *Brutii*, now *Calabria Inferior*, into the accompt: and making but two Provinces of their whole Eſtate which was left in this Continent by the names of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which *Apulia* conteined all the Countrey on the coaſt of the *Adriatick*, from *Abruzzo* to the extreme point or Promontory in the land of *Otranto*, called antiently *Iapygium*, now the Cape of St. *Mary*; *Calabria*, all the reſt of theſe parts of *Italy*, which ly between the *Tuſcane* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Bay of *Tarentum*. So that the antient *Calabria*, was but part of this; and of that *Ennius* the old Poet was a Native, as is affirmed by *Ovid* in his 3 *de Arte.*

Ennius emeruit Calabris in montibus hortos.

Old *Ennius* his Garden tills
Among the ſteep *Calabrian* Hills.

Now called the *Baſilicate*, and reckoned as a member of the lower *Calabria*.

But leaving theſe matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Countrey as it ſtandeth at the preſent; divided of late times into *Inferior* and *Superior*, in which diſtinct capacities we ſhall look upon it. Premiſing only by the way, that this Countrey is the title of the eldeſt Son of the Kings of *Naples*; who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that before it was ſubjected to theſe Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holofernes*, whoſe daughter *Flora* was married unto *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, being King hereof, *An.* 1098.

IV. *CALABRIA SVPERIOR*, called formerly *Magna Grecia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Grecians*, hath on the Eaſt the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea; on the Weſt *Lucania*, from which it is divided by the *Apennine* and the River *Crathis*; on the North, *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarento*; and on the South and South-Eaſt, *Calabria Inferior*, and *Golfo di Squillaci*, of old called *Sinus Scilleticus*. The principal Cities at this time are, 1. *Belcaſtro*, eight miles from the Sea, where once ſtood *Petilia*. 2. *Beſignan*, the title of a Prince, fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, and endowed with the beſt Revenues of any principality or other Noble-man of Title in all the Kingdom. 3. *Macera*, an Arch-biſhops See, a rich Town, and well peopled. 4. *Roſanum*, three miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and ſituate in a very fruitful and pleaſant Soil. 5. *Altavilla*; which gives title alſo to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*, given with the title of Duke to *Gonſalvo Fernandes de Cordova*, commonly called *the great Captain*, as a reward of his ſignal ſervice in the conqueſt of the Realm of *Naples*: and ſtill enjoyed (together with the title of Duke of *Seſſa*) by the houſe of *Cordova*.

As for the chief Cities of the Greeks in the former times, they were *Locris* founded by the *Locrians*, a people of *Achaia*. Here lived the Law-maker *Zalencus*, who ordering Adultery to be puniſhed with the loſs of both eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Son, as the firſt offender. Therefore to ſhew the love of a Father, and the ſincerity of a Judg, he put out one of his Sons eyes, and one of his own. He alſo provided in his Laws that no woman ſhould be attended in the ſtreet with more than one Maid, but when ſhe was drunk; that ſhe ſhould not go abroad at night, but when ſhe went to play the Harlot; that ſhe ſhould not wear gold or embroidered apparel, but when ſhe meant to ſet her ſelf to open ſale; and that men ſhould not wear Rings and Tiſſues, but when they went about the proſtituting of ſome woman; and many others of this mould. By means whereof both men and women were reſtrained from all extraordinary trains of Attendants, and exceſs of Apparel; the common conſequents of a long and proſperous tranquillity. It was alſo famous in old times for the victory which *Eunomus* an excellent *Muſician* obtained againſt *Ariſtonus* of *Rhegium*, another of the ſame profeſſion. For though *Ariſtonus* had made his prayers unto *Apollo* the God of *Muſick* for his good ſucceſs; yet *Eunomus* plainly told him, that Nature was againſt him in that contention, which had made all the Graſhoppers mute on that ſide of the water. And ſo accordingly it hapned. For when the day appointed came, *Eunomus* had the ill hap to break one of his Harp-ſtrings, even in the middle of his Muſick; when preſently a *Graſhopper* leaped upon his Harp, and ſupplyed moſt melodiouſly the place of the broken ſtring; and by that means obtained the victory to *Eunomus*. An accident not unworthy of the Muſe of *Strada*, in his perſonating of the Poet *Claudian*. And though I bind not any man to believe this Tale (though of *Strabo*'s telling) yet there are very good Authors for thus much thereof, that on the one ſide of the River *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from **Rhegium**, the Graſhoppers do merrily ſing; but on the other ſide, which is that towards *Rhegium*, they are always ſilent. 2 *Tarentum*, a Town of no leſs note, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*, firſt built by the *Spartans*, the people whereof having a great command on the Country adjoining, were one of the laſt *Italian* Nations taken in by the *Romans*: *Nam quis poſt* Tarentinos *auderet*? For who durſt ſtir when once the *Tarentines* were vanquiſhed? ſaith the Hiſtorian. For in the ruine of this Eſtate, the *Apulians*, *Lucani*, *Brutii*, and the neighbouring *Calabrians* being all confederate together in defence thereof, were brought under the command and power of **Rome**, *A.V.C.* 578. all which (from the beginning of the *Tarentine* war ſome nine years before) were either a free people, or in a kind of ſubjection to this mighty City, but never felt the force of the *Roman* puiſſance; ſo that the war began but *A.V.C.* 472. and ended in the total ſubjection of theſe ſeveral Nations, *anno* 481. *Papyrius Curſor* and *Sp. Carvilius* being then the ſecond time Conſuls, as before was ſaid. In defence of this people did *Pyrrhus* war againſt the *Romans*; the hopes of getting this place by *Annibal* was the loſs of *Capua*; and finally here lived *Archytas* ſo famous for his flying Dove. 3 *Crotona*, the inhabitants whereof were once ſo active, that at one *Olympick* meeting the *Victors* were all of this one Town. Their glory much decayed in a battel againſt the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thouſand of them and their confederates were vanquiſhed by fifteen thouſand of the enemy. 4 *Amycle*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoreans*, who having been often terrified with a falſe report of the approach of their enemies, publiſhing a Law prohibiting all ſuch reports; by which means their enemies coming unawares poſſeſſed themſelves of it: hence grew the Proverb, *Amyclos ſilentium perdidit*; and hence that notable ſaying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be ſilent, returned this anſwer, *Mihi neceſſe eſt loqui, ſcio enim* Amyclos *ſilentio periiſſe*. 5 *Sybaris*, a City built by the *Grecians* after the deſtruction of *Troy*; the people whereof were Lords of 25 good Towns, and could arm 30000 men. A people ſo effeminate, that they permitted no Smith nor Brazier, no not ſo much as a Cock to live amongſt them, becauſe they would not have their ſleeps diſturbed; but the Fidlers and Muſicians were in high requeſt; which advantage the *Crotonians* taking, (with whom then in hoſtility) they entred the Town in the habit of Muſicians, and ſo maſtered it. Before which accident there had been a Propheſie, That the Town ſhould never be taken till men were more eſteemed then the Gods themſelves. It hapned that a Slave being grievouſly beaten by his Maſter, and obtaining no pardon for the Gods ſake, upon whom he called, fled to the Monument of ſome of his Maſters Anceſtors, and was pardoned by him; which coming to the ears of *Amyris* the Philoſopher, he forſook the Town, moſt men holding him mad in a time of no danger to leave ſo delicate a ſeat; whence came the Proverb, *Amyris inſanit*, applied to ſuch as under the pretence of madneſs or folly do provide for their ſafety.

Calabria.

VI. *CALABRIA INFERIOR* is bounded on the North with *Calabria ſuperior*, from which parted by the River *Crathis* and a branch of the *Apennine*, on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea and the ſtrait of *Meßana*, on the Weſt with that part of *Campania* which is called the Principate, and on the Eaſt with a part of the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea. It was anciently the habitation of the *Brutii*, whom the *Greek* Writers generally call *Bretti*, and their Country *Bretania*; upon which ground ſome of our modern Criticks (envying ſo great an honour to the Iſle of *Great Britain*) have transferred to this Province the birth of *Conſtantine*, the firſt *Chriſtian* Emperour. Theſe *Brutii* being firſt conquered by the *Romans* with the reſt of *Italy*, after the defeat of *Cannæ*, took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Annibal*, whom the *Romans* had ſhut up in this corner; a Country not much ſhort in fruitfulneſs of the reſt of the Kingdom, and having the advantage of ſo much Sea is the better ſituate for Traffick. At one extremity hereof is the Promontory called by *Ptolemy*, *Leuco Petra*, now *Labo di Spartimento*; all along which, eſpecially in the month of *May*, are taken great ſtore of *Tunnies*, (a Fiſh which much reſembleth mans fleſh) which being barrelled up are ſold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers alſo of a very ſtrange nature, of which the one called *Crathis* makes a mans hair yellow, and dieth Silk white; the other named *Buſentus* cauſeth both hair and ſilk to be black and ſwarthy.

The principal Cities of it are, 1 *Conſentia*, an ancient Town, comprehending ſeven little Hills, and a Caſtle on the top of one of them which commandeth both the Town and the Country adjoyning; it is built betwixt the ſaid two Rivers, and is ſtill reaſonably rich, though not ſo wealthy now as in former times. 2 *Rhegium*, or *Rhezo*, on the Sea-ſhoar, oppoſite to *Meſſana* in the Iſle of *Sicily*, which is ſuppoſed to have been broken off from the reſt of *Italy*, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the *Greek* word ῥηγνύω, which ſignifieth to break off, or to tear aſunder; a Town in former times very well traded, but left deſolate in a manner ſince the year 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3 *Caſtrovillare*, ſeated upon the top of a very high Mountain. 4 *Belmont*, and 5 *Altamont*, two very fair Towns, whoſe names ſufficiently expreſs their pleaſant and lofty ſituations. 6 St. *Euphemie*, from whence the Bay, which anciently was called *Sinus Lametinus*, or *Lametirius*, is now called *Golfo de St. Euphemie*. 7 *Nichaſtro*, three miles from the Sea, the ſame with *New-caſtle* in *Engliſh*.

On the Weſt ſide of this *Calabria*, and properly a part thereof, but reaching to the North as far as *Apulia*, ſtandeth that mountanous Country, which in the ſubdiviſion of theſe Provinces by King *Alfonſus* was called the **BASILICATE**; anciently the ſeat of the *Lucani*, and therefore called *Lucania* by the elder *Latiniſts*, divided from the *Principate* or Weſt parts of *Campania* by the River *Silarus*: a Country heretofore very unſafe for Travellers, by reaſon of the difficult ways and aſſured company of Thieves, but now reduced to better order; it containeth in it 93 walled places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are *Poſſidonia* or *Peſt*, a City ſcituate in ſo clement and benign a ſoil, that Roſes grow there thrice a year. 2 *Polycaſtro*, on the Sea-ſhore, as the former is, honoured with the Title of a Dukedom. And 3 *Dian*, or *Diunam*, a more midland City, near which there is a valley twenty miles in length and four miles in breadth, which for all manner of delights and fruitfulneſs yields to none in *Naples*.

VII. The *ISLES* of *NAPLES* are either in the *Adriatick* and *Tuſcan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteoli*. In the *Adriatick* Sea are the Iſlands of *Diomedes*, right againſt *Apulia*, where it encountreth with *Abruzzo*; ſo called from *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War (in which he was ſo great a ſtickler) ſetled himſelf in ſome part of *Apulia*, the principal whereof are, St. *Maries*, St. *Dominico*, and *Tremitana*. 2 The Iſland of *Acates*, over againſt the Town of *Gallipolis*. 3 St. *Andrews* in the Bay of *Tarentum*. 4 And finally the two Iſlands of *Dioſcoros* and *Calypſo*, over againſt the Cape of *Lacinia*, now called *Colonnes*, in the upper *Calabria*; of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas are the Iſlands of *Pontia* and *Panditaria* (now called *Palmarde*) as little famous as the other, ſave that the laſt is memorable in the *Roman* Stories for the confinement of *Agrippina* the wife of *Germanicus* and mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperour *Tiberius Nero*.

Thoſe in the *Gulf* or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note, the Principal whereof are 1 *Iſchia*, heretofore called *Oenotris*, from its plenty of Wine, wherewith it aboundeth to this day, as alſo with Allom, Sulphur, and moſt excellent Fruits: it is in compaſs 18 miles, and ſo begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is acceſſible at one entrance onely, and that too fortified with a ſtrong and impregnable Citadel, and therefore choſen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of refuge when he was outed of his Kingdom by *Charls* the 8. Here is alſo good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2 *Prochita*, now called *Procita*, about ſix miles in circuit, wherein are very wholeſome Baths, good ſtore of Conies, Hares and Pheaſants, the ſhore repleniſhed with Fiſh, and the Land with Fountains. *John de Prochita*, who plotted the *Sicilian Veſpers*, was once Lord of this place, but afterwards for a reward of that ſervice made *Vice-roy* of *Valentia*, a Kingdom of *Spain*. 3 *Caprea*, a ſmall rocky Iſland, having no Haven, nor convenient ſtation for Ships, but of a mild and temperate air; much beautified by *Auguſtus Caſar*, in regard that an old ſapleſs Tree upon his caſual landing here did bud forth afreſh: after that, it was much honoured by his retirement from affairs of State; and as much diſhonoured by *Tiberius* his next ſucceſſor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theatre of his Cruelties and moſt filthy Luſts. It hath a little City of the ſame name, having a ſtrong Fortreſs, and a Biſhops See; and another Town called *Anacapra*, inhabited by Fiſhermen and Ship-wrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Iſland they uſed to confine offenders in former times, and ſometimes alſo at this day. 4 *Ænaria*, a ſmall Iſland given by *Auguſtus* to the *Neapolitans* in exchange for *Caprea*, whoſe before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun who have ſuffered under more changes and alterations of State than the Inhabitants of this Kingdom; for being at the firſt a mixture of ſeveral Nations, ſome of them preyed upon the others till they were all ſubdued (as hath been ſhewed before) by the power of *Rome*. In the declining of her fortunes they followed for the moſt part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*, and he being called home they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italy* was ſubdued by the *Goths* it became ſubject to that people, as *Sicil* and the reſt of thoſe Iſlands did. And when the *Lombards* lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands except *Apulia* and *Calabria*, which the *Greek* Emperors having conquered from the *Goths* with the reſt of *Italy*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themſelves. In the diviſion of the Empire betwixt *Carolus Magnus* and *Irene*, theſe two laſt Provinces onely were aſſigned to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, the reſt to *Charls* and his ſucceſſors; both outed of their ſeveral parts by the prevailing *Sarazens* under the conduct of *Sabba* and other ſucceſſive Generals. Theſe partly diſpoſſeſſed by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt and his *Almain* forces, challenging a right herein as King of *Italy*, that right confirmed and enlarged by the marriage of *Otho* the 2d with *Theophania*, Niece to *Nicephorus Phocas* the Eaſtern Emperour, who brought *Apulia* and *Calabria* for her Dower or Portion. But long the *Germans* had not held it, when they were again expelled by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens*, joyning together againſt them as a common enemy; who afterwards held bitter wars againſt one another for the ſole command. During theſe wars it hapned that one *Drangot* a Gentleman of *Normandy* having in the preſence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conqueror) ſlain one *Repoſtel*, a Gentleman of like quality, to avoid the juſtice of the Prince and the practices of *Reſtopel's* kindred, fled into this Country, attended by ſuch of his followers as either did depend upon his fortunes, or had been medlers in the Fray: Where being come, the Duke of *Benevent*, Vicegerent to the Eaſtern Emperour, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raiſed withall that the *Greeks* hearkned after men of valour and action, cauſed many private Gentlemen to paſs over the *Alps*, and there to hew themſelves out a more proſperous fortune than formerly they had enjoyed. The fortunate ſucceſs of which laſt Adventurers drew thither alſo *Tancred* the Lord of *Hauteville*, who with his twelve ſons came into *Apulia anno* 1008. and in ſhort time not onely drove the *Sarazens* thence, but the *Grecians* alſo, as men that had broke Covenant with them in the diviſion of the Booty. For *William* the ſon of *Tancred* combining with *Melorco*, Governour of *Apulia* for the *Greek* Emperour, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salern*, men of power and honour, for the conqueſt of *Sicil* (which the *Sarazens* then wholly held) agreed amongſt themſelves to divide the places conquered by them into four equal parts, one for each Adventurer. But when the *Sarazens* were driven out, *Melorco* having new ſupplies ſent him out of *Greece*, ſeized on the poſſeſſion of the whole Iſland in the Emperours name. Which injury *William* cunningly diſſembled till *Melorco*'s Forces were diſperſed, and then he ſuddenly ſet upon him, firſt took the City of *Melfi*, and after by degrees moſt of the other Towns and places which the *Greeks* held in *Italy*; of which both he and his ſucceſſors kept poſſeſſion by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* onely. Of theſe (though all of eminent vertue) there were two beſides this *William* of ſpecial fame. 1 *Robert Guiſcard*, the third ſon of *Tancred*, the moſt valiant Captain of his time, and chief eſtabliſher of the *Normans* power in *Italy*, to which he added in concluſion the Iſle of *Sicil*, together with the City of *Naples* it ſelf, and all the Lands which lie betwixt it and *Rome*. 2 *Bohemund* the eldeſt ſon of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* and others of the Weſtern *Chriſtians* to the *Holy Land*, was for his ſignal merits inveſted with the Kingdom of *Antioch*; inherited by his children after his deceaſe.

But to proceed, this *Guiſcard* at his death (but not without ſome wrong to the children of his Brother *William*, whom he had diſpoſſeſſed of all by the Pope's authority) gave *Sicil* with the Title of Earl to his ſon *Rogero*, and his Eſtates in *Italy* to his other ſon *William*; who going to *Conſtantinople* to marry with the Emperours daughter, was outed of his part by his brother *Roger*; made not long after by the Pope the firſt King of this Family.

The Kings of *Naples* of the *Norman* Line.

1125 1 *Roger* Earl of *Sicil*, created by Pope *Anacletus* 2. King of both the *Sicilies* at the Town of *Benevent*; which City, in requital of ſo great a favour, he reſtored again unto the Church, from which it had been taken (after the firſt Donation of it) by the *German* Emperors. 24.

1149 2 *William* the ſon of *Roger*, who to aſſure himſelf of his Kingdoms was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian* the 4. to be holden for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.

1170 3 *William* II. ſon of the former *William*, who left a daughter called *Conſtance*, who became a Nun. 26.

1196 4 *Tancred* the baſe ſon of *William* the 2. excluded his ſiſter from the Crown, but was ſententially depoſed by Pope *Celeſtine* the 3. who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himſelf; but when he ſaw that *Tancred* was too ſtrong for him, out of meer ſpite to be defeated of his purpoſe he called in the *Germans*, the ancient enemies of his See, and gave the Lady *Conſtance*, then almoſt fifty years of age, in marriage unto *Henry* the 6. 2.

The *German* Line.

1198 5 *Henry*, the ſixth of that name, Emperour and Duke of *Schwaben*, ſucceeded on his marriage with the Lady *Conſtance*. 4.

1202 6 *Frederick*, ſon of the Emperour *Henry* and Queen *Conſtance*, crowned at the age of three years, afterwards Emperour by the name of *Frederick* the 2. he had to wife the daughter of *John di Bren*, the titulary King of *Hieruſalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever ſince had the title of Kings; and in the rights of this Kingdom the Kings of *Spain*.

1250 7 *Conrade* the ſon of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Sicil*, as alſo Emperor and Duke of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*; (poiſoned as it was conceived) by his baſe brother *Manfred*. 4.

1254 8 *Munfroy* or *Manfred*, baſe ſon of *Frederick*, and Duke of *Benevent*, firſt governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine* the ſon of *Conrade*, but after took it to himſelf againſt the will of Pope *Urban* the 4. who being weary of the *Germans*, called in *Charls* Duke of *Anjou* and Earl of *Provence*, brother to *Lewis* the 10. of *France*: it being uſual with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well obſerveth) to call new men into *Italy*, and ſtir up new Wars for their own ambition, not ſuffering any to poſſeſs that long which themſelves (through their weakneſs) could not hold, and practiſing the overthrow of thoſe very men whom themſelves had raiſed to power and greatneſs.

The *French* Line.

1261 9 *Charls* Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after Crowned by Pope *Urbane* the 4. who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his ſucceſſors ſhould aſſume the Empire, and that they ſhould pay fifty thouſand Crowns *per annum* as a Rent to the Church. This *Charls* did alſo vanquiſh *Conradine* the ſon of *Conrade*, the laſt of the Roial Houſe of *Suevia*, whom he caus'd to be beheaded at *Naples*; after which bloudy act, neither he nor any of his poſterity did either quietly or long enjoy theſe Kingdoms, for in his own time *Peter* King of *Aragon* claimed the Kingdom of *Naples* in right of *Conſtance* his wife, the daughter of *Manfred*: betwixt whom and *Charls* a ſingle combat was appointed to be fought in *Bourdeaux* before King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, to decide the controverſie; but whileſt *Charls* there expected him, he ſeized on *Sicil*, *anno* 1281. This *Charls* reigned three and twenty years.

1284 10 *Charls* II. ſon of *Charls* the firſt, formerly priſoner in *Sicil* to *Peter* of *Aragon*, was ranſomed by the procurement of King *Edward* above-named for 30000 Marks. By *Mary*, daughter of *Stephen* King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen children, the moſt pertinent of which

which

Naples.

which (to our purpoſe) were *Charls* ſurnamed *Martel* King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother, *Robert* King of *Naples*, *John* of *Durazzo*, and a daughter (whoſe name I find not) married to *Charls* Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Anjou*. 26.

1310 11 *Robert* the ſecond ſon of *Charls* the 2. 32.

1342 12 *Joan* the Niece of *Robert* by his ſon *Charls*, firſt married *Andrew* the ſecond ſon of *Charls* King of *Hungary*, whom ſhe hanged at her window for inſufficiency; and for her ſecond husband had *Lewis* Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-ſtraining himſelf to ſatisfie her carnal appetite, died; her third husband was *James* Prince of *Majorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom ſhe beheaded for lying with another woman; her fourth *Otho* of *Brunſwick*, a tough Souldier, who had the good fortune to out-live her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdom by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, brother of *Andrew* her firſt husband; reſtored the firſt time by the power of Pope *Clement* the ſixth, but at the ſecond time taken and hanged at the ſame window where ſhe had hanged her firſt husband: but firſt, out of an hatred to her next Heirs of the Houſe of *Hungary*, ſhe adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou* (deſcended from *Charls* Earl of *Valois* ſpoken of before) for her heir and ſucceſſor.

The *Hungarian* Line.

1371 13 *Charls* III. ſon to *Lewis* and nephew of Prince *John* of *Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and the favour of Pope *Urban* the fifth, was made King of *Naples*; he overthrew and killed in battel Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou* his competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis* of *Hungary* ſucceeded in that Kingdom alſo; but long he had not reigned therein, when poiſoned (as it was ſuppoſed) by the old Queen-Mother, to advance her daughter to that Throne. 15.

1386 14 *Ladiſlaus* ſon of *Charls* the 3. having a quarrel with the Pope, made a Voiage Royal unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: on which diſpleaſure the Pope called in *Lewis* the 2. Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladiſlaus* a great overthrow; inſomuch as *Ladiſlaus* uſed to ſay, That if *Lewis* had followed his Victory the firſt day, he had been Maſter of his Kingdom and Perſon too; if the ſecond, of his Kingdom, but not of his Perſon; but not purſuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to flie to *Rome* and give over the enterpriſe. 29.

1415 15 *Joan* II. ſiſter of *Ladiſlaus*, of as much levity but not altogether of ſo ill a fame as the former *Joan*, obſerving the unproſperous ſucceſſes of the Houſe of *Anjou*, ſhe adopted for her Heir *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Aragon*, who had ſome claim unto the Kingdom, as the direct Heir of *Pedro* or *Peter* the 3. and *Conſtance* the daughter of King *Manfred*, ſpoken of before: but finding him to ſtand too much on his own right, and to be too forward in taking a poſſeſſion of it before her death, ſhe revoked that adoption, and made a new Grant of the Eſtate to *Lewis* the fourth Duke of *Anjou*, and after his deceaſe to his brother *Rene* or *Renatus*; both vanquiſhed by the *Aragonians*.

The *Aragonian* Line.

1434 16 *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon*, partly by conqueſt and partly by adoption, having got the Kingdom, left it well ſetled unto *Ferdinand* his natural ſon. 24.

17 *Ferdinand* the baſe ſon of *Alfonſo* (the lawful ſons inheriting the Realms of *Aragon*, *Sicil*, &c.) ſucceeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.

1494 18 *Alfonſo* II. ſon of *Ferdinand*, in whoſe time the *French* began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his two predeceſſors were of the Order of the Garter.

1494 19 *Ferdinand* II. ſon of *Alfonſo* the ſecond, out of his Eſtate and Kingdom by *Charls* the eighth ſon of King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France*, whom *Rene* the laſt Duke of *Anjou* had made the ſole Heir of all his Titles and Poſſeſſions. And though *Charls* upon this Conqueſt was ſolemnly Crowned, yet poſting back again into *France* before he had ſetled his affairs in this Kingdom, and having much diſcontented the chief men of the *Anjouvin* Faction, he loſt it ſuddenly to the ſame *Ferdinand* from whom he had ſo ſuddenly won it.

1497 20 *Frederick* II. brother of *Alfonſo* the ſecond, and uncle of this laſt *Ferdinand*, ſucceeded him in his Eſtates, and was the ſixth King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compaſs of three years; that is to ſay, *Ferdinand* the firſt, *Alfonſo* the ſecond, *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Charls* of *France*, the ſecond *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himſelf betrayed by the *Spaniards*, he ſubmitted himſelf to *Lewis* XII. King of *France*, and yielded up his Kingdom to him: And indeed what elſe could that poor Prince do, when he ſaw his own bloud, and ſuch as had taken his Realm into their protection, conſpiring againſt him?

For when *Charls* made his paſſage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholick ſent *Gonſalvo* (who was afterwards for his valour ſurnamed the *Great Captain*) with ſome Forces to reſiſt the *French* Invaders; but when the *French* were expelled, *Gonſalvo* would not leave the Country, becauſe his Maſter had not as yet ſent for him. In the mean time it was agreed between *Lewis* of *France* and this

Ferdinand, that they ſhould jointly ſet upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: That having won it, the *French* ſhould poſſeſs *Abruzzo*, and *Lavoro*; the *Spaniards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabria's*: That the firſt ſhould be entituled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apulia*. This confederacy was kept ſecret till the *French* Forces were come to *Rome*; and *Gonſalvo* poſſeſſed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvel that they made themſelves Maſters of the Countrey. An Action in which the *French* dealt very unadviſedly, in bringing into *Italy*, where he was before the ſole *Moderator*, another King as great as himſelf; to whom, as to his *Rival*, his enemies might have recourſe on all occaſions; and the *Spaniard* as unnaturally, in betraying, for the moity of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own blood, under pretence and promiſe of ſuccours. But the two Kings did not continue long in good tearms of Partnerſhip. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their advantages, ſoon picked a quarrel with the *French*, within two or three years drave them out of all, and to this day keep it; though both this *Lewis*, and his ſucceſſors *Francis* the firſt and *Henry* the ſecond, have divers times, and with great effuſion of blood, attempted the recovery of it.

The *Spaniſh* or *Caſtilian* Line.

1503 22 *Ferdinand* III. ſurnamed the *Catholick*, King of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 13.
1516 23 *Charles* V. Emperor, King of *Spain*, and the IV. of that name in *Naples*. 43.
1558 24 *Philip* the 2. of *Spain*, and the firſt of *Naples*. 40.
1598 25 *Philip* II. of *Naples*, 3. of *Spain*, 22.
1621 26 *Philip* III. of *Naples*, 4. of *Spain*.

The arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, *Seme* of *Flower de Lyces*, *Or*, a File of three Labels, *Gules*.

The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-rent; and the reſt ſo exhauſted in maintaining Garriſons upon the Natives, and a ſtrong Navy againſt the *Turks*; that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part *de claro*.

Here are in this Kingdom
Arch-Biſhops 20. Biſhops 127.

The Kingdom of SICILIA.

BEfore we can come into the Iſle of *Sicily*, we muſt firſt croſs that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Fare*, or Straight of *Meſſana*; where the paſſage is ſo ſtrait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and an half. In other Parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is diſtant from the main land of *Italy* near 300 miles; that is to ſay, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicily*, to the City of *Naples*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is ſo called, becauſe it interlaceth the midſt of the earth; extending from the Straights of *Gibraltar* on the Weſt, to the Coaſt of *Paleſtine* on the *Eaſt*; and ſo dividing *Africk* both from *Europe*, and *Aſia Minor*. In the Scriptures, *Joſh.* 1. 4. it is called by the name of *Mare Magnum*, or the *great Sea*, great in compariſon of the *dead Sea*, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other ſide of the land of *Paleſtine*; but ſmall enough if compared to the *Ocean*, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Beſides which general name of the *Mediterreanan*, it hath alſo many particular names, as the *Adriatick*, *Ægean*, *Ionian*, and *Carpathian* Sea, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Libycum*, where it runneth by the ſhores of *Africk*: with reference to *Italy* called in ſome places, *Mare Tyrrhenum*, in others *Mare Liguſticum*; in ſome parts *Mare Siculum*, and in others *Mare Sardoum*, *&c.* And as the *Chameleon* is ſaid to apply it ſelf to the colour of the neareſt adjacent body; ſo this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the neareſt ſhores. Theſe Seas are alſo called by ſome modern Writers, in imitation of the *French*, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*; becauſe in reſpect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, *&c.* they lie toward the Eaſt, the word *Levant* ſignifying in the *French*, a riſing up after ſleep, and more eſpecially the Sun-riſing. The Principal Iſlands of this Sea which relate to *Italy* (for of others we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) are thoſe of *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and ſome Iſles adjoyning unto theſe.

SICILY, environed round with the *lower*, or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, contains ſeven hundred miles in compaſs; and is ſuppoſed to have been joyned to *Italy* in former times, being then a *Peninſula*, or Demy-Iſland, ſuch as *Peloponneſus*; and joyned unto the Continent by as narrow an *Iſthmus*. The reaſon of that name we ſhall ſee anon.

The ſeparating of it from the main Land of *Italy*, is by the Poets aſcribed to *Neptune*, who with his three-forked Mace or *Trident* broke it off from the land, in favour of *Jocaſtus* the ſon of *Æolus*; that ſo he might inhabit there with the greater ſafety, being invironed round with waters. Which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with ſome help from the *Mythologiſts*, may be made a ſtory. For if by *Æolus*, and *Neptune*, we underſtand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the reſt of *Italy*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of ſome Earthquakes, to which this Iſland is ſtill ſubject; which might in time conſume and wear away the Earth. Nor want there very good reaſons for this ſuppoſition; as, 1. The narrowneſs of the Straight, exceeding not a mile and an half; inſomuch as at the taking of *Meſſana* by the *Carthaginians*, many of the people ſaved themſelves

Sicil. by ſwimming over this Straight, into the oppoſite parts of *Italy*. 2. The ſhallowneſs of it, being found, upon a diligent ſounding, not to be above eight fathom deep. Then 'tis obſerved, that the land on both ſides is very brittle, full of caves and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this ſeparation; and that on the *Italian* coaſt, where the Streight is narroweſt, there ſtands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which ſignifieth a breach or cutting off, from the *Greek* word 'Ρήγνυμι, which ſignifies to break off, or violently to pull aſunder; and is ſuppoſed to be ſo called upon this occaſion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is ſo great and dangerous in this narrow channel, ſo ſubject unto bluſtring winds iſſuing out of the hollow caverns of the earth; that the breaking off of this Iſland from the reſt of *Italy*, is a thing moſt credible. Which dangerous nature of the paſſage, being alſo full of Rocks, and unſafe by reaſon of the Whirl-pools, occaſioned it to be called by *Florus* the Hiſtorian, *Fabuloſis infame monſtris Fretrum*; chiefly ſo called with reference to *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, of which ſo many fabulous things are reported by the antient Poets. Of theſe, *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on *Sicily* ſide, which violently attracting all veſſels that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and caſteth up their necks at the ſhore of *Tauromeni*, not far from *Catina*. Oppoſite to this, in *Italy*, ſtandeth the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks ſhoot out; on which the water ſtrongly beating, makes that noiſe, which the Poets feign to be the barking of dogs. The paſſage between theſe two being to unskilful Mariners exceeding perillous, gave beginning to the Proverb:

Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who ſeek *Charybdis* for to ſhun,
Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made *Sicily* famous in old times, beſides theſe two, as *viz.* the puniſhment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt againſt the Gods: the frequent burnings of *Ætna* (under which he is fabled to be ſhut up) being ſuppoſed to proceed from his ſulphurous breath. Secondly, the birth of *Ceres* in this Iſle; and thirdly, the Rape of *Proſerpine*. To theſe two laſt the Iſle was conſecrated in thoſe days; to *Ceres*, in regard ſhe firſt taught the people to ſow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often uſed in the Poets to ſignifie *Bread*, and other neceſſary proviſions for life, as *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*: To *Proſerpine*, becauſe beſtowed upon her by *Pluto*, to pleaſe her after the Raviſhment committed on her.

It is ſituate under the fourth Climate, the longeſt day being 13 hours and an half. And was once called *Trinacria*, becauſe it ſhoots forth into the Sea with three *Capes* or *Promontories: viz.* 1. *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Foro*, to the North; 2. *Pachinus*, now *Cape Paſſaro*, to the Weſt; and . *Lilybæum*, now *Capo Boii*, or *Capo Coro*, to the South. This laſt looketh towards *Carthage*, and the ſhores of *Africk*, from which diſtant 180 miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a man of a quick and ſtrong ſight getting up into a Watch-tower that ſtood in this *Cape*, deſcryed a Fleet ſetting ſail out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybitanians* their bigneſs and number. That this is true, I dare not ſay: for beſides the unlikelyhood of kenning at ſo great a diſtance; we are taught by Philoſophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular form, ſwelleth it ſelf into the faſhion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-ſight. From theſe three corners, this Countrey was (as we have ſaid) called *Trinacris* or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*.

Terra tribus ſcopulis vaſtum procurrit in æquor;
Trinacris *à poſitu, nomen adepta, loci.*

An Iſland with three corners braves the Main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The firſt inhabitants that we find to have dwelt in this Countrey, are the huge Giants ſo often mentioned in the *Odyſſes* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Laſtrygones* and *Cyclops*, of which laſt rank was the ſo much famouſed *Polyphemus*, who with ſo much humanity entertained *Ulyſſes* and his companions. Theſe were afterward rooted out by the *Sicani* a people of *Spain* who called it *Sicania*. As for the name of *Sicilia*, ſome derive it from *Sicileus* a ſuppoſed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Country. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Iſland: to which, having Maſtered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the Weſt and the Northern part, to the Eaſt and South, they left their name. At their firſt landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Meſſana*, together with *Nea*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another *Italian* people, named the *Morgetes*, being driven thence by the *Oenotrians*; and ſate down in that part of the Iſland where ſtood the City of *Morgentum*, built by them at their firſt arrival. The firſt of all the *Greeks* who ſet footing in it (not to ſay any thing of the coming of *Minos* hither, in the perſuit of *Dædalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Hiſtorical truth) were the *Chalcidians*, a people of the Iſle *Eubœa*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Archias* of *Corinth*, with his fellow Adventurers, by whom *Syracuſe* was either firſt built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them, the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* ſent ſome Colonies hither, the firſt Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agrigentum*: And not long after, a new Plantation ſent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens of

Sicil.

of *Megaris*, another ſtate of *Greece*, ſent a Colony alſo, who built *Selinus*. And ſo did thoſe of *Meſſene* alſo, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it ſo repaired the name of *Meſſana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians*, being ſo great undertakers of publick buſineſſes, and very powerfull in ſhipping, would ſit ſtill, when ſo fair a booty did invite their induſtry: who ſeiſing on the *Promontories* of *Pachinus* and *Lilibaum*, and ſome of the adjoyning Iſlands; did fortifie them for the better ſecuring of the Trade which they had in *Sicily*. But all theſe ſeveral Adventurers having ſeveral intereſſes, joyned not together in the work of an abſolute Conqueſt; but planting themſelves only on the Sea-ſhores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither.

The people are ingenious, eloquent, and pleaſant, but withall very unconſtant, and ſo full of talk that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerra Siculæ*. They are alſo ſaid to be of a very envious, ſuſpitious, and diſtruſtful nature, uncapable of injuries, and vehement in purſuit of revenge, as appears by that great ſlaughter which they made of the *French*; yet withall courteous enough to ſtrangers, and *Paraſitical* enough to their ſuperiours. They have been famous heretofore for many notable inventions, *Ariſtotle* aſcribing to them the Art of *Oratory*, and firſt making of *Paſtoral Eclogues*; *Pliny* of Clocks (or rather of Hour-glaſſes; for Clocks were but a late invention, and that of the *Flemmings*) and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which laſt were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached here, by ſome of the Diſciples of St. *Peter*, whom he ſent hither at his firſt coming to *Rome*; of which *Pancracius* (whom we call commonly St. *Pancrace*) is ſaid to have been the firſt Biſhop of *Tauromenium*, and *Marcianus* of *Syracuſe*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek* Church being rather connived at than allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be ten thouſand ſouls, but looked on by the reſt as *ſchiſmatical* people. For the moſt part they uſe the *Italian* Language, but very much altered, by the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French*, and *Spaniſh* tongues; to which Nations they have been ſeverally ſubject, ſince the time of the *Romans*. The totall number of the people is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The ſoyl is incredibly fruitfull in Wine, Oyl, Hony, Minerals of Gold and Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which laſt commodity the Natives ſell in the Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is refined; and thereby letting ſtrangers go away with the beſt part of their gains; as generally they do in all other Marchandize, which they permit to be exported, rather than put themſelves to the trouble of Traffiqueing abroad in Forrain Nations. There are alſo Gems of *Agates*, and *Emralds*. It yeeldeth alſo great ſtore of the richeſt Silks, which grow plentifully about *Meſſana*; variety of moſt excellent and delicious fruits, both for taſte and colour: with ſuch abundance of all ſorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romani populi*, or the Granary of the *Roman* Empire; and doth now furniſh ſome parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, beſides *Malta*, and the adjacent Iſles; with that which ſhe can ſpare of her ſuperfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and ſtore-houſe of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but addes that it was accounted for a well-furniſhed *Treaſury*; as being able of it ſelf without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain, and furniſh the greateſt Army with Leather, Corn, and Apparel. And if *Diodorus Siculus* may be credited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and ſome other places, Wheat did grow of it ſelf, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in ſome parts of the Iſle, the ſoyl is ſo exceeding fruitfull, that it yeelds unto the Husbandman an hundred meaſures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Country muſt needs yeeld a wonderfull increaſe, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thouſand Crowns yearly for the Cuſtome of Wheat. In this Country is the Hill *Hybla*, ſo famous for Bees and Hony; neer which there was a City of the ſame name alſo, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is alſo the hill *Ætna*, now called *Montgibel*, which continually ſendeth forth flames of Fire, to the aſtoniſhment of all beholders. The moſt famous conflagrations in the former times were preſently before the breaking out of the War in *Sicil*, which the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum ſervile*; not pacified but by the ſlaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms againſt *Rome*: and ſhortly after the death of *Julius Cæſar*, portending thoſe proſcriptions and bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day ſuch extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it ſelf is of that height, that it is ten miles from the top to the bottome, and may be eaſily diſcerned by Saylers at a hundered miles diſtance: the lower parts thereof being very fruitfull; the middle ſhaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the year, notwithſtanding the frequent vomiting of flames and cinders. But theſe eruptions of fire are not now ſo ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being waſted by continual burnings: ſo that the flames which iſſue hence are hardly viſible but by night, though the ſmoke ſhew it ſelf the moſt part of the day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four years, it falleth in great flakes on the Vales adjoyning, to the deſtruction of the Vintage, and great loſs of the Country, but that, they ſay, is recompenced by the plenty of the following years; the aſhes thereof ſo batling and enriching the ſoyl, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongſt our ſelves, that the Turf taken from the ground and burnt to aſhes, and ſo ſpread on land and plowed into it, doth yeeld a very great improvement, even to barren ſoyls. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonſhiring* of land, becauſe there firſt uſed; but in *Hampſhire* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a ſtranger there) by the name of *burning* and *beaking*. But to return again to *Ætna*. Into this fiery Furnace the Philoſopher *Empedocles* caſt himſelf, that he might be reputed a God.

Sicil.

——— Deus immortalis haberi
Dum cupit Empedocles, ardentem fervidus Ætnam
Inſiluit———— as *Horace* in his Book *de Arte Poetica.*

Empedocles to be a God deſires,
And caſts himſelf into th' *Ætnean* fires.

The reaſon of theſe fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimſtone contained in the boſome of the Hill, which is blown by the wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth, as by a pair of bellows. Through theſe chinks alſo there is continually more fuel added to the fire, the very water adding to the force of it: as we ſee that water caſt on coals in the Smiths Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reaſon of this flame is thus ſet down by *Ovid.*

Iſta bituminea *rapiunt incendia vires,*
Luteaq; exiguis ardeſcunt ſulphura *flammis.*
Atq; ubi terra cibos alimentaq; debita flammæ
Non dabit, abſumptis per longum viribus ævum;
Naturæq; ſuum nutrimen deerit edaci;
Non feret Ætna *famem, deſertaq; deſeret ignes.*

A rozen mould theſe fiery flames begin,
And clayie brimſtone aids that fire within:
Yet when the ſlimie ſoyl conſumed, ſhall
Yeeld no more food to feed the fire withall,
And Nature ſhall reſtrain her nouriſhment,
The flame ſhall ceaſe, hating all famiſhment.

Under this Hill ſome Poets feign the Gyant *Enceladus* to have been buryed, as before is ſaid, whoſe hot breath fired the Mountain lying on his face. Others ſuppoſe it to be the Shop of *Vulcan,* and the *Cyclops*; and the groſs Papiſts take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike unfallible.

The principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Taretta,* anciently called *Terius.* 2. *Himera,* neighboured by Mount *Hybla,* much famed for Hony. 3. *Iſaurus.* 4. *Hypſa.* 5. *Acaſius,* of great note for its precious ſtones. None of them much obſervable for length or breadth, but that defect ſupplyed by the commodiouſneſs of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Iſland; and by the benefit of Fountains and freſh water Lakes. Moſt memorable amongſt theſe, 1. The Lake called *Palicoro,* (now *Napthia*) which for three moneths doth caſt forth water very hot, but of very ill ſmell; of which there is mention made in *Pliny,* by the name of *Ephintia.* 2. A Fountain neer the foot of *Ætna,* the water whereof is ſharp like *Vinegar,* and ſometimes boyleth; into which a piece of cloth caſt, being before ſteeped in water mixed with Gall, becomes ſuddainly black. 3. Another Fountain neer *Drepanum,* the water of which, as ſoon as drunk, provoketh looſneſs. All which effects proceed from that ſulphureous and bituminous matter, of which the whole Iſland is exceeding full. 4. *Arethuſa,* of greater fame among the Ancients, than all the reſt, eſpecially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having ſwallowed up one hundred and forty leſſer ſtreams, and loſing it ſelf under the ground, is thought to empty it ſelf into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both; and ſeems to be ſufficiently proved by the ſeveral inſtances of a wooden diſh or cup loſt in the River *Alpheus,* and found riſing up in this River; and by the leaves of certain trees growing on the banks of that *Greek* River, and ſwiming on this in great abundance; there being none of theſe trees in all *Sicil.* *Dicitur* Alpheus (ſaith *Mela*) *ſe non conſociare pelago; ſed ſubter maria, terraſq; depreſſus, huc agere alveum, atq; hic ſe rurſus extollere.*

This Iſland is famous for the worthy Scholars ſhe once produced, *viz.* *Æſchelus,* the firſt *Tragedian* of fame; who being bald through age, once walked in the fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald pate for a white Rock, let a ſhell-fiſh fall on it, of that bigneſs, that it beat out his brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus,* that famous Hiſtorian. 3. *Empedocles* the firſt Inventer of *Rhetorick*; and his fellow *Gorgias.* 4. *Euclide,* the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megaris.* 5. *Archimedes* a moſt worthy *Mathematician,* the firſt Author of the Sphere; of which inſtrument he made one of that art and bigneſs, that one ſtanding within, might eaſily perceive the ſeveral motions of every celeſtiall orb. He made alſo divers military Engines, which in the ſiege of *Syracuſa* ſorely vexed the *Romans*; and was at laſt ſlain in his ſtudy by a common Souldier in the ſack of the Town, to the great grief of the General *Marcellus.* 6. *Epicharmus,* the firſt Inventer of Comedies; and 7. *Theocritus,* the firſt Author of Paſtoral *Eclogues.* In the later times, *Nicolas* Abbot of *Palermo,* a learned *Canoniſt,* and Cardinal of the Church of *Rome,* commonly called *Panormitanus,* was of greateſt fame.

In *Plinies* time there were reckoned in this Iſland ſeventy two Cities, of which onely twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three ſmall Provinces, that is to ſay, 1. *Val de noto* 2. *Mazara,* and 3 *Mona*; to which the Iſles adjoyning may adde a fourth.

1. *VALLIS DE NOTO* taketh up the Eaſtern parts of the Iſland. The chief Cities of which are, 1. *Syracuſa,* once the Metropolis of the whole Iſland, and a moſt flouriſhing Common-wealth, it was (as *Tully* reports) the greateſt and goodlieſt City of all that were poſſeſs'd by the *Greeks,*

for ſituation very ſtrong; and of an excellent proſpect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both ſides of it, was for the moſt part environed with beautifull buildings; and that part of it which was without the City, was on both ſides banked up, and ſuſtained with very fair walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodlyeſt City of the *Greeks*, as *Tully* tels us, but the greateſt alſo of the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmoſt wall thereof, (for it was environed with three walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compaſs, which of our meaſure cometh to eighteen miles. It was compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to ſay, *Inſula* (or the Iſle) *Acradine*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*; beſides the Fort called *Hexapla*, which commanded the reſt; the greatneſs of all which, the ruines and foundations of it do ſtill demonſtrate. It ſtandeth North of the Promontory called *Pachinus*, and was built by *Archias* of *Corinth*, about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judah*; who being for an unnatural Rape committed on a young Gentleman, baniſhed his Country, together with his friend and Companion *Miſcellus*, conſulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they ſhould diſpoſe of themſelves. The Oracle demanding whether they moſt affected wealth, or health; *Miſcellus* anſwered health, and *Archias* wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to ſettle himſelf at *Crotona* in *Italie*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reaſon of its beautifull and commodious Port, proving of greateſt trade and wealth next to *Carthage* it ſelf, in thoſe times, of the World. It was the cuſtome of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive leaf; which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to baniſhment for five years; and was called *Petaliſm*, from the *Greek* word Πέταλον, ſignifying a leaf. Yet could not this device ſo well ſecure them, in the poſſeſſion of their ſo much deſired Freedome, but that this City fell oftener into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Auguſtus*, who after a ſecond deſtruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, ſent a Colony hither, and built upon the *Iſle* and the parts neer unto it. But now the whole Iſle (*Ortygia* the ancients called it) is taken up with a very ſtrong Caſtle; the whole City alſo being very well walled, and held by a Garriſon of *Spaniards*. 2 *Noto*, which gives name to this whole Diviſion. A City which heretofore contended with *Syracuſe* in point of greatneſs: ſituate on a very high Rock, unacceſſible on all ſides but by one narrow paſſage; and having under the Cape of *Paſſari* a verry fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicil* on that ſide. 3 *Auguſta*, ſituate on the ſhore alſo, and of ſo large a Haven that it could never be fortified. 4 *Caſtro Giovanni*, a Town of about four thouſand Families, ſituate in a wholſome air, and a fruitfull Soyl, which they hold to be the very Navell and exact middle of the Iſland. It is alſo much prized for Mines of moſt excellent Salt. 5 *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whoſe fiſhing is farmed for eighteen thouſand Crowns yeerly. It was anciently called *Leontium*, and ſtood ſomewhat North of *Syracuſa*; with which continually in war, either to preſerve their own Liberties, or get the Soveraignty of the other. 6 *Enna*, a mid-land Town, whence *Pluto* is ſaid to have raviſhed *Proſerpine*: in after times the dwelling of that *Syrus Ennus*, who ſtirred up the *Roman* Slaves againſt their Lords; and having broke open the common Priſons, and received all ſuch as came unto him, patched up an Army of forty thouſand. This war the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at laſt, but with no ſmall difficulty, by the valour and good fortune of *P. Rupilius*.

2. *MAZARA* containeth all the Weſt part of the Iſland. The chief Cities whereof, 1 *Agrigentum*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the deſtruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*,

—— Nec enim lex juſtior ulla eſt,
Quam necis Artifices arte perire ſua.

Moſt juſt it is a man ſhould be tormented
With that, which firſt his cruel wit invented.

It was ſaid anciently of the people of this City, that *they built as if they ſhould never dye, and eat as if they were ſure to live no longer*. 2 *Palermo*, anciently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phœnicians*; now the chief City of *Sicil*, and the Seat of the *Spaniſh* Vice-roy. Situate on the Weſt Cape of the Iſland looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate buildings, ſtrong walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no natural Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* ſerving anciently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*; a work of vaſt expence, and worthy of the greatneſs of *Rome*. It is alſo an Arch-biſhops See, and an Univerſity. 3 *Monreal*, commonly called *Morreal*, famous for the Church, the Arch-biſhops See. It is called in *Latine Mons Regalis*. 4 *Drepanum*, now called *Trapani*, ſituate on a Promontory thruſting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybæum*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill neighbourhood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on theſe coaſts; and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are ſaid to be the beſt Sea-men of *Sicil*. 5 *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, ſituate South of *Lilybæum*, and not far from *Selinus*. 6 *Eryx*, ſituate on a Mountain over-looking the Sea, ſaid by the Ancients to have took this name from *Eryx* the ſon of *Venus*, ſlain here by *Hercules*: memorable in thoſe elder times for being the Seat of K. *Aceſtes*, who ſo kindly entertained *Æneas*, and his wandring *Trojans*; and a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worſhipped, who from thence was called *Erycina*; as *Sive tu mavis Erycina ridens*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the laſt Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicil*. On the ſurrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the

Sicil.

Father of *Annibal*, at the end of the firſt *Punick* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongſt other things, that the *Carthaginians* ſhould relinquiſh all the claim or title which they had to any part of this Iſland; which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracuſa* excepted only.) Who, whatſoever colour they were pleaſed to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by ambition, and covetouſneſs. And therefore in my mind *Florus* ſtates it rightly, who ſaith, that it was undertaken *ſpecie quidem juvandi Socios, re autem ſollicitante præda*; *i. e.* under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themſelves into their protection, but in plain terms to get poſſeſſion of the Iſland which lay fit for *Italy*. Now and long ſince a ruin only, the place on which it ſtood being callpe *Mount S. Julian*. 7. *Segeſta*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from *Eryx*, neer unto which the *Trojan* Ladies, weary of their many long and dangerous voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Æneas*; on which occaſion it was built. Peopled at firſt by ſuch of the more old and feeble *Trojans* (*Longævoſq; ſenes, & feſſas æquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who choſe rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Æneas*, in his queſt of *Italy*. Called then *Aceſta*, in honour of King *Aceſtes* ſpoken of before, part of whoſe Kingdome it was made; afterwards *Egeſta*, from *Egeſtas* one of *Trojan* race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at laſt *Segeſta*.

3. **MONA** lyeth on the North-eaſt of the Iſland, oppoſite unto *Vallis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1 *Nicoſia*, in the mid-land. 2 *Milaſe*, on the Northern Promontory. 3 *Meſſana*, a City of great ſtrength and beauty, juſt oppoſite to *Rhezo* in *Italy*. It was the firſt Town which the *Romans* had in this Iſland, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Souldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City; who finding themſelves too ſtrong for the *Citizens*, made themſelves Maſters of the place; but being withall too weak to hold it, choſe rather to ſurrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper owners. Hence the beginning of the firſt War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the moſt beautiful building of any in *Sicil*; and peopled by the wealthieſt ſort both of Merchants and Gentlemen; who live here in great pleaſure (if not voluptuouſneſs) as having plenty of all neceſſary proviſions, fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and ſnow to moderate and qualifie the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elſewhere in the Country. On the Weſt ſide there ſtands a ſtrong Citadell, highly mounted, and well Garriſoned, which commands the Town: and not far off a very high Lantern, where lights are kept burning all night long, for the direction of ſuch Mariners as are to paſs thoſe dangerous Straights; which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare* of *Meſſana*. The Haven of this Town is the faireſt of *Sicil*, whoſe entrances are ſo ſtrongly ſconced and bulwarked, that the people let their Gates (in deriſion of the *Turks*) ſtand alwayes open. It is alſo an Arch-biſhops See. 4 *Catina*, ſo often vexed by *Dionyſius* the Tyrant of *Syracuſe*: more antient than beautifull: ſeated on the North ſide of a great (but hollow) Bay, not eaſily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Garriſon, nor much traded by Merchants; the riches of the place conſiſting principally in the fruitfullneſs of the Soyl, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a ſmall Univerſity. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And ſo was alſo *Tauromenium*, the fifth Town of note in this part of the Iſland; called ſometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a ruine only of what was in the former dayes; a place by nature of great ſtrength, but over-topped by *Syracuſa* and *Meſſana*, betwixt which it ſtandeth. It was in this part of the Country that the *Cyclops* dwelt, there being three little rocky Iſlands (now not inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopum Scopuli*.

4 On the Weſt part of *Sicil* lie the **ÆOLIAN** or *Vulcanian* Iſlands, heretofore only ſeven, and all almoſt of equal bigneſs; now eleven in number. The firſt name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them; who being well skilled in divining from what coaſts the winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the ſmoak aſcending from them) occaſioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan*, the God of Fire; by reaſon of the continual flames of fire from thence evaporating in thoſe elder dayes. But now the matter of thoſe flames being waſted in long tract of time, there is onely one of them which burneth, now called **STOMBOLO**; by ſome Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundneſs of it. An Iſland of above ten miles compaſs, but ſuch as ſeems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof iſſueth continually a flame like a burning *Beacon*, eaſily diſcernible far off, but at nights eſpecially: a place ſo full of horror to the neighbouring Iſlands, that they and many others of the *Romiſh Catholicks* conceive it to be Hell it ſelf. And yet in thoſe parts where the rage of the fire offendeth not, it is of a very fruitfull ſoil, and apt for tillage.

2. But the faireſt and beſt peopled of thoſe Iſlands, is that of **LIPARA**, ſome ten miles in circuit, (from whence the reſt are called the *Liparean* Iſles) ſo named from *Lipara* the chief Town, ſaid to be built in the time of *Joſiah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Biſhop, under the Arch-biſhop of *Meſſana*. The Iſland generally fruitfull, well furniſhed with *Allom*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*; and with ſome hot medicinal Baths, which are much frequented, and from thence called *Thermeſſa* by the ancient Writers. It was formerly of ſo great wealth, that falling into the diſpleaſure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuſe*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the ſum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which ſum they had no ſooner paid, but the Tyrant for a farewell, robbed their very Temples. Unproſperous in his Actions alwayes after that adventure. Nor ſped it better with the *Turks*, who in the year 1544. laid the Country deſolate; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the fifth repleniſhed it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very ſtrongly againſt all invaſions.

3. Not far off lyeth another of theſe Iſlands, now called **FAVOGNANA**, or *Fauciana*, but anciently *Æguſa*, conceived to be the ſame which *Livy* and *Florus* call *Ægates*; in which there

is a fair and capacious Bay, able to receive the greateſt Navies, and near to which *Luctatius Catulus* the Conſul gave the *Carthaginians* their laſt blow at Sea, which drew along with it the ſurrendry of *Eryx*, and the loſs of *Sicil*. *Dedyme*, *Ericoſu*, *Eunymos* and *Phœnicuſa*, four other of theſe Iſlands, but of leſſer note, I paſs over willingly, and make haſte to

4. HIERO, the ſeventh and laſt of theſe Iſlands of any conſideration, and the eighth in tale, called alſo *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worſhipped; ſaid to have firſt appeared above the water at ſuch time as *Scipio African* died. A barren, ſtony, and uninhabited place, by reaſon of the fires which formerly have flamed ſo hideouſly (eſpecially in the year 1444.) that it made not onely the reſt of theſe Iſlands, but all *Sicily* tremble. Near unto this Iſle was fought the firſt Naval fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*, before which time the *Romans* had never uſed the Seas, as being totally emploied in the conqueſt of *Italy*, inſomuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were fain to exerciſe their men in rowing, by placing them on two ſeats near the water with Oars in their hands: which notwithſtanding, having deviſed an Engine like a Grapling-hook, they ſo faſtned the adverſe Fleet unto them, that the whole fight ſeemed a Land-battel fought upon the Sea. The Victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duilius* the Conſul then commanding in Chief, and honoured with the firſt *Naval Triumph* that was ever ſolemnized at *Rome*.

After this Iſland was once known to the *Greeks*, they ſent from all their chief Cities ſeveral Colonies, who planted in the Sea-coaſts of the Country, as before we noted, but ſo as they never united themſelves in a body together, but had their ſeveral eſtates and particular ends, whereby they came to be divided into many factions, and at laſt made themſelves a prey to as many Tyrants, *Phalaris* lording it at *Agrigentum*, *Panætius* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuſe*, *Cleander* at *Gela*; and when one faction grew too weak to reſiſt the other, they called in ſeveral forein Nations to abet their quarrel; for on this ground the *Carthaginians* were firſt called into *Sicily* by the *Meſſanians* againſt the *Agrigentines*, and on the ſame was managed here a great part of the *Peloponneſian* wars, the *Athenians* ſiding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Syracuſans*, in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land, and their two Generals, *Nicias* and *Demoſthenes*, murdered in priſon. But becauſe *Syracuſe* was a City of the greateſt authority, and of greateſt influence over the reſt of *Sicily*; we ſhall more punctually inſiſt on the ſtate and affairs thereof, the Government of which at firſt was popular, as it was in moſt of the *Greek* Colonies, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Ariſtocratical* when *Gelon* made himſelf King of it about 26 years after the expulſion of the *Tarquins* at *Rome*; whom, with as many as ſucceeded in the Royal Dignity, take along as followeth.

The Tyrants or Kings of *Syracuſe*.

A. M.

3465 1 *Gelon*, the Prince or Lord of *Gela*, taking advantage of the quarrels in *Syracuſa* betwixt the Magiſtrates and People, made himſelf Maſter of the City, and was choſen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 *Carthaginians* were ſlain in Battel for their firſt welcome into *Sicil*. 7.

3472 2 *Hiero*, the brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King alſo, but a rude and covetous man, whereby he loſt the love of his people. 11.

3484 3 *Thraſybulus*, brother of *Hiero*, whoſe Government proved ſo cruel and inſupportable, that he held it not above ten months; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracuſans*, the people did awhile enjoy their liberty, but withall fell into thoſe factions, which after 60 years made them loſe it again.

3544 4 *Dionyſius*, that ſo famous Tyrant, from being General of the Forces of the *Syracuſans*, made himſelf their King; a man of great vices, but great vertues withall. He brought almoſt all *Sicily* under his obedience, and the Town of *Rhegium* in *Italy*, reigning in all 38 years.

3582 5 *Dionyſius* II. ſucceeding his father in his Kingdom and vices, but not in valour or wiſdom, was firſt outed by *Dion*, a noble Gentleman of *Syracuſe*, and afterwards taken priſoner by *Timoleon* of *Corinth*, to which City he was ſent, and there died in exile.

3635 6 *Agathocles*, by trade a Porter, after that a Souldier, 20 years after the death of *Timoleon* made himſelf King of *Syracuſa*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil* he paſſed over into *Africk* and beſieged *Carthage*; which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune. 29.

3681 7 *Hiero* II. of a Commander of their Armies choſen King of *Syracuſe* by a party which he had made amongſt them. In his time brake out the firſt *Punick* War, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mamertines*, who held *Meſſana* againſt the *Carthaginians*, the Lords at that time of the greateſt part of the Iſland. 56.

3737 8 *Hieronymus*, the ſon of *Hiero*. After whoſe death *Syracuſe* and all *Sicil* became ſubject to *Rome* by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of theſe eight Kings, the ſix firſt commonly paſs under the name of *Tyrants*, from whence, and from ſome others of like diſpoſition, who Lorded it over the reſt of the free Cities of *Sicil*, the name of *Siculi Tyranni* grew into a Proverb; but of all, none more hated than the two *Dionyſii*, who were ſo odious, that there were continual execrations poured on them: onely one old woman praying for the life of the latter, who being asked the cauſe, made anſwer, That ſhe knew his father to have been a monſtrous and wicked Tyrant, on whom when the curſes of the people had prevailed and obtained his death, this his ſon ſucceeded worſe by far than he; for whoſe life ſhe was reſolved to

Sicil. pray; leſt after his death the Devil himſelf ſhould come amongſt them. But to proceed, after theſe *Tyrants*, as they called them, were rooted out, and the Iſland was conquered by *Marcellus*, it always followed the fortune of the *Roman* Empire, till in the partition of that Empire it fell, together with *Apulia* and *Calabria*, into the power of the *Greeks*; in the declining of whoſe Greatneſs, this Iſland having been miſerably pilled and ſpoiled by the Emperour *Conſtance*, *An. 669.* became a prey to the *Sarazens*; from them recovered again by the help of the *Normans*, who held both this and the Realm of *Naples* in Fee of the Church, under the Title of Kings of both *Sicils*. From that time forwards it ran the fortune of that Kingdom; ſubject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* lines, till the death of *Conrade*, no interruption intervening. After whoſe death when *Munfroy* or *Manfrede*, the baſe ſon of the Emperour *Frederick*, and brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himſelf King of theſe Countries, it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, brother to *Henry* the Third of *England*, a Prince of ſuch riches, that he was able to diſpend an hundred Marks *per diem* for ten years together, which according to the Standard of thoſe times was no ſmall ſum; but the conditions which the Pope propoſed were ſo impoſſible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well ſay to his Maſter, *I will give thee the Moon, climb up, catch and take it*. The Earl refuſing it, it was offered the King for his ſecond ſon *Edmund*, who was inveſted by the gift of a Ring, and mony coined in his name by the Pope's appointment, with the Inſcription of *Almundus Rex Siciliæ*: but the King not being able to purſue the buſineſs, becauſe then over-burthen'd by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having ſucked no ſmall ſtore of Treaſure from him, it was in the year 1261 given unto *Charls* Earl of *Provence* and *Anjou*, brother to *Lewis* the 10. Under him thoſe Countries jointly continued ſubject till the year 1281, in which his Competitor *Peter* of *Aragon* claiming it in right of his Wife the daughter of *Munfroy* before mentioned, promiſing him to fight a ſingle Combat before our K. *Edward* the firſt at *Burdeaux*, fail'd of his word, and in the mean time ſo contrived it, that at the ſound of a Bell tolling to Prayers, all the *French-men* in *Sicily* were cruelly maſſacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Veſperi Siculi*, and was managed by *John de Prochita*, a Gentleman of the Realm of *Naples*, whom *Charls* had diſpoſſeſſed of the Iſle of *Prochita*, whereof he had been formerly Lord, and not content to do him ſuch a piece of injuſtice, added a further inſolency to it in the forcing of his Wife. Provoked with theſe two injuries, the abuſed Gentleman plots with King *Pedro* of *Aragon* to make him Maſter of the Iſle of *Sicily*, where he had very good intelligences, and where the *French* by reaſon of their Luſts and Inſolencies had ſo exaſperated the Natives, that they were capable enough of any ſuch impreſſions as a man ſharing with them in their ſufferings could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* rigged out his Navy, under pretence of ſome exploit againſt the *Moors*, and anchoreth in the Port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out ſo agreeably to his expectation, that in one inſtant, as it were, on the ſignal given, the *French* were univerſally murthered in all parts of the Iſland, the people being ſo inraged that they would not ſpare women great with child if ſuppoſed to have been got by any of that hated Nation; and *Pedro* coming in with his Navy as the Deed was done, was by the general conſent of all ſorts of people crowned King of *Sicily*. A bloudy policy, I confeſs, which as the Actors learned of the *Engliſh Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*, ſo did they teach it to the *French*, who practiſed it on the *Hugonots* of *France* in that horrid Maſſacre of *Paris Anno* 1572. An act which ſo provoked the Pope, that he ſolemnly accurſed the King, and cauſed many of the neighbouring Princes to arm againſt him. But the Fox fared never the worſe for that, who did ſo order his affairs, that he did both clear his own Country of thoſe Enemies which on the Popes curſe had come in againſt him, and ſetled *Sicily* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Iſland hath belonged to the Houſe of *Aragon*, but not always in poſſeſſion of the Kings thereof, being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whoſe ſucceſſion followeth.

Kings of *Sicily* of the Houſe of *Aragon*.

1281 1 *Pedro*, or *Peter* the 3d. King of *Aragon* by birth, of *Sicily* in the right of his Wife, the choice of the people, and the Legacy of *Corradine* (the laſt of the Royal Line of *Suevia*) but principally by the power of the ſword.

1285 2 *James*, the ſecond ſon of *Pedro*, King of *Sicily*, after the death of his brother *Alfonſus* ſucceeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Iſle of *Sardinia*.

1291 3 *Frederick*, the brother of *James*, on his brothers taking the Crown of *Aragon* got poſſeſſion of *Sicily*. By *Frederick Alfonſo*, a younger ſon of this *Frederick*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* came into this Family.

1336 4 *Peter*, or *Pedro* II. ſon of *Frederick*.

1342 5 *Frederick* II.

6 *Peter*, or *Pedro* III.

7 *Lewis*, ſon to *Peter* III.

8 *Frederick* III. in the life of *Lewis* his Brother called Duke of *Athens*, after his death ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Sicily*.

1389 9 *Martin*, ſon to *Martin* the firſt King of *Aragon*, ſucceeded in the right of his Wife *Blanch*, daughter of *Frederick* III, and dying without iſſue gave the Kingdom unto *Martin* his Father.

1409 10 *Martin* II of *Sicily*, and the firſt of *Aragon*, of which laſt he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his ſon. After which time the Iſle of *Sicily* being again united

Sardinia.

united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never ſeparated from it; except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his ſon, the better to fit him for the bed of *Iſabel* Princeſſe of *Caſtile*, with whom the match was then in treaty; and when the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip* his eldeſt Son, on his marriage with *Mary* Qu. of *England*, who thereupon was ſtyled King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Hieruſalem*. But this held only for a year; his Father ſhortly after reſigning to him all his Kingdoms, whereby it became joyned to *Spain* again.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are by ſome ſaid to be but 800000, but as others ſay a million of Ducats; moſt of which is again disburſed on the entertainment of the *Vice-roy*, and the defence of the Iſland. The Arms are, *Or*, four Pallets *Gules* (being thoſe of *Aragon*) betwixt two Flanches *Argent*, charged with as many Eagles *Sable*, beaked *Gules*, which was the bearing of *Manfroy* King of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, ſpoken of before, who gave thoſe Armes with reference to his deſcent from the *German* Emperours.

This Iſland for the number of its Nobility compares with *Naples*, as having in the time of *Ortelius*, 80 years ago, 7 Princes, 4 Dukes 13 Marqueſſes, 14 Earls, 1 Vicount, 48 Barrons: Men of authority and power in their ſeveral Territories, and therefore not permitted to live much in the Iſland, the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in the Court of *Spain*; but more to ſatisfie that King upon reaſon of State, than any affection of their own to ſo long an exile. And for the Government of the Church

Here are
Arch-biſhops 3. Biſhops 9.

The Kingdome of SARDINIA.

THE Iſland and Kingdom of *SARDINIA* lyeſt Weſt from *Sicily*; from the neareſt point whereof called Cape *Boii*, or Cape *Coro*, it is diſtant about 200 miles. It is in length 180 miles, 90 in breadth, 560 in the Circuit; and is ſituate under the 4th. *Climate*, the longeſt day being 14 hours.

In the time of *Ariſtotle* it was called *Ichnuſa*, next *Sandaliotis*, from the reſemblance which it hath to a mans Shooe or Sandals; and finally *Sardinia* from *Sardus* the Son of *Hercules*, who coming out of *Africk* poſſeſſed the ſame. For this there is ſufficient authority amongſt the Ancients. Of the firſt names ſaith *Pliny* in as plain terms as may be, that *Timæus* called *Sardinia Sandaliotis*; and *Myrſilus*, *Ichnuſa*, from the ſimilitude which it hath to the Shooe-ſole, or impreſſion of a mans foot on the ground; ***Sardiniam Timæus***, Sandaliotin *appellavit ab effigie ſoleæ*; *Myrſilus*, Ichnuſam *à ſimilitune veſtigii*. And for the laſt nothing can be more plain than that of *Pauſanias*, who tells us that the firſt who came by ſhipping into *Sardinia*, were certain *Africans* under the conduct of *Sardus* the Son of *Maceris*, whom the *Egyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who coming into this Iſland then called *Ichnuſa*, τὸ ὄνομα ἀπὸ τοῦ Σάρδου τούτου μετέβαλεν ὁ νῆσος, cauſed it after his own name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the people in the *Latin* tongue are called *Sardi*; the adjoyning Sea, *Mare Sardoum*. And to this name it was ſo conſtant, that no following Plantations from other Countreys were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Attica*, led by *Iolaus*, came and ſetled here, where they built *Olbion*, and *Agrillis*, leaving a memory of *Iolaus* their Captain in ſome places, which remained in the time of *Pauſanias*, called *Iolaia*; and taking to themſelves for his ſake, the name of *Iolatenſes*. And after the deſtruction of *Troy*, ſome of that ſcattered Nation came and planted in ſome void parts of the Iſland, kept to themſelves the name of *Ilienſes*, and by that name are mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Livy*. But neither of theſe Nations did attempt the change of the name, becauſe not of ability to ſuppreſs or out-power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puiſſant Nation than the former were; and ſuch as by the neerneſs of their habitation (*Sardinia* being diſtant but 160 miles from *Africk*) had all advantages to make (as at laſt they did) a full Conqueſt of it: building therein the Citys of *Charmis*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulchi*; and holding it untill it was unjuſtly extorted from them by the *Romans* at the end of the firſt *Punick* War: at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*, and ſo not able to reſiſt.

But of the Name and firſt Plantations of this Iſland we have ſaid enough. Let us now look upon the place; in which it is reported that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venimous nor hurtful Beaſt, but the Fox only, and a little Creature like a Spider, which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pools it hath, and ſome very plentiful of Fiſh; but generally ſo deſtitute of River-water, that they are fain to keep the rain which falls in Winter for their uſe in Somer. By means whereof, and for that there is no paſſage for the Northern Winds, being obſtructed by the high Mountains neer Cape *Lugudori*, the Air is generally unhealthy, if not peſtilential: Inſomuch that *Tully* writing to his brother *Quintus* being then in this Iſland, adviſeth him to remember, as in point of health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and ſpeaking of *Tigellius*, a *Sardinian* born, ſaith of him, that he was more peſtilent than the Country which bred him.

The ſoyl is very fertile in reſpect of *Corſica*, but barren if compared with *Sicil*; which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any natural defect in the ſoyl it ſelf. Well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheeſe, and Hides, Sardinia. which are ſent hence yearly into *Italie* and other places. The Horſes hereof, hot, head-ſtrong, and hard to be broken, but will laſt long. The Bullocks naturally amble, ſo that the Countrey-man rideth them as familiarly, as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Aſſes. Here is alſo the Beaſt called *Mufrones*, or *Muſcriones*, found in *Corſica* alſo, but in an other part of *Europe*; ſomewhat reſembling a Stag, but of ſo ſtrong an hide, that it is uſed by the *Italians* inſtead of Armour: Of the skin of which carried to *Cordova* in *Spain*, and there dreſſed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is ſaid that he will dye with laughter; Whence came the Proverb, *Riſus Sardonicus*. The truth of which report I ſhall not diſpute, though it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poyſonous nature, cauſeth men to dye with ſuch a Convulſion or Attraction of Sinews, that they ſeem to grin, or laugh at the time of their death.

The people are ſmall of ſtature, in complection inclining to ſwarthineſs; and that either by reaſon of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their *African* extraction: their behaviour much participating of that people alſo. So ſlothful in the times of the *Romans* that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now eſteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to hunting, and ſo prone to Rebellion, that the *Spaniard* permitteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceable amongſt themſelves, and in ſome meaſure courteous unto Strangers alſo. Their language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their diet on meats common and groſs; their apparrel in the Towns (eſpecially that of the women) gorgeous, in the Villages ſordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make moſt ſhew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their neighbourhood to the Pope, and their Subjection to the *Spaniard*, have impoſed upon them. But in their practiſe of it they are looſe enough, going to *Maſs* on Sundaies and Saints daies; which done, they fall to dancing in the midſt of the *Church*, ſinging in the mean time ſongs too immodeſt for an Ale-houſe. Nay, it is thought that their Clergy it ſelf is the moſt rude, ignorant and illiterate of any people in *Chriſtendome*; ſaying their Maſſes rather by rote, than reaſon, and utterly unable to give any accompt of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, *viz.* Cape *Lugudore*, towards *Corſica*, and Cape *Cagliari*, towards *Africk*: the firſt the leaſt, and withall mountainous and barren; the laſt the larger, levell, and by much more fruitfull. Chief Cities of the whole, 1 *Calaris*, firſt built by the *Carthaginians*, and ſituate in that point of the Iſland which lyeth neareſt to *Africk*; which from hence took the name of Cape *Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of ſuch fame, when it was firſt taken by *Gracchus* for the uſe of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs Urbium*; and was deſtroyed by the ſaid *Gracchus*, the better to diſable the Natives from rebelling againſt the Conquerours. Being new built again in more ſetled times, it was a ſecond time deſtroyed by the *Saracens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Piſans*, at ſuch time as they were Maſters of this part of the Iſland. Very well fortified by Nature, as ſeated on the top of an hill; and hath under it a ſpacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchants. The Town it ſelf adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the See of an Arch-biſhop, many fair Turrets, and the conſtant reſidence of the Vice-roy: from whoſe authority it is exempt by eſpecial priviledge, as to the Legal Government of it, and ordered by a Common Council of its own Citizens. 2. *Boſſa*, on the Weſt ſide of the Iſland, another Arch-Epiſcopal See. 3 S. *Reparata* on the North, looking towards *Corſica*. 4 *Aquilaſtro*, on the Weſtern ſhores. 5 *Saſſari*, a Town of conſequence, where they have an *Aqueduct* twelve miles long, reaching from thence unto S. *Gavius*. *Alges-Boſa*, a good Town, ſituate in a wholſome air, and a fertile ſoyl; and having a fair Haven of ſix miles in length, in which the ſhips of *Genoa* and *Catolonia* do moſt commonly ride. 7 *Oreſtagne*, a large Town, but very ill peopled, by reaſon of a bad air which proceeds from the Fens; the Country about which gives Title to the Marqueſs of *Oreſtagne*. 8 *Turrita*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better than a ruine; yet giving Title to the third Arch-biſhop of this Iſland, who is called in Latine *Turritanus*. Here are alſo in divers parts of this Iſland the remainders of ſundry Towers and Forts, which the people call *Noracks*, from *Nora*, one of the ſons of *Geryon*; who (as they think) came into this Country, and built the firſt dwelling or manſion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath ſo much in it of Hiſtorical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nora*; ſomewhat before the Expedition of the *Atticks* under *Iolaus*, as *Pauſanias* teſtifieth.

This Iſland taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is ſaid, was firſt under the immediate Juriſdiction of the *Prefect* of the City of *Rome*: but after by *Juſtinian* was made a Province of his new Dioceſe of *Africk*; and as a part thereof, or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Saracens*, *anno* 807. From them recovered by the joynt-forces of the *Piſans*, and *Genoeſe*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called Cape *Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Piſans*, and the Northern towards *Corſica* to thoſe of *Genoa*. But the *Genoeſe* not content with the partage, (their portion of the Iſland being leſs in quantity and worſe in quality) began to quarrel with the *Piſans*, and at laſt to break into open wars. To part the fray, Pope *Boniface* the 8. beſtowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoeſe*, *anno* 1324. became Maſter of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend ſome Title to it in right of the Kingdome of *Sicil*, then in his poſſeſſion; to ſome preceding Kings whereof it had once been ſubject: and having backed that Claim by the Popes Donation, who challenged it as a part of S. *Peters* Patrimony, incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Burbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpoſe of performance; that being only a device to fetch him off from the party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered; and was as ſuddainly laid by, as it had done the feat intended in the Propoſition.

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who reſides at *Calaris*, and muſt of neceſſity be a *Spaniard*; under whom are two Deputy Governors, *Spaniards* alſo; the one for Cape *Cagliari*, the other for Cape *Lugudori*. Inferiour Officers of command may be of the Natives. What profits ariſe hence to the Crown of *Spain*, I have no where found. The *Arms* hereof are ſaid to be *Or*, a Croſs *Gules*, betwixt four *Saracens* heads *Sable*, curled *Argent*. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but firſt taken (as ſome ſay) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occaſion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found ſevered from their Bodies in the battel of *Alcoraz*, *anno* 1094. won by *Don Pedro* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers ſmall Iſlands about *Sardinia*, as 1 *Iſola Roſſa*, heretofore called *Phintanis*. 2 The Iſle of *Hercules*, now called *Aſinaria*. 3 S. *Peters*, anciently *Hierucum*, or *Accipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which, as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Iſland
Arch-biſhops 3. Biſhops 15.

The Land of the CHURCH.

WEſt of the Realm of *Naples* lyeth the *LAND OF THE CHURCH*, extended North and South, from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuſcan* Seas. Bounded on the North-eaſt with the River *Trontus*; on the South-eaſt, with the *Axofenus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-weſt by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which ſeperated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-weſt with the River *Piſeo*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuſcany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this accompt the Popes Dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italie*; having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other above one hundred miles, and in the length above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth moſt fitly for the command of all the reſt, it being very eaſie for the Popes to convey their forces by Sea or Land into what part thereof they pleaſe. And were it not that the Popes commonly are of ſeveral factions; and that the Succeſſor purſueth not the deſigns of his Predeceſſors, but hath his own ends to himſelf, which for the moſt part are driven on without conſideration of increaſing the publick *Patrimony*; it is not poſſible, but that the Pope long before this time had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, conſidering the extraordinary fertility of the ſoyl, able to ſpare proviſions for the greateſt Armies; the multitudes of people which it may afford, in regard they are ſo ſeldome conſumed by wars; and that the men of this Dominion (but chiefly thoſe of *Rome*, and the parts adjoyning) are conceived to be the beſt Souldiers of *Italie*; as retaining ſome ſparks of their Anceſters valour, together with their gravity, magnificence, and a certain greatneſs of courage, which ſeems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preſerve alſo to this day ſo much of the ancient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of life before Trades or Merchandiſe. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dreſſed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry: yet for their *Manufactures* they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both ſides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little coſt might be made very uſefull: yet do they no way improve their fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of *Traffick*, which is the main defect of the *Papal Politie*, and filleth a rich Country full of poor and indigent perſons. But to proceed to the deſcription of the Popes Eſtate, it containeth the Provinces of 1 *Romandiola*, 2 the Territory of *Ferrara*, 3 the eſtate of *Urbine*, 4 *Marca Anconitana*, 5 *Ducato Spolitano* with *Sabinia*, 6 S. *Peters Patrimony*, and 7 *Campagna di Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Iſaurus* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from the Dukedom of *Urbine* on the Eaſt, to the Dukedom of *Parma* on the Weſt, from which parted by the River *Panaro*, called of old *Scultenna*: and from the *Apennine* on the South, to *Padus*, and the *Adriatick* on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the *Roman* Conſul, who having won it from the *Galls* planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he purſued this war againſt the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better paſſage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Cauſey, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*. Chief Rivers hereof, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, which are only borderers, 1 *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2 *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1 *Bononia*, (or *Boulogne*) ſeated in a ſpacious plain neer the *Appennine* hills, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building antick, ſeeming for the moſt part to be the work of the *Lombards*, the foundation of the houſes of Free-ſtone, the reſt of bricks; built with Arched Cloyſters towards the ſtreet, under which one may walk dry in the greateſt rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief Univerſity of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much ſtudied here, inſomuch that from hence proceed the famous Civilians, *Joannes Andreas*, *Aza*, *Bartholus*, and *Socinus*. I believe they have built Caſtles in the air, which aſcribe the founding of this Univerſity to *Theodoſius* the 2. The Charter of this Foundation

Romandiola.

tion dated *anno* 423. is an idle and fooliſh thing: For there it is ſaid, that at the inſtitution there were preſent *Gualter* Earl of *Poictiers*, Embaſſador for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: when at that time, neither thoſe Earldoms, or thoſe Kingdoms, were in *rerum natura*. It is ſituate on the River *Apoſa*, and was by former Writers called *Felſina*. Near unto this Town, in a Demi-Iſland called *Forcelli*, was that meeting between *Auguſtus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*; wherein they agreed on the *Triumvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome* among themſelves: Which combination was confirmed by the enſuing Proſcription; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Ciſero*, *Lepidus* proſcribed his Brother; *Antonius*, his Uncle. 2 *Rimini*, anciently called *Ariminum*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Ariminum*, of no great note but for giving name unto this City, and now called *Marechia*. The City large, and ſeated in a plentiful and pleaſant ſoyl, abundantly productive of Wines, Figs, and Olives: wealthy withall, the trade which formerly enriched *Ravenna*, being for the moſt part managed here. Divided by the River into the City and the Suburbs; but joyned together by a fair and ſtately Bridge, built over it by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; who alſo erected in the City a *Triumphal* Arch. It is ſituate ſomewhat Eaſt of the River *Rubicon*, which in thoſe times divided *Italie* from *Gaule*: upon the bank whereof, looking towards this Town, there was an old Marble, Pillar having on it a *Latine* Inſcription to this purpoſe, *viz. Leave here thy Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and paſs not with thy Forces beyond the* Rubicon; *whoſoever goeth againſt this command, let him be held an Enemy to the people of* ROME. Which Rule when *Cæſar* had tranſgreſſed, and ſurprized this City, he ſo frighted *Pompey* and his faction, that they abandoned *Italie* and *Rome* it ſelf, and withdrew themſelves into *Epirus*. It is ſaid that *Cæſar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the Sooth-ſayers gathered, that he ſhould be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which dream, and ſeveral prodigies hapning at the ſame time with it, did ſo incourage him in his enterpriſe, that he is ſaid, at the paſſing over *Rubicon* to have ſaid theſe words, *Eamus quo nos Deorum oſtenta, &c.* Let us go whither the ſins of our Enemies, and the prodigies of the Gods do call us. In memory of which venturous, but fortunate action, he cauſed a monument to be erected in this City, with his Name and Titles. It was anciently a *Roman* Colony, and in the buſtles hapning betwixt the Pope and the Emperor, was ſeized on by the *Malateſti*, as *Bononia* was by the *Bentivoli*, two potent Families of theſe parts; who held them in defiance of the Popes of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church by Pope *Julio* the ſecond. 3 *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick* Sea, where there is made ſo much Salt, that they furniſh therewith all their neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardy*; the Pope receiving for his Cuſtomes of this one commodity no leſs than 60000 Crowns *per annum*. 4 *Furlii*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, ſeated in a very pleaſant air, and a fruitful ſoyl, betwixt two freſh ſtreams; of which the one is called *Ronchus*, and the other *Montonus*. 5 *Faventia*, now called *Faenza*, on the banks of *Anemus*, a calm gentle River; an ancient City, but well peopled: much benefitted by the Flax which groweth in the adjoyning fields, and the Earthern Veſſels which they vend to moſt parts of *Italie*. It was firſt given unto the Popes by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, whom they but ſorrily requited for ſo great a courteſie. 6 *Sarſina*, an old City, ſeated at the foot of the *Appennine*, the birth-place of *Plautus* the Comedian. 7 *Imola*, anciently called *Forum Cornelii*, and 8 *Ceſena*, Cities both of them of no ſmall Antiquity; but this laſt the fairer built, the better peopled, and the more ſtrongly fortified: there being a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an hill, the work of *Frederick* the 2. Emperour and King of *Germany*. This Town, with that of *Sarſina* ſpoken of before, ſeem to be ſeated on the banks of the River *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*. 9 *Ravenna*, ſituate in the embracements of two rivers called *Montonus* and *Ronchus*, by the confluence whereof at their fall or influx into the *Adriatick*: it was once beautified with one of the faireſt Havens in the World, and for that cauſe made the road of one of the two Navies, which *Auguſtus* kept alwayes manned to command the whole Empire of *Rome*: the other riding at *Miſenus* in *Campania*. This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper Sea, awed and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, *&c.* the other at *Miſenus*, in the lower Sea, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Africk*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* The Walls of this City are ſaid to have been built or repaired by *Tiberius Cæſar*; the whole City to have been much beautified by *Theodoricus* King of the *Gothes*, who built here a moſt ſtately and magnificent Palace; the ruines whereof are ſtill eaſily diſcernable. The private buildings are but mean, the publick ones are of a grave, but ſtately ſtructure. Of which the principal heretofore was the Church of S. *Mary the Round*, whoſe roof was of one entire ſtone, and honoured with the rich Sepulchre of the ſaid King *Theodorick*: which the Souldiers (in the ſack of this City by the *French*, *anno* 1512.) pulled down, together with the Church it ſelf, only to get the Jewels and Medals of it. The principal at the preſent is the Church of S. *Vitalis*, the pavement whereof is all of Marble, and the walls all covered with precious ſtones of many ſorts, but unpoliſhed as they were taken out of Mines; which ſhewed as well the Magnificence as Antiquity of it. The *Patriarchs* of this City, in regard it was ſo long the Regal and Impartial Seat, have heretofore contended for precedency with the Popes themſelves: not brought to yeeld the place to the proud pretenders, till *Donus the* 2d. in the ſhort time of his Papacy, about the year 975. did in fine prevail. And this they did upon good reaſons, this City having been anciently the *Metropolis* of the Province called *Flaminia* afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperor *Honorius*, and his ſucceſſors; next of the *Gothiſh* Kings, then of the *Exarchs*, and laſt of its Patriarchs. And it was choſen for this purpoſe, becauſe of the plentiful Territory, ſince covered with water; and the conveniency of the Haven, at this day choked: though lately by expence of a great deal of treaſure, the Fens about the City have been very much dreined, and the Bogs in ſome places turned to fruitfull Fields, to the great benefit hereof both for health and pleaſure.

Romandiola.

As for the Fortunes of this Country, it was anciently, together with the Territories of *Ferrara* and ſome part of *Trevigiana*, the habitation of the *Boii*, who with the *Senones*, the *Inſubres*, and the *Cenomanni*, made up the whole body of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, of whom more hereafter. Finding the *Romans* grown too near them, by whom the *Senones* their next neighbours had been rooted out, they thought it was high time to beſtir themſelves, eſpecially after the defeat given them by the Conſul *Minutius*, who carried the War home unto them, which never any of the *Romans* had done before. For after this, under *Corolamus* their King, they ſet upon *Marcellus* the Conſul, killing 3000 of his men, but vanquiſhed and ſubdued by him in a following Battel. Vanquiſhed again not far from *Mutina* by *Cornelius Merula* with the loſs of 14000 of their men, they called both the *Inſubrian* and *Tranſalpine Galls* to come in to aid them; but being then vanquiſhed alſo at the battel of *Telamon* (of which more in *Lombardy*) *A. V. C.* 528. they were followed home, and utterly ſubdued by the Conſul *Flaminius*, as before was ſaid: after which times this Country following the ſame forrunes with the reſt of *Italy*, became ſubject to the *Goths*, as a part of their *Italian* Conqueſts, whoſe Kingdom here was no ſooner deſtroyed by *Narſes*, but the *Lombards* entred: To give a ſtop to whoſe ſucceſſes, and preſerve ſo much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them, it was thought good by *Juſtin* the ſecond to ſend thither an Imperial Officer of principal command and note, whom he honoured with the Title of *Exarch*, his reſidence ſetled at *Ravenna*, as ſtanding moſt commodiouſly to hinder the incurſions of the barbarous Nations, and withall to receive ſuch aids from the Eaſtern parts as his occaſions did require. Theſe *Exarchs* having divided *Italy* into many Governments, appointed over each ſome ſupreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes; and even the City of *Rome* it ſelf (ſo far then was it from being ſubject to the Pope in *Temporal* matters) had a chief Officer of this kind, (accomptable to the *Exarch*, and ſubordinate to him) whoſe Government was called the *Roman* Dukedom. That which they kept unto themſelves as their own *peculiar*, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rhegium*, *Mutina*, *Bononia*, *Claſſi*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, *Sarcino*, *Parma* and *Placentia*: which ten Cities with the Territories belonging to them made up that *Diſtrict*, which properly was called the *Exarchate of Ravenna*, much mentioned in the Hiſtories of the middle times, by reaſon of the continual Wars which they had with the *Lombards*, but newly entred when this Magiſtracy had its firſt beginning. The names of theſe *Exarchs* are as followeth.

The *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*.

A.C.					
570	1	*Longinus.* 21.	645	9	*Theodorus Calliopa.* 10.
591	2	*Smaragdus.* 4.	655	10	*Olympius.* 2.
595	3	*Romanus Patricius.*	657	11	*Theodorus Calliopa* II. 30.
596	4	*Callinicus.* 13.	687	12	*Joh. Plotina.* 15.
609	5	*Smaragdus.* 3.	702	13	*Theophylactus.* 25.
612	6	*Joh. Lamigius.* 4.	727	14	*Paulus.*
616	7	*Eleutherius.* 5.	728	15	*Eutipenus.* 12.
921	8	*Iſaacus Patricius.* 24.			

In the days of this *Exarch Ravenna* was taken from the Empire by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, *anno* 740. but regained by *Charls* the Great, and by him given to the Biſhops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*, as a requital for the Kingdom of *France* confirmed unto King *Pepin* his father, by the conſent and authority of the Popes. The donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarchs*, and partly to make the people obedient to thoſe Prelates, changed the name of the Country from *Flaminia* (by which name it was formerly known) to *Romandiola*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithſtanding which Donation or original Grant, the Popes injoyed not long the poſſeſſion of it, the Emperors of *Germany* and their Vice-gerents in *Italy* wreſting it by ſtrong hand out of the poſſeſſion of the Church, and giving it to ſuch as deſerved well of them, and were moſt likely or moſt able to uphold their Faction; and ſo it ſtood, till the laſt Popes conſpiring with the *French* Kings, *Lewis* the 12 and *Francis* the firſt, brought them into *Italy anno* 1509. and by their aids, and by the Cenſures of the Church, ſo prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna* and ſome other places out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many petit Princes out of other Cities which they pretended to belong to St. *Peter's* Patrimony, and thereby got poſſeſſion of all thoſe Territories which lie betwixt the State of *Venice* and the Marches of *Ancona*.

2. The Territory of **FERRARA** lieth in the very skirts of *Romandiola* towards the *Venetian*, extending one hundred and ſixty miles in length and about fifty in breadth, the ſoil thereof exceeding rich, but ſubject to the over-flowings of the River *Po*, which makes the air in many places to be ſomewhat unwholeſom; and though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof, have been at great charge in raiſing high Banks and Ramparts to keep in the waters, yet could not this reſiſt the violence of the River, falling from ſo high a Spring, and ſeconded with ſo great Land-floods (as ſometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them do they what they can. The places of moſt note herein are, 1 *Graffignan* in the borders of *Tuſcany* near the *Apennine*. 2 *Carpi*, a place of great importance, ſeated in the midſt of this Dukedom, belonging heretofore to the Houſe of the *Pici*; but partly by exchange made with *Marcus Picus*, partly for one hundred thouſand Crowns in ready mony given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lord hereof, it was by *Charls* the 5 incorporated into this Eſtate. 3 *Commachia*, ſeated in the Marſhes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Eſto* were at firſt called onely Lords of *Commachia*; a place which yielded great profit to the former Dukes by the fiſhing of Eels. 4 *Saxole*, given by Duke *Alphonſo* in exchange for

Ferrara.

Carpi. Here is alſo the Territory and Lordſhip of the *Poleſine*, the cauſe of ſo many quarrels and contentions between the antient Dukes of *Ferrara* and the State of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom is in the capital City, that which denominates the whole, *Ferrara*, a City of five miles in compaſs, ſo called from the Iron mines which are about it, commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Po*, which by reaſon of its breadth, depth, and violent ſwiftneſs of the Current, is a ſufficient Rampart to it on that ſide, the other ſides being fortified with a ſtrong Wall, and a ſpacious Mote; in the middle of the City is a fair and ſpacious Market-place, into which do open on all ſides about twenty Streets, all of them half a mile in length, and all ſo ſtrait and evenly built, that the furtheſt end of each of them may be eaſily ſeen; near to this Market-place is a little Iſland, in which the former Dukes had a ſtately Palace, called *Belvedere*, from the fair proſpect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North ſide of the City a large Park for pleaſure. The other houſes are for the moſt part built of fair Free-ſtone, not joining unto one another, as in other Cities, but at a pretty diſtance, with neat Gardens between. *Arioſto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioſo*, and *Hierome Savanarolo* the prophetical Frier, were both of them natives of this place, of which the firſt lieth here intomb'd, the laſt for preaching againſt the Pope was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City, together with *Favenza*, was given by *Deſiderius* their laſt King to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by ſo great a benefit; but being taken from them by the Emperours of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, it was again recovered by the proweſs of the Counteſs *Mathildis*, *anno* 1107. who took it with many other Towns in *Italie* from the Emperour *Henry* the 4. and at her death conferred the ſame upon the Church. The Popes once more poſſeſſed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the Houſe of *Eſte*, a man of great ſway in the affairs of *Italie*, who valiantly had defended it againſt *Ezelinus* Vice-gerent of *Frederick* the 2. This was the firſt of this Family who had *Ferrara* in propriety, his Anceſtors being called before the Marqueſſes of *Eſte*, and ſometimes Marqueſſes of *Ferrara*, (but in Title onely) as Governours hereof in behalf of the Popes of *Rome*. *Obizo* the Grand-child of this firſt *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the firſt (who was willing to make what mony he could of his Lands in *Italie*) the Cities of *Rhegium* and *Modena*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legat of Pope *Benedict* the 9. with the Popes conſent, *anno* 1304. Other improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of War, but none of them continued conſtant in their poſſeſſion, but theſe three Cities and the Territories adjoyning to them. As for this Family *de Eſte* (*Familia Ateſtina* it is called in *Latine*) it took this name from *Eſte* or *Ateſte*, a ſmall Town in the Seigneury of *Venice*, conferred upon the Anceſtors of this *Azo* by *Charle* the Great. And for the Chiefs or Princes of it they have been men of great authority and power in their ſeveral times, commanding ſometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and ſometimes the Popes; great favourers of learned men, and advancers of Learning; inſomuch that the *Reinaldo's* and *Rogero's* of *Eſte* make up a great part of the Poems of *Arioſto* and *Taſſo*, two of the greateſt Wits of *Italy*; and finally allied to many of the beſt Houſes of Chriſtendom, the Catalogue of whom, ſince they were made the hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here ſubjoyned.

The Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Ferrara*.

1236	1	*Actius*, or *Azo de Eſte*, the ninth of that name, but firſt hereditary Marqueſs of *Ferrara*, by the Grant of the Pope.
1264	2	*Obizo*, the ſixth of that name, Grand-ſon to *Azo* by his ſon *Rinaldo*, ſecond Marqueſs of *Ferrara*.
1293	3	*Azo* the tenth of *Eſte*, and II of *Ferrara*, ſon to *Obizo*.
1308	4	*Franciſco*, brother to *Azo* the 2. After whoſe death, *anno* 1312. *Ferrara* for a time was under the command of the Popes.
1312	5	*Aldobrandinus*, brother of *Franciſcus*, who had the Title to, but not the poſſeſſion of *Ferrara*.
1315	6	*Reinaldo* the 3 of *Eſte*, and the firſt of *Ferrara*, recovered *Ferrara* from the Pope, and caſt out his Garriſons. 1317.
1335	7	*Obizo* II. brother of *Reinaldo*.
1352	8	*Alabrandino* II. ſon of *Obizo*.
1361	9	*Nicolao* the 2. of *Eſte*, and firſt of *Ferrara*, brother of *Alabrandino*, whoſe children being young he diſpoſſeſſed of the Eſtate.
1388	10	*Albertus*, brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Ferrara*, *anno* 1392.
1393	11	*Nicolas* II. baſe ſon of *Albertus*.
1441	12	*Leonellus* the baſe ſon of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful wedlock, invaded the Eſtate and held it.
1450	13	*Borſius*, another of the baſe ſons of *Nicolas* 2. ſucceeded *Leonel* in the Eſtate, who being made Duke of *Mutina* by *Frederick* the 3. was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of *Ferrara* alſo, *anno* 1470.
1471	14	*Hercules*, the lawful ſon of *Nicolas* the 2. made Knight of the Garter by King *Edward* the 4.
1505	15	*Alphonſo* the ſon of *Hercules*.
1534	16	*Hercules* II. ſon of *Alphonſo*.
1559.	17	*Alphonſo* II. who dying without lawful iſſue, *anno* 1595. Pope *Clement* the 8. challenged

Urbine.

lenged this Eſtate in the right of the Church; and partly by force, partly by compoſition (whereof we ſhall ſay more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thouſand Crowns; now not ſo much worth unto the Pope, by reaſon of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

The Arms of theſe Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illuſtrious Family, and for the ſtrangeneſs of the Coat, I ſhall here put down) were Pale-wiſe of three pieces, 1 *Partie per Feſſe*, in a chief *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed *Sable*, membred, langued, and crowned *Gules*; and in Baſe *Azure*, three Flowers *de Lys Or*, within a Border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2 *Gules*, two Keys in *Saltier*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, charged in *Feſſe* with an Eſchocheon of pretence *Azure*, ſupporting an Eagle of the third, membred and crowned of the ſecond. Over all in chief a Papal Crown *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry Gems *Azure* and ***Purple***. The 3 as the firſt Counter-placed. Which Coat upon the falling of the Houſe of *Ferrara*, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as deſcended of it.

3 From the Territory of *Ferrara* proceed we to the Eſtate of *Urbine*; both Dukedoms and diſtinct Eſtates till theſe later times: this laſt the yonger of the two, and conſequently (as in the ordinary courſe of Nature) the ſurviver alſo; but ſwallowed at laſt into the Popedome as the other was. Bounded on the Weſt with the River *Iſaurus* (now called *Figlia*) by which parted from *Romandiola*, on the Eaſt from *Marca Anconitana*; on the North with the *Adriatick*; and on the South with the *Apennine* hils, by which parted from *Tuſcanie*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60 miles, 35 in breadth: Some pieces and Eſtates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Signeuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The ſoyl is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oyl, plentiful of Figs and other fruits of moſt pleaſant taſte; and in a word, affording all things neceſſary for the life of man. But the air is generally unwholſome, eſpecially about *Peſaro* and *Foſſombrune*, by reaſon of the low flats and overflowes of the water. The principal commodities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Peſaro*, ſold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dryed Figs, which they vend unto *Bologne*, and other places.

The moſt famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Metremo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reaſon of that great battel fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Aſdrubal* the brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Conſuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which after a long and hot diſpute, the victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* ſlain, (as *Livie* writeth) and 5400 taken priſoners. *Polybius* ſpeaks of a leſs number both ſlain and taken; and like enough it is, that *Livie*, to advance the honour of that Family, might inlarge a little. But whatſoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this victory turned the tide of the ***Roman*** Fortune, which from this time began to flow amain upon them: the Citizens of ***Rome*** beginning at this time to trade and traffick, to follow their affairs, and make contracts and bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do; and that with as ſecure a confidence, as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italie*. This famous River riſeth in the *Apennine* hils, and paſſing by *Foſſombrune*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom ſeven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Epiſcopal Sees) and three hundred Caſtles. The principal of which are, 1 *Urbine*, one of the moſt ancient Cities of *Italy*, which both *Tacitus* and *Plinie* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Dukes ordinary ſeat in Summer. It is ſeated at the foot of the *Apennine* hils, in a very rich and pleaſant ſoil, built in the faſhion of a *Miter*, and therefore called *Urbinas, quod urbes binas continere videbatur*. *Franciſco Ubaldi* the firſt Duke, built here a very ſumptuous Palace, and therein founded a moſt excellent Library, repleniſhed with a great number of rare Books, covered and garniſhed with gold, ſilk, and ſilver; all ſcattered and diſperſed, in the time that *Caſar Borgia* ſeized on the Eſtate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the Hiſtory of ***England***, which paſſeth under his name, was a Native here: an Hiſtory of worth enough as the times then were, except only in ſuch paſſages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whoſe ***Peter-pence*** he was then in *England*) whoſe credit and Authority he preferreth ſometimes, before truth it ſelf. 2 *Piſaurum*, now called *Piſara*, the ſtrongeſt Town in all the Dukedom, two miles in compaſs, and fortified according to the modern art of War: the fortifications of it being firſt begun by *Franciſco Maria*, and perfected by *Guido Ubaldo* his ſon and ſucceſſor; the ordinary ſeat of the Duke in winter, well garriſoned, and therefore truſted with the publick Armory. It is ſeated neer the ſhore of the *Adriatick* at the mouth or influx of the River *Iſaurus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handſome buildings, and a very ſtrong wall; the ſoyl exceeding rich, but the air ſo bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating of too much fruits, nothing is more frequent here than Funerals, eſpecially in the moneth of *Auguſt*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3 *Senogaille*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, a ſtrong and well-fenced City near the River ***Metaurus***, over which there is a Bridge conſiſting of eighty Arches; made of that length, not ſo much in regard of the breadth of the Chanel, as the frequent over-flowings of that turbulent water. 4 *Foſſombrune*, called in old Authors ***Forum Sempronii***, for air and ſoyl of the ſame nature with *Piſaurum*; bought by D. *Frederick* of *Galeazzo Malateſte*, for thirteen hundered Florins of Gold. 5 ***Cabo***, or *Cagli*, on the Sea. 6 S. *Leon*, a good Town, and the chief of the Country of *Montfeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7 ***Fano***, not far from the Sea, an Epiſcopal City, and anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*: of old times called ***Fanum Fortuna***, from a Temple there erected to goddeſs ***Fortune***, (***Te facimus*** Fortuna *deam*, as the Poet hath it.) 8 *Eugubinum* (now called *Augubeo*) a Town be-

longing

Urbine.

longing to theſe Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoletan* Dukdom; and there we ſhall hear further of it. Of the Caſtles the principal are, *Marivola*, and the Rock of S. *Leon*, which were the laſt that held good for Duke *Guido Ubaldo* againſt *Cæſar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinoys*, ſon to Pope *Alexander* the ſixth; and the firſt which did return again under his obedience. For which cauſe when he fled the ſecond time from the ſaid *Borgia*, he diſmantled all his other Caſtles, as being more likely to admit than reſiſt the Invader; and theſe two laſt being very well fortified, he left to keep poſſeſſion of the Country for him.

Here is alſo within the limits of this Eſtate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINE*, an ancient and well-peopled Town, of a ſtrong natural ſituation amongſt the hils: an Eſtate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Varena*, till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julia di Varena* the heir hereof, conveyed it by Mariage unto *Guido Ubaldi* Duke of *Urbin*. But the Pope pretending an Eſcheat for want of heirs males, made himſelf Maſter of it by force of Arms: and gave it to his ſon *Piero Farneſi*, whom afterwards with the conſent of the College of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and ſetled *Camerine* on the Church, as it ſtill continues.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently the habitation of the *Senones*; a Nation of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, who only had the honour of ſacking *Rome*, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at laſt (of which more in *Lombardy*) and the Country peopled with *Roman* or *Latine* Colonies, it followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Italie*; till the time of *Conradin*, the laſt Duke of the Imperial Houſe of *Schwaben*, when *Urbine* was the firſt ſubdued by the Earls of *Montfeltre*, whoſe Succeſſors increaſing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Eugubio* to it. And in the buſtles betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor, and Pope *Clement* the ſixth, *anno* 1345. *Gelaſſo di Montfeltre* held it by no other Title, but as the Emperours *Vicegerent*. This Family injoyed it till the year 1444. by the Title only of Earls of *Montſeltre*, and Lords of *Urbine*; when *Frederick Ubaldi*, for his ſingular and ſurpaſſing valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the firſt Duke hereof: to hold as Feudataries of the Church, and paying 2240 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of ſuch repute for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the ſixth made *Knight of the Garter*, in recompence of which high honour, the *Engliſh* to this day injoy many privileges in theſe Dominions. *Guido Ubaldi* this Dukes ſon loſt his Eſtate to *Cæſar Borgia*; after whoſe death he did recover it again by the Power and favour of Pope *Julio* the ſecond; to whom ſucceeded *Franciſco Maria di Rovero*, his ſiſters ſon, in whoſe Family it ſtill continues, as will appear by this enſuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of *Urbine*.

1444 1 *Prederick Ubaldi*, of the ancient Family *de Monte feltro*, the firſt Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the *Garter*.

2 *Guido Ubaldi*, ſon of *Frederick*, for a while outed of his Dukedom by *Cæſar Borgia*. He was Knight alſo of the *Garter*.

3 *Franciſco Maria de la Rovero*, ſiſters ſon and next heir to *Guido Ubaldi*, was in his own right Lord of *Senogallia*, and had *Piſauro* from the Pope in reward of his many ſervices done unto the Church; diſſeized for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.

4 *Laurence de Medices*, Father of *Catherine de Medices* the *French* Queen, and of *Alexander* the firſt Duke of *Florence*; was for a while make Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the tenth, (being of that Family) but loſt it ſhortly after to Duke *Franciſco*, who after the death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his Eſtates again, and died poſſeſſed of the Dukedom.

1538 5 *Guido Ubaldo* II. ſon of Duke *Franciſco*.

6 *Franciſco Maria* II. ſon of *Guido* the ſecond.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns *per annum*; but might have been raiſed to a greater ſum, had not the Dukes preferred the love and eaſe of their Subjects, before the filling of their own coffers. He is to raiſe 1200 good Souldiers out of this Eſtate; and more the people would ſupply, if they had occaſion. The Arms hereof *Azure*, a Tower *Argent*, environed with Flower de Lyces *Or*.

4. *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bounded on the Weſt with the ſtate of *Urbine*; on the Eaſt, with the River of *Trentus* and *Druentus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the South, with the *Apennine* Hils, by which parted from the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the North, with the *Adriatick*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, who poſſeſſed all theſe parts on the coaſts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the Eaſt, to that of *Aufidus* on the Weſt. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their war againſt *Rome*, they were invaded and ſubdued by the *Romans*, *A.U.C.* 485. which was about five years before the firſt *Punick* war, under the conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were ſo great and multitudinous a nation, that they were numbred to amount to 360000, which were then brought under the command and vaſſallage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italie* was divided into no more than eight Regions, theſe *Picentes* only made up one; ſo did they alſo when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonini*, they made up one of the ſixteen Provinces, into which *Italie* was divided by thoſe Emperours; and the ſame repute it held in the time of *Conſtantine*, *Picenum* making alwaies one: *Aſculum caput gentis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the head of their Nation, being the *Metropolis* of the Province. Called in thoſe times *Picenum Annonarium*, partly by

Anconitana.

by reaſon of the abundance of grain which it did produce, and partly to diſtinguiſh it from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearneſs unto *Rome* had the name of *Picenum Suburbicarium*, that part of *Campania* at this time which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire it was firſt called *Marcha Firmiana*, from *Firmo*, once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of moſt importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief Seat from *Firmo* to *Ancona* in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, beſides thoſe named already, which are onely borderers, are, 1 *Chientus*, 2 *Sentinus*, and 3 *Potentia*; all riſing in the *Apennine*, and paſſing with a ſwift courſe to the *Adriatick*.

The chief Towns, 1 *Ancona*, ſeated on the Hill *Cimmerius*, ſhooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperour, one of the faireſt in the world; not ſo much for capacity as the pleaſantneſs and beauty of it, the deſcents down unto the water being made of Marble, and very delectable walking on all ſides of it. The City it ſelf is begirt with Hills, on one of which Pope *Clement* the ſeventh built a very ſtrong Caſtle, *anno* 1532. under pretence of defending the Town againſt the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the people in more full ſubjection, who till that time did yearly chooſe their own Magiſtrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Common wealth. 2 *Recanati* (heretofore *Ælia Recina*) ſeated upon the banks of the River *Mulſio*, renowned for the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of *Europe* at her Annual Marts, and a Vein of the moſt excellent Wines. 3. *Firmo*, ſurnamed the *Strong*, in former times of moſt eſteem in all the Province, which was hence called *Marca Firmiana*, and to this day a place of great ſtrength and conſequence, and an Archbiſhops See. 4 *Marcerata*, now of moſt credit, by reaſon that the Popes *Legat* keeps his reſidence there, and with him the Chancery for this Marquiſate. 5 *Loretto*, called in *Latin Lauretana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified againſt the *Turks* and other Pirats, who once ſpoiled the ſame, and might be eaſily tempted thither on the like occaſions: The Church here being admirably rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts to pay their devotions unto our Lady of *Loretto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the removal of whoſe Chamber hither, in our deſcription of *Paleſtine*, you ſhall meet with a very proper Legend. 6 *Aſcoly*, ſurnamed the *Fair*, ſeated at the influx of the River *Druentus*, and on the furtheſt ſide of it towards *Abruzzo*, to which by ſome it is aſcribed; anciently the chief City of the *Picentes*, as before is ſaid, and then called *Aſculum*, conquered by the *Romans* under the conduct of *Sempronius*, *A. V. C.* 485. Nigh unto this City was fought the ſecond Battel between *C. Fabricius* and the *Romans* on the one ſide, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirots* on the other, wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having ſlain 6000 of his Enemies, but yet with ſuch loſs on his ſide alſo, that he affirmed to ſome of his friends and followers, *That ſuch another Victory would quite undo him*; and with ſuch apparency of valour and vertue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this acclamation, *O quam facile eſſet orbem vincere, aut mihi*, Romanis *militibus, aut me rege*, Romanis. This Town alſo was the ſeat of the War called *Bellum ſociale*, raiſed by the people of *Italy* againſt the *Romans*, *Popedius* being both Author of the Rebellion and Captain. They for a while ſorely ſhaked the ſtate of *Rome*, but at laſt were vanquiſhed, and this Town by *Strabo Pompeius* forced and ſpoiled. 7 *Adria*, now not otherwiſe famous then that it gave denomination to the adjoyning Sea, and the Emperour *Adrian*. 8 *Humana*, which together with *Ancona* was given to Pope *Zachary* by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The ſucceeding Popes after the giving of this Inch took the whole Ell.

5. Having ſurveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we muſt next croſs the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedom of SPOLETO (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians* call it) which takes up the Weſtern part of that Province which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*; and therefore before we come to the deſcription of this, we muſt a little look on the ſtate of that. A Country bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the Eaſt parts of *Latium*, on the Weſt with *Tuſcia* or *Hetruria*, on the North with the *Apennine*, on the South with *Pareach* or winding of the *Tyber*, the main body of *Latium*, and with part of *Tuſcany*, which is now called St. *Peters Patrimony*; ſo called, becauſe being ſituate under the ſhade of the *Apennine* Hills it was *Regio umbroſa*; ſome give another reaſon of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, *quaſi* Ὄμβροι, as men that had eſcaped the Deluge, becauſe ſo ancient a people that no body could tell the original of them.

But whatſoever was the reaſon of the name, they were a ſtout and valiant people, and gave the firſt check to *Annibals* carreer after his great Victory at *Thraſymene*, repulſing him with loſs and ſhame from the walls of *Spoleto*; yet not of power ſufficient for all their valour to preſerve their Country from the *Tuſcans*, who are ſaid to have deſtroyed in it 300 good Towns: made by that means, if not plainly ſubject, yet ſo obnoxious to the will and pleaſure of the *Victors*, that at their inſtance or command they ſided with them in a war againſt the *Romans* (whom formerly they had found very quiet neighbours) and by the *Romans* were ſubdued together with the reſt of the Confederates then in arms againſt them, *A. V. C.* 458. *Decius* and *Qu. Fabius* then the fifth time Conſuls, which was about 77 years before *Annibal* fell into their Country. After which time in ſuch eſteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italy* was divided by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; and finally together with *Tuſcia* made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, it taketh up the Weſtern parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was ſaid, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which laſt (now called *Neora*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabines*. The Country of a mixt nature, equally compoſed of very rough hills, and yet moſt delectable vallies; exceeding plentiful of all neceſ-

Spoletano. ſaries, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fœcundity of the women. The Wine hereof is much commended by *Martial*, as the beſt of *Italie*.

> *De* Spoletanis *quæ ſunt carioſa lagenis*
> *Malueris, quam ſi Muſta* Falerna *bibas.*

That is to ſay,

> If with *Spoleto* Bottles once you meet,
> Say that *Falerno* Muſt is not ſo ſweet.

Places of greateſt note herein, 1 *Spoletum*, built partly on the hill, and partly on the lower ground, the reſidence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Longobardians*, who governed as Viceroys or Lord Preſidents of the remoter parts of that Kingdom; from whence the Country round about it was called *Ducato Spoletano*. It is ſtill a Town of good eſteem, populous, and of handſom building, and hath a ſtrong Fortreſs for defence thereof, built upon the ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*, to which men paſs over a great Bridge of ſtone, upheld by 24 great Pillars, which joyns two Mountains together, having between them a deep Valley, but narrow and without any water. *Theodorick* the *Goth* built a fair Palace in this City, rebuilt by *Narſes*, but ſince ruined. 2 *Eugubium*, (now called *Augubio*) ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*, in or near that place where anciently ſtood that City which *Pliny* calls *Iuginium*, *Ptolemy Iſuvium*, utterly ſubverted by the *Goths*: a Town well ſeated in a fruitful and wealthy ſoil, and bleſſed with an induſtrious people, acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that Eſtate was ſwallowed up into the Popedom. 3 *Nuceria*, (now *Nocera*) in *Pliny*'s time called *Alfatenia*, at the foot alſo of the *Apennine*; the people of which in former times much traded in their wooden veſſel. 4 *Aſſiſium*, or *Aſſiſe*, deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the Civil Wars of *Italy*, and onely famous at this time for a See Epiſcopal, and being the birth-place of S. *Francis*, the Founder of the *Franciſcans* or *Cordeliers*, as the *French* call them, but we in *England* the *Gray Friers*. 5 *Citta de Caſtello*, anciently *Tiphernum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6 *Tudertum*, now called *Todi*, ſeated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful Hill.

The reſt of *Umbria* towards the Eaſt, not being within the compaſs of the *Spoletan* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, becauſe the dwelling in times paſt of the ancient *Sabines*, who being taken into *Rome* and made free Denizons of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded betwixt him and *Tatius* then the King of this people, for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City: but after joyning with the *Latins* in a War againſt it, they were ſubdued by *Curius Dentatus* the *Roman* Conſul, and made a ſubject Province of that Common-wealth, *A. V. C.* 463. But though the *Sabines* at this time bare away the name, yet were they not the ſole Maſters of it in theſe elder times, the greateſt part hereof being poſſeſſed by ſome Nations of the *Umbri*, whom by a general name they called *Vilumbri*, (the *Sabines* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a member of that body ſubdued together with the reſt of the *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the diviſion of *Italy* made by *Antoninus* it was called *Nurſia*, and in that made by *Conſtantine* it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*, *Reate* being the *Metropolis* or Head-city of both. A Territory of no great circuit, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines and Fig-trees; watered with the River *Farfarus*, which cutteth through the very midſt of it, and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus*, (now *Lago di Pedeluco*) eſteemed to be the Centre or Navel of *Italy* by ſome ancient Writers, the waters of which are of ſuch a nature, that in ſhort time they will clothe a piece of wood with a coat of ſtone, and yet yieldeth excellent Trouts and other good Fiſh. The Towns and Cities of moſt note are, 1 *Reate* (now called *Riete*) an ancient City, and the *Metropolis* heretofore of all this Tract, as well when it was called *Nurſia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2 *Nurſia*, a City no leſs ancient, ſeated amongſt the Hills, which for the moſt part are covered with Snow; from which Town, being heretofore of more reputation, the Province of *Nurſia*, ſpoken of in the *Itenarary* of *Antoninus*, took denomination. 3 *Magliano*, a pleaſant and well peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory. 4 *Ocriculum*, built amongſt many fruitful Hills, a mile from *Tiber*. 5 *Narnia*, the Country and birth-place of the Emperour *Nerva*, the firſt of all the Emperours not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The ſoil about it is of ſo different and ſtrange a nature, that it is ſaid to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and duſty by Rain; the City well peopled, and a Biſhops See, ſeated upon a very ſteep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar*, (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name; a City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, of which the Popes of *Rome* having got poſſeſſion, never left practiſing till they had got into their power all the reſt of the Country. Little elſe famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Weſtern part thereof is the Lake called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *Ameria*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom where *Dolobella* overthrew ſuch of the *Senónes*, a valiant Nation of the *Gauls*, as had eſcaped the ſword of *Camillus*, *Quinctius*, *Curius*, and other fortunate Commanders in the Wars againſt them; *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (ſaith the Hiſtorian) *qui incenſam à ſe* Romam *gloriaretur*: a former ſlaughter being made of them by *Camillus* on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eaſtern limit of theſe *Umbri*.

5 S. PE-

S. Peters Patrimony.

5. S. PETERS PATRIMONY, properly and ſpecially ſo called, is that part of *Tuſcany* which appertains unto the Church, bounded upon the Eaſt with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*; on the Weſt with the River *Piſeo*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario*, and parteth it from the Eſtate of the great Duke of *Tuſcany*; on the North with the *Apennine* and the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the South with the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name preſently on the donation of the Counteſs *Mathildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, *anno* 110. *Paſchal* the ſecond ſitting in the Chair of *Rome*, to be the *Patrimony* of S. *Peter*, and his Succeſſors in that See. A Country not inferiour unto any in *Italy* for the fertility of the ſoil, but for the moſt part of an unhealthy air, by reaſon of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick Woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanſe it.

The principal Cities and places of moſt obſervation are, 1 *Perugia*, formerly called *Peruſia*, a famous Town, in which *Auguſtus* beſieged *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*, who when they had in vain attempted to ſeduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which alſo at the laſt yielded to the more fortunate Emperour. *Auguſtus* afterwards having much adorned and beautified it, cauſed it to be called *Auguſta*; but it returned not long after to its ancient name: it is ſeated very pleaſantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitful ſoil, well built both for the publick and private ſtructures, a Biſhops See and made an Univerſity, *anno* 1090. In the diſtractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperours and the Popes, this City was ſeized on by the *Baillons*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Oddies*, an oppoſite Faction to them, having got together a ſtrong party of Malecontents, ſo ſuddenly entred one night into the City, that the *Baillons* began to fly, nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Maſters of the Palace but the Chain which was drawn croſs the Gate; one of the Souldiers going about to cut this Chain, and wanting room to wield his arm, cried aloud, *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well underſtood by thoſe furtheſt off, put them to their heels, and the foremoſt; which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too: ſo the City was ſaved. 2 *Orvieto*, ſeated on ſo high a Rock, that it is no ſmall terrour to look down from the top of it into the vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightneſs, and yet the windows of the ſame (if we may credit *Adrianus* who reports it) are made of Alabaſter inſtead of Glaſs. 3 *Viterbo*, famous for the long reſidence of the Popes, at ſuch time as they were affronted by the *Romans* Senators. 4 *Civita Vecchia* (called anciently *Centumcella*) the onely uſeful Haven that belongeth to *Rome*, which being ruined by the *Sarazens*, was rebuilt by the Popes, new named, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle for the defence of their Shipping. 5 *Porto*, ſeated on the mouth of *Tiber* over againſt *Oſtia*, but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both; a Biſhops See, who is one of the ſeven Cardinals which is always aſſiſtant to the Pope. 6 *Farneſe*, the ancient ſeat and patrimony of the *Farneſis*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7 *Bracciano*, which gives the Title of a Duke to a branch of the *Urſins*, a well-known Family of thoſe parts. 8 *Bacchano*, near the laſt in ſound although not in ſite, compaſſed round about with Hills in the form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the midſt, out of which runneth the River *Cremera*, near which the *Fabii* were ſlain.

Here was in this Country alſo the City of the *Veii*, affirmed to be as big as *Athens*, but queſtionleſs of great wealth and power; in a War againſt which, managed for the moſt part by the aforeſaid *Fabii*, 306 of them were ſlain in a day at the battel of *Cremera*, a petit River of the *Tuſcans*: onely one little child of them being left at home, who reſtored the Houſe; and was the Anceſtour of that *Fabius Maximus*, who preſerved *Italie* in the wars with *Annibal*. Of which great ſlaughter thus ſaith *Ovid*;

——— *Veientibus arvis*
Ter centum Fabii, *ter cecidere duo.*

——— On the *Veientine* Plain
Three hundred and ſix *Fabii* were ſlain.

This City of the *Veii* was at laſt, after a ten years ſiege, taken by *Furius Camillus*, and by him levelled with the earth, becauſe he found that the common-people of *Rome* had a mind to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is alſo that fatal River of *Allia*, nigh unto which *Brennus* and his *Galls* (that people, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter, having 200 years before been drawn into *Italie* by the ſweet taſte of the *Italian* Wines) ſlaughtered the *Romans*; the *Roman* Army at that time conſiſting of 40000 Souldiers, moſt of them being raw and unexperienced; the *Galls* not more in number, but naturally of a more fierce and hardy courage, and withall ſo big-boned, that it ſeemeth they were born to be the terrour of Mankind, and the ruine of Cities. Which overthrow at *Allia*, and the vanquiſhment of the *Fabii*, hapning in one day, though in divers years, occaſioned the old *Romans* to put that day among thoſe unfortunate days, on which they never did attempt any buſineſs of importance. The like cuſtom, whether on ſuperſtition or fear of ill luck, is uſed by many *Chriſtians*; and eſpecially on *Childermas-day*, on which *Philip de Comines* telleth us that *Lewis* the 11. uſed not to debate of any matter, but accounted it a ſign of ſome great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his affairs; and would be marvellouſly diſpleaſed with thoſe that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatſoever. In this particular, little leſs ſuperſtitious (if not more) than the ancient *Romans*. And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thraſymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the nearneſs

Campagna di Roma.

of it to that City)where *Annibal* ſlew *Flaminius* the Conſul, and 15000 of his *Romans*; which fight continued three hours with ſo great an eagerneſs, that the Souldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time happened.

6. *CAMPAGNA DI ROMA* containeth that part of *Italy*, which anciently was called *Latium*, the habitation of the *Latins*, and ſeat of *Rome*: ſo called for that it is adjoyning to that famous City, as the more proper territory and precinct thereof. It is ſometimes alſo called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly ſo called, the ſeat and dwelling of the *Campans*. It is bounded on the Eaſt with the ſaid *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Axofenus*; on the Weſt, with *Tiber*; on the North, with *Umbria*, or the new *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South, with the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Sea; and came unto the Popes by no other Title, than as they had the ſoveraignty and poſſeſſion of the City of *Rome*, to which it always did belong.

The old inhabitants were the *Latins*, as before is ſaid, but ſubdivided into many petit and inferiour Tribes, ſuch as the *Æqui*, *Volſci*, *Fidenates*, and others of as little note, to the number of thirty, all vanquiſhed piecemeal by the *Romans*, firſt under the conduct of their Kings, and then of their Conſuls and Dictators. Broken at laſt by *L. Quintius* the Dictator, *A. U. C.* 295. they became aſſociates with the *Romans*, and ſo continued for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards. But growing inſolent on the ſack of that City by the *Galls*, and impudently requiring that one Conſul yearly ſhould be choſen by and from themſelves, they drew the *Romans* into Arms: by whom ſubdued, under the leading of *Manlius Torquatus* and *Decius Maximus*, then Conſuls, *A. V. C.* 413. Subject from that time forwards to the State of *Rome*, but enjoying greater privileges than the reſt of the conquered Nations did; excepting ſuch to whom the like were granted by eſpecial favour.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat Royal of the *Latin* or *Silvian* Kings, ruined by *Tullus Hoſtilius* the third King of *Rome*, in which war *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the ſtake, the whole action was committed by the *Romans* to the *Horatii*, to the *Curatii* by the *Albans*, being three Brethren of each ſide; in which it hapned that two of the *Horatii* were firſt ſlain, and the third counterfeiting a flight, ſevered his enemies, and ſo ſlew them: whereby the *Albans* ever after became ſubject to *Rome*. 2 *Lavinium*, built by *Æneas* in honour of his wife *Lavinia*. 3 *Antium*, honoured many times with the ſeat and retirement of the Emperours, the Countrey round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very ſtrong in ſhipping, till the taking of the Town by *Mavius* a *Roman* Conſul; who having broke their Forces at Sea, brought with him into *Rome* the Beaks of their Ships and other veſſels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*) which have generally ever ſince been called *Roſtra*. This was the chief City of the ancient *Volſci*, a people very ſtrong in ſhipping, though without an Haven: afterwards much frequented by the principal *Romans* in their retirements from the City; ſo that for pompous and ſtately Buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the ruins of this Town, long ago deſtroyed, ſprang the new City called *Neptunum*, ſituate on a rock near unto the Sea, the ſteepneſs of which gave it natural ſtrength enough; and yet it is fortified beſides with two ſtrong Caſtles, ſurveying the Sea, and commanding the Shore. 4 *Ardea*, the chief Town of the *Rutuli*, and ſeat of *Turnus*, the Rival and Competitor of *Æneas*: afterwards taken by *Superbus* the laſt King of the *Romans*, to which, when the *Galls* had taken *Rome*, the miſerable Citizens were compelled to flie. 5 *Gabii*, taken alſo by the ſame *Superbus*, whoſe ſon *Sextus* counterfeiting ſome diſlike of his fathers cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*; by whom improvidently entruſted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6 *Oſtia*, anciently the Port-town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tyber* by *Ancus Martius*, the fourth King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long ſince dammed up, to ſtop the paſſage of the enemies Ships unto the City. The Biſhop of this Town uſeth to conſecrate the Pope. 7 *Præneſte*, firſt conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Cincinnatus*, the Dictator. Nothing ſo much endamaged this City, as its natural and artificial Fortifications: for when the *Romans* in the times of ſedition abandoned the Town, they uſed to make this place their refuge. Among others, *Marius* the younger made it the ſeat of war againſt *L. Sylla*: but perceiving the unſucceſfulneſs of his affairs, here killed himſelf; and *Sylla* entering it as Conquerour, put 12000 of the Citizens to the ſword. It hath ſince been ſo often ſacked, that it is very ſhort now of its former luſtre, but ſtill it holds the reputation of a Biſhops See. 8 *Tibur*, an ancient City alſo, and ſeated in an healthy air. It is now called *Tivol*, where there is a Fountain, which with artificial Engines moved with water, repreſenteth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it ſeemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reporteth it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almoſt all Civil Nations may pretend a ſhare, ſo I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*, whoſe Maſter-pieces in this kind do far exceed the reſt of *Europe*. For in the Kings houſe at St. *Germains*, ſeven miles from *Paris*, (if it be lawful for me to digreſs a little on this Argument) one may behold the *Statua* of a Nymph, ſitting before a pair of Organs; whoſe Fingers by the help of water are taught to manage the Keys in ſo due an order, and the inſtrument to yield ſuch a Muſick to it, as comes exceeding near the Organ, if it be not the ſame: her Head in the mean time jolting from one Shoulder to another, like an old Fidlers at a *Wake*. There being alſo not far off the counterfeits of divers Mills, who very buſily plied their work till the Muſick ſounded, and then ſtood ſtill as if inchanted with the noiſe. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may ſee two *Tritons* riding on their *Dolphins*, in a Sea of water, each of them with a Shell in his hand, which interchangeably and in turns ſerved inſtead of Trumpets. In a third, the ſtory of *Perſeus* and *Andromeda* moſt lively acted. And in a fourth, *Orpheus in ſylvis poſitus*; *Orpheus* playing on a Viol, the Trees moving, and the wilde Beaſts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificial guidance of the waters only; the pretty Birds in every place ſo chirping out of their ſeveral and reſpective notes, that the hearer would conceive himſelf to be in ſome pleaſant Grove. But it is time to go from *Tivoli* to 9 *Velitri* (called anciently *Velitræ*, and then a City of the *Volſci*) famous for the birth of the Emperor *Auguſtus*, and the dwelling of the *Octavian* Family; a place moſt delectably ſeated amongſt the Vines, which yield as rich Wines as moſt in *Italie*. 10 *Anxur*, ſo called of the Temple which was here dedicated to *Jupiter*, ſurnamed *Anxurus*, that is, *Beardleſs*; firſt built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the ſeverity of *Lycurgus* his Laws, did here ſeat themſelves, after, a Colony of the *Volſci*, and at laſt of the *Romans*. But this town being deſtroyed by the tyranny of time, there ſtarted up 11 *Taracina* in the place thereof, ſeated upon a Mountain, but near the Sea, which it embraceth like a half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mola*:) this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Cageta* on the other, which is the firſt Port-town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Country hereabouts hath moſt pleaſant Orchards, of Citrons, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the ſame time both ripe and Green Fruits, and repreſents a kind of Summer in the dead of Winter.

Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than they are at the preſent, are 1 *Tuſculum*, a Village which belonged to *Tully*, who here compoſed his excellent Book called the *Tuſculan Queſtions*. 2 *Formiæ*, built by the *Laconians*, heretofore the delight and ſolace of the ancient *Romans*, now viſible only in its ruines. 3 *Privernum*, once the chief City of the *Volſci*, and the ſeat of *Camilla*, a noble *Amazonian* Lady; who aided *Turnus* the *Rutulian* in his ſharp war againſt *Æneas* and the *Trojans*, where ſhe loſt her life. 4 *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now ſtands S. *Felix*) the habitation of *Circe*, that ſo much celebrated *Sorcereſs*; of whom, and her chanting of *Ulyſſes* and his companions, there is ſo much upon record in the ancient Poets. Near to which is the head-land called the *Circæan Promontory*, the repercuſſion of the Waves by whoſe Southern *Baſis* makes a dreadful noiſe; and gave occaſion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lions, howling of Dogs, &c. which were heard about that Witches dwelling.

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed not of *Italie* only but of all the World, was that the famous City of *ROME* was ſeated in it, being built on the Eaſt ſide of *Tiber*; now much inlarged by the increaſe of 42 leſſer ſtreams or Rivers. It is diſtant from the Sea about 15 miles, firſt built as Fryer *Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma*, Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forſaken and forlorn, by reaſon of the unwholſom air coming from the Fens, was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleaſed with the natural ſtrength of the ſituation, and therefore like to make a good Town of war. And this Tradition I ſhould rather ſubſcribe unto, than that it was called *Rome* from *Romulus*; who had he pleaſed to challenge the honour to himſelf, might better have cauſed it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samnites*) than to call it *Roma*. But whatſoever greatneſs it did after come to, it was ſmall enough (God knows) at firſt; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* onely, and therefore not a mile in compaſs: the Territory not extending, as *Strabo* witneſſeth, above ſix miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the firſt general *Muſter* amounting at the moſt to 3300 men. So inconſiderable they were, as well in quality as numbers, that their neighbours thought it a diſparagement to beſtow their daughters on them; and therefore they were fain to get themſelves wives by a ſleight of wit: proclaiming ſolemn Playes and Paſtimes to be held in *Rome*; and raviſhing the women which came thither to behold the ſports. The Kings ſucceeding much inlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the hill *Janiculum* on the other ſide of the water, being walled and added to it by *Ancus Martius*; as *Quirinalis*, *Eſquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullus*; *Capitolinus* and Mount *Cœlius* came not in till afterwards. But at the laſt it was improved to ſuch an height, that in the flouriſhing times of that Common-wealth, the men increaſed to the number of 463000, and the compaſs of the Town unto 50 miles; there being on and about the walls 740 Turrets. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither ſervants, women, nor children, but men able to bear Arms, *Free-Denizens*, and ſuch as were inrolled into *Cenſe*, or the Subſidie-Books, to which if we ſhould add their wives, children, and ſervants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and ſo *Lipſius* is of opinion, in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*. The moſt memorable buildings of it, were firſt the *Capitol*, founded by *Tarquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the ſpoyls of their conquered Neighbours; ſaved from the fury of the *Gauls* by the cackling of Geeſe. *Tacitus* called this houſe, *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, auſpicatò à majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civil Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the wars of *Veſpaſian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Veſpaſian* carried the firſt basket of earth; after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the ſervice: and perhaps the cuſtome of laying the firſt ſtone in a building, or driving the firſt nail in a timber-work, by him whoſe edifice it is, hath from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2 Here was the Temple of *Janus*, open in the time of wars, and ſhut in the time of peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned but thrice, namely, during the reign of *Auguſtus*, after the firſt *Punick* war, and in the time of *Numa*. 3. Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Horacius Cocles* reſiſted the whole Army of King *Porſena*, *Tarquin*, and the *Tuſcans*; till the Citizens behind had broken down the bridge, received him ſwimming to the bank with joyfull acclamations, and ſaved their City from preſent ruine. Here lived the famous Warriers, ſo much renowned in the ſtories of elder times; here flouriſhed the exact Martial diſcipline, ſo memorized by ancient Hiſtoriographers; and finally here were laid up the ſpoyls and Trophies of all *Europe*.

ROME, as now it ſtandeth lower on the bank of *Tiber*, upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was

ROME.

built after the inundation of the *Gothes* and *Vandals*) is in compaſs about eleven miles, within which compaſs is not a little waſt ground. The Inhabitants of all ſorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergy-men and Courtiers; that is to ſay, ſuch as have their dependence on the Court of *Rome*, either by holding offices and places of employment under the Popes, or by attending on his perſon, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates who are there abiding; or otherwiſe being of the retinue of ſuch Forein Embaſſadors as are alwaies commorant in the City to follow the Negotiations of their ſeveral Maſters; all which muſt needs amount to a very great number. It was firſt built on the Eaſt ſide of the River, in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins; and here and there ſome Churches and ſcattered houſes (except it be a little on the North-Eaſt of the River, from the Gate called *Del Populo*, to the Iſland of *Tiber*:) the reſt, eſpecially toward the South, being taken up with Paſtures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it ſtands, is on the Weſt ſide of the water, and the *Holy Iſland*; conſiſting of three diſtinct parts or members. Of theſe the leaſt is that which they call *La Iſola*, but anciently the *Holy Iſland*; firſt made an Iſland by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquins*, which the Senate not vouchſafing to convert to any publick or private uſe, commanded to be flung into the River; where it ſunk and ſetled to an Iſland, called afterwards the *Holy Iſland*, from a Temple herein built unto *Eſculapius*, brought hither by *Epidaurus* in the ſhape of a Serpent. This Iſland is not above a quarter of a mile in length, and hardly half ſo much in breadth; but full of ſtately Churches and beautiful houſes. Next to this is that which they call *Tractevere*, or *Tranſ-Tiberina*, but of old *Janiculo*, from the Mountain of that name included in it. Called alſo *Civitas Ravennatium*, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Souldiers which *Auguſtus* kept at *Ravenna* againſt *Antonius*; and after placed in this out-part of the City; which by reaſon of the unwholſomneſs of the air, is inhabited only by Artizans and poor people; yet compaſſed about with walls, except on the ſide next that water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and ſome handſome buildings. But the chief glory of the City conſiſteth in the part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North ſide of the other, but disjoyned from it; compaſſed about with walls by Pope *Leo* the 4. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1 the Church of S. *Peter*, which were it once finiſhed, would be one of the rareſt buildings in all the world. 2 The Caſtle of S. *Angelo*, impregnable, unleſs by Famine. 3 The Popes Palace, called *Belvidere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compaſſed about with a very high wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the 5. and had this name from the fair proſpect which it hath: in the ſame ſenſe, as *Belvoir* Caſtle here in *England*, the Barony and Manſion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A place of magnificence and receipt enough. 4 The Library of the hill *Vatican*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican* Library: a Library firſt founded by *Sixtus* the 4. who not only ſtored it with the choiceſt Books he could pick out of *Europe*; but allowed alſo a large revenue for the perpetual augmentation of it. *Bibliothecam* Palatinam *in* Vaticano, *toto terrarum orbe celebrem, advectis ex omni* Europâ *libris conſtruxit*; *proventuſq; certos, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Burbon* ſacked *Rome*, *anno* 1527, it was much defaced and ranſacked; but by the ſucceeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an Univerſity, which was founded by *Urban* the fourth, at whoſe requeſt *Thomas Aquinas* profeſſed here. Pope *Nicholas* the fifth was a ſpecial benefactor to the ſame; and after him, *Leo* the tenth, who revived the *Greek* Learning and Language, which were in theſe parts almoſt forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the treaſures of thoſe parts of Chriſtendom ſubject to the Popes authority: partly for the expence of ſtrangers, which do there remain on their ſeveral pleaſures or occaſions; and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained, for the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhopricks, and *Bulls* of Benefices, Indulgences, and other matters of *Court-holy-water*; and partly in the Penſions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Miniſters of thoſe Kings and Princes, which know beſt how to make their ends of the Popes ambitions. So that it may be truly ſaid, there came not more Tributes into *Old Rome* from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the *New* from the ſubject Churches, which have ſubmitted to the power of the *Roman* Prelates: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of *Religion*, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it ſaid by *Proſper* of *Aquitane* (if my memory fail not)

> Roma *caput mundi, quicquid non poſſidet* Armis,
> Religione *tenet*.————————
>
> That is to ſay,
>
> What *Rome* ſubdu'd not with the Sword,
> She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the ancient City, the power and natural courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the ſame againſt the bravery and aſſaults of all Forein Enemies: this City during the time of the ancient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Gauls*; but ſince *Pontifical*, it hath been made a Prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was beſieged by any that did not take it. In a word, the City of *Rome*, as now it ſtandeth, is but the carkaſe of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruines, and the cauſe of them, her ſins.

The Popes much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the authority of S. *Peter*; whoſe being there is indeed conſtantly atteſted by moſt ancient Writers; inſomuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet *propter Scriptorum conſenſum*, in regard of the unanimous conſent

of

The Papacy

of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The ſilence of the Scriptures is a *Negative Argument*, and concludes nothing to the contrary; againſt ſo great a *Cloud* of unqueſtioned *Witneſſes*, as ſoberly and poſitively have affirmed the ſame. And yet I would not have it thought by the captious *Romaniſts*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Popes *Supremacy*, becauſe he ſits in *Peters* ſeat: no more than it did make for *Vibius Ruphus* (as *Dion* doth relate the ſtory) to attain *Tullies* eloquence, or *Cæſars* power, becauſe he married *Tullies* widow, and bought *Cæſars* chair: though the poor Gentleman did befool himſelf with this opinion, that he ſhould be Maſter of them both. Of which ſee *Lib. LVII.* And yet the Popes relie ſo much upon this fancy of being the direct heirs of S. *Peter*, and all his preheminences; that all things which they ſay or do, muſt be intituled to S. *Peter*. Their Throne muſt be S. *Peters Chair*, their Church S. *Peters Ship*, their Lands S. *Peters Patrimony*, their Tributes and Exactions muſt be called *Peter-pence*, their Excommunications fulminated in S. *Peters* name; and all their Bulls and Faculties ſealed *Annulo Piſcatoris*, with S. *Peters* Signet. Nay they went ſo far at the laſt, that Pope *Steven*, not being contented to be *Peters* Succeſſor, did take upon him in plain terms to be *Peter* himſelf. For being diſtreſſed by *Aſtulphus* King of the *Lombards*, he ſends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following ſtyle; *Petrus Apoſtolus* JESU CHRISTI &c. *i. e.* Peter *the Apoſtle of* JESUS CHRIST *to you the moſt illuſtrious King* Pepin, *and to all Biſhops, Abbots,* &c. *I the Apoſtle* Peter, *whoſe adopted ſons you are, admoniſh you that you preſently come and defend this City,* &c. And *doubt you not, but truſt aſſuredly, that I my ſelf, as if I ſtood before you, do thus exhort you,* &c. and *that I* Peter *the* Apoſtle *of God, will at the laſt day yeeld you mutual kindneſſes, and prepare you* Tabernacles *in the heavens*. *Baronius* who records this Letter, *anno* 755. num. 17. was, it ſeems, pretty well perſwaded of it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Paræneſis* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon ſome differences with the Pope *Paul* the fifth, he ſtyleth him in plain terms thus, *Paulus idemq;* Petrus *vicem* Chriſti *agens in terris*, i. e. *Paul*, who is alſo *Peter*, and Chriſts Vicegerent. But leaving theſe imaginary claims and challenges of S. *Peters* priviledges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages; two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and diſcerning times of *Chriſtianity*. Of which the principal was the Orthodoxie of the Biſhops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and ſincere profeſſion of the Faith of *Chriſt*; when almoſt all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schiſm*, or waſted and ſubverted by the fraud of *Hereſie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the *communion* of it much deſired by all true *Chriſtians*; and a repair thither for relief and ſhelter in the times of trouble, made by the *Orthodox* Profeſſors under perſecution. And of theſe times, and this condition of that Church, we are to underſtand ſuch paſſages of the Ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and ſet it above all the batteries and aſſaults of *Hereſie*. Such is that paſſage of S. *Cyprian*, Romanos *eſſe ad quos perfidia non poteſt habere acceſſum*, lib. 1. ep. 3. and that of *Hierome*, Romanam *fidem (i. e. Romanorum fidem) Apoſtolica voce laudatam, ejuſmodi præſtigias non recipere*, in *Apol. cont. Ruffin.* and many others of that kind. Which paſſages it were as fooliſh and ridiculous to apply to all following times, the condition of that Church being different from what then it was; as to accommodate all thoſe *Elogies* and commendations to the preſent City of *Rome*, which the Orators and *Panegyriſts* of the elder times have *hyperbolically* aſcribed to old *Rome* in her greateſt glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it ſuch a multitude of ſuiters and attendants from all parts of the world, could not but add much to the power and reputation of thoſe Prelates, who had the happineſs and honour to be reſident there: and thereby opportunity to gain more *Diſciples*, to ſolve more doubts of conſcience, and decide more controverſies, than any other could expect. And ſo we are to underſtand that paſſage in S. *Irenæus*, in which he ſaith, *Ad hanc Eccleſiam propter potentiorem* Principalitatem, *neceſſe eſt omnem convenire Eccleſiam*, i.e. *eas qui ſunt undiq; Eccleſias*. And ſo they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent *Principality* than other Cities. But when that more potent *Principality* failed to be at *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial See, firſt to *Conſtantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*; then did the Biſhops of *Conſtantinople* and *Ravenna* diſpute with thoſe of *Rome* for Superiority; the chief ſeat of Religion moſt commonly following the ſeat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Biſhop of *Conſtantinople* prevailed ſo far, that with the permiſſion of *Mauritius* the Emperour he took upon him the Title of *Univerſal Patriarch*. *Gregory* the Great (of whom it is ſaid that he was the worſt Biſhop of all that went before him, and the beſt of all that came after him) was at that time Biſhop of *Rome*, who ſharply inveighed as well againſt the Emperour, as the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, for this Title; and plainly maintained, that whoſoever called himſelf *Univerſal Biſhop* was the forerunner of *Antichriſt*. As for himſelf, it is probable that he took the Title of *Servus ſervorum Dei*, more in oppoſition to him of *Conſtantinople*, than with an intent to be ſo truly. To which though thoſe of *Rome* reply, that *Gregory* did not abſolutely condemn this Title, but onely blamed *John* the *Conſtantinopolitan* Patriarch for aſſuming to himſelf that attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be. For then either in the old Bulls of the former Popes we ſhould find mention of this Title, or elſe Pope *Gregory* would have aſſumed it to himſelf, that the world might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but one ſucceeded *Gregory*, having further aims, applied himſelf to *Phocas*, that bloudy Tyrant, who having murthered the Emperour *Mauritius*, his wife and children, and thereby got the general hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to aſſure himſelf of *Italy*, which he feared was ready to revolt, declared this *Boniface* to be the *Oecumenical Biſhop*, and *Head of the Church*. To ſuch a good beginning, ſuch a gracious patron, do the Popes ſtand indebted for that power and empire, which now they challenge to themſelves over all the Church.

Now

The Papacy

Now as the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency, of the Popes of *Rome*, by reaſon that they were reſpectively honoured with the Seat *Imperiall*: ſo were there divers other Biſhops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Millain*, which claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yield them any ſuperiority. For triall of whoſe claim, we muſt look back on ſomewhat which hath been ſaid before; where it is ſhewn that the *Roman* Empire was divided into fourteen *Dioceſes*, each *Dioceſe* being ſubdivided into ſeveral Provinces, each Province comprehending many ſeveral Cities: then that in every of thoſe Cities, where the *Romans* had their *Defenſores*, the *Chriſtians* alſo had a Biſhop; in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the ſeat of the *Roman Preſident*, the *Chriſtians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principal City of each ſeveral *Dioceſe*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Dioceſe* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Chriſtians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous Maxim of *Optatus*, *Reſpublica non eſt in Eccleſia, ſed Eccleſia eſt in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth, and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Councell of *Chalcedon* raiſed this ſuperſtructure, Ἐκκλησιαστικῶν τὴν τάξιν, *&c.* that the honours of the Church ſhould be accommodated unto thoſe in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equall power, each of them limited and reſtrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he preſumed once to act, he moved *Irregularly*, and in his *Eccentricks*. And for thoſe *Primates*, I ſhall give you once for all this general Muſter, that is to ſay, the Patriarch or Pope of *Rome*, for the Dioceſe or Præfecture of that City; the Primate or Arch-biſhop of *Millain*, for the Dioceſe of *Italy*; of *Syrmium*, for that of *Illyricum*; of *Lyons*, for that of *France*; of *York*, for *Brittain*, of *Toledo*, for *Spain*; and of *Carthage*, for *Africk*. Then for the Eaſt parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, for the Dioceſe of *Egypt*; of *Antioch* for that of the *Orient*; the Primate or Arch-biſhop of *Epheſus*, for the Dioceſe of *Aſia*; of *Nicomedia*, for that of *Pontus*; of *Bizantium*, or *Conſtantinople*, for that of *Thrace*; of *Theſſalonica*, for the Dioceſe of *Greece*; and of *Juſtiniana prima*, for that of *Dacia*. Amongſt all which there was a mutual correſpondence and *Co-ordination*, for the general Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourſe, which they called *Literas Formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no ſubordination, and much leſs ſubjection, unto one another; as doth appear moſt evidently by the Canons of the Councel of *Nice* aſſigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the cuſtome of the former times. As for the *Dioceſe* or *Patriarchate* of the Popes of *Rome*, it containeth in it thoſe ten Provinces, which were immediately ſubject to the Præfect or *Provoſt* of that City (an officer inſtituted firſt by *Auguſtus Cæſar*) that is to ſay, the Provinces of *Tuſcia* and *Umbria*, *Picenum Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Samnium*, *Lucana* and the *Brutii*, in the main land of *Italy*; and the three Iſlands of *Sicily*, *Corſica* and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of thoſe Provinces by the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicaria*, by *Ruffinus* an *Italian* Writer; ſo anciently the Pope himſelf was called *Urbicus*, or the City-Biſhop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zepherinus*, *Zepherinus Urbicus*. But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up dayly by a ſteddy and conſtant watchfulneſs upon all occaſions, to encreaſe the Grandeur of that See; and taking to themſelves the honour to be *Vindices Canonum*, the ſtrict and punctual preſervers of the ancient Diſcipline, which took extremely well with all ſorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindices Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters, and at laſt the Rulers, or rather the *Over-rulers* of the *Canons*; and from chief Labourers in the Vineyard, they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at laſt obtained by the foreſaid *Boniface*, whom that cruell and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the *Head of the Church*, the ſixty ſixth Biſhop and firſt Pope of *Rome*: the *Latine* word *Papa* coming from the old *Greek* Πάππας, ſignifying a Father. A Title at the firſt common unto other Biſhops, as is evident to any one who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this appropriated unto thoſe of *Rome*. Of theſe Popes, their Succeſſion, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to ſee, agreeing exactly with another. The reaſons whereof, as I conceive, are, 1 The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2 the many *Schiſms* which have hapned in it; and 3 the *Anti-Popes* in them created: the Writers of thoſe times accounting him only among the Popes, to whoſe faction they were moſt devoted. This Catalogue enſuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvicus*, *Freigius*, *Bellarmine*, and *Onuphrius*; whoſe differences I have reconciled as well as poſſibly I could: premoniſhing the Reader, that where the number of years which every Pope is found to ſit in the *Papal Chair*, make not up the full number from his firſt admiſſion, to the coming in of his Succeſſor; it muſt be underſtood of ſome *Schiſm* or *Vacancy*, hapning in the Intervall, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occurre amongſt the Ancients, in the firſt Succeſſion, ſome placing of them thus, *Linus*, *Cletus*, *Clemens*; ſome *Linus*, *Clemens*, *Cletus*; and finally ſome others putting *Clemens* the firſt: I know no better way to compoſe the ſame, than to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that S. *Peter* and S. *Paul* were Co-founders of the Church in *Rome*; S. *Peter* of the Church of the *Circumciſion*, and S. *Paul* of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Biſhop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succeſſion in this manner following.

The Papacy

The Biſhops of *Rome*.

A.Ch.
44 1 S. *Peter*, Biſhop of the Churches of the *Circumciſion*.
70 2 *Cletus*, or *Anacletus*, Succeſſor to S. *Peter* in the Churches of the *Circumciſion*. 23.

A.Ch.
59 1 S. *Paul*, Biſhop of the Churches of the *Gentiles*.
70 2 *Linus*, Succeſſor to S. *Paul* in the Church of the *Gentiles*. 11.
81 3 *Clemens*, having ſucceeded *Linus* firſt in the Church of the *Gentiles*, did after, *An.*93. ſucceeed *Cletus* alſo in the Church of the *Jews*; reckoned by ſome the next Succeſſor to S. *Peter*, becauſe the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the *Gentiles* not being founded, or not diſtinguiſhed from the other, till ſome years after *Peter's* coming.

103	4	*Anacletus* 9
112	5	*Euariſtus* 9
121	6	*Alexander* 16 *m.* 5 *d.*
131	7	*Sixtus* 10
142	8	*Teleſphorus* 12
154	9	*Ayginus* 4
158	10	*Pius* 9
167	11	*Ancetus* 8 *m.* 9
175	12	*Soter* 4
179	13	*Elutherius* 15
194	14	*Victor* 9
203	15	*Zepherinus* 18
221	16	*Caliſtus* 5
226	17	*Urbanus* 6 *m.* 7 *d.*
233	18	*Pontianus* 5
238	19	*Antherus* 1
239	20	*Fabianus* 14
253	21	*Cornelius* 2
255	22	*Lucius* 1 *m.* 8
256	23	*Stephanus* 3 *m.* 3
260	24	*Sixtus*, or *Xiſtus* II. 2
262	25	*Dionyſius* 10
272	26	*Felix* 2 *m.* 5 *d.*
275	27	*Eutychanus* 8
283	28	*Caius* 13
296	29	*Marcellinus* 8
304	30	*Marcellus* 5
309	31	*Euſebius* 2
311	32	*Miltiades* 3
314	33	*Silveſter* 22
336	34	*Marcus m.* 8
337	35	*Julius* 15 *m.* 5
352	36	*Diberius* 15. *cui vivo Felix ſuffectus.*
367	37	*Damaſus* 18
385	38	*Syricius* 13
398	36	*Anaſtaſius* 4
402	40	*Innocentius* 15
417	41	*Zoſimus* 1 *m.* 4
419	42	*Bonifacius* 5
424	43	*Celeſtinus* 8 *m.* 5
432	44	*Sixtus* III. 8
440	45	*Leo magn.* 21
461	46	*Hilarius* 6 *m.* 10.
468	47	*Simplicius* 15 *m.* 5
483	48	*Felix* III. 9
492	49	*Gelaſius* 4
497	50	*Anaſtaſius* II. 2
499	51	*Symmachus* 15
514	52	*Hormiſda* 9
523	53	*Joannes* 2 *m.* 9 *d.*
526	54	*Felix* IV. 4
530	55	*Bonifacius* II. 1
532	56	*Joannes* II. 3
535	57	*Agapetus* 1
536	58	*Silverius* 1
537	59	*Vigilius* 18
555	60	*Pelagius* 5
560	61	*Joannes* III. 13
573	62	*Benedictus* 4
578	63	*Pelagius* II. 12
590	64	*Gregorius Mag.* 14
605	65	*Sabinianus* 1, the laſt of the *Roman* Biſhops, not having that arrogant Title of *Univerſall Biſhop*, or *Head of the Church.*

The Popes of *Rome* challenging a Supremacy over all the Church.

606	1	*Bonifacius* III. 3
607	2	*Bonifacius* IV. 8
615	3	*Deus-dedit* 3
618	4	*Bonifacius* V. 5 *m.* 10
624	5	*Honorius* 13
634	6	*Severinus* 2
639	7	*Joannes* IV. 2
641	8	*Theodorus* 7 *m.* 5
649	9	*Martinus* 6
654	10	*Eugenius* 2 *m.* 9
657	11	*Vitalianus* 14
671	12	*A-Deo-datus* 5
677	13	*Domnus* 1 *m.* 5 *d.*
679	14	*Agatho* 4
683	15	*Leo* II. *m.* 10
684	16	*Benedictus* II. 1
685	17	*Joannes* V. 1
686	18	*Conon m.* 11
688	19	*Sergius* 13
701	20	*Joannes* VI. 3
704	21	*Joannes* VII. 3
707	22	*Siſinnius d.* 20
707	23	*Conſtantinus* 7
714	24	*Gregorius* II. 17
731	25	*Greg.* III. 10 *m.* 9
742	26	*Zacharias* 10
752	27	*Stephanus* II. *d.* 4
752	28	*Stephanus* III. 5
757	29	*Paulus* I. 10
767	30	*Conſtans* II. 1
768	31	*Stephanus* IV. 4
772	32	*Adrianus* I. 23
796	33	*Leo* III. 20
816	34	*Stephanus* V. *m.* 7
817	35	*Paſchalis* 7
824	36	*Eugenius* II. 3
827	37	*Valentinus d.* 4
827	38	*Gregorius* IV. 16
843	39	*Sergius* II. 3
846	40	*Leo* IV. 8
854	41	*Joannes* VIII. *vulgò* POPE JONE. 2
856	42	*Benedictus* III. 2
858	43	*Nicolas* 10
868	44	*Adrianus* II. 5
873	45	*Joannes* IX. 10
883	46	*Martinus* II. 1
884	47	*Adrianus* III. 1
885	48	*Stephanus* VI. 6
891	49	*Formoſus* 4
895	50	*Bonifacius* VI. *d.* 15
896	51	*Stephanus* VII. 1
897	52	*Romanus m.* 4
897	53	*Theodorus* II. *d.* 20
897	54	*Joannes* X. 2
899	55	*Benedictus* IV. 2
903	56	*Leo* V. *d.* 40
903	57	*Chriſtophorus m.* 7
903	58	*Sergius* III. 7
910	59	*Anaſtaſius* III. 2
912	60	*Lando m.* 6
912	61	*Joannes* XI. 15
928	62	*Leo* VI. *m.* 6
929	63	*Stephanus* VIII. 2
931	64	*Joannes* XII. 5
936	65	*Leo* VII. 4
940	66	*Stephanus* IX. 3
943	67	*Martinus* III. 3
946	68	*Agapetus* II. 9
956	69	*Joannes* XIII. 8
964	70	*Leo* VIII. 1
965	71	*Benedictus* V. 1
966	72	*Joannes* XIV. 7
973	73	*Benedictus* VI. *m.* 6
974	74	*Domnus* II. 1 *m.* 3
975	75	*Bonifacius* VII. 1
976	76	*Benedictus* VII. 8
984	77	*Joannes* XV. 1
985	78	*Joannes* XVI. 10
995	79	*Joannes* XVII. *m.* 4
996	80	*Gregorius* V. 3
999	81	*Silveſter* II. *dictus Necromanticus* 4
1003	82	*Joannes* XVIII. *m.* 5

83 *Joannes*

The Papacy

1003	83 *Joannes* XIX. 6
1009	84 *Sergius* IV. 3
1012	85 *Benedictus* VIII. 12
1024	86 *Joannes* XX. 8 *m.* 9
1033	87 *Benedictus* IX. 12
1045	88 *Silveſter* III. *m.* 1
1045	89 *Benedictus* X. *m.* 1
1045	90 *Gregorius* VI. 1 *m.* 7
1047	91 *Clemens* II. *m.* 9
1047	92 *Damaſus* II. *d.* 23
1049	93 *Leo* IX. 5.
1055	94 *Victor* II. 2
1057	95 *Stephanus* X. 1 *m.* 6
1059	96 *Nicolaus* II. 2 *m.* 6
1062	97 *Alexander* II. 11
1073	98 *Gregorius* VII. *dictus* *Hildebrandus*. 12.
1086	99 *Victor* III. 1.
1087	100 *Urbanus* II. 12.
1099	101 *Paſchalis* II. 18.
1118	102 *Gelaſius* II. 1.
1119	103 *Caliſtus* II. 6.
1125	104 *Honorius* II. 5.
1130	105 *Innocens* II. 13.
1143	106 *Celeſtine* II. *m.* 5.
1144	107 *Lucius* II. *m.* 11.
1145	108 *Engenius* III. 8.
1153	109 *Anaſtaſius* IV. 1.
1154	110 *Adrian* IV. 4
1159	111 *Alexand.* III. 22.
1181	112 *Lucius* III. 4
1185	113 *Urban* III. 2
1187	114 *Gregorius* VIII. *m.* 2
1188	115 *Clemens* III. 3
1191	116 *Celeſtine* III. 6
1198	117 *Innocent* III. 17
1216	118 *Honorius* III. 10
1227	119 *Gregorius* IX. 14
1241	120 *Celeſtine* IV. *d.* 17
1243	121 *Innocent* IV. 11
1254	222 *Alexander* IV. 6
1261	123 *Urbanus* IV. 3
1265	124 *Clemens* IV. 3
1271	125 *Gregorius* X. 14
1275	126 *Innocent* V. *m.* 5
1276	127 *Adrian* V. *d.* 19
1276	128 *Joannes* XXI. *d.* 8
1277	129 *Nicolaus* III. 4
1281	130 *Martinus* IV. 4
1285	131 *Honorius* IV. 4
1288	132 *Nicolaus* IV. 4
1294	133 *Celeſtine* V. *m.* 6
1295	134 *Bonifacius* VIII. 8
1303	135 *Benedictus* IX. *m.* 8
1305	136 *Clemens* V. 9
1316	137 *Joannes* XXII. 18
1334	138 *Benedict.* X. 7
1342	139 *Clemens* VI. 10
1352	140 *Innocent* VI. 10
1362	141 *Urban* V. 8
1371	142 *Gregorius* XI. 7
1378	143 *Urban* VI. 11
1389	144 *Boniface* IX. 14
1404	145 *Innocent* VII. 2
1406	146 *Gregorius* XII. 2
1409	147 *Alex.* V. *m.* 10
1410	148 *Joannes* XXIII. 5
1417	149 *Martin* V. 13
1431	150 *Eugenius* IV. 16
1447	151 *Nicolaus* V. 8
1455	152 *Calliſtus* III. 3
1458	153 *Pius* II. *antè dictus* *Æneas Silvius* 6
1464	154 *Paulus* II. 7
1471	155 *Sixtus* IV. 12
1484	156 *Innocent* VIII. 7
1492	157 *Alexander* VI. 11
1503	158 *Pius* III. *d.* 26
1503	159 *Julius* II. 10
1513	160 *Leo* X. 9
1522	161 *Adrian* VI. 2.
1524	162 *Clemens* VII. 10
1534	163 *Paulus* III. 15
1550	164 *Julius* III. 5
1555	165 *Marcellus* II. *d.* 22
1555	166 *Paulus* IV. 5
1560	167 *Pius* IV. 6.
1567	168 *Pius* V. 5
1572	169 *Gregorius* XIII. 13
1585	170 *Sixtus* V. 5.
1590	171 *Urban* VII. *d.* 12
1590	172 *Gregorius* XIV. *m.* 9
1591	173 *Innocent* IX. *m.* 1
1592	174 *Clement* VIII. 13
1605	175 *Leo* XI. *d.* 26
1605	176 *Paulus* V. 16
1621	177 *Greg.* XV. 2
1623	178 *Urban* VIII. 21
1644	179 *Innocent* X. now living

To theſe 179 Popes adde the 65 Biſhops which preceded that arrogant Title of *Univerſal*, and they make up the full number of 244. How many are to come, he muſt be a cunning man that can determine; and yet ſuch cunning men there have been, who have determined poſitively, but withall prophetically, of the number of Popes, by name St. *Malachy*, one of the firſt Apoſtles of the *Iriſh* Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day, of whom there is remaining in *Maſſingham's* collection of the *Iriſh* Saints a certain number of *Mottos* in the *Latin* tongue, agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes ſucceſſively to one another, according to the order of thoſe ſeveral *Mottos*, and thereunto this Propheſie annexed, That when ſo many Popes had ſate in St. *Peter's* Chair, either the world ſhould end or the Popedom fail. The Book was ſhewed to me by the Author when I was at *Paris*, and the Popes names in order joyned to every *Motto*, as far as to the time of *Urban*, who laſt deceaſed; which I compared as well as my memory would ſerve me, and found the *Mottos* and the Popes to be very anſwerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took moſt notice of, was, *Lilium & Roſa*, a *Motto* very ſuitable to the principal action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *Engliſh Roſe* and the *French Lily*, in the Marriage of *Charls* King of *England* and Madam *Henrietta Maria* the Princeſs of *France*, which that Pope earneſtly promoted, in his ſpeedy and cheerful granting of the Diſpenſation. And to take from me all ſuſpicion of impoſture, this *Maſſingham* ſhewed me an old Book written by one *Wion* a *Flemming*, and printed near 200 years before his Collection, in which the *Mottos* ſtood as in his they did, and comparing the *Mottos* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban* and that *Motto* to jump even together. From *Urban* downwards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottos* more to come; by conſequence if this *Malachy* were as true a Prophet as one *Malachy* was, juſt ſo many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the world to end. But I hope God for his *Elects* ſake will abridge thoſe days, and not permit the ſuperſtitions and corruptions of that Church to endure ſo long, nor ſo many Aſſertors and Defenders of thoſe *Roman Heterodoxies* to be added to the former number. Out of the ſtories of all which (pretermitting many things of leſs conſideration) I will onely ſelect ſome particular paſſages, for the better underſtanding of their ſtate and ſtory.

1. *Pelagius* the firſt ordained, that *Hereticks* and *Schiſmaticks* ſhould be puniſhed with temporal death, which ſeverity continueth ſtill; and that none ſhould be preferred to Eccleſiaſtical dignities by Gifts and Bribes, which pious order is long ſince antiquated.

2. *Vitalianus* firſt brought *Organs* into the Divine Service of the Church of *Rome*, to be uſed with the Singing or vocal Muſick formerly in uſe, which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes ſucceeding.

3. *Conſtantine* was ſo generally beloved of all men, that going to *Conſtantinople* *Juſtinian* the ſecond kiſs'd his feet in ſign of honour; which ſome of the ambitious Popes in times ſucceeding drew into example, and at laſt brought into a cuſtom, as it ſtill continueth.

4. *Paſ-*

The Papacy

4. *Paſchal* the firſt cauſed the Prieſts of certain Pariſhes in *Rome*, by reaſon of their nearneſs to his perſon, their preſence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*; now mates for Kings, and numbered about 70, but more or fewer at the ſole pleaſure of the Popes.

5. *Eugenius* the ſecond took to himſelf within the Territories of the Church the authority of creating Dukes, Earls, and Knights, as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had uſed to do.

6. *Sergius* the ſecond was the firſt that changed his name, for thinking his own name *Bocca di Porco*, or *Swines-mouth*, not conſonant to his Dignity, he cauſed himſelf to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Succeſſors following, do alſo vary their names; ſo that if one be a Coward, he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clemens*; if an Atheiſt, *Pius* or *Innocent*; if a Ruſtick, *Urbanus*; and ſo of the reſt.

7. *John* the eighth is by moſt men confeſſed to be a woman, and is uſually called Pope *Joan*. To avoid the like diſgrace the *Porphiry Chair* was ordained, *Ubi ab ultimo diacono, &c.* ſo that both in a literal and myſtical ſenſe this woman may be called, *The Whore of Babylon.* The name of this Female Pope the *Romiſh Chronologers* have not inſerted into the Catalogue, the reaſon, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & ſexum muliebrem.* And from hence it is, that in the common Catalogues theſe Popes that have called themſelves *Johns* are ſo ill ordered, ſome making that *John* which ſucceeded *Adrian* the ſecond *anno* 872. to be the 8th. and others the 9th. *Platina* onely of all the *Pontificians* reckoneth Pope *Joan* as the 8th. of the *Johns*, and ſo forward; in which particular I have followed his authority. And it is probable enough that God might ſuffer that proud See to fall into ſuch an infamy, the better to humble the enſuing Popes in the times of their greateſt ruff and flouriſh, or to prevent the brag of that continued Succeſſion they ſo much pretend to. More of this Argument (as to the truth of the ſtory in matter of fact) he that liſt to ſee may ſatisfie himſelf in Mr. *Cook*'s Book of Pope *Joan*, who moſt induſtriouſly hath anſwered all objections which hath been made againſt it by thoſe of *Rome*.

8. *Nicolas* the firſt, the better to faſten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the leſs obnoxious to their natural Princes, was the firſt who did by Law reſtrain them from marriage, ſaying, that *it was the more honeſt to have to do with many women privately, than openly to keep a wife*: and ſome of his Succeſſors followed it ſo cloſe, that a Prieſt of *Placentia* being accuſed to have wife and children was deprived of his *Benefice*, but upon proof made that ſhe was the wife of another man and his *Strumpet* onely, he was again reſtored unto it.

9. *Adrian* the third ordained, that the Emperour from thenceforth ſhould have no more to do with the Election or Confirmation of the Pope, but that it ſhould be wholly left to the *Roman* Clergy.

10. *Formoſus* was ſo ill beloved and of ſuch a general diſeſteem, that Pope *Stephen* the ſeventh cauſed his body to be unburied, all his acts reverſed, two of his fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled carcaſe to be again interred among the *Laity*. And though thoſe acts of *Stephen* were adjudged illegal, both by *John* the tenth and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Succeſſors, and the doings of *Formoſus* juſtified, yet *Sergius* the third cauſed his corrupt and putrefied body to be taken once more out of the grave, and his head to be cut off as if ſtill alive. So little did the *Infallibility* of St. *Peter*'s Chair preſerve theſe Popes from falling into groſs and irreconcileable contradictions.

11. *John* the twelfth was the next after *Sergius* the ſecond, that changed his name, a very wicked, cruel, and libidinous man, who coming to that place by his fathers greatneſs, cut off the noſe of one Cardinal, and the hand of another, for that they had ſignified to the Emperour *Otho* the firſt what a ſcandal all the Church did ſuffer by his deteſtable life; and finally being taken in adultery was ſlain by the husband of the woman.

12. *Gregory* the fifth finding the power of the Emperour, as long as it continued in a way of ſucceſſion, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withall incenſed againſt the *Romans*, who till that time retained ſome ſhadow of an Empire, projected the Election of the future Emperours by the Princes of *Germany*; by which the *Germans* were diſtracted into factions, and the *Romans* weakned, and ſo a door left open to the Popes of *Rome* to make their ends upon them both.

13. *Stephen* the tenth brought the Church of *Millain* to be under the obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an equality with them; as before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for ſome time had challenged the *precedency* of them.

14. *Gregory* the ſeventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet man, who firſt adventured to draw the *premiſes* laid down by ſome of his Predeceſſors into a *concluſion*, excommunicating the Emperour *Henry* the fourth, for medling with the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhops, and cauſing *Rodulph* Duke of *Suevia* to rebel againſt him. A man much favoured againſt the Princes of her own Houſe by the Counteſs *Mathildis*, who is ſaid to be ſo much his friend, that for his ſake ſhe left the company of her husband, and diſherited her right Heirs, ſetling her whole Eſtates in *Italy* on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperour had the better of this Pope, and made him fly out of *Rome*, and die in Exile, yet he was fain at laſt to ſubmit himſelf to Pope *Paſchal* the ſecond, (who had armed his own ſon againſt him) to attend bare-foot at his door and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third ordained the bearing of *Candles* in the Feaſt of the *Purification* of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemaſs* day.

16. *Sergius* the fourth was the firſt that on *Chriſtmas* night with divers Ceremonies did conſecrate Swords, Roſes, or the like, to be ſent as tokens of love and honour to ſuch Princes as deſerved beſt

of

The Papacy

of them, or whom they deſired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth ſent a conſecrated Roſe to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requeſting him to baniſh *Luther*; and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to engage him in a War againſt *Henry* the 8th, who had then withdrawn himſelf and his Kingdom from the Popes commands.

17. *Nicolas* the ſecond took from the *Roman* Clergy the election of Popes, and gave it to the Colledge of *Cardinals*.

18. *Celeſtine* the ſecond was the Inventer of that mad manner of *Curſing* or *Anathematizing* by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third purſuing the deſperate courſe of *Gregory* the ſeventh, excommunicated the Emperour *Frederick* the firſt, and by raiſing war againſt him in every place brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to proſtrate himſelf at his feet; when the Pope treading on his neck ſaid aloud, *Super Aſpidem & Baſiliſcum*, &c. profanely applying thoſe words to the preſent occaſion. And when the Emperour, to put the better colour on his diſgrace, meekly replied, *Non tibi ſed Petro*, the Pope, not willing to loſe his part of ſo great a glory, ſubjoyned as angerly, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Councel in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope ſhould have the correction of all *Chriſtian* Princes, and that no Emperour ſhould be acknowledged till he had ſworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, who when he hath dined commands his Trumpeters to ſound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may ſit down to dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Tranſubſtantiation*, and ordained that there ſhould be a *Pix* made to cover the conſecrated (but now *tranſubſtantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is alſo ſaid to have firſt impoſed *Auricular Confeſſion* upon the people.

21. *Nicolas* the third was the firſt Pope who practiſed to enrich his kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuſcany*, and to raiſe the reſt to great advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavel* very well obſerveth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Popes Kinsfolks or Poſterity, ſo afterwards they ſtudied no one thing more than to prefer their own bloud, inſomuch that they have not onely laboured (as he ſaith) to make them Princes, but if it were poſſible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For ſo dearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they uſe to call their Baſtards) that it was very juſtly ſaid by Pope *Alexander* the third, *The Laws forbid us to get* Children, *and the Devil hath given us* Nephews *in their ſtead*.

22. *Boniface* the eighth, of whom it is ſaid, *That he entred like a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and died like a Dog*, by his general *Bull* exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and Payments unto Temporal Princes. Which being complied with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward* the firſt put them out of his protection, and ſo the Pope's Bull left roaring here. He cauſed the Book of the *Canon Law*, called the *Decretals*, to be firſt ſet out; and inſtituted the Feaſt of *Jubilee* to be held in *Rome* every hundredth year, but by *Clement* the ſixth it was brought unto the fiftieth year, and ſince reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourſe of people which repaired to *Rome* to obſerve his new Feaſt of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remiſſion of all his ſins) ſhewed himſelf one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperour; and cauſed two Swords to be born before him every day, in ſign that all power *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Temporal* did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the fifth was the firſt that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* ſaleable; for ſeeing (ſaid he) that one drop of our Saviours Bloud had been enough to have ſaved all mankind, and yet all that his Bloud was ſhed, the *over-plus* was left to the Church as a ſtanding treaſure, to be diſpoſed of by St. *Peter* and his Succeſſors. And hereunto, to make his Treaſure the more inexhauſted, he added the Merits of the *Virgin* Mary, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the inſolencies of the people of *Rome*, he removed the Papal See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the ſpace of ſeventy years.

24. *Clement* the ſixth had an ill time of it, for in his Papacy the Emperour gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church to ſuch as formerly had uſurped them, to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which Title the *Malteſti* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelaffi* of *Forli*, the *Vareni* of *Camerine*, the *Bentivolies* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Eſtates were never recovered to the Church till the time of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, though conquered from the preſent Owners in the time of *Alexander* the ſixth, by *Cæſar Borgias* his ſon, who had an aim of ſetling them, and perhaps the Papacy it ſelf, on the *Borgian* Family.

25. *Gregory* the eleventh returned the Papal Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himſelf by Sea in private, for fear of being with-held by the *French*; and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City ſo over-grown with briars and buſhes, and the principal Buildings of it ſo decayed and ruinous, that a little longer abſence would have made it deſolate.

26. *Paul* the ſecond endeavoured to increaſe the Majeſty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and exceeded all his Predeceſſors in pomp and ſhew, cauſing his *Mitre* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphirs, Emeralds, and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the ſplendour of the Cardinals with a Scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the fourth had graced with *red Hats* before. He brought the *Jubilee* from fifty years to 25.

27. *Sixtus* the fourth ordained a conſtant Guard to attend his perſon. He very much beautified and repaired the City of *Rome*, and was the firſt Founder of the *Vatican* Library. But on the other ſide

he

The Papacy

he is ſaid by ſome to have ſet all offices and preferments to ſale, and to have builded in *Rome* Stews of both ſexes, to bring in Beads, and to authoriſe our Ladies *Pſalter*.

28. *Alexander* the ſixth ſetting aſide all modeſty, was the firſt that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Baſtards) to be his ſons; by one of which, the *Cæſar Borgias* before named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, and many other Eſtates from the preſent Owners, on a deſign of ſetling them in his own Family, as before is ſaid, and to that end called in the *French*, who after made ſuch foul work in *Italie*.

29. *Julio* the ſecond had more in him of the *Souldier* then the *Prelate*, recovering many Towns unto the Church which had been formerly uſurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cæſar Borgias*, and keeping *Italy* in his time in continual Wars. This is the Pope who paſſing over the Bridge of *Tiber* brandiſhed his Sword, and threw his Keys into the River, ſaying, That if *Peter*'s Keys would not ſerve his turn, then *Paul*'s Sword ſhould do it.

30. *Leo* the tenth was indeed a great favourer of Learning, but of great prodigality and vaſt expence, for maintenance whereof he ſent his ſaleable *Indulgences* into *France* and *Germany*; which buſineſs being indiſcreetly handled by his *Miniſters*, occaſioned *Luther* in *Germany*, and *Zuinglius* amongſt the *Switzers*, firſt to write againſt them, and afterwards to queſtion many points of Popiſh Doctrine. In purſuance of which quarrel, the Pope of *Rome* burnt *Luther*'s Books, whom he declared for an Heretick; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg* with the Pope's *Canon Law*, whom he declared to be a Perſecutor, a Tyrant, and the very *Antichriſt*. Which flame encreaſed ſo faſt, and inlarged ſo far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. *Pius* the fourth continued the Council formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the third, but interrupted and laid aſide from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby ſetled and confirmed the *Interreſs* of the Church of *Rome*, cauſed it to be received as *Oecumenical*, though the *Italian* Biſhops, being moſt of them the Pope's creatures, did more then double the number of all the reſt, and yet ſome of the reſt alſo were but merely *Titulars*. He added alſo a new *Creed*, conſiſting of twelve Articles, to be added to that of the *Apoſtles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. But of the words and actions of theſe Ghoſtly Fathers we have ſaid enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinal for giving to St. *Peter*'s picture too much of the *red*, replied, that he *had made him ſo as bluſhing at the lives of thoſe who were called his Succeſſors*.

As for the *Temporal* power and greatneſs of the Popes of *Rome*, there is a pretended *Donation* of the Emperour *Conſtantine*, by which the City of *Rome* it ſelf, moſt part of *Italy* and *Africk*, and all the Iſlands of thoſe Seas are conferred upon them; the forgery whereof is very learnedly ſhewn by our learned *Cracanthorp*, in his diſcourſe upon that ſubject. But that *Donation* might moſt juſtly be ſuſpected of fraud and forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the ſame, conſidering how fearful the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof diſputed, inſomuch that many leaves are razed out of *Guicciardine* by the *Inquiſition* where it had been queſtioned; for in that place the Hiſtorian not onely denieth the ſaid feigned *Donation*, but affirms that divers learned men reported, that *Conſtantine* and *Silveſter* (to whom it is ſaid to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then ſheweth how baſe and obſcure the Authority of the Pope was in *Rome* it ſelf, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of *Italy*. 2 That in the inſtitution of the *Exarchate* the Popes had nothing to do with the *Temporal* Sword, but lived as Subject to the Emperours. 3 That they were not very much obeyed in matters *Spiritual*, by reaſon of the corruption of their manners. 4 That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperors now neglecting *Italy*, the *Romans* began to be governed by the advice and power of the Popes. 5 That *Pepin* of *France* and his ſon *Charls* having overthrown the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, gave unto the Popes the *Exarchate*, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns and Territories about *Rome*. 6 That the Popes in all their Bulls and Charters expreſs'd the date of them in theſe following words, *Such a one the Lord our Emperour reigning*. 7 That long after the tranſlation of the Empire from *France* to *Germany*, the Popes began to make open proteſtation, that the *Pontifical* Dignity was rather to give Laws to the Emperours, then receive any from them. 8 That being thus raiſed to an earthly power, they forgot the ſalvation of Souls, ſanctity of life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards men: and that to raiſe arms, to make War againſt *Chriſtians*, to invent new devices for getting of mony, to profane ſacred things for their own ends, and to enrich their kindred and children, was their onely ſtudy. And this is the ſubſtance of *Guicciardine* in that place, an Author above all exception, he was a man whom the Popes employed in many buſineſſes of principal importance, ſo that no hate to them but love to the truth made him write thus much. As for the City of *Rome*, ſo unlikely is it to have been given by *Conſtantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charls* his ſon (though more beholding to the Popes then that Emperour was) could be induced to part with it. *Lewis* ſurnamed *Pius* is ſaid to have been the firſt *Donor* of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third book of *Volaterran*, ſubſcribed by the Emperour, his three Sons, ten Biſhops, eight *Abbots*, fifteen Earls, and the Pope's *Library-keeper*: yet notwithſtanding it is thought by many very learned and judicious men, that really there was no ſuch matter, but that all this was forged by *Anaſtaſius* the Popes *Bibliothecarian* or Library-keeper, who is cited as a Witneſs to the Donation. And yet to put the matter further out of queſtion, let us next hear what that great Politician and States-man, the Recorder of *Florence*, *Nic. Machiavel* hath obſerved in this caſe. "*Rome* (ſaith he) was always ſubject to the Lords of "*Italy*, till *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* removed his ſeat to *Ravenna*, for thereby the *Romans* were "enforced to ſubmit themſelves to the Biſhops, *anno* 430. or thereabouts. And talking of the eſtate

The Papacy.

of the Popedome, *an.* 931. he ſtates it thus. “In *Rome* were elected yearly out of the Nobility two *Conſuls*, who according to the ancient cuſtom ruled that City; under them was appointed a Judge to miniſter Juſtice to the people; there was alſo a Council of twelve men, which gave Governours unto the Towns ſubject to *Rome*. And for the Pope, he had in *Rome* more or leſs authority according to the favour which he found with the Emperours, or others then moſt mighty; but the leaving of *Italy* by the *German* Emperours ſetled the Pope in a more abſolute Soveraignty over the City: and yet it ſeems they were not of ſuch abſolute power, but that the *Romans* tugged hard with them for their Liberties. Concerning which he tells us in another place, That the ambition of the people of *Rome* did at that time (*viz. anno* 1010.) make much war with the Popes, and that having helped the Pope to drive out the Emperour, and altered the Government of the City as to them ſeemed good, ſuddenly they became Enemies to him, and the Popes received more injuries at their hands then at any other *Chriſtian* Princes, and that even in thoſe days when the Cenſures of the Popes made all the Weſt of the World to tremble, yet even then did the people of *Rome* rebel, and both the Popes and the People ſtudied for nothing ſo much as how one of them might overthrow the authority and eſtimation of the other.

But for the method and degrees by which the Popes aſcended to their Temporal greatneſs, take here an extract of the Story collected out of the beſt Authors, by the moſt Reverend Father in God the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuit*: “The Pope (ſaith he) being choſen anciently by the *Clergy* and People of *Rome*, uſed always to receive from the Emperours hands a ratification of that choice, inſomuch that about the year 579. when all *Italy* was on fire with the ***Lombards***, and *Pelagius* the ſecond conſtrained through the neceſſity of the times to enter upon the Popedome without the Emperours leave, S. *Gregory*, then a Deacon, was ſhortly after ſent in an *Embaſſie* to excuſe it. But when the ***Lombards*** grew ſo great in *Italy*, and the Empire was ſo infeſted with the ***Sarazens***, and ſuch changes hapned in all parts of the world, as that neither for the preſent the *Homage* of the Pope was uſeful to the Emperour, nor the ***Protection*** of the Emperour available for the Pope: by this means was the Biſhop of ***Rome*** left to play his own game by himſelf; a thing, which as it pleaſed him well enough, ſo both he and his Succeſſors made great advantage by it. For being grown to that eminence by the favour of the Emperours and the greatneſs of that City and place of his abode, he then found himſelf the more free, the greater the Tempeſt was that beat upon the other. And then firſt he ſet himſelf to alienate the hearts of the *Italians* from the Emperour; in which he did prevail ſo far, that ***Theophylact*** the *Exarch* coming into *Italy* was oppoſed by the Souldiers, who wiſhed better to the Pope then to the Emperour; and the Emperours own Governour was fain to be defended from his own Souldiers by the power of the Pope, who had gotten intereſt in them againſt their own Maſter. Next he oppoſed himſelf againſt him, and about the year 710. Pope *Conſtantine* the firſt did openly affront *Philippicus* the Emperour in defence of ***Images***, as ***Onuphrius*** telleth us. After him ***Gregory*** the 2d and 3d took up his example, and did the like by *Leo Iſaurus*. By this time the ***Lombards*** began to pinch very cloſe, and to vex on all ſides not onely *Italy*, but ***Rome*** too. This drives the Pope to ſeek a new Patron, and very fitly he meets with ***Charls Martel*** in ***France***, that famous Warrier againſt the *Sarazens*; him he employeth in defence of the Church againſt the ***Lombards***, and the Addreſs ſeems very adviſedly taken, it proved ſo fortunate to them both; for in ſhort time it diſſolved the Kingdom of the ***Lombards***, having then ſtood two hundred and four years, which was the Popes ſecurity: and it brought the Crown of ***France*** into the Houſe of *Charls*, and ſhortly after the Weſtern Empire. And now began the Popes to be great indeed, for by the bounty of ***Pepyn*** the ſon of *Charls*, that which was taken by him from the ***Lombards*** was given to the Pope, that is to ſay, the *Exarchate*, and all that lay betwixt the ***Apennine*** and the River of ***Po***: ſo that now he became a Temporal Prince. But when *Charls* the great had ſet up the *Weſtern* Empire, then he reſumed the ancient and original Power, to govern the Church, to call Councils, and to order Papal Elections: and this power continued for a time in his poſterity, for *Gregory* the ſeventh was confirmed in the Popedom by the ſame *Henry* the fourth, whom he afterwards depoſed; and it might have continued longer, if the ſucceeding Emperours had had *Abilities* enough to ſecure or vindicate their own Rights. But the Pope keeping a ſtrong Council about him, and meeting with ſome weak Princes, and thoſe oft-times diſtracted with great and dangerous wars, grew ſtronger till he got the better; yet was it carried in ſucceeding times with great changes of fortune, and different ſucceſs, the Emperour ſometimes plucking from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperour, winning and loſing ground as their ſpirits, abilities, aids, and opportunities were; till at laſt the Pope ſetled himſelf on the grounds laid by ***Gregory*** the ſeventh, in that great power which he now uſeth in and over theſe parts of the *Chriſtian* world. A power firſt exerciſed (ſaith he in another place) by this Pope ***Gregory*** the ſeventh, and made too good upon the Emperour ***Henry*** the fourth, as by Pope ***Adrian*** the fourth, *Alexander* the third, with ſome others, upon ***Frederick Barbaroſſa***; and others of the Emperours were alike ſerved when they did not ſubmit: and for this I hope his Holineſs was not to be blamed; for if the Emperour kept the Pope under for divers years together againſt all reaſon, the Popes, as ***Bellarmine*** affirms, being never ſubject to the Emperour, and wanting force to ſtand on his own *Prerogative*; I hope the Pope, having now got power enough, may keep the Emperours under foot, and not ſuffer them any more to ſtart before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means by which the great power of the Church of ***Rome*** was firſt obtained, let us next conſider of thoſe policies by which this *Papal* Monarchy hath been ſo long upheld in eſteem and credit. We may divide them into three heads. 1 Thoſe by which they have inſi-

The Papacy.

inſinuated and ſcrewed themſelves into the affections and affairs of the greateſt Princes: 2 Thoſe by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to ſecure their eſtate; And 3 thoſe by which they keep the people in obedience and ignorance.

1 Concerning the firſt. Firſt, the Donation of ſeveral Kingdomes to them which have no right nor title, but by theſe Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them faſt to uphold that power, without which they could lay no claime to that which they are poſſeſſed of. Of which ſort was the confirmation of the Kingdome of *France* to the houſe of *Pepin*, of *Naples* to the houſe of *Schawben*, and *Anjou*, of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2 The readyneſs of their Miniſters to kill ſuch as reſiſt them, cannot but neceſſitate Princes to ſeek their freindſhip, and hold fair with them: eſpecially ſince by a Writ of Excommunication they can arm the Subjects againſt their Soveraign; and without the charge of levying one Souldier, either deſtroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent wars raiſed by them againſt the Emperours of *Germany*, and that againſt King *John* in *England*, by theſe *Papall fulminations* only; the poyſoning of the ſaid King *John* by a Monk of *Swineſtead*, and killing of King *Henry* the third of *France*, by *Jaques Clement*; are full proofs of this. 3 Then followeth their allowance of Marriages prohibited both by God and Nature; the iſſue of which cannot but uphold the Popes Authority, without which their birth would be illegitimate, and conſequently themſelves uncapable of the eſtates they are born unto: And by this means they do more ſtrengthen themſelves by the unlawfull Marriages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawfull marriage of his own. Nothing more faſtened Queen *Mary* of *England* to the See of *Rome*, than the queſtion that was raiſed about the Marriage of her Mother to King *Henry* the eighth; the lawfulneſs of which depended chiefly on the diſpenſation of Pope *Julio* the ſecond. 4 Then cometh in their diſpenſing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themſelves induced upon reaſon of State, to fly off from thoſe Leagues, and break off thoſe Treaties, which have been ſolemnly made and ſworn betwixt them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, ſuch Princes think themſelves not perjured, becauſe diſpenſed with by the Pope; and commonly get ſomething in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankfull unto the Papacy. Examples of this kind are obvious in all times and ſtories. 5 Next comes the chooſing of the younger ſons of great Princes, into the rank of *Cardinalls*; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the Papall Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regall Patrimony. 6 And as by theſe courſes he holds in with all *Chriſtian* Princes generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; ſo hath he faſtned more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we ſhall ſpeak further when we come to that Countrey.

2. Concerning the ſecond. So it is that their Eſtate hath the firmeſt foundation of any, as being built on the Conſciences of men poſſeſſed with an opinion of their *Infallibility*, and that undoubted power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but alſo over Hell and Purgatory. 2 Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their diſpoſing, for men of all humours and affections; as having in their power the diſpoſing of almoſt all the Benefices and Biſhopricks in *Italie*, half of thoſe in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*: which keepeth the *Clergy* and all ſuch as are that way ſtudied, in a perpetuall dependence upon the See; eſpecially injoying by it many notable Priviledges, which thoſe of the *Temporalty* are not capable of. 3 Conſider next the multitude of *Monks* and *Fryers*, whoſe very being depends wholly upon his Authority; every *Monaſtery* and *Convent* being a Garriſon (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a *Militia* of *Spirituall Janiſaries*; men moſt affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of theſe it is conceived that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at leaſt may be fit for action; and all maintained at other mens coſt, themſelves not disburſing a penny towards it. 4 Their *Pardons* and *Indulgences* are a great increaſe to their Revenue: ſome of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the eighth, which was for 82000 yeers to all that could ſay ſuch a Prayer of S. *Auguſtines*; and that for every day, *Toties, quoties*. 5 Their practiſing on *Penitents*, whom they perſwade in the very agony of their ſouls, that there is no ſalvation for them, but by giving part of their Eſtates unto the Church. 6 Nor have they found any ſmall advantage to their Power and Patrimony, by the invention of *Spiritual Fraternities*; which are Appurtenances (as it were) to the Orders of *Friers*, and may in number perhaps equall them. Into theſe the *Lay-people* of all ſorts, men and women, marryed and ſingle, deſire to be inrolled; as hereby injoying the ſpirituall prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more ſpeedy diſpatch out of *Purgatory*.

3 Concerning the third. 1 They deter the people from reading the Scripture, alledging unto them the perils they may incur by miſ-interpretation. 2 They *breed an Antipathy* between the *Papiſts* and the *Proteſtants*; inſomuch that a *Papiſt* may not ſay *Amen*, unto a *Proteſtants Deo gratias*. 3 They debar them from all *ſound of the Religion*, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers; and hiding their own Treatiſes, in which the Tenent of the *Proteſtants* is recited, only to be confuted: inſomuch that in all *Italie* one ſhall ſeldome meet with *Bellarmines* works, or any of the like nature to be ſold. 4 They have under pain of Excommunication prohibited the *Italians* from *Travell* and *Traffick* with *Hereticall* Countries, or ſuch places, where thoſe contagious ſounds and ſights (as they term them) might make them return infected. 5 The *Severity*, or *Tyranny* rather of the *Inquiſition*, (of which we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Spain*) cruſheth not onely the beginnings, but the ſmalleſt ſuſpicions of being this way addicted. And 6 the People thus reſtrained from Travell, are taught to believe that the *Proteſtants* are Blaſphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables, the people grown barbarous and eat young Children; that *Geneva* is a poſſeſſed Sanctuary of Roguery, and the like. We have yet two later examples of their dealing in this kind. Firſt, the groſs ſlander of the *Apoſtaſie* (or as they call it, the Reconcilia-

The Papacy

tion) unto their Church, of the Right reverend Father in God Dr. *King*, not long ſince the Lord Biſhop of *London*, a Prelate of too known a faith and zeal to give occaſion for ſuch a calumny. The ſecond, a book by them publiſhed, and commonly ſold in *Italie* and *France*, containing a relation of Gods judgements ſhewn on a ſort of ***Proteſtant Hereticks***, by the fall of an houſe in St. *Andrews* Pariſh in *London*, in which they were aſſembled to hear a *Geneva* Lecture, *Octob.* 26. *A.D.* 1623. By which dealing the ſimple people are made to believe that to be a judgement on us of the ***Proteſtant*** party, which the Authors of that pamphlet well know to be a calumny in regard of us; and a ſad chance (I will not ſay a judgement) which befell their own, by the fall of a Chamber in ***Black-Fryers***, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one *Drury*, a *Popiſh* Prieſt, and that too on the fifth of ***November*** in their own accompt, being the 26 of *October* before mentioned.

The Popedome being thus cunningly and ſtrongly founded, it cannot be if the Popes had been choſen young, or of the ſame Family, (ſo that the Succeſſor had not often croſſed the deſigns of his Predeceſſor) but that this new Monarchy had been greater and better eſtabliſhed, than ever the old ***Roman*** Empire was in her greateſt glory. And to ſay truth, I have oft wondered with my ſelf, that ſome of the more active Popes, eſpecially ſuch as were choſen young, and had the happineſs to deſcend of noble Families; did never ſeek the ſetling of this Eſtate in their own Poſterity: eſpecially conſidering the good ***Precedents*** which they had before them, both in ſacred and in civil ſtories. The ***high Prieſthood*** in the Church of *Jewry* went from Father to Son; and why ſhould any man think it inconvenient, to follow the example of Almighty God, in making the ***high Prieſthood*** in the Church of ***Chriſt*** to be alſo ***hereditary***, not ***elective***? The ***Saracens*** who were as great Maſters for wit and policy, as any thoſe Ages did produce, purſued that precedent; governed by ***Hereditary Caliphs*** many yeers together, untill the ***Sultans*** their ***Vicegerents*** (ambitiouſly affecting the Supreme Command) rooted out their races. And if the ſame Obligation lie on the ***Maſters*** of ***Religious*** or mixt Orders, for preſerving the Rules and Statures of their foundations; as is upon the Pope by the fundamental Ordinances of the ***Conclave***, as it ſeems to do; why might not the Popes as well diſpenſe with thoſe ***Conſtitutions***, and turn the Popedome into an ***Hereditary*** Eſtate; as ***Albert*** of ***Brandenbourg***, and ***Gotardus*** of ***Denmark***, Maſters of the ***Ducth*** Knights in ***Pruſſia*** and ***Livonia***, in their times have done? Nor can I ſee, but that ſuch an alteration as I ſpeak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of ***Chriſtendome***, as the like change from an unſetled popular Government to an hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that noble Hiſtorian and Stateſman ***Tacitus***, ***Neque Provinciæ illum rerum ſtatum abnuebant, ſuſpecto*** Senatus populique ***imperio ob certamina potentium, & avaritiam Magiſtratuum; invalido Legum auxilio, quæ vi, ambitu, poſtremo pecunia turbabantur***. The Provinces (ſaith he) diſliked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the ***Senate*** and ***People*** had been long diſtaſted, by reaſon of the factions of the great ones, and covetouſneſs of their Officers: the Laws affording no ſecurity at all, as being ſwaid up and down by force, ambition and corruption. The ***Popedome*** ſetled in one houſe would prove more conſtant in the preſervation of all Leagues and Treaties, more carefull to preſerve the ***intereſt*** of their Eſtate, more uſefull to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occaſions, than it is at preſent: where the Popes ſo often change their ſides, and ſhift their factions; the Succeſſor many times eſteeming it his greateſt glory, to reſcind all the acts of his Predeceſſor. And poſſible enough it is that ***Cæſar Borgia*** the Son of ***Alexander*** the ſixth, might have ſome ſuch ends; when it was covenanted betwixt him and ***Lewis*** the twelfth of ***France***, that being declared General of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping hand to that King in the Conqueſt of ***Millain***; he ſhould be aided by him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of ***Urbine*** and ***Camerine***, the Families of the ***Malateſti***, ***Baillons***, and ***Bentivogli***, with divers others of leſs note, did poſſeſs in ***Italy***. Which having got into his hands, had not his Fathers ſudden death, and his own dangerous ſickneſs hapning at the ſame time, cut off his deſigne; it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himſelf abſolute Maſter of ***Rome***, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the ſame eſtabliſhed in the ***Borgian*** Family. 'Tis true, that ſuch an alteration would be very diſtaſteful to the ambition of the ***Cardinals***, who by the death, (natural or violent, it matters not) of the preſent Pope, aſpire by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot ſee how all the wit in the ***Conclave*** had been able to hinder it, if ***Alexander***, on a purpoſe to poyſon ſome of that number whom he had invited to a Supper, by a mere miſtake of his Cup-bearer, had not poyſoned himſelf, (even in the very heat of the buſineſs then almoſt effected) and ſo m[illegible] fruſtrate the device.

But paſſing by this imagination of an ***Hereditary*** Popedom, let us behold it as ***Elective***, and look upon the form and order obſerved in it. Now the Election of the Pope is made moſt commonly in this place, and manner: In the Popes Palace on the Hill ***Vatican***, are among other buildings five Halls, two Chapels, and a Gallery ſeventy foot long. The Gallery is appointed for conference, one ***Chappel*** for the Maſs, and for the Election; the other with the Halls are for the ***Cardinals*** lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purpoſely for the time, made of green or violet cloth. To each ***Cardinal*** is allowed four ſervants, to lie in his Chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unleſs they be ſick, ſtill to continue there; and ſuch as are once out, are no more permitted to go in: leſt by that means, the Cardinals ſhould maintain intelligence with any forein Princes. To this ***Conclave*** (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which belongeth four locks, and as many keys. One key is in the keeping of the Cardinals; one, of the City-Biſhops; one, of the ***Roman*** Nobility; and one, of the ***Maſter of the Ceremonies***. There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at dinners and ſuppers, whereof the ***Maſter***

of

The Papacy

of the Ceremonies keepeth a Key. At this hole the *Cardinals* ſervants receive their meat, every diſh being firſt diligently ſearched, leſt any Letters ſhould be conveyed in them. As for the lodgings, they have neither holes nor windows to give light; ſo that there they make day of Wax-candles. And leſt the Pope ſhould be made by force, both the City and the *Conclave* are ſtrongly guarded. When the *Cardinals* are going to Election, the privileges of the *Cardinals* are recited, which every one ſweareth to obſerve, in caſe he be choſen Pope. Then the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* ringing a Bell, calleth them to Maſs, which ended, there is brought to every *Cardinal* a Chair, and therein a Scrol of all the *Cardinals* names. Before the Altar is ſet a Table covered with a purple cloth, whereupon is ſet a Chalice, and a ſilver Bell, and about it ſix ſtools, on which ſit two Cardinal-Biſhops, two Cardinal-Prieſts, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every *Cardinal* writeth his voice in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voice into the Chalice, and departeth to his ſeat. The firſt Biſhop taketh out all the papers, and delivereth them to the firſt *Deacon*, who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the *Elector*) the name of the elected, and every *Cardinal* in his particular Scrol noteth how many voices every one hath. The account being made, the *firſt Prieſt* having the like Scrol, pronounceth who hath moſt voices: which done, the *Prieſt* ringeth a ſilver Bell, at which call the *Maſter of the Ceremonies* bringeth in a pan of coles, and burneth all the little papers wherein the names of the *Elected* were written. He that hath the moſt voices (ſo that his voices exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the reſt of the Cardinals; but if they exceed not this number, they muſt begin all anew. If in the ſpace of thirty days the Election be not fully ended, then muſt the *Cardinals* be kept from fire, light, and victuals till they are fully agreed. The Wicket which we before mentioned is called the *Golden Gate*, at which ſtand an infinite number of poor people, on whom the new Pope, having opened that Gate, beſtoweth his Fatherly Benediction, and remitteth to them all their ſins. Then ſtriketh he continually on the ſame door with a *Golden Mallet*, which whilſt he is doing, work-men without break it open. The chips, ſtones, duſt and dirt which falleth from the Gate while it is opening, are gathered and preſerved as choiceſt *Reliques*; and the *Golden Mallet* is uſually given to that Cardinal who is in moſt grace with the new Pope.

This is the ordinary way of the Pope's Election, but ſubject to much faction and diviſion amongſt the Cardinals, and that in times of leſs deceit than the preſent are; inſomuch as after the death of Pope *Clement* the fourth, the differences amongſt them held for two years and more. Which gave occaſion to one of them to ſay in ſcorn, that *they muſt uncover the roof of the houſe to make way for the* Holy Ghoſt *to come upon them*. And there is now much more corruption and abuſe in it than ever formerly, as buying of Voices, ſetting up ſome for ſtales, and tearing Scrutinies; every Cardinal deſiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Princes faction. So that we find it written of an old *Sicilian* Cardinal, who after long abſence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that inceſſant prayers, as in times of old, ſhould have procured ſome fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Chriſt*, that finding nothing but canvaſſing, promiſing rewards, and threatning for Voices in the choice; *Ad hunc modum* (ſaith he) *fiunt Pontifices Romani*? and ſo returned into his Country, and ſaw *Rome* no more.

The ordinary *Temporal* Revenue of the Papacy ariſing out of Land-rents, Impoſts upon Commodities, and ſale of Offices, *Boterus* maketh to be better then two millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary and *Spiritual* to be far beyond. For it is ſaid of *Pius Quintus*, who ſate Pope ſix years onely, that he got from the *Spaniſh* Clergy 14 Millions; and though he was a very great builder, which ſpent him a great deal of mony, yet he ſo managed his Eſtate, that he laid up four millions of Crowns in the Caſtle of S. *Angelo*. *Sixtus* the fifth took from the *Jeſuits* at one clap 20000 Crowns of yearly Rent, (becauſe they were too rich for men profeſſing poverty) and having ſate but five years, had coffered up five millions of Gold; four of which his ſucceſſor *Gregory* the fourteenth ſpent in leſs then a year. Out of *France* they receive no leſs than a million of Crowns yearly. Out of *England*, when it was the Popes *Puteus inexhauſtus*, they and their followers extracted no leſs then 60000 Marks *per an.* which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our preſent mony, and was more then the Kings ſtanding Revenue did attain unto; yet was this in the time of K. *Henry* 3d before their avarice and rapine was at the heighth. And of late days, no longer then ſince the reign of K. *Henry* the 8. beſides their *Peter-pence*, which was an annual Rent upon every Chimney in the Realm, firſt granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, *an.* 730. or thereabouts, and afterwards confirmed by *Ethelwolf* the ſecond Monarch of *England*, beſides their Firſt-fruits, Tenths, and all other Exactions, it was made evident, that in ſome few years then laſt paſt the Popes had received out of *England* no leſs then 160000*l.* ſterling for the confirmation of Epiſcopal Elections onely. By which we may conjecture what vaſt ſums they drew hence on all other occaſions. Let other Countries ſubject to the Popes authority be accordingly rated, and the total will amount to a ſum incredible. Next add to this the ſums of mony they receive from particular perſons for Pardons, with Diſpenſations for unlawful Marriages, the profits ariſing from Pilgrimages, from the death and funerals of great perſons, from the Indulgencies granted to Abbies and Convents, in all which the Popes have a ſhare; and it would puzzle a good *Arithmetician* to ſtate his *Intrado*. So truly was it ſaid by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, that *a Pope could never want mony as long as he was able to hold a pen in his hand*. Yet notwithſtanding, their Treaſury for the moſt part is but low and empty. For 1 the ſtate they keep, becauſe of that great honour which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence (for *the more worſhip the more coſt*, as the ſaying is) is very chargeable unto them, their ordinary Guards ſtanding them in no leſs then 30000 Crowns *per annum*. 2. The large allowances which they are fain to give unto their *Legates*, *Nuncios*, and other Miniſters keep their Coffers low, the entertainment of their ordinary *Nuncios* in the Courts of *Chriſtian* Princes amounting to no leſs then 1200 Crowns a month to each. And 3 their greedy deſire to enrich their ſons or kinſmen with the Treaſures of the Church (with which humour Pope *Sixtus* the fifth, being of poor and obſcure birth, was never touched) keeps them always bare. Add unto theſe the exceſſive gorgeouſneſs of the Papal Veſtments, (in which vanity every one ſeeketh to excel the other) eſpecially that of their *Triple Crown*, which muſt needs put them to great charge, and continual iſſues of their Treaſure: and for an evidence of this laſt, we find that *Clement* the fifth, who firſt transferred his See to *Avignon*, to ſhew his gallantry to the *French* (probably unacquainted with the like fine ſights) had his Crown thick ſet with *Carbuncles* and precious Stones, one of which being loſt by a fall from his Horſe, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the *Forces* of the *Church*, the Pope is able to impreſs as great a number of Land-ſouldiers out of his Eſtate as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of *Italy*. *Paul* the 3d. ſent to the aid of *Charls* the 5th in the Wars of *Germany* 12000 Foot and 500 Horſe, and yet raiſed his own Family to the Dukedom of *Parma*. *Pius* the fifth ſent to the aid of *Charls* the ninth againſt the *Hugonots* 4000 Foot and 1000 Horſe, which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when *Clement* undertook the War of *Ferrara*, he raiſed out of his Eſtate 20000 Foot and 2000 Horſe in leſs then a month, which was more then moſt Princes in *Europe* could poſſibly have done. And for the valour of his Souldiers and ability of his Commanders, they retain ſo much (as before was ſaid) of their Anceſtors virtues, that there are thought to be many Families in the Eſtate of the Church able to furniſh all the Common-wealths and Princes of Chriſtendom with ſufficient Captains. What and how little he is able to do by Sea may be beſt ſeen out of the aid which he ſent to the *Venetians* at the famous Battel of *Lepanto*, wherein he furniſhed them with no more then twelve Gallies, and thoſe too hired of the Duke of *Florence*; the *Venetians* in the *Adriatick* and the *Florentines* in the *Tuſcan* Seas having all the Trade, and conſequently all the power in the Seas of *Italy*. 'Tis true, the Pope was bound by the capitulation to bear the fifth part of the charge of the War, and with the help of the reſt of the Princes of *Italy* (who were to march under his colours) to ſet forth 50000 Foot and 4500 Horſe: which is as great an argument of his riches and power by Land, as the other is of his weakneſs at Sea.

Having a purpoſe in the proſecution of this work to mention ſuch particular Orders of Knighthood as moſt Countries have given beginning to, I will here ſet down the Orders of ſuch *Popiſh Spiritual Knights* or *Friers* which his holy Benediction hath erected, and fat allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the original of a *Monaſtical life*, and then we will make ſpecial mention of ſome of the *Romiſh* Votaries of both ſexes. Know then, that under the ſeventh perſecution raiſed againſt the Church by *Decius*, one *Paulus* born at *Thebes* in *Egypt* retired to a private Cave under the foot of a Rock, *anno* 260. here he is ſaid to have lived one hundred years, and to have been ſeen of no man but one *Anthony*, who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the firſt that followed the example of *Paulus*, a man of a noble Houſe, and one that ſold all his Eſtate that he might the more privately enjoy himſelf; he lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the *Father of the Monks*. To theſe beginnings doth *Polydore Virgil* refer the original of the *Monks*, and Religious Orders, the name *Monk* coming from the *Greek* μόνος, becauſe of their lonely and ſolitary lives. Thoſe of the Religious Orders are called *Fratres*, and in *Engliſh Friers*, from the *French* word *Frere*, which ſignifieth a Brother, and that either becauſe of their brotherly cohabitation, or elſe becauſe they are *Fratres in malo*, brethren in miſchief and deſign.

The foundation of *Monaſtical* life thus laid by *Paulus* and *Anthony*, the world increaſed ſo faſt in *Monks* and *Eremites*, that it ſeemed neceſſary to preſcribe them orders; hereupon Saint *Baſil* gathered them together, living formerly diſperſed, and is ſaid to be the firſt that built them Monaſteries; he is alſo ſaid to have ordained the three Vows of *Poverty*, *Chaſtity*, and *Obedience*; to have inſtructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the ſervice of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this Order there are not many in the *Latin* Church, but good plenty of them in the *Greek*. They are bound to abſtain from all kind of fleſh, and are called *Monks* of S. *Baſil* by the name of that Father; amongſt the Writings of which Father, the Rules for theſe *Monaſticks* are ſet down at large.

2. The next who preſcribed Orders was S. *Auguſtine*, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of age is ſaid to have obtained a Garden without the walls of *Hippo* for private contemplations; twelve onely he aſſumed into his ſociety, living with them in all integrity, and wearing a leathern girdle to diſtinguiſh them from *Monks*. Hence came the preſent *Auſtine Friers*, or the *Eremites* of S. *Auſtin* as others call them. Of ſuch eſteem formerly in the Univerſity of *Oxford*, that all who took the degree of a Maſter of Arts were to ſubmit themſelves to their *Oppoſitions* in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, *in Auguſtinenſibus reſponderit vel oppoſuerit*, ſtill retained among them. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood in *Broadſtreet*, of which a part of the Church ſtill ſtandeth, converted to a Church for the uſe of the *Dutch*, the reſt demoliſhed, and in the place thereof a ſtately manſion erected by Sir *William Paulet* the firſt Marqueſs of *Wincheſter*, and Lord Treaſurer of *England*. Theſe make the firſt Order of the *Friers Mendicants*; the firſt Monaſtery of them was erected at *Paris* by *William* Duke of *Guien*, *anno* 1155. and *anno* 1200. they began to flouriſh in *Italy* by the favour of *John* Lord of *Mantua*. The other Branches of this Tree are 1 the *Monks* of S. *Hierom*, 2 the *Carmelites*, 3 the *Crouchet Friers*, and 4 the *Dominicans*.

1. The *Monks* of S. *Hierom* challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church ſo called; they flouriſh eſpecially in *Spain*, where there are thirty two Monaſteries of them, their

chief Houſe being S. *Bartholomews* of *Lupikna*, and have taken unto themſelves the Rule of S. *Auſtin*. Their Robe is a white Caſſock under a tawny Cloak.

2. The *Carmelites*, ſo called from Mount *Carmel* in *Syria*, pretend their original from *Elias* and *John the Baptiſt*; they onely allowed at firſt the Rule of S. *Baſil*, and were confirmed in *Europe* by *Honorius* the third. They are by ſome called *Jacobines*, from a Church dedicated to S. *James*, where they had their firſt *Convent*; and by us the *White Friers*, from the colour of their habit. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood in *Fleetſtreet*, converted ſince into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, beſides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of S. *Auſtin* by *Donna Eresba* (or *Tereſa*) a *Spaniſh* woman, who made them alſo certain Conſtitutions, confirmed by *Pius* the fourth, *anno* 1565.

3. The *Friers* of S. *Croſs*, *Croſſed*, or *Crouched Friers*, were firſt ordained by *Cyriacus* Biſhop of *Jeruſalem*, who ſhewed to *Helena* the place where the *Croſs* was hidden, hence this Order; which being almoſt decayed, was reſtored firſt by *Urban* the ſecond, and afterwards by *Innocent* the third under the Rule of S. *Auſtin*. Their Robe is Watchet, and in their hands they carry the figure of the Croſs: their Houſe in *London* near the *Tower* ſtill retains its name.

4. The *Dominicans*, or *Friers Preachers*, were inſtituted by S. *Dominick* a *Spaniard*; he put himſelf in this Order with ſixteen of his Diſciples under the Rule of S. *Auſtin*, *anno* 1206. and had his device confirmed by *Honorius* the third. Their duty is to preach the Goſpel in all places unto the fartheſt parts of the world; which both they did, and their ſucceſſors ſince have done, not at home onely, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black Friers*, from the colour of their habits, and are the third Order of *Friers Mendicants*. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood near *Ludgate*, and took up the whole Precinct which is ſtill called *Flack Friers*, though nothing be remaining of it but the very name.

3. The third that preſcribed Orders was S. *Benedict*, born at *Nurſia* in the *Dutchy* of *Spoleto*, *anno* 472. he gathered the *Monks* of *Italy* together, gave them a Rule in writing, cauſed them to be called *Benedictines*, or *Monks* of S. *Benedict*, and lived till he had ſeen twelve Monaſteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew ſo populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbiſhops, 4000 Biſhops, and 50000 Canonized Saints. Their Habit is a looſe Gown of black reaching down to the ground, with a Hood of the ſame, an under garment of white woollen, and Boots on their legs. The other principal Streams of this Fountain are, 1 the Monks of *Clugnia*, 2 of *Carthuſia*, 3 of *Ciſteaux*, 4 the *Celeſtines*.

1. The *Monks* of *Clugnie* are ſo called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*, the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the firſt that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity, *anno* 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperours, that all ſuch Abbies as would come under the compaſs of his Reformations (which were in all about two hundred) ſhould be called the *Congregation of Clugnie*, and that they might call their Chapiters, and diſpatch their common buſineſſes when and as often as they pleaſed.

2. The *Carthuſians* were firſt inſtituted by one *Bruno* a *German* Doctor of Divinity at the Town of *Carthuſia* in *Daulphine*, *anno* 1080. his followers, which were at the firſt but ſix, have at this day 93 Monaſteries. They eat no fleſh, live by couples, labour with their hands, watch, pray, and never meet together but on *Sundays*. Their Houſe in *London* by corruption and long tract of time got the name of the *Charter-houſe*, (the *Monks* themſelves being corruptly called the *Charter-houſe Monks*) now better known by the name of *Suttons Hoſpital*, from the Hoſpital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of *London*.

3. The *Monks* of *Ciſteaux* were firſt inſtituted by one *Robert* Abbot of *Moleſme*, *anno* 1090 or thereabouts, who together with 21 of the moſt Religious of his Covent retired to *Ciſteaux* in *Burgundy* Dutchy, hence the name. About five years after one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order, who built and repaired for them 160 Abbies. Their Robe is a white Caſſock, girt with a Girdle of Wool, the reſt black. They were by us called *White Monks*, and the common *Benedictines Black Monks*, both from the colour of their habits.

4. The *Celeſtines* owe their original to *Peter de Moron*, a *Samnite*, born *anno* 1250, who being afterwards for his ſanctity choſe Pope, was called *Celeſtine* the fifth. He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated, and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory* the 11. There are at this preſent 124 Monaſteries of them.

4. The fourth and laſt that preſcribed new Orders to the *Monaſticks* was St. *Francis* of *Aſſis* in the Dutchy of *Spoleto*. He fell from Merchandiſe, which was his firſt profeſſion, unto the ſtudy of Religion, going bare-foot, and behaving himſelf very penitently; whereupon great ſtore of Diſciples following him he gave them a Rule in Writing, by which they are bound to profeſs abſolute beggary, and are not permitted to carry any mony about them, nor more victuals then will for the preſent ſerve themſelves and their Brethren; this they obſerve punctually in their own perſons, but give themſelves leave to have a Boy with them to do both without Scruple. S. *Francis* deſired they ſhould be called *Minors*, to ſhew their humility, but they are generally called *Franciſcans* by the name of their Founder. By the *French* called *Cordeliers*, becauſe of the knotty Cord which they wear about them inſtead of a Girdle; by us the *Gray Friers*, from the colour of their upper garment. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloiſters, and ſome other the publick Offices do ſtill ſtand entire; the whole converted to an Hoſpital for poor Children by King *Edward* the ſixth in the latter end of his reign, now beſt known by the name of *Chriſt-Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent* the 3d *anno* 1212. and is the fourth and laſt of the *Friers Mendi-*

cants, or *begging Friers*. The other principal Children of this Father are, 1 the *Minimes*, and 2 the *Capouchins*.

1. The *Friers Minimes* were firſt founded by *Franciſcus de Pola* a *Neapolitan*, *anno* 1450, according to a corrected Copy of the Rule of S. *Francis* of *Aſſis*. His followers keep always a true Lenten Faſt, unleſs in caſe of ſickneſs. Their Robe is a dark tawny, an Hood of the ſame hanging to their girdles.

2. The *Capouchins* (ſo called from their Cowl or *Capouch*) were ordained by one *Matthew Baſci* of *Ancona*. Frier *Lewis* his companion obtained for them of the Pope the habit and rule of S. *Francis*, *anno* 1526. In the ſpace of 42 years they encreaſed to 2240 aſſociates, had 222 Monaſteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to ſpend their time in prayer, and are generally thought to be the devouteſt of all the Orders *Monaſtical*.

I ſhould now ſpeak of the *Jeſuites*, but that I cannot bring them under any Rule, as being a people neither ſimply *Lay* nor *Prieſts*, nor merely *Secular* nor *Regular*, but all together. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, who being in his youth addicted to the Wars, was lamed in one of his legs; after which maim betaking himſelf to the ſtudy of Religion, he framed this Order, conſiſting at the firſt of ten onely. *Paul* the third did confirm it, *anno* 1540, confining the number within ſixty, which he after enlarged *ad infinitum*. They are now the greateſt Politicians, ſoundeſt Scholars, and chiefeſt Upholders of the *Romiſh* See; ſo that the onely way to re-eſtabliſh the *Romiſh* Religion in any Land, is to plant a College of *Jeſuites* in it. To the three Vows of *Poverty*, *Obedience*, and *Chaſtity*, common to all other Orders. *Ignatius* at the inſtitution of this added the Vow of *Miſſion*, whereby his followers are bound to obey their *General*, or the Pope, without demanding any reaſon, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatſoever, whether it be undertaking ſome tedious voyage for the propagation of the *Romiſh* Religion, or the Maſſacring of any Prince whoſe life is a hindrance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jeſuite* being in the midſt of his Maſs, which they call the Sacrifice of the Altar, was ſent for by *Ignatius*, to whom leaving off his Maſs he went immediately. *Ignatius* having no buſineſs wherein to imploy him, told him, he onely ſent for him to try his obedience; and withall profanely added, that *Obedience is better then Sacrifice*. And this is called the blind obedience of the *Jeſuites*. To leave them then as they are, the greateſt diſturbers of the quiet of *Europe*, I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, ſay many times, that till the *Jeſuites* were taken from the Church of *Rome*, and the peeviſh *Puritan* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of *Great Britain*, he thought there would never be any peace in Chriſtendom; with what a true preſaging ſpirit the event hath ſhewed.

Corrivals with the *Jeſuits* in power and learning, and almoſt coætaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Nerio* a *Florentine*, *anno* 1564, who marking the great ſway which the *Jeſuits* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run if that Order were not equally ballanced by ſome other of as much ability, firſt eſtabliſhed this, conſiſting altogether of Prieſts, that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of practical and moral duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinal *Cæſar Baronius*, *Francis Bourdino*, afterwards Biſhop of *Avignon* in *France*, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three firſt whom he admitted to his Rule; initiated in S. *Hieroms* Church at *Rome* by Pope *Pius* the fourth with great zeal and cheerfulneſs, to whom, as to ſome of his Predeceſſors, the power and practiſes of the *Jeſuits* were become ſuſpicious. They encreaſed ſpeedily (being countenanced on ſo good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue: as much eſteemed of for their knowledge in *Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory* and *Practical Divinity*, as the others for Philoſophy, Tongues, and the ſtudy of Controverſies, and more accepted of in moſt places, becauſe not uſually intermedling in affairs of State. So evenly look'd on by the Popes, that the *Jeſuits* could not obtain the *Canonization* of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Nerius* alſo, which hapned in the ſhort Popedom of *Gregory* the 15, *anno* 1622.

To conclude this diſcourſe of *Monks* and *Friers*, I will ſay ſomewhat of the ſevereſt kind of *Recluſe*, which is the *Anachoret* or *Anchoret*, ſo called from ἀναχωρέω, becauſe they uſe to live retired from company. They are kept in a cloſe place, where they muſt dig their graves with their nails, badly clad, and worſe dieted; not to be pitied for all that, becauſe their reſtraint of liberty is voluntary, yet to be ſorrowed for in this, that after ſuch an earthly *Purgatory*, they ſhall find in ſtead of an *Euge bone ſerve*, a *Quis quæſivit hæc de manibus veſtris*?

But concerning theſe Orders of *Monks* and *Friers*, certain it is, that at their firſt inſtitution they were a people much reverenced for their holy life, as men that for Chriſts ſake had abandoned all the pomps and vanities of the world; and queſtionleſs they were then a people altogether mortified, and who by their very aſpects would gain upon the affection of the hardeſt heart, inſomuch that not onely mean men, but great perſonages alſo did deſire to be buried in a Friers weeds, as *Francis* the 2d Marqueſs of *Mantua*, *Albertus Pius* another Prince of *Italie*, *Iſabel* the renowned Queen of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, wife of *Ferdinand* the Catholick; and in late times the great Scholar *Chriſtopher Longolius*. But as *Florus* ſaith of the Civil Wars between *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, *Cauſa hujus belli, eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*, we may ſay alſo of theſe Friers, The greatneſs of their wealth, which many on a ſuperſtitious devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them firſt to a neglect of their former devout and religious carriage, next to a wretchleſneſs of their credits, and conſequently into contempt; ſo that there was not a people under heaven that was more infamous in themſelves, or more ſcornfully abuſed by others. Hence the vulgar ſayings of the people, that *Friers wear croſſes on their breaſts, becauſe they have none in their hearts*; and that *when a Frier receiveth the Razor, the Devil entreth into him*;

and

The Papacy

and the like. Nay, Sir *Thomas More*, who loſt his head in the Popes quarrel, ſticks not in his *Utopia* to call them *Errones maximos*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and ſturdy Beggers. Now to ſhew both the humours of Reſpect, and Contempt, uſed ſeverally to theſe *Monks* and *Friers*, as men ſtood affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moor*, Sir *Thomas* his wife, finding by chance a *Friers* Girdle ſhewed it to her husband with great joy, ſaying, *Behold, Sir Thomas, a ſtep towards Heaven*: whereunto with a ſcornfull laugh he returned this anſwer, that *he feared that ſtep would not bring her a ſtep higher*. And as for their retiredneſs and ſolitary courſe of life, ſo it is that many Kings, eſpecially of the *Saxons* in the time of their *Heptarchy*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: and *Barclay* in his *Argenis*, under the perſon of *Anarceſtius*, hath defended it in ſuch Princes, as have cloyſtered themſelves to enjoy the ſolitude of a Convent. Which notwithſtanding, Philoſophers have defined a man to be ζῶον πολιτικὸν, a Creature principally made for civil converſation; the Poets ſay, *Naſcitur indignè per quem non naſcitur alter*, that he dyeth indebted to the world, who leaveth no poſterity behind him: and the *Jews*, which live in great numbers even in *Rome* it ſelf, abhor this unſociable kind of living, and prefer a civil ſociableneſs much before it; as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable, and conſequently to God more acceptable. And having ſpoken thus much of the *Monks* and *Friers*, deſcend we now unto the *Nuns*.

And indeed I ſhould much wrong the *Friers*, if I ſhould deprive them of the company of their deareſt *Votaries*; and therefore take ſomewhat of them alſo. Called anciently *Moniales* from the *Greek* word Μόνος, from their living alone; whence we alſo had the names of *Monks* and *Monaſteries*: in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nonna* an *Egyptian* word, (for *Ægypt* in old times was not meanly furniſhed with ſuch *Eremites*) which alſo ſignifieth a ſolitary and lonely life. A word in ſome of the barbarous *Latines* very much in uſe. *Scholaſtica* the Siſter of S. *Benedict*, was the firſt who collected them into companies, and preſcribed them Rulers. They are ſhaved as *Monks* are, and vow (as they do) perpetual poverty and *Virginity*. Which laſt how well they keep, let *Clemangis* teſtifie; who telleth us, that *Puellam* velare *idem eſt ac publicè eam ad* ſcortandum *exponere*: to veil a Nun, and proſtitute her for a common Harlot, were terms equivalent. And one *Robinſon*, who lived for a time in the *Engliſh* Nunnery at *Lisbon*, hath told us that he found an hole in the Garden wall covered over with Morter, in which were hidden the bones of many new-born children, which their unnatural Mothers had murthered and thrown in there. But of theſe I will inſtance only in two Orders, *viz.* that of S. *Clare*, as being the ſtricteſt; and that of S. *Brigit*, which injoyeth moſt liberty.

1 S. *Clare* was a Knights daughter of *Aſſis*, where S. *Francis* was born, with whom ſhe was cotemporary, and with whoſe auſtere life ſhe was ſo affected, that ſhe forſook her Fathers houſe, and followed him. Having learned her *Lirrie* of that *Frier-monger*, ſhe deviſed an Order of Religious women, and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius* the third, *anno* 1225. Her followers vow *Poverty* and *Virginity*, as before was ſaid, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more ſtraitned in their courſe of life, than thoſe of any other Order. By their foundreſs, out of a deſire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of S. *Francis*, they were called *Minorites*, or *Minores*, and gave name to the place near the Tower-hill in *London*, where they had their houſe, called from them the *Minories*.

2 S. *Brigit* was a Queen of *Swethland*, and coming to *Rome* on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban* the third, *anno* 1370. or thereabouts, that *Friers* and *Nuns* might in ſome places live together. For being a Woman and a Widow ſhe knew beſt, (as ſeemeth) what was good for both Sexes; and ſo deviſed ſuch a Rule as contented both. But little needed this cohabitation or living together, under the ſhelter of the ſame roof. For they had formerly been joyned in carnal affections, though parted by wals, neither were the *viſitations* of the *Friers* ſo fruitleſs, but that the *Nuns* did fructifie by them. Theſe *Friers* and *Nuns* though they lived under the ſame roof, are prohibited from coming to one another, but on ſpecial occaſions: the *Foundreſs* ſo ordering it that the *Nuns* ſhould lie in the upper rooms and the *Friers* in the lower. The *Confeſſor* alſo is denied acceſs into their chambers, but ſhrieveth them through an *Iron-Gate*, by which his lodging is parted from the Lady *Abbeſſe's*. And herein lyeth the *Myſtery of Iniquity*. For *Robinſon*, whom before I named, tels us, that at the time of his ſervice in the *Engliſh Nunnery* at *Lisbon*, he was ſhewed a way, by which this uncharitable Grate, which ſeemed to keep the *Friers* from the company of their *female friends*, might be and was on ſuch occaſions uſually removed, and the acceſs made free and open to each others beds. Which if it be truly ſaid of theſe, may be ſuſpected alſo in all the reſt of this Order, and in moſt alſo of the others.

And now I return unto my *Friers*, which beſides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their preſent ſubſiſtence; are kept in a continual hope and poſſibility of attaining to the higheſt honours which that Church can give, if they continue conſtant in their due obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the *Prior* of his Convent; 2 *Provincial* of his Order, in that Country where he liveth; 3 and then the General of his Order. Next, none more likely then the Generals to be choſen *Cardinals*, and out of the *Cardinals* one of neceſſity muſt be choſen (and why not he, as well as any of the pack?) to be Pope of *Rome*. So firm and ſweet a Companion of man is *Hope*, that being the laſt thing which leaves him, it makes all toyls ſupportable, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedome containeth
Arch-Biſhops 44 Biſhops 57.

Venice.

The Seigneurie of VENICE.

NOrth of the Lands of the Church from *Romandiola* to the *Alpes* lie the *Italian* Provinces of the State of *VENICE*; bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the reſt of *Romandiola*; on the Weſt, with the Dukedom of *Millaine*; on the North, with the main body of the *Alpes*; and on the Eaſt, with the *Adriatick* and the River *Arſia*, by which laſt parted from *Liburnia*, *a Sclavonian* Province. Beſides which it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Iſlands of *Candi, Corfu, Cephalenia, Ithaca, Zant, Cithera*, and certain others of leſs note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thouſand miles, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The nature of the ſoyl, and the principal Rivers which refreſh it, we ſhall ſee anon in the deſcription of the Provinces into which divided. According to which Provinces and the chief Cities of them the Character of the people may beſt be taken: it being ſaid proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themſelves are ſtately, crafty, and *greedy*; the *Veronians*, ſtudious and faithful; the *Paduans* fierce, the *Vincentians* eager on revenge; thoſe of *Friuli*, gratefull, but inconſtant; thoſe of *Hiſtria*, neither long-livers, nor of very great courage. That in the conduct of a War, thoſe of *Venice* bring ſilver, thoſe of *Treviſo* ſwords; that the *Breſcians* are fit to dig in trenches, thoſe of *Bergomo* to lay ambuſhes, thoſe of *Padua* to manage horſes. And of the women it is ſaid, that thoſe of *Crema* are deceitfull, thoſe of *Venice* inſolent, thoſe of *Vincentia* conſtant, thoſe of *Verona* gracious, thoſe of *Treviſo* jealous, thoſe of *Breſcia* diligent, and the *Bergomaſque* crafty.

But not to dally longer in theſe proverbial characters (though they carry a great deal of truth in them) certain it is that the *Venetians* themſelves do affect a great deal of gravity in their actions, ſpeak very little at the table; very ſevere where they have authority, and many times in the exceſs. And yet ſuch is the conſtant temper of their Government, and their impartiality in doing Juſtice, that they are very well obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their ſubjects (notwithſtanding the heavy preſſures which are laid upon them) as well in *Italie* as without. Eſteemed in former times good Souldiers both by Sea and Land, maintaining wars continually with the *Turks* in *Paleſtine*; the Emperours of *Conſtantinople* in *Greece* it ſelf; the *Genoeſe* by ſea, and their neighbours of *Italie* in this Continent. But of late times they have more ſtudied to preſerve, than inlarge their Dominions; and that too rather by expence of mony, than the loſs of bloud; and by wit rather than by valour. So fortunate in this laſt kind of practiſe that *Machiavel* obſerved of them in his time, that *whatſoever they loſt by War, they recovered by Treaty.* A pregnant evidence whereof we ſhall ſee anon.

To proceed now to the deſcription of ſuch of the Provinces and Eſtates of this Commonwealth, as paſs under the accompt of *Italie*, they are theſe that follow, that is to ſay, 1 *Marca Trevigiana*, 2 *Friuli*, 3 *Hiſtria*, 4 the *Italian* Iſles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in order; leaving the other Members of this Eſtate to be conſidered in their proper places.

1 *MARCA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South, with the River *Atheſis*, and the moſt Northern Branch of the *Po*, which from ſome lime-kils neer adjoyning, they now call *Fornaces*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the reſt of *Romagna*; on the Weſt, with the Rivers *Mineius* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, (now called *Lago de Garda* from a little Town of that name adjoyning) by which parted from the *Dutchy of Millaine*; on the Eaſt, with *Friuli*, and the *Golf of Venice*; and on the North, with the *Alpes* which divide it from *Tirolis*, a Province of *Germany*. In the time of great *Auguſtus Cæſar*, this tract together with *Friuli* the next neighbouring Province had the name of *Venetia*, from the *Veneti*, the old inhabitants hereof; and by that name made one of thoſe eleven Regions, into which he then divided *Italie*. How it obtained this new name, we ſhall ſee anon.

The principal Rivers of this Tract are, 1 *Brenta*; called anciently *Meduacus Major*, which riſing in the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and watering the fields of *Padua*, paſſeth into the Sea near the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malamocco*. 2 *Bachilio*, called anciently *Meduacus Minor*, which riſeth alſo in the *Alpes*, and paſſing by *Vicenza*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Brenta*. And 3 *Atheſis*, now called *Adige*, which ſpringeth alſo out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many leſſer ſtreams into its chanel, paſſeth by *Verona*, and after is divided into two great branches; whereof the one falls into the Sea, the other loſeth it ſelf in the midſt of the Mariſhes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1 *Vincentia*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuſcans* or *Hetrurians* on this ſide of the *Apennine*; pleaſantly ſeated on the banks of the River *Bachilio*, and another navigable water called *Retone* (*Erotenus* formerly.) The Territory of the City not more large than fruitful, abounding with all ſtore of fruits, and yeelding an excellent kind of wine, which from thence is vended unto *Venice*. The buildings of it for the moſt part of poliſhed ſtone, whereof the fields adjoyning afford ſpecial Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an induſtrious people, making great quantity of Silks, with which they do adorn themſelves, and ſupply their Neighbours. 2 *Treviſo*, ſeated on the banks of the River *Silus*, (which runneth through the middle of it) in the midſt of a large and ſpacious plain, abounding even to admiration, with moſt excellent wheat, and all other neceſſaries. A City of no ancient name, not mentioned by *Ptolemie*, or others of the old *Geographers*: but of ſufficient note in the later times, for being the reſidence or ſeat of thoſe Provincial Governous (*Marqueſſes* they are ſometimes called) with the *Lombardian* Kings ſent hither to defend their borders. Hence it gave name to all the Country, in *Latine* called *Marca Treviſiana*, or *Tarviſana*, as ſome call it: taken by the *Venetians*, and loſt again divers times; but was finally conquered *anno* 1380. or thereabout, *Antonio Venieri* being Duke of *Venice*. 3 *Padua*, formerly called *Patavium*, built by *Antenor*, whoſe

Tomb

Trevigiana.

Tomb is ſtill here to be ſhown. From him named *Antenoria*, as ſome report, but after called ***Patavium***, ***quaſi Padavium***, from its nearneſs to the River *Po* and the Fens thereof; ſituate in ſo delectable and ſweet a ſoil, that *Conſtantinus Palæologus* was uſed to ſay, that did not the authority of the Scriptures perſuade him otherwiſe, he ſhould look for *Paradiſe* no where elſe then in *perſuavi* Patavina *amœnitate*, amongſt the flouriſhing and delightful ſweetneſſes of the *Paduan* field. The Town of great eſteem in the time of the *Romans*, who much reſorted to the ſame; and much frequented at the preſent for the Univerſity here eſtabliſhed, *Anno* 1220. famous for Phyſicians, who have here a Garden of *Simples*; of good name alſo for the birth of *Livy* the Hiſtorian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Cotemporary, *L. Aruntius Stella* and *C. Valerius Flaccus*, two famous Poets celebrated by *Martial*: and in the later times, of *Marſilius Patavinus* a *Minorite* Friar, who wrote ſo learnedly in behalf of the Emperour againſt the Pope; *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savanorola* the Phyſician, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the humanity of the men, and chaſtity of the women, which laſt ſo eminent and famous, that *as chaſt as one of Padua* grew into a Proverb. Hereunto alludeth *Martial*, ſpeaking of his laſcivious Writings,

Tu quoque nequitias noſtri luſuſque libelli,
Uda puella leges, ſis Patavina *licet.*

Young Maids my wanton lines will long to ſee,
And read them o'r, though *Patavines* they be.

The City after much viciſſitude of fortune fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compaſs one hundred and eighty miles, *anno* 1400. *Michael Steno* then Duke; *Vicenzo* being won about the ſame time alſo. 4 ***Breſcia***, the ſecond City for bigneſs and beauty in all *Lombardy*, it is alſo the ſeat of an Archbiſhop, who is an Earl, a Marqueſs, and a Duke; her Territories are in length one hundred, in breadth fifty miles, which the Citizens, together with their freedom, bought of *Otho* the *German* Emperour, but loſt it to *Philip Maria Viſconti* Duke of *Millan*, *anno* 1421. to whom they yielded upon certain conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they gave themſelves unto the *Seigneury* of *Venice*, *anno* 1434. *Francis Foſcari* being then Duke, under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the air ſound and good, the ſoil exceeding plentiful of corn, wine and fruits, and having in it mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great enriching of the people. It was anciently the chief of the *Cenomani*, who coming out of *Gaul*, drove the *Tuſcans* hence, and ſeated themſelves in their habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*; it is ſituate on a little River called *Garcia*, which runneth through the middle of it, and is ſaid to contain at this time 50000 Inhabitants. 5 ***Verona***, ſo called (as ſome conceit it) *quaſi vere una*, or as others, *quaſi Brennona*, becauſe built by *Brennus*, both falſe and frivolous alike. It is ſituate on the banks of the River *Atheſis*, and is counted the firſt City of the ſecond rank of the Cities of *Italy*, proud in the birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet, and in an *Amphitheatre* (a remainder of the *Roman* greatneſs) able to contain 80000 perſons. The Territories hereof are ſixty five miles in length, fourty miles in breadth, enriched with many *medicinable* Herbs (eſpecially one Mount *Baldus* an Hill therein) where the Phyſicians go a Simpling. 6 ***Bebriacum***, or *Bedriacum*, as ſome Writers call it, two days march from *Verona*, now a ſmall Burrough named *Labinia*, and never of any great note when it was at the beſt; remarkable in the *Roman* Stories for the defeat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho*'s Army, and after by *Veſpaſian*'s Forces unto thoſe of *Vitellius*, by *Tacitus* called in that regard *Duabus* Romanis *cladibus notus & infauſtus Vicus*. 7 ***Crema***, a Town of no great antiquity, but ſituate in a wealthy ſoil, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices, ſo ſtrongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the Seigneury of *Venice* againſt the *Millaneſe*, on the borders of which State it ſtandeth: firſt built about the year 970. by ſome remnants of the *Anthropomorphites*, who on the deſtruction of *Pornaſſus* (a Town in *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their Hereſie, and were permitted to build here; honoured in ſucceeding times with a See Epiſcopal, and either the birth-place or preferment of *John Cremenſis* a *Roman* Cardinal, who being by Pope *Honorius* ſent into *England*, *anno* 1225, to diſſuade the Clergy-men from Marriage, and having in a Convocation of the Clergy, called for that purpoſe, highly advanced the honour of the ſingle life, and ſhewed the inconveniency and unfitneſs of Marriage in men preferred unto *Holy Orders*, was the night following (to the great diſcredit both of his cauſe and perſon) taken in adultery. 8 ***Bergomo***, a right ancient Town, but very well built, ſeated upon the ſide of an hill, and having a very large and beautiful Suburb, the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggy Mountains, the ſpurs and excurſions of the *Alps*; but withall many rich and delightful Vallies intermingled with them. The people of this City and Country are ſaid to ſpeak the courſeſt Language of any in *Italy*, but to have as fine Wits as the beſt. Places of more inferiour note are, 1 ***Eſte***, (*Ateſte* in moſt *Latine* Writers) whence came the Family *D'Eſte*, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2 ***Liniacum***, a ſtrong Garriſon on the borders of *Mantua*; as 3 *Caſtel-France* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4 *Seraval*, of moſt remarkableneſs for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5 ***Feltri***, which ſtill preſerves its old name of *Feltria*, moſt memorable at the preſent for a See Epiſcopal. 6 ***Altina***, a Biſhops See alſo, but deſtroyed and ruined.

This Province being anciently a part of the *Ciſalpine Gaul*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the ſecond *Punick* War, and being conquered by the *Romans* did continue theirs, till firſt the *Goths*, and afterwards the *Lombards*, became Maſters of it: afterwards in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardy* it fell firſt unto the *French*, and after to the *German* Empire; from which by many mean convey-

ances

Friuli.

ances, it came at laſt to *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Auſtria*, who bought the ſame of *Ulricus* the laſt Duke of *Carinthia*, whoſe Predeceſſor probably had been ſeized hereof from the time that *Henry* ſon of *Engelbert*, Præfect of *Hiſtria*, adopted by *Henry* of *Epperſtein* Duke of *Carinthia* or *Karnten* ſucceeded him in that Eſtate. Upon a reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarus* and *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg* (then Emperour of *Germany*) it was added (together with *Auſtria* it ſelf) unto the Patrimony of that Family, ſold by Duke *Leopold* the ninth to the *Cararas*, then Lords of *Padua* ; in the ruine of whoſe Eſtate and Family it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who ſtill hold the ſame.

2. *FRIULI* hath on the Eaſt the River *Formio*, which parteth it from *Hiſtria*; on the Weſt *Marca Treviſana* and a branch of the *Alps*; on the *North* the main body of the *Alps* which divide it from *Germany*; and on the South the *Adriatick* Sea or Gulph of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine* (of which that of *Friuli* is derived) from *Julius Cæſar*, who conducting his Armies this way built the Town ſo named ; and from that march of his the *Alps* adjoyning, as 'tis thought, had the name of *Julia* : by ſome Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquilegienſis*, as appertaining for the moſt part, by the gift of the Emperours *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia* ; and by the common people of *Venice* for the moſt part *Patria*, or the Country, becauſe from theſe parts they derive their firſt original ; in which regard part of the Region of *Venetia*, as before was ſaid.

The Country is in a manner ſquare, each ſide fifty miles, watered with the Rivers of 1 *Hydra*, heretofore of no ſmall fame for the Silver Mines. 2 *Tiliaventum*, riſing from the *Alps*, and navigable towards the later end of its courſe, but broken into many Chanels (ſeven at leaſt in number) which makes it not ſo navigable as it would be otherwiſe, moſt of theſe Chanels being ſhallow and eaſily forded, but ſwift and violent withall by reaſon of their fall from the neighbouring hills. 3 *Natiſco*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4 *Timavus*, mentioned in the firſt of the *Æneids*, which riſing out of the *Alps* and running under ground for the ſpace of 330 furlongs, breaketh out again, and being branched into nine Chanels , falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieſte*. By *Niger* it is now called *Lareina*, but by *Leander* named *Timavo* : the ſoil ſufficiently fruitful except towards the *Alps*, and yielding a very pleaſant Wine, which *Plinie* did prefer before any in *Italie*.

Towns herein of moſt note and conſequence, 1 *Aquileia*, or *Aquilegia* as ſome call it, made the *Metropolis* firſt of the Province of *Hiſtria* and *Venetia* by the Emperour *Antoninus*, as afterwards of the whole Dioceſe of *Italy* by the Weſtern Emperors ; honoured in that regard with the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, or of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant, tranſlated from *Millain* to this City as the Gate of *Italy*, by which the barbarous Nations were to make their entrance, never ſo like to be ſhut out as by the power and preſence of ſo great an Officer. After this time and on this occaſion the Biſhop hereof had the Title of Patriarch. And here the Patriarchal See had not long continued when the City was deſtroyed by *Attila* that furious *Hun*, 37000 of the Citizens being ſlain with the ſword, the reſt removing to ſome places of more ſafe abode. Re-edified afterwards by *Narſes*, but never able to recover its former luſtre. After which time fearing the like miſeries from the hands of the *Lombards*, the Patriarchal See was removed to *Venice* as the ſafer place, and ſetled in the Iſle of *Grada*; yet ſo, that the ſucceeding Biſhops of *Aquileia* (for they ſtayed at *Venice* onely till the times were quiet) do ſtill retain the dignity and name of *Patriarchs*, as well as thoſe of *Grada* do, and with better reaſon. For beſides the honor which it had in being made the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, it had been formerly more honoured with the reſidence of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here kept his Court, whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a *ſecond Rome*; and of *Tiberius*, who lived here with *Julia* the daughter of the ſaid *Auguſtus* before his coming to the Empire. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſituate on the River *Natiſco*, but not well inhabited at the preſent, partly becauſe of the ill air, partly by the removal of the Patriarch thence, drawn by the *Venetians* of late times, for good reaſons of State, to fix his dwelling in their City, and drawing after him a great reſort of Biſhops and others of the Clergy of his Juriſdiction, principally by the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it ſelf ; moſt memorable in old ſtory for enduring that famous Siege againſt *Maximinus* for the ſafety of the Empire of *Rome*, and her Emperours *Maximus* and *Balbinus*; in whoſe cauſe the Citizens hereof were ſo reſolutely faithful, that they bereaved the women (willing to loſe that invaluable Ornament of their ſex for the common good) of the hair of their heads to make Bow-ſtrings withall : nor did this pious conſtancy of theirs want an happy iſſue, for they beheld the Tyrant headleſs under their walls (ſlain by the hands of his own Souldiers) and ſaw the *Metropolis* of the world preſerved by their loyalty ; and yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant, the Souldiers and people laying hands on his children alſo, and putting all unto the ſword : of which cruelty being asked the reaſon, they returned this anſwer, *That not a whelp was to be ſpared of ſo ill a Litter*, none of the Brood of ſuch a Cur; or in the language of the Author, *Peſſimi Canis Catulus non eſt relinquendus*. 2 *Trieſte*, of old called *Tergeſtum*, from whence a ſpacious Bay adjoyning had anciently the name of *Sinus Tergeſtinus*, and is now called *Golfo di Trieſte* ; the Bay repleniſhed principally with the water of the River *Timaus*, which with many ſtreams doth fall into it, and is therefore by the Inhabitants of that Golf or Bay called *Fons Maris*, as *Polybius* in *Strabo* telleth us. The Town of greater antiquity then obſervation, mentioned by *Plinie* and ſome others of the ancient Writers, but not elſe conſiderable. 3 *Montfalcon*, famous for its medicinable herbs. 4 *Porto Gruare*, of old called *Portus Romatinus*, an Haven-town, as the name importeth. 5 *Concordia*, in former times of no ſmall eſteem, but ſo demoliſhed by *Attila* the *Hun*, that it is now nothing but a ruine ; the people hereof betaking themſelves to the Iſlands in the Mariſhes of *Venice*, where they planted in *Tourcellan*, *Muriano*, *Conſtantiaca*, and ſome others were adjoyning to them, of which more hereafter. 6 *Utina*, or *Uden*, the faireſt and largeſt at this time of all the Province, containing about five miles in compaſs, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Honoured for a time with the Patriarchal See, removed hither from *Aquilegia*, at ſome ſiege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is ſtill the ordinary ſeat of the *Procurator* or Principal Governor, ſent from *Venice* hither. 7 *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer ſince than the year 1583, but held to be the beſt fortified of any in *Italie*. 8 *Cividad de Auſtria*, firſt built by *Julius Cæſar*, in ſome of his marches towards *Gaul*, by whom it was called *Julium*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Diſtrictus Foro-Julienſis*, as the *Latins* call it) came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by ſome Princes of the *Auſtrian* Family (on the borders of whoſe Eſtate it ſtandeth) it got this new name of *Cividad de Auſtria*.

Hiſtria.

This Province anciently was the ſeat of the *Euganei*, inhabiting this tract and part of *Marchia Trevigiana*. But thoſe being vanquiſhed by the *Veneti*; and the *Veneti* by the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, it became finally ſubject to the State of *Rome*, and in the fall of that great Empire was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*, when they conquered *Italie*; the other three being *Turin*, *Benevent*, and *Spoleto*. The Family of the *Berengarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of ſpecial fame, and two of them Competitors for the Kingdome of *Italie*. But this family being ſuppreſſed by the Emperor *Otho*, he gave a great part of the Countrey to the Church of *Aquileia*; to which almoſt all the reſt was added by the Emperor *Conrade*; yet ſo that there were divers petit Lords, who had good eſtates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto ſome of the ancient race. One of which named *Luitprandus*, envying to the *Venetians* their increaſe of Dominion, made war againſt them: which ended in the loſs of his Countrey, *Anno* 1020, or thereabouts; ever ſince ſubject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquileia* (whoſe authority in this Countrey began to decline, in the riſing of the ſtate of *Venice*) ſurrendring all his intereſs alſo to that powerful *Signeurie*, as better able to defend it againſt all Pretenders, *Anno* 1420. But notwithſtanding this ſurrendry, the Patriarch hath ſtill large poſſeſſions and revenues here, and ſtill retains his Juriſdiction over the Prelates of this Countrey, and thoſe of *Hiſtria* and *Trevigiana* (20 in all, or thereabouts) ſix only which are thoſe of the Iſles of *Venice*, continuing at this day under him of *Grada*.

HISTRIA is environed on the Eaſt, Weſt, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-Iſland, or *Peninſula*, ſave where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North, is parted from *Carinthia*, with the *Alpes* of *Germany*. The Countrey very woody, and full of Quarries, affording materials to *Venice* both for ſhips and houſes; not comparable for fertility to the reſt of *Italie*; and of air ſo ſickly and unwholſome, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large immunities. It is two hundred miles in compaſs, watered with the Rivers of 1 *Formio*, which they now call *Riſano*; 2 *Nauportus*, called at this day *Quietus*; and 3 *Arſia*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Quevero*, called anciently *Sinus Flanaticus*, and divides this Countrey from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Cap de Iſtria*, called in *Plinies* time *Ægide*; and being afterwards repaired by the Emperor *Juſtin*, was called *Juſtinopolis*. But being taken and deſtroyed by the *Genoeſe*, and re-built again, it took the name of *Caput Hiſtriæ*, or *Cape d'Iſtria*; becauſe the principal of the Province and Biſhops See. Of this See was *Vergerius* Biſhop, about the time of *Luthers* firſt preaching in *Germany*; who with *Antonio de Dominis* Arch-biſhop of *Spalato*, were of moſt note of any of theſe parts of the world, that fell off from the Church of *Rome* to the *Proteſtant* party, and therefore ſhall be ſpoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place, and *Vergerius* here. Being a man of great induſtry, and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany*, againſt *Luther*. In which negotiation he behaved himſelf with ſuch dexterity, and gave ſuch content unto the Pope, that *Paul* the third, *Anno* 1541. intended to have made him *Cardinal*; had not ſome who envyed him that honour, accuſed him of *Lutheraniſm*. To purge himſelf he began to write a Book, entituled, *Againſt the Apoſtata's of Germany*; in the purſuit whereof, pondering *Luthers* reaſons he became of his opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Juſtinople*. He ſubmitted himſelf and his cauſe to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the D. of *Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no-where finding protection, he retired unto the *Griſons*, and there preached; till *Chriſtopher* Duke of *Wittenberg*, *Anno* 1548, placed him in his Univerſity of *Tubing*, and there allowed him a ſufficiency of maintenance. It was built by *Juſtinus* (as before) the Nephew of *Juſtinian* the Emperor, as a fortreſs againſt the incurſions of the barbarous people. 2 *Pola*, built by the *Colchians*, at their firſt coming hither; the name in their language importing as much as the place of baniſhment. It was after made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Pietas Julia*: but being firſt deſtroyed by *Attila*, after by the *Genoeſe*, it recovered the old name again; and ſtill continueth with the title of a See Epiſcopal. It abutteth upon *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Golf of *Quevero*. 3 *Parenze*. 4 *Pliun*, 5 *Cita Nova*, all of them ſeated in the Mid-land, and not much obſervable, but that *Parenze*, and *Cita Nova* are Epiſcopal Sees: this laſt being anciently called *Emonia*, whence the Biſhop hath the name of *Emonienſis*. 7 *Rovigno*, in a little Iſland, and mounted on an high hill, not unfruitful in Olives; beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended alſo by a very ſtrong Caſtle. The Town but poor, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which diſtant not above twenty miles; inhabited for the moſt part by Mariners, and ſkilful Pilots, hired by ſuch ſhips as are bound for *Venice*, to conduct them ſafely over the Bars of *Malamocco*. The Countrey adjoyning mountainous and ſomewhat wilde; but thoſe mountains covered on the outſide, with *Phyſical* Simples; and yeelding many Quarries of moſt excellent Marble, which ſo adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

The Adriatick Iſles of Venice.

It is recorded that the *Hiſtrians* were a people of *Colchis*, who being ſent by King *Ætas* to purſue *Jaſon* and the *Argonauts*, were driven up this Gulf: and either for fear of the Kings anger, or not daring to venture their weak veſſel to ſo long a voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came; ſtayed in this Countrey. It was after that time called *Iapidia*, from *Iapis* an *Ætolian*, who firſt planted here; and took the name of *Iſtria* from the *Iſtri*, a people on the banks of *Iſter*, or *Danubius*; who made up a conſiderable part of this plantation. Siding with the *Ætolians* in their Wars againſt the *Romans*, and making many introdes and excurſions on them; they were invaded firſt by *Manlius*, without leave of the Senate: and him they charged with ſuch a fury, that they beat him out of his Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all ſtore of Proviſions, they fell roundly to it; till *Manlius* having rallied his men again, charged them in their Cups, and killed 8000 in the place; their miſerable King being ſo hotly purſued by the Victors, that he was fain to kill himſelf for fear of Captivity. This was in *Anno V. C.* 575. *Cl. Pulcher* the next Conſul perfected the conqueſt. *Sempronius* long time after that, *ſc. An. V. C.* 625. reduced it to the form of a Province. So it continued to the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who joyning it to that of *Venice* (or *Venetia*) made out of both the eleventh and laſt Region of *Italie*. Under the *Romans* they continued whileſt that Empire ſtood, and after the decay thereof regained their liberties; which they enjoyed till by Piracy moleſting the *Venetians*, they loſt many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Candiano*, *An.* 938; and the whole Countrey was made Tributary, by the valour of the Duke *Henry Dondolo*, about the year 1190. After which many times rebelling, they were ſtill re-conquered.

4. The fourth member of this eſtate with reſpect to *Italie*, are ſome *ISLANDS* in the *Adriatick*; which being principally under the command of this Common-wealth, is commonly called the *Gulf of Venice*; a Gulf extending in length 700 miles, in breadeth 140 miles, in ſome places leſs; ſo called of *Adria* once a famous Haven-town (as before was ſaid at the mouth of *Eridanus* or *Po*. Concerning which we are to know, that though this Golf or Bay of the *Adriatick* extended no farther then the Eaſtern parts of *Dalmatia*, where the Sea beginneth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea was of greater length. Extended by the Ancients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-weſt-ward till it meeteth with the *Tuſcan* Seas; and South-wards, till it come to the coaſt of *Africk*; inſomuch as *Mare-Libycum*, or the Sea of *Africk*, is by *Oroſius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For ſpeaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africk*) properly and eſpecially ſo called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*; as he doth the Iſle of *Crete*, on the South ſide of it, with the *Libyan* Sea, *quod &* Adriaticum *vocant*, which they alſo call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are. The like might alſo be made evident out of other Authors both *Greek* and *Latin*: which I note here, becauſe *Pauls* being toſſed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is ſaid *Act.* 27. 27. and being after caſt one ſhore in the Iſle of *Maltha*; occaſioned ſome to think this *Melite* or *Malta*, to be that Iſland of *Dalmatia* which is now called *Melida*; being ſeated in the Bay or Golf of *Adria*: whereas the Text ſpeaks plainly of that Iſle of *Malta*, which lieth in the furtheſt parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the coaſts of *Africk*. But to return to this Golf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempeſtuous and unſafe, as appeareth by *Improbo iracundior Adria*, in *Horace*: the *Minax Adriaticum*, in *Catullus*, and the *Ventoſi tumor Adriæ*, in *Seneca's Thyeſtes*. But when the Empereſs *Helena* had found the Croſs on which *CHRIST* ſuffered, ſhe cauſed one of the three Nails with which his body was faſtned to it, to be thrown of purpoſe into this Sea; ſince which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the life of Pope *Silveſter* (and cites Saint *Ambroſe* for his Author) it hath been very calm and quiet; the ſecond nail being made into a Bridle for her ſon *Conſtantines* horſe, and a Creſt for his Helmet of the third. But not to truſt too much to the truth of this miracle, certain it is that the *Venetians* are Lords of it, by reaſon of their Naval power: and that it is every year eſpouſed to the Duke of *Venice*, by the ſolemn caſting in of a Wedding-Ring; and every year Baptized on *Epiphany* day, by the Biſhop of *Zant*. When this laſt ceremony took beginning, I am yet to ſeek. But for the firſt, which is performed with a great deal of ſtate, every *Holy-Thurſday*, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos* being rowed in the *Bucentaure* (which is a rich and ſtately Gallie made for ſuch ſolemnities, and capable of 200 perſons, whence it had the name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the third. Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, fled unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sebaſtian Cyani* being then Duke: in perſecution of whoſe quarrel, the *Venetians* encountred *Otho* the Emperors ſon, vanquiſhed him, and reſtored the Pope. The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royall Priſoners, was thus ſaluted by the Pope. *Cyani take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this day* (the Aſcenſion day) *ſhall be yearly obſerved, both by thee and thy Succeſſors; that ſo poſterity may know that you have purchaſed the dominion thereof by your valour, and made it ſubject to you, as a Wife to her Husband.*

The principall Iſlands of this Sea, lie on the other ſide thereof, on the coaſt of *Dalmatia*. Some few there are upon this ſide (but thoſe, as well as theſe under the command of this *Signeury*) neither great, nor famous. Of theſe the chief are, 1 *MALAMOCCO*, in Latin *Methuacum*, ſituate at the South-weſt end of the bank or cauſey called *Il Lido*; now only conſiderable for the Haven, which is large and deep made by the influx of *Meduacus* before mentioned; in which the greater ſhips do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to croſs the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Dukes Palace, and an Epiſcopal See: the See of *Padua* being tranſlated hither, at the ſack of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Dukes Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Epiſcopal See to the Iſland of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the moſt part by none but Sea-men. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the ſame name, honoured with a Biſhops See, (the Biſhop of *Altina* with much people with him, for fear of the ſaid *Lombards* retiring hither) but by

Venice.

reaſon of the ill air, not very well peopled. 3 *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three miles in compaſs, and but one from *Venice*, of a ſound air, and very well inhabited; the people whereof make the beſt *Venice* Glaſſes, ſo much uſed in all parts. 4 *CHIOGGIA*, called in Latin *Foſſa Clodia*, a little Weſt of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Mariſhes from the *Adriatick*: diſtant from *Venice* 25 miles; to which it ſerveth in ſtead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in it of the ſame name, to which the Biſhops See was removed from *Malamocco*, *Anno* 1103, and near to which are many Salt-pits, which yeeld great gain unto the people, and as much unto the Common-wealth. Near to this Iſland, the *Genoeſe* ſo diſcomfited the *Venetians* in a fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Iſland following ſhortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoeſe* being grown too inſolent on their good ſucceſs, made the City deſperate; who putting all to hazard fell again upon them, beat them, purſued them home, and there utterly cruſhed them; as we ſhall tell you more at large, when we come to *Genoa*. 5 *POVEGIA*, five miles from the City, firſt peopled by ſome who had raiſed a commotion in the City, on the death of *Petro Tradonico* the thirteenth Duke. After which much increaſed both in wealth and buildings, till deſtroyed by the *Genoeſe*. It is called *Pupilia* by the *Latins*. 6 *JUDECHA* (in *Latin* called *Judaica*) ſo named from the *Jews* who did there inhabit: not above half a mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furniſhed with moſt pleaſant gardens. Theſe and the reſt reckoned as members of *Trevigiana* or appendants on it.

Betwixt theſe Iſlands and the main land of *Friuli*, lyeth a ſhoal of little Iſlets, in and amongſt which ſtandeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italie*. Theſe Iſlets 72 in number, but joyned together by many Bridges, of which here are ſaid to be 4000 at leaſt, beſides 10000 Boats for paſſage from one Iſle to the other. The compaſs of the whole aggregate body ſaid to be eight miles, the buildings fair, and generally adorned with glaſs windows; an Ornament not common in *Italie*; where the windows for the moſt part, are made with paper to let in the light; and that paper oyled all over, to keep out the wet. The number of the inhabitants eſtimated at 300 thouſand. By the ſituation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old *Latin* ſignifieth the ſeething or frothing of the Sea. *VENETIA maris exaſtuatio eſt qua ad littus veniat*, ſaith the old *Gloſſarie* upon *Iſidore*, out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was ſo called from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*; who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns* then threatning *Italie*, abandoned the main land, and built this City in the bogs and mariſhes of the ſea adjoyning. And that it might afford them the greater ſafety, they not only built it in the moſt inward part of the *Adriatick* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midſt of many Lakes of ſalt-water, extending ninety miles in compaſs, and having on the Eaſt the ſaid *Adriatick* Sea for the length of 550 miles: betwixt which and the ſaid Lakes, there is a bank or cauſey which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by nature, to defend the Iſlands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A Cauſey of 35 miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in ſeven places only; which ſerve as well to keep the Lakes alwaies full of water, as for the paſſage of Veſſels to and from the City: known by the names of the Ports of 1 *Brondolo*, 2 *Chioza*, 3 *Malamocco*, 4 the *three Caſtles*, or the Caſtles of *Lio*. 5 S. *Eraſmus*, 6 *Lito Maggiore*, or the great ſhore, and 7 the *Treports*: of which that of *Brondolo* lieth moſt to the Southweſt, and that of *Treports* to the Northweſt of the ſaid great Cauſey. And through every one of theſe there is ſafe paſſage for Ships and Barks of ſmaller burden: the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor, on the South ſide of the City, near to the ports of *Malamocco*, and the Caſtles of *Lio*, which are very well fortified; and there muſt remain till they are brought in by skilful Pilots, who know the paſſages, which, by reaſon of the ſhifting of the ſands, change very often. On the Weſt and North ſides, it is compaſſed with very deep *Mariſhes*, about five miles diſtant from the land; and on the South with many Iſlands, in which are ſeveral Churches and Monaſteries, like ſo many Forts: which lie between it and thoſe parts of *Italie*, which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth. So that it is impoſſible to be taken, but by an Army who can ſtretch 150 miles compaſs. It is built, as before is ſaid, on 72 Iſlands 60 of which lie cloſe together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater diſtance. Of theſe the principal, 1 *Heraclea* near the Firm Land of *Trevigiana*, peopled at firſt by ſuch as followed *Magnus* Biſhop of *Uderza*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here: calling the Iſland and the Town which they founded in it by the name of *Heraclea*, in honour of *Heraclius* the Eaſtern Emperor, in whoſe time it hapned. Made by this means a Biſhops See, and being grown populous withall, it was honoured with the firſt ſeat of the Dukes of *Venice*, removed by *Theodatus* the fourth Duke to *Malamocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Deſtroyed by *Pepin* King of *Italy*, ſon of *Charles* the Great, it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Partitiatio* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the antiquity of the Biſhops See, then the number of Citizens. 2 *Jeſulan*, neighbouring to *Heraclea*, firſt planted by ſome Countrey people, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares and of Horſes, whence it had the name of *Equilene*, or *Equilia*. Made afterwards a Biſhops See alſo, by the name of *Jeſulanus* or *Equilienſis*. 3 *Grada*, on the ſame part of the City alſo, but more towards the North, inhabited at firſt by ſuch of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themſelves thither to avoid the tyranny of the *Hunnes*: but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards* tranſported to this Iſland the Relicks and Treaſures of his Church; and ſetled where the Church of S. *Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helie* who ſucceeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* the 2d. *An.* 586. that the Biſhops of *Grada* ſhould from thenceforth have the title of *Patriarchs*, and be eſteemed the *Metropolitans* of the City and Countrey of *Venice*: yet the *Aquileian* would not be ſo robbed of his ancient priviledges, and therefore ſtirred up many ſuites and diſputes about it. The buſineſs compromi-

Venice. ſed at laſt to this effect, that the Patriarch of *Aquileia* ſhould enjoy his ancient Juriſdiction over all the Churches in the Continent which belonged unto him: and that he of *Grada*, with the title and ſtile of Patriarch, ſhould have like juriſdiction over the Churches in the Iſlands; that is to ſay, the Biſhoprick of *Heraclea*, (or *Cita Nova*) *Equilia*, *Torcellan*, *Chioggia*, *Caprula*, and *Caſtello Olindo*. His habitation near the Church of S. *Silveſter*, in the third Region of the City, called *de Canaregio*. 4 *Caprula*, towards the openings of the *Adriatick*, a Biſhops See before the time of *Charles* the *Great*, but not elſe obſervable: none of theſe four, nor of the reſidue of the twelve, which lie remote from the *Rialto*, being much inhabited at the preſent. 5 *Caſtello Olindo*, or *Olivaller* as ſome call it, ſituate at the Eaſt end of the City, not far from the Cauſey called *Il Lido*. Of old a City of it ſelf (as the former were) now joyned by a Bridge to the reſt of *Venice*; of moſt note for the Cathedral Church of S. *Peter*, and the Palace of the *Venetian* Patriarch: this City having been made a Biſhops See by Pope *Adrian* the firſt, *Anno* 774. with juriſdiction of the Iſles of *Olivolla*, *Rialto*, *Lupria*, and *Dorſedura*. His title firſt *Caſtellonenſis*, but afterwards the Biſhop of *Venice*, becauſe the beſt part of the City did belong unto him, inveſted by the Duke, but confirmed by the Patriarch of *Grada*, whoſe ſuffragans they were till the year 1450. At what time Pope *Eugenius* the 4th. (a Native of the City of *Venice*) advanced hereof to the dignity and name of Patriarch; aſſigning the Churches of *Dalmatia* (of which they were entituled Primates) for their Juriſdiction. By means whereof, and by perſwading him of *Aquileia* to fix his dwelling here alſo, as before is ſaid, there are no fewer than three Patriarchs which have their conſtant habitation in the City af *Venice*. 6 *Rialto*, which is of moſt eſteem and reputation, ſo called *quaſi Rivo alto*, becauſe the Mariſhes are there deeper than in other places; or *quaſi Ripa alta*, becauſe it lay higher above the waters, than the other Iſlands. For which reaſons that Iſland getting reputation above the reſt, moſt of the Gentlemen ſetled their dwellings in the ſame; and drew thither in the end, the Dukes Palace alſo; inſomuch that in ſome ancient writings, the whole City hath been called *Rialto*; many of the old *Records* being dated in ſuch and ſuch a year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increaſe in numbers, ſo were they fain to ſpread themſelves from one Iſle to another; till in the end they built on all the Iſlands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joyned by Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the paſſage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 paces, and ſome forty in breadth; adorned on both ſides with ſtately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with an incredible number of Boats called *Gondolos*, very neatly built, and veiled over with cloth, ſo that the paſſengers may go unſeen and unknown, without the moleſtation of ſun, wind, or rain. For publick buildings it hath in it 70 Pariſh Churches, to each of which belongeth a Market-place and a Well; 31 Cloyſters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, beſides Chappels and Almeshouſes.

The principal Church of this City is that of S. *Mark*, the Patron of their Common-wealth, whoſe body they report to have been brought hither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed here: Affirmed by ſome to be the richeſt and goodlieſt Church in all the World. The building, of *Moſaïck* work, of which they boaſt themſelves to have been the Authors. A kind of work, by the *Grecians* called Λιθόστρωτα, and by the *Latin* Writers *Muſiva*, *Muſica*, and *Muſaica*; wrought out of ſtones or metals of divers colours, into the ſhape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beaſts, and other fancies of the Workman; yet done with ſuch exactneſs of skill and judgement, that it ſeemeth to be all one ſtone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable work both within and without, compacted of moſt rare pieces of Marble, Porphyrie, and a rich ſtone which the *Lapidaries* called *Ophitis*, becauſe it is ſpeckled like a ſnake; adorned on the outſide with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyrie near the door; beſides 600 Marble pillars of a leſſer ſize, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magiſtrates and others of the principal Citizens, behold ſuch ſhews as are preſented in the Market-place, adjoyning to it. The Church in length not above 200 foot of *Venice* meaſure, nor above 50 in breadth; the roof whereof being of an *Orbicular* form, lieth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no windows in all the Church, as commonly the Churches in *Italy* are exceeding dark, either to ſtrike in the ſpectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles ſhew the better. And for the inſide of the Church, the riches of it are ſo great, the Images ſo glorious, the furniture of the Altars ſo above compariſon; that all the treaſures of the State, may ſeem to be amaſſed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is ſtill unfiniſhed; and as ſome think, is kept unfiniſhed on purpoſe; partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the work, the benefit of whoſe liberality may be employed unto the uſe of the publick Treaſury; and partly leſt the Revenues which are given already ſhould be reſumed by the Heirs of the deceaſed, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the ſumptuouſneſs, and beauty of the Church it ſelf.

Of other of the publick buildings, the Councel-houſe, the Ducal Palace, Monaſteries, Churches, and the like, though ſtately and magnificent ſtructures, I forbear to ſpeak. Nor ſhall I here ſay any thing of their private houſes, ſo large and beautified, that here are ſaid to be no fewer than 200 (moſt of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the beſt King in Chriſtendom. All I ſhall add, and ſo leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Arſenal*, and publick *Magazine*. In the firſt of which they have in readineſſe 200 Gallies, with rooms for Cables, Maſts, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunitions of all ſorts; able thereby to ſet out a Navie to the Sea, on the ſhorteſt warning. And in the other it is ſaid, that they have Arms ſufficient for 100000 Souldiers of all ſorts; amongſt which are affirmed to be a thouſand Coats of plate, garniſhed with gold, and covered with velvet; fit for the uſe and wearing of the greateſt Princes. But of their power and forces both by Sea and Land, we ſhall ſpeak more ſhortly. In the mean time I take my leave of this gallant City in this following Epigram of *Sannazarius*, one of our late *Italian* Poets, *viz.* *Venice.*

Viderat Adriacis *Venetam* Neptunus *in undis*
Stare urbem, & toto ponere jura mari:
Nunc mihi Tarpeias, *quantumvis* Jupiter, *arces*
Objice, & illa tui mœnia Martis, ait.
Si Pelago Tibrim *præfers*, urbem *aſpice utramq;*:
Illam homines dices, hanc poſuiſſe deos.

In Engliſh thus:

Neptune ſaw *Venice* in the *Adrian* ſtand,
And all the Sea brought under her command;
Now *Jove*, ſaid he, thy *Roman* Towres object,
And thoſe proud wals which *Mars* did once protect.
Before the Sea if *Tiber* thou preferre,
Behold both Cities, and thou wilt averre,
That men built *Rome*; the gods plac'd *Venice* there.

Proceed we now unto their ſtory: and if we look upon them in their firſt original, we ſhall finde them to have been a people of *Paphlagonia* (a Province of *Aſia* the leſſer) called the *Heneti*, who aiding *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his ten years wars againſt the *Greeks*, where they loſt their King named *Philamenes* (or *Philemon*, as ſome call him) choſe rather to ſeek out new dwellings than return with ſhame unto their old. Upon this reſolution they joyn themſelves to *Antenor*, who with ſome remnant of the *Trojans* had the ſame deſign; and ſayling as the wind and ſea conducted them, arrived at laſt in thoſe parts of *Italy*, now called *Friuli*. So witneſſeth the Poet, ſaying,

Antenor *potuit, mediis illapſus* Achivis,
Illyricos *penetrare Sinus, atque intima* tutus
Regna Liburnorum, *& fontes ſuperare* Timavi.

Antenor through the *Greeks* could force his way,
And ſafely piercing the *Illyrian* Bay,
Croſs the *Liburnian* Realms; and conquer all
From fierce *Timavus* Fountain, to his fall.

Here landing they ſubdued the *Enganei* (who before inhabited this tract) and poſſeſſed their dwellings: the name of *Heneti* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till ſubdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Ciſalpina*; agreeably to the name of *Veneti*, an old *Gallick* Nation, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Britain*. When thoſe *Galls* were vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, the name and nation of theſe *Veneti*, was ſo conſiderable, that their Territory had the name of *Venetia*; and together with *Hiſtria*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and ſafety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible noiſe of the great preparation of the *Hunnes* for the conqueſt of *Italie*, occaſioned many of the principal men, with their ſeveral Retinues, to betake themſelves to the Iſlands, and inacceſſible Mariſhes of the *Adriatick*; where in the place now called *Rialto*, they laid the foundation of this City, *March* 25. *Anno* 421. exceedingly increaſed by the deſtruction of *Aquileia*, and the neighbouring Cities by *Attila* and the ſaid *Barbarians*, *Anno* 456. at what time it began to be called *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation. Not much increaſed in power or greatneſs, at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom; though ſo conſiderable at that time, that in the diviſion of *Italie* made by *Charles* the Great, betwixt himſelf, the Popes, and the Eaſtern Emperours; the *Venetians* were left at liberty, as a Free-Eſtate: and they deſerved to be left in a free condition, conſidering how notably they had freed themſelves from *Pepin*, the ſon of *Charles*, who invaded them with a puiſſant Army, and was well beaten for his labour, though at firſt ſucceſſeful. After which, making uſe of their ſituation, they grew not only rich in trade, but ſtrong in ſhipping; and thereby did good ſervice to the Weſtern Princes, in their war againſt the *Turks* in the *Holy Land*. And they ſerved themſelves well by it too: getting in one Expedition only (that namely in which the Empire of *Conſtantinople* was made a prey unto the *Latines*, *Anno* 1200.) all the Iſlands which they have at the preſent, in the *Ægean*, and *Ionian* Seas; many in thoſe Seas which they have loſt, and not a few good Towns in *Peloponneſus*, ſince conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoeſe* for the Soveraignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received ſo great a blow at the Naval battel near *Chioggia*, (ſpoken of before) that they had utterly loſt all, if the Enemy could have uſed his fortune with moderation. But being recovered of that blow, after many various ſucceſſes and events of War, *Anno* 1381. they got the better of them, and made them quiet: by means whereof, being Lords *Paramount* at Sea, they next caſt their eyes on the main land of *Italie*, which now they were at more leiſure to look after, than they had been formerly.

Venice.

The *Hiſtrians* had before infeſted them with Piracy,and were puniſhed for it,in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loſs of many of their Towns; but in the year 1390. the whole Country is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padua* with a great part of *Trevigiana* then appendent on it, they extorted from the noble Family of the *Carrari*, *An.* 1400. The City of *Vincentia* they poſſeſſed themſelves of in the ſame year alſo; and not long after fully perfected their Conqueſt of *Hiſtria*, with the revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they moſt improved their eſtate was by a conſtant watching of their opportunities, taking advantage of the factions and fractions amongſt their neighbours, and working their own greatneſs out of others ruins. By means whereof they came poſſeſſed of many places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome*; as alſo of ſome Towns, pertaining to the Dutchy of *Millain*; and four of the beſt Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving aid to any of their diſtreſſed neighbours, without the mortgage or direct ſale of ſome piece or other. Which ſordid kinde of merchandizing, drew all the Princes, of thoſe parts, (confederated together in a league at *Cambray*, *Anno* 1508) to make war upon them; every one to recover by ſtrong hand, what the *Venetian* had extorted from them, in their neceſſity. And the confederates thrived ſo well, that *Maximilian* the Emperour recovered to the Empire, the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vincentia*, *Verona*, *Trieſt*, *Friuli*, and whatſoever elſe he laid claim unto; the Popes in right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Rimini* (or *Arminum*,) and *Faventia*; *Lewis* the 12. of *France*, in right of the Dutchy of *Millaine*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Cremona*, *Brixia*: the King of *Spain* in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Manfredonia*, *Trano*, *Barlette*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Rovigo*,and the Duke of *Mantua* the Town of *Aſula*. So that the *Venetians* being (like the Jay) ſtripped of all their feathers, were fain to quit the firm land, and betake themſelves unto the Iſles and Mariſhes of their City; having not one foot of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italy*, but their Seas and Iſlands. And yet in very little time, partly by working on the Pope, to whom they quitted all their intereſt in the Towns aforeſaid; and partly by dividing the reſt of the confederates from one another; they recovered all that they had loſt, in a little time: except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The Government is *Ariſtocratical*,managed only by the principal men of all the City,both for birth and breeding; the common people having no authority in affairs of State. Their chief Officers at the firſt were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that confuſion, which a multitude of Governors carrieth for the moſt part with it, in the year 709. they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their Duke. Under theſe Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now enjoy: The authority of which *Dukes* was at firſt more abſolute, but by degrees reſtrained and limited within narrower bounds.He that beholdeth him in his Robes, his gravity and outward Port,and the reſpect given him by the people, would think no Prince could be more abſolute and ſupreme. But look upon him in the exerciſe and powers of Government, and he is nothing in the world but an empty Title. For notwithſtanding that he injoyeth ſo great a dignity, yet hath he a full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the preſence of his *Counſellors* (being ſix in number) who alwaies ſit with him, and diſpatch affairs both publick and private; as namely, giving audience to Ambaſſadors from Forain States, receiving Letters from their own Miniſters, granting of Priviledges, and the like; in which the *Duke* can do juſt nothing, if four (at leaſt) of theſe *Counſellors* be not preſent with him. And yet theſe *Counſellors* without him may conclude of any thing. Nay he is ſo reſtrained in all things to the power of the *Senate*, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their conſent; and by them is preſcribed an Order in his own Apparel. So that he is but little better than a Priſoner, when within the City; and a Traytor, if he ſtir abroad: at the beſt but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treaſury, no more than 40000 *Ducats* a year, towards his expence and entertainment. As for the *Soveraignty* of the State, that reſides wholly in the *Senate*; but repreſentatively in the *Duke*, the ſix *Counſellors*, and the three Heads or Preſidents of the Forty; which are thoſe Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The *Senate* or *Great Councel*, conſiſts of all the Gentlemen of *Venice*, above five and twenty years of age, which may amount unto the number 2500. though ſeldom half that number do aſſemble at once, by reaſon of their ſeveral imployments in affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places: who uſually do meet together every Sunday morning, and on the mornings of other *Feſtivals*, where they chooſe Magiſtrates, and diſtribute Governments, and order matters of the State. But becauſe ſuch great bodies move but ſlowly, and are not very capable of truſt and ſecrecy, they parcel this great Councel into leſſer Members; whereof the principal are the *Pregadi*, and the *Councel of Ten*. That of the *Pregadi* conſiſteth of 120 in which they treat of, and determine matters of the greateſt importance; and therein conclude commonly of ſuch principal points, as formerly have been propoſed and treated of in the great Aſſembly: And in this Councel, beſides the 120 before mentioned, the *Duke*, the ſix Counſellors, and the Councel of Ten, and all ſuch as have born any publick Office, have their voice or ſuffrage. This is that Councel which properly and more ſpecially is called the *Senate*; in which nothing is to be concluded or paſſed into Acts, except four of the ſix *Counſellors* be preſent at them, and that ſixty at the leaſt of the whole number, give their ſuffrage to it. Then for the *Councel of Ten*, their power is univerſal, over all affairs, ſuch as the other Councels may not meddle with, as to conclude of war or peace, to put in execution that they think moſt neceſſary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment:

which

Venice.

which they were firſt treated of in the General Council or Aſſembly, and after in that of the *Pregadi*, as they ought to be in common courſe; could not be poſſibly managed with ſuch ſpeed and ſecrecy, as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Council, with the Prince and his ſix aſſiſtants, the *Supreme Majeſty* of the State doth reſide eſpecially. Some other Officers there are, and thoſe of great authority and reputation, as the *Procurators* of S. *Mark*, which have the charge of the publick Treaſures; and the *Avogadori*, or *Tribunes* (as one might call them) of the people, being three in all; one of which muſt be alwayes preſent in all conſultations, leſt any thing ſhould paſs to the prejudice, and infringement of the Priviledges of the common people.

For the whole body of the City conſiſteth either of the *Gentlemen*, or of Artificers and Commons. Theſe laſt are the deſcendants and progeny of ſuch as came to ſettle here when the State was fixed; invited to dwell here, and to follow their occupations, by ſeveral Priviledges and Immunities which were offered to them; and theſe they neither admit into any of their Councels, nor into any of the Offices of Truſt and Power, except it be two; that namely of the Chancellour, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the people. The other are the iſſue or deſcendants of thoſe, who firſt laid the foundation of their City and common-wealth: and theſe they have in ſuch reſpect, and ſo high eſteeme, that to make any Stranger (how great and eminent ſoever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greateſt honour they can beſtow; and not beſtowed but upon the beſt deſerver. *Henry* the 3d. of *France* taking this City in his way out of *Poland*, thought himſelf graced with this attribute, which they are very dainty and ſparing of, it being the higheſt honour which they vouchſafe to impart to ſuch commanders of their own, and Ambaſſadors of other Princes, as have well deſerved it. And that this *honour* may be kept up to the very height, and their nobility not grow too cheap, by being too numerous; neither the younger ſons of theſe *Gentlemen* within the City, or of the *Noblemen* in the Countrey, are permitted to marry. But otherwiſe they ſuffer them to ſatisfie their luſts, with too much impunity; and for their ſakes allow of *Stews*, as an evil not to be avoided on the former grounds.

Now as *Otho* in *Tacitus* ſaid to the *Pretorian* Souldiers, *Princeps è Senatu oritur, Senatus è vobis*: ſo out of theſe Gentlemen are choſen the Senators, out of them the *Duke*. His election by *Contarenus* is deſcribed in this manner. In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty years of age are aſſembled. So many as meet, caſt their names into a pot; and in another, are juſt ſo many bals, of which thirty only are guilt. Then a child draweth for each, till the thirty guilt ones be all drawn; for which thirty the child draweth again the ſecond time out of another pot, that hath only nine guilt bals. The nine ſo drawn, nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again ſelected by the ſame kind of lot. Theſe twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by lot ſet apart. Theſe nine nominate five and forty, who are by lot again reduced unto eleven. Theſe eleven chooſe forty one of the beſt and chiefeſt of the *Senators*; who after an oath taken ſeverally, to chooſe whom they judge worthieſt, write in a ſcrole every one whom he beſt liketh. The ſcrolls are mingled together, and then drawn: the fitneſs of the perſons then drawn is diſcuſſed; and he that hath moſt voices above five and twenty, is the man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudge with due ſolemnities to be created their *Duke*. By the like kind of Lottery do they chooſe Gentlemen into the Senate, and make publick Officers; inſomuch that *Contarenus*, who hath committed unto writing theſe publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not ſay how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato's* platform.

But whether this be ſo or not, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus conſtituted, and modelled, as before is ſaid; hath laſted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the world, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preſerved it ſelf in the ſame condition, but may moſt juſtly be accompted one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks of *Chriſtendom* againſt the incroachments of the *Turks*: the wars whereof hath procured peace, and the peace thereof procured plenty, to the reſt of *Europe*. Inſomuch, that it may well be ſaid, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italy* the Face of *Europe*; ſo *Venice* is the Eye of *Italy*; the faireſt, ſtrongeſt, and moſt active part in that powerfull Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome* by ſome *Pythagorical* transmigration had paſſed into the body of this powerfull State; and animated it with all the vertues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and conſtant temper. From ſo baſe and abject a beginning, is this City grown to be one of the beſt *Supporters* of the *Arms* of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this State, they tolerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themſelves profeſs no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with ſuch caution and reſpect to their own authority, that they ſuffer not their Clergy to enjoy thoſe priviledges, which they poſſeſs in other Countreys, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the quarrel betwixt them, and Pope *Paul* the fifth; in which the Signeury ſtood ſtifly to their antient Rights, and cauſed Maſs to be duly ſaid, notwithſtanding all their Churches were under the Interdict, baniſhed the *Jeſuites* for ever out of their Dominions, for ſtickling too buſily in behalf of the Pope: and in the end prevailed ſo far by their conſtant courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the cauſe, and reconcile them to the Church, without any *ſubmiſſion*. A notable example of all Chriſtian Princes, how to behave themſelves towards thoſe of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon, but by ſuch reſiſtances. So eaſie a thing it is for men of conſtancy and courage, to ſhake off that yoke, which Papal Tyranny and Superſtition hath impoſed upon them.

In managing their wars they antiently obſerved two Rules, which much conduced to the inlargement and ſecurity of their Common-wealth. The firſt was the exempting of their own *Citizens* from the wars (not out of jealouſie, but care of their preſervation) unleſs compelled to the contrary by extreme neceſſity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the *Provincial* Subject, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof, they did not only keep their City in the ſame condition, able at any time, Venice. time, and at all times, to give Law to the reſt of their Dominions: but waſted the hot and boyling ſpirit of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwiſe might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of ſome neighbouring Prince to be the general of their Forces; whom in the concluſion of the ſervice they diſmiſſed with honour and reward. And by this courſe they avoyded faction, and prevented ſervitude: Either or both of which might have hapned by employing any of their own great ones in the chief command; who (after the example of *Julius Caſar* in the ſtate of *Rome*) having a ſtrong party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himſelf their Prince. But this was only in the conduct of their wars in *Italy*, and in ſuch times when the State was not ſo well ballanced as it hath been ſince.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea, or Land. Their Land-forces which they have in continual pay, for defence of their Dominion, conſiſt of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers inrolled and paid; and beſides thoſe they have a choice band of 4000 Muſquetiers: for excerciſing of which they keep yearly Muſters, as well to improve them in experience, as to proportion them ſome gratuities, according to their well deſervings. And as for *Horſe*, they maintain conſtantly 6000 men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italy*. And yet beſides this conſtant and ordinary eſtabliſhment, they are able to bring great Forces into the field; as appeareth by their Army againſt *Lewis* the twelfth: in which without diſfurniſhing any of their Forts and Garriſons, they had 2000 men of Arms, 3000 light Horſe, 30000 Foot, moſt of their own natural Subjects; ſaving that they were interlined with ſome bands of *Switzers*, to which people they give yearly penſions, to be aſſured of their aid upon all occaſions. Then for the *Sea-forces*, beſides that they keep fifty Gallies in continual action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no leſs then 200 more laid up in the *Arſenal*, with all manner of tackling and ammunition appertaining to them: they have 10000 men enrolled to ſerve at the *Oar*, and may raiſe as many as they pleaſe for thoſe kind of ſervices, out of thoſe parts of *Sclavonia*, which are ſubject to them. But the great evidence of the power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet ſet out againſt the *Grand Signeur* for the War of *Cyprus*, *An.* 1570. in which they manned out one great Gallion. eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall Ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of leſſer burden; being in all one hundred and eighty ſeven ſail, fit for preſent ſervice. To give the totall ſum in brief, they held a war by Sea and Land for ſeven years together, againſt all the Princes of *Chriſtendome* (excepting *England*) confederated againſt them by the League of *Cambray*; in all which time they neither wanted men nor money; and in the end, were the leaſt loſers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture alſo at the greatneſs of the publick Treaſury, and of the yearly income which ſupplies the ſame. For though it be conceived that their ordinary ſtanding Revenue be but four millions of *Ducats* yearly (which yet is more than any Chriſtian Prince can boaſt of except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other wayes to advance their Treaſury, by laying new Impoſts on commodities, as they ſee occaſion; which needs muſt riſe to vaſt and moſt conſiderable ſums, in a City of the greateſt Traffick of any in *Europe*; and perhaps in all the world beſides. And yet beſides ſuch Cuſtoms and Impoſts as they lay on Merchandize, there is nothing which the people do eat or drink, for which they pay not ſomething to the publick Treaſury: over and above which the pooreſt Labourer in the whole *Signeury* payeth his *Poll-money* alſo. Inſomuch, that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Chriſtians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venetians*. Without ſuch helps, (though heavy and burdenſome to the Subject) they could not poſſibly have ſpent twelve millions in the war againſt *Selimus* the ſecond; and as many a little before that, in the enterprize of *Ferrara*, and the war raiſed againſt them by the League of *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembred.

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Soveraign Princes*, nor ſuch as do ſucceed each other in the right of inheritance: yet being they are alwayes men of moſt eminent note, and that in their names all the buſineſs of the State is acted, and all writings dated, I will ſubjoyn a Catalogue of them to this preſent time; to the end that meeting with their names in the courſe of *Hiſtory*, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The DUKES of *VENICE*.

697	1	*Paulus Anafeſtus* 20	859	14	*Urſus Partitiarius*	1003	28	*Otho Urſeola*
718	2	*Marcel Tegalian* 10	876	15	*John Partitiarius*	1020	29	*Petro Barbolani*
727	3	*Hippateus Urſus* 11	881	16	*Petro Candiano*	1021	30	*Dominico Flabenico*
		An Interregnum of ſix years.		17	*Dominico Tribuno*	1031	31	*Dominico Cantareni*
742	4	*Theodatus Hippateus*		18	*Petro Tribuno*	1059	32	*Dominico Silvie*
955	5	*Galla of Malamocco*	905	19	*Urſus Badoarius*	1072	33	*Vitalis Falerius*
656	6	*Dominico Monegarta*	925	20	*Petro Candiano* II.	1084	34	*Vitalis Michaeli*
760	7	*Maurice Galbata*	932	21	*Petro Badoario*	1090	35	*Ordelaſius Falerius*
783	8	*John Galbata*	935	22	*Petro Candiano* III.	1105	36	*Dominico Michaeli*
799	9	*Obelerius*	950	23	*Petro Candiano* IV.	1118	37	*Petrus Polanus*
849	10	*Angelo Partitiarius*	970	24	*Petro Urſeola*	1136	38	*Dominico Moroſini*
822	11	*Juſtinian Partitiarius*	972	25	*Vital Candiano*	1143	39	*Vitalis Michaeli* II.
824	12	*John Partitiarius*	973	26	*Tribuno Meme*	1160	40	*Sebaſtian Ziani*
832	13	*Petro Tradonico*	985	27	*Petro Urſeola* II.	1165	41	*Auria Maripiero*

42 *Henrico*

1179	42	*Henrico Dondolo*	1355	61	*Andrea Contarene*	1533	80	*Franciſco Donati*
1193	43	*Petro Ziani*	1371	62	*Michael Moroſini*	1540	81	*Antonio Treviſani*
1216	44	*Jacobo Tepuli*		63	*Antonio Venieri*	1541	82	*Franciſco Vivieri*
1236	45	*Marino Moroſini*	1389	64	*Michael Steno*	1543	83	*Lorenzo Prioli*
1240	46	*Renieri Zeno*	1402	65	*Thomazo Mocenico*	1547	84	*Hierome Prioli*
1256	47	*Lorenzo Tepuli*	1412	66	*Franciſco Foſcari*	1555	85	*Petro Loredani*
1263	48	*Jacobo Contareni*	1447	67	*Paſchal Malipiere*	1560	86	*Lewis Mocenico*
1267	49	*Giovanni Dondolo*	1452	68	*Chriſtophoro Moro*	1567	87	*Sebaſtian Venieri*
1276	50	*Petro Gradenico*	1461	69	*Nicolao Troni.*	1578	88	*Nicola di Pont*
1298	51	*Marino Georgio*	1463	70	*Nicolao Marcelli*	1586	89	*Paſchal Cicogne*
1299	52	*John Sourance*	1464	71	*Petro Mocenico*	1596	90	*Marino Grimani*
1315	53	*Franciſco Dondolo*	1465	72	*Andrea Vendramine*	1606	91	*Leonardo Donati*
1329	54	*Barthol Gradonico*	1467	73	*John Mocenico*	1612	92	*Antonio Memmo*
1330	55	*Andrea Dandolo*	1474	74	*Marco Barbadico*	1615	93	*Giovanni Bembo*
1342	56	*Marinus Falerius*		75	*Auguſtino Barbadico*	1618	94	*Nicolao Donato*
	57	*John Gradonico*	1489	76	*Leonardo Loredani*	1618	95	*Antonio Priuli*
1343	58	*John Dauphin*	1509	77	*Antonio Grimani*	1623	96	*Franciſco Contareno*
1348	59	*Lorenzo Celſo*	1511	78	*Andrea Gritti*		97	*Giovanni Correlio*
1352	60	*Marco Cornaro*	1527	79	*Petro Laude*		98	*Franciſco Erizzo*, now living, *An.* 1648.

The principal Orders of *Knighthood* in this *Republick* are, 1 Of S. *Mark*, who is the Patron of this City, inſtituted in the year 1330, and renewed again (being grown ſomewhat out of uſe) *An.* 1562. The honour is commonly beſtowed on the perſon preſent, ſometimes by Letters Patents on a party abſent; as lately upon *Daniel Heinſius*, one of great eminence for learning in the *Netherlands*: The perſon choſen is to be of noble bloud, at the leaſt a Gentleman; the Word or Motto of the Order, is *Pax tibi Marce*,

2. *Of the gloriius Virgin*, firſt inſtituted by *Bartholomew* of *Vincentia*, *An.* 1222. Their charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italy*. It was allowed of by Pope *Urban* the fourth, *An.* 1262. The Arms of this Order, are a Purple Croſs, between certain Stars. The habit a white Surcote over a Ruſſet Cloak; and ſeems to be as well a Relious, as a Military Inſtitution, like to the *Spaniſh* Orders, and that of *Malta*.

There are in the Provinces of this
Common-wealth, before
deſcribed,
Patriarchs 2 Biſhops 16.

The great Dukedom of TUSCANY.

Having thus run along the Coaſt of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church unto the *Alpes*, which divide *Italy* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuſcan* or *Lower Sea*, from the ſaid *Lands of the Church*, to that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italy* from *France*. And in the firſt place we meet with the Dukedom of *Florence*, or the Eſtate of the great Duke of *Tuſcany*; divided on the Eaſt from S. *Peters Patrimony*, by the River *Piſco*; on the Weſt, from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Macra*, and the ſtrong fort of *Sarezana*; on the North from *Romandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*, by the *Apennine* Hills; and on the South ſide it is bounded with the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

It taketh up the greateſt and goodlyeſt part of all that which antiently was called *Tuſcany*, from the *Greek* word θύειν, which ſignifieth to ſacrifice; of which act of Religious Worſhip, or rather of ſome ſuperſtitious Ceremonies appertaining to it they are conceived to be the Authours. And to ſay truth, they are much given to *Sooth-ſayings*, and Divinations, and ſuch like vanities of *Gentiliſm*: *Tages*, that *Merlin* of the old World, firſt appearing here, from whom they learned the greateſt part of their Superſtitions. So that this name was adventitious and accidentall. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenia*, from *Tyrrhenus* the ſon of *Atys* King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in theſe parts about the time that *Gedeon* judged the Tribes of *Iſrael*. But theſe names ſignified the ſame both Countrey and people, though in divers Languages, and with reſpect to different Originations: the name of *Tyrrheni*, and *Tyrrhenia* being moſt uſed by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tuſci*, and *Tuſcia*, by their neighbours of *Rome*, who alſo called the people *Hetruſci*, and the Countrey *Hetruria*, from a particular Province of it which was ſo entituled. Antiently it extended as far Eaſtward as the banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the preſent; and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation. Who not content to be reſtrained within the *Apennine* and the *Tiber*, waſted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation; and built twelve Cities on the other ſide of the Mountains; that is to ſay, *Adria*, *Verona*, *Vincentia*, *Trent*, *Bergamo*, *Mantua*, *Como*, *Vercellæ*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*; all of eſteem and reputation to this very day. They were the firſt Nation that carryed an *Offenſive* War to the Gates of

Tuſcany. *Rome*, when they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porſena*; and held it out on the *Defenſive* as long as any: No people in all *Italy* ſtanding more ſtiffly in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Faliſci*, and *Veientes*, two **Hetrurian** Tribes. But nothing could withſtand the fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations of them were brought under by *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who from hence brought to *Rome*, the *Faſces* and Triumphal Ornaments, and other embelliſhments of State: the *Veii* and *Faliſci*, by the Sword of *Camillus*; the conqueſt perfected by the conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Fulv. Contumalus A.V.C.* 455. So the *Tuſcans* were ſubdued at laſt, after they had been governed by their own Kings 1132 years; that is to ſay, from *Tarchon Priſcus* their firſt King, *A. M.* 2550. to *Turenus Ceſo* their laſt King, *A. M.* 3668.

The chief Towns of it in thoſe times were 1 *Veii*, and 2 *Peruſia*, ſpoken of before. 3 *Feſulæ*, then of very great fame, now a poor Village hard by *Florence*. 4 *Agyllina*, ſituate not far from the Lake of *Thraſymene*, which from hence was called *Vadum Agyllinum*: the chief Town of the *Tuſcans* at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italy*, and the Seat Royal of *Mezentius* that noted Tyrant, ſo often mentioned by *Virgil*. Firſt built by the *Pelaſgi*, a *Greek* people, and by them thus named; afterwards by miſtake called *Care*: by like miſtake as *Peru*, *Jucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces, got their preſent names: as ſhall there be ſhewn. For the *Tuſcans*, or the *Romans* as others ſay, demanding in their language of a Countrey fellow, the name of the place, was anſwered in his language, χαῖρε, that is to ſay, God ſave you, or God ſpeed you: which they taking for the name of the Town, did ever after call it *Care*. Memorable in old time for the Baths adjoyning, from hence called *Balena Cæretana*; more for the preſervation of the *Veſtal* Fire, and the other holy things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*. Rewarded hereupon with all the priviledges of *Rome*, except right of ſuffrage: from whence the Tables, in which the *Roman Cenſors* uſed to inroll the names of thoſe, whom they deprived of their Votes in Senate, or any other publick Counſell, were called *Carites Tabulæ*. 5 *Phaleria*, on the ſea-ſide, the principal Town of the *Faliſci*, of which there is ſome remainder extant in the Village called *Falaris*. 6 *Cluſium*, the Seat-royal of King *Porſena*, for aiding which againſt the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themſelves the fury of that turbulent people. *Piſa*, *Aretium*, and ſuch others as are ſtill in being, we ſhall ſpeak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the ſoyl do remain as formerly, though the firſt altered in their names. The principall of which are, 1 *Arnus* ſpoken of before, in the general ſurvey of *Italy*. 2 *Sercius*, by *Ptolemy* called *Boactus*, a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes ſome amends unto the people for its violent Land-flouds. 3 *Palia*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not ſo profitable; which falleth into *Tiber*, near *Orviette*. 4 *Martha*, by *Ptolemy* called *Oſa*. Here is alſo the Lake *Volſinius*, which is twenty four mile in compaſs; and that called antiently *Sabatinus*, but now *Laco Braciani*, from which water was conveyed to *Rome*. By reaſon of theſe and other Lakes, and the frequent over-flowings of the Rivers, the Countrey in former times was full of Bogs, which made the air unhealthy, and the wayes unpaſſable; it being in the Flats and Mariſhes of *Hetruria*, that *Annibal* was turmoiled, loſing herein the greateſt parts of his Elephants, and one of his eyes. But ſince thoſe times partly by the induſtry of the people, and the great providence of the Princes; the Fens in moſt places are well drained, and the Bogs converted into firm land: whereby the air is rectified, and the wayes made pleaſant; care being alſo taken, by great banks and ramparts, to keep the Rivers for the moſt part within their channels. So that the Countrey is now full of very ſpacious fields, and fruitfull valleys, ſwelled here and there with pleaſant mountains, little inferiour in fertility to the richeſt vales; abundantly well ſtored with delicious wines, and plentifull, in a word, of all the bleſſings of nature: ſave that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is ſupplyed from the fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themſelves and their neighbours; though no ſuch ſuperfluity, as to ſpare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the ſtory, *Tuſcany* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the ſecond of thoſe eleven Regions, into which *Italy* was divided by *Auguſtus Caſar*. Into the diviſion of it made by *Antoninus*, and in that of *Conſtantine*, it made with *Umbria* one of the ten Provinces, which was immediately ſubject to the *Prefect* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, it became a member of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German* Empire: during which times it was governed by an Officer of truſt and power, whom I find ſometimes called the *Marqueſs*, ſometimes the *Duke* of *Tuſcany*; who had here more or leſs authority, as they could work on the neceſſities of their ſeveral Princes. *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards* had been Duke of *Tuſcany*, and ſo was *Albericus* in the time of the *Berengarii*; and *Guido* is called Marqueſs of it, under the reign of *Henricus Anceps* the *German* Emperour. Afterwards as the Popes grew in power and greatneſs, ſo they made bold to intermeddle in the affairs of this Province: giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*; another while the Dukes of *Anjou*, making ſome challenge to that Kingdome. In which diſtractions the *Florentines* firſt bought their own liberty, of the Emperour *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*; and after purchaſed the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*; that of *Arezzo*, for 40000 *Florens*, of Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*. After this time they husbanded their affairs ſo well, that they became one of the moſt conſiderable Eſtates in *Italy*; and at the laſt by taking in *Piſa* and *Sienna*, they got the abſolute dominion of the beſt and largeſt part of *Tuſcany*: which now is under the command of the *great Duke*, and may be branched moſt fitly into theſe four parts; that is to ſay, the Cities ard Territories of 1 *Florence*. 2 *Piſa*. 3 *Sienna*, and 4 the *Iſlands* ſituate in the *Tuſcan* and *Tyrrhenian* ſeas.

1, And firſt the Territory or Eſtate of *Florence*, taketh up the North part of this great Dukedome, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Eſtates of *Piſa* and *Sienna* on the South. So called

from

Florence.

from the City of *FLORENCE*, ſituate nigh unto the conflux of the Rivers *Arnus* and *Chianus*; the former paſſing through the middeſt of the City, which is joyned together with four Bridges of ſtone: environed with mountains, which do ſerve as a Fortreſs againſt Invaſions, and for defence againſt the Winds. Firſt built by *L. Sylla* that bloody *Dictator*; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumviri*, *Auguſtus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*; from the flouriſhing ſituation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards* upon ſome diſpleaſure razed it to the ground, but it was rebuilt by *Charlemagne*; to whom and whoſe Succeſſors they continued faithfull, as long as they had any thing to do with the State of *Italy*: but after, they betook themſelves to the *Papall* faction, and were as rigid *Guelfs* as any. On this foundation it now ſtands, and is indeed a very fair and flouriſhing City, agreeable unto the name; the ſtreets being very ſtraight and large, paved with ſquare ſtone, and alwayes kept exceeding clean: the ordinary buildings beautifull above any in *Italy*, beſides many fair and ſtately Palaces adorned with *Statua's*. The principall of the Palaces is that of the *Great Duke*, taking up the room of 50 houſes which were wont to ſtand there; capable of a great retinue: and for the largeneſs of the building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as alſo for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Acceſſaries, equalling, if not ſurpaſſing the goodlieſt Palaces in all *Europe*. The like may alſo be affirmed of the *Cathedrall*, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanſhip, but that eſpecially of the Steeple, which both for ſtuff and ſtructure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*, and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence*: in which City there are beſides ſo many excellent pieces and curious rarities, that the Arch-duke *Charles* was wont to ſay, that it was *a City not to be ſeen but on Holy-dayes*. As for the Inhabitants of this City and the parts adjoyning, they are a very induſtrious people, and generally ſaid to be of a very great wit, ſubtile heads and of much inſight into buſineſſe: and yet Count *Imbalt*, a *French* Gentleman, was uſed to ſay, *Non ſapeve dove conſiſteße l'ingegne tanto celebrate di Fiorentini*, that he could never find where that great wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guicciardine* the Hiſtorian, was without doubt a notable Stateſ-man; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a man of as ſhrewd a brain as any; and ſo were the two *Coſmo's* of the houſe of the *Medices*: but whether all the *Florentines*, or the *major* part of them, be of ſuch extraordinary wit as they ſay they are, I am not very well reſolved of; nor is it much materiall to enquire into it.

The other Cities and chief places of this firſt diviſion, are 1 *Feſula*, once a *Roman* Colony, now a ſmall Village called *Fieſoli*; ſituate in the ſtraights of the *Apennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have riſen chiefly from the ruins of it: moſt memorable for the great defeat here given by *Stilico*, to the great Army of the *Gothes*, conducted into *Italy* under *Rhadaguſus*. 2. *Pizoria*, or *Piſtoia*, ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*, but ruinated with its own diſſenſions: of which the greateſt and moſt laſting, were thoſe betwixt the *Neri* and *Bianchi* (or the black men and the white) which divided *Florence*; and that between the *Guelfs* and *Gibellines*, which here took beginning, and for a long time exerciſed the peace of *Chriſtendome*. This laſt began (as ſome ſay) upon the quarrel of two brothers, of which the one named *Guelfo*, ſtood for the Pope; the other named *Gibellino*, declared for the Emperour. The quarrel ſpreading into parties, called the *Guelfs* and the *Gibellines*, became at laſt the wonder and amazement of all good people: inſomuch as ſome are of opinion, that the fiction of the *Elfs* and *Goblins*, wherewith we uſe to fright young children, was derived from hence. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſeated in a fair and goodly plain, compaſſed with mountains; the ſtreets paved with free-ſtone, and the Church (which is Cathedrall) with Marble. It was firſt walled by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province; but for all that was forced to ſubmit it ſelf to the power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was ſubdued *Anno* 1150. when as yet themſelves were not the abſolute Maſters of their own City. 3. *Volterra* built among the mountains, the birth-place of *Linus* ſucceſſor to St. *Peter* in the See of *Rome*. It ſtandeth on the top of an hill, the walls thereof made of ſquare ſtone ſix foot long, which are very neatly joyned together without Mortar: and in thoſe Walls five Gates for entrance, each Gate having neer unto it a very fair Fountain. The Marble Statues, and ſome Epitaphs in *Tuſcan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very antient. In this Town was born *Rodolphus Volterranus*, one of the greateſt Reſtorers of Learning in the Weſt parts of the World. 4 *Monte Pulciano*, in *Latin* called *Mons Politianus*, a well fortified City, and the birth-place of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the *Latin* or *Roman* Elegancies. 5 *Prato*, another ſtrong piece of this part alſo. Neighboured by a retiring place of the Great Dukes, called *Pratoline*, a right pleaſant Village, beautified with a magnificent Palace; in which beſides many other ſingularities, are moſt curious Water-works, equall, if not ſuperiour unto thoſe of *Tivoli*. 6 *Cortona*, an antient City of the *Tuſcans*, ſituate at the foot of the *Apennine*; ſold to the *Florentines* by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*. 7 *Aretium* or *Arezzo*, one of the ancient Cities of the *Tuſcans* alſo, and ſold to the *Florentines* as the other was; this being bought for 40000 *Florins* of *Lewis* of *Anjou*, then the Popes *Vicegerent* in this Countrey. 8 *Borgo San Sepulcro*, ſeated on the *Tiber*, neer, or within the *Spoletan* Dukedome; added to this *Signeury* by *Coſmo de Medices*, the firſt of that name: by whom bought of Pope *Eugenius* the fourth for the ſum of 25000 *Florins*, and laid unto the Patrimony of this Commonwealth; to which it ſerveth for a Bulwark on that ſide of this Countrey.

To this Diviſion alſo we may beſt refer the ſmall, but rich Signeury of *Maßa*, ſituate on the borders of the ſtate of *Genoa*. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Maßa* it ſelf, which gives the title of a Marqueſs to the Lord hereof, of the Family of the *Maleſpines*. 2 *Carara*, three miles off from *Maſſa*, and more neer the Sea; of great fame for its Quarries of whiteſt Marble (much uſed in the time of the *Roman* greatneſs) and a breed of the faireſt Women in *Italy*. The Prince hereof a Feudatary to the Duke of *Florence*, but amongſt his own vaſſals abſolute enough.

2 The

Piſa and Sienna.

2. The ſecond member of this eſtate, is the City and Territory of *PISA*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoeſe* on the Weſt, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the Eaſt. The City firſt built by the *Piſa*, a people of *Elis* in *Greece*: who following old *Neſtor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the wind driven upon this coaſt; and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serchius*, did erect this Town. In the diſtractions of the Empire it ſtood up for it ſelf, and grew ſo potent, that at one time they waged War both with the *Venetians*, and *Genoeſe*. They were once Maſters of *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and the *Baleares*; but finally being diſcomfited by the *Genoeſe* neer the Iſle of *Giglio*, *An.* 1369. they ſubmitted themſelves to the protection of *Charles* the fourth, by whom it was made free. Not long after, it was taken by *John Galeaze* the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *An.* 1404. by *John Marid* his ſonne and Succeſſor ſold unto the *Florentines*; from whoſe command they freed themſelves by popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this beſieged them, and brought them to ſuch extremity of hunger, that they were ready to be ſtarved. Yet ſuch was the humanity of the Beſiegers, that when they entred the Town, every man carryed victuals in his hand in ſtead of weapons, to beget as it were, new life in that rebellious people. This victory the *Florentines* got by the valour and conduct of Sir *John Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Aguto*; who being firſt a Taylor in *Eſſex*, afterwards ſerved *Edward* the third in his *French* wars, where he was knighted. And when, upon the peace concluded after the battel of *Poictiers*, he wanted employment; he entred with his Regiment into *Italy*, and put himſelf into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in war with this City: who for his valour, have honoured him with a very fair Tomb and Monument. When **Charles** the 8th. went into *Italy*, the *Piſans* again revolted; and were not without much labour and great charges, reduced to their former obedience. As for the City it ſelf, it is almoſt as big as *Florence*; this being five miles in compaſs, and that but ſix; but very ſhort of it in the numbers of people, *Florence* being ſaid to contain 90000 ſouls, *Piſa* not a third part of that proportion; yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to ſay, the publick *Arſenal* for ſhipping, an Univerſity for Students, and the See of an Archbiſhop: the Cathedrall Church of which is a very beautifull peece of work, the Gates thereof are braſs, and the Steeple of it of ſuch artificiall and exquiſite building, that it ſheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwhoſomeneſs of the air over-ballanceth all theſe fair advantages.

The next place of importance within the Territory of this City, is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn* (*Liburnum* it is called in *Latin*) ſeated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified againſt the *Genoeſe*, by whom the works were once ſlighted, *An.* 1297. Upon a Reconciliation made between thoſe States it returned again to its old Maſters. And when the *Piſans* were ſold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of *Millain*; *Thomas Fregoſa* Duke of *Genoa*, ſeized upon this place, and ſold it alſo to the ſame Chapmen, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke **Coſmo** and his two ſonnes, it is much improved in ſtrength and beauty; and ſo well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the ſtrongeſt Cities in *Chriſtendome*: Cities I ſay, and not Caſtles, the Caſtles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain*, being held to be the ſtrongeſt Forts in the World. After this comes in 3 *Peira Sancta*, on the Weſt ſide of the *Arnus*, a place of great conſequence and ſtrength) one of the beſt pieces of the *Piſans* when a Free-eſtate, againſt their old enemies the *Genoeſe*, towards whom it ſtandeth. 4 *Terraciola*, Eaſtward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5 *Caſtellona*, an Epiſcopal See. And 6 *Porto Barrato* bordering on the Signeury of *Sienna*; now nothing but a ſtation for Ships (nor much uſed for that) but heretofore beautiſied with one of the beſt Cities of the *Tuſcans*, called *Populonia*.

3. The third member of this Dukedome is the City and Territory of *SIENNA*, lying betwixt the Eſtate of *Piſa*, and the land of the Church. The City ſaid to be built by *Brennus*, who did there put his old ſickly men to ſojourn, and called it *Sena*: the birth-place of *Æneas Silvius*, called afterwards Pope *Pius* the ſecond; of *Francis Picolominy*, after Pope *Pius* the third; and of *Sixtus* (hence ſurnamed) *Senenſis*, the greateſt Scholar of the three, if not of all the age he lived in. By *Antonine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Sena Iulia*; to difference it perhaps from another of that name neer the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built neer the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Treiſſa*; but built (which makes the ſituation of it exceeding pleaſant) upon an high hill, on which there is a Caſtle that commands the Town; the ſtreets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and ſpacious Market-place; neer to which is a very fair Palace, uſed for a Senate-houſe in the Free-Commonwealth: and on the South ſide neer the Walls, the Cathedrall Church, reputed to be one of the faireſt in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an aſcent by fair Marble ſtairs, of which the Pavement is made alſo. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperiall faction, it bought its liberty at an eaſie rate, of the Emperour *Rodolphus* the firſt. After it fell into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally was made over to *Coſmo de Medices* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, *An.* 1558. in conſideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French*; and other ſervices expected for the time to come. *Coſmo* being thus inveſted in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the firſt Prince who had the abſolute command of it, after the conſtitution of their Commonwealth: neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their ſeverall factions; and ſuffered to have Garriſons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their party. And to ſay truth, it ſtood with good reaſon of State, that the *Florentine* ſhould uſe all his wit to get this City; and having got it, uſe all means to aſſure in to him. For beſides that great acceſſion which it made unto his Eſtate; by adding thereunto the yeerly income of a hundred and fifty thouſand Ducats, above all expences: it was alſo to be carefully looked on as a Rivall, which had long time ſtood in competition with it, for the soveraign command of *Tuſcany*. Beſides there had been mighty animoſities

be-

The Tuſcan Iſlands.

between the Cities: the *Florentine* being alwayes of the *Guelfes*, and the *Siennoys* of the *Gibelline* faction. A faction at laſt ſo generally diſtaſted in all *Italy*, and ſo abominable to the Popes, that on an *Aſhwedneſday*, when the Pope being to caſt Aſhes on the heads of the Cardinals, was to have ſaid, *Memento O homo quòd cinis es, & in cinerem converteris*; according to the uſage of the Church of *Rome*: ſeeing a *Gibelline* amongſt them, he forgot himſelf, and ſaid thus unto him, *Memento O homo quòd* Gibellinus *es, & cum* Gibellinis *morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1 *Montalcino* (*Mons Alcinus* in *Latin*) a place of great ſtrength both by induſtry and ſituation. 2 *Caſtro Cartaldo*, ſeated upon a lofty Hill, moſt memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccace*, one of the beſt wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declareth; buried here with a ſorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of tranſcribing. 3 *Soana*, an Epiſcopal City; as alſo are 4 *Pienza*. 5 *Croßetto*, and 6 *Chiuſi*; this laſt the *Cluſium* of the ancient *Tuſcans* ſpoken of before. Beſides theſe there are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great obſervation in the courſe of buſineſſe.

There belonged alſo unto this Common-wealth, when a State diſtinct, ſome Ports and Peeces on the Sea; which when it was conſigned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniard*: partly thereby to keep thoſe Princes at his devotion; but principally that by holding ſo many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keyes of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramont of thoſe Seas. Of thoſe the principall, if not all, 1 *Piombino*, in *Latin* called *Plumbinum*, from ſome Mines of Lead; adorned with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a plentifull Territory: the Caſtle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in poſſeſſion of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole rents of the Eſtate. 2 *Port Telamon*, Eaſtward of *Piombino*, ſo called of old from *Telamon* an adjoyning Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*. Accounted the chief City of *Tuſcany* in thoſe elder times, but moſt remarkable for the great battell fought neer unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Galls*, *A.V.C.529*. the Army of the *Galls* conſiſting of 70000 Horſe and Foot; that of the *Romans* little (if at all) inferior to it. A fight in which *Attilius* one of the Conſuls being ſlain, the victory was gotten by *Æmilius* his Colleague, with the ſlaughter of 400000 of the Enemies, and the taking of 10000 Priſoners: *Aneroeſtus* and *Congolianus* two Kings of the *Tranſalpine Galls* being ſlain or taken. A victory which drew after it the totall ſubjugation of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, which followed within three years after. 3 *Orbitello*, drawing more towards the Eaſt, the *Coßa* of the antient Writers. 4 *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontory or *Peninſula*, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea, over againſt *Orbitello*; by the *Latins* called *Mons Argentarius*: and thought by ſome, who have obſerved the ſituation, ſtrength and extent thereof, to be the fitteſt place for a Royall City to be built in, to command thoſe Seas. 5 *Port Hercule*, which ſtill retains its antient name, imparted to it from ſome Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in it; ſituate neer the Eaſtern *Iſthmus* of the ſaid *Peninſula*. 6 *Porto-Longone*, a piece of ſpeciall conſequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cauſe of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the conqueſt of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now poſſeſs it.

The fourth and laſt member of this Eſtate, are the Iſlands in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principall whereof is 1 *Ilva*, not above ten miles from *Piombino*; called antiently *Æthalia*, by the vulgar *Elbar*. *Pliny* affirmed it to contain in compaſſe a hundred miles, but it proves upon a juſt ameaſurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furniſhed with Corn, and leſs with fruits; but plentifull in Mines of Iron, as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, eſpecially for Steel, of great eſteem in the time of *Virgil*; as appeareth by that paſſage in the tenth of the *Æneids*, where it is called

Inſula inexhauſtis Chalybum generoſa metallis.

A noble Iſle, and known full well,
For unexhauſted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is ſupplyed by Iron; which Iron is of ſo ſtrange a nature, that every 25 year it renueth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilſt it is in the Iſland, but muſt be carried ſomewhere elſe. It affordeth alſo Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in ſome parts, the Loadſtone alſo. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it againſt the *Turks*, if they ſhould at any time invade it; reſigned it, by the Counſell of *Charles* the fifth, unto *Coſmo di Medices* the Duke of *Florence*: reſerving to themſelves the Revenues of it, and the Government, of all the Towns and Villages therein, except thoſe that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that ſhould come thither; and therefore if the *Turks* or *Moors* had been Maſters of it, they might eaſily have commanded all the coaſts adjoyning, as well in *Provence* as *Italy*. For the defence hereof, there are two ſtrong Caſtles, ſituate on two little Mountains, on each ſide one; ſo fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable; having alſo good ſtore of Canon, and all ſorts of Warlike Ammunition. And not far off ſtands a ſtrong Town built by the ſame Duke *Coſmo*, and by him called *Coſmopolis*; well fortified, and made the ſeat of his new order of St. *Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The ſecond Iſland of note is *Giglio*, called *Iglium* antiently, juſt oppoſite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having ſome 25 miles in compaſs; neer unto which the *Genoeſe* ſo diſcomfited the *Piſans* in a Fight at Sea, that they were never able to recover their former puiſſance. 3. *Capraria* not far from *Ligorn*, ſo called from its abundance of Goats; and for the ſame reaſon *Ægilora*, by the *Greek* Geographers:

The Tuſcan Iſlands.

as 4 *Gallinaria* not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the reſt nothing memorable, but that ſome of them do occur in the antient Writers: of which ſort are *Melorta*, heretofore *Lanellum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2 *Lanuſi*, formerly *Artemiſia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3 *Gorgona*, 4 *Troia*, and 5 the ſmall Iſlands which are called *Formica*. 6 To theſe we may adde alſo the Iſle of *Planaſia*, more memorable than the reſt, for the baniſhment and death of *Agrippa Poſthumus*, the Nephew of *Auguſtus Cæſar* by his daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State Imperiall: ſituate ſomewhat nearer unto *Corſica*, than the reſt of theſe Iſlands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whoſe poſterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the *Free-ſtate* (as *Machiavil* informs us in his *Florentine* Hiſtory) accounted in the chief rank of the Popular Nobility: thoſe being ſuch of the antient Nobles, as to be capable of the Magiſtracy, and publick Offices (then wholly ſhared among the Commons) had as it were degraded themſelves, and became part of the Commonalty. About the yeer 1410, *John de Medices* (the firſt great raiſer of this houſe) ſtoutly mantaining the Liberties of the people againſt the great ones; was by them ſo honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great party, but almoſt a Soveraignty in the City. To him ſucceeded his ſonne *Coſmo*, one of the greateſt Stateſmen of thoſe times; who did not only much reforme the civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Caſentino*, *Burgo*, St. *Sepulchro*, and ſome other pieces. Dying in the year 1464, he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medices* his ſonne, whoſe whole time was conſumed in ſuppreſſing ſuch Factions, as had at home been raiſed againſt him: and at his death left all his power, and the great wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater meaſure of his Fathers vertues) to *Lawrence*, and *Julian*, his two ſonnes. The people after his deceaſe, either deſirous of Novelties, as moſt people are; or fearing to be made hereditary to this powerfull Family; ſeemed to incline to one of the *Soderini*, a man of plauſible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciouſly conſidering, that new houſes as they are eaſily honoured, ſo are they as ſoon abandoned by the fickle multitude; conferred all the dependences which were caſt upon him, on theſe two young men of the *Medices*, as being deſcended from a Family which had long governed the City. Againſt theſe two, the *Pazzi*, a potent houſe in *Florence*, conſpired, and at Maſs they ſlew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* eſcaped: the blows which were ſtruck at him, being received by one of his ſervants, whom two dayes before he had delivered out of priſon. For this fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Arch-biſhop of *Piſa*, who had been of the conſpiracy. To revenge the death of this Biſhop, Pope *Paul* the 2d. excommunicated the *Florentines*; and *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo* to divert this miſchief, went in perſon to *Naples*; where he grew ſo much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetuall League made between them. After his death 1492, his ſonne *Peter*, having very improvidently delivered *Piſa*, and *Ligorn*, with other pieces, to the *French* King; was, together with his whole Family, baniſhed. *John di Medices* the ſonne of *Lawrence*, and Brother of *Peter*, being made Pope, by the name of *Leo* the 10th. reſtored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exil'd. This diſgrace *Julio di Medices* ſon to the above named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement* the 7th. not enduring; procured *Charles* the fifth to beſiege it: which requeſt was granted, and the City after two yeers reſiſtance, yeelded. The Emperour then gave it to *Alexander Medices* (Grand-chaild to *Peter*, by his ſon *Lawrence*) *An.* 1531. And he to reſtrain the inſolencies of the people, built a ſtrong Citadell in the Town. This *Alexannder* was a Prince of good parts enough, had he not been to much addicted to Luſt and Wantonneſſe; which being obſerved by *Lawrence di Medices* his own Couſen, he trained him to a ſecret place, under colour of bringing him to the bed of a beautifull Lady, and there baſely murdered him. Which done, in ſtead of calling the people to take Arms for recovery of their loſt Liberty, as he firſt intended; he fearfully left the City, and fled towards *Venice*. So that before the people had notice of the Accident, the heads of the *Medices* conſulted together, and ſent for *Coſmo di Medicis* dwelling in the Countrey with his Mother (and then about 18 yeers of age) to be their Prince; as being the next Heir-male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperour. This *Coſmo* proving an excellent Stateſman, and a fortunate Commander, ſo ſwayed the affairs of *Italy*, that *Philip* the ſecond of *Spaie* to be aſſured of his friendſhip, gave him the Signeury of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the *French*; and *Pius* the 4th. had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuſcani*. But *Philip* of *Spain* (though otherwiſe his ſpeciall friend) thwarted that intent, as loath to have in *Italy* any more Kings than himſelf. After in the yeer 1570. *Pius* the fifth crowned the ſaid *Coſmo* in the Court of *Rome*, with the title of *Great Duke* of *Tuſcany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Dukes Coronet he cauſed to be engraven theſe words, *Pius quintus Pont. max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis catholicæ zelum, præcipuumque juſtitiæ ſtudium, donavit.* Thus forward were theſe Popes to honour this Family; but their ſucceſſors have been otherwiſe affected to it. For when one of Duke *Coſmo*'s ſucceſſors did ſince intreat a ſucceeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuſcany*; the Pope not liking ſo Lordly a title, made anſwer, that he was content, *He ſhould be a King in Tuſcany, but not King of Tuſcany.* A Scholar-like diſtinction, but not ſo ſatisfactory to the point propoſed.

The Princes of the houſe of *Medices*, in the *Free-eſtate.*

1410 1 *John di Medices*, the firſt advancer of the Family to publick greatneſs.
1433 2 *Coſmo di Medices*, the ſonne of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.

3. *Peter*,

1464 3 *Peter*, the ſon of *Coſmo*.
1472 4 *Lawrence di Medices*, ſon of *Peter*; the great advancer of learning in *Italy*.
1492 5 *Peter di Medices* II. exiled upon the coming in of *Charles* the 8th.
6 *Lawrence di Medices* II. ſon of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father: made Duke of *Urbin* by Pope *Leo* the 10th. He was Father of *Catharine de Medices*, the *French* Queen.

The Dukes of *Florence*, and *Great Dukes* of *Tuſcany*.

1531 1 *Alexander di Medices*, the ſon of *Lawrence*, the firſt Duke of *Florence*:
1537 2 *Coſmo* II. the next heir of *Alexander*, deſcended from *Lawrence*, a brother of the firſt *Coſmo*; the wiſeſt Stateſman of his time.
1574 3 *Francis di Medices*, ſon of *Coſmo* the 2d. Father of *Mary* the *French* Queen.
1587 4 *Ferdinand di Medices*, the Brother of *Francis*.
1609 5 *Coſmo* III. ſon of *Ferdinand*.
1621 6 *Ferdinand* II. ſon of *Coſmo di Medices*, the twelfth of this Family, the ſixth Duke of *Florence*, and the fifth of *Tuſcany*.

The length of this Eſtate is 260 miles, the breadth in ſome places not much inferiour, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which tract, the *Great Duke* hath but one conſiderable Port on the main land, which is that of *Ligorn*; ſo that his ſtrength in ſhipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffick, and not ſuffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Countrey) and carryed thence in forain Veſſels. For otherwiſe being an induſtrious people, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at ſea muſt needs be greater than it is: the *Great Dukes* Fleet conſiſting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliaſſes. And for his power by land, he hath in readineſs ſixteen thouſand foot, of his own Subjects, well trained and muſtered under experienced Commanders, to ſerve him upon all occaſions; and a hundred men at Arms, and 400 Light-horſemen, well paid, as well in times of Peace, as in time of Warre. And beſides theſe, he keeps ſo many Forts and Towns in continual Garriſon, that his Eſtate is ſaid to *be made of Iron*.

The only Order of *Knighthood* in this Eſtate is that of S. *Stephen*, inſtituted by *Coſmo di Medices*, *An.* 1561. and dedicated to S. *Stephen*, becauſe upon the Feſtival of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the 6 of *Auguſt*, he won the famous battel of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius* the fourth confirmed it the ſame year, and granted them all the Priviledges which they of *Malta* enjoy: conditioned that thoſe of this Order ſhould make a vow of Charity, of conjugal Chaſtity, and Obedience. They are to be nobly born, and in lawfull Wedlock; of the *Romiſh* Church, and without note of infamy. Their Robe is of white *Chamlet*, with a red Croſs on the left ſide, as well upon their Military Garments, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally againſt the *Turks* and *Moors*, for which cauſe ſetled firſt at *Piſa*, being near the Sea, but after at *Coſmopolis* in the Iſle of *Ilva*. The number of them is uncertain, the *Great Duke* the Supreme Maſter of it. Other Orders are commonly ſimple, but this mixt; being partly religious, partly honourary.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the *Free-Eſtate*, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifeſt, in that having in thoſe five years, wherein they waged War againſt the Duke of *Millain*, ſpent three millions and an half of Florens; their Treaſury was ſo far from being exhauſted, that the next year they beſieged and endangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Commonwealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of the Territory and City of *Sienna*; the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a million and an half of Ducats yearly. Of which 600000 Crowns are raiſed yearly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*; 150000 more out of that of *Sienna*. The cuſtoms ariſing out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yearly to 130000 Ducats, the toll of Milſtones only unto 160000; that of Salt, Mines, and Iron, falls not ſhort of that: in all a million and 200000 Ducats. Then hath the Duke his ſtock going among the Bankers, and trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countreys he loſeth the priviledges of a Nobleman, that betakes himſelf to Trade and Merchandize. He uſeth alſo to buy up almoſt all the Corn, which is brought into the Countrey out of other parts, and ſell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be ſold till all his be vended. The reſt is made up by *Exciſe* upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs and Sallads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor eſpecially: inſomuch, that it was tartly ſaid, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui ſub* Medicis *vivit, miſerè vivit*; applying an old Rule in a new ſenſe.

The Arms are *Or*, five Torteaux *Gules*, two, two, and one, and one in chief *Azure*, charged with three Flower *de Lyces* of the firſt.

Here are in this Eſtate
Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 26.

The State of LUCA.

IN the Weſt part of *Tuſcany*, betwixt the Eſtate of the *Great Duke*, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lyeth the City of *LUCA*, ſo called from *Lucamo*, a King of the *Tuſcans*, who is ſaid to have built it: ſituate on the River *Serchius*, not far from the mountains of *Luna*, whence the Country

Luca.

is at this day called *Lunagiana.* It is about three miles in compaſs, and contains about 24000 Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modeſt people, men of good judgement, and diſcreet, and by their wiſdoms have preſerved themſelves a free Common-wealth, notwithſtanding the attempts of more powerfull Neighbours: and they are very induſtrious alſo, and well ſeen in *Manufactures,* eſpecially in weaving ſilks and cloth of Gold, which they taught the *Florentines.* The City ſeated in a Plain, compaſſed with Mountains on all ſides except towards *Piſtoia*: ſo ſtrongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia, Canea* in the Iſle of *Candy,* and the Town of *Ligorn,* were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was leſs known) to be the four ſtrongeſt Towns in the *Chriſtian* World. The ſtreets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad free-ſtone, and moſt eaſie to walk on: the buildings very fair, built of free-ſtone alſo, and beautified with pleaſant Gardens. On the North-weſt ſtands a very ſtrong Caſtle, near which lyeth the Cathedral, ſtately paved with Marble, but very dark, as moſt of the *Popiſh* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the three great Captains, *Cæſar, Pompey,* and *Craſſus,* ſo pernicious to the *Roman* Republick. For *Pompey* deſirous to maintain his authority, *Cæſar* to get honour, and *Craſſus* to encreaſe his wealth, here united their Counſels: *Pompey*'s authority to be upheld by *Cæſar*'s Arms, and *Craſſus* his riches; *Cæſar*'s continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey*'s power, and *Craſſus* his money; and *Craſſus* his eſtate to be ſecured by *Pompey*'s greatneſs, and *Cæſar*'s military reputation. This done, they made a partition of the *Roman* Provinces among themſelves, aſſigning *Gaul* to *Cæſar, Spain* to *Pompey,* and to *Craſſus Syria:* which ſtrong confederacy was the cauſe of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Craſſus* being ſlain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cæſar* wanting a third man to poize the ballance, fell firſt to diſcontents, then to civil Wars, which at laſt made *Cæſar* Lord of *Rome.* Upon which meeting, and the breach which ſucceeded afterwards, was grounded that ſo memorated ſpeech of *Cicero,* that is to ſay, *Utinam* Pompeius *cum* Cæſare *ſocietatem aut nunquam iniiſſet, aut nunquam diremiſſet.*

But to return again to the affairs of *Luca,* in the declining of the Empire, it became poſſeſſed by the *Gothes,* from them recovered by *Narſes* with the reſt of *Italy.* And after this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface,* the Father of that noble *Virago,* the Counteſs *Mathildis:* who being deceaſed without iſſue, and the Emperours pretending to it as to an Eſcheat, the Citizens made a common purſe, and bought their Liberty of the Emperour *Rodolphus* for 100000 Crowns. Some ſay the money was diſburſed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithſtanding this purchaſe and their title by it, the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* ſeized upon it again; under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Caſtruccio,* who had made himſelf abſolute Maſter of it. By a *German* Garriſon there left, it was ſold to the *Genoeſe;* and having paſſed through many hands, the Emperour *Charles* the fourth got it once again: of whom they once more purchaſed their deſired Liberties, for 25000 *Florens* of Gold; and to ſecure themſelves thereof, demolliſhed the Caſtle built by *Caſtruccio.* But being not able to maintain it by their proper ſtrength, they have put themſelves under the protection of their potent Neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conduced moſt to their preſervation: and finding no ſecurity from *Genoa,* and as little from *Florence,* both which they ſeverally tryed; they put themſelves at laſt into the protection of the Dukes of *Millain,* and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain.*

The Territories of this City extend in compaſs eighty miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* it ſelf, being that of *Luna,* a Biſhops See; all the reſt ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good air, and very well peopled: which yield a Revenue to the publick Treaſury of 80000 Crowns *per annum;* and out of which the State is able to raiſe (if there be occaſion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horſe. A great ſtrength for ſo ſmall a *Segneury,* but all to weak to ſave them from the *Great Dukes* clutches, if he did ſeriouſly attempt to force it, and would venture on the diſpleaſure of the *Catholick* King: beſides that it is thought, that he receives more profit thence in gifts and preſents, by letting it ſtand as it is; than it would yield (conſidering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principal Magiſtrate is called the *Gonfalonere,* changeable every ſecond moneth; aſſiſted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every ſixth moneth alſo; during which time they live together in the Palace, or Common-hall. Other inferiour Officers I inſiſt not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Biſhops only, which acknowledge the Arch-biſhop of *Florence* for their *Metropolitan.*

The Common-wealth of GENOA.

Directly Weſt of *Tuſcany,* from which it is divided by the River *Macra,* lyeth the Countrey antiently called *Liguria,* now *Riviere di Genoa,* the coaſt of *Genoa,* becauſe it lyeth all along the Sea of *Genoa;* and by ſome *Il Genovoſate,* from *Genoa,* the *Metropolis* of this Countrey and common-wealth. A Common-wealth once of a larger reputation and authority, than it is at the preſent; commanding heretofore the Iſlands of *Corſica, Sardinia,* and the *Baleares,* in the *Mediterranean; Lesbos,* and *Chio,* with ſome others in the *Greekiſh* Seas; the Town of *Capha* or *Theodoſia,* in the *Taurican Cherſoneſe; Pera,* on the other ſide of *Conſtantinople;* and a good part of *Tuſcany.*

It was alſo then ſo ſtrong both in men and ſhipping, that they ſent ſeven ſeveral Armies to the wars

of

Liguria.

of the *Holy Land*: and in the ſpace of three daies only armed once upon occaſion of preſent ſervice, eight and fifty Gallies, and eight *Pamphyli* (being veſſels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and ſixty Oars a piece); and at another time, one hundred and ſixty ſix Gallies, at a ſudden pinch. By the advantage of this ſtrength, they beat the *Piſans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and the *Baleares*; compelling them to pay 135000 Crowns for their peace; they got a good ſhare in the diviſion of the Empire of *Conſtantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latines*; and held a very ſtrong hand over the *Venetians*. Theſe laſt they had once in ſo great an exigence, having vanquiſhed their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Iſland of *Chioggia*, not far from *Venice*; that the Senate ſent them a blanck Charter, bidding them write down what conditions they pleaſed, which ſhould be readily condeſcended to. But *Peter Doria*, Admiral of the *Genoan* Fleet, unſeaſonably proud of his advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his own diſpoſal. Whereupon the *Venetians* now made deſperate, aſſault the ſecure *Genoeſe*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they alwaies had the worſt, loſing their Iſlands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capha*, and *Pera*, with their Iſlands in the *Greek* Seas, to the great *Turk*; moſt of their holds in *Tuſcany*, to the *Florentines*: their power at the laſt being ſo broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to ſet out a Navy fit for any enterprize. But theſe misfortunes were occaſioned principally by their own diviſions; the City being miſerably torn in pieces by continual factions: firſt betwixt the *Dorii* and *Spinoli*, on the one ſide; the *Fliſci* and *Grimaldi* on the other, *An.* 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri*, and *Mollani*, againſt the *Salvatici* and *Embriaci*, *Anno* 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spinoli* and *Dorii* themſelves, *Anno* 1336. And fourthly, between the Nobility and the Commons, *Anno* 1339. Which Factions did ſo weaken them both at home and abroad, that having loſt the greateſt part of their Eſtate, they were fain to put themſelves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the reſt; having now nothing leſt them but *Liguria*, and the Iſle of *Corſica*.

1 *LIGURIA* hath on the Eaſt, the River *Varus*, riſing about the edge of *Provence*; on the Weſt, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tuſcany*; on the North, the *Apennine* hils; and on the South, the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. It is in length a hundred and forty miles, that is to ſay, from the Port of *Luna* in the Eaſt, to that of *Monaco* in the Weſt, which lyeth near to *Provence*; but the breadth not anſwerable to the length: and is divided generally into two parts or Provinces, the Eaſt, and the Weſt, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians* were a ſtout and warlike Nation, light and ſwift of body, well practiſed in laying Ambuſhes, and not diſcouraged by any overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the nature of their Countrey ſerved them very well, being rough, mountainous, and woody, and full of ſtraight and dangerous paſſages; and in this tract few open Towns, but many wel-fortified Caſtles, ſo that without much labour they could neither be taken, nor beſieged. And if at any time they were vanquiſhed in the open field, they had recourſe unto theſe Caſtles, and other Faſtneſſes, hemmed round about with Woods and Mountains; in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decenti*, *Oxilii*, *Eubariades*, and *Inganni*; all at laſt vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, after the ſecond *Punick* war: but not without much labour and pains, by reaſon of the Woods, Mariſhes, and Mountains, within and behinde which they retired and ſaved themſelves. Inſomuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty, to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quàm vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times after this, much moleſt the *Romans*, till at laſt *Poſthumius* ſo diſweaponed them, that he ſcarce left them inſtruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Maſters. In the diviſion of whoſe large Territories by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italie*; as it was alſo one of the ſeventeen Provinces, into which *Italie* was divided by the Emperor *Conſtantine*: *Millain* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kinde of men they were in the breaking of the Weſtern Empire, may be know by their actions both by Sea and Land, ſpoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandiſe than war, but moſt of all to uſury. A vice which the Chriſtians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the ſaying of a merry fellow, that in Chriſtendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when anſwer was made, that of all theſe there was rather to great a plenty, than any ſcarcity; he replyed, that if there were *Scholars* enough, ſo many would not be double or treble beneficed; if Gentlemen enough, ſo many Peaſants would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jewes* enough, ſo many *Chriſtians* would not profeſs *Uſury*. The women are very fair and comely, wearing for the moſt their hair in treſſes, which they caſt over their backs: they wear no upper germants but of cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under-garments of the pureſt ſtuffe. The women here are priviledged above all in *Italie*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publickly. Which liberty it is likely they gaine at ſuch times as the *French* were Maſters of this Eſtate; who do allow their wives ſuch exceſs of liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Curtezan*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the women of the Countrey or the City it ſelf, do abuſe this Liberty; yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be paſt all ſhame; as they eſteem the *Genoan* Merchants, (who make little reckoning of their promiſes, if not bound by writing) to be men without faith. Of which, and other things concerning this Eſtate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne ſenza legni*, &c. that is to ſay, *Mountains without wood*, *Seas without fiſh*, *Men without faith*, *and Women without ſhame*.

The Countrey, as beforeſaid, is very mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy rocks towards the Sea: ſo that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidſt thoſe hils are vallies of as rich a vein, as moſt others in *Italie*, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, Oranges, and the like fruits;

Genoa. with ſuch variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are ſeldome unfurniſhed of them in the moneth of *December*. It yeeldeth alſo great plenty of moſt pleaſant wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermozza*; and another which they call *Le lagrime di Chriſto*, or *Lacryma Chriſti*: this laſt ſo pleaſing to the taſt, that it is ſaid, a *Dutchman* taſting of it as he travelled in theſe parts, fetch't a great ſigh, and brake out into this expreſſion; How happy had it been with us, *Si Chriſtus lachrymatus eſſet in noſtris* Regionibus, if *CHRIST* had ſhed ſome of his tears in the Countrey of *Germany*! Their greateſt want is that of Corn, and therewith do ſupply themſelves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eaſtern part, are 1 *Sarezana*, a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Florentines*, and one of the beſt pieces of this Republick. 2 *Pontremuli* (*Pons Remuli*, as the *Latines* call it) of as great conſequence as that, but poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*. 3 *Lerigi*, an Haven in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. 4 *Seſtri*, a reaſonable good place, remarkable for as white bread, and as pleaſant wine, as any in *Italie*. 5 *Fino*, an Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, antiently called *Portus Delfinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatneſs; but they are ſet ſo thick, and intermingled with ſo many goodly houſes both on the hils and the vallies, that for the ſpace of twenty miles, the whole Countrey ſeems to be one continual building.

In the weſt part the Towns of moſt importance are, 1 *Monaco*, of old called *Monoecus*, and *Portus Herculis*, beautified with a commodious Haven: belonging not long ſince to the *Spaniard*, who bought it for 100000 Crowns of its proper owner; but of late gotten by the *French* under colour of a later Contract. 2 *Ventimiglio*, a good Town, and ſweetly ſeated. 3 *Savona*, taken by the *Genoeſe*, *Anno* 1250. before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the *interview* betwixt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, and *Lewis* the 12th of *France*, *An.* 1507. Who having been deadly enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniard*, met at this Town, and here moſt ſtrangely relied upon one another: *Lewis* firſt boording *Ferdinands* Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers dayes feaſting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his poſſeſſion, as Protector of the Eſtate of *Genoa*. Which kinde of *interviews* (I note this only by the way) as they chance but ſeldom; ſo when they do, they prove for the moſt part dangerous unto one of the parties: great enmities not being eaſily forgot by perſons of a publick *Intereſt*. Nay, that Notable Stateſman *Philip de Comines* utterly diſliketh all ſuch meetings of Princes, though in Amity and good correſpondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis* the 11th of *France*, and *Henry* of *Caſtile*: who meeting purpoſely, *Anno* 1463, to change ſome friendly words together, took ſuch diſlike at each others perſon, and behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an interview betwixt *Edward* the fourth of *England*, and the ſame King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Frederick* the Emperor, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; with divers others. His reaſons I purpoſely omit, as not pertinent to my preſent undertaking, and make haſt again unto the Town; which is about a mile and an half in circuit, and hath many ſtately buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: being taken from the *Genoeſe* by the *Viſconti*, and the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Millain*, from them by the *French*, and at laſt recovered again by thoſe of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yeelded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, *viz.* *Gregory* the 7th, *Julio* the 2d and *Sixtus* the 4th, which is as much as *Genoa* it ſelf can brag of. 4 *Nola*, upon the Sea ſide, a commodious Haven, 5 *Finali*, a goodly Port-town alſo, and very well fortified; honoured of a long time with the title of Marquiſate, one of the ſeven founded by the Emperor *Otho* (of which more hereafter:) but taken from the laſt Marqueſs by the Count of *Fuentes*, then Governor of *Millain* for the King of *Spain*, and garriſoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*; the poor Marqueſs being put off with an Annual Penſion, *Anno* 1602. 6 *Mileſimo*, a ſmall Town adjoyning, poſſeſſed upon the ſame right by the *Spaniard* alſo; who by theſe pieces hath a ſtrong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7 But the great Ornament of thoſe parts of *Italie*, is the City of *Genoa*, firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Janus* the ſon of *Saturn*; as others ſay, by *Janus Genius Priſcus*, an *Italian* or *Tuſcan* King. But by whomſoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miſerably deſtroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Annibal*, repaired by *Lucretius Surius*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whoſe cauſe and quarrel it was ruined: once again ſpoiled and waſted by *Rotharis* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, *Anno* 660. or thereabouts; but built more beautiful than before by *Charles* the Great. On his Foundation it now ſtands, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Liguſtick*, or *Ligurian* Seas, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an hill, full of ſtately Palaces, it giveth a moſt pleaſant and magnificent proſpect. It is in compaſs ſix miles, of an orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art; towards the Land, by Art and Nature, there being but one way to come to it by land, and that over ſteep and craggy Rocks. The ſtreets are narrow, paved with Flint, and moſt of them on the ſides of the hill; which is the reaſon that they uſe Horſe-litters here inſtead of Coaches, and moſt of the better ſort are carried on mens ſhoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs: which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada Nueva*, or the *New ſtreet*, reaching from the Weſt to North-eaſt, is of a very fair breadth: each houſe whereof is built with ſuch Kingly magnificence, that it is thought to be the faireſt ſtreet in the World. In all the reſt, the buildings for the height of two ſtories are made of Marble, curiouſly wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be uſed any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, ſafe from the violence of Tempeſts, and well fortified: ſo that the *Spaniards* uſe to ſay, that were the Catholick King abſolute Lord of *Marſeilles* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in *Italie*, he might command the whole World. After the re-edifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the people here continued ſubject to his ſucceſſors; till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of *Italie*, made them free, *Anno* 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318, when being ſhrewdly weakned in their Eſtate, they were fain to give themſelves to Pope *John* the 22d; after to

Robert

Corſica.

Robert King of Naples. But being ſoon weary of a forein Government, the people in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Bocca negra*, to be their Duke, *Anno* 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Guelſian* Faction, in the reign of *Charles* the 7th; under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many inſolencies, they put themſelves under the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, *Anno* 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of thoſe Princes, in great tranquillity, who never carried towards them any rigorous hand; ſave that once D. *Ludowick Sforza* exacted of them a great maſs of money. But, as the tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the houſe of a *Genoeſe*, and walking in an Garden with him, was ſhewed an herb growing there, called *Baſil*, which ſtroaking gently, he ſmelt thence a moſt pleaſing ſavour, but as unſavoury a ſmell, when he ſtrained it hard. The *Genoeſe* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Ludowick* will gently ſtroke the hand of his puiſſance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by obedience; but may chance to prove rebellious, if he do oppreſs it. But *Ludowick* being taken priſoner by King *Lewis* the 12th, they firſt came under the command of the *French* and then of the *Spaniard*; according as thoſe Nations had poſſeſſion of the State of *Millain*: and after many changes and alterations, obtained again their freedome of King *Francis* the firſt. Which being not able to preſerve by their proper ſtrength, they finally put themſelves under the ſhelter of the *Spaniard*, who is now their Protector, and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, *An.* 1600, a Million and a half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18 Millions, cut off by the Popes authority; that ſo the King might be indebted to that See; for moſt of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Maſters of this City. The ſame courſe of non-payment, the King took with the reſt of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the reſt, inſomuch that it was commonly ſaid in *Italie*, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange in one day, then *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter, had ever made good in all his Life. And thus you ſee this great City which commanded the *Ocean*, the Lady of ſo many Iſlands, and a great Moderator of the Affairs of *Italie*; fain to put her ſelf into the protection of a forein Prince; and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treaſure; which he continually raiſeth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a ſorry Pay-maſter. And if the Wars he had with *England* did ſo drain their Purſes (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*, that made him ſo indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no queſtion but the revolt of *Catalogne*, and the laſting Wars made againſt him by the *French*, in ſo many places, have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithſtanding this people do ſo thrive under his protection, and draw ſo great commodity from their Trade with *Spain*, that it is thought their private men were never richer, the publick Treaſury never fuller then it is at the preſent.

2 *CORSICA* is an Iſland in the *Liguſtick* or *Ligurian* Sea, oppoſite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is diſtant about ſixty miles; and lying juſt North of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, from which it is diſtant ſeven miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty miles, ſeventy in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longeſt day being almoſt fifteen hours.

The people are ſtubborn, poor, unlearned; ſuppoſed to be more cruel than other Nations, and ſo affirmed to be by *Cæſar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as ſome ſay, of the 52 daughters of *Theſpius*, who being all got with childe in one night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Iſland, after peopled by them. From one of theſe ſons named *Cyrnus*, the Iſland had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurreth in ſome old *Greek* Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annius* his Authors. And that of *Euſtathius*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corſica* from a woman ſo named, dwelling in the coaſt of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the firſt that diſcovered it. But theſe Originals I look on, the firſt eſpecially, as the worſt kind of *Romances*: the name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Punick Keranoth*, which ſignifies a horn or corner, by reaſon of the many Promontories with which it ſhoots into the Sea. *Corſica inſula multis promontoriis anguloſa eſt*, as it is in *Iſidore*, Lib. 14. cap. 6. And for the name of *Corſica*, I ſhould derive it rather from the *Corſi* by which name the inhabitants hereof are called in moſt *Latin* Writers) one of the two Nations of moſt note in the neighbouring Iſland of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi in ea populorum Balari, & Corſi*, as we finde in *Plinie*. Which *Corſi*, or ſome of them, being overborn by ſome new Invaders (which the Iſland of *Sardinia* was ſeldom free of) were fain to ſhift their ſeat, and came over hither.

This Countrey yeeldeth excellent Dogs for game, good Horſes, fierce Maſtiff; and a beaſt called *Mufoli*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Iſland, and *Sardinia* only, but there called *Mufrones*, or *Muſriones* (for I conceive they are the ſame under divers names) ſaid to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; which skin is of ſuch an incredible hardneſs, that the Beaſt being caſt headlong againſt a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimbly flies from his Enemy to his den.

The ſoyl by reaſon of the mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in is) it not very fruitful; producing Corn in leſs plenty, but the beſt Wines, and ſuch as the old *Romans* well reliſhed, in good meaſure. It produceth alſo Oyl, Figs, Raiſons, and Honey: the firſt three in a mediocrity of goodneſs, the laſt ſomewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholeſom. It aboundeth alſo with Allom, Box-tree, Iron-mines; and the tree called *Taxus*; whoſe poyſonous Berries though in taſte pleaſing, are much fed on by Bees; and therefore thought to be the cauſe of the bitterneſs of the Hony. In ſome few places where the Rivers have their currents, eſpecially towards *Liguria*; it recompenſeth, by its fertillity in bearing all manner of grain, the barrenneſs of the mountains. Which mountains cutting through the midſt of it, divide the whole Iſland into *Ciſmontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and *Tranſmontanum*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet ſo, that the people on each ſide call themſelves the *Ciſmontanes*,

montanes,

Corſica. *montanes*, and the other the *Tramontanes*. Both of them ſpeak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spaniſh*.

For Rivers, there are none of note, the principall of thoſe which the Iſland yeelds, being called *Gelo* and *Travignano*. And as for Cities, ſome of the Ancients reckoned 33, which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Caſtles only: there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies, the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of ſome Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Biſhops See. But now the place of moſt importance, is the Town of *Baſtia*, ſeated in the North-eaſt part of the Iſland, oppoſite almoſt unto *Alleria*; with a commodious Haven to it, and a ſtrong Garriſon to defend it: as being the ordinary ſeat of the Governor ſent hither from *Genoa*; and of the Biſhop of *Alleria*, who makes there his reſidence. 2 *Aiazze*, a reaſonable ſtrong Town, and a Biſhops See; and ſo is alſo. 3 *Nebbio* called *Cherſunum* by *Ptolemy*. Then there is 4 *Porto Vrechio*, built not long ſince in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony ſent from *Genoa*. 5 S. *Florence*, a Port-town in the Northern part in the midſt betwixt *Nebbio* and *Mariana*: and 6 S. *Boniface*, called by *Ptolemie Portus Syracuſanus*, juſt oppoſite unto it in the South corner of the Iſle; both of them places of good ſafety, and capable of the greateſt veſſels that frequent thoſe Seas.

Who were the firſt Inhabitants is not eaſily known. That the *Phænicians* or *Tyrians* had ſome footing here, is manifeſt by that of *Callimachus* an old *Greek* Poet, who calleth it φοίνισσα Κύρνος, the *Phœnician Cyrnus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which queſtionleſs he miſtook for *Tyrii*) caſt the *Phocenſes* out of this Iſland. But whether theſe *Phocenſes* did firſt inhabit it, or only had a Colony in ſome part thereof, is not demonſtrable from thoſe Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a conqueſt of it, and held it till the time of the firſt *Punick War*; when they were driven thence by the valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally ſubdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province, till ſome time after; when it was fully conquered by C. *Papyrius*, *A. V. C.* 541. This Iſland and *Sardinia* at the firſt being joyned together, and governed by one *Prætor* only; but afterwards made two diſtinct Provinces, immediately ſubject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*, and conſequently members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire, it became a prey unto the *Vandals*, who uſed to ſend their condemned perſons out of *Africk* hither, to fell Timber for ſhipping; the Countrey even till then being very much over-grown with Woods. Afterwards with the reſt of the Iſlands of the *Mediterranean*, it was under the power of the *Saracens*, againſt whom *Ademar* the Count or Governor of *Genoa* armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquiſhed them in a fight at Sea, but loſt his life in the action: which notwithſtanding the *Genoeſe* followed their good fortune, ſeiſed on the Iſland, and carried thence 13 of the Enemies Ships. The *Piſans* after this got poſſeſſion of it, but being vanquiſhed by the *Genoeſe* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that it hath alwaies followed the fortune of *Genoa*, ſave that it remained ſomewhat longer than that City did in the hand of the *French*, who in the year 1554, ſeized on it by the aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great diſhonour of Chriſtianity) they entertained in their wars againſt *Charles* the fifth; but in the end, reſtored it to the Common-wealth, upon the peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, *Anno* 1559. And for ſecuring of this Iſland to the State of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handſom project: imploying none but natural *Genoeſe* to ſerve in the Garriſons of the Iſland, the better to keep under this untractable people; and filling all their Garriſons upon the *Continent* with natural *Corſicans*, whereby the Iſland is unfurniſhed of its ableſt men, who alſo ſerve for *hoſtages* of the *publick Faith*.

Having thus took a brief view of the ſeveral parts and members of this *Common-wealth*, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. Firſt for the *Government*, the principal of their Magiſtrates hath the name of Duke; as *titular* as the Duke of *Venice*, but of leſs eſteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called moſt properly the *Majore* of *Genoa*. For thoſe two years he dwels in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *Germans* for the guard of his perſon; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth ſome reſemblance of a *Negative voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his houſe as a private perſon, but ſo, that during life he hath the office of a *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are aſſiſtant eight principal Officers, who ſit upon the ſame fourm with him, and continue in their office for two years alſo; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeurie*: but he and they in matters of moſt weight and moment, ſubordinate to the *General Counsel*, conſiſting of 400 perſons, all of them Gentlemen of the City; who with the nine before remembred to conſtitute the body of the Common-wealth. Under this form they have continued, ever ſince by the power and goodneſs of *Andreas Doria* (who might have made himſelf their Prince) they were diſcharged of their ſubjection to the *French*, *Anno* 1528, never in danger of relapſing to their former ſervitude, but in the treaſonable practiſe of the *Fliſchi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to poſſeſs themſelves of the *Principality* under protection of the French, had ſo laid their plot, that *Auguſtine di Fliſchi*, who was deſigned to be their Duke, had in the night time ſeiſed on the Navie, and ſlain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one Gallie to another to make ſure of all, ſtumbled and fell into the Sea; where he and his ambitious treaſons were both drowned together.

As for their *Forces*, there are within the *Signeurie* 10000 men ready to arm at any time, as they ſee occaſion; 25 Gallies alwaies ready in the publick *Arſenal*, and four continually at Sea for defence of their Trading. Sufficient ſtrength to ſave them from a petit force, though not to guard them from the power of a ſtrong Invader. But the chief ſtrength which they relie on is the King of *Spain*;

whoſe protection, though it coſts them dear, is worth their money; and they have proſpered ſo well by it, that notwithſtanding all the loſſes which they have ſuſtained, it is ſuppoſed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth (beſides the Treaſury of S. *George*, which is very rich, and managed as a diſtinct body from the publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no leſs than 430000 Crowns *per ann*.

As for the *Treaſury* of S. *George*, though it contain no part of the publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State diſtinct: yet is it of ſuch ready uſe, ſo able at all times to furniſh the Republick with vaſt ſums of money; that the ſecurity and preſervation of this Common-wealth depends much upon it. The Inſtitution and Adminiſtration whereof, together with the benefit which from hence redoundeth unto this Eſtate I cannot better repreſent to the Readers view, than in the words of *Machiavel* the greateſt Politick of his times; who in his Hiſtory of *Florence* hath expreſſed it thus. "*Poſt diuturnum illud bellum quod* Genoenſes *multis abhinc annis cum* Venetis *geſſere, &c.* After that tedious war between the *Genoeſe* and *Venetians* was ended in the year 1381. and that the *Genoeſe* found themſelves unable to repay thoſe moneys, which they had taken up of their private Citizens in purſuit thereof; they thought it beſt to aſſign their ordinary Taxes over to them, that ſo in tract of time the whole debt might be ſatisfied; and for that end allotted them a Common-hall, there to deliberate and determine of their affairs. Theſe men thus made the Maſters of the publick Taxes, elect among themſelves a Common-Councel of an Hundred; and over them eight Officers of eſpicial power, to order and direct the reſt, and to diſpoſe of the *Intrado*: which Corporation ſo eſtabliſhed they entituled S. *Georges Bank*. It happened afterward, that the *Republick* wanting more moneys, was glad to have recourſe unto S. *George*; who growing wealthy by the orderly managing of his ſtock, was beſt able to relieve them in their neceſſities: and as before they aſſigned their Taxes over to him, ſo now, *ditionem ſuam oppignorabant*, they *Mortgaged* alſo their Demain. So that S. *George* continually waxing richer, and the State poorer; this Corporation became poſſeſſed at laſt of almoſt all the Towns and Territories of the Common-wealth: all which they governed by their own Magiſtrates, choſen by common ſuffrage from among themſelves. It followed hereupon, that the common people bearing leſs reſpect unto the publick, applyed themſelves unto S. *George*: this being alwaies orderly and prudently governed, that many times inclining to Tyranny: this never changing Officers, or form of Government, that ſubject to the proud and ambitious luſts of each Uſurper, whether Domeſtical or Forein. Inſomuch that when the two potent Families of the *Fregoſi* and *Adorni*, contended for the Soveraignty in this Eſtate; moſt of the people looked upon it as a Quarrel which concerned them not: S. *George* not medling more in it, than to take an Oath of the prevailing Faction, to preſerve his Liberties. *Rariſſimo ſanè exemplo, &c.* A moſt excellent and rare thing (ſaith he) never found out by any of the old *Philoſophers*, in their *Imaginary* Forms of a Common-wealth: that in the ſame State, and the ſame People, one may ſee at the ſame time, both Tyranny and Liberty, Juſtice and Oppreſſion, Civility and Miſgovernments: This only Corporation preſerving in the Common-wealth its ancient luſtre. So that in caſe S. *George* ſhould in the end become poſſeſſed of the remainder of the Patrimony and Eſtate thereof, as it is poſſible it may; the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpoſe, that great Maſter of *State-craft*; a man of leſs impiety, and more regular life, than ſome of thoſe who have traduced him for an Atheiſt.

Here are within this Common-wealth,
Archbiſhops 1. Biſhops 14.

The Eſtates of LOMBARDY.

LOMBARDY is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Romandiola*, and the Eſtate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the Weſt, with that part of the *Alpes*, which divides *Italy* from *France*; on the North, (reckoning *Marca Trevigiana* within the bounds hereof) with that part of the *Alpes* which lyeth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, on the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Ciſalpina*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more anon; and took this new name from the *Lombards*, or *Longobardi*, a people of *Germany* (of whom we have already ſpoken, but ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Hungary*;) who coming out of *Pannonia* poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of *Italy*, but left their name to this Tract only. A tract of ground of which it may be truly ſaid, that as *Italy* is the garden of *Europe*, ſo *Lombardy* is the garden of *Italy*, or the faireſt flower in all that garden. A Countrey of ſo rich a mixture, that ſuch another piece of ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for fields and paſtures ſhaded with ſuch excellent fruits, for plenty of fowl, fiſh, corn, and wine, cannot be found again in our Weſtern World. So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain*, have ſtrived ſo eagerly and with ſuch effuſion of Chriſtian bloud for the Dutchy of *Millain*, a part only (though the richeſt part) of this goodly Countrey; and but a ſpot of earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing beſide the principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the name of *Gallia Ciſalpina*: called *Gallia* from the *Galls*, who being drawn over the *Alpes* by the taſte of the ſweet *Julian* Wines, in the time of *Tarquinius Priſcus* King of *Rome*, under the conduct and command of *Belloveſus* ſon of *Ambigatus* King of the *Celtæ*, ſubdued the Natives, and poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Countrey, from the Weſt parts of the *Tuſcan* Sea and *Apennine* hills to the *Adriatick*; and from the *Alpes* to the River *Rubicon* on the North-Eaſt, and the River *Arnus* on the South-Eaſt. *Ciſalpina* it was called becauſe it lay on that ſide of the *Alpes* which was next to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other ſide of the Mountains, which had name of *Tranſalpina*. It was alſo called *Gallia Togata*, becauſe the people of it being civilized, conformed themſelves to the *Roman* habit: that on the other ſide of the *Alpes* being called *Braccata*, becauſe they kept themſelves to their former Mantles (reſembling thoſe now worn by the vulgar *Iriſh*) which by the *Latines* were called *Braccæ*. For though the word *Bracca* in ſome of our common Dictionaries be rendred Gally-ſlops or Breeches (and poſſibly the word *Breeches* may be thence derived) which made me heretofore conceive that the habit of thoſe *Galls* was a kinde of *Trouzes*, ſuch as thoſe uſually worn by the *Iriſh* Foot-men: yet when I finde in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sago impoſita*, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Caſſocks, I conceive I had good reaſon to tranſlate it otherwiſe.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to ſay, 1 The *Inſubres*, inhabiting from the *Alpes* to the River *Arnus*, and conſequently ſpreading over the Dukedoms of *Millaine*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Mantua*, *Piemont*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Florence*: 2 The *Cenomani* who lay next the *Inſubres* poſſeſſing the greateſt part of *Trevigiana*: 3 The *Boii*, taking up the reſt of *Trevigiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and ſo much of *Romandiola* as lyeth on the North-weſt See of the River *Rubicon*: 4 the *Senones* who paſſing over the *Rubicon* inhabited the reſt of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Urbine*. Of theſe the *Senones* (or *Semnones* as *Ptolemy* cals them) were of greateſt fame. Theſe were the men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman* Armies at the battel of *Allia*, followed their victory unto *Rome*, which they ſacked and burned: nothing made good in all the City but the *Capitol* only, which alſo had been taken by them, *ni Anſeres diis dormientibus vigilaſſent*, as S. *Auguſtine* ſcoffs it, if the Geeſe had not been more watchfull then their gods, or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 1000 pound weight of gold to forſake the City: but before the money was received, they were aſſaulted by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town and vanquiſhed in a ſet battel, about eight miles off; who is therefore called *Romes ſecond Founder*. This happened *An. U. C.* 364. Vanquiſhed again at the River *Aniene*, by *T. Quinctius* the Dictator; and after that *An. U. C.* 404. by the ſaid *Camillus*, being then 80 years of Age, in the *Pontine* fields: they got the *Boii* to aſſiſt them: and after joyned with the *Samnites*, *Tuſcans*, and other Nations in a common war. But being for the moſt part beaten, and the war carried to their own doors a little before the coming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italy*, by *M. Curius* the Conſul: they were by him driven out of their own Country; and finally ſo ſlaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Vadimon*, *An. U. C.* 470. that there was ſcarce any left of all that Nation, to brag that any of their Anceſtors had ſet fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus deſtroyed, the *Romans* ſuffered the reſt of the *Gallick* Nations to remain in quiet, till the end of the firſt *Punick* War, when being grown of more ſtrength, and at very good leiſure, they took up Armes againſt the *Boii*, who fearing the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their aid both the *Inſubrians* and *Tranſalpines*, making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe. *An. U. C.* 528. Diſcomfited by *Aimilius* the *Roman* Conſul, near *Telamon* a City of *Tuſcany*, with the ſlaughter of 40000 of their men; they were ſet upon in their own Countrey ſhortly after by the Conſul *Flaminius*, vanquiſhed and mulcted with the loſſe of one half thereof: moſt of them after this diſaſter paſſing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Inſubres* and the *Cenomani*, being thus left unto themſelves (the remainders of the *Tranſalpines* excepted only) they were invaded in the next year after, (*An. U. C.* 431.) under the Conſuls *M. Claudius Marcellus* and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loſs of their Armies, and ſome of their beſt Towns, they did yield themſelves: the *Romans* ſo becoming Maſters of all this Country. And yet it was accompted a Province diſtinct from *Italy*, until the ſetling of the Empire in *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who dividing *Italy* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Ciſalpina*; that is to ſay, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Tranſpadana*: as afterwards it made up four of the ſeven Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of *Italy*, according to the diſtribution of it which was made by *Conſtantine*. How it came with the reſt of *Italy* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the reſt of the Kingdom; hath been ſhewen already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*, it did ſo far preſerve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperours were ſometimes crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*: as at *Aken* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a ſilver Crown, for the Realm of *Germany*; and with a golden Crown at *Rome*, for the ſacred Empire. But the Empire being weakned by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it; and parcelled in concluſion, amongſt many Princes, as it ſtill continueth.

The *Lombards* being maſters of it, and having given it their own name, divided it by the River *Po*, into *Longobardia Ciſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Apennine* Mountains: and *Tranſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alpes*: the firſt of which the old *Romans* called *Æmilia*, from *Æmilius Lepidus*, the Founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconſul of it. In the diviſion of *Italy* by *Aug. Cæſar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the name of *Italia Tranſpadana*, by which name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentiſſimum Italiæ latus*, the moſt flouriſhing part of all *Italy*. But this diviſion being long ſince worn out of uſe, and the whole Countrey being cantoned into many Eſtates, as before was ſaid;

we will conſider it at the preſent as it ſtands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Trevigiana*, deſcribed already, make up *Tranſpadana*; and thoſe of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Montferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Ciſpadana*.

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THe Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the Eaſt, the Eſtates of *Mantua*, and *Parma*; on the Weſt, *Piemont*, and ſome part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North, *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Inſubres*, originally a Tribe of the Hedui inhabiting in thoſe parts of the *Gallia* beyond the *Alpes*, which now make up the Dukedome of *Burgundie*: but croſſing the Mountains with the reſt of the *Gallick* Nation ſpoken of before, they ſetled here, built the City of *Millain*, and finally became one of the greateſt Tribes of the *Ciſalpine Galls*: from thence this Countrey hath the name of *Inſubrium Ducatus* in ſome of the neater Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanenſis*, from *Mediolanum*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1 *Padus*, 2 *Addua*, 3 *Ollius*, and 4 *Ticinus*; of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already; and beſides thoſe it hath alſo in it the Lake called anciently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Come* (from the City of *Coſmo* which it neighboureth) 60 miles in length.

The chief Cities and places of note are, 1 *Modoecum*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatneſs; the fame thereof ariſing from the Iron Crown (kept in a Monaſtery here) wherewith ſome of the Emperors have been crowned by the Arch-biſhops of *Millain*. A cuſtome taken up from the Kings of the *Oſtrogothes*, who are ſaid to have firſt uſed the ſame, in teſtimony that they had won their Eſtates by *Iron*. 2 *Pavie*, or *Papia*, ſeated on the Floud *Ticinus*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeaze*, the firſt Duke thereof; made an Univerſity by *Charles* the fourth, *Anno* 1361. and famous for the Battel, in which *Francis* the firſt of *France* was taken priſoner by *Charles* the fifth, *Anno* 1525. It is ſeated, as before was ſaid, on the Floud *Ticinus*, about four miles from the *Po* or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City ſo great a breadth, that the bridge over it is no leſs than 200 walking paces long, built of Free-ſtone, and covered over head with a roof ſupported all along with pillars. From this River the City it ſelf was anciently called *Ticinum*; and took the name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Patria piorum* (the two firſt ſyllables of thoſe words being joyned together) by reaſon of the many godly men it did produce. It lyeth in length from Eaſt to Weſt, a new fair ſtreet dividing it in the very midſt: on the Weſt ſide whereof are two handſom Market-places, and a ſtrong Caſtle built by *Galeaze* the firſt Duke of *Millain*; whoſe Tomb, together with that of *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, are here ſtill remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being ſo pleaſed with the ſituation of the place, that they made it the Seat-royal of their Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the beſt indowed in *Italie*, if not in *Europe*; the Revenues of it amounting to 300000 Crowns *per annum*. 3 *Como*, the Birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handſom Town, ſituate on the Sonth-ſide of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the name of *Lago di Como*: into which Lake and through it runs the *Addua*, and yet the waters do not mingle; that of the River paſſing over thoſe of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair houſes, and handſom Villages, which do much beautifie the place; and in the midſt thereof an Iſland called *Comacina*, in which there was a ſtorng Fortreſs in former times, where in the *Longobardian* Kings did preſerve their Treaſury. 4 *Lodi*, or *Landa* in the *Latin*, ſeated in a proſperous ſoyl, and bleſſed with a painful and induſtrious people. 5 *Novara*, ſituate upon an high hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families: of right belonging to the *Spaniard*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Maginus* wrote, conſigned over upon ſome conditions to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is ſituate within the Dukedom of *Mont-ferrat*; and ſo is 6 *Alexandria* alſo, once a poor ſmall village, known by the name of *Roboretum*, from a Grove of Oakes adjoyning to it: afterwards being raiſed to its preſent greatneſs, by the joynt purſes of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*, in honour of the Emperour it was called *Caſarea*. But in ſhort time theſe people ſiding with the Popes, drew on themſelves the anger of the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*: who having in a manner deſolated the City of *Millian*, the people thereof at the deſtruction of the City, retired to this Town; calling it in honour of Pope *Alexander* the third, whoſe part they then took againſt the Emperor, by the name of *Alexandria*, which it ſtill retaineth. It is now the ſtrongeſt outwork of the whole Dutchy, well fortified againſt all aſſautls and batteries, which may come from *France*. 7 *Marignan*, ſituate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers*, by King *Francis* the firſt; and now the title of a Marqueſs. 8 *Cremona*, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthy ſoyl; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this day; and of ſuch fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the name of *Cremona* the faithful. It was built in the firſt year of the ſecond *Punick* War, and burnt to the ground by *Veſpaſians* ſouldiers, after the defeat of *Vitellius* his forces: which defeat was given under the wals of this Town. For when *Antonius*, *Veſpaſians* General, firſt after his victory entered into it, he went into a Bath to waſh away the ſweat and bloud from his body: where finding the water ſomewhat too cold, he ſaid by chance, that it ſhould anon be made hotter. Which words the ſouldiers applying to their greedy deſires, ſet fire on the Town, and ſpent four daies in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Veſpaſian* it was

Millain.

again re-edified, and is now grown famous for the high Tower; from which the by-word, *Una turris in Cremona, unus Petrus in Roma, unus portus in Ancona*. 9 *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Dioceſe of *Italie*; called therefore Μητρόπολις τῆς Ιταλίας, the *Metropolis* or Mother City of *Italie*, as *Dionyſius* one of the Biſhops hereof is called the Metropolitain of *Italie*, by S. *Athanaſius*. At this time the faireſt and the biggeſt of all *Lombardy*, having a Caſtle ſo ſtrongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable. A City very populous, containing 200000 perſons; and of great Trade, here being private ſhops equalling the publick ſtore-houſes of other places; the people conſequently ſo rich, that the wife of every mechanick will flant it in her ſilks and taffeties. This City is ſaid to have been built by the *Galls*, 359 years before Chriſt. It is ſeven miles in circuit, and honoured with an Univerſity, wherein flouriſhed *Harmolaus Barbarus*, *Cælius Rhodiginus*, and *Cardanus*. Seated it is in as commodious a ſoyl as any in *Italie*, environed with water by two great channels; the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Teſis* or *Atheſis*: which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in ſo great abundance, that things there are at very cheap rates; and add much alſo to the induſtry of the inhabitants in the vending and diſperſing of their Manufactures, which are of great eſteem in moſt parts of the World. The buildings of the City generally are fair and ſtately, but three eſpecially commended for their magnificence; that is to ſay, the Caſtle, the Hoſpital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth uſe to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apoſtle was its firſt Biſhop, and S. *Ambroſe* one of his Succeſſors; that formerly their Biſhop ſtood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much priviledged as that; and that ſince thoſe times they have given unto the world four Popes, that is to ſay, *Alexander* the 2d, *Urban* the 3d, *Celeſtine* the 5th, and of late, *Grogory* the 14th.

As for the fortunes of it, it continued in the power of the *French*, and the Kings of *Italy* of that Nation, from the deſtruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of *Italie* fell from the houſe of *Charles* the Great, and came at laſt into the hands of the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, from whoſe obedience it revolted *Anno* 1161, in behalf of Pope *Alexander* the third; the Emperor divers times defacing the City, and the people ſtill miniſtring freſh occaſions of diſlike and quarrel. *Beatrix* the wife of *Frederick* coming to ſee the City, without any ill intentions to it; was by the irreverent people firſt impriſon'd; and then moſt barbarouſly uſed. For, ſetting her upon a Mule, they turned her face towards the tail, which they made her hold in ſtead of a bridle; and having thus ſhewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible affront, the Emperor beſieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the people to die without mercy, but ſuch as would undergo this ranſome. Between the Buttoks of a skittiſh and kicking Mule, there was faſtned a bunch of figs; one or more of which, ſuch as deſired to live muſt ſnatch out with their teeth, their hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing through the ſtreets. A condition which moſt of them accepted; and thereupon gave occaſion to the cuſtome uſed among the *Italians*: who when they intend to ſcoff or diſgrace a man, are wont to put their thumb betwixt two of their fingers, ſaying *Ecco la Fico*; a diſgrace anſwerable to that of making horns (in *England*) to him that is ſuſpected to be a Cuckold. The City after this, rebelling and again taken by the Emperor, he levelled it unto the ground, pulled down the wals; and cauſed the whole ground on which it ſtood, to be ploughed up, and ſowed with ſalt; ſeeming to thereaten by that *Emblem*, that it ſhould never be re-edified. Which notwithſtanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope with the help of theſe *Millaneſe* and the *Venetians*, had at laſt the better of the Emperor; whom he enjoyned, after a vile ſubmiſſion, to undertake a journey to the *Holy land*. Freed from the Emperor, they began to live after the form of a *Republick*; in which condition they continued about 56 years: when *Otho*, ſurnamed *Viſconti* (*quaſi bis Comes*, becauſe he was Lord of *Millain*, and *Angerona*) aſſumed the title to himſelf, and ſetled it upon that Family after his deceaſe; but ſo, that for the moſt part they were under the command of the *German* Emperors, and to them accomptable. *Galeaz* the firſt, ſo called (as ſome write) becauſe the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his birth, added to the Eſtate hereof the Cities of *Crema*, and *Cremona*. In the perſon of *John Galeazo* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready Money; which *John* increaſed ſo mightily in wealth and power, that he had 29 Cities under his command; and dyed as he was going to *Florence*, to be crowned King of *Tuſcany*. To him ſucceeded *John Maria*, and after him his brother *Philip*: who in his life had married his onely daughter (but illegitimate) to *Franciſco Sforza*, the beſt commander of his times; and at his death, appointed *Alfonſo* of *Arragon*, King of *Naples*, for his heir and ſucceſſor. Before *Alfonſo* could take any benefit of this deſignation, *Sforza* was quietly poſſeſſed both of the City and the loves of the people. This *Francis Sforza* (I muſt needs crave leave to tell this ſtory) was the ſon of *James Altendulo*, a plain Countreyman, who going to his labour with his Axe in his hand, whileſt a great Army was paſſing by him, compared the miſery and unpleaſingneſs of his preſent condition, with thoſe fair poſſibilities which a martial life did preſent unto him. And being in a great diſpute within himſelf what were beſt to do, he preſently fell upon a reſolution of putting the queſtion to the determination of the *Heavenly Providence*; by caſting his Axe unto the top of a tree next to him: conditioning with himſelf, that if the Axe came down again, he would contentedly apply himſelf to his wonted labour; but if it hung upon the boughs, he would betake himſelf unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in paſſage. He did ſo, the Axe hung upon the boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived ſo well in that imployment, that he became one of the beſt Captains of his time; ſurnamed *de Cotoniogla* from the place of his dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatneſs of his noble courage. By *Antonia* the Daughter of *Francis di Caſalis*, the Lord of *Cortona*, he was the father of this *Francis*

Sforza

Millain.

Sforza whom now we ſpeak of; who was ſo fortunate a Commander in the wars of *Italy*, that to oblige him to his party, *Philip* the Duke of *Millain* beſtowed his daughter upon him, and thereby a fair title to this great Eſtate, which he ſucceſſively obtained againſt all pretenders. In his line it continued till the coming of *Lewis* the twelfth of *France*, the ſon of *Charles*, and nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* the ſole daughter of *John Galeaze* the firſt Duke: who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* (betrayed by the *Switzers*) into his hands, carried him priſoner into *France*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the eſtate. Outed not long after by the confederate Princes of *Italy*, who were jealous of ſo great a neighbour; he left the cauſe and quarrel unto *Francis* the firſt, his next ſucceſſor in that Kingdom: in purſuance whereof, it is ſaid by *Bellay* a *French* Writer, that the uſe of Muſkets was firſt known. But *Francis* being in concluſion taken at the battel of *Pavie*, and carried priſoner into *Spain*; for his releaſe, was forced to releaſe all claim unto this Eſtate. A releaſe long before endeavoured by ſome *French* Politicians, becauſe the pretenſions hereunto had brought ſuch damage to that Crown: and no leſs eagerly oppoſed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the ſame reaſon that *Scipio Naſica* did oppoſe the deſtruction of *Carthage*, that is to ſay) becauſe it did not only keep the *French* Nation in continual diſcipline of War; but ſerved for a purgation of idle and ſuperfluous people. Yet notwithſtanding this releaſe, *Francis* renewed the War again; and laid ſiege to *Millain*, then under the command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a *Spaniſh* Garriſon: during which war, the wretched *Millaneſe* endured the worſt of miſeries. For firſt the Governor, under colour of Providing pay for his ſouldiers, got all the victuals of the Town into the Caſtle, to be ſold again at his own price: which many of the poorer ſort not able to pay, periſhed of famin in the ſtreets. And on the other ſide, his ſouldiers which were quartered in moſt parts of the City, uſed when they wanted money, to chain up their Hoſts, and then put them to a ranſom. Such as upon this barbarous uſage fled out of the City, had their Goods confiſcate: on which there followed ſuch a diſconſolate deſolation, that the chief ſtreets were over-grown with nettles and brambles. In this miſerable eſtate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperor having totally driven out the *French*, reſtored it to *Francis Sforza*; brother to the laſt Duke *Maximilian*, and ſon of that *Lodowick*, who to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, had moſt improvidently taught the *French* the way into *Italy*. But this *Francis* dying without iſſue, and the houſe of *Sforza* failing in him; the Emperor entred on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the ſame to his ſucceſſors in the Realm of *Spain*. This ſaid, we will ſum up the whole ſtory of this Eſtate, in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

1277	1	*Otho*, Archbiſhop of *Millain*.
1295	2	*Matthew*, Brothers ſon to *Otho*, confirmed in his command of *Millain*, by *Albertus* the Emperor.
1322	3	*Galeaze Viſconti*, ſon of *Matthew*, diſſeized of his command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperor.
1329	4	*Actio Viſconti*, ſon of *Galeaze*, confirmed in his Fathers power by the ſame *Lewis* the Emperor.
1339	5	*Luchino Viſconti*, brother to *Galeaze*.
1349	6	*John Viſconti*, the brother of *Luchino*.
1354	7	*Galeaze* II. ſon of *Stephen* the brother of *John*.
1378	8	*John Galeaze*, ſon of the firſt *Galeaze*, created by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *Ann.* 1395.
1402	9	*John Maria*, ſon of *John Galeaze*, ſlain by the people for his horrible tyrannies.
1412	10	*Philip Maria*, the laſt of the *Viſconti*, which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great power in ſwaying the affairs in *Italy*. He died *Anno* 1446; the *Millaneſe* for ſome years reſuming their former liberty.
1446	11	*Francis Sforze*, in right of his wife *Blanch* the baſe daughter of *Philip*, ſeconded by the power of the ſword, admitted Duke by the general conſent of the people of *Millain*; one of the Knights of the noble Order of the *Garter*.
1461	12	*Galeaze Sforze*, a valiant, but libidinous Prince, cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
1477	13	*John Galeaze Sforze*, privately made away (as is ſuppoſed) by his Uncle *Ludowick*.
1494	14	*Lodowick Sforze*, the ſon of *Francis*, and brother of *Galeaze*, who to ſecure himſelf of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the *French* into *Italie*.
1501	15	*Lewis* the XII. of *France*, ſon unto *Charles*, and nephew to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* daughter to the firſt Duke of *Millain*; vanquiſhed *Ludowick*, carried him priſoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himſelf.
1513	16	*Maximilian Sforze*, the ſon of *Lodowick*, reſtored to the Dukedom by the power of the *Switzers*, and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis* the firſt, Son-in-law and Succeſſor to King *Lewis* the 12th in the Kingdom of *France*.
1529	17	*Francis Sforze*, brother of *Maximilian*, reſtored to the Eſtate, and the *French* expelled by the puiſſance of *Charles* the 5th; who after the death of this Duke *Francis* (the laſt of the *Sforzes*) *Anno* 1535, united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of ſuch great extent, and power, as in former times; there being but nine Cities remaining of thoſe 29, which were once under the command of the Dukes hereof, the reſt being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*, the Dukes of *Mantua*, and *Parma*. And yet is this accompted the prime Dukedom of *Chriſtendom* (as *Flanders* was accompted the prime Earldom of it) affoording the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue, might it now clear unto his Coffers. But what with the diſcharge of his Garriſon-ſouldiers, the defraying of his Vice-roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Miniſters; it is conceived that he ſpends more on it than he getteth.

The Armes hereof are *Argent*, a Serpent *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; in his Gorge an Infant *Gules*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Saracen*, vanquiſhed by *Otho* the firſt of the *Viſconti*, in the *Holy-Land*.

There are in this Dukedom,
Archbiſhops 1. Biſhops 6.

The Dukedom of MANTUA.

THe Dukedom of *MANTUA*, is bounded on the Weſt, with *Millain*; on the Eaſt with *Romandiola*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Countrey about *Mantua* is reaſonably good, and yieldeth all ſorts of Fruits being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Paſtures, the very High-waies by the fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place; as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be ſo civil, and well-bred, as the reſt of *Italie*; childiſh in their apparel, without manly gravity, poor in the entertainment of their friends, and exacting all they can from ſtrangers.

The places in it of moſt note are, 1 *Mercaria*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2 *Bozilia*, a ſmall, but pleaſant habitation, belonging to ſome Princes of the Ducal family; built with fair Cloyſters towards the ſtreet, in which paſſengers may walk dry in the greateſt rain. 3 *Petula*, a ſmall Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born: but generally ſaid to be born in *Mantua* (*Mantua* Virgilio *gaudet*, as the old Verſe is) becauſe this Village is ſo near the City of *Mantua* (being but two miles diſtant) that his birth might very well be aſcribed unto it. 4 *Mantua*, ſeated on the River *Mincius*, now called *Sarca*; which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a paſſage unto *Venice*. By nature ſtrong, environed on three ſides with a running water, half a mile in breadth; and on the fourth ſide with a Wall. The Dukes to take their pleaſures on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucentaure*, five ſtories high, and capable of two hundred perſons (whence it had the name) furniſhed very richly both for ſtate and pleaſure. *Ocnus* the ſon of *Manto* the Propheteſs, the daughter of *Tireſias*, is ſaid to have been the founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mothers name; but I more than doubt it, though *Virgil* a Native of thoſe parts do report it ſo; this City being one of thoſe which the *Tuſcans* built beyond the *Apennine*, as the ſoundeſt Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whomſoever built at firſt) in the declining times of Chriſtian purity, for a Councel holden in it, *Anno* 1061, wherein it was decreed, that the chooſing of the Pope ſhould from thenceforth belong unto the *Cardinals*. A Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was firſt by *Conſtantine* the third ſirnamed *Pogonatus*, given to the Clergy and people of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict* the ſecond, *Ann.* 684. reſumed by *Charles* the Great, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the Colledge of *Cardinals*. But to return unto the Town; on the Eaſt-ſide of a bridge of about 500 paces long, covered over head, and born up with Arches, ſtands the Dukes Palace for the City; and not far from thence the *Domo*, or Cathedral Church of S. *Peter*. The Palace very fair and ſtately, but far ſhort for the pleaſures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Mirmirollo*, five miles from the City: which though it be of a low roof (after the manner of ancient buildings) yet it is very richly furniſhed, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens; able to lodge, and give content to the beſt Prince in Chriſtendome. Here are alſo many other Towns, as 5 *Caprana*, and 6 *Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be obſerved that *Mantua* followed for long time the fortunes of the *Weſtern* Empire; till given by *Otho* the ſecond to *Theobald* Earl of *Canoſſe* for the many good ſervices he had done him. *Boniface* who ſucceeded him, had to Wife *Beatrix* the ſiſter of *Henry* the ſecond; and by her was the Father of *Mathildis*, that famous Warrioureſs, who carried ſo great a ſtroke in the State of *Italie*. Being diſpoſſeſſed of her Eſtate by *Henry* the third, ſhe joyned in faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and diſmembred from the Empire many goodly Territories; which at her death (having had three husbands, but no iſſue) ſhe gave it in fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, *Anno* 1115. After her death *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that protection failing them, by little and little it was brought under by the Family of the *Bonacelſi*: who Lording it over a Free-people with too great ſeverity, contracted ſuch a general hatred, that *Paſſavino* the laſt of them, was ſlain in the Market-place by the people, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman; who preſently with great applauſe took to himſelf the Government of the Eſtate, *Anno* 1328, which hath continued in his houſe to this very day with a great deal of luſtre. Whoſe ſucceſſors take here as followeth, under the ſeveral titles of

The Lords, Marqueſſes, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

A. Ch.		
1328	1	*Lewis Gonzaga*, the firſt of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.
1366	2	*Guido*, ſon of *Lewis*.

Modena.

3 *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* II. ſon of *Guido*.

1369 4 *Francis Gonzaga*, ſon of *Lewis* the 2d. highly extolled by *Poggie* the *Florentine* for his Wiſdom and Learning; who valiantly repulſed the attempts made againſt his Eſtate, by *John Galeaze*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*.

1382 5 *John Franciſco Gonzaga*, created the firſt Marqueſs of *Mantua*, by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*.

1407 6 *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* III. ſon of *John Franciſco*, who entertained the Emperour *Frederick*, and the King of *Danemark*, with great magnificence.

1444 7 *Frederick*, ſon of *Lewis* the third.

1478 8 *Francis* II. ſon of *Frederick*.

1484 9 *Frederick* II. Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles* the 5th. with great ſolemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua*, 1530, and declared Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, in right of his wife.

1519 10 *Francis* III. ſon of *Frederick* the 2d. Duke of *Mantua*, and Marqueſs of *Montferrat*.

1540 11 *William* the brother of *Francis* the third, created the firſt Duke of *Montferrat*.

1550 12 *Vincent*, ſon of *William*, Duke of *Mantua* and *Montferrat*.

1587 13 *Francis* IV. ſon of *Vincent*, had to wife *Margaret* the daughter of *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a daughter named *Mary*; in whoſe behalf, the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the war againſt her Uncle, for *Montferrat*.

1613 14 *Ferdinand*, the brother of *Francis* the fourth, ſucceeded him in both Eſtates, notwithſtanding the oppoſition of the Duke of *Savoy*.

15 *Vincent* II. the brother of *Ferdinand* and of *Francis* the 4th.

1628 16 *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers* in *France*, by his Mothers line; and of *Mantua* and *Montferrat* by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third ſon of *Frederick* the firſt Duke of *Mantua*; ſucceeded on the death of *Vincent* the 2d: but not without great oppoſition of the *Spaniſh* Faction, who ſacked *Mantua*, diſtreſſed *Caſal*, and much impoveriſhed both Eſtates. But the buſineſs was at laſt compoſed by the power of the *French*, and the inveſtiture conferred upon him, by the hands of the Emperour.

The chief order of Knighthood in theſe Dukedoms, is, of the *The Bloud of our Lord JESUS Chriſt*, inſtituted *An.* 1608. The Authour of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Marriage was ſolemnized between his ſon *Francis*, and the Lady *Margaret* daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It conſiſteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan* Dukes are Soveraigns; and was allowed by Pope *Paul* the 5th, The Collar hath threads of Gold laid on fire, and inter-woven with theſe words, *Domine probaſti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, ſupporting three drops of bloud, and circumſcribed with, *Nihil iſto triſte recepto.* It took this name, becauſe in St. *Andrews* Church in *Mantua*, are ſaid to be kept as a moſt precious Relique, certain drops of our *Saviours Bloud* (thou canſt not, O Reader, but believe it) with a piece of the *ſponge*.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* alſo) are in circuit nigh unto thoſe of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much ſhort, which amount to about 500000 *Ducats* only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burdenſom to his ſubjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all ſides land-locked from navigation and traffick.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Croſs *Pateo Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, membred of the ſecond, under an Eſcocheon in *Feſſe*, charged quarterly with *Gules* a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom
Archbiſhops 1 Biſhops 4.

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THe Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoyning to them: both of them ſituate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Ciſpadana*; and conſequently partake of the pleaſures and commodities of it.

The people of this Dukedom are ſaid to be better natured than moſt of *Italy*: thoſe of *Modena* being quick in their reſolutions; eaſie to be pacified when wronged, and friendly in their entertainment of Strangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of preſent wits, and fit for any thing they can be imployed in: the women in both Towns of a mild diſpoſition, neither too courtly, nor too froward, as in other places.

The firſt and principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the name of *Mutina*, and famous in thoſe times for the firſt battel betwixt *Antony* and *Auguſtus Cæſar*; this latter being then not above eighteen years of age, and yet made head of a new League againſt *Antonius*, whom the Senate and people looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Hirtius* and *Panſa* then Conſuls; the fortune of the day ſo equall, that *Antony* left the field, and the Conſuls their lives; leaving *Auguſtus* the abſolute command of a powerfull Army, into whoſe favours he ſo cunningly did work himſelf, that he made them the foundation of his future greatneſs. It was at that time a *Roman* Colony, but being ruined by the fury of the *Gothes* and *Lombards*, was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, ſituate near the *Apennine*, in a very good ſoyl, and of indifferent fair buildings. In the diſtractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperours and the Popes, *Gnido* the Popes Legat, and then Biſhop thereof, conſigned it over to *Azo* of the houſe of *Eſte*, Lord of *Ferrara*, *Anno* 1304; the Pope himſelf conſenting to it, upon the payment of a yearly tribute of 10000 Crowns: ſince which time it hath been for the moſt part in the power of that houſe: *Borſius* the Marqueſs of *Ferrara*, being by *Frederick* the 3d. made Duke of *Mutina*. 2 *Reggio*, the ſecond Town of note, hath taſted much of the ſame fortune; at firſt a *Roman* Colony called *Regium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Gothes* when they came firſt into *Italy*; repaired and compaſſed with a Wall by its own inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canoſſe*. But being weary of that yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in thoſe buſtling times, they gave themſelves unto *Obizo* the Father of *Azo*, *An.* 1292, and after that in the year 1326 to the See of *Rome*. Paſſing through many other hands, it was at laſt ſold for 60000 *Ducats* to the *Viſconti*, Lords of *Millain*, *Anno* 1370, and in the end recovered by the houſe of *Eſte*, *Anno* 1409, and gave the title of a Duke to the aforeſaid *Borſius*, whom *Frederick* the third made Duke of *Modena*, and *Reggio*, 1452.

The ſucceſſors of this *Borſius* are before laid down in the ſucceſſion of *Ferrara*; who held the whole eſtate together till the death of *Alphonſo* the laſt Duke. He dying without lawfull iſſue, *Anno* 1595, left his eſtate to *Cæſar de Eſte*, his Nephew by a baſe ſon, called *Alphonſo* alſo; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement* the 8th. a war was threatned for the whole: but at laſt compromiſed upon theſe conditions, that the Church of *Rome* ſhould have *Ferrara*, with all the lands and territories appertaining to it, as an Eſtate anciently holden of that See; and that *Modena*, and *Reggio*, being *Imperial Feifes*, ſhould remain to *Cæſar*; but to be held in fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cæſar* to have leave to carry away all his moveable goods, to ſell ſuch of his lands as were not of the ancient domain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordnance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erected State, diſtinct, and independent of any other: each City being well fortified, and garriſoned, and furniſhed with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yield unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raiſe out of his Eſtates, I cannot poſitively determine: but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of *Ferrara*; I conceive they cannot yield leſs than 100000 Crowns of yearly in-come. The Arms of this Duke the ſame with thoſe of *Ferrara*, before blazoned.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE Dukedom of *PARMA* hath on the North the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*; on the South the *Apennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the Eaſt, the Countrey of *Modena*, and *Romandiola*, from which laſt parted by the River *Scultenna* now called *Panaro*; on the Weſt, *Montferrat*: ſituate, as *Modena* is, in *Lombardia Ciſpadana*; and much of the ſame nature both for ſoyl, and air, and other the commodities of thoſe parts of *Italy*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1 *Parma*, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the *Romans* at the end of the ſecond *Punick* War; as *Mutina* and *Aquileia* at the ſame time were. It is ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame name, which runneth almoſt through the midſt of it; beautified with very handſom buildings, and peopled by a race of ingenious men, whether they do betake themſelves unto Arts or Arms. The grounds about this City are of excellent paſturage, and yield great plenty of the Cheeſe which is called *Parmeſan*. 2 *Placentia*, ſeated on the *Po*, one of the firſt Colonies which the *Romans* planted amongſt the *Ciſalpine Galls*; and famous for the reſiſtance which it made both to *Annibal*, and *Aſdrubal*, who ſeverally in vain beſieged it: made afterwards the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Æmilia*, yet nothing the leſs beautifull for ſo great an age. The fields adjoyning have the ſame commendation with thoſe of *Parma*, for moſt excellent Cheeſe; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth, 3 *Mirandula*, a proper Town built in the time of *Conſtance* the ſon of *Conſtantine* the Great: the Patrimony of the noble Family of the *Pici*; (of which was *Picus de Mirandula* that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudataries to the Dukes of *Parma*. 4 *Briſcello*, called anciently *Brixellum*, not far from the chief City *Parma*; of no great note at the preſent time, but memorable in the *Roman* ſtory for the death of the Emperour *Otho*, who here killed himſelf. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by *Valens*, and *Cecina*, Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellius*, then his Competitor for the Empire; he rather choſe to fall by his own ſword, than that the *Romans* ſhould be forced, for his ſake, to renew the war. And this he did with ſo much honour to himſelf, that many of his ſouldiers ſlew themſelves at his *Funeral Pile*; not out of conſciouſneſs of crime, or for fear of puniſhment, but to teſtifie their affections to him, and to follow ſuch a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly ſay of him, as he is ſaid by *Tacitus* to have ſaid of himſelf, *viz. Alii diutius imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit.* 5 *Monticella*, in the middle way almoſt between *Parma* and *Placentia*, and oppoſite unto *Cremona*, a chief Town of the Dutchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

Theſe Towns (as others in theſe parts) have been partakers of the diverſities of fortune, as being (after the declining of the Weſtern Empire) ſometimes under the *Venetians*, moſt times under the *Millanoys*; and at laſt conquered by Pope *Julius* the ſecond in the confuſions and diſtractions of the Dukedom

Parma. dom of *Millain*, under the two laſt Princes of the houſe of *Sforza*. By *Paul* the third, being of the houſe of the *Farneſis*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* with their *Appendixes*, were given unto his ſon *Petro Alnigi* (or *Petrus Aloyſius*, as the *Latines* call him) with the title of Duke, *Anno* 1549. The Signeury of *Camerine*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbin*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a man of moſt vicious life, had amongſt other villanies committed an unſpeakable violence, on the perſon of *Coſmus Chirius* the Biſhop of *Janum*; and ſoon after poyſoned him. For which moſt deteſtable fact, he received no other chaſtiſement of his Father than this, *Hac vitia me non commonſtratore didicit*, that he was ſure he had not learnt thoſe vices by his example. But going on in theſe wicked courſes, he was ſlain at laſt by Count *John Aguzzola*; and *Placentia*, after a ſhort ſiege, yielded to Ferdinand *Gonzago* (*Vice-Roy* in *Millain* for the Emperour *Charles* the 5th.) conceived to be privy to the murder. *Octavian* the ſon of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had hapned, fortified himſelf in *Parma* as well as he could: but being hated by the new Pope, and diſtruſtfull, not without good cauſe, of the Emperours purpoſes, he had quite loſt all, if *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, had not taken him into his protection. For the Emperour Charles fully determined (notwithſtanding that *Octavian* had married his baſe daughter) to have made himſelf Lord of the Town: and the *French* King was loth to ſee ſo great a ſtrength added to the Emperours poſſeſſions in *Italy*. When the war had now laſted four years, *Philip* the ſecond which ſucceeded *Charles*, conſidering how neceſſary it was for his affairs in *Italy*, to have this *Octavian* his friend; reſtored unto him the City of *Plaiſance* or *Placentia*, and ſo withdraw him from the *French* faction, *Anno* 1557. Yet becauſe he would be ſure to keep his houſe in a perpetual dependence on *Spain*, he reſtored it not abſolutely at the preſent, but held the Citadel thereof with a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, till the year 1583: when in regard of the good ſervices, which *Alexander* Prince of *Parma* had done him in his Wars againſt the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces; he cauſed it to be ſurrendred into the hands of his Father *Octavian*. By which, and by his ſetling upon this houſe the Town and Territory of *Novara*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other perſonal favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it; the Kings of *Spain* ſeem to have given ſome ſatisfaction to this houſe for ſtepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*; to which they might have made ſuch a probable title, as would have troubled his Eſtate, had they ſtood upon it.

The Dukes of *Parma*.

1549 1 *Petro Luigi Farneſis*, ſon to *Paul* the third, made by the Pope, his Father, the firſt Duke of *Parma*.
1550 2 *Octavian Farneſis*, ſon to *Petro Luigi*, married *Margaret* baſe daughter to *Charles* the 5th; afterwards Governeſs of the *Netherlands*.
3 *Alexander*, ſon of *Octavian* and *Margaret* of *Auſtria*, one of the moſt renowned Souldiers of his time, Governour of the *Netherlands* for King *Philip* the ſecond.
1592 4 *Rainutio Farneſis*, ſon of *Alexander* and *Mary* of *Portugal*, eldeſt daughter of *Edward* ſon to King *Emanuel*; one of the competitors for that Crown.
5 *Edoardo Farneſis*, ſon of *Rainutio*.

Of the Revenues and Forces of theſe Princes I have little to ſay, but think them to be of good conſideration in both reſpects: their Territories lying in the beſt and richeſt part of *Italy*, and their Eſtates, environed by more puiſſant neighbours; which both neceſſitate and inable them, to defend their own.

The Dukedom of MONTFERRAT.

THe Dukedom of *MONTFERRAT*, is ſituate betwixt *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, on the Rivers of *Tenarus* and *Po*, on the Eaſt, and Weſt: extended North, and South, in a line or branch, from the *Alpes* to the borders of *Liguria*; of which laſt it was ſomtimes counted part, and called *Liguria Ciſapennina* for diſtinction ſake.

It took this name either *à Monte ferrato*, from ſome mountain of it ſtored with Iron; or elſe *à Monte feraci*, as ſome rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains; And to ſay truth, though the whole Countrey ſeem to be nothing elſe than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of ſuch wonderfull fruitfulneſs, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in *Europe*.

The principal River of it is the *Tenarus*, above mentioned, which ſpringing out of the hills about *Barceis*, a Town of the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principal Cities of it are, 1 *Alba*, called by *Pliny*, *Alba Pompeia*, ſituate on the banks of the ſaid River, in a rich and fertil ſoyl, but a very bad air: near to which, in a poor village called *Zobia*, the Emperour *Pertinax* was born. Who being of mean and obſcure parents, after the death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conſpirator to the *Roman* Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Souldiers, he was by the *Prætorian* Guards (hating their Princes for their vertues, as much as formerly for their vices) moſt cruelly murdered; and the Imperial dignity ſold to *Julianus*, for 25 *Seſter-*

Montferrat *tiums* a man. 2 *Caſel*, vulgarly called Saint *Vas*, from the Church there dedicated to Saint *Fvaſius* (or Saint *Vas*, as they ſpeak it commonly) the ſtrongeſt Town in all this Countrey ; well built, and peopled with many antient and noble Families, of which the Family of Saint *George* is one of the principal ; and made a Biſhops See by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, *Anno* 1474. It was in former times, the chief ſeat of the houſe of *Montferrat*, and for that cauſe compaſſed with a ſtrong wall, and a fair Caſtle ; but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and ſtrengthned with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, as the ſureſt Key of his eſtate ; in which new Citadel the Governour of the Province holds his uſual reſidence. 3 *Aique*, in Latine *Aquenſis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and medicinal waters. 4 *Saint Saviours*, where there is a very ſtrong Fortreſs, as there is alſo in 5 *Ponſture*, or *Pont di Stura*, ſo called of the River *Stura*. 6 *Oſoniano*, anciently *Occimianum*, the old ſeat of the firſt Marqueſſes of this *Montferrat*. 7 *Villa Nova*. 8 *Belzalo*. 9 *Liburn*, and many others of leſs note.

Here are alſo within the limits of this Kingdome, the Towns of *Aſt*, *Cherian*, and *Chivaſco*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the deſcription of whoſe Countrey we may ſpeak more of them ; together with *Novara* and *Alexandria*, appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have ſpoken of already. And hereunto alſo I refer the ſtrong (and in thoſe times) impregnable Fortreſs, by the *Latine* Hiſtorians called *Fraxinetum*, from ſome Grove of Aſhes near unto it : ſituate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the Sea, by conſequence better able to defend it ſelf and admit relief ; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens*, at ſuch time as they had footing in theſe parts of *Italy*. Firſt took and fortified by them in the year 891, recovered afterwards by the prowеſs and good fortune of *Otho* the Emperour, deſervedly ſurnamed the Great, about ſixty years after. Of great note in the ſtories of thoſe middle times. By *Luitprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence* ; by *Blondus*, and *Leander* near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvii* ; and finally by *Sigonius* in the *Coctian Alpes* : and ſo moſt fit to be referred unto this Countrey, though now ſo deſolated that there is no remainders of the ruins of it.

This Countrey was made a Marquiſate by *Otho* the ſecond, *Anno* 985. one of the ſeven by him erected and given to the ſeven ſons of *Waleran* of *Saxony*, who had married his daughter *Adelheide*. A Military Family, conſpicuouſly eminent in the Wars of *Greece*, and the *Holy-land* ; where they did many acts of ſingular merit : inſomuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, iſſuing from a ſecond branch hereof, were made Kings of *Hieruſalem* ; and *Boniface* one of the Marqueſſes, got the Kingdom of *Theſſaly*, and many fair Eſtates in *Greece*. But the Male iſſue failing in Marqueſs *John*, the Eſtate fell to *Theodorus Palaologus*, of the Imperial family of *Conſtantinople*, who had married the Heir-general of the houſe ; continuing in his name till the year 1534, when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the perſon of Duke *William Gonzaga* raiſed to the honour of a Dukedom, as it ſtill continueth ; the beſt and richeſt part of that Dukes Eſtate, and the faireſt flower in all his Garden. The reſidue of the ſtory may be beſt collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marqueſſes of *Montferrat*.

A. Ch.		
985	1	*Willians*, one of the ſons of *Waleran* & *Adelheide*, made the firſt Marqueſs of *Montferrat*.
	2	*Boniface*, the ſon of *William*.
	3	*William* II. who accompanied the Emperour *Conrade* the 3d. and St. *Lewis* of *France* to the *Holy-land*.
1183	4	*Boniface* II. ſon of *William* the 2d. his younger Brother *William* being deſigned King of *Hieruſalem*, and *Reyner* another of them made Prince of *Theſſaly* ; ſucceeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the ſon of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Hieruſalem* ; he was took priſoner by *Guy* of *Luſignan* : Competitor with him for that title.
	5	*William* III. ſon of *Boniface*, poyſoned in the *Holy-land*, where he endeavouring the reſtoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languiſhing Kingdom.
	6	*Boniface* III. ſon of *William* the third, for his valour in taking of *Conſtantinople*, made King of *Theſſaly*.
1254	7	*Boniface* IV. ſon of *Boniface* the third, added *Vercelli* and *Epor*[illegible]*ium* unto his Eſtate.
	8	*John*, ſurnamed the *Juſt*, the laſt of this houſe.
	9	*Theodore Palaologus*, ſon of the Emperour *Andronicus Palaologus* the elder, and *Yoland* his wife, daughter of *Boniface* the 4th.
	10	*John Palaologus*, ſon of *Theodore*.
	11	*Theodorus* II. ſon of *John*, a great builder and endower of Religious houſes.
	12	*Jacobus Johannes*, ſon of *Theodore* the ſecond.
	13	*John* III. eldeſt ſon of *Jacobus Johannes*.
1464	14	*William* IV. brother of *John* the 3d. founder of the City and Monaſtery of *Caſal*.
1487	15	*Boniface* V. brother of *John* and *William*, the two laſt Marqueſſes, inveſted by the Emperour *Frederick* the 4th. *Blauca Maria* the daughter of *William* ſurrendring her Eſtate unto him.
	16	*William* V. ſon of *Boniface* the 5th.
1518	17	*Boniface* VI. ſon of *William* the 5th.
1530	18	*John George*, brother of *William* the 5th. ſucceeded his Nephew in the Eſtate ; which he

held but four years. After whoſe death, *Anno* 1534, this Marquiſate was adjudged to *Frederick* the firſt Duke of *Mantua*, who had married *Margaret* daughter of *William* the fifth, and next heir to *George*. Whoſe ſucceſſors may be ſeen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

Montferrat

The Armes hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Eſtate,
Arch-Biſhops 0. Biſhops 4.

And now according to my method, I ſhould proceed to the deſcription and ſtory of the *Principality* of *Piemont*, the laſt and moſt Weſtern part of *Italy*. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Cottia*, and is now part of the Eſtate of the Duke of *Savoy*: we will defer it till we come to thoſe *Alpine Provinces*, which are next to follow. And ſo much ſhall ſuffice for *Italy*, in which there are, beſides thoſe of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.
Arch-B. 35. Biſhops 292.
Univerſities 17.
viz.

In the Land of the Church,
- *Rome*.
- *Bononia*.
- *Ferrara*.
- *Peruſia*.

In *Sicil*,
- *Palermo*.
- *Catana*.

In the Signeury of *Venice*,
- *Venice*.
- *Padua*.
- *Verona*.

In the Dukedom of *Tuſcanie*,
- *Florence*.
- *Piſa*.
- *Sienna*.

In *Naples*,
- *Naples*.
- *Salern*.

In *Lombardie*.
- *Millain*.
- *Pavie*.
- *Mantua*.

And ſo much for *Italie*.

OF

OF THE ALPES.

BEfore we can come out of *Italy* into *France*, we muſt croſſe the *Alpes*; a ridge of Hills wherewith (as with a ſtrong and defenſible Rampart) *Italy* is aſſured againſt *France*, and *Germany*. They are ſaid to be five dayes journey high, covered continually with ſnow, from the whiteneſſe whereof they took this name: that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latine* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Liguſtick* Seas, and croſſing all along the borders of *France* and *Germany*, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Cornero*, in the Province of *Iſtria*; and are in ſeveral parts called by ſeveral names, which we will muſter up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to the *Adriatick*. And firſt thoſe which lie neereſt to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cauſe called *Maritimæ* from their neerneſſe to *Liguria*, called by ſome *Liguſticæ*. 2 Then follow thoſe called *Cottiæ*, from *Cottius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: And 3 thoſe named *Graiæ*, from the paſſage of *Hercules* and his *Grecian* followers; of which, both amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians, there is very good evidence. 4. After we come to the *Pœninæ*, ſo named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latine* Writers call by the name of *Pœni*; or from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, worſhipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5 Next come we to the *Lepontiæ*, ſo named from the *Lepontii*, who did there inhabit: As 6 the *Rhæticæ*, which lie next to them, from the *Rhæti*, once a powerfull people of that mountainous tract. 7 Then follow thoſe called *Juliæ*, from the paſſage of *Julius Cæſar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*: and ſo at laſt we come unto thoſe called *Carnicæ*, extending to the ſhores of the *Adriatick*; denominated from the *Carni* who did here inhabit, and who gave name alſo to *Carniola*, an adjoyning Province.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe mountainous Countreys, beſides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Lepontii*, *Rhæti*, and *Carni*, ſpoken of before; were the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valenſes*, *Vacontii*, and divers others of leſs note and eſtimation: all vanquiſhed by the indefatigable induſtry of the *Romans*. After whoſe ſubjugation, and the ſettlement of the *Roman* Empire, theſe Mountains, and ſome part of the vales adjoyning, made five ſeveral Provinces; *viz.* The Province of the *Cottian Alpes*, containing *Wallisland*, and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rhætia Prima*, comprehending the *Griſons*, and part of the Dukedome of *Millain*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Switzers*; both which were members of the Dioceſe of *Italy*. Thirdly, of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, now part of *Daulphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, of the *Graiæ* and *Pœninæ Alpes*, and the greateſt part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including ſome part of *Savoy*, and moſt part of *Switzerland*; both which were members of the Dioceſe of *Gaul*. And fifthly, of *Noricum Mediterraneum*; comprehending *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts neer hand; which were members of the Dioceſe of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The people antiently, as now, by reaſon of their drinking ſnow-water, diſſolving from the tops of the hills, and ſometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nilus* are ſaid to do; were generally troubled with a ſwelling in the throat, which the *Latines* call *Struma*: being the ſame with that, which we call the *Kings Evil*; becauſe by ſpecial priviledge curable by the Kings of *France*, and *England*. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of theſe vaſt hills, the loweſt are the *Carnicæ* and *Maritimæ*, lying neereſt to the ſeveral Seas before remembred: The *Cottiæ* and the *Graiæ* not ſo high, but that the paſſages lie open for the moſt part of the year. The reſt, by reaſon of their deep and dreadfull *præcipices*, their tedious and ſteep aſcents, narrow wayes, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce whirlwinds, and huge balls of ſnow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains; are hardly paſſable by horſe, not at all by Waggon. And yet amongſt theſe dreadfull hills, there are obſerved to be ſome Vallies of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulneſs to the beſt in *Europe*; and for the ſweetneſs of the temperature going much beyond them. With ſuch an equal hand, doth the heavenly providence diſpenſe the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation; that plenty bordereth upon want, and pain on pleaſure.

And yet for all the difficulty and danger of theſe *Alpine* paſſages, covetouſneſs, or curioſity, or deſire of conqueſt, have found a way to make them paſſable in many places; and that not only for private and particular paſſengers, but for vaſt multitudes and numerous Armies, ſuch as thoſe led by *Annibal* and *Julius Cæſar*. But eſpecially the barbarous people found out five waies to break into *Italy*, which have been ſince much travelled by divers Nations; of which three be out of *France*, and two out of *Germanie*. The firſt from *France* is through *Provence*, and ſo cloſe to the *Liguſtick Seas*; eaſieſt for private Paſſengers, but too ſtrait and narrow for great Armies: there being many paſſages in the Countrey of *Nizze*, ſo narrow, that ten men may make head againſt ten thouſand; as in that called the *Pace* of the *Virgin*, for one. The ſecond is over the hills called *Geneure*, into the Marquiſates of *Saluzzes*, and ſo to the other parts of *Lombardy*; which was the way that *Charles* the eighth marched towards *Naples*; and by the *Italians* is called commonly *Strada Romana*, becauſe the ordinary paſſage betwixt *France* and *Rome*. The third way is over the greater *Cenis* (which ſome call the leſſer S. *Bernard*) ſo to *Aoſt*, or *Turin*; which (if we may believe Antiquity) was firſt opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*: who found the paſſages ſo cloſed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with fire and vinegar; whence that ſo memorable ſaying, *Viam* Annibal *aut inveniet aut faciet*. From the paſſage of thoſe Worthies, this tract, and that adjoyning were called *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pœninæ*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is moſt certain that he took in his march; then theſe *Pœninæ* muſt take name from the paſſage of *Aſdrubal*, or of ſome part of *Annibals* Army, which probably was too great to go all one way: or elſe from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, as before was ſaid.

The firſt way out of *Germany* into *Italie*, is through the Countrey of the *Griſons*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniard* ſeized into his hands. So that by the keeping of the *Veltlyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuentes*, which he alſo erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this paſſage: not only to the diſcontent of the Natives, but to the diſtaſt of his neighbours the *Savoyards*, and *Venetians*. The other way out of *Germany* into *Italie*, is through the Countrey of *Tirol*, by the Towns of *Inſpruch* and *Trent*. This paſſage is commanded by the Caſtle and Fort of *Eresberg*, ſeated on the confines of this Countrey towards *Suevia*, and from *Inſpruch*, is two daies journey diſtant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Proteſtant* Princes made againſt *Charles* the fifth, was ſurprized by Captain *Scherteline*, ſo to hinder the coming of the Popes Forces into *Germany*: for which the Emperor ſo hated him, that when all the reſt of that faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proſcript*, his head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking alſo of this Fort, and the Caſtle adjoyning, by Duke *Maurice* of *Saxony*, made the ſaid *Charles* then being in *Inſpruch*, to fly out of *Germany*; and ſhortly after to reſign his Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of theſe Mountains riſe the ſprings of many of the moſt renowned Rivers in theſe Weſt parts of the world; as, 1 The *Rhene*, which ſpringeth from two ſeveral Fountains, the one which they call the *Neerer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontia*; and the other which they term the *Vorder*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rhetica*; which meet together about a *Dutch* mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Griſons*, and ſo go on by *Conſtance* to *Germany*. 2 *Rhoſne*, which riſeth in that part of the *Lepontiæ*, which is called *Die Furchen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the head of the *Neerer* or *Hinder Rhine*, and ſo through *Walliſland* into *France*. 3 *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath its head in a branch of the *Cottian* or *Coctian Alpes*, heretofore called *Mons Veſulus*, and ſo through *Piemont* into *Italie*. Out of them alſo ſpring the Rivers of *Ruſſe*, *Durance*, and *Atheſis*; the firſt a *Dutch*, the ſecond a *French*, and the third an *Italian* River alſo; not to ſay any thing of others of inferior note. The great Lakes which are found in this mountainous Tract, we ſhall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countreys and Eſtates here ſituate, which bordering upon *Italie*, *France*, and *Germany*, and partaking ſomewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themſelves to be free and abſolute Eſtates, Supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of theſe *Alpine* Countreys, which are under the command of the *German* Princes, as ſome parts of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the reſt which belong to *Auſtria*, ſhall be conſidered in the Hiſtory of thoſe States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the reſt, which is as they lie intire together without intermixture, ſo they are abſolute in themſelves, and owe nor ſuit nor ſervice unto any other; we will conſider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* then, or the *Alpine Provinces*, call them which you will, are bound on the Eaſt with *Tirol* in *Germany*, and the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italie*; on the Weſt with *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and *La Breſſe*, parts of the Continent of *France*; on the North, with the County of *Burgundy* in *France*, and *Suevia* or *Schwaben* in High *Germany*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea. Called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, becauſe it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jour*. A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Baſil*, and not far from the *Rhene*, paſſeth Southweſtward by the Lakes of *Bieler-Zee*, *Nuwenburger-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almoſt unto the *Rhoſne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, from the County of *Burgundy*.

It lieth under the ſixth Climate, and ſome part of the ſeventh: ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is fifteen hours, and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soyl and People; which will beſt ſhew it ſelf in the Survey of the ſeveral Provinces, into which divided; that is to ſay, 1 the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2 the Signeury of *Geneva*, 3 the Reſorts of *Walliſland*, 4 the *Cantons* of the *Switzers*, and 5 the Leagues of the *Griſons*. Which ſeveral States, though they be reckoned to belong to the *German* Empire, and that the Biſhops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Baſil* are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diets*, nor are ſubject to the publick Taxes; nor comprehended within any of thoſe ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein ſpoken, partakes ſomewhat of all three, as before was ſaid: the *French* being wholly ſpoken in *Savoy*, the lower *Walliſland*, and generally by the *Switzers* bordering on the Lake *Lemane*; the *Dutch* being common to the greateſt part of the *Switzers*, the *Griſons* about *Chur*, and the upper *Walliſland*: and finally the *Italian*, uſed by the generality of the *Griſons*, the Præfectures appertaining unto them and the *Switzers* both, in *Piemont*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

The principal Souldiers of theſe mountainous Provinces, 1 *Rodolph*, Earl of *Habſpurg*, the Founder of the preſent *Auſtrian* Family. 2 *Thomas*, and 3 *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, this laſt ſurnamed *Charlemain* the ſecond. 4 *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes hereof, Commander of the Armies of the King of *Spain*. 5 *John Tzerclas*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, General of the Imperial Armies in the War of *Germany*. For Scholars of more ſpecial note for which we are beholding to theſe Countreys, we have 1 *Philip Theophraſtus Bombaſtus à Boenham*, commonly called *Paracelſus*, the Author, or *Inſtaurator* of *Chymical* Phyſick; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he ſaith himſelf: a man of moſt prodigious parts, and of no mean vices. 2 *Zuinglius*, one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3 *Muſculus*, and 4 *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his ſeconds. 5 *Henry Bullinger*, one of the ſame profeſſion alſo. 6 *Sebaſtian Caſtalio*, of as much Learning as the beſt of them, though of different judgement. 7 *Dan. Toßanus* the *Hebrician*. To which we may adde 8 *Calvin* alſo, who though he had his birth in *France*, had his being here; and never grew to any eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was ſetled in *Geneva*.

For matter of *Religion*, it is of a very mixt condition alſo, in all theſe Countreys: that of the *Romiſh* only having publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but ſo that the Reformed is tolerated in ſome parts thereof, eſpecially in the parts next *Dauphine*, to which the neighbourhood of *Geneva* gives a great encreaſe. In *Switzerland* there are four *Cantons* which are wholly for the *Reformation*, *viz.* *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Baſil*, and *Schaffhauſen*: Seven that ſtand wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, *i. e.* *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburg*, and *Solothurn*: in *Apenzel*, and *Glaris*, they allow of both. The *Griſons* are confuſedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the *Italian* Præfectures admit no other but the *Romiſh*. The cauſe of which diviſion came upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*, a *Canon* of the Church of *Zurich*: who being animated with *Luther*'s good ſucceſſe in *Germany*, began about the year 1519 to preach againſt the *Maß*, and *Images*, and other the corruptions of the Church of *Rome*. In which, his party ſo increaſed, that on a publick Diſputation which was held at *Zurich* the *Maſs* was abrogated in that *Canton* by the authority of the Senate, *Anno* 1526. and *Images* deſtroyed at *Bern*, 1528. After which proſperous beginnings, the *Reformation* began to ſpread it ſelf amongſt the *Confederates*; and had prevailed further both in *France*, and *Germany*, but for a difference which aroſe betwixt him and *Luther* about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which *Luther* did not only maintain a *Reall preſence*, but a *Conſubſtantiation* alſo in the ſacred Elements; which *Zuinglius* maintained to be only a bare ſign and repreſentation of Chriſts bleſſed body. For reconciling of this difference, wherein the enemies of both did extremely triumph; a conference was held between them at *Marpurg*, a Town of *Haſſia*, by the procurement of that *Lantgrave*, but without ſucceſſe: *Luther* profeſſing that he durſt not agree in that point with *Zuinglius*, *ne Principes ſuos interpretatione tantopere* Pontificiis *exoſa*, *magis inviſos redderet*; for fear of drawing too great hatred, on the Princes of his own profeſſion. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians* and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally caſt upon one another; to the great hinderance of the cauſe, which they had in hand: yet ſo that the *Lutheran* opinions got ground in *Germany*, the *Zuinglius* amongſt theſe Mountains, and in *France* it ſelf; and finally prevailed by the means of *Calvin* in many parts of *Germany* alſo. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the ſtory of thoſe Countreys, before they were divided into ſo many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitans hereof (mentioned before) were conquered ſeverally by the *Romans*: as ſhall be ſhewn in the deſcription of the ſeverall Provinces. Won from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*, in the time of *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour, they became a member of their Kingdome; except the Countrey of the *Griſons*, and ſome parts of *Switzerland*, which fell under the *Almans*: united afterwards in the new Kingdome of *Burgundy*, of the *French* erection, when ſubdued by that Nation. But *Charles* the *Bald*, the laſt of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, having united it to the Kingdome of *France*, divided that Kingdome into three Eſtates; that is to ſay, the Dukedome of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, and the Dukedome of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. This laſt containing the greateſt part of all theſe *Alpine* Provinces (except *Piemont* only) was by the ſaid *Charles* given to *Conrade*, a *Saxon* Prince; the ſon of *Wittikind* the third, and younger brother of *Robert*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*; by the name of Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane*, or *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. *Rodolph* his ſon and ſucceſſor, by *Eudes* the King of *France*, his Couſin-germane, was honoured with the title of King: to make him equall at the leaſt, with *Boſon* Earl of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, whom *Charles* the *Groſſe*, about the ſame time had made King of *Arles*. But *Rodolph* finding it offenſive to the *German* Emperors, abandoned it on the death of *Eudes*, and took to himſelf the title of Duke. The reſidue of the ſtory we ſhall have in the following Catalogue of

The

The Earls, Dukes, and Kings of *Burgundy Tranſjurane.*

1 *Conrade*, the firſt Earl of *Burgundy Tranſjurane.*

890 2 *Rodolph*, Earl, King, and Duke of *Burgundy Tranſjurane.*

912 3 *Rodolph* II. elected King of *Italy* againſt *Berengarius*; which title he exchanged with *Hugh de Arles*, who was choſen by another Faction, for the poſſeſſion of the Kingdome of *Arles* and *Burgundy*; on the aſſuming of which Crown, he reſigned this Dukedome to his Brother *Boſon.*

4 *Boſon* the Brother of *Rodolph* the ſecond, ſucceeded his brother in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*; as afterwards he ſucceeded *Rodolph*, his Brothers ſon, in the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy.*

965 5 *Conrade* II. ſonne of *Boſon*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, and Duke of *Burgundy Tranſjurane.*

990 6 *Rodolph* III. ſon of *Conrade*, who dying without iſſue, left his eſtates to *Henry* ſurnamed the *Black*, the ſon of his ſiſter *Giſela*, by *Conrade* the ſecond Emperour and King of *Germany*: united ſo unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of ſome following Emperours, it was cantoned into many parts; of which more anon. It is now time to lay aſide this diſcourſe as to the general condition and affairs of theſe *Alpine* Provinces; and to look over the particulars: beginning firſt with the eſtate of the Duke of *Savoy*, ſituate wholly in theſe Mountains, and lying next to *Italy*, where before we left.

The Dukedom of SAVOY.

THE Dukedom of *SAVOY* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italy*; on the Weſt, with *Dauphine* in *France*; on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; and on the South, with *Provence*, and the *Mediterranean.* The Countrey of ſo different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one character: and therefore we muſt look upon it in the ſeverall parts into which divided; that is to ſay, 1 the *Pricipality* of *Piemont*, and 2 *Savoy*, ſpecially ſo called.

1. *PIEMONT*, in Latine called *Regio Pedemontana*, becauſe ſituate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bouned on the Eaſt, with *Millain*, and *Montferrat*; on the Weſt, with *Savoy*; on the North, with the *Switzers*; and on the South, it runneth in a narrow valley, to the *Mediterranean*, having *Montferrat* on the one ſide, *Provence*, and a part of the *Alpes* upon the other. The Countrey wonderfully fertile compared with *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferiour to the reſt of *Italy*. It containeth, beſides Baronies, and Lordſhips, 15 Marquiſates, 52 Earldoms, 160 Caſtles or walled places: and is ſo populous withall, that once a *Piemonteſe* being demanded the extent of his Countrey, made anſwer, that it was *a City of 300 miles compaſs.*

The principal Cities of it are, 1 *Turin*, called of old *Auguſta Taurinorum*, becauſe the head City of the *Taurini*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract: from which *Taurini* it deriveth the name of *Turin*, and not as ſome conceive from the River *Duria*, on whoſe banks it ſtandeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of *Savoy*, (who is the Lord of this Countrey) the See of an Arch-biſhop, and an Univerſity, in which the renowned Scholar *Eraſmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is ſituate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of *Italy*; for which cauſe the *Romans* ſent a Colony hither, and the *Lombards* made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoyning to it is a Park of the Dukes of *Savoy*, watered with the *Duria*, *Sture*, and *Po*, ſix miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleaſant Fountains; which make it one of the ſweeteſt ſituations in *Europe*. 2 *Mondeni*, ſeated on the ſwelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of *Savoy* built a Church and Chappel to the bleſſed Virgin; intended for the burial place of the Dukall Family. It is the beſt peopled Town for the bigneſs of it, of any in *Italy*. 3 *Auguſta Pratoria*, now called *Aoſt*, ſituate in the furtheſt corner of *Italy* to the North and Weſt. 4 *Vercelli*, a ſtrong Town bordering upon *Millain*, to which it formerly belonged; and was given firſt in Dower with *Blanch* the daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, to *Amadee* the third Duke of *Savoy*; antiently the chief Town of the *Libyci*, who together with the *Salaſſi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Countrey. 5 *Inuria* called by *Ptolemy Eporedia*, ſituate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Epiſcopal City. 6. *Nicaa*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from *Provence*; beautified with a Cathedral Church, the Biſhops Palace, a Monaſtery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place ſo naturally ſtrong, that when as yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it reſiſted the whole Forces of *Barbaroſſa* the *Turkiſh* Admiral, *An.* 1543. lying before it with a Navy of two hundred ſayl, and battering it continually with incredible fury. Firſt fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occaſion of ſome words of the Duke of *Burbon*; who paſſing this way with his Army, *Behold*, ſaith he, *a ſituation of which they know not the importance*: the Citadel being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and garriſoned for the moſt part with 400 ſouldiers. 7 *Suſe*, ſeated in the ordinary thorough-fare betwixt *France* and *Italy*, called of old *Segovio*; and honoured in thoſe times with a ſtately Sepulchre of K. *Cottius*, King of the *Allobroges*:

Savoy. one the ſeven Marquiſates in the middle times erected by the Emperour *Otho*. 8 *Pignarolle*, fortified with a Caſtle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoyning vallies; ſold by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to *Lewis* the 13th of *France*, together with the Fort and Valley of *Perouſa*, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the ſum of 44000 Crowns, to be for ever in the propriety and Soveraignty of the Kings of *France*; and thereby giving to the *French* commodious paſs from *Daulphine* into *Italy* upon all occaſions, and no ſmall influence and command on his own Eſtates. 9 *Quiers*, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10 *Ville Franche*, a place of great ſtrength, more towards the Sea. 11 *Savillan*, ſeated in ſo pleaſant a Countrey, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpoſe to ſettle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Eſtate. 12 *Buſque*, a Marquiſate, another of the ſeven erected for the ſons of *Waleran*. 13 Hereunto we may adde the City of *Aſt* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) antiently a Colony of the *Romans*; and now to be compared, for the greatneſs and beauty of her Palaces, to the moſt ſtately Cities of *Lombardy*; ſituate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarus*, very rich, and populous.

Here alſo in this countrey the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes* (of the ſame erection as the former, but a greater Eſtate) the cauſe of many differences betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The principal Town whereof is called alſo *Saluzze* (from the *Salaſſi* queſtionles who dwelt hereabouts) ſeated about the Spring of the River *Po*: reaſonably big, and fortified with a very large Caſtle, fitted with rooms for all uſes, and for every ſeaſon. 2 *Carmanlogla*, which gave name to that famous Captain who carryed ſo great a ſway in the Wars of *Italy*. A Town ſo fortified and ſtored with all ſorts of Ammunition; that it is thought impregnable. 3 *Ravelle*, a well fortified place. 4 *Doglian*, the thorowfare for the greateſt part of the trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont*, and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms hereof *Argent*, a Chief *Gules*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Countrey were the *Salaſſi*, *Lybici*, and *Taurini*, as before is ſaid; all vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, and their Countrey made a Province of that Empire, by the name of the Province of the *Alpes Cottia*, in the time of *Nero*; of which *Genoa* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. The preſent are deſcended, for the moſt part, of the *Heruli*, who under the Conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italy*; whereof he was proclaimed King by the *Romans* themſelves, but *Odoacer* being vanquiſhed near *Verona*, by *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, the *Heruli* had this Countrey allotted to them by the Conquerour, for their habitation. They had not held it long when ſubdued by the *Lombards*, of whoſe Kingdome it remained a part, till given by *Aripert* the ſeventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of *Rome*; affirmed by ſome to be the firſt *temporal* Eſtate, that ever the Popes of *Rome* had poſſeſſion of. By lying far off, and the donation not confirmed by the Kings ſucceeding, the Popes got little by the gift: ſo that in the ſubverting of the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of *Italy*, of the houſe of *Charles* the *Great*; and afterwards of his ſucceſſors in the Empire, by whom diſtracted into ſeveral Eſtates and Principalities. *Thomas*, and *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210. the later in the year 1256. Since that time the firſt ſonne of *Savoy* is ſtyled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, containing almoſt all the reſt, was added by the marriage of a daughter of this Marquiſate, with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, *Anno* 1481. Of which marriage though there was no iſſue, yet the *Savoyard* alwayes held it as their own, till the *French* upon as good a title poſſeſſed themſelves of it: Recovered by the *Savoyard*, *Anno* 1588. the civil Wars then hot in *France*. But finding that he was not able to hold it againſt *Henry* the fourth (who looked upon it as a door to let his forces into *Italy*) he compounded with him, *An.* 1600. the Countrey of *Breſſe* being given in exchange for this Marquiſate: Of which, together with the reſidue of *Piemont*, and ſome pieces of importance in the Dukedom of *Montferrat*; that noble Family of *Savoy* doth now ſtand poſſeſſed.

The Arms of this Principality are *Gules*, a Croſſe *Argent*, charged with a Label of three points *Azure*.

2 *SAVOY*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Walliſland*, and part of *Piemont* ? on the weſt, with *Daulphine*, and *La Breſſe*; on the South, with ſome parts of *Daulphine* only; and on the North with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Countrey is for the moſt part hilly and Mountainous, overſpread with the branches of the *Alpes*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill-countreys are, but not very fruitfull; except ſome of the vallies which lie neereſt to the Weſtern Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian* Lake, lying towards *Geneva*. By reaſon of the difficult and narrow wayes, and thoſe full of Thieves, it was once called *Malvoy*: but the paſſages being opened by the coſt and induſtry of the people, and purged of Thieves by good Laws and exemplary juſtice, it gained the name of *Savoy*, or *Salvoy*, *quaſi ſalva via*: as *Maleventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like conſiderations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latines* of theſe later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the antient Writers; who knew it by no other name then that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The Common people are naturally very dull and ſimple, ſo groſs of underſtanding for all their continual converſe with other Nations, who take this Countrey in their way to *Italy*; that they believe the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greateſt Prince in the World: and ſo unwarlike, that a few men of another Nation well trained and diſciplined, will make a great number of them flie. But on the other ſide, the Gentry are of a very pleaſing converſation, civil, ingenious, and affecting all good exerciſe: ſo as there may be daily ſeen in *Chamberey* as much good company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the beſt Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both ſorts taking in *Piemont* (who are not intereſſed in the firſt part of this character) are thought to be 800000.

The chief Cities are, 1 *Chambery*, ſituate on the banks of the River *L'Arch*, in a very pleaſant valley, compaſſed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedom on that ſide of the *Alpes*; honoured with the Dukes Court, when he reſideth in this Countrey, the ordinary ſeat of Juſtice; and many neat houſes which belong to the Gentry, fortified of late with a ſtrong Caſtle and ſufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received *An.* 1600. when it was forced by King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, in his wars with *Savoy*. 2 *Tarentuiſe*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate in the midſt of the Mountains; heretefore the *Metropolis* of the Province of the *Alps Graia*, and *Pœnina*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum* from the *Centrones*, who inhabited about this Tract. 3 *Lunebourg*, in the Countrey of the old *Medulli*, betwixt which and *Suſe*, a Town of *Piedmont*, lyeth the moſt ordinary road betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4 *Aque belle*, ſituate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5 *Rapaille*, a ſweet and fruitful ſituation, on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signeury of *Foſſigny*: where *Amadee* the firſt Duke of *Savoy* having given over his Eſtate, lived a Monaſtick life, and was thence choſen Pope by the Fathers of *Baſil*, *Anno* 1440. 6 *Nun* or *Nevidum* (by ſome of the old *Latines* called *Noviodunum*) an ancient City, laid deſolate, in, or before the time of *Julius Caſar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Veſpaſian*; the ſeat of late times of the Biſhops of *Geneva*, ſince their expulſion out of that City. 7 *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhoſne*. 8 *Albon* founded about the year 456. 9 *Conſtans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwiſe of ſmall importance. 10 *Annunciada*, not much obſervable, but for being the ſeat or place of Solemnities, for an order of Knights called by that name. 11 *Maurienne*, or St. *John de Maurienne*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate in a valley of the *Alpes*, ſo called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt hereabouts; from whence the Princes of this houſe were firſt intituled Earls of *Maurienne* onely. 12 *Charboneers*, a well fortified place. Here is alſo the ſtrong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four moneths againſt *Henry* the fourth, and many thouſand ſhot of *French* Cannon, *Anno* 1600. and the impregnable fortreſſe of St. *Catharines*, which yet ſubmitted to that King; the Government whereof being denyed to the Duke of *Byron*, plunged him in diſcontent and treaſon, to the loſſe of his head.

The many Tribes in and about this mountainous Countrey, of which we have mentioned ſome before, paſs generally in moſt ancient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*, becauſe the moſt powerful of them all. Of whom the firſt mention which we find in ſtory, is the Atonement made by *Annibal* in his paſſage this way, between *Bruncus* and his Brother, about the ſucceſſion of the Kingdom. Afterwards ſiding with the *Salii* a *Gallick* Nation, in a War againſt *Marſeilles*, then a confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their backs: by whom they were in fine ſubdued, with the loſſe of no leſſe then 120000 *Galls*, under the ſeveral conducts of *Cn. Domitius*, *Ænobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*, by which laſt *Bituitus*, or *Bitultus* King of the *Auverni*, one of the confederates, was led in triumph unto *Rome*. The Countrey and people at that time were much a like, *Cœlum atrox pervicaci ingenio*, a ſharp air and a ſtubborn people, as it is in *Florus*; not without commendation in the following Ages, for diſcovering *Catilines* conſpiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruine. After which we find *Coctius* one of the Kings of theſe *Allobroges*, to have been in ſpecial favour with *Auguſtus Caſar*; affirmed to be the founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous tract, whence it had the name of *Alpes Coctia*, and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperour *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdome of *Burgundy*; and paſſed with other rights of that falling Kingdome to the Emperours of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the laſt King. To them it did continue ſubject till the year 999. in which *Berald* of *Saxony*, brother to *Otho* the third, for killing *Mary* the laſcivious wife of his Unkle, fled from *Germany*, and ſetled himſelf here, neer *France*. His ſonne *Humbert* (ſirnamed *Blanchmanis*, that is, *White-hand*) was by the ſpecial favour of the Emperour *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Countrey, *Anno* 1027. And by his marriage with *Adela*, the daughter and their of the Marqueſſe of *Suſe*, added that noble Marquiſate (one of the ſeven erected by *Otho* the ſecond, and given amongſt the ſons of *Waleran*) unto his eſtate. *Humbert* the ſecond gained by conqueſt the Town and Territory of *Tarentaiſe*; as *Ame* or *Amadee* the third did the Counties of *Vaulx* and *Chablais*, *Anno* 1240. or thereabouts. *Ame* or *Amadee* the fourth, by the Marriage of *Sibille* daughter and ſole heir of *Vlric*, Earl of *Breſſe*, added that Earldome to his houſe: as *Ame* or *Amadee* the ninth did the Town and Territory of *Vercelli*, upon the contract betwixt *Philibert* his ſon and Succeſſor, with *Blanch*, the baſe daughter of *Philip Maria*, Duke of *Millian*, who afterwards was married unto *Francis Sforza*. *Ame* or *Amadee* the ſecond Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperour *Henry* the fifth inveſted with the title of the Earl of *Savoy*; and *Amadee* the eighth, created the firſt Duke, by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, *Anno* 1397. But the main improvement of the power and patrimony of this Houſe, came by the valour and good ſucceſſe of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210, and *Peter* one of his ſonnes and ſucceſſors (for his manifold Conqueſts, ſurnamed *Charlemain* the *Junior*) *Anno* 1256 by conqueſt got a great part of *Piedmont*, to which the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, containing almoſt all the reſt, was united by a marriage of the daughter of the Marquiſate, to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*; And though he died without iſſue by her, *Anno* 1489. yet his ſucceſſors ſtill kept the poſſeſſion of it, till *Francis* the firſt, pretending ſome title to it in the right of his Mother (a daughter of the houſe of *Savoy*) laid it unto the Crown of *France*: from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the *French* Civil Warres, *Anno* 1588. and now is peaceably poſſeſſed. The Countrey of *Breſſe* being given to the *French*, for their pretenſion to the Marquiſate, *Anno* 1600. Theſe Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the faction of *Spain*, eſpecially ſince the *French* Kings took in the leſſer States bordering on them, as *Burgundy*, *Bretagne*, *Savoy.*

&c. *Charles* the third ſided ſo conſtantly with the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, that denying *Francis* the firſt a paſſage for his Army through the Countrey into *Italy*; he was by the ſaid King diſpoiled of his Eſtates, *Anno* 1536. The Emperour to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the *French* encountring his force in the open field, vanquiſhed them, with the ſlaughter of fifteen thouſand of his men. In the year 1558. peace being made between *Henry* and *Philip*, ſucceſſors to thoſe great Princes; *Emanuel Philibert*, ſon to Duke *Charles*, was reſtored to all his Rights. His ſonne and ſucceſſor having married *Catharine* the daughter of King *Philip* the ſecond depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithſtanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his ſonnes receiving thence many great penſions and preferments. For at the ſame time Prince *Amadee Victorio* the ſecond ſonne, during the life of *Philip* his elder Brother, was chief Commander of that Kings Gallies; and had in penſion an hundred thouſand Crowns *per annum*: *Philibert* the third ſonne, was Vice-roy of *Sicil*; *Maurice* the fourth a Cardinal, had a moity of the Revenues of the Archbiſhoprick of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomazo*, though then young, had his penſions onely. But *Amadee Victorio* who ſucceeded him, marrying Madam *Chriſtiane*, a daughter of King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, changed his dependances; and held more cloſe to *France* then any of his predeceſſors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Eſtates, future times will ſhew. For leaving his Heir a *Minor*, in the hands of his Mother; the *French* upon pretence of preſerving the Countrey from him, againſt the incroachments of the *Spaniard*, have made themſelves maſters of the greateſt part of it; which when they will reſtore to the proper owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

Earles and Dukes of *Savoy*.

999	1	*Beral of Saxony*.
1027	2	*Humbert*, the firſt Earl of *Murienne*.
1048	3	*Ame*, or *Amadee* I.
1076	4	*Humbert*, II.
1109	5	*Ame*, or *Amadee* II. the firſt Earl of *Savoy*.
1154	6	*Humbert* III.
1201	7	*Thomas*, ſon of *Humbert*.
1234	8	*Amee*, or *Amedee* III.
1246	9	*Boniface*, ſon of *Ame* III.
1256	10	*Peter*, a younger ſon of Earl *Thomas*, called *Charlemagne* the *leſs*, won *Turin*, *Vaulx*, &c.
1268	11	*Philip*, brother of *Peter*.
1285	12	*Ame*, or *Amadee* IV. Nephew of *Thomas* the ſeventh Earl, by a ſon named *Thomas*.
1323	13	*Edward*, ſon of *Ame* IV.
1329	14	*Ame*, or *Amadee V*. the brother of *Edward*.
1342	15	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VI.
1385	16	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VII.
1397	17	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VIII. the firſt Duke of *Savoy*.
1434	18	*Lewis*, ſon of *Ame* VIII.
1461	19	*Ame*, or *Amade* IX.
1475	20	*Philibert*, ſon of *Ame* IX.
1481	21	*Charles*, brother of *Philibert*.
1489	22	*Charles II*.
1495	23	*Philip II*. ſon of *Lewis*, the ſecond Duke.
1496	24	*Philibert II*.
1504	25	*Charles III*. the brother of *Philibert*, outed of his Eſtate by King *Francis* the firſt.
1559	26	*Emanuel Philibert*, reſtored upon his marriage with *Margaret* the daughter of King *Francis* the firſt, made Knight of the Garter by Qu. *Mary*.
1580	27	*Charles Emanuel*.
	28	*Ame* X. called alſo *Amadee Victoris*, ſon of *Charles Emanuel*, married *Chriſtiane*, the daughter of King *Henry* the fourth.
1637	29	*Charles Emanuel* II. ſon of *Amadee Victor*, or *Ame* the tenth, at the age of three years ſucceeded his Father.

The Forces of this Duke conſiſt eſpecially in his Forts and Garriſons, whereof he hath good ſtore in *Savoy* and *Piemont*, well fortified and plentifully furniſhed with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him ſo to have, conſidering what dangerous neighbours he hath neer him, and that his Countrey is a continual thorow-fare, for the Armies both of *France* and *Spain*, upon all occaſions. Nor doth it leſſe conduce to his preſervation, that he hath ſo many retreats of natural ſtrength, as are not eaſily acceſſible by a conquering Army: of which laſt ſort is, amongſt many others, the valley of *Aoſt*, (which ſome reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and ſome of *Piemont*) ſo ſtrong, by reaſon of the narrow entries, the uneaſie paſſages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that thoſe who have made themſelves maſters of the reſt of the Countrey, durſt never attempt it. And of the firſt, beſides thoſe formerly deſcribed, is the Town of *Nizze*, ſo fortified and flanked upon all acceſſes, that it ſeems rather to be an aſſembly of Forts, than a ſingle Fortreſſe. Out of which Garriſons, the Duke is able to draw great Forces for preſent ſervice;

Geneva.

ſervice, beſides the readineſſe of the *Piemonteſe* upon all occaſions, which are for the moſt part given to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedom (taking *Piemont* in) are ſaid to be above a million of Crowns *per annum*. But his extraordinary is ſo great, that Duke *Charls Emanuel*, during his warres with *Henry* the fourth, in a very few years drew out of *Piemont* onely eleven millions of Crowns; beſides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Souldiers. By which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want money to ſerve their turns, when they ſhall deſire it of the Subject; and yet not charge them more than they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Dukes Eſtate is that of the *Annunciada* ordained by *Amade* the firſt Duke, at what time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, *Anno* 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to ſhew the fifteen myſteries of the Virgin: at the end is the pourtraiture of our Lady, with the hiſtory of the *Annunciation*. Inſtead of a Motto, theſe Letters, *F. E. R. T. id eſt*, *Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are ingraven in every plate or link of the Collar: each link being interwoven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights is fourteen, beſides the Duke, who is the Soveraign of the Order: the ſolemnity is held annually on our *Lady-day* in the Caſtle of S. *Peter* in *Turin*. So from this victory (for every repulſe of the beſieger, is a victory to the beſieged) there aroſe a double effect; firſt, the inſtitution of this Order; ſecondly, the aſſumption of the preſent Arms of this Dutchy, which are *G.* a Croſs *A.* This being the Croſs of S. *John of Hierusalem*, whoſe Knights at that time were owners of the *Rhodes*. Whereas before, the Arms were *Or*, an Eagle diſplaied with two heads, *Sable*, Armed *Gules*, ſupporting in *Feſſe*, an Eſcotcheon of *Saxony*, that is, Barre-wiſe ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*. A Coat belonging to the Emperours of the houſe of *Saxony*, from whom the firſt Earls of *Savoy* did derive themſelves.

The Signeury of GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, formerly ſubject to its Biſhops, acknowledging the Dukes of *Savoy* for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-Eſtate*, bordering cloſe upon the *Switzers*, and with them confederate; and ſo more properly within the courſe and compaſſe of theſe *Alpine* Provinces. It is ſituate on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemane*, oppoſite to the City of *Lozanne* in the *Canton* of *Bern*, from which it is diſtant ſix *Dutch* miles: the River *Rhoſne* (having paſſed through the Lake with ſo clear a colour, that it ſeemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) running through the lower part thereof, over which there is a paſſage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is ſeated on a flat or level, the reſt on the aſcent of an hill: the buildings fair and of free-ſtone, well fortified on both ſides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretenſions of the Duke of *Savoy* (whom they ſuffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealouſies of State. The compaſs of the whole City is about two miles, in which there are ſuppoſed to be about ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand ſouls. One of their Bridges is more ancient and better fortified than the other, belonging anciently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians*, the old inhabitants of that Tract) but broken down by *Julius Cæſar*, to hinder them from paſſing that way into *France*.

The people of the Town are generally of good wits in the managery of publick buſineſſe, but not very courteous towards ſtrangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modeſt and thrifty in apparel, and ſpeak for the moſt part the *Savoyard*, or worſt kind of *French*. So that the great reſort of young Gentlemen thither, is not ſo much to learn that Language (which is no where worſe taught) as out of an opinion which their parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where ſo purely practiſed and profeſſed as there. By means whereof, the *frie* or *ſeminary* of our Gentry being ſeaſoned in their youth with *Genevian* Principles; have many times proved diſ-affected to the forms of Government (as well *Monarchical* as *Epiſcopal*) which they found eſtabliſhed here at home: to the great imbroilment of the State, in matters of moſt neer concernment. The women are ſaid to be more chaſt (or at leaſt more reſerved) than in any other place of the world: which poſſibly may be aſcribed to that ſeverity, with which they puniſh all offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick or private; *Adultery* expiated by no leſſe then death: *Fornication*, for the firſt offence with nine dayes faſting upon bread and water in priſon; for the ſecond, with whipping; for the third with baniſhment. But notwithſtanding this ſeverity they make love in ſecret, and are as amorous in their dalliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very ſmall, extending not above two leagues and an half from any part of the Town: but the ſoyl, if well manured, bringeth Grain of all ſorts, and great ſtore of Wine. There is likewiſe plenty of paſture and feeding grounds, which furniſh the City with fleſh-meats, butter and cheeſe at very reaſonable rates: the nearneſſe of the Lake affording them both Fiſh and wild-fowl in good meaſure; and amongſt others (as ſome ſay) the beſt *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main improvement of this State is by the induſtry of the people, and the convenient ſituation of the City it ſelf: the City being ſituated very well for the Trade of Merchandize, in regard it is the ordinary paſſage, for tranſporting Commoditie out of *Germany* to the *Marts* at *Lyons*; and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Italy*. And for the induſtry

Geneva. of the people, it is diſcernable in that great ſtore of Armour, and Apparel, and other neceſſaries brought from hence yearly by thoſe of *Bern*, and their Manufactures in Sattin, Velvet, Taffata, and ſome quantities of Cloth, (fine but not durable) tranſported hence yearly into other places.

The Soveraignty of this City was anciently in the Earls hereof, at firſt *Imperial Officers* onely, but at laſt the hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt theſe and the Biſhops (Suffragans to the *Metropolitan* of *Vienna* in *Dauphine*) grew many quarrels for the abſolute command thereof. In fine, the Biſhops did obtain of the Emperour *Frederick* the firſt, that they and their ſucceſſors ſhould be the ſole Princes of *Geneva*, free from all Taxes, and not accomptable to any but the Emperour. Which notwithſtanding, the Earls continuing ſtill to moleſt the Biſhops, they were fain to call unto their aid the Earl of *Savoy*, who took upon him firſt as Protector onely, but after by degrees, as the *Lord* in *chief*. For when the rights of the Earls of *Geneva*, by the marriage of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*, with *Beatrix* a daughter of theſe Earls, fell into that houſe, then *Ame* or *Amadee* the ſixth of that name obtained of the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, to be *Vicar-general* of the Empire in his own Countrey, and in that right ſuperiour to the Biſhop in all *Temporal* matters; and *Ame* or *Amadee* the firſt Duke, got from Pope *Martin*, (to the great prejudice of the Biſhops) a grant of all the *Temporal* juriſdiction of it. After which time, the Biſhops were conſtrained to do homage to the Dukes of *Savoy*, and acknowledge them for their Soveraign Lords: the Authority of the Dukes being grown ſo great (notwithſtanding that the people were immediately ſubject to their Biſhop onely) that the Money in *Geneva* was ſtamped with the Dukes name and figure: Capital Offenders were pardoned by him; no ſentence of Law executed till his Officers were firſt made acquainted; nor League contracted by the people of any validity, without his privity and allowance: and finally, the Keyes of the Town preſented to him as often as he pleaſed to lodge there; as once (for inſtance) to Duke *Charles* the third, coming thither with *Beatrix* his wife, a daughter of *Portugal*. And in this ſtate it ſtood, till the year 1528. the Biſhop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alias civilis juriſdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himſelf confeſſeth in an Epiſtle to Cardinal *Sadolet*. But in that year, *Religion* being then altered in the *Canton* of *Bern*, near adjoyning to them, *Viret* and *Farellus* did indeavour it in *Geneva* alſo. But finding that the Biſhop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they ſcrewed themſelves into the people, and by their aid in a popular tumult, compelled the Biſhop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Biſhop made them many fair overtures, out of an hope to be reſtored to his Eſtate; yet would they never hearken to him, nor admit of him any more being once thruſt out. Nor did they onely in that tumult alter the Doctrine, and Orders of the Church before eſtabliſhed; but changed the Government of the State alſo: diſclaiming all allegiance both to Duke and Biſhop, and ſtanding on their own Liberty, as a *Free Common-wealth*. And though all this was done by *Viret* and *Farellus*, before *Calvin*'s coming to that City, which was not till the year 1536. yet being come, *ſuffragio meo comprobavi*, as he ſaith himſelf, no man was forwarder then he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongſt them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he firſt negotiated with them to abjure the *Papacy*, and never more admit their Biſhop, to which he found a cheerfull and unanimous conſent in all the people. Then finding that no *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline* was in uſe among them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own compoſing; which at laſt he obtained alſo, but with very great difficulty; and got it ratified by the Senate *July* 20. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this new yoak, and he and his Colleagues (*Farellus*, and *Coraldus*) as reſolute to hold them to it; they were all three baniſhed the Town in a popular humour; and with like levity ſued to, to return again: to which he would by no means yield, except they would oblige themſelves by a ſolemn Oath, to admit of ſuch a form of Diſcipline, as he, with the advice of the other Miniſters ſhould preſcribe unto them. This being condeſcended to by that fickle multitude, he returns in triumph to *Geneva*, *September* the thirteenth, 1541. and got his new Diſcipline eſtabliſhed on the twentieth of *November* following. The ſumme of the device was this; All *Miniſters* to be equal amongſt themſelves; two *Lay-men* to be ſuperadded unto every Miniſter; the Miniſters to continue for term of life; the Lay-Elders to be annually choſen: theſe being met together, to be called the *Presbytery*, and to have power of *Ordination*, *Cenſures*, *Abſolution*, and whatſoever elſe was acted by the Biſhop formerly. Hitherto it related to *Geneva* onely, which being but one City, and a ſmall one too, was not capable of more then one *Presbytery*. The names and notions of *Claſſical*, *Provincial*, and *National* Aſſemblies came not in till afterwards; as it got ground in Kingdomes and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpoſe framed to content the people; yet ſince the *Lay-officers* were to be but annual, and after ſubject to the laſh like other Mortals; it gave but ſorry ſatiſfaction unto wiſer men. And being built withal on a falſe foundation, was for a long time hardly able to ſtand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a ſupport from *Zurich*, and others of the *Proteſtant Cantons*: whom *Calvin* earneſtly ſolicited to allow his project, againſt which one *Perinus*, and ſome principal Citizens, had begun to ſpurn. And ſo we have the true beginning of the *Genevian* Diſcipline, begotten in Rebellion, born in Sedition, and nurſed up by Faction.

Being born into the World by the means aforeſaid, ſome other helps it had to make it acceptable, and approved of, in other Churches. As firſt, the great content it gave to the *common people*, to ſee themſelves entruſted with the weightieſt matters of *Religion*; and thereby an equality with, if not (by reaſon of their number, being two for one) a *ſuperiority* above their *Miniſters*: Next, the *great reputation*, which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching, had attained unto; made all his *Dictates* as authentick amongſt ſome Divines, as ever the Popes *Ipſe dixit* in the Church of *Rome*.

Geneva.

Whereby it came to paſs, in a little time, that onely thoſe Churches which imbraced the Doctrines and Diſcipline authorized by *Calvin*, were called the *Reformed Churches*: thoſe in high *Germany*, and elſewhere, which adhered to *Luther*, being generally called by no other name than the *Lutherans*, or the *Lutheran* Churches; as not *reformed* enough from the dregs of *Rome*. Then comes in his *endeavours* to promote that platform, in all other Churches, which he had calculated for the *Meridian* of *Geneva* only, commending it to *Gaſper Olevianus*, Miniſter of the Church of *Triers*, as appears by his Letters, dated *April* the twelfth, 1560. congratulating the reception of it in the Churches of *Poland*, as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the laſt help, comes in *Beza*, who not content to recommend it as convenient, for the uſe of the Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) impoſed it as a matter neceſſary upon all the Churches: ſo neceſſary, *ut ab ea recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipſius Religionis placitis*, that it was utterly as unlawful to recede from this, as from the moſt material points of the Chriſtian Faith. So he, *Epiſt.* 83. By means whereof their followers in moſt of the *Reformed* Churches drove on ſo furiouſly, that rather than their Diſcipline ſhould not be admitted, and the *Epiſcopal Government* deſtroyed in all the Churches of *Chriſt*; they were reſolved to depoſe Kings, ruine Kingdomes, and to ſubvert the fundamental conſtitutions of all civil States. And hereunto their own *Ambition* gave them ſpur enough, affecting the *ſupremacy* in their ſeveral *Pariſhes*; that they themſelves might Lord it over Gods inheritance, under pretence of ſetting CHRIST upon his Throne. Upon which love to the preheminence, they did not only *prate* againſt the Biſhops, *with malitious words*, (as *Diotrephes* for the ſame reaſon did againſt the Apoſtles) but not therewith content, *neither would they themſelves receive them, nor permit them that would, caſting them out of the Church*, with reproach and infamy. Which proud ambition in the ordinary *Parochial* Miniſter, was cunningly fomented by ſome great perſons, and many *Lay-Patrons* in all places, who under-hand aimed at a further end: the one to raiſe themſelves great fortunes out of Biſhops Lands; the other to keep thoſe Tithes themſelves, to which by the Law they onely were to nominate ſome deſerving Perſon. Such were the helps by which this new device of *Calvin* was diſperſed and propagated.

But to return unto *Geneva*, though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetual *Moderator*, and *Beza* too, until *Danæus* ſet him beſides the Cuſhion: yet after that the power of the *Presbytery* was ſhrewdly leſſened in *Geneva*, and the good Members ſo reſtrained in the exerciſe of it; that they have no power to convent any man before them, but by the authority of a *Syndick* or *Civil* Magiſtrate. And as for maintenance, they hold their Miniſters ſo ſtrictly to a ſorry pittance, as would be ſure to keep them from preſuming too much on their power in *Conſiſtory*. *Tithes* of all ſorts were to be taken up for the uſe of the State, and laid up in the publick Treaſury; and ſtipends iſſued out to maintain the *Miniſtry*: but thoſe ſo mean, that *Beza*'s ſtipend, whileſt he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pound *per annum*, the reſidue of the *City-Miniſters* not to ſixty pound, thoſe of the Villages adjoyning, having hardly forty pound; enough to keep them alwayes poor, and miſerably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizen. And that they may not *ſteal the Gooſe, and not ſtick up a feather*, the State doth uſe to make ſome poor allowance to the wives and daughters of their deceaſed *Miniſters*, if they die poor, or leave their children unprovided; or otherwiſe have deſerved well in the time of their lives. In reſpect hereof, though the *Miniſters* are very ſtrict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts againſt it; yet to give ſome content to the common people (who have not leaſure to attend it at other times) they allow all Man-like exerciſes on the *Lords-day*, as ſhooting in pieces, long-bows, croſs-bows, and the like; and that too in the morning, both before and after the *Sermon*; ſo it be no impediment to them, from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the Government of the State, it is directed principally by the *Civil* or *Imperial* Laws; the Judge whereof is called the *Lieutenant-criminal*, before whom all cauſes are tried, and from whom there lieth no *Appeal*, unleſſe it be unto the Councel of two hundred, whom they call the *Great Councel*, in which the ſupream power of the State reſideth. Out of this *Councel* of two hundred, there is choſen another *leſſer Councel* of five and twenty, and out of them four principal Officers whom they call the *Syndicks*; who have the ſole managing of the Common-wealth, except it be in ſome great matter, as making Peace or War, offenſive or defenſive Leagues, hearing Appeals, and ſuch like general concernments; which the great Councel of two hundred muſt determine of. They have a cuſtome ſuperadded to the *Civil Law*, that if any Malefactor from another place fly to them for refuge, they puniſh him after the cuſtome of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwiſe, their Town being on the borders of divers Princes, would never be free from *Vagabonds*. Examples hereof I will aſſign two: the firſt of certain *Monks*, who robbing their *Convents* of certain Plate, and hoping for their wicked pranks at home to be the welcomer hither, were at their firſt acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The ſecond is of a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, who having fled his Country for clipping and counterfeiting the Kings Gold, came to this Town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alledged, that he underſtood their City being free, gave admiſſion to all offenders; *True* (ſaid they) *but with an intent to puniſh them that offended*; a diſtinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary *Revenue*, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to 60000 pound *per annum*, which they raiſe upon the *demain* of the Biſhop, and the *Tithes* of the Church, and on ſuch *impoſitions* as are laid upon fleſh and merchandiſe. But they are able to raiſe greater ſums, if there be occaſion, as appears plainly by the ſending of 4500 Crowns to King *Henry* the third, before they had been long ſetled in their own eſtates.

And as for *Military forces*, they are able to impreſſe two thouſand men, and have Arms of all ſorts for ſo many in the publick *Arſenal*: as alſo twelve or fourteen peeces of Ordnance, with all manner of Ammunition appertaining to them, and on the Lake ſome Gallies in continual readineſſe, againſt the dangers threatned them from the Dukes of *Savoy*. And for the greater ſafety of their Eſtate, and the preſervation of their *Religion*, they joyned themſelves in a conſtant and perpetual league with the *Canton* of *Bern*, *Anno* 1528, communicating to each other the Freedome of their ſeveral Cities; and by that means are reckoned for a member of the Common-wealth of the *Switzers*, which is no ſmall ſecurity to their affairs. But their chief ſtrength, as I conceive, is that the neighbour Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke, or any other Potentate of more ſtrength then he. Inſomuch that when that Duke beſieged it, *Anno* 1589. they were aided from *Venice* with four and twenty thouſand, and from *England* with thirteen thouſand Crowns, from *Florence* with intelligence of the Enemies purpoſes. Another time, when the Pope, the *French* King, the *Spaniard* and *Savoyard* had deſigns upon it; the Emperour offered them aſſiſtance both of Men and Money: yea, and ſometimes the Dukes of *Savoy* have aſſiſted them againſt the others, as being more deſirous that the Town ſhould remain as it doth, then fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for ſuch petit States to be more ſafe by the intereſſe of their jealous neighbours, than any forces of their own.

The Arms of *Geneva*, when under the command of the Earls thereof, were *Or*, a croſs *Azure*. But for the title of *Geneva* after it had been born a while by the Earls of *Savoy*, it was given to *Philip*, youngeſt ſon of *Ame* or *Amadee* the firſt Duke, to *Janus* the third ſon of *Lewis* the ſecond Duke; and finally to *Philip* Duke of *Nemours*, the fourth ſon of *Philip* the ſeventh Duke of *Savoy*, in whoſe poſterity (Dukes of *Nemours*) it doth ſtill continue.

4. *WALLISLAND.*

EAſtward from *Savoy*, in a long and deep bottome of the *Alpes Pænina*, lyeth the Countrey of *WALLISLAND*: ſo called either *quaſi Wallenſland*, or the land of the *Valenſes*, once the inhabitants of the Countrey about *Martinacht*, a chief Town hereof, or *quaſi Vallis-land*, or the *Land of Vallies*; of which it totally conſiſts. It reacheth from the Mountain *de Furcken*, to the Town of St. *Maurice*, where again the hills do cloſe, and ſhut up the valley; which is ſo narrow in that place, that a bridge laid from one hill to another (under which the River *Rhoſne* doth paſſe) is capable of no more then one Arch only, and that defended with a Caſtle and two ſtrong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continual wall of ſteep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a cruſt of Ice; not paſſable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by ſingle paſſengers; ſo that having but that one entrance to it, which before we ſpake of, no Citadel can be made ſo ſtrong by Art, as this whole Countrey is by Nature. But in the bottom of thoſe craggy and impaſſable Rocks, lies a pleaſant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and moſt delicate fruits; and happily inriched with Meadows, and moſt excellent Paſtures, which yield a notable increaſe of Cheeſe and Butter: and in the Countrey about *Sion* they diſcovered in the year 1544. a Fountain of Salt; and have alſo many hot *Bathes*, and medicinal waters very wholeſome. Of Springs and River-water, they are very deſtitute; having ſcarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhoſne*, with a great deal both of charge and trouble (the common people uſing ſnow-water for the moſt part for domeſtick uſes:) which made one pleaſantly obſerve, that they *pay there dearer for their water*, *than they do for their wine*. Cattel they have ſufficient to ſerve their turn, and amongſt others, a wild *Buck*, equal to a Stag in bigneſſe, footed like a Goat, and horned like a fallow Deer, leaping with wonderful agility from one precipice to another, and ſo not eaſily caught but in Summer time; for then the heat of that ſeaſon makes him blind.

It is divided into the upper and the lower *Walliſland*; the upper lying towards the Mountain *de Furcken*, in the very bottome of the Valley; and the lower ſtretching out to the Town of St. *Maurice*, which is at the opening of the ſame: the length of both ſaid to be five ordinary days journey, but the breadth not anſwerable. The upper *Walliſland* containeth the ſeven *Reſorts* of 1 *Sion* or *Sedune*. 2 *Leuck*. 3 *Brig*. 4 *Nies*. 5 *Rawren*. 6 *Sider*. 7 *Gombes*; in which are reckoned thirty Pariſhes; the Lower comprehending the ſix *Reſorts* of 1 *Gurdis*. 2 *Ardoa*. 3 *Sallien*. 4 *Martinacht*. 5 *Jutrimont*, and 6 S. *Maurice*; in which are 24 Pariſhes. The people in both parts ſaid to be courteous towards ſtrangers, but very rough and churliſh towards one another.

The ſeveral reſorts before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1 *Sedunum*, *Sittim* or *Sion*, a Biſhops See, ſuffragan to the *Metropolitan* of *Tarentuiſe*, the chief of all this little Countrey: of no great beauty in it ſelf, but neat and gallant in reſpect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhoſne*, under a Mountain of two tops, on the one of which, being the lower, is ſeated the Cathedral Church, and the Canons houſes; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very ſtrong Caſtle, the dwelling place of the Biſhop in the heats of Summer, which being built upon an hill of ſo great an height, and of ſo hazardous an aſcent, is impoſſible almoſt to be took by force; the ſharpneſſe of the Rock keeping it from danger of aſſaults, and the highneſſe of the hill from the reach of Gun-ſhot. 2 *Marchinacht*, by *Cæſar* called *Octodurus*, and *Civitas Valenſium* by *Antoninus*, remarkable for its antiquity onely. 3 Saint *Maurice*, or St. *Morits*, anciently *Auganum*, the Key of the whole Countrey; but in Winter eſpecially, when all the

Switzer-land.

other paſſages are ſo frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town: which for that cauſe is very well manned and fortified to avoid ſurpriſal; and therefore alſo choſen for the ſeat of the Government of the *Lower Walliſland*.

This Countrey now called *Walliſland*, is in moſt *Latine* Writers called by the name of *Valeſia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Valenſia*, as the *Dutch* or *Engliſh* name for *Wallinſland*: which name I ſhould conceive it took from the *Valenſes*, the old inhabitants of this valley, of whom *Octodurus* (now called *Marchinacht*) is by *Antoninus* made to be the *Metropolis*, or principal City. It was made ſubject to the *Romans* by *Julius Caſar*, at ſuch time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Weſtern parts of the *Roman* Empire unto *Charles* the *Great*, was by him given to *Theodulus* Biſhop of *Sion*, *An.* 805. Under his ſucceſſors they continue to this very day; but ſo, as the Deputies of the *ſeven Reſorts* have not only voices with the *Canons* in his election, but being choſen and inveſted into the place, they joyn with him alſo in the *Diets* for chooſing Magiſtrates, redreſſing grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Walliſland* obeyeth the upper, and made ſubject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no ſway at all in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governors agree of. The ſame *Religion* is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintenance whereof they combined themſelves with the ſeven Popiſh *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, *An.* 1572, or thereabouts: as alſo for their mutual defence and preſervation againſt Forreign Enemies, and keeping amity and concord amongſt one another.

5. SWITZERLAND.

NExt unto *Walliſland* lieth the Countrey of the *Switzers*, having on the Eaſt, the *Griſons*, and ſome part of *Tirol*, in *Germany*; on the Weſt, the Mountain *Jour*, and the Lake of *Geneva*, which parts it from *Savoy*, and *Burgundy*; on the North, *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, another Province alſo of the upper *Germany*; and on the South, *Walliſland* and the *Alpes*, which border on the Dukedom of *Millain*.

The whole Countrey heretofore divided into three parts only, that is to ſay, 1 *Argow*, ſo called from the River *Aaz*, whoſe chief town was *Lucern*: 2 *Wiſliſpurgergow*, ſo called from *Wiſliſpurg* an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*: And 3 *Zurichgow*, ſo named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this preſent the Town of moſt note in all this Tract; but ſince the falling off of theſe Countreys from the houſe of *Auſtria*, divided into many *Cantons*, and other members; of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner over-grown with craggy Mountains, but ſuch as for the moſt part have graſſie tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadous, and nouriſhing Paſtures, which breed them a great ſtock of Cattel, their greateſt wealth. And in ſome places yields plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increaſe of Corn alſo, if care and induſtry be not wanting on the Husband-mans part; but neither in ſo great abundance, as to ſerve all neceſſary uſes, which want they do ſupply from their neighbouring Countreys. And though it ſtand upon as high ground as any in *Chriſtendome*, yet is no place more ſtored with Rivers, and Capacious Lakes; which do not only yield them great abundance of fiſh, but ſerve the people very well in the way of Traffick, to diſperſe their ſeveral Commodities from one *Canton* to another. Of which the principal are *Bodenſee*, and the Lake of *Cell*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genſor-ſee*, or the lake of *Geneva*, by the *Roſne*; *Waldſtet-ſee*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Ruſſe*; *Namonburger* and *Bitter-ſee*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurich-ſee*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the higheſt Countrey in *Europe* (as before is ſaid) the Rivers which do iſſue from it running through all quarters of the ſame; as *Rhene*, through *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Po*, through *Italy* to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of *France*, to the Weſtern Ocean; and the *Inn*, which falling into the *Danubius* paſſeth through *Germany*, and *Hungary*, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Countrey is, ſuch are the Inhabitants, of rude and rugged diſpoſitions, more fit for Arms than any civil occupations; capable of toyl and labour, which the neceſſities of their Countrey do inure them to, not able otherwiſe to afford them an hungry livelihood: the poverty whereof makes them ſeek for ſervices which they ſhift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their ſuperfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to ſpare greater multitudes to a Forrein War, than a man would eaſily imagine. In a word, the people are naturally honeſt, frugal and induſtrious, impartial in the adminiſtration of Juſtice, and great lovers of of Liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of ſuch a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles* of *Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himſelf able to take the field, or ſtand his own ground in defence of his Dominions if he had not *Switzers* in his Army, and to advance their reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italy* about the Dutchy of *Millain*, ſerved exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Countrey, they could be hired better cheap by the *French*, or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of *France* or *Spain*, And having had ſome good ſucceſſes to increaſe their fame, they grew ſo terrible at laſt; that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guien* were more afraid of one band of *Suiſſe*, than of all the reſt of the *French* Army. But being found withall to be falſe and treacherous, and

Switzer-land. eaſily brought off by the better purſe (which they moſt evidently diſcovered in betraying Duke *Lodowick Sforze,* who had put himſelf and his eſtate into their hands;) and thoſe *Italian* Wars growing unto an end, they did decay ſo faſt in their reputation, that firſt the neighbouring Princes could do well without them: and at laſt uſed them not at all, or at leaſt very ſparingly. And now it is their honour that they are choſen of the Guard to the *French* King, and the Popes of *Rome*, and the Dukes of *Genoa*; & that the greateſt Princes of *Europe* give them yearly penſions. Which penſions were given heretofore to be aſſured of their aid upon all occaſions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other ſide.

For matter of *Religion* it is proportionably mixt, ſome of the *Cantons* being wholly *Popiſh*, ſome wholly *Proteſtant*; in others both Religions uſed promiſcuouſly. At firſt the differences were ſo eagerly purſued on both ſides, that notwithſtanding the mediation of ſome potent neighbours, it broke out into a *Civil* War; the *Cantons* of *Switz*, *Luren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug* (which the *Latine* Writers of this ſtory call the *Quinquepagici*) arming againſt *Urich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius.* In the beginning of which War, the *Proteſtant* party was diſcomfited, *Zuinglius* himſelf ſlain in the head of the battel, and his body burnt: his heart remaining in the midſt of the fire, whole and untouched (as Archbiſhop *Cranmers* alſo did) when all the reſt of his body was conſumed to aſhes. But thoſe of the *Reformed* party would not ſo give over. Another field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverſe party. Wearied at laſt with reciprocal defeats, they agreed the buſineſs, indulging each to other the free exerciſe of their own *Religions.* So it continueth at this day, diverſity of opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick *intereſs*, nor giving any interruption to that bond of peace which was ſo firmly knit amongſt them in their firſt *confederacies.*

Now for the body of their State, it conſiſts of three diſtinct parts, or members which are to be conſidered in this diſcourſe; *viz.* the *Swiſſe* themſelves, the *Præfectures* which are ſubject to them, and the States that are confederates with them. The *Swiſſe* are ſubdivided into thirteen *Cantons*, that is to ſay, *Swits*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Baſil*, *Friburg*, *Soloturn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris* and *Schaffhauſen.* Theſe properly make the body of that Common-wealth, enjoying many rights, priviledges and preheminencies which the others do not; as power to determine of war and peace, to diſpoſe of the *Præfectures*, and divide amongſt themſelves the ſpoyl of the Enemy. The firſt confederacy was made betwixt the *Cantons* of *Switz*, and *Underwald*, *Anno* 1315. Of which the *Switz* being the moſt potent, the moſt exaſperated, and that which did moſt hotly proſecute the combination, gave to the reſt the name of *Switzers*, firſt made for ten years only, in defence of themſelves againſt the violencies of *Albert* the firſt, Emperour and Duke of *Auſtria*; intending to alienate them from the Empire, and add them by ſtrong hand unto his own Eſtates, *Anno* 1309. but made perpetual after their great victory obtained againſt Duke *Leopold*, the ſon of *Albert*, in the fields of *Mortgarten*, of which more anon. *Lucern* was added to the three, *Anno* 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the confederacy till the year 1352; nor *Bern* untill the year next after. *Friburg* and *Soloturn* came in *Anno* 1481. *Baſil* and *Schaffhauſen* united with them in the year 1501. and *Apenſel*, which was the laſt which was admitted into their *confederacy*, *Anno* 1511. So that there paſſed within little of two hundred years, from the firſt beginning of theſe *Leagues*, to the finiſhing of them.

The ſecond member of this body, are the Towns and *States*, *Confederates* with them, for the preſervation of their common Liberties, *viz.* the Town and Abbot of Saint *Gall*, the Towns of *Rotwel*, *Mulhaſen*, *Nuenberg*, and *Biel*, ſituate on the Lake thence named; (of which the firſt belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in *France*, the latter to the Biſhops of *Baſil*) with the City and Signeury of *Geneva*; And of theſe, *Rotwell* and *Mulhaſen* are confederate with all the *Cantons*; the reſt, with ſome particulars only. The Abbot of S. *Gall* firſt entred into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and *Glaris*, for the preſervation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug* and *Glaris*, the better to preſerve themſelves from the power of their *Abbot*, who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in *An.* 1452. *Rotwell*, and *Mulhauſen*, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schwaben*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the *Cantons*; the firſt, *Anno* 1515. the other, *An.* 1519. *Newenberg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern* only.

As for the *Præfectures* of the *Switzers*, they are ſuch leſſer parcels and additaments, as have accrewed to their Eſtate, and are ſubject unto their authority; either by gift, purchaſe; or the chance of war, ſome lying in *Switzerland* it ſelf, ſome amongſt other parts of the *Alpes*, and ſome in *Italy.* Theſe are the Towns and Countrys of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Millengen*, *Rappenſyll*, *Wagenthall*, interpoſed here and there amongſt the *Switzers*; the Town and Countrey of *Sargans*, lying amongſt the *Rhætian Alpes*, not far from the *Griſons*; and *Rhineck*, lying in a valley of the *Alpes*, on the left ſhore of the *Rhene*, near the Lake of *Conſtans*; and finally the valleys of *Locarno*, *Magia*, and *Lugane*, *Mendriſio*, and *Belinzano*, ſituate in and amongſt the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Millain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of *Baden* and *Mellingen* appertain to the eight firſt *Cantons*: *Wagenthall*, the *Sargans*, & *Rheineck* to the ſeven firſt *Cantons*: *Rappenſwill* to *Uren*, *Swits*, *Underwald*, and *Glaris*; and *Turgow*, unto the ten firſt *Cantons*; *Belinzano* to the three firſt only; and all the reſt of the *Italian* Præfectures to the Cantons generally, excepting *Apenzel*, which was not entred into the confederacy when theſe Præfectures were given unto the *Switzers* by *Maximilian Sforza* Duke of *Millain*; which was in *Anno* 1513, ſome moneths before the taking in of *Apenzel* to the reſt of the *Cantons.*

Such is the number of the *Cantons*, *Præfectures*, and *States confederate*, amongſt all which there are few Towns and Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Town in the Canons of *Swits*, *Uren*, *Underwalden*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States confederate ſituate amongſt the *Switzers*, but Saint *Gall* only; nor in any of the *Præfectures* but that of *Baden.* So that the places worthy of conſideration are not like to be many. Of thoſe that are, the principal are, 1 ***Zurich***, a large City, and a renowned Univerſity, ſituate on both ſides of the River ***Limat***, where it iſſueth out of the Lake called ***Zurich See.*** It had anciently two Monaſteries in it, in one of which ***Huldericus Zuinglius*** was a ***Canon***, ſlain near this Town in the battel ſpoken of before, ***Anno*** 1531. now giving name to the moſt honourable of the ***Cantons***, to which belongeth the authority of ſummoning the general ***Diets***, as of thoſe alſo of the ***Proteſtants***; the Leagues thereof preſiding in both Aſſemblies. 2 ***Friburg***, ſituate on the River ***Sana***, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky hill, founded by ***Berthold*** the fourth Duke of ***Zeuringen***, 3 ***Solothurn***(the ***Solothurum*** of ***Antoninus***)on the River of ***Aar***, famous for the Martyrdom of S. ***Urſus***, and his ***66 Theban*** Souldiers in the time of the Emperour ***Diocleſian.*** A Town of great Antiquity, but not ſo old by far as the people make it; who would have it to be built in the time of ***Abraham.*** 4 ***Baſil***, ſo called either of a ***Baſilisk*** ſlain at the building of the City; or of the ***German*** word ***Paſel***, ſignifying a path; or of βασιλεία ſignifying Kingly. It was built ***Anno*** 382, and is famous for an Univerſity founded by ***Pius*** the ſecond, ***Anno***, 1459. It was made a ***Canton***, ***An.*** 1501. and is honoured with the Sepulchres of ***Oecolampadius***, ***Eraſmus***, ***Pontanus***, ***Glarienns***, and ***Hottoman***, the famous Civilian. In this City, ***Anno*** 1431. was held that noble Councel, wherein though the ***Papal*** authority was then at the height, it was decreed that a ***general Councel was above the Pope.*** What was then enacted, was immediately put in practiſe; the Councel depoſing Pope ***Eugenius*** the fourth, and placing in his room ***Amadeus*** Duke of ***Savoy***, afterward called ***Felix*** the fourth; who having held the See nine years in a time of ***Schiſm***, did willingly in order to the peace of ***Chriſtendom***, reſign the Popedom to ***Nicolas*** the 5th. who had before been choſen by the oppoſite Faction. This City is great, rich and populous, ſometimes a Town ***Imperial***, ſtill a Biſhops See; the Biſhop being ſubject to the Archbiſhop of ***Beſanſon***, in the County of ***Burgundy***: ſeated upon the River ***Rhene***, (where it receiveth ***Weis*** and ***Byrſa***, two leſſer brooks) by which it is divided into the ***greater Baſil*** lying towards ***France***, and the ***leſſer*** lying towards ***Germany.*** 5 ***Lucern***, ſituate on both ſides of the ***Ruſſe***, where it iſſueth out of the Lake of ***Lucern***; ſo called from ***Lucerna***, ***i.e.*** the ***Lantern*** which was placed here on an high Tower, to give light to Water-men in the night. A City well traded and frequented by ſtrangers, becauſe the ordinary road from ***Germany*** into ***Italy***, paſſing from hence through the Countrey of the ***Griſons***; and in regard that the ***Diets*** for the ***Popiſh Cantons***, which heretofore were held at ***Uren***, are removed hither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called ***Pilates hill***, of ***Pontius Pilate***, whoſe ghoſt (as the common people are made to believe) doth walk once a year on the banks of this Lake, in his Judges Robes. And to be ſure the fiction ſhall not be confuted, they adde, that whoſoever ſeeth him ſhall die that year. 6 ***Bern***, compaſſed almoſt round with the River ***Aar***, and taking up the whole extent of a little mountain; the houſes of Free-ſtone, neatly and uniformly built. A Town which gives name to the largeſt and moſt potent of all the ***Cantons***; one of the firſt which did embrace the Reformation, and the firſt of all which purged it ſelf of Images, thoſe excellent Inſtruments of Superſtition and Idolatry; defaced here in a popular tumult, ***Anno*** 1548. 7 ***Lauſanna***, in the Canton of ***Bern***, a Biſhops See, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of ***Beſanſon***, ſeated on the banks of the Lake of ***Lemane***, and compaſſed with mountains alwayes covered with ſnow, which open themſelves on the Eaſt ſide only, which is towards ***Italy.*** 8 ***Schaffhauſen***, the onely Town of all the ***Cantons***, which lyeth on the other ſide of the ***Rhene***, of right belonging unto ***Suevia*** or ***Schwaben***, a Province of ***Germany***, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this ***Confederacy.***

Next for the ***Præfectures*** and ***confederate*** States, they have not many Towns of note (excepting ***Rotwell*** and ***Mulhuſen***, two ***imperial*** Cities which properly belong to another place.) Of thoſe which be the principal amongſt the ***Confederates***, lying within the bounds of this Countrey, is the Town of Saint ***Gall*** (***Sengall*** as they corruptly call it) an ***Imperial*** City, ſituate amongſt the mountains near the ***Boden-See.*** A rich, populous, and well governed Town, taking name from the Monaſtery of S. ***Gall*** a famous ***Scot***, and the Apoſtle of thoſe parts, ***Anno*** 630. or thereabouts; the ***Abbot*** of which having great poſſeſſions in this tract (before ***Apenſel*** and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The ***Anabaptiſts*** were once very prevalent here, inſomuch that one of them cut of his brothers head in the preſence of his Father and Mother, and ſaid (according to the humour of that ſect, who boaſt much of dreams, viſions, and ***Enthuſiaſms***) that ***God commanded him ſo to do.*** The principal among the ***Præfectures*** is the Town of ***Baden***, or (to difference it from ***Baden***, a Marquiſate in ***Germany***) the ***Upper Baden***: ſeated on a little Mountain near the River ***Limat***, almoſt in the middle of the Countrey; and for that cauſe the place of meeting for the Councel of ***Eſtate*** of all the ***Confederates.*** It taketh name from the Bathes here being, two of which only are publick, the reſt in private houſes: conſcious as it is thought, to much laſciviouſneſs. For whereas it is ſaid of ***Adrian***, that ***Lavacra pro ſexibus ſeparavit***; here men and women promiſcuouſly bathe together; and which is worſt, in private: where, as ***Munſter*** telleth us, ***Cernunt viri uxores tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui & quidem ſolam cum ſolo***; and yet are not any of them diſturbed with jealouſie. Theſe ***Bathes*** are much frequented, yet not ſo much for health as pleaſure. Their chiefeſt vertue is the quickning power they have upon barren women. But as the ***Friars*** uſed to ſend men whoſe wives are fruitleſs, in pilgrimage to S. ***Joyce***, the Patroneſs of Fruitfulneſs; and in the mean time to lie with their wives: ſo it may be with good reaſon thought, that in a place of ſuch Liberty as this is, the luſty and young gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation of barren women, than the waters of the Bath it ſelf. No other Town of eminent note amongſt the ***Præfectures*** of the ***Swiſſes***, except ***Rhineck*** it ſelf, the ſeat of the Governour for the ***Switzers***, ſituate near the Lake of ***Conſtance***; and none of any note at all amongſt the ***Italian Præfectures***, except ***Belinzana***, and ***Locarno***, neither of them containing 400 Houſes, and thoſe none of the handſomeſt.

Switzer-land.

Within the limits of this Countrey, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons* of *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, *Glarona*, and *Lucern*; with ſome of the adjoyning parts of *Germany*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*; did ſometimes ſtand the famous and renowned Caſtle of *HABSPURG*; from the Lords whereof the houſe of *Auſtria*, and moſt of the Kings and Princes of the Chriſtian World do derive themſelves. Firſt founded, as ſome ſay, by *Ottopert* the third Prince of this line, at or before the year 700, as others ſay, by *Rapato* the ſon of *Betzeline*, about the year 1020. Situate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latines* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now ſo decayed, that there is no tracing of the ruines. Preſerved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, deſcended in a direct line from *Sigebert* the eldeſt Son of *Theodebert* King of *Mets*, or *Auſtraſia*; firſt ſetled in theſe parts by *Clotaire* the ſecond, King of the *French*, with the title, as ſome ſay, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is now called *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, an adjoyning Province of *Germany*) being ſoon weary of that empty, but individious title, they were ſometimes called Earls of *Habſpurg*, by the name of this Caſtle, ſometimes Earls of *Altemburg*, another Caſtle not far off, of their own foundation. And after cloſing in with the Kings of *Burgundy*, *Transjurane*, and the *German* Emperours, they received of them a great part of the Countrey of *Argow*; from which ſome of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known diſtinctly by the title of Earls of *Habſpurg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned, when thoſe of *Altemburg* and *Argow* became diſcontinued. Howſoever we will here lay down the whole ſucceſſion of this famous family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of

The Earls of *Habſpurg*.

635 1 *Sigebert*, ſon of *Theodebert* King of *Mets*, by *Clotaire* the ſecond of that name, the *French* King diſpoſſeſſed of the Kingdom of his Father, and afterwards by him indowed with a great part of thoſe Countreys, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the title of Duke of *Upper Almain*.

2 *Sigebert* II. ſon of *Sigebert* the firſt, Duke of *Upper Almain*.

3 *Ottopert*, or *Otbert*, the ſon of *Sigebert* the ſecond, the founder, as ſome ſay, of the Caſtles of *Altemburg* and *Habſpurg*, of which promiſcuouſly called Earl.

4 *Bebo*, the ſon of *Ottopert*, the laſt Duke of *Upper Almain*; which title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg* and *Habſpurg*.

5 *Robert*, or *Rother*, as ſome call him, the ſon of *Bebo*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

766 6 *Hertopert*, the ſon of *Robert*, who added unto his Eſtate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Briſgow*.

7 *Rampert*, the ſon of *Hertopert*, who flouriſhed *Anno* 814, at what time he procured the Canonization of S. *Trutpertus*.

8 *Guntram*, the ſon of *Rampart*, Earl of *Altemburg*.

9 *Luithard*, the ſon of *Guntram*.

909 10 *Luitfride*, the ſon of *Luithard*.

929 11 *Hunifride*, the ſon of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Eſtates the Territory now called *Sungow*, bordering on *Alſatia*, a Province of *Germany*, recovered after his deceaſe by the Dukes of *Schwaben*.

950 12 *Guntram* II. ſon of *Hunifride*, the firſt who took unto himſelf the title of Earl of *Argow*, from whoſe ſecond ſon named *Berthilo*, deſcended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow*, and good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the ſon of *Gebirr* the third ſon of *Guntram*. Who having founded the Caſtle of *Zeringen*, and acquired great poſſeſſions in the adjoyning parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his deceaſe (being childleſs) to *Berthold* the ſon of *Berthilo*, and his Couſin *German*.

13 *Betzo*, or *Betzeline*, the eldeſt ſon of *Guntram* the ſecond, Earl of *Argow*.

14 *Rapato*, ſon of *Betzeline*, the founder or repairer of the Caſtle of *Habſpurg*, from whence both he and his ſucceſſors were conſtantly called Earls of *Habſpurg*. Great Grandfather by *Theodorick* his youngeſt ſon, of *Rodulph* Earl of *Rhinefelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperour (at the inſtigation of the Pope) againſt *Henry the fourth*.

15 *Warner*, by ſome called *Berengar* or *Berengarius*, the ſon of *Rapato*.

1096 16 *Otho*, the ſon of *Warner* or *Berengar*.

1108 17 *Warner* II, ſon of *Otho*, enriched by the Emperour *Henry* the 4th, with ſome fair Eſtates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben*.

18 *Albert*, the ſon of *Warner* the ſecond, ſurnamed the *Rich*.

19 *Albert* II. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, ſon of *Albert* the firſt, added to his Eſtates a great part of the *Upper Alſatia*, which he had by the right of *Hednigis* his wife, one of the daughters and heirs of *Simon* the laſt Earl thereof.

1238 20 *Rodolph*, the fortunate ſon of *Albert* the ſecond, added to his Eſtate the reſt of the *Upper Elſate*, elected Emperour of the *Romans*, *An.* 1273. Of which he made ſo good advantage, that he added unto his Eſtates the great Dukedom of *Auſtria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and laid the firſt foundation of the *Auſtrian* greatneſs; of which more in *Germany*. Here only note, that beſides the following Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*, thoſe of the line Collateral ſtill retained the title of Earls of *Habſpurg* (according to the ill cuſtom of *Germany*) increaſed with the addition of the

Earldome of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter; and ſo continued till the expiring of that line in the perſon of *Rodolph* the fourth, the laſt that bare the title of Earl of *Habſprug*, *Anno* 1356. by whoſe death many fair Eſtates were added to the *Auſtrian* Family.

Having on the occaſion of theſe Earls of *Habſprug*, beheld ſo much of the affairs of this Countrey, as related to that puiſſant and illuſtrious family, let us go forward to the reſt: firſt taking in our way the ancient Eſtate hereof in the time of the *Romans*. At what time this whole mountainous tract, containing many ſeveral Nations (ſome of them ſpoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greateſt and moſt populous of all the reſt; ſo called, as *Verſtegan* will have it, *quaſi Hil-vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Cimbrick Cherſonneſe*, which is now called *Juitland*. Grown by long peace, and want of opportunity by traffick into forein parts, to ſo great a multitude, that the Countrey, barren of it ſelfe, was no longer able to maintain them; they ſet fire on their Towns and Houſes, and with a general reſolution went to ſeek new dwellings. The total number of men, women and children, which went upon this deſperate action, are ſaid to have amounted to the number of 3680000, whereof 900000 were fighting men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Caſſius* a *Roman* Conſul, ſlain the Conſul himſelf, and ſold his Souldiers for Bond-ſlaves: upon the apprehenſion of which good ſucceſs, they thought no body able to withſtand them. But they found *Cæſar* of a ſtronger metal than *L. Caſſius*. Who having ſtopped their paſſage by hewing down the bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown ſtrong enough to bid them battel, ſo waſted them in ſeveral skirmiſhes, and defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild thoſe Towns and Villages which they had deſtroyed before this enterpriſe: which he upon delivery of Hoſtages did vouchſafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the leaſt two Millions of them periſhed in this journey, not ſo much by the ſword (though that ſpared them not) as for want of neceſſaries. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian* the third, by the *Burgundians* and *Almans*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Riſs* parting their dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; ſome parts firſt taken out, and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habſprug*, as before was noted. Given with the reſt of that Kingdom to the Emperor *Conrade* the ſecond, by *Rodolph* the laſt King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperors (as their cuſtom was) into divers States; moſt of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schawben*, the Earls of *Habſpurg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenberg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Auſtria*. By means of which united titles the *Auſtrian* family was poſſeſſed of ſo much of this Country, as now make up five *Cantons*, and as many of the principal *Præfectures*: that is to ſay, the *Cantons* of *Zug*, *Glarona*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffehauſen*; the *Præfectures* of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Mellingen*, *Wagenthall*, *Roperſwill*, together with a great part of the Countrey of *Targow*, wherein ſtands the City of S. *Gall*, now a Confederate with the *Switzers*; ſome of the reſt, as *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, being brought under by the power of the Emperor *Albert*, the ſon of *Rodolph*, who had a purpoſe to unite them to the houſe of *Auſtria*; became obnoxious alſo to the power of thoſe Princes. But the People being at laſt over-burthened by the tyranny of thoſe Governors, whom the Dukes of *Auſtria* and their other Lords had ſent among them; ſeeing withall the Empire by the Popes Fulminations diſtracted into many Factions, and the *Auſtrian* Family weakened by a ſub-diviſion of that great Eſtate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offenſive* and *Defenſive* League amongſt themſelves, for defence of their Liberty: into which firſt entred thoſe of *Switz*, *Uren* and *Underwald*, *Anno* 1387. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1511, as before was noted. At their firſt beginning to take Arms, *Frederick* one of the many Dukes of *Auſtria* (to whoſe ſhare they fell) ſent his Brother *Leopald* againſt them with a puiſſant Army; which they encountred with near *Mortgarton* a village of the now Canton of *Underwalden*, and there overthrew him: but more by the convenience of thoſe narrow paſſages, through which his Army was to march, than by any valour. In which it was no ſmall help to them, that the waies were all ſo filled with Ice, that he was able to do no ſervice with his Horſe; and his Souldiers ſo amazed at the preſent difficulties, that the *Confederates* only caſting ſtones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoyning. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this ſucceſs, they brought the new Canton of *Lucern* into their confederacy by force of Arms, *Anno* 1332. and that of *Zurich* by their reputation and like hope of Liberty, *Anno* 1351. in which year thoſe of *Zug*, and *Glaris* invaded by the former five, and willing to diſcharge themſelves of their Lordly Maſters, were united to them, as was the new Canton of *Bern* in the year next fallowing. In the year 1381. the Towns *Silothurn* and *Friburg*, deſcending from the houſe of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that line) upon thoſe of *Habſprug*, revolted from their natural Lords and admitted *Cantons*, occaſioned *Leopold* ſon of *Albert* the *ſhort*, and brother of *Albert* the fourth, Dukes of *Auſtria*, to make war upon them; in which war being vanquiſhed and ſlain neer *Sempacha* a village of the Canton of *Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry *Anno* 1386, and the ſucceding Dukes not venturing any more againſt them, the reſidue of the Cantons and Confederates were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themſelves of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, they continued free and unmoleſted, but never came to any reputation for their valour, till the war made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they diſcomfited in three great battels, and ſlew him alſo in the third. A war commenced by him at the firſt on ſmall occaſions, and leſs hopes: the Countrey being ſo barren and the

Switzer-land.

people ſo poor; that their Ambaſſador to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) proteſted, that if all their Countrey-men were taken; they would not be able to pay a ranſome, to the value of the ſpurs, & bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were ſo poor, that they knew not what riches was. For having won the firſt battel at *Granſon* (the other two were thoſe of *Morat* and *Nancy*) one of the goodlieſt *Pavilions* in the World was by them torn in pieces, and turned into breeches and ſide-coats: divers ſilver plates & diſhes they ſould for a *French Sous* (each *Sous* a little more then an *Engliſh* penny) ſuppoſing them to be but pewter; and a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodlieſt Jewel in *Chriſtendom*, was ſold to a Prieſt for a *Guilder*; and by him again to ſome of the Lords of the Country, for three *Franks*. After their valour ſhewed in theſe battels, *Lewis* the 11th took them into penſion, giving them yearly forty thouſand Crowns, *viz.* twenty thouſand to the Cities, and twenty thouſand to particular perſons: and bowed ſo much beneath the Majeſty of the moſt *Chriſtian* King, as to term himſelf one of the *Bourgeſſes* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them ſhould be held for their firſt *Allie*. By theſe arts, & the nearneſs of their Forces for thoſe occaſions, he wreſted *Burgundy* out of the hands of *Mary* the daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis* the twelfth won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforze*, whom they perfidiouſly betrayed, as was ſaid before. Upon the merit of theſe ſervices, they required an augmentation of their penſions: which when this *Lewis* the twelfth denyed, they withdrew themſelves from the Amity of the *French*, and entred into the ſervice of Pope *Julio* the ſecond; who therefore ſtiled them the *Defenders of the Church*, *Anno* 1510. The fruits of which entertainment was the defeat of the whole forces of King *Lewis*, and the loſs of *Millain*; into which *Maximilian Sforze*, the ſon of *Ludowick*, was ſolemnly re-inſtated by the Confederates; who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them thoſe Towns and Valleys in the Alpes of *Italy* (formerly members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*; reckoned amongſt the *Prafectures* of their Common-wealth. *Francis* the firſt in purſuance to his claim to *Millian*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the battell of *Marignan*. Yet afterwards conſidering what damage his Realm had ſuſtained by the revolt of theſe Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the *Confederation* with them; on condition that he ſhould reſtore the ancient penſion of forty thouſand Crowns; ſecondly, that he ſhould pay unto them at certain terms, ſix hundred thouſand Crowns; thirdly, that he ſhould entertain four thouſand of them in his pay continually; fourthly, that for the reſtoring of ſuch places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he ſhould give unto them thirty thouſand Crowns: fiftly, that he ſhould give them three moneths pay before-hand; ſixthly and laſtly, that *Maximilian Sforze*, whom they had ſtated in *Millian*, and were now going to diſpoſſeſſe, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemours*, endowed with twelve thouſand *Franks* of yearly revenue, and married to a daughter of the blood royal. On theſe conditions, as honourable to them as burdenſom to the King, was the League renewed *Anno* 1522. ſince which time, they have obtained, that ſix hundred of their Countrey are to be of the *French* Kings Guard; five hundred of which wait without at the gates of the Court, the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the *French* Kings did not ſo ingroſs the Market, though they raiſed the price of the commodity, but that all other Princes might have them alſo for their money: the Kings of *Spain* and other bidding fair for them, but never going ſo high as the *French* had done. At laſt, upon the differences which grew amongſt themſelves in point of *Religion*, they grew to be divided alſo in point of *Penſion*: the *Popiſh Cantons* taking penſions of the Pope, and the King of *Spain*, the *Proteſtants* of the *French*; the *mixt* of both; and all of the *Venetians*. By which means, being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be truſted of none. Which ſudden ſinking of that fame and reputation which they had attained to, together with the reaſons of it; that notable Stateſman and Hiſtorian *Guicciardine* doth deſcribe as followeth. "The name (ſaith he) of this wilde and uncivill Nation hath got great honour by
" their concord, and glory by Arms. For being fierce by nature, inured to war, and exact keepers of
" Military diſcipline, they have not only defended their own Countrey, but have won much praiſe
" in forein parts: which doubtleſſe had been greater, if they had ſought to inlarge their own Empire,
" and not for wages to inlarge the Empire of others; and if nobly they had propounded unto themſelves
" any other ends, than the gain of money, by the love whereof being made abject, they have
" loſt the opportunity of becoming fearfull to *Italy*. For ſince they never came out of their confines,
" but as *mercenary* men, they have had no publick fruit of their Victories: but by their covetouſneſs have
" become intollerable in their exactions where they overcame, and in their demands with other
" men; yea, at home froward and obſtinate in their concluſions, as well as in following their commands
" under whoſe pay they ſerve in War. Their chief men have penſions of ſeveral Princes to favour
" them in their publick meetings: and ſo private profit being preferred before the good of the
" publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and fall at diſcord amongſt themſelves, with great leſſening
" of the reputation which they had gotten amonſt ſtrangers. So he, relating the affairs of the year
" 1511. which the following iſſue of affairs hath fully verified.

As for the *Government* of this State, it is meerly *popular*, and that not only in the particular Cantons, but the aggregate body of their Councel: the *Gentry* and *Nobility* being either rooted up in thoſe long Wars which were betwixt them and their *Vaſſals*, juſtly provoked by thoſe intollerable preſſures & exactions which they laid upon them; or elſe worn out of memory and obſervation, for want of ſway and ſuffrage in the Councels of the Common-wealth. Only in *Shaffehauſen*, *Baſil* and *Zurich*, are ſome Gentry left, not capable of any place or *ſuffrage* in the *Senate* of the ſaid *Cantons* (from which they are excluded by the Common people, becauſe they joyned not with them in their firſt revolt) unleſs they wave their *Gentry*, and be inrolled amongſt the number of *Plebeians*. The reſt they have (it ſeemeth) in ſo poor eſteem,

Switzer-
land.

eſteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meaneſt Trades, in all occaſions of war are numbred with, and amongſt theſe *Gentlemen*; making up one ſociety only, and joyning with them in electing the *Maſter of their Company*, who is one of the Senate. But becauſe that every **Canton** hath its proper Magiſtrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatneſs, or in the number of its ſeveral *Reſorts*, or ſub-diviſions; it will not be amiſs to ſhew what number of *Reſorts* are in every **Canton**: that is to ſay, in *Underwalden* only two, in *Switz* ſix, in *Uren* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Apenzel* ſix, in *Lucern* ſeven, in *Solothurn* no more than one, in *Friburg* nineteen, in *Baſil* and *Shaffhauſen* but one apiece (the *Cantons* there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themſelves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern*; in all one hundred forty and eight. Of theſe conſiſts the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular *Canton* hath its proper Magiſtrate, choſen by the commonalty of that **Canton** (whom they call the *Wuaman*) together with a ſtanding Councel aſſiſtant to him, choſen out of the people, for the directing and diſpoſing of their own affairs, which meet and ſit in the chief Town or Village of that *Diſtrict*. But if the cauſe concern the *Publick*, then every *Canton* ſendeth one or more Commiſſioners to the general *Diets*; where they determine of the buſineſs which they meet about, according to the major part of the *Votes*: the Commiſſioners of every *Canton* having one Vote only, though many may be ſent from each, to adde the greater weight to their conſultations. The place of meeting is moſt commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in reſpect of the commodity of the Inns and houſes, the pleaſant ſituation and famous *Medicinal Bathes*: and becauſe it is ſeated in the very centre of *Switzerland*, and ſubject to the eight firſt *Cantons*. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues; of making Laws, of ſending, receiving, and anſwering Ambaſſadors; of Governments, and diſtributing the publick Offices; and finally of difficult cauſes and appeals, referred unto the judgement of the *great Councel*. In which the City *Zurich*, chief of the *Cantons*, hath the firſt place, not by antiquity, but dignity, and of old cuſtom hath the greateſt authority of calling together this *great Councel*, ſignifying by letters to each **Canton**, the cauſe, time, and place of meeting: yet ſo, that if any *Canton* think it for the publick good, to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commiſſioners, they write to them of *Zurich* to appoint the ſame. That which the greater number do reſolve upon, is without delay put in execution.

The Forces of theſe *Suiſſe* conſiſt altogether of Foot, Horſe being found unſerviceable in this Mountainous Countrey. And of theſe Foot, *Boterus* reckoneth that they are able to raiſe ſixſcore thouſand. Which poſſibly may be true enough, if it be underſtood of all that be able to bear Arms. For otherwiſe *de facto*, the greateſt Army that ever they brought into the field, conſiſted but of one and thirty thouſand men, which was that wherewith they aided the confederate States of *Italy* againſt the *French*, and reſtored *Maximilian Sforze* to the Dukedome of *Millain*. Their ordinary ſtanding Forces are conceived to be ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſands which they may bring into the field, leaving their Towns and Forts well furniſhed. And for their *Revenue*, it is not like to be very great, conſidering the poverty of their Countrey, and their want of traffick with other Nations. That which is *ordinary* and in common, ariſeth out of the Annual penſions which they receive from Forrein States; the profits ariſing out of their **Dutch** and *Italian* Præfectures, the Impoſt laid on Wines ſold in Taverns, and Corn uſed by Bakers; and the Rents of a diſſolved Monaſtery called *Kings field* (or *Conings field*) becauſe many Kings and Queens have been cloyſtered there, amounting to forty thouſand Guldens yearly. Which Monaſtery was built in the year 1380, in memory and honour of the Emperour *Albertus*, ſlain by his Nephew at *Spantback*, not far from *Baſil*. Their *extraordinary* doth conſiſt in ſpoyls that be gotten in the War; which if it be managed in common, are divided in common; but if by two or three of the *Cantons* only, the reſt can claim no ſhare in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Switzers* themſelves. For otherwiſe taking in the **Confederate** States, as well without as within the bounds of that Countrey, they are able to raiſe fifty or threeſcore thouſand men: that is to ſay, the *Switzers* themſemſelves ſeventeen thouſand men, the *Griſons* ten thouſand, thoſe of *Walliſland* ſix thouſand, the Abbot and Town of S. *Gall* four thouſand, the City of *Geneva* two thouſand; beſides what *Rotwel* and *Mulhuſen*, two *Imperial* Cities, are able to contribute towards it; the Dukes of *Savoy* being bound by their ancient Leagues to aid them with ſix hundred Horſes at his own charges; beſides two thouſand ſix hundred Crowns in Annual penſions. But the *Revenue* of thoſe States is ordered by it ſelf apart, and never comes within the computation of the publick; unleſs it be on the repulſing of a common enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which caſe, and others of a general *intereſt*, they communicate both heads and purſes: the Delegates and Commiſſioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to conſult of the common cauſe, which meeting they entitle the *greateſt Councel*. But this is very ſeldom held, publick affairs being generally ordered by the Commiſſioners of the *Switzers* only: though they themſelves diſclaim that name of *Switzers* as too mean and narrow, and call themſelves *Eidienoſſen*, that is to ſay, *Partakers of the ſworn Leagues*. More of this Common-wealth he that liſts to ſee, may ſatisfie himſelf in *Simler* who purpoſely and punctually hath deſcribed the ſame.

The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THe Country of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lyeth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Atheſis*, and *Adua*: being bounded on the Eaſt, with the Countrey of *Tirol*; on the Weſt, with *Switzerland*; on the North with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more mountainous than any of this *Alpine* tract, and having leſs natural commodities to boaſt it ſelf of, more than the Fountains of thoſe Rivers before mentioned.

The people of it by moſt *Latine* Writers of theſe times, are called by the name of *Rhæti*, the Countrey *Rhætia*: and ſo far properly enough, as that the antient *Rhæti* did inhabit all the lands poſſeſſed by the *Griſons*: though the *Griſons* do not inhabit a fourth part of thoſe lands, which were poſſeſſed heretofore by the ancient *Rhæti*: For anciently the *Rhæti* did extend their dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of *Italy*, to the River of *Danow*; comprehending beſides this of the *Griſons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and ſo much alſo of the *Switzers* as was not in poſſeſſion of the old *Helvetii*. Within which tract there were not only many rich valleys and fruitfull fields; but a moſt pleaſant race of Wines called *Vina Rhætica*, much drank of by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no man can conceive to grow in this barren Countrey. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, mountainous fields, which the continual ſnow made look of an hoary hue: and by illuſion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the preſent by the name of *Grauntpuntner*, that is to ſay, the hoary or *gray Confederates*.

As for the *Rhæti*, take them in the former latitude, they were ſubdued by *Druſus* and *Tiberius* the ſons-in-law, and adopted children of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, *A.V.C.* 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, *viz. Rhætia prima*, and *Rhætia ſecunda*, both of them appertaining by *Conſtantines* new model, to the *Dioceſe* of *Italy*. A Nation in the firſt original, of *Italian* race, and ſo more properly to be aſſigned to that *Dioceſe*; but had inhabited this tract, from the time that *Belloveſus* the *Gall* ſeiſed on part of *Tuſcany* expelling thence the antient inhabitants thereof: who under the conduct of *Rhætus*, a great man amongſt them, poſſeſſed themſelves of theſe mountains, and afterwards of the vales adjoyning, which they called *Rhætia*, by the name of their Captain General. This hapned in the time of *Tarquinius Priſcus*, in the firſt cradle as it were of the *Roman* Empire: in the declining age whereof, during the reign of *Valentinian* the third, and *Anaſtatius*, thoſe parts which lay neareſt unto *Germany*, and were worth the conquering, were ſubdued by the *Almains*, and *Boiarians*; by them incorporated with the reſt of their ſeveral States. The reſidue of this mountainous tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a member of the Empire; till given by *Charles* the Great to the Biſhop of *Chur*; whoſe ſucceſſors, being ſeveral wayes moleſted by their potent neighbours, confederated with the *Switzers* for their mutual aid and preſervation, *Anno* 1497. By whoſe aid they ſo valiantly made good their ground againſt the *Auſtrians*, that at the laſt, after the loſs of 20000 men on both ſides, the points in difference were accorded, and a peace concluded.

This is the ſubſtance of this ſtory, as to former times; to which there cannot much be added in the way of *Hiſtory*; little or no alteration hapning in their affairs, but a more perfect ſetling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we muſt obſerve that this whole tract is caſt into three *Diviſions*, that is to ſay, the *Upper League* or *Liga Griſa*; 2 *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the League of the houſe of God; The *Lower League*, called alſo *Liga Ditture*, or the League of the ten Commonalties. The eight *Italian Præfectures* will make a fourth. Their buildings generally in the three firſt being cold and mountainous, are of free-ſtone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with ſnow: the windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the ſaid three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of glaſs, and preſently ſhut it cloſe again; the outſide of the windows having leaves of wood, to keep the heat of their ſtowes from going out, or any cold from coming in. And as for travelling, the wayes are for the moſt part unſafe and dangerous, by reaſon of the ſtraight paſſages, dreadfull precipices, and thoſe almoſt continual bridges which hang over the the terrible falls, and *Cataracts* of the River *Rhene*, deſcending with great violence from the higheſt mountains: huge hills of ſnow tumbling into the valleys, with a noiſe as hideous as if it were a clap of thunder.

For the particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the higheſt and moſt mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of *Italy*, having there in thoſe vaſt mountains of *Locknannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two ſtreams of the *Rhene* have their firſt original. By the *French* it is called *Liga Griſe*, or the *Gray League* (the word *Gris*, or *Griſe*, in that language, being *Gray* in ours) in the ſame ſenſe as the *Dutch* call it *Graunpuntner*, that is, *Confœderati cani*, which we may render properly the *Confederate Griſlepates*: either becauſe the mountains are continually covered with a perriwig of *hoary Iſicles*, or from the heads of this people, *Gray* before their time. It conſiſteth of nineteen *Reſorts* or Commonalties, according to the number of their Vales and Villages; of which four only ſpeak the *Dutch*, all the reſt a corrupt *Italian*: and was the firſt which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the name of *Griſons* came unto the reſt, who after joyned with them in the ſame

Griſons.

confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of note. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1 *Ilanter*, the place ſometimes of the *General Diets* for theſe *Leagues*. 2 *Diſerntis*, where is a very rich Monaſtery. 3 Saint *Bernardino*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4 *Maſox*, ſometimes an Earldome, giving name to the Valley of *Maſonter-tal*. 5 *Galanckter*, whence the vale ſo named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6 *Ruſſla*, ſituate on the River *Mueſa*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of *Italy*.

2. The ſecond *League* is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League of the houſe of God*, ſo called, becauſe it was the proper *Patrimony* of the Biſhop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the middle *League*, as being ſituate between the upper *League* on the Weſt, and the lower *League* upon the Eaſt. It is the greateſt of the three, containing twenty one *Reſorts* or Commonalties: of which nine lie on this ſide the tops of the Mountains, towards *Germany*, the reſt towards *Italy*; and yet two onely ſpeak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of moſt note are, 1 *Tintzen*, the *Tinnetio* of *Antoninus*, ſeated amongſt high and inacceſſible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2 *Mur* (called *Murus* by the ſame *Antoninus*) in the valley of *Bergel*; a valley extending from the head of the River *Maira* towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian* Præfectures. 3 *Stalla*, called *Bevio* by the *Italians*, becauſe the way doth in that place divide it ſelf. 4 S. *Jacomo* (in the valley of *Compoltſchin*) called *Travaſede* by *Antoninus*. 5 *Sinnada*, in the valley of *Engadin*. And 6 *Chur*, by ſome *Coira*, but more truly *Curia*, ſo called from the long ſtay that *Conſtantine* the great made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended againſt the *Germans*; built afterwards by ſome part of his forces which continued here, *Anno* 357. about half a *Dutch* mile from the meeting of the two ſtreams of the *Rhene*; in form triangular, the buildings indifferent in themſelves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill, in one corner of which ſtandeth the *Cloſe*, and therein the *Cathedral* Church, a ſtately Edifice, but more in accompt of the Natives, who have ſeen no fairer, then it is with ſtrangers: and near the Church, the Biſhops Palace, and the Houſes of the *Canons*, all well built, and handſomely adorned. The Biſhop of this City, and of all the Countrey of theſe *Leagues* (for they received their Biſhop and the Faith together, *Anno* 489.) acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* for their *Metropolitan*; is reckoned for a Prince of the Empire, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole League: but on the introduction of the *Reformed Religion*, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themſelves from their obedience to the Biſhop, and govern the City in the manner of a *Free-State*. So far conformable to him, for their own preſervation, that as the Biſhop and his Canons, with the reſt of this League, upon occaſion of the wrongs done them by the houſe of *Auſtria*, Lords of the neighbouring *Tirol*; joyned in confederacy with the ſeven firſt *Cantons* of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498.) So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themſelves from the command of their Biſhops, concur with them at laſt in that mutual League.

3. The third League of theſe *Griſons* is the lower League, called alſo *Liga Ditture*, or the League of the ten Juriſdictions; ſituate cloſe upon *Tirol* in the North-Eaſt part of the whole Countrey. Of all the ten, two only, which are thoſe of *Malans* and *Meinfield*, obey the joynt commands of the three Leagues of the *Griſons*: the other eight being ſubject to the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, under whom they are ſuffered to enjoy their ancient priviledges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*, which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common League, *Anno* 1436: conditioning their mutual defence againſt all Enemies, preſervation of their peace, and maintenance of their priviledges; reſerving notwithſtanding their obedience to their natural Lords. In which reſpect, and by reaſon of the intereſſe and ſociety which they have with the reſt of the *Griſons*, they are in friendſhip with the *Swiſſe*, but in no confederacy. City or Walled-town they have none. The chief of thoſe they have, are 1 *Caſtels*, the ſeat of the Governour for the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*. 2 *Malans*, and 3 *Meinfeld*, both bordering upon the *Rhene*. 4 *Tanaas*, giving name to the firſt and greateſt of the ten Juriſdictions, the chief Town of this League, in which are held the *General Diets* for the ſame; and where are kept Muniments and Records which concern their Priviledges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhætico-mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Prettigower-berg*, becauſe it is at the end of the valley which the *Dutch* call *Prettigow*.

4. As for the *Italian Præfectures*, they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Griſons* by *Maximilian Sforze*, Duke of *Millain*, *Anno* 1513. at ſuch time as he gave the like preſent to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*. Of theſe the firſt is called *Plurs*, ſo called from the chief Town of the ſame name, in Latin *Plura*: once ſeated in a plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of ſundry villages lying in the ſame bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomleſs Gulf. For on the 26 of *Auguſt* 1617. an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinkling of an eye 1500 people, and left no ſign or ruin of a Town there ſtanding; but in the place thereof a great Lake of ſome two miles length. 2 *Chiarama*, ſituate in a pleaſant valley ſo called, near the River *Maira*, and ten *Italian* miles from the Lake of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the *Dutch Clevener-tal*, or the valley of *Cleven*, more near unto the antient name. 3 The *Valtoline*, *Vallis Telina* in the *Latine*, a pleaſant Valley extending threeſcore miles in length, from the head of the River *Aada*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently tranſported on this ſide the *Alpes*. It is divided into ſix Præfectures, according to the names of the principal Towns; The chief whereof are 1 *Bormio*, ſeated near the head of the River *Aada*. 2 *Teio*, the chief Fortreſs of the whole Valley. 3 *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the ſeat of the Governor, or Lieutenant General of the whole Countrey. This Valley lying opportunely for the paſſage of the King of *Spains* Forces, out of *Millain* into

Griſons.

Germany, by the practices and treaſons of *Rodolfus Planta*, one of the Natives of it, and of the *Romiſh* Religion; was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Millain*, *Anno* 1622. the whole Countrey brought under the obedience of that King, *Chur* it ſelf forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* ſetled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joynt Forces of the *French*, *Venetians*, and *Savoyard*, the whole Valley was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Griſons* re-eſtated in their juſt poſſeſſions, *Anno* 1630. ſave that the *Spaniard* ſtill holds the Fort of *Fuentes* for the ſafer paſſage of his Forces, if occaſion be.

Such is the ſtate of the *three Leagues* conſidered ſeverally and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government or Common-wealth; for ordering whereof they hold a *general Diet*, once in every year, conſiſting of threeſcore and three Commiſſioners; that is to ſay, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the houſe of God*, and 14 from the *League of the ten Juriſdictions*. Theſe have authority to determine of *Appeals* from the common Præfectures; to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Ambaſſies, and Laws, which concern the publick; yet ſo, that in a point of *Judicature*, it is lawful to appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have authority, if need be, to reverſe the ſentence; the cauſes being ſeverally propoſed, and paſſed by the major part of voices. The Government of each *League popular*, as amongſt the *Switzers*.

There are in theſe *Alpine* Provinces,
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.
Univerſities 4.
i. e.
1 *Turin.* 2 *Geneva.* 3 *Baſil.* 4 *Zurich.*

OF

OF FRANCE.

HAving thus croſſed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently diſpoſe our ſelves for *France* or *Germany*. But we will follow the courſe and fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which firſt paſſed into *France*, before it medled with the *Germans*; and had brought *Spain*, and *Britain*, under the form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a great diſtance.

France then according to the preſent dimenſions of it, is bounded on the Eaſt with a branch of the *Alpes*, which divide *Dauphine* from *Piemont*; as alſo with the Countreys of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*; on the Weſt with the *Aquitain Ocean*, and a branch of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North with the *Engliſh* Ocean, and ſome parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the reſt of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and the *Mediterranean*.

The figure of it is almoſt ſquare, each ſide of the *Quadrature* being reckoned *660* miles in length.

But they that go more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be *600 Italian* miles, the breadth 570 only, the whole *Circumference* to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern temperate Zone, between the middle *Parallel* of the fifth *Clime*, where the longeſt day is 15 hours, and the middle *Parallel* of the eighth *Clime*; where the longeſt day is *16* hours and an half.

It hath this preſent name of *France* from the *Franci* or *Frankes*, a people of *Germany*, who ſeized upon thoſe parts of it which lay neereſt to the *Rhene*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third; and having afterwards ſubdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-royal of their growing Empire, they cauſed the Countrey there abours to be called *France*. Which name, as they enlarged their borders, they impoſed on, or communicated rather to the reſt of this Countrey; and to thoſe parts of *Germany* alſo which were conquered by them. At which time, for diſtinction ſake, they called the Eaſt parts of their whole Empire by the name of *Ooſten-reich* or *Auſtraſia*, lying now wholly out of *France*, in *Germany*, and that part of *Belgium* which is ſubject to the King of *Spain*: and for the Weſt parts thereof, they had the name of *Weſten-reich*, or *Weſtraſia* (in the barbarous *Latin* of that age (*Weſt France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which the name of *France* was at laſt appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Anciently it was called *Gallia*, and the people *Galli*, and by that name occurs moſt commonly in the Writers of the *Roman* ſtory; and *Gallia Tranſalpina*, becauſe ſituate on the further ſide of the *Alpes* from *Italy*, to difference it from the Countrey of thoſe *Gauls*, which being planted in thoſe parts which we now call *Lombardy*, was called *Ciſalpina*. Sometimes it was called *Gallatia* alſo, and by that name known amonſt the *Greeks*: by *Ptolemy* called *Celto-Galatia*, or the *Galatia* of the *Celtæ*, a potent nation of old *Gaul*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Galatia*, one of the Provinces of *Aſia minor*, denominated from the *Galatians* or *Gaules* of this Countrey. Whence it became ſo named is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia*, from the *Greek* word Γάλα (*Gala*) ſignifying milk, *quia Lacteos*, i. e. *Albos homines producebat*, for the milky and white complexion of the people, compared to the *Greeks* and *Romans* who firſt impoſed it. Others, and amongſt them *Diodorus Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a ſon of *Hercules*, to which that of *Galatia* comes as near as may be. That *Hercules* was ſometimes in this Countrey, is affirmed alſo by *Ammianus Marcellinus*; who further addes, That after he had ſuppreſſed thoſe Tyrants which oppreſſed the People, he begat many Children on the principal Women; *Et eos, partes quibus imperitabant nominibus ſuis appellaſſe. Lib. XL.* Who gave their own names to thoſe parts over which they ruled. But in another place acknowledging that the *Gracians* call this People *Galatie* (*ita enim* Gallos *ſermo* Græcus *appellat*) he telleth us from *Timogenes*, an ancient Author, one very diligent in the ſearch of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines* or firſt inhabitants hereof, called themſelves *Celtæ*, by the name of one of their Kings, whom they highly honoured. *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galetas*, and *Galatæ* from the name of his Mother *Galata*; who probably enough might be a daughter of *Hercules*, miſtook by *Diodorus* for one of his ſons.

Of the Original of this People more anon. In the mean time we may take ſo much notice of the ancient *Gaul*, as to affirm him (out of *Cæſar* and other Authours) to be quick witted, of a ſudden and nimble apprehenſion, but withall very raſh and hare-braind,) *ut ſunt ſubita* Gallorum *ingenia*, is a note ſet upon them by the pen of *Cæſar*:) ſo full of Law-ſuits and contentions, that their Lawyers never wanted work. *Gallia Cauſidicos*, &c. this Poet hath it: of vehement affections, and precipitate in all their actions, as well military as Civil; falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and preſently going off in Smoke. *Primus impetus major quam virorum, ſecundus minor quam fœminarum*, was a part alſo of their Character in the time of *Florus* the Hiſtorian. And though the preſent *French* be generally of another Original; yet there is ſo much of the old *Gaul* ſtill left among them, either by the Impreſſion of the Heavenly Bodies, or by inter-marriages with the *Gauls*, as they overcame them, that all theſe qualities are ſtill predominant in the *French*, not differing from the ancient *Gaul*, but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Compariſon, homely I muſt confeſs, but to the life expreſſing the nature of the *French*, compared with the *Dutch* and *Spaniſh*, in matters of War. The *French* is ſaid to be like a *Flea*, quickly skipping into a Country, and ſoon leaping out of it, as was the Expedition of *Charles* the eighth into *Italy*. The *Dutch* is ſaid to be like a *Lowſe*, ſlowly maſtering a place, and as ſlowly (yet at laſt) driven out of their hold, as was their taking and loſing of *Oſtend* and *Gulick*. The *Spaniard* is ſaid to be like a *Crab* or *Pediculus inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is ſo rooted there, that nothing but the extremity of violence can fetch him out again. In which I think I need not inſtance, it being generally obſerved, that the *Spaniards* will endure all poſſible hardſhip, before they will part with any thing that they are poſſeſſed of. It is uſed alſo for a By-word, *that the* Italian *is wiſe before-hand, the* Dutch *in the time of Action, and the* French *after it is done*; a wiſdome much like that of the ancient *Gauls*. Nor are they leſſe Litigious than the old *Gauls* were: inſomuch as it is thought that there are more Law-ſuits tried among them in ſeven years, than have been in *England* from the Conqueſt till the time of King *James*. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of *Religion*, as appeareth by the ſtory of a *Gentleman* lying ſick on his death-bed; who when the Prieſt had perſwaded him that the *Sacrament of the Altar* was the very Body and Blood of CHRIST, refuſed to eat *thereof becauſe it was Friday*. Nor can I forget another in the ſame extremity, who ſeeing the *Hoſt* (for ſo they call the conſecrated Elements) brought unto him by a lubberly Prieſt, ſaid that CHRIST *came to him, as he entred into* Hieruſalem, *riding upon an Aſſe*. As for the Women, they are ſaid to be witty, but Apiſh, wanton, and incontinent: where a man at his firſt entrance may finde acquaintance, and at his firſt acquaintance may finde an entrance. So *Dallington* in his *View* of *France*, deſcribeth them. But I have ſince heard this *Cenſure* condemned of ſome uncharitableneſs, and the *French* Gentlewomen highly magnified for all thoſe graces which may beautifie & adorn that Sex. And it is poſſible enough that it may be ſo in ſome particulars, though it be more than any man would gueſs at that cometh amongſt them. For generally at the firſt ſight, you ſhall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle & are ſo full of Chat and Tattle, even with thoſe they know not, as if they had reſolved ſooner to want breath than words, and never to be ſilent but in the Grave.

As to the perſons of this people, they are commonly of a middle ſtature, and for the moſt part of a ſlight making; their complexion being generally hot and moiſt, which makes them very ſubject to the heats of luſt, and eaſily inclinable unto thoſe diſeaſes which are concomitants thereof. Their conſtitution ſomewhat tender, if not delicate, which rendreth them impatient of Toil and labour; and is in part the cauſe of thoſe ill ſucceſſes which have hapened to them in the wars, in which they have loſt as much for want of conſtancy, and perſeverance in their entreprizes, as they have gained by their Courage in the undertaking. And for the *Women*, they are for the moſt part very perſonable, of ſtraight bodies, ſlender waſts, and a fit *Symmetry* of proportion in all the reſt; their hands white, long, and ſlender, and eaſily diſcernable to be ſo; for either they weare no *Gloves* at all: or elſe ſo ſhort, as if they were cut off at the hand-wriſt. To theſe the *Complection* of their faces, and the colour of their hair, too much inclining to the black, holds no true *Decorum*. 'Tis true the Poet commends *Leda* for her black hair, and not unworthily; *Leda fuit* nigris *conſpicienda comis*, at it is in *Ovid*, but this was ſpecially, becauſe it ſet off with the greater luſtre, the amiable ſweetneſs of her *Complection*: for in that caſe the Hair doth ſet forth the Face, as ſhadowes commonly do a picture: and the Face ſo becometh the Hair, as a *Field Argent* doth a *Sable bearing*, which kind of Coat our **Critical Heralds**, call the *moſt fair*. But when a Black hair meets with a Brown or ſwarthy Complexion, it fals ſhort of that attractiveneſs of beauty, which *Ovid* being ſo great a *Crafts-maſter* in the *Art of Love*, did commend in *Leda*.

The chief exerciſes they uſe, are 1 *Tennis*; every village having a Tennis-court, *Orleans* 60. *Paris* many hundreds. 2. *Dancing*, a ſport to which they are ſo generally affected, that were it not ſo much enveighed againſt by their ſtraight-laced *Miniſters*, it is thought that many more of the *French Catholicks*, had been of the *Reformed Religion*. For ſo extreamly are they bent upon this diſport, that neither Age nor Sickneſs, no nor proverty it ſelfe, can make them keep their heels ſtil, when they hear the Muſick. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches, or go as if they were troubled all day with a *Sciatica*, and perchance have their rags hang ſo looſe about them, that one would think a ſwift *Galliard* might ſhake them into their nakedneſſe, will to the *Dancing Green* howſoever, and be there as eager at the ſport, as if they had left their ſeveral infirmities and wants behind them. What makes their *Miniſters* (and indeed all that follow the *Genevian Diſcipline*) enveigh ſo bitterly againſt *Dancing*, and puniſh it with ſuch ſeverity when they find it uſed? I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this diſcourſe. But being it is a *Recreation* which this people are ſo given unto, and ſuch a one as cannot be followed but in a great deal of company, and before many witneſſes and ſpectators of their carriage in it; I muſt needs think the *Miniſters* of the *French* Church more nice than wiſe, if they chooſe rather to deter men from their *Congregations*, by ſo ſtrickt a *Stoiciſm*, that indulge any thing unto the jollity and natural *gaiety* of this people, in matters not offenſive, but by *accident* only.

The Language of this people is very voluble and pleaſant, but rather *Elegant* than *Copious*, and therefore much troubled for want of words to find out *Periphraſes*, beſides that very much of it is expreſſed in the action; the head and ſhoulders move as *ſignificantly* toward it, as the lips and tongue; and he that hopeth to ſpeak with any good grace, muſt have ſomewhat in him of the *Mimick*. A Language enriched with great plenty of *Proverbs*, conſequently a great help to the *French* humour of Scoffing: and ſo naturally diſpoſed for Courtſhip, as makes all the people complementall; the pooreſt Cobler in the Pariſh hath his *Court-cringes*, and his *Eau beniſte de Cour*, his *Court-holy-water* (as they call it) as perfectly as the beſt *Gentleman-Huiſher* in *Paris*. Compared with that of other Nations, the *Language of the* Spaniards *is ſaid to be Manly, the* Italian *Courtly, and the* French *Amorous*. A ſweet language it is without queſtion, the people leaving out in their pronunciation many of their *Conſonants* and therby giving occaſion to this By-word, that *the Frenchman pronounceth not as he writes, ſingeth not as he pricketh, nor ſpeaks as he thinketh*. In the Original thereof it is a compound of the old *Gallick*, *German*, and *Latin* Tongues: the old *Gallick* being queſtionleſs the ſame with the *Welſh* or *Britiſh*, as appeareth clearly by theſe reaſons. 1 The *Latin* words are known to have been received from the *Romans*; and the *German* words at the coming in of the *Franks* and *Burgundians*; but of the *Welch* words which they have, we can give no reaſon, but that they are the remainder of their ancient Language; of which *Welch* words which ſtill continue in that Language, *Camden* in his *Britannia* reckoneth not a few. 2 It is ſaid by *Tacitus* that the *Britans* were the Deſcendants of the *Gauls*, and this he proveth as by other Arguments, ſo from the identity or neer reſemblance of the Language which both Nations ſpeak. *Utriuſque ſermo hand multum diverſus*, as his own words are. And 3 it is ſaid by *Cæſar*, That the *Gauls* uſed to paſs into *Britain*, to be inſtructed in the Rites and learning of the *Druides*; which ſheweth that both People ſpake but one common tongue, there being in thoſe times no one learned Language, which other Nations ſtudied beſides their own.

The Soyl is extraordinary fruitful, and hath three Load-ſtones to draw riches out of other Countrys, Corn, Wine, and Salt; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into *France* 1200000 *li.* Sterling, the cuſtome of Salt only to the King being eſtimated 700000 Crowns *per annum*. And indeed the benefit ariſing on this one commodity is almoſt incredibile, it being conſtituted by the Kings Edict (which is all in all) that no man ſhall have any Salt for Domeſtick uſes (except by ſpecial priviledge, and that dearly paid for) but what he muſt buy of the Kings Officers, and that upon ſuch prices too as they pleaſe to ſell it. Nor can it but be very well ſtored with *Fiſh*; for beſides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are ſaid to be 135000. Their other Merchandiſes are Beeves, Hogs, Nuts, Woad, Skins, vaſt quantities of all ſorts of Linnen. And to ſay truth, there are not many Countreys in the Chriſtian World, to which nature hath been ſo prodigall of her choiſeſt bleſſings, as ſhe hath to this; the fields thereof being large and open, and thoſe ſo intermingled with *Corn* and *Vines*, and every hedge-row ſo beſet with choice of fruits, that never any covetous or curious eye had a fairer obiect. And yet ſo miſerable is the condition of the common Paiſant, partly by reaſon of the intollerable Taxes laid upon him by the King, and partly by thoſe great, but uncertain Rents which are ſet upon him by his *Landlord* (for the poor Husbandman is *Tenant* only at the *will of his Lord*) that there is many one amongſt them, who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Wines, that never drinks Wine, or eats good Bread, from one end of the year unto the other.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was planted firſt amongſt the *Gauls*, by ſome of St. *Peters* Diſciples, ſent hither by him at his firſt coming to *Rome*: *Xyſtus*, *Fronto*, and *Julianus*, the firſt Biſhops of *Rhemes*, *Perigort*, and *Mants*, (*Cenomanenſium* in the *Latine*) being ſaid to be of his ordaining in the *Martyrologies*. The like may be affirmed (but on ſurer grounds) of *Trophimus* the firſt Biſhop of *Arles*. For on a controverſie betwixt the Arch-biſhops of *Vienna*, and *Arles*, for the dignity of *Metropolitan*, in the time of Pope *Leo* the firſt; it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Biſhop of *Arles*, *quod prima inter Gallias*, &c. That *Arles* of all the Cities of *Gaul*, did firſt obtain the happineſſe of having *Trophimus*, ordained Biſhop thereof by the hands of St. *Peter*. Nor is St. *Paul* to be denied the honour, of ſending ſome of his Diſciples thither alſo to preach the Goſpel: *Creſcens* ſent by him, as he telleth us 2 *Tim.* 4. into *Galatia*, being the firſt Biſhop of *Vienna*, ſpoken of before; as not the *Martyrologies* only, but *Ado Viennenſis*, an antient Writer of that Church, doth expreſly ſay. And that it was into this Countrey, that he ſent that *Creſcens* at that time, and not unto *Galatia*, in *Aſia Minor*; the teſtimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret*, which affirm the ſame, and that which hath been ſaid before of this name of *Galatia*, may confirm ſufficiently. But *Chriſtianity* being deſtroyed by the *French* at their firſt coming hither, was again planted by the induſtry of S. *Remigius* the firſt Biſhop of *Rhemes*; *Clovis* or *Clodivaus* the fifth King of the *French*, giving way unto it for his Wives ſake, who was zealous in it; and after taking on himſelf that holy calling, on a great victory which he won againſt the *Almains*: by whom being overlaid in the day of battel, he made his prayers to CHRIST, whom his Wife *Clotilda* Worſhipped; vowing to be of that *Religion* if he gat the victory; which now he had no ſooner made (as the ſtory telleth us) but *Alemannos invaſit timor*, a ſudden fear fell upon the *Almains*, and the *French* were Conquerors.

At this time they are divided in *Religion*, as in other places, ſome following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, and others that of thoſe *Reformed Churches*, which adhere to *Calvin*. But this diviſion is more antient than *Calvin*'s dayes; the ſame opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the *Romiſh* Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenſes*, the *Waldenſes*, or *Pauperes de Lugduno* (the *Vaudoys*, as the *French* Writers call them) of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, that the Doctrine of the *Reformed Churches* was not new in *France*, when *Zuinglius* firſt preached againſt the ſuperſtitions of the Maſs, and the worſhip of Images, and *Calvin* travelled in advancing the *Reformation*; though much ſuppreſſed as to the outward profeſſion of it. But being revived by their endeavours, it ſprung out again, and ſpread it ſelfe ſo ſpeedily in this Kingdome; that there were reckoned in the year 1560. above 1250 Churches of them; which cannot in ſuch a long time, but be wonderfully augmented, though ſcarce any of them have ſcaped ſome *maßacre* or other. Of theſe *Maſſacres*, two are moſt memorable, *viz.* that of *Merindoll* and *Chabriers*, as being the firſt, and the maſſacre at *Paris*, as being the greateſt. That of *Merindoll* hapned in the year 1545. The inſtrument of it, being *Minier*, the Preſident of the Councell of *Aix*. For having condemned this poor people of *hereſie*, he muſtered a ſmall Army, and ſet fire on the Village. They of *Merindol*, ſeeing the flame, with their Wives and Children fled into the woods; but were there butchered, or ſent to the Gallies. One boy they took, placed him againſt a tree, and ſhot him with Calivers; 25 which had hid themſelves in a Cave, were in part ſtifled, in part burned. In *Chabriers* they ſo inhumanely dealt with the young wives and maids, that moſt of them dyed immediately after. The men and women were put to the Sword; the children were *rebaptized*; 800 men were murthered in a Cave, and 40 women put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea, ſuch was the cruelty of theſe Soldiers to theſe poor women, that when ſome of them had clambred to the top of the houſe, with an intent to leap down, the Souldiers beat them back again with their Pikes. The *Maſſacre* of *Paris* was more cunningly plotted. A Peace was made with the *Proteſtants*; for the aſſurance whereof, a marriage was ſolemnized, between *Henry* of *Navarre*, chief of the *Proteſtant* party, and the Lady *Marguerite* the Kings ſiſter. At this Wedding there aſſembled the Prince of *Conde*, the Admirall *Coligni*, and divers others of chief note; but there was not ſo much wine drank, as Blood ſhed at it. At midnight the Watch-bell rung, the King of *Navarre* and the Prince of *Conde* are taken Priſoners, the Admirall murdered in his bed; and 30000 at the leaſt of the greateſt and moſt potent men of the *Religion*, ſent by the way of the *Red-Sea* to find the neereſt paſſage to the land of *Canaan*. *An.* 1572. Yet notwithſtanding theſe *Maſſacres*, and the long & frequent Wars which were made againſt them by their Kings, they grew ſo numerous, and got unto ſo great a power; that partly by *Capitulations* with the *French* Kings at the end of every *Civil War*, but principally by the connivence of K. *Henry* the fourth, who was ſometimes the *Head* of their party, they had got above three hundred walled Towns, and Garriſons; and were abſolute maſters in affect of all thoſe Provinces which lie along the *Aquitain* ſhoare, and the *Pyrenees*, from the *Mediterranean* Sea to the River of *Loyre*. But being grown too inſolent by reaſon of ſo great a ſtrength, and ſtanding upon terms with the King as a *Free Eſtate* (the *Common-wealth of Rochell*, as King *Henry* the fourth was uſed to call it) they drew upon themſelves the jealouſie and fury of King *Lewis* the thirteenth. Who ſeeing that he could not otherwiſe diſſolve the knot of their combination, than by the Sword, drew it out at laſt: And was ſo fortunate in the ſucceſs of his Undertaking, that in two years (*viz. An.* 1621. 1622.) he ſtripped them of all their walled Towns, except *Montalban*, and *Rochel* only; and thoſe two he reduced not long after by the power of his Arms: Leaving them nothing to relie on for their future ſecurity, but the grace and clemency of their King, promerited by their obedience and integrity. And it hath ſped ſo well with them ſince that time, that they never had the exerciſe of their *Religion* with ſo much freedom, as they have hitherto enjoyed, ſince the reducing of their Forts and Garriſons to the Kings obedience.

The other party in *Religion*, having the Countenance of the *State*, and the preſcription and poſſeſſion of ſo many yeers to confirm the ſame, is in as proſperous a condition both for *power* and *patrimony*, as any that acknowledgeth the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*, in point of *Patrimony*, the Author of the *Cabinet* computes the Tythe and Temporal Revenues of the *Clergy*, beſides proviſions of all ſorts, to 80 millions of Crowns; but this Accompt is diſallowed by all knowing men. *Bodin* reporteth, from the mouth of *Monſieur Alemant*, one of the *Preſidents* of *Accompts* in *Paris*, that they amount to 12 millions, and 300000 of their *Livres*, which is 1200000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* money; and he himſelfe conceiveth that they poſſeſſe ſeven parts of twelve, of the whole revenues of that Kingdom. The Book entituled *Comment d'Eſtat* gives a lower eſtimate: and reckoning that there are in *France* 200 millions of *Arpens* (which is a meaſure ſomewhat bigger than our *Acre*) aſſigneth 47 millions, which is neer a fourth part of the whole, to the *Gallican Clergy*. And then it is reſolved by all, That the *Baiſemain*, (as they call it) which conſiſts of Offerings, Churches, Barialls, *Dirigies*, and ſuch like Caſualties, amounteth to as much *per annum*, as their ſtanding Rents: Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computeth their *Revenue* at ſix millions yearly. And to ſay truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintain their numbers; there being reckoned in this Kingdome, 13 Arch-Biſhops, 104 Biſhops, 1450 Abbies, 540 Arch-Priories, 12320 Priories, 567 Nunneries, 700 Convents of Friers, 259 *Commanderies* of *Malta*; beſides the Colledges of the *Jeſuites*, which being of a late foundation are not here accompted. And for the *Pariſh-Prieſts*, they are reckoned at 130000 of all ſorts, taking in *Deacons*, *Sub-deacons*, and all thoſe of inferior Orders, which have ſome Miniſtery in their Churches; the number of which was reckoned in the time of King *Lewis* the 11th to be little leſſe than 100000 But then tis like that *Chanteries* and *Free Chappels* went in that Accompt; or elſe the *Hugenots* in the Wars, have deſtroyed more Churches, than they are like to build again in haſt; there being found in *France* on a juſt Accompt, no more than 27400 Pariſh Churches, beſides *Oratories* and *Chappels of Eaſe* appertaining to them. In which, there are ſuppoſed to live 15 millions of people, whereof the *Clergy* and the Miniſters depending on them do make up three millions, which is a fifth part of the whole. And for their *power*, the *Gallican Clergy* ſtands more ſtoutly to their naturall rights, againſt the uſurpations and encroachments of the ſee of *Rome*, than any other that lives under the Popes Authority: which they acknowledg ſo far only as is conſiſtent with their own priviledges, and the rights of their Soveraign. For neither did they in long time ſubmit to the Decrees of the Councel of *Trent*; nor have they yet admitted of the *Inquiſition*; nor yield ſuch ſtore of Griſt to the Popes Mill, as probably might redound to him from ſo rich a Clergy. And for his *Temporal power* over Kings and Princes, it is a doctrine ſo averſe from the Poſitions and principles of the *Gallican Church*; that in the year 1610. the Divines of *Paris* publiſhed a *Declaration*, in which it was affirmed, That the doctrine of the *Popes Supremacy* was an Erroneous doctrine, and the ground of that helliſh poſition of depoſing and killing Kings. And this indeed hath conſtantly been the Doctrine of the *Gallican Church*, ſince the time of *Gerſon*, maintaining the authority of a Councel above that of the Pope.

But to proceed. The men moſt eminent for learning of either ſide have been (beſies thoſe mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his eloquence by the pen of *Balſac*; *Fr. Junius*, a moderate and grave Divine, *Chamier* the Controverſer, and *Philip de Morney*, *Lord of Pleſſis*. Of the other party *Claudius Eſpencæus*, a *Sorbon* Dictor, the famous Cardinal of *Peron*, *Genebrard* the Hiſtorian, *Petavius* a learned *Jeſuite*, &c. In the middle times S. *Bernard* Abbot of *Clarevalle*, *Pet. Lombard* Biſhop of *Paris*, *John Gerſon*, Chancellor of that Univerſity. More antiently *Proſper* of *Aquitain*, *Coſſianus* the Hermit, *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lyons*, (though not here a Native.) And as to men of other Studies, *Auſonius* the Poet, *Hottomon* and *Gotfredus* the Civilians, *Duarenus* the Canoniſt. *Barn. Briſſonius* the great Antiquary, *Iſaac Caſaubon* that renowned Philologer, *Budæus*, that great Maſter of the *Greek* Language, *Thuanus* the Hiſtorian, *Laurentius* the Anatomiſt, &c. And as for Military men, it hath been famous for the valour of *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*, *Charles Martel* that ſtout Champion of the Church againſt the *Saracens*; and *Charles* the great, the Founder of the Weſtern Empire: In the middle times for *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, one of the Nine Worthies (as they call them) the ſon of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogn* in *Picardy*; and in theſe latter dayes for King *Henry* the 4th. *Francis* and *Henry* Dukes of *Guiſe*, *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, Duke of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdom are either *Temporary*, and alterable at pleaſure; or *Fundamental*, which neither King nor Parliament (as they ſay) can alter. Of this laſt ſort the principal are the *Salique* Law, and the Law of *Apennages*. By that of the *Apennage*, the younger Sons of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdom with their Elder-brother; which Law was made by *Charls* the Great, before whoſe time we find the Children of the Kings ſtated in their ſeveral Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them into many Kingdoms. But by this Law they are to be entituled to ſome Dutchy or County (though they are content ſometimes with Annual penſions) with all the rights and profits thereunto belonging; all matters of Regality (as Levying Taxes, Coynage, and the like) excepted only; which upon the failing of the maſculine line, do return again unto the Crown. The name thereof derived from *Abannage*, a *German* word ſignifying a portion.

But the main Law they ſtand on is the *Salique* Law, by which the Crown of *France* may not deſcend unto the Females, or fall *from the Lance to the Diſtaff*, as their ſaying is; Which Law one undertaking to make good out of holy Writ, urged that Text of St. *Mathew*, where it is ſaid, *Mark the Lillies*, (which are the Arms of *France*) *and ſee how they neither labour nor Spin.* This they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond* the firſt King of the *French*, and that the word *Si aliqua* ſo often uſed in it, gave it the name of the *Salique* Law. But *Haillan*, one of their beſt Writers, affirms, That it was never heard of in *France* till the time of *Philip* the *Long*, *An.* 1315. and that it could not poſſibly be made by *Pharamond*, who though he was the firſt King of the *French*, had not one foot of Land in *France*; *Clodion* the ſon of *Pharamond* being the firſt of the *French* Kings which paſſed over the *Rhene*; their third King *Morovee*, the firſt that ever fixt his ſeat in the modern *France*. Others ſay it was made by *Charles* the Great, after the Conqueſt of *Germany*: where the incontinent lives of the Women living about the River *Sala* (in the modern *Miſnia*) gave both the occaſion and the name. *De terra vera* Salica, *nulla portio hæreditatis* mulieri *veniat*, *ſed at* virilem *Sexum tota terra hæreditas perveniat*, are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the learned *Selden* in his *Titles of Honour*, Engliſheth *Knight Fee*, or Land that is holden by *Knights ſervice*, as the Lawyers call it; and proveth this Interpretation by a Record of the Parliament of *Bourdeaux* cited by *Bodinus*; where an old Will or Teſtament being once produced, in which the *Teſtator* had bequeathed unto his ſon all his *Salique* Land, it was reſolved by the Court, that thereby was meant his Land holden in *Knights ſervice*. And then the ſenſe thereof muſt be, that in Lands holden of the Kings by *Knights ſervice*, or the like Military tenure, the Male Children ſhould inherit only: becauſe the Females could not perform thoſe ſervices for which thoſe Lands were given, and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reaſon; though in *England* we deal not ſo unkindly with the Female Sex, but permit them, after the age of 15 years, to enjoy ſuch Lands, becauſe they may then take ſuch Husbands as are able to do the King thoſe ſervices, which the Law requireth. But this Interpretation (how good and genuine ſoever indeed it be) cannot ſtand with the *French* Gloſs. For then the Crown being held of none but God, and ſo not properly to be called a *Fee* or *Feife*, could not be brought within the compaſs of the *Salique* Law, becauſe not to be counted for the *Salique* Land. Give them therefore their own Gloſs, their own Etymology, and Original; and let us ſee by what right Kings daughters are excluded from their ſucceſſion to the Diadem. For firſt, ſuppoſing that to be the *Salique* Land which lyeth about the River *Sala*, in the modern *Miſnia*: I would fain know how it could reach unto the Kings daughters in *France*, ſo far diſtant from it; or with what honeſty they can lay on them the like brand of incontinency, as was ſuppoſed to have been found in thoſe Women of *Germany*. And next, ſuppoſing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applyed to the Crown of *France*, to which *Pharamond* had then no title, nor ſo much as one foot of Land on that ſide of the *Rhene*. And finally, ſuppoſing that the Law was made in ſuch general terms, as to extend to all the Countries, which the *French* in times to come ſhould conquer, and conſequently to *France* when once conquered by them: I would then ask, whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all ſubordinate Eſtates which were holden of it. If unto all Eſtates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give ſentence in behalf of *Charles* of *Blais*, againſt *John de Montfort*, in the ſucceſſion to the Dukedom of *Bretagne*: *Charles* of *Blais* claiming by his Mother, the Neece of *Arthur* the ſecond, by his ſecond Son *Guy*: whereas *John de Montfort* was the third Son (and the next Heir-male) of the ſaid Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of *France*, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true Heirs of *Anne* the Dutcheſs: whoſe Daughter and Heir the Lady *Claude*, being married unto *Francis* the firſt, had iſſue *Henry* the ſecond, and other Children. Which *Henry*, beſides *Francis* the ſecond, *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* the third, and *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, all dying without iſſue, had a Daughter named *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth* married to *Philip* the 2d. King of *Spain*, by whom ſhe was made the mother of *Iſabella*, the late Arch-dutcheſs, and of *Katharine* the Wife of *Charles Emanuel* the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to ſay any thing of the pretenſions of the houſe of *Lorrein*, deſcending from the Lady *Claude*, the ſecond daughter of King *Henry* the ſecond, and Siſter of *Iſabel*, or *Elizabeth* Queen of *Spain*. Nor do we find that the *French* ſo ſtand upon this Law, as not to think that a ſucceſſion by and from the Females, is in ſome caſes their beſt Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thruſt his Maſter *Childerick* into a Monaſtery, to make good his Title to the Crown (or ſome colour of it) derived his Pedigree from *Plythilda*, one of the Daughters of *Blotaire* the firſt, married to *Anſpert* the Grandfather of that *Arnulphus*, who was the firſt *Mayer* of the Palace of *Pepins* Family. As alſo how *Hugh Capet*, putting aſide *Charles* of *Lorrein* the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawleſs Action the more ſeemingly lawfull, drew his deſcent from ſome of the Heirs General of *Charles* the Great; his Mother *Adeltheid*, being the Daughter of the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, ſurnamed the *Flower*; who was the ſon of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgardis* the Daughter of the Emperour *Arnulph*, the laſt Emperour of the *Romans* (or *Germans*) of the houſe of *Charles*. And it is ſaid of *Lewis* the ninth, ſo renowned for ſanctity amongſt them, that he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet conſcience, till it was proved unto him, that by his Grandmother, the Lady *Iſabel* of *Hainalt*, he was deſcended from *Hermingrade* the Daughter of *Charles* of *Lorrein*. Adde here, that this ſuppoſed *Salique Law* not only croſſeth the received Laws of all Nations elſe, which admit of Women to the ſucceſſion in their Kingdoms, where the Crown deſcends in a ſucceſſion; and have a great reſpect both unto their perſons and poſterities in ſuch Kingdoms alſo, where the Kings are ſaid to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*: but that even *France* it ſelf hath ſubmitted to the imperious command of two Women of the *Medices*; and at the preſent, to the Government of a *Spaniſh* Princeſs. So that it is evident, that this Law by whomſoever made, and how far ſoever it extended, is of no ſuch force, but that the *Labels* of it may be eaſily cut in pieces by an *Engliſh* ſword well whetted; if there were no other bar to the title of *England*, than the authority and antiquity of the *Salique* Law.

But for my part (if it be lawfull for me to diſpute this point) I am not ſatisfied in the right of the *Engliſh* title; ſuppoſing the *Salique* Law to be of no ſuch force, as the *French* intended: and meaſuring the ſucceſſion in the Crown of *France*, to be according to ſucceſſions in the Realm of *England*, on which King *Edward* the third ſeemed to ground his claim. For if there were no *Salique* Law to exclude ſucceſſion by the *Females*, as the *Engliſh* did pretend there was not: yet could not *Edward* coming from a Siſter of the 3 laſt Kings, which reigned ſucceſſivly before *Philip* of *Valois*, againſt whom he claimed be ſerved in courſe, before the daughters of thoſe Kings (or the *Males* at leaſt deſcending of them) had had their turns in the ſucceſſion of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren, two left iſſue, viz. *Lewis*, and *Philip*. *Lewis* ſurnamed *Hutin*, Son of *Philip* the fair, and *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, who was K. of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which marriage iſſued all the ſucceeding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Burbon*. *Philip*, the ſecond Brother, ſurnamed the *Long*, by *Joan* Daughter of *Othelin* Earl of *Burgundy*, had a daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*; from whom deſcended thoſe great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Spain*. If then there were no *Salique* Law to exclude the Women and their ſons, *Charles* King of *Navarre* the ſon of Queen *Joan* and of *Philip de Eureux*, deſcended from *Lewis Hutin* the elder brother; and *Lewis de Melaine* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the ſon of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the daughter of *Philip* the *Long* the ſecond brother; muſt have precedency of title before King *Edward* the third of *England* deſcended from a Siſter of the ſaid two Kings; their iſſue ſeverally and reſpectively, before any claiming or deſcending from the ſaid King *Edward*. So that K. *Edward* the third had ſome other claim than what is commonly alledged for him in our *Engliſh* Hiſtories; or elſe he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive ſo wiſe a King, would not have ventured on a buſineſs of ſo great conſequence, without ſome colourable Title; though what this Title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore that he went on ſome other grounds, than that of *ordinary ſucceſſion* by the Law of *England*, and claimed that Crown, as the *eldeſt heir-male* and neareſt kinſman to the laſt King, for being Siſters ſon to the King deceaſed, he was a degree nearer to him than either the King of *Navarre*, or the Earl of *Flanders*, who were the Grand-children of his Brethren: and having priority of either in reſpect of age, had a fair title before either, to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on theſe grounds King *Edward* might the rather go, becauſe he found it a *ruled caſe*, in the diſpute about the ſucceſſion in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For though King *Edward* the firſt meaſuring the order of ſucceſſion by the Laws of *England*, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who ſhould hold it of him; gave ſentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grand-child of the eldeſt daughter of the Earl of *Huntingdon*:

yet was this his ſentence diſavowed, and proteſted againſt by the other *Competitors.* **Robert Bruce** Son of the ſecond Daughter of the ſaid Earl of ***Huntingdon***, as a degree neerer to the laſt King, though deſcended from the younger Siſter, not only thought himſelf wronged in it, but had the whole *Scottiſh* Nation for him to aſſert his right: by whoſe unanimous conſent his ſon was called to the Government of the Realm of *Scotland*, during the life of *Baliol* and his Patron both. *Proximity* in blood to the King deceaſed, was meaſured by neerneſs of degrees, not deſcent of birth; and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of *England*, as *Bruce* had formerly poſſeſſed himſelf of the Crown of *Scotland*; ſo on the ſame, though different from the Laws of *Caſtile*, did *Philip* the ſecond ground his claim to the Crown of *Portugal*. For being eldeſt ſon of *Mary*, the Siſter of *Henry* the laſt King (and this was juſt King *Edward*'s caſe to the Crown of *France*) he thought himſelf to be preferred before the Prince of *Parma*, and the Duke of *Bragance*, deſcended from the Daughters of *Edward* the ſaid Kings Brothers; becauſe the eldeſt Male of the Royal blood, and nearer to the ſaid King *Henry* by one degree. In the purſuance of which title, as *Philip* openly avowed, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him than the Laws of *Caſtile*: ſo in like caſe, the Laws of *France* might be more favourable to King *Edward*, than the Laws of *England*. In claims to Crowns, the Rules of *Regal Succeſſion* differ in many Countries; and in few Countries are the ſame with that of the ſucceſſion into mean Eſtates: as may be proved by many particulars in the Realm of *England*, in which the *Law of the Crown* differeth very much from the *Law of the Land*; as in the Caſe of *Parceners*, the *whole blood*, (as our Lawyers call it) the *Tenure by courteſie*, and ſome others; were this a time and place fit for it. But to return again to *France*; whether the *Salique* Law were in force or not, it made not much unto the prejudice of King *Edward* the third; though it ſerved **Philip** the **Long** to exclude the Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*; and *Charles* the *fair* to do the like with the Daughter of **Philip**; as it did *Philip* of *Valoys*, to diſpoſſeſs the whole Lineage of King *Philip le Bell.*

Machiavel accounteth this *Salique* Law to be a great happineſs to the **French** Nation, not ſo much in relation to the unfitneſs of Women to Govern (for therein ſome of them have gone beyond moſt men) but becauſe thereby the Crown of *France* is not endangered to fall into the hands of ſtrangers. Such men conſider not how great Dominions may by this means be incorporate to the Crown. They remember not how *Maud* the Empreſs being married to *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourain*, and *Maine*, conveyed thoſe Countries to the Diadem of *England*; nor what rich and fertile Provinces were added to *Spain*, by the Match of the Lady *Joan*, to Arch-duke *Philip*: neither do they ſee thoſe great advantages of power and ſtrength which *England* now enjoyeth by the conjunction of *Scotland*, proceeding from a like marriage. Yet there is a ſaying in *Spain*, that as a man ſhould deſire to live in *Italy*, becauſe of the civility and ingenuous natures of the people; and to dy in *Spain*, becauſe there the *Catholique Religion* is ſo ſincerely profeſſed: ſo he ſhould wiſh to be born in *France*, becauſe of the nobleneſſe of that Nation, which never had any King but of their own Countrey.

The chief enemies to the **French** have been the *Engliſh* and *Spaniards*. The former had here great poſſeſſions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdom: but being called home by civil diſſentions, loſt all. At their departure, the **French** ſcoffingly asked an *Engliſh* Captain, When they would return: Who feelingly anſwered, *When your ſins be greater than ours.* The *Spaniards* began but of late with them, yet have they taken from them *Navarre*, *Naples*, and *Millain*: they diſplanted them in *Florida*; poyſoned the *Dauphin* of *Viennois* (as it was generally conceived) murdered their Souldiers in cold bloud, being taken priſoners in the Iſles of *Tercera*; and by their Faction, raiſed even in *France* it ſelf, drave *Henry* the third out of *Paris*, and moſt of his other Cities; and at laſt cauſed him to be murdered by *Jaques Clement*, a *Dominican Frier*. The like they intended to his ſucceſſor King *Henry* the 4th. whoſe coming to the Crown they oppoſed to their utmoſt power, and held a tedious war againſt him. Concerning which laſt war, when they ſided with the Duke of *Mayenne*, and the reſt of thoſe Rebels, which called themſelves the *Holy League* (of which the Duke of *Guiſe* was the Author) againſt the two Kings *Henry* the third and fourth; a **French** Gentleman made this excellent alluſion. For being asked the cauſe of theſe *civil broils*, he replyed they were *Spania* and *Mania*; ſeeming by this anſwer to ſignifie Σπανία, penury, and Μανία, fury, which are indeed the cauſes of all inteſtine tumults: but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*: ſince which time the *French*, upon the turn of Fortune, (notwithſtanding the croſs marriage between the Kings of both Kingdomes, and their ſeveral Siſters) have had as great a hand upon the *Spaniards*; outing them by their plots and practices of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*, and the Country of **Catalogne** in the main land of *Spain* it ſelf, and of many of the beſt parts of *Artois*, **Hainalt**, and other of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the force of Arms. So little conſtancy there is, either in the affairs of Fortune, or the affection of great Princes, that no wiſe man can truſt the one, or depend ſafely on the other. For in the former times, as we read in *Cominaus*, there were no Princes more friendly than theſe two; the Kings of *Caſtile* and *France* being the neereſt confederated Princes in Chriſtendom. For their league was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and Subject; which they were all bound under great curſes to keep inviolable. But of late times, eſpecially ſince the beginning of the wars between *Charles* the fifth, and **Francis** the firſt, for the Dukedom of *Millain*; there have not been greater *animoſities*, nor more implacable enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*. Which ſeconded by the mutual jealouſies they have of each other, and the diverſity of Conſtellations under which they live: hath produced ſuch diſſimilitude betwixt them in all their waies, that there is not greater contrariety of temper, carriage and affections betwixt any two Nations in the World, than is betwixt theſe Neighbours, parted no otherwiſe from one another, than by paſſable Hills. Firſt in the *Actions* of the *Soul*, the one *Active* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*; the one ſociable and diſcourſive; the other reſerved and full of thought; the one ſo *open*, that you cannot hire him to keep a ſecret; the other ſo *cloſe*, that all the *Rhetorick* in the world cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Faſhion* and Apparel, the *French* wears his hair long, the *Spaniard* ſhort; the *French* goes thin and open to the very ſhirt, as if there were continual Summer, the *Spaniard* ſo wrapt up and cloſe, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upwards; the laſt alwaies conſtant to his Faſhion, the firſt intent ſo much on nothing as on new Fancies of Apparel. Then for their *Gate*, the *French* walk faſt, as if purſued on an *Arreſt*, the *Spaniard* ſlowly, as if newly come out of a *Quartan Ague*; the *French* go up and down in cluſters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the moſt; the *French Lackqueys* march in the *Rere*, and the *Spaniſh* alwayes in the *Van*; the *French* ſings and danceth as he walks the ſtreets, the *Spaniards* in a grave and ſolemn poſture, as if he were going a *Proceſſion*. The like might be obſerved of their tune, their ſpeech, and almoſt every paſſage in the life of Man: for which I rather chooſe to refer the Reader to the ingenious *James Howel*'s Book of *Inſtructions for Travel*, than inſiſt longer on it here. Only I adde, that of the two ſo different humours, that of the *Spaniard* ſeems to be the more approvable; Inſomuch as the *Neopolitans*, *Millanois*, and *Sicilians*, who have had trial of both Nations, chooſe rather to ſubmit themſelves to the proud and ſevere yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the luſts and inſolencies of the *French*, not ſufferable by men of even and well-ballanced ſpirits. And poſſible enough it is, that ſuch of the *Netherlands* as have of late been won to the Crown of *France*, will find ſo little comfort in the change of their Maſters, as may confirm the reſidue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Country, next to the *Pyrenees* which part *France* from *Spain*; the *Joure* or *Jura*, which ſeparates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*; and the *Vauge* or *Vogeſus*, which divides it from *Lorrein*; are thoſe which *Caſar* calleth *Gebenna*, *Ptolemy Cimmeni*; being the ſame which ſeparate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*, called therefore the mountains of *Auvergne*; the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the moſt part is plain and champian; the others before mentioned, being common unto this, with the bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully ſtored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1 *Sequana* or *Seine*, which ariſing in *Burgundy*; watering the Cities of *Paris* and *Roane*, and receiving into it nine navigable ſtreams, diſburdeneth it ſelf into the *Britiſh* Ocean. 2 *Some*, in *Latin* called *Samona*, which riſing neer the Town of S. *Quintin*, firſt cutteth between *Picardy* and *Artoys*, afterwards paſſeth through the fair City of *Amiens*, and the goodly Town of *Abbeville*, and finally having received eight leſſer ſtreams, loſeth it ſelf into the ſame Sea alſo. 3 *Ligeris*, or *Loyre*, on which are ſeated *Nantes* and *Orleance*. It riſeth about the mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greateſt in *France*) and having runne 600 miles, and augmented his channel with the entertainment of 72 leſſer rivulets, mingleth his ſweet waters with the brackiſh *Aquitan* Ocean. 4 *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhoſne*, which ſpringing from the *Alpes*, three *Dutch* miles from the head of the *Rhene*, paſſeth by *Lyons* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen leſſer Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5 The *Soaſne*, by the old *Latins* called *Araris*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Vogeſus* or *Vauge*, in the borders of *Lorreign* and *Alſatia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other, and falleth into the *Rhoſne* at the City of *Lyons*. 6 *Garumna*, or the *Garond*, which iſſuing out of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, paſſing by *Tholouſe* and *Burdeaux*, and having ſwallowed up ſixteen leſſer Rivers (of which the *Dordonne* is the chief) diſburdeneth it ſelf into the *Aquitane* Ocean, neer the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River *Dordonne*, being called the *Giarronne*. Of theſe it is ſaid proverbially, that the *Seine* is the richeſt, the *Rhoſne* the ſwifteſt, the *Garond* the greateſt, and the *Loyre* the ſweeteſt. And by theſe and many other Rivers this Kingdom is enriched with 34 excellent Havens, having all the Properties of a good Harbour; that is to ſay, 1 Room, 2 Safety, 3 Eaſineſs of defence, 4 Reſort of Merchants.

As for ſo much of the ſtory hereof as concerneth the whole, it was firſt peopled, if we may give credit to *Annius*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samothes* the ſixth ſon of *Japhet*, (affirmed by them, and ſuch as adhere unto them, to be that ſon of his, who in the Scripture is called *Meſech*) in the year of the World 1806. But thoſe which are better converſant in the courſe of Hiſtory, have utterly laid aſide this deviſe of *Annius*, Even *Functius*, though a great *Beroſian*, doth confeſſe ingenuouſly, *Quis hic* Samothes *fuerit incertum eſt*, that it is unreſolved who this *Samothes* was. And *Vignier*, a *French* Antiquary doth confeſſe with *Functius*, *Mais un ne ſcay qui il eſtoit*, that no body can tell us who he was. They who have better ſtudied this point than *Annius*, derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Japhets* eldeſt ſon, whoſe off-ſpring were firſt called *Gomerians*, afterwards *Cimmerians*, at laſt *Cimbri*: firſt planted (as before was ſaid) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long preſerved his memory; and after changing that unfruitful and unpleaſant dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, wherein the City *Cimmeris* did retain ſomewhat of his name, in the times of *Pliny*. Afterwards his poſterity proceeded further in the *leſſer Aſia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany* and *Gaul*, and *Britain* with his numerous iſſues: the *Galls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the ſame Original, though known amongſt the *Romans* by two different names. From whence they had the names of *Gauls*, and *Celtes*, and *Galata*, hath been ſhewn before. It ſhall ſuffice us now to adde, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having ſomewhat in them of the blood of *Hercules*; they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whoſe love, no King could ſecure himſelf from imminent dangers. They were very ſparing in their diet, and uſed to fine any one that outgrew his girdle. With theſe men the *Romans* fought at firſt for their own preſervation, rather than out of any hope by the conqueſt of them to improve either their fame of their Dominions. Inſomuch that when they had invaded *Italy* with a numerous army, in favour of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, under the conduct of *Aneroeſtus* and *Congelianus*, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as *Telamon* a City of *Tuſcany*; the *Romans* thought they had done enough in diſcomfiting their Forces, and clearing their own Provinces of them; holding it for a point of Wiſdome to purſue them, or invade their Countrey; though by the conqueſt of *Liguria* but few years before, they had inlarged their Dominions to the borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great Atchievements in the Wars, theſe were they, who under the conduct of *Belloreſus*, paſſing over the *Alpes*, conquered the neareſt parts of *Italy*, called afterwards *Gallia Ciſalpina*; and under that of *Segoveſus*, over-run all *Germany*; and following their ſucceſſes as far as *Scythia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Scythæ*. Theſe were the men, whoſe iſſue under the command of *Brennus*, diſcomfited the *Romans*, at the River *Allia*, ſacked the City, and beſieged the Capitol, *An.M.*3577.*V.C.*365. In which action they ſo terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulſion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a Law made, that the Prieſts, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, ſhould be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And finally, theſe were the men, who under the command of *Belgius* and another *Brennus*, ranſacked *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they ſpoiled and plundered the Temple of *Delphos*; for which ſacriledge they were viſited with the peſtilence. Such as ſurvived this Plague, went into *Aſia*, and there gave name to that Countrey, now called *Galatia*; of whom thus *Du Bartus*:

> The ancient *Gaul*, in roving every way,
> As far as *Phœbus* darts his golden Ray;
> Seiz'd *Italy*, the Worlds proud Miſtreſs ſackt,
> Which rather *Mars* then *Romulus* compact.
> Then ſpoils *Piſidia*, *Myſia* doth inthrall;
> And midſt of *Aſia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at laſt the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almoſt all the reſidue of the (then known) World. Attempted firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, a *Roman* Conſul, called in by the *Maſſilienſes* to aſſiſt them againſt the *Salii* their unquiet Neighbours, *A.V.C.* 628. that part hereof which afterwards was called *Narbonenſis*, being brought into the form of a *Roman* Province at the concluſion of the war againſt the *Allobroges* and *Averni*, (undertaken at the like complaint of the *Hedui*) about five years after. Not totally ſubdued untill the time of *Julius Cæſar*, and not eaſily then. For though the War was managed then by the ableſt Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to, yet was it not more eaſily vanquiſhed, by the valour and fortune of the *Romans*, then by want of good intelligence and correſpondence among themſelves. Nor did they ſell their liberty ſo good cheap, as thoſe other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal; *Cæſar* himſelf affirming, that he had ſlain 1192000 of them, before they would ſubmit to the *Roman* yoke. But at the laſt they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Countrey was divided into theſe four parts, 1 *Narbonenſis*, called ſo from the City of *Narbon*, then a *Roman* Colony, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and ſome part of *Savoy*, called alſo *Braceata* at the firſt conqueſt by the *Romans*, from the uſual habit of the people (reſembling the Mantles uſed by the wild *Iriſh*) called in *Latine Braccæ*: attempted firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, in his war againſt the *Salii*, as before is ſaid; and finally ſubdued, *A.V.C.* 633. by *Fabius Maximus*, and *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, in their war againſt the *Allobroges*, and their confederates before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming in of *Julius Cæſar*. 2 *Aquitanica*, ſo called from the City of *Aqua Auguſta* (now *D'Acqs*, in *Guienne*) lying upon the *Pyrenees*, and the wide Ocean, which comprehended the Provinces of *Gaſcoign*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoign*, *Limoſin*, *Quercu*, *Perigort*, *Berry*, *Burbonoys*, and *Auvergne*, extending from the *Pyrenees* to the River of *Loyre*, and conſequently ſtretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3 *Celtica*, ſo named from the valiant Nation of the *Celtæ*, (called alſo *Lugdunenſis*, from the City of *Lyons*; and *Comata* from the long hair worn amongſt this people) extending from the *Loyre* to the *Britiſh Ocean*, and comprehending the Provinces of *Bretagne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourin*, *Main*, *La Beauſſe*, the Iſle of *France*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Lyonnois*, 4 *Belgica*, from the *Belgæ*, a potent Nation of that tract, taking up all the Eaſt parts of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the reſt of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with ſo much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lyeth on this ſide of the *Rhene*, belonging now to the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, *Gaul* was appointed for the ſeat of one of the four *Præfecti Pratorio*, deſigned for the four quarters of it. His title *Præfectus Pratorio Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Dioceſſes of *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*: this Dioceſs of *Gaul* being caſt into ſeventeen Provinces, that is to ſay, 1 *Lugdunenſis Prima*, 2 *Secunda*, 3 *Tertia*, 4 *Quarta*, 5 *Belgica Prima*, 6 *Secunda*, 7 *Germania Prima*, 8 *Secunda*, 9 *Narbonenſis prima*, 10 *Secunda*, 11 *Aquitania prima*, 12 *Secunda*, 13 *Novempopulonia*, 14 *Viennenſis*, 15 *Maxima Sequanorum*, 16 *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, 17 *Alpes Maritimæ*. Of theſe ſeventeen, *Germania Prima & Secunda*, all *Belgica Prima*, and a great part of *Secunda*, all that of the *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, and ſo much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lieth in *Switzerland*, are now diſmembred from the name and accompt of *France*. What principal Nations of the *Gauls*, and what Provinces of the preſent *France*, the reſt contained; ſhall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it ſtood not in this ſtate. For within ſixty years after the death of *Conſtantine*, during the Reigns of *Honorius* and *Theodoſius*, the *Burgundians*, a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour, to keep the borders of the Empire againſt the *French*; then ready with ſome other of the barbarous Nations to invade the ſame. The *Gothes* not long after by agreement with the ſame *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were veſted in *Gaul Narbonoys*, by the gift of that Emperour; with a good part of *Tarraconenſis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added, in regard of the ſervice they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impreſſion on that Countrey. And in the reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long hovered on the banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the diſtractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; firſt made themſelves Maſters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after ſpread themſelves over all the reſt of the Provinces which had not been ſubdued by the *Gothes*, and *Burgundians*: excepting a ſmall corner of *Armorica*, then poſſeſſed by the *Britans*. So that the *Romans* being outed of all the Countrey, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality then could be imagined: The *Gothes* poſſeſſing all *Aquitain* and *Narbonenſis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*, *Languedock*, *Gaſcoigne*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoigne*, *Poictou*, *Berry*, *Limouſin*, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their ſhare the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolais*, *Forreſt*, the Countreys of *Lionois*, *La Breſſe*, *Daulphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them ſo denominated. The reſt (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was poſſeſſed by the *French*, who in ſhort time repulſed the *Viſigoths*, or Weſtern *Gothes*, (then buſie in the Conqueſt of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the *Roman Aquitain*, by the valour of *Clovis* the Great, their firſt Chriſtian King, before they could challenge a Proſcription of 60 years. Nor was it long before *Provence* alſo was reſigned to *Theodorick* the *French* King, of *Mets* by *Amalaſunta*, Queen of the *Oſtro-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*, nothing being left unto that Nation of all their *Gallick* Conqueſts, but *Languedock* only. In which reſpect, the *Gothiſh* Provinces of *Gall* (except *Provence* only) together with ſo much of the *Burgundians* which was after laid to Weſt *France*, ſhall paſs in the accompt of the *French* part of this Countrey, the reſt of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts which lie within the bounds of the modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) ſhall be conſidered by themſelves in the deſcription and affairs of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, a diſtinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but by piecemeal, and by ſeveral Titles, (and yet not wholly ſo neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themſelves, and the ſucceſſion of their Kings, we will ſpeak at laſt, when we have brought all the chief parts and Provinces of this flouriſhing Countrey, into their poſſeſſion. The principal Provinces are, 1 *France*, ſpecially ſo called. 2 *Champagne*, 3 *Picardy*, 4 *Normandy*, 5 *Bretagne*. 6 The Eſtates of *Anjou*, with its members. 7 *La Beauſſe*, 8 *Nivernois*, 9 The Dukedome of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependent on it, being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the firſt acqueſts of the *French*. Then follow the chief Provinces of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom, that is to ſay, 10 *Berry*, 11 *Poictou*, 12 *Limoſin*, 13 *Perigort*, and 14 *Quercu*, 15 *Aquitain*, with the members of it, and 16 *Languedock*: And laſt of all the *Burgundian* Kingdom, of which there now remain in *France*, the Counties of 17 *Provence*. 18 *Daulphine*. 19 *La Breſſe*, 20 *Lyonnois*. 21 The *Dutchy*, and 22 the County of *Burgundy*. 23 The Iſlands of the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick* Ocean, in the cloſe of all. Of ſome of which *La Nova* a *French* Authour hath paſſed this cenſure: The men of *Berry* are Leachers, they of *Tourein*, Thieves, they of *Languedock*, Traitors, they of *Provence* Atheiſts, they of *Rhemes* (or *Champagne*) ſuperſtitious, they of *Normandy* inſolent, they of *Picardy* proud, *& ſic de cæteris*. But here we are to underſtand, that all theſe Provinces (though paſſing by the name and account of *France*) are not under the command of the *French* King, the Iſles of *Jarſey* and *Guernzey*, being poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*; the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolois* by the King of *Spain*; the Dutchy of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the houſe of *Naſſaw*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of *Rome*. And on the other ſide, the *French* Kings are poſſeſſed of ſome Towns and Cities, not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperial Cities of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdum*; lying within the Dukedome of *Lorrein*, the Forts and paſs of *Pignerolle* in the Dukedome of *Savoy*, and the Port of *Monaco*, in *Liguria*; *Baſe Navarre*, in *Spain*: not to ſay any thing of their late acqueſts in *Spain* and *Flanders*; which I look not on as parts of the *French* Dominions.

FRANCE, *ſpecially ſo called.*

THE firſt place which the *Franks* or *French* had for their fixt habitation, was by that people honoured with the name of *FRANCE*; the firſt *green turf* of *Gallick* ground, by which they took *livery* and *ſeiſin* of all the reſt. A Province now bounded on the Eaſt with *Champagne*, on the North with *Normandy*, on the Weſt and South with *La Beauſſe*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called *the Iſle of France*; as being circled almoſt round with Several Rivers: that is to ſay, the *Oiſe* on the North, the *Eure* on the Weſt, the *Velle* on the Eaſt, and a vein-riveret of the *Sein*, towards the South. A Countrey not ſo large as many of the *French* Provinces, but ſuch as hath given name unto all the reſt; it being the fate of many ſmall, but puiſſant Provinces to give their name

The Iſle of France.

others, which are greater then they, if conquered and brought under by them. For thus we ſee the little Province of *Poland*, to have maſtered and given name to the *Mazovii*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, as that of *Moſco*, to the Provinces of *Aſiatica*. And thus have thoſe of *Sweden* conquered, and denominated almoſt all the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the ſmalleſt Provinces. And thus this Iſland being the ſeat Royal of the *French*, in *Gallia*, gave name to all the reſidue of it, as they made it theirs. A Countrey generally ſo fruitful and delectable, (except in *Gaſtinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equal to the Vallies in moſt places of *Europe*; but the vale of *Montmorency* (wherein *Paris* ſtandeth) ſcarce to be fellowed in the World. An argument whereof may be, that when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their confederates, beſieged that City with an Army of 100000 men; neither the Aſſailants without, nor the Citizens within, found any ſcarcity of victuals; and yet the Citizens, beſides Souldiers, were reckoned at 500000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica ſecunda* and *Lugdunenſis quarta*, the chief inhabitants thereof being the *Pariſii*, the *Bellovaci*, and the *Silvanectes*: and is now divided into four parts, that is to ſay, the Dukedome of *Valois*, 2 *Gaſtinois*, 3 *Heurepoix*, and that which is properly called, the *Iſle of France*, by ſome the *Prevoſte*, or *County of Paris*.

1. The Dukedome or County of *VALOIS*, lieth towards *Picardy*, the principal Cities of it, 1 *Senlis*, (in Latine *Silvanectum*) a Biſhops See. 2 *Compeigne* (*Compendium*) ſeated on the River *Oiſe*, a retiring place of the *French* Kings, for hunting and other Countrey pleaſures. 3 *Beauvois*, the chief City of the *Bellovaci*, by *Ptolomy* called *Caſaromagus*, a fair, large, well-traded Town, from which the Countrey round about hath the name of *Beauvoiſin*. The Patrimony in former times of *Roger* the third ſon of *Theobald*, the ſecond Earl of *Blais*, and younger Brother of *Odon* the firſt Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the title of Earl of *Beauvois*: and at his death gave it for ever to the Biſhops hereof; for anciently this City was a See Epiſcopal, the Biſhop whereof is one of the twelve Peers of *France*. *Philip* one of the Biſhops here in times ſucceeding, a military man, and one that had much damnified the *Engliſh* Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard* the firſt. The Pope being made acquainted with his Impriſonment, but not the cauſe of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an *Eccleſiaſtical* perſon, and one of his *beloved Sonnes*: The King returned unto the Pope the Armour which the the Biſhop was taken in; and theſe words engraven on the ſame, *Vide an hæc ſit tunica filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* children ſpake unto him, when they preſented him with the Coat of their brother *Joſeph*: Which the Pope viewing, ſwore, That it was rather the Coat of a Son of *Mars*, then a Son of the Church, and ſo left him wholly to the Kings pleaſure. 4 *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County of *Beauvoiſin*: memorable for giving the title of Earl of *Clermont*, to *Robert* the fifth Son of the King S. *Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*, afterwards to the eldeſt Sonnes of that Princely Family: and finally, to *Catharine de Medices*, created Counteſſe of *Clermont* and *Boulogne*, at her marriage with *Henry* Duke of *Orleans*, Succeſſor to King *Francis* the firſt in the Realm of *France*. 5 *Luzarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Soiſſons*. 6 *Brenonville*. 7 St. *Loup*, on the Confines of *Picardy*, ſo called from a Monaſtery dedicated to Saint *Lupus*, Biſhop of *Troys* in *Champagne*, ſent into *Britain* with *Germanus* to ſuppreſs the *Pelagian* Hereſies which were there beginning. But of this part of *France* nothing more obſervable, then that it gave denomination to the Royal Family of the *French* Kings (13 in number) from hence intituled *de Valois*; beginning in *Philip de Valois*, *Anno* 1328. and ending in *Henry* the third, *Anno* 1589. As for the Earls hereof (from whom that Adjunct or denomination had its firſt Original) the firſt who had the title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the ſecond Son of *Philip* the third, in right of his wife, Earl of *Anjou* alſo: After whoſe death it deſcended upon *Philip de Valois* his eldeſt Son, who carried the Crown of *France* from our *Edward* the third. On his aſſuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his ſecond Brother: and he deceaſing without iſſue, *Anno* 1391. to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Son of *Charles* the fift, amongſt the titles of which houſe it lay *dormant*, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis* the twelfth; and lately given unto the *Monſieur* or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis* the thirteenth, and Uncle to King *Lewis* the fourteenth, now reigning, upon the firſt reconciliation made betwixt him and his brother: adding thereby to his Eſtate no leſſe then 10000 pounds ſterling of yearly rents, which makes up 100000 *Franks* or *Livres* in the *French* account. I only add, that *Charls* the firſt Earl of this Family, as he was the ſon of *Philip* the third, brother of *Philip* the fourth, ſurnamed the *Fair*, and Father of *Philip de Valois*: So was he Uncle to *Lewis Hutin*, *Philip* the *Long*, and *Charles* the *Fair*, all in their order Kings of *France*. In which regard it was ſaid of him, that he was the Son, Brother, Father, and Uncle of Kings; yet no King himſelf.

2. The ſecond part of this Province is called *HEUREPOIX*, beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris* on the River of *Sein*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verine*, which divides it from *Gaſtinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Charenton*, three miles from *Paris*, where the *French Proteſtants* of that City have their Church for *Religious* exerciſes; it being not permitted them to hold their Aſſemblies in any walled Cities, or Garriſon Towns, for fear of any ſudden ſurprize, which ſo great a multitude might eaſily make. Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Pariſians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mayennes* death, ſlain at the ſiege of *Montalban*, *Anno* 1622. was preſently re-edified by the command of the Duke of *Mombazon*, then Governour of the Iſle of *France*, at the charge of the State: to let thoſe of the Reformed party underſtand that it was their diſobedience and not their Religion, which cauſed the King to arm againſt them. 2 *Corbeil* ſeated on the confluence of *Sein*, and *Eſſons*. 3 *Moret*, which gives the title of an Earl

The Iſle of France.

to one of the natural ſons of *Henry* the fourth, begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4 *Melun*, by *Cæſar* called *Melodunum*, the principal of this *Heurepoix*, and the ſeat of the *Bailiff* for this Tract. Here is alſo in this part the Royal Palace of *Fountain-bel-eau*, ſo called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongſt which it ſtandeth; but otherwiſe ſeated in a ſolitary and woody Countrey, fit for hunting only: and for that cauſe much viſited by the *French* Kings in their times of leaſure; and beautified with ſo much coſt by King *Henry* the fourth, that it is abſolutely the ſtatelieſt and moſt magnificent pile of building in all *France*.

3. *GASTINOIS*, the moſt dry and barren part of this Province, but rich enough, if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris* and the Countrey of *Orleanoys*. The chief places of it are 1 *Eſtampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it towards *La Beauſſe*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a Colledge of *Chanoins*, with the ruines of an ancient Caſtle: which togetherwith the Walls and demoliſhed Fortifications of it, ſhew it to have been of great importance in the former times. Given with the title of an Earl by *Charls* Duke of *Orleans*, then Lord hereof, to *Richard* the third ſon of *John* of *Montfort*, Duke of *Bretagne* in marriage with his Siſter the Lady *Marguerite*; from which marriage iſſued *Francis* Earl of *Eſtampes*, the laſt Duke of *Bretagne*. 2 *Montleherry*, famous for the battel betwixt King *Lewis* the eleventh, and *Charles* Earl of *Charolois* (after Duke of *Burgundy*) in which both ſides ran out of the field, and each proclaimed it ſelf the Victor. It ſtandeth in the road betwixt *Paris* and *Eſtampes*. And ſo doth 3 *Caſtres* of the bigneſs of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a *Chamber* or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here ſetled by King *Henry* the 4th. for the uſe and benefit of his Subjects of the Reformed Religion, in *Latine* called *Camera Caſtrenſis*. 4 *Nemours* upon the River of *Loing*, the chief of *Gaſtinois* in name, but not in beauty (wherein inferiour to *Eſtampes*) a Town which hath given the title of Duke to many eminent perſons of *France*. Here is alſo in this part the County of *Rotchfort*, and the Towns of *Milly*. 2 *Montargis*, &c. More there occurreth not worth the noting, in this part of the Countrey, but that being part of the poſſeſſions of *Hugh* the Great, Conſtable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*: it was given by him, together with the Earldome of *Anjou* to *Geofry* ſurnamed *Gryſogonelle*, a right Noble warrier, and a great ſtickler in behalf of the houſe of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it ſelf, which at laſt they carried. Continuing in his line till the time of *Fulk* the 2d. the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip* the firſt; that by his help he might poſſeſs himſelf of the Earldom of *Anjou*, from this part wherein he was excluded by his elder brother. Never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, in fact or title.

4. But the great glory of this Province is that which is more properly called the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, and ſometimes κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Iſle*, cauſed by the Circlings and embracements of the Rivers of *Sein* and *Marn*; the abſtract of the whole beauties, and glories of *France*, which in this rich and pleaſant Valley are ſummed up together.

Chief places in it, S. *German*, ſeated on the aſcent of an hill, ſeven miles from *Paris*, down the water: a pretty neat and handſome town, honoured with one of the faireſt Palaces of the *French* Kings; which being built (like *Windſor*) on the top of a fine mountainet on the Rivers ſide, affordeth an excellent proſpect over all the Countrey. The excellent water-works herein, have been deſcribed on occaſion of thoſe of *Tivoli*, ſo much extolled by the *Italians*. It was firſt built by *Charls* the fifth, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, beautified by the *Engliſh*, when they were poſſeſſed of this Countrey; but finally reedified and enlarged by King *Henry* the fourth, who brought it into that magnificence in which now we ſee it. It took name from S. *German*, Biſhop of *Auxerre*, companion with S. *Lupus* before mentioned, in the *Britiſh* journey againſt *Pelagius*. 2 *Poiſſie* upon the ſame River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the *Marn* which falleth into the *Sein*, ſituate not far from S. *Germans* a Bayliwick belonging to the *Provoſt* of *Paris*, and one of his ſeven daughters, as they uſe to call them. 3 *Chantilly*, the chief ſeat of the Dukes of *Montmorency*, and the ancienteſt and moſt noble Family of all *Chriſtendom*, whoſe Anceſtors were the *firſt-fruits of the Goſpel* in this part of *Gaul*, and uſed to ſtile themſelves *Les primiers Chriſtiens & plus veilles Barons de la France*, i. e. The firſt Chriſtians and moſt antient Barons of *France*. A Family that hath yielded unto *France*, more *Admirals*, *Conſtables*, *Marſhals*, and other like Officers of power, than any three in all the Kingdome: now moſt unhappily extinct in the perſon of *Henry* the laſt Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinal of *Richelin*, for ſiding with the *Monſieur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) againſt King *Lewis* the thirteenth, his brother. The Arms of which illuſtrious and moſt noble Family (for I cannot let it paſs without this honour) were *Or*, a croſs *Gules* cantonned with 16 *Allerions Azure*, four in every *Canton*. What theſe *Allerions* are we ſhall ſee in *Lorrein*; take we notice now, that from the great poſſeſſions which this noble Family had in all this tract, it was, and is ſtill called the vale of *Montmorency*. 4 S. *Denis*, ſome three miles from *Paris*, ſo called of a Monaſtery built here by *Dagobert* King of *France*, about the year 640. in memory of S. *Denis* or *Dionyſe*, the firſt Biſhop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mont-martyr* an hill adjoyning) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the *French* Kings, becauſe it lay ſo neer to *Paris*, beſtowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defenſible, nor otherwiſe of any conſideration, but for a very fair Abby of *Benedictines*, and therein the Sepulchres of many of the *French* Kings and Princes; neither for workmanſhip nor coſt, able to hold compariſon with thoſe at *Weſtminſter*. But being their ſepulture of their Kings the *French*-men uſe to ſay facetiouſly, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town alſo is the Church of S. *Malcon*, where the King with a Faſt of nine dayes, and other Penances uſe to receive the famous gift of healing the *Kings-evil*, with nothing but a Touch, a priviledge enjoyed only by thoſe Kings, and the Kings of *England*. 5 St. *Cloud* (or the Town of St. *Claudius*) un-

The Iſle of France.

unfortunately memorable for the murther of King *Henry* the third: who lying here at a ſiege of *Paris*, from whence he was compelled to flie by the *Guiſian* Faction, was wretchedly aſſaſſinated by *Jaques Clement* a Monk, employed in that ſervice by the heads of the *Holy League*. 6 *PARIS*, the chief City not of this Iſle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By *Caſar*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, called *Civitas Pariſiorum*, from the *Pariſians*, a Nation of *Gaul-Celtick*, whoſe chief City it was: by *Strabo* called *Lutetia*, *Lucotetia* by *Ptolemy*, *quaſi in Luto ſita*, as ſome conjecture from the dirtineſs of the ſoyl in which it ſtandeth. A ſoyl ſo dirty (as commonly all rich Countreys are) that though the ſtreets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of King *Philip Auguſtus*) yet every little daſh of rain makes them very ſlippery; and worſe than ſo, yields an ill ſavour to the noſe. The Proverb is, *Il deſtaint comme la fauge de Paris*, it ſtaineth like the dirt of *Paris*: but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il peut*, &c. *It ſtinks like the dirt of Paris*; no ſtink being more offenſive than thoſe ſtreets in Summer. It is in compaſs about eight miles, of an Orbicular form, pleaſantly ſeated on the diviſions of the *Sein*: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far ſhort of the brags which the *French* make of it. It was thought in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh to contain 500000 people of all ſorts and Ages; which muſt be the leaſt; the ſame King at the entertainment of the *Spaniſh* Ambaſſadors, ſhewing 140000 of this City in Arms, all in a Livery of red Caſſocks with white Croſſes. A gallant ſight, though poſſibly the one half of them were not fit for ſervice: The *Pariſians* being for the moſt part an effeminate people, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occaſions, but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their ſuffering K. *Henry* the fourth, to hold S. *Dennis* ſo long againſt them, with no conſiderable Garriſon, and by that means to ſhut them up from all relief on that ſide of their City. And yet their multitudes, which ſince the time of that King, muſt needs be very much encreaſed, are the chief ſtrength of the Town; and the fortifications being weak and of ill aſſurance: Inſomuch, that when once a *Pariſian* bragged that their Town was never took by force; an *Engliſh* man returned this Anſwer, That it was, *becauſe on the leaſt diſtreſs it did uſe to capitulate*. It is ſeated (as before was ſaid) on the River *Sein*, which ſerveth it with Boats and Barges (as the *Thames* Weſtward doth *London*) the River ebbing and flowing no higher than *Pont del' Arche*, 75 miles diſtant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts, the Town, the City, the Univerſity and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is ſituate on the North ſide of the River; the biggeſt, but pooreſt part of the four, inhabited by Artizans and Tradeſmen of the meaner ſort. In this part are the *Hoſtell de Ville*, or the *Guild-hall* for the uſe of the Citizens; the *Arſenall*, or Armory for the uſe of the King; and that magnificent building called the *Palace Royal*, new built and beautified at the charges of King *Henry* the fourth for Tilts and Turnaments, and ſuch ſolemnities of State. And in this alſo, neer the banks of the River, ſtands the Kings Palace of *L'ouvre*, a place of more fame then beauty, and nothing anſwerable to the report which goes commonly of it. A building of no elegance or uniformity, nor otherwiſe remarkable but for the vaſt Gallery begun by King *Henry* the 4th. and the fine Gardens of the *Tuilleries* adjoining to it. *The City* is that part of it which takes up the circumference of a little Iſland, made by the embracements of the *Sein*; joined to the other parts on both ſides, by ſeveral Bridges. The *Paris* or *Lutetia* of the old *Gauls* was no more than this: the *Town* on the one ſide, and the *Univerſity* on the other, being added ſince. This is the richeſt part, and beſt built of the whole *Compoſitum*. And herein ſtand the *Palace*, or *Courts* of *Parliament*; the *Chappel* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and the Church of *Noſtre-dame*, being the Cathedral; of antient times a Biſhops See, but of late raiſed unto the dignity of a *Metropolitan*. On the South-ſide of the River lyeth that part which is called the *Univerſity*, from an Univerſity here founded by *Charles* the Great, *Anno* 792. at the perſwaſion of *Alcuinus* an *Engliſhman*, the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the firſt Profeſſor of Divinity here. It conſiſteth of 52 *Colleges* or places for ſtudy, whereof 40 are of little uſe; and in the reſt the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at *Oxon*, or *Innes* of *Court* or *Chancery* at *London*; there being no endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the Colledge of *Navarre*. Which poſſibly may be the reaſon why the Scholars here are generally ſo debauched and inſolent; a ruder rabble than the which are hardly to be found in the *Chriſtian* World. Senſible of this miſchief and the cauſe thereof, *Francis* the firſt, whom the *French* call the *Father of the Muſes*; at the perſwaſion of *Reuchline* and *Budaus*, thoſe great reſtorers of the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a Colledge for 600 Students; and therein to have placed *Profeſſors* for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yearly Revenue, for their conſtant maintenance. But it went no further then the purpoſe; prevented by the inevitable ſtroak of death from purſuance of it. In bigneſs this is little inferior to the *Town* or *Ville*, and not ſuperior to it for wealth or beauty; few men of any wealth and credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of ſo little Government. The fourth and laſt part is the *Suburbs*, (or the *Faux-bourgs* as the *French* call them) the principal whereof is that of S. *Germans* (ſo called from an antient Abby of that name:) the beſt part of the whole body of *Paris*, for large Streets, ſweet Air, choiſe of the beſt Company, magnificent Houſes, pleaſant Gardens; and finally, for all thoſe contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of moſt populous Cities.

Here are alſo in this Iſle the Royal houſe of *Madrit*, a retiring place of the Kings, built by King *Francis* the firſt, at his return from his impriſonment in *Spain*. 2 *Rual*, a ſweet Countrey houſe of the late Queen Mothers: And 3 *Boys de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry* the 5th. I add this only and ſo end, That this Iſle hath alwayes followed the fortune of the *Crown of France*; never diſmembred from the Soveraignty of the ſame, though ſometimes out of the poſſeſſion of the

French Kings; as when the *Engliſh* kept it againſt *Charles* the ſeventh, and the *Leaguers* againſt *Henry* the fourth. A thing which hardly can be ſaid of any other of the Provinces of the flouriſhing Countrey: the *French* Kings of the race *Merovee*, and *Charles* the Great, alienating from this Crown many goodly Territories; contented onely with a bare and titulary *Homage* from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was ſhared firſt amongſt the great Princes of the *French:* which afterwards by inter-marriages, and other titles fell into the hands of ſtrangers; moſt of them enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandour and power thereof. Which kept the *French* Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiſcations, Marriages, and ſuch other means, they reduced all theſe *Riverets* to their firſt and original *Channel*; as ſhall be ſhewen in the purſuance of this work.

2. CHAMPAGNE.

CHAMPAGNE is bound on the North, with *Picardie*; on the South, with the Dukedom of *Burgundie*; on the Eaſt, with *Lorrein*; on the Weſt, with *France* ſpecially ſo called.

The Country for the moſt part very plain and pleaſant (whence it had the name) adorned with ſhady Woods and delectable Meadows, fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat in elder times of the *Tricaſſes*, *Catalauni*, *Rhemi*, the *Lingones*, and *Senones*, (of which laſt Tribe or Nation were thoſe *Ciſalpine Gaules*, who ſacked *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*;) part of them *Celts*, and part *Belgians*, and ſo accordingly diſpoſed of: the *Belgians* into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Rhemes*; the *Celts* into *Lugdunenſis quarta*, of which the *Metropolis* was *Sens*; both Cities ſeated in this Countrey. The chief Rivers of it 1 *Bloiſe*, 2 *Marne*, 3 *Yonne* 4 *Sault*.

Chief places of that part hereof which belonged to *Belgica ſecunda*, or the Province of *Rhemes*, are 1 *Chalon* on the River *Marne*, an Epiſcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*; called anciently *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2 *Joinville*, ſituate on the ſame River, belonging to the houſe of *Guiſe*; the eldeſt ſon of which Family is called *Prince* of *Joinville*: in the Caſtle whereof ſeated upon an high and inaccceſſible hill, is to be ſeen the Tomb of *Claude* the firſt Duke of *Guiſe*; the richeſt Monument of that kind, in all *France*. The Barony of *William* Lord *Joinville*, third ſon of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne*, and of *Ida* his wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Bovillon*, for her Dower or portion; and brother of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorrein* and Kings of *Hieruſalem*. But whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Bovillon*, or that he had it by his wife, a daughter of *Theobald* Earl of *Campagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his deceaſe to *Godfrey* his youngeſt ſon (*Thierry* the eldeſt ſon ſucceeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*:) upon the failer of whoſe line, it fell unto the Dukes of *Lorrein* as next heirs thereof, and ſo unto the Dukes of *Guiſe* as deſcended from them. 3 St. *Urben*, a Town of the Territory of *Joinville*, from which it is about two leagues diſtance. 4 *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Caſtle of ſo great ſtrength, that in the Civil Wars of *France*, *Anno* 1614. it endured 1100 ſhot of Cannon, and yet was not taken. 5 *Vaſſey*, upon the River *Bloiſe*, a Town of as ſweet a ſituation as moſt in *France*. This laſt ſituate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*: ſo named, as I conceive, from the River *Vaſle*. 6 *Vitrey*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* and *Marne*, the chief Town and Balliage of that part, which is named *Parthois* (*Ager Pertenſis* in the *Latine*;) ſo called of 7 *Perte* another Town thereof, but now not ſo eminent. 8 *Chaumont* upon the *Marne*, the chief Town of *Baſſigni*; and ſtrengthned with a Caſtle mounted on a craggy Rock. 9 *Dedior*, or St. *Deſier* (*Fanum Sancti Deſiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, *Anno* 1544. 10 *Rhemes* (*Durocortorum Rhemorum*) an Archbiſhops See, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, ſituate on the River of *Vaſle*. At this City the Kings of *France* are moſt commonly crowned, that ſo they may enjoy the Unction of a ſacred Oil, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof, which, as they ſay, came down from Heaven, and never decreaſeth. How true this is may be eaſily ſeen, in that *Gregory* of *Tours*, who is ſo prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it: but ſpecially (for *Argumentum ab autoritate negativè parum valet*) ſince the *Legend* informeth us that this holy *Oil* was ſent from Heaven, at the annointing of *Clovis*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *French*. Whereas *Du Haillain*, one of their moſt judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the great, to have been their firſt annointed King; and that there was none *de la primiere lignee oinct*, *ny ſacre à* Rhemes, *ny allieurs*, none of the firſt or *Merovignian* line of Kings, had been annointed at *Rhemes* or elſewhere. But ſure it is (let it be true or falſe, no matter) that the *French* do wonderfully reverence this (their ſacred) *Oil*; and fetch it with great ſolemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, ſitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent: the Archbiſhop hereof (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and ſuch Biſhops as are preſent, going to the Church-door, to meet it, and leaving for it with the *Prior*, ſome competent pawn; and on the other ſide, the King when it is brought to the Altar, bowing himſelf before it with great humility. But to return unto the Town: it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of theſe parts, whoſe chief City it was; and now an Univerſity of no ſmall eſteem: in which among other Colledges there is one appointed for the education of young *Engliſh* Fugitives. The firſt Seminary for which purpoſe (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Doway*, *Anno* 1568. A ſecond at *Rome*, by *Pope Gregory* the thirteenth. A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain*, by King *Philip* the ſecond; A fourth in *Lovaine*, a Town of *Brabant*; and a fifth, here (ſo much do they affect the gaining of the *Engliſh* to the *Romiſh* Church) by the Dukes of *Guiſe*. 11 *Ligni*, upon the River *Sault*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunenſis quarta*, or the Province of *Sens*, the places of chief

note

Champagne.

note are, 1 *Sens*, *Civitas Senonum* in *Antoninus*, antiently the *Metropolis* of that Province, by conſequence the See of an *Archbiſhop* alſo. The Countrey hereabouts called *Le Pais Senonois*, was part of the habitation of the antient *Senones*; ſome of which paſſing over the *Alpes* with other Nations of the *Galls*, planted thoſe parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallia Ciſalpine*. Of which the *Senones* were the moſt valiant, though far leſs in number: as thoſe which had not only the honour of ſacking *Rome*, but of managing an offenſive war againſt that State for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them hath been ſhewn already, when we were in *Lombardy*. 2 *Langres*, or *Civitas Lingonum* (by *Ptolemy*, called *Audomaturum*) ſituate in the confines of *Burgundy*, not far from the fountain or ſpring-head of the *Seine*: the See of a Biſhop, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*. 3 *Troys*, *Civitas Tricaſſium*, ſeated on the *Seine*, a fair, ſtrong, and well traded City, honoured with the title of the daughter of *Paris*; a See Epiſcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne*, next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our *French*, and *Engliſh* Hiſtories, for the meeting of *Charles* the 6th, and *Henry* the 5th, Kings of *France* and *England*; in which it was agreed, that the ſaid King *Henry* eſpouſing *Catharine* daughter of that King, ſhould be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of *France*; into which he ſhould ſucceed on the ſaid Kings death, and be the *Regent* of the Realm for the time of his life: with divers other Articles, beſt ſuiting with the will and honour of the Conquerour. 4 *Province* (by *Cæſar* called *Agendicum*) ſeated upon the *Seine*, in a pleaſant Country, abounding in all fragrant flowers; but eſpecially with the ſweeteſt Roſes, which being tranſplanted into other Countries are called *Province Roſes*. 5 *Meaux*, ſeated on the River *Marne*, anciently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny* and others of the old Writers mention in this tract: now honoured with a Biſhops See, and neighboured by 6 *Monceaux*, beautified with a magnificent Palace built by *Catharine de Medices*, Queen Mother of the 3 laſt Kings of the houſe of *Valois*. 7 *Montereau*, a ſtrong Town on the confluence of the *Seine* and the *Yonne*. 8 *Chaſteau-Thierri*, (*Caſtrum Theodorici*, as the *Latines* call it) ſituate on the River *Marne*. Theſe five laſt ſituate in that part of *Champagne*, which lyeth next to *France*, ſpecially ſo called, known of long time by the name of *Brie*: which being the firſt or chief poſſeſſion of the Earls of *Champagne*, occaſioned them to be ſometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and ſometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here. 9 *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundie*, but now part of *Champagne*, of which more hereafter. And 10 *Fonteny*, a ſmall Town in *Auxerrois* in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, *Anno* 841. between the ſons and Nephews of *Ludovicus Pius*, for their Fathers Kingdom. In which ſo many thouſands were ſlain on both ſides, that the forces of the *French* Empire were extreamly weakned; and had been utterly deſtroyed in purſuit of this unnatural war, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a peace between them; alotting unto each ſome part of that vaſt eſtate, diſmembred by that means into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorrein*, and *Burgundy*; never ſince brought into one hand, as they were before.

Adjoyning unto *Champagne* alſo where it looks towards *Lorrein*, lies the Country and Dutchy of *BAR*; Belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of *France*. The Country commonly called *BARROIS*, environed for the moſt part with the two ſtreams of the River *Marne*; of which the one riſing in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the borders of *Lorrein*, do meet together at *Chalons* a City of *Champagne*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Bar le Duc*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*, and *Bar* upon the River *Albi*; a well fortified Town. 2 *La Motte*. 3 *Ligni*. 4 *Arqu*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what Antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom firſt founded and made an abſolute Eſtate, I am yet to ſeek, though probable it is that it might take its firſt riſe (as many other petit Signeuries did) out of the ruine and diſmembring of the Kingdome of *Lorrein*; or otherwiſe might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of ſome part of that Eſtate. But whether it were ſo or not, certain it is, that it came firſt to the preſent houſe of *Lorrein*, by the gift of *Rhene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular Kings of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c. who ſucceeded in it in the right of *Yoland* or *Violant* his Mother, Daughter of *Don John* the firſt King of *Aragon* and of *Yoland* or *Violant* the Heir of *Bar*: and dying gave the ſame, together with the Towns of *Lambeſque* and *Orgon*, to *Rhene* Duke of *Lorrein* his *Nephew*, by the Lady *Violant* his Daughter. From this *Rhene*, it was taken by *Lewis* the 11th, who having put a Garriſon into *Bar*, repaired the walls, and cauſed the Arms of *France* to be ſet on the Gates thereof. Reſtored again by *Charles* the eighth, at his going to the Conqueſt of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means (if I gueſs aright) of his pretenſions to that Kingdom, which were fair and ſpecious; ſince which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorrein*, till the year 1633. when ſeized on by *Lewis* the thirteenth, upon a Judgement and Arreſt of the Court of *Parliament* in *Paris*, in regard the preſent Duke had not done his Homage to the King, as he ought to have done.

The Armes hereof are *Azure*, two Barbels back to back, *Or*; *Seme* of Croſs Croſſets *Fitche*, of the ſecond.

But to return again to *Champagne*, it pleaſed *Hugh Capet* at his coming to the Crown of *France*, to give the ſame to *Eudes* or *Odon*, Earl of *Blois*, (whoſe daughter he had married in his private fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom) with all the right and priviledges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odon*, was the ſon of *Theobald* Earl of *Blois*, & Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble *Dane*, to whom *Charles* the Simple gave the Town and Earldom of *Blois*, about the year 920, and not long after the time, that he conferred the Country of *Neuſtria* upon *Rollo* the *Norman*, whoſe Kinſman and aſſiſtant this *Gerlon* was in haraſſing and waſting the coaſts of *France*. In the perſon of *Theobald* the third, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, deſcended on him in right of the Lady *Blanch* his Mother, Siſter and Heir of King *Sancho* the 8th. *An.* 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, & Counteſs of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the fourth of *France*, ſurnamed the fair; both theſe Eſtates were added to the Crown of *France*: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without ſome prejudice to the Lady *Joan*, daughter and heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three brethren being dead, and *Philip* of *Valois* ſucceeding in the Crown of *France*, he reſtored the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the ſaid Lady *Joan*: and for the County of *Champagne* (which lay too near the City of *Paris* to be truſted in a forein hand) he gave unto her and her poſterity, as in the way of exchange, ſome certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to ſo rich a Patrimony.

Count *Palatines* of *Champagne*.

999 1 *Odo*, Earl of *Champague*, *Brie*, *Blais*, and *Toureine* Son of *Theobald* the elder, Earl of *Blais*.

1032 2 *Stephen*, Earl of *Champagne*, and *Blais*, Father of *Stephen* Earl of *Blais*, and King of *England*.

1101 3 *Theobald*, eldeſt Son of *Stephen*,

1151 4 *Henry*, Son of *Theobald*, a great adventurer in the wars of the *Holy Land*.

1181 5 *Henry* II. an Aſſociate of the Kings of *France* and *England* in the *Holy Wars*: King of *Hieruſalem*, in right of *Iſabel* his Wife.

1196 6 *Theobald* II. Brother of *Henry*, added unto his houſe the hopes of the Kingdom of *Navarre*, by his marriage with the Lady *Blanch*, ſiſter and heir of *Sancho* the 8th.

1201 7 *Theobald* III. Earl of *Champagne*, Son of *Theobald* the 2d, and the Lady *Blanch*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Navarre*, *Anno* 1234.

1269 8 *Theobald* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 3d, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne* and *Brie*.

1271 9 *Henry* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 4th, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.

1284 10 *Philip* IV. King of *France*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, King of *Navarre* and Earl of *Champagne*.

1313 11 *Lewis Hutin*, Son of *Philip*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.

1315 12 *Philip* the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.

1320 13 *Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, & the laſt Earl of *Champagne*; united after his deceaſe by *Philip de Valois* to the Crown of *France*: the Earldom of *March*, near *Angoleſme*, being given for it in exchange to the Lady *Joan*, daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*, and Queen of *Navarre*; married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, in her right honoured with that Crown, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France* and *Navarre* of the Houſe of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of theſe *Palatines* of *Champagne*, were *Argent*, two Bends cotized, protence and counterpotence of three pieces, *Or*.

3. *PICARDIE.*

PICARDIE hath on the Eaſt, the Dukedoms of *Luxemburg*, and *Lorrein*; on the Weſt, ſome part of *Normandy*, and the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the North, the Counties of *Artois*, and *Hainalt*; and on the South, *Champagne*, and *France* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called. A Country ſo well ſtored with Corn, that it is accounted the *Granary* or Storehouſe of *Paris*; but the few Wines which it produceth are but harſh and of no good reliſh, eſpecially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Sueßiones*, *Ambiani* and *Veromandui*, conſiderable Nations of the *Belgæ*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*: but why they had the name of *Picards*, I am yet to ſeek. Omitting therefore the conjectures of other men, ſome of the which are groundleſs, and the reſt ridiculous; I only ſay, as *Robert* Biſhop of *Auranches* hath affirmed before me, *Quos itaque ætas noſtra* Picardos *appellat, verè* Belgæ *dicendi ſunt, qui poſtmodum in* Picardorum *nomen tranſmigrarunt.*

The whole Countrey as it lyeth from *Calais* to the borders of *Lorrein*, is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* ſubdivided into *Sainterre*, *Ponthieu*, *Boulognois*, and *Guiſnes*; the *Higher* into the *Vidamate* of *Amiens*, *Veromandois*, *Rhethelois*, and *Tieraſche*; in every of which there are ſome places of importance and conſideration.

In *LOWER PICADIE* and the County of *GUISNES*, the chief Towns, 1 *Calais*, by *Caſar* called *Portus Iccius* (as the adjoyning *Promontorie*, *Promontorium Itium*, by *Ptolemy*) a ſtrong Town cloſe upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the *Engliſh* channel: taken by *Edward* third after the ſiege of eleven moneths, *Anno* 1347. and loſt again by Queen *Mary* in leſs then a fortnight, *An.* 1557. So that had *Monſieur de Cordes* then lived, he had had his wiſh; who uſed to ſay, That *he would be content to lie 7 years in* Hell, *on the condition thrt* Calais *were taken from the* Engliſh. The loſs of which Town was a great blow to our Eſtate, for till that time we had the *Keys* of *France* at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Q. *Mary*, who ſickning preſently upon it, ſaid to thoſe which attended her, That *if ſhe were opened, they ſhould find* Calais *next her heart.* 2 *Hamme*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt Out-works of *Calais*: 3 *Fiennes*, on the borders toward *Artois*, which with the Country adjoyning to it made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times paſt of the Earls of S. *Paul*, by whom given to *Theobald* the younger Brother of *Lewis* Earl of S. *Paul* and Conſtable of *France*, (of whom more hereafter) and from that family conveyed to the houſe of *Egmond* by the marriage of *Francis* heir hereof to *John* Earl of *Egmond*, who died in the year 1528. and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of

Alva. Anno 1568. 4 *Ardres*, more towards the borders of *Boulognois*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the 8th, and *Francis* the firſt; and many meetings of the *Engliſh* and *French* Commiſſioners, 5 *Guiſnes*, which gives name to this diviſion, called the County of *Guiſnes*, (of which the land of *Oye* whereon *Calice* ſtood (by the *French* called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was eſteemed a part.) The Earldom anciently of the illuſtrious houſe of *Craie*, of which more anon.

2. *BOULOGNOIS*, neighbouring on the Countrey of *Guiſnes*, the places of moſt note, 1 *Blackneſs*, a ſtrong Fort on the Sea-ſide, betwixt *Calice* and *Boulogne*. 2 *Chaſtillon*, oppoſite to *Boulogne* on the other ſide of the water. 3 *Boullenberg*, more within the Land, an Out-work to *Boulogne*. 4 *Boulogne*, by *Plinie* called *Portus Geſſoriacus*, part of the Countrey of the *Marini*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*; divided into the *Baſe* or *Low Town* lying on the ſhore ſide, well built, and much frequented by paſſengers, going to, or coming out of *England*; and the *High Town*, ſtanding on the riſe of an Hill, well garriſonned for defence of the *Port* beneath it, and honoured with a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither from *Tourney* when that City was taken by the *Engliſh*. The Town and Countrey taken by King *Henry* the 8th. with infinite expence of treaſure, *An.* 1544. but yielded not long after by K. *Edward* the ſixth: the *French* redeeming it at leſs than a fourth part of the money, which the gaining of it had coſt the Crown of *England*. As for the fortunes of this Country, it was once an Earldom of it ſelf, during which time it gave one King unto *Hieruſalem*, and another to *England*. The firſt Earl of it which we meet with, was that *Euſtace*, who by his marriage with *Ida*, the daughter of *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* the ſecond, Duke of *Lorrein*, added the Dutchy of *Bouillon* in *Gaul-Belgick* to his Earldom of *Boulogne*. To him ſucceeded in both theſe Titles and Eſtates, *Godfrey*, ſurnamed of *Bovillon* his eldeſt ſon: who after the death of *Godfrey* the third his Couzin-german attained unto the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, and finally the firſt and moſt renowned King of the Weſtern Chriſtians reigning in *Hieruſalem*. *Godfrey* being dead, *Euſtace* the youngeſt of his Brethren became Earl of *Boulogne*: whoſe daughter *Maud* brought this eſtate and title to *Stephen* of *Blais*, who afterwards was King of *England*. *Euſtace* the only ſon of *Steven* dying without iſſue, the rights hereof remained in his ſiſter *Mary*, the Abbeſs of *Ramſey*, married to *Matthew* brother of *Philip* of *Elſats* Earl of *Flanders*. And though *Matthew* was commanded by the Pope to reſtore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her, yet he kept this Country for her children. Conveyed by *Ida* the eldeſt daughter of this bed to *Rhiginald* of *Caſtrie* her thid husband; by *Maud* his daughter to *Philip* ſecond ſon of *Philip Auguſtus* K. of *France*, by another *Maud* (he dying without iſſue) to *Alfonſo* of *Portugal*, who ſucceeding after in that Kingdom, ſent her back to *Boulogne*: and finally by *Joan* daughter and heir of *William*, this *Alfonſus* Grandchild to *Philip* Earl of *Artois*, the ſon of *Eudes* Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*; to whom ſhe brought *Philip* their only ſon, ſucceſſor to his Grandfather in the ſaid Eſtates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceaſing without iſſue, *Anno* 1361. and *Joan* not leaving any children by King *John* of *France*, whom ſhe married after the death of her firſt Husband, it fell by ſome other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tours* of *Auvergn*(the Anceſtors of the now Dukes of *Bovillon*) continuing in that family till the year 1477. when bought by *Lewis* the 11th of *France* of *Bertrand de la Tour*, the better to aſſure his Kingdom on that ſide againſt the *Engliſh* then poſſeſſed of the Countrey of *Guiſnes*. The purchaſe being made, *Lewis* the now Proprieter, did Homage to the Virgin *Mary*, in the chief Church thereof called *Noſtra Dame*, bareheaded, on his knees, without ſpurs or girdle: and offered to her Image a maſſie Heart of gold of 2000 ounces; capitulating that from thenceforth he and his Succeſſors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vaſſal preſent her with a golden heart of the ſame weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of *France*; nor giving title unto any but to *Catharine de Medices* wife of *Henry* the 2d, created Counteſs of *Boulogne* and *Clermont*, when firſt married to him, he being then Duke of *Orleans* only.

The Arms hereof under the ancient Earls of *Boulogne* were *Or*, a Banner *Gules*, tuffed *Purple*: thoſe of *De la Tour*, being a Tower embattelled *Sable*; but the colour of the Field I do no where find.

3. *PONTHEIU*, ſo called from the Bridges, built for conveniency of paſſage over the mooriſh Flats thereof, belonging formerly to the *Engliſh*; to whom it came by the marriage of *Eleanor*, daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, by *Joan* the daughter and heir of *Simon* the laſt Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the firſt. Towns of moſt note in it are, 1 *Abbeville*, ſeated on the *Some*, well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſonned, as a Frontier Town upon *Artois*: on one ſide unaſſaultable by reaſon of a deep and mooriſh Fen, which comes up cloſe to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatis Villa* in the *Latin*) and the See of a Biſhop. 2 *Monſtruille*, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and *Boulogne*, and a ſtrong out-work unto *Paris*. 3 *Crecie*, where King *Edward* the 3d defeated the great army of *Philip de Valois*, in the firſt onſets for that Kingdom, *Anno* 1343. And 4 *Treport*, a ſmall Haven on the Eaſt of S. *Valeries*. Some place the Earldom of S. *Paul* in this Country of *Ponthieu*; others more rightly in *Artois*, where we mean to meet with it. The Armes hereof were *Or* three Bends *Azure*.

4. And as for the *SAINTERRE*, which is the fourth part of the *Lower Picardy*, the chief Towns of it are, 1 *Perenne*, upon the River *Some*, where *Lewis* the 11th, the greateſt Maſter of Statecraft for the times he lived in, put himſelf moſt improvidently into the hands of *Charles* of *Burgundy*, who as improvidently diſmiſſed him. 2 *Roy*, and 3 *Mont didier*, (*Mons Deſiderii* in *Latin*) both of them ſtrong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwiſe of little fame in former ſtories.

In the *Higher Picardy* being that part of this Country which lyeth furtheſt from the Sea, the firſt diviſion which occurreth, is the *Vidamate* of *AMIENS*, ſo called of the fair City of *Amiens*, and the *Vidame* or chief Governor of it. Which honour as it is peculiar to the *French* only; ſo *Milles* in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue of Honour*, will have but four at all in *France*, *viz.* this of *Amiens*, *Chalons*, Picardie. *Gerberoy*, and that of *Charteroy*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them; as that *Rhemes*, *Mans*, *&c.* and formerly as many as it had Biſhops; the *Vice-dominus* or *Vice-dame*, being to the Biſhop in his *Temporals*, as the Chancellors in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Viſcounts*) were antiently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature; or to give you an example nearer home and of more reſemblance, theſe *French Vidames* were unto their ſeveral and reſpective Biſhops, as the *Temporal Chancellor* (in this Realm) of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, or the *High Steward* of the Biſhoprick of *Ely*, to thoſe ſeveral Biſhops.

Places of moſt note herein, 1 *Corbie*, a Town of great importance and ſtrongly Garriſoned, ſituate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*; 2 *Chaune*, on the ſame Frontier alſo, but of leſs conſideration, the Honorary ſeat and title of the preſent *Vidame*. 3 *Piquigni*, ſituate on a pretty aſcent of ground overlooking the *Some*, on the left hand of the River, betwixt *Amiens* and *Aberville*, the ordinary ſeat of the former *Vidames*, more famous for the enterview of *Edward* the 4th of *England*, and *Lewis* the 12, than for giving the name of *Picardie* to all the Province; which *Mercator* only of all the Writers, doth aſcribe unto it. 4 *Crouy*, an obſcure village now, but formerly of ſpecial note for a goodly Caſtle, commanding over the adjoyning Territory, and giving name to the illuſtrious Family hence ſurnamed the *Crouy*, deſcended from the Kings of *Hungary*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Arſchob* and Princes of *Chimay* in the *Netherlands*; before their tranſlating to which Countries by the Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were entitled Earls of *Guiſnes*. 5 *Amiens* it ſelf, ſeated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many ſtreams for the uſe and ſervice of the Town; well built with very ſtrong walls, and deep ditches: the loſs whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, much hazarded the affairs and reputation of King *Henry* the 4th; and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the *Cathedral*, the faireſt and moſt lovely ſtructure in the Weſt of *Europe*: ſo beautified within, and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Coſt and Architecture, ſeem to be met together in the compoſition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburge*, the rich Glaſs in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the coſtly Imagery, and arched Buttreſſes in the Chappel at *Weſtminſter* (before the late defacements of thoſe *Cathedrals*) might ſerve as helps to ſet forth the full beauties of it. The Town and Territories, anciently under the command of the Biſhops of it; whoſe Officers for the Temporal government hereof called *Vice-domini* or *Vidames*, were at firſt eligible by the Biſhops, and accomptable to them, but by degrees engroſſing all power unto themſelves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidamate* of *Amiens* to this part of *Picardy*. The preſent *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaune*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Monſieur de Luyne* (chief favourite to King *Lewis* the 13th) obtained in marriage the daughter and heir of the former *Vidame*, with whom he had the Town and Caſtle of *Piquigni*, the chief command of theſe parts, and a rent of 9000 *l. per annum*; honoured thereupon by the power and favours of his Brother with the title of the Duke of *Chaune* and Peer of *France*, *Anno* 1620, or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, paſs we on next to *VEROMANDOIS*, the ancient habitation of the *Veromandui*: the faireſt and largeſt part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferiour to the beſt of *France*, in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1 *Soiſſons*; called anciently *Auguſta Sueſſionum*, the chief City of the *Sueſſones* or *Sueſſiones*; and the laſt hold which the *Romans* had in all *Gaul*; loſt by *Siagrius*, Governor for the Weſtern Emperour, to *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*. In the diviſion of his Kingdom, made the Seat Royal of *Clotair* the ſon of this *Clovis*; and of *Aripert*, and *Chilperick*, the ſons of *Clotair*, from hence entituled Kings of *Soiſſons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardy* and *Champagne*, as we call them now. But *Soiſſons* having long ſince loſt the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of late times been made the honourary Title of the Counts of *Soiſſons*, a branch of the royal ſtock of *Bourbon*; a Biſhops See, and ſituate on the River of *Aiſne*. 2 *Laon*, a Biſhops See alſo, the Biſhop whereof is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, and Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latine*, *Laodunum*. 3 *Noyon*, in *Latine*, *Noviodunum*, an Epiſcopal See alſo. 4 *Chapelle*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt outworks of *Paris* againſt the *Netherlands*. 5 *D' Ourlans*, 6 *La Fere* and *Han*, places of great ſtrength alſo, but more near the Frontiers. And 7 S. *Quintin*, antiently the chief City of the *Veromandui*, then called *Auguſta Veromanduorum*: called afterwards S. *Quintin*, from that Saint here worſhipped, as the *Patron* and *Deus tutelaris* of it. A place of great importance for the Realm of *France*; and ſo eſteemed in the opinion of the Earl of *Charolois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) and King *Lewis* the 11th: the firſt of which never digeſted the reſtoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no leſs then 400000 Crowns; the later never would forgive the Earl of S. *Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his ſervice. A Town of greater note in ſucceeding times, for the famous battel of S. *Quintins*, *An.* 1557. wherein King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, with the help of the *Engliſh*, under the command of the Earl of *Pembroke*; overthrew the whole forces of the *French*, made themſelves Maſters of the Town, and thereby grew ſo formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guiſe* was in poſt haſt ſent for out of *Italy*, (where his affairs began to proſper) to look unto the ſafety of *France* it ſelf. As for the fortunes of this part, it was once an Earldom of it ſelf, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the moſt in *France*; it being by one *Heribert* or *Hebert* Earl of *Veromandois*, who in purſuance of the quarrel of the houſe of *Anjou* ſurpriſed *Charles* the Simple, and carried him priſoner to *Peronnes*, where he after died; for which deſervedly hanged by *Lewis* ſurnamed *Tranſmarine* the ſon of *Charles*, when he became poſſeſſed of his Fathers Kingdom; by the daughter and heir of another *Hebert*, conveyed in marriage unto *Hugh* ſurnamed the Great, one of the younger ſons of King *Henry* the firſt of *France*, ſucceeding in her right into the title and Eſtate of Earl of *Veromandois*, and by that name renowned in the firſt wars for the Holy Land. By *Elizabeth* the Neece of this *Hugh*, the daughter of *Rodolphus* his eldeſt ſon married to *Philip* of *Elſatz* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that Eſtate; but ſhortly after given by the ſame *Philip* (having no children of his own) in Dower with *Iſabel* his Neece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt*, unto *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, and ſince united to that Crown; not giving ſince that time the title of Earl or Duke to any, for ought I can find.

III. More towards *Hainalt* and *Lorrein* lieth the Country of *RETHELOIS*, ſo called of *Rethel* the chief Town: well fortified as the reſt of the Frontier places; but of moſt note amongſt the *French*, that the eldeſt ſons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have uſually been entituled Earls and Dukes of *Rethel*; united to that Family by the marriage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*, *Anno* 1412, or thereabouts. 2 St. *Monhaud*, a Town of conſequence and ſtrength. 3 *Sygni*, a ſtrong piece belonging to the Marqueſs of *Vieu-ville*. 4 *Chaſtean-Portian*, of more beauty but of like importance. The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Rethel* were *Gules*, three Rakes-heads indented *Or*.

IV. Finally in the Dutchy of *TIERASCHE*, the laſt part of the *higher Picardie*, we have the Town of *Guiſe*, of ſome note for the Caſtle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorrein*, (on the borders whereof it ſtandeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guiſe*. A Family which within a little compaſs of time produced two *Cardinals*, the one entituled of *Guiſe*, the other of *Lorrein*; ſix Dukes, that is to ſay, the Dukes of *Guiſe*, *Mayenne*, *Aumal*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguillon*, and *Cheureuſe*; the Earl of *Samarive*; and beſides many daughters married unto the beſt houſes in *France*, one married to *James* the 5th King of the *Scots*. The firſt, and he that gave the riſe unto all the reſt of this potent Family, was *Claud*, ſon to *Rene* the ſecond, Duke of *Lorrein*, and husband to *Antoniette* Daughter to the Duke of *Vendoſme*; in reſpect of which alliance, he was honoured with this title. The Father (amongſt other children) of *Mary* Qu. of *Scots*, Wife of *James* the fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the ſixth, the firſt Monarch of *Britain*. The ſecond was *Francis*, who endangered the Realm of *Naples*, reſiſted the ſiege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Mets*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Callice* from Q. *Mary*, and was at laſt treacherouſly ſlain at the ſiege of *Orleans*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Politrot*, (on the inſtigation of ſome of the chiefs of that faction) *Anno* 1563. The third was *Henry* that great enemy of the *Proteſtants*, who contrived that great *Maſſacre* at *Paris*, and almoſt diſpoſſeſſed *Henry* the third, of all *France*; He began the Holy League, and was finally ſlain at *Blois*, by the command of King *Henry* the third. But we muſt know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorrein*: and had given the title of Earl of *Guiſe* to *Frederick* the ſecond ſon of *John*, and *Charles* the third ſon of *Rene*, both the firſt of thoſe names; before *Claud* of *Lorrein* was advanced to the title of Duke: as being part of the Eſtate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Join-ville*, of whom we ſpake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of moſt note next to *Guiſe* it ſelf, is 2 *Ripemont* on the South of *Guiſe*. 3 *Caſtelet* upon the borders towards *Luxemburg*, a ſtrong Town, and one of the beſt outworks of *France*. 4 *Mazuers*, upon the *Maes* or *Meuſe*, a place of great ſtrength and like importance; belonging properly to the Dukes of *Nevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their deſcent from the houſe of *Rethel*: fortified with a ſtrong Citadel for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garriſoned by the *French* King, for defence of this border: layed to the Government of *Champagne* though a Town of *Picardie*, and therefore made by ſome to belong to that Province alſo.

As for the ſtate of this whole Province, I do not find that it was ever paſſed over by the *French* Kings unto any one hand: as almoſt all the reſt of *France* had been at ſome time or other, but diſtracted into divers Seigneuries and ſeveral Lordſhips (all of them abſolute in themſelves, and ſcarce affording to the *French* King the ſlight tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have ſeen before: ſome of which fell to the Crown of *France* by confiſcations, ſome by lawful marriages, and others by conqueſt; ſome held of *England*, ſome of the Earls of *Artois*, and others of *Flanders*, and laſtly of the Dukes of *Burgundie*, as Lords of thoſe Provinces: thoſe which depend upon *England*, being ſeized on by *Charles* the 7th, on the loſs of *Normandy* by the *Engliſh*; as thoſe which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his ſon, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the battel of *Nancie*, *Anno* 1476.

4. NORMANDIE.

NORMANDIE is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Some* and part of *Picardie*; on the Weſt with *Bretagne*, and ſome part of the Ocean; on the North, with the *Engliſh* Channel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* ſpecially ſo called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunenſis ſecunda*, in the time of the *Romans*: the Metropolis whereof was *Roven*: and the greatneſs of the *French* Empire had the name of *Neuſtria*, corruptly ſo called for *Weſtria*; the name of *Weſtria* or *Weſtenrich*, being given by ſome to this part of the Realm of *Weſt-France*, as that of *Auſtria* or *Oſtenrich* to a part of *Eaſt-France*. Afterwards being beſtowed upon the *Normans* by *Charles* the *Simple*, it was called *Normandy*.

In this Country is the little Signeury of *IVIDOT*, heretofore ſaid to be a free and abſolute Kingdom; advanced to that high dignity by *Clotaire*, the ſeventh King of the *French*. Who having abuſed the wife of one *Gautier de Ividot* (ſo called becauſe of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent revenge) killed the man himſelf; to make ſatisfaction to his Family for ſo great an injury, erected the Lordſhip of *Ividot* to the eſtate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Wal-*

Normandy. ter) all the prerogative of a free and abſolute Monarch; as to make Laws, coyn money, and the like. From hence the *French* call a man that hath but ſmall demains to maintain a great title, a *Roy d'Ividot*. At laſt, but what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordſhip, and belongeth now to the houſe of *Bellay*, in *Bretagne*.

But to proceed from the poor Kingdom of *Ividot*, to the rich Dukedom of *Normandy*, for largeneſs of Extent, multitudes of People, number and ſtatelineſs of Cities, fertility of Soyl, and the commodiouſneſs of the Seas, it may worthily be accompted the chief Province of *France*. Well watered with the River *Seine* which runneth quite through it; as do alſo 2 the *Orne*, and 3 the *Aven*: not to ſay any thing of 4 *Robee*, 5 *Ante*, and 6 *Reinelle*, and many others of leſs note. In length it reacheth 170 miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narroweſt: containing in that round the largeſt and faireſt Corn-fields that are to be ſeen in all *France*. Of all other natural commodities it is extreme plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldneſſe of the *Climate* admits not of, or ſparingly at the beſt, and of no perfection. The people of it formerly renowned for feats of *Arms*, the Conquerors of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Kingdom of *Antioch* in the Eaſt: at this time thought to be of a more ſharp and ſubtil wit, than the reſt of the *French*: *Scavans au poſſible en proceces & plaideries*, (ſaith *Ortelius* of them) eſpecially in the quillets and quirks of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*, the *Lower* containing the Sea coaſts, and the *Higher*, the more Inland parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1 *Conſtance*, a Biſhops See, the Spire or Steeple of whoſe *Cathedral*, is eaſily diſcernable afar off, both by Sea and Land; and ſerveth Saylers for a Land-mark. From hence the Country hereabouts hath the name of *Conſtantine*. 2 *Auranches*, ſituate on a rock with a fair proſpect over the *Engliſh* Channel, but more near to *Bretagn*, than the other; the chief City of the *Abrincantes*, called *Igena* by *Ptolemy*, now a Biſhops ſee. 3 *Caen* (*Cadonium* in Latin) an Epiſcopal See, as the other; Strong, populous, and well built, ſeated upon the River *Orne*, ſecond in reputation of the whole Province: but more eſpecially famous, for the Sepulchre of *William* the *Conqueror*, the Univerſity founded here by King *Henry* the 5th, and for the long reſiſtance which it made againſt him, in his Conqueſt of *Normandie*. 4 *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baoieaſſium* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Belſin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Epiſcopal. One of the Biſhops whereof, called *Ode*, Brother unto *William* the *Conqueror*, by the Mothers ſide, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards on ſome juſt diſpleaſure committed priſoner. For which, when quarrelled by the *Pope*, (the Clergie being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this anſwer, that he had committed the Earl of *Kent*, not the Biſhop of *Bayeux*: By which diſtinction he avoided the *Popes* diſpleaſure, 5 *Roven*, of old *Rhothomagum*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Seine*, and watered with the two little Riverets of *Robee*, and *Reinelle*, which keep it very ſweet and clean. The City for the moſt part well built, of large circuit, and great trading; the ſecond for bigneſs, wealth, and beauty in all *France*: antiently the *Metropolis* of this Province, and an Archbiſhops See; and honoured of late times with a Court of *Parliament*, erected here by *Lewis* the twelfth, *Anno* 1501. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a Reverend but no beautiful fabrick) is to be ſeen the Sepulchre of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the ſixth: which when an envious Courtier perſwaded *Charles* the eighth to deface; *God forbid* (ſaith he) *that I ſhould wrong him, being dead*, whom living *all the power of* France *was not able to withſtand*; adding withall, that he deſerved a better Monument than the *Engliſh* had beſtowed upon him. And to ſay truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, ſhort of the merits of the man, and carrying no proportion to ſo great a virtue. 6. *Falaiſe*, upon the River *Ante*, once of ſtrength and note; the dwelling place of *Arlette*, a Skinners Daughter, & the Mother of *William* the Conqueror: whom Duke *Robert*, paſſing through the Town took ſuch notice of (as he beheld her in a dance amongſt other Damoſels) that he ſent for her to accompany him that night in bed, and begat on her *William* the Baſtard, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immodeſty that night is ſaid to be ſo great, that either in regard thereof, or in ſpight to her Son, the *Engliſh* called all Strumpets by the name of *Harlots*; the word continuing to this day. 7 *Verneville* (*Vernolium* in *Latin*) in former times accounted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandy*, againſt the *French*. Of which it is reported, that when news was brought to *Richard* the firſt, that *Philip* ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, the *French* King had laid ſiege unto it, he ſhould ſay theſe words: *I will never turn my back till I have confronted thoſe cowardly Frenchmen.* For performance of which princely word, he cauſed a paſſage to be broken through the Palace of *Weſtminſter*; and came ſo unexpected upon his Enemies, that they raiſed their ſiege, and haſtned homewards. 8 *Alanſon*, of moſt note for giving the title of Earl and Duke, to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*; beginning in *Charles de Valois*, the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and continuing for eight ſucceſſions till the death of *Charles* the fourth Duke of this line: conferred occaſionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9 *Lyſieux*, on the *North-Eaſt* of *Alanſon*, a Biſhops See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*, as 10 *Caux*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Caſar* in theſe parts. 11 *Eureux*, an Epiſcopal See alſo, by *Ptolemy* called *Mediolanium*, the chief City antiently of the *Eburones* and ſtill a rich and flouriſhing Town: the third in eſtimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the perſon of *Lewis* a younger ſon of *Philip* the third; whoſe ſon called *Philip* by his marriage with *Joan* daughter of *Lewis Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town with many fair Eſtates in this Countrey which depended on it, being ſeized on by the *French* in the time of *Charles* the ſon of this *Philip*, for ſome practiſes againſt that Kingdom; there was after given to *Charles* the third and laſt King of this houſe in compenſation for the ſame, *Anno* 1406. the title of Duke of *Nemours*, with a good ſum of ready money, and a penſion of 1200 *l.* ſterling yearly, iſſuing out of the Revenues of *Brie*, and *Champagne*. 12 *Griſors*, a ſtrong Frontire Town towards *France*, whilſt *Normandy* was in the hands of the

Engliſh,

Normandy.

Engliſh, or under his own Dukes and Princes; notable for the many repulſes given unto the *French*; and 13. *Pontoyſe*, another Frontire upon *France*, ſo called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyſe* (which divides *France* from *Normandy*) on which the Town is ſituate, and by which well fortified on that ſide; but taken at the ſecond coming of *Charles* the 7th. after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noiſe only of the coming of the Duke of *York*, Commander at that time of the Province, and the *Engliſh* Forces. 14. *Albemarl*, contractedly *Aumerl*, moſt memorable for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Family *De Fortibus*, Lords of *Holderneſs* in *England*; and of *Duke*, to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after the Duke of *York*. More towards the Sea, 15. S. *Valeries*, ſeated on a ſmall but ſecure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-Haven*. 16. *Dieppe*, at the mouth of a little River ſo named, open into a large and capacious Bay; a Town of Trade, eſpecially for the *New found-Land*: remarkable for its fidelity to *Henry* the 4th in the midſt of his troubles; when the Confederates of the *Guiſian* faction called the *Holy League*, had outed him of almoſt all the reſt of the Cities, compelled him to betake himſelf hither, (from whence he might more eaſily hoiſe Sayl for *England*) and called him in deriſion the *King* of *Dieppe*. 17. *New-Haven*, the Port Town to *Roven* and *Paris*, ſituate at the mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence by great Ships navigable as far as *Roven*; by leſſer unto *Pont de l' Arch*, 70 miles from *Paris*: the Bridge of *Roven* formerly broken down by the *Engliſh* to ſecure the Town, lying unrepaired to this day by means of the *Pariſians*, for the better trading of their City. By the *French* it is called *Havre de grace*, and *Franciſcopolis* by the *Latines*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the *Engliſh*) by King *Francis* the Firſt, and from thence ſo named. Delivered by the Prince of *Conde* and his Faction into the hands of Q. *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of *caution*, for the landing of ſuch forces as ſhe was to ſend to their relief, in the firſt Civil War of *France* about Religion: and by the help of the ſame Faction taken from her again, as ſoon as their differences were compounded. By means whereof the *Hugonets* were not only weakned for the preſent, but made uncapable of any ſuccour out of *England* for the time to come, and the next year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18. *Harflew*, and 19. *Honflew*, both ſituate on the banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the preſent, becauſe not capable of any great ſhipping, nor uſeful in the way of Trade, by reaſon of the interpoſition of *New-Haven* betwixt them and the Sea; the former famous notwithſtanding in our *Engliſh* Stories, as the firſt Town which that victorious Prince K. *Henry* the fifth attempted and took in, in *France*. 20. *Churburg* (the *Latines* call it *Cæſaris Burgum*) on the Sea-ſide alſo, the laſt Town which the *Engliſh* held in the Dukedom of *Normandy*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Euraux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; till alienated by *Charles* the third of *Navarre*, on the compoſition before mentioned; but being garriſoned by the *Engliſh* for K. *Henry* the ſixth, it held out a ſiege of ſeven moneths againſt the Forces of *France*. Here are alſo in this Dukedom, the Towns of, 21. *Tankerville*, and 22. *Ewe*; which have given the Title of Earls to the Noble Families of the *Greys*, and *Bourchiere* in *England*: as alſo thoſe of, 23. *Harcourt*, 24. *Longeville*, and 25. *Aumal*, which have given the Title of Duke and Earl, to ſome of the beſt Houſes in *France*.

There belonged alſo to this Dukedom, but rather as ſubject to the Dukes of *Normandy*, than part of *Normandy* it ſelf, the County of *Perch*; ſituate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beauſſe*, of which now reckoned for a part: and was divided into the higher, and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch Govet*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rotrou* the ſecond Earl of this County, the Founder or Repairer of it, to difference it from another of that name, called *Nogent le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*. 2. *Mortaigne*, or *Moriton*, of moſt note in the higher *Perch*, eſpecially for giving the Title of an Earl, to *John*, the youngeſt Son of K. *Henry* the ſecond, after King of *England*; as in the times ſucceeding to the Lord *Edmund Beaufort*, after Duke of *Somerſet*. The whole firſt made a diſtinct eſtate, in the perſon of *Arnulph* of *Heſdin* the firſt Earl hereof. Whoſe Son and Succeſſor named *Rotrou* (of great note in the wars of *Spain* againſt the *Moors* in behalf of *Alfonſo* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, *Anno* 1110) by *Maud* the natural daughter of *Henry* the firſt of *England*, unfortunately drowned with his Brother *William* as they croſſed the Seas, had one only Daughter named *Magdalen* (or as ſome ſay *Margarite*) the wife of *Garcias* the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, and Mother of King *Sancho* ſirnamed the *Wiſe*, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have ſince deſcended. But this Family being extinct in a ſhort time after; the Eſtate fell unto the *Engliſh*, as Dukes of *Normandy*, and ſo continued till the ſeizure of *Normandy* by the *French* in the time of K. *John*. After which time the Title of Earl of *Perch* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Volois* and *Alanſon*, Father of *Philip de Volis*, *French* King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, and of *Charles de Valois* Earl of *Alanſon*; in which Houſe of *Alanſon* it continued, and was commonly the Title of the eldeſt Sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Country of *Normandy*, the antient Inhabitants thereof were the *Caletes*, *Eburones*, *Lexovii*, *Abrimantes*, ſpoken of before; the *Bellocaſſi*, or *Venelocaſſi*, about *Roven*; the *Salares* and *Baiocenſes* about *Sees* and *Baieux*: all conquered firſt by the powerful *Romans*, the *Romans* after by the *French*, and the *French* by the *Normans*. Theſe laſt a people of the North, inhabiting thoſe Countrys which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Swethland*, and *Norwey*: united in the name of *Normans*, in regard of their *Northernly* ſituation; as in our Hiſtory and deſcription of thoſe Kingdoms we ſhall ſhew more fully. Out of thoſe parts they made their firſt irruptions about the year 700 when they ſo ranſacked and plagued the *Maritine Towns* of *France* and *Belgium*, that it was inſerted in the Letany, *From Plagne, Peſtilence, and the fury of the* Normans, *good Lord, &c.* To quit theſe people, and to ſecure himſelf, *Charles* the *Simple*, gave him a part of *Neuſtria* (from thence called *Normannia*, or *Normandy*,) together with the Soveraignty of *Bretagne*, enjoyed by them and their poſterity for many ages. Their firſt Duke was *Rollo*, *Anno* 912. from whom in a direct line, the ſixth was

Normandie

William the Baſtard, Conqueror, and King of *England*, *An.* 2067. After this, *Normandy* continued *Engliſh* till the days of K. *John*: when *Philip Auguſtus* ſeized on all his Eſtates in *France* as forfeitures, *An.* 1202. the *Engliſh* then poſſeſſing the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Aquitaine*; the Earldoms of *Anjou. Toureine*, *Maine*, *Poictou*, and *Limoſin*, being in all a far greater and better portion of the Country, than the Kings of *France* themſelves poſſeſſed. The *Engliſh* after this recovered this Dukedom by the valour of King *Henry* the fifth, and having held it 30 years, loſt it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the ſixth: the *Engliſh* then diſtracted with domeſtick factions. After which double Conqueſt of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* diſtruſting the affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withall a ſtubborn and untractable people, have miſerably oppreſſed them with tolls and taxes, keeping them alwayes poor and in low condition: inſomuch that it may be ſaid of the generality of them, that they are the moſt *beggerly* people that ever had the luck to live in ſo rich a Countrey. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of *Normandy*.

912 1 *Rollo* of *Norwey*, made the firſt Duke of *Normandy*, by *Charles* the *Simple*; by whoſe perſwaſion baptized, and called *Robert*.
917 2 *William*, ſirnamed *Longeſpee*, from the length of his Sword.
942 3 *Richard*, the Son of *Longeſpee*.
980 4 *Richard* II. Son of the former.
1026 5 *Richard* the III. Son of *Richard* the Second.
1028 6 *Robert*, the Brother of *Richard* the Third.
1035 7 *William*, the baſe Son of *Robert*, ſubdued the Realm of *England*, from thence called the *Conqueror*.
1093 8 *Robert* II. eldeſt Son of *William* the *Conqueror*, put by the Kingdom of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refuſed the Crown of *Hieruſalem*, then newly Conquered by the forces of the *Chriſtian* Princes of the Weſt, Outed at laſt, impriſoned and deprived of ſight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miſerable life in the Caſtle of *Cardiffe*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Gloceſter*.
1102 9 *Henry*, the firſt King of *England*.
1135 10 *Stephen*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*.
11 *Henry Plantagenet*, D. of *Normandy*, and after King of *England*, of that name the Second.
1161 12 *Henry* the III. ſirnamed *Court-mantle*, Son of *Henry* the Second, made D. of *Normandy* by his Father.
1189 13 *Richard* IV. ſirnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, Son of *Henry* the Second.
1199 14 *John*, the Brother of *Richard* King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, outed of his eſtates in *France* by King *Philip Auguſtus*, *An.* 1202, before whom he was accuſed of the murther of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the ditches in the Caſtle of *Rowen*, where he was impriſoned; but ſentenced *Cauſa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this *Normandy* ſtill remained united to to the Crown of *France* (the title only being born by *John de Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the 5th. (during the life-time of his Father) till the Conqueſt of it by the valour of King *Henry* the 5th. *Anno* 1420. which was 218 years after it had been ſeized on by King *Philip Auguſtus*; and having been holden by the *Engliſh* but 30 years, was loſt again *Anno* 1450, in the unfortunate reign of King *Henry* the 6th. Never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*; ſaving that *Lewis* the 11th. the better to content the confederate Princes, conferred it in *Appennage* on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, *An.* 1465. but within two months after took it from him again, and gave him in exchange of it the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, which lay further off from his Aſſociates.

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times, I can hardly ſay. That they were very fair and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who ſaith, that he had ſeen raiſed in *Nomandy*, 95000 *l.* ſterling money, which was a vaſt ſum of money in thoſe times. As alſo by this teſtimony of the D. of *Burgundy*, who held K. *Lewis* the 11th. to be weakned a whole third part in his eſtate, by giving *Normandy* in portion to the D. of Berry. Now they amount unto as much, as the King's *Treaſurers* and *Toll-maſters* are pleaſed to draw out of it.

The Arms of *Normandy* were *Gules*, two *Leopards*, *Or*, which with the ſingle *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Dutchy* of *Aquatain*, make the Arms of *England*.

BRETAGNE.

BRetagne is bounded on the Eaſt with *Normandy*, and the County of *Main*; on the South with *Anjou*, and *Poictou*; on all other parts with the *Engliſh*, or *Gallick* Ocean; Watered upon the South-ſide with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but ſo, as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lyeth on the South-ſide of that River, betwixt it and *Poictou*.

It was firſt called *Armorica* from its ſituation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. Bt how it came by this new name is not well agreed on. The general opinion

is

Bretagne.

is, that it took this name from the neighboring *Britains*, brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling againſt the Emperor *Gratian*, *Anno* 385. by whom this Province was ſubdued, and from them named *Britannia Minor*, Little *Britain*. An Argument wherof may be, that the Language of this people hath ſtill no ſmall affinity with the *Welch* or *Britiſh*; there being a tradition alſo, the *Britains* who firſt came over hither and married the Women of this Country, cut out their tongues for fear they ſhould corrupt the Language of their poſterity. And to this Conqueſt by the *Britains*, theſe old Verſes give ſome further countenance,

Vicit Aremoricas *animoſa* Britannia *Gentes*,
Et dedit impoſito, nomina priſca, jugo.

That is to ſay,

Ganl-Armorick, the *Britains* overcame,
And to the conquer'd Province gave their name.

Notwithſtanding, the moſt probable opinion ſeemeth to be, that it took this name from the *Britanni*, an old *Gallick* People, mentioned by *Pliny* in *Gaul-Belgick*; retiring hither on the invaſions and incurſions of the barbarous Nations; though poſſibly thoſe *Britanni* of *Gallia-Belgica* might be as well ſome Colony of the *Iſland Britains*, as the *Belgæ* a great Nation in the Iſle of *Britain*, are ſaid to have been a People of *Gallia Belgica*. The reaſon is, becauſe there was no Author before *Geofry* of *Monmouth* who takes notice of this tranſporting of the *Inſular-Britains* by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no antient Author *Greek* or *Latin* making mention of it. And for the *Welch* or *Britiſh* words which are ſtill remaining in the language, they are conceived to be no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* tongue; which was originally the ſame with the antient *Britiſh*, as is elſewhere proved.

The Province is in compaſſe 200 *French* Leagues: Pleaſant and fruitfull, beautified with many ſhady Woods, and ſpacious Downs: ſufficiently well ſtored with all manner of grain, but deſtitute of Wine and the choicer fruits, by reaſon of the Northerly ſituation of it. Divided commonly into *Hault* or *High Bretagne*, and *Baſſe* or *Low Bretagne*: the firſt containing the more Eaſtern, and the laſt the Weſtern parts hereof. Neither of the two much furniſhed with navigable or notable Rivers; the defect of which, the neighbourhood of the Sea ſupplieth, affording more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens, thoſe of moſt note in the *Higher Bretagne*, are 1. S. *Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every higher-water it is incompaſſed. A Biſhops See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French*, and *Spaniſh*, who uſe here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes ſpoyled by the *Engliſh*, in their Wars with *France*, eſpecially ſince the time of King *Henry* the ſeventh. 2. *Blavet*, a ſafe but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the ſame name alſo. Impregnably fortified by the *Spaniards*, *Anno* 1590. when taking opportunity of the broile in *France*, and pretending a good title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the male iſſue of King *Henry* the ſecond, he thought by this door to have entred on the whole E[illegible]te, but quitted it again on the general peace made between the Crowns. 3. S. *Brien*, (by the *Latins* called *Fannum Sancti Brioci*) a Biſhops See, and a well-traded Port, ſeated upon the *Engliſh* Channel. 4. *Vannes*, a Biſhops See alſo, ſituate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Vilain*; the chief Town of the *Veneti*, whom *Cæſar* placeth in this tract, and makes them to be the mightieſt People of all the *Armoricans*, ſtrongeſt in ſhipping, and beſt ſeen in affairs at Sea. 5. *Croſſie*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the *Gallick* Ocean. Then in *Low Bretagne*, or the more Weſtern parts hereof, there is 6. *Breſt*, ſeated upon a ſpacious Bay of the Weſtern Ocean; the key and Bulwark of this Country, and the goodlieſt Harbour of all *France*. 7. *Morlais*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8. S. *Pol de Leon*, and 9. *Triguier*, both Biſhops Sees, both ſituate on the Sea-ſhore, and both the chief Towns of the *Oſſiſmi*, whom *Ptolomy* and *Strabo* place upon this Coaſt; the firſt of them neighboured by the *Promontory* which they call *Le Four*, the *Govaum* of *Ptolomy*. 10. *Kemper Corentin*, a Biſhops See alſo, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cournovaille* (and called ſo for the ſame reaſon as *Cornwall* in *England* is) ſituate not far from the *Foreland* which they call *Penmarch* oppoſite to *Le Four* ſpoken of before. A Sea Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can finde. 11. *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not far from *Breſt*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1. *Nantes*, the principal City of the *Nannetes*, by *Ptolomy* called *Condivincinum*) a large, fair, ſtrong, and populous City, ſeated upon the *Loire*; a Biſhops See, and the *Metropolis* of *Bretagne*. 2. *Renes*, anciently the chief Town of the *Rhedones* (called *Condate* by *Ptolomy*) now a Biſhops See, and the Parliament City for this County, eſtabliſhed here *Anno* 1553. which maketh it very populous, and of great Reſort, though not fully two miles in compaſs. 3. *Dol*, an Epiſcopal City alſo, but unwholſomly ſeated amongſt Mariſhes. 4. *Dinan* a rich and pleaſant Town on the River *Rance*. 5. *L' Amballe*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliates*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*. 6. *Rohan*, the title and inheritance of the Dukes of *Rohan*, deſcended from a branch of the Ducal Family of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the ſecond Daughter of Duke *Francis* the firſt, and Wife of *John* then Viſcount of *Rohan*. 7. *Anſenis*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendoſme*, and the head of his Eſtates in *Bretagne*. Of which poſſeſſed in the right of his Wife, the daughter of the Duke of *Mercoeur* by the Heir of *Martignes*, another of the branches of this Ducal Family. 8. *Chaſteau-Briant*, a ſtrong piece on the borders of *Normandy*. 9. *Cliſſon*, the chief Town of the Dutchy of *Raiz*, being that part of *Bretagne* which lieth on the South-ſide of the *Loir*; a ſtrong Town, and fortified with a very good Caſtle.

Bretagne. The *Brittains*, whoſoever they were in their firſt Original, were queſtionleſs one of the firſt Nations that poſſeſſed any part of *Gaul*, after the Conqueſt of the *Romans*. Governed at firſt by their own Kings, the moſt conſiderable of which was that *Aldroenus* or *Auldran*, the Son of *Solomon*, who at the ſute of the *Inſular Brittains*, then diſtreſſed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, as (*Geofrey* of *Monmouth* telleth the ſtory) ſent over *Conſtantine* his Brother with a complete Army to their aid; who having valiantly repulſed the Enemy, was made King of *Brittain*, *Anno* 433. Of whoſe poſterity more there. Thoſe of *Armorica* being broken by the puiſſance of *Charls* the *Great*, abandoned the name of Kings, and ſatisfied themſelves with the title of Earls; aſſumed firſt by *Alain le Rebre*; 874. but as ſome ſay *An.* 859. which was ſomewhat ſooner. By *Peter* of *Dreu*, the ſixteenth Earl, challenging his Eſtate in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Siſter of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Conſtance*, by *Guy* of *Thouars* her third Husband, the better to ſecure his title, this Earldom was made ſubject to the Vaſſallage of the Crown of *France*, in the time of *Lewis* the ninth; by whom *John* called the *Red*, the Son of this *Peter*, was created the firſt Duke of *Bretagne*; as being of the Blood Royal of *France*, deſcended lineally from *Robert* the firſt Earl of *Dreux*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the *Groſſe*. Yet notwithſtanding this ſubjection to the Kings of *France*, the Dukes hereof reſerved unto themſelves the Soveraign powers; as to write themſelves, *By the Grace of God*, the priviledge of coyning Gold, &c. and ſtood ſo high upon their terms, that *Francis* the laſt Duke denied to do his Homage to *Charles* the ſeventh, either upon his Knees, or without his ſword, according to the former cuſtom. For which being quarreled by *Lewis* the eleventh, the Son of *Charls*, who was at better leiſure to purſue the buſineſs than his Father was, he joyned himſelf with *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* in a War againſt him; and thereby drew upon himſelf that ruine, which he endeavoured to avoid. For in concluſion, *Charles* of *Berry*, as it was thought, was poyſoned; *Charles* of *Burgundy* loſt his life at the Battel of *Nanci*, 1476. and a great part of his Eſtate was conquered by the *French* King. And *Francis* this Duke having embarked himſelf in the ſame troublous Ocean, muſt needs ſuffer ſhipwrak with his Copartners. The *French* King invadeth *Bretagne*; the Duke overcharged with melancholy, dies, 1488. leaving *Anne*, his Daughter and Heir, in the power of *Charles* the eighth, the Son and Succeſſor of that *Lewis*: who contracts a marriage with the Orphan, and uniteth *Bretagne* to *France*. There were many impediments which might have hindred this marriage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. Firſt *Charles* himſelf had been formerly contracted to the Archduke *Maximilians* Daughter; but this he held void, becauſe the young Lady was not of age, at the time of the contract. 2. *Anne* the Dutcheſs was alſo contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held unvalid alſo, becauſe that being his Homager ſhe could not beſtow her ſelf without his conſent. 3. *Maximilian* had by proxie maried her, which mariage he conſummated by a Ceremony in thoſe daies unuſual. For his Ambaſſador attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the ſame within the Sheets of the Dutcheſs, taking poſſeſſion thereby of her Bed and Body. But *Charles* conſulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Conſummation was rather an invention of Court, than any way firm by the Laws of the Church, and therefore of no power to hinder his purſuit of this marriage, ſo advantagious to his Crown. What elſe remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of *France*, we ſhall ſee anon; having firſt looked over the Succeſſion of thoſe Princes, who under ſeveral Titles have governed the Eſtate thereof; according to the beſt light we can get from Story.

Kings of the Britains *of* Gaul-Armorick.

375 1 *Conan* placed here by *Maximus*
2 *Grallon*, Son of *Conon*
3 *Solomon*, Son of *Grallon*
4 *Auldran*, or *Aldroenus*, the Son of *Solomon*
5 *Bodis* Son of *Auldran*
6 *Hoel*, Son of *Bodis*
7 *Hoel* II. Son of *Hoel* the firſt
8 *Alain*, Son of *Hoel* the ſecond
9 *Hoel* III. Son of *Allain*
10 *Solomon* II. Son of *Hoel* the third
11 *Alain* II. Grandchild to *Solomon* the ſecond, the laſt King of *Bretagne*, of the race of *Conan*: who dying without Iſſue, left his Kingdom unto many *Competitors*, by whom diſtracted into many petit Tyrannies, and at laſt ſubdued by *Charles* the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom, in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, who next ſucceeded; yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Inſomuch, as after the murther of two or three Uſurpers of the Royal title, *Alain*, ſirnamed *Le Rebre*, laid aſide that invidious name of King, and would be called only Earl of *Bretagne*. His Succeſſors follow.

Earls and Dukes of Bretagne.

874 1 *Alain le Rebre*
2 *Indicael* and *Colodock*, Sons of *Alain*.
3 *Mathrudon*, Son in Law of *Alain le Rebre*.
4 *Alain* II. Son of *Mathrudon*.
5 *Conan*, deſcended from King *Solomon* the third.
6 *Geofry*, Son of *Conan*.
7 *Alain* III. Son of *Geofry*.
8 *Conan* II. Son of *Alain*,
9 *Hoel*, Siſters Son of *Conan* the ſecond
10 *Alain* IV. called *Fregent*, Son of *Hoel*.
11 *Conan* III. ſon of *Alain*.
12 *Eudon*, Husband of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Conan*.
1131 13 *Conan* IV. Son of *Eudon*.
1172 14 *Geofry* II. Son of *Henry* the third, King of *England*, Husband of *Conſtance*, Daughter and Heir of *Conan* the fourth.

1186

Anjou.

1186 15 *Arthur* Son of *Geofry*.
1202 16 *Peter* of *Breux*, in right of *Alice* his Wife the half Siſter of *Arthur*.
1250 17 *John*, the firſt Duke of *Bretagne*.
1287 18 *John* II. Son of *John* the firſt.
1305 19 *Arthur* II. Son of *John* the ſecond.
1312 20 *John* III. Son of *Arthur* the ſecond.
1341 21 *John* Earl of *Montfort*, Brothers Son of *Arthur*.
1399 22 *John* V. Son of *John* of *Montfort*.
1442 23 *Francis* the Son of *John* the fifth.
1450 24 *Peter*, the Brother of Duke *Francis*.
1457 25 *Arthur* III. ſecond Son of *John* Earl of *Montfort*.
1458 26 *Francis* II. Son of *Richard* Earl of *Eſtampes*, the Brother of Duke *Arthur* the 3d, the laſt Duke of *Bretagne*, of whom ſufficiently before.
1484 27 *Charles* the 8th, *French* King, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne* in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Francis* the 2d.
1498 28 *Lewis* 12th, *French* King ſucceeded on the death of *Charles*, in the right of the ſaid *Anne*, whom he took to Wife: and to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himſelf from the Lady *Joan* his former Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the 11th.

1515 29 *Francis* the III. of *Bretagne*, and the firſt of *France*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom in right of *Claude* his Wife, the eldeſt Daughter of *Lewis* the 12th and of *Anne* of *Bretagne*: by whom being made the Father of ſo many Children, that he had little cauſe to fear that the Crown would be ſeparated from his Houſe; in the year 1532. being the ſeventeenth of his reign and Government, cauſed an Act to paſſe, with the conſent of the States of *Bretagne*, for the inſeparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of *France*, and by that means diveſted his poſterity of it. For his male iſſue failing in King *Henry* the 3d, the rights hereof deſcended on the Heirs general; that is to ſay, on *Iſabel*, Daughter of *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, and of the Lady *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth* his Wife, the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the ſecond, and Neece to the ſaid *Francis* the firſt and after her deceaſe (dying without iſſue) on the Lady *Katharine* her Siſter, maried to *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*. For whom when *Philip* of *Spain* claimed this Eſtate, the *French* pretended a Law againſt it of their own deviſing, *viz.* That no Eſtate being incorporated to that Crown, could be alienated from it. A proper Law, and couſen *German* to the *Salique*; but ſuch as ſerved their turn by the help of the *Engliſh*, who deſired not to have the *Spaniards* ſo near Neighbours to them.

The moſt of our former Earls of *Richmond* were Earls and Dukes of this Houſe. Their Armes were *Ermines*.

6. *The Eſtates of* ANJOU.

THE Eſtates of *ANJOU*, taking them in the full latitude and extent hereof; bounded on the Eaſt with *La Beauſſe*; on the Weſt with *Bretagne*, and part of *Poictou*; on the North, with *Normandy*; and on the South, with part of *Berry*, and *Poictou*. In which circumference are comprehended the three ſmall Provinces of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; moſt commonly accounted of as parts and members of *La Beauſſe*, the antient Inhabitants whereof, in the times of the *Romans*, were the *Andes*, as *Caſar* (or the *Andegavii*, as *Pliny*) calls them, the *Lurones*, and the *Cenomani*, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of *Lugdunenſis Tertia*,

The Country for the moſt part is very fruitful and pleſant, eſpecially in *Tourein*; as is the whole tract upon the *Loir*. *Anjou* is ſomewhat the more hilly, but otherwiſe little inferior to *Tourein*; affording plenty of white Wines, the beſt in *France*, and yielding from thoſe Hills above 40 Riverets, falling into the *Loire* from thence; the chief whereof are *Mayenne*. 2. *Vienne*. 3. *Dive*, and 4 *Sartre*.

1. *Anjou*, called *Andegavia* by the *Latines*, is ſituate in the midſt betwixt *Maine* and *Tourein*, ſo called from the *Andegavi*, the old Inhabitants of theſe parts. Principal Cities are, 1. *Angiers*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Juliomagus*) of a large circuit, and well built, the See of a Biſhop, reckoned in it 15 Pariſhes beſides the Cathedral. It is ſeated on the River *Sartre* in a very good air, and therefore choſen for the ſeat of an *Univerſity*, founded here by *Lewis* the ſecond Duke of *Anjou*, the Son of King *John*, *Anno* 1388. 2. *Beaufort*, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Lancaſter*, in which *John* of *Gaunt* ſo much delighted, that he cauſed all the Children that he had by *Katharine Swinford*, his third Wife, to be called *Beauforts*: which *Beauforts* were afterward Dukes of *Sumerſet*, and *Exeter*, and Earls of *Dorſet*. This Town came to the houſe of *Lancaſter*, by the marriage of *Blanch* of *Artoys*, unto *Edmund* ſirnamed *Crouchback*, ſecond Son to our *Henry* the third; created by his Father, the firſt Earl of *Lancaſter*. Memorable in theſe latter times for giving the Title of a Dutcheſs to Madam *Katharine*, the beloved Miſtreſs of K. *Henry* the 4th, by whom ſhe was mother of *Caſar* now Duke of *Vendoſme*, and of *Alexander*, not long ſince the *Grand Prior* of *France*. With reference to which, the ſecond Son of the Duke of *Vendoſme* is honoured at this preſent with the title of Duke of *Beaufort*; as the eldeſt with relation to his Mother was made Duke of *Mercoeur*. 3. *Baugie*, near which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the *Engliſh* and the *French*, wherein the *Engliſh* loſt the day, and *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, Brother to *Henry* the fifth, was there unfortunately ſlain, *Anno* 1422. 4. *Saumur*, pleaſantly ſituate on the *Loire*, and for long time one of the Cautionary Towns in the hands of thoſe of the *Reformed* Religion: of whom it is the only entire Univerſity in this Kingdom; eſpecially famous for the learned *Philip du Morney*, Lord of *Pleſſis*, ſometimes the Governor hereof. 5. *Loches*, ſeated on the River *Indre*, the Caſtle whereof being mounted on a ſteep high Rock, is thought to be one of the ſtrongeſt

Anjou.

pieces of all *France.* 6. *La Fleſche*, of ſpecial name at the preſent for a Colledge of *Jeſuites*, one of the faireſt in this Kingdome. The word in the *French* tongue ſignifieth an Arrow (whence thoſe who make Bowes and Arrowes have the name of *Fleſchers*) At *Nola* in the Realm of *Naples*, there is another Colledge of them, called *D' Arque*, the Bow: on which one wittily compoſed this enſuing *Diſtich*;

Arcum Nola *dedit, dedit illis alma Sagittam*
Gallia: *quis Funem, quem meruere, dabit?*

That is to ſay,

Nola *the* Bow, *ad* France *the ſhaft did bring*:
But who ſhall help them to the Hempen-ſtring?

2. On the South-eaſt of *Anjou*, lieth the Country of *Tourein*, the antient Seat of the *Turones*: which for the wholſomneſs of the Air, the pleaſantneſs of the Country, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by ſome called the *Garden of France.* Principal Cities in it, 1. *Amboiſe*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Loire*, and beautified with one of the faireſt Caſtles in *France*, both for the gallantry of the Building, and beautifulneſs of the Proſpect. 2. *Tours*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cæſarodunum*, and the *Turonum Civitas* of *Antoninus*; the Metropolis of *Lugdunenſis tertia*, and an Archbiſhops See: a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, ſituate on the banks of the *Loire*, in a moſt ſweet and pleaſing Country. Famous in that thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*, from the Gate of St. *Hugo*, at which they uſed to iſſue out to their Aſſemblies in the Fields, had the name of *Hugonots.* Given to them, as ſome others think, as the Diſciples of the night-walking Spirit (or *Robin Good-fellow*) which they call St. *Hugo*, in regard they had their firſt meetings, for the moſt part, in the nights; as had the Primitive Chriſtians in the times of their Perſecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculouſly) derive the name from the firſt words of an Apology which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were, *Huc nos venimus*, fancying, that as the *Proteſtants* did derive that Appellation from the word *Proteſtantes*, and *Proteſtamur*, ſo often uſed by them in their *Apologie* to *Charles* the fifth; ſo from thoſe words, *Huc nos*, came the name of *Hugonots*, or *Hucknots.* But more aſſuredly famous for the great Battel fought near it by *Charles Martell*, *Mayre* of the Palace, and Father of *Pepin* King of *France*, againſt an Army of 40 0000 *Moors*, led by *Abderamen*, Lieutenanant General in *Spain*, for *Evilid* or *Iſcam* the great *Caliph*: of which 370000 loſt their lives in the place, *Anno* 734. 3. *Laudun.* 4. *Lichelieu*, pleaſantly ſeated in a rich and flouriſhing Soil, as the name importeth. Of no great note till the time of the late great Cardinal of *Richlieu*, who took name from hence; by whom it was made one of the neateſt Towns (for the bigneſs of it) in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the titles of a Dukedom and *Pairrie* of *France.*

As for the Fortunes of this Province (as for *Anjou* we ſhall ſpeak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietary Earls, of the Houſe of *Blais* conferred by *Hugh Capet*, upon *Odon* Earl of *Blais* and *Champagne*: and by him given, together with the Earldom of *Blais*, to *Theobald* or *Thibauld* his eldeſt Son, (his ſecond Son named *Stephen* ſucceeding in *Champagne*;) who in the year 1043. was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Charles Martell* Earl of *Anjou*, and this Provice ſeized on by the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours* his ordinary Seat and Reſidence. Part of whch Earldom it continued, till the ſeizure of *Anjou*, and all the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces in *France*, on the ſentence paſſed upon King *John.* After which time diſmembred from it, it was conferred on *John*, the fourth Son of King *Charles* the ſixth, with the ſtile and title of Duke of *Tourein*; and he deceaſing without Iſſue, it was beſtowed with the ſame title, on *Charles* the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* (in the life of his Father) the ſame who afterwards ſucceeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken priſoner by the *Engliſh* at the Battel of *Agincourt*, kept priſoner 25 years in *England*, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis* the twelfth.

3. On the North ſide of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandy*, lieth the Province of *Main*; *Commitatus Cenomannenſis* in our *Latin* writers, So called of the *Cenomanni* the old Inhabitants of this tract in the time of *Cæſar*, ſome of which, with the *Boii*, *Senones*, and other nations of the *Galls* had in the former time paſſed over the *Alpes*, and there poſſeſſed themſelver of thoſe Countries, which now paſſe under the name and accompt of *Lombardy.* The chief towns whereof are, 1. *Mans*, *Cenomannenſium Civitas* in *Antoninus*, by *Ptolomy* called *Vindinum*; ſeated on the meeting of *Huin*, and *Sartre*, the principal of the Province, and a Biſhops See: moſt memorable in the elder times for giving the title of an Earl to that famous *Rowland*, the Siſters Son of *Charlemaigne*, one of the *twelve Peers* of *France*; (the Subject of many notable Poems, under the name of *Orlando Inamorato*, *Orlando Furioſo*, beſide many of the old *Romances*) who was Earl of *Mans.* 2. *Mayenne*, on the Banks of a River of the ſame name, (*Meduana* in *Latine*) the title of the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Guiſe*: famous for *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, who held out for the *League* againſt *Henry* the 4th; a Prince not to be equalled in the Art of war, only unfortunate in employing it in ſo ill a cauſe. 3. *Vitrun*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4. *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*: of note for giving both name and title to the Earls of *Laval*, an antient Family, allied unto the houſes of *Vendoſme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and others of the beſt of *France.* Few elſe of any note in this little County; which once ſubſiſting of its ſelf under its own natural Lords and Princes, was at laſt united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the marriage of the Lady *Guiburge*, Daughter and Heir of *Helis*, the laſt Earl hereof, to *Foulk*

Earl

Anjou.

Earl of *Anjou*, *Anno* 1083. or thereabouts; the Fortunes of which great Eſtate it hath alwayes followed, ſince that time.

But as for *Anjou* it ſelf, the principal part of this goodly Patrimony, it was by *Charles* the *Bald* conferred on *Robert* a *Saxon* Prince, for his valour ſhewn againſt the *Normans*, *Anno* 870. Which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of *France*, of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of *Robert* who ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*; Competitor with *Charles* the *Simple* for the Crown it ſelf, as the next Heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the purſuit of this great quarrel, he left this Earldom, with the title of Earl of *Paris*, and his pretenſions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his ſon, ſirnamed the *Great*: who to make good his claim to the Crown, againſt *Lewis* the 4th. Son of *Charles* the *Simple*, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the Countrey of *Gaſtinois*, on *Geofry* ſirnamed *Gryſogonelle*, a renowned Warriour, and a great ſtickler in his cauſe, in whoſe race it continued near 300 years. How the two Counties of *Main* and *Tourein* were joyned to it, hath been ſhewn before. *Geofry* the Son of *Foulk* the third, married *Maud*, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt of *England*, and Widow of *Henry* the fourth Emperor: from whom proceeded *Henry* the ſecond, King of *England*, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *John* his Son, forfeiting his Eſtates in *France* (as the *French* pretended) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown: and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis* the ninth, on his brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrix* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*, and by Pope *Urban* the fourth, was made King of *Naples* and *Sicily*. Afterwards was made a Dukedom by King *Charles* the 5. (*Tourein* being firſt diſmembred from it) in the perſon of *Lewis* of *France* his ſecond Brother, to whom this fair Eſtate was given, as ſecond Son of King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and conſequently the next Heir to *Charles de Valois* the laſt Earl hereof (the King his brother yielding up all his right unto him) Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis* the eleventh; The Earls and Dukes hereof having been veſted with the Diadems of ſeveral Countries, following in this order.

The Earls of *Anjou* of the line of *Saxony*.

870	1	*Robert* of *Saxony*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*.
875	2	*Robert* II. Competitor for the Crown of *France* with *Charles* the *Simple*, as Brother of *Eudes* the laſt King.
922	3	*Hugh* the *great*, Lord of *Gaſtinois*, Earl of *Paris*, Conſtable of *France*, and Father of *Hugh Capet*.
926	4	*Geofry Gryſogonelle*, by the Donation of *Hugh* the *great*, whoſe party he had followed in the War of *France*, with great fidelity and courage.
983	5	*Foulk*, Earl of *Anjou* the Son of *Geofry*.
987	6	*Geofry* II. ſirnamed *Martell*, for his great valour.
1047	7	*Geofry* III. Nephew of *Geofry* the ſecond, by one of his Siſters.
1075	8	*Foulk* II. Brother of *Geofrey* the third, gave *Gaſtinois* (which was his proper inheritance) to King *Philip* the firſt; that by his help he might recover the Earldome of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his brother *Geofry*.
1080	9	*Geofry* IV. Son of *Foulk* the ſecond.
1083	10	*Foulk* III. Brother of *Geofry*; King of *Hieruſalem* in the right of *Meliſend* his wife.
1143	11	*Geofry* V. ſirnamed *Plantegenet*.
1150	12	*Henry* the II. King of *England*, Son of Earl *Geofry* and *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of King *Henry* the firſt.
1162	13	*Geofry* VI. third ſon of King *Henry* the ſecond, made Earl of *Anjou* on his marriage with *Conſtance*; the Heir of *Bretagne*.
1186	14	*Arthur* Son of *Geofry* and *Conſtance*.
1202	15	*John* King of *England*, ſucceeded on the death of *Arthur*; diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtates in *France* by *Philip Auguſtus*, immediately on the death of *Arthur*, *Anno* 1202.

Earls and Dukes of *Anjou*, of the Line of *France*.

1262	1	*Charles*, Brother of King *Lewis* the ninth, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, King of *Naples* and *Sicilia*, &c.
1315	2	*Charles* of *Valois*, Son of *Philip* the third; Earl of *Anjou* in right of his Wife, Neece of the former *Charles*, by his Son and Heir of the ſame name; the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King.
1318	3	*Lewis* of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of *Charles*, dyed without iſſue, *An.* 1325.
1376	4	*Lewis* of *France*, the 2d Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, created the firſt Duke of *Anjou* by King *Charles* his Brother; and adopted by Queen *Joan* of *Naples*, King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hieruſalem*, and Earl of *Provence*.
1385	5	*Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, and *Main*; titulary King of *Sicil*, *Naples*, and *Hieruſalem*.
1416	6	*Lewis* IV. ſucceſſor to his Father in Eſtate and Titles.
1430	7	*Rene*, the Brother of *Lewis*, by the adoption of Q. *Joan* the ſecond, was for a while poſſeſſed of *Naples*; but preſently outed by *Alfonſo* of *Aragon*, and dyed the titulary King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hieruſalem*; the Father of Queen *Margarite*,

Wife of *Henry* the ſixth ; and Duke of *Bar*, in right of *Violant* his Mother.
1480 8 *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, Nephew to *Rene* by his third Brother *Charles*, at his deceaſe left *Anjou*, and all the reſt of his Eſtates to King *Lewis* the 11th. *An.* 1481. Since which never otherwiſe aliened, than as an honourary title of the third Son of *France*.

It is to be obſerved here (according to our method in other places) that *Rene* King of *Sicil*, &c. and Duke of *Anjou*, inſtituted an Order of *Knighthood*, called of the *Croiſſant* : the Knights whereof carried a *Creſcent*, or Half-moon, on their right Arms, with this Motto, *L'Os en Croiſſant* ; encouraging them thereby to ſeek the increaſe of valour and reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedome, were *France*, a Border *Gules*.

7. LA BEAUSSE.

LA BEAUSSE (not reckoning in the Provinces laſt before deſcribed) is bounded on the Eaſt with *France* ſpecially and primarily ſo called ; on the Weſt, with *Anjou*, *Main*, *Tourein*, and ſome part of *Berry* ; on the North, with *Normandy* ; and on the South, with *Nivernois*, and the reſt of *Berry*. It is called *Belſia* in *Latine* Writers ; both names derived from the pleaſantneſs and beauties of it ; this Country being not only looked on as the Garden of *France*, but the Nurſe of the great City of *Paris*, which from the breaſts hereof receiveth the beſt part of its ſuſtenance.

The principal Nations of the whole in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greateſt part, and the *Samnitæ* near the *Loire* ; part of *Gallia Celtica*, and caſt into the Province of *Lugdunenſis quarta* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*. Divided by the *French* into the *Higher*, the *Lower* and the *intermediate*.

1. The *HIGHER BEAUSSE* is that part which lyeth next to *Normandy*, of which the principal Towns are, 1. *Dreux*, ſeated upon the River *Eureux*, ſuppoſed to be the ſeat of the antient *Druides*, who held here their *Parliaments* or *Seſſions* for adminiſtration of Juſtice. The title and inheritance of *Robert*, one of the younger ſons of K. *Lewis* the *Groſſe*, and Grandfather of that *Peter* of *Dreux*, who ſucceeded *Arthur*, the Son of *Geofry Plantagenet*, in the Earldom of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montfort*, an Earldom, the title and Eſtate of *John* Earl of *Montfort*, ſirnamed the *Valiant*, who ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, by the aid of the *Engliſh*, *An.* 1341. 3. *Chartres*, called antiently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by *Ptolomy*, *Atricum*) from whence the Country hereabouts was called *Le Pais Chartrain* : ſeated in an uneven place, varyed with fertile riſing Hills, ſo that the Eaſt ſide ſtands upon the top of an Hill, and the Weſt ſpreads it ſelf in the bottom of a Plain, through the midſt whereof runs the River *Eure*, which, as ſoon as it comes to the Walls of the City, on the South-ſide, divides it ſelf into three branches, two whereof encompaſſe the City round about, and the third running thorow the middeſt thereof, ſerveth the Town with many Mills for the uſe of the people ; doth afterwards unite it ſelf with the reſt into one main Channel. A very fair and goodly City, a Biſhops See, and one of the *Vidamates* of *France* ; antiently giving the title of an Earldom alſo to the houſe of *Blois*, from the time that *Theobald* the ſecond Earl of *Blois* extorted it by ſtrong hand from the Biſhops hereof, about the year 950. continuing in the poſſeſſion of that Family till the year 1300. or thereabouts, when ſold by *Maheult* or *Maud*, the Heir Proprietor hereof, Wife of *Hugh de Chaſtillon*, in her right called Earl of *Blois* to King *Philip* the *Fair*, for an Annual penſion of 4000 *Livres*. 4. *Anneau*, a Town of the territory of *Chartres*, memorable for the great ſlaughter made here by *Henry* Duke of *Guiſſe*, of the *German* Auxiliaries, invading *France* with a right formidable Army in behalf of the *Hugonots*.

2. The *LOWER BEAUSSE* is that which lieth towards *Nivernois* and *Berry* ; and is ſubdivided into *Sologne*, and *Orleanois*. In *SOLOGNE*, which lieth cloſe to *Berry*, the chief places of note, are, 1. *Romorantin*, ſeated on the *Souldre*, the chief Town of this Tract. 2. *Mallenzay*. 3. *La Ferte*, or *La Ferte S. Bernard*, of which nothing memorable. In *ORLEANOIS*, which lyeth more Northwards upon the River of *Loyre*, are, 1. *Jargeau*, a Town once of very great ſtrength, and one of the out-works of *Orleans*. 2. *Cleri*, called alſo *Cleri* of *Noſtre-dame*, from the Church there built unto *our Lady*. 3. *Tury* ; and 4. *Angerville*, both in the ordinary Road betwixt *Paris* and 5. *Orleans*, the principal City of all *Beauſſe* called *Genabum* in the time of *Cæſar* ; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperor *Aurelius*. *Anno* 276. from thence named *Aurelia*, the Country round about it *Aurelianenſis*, now *Orleans*, and *Orleanois*. The Countrey generally very fruitfull, and yielding a moſt excellent and delicious Wine ; which for the ſtrength, and intoxicating power thereof, is baniſhed the *French* Kings Cellar by eſpecial *Edict*. The City very pleaſantly ſeated on the River *Loyre*, well built, ſituate in a ſweet Air, and planted with a civil and ingenuous People ; who are ſaid to ſpeak the beſt Language of any in *France*. For a time it was the chief Seat of a diſtinct Kingdom, (according to the unprovident humour of the *Merovignians*) the lot of *Clodomire* Sonne of *Clovis* the *Great*, and of *Guntram* Sonne of of *Clotarie*, both Kings of *Orleans* ; as alſo was *Theodorick*, the ſecond Sonne of *Childebert* King of *Mets*, on the death of *Guntram*. But *Sigibert* his Sonne being vanquiſhed by *Clotaire* the ſecond, this Kingdom extending to the ſhores of the *Aquitain* Ocean, was added unto that of *Franre*. *Orleans* ſince that time content with a lower title, hath of late oftentimes with greater prudence, been made the honourary title of the ſecond Sonnes of *France*, called Dukes hereof ; the firſt who had the title being *Philip* the 2^d^. Sonne of *Philip de Valois*, from a baſe Sonne of whoſe, the

Berry.

Earls of *Dunois*, and Dukes of *Longeville* do derive themſelves, and *Lewis* the ſecond ſon of *Charles* the firſt, Grandfather of *Lewis* the 11th *French* King. It is a See Epiſcopal, a Bailywick, or *Seige Præſidial*, and an Univerſity. The *See Epiſcopal* founded in the Church of St. *Croſſe*, miſerably ruined by the *Hugonots* in the Civil Wars, out of meer hatred to the name. The *Siege Præſidial* ſetled here by King *Henry* the 2d, 1551. for the eaſe of his Subjects of theſe parts, in ſuits not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The Univerſity erected by King *Philip le Bel. An.* 1312. though to ſpeak properly, it be an *Hall* only for the reading of the *Civil Laws*, the only learning there profeſſed, and for that conſiderable. A Town now not of ſo great ſtrength as in former times, when for ſome moneths it held out againſt the whole power of the *Engliſh*; reſcued from them at laſt by the valour of *Joan* the *Virgin*, whoſe *Statue* (like a man of Arms) is ſtill preſerved on the Bridge-gate of this City; near which great *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury* had his Fatal blow.

The *MIDDLE* or intermediate *BEAUSSE* lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are. 1. *Blois*, ſeated alſo on the *Loire*, in a ſound Air, and fruitful Country; the Nurſery for the moſt part of the Kings Children, for that cauſe much reſorted to by the Nobility, and honoured ſometimes with the reſidence of the Kings themſelves: it being in the Councel-chamber of the Kings houſe here, that *Henry* of *Lourein*, Duke of *Guiſe*, the chief contriver of the terrible *Maſſacre* at *Paris*, and Author of the *Holy League*; was ſlain by the command of King *Henry* the 3d, *Anno* 1589. 5. *Ghaſtean-Dun*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunots*, (the honour and Eſtate of *John* Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Baſtard* of *Orleans*, one of the beſt ſouldiers of his time, and ſo approved by his exploits againſt the *Engliſh*) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the *Loire* and *Aigre*. 3. *Lavardin*, moſt remarkable for giving name and honout to a noble Family, which depending on the houſe of *Vendoſme* (to the *Signeury* whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, *Monſieur de Laourdin*, a faithfull and couragious follower of King *Henry* the 4th, in his long War againſt the *Leaguers*. 4. *Vendoſme* (*Vendocinum* in *Latin*) the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendoſme*; not otherwiſe of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born this Title: of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now regnant, I have thought fit to adde the enſuing Catalogue; premiſing firſt, that this Earldom came to the houſe of *France* by the mariage of *Katharine* daughter and Heir of *John*, the laſt Earl of the former Race, to *John* the firſt, the Earl of the other Family.

Earls and Dukes of Vendoſme.

1386 1 *John* of *Bourbon*, Grandchild of *Lewis* the firſt Duke of *Bourbon*, the firſt Earl of *Vendoſme* of this Family.
1432 2 *Lewis* of *Bourbon* a Confederate with *Joan* the *Virgin*, in her actions againſt the *Engliſh*.
1446 3 *John* of *Bourbon* II. from whom deſcended the Princes of *Roch-ſuryon*, and the Dukes of *Montpenſier*.
1472 4 *Francis* of *Bourbon*.
1495 5 *Charles* of *Bourbon*, the firſt Duke of *Vendoſme*, from whoſe youngeſt ſon called *Lodowick*, or *Lewis*, deſcend the now Princes of *Conde*, and Earls of *Soiſons*.
1532 7 *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme* and King of *Navarre*.
1562 6 *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme* and King of *Navarre*; afterwards King of *France* alſo, by the name of *Henry* the 4th.
8 *Cæſar de Vendoſme*, one of the ſons of *Henry* the 4th, by the Dutcheſſe of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendoſme*, and once deſigned his ſucceſſor in the Crown of *France*. Afterwards by the procurement of the King his Father, married to the Daughter and Heir of *Philbert Emanuel*, D. of *Mercoeur*, a younger branch of the houſe of *Lorrein*) poſſeſſed of a fair and goodly Eſtate in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in the right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the houſe of *Martignes* (a branch of the Family of thoſe Dukes.) By means whereof the Duke of *Vendoſme* hath not only a large inheritance, but great authority in that Country.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendoſme*, were and are, *Azure*, ſix Flower de Lyces, *Or*, 3.2.1. Thoſe of the former Family affirmed by *Bara* to have been *France*, on a Bend *Gules*, three Lyons *Or*.

But the great Lords of this Country, were the Earls of *Blois*, poſſeſſed not only of the Earldom of *Chartreſs* (fair and goodly Signeury) in the higher *Beauſs*; but alſo of the whole Country of *Tourein*, a better Patrimony and Eſtate than that; which how they were alienated from this Houſe, we have ſeen before. And as for the Earldom of *Blois* it ſelf, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle of *Beauſſe*, thereunto belonging; which being after ſold to the Dukes of *Orleans*, gave the firſt greatneſs to that Houſe. As for the Earls of *Blois* themſelves, they fetch their Pedigree from one *Gerlon* a noble *Dane* (companion in Arms unto *Rollo* the firſt Duke of *Normandy*) in his acquiring of that Dukedom, by *Charles* the *Simple* created the firſt Earl hereof, *An.* 920. or thereabouts, branching it ſelf into the houſes of *Blois* and *Champagne*; ſometines united in one perſon, but for the moſt part, and at laſt, divided into two great Families. *Stephen* King of *England*, commonly called *Stephen* of *Blois*, derived both his name and parentage from the Earls of this houſe, as being ſon of *Theobald*, the fifth Earl of *Blois*, by *Maud* one of the daughters of *William*, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*, ſirnamed the Conqueror. From this *Theobald* the Earls of *Blois* continued in the maſculine Line, till the year 1219. under nine Princes in the total, of the houſe of *Gerlon*: And then it fell by the Heirs General, to the noble Family of *Chaſtillon*, continuing theirs till the year 1391. when ſold by *Guy de Chaſtillon* the laſt Earl of that Houſe, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleance*, he being

Nivernois. then Childleſſe, and wholly governed by his Wife (a Daughter of the houſe of *Namurre*) who could not otherwiſe maintain her great prodigality, but by readymoney. United finally to the Crown, by *Lewis* the Grand-ſon of this *Lewis* on his ſucceſſion to the Kingdom, after *Charles* the 8th.

The Arms of theſe great Earls were, *Gules*, three *Palls*, *Vair*, a *Chief*, *Or*.

8. NIVERNOIS.

NIvernois is bounded on the North with *La Beauſſe*, on the South with *Burbonois*, on the Eaſt with *Champagne*, and on the Weſt with *Berry*; ſo called from *Nivernium*, or *Nevers*, the chief Town thereof.

This is the ſmalleſt province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, becauſe not eaſily reducible unto any other, as all the reſt of the leſſer Provinces may be. The Soyl not very fruitful of Corn or Wine, but plentifully ſtored with rich Paſtures, and well ſhaded with Woods, in which are found ſome Mines of Iron, interſperſed with Silver, and many quarries of good Stone, of much uſe for building. The territory being but ſmall, we cannot look for many Towns of note, and conſequence. Of thoſe that be, the principal are, 1. *Pontigni*, remarkable for an antient Abby, the burial place of ſome of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2. *Nevers* it ſelf upon the *Loyre*, beautified with a Bridge of 20 Arches, but otherwiſe not great or fair, though the chief of this ſmall Country, and the ſeat of the Dukes. The reputation which it hath proceeding ſpecially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts, and from them won by the *French*, it came to have Princes of its own, almoſt as early as any other Country in the Realm of *France*. Who was the firſt that had the title of Earl of *Nevers*, and therewithal the Lordſhip of his Eſtate, I can nowhere find; but ſure I am, that in the year 1001. both the Eſtate and title were enjoyed by *Laudin* a noble man of the *Burgundian* race, who on the death of *Henry* the 4th, Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have ſeized on that Eſtate, in deſpight of *Robert* King of *France*, who pretended to it. Paſſing through many Families, it came at laſt to the Houſe of *Burgogne*, in the perſon of *Odo*, ſon of *Hugh* the fourth of that name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir General of *Nevers*, and from that to the houſe of *Flanders*, by the mariage of *Toland* of Burgogne, to *Robert* of *Bethure* Earl of *Flanders*, 1312. whoſe ſon named *Lewis*, married the Heir of *Rethell*; uniting by that mariage theſe Eſtates under his command. Together with the reſt of the Rights of *Flanders*, it came again by marriage to *Philip* the *Hardy* Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and conſent of his elder Sons (otherwiſe well provided for) conferred both it and *Rethel*, on his third ſon *Philip*, whoſe Neece *Elizabeth*, daughter and Heir of *John* of Burgogne, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve* her Husband, *An.* 1484. In the perſon of *Francis*, the 4th Earl of this Houſe, it was made a Dukedom, and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, ſiſter and Heir of *Francis* the laſt Prince of this Family, was brought in Dower to *Lewis de Gonzaga*, ſecond ſon of *Frederick* Duke of *Mantua*, *An.* 1563. whoſe ſon *Charles* ſucceeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*; and *Vincent* of *Gonzaga*, his Couſin German, in the Dukedom of *Mantua*. And here it is to be obſerved, that though this Eſtate hath paſſed through ſo many Families, yet the rights and Regalities thereof, have been ſtill continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought I can find) under any of the Parliaments of *France*, as all the reſt of that Kingdom is, but ſuch parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or elſe enjoy the priviledges of a Free Eſtate.

The Arms hereof are, *Azure*, within a Border *Compone*, *Gules* and *Argent*, three Flower de Lyces, *Or*.

9. *The Dukedom of* BOURBON.

THE Dukedom of *Bourbon*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonois*, *Forreſt*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Auvergne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1. *Bourbonois* hath on the Eaſt the Dukedom of *Burgundy*; on the Weſt, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a corner of *Gaſtinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*: ſo called from *Bourbon* (for diſtinction ſake, called *Bourbon Archenbauld*) the chief Town hereof. The Country very well wooded, and of excellent paſturage; which makes the people more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loyre*, *Tonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted navigable; beſides *Aron*, *Acoln*, *Lixentes*, *Lanobois*, and ſome leſſer ſtreams.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*. In the *Higher*, which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note, than that of *Montaigne*, ſituate in the County of *Combraille*: the *Signeury*, as I take it, of *Michael de Montaigne*, the Author of the Book of *Eſſaies*. But in the *Lower* *Bourbonois* are, 1. *Molins*, eſteemed the Center of all *France*, ſituate on the *Alliar*, a *Baillage*, and the chief Town of this County: the River yielding great plenty of Fiſh, but of Salmons eſpecially: the Town adorned with a fair Caſtle, and that beautified with one of the fineſt Gardens in *France*, in which are many trees of Limmons and Oranges, 2. *Bourbon Archenbauld*, and 3. *Bourbon Ancie*: the former of the two ſeated upon the *Loire* and giving name to the whole Province; of great reſort by reaſon

Forreſt

of its *medicinal* waters, 4. S. *Porcin*, and 5. *Varennes Canat* upon the Frontires of *Auvergne*, 6. *Chantelle*, 7. *Charroux*, 8. *Paliſſe*, 9. *Souvigni*, 10. St. *Amand*, &c.

The antient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being waſted in their warrs againſt the *Romans*, a great part of their Countrey was by *Julius Cæſar*, conferred on the *Boii*, a *German* Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their defeat to go whom again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the requeſt of the *Hedui*, who deſired it of him: and poſſibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have theſe *Boii* dwell among them, not only to fill up their numbers, and manure the waſte Grounds of their Countrey, but in regard of ſome nearer tye, that was between them: it being conceived by many learned men, that theſe *Boii*, which together with theſe *Cenomanni*, *Senons* and other *Gallick* Nations croſſed over the *Alpes*, had been originally in theſe parts, and being driven out of *Italy* by the conquering *Romans*, fell into *Germany*, and from thence ſent thoſe Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their Journey ſpoken of before. Made ſubject to the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Gallia*, and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitanica*, it continued under their command, till the coming of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was ſubdued and made a part of their Kingdom, in the ſubverting of which Kingdom, it was (together with *Beau-jolois*) ſubdued by the more powerful *French*, and how diſpoſed of afterwards, we ſhall ſee anon, having firſt taken a view of the other Provinces.

2. *Forreſt*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Beaujolis*; on the Weſt, with *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Bourbonois*; and on the South, with a part of *Languedoc*. The Countrey populous and large, but not very fruitful; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Wood-lands. The air a little of the coldeſt to afford good Wines, but that ſufficiently recompenced by abundance of Pit-coal; by which they have good Fires at a very cheap rate, the people are conceived to be none of the wiſeſt, but withall very greedy and covetous of gain.

The chief Towns in it are, 1. *Mont-briſon*, ſeated on the *Loyre*. 2. *Feurs*, ſeated on the ſame River, called antiently *Forum Seguſianorum*, the chief Town of the *Seguſiani*, or *Seruſiani*, whom *Cæſar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3. St. *Stephen*, (or *Eſtienne*) in *Feurian*, near the head of that River. 4. St. *Germans*. 5. St. *Rimberg*. 6. St. *Bennet le chaſteau*. 7. St. *Guermier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Countrey of *Forreſt* was antiently a part of the Earldom of *Lyons*, diſmembred from it at or about the ſame time with *Beau-jolois*; and was held by a long ſucceſſion of Earls *Proprietaries* of it, as a State diſtinct: till *Regnaud* Lord of *Forreſt*, the Son of Earl of *Guy*, by the marriage of *Iſabel* Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beau-jeu*, joyned them both together, which was about the year 1265, parted again after his deceaſe. *Anno* 1280. *Guy* being his eldeſt Son ſucceeding in *Forreſt*; and *Lewis* his ſecond Son in *Beau-jeu*. How they became united in the Houſe of *Burgundy*, we ſhall ſee anon.

3. *Beau-jolois*, ſo called from *Beau-jeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the tract of ground betwixt the *Loire* and the *Soaſne*; and betwixt *Lionois*, and *Forreſt*. A Countrey of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it who have been men of great eminence in their ſeveral times. The Chief Town of it is *Beau-jeu*, beautified with a goodly Caſtle, pleaſantly ſeated on the brow of a riſing Mountain, from whence perhaps it took the name; as the great *Keep* in *Farnham* Caſtle, was in the ſame ſenſe, and for the ſame pleaſant ſituation, called *Joyeux Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du Lake*, whoſe that Caſtle was. Which appears further by a Tower at *Conſtantinople*, by *Guiſchard* the third of that name Lord hereof (being then Embaſſadour to the Emperour from King *Philip Auguſtus*) with this inſcription, *Turris Bellijocenſis*; which there continued to be ſeen, a long time after. 2. *Belle-ville*, where is an Abby founded by *Humbert* the ſecond, *Anno* 1158. 3. *Ville Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert* the fourth; whoſe Son *Guiſchard* the third above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciſcans* called to this day *Minorette*. 4. *Noironde*. 5. St. *Maurice*. 6. *Ulſie*. 7. *Obches*, concerning which there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forreſt*, and theſe Lords of *Beau-jeu*.

This Countrey, as that other of *Forreſt*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; in the partage of which Eſtate it fell to *Omphroy* one of the Brothers of Earl *Artand*, *An.* 989. whoſe Succeſſors had no other Title than Lords of *Beau-jeu*. They were moſt of them men of great Piety, Founders of many Collegiate and Conventual Churches: ſome of them men of action alſo: *Humbert* the ſecond and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; *Richard* the ſecond, in thoſe againſt the *Engliſh*; *Guiſchard* the fourth, made *Conſtable* of *France*, by King *Lewis* the ninth. But the Houſe failing in this *Guiſchard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forreſt*, as before is ſaid, in the Perſon of *Regnaud* Earl thereof: whoſe Son and Succeſſor called *Lewis*, was alſo Conſtable of *France*; as *Edward* the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, a *Marſhal* of it. But at the laſt it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward* the ſecond: who being impriſoned at *Paris* for his great offences, and over-laid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*, made a donation or free gift of all his *Signeuries* to *Lewis* Duke of Bourbon, ſirnamed the *good*; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forreſt*, the eldeſt Son of *Regnaud* Earl of *Forreſt* and Lord of *Beaujeu* above mentioned, and conſequently of next kin to him. *An.* 1400.

4. *Auvergne* hath on the Eaſt *Forreſt*, and Lyonois; on the Weſt, *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*; on the South, part of *Languedock*; and on the North, Berry and *Bourbonois*. It is divided into the *Higher*, and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitful in a very eminent degree; the *Higher* mountainous and barren. In this laſt the Towns of chief note are, 1. S. *Flour* a Biſhops See, of an impregnable ſituation. 2. *Arilla*, on the River *Jourdain*, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle on the

top

Auvergn. top of a Rock. 3. *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4. *Carlat*. 5. *Murat*. 6. *Billon*, of which little obſervable in antient Stories. In the *Lower* called *Limaigne*, from a River of that name which falls into the *Allier*; there is, 1. *Clermont*, a Biſhops See; fair and pleaſing for the ſituation, and Fountains deſcending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergn*, the chief City of the whole Province. Moſt memorable in theſe later Ages for the Council here called by Pope *Urban* the ſecond; *Anno* 2067. in which, by the Artifice of the Pope, the Chriſtian Princes of the Weſt ingaged themſelves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes, to enlarge both their Territories, and their power. It was firſt raiſed out of the ruines of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auverni* in the time of *Caſar*, and the Seat Royal of *Vercingetorix* King of that Nation, who ſo long put him to his Trumps with an Army of 183000 men, now a ſmall Vallage called *Gergeau*. 2. *Rion*, in which reſides the Seneſchal or chief Governour of the Lower *Avergn*. 3. *Montpenſier*, of great note for the Princes of the Houſe of B*ourbon*, one Duke hereof: beginning in *Lewis* the firſt Earl, Son of *John* Duke of B*ourbon*, *Anno* 1415. and ending in *Henry* the laſt Duke; whoſe Daughter and Heir was married to the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Lewis* the thirteenth. 4. *Montferant*. 5. *Yſſcire*. 6. B*rionde*. 7. *Aigueperſe*. 8. *Turenne*, the antient Seat and Patrimony of the *De La Tourre*, heretofore Earls of B*oulogne*, now Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of B*ovillon*; to whom it hath for ſome Ages ſince given the Title of Viſcount. A Family deſcended from the Heirs general of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*, Father to *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* Duke of *Lorrein*, and King of *Hieruſalem*.

The Country firſt inhabited in the times of the *Romans*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whoſe King B*ituitus* was taken Priſoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War againſt the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and others of their Confederates: not fully conquered, till *Cæſar* had ſubdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*, retaining in the often changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergn*, Heretofore part of the great Dutchy of *Aquitain*, remaining ſubject to thoſe Dukes till *William* the eighth Duke, and the fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whoſe name I find not, nor the name of her Husband, neither of whom there is nothing on record, but that he took up Arms againſt *Lewis* the ſixth, who began his Reign, *An.* 1110. By the Heir general of his Houſe it was conveyed in marriage to *John* the ſecond Son of *Guigne* the 4th, and B*eatrix*, Daulphin of *Viennois*; in whoſe Line it continued under the Title of the Daulphins of *Auvergn*, till B*erault*, the laſt Earl of *Daulphin* of it. Who having married the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forreſt*, the Son of *Regnaud* above mentioned; had by her a Daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Eſtates, married to *Lewis* the *Good*, the third Duke of B*ourbon*: to whom *Edward* the laſt Lord of B*eau-jeu* made a Donation or ſurrendry of that Signeury alſo; uniting in his Perſon the diſtinct Eſtates of B*ourbon*, B*eau-jeu*, *Forreſt*, and *Auvergn*.

And as for B*ourbonnois* it ſelf, in the diſtractions of the *French* Empire, by the poſterity of *Charles* the Great who moſt improvidently *cantoned* it into many great Eſtates, and petit Signeuries: it fell unto the ſhare of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, deſcended from the antient Houſe of B*urgogne*, who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis* the ninth, for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* (in B*eauvoiſin*) his fifth Son; married him to B*eatrix* Daughter and Heir of *Archenbald Dampierre* the laſt of that Houſe. *Lewis* the Son of this *Robert* was the firſt Duke of this Line; whoſe Succeſſors and their atchievements follow in this Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of B*ourbon*.

1308 1 *Robert*, Son of King *Lewis* the 9th. Earl of *Clermont*, the firſt Lord of B*ourbon* of the Houſe of *France*.

1317 2 Lewis, the firſt Duke of B*ourbon*, *Peer*, and *Chamberlain* of *France*.

1341 3 *Peter*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, ſlain in the Battel of *Poictiers*, *Anno* 1356.

1356 4 *Lewis* II. called the *Good*, in whoſe perſon all theſe Eſtates were firſt nnited; *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*; and Governour of King *Charles* the ſixth.

1410 5 *John*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, taken Priſoner at the Battell of *Agincourt*, and died in *England*; the Root of the Family of *Montpenſier*.

1434 6 *Charles*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain, General of the Army againſt the *Engliſh* in the *Iſles* of *France*.

1456 7 *John* II. *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Conſtable of *France*.

1487 8 *Peter* II. Brother of *John*, *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Regent of *France*, in the abſence of *Charles* the 8th.

1503 9 *Charles* Earl of *Montpenſier*, Duke of B*onrbon* in the right of *Suſan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the ſecond, Duke of B*ourbon*. After whoſe death, being ſlain at the ſack of *Rome*, *An.* 1527. without Iſſue, his Eſtate fell unto the Crown; and ſo continued, till by the Sentence or *Arreſt* of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergn* *Forreſt*, and B*eau-jeu* were adjudged to Madam *Leviſſe*, Mother of Lewis the firſt Duke of *Montpenſier*, and Daughter and Heir of *Gilbert de* B*ourbon* Earl of *Montpenſier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of B*ourbon* (the firſt of that name) of which Houſe ſhe was the onely ſurviving Heir, from whence deſcended *Henry*, the laſt Duke of that Family, ſpoken of before. And for the Title of *Auvergn*, it was uſed cuſtomarily by the eldeſt Sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpenſier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles* the ninth, called from hence the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*: who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604. made priſoner by King *Henry* the fourth, releaſed by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *Anno* 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angoleſme*; in whoſe poſterity it remaineth.

The Arms of theſe Dukes were 1. *France*, a Baſton *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*; 2. *Or*, a Daulphin *Palme*, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*; 3. *Or*, a Lyon *Sable*, armed *Gules*, under a Label of five pieces of the ſame, for the Signeury of *Beau-jeu*. The Arms of the Earldom of *Forreſt* I am yet to ſeek. But antiently the Arms of *Bourbon* when under the *Dampierres*, were *Or*, a Lyon Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockle-ſhels of *Azure*.

10. BERRIE.

HAving thus taken a ſurvey of thoſe ſeveral Provinces, which (except *Bretagne*) were the firſt purchaſes of the *French* in the modern *France*, and ſo much of the *Burgundian* Conqueſt, as were either layed to the Kingdom of Weſt *France*, or elſe were neceſſarily to be paſſed over in the courſe of our Journey, let us next look on thoſe which were poſſeſſed by the *Gothes*. And firſt we will begin with BERRIE, (as next in ſituation unto thoſe before deſcribed) bounded on the Eaſt with *Bourbonois* and *Nivernois*; on the Weſt, with *Poictou* and part of *Toureine*; on the North, with *La Beauſſe*; on the South, with *Limouſin*, in *Latine* called *Biturigum regio*, from the *Bituriges*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract; by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and ſome others called the *Bituriges Cubi*, to difference them from the *Bituriges Iſci*, dwelling about *Bourdeaux*.

The Country watered in the Eaſt with the River *Laure*; in the South, with the *Fage*; in the North, with the *Cher*; and in the Inland parts with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Eure*, and others which we ſhall meet withal anon: of no great note, but ſuch as much conduce to the fruitfulneſs of it; affording it the benefit of fat paſtures, and flouriſhing meadows; which breed great multitudes of Cattel, and ſuch flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a man for lying in exceſs of numbers, they uſe to ſay, *Fie, Sir, there are not ſo many ſheep in* Berrie.

It containeth in it 33 walled Tows, the chief whereof are, 1. *Bourges*, a Town of great ſtrength by nature, and as well fortified by Art; ſituate in a low Flat, amongſt deep impaſſable Bogs and Mariſhes, cauſed by the overflowings of the *Auron*, *Yeure*, *Malon*, and *Aurette*; ſmall Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together. By means whereof it may be eaſily drowned, at the approach of an Enemy; for that cauſe made the faſtneſs and retreat of *Charles* the ſeventh, in his long wars againſt the *Engliſh*, poſſeſſed at the time of *Paris*, and the greateſt part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time, fain to feaſt it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high daies neither: from his conſtant abode here, and that withal he had been Duke of this Country, in the life of his three elder brethren, by the *Engliſh* in deriſion called King of *Berrie*. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Archbiſhop; a ſiege preſidial, and one of the beſt Univerſities in *France*, eſpecially for the ſtudy of the Civil Law, firſt founded by King *Lewis* the ninth, and afterwards reſtored and perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, the Brother of King *Lewis* the eleventh. Some fabulous Founders, and ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it; as it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grandchild of *Noah*, by whom called *Bytogyes*, which in the corruption of the following times, came (forſooth) unto *Bituriges*: which Etymologie, were it as dear bought as it is far fetcht, *might be good for Ladies*; and then it would be good for ſomewhat. Others no leſs abſurdly, will have it called *Biturris*, *quaſi Bi-turris*, from two far Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here; one of the two, in part ſtill ſtanding: and unto this, they ſay, alludeth an old *Grammarian*, thus;

Turribus à binis inde vocor Bituris.

From two Towers which were builded here,
The name of *Bituris* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges* (the *Biturigum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that name in the diviſion of old *Gaul* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*, of which this Country was a part. 2. *Wiarron*, or *Viarzon*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Woods, Vines, and Rivers; the River *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Cher*, and *Yeure*, meeting hereabouts. Built in or near the place of the old *Avaricum*, a Town of great noiſe and ſtrength in the time of *Cæſar*: the revolt whereof gave ſuch a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to ſtretch his wits and valour on the very tenterhooks, before it was again recovered. 3. *Concreſſant*, on the River *Souldre*, beautified with a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle. 4. *Chaſteau-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5. *Iſſanden*, on the River *Theo*, the Balliage for that part of the Country. 6. *Mont-falcon*, an antient Barony. 7. *Argenton*, on the River *Creuſe*, the Title and Eſtate of *Philip de Comines*, here called *Seigneur de Argenton*, who writ the Hiſtory of *France* under *Lewis* the eleventh, in which he dived ſo far into, and writ ſo plainly of the greateſt affairs of State, that Queen *Katharine de Medices* uſed to ſay, that he had made as many *Hereticks* in *State-policy*, as *Luther* had done in *Religion*. 8. *Sancerre*, ſeated on an high hill near the River *Loire*, by ſome *Latine* Writers called *Xantodorum*, but moſt generally ſaid to be called, *quaſi ſacrum Cereris*, from the Goddeſs *Ceres*, herein worſhipped in the times of *Gentiliſme*. A Town of great conſequence and ſtrength, and as ſuch aſſigned over to the *Hugonots*, *Anno* 1569. as a Town of caution for their ſecurity, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon: Famous not long after for enduring a moſt deſperate and tedious ſiege, under *Charles* the ninth, by whom theſe Articles were almoſt no ſooner made then broken. Before which time, it was not under the command of the *French* Kings, but under the direct dominions of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Soveraignty thereof; but being taken by the Kings Forces, upon this occaſion, *Anno* 1573. and the Walls thrown down, a Garriſon was put into the Caſtle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings devotion, the rents and profits of it ſtill remaining to the true *Proprietaries*.

Here is alſo in this Province the Town and Signeury of *Aubignie*, adorned with many priviledges, an ample Territory, and a beautiful Caſtle. Beſtowed by *Charles* the ſixth on *Robert*, the ſecond Son of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in *Scotland*, for his many ſignal ſervices againſt the *Engliſh*, and is ſtill the honourary title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond Branch of that noble and illuſtrious Family; hence called by the name of Lords of *Aubignie*.

But as for *Berry* it ſelf, and the fortunes of it, we may pleaſe to know that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Bituriges Cubi* (or the *Biteriges Liberi*, as ſome Writers call them) ſubdued but not without great difficulty by the matchleſs *Cæſar*; in the firſt diviſion of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitain*, and in the new modelling of that Province by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, a part of *Aquitania Prima*, won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *French*, it was for long time under the command of Provincial Governours; one of which, called by the name of *Godfrey*, obtained that dignity from *Hugh Capet*, and his Poſterity enjoyed that Office, under the Kings of *France*, till the daies of King *Henry* the firſt; of whom the Inheritance and Eſtate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the deſcendants of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as *Proprietary*, in his own right, when deſirous to make one in the *Holy Wars*, he ſold it back again to King *Philip* the firſt (the better to furniſh himſelf for that expedition) *Anno* 1096. to be united to the Crown after his deceaſe. Since which time, the Soveraignty of it hath been always in the Crown of *France*; but the poſſeſſion and Revenue ſometimes given with the title of Duke, for a portion for ſome of the Kings younger Sons, to be holden of them in *Appennage*, under the Soveraignty and command of the *Donor* and his Succeſſors. The firſt of thoſe that held this title, was *John*, a younger Son of King *John* of *France*, and Uncle unto *Charles* the ſixth, during whoſe reign, betwixt this Duke, and thoſe of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, the Realm of *France* was miſerably diſtracted into Broils and Factions. The ſecond was another *John*, Son of *Charles* the ſixth, who dying in his minority, was ſucceeded in this title, by his brother *Charles*, Succeſſor to his Father in the Crown it ſelf. The fourth and laſt, (for it had no more then four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngeſt Son of King *Charles* the ſeventh, who ſiding with the Earl of *Charolois*, did ſo much trouble the affairs of *France*, under *Lewis* the eleventh, by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guienne* afterwards, but held neither long. After whoſe death it was united to the Crown, never ſince ſeparated from it; but though it never had Duke ſince, it hath had three Dutcheſſes: firſt giving the title of Dutcheſs to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis* the eleventh, and Wife to *Lewis* the twelfth, then Duke of *Orleans*, eſtated herein by her ſaid Husband, when coming to the Crown, he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Ann*, Dutcheſs of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles* the eighth his Predeceſſor. Conferred after her deceaſe, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis* the firſt, on the Lady *Margaret* his Siſter, firſt married to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon*, and after his deceaſe to *Henry* of *Albret* King of *Navarre*: the laſt that had this title being another *Margaret*, a Daughter of the ſaid King *Francis*, married to *Philibert Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*.

11. *POICTOU*.

P*OICTOU* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Tourein*, *Berry*, and *Limoſin*; on the North, with *Bretagne*, and *Anjou*; on the South, with *Xaintoigne*, a member of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; and on the Weſt, with the *Aquitain* Seas.

It is called in *Latine Pictavia*, from the *Pictones*, as *Ptolomy*, *Cæſar*, and ſome others; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof: and is a Country ſo great and plentiful, that there are numbred in it 1200 Pariſhes, and three Biſhopricks. A ſtrong argument of the populouſneſs and largeneſs of it. Beſides the goodneſs of the ſoil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to ſay, a large Sea coaſt, ſome capacious Harbours, not a few navigable Rivers, emptying themſelves into the Sea; beſides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin*, or *Clavis*, the *Creviſe*, and *Vienne*, three Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which alſo glides along on the North hereof.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1. *Poictiers*, in *Latine*, *Pictavis*, ſeated upon the *Clin* or *Clavis*, by *Ptolomy* called *Auguſtoritum*: the largeſt City for compaſs of ground within the walls, next to *Paris* it ſelf; but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Corn-fields, and other waſte grounds. It is an Univerſity, eſpecially for the ſtudy of the *Civil Laws*, and a See *Epiſcopal*: one of the Biſhops hereof being S. *Hilarie*, ſurnamed *Pictavenſis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a ſtout

Poictou.

Champion of the *Catholick* Faith againſt the *Arians*, though countenanced in their Hereſy by the Emperor *Conſtantius*. 2. *Souri*, upon the River *Charente*, near the edge of *Xaintoigne*. 3. *Talmont*, upon the ſhores of the Ocean. 4. *Beaumoir*, a Sea-town alſo, and a reaſonable good Port, near the confines of *Bretagne*. 5. *Roch-ſur-yon*, which gave the title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royal race of *Bourbon*. 6. *Luſignan*, on the River *Ion*, denominating the noble Family of *Luſignan*, ſometimes Kings of *Hieruſalem*, and afterwards of *Ciprus*; which laſt they had in exchange for the firſt, by the donation of King *Richard* the firſt of *England*. 7. *Lucon*, or *Luſſon*, ſeated upon a navigable Arm of the Sea: ſufficiently famous in being the Epiſcopal See of the renowned Cardinal of *Richelieu*, who ſo long managed the affairs of *France*, for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8. *Mailleſais*, a Biſhops See alſo. 9. *Thovars*, which gives the title of Duke to the antient Family of *Tremovile*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themſelves; from the time that *Conſtance* the Daughter and Heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geofry Plantagenet* her firſt Husband, had *Guy* of *Thovars* for her ſecond. 10. *Chaſtell Herauld*, (or *Caſtrum Heraldi*) on the River *Vienne*, of which *James Hamleton*, Earl of *Arran* in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, the better to aſſure him to the *French* Faction there, againſt the *Engliſh*, had the title of Duke.

In the *Vine-Fields* of this Country, within two Leagues of *Poictiers*, was fought that memorable Battel, between *John* of *France*, and *Edward* the Son of King *Edward* the third, ſurnamed the *Black Prince*; Who being diſtreſſed by the number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honourable terms; which the *French* not accepting, in ſtead of Conqueſt, found a Fatal overthrow. For they preſuming on their own ſtrength, to their own diſadvantage, bereft the enemy of all opportunity of retiring: whereas ordinary policy would inſtruct the Leader of an Army, to make his enemy, if he would flie, a Bridge of *Gold*; as Count *Petillan* uſed to ſay. Hereupon *Themiſtocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the Bridge made over the *Helleſpont* by *Xerxes*; leaſt the *Perſians* ſhould be compelled to fight, and ſo happen to recover their former loſſes: and *Charles* the ſixth loſt his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth in his march to *Calice*. For where all way of flight or retreat is ſtopt, the baſeſt Souldier will rather die with glory in the Front of his Battel, than flie and be killed with ignominy. So true a Miſtreſs of hardy reſolutions is Deſpair: and no leſſe true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devil.* On the contrary, it hath been the uſe of divers Politick Captains, to make their own Souldiers fight more reſolutely, by taking from them all hope of ſafety, but by Battel. So did *William* the Conquerour; who at his arrival into *England*, burnt the Ships which tranſported his Army: thereby giving his Souldiers to wit, that their lives lay in the ſtrength of their Arms, and courage of their hearts, not in the nimbleneſſe of their heels. *Tariff*, the leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, burnt likewiſe all his Navy, one onely *Pinnace* excepted; which he reſerved to carry tidings of his ſucceſſe. So when *Charles Martell* encountred that infinite hoſt of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the people of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the Victors. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the banks thereof cetain Troops of Horſemen, to kill all ſuch as fled out of the field: Hereby informing his men, that there was to them no more *France* than what they fought on, unleſſe they were Conquerors. In like manner, the ſame *Themiſtocles*, cunningly working the *Perſians* to encloſe the *Greek* Navy on every ſide, inflamed the *Grecians* with ſuch courage, by a neceſſity of fight, that they gave their enemies the moſt memorable defeat that ever hapned on thoſe Seas.

But to proceed, the people of this Province have more in them of the old *Gall*, than any in *France*; as lying ſo betwixt the borders of the *Gothes*, and *French*, that it was never throughly planted, or poſſeſſed by either. An Argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, ſubtile, crafty, and contentious than the reſt of their Country men; and have a *Dialect* by themſelves much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it (queſtionleſſe ſome remainders of the antient *Gallick*) which the natural *French* man underſtands not. In the diviſion of *Gaul* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania ſecunda*: and as a part thereof won from the *Romans*, with *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*, by *Euricus* King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*. Of whoſe Kingdom it continued part, till thoſe *Gothes* were diſpoſſeſſed of their hold in *France*, by *Clovis* the fifth King of the *French*, ſurnamed the Great. After which it belonged to the Kings of that People; by the Poſterity of *Charles* the Great; aſſigned to ſome Provincial Governours with the title of Earls. One of which being named *Ebles* (of the old *Gothiſh* race, if I gueſſe aright) by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *William* the *Debonair* Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earl of *Auvergne*, ſucceeded in that fair Eſtate. *Poictou* by this means made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, came with it at the laſt to the Kings of *England*, as ſhall there be ſhewn: and being theirs was given with the title of Earl by King *Henry* the ſecond, to *Richard* ſurnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the *French* in the unfortunate Reign of King *John*, with the reſt of the *Engliſh* provinces, *An.* 1202. *Alphonſo*, brother to *Lewis* the ninth, is made Earl of *Poictou*: and being again recovered by King *Henry* the third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the *Barons* Wars, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the affairs of *Germany*, of which by ſome of the *Electors* he was choſen Emperor: it was fully conquered by the *French*, and never ſince diſmembred from that Crown, for ought I can find. For though in the more active times of King *Edward* the third, ſome of the beſt Towns and pieces of it were poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*: yet were they loſt again ſoon after, according to the various ſucceſſes and events of War.

Limoſin.

12. LIMOSIN, 13. PERIGORT, 14. QVERCV.

THeſe Provinces I have joined together, becauſe for the moſt part they have followed the ſame fortune; being ſometimes *French*, and ſometimes *Engliſh*, according to the ſucceſſes of either Nation.

1. **LIMOSIN**, the largeſt of the three, hath on the Eaſt *Bourbonnois*; on the Weſt, *Perigort*; on the North, and North-weſt, *Poictou*, and *Berry*; on the South *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limoſin*; and the *Lewer*, commonly called *La Marche*: both parts but ſpecially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous and not very fruitful; but of a free and open Air; inhabited by a people of a more ſtaid and ſober nature, than the reſt of the *French*; frugal in expence, and moderate in diet; only ſo great devourers of bread, that they are grown into a By-word.

The chief Town in *La March*, or the *Lower Limoſin*, are, 1. *Tulles*, ſeated in a rough and hilly Country, a Biſhops See. 2. *Uzarche* ſeated amongſt the Mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent current; with which ſo fortified on all ſides, that it is thought to be a very ſtrong and ſecure dwelling. 3. *Treinac.* 4. *Douſenac.* 5. *Belmon.* 6. *Meiſſac.* 7. *Brive le Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limoſin* the chief Towns are, 1. *Limoges* a Biſhops See, the principal of the *Lemovices*, from whom denominated; by *Ptolomy* calle *Ratiaſtum.* A neat, but no large City, rich, populous, and inhabited by a people of ſo great an induſtry, that they compel every one to work; and is therefore by the *French* called the *Priſon of Beggers*; Seated on the *Vienne.* At the taking of it when revolted, *Edward* the *Black Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the diſtreſſed Citizens, till purſuing his enemies, he ſaw three *French* Gentlemen make head againſt his Army; the conſideration of whoſe magnanimity drew him to pity, where before he had vowed revenge 2. *Chaluz*, at the beſieging of which, our *Richard* the firſt was ſlain by a ſhot from an *Arbaliſt*; the uſe of which Warlike Engine, he firſt ſhewed to the *French.* Whereupon a *French* Poet made theſe Verſes, in the perſon of *Atropos*,

> *Hoc volo, non aliâ* Richardum *morte perire,*
> *Vt qui* Francigenis *Baliſtæ primitùs uſum*
> *Tradidit, ipſe ſui rem primitùs experiatur:*
> *Quamque aliis docuit, in ſe vim ſentiat artis.*
>
> It is decreed thus muſt great *Richard* die,
> As he that firſt did teach the *French* to dart
> An *Arbaliſt*; 'tis juſt he firſt ſhould trie
> The ſtrength, and take the fruits of his own Art.

The man that ſhot him was called *Bertram de Gurdon*, who being brought before the King (for the King neglecting his wounds, never gave over the Aſſault till he gained the place) boldly juſtified his Action, as done in the ſervice of his Country, and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had cauſed to be ſlain. Which heard, the King not only cauſed him to be ſet at liberty, but gave him an hundred ſhillings *ſterling*, in reward of his Gallantry. 3. *Soubſterrein*, on the confines of *Berry.* 4. *Confaulat.* 5. *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne.* 6. *Boiſſon.* 7. *Birat*, of which nothing memorable.

2. *PERIGORT*, hath on the Eaſt, *Auvergn*, and *Quercu*; on the Weſt *Xaintoigne*; on the North, *Limoſin*; and on the South, ſome part of *Gaſcoigne.* The Country and people are much of the ſame condition with that of *Limoſin*, ſaving that *Perigort* is the more woody; and thoſe woods plentifull of *Cheſnuts.* The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Perigeux*, the principal City of the *Petrogoris*, by *Ptolomy* called *Veſſena*, now a Biſhops See; ſome footſteps of which name remain in a part of *Perigeux*, (for the Town is divided into two parts) which to this day is called *Veſune*; in which ſtandeth the Cathedral Church, and the Biſhops Palace. The whole City ſeated in a very pleaſant Valley environed with *Downs*, affording a moſt excellent Wine; and having in it as a mark of the *Roman* greatneſs, the ruins of a large and ſpacious *Amphitheatre.* 2. *Bergerac*, ſeated on the great River of *Dordonne.* 3. *Sarlat*, a Biſhops See. 4. *Nontron*, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 5. *Miramont.* 6. *La Roche.* 7. *Marſac*, where is a Well which ebbeth and floweth according to the pulſe of the River of *Bourdeaux.* And 8. *Angoleſme*, in the North-weſt, towards *Xaintoigne*, the ſeat of the *Angoliſmenſes* in the time of the *Romans*, now a Biſhops See: ſeated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almoſt encompaſſed; the other ſide being defended by a ſteep and Rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance, when poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*, being one of their beſt out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*: one of the Gates hereof being to this day called *Claude*, ſeems to have been the work of S^r^ *John Chandois* Banneret, one of the firſt Founders of the moſt noble Order of the *Garter*, then Governour hereof for King *Edward* the third. Being recovered from the *Engliſh* by *Charles* the fifth, it was beſtowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grand-father of King *Francis* the firſt, with the title of an Earldom only *An.* 1408. Afterwards made a Dukedom in the perſon of the ſaid King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honour of it, as much of the adjoyning Country was laid unto it, as maketh up a Territory of above 24 *French* Leagues in length, and 15 in breadth: Within which

circuit are the Towns of *Chaſteau-neif*, and *Coignac*, on the River of *Charente*. 3. *Roche Faulcon*, 4. *Chabannes*. 5. *Meriville*. 6. *Villebois*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the title of Duke to *Charles* of *Anvergne*, *An.* 1618. the Baſe Son of *Charles* the ninth, conſequently extracted from the houſe of *Angoleſme*.

3. *QUERCU*, is encompaſſed about with *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, *Languedoc*, and *Avergne*. A populous Country for the bigneſs (being one of the leaſt in all *France*) and very fruitfull withall, though ſomewhat mountainous. The principal places in it, 1. *Cahors*, the chief City of the *Cadurci*, in the times of the *Romans*; ſtill a great, ſtrong, and well traded Town, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the *Temporal* Lord of it; ſeated upon the River *Loch*. From hence deſcended and took name the noble Family of *Chawort de Cadurcis* in *Latine*: out of which by a Daughter of *Patrick de Cadurcis*, Lord of *Ogmore* and *Kidwelly* in the Marches of *Wales*, married to *Henry* the third Earl of *Lancaſter* come the Kings of *England*, and moſt of the Royal houſes in *Europe* 2. *Montalban*, a Biſhops See alſo, built on the top of an high Mountain, and ſo well fortified by all advantages of Art, that it is thought to be the moſt defenſible of any in *France*: of which it gave ſufficient proof in that noteable reſiſtance which it made to King *Lewis* the thirteenth, in his Wars againſt thoſe of the *Religion*, *An.* 1622. 3. *Soulac*, upon the River *Dordonne*. 4. *Nigrepeleſſe*, another of the Towns poſſeſſed by the Proteſtant party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *Anno* 1621. but in *November* following, they murdered the Kings Garriſon, and the next year denied admiſſion to the King. Taken at laſt, *An.* 1622. by the King in perſon: the puniſhment did exceed the crime. For the men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deſerved; but many of the Women alſo: ſome of them having their ſecret parts rammed with Gun-powder, and ſo torn in pieces, by the unpattern'd barbariſm of the mercileſſe and revengefull Souldiers. 5. *Chaſteau-Saraſin*, a ſtrong Town on the *Garond*. 6. *Nazaret*. 7. *Burette*, &c.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces, were the *Lemovices*, the *Petrocorit*, and the *Cadurci*, before mentioned: of which the *Lemovices*, and *Cadurci*, were caſt into the Province of *Acquitania Prima*; the *Petrocorii*, and *Engoliſmenſes*, into *Acquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire ſeized on by the *Gothes*, but from them ſpeedily extorted by the Conquering *French*. Afterwards when King *Henry* the third of *England* releaſed his right in the Province of *Normandy*, *Poictou*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; *Lewis* the ninth to whom this releaſe was made, gave him in ſatisfaction of all former intereſſes, 300000 *l.* of *Anjovin* money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the County of *Xaintoigne*, as far as to the River of *Charent*, with the Province of *Limoſin*. And on the Capitulations made betwixt *Edward* the third of *England*, and *John* of *France*, then Priſoner to him; *Perigort* and *Quercu* (among other conditions) were conſigned over to the *Engliſh*, diſcharged of all *Reſort* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*. After which time reſpectively they remained all three in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, until their final expulſion by King *Charles* the 7th, never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown thereof.

15. *AQVITAIN.*

THE Dukedom of *AQVITAIN*, the greateſt and goodlyeſt of all *France*, contained the Provinces of 1. *Xaintoigne*. 2. *Guienne*. 3. *Gaſcoigne*; with the Iſles of *Oleron* and *Rees*, and other Iſlands in the *Aquitanick* or Weſtern Ocean.

1. *XAINTOIGNE* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Limoſin*, and *Perigort*; on the Weſt, with the *Aquitanick* Ocean; on the North, with *Poictou*; and on the South, with *Guienne*: So called from *Sainctes*, one of the principal Cities of it; as that from the *Santones*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whoſe chief City it was. The River of *Charente* running through the middle, and ſo on the North border of it, emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean, juſt oppoſite to the Iſle of *Oleron*; having firſt taken in the *Siugne*, and the *Boutonne*, two leſſer Rivers.

The Chief Towns of it are, 1. *Sainctes*, by *Ptolomy* called *Mediolanium*, by *Antonine*, *Civitas Santonum*, ſeated upon the *Charente*, a Biſhops See, and *Seneſcalſie* for the County. 2. S. *John d' Angelie*, ſituate on the *Boutonne*, a Town once impregnably fortified; whereof it hath given ſufficient teſtimony in the *Civil Wars* of *France* about *Religion*, untill the Fatal time was come, in which the great power of that party was to be diſſolved; at what time, (*viz. An.* 1621.) after a ſiege of forty dayes it was taken by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, the Fortifications demoliſhed, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards to be called by the name of *Lewis-bourg*. 3. *Bourg ſur la mer*, upon the *Dordonne*, which for the wideneſs of it is here called a Sea. 4. *Retraicte*, ſeated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*. 5. *Blaye*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Country, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a good Garriſon, for ſecuring the paſſage unto *Bordeaux*; this Town being ſeated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6. *Rochelle*, *Rupella* in the preſent *Latine*, but antiently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santones*, a well noted Port in the moſt Northern part of *Xaintoigne*; from whence the Country hereabouts is called *Rochelois*. The Town ſeated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay, the entrance which is well aſſured by two very ſtrong Forts, betwixt which there is no more ſpace, than for the paſſage of a good ſhip; every night cloſed up with a maſſie Chain: and the whole Town either environed with deep Mariſhes, or fortified with ſuch Bulwarks, trenches, and other works of modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the ſafeſt retreat for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion* in the time of their troubles; as may be ſeen by

Aquitain.

the ſtory of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the ſecond *Civil Wars*, *An.* 1568. many Towns conſidering how ill the former Peace had been obſerved, refuſed to take in any of the Kings Garriſons, or permit any of the Papiſts to bear Arms amongſt them; of which *Rochel* was one: which alſo, contrary to the Kings command, maintained a Navy for their ſafety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of *Navarre* and her Son retired, as to a place of ſafety. *Anno* 1570, *Rochel* alone, of all the *French* Towns held good for the *Proteſtants*, and is by *Monſieur Joinville* on all ſides blockt up: but the ſiege ſoon raiſed, and *Rochel*, *Montalban*, *Sancerre*, with others, made cautionary for the Peace enſuing. *Anno* 1575, beſieged by *Biron* the elder, with an Army of 50000 men, and 60 pieces of Artillery; *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, the Duke of *Aumal*, &c. being alſo preſent at the ſervice: It held out from the beginning of *March*, till the ſeventh of *June*, and was then freed; the City having in one month endured 13000 ſhot, and the King loſt 20000 men, amongſt them the Duke of *Aumal* for one. *Anno* 75 and 78, it was attempted by *Landereau*, the Iſle of *Ree* taken, but ſoon recovered: the King of *Navarre*, and Prince of *Conde*, after that defeat, being received in, in triumph. *Anno* 1577, beſieged to Sea-ward by *Lanſac*; who being alſo beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns more added to their former ſtrength. In the troubles of 85 and 88, the Princes above named made it their Retreat; and from thence iſſued to divert the purpoſes of the Duke of *Mercoeur*. The next year, *Henry* the third being ſlain, and the King of *Navarre* ſeated in the Throne, the *Proteſtant* party increaſed exceedingly in power and number; and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis* the thirteenth, governed themſelves apart as a *Free Eſtate*, *Rochel* being made the Head of their Common-wealth; fortified to that end with 12. *Royal Baſtions* of free ſtone, with double ditches, deep and broad in the bottome, abundantly furniſhed with Powder and Ammunition, 150 piece of *Canon*, beſides *Culverins* and ſmaller pieces, with victuals and all other neceſſaries to endure a ſiege; and grow unto ſo great wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or ſixcore Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns a piece. This drew upon them the great War, in the years 1621, and 1622. Which ended in the loſs of all their Garriſons, except *Rochel*, and *Montalban*: thoſe to remain in pledge with the *Proteſtant* party, but for three years only. Which time expired, the *Rochellers* were again beſieged both by Sea and Land, the Iſle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven ſo barred up with Ships chained together, and ſunk into it, and other works of ſtupendious greatneſs, in the very Ocean, that no forrein ſuccors out of *England*, (however really intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their relief. In the end, having endured all the extremities of a tedious ſiege, they yielded themſelves to the Kings mercy, *Anno* 1628. *Montalban*, *Niſmes*, and other places newly fortified, ſubmitting at the ſame time alſo. 7. *Marens*, a great Town, and of great importance, ſeated by the Ocean Sea in a low fenny place, as it were in a *Peninſula*, and ſo incompaſſed on every ſide with mariſh watry grounds, that there is no acceſs to the works thereof, but by very few, and thoſe narrow paſſages. 8. *Chaſtillon*; and 9. *Saubize*, places of good ſtrength alſo, but of greater note; the firſt, for giving ſurname to a noble Family, out of which iſſued formerly the Earl of *Blois*, and of late times *Gaſper de Colligni*, and *Monſieur D' Andalal* his Brother, much mentioned in the wars of *France* about Religion; the later giving the title of a Duke to a younger Son of the Houſe of *Rohan*, as great a ſtickler in that cauſe, as thoſe Brethren were.

II. *GUIENNE*, the ſecond Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted from the River *Dordonne*; on the South, with *Gaſcoigne*; on the Eaſt, with *Perigort*; and on the Weſt, with the *Aquitanick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* hills to the River of *Bourdeaux*. The reaſon of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old name, *Aquitain*; but not very probably. The Country generally plentiful of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into *Spain*, and the other into *England*. The people, as thoſe of *Xaintoigne* alſo, tall of ſtature, of able bodies, haters of ſervitude and baſeneſs, and well practiſed in Arms: which qualities of the mind, and conſtitution of body, (being therein ſo different from the reſt of *France*) it is poſſible enough, they might have from the *Engliſh*; who for 300 years were poſſeſſed of the Country, and have left many tracts of their Language in it.

The principal Rivers of this Province are, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*, meeting together at *Retraicte*, a Town of *Xaintoigne*; and thence in one Channel falling into the Ocean: the Country betwixt theſe two Rivers being called *Le pais entre les deux mers*, or, The Country betwixt the two Seas; the Rivers hereabouts reſembling a ſmall Sea in wideneſs. Of leſſer note are, 1. *Jerne*, 2. *Baize*, 3. *Lot*, and 4. *Liſle*, falling into the *Garond*, in their ſeveral places.

Chief Towns whereof are, 1. B*ourdeaux*, ſeated on the South bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongſt the mariſhes. The chief City of the B*ituriges*, who poſſeſſed this tract: and for diſtinction ſake, were called B*ituriges Vbiſci*, thoſe of *Bourges* being called B*ituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdegala*, and *Civitas Burdegalenſium*; the *Metropolis* at that time of *Aquitania ſecunda*; conſequently an Archbiſhops See, as it ſtill continueth. A fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with many goodly buildings, an Univerſity founded here by K. *Lewis* the eleventh, and a large Cathedral. It was made *Parliamentary* for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoyning, by K. *Charles* the ſeventh. *Anno* 1453, not long after the expulſion of the *Engliſh* thence: and is one of the moſt noted *Empories* in all the Kingdom, frequented very much by the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* for *Gaſcoigne* wines; over which laſt, the *French* are ſo jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladen all their *Ordnance* at the Port of B*laye*. The Country hereabouts is, from this Town, called B*ourdelois*. 2. *Fronſac*, lying in the Country betwixt the two Seas (as they call it,) which gives the title of a Duke to the noble Family of

the

Gaſcoigne.

the Earls of S. *Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronſac*; and to the Country round about, the name of *Feonſa-daze*. 3. *Libourn*, at the confluence of two great Rivers, oppoſite to *Retracte* in *Xaintoigne*. 4. *Soulac*, at the influx of the *Garond*, in the *Peninſula*, or demi-Iſland: called the Country of *Medoc*. 5. *Bajonne*, a Sea Town, and Epiſcopal See, frontiring on the coaſt of *Spain*. 6. St *John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, all about which, the people ſpeak the *Baſquiſh*, or old *Gaſcoigne* language, being the ſame with that of *Biſcay*. 7. *D' Acqs*, an Epiſcopal See, by *Ptolomy* called *Aqua Auguſta*, (*Civitas Aquenſium*, by *Antoninus*) from whence this part of *Gaule* had the name of *Aquitaine*. Theſe three laſt being all of them Frontier Towns, are ſtrongly fortified. 8. *Bazas*, (called *Coſſium* by *Ptolomy*) the chief City of the *Vaſates*, whom *Antoninus* placeth in this tract; now a Biſhops See, ſituate on the borders of *Gaſcoigne*, in the Country from hence called *Bazadas*. Towns of leſſe note, 1. *Eſſarrez*. 2. St. *Baſil*. 3. *Reule*. 4. *Chaſtea-Moron*. 5. *Monſeguer*. 6. *Saincterre*, &c. Here is alſo in this Province the Country of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-coaſt from *Bajonne* to *Medoc*, a barren, poor, and wretched Country, the worſt piece of *France*; only remarkable for the Lords or owners of it, formerly of the houſe of *Foix*: of which the moſt remarkable were *Gaſton de Foix*, for his many ſignal ſervices againſt the *French*, created Earl of *Longeville*, and Knight of the *Garter* by King *Henry* the ſixth; and his Son *John de Foix*, created Earl of *Kendal*, and Knight of the *Garter*, by the ſaid King *Henry*; but better known in *Engliſh* ſtories by the name of *Capital*, or *Capdau de Beuche*, the Lords hereof having no higher title than that of *Captain*.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largeſt part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the Eaſt *Languedoc*, from which parted by the River *Garond*; on the Weſt, the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and ſome part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main tract of the *Pyrenees*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Country generally fruitfull, but of Wines eſpecially; brought hence to *Bourdeaux* as the Staple for that commodity, and thence tranſported into *England* in great abundance.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Auſcii Laſtoraces*, *Convenares*, *Conſerani*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulonia*: united in this name of *Gaſcoigne* on the conqueſt of it by the *Vaſcones*, a *Spaniſh* Nation, who fell in here, during the reign of *Dagobert* the 11th King of the *French*. And though ſubdued by *Clovis* the ſecond, Son of *Dagobert*, yet they left their name unto the Country; divided afterwards according to the chief *Seigneuries* and Eſtates thereof, into 1. the Principality of *Bearn*. 2. the Earldoms of *Foix*. 3. *Comminges*. 4. *Bigorre*. 5. *Armaignac*. 6. *Albret*; and 7. the Country of *Agenois*.

1. The *Principality* of *BEARN*, is ſituate at the Foot of the *Pyrenees*, where they joyn to *Languedoc*; ſo called from *Benearnum*, a principal City of this tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the ancient Writers. The Country of good paſturage, though amongſt the mountains, affording plenty of Cattel, butter and cheeſe; and in ſome places wines alſo, little inferiour in taſte and colour to the beſt of *France*; and many *medicinal* ſprings iſſuing from the hills adjoyning.

The *Religion* here, as generally in all *Gaſcoigne*, is that of the *Reformed Churches*, introduced about the year 1560. or rather then confirmed by publick authority of the King and Queen of *Navarre*: at what time the *Maſs*, *Tithes*, Church-lands, and the *Prelates* Votes in Parliament (according to the *Genevan* way of *Reformation*) were condemned together. And ſo it ſtood untill the year 1620. when by the power and authority of *Lewis* the 13th, King of *France* and *Navarre*, the *Prelates* were reſtored to their *Votes* and Lands, the Clergy to their *Tithes*, and *Maſs* cauſed alſo to be ſaid in ſome of their Churches: yet ſo, that thoſe of the *Reformed* were left unto the free exerciſe of their own *Religion*, as in former times.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Orthes*, the ſame which anciently was called *Benearnum*. 2. *Leſcar*, a Biſhops See, the antient ſeat and habitation of the Princes of *Bearn*. 3. *Oleron*, a Biſhops See alſo, mounted upon an high hill, in the more mountainous parts of the Country. 4. *Saincterra*, well garriſoned ſince the reduction of this Country to the Kings obedience. 5. *Pau*, the principal of all the Province, honoured with a *Parliament* or Court of *Judicature* for all the Country; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry* of *Albret*, King of *Navarre*, and Lord of *Bearn*; the Seat of him and his Succeſſors, till the coming of King *Henry* the fourth to the Crown of *France*. 6. *Grenade*, upon the Frontier towards *Begorre*.

This Country for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the general diſmembring of the *French* Empire, had its own *Propietaries*, who were the abſolute Lords of it, acknowledging no Superior for ought I can find. The principal of which was that *Gaſton* (a name very frequent in this Family) who in the year 1118. accompanied with many noble perſons of *France*, aſſiſted *Alphonſo* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon* at the ſiege of *Saragoſſa*: in the courſe of which action he did ſo good ſervice, that he was not only much honoured, but liberally rewarded for it; both he and his poſterity enjoying many priviledges in the conquered City. By the Heir general of this *Gaſton*, married to *William de Moncada* Seneſchall of *Catalogne*, and of great poſſeſſions in that Country, the Lordſhip and Soveraignty of *Bearn* fell unto that Family, about the year 1220. but long it did not tarry in it. For *William* being ſlain in the conqueſt of the Iſle of *Majorca*, *Anno* 1228. left his Eſtates to *Gaſton de Moncada* his eldeſt ſon; who much increaſed them by the addition of the Earldom of *Begorre*, and many other goodly pieces, accrewing to him in the right of his Wife *Martha*, heir hereof; whereof more anon. Grown by this means to ſuch authority and eſteem in the Court of *Aragon*, that (being without iſſue male) *Conſtance* his eldeſt daughter was thought a match of great advantage to *Alphonſo* eldeſt ſon to King *James* the firſt. But dying without iſſue by her, *Anno* 1260. the Soveraignty of *Bearn* with all the Appendixes thereof both in *France* and *Spain*, became united to the Earldom of

Foix

Gaſcoigne.

Foix (an Eſtate equal to it both in power and patrimony) by the marriage of *Roger Bernard* the ninth Earl of *Foix*, who ſucceeded in that Earldom, *Anno* 1202 with *Margaret de Moncada* another daughter of this *Gaſton*, and Heir of *Bearn*. Afterwards being much increaſed both in power and honour (by the addition of the Earldom of *Cominges*, the Viſconty of *Narbon*, and the Signeury of *Buche* in *Guienne*, to this houſe of *Foix*) it was added to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Gaſton* Earl of *Foix*, and Soveraign of *Bearn*, with *Eleanor* the Heir of that Kingdom, *Anno* 1481: deſcending with that Crown upon *Henry* of *Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France*, by the name of *Henry* the fourth; but governed by him always as a *State diſtinct*, without relation or reſort to the Crown of *France*. But *Lewis* the thirteenth his Son, finding ſome inconvenience in that diſtinction, incorporated it for ever to the reſt of his dominions, *Anno* 1620. though not without ſome oppoſition from the ſubjects of *Bearn*: which he was fain to overbear by his perſonal preſence, and the advantage of ſuch Forces as he carried with him. Since reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, awed, as the reſt of *France*, by Forts and Garriſons, and governed in Civil matters by the Parliament eſtabliſhed at *Pau*; the Judges and Counſellors thereof at the Kings appointing.

2. The Earldom of *FOIX*, is ſituate on the Weſt of *Languedoc*; *Commingeois* interpoſing betwixt it and *Bearn*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Maſeres*, on the *Garond*, a Biſhops See. 2. *Pamierres*, a Biſhops See alſo, ſeated on the River *Lagiere*. 3. *Foix*, on the ſame River, called in *Latin*, *Fuxium*, and the Earls hereof *Cormites Fuxienſes*; the chief ſeat of the *Fluſſates* in the time of the *Romans*, now giving name to all the Country. 4. *Mirande*, in the County of *Eſterac*, and the chief thereof; but otherwiſe of no great account. 5. *Savardun*, and 6. *Monthault*, two ſtrong pieces. 7. *Mirepoix* (*opidum Miropenſe*) a Biſhops See alſo, but of no note otherwiſe. The old Inhabitants of this tract, beſides the *Fluſſates* above mentioned, were called *Vaccai*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine bred in the paſtures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of *Foix* have for their Arms, 3 Cows paſſant *Gules*, horned and hoofed *Azure*, in a Field *Or*.

The firſt of theſe Earls was *Bernard* of *Carcaſſone*, advanced to this honour by *Raimond* Earl of *Tholonſe*, who had then the Soveraignty hereof, *Anno* 1062. The Patrimony hereof much increaſed by marriage, (no one Family more) many fair lands in the Mariſhes of *Province* being added to it by *Eſtmiette*, wife of *Roger* the ſecond; not a few Signeuries in *Catalonia*, by *Cerile* daughter of Earl *Raimond*, wife of *Roger* the third; the Earldom of *Caſtelbon*, by *Brunicen*, wife of *Roger-Bernard* the firſt; the Earldom of *Comminges* by *Eleanor* the wife of *Gaſton* the ſecond. Beſides all which, in or about the year 1262. *Roger Bernard*, the ninth Earl, united *Bearn* to his Eſtate, as before is ſaid; whoſe Grandchild *Iſabel* (the male iſſue failing) conveyed the whole Eſtate to *Archembald*, Lord or Captain of *Beuche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *Gaſton*, the Nephew of this *Archembald* by his eldeſt Son *John*, was for his many good ſervices to *Charles* the ſeventh, made a Peer of *France*: and did not only purchaſe the Viſconty of *Narbon*, from the Lords whereof he was deſcended by *Mainguard*, wife of *Roger-Bernard* the ſecond; but by his mariage with *Eleanor* or *Leanora* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, united that Kingdom to his houſe, though he enjoyed it not in his own perſon. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of Eſtate, this Family grew to ſo great power and reputation, that there were four Queens at one time deſcended from it: *viz.* *Katharine* Queen of *Navarre*, *German* Queen of *Aragon*, *Anne* Queen of *France*, and *Anne* Queen of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*. Before which time (I mean the addition of *Navarre* to their other Eſtates) the Earls of *Foix* were in ſo high eſteem in the Court of *France*, that in all publick Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendoſme*, though extracted from the Royal blood, and lived in a condition equal to moſt King in Chriſtendom. In which regard, as alſo that the later Kings of *Navarre* and preſent Kings of *France*, are deſcended of them; it will not be amiſs to ſubjoyn here the Catalogue of

The Earls of *Foix*.

A. Ch.		
1062	1	*Bernard* the younger Son of *Roger* Earl of *Carcaſſon*, the firſt Earl of *Foix*.
1096	2	*Roger*, the Son of *Bernard*, an adventurer in the firſt war for the *Holy Land*.
1111	3	*Roger* II. Son of *Roger* the firſt.
1144	4	*Roger* III. Son of *Roger* the ſecond.
1188	5	*Raymond Roger* Son of *Roger* the third, a great ſtickler for the Earls of *Tholouſe*, in favour of the *Albigenſes*, and their opinions.
1223	6	*Roger-Bernard*, the inheritor of his Fathers opinions, as well as of his Eſtates and fortunes.
1241	7	*Roger* IV. ſirnamed *Rotſer*, a companion of the King S. *Lewis* in the *Holy Land*.
1255	8	*Roger-Bernard* II. Son of *Rotſer*.
1262	9	*Roger Bernard* III. who added *Bearn* and its Appendixes unto his Eſtates.
1306	10	*Gaſton* the Son of *Roger-Bernard* the third, and of *Margaret de Moncada* the heir of *Bearn*.
1315	11	*Gaſton* II. Son of *Gaſton* the firſt, a great Enemy to the *Engliſh* in behalf of *Philip de Valois*; and as great a friend to the King of *Aragon* againſt the *Moors*, in which wars he was ſlain.
1344	12	*Gaſton* III. for his beauty ſirnamed *Phœbus*, inferiour for Revenue and the port he lived in, to few Kings in Chriſtendom.
1390	13	*Matthew* Earl of *Caſtelbon*, Son of *Roger-Bernard* Earl of *Caſtelbon*, the ſecond Son of *Gaſton* the firſt: deſigned

Gaſcoigne.

deſigned ſucceſſor to *John* King of *Aragon*, whoſe eldeſt Daughter he had married, but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Duke of *Momlanc*.

1399 14 *Archembald* Captain of *Buche*, and *Iſabel* Siſter and heir of *Matthew*, Earls of *Foix*.

1413 15 *John* Son of *Archembald*, a great Enemy to the *Engliſh* in behalf of *Charles* the ſeventh of *France*; his younger Brother *Gaſton*, as great a friend unto the *Engliſh*, ſucceeding in the Eſtate of *Buche*. From *Peter* the ſecond Son of this *John* deſcended *Odet de Foix*, Lord of *Lautrech*, ſo renowned in the wars of *Italy*.

1436 16 *Gaſton* IV. Son of *John* a principal Agent in the Conqueſt of *Guienne* from the *Engliſh*; by his marriage with *Eleanor* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, advanced his Houſe unto that Kingdom: Grandfather by *John* Viſcount of *Narbone* his ſecond Son to *Gaſton de Foix* Duke of *Nemours*, ſlain at the taking of *Ravenna*, *Anno* 1512.

1472 17 *Francis Phœbus*, Nephew of *Gaſtan* the fourth, and of *Eleanor* of *Navarre* by their Son *Gaſton* Prince of *Viane*, ſucceeded his ſaid Grandfather in the Earldom of *Foix*, and his Grandmother in the Realm of *Navarre*, about 7 years after.

1483 18 *Katharine* the Siſter and Heir of *Francis*, by her marriage with *John* Earl of *Albret*, added that Earldom alſo to the Houſe of *Foix*.

1517 19 *Henry* of *Albert* Son of *John* and *Katharine*, King of *Navarre*, Soveraign of *Bearn* and Earl of *Foix*, by his marriage with the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter to King *Francis* the firſt, added the greateſt part of the lands of *Armaignac* unto his Eſtate.

1556 20 *Antonie* of *Burbon* Duke of *Vendoſme*, and *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* of *Albert*, Kings of *Navarre*, Sovereigns of *Bearn*, and Earls of *Foix*.

1572 21 *Henry* II. Son of *Joan* and *Antonie* King of *Navarre*, Soveraign Lord of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*; on the murder of *Henry* the third of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Kingdom by the name of *Henry* the fourth, *Anno* 1589, the Father of *Lewis* the thirteenth, and Grandfather of King *Lewis* the fourteenth, now reigning, *Anno* 1648. And ſo having brought the Earls of *Foix* to the Crown of *France*, it is time to leave them. The Arms of theſe great Earls we have ſeen before.

3. The Earldom of *BEGORRE* is ſituate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrenæan* mountains: ſo called from the *Bigerrones*, the old inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoyning Principality of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious people, of noyſome breaths, deformed bodies, and ghaſtly viſages: in which regard, not ſuffered to have commerce with other people, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themſelves to drudgery, and the baſeſt of mechanick trades. From their great miſhapen heads called *Capets* or *Gubets*.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Baigneres*, famous for *medicinal* Bathes. 2. *Lourde*, of which nothing memorable. *Tarbe*, (by *Antonine* called *Turſanbica*) ſeated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a ſtrong Caſtle, an Epiſcopal See, and the Seneſchalſie for all the Country of *Begorre*. Which Country having for a long time it own *Proprietary* Earls, under the Soveraignty and Homage of the Crown of *Navarre*, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or thoſe Kings from them; was at the laſt, by the marriage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Eſquibat* the laſt Earl, to *Boſon* Viſcount of *Marſan* and *Garbadan*, added to that Houſe. Whoſe Daughter *Matthee*, marrying to *Gaſton* Prince of *Bearn*, increaſed that Principality with thoſe goodly pieces of *Marſon*, *Gabardon* and *Begorre*; all brought unto the Houſe of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaſton*, married to *Roger-Bernard*, as before is ſaid.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*. By *Inigo Ariſto* the Son of *Simon*, Earl of this Country, called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Arms of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Arms thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Croſs in chief, *Guler*. Which Arms are ſaid to be took by *Garcia Ximines* the firſt King of *Navarre*, from ſuch a ſign appearing to him in the Skie, before his firſt battel with the *Moors*.

4. The Earldom of *COMMINGES* lyeth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to border Eaſtward on *Begorre*. Divided into the Higher, and more mountainous part, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*; and the Lower, which hath ſomewhat more of the valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Convenæ*, and *Conſerani*. The principal places at the preſent in the Lower *Comminges* are, 1. *Lombes*, a Biſhop See, but of late erection. 2. *Moret*, upon the River *Garonne*. 3. *Samathan*. 4. *Liſle en Dodon*. And in the Higher, there is, 1. *Conſtrans*, once the chief Town of the *Conſenari*, now a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenæan* Hills. 2. S. *Bernard*, of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Biſhops See alſo, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3. St. *Beat*, 4. St. *Fregon*, 5. *Monregeau*, or *Mons Regius*, 6. *Silliers*, &c.

Of the eſtate of this Earldom I have little to ſay, but that it was united to the Houſe of *Foix*, by the marriage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl hereof, to *Gaſton* the ſecond of that name, and the eleventh Earl of this Houſe. Given afterwards notwithſtanding to a *Spaniard* called *Rodrigo de Villandrada*, by *Charles* the ſeventh. But in the end reſtored again to the houſe of *Foix*, by the proweſs and great ſervices of *Gaſton* the fourth, who cauſed his Uncle *Matthew*, the youngeſt Son of *Archembald* and *Iſabel* Earls of *Foix*, to be ſetled in it, according to the will and purpoſe of his Father *Archembald*, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, it was conferred on *John* of *Leſcon*, a Baſtard of the Earl of

Armaignac.

Armaignac, who was Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the Marſhals of *France* in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh. The Arms o theſe Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltier, *Argent*.

5. The Earldom of *ARMAIGNAC*, the greateſt of all theſe Eſtates conſidered ſeverally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and ſo extendeth it ſelf to the banks of the River *Garend*. Principal Towns are, 1. *Aux*, upon the River *Gez*, anciently called *Auguſta Auſciorum*; the Metropolis or head City of the Province of *Novempopulonia*, by conſequence an Archbiſhops See: The Revenues whereof are ſaid to be the greateſt of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no leſs than 40000 *l. per annum*. 2. *Lictoure*, a Biſhops See, called of old *Leſtoracium*, in our modern *Latine Lectodurum*. A Town ſo well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a ſiege of three moneths againſt the Forces of *France*: but ſince it came into the hands of the *French* Kings, ſo ſtrengthened and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the ſtrongeſt Bulwark of the Kingdom on this ſide, and their ſureſt Fortreſs againſt *Spain*. 3. *Liſle de Jourdain*, which hath the title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, by *John* the fourth Earl of *Armaignac*, *Anno* 1421. 4. *Auvillar*. 5. *Auzan*. 6. *Chaſtel-neau*. 7. *Malbourquer*. 8. *Neſtes*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*: *Sancho* the great, having ſubdued ſome Lands in *Gaſcoigne*, which he conferred on *Garſias* a younger Son of his, with the title of Earl of *Armaignac*, *Anno* 1014. On which foundation it increaſed ſo faſt, both in power and honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl hereof, came to be Conſtable of *France*. And ſo did *John* the fourth of that name, by the favour of King *Charles* the ſeventh: who alſo writ hmſelf, *By the Grace of God* Earl of *Armaignac*, according to the ſtile of Soveraign Princes. A man of ſo conſiderable power in theſe parts of *France*, that the marriage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the ſixth, was thought the beſt means for eſtabliſhing his Eſtate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking off this alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cauſe of the loſs of the Kings pieces in *France*. This greatneſs made him ſubject to the jealouſie of King *Lewis* the eleventh, who worried him out of his Eſtate and his Life together. *Charles*, Brother of this *John*, ſncceeded by the favour of King *Charles* the eighth. After whoſe death this fair Eſtate was ſeized on to the uſe of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the firſt to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon* (whoſe Grandfather had married with a Siſter of the ſaid Earl *John*, and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife) the ſaid Kings Siſter: who, after the deceaſe of the Duke of *Alanſon*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albret*, and King of *Navarre*, her ſecond Husband; returning ſo to the Original from whence it came.

The Arms of theſe great Princes, were Quarterly 1 *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*; 2 *Gules*, a Leopard-Lyon *Or*. The 3, &c.

6. The Earldom of *ALBRET* is ſituate on the North-weſt of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is 1. *Nerac*, ſeated on the River of *Baize*; the only place of ſtrength and moment in all this Eſtate. 2. *Chaſtel-Jalone*, well ſeated to diſturb the Trade betwixt *Bourdeaux* and *Gaſcoigne*, but not able to endure a ſiege. 3. *Mont de Marſan*, and 4. *Tartas*, both ſeated on the River *Ladour*: and all four formerly Towns of Caution for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*; of which this Country is ſo full, that the *Popiſh Religion* had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the ſmalleſt of the ſix, and of leaſt Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the reſt into it. For *John*, the Son of *Alan* Earl of *Albret*, by his marriage with *Katharine*, Daughter and ſole Heir of *Gaſton*, Son of *Gaſton* of *Foix*, and of *Leanora* Princeſs of *Navarre*, added to his Eſtate the Signeuries of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albret* his Son, by marrying the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of King *Francis* the firſt, united to it thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Comminges*. By *Jean* the Daughter of this *Henry*, the whole Eſtate was brought to *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme*, and Father to King *Henry* the fourth, becoming ſo united to the Crown of *France*, from which it was at firſt diſmembred.

The Arms of theſe Earls, were Quarterly, 1. *France*; 2. *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg*. The 3, &c.

7. As for the Country of *AGENOIS*, the laſt part of *Gaſcoigne*, it never had other hearts (after it left off to be *French*) than the Dukes of *Aquitaine*. The principal Cities of it, 1. *Agen*, a rich, populous, and well-traded Town, ſeated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Country: A Biſhops See, a Seneſchalſie, and held to be the faireſt in *Gaſcoigne*. 2. *Condon*, a Biſhops See alſo, from which the parts adjoyning are called *Condonnois*. 3. *Villeneufne*. 4. *Claerac*, 5. *Marmand*, 6. *Foy*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of thoſe ſeveral members which made up the great body of the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*; let us next look on the Eſtate of the whole thus brought together: which in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, was given unto the *Gothes*, before poſſeſſed of all *Gallia Narbonenſis*, by *Valentinian* the third, as a reward for their ſervice in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Gothes* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clovis*, the fifth King of the *French*, continuing under his ſucceſſors, till *Ludovicus Pius* made it a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngeſt Son. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Sons of this *Pepin*, being diſpoſſeſſed by *Charles* the Bald, it was by him conferred on *Arnulph*, of the Houſe of *Burgundie*, for his many good ſervices againſt the *Normans*, *Anno* 844. Whoſe ſucceſſors take here in this order following.

The Dukes of *Aquitain.*

844 1 *Ranulph* of *Burgundy*, firſt Duke of *Aquitain.*
875 2 *William*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Nephew of *Ranulph.*
902 3 *Ebles*, Earl of *Poictou*, ſucceeded in *Aquitain* and *Auvergne*, by the Will and Teſtament of Duke *William.*
911 4 *Ebles* II. Son of *Ebles* the firſt.
935 5 *William* II. the Son of *Ebles* the ſecond.
970 6 *William* III. Son of *William* the ſecond.
1019 7 *Guy*, the Son of *William* the third.
1021 8 *William* IV. Son of *Guy.*
1086 9 *William* V. Son of *William* the fourth.
1156 10 *Lewis* the ſeventh of *France*, in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, ſole Heir of *William* the fifth.
1152 11 *Henry* Duke of *Normandy*, and Earl of *Anjou*, &c. in right of *Eleanor* his Wife divorced from *Lewis* on pretence of ſome conſanguinity; after King of *England.*
1169 12 *Richard*, King of *England*, the Son of *Henry.*
1199 13 *John* King of *England*, the Brother of *Richard*; who forfeiting his Eſtate in *France*, on a judicial ſentence pronounced againſt him for the (ſuppoſed) murther of his Nephew *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*; *Aquitain* and the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces were ſeized on by the *French*, *Anno* 1202. But notwithſtanding this *Arreſt*, the *Engliſh* ſtill continued their pretenſions to it, till at the laſt it was agreed betwixt King *Lewis* the ninth of *France*, and *Henry* the third of *England*, *Anno* 1159. That the *Engliſh* ſhould reſt ſatisfied with *Guienne*, the bounds whereof were to be the *Pyrenees* on the South, and the River of *Charente* on the North, comprehending therein alſo the Country of *Limoſin*; and that on his inveſtiture into this Eſtate, he ſhould relinquiſh all his rights in *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Main*, &c. In conſideration whereof, he ſhould have 150000 Crowns in ready money. On this accord the Kings of *England* became Homagers to the Crown of *France*, which ſometimes they omitted, ſometimes did it by Proxie, but never in perſon: till *Philip de Valois* required it of K. *Edward* the third: and becauſe ſuch duties are not often perſonally done by Soveraign Princes, *Du Serres* ſhall deſcribe the formality of it. The place deſigned for this exploit was the Church of *Amiens*, "to which *Edward* came (ſaith he) with "ſuch a Train, as was intended rather to the honour of himſelf than the *French* King. Royally attired "he was, with a long Robe of Crimſon Velvet, powdred with *Leopards* of Gold; his Crown upon his "his head, his Sword by his ſide, and golden ſpurs upon his heels. *Philip*, attended by the chief Officers of "the Realm, ſat upon his Throne, apparelled in a long robe of purple Velvet, powdred with *Flower de* "*Lyces* of Gold; his Crown upon his head, and the Scepter in his hand. Viſcount *Melan*, the great "*Chamberlain* of *France*, commanded *Edward* to take off his Crown, ſword, and ſpurs, and to kneel "down: which he did accordingly. Then taking both his hands, and joyning them together, he ſaid "unto him; *You become a* Liege-man *to the King my Maſter, who is here preſent, as Duke of* Guienne, *&* *Peer of* France, *and promiſe to be faithfull and loyal to him*; *ſay yea*: *and* Edward *ſaid yea, and aroſe.* But the Hiſtorian notes withall, that *Philip* paid dearly for this *Pageant*; the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made *France* a field of blood. And here it is to be obſerved, that though the Kings of *England* by this new inveſtiture, were intituled Dukes of *Guienne* only, yet they had all the power and priviledges of Dukes of *Aquitain*; excepting the homage of the great Lords and Earls of *Gaſcoigne*, which formerly belonged unto them. Inſomuch as *Richard* the ſecond, though Duke of *Guienne* only in ſtile and title, inveſted his Uncle *John* of *Gaunt* in that brave eſtate, under the ſtile and title of Duke of *Aquitain*; ſummoned to Parliament by that name by the ſaid King *Richard.* From this Accord betwixt the Kngs, the *Engliſh* had poſſeſſion of the Dukedom of *Guienne*, acording to the order of their Succeſſions, from the fortieth of King *Henry* the third, *Anno* 1259. to the twenty ninth of King *Henry* the ſixth, *Anno* 1452. (the intercalation of *John* of *Gaunt* excepted only;) when outed of all their old rights in *France*, rather by the good fortune, than by the valour of *Charles* the ſeventh; the *Engliſh* then divided in Domeſtick Factions, and not at leaſure to look after the affairs of *France.* Nor do I find, that *Guienne* being thus recovered, was ever diſmembred from that Crown, but when King *Lewis* the eleventh aſſigned it over to his Brother the Duke of *Berry*, to take him off from joyning with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Burgundie* in a new confederacy, who held it but two years, and died the laſt Duke of *Guienne*, *Anno* 1472.

The Armes of this Dukedom were *Gules*, a Leopard or Lyon *Or*; which joyned to the two Lyons of *Normandy*, make the Armes of *England.*

16. LANGUEDOC.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the *Pyrenæan* hills, the Land of *Ronſillon*, and the *Mediterranean*, on the South; on the North, with *Forreſt*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergn*, on the Eaſt, with *Provence* and *Dauphine*; on the Weſt, with *Gaſcoigne.* Whereas the other *Frenchmen* in an affirmation ſay *Ouy*, theſe of this Country ſay *Oc*; and therefore *Ortelius* conjectures it was called *Languedoc.* But the truth is, it took denomination from th *Gothes*, who reigning long in this Country, left behind them

Languedoc. them a ſmack of their Language; and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now *Euphonia gratiâ*, termed *Languedotia*, or *Languedoc*, that is, the *Gothes* Language.

The Country on thoſe parts which lie next to *Avergn*, is like the higher parts hereof, mountainous and not very fruitful; in all the reſt, as rich and pleaſant as the beſt Provinces in *France*; and having the advantages of Olives, Raiſins, Figs, Oranges, and other Fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neighbouring *Province*. In that participating the commodities both of *France* and *Spain*. The people have ſomewhat in them of the antient *Gothes*, and draw nearer to the temper of the *Spaniards*, than any other of the *French*; as being accounted very devout, great vaunters of themſelves, affecting bravery above their condition and eſtates; not caring how they pinch it on the working daies, or at home in private, ſo they may flaunt it in the ſtreet, and be fine on *holy-daies*. The humor alſo of the women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this *Province*, are 1. *Aurance*, 2. *Lieran*, and 3. *Orbe*, emptying themſelves into the *Rhoſne*; and *Alby* which diſburdeneth it ſelf into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Niſmes*, (in *Latine Nemauſus*) antiently a Colony of the *Romans*, now a Biſhops See; where there remain ſome marks of the *Roman* greatneſs, eſpecially the ruines of a ſpacious Palace built by the Emperour *Adrain*. 2. *Mont-pelier*, (in *Latine Mons Peſſulanus*) ſituate on a high Mountain, as the name imports, ſome twelve miles diſtant from the Sea; an Univerſity for the ſtudy of *Phyſick*, and for that very happily ſeated, the Country round about affording great variety of *medicinal* herbs. An Earldom of it ſelf in the former times, conveyed by *Mary* Daughter of *William* the laſt Lord hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her Husband; next, made a Member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and finally by *James*, the laſt King of *Majorca*, ſold to King *Philip* of *Valois*. Of late one of the ſtrongeſt holds which thoſe of the *Reformed* Religion had in this Country; and memorable for the notable reſiſtance which it made againſt the whole Forces of *Lewis* the thirteenth, in the laſt *Civil* Wars about *Religion*. 3. *Aleth*, and 4. *Carcoſſanne*, both Biſhops Sees, both ſeated on the River *Aude*; the people of both ſpeaking a corrupt *French*, with an intermixture of ſome *Spaniſh*. Which intermixture of *Spaniſh* with that broken *French*, they either have originally from the *Gothes* of *Spain*, of whoſe Kingdom this was once apart; or from their long ſubjection to the Earls of *Barcelone*, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair eſtates in this part of *France*, by the marriage of *Raymond Borenger* the ſeventh Earl thereof, with *Almodia* the Daughter of ſome of the great Lords who then ruled in *Languedoc*, about the year 1040. And to theſe Towns, as alſo unto thoſe of *Niſmes* and *Alby*, the Earls of *Barcelone*, and the Kings of *Aragon* (in their right) did pretend a Sovereignty (though they had loſt the poſſeſſion of them) as thoſe of *France* did to the Earldom of *Barcelone*: till mutual releaſes made on both ſides of each others claims, by *James* the firſt of *Arragon*, and the King St. *Lewis*, *Anno* 1260; or thereabouts. 5. *Alby*, commodiouſly ſeated on the River ſo called, the *Civitas Albigenſium*, the chief of this part of *Lauguedoc*, called from hence *La Paix Albigeois*; remarkable in *Church-hiſtory* for thoſe great Oppoſites to the corruptions and errors of the Church of *Rome*, called the *Albigenſes*. 6. *Beziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, the *Betira* of *Ptolomy*, and *Civitas Beterraſium* of *Antoninus*; a *Roman* Colony of old, now a Biſhops See. 7. *Agde*, called *Agatha* by antient writers remarkable for a Councel held there in the year 450. and for a well-frequented Port, at the mouth of the River *Egband*. 8. *Narbon*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the Seat of the *Phocenſes*, and the firſt *Roman* Colony (next after *Carthage*) out of *Italy*. In *Italy* it ſelf; (to obſerve ſo much by the way) were no leſſe than 150. Colonies; 57 in *Africk*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, in *England* 4 only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countries ſome, but very few in reſpect of the largeneſs of the Territories. Theſe *Colonies* were inſtituted partly to repreſſe Rebellions in the conquered Countries; partly to reſiſt a forein enemy, partly to reward the ancient Souldiers, partly to relieve the poorer ſort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the ſuperfluity and redundance of her people. Now if the queſtion be asked, whether a *Colony* or a *Fortreſſe* be more behoovefull, I anſwer with *Boterus* in his *Raggio de ſtato*, that a *Fortreſſe* is more fit for ſudden uſe, and a *Colony* for continuance: the former are quickly erected, and perhaps as ſoon loſt; the other require ſometime of ſetling, and are after of a good ſufficiency to defend themſelves. As we ſee in our times, the *Spaniſh* Colonies of *Ceuta* and *Tangier* in *Africk*; and our own of *Calais*, which was the laſt Town we loſt on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, the moſt populous and greateſt Town of all *France*: inſomuch, as from it all this part of *France* was called *Gallia Narbonenſis*. A Province, of which *Pliny* delivered us this cenſure: Narbonenſis Gallia *agrorum cultu, morum virorumque dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli provinciarum poſtponenda*; *breviterque* Italia *potiùs quàm provincia*; that is to ſay, that for fruitfulneſs of the ſoil, and the civility of the people, it was inferiour to no province in the *Roman* Empire. But to return unto the Town, being antiently the *Metropolis* of this Province, it had withall the honour of being an Archbiſhops See, which it ſtill continueth: well fortified at the preſent as a Town of war, frontiering *Catalonia* and the land of *Rouſillon*. 9. *La Puy*, the See of a Biſhop, who in *Latin* is called *Podienſis*; the chief of that part of *Languedoc*, which is named *Velay*, the antient ſeat of the *Velauni*. 10. *Viviers*, on the River *Rhoſne*, (by *Pliny* named *Alba Helviorum*) from whence the Country adjoyning hath the name of *Vivarets*. 11. *Rhodes*, or *Rutena*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Biſhops See; from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Rouvergn*; though ſome account this *Rouvergn*, a diſtinct Province and no part of *Languedoc*. 12. *Tholouſe*, ſeated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Tectoſages*, and the *Toloſates*, placed by old Writers in this tract; now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greateſt in all *France*. The ſeat of an Archbiſhop, and an Univerſity: ſo ancient, that ſome report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Iſrael*. Here was a *Parliamentary* Cour erected for the adminiſtration of Juſtice in theſe parts, 1302. As for the Story of *Tholouſe*, it was obſerved, that certain Souldiers having ſtole ſacrilegiouſly

Languedoc.

ſome Gold out of the Temple of *Tholouſe*, (when it was ſackt by *Cepio* a *Roman* Conſul) came all to miſerable and unfortunate ends: hence grew that *Adage*, *Aurum habet Tholoſanum*, applyed to unhappy men.

But that which deſerves moſt note in the Hiſtory of it, are the large and ſpacious fields about it, called by the Writers of theſe times by the name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100, in breadth 70 *French* Leagues. In which fields, *Anno* 435. was fought that terrible battel between *Attila.* King of the *Hunnes*, and *Ætius* the *Roman* Lieutenant in *France*; *Ætius* was ſtrengthned by the *Gothes*, *Francks*, *Burgundians*, and *Germans*. *Attila*'s Army conſiſted of *Hunnes*, *Heruli*, *Scythes*, *Sarmatians*, and *Suevians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that day loſt their lives: *Attila* himſelf being driven to that deſperate plunge, that making a Funeral pile of *Horſe Saddles*, he would have burned himſelf. But his Enemies weary of well-doing, or *Ætius* politickly fearing, that if *Attila* were quite deſtroyed, the *Gothes*, *Franks*, and others of the *Barbarians* then confederate with him, would become too inſolent; gave him leave to retire home through *Italy*: which he haraſſed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, ſo that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. *Ætius*, notwithſtanding this good ſervice, was by *Valentinian* the Emperour of the *Weſt*, rewarded with the loſs of his Head: By which act, the Emperour (as one truly told him) *had cut off his right hand with his left*. And indeed ſo it happened. For not long after, he himſelf was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of *Rome* irrecoverably deſtroyed. Now that theſe Fields lay hereabouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champaigne* (as ſome learned and induſtrious men have been of opinion) I am aſſured by theſe three reaſons. Firſt, the improbability that *Ætius* having got the victory, would ſuffer ſuch a vaſt and numerous Army to paſs through the whole length of *France*, from one end to the other, and having waſted all the Country, to break into *Italy*. And ſecondly, the teſtimony of *Jornandes* an antient Writer, who telleth us, firſt, before this fight, *Attila* had beſieged and diſtreſſed the City of *Orleans*; and therefore was not vanquiſhed in the fields of *Chalens*: and then, that immediately upon the victory, *Toriſmund* the King of *Gothes*, (his Father *Theodorick* being ſlain) *in Campis Catalaunicis ubi & pugnaverat*; *Regia Majeſtate ſubvectus* Toloſam *ingreditur*; being proclaimed King in thoſe very fields, entred with great ſtate and triumph into *Tholouſe*, the Regal City at that time of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Which plainly proves the places of battel to be near this City: though poſſibly by the name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof conſidered) we are to underſtand the whole Country of *Languedoc*.

The old inhabitants of this Country beſides the *Helvii*, the *Vallauni*, the *Tectoſages*, and *Albigenſes*, formerly remembred, were the *Agatenſes*, *Beterenſes*, *Gabales*, *Volcæ*, and the *Arecomici*; all which, together with ſome others of leſſer note, made the Province of *Narbonenſis Prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire aſſigned with the reſt of *Narbonenſis*, and ſome part of *Spain*, to *Atolfus* King of the *Gothes*, whom *Honorius* by this gift and by beſtowing on him his Siſter *Placidia*, bought out of *Italy*. The *Gothes* having got ſo good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their bounds by taking in the moſt part of *Aqnitain*, *Quercu*, and *Avergn*: but forced to quit them to the *French*, who Conquered that from them which they got from the *Romans*; and ſhut them up within the limits of their firſt Donation. After this they declined as faſt in *France*, as they thrived in *Spain*; looſing *Provence* to *Theodorick*, King of the *Oſtro-Gothes*, or *Gothes of Italy*; whoſe ſucceſſor *Ammalaſunta*, fearing a War from *Greece*, reſigned her intereſs in *Provence* to *Theodobert* the *French* King of *Mets*. Nothing now left unto the *Gothes* of their *Gallick* purchaſes, but this *Languedock* onely; and this they held as long as they had any thing to do in *Europe*, but loſt it finally to the *Moors*, with all *Spain* it ſelf. Recovered from the *Moors* by *Charles Martel*, and added to the reſt of the *French* Empire; it was by *Charles* the great given to one *Thurſin*, of the race of the antient Kings, with the title of the Earl of *Tholouſe*, on condition that he would be *Chriſtened*. But long it continued not in his race, nor in any other, not being ſetled in a way of Lineal Deſcent, till the time of *Raymond* the eighth Earl, Brother to another *Raymond* Earl of S^t^ *Giles* (a Town of *Guienne*) whoſe Grand-child *Hugh*, being an adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and wanting money to provide himſelf for that expedition, ſold his Eſtate herein to his Uncle *Raymond*, the Earl of S^t^. *Giles* before mentioned. From this time forward we find theſe Earls to be as often called the Earls of S^t^. *Giles*, as the Earls of *Tholouſe*; and by that name frequently remembred in the *Eaſtern ſtories*; as for his great valour in the courſe of the *Holy Wars*, eſpecially at the taking of the City of *Tripoli*, given to him (after it became Chiſtian) with the title of Earl. This *Raymond* worthily named the *Great*, Earl of *Tholouſe*, S^t^. *Giles*, and *Tripoli*, had three ſons all of them ſucceeding; of which the eldeſt was *Bertrand*, had a Baſe ſon called *Ponce*, who ſucceeded him in the Earldom of *Tripoli*, the Father of *Raymond*, and Grand-father of another *Raymond*, both Earls of *Tripoli*, and both ſuſpected to be falſe to the Chriſtian Princes in the continuance of thoſe wars. *Alphonſo* the third Son was alſo the Father of a *Raymond*, the Father of another *Raymond*, who proved a great maintainer of the *Albigenſes*: and in purſuance of that cauſe murdered the Legat of the Pope ſent to Excommunicate him, and ſtrangled his own Brother *Baldwin*, becauſe he found him not inclinable to his opinions. For this cauſe Warred upon, and Vanquiſhed by *Simon de Monfort*, Father of *Simon* of *Monfort*, the great Earl of *Leiceſter*, and after many troubles and continual Wars, left his eſtate and quarrel to his Son named alſo *Raymond* the laſt Earl of this Houſe; who proving alſo a ſtrong Patron of theſe *Albigenſes*, was condemned for a *Heretick*, curſed by the Pope, and perſecuted by the *French*

Kings, *Philip* the ſecond, *Lewis* the eighth, and St. *Lewis*. This laſt willing to make a peaceable compoſition, married his Brother *Alphonſo* to *Jane* Daughter and Heir to Count *Raymond*, with this clauſe, That if it ſhould happen theſe two to die without iſſue, then *Languedoc* ſhould be incorporated to the Crown. *Raymond* agreed, the Marriage ſolemnized, *An.* 1249. They both died without Iſſue, 1270. and *Languedoc* returned to the Crown in the daies of *Philip* the third.

The names and ſucceſſion of theſe Earls, in regard they were *Peers* of *France*, great Princes, and for the moſt part men of action, take in order thus;

The Earls of *Tholouze*.

An. Ch.		
779	1	*Turſin*, the firſt Earl of *Tholouze*.
803	2	*William* made Earl by *Charlemagne*, Peer of *France* at the firſt foundation of that Order.
828	3	*Iſauret Thurſin*, Son of *Thurſin* the firſt Earl.
841	4	*Bertrand*, Son of *Iſauret Thurſin*.
894	5	*William* II. of ſome other Houſe.
919	6	*Ponce*, a great *Juſticiar*, but of unknown Race.
963	7	*Almaric*, of as obſcure Parentage as *Ponce*.
1003	8	*Raymond*, the Brother of *Raymond* Earl of S. *Giles*, advanced by *Robert* King of *France*.
1052	9	*William* III. Duke of *Aquitaine*, ſucceeded in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of *Raymond*.
1086	10	*Hugh Aymou*, Son of *William* the third, ſold his Eſtate and Earldom to his Uncle *Raymond*.
1096	11	*Raymond* II. Earl of S. *Giles*, *Tholouze*, and *Tripoli*; of great note in the War of the *Holy Land*.
	12	*Betrand*, Son of *Raymond* the *Great*.
	13	*William* IV. Brother of *Bertrand*.
1101	14	*Alfonſo*, Brother of *William* the fourth.
1146	15	*Raymond* III. Son of *Alfonſo*.
1185	16	*Raymond* IV. Son of *Raymond* the third, the great Patron of the *Albigenſes*.
1222	17.	*Raymond* V. Son of *Raymond* the fourth, vanquiſhed and compounded with by King *Lewis* the Saint.
1249	18	*Alfonſo* II. Brother of St. *Lewis*, and Husband of *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of the laſt *Raymond*: after whoſe death, and the deceaſe of *Joan* the Counteſs, *Anno* 1270. this Earldom was united to the Crown of *France*; according to the Capitulations before mentioned.

The Arms of this Earldom were *Gules*, a Croſs *Pommelè*, of 12. points, *Or*.

17. PROVENCE.

PROVENCE is environed with *Languedoc* on the Weſt; *Daulphine*, on the North: the *Mediterranean*, on the South; and on the Eaſt with the *Alps*, and the River *Varus*; which divide it from *Piemont*, the neareſt of the *Alpine* Proviuces.

It took this name from the *Romans*, who being called in by the *Marſilians*, to revenge a private wrong done them by the *Salii*, the next neighbouring People, wholly poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country; calling it κατ' ἐξοχὴν, The *Province*. Under their Empire it continued, making up the whole Province *Narbonenſis Secunda*, and part of *Alpes Maritima*. How it was given unto the *Viſigothes*, or *Gothes* of *Spain*, and from them taken by the *Oſtrogothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*, hath been ſhewn in *Languedoc*. Being reſigned unto the *French*, it became a part of the new Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. Made a diſtinct Eſtate in the perſon of *Hugh de Arles*, (who afterwards ſucceeded in the Kingdom alſo) by *Boſon* the firſt. And by this *Hugh de Earls* upon this reſignation of that Kingdom to *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*; given unto *William* his Son, with the ſtile and title of Earl of *Provence*; confirmed therein by the Emperour *Conrade* the ſecond, on whom the rights of that Kingdom had been transferred; to be held of him, and his ſucceſſors in the Empire. In his poſterity it continued, till conveyed to the Earls of *Barcelone*, by the marriage of the Lady *Doulce* with Earl *Raymond Arnold*, *Anno* 1082. Carried together with that Earldom, to the Crown of *Aragon*; and finally by *Beatrix*, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the third, the laſt Earl of this Family, conveyed in marriage to *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Lewis* the ninth of *France*, *Anno* 1262. whom *Urban* the fourth not long after crowned King of *Naples*. By *Joan* the firſt, the fourth from *Charles*, driven out of *Naples* by *Lewis* of *Hungaria*, and reſtored again by the power of Pope *Clement* the fifth; the City and Territory of *Avignon* (where the Pope reſided at that time) is diſmembred from the Earldom of *Provence*, and given in Fee for ever to the Church of *Rome*: partly to recompenſe that favour, and partly for diſcharge of ſome old Arrears of Rent or Tribute, pretended to be due to the See of *Rome*, for the Realm of *Naples*. A City which had formerly been under the Protection, and by that title in the Actual poſſeſſion of many of the Popes of *Rome*; ever ſince the conviction of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouze*, to whom it formerly belonged, but

Provence.

but held by them in Fee of the Earls of *Provence*. Not long after the Donation, the ſaid *Joan* adopted for her Heir and Succeſſor, *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* fifth of *France*, deſcended lineally from *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*: poſſeſſed by this Adoption of the Earldom of *Provence*, and a title to the Realm of *Naples*. *Rene*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, having no iſſue-male ſurviving, made *Lewis* of *Chalons*, the Prince of *Orange*, (another Signeury in this Country:) and gave him therewithall full power to make Laws, coin mony, and pardon all crimes; to write himſelf *Prince of Orange by the Grace of God*, with all other Prerogatives of an abſolute Prince. This was in the year 1415. So that now the Country ſtands divided betwixt the *French* King, the Pope, and the Prince of *Orange*; each of them abſolute and independent in his own Eſtate: as long at leaſt as the *French* King is pleaſed to give way unto it.

The whole is much of the ſame nature with *Languedoc*, before deſcribed, but in one part thereof; that namely between *Marſeilles* and *Arles*, different from all the reſt of *France*. By the *French* commonly called *La Craux*; by the elder Writers *Campi lapidei*, becauſe all in a manner overſpread with ſcattered ſtones. Suppoſed by *Mela* to be the place in which *Hercules* encountred *Albion*, and *Bergion* the ſon of *Neptune*: whom when he could not otherwiſe vanquiſh, he was by *Jupiter* his Father aided with a ſhower of ſtones; of which theſe were fained to be the Remainders. A Countrey which takes up a good ſpace of ground, and hath a few poor Towns in it, but not much inhabited.

In that part of it which belongs to the King, the Towns of ſpecial note, are, 1. *Aix*, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*, the Metropolis of *Narbonenſis ſecunda*, and at that time called *Aqua Sextia*, from *Sextius* the Founder of it (by whom the *Salii* were ſubdued in the ſecond year of that war) and the hot Bathes here. Now, and of long time, an Archbiſhops See, and the chief City of this Province; and for that reaſon made the Seat of a Court of Parliament for this Country, *Anno* 1501. Moſt memorable in old ſtory for the great diſcomfiture of the *Cimbri* by *C. Marius*. Who not willing to venture on the enemy united (for they were no fewer than 300000. fighting men, and lately fleſhed in the overthrow of *Manlius* and *Scipio*, (two *Roman* Conſuls;) permitted them quietly to paſſe by his Camp: The *Barbarians* who imputed it to fear or cowardize, ſcornfully asking his Souldiers, what ſervice they would command them to *Rome*. But when, for their eaſier paſſage over the *Alpes*, they had divided themſelves into three Companies; *Marius* ſeverally ſetting on them all, put them all to the ſword. *Ea victoria viſus meruiſſe ne ejus nati Rempub. pœniteret*, by this Victory, and this only, giving cauſe to the *Romans* (as *Velleus* hath it) not to be ſorry for his birth. 2. *Arles*, in *Latine*, *Arelatum*, by *Auſonius* called the *Rome* of *France*, and in thoſe times ſo highly prized, that *Conſtantinus Flavius* being choſen Emperour by the *Britiſh* Legions, in the delining times of the Weſtern Empire, intended to have made it the Imperial Seat. And not leſſe memorable in Church-ſtory for the Councild here held in the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, *Anno* 313. in which was preſent *Reſtitutus* the Biſhop of *London*, and certain other Biſhop of the *Britiſh* Church. It was antiently a *Roman* Colony, and now the See of an Archbiſhop; ſituate on the River *Rhoſne*, in a low and mariſhy ſituation: which natural ſtrength ſeconded by the new works of King *Henry* the fourth, have made it one of the beſt Bulwarks of *France*, on that ſide of the Kingdom. Selected for the Seat Royal of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, who from hence were called Kings of *Arles*; as the Kings of *Auſtraſia* (or *Eaſt France*) were called Kings of *Mets*, becauſe they had made choice of that City for the Regal Seat. Between this City and the Sea, but on the other ſide of the River, runneth a deep Channel, cut with infinite charge and induſtry by *C. Marius*, for conveyance of victuals into his Camp, in his war againſt the *Cimbri* before named; by *Ptolomy* called *Foſſa Mariana*, by the *French*, *Camargue*, a corrupt word made of *Caius Marius*: the Country about which, called alſo by the ſame name for the ſpace of 24 miles, is of excellent paſturage, and breedeth great abundance of Horſes; the chief Town of which is called 3. St. *Gillis*. 4. *Marſeilles*, a known Port on the *Mediterranean*, firſt built by the *Phocenſes*, a *Greek* Nation of *Aſia Minor*, who being baniſhed their Countrey, came and planted here, about the reign of *Tarquinius Superbus*, the laſt King of *Rome*. It was firſt only a Confederate City of the *Romans*, for whoſe ſake, being moleſted by the *Salii*, and others of the neighbouring Nations, the *Roman Legions* firſt entred *Gaul*; afterwards, ſiding with *Pompey* in the *Civil* Wars, or at leaſt deſirous to ſtand neutral, it was forced by *Cæſar* and made a Colony. In the proſperity hereof it drove a great trade on the *Mediterranean*, and was the mother of many fair and flouriſhing Colonies; *Emporia*, *Forum Julium*, *Nicæa*, *Olbia*, diſperſed in the adjoining ſhores of *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*. 5. *Glandeves*, antiently called *Glannm*, a Biſhops See, ſeated upon the *Maritim Alpes*. 6. *Taulon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Tauroentinm*, and by ſome *Tholone*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, well ſtored with Oil, great quantity of Salt brought hither from the Iſle of *Eres*, about three Leagues off; and a kind of *Almonds*, called *Provence Almonds*; made by this means one of the moſt frequented Ports of the *Mediterranean*. 7. *Antibi*, (in *Latine Antipolis*) a Sea-coaſt Town near the river *Varo*, one of the fartheſt of this Country towards *Italy*. 8. *Feriols* (the *Forum Julium* of the antients) on the *Mediterranean*, founded by the *Maſſilians* as before was ſaid; after a Colony of the *Romans*. 9. *La Grace*, a Biſhops See, more within the Continent. 10. *Ciſteron*, on the borders of *Daulphine*. 11. *Brignols*. 12. *Merindol*, and *Chabriers*, two little Towns amongſt the Mountains, towards *Daulphine*; not otherwiſe of note but for the horrid Maſſacre of the *Proteſtants*, before deſcribed.

II. The *Principality* of *Orange* lieth on the North-Weſt of this Province, watered with the River of 1. *Durance*. 2. *Seile*. 3. *Meine*, and 4. *Ecque*; all helping to augment the *Rhoſne*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Aurange*, ſeated on the *Meine*, an Epiſcopal See, famous for many rare and won-

Orange. derful Antiquieſit, demonſtrating the *Roman* Greatneſs, of whom once a Colony; but of moſt note in Church ſtory for a Council held here againſt the *Semi-Pelagians*, in the year 444. called *Arauſicanum*; the *Latine* name of this City being antiently *Arauſia*, in ſome Writers *Auriacus*, and of late *Aurangia*. 2. *Eſtrang*. 3. *Bois de St. Pol*, more properly St. *Paul de Vences*, being the *Civitas Vincienſium* of *Antoninus*, but not otherwiſe memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were antiently of the Noble Family of the *Banſſis*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold* the laſt of this Family, it was conveyed in mariage to *John de Chalons*, one of the moſt noble houſes of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis* the Son of this *John* obtained of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou* and Earl of *Provence*, the Soveraignty hereof, as before was ſaid. By *Claude* the Heir general of this houſe, beſtowed in mariage by King *Francis* the firſt on Count *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Ambaſſador from *Maximilian* Emperor of *Germany*, *An.* 1514. it was tranſlated to that Family, where it ſtill remaineth.

The Princes of *Orenge*.

1475 1 *Lewis* of *Chalons*, firſt abſolute Prince of *Orange*.

2 *William de Chalons* who ſubmitted his Eſtate to the Parliament of *Daulphine*, to ſatisfie King *Lewis* the eleventh, by whom reſtored again to his former Soveraignty.

3 *John de Chalons*, a bitter enemy to King *Lewis*, in defence of the rights of *Mary* Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*.

1500 4 *Philibert de Chalons*, ſlain at the ſiege of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces of *Charles* the fifth: *Claude* his only Siſter, and next heir of that houſe, being maried to *Henry* Earl of *Naſſaw*, *An.* 1515.

1536 5 *Rene* of *Naſſaw*, Son of *Henry* and *Claude*, adopted by *Philibert* his Uncle, whom he ſucceeded in this Eſtate; ſlain at the ſiege of *Landrecy* in the *Netherlands*.

1544 6 *William* of *Naſſaw*, Couſin german of *Rene*, by whoſe laſt Teſtament left Heir unto his Eſtates, the great Patron and Aſſertor of the *Belgick Liberties* againſt the *Spaniard*, ſlain by a Partiſan of *Spain*, called *Balthazar*, at *Delf* in *Holland*, An. 1584.

1584 7 *Philip* of *Naſſaw*, kept as an Hoſtage all his life by the King of *Spain*.

8 *Maurice* of *Naſſaw*, Brother of *Philip* Commander of the Forces of the *United Provinces*.

1625 9 *Henry* of *Naſſaw* II. Succeſſor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Eſtates, and Honors.

1648 10 *William* of *Naſſaw* II. the Son and Succeſſor of *Henry*, maried the Princeſſe *Mary*, eldeſt Daughter of *Charles* King of great *Britain*, &c. on *May day*, 1641.

The Revenues of this principality are about 3000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend *Or*, 2. *Or*, a Hunters Horn *Azure*, ſtringed *Gules*; the third as, &c. Over all an Eſcocheon of Pretence Chequie, *Or* and *Azure*. More briefly thus, Quarterly *Charons* and *Aurange*, under an Eſcocheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Aurange* lyeth the County of *VENASCINE*, as the *French* call it *Comitatus Veniſſinus* in the *Latine*; ſo called from *Avenio* (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Antiently it had Lords of it own called Earls of *Venice*, (*Veniſſa Comites* in the *Latine*) united to the houſe of *Savoy* by the mariage of *Laurenha* a daughter hereof with Earl *Humbert* the ſecond, *Anno* 1080. or thereabouts. But this family of the firſt Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what right I find not) to the Earls of *Tholouſe*, but held by them as *Homagers* (for this eſtate) of the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Hereſy, brought under the protection and patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more abſolute Soveraignty hereof and of the City *Avignon*, being ſetled on them by Queen *Joan*, as before is ſaid. The principal Cities of this tract, are, 1. *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Plinie*, and *Mela*, a very fair and flouriſhing City, pleaſantly ſeated on both ſides of the River of *Rhoſne*: famous for being the reſidence of the Popes for 70 years, which times the *Romans* remember to this day by the name of the *Babylonian captivity*; adminiſtring ever ſince an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The firſt Pope that removed hither was *Clement* the fifth, *An.* 1303. when as yet, the Popes had no more right in it than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome* by *Gregory* the eleventh, *An.* 1377. In this City are ſaid to be 7. Palaces, 7. Pariſh-Churches, 7. Monaſteries, 7. Nunneries, 7. Innes, and 7 Gates. So that if there be any *miſtery* in the number of *ſeven*, or any credit to be given to ſuch *Pythagorean divinity*; the Archbiſhop of this City may as well be entituled *Antichriſt*, as the Pope of *Rome*; if there be nothing but the *myſtery* of this number to affix it to him. It was made an Univerſity at the time of the Popes firſt ſetling here, and ſo ſtill continueth; *Alciate* the graet *Emblematiſt* being here Profeſſor. 2. *Carpentras*, by *Ptolomy* called *Carpentoracte*, a Biſhops See; as is alſo 3. *Cavaillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a *Roman* Colony, on the River *Durance*; and 4. *Taraſcon*, on the *Rhoſne*, oppoſite to *Beucaire* in *Languedoc*: for the Popes dwelling here ſo long, could not be otherwiſe attended than by mitred Prelates. 5. *Vaſon*, *Civitas Vaſionenſium*, of *Antoninus*.

The *Revenues* of the Pope here are not very great, and thoſe expended all in keeping of Forts and Garriſons, by reaſon of the ill neighourhood of the *Proteſtants* of *Orange*. So that it is ſuppoſed that it is rather a charge, than a profit to him: which maketh the people like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more money to them than he gathereth from them. The Arms hereof, when under the old Earl of *Venize*, were *Gules*, two keys in Saltire *Or*, ſtringed *Azure*.

Which

Provence.

Which ſeems to have in it ſome preſage (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it ſhould one day become ſubject to the See of *Rome*.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Country, were as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Maſſilienſes*, *Vaſionenſes*, and *Vencienſes*, before mentioned; beſides the *Deceates* about *Antibe*, the *Senitii*; and *Sigeſtorii* about *Ciſteron*: all conquered by the *Romans*, in their firſt war in *Gaule*, called in to aid thoſe of *Marſeilles* againſt the *Salii*. The fortune of it ſince, hath been ſhewn before. Nothing remains now, but the Catalogue of

The Earls of *Provence*.

1 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Lotharius*, King of *Auſtraſia*, and *Waldrada* his Concubine; made the firſt Earl of *Provence* by *Boſon* the firſt, King of *Burgundy*. He was after King of *Burgundy*, and *Italy* alſo.

2 *William de Arles*, the Son of *Hugh*.

3 *William* II. ſirnamed the younger, Son of *William* the firſt.

4 *Gilbert* Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Doulce*.

1082 5 *Raymond Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelone*, the Husband of the Lady *Doulce* of *Provence*.

1131 6 *Bernegar Raymond*, the ſecond Son of *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*, his eldeſt Brother *Raymond* ſucceeding in *Barcelone*.

7 *Raymond* II. Son of *Beringar Raymond*.

1173 8 *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon*, and Earl of *Barcelone*, the Son and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, eldeſt Son unto *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*.

1196 9 *Alfonſo* II. ſecond Son of *Alfonſo* the firſt, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Provence*; his elder Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, and the Earldom of *Barcelone*.

10 *Raymond* III. Son of *Alphonſo*, the laſt Earl of *Provence* of this Line.

1261 11 *Charles* of *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*, and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence*. He was alſo King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c.

1282 12 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1310 13 *Robert*, King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1342 14 *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Counteſſe of *Provence*.

1371 15 *Lewis*, Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Son of Queen *Joan*, Earl of *Provence*, and titulary King of *Naples*, &c. (Of whoſe deſcent from *Charls de Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, we have ſpoke elſewhere.)

1385 16 *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1416 17 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1430 18 *Rene* Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.

1480 19 *Charles* Earl of *Main*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, the Brother of *Rene*, ſucceeded in all the Eſtates and titles of his Uncle; and at his death gave *Provence* to K. *Lewis* the eleventh, his Couſin *german*: as being the Son of *Charles* the ſeventh, and *Mary* Daughter of *Lewis* the ſecond, Duke of *Anjou*, Siſter of *Lewis* the third and *Rene*, the preceding Dukes, and *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the laſt Earl of *Provence*. Immediatly on whoſe deceaſe, *December* ninteenth. *An.* 1481. the King ſent a Commiſſion to *Palamede de Forban*, Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take poſſeſſion of the Country in his name, and command therein as Lieutenant General. Since which time *Provence* never was diſmembred from the Crown of *France*, ſo much as in the way of *Appennage*, or any honorary title amongſt the Kings Children.

What the *Revenues* of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to ſay, having no good authority to proceed upon. Only I find, that beſides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other cuſtomary and caſual Taxes, there was a Tax called the *Royal impoſt*, being ſixteen *Florens* levied upon every fire: which reckoning 3500 fires, (for ſuch the eſtimate of them was) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florns*. Now it is ſubject to the rigor and uncertainty of the Kings Taxations, as well as all the reſt of *France*. And ſo much of thoſe Provinces which properly made up the Kindoms of the *French* and *Gothes*; let us next look on thoſe which at the ſame time were ſubdued by the *Burgundians*; whoſe Hiſtory, Kingdom, and Eſtate, are to be conſidered, before we come to the deſcription of their ſeveral Provinces.

The Kingdom of BURGUNDY.

THE Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS* at their firſt ſettlement in *Gaul*, contained all thoſe Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, then called the *Alpes Graiæ* and *Pœnina*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunenſis Prima*, and *Viennenſis*; now paſſing under the new names of the *Dukedom* and *County* of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Griſons*, *Walliſland*, *Savoy*, *La Breſſe*, *Daulphine*, *Lionois*, *Nivernois*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of ground, able at once to tempt, and ſatisfie an ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaule* of their own accord; though of their own accord they drew ſomewhat near it. In their Original they were a people bordering near the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sect of them; and dwelling in thoſe parts in which are now the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Druſus* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they

Burgundians.

were utterly barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own language called *Burgs*, gave them the name of *Burgundians* amongſt the *Romans*; in the ſame ſenſe as the wild *Arabs* had the name of *Scenitæ*, amongſt the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the year 416. at the inſtigation of the *Vandals* they left their own ſeats, and planted themſelves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, and Electors of *Rhene*. About which time they received the Chriſtian Faith, being then miſerably oppreſſed by the *Hunnes*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themſelves of that Enemy, they betook themſelves to the God of the *Chriſtians*, and were univerſally baptized. After which falling on the *Hunnes*, they ſlew no leſs than 30000 of them in one battel: from that time forwards never troubled with that barbarous Nation. *Chriſtians* then they were, and *Orthodox* in their profeſſion, before their coming into *Gaule*: and for that reaſon called in by *Stilico* to oppoſe the *French*, then threatning an invaſion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this invitation they paſſed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting men, poſſeſſing themſelves of all which lay from the fartheſt ſhore of the *Rhoſne*, to the *Alpes* of *Italy*; and from the mountain *Vauge*, to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about the ſame time planted by the *Gothes*. Their government was under Kings; Many, according to their tribes, when they lived in *Germany*; *Monarchical*, when ſetled in the Realm of *France*, where they had theſe five

Kings of the *Burgundians*.

A. Ch.

408 1 *Tibica*, who firſt brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaule*.

2 *Gundioch*.

3 *Gundebauld*, who haraſſed *Italy*, when in poſſeſſion of the *Gothes*, with fire and ſword, the Uncle of *Clotilda*, Wife to *Clovis*, the fifth King of the *French*, by her perſwaſion made inclinable to the *Chriſtian* Faith.

4 *Sigiſmond*.

5 *Gundomar*, the Son of *Sigiſmond*, firſt ſet upon by *Clodomire*, the Son of *Clovis*, King of *Orleans*, whom he ſlew in battel near *Auſtun*; but afterward outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clotair*, Kings of *Paris* and *Soiſſons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother *Clodomire*: And ſo the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 years: *Guntrum*, the Son of *Clotaire*, and *Clovis*, one of the Sons of *Dagobert* the firſt, being in their times honoured with the titles of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the firſt time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* ſetled amongſt the *French*, in the way of ſucceſſion, was in the partage of that vaſt Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongſt the children and poſterity of *Ludovicus Pius*: In the conſtituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this anſwerable to the other parts of that broken *Monarchy*. The firſt of theſe *French* Kings was *Charles*, the youngeſt Son of *Lotharius*, Emperour and King of *Italy*, eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Lewis* the *Godly*. The ſucceſſion in this order following.

The *French* Kings of *Burgundy*.

A. Ch.

855 1 *Charles*, youngeſt Son of the Emperour *Lotharius*, dyed without iſſue.

858 2 *Lotharius* the ſecond King of *Mets*, and *Lewis* the ſecond Emperour, Brethren of *Charles* ſucceeded in *Burgundy*; the mountain *Jour* dividing and bounding their Eſtates.

876 3 *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperour, Uncle to the three former Kings, all dying without iſſue, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate; which he again divided into three Governments or Members: that is to ſay, *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lions* and *Maſcon*. 2. *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Walliſland*, and the Eſtates of the *Griſons*; and thirdly, *Burgundy* on the other ſide of the *Soaſne*, lying betwixt the other two; containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Breſſe*, and *Daulphine*. This laſt conferred with the title of Earl, on *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, by *Charles* the *Bald*, who had married his Siſter *Judith*; and not long after in the perſon of the ſaid Earl *Boſon*, raiſed unto a Kingdom by *Charles* the *Groſs*, by the name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings, theſe that follow.

4 *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, Husband of *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the ſecond, Emperor, and King of *Burgundy*, was firſt by *Charles* the *Bald* made Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Soaſne*; and afterwards by *Charles* the *Groſs* created the firſt King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Succeſſors of the *German* Emperors.

5 *Lewis* II. Son of *Boſon* and *Hermingrade*; choſen King of *Italy*, but outed by the Faction of *Beringarius*.

917 6 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Lotharius* the ſecond, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; ſucceeded by the gift of *Lewis*; and was choſen by his Faction there King of *Italy* alſo. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he reſigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction to that broken Title.

926 7 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Hugh de Arles*: his Brother *Boſon* being ſetled beyond the *Jour*.

937 8 *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph*; a Prince of ſo ſhort a reign, or ſo little note, that he is by ſome left out of the catalogue of theſe Kings.

9 *Boſon* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the firſt, by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.

965 10 *Conrade* Son of *Boſon* the ſecond.

990 11 *Rodolph* III. Son to *Conrade*, who having no iſſue of his body; gave his Eſtate to *Conrade*, the ſecond, Emperor of *Germany*, and his Son *Henry* ſurnamed the *Black*, whom he had by *Giſela*, the Siſter of this *Rodolph*; by whom it was united to the *German* Empire, *An.* 1032. In the diſtractions whereof, following not long after his deceaſe, the Provincial Earls or Governors for the *German* Emperors, made themſelves Maſters and *Proprietaries* of their ſeveral Provinces (the *Dukedom* of *Burgundy* excepted, ſetled long before) out of which roſe the great Eſtates of the Duke of *Savoy*, the Earls of *Burgundy*, and *Provence*, the *Daulphins* of *Viennois*, and Lords of *Breſſe*, together with the Common-wealths of the *Switzers* and *Griſons*: every poor Bird ſnatching alſo ſome feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithſtanding the diſmembring and *cantoning* of this fair Eſtate, the ſucceeding Emperor of *Germany*, claimed not only a ſuper-intendence over, but a diſpoſal of all the Countries that ever were under the command of a King of *Burgundy*: Inſomuch that the Emperor *Henry* the ſixth, receiving no ſmall part of the money which our *Richard* the firſt paid to the Duke of *Auſtria* for his ranſom; gave unto the ſaid *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Soveraignty of *Provence*, *Viennois*, *Marſeilles*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lyons*; together with the homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digeon*, and S. *Giles*. A royal gift, if either the Emperor had had any dominion over thoſe Countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are ſaid to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Arg.* armed *Gules*. Which being ſaid, we will proceed to the deſcription of thoſe Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lie within the bounds of *France*; the reſt which lie beyond the *Jour*, having been ſpoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries, which made up the whole continent of the *Tranſ-jourane* *Burgundy*.

18. DAULPHINE.

NOrth of the Country of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAULPHINE*, having on the Eaſt, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alps*; on the Weſt *Lionois*, and ſome part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhoſne*; and on the North, *La Breſſe*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lie towards *Piemont*. So called, as ſome report, from *Dauphine*, wife of *Guigne* the ſecond; in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed moſt probably to have took that name from *Flandrina* wife of *Liderick* the ſecond, then one of the laſt of thoſe Princes who governed in that Countrey by the name of *Forreſters*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; that mountainous, ſtony, and unfruitfull, of the ſame nature with the *Alpes*, with whoſe branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitfull, but not to be compared with the reſt of *France*. The people of the *Higher*, and more mountainous parts, are generally groſs and rude; not capable of learning, but well enough inclined to Arms and traffick, and have a cuſtom, that on the coming on of Winter they ſend abroad all thoſe which are fit for Travel, (whom they call *Bics*, or *Biſonards*) who ſeldom return back to *Eaſter*: none ſtaying at home, but old men, children and impotent perſons, which cannot go abroad to get their livings. Thoſe in the *Lower*, are more civil, but not more given to labour than the Mountaineers are; nor very covetous of gain, ſo they may live at eaſe, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Souldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The *Lower Daulphine*, together with that part of *Provence* which lies next to the *Rhoſne*, and the adjoyning parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennenſis*, from *Vienna* the *Metropolis* of it, ſituate on the *Rhoſne*, honoured with the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio* Galliarum; ſtill the chief City of this Country, an Archbiſhops See, and a ſiege *Praſidial*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennois*, and was the title of the firſt *Proprietaries* of this Country, entitled *Daulphins* of *Viennois*. To this Town *Archelaus*, the Son of *Herod*, was baniſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 2. *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentini*, then a *Roman* Colony; now a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity for the *Civil Laws*; a rich, ſtrong, and well traded Town, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*. The Countrey hereabouts from hence called *Valentinois*; and hath given honorary title to two perſons of more Fame, than Honour: the firſt of which was *Cæſar* Borgia, the Son of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, who caſting off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinois* by *Charles* the eighth; the other Madam *Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the ſecond, under whom ſhe much ſwayed the affairs of *France*, and honoured with the title of Dutcheſs of it. 3. *Grenoble* (in *Latin*, *Gratianopolis*) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Accuſiani*, the moſt populous and beſt built of all this Province, and much reſorted to by the Lords and Nobles, by reaſon of the Court of *Parliament* here erected, *An.* 1453. About this lyeth the Country called *Griſinaudan*, 4. *Ternay*, 5. *Roſſillon*, 6. *La Roch*, 7. *Montelimar*, all along the *Rhoſne*; 8. *Romons* upon the confluence of the *Rhoſne*, and the *Iſere*. 9. *Cremien*, 10. St. *Marceline*, 11. St. *Andre*, 12. *Beaurepaire*, more within the Country.

The *Higher Daulphine*, together with thoſe parts of *Provence* which lie next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, the *Metropolis* whereof, was, 1. *Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Archbiſhops See, and Siege *Præſidial*; ſeated on an high rock, in the midſt of a pleaſant valley ſurrounded with mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The hilly Countrey hereabouts, is the higheſt of *France*. 2. *Brianſon*, near the head of the River *Durance*, called Brigantio by *Antoninus*.

Viennois. 3. *Gappe*, now a Biſhops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apencenſes*; the track of whom is ſtill found in the name of the adjoyning Territory, called *Le Pais Gapencois*: Memorable for a Synod or Aſſembly of the *French Proteſtants* here holden *An.* 1603. in which it was determined, as and for an Article of Faith, that the *Pope was Antichriſt*, and where the Miniſters then aſſembed, gave audience to the Ambaſſadors of forein States, as to a Common-wealth diſtinct from the Realm of *France*, audaciouſly importuning their King by their ſeveral Agents for liberty of going (whenſoever they liſted) or ſending whenſoever they pleaſed unto the Councels and Aſſemblies of all forein Nations which profeſſed the ſame Religion with them; the preamble to thoſe encroachments on the Royal authority which after proved the ruine of their power and party. 4. *Tricaſſin*, ſo called of the *Tricaſſini*, the old Inhabitants of theſe parts. 5. *Die*, the *Dia Vocontiorum* of *Antoninus*, a Biſhops See, ſituate on the River *Droſne*: from whence come thoſe ſmall, but good ſtomach-wines, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Campagn*, moſt plentifully growing in the fields of a Town called *Hey*, from whence it hath the name of *Vin de Hey*, and ſo contractedly *Vin Day*. 6. *Chorges*, 7. *Mombrum*, 8. *Eſſiles*, of which little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, beſides the *Tricaſſini*, *Apencences*, *Vacontii*, and *Accuſiani* before mentioned, and the *Allobroges*, ſpoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were *Segalauni* about *Valence*, the *Decenſes* about *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at laſt by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the ſurrender of the ſame to the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued, till the year 1100. when *Guigne*, ſurnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Griſinundan*, ſeeing the Emperor *Henry* the fourth overborn by the Popes, and not able to aſſert his own rights, ſeized upon this Province, under the title of Earl of *Viennoys*; to which *Guigne* the ſecond, his Son and Succeſſor, gave the name of *Daulphine*; either from his Wife ſo called, as ſome, or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others ſay. In this Family it continued, till the year 1349. under the power and government of theſe following Princes, entituled

The *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.

A. Ch.		
1100	1	*Guigne* ſurn. the *Fat*, Earl of *Albon* and *Griſinundan*, at the time of the diſſolution of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*.
1135	2	*Guigne* II. the firſt and abſolute proprietary Prince hereof, by the name of the *Daulphin* of *Viennois*.
1146	3	*Guigne* III. ſon of *Guigne* the ſecond.
1152	4	*Beatrix* daughter of *Guigne* the third, firſt married to *Reymond* the third, Earl of *Tholouſe*, next to *Hugh* the third Duke of *Burgundy*, and finally to *Guigne* of *Albon*, of the houſe of the former Earls: all in her right entituled *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.
1208	5	*Andrew* the ſon of *Beatrix* and of *Guigne* the fourth.
1242	6	*Guigne* V. ſon of *Andrew*.
2283	7	*Humbert* the firſt, in right of *Anne* his wife, daughter and Heir of *Guigne* the fifth.
1305	8	*John* the ſon of *Humbert*, exerciſed in continual wars, as his Father was, with the Earls of *Savoy*.
1322	9	*Guigne* VI. ſon of *John*, taken Priſoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoy*, *An.* 1329. and at laſt ſlain, *An.* 1342.
1342	10	*Humbert* II. the younger ſon of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the ſixth,

the laſt *Daulphin* of *Viennois*, who being ſurcharged with wars by *Ame* (or *Amade*) Earl of *Savoy*, entred into the Order of *Dominican* Friers at *Lyons*: ſelling his Country at a ſmall rate to *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, upon condition, that the eldeſt Son of *France* ſhould be entituled alwaies *Daulphin* of *Viennois*; and quarter the Arms of *Daulphin* with thoſe of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted, and *Charles*, the Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the title and eſtate in the very year of the ſurrendry. Since this time, the eldeſt Son of *France* is called generally the *Daulphin* of *France*, ſometimes the *Daulphin* only, by way of eminency; and many times the *Prince Daulphin*, to difference him from the *Daulphin* (or *Count-Daulphin*) of *Auvergn*, and perhaps ſome others. A title ſo annexed unto them, that it is not uſually laid by on the acceſſion of a greater or ſuperior dignity: inſomuch as *Francis* the eldeſt Son of *Henry* the ſecond, (whom he ſucceeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots* in the right of *Mary* his wife, was by the *French* commonly called *Le Roy Daulphin*, or the *King Daulphin*. Nor have they the bare title of this Country only, but the command, profits, and poſſeſſion of it; ſending their own *Governors* thereunto; who by an antient indulgence, have the greateſt priviledges, (conferring all Offices within the Province) of any Governors of *France*.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Dolphin hauriant, *Or*.

19. LABRESSE.

LABRESSE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Savoy*; on the Weſt, with *Lionois*; on the North, with *Charolois* in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, and ſome part of the *Franche County*; and on the South, with *Daulphine*. The reaſon of the name I find not. The Country is very fruitful and pleaſant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of *Soaſne* and *Rhoſne*, with which very well watered. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Bellay*, a Biſhops See. 2. *Bourg*, (for diſtinction ſake called *Bourg en Breſſe*) a Town ſo well fenced, and fortified with ſo ſtrong a Citadel for command of the Countrey, that it was thought little inferior

Lionois.

rior to the two impregnable Fortreſſes of St *Katharines* and *Montmelian* in *Savoy*. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earneſtly laboured for by the Duke of *Biron*, then Governour of *Burgundy*, after a repulſe on the like-ſute for that of St.*Katherine*: but being ſuſpected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoy*, at that time on ill terms with King *Henry* the 4th, it was alſo denyed him; which drew him into diſcontent, and thereby to his fatal ruine. Afterwards, during the minority of *Lewis* the 13th demoliſhed, by eſpecial order of the Councel of *France*, for fear of being ſurpriſed by the Duke of *Savoy* during thoſe confuſions. It was of old time called the *Forum Secuſianorum* from the *Secuſiani*, the antient inhabitants of this tract. 3. *Caſtillon*. 4. *Mont-Real*. 5. *Bugey*. 6. *Veromen*, of which nothing obſervable.

This little Province, being antiently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, had its own Earls, *Proprietary* Lords hereof; who held it till the year 1285. at what time *Sibil*, the Daughter and Heir of *Ulric*, Earl of *Breſſe* and *Baugie*, (or *Baſgee*, as ſome Writers call it) conveyed the Eſtate in marriage to *Ame* or *Amadee*, the 4th of that name, Earl of *Savoy*. In which houſe it continued till the year 1600, and then ſurrendred by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to King *Henry* the 4th, to ſilence the pretences which that King had made unto the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, and put an end unto the war then begun about it; the politick Duke chooſing rather to part with an Eſtate on this ſide of the Mountains, than to give that active King occaſion to look into *Italy*; to which *Savoy* muſt have been a Thorow-fair, *Piemont* an ordinary Paſs; and where no end could be expected, but the loſs of all. Surrendred then it was on good reaſon of State, and upon that Surrendry united and incorporated with the Crown of *France*, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digion*, as it ſtill continueth.

Arms hereof are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermines*, armed and Langued, *Or*.

20. *LIONOIS*.

THE Country of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Breſſe*; on the Weſt, with *Beaujolois Forreſt* and *Auvergn*; on the North, with *Burgundy* Dutchy; and on the South, with *Daulphin*, and a part of *Languedoc*. So called from *Lions* the chief City, and under that title made an Earldom by *Charles* the *Groſſe*, in the *cantoning* and diſmembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*: The Earldom containing at that time, not only *Lionois* it ſelf, but alſo *Forreſt* and *Beaujolois*, before deſcribed. The Earls hereof were at firſt only *Provincial* Governours, but under the diſtractions of the *German* Empire they ſhifted for themſelves, and became *hereditary*; but long it held not in one hand. For firſt, the Earldom of *Forreſt*, and the Lordſhip or Signeury of *Beaujeu* being taken out of it, about the year 990. the reſt of the Eſtate fell in ſome tract of time to the Biſhops and Church of *Lions*, but under the Soveraignty of the *French Kings*, as *Lords Paramount* of it.

The places in it of moſt note are, 1. *Maſcon*, (*Matiſconum*) a Biſhops See, ſituate on the *Soaſne*, antiently a diſtinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*: one of the Earls hereof called *William*, flouriſhing in the year 1000 or thereabouts; whoſe ſon and ſucceſſor named *Otho*, married *Elizabeth* daughter of *Humbert* the firſt Earl of *Maurienne* (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of *Savoy*.) Continuing for ſome ages after in this poſterity, it was purchaſed of *William* the laſt Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Lewis* the 9th, and afterwards ſubjected to the Juriſdicton and Court of *Lions*, as it ſtill continueth. 2. *Eſchalas*, on the *Rhoſne*, on the South of *Lions*, oppoſite to *Vienne*, the chief City of the Lower *Daulphin*. 3. *Dandilli*. 4. *Francheville*. 5. *Chaumont*, and 6. *Lebrelle*, all ſomewhat Weſtward of that River, but not much obſervable. 7. *Lions* it ſelf, pleaſantly ſeated on the confluence of the *Soaſne* and the *Rhoſne*, antiently a *Roman* Colony, (teſtified by many old Inſcriptions) and honored with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of *France* to *Auguſtus Cæſar*: now the moſt famous Mart of *France*, and an Univerſity; by our *Latin* Writers called *Lugdunum*. Theſe Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11th, for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Julio* the ſecond had excommunicated *Lewis* the 12th, he commanded by his Apoſtolical authority that they ſhould be returned to *Geneva* again; but therein his pleaſure was never obeyed: the Marts continuing ſtill at *LIONS*, as a place more convenient and capacious of that great reſort of *French*, *Dutch*, and *Italian* Merchants, which frequent the ſame. As for the *Univerſity*, queſtionleſſe it is very antient; being a ſeat of learning in the time of *Cajus Caligula*. For in thoſe times before an Altar conſecrated to *Auguſtus Cæſar* in the Temple ſpoken of before, this *Caligula* did inſtitute ſome exerciſes of the *Greek* and *Roman* eloquence: the *Victor* to be honoured according to his merit; the *vanquiſhed* either to be *ferulated*, or with their own tongues to blot and expunge their writings; or to be drowned in the River adjoyning. Hence that of *Juvenal*, *Ut Lugdunenſem* Rhetor *dicturus ad Aram*, applied to dangerous undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* firſt coming into *Gaule*, it was the chief City of the *Hedui* and *Secuſiani*; afterwards the *Metropolis* of *Lugdunenſis Prima*. The Archbiſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *France*; and was ſo in the time of S. *Irenæus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive times, who was Biſhop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick* Barbaroſſa, Emperor of *Germany*: who being a devout and conſcientious man, ſenſible of the many errors and corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, diſtributed the greateſt parts of his riches amongſt the poor, and betook himſelf to meditation and ſtudying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of *CHRISTS* body, the ſubſtraction of the Cup in the bleſſed Sacrament, in matter of *Purgatory*, the Supremacy, adoration of Images, Invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment, he held opinions contrary unto thoſe of *Rome*, and little different from thoſe of the preſent *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denied, but that amongſt ſome good Wheat there were many *Tares*, which gave the juſter colour to their Adverſaries to exclaim againſt them. Being much followed, in regard of his piety and charity; he got unto himſelf and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the *Poor men of Lions*, given in deriſion and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenſes*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name oppoſed, and writ againſt by Frier *Thomas* of *Walden*. The *French*, according to their manner of Pronunciation, drowning the L. and changing the W. into V. called them commonly *Vaudois*; by which name they occurre in the ſtories of that State and Language. But *Lions* proving no ſafe place for them, they retired into the more deſert parts of *Languedoc*, and ſpreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the name of *Albygenſes*, as before was ſaid. Supported by the two laſt Earls of *Tholouſe*, they became very maſterful and Inſolent: Inſomuch, that they murdered *Trincanel* their *Viſcount* in *Beziers*, and daſhed out the teeth of their Biſhop, having taken Sanctuary in S. *Magdalens* Church, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high outrage, the divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Croiſadas*, under the conduct of the *French* Kings, and many other noble Adventurers; who ſacrificed them in the ſelf-ſame Church, wherein they had ſpilled the blood of others. About the year 1250, after a long and bloody War, they were almoſt rooted out of that Country alſo. The remnants of them being bettered by this affliction, betook themſelves unto the mountains lying betwixt *Daulphine*, *Provence*, *Piemont*, and *Savoy*, where they lived a godly and laborious life, painfully tilling the ground, re-building Villages, which formerly had been deſtroyed by War; teaching the very Rocks to yield good paſturage to their Cattel: inſomuch, as places which before their coming thither ſcarce yielded four Crowns yearly, were made worth 350 Crowns a year, by their care and induſtry. *Laſciviouſneſſe* in ſpeech they uſed not; *Blaſphemy* they abhorred, nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongſt them; as their very enemies could not but confeſſe, when they were afterward in troubles. The Crimes alledged againſt them were, That when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no addreſſe unto the *Saints*; nor bowed before ſuch *Croſſes* as were erected in the highways, and ſtreets of Towns. Great crimes aſſuredly, when greater could not be produced. And ſo they lived, neither embracing the *Popes doctrines*, nor ſubmitting unto his *Supremacy*, for the ſpace of 300 years, untouched, unqueſtioned; even till the later end of the reign of King *Francis* the firſt. But then the Perſecution raging againſt the *Lutherans*, they were accuſed, condemned, and barbarouſly murdered, in the *Maſſacres* of *Merindol*, and *Chabriers* before mentioned. After which time, joyning themſelves with the reſt of the *Proteſtant* party, they loſt the name of *Vaudois*, by which called before; and paſſe in the account of the *Reformed* Churches of *France*, enjoying the ſame priviledges and freedom of Conſcience, as others of the *Reformed* do. And though I look not on theſe men and their Congregations, as founders of the *Proteſtant* Church, or of the ſame Church with them, as I ſee ſome do: yet I behold them as *Aſſertors* of ſome doctrinal truths, and profeſſed Enemies of the errours and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predeceſſors of the preſent *Proteſtant*.

The old Inhabitants of this tract were a part of the *Hedui*, that nation overſpreading not this Country only, but *Bourbonois*, with the whole Dukedom of *Burgundy*. And of theſe *Hedui*, the *Inſubres* are thought by ſome learned men to have been a Tribe; who paſſing over the *Alpes* together with the *Senones*, and other of the *Gallick* Nations, poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Italy* which now make up the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoyning. The reſidue of the ſtory which concerns this Country, we have had before.

21. The Dukedom of BURGUNDY.

THE *Dukedom* of BURGUNDY hath on the Eaſt, the *French County*, and ſome parts of *Savoy*; on the Weſt, *Bourbonois*; on the North, *Campagne*; on the South, *La Breſſe*, *Lionois*, and ſome part of *Beaujoulois*. A Province ſo well watered with pleaſant and profitable Rivers, that as Qu. *Katharine de Medices* uſed to ſay of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers then all *Europe*; ſo we may ſay of this Country, That it had more fine Riverets then all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1. *Armacan*. 2. *Serum*. 3. *Cury*. 4. *Torney*. 5. *Valence*. 6. *Dove*. 7. *Crue*. 8. *Sein*. 9. *Louche*, and 10. *Soaſne*, (the *Araris* of the antient Writers) this laſt dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet notwithſtanding this great plenty of waters, the Country generally is leſſe fruitful then the reſt of *France*; hardly yielding ſufficient for its own inhabitants, except wines only.

Chief Cities in it, are, 1. *Dijon*, the birth place of S. *Bernard*, ſeated upon the *Soaſne* and *L'ouche*, in a champian Country: the Town large, populous, and of much reſort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and *Parliamentary* for the Provinces; a *Parliament* being here erected, *An.* 1476. Well fortified on all parts, but ſpecially defended by a ſtrong Caſtle called *Talente*, ſituate on an hill adjoyning. It is called *Divio* in the *Latin*, the Biſhop hereof *Divionenſis*. 3. *Chalons*, (in *Latin*, *Caballinum*) called for diſtinctions ſake, *Chalons* upon *Soaſne*, to difference it from *Chalons* upon *Marn*, in *Champagne*: a Biſhops See alſo, as the other is; and gives name to that noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four antient families of *Burgundy*; the other three

Burgundy Dukedom.

Vienne, *Neufchatel*, and *Virgie*. 3. *Autun*, by *Ptolomy* called *Auguſtodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*, now a Biſhops See: heretofore the chief of all the Country, ſome marks of the old ſplendour being ſtill to be ſeen: now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with ſome fair Churches, which the ruines of time have not yet demoliſhed. 4. *Beaulne*, ſeated on the *Burſoize*, in the beſt and richeſt ſoil of all *Burgundie*, and yielding the beſt Wines in *France*: remarkable for an Hoſpital of ſo fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in *Europe*; and an impregnable Caſtle built by King *Lewis* the 12th. 5. *Alize*; now a ſmall Village, but of great name and power in the time of *Cæſar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortreſs of *Vercingetorix*, beſieged herein by the ſaid *Cæſar*; but ſo beſieged, that he had 70000 men in the Town for defence of the place; and an Army of 300000 *Galls* at the back of *Cæſar*, to relieve their fellows. So that he was fain to fortifie his Camp with two walls; the one againſt them within the City, and the other againſt them without: which done, he kept ſuch diligent watch and ward on both ſides, that the beſieged heard ſooner of the diſcomfiture of their Friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatal news being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cæſar*, then ſitting in his Chair of State, diſarmed hmſelf, took off his Horſes capariſons, and laying all upon the ground, ſat down at *Cæſars* feet, and became his priſoner. 6. *Tournus*, encompaſſed with the *Soaſne*. 7. *Semur*, conſiſting of three parts, each of them ſeverally walled, and ſtrongly fortified. 8. *Verdun*. 9. *Nayz*. 10. St. *Ligier*, famous for medecinal Bathes. 11. *Noyers*, on the borders towards *Campagne*. 12. *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Antiſiodorum*; of moſt note for the Council held here, *Anno* 627. the Country about which is called *Auxerrois*, and was an Earldom of it ſelf. The title and poſſeſſion of that *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who was the third Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Conſtantinople*; to whom it came in marriage with his firſt Wife *Agnes*, the Daughter of the laſt Earl of the former Race. On the failer of which Houſe, it fell unto that of *Chalons*, by the marriage of *Iſabel* Neece of the ſaid *Peter* by his Brother *Robert*, to *John* of *Chalons* Earl of *Burgundy*: to whom ſucceeded *John de Chalons* his eldeſt Son by that *Venter* (his ſecond Wife) and finally was ſold by *John* of *Chalons*, great Grandchild of the ſaid *John* Earl of *Burgundy*, to *Charles* the fifth of *France*, *Anno* 1370; by whom united to the Crown, ſubjected to the Parliament of *Paris*; and made part of *Champagne*. Here is alſo within this Country the great and famous Monaſtery of *Ciſteaux*, the Mother of ſo many Religious Houſes, diſperſed up and down in *Europe*, from hence denominated, and ſubject to the diſcipline and rules thereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom (on the South parts of it) ſtands the Earldom of *CHAROLLOIS*, heretofore the title of the eldeſt Son of the Dukes of *Burgundy*; ſo called from *Charolles*, the chief Town hereof, ſituate in the borders of it, towards *La Breſſe*: ſeiſed upon, with the reſt of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* the 11th, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the *Warlike*: reſtored again to *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the ſecond, of *France*, on a Peace made at *Cambray*; and ſubjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Eſtate. So that neither the Governour of the Dukedom for the *French* King, nor the *Parliament* of *Digion*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lyon paſſant regardant *Or*, armed *Azure*.

The antient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the moſt potent Nations of all *Gaule*: who called in the *Romans*, to aid them in their quarrels againſt the *Squani* and *Arverni*, made them all ſubject unto *Rome*. In the proſperity whereof they made up the Province of *Lugdunenſis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the Metropolis or principal City. Afterwards in the diviſion of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundy*, by *Charles* the Bald; this part thereof being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, was cantoned into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Autun*, *Lions*, and *Maſcon*: whereof the three firſt laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the minority of *Charles* the *Simple*, were given unto his Brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*) under the ſtile and title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The iſſue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Son of *Hugh Capet* King of *France*: and the male iſſue failing of that Line alſo, it was involved partly by eſcheat for want of heirs male, and partly in the right and title of the heir General, to King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Robert* the third, who with conſent of *Charles* his eldeſt Son, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, gave it unto his ſecond Son *Philip*, (more worthily ſurnamed the *Hardie*) together with the marriage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An Argument of no great wiſdom, as was judiciouſly obſerved by King *Lewis* the 11th. For, by this means, thoſe great Eſtates being united in one perſon, and afterwards theſe Eſtates improved by as proſperous marriages; this Houſe of *Burgundy* grew formidable to the Kings themſelves: who never left practiſing againſt it, til they had brought it to ruine; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Eſtate from which at at firſt it was diſmembred.

The Dukes of *Burgundy*.

890 1 *Richard* of *Saxonie*, the ſecond Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph* King of *France*.

938 2 *Gilbert* the ſecond Son of *Richard*.

264 3 *Otho* Son of *Hugh* Earl of *Paris*, ſurnamed the *Great*, and Brother of *Hugh Capet* King of *France*; was Duke of *Burgundy*, in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.

Burgundy County.

976 4 *Henry*, the Brother of *Otho*.

1001 5 *Robert*, King of *France*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle *Henry*.

1004 6 *Robert* II. Son of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.

1075 7 *Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert* by his Son *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.

1097 8 *Odo*, or *Otho* II. Brother of *Hugh*.

1102 9 *Hugh* II. Son of *Otho* the ſecond.

1124 10 *Odes*, or *Otho* III. Son of *Hugh* the ſecond.

1165 11 *Hugh* III. the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the firſt, in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*.

1192 12 *Odes*, or *Otho* IV. Son of *Hugh* the third.

1218 13 *Hugh* IV. an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the ninth in the *Holy-Land*.

1273 14 *Robert* III. Son of *Hugh* the fourth, which *Robert* was the Father of *Margaret*, the Wife of *Lewis Hutin* King of *France* and *Navarre*; and of *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the *Hardie*, after, Duke of *Burgundy*.

1308 15 *Hugh* V. Son of *Robert* the third.

1315 16 *Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundy* alſo in right of his Wife.

1349 17 *Philip*, the Grand-child of *Eudes* by his only Son *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy* by deſcent (who if he had lived, had been alſo Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, in right of *Margaret* his Wife.) But dying young and without iſſue, he was ſucceeded in all his titles and eſtates by

1363 18 *Philip* II. ſurnamed the *Hardy*, Son of *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the third, by King *John* his Father, with the conſent of *Charles* the fifth his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of *Burgundy*, and married *Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, (and conſequently Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundy*) the Widow of his Predeceſſors.

1404 19 *John* ſurnamed the *Proud*, Son of *Philip* the ſecond, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.

1419 20 *Philip* III. ſurnamed the *Good*, who added moſt of the *Netherlands* to his Eſtate.

1467 21 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Earl of *Caralois*, Son of *Philip* the *Good*. After whoſe death, ſlain by the *Switzers*, at the battel of *Nancie*, *Lewis* the eleventh ſeized upon this Dukedom, *Anno* 1476. pretending an Eſcheat thereof, for want of *Heirs males*; and ſo uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*: as by like colour of Eſcheat, King *John* had formerly entred on it, and given it to *Philip* his younger Son, to the prejudice of the Earls of *Eureux* deſcended from the Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*, and of *Margaret* his Wife, the elder Siſter of the Mother of the ſaid King *John*.

Of the great wealth and potency of theſe laſt Dukes of *Burgundy*, we ſhall ſpeak further when we come to the deſcription of *Belgium*: the acceſſion whereof to their Eſtates, made them equal to moſt Kings in *Chriſtendom*. But for their *Arms*, which properly belonged to them as Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were Bendwiſe of *Or* and *Azure*, a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is uſually marſhalled in the Scutchion of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their poſſeſſion. The reaſons of which are probably (for I go but by gueſs) partly becauſe this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of his Title to the *Dukedom* it ſelf, in right of which he holdeth ſuch a great Eſtate.

22. The County of *BURGUNDY*.

THe County of *BURGUNDY* hath on the Eaſt the Mountain *Jour*, which parts it from *Switzerland*; on the Weſt, the *Dutchie* of *Burgundy*, from which divided by the *Soaſne*; on the North branch of the Mountain *Vaugne*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorreine*; on the South, *La Breſſe*. It is reckoned to be 90 miles in length, about 60 in bredth: and with the Provinces of *Daulphine*, *La Breſſe*, and *Provence*, made up the *Dukedom* of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*: on the Eaſtern ſide of which it is wholly ſituate. This part thereof, now generally called the *Frenche Comtè*, or the *Free County*, becauſe not under the command of the *French* Kings; but living in a more free Eſtate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The Country in ſome parts very mountainous, but thoſe Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards; and having in recompence of a little barrenneſs, an intermixture of moſt pleaſing and fruitful Vallies: ſwelling with plenty of all natural commodities uſeful unto the life of man; and for the variety of freſh ſtreams, and delightful Riverets, inferior only to the *Dutchy*.

The principal Towns and Cities of it, are, 1. *Beſanſon*, called by *Cæſar*, *Veſontio*, then the chief City of the *Squani*, as afterwards the *Metropolis* of the Province, entituled, *Maxima Sequanorum*, by conſequence an Archbiſhops See. Seated betwixt two Mountains, on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almoſt encompaſſed; ſuch artificial Fortifications being added to it, as make it very

ſtrong

Burgundy County.

ſtrong both by Art and Nature. But this is an Imperial City, not ſubject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundy*: honoured with a ſmall Univerſity founded here, *Anno* 1540. by Pope *Julio* the ſecond, and *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Dole*, ſeated on the River *Doux*; for riches, ſtrength, and beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which it is the Parliament City, and conſequently of moſt reſort for diſpatch of buſineſs. Antiently it was an Univerſity for the ſtudy of the *Civil Laws*; but now the Univerſity is devoured by a *Colledge* of *Jeſuits*: who fearing leſt the Doctrine of the *Reformed* Churches might creep in amongſt the people, not onely have debarred them the uſe of the *Proteſtants* Books; but have expreſly forbid them to talk of GOD, either in a good ſort or in a bad. 3. *Salins*, ſo called from its ſalt Fountains, out of which came the greateſt part of the Earls *Revenue*; in which reſpect, or that it was the title of *Otho*, the Son of *Fredrick Barbaroſſa*, before he did attain the Earldom: the Earl of *Burgundy* ſince that time, and the Emperours of *Germany* in their right, retain the name of Lords of *Salines* in their uſual ſtile. A City honoured for a while with the ſeat of the Parliament, removed hither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, at ſuch time as he held this Country; beholding to him (being a wiſe and politick Prince) for many wholſom Ordinances, ſtill obſerved amongſt them. 4. *Poligni*, the *Bailliage* of the *Lower*; as 5. *Veſcal* is of the *Higher Burgundy*. 6. *Arboiſe*, noted for the beſt Wines; and 7. *Laxoal*, for the medicinal Baths. 8. *Nazareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle; the ordinary ſeat and retreat from buſineſs of the firſt Princes of *Orange*, of the houſe of *Chalons*, who had great poſſeſſions in this Country. 9. *Gray*, and 10. *Chaſtel-Chalon*. 11. *Quingey*. 12. *Orgelet*. Here is alſo the great and famous Abby of *Clugny*, near the Town of *Beaum*; out of which ſo many Monaſteries in the Weſtern Church had their firſt Original.

The old Inhabitants of this County were the *Sequani*, a potent name, contending with the *Hedui* and *Auverni* for the Soveraignty of *Gaul*, till the ſtrife was ended by the *Romans*; under whom it made together with *Switzerland*, the Province of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the *Burgundians*; and by *Rodolph* the laſt King of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundy*, was given to *Conrade* the ſecond Emperour of *Germany*. After that reckoned as a part of the *German* Empire, and governed by ſuch Earls or *Provincial* Officers as thoſe Emperours ſent hither. *Otho* of *Flanders*, Son to a Siſter of the Emperour *Conrade*, was the firſt that held it as *Proprietary*: the other three whom *Paradine* ſet before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundy*, being meerly *Official*. It was firſt united to the *Dutchy* by the marriage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Counteſs. But no iſſue coming of this bed, it fell into the Houſe of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders*, unto *Philip* the *Hardy*, the firſt Duke thereof, of the Royal Race of *Valois*, *Anno* 1369. *Philip* the Grand-child of this *Philip*, united moſt of the *Belgick* Provinces unto his Eſtate: after whoſe death, and the death of *Charles* his Son at the battel of *Nancy*; the *Dutchy* was ſurprized by King *Lewis* the eleventh, as holden of the Crown of *France*, eſcheated to him for want of Heirs males. But the *County*, holden of the Empire, though ſubdued alſo by this *Lewis*, was reſtored again to *Mary*, the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*; continuing hitherto in her iſſue, as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

The Earls of *Burgundy*.

1001 1. *Otho Guillaume*, the firſt Earl of *Burgundy*, by the power and aid of *Robert* King of *France*.

1118 2. *Reinald*, Couſin and Heir of *Otho*.

1157 3. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperour, in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, Daughter of Earl *Reinald*, was Earl of *Burgundy*.

1183 4. *Otho*, the youngeſt Son of *Frederick*.

1200 5. *Otho* II. *Duke* of *Meranis*, part of the Province of *Tirol* in *Germany*, was Earl of *Burgundy* in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the firſt.

1208 6. *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalons*, next Heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, the ſecond Daughter of *Otho* the firſt, and Siſter of *Beatrix*, acknowledged by his faction there for Earl of *Burgundy*, in the life of *Otho* the ſecond, whom he diſpoſſeſſed; and left the ſame unto his Son, to the prejudice of *Alice* the Daughter of *Otho*.

1234 7. *John*, Son of *Stephen de Chalons*.

1269 8. *Hugh* the Son of *John*, married to *Alice* Daughter of *Otho* of *Merain*, ſo getting in that pretention alſo.

1270 9. *Othelin*, the Son of *Hugh*; Earl of *Artois* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artois*.

1315 10. *Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*; Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Othelin*.

1331 11. *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Husband of *Joan* of *France*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Philip* the *Long*, and of *Joan* the Counteſs.

1349 12. *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Grand-child of *Eudes*, and of *Joan* his Wife, by their Son *Philip*.

1361 13. *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, and ſecond Daughter of *Philip* the *Long*, *French Iſlands.*

and of *Joan* the Counteſs, was Counteſs of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, after the death of her Couſin *Philip*.

14 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders* by his Father, and of *Burgundy* and *Artois* by his Mother.

1383 15 *Philip* II. called the *Hardie*, Duke of *Burgundy* by the gift of King *John* his Father, with the conſent and approbation of his Brother *Charles* the fifth; was Earl of *Burgundy*, *Flanders*, and *Artois*, as alſo Duke of *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in the right of *Margaret* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*.

1404 16 *Antony* the *Proud*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*; his younger Brother *Philip* ſucceeding in the Earldoms of *Nevers* and *Rethel*.

1419 17 *Philip* III. called the *Good*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.

1467 18 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.

1476 19 *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*, maried to *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Fredrick* the third, Emperour of *Germany*, in which honour he ſucceeded his Father.

1482 20 *Philip* IV. Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, King of *Caſtile*, in right of his Wife *Joan*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel* King of *Caſtile*, &c.

1506 21 *Charles*, the Son of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of *Germany*, by the name of *Charles* the fifth.

1558 22 *Philip* V. of *Burgundy*, and the ſecond of *Spain*.

33 *Philip* VI. of *Burgundy*, and the third of *Spain*.

24 *Philip* VII. of *Burgundy*, and the IV. of *Spain*; in whom reſteth the poſſeſſion of the County of *Burgundy*, and the Earldom of *Charalois*: herein not troubled by the *French* upon the death of *Charles* the *Warlike*, partly becauſe it was accompted as a Fief of the Empire; but principally for fear of giving offence to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, upon whom it bordereth; jealous enough already of the greatneſs and power of *France*, and ſo not willing to admit ſuch a potent Neighbour.

The Arms of this Earldom are *Azure*, a Lyou rampant *Or*, Seme of Billets *Argent*.

23. The ISLANDS in the *AQUITAIN* and *GALLICK OCEAN*.

HAving thus took a view of the ſeveral Provinces, within the *Continent* of *France*, let us next look upon the *ISLANDS* which belong unto it; diſperſed in the *Mediterranean* Seas, and the Weſtern Ocean. Thoſe in the *Mediterranean* Sea, are of little note, as the Iſles of *Eres*, and 2. *Pomegues*, lying againſt *Provence*; *Maguelone*, lying againſt *Languedoc*; and 4. *L' Anguellade*, betwixt both, at the mouth of the *Rhoſne*: of which there is nothing to be ſaid, but that thoſe of *Eres* are thought to be the *Stoechades* of *Ptolomy*, and his *Blaſcon*, to be *Anguillade*. And of as little note in the *Weſtern Ocean*, are *Belle Iſle*, againſt *Vannes* in *Bretagne*; the *Iſle de Dieu*, having in it two or three good Villages; and *Marmoſtier*, plentiful in Salt, and beautified with a Monaſtery called the *White Abbe*. Of which three laſt, that of *Belle Iſle*, hath been of late ſo fortified by Art, as of old by Nature, that it is thought to be impregnable; the Abby of the laſt, endowed with ſo plentiful a Revenue that it was thought a competent preferment for *Anthonine* of *Burbon*, baſe Brother to King *Henry* the fourth, to be made Lord Abbot of the ſame. Thoſe of moſt note are, 1. *Oleron*, 2. *Ree*, on the Coaſt of *Aquitain*; and thoſe of 3. *Jarſey*, 4. *Garnſey*, 5. *Sarke*, and 6. *Alderney*, on the ſhores of *Normandy*: Of which, the four laſt are under the Kings of *England*, the reſt poſſeſſed by the *French*.

1. *OLERON*, is an Iſland ſituate over againſt the Province of *Xaintoigne*, and South unto the Iſle of *Ree*, from which little diſtant. It is the biggeſt of the two, and makes yearly very great quantity of Salt, wherewith moſt of the Provinces on the *Weſtern Ocean* uſe to be furniſhed. But it is eaſie of acceſs, and not very defenſible, which makes it of leſs note both in antient and modern ſtories. The principal Town of it is called *Oleron*, by the name of the Iſland. One thing there is, for which indeed this Iſland is of ſpecial fame, and that is, that the *Marine* Laws, which for near 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Chriſtian World, which frequent the Ocean, (the *Rhodian* Laws being antiquated and worn out of uſe) for regulating of Sea Affairs, and deciding of Maritime Controverſies, were declared and eſtabliſhed here; and from hence called the *Laws* of *Oleron*. And here they were declared and eſtabliſhed by King *Richard* the firſt of *England*, as Lord Paramount of the Seas, immediately on his return from the *Holy-Land*: this Iſland being then in his poſſeſſion, as a Member of his Dukedom of *Aquitain*. *Quæ quidem Leges & Statuta per Dominum* Richardum, *quondam Regem* Angliæ, *in reditu à* Terra Sancta, *correcta fuerant, interpretata, delarata, & in Inſula de* Oleron *publicata & nominata in* Gallica *Lingua* La Loy d' Oleron, &c. ſaith an old Record which I find cited in a M.S. Diſcourſe of my late learned Friend Sir *John Burroughs* (once Keeper of Records in the Tower of *London*, but afterwards Principal King of Arms, by the name of *Garter*) entituled, *The Soveraiginty of* Britiſh *Seas*. So powerful were the Kings of *England* in the former times, as to give Laws to all that traded on the Ocean.

2. The

French Iſlands.

2. The Iſle of *RE*, is ſituate over againſt *Rochel*; to which it ſerved for an Outwork, on that ſide threof. It is in length ten *Engliſh* mile, and about half as much in breadth, well fortified with deep mariſhes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits everywhere intermingled, add a very great ſtrength. Chief places in it, are, 1. *La Butte de Mont.* 2. St. *John de Mons.* 3. St. *Hillary.* 4. St. *Martins*, the largeſt and ſtrongeſt of them all, from whence the whole Iſland had ſometimes been called St. *Martins.* After the taking of this Town by *Lewis* the 13th, *Anno* 1622. (The Duke of *Soubize* then commanding in it for thoſe of *Rochel*) it was very well fortified; and ſince made unfortunately famous for defeat of the *Engliſh* Forces under the command of *George* Duke of *Buckingham*, ſent thither to recover the Town and Iſland, on the inſtigation of *Soubize*, who before had loſt it, *Anno* 1627.

3. *JARSEY*, by *Antonine* called *Caſarea*, is ſituate about ten miles from the coaſt of *Normandy*, within the view and proſpect of the Church of *Conſtance*, part of which *Dioceſe* it was: in length containing 11 miles, 6 in breadth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitfull of Corn, whereof they have not only enough for themſelves, but ſome over-plus to barter at St. *Malos*, with the *Spaniſh* Merchants: and of an Air not very much diſpoſed to diſeaſes, unleſſe it be an Ague in the end of Harveſt, which they call *Les Settembres.* The Country ſtands much upon incloſures, the hedges of the ground well ſtored with apples, and thoſe apples making good ſtore of *Sider*, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleaſant Rivulets, and good ſtore of Fiſhponds, yielding a Carp for taſte and largeneſſe inferior unto none in *Europe*, except thoſe of *Gernſey*; which generally are ſomewhat bigger, but not better reliſhed. The people for the moſt part, more inclinable to husbandry, then to trades or merchandiſe; and therein differing very much from thoſe of *Gernſey*, who are more for *merchandize* than *tillage.* It containeth in it 12 Pariſhes, or Villages, having Churches in them, beſides the Manſions of the *Signeurs*, and chief men of the Country. The principal is St *Hilaries*, where is the *Cohu*, or *Court of Juſtice* for all the Iſland. It is about the bigneſſe of an ordinary Market Town in *England*; ſituate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one ſide with a ſmall Block-houſe called *Mount St. Aubin*; but on that ſide which is next the Town with a very ſtrong Caſtle called Fort *Elizabeth*, ſituate upon craggy Rocks, and encompaſſed with two armes of the Sea: ſo named from Queen *Elizabeth*, who built it to aſſure the Iſland againſt the *French*, and furniſhed it with 30 piece of *Ordnance*, and all other neceſſaries. There is alſo on the Eaſt ſide, oppoſite to the City of *Conſtance*, high-mounted on ſteep and craggy Rocks, the ſtrong Caſtle of *Mont-Orgueil*; of great antiquity, repaired by King *Henry* the fifth; now furniſhed with 40 piece of Cannon, and made the ordinary reſidence of the Governours for the Kings of *England.*

4. On the North-weſt of *Jarſey*, lyeth the Iſland of *GERNSEY*, called *Sarnia* by *Antoninus*, in form *Triangular*, each ſide of nine miles in length. The Country is of as rich a ſoil as the other of *Jarſey*, but not ſo well cultivated and manured: the poorer people here being more given to *manufactures*, (eſpecially to the knitting of Stockings and Waſt-coats) and the rich to *Merchandize*; many of which are Maſters of good ſtout Barks, with which they traffick into *England* and other places. The whole Iſland contains ten Villages with Churches; the Principal of which St. *Peters Port*, a very neat and well-built Town, with a ſafe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the ſecuring of the Haven, capable of handſome Barks: a Market Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Plaidery* or *Court of Juſtice.* Oppoſite whereto, in a little Iſlet ſtandeth the Caſtle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimenſions of it; environed on all ſides with the Sea, having one entrance only, and that very narrow: well fortified with works of Art, and furniſhed with no leſſe then 80 pieces of Ordnance for defence of the Iſland; but chiefly to command the adjoyning Harbour, capable of 500 as good ſhips as any ſail on the Ocean. A piece of great importance to the Realm of *England*, and might prove utterly deſtructive of the trade hereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were ſtrong in ſhipping. For that cauſe made the Ordinary Seats of the *Engliſh* Governours; though of late times not ſo much honoured with the preſence of thoſe Governours, as a place of that conſequence ought to be. Pertaining unto *Gernſey* are two little Iſlets, the one called *Jet-how*, the Governours Park, wherein are ſome few Fallow Deer, and good plenty of Conies: the other named *Arme*, ſome three miles in compaſs, a dwelling heretofore of *Franciſcan Friers*; now not inhabited but by *Pheſants*, of which, amongſt the ſhrubs and buſhes, there is very good ſtore.

5. *ALDERNY*, by *Antonine* called *Arica*, by the *French*, *Aurigni*, and *Aurney*, is ſituate over againſt the Cape of the *Lexobii* in the Dukedom of *Normandy*, which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: diſtant from which but ſix miles only. Beſides many dwelling houſes ſcattered up and down, there is is one pretty Town or Village of the ſame name with the Iſland, conſiſting of about an hundred Families; and having not far off an Harbour, made in the faſhion of a *Semi-Circle*, which they call *La Crabbie.* The whole about 8 miles in compaſs, of very difficult acceſſe, by reaſon of the high rocks and precipices, which encompaſſe it on every ſide, and with a ſmall force eaſily defenſible, if thought worth attempting.

6. And ſo is alſo *SARK*, the adjoyning Iſland, being in compaſſe ſix miles; not known by any ſpecial name unto the Antients: and to ſay truth, not peopled till the fifth year of *Q. Elizabeth*; who then granted it in Fee-farm to *Helier de Carteret*, the *Signeur* of St. *Oen* in the Iſle of *Jarſey*, who from thence planted it, and made Eſtates out of it to ſeveral *Occupants*; ſo that it may contain now about 50 Houſholds. Before which time it ſerved only for a Common or Beaſts paſture to thoſe

of *Gernſey*; ſave that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chappel, for the uſe of ſuch as the ſolitarineſſe of the place invited to theſe retirements.

Theſe two laſt Iſlands, are ſubject to the Governour of *Gernſey*, all four to the Crown of *England*, holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandy*; to which they antiently belonged, and of which now the ſole remainders in the power of the *Engliſh*. Attempted often by the *French* (the two firſt I mean) ſince they ſeized on *Normandy*, but alwayes with repulſe and loſſe: the people being very affectionate to the *Engliſh* Government, under which they enjoy very ample Priviledges; which from the *French* they could not hope for. Their language is the *Norman-French* (though the better ſort of them ſpeak the *Engliſh* alſo.) their Law, the *Grand Cuſtomaire* of *Normandy*, attempered and applyed to the uſe of this people in their ſuits and buſineſs, by the *Bailiffs*, and *Juſticiars* of the two chief Iſlands. Their *Religion* for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*: the Government in *Jarſey* by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Biſhop of *Conſtance*, now to the Biſhop of *Wincheſter*; in *Gernſey*, by a mixt *Conſiſtory* of *Clergy* and *Lay-Elders*, according to the *new Model* of *Geneva*, a Government firſt introduced in both Iſlands, *Anno* 1565. being the eighth year of Queen *Elizabeth*; and aboliſhed again in *Jarſey*, *Anno* 1619. being the ſeventeenth of King *James*.

But to return again to the ſtory of *France*, thorow which we have now made our Progreſs, both by Sea and Land: It took this name from the *Frankes* or *French*, a *German* People, who in the Wane of the *Roman Empire* poſſeſſed themſelves of it: not mentioned by that name by *Caſar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, or any of the more antient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appareth, till an hundred years after the death of *Ptolomy*: the firſt expreſſe mention of them occurring in the reign of *Gallienus*; then ranſacking the coaſts of *Gaul*, and joyning with *Poſthumus* the Rebel, againſt that Emperour. Afterwards often ſpoken of in the courſe of the *Roman* ſtories, under the Empire of *Claudius*, *Probus*, *Diocletian*, and the Sons of *Conſtantine*: though only in the way of pillage and depredation. Their habitation in thoſe times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moenus*, not far from *Frankford*, where they confined upon the *Almans*, to the *German* Ocean: containing the particular Nations of the *Bructeri*, *Sicambri*, *Salii*, *Cheruſci*, *Friſii*, and *Tucteri*, beſides ſome others of leſſe note, and taking up the Countries of *Weſtphalen*, *Bergen*, *Marck*, and ſo much of *Cleve*, as lyeth on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, the Lantgravedom of *Haſſia*, the Dutchy of *Gueldres*, the Provinces of *Zutphen*, *Utrecht*, *Over-yſell*, both *Frieſlands*, and ſo much of *Holland* as lyeth on the ſame ſide of the *Rhene*. United in the name of *Frankes*, to ſhew that Libery or Freedom from the yoak of ſervitude which the *Romans* had endeavoured to impoſe upon them; and wherewithall all the Nations on the other ſide of the River, were ſuppoſed to ſuffer: Governed by *Dukes*, till the year 420. when *Pharamond* firſt took upon himſelf the name of King. *Meroveus* their third King, having diſpoſſeſſed the Sons of *Clodion*, the Son and Succeſſor of *Pharamond*, was the firſt that fixed his ſeat in *Gaul*: when ſeeing the *Romans*, on the one ſide put to the worſt by *Theodorick* and the *Gothes*; and on the other ſide, by the *Burgundians*; they paſſed over the *Rhene*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the *French* ſide of that *River*, together with the *Diſtrict* of *Colen*, *Gulick*, and the reſt of *Cleve*, then paſſing in the account of *Gaul*. His victories and fortunes were inherited by *Chilperic*, his Son and ſucceſſor, who added *Picardie*, *Campaine*, and the Iſle of *France*, to the former conqueſt; took *Paris*, and made it the ſeat of his Kingdom. Afterwards when they had fully ſeated themſelves here, and thereby opened a free paſſage to the reſt of the Country, they quickly made themſelves Maſters of all that which formerly had been poſſeſſed by the *Romans*; whom they outed of their laſt hold in *Soiſſons*, under *Clovis* their fifth King; who alſo took *Aquitain* and the parts adjoying, from the *Viſi-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Spain*: for theſe and many ſignal victories againſt the *Almans*, deſervedly ſirnamed the *Great*; but greater in ſubmitting to the Faith of CHRIST, and receiving *Baptiſme*, than by all his victories. *Childebert*, and *Clotaire* the Sons of this *Clovis* vanquiſhed the *Burgundians*, adding that kingdom to their own: as *Theodobert*, his Grandchild, King of *Mets*, or *Auſtracia*, did the Country of *Province*, reſigned unto him by *Amalaſunta*, Queen of the *Oſtro-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*; by whom it had been wreſted from the *Gothes* of *Spain*. In the perſon of *Clotaire* the ſecond, the Realm of *France* improvidently diſmembred into many Kingdoms, amongſt the Children of *Clovis* the firſt, that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Soiſſons*, *Orleans*, and *Auſtracia* (of which *Orleans* and *Auſtraſia* were of long continuance) were again united: Whoſe Succeſſor *Dagobert* the firſt, was the laſt conſiderable Prince of the *Merovignians*. After this time, the reputation of the *French* Kings of this line, began to diminiſh, ſcarce doing any thing that might ennoble and commend them to ſucceeding Ages; or leaving any monument behind them but their empty Names; which I ſhall repreſent in the following Catalogue according to their ſeveral times: firſt taking notice, that though the Kings of this firſt race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was ſaid; yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but thoſe that had their Royal ſeat in the City of *Paris*; the reſt being called only Kings of *Soiſſons*, *Mets*, or *Orleans*, according to the name of their Principal Cities. And therefore leaving thoſe to their proper places, we will here only take a ſurvey of thoſe, who paſſed in common eſtimate for the Kings of *France*.

The Kings of *France*, of the *French* or *Morovignian* Line.

449	1	*Meroveus*, Maſter of the horſe to *Clodion* the Son of *Pharamond*; from whom this line of Kings were called *Merovignians*. 10.
459	2	*Chilperic*, the Son of *Morove*. 26.
485	3	*Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*. 30.
515	4	*Childebert*, eldeſt Son of *Clovis*; his other Brethren Reigning in their ſeveral places. 45.
560	5	*Clotair*, Brother of *Childebert*, firſt King of the *Soiſſons*, afterwards ſole King of the *French*.
565	6	*Cherebert*, Son of *Clotaire*.
574	7	*Chilperic* II. King of *Soiſſons*, and Brother of *Cherebert*, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom. 14.
588	8	*Clotaire* II. Son of *Chilperic* the ſecond. 44.
632	9	*Dagobert*, Son of *Clotaire* the ſecond. 14.
645	10	*Clovis* II. Son of *Dagobert*.
663	11	*Clotaire* III. Son of *Clotair* the ſecond. 4.
667	12	*Chilperic* III. Brother of *Clotaire* the third, and Son of *Clovis* the ſecond.
680	13	*Theodorick*, Brothe of *Chilperick*. 14.
694	14	*Clovis* III. Son of *Theodorick*. 5.
698	15	*Childebert* II. Brother to *Clovis* the third. 15.
716	16	*Dagobert* II. Son of *Childebert* the ſecond. 5.
722	17	*Chilperic* IV. Son of *Childebert* the ſecond, and Brother of *Dagobert* the ſecond, oppoſed by *Charles Martel* in behalf of *Clotaire* the fourth Son of *Theodorick*, and Brother of *Childobert* the ſecond 5.
727	18	*Theodoric* II. Son of *Dagobert* the ſecond. 15.
742	19	*Chilperic* V. Son of *Theodorick* the ſecond, the laſt of the *Merovignian* Family, depoſed by *Pepin*, Son to *Charles Martel*; the Pope giving approbation to his proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel* were *Mayers* of the *Palace* to the former Kings: which *Mayers* were originally *Controllers* of the Kings Houſe, and had nothing to do with the affairs of State. But *Clotaire* the third, to eaſe himſelf and his ſucceſſors of a burden ſo weighty, made the *Mayers*, Vicars general of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their pleaſures, ſhewing themſelves only on May-day: and then being ſeated in a Chariot, adorned with flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayre*, he openeth packets, heareth and diſpatcheth forain Ambaſſadors, giveth remedy to the complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws and repealeth them. An authority ſomewhat like that of the *Præfecti Prætorio*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire, or that of the Sultans under the *Mahometan Caliphs*, and the Vice-Roy of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*. An office which had been long born by the Anceſtors of this *Martel*, ever ſince the reign of *Clotaire* the ſecond: in whoſe time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphus*, deſcended lineally from *Utilo* the ſecond Son of *Theodon* the firſt Duke, and Nephew of *Ald g rie* the laſt King of the *Boiarians*, or *Bavarians*. Which *Utilo* being a military Prince, and having done good ſervice to *Theodorick* the firſt King of *Auſtraſia*, or *Mets*, againſt the *Danes* then grievouſly infeſting the Coaſts of the *Lower-Germany*; was by him made Warden of thoſe Marches, honoured with the marriage of his Daughter *Clotilde*, and liberally endowed with fair poſſeſſions in that tract. The fourth from *Utilo* was this *Arnulph*, the firſt *Mayre* of this houſe; which office having long enjoyed, he reſigned it to *Anſegiſus* his eldeſt Son (the firſt who drew unto himſelf the Managery of the whole Eſtate) and bidding farewell to the affairs of the World became a Prieſt, and dyed Biſhop of *Mets*, Anno 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Anſegiſus* dying in the year 679. left his authority and office to his Nephew *Martin*, Son of *Ferdulphus* his younger Brother. But he being ſlain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who a while enjoyed it; *Pepin* ſurnamed the *Fat*, Son of *Anſegiſus*, revenging his Couſins death upon *Ebroinus*, and cruſhing all the oppoſite factions which were raiſed againſt him, obtained that honour for himſelf. And having much advanced the affairs of *France*, by the conqueſt of the *Sueves* and *Friſons*, dyed in the year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office, after his deceaſe, (for *Grimold* his only lawfull Son, and *Theobaldus* the Son of *Grimold*, whom he had ſucceſſively ſubſtituted in the ſame, dyed not long before him) by *Charles* the natural Son, begotten on *Albieda* his Concubine; from his *Martial* Prowes called *Martel*. Who in his time, did to the Kings of *France* great ſervice, eſpecially in routing that vaſt Army of the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in the battel of *Tours* before mentioned: thereby not only freeing *France* from the preſent danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in the poſſeſſion of the *Gothes* and *Moors*; for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*, yet would he not uſurp the Kingdom, or the title of King, though both at his diſpoſal wholly; it being his ordinary ſaying, that ***he had rather Rule a King, than be one.***

To him ſucceeded *Caroloman* his eldeſt Son, *Anno* 741. who held the office but a year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*. Who being of leſs moderation than his Father was, made ſuch uſe of his power; that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an election, confirmed by Pope *Zacharie* the firſt, he took the Kingdom to himſelf: and the unfortunate King *Chilperick* had his poll ſhaven, and was thruſt into a Monaſtery. For this inveſture both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good ſervices for the *Popes*, deſtroying on their quarrell the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them moſt of the Lands, which formerly belonged unto the *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other ſide the Popes to requite theſe Courteſies, confirmed the former in this Kingdom by their Papal Power (which then began to bear ſome ſway in the Chriſtian World:) and gave the laſt (beſides the opportunity of attaining the Weſtern Empire) the Title of *Moſt Chriſtian King*, continued ever ſince unto his Succeſſors. And to ſay truth, he well deſerved thoſe honours, had they been farr greater, by many victories obtained againſt the Enemies of the Goſpel; the ſeveral Heathens, by his means converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*; the great abilities he had of eſtate and judgement, inabling him to ſupport the Majeſty of the *Roman* Empire. For he not onely was ſole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times ſucceeding, into ſeveral petit Kingdoms and Principalities; but had added thereunto by his own proper virtue the greateſt part of *Italy*, the beſt part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonia's*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vaſt Empire falling into weak hands which were not able enough to manage it, decayed in as little time as it was in raiſing; partly by the unnatural Ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis* the *Godly*, the next Succeſſor of this *Charles*, who to make themſelves all Kings, firſt depoſed their Father, and then divided his Eſtate amongſt them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*; four of which falling at laſt into the hand of ſtrangers, ceaſed to be *French*, and paſſed into ſuch Families as proved the greateſt enemies of the Crown of *France*: partly by alienating the beſt and goodlieſt Provinces of *France* it ſelf, never again united till theſe later dayes; which made the *French* King leſs conſiderable, both at home and broad, which we have touched upon before: and partly by the weakneſs and unworthineſs of the Kings of his Race: there being no queſtion to be made, but *Lewis* the *Stammering*, *Charles* the *Bald*, the *Groſs*, and the *Simple*, would have found better *Attributes*, if they had deſerved them. For by this means, the iſſue of this brave Prince grew ſo deſpicable, in the eyes of their Subjects, that firſt *Eudes* the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*: and after, *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Eudes*; (both of the race of *Witikindus* the laſt Prince of *Saxons* (and conſequently both Aliens to the houſe of *Charles*) poſſeſſed themſelves ſeverally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depreſſed and overborn by their oppoſite factions; yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on. Who being Son of *Hugh* the *Great*, Conſtable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*, younger brother of *Eudes*, and near kinſman of *Rodolph*; never left practiſing his party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got poſſeſſion of the Regal Diadem, wherewith two Princes of his houſe have been inveſted formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this ſecond Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjuſt grounds of an uſurpation, they are theſe that follow.

The ſecond Race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Carolovinian* or *Boiarian* Line.

A. Ch.		
751	1	*Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, ſucceeded in the office of *Mayre*, Anno 741, and having got the Regal Crown, vanquiſhed the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* tributary, and cruſhed the *Saxons*. 18.
769	2	*Charles*, ſurnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Pepin*, ſubdued the Kingdoms of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the Boiarians, and *Avares*, and vanquiſhed the *Saracens* of *Spain*: Crowned Emperour of the Weſt, upon *Chriſtmas* day, by Pope *Leo* the third, Anno 800. 46.
815	3	*Lewis* the *Godly*, Son of *Charles* King of *France* and Emperour, the laſt ſole Monarch of the *French*, depoſed by his ambitious and unnatural Sons: the Empire of the *French* after his deceaſe, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, Burgundy, *Germany*, *France*, and *Lorrein*; and *France* it ſelf diſtracted into many Soveraign Eſtates, and Principalities. 26.
841	4	*Charles* II. ſurnamed *Calvus*, or the *Bald*, youngeſt Son of *Lewis*, King of *France* and Emperour, vanquiſhed by *Charles* the *Groſſe*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.
879	5	*Lewis* II. ſurnamed *Balbus*, or the *Stammering*, Son of *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France* and Emperour.
881	6	*Lewis* III. with *Caroloman* his Brother, the baſe Sons of *Lewis* the *Stammering*; Uſurpers of the Throne in the infancy of *Charles* the *Simple*.
886	7	*Charles* III. ſurnamed *Craſſus*, or the *Groſſe*, King of *Germany* and Emperour; called into *France*, and elected King, during the Minority of *Charles* the *Simple*. 5.
891	8	*Odo* or *Eudes*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, of the race of *Witinkindus* the laſt King of the *Saxons*; elected by an oppoſite Faction, outed *Charles* the *Groſſe*. 9.
900	9	*Charles* IV. ſurnamed *Simplex*, or the *Simple*, the *Poſthumus* Son of *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, reſtored unto the Throne of his Fathers: which after many troubles raiſed againſt him by *Robert* the ſecond, Earl of *Anjou* (whom he ſlew in battel) he was forced to reſigne. 27.
627	10	*Rodolph* of *Burgundy*, Son of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy* the Brother of *Eudes*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Charles* the *Simple*. 2.
929	11	*Lewis* IV. Son of *Charles* the *Simple*, ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers troubles he had lived in *England*; reſtored unto the regal Throne on the death of *Rodolph*: oppoſed therein by *Hugh* Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of King *Eudes* by his Brother *Robert* before mentioned.

958 12 *Lotharius*,

958 12 *Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis* the 4th, diſturbed in his poſſeſſion by *Hugh Capet*, the eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Hugh*, on the pretenſions of that houſe, by which at laſt he got the Kingdom.

977 13 *Lewis* V. Son of *Lotharius*, the laſt King of the houſe of *Charles* the Great. After whoſe death (being King only for a year) the Crown was ſeized on by *Hugh Capet* : *Charles* Duke of *Lorrein*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the preſent race of the Kings of *France*, founde[illegible] *Hugh Capet*, ſo called from the greatneſs of his head ; Son of *Hugh* the great, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the ſecond Earl of *Anjou* ; which *Robert* was the Brother of *Eudes*, and Couſin german of *Rodolph*, King of *France*. Who partly by his own wits, but chiefly by the weakneſs of the mungrel iſſue of *Charles* the Great, having got the Diadem ; tranſmitted it unto his poſterity : the Crown deſcending in a direct line from Father to Son, till the death of *Lewis* the tenth, ſurnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to underſtand, that the Realm of *France* was at that time ſhut up within narrower bounds, than it is at the preſent : the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poictou*, *Langnedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*; beſides thoſe Provinces which conſtituted and made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, being aliened and diſmembred from it. How they became reduced to the Crown again, will be diſcerned in the enſuing Hiſtory, and Succeſſion of

The third Race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Capetine* or *Saxon* Line.

988 1 ***Hugh Capet***, of whom ſufficiently before. 9.

997 2 *Robert*, the Son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* alſo. 34.

1031 3 *Henry* the eldeſt Son of *Robert* ; his younger Brother *Robert* being ſetled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.

1061 4 *Philip* the Son of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown. 49.

1110 5 *Lewis* VI. Son of *Philip*, ſurnamed the *Groſſe*. 28.

1138 6 *Lewis* VII. Son of *Lewis* the ſixth, an Adventurer in the War of the *Holy-Land* : as alſo was his Son and Succeſſor.

1181 7 *Philip* II. ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their ſeveral *Appendixes*, were taken from King *John* of *England* 43.

1224 8 *Lewis* VIII. Son of *Philip Auguſtus*. 3.

1227 9 *Lewis* IX. ſurnamed the *Saint*, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt*, and the *Holy-Land*. He reſtored *Guienne* to the *Engliſh*, and added the Earldoms of *Tholouſe* and *Maſcon*, to the Crown of *France*. 44.

1267 10 *Philip* III. Son of *Lewis* the ninth. 15.

1286 11 *Philip* IV. ſurnamed the *Fair*, King alſo of *Navarre* in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.

1314 12 *Lewis* X. ſurnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre* in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, *An.* 1305. After whoſe death the Kingdom of *France* was to have deſcended on *Joan* his Daughter. 2.

1315 13 *Philip* V. called the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by threats, promiſes, and other practiſes, cauſed a Law to paſs (to which he gave the name of the *Salique Law*) for diſabling Women from the Succeſſion to the Crown ; and thereby quite excluded his Brothers daughter, ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf, by his Bother *Charles* ; who following his example, excluded, on the ſame pretence, his Neeces *Joan* and *Margaret*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.

1320 14 *Charles* IV. but in true account the fifth of that name, moſt commonly called *Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis* the two laſt Kings. After whoſe death began the wars of the *Engliſh* for the Crown of *France* ; challenged by King *Edward* the third, as Son and Heir of *Iſabel*, the daughter of King *Philip* the *Fair*, and Siſter to the three laſt Kings. 7.

1328 15 *Philip* VI. ſurnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of King *Philip* the third, and Uncle to the theee laſt Kings ; ſucceeded under colour of the *Salique* Law : of which *Charles* it is ſaid, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King, yet himſelf was no King. In this Kings dayes was fought the famous Battle of *Creſcie*, *An.* 1343. in which the *French* Army conſiſted of about 70000 Souldiers ; the *Engliſh*, of 11800 only ; yet the victory fell unto the *Engliſh* : by whoſe valour fell that day *John* King of *Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 120 Knights, and 30000 of the common Souldiers. He added unto his Eſtates, the County *Palatine* of *Campagne*, the Country of *Daulphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.

1350 16 *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, in whoſe reign was fought the battle of *Poictiers*, wherein *Edward* the black Prince, (ſo called for his black acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Souldiers (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French* Army conſiſting of 40000 men : of which they ſlew beſides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Soulders, and took Priſoner King *John* himſelf, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, and 12000 Gentlemen. 14.

1364 17 *Charles*

1364 17 *Charles* V. the Son of *John* recovered all thoſe pieces (except only *Calice*) which the *Engliſh* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles* the *Wiſe*; but *Lewis* the 11th, would by no means allow him that attribute: affirming that it was but a fooliſh part to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withall the Heir of *Flanders* to wife. And ſo it proved in the Event.

1380. 18 *Charles* VI. a weak and diſtracted Prince, in whoſe reign *Henry* the fifth of *England*, called in by the faction of *Burgundy* againſt that of *Orleans*, married the Lady *Katharine* daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of *France* during the Kings life, and Heir apparant of the Kingdom. But he had firſt won the great battle of *Agincourt*, *An.* 1415. in which the *Engliſh* having an Army but of 15000. vanquiſhed an Army of the *French* conſiſting of 52000 men; of which were ſlain 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons; the *Engliſh* loſing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Souldiers. This unfortunate Prince loſt what his predeceſſor *Philip* the ſecond had taken from King *John* of *England*, and had not been reſtored by King *Lewis* the ninth.

1423 · 19 *Charles* VII. Son of *Charles* the ſixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the *Engliſh* (then divided by domeſtick diſſentions) all their Lands and Signiories in *France*, except *Calice* only.

1461 20 *Lewis* XI. Son of *Charles* the ſeventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithall a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicil*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of ſo great wants, or ſuch ſordid parcimony, that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of Accounts at *Paris* of two ſhillings for new ſleeves to his old doublet, and three half pence for liquor to greaſe his Boots.

1484 21 *Charles* VIII. Son of *Lewis* the 11th, who quickly won, and as ſoon loſt the Kingdome of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the right of the houſe of *Anjou*. By the marriage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.

1498 22 *Lewis* XII. Son of *Charles*, and Grand-ſon of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, (which *Lewis* was a younger ſon of *Charles* the fifth) ſucceeded as the next Heir-male of the houſe of *Valois*. He diſpoſſeſſed *Ludowick Sforza* of the Dutchy of *Millaine*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; but held neither long. By his marriage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predeceſſor, he confirmed that Dukedome to his Houſe; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his death the *Engliſh*, to prevent the growing greatneſs of *Spain*, began to cloſe in with the *French*, and grew into great correſpondencies with them; inſomuch that all the following Kings, untill *Lewis* the 13th, (except *Francis* the ſecond, a King of one year and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.

1515 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angoleſme*, Grand-ſon of *John* of *Angoleſme*, one of the younger Sons of the ſaid *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*; ſucceeded on the death of *Lewis* the twelfth, without iſſue male. Took Priſoner at the battle of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the fifth, with whom he held perpetual wars; he being as unwilling to endure a ſuperior, as the Emperor was to admit an equal. 32.

1547 24 *Henry* II. Son of *Francis*, recovered *Calice* from the *Engliſh*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germany* and took from him *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Ferdun*, three *Imperial* Cities; ever ſince Members of this Kingdom. 12.

1559 25 *Francis* II. Son of *Henry* the ſecond, King of the *Scots* alſo, in the right of *Mary* his Wife.

1560 26 *Charles* IX. Brother of *Francis* the ſecond, the Author of the Maſſacre at *Paris*. 14.

1574 27 *Henry* III. elected King of *Poland* in the life of his Brother, whom he ſucceeded at his death. The laſt King of the Houſe of *Valois*, ſtripped of his life and kingdom by the *Guiſian* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.

1589 28 *Henry* IV. King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendoſme*, ſucceeded as the next Heir male to *Henry* the third, in the right of the houſe of *Bourbon*, deſcended from *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a younger Son of *Lewis* the ninth. He ruined the *Holy League*, cleared *France* of the *Spaniards*, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid *La Breſſe* unto the Crown, together with the Eſtates of *Bearn* and *Baſe Navarre*; and after a ten years time of peace, was villainouſly murdered by *Ravillac*, in the ſtreets of *Paris*. 21.

1610 29 *Lewis* XIII. Son of *Henry* the fourth, the moſt abſolute King of *France* ſince the death of *Charles* the Great. For to the reduction of the ſcattered and diſmembred Provinces (the work of his many Predeceſſors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garriſons held by the *Hugonots* in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the leaſt in number) ſeized on the Dukedom of *Bar*, and ſurprized that of *Lorrein*, both which he held untill his death. 32.

1642 30 *Lewis* XIV. Son of *Lewis* the 13th, and of the Lady *Anne*, eldeſt Daughter of *Philip* the third of *Spain*, ſucceeded at the age of four years under the Government of his Mother: the 30th King of the Line of *Capet*, the 43d from *Charles* the Great, and the 6th King of *France* (or rather of the *French*) now living.

As for the *Government* of theſe Kings, it is meerly *Regal*, or, to give it the true name, *Deſpotical*; ſuch as that of a Maſter over his Servants: the Kings will going for a Law, and his *Edicts* as valid as a

Sentence of the Court of *Parliament*. *Quod Principi placuerit* Legis, *habit vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the *Roman* Emperors, as *Juſtinian* tels us in his *Inſtitutes* : and the *French* Kings, deſcending from *Charles* the Great, claim it as their own. The *Kings Edicts* alwayes ending with theſe binding words, *Car tel eſt noſtre Plaiſir*, for ſuch is our pleaſure. And though he ſometimes ſends his *Edicts* to be verified, or approved, in the *Parliament* of *Paris*; and his *Grants* and *Patents* to be ratified in the *Chamber* of *Accompts*, there holden : yet this is nothing but a meer *formality*, and point of circumſtance; thoſe *Courts* not daring to refuſe what the King propoſeth. It is *Car tel eſt noſtre Plaiſir*, which there goeth for *Law*. And by this intimation of his Royal pleaſure, doth he require ſuch *Taxes*, as the neceſſity of his affairs, the greedineſs of his Officers, or the importunity of Suters do ſuggeſt unto him. The *Patrimony* of the Crown being ſo exhauſted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes; that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garriſons, reward ſuch as deſerve well of him, and ſupport thoſe that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaſeth on the backs of his Subjects; againſt which there is no diſpute by the *common people*, though many times the *Great Princes* have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them all inſtrumental to the *publick ſlavery*, the Kings are willing to admit them to ſome part of that ſpoil, to give them ſome *exemptions* from thoſe common burdens; and to connive at the oppreſſing of their tenants, againſt all good conſcience : that being ſo *priviledged* themſelves, they may not interrupt the King in his *Regal Courſes*.

As for the *French* Parliaments, or Aſſembly of the three Eſtates, which heretofore were of great credit and renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the publick liberty, being firſt diſcontinued by reaſon of the ſharp and continual wars which the *Engliſh* made in this Kingdom for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards, they afterward became much weakened by the policy of King *Lewis* the eleventh, and the Kings ſucceeding, and finally by *Lewis* the thirteenth, were layed by for ever. For finding them to retain ſomething ſtill of their antient ſtomack, and apt enough to claſh with that abſolute Soveraignty which his Predeceſſors had attained to, he reſolved to make no more uſe of them for the time to come; inſtead whereof he ordained another kind of meetings which he called *La Aſſemble des Nattables*, that is to ſay, the Aſſembly of ſome principal men, compoſed of ſome ſelected perſons out of every Order or Eſtate (of his own nomination) whereunto ſhould be added ſome Councellor out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which being fewer in number would not breed ſuch a confuſion, as the others did, and be withall more pliant and conformable to the Kings deſire. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before mentioned, being but as ſo many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in *Weſtminſter*) are theſe that follow, that is to ſay, the Parliament, 1. of *Paris*, comprehending the Countries of *France* ſpecial, *Campagne*, *Picardie*, the Provinces and Eſtates of *Anjou*, *La Beauſſe*, *Berry*, *Poictou*, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Country of *Lionois*; 2. of *Rowen*, for the Dukedom of *Normandy*; 3. of *Renes*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*; 4. of *Bourdeaux*, for the whole Dukedom of *Aquitain*, (except only *Bearn*) with the Countries of *Limouſin* and *Perigort*; 5. of *Tholouſe*, for the Earldom of *Linguedoc* and *Quercu*; 6. of *Aix*, for the Earldom of *Province*; 7. of *Grenoble*, for the Country of *Daulphin*; and 8. of *Anjou*, for the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the ſmall Country of *La Breſs*: to which added of late times by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, the little Parliament of *Pau* for the Country of *Bearn*. Beſides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in ſome principal Cities, called Courts Preſidial, reſembling thoſe with us at *York*, and the Marches of *Wales* whilſt they continued in that power and juriſdiction, which at firſt they had. And for the better ordering of the whole eſtate (with reference eſpecially to matters military) it is divided into twelve ſeveral and diſtinct Governments, that is to ſay, 1. of the Iſle of *France*; 2. *Burgundy*; 3. *Normandy*; 4. *Guien*; 5. *Bretagne*; 6. *Champagne*; 7. *Picardy*; 8. *Languedoc*; 9. *Provence*; 10. *Daulphine*; 11. *Lionois*; and 12. *Orleanois*; for in this order they were named by the laſt King : over every one of which is placed a Governour with ſuch authority as the Lords Lieutenants had in *England* in their ſeveral Counties; all of them carrying matters with a very high hand, on the common people, and ſometimes ſtanding on terms alſo with the Kings themſelves, but inſtrumental notwithſtanding to the common ſervitude which hath been laid upon this Nation generally as before is ſaid.

The *power* of the *French* King over his Subjects being ſo *tranſcendent*, it cannot be, but that his *Forces* muſt be very great; and would be greater than they are, but that they dare not truſt the common people with the uſe of Arms, for fear they ſhould refuſe to pay the accuſtomed Taxes, or forſake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords: But for an *Eſſay* of what a *French* King is able to do in this kind; It is ſaid, that *Charles* the ninth, in Garriſons and ſeveral Armies in the Field, had 15000 Horſe, and 100000 Foot of his own Nation : beſides 50000 Horſe and Foot of *Swiſſes*, *Germans*, and others. Nor was this more then what was done by *Lewis* the thirteenth, within few years paſt, who had at once five Royal Armies in the Field in *Italy*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and the *Belgick* Provinces; and kept no fewer than 120000 fighting men in pay and action for ſome years together. Nor did this laſt King keep up the military power of *France* for Land-ſervice only at ſo high a pitch, but he alſo brought the Naval power thereof into eſtimation. For whereas the *French* Kings before his time were very weak and inconſiderable on the Seas, and had ſcarce any men of war but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations, this King became ſo ſtrong in ſhipping in a little ſpace (I doubt ſome neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rigg and arm a 1000 ſail of good Ships and upwards fit for any ſervice. But to return again to the power at land, in which the force of theſe Kings doth conſiſt eſpecially, it is conceived by ſome, and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the Field for a ſudden ſervice, no leſs than 60 Companies of *Men* and *Arms*, 20 Cornets of *Light Horſe*, and five Companies of *Harquibuſiers* on Horſe-back; which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Enſignes of *French* Foot, and 40 of *Swiſſes*; and yet leave his *Garriſons* well manned, and his *Forts* and *Frontiers* well and ſufficiently defended.

What the *Revenues* are in a State ſo ſubject to the will and pleaſure of the King, it is hard to ſay; being alſo more or leſs, as the time and their occaſions vary: according unto which the *Revenues* of this Crown have much altered. *Lewis* the eleventh, gathered one *Million* and a half of Crowns; *Francis* the firſt, brought them to 3 *Millions*; his Succeſſor *Henry* the ſecond, to ſix; *Charles* the ninth, to ſeven; *Henry* the third, to ten; afterwards they were inhanced to fifteen. And in the time of *Henry* the fourth, the Treaſurer of the Duke of *Mayenne* did not ſhame to ſay, That his Maſter had more improved the Revenue of *France*, than any King had done before him; advancing it from two to five Millions *Sterling*. A fair *Intrado*, but far ſhort of thoſe infinite ſums which are extorted from the People; whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the Kings *Exchequer*. But what need more be ſaid than that of *Lewis* the eleventh, who uſed to ſay, that *France* was a Medow which he mowed every year, and as often as he liſted: and indeed their Impoſitions cannot but be great, ſince there are no leſs than 30000 under-officers imployed to gather them. Hence I believe ſprung that wiſh of *Maximilian* the Emperour, which was, that *he* (if it were poſſible) *might be a God; and that having two Sons, the eldeſt might be a God after him, and the ſecond King of* France. And this was alſo the cauſe, that in the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the firſt, when the Emperors Herald had bid defiance to the King, from *Charles* Emperor of *Germany*, King of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Aragon*, and *Naples*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, &c. with the reſt of his Titles: The King commanded the Heralds to return the challenge from *Francis*, King of *France*; commanding them to repeat *France* as many times, as the other had petty Earldoms in his ſtile. And on the other ſide of no leſs bravery and fancy, was the ſaying of the Duke of *Alva*, who being diſſwaded by one of his Commanders from the War with the *Netherlands*, in regard of the great ſupport they were like to have from the Queen of *England*, the King of *Denmark*, the Dukes of *Saxony* and *Brunſwick*, the Earls of *Naſſaw*, &c. Tuſh man (ſaid he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our ſide, than theirs, that is to ſay, the Emperor of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Kings of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Milain*, the Earls of *Habſpurg*, *Charolois*, &c. But letting paſs theſe flaſhes and conceits of wit; certain it is (to ſay the truth) conſidering the compactedneſs thereof within it ſelf, the admirable fertility of the ſoyl, the incredible multitudes of People, and the conveniency of ſituation betwixt *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*, the name of *France* might ballance all the other Titles.

The chief *Orders* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, were firſt of the *Gennet*, founded by *Charles Martel*, *Maryre* of the *French Palace*: and ſo called, either from *Jane* his Wife, as *Haillain* would have it; or from the *Gennets* of *Spain*, over whom he triumphed at the battel of *Tours*, as *Bellay* writeth. It ended in the dayes of Saint *Lewis*. The Knights of the Order wore a Ring wherein was engraven the form of a *Gennet*.

2. Of the *Pairrie*, or twelve *Peers*, ſo called, *quaſi pares inter ſe*, ſaid to be inſtituted by *Charles* the Great, in his Wars againſt the *Saracens*. Six of theſe were of the *Clergy*. 1. The Archbiſhop and Duke of *Rhemes*; 2. the Biſhop and Duke of *Laon*; 3. the Biſhop and Duke of *Langres*; 4. the Biſhop and Earl of *Beavois*; 5. the Biſhop and Earl of *Noyon*; and 6. the Biſhop and Earl of *Challon*; and ſix others of the temporality. 1. The Duke of *Burgundy*; 2. Duke of *Normandy*; 3. Duke of *Guienne*; 4. Earl of *Tholouſe*; 5. Earl of *Champagne*; 6. Earl of *Flanders*. Theſe are ſo much memoriz'd in the Legends of the old *French* Writers, but falſly, and on no ground: it being impoſſible that thoſe ſhould be of the foundation of *Charles* the Great, in whoſe time there were none of thoſe Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of *Tholouſe* only. Therefore with better reaſon it may be thus concluded on, that the *twelve Peers* were inſtituted by *Charles* the Great, though that honor not by him appropriated unto any particular Eſtates and Titles; but left at large to be diſpoſed of according to the perſonal merit of the beſt deſervers: it being moſt ſure, that neither *Rowland*, nor *Oliver*, nor Duke *Naimes*, nor *Ogier* the *Dane*, had any of the Titles above mentioned. But for the fixing of this dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is ſaid by ſome to have been done by *Hugh Capet*, others refer it to *Lewis* the ſeventh; in whoſe times all thoſe Dukes and Earls were in *Rerum natura*. But by whomſoever firſt ordained, the *Temporal Pairries* are extinct; and others, of no definitive number, created by the Kings as they ſee occaſion to gratifie a well deſerver. Only at *Coronations*, and ſuch publick *Triumphs*, the cuſtom is to chooſe ſome principal perſons out of the Nobility to repreſent thoſe *Temporal Peers*; as at the *Coronation* of *Lewis* the thirteenth, the places of the *Temporal Peers* were ſupplyed by the Princes of *Conde* and *Conty*, the Earl of *Soiſſons*, the Dukes of *Nevers*, *Elbeuf*, and *Eſpernon*: the *Eccleſiaſtical Peers* remaining as at firſt they were. So that though *Charles* the Great might deviſe this Order, and inſtitute the firſt *twelve Peers*, as is commonly ſaid; yet was not that high honour fixed in any of thoſe *Temporal* Peers, till the times ſucceeding; but given to men of ſeveral houſes, according to the Kings pleaſure, and their well deſervings.

3. Of the *Star*, begun by *John* King of *France*, *Anno* 1352. They wore about their necks a collar of Gold, at the which hanged a *Star*: the word, *Monſtrant Regibus aſtra viam*. This Order was diſgraced by his Son *Charles*, in communicating it to his *Guard*; and ſo it ended.

4. Of Saint *Michael*, inſtituted by King *Lewis* the eleventh, *An.* 1409. It conſiſted firſt of 36 Knights, which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damaſk down to the ground, with a border interwoven with *Cockle-ſhels* of Gold, interlaced and furred with *Ermines*; with an hood of crimſon Velvet, and a long tippet. About their necks they wore a collar woven with *Cockle-ſhels*: the word, *Immenſi tremor Oceani*. It took the name from the picture of Saint *Michael* conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the collar. Some think, that the invocation of Saint *Michael*, was in alluſion unto the tenth of *Daniel*. Others ſay, he took Saint *Michael*, in regard of an apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the ſeventh, on *Orleans* Bridge in his Wars againſt the *Engliſh*. The ſeat thereof was firſt at Saint *Michaels Mount* in *Normandy*, a place which had held longeſt for the *French* Kings againſt the *Engliſh*; but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. Saint *Michaels* day, the time of the ſolemnity, and *Mount* Saint *Michael* the name of the *Herald* which did attend upon the Order; which in moſt things was precedented by that of the *Garter*.

5. Of the *Holy Ghoſt*, ordained by *Henry* the third, *An.* 1579. to rectifie the abuſes which had crept into that of Saint *Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy perſons: to reduce which to its firſt eſteem, he ordered that the collar of Saint *Michael* ſhould be given to none who had not firſt been dignified with this of the *Holy-Ghoſt*; into which none to be admitted, but ſuch as can prove their Nobility by three deſcents. Their Oath is to maintain the *Romiſh-Catholick* Religion, and perſecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe a black Velvet Mantle, powdred with Lillies and Flames of *Gold*: the collar of *Flower de Lyces*, and Flames of Gold, with a Croſs and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the name of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, becauſe he was on a *Whitſunday* choſen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit Orders, as thoſe of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorency*; of the *Porcupine*, by them of *Orleans*: and of the *Thiſtle*, by them of Bourbon.

The Arms of the *French* Kings in the daies of *Pharamond* and his three firſt Succeſſors were *Gules*, three Crowns, *Or*. *Clovis* the great altered them to *Azure*, Seme of Flower de Lyces, *Or*; and *Charles* the ſixth to *Azure*, 3 Flower de Lyces, *Or*. In which laſt changes they were followed by the Kings of *England*, varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did: and by the *Princes of the blood*, who bear the Arms of *France*, with ſome difference only, for the diſtinction of their Houſes.

There are in *France*,
Archbiſhops. 17. Biſhops, 107.
And Univerſities 15.
Viz.

1 *Paris*,
2 *Orleans*,
3 *Bourges*,
4 *Poictres*,
5 *Angiers*,
6 *Caen*,
7 *Rhemes*,
8 *Bourdeaux*,
9 *Tholouſe*,
10 *Niſmes*,
11 *Montpelier*,
12 *Avignon*,
13 *Lions*,
14 Beſancon,
15 *Dole*.

And ſo much for *France*.

THE

THE
PYRENEAN HILS.

BEtwixt *France* and *Spain* are the Mountains called *Pyrenai*, the reaſon of which name is very differently reported. Some fetch the Original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebrix*, ſaid by old Fablers to have been here raviſhed by *Hercules*: others conceive they were ſo called, becauſe much ſtricken with Lightnings, thoſe *Celeſtial Flames*. But being the name doth moſt undoubtedly proceed from a *Greek* word which ſignifies *Fire*; the more probable opinion is, that they took this name from being fired once by Shepherds, (thoſe Hils being then extremely overgrown with woods:) the Flame whereof raged ſo extreamly, that the Mines of Gold and Silver being melted by the heat thereof, ran ſtreaming down the Mountains many dayes together; the fame of which invited many Forein Nations to invade the Country. Which Accident they place 880 years before the Birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old *Greek* Writer, adds no ſmall authority, who ſpeaking of this conflagration (as *Ariſtotle* and *Strabo* do alſo) addeth withal, **τὰ μὲν ὄρη διὰ τὸ συμβεβηκὸς κληθῆναι Πυρηναῖα, ἀπὸ τοῦ πυρὸς συχνὰς ἡμέρας συνεχῶς ἐπιφλέγοντος**, that is to ſay, theſe Mountains had the name of *Pyrenees*, from the Fire, which many times together ſo extremely raged. And this Tradition backed by ſo good authority, I ſhould rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochartus* doth) from *Purani*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignfying dark or ſhadie; though true it is, that theſe Mountains antiently were very much overgrown with woods, as before was noted.

But whatſoever was the reaſon why they had this name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the natural bound betwixt the great and puiſſant Monarchs of *France* and *Spain*; terminating (as it were) their deſires and purpoſes againſt each other, as well in their Dominions, if any thing could put a bound to the deſignes of ambitious Princes. Yet not more ſeparated by theſe Mountains, than by thoſe jealouſies and fears, which they have long ſince harboured of one another; each of them manifeſtly affecting the ſupreme Command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Hiſtorian doth of others, on the like occaſion, ***Aut montibus, aut mutuo metu ſeparantur.*** The Mountains alſo make that *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land, which conjoyns *Spain* to the reſt of *Europe*: the *Cantabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-Weſt, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently waſhing the South-Eaſt thereof. Their beginning at the Promontory now called *Olarto*, (the *Ocaſo* of *Ptolomy*) not far from the City of *Baionne* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Cantabrick*: from thence continued South-Eaſt-wards betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux* (by the antients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the City of *Rhoda*, now *Roſis*, one of the Port Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be 80 *Spaniſh* Leagues, at three miles to a League. The higheſt part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Canigo*, and by the *Latines*, named *Canus*: from which (as it is ſaid by ſome) there is a Proſpect in a clear day, into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt, the higheſt part of all theſe Mountains; and took this name from the whiteneſs and hoarineſs thereof, as having on its top or Summit a Cap of Snow for the moſt part of the year. In which reſpect, as the *Alps* took their name *ab albo*; that in the *Sabine Dialect*, being termed *Alpum*, which by the *Latines* was called *Album*, which before we noted: ſo did Mount *Lebanon* in *Syria* take its name from *Leban*, which in the *Phœnician* Language ſignifieth white, and *Lebanah* whiteneſs. Such people as inhabit in this Mountainous tract, have been, and ſhall be mentioned in their proper places. I only add, and ſo go forwards towards *Spain*, that the barbarous people of theſe Mountains compelled *Sertorius* in his haſty paſſage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla*'s Faction, to pay them tribute for his paſs; at which when ſome of his Souldiers murmured, as thinking it diſhonourable to a *Proconſul* of *Rome* to pay tribute to the barbarous Nations; the prudent General replyed, That he *bought only time*; a Commodity, which they that deal in haughty Enterpriſes muſt needs take up at any rate.

OF SPAIN.

HAving thus croſſed the *Pyrenees* we are come to *Spain*, the moſt Weſtern part of all the Continent of *Europe*; environed on all ſides with the Sea, except towards *France*, from which ſeparated by the ſaid Mountains: but more particularly bounded upon the North; with the *Cantabrian*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South, with the ſtreights of *Gibraltar*; on the Eaſt, with the *Mediterranean*; and on the North-eaſt with thoſe *Pyrenees*. The figure of it compared by *Strabo* to an Oxes Hide ſpread upon the ground; the neck whereof being that *Iſthmus*, which unites it to *France*.

This Country hath in divers Ages been as diverſly named. 1. *Heſperia*, either from *Heſperus* a ſuppoſed King hereof; or from *Heſperus* the Evening Star, under which it was ſuppoſed to be ſituate, as being the furtheſt Country Weſt-ward, to difference it from *Italy*, which many of the *Greek* Authors termed *Heſperia* alſo, named *Heſperia minor*. 2. It was called *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*; or from the *Iberi*, inhabiting that Country of *Aſia* which we now call *Georgia*: as *Celtiberia*, from the mixture of thoſe *Aſian Iberi*, and the *Celts* of *Gaul*; by which name it occurreth often in *Appian* of *Alexandria*, and ſometimes in *Strabo*. 3. *Hiſpania*; as the ſoundeſt judgements agree; from *Panis* the *Iberian* Captain. For the *Gracians* call it Σπανία *Spania*, as may be proved in many places, that eſpecially of the 15 to the *Romans*, verſe 28. Απελεύσομαι δἰύμῶν εἰς τὼ Σπανίαν, *I will come by you into Spain*. No doubt but from the *Grecians*, the old *Romans* borrowed the name of *Spania*, which they often uſed: to which the *Spaniards* according to their cuſtom adding E, (as in *Eſcola*, *Eſcula*, *&c.*) made it *Eſpania*, and now *Hiſpania*. In like manner as the famous City of *Sevil*, called at firſt *Spalis*, (according hereunto the Biſhop hereof in the Council of *Eliberis* ſubſcribed himſelf by the name of *Sabinus Spalenſis*) in tract of time was called *Hiſpalis*. And yet I muſt not pretermit the fancy of *Bochartus*, who fetching the names of moſt places from the *Punick* Language, will have it to be called *Spanija*, or *Spanija*, by the *Carthaginians*, or *Phœnicians*, at their firſt diſcovery; from *Saphan*, which in the *Punick* Tongue ſignifies a *Cony*; with which that Country much abounded in former times, the *Romans* being hence furniſhed with them. Let the Reader like it as he liſt.

The greateſt length hereof is reckoned at 800 miles, the breadth where it is broadeſt, at 560; the whole circumference 2480 *Italian* miles: But *Mariana* meaſuring the compaſs of it by the bendings of the *Pyrenees*, and the creeks and windings of the Sea, makes the full circuit of it to be 2816 miles of *Italian meaſure*. And though according to the ſmalleſt computation, it be above 460 miles in compaſs more than *France*, yet is far ſhort thereof in numbers of people: *France* being thought to contain in it 15 millions of living Souls; whereas *Spain* is reckoned to contain but 8 millions only, which is little more than half the number of the *French*. The reaſons of which diſproportions are: 1. The *continual Wars* which they had for 900 years together againſt the *Moors*, in their own Country; by which they were conſumed in the very growth. 2. The *Expulſion* of ſo many thouſand Families of *Jews* and *Moors*, 124000 Families of the one in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; and a 110000 of the other by King *Philip* the third: which was as the lopping off of a main limb from the body *Politick*, though without any loſs to the *Eccleſiaſtical*. 3. The *unneceſſary Wars* maintained againſt all the reſt of Chriſtendom, ever ſince the time of *Charles* the fifth, out of meer ambition; before they were well cured of their former wounds. 4. The *infinite Plantations* made by them in the *Eaſt* and *Weſtern Indies*, and all along the Sea-coaſts of *Africa*; and thoſe great Garriſons maintain'd in *Milain*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, the *Low-Countries*, and their Towns in *Africk*; conſiſting for the moſt part of natural *Spaniards*. 5. The *barrenneſs* of the Country in many places, unable to ſuſtain great multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of men to labour and manure the Land. And 6. and laſt of all, the *Impotency of both Sexes* for Generation; the men being generally more hot upon their luſts, than able for Generation; and the women for the moſt part beginning to be Mothers ſo extremely young, that Nature is decay'd, and ſpent in them, before they have run half their courſe. And 'tis a moſt true and undoubted Maxime, that the greatneſs of Cities, and the populouſneſs of kingdoms and Common-wealths, doth much depend on the *generative vertue* of the men, and the *nutrive vertue* of the ſoyl in which they live.

It is ſituate in the more Southernly part of the Northern temperate *Zone*, and almoſt in the midſt of the fourth and ſixth *Climates*: the longeſt day being fifteen hours and a quarter in length, in the moſt Northern parts hereof; but in the extreme South near to *Gibraltar*, not above fourteen. Which ſituation of this Country rendreth the Air here very clear and calm, ſeldom obſcured with miſts and vapours, and not ſo much ſubject to diſeaſes as more Northern Regions.

They are a mixt people, deſcending from the *Gothes*, *Moors*, *Jews*, and the antient *Spaniards*. From the *Jews* they borrow Superſtition, from the *Moors* Melancholy, Pride from the *Gothes*, and from the old *Spaniards* the deſire of Liberty. The *Jews* firſt planted here by the Emperor *Adrian*, who having totally baniſhed them their Native Country, ſent them hither to dwell; the total number of which Plantation is ſaid to amount to 500000 men, women, and children; and yet their numbers much increaſed in the time of *Ulidor Ulet* the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, who having made a Conqueſt of *Spain*, ſent hither 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, the better to aſſure it to him. And ſo we have the coming in of the *Moors* and *Jews*; the Conqueſt of it by the *Gothes*, and their ſetling here, ſhall be ſhewn hereafter: which ſeveral Nations by long time, and intermarriages together, were at laſt incorporated Into one. For their condition, it is ſaid that they are highly conceited of themſelves, great Braggars, and extremely proud, even in the loweſt ebb of Fortune. Which laſt appeareth by the tale of the poor Cobler on his death-bed, who (as *Barklay* in his *Icon Animarum* reporteth the ſtory) commanded his eldeſt Son, coming to him for his laſt bleſſing, *to endeavour to retain the majeſty worthy ſo great a Family*; *Memineris* (ſaid he) *in majeſtatem aſſurgere familia tua dignam*. The ſame Author relateth another ſtory to the like purpoſe. A woman of this Country attended on by three of her brats, went a begging from door to door. Some *French* Merchants travelling that way, and pitying her caſe, offered her to take into their ſervice the bigger of her boyes. But ſhe, proud though poor, ſcorning, as ſhe ſaid, that any of her lineage ſhould endure a Prentiſhip, returned this Anſwer: *Qui aut tu, aut ego, ſciamus, in qua fata ſit genitus? For ought that ſhe or any knew, her Son* (ſimple as he ſtood there) *might live to be King of Spain.* Not much unlike to theſe is that tale of a *Spaniſh Caveleiro*, who being for ſome faults by him committed, whipped through the principal ſtreets of *Paris*; and keeping a ſober pace, was adviſed by a friend to make more haſte, that he might the ſooner be out of his pain: But he half in a choler replyed, *That he would not loſe the leaſt ſtep of his pace, for all the whipping in Paris.* For indeed their gate is Gennet-wiſe, very ſtately and majeſtical.

Of temperature they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to women, and yet not very able for *Generation*. And as this ſtrong inclination unto women which they find in themſelves, makes them ſo jealous of their *Wives*, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church, and then too veiled and ſo hooded, one can hardly ſee them: and not that only neither, but attended with their Damoſels, and ſome truſty ſhe-friend, that is to give an accompt of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, a Ambaſſador from *Spain*, in Queen *Elizabeths* time, uſed to find fault with the promiſcuous ſitting of men and women in the Church, uſed here in *England*; accounting it to be a very great *incentive* unto *laſciviouſneſs*. To whom Doctor *Dale*, one of *the Maſters of the Requeſts*, is ſaid to have replyed, that indeed in *Spain*, where the people even in the time of *Divine Service* could not abſtain from impure thoughts, and unclean geſtures, that mingled kind of ſitting was not ſo allowable: but the *Engliſh* were of another temper, and did not find any inconveniences in it. And it is poſſible, this humor of jealouſie might be derived on them from the *Moors*, who in the ſtrict guarding of their women, were the *Spaniards* Tutors: it being death in *Barbary*, to this very day, for any man to ſee one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they ſee a man, though but through a caſement, they do not preſently cry out. A frenzy which much rageth in moſt *Southern* people, but not predominant in the *Northern*: who do not only ſuffer their Wives to ſit with other men in the Church, but even in the open and common Bathes alſo; two things which a true *Spaniard* would rather dye an hundred deaths, than give conſent to. But though the women are not permitted to ſtir abroad, the men take liberty enough; and are as good ſmel-feaſts as in any Country: it being obſerved of them by a very good Writer, that howſoever in their own houſes they are temperate and content with little; yet when they go unto a Feaſt, they are as gluttonous, dainty, and deſirous to make good cheer, as any people whatſoever.

But not to conceal their Vertues, and make our ſelves merry at their follies, (wherein all other Nations have a ſhare with them) they are queſtionleſs a people very grave in their carriages, in Offices of Piety very devout, and to their King very obedient; whoſe greatneſs they affect more cordially than any Subjects in the world: exact in doing Juſtice upon all Offenders, which commonly they adminiſter without partiality; indulgent unto one another, and of their duties to their betters not unmindful. But that which deſerveth the greateſt Commendation in them, is an unwearied Patience in ſuffering Adverſities, accompanied with a Reſolution to overcome them. A noble quality, of the which in their *Indian* Diſcoveries they ſhewed excellent proofs, and received as glorious Rewards: withal of very daring ſpirits, great undertakers for the moſt part, and to ſay truth, the greateſt inlargers of their Dominions (according to the advantages of their ſituation) of any Nation under heaven. For having firſt exterminated or ſubdued the *Moors*, which for many hundreds of years were poſſeſſed of this Continent, the *Aragonians* lying on the *Mediterranean*, added to their eſtate the Iſlands of *Majorca*, and *Minorca*, the Kingdoms of *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, and the Realm of *Naples*; the *Caſtilians*, lying on both ſides of the Straits, firſt took in ſome of the oppoſite Towns on the coaſt of *Africk*, next conquered the *Canaries* or *Fortunate* Iſlands, and finally diſcovered and ſubdued the moſt part of *America*; the *Portugals* lying with a long Sea coaſt on the Weſtern Ocean, poſſeſſed themſelves of the *Azores*, moſt of the Sea Towns of *Morocco*, and the land of *Guinnia*, and doubling the *Cape of good hope* made themſelves Maſters of many Ports and Iſlands of great conſequence in the *Eaſt-Indies*, adding thereto in fine the large Countrey of *Brazill* in that part of *America* which lay fitteſt for them; and the *Navarrois* (to conclude) though locked up by their greater neighbours from all trade at Sea and conſequently enlarging their Dominions that way, adding to their eſtates the moſt part of *Gaſcoigne*, the Palatinate of *Champagne*, the Earldom of *Eureux*, with many fair and large poſſeſſions in the Realm of *France* thereupon depending.

In reference to the *French*, it is ſaid that *the French are wiſer then they ſeem*, and the *Spaniards ſeem wiſer than they are*: wherein they agree with many particular men of other Nations, who according to the Philoſopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non eſſe, quam eſſe & non videri.*

In matters of war the *Spaniards* are obſerved to be generally too heavy, ſlow and dull; the *French* too heady and precipitate; the one looſing as many fair occaſions by delays, as the other overthroweth by too much haſte: but between them both they make one good Souldier; who according to the preſent opportunities, is to make uſe of the ſpur of courage, or the bit of reſpect. But of the ſtrange and many differences in temper, humours and affections, between the *Spaniards* and the *French*, we have ſpoke more at large already when we were in *France*.

The Women are ſober, loving their husbands or friends; wonderfull delicate, curious in painting or perfuming: and though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old *Engliſh* Proverb, that *none are worſe ſhod than the ſhoomakers wife*; Herein in worſe condition than the Women of *France*, who though they are reſtrained from Wine before their marriage; yet after that they take what liberty they liſt, and are no more reſtrained from it than the other ſex. But this is the leaſt liberty, which the *French Women* have above the *Spaniſh*: theſe being ſo watched and overlooked, that it is hardly poſſible for them to hold ſpeech with any man, in buſineſſe of moſt importance, and much leſſe in matters of *civilities* only; thoſe having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the preſence of their husbands, without any diſtruſt or interruption. Heretofore they were wonderous ſtrong, and beyond belief, patient of the throwes of Childbed: *Strabo* relating how one of theſe women being hired for harveſt work, and finding her travel coming upon her, becauſe ſhe would not loſe her days wages, withdrew her ſelf into a buſh; where being eaſed of her burden, ſhe returned from one labor to another. And many of them at this day uſe not to keep their Chambers above three days after their delivery, and then apply themſelves to their houſhold buſineſſe without danger or delay.

The language is not the ſame in all places, though all called the *Spaniſh*. In *Portugal*, *Catalogne*, and ſome parts of *Valentia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in theſe parts have had much trade and negotiation. In *Granada*, and ſome parts of *Andaluzia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the mountains of *Alpuxerras*, the *Arabick* or *Mooriſh* language ſtill remains in uſe. The Countries bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biſcay* ſpecially) having much in them of the Language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made ſubject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spaniſh* or *Caſtilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latine*; *Breerwood* in his *inquiries* reporting that he hath ſeen a letter, every word whereof was both good *Latine* and good *Spaniſh*. *Merula* ſhewes a Copy of the like, *p.* 300. By reaſon of which conſonancy with the *Latine*, the *Spaniards* call their Language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue are generally the *Gothiſh*, *Arabick*, and old *Spaniſh*, and in ſome places of *French* alſo, as before is ſaid; thoſe people having made great conqueſts, and having had great negotiation in this Country. It is ſaid to be a very lofty ſwelling ſpeech, as if it were faſhioned to command.

And as their Language, ſo their Laws do owe a great part of themſelves to the Lawes of *Rome*: the Civil or Imperial Laws bring generally uſed amongſt them, but intermixt with many cuſtomes of the *Gothes*, and the Edicts or conſtitutions of their ſeveral Kings. Thoſe of the *Gothes* being firſt committed unto writing, and reduced unto order by *Euricus* the firſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*: thoſe of *Caſtile* digeſted by the command of *Ferdinand* the third, 1296. into ſeven books called the *Partidos*; not finiſhed till the time of his Son *Alfonſo*. *Leges* Hiſpaniarum *quas Partitas vocant, in volumen redegit*, as *Tarupha* hath told us of him in his *Spaniſh* Hiſtory. The like done by King *James* the firſt for the Realm of *Aragon*, *An.* 1248. reſpectively confirmed and ratified by the Kings ſucceeding. Authorized to be read and diſputed on in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals*, the *Code*, the *Pandect*, or any other part of the Civil or Canon Laws.

The Soil hereof, where it is fertile and productive of the fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for delight, pleaſures, and commodities; which here appear in greater ripeneſſe and perfection than in other places. But for the moſt part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbred with wild and rocky Mountains, or of ſo hot a nature, and ſo ſandy withall, that it is not very fit for tillage; and ſo deficient in Water, as not good for Paſturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremy*, where it is *good*, no Country *better*; where *bad* and barren, few ſo inconvenient, and not any worſe. But this defect of outward beauty and Commodities, is recompenſed by thoſe within; affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and ſome Mines of Silver; of which laſt ſo abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations; and it is ſaid of *Annibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Country of the *Turdetani* (now part of *Andaluſia*) he received 3000 pound weight daily, for long time together. The principal commodities which they vend into other Countries, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Liquoras, a fine ſort of Wool, Cork, Roſin, Limmons, Raiſins, Orenges, and fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the ſtaff of life, they are ſo defective, that they receive the greateſt part of what they ſpend, from *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair nor many, the Country being not able to breed them, ſo that their Diet is on Salads, and fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what fleſh he ſhall buy for himſelf and his Family: which if he ſend for to the Butcher or Poulterer, by the ſmalleſt child, able to do the Errand for him, he is ſure not to be defrauded in price, or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant fare, as if they ſurfeited with the plenty of all proviſions: handſomely checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Souldier Sir *Roger Williams*. Of whom it is ſaid, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus fooliſhly bragging of his Country ſalads, he gave him this anſwer, *You have indeed good* ſawce *in* Spain, *but we have dainty* Beefs, Veals, *and* Muttons *to eat with that* ſawce; *and as God made* beaſts *to live upon the* graſs *of the earth*, *ſo he made* men *to live upon them*. And it is obſerv'd, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good diſh to his Supper, you ſhall find all the feathers ſcattered before his door by the next morning.

And as it is in private houſes, ſo for travelling alſo, the Innes and *Vents* of this Country are very ill provided: inſomuch that moſt men that would not go ſupperleſſe to ſleep, carry their proviſion at their ſaddle-bowes; and men of worth, their bedding alſo. So poor and mean is the entertainment in theſe places.

Here lived in antient times the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quell'd by *Hercules*: and in the flouriſhing of the Empire, 1. *Seneca* the *Tragœdian*, and 2. the *Philoſopher* of the ſame name; a man of that happy memory, that he could repeat 2000 names in the ſame order that they were rehearſed: as alſo 3. *Quintilian* the Oratour, 4. *Lucan*, and 5. *Martial*, excellent in their kinds, 6. *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7. *Trogus Pompeius*, whith his Epitomator, 8. *Juſtin*, and 9 *Paulus Oroſius* the Hiſtorian, this laſt a *Chriſtian*. In the middle times 10. *Iſidore* Biſhop of *Sevil*, 11. *Julian*, and 12. *Hildephonſus* Biſhops of *Toledo*; and after them *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr, men learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1. The renowned Cardinal *Francus Ximines*, and 2. *Arias Montanus*, famous for the Editions of the holy Bible; 3. *Maſius*, a learned Commentator; 4. *Oſorius*, well ſeen in the *Latine* elegancies: and before all, as well in induſtry as time, 5. *Toſtatus* Biſhop of *Avila*, a man ſo copious and induſtrious in his writings, that it is thought he writ more ſheets than he lived dayes: But of late times we find but few of their Works which have paſſed the Mountains, the *Latine* which they write being very courſe, and ſavouring too much of the *Shoolman*, (wherein their excellency conſiſts) and therefore they ſet out their Works moſt commonly in their own tongue only. The chief for *Souldiery* amongſt them were formerly *Viriathus*, who held out ſo long againſt the *Romans*; *Trajan* and *Theodoſius*, both *Roman* Emperours; *Theodorick* the ſecond, King of the *Gothes*, the victorious Conquerour of the *Swevians*; *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their atchievements againſt the *Moors*: and in late times, *Gonſalvo* the *Great Captain*, who ſubdued *Naples*; *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The *Chriſtian* Faith, if we may believe the old *Spaniſh* Tradition, was firſt here planted by St. *James* the Apoſtle, within four years after the death of our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very conſtant a long time together, yet of late dayes, *Baronius*, and other learned men of the Church of *Rome*, do moſt deſervedly reject it. That St. *Paul* had a purpoſe of coming hither, is evident in his 15 Chapter to the *Romans*: and that he did come hither accordingly, is poſitively affirmed by S. *Cryſoſtom*, *Theodoret*, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in *Anno* 61, as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did St. *Peter* want his part in this great ſervice, but joyned with St. *Paul*, though not in the journey, yet in the ſending of *Biſhops* and other *Presbyters*, to ſecond the beginnings made by that Apoſtle. For it is ſaid expreſly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Cteſiphon*, *Torquatus*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Judaletius*, *Heſychius*, and *Euphraſius*, being at *Rome* ordained *Biſhops* by the two *Apoſtles*, *ad prædicandum verbum Dei in* Hiſpanias *directi*, were diſpatched into *Spain* to preach the Goſpel. Biſhops moſt likely, of thoſe Cities where they ſuffered death, the names of which occurre in the *Martyrology*. Under the Empire of the *Gothes*, the faith of *CHRIST*, which at their coming thither they found right and *Orthodox*, was defiled with *Arianiſm*: not ejurated till the year 588. when that whole Nation did ſubmit to more *Catholique* tendries. But *Spain* being conquered by the *Moores* under the conduct of *Muſa* Lieutenant General to *Ulidor Ulit* the *Arabian Caliph*, and *Mahometaniſme* overſpreading the whole face of the Country, ſuch *Chriſtians* as remained under their obedience, but few and inconſiderable both for power and quality, had the name of *Muſarabes*. Increaſing in eſtate and numbers by the fortunate ſucceſſes of the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*, and other *Chriſtian* Principalities growing up apace; they ſtill retaining their old name and their antient *ſervice*; diſtinct from that obſerved in the Church of *Rome*: this being called the *Muſarabique*, the others the *Gregorian* Miſſal; the one pretending S. *Iſidore* Archb. of *Sevil*, the other S. *Gregory* Pope of *Rome*, for the Author of it. And it continued in this ſtate till the taking of the City and Kingdom of *Toledo* by *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 1083. At what time *Bernard* a *French* man being made Archb. of that City and Primate of *Spain*, endevoured the introduction of the *Roman* or *Gregorian* ſervice; but therein was oppoſed by the other Prelates, and generally by all the People, ſufficiently tenatious of their antient Formes. At laſt it was concluded (as the ſtory telleth us) to commit the deciſion of the Controverſy to a fiery trial: both books being caſt into the fire, the *Gregorian* leaping preſently out, and the *Muſarabique* remaining unhurt in the midſt of the flames. Convinced by this experiment that both Forms were pleaſing to Almighty God, they yeelded ſo farr to the deſires of the King (who was zealous in it) that the *Muſarabique* being retained in ſix of the Churches of *Toledo* (where it is ſung to this day in a Chappel of the Great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or *Roman* Service ſhould be entertained in the reſt of *Spain*. According unto which decree the *Muſarabique* (but not untill ſome tract of time) came to be diſuſed: and the *Gregorian* Service firſt admitted in the Cathedrall of *Toledo*, *May*, 29. *An.* 1091. after by degrees in the reſt of the Country.

Since that they have been conſtant to the Rites of the *Roman* Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein profeſſed, notwithſtanding the great intermixture of *Jewes* and *Moores*; eſpecially ſince the ſetting up of the *Inquiſition*: deviſed at firſt about the year 1478. by *Pedro Gonſales de Mendoza*, Arch-biſhop of *Toledo*, againſt ſuch converted *Jewes* and *Moors* as did return again to their ſuperſtition. But he and thoſe that had the firſt execution of it, being fround ſo cruel, that in the compaſs of nine years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been deſtroyed in that Dioceſe onely; in the year 1481. it was thought fit to moderate the rigor of it, and to commit the managing thereof to ſome *Jacobins* or *Dominical* Friers; who in the firſt place were to have an eye unto ſuch Apoſtats, and to Hereticks, Magicians, Sodomites, Blaſphemers of the name of God, *&c.* Confirmed in this Authority by Pope *Sixtus* the 4th. This inſtitution in it ſelf was not only neceſſary (as the condition of affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it been kept within the bounds at firſt intended. But of late in ſtead of being uſed on the *Jewes* and *Moors*, it hath been turned upon the *Proteſtants*, and that with ſuch violence and extremity of torture, that it is counted the greateſt tyranny, and ſevereſt kind of perſecution under Heaven. Inſomuch that many Papiſts who would willingly die for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the death withſtand the bringing in of this ſlavery among them. This is that made the people of *Aragon* and *Naples* rebell; Countreys where the people are all of the Papal ſide: and this was it which cauſed the irremediable revolt of the *Low Countrey*, the greateſt part of that Nation at the time of their taking Arms being *Romiſh Catholiques*; yet it is planted and eſtabliſhed in *Spain* and all *Italy* (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the moſt zealous Friers, and rigorous Friers in the whole pack; the leaſt ſuſpicion of hereſie, affinity or commerce with Hereticks, reproving the lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books prohibited, or diſcourſing in matters of Religion, are offences ſufficient. Nay they will charge mens Conſciences under pain of damnation, to detect their neareſt and deareſt Friends, if they do but ſuſpect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great ſecreſie and ſeverity: For firſt, the parties accuſed ſhall never know their accuſer, but ſhall be conſtrained to reveal their own thoughts and affections. 2. If they be but convinced of any errour in any of their opinions, or be gainſayed by two witneſſes, they are immediately condemned. 3. If nothing can be proved againſt them, yet ſhall they with infinite tortures and miſeries be kept in the houſe divers years, for a terror unto others. And fourthly, if they eſcape the firſt brunt with many torments, and much anguiſh, yet the ſecond queſtioning or ſuſpicion brings death remedileſs. And as for torments and kinds of death, *Phalaris* and his fellow Tyrants come far ſhort of theſe Blood-hounds.

The adminiſtration of this office, for the more orderly Regiment and diſpatch thereof, diſtributed into twelve Courts, or ſupreme Tribunals, for the ſeveral Provinces of *Spain*; no one depending on another, but in ſome ſort ſubordinate to the general Inquiſition; remaining in the Court near the Kings perſon, which hath a kind of ſuperintendency over thoſe Tribunals, in all of which thoſe of the ſecular Clergy ſit as Judges, the *Friers* being only uſed as *Promoters* to inform the Court, and bring more Griſt unto the Mill. Of theſe inquiſitors every one hath the title of Lord, and are a great terror to the neighbouring Peaſants. There goeth a Tale, how one of their Lordſhips, deſirous to eat of the Pears which grew in a poor mans Orchard, not far off, ſent for the man to come unto him, which put the poor ſoul into ſuch a fright, that he fell ſick upon it, and kept his bed: Being afterwards informed that all his Lordſhips buſineſs with him, was to requeſt a diſh of his Pears, he pulled up the tree by the roots, and carried it unto him with the fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reaſon of that raſh and improvident action, he returned this anſwer: That he would never keep that thing in his houſe, which ſhould give any of their Lordſhips cauſe to ſend further after him. Certain it is that by this means the people of this Kingdom are ſo kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other Religion, than what their Prieſts and Friers ſhall be pleaſed to teach them, or entertain the truth, if it come amongſt them, or call in queſtion any of thoſe palpable and groſs impoſtures which every day are put upon them.

For by this means the people of this Kingdom have been and ſtill are punctual followers of the Church of *Rome*, and that too in the very errors and corruptions of it; taking up their Religon on the Popes authority: and therein ſo tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth ſuffer none to live in his Dominions, which profeſſe not the *Roman Catholique* Religion. Of which they have been, ſince the times of *Luther*, ſuch avowed *Patrons*, that one of the late Popes being ſick, and hearing divers men to moan his approaching end; uttered ſome words to this effect: *My life* (ſaid he) *can nothing benefit the* Church, *but pray for the proſperity of the King of* Spain, *as its chief ſupporter*; and though he ſpoke theſe words of King *Philip* the 2d. yet they hold good in his Succeſſors ever ſince; being eſteemed the greateſt Patrons and Protectors of the *Catholick Cauſe*: Which is indeed the proper intereſs of this King. For ſeeing that they have framed to themſelves an hope of the *Weſtern Monarchy*; and finding no fitter means of enlarging their own *Temporal*, than by concurring with the Pope in upholding his ſpiritual Empire; they have linked themſelves moſt faſt to that See. To which end they have taken upon them, to be the Executioners of the Popes *Excommunications*, by which Office *Ferdinand* the *Catholique* ſurprized *Navarre*; not without hope of working the like effect, in ſome courſe of time, on the reſt of the interdicted Eſtates of *Europe*; as may be ſeen, by the eager following of the *French* War againſt *Henry* the 4th, till he had reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, and the like War managed for many years together, againſt Q. *Elizabeth* of *England*. And the purſuit of this *Spaniſh* Monarch is ſo hotly followed by the *Jeſuits*, who in all their perſwaſions ſpeak not more of one God, or of one Pope, than they do of one King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and ſubdue that great Enemy of *Religion*, the *Turk*. Nor is this only a Conjecture, or a project of the *Jeſuits* only, but a *deſign* avowed and declared in Print, that all the World may take notice of it: and that too in a Book not only licenſed by the *Provincial* of the *Dominicans*, and the *ſupreme Councel* of the *Inquiſition*; but by Order from the *Lords* of the *Councell*, with the Kings *Priviledge* and Commendation prefixt before it, The Book entituled, *La Convenientia de los dos Monarquias Catholicas, &c.* The agreement of the two Catholick Monarchies of *Rome* and *Spain*; ſet out in the year 1612. by one *John de Puente*. In the *Frontiſpice* whereof are ſet two *Scutcheons*, the one bearing the *Croſſe-Keys* of *Rome*, the other the Arms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; *In Vinculo pacis* for the Motto. On the one ſide of this there is a Portraiture repreſenting *Rome*, with the Sun ſhining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keys, with this inſcription, *Luminare majus ut præſit Orbi & Urbi*, the Greater light to govern the City and the World. On the other ſide, another Image deſigning *Spain* with the *Moon* ſhining over that, and darting her Rayes on the *Spaniſh* Scutcheon, with this Impreſs; *Luminare minus ut ſubdatur Urbi & dominetur Orbi*, i. e. The leſſer light made to be ſubject to the City, (underſtand of *Rome*) but to govern all the World beſide. Over all in the top of the Front or *Title-page* in *Capitall* Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole book being an indifferent large *Folio*, is but a Comment on this Text; which for ſubſtance is contained wholly in the *Frontiſpice*, but more at large diſcourſed of in the *Volume* it ſelf; and plainly ſhews what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhaps the *Pope* and the *Jeſuits* both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation: and if the project take effect, the *Spaniard* will then write himſelf *Luminare majus*, and make the Pope content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the ſoyl; and glad to borrow all his light from the *Sun* of *Spain*. For though the Kingdom of *Spain*, and Popedom of *Rome*, be thus ſtraitly combined, yet herein the Popes have overſhot themſelves; in that leaning ſo much to the *Spaniard*, and ſo immoderately encreaſing his dominion, they do in a manner ſtand at his devotion; and may peradventure in the end, be forced to caſt themſelves into his arms as their good Lord and Maſter. For certain it is, that the *Spaniſh Agents* have openly braved the *Cardinals*, and told them, That they hoped to ſee the day, wherein the King ſhould offer the Pope half a dozen to be made *Cardinals*, and he not dare to refuſe any; and that they themſelves ſhould chooſe no *Pope*, but one of their *Maſters* naming. So great an inconvenience it is more than poſſible it may be to the *Popes*, in making this Prince the one and only ſtring to their bow; and faſtning the dependencies of his *Roman Catholiques* upon him alone, excluding *France* and all other Kings in Chriſtendom, of the *Romiſh* party, from the honour of it. And yet ſo firm they are to their *Spaniſh* Principles, that no *favours* either granted to their perſons, or *Religion*, are of value with them, or thought worthy of their acceptation, if it come from any other *Fountain of Grace* than the *Court of Spain*. Inſomuch as I have heard from a great Miniſter of State, that when ſome favours were obtained for the *Engliſh Papiſts*, on the treaty of the Match with *Spain*; they were ready with great greedineſs to embrace the ſame. But when the ſame *favours* were obtained for them on the Treaty with *France*, not a man of them would accept them. For which ſome of their Chiefs being asked the reaſon, returned this anſwer; That *by applying themſelves to the* French, *they might loſe the* Spaniard; *and it were great improvidence in them, to change an old and conſtant* Friend, *who had never failed them, for one of whoſe affections they had no aſſurance, and ſuch a one as by tolerating* Hereticks *in his own* **Dominions**, *ſhewed that he was no fit Patron for the Catholicks to rely upon.*

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Tagus*, celebrated for his Golden Sands; of which the Scepter of the old Kings of *Portugal* is affirmed by ſome Writers to be made, but I have not Faith enough to believe the ſame. The head of it is in the Mountain *Seira Molina*, near to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the City *Toledo*; and then ſmoothly gliding by the Walls of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Weſtern Ocean. 2. *Ana*, (now *Guadiana*) which ariſing about the ſame place, runneth afterward under the ground, the ſpace of 15 miles: and hence the *Spaniards* uſe to brag, that they have a Bridge, whereon 10000 Cattle dayly feed. An accident common to many other Rivers, as to *Mole*, a ſmall River in *Surrey*; *Eraſinus* in *Greece*; and *Lycus* in *Anatolia*; of which laſt thus *Ovid*.

Sic ubi terreno Lycus *eſt epotus hiatu,*
Exiſtit procul hinc, alioque renaſcitur ore.

So *Lycus*, ſwallow'd by the gaping ground,
At a new mouth, far off, is riſing found.

But having gotten up again, it loſeth its ſelf without recovery in the Weſtern Ocean; on the South of *Portugal*, which it ſeparateth from *Extremadura*. 3. *Bœtis*, now called *Guidalquivir* (which in the *Arabick* Language ſignifieth a great River) ariſeth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*; and paſſing by *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, diſburdeneth it ſelf into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of S. *Lucars* *de Barameda*, 4. *Iberus*, which having its head amongſt the Mountains of *Biſcay*, paſſeth on Eaſtwards by *Saragoſſa* and *Tortoſa*, into the *Mediterranean*: the whole courſe thereof being 460 miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of ſuch note in the time of the *Romans*, that it divided this whole Countrey into *Citeriorem*, and *Ulteriorem*; of which more anon. 5. *Duerus*, which riſing in the ſame Mountains paſſeth through *Portugal*, and ſo unto the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean. 6. *Minius*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains next unto the *Pyrenees* ſpoken of before. 1. The *Cantabrian* Mountains, called by *Pliny*, *Juga Aſturum*; which riſing out of a ſpur or branch of the *Pyrenees*, overſpread the Provinces of *Biſca*, *Aſturia*, and *Gallicia* (coaſting along the ſhores of the *Cantabrian* Ocean) where at laſt they end. 2. *Iduheda*, *Jubalda*, or *Aurantius Saltus*, ſo called by *Ptolomy*, and others of the antient Writers; which beginning not farr from the head of the River *Iberus*, followeth the courſe of that River by the City of *Burgos*, and endeth not farr from the influx of it into the *Mediterranean*. 3. *Sierra Morena*; by *Cæſar* called *Saltus Saſtulonenſis*, and *Mons Marianus* by *Ptolomy*; which beginneth about the Town of *Alcoraz*, coaſteth along the right-hand ſhores of the River *Batis*, to the Southern Seas. 4. *Sierra Nevada*, by *Ptolomy* called *Mons Illipulus*, and *Oreſpeda*, by *Strabo*, but by the *Moors* the Mountains of *Alpuxaras*. A chain of hills which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada*, from the Eaſt to the Weſt; and amongſt which the people, to this day, ſpeak the *Arabick* tongue.

The Country is ſaid to have been firſt inhabited by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Beroſus* of Frier *Anninus*, and by ſuch Chronologers as he hath impoſed on by the name of Authors; that in the 12th. year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Flood, he ſeated himſelf in the *Aſturias*, a part of *Spain*, and there built the Town of S. *Uval*. A device ſo fooliſh and abſurd; that it is not to be honoured with a confutation; for either *Tubal*, muſt come hither by Sea or by Land. If by Land; then muſt he in the compaſs of a year or two, travel no leſs than 4000 miles (for ſo farr it is at leaſt from *Biſcay* to the valley of *Shinaar*) with women and children; through moſt unpaſſable Woods and Mountains: which no underſtanding man can give belief to it. If by Sea, beſides the ſhort time he had to provide ſhipping for ſo great a company, and ſo long a voyage, nothing is more improbable to a ſober man, than that he ſhould leave *Italy* and *Africk* upon either hand; or pretermit the opportunity of poſſeſſing *Valentia*, *Andaluzia*, *Portugal*, being fruitfull Countreys; to fix himſelf in the moſt mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent. Yet moſt of our *Beroſians* are ſo confident in it, that they make him the firſt King of *Spain*, from whom to *Gargarus Melicola*, they numbred 25 Kings more, who laſted 988 years: the chief of which are ſaid to be, 1. *Heſperus*, who ſubduing alſo *Italy*, named both Countries *Heſperia*: but ſo, that *Italy* was called *Heſperia* the greater; and *Spain*, *Heſperia* the leſs. 2. *Hiſpanus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hiſpania* to be derived. 3. *Tagus*, 4. *Bætus*, and 5. *Anus*, whence the three famous River in *Spain* ſo called, muſt by all means be derived. 6. *Idube*, *God-father* no doubt, to the great Mountain ſo named. 7. *Sicileus*, from whom the Iſle of *Sicilie* is ſaid to take denomination. 8. *Hiſpalis*, who is reported to have built the City *Sevill*, or *Hiſpalis*. 9. *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flavis-Briga*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10. *Luſus*, who gave name to *Luſitania* or *Portugal*. The Catalogue of which Kings I deſire no man to believe farther, than that of our own State from *Brutus* to *Caſſibeline*. A Catalogue ſo ill contrived, that whereas *Juſtin* ſpeaks of *Habis*, and *Herodotus* of *Arguntaonius*; *Macrobius* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilis*; all Kings of *Spain*; none of all theſe are mentioned in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in perſon) hither, is a ſilly vanity; though we deny not but the *Spaniards*, or ſome nations of them, may derive their Pedigree from *Tubal*, as being the deſcendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Joſephus* ſaith to have been antiently called T*hobelos*: a name in which are all the *Radical* Letters of *Tubal*, and which differeth not much from it in ſound. For ſomewhat before the ſuppoſed time of *Gargarus Melicola*, the *Iberians* are ſaid to come in under *Panus*: divided after his deceaſe amongſt many petit Kings and Princes, for the ſpace of 900 and odd years, even till the firſt Attempts which the *Carthaginians* made upon it: who found here no ſuch Univerſal or Supreme Monarch, as the *Beroſian* Fablers dream of. During which time, we find nothing more obſervable and certain in the *ſtory* of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-Coaſts by divers Nations, according to the Cuſtom of thoſe elder times. Of which ſort were the Towns of *Emporia*, and *Dianium*, founded by the *Maſſilians*; *Saguntum*, by the *Zacynthi*, or people of *Zant*; *Rhodope*, by the *Rhodians*, as ſome think; the City and Iſle of *Gades*, planted by the *Tyrians*, who after ſpread themſelves over all the Coaſts of *Andaluzia*. The firſt that came in bodies hither, in the way of Conqueſt, were the *Celta*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*; who mixing themſelves with the *Iberi*, cauſed the whole Countrey to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it, is very uncertain. Of the invaſion of it by the *Carthaginians*, there is a greater certainty. Who being beaten out of *Sicil* by the conquering *Romans*, *Anno V.C.* 512. And not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the Weſt; and paſſing through the ſtraights of *Gibraltar*, by the Iſle of *Gades* (their own long before) landed in *Spain*, under the conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loſs of *Sicily*. In leſs than 20 years following, *Amilcar*, *Aſdrubal* his Son-in-law, and *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, had made almoſt all *Spain* ſubject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Weſtern Ocean to the *Pyrenees*; deſtroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and ſtrook ſo great a terror into all the Countrey, that had not *Annibals* deſign carried him to *Italy*, the State of *Carthage* had been abſolute Maſters of it without further oppoſition or reſiſtance. But *Annibal* having taken all his old Souldiers with him; and thoſe that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts ſufficient to go through with it: they loſt it piece-meal to the *Romans*, but in leſs time than they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*: the valour and good fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining power of that mighty State. The laſt that here commanded for the State of *Carthage* was *Aſdrubal* the Son of *Gilgo*; who being beaten by *Scipio* into the Iſland of *Gades*, left that alſo to the keeping of *Mago*, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deſerted, it forthwith yielded to the *Romans*; the *Carthaginians* after this never poſſeſſing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The *Romans* thus becomming Maſters of a great part of it, divided it into *Ulteriorem*, lying from the River *Iberus* Weſtward, becauſe the furtheſt off from them: and *Citeriorem*, between the ſaid River and the *Pyrenees*. But having totally ſubdued it, they divided it into three main parts. 1. *Taraconenſem*, ſo called of *Taragon*, the chief City of it, containing *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Biſcay*, *Gallicia*, &c. 2. *Baticam*, ſo named of the River *Batis*, which runneth through it, comprehending the now Countreys of *Granada*, *Andaluzia*, and part of *Extremadura*. 3. *Luſitanicam*, denominated from the *Luſitani*, the moſt potent people of that part, differing in extent from the preſent *Portugal*, (though this called *Luſitania* by our modern *Latiniſts*) for the old *Luſitania* comprehended part of *Extremadura*, and ſome part of the two *Caſtiles*; and no more of the preſent *Portugal*, than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers *Ana* and *Duero*: that on the South of *Ana* being laid to *Batica*; and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Taraconnenſis*. Of theſe three parts, *Batica*, was in moſt eſteem under the *Romans*, inſomuch, that it contained 8 *Roman* Colonies, 8 *Municipal* Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the Rights and Priviledges of the *Latins*. The reaſon thereof was, that the people of this Countrey having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the reſt, for a long time reſiſted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of *Rome* in *Spain*, *Scipio Africanus* laid the firſt foundation of the *Roman* Government in this Country; which building, though undertaken by many excellent work-men, was not throughly finiſhed till the dayes of *Auguſtus*, being almoſt 200 years ſince the firſt attempt. He roofed it, ſtrengthned it, and made it a principal building in his *Monarchical* City. For the old *Incola* were exceeding valiant and reſolute, ſometimes diſgracing, ſometimes endangering the *Roman* reputation; inſomuch that there were more Commanders loſt in thoſe Wars, than any other. At firſt the *Romans* fought not with the *Spaniards*, but with the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*; then periſhed both the *Scipio's*, *viz.* The Father and the Unkle of *Africanus*. *Viriathus* held war for 20 years, *Numantia* held out 15, the *Aſtures* remained unconquered till the time of *Auguſtus*; and alſo reſolutely maintained their particular liberties, *ut dijudicari non poterat* (ſaith *Paterculus*;) Hiſpanis *an* Romanis *plus eſſet in armis roboris, & utur populus alteri pariturus foret.* Such manner of men were the antient *Spaniards* under *Rome*, and *Carthage*; the firſt people of the Continent of *Europe* (excepting *Italy*) on which the *Romans* did begin to enlarge their Empire; and the laſt that wholly were ſubdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at laſt, and brought under the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Caſar*; it was governed by their *Proconſulls*, *Prators*, and other Magiſtrates, according to the diviſion before-mentioned. But *Conſtantine* the *Great* in his new modelling of the Empire, laying ſome part of *Africk* to it, made it a *Dioceſe* of the Empire; made ſubject to the *Prafectus Pratorio* for *Gaul*, by whoſe *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into theſe ſeven Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Batica*, 2. *Luſitania*, bounded as before; 3. *Gallicia*, containing the modern *Gallicia*, *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the greateſt part of the *Old Caſtile*, and ſo much of *Portugal* as lyeth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*. 4. *Carthaginenſis*, ſo called from the City of *New Carthage*, comprehending *New Caſtile*, *Murcia*, and *Valentia*, with part of the *Old Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Andaluſia*. 5. *Taraconenſis*, embracing all *Biſcay*, *Navarre*, and *Catalogne*, with the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Aragon*. 6. *Tingitana*, ſo called from *Tingis* (now *Tangier*) a Town of *Africk*, on the oppoſite Coaſt, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*: And 7. the *Province of the Ilands*, containing *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuſa*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which ſeven Provinces, the three firſt were *Conſulares*, governed by *Proconſuls*; the other four from their being under *Praſidents* were called *Praſidiary*. Being thus ſetled, it continued a *Roman* Dioceſe till about the year 400. when it was ſubdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandalls*; of which people, their beginning, atchievments, and final Period, we will ſpeak more when we come to *Africk*, where they fixed themſelves: invited thereunto, partly to eſchew the ill neighbourhood of the *Gothes*, who began to grow too potent for them: and partly to ſatisfie the deſires of *Boniface*, Governor of that Province for the Emperor *Valentinian* the third; againſt whom he had then rebelled, and wanted ſuch ſupport to make good his action. Theſe being gone, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entred with them, could not long ſubſiſt; but were finally broken by the *Gothes*, and afterwards diſpoſſeſſed of their Kingdoms alſo, (though ſuffered to remain in the Country ſtill) as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Gothes* (of whom we ſhall ſpeak more in *Sweden*, and have already made ſome mention when we were in *Gaul*) having ſacked *Rome*, and waſted *Italy*, under the conduct of *Alarick*; they were brought out of that Country by the gift of *Narbonenſis* in *Gaul*, and ſo much of *Taraconenſis* in *Spain* as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the compoſition being ratified by the marriage of *Athaulfus*, the Succeſſor of *Alaric*, with *Placidia*, Siſter to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor. *Villia*, or *Wallia*, the next of name and note (for *Sigeric* who interpoſed, reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it) Succeſſor of *Athaulfus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania* and *Carthaginenſis*, added thoſe Provinces alſo unto his Eſtates, and confined the *Vandals* within *Batica*; was the firſt of the *Gothes* which entituled himſelf King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*. By their agreement with the *Romans*, they were to keep thoſe Provinces for the uſe of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations; but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement, having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania*, by the Prowess of *Vallia*, and the *Swevi* out of *Batica*, under the conduct of *Theodorick*, the Brother of *Toriſmund*, they fell upon the *Romans* themſelves; whom *Euricus*

cus and his Succeſſors, by little and little, diſpoſſeſſed of all *Spain* on this ſide of the Straights. *Tingitana* held out longeſt, as furtheſt off, unfortunately attempted by *Theudes* the ninth King of the *Gothes*: whoſe Souldiers being ſet upon by the *Romans* on the Lords day, or Sunday, refuſed to fight in their own defence; and were ſo miſerably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superſtition of a *Lords day Sabbath* prevail upon this *melancholick and devout people. But what this *Theudes* could not do, was performed by *Suintilla*; who in the ſhort time of his Reign, *An.* 642. made the Conqueſt abſolute.

Let us next look upon the *Gothes* as Lords of *Spain*, and we ſhall find them to have been *Chriſtians* in Religion; and ſomewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and converſation with the *Gracians*, before they turned their Forces into the Weſt. Their company more deſired in this reſpect than that of the *Vandals*; who were not only *Pagans*, but far more barbarous. But theſe *Gothes* being for long time of the *Arian* Faction, did grievouſly afflict and perſecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this error till the death of *Leonigild* (or *Leutigildis* as ſome call him) the laſt Patron and Aſſertor of it. Their Government *Monarchical*, but the Kings *Elective*, (though for the moſt part they kept themſelves to the Regal Family:) an Excommunication being laid on ſuch, by the fifth Councel of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that eſtabliſhed courſe. Their Rule of Government was *Cuſtom*, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written Laws being firſt made by *Euricus*, which the enſuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What elſe concerneth them, we ſhall find in the cloſe of this Catalogue of

The Kings of the *Gothes* in *Spain*.

A.	*Ch.*				
420	1	*Vallia* 20.	601	16	*Luiba* II. 2.
440	2	*Theodoric* 13.	603	17	*Victoricus* 7.
453	3	*Thoriſmund* 3.	610	18	*Gundebarls* 20.
457	4	*Theodoric* II 14.	630	19	*Siſebulus* 9.
470	5	*Henry*, or *Euricus* 18.	639	20	*Richard* II. 2.
493	6	*Alaricus* 21.	641	21	*Suintilla* 3.
511	7	*Genſalaric* 3.	644	22	*Siſeranda* 7.
513	8	*Amalaric* 11.	651	23	*Suintilla* II. 4.
526	9	*Theudes* 18.	655	24	*Tulgas* 2.
542	10	*Theodogiſdus* 3.	657	25	*Vidiſuindus* 10.
546	11	*Agila* 5.	667	26	*Receſuind* 13.
551	12	*Arthanagilus* 14,	680	27	*Bamba* 9.
565	13	*Luiba* 3.	689	28	*Ering* 7.
568	14	*Leonigild* 18.	696	29	*Egypea* 7.
586	15	*Richard* 15.	703	30	*Vitiza* 13.
			716	31	*Roderick*, the laſt King of the *Gothes*

in *Spain*, elected to the prejudice of the Sons of *Vitiza*, which after proved the ruine and overthrow of the Kingdom. For though the Kingdom went for the moſt part by Election, and that they had reſpect to the next of blood, (as hath this time in *Poland*, and *Bohemia*) very few *interlopers* being here admitted: yet ſome there were, who either by their merit, or ſome opportunity, got the poſſeſſion of the Kingdom; though not at all relating to the Royal Family. Of which kind were *Theudes*, an *Oſtro-Goth*, ſometimes the Governour hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, Protector of this Kingdom, in the minority of *Amalaric*; and *Theudegiſolus*, Nephew to *Totilas*, one of the Succeſſors to *Theodorick*. The reſt of principal note were, 1. *Theodorick* the firſt, ſlain in the battell near *Tholouze* againſt *Attila* the *Hunne*; in defence of his own Countries, and the *Roman* Empire. 2. *Theodorick* the ſecond, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Batica*; and 3. *Leonigild* or *Leutigilde*, who deprived them of *Gallicia* alſo. 4. *Reccaredus* the firſt, who firſt embraced the *Catholick* Doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arianiſme*; and for that cauſe firſt honoured with the Title of the *Catholick* King; afterwards reſumed by *Alfonſus* the firſt King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fifth. 5. *Enricus*, or *Henricus* as ſome call him, as remarkable for *Civil Polity*, as *Reccaredus* for piety, as being the *Lycurgus* or *Legiſlator* of this people, nor governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain cuſtoms, or at the pleaſure of ſuch Officers as the Kings ſet over them. 5. *Suintill*, ſon of *Reccaredus* the ſecond, who having in the ſhort time of his Reign expelled the *Roman* Forces out of *Tingitana*, *Anno* 642. was the firſt Monarch of all *Spain*, whereof *Tingitana* (though on the other ſide of the Sea) had been made a Province by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, as before was ſaid. And of this Province was *Julianus* Governour in the time of *Roderick*, who being of the Faction of the ſonnes of *Vitiza*, ſtomacked his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the Kings diſpleaſure. Who ſending him upon an Embaſſie to the *Moors* of *Africa*, in the mean time defloured his Daughter named *Cana*: which the Father took in ſuch indignation, that he procured the *Moors* (amongſt whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into *Spain*. This requeſt they performed under the conduct of *Muſa* and *Tariffe*; and having made a full Conqueſt, ſubjected it to the great *Caliphs* or *Mahometan* Emperors. It is recorded in a *MS.* Hiſtory of the *Saracens*, that at the firſt coming of *Tariffe* into *Spain*, a poor woman of the Country being willingly taken Priſoner, fell down at his feet, kiſſed them, and told him that ſhe had heard her Father (who was lettered,) ſay, that *Spain* ſhould be conquered by a people whoſe General ſhould have a Mole on his right ſhoulder;

and in whom one of his hands ſhould be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers againſt the next encounter, uncloathed himſelf, and ſhewed the mark; which ſo encouraged them that they now doubted not the Victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horſe. *Tariff* had 30000 Horſe, and 180000 Foot. The battell continued ſeven dayes together, from morning to night; at laſt the *Moors* were victorious. What became of King *Roderick* was never known. His Souldiers took one arrayed in their Kings apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a Shepherd, with whom the King, after the diſcomfiture, had changed clothes. It is written alſo in *Rodericus Toletanus*, that before the coming of thoſe *Saracens*, King *Roderick* upon hope of ſome treaſure, did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched: but found nothing but Pictures which reſembled the *Moors*; with a Propheſie, that whenſoever the Palace was there opened, the People there reſembled ſhould overcome *Spain*; and ſo it hapned, *An.* 724.

The *Moors*, now Lords of *Spain* by the treaſon of *Julian* (who having ſeen the miſerable death of his wife and children, was ſtarved in Priſon by the *Africans*) permited the free uſe of *Religion* to the old Inhabitants; leaſt they ſeeking new dwellings for the liberty of Conſcience, ſhould leave their native Soyl deſolate. The *Moors* finiſhed their Conqueſt in five years, ſay ſome; others in two, and ſome again in eight Moneths. To keep the new conquered Country in ſubjection, no way was ſo convenient as to plant Colonies: but the *Moriſco* women would not abandon their old ſeats. Hereupon *Muſa* and *Tariffe*, by gifts, pardons and peſwaſions, drew many *Chriſtian* women to forſake their *Religion*, whom they married to the Souldiers. Not long after *Ulidor Ulit*, the great *Caliph*, ſent over about 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*; aſſigning them a convenient portion of Lands, to be held with great immunities, and upon ſmall rents. Theſe politick courſes notwithſtanding, the *Moors* long enjoyed not the ſole Soveraignty herein: for the *Chriſtians* having now recover'd breath, choſe themſelves Kings; and the Authority of the *Caliphs* declining, gave the *Moors* liberty to erect divers petit Royalities: So that at laſt *Spain* fell into a fifteenfold diviſion, *vix.* into the Kindoms and proprietary Eſtates of 1. *Navarre.* 2. *Biſcay*, and 3. *Guipuſcoa.* 4. *Leon*, and *Oviedo.* 5. *Callicia.* 6. *Corduba.* 7. *Granada.* 8. *Murcia.* 9. *Toledo.* 10. *Caſtile.* 11. *Portugal* and the Members of it, 12. *Valentia.* 13. *Catalonia.* 14. the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and 15. that of *Aragon*: not to ſay any thing of the petit Kindoms of *Iaen*, *Algozire*, and *Sevil*, beſides others of like nature to them; erected by the factious and divided *Moors*, but of ſhort continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Caſtile*, *Portugal*, and *Aragon*; the Kingdoms and Eſtates of *Leon*, *Navarre*, *Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biſcay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Caſtile*; *Protugal* with *Algarve*, and the Iſles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it ſelf; *Valentia*, *Catalonia*, and *Majorca*, under that of *Aragon*.

1. NAVARRE.

NAVARRE, the ſecond Kingdom for antiquity in *Spain*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Principality of *Bearn*, in the Kingdom of *France*; on the Weſt firſt with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after with a little River falling into it, near *Calahorra*, by which divided from *Caſtile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuſcoa*; and the South, with the River *Aragon*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent antiently than it is at the preſent, the little Province of *Alara*, lying toward *Guipuſcoa*, and the whole Country of *Rioye* (on the Weſt ſide of the River *Ebro*) being taken from it, and reckoned Members of *Caſtile* by *Alfonſo*: Howſoever, we ſhall look upon it in its antient bounds, and ſhall accordingly take notice of the Cities and chief Towns thereof.

It was called at firſt the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, from a Town of that name, ſituate in the moſt inacceſſible part of the *Pyrenees*; and therefore choſe by *Garcia Ximines* the firſt King thereof, for the ſeat of his Kingdom, as moſt defenſible againſt the fury of the *Moors*. Afterwards it took the name *Navarre*, either from *Navois*, ſignifying a plain and Champagn Country: firſt uſed by *Inigo Ariſta* the ſixth King, who having taken *Pampelune*, abandoned the hill Countries, and betook himſelf unto the *Plains*; or from *Navarriere*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but long time after.

The Country though environed on all ſides with mighty Mountains, yet of it ſelf is ſaid to be reaſonably fruitfull; well watered, and for the moſt part plain and level; as before is ſaid. It taketh up ſome parts of both ſides of the *Pyrenees*: the *Spaniſh* ſide being fertile, and adorned with trees; the *French* ſide generally very bare and naked. That on the *Spaniſh* ſide, and on the ſummits of the Mountains, now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, is called *High Navarre*: that on the *French* ſide, now called *Baſe*, or *Low Navarre*; eſtimated at a ſixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the *French*; incorporated by King *Lewis* the 13th, to the Realm of *France*, *An.* 1620.

Places of moſt importance in *Baſe Navarre*, 1. S. *Palai*, formerly the place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdom; but in the year 1620. removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bearn*: both *Bearn* and *Baſe Navarre*, which had before been governed as diſtinct Eſtates, from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2. *Navarreux*, a Town of great importance, ſeven Leagues from *Pau*; well fortified, and as well munitioned: King *Lewis* the 13th, finding in it at his coming thither, *An.* 1620, no fewer than 45 Canons all mounted, beſides 40 Culverins and ſmaller

Peeces, with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals anſwerable thereunto. 3. *Pied de Port*, or Saint *John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edge of *France*, againſt which formerly a Peece of ſpecial ſtrength. 4. *Roncevallis*, or *Roncevaux*, ſituate in the moſt pleaſant Country of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a ſmall but delightful Valley; famous for the great battel fought near unto it, in the ſtreights or entrances of the Mountains leading to this Valley; betwixt the *French* under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moors* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which battel, by the treachery of *Gavelon*, 40000 of the *French* were ſlain; and amongſt them *Rowland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the Peers of *France*, of whom ſo many Fables are reported in the old *Romances*, the firſt Author of which Fables paſſeth under the name of Archbiſhop *Turpin*, ſaid to be one of thoſe twelve *Peers*; who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the Great, hath interlaced his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof the noble Acts of that puiſſant Emperor, and his gallant Followers, are much obſcured and blemiſhed by thoſe very pens, which in times ſucceeding did employ themſelves to advance the ſame.

Of ſpecial note in *High Navarre*, 1. *Victoria*, firſt built, or rather re-edified by *Sancho* the fourth, King of *Navarre*, *Anno* 1181. by whom thus named in memory of ſome victory obtained thereabouts, againſt the *Caſtilians*, whereas before his time it was called *Casteiz*: as in like caſe there had been many Towns, built by the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of *Victory*, which we ſhall meet withall hereafter. Situate in the place of the antient *Vellica*, but graced with the priviledges, and name of a City by *John* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, after it came under the command of that Crown, *Anno* 1432. A Town belonging properly to the little Province of *Olava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in and amongſt the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *Anno* 1200 by *Alphonſo* the fourth of *Caſtile*, it was in the year 1332 incorporated into that Crown as a part hereof; as were ſome other Towns and Members of this kingdom alſo, won by the *Caſtilians*. 2. *Viane*, on the Eaſt of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Legragno* on the other ſide of the water (from which diſtant not above a League) as the Frontire Town againſt *Caſtile*. Of greateſt note for being the tile of the eldeſt Son of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*: advanced unto this honour by King *Charles* the third, *Anno* 1421. in imitation of the like cuſtom in *Caſtile*, where the eldeſt Son was called Prince of the *Aſturias*: but not leſs memorable for the death of *Caſar Borgia*, ſlain near unto it in an ambuſh after all his wandrings, and interchangeableneſs of Fortunes. For being Son of *Alexander* the ſixth, by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquiſhing that Title, by *Charles* the eighth of *France* created Duke of *Valentinois* in the Province of *Daulphine*: during his Fathers life, he had reduced under his obedience divers of the Eſtates which antiently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*: but after his deceaſe impriſoned by Pope *Julio* the ſecond, who was jealous (not without good cauſe) of his plots and practice. From *Rome* he ſtole unto *Gonſalvo*, then Vice-Roy of *Naples*, for *Ferdinando* the *Catholick*; who notwithſtanding his ſafe conduct, ſent him priſoner to *Spain*: but breaking Priſon (deſperately ſliding down a window) he came at laſt into this kingdom, and was here ſlain in an *Ambuſcado*, as before was ſaid. So many times was *Machiavels* great Politician over-reached by Bookmen and Souldiers. 3. *Sobrarbe*, in the moſt inacceſſible parts of the *Pirenees*, for that cauſe made the firſt ſeat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entituled from thence the Kings of *Sobrarbe*. Made afterwards a diſtinct Kingdom of *Navarre* by *Sancho* the Great, who gave it to *Gonſales* his youngeſt Son: after whoſe death (not having iſſue) it was ſeized on by *Don Raymer* the firſt King of *Aragon*, and made a member of that Crown. 4. *Sangueſſa*, a Town of a large Territory and juriſdiction, priviledged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Eſtates, and a ſtrong Fortreſs on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cauſe formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it ſometimes in their hands. 5. *Pampelun*, in the *Champagne* Country, on the banks of the River *Arga*, the *Metropolis* of this kingdom; and the ſeat Royal of its Kings ſince the Conqueſt of it from the *Moors* by *Inigo Ariſto* the ſixth King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts, that is to ſay, *Bourg*, *Peuplement*, and *Navarriere*; each having ſeveral Officers and Juriſdictions (the cauſe of many quarrels, and much blood amongſt them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magiſtrate, by King *Charles* the third. An antient Town firſt built by *Pompey* at the end of his Wars againſt *Sertorius*; in memory of whom called *Pompeiopolis* by our modern *Latiniſts*; but *Pampelon*, more near unto the preſent name, by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*: now an *Epiſcopal* Sea, the ſeat of the Vice-Roy, and one of the beſt fortified Towns of all *Spain*. 6. *Moia*, not far from the borders of *France*, where it joyneth on *Guipuſcoa*, a place of principal importance: the Caſtle whereof was one of the laſt pieces on this ſide of the Mountains, which held out for King *John* of *Albert* againſt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, in his ſurprizal of this kingdom. 7. *Montreal*. 8. *Olite*, and 9. *Tafalla*; all yielded with the reſt of this kingdom, to *Fredrick* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*: who had the happineſs to ſubdue this Realm to the Crown of *Caſtile*, as his Son *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugal*. 10. *Tudele*, on the Eaſtern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from the *Moors*, by a ſurprize by *Rotron* Earl of *Perch*, (a *French* man) coming with many other noble Perſons to the aid of *Alfonſo*, *K.* of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, at the ſiege of *Saragoſſa*, *Anno* 1110. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his ſervice; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Magdalen* Daughter of Earl *Rotrou*, with *Garcia* the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, Succeſſor in that kingdom to the ſaid *Alphonſo*. Of late times honoured with a little Univerſity there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, on his ſurprizal of that kingdom. 11. *Calahorra*, ſituate on the Weſtern banks of the *Iberus*, or *Ibro*, by *Ptolomy* called *Calagorina*, by *Strabo*, *Calaguris*, now a Biſhops See; taken from *Raimir* the ſecond King of *Navarre*, by *Alphonſo* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom, as alſo was 12 *Logrogno*, in the Country of *Rioye*, on the ſame banks of the River alſo. 13. *Eſtella*, bordering on *Caſtile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eaſtern ſide of the River) by *Lewis* the eleventh of *France*; made Umpire for the attonement of ſome differences betwixt *Henry* King of *Caſtile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; to ſatisfie that King for his charges in the former quarrell.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Vaſcones*, poſſeſſed not only of this tract, but of *Biſcay* and *Guipuſcoa* alſo, from them denominated: who paſſing over the *Pyrenees*, made themſelves maſters of that Province which is now called *Gaſcoigne* by the *French*, and *Vaſcovia* in *Latine*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *Moors*; it began to be a kingdom under *Garcia Ximines*, a noble man of the *Gothiſh* blood: who with 600 men only began to make head againſt the *Saracens*, *Anno* 716. firſt under the title of the kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, and after that of *Navarre*; for the reaſons formerly delivered. The ſixth from *Garcia Ximines*, was *Inigo* ſurnamed *Ariſta*, (ſo named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Son of *Simon* Earl of *Bigorre* in *Gaſcoigne*; elected to this Kingdom, on the death of *Ximines* the fifth King, *Anno* 840. or thereabout, as the next Heir (but in the collateral Line of *Don Garcia Ximines*, the firſt King of *Sobrarbe*. To him the taking of *Pampelune* is aſcribed moſt generally, though *Turquet* in his Hiſtory referr the ſame to *Garcia* the ſecond King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moors*, till forced from them by the prowes of *Charlemagne*; by them again recovered after the defeat of *Roncevals*, and held till the time of this King, who poſſeſſed himſelf of it. To this King alſo is aſcribed the firſt beginning of the Ceremony of Crowning and Anointing after the manner uſed by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provincial* cited in the titles of *Honour*, acknowledgeth no ſuch honour to theſe petit Kings; communicated only, in that time, to the Emperours of the Eaſt and Weſt, the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Sicil*. And therefore probable it is, that the cuſtom came into *Navarre* with the Houſe of *Champagne*. Other Kings of moſt note in the courſe of Story were, 3. *Fortun* the ſecond, Nephew of *Inigo Ariſta*, by his Son *Garcia* the third; who added unto his Eſtate the Earldom of *Aragon*, deſcended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Aſnarius*, or *Aznario*, the laſt Earl hereof. 4. *Sancho* the fourth, ſurnamed the Great, who firſt aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Spain*: his Predeceſſors uſing no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbe* or *Navarre*; his Contemporaries calling themſelves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Corduba*, according to the names of their ſeveral kingdoms; the *Gothes*, Kings of the *Gothes* in *Spain*; and ſo the *Vandalls* and the *Suevi*. Only the Earls of *Barcelone*, at their firſt erection by the *French*, entituled themſelves the Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Spain*, as if all were theirs; with brag and vanity enough. But this Prince had ſome good ground for it, as being by inheritance poſſeſſed of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; of *Caſtile*, in the right of his Wife *Donna Nugna*, or *Elvira*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the laſt Earl hereof; and by Conqueſt of a greater part of the Realm of *Leon*: ſo that almoſt all *Spain*, not poſſeſſed by the *Moors*, was become his own. Had theſe Eſtates remained entire to his Succeſſors, the *Moors* no doubt had ſooner loſt their hold in *Spain*; and the whole Continent had been brought under the obedience of one ſole Monarch. But this King either loving all his Sons alike, or elſe offended with the eldeſt, who moſt unnaturally had accuſed his own innocent Mother of the crime of Adultery; divided his Eſtates amongſt them: giving to *Garcia* his eldeſt Son, the Realm of *Navarre*, with that part of *Leon*, which he held by Conqueſt; to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Son, *Caſtile*; and *Aragon* to his baſe Son *Raymir*; both which he erected into kingdoms: and finally, to *Gonſale* his third Son, the Realm of *Sobrarbe*; then firſt diſmembred from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitick courſe, his Sons being all of equal Title and Eſtate, inſtead of oppoſing the common Foe, quarrelled with each other, and left the quarrell as a Legacy to their ſeveral Succeſſors; which miſchief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings; or left the reſt as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5. *Sancho* the fifth, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his Son *Garcia de Nagera*, unnaturally and traiterouſly ſlain by his Brother *Raymir*. After whoſe death, and the ſhort interpoſition of his Murtherer, this kingdom was ſeized on by the Kings of *Aragon*: three of which, viz. *Sancho Raymires*, *Pedro*, and *Alfonſo*, did ſeverally and ſucceſſively enjoy the ſame. 6. *Alfonſo* the laſt of the three Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*, ſurnamed the *Warriour*, who for a time was King of *Caſtile* alſo in the right of *Urraca* his Wife: in which reſpect he took unto himſelf the Title of *Emperour* of *Spain*, though not acknowledged ſo by others. But finally dying without iſſue, and his Brother *Raymir*, or *Raymond* called the *Monk* ſucceeding in *Aragon*; the kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir* Lord of *Monſen*, the direct Heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir* Lord of *Calahorra* his younger Son. 7. *Sancho* the eighth, the Nephew of this *Garcias Raymir*, by his Son *Sancho* the ſeventh, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, the laſt King of the Maſculine, and direct Line of the Kings of *Navarre*: the kingdom after his deceaſe paſſing by the Females, or Heirs general, to the Earls of *Champagne*, and ſo unto the Kings of *France*, the Houſes of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albret*, and *Vendoſme*: but never holding above three deſcents in any one Family. By means whereof, theſe Kings being barred from gaining any thing on the *Moors*, by the interpoſition of the Kings of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions, by any undertakings and Adventures by Sea, as the *Portugals* did: incorporated to their Crown as fair and large poſſeſſions in the Realm of *France*, as any of the others did in the *Spaniſh* Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Boix* and *Begorre*, united in the perſon of *Gaſton* of *Foix*; as thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Albret* in the perſon of *John* Earl of *Albret*; all lying together on the other ſide of the *Pyrenees*, all added to this Crown by marriage with the Heirs hereof: made up a fairer and wealthier Eſtate than *Navarre* it ſelf; inferior to few Provinces in the Realms of *Spain*. Not to ſay any thing of the acceſſion of the Country Palatine of *Champagne*, *Navarre.*

exchanged afterwards for ſome Lands in the County of *La March* in *Limoſin*; or of the Earldoms of *Eureux*, and the Dutchy of *Vendoſme*, as lying further off, and of leſſe importance: Nor of the great kingdom of *France* now herewith incorporate, as to the perſon of the King, though not in the poſſeſſion of this kingdom alſo. With ſo much judgement and ſucceſs did enſuing Kings (not otherwiſe able to enlarge their Territories) beſtow their Daughters; that the Diſtaffe proved as happy to this little kingdom, as the Sword to others. 8. *Charles*, the ſecond of that name, and the 30th King of *Navarre*, whom I mention not for any glorious Action atchieved in his life, (for that was full enough of ignominy) but for the ſtrangeneſs and hideouſneſs of his death. He was a Prince much given to *voluptuouſneſs*, and ſenſual pleaſures; which ſo waſted his ſpirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *Lethargy*. To comfort his benummed joynts, he was bound and ſewed up naked in a ſheet, ſteeped in boyling *Aqua-vitæ*. The Chirurgion having made an end of ſewing the ſheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the threed; took a wax-candle that ſtood lighted by him: but the flame running down by the threed, caught held on the ſheet; which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vita*) burned with that vehemency, that the miſerable King ended his dayes in the fire. 9. *John* of *Aragon*, the ſecond ſon of *Ferdinand* the firſt, in the life of his Brother *Alfonſo* was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the third, and on the death of his Brother, King of *Arragon* alſo. And though his Queen died long before him, in whoſe right he reigned, yet he kept poſſeſſion of the kingdom till his death, (reigning 54 years in all) notwithſtanding the oppoſition made againſt him by *Charles* Prince of *Viana*, his only Son by that marriage, and Heir apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquiſhed, impriſoned and at laſt poyſoned. 10. *John*, Earl of *Albret* in *Gaſcoigne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Catharine* his Wife: in whoſe reign the kingdom of *Navarre* was ſeized on by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, Son of the ſaid *John* King of *Aragon*, and *Navarre*, by a ſecond Wife. The manner of it we ſhall relate with more particulars, when we have ſummed the whole Succeſſion of

The Kings of *Navarre*.

An. Ch.		
716	1	*Garcia Ximines*. 42.
758	2	*Garcia* II. Son of *Garcia Ximines*.
822	3	*Fortunio*. 13.
815	4	*Sancho Garcia*. 17.
832	5	*Ximines Garcia*, the laſt of the direct Line of *Garcia*.
		An *Interregnum* of four years.
844	6	*Inigo* ſurnamed *Ariſta*, Earl of *Begorre* the next Heir Male of the Houſe of *Garcia Ximines*. 23.
867	7	*Garcia* III. ſurnamed *Inigo*. 18.
885	8	*Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*. 16.
901	9	*Sancho* II. called *Abarca*, Brother of *Fortunio* the ſecond. 19.
920	10	*Garcia* IV. 49.
969	11	*Sancho* III. 24.
993	12	*Garcia* V. ſurnamed the *Trembler*.
1000	13	*Sancho* IV. ſurnamed the *Great*, of whom ſufficiently before.
1034	14	*Garcia* VI. called *de Nagera*, eldeſt Son of *Sancho*. 20.
9094	15	*Sancho* V. ſlain by
1074	16	*Raymir*, the Brother of *Sancho* the fifth, diſpoſſeſſed by
1076	17	*Sancho* VI. ſurnamed *Ramires*, King of *Aragon*. 18.
1094	18	*Pedro* King of *Aragon*.
1104	19	*Alphonſo*, called the *Warriour*, the laſt of the Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*.
1134	20	*Garcia* VII. Nephew of *Garcia de Nagera*. 16.
1150	21	*Sancho* VII. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*.
1194	22	*Sancho* VIII. the laſt of the Male iſſue of *Garcia Ximines*. 40.
1234	23	*Theobald*, Earl of *Champagne*, Son of the Lady *Blanch*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the eighth. 19.
1253	24	*Theobald* II. Earl of *Champagne*. 18.
1271	25	*Henry*, Son of *Theobald* the ſecond. 3.
1274	26	*Joan*, the Daughter of *Henry*, maried to *Philip* the *Faire* of *France*. 31.
1305	27	*Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* 10.
1315	28	*Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*. 5.
1320	29	*Charles* the *Faire*, King of *France*. 8.
1328	30	*Jone* II. Queen of *Navarre*, the Daughter of *Lewis Hutin*. *Philip* II. Earl of *Eureux*.
1349	31	*Charles* II. Son of *Joane* and *Philip* of *Eureux*. 37.
1386	32	*Charles* III. Earl of *Eureux*. 39.
1425	33	*John*, Prince of *Aragon*, after the death of his elder Brother, King of *Aragon* alſo; the Husband of *Blanch*, the Daughter of *Charles* the third. 54.
1479	34	*Leonora*, Daughter of *John* and *Blanch*, the Widow of *Gaſton*, Earl of *Foix*; a Queen of 15 dayes onely.
1479	35	*Francis Phœbus*, Grand-child of *Leonora* and *Gaſton* of *Foix*, by their Son *Gaſton*, Prince of *Viana*.
1483	36	*Catharine* Siſter of *Francis*. *John* Earl of *Albret*.
1499	37	*Henry* II. Earl of *Albret*, Son of *John* and *Catharine*.
1556	38	*Joane* III. Daughter of *Henry* of *Albret*. *Antony* of *Burbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme* in *France*.
1572	39	*Henry* III. the Sonne of *Antony* and *Joane*, after the death of *Henry* the third of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Realm, by the name of *Henry* the fourth.
1610	40	*Lewis* II. of *Navarre*, and XIII. of *France*.
	41	*Lewis* III. of *Navarre*, and XIV. of *France*, now living, with

whom remain the rights, but not the poſſeſſion of this Kingdom. For in the Reign of *Catharine*, and *John* of *Albret*, *Ferdinand* gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the *Moors*, and ſurprized this kingdom, altogether unprovided, and deſtitute of means to make the ſmalleſt reſiſtance, *Anno* 1512. The pretended reaſon of this ſurprizal, was an Excommunication laid on theſe Princes by the *Pope*, of which this King took upon him to be Executioner: but the true cauſe was an antient deſire which this King had to poſſeſs this frontire kingdom; it being a ſtrong Bulwark againſt *France*. It hapned then that *Lewis* the twelfth, having incurred the diſpleaſure of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, was together with all his adherents, excommunicated; and his and their Eſtates given to ſuch as could or would ſubdue them. The King and Queen of *Navarre* were at this time both *French* Subjects: he in reſpect of *Albret*, his paternal inheritance, and ſhe of her Eſtates of *Foix* and *Bearn*; and therefore ſided with the *French* King. *Ferdinand* having (as we ſaid) levyed an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moors*, turneth upon the *French* King; and demanded of theſe Princes, not only a free paſſage through their Country, but alſo to have certain places of ſtrength put into his hands, for his better aſſurance. Theſe unjuſt demands the *Navarroys* denyed. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the kingdom, the greateſt part of which he took without a blow given: the *French* King being as backward in affording due aſſiſtance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The *French* netled with this loſs, divers times attempted the recovery of it, but in vain: for the *Spaniard* ſtill keepeth thoſe parts of it which lie on that ſide of the *Pyrenees*; leaving the reſt, which lieth on the *French* ſide of thoſe Mountains (being a ſixth part of the whole) to the Deſcendents of thoſe Princes whom he diſſeized.

The Arms of *Navarre*, are *Gules*, a Carbuncle nowed *Or*. Which Carbuncle having a reſemblance unto chains of Gold, is ſaid to have been firſt taken by *Sancho* the eighth, in memory that he and his Forces had firſt broken the Fortification made with chains, about the Pavilion of *Mahomet Enaſer*, the *Meramomolin* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*: before which times the Arms of this kingdom had been *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the *Lilly*, begun by *Garcia* the ſixth: their Blazen a pot of *Lillies* with the Portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it; their duty to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain *Ave-Maries*.

3. BISCAY and GVIPVSCOA.

OF theſe two we ſhall ſpeak together, becauſe of the ſimilitude and reſemblances which are between them, both in the Country and the people; the names being alſo forged from the ſame Original: Bounded on the Weſt, with the kingdom of *Leon*; on the Eaſt with the *Pyrenees*, and *Guienne* in the Realm of *France*: on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre*, and old *Caſtile*. Thus named from the *Vaſcones*, inhabiting the neighbouring kingdom of *Navarre* in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people in the year 640. or thereabouts, paſſed over unto the further ſide of the *Pyrenees*, where they took up thoſe parts of *France*, ſince from them called *Gaſcoigne*. The reſt continuing in their old Seats, or ſpreading more into the Weſt towards the *Cantabrians*, gave to thoſe parts the name of *Guipuſcoa*, and *Viſcaia*, (for ſo the *Spaniards* write and ſpeak it) now by us called *Biſcay*: their Language alſo (which is moſt different from the reſt of *Spain*) being called the *Baſquiſh*, more near in ſound to that of *Vaſcons*, the Original name,

The whole Country is very Mountainous and Woody, yielding but little ſtore of Corn, and leſs of Wine: the defect of the firſt being ſupplied from other Countries, of the laſt by *Sider*; for which end they plant Apples here in great abundance. But from thoſe Woods they draw continually great ſtore of Timber for the building of Ships: and from thoſe Hills there do not only iſſue pleaſant Rivers, (ſome ſay 150 in number) of which *Iberius* and *Duero* are ſaid to be two; but ſuch infinite ſtore of Iron and Steel, that no Country yieldeth better or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cauſe the *Armory of Spain*; and giving occaſion unto *Pliny* to report, that there was in this Country, a whole Mountain of Iron: *In Maritima Cantabria parte Mons prærupte altus (incredibile dictu) totus ex ea materia eſt*, lib. 34. cap. 45. Nor do they only furniſh all *Spain* with Iron, which they make into Inſtruments of War, and others for domeſtick uſes, but with Timber alſo for their ſhipping; with which ſo ſtored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Eaſtern bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and the Realm of *France*, which is called *GVIPVSCOA*; and on the Weſtern bordering on the kingdom of *Leon*, which properly is called *BISCAY*: the Town *Montrico* ſtanding in the Confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the ſame Original, though by ſeveral means united to the Crown of *Caſtile*; both ſpeak the ſame *Cantabrian* Language, now called the *Baſquiſh*; the people of both being more rude and ſimple than the reſt of *Spain*; but ſtanding much upon their Gentry, according to the cuſtom of moſt mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that thoſe of *Guipuſcoa*, by reaſon of their Traffick and Commerce with other Countries, ſavour a little more of *Chriſtianity*, than the others do: in which the common *Biſcains* are ſo far to ſeek, that though they have ſome general notions of *GOD* and *CHRIST*, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith in any tolerable meaſure. And thus a view being taken of thoſe general notions, in which both Countries are concerned; let us next look upon them in their ſeveral and diſtinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And firſt for *GUIPUSCOA*, The places of chiefeſt note in it are, 1. S. *Sebaſtians*, Biſcay.

(*Don Baſtia*, as the Vulgar call it) a noted and well-traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Gurvinzo*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrance with two ſtrong Caſtles founded upon the oppoſite Rocks; and honoured with an *Epiſcopal* See. 2. *Tolaſa* (commonly called *Toloſette*) at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria*, and *Duarzo*. 3. *Placenza*, on the River *Denia*, inhabited by none but *Black-Smiths*, who do attend their Hammers with ſuch endleſſe diligence, that *Vulcans* Forge may ſeem to be tranſlated hither out of the Iſle of *Lemnos*. 4. *Guetaria*, beautified with a ſafe and convenient Haven, defended from all winds by a little Iſland lying before it: the birth-place of *Sebaſtian del Cano* that famous Pilot; the firſt that ſailed about the World; *Magellanus* who went chief in that expedition periſhing in the Action. 4. *Fonterabia* at the mouth of the River *Vidoſa*, which divides the Country from *Guienne*, in *France*; for that cauſe very well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned. 6. *Remeria*, ſituate near a Brook abounding with moſt excellent Salmons. 7. *Montrico* at the mouth of the River *Denia*, the fartheſt Town hereof on the edg of *Biſcay*. Moſt of which ſtand upon or near the Sea; there being but few Towns of note within the Land (though ſtore enough of ſcattered Villages, as in *Biſcay* alſo) becauſe of the roughneſſe of the Mountains.

As for the Fortunes and affairs of this part of the Country, after the ſubverſion of the Kingdom of the *Gothes* in *Spain* (for till that time they followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of this continent) it was at firſt a member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wreſted from King *Sancho* the ſixth, by *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1079. by whom committed to the Government of *Lope Diaz de Haro*, Lord of *Biſcay*. Reſtored again to the Kings of *Navarre* upon ſome following Capitulations; if ſo continued till the year 1200. when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Caſtile*, they offered themſelves to the ſubjection of *Alphonſo* the fourth; who without ſo much as one blow ſtrook, became Maſter of all the Country, and left it ſetled and confirmed unto his Succeſſors, as it hath ever ſince remained.

2. For *BISCAY* next, the Principal Towns thereof are, 1. *Larrabecua*, the chief Town of this Provence in elder times, in the chief Church whereof the Kings of *Spain*, as Lords of *Biſcay*, uſe to be ſolemnly inaugurated; here making Oath to maintain the liberties of the Country, and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the people of it. 2. *Berneo*, an old Town alſo, and amply priviledged; the franchiſes whereof the Kings are ſolemnly ſworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the honour of S. *Euphemia*. 3. *Guernica*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of theſe Countries. Then of a later date we have 4. *Bilbo*, or *Bilbao*, ſituate ſome two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep *Creek* thereof; on the other ſide ſurrounded with Mountains; built out of the ruins of the old *Flaviobriga*, by *Diego de Haro* Lord of *Biſcay*, *Anno* 1300. and ſituate the beſt of any Town in this Country for plenty of Victuals, eſpecially for fleſh and moſt excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all ſorts of weapons (their chiefeſt Manufacture) the *Bilbo* Blades in ſuch requeſt being brought from hence. Beſides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal alſo in Wool, by the vent of which Commodities they are grown ſo wealthy, that here are many private Merchants, which build yearly three or four good ſhips for their own trade only. 5. *Laredo*, a Sea Town alſo with a capable Port: The landing place of *Charles* the fifth, when he had relinquiſhed the Empire, and all his other Eſtates, with reſolution to ſpend the reſt of his life in *Spain*, in a private manner: it being obſervable, that he was no ſooner landed, but the Admiral Ship in which he came, and the greateſt part of the Navy which came with him, periſhed in the Haven; to ſhew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this reſolution. 6. *Portugaletre*, commodiouſly ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houſes; and ſerveth them exceeding fitly, for the lading and unlading of their commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this tract before the coming in of the *Vaſcones*, were the *Cantabri*; theſe ſubdivided into the ſeveral Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Cariſti*, the *Autrigones*, the *Varduli*, and the *Cantabri* properly ſo called. From theſe deſcend the modern *Biſcains*. An Argument whereof may be their Language, different from the reſt of *Spain*, and ſaid by ſome to have continued in this County ever ſince the confuſion at *Babel*. And though they overſhoot themſelves, that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedegree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the antient Language of *Spain*, is more than probable: becauſe this people have ever continued without any mixture of forreign Nations, as being never throughly ſubdued either by *Romans*, *Carthaginians*, *Gothes*, or *Moors*; and ſo they remained, as in their liberties not Maſtered, ſo in their language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continueth uncorrupt, in the hilly parts of *Granada*; the Tongue of the old *Britans*, in *Wales*; and the antient *Epirotick*, in the high, woody, and more mountainous parts of that Country. And though thoſe of *Guipuſcoa* ſpeak the ſame Language alſo, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words (by reaſon of their neighbourhood with *France*, and commerce with ſtrangers) than it is in *Biſcay*; where the old natural Language, whatſoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biſcains* differ from the reſt of *Spain* in *language* only, but in *Cuſtoms* alſo, four of which I will here ſet down as a light to the reſt. Firſt they account themſelves free from taxes, and contributions to the Kings of *Spain*; yielding them obedience with their *Bodies*, but not with their *Purſes*. And when any of the *Spaniſh* Kings in their *Progreſſes*, come to the Frontiers of this Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entreth into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him ſome few Braſſe pieces (*Maravides* they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown) in a Leathern Bag, hanged at the end of a Lance; but withall they tell him, that he muſt not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey. Secondly, they admit no Biſhops to come amongſt them: and when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* came in *Progreſſe* hither, accompanyed amongſt others by the Biſhop of *Pampelune*; the people aroſe in Arms, *Biſcay.*

drave back the Biſhop, and gathering all the duſt on which they thought he had trodden, caſt it into the Sea. Which averſneſſe unto Biſhops, as they firſt took up in all probability, on ſome hard uſage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and ſtill retain it out of a ſtubborneſs of nature, moſt peculiar to them: ſo poſſibly enough it is, that the want of Biſhops, and Epiſcopal *Viſitations* amongſt the *Biſcains*, is not the leaſt cauſe of that ignorance and rudeneſs (ſpoken of before) which is found amongſt them. Thirdly, they allow not any Prieſts to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Concubine* with him: conceiving it unpoſſible for them to keep their Wives unto themſelves, if the *Curate* hath not a Woman of his own. Fourthly, the Women at all meetings do firſt taſte of the Cup, and ſo diſpoſe of it to the men; which Cuſtom they have had amongſt them ever ſince *Ogne*, the Counteſs of *Caſtile*, attempted to have poiſoned her Son *Sancho*, in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants, they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Country againſt the *Romans*, when the reſidue of *Spain* was ſubdued; and were at laſt, not without great effuſion of blood, and manifeſt tokens of manly reſolution, and heroick ſpirits on their parts, vanquiſhed by the darling of Fortune, *Auguſtus*. Such hilly and mountainous people are alwayes the laſt that are conquered, and the firſt that ſtand on their own guard: as beſides theſe *Biſcains*, the *Navarrois* and *Auſtrians*, here in *Spain*, in reſpect of the *Moors*; and our *Britains*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a ſharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occaſion good and able men; or that the Forts of Natures own building are not ſo eaſily won, as defended; and that the unpleaſantneſſe of the Country, and unfruitfullneſſe of the ſoil, yield no occaſion to ſtrangers, to deſire and adventure for it, I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at laſt, they were firſt caſt into the Province of *Tarraconnenſis*; and ſo continued after the new modelling of *Spain*, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Gothes*, but reſigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the reſt of that Province. Nor loſt they any thing of their antient and natural courage, by the intermixture of the *Vaſcons*; continuing ſtill good Souldiers both for Sea and Land: a ſtubborn, fierce, and couragious people; impatient of ſervitude, and not eaſy to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The laſt of all the *Spaniards* that ſubmitted to the fury of the *Moors*, (excepting thoſe of the *Aſturias* never conquered by them) and one of the firſt Provinces which ſhook off that yoak: animated and conducted in that undertaking, by *Soria*, deſcended of the blood Royal of *Scotland*, *Anno* 87. made upon that good ſervice the firſt Lord of *Biſcay*. After this they continued a free and diſtinct Eſtate under their own *Proprietary* Lords and Princes of the noble Family of *Haro*; till that *Nero* of *Spain*, *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*, violently took it from *Donna Jeanne*, the right heir of it, *An.* 1358. From which *Donna Jeanne*, the eldeſt Daughter maried to *Ferdinand* the younger Son of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*, iſſued the Lady *Jeanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the ſecond, and Mother of *John* the firſt, both Kings of *Caſtile*: by which laſt, this Country was united to that Crown for ever, *Anno* 1379. The names of the Propriatory Lords of this Eſtate, we have in this following Catalogue of

The Lords of *Biſcay*.

870 1 *Soria*, the ſon of *Lope* of *Biſcay*, but Nephew by the Mothers ſide to a King of *Scotland*, the firſt Lord of *Biſcay*.
2 *Manſo Lopes* the ſon of *Soria*.
3 *Inigo* the Deaf, ſon of *Manſo Lopes*.
4 *Lopes Diaz*, the ſon of *Inigo*.
5 *Sancho Lopes*, the ſon of *Lopes Diaz*.
6 *Inigo* II. the baſe ſon of *Lopes Diaz*; the two ſons of *Sancho Lopes* by reaſon of their tenders years, being ſet aſide.
7 *Lopes Diaz* II. ſon of *Inigo* the ſecond.
8 *Diego Lopes* ſurnamed the *White*, ſon of *Diaz Lopes* the ſecond.
9 *Lopes Diaz* III. ſon of *Diego Lopes*, the firſt who took unto himſelf the ſurname of *Haro*, from a Town of that name of his Foundation.
10 *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*, ſon of *Lopes Diaz* the third.
11 *Lopes Diaz* IV. ſon of *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*.
1257 12 *Diego Lopes de Diaz* II. aſſiſting *Sancho* the ſecond ſon of King *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Ferdinand de la Cerde* his elder Brother; by which *Sancho* he was after ſlain. A reward not unſuitable to his bold attempt.
1289 13 *Diego Lopes de Haro*, the ſon of *Diego*.
1290 14 *Diego Lopes* III. the Brother of *Diego Lopes Diaz* the ſecond, the Founder of the Town of *Bilbo*.
1309 15 *John* of *Caſtile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Lopes* the ſecond.
1319 16 *John* the Blinde, ſo called becauſe he had loſt an eye, ſon of *John* of *Caſtile*, and *Mary Diaz* of *Haro*, ſlain by King *Alfonſo*.
1329 17 *John Nugnes* of *Lara*, in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *John* the Blinde (whoſe name I find not) ſucceeded after the deceaſe of *Donna Maria Diaz*.

Leon and *Oviedo*

1359 18 *Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two years old, ſucceeded *John Nugnes* of *Lara* his Father.

1351 19 *Jean* and *Iſabel*, the Siſters and heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, ſeized upon by *Don Pedro*; and the whole Signeury of *Biſcay* ſubjected by ſtrong hand to the Crown of *Caſtile*, with many other fair Eſtates which depended on it.

The Arms of theſe Lords of *Biſcay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*; each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the ſecond.

LEON and *OVIEDO.*

THE kingdom of *LEON* and *OVIEDO* hath on the Eaſt, the Countrey of *Biſcay*; on the North, the main *Cantabrian* Ocean; on the South, *Caſtile*; on the Weſt *Gallicia*. So called from *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and firſt ſeat of their Kings; the antienteſt kingdom in all *Spain*. By a more antient name it was called *Aſturia*, from the *Aſtures*, who poſſeſſed it in the time of the *Romans*: divided into the two general names of *Auguſtani*, and *Tranſmontani*; but comprehending the particular tribes or Nations of the *Peſici*, *Gigari*, *Zoela*, and *Lancienſes*.

The Countrey mountainous and woody, but formerly of ſome eſteem for thoſe ſmall, though ſwift Horſes which the *Romans* (from hence) called *Aſturcones*; we may read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Gueldings: *Aſturco Macedonicus* being uſed for a *Macedonian Nag*, by *Petronius Arbiter*.

It is divided commonly into two parts; 1. that is to ſay, *Aſturia de Oviedo*, bordering on *Gallicia*, towards the Weſt; and 2. *Aſturia Santillana*, confining on *Biſcay*, towards the Eaſt. From which diviſion of the Countrey, the eldeſt Son of *Caſtile* is called Prince of the *Aſturias*, in the plural number; which Title ſome ſuppoſe to be given unto them, becauſe it was the firſt Countrey which held up againſt the *Moors*. But indeed the true Original hereof is referred by the beſt *Spaniſh* Writers, to the time of the marriage of *Catharine*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and in right of her Mother *Conſtance*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*; unto *Henry* Son of *John* the firſt, then in poſſeſſion of that Kingdom. For to this new married Couple it was granted, ſaith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir apparent is called *Prince of Wales*, they ſhould be called Princes of the *Aſturias*. In times ſucceeding the Towns of *Iaen*, *Ubeda*, *Biatia*, or *Baeca*, and *Andujar*, all ſituate near together in *Andaluſia*, and each of them inveſted with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Eſtate thereof, and ſo continue to this day.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Sublanco*, now a ſmall Village, but once a Town of ſo great ſtrength, that it was deſtroyed by the command of the Emperour *Nerva*, leſt it might animate theſe Mountainers unto a revolt. 2. *LEON*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the place of the old *Sublanca*,) as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Biſhop whereof acknowledgeth no *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the *Moors*, *An.* 722. Afterwards made the *Regal* Seat of the Kings of *Leon*: by ſome called *Legio*, becauſe the ſeventh *Legion* was here lodged; by *Ptolomie* called *Legio Germanica*, and by others *Gemina*. 3. S. *Andera*, ſo named from a Church there built to the honour of S. *Andrew*; by *Ptolomy* called *Flavionavie*, now a well traded Port on the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 4. *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eaſtern part of *Aſturia*. 6. *Llanes*, where the two *Aſturias* meet together. 6. *Cividad Real*, in the Weſtern part of *Aſturia*, called *Aſturia de Oviedo*, 7. *Villa Vicioſa*, the only noted Port in this part of the Country. 8. *Aviles*, on the borders of *Gallicia*, near the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Scythicum*, but now *Cabo de Pinus*. 9. *OVIEDO*, called for a time the City of Biſhops, becauſe many of the Biſhops of *Spain*, diſpoſſeſſed of their Churches by the *Moors*, had retired thither; and there preſerved the Line of Epiſcopal Succeſſion, till their Sees were filled again with Biſhops in more happy times. Antiently it was called *Lucus Aſturum*, and was of old a Biſhops See; reedified by King *Friola* the firſt, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the title of a kingdom to the firſt *Chriſtian* Princes, after the Conqueſt by the *Moors*; called from hence Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, *An.* 899. in the time of K. *Ordogno* the firſt, they began to be ſtyled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*; and at laſt Kings of *Leon* only: *Oviedo* being quite left out of the *Regal* ſtile by *Raymir* the ſecond, *An.* 940. More toward the Inlands of this kingdom (now reckoned part of old *Caſtile*) are 10. *Palenza*, the *Pallantia* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*, ſeated on the River *Carrion*; once a ſmall Univerſity, till the tranſlation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town firſt felt the fury of the *Suevians*, when they maſtered theſe parts of *Spain*. 11. *Aſtorga*, antiently called *Auguſta Aſturica*, whence the *Aſtures* of this tract were called *Auguſtani*, a Biſhops See, frontiring on *Gallicia*: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the luſtfull King *Vitiza*; who to ſecure himſelf in his unlawfull pleaſures, and to weaken his ſubjects, if they ſhould attempt any thing againſt him, diſmantelled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Aſtorga*. 12. *Benevent*, on the South-eaſt of *Aſtorga*: which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the Baſe Son of K. *Henry* the ſecond, (of *Caſtile*) the ſtem of the moſt potent Family of *Spain*, for the times they lived in. 13. *Toro*, the moſt Southern Town of all this kingdom; and for that ſo well fortified againſt the encroachments of the *Caſtilians*, till the uniting of the kingdoms; made afterwards (as lying neareſt to *Caſtile*, and the Court of the King) the ordinary place of conference with the States of *Leon*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Countrey hath been ſhewn already. When conquered by *Au-*

Leon. *guſtus Cæſar* they were made part of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; part afterwards of the Province of *Gallicia*, by the Emperour *Conſtantine.* Won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *Moors*, though long they did not lie under their command. For as the luſt of *Roderick* the laſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*, occaſioned the coming in of the *Moors*, ſo the luſt of *Magnutza*, a *Mooriſh* Vice-Roy, occaſioned (though in long courſe of time) their expulſion thence. For *Magnutza* having employed *Pelagius* a young Prince of the *Aſturias*, on an Embaſſie to *Muſa*, the Lieutenant General of the *Moors*, then reſiding at *Corduba*; in his abſence raviſhed his Siſter, and at his return dyed by the edge of his ſword. Deſpairing of pardon for this Act, he was fain to ſtand upon his Guard, and fortifie himſelf in the mountainous places of this Countrey; to which many of the old Inhabitants reſorted, put themſelves under his command, and elected him to be their King: firſt by the name of King of the *Aſturias*, and after by the title of King of *Leon*, when he had got that City into his hands; as being the City of moſt note, and the ſtrongeſt hold that he was poſſeſſed of. The Kingdom at the firſt beginning, contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Aſturias*; enlarged a little further South on the taking of *Leon* by this firſt *Pelagius.* Afterwards by the valour of *Ordogno* the ſecond, it extended over both *Aſturias*, *Gallicia*, and the *Old Caſtile*: divided from the *Moors* by the Mountains of *Avila*, and *Segovia*: but more defended by the valour of the people, and gallantry of their Princes, than it was by thoſe Mountains. Kings of moſt note, beſides the two before remembred, were 1. *Mauregate*, the baſe ſon of *Alfonſo* the firſt, who having by the help of *Abderamen* King of the *Moors* obtained the Kingdom, came to a baſe agreement with them, in which he bound himſelf to pay them as an yearly tribute 15 *Virgins* of noble Families, and as many of inferior birth; for which he dyed hated and deteſted of all men. 2. *Raymir* the firſt, who ſo diſcomfited the *Moors* at the battel of *Clavigio*, near *Calahorra*, in *Navarre*, *An.* 836. that from that time the power and reputation of the Kings of *Cordaba* began to languiſh. 3. *Alfonſo* the third, who refuſed to pay unto the *Moors* the ſaid tribute of *Virgins*; and for his many victories againſt the *Moors*, was ſurnamed the *Great*: who being outed of his kingdom by his Son *Garcia*, not only patiently digeſted ſo great a wrong; but willingly became his Sons *Lieutenant* againſt the *Moors*. 4. *Veramund* the ſecond, choſen King in the minority of *Raymir* the third, in whoſe time the *Moors* took *Leon*, and ſpoiled the Church of St. *James* in *Gallicia*; but were after beaten to their homes, with loſs of many of their own places. 5. *Veramund* the third, who making war againſt *Ferdinand* the firſt King of *Caſtile*, was by him ſlain in battel; the Conquerour ſeizing on his Kingdom, in right of *Sancha*, his Wife, the Siſter of *Veramund*; the three Kings next ſucceeding being Kings of both. 5. *Ferdinand* the third, Son of *Alphonſo* the ninth, and of *Beringaria* the youngeſt Siſter of *Henry* King of *Caſtile*, by the power and policy of his Mother, ſeized on the *Caſtiles*, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Siſter, Wife of *Lewis* Son to *Philip* the ſecond, King of *France*: and after the death of his Father, ſucceeded in *Leon.* Of whom we ſhall hear more when we come to *Caſtile.* After this time theſe Kingdoms never were divided; but incorporate into one Eſtate, called for long time the Kingdom of *Caſtile* and *Leon*: though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regal ſtyle; and only that of *Caſtile* mentioned; except in *Legal* Inſtruments, *Letters Patents*, and *Inſtruments* of Negotiation with foreign Princes. The whole ſucceſſion of theſe Kings, the Hiſtories of *Spain* thus preſent unto us.

The Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon.*

An. Ch.		
716	1	*Pelagius*, of whom ſufficient before. 20.
735	2	*Faſila*, the Son of *Pelagius*. 2.
737	3	*Alfonſo*, for his piety ſurnamed the *Catholick*, the Son in Law of *Pelagius* by his Daughter *Ormiſind.*
756	4	*Phroilla*, the Son of *Alphonſo* the *Catholick*, the Founder or Repairer rather of *Oviedo.*
768	5	*Aurelius*, the Brother of *Phroilla*. 6.
774	6	*Sillo*, the Son-in-law of *Alphonſo* the *Catholick*, by his Daughter *Odeſinde*. 9.
783	7	*Mauregate*, an Uſurper, the baſtard Son of *Alphonſo*. 6.
789	8	*Veramund*, Son to *Froilla*. 6.
795	9	*Alphonſo* II. ſurnamed the Chaſt, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.
825	10	*Raymir*, the Son of *Veramund*. 6.
831	11	*Ordogno*, Son to *Raymir*. 10.
841	12	*Alphonſo* III. ſurnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Ordogno*. 46.
886	13	*Garcia*, Son to *Alphonſo* the third. 3.
889	14	*Ordogno* II. King of *Gallicia*, the Brother of *Garcia.*
897	15	*Phroilla* II. Brother of *Ordogno*. 1.
898	16	*Alphonſo* IV. Son of *Ordogno*. 6.
904	17	*Raymir* II. Brother of *Alphonſo*. 19.
924	18	*Ordogno* III. Son of *Raymir* 5.
929	19	*Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Groſſe*, Brother of *Ordogno* the third. 12.
941	20	*Raymir* III. Son of *Sancho*. 24.
965	21	*Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancho*. 17.
982	22	*Alphonſo* V. Son of *Veramund*. 46.
1028	23	*Veramund* III. Son of *Alphonſo*. 9.
1037	24	*Sanctia*, Siſter of *Veramund*, *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* 30.
1067	25	*Alphonſo* VI. the youngeſt Son of *Ferdinand*, and *Sanctia*, firſt King of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sanctius* his elder Brother, he ſucceeded alſo in *Caſtile*. 41.
1108	26	*Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alphonſo.* *Alphonſo* VII. King of *Aragon* and *Navarre.* 13.
1122	27	*Alphonſo* VIII. the Son of *Uracca* by *Roymond* of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in *Leon* and *Caſtile*. 35.
1157	28	*Ferdinand* II. younger Son of *Alphonſo*, King of *Leon* only. 31.
1188	29	*Alphonſo* IX. Son of *Ferdinand*. 42.
1230	30	*Ferdinand* III. Sonne of *Alphonſo*, by *Berengaria* or *Berenguela*,

Siſter

Gallicia.

Siſter of *Henry* of *Caſtile*, by the power and practiſes of his Mother ſucceeded in the Realm of *Caſtile*, whileſt his Father lived, *Anno* 1217. to the prejudice of *Blanch* her elder Siſter, married to *Lewis* the eighth of *France*, by whom ſhe had *Lewis* the ninth, and other children. Which *Lewis* the ninth on the marriage of *Blanch* his eldeſt daughter, with *Ferdinand*, the eldeſt Son of *Alphonſo* the fifth, ſurrendred all rights in the Crown of *Caſtile*, and ſo confirmed the ſame more abſolutely to the houſe of *Leon*, *Anno* 1267. though neither this *Ferdinand* nor *Blanch*, nor any of their Heirs did attain that Kingdom; diſſeized thereof by *Sancho* a younger Son. The Kingdoms never ſince that time disjoyned, as they had been twice before ſince the firſt uniting.

The Armes of this Kingdom are *Argent*, a Lion *Paſſant*, crowned *Or*. Which Armes when it was joyned to the Kingdom of *Caſtile*, were quartered with the Coat thereof: that being the firſt time, (as *Cambden* notes) that ever Armes were born quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the third of *England*, who not only took unto himſelf the title of King of *France*, but (to ſhew his right unto that Crown) quartered the *Flower de Lyces*, with his *Engliſh* Lions.

5. GALLICIA.

GALLICIA, or GALLÆCIA, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Aſturias*, from which parted by the River *Mearo*; on the South, with *Portugal*, from which divided by the River *Minio*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian*; and on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Oceans. The antient Inhabitants of it were the *Gallaici*, (which it had the name) diſtinguiſhed into the ſeveral Tribes of the *Bedyi*, *Sueri*, *Cilini*, *Capori*, and *Lemavi*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*.

The Country like that of the *Aſturias*, mountainous and almoſt inacceſſible, overſpread with the *Cantabrian* hils; and ſo the fitter to hold out againſt foreign invaſions, in defence of *Liberty* and *Religion*; in that regard choſen for a retiring place by the diſtreſſed and vanquiſhed *Chriſtians*, in their firſt wars againſt the *Moors*. Not well inhabited to this day, not ſo much for the hillineſs of the Country, as for want of water; which defect makes the people generally draw more towards the Sea, where they improve their fortunes by trade, and fiſhing. The barrenneſſe of the Country recompenſed heretofore by the rich mines of Gold and Silver; which in this Country, and the *Aſtures*, and ſome part of *Luſitania*, afforded yearly 20000 pound weight of gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millions of Crowns; but now no mines found in it of any value. Inſtead of which, it yieldeth the beſt mines for *Iron*, of any Province of *Spain*, for which their Waters are ſo proper, that they are ſaid to fortifie and improve the *metal*.

Places of principal importance are, 1. *Compoſtella*, an Univerſity and Archbiſhops See, vulgarly called St. *Jago*, in honour of St. *James*, the Son of *Zebedee*, whom they pretend to be buried here; and of whom there is denominated an *Order* of Knights: his *Relicks* ſaid to be kept in the chief Church of it, worſhipped by the *Romaniſts* with great devotion; and drawing to this place a wonderfull concourſe of people, coming thither on pilgrimage. 2. *Baiona*, not farr from the mouth of the River *Minio*. 3. *Corunna*, by *Ptolomie* called *Flavium Brigantium*, by us *Engliſh*, the *Groyn*; often mentioned in the ſtory of our wars with the *Spaniards*, in Qu. *Elizabeths* time; then taken by the *Engliſh*, but ſince very well fortified to avoid the like ſurpriſal. Divided then as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low*: ſituate on the *Cantabrian* Sea betwixt the Promontory *Trilencum*, now *Cabo Ortegal*, lying towards the Eaſt; and that of old called *Nerium*, now *Cabo Finis terræ*, as being the moſt Weſtern end of the then known World. 4. *Oreus*, upon the *Minia*, a Biſhops See, by *Ptolomy* called *Aquæ Calidæ* from the *Bathes* here being; now much commended for the beſt Wines. 5. *Tui*, on the River, frontiring upon *Portugal*; a Biſhops See, in antient Writers called *Tude*. 6. *Ponte-vedre*, 7. *Ribadeo*, both upon the ſea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The antient inhabitans hereof, as before is ſaid, were the *Gaallici*, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the power of the *Romans*: by whom firſt made a part of *Taraconenſis*, after a Province of it ſelf, by the name of *Gallicia*; the *Aſturias*, and ſome part of the *Old Caſtle* and *Portugal*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi* a potent nation of *Germanie*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their *tranſmigrations*, invaded *Spain*, and firſt poſſeſſed themſelves of this Countrey. But not content with their Eſtate, they warred on the *Silinges*, (a *Vandal-tribe*) then poſſeſſing *Bætica*, whom they vanquiſhed, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Rechila* their ſecond King. They added ſhortly after, *Luſitania*, to their former conqueſts: ſtopped in their career, by *Theodorick* the ſecond, King of the *Gothes*, by whom vanquiſhed, and confined again within *Gallicia*; which they enjoyed, till the final ruine of their Kingdome by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, *Anno* 858. reduced them to a Province of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Their habitation before their coming into *Spain*, was in the Eaſtern part of *Germanie*, beyond the *Elb*. Their *Religion* at the firſt, under *Recciarius* their third King, was very *Orthodox*, and ſound. But vanquiſhed by the *Gothes*, and obliged unto them for the reſtoring of their Kingdom, they fell off to *Arianiſm*: perſiſting in that *Hereſie* for the ſpace of an hundred years, and then again returning to the *Catholick* Faith, under *Theodomire* their King; therein continuing conſtant till their final overthrow. The Kings hereof (as many as are upon Record) are theſe that follow.

The

The Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1 *Hermenericus*, who firſt brought the *Suevians* into *Spain*, and poſſeſſed *Gallicia*, *Arcadius* and *Honorius* then Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt.
2 *Rhechila*, who conquered the *Silinges*, and ſubdued *Batica*.
3 *Recciarius*, the firſt Chriſtian King, who won *Luſitania*; afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Theodorick* King of the *Gothes*, the *Suevians* for a time becomming ſubject to that King.
4 *Maſdras*, reſtored unto the kingdom by *Theodorick*.
5 *Frumarius*, the Son of *Maſdras*.
6 *Remiſmundus*, Brother of *Frumarius*, recoverd ſome part of *Luſitania*, and fell off to *Arianiſm*.
7 *Theodomirus*, the Reſtorer of the *Catholick* Faith amongſt the *Suevians*.
8 *Armirus*, Son to *Theodomire*.
9 *Eboricus*, the Son of *Ariamirus*, depoſed and ſworn *Monk* by *Andeca*.
10 *Andeca*, the laſt King of the *Suevii* in Gallicia, or rather the *Uſurper* of the *Regal* title; ſerved in the ſame kind by *Leutigildis* King of the *Gothes*, as he had ſerved *Eboricus* his Lord and Maſter. After which time Gallicia was made a Province of the *Gothiſh* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevians* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times enſuing it became a part of the kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moors*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a kingdom by *Alphonſo* the third, ſurnamed the *Great*, *Anno* 886. and given unto *Ordogno* his ſecond ſon: by whoſe ſucceſſion to the Crown on the death of his elder brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the kingdom of *Leon*, but ſo as to continue a Realm diſtinct. In the year 955. the *Gallicians* not brooking the ill qualities of *Raymir* the third, elected *Veramund* for their King, the Son of *Ordogno*, the third and right heir of the kingdom: who comming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Raymir*, did once again unite it unto that Eſtate. Diſmembred from it once more by *Ferdinand* the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngeſt Son, *Anno* 1067. but conquered ſhortly after by *Sancho* the eldeſt ſon of *Ferdinand*, by whom *Garcia* was diſcomfited and impriſoned, *Anno* 1081. Never ſince ſeparated from the Crown of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, but when *Leon* was ſevered from *Caſtile*, going along with *Leon* in thoſe ſeparations, till the laſt union of thoſe kingdoms in the perſon of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1230. the *Caſtillians* being then grown better States-men, than to canton kingdoms.

The Armes hereof were *Azure*, ſemee of Croſſets *Fitchee*, a Calice crowned *Or*.

6. *The Kingdom of* CORDUBA.

HAving thus ſurveyed thoſe Provinces under the Government of *Caſtile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and on the ſhores of the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean; we will next look on thoſe which lye more toward the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean*, and ſo come round at laſt to *Caſtile* it ſelf. And firſt we will begin with the kingdom of *CORDUBA*, which at the firſt erection of it, contained all thoſe parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moors*, and not again recovered by the Kings of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrower bounds when ſubdued by the King of *Caſtile*; at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andaluſia*, *Extremadura*, *Granada*, and the Iſle of Gades. We will conſider it notwithſtanding in both capacities; in the firſt and largeſt notion, as unto the ſtory and affairs thereof, till diſtracted by the *Moors* into many kingdoms; in the laſt and ſtricteſt, as to the *Chorographie*, and deſcription of it.

The kingdom of *CORDUBA*, as it ſtood when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the Eaſt with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, with *Portugal* and the Ocean; on the North, with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Caſtile*; and on the South, with the Ocean, the ſtraights of *Gibralter*, and the Midland Seas: ſo called from *Corduba* the chief City of it, and the Seat Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was ſaid, the Provinces of 1. *Andaluſia*, 2. *Gades*, 3. *Extremadura*, and 4. *Granada*. But becauſe *Granada* had the fortune to continue a kingdom, when the reſt were conquered, we will conſider it by it ſelf: and here proceed to the deſcription of the other three.

1. *ANDALUSIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with Granada; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and *Algarve* in *Portugal*; on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extremadura*; on the South, with the Ocean, and the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubenſis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it; and after, *Andaluſia*, *quaſi Vandaluſia* from the *Vandals*, who having won it from the *Romans*, had for ſome time, (and till their expulſion into *Africa*) poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

This is the moſt rich and fertile Country of all *Spain*, extremely fruitfull of Wine, Oyl, and Orenges (which laſt being ſhipped at *Sevil*, and ſo brought for *England*, are by us called by the name of *Sevil* Orenges) and better furniſhed with corn then moſt part of this continent, watered with the Rivers 1. *Anas*, 2. *Odier*, 3. *Batis*, and 4. *Tenos*: which make it flouriſh with a continual greenneſs of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hills, though watered only with the dew of Heaven,

do

Corduba.

do partake alſo in reaſon and meaſure. The *Air* hereof, by reaſon of its Southernly ſituation, is exceeding hot, in ſo much that their Corn there is ripe in *April*: but thoſe exceſſive heats much moderated by thoſe conſtant refreſhings which the cool winds breathing from the North, do beſtow upon it. In which reſpect King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* did uſe to ſay, that it was *beſt living in the Summer at Sevil*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reaſon of theſe cool refreſhings; and in *the winter time at Burgos in old Caſtile*, which though ſituate more Northernly, in a very ſharp air, had yet many notable defences againſt the cold.

The Principal Cities and Towns hereof are. 1. *Corduba*, ſeated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left ſhore of *Gundalquiver*, over-looking towards the South, a ſpacious and fruitfull Plain. Firſt founded by *Marcellus* a *Roman* Conſul, *Anno V.C.* 601. employed at that time in the wars of *Spain*: the firſt Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the chief City of *Bœtica*. For a long time the ſeat of the *Mooriſh* Vice-Royes, Lieutenants to the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; after of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace a magnifient Caſtle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, it was reſtored unto the honour of an Epiſcopal See, which antiently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great Circuit, but of very few houſes, by reaſon of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca's*.

Duoſque Senecas, *unicumque* Lucanum
Fœcunda loquitur Corduba: ſaith *Martial*.

Corduba glorying in her fruitfull field;
One *Lucan*, and two *Seneca's* did yield.

Nor was it leſſe fruitfull of good wits in the times ſucceeding. For not to ſay any thing of *Hoſius* that renowned Confeſſor, who was Biſhop here in the time of *Conſtantine* and before; it was a flouriſhing Univerſity in the time of the *Moores*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhaſis*, *Almanſor*, *Meſſahalah*, thoſe famous Philoſophers and Phyſitians being Students or Profeſſors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* leather, made of the skin of a *Sardinian* beaſt. Near unto this City is a wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but *Olive* trees. 2. *Jaen*, a Biſhops See, remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever ſince the firſt Recovery of it, have ſtiled themſelves Kings of *Jaen*; and uſe it to this day amongſt the reſt of their Titles; it having been before that time, the ſeat and title of ſome petit Kings amongſt the *Moors*. Not far hence ſtood the famous Town of *Illiturgis*, (by *Ptolomy Illurgis*) mentioned ſo often in the wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Oſſuna*, of moſt note for the Dukes hereof, and a ſmall Univerſity founded here, *Anno* 1549. 4. *Eccia*, on the River *Chenil*, of more eſteem formerly than at the preſent; by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus* called *Aſtygi*; by *Pliny*, *Auguſta Firma*; a *Roman* Colony, and one of the four *Juridica Reſorts* of *Bætica*. 5. *Marchena*, ſituate on an Hill, where is ſaid to be the beſt breed of *Gennets* (a ſwift race of Horſes) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*; the River *Bætis* (as it was thought) conveyd ſome ſecret virtue into them. Of this race was the Horſe which *Cæſar* ſo loved, that he erected his ſtatue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Luſitani* thought they were begotten of the wind. 6. *Xeres*, ſituate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xeres de la Frontera*, (the *Aſta* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*) famous for plenty of that wine, which we call *Xeres* Sack; but more for that great and fatal battel fought near unto it, betwixt K. *Roderick* and the *Moors*, the loſſe of which drew along with it the loſſe of *Spain*. 7. *Medina Sidonia* (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from a Town of *Caſtile*, called *Medina Cœli*) the Duke whereof was *General* of all the Forces, both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conqueſt of *England*, *Anno* 1588. The Town called anciently *Aſinda*, and *Aſido Cæſariana*: the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greateſt Prince for Revenue in all *Spain*, his Intrade being eſtimated at 130000. Crowns *per annum*. 8. *Algezire*, on the Sea ſide, a Town of ſuch ſtrength and conſequence, that it held out a ſiege of 19 moneths for the *Moors* of *Africk*, againſt *Alfonſo* the 5. of *Caſtile*; to whom ſurrendred at the laſt upon Compoſition. *Anno* 1343. Since which the Kings of *Caſtile* have ſtiled themſelves Kings of *Algezire*, not yet diſcontinued. 9. *Conil*, a Town on the ſea-coaſt, beyond the Iſle of *Gades*, part of the Patrimony of the D. of *Medina Sidonia*. 10. *Gibraltar*, a ſtrong Town ſeated at the mouth of the Straights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the mountain of *Calpe*, ſuppoſed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars; the furtheſt point Southwards of all *Europe*. 11. S. *Lucar de Barameda* (the *Luciferi fanum* of the Antients) the Port-Town to *Sevil*, ſituate at the mouth of the River *Bætis* or *Guadalquivir*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a Wind to put to Sea, or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*: 12. *Tariffa*, ſeated at the end of the Promontory, which looks toward *Africk*; and ſo called, becauſe *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, here landed: recovered from the *Moores* by *Sancho* the third of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1291. or thereabouts; the firſt Governor thereof being *Alfonſo Peres de Guzman*, the firſt Founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Suppoſed by ſome to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if ſo, then a Colony of the *Libertines* (begotten on ſome unmarried *Spaniſh* women by the *Roman* Souldiers) placed here and indulged the priviledges of the *Latines*, by Decree of the Senate, *An. V.C.* 600. Not far from theſe laſt Towns, in a little Iſland made by two branches of the *Batis*, where it falleth into the Sea, ſtood the famous 13. *Tarteſſus*, celebrated in moſt ancient Writers for the abundance of ſilver, which the mines of it did produce. Which was ſo great, that (as we read in *Ariſtotle's* Book *de Mirabilibus*) when the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians* firſt came thither, ὥστε μηκέτι ἔχειν δύνασθαι, μήτε ἐπιδέξασθαι τὸν ἄργυρον, that their

ſhips

Gades, ſhips were neither able to contain it, or tranſport it thence: inſomuch that they were fain to make their *Anchors*, and other *Utenſils*, of ſilver. The like commodity the *Grecians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Herodotus* maketh mention *Lib.* IV. Hereupon ſome have been perſwaded that the ſhips which *Solomon* built to go for *Tarſhiſh* (whereof we read 1 *King.* 10. 22.) where bound no further than this place. But we will not enter at this time upon that diſpute. As for the ſituation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as ſome, or *Carteia*,, as others do conjecture; (though where *Carteia* was be alike uncertain, if it were not the ſame with *Tariff*) but in a ſmall Iſland at the mouth of the River *Batis*, as before is ſaid, doth appear by *Strabo*: Who telleth us that *Batis* falls into the Sea with two mouths or channels, πόλιν ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ χώρῳ κατοικεῖσθαι, ἣν καλεῖσθαι Τάρτησσον, &c. and that in the midſt thereof there is a City called *Tarteſſus*, of the ſame name with the River (for *Batis* antiently was ſo named) from whence the whole Country thereabouts is called *Tarteſſis*. The like *Pauſanias* ſaith expreſly in his *Eliaca*. Which ſituation of this Town in an Iſland, at the mouth of *Batis*, occaſioned *Pliny* and ſome others of the antient Writers, to give the name of *Tarteſſus* to the Iſle of *Gades*; whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to 14. *Sevil*, (in *Latine*, *Hiſpalis*) the faireſt City, not only of *Andaluzia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compaſſe ſix miles, divided into two parts by the River *Batis*, but joyned together by a ſtrong and beautifull Bridge; the whole environed with beautifull walls, and adorned with many magnificent and ſtately buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monaſteries: amongſt which, that of the *Gertoſins*, or *Carthuſians*, is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly revenue. It is alſo the See of an Archbiſhop under whoſe Juriſdiction are ſaid to be 2000 Villages; and a moſt flouriſhing Univerſity, wherein ſtudied *Avicen* the *Moore*, that excellent and learned Scholar, Pope *Sylveſter* the 2d, and *Leander*, who was Arch-biſhop hereof, about the year 580. a ſtout defender of the *Catholick* tendries of the Church againſt the *Arians*. The Univerſity adorned with one of the greateſt and goodlieſt Libraries in the *Chriſtian* world; furniſhed by *Diego*, the Son of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the firſt founder of it, with no fewer than 12000. Volumes, in ſeveral Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care, and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and inlagement of it. Famous in former times for two Provincial Councils holden here, the firſt *An.* 584. the laſt *An.* 636. and at the preſent, for that here are continually maintained 30000. *Gennets* for the ſervice of the King; but moſt of all for the great traffique of the place. For from this Town the *Caſtilians* ſet forwards towards *America*, and here they do diſcharge the Fleets of gold and ſilver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagna*, and the Emeralds of S. *Martho*, the Cochinele of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hiſpaniola*; and in a word, the whole treaſure of the *New-found-world*. She is the publick Empory of all *Spain*, for her Wines, Orenges, and Oyles; ſent from hence in ſo great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the people uſe to ſay in the way of a *By-word*, That *if there enter not into* Sevil 4000. *Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the* Farmer *of the Cuſtomes is ſure to break*: inſomuch as the Revenues coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the *Catholick* King; *Maginus* reckoning it at no leſſe than a Millions of Crowns yearly. Laſtly, here reſteth the body of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the fortunate diſcoverer of the *New-world*, with a *Latine* Epitaph upon his Tomb; but ſhort (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man: of which more hereafter.

As for the fortunes of this City as they relate to Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters, it hath been long the See of an Archbiſhop (as before is ſaid) next in revenue and degree unto him of *Toledo*: his revenue eſtimated at 100000 Crowns *per annum*, his Juriſdiction reaching over all *Andaluſia*, and the fortunate Iſlands, in which are ſaid to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Dioceſes of which being ſaid to comprehend 2000 Benefices, beſides *Frieries*, *Nunneries*, and *Hoſpitals*, which may make the former computation of the Villages ſubject to his power as a *Metropolitan* of more eaſie credit. Yet not ſo much conſiderable for its wealth and revenue, as for being once the See of *Iſidore*, ſo much renowned (conſidering the times he lived in) for the Univerſality of his learning, who was Biſhop here, called uſually *Iſidorus Hiſpalenſis*, to diſtinguiſh him from another of that name in *Egypt*, called *Peluſiota*. As for the civil fortunes of it in the decſining of the *Moores*, when their Eſtate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdom of it ſelf under a noble *Moore* named *Allcorrexi*, *Anno 966.* one of the Kings hereof called *Allmuneanuz*, was of ſo great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greateſt part of *Andaluſia* under his command, made ſubject with the reſt of the *Moores* in *Spain*, to the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco*, *Anno* 1091. till the retreat of *Mahomet Enaſer* unto *Africk*, *Anno* 1214. After which once more made a Kingdom in the perſon of *Abulable* a great Prince of the *Moores*, but no longer continuing in that Royal dignity and eſtate than till the year 1248. when taken and ſubdued by *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*; and made a part of his Eſtate; but ſo, that it remaineth a Realm diſtinct in the Regal ſtile, in which the Kings of *Spain* are called Kings of *Sevil*.

2. South of *Andaluſia*, at the mouth of *Gaudalquiver*, ſtands the Iſle of GADES, diſtant from the main land 700 paces, and joyned unto it with a Bridge called *Puento de Suaco*. It is in length 13 miles, of a very fruitful ſoyl, beſides the riches which it gets by Fiſhing, and making of Salt. Firſt peopled by the *Tyrians* 562 years before the birth of CHRIST, ſubdued by the *Carthaginians*, *Anno V. C.* 236. being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defenſive war againſt the *Spaniards*: and was the laſt hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*, out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here ſtood in ancient times a Temple conſecrated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Seafaring men (at their being here) uſed to pay their vows, and offer ſacrifice, as being arrived at the furtheſt parts of all the World.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1. *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town

Gades.

of *Cadiz*, and the main Land of *Andaluſia*. 2. *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North. 3. *Cadis*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Iſland, and giving name unto the whole. Situate in the Weſtern part of the whole Iſle, on a large Bay ſerving as a Road for the *Indian* Fleet, by the reſort and trade whereof it is much enriched. Firſt founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal* City by the *Romans*, and one of the *Juridical Reſorts* for the Province of *Bætica*: in whoſe times it was held to be the nobleſt and richeſt in all *Spain*, not yielding to any in the Empire for greatneſs; magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. Inſomuch that here lived at one time 500 *Roman Knights*, which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: beſide the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great reſort, occaſioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to add a new Town to the old: the whole circumference of both being 20 Furlongs. By the *Moors* at the conqueſt of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined; but ſince repaired, well fortified, and made the *Magazin* for the Ammunition of the *Spaniſh* Navies. Taken notwithſtanding in one day by the *Engliſh*; under the conduct of *Charles* Lord of *Effingham*, *Robert* Earl of *Eſſex*, and Sir *Walter Ralegh*: in which they burned the *Indian* Fleet, conſiing of 40 Ships, whoſe lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the *Spaniſh* Navy, conſiſting of 57 Men of War; took Saint *Michael*, and the Saint *Andrew*; two great *Galleons*, with their luggage; ſpoiled and carried away more martial furniture than could be ſupplied in many years, and forced the Town, in which they ſlew and took Priſoners 4000 Foot, and 600 Hoſe, and brought thence a very great booty in the ſackage of it, *Anno* 1596. The fortunacy of which enterprize gave occaſion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame this excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Eſſex*, (who was looked on as the greateſt *Adventurer* in it) viz. *Devereux*, *Verè dux*. Which he afterwards caſt into this *Diſtich*:

Verè dux *Devereux*, & verior *Hercule*; GADES,
Nam ſemel hic videt, vicit at ille ſimul.

Alcides yields to *Dev'reux*; he did ſee
Thy Beauties (*Cales*) but *Dev'reux* conquer'd thee.

Near to this *Iſle*, is that ſo celebrated Straight called by ſome *Fretum Gaditanum*, from the nearneſs of it to this Iſland; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not becauſe *Hercules* did there break out a paſſage to let the Ocean into the *Mediterranean*, as the Poets fabled; but becauſe of the two Pillars which he cauſed to be erected on each ſide of it, with the inſcription of *Nil Ultra*, this being ſuppoſed to be the furtheſt Country Weſtward. But when that ſuppoſition was proved untrue by the diſcovery of *America*, *Charles* the fifth being in thoſe parts, cauſed two new pillars to placed where the old ones ſtood, or rather where he thought they ſtood, and *Plus Ultra* to be witten on them. As for thoſe Pillars ſo much memorized in the antient Writers, ſome place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Iſland; others on the Promontory of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Abila* in *Africa*; and ſome again in two little Iſlands near thoſe Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the Straight, called now the Straight of *Gibraltar*, from the Town and Caſtle of *Gibraltar*, ſituate on the brink hereof; the Straight being in length 15 miles, and in breadth, where it is narroweſt, ſeven.

EXTREMADURA hath on the Eaſt and North *Caſtile*; on the Weſt, *Portugal*; and on the South, *Andaluſia*. It was firſt called *Bæturia*, from the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it; and for diſtinction ſake, *Bæturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then Inhabitants of this Tract: to difference it from *Bæturia Turdulorum*, containing thoſe parts of *Granada*, and *Andaluſia*, which lie neareſt unto *Tarraconenſis*. And when firſt it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds at that time of the kingdom of *Moriſcos*; ſo called by the *Chriſtians*, as lying on the *extremities*, or furtheſt ſide of that River.

Principal places in it, are 1. *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, ſituate near the ruines of *Norba Cæſaria*, deſtroyed by *Petronius* and *Afranius*, two of *Pompey*'s Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Cæſar*: now of moſt note for an *Order* of *Knights* here ſeated, and from thence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2. *Guadalcanal*, famous for its mines of Silver and Gold. 3. *Merida*, ſituate alſo on the *Tagus*, firſt called *Auguſta Emerita*, founded and made a Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who placed herein his old Souldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City after that of *Luſitania*, and by *Auſonius* preferred before any in *Spain*; now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: famous for nothing but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatneſs. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Gothes* in *Spain*, and *Atace* King of the *Alani* and *Silinges* (this laſt a people of the *Vandals*:) the victory whereof falling to the *Gothes*, cauſeth the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*. 4. *Medelino*, near which the River *Guadiana* hideth it ſelf under the ground, for the ſpace of 10 Leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Diſcoverer and Conquerour of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5. *Badaios*, a Biſhops See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6. *Guadalupe*, on a River of the ſame name, renowned among thoſe of the Church of *Rome*, for the miracles and Images of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much reſorted to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* is in *Italy*. 7. *Placenza*, a Biſhops See, near the hils of *Caſtile*; amongſt which hils (by reaſon of their ſtrength and ſafety) *Sertorius* made his laſt retreat, when perſecuted by the *Romans* of the contrary faction, and where he was moſt wickedly ſlain by *Perpenna* and ſome other of his own aſſociates; not far from whence, if it be not in the ſelf-ſame place, in a retired and ſolitary valley ſtandeth the Monaſtery of St. *Juſtus*, remarkable for a greater

Miracle;

Extremadura.

Miracle, than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boaſt of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, that moſt puiſſant Monarch, having reſigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the reſt of his dominions to his Son *Philip* the ſecond, did here bid farewel unto the World; ſpending the reſidue of his time in Prayers and devout Meditations. The greateſt Monument and example of *Self-denial* which theſe later Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our cloyſtered Monks; or any quitting of their Crowns by ſome Kings and Emperours in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in the times of Ignorance and Superſtition, ſaw not ſo clearly what they did, (or did it out of weakneſs, and want of ſpirit;) as this Maſculine and Heroick Emperour.

The old Inhabitants of theſe Countries, were the *Turduli*, the *Baſtuli*, and the *Turditani*, of *Andaluſia* and *Granada*, the *Celtici*, and ſome part of the *Luſitani*, in *Extremadura*, all vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, during the ſecond *Punick* War, under the fortunate command of *Scipio African*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*, who paſſing over into *Africk* left it to the *Suevians*; loſt by them to *Theodorick* the fourth King of the *Gothes*, who hereby added all *Batica* to his other Dominions. Under the *Gothes* it remained ſubject to their fatal overthrow by the *Moors*, who having made almoſt an entire Conqueſt of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at firſt ſubject to the great *Caliphs*, Lords of the *Saracenical* Empire; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Ulidor Ulet*, under whom they firſt made this Conqueſt, *Anno* 714. to *Abdalla* of the Houſe of *Alaveci*, *Anno* 757. At what time *Abderamen*, of the Line of *Mahomet* the Impoſtor, and firſt Emperour of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humia* (of which Race this *Abderamen* was) had been diſpoſſeſſed of that Empire, came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spaniſh Moors*: cordially affected to his Houſe: whoſe Government he took upon him, diſcharged of all ſubjection and ſubordination to the *Caliphs* or *Mahmetan* Emperours; and making it an abſolute Kingdom of it ſelf: In his Race it continued without any fractions or ſubdiviſions, till the time of *Hizen* the ſecond, the tenth King of theſe *Spaniſh Moors*: after whoſe death diſtracted amongſt many petit Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moors* of *Africk*; of which more anon. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of the Kings of theſe *Moors* of *Spain*, called commonly from *Corduba* their Royal Seat,

The Kings of *Corduba*.

A. C.	
757	1. *Abderamen*, the firſt Soveraign Prince of the *Moors* in *Spain*. 31.
787	2. *Hiezen*, the Second Son of *Abderamen*, by whom *Zuleima* his elder Brother was put by the throne. 7.
794	3. *Hali Hatan*, the Son of *Hizen*. 24.
819	4. *Abderamen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*, diſcomfited by the Chriſtians in the memorable battel of *Clavigo*, *Anno* 836.
839	5. *Mahomet* Son of *Abderamen* the ſecond, who reduced *Toledo* then revolted under his command. 53.
874	6. *Almundie* the Son of *Mahomet*. 2.
876	7. *Abdalla* Brother to *Almundy*, and as little memorable.
889	8. *Abderamen* III. ſurnamed *Almanſor*, too fortunate in his Wars againſt the Chriſtians. 50.
930	9. *Hali Haten* II. Son of *Abderamen* the ſecond.
956	10. *Hizen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*, in the 33 year of his Reign depoſed for his ſloth and negligence, by
981	11. *Zuleima* an *African Moor* of the Family of *Alaveci*; and he expelled by
993	12. *Mahomet* II. ſurnamed *Almohadi* of the old houſe of *Humeia*; outed again by *Zuleima*, and made King of *Toledo*. Betwixt theſe three and their ſeveral factions, the kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never reſtored again to its antient luſtre: and finally made a prey to
1001	13. *Hali*, another *African Moor*. 2.
1003	14. *Cacin*, the Brother of *Hali*. 4.
1007	15. *Hiaia*, the Son of *Mahomet*. Menſ. 4.
1007	16. *Abderamen* IV. a K. of 7 weeks only.
1008	17. *Mahomet* III. poyſoned by his own ſervant.
1010	18. *Hizen* III. depoſed by the *Moors*, grown weary of the houſe of *Humeia*, of which houſe he was.
1011	19. *Joar* of *Algezire*. 3.
1014	20. *Mahomet* IV. the Son of *Joar*, the laſt King of the *Moors* in *Corduba*, before the ſecond Conqueſt of theſe parts of *Spain* by the *Moors* of *Africa*.

Concerning which we are to know, that after the great victory obtained at *Clavigio*, againſt *Abderamen* the ſecond, by *Rajmir* King of *Leon*, *Anno* 836. in which the *Moors* loſt 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spaniſh Moors* began to decline: brought utterly to nothing, by the ſloth and negligence of *Hizen* the ſecond: after a long and unprofitable reign, depoſed by *Zuleima*, who ſucceeded. But the *Moors* not eaſily brooking the Command of a new *Uſurper*, fell into many Fractions and diviſions amongſt themſelves: every great man ſeizing on ſome part of the kingdom, which he retained unto himſelf with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*, a third of *Valentia*, a fourth of *Cordova*, &c. the names of which laſt only do occur in the former Catalogue; as they which did pretend a Soveraignty over all the reſt. And 'twas a ſign the kingdom was in the expiring, when ſo many Kings ſucceeded in ſo few years, after one another: there paſſing from the depoſing of *Hizen* the ſecond, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time we find no fewer than 10 Kings. The often change of Princes, and ſhort lives of Kings are the apparent ſigns of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its expiration;

Granada.

tion: as may be ſeen by the ſhort lives and reigns of the laſt *Weſtern* Emperours, nine of them hardly reigning 20 years; as alſo of the Kings of the *Gothes* in *Italy*, of which the ſix laſt held the Throne no longer, than the nine *Weſtern* Emperours had done before them. But to proceed, *Mahomet* the laſt King of this firſt Rank, having left the ſtage at the thirteenth year of his reign, *Anno* 1027. we find no good *conſtat* of his Succeſſors in the Kingdome of *Corduba*; made inconſiderable by the withdrawing ſo many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and inſolency of which Roytelets and petit Tyrants, forced them at laſt to call unto their aid the Kings or *Miramomolines* of *Morocco*; by whom themſelves and all the reſt of their Corrivals, were in fine ſubdued. Under ſeven Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spaniſh Moors* continued ſubject about 120 years, that is to ſay, from the firſt coming in of *Joſeph Telephin* the *Miramomoline*, *Anno* 1091 unto the going out of *Mahomet*, ſurnamed the *Green*, *Anno* 1214. During which times the affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain* were ſo well conducted, that they loſt nothing to the *Chriſtians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alfonſo* the ſecond in the accompt of *Caſtile*, the ſeventh in accompt of *Leon*, *Anno* 1147; and the City of *Lisbon*, taken from them in the ſame year alſo by *Alfonſo*, the firſt King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Green* being vanquiſhed in the great fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joynt Forces of the confederate *Chriſtians*, *Anno* 1214. left of all further care of the *Moors* in *Spain*; after his going thence diſtracted once again into many Kingdomes, almoſt as many as great Towns; all of them ſwallowed up in a little time by the Kings of *Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongſt them the Kingdome of *Corduba*, not able to ſtand long on his new foundation, was ruinated and brought under the command of the *Caſtilians*, by their King *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1236. Since that time there is no more mention of the Kingdome of *Corduba*.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Lion *Gules*, armed and Crowned of the firſt; a Border *Azure* charged with eight Towers *Argent*.

7 GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Andaluſia*; on the Eaſt, with *Murica*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New Caſtile*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief City and Seat Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compaſs: a Kingdome of no great extent, but ſuch as contained in it more fair Towns, ſtrong Fortreſſes, and defenſible Lakes, then the like quantity of ground in the world beſides. The North part of the Countrey plain; the South parts over-ſpread with *Alpuxarras*, and other ſpurs and branches of the *Oroſpeda*. In the time of the *Moors* wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all ſorts of commodities; the Hills planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Valleys ſwelling with Corn and Gardens: ſince their expulſion, neither much peopled, nor very fruitfull, want of men to dreſs and manure the Land.

The principal Cities of it, are 1 *Granada*, ſituate on two Hills, divided by a Valley, through which runneth the River *Darien*; conſiſting of four ſeveral parts, called *Alhambre*, *Sierre de ſol*, *Granada*, and *Antequerula*: the two firſt ſtanding on the Hills, the two laſt in the Valley; the whole circuit being about ſeven miles, and containing in the time of the *Mooriſh* Kingdome, about 200000 of ſouls. Fenced with ſtrong walls, fortified with 130 Turrets, and repleniſhed with abundance of wholſome and pleaſant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the beſt ſort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*; the houſes of which are for the moſt part built with free ſtone, with delicate and artificial Maſonry, ſhewing great magnificence. Herein ſtandeth the *Cathedral* Church, a work of admirable ſtructure; of Figure round, as having ſometimes been a *Mahometane Moſquit*. Here is alſo the place which they call *Alcazar*, repreſenting a little Town, to which are ten Gates. In the *Alhambre* is the Palace of the *Mooriſh* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Moiſaical* work; and which by reaſon of the ſtructure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put among the *Wonders* of the World; having withall a goodly proſpect over all the Town, lying under it upon the Eaſt; a ſpacious Champian towards the North, and the ſnowy tops of *Sierra Novada* towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Juſtice for all the Souuthern parts of *Spain*; as *Valladolit* is for the Northern: *Madrid*, which is the higheſt Court, having juriſdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town firſt raiſed out of the ruines of *Illiberis*, ſituate not far off on the hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the ſtories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer ſort. 2 *Alhama*, ſeated amonſt ſteep and craggy rocks, out of which iſſue *Medicinal* Waters, occaſioning a great reſort of the *Spaniſh* Gentry: the firſt Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their laſt long war againſt the *Moors* for the recovery of this Kingdome, *Anno* 1482. and looked on by the *Moors* as a ſad preſage of a ruinated and expiring Empire. 3 *Guadix*, an Epiſcopal See, about nine leagues from *Granada*. 4 *Veles Malaga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cex*, by *Antoninus*, *Sexicanum*) ſituate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpux arras*, a large branch of the *Oroſpeda*, over-ſpreading a great part of this countrey; heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moors*, who choſe to dwell there for the ſtrength and ſafey of the ſituation; ſince their expulſion, deſolate and unfrequented, nothing remaining of them now but the *Arabick* Language; which is ſtill ſpoke by thoſe few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this tract ſo high, that from the top hereof a man may eaſily diſcern the whole courſe of the *Straight of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Seuta*, and *Tangier*, in *Africk*. 5 *Ronda*, at the foot of another branch of the *Oroſpeda*, called from this Town *Sierra de*

Granada.

Ronda. Not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very ſmall Village, was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Caſar* and the Sons of *Pompey*, the honour of which fell to *Caſar*, who then made an end of the *Civil* Wars, which that very day four years before, were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* ſlain, and his Forces broken: *Caſar* himſelf being ſo put to it, that ſeeing his Souldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *remember, that at* Munda *they forſook their General.* The ſhame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onſet, which was honoured with a ſignal and remarkable victory: this being the laſt fight that *Caſar* was in, murdered not long after in the Senate-houſe. And of this fight he uſed to ſay, *That in all other places he fought for his honour, but in this for his life.* 6. *Antiquera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering cloſe upon *Caſtile.* 7. *Maxacra*, on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, ſuppoſed to be the *Margis* of *Ptolemie.* 8. *Vera*, on the ſame ſhore, the furtheſt Town of *Batica*, and of this Countrey towards *Murcia*: ſuppoſed to be the *Virgao* of *Plinie*, from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called *Virgitanus.* 9. *Loxa*, on the River *Darion*, enjoying a ſituation both ſtrong and pleaſant. 10 *Malaga*, or *Malaca*, ſituate at the mouth of *Guadalquiver*, once ſacked by *Craſſus* the rich *Roman*; who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the fury of *Marins* and *Cinna*, who had ſlain his Father and Uncle, hid himſelf and his companions in a Cave hereabouts, for eight moneths together: but after hearing of their deaths, iſſued out, and ranſacked, amongſt many other Cities, this *Malaga.* A Town of great traffick, and much reſort, eſpecially for Raiſins, Almonds, *Malaga Sacks*: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and to the great prejudice of the *Moors* taken by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, *Anno* 1487, the conqueſt of the whole Kingdom of *Granada* following not long after. It was ſince made a Biſhops See, or reſtored rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11 *Almeria*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Abdera* of *Mela*; a Colony of the *Carthaginians*, and anciently a Biſhops See. 12 *Carthema*, 13 *Coin*, and 14, *Baſa*, more within the Land: this laſt the ſtrongeſt Bulwark of the City of *Granada*, on the North-eaſt whereof it ſtandeth. A place of great ſtrength both by art and nature, and by the *Moors* defended with ſo great a gallantry, that it held out a ſiege of ſeven months againſt an Army of 13000 Horſe, and 24000 Foot, King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* being there in perſon: and yielded at the laſt, *Decemb.* 4. 1489. upon better conditions then any Town had done before it.

As for the fortunes of this Countrey, after the Conqueſt of it by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the Kingdome of *Corduba*; and ſo continued till that Kingdome was ſubdued by the *Spaniards.* But the *Moors* were too ſtout to yield all at once. Having yet ground enough both to ſecure themſelves in, and endow their King: they are reſolved, though they had loſt one Kingdome, to erect another. And therefore *Corduba* being taken, and that Kingdome ruinated, the *Moors*, with *Mahomet Aben Alhamar* their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themſelves unto *Granada*, and there renew their ſtrength and Kingdome; which laſted 256 years, under 20 Kings, whoſe names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of *Granada.*

A. Ch.		
1236	1	*Mahomet Alcamir*, the laſt King of *Corduba*, and the firſt King of *Granada*, 36.
1272	2	*Mahomet Almir.* 30.
1302	3	*Mahomet Aben Ezar.* 7.
1309	4	*Mahomet Aben Evar.* 10.
1316	5	*Iſmael.* 3.
1322	6	*Mahomet.* 12.
1334	7	*Joſeph Aben Amet.* 20.
1354	8	*Mahomet Lagus.* 23.
1377	9	*Mahomet Vermeil.* 2.
A. Ch.		
1379	10	*Mahomet Gaudix.* 13.
1392	11	*Joſeph* II. 4.
1396	12	*Mahomet Abon Balva.* 11.
1407	13	*Joſeph* III. 16.
1423	14	*Mahomet Abon Azar.* 4.
1427	15	*Mahomet* the little. 5.
1432	16	*Joſeph Aben Almud.* 13.
1445	17	*Mahomet Oſmen.* 8.
1453	18	*Iſmael* II. 9.
1462	19	*Muley Alboacen.* 20.
1382	20	*Mahomet Boabdelin*, the laſt King of the *Moors* in *Spain.*

Of all which there is little left upon Record, their whole time being ſpent in defending their borders againſt the encroachments of *Caſtile*; or elſe in *Civil* Wars and diſcords amongſt themſelves: in which they were ſo frequent, and ſometimes ſo violent, as if they had no enemy near them. *Mahomet Aben Ezar* the fourth King, depoſed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*: and he again thruſt out by *Iſmael* the ſon of *Ferrachen*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treaſon. *Mahomet*, ſon of *Iſmael*, murdered by his Subjects; *Joſeph*, the ſon of *Mahomet* ſlain by *Mahomet Lagus*; and he again depoſed by *Mahomet Vermeil*; who in the end was miſerably ſlain by *Pedro* the *Cruel* of *Caſtile*, to whom he had fled for help and ſuccour. After this time they ruined and depoſed one another till the end of their Kingdome; the Succeſſor never ſtaying for the death of his Predeceſſor, but violently making way for himſelf to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdelin* the laſt King thereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but ſetting him beſides the Throne, as he himſelf was for a time, by *Muley Boabdelin* his Uncle: and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces, to the ſubduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdome, that as it began under a *Mahomet* a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile*: ſo it ended under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile* alſo. In the firſt year then of this mans Reign did the War begin, or rather in the laſt

Granada.

year of his Father ; who by taking *Zahaza* from the Chriſtians gave the firſt occaſion : and in the tenth year of the war (for ſo long it laſted) *Anno* 1492, the Empire of the *Moors* ended in *Spain*, by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick, and *Iſabel* his Wife ; after their firſt entrance into it, more than 760 years.

Such of them, as after the decay of their Kingdome had a deſire to ſtay in *Spain*, which had for ſo long time been their native Countrey, were ſuffered ſo to do by the prudent *Victors*, (fearing a deſolation of the Countrey, if they ſhould abandon it ;) conditioned that they would be *Chriſtned*. And that they might be known to be as they profeſſed, the *Inquiſition* was eſtabliſhed in the City of *Granada*, conſiſting of a certain number of Dominican Fryers : who finding any counterfeit, or Apoſtate *Chriſtians*, were firſt gently to reprove and exhort them ; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict ſuch puniſhment on them as was accuſtomed in like caſes. By the terrour of which *Inquiſition*, many profeſſed in ſhew the *Chriſtian* Faith. But being *Chriſtians* only in the outward ſhew, and practiſing on all occaſions againſt the State, the Kings of *Spain* reſolved long ago on their *Extermination* ; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a peace with *England*, and a truce with *Holland* ; and finding the *Moors* of *Africk* ſo embroyled in wars, that they were not able to diſturb him ; put that extream rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their conſultations : 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Countrey, and provide new dwellings ; under colour that they went about to free themſelves from the *Inquiſition*, and to recover their old Liberty loſt ſo long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada* in the times of their greateſt power were able to raiſe, were far beyond the meaſurement and extent of their Kingdome ; not above 700 miles in compaſs, as before is ſaid : but ſo exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of neceſſaries, that within two dayes ſpace, the King hereof was ſaid to have been able draw together 50000 Horſe and 200000 Foot, for defence of this Kingdome. *Turquet* reports it ſo in his *Spaniſh* Hiſtory. But this proved more then they were able to do in their greateſt need ; when this Kingdome was finally invaded, and at laſt ſubdued, by *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel* Kings of *Spain* : though poſſibly by reaſon of their diviſions at that time, ſome following the party of *Mahomet Boabdelin*, and others that of his Uncle *Muley* choſen King againſt him ; they might not joyn together in a common intereſs for the defence of their Eſtate. The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Pomgranat (or apple of *Granada*) ſlipped, *Vert*.

8 MURCIA.

MURCIA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Granada* : on the Eaſt, with *Valentia* ; on the North with *Valentia*, and a part of *Granada* ; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean Sea* ; ſo called from *Murcia* the chief City. In former times eſteemed a rich and wealthy Countrey, ſtored with all ſorts of fruit ; and ſo abounding in *Silver* Mines, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 2500 *Drachmas* of daily profit ; now for the moſt part barren, and but ill inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in ſo ſmall a Countrey. The Principal, 1 *Murcia*, by *Ptolomy* called *Mineralia*, ſeated upon the River *Segura* ; a Biſhops See, ſituate in a pleaſant and delightfull Plain, planted with Pomgranats, and other excellent fruits : from this, the Countrey had the name of the Kingdome of *Murcia*. 2 *Carthagena*, or *Nova Carthago*, firſt built by *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*, the Brother of *Annibal*, for the better receiving of ſuch aids, both of men and money, as ſhould come from *Africa*. Situate in a Demi-Iſland, in the very jaws of the *Mediterranean* ; by which, and by a deep Mariſh on the Weſt ſide of it, ſo impregnably fortified ; that if *Scipio*, afterwards called *Africanus*, who then lay at the ſiege thereof, had not been ſhewed a way over that *Mariſh*, at a dead low water ; by poor Fiſhermen of *Tarragon*, who knew the ſecret ; he had there loſt both his time and honour. Nothing more memorable, in the ſaccage and ſpoil thereof, (though there was found abundance of Arms and Treaſure) than the vertue of *Scipio*, who finding there many *Spaniſh* Ladies of great birth, and beauties, left there as Hoſtages for the *Spaniards* with the *Carthaginians*, would not permit any of them to be brought before him ; for fear it ſhould betray him to ſome inconvenience. Being reedified it was made a *Roman* Colony, and one of the ſeven Juridical Reſorts of *Tarraconenſis* : by *Conſtantine* made the chief City of the new Province of *Carthaginenſis*, which was hence denominated : afterwards twice ſacked by the *Gothes* and *Vandals*, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruines. And though again new built and peopled, it is ſtill but ſmall ; containing at the moſt but 600 Houſholds : and would be utterly abandoned, but for the ſafety of the place, and the ſtrength thereof, garriſon'd, and fortified very ſtrongly by King *Philip* the ſecond, for fear of ſurpriſal by the *Turks* ; and the ſecurity of the Haven (which is withall very large and capacious) coming from a little Iſland, lying at the mouth thereof ; by which aſſured from tempeſtuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occaſion of that Saying of *Andreas Doria*, Admiral unto *Charles* the fifth, that *there were but three ſafe Ports in the Mediterranean* ; that is to ſay, *Auguſt*, *July*, and this *Carthagena* : meaning as I conceive, that thoſe two months being commonly free from tempeſtuous weather, were of as great ſafety to the Mariners, as this famous Port. 3 *Lorca*, another Port Town, ſituate on a Creek more within the Land. 4 *Almanca*. 5 *Sarazal*, two ſtrong Towns bordering on *Valentia* ; well fortified, when *Murcia* and *Valentia* were in ſeveral hands. 6 *Cervillan*. 7 *Alhama*. 8 *Rus*, &c.

Toledo. This Countrey being part of the Province of *Carthaginenſis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans*, at their firſt entrance into *Spain*; from them recovered by *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Gothes*, in this part of *Europe*. Together with the reſt of *Spain*, it was ſubdued by the *Moors* of *Africk*, in the diſtractions of whoſe Empire after the going hence of the *Moors* of *Africk*, it was made a diſtinct Kingdome by *Aben Hut*, of the race of the Kings of *Saragoſſa*, who had ſeized upon it, *Anno* 1228, and for a time was the moſt puiſſant King of the *Moors* in *Spain*, commanding over this Countrey, *Granada*, and a great part of *Andaluſia*. Invited to a feaſt, made drunk, and then baſely murdered by *Aben Arramin*, a falſe ſervant of his, *Anno* 1236. one *Aben Hudiel* ſeized on the Realm of *Murcia*, diſturbed in his poſſeſſion by *Alboaquis*, the laſt King hereof. But he not able to defend himſelf againſt his Competitor, ſurrendred it to *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, whom he put into poſſeſſion of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned, that *Alboaquis* ſhould enjoy the title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, under the Soveraignty of *Caſtile*; and that *Ferdinand* ſhould enjoy one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1241, after it had continued in the ſtate of a Kingdome, but 12 years only, united to *Caſtile* without bloud or trouble, and ſo remains ever ſince.

9. TOLEDO.

THe Kingdome of TOLEDO, ſo called from *Toledo* the chief City of it, contained once the greateſt part of that Countrey which is now called *New-Caſtile*; of which it is now reckoned only for a part or Member. The Countrey lying next unto it was anciently the Seat of the *Carpentani*; the nature of the ſoyl we ſhall find elſewhere.

Principal Cities of this Kingdome, 1 *Toledo*, of great Antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius* a *Roman Prætor*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with 30 Towers ſtanding on the walls. By reaſon of the ſituation of it in the very midſt almoſt of *Spain*, it is paſſing well inhabited, as well by the Nobility, who reſide there for pleaſure, and by Scholars, who abide in it for their ſtudies; as by Merchants, who reſort thither for their profit: beſides ſuch Souldiers and their Officers, who are continually garriſoned in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean, and ordinary; though by far more handſome in the inſide than the outſide promiſeth: moſt of them being furniſhed with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed into them by the admirable inventions of one *James*, a Native of *Cremona* in the Dukedome of *Millain*. The ſtreets narrow, cloſe, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troubleſome to walk or go upon, eſpecially in ſlippery or dirty weather, by reaſon of its ſteep and uneven ſituation on the ſide of a rocky hill: by which, and by the River which almoſt ſurrounds it, it is naturally very ſtrong, and well helped by Art. For that cauſe made the ſeat of the *Gothiſh* Kings: by one of which, called *Bamba*, ſo repaired and beautified (beſides the addition of a ſtrong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by ſome accounted for the founder of it. For ſo we find it in theſe old verſes.

Erexit (fautore Deo) Rex inclytus Urbem
Bamba, *ſuæ celebrem portendens Gentis honorem.*

That is to ſay,
King *Bamba* (God aſſiſting) rais'd this Town,
Extending to the ancient *Gothes* renown.

When the *Gothes* fell, it was in chief eſtimation amongſt the *Moors*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdome; whereof more anon: but under both (as it continueth to this day) the See of an Arch-biſhop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and Preſident for the moſt part of the *Inquiſition*. His revenue anſwerable to his place; the greateſt of any *Clergy-man* in the *Chriſtian* World, next to the Popes of *Rome*; as being eſtimated at 300000 Crowns *per annum*. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here holden in the time of the *Gothes*, and is now a famous Univerſity for the ſtudy of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws, and hath to this day the temporal Juriſdiction over 17 walled Towns, beſides Villages. 2 *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is ſituate on the River *Ana*, of moſt fame in theſe later times for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Caſtile*. Neighboured by the ruines of a ſtrong and famous City *Caſtulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyreſoeni*, a people, that dwelt on the other ſide of the River, ſuddenly entred, and taken. But *Sertorius* following after them by the ſame Gate, put them all to the ſword: and cauſing his men to apparel themſelves in the cloathes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyreſoeni*; who ſuppoſing them to be their own party, opened their Gates, and were all either ſlain or ſold for ſlaves. More of this Town anon when we come to *Caſtile*; to which now belonging. 3 *Talbora*, commonly called *Talvera de la Reyna*, or the Queens *Talvera*: and called ſo on occaſion of an execrable murder, committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, on the Lady *Leonore de Guzman*, her Husbands Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*; ſuppoſed to be the *Libora* of *Ptolomy*, and now belonging to the Arch-biſhop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof

Toledo.

thereof. 4 *Medina Zelim*, commonly called *Medina Celi*, of great importance when poſſeſſed or neighboured by the *Moors*. Now of moſt note for giving the title of Dukes to the illuſtrious Family *De la Cerde*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the eldeſt Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth; claiming by that deſcent a title to the Crown of *Caſtile*. What other Towns belonged to it we ſhall ſee anon.

As for *Toledo* it ſelf, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; after that the ſeat Royal of the *Gothiſh* Kings; removed hither from *Tholouſe* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moors* at their firſt entrance into *Spain*, *Anno* 716. more prudently aiming at the head, than the *Gothes* poſſibly expected from ſuch *Barbarians*. In the Confuſions of that Kingdome, betwixt the beginning of the reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the ſecond coming in of the *Moors* of *Africk*, made a diſtinct Kingdome of it ſelf; continuing in that eſtate, till taken from *Hyaia Alcaduchir* the laſt King hereof, by *Alfonſo* the firſt, King of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1083. This *Alfonſo* being the younger Son of *Ferdinand* the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdome of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that by his Brother *Sancho* King of *Caſtile*, he lived exile with the *Moors*, kindlly received and entertained by *Almenon* the Father of this *Hyaia*, King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which coming to the Crowns of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 1073. he picked a quarrel with his Hoſt, and beſieged *Toledo*; his long abode there making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitare his deſigns; which notwithſtanding held him a ſiege of five years, before he could make himſelf Maſter of it; by him incorporated preſently on the taking of it, with the reſt of that Kingdome, and made the head of *New-Caſtile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well thoſe who held it but for life, as thoſe who left the ſame unto their Poſterity, they are theſe that follow.

The *Mooriſh* Kings reigning in *Toledo*.

A.Ch.

1 *Galafroy*, King of *Toledo* in the time of *Charlemaigne*, under a Vaſſalage of the great *Caliphs* of *Damaſcus*, ſubdued by *Abderamen* the firſt King or Miramomolin of the *Moors* in *Corduba*, of the Houſe of *Humeia*.

787 2 *Zuleima*, eldeſt Son of *Abderamen* King of *Corduba*, being diſpoſſeſſed of the Realm of *Corduba* and the reſt of his Eſtate in *Spain* by *Hizen* his younger brother, reigned a while in *Toledo*; of which outed alſo not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a Member of the Kingdome of *Corduba*, till the latter end of the reign of *Abderamen* the ſecond. At what time

833 3 *Aben Lope* (the Son of *Muſa Aben Cacia*, a *Goth* by Nation and deſcent, but a *Moor by* profeſſion, who had cauſed the *Toledans* and others of the *Moors* of *Spain* to rebel againſt *Abderamen*) aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Toledo*: a ſtrict confederate of *Ordogno* the eleventh King of *Leon*, by whom ſupported in his wars againſt thoſe of *Corduba*; but at laſt vanquiſhed and diſſeized by *Mahomet* the Son of *Abderamen*, *Anno* 848.

990 4 *Abdalla*, a great man among the *Moors*, during the contentions betwixt *Zuleima* and *Hizen* the ſecond for the Realm of *Corduba*, ſeized on the City of *Toledo* which he held as King: and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Corduba* during thoſe contentions, by whom ſucceeded in this Kingdome.

995 5 *Mahomet* ſurnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humeya* King of *Corduba*, and diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the faction of *Zuleima*, retired to *Toledo*, and was kindly entertained by the King *Abdalla*, whom he ſucceeded in this Kingdome.

999 6 *Obeydalla* the Son of *Mahomet*, ſlain in his wars with *Hizen* the King of *Corduba*, in the firſt or ſecond years of his raign.

1000 7 *Hairam* of the ſame houſe of *Aben Humeya*, and probably the next kinſman of *Obeydalla*, ſucceeded him in this Eſtate, and left the ſame unto his poſterity, till ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

1010 8 *Hizen* the Son of *Hairan*, of whom nothing memorable.

1045 9 *Ali Maynon*, or *Almenon*, as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizen*, who entertained *Alfonſo* the ſixth of *Leon*, when diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by his Brother *Sancho*.

1076 10 *Hizen* II. Son of *Ali Maynon*.

1078 11 *Hyaia* ſurnamed *Alcadarbile*, the Son of *Ali Maynon*, and Brother of *Hizen*, a cruel Prince and ill beloved of his ſubjects; which gave occaſion unto *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, ſpoken of before to invade this Kingdome, by whom at laſt it was ſubdued, and *Toledo* with its Territories added unto *Caſtile*, as before is ſaid, *An.* 1083. By which means there are accrewed to the Realm of *Caſtile*, beſides *Toledo* it ſelf, and the Towns ſpoken of already, thoſe of *Illeſcus*, *Eſcallona*, *Magneda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Conſuegra*, *Berlanga*, *Guadalaiara*, *Arienca*, and divers others, now paſſing in the eſtimate of *New-Caſtile*.

But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the Chriſtians, was forthwith made the Metropolitan City of *Spain* (in regard of Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Gothes*: and ſhortly after honoured by *Alfonſo* with the title of the Imperial City, that King upon the conqueſt hereof, having aſſumed unto himſelf the ſtile of Emperour of *Spain*, but ſomewhat too affectedly, as the caſe then ſtood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which reſpects he gave unto this City for the Arms hereof, in a Pile *Azure*, a Crown Mitral Imperial *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry precious Gems *Proper*; changed afterwards by *Alfonſo* the 3d. of *Caſtile* and 8th. of *Leon*, affecting the ſame title of *Emperour*, to an Emperour ſitting on his throne in a Robe of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a Sword in his right. But the Blazon of theſe Arms I find not, nor much worth the ſearching: the old Coat being worn again after his deceaſe.

10 CASTILE.

CASTILE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Navarre*, *Aragon*, and part of *Valentia*; on the Weſt, with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biſcay*, *Guipuſcoa*, and the *Aſturias*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andaluſia*, and *Granada*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

This was the moſt prevailing Kingdome of all this Continent, to which the reſt are all united either by Marriages or Conqueſt. Divided commonly into the *New* and the *Old*, parted from one another by the hills of *Sevogia*: the one being cald the *Old Caſtile*, becauſe it was the antient Patrimony of the firſt Earls hereof; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the firſt inheritance, by the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Toledo* and other pieces from the *Moors*. The *Old Caſtile* is the leſs fruitfull of the two, more fit for paſturage than Corn; but better ſtored with that, and all ſorts of fruits, than the neighbouring Countreys, which lie betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champain, better ſtored with fruits; and furniſhed with ſufficient plenty of Corn and other proviſions neceſſary for the life of man. The *Old Caſtile* watered with the Rivers of 1 *Relaunos*, riſing not far from *Burgos*; 2 *Tormes*, paſſing by *Salamanca*,; 3 *Duero*, the Receptacle of the others: The New with 4 *Zaruma*, honoured with the Neighbourhood of *Madrid*; 5 *Tavina*, and 6 *Tagus*, the moſt famous River of all *Spain*.

The *OLD CASTILE* is ſituate on the North of the *New*, and hath for the chief Cities of it, 1 *Soria*, of great note in the ancient ſtory, by the name of *Numantia*, which for the ſpace of fourteen years withſtood the whole forces of *Rome*: during which time they valiantly repulſed their enemies, and forced them to diſhonourable compoſitions. But finding at the laſt no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money and Goods, laid them in a heap, then ſet fire unto them, and finally burnt themſelves in the midſt of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numantia*, to adorn his triumph. 2 *Avila*, ſituate under the great Mountains, which are called from hence the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abule*, and by that name giving the title of *Abulenſis* to the renowned *Toſtatus*, who was Biſhop of it. A Man, who in his time was Preſident of the Council to *John* King of *Aragon*; yet could find leiſure enough not only to attend his Epiſcopal charge, but to compile thoſe learned and painfull Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which and his other abilities (beſides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Elogie* which *Caſaubon* hath given him, in his Book againſt *Baronius*, ſaying, *Laudo acumen viri, ſi in meliora incidiſſet Tempora, longè maximi*, 3 *Valadolid*, a fine neat Town, and one of the ancienteſt Univerſities of *Spain*: diſcontinued for a time by Students, and then reſtored again by King *Philip* the ſecond, whoſe birth-place it was; and who erected here a Colledge (amongſt others) for the education only of young *Engliſh* Fugitives. Seated upon the River *Piſuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdomes of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the Kings Court here reſiding in the Summer times, it became in a little ſpace, a fair, large, populous City, and of great reſort, not yielding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lisbon* and *Sevil*. It is called in *Latine*, *Vallis Oletum*, and *Vallis Oletana*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it; but by *Ptolimie*, *Pintia*. 4 *Segovia*, a Biſhops See, of great trade in cloathing; ſituate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence the hills of *Segovia*. 5 *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relaunus*, or *Relanzon*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d'Oca*, part of the *Idubeda*; built out of certain Villages lying hereabouts by *Nugno Bellides*, a *German*, Son-in-law unto one of the firſt Earls of *Caſtile*. For a long time the ſeat of thoſe Kings, ſince of the Arch-Biſhops hereof, the Cathedral being one of the faireſt in *Spain*, built with ſuch Art, that Maſs may be ſung aloud in five ſeveral Chappels, without diſturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency (in *Civil* matters) with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the firſt place or vote, in all Parliaments or Aſſemblies of the States of *Caſtile*. But yet to ſatisfie *Toledo*, the Controverſie is ſtill undecided, and was once finally taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, ſaying, That *he would firſt ſpeak for* Toledo, *and then* Burgos *ſhould ſpeak for it ſelf*. Without the walls of this City is a famous Nunnery, called *De las Huelgas*, conſiſting of 150 Religious women, all of noble houſes. 6 *Cividad Rodrigo*, a Biſhops See, on the River *Gada*. 7 *Zamora*, a ſtrong and well-built City, and a Biſhops See, the *Sentica* of *Ptolemie*; ſituate on the River *Duero*, and now famous for the beſt Bag-pipes. 8 *Tordeſillas*, the *Segiſana* of the Ancients. 9 *Lerma*, not far from *Burgos*, the chief Seat of the Dukes ſo called, a Prince of great poſſeſſions, and the chief of the Family of *Roias* and *Sandoval*. 10 *Salamanca*, the moſt famous Univerſity of *Spain*, eſpecially for the ſtudy of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws; firſt inſtituted by *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1240. and by an Order of the Popes, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bononia* in *Italy*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Profeſſors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, and *Arabick* Tongues, beſides thoſe of the Arts. It was of old called *Salmantica*, is now a Biſhops See, ſituate on the River *Tormes*, as before was ſaid.

Not far from this City, about the times of our Grandfathers, was diſcovered in a Valley ſituate amongſt high and impaſſable Mountains, a kind of *Patoecos* or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain*

Caſtile.

before. The occaſion this. An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva*'s which he very much valued, flew over thoſe Mountains; and his men not being able to find her at firſt, they were ſent back by the Duke to ſeek her. Clambring from one hill to another, they hapned at laſt upon a large and pleaſant Valley, where they ſpied a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongſt many craggy Rocks. The *Salvages* gazing a while upon them ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the beſt houſes they had: which being obſerved by the *Falconers*, they returned again unto their Lord, telling him, that in ſtead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New World* in the midſt of *Spain*, and of a race of people, which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they ſaid, they obtained belief. And the Duke ſhortly after went with a company of Musketiers, and ſubdued them eaſily; they having no offenſive weapons but only Slings. They worſhipped the *Sun* and *Moon*, fed upon nothing that had life; but had good ſtore of excellent fruits, roots, and ſprings of water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their language was not altogether underſtood by any, yet many of their words were found to be purely *Baſquiſh*. Reduced on this diſcovery to *Chriſtianity*; but eaſily diſcernable by all other *Spaniards*, by their tawny complexions, occaſioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams, from thoſe rocky Mountains, wherewith on all ſides they are encompaſſed. The truth hereof, beſides the credit of *James Howel* in his *Inſtructions for Foreign Travel*, I have upon inquiry, found to be atteſted by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*; employed there in affairs of publick intereſt. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly ſatisfied in the men. Whom I conceive to be ſome remnant of the ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themſelves amongſt theſe Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their language and Idolatry ſpeak them to be ſuch. For had they either fled from the *Goths* or *Moors*, there had been found ſome *Croſſe*, or other Monument of *Chriſtianity*, as in other places, or ſome ſuch mixture in their ſpeech, as would have ſavoured ſomewhat of the *Goths* or *Romans*. But it is time I ſhould proceed.

NEW CASTILE is ſituate on the South of the old. The chief Cities there, 1 *Signenca*, a City heretofore of the *Celtiberi*, now a Biſhops See, beautified with a fair Cathedral; ſuppoſed to be the *Condabora* of *Ptolomy*. 2 *Madrid*, upon the *Guadarama*, now the ſeat of the Kings; whoſe reſidence there, though the Countrey be neither rich nor pleaſant, hath made it of a Village the moſt populous City in all *Spain*. It is a cuſtome in this Town, that all the upper rooms in their houſes do belong to the King, except ſome compoſition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do uſe to brag to ſtrangers, that they have a *City walled with Fire*; and then make good the boaſt by ſaying, That it is ſituate in the midſt of quarries of Flint. 3 *Alcala de Henares* (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an univerſity of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, by *Franciſco de Ximines*, Cardinal and Archbiſhop of *Toledo*; and by him furniſhed with the ableſt men both for Divinity and the tongues, that all *Spain* afforded. By whoſe joint diligence and ſtudy in turning over ſo many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he publiſhed the *Complutenſian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and vulgar *Latine*, with the Tranſlation of the *Septuagint* into *Latine* alſo. A work of very great charge and pains (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater profit; there being at the end thereof an Hebrew Dictionary for the underſtanding of that language. 4 *Alcaraz*, amongſt the mountainous tracts of *Oroſpeda*, called *Sierra de Alcaraz*; memorable for a great diſcomfiture given unto the *Moors*, *Anno* 1094. 5 *Molina*, in the ſame mountainous tract, hence called *Monte de Molina*; remarkable for giving the title of Lord to the Kings of *Caſtile*, who in the Regal ſtile are called Lords of *Molina*: the Signeury hereof accrewing to that Crown by the marriage of *Sancho* the third with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonſo* the laſt Lord Proprietary. The Territory large, and the Town of ſtrength: well fortified in the times fore-going, both by Art and Nature. 6 *Cuenca*, ſeated at the ſpring-head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of the *Tagus* alſo, amongſt the Mountains of *Oroſpeda*; built by the *Moors* on the top of thoſe craggie hills, whom it ſerved for an impregnable Fortreſſe againſt the *Chriſtians*, till taken by *Sancho* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1177.

Here alſo is the *Eſcurial*, or *Monaſtery* of S. *Laurence*, built by King *Philip* the ſecond. A place (ſaith *Quade*, who ſpendeth 13 pages in its deſcription) of that magnificence, that no building in times paſt, or this preſent, is comparable to it. The front toward the Weſt is adorned with three ſtately gates; the middlemoſt whereof leadeth into a moſt magnificent Temple, a Monaſtery in which are 150 Monks of the Order of S. *Jerome*, and a Colledge: that on the right hand openeth into divers offices, belonging to the *Monaſtery*; that on the left, unto *Schooles* and out-houſes, belonging to the Colledge. At the four corners there are four turrets of excellent workmanſhip; and for height, majeſtical. Towards the North, is the Kings Palace; on the South part, divers beautiful and ſumptuous Galleries; and on the Eaſt ſide, ſundry gardens and walks, very pleaſing and delectable. It containeth in all 11 ſeveral quadrangles, every one incloyſtered; and is indeed ſo brave a ſtructure, that a voyage into *Spain* were well imployed, were it only to ſee it, and return. Here is alſo in this tract the old Town of *Caſtulo* (the *Caſtaon* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpentani*, and the birth-place of *Himilce* the Wife of *Annibal*; from whence this whole tract had the name of *Saltus Caſtulonenſis*, and ſo called by *Caſar*; now a poor Village, known by the name of *Caſtona la Veia*; in which is ſomewhat to be found of the ancient ruines. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdome of *Toledo*, to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of theſe *Caſtiles* were the *Vaccai*, *Ventones*, *Arevacæ*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Dittani*, &c. From none of which the name of *Caſtile* can be deduced: ſo that we muſt fetch it either from the *Caſtellani*, once a People of *Catalogne*; or from ſome ſtrong fortified Caſtles erected in the frontiers againſt the *Moors*. This laſt conjecture may ſeem probable, becauſe the Arms of this Kingdome

are

Caſtile.

are *Gules*, a *Caſtle* triple-towred, *Or*. Neither is it any way ſtrange for Provinces, eſpecially ſmaller ones, ſuch as at firſt this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Caſtle. For to go no further) even with us *Richmondſhire* was ſo called from the Caſtle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alun* Earl of *Bretagne*; and *Flintſhire* took denomination from a Caſtle built of *Flint-Stones*, by *Henry* the ſecond. We may ſee hereby how much *Celius Secundus Curio* was deceived, who writeth that *Alfonſo* the third having overthrown *Mahomet Enaſer* King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the Sword; aſſumed theſe Arms, that thus named this Kingdome, which was before called the Kingdome of the *Baſtitanes*; becauſe that victory, like a ſtrong Caſtle, had confirmed his Eſtates unto him. Whereas in caſe there were no other error in his ſuppoſition, the *Baſtitanes* were no inhabitants of *Caſtile*, but of *Valentia*, and *Murcia*: Provinces far enough off from the *Old Caſtile*, at the firſt taking of that name. And for the former Etymology, it appeareth moſt evidently, in that the people are by the *Latines* called *Caſtellani*, the Countrey *Caſtella*; the ſame name with thoſe elder *Caſtellani*, which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to ſtand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants hereof having been conquered by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire; fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Gothes*, as hath been ſhewn already on ſome other occaſion. From them extorted by the *Moors*, with the reſt of *Spain*; recovered foot after foot by the Kings of *León*: governed, under them, at firſt by *Provincial* Earls; Commanders of ſo many Caſtles in the Countrey of the *Vaccæi*, fortified and defended againſt the *Moors*. *Ordogno* the ſecond harbouring ſome ſuſpicions againſt theſe Earls, cauſed them all to be cruelly murthered. The people upon this, revolted from the Crown of *Leon*; governed firſt by Judges, then by Earls again, as an abſolute and free Eſtate. *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt that re-aſſumed the title of Earl of *Caſtile*, coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave retinue; ſold to King *Sancho*, an Hawk, and an Horſe of excellent kinds, for a ſum of money: conditioned, that if the money were not paid at the time agreed on, it ſhould be doubled and redoubled till the debt were ſatisfied. This money, by the negligence of the Kings Officers, who looked upon the contract as a matter of jeſt, became ſo great a ſumme; that the King, to ſatisfie *Gonſales*, made him the firſt *Proprietary* Earl of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 939. releaſing that Eſtate from all acknowledgment to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, as ſome call her, Siſter and Heir of *Garcias* the fourth Earl hereof, brought this Eſtate by marriage to *Sancho*, ſurnamed the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, *Anno* 1028. by whom it was erected into a Kingdome, and given by him to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Son, *Anno* 1034. Kings of moſt note and obſervation in the courſe of their ſtory, are, 1 *Ferdinand* their firſt King, who added *Leon* to his Kingdome in right of *Sancha* his Wife, Siſter and Heir of *Veramund* the laſt King thereof, of the race of *Pelagius*. 2 *Alſonſo* the firſt, who ſubdued the Kingdome of *Toledo*, adding it by the name of *New-Caſtile*, unto his Eſtate. 3 *Alfonſo* the third, who conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatſoever lay on the *Caſtilian* ſide of the River *Iberus*: and grew ſo great, that he cauſed himſelf to be ſolemnly crowned Emperour of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*, by the Arch-biſhop of *Toledo*, and gave his Son *Sancho* the title of King of *Caſtile* in his own life time. 4 *Alfonſo* the fourth, the chief of the Confederates againſt *Mahomet Enaſer*, the *Miromomoline* of *Morocco*; whom he vanquiſhed in the famous Battel of *Muradal*, or *Sierra Morena*, *Anno* 1214. added *Alava* and *Guipuſcoa* to his other Eſtates. 5 *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Caſtile* into one Eſtate; and added the Kingdomes of *Murcia*, *Corduba*, and *Sevil* taken from the *Moors*, unto his Dominions. 6 *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperour of the *Germans*, but more famous for his eminence in *Aſtronomy*; the Authour of the *Alfonſine Tables*; compiled by many learned men aſſembled together by his means in the City of *Toledo*, where in the compiling of it, it is affirmed by a *Spaniſh* Writer, that he ſpent more than the Revenues of the Pope in ten years did amount unto. 7 *Sancho* the third, Son of this *Alfonſo*, the Authour of the great breach in the Line of *Caſtile*; for having the hap to ſurvive *Ferdinand* ſurnamed *de la Cerde* his elder Brother, he made himſelf ſo ſtrong a party in his Fathers life-time, that he ſucceeded in the Kingdome, depriving his Brothers children of their right therein, though many attempts were made in their favour afterwards. *Don Alfonſo* eldeſt Son of which *Ferdinand* married into *France*, was Father of *Lewis* Earl of *Clermont*, who by *Leonora de Guſman* a Daughter of the now houſe of *Medina Sidonia*, was Father of *Lewis*, *John*, and *Iſabella de la Cerde*; in which laſt (the male iſſue being quite extinct) the whole rights of that Line remained; brought by her to her Husband *Bernard*, a baſe Son of the houſe of *Foix*, created by King *Henry* the ſecond, the firſt Earl of *Medina Celi*, whoſe Son called *Gaſton* left the name of *Foix*, and took unto himſelf that of *de la Cerde* continued ever ſince in his poſterity (advanced unto the honour of Dukes of *Medina Celi* in the perſon of *Lewis* the fifth Earl) the better to preſerve in memory their deſcent from, and lawful title to that Crown. And for the better keeping and preſerving of their claim unto it, it is affirmed to be the cuſtome of this Houſe, one at the leaſt in the life-time of every Duke, to put up a Petition to the King then reigning, for reſtitution to the Throne, which the King receiving as of courſe, doth of courſe ſubſcribe this anſwer to it, *viz.* *Mo eſt liger*, that is to ſay, there is no room for him. 8 *Pedro* the *Cruel*, driven out of his Kingdome by *Henry* of *Tranſtamare* his brother; reſtored again for a time by the valour of *Edward* the *Black Prince*, Son of *Edward* the third. 9 *John*, Son of *Henry* of *Tranſtamare*, who married his Son *Henry* to *Katharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, by *Conſtance* one of the Daughters of *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*; ſo uniting both titles in one. The times in which theſe Princes and the reſt did reign, appeareth in theſe Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Caſtile*, which are theſe that follow.

The

The Earls of *Caſtile*.

A. Ch.

910 1 *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt Proprietary Earl.
932 2 *Garcias*, Son of *Ferdinand*.
980 3 *Sancho*, or *Sanctias*, Son of *Garcias*.
1018 4 *Garcias* II. Son of *Sancho*, ſlain by treaſon, without iſſue.
1028 5 *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, the Siſter of *Garcias*, the ſecond, married to *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, Father of *Ferdinand*, made by him the firſt King of *Caſtile*.

The Kings of *Caſtile*.

1036 1 *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* by the gift of his Father, and of *Leon* in right of his Wife. 33.
1067 2 *Sancho*, Son of *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* only, his younger Brother *Alfonſo* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 6.
1073 3 *Alfonſo*, the Brother of *Sancho*, King of *Leon*, and afterwards of *Caſtile* alſo.
1108 4 *Urraca* Queen of *Caſtile* and *Leon*. *Alfonſo* II. King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*. 15.
1122 5 *Alfonſo* III. King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy* her former Husband.
1157 6 *Sancho* II. the elder Sonne of *Alfonſo* the third; his younger Brother *Ferdinand* ſucceeding in *Leon*. 2.
1159 7 *Alfonſo* IV. ſurnamed the *Noble*, Son of *Sancho* the ſecond. 55.
1214 8 *Henry*, Son of *Alfonſo* the fourth. 3.
1217 9 *Ferdinand* II. Sonne of *Alfonſo* the ninth of *Leon*, and of *Berenguela* the Siſter of *Henry* ſucceeded his Father in *Leon* alſo, *Anno* 1230. the Kingdomes never ſince diſ-joyned, though the title of *Leon* in ſhort time became diſcontinued.
1252 10 *Alfonſo* V. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, Son of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; and Emperour Elect. 32.
1283 11 *Sancho* III. the ſecond Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth; the children of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother being ſet aſide. 12.
1295 12 *Ferdinand* III. of *Caſtile*, and IV. of *Leon*, Son of *Sancho* the third. 18.
1312 13 *Alfonſo* VI. Son of *Ferdinand*. 38.
1350 14 *Pedro*, the Son of *Alfonſo*, for his infinite Tyrannies ſurnamed the *Cruel*. 18.
1368 15 *Henry* II. the Baſtard Son of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, Earl of *Tranſtamare*, 11.
1379 16 *John*, the Sonne of *Henry* the ſecond. 11.
1390 17 *Henry* III. Son of *John*, and Huſband of *Catharine*, the Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and the Lady *Conſtance*, one of the Daughters of King *Pedro*. 17.
1406 18 *John* II. Son of *Henry* and *Katharine*. 48.
1454 19 *Henry* IV. Son of *John* the ſecond. 21.
1475 20 *Iſabel*, Siſter of *Henry* the fourth, married to *Ferdinand* V. Sonne of *John* King of *Aragon*. Of whoſe Acts and iſſue we will make more ample mention, when we ſhall come to ſpeak of the *Monarchy* of *Spain*, which began in them, and hath been ſince continued in their Poſterity. The Arms of theſe Kings we have ſeen before.

The chief Orders of Knighthood within theſe Kingdomes of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, long ſince united into one, were three in all, partly Religious, partly Military; and one Order of Religious perſons, not known in any Countrey but *Spain* alone.

This of the laſt ſort is called the Order of *Mercie*, or *de la mercede*; firſt inſtituted by K. *James* of *Aragon*, in the chief Church of *Barcelone*, *Anno* 1218. Admitted afterwards into the Kingdomes of *Caſtile*, where of moſt eſteem; but ſo that in remembrance of their firſt foundation they ſtill retain their ancient Arms, which are thoſe of *Aragon*, *viz.* a Croſſe *Argent*, and four Bends *Gules*, in a Field *Or*. Their habit white; the Rule of their Order, that of S. *Auguſtine*: the practice and profeſſion of it to gather Alms amongſt the people, wherewith to redeem ſuch *Chriſtian* Captives, as either by *Piracy*, the chance of War, or by ſome other means are enthralled to the *Turks*, and *Moors*: ſending their Agents yearly to *Algiers* and *Feſſe*, to inform them of the ſtate, age, and quality of each ſeveral Captive; and after on the Inſtruction from the Brethren of this Society, to deal in the redemption of them. A buſineſſe which they manage with great care and faithfulneſſe, and are accordingly truſted with great ſums of money, given and collected to that end; few men here dying, who give not ſome Legacy or other to this pious uſe. Nor are the Kings behind hand in ſo good a work, promoting it with a liberal purſe, and giving as much ordinarily out of his Eſtate, as the Brethren have collected in all *Spain* beſides. And to ſay truth, it doth concern him more then others, becauſe they are his Subjects chiefly, for whoſe redemption the whole ſumme is given and gathered: *Religious perſons* ranſomed firſt, and then the *Laity*; the young and ſerviceable men before old and impotent: if after the *Redemption* of the *Spaniſh* Captives they have any ſtock left, they keep it not till another year; but therewith ranſome Captives of ſome other Nations. So that this ſeemeth to ſucceed in the place of the now antiquated and uſeleſſe *Orders* of *Knighthood*, which were heretofore of great authority and power, that is to ſay,

1 Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the Kingdome of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, to whom the defence thereof belonged, on the approach of the *Moors*; made good by *Raymond* the Abbot of *Piſaria*, and the Monks of *Ciſteaux*. *Anno* 1157. For the future preſervation and defence whereof, they ordained this *Order*, which in proceſſe of time grew to ſuch eſtate, that beſides eight fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no leſſe then 61 Towns and Caſtles. The Knights whereof do wear for their Habit, a *White Robe* with a *Red Croſſe* upon their breaſts; confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the third, *An.* 1164. under the Diſcipline of *Ciſteaux*. Their reſidence is at *Caſtle-Covo*, bound by their Order to ſerve in the warres againſt the Infidels; upon which ſervices they have been ſeen ſometimes in the field, with 300 great Horſe.

2 Of S. *Jago*, inſtituted by the Canons of *Eloy*, and certain Gentlemen of Caſtile, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*; for the ſecurity and entertainment of *Chriſtian Pilgrims*, travelling to the Shrine of S. *Jago*: confirmed by the ſaid Pope *Alexander* the third, *An.* 1175. under the Rule of S. *Auguſtine*. Their Habit is a *White Robe*, with a *Red* Croſſe like a Sword; the companions of it according to the firſt Founders, being part *Eccleſiaſtical*, and part *Secular*; whereof theſe laſt are only tyed unto the vow of conjugal Chaſtity. They grew in little time unto ſuch eſteem, that beſides two Colledges or *Seminaries* in *Salamanca*, and a Colledge in *Sevil*; they had four *Hermitages* in the Mountains, and five *Hoſpitals* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers: together with 90 Towns and Caſtles in ſeveral parts of the Kingdome. The whole number of Gentlemen, beſides *Fryers*, ſerving in their Cures, and other Miniſters, is above 600. Their firſt reſidence at the Hoſpital of S. *Mark*, in the Suburbs of *Leon*; on a diſlike with *Ferdinand* the ſecond King of *Leon*, removed to *Ucles* in *Caſtile*, beſtowed upon them by *Alfonſo* the fourth. Upon this occaſion being divided, they have ſince two Maſters or *Commendadors*, the one called the *Commendador* of *Leon*, who reſides at S. *Marks*: the other the *Commendador* of *Caſtile*, who reſides at *Ucles*,

3 Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon* againſt the *Moors*, where he framed this Order; confirmed by Pope *Lucio*, *Anno* 1183. Others aſcribe it to *Alfonſo*, the Succeſſor of that *Ferdinand*, *Anno* 1217. by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians* in the Realm of *Leon*; but acknowledging the ſuperiority thereof, and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. Their device at firſt was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in a Field *Or*; to which hanged a pair of Shackles, as a ſign of their ſubjection to them of Calatrava; changed *Anno* 1411. to a *White Robe*, and a *Green Croſſe* on their Breaſts.

I omit the Order of the *Dove* and *Reaſon*, inſtituted by K. *John* of *Caſtile*, becauſe of ſmall eſteem, and but ſhort continuance. And ſo much for *Caſtile*, the firſt of thoſe three greater Kingdomes of *Spain*, under which all the reſt are now reduced; containing in this Continent all the Provinces and Eſtates before deſcribed, amounting to two third parts of the whole; and many large eſtates elſewhere; as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter in its proper place. Paſſe we on next to *Portugal*, the ſecond in repute of the ſaid three Kindomes; not ſo much for the largeneſſe of the Territories, which it had on the Continent, as for its great *Appendixes* in all other parts of the World.

II. The Kingdome of PORTUGAL.

THe Kingdome of PORTUGAL containeth 1 *Portugal* it ſelf; 2 *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbiorum*; and 3 the *Terceras* or Iſles of *Azores*: theſe laſt not reckoned parts of *Spain* by any of our Writers either old or new; but made by us a part hereof, becauſe ſituate over againſt *Portugal*, one of the firſt additions which was made unto it on the Ocean; and finally, becauſe I know not under what other head to reduce them better.

And firſt for PORTUGAL it ſelf, it is bounded on the North with the Rivers *Minio* and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with *Algarve*: on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; and on the Eaſt, with the two *Caſtiles*, and *Extremadura*; from which divided by a line drawn from *Ribadania*, ſtanding on the *Avia*, to *Badaios*, on the *Anas* or *Guadiana*. Extended on the Seacoaſt from North to South, 400 miles: the breadth of it in the broadeſt place (not taking in the Iſlands into this accompt) 100 miles; in the narroweſt, 80; the whole circumference 879 miles, and in that compaſſe 1460 Pariſhes.

It was firſt called *Luſitania* from the *Luſitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof, and took the name of *Portugal*, either from the Haven or Port of *Cale*, now called Caia, ſometimes a very rich and flouriſhing *Emporie*; or rather from the Haven Town of *Porto*, at the mouth of *Duerus*, where the *Galls* (or the *French* rather) uſed to land their Merchandiſe which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*, and which Town was given in Dower with *Tereſa*, the Daughter of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, to *Henry* of *Lorain*, with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. Whoſe Succeſſors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all thoſe Countries which they got from the *Moors*, as it continueth at this day.

The aire is very healthy, the Countrey for the moſt part hilly, and bare of Corn, ſupplyed from *France*, and other parts of the North; that which they have being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The ſoyl and people, in all places not rich alike. For where the *ſoyl* is *richeſt*, as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*, there the *People* are *pooreſt*; in regard of the great diſtance thereof from *Liſbon*, and ſo not benefitted by the trading of that wealthy City. And where the *ſoyl* is *pooreſt*, there the

Portugal.

the *People* be richeſt, helping themſelves by trade and *manufactures*; eſpecially by making of Silks, and Salt, ſufficient for themſelves, and for other Countries. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is otherwiſe ſufficiently recompenſed with abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Allom, Fruits, Fiſh, Salt, white Marble, and ſome Mines of Silver, &c.

The people are of a more plain and ſimple behaviour, than the reſt of *Spain*; and (if we believe the old *Proverb*) none of the wiſeſt. For whereas the *Spaniards* are ſaid to ſeem wiſe, and yet to be Fools; the *French* to ſeem Fools, and yet to be wiſe; the *Italians* both to ſeem wiſe and to be ſo; the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wiſe indeed, nor ſo much as to ſeem ſo. But little different from which is the *Spaniſh* By-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*, few and fooliſh; which others vary with the addition of another part of their *Character*; ſaying, they are *Pocos Sotos*, *y Devotos*, few and fooliſh, but withal devout. They have great animoſities (if it be not grown to an *Antipathy*) againſt the *Caſtilians*; for bereaving them of their Kingdome and Liberty, though both of late recovered by them: but, when *moſt Fools*, were counted for good *Sea-faring* men, and happy in the diſcovery of foreign Nations.

Rivers it hath of all ſorts, both great and ſmall, almoſt 200. Thoſe of moſt note, 1 *Minius*, full of read Lead, (from hence called *Minium* by the *Latines*) navigable with ſmall Veſſels 100 miles. 2 *Lethes*, now *Lavada*. 3 *Muliadas*, now *Mondego*. 4 *Tagus*. 5 *Duerus*, and 6 *Anas*; theſe three laſt common alſo to the reſt of *Spain*: *Anas*, or *Guadiana* paſſing by *Portugal* but for ſeaven Leagues only, *Tagus* for 18, and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long ſpace by ſhips of burden; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally ſwift of courſe, reſtrained within narrow Channels, banked on both ſides with very ſteep Rocks, which make them incommodious for Navigation: Inſomuch, that it is reckoned for a great prerogative of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great ſhips 15 or 20 miles within the Continent. But here that want is ſomewhat tollerably ſupplyed with three excellent Havens. 1 That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*; and 2 *Porto* on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*, of which more anon; 3 of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, ſituate on a Golf of 20 miles in length, and three in breadth; a place of principal importance to thoſe parts of the Realm. Rivers however of great fame, according to whoſe courſe the whole Countrey was divided by the *Romans*, into *Vlteriorem*, lying beyond *Dvero* Northwards; 2 *Citeriorem*, on the South of *Tagus*; and 3 *Interamnem*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1 *Lisbon*, ſeated upon *Tagus*, a famous City for traffick, the *Portugals* in all their Navigations ſetting ſayl from hence. By the *Latines* called *Olyſippo*, and *Vliſſippo*, becauſe as ſome ſay *Ulyſſes* built it, coming hither in the courſe of his ten years travel; a thing meerly fabulous, it being no where found, that *Ulyſſes* did ever ſee the Ocean. But like enongh it is, that this Town being ſeated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by Sea-faring men, might at the firſt be conſecrated to the memory of ſo great a Traveller; as *Athens* being a place of *Learning*, was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athene*. It is in compaſs ſeven miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Pariſhes, and in them 20000 houſes; all of neat and elegant building. Turrets, and Towers it numbreth upon the Walls about 76: Gates towards the Sea-ſhore 22. And towards the Continent ſituate upon five ſmall Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River: on the higheſt Hill an ancient Caſtle, not ſtrong, but by reaſon of the ſituation, ſerving now only for a Priſon for men of quality: the entry of the River being defended by the Caſtle of *Caſcaias*; and nearer to the City by the Fort of S. *Julians*, and the Rock of *Belem*, munitioned with 20 Pieces of Ordnance. This City heretofore was honoured with the ſeat of the Kings, ſince of the Vice-Roys, & Arch-Biſhops See, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdome, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm beſides: ſaid by ſome *French* Writers to be the beſt peopled City in *Chriſtendome*, next unto *Paris*; and by *Botero* an *Italian*, made to be the fourth Mart Town of *Europe*; the other three being *Conſtantinople*, *Paris*, & *Moſco*. In which they do great wrong to *London*, as populous and well traded as the beſt of them all. 2 *Santaren*, on the *Tagus*, ſo called from S. *Irene*, a Nun of *Tomar*, (a Monaſtery, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did uſe to be crowned) here martyred by the *Moors*; by *Ptolomy* called *Scabaliſcus*, then a *Roman* Colony. 3 *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of the huge Mountains, called *Montes Lunæ*; whether by reaſon of the cool refreſhings from the Sea, and pleaſure of the Woods adjoining, the Kings of *Portugal* uſed to retire in the heats of Summer. 4 *Conimbre*, on both ſides the River *Mondego*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Vineyards and Woods of Olives, a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity; the *Maſters* whereof made the Commentary on moſt part of *Ariſtotle*, called from thence *Schola Conimbricenſis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, are 5 *Braga*, by *Ptolomy* called *Bracaria Auſtuſta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*; the Royal ſeat when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Arch-biſhop, contending for the Primacy with him of *Toledo*. 6 *Porto*, the Haven of the *Galls*, on the mouth of *Duero*. 7 *Miranda*, a Biſhops See on the ſame River. 8 *Bragance*, the Duke whereof is ſo great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the people of *Portugal* are his Vaſſals, and live on his Lands: originally deſcended from *Alfonſo*, natural Son to *John* the firſt; created by his Father Earl of *Borcellos*, after Duke of *Bragance*; the later Dukes, ſince the time of King *Emanuel* being withal of the right Royal Bloud: two ſteps of main advantage to the Regal Throne, lately aſcended and obtained by *John* Duke of *Bragance*, now called *John* the fourth. And finally, on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdome of *Algarbe*, there is 9 *Ebora*, in the midſt of a large and ſpacious Plain, an Arch-biſhops See, and an Univerſity; this laſt of the Foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinal. 10 *Portelegre*, a Biſhops See: 11 *Olivenca* on the *Guadiana*. 12 *Beia*, by *Pliny* called *Pax Julia*, now *Mean*, and not very well inhabited, but anciently a *Roman* Colony, & one of the three Juridical Reſorts of *Luſitania*.

2 The Kingdome of *ALGARVE*, lyeth on the South of *Portugal*, from which divided by a line drawn from *Aſcorin* on the Weſtern Sea, to *Odechere* a Caſtle on the *Guadiana*; on the Eaſt bounded by *Andaluſia*; on the Weſt, and South, by the main *Atlantick*. This the moſt wild and deſert part of all this Kingdome, barren and dry: peopled with few Towns, nor thoſe very populous: hilly and Mountainous withal, but yielding by the benefit of the Sea a great trade of fiſhing, of *Tunny* ſpecially; whereof more caught upon this coaſt than in all the Kingdome.

The name it took from the Weſtern ſituation of it, for ſo the word *Algarve* ſignifieth in the *Arabick* tongue, the utmoſt end of it called anciently *Promontorium Sacrum*, now the Cape of S. *Vincent*; becauſe the bones of S. *Vincent* religiouſly preſerved by the Chriſtians, were here burnt and ſcattered about by the *Moors*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Niebla*, the ſeat of *Abed Mefad*, once a King of this Countrey. 2 *Silvis*, an *Epiſcopal* See, ſeated in the In-land parts. 3 *Villa Nova*, ſituate beyond the Cape. 4 *Tavila*, the *Balſa*, and 5 *Faro*, the *Oſſonoba* of *Ptolemy*; both noted Ports on the *Atlantick*, 6 *Lagos*, another Haven Town alſo.

This Countrey conquered by the *Moors* with the reſt of *Spain*, in the diſtractions of their power, was for a time under the ſoveraignty and command of the Kings of *Sevil*. Recovered from the *Moors* of *Sevil*, by the Kings of *Morocco*, it became ſubject unto them till they left this Countrey, and after their retreat was parcelled among many Princes. One of which called *Aben Mefad*, reigning in *Niebla* and the parts adjoining, being diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by *Alfonſo* the *Wiſe*, moſt of the other Towns and Princes ſubmitted to him, and became his Vaſſals, *An.* 1257. More abſolutely ſubdued, and made ſubject to the Crown of *Portugal* by *Alforſo* the third, *An.* 1260. to whom the ſaid *Alfonſo* the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fifth in *Caſtile*, had given the ſame in Dowry with *Beatrix* his Daughter. From which Marriage iſſued *Dionyſius* or *Denys* King of *Portugal*, the firſt that ever uſed the Title of *Rex Algarbiorum*, *An.* 1279.

3 The *AZORES* are certain Iſlands lying in the *Atlautick* Ocean, oppoſite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which diſtant but 250 Leagues. Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of Northern *Latitude*; and one of them in the firſt *Longitude*, which is commonly reckoned from theſe Iſlands, as being the moſt Weſtern parts of the *World*, before the diſcovery of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Goſ-hawks* which were found there in the beginning, (the word *Azor* in the *Spaniſh* tongue ſignifying a *Goſ-hawk*:) though at this time there be none of them to be found. Called alſo the *Flemiſh Iſlands*, becauſe firſt diſcovered by the *Flemings*, and the great numbers of them in the Iſles of *Faial* (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet ſome Families which reſemble the *Flemings*, both in their complexion and habit; and not far from the place of their abode a Torrent. which the *Spaniards* call *Riberados Flamengos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are alſo called the *Terceras*, from *Tercera* the chief Iſle among them.

The Air of thoſe Iſlands is generally good, and ſubject unto few diſeaſes, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*; being an Impoſthumation of the blood breaking out at the eyes or other parts of the Body. Some other inconveniences they are ſubject to, proceeding from the humidity of the place; the great winds and ſtorms, of ſuch a violent and ſtrange kind of workings, that bars of Iron as big as a mans Arm, have in ſix years been worn as little as a ſtraw. All of them well ſtored with Fleſh, Fiſh, and other things neceſſary, except Salt and Oyl; with which they are furniſhed out of *Portugal*. Wines they have alſo for their own uſe, but not to be tranſported far becauſe of their weakneſſe: for which cauſe alſo, the richer men provide themſelves of *Canary* Wines; or of thoſe of the Iſland of *Madera*. Of like nature is their Wheat, and other fruits, which hold not good above a year. All of them ſubject unto Earthquakes, and ſome to breathings out of fire; which continually ſend forth fuming vapours. The chief commodities which they tranſport unto other Countries, are *Canary* birds for Ladies, Woad for the Diers, Joyners-work which they ſell to the *Spaniards*, and Beeves for the victualling of ſuch ſhips as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent Husbands on their grounds; inſomuch as they make Vines to grow out of Rocks; much given to *Joynery*, by which they make many pretty fancies, much eſteemed by the *Spaniards*; but not ſo expert at it as thoſe of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to teach their Cattel underſtanding; the Oxen being taught to know when their Maſter calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their cuſtomes and apparel; but with ſome ſmattering of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Iſlands nine in number, and diſtinguiſhed by the ſeveral names of, 1 *Tercera*, 2 S. *Michael*, 3 *Faial*, 4 *Gratioſa*, 5 S. *George*, 6 *Pico*, 7 *Corvo*, 8 *Flores*, 9 S. *Maries*, of which S. *Michaels* and S. *Maries* lie next to *Spain*; *Tercera* on the North-weſt of thoſe; (by conſequence the third in Order, whence it had the name) S. *Georges*, *Gratioſa*, *Pico*, *Faial*, on the Weſt of that; and finally thoſe of *Corvo*, and *Flores*, neareſt to *America*.

1 *TERCERA*, the chief of all the reſt, 18 miles in compaſſe, well ſtored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oranges: and for the Kitchin, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-herbs, and as good *Batato-roots* (which are the beſt food the people have) as any be in the World; but more eſteemed in *Portugal* than they be in this Iſland, by reaſon of their great abundance. Here is alſo great quantity of the beſt kind of Woad. (which from hence is called *Iſland-Woad*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man, which bears no Fruit, but hath a Root as profitable as thoſe that do: out of which the People draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their Mattreſſes in ſtead of Feathers. Fowl enough for the uſe of man, and yet none of prey. No port of any ſafety in it but that of *Angra*; and that made ſafe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which ſtick out like

Azores.

a pointed Diamond, able to pierce the feet of any who ſhall venter over them. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Praye*, on the Sea-ſide, well walled, but not very well peopled. 2 S. *Barbara*, 3 S. *Sebaſtians*, 4 *Gualne*, and 5 *Villa Nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6 *Angra*, the chief, not of this Iſland only, but of all the nine; the reſidence of the Governour, and an Arch-Biſhops See, who hath in it his Cathedral Church. Seated on a convenient Bay made in the forme of a *Creſcent*, with two Promontories on each ſide, (like the two horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle for defence of the Haven; the Town it ſelf alſo well-walled about, and environed with ſharp Rocks on all ſides. Both Town and Caſtles well garriſoned, and no leſs diligenly guarded. This in regard of its great ſtrength, and commodious Haven, is eſteemed the principal of theſe Iſlands, and communicates its name unto all the reſt: though neither neereſt unto *Spain*, nor the greateſt in compaſs.

2 S. *MARIES*, ſo called from the Saint (as S. *Georges* and S. *Michaels* are) unto which it is dedicated; is the moſt Southern of all theſe Iſles, and the next to *Spain*: twelve miles in circuit, inhabited by *Spaniards* onely, and thoſe much given unto the making of Earthen Veſſels. So naturally fenced with Rocks, that it is, and may be eaſily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garriſon. The Chief Town of it hath the name of S. *Maries* alſo, which it either giveth unto the Iſland, or borroweth from it.

3 S. *MICHAELS*, directly North of S. *Maries*, from which little diſtant, the biggeſt in the whole pack; as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not anſwerable: much ſubject unto Earthquakes and fiery vapours. Of moſt note amongſt our modern *Geographers*, who have removed hither the firſt *Meridian* (by which they divide the World into Eaſt and Weſt) from the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Iſlands*; where it was fixed in the time of *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers.

And this remove ſeems countenanced even by Nature it-ſelf, it being obſerved that the *Compaſs* when it cometh under the *Meridian* drawn through this Iſle, hath little or no *Variation* at all, but pointeth almoſt directly towards the North; whereas in all other places or leſs *Meridians*, Eaſt and Weſt, it pointeth not ſo directly North, but more or leſs to the *North-eaſt*, or the *North-weſt*; which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the *North-eaſting*, and the *North-weſting* of the Compaſs. And yet it is obſerved of late, that there is ſome more ſenſible variation of it in this Iſle of S. *Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*: which therefore is conceived more fit for the firſt *Meridian*.

The chief Town hereof, beſides many Burroughs and leſſer Hamlets, is *Punta del Gada*, ſeated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers then the Port of *Angra*, becauſe here they may go in and out as they pleaſe, but not ſo in the other.

4 *FAYAL*, 17 or 18 miles in length, plentifully provided with all things neceſſary for the uſe of man, and well furniſhed with Woad, for which Commodity much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it *Dorta*, defended with a Caſtle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*; both Town and Iſland taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1597. This Action was called the *Iſland-Voyage*, undertaken as well to divert the War which the *Spaniards* threatned to bring to our own doors; as by ſeizing ſome of theſe Iſlands, to intercept the *Spaniſh* Fleets in their return, and to hinder them in their ſetting out: by which means, wanting their *Indian* Gold, they might be brought to better termes with their neighbour Nations. And though the *Engliſh* were not able to hold it long, yet it was ſaid, that the booty got in this Expedition, amouned to 400000 Crowns; beſides the honour of beating the *Spaniard* upon his own ground. It took this name from its abundance of *Beeches*.

5 *GRATIOSA*, not above five or ſix Leagues in compaſs; but ſo well furniſhed with fruits, that they ſend much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* only, but ſo poor that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garriſon. The chief Town of it called *La Plaia*.

6 S. *GEORGES*, twelve miles long, about three in breadth; mountainous, and full of *Forreſts*: but thoſe *Forreſts* ſo well ſtored with *Cedars*, that they uſe them many times for ſhipping, and ſometimes for Fewell. The chief Town is called S. *Georges*, as the Iſland is.

7 *PICO*, lyeth on the South of the Iſle of S. *George*, and took this name from an high Hill in the form of a *Pyramid*, which the *Portugals* generally call a *Pike*, or *Pico*. Repleniſhed with fruits, ſome *Cedars*, and a Tree called *Teixo*, of great bulk, and much beauty: the wood thereof exceeding hard, red within and waved; ſo admirably Beautifull, that it is allowed only to the Kings Officers, the other Subjects being interdicted the uſe of it (but on ſpecial licence) by a publick Edict. In bigneſs it is ſecond only unto that of S. *Michael*, if not equal to it; hardly ſo much in length, but of greater breadth. The chief Towns of it, 1 S. *Sebaſtians*, 2 *Callota de Neſquin*, both upon the Sea, and in the Eaſt parts of the Iſland.

8 *FLORES*, directly Eaſt from *Fayal*, ſo called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratioſa* from the like flouriſhing Verdure of it) is in compaſs not above 8 miles; but plentifully furniſhed with Cattel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it *Santa Cruz*. The Iſle (though ſmall, yet) twice as big as the Iſle of 9 *CORVO*, ſo called from its abundance of Crows, ſituate on the North hereof, and but little diſtant: both very unſafe, and both moſt miſerably poor, by reaſon of the many Pyrates which lie betwixt them, to intercept ſuch ſhips, as trade towards *America*, But this, though much ſmaller than the others, may in time be of more eſteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the moſt natural place for the firſt *Meridian*, as before was noted: the *Needle* here pointing directly to the North, without *Variation*. Which whether it proceed from ſome ſecret inclination of the *Load-ſtone* to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being ſituate betwixt the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, by the *magnetical* vertue of the Earth it ſelf: I leave to be diſputed by more able judgements.

Portugal.

Theſe Iſlands were firſt diſcovered and ſubdued by the ***Portugals***, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince ***Henry***, Son of ***Iohn*** the firſt; who firſt made the ***Portugals*** in love with the Seas. And they were alſo the laſt Members of the Crown of ***Portugal*** which held out for ***Don Antonio*** the Baſtard, againſt ***Philip*** the ſecond of ***Caſtile:*** againſt whom the Iſland of ***Tercera*** was for a while gallantly defended by ***Emanuel de Silva***, with the help of the ***French***; but taken at the laſt by the Marqueſs of ***Santa Cruz***; and the ***French***, after promiſe of life, cruelly murdered in cold bloud. After which, garriſoned at the firſt by none but ***Portugals.*** But upon ſome commotion hapning in that Kingdome, it was thought fit, on ſome reaſon of State, to make ſure of the beſt Iſlands by ***Spaniſh*** Garriſons; which accordingly were put into the Caſtles of ***Angra***, in ***Tercera***; the Towns of ***Punta del Gada***, in S. ***Michaels***; and ***Dorta*** in ***Fayal.*** And to ſay truth, the ***Spaniards*** had good reaſon to be carefuil of them, theſe Iſlands being of ſuch importance, as without them the Navigation of the ***Indies***, ***Æthiopia***, ***Braſil***, and ***New Spain***, could not be continued: becauſe the ***Fleets*** which come from thoſe Countreys to ***Lisbon***, or ***Sevil***, muſt in a manner of neceſſity touch upon ſome of them; as well in following their courſe if they come from the Weſt, as in recovering ſuch winds as are uſefull to them, if they come from the Eaſt.

But to return again to the main Land of ***Portugal***, know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it were the ***Luſitani***, dwelling betwixt ***Tagus*** and ***Duerus***, the old ***Luſitania*** being bounded within thoſe Rivers; the ***Celtici***, and ***Turditani***, who took up alſo ſome part of ***Bætica***, dwelling on the South of ***Tagus***; and the ***Gallaici Bracarii*** (ſo called to difference them from the ***Gallaici Lucenſes*** who poſſeſſed ***Gallicia***) on the North of ***Duerus.*** Subjected firſt unto the ***Romans***, by whom accompted one of the three parts of ***Spain.*** In the declining of their Empire conquered by the ***Alani***; and from them taken by the ***Suevians***; who, for a time, made the City of ***Braga*** the Royal ſeat of their Kings. The ***Suevians*** loſt it to the ***Gothes***, and the ***Gothes*** to the ***Moors***, as hath been ſhewn already in their ſeveral ſtories. Recovered in part by the Kings of ***Leon***; to whom that part continued ſubject, till given by ***Alfonſo*** the ſixth of ***Leon***, in Dowry with his baſe Daughter ***Teraſa***, to ***Henry*** of ***Lorrein***; whoſe vertue and good ſervice merited no leſs reward, ***Anno.*** 1099. Who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl, for the ſpace of 12 years, left his Son ***Alfonſo***, Heir both to his Fortunes and Vertues; honoured with the title of King of ***Portugal***, by the Soveraigns of ***Leon***, for his moſt gallant demeanour ſhewn in the battel of ***Obrique***, ***Anno.*** 1139. He had before the ***Aſſumption*** of the Regal Stile, ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour; and he reigned here with no leſs, 45 years after that ***Aſſumption***, reverenced by his Friends, and feared by his Enemies. So that the whole time of his ſitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years: a longer enjoying of Soveraingnty, than any Prince, ſince the firſt beginning of the ***Roman*** Monarchy. His Succeſſors we ſhall have in order, in the following Catalogue. But we muſt firſt tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of moſt note in the whole ſucceſſion, are, 1 ***Henry*** of ***Lorrein*** (whom ſome make a ***Burgundian*** of the City of ***Beſancon***) who coming into ***Spain*** to the ***Holy Wars***, and deſerving nobly in the ſame; was honoured by ***Alfonſo*** the ſixth, with his Daughter ***Teraſa*** and the town of ***Portio*** for her Dower: given to him with the title of Earl of ***Portugal.*** He extended his Eſtate as far as ***Conimbre***, on the South of the River ***Duero***; that River being before that the utmoſt bound of it that way.. 2 ***Alfonſo*** the firſt King. who took ***Lisbon*** from the ***Moors***, ***An.*** 1247. and made it the Seat of his Kingdome, which he extended Southward as far as ***Algarve.*** 3 ***Alfonſo*** the third, who partly by Conqueſt, and partly by Marriage, added ***Algarve*** to his Eſtate; getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He alſo did prevail ſo far with ***Alfonſo*** the ***Wiſe***, (never the wiſer for ſo doing) as to get his Realm diſcharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of ***Leon***, ***An.*** 1270. 4 ***Alfonſo*** the fourth, confederate with the fifth of the ſame name in ***Caſtile***, againſt ***Alboacen*** the ***Miramomolin*** of ***Africk***, at the fight near the River ***Salado***, not far from ***Tariff***; where they diſcomfited the vaſt Army of ***Moors***, conſiſting of 470000 Horſe and Foot. 5 ***John*** the firſt, the baſe Son of ***Pedro*** the firſt, ſetting aſide the Lady ***Beatrice***, Queen of ***Caſtile***, the Daughter of ***Ferdinand*** the firſt, and the Lawfull Children of his Father, being Many in number; by force and colour of Election obtained the Kingdome. Fortified it by his marriage with the Lady ***Philip***, Daughter of ***John*** of ***Gaunt*** Duke of ***Lancaſter***; a ſtrong competitor at that time for the Crown of ***Caſtile:*** on which relation, this King, the four Kings next ſucceeding, and two of this Kings younger Sons, were made Knights of the ***Garter.*** 6 **Edward** the Son and Succeſſor of ***John*** the firſt, of whom there goes a ſtory, that on the Day of his Coronation, he was adviſed by a ***Jew***, (one of his Phyſitians) learned in Aſtrology, to defer the Ceremony untill noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed unto it in that conjuncture, his Reign would be very ſhort and full of trouble. But the King either out of magnanimity or contempt of that art, going on with the Ceremony; the ***Jews*** prediction was found true: for he reigned not fully five years, and with ill ſucceſs in his attemps againſt the ***Moors.*** 7 ***Henry*** Duke of ***Viſeo*** (***Viſontium*** the ***Latines*** call it) the ſecond Son of ***John*** the firſt, created Knight of the ***Garter*** by King ***Henry*** the ſixth, ***An.*** 1444. By whoſe encouragement, and example, the ***Portugueze*** began to be affected to forain Voyages: diſcovering in his time, (and for the moſt part under his conduct alſo) the Iſlands of ***Azores***, ***Madera***, ***Holy-Port***, thoſe of ***Capo Verde***, and a great part of the coaſt of ***Africk***, as far as ***Guinea***; He died ***An.*** 1465. 8 ***Alfonſo*** the fifth, who warring on the ***Moors*** in ***Africk***, took from them the ſtrong Towns of ***Tanger***, ***Alcaſer***, and ***Arzilla.*** 9 ***John*** the ſecond, under whoſe reign, the ***Portugals*** fully ſetled themſelve in ***Guinea***, and the Realms of ***Congo***; diſcovering all the Coaſts and Iſles of ***Africk***, (not before diſcovered) as far as to the ***Cape of Good-hope***, ***Anno*** 1487. planting and fortifying as they paſſed: the whole Diſcovery of ***Africk***, the ***Eaſt-Indies***, and ***Braſil***, being perfected in the

Reign of King 10 *Emanuel*; under whom alſo they diſcomfited great Armies of the *Turks* and *Sultans* of *Egypt*, bringing by Sea the riches of the *Eaſt* into the *Weſt*. 11 *Sebaſtian*, the Grand-child of King *John*, Son of *Emanuel*, embarking himſelf unadviſedly in the wars of *Africk*, loſt his life (as it is generally ſuppoſed) at the battel of *Alcaſar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for ſhame and ſorrow he returned not home: wandring from one place to another, and at the laſt he was found avowed at *Venice*: thence carried to *Naples*, where he was kept three dayes in a dark Dungeon, without any ſuſtenance but a knife and a halter; brought into *Spain* by the Kings command, where at laſt he dyed. A man in whom ſo many circumſtances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* uſed to ſay, that either he was the true *Sebaſtian*, or elſe the Devil in his likeneſs. But whether true or not, is not now material, death having put an end to that diſputation; though the controverſie which enſued upon his death for the Crown of *Portugal* be not yet decided. For though King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain* ſucceeded in it next after *Henry* the *Cardinal* King (who only came upon the Stage that the Competitors might have time to declare their Titles;) and claimed the Crown as eldeſt Heir male, and neereſt kinſman to King *Henry*: yet all the World was not well ſatisfied, in the juſtice and equity of his demands. In the carrying on of which affairs he ſeemed to deal very candidly to the eyes of men, not byaſſed by their proper *Intereſs*: offering to ſubmit his Title to a diſputation, profeſſing that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, then the Laws of *Caſtile*; and openly acknowledging, that if he ſhould chance to die before the ſaid *Henry*, his eldeſt Son, as being a degree further off, would come behind ſome others of the *Pretendants* to it, of whom himſelf had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make ſure work after his deceaſe, (*Antonio* the Baſtard having got poſſeſſion of *Lisbon*, and taking on himſelf as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raiſed an Armie under the command of *Ferdinand de Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and ſubdued all that ſtood againſt him; *Katherine* the Dutcheſs of *Bragance*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, ſurrendring alſo all her intereſs and pretentions to him; ſo entring by a mixt title of deſcent and Arms, *Anno* 1580. Threſcore years it was peaceably enjoyed by the Kings of *Spain*, when ſuddenly diſpoſſeſſed by a potent faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Bragance*, deſcended from the youngeſt Son of King *Emanuel*: which wrought ſo cunningly and ſucceſſively in his behalf, that the King of *Spain* was ſooner diſſeiſed of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practiſe ſet on foot againſt him, *Anno* 1539. In which it is to be obſerved, that as King *Philip* the ſecond, for the better obtaining of this Crown, had embroyled the *French*, ingaging that King in a bloudy war againſt the *Proteſtants* of that Kingdome; to make him ſure enough from troubling him in his preſent Enterprize: ſo the *French* Miniſters had cauſed a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was buſied in reducing that Province, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themſelves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the *Antipathy* betwixt the Nations made leſs pleaſing to them. Nor was it a partial defection only, or the loſs of *Portugal* and no more; but a general falling off of the whole Eſtate, in *Africk*, *Aſia*, *America*, in the Iſles and Continents: the *Acceſſories*, (excepting only the Town of *Ceuta* in *Barbary*) going the ſame way, as the *Principal* did. And here methinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be juſtly taxed, for committing a greater *Solœciſm* in point of State, than ever people did before them; in that having got the full and peaceable poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garriſons and ſtrong holds of the whole Eſtate, in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it ſelf fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any heſitancie: which, had ſome of the chief pieces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, being brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Caſtilians*; might have been eaſily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniard* hitherto attempted any thing material, for the recovery of that Kingdome: having been ever ſince ſo overlaid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Navarre*, *Biskay*, *Flanders*, *Artoys*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leizure to attend that buſineſs. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is now time to repreſent you with a Catalogue of

.The Kings of *Portugal*.

1139	1	*Alfonſo*, the ſecond Earl, and firſt King of *Portugal*. 45.
1184	2	*Sancho* the Son of *Alfonſo*. 28.
1212	3	*Alfonſo* II. Son of *Sancho*. 11.
1223	4	*Sancho* II. Son of *Alfonſo* the 2d. 34
1257	5	*Alfonſo* III. Brother of *Sancho* the ſecond. 22.
1279	6	*Denys*, the Son of *Alfonſo* the third. 48.
1325	7	*Alfonſo* IV. the Son of *Denys*. 32.
1357	8	*Pedro*, the Sonne of *Alfonſo* the fourth. 10.
1367	9	*Ferdinand*, the Son of *Pedro*, the laſt King of the lawfull iſſue of *Henry* of *Lorein*. 18.
1385	10	*John*, the baſe Son of *Pedro*, of whom ſufficiently before. 48.
1433	11	*Edward*, the Son of *John*, and of the Lady *Philip* of *Lancaſter*. 5.
1438	12	*Alfonſo* V. the Son of *Edward*. 43.
1481	13	*John* II. the Sonne of *Alfonſo* the fifth. 14.
1495	13	*Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Edward*, by his Son *Ferdinand* Duke of *Viſeo*. 26.
1521	15	*John* III. Son of *Emanuel*. 38.
1557	16	*Sebaſtian*, the Nephew of *John* the third, by his Son *Don John*; unfortunately ſlain in the fields of *Africk*. 21.
1578	17	*Henry* the Cardinal, Son of King *Emanuel*, the laſt of the male iſſue of *Henry* of *Lorein*. 2.

Valentia.

1580 18 *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, Son of *Charles* King of *Caſtile* and Emperour, and of the Lady *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *Emanuel*. 18.

1598 19 *Philip* II. of *Portugal*, and III. of *Spain*.

1621 20 *Philip* III. of *Portugal*, and IV. of *Spain*. During his Reign, the *Portugueze* weary of the *Spaniſh* Government, choſe for their King.

1639 21 *Johu* Duke of *Bragance*, the IV. of that name, a Prince of Great poſſeſſions, and of the Royal race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.

Now that we may the better ſee by what title, both the Kings of *Spain*, and the Dukes of *Bragance*, claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other pretenders there were to it, on the death of *Sebaſtian*; and what right as well *Antonio* the Baſtard (but alledging a ſentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the Houſe of *Savoy* did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following *Scheme*.

Emanuel had theſe Children.

John, King of *Portugal*	*John* Prince of *Portugal*	*Sebaſtian*, King of *Portugal*.
2 *Lewis*	*Don Antonio* a Baſtard.	*Chriſtopher* and others.
3 *Henry* the Cardinall, King of *Portugal*.		
4 *Edward*	1 *Mary*, wedded to *Alexander* Duke of *Parma*.	*Rainuccio Farnenſis*.
	2 *Katharine*, married to *John* Duke of *Bragance*.	
5 *Mary*, married to *Charles* the fifth, King of *Caſtile*.	*Philip* the II. King of *Spain*.	
6 *Beatrix*, married to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*.		

By this it may appear how the claims are grounded; but whether title will prevail cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royal line of *Portugal* did begin in an *Henry*, ſo it ended in an *Henry* alſo: the male line failing in the perſon of the Cardinal-King, and the Crown falling (on whomſoever it ſhall faſten) on the Heirs of the Females.

The principal Orders of Knight-hood in this Kingdome, are, 1 Of *Avis*, ſo called from a Town of that name in *Portugal*, the ſeat thereof; founded by *Sanctius* or *Sancho* the firſt, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whoſe *Green Croſs* they wear; but equal to it neither in power nor riches.

2 Of *CHRIST*, inſtituted by *Denys* King of *Portugal*, who conferred on them all the Lands and Poſſeſſions of the exautorated *Templars*; confirmed by Pope *John* the 22d. *Anno* 1321. Their Robe is a *Black Caſſock* under a *White Surcoat*; over which a *Red Croſs*, ſtroaked in the midſt with a white line: their duty to expel the *Moors* out of *Batica*, the next neighbour to *Portugal*. To which Crown they have added many gallant Countreys in *Aſia*, *Africk*, and *Braſil*; and ſo improved their own Eſtates, that all the Iſles in the *Atlantick* do belong to them: beſides the rents of the Mine of S. *Geerge* in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are *Argent*, on five Eſcocheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Saltier* of the firſt, pointed *Sable*, within a Border *Gules*, charged with ſeven Towers, *Or*. Which five Eſcocheons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonſo* the firſt King ſlew at the battel of *Obrique*, *Anno* 1139. the Border with the Towers or Caſtles, being added by *Alfonſo* the third; on his inveſtiture into the Kingdome of *Algarve*, by *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1257, whoſe Daughter *Beatrix* he then married, and ſo conceived himſelf to have ſome relation to the Arms of that Kingdome. And ſo proceed we on to thoſe Provinces, which are under the Government of *Aragon*; the third great body of this State.

12 VALENTIA.

VALENTIA hath on the Eaſt, the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, part of *Caſtile*, and *Aragon*; on the North, *Catalogne*; and *Murcia*, upon the South. It was watered with Rivers, 1 *Xucar*, called of old *Sucro*, and *Surus*, 2 *Guadalander*, ſignifying a River of pure water; and 3 *Millar*.

This Countrey ſtandeth in the moſt temperate and pleaſing Air of all *Spain*, full of *Gardens*, and places of wonderfull delight; where groweth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn, and Fruit: garniſhed all the year long with ſweet-ſmelling flowers, and miraculouſly fruitfull of Pomgranats, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath alſo Mines of Silver at *Buriol*, of Gold at *Lodar*, of Iron at *Finiſtrat*, of Alablaſter at *Piacent*, and of Allom, Lime, and Plaiſter in many places. From thence alſo come the beſt Silks in the World, Cotten of *Marcia*, Crimſon, Scarlet, and other precious colours, and rich perfumes. Finally, all the ſenſes of man may be delighted, and refreſhed, with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality and ſweetneſs much like that of *Naples*. The delicacy and great pleaſures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought leſs warlike then the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Countrey alſo bear the fineſt Fleeces of any in *Spain*; firſt ſtocked with *Cotſwold* ſheep from *England*, at the requeſt of *John* King of *Aragon*, *Anno* 1465. by the inprudent curteſie of King *Edward* the fourth.

Places of moſt note in it are, 1 *Alicanta*, a noted Port on the *Mediterranean*; whence come our

Catalonia.

true *Alicant* Wines, made of the juice of Mulberries; by *Ptolomy* called *Illicias*, by *Mala Ilice*; from whence the Bay adjoyning is called *Sinus Ilicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicanta*. 2 *Orivela*, a Biſhops See, on the River *Segura*, which divides this Province from *Murcia*. 3 *Segorve*, a Biſhops See, by *Ptolomy* namemed *Segobriga*, the chief City in old times of the *Celtiberi*. 4 *Xelva*, ſuppoſed to be the *Incibilis* of *Livie*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5 *Valentia*, a fair, pleaſant, and well-traded City, the See of an Arch-Biſhop, and giveth name to the whole Province: in its firſt glory, one of the chief *Roman* Colonies in theſe parts of *Spain*; in its laſt, the Royal Seat of the *Mooriſh* Kings of this Countrey. Situate three miles from the *Mediterranean*, not far from the mouth of the River *Dueras*, now called *Guadalander*: and is by ſome ſaid to have been heretofore named *Roma*; which ſignifieth ſtrength. But when the *Romans* maſtered it, to diſtinguiſh it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valentia*: which in the *Latine* Tongue, is of the ſame ſignification with the *Greek* ἡ Ῥώμη. Here is an Univerſity, in which S. *Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, ſtudied. 6 *Laurigi*, now a ſmall Village, once a Town of great ſtrength, called *Lauron*: which *Sertorius* beſieged, took and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whoſe confederates the *Lauronites* were, ſtood with his whole Army nigh enough unto the flame to warm his hands; and yet durſt not ſuccour it. 7 *Cullera*, a Sea Town ſtanding at the mouth of the River *Xucar*. It was formerly named *Sucron*, after the name of the River: and is famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Sertorius* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey*'s Army being not only overthrown, but himſelf with life hardly eſcaping. 8 *Morvedre*, ſituate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*; the people whereof when beſieged by *Annibal*, continued ſo obſtinate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they choſe rather to burn themſelves, than yield up the Town: the occaſion of the ſecond War between *Rome* and *Carthage*. Firſt Founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this deſtruction of it, repaired, or re-edified by the *Romans*, (they could not poſſibly do leſs) by whom made a *Colony*. 9 *Gandia*, which gives the title of a Duke to the houſe of *Borgia*, and was the ſtile of *Franciſco Borgia*, the eldeſt Son of Pope *Alex.* the ſixth (for this noble Family) called commonly in *Gnicciardine* by the name of the Duke of *Gandie*. 10 *Denia*, ſeated on the brink of the *Mediterranean*, over which it hath a goodly proſpect; the Marquiſate of the Duke of *Lerma*: firſt Founded by the *Maſſilians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*, the refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars againſt *Pompey*, and *Metellus*, both of great renown: the one aged and of much experience; the other young, and of high reſolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himſelf more troubled with the old mans gravity, than the young mans gallantry: inſomuch as he was uſed to ſay, That *had it not been for the old Woman* Metellus, *he would have whipped the Boy* Pompey *home with Rods*. For he had twice overcome this *Great Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joyned in the Action with him: the firſt time dangerouſly wounding, and the ſecond time driving him out of the Field. But fighting againſt both, he was over-matched; and yet ſeemed rather to retire than flie before them: the *Spaniards* behaving themſelves very valiantly in the time of theſe Wars under him: to which *Florus* alludeth, ſaying, *Nec unquam magis apparnit* Hiſpani *militis Vigor, quam* Romano *duce*. At the leaſt when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* faction, he was traiterouſly murdered by *Perpenna* one of his *Aſſociates*; for which *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a *Triumph* at *Rome*. So high an eſtimate did they ſet upon the caſual death of this poor *Proſcript*.

The Ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Baſtitani*, the *Edetani*, the *Conteſtani*, and ſome part of the *Celtiberi*; originally of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*, afterwards (in the ſub-dividing of that Province by *Conſtantine*) of *Carthaginenſis*. In the declining of the Empire firſt ſubdued by the *Alani*, who were ſcarce warm in their new dwellings, when diſſeized by the *Gothes*. From the *Gothes* taken by the *Moors*, of whoſe Kingdome reckoned as a Province; till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Enſir* at the battel of *Sierra Morena*, and the departure of the *Moors* of *Morocco* to their own Countrey, which followed preſently upon it. By *Zeit Aben-Zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a diſtinct Kingdome of it ſelf, *Anno* 1114. but taken from him by one *Zaen* a Prince of the *Moors* of *Spain*, under colour that he had a purpoſe of turning Chriſtian, and making his Kingdome ſubject to the Crown of *Aragon*, (as indeed he did) *Anno* 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the ſweets of a new raiſed Kingdome, by *James* King of *Aragon*, *Anno* 1228. Since reckoned a member of that Kingdome, never diſmembred from the body of it ſince the firſt uniting. But ſtill ſo overgrown with *Moors* (not to be blamed for loving ſuch an excellent ſeat) that at the final expulſion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer, than 22000 Families of them in this little Countrey.

The Armes hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embattelled *Argent*, purfled (or pennond) *Sable*.

12 CATALONIA.

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-eaſt, with the Land of *Rouſillon* and the *Pyrenees*. On the Eaſt, with the *Mediterranean*; on the South, with *Valentia*; and on the North and the North-weſt, with *Aragon*. The Countrey ſomewhat mountainous and full of Wood, and not very well cultivated: beholding more in that reſpect, for Corn, Fruits, and other neceſſary proviſions unto the Curteſie of the Sea, which ſerves them out of other Countreys, than to the Goodneſs of the Land; And yet it is as well watered as moſt parts of *Spain*, having in it beſides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Cinia*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valentia*; the Rivers of, 1 *Tardera*, 1 *Lobregat*, 3 *Segre*, 4 *Francolino*, 5 *Beſons*, and 6 *Onhar*.

Catalonia. The name of *Catalonia* ſome derive from the *Caſtellani*, who formerly inhabited ſome part hereof; others will have it called *Catalonia*, corruptly for *Gothalania*, from the mixture of the *Gothes* and *Alani*, ſucceſſively the Maſters of it: and ſome more improblably from one *Carthalot*, a noble man of this Countrey, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalauni*, an old *French* people of *Languedoc*, the adjoining Province; from whom the fields called *Campi Catalaunici* near unto *Tholouſe*, took denomination. But from what root ſoever they came, certain it is that they are generally a ſtout and couragious People, as may be ſeen by their exploits in moſt parts of *Greece*, which they miſerably ſpoiled and pillaged many years together, in the time of *Andronicus* the ſecond, to whoſe aid called in. But then withall they are a very perverſe and obſtinate people, little obſervant of the pleaſure or profit of their *natural Princes*; but on the other ſide, ſo zealous in defence of their own *Priviledges*, that they have created more trouble to their Kings under that pretence, than all the reſt of the ſubjects of *Spain*. Of which we need no other inſtance than their late revolt unto the *French*, *Anno* 1638. which drew after it the loſs of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the reſt of the *Netherlands*.

Principal places in it are, 1 *Barcelone*, ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, near the River *Lobregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious port, where commonly the *Spaniſh* Souldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italy*. The Town adorned with large ſtreets, handſome buildings, ſtrong walls, and a very pleaſant ſituation: called *Barcino* by the ancient writers, in whoſe time it was a *Roman* Colony; now honoured with a Biſhops See, and the Seat of the *Vice-roy*. 2 *Tarragone*, ſeated on the *Mediterranean*, Eaſt of the River *Francolino*: built, fortified and peopled by the two *Scipio's* the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthagena* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the *Metropolis* of *Tarraconenſis*, hence denominated; but ſtript of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two miles in compaſs, and containing not above 700 Families. Yet ſtill it holdeth the reputation of an Arch-Biſhops See, contending with *Toledo* for the Primacy of all *Spain* (as *Braga* alſo doth in the Kingdome of *Portugal*:) the controverſie being undecided to this very day. 3 *Ampurias*, on the ſame ſea alſo, once of great eſteem, founded by the *Maſſilians*; a *Roman* Colony, and a well Traded Town, as the name doth ſignifie; this being the *Emporia* ſpoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*; now not obſervable for any thing but a ſafe Road for ſhips. 4 *Blanos*, 5 *Palamos*, and 6 *Roſas*, all Ports on the ſame Sea, but ſubject unto divers winds, and not very ſpacious. More in the Land are 7 *Girone*, a ſmall but handſomely built, and a well Traded Town; a Biſhops See, and title of the eldeſt Son of *Aragon*, called Prince of *Girone*. Which title was firſt given to *John*, the eldeſt Son to King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his birth, *Anno* 1351. and hath ſince continued. 8 *Tortoſa*, on the River *Ebro*, in the moſt rich and pleaſant part of all the Countrey; recovered from the *Moors* by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Barcelone* and Prince of *Aragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Monenda*, Seneſchal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good ſervice in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garriſoned by the *French*, ſince the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of *Spain*; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whileſt it continueth in their power, or the poſſeſſion of their party. 9 *Urgel*, an Earls honour, and a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10 *Momblane*, which heretofore gave the title of Duke, to the ſecond Sons of the Kings of *Aragon*. 11 *Moncada*, once a Town of great ſtrength, but of more note for giving denomination to the noble Family *de Moncada*, Hereditary Seneſchals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is alſo on the Eaſt part where it joyneth with the Land of *Rouſillon*, the Promontory called of old *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Ceux*. And not far from *Barcelone* the Mountain called *Montferrato*, on the ſides full of *Hermitages* and *Anchorets* cells; and having towards the ſummit of it, a Chappel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*: much famed and reſorted to by *Pilgrims* from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enſhrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province were the *Caſtellani*, *Auxitani*, *Indigites*, *Coſetani*, with part of the *Ilercones* and *Iaccetani*; all of them part of *Tarraconenſis*. In the declining of the *Empire*, ſeized on by the *Alani*; and they ſoon after vanquiſhed, if not diſpoſſed, by the power of the *Gothes*. Loſt to the *Moors* in the general ruine of the whole; from them recovered by the puiſſance of *Charles* the Great: who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, *Anno* 801. gave it to one *Bernard* a *French-man*, with the title of Earl, who governed the Countrey for that Emperour; as *Wifredus*, or *Godfredus* his ſucceſſor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus* Son to this *Godfrede*, by the gift of *Charles* the *Groſs*, was the firſt Proprietary; united unto *Aragon*, by the marriage of Earl *Raymond*, with the Heir of that Kingdome. Firſt held in Vaſſalage of the *French*, but that acknowledgement releaſed to King *James* the firſt, *Anno* 1260. by the King St. *Lewis*, the King of *Aragon* releaſing at the ſame time his pretenſions and rights of Soveraignty to *Carcaſſon*, *Beziers*, *Albi*, *Niſmes*, and ſome other pieces in *France*, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that the *Catellans* had neglected the acknowledgment of their ſubjection to that Crown, it being ordered by *Alfonſo* the ſecond King of *Aragon*, about the year 1180. that the year of the reigns of the Kings of *France* ſhould no more be uſed in any inſtruments or writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which in effect was to diſclaim the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*.

The Earls of *Barcelone.*

A. Ch.
884 1 *Godfredus*, ſurnamed the *Hairie*, Son of *Wifrede*, the Provincial Governour for the Emperour *Ludovicus Pius.*
2 *Miron* Son of *Godfredus.*
914 3 *Godfredus* II. Son of *Miron*, by ſome called *Seviofrid.*
933 4 *Borellus*, Brother of *Miron*, and Uncle to *Godfred* the ſecond.
971 5 *Raymond*, Son of *Borellus.*
993 6 *Berengarius*, ſurnamed *Borellus.* Son of *Raymond.*
1017 7 *Raymond* II. Son of *Berengarius Borellus.*
1035 8 *Raymond* III. Son of *Raymond* the ſecond.
1076 9 *Raymond* IV. Son of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence* alſo, in right of *Doulce* his Wiſe.
1082 10 *Raymond* V. Son of *Raymond* the fourth, and *Doulce* Counteſſe of *Provence*, married *Petronilla* Daughter of *Raymir*, or *Raymond* the ſecond, King of *Aragon* ; whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdome, *Anno* 1134. Uniting theſe Eſtates together, never ſince diſ-joined: the chief Procurer of this match being *William Raymond* of *Moncada* ſpoken of before.
1131

The Arms hereof were four Pallets *Gules*, in a Field *Or* ; now the Arms of *Aragon.* Which Arms were given to *Geofrey*, ſurnamed the *Hairie*, the firſt Earl hereof, by *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Emperour and King of *France*, to whoſe aid he came againſt the *Normans* with a *Troop* of Horſe ; and being bloudy in the fight, deſired of the Emperour to give him ſome Coat of Arms, which he and his poſterity might from thenceforth uſe. Who dipping his four fingers in the bloud of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield (which was only of plain *Gold*, without any deviſe) ſaying, *This ſhall be your Arms hereafter.*

II. The Kingdome of *MAJORCA.*

THe Kingdome of *MAJORCA* contained the Iſlands of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuiſa*, and *Frumentaria*, in the *Mediterranean* ; the Land of *Rouſillon*, *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*, in the Continent of *Spain*, and the Earldome of *Montpelier*, in *France.*

The Land of *ROUSILLON*, which is the firſt Member of this Kingdome, is ſituate betwixt two Branches of the *Pyrenees*, bounded on the South with the *Mediterranean* ; on the Weſt, with *Catalogne*; on the North with the ſaid *Pyrenees* ; on the Eaſt, with *Languedoc* in *France.* Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Helna*, a Biſhops See on the River *Techo.* 2 *Collibre*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a ſafe and commodious Harbour ; but formerly the great and famous City of *Illiberis*, ſo often mentioned in the wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage.* 3 *Perpignan* (in *Latine*, *Perpinianum*) built in the year 1068. by *Guinard* Earl of *Rouſillon*, in a pleaſant Plain on the River *Thelis* : now a rich Town, well traded, and as ſtrongly fortified againſt the *French* ; to whoſe fury in the time of war it is ſtill expoſed. Beſieged by *Henry*, Son to King *Francis* the firſt, with a puiſſant Army, *Anno* 1542. Partly to be revenged upon *Charles* the fifth, who had before attempted *Marſeilles* in *Provence* ; and partly to get into his hands a chief door of *Spain*, by which he might at all times enter into that Kingdome. But he found here ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, that he was fain to raiſe his ſiege, with as little honour, as *Charles* had gotten by the Expedition which he made into *Provence.* 4 *Salſas* (the *Salſulæ* of *Strabo*) a ſtrong place on the Frontier of *Languedoc* ; fortified according to the Rules of modern fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks, againſt the *French.* 5 *Rouſillon*, a Caſtle of more honour and antiquity, then ſtrength or beauty, by *Pliny*, and other Ancients, called *Ruſeino*, the Countrey *Comitatus Ruſeinonenſis*, now *Rouſillon*, and the Land of *Rouſillon* ; accounted heretofore a part of *Gaule Narbonenſis*, and added unto *Spain* in the time of the *Gothes.* On the death of *Gerrard*, the laſt *Proprietary* Earl, it was added to the Crown of *Aragon* by *Alfonſo* the ſecond ; by *James* the firſt, laid to the Kingdome of *Majorca* ; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the fourth. After that ſold (or rather pawned) by King *John* the ſecond, to *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* for the ſum of 300000 Crowns, *Anno* 1462. and freely returned back again to *Ferdinand* the ſecond, (after called the *Catholick*) by King *Charles* the eight, *An.* 1493, conditioned that he ſhould not hinder him in the Conqueſt of *Naples.* Joyning hereto as part of the Kingdome of *Majorca*, was the Countrey of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne* ; the habitation of the *Cerretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of *Aragon.* The chief Town of thoſe *Cerretani*, called *Julia Libica* ; the principal now being hath the name of *Cardona* (or *Sardona* as the *Spaniards* commonly pronounce) retaining ſome reſemblance to the name of the Nation. The Countrey lying in the Valleys of the *Pyrenees*, and conſequently in a corner ſomewhat out of the way ; was thought fit to be added to the Land of *Rouſillon* (for the better endowment of this Kingdome:) the fortunes of which it hath ſince followed, as appendent on it ; pawned when that was unto the *French*, and with that reſtored.

2 The Earldome of *MONTPELIER* is ſituate in the Province of *Languedock*, adjoining to the Land of *Rouſillon* ; ſo called from *Montpelier*, the chief City : for the deſcription whereof, we muſt ſend the Reader back to *France*, having ſpoken of it there already. All I ſhall here repeat is this, that *Mary* the Daughter of *William* the laſt Earl thereof, brought it by marriage to her Husband *Peter* the ſecond, King of *Aragon* : and that it was ſold to *Philip de Valoys* the *French* King, by *James* King of *Majorca*, of that name the third. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory and affairs of this little Earldome, but

Majorca. the fortunes of the two laſt Counteſſes of it. Of which the firſt being Daughter of *Emanuel Comnenus* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, and affianced to *Alfonſo* the ſecond, King of *Aragon*, was brought as far as *Montpelier* in her way towards *Spain*, and there lodged with her whole retinue in the houſe of *William* then Earl thereof, *Anno* 1174. But hearing that *Alfonſo*, contrary to his word and promiſe, was in treaty of another marriage with the Princeſs *Sancha* of *Caſtile* (which he celebrated very ſhortly after) and aſhamed to return to the Court of her Father after ſuch an injury; ſhe hearkned to the counſel of her Lords and followers, who perſwaded her to marry with Earl *William*, then a luſty Batchelor; which was done accordingly. To him ſhe brought a Daughter named *Mary* (their only child) afterwards married to *Don Pedro* the ſecond, Son of *Alfonſo*, and ſucceſſor to him in that Kingdome: ſo that although the Mother could not have the happineſs to be Queen of *Aragon*; yet the Daughter had. But being of no very great beauty, the King her husband grew weary of her, and would have been divorced, had the Pope conſented: whoſe conſent not being to be had, he forſook her bed, and betook himſelf to other women. Which the Queen not being otherwiſe able to remedy, prevailed with one of the Grooms of her chamber called *Pedro Flavian*, to bring her one night unto his bed (when ſome other Miſtreſs was expected) and by him did conceive that night, as it was after proved: the King perceiving the deceit on the morrow morning, neither well pleaſed, nor much offended at the honeſt fraud they had put upon him. Of this conjunction was born a Son at *Montpelier*, whom they named *James*, ſucceſſor to his Father in the Kingdome of *Aragon*, and to his Mother (the laſt Counteſs of it) in the Earldome of *Montpelier*: united in his perſon into one Eſtate, and by him finally parted from it in the erection of the new Kingdome of *Majorca*, as before was ſaid.

3 The Iſland of *MAJORCA* is ſituate in the *Mediterranean*, juſt over againſt *Valentia*: from which diſtant about 60 miles: about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth ſomewhat under; the number of the Inhabitants are reckoned at 30000. The Land on all ſides, towards the Sea is ſomewhat mountainous, and barren withall: the In-lands more Champian and fruitfull; yielding ſufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the uſe of its people. The whole Iland is divided into 30 parts, (as ſo many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which are rekoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtfull creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and thoſe not hurtfull but by accident, of which more anon.

Places of chief note in the former times were 1 *Palma*, and 2 *Pallentia*, which had the rights of *Roman* Citizens. 3 *Cinium*, and 4 *Cunici*, which enjoyed the rights of the *Latines*, and 5 *Bochri*, (or *Bochorum*) which was in the condition of a Town *confederate*; beſides divers others not ſo priviledged. Of theſe none left at this day but *Palma* only, vulgarly called *Majorca*, by the name of the Iſland; a Biſhops See, the Seat of the *Vice-roy* for theſe Iſles, and an *Univerſity*: the birth-place of *Raimundus Lullius*, a man of great wit, and profound judgement, the Authour of ſome Books in the Art of *Chymiſtrie*; whoſe Works are read and ſtudied in that Univerſity, as *Ariſtotles* are in others. This is the greater of the two Iſlands called *Baleares*, whence it had the name. Adjoyning hereunto two others of inferiour note, called *Dragonera*, and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4 *MINORCA*, ſo called becauſe it is the *leſſer* of the *Baleares*, is ſituate Eaſtward of *Majorca*, from which diſtant near 100 miles; of about 60 miles in length, and 150 miles in circuit. More fruitfull than the other, though leſs in quantity; of a rich ſoyl, which breedeth them great heards of Cattel, and Mules, of the largeſt ſize of any in *Spain*: accommodated alſo with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Farneſſus*. Other conſiderable places are 1 *Minorca*, now ſo called by the name of the Iſland, but anciently known by the name of *Mago*: ſituate in the Eaſt part thereof, firſt founded by the *Carthaginians*, as the name imports. And ſo was alſo 2 *Jamno*, ſeated in the Weſt (*Duo parva Oppida, quibus à* Pœnis *indita nomina*, ſaith *Severus*, Biſhop of theſe Iſles, *Anno* 420, or thereabouts.) It is now called *Citadella* or the little City. Here was alſo in the mid-land a third Town called *Saniſera* by *Pliny*, of which I find no track remaining.

5 *EBUSA*, now called *YVICA*, lyeth between the main Land and the *Baleares*, oppoſite to the Promontorie of *Ferraria*; in the Realm of *Valentia*; from which diſtant about 50 miles, and near an hundred miles in compaſs. The Countrey plentifull of Corn, and all manner of Fruits; breeding no hurtfull Creature, except Conies only; which many times deſtroy their Harveſt. The chief Town here, is *Yvica*, (of old called *Ebuſus*) the Inhabitants of which make yearly great ſtore of Salt; wherewith they do not only furniſh *Spain*, but ſome parts of *Italy*.

6 *FRUMENTERA*, ſo called from the plenty of Corn, is diſtant ten miles from *Yvica*, and about 60 miles from the main Land of *Spain*; in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited by reaſon of the multitude of Serpents; for which called by the *Grecians Ophiuſa* and *Colubraria* by the *Latines*. Both Iſlands anciently known by the name of *Pityuſæ*, and *Pityodes*, from the abundance of *Pines* there growing.

About theſe Iſlands are ſix others of little worth, called 1 *Vedra*, 2 *Conirello*, and 3 *Dragonago*; 4 Another called *Moncolibre*, betwixt *Majorca*, and the flux of the River *Iberus*. 5 *Alfaques*, lying on the very mouth of that River: 6 *Scombraria*, (anciently called the Iſland of *Hercules*) over againſt *Carthagena*; ſo named from a kind of *Tunny* in *Latine* named *Scombri*, of which great ſhoales uſe to lie about it. All theſe, together with the *Baleares*, make up the Province of the Iſlands, the ſeventh Province of *Spain*.

But the chief glory of theſe Iſlands were the *BALEARES*, ſo called (as the general conceit is) from the *Greek* word βάλλειν which ſignifieth to throw, becauſe the people were ſo expert in *throwing* their Slings or Darts, but as *Bochartus* will needs have it (to the ſame effect) from *Baal-iare*, a *Punick* or *Phœnician* word, ſignifying a *maſter in the Art of ſlinging*. An Art ſo natural and inative to them, that parents uſed to give no meat unto their Children, after ſome fit age, but what they could hit down with their *Slings*, from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity at this weapon, there is much mention made in the Ancient Writers, as well Hiſtorians as Poets. And from this exerciſe they had the name alſo of *Inſulæ Gymnaſiæ*, or elſe becauſe the people of it uſed to go naked to the wars, (and poſſibly enough in thoſe firſt ages of the world, at other times alſo) from the *Greek* word Γυμνὸς, the ſame with *Nudus* in the *Latine*. Nor were they good at *ſlinging* only, but at *ſwimming* too, an exerciſe not ordinarily performed but by *naked* people; at which the very women are at this day expert: *Biddulph* reporting in the relation of his travels, that being becalmed about theſe Iſlands, there came a Woman ſwimming from one of them with a Basket of Fruit to ſell. But that which made them moſt talked of in former times, was their harm done them by their Conies, which here, and in the neighbouring Continent increaſed ſo wonderfully: that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in *Spain* undermined by them; and *Strabo*, that they did not only deſtroy their plants, but rooted up many of their trees. Inſomuch that the inhabitants did requeſt the *Romans* to give them ſome new ſeats to inhabit in; ἐκβάλλεσθαι γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν ζώων τούτων, being ejected by thoſe creatures out of of their poſſeſſions, whoſe multitudes they were not able to reſiſt. And when that could not be obtained, they moved *Auguſtus Cæſar*, (as *Pliny* telleth us) for ſome aid againſt them; who inſtead of *Souldiers*, ſent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers were diminiſhed in a little time.

Theſe Iſlands were firſt planted by the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities; one of which in the Iſle of *Ebuſus* had the name of *Phœniſſa*: from them alſo they derived the Art of Slinging. Made ſubject to the *Carthaginians*, under the conduct of *Hanno* and *Himilco*, *An. M.* 5500 or thereabouts; at what time the *Decemviri* governed *Rome*. Under that State they remained ſubject till the end of the ſecond *Punick* war; when *Carthage* was no longer able to protect them, made a State of themſelves; till conquered by *Metellus*, the brother of him who ſubdued *Creet*. The people were much given to Piracy, and ſeeing the *Roman* Navy ſayling by their Coaſts ſuppoſed them to be Merchant men; aſſaulted them, and at firſt prevailed. But the *Romans* getting betwixt them and the ſhore, diſcovered from whence they came, and forced them to an unwilling ſubmiſſion; for which *Metellus* was rewarded with the honour of a *Triumph*. Being once made a Province of *Spain*, they alwayes after that followed the fortunes thereof. In the diſtraction of the Empire of the *Moors* in *Spain*, they were unitd into one Kingdome by the name of the Kingdome of *Majorca*; won from the *Moors* by *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, with the help of the *Genoeſe*, 1102. By the *Genoeſe* delivered to the *Moors* again; and from them reconquered by *James* King of *Aragon*, deſcended from that *Raymond*, *Anno* 1228.

Of theſe Eſtates conſiſted the Kingdome of *Majorca*; erected by King *James* the firſt, immediately almoſt on his recovery of theſe Iſlands from the hands of the *Moors*; and by him given unto *James* his ſecond Son, who fearing the diſpleaſure of his Brother King *Peter* the third, ſubmitted his new Kingdome to the *Vaſſalage* of the Crown of *Aragon*. Yet could not this ſo ſatisfie the ambition, or jealouſies of thoſe mightier Kings, as to preſerve his Succeſſors in poſſeſſion of it; By *Pedro* the fourth extorted from King *James*, the fourth and laſt King thereof, under colour of denying his accuſtomed *Homage*. So ended

The Kings of *Majorca*, of the Houſe of *Aragon*.

A. Ch.		
1276	1	*James* the firſt Son to *James* the firſt, King of *Aragon*.
1312	2	*Sancho*, Son of *James* the firſt.
	3	*James* II. Son of *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *James* the ſecond.
	4	*James* III. Son of *Ferdinand*, overcome and ſlain in battel by *Pedro* the fourth, King of *Aragon*, *Majorca*, and other members of this little Kingdome, remaining ever ſince united unto that Crown; except *Montpelier*, ſold by this *James* unto the *French*, in hope that by their aid, he might be enabled to recover his Kingdome. But being aided by them, and attempting the recovery of it, he was diſcomfited and ſlain in the Iſle of *Majorca*, *Anno* 1348. as before is ſaid.

The Forces of this little Kingdome may be beſt eſtimated by the Army which the *Moors* brought into the field againſt *James* the firſt, for defence of the Iſlands of *Majorca*, conſiſting of 50000 Horſe: but better by the Army of *James* the laſt King hereof, in defence of his Eſtates againſt *Pedro* the fourth, (for the *Moors* might poſſibly be aided by the reſt of their Nation) conſiſting of 3000 Horſe, and 15000 Foot, of his natural Subjects.

13 ARAGON.

ARAGON hath on the Eaſt, the Land of *Rouſillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the Weſt, the two *Caſtiles*; on the North, *Navarre*; on the South, and South-Eaſt, *Catalonia*, and ſome part of *Valentia*. So called from the River *Aragon*, by which it is divided from the Realm of *Navarre*; where the firſt Princes of this houſe, having won certain Towns from the hands of the Infidels, commanded as *Lords Marchers*, under the Kings of that Realm: and called themſelves for that reaſon, the Earls of

Aragon. of *Aragon*: ſpreading the name as they enlarged their bounds, by enſuing conqueſts: as in like manner the great Earldome of *Moſellets*, founded by the diſherited Sons of *Clodion* ſecond King of the *French*, was named from that River, upon the courſe whereof, and the parts adjoining, it was firſt erected.

The Countrey lyeth on both ſides of the River *Iberus*, and hath alſo ſeveral Riverets, as *Gallego*, *Senga*, *Xalon*, and *Cagedo*, running like ſo many veins through the body of it, yet is generally ſo deſtitute of waters, and ſo ill-inhabited, eſpecially towards the Mountains of the *Pyrenees*; that one may travel many dayes, and find neither Town, nor houſe, nor people. But where the Rivers have their courſe, the caſe is different; the Valleys yielding plenty both of Corn and Fruits, eſpecially about *Calataiub*, where the air is good, and the ſoil fruitful.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Celtiberi*, who took up a great part of *Tarraconenſis*; divided into leſſer Tribes, not here conſiderable. Theſe ſprung originally from the *Celtæ*, (as before is ſaid) the greateſt and moſt potent Nation of all *Gallia*: who being too populous for their Countrey, or willing to employ themſelves upon new adventures, paſſed the *Pyrenees*, and mingled themſelves with the *Iberi*. From thence the name of *Celtiberi*, and *Celtiberia*, according unto this of *Lucan*.

---------------*profugique à gente vetuſta*
Gallorum, Celtæ *miſcentes nomen* Iberi.

Who being chas'd from *Gaul*, their home, did frame,
Of *Celtæ* and *Iberi* mixt, one name.

Others of leſſe conſideration were the *Jaccetani*, and *Lacetani*, with parts of the *Edetani*, and *Illergetes*.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1 *Jacca*, the chief City heretofore of the *Jaccetani*, ſeated amongſt the *Pyrenees*; and for that cauſe choſen for the chief ſeat and reſidence of the firſt Kings of *Aragon*: continued there till the taking of *Saragoſſa*, by *Alfonſo* the firſt. 2 *Calataiub*, ſeated on *Xalon* in the beſt Countrey of *Aragon*; ſo called from *Aiub* a *Mooriſh* Prince, the firſt Founder of it. Not far from which upon an hill, ſtood the old Town *Bilbilis*, a *Municipium* of the *Romans*, and the birth-place of *Martial*. 3 *Venaſque*, amongſt the *Pyrenees*. 4 *Balbaſtro*, on the *Senga*, formerly called *Burtina*, now a Biſhops See. 5 *Lerida*, on the River *Segree*, as ſome ſay, but others place it on the *Senga*: which riſing in the *Pyrenees*, divideth *Catalonia* from *Aragon*, and ſo paſſeth into *Iberus*. Now an Univerſity, called formerly *Ilerda*, and famous for the incounter hapning nigh unto it betwixt *Herculeius* Treaſurer or *Queſtor* to *Sertorius*, and *Manilius* Proconſul of *Gallia*: wherein *Manilius* was ſo diſcomfited, and his Army conſiſting of 3 Legions of Foot, and 1500 Horſe ſo routed; that he almoſt alone was ſcarce able to recover this City, few of his Souldiers ſurviving the overthrow. 6 *Moſon*, famous for entertaining the King of *Spain* every third year: At which time the people of *Aragon*, *Valence*, and *Catalogne*, preſent the King with 600000 Crowns, *viz.* 300000 for *Catalogne*, 200000 for *Aragon*, and 100000 for *Valentia*. And well may they thus do, for at other times they ſit *Rent-free* as it were: only they acknowledge the King of *Spain* to be the Head of their Common-wealth. This Revenue is proportionably 200000 Crowns a year, all which, if not more, the King again expends, in maintaining his *Vice-Roys* in their ſeveral Provinces. 7 *Hueſca*, called of old *Oſca*) ſomewhat South of *Jaca*, an Univerſity, a place long ſince dedicated to learning. For hither *Sertorius* cauſed all the Noblemens Sons of *Spain* to be brought, and provided them of School-maſters for the *Greek* and *Latine* tongues, bearing their Parents in hand, that he did it only to make them fit to undergoe charge in the Common wealth; but indeed to have them as hoſtages, for their fathers faith and Loyalty towards him. 8 *Saragoſſa*, on the River *Iberus*, called at firſt *Salduba*, by reaſon of the Salt-pits there: but being afterwards re-edified by *Cæſar Auguſtus*, it had the name of *Cæſarea Auguſta* (whence that of *Saragoſſa* had its origination) by whom firſt made a Colony of the *Romans*, and afterwards a *Municipium* or *Free-Burrough*, ſuffered to live according to the Laws of the Country. Under the *Romans*, it was one of the ſeven *Juridical Reſorts* of *Tarraconenſis*; under the *Moors* a peculiar Kingdome of it ſelf; and now a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity. Amongſt the Kings of it, when it was a Kingdome, two are chiefly famous, *viz.* 1 *Marſilius*, who joined with the confederate *Moors* and *Chriſtians*, againſt *Charles* the *Great*, in the battel of *Roncevaux*. 2 *Aigoland*, of whom there goeth a tale in Arch-biſhop *Turpine*, that being by the ſaid *Charles* perſwaded to become a *Chriſtian*; he came unto the Emperours Court very well accompanied, according to the time appointed. Where finding many *Lazars* and poor people before the Gates, attending for their uſual Alms from the Emperours Table; he asked what and who they were? and was anſwered, that they were the poor ſervants of God, upon which words he ſpeedily returned again, proteſting that *he would never ſerve that God, who could keep his* Servants *no better*. Took from the *Moors* by *Alfonſo* King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, *Anno* 1118. it was made the ſeat Royal of the Kings of *Aragon*, removed hither from *Jacca*: and of late time hath been the ſeat of the *Vice-Roy* for the Kings of *Spain*. Which together with the being an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity, hath ſo enriched it, that it is one of the faireſt Cities in all *Spain*, for handſomneſſe of ſtreets, and ſumptuoſneſſe of Palaces, and publick buildings; containing 17 Pariſh Churches, and fourteen Monaſteries, beſides divers Chappells, erected in moſt parts of it to the Virgin *Mary*.

Aragon.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Tract, hath been ſhewn before; toſſed from the *Carthaginians* unto the *Romans*, from them to the *Gothes*, and finally unto the *Moors*. Recovered from the *Moors* about the firſt beginning of the Kingdomes of *Leon*, and *Sobrarbre*. At which time one *Aznar*, a man of great puiſſance and action, poſſeſſed himſelf of ſome Lands on the banks of the River *Aragon*, to be holden by him and his Succeſſours of the Kings of *Sobrarbre*, or *Navarre*, *Anno* 775; the Title of Earl being given unto him, and them, for their greater honour. The ſixth of which from *Aznar* was *Fortunio Ximines*, whoſe Daughter *Urraca* being married to *Don Garcia Inigo* King of *Navarre*, *Anno* 867, conveyed this Earldome to that Crown: of which it continued a Member till *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, erected it into a Kingdome, and gave it unto *Raymir* his natural Son, *An.* 1034. The whole ſucceſſion I ſhall borrow from the *Spaniſh* Hiſtories; firſt taking (as in other places) ſome ſhort notes of the Princes which have been moſt obſervable in the courſe of the Stories. Of which the principal were, 1 *Aznarius* the firſt Earl, his Eſtate then containing ſome few Towns on the River of *Aragon*: not much enlarged when made a Kingdome by *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, ſurnamed the *Great*, deſcended from *Fortunio* the ſecond of *Navarre*, and *Uraca* the Siſter and Heir of *Fortunius Ximines*, the laſt Earl of *Aragon*. 2 *Raymir* the firſt King, baſe Son to *Sancho* the *Great*, advanced to this honour to the prejudice of *Garcia*, eldeſt Son of *Sancho*; for ſtanding ſo generouſly in defence of *Donna Elvira*, the Wife of his Father, wrongfully and unnaturally accuſed of Adultery, by the ſaid *Garcia* her own Son: againſt whom he undertook to maintain her honour in a ſingle Combat. 3 *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelona*, who by marriage with *Petronilla* the Heir of *Aragon*, united *Catalonia* unto that Kingdome. 4 *Peter* the ſecond, who on a ſuperſtitious zeal, firſt made his Kingdome tributary to the See of *Rome*, *Anno* 1214. But preſently repenting of it, he ſided againſt the Pope with the *Albigenſes*; ſlain in their cauſe by *Simon de Montfort*, and the reſt of his Aſſociates in that war. 5 *James* the firſt, who conquered the Kingdomes of *Valentia*, and *Majorca*; and was the firſt that enlarged his Dominions upon the Seas: being ſhut up from making any further impreſſions on the *Moors*, by the interjection of *Caſtile* betwixt him and them. 6 *Peter* the third, pretending a title unto *Sicil*, in right of *Conſtantia* his Wife, the Daughter of *Manfred* King thereof, and by the laſt Will of *Corradine*, rightful King both of that and *Naples*, extorted that Iſland from the *French*, maſſacred by him at the fatal *Sicilian Veſpers*. 7 *James* the ſecond, by whom the Iſle of *Sardinia* was added to the Crown of *Aragon*. 8 *Martin* the laſt of the *Maſculine* race of the houſe of *Barcelone*; to whom ſucceeded, 9 *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, Son of *John* King of *Caſtile*, and *Leonora* the Daughter of *Peter* the fourth of *Aragon*, 10 *Alfonſo* Son of *Ferdinand*, adopted by Queen *Joan* the ſecond, got the Kingdome of *Naples*. Of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, ſurnamed the *Catholick*, we ſhall ſpeak more anon in the cloſe of all.

The Earls of *Aragon*

	1	*Aznarius*, the firſt Earl, contemporary with *Garcia* the ſecond King of *Navarre*, under whom he held.
775	2	*Aznarius* II. Son of *Aznario* the firſt.
	3	*Galindo*, Son of *Aznario* the ſecond.
	4	*Ximines Aznario*, Son of *Galindo*, ſlain in the battel of *Ronceval* againſt *Charles* the Great.
803	5	*Ximines Garcia*, brother to *Galindo*.
	6	*Fortunio Ximines*, Son of *Ximines Garcia*, the laſt of the male iſſue of *Aznarius*.
	7	*Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon* in right from his Mother, *Urraca*, the Siſter and Heir of *Fortunio Ximines*, the laſt Earl of the houſe of *Aznarius*.
901	8	*Sancho*, ſurnamed *Abarca*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*.
920	9	*Garcia*, Son of *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, &c.
969	10	*Sancho* II. of *Aragon*, and III. of *Navarre*.
993	11	*Garcias*, ſurnamed the *Trembler*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, Son to *Sancho* the third.
1000	12	*Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon* in his own right, and of *Caſtile* in the right of *Elvira* his wife; Monarch of all *Spain*, then in the hands of the *Chriſtians*, except the Kingdome of *Leon* only: erected the Earldome of *Aragon* into a Kingdome; and gave it for the reaſon before ſpecified, to his Son *Raymir*.

The Kings of *Aragon*.

1034	1	*Raymir*. 42.
1076	2	*Sancho* Son of *Raymir*. 18.
1094	3	*Pedro*. 14.
1108	4	*Alfonſo*, Brother of *Pedro*. 26.
1134	5	*Raymir* II. the Brother of *Alfonſo*.
1137	6	*Petronilla*, Daughter of *Raymir* the ſecond. *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelone*.
1162	7	*Alfonſo* II. Son of *Raymond* and *Petronilla*. 34.
1196	8	*Pedro* II. Son of *Alfonſo*.
1213	9	*James*, Son of *Pedro* the ſecond. 43.
1276	10	*Pedro* III. Son of *James*. 9.
1285	11	*Alfonſo* III. Son of *Pedro* the third. 6.
1291	12	*James* II. Brother of *Alfonſo* the third. 36.
1328	13	*Alfonſo* IV. Son of *James* the 2d. 8.
1336	14	*Pedro* IV. Sonne of *Alfonſo* the fourth. 51.
1387	15	*John*, Son of *Pedro* the fourth. 8.
1395	16	*Martin*, the Brother of *John*. 17.

1412

1412 17 *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, the Nephew of *Pedro* the 4th. 4.
1416 18 *Alfonſo* V. 42.
1458 19 *John* II. Son of *Ferdinand*, and Brother of *Alfonſo*, King of *Navarre* alſo in right of *Blanch* his Wife. 20.
1478 20 *Ferdinand* II. of that name of *Aragon*, Son of *John* the ſecond, King of *Aragon* and *Navarre* by a ſecond Wife: and the fifth of that name of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, which Kingdomes he obtained by the marriage of *Iſabel* or *Elizabeth*, Siſter and Heir of *Henry* the fourth; uniting thereby the great Eſtates of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, and all Appendixes of either. In which regard he may well challenge the firſt place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of *Spain*, to be preſented in due ſeaſon.

In the mean time to draw to a concluſion of the affairs and Eſtate of *Aragon*, we are to underſtand, that of all the Kingdomes which belong to the *Spaniard*, it is the moſt priviledged, and free from the abſolute command of the Kings of *Spain*: having in it ſuch a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereof to be well-nigh *titular*; of little more authority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the firſt erecting of this Eſtate, the better to encourage the people to defend themſelves againſt the *Moors*, they had many priviledges indulged them; and amongſt others the creating of a *Juſticiar* or *popular Magiſtrate*; which, like the *Ephori* of *Sparta*, had in ſome caſes, ſuperiority over their Kings, reverſing their judgments, cancelling their Grants, and ſometimes cenſuring their proceedings. And though King *Philip* the ſecond in the buſineſſe of *Antonio de Perez* had made a Conqueſt of that Kingdome, and annulled all their *Priviledges*; yet after of his own meer goodneſſe he reſtored them (in part) again, as they continue at this day.

Chief Orders of *Knighthood* in this Kingdome, are, 1 of S. *Saviour*, inſtituted by *Alfonſo* the firſt, *Ann.* 1118. to animate the Members of it againſt the *Moors*. Of the habit and cuſtoms of this Order I have met with nothing.

2 Of *Monteſa*, inſtituted by *James* the firſt, King of *Aragon*. *Ann.* 1270. or thereabouts. Endowed with all the Lands of the *Templars* (before diſſolved) lying in *Valentia*; together with the Town and Caſtle of *Monteſa*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the name. Subject at firſt, unto the Maſter of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. But after, by the leave of Pope *Benedict* the 13th, they quitted themſelves of that ſubjection; and in ſign thereof, changed the Habit of *Calatrava*, which before they uſed, to a *Red Croſſe* upon their Breaſts, now the badge of the order.

The Arms of *Aragon* ſince poſſeſſed by the Earls of *Barcelone*, are *Or*, four Pallets *Gules*: before which, they were *Azure*, a Croſſe *Argent*.

The Monarchy of SPAIN.

THus having ſpoke of *Spain*, and the Eſtate thereof, when broken and divided into many Kingdomes; let us next look upon it as united into one main body: effected for the moſt part by *Ferdinand* the laſt King of *Aragon*, beforementioned. Before which time *Spain* being parcelled into many Kingdomes, was little famous, and leſſe feared; the Kings thereof, as the Author of the *Politick Diſpute*, &c. hath well obſerved, being only *Kings of Figs and Oranges*. Their whole puiſſance was then turned againſt one another; and ſmall Atchievements had they out of that Continent, except thoſe of the houſe of *Aragon* upon *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*. *Thuanus*, a diligent Writer of the Hiſtory of his own times, (if in ſome things he ſavour not more of the *Partie* than the *Hiſtorian*) telleth us, that before this Kings Reign, the name and glory of the *Spaniards* was like their Countrey; hemmed in by the Seas on ſome ſides, and the Hills on the other: *Potiuſque patuiſſe exteris invadentibus, quam quicquam memorabile extra ſuos fines geſſiſſe.* 'Tis true, that *Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, aſſumed unto himſelf the Title of King of *Spain*; and that *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Caſtile*, and the ſixth of *Leon*, cauſed himſelf to be Crowned Emperour of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*: Titles ambitiouſly affected upon no good ground, and ſuch as ended with their Perſons. But this Prince worthily named the *Great*, ſeized on the Kingdome of *Navarre*, conquered *Granada* from the *Moors*, ſubdued the Kingdome of *Naples*, united *Aragon* to *Caſtile*, baniſhed 124000 Families of the *Jews*; began, by the conduct of *Columbus*, the diſcovery of the *Weſtern Indies*: and finally, by marrying his Daughter *Joan* to *Philip*, Son of the Emperour *Maximilian*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the greateſt part of the *Netherlands*; laid the Foundation of the preſent *Auſtrian* greatneſſe. Continued ſince by ſo many intermarriages, betwixt the *Spaniſh* and *Imperial* Branches of that potent Family; that *Philip* the ſecond might have called the Arch-duke *Albertus*, Brother, Couſin, Nephew, and Son. A ſtrange Medley of Relations. Thus by the puiſſance of this Prince, the *Spaniards* became firſt conſiderable in the eyes of the World, and grew to be a terrour to the Neighbouring Nations. *Nomen* Hiſpanicum *obſcurum antea & Vicinis pene incognitum* (ſaith the ſame *Thuanus*) *tum primum emerſit, tractuque temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formiduloſum ex eo, & terribile toti terrarum Orbi eſſe cœperit.* And he ſaith true, with reference to the *French*, and *Italian* Nations; to whom the *Spaniards* have adminiſtred no ſmall matter of fear and terrour: though unto others they appear no ſuch dreadful *Bugg-bears*. But ſure it is, and we may warrantably ſpeak it without any ſuch impreſſions of fear and terrour, that this Kingdome ſince that time is wonderfully both enlarged and ſtrengthned: ſtrongly compacted in it ſelf, with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over all parts of the World, his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the riſing and ſetting of the Sun; which before the *Spaniard* no Monarch could ever ſay. A greater change, than any man can poſſibly imagine to have been effected in ſo ſhort a time, as was between the firſt year of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, and the laſt year of *Charles* the fifth.

Concerning the title of the *moſt Catholick King*, re-attributed to this *Ferdinand*, I find that *Alfonſo* the firſt of *Oviedo*, was ſo named for his *ſanctity*: with whom it died, and was revived in *Alfonſo the Great* and twelfth King of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, by the grant of *Pope John* the 8th. After it lay dead till the dayes of this Prince, who re-obtained this title from Pope *Alexander* the ſixth: either becauſe he compelled the *Moors* to be baptized, baniſhed the *Jewes*, and in part converted the *Americans* unto *Chriſtianity*; or becauſe, having united *Caſtile* to his Dominions, ſurprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*, and ſubdued that of *Granada*, he was in a manner the *Catholique*, or general King of all *Spain*. The laſt reaſon ſeemeth to ſway moſt in the reſtauration of this attribute, in that when it was granted & confirmed on *Ferdinand*, by Pope *Alexander* the ſixth; the King of *Portugal* exceedingly ſtomached at it; *quando* Ferdinandus *imperio* univerſam Hiſpaniam (ſaith *Mariana*) *non obtineret, ejus tum non exigua parte penes* Reges *alios*: It ſeems *Emanuel* could not think himſelf a King of *Portugal*, if the title of the *Catholick* King did belong to *Ferdinand*. Wherein he was of the ſame mind, as was *Gregory* the *Great*, who when *John* of *Conſtantinople* had aſſumed to himſelf the title of the *Oecumenical* or *Catholique* Biſhop; adviſed all Biſhops of the World to oppoſe that *arrogancy*: and that upon the ſelf-ſame reaſon, *Nam ſi ille eſt* Catholicus, *vos non eſtis Epiſcopi*, for if *John* were the *Catholick* Biſhop, they were none at all. But upon what conſideration ſoever it was firſt re-granted, it hath been ever ſince aſſumed by his Poſterity; to whoſe Crown as *hereditary* and in common uſe, as the moſt *Chriſtian* King to *France*, the *Defender of the Faith* to *England*.

And yet there was ſome further reaſon, why the *Spaniard* might affect the title of *Catholique* King; his Empire being *Catholique* in regard of extent (though not of *Orthodoxie* of Doctrines) as reaching not over all *Spain* only, but over a very great part of the World beſides. For in right of the Crown of *Caſtile* he poſſeſſeth the Towns of *Mellila* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Maſalquivir*, the Rock of *Velez*, and the *Canary* Iſlands in *Africk*; the Continent and Iſlands of all *America* except *Braſil*, and ſome plantations in the North, and in the *Cannibal* Iſlands, of the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, aud a few poor *French*. In the right of the Kingdom of *Arragon*, he enjoyeth the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, with many Ilands interſperſed in the *Mediterranean*; and in the right of the houſe of *Burgundy*, the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolois*, the greateſt part of *Belgium*, with a title unto all the reſt: beſides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon* and *Plombino*, and many other pieces of importance in *Italy*, held by inveſtiture from the Empire. To which if thoſe Eſtates be added which accrewed to *Philip* the ſecond by the Crown of *Portugal*, we have the Towns of *Ceuta*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortreſſes of *Arguen* & S. *George* in *Guinea*, the Iſlands of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Cape Verd*, S. *Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this ſide of the *Cape*, and of *Meſambique* on the other: in *Aſia* all the Sea-coaſt almoſt from the Gulf of *Perſia* unto *China*, and many ſtrong holds in the *Moluccoes*, *Bantan*, *Zeilan*, and other Iſlands; and finally in *America* the large Countrey of *Braſil*, extending in length 1500 miles. An Empire of extent enough, to adpropriate to theſe Monarchs the ſtile of *Catholique*.

The Monarches of *Spain*.

A. Ch:

1478 1 *Ferdinand*, King of *Arragon*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, *Valentia*, Earl of *Catalogne*, ſurprized *Navarre*, and conquered the Realm of *Naples*.
Iſabel, Queen of *Caſtile*, *Leon*, *Gallicia*, *Toledo*, *Murcia*, Lady of *Biſcay*, conquered *Granada*, and diſcovered *America*.

1504 2 *Joan*, Princeſs of *Caſtile*, *Granada*, *Leon*, &c. and of *Arragon*, *Navarre*, *Sicily*, &c.
Philip, Archduke of *Auſtria*, Lord of *Belgium*.

1516 3 *Charles*, King of *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, *Naples*, &c. Archduke of *Auſtria*, Duke of *Millain*, *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, &c. Earl of *Catalogne*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, &c. Lord of *Biſcay*, *Friſeland*, *Utrecht*, &c. and Emperour of the *Germans*. He added the Realms of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Dukedoms of *Gelderland* and *Millain*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Signeuries of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſel*, and *Groyning*, unto his Eſtates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puiſſance, that had not *Francis* the firſt in time oppoſed him, he had even ſwallowed all *Europe*. He was alſo for a time of great ſtrength and reputation in *Tunis* and other pa[illegible] of *Africa*, diſpoſing Kingdoms at his pleaſure: but the *Turk* broke his power there, and being hunted alſo out of *Germany*, he reſigned all his Kingdoms, and died private. 42.

1558 4 *Philip* II. of more ambition, but leſs proſperity than his Father; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of *Portugal*, but that ſufficiently ballanced by his ill ſucceſſes in the *Netherlands*, & againſt the *Engliſh*. For the *Hollanders* and their Confederates drove him out of eight of his *Belgick* Provinces: the *Engliſh* overthrew his *Invincible Armada*, intercepted his *Plate-Fleets*, and by awing the Ocean had almoſt impoveriſhed him. And though he held for a time an hard hand upon *France*, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the *Leagures*: yet upon caſting his Accompts, he found that himſelf was the greater loſer by that undertaking. So zealous in the cauſe of the *Romiſh* Church, that it was thought that his eldeſt Son *Charles* was put to death with his conſent in the *Inquiſition* houſe, for ſeeming favourably inclined to the *Low-Countrey-*

Heretickſ, as the *Spaniards* call them. Theſe four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed.

1598 5 *Philip* III. finding his Eſtate almoſt deſtroyed by his Fathers long and chargeable Wars, firſt made peace with *England*, and then concluded a Truce for twelve years with the States of the *Netherlands*: which done, he totally baniſhed all the *Moors* out of *Spain*, and was a great ſtickler in the Wars of *Germany*.

1621 6 *Philip*. IV. Son of *Philip* the third, got into his power all the *Lower Palatinate*; but loſt the whole Realm of *Portugal*, and the Province of *Catalonia*, with many of his beſt Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Brabant*, and ſome Ports in *Italy*: not yet recovered to that Crown, from the power of the *French*.

This Empire conſiſting of ſo many ſeveral Kingdomes united into one body, may ſeem to be invincible. Yet had Q. *Elizabeth* followed the counſel of her men of War, ſhe might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 men, ſhe might have taken away his *Indies* from him: without whoſe Gold, the *Low-Country* Army (which is his very beſt) could not be paid, and by conſequence muſt needs have been diſſolved. Nay, Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in the Epilogue of his moſt excellent *Hiſtory of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the charge of 200000 *l.* continued but for two years, or three at the moſt, the *Spaniards* might not only have been perſwaded to live in peace; but that all their ſwelling and overflowing ſtreams, might be brought back to their natural channels and old banks. Their own proverb ſaith, the Lion is not ſo fierce as he is painted: yet the *Americans* tremble at his name: it's true, and it is well obſerved by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that *things which ſeem to be, and are not, are more feared afar off, than near at hand.* Nor is this judgment built upon weak conjectures, but ſuch as ſhew the power of *Spain* not to be ſo formidable, as it's commonly ſuppoſed: which I find marſhalled to my hand in this manner following. 1 The *diſ-joyntedneſs* of his Realms and other Eſtates, ſevered by infinite diſtances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2ly, The *ſlowneſſe of his Preparations* in *offenſive* and *defenſive* Wars, his Forces of neceſſitie being long a gathering in places ſo remote from the *Royal* Seat; and being gathered no leſs ſubject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for action. 3dly, The danger and uncertainty which the moſt part of his *Forinſique Revenues* are ſubject to, many times intercepted by *Pirates* and open Enemies; ſometimes ſo long delayed by croſs Winds and Seas, that they come too late to ſerve the turn. 4ly, The *different tempers* and affections of a great part of his ſubjects, not eaſily concurring in the ſame ends, or travelling the ſame way unto them. 5ly, The *diſcontentedneſs* of the *Arragonians*, *Portugueze*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular reaſons, unto the *Caſtilians*; apt to be wrought on by the *Miniſters* of neighbouring Princes, whom *jealouſies of State* keep watchfull upon all advantages, for the depreſſing of his power. 6ly, And laſt of all, the *want of people* of his own natural Subjects, whom he may beſt relie on for the increaſe and grandeur of his Eſtates; exhauſted and diminiſhed by thoſe wayes and means, which have been touched upon before; without any politique or provident courſe, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greateſt and moſt ſenſible Error in the *Spaniſh* Government therein directly contrary to the antient *Romans*. Who finding that nothing was more neceſſary for great and important enterprizes than multitudes of Men, employed all their ſtudies to increaſe their numbers by Marriages, Colonies, and ſuch helps; making their conquered Enemies free *Denizens* of their Common-wealth; by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became ſo great (all being equally intereſſed in the preſervation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibals* judgement) by any forces but her own. But on the other ſide the *Spaniards* employ none in their Plantations but their own *native Subjects*, and ſo many of them alſo in all their enterprizes both by Sea and Land, that ſo many thouſands going forth every year, in the flower of their age, not one of ten returning home, and thoſe few which return, either lame or old: the Countrey is not only deprived of the Men themſelves, but alſo of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be that *John* the firſt of *Portugal*, who reigned before the ſeveral Voyages and Plantations of that people, was able to raiſe 40000 Men, for the War of *Africk*: whereas *Emanuel* who lived after thoſe undertakings, had much ado to raiſe 20000 foot and 3000 horſe on the ſame occaſion; and *Sebaſtian* after that found as great a difficulty, to raiſe an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of *Spain* is able to make out of all his Eſtate, they may be beſt ſeen by his preparations for the conqueſt of *England*, *France*, and *Flanders*. In his deſign for *England*, An. 1588. he hath a Fleet conſiſting of 150 Sayl of Ships, whereof *66* were *Galleons*, 4 *Galeaſſes* of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the reſt ſmaller Veſſels: fraughted with [illegible]0000 Souldiers for land ſervice, 9000 Saylers, 800 Gunners, 400 Pioneis, 2650 peeces of Ordinance: not reckoning into his accompt the Commanders and Volunteiers, of which laſt there were very great numbers, who went upon that ſervice for, *Spoil*, *Merit*, or *Honour*. In the deſign of *Charles* the fifth for the Conqueſt of *Provence*, he had no leſs than 50000 in the field; and in that of *Philip* the ſecond for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his firſt ſetting forward out of *Italy*, conſiſting of 8800 *Spaniſh* foot, and 1200 horſe; all of them old experienced Souldiers, driven out of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and the Dutchie of *Millain*, 3600 *German* foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Harcubuſiers on horſeback of the County of *Burgundy*, all old Souldiers alſo; beſides many Voluntieres of great rank and quality, very well attended, and his old ſtanding Army in the *Belgick* Provinces; a ſtrength ſufficient to have conquered a far greater Countrey.

Of ſtanding forces in this Countrey, he maintaineth in theſe Realms of *Spain*, but three thouſand horſe, and in its Fort and Garriſons no more then 8000 Foot; his Garriſons being very few, and thoſe upon the Frontires only, and in Maritime Towns; his Gallies ſerved with ſlaves out of *Turkie*, and *Barbary*. And yet he is able on occaſion to raiſe very great forces, partly becauſe the ordinary ſubjects are ſo well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence: and partly in regard there is ſo great a number of *Feudataries* and Noblemen, who are by *Tenure* to ſerve perſonally at their own charges for defence of their Realm. And certainly it muſt be a conſiderable force which the Noblemen of *Spain* are able to raiſe, conſidering the greatneſs of their Revenue; and the number of Vaſſals which live under them: it being ſuppoſed that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my Authour lived) were able one with another to diſpend yearly from 50000 Ducats to a 100000, ſome going very much above that proportion; and that of 36 Marqueſſes and 50 Earls, the pooreſt had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent; and ſo aſcending unto 50 and 60000. The Archbiſhops, and others of the greater *Clergy*, being all endowed with fairer *Temporal* Eſtates, than in moſt places of *Europe*; are alſo bound to ſerve (though not perſonally) on the like occaſions. And to theſe ſervices the Noblemen are for two reaſons more forward than the other *Feudataries*. 1. Becauſe their Honours deſcend not *de jure* from the Father to the Son, unleſs confirmed to the Son by the Kings acknowledgement and compellation: which makes them more obſervant of him, than in *France* or *England*, where it is challenged as a Birth-right. 2. Becauſe out of the groſs body of theſe Noblemen, the King doth uſe to honour ſome with the title of *Grandees*; priviledged to ſtand covered before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the higheſt honour which that State can yield, keeps thoſe great perſons in a readineſs to obey his pleaſure, in hope to come to an honour of ſo high eſteem.

For the *Revenues* of this King, which ordinarily ariſe out of his Eſtates (taking *Portugal* into the accompt) they are computed at 11 Millions of Crowns yearly, that is to ſay, four from his *Dominions* in *Italy*, two from *Portugal* and the *Appertinents* thereof, three from the *Weſt Indies*, and the other two remaining from his Kingdoms in *Spain*. Beſides this he receiveth yearly the revenues of the Maſterſhips of all the great Orders in this Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, not without good Policy and reaſon of State: the Maſters (or *Commendadors*, as they call them) of thoſe ſeveral Orders drawing after them ſuch troops of the Nobility, Gentry and other dependants; that their power began to be ſuſpected by the Kings themſelves. By which addition there accreweth to the Crown (beſides the opportunity of preferring ſervants of the greateſt merit) above 150000 *l.* of yearly Rents. As for his Caſualties and extraordinary wayes of raiſing money, they are very great: reckoned by the Authour of the *General Hiſtory of Spain* to amount (according to divers opinions) to 14. 18. and 22. Millions of Crowns. For making up which ſum, he puts in the *Firſt Fruits*, and ſome part of the *Tenths* of Rectories; and other Church preferments, amounting to three Millions yearly. And the Authour of the *Politique Diſpute*, &c. affirmeth the pardons ſent to the *Indies*, given him by the Pope, to be worth half a Million of pounds yearly. Adde hereunto the fall and diſpoſal of all *Offices*, which make up a good round ſum; and the free Gifts and Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good *Revenue*. For the Kingdom of *Naples* preſents him every third year with a Million and 20000 Crowns; and *Caſtile* only at one time granted a Contribution of four Millions, to be paid in four years: his ſubjects generally being ſo well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reaſon of them which they are not ready to grant, the King of *Spain* being called in that regard by the Emperour *Maximilian* the *King of Men*. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in treaſure, his expences being very great. Firſt, in keeping Forts and Garriſons in many parts of his Eſtates againſt the revolt of the Natives; Secondly, maintaining ſo many Frontier places, againſt forein invaſions; Thirdly, in the continual pay of an *Armada* for Conducting his *Plate-Fleets* from *America*; and laſt of all the many and unprofitable Wars of King *Philip* the ſecond, ſo plunged the Crown in the Gulfs of Bankers and Money-changers, that much of the *Revenues* of it ſtand ingaged for payment to this very day.

There are in *Spain*
Archbiſhops 11. Biſhops 52.
Univerſities 18.
i. e.

1 *Sevill*,
2 *Granada*,
3 *S. Jago*,
4 *Toledo*,
5 *Valladolit*,
6 *Majorca*,
7 *Salamanca*,
8 *Alcala de Henares*,
9 *Signenca*,
10 *Ebora*,
11 *Lisbon*,
12 *Conimbre*,
13 *Valentia*,
14 *Lerida*,
15 *Hueſca*,
16 *Saragoſſa*,
17 *Tudela*,
18 *Oſſuna*.

And ſo much for *Spain*.

Of the OCEAN and ISLES

OF

BRITAIN.

BEfore we can arrive in ***Britain***, the laſt Weſtern ***Dioceſe***, we muſt croſs the OCEAN, that ***ingens*** and ***infinitum pelagus***, as ***Mela*** calleth it; in compariſon of which, the Seas before-mentioned are but as *Ponds* or ***Gallets***: a Sea in former times known more by fame than tryal, and rather wondered at on the ſhore ſide, than any more remote place of it. The ***Romans*** ventured not on it with their Veſſels unleſs in the paſſage from ***France*** to ***Britain***: and much famed is ***Alexander*** for his hazourdous voyage on this unruly Sea, he having ſayled in all but 400 Furlongs from the ſhore. The name and pedegree take here both from the ***Poets*** and ***Etymologiſts***. The ***Poets*** make ***Oceanus*** to be the Son of ***Cœlum*** and ***Veſta***, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the father of all things, as, *Oceanumque patrem rerum*, in ***Virgil***, becauſe moiſture was neceſſarily required to the conſtitution of all bodies: and uſually painted him with a Bulls head on his ſhoulders, (whence ***Euripides*** called him Ὠκεανὸς Ταυρόκρανος, *Oceanus Tauriceps*) from the ***Bellowing*** and fury of the Winds, which from it come to the ſhore, and to which it is ſubject. As for the ***Children*** attributed unto him, they are doubtleſs nothing but the ***clouds*** and ***vapours*** hence ariſing. The name ὠκεανὸς ***Oceanus***, ſome derive from ὠκὺς, *celer*, becauſe of its *ſwiftneſs*; ſome from κείω, *ſindo*, *divido*, becauſe it ***cleaveth*** and interlaceth the Earth, and others make it ὠκεανὸς, ***quaſi*** ὠκυνάος παρὰ τὸ ὤκα νάειν, ***à celeriter fluendo***, which agreeth in meaning with the firſt. Particular names it hath divers, according to the name of the ſhore by which it paſſeth, as *Cantabricus*, *Gallicus*, ***Britannicus***, &c. The chief Iſles, appertaining to ***Europe***, beſides thoſe called the ***Azores*** or ***Iſles of Tercera***, which we have ſpoken of when we were in ***Portugal***; thoſe of the ***Aquitain*** Ocean, deſcribed in our Hiſtory of ***France***; thoſe of the ***Netherlands***, and the ***Northern*** Seas, which are to be deſcribed hereafter in their proper places, are the ***Britiſh*** Iſlands: by many of the moſt antient and approved Writers called ſimply ***Britain***, becauſe united all in that common notion; though afterwards diſtinguiſhed into the particular appellations of ***Great Britain***, ***Ireland***, and the reſt. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt ***Spain*** and ***Germany***; or rather as the next ***Dioceſe*** of the Empire to ***France*** and ***Spain***, under the ***Prætorio Præfectus*** of ***Italy***, I am next to ſpeak.

Of BRITAIN.

BRITAIN, according to the largeſt latitude of that name and notion, comprehendeth all thoſe Iſlands both great and leſs, which lie in compaſs about ***Albion***, or ***Britain*** properly ſo called: by ***Ptolemy*** called ***Britannia***, in the plural number. For ſpeaking of ***France*** he thus ſubjoyneth, ***Ex adverſo hujus*** Britannia ***Inſula***, Albion ***Ipſi nomen fuit***, ***cum*** Britanniæ ***omnes vocarentur***. i. e. Oppoſite hereunto lieth the Iland of ***Britain***, which formerly by a more proper name called ***Albion***, the name of ***Britain*** comprehending all the Iſles adjoyning. And in this ***Latitude*** and extent we now take the word; the whole dominion of theſe Iſlands, diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral names, being united in the perſon and the command of the King of ***Grent Britain***: that name including all the reſt, as appendants of it; with reference to this called the ***Iſlles*** of ***Britain***, or the ***Britiſh Iſlands***. Thus ***Ariſtotle*** in his Book ***De Mundo*** (if the B[illegible]k be his) ***Quo in mari duæ Inſulæ*** Britanicæ ***ſitæ ſunt***, ***quarum maxima*** Albion & Ierna; i. e. In which Sea there are ſituate two ***Britiſh*** Ilands of great note and compaſs, *Albion*, (or *Britain* properly ſo called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolemy* goeth to work more punctually, and he ſtates it thus; *Complectitur prima hac* Europæ *tabula duas* Britannicas *inſulas*, *quas Dionyſius* Britanides *vocat*, Hiberniam *nempe & Albionem*, *cum minoribus aliquot adjacentibus inſulis*, *ut ſunt* Orcades, Ebudæ, Thyle, Mona, *& reliquæ ſuis nominibus expreſſæ*: that is to ſay, This firſt Table of *Europe* comprehendeth the two Iſlands of *Britain*, which *Dionyſius* calls the *Britanides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with ſome leſſer Iſlands joyning to it, as the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Angleſey*, (or *Man*) and others called by diſtinct names. By which we ſee, firſt that the general name of *Britain* or the *Britiſh* Iland, comprehendeth all thoſe which are ſituate in the *Britiſh* Ocean: and ſecondly, that the greateſt and moſt famous of them, more ſpecially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was antiently called *Albion*, by its proper name. And it was called *Albion*, as my Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Bergion*, the Son of *Neptune*, mentioned by *Æſchylus*, *Dionyſius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Pliny*, and others; it being not improper that the greateſt Iſland of the *Ocean*, ſhould be denominated from a Son of the greateſt Sea-god: or from the old word Ἄλφον, ſignifying *White* amongſt the *Greeks*, (from whence the *Latines* had their *Album*, by reaſon of the white chalkie cliffs, ſeen by the Mariners afar off as they ſailed thoſe Seas.

But to return again to *Britain* in the general notion, and to the ſeveral Iſlands which that name includeth, we may diſtinguiſh them into the *Greater*, and the *Leſſer*; the *Greater* ſubdivided into 1 *Great Britain*, or *Britain* ſpecially ſo called, and 2 *Ireland*; the *Leſſer* 1 the *Orcades*, 2 the *Hebrides*, 3 *Man*, 4 *Angleſey*, 5 the Iſlands of the *Severn* Sea, 6 the *Sorlinges*, or Iſles of *Sylly*, 7 *Wight*, 8 *Tanet*, 9 *Sunderland*, and 10 *Holy Iland*.

GREAT BRITAIN.

TO ſpeak much of *GREAT BRITAIN*, or *BRITAIN* ſpecially and properly ſo called, I hold ſomewhat ſuperfluous, it being our home, and we therefore no ſtrangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once ſaid of *Italy*, *De* Italia, *magis quia ordo exigit*, *quam quia monſtrari egeat*, *pauca dicentur*, *nota ſunt omnia*, ſo ſay I of *Britan*. It is ſo obvious to the eye of every Reader, that he needs not the ſpectacles of Letters. Yet ſomething muſt be ſaid, though for methods ſake, rather than neceſſity. Firſt then, we will begin with laying out the bounds thereof (as in other places; which are, on the Eaſt, the *German* Ocean, dividing it from *Belgion*, *Germany*, and *Danemark*; on the Weſt, S. *Georges* Channel, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Vergivian* or Weſtern Ocean, of which the Antients knew no ſhore; on the North which the *Hyperborean* or *Deucaledonian* Ocean, as *Ptolemy* calls it, extending out to *Iſeland*, *Freezeland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *Engliſh* Channel, which divides it from *France*.

The length hereof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 *Italian* miles, the greateſt breadth from Eaſt to Weſt, meaſured in a right line, no more than 250 of the ſame miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-coaſt, comes to 320 miles: the whole circumference accompted 1836 miles. The greateſt Iſland in the World, except *Java*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madagaſcar*; and therefore by *Solinus* and ſome other Antients (to whom thoſe Iſlands were not known) called the *other world*: by others of late times, the *Lady and Miſtreſs of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th *Climes*: ſo that the longeſt day at the *Lizard* point in *Cornwall* (being the moſt Southernly part hereof) containeth 16 hours and a quarter; at *Barwick* which is the Border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 hours 3 quarters; and one hour-more at *Straithby head*, in the North of *Scotland*; where ſome obſerve that there is ſcarce any night at all in the ſummer *Solſtice*, but a darker Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, ſaying, *Et minimâ contentos nocte Britannos*: and the *Panegyriſt* in the time of *Conſtantine*, amongſt other commendations which he gives to *Britain*, ſaith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any ſchorching heats in Summer, and that which is moſt comfortable, *Long days*, *and very lightſome nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyriſt* tell us only of the temperateneſs of the Air, or the length of the dayes; but of the fruifulneſs of the ſoyl: "affirming *Britain* to be bleſſed with all the commo-" dities of Heaven and Earth: ſuch an abundant plenty of Corn, as might ſuffice both for Bread " and Wine; the Woods thereof without wilde Beaſts, the Fields without noyſome Serpents, infi-" nite number of milch-Beaſts, and Sheep weighed down with their own Fleeces. Whereto add that of *Alfred* of *Beverley*, a Poet of the middle times, ſaying thus of *Brittain*.

Inſula prædives, *quæ toto vix eget orbe*;
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope.
Inſula prædives, *cujus miretur & optet*
Delicias SOLOMON, Octavianus *opes*.

A wealthy Iſland, which no help deſires:
Yet all the World ſupply from her requires;
Able to glut King *SOLOMON* with pleaſures;
And ſurfet great *Auguſtus* with her treaſures.

Proceed we next to the name of *Britain*, of which I find many *Etymologies*, ſome forced, ſome fabu-

lous

England. lous and fooliſh, and but few of weight. That which hath paſſed for currant informer times, (when almoſt all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan* race) was that it took this name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grandchild of *Æneas*, & the third King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan* blood, which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his friends and followers; after a long voyage, and many wandrings, is ſaid to have fallen upon this Iſland, to have conquered here a race of Giants; and having given unto it the name of *Britain*, to leave the Soveraignty thereof unto his poſterity, who quietſy enjoyed the ſame, till ſubdued by the *Romans*. This is the ſum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*: Which though received in the darker times of ignorance, and too much credulity (in theſe more learned days hath been laid aſide, as falſe and fabulous. And it is proved that there was no ſuch man as *Brutus*, 1 From the newneſs of his Birth, *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, who lived in the reingn of K. *Henry* the ſecond, being the firſt Author which makes mention of him: for which immediately queſtioned by *Newbrigenſis*, another Writer of that *Age*. 2ly, By the ſilence of al the *Roman* Hiſtorians, in whom it had been an unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident ſo remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Son (eſpecially when they wanted matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new *Trojan* Empire in ſo great an Iſland. 3ly, By the Arguments which *Caſar* uſeth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Gals*; as Speech, Laws, Cuſtoms, Diſpoſition, Making, and the like. 4ly, and leſt it might be ſaid, that though the *Britans* in *Caſars* time were of *Gallick* race, yet there had been a former and more antient people, who had their Original from the *Trojans*: *Tacitus* putteth off that diſpute with an *Ignoramus*, *Qui mortales initio coluerint parum compertum eſt*, ſaith that knowing writer. And 5ly, by the Teſtimony of all *Roman* Hiſtories, who tell us that *Caſar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, and never under the command of one ſole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa belli adminiſtrandi Communi conſenſu commiſſa eſt* Caſſivellauno, as it is in *Caſar*: *Dum ſinguli pugnabant, univerſi vincebantur*, as we read in Tacitus. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etymons* as unlikely, but of leſs autority: the name of *Britain* is moſt probably derived from *Brit*, which in the antient *Britiſh* ſignifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain* ſignifiing a Nation: agreeable unto the cuſtom of the antient *Britains*, who uſed to diſcolour and paint their bodies, that they might ſeem more terrible in the eyes of their enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted men; ſuch as the *Romans* called *Picts* in the times enſuing. Which I prefer before the *Etymologie* of *Bochartus*, a right learned man, but one that wreſteth oll originations to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* language: by whom this Iſland is called *Britain* or *Britanica*, from *Barat-anac*, ſignifying in that language a land of *Tynne*, wherewith the Weſtern parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the Iſle of *Britain*, ſhall be obſerved in the deſcription of thoſe parts into which it now doth ſtand divided, that is to ſay, 1 *England*, 2 *Wales*, and 3 *Scotland*.

ENGLAND

ENGLAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *German*: on the Weſt, with the *Iriſh*; on the South, with the *Brittiſh* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*; by which parted from *Scotland*: Environed with turbulent Seas, guarded by inacceſſible Rocks: and where theſe want, preſerved againſt all forein invaſions by ſtrong Forts, and a puiſſant Navy.

In former time the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edenburgh-Fryth* one the Eaſt, and the *Fryth* of *Dunbriton* on the Weſt, for ſo far not only the *Roman* Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervenient ſpace being ſhut up with a wall of Turfes by *Lollius Vrbicus*, in the time of *Antoninus Pius*. But afterwards the *Romans* being beaten back by the Barbarous people, the Province was contracted within narrower bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperor *Severus* extending from *Carlile* to the River *Tine*, the tract whereof may eaſily be diſcerned to this very day. A wal ſo made, that at every miles end there is ſaid to have been a Caſtle; between every Caſtle many Watch-Towers; & betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Braſs, conveying the leaſt noiſe unto one another without interruprion: ſo that the newes of any approaching enemy was quickly over all the Borders, & reſiſtance accordingly provided. In following times the ſtrong Towns of *Barwick*; and *Carlile* have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the backdoor ſhut: and as for other Forts, we had ſcarce any on the Frontires, or Sea Coaſts of the Kingdom; though in the midland parts too many. Which being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occaſioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the *Norman* Kings: till in the latter end of the reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and thoſe few which remained diſmantled, and made unſerviceable, The Maritime parts were thought ſufficiently aſſured hy thoſe Rocks and Cliffs, which compaſs the Iſland in moſt parts: and hardly any Caſtle all along the ſhore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French*, as the Key of *England*. But in the year 1538. King *Henry* the eighth, conſidering how he had offended the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, by his divorce from Q. *Catherine*; and incurred the diſpleaſure of the Pope, by his falling off from that See; as alſo that the *French* King had not only married his Son to a Neece of the Pope, but a Daughter to the King of *Scots*; thought fit to provide for his own ſafety, by building in all places where the ſhore was moſt plain and open, Caſtles, Platforms, and Blockhouſes; many of which in the long time of peace enſuing were much neglected and in part ruined.

His Daughter Q. *Elizabeth* of happy memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom. For ſhe not only fortified *Portſmouth*, and placed in it a ſtrong Garriſon; but walled the Kingdom round with a

moſt

England.

moſt ſtately, royal, and invincible Navy: with which ſhe alwayes commanded the Seas, and vanquiſhed the mightieſt Monarch of *Europe*; whereas her predeceſſors in their Sea ſervice, for the moſt part, hired their men of War, from the *Hanſmen*, and *Genoeſe*. Yet did neither of theſe erect any Caſtles in the inward part of the realm: herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the head and the feet only, not the middle of Beaſts; or ſome Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordinances on the Wals, Bulwarks, and Out-works; leaving the reſt by theſe ſufficiently guarded.

The whole Iſland was firſt called *Albion*, as before is ſaid, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards *France*. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which name being firſt found in *Athenæus*, amongſt the *Græcians*, and in *Lucretius* and *Cæſar*, amongſt the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and all other antient writers, except *Ptolemy* only, by whom called *Albion* as at firſt; continued till the time of *Egbert* the firſt *Saxon Monarch*, who called the Southern parts of the Iſland by the name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Juites* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 miles, enjoying a ſoil equally participating of ground fit for tillage, and paſture; yet to paſture more then to tillage are our people addicted, as a courſe of life not requiring ſo many helpers, which muſt be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn way-beaters: whereof Sir *Thomas Moore* in his *Utopia* complaineth, ſaying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only men, but whole houſes and Towns. *Oves* (ſaith he) *quæ tam mites eſſe, tamque exiguo ſolent ali; nunc tam edaces, & indomitæ eſſe cœperunt, ut homines devorent ipſos, agros, domos, oppida vaſtent, ac depopulentur.* To provent this miſchief, there was a Statute made in the fourth year of *Henry* the ſeventh, againſt the converting of Arable Land into Paſture ground: by which courſe Husbandry was again revived, and the ſoil made ſo abounding in Corn, that a dear year is ſeldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and ſeldom come to maturity; and are more uſed for the pleaſantneſſe of the ſhade, than for the hopes of wine. Moſt of her other plenties and Ornaments, are expreſſed in this old verſe following.

Anglia, 1 *Mons*, 2 *Pons*, 3 *Fons*, 4 *Eccleſia*, 5 *Fœmina*, 6 *Lana.*

That is to ſay;

For 1 Mountains, 2 Bridges, 3 Rivers, 4 Churches faire,
5 Women, and 6 Wooll, *England* is paſt compare.

1 For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty heads, and giving a gallant proſpect to the lower Grounds; the principal are thoſe of *Mendip* in *Somerſet*, *Malvern* hills in *Worceſterſhire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamſhire*, *Cotſwold* in *Gloceſterſhire*, *the Peak* of *Darbyſhire*, *York Wolds*, &c. All of them bowelled with Mines, or cloathed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact deſcription of which, would require more time then I can ſpend upon that Subject, proceed we therefore to.

2 The *Bridges*, which are in number 857. The chief of which are; the Bridge of *Rocheſter*, over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Briſtol*, over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London*, over *Thames*. This laſt ſtanding upon 19 Arches of wonderfull ſtrength and largeneſſe, ſupporteth continual ranges of buildings, ſeeming rather a ſtreet then a Bridge; and is not to be parallel'd with any bridge of *Europe*; though of late by ſome defacements made by fire, *An.* 1632. the buildings are not ſo contiguous, as they were before

The *Rivers* of this Countrey are in number 325. The chief is *Thamiſis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Iſis*; whereof the former riſing ſomewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamſhire*, and the latter beyond *Cyrenceſter* in *Gloceſterſhire*, meet together about *Dorceſter* in *Oxfordſhire*: the iſſue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamiſis* or *Thames*. Hence it floweth betwix *Berks*, *Buckinghamſhire*, *Middleſex*, *Surrey*, *Kent*, and *Eſſex*; and ſo weddeth himſelf to the Kentiſh *Medway*, in the very jawes of the Ocean. This Glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more then any River in *Europe*; ebbing and flowing twice a day, more than 60 miles: about whoſe banks are ſo many fair Towns, and princely Palaces, that a *German* Poet thus truly ſpoke.

Tot campos, ſylvas, tot regia tecta, tot hortos,
Artifici excultos dextra, tot vidimus arces;
Ut nunc Auſonio Thamiſis *cum* Tibride *certet.*

We ſaw ſo many Woods and Princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces, and ſtately Towers:
So many gardens, dreſ'd with curious care,
That *Thames* with Royal *Tiber* may compare.

The ſecond River of note, is *Sabrina* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Pinlimmon* hil in *Montgomeryſhire*, and his end about ſeven miles from *Briſtoll*: waſhing in the mean ſpace, the wals of *Shrewsbury*, *Worceſter*, and *Gloceſter*. 3 *Trent*, ſo called, for that 30 kind of Fiſhes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 leſſer Rivers; who having his Fountain in *Staffordſhire*, and gliding through the Countreys of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, and *York*: augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the moſt violent ſtream of all the Iſle, yet *Humber* is not, to ſay truth, a diſtinct River, having a ſpring head of his own; but rather to the mouth or *Æſtaurium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely, *Your*, *Darwent*, and eſpecially *Ouſe* and *Trent*. And as the *Danow*, having received into its Channell the Rivers *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiſcus*, and divers others, changeth his name into *Iſter*: So alſo the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the waters above named, changeth his name into this of ***Humber***; ***Abus***, the old Geographers call it. 4 *Medway*, a *Kentiſh* River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navey. 5 *Twede*, the North-eaſt bound of ***England***, on whoſe Northern bank is ſeated the ſtrong and impregnable Town of *Barwick*. 6 *Tine*, famous for *Newcaſtle* and her inexhauſtible Coal-pits. Theſe and the reſt of Principal note are thus comprehended in one of M. *Draytons* Sonnets.

Our Flouds Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd,
And ſtately *Severn* for her ſhore is prais'd,
The Cryſtal *Trent* for Fords and Fiſh renown'd,
The *Avons* fame to *Albions* cliffes is rais'd.
Carlegion Cheſter vaunts her holy ***Dee***,
York many wonders of her *Ouſe* can tell,
The *Peak* her ***Dove***, whoſe banks ſo fertile be,
And *Kent* will ſay her *Medway* doth excell.
Cotſwoll commends her *Iſis* to the *Thame*,
Our Northern borders boaſt of *Tweeds* fair flood;
Our Weſtern parts extoll their *Willies* Fame,
And the old *Lea* brags of her *Daniſh* blood.

4 The *Churches*, before the general ſuppreſſion of Abbies, and ſpoiling the Church ornaments, were moſt exquiſite, the chief remaining, are 1 the Church of S. *Paul* founded by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple conſecrated to ***Diana***: A Fabrick of the largeſt dimenſions of that kind, of any in the Chriſtian World. For whereas the ſo much celebrated Temple of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople*, hath but 260 foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this of S. *Paul* is 690 foot long, and 130 foot broad, the main body being 102 foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 foot more. Which Steeple being made with Timber, and covered with lead, was by the careleſneſs of the Sexton, in the fifth year of the reign of Q. *Elizabeth*, conſumed with fire; which hapning in a thundering and tempeſtuous day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was ſo generally believed till the hour of his death: but not many years ſince to diſ-abuſe the world, he confeſt the truth of it; on which diſcovery the burning of S. *Paul's* Steeple by lightning was left out of our common Almanacks; where formerly it ſtood amongſt the ordinary *Epoches*, or accounts of time. A Church of ſuch a gallant proſpect, and ſo large dimenſions, that had not the late reparation of it been diſcontinued, it would have been the ſtatelieſt and moſt majeſtical Fabrick in the Chriſtian World. 2ly, The Collegiate Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, (wherein I have the honour to be a ***Prebendary***) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of ***England***, the Tombes whereof are the moſt ſumptuous, and the Chappel the moſt accurate piece of building in *Europe*. 3ly. The Cathedrall Church at ***Lincoln***. 4thly, For a private Church, that of *Radcliffe* in ***Bryſtoll***. 5ly, For a private Chappel, that of *Kings Colledg* in ***Cambridg***. 6thly, For the curious workmanſhip of the glaſs, that of ***Chriſt Church*** in ***Canterbury***. 7thly, For the exquiſite beauty of the Fronts, thoſe of *Wells* and ***Peterborough***. 8ly, For a pleaſant lightſome Church, the Abbey Church at *Bath*. 9ly, For an antient and reverend Fabrick, the Minſter of *York*. And 10ly, to comprehend the reſt in one, our ***Lady-Church*** in ***Salisbury***, of which take theſe Verſes.

Mira canam, Soles quot continet annus, in unâ,
Tam numeroſa, ferunt, æde, feneſtra micat.
Marmoreaſque, tenet fuſas tot ab arte columnas,
Comprenſas horas quot vagus annus habet.
Totq; patent portæ, quot menſibus annus abundant:
Res mira, at verâ res celebrata fide.

How many dayes in one whole year there be,
So many Windows in one Church we ſee.
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are hours throughout the fleeting year.
So many Gates as Moons one year do view,
Strange tale to tell, yet not ſo ſtrange as true.

5 The Women generally are more handſomer then in other places, ſufficiently endowed with naturall beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophiſtications. In an abſolute Woman, ſay the ***Italians***, are required the parts of a ***Dutch-Woman***, from the girdle downwards; of a ***French-Woman***, from the girdle to the ſhoulders; over which muſt be placed an ***Engliſh*** face. As their beauties, ſo alſo are their Perogatives the greateſt of any Nation; neither ſo ſervilely ſubmiſſive as the ***French***, nor ſo jealouſly guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping ſo true a *decorum*, that as ***England*** is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of *Horſes*; ſo it is acknowledged the ***Paradiſe*** of ***Women***. And it is a common by-word among the ***Italians***, that if ***there were a Bridge built over the Narrow Seas, all the***

Women

of Europe *would run into* ENGLAND. For here they have the upper hand in the ſtreets, the upper place at the Table, the thirds of their Husbands eſtates, and their equal ſhare in all Lands, yea even ſuch as are holden in *Knights ſervice*: priviledges wherewith other Women are not acquainted. Of high eſteem of former times amongſt foraign Nations, for the modeſty and gravity of their converſation; but of late times ſo much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they loſt much of their antient honour and reputation amongſt the knowing and more ſober men of forraign Countreys; who before admired them.

6. The Wooll of *England*, is of exceeding fineſs, eſpecially that of *Cotſwold*, in *Glouceſterſhire*; that of *Lemſter*, in *Herefordſhire*; and of the Iſle of *Wight*. Of this Wooll are made excellent broad-clothes, diſperſed all over the World, eſpecially *High-Germany*, *Muſcovia*, *Turkie*, and *Perſia*, to the great benefit of the Realm: as well in return of ſo much money which is made of them, as in ſetting to work ſo many poor people, who from it receive ſuſtenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the third, *Engliſh* men had not the art, or neglected the uſe of making cloth: till whoſe time our wooll was tranſported unwrought. And as his ſucceſſors have laid impoſitions on every cloth ſold out of the Realm; ſo his Predeceſſors had, as their occaſions required, ſome certain cuſtomes granted on every ſack of Wooll. In the beginning of this *Edwards* Warrs with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders* being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and aided him in his Wars againſt that King. And he for his part by the compoſition then made, was to give them 140000 *l.* ready money, to aid them by Sea and Land, if need required, & to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart Towns of *Chriſtendom*, the *Staple* for his Wools. Here the Staple continued 15 years, at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the King; and he having by experience ſeen what the benefit of theſe Staples were, removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the eaſe as well of his Subjects in bringing their Wools unto the Ports, as of ſuch foraign Merchants as come to buy; he placed his Staples at *Exeter*, *Briſtol*, *Winchester*, *Weſtminſter*, *Chicheſter*, *Canterbury*, *Norwich*, *Lincoln*, *York*, and *Newcaſtle* for *England*; at *Carmarden* for *Wales*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork*, and *Tredah*; for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *Engliſh*, *Iriſh*, or *Welch* men ſhould tranſport this Stapled commodity, no not by Licenſe (if any ſuch ſhould be granted) on pain of Confiſcation, and Impriſonment during the Kings pleaſure. Laſtly, he allured over hither divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of clothes; (who are now grown the beſt Clothworkers in the World:) and to encourage men in that Art, it was by a Statute of the 27th. of *Edward* the third, enacted to be Felony, to tranſport any Wools unwrought. When *England* had ſome ſhort time enjoyed the benefit of theſe *Staples*, the King removed them to *Callice*, which he had conquered, and deſired to make wealthy. From hence they were at ſeveral times and occaſions tranſlated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium*: and happy was that Town, in what Countrey ſoever where the *Engliſh* kept a houſe for this Traffick; the confluence of all people thither to buy, infinitely inriching it. *Antwerp* in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *Engliſh* Merchants, till upon ſome diſcontents between King *Henry* the ſeventh, and *Maximilian*, Archduke, and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with ſolemn Proceſſion, Princely triumph, and ſumptuous Feaſts, rare Banquetings, and other expreſſions of much Love, but more Joy. And giving of ſome *Cotſwold* Sheep by *Edward* the fourth, to *Henry* of *Caſtile*, and *John* of *Arragon*, An. 1465. is counted one of the greateſt prejudices, that ever hapned to this Kingdome.

The Wooll tranſported bringeth into this Kingdom no leſs than 1500000 *l.* and the lead half the ſum, ſo that *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that before the Warrs of the Low-Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *Engliſh* bartered wares yearly for 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next Commodity to the *Wooll*, though not mentioned in the verſe fore-going, are the rich and inexhauſtible *Mines* of *Cole*, *Lead*, and *Tin*: to ſay nothing of the *Mines* of *Iron*, as bringing more damage to the publick by the ſpoil of Woods, then profit to particular perſons in the encreaſe of their *Eſtates*. The Mines of *Cole* chiefly enrich *Newcaſtle* in *Northumberland*, and by that the great City of *London*, and many other good Towns beſides: which could not poſſibly ſubſiſt in this general decay of Wood, and neglect of planting, but by this commodity. The Mines of *Lead* are moſt conſiderable in the *Peak* of *Darbiſhire*: thoſe of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where they dig *Tin* not much inferiour to Silver in fineneſs; a Commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in former times, the art of making it not being elſewhere known in *Europe*; till one of the Tin-workers, flying out of *England* for a murder, paſſed into *Germany*, An. 1240. and there diſcovered ſome *Tin* Mines in *Miſnia*, not known before, and ſet on foot that Trade amongſt them, to the great prejudice (ſaith my Authour) of the *Earls* of *Cornwall*, who had before the ſole *Monopoly* of that uſefull mettal.

To theſe particulars being matters of profit and neceſſity, if I would adde ſuch things as are for delight and pleaſure; I might ſubjoyn the *Bells* and *Parks*; for which this Kingdome is eminent among foraign Nations, as for any of thoſe mentioned in the ſaid old verſe. The *Bells* ſo many, tunable, and of ſuch excellent Melody to a Muſical ear (brought more to the command of the skilfull Ringer than in former times) that it is thought there are more good Rings of *Bells* in this part of the Iſland than in half *Chriſtendom* beſides. *Parks* more in *England* than in all *Europe*. The firſt of which kind for the incloſing of Veniſon, being that of *Woodſtock*, made by King *Henry* the firſt: whoſe example being followed by his ſucceſſors, and the Lords and great men of the Realm, the number ſo encreaſed in little time, that at the laſt, beſide 55 *Forreſts*, and 300 *Chaſes*, there were reckoned 745 *Parks* in *England*: all well replenished either with Red or Fallow Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleaſure, and the ſheep with ſafety, great care was taken by our progenitors for the deſtruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old Writers, that

England never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not ſo: here being ſtore of them, till *Edgar* King of *England* commuted the 20 *l.* of Gold, 300 *l.* of Silver, and 300 head of Cattel impoſed as an yearly tribute by King *Athelſtone* upon *Idwallo* Prince *of Wales*, for the like yearly tribute of 300 *Wolves*: by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the *Welch* proteſting at the laſt they could find no more.

The Air of this Countrey is very temperate, neither ſo hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, becauſe of its northerly ſituation; nor ſo cold in the Winter; becauſe the air of this Kingdom being groſs, cannot ſo ſoon penetrate as the thin air of thoſe Countreys. For to ſay truth, the air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much diſpoſed to miſts; eſpecially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: inſomuch that many times, the ſun is not ſeen to ſhine out clearly for ſome weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a tale, that the great Conſtable of *Caſtile* being Ambaſſadour to King *James* in the firſt Winter of his reign, and tarrying here about a moneth; is ſaid not to have ſeen the Sun all the time of his ſtay: which occaſioned him at his going on ſhip-board, to deſire ſuch Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to *preſent his humble ſervice to the King their Maſter, and to the* bleſſed Sun of Heaven *when they chanced to ſee him.* And ſomething alſo touching the temperature of the Air, which may be aſcribed unto the Winds, which, participating of the Seas, over which they paſs unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be ſaid, that we were come from Gods bleſſing into the warm Sun: but it is not ſo. For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of fiſh then ours. Our Oyſters were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*; to whom, the *Engliſhmen*, reſerving to themſelves a kind of *Royalty*, (for the *Dutch* by cuſtom demand liberty to fiſh of *Scarborough Caſtle* in *Yorkshire*) have yielded up the Commodity; by which thoſe States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoveriſhed, and condemned for lazineſs and ſloth. Beſides the loſs of employment for many men, who uſing this trade might be a ſeminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and diſcoveries; cannot but be very prejudicial to the ſtrength and flouriſhing of the Common-wealth and Empire of *England*.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I ſhall extract ſome paſſages out of a *M.S.* diſcourſe of the late learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principal King of Arms by the name of *Garter* entitled *The Soveraignty of the* Britiſh *Seas.* By which it doth appear, that there is fiſhing in thoſe Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fiſh, at all times of the year: and that too in ſo plentiful a manner, that not long ſince near *Minnegal* on the Coaſts of *Devonſhire* 500 Ton of Fiſh were taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another, near S. *Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 laſts of Herrings. 2ly, That almoſt all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlands* and the *Hanſe* Towns, do mightily improve themſelves both in power and wealth, by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Fiſhing; inſomuch as 10000 Sail of Forain Veſſels (of which 1400 from the Town of *Finden* in *Eaſt-Friſeland* only) are thought to be maintained by this trade alone. 3ly, That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yearly 8000 Veſſels of all ſorts for this trade of *Fiſhing* on our Coaſts, whereby they have a Seminary of 150000 Saylers and Mariners, ready for any publick ſervice: all which maintain trebble that number of Men, Women, and Children, of ſeveral trades upon the Land. 4ly, That for the holding up of this trade, the ſaid *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not ſo big as many of our Shires, do build 1000 Sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furniſh all the parts of the World (even as far as *Braſil*,) with our Commodities; returning home thoſe of other Countries in exchange thereof, which they ſell to us many times at their own prices. 5ly, That the ſaid *Hollanders*, (as appeared upon computation) made in one year of the *Herrings* only, caught upon theſe Coaſts, the ſum of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Cuſtoms, and tenth Fiſh, advancing to the publick Treaſury no leſs then 800000 *l.* Sterling:) it being thought that the *Herrings* caught by thoſe of the *Hanſe* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a ſum as that. 6ly, And finally, that by erecting only 250 *Buſſes*, (Veſſels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not ſwift of ſail) for the *Herring-Fiſhing*, (which is not a ſixth part of thoſe which are imployed yearly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or by private Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated; there would be found imployment yearly fer a 1000 Ships, and at leaſt 20000 Mariners & Fiſhers at Sea, and conſequently for as many Tradeſmen and Laborours at Land; by means whereof, beſides the vindication of our credit, now at ſuch a loſs, there would ariſe in Cuſtoms, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Impoſts, no leſs than 300000 *l. per Annum* to the publick Treaſury. The proſecution of which project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once deſigned by Mr. Atturney *Noy*, my much honoured Friend: ſo do I heartily commend it to the care of the State, and to his ſucceſſors in that Office, as the fitteſt remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the People wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithſtanding theſe advantages of Fiſh, the Diet of *England* is, for the moſt part, Fleſh, in *London* only there are no fewer then 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep ſlain, & uttered in a year, beſides Calves, Lambs, Hogs-fleſh, and Poulterers ware. To prove this, ſuppoſe there be in *London* 60 Butchers *Free* of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Oxe a day, as at leaſt they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Forainers in the Suburbs and Villages ſell four for their one. Laſtly, count for every Oxe ten Sheep, (for this is alſo certainly known) to be killed and ſold, and you have both the numbers above mentioned. The Earl of *Gondamor*, once the *Spaniſh Lieger* here, having in ſome ſeveral Market daies ſeen the ſeveral Shambles of this great City, ſaid to them who made the diſcovery with him, that there was more fleſh eaten in a moneth in that Town, than in all *Spain* in a year. Now had I his skill who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole body, I might by this proviſion of Fleſh conſumed in the head, gueſs at the quantity of that which is ſpent in the body of the Realm. But this I leave to be determined by an abler hand. The uſual and natural drink of the Countrey is *Beer*, ſo called from the *French* word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is ſaid) Which, without controverſie, is moſt wholeſome and nouriſhing beverage; and being tranſported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea is ſo purged, that it is amongſt them in higheſt eſtimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Beer d' Angleterre*. And as for the old drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Daniſh* word *Olea*, it is queſtionleſs in it ſelf, (and without that commixture which ſome are accuſed to uſe with it) a very wholſome drink; howſoever it pleaſed a Poet in the time of *Henry* the third, thus to deſcant on it:

> *Neſcio quid monſtrum* Stygiæ *conforme paludi*,
> Cerviſiam *plerique vocant*; *nil ſpiſſius illa*,
> *Dum bibitur*; *nil clarius eſt dum mingitur*; *ergo*
> *Conſtat quod multas* fæces *in ventre relinquit*.

In *Engliſh* thus;

> Of this ſtrange drink ſo like the *Stygian* lake,
> Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
> Folk drink it thick, and piſs it very thin:
> Therefore much *Dregs* muſt needs remain within.

Now to conclude this general diſcourſe concerning *England*, there goes a tale, that *Henry* the ſeventh (whoſe breeding had been low and private) being once preſſed by ſome of his Councel, to purſue his title unto *France*; returned this Anſwer: that France *indeed was a flouriſhing and gallant Kingdom*; *but* England *in his mind was as fine a Seat for a* Countrey Gentleman, *as any could be found in* Europe.

Having ſtaid thus long in taking a Survey of the Countrey it ſelf, together with the chief commodities and pleaſures of it; and amongſt them of the *Women* alſo, (as the method of the old Verſe led me on:) it is now time that we ſhould look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the moſt part grey-ey'd, pleaſant, beautifull, bountifull, courteous; and much reſembling the *Italians* in habit, and pronunciation. In matters of war, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure, and reſolute to undertake the hardeſt enterpriſes: in peace quiet, and not quarrelſome; in advice or counſel, ſound and ſpeedy. Finally, they are active, hearty, and chearfull. And yet I have met with ſome Gentlemen, who upon the ſtrength of a little travell in *France*, have grown ſo *un-Engliſhed*, and affected or beſotted rather on the *French* Nation, that they affirm the *Engliſh*, in reſpect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* people; of no diſpatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in villifying their Nation, they had conſulted with *Julius Scaliger*, who in the 16 Chap. of his 3d. Book *De re Poetica*, giveth of the two moſt noble Nations, *Engliſh* and *Scottiſh*, this baſe and unmanly Character, *Goth. belluæ*, Scoti *non minus*; Angli *perfidi*, *inflati*, *feri*, *contemptores*, *ſtolidi*, *amentes*, *inertes*, *inhoſpitales*, *immanes*. His bolt (you ſee) is ſoon ſhot, and ſo you may happily gueſs at the quality of the Archer. A man indeed of an able learning, but of his own worth ſo highly conceited, that if his too much learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *National* diſgrace upon a *Perſonal*, is an ignoble victory. Beſides *Socrates* reſolution in the like kind, in my opinion was very judicious. εἰ δή με ὄνος ἐλάκτισε, δίκην ἂν αὐτῷ ἐλάγχανον, If any Aſs kick us, we muſt not put him in the Court. To confute his cenſure in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too great a labour; it being a task, which of it ſelf would require a Volume. The beſt is, many ſhoulders make the burden light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrel againſt that proud Man, as ours: for ſo maliciouſly hath he there taxed all other people, that that chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *Engliſh*, and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought moſt given to their bellies, do agree and differ in this point; the ſame *Scaliger* hath thus ſhewed in one of his Epigrams.

> *Tres ſunt Convivæ*, Germanus, Flander, & Anglus.
> *Dic quis edat melius*, *quis meliùſve bibat*.
> *Non comedis* Germane, *bibis*; *tu non bibis* Angle,
> *Sed comedis*; *comedis* Flandre, *bibiſque bene*.

> *Dutch*, *Flemmings*, *Engliſh*, are your only gueſts,
> Say which of all doth eat, or drink it beſt?
> Th' *Engliſh* love moſt to eat, the *Dutch* to ſwill.
> Only the *Flemming* eats and drinks his fill.

The

England.

Thus was it in his time with the *Engliſh* Nation; though ſince, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more then needs of the *Flemming* alſo.

The Nobility of this Countrey is not of ſo much unlimited power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes*, *Earls*, and *Marqueſſes*, being meerly titular: whereas in other places they have ſome abſolute, ſome mixt government; ſo that upon any little diſtaſte, they will ſtand on their own guard, and ſlight the power of their *Soveraign*. And on the other ſide, the commonalty enjoy a multitude of Priviledges above all other Nations; being moſt free from Taxes, and burdenous Impoſitions, but what they take upon themſelves by their own conſent. They have twice in a year (a laudable cuſtome no where elſe to be ſeen) Juſtice adminiſtred even at their own doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order firſt inſtituted by King *Henry* the ſecond. They dwell together with the Gentlemen, in Villages and Towns, which makes them ſavour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Yeomen* in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, or *Germany*; being able to entertain a ſtranger honeſtly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The *Clergy* was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King *Henry* the fifth, againſt the temporall revenews of the Church: in which it was ſuggeſted, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Alms-houſes, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 *l. per Annum* into his Exchecquer. How true this was, I cannot ſay. But after this, King *Henry* the eigth took his Opportunities, to pare away the excreſcencies of it; demoliſhing the Monaſteries, and Religious houſes, and paring off the ſuperfluities of Biſhopricks and Cathedral Churches: in which he found not a few followers amongſt the Miniſters and great Officers of State and Court in the time of King *Edward* the ſixth, and Queen *Elizabeth*. Yet left they not the *Clergy* ſo poor and naked, or deſtitute of the encouragements and rewards of learning, but that they have been ſtill the objects of a covetous envy, (that which the former *Harpies* left them being thought too much: though for abilities of learning (I dare boldly ſay it) not to be parallel'd in the World. For beſides 5439 *Parochial Benefices*, being no *Impropriations*; and beſide the *Vicarages*, moſt of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas: there were left in *England* at the time of the *Reformation* under Q. *Elizabeth*, 21 *Biſhopricks*, taking thoſe of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Deaneries*, 60 *Archdeaconries*, and 544 *Dignities* and *Prebends*; moſt of which, places of fair revenue. And as for the maintenance of Prieſts, Monks, and Friers, before the *Reformation*, there were reckoned 90 Colledges, beſides thoſe in the Univerſities, 110 Hoſpitals, 3374 Chanteries and free Chappels, and 645 Abbeys and Monaſteries: more then half of which had above the yearly income of 200 *l.* in old Rents, many above 2000, and ſome 4000 almoſt. So ſtudious were our *Anceſtors* both in thoſe times of blindneſs, and theſe of a clearer ſight, to encourage men to learning, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of *England* is either for the *Land*, or for the *Sea*. Our Victories by *Land*, are moſt apparent, over the *Iriſh*, *Scots*, *Cypriots*, *Turks*, and eſpecially *French*; whoſe Kingdom hath been ſore ſhaken by the *Engliſh* many times, eſpecially twice by King *Edward* the third, and *Henry* the fifth: this latter making ſo abſolute a conqueſt, that *Charles* the ſeventh like a poor *Roy d' Ividot*, confined himſelf to *Bourges*, where (having caſhiered his retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a Napkin only laid before him, a rump of Mutton and two Chickens. And ſo redoubted even after our expulſion from *France*, (our *civil diſſenſions* rather cauſing that expulſion, then the *Frenchmens* valour) was the *Engliſh* name in that *Countrey*: that in the Wars between King *Charles* the eighth, and the Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke, to ſtrike a terror into his enemies, apparelled 1500 of his own Subjects in the Arms and Croſs of *England*. But as the Aſs, when he had on the Lions skin, was for all that but an Aſs and no Lion: ſo theſe *Britons*, by the weak reſiſtance they made againſt their Enemies, ſhew'd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *Engliſhmen*. *Spain* alſo taſted the valour of our Land-Souldiers, when *John* of *Gaunt* purſuing his title to *Spain*, was ſent home with 8 Waggons laden with gold, and an annual penſion of 10000 Marks; as alſo when the *Black Prince* re-eſtabliſhed King *Peter* in his Throne. And then alſo did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puiſſance of the *Engliſh*, when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* ſurprized the Kingdome of *Navarre*. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuſcoa*, 6000 *Engliſh* foot, who lay there, to joyn with this *Ferdinand* in an expedition againſt *France*, concerning which *Guicciardine* giveth this *Item*; That *the Kingdom of* Navarre *was yieded rather for the fear and reputation of the* Engliſh *Forces that were at hand, then by any puiſſance of the King of* Arragon. Since thoſe times the *Spaniards* much eſteemed us, as appeareth by this ſpeech of theirs to our Souldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*. *You are all tall Souldiers, and therefore when you come down to the Trenches, we double our guards, and look for blowes; but as for thoſe baſe and cowardly* French, *when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but to play, or ſleep on our Ramparts.* The like the *Netherlands* can teſtifie, only this is the grief of it, The *Engliſh* is like *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Not to ſay any thing of the late, but great experience, which the *Engliſh* Souldiery hath gotten by the *Civil* broils among themſelves. At which my heart ſo aketh, and my hand ſo trembleth, that I ſhall only in the words of *Lucan*.

Hen

Heu quantum potuit cœli pelagique parari,
Hoc quem Civiles *fuderunt ſanguine dextra!*

That is to ſay,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
By that dear bloud, which *Civil wars* have drain'd!

And as for their valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the battel at *Scluce*, wherein King *Edward* the 3d. with 200 Ships, overcame the *French* Fleet conſiſting of 500 Sail; of which he ſunk 200, and ſlew 30000 Souldiers. Secondly, at the battle in 88. wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquiſhed the *invincible Armado* of the *King of Spain*, conſiſting of 134 great *Galleons*, and Ships of extraordinary bigneſs. Sir *Francis Drake* with 4 Ships, took from the *Spaniard* one million, 189200 Ducats in one voiage, *An.* 1587. And again with 25 Ships he awed the Ocean, ſacked *S. Jago*, *S. Dominico*, and *Cartagena*; carrying away with him, beſides Treaſure, 240 pieces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this *Drake* and *Cavendiſh*; and the voyage to *Cales*: as alſo how one of the Queens Ships named the Revenge, in which Sir *Richard Greenvile* was Captain, with 180 Souldiers (whereof 90 were ſick on the ballaſt) maintained a Sea-fight for 24 hours againſt above 50 of the the *Spaniſh* Galleons. And though at laſt, after her powder was ſpent to the laſt barrel, ſhe yielded upon honourable terms; yet ſhe was never brought into *Spain*; having killed in that fight more than 1000 of their Souldiers, and ſunk four of their greateſt Veſſels. I omit alſo the diſcovery of the Northern paſſages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Frobiſher*; concluding with that of *Keckerman*, *Hoc certum eſt, omnibus hodie gentibus navigandi induſtria & peritia ſuperiores eſſe Anglos; & poſt Anglos, Hollandos:* Though now I know not by what neglect, and diſcontinuance of thoſe honorable employments, the *Hollanders* begin to bereave us of our antient Glories, and would fain account themſelves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been ſo indeed, had not his Majeſty by the timely reinforcing of his Naval Power, *An.* 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it.

The *Engliſh* Language is a De-compound, of *Dutch*, *French*, and *Latine*; which I conceive rather to adde to its perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; ſince out of every Language we have culled the moſt ſignificant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither ſo boyſterous as the *Dutch*, nor ſo effeminate as the *French*; yet as ſignificant as the *Latine*, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one, little inferiour to the *Greek*.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here planted, as ſome ſay, by *S. Peter* and *Paul*; more probably (as others ſay) by *Joſeph* of *Arimathea*, whoſe body we find to have been interred in the Iſle of *Avalonia*, where the Abbey of *Glaſtenbury* after ſtood. But that of his plantation being almoſt rooted out by long Perſecutions, and no ſupply of Preachers ſent from other places; *Lucius*, a King of *Britain* (and the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Europe*) *An.* 180. or thereabouts, ſent his Ambaſſadours to *Eleutherius* the then Pope of *Rome* to be furniſhed with a new ſupply of *Paſtors*, if not to plant, yet at the leaſt to water, and confirm the *Goſpel* planted here before; but almoſt rooted out again by prevailing *Gentiliſm*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himſelf, but by the piety of his example, and the diligence of the firſt Preachers ſent from *Rome* (being both of them natural *Britains*) it ſpread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in ſome tract of time over all the Iſland. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of *Chriſt*, was forthwith furniſhed with *Biſhops* and *Metropolitans*, according to the number of the Provinces and principal Cities (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as *Chriſtianity* it ſelf. For not to truſt herein to the authority of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, we find three Biſhops of this Iſle ſubſcribing to the Council of *Arles*, *An.* 314. viz. *Eborius* Biſhop of *York*, *Reſtitutus* Biſhop of *London*, and *Adelfius*, Biſhop of *Colcheſter*, there called *Colonia Londinenſiũ*; and ſome of them alſo preſent in the Council of *Sardira*, *An.* 358. concurring with the reſt in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Hereſies; and the ſame or others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the *Britains* were expulſed their native Countrey, or ſhut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordovices*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried *Chriſtianity* and *Biſhops* along with them: *Auguſtine* the *Monk* finding no fewer that ſeven Biſhops in the *Britiſh* Church, when he was ſent by *Gregory* the Great to convert the *Engliſh*. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as ſome men ſuppoſe) to ſay that *Auguſtine* the Monk firſt preached the Goſpel in *England*; becauſe it muſt be underſtood, not with Relation to the *Britans*, but the *Engliſh Saxons*; from whom theſe parts of the Iſle had the name of *England*, & from whom both the *Britans*, and the Faith it ſelf was driven into the Mountains of *Wales* and *Cornwall*, and Heatheniſm introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which, it pleaſed God, that *Gregory* the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of *Rome*) ſeeing ſome handſom youths to be ſold in open Market, demanding what and whence they were: to whom it was anſwered they were *Angli*: and well may they be ſo called (ſaith he) for they ſeem as *Angels*. Aſking again of what Province they were amongſt the *Angli*; and anſwer being made of the Province *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (ſaith he) *de ira Dei ſunt liberandi*. And laſtly, underſtanding that the King of their Nation was named *Alle*; how fitly (ſaid he) may he ſing *Allelujahs* to the moſt High God? After which time he ſeriouſly endeavoured the Converſion of the *Engliſh* Nation; which being Pope he happily effected, by the travel and diligence of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*. And ſo well did the work proſper after this beginning, that not only all the *Saxons* did receive the Goſpel, but communicated the light of it to other Nations: the *Haſſians*, *Franconians*, and

England. *Turingians* being converted by *Winifred*; the *Friſons* and *Hollanders* by *Wittikind* the firſt Biſhop of *Utrecht*; the *Saxons* of *Weſtphalen*, by *Welrode*, the firſt Biſhop of *Breme*; all of them being *Engliſh Saxons*, as we find in *Beda* and ſome others.

Now as theſe parts of *Britain* were the firſt which generally entertained the Goſpel; ſo were they the firſt alſo in theſe latter times, which univerſally ſubmitted to the Reformation of ſuch corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of *Rome*. Endeavoured firſt in *France*, by the *Albigenſes*, and *Waldenſes*, as was ſaid before. Who being ſuppreſſed and ruinated by the ſword of the Kings of *France*, ſheltred themſelves in the mountainous parts of *Gaſcoigne* and *Guienne*, then in poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*; who by that means became acquainted with their *Tenets*: maintained here publickly by *Wiclef*, and ſpreading underhand amongſt the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther*, and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in moſt other Countries received tumultuouſly, by the power of the People; was here admitted upon mature deliberation, by the authority and conſent of the Prince and Prelates: the *Architects* in this great work, without reſpect unto the Dictates of *Luther*, or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Word and the Primitive Patterns, aboliſhing ſuch things as were repugnant unto either, but ſtill retaining ſuch *Ceremonies* in Gods publick worſhip, as were agreable to both, and had been countenanced by the Practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did obſerve a greater meaſure of Chriſtian prudence and moderation, than their neighbour Churches; which in a meer deteſtation of the See of *Rome*, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in uſe amongſt them, becauſe defiled with *Popiſh* Errors and abuſes: and thereby utterly averting thoſe of the *Papal* party from joyning with them in the work, or coming over to them when the work was done. Whereas had they continued an allowable correſpondency in theſe extrinſecals of Religion, with the Church of *Rome*; their party in the world had been far greater, and not ſo much ſtomached as it is. And ſo it was conceived by the Marqueſs *de Rhoſne*, after Duke of *Sully*, and Lord High-Treaſurer of *France*, and one of the chief men of that party there: when being ſent Ambaſſadour to King *James*, from King *Henry* the fourth, he had obſerved the Majeſty and Decency of Gods publick Service, in ſome *Cathedrals* of this Kingdom. Religion would be ſoon defaced, and trod under foot; if not preſerved and fenced about with the hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church ſince the laſt *Converſion*, as by the piety and example of *Lucius* there were founded three *Archbiſhopricks*, and 25 Biſhopricks, according to the number of the *Archi-Flamines* and *Flamines* (whoſe great Revenues were converted to more ſacred uſes) in times of *Idolatry*: So by the like pious care of Pope *Gregory* the Great, by whoſe means this laſt Converſion hapned; Archbiſhopricks, and Biſhopricks were deſigned to convenient places. The number 26 in all, to each Province twelve, beſides the two *Archbiſhops* and *Metropolitans*: wherein he had the happineſs to have his deſires fulfilled, though the number was not made compleat till theſe latter dayes, nor with ſuch equal diſtribution, as he did intend. For in the Province of *York* laid waſte and deſolate by the *Danes*, and not ſo ſoon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan Biſhops came not up to his purpoſe, but did as much exceed in the Province of *Canterbury*: eſpecially when King *Henry* the eigth had incorporated *Wales* with *England*; and founded five Epiſcopal Sees out of the ruines and Revenues of ſome principal Monaſteries: of which none but the Biſhoprick of *Cheſter* (and that of the Iſle of *Man*, which maketh up the twenty ſeventh) were laid unto the Province of *York*. And ſo it ſtood, notwithſtanding the alterations of *Religion*, without any diſpute, till *Calvin* having hammered out his new *Presbytery*, and recommended it to the uſe of all *Chriſtian* Churches, (the Hiſtory whereof we had ſuccinctly in the *Alpine* Provinces) found many apt Scholars in moſt places to decry this Order, though conſonant to the Word of God, and moſt pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not ſo much the Authority of *Calvin*, or the malignant zeal of *Beza*, or the impetuous clamours of their Diſciples, which cauſed the *Epiſcopal* Order to grow out of credit; as the *Avarice* of ſome great perſons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their poſſeſſions. It had been elſe a miracle that *Calvins* Plat-form, made only for the uſe of a private City, and not proportioned, no nor intended at the firſt, to the ſtate of other Churches, eſpecially where the Biſhops had been inſtrumental in the Reformation; ſhould be ſo headily received in ſome Kingdoms, and ſo importunately and clamorouſly deſired in others.

The moſt valarous Souldiers of this Countrey, when poſſeſſed by the *Britains*, were 1 *Caſſibelane*, who twice repulſed the *Roman* Legions, though conducted by *Caſar*; and had not a party here at home been formed againſt him; he had for ever done the like. 2 *Pratuſagus*, King of the *Iceni*. 3 *Conſtantine* the Great. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds *nine Worthies*. In the times of the *Saxons*. 4 *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. 6 King *Edmund Ironſide*; and 7 *Canutus* the *Dane*. Under the *Normans*, of moſt note have been, 1 *William*, ſurnamed the Conqueror, 2 *Richard*, and 3 *Edward*, both the firſt of thoſe names, ſo renowned in the wars of the Holy-Land; 4 *Edward* the third, and 5 *Edward* the Black Prince, his ſon, *Duo fulmina belli*, as famous in the wars of *France*; 6 *Henry* the fifth, and 7 *John* Duke of *Bedford* his Brother, of equal gallantry with the other. 8 *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*. 9. Sr. *John Faſtolf*, and 10 Sr. *John Hawkwood*, of great eſteem for valour in *France* and *Italy*: not to deſcend to later times. And for Sea Captains, thoſe of moſt note, have been *Hawkins*, *Willoughby*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinſon*, *Drake*, *Frobriſher*, *Cavendiſh* and *Greenvile*; of ſome of which we have ſpoke already, and of the reſt may have an opportunity to ſay more hereafter.

Scholars of moſt renown amongſt us, 1 *Alcuinus*, one of the Founders of the Univerſity of *Paris*. 2 *Beda*, who for his Piety and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of *Venerabilis*. Concerning which the *Legends* tell us, that being blind, his Boy had knaviſhly conducted him to preach to an heap of ſtones; and that when he had ended his Sermon with the *Gloria Patri*, the very ſtones concluded, ſaying

Amen, Amen Venerabilis Beda. But other of the Monkiſh writers do aſſign this reaſon, & both true alike: that at his death ſome unlearned Prieſt intending to honour him with an *Epitaph*, had thus far blundered on a verſe, viz. *Hic ſunt in foſſa* Bedæ ----- *oſſa*: but becauſe the verſe was yet imperfect, he went to bed to conſider of it, leaving a ſpace betwixt the two laſt words thereof; which in the morning he found filled up in a ſtrange Character with the word *Venerabilis*; and ſo he made his Verſe, and *Beda* (pardon this diverſion) obtained that Attribute. 3 *Anſelm*, and 4 *Bradwardin*, Archbiſhops of *Canterbury*, men famous for the times they lived in. 5 *Alexander* of *Hales*, Tutor to *Thomas Aquinas*, and *Bonaventure*. 6 *Thomas* of *Walden*, the profeſſed enemy of *Wiclef*, againſt whom he writ. 7 *John Wiclef* parſon of *Lutterworth*, in the County of *Leiceſter*, who ſo valiantly oppoſed the power and Errors of the Church of *Rome*; though he vented many of his own. Then ſince the time of the *Reformation*, 1 *John Jewel*, Biſhop of *Salisbury*, to whoſe learned and induſtrious labours, in defence of the Religion here by law eſtabliſhed, we are ſtill beholding. 2 Dr. *John Reynolds*, and 3 Mr. *Richard Hooker*, both of *Corpus Chriſti* Colledge in *Oxon*; the firſt, a man of infinite reading, the ſecond of as ſtrong a judgment. 4 Dr. *Whitakers* of *Cambridge*, the *Antagoniſt* of the famous *Bellarmine*. 5 Dr. *Thomas Bilſon*, and 6 Dr. *Lancelot Andrews*, both Biſhops of *Wincheſter*, the Ornaments of their ſeveral times. 7 Biſhop *Montagne* of *Norwich*, a great Philologer and Divine. 8 Dr. *John Whitguift*, and 9 Dr. *William Laud*, Archbiſhops of *Canterbury*. Of which laſt, and his diſcourſe againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuite*, Sir *Edward Dering*, his profeſſed enemy, hath given this Character, that in that Book of his he had *muzled* the Jeſuites, *and ſhould ſtrike the* Papiſts *under the fifth rib, when he was dead and gone: and that being dead, whereſoever his grave ſhould be,* PAULS (whoſe reparation he endeavoured, and had almoſt finiſhed) *would be his perpetual Monument, and his own Book his laſting Epitaph.* And as for thoſe who have ſtood up in maintenance of the Church of *Rome*, thoſe of moſt note were Dr. *Harding*, the Antagoniſt of Biſhop *Jewel*. 2 *Nic. Sanders*, and 3 Dr. *Thomas Slapleton*, to whoſe writings the great Cardinal *Bellarmine* doth ſtand much indebted. 4 *Campian*, and 5 *Parſons*, both *Jeſuites*, 6 and *William Reynolds* a *Seminaray* Prieſt, and the Brother of Dr. *John Reynolds* ſpoken of before. Of which two Brothers) by the way) it is very obſervable, that *William* was at firſt a *Proteſtant* of the Church of *England*, and *John* trained up in *Popery* beyond the Seas. *William* out of an honeſt zeal to reduce his Brother to this Church, made a jonrney to him: where on a conference betwixt them ſo fell it out, that *John* being overcome by his brothers argument returned into *England*, where he became one of the more ſtrict or riged ſort of the *Engliſh* Proteſtants; and *William* being convinced by the reaſons of his Brother *John*, ſtaid beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent *Papiſt*. Of which ſtrange accident Dr. *Alabaſter*, who had made trial of both Religions, and amongſt many notable whimſeys had ſome fine abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the excellency thereof, and the rareneſs of the argument, I ſhall here ſubjoyn.

Bella inter geminos pluſquam Civilia Fratres,
Traxerat ambiguus Religionis apex.
Ille Reformatæ *Fidei pro partibus inſtat*;
Iſte reformandam *denegat eſſe fidem*,
Propoſitis cauſæ rationibus, alter utrinque;
Concurrere pares, & cecidere pares.
Quod fuit in votis, Fratrem *capit alter-uterque*;
Quod fuit in fatis, perdit uterque fidem.
Captivi gemini ſine captivante fuerunt,
Et victor victi tranſfuga caſtra petit.
Quod genus hoc pugnæ eſt, ubi victus gaudet uterque;
Et tamen alter-uter ſe ſuperaſſe dolet?

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great diſadvantage to the *Latine* Original, I have thus tranſlated:

In point of Faith ſome undermined jars,
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civil wars.
One for the Churches *Reformation* ſtood:
The other thought no *Reformation* good.
The points propos'd, they traverſed the field
With equal skill, and both together yield.
As they deſir'd, his Brother each ſubdue's;
Yet ſuch their Fate, that each his Faith did looſe.
Both Captive's, none the priſoners thence to guide;
The *Victor* flying to the vanquiſht ſide.
Both joy'd in being Conquer'd (ſtrange to ſay)
And yet both mourn'd becauſe both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1 *Lindwood* the Canoniſt, 2 *Coſins*, and 3 *Cowel*, eminent in the ſtudies of the *Civil Laws*; 4 *Bracton*, and 5 *Briton* of old times; 6 *Dier*, and 7 *Coke* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the Laws of *England*. 8 *Johannes de Sacro Boſco*, the Author of the Book of the *Sphere*, and 9 *Roger Bacon*, a noted *Mathematician* in the darker times. 10 Sir *Francis Bacon* the learned Viſcount of S. *Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11 Sir *Thomas More*, Lord Chancellor, one of the Reſtorers of Learning to the Iſle of great Britain. 12 Sr. *Henry Savile* of *Eaton*, the reviver of *Chryſoſtom*, 13 Sir *Henry Spelman*, a right learned antiquary, and a religious aſſertor of the Churches rights. 14 *Camden, Clarentieux*, the *Pauſanias* of the *Britiſh* Iſlands. 15 *Matthew Paris*, 16 *Roger Hoveden*, 17 *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, 18 *William* of *Malmesbury*, 19 *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, and 20 *Thomas* of *Walſingham*; all known Hiſtorians. And finally for Poetry, 1 *Gower*, 2 *Lidgate*, a Monk of *Burie*, 3 the famous *Geofry Chawcer*, Brother in Law to *John* of *Gaunt* the great Duke of *Lancaſter*; of which laſt Sir *Philip Sidney* uſed to ſay, that *he marvelled how in thoſe miſtie times he could ſee ſo cleerly, and others in ſo cleer times go ſo blindly after him.* 4 Sir *Philip Sydney* himſelf, of whom and his *Arcadia*, more when we come to *Greece*. 5 The renowned *Spencer*, of whom and his *Fairie Queen* in another place. 6 *Sam. Daniel*, the *Lucan*, 7 with *Michael Draiton* the *Ovid* of the *Engliſh* Nation. 8 *Beaumont*, and 9 *Fletcher*, not inferiour unto *Terence* and *Plautus*; with 10 My friend *Ben. Johnſon*, equal to any of the antients for the exactneſs of his Pen, and the decorum which he kept in the *Dramatick* Poems, never before obſerved on the *Engliſh* Theatre. Others there are as eminent both for Arts and Arms, as thoſe here ſpecified, of whom, as being ſtill alive, I forbear to ſpeak; according to that caution of the Hiſtorian, ſaying, *Vivorum ut magna admiratio, ita* Cenſura *eſt difficilis.*

But from the men to return again unto the Countrey, we find it to be ſubject (according to the ſeveral reſpects of Church and State) to a treble diviſion: *viz.* 1 into 6 *Circuits* deſtinated to the *Itinerary Judges*; Secondly, into 22 *Epiſcopal Dioceſes*; Thirdly, into 40 Shires. The Realm was firſt divided into *Circuits* by King *Henry* the ſecond, who appointed twice in the year, two of the moſt grave and learned Judges of the Land, ſhould in each *Circuit* adminiſter Juſtice in the chief or head Towne of every County. Of theſe Judges one ſitteth on matters *Criminal*, concerning the life and death of Malefactors; the other in actions *Perſonal*, concerning title of Land, Debts, or the like, between party and party. The firſt *Circuit* (for we will begin at the Weſt) comprehendeth the Counties of *Wilts*, *Somerſet*, *Devon*, *Cornwal*, *Dorſet*, and *Southampton*; the ſecond containeth the Counties of *Oxford*, *Berks*, *Gloceſter*, *Munmouth*, *Hereford*, *Worceſter*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*; The third hath in it the Counties of *Surrey*, *Suſſex*, *Kent*, *Eſſex*, and *Hartford*; The fourth conſiſteth of the Shires of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Cambridge*, *Norfolk*, and *Suffolk*; The fifth of the Shires of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Darby*, *Leiceſter*, and *Warwick*; And the ſixth and laſt, of the Shires of *York*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmerland*, and *Lancaſter*. So that in theſe ſix *Circuits* are numbred 38 Shires. The two remaining are *Middleſex*, and *Cheſhire*: whereof the firſt is exempted, becauſe of its vicinity to *London*; and the ſecond as being a *County Palatine*, and having peculiar Judges and Counſellours to it ſelf.

The ſecond diviſion, but more antient far in point of time, is that of *Dioceſes*, 22 in all, proportioned according to the number of *Epiſcopal* Sees: each Dioceſe having in it one or more *Arch-Deaconries*, for diſpatch of *Eccleſiaſtical* buſines; and every *Arch-Deaconrie* ſubdivided into *Rural Deanaries*, fewer or more, according to the bigneſs and extent thereof. Of theſe there are but four in the Province of *York*, that is to ſay, the Dioceſes of *York*, *Cheſter*, *Durham*, and *Carlile*: the other 18 (together with the 4 of *Wales*) being reckoned into that of *Canterbury*. In reſpect of which great authority and juriſdiction, the Archbiſhops of *Canterbury* had antiently the titles of *Primates* and *Metropolitans* of all *England*; for ſome ages before the Reformation, uſed to take place in all General Councils, at the Popes right foot. Which cuſtom took beginning at the Council of *Laterane*, when *Urban* the ſecond called *Anſelm* the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* from amongſt the other Prelats then aſſembled, and placed him at his right foot, ſaying, *Includamus hunc in Orbe noſtro tanquam alterius Orbis Papam.* This hapned *An.* 1099. They were antiently alſo *Legati nati*; which honourable title was firſt given to Archbiſhop *Theobald*, by *Innocent* the ſecond, and continued unto his ſucceſſor. And both to honour their calling in the courſe of their Government, and to have the benefit of their Counſel being men of learning; both the Archbiſhops and the Biſhops, were antiently priviledged to have their place and ſuffrage in the High Court of Parliament ever ſince any Parliaments were firſt held in *England*) as Peers of the Realm; and that too in a double reſpect: firſt in relation had to their ſacred Office, and ſecondly to thoſe temporal eſtates and Baronies, which they held of the King. Yet did they not enjoy in the times of their greateſt power and flouriſh, all the Prerogatives and Priviledges of the temporal Barons: as neither being tryed by their *Peers* in Criminal cauſes, but left to an Ordinary *Jury*; nor ſuffered in examinations to make a *Proteſtation* upon their honour, to the truth of a fact, but put unto their Oaths like others of the lower Clergy. As for their *Eccleſiaſtical* Courts, it was antiently Ordered alſo, that beſides ſuch as appertained to the Archbiſhops themſelves; beſides thoſe holden by the *Chancellours* and *Archdeacons* of every Biſhop, in their ſeveral *Dioceſes*; and ſome in many private Pariſhes which they called *Peculiars*; and finally beſides the Courts of *Viſitation*, held every two years by the Archdeacons or their Officials, and every third year by the Biſhop himſelf in perſon, or his lawful Deputy: there ſhould be alſo *Synods* or *Convocations*, which are the Parliament of the Clergy, aſſembled primarily for the Reforming of the Church in *Doctrine* and *Diſcipline*; and ſecondarily for granting Tenths and Subſidies to the King: Which Synods whether they be National or Provincial only, do naturally conſiſt of all the Right Reverend Fathers, the Archbiſhops, Biſhops, the Deans, Archdeacons, and one Prebend out of each Cathedral, and a certain number of the Clergy, two for every Dioceſe) elected by the reſt to ſerve for them in that great Aſſembly; the Clergy not being bound antiently by any Act, to which they had not given conſent by thoſe their *Proxies*: Of which ſo called and met together, the Biſhops ſitting by themſelves made the Upper Houſe, the Deans, Arch-deacons, and the reſt, do conſtitute the Lower Houſe of Convocation.

The third and laſt Diviſion, though the ſecond in courſe of time, is that of *Shires* made by King *Alfride*, *Afride*, both for the eaſier Adminiſtration of juſtice; and to prevent ſuch Outrages and Robberies, as (after the example of the *Danes*) the natural Inhabitants of the Realm began in all places to commit. For every one of theſe *Shires* or Counties, he appointed an *High-Sheriff* and divers *Officers*, to ſee into the behaviour of private men, and to puniſh ſuch as were *delinquents*: and in times of war either already begun, or intended, he inſtituted a *Prefect* or *Lieutenant*; to whom he gave authority to ſee their muſters, their proviſion of arms; and if occaſion ſerved, to puniſh ſuch as rebelled or mutinied. This wiſe King ordained alſo that his Subjects ſhould be divided into tens or *tithings*, every of which ſeverally ſhould give bond for the good abearing of each other; and he who was of that diſſolute behaviour, that he could not be admitted to theſe *tithings*, was forthwith conveyed to the houſe of correction. By this courſe every man was not careful only of his own actions, but had an eye to all the nine for whom he ſtood bound; as the nine had over him: inſomuch that a poor girl might travel ſafely with a bag of gold in her hand, and none durſt meddle with her. The antienteſt of theſe ten men were called κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Tithingman*. Ten of the nigheſt and neighbouring *tithing*, made the leſſer Diviſion which we call *hundreds*: which name cannot be derived from the like number of villages, for none of our *hundreds* are ſo large: and one of them there is in *Berk-ſhire*, which containeth five hamlets only. We have then a diviſion of the Realm into 40 Shires; of the Shires into divers *hundreds*; and of the *hundreds* into ten *tithings*. And this diviſion made by *Afride* ſtill remains in force: as alſo doth the *High-Sheriff*, and the reſt of the ſubordinate Officers: the office of the *High-Sheriff* conſiſting eſpecially at this time, in executing Arreſts, aſſiſting the *Itinerary Judges*, gathering the Kings Fines and Amerciaments, and raiſing the *Poſſe Comitatus*, if occaſion be. But for the *Civil* part of government in the ſeveral Counties, it is moſt in the hands of ſuch as we call *Juſtices of the Peace*, authoriſed by Commiſſion under the great Seal of *England*: appointed firſt by that prudent Prince King *Edward* the firſt, by the name of *Cuſtodes Pacis*, Guardians of the Peace, & firſt called *Juſtices of the Peace* in the 36 of K. *Edward* the 3d, *Cap.* 11. A form of Government ſo much conducing to the proſperity of the Country, and the ſecurity of the people; that King *James*, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*, eſtabliſhed it by Law in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. Then for the Courts, which are ſtill kept in every Shire, they are either the *County Court* holden every month, wherein the *Sheriff* or his ſufficient *Deputy* commonly preſideth; or the *Aſſizes* and Court of *Goal-delivery* held twice a year by the *Judges Itinerant*, aſſiſted by the *Juſtices of the Peace*, and others in Commiſſion with them. There are alſo *Officers* in every *hundred* choſen out of the *Yeomanrie*, whom we call the *Conſtables* of the *hundred*: who receiving *Precepts* or Warrants of the *Sheriff*, or *Juſtices*, diſpatcheth them to the *Tithingman* or Petit Conſtable of each town and village, in their ſeveral Diviſions. And in each *hundred*, a Court kept once in three Weeks, by the Steward of the *hundred*, or his Deputy, capable of Pleas or Actions under the value of 40 *s.* though in ſome of theſe Courts alſo (as in that of *Slaughter-hundred* in *Gloceſterſhire*) the value of the Action, by ſome ſpecial Charter, be left unlimited. The like Courts alſo holden in ſome antient Burroughs. And beſides theſe in every Village are two ſeveral Courts, and theſe two holden twice a year, if occaſion be, held by the Steward of the Manour: in the one of which called the *Court Leet*, there is Enquiry made into Treaſons, Felonies, Murders, and other Caſes, falling between the King and the Subject; and in the other, which they call by the name of *Court Baron*, ſuch only as concern the Lord and Tenants, and theſe laſt for the moſt part ſummoned at the will of the Lord: So *Comines* had (we ſee) good reaſon for this Affirmation, that *of all the Signieuries in the World that ever he knew, the Realm of* England *was the Countrey in which the* Common-wealth *was beſt governed.*

To return again unto the Shires, ſome of them take their names from the old Inhabitants, as *Cumberland* from the *Cimbri* or antient *Britains*; *Eſſex*, and *Suſſex*, from the Eaſt and South *Saxons*; ſome from the ſituation of them, as *Northumberland*, *Norfolk*, *Southfolk*, *Devonſhire*; this laſt ſo called from *Devinam*, a *Welch* or *Britiſh* word, ſignifying Low Vallies, of which it very much conſiſteth: Some from the form or figure of them, as *Cornwall*, from the ſemblance which it hath to an horn; and *Kent* (in Latin, *Cantium*) becauſe it lieth in a *Canton* or Corner of the Iſland: Some from ſome Accidents therein, as *Berkſhire* or *Berocſhire* from the abundance of *Boxe*, which the *Saxons* call by the name of *Beroc*: the moſt part of the principal Town of all the Country, as *Gloceſter*, *Oxford*, and the like. Of theſe Shires the biggeſt beyond all compare, is the County of *York*, out of which 70000 men may be raiſed for preſent ſervice, if need ſo require. And in them all are comprehended 8709 Pariſhes (beſides thoſe of *Wales*) not reckoning in ſuch Chappels as we call *Chappels of Eaſe*, in greatneſs not inferiour to many Pariſhes; 22 Cities, and 585 Market Towns which are no Cities; and in the Towns and Villages to the number of 145 Caſtles, or ruines of Caſtles; few of them places of importance, and ſuch as are belonging generally to the Kings, who ſuffer not any of their Subjects to neſt themſelves in Strong Holds and Caſtles,

Cities of Moſt obſervation in it, 1 *London*, ſeated on the *Thames*, by which divided into two parts, conjoined together by a ſtately and magnificent Bridge, ſpoken of before. The River capable in this place of the greateſt ſhips, by means whereof it hath been reckoned a long time for one of the moſt famous Mart Towns in Chriſtendom: and not long ſince, had ſo much got precedency of all the reſt, that the greateſt part of the wealth of *Europe* was driven up that River. A City of great note in the time of the *Roman* conqueſt; to whom it was firſt known by the name of *Londinum*: a Town at that time of great trade and riches; and by them honoured with the title of *Auguſta*. Increaſed of late very much in buildings; contiguous to ſome Towns and Villages, from which in former times disjoined by ſome diſtant *intervals*. So that the Circuit may contain 8 miles at leaſt: in which ſpace are 122 Pariſh Churches; the Palace of the King, the houſes of the Nobility, Colledges for the ſtudy of the Laws, I mean not the *Civil Law*, which is *Jus Gentium*, but (as we call it) the *Common Law*, appropriate only to this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing welnigh 600000 people, which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare *London* with *Paris* thus: *London* is the richer, the more populous, and more antient; *Paris* the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I do not think that *London* is the more populous; ſo neither can I grant that *Paris* is the greater City, except we meaſure them by the Walls. For taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that paſſeth in Accompt by the name of *London*: I cannot but conceive, that if *London* were caſt into the ſame orbicular figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of *Paris*. For uniformity of building, *Paris* indeed doth go beyond it; but may in that be equalled alſo in ſome tract of time, if the deſign begun in King *James* his reign, tending to the advancement of ſuch unformity, be not interrupted. For other things, certain it is that *London* is the antienter City, as being an Archbiſhops See in the time of the *Britains*, when the name of *Paris* was ſcarce heard of; a Biſhops See at the firſt converſion of the *Saxons*: increaſed ſo much in wealth and honour from one Age to another, that it is grown at laſt too big for the Kingdom; which whether it may be profitable for the State, or not, may be made a queſtion. Great Towns in the body of a State, are like the *Spleen* or *Melt* in the body natural; the monſtrous growth of which impoveriſheth all the reſt of the Members, by drawing to it all the *animal* and *vital* ſpirits, which ſhould give nouriſhment unto them; And in the end cracked or ſurcharged by its own fulneſs, not only ſends unwholſom fumes and *vapours* unto the *head*, and heavy *pangs* unto the *heart*, but draws a *conſumption* on it ſelf. And certainly the over-growth of great Cities is of dangerous conſequence, not only in regard of famin, ſuch multitudes of mouthes not being eaſie to be fed: but in reſpect of the irreparable danger of *Inſurrections*, if once thoſe multitudes, ſenſible of their own ſtrength, oppreſſed with want, or otherwiſe diſtempered with faction or diſcontent, ſhould gather to an head, and break out into action. Yet thus much may be ſaid to the honour of *London*, though grown by much too big now for the kingdom, that it is generally ſo well governed, and in ſo good peace, that thoſe Murders, Robberies, and outrages ſo frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas, are here ſeldom heard of. 2. *York*, in the Weſt Riding of that Countrey, the ſecond City of *England*, as the old verſe hath it.

Londinum *caput eſt & Regni urbs prima Britanni,*
Eboracum *à primâ jure ſecunda venit.*

That is to ſay,

In *England*, *London* is the chiefeſt Town;
The ſecond place *York* claimeth as its own.

And ſo it may, being indeed the ſecond City of the Kingdom, both for fame and greatneſs. A pleaſant, large, and ſtately City, well fortified and beautifully adorned, as well with private as publick Edifices; and rich, and populous withal. Seated upon the River *Ouſe*, or *Ure*, which divides it in twain; both parts being joyned together with a fair ſtone Bridge, conſiſting of high and mighty Arches. A City of great eſtimation in the time of the *Romans*, the *Metropolis* of the whole Province or *Dioceſe* of *Britain*; remarkable for the death and burial of the Emperour *Severus*, and the birth of *Conſtantine* the *Great*: by conſequence the Seat of the Primate of the *Britiſh* Church, as long as *Chriſtianity* did remain amongſt them. Nor ſtooped it lower when the *Saxons* had received the *Faith*: and notwithſtanding thoſe mutations which befel this Kingdom, under the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, it ſtill preſerved its antient luſtre; and encreaſed it too. Adorned with a ſtately and magnificent *Cathedral*, inferiour to few in *Europe*; and with a Palace of the Kings, (called the Manour-houſe) the dwelling in theſe later daies, of the Lord *Preſident* of the Court or Councel here eſtabliſhed by King *Henry* the 8th, for the benefit of his Northern Subjects, after the manner of the *French Parliaments*, or *Preſedial Seiges*. 3. *Birſtol*, the third in rank of the Cities of *England*, ſituate on the meeting of the *Frome* and *Avon*, not far from the influx of the *Severn* into the *Ocean*: in that regard commodiouſly ſeated for trade and traffick; the ſhips with full ſail coming into the City, and the Citizens with as full purſes trading into moſt parts of the World, with good Faith and Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being *Sewers* made under ground, for the conveyance of all filth and naſtineſs, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number of 18 or 20, reckoning in the Cathedral, and that of *Ratcliff*. The *Cathedral* firſt built by *Rob. Fitz-Harding*, Son to a King of *Denmark*, once a *Burger* here, and by him ſtored with Canons *Regular*, *Anno* 1248. but made a Biſhops See by King *Henry* the 8th, *An.* 1541. The principal building next the Church, an antient Caſtle, a piece of ſuch ſtrength, that *Maud* the Empreſs having took King *Steven* Priſoner, thought it the ſafeſt place to ſecure him in. 4. *Norwich*, the fourth City of the firſt rank, of which more hereafter. 5. *Oxford*, the firſt of the ſecond rank of *Engliſh* Cities ſeated upon the *Ouſe* or *Iſis*: but whether ſo called as *Vadum Iſidos*, Ouſeford, or the *Ford* of *Ouſe*, or *Vada boum* (as the *Greeks* had their *Boſphori* in former times) I determine not. An antient Town, and antiently made a ſeat of Learning, coeval unto that of *Paris*, if not before it; the Univerſity hereof being reſtored rather than firſt founded by King *Alured*, *An.* 806. after it had been over-born a while by the *Daniſh* Furies; but hereof, as an Univerſity, more anon. This only now, that for the ſtatelineſs of the Schools and publick Library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colledges, all built of fair and poliſhed ſtone; the liberal endowment of thoſe houſes, and notable encouragements of Induſtry and Learning in the ſalarie of the Profeſſors in moſt Arts and Sciences, it is not to be paralleld in the *Chriſtian* World. The City of it ſelf well built, and as pleaſantly ſeated, formed in the Figure of a Croſs, two long ſtreets thwarting one another, each of them near a mile in length;

containing in that compaſs 13 Pariſh Churches, and a See Epiſcopal founded here by King *Henry* the 8th, *An.* 1541. The honourary Title of twenty of the noble Family of the *Veres*, now Earls of *Oxon.* 6. *Salisbury*, firſt ſeated on the Hill, where now ſtands *old Salisbury*, the *Sorbiodunum* of the Antients. But the Cathedral being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very ſuddenly into great Renown; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Avon*, (a name common to many *Engliſh* Rivers) which watereth every ſtreet thereof; and for the populouſneſs of the place, plenty of Proviſions, number of Churches, a ſpacious Marker-place, and a fair Town-hall, eſteemed the ſecond City of all the Weſt. 7. *Gloceſter*, by *Antonine* called *Glevum*, by the *Britains Caer Glowy*, whence the preſent name; the *Saxons* adding *Ceſter*, as in other places. A fine neat City, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, with a large Key or Wharf on the banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandize and trade of the place: well built, conſiſting of fair large Streets, beautified with a magnificent *Cathedral*; and ſituate in ſo rich a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the uſe of man, except only Wine, which life or luxury may require. 8. *Cheſter*, upon the River *Dee*, built in the manner of a quadrate, incloſed with a wall, which takes up more than two miles in compaſs; containing in that compaſs 12 Pariſh Churches, and an old *Cathedral* dedicated antiently to S. *Wereburg*, daughter of *Wolfere* King of the *Mercians*, and Viſitreſs of all the Monaſteries of *England.* But made a Biſhops See by King *Henry* the 8th. The buildings generally fair, the Streets wide and open, with Galleries before every door, under which a man may walk dry from one end to the other. The reſt of chief note ſhall be ſpecified on another occaſion, with this advertiſement, that the ordinary Cities of *England* are not to be compared with thoſe of *France*, and *Italy*: Firſt becauſe the Nobles and Gentry of thoſe Countries live for the moſt part in the Cities, ours in Country-Villages; And ſecondly, becauſe the *Londoners* ſo ingroſs all trading, that they draw thither all the wealth and treaſure of the Kingdom. By means whereof: that every day increaſeth in wealth and beauty; the reſt (except *Briſtol* only) do decay as ſenſibly: that City being like the *Spleen* in the body natural, the monſtrous growth whereof ſtarveth all the reſt of the Members. *Liene excreſcente*, *reliquum corpus contabeſcit*, as the *Doctors* have it.

There are in *England* but two *Univerſities*, which may equal ſix, nay ten of all other Countries, (ſo that *Paris* be not in the number) moſt of them being no better than our Colledges of *Weſtminſter*, *Eaton*, or *Wincheſter*; and none ſo liberally endowed, as ſome one of theſe in the Univerſities. Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, ſome of them called only by the name of *Hals*, but theſe endowed with Lands and Fellowſhips as the other are. In *Oxford* there are 18 Colledges endowed with Lands, beſides ſix *Hals*, where Students live at their own charges: in both of them, Profeſſors of the Arts and Sciences, as alſo of Divinity, Law, Phyſick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries; and in each to the number of 3000 Students, ſo regular in their lives and converſations, as are not to be found in the world beſides. The fairer and more antient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honoured with the Title of *Generale ſtudium.* For that the Univerſity of *Cambridge*, (though giving upper hand to her ſiſter of *Oxford*, ſhe may take place of all the Univerſities in the World beſides) is not of ſo long ſtanding, as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the teſtimony of *Robertus de Remington*, cited by Maſter *Camden*, viz. *Regnante* Edwardo *primo*, (It ſhould rather be read *ſecundo*) *de ſtudio* Grantbridge *facta eſt Academia*, *ſicut Oxonium*: where the word *ſicut* doth not import an identity of the time; but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the pattern. We ſee this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope *John* the 21, the contemporary of our *Edward* 2d, as I find in the work of that great ſearcher of *Academical* Antiquities, Mr. *Brian Twine.* *Apoſtolica authoritate ſtatuimus* (ſaith the *Bull*) *quod Collegium magiſtrorum & Scholarium ejuſdem ſtudii* (ſpeaking of *Cambridge*) *Univerſitas ſit cenſenda*, &c. But what need more then the Reſolution of the *Commons* of the firſt Parliament holden uuder King *James.* For when the Clerks of that houſe had put the name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*; they taking diſdainfully that *Hyſteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Univerſities to be ſearched, and after ſearch made gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed, the Univerſity of *Cambridge* as it was of a much later Foundation, ſo was it long before it grew into eſteem: inſomuch that when *William* of *Wainflete* Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, and Founder of *Magdalen* Colledge in *Oxon* (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perſwaded K. *Henry* the ſixth to erect a Colledge in *Oxford*, as ſome of the Kings his Predeceſſors had done before him: *immo potius* Cantabrigiæ (replyed the King) *Ut duas ſi fieri poſſit in Anglia Academias habeam.* No ſaid the King, in *Cambridge* rather, that ſo, if poſſible, I may have two *Univerſities* in my Realm of *England.*

As for the Story of this Country, that it was firſt peopled out of *Gaul* is affirmed by *Cæſar*, and proved by many ſtrong and concluding Arguments; as their Religion, Manners, Languages, Cuſtoms, and the neerneſs of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are ſaid to have reigned here ſucceſſively before the coming of the *Romans*; Certain it is, that *Cæſar* found the Country cantoned into many Kingdoms (four in *Kent* alone) and the people to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had was locked up in the breaſts of the *Druides*, who committed nothing unto writing, and by that means kept the people in continual ignorance: communicating what they knew to none but thoſe of their own order, and therein being ſought to by the *Druides* or Prieſts of *Gaul*; who came over into this Iſland to them, and did from them receive the knowledge of their ſacred Myſteries. Being conquered or diſcovered rather by *Julius Cæſar*, it was not ſo much as looked after by the two next Emperours: *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of wiſdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean. *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durſt not follow it. But *Claudius*, his Succeſſor, undertook the enterpriſe; ſollicited thereunto by *Bericus* a noble *Briton*, who for ſedition and ſome practices againſt the publick, was expelled the Countrey. Hereupon *Aulus Plantius* is ſent over by ſome *Roman* Forces; by whom and *P. Oſtorius*

Scapula, his Succeſſor, *Togodumnus* and *Caractacus*, two Kings of the *Britans*, were ſeverally overcome in battel, a *Roman Colony* planted at *Camalodunum*, and the Southern parts thereof reduced to the form of a *Province*. After this time by little and little the whole was conquered, as far as to the *Fryths* of *Dunbarten* and *Edenburgh*: *Agricola* in the time of *Domitian*, having the happineſs, and good fortune: to go beyond the furtheſt of his Predeceſſors; and ſo much moderation not to venter further, where there was nothing to be got but blows, cold, and hunger.

At the firſt entrance of the *Romans*, the Iſland was divided into ſeveral Nations, each governed by its own Kings and particular Princes, different in their ends and councels, and ſo more eaſily ſubdued by united Forces. The principal of which (for it is needleſs to make mention of inferiour *Clans*) were 1 the *Danmonii*, containing *Devonſhire*, and *Cornwall*; whoſe chief Cities were *Iſca*, now *Exeter*, and *Volca* near the Town of *Falmouth* in *Cornwall*. 2 The *Durotriges*, inhabiting only in the County of *Dorſet*, whoſe chief City was *Danium* or *Durnovaria*, which we now call *Dorceſter*. 3 The *Belgæ*, planted in the Counties of *Somerſet*, *Southampton*, and *Wilts*, whoſe chief Cities were *Aquæ calidæ*, now *Bath*; *Venta Belgarum*, now *Wincheſter*; and *Sorbiodunum*, the ſeat of *old Salisbury*. 4 The *Atrebatii*, confined within *Barkshire* only, the chief City of whom was *Guallena*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5 The *Regni*, poſſeſſed of *Suſſex* and *Surrey*, whoſe chief Cities were *Vindelis*, now *Winchelſey*, and *Neomagus*; ſituate ſome ten miles from *London*. 6 The *Kantiani*, or the *Kentiſh*, having *Durovernum*, now *Canterbury*, *Dubris*, now *Dover*, and *Rhutupia*, now called *Richborough*, for their principal Cities. 7 The *Trinobantes* of *Middleſex*, and *Eſſex*, where *London*, called afterwards *Auguſta Trinobantum*; and *Camalodunum* the firſt *Roman* Colony, now called *Maldon*, the Seat Royal of *Cunobelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes* in the time of the *Romans*. 8 The *Catieuchlani*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford* and *Hartford*, whoſe Towns of moſt importance were *Magivintum*, now called *Dunſtable*; and *Verulamium*, (near S. *Albans*) the ſtrongeſt hold the *Britains* had in their wars with *Cæſar*. 9 The *Iceni*, lying in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*; their principal Cities being *Villa Faſtini*, now S. *Edmundsbury*, *Sito magus*, now *Thetford*, *Durolis*, now *Godmancheſter*; and *Camboritum*, or *Cambridge*. 10 *Coritani*, who took up the whole Counties of *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *Northampton*, and *Darby*; principal Towns of which were *Lindum*, now *Lincoln*, *Rhugo*, where now is *Leiceſter*, *Gunſennæ* not far from *Stamford*, now called *Bridge-Caſterton*; *Agelocis*, now *Littleburrough*, a ſmall Village near *Newark* upon *Trent*; *Tripontium*, now *Torceſter*, not far from *Northampton*. 11 The *Brigantes*, the greateſt Nation of the Iſland, filling all *Yorkshire*, the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmerland*, and the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*, in a word, all the North of *England*, (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the 12 *Oltadini*, whoſe chief Town was *Bremenium*, thought now to be *Ribcheſter* in *Ruddisdale*.) Principal places of which large and potent Nation, were *Iſaurium*, now *Aldborrow* in the North Riding; *Eboracum*, or *York*, in the Weſt Riding; and *Petuaria* thought to be *Beverly*, in the Eaſt Riding of *Yorkshire*; *Vinovium*, where now is *Bincheſter*, in the Biſhoprick, *Epiacum*, now *Pap-Caſtle* in *Cumberland*; *Calatum*, now *Wheallop-Caſtle* in *Weſtmerland*; and *Rigodunum*; now *Rible-Cheſter* in the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*. 13 The *Cornavii*, ſeated in the countries of *Cheſter*, *Salop*, *Worceſter*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whoſe principal Towns were, *Deuvania*, or *Legio viceſima Victrix*, now *Weſt-cheſter*; *Uriconium*, now *Wroxeter*, an ignoble village; *Pennocrucium*, now *Penkridge*, not far from *Stafford*; *Brannogenium*, now *Worceſter*; *Manduesſedum*, now *Mancheſter*, on the River *Anker*. 14 And laſt of all, the *Dobuni* of *Oxford* & *Gloceſter-ſhire*; principal places of the which were, *Dorcinia*, now *Dorcheſter*, 7 miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinium*, or *Cyrenceſter*, near the head of the *Thames*. Such names as are comprehended under the name of *Wales*, and *Scotland*, ſhall be remembred when we come to ſpeak of thoſe Countries.

Theſe, and the reſt of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the *Romans* did proceed) being once ſubdued; *Britain* became a member of the *Roman* Empire; yet ſo that many of the *Tribes* had their own Kings, and were ſuffered to govern by their own Laws: it being a known cuſtom amongſt the *Romans*, as we find in *Tacitus*, *habere ſervitutis inſtrumenta & Reges*, to permit Kings ſometimes in the conquered countries, making them inſtrumental to the peoples bondage. And it is ſaid of *Lucius Verus* the *Roman* Emperour, that having put an end to the *Parthian* war, *Regna* Regibus, *Provincias* Comitibus *ſuis regendas dediſſe*: he gave thoſe Kingdoms he had conquered to be ruled by Kings; the Provinces to be governed by Provincial Earls. Kings of which kind were *Codigunus* and *Pratuſagus*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; *Lucius*, before mentioned, the firſt Chriſtian King, and *Coilus* the Father of *Helena*, Mother of *Conſtantine* the great. But as afterward in the *Heptarchie* of the *Saxons*, that King who over-ruled the reſt, and was of moſt power and eſtimation, was called the Monarch of the *Engliſh*: ſo probable enough it is, that he amongſt the *Britiſh* Kings, who was in moſt credit with the *Romans*, or of moſt power amongſt his neighbours, might be permitted to aſſume the Title of the King of *Britain*. The Catalogue of whom from *Caſſibelane* to *Conſtantine*, I have here ſubjoyned, according to the tenor of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory.

The Kings of *Britain* after the coming in of the *Romans*.

A. Ch.		
	1	*Caſſibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the *Britains* in the war againſt *Julius Cæſar*.
	2	*Theomantius*.
	3	*Cymbeline*.
	4	*Guiderius*.
45	5	*Arviragus*, by *Hector Boetius* called *Pratuſagus*, in whoſe time *Britain* was ſubdued by *Aulus Plantius*, ſent hither from the Emperour *Claudius*.
73	6	*Marius*.

125

125 7 *Coilus*, the ſuppoſed Founder of *Colcheſter*.
180 8 *LUCIUS*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Britain*, and of all the World; who dying without iſſue, left the *Roman* Emperour his Heir.
207 9 *Severus*, Emperour of *Rome*, and King of *Britain*.
211 10 *Baſſianus Caracalla*, Son of *Severus*, Emperour of *Rome* after his Father; who loſt the Kingdom of *Britain* to
218 11 *Carauſius*, a Native of the Iſland, who rebelling againſt *Caracalla*, obtained the Kingdom for himſelf.
225 12 *Alectus*.
232 13 *Aſclepiodorus*.
260 14 *Coilus* II. the Father of *Helena*.
289 15 *Conſtantius*, Emperour of *Rome*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, ſucceeded on the death of *Coilus* the ſecond.
16 *Conſtantine* the great, the Son of *Helena* and *Conſtantius*, who added his Eſtates in *Britan* to the *Roman* Monarchy.

But to proceed, *Britain* being thus made a Member of the *Roman* Empire, it was at firſt divided into three Provinces only, that is to ſay, *Britannia prima*, (ſo called becauſe firſt ſubdued) containing all the Countries on the South ſide of the *Thames*, and thoſe inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Iceni*, and *Cattieuchlani*, whoſe *Metropolis* or chief City was *London*. 2 *Britannia Secunda*, compriſing all the Nations on the further ſide of the *Severn*, whoſe chief City was *Caer Leon* upon *Usk*, in the County of *Munmouth*; and 3 *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, including all the reſt to the Northern border, whereof the *Metropolis* was *York*: each Province having ſeveral Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Platform of the Civil State, there were appointed for the Government hereof eight and twenty Biſhops, reſiding in thoſe ſeveral Cities: three of the which reſiding in the principal Cities, were honored with the Title of *Metropolitans*, and a ſuperiority over all the Biſhops of their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces. And in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of *Conſtantine*, who in his new molding of the Empire, altered the bounds, and enlarged the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, containing all the Country from the *Frith* of *Solway*, and the *Picts wall* on the South, to the *Friths* of *Edenburg* and *Dunbritton* North; and *Flavia Cæſarienſis*, comprehending all betwen *Thames* and *Humber*, the reſt betwixt the *Humber*, and the bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old name of *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, though now made leſs than any of the other four. The number of the Provinces being thus enlarged, he made the whole a full & complete *Dioceſe* of the *Roman* Empire, (whereas *Spain* had *Tingitana* added to it, as before was ſhewn (ſubordinate, as *Spain* was alſo, to the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, and governed by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant General. By which diviſion or rather ſubdiviſion of the *Roman* Provinces, there was no other alteration made in the *Eccleſiaſtical* government, but that of the *Britiſh* Church became more abſolute and independent than it was before; and had a *Primate* of its own (as each *Dioceſe* had) reſiding in the ſame City with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant General (which was then at *York*) of as great power and juriſdiction in the Iſle of *Britain*, as any Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*, in their ſeveral *Patriarchates*. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being ordered by a Canon of the council of *Chalcedon*, that their number ſhould not be augmented by any alteration made of the *Roman* Provinces. As for the Forces which the *Romans* kept here in continual pay, as well to keep their Coaſts and Frontieres againſt the Enemy, as for retaining of the Natives in their due obedience; they came in all (if *Panchirol* be not miſtaken in his reckoning) to 23000 Foot, ond 2000 Horſe: three Legions keeping here their conſtant and continual Reſidence, that is to ſay, the ſixth Legion, ſurnamed *Victrix*, at *York*; the 20th Legion ſurnamed alſo *Victrix*, at *Weſt-Cheſter*; and the ſecond Legion ſometimes at *Iſca Danmoniorum* which we now call *Exeter*, ſometimes at *Iſca Silurum*, which is now *Caer-Leon* upon *Vsk*. Which *Legions* with their *Aides* and *Cohorts*, may well make up the number ſpoken of before. Of ſo high eſtimation was this Iſland in the State of *Rome*.

Yet could not all theſe Forces ſo preſerve the Country from forein enemies, but that in the declining of the *Roman* Empire, the *Saxons* made great ſpoils on the coaſts thereof; as did the *Scots* and *Picts* on the Northern borders: againſt all which the *Romans* held out well enough; and made good their ground; till the recalling of the *Legions* out of *Britain* for defence of *Italy* it ſelf, then waſted and deſtroyed by the barbarous Nations. Which hapned in or about the year of Chriſt, 407, and ſome 470 years from the firſt invaſion; *Honorius* being at that time the *Roman* Emperor, and *Victorinus* the laſt Governor for the Empire, in the Iſle of *Britain*. For though the noble *Ætius*, on the petition and complaint of the ſlaughtered people, unmercifully butchered by the *Scots* and *Picts*, ſent ſome ſmall Forces to aſſiſt them againſt thoſe enemies: yet were they preſently called back for defence of *Gaul*, againſt the *Hunnes* breaking in upon it. And then the wretched *Britains* hopeleſſe of all help from *Rome*, and being unable, by their own ſtrength to repel the enemy, by reaſon of their long eaſe and diſuſe of Arms; applyed themſelves to *Aldroenus*, King of *Armorica* in *France*, (called *Little Britain*) a Prince extracted from the ſame ſtock, for relief and ſuccour. Whoſe Brother *Conſtantine* (according to the *Britiſh* ſtory) paſſing over with a competent Army; and having valiantly repulſed the barbarous people, was crowned King of *Britain*: the firſt of a new race of Kings, which ſwayed the Scepter, with much trouble and continual conflicts, either againſt the *Scots* or *Saxons*, till they were finally ſubdued and ſhut up in *Wales*. Thoſe of moſt obſervation in the courſe of the ſtory, were, 1 *Conſtantine* the firſt King and the reſtorer of the Country to peace and quiet, traiterouſlay murdered by a *Pict*. 2. *Vortiger*, E. of the *Gevilles*, (now *Cornwal*) Protector of *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine*; taken out of a Monaſtery; after

Saxons. after whoſe death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himſelf; but being unable to defend it againſt the enemy, and make his title alſo good againſt the other children of *Conſtantine*, firſt called in the *Saxons*. 3 *Vortimer*, eldeſt Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the *Saxons* in many battels; but in the midſt of his Succeſſes was poyſoned by *Rowena*, a *Saxon* Lady, ſecond Wife of *Vorgiter*. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkiſh* writers, and other *Legendaries*, report ſo many idle and impoſſible actions. Doubtleſſe he was a Prince of moſt perfect vertue, a great preſerver of his Country from approaching ruine, and worthy the pen of an able *Panegeriſt*; by whom his brave atchievements might have come entire unto us, without the intermixture of thoſe feats of *Chivalry*, affabulated to him and his Knights of the *Round-table*. For by the overſtraining of ſome *Monkiſh* Writers, *Geofry* of *Monmouth* and the reſt, they have given too juſt occaſion to poſterity to ſuſpect that vertue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the ſtory, as admiration of the perſons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur* and his Nobles only; *Charlemagne* and the *Twelve Piers* of *France*, men of great vertue and renown, ſuffering as deeply in the ſame kind, by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the cuſtom of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the twelve days following, with ſuch paſtimes and ſports, as are (or have been uſed of late) by the *Lords of Miſrule* in ſome Gentle mens houſes: an Inſtitution which the *Scotiſh* Writers of thoſe times much blame, perhaps not unjuſtly; it being a time more fit for our devotions than ſuch rude diſports. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying, left the Crown to 5 *Conſtantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwal*, his neereſt kinſman, ſlain by *Aurelius Conanus*, his own Nephew, who ſucceeded after him: which fraction did ſo weaken the diſtreſſed *Britans*, that they were forced to withdraw themſelves beyond the *Severn*; as 6 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joynt forces of the *Saxons*, to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn*, for the ſafer, but more fruitleſs Mountains. Of the reſt, till *Cadwallader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their names only; which are thus ranked in the ſecond race of

The Kings of *Britain* after the withdrawing of the *Romans*.

A. Ch.			
433	1 *Conſtantine*. 10.	542	9 *Conſtantine* II. 4.
443	2 *Conſtantius*. 3.	546	10 *Aurel. Conarus*. 30.
446	3 *Vortiger*, 18.	576	11 *Vortipor*. 4.
464	4 *Vortimer*, his Son. 7.	580	12 *Malgo*. 6.
471	5 *Vortiger* (again) 10.	586	13 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*. 27.
481	6 *Aurelius Ambroſius*. 19.	613	14 *Cadwan*. 22.
500	7 *Uter Pendragon*. 6.	635	15 *Cadwallan*. 43.
506	8 *Arthur*. 26.	687	16 *Cadwallader*, the laſt King of the *Britans*,

who on a ſuperſtitious zeal travelled in a pilgrimage to *Rome*, there to receive the habit of a *Religious* Order from the hands of Pope *Sergius*, where he dyed not long after, *Anno* 689. After whoſe death, his Succeſſors were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but Kings or Princes of *Wales*. And there we ſhall be ſure to find them.

And ſo the *Britains* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongſt the *Germans*, but greater by the aggregation of many people, under their name and ſervice, than in themſelves: the *Juites* and *Angles* joyning with them, and paſſing in accompt as the ſame one Nation. Their Countries different as their names, until this conjunction; but neighboring neer enough to unite together; the *Angles* dwelling at the firſt in that port of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe*, which we now cal *Selſwick*, where ſtill the Town called *Angolen* doth preſerve their memory; the *Juites* upon the North of them, where there is ſtill a Province called by the name of *Juiteland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, ſituate in the very neck of that *Cherſoneſe* where it joyneth with *Germany*. Joyning their powers they ſpread themſelves with good ſucceſs, to the South and Weſt; of which more hereafter. And growing Maſters of the Seas, infeſted with continual Piracies the Coaſts of *Britain*; occaſioning herein an Officer of great truſt and power, appointed to defend and ſcour thoſe Seas, in the *Notitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongſt the *Britans*, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him againſt the *Scots* and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched field neer *Stamford*, in the County of *Lincoln*: for ſo far had the barbarous people marched without any reſiſtance. Rewarded for this victory with the Iſle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their hoſts: whom by degrees they diſpoſſeſſed of all the Country on this ſide of *Severn*; parcelling it into ſeven Kingdoms, called the *Saxons Heptarchie*, that is to ſay, 1 Of *Kent*, 2 of the *South-Saxons*, 3 of the *Weſt-Saxons*, 4 of the *Eaſt-Saxons*, 5 of the *Eaſt-Angles*, 6 of the *North-Humbers*, and 7 of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period, and Kings of which ſeveral Kingdoms, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we are next to ſhew.

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengiſt*, who with his Brother *Horſus* had the leading of the *Saxon* Forces, at their firſt entry into *Britain*, *An.* 455. being the ſixth year after their firſt coming in: who reſtoring *Paganiſme* to this Country, when the reſt of the Iſle was *Chriſtian*, occaſioned the diſtinction of *Kent* and *Chriſtendom*. The *Kentiſh*, afterwards the firſt of the *Saxons* who received the Goſpel, by the preaching of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the Apoſtle of the *Engliſh Saxons*. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, were 1 *Canterbury*, once the Regal ſeat of the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his converſion, to *Auguſtine* the firſt Archbiſhop thereof, and his Succeſſors: afterwards the See of thoſe Archbiſhops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Reculver*. Seated in the Eaſt part of the Country, about ſeven or eight miles

Saxons.

from the Sea, a little Brook ſerving it thence with ſome commodities. A City of more Antiquity and fame, than beauty; being now ruinous and decayed, and having nothing in it worth obſervation, but the Cathredral Church, firſt founded by *Ethelbert*, before mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his foundations, in the form it now ſtands by Archbiſhop *Lanfrank*, *Will. Corboyle*, and ſome other of their Succeſſors in the ſaid See. The Archiepiſcopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruines of S. *Auguſtines* Monaſtery ſhew what once it was. 2 *Dover*, antiently called *Dubris*, ſeated on the Sea ſhore, where the paſſage is ſhorteſt into *France*; for that cauſe fortified with a ſtrong and (in thoſe dayes accounted an) impregnable Caſtle; eſteemed one of the keys of *England*, and the chief of the *Cinque Ports*; now giving the title of an Earl to the houſe of *Hunſdon*, chief of the Family of the *Caries*, nearly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of famous memory. 3 *Rocheſter*, ſeated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chattam* (the ſtation of the Royal Navy) an antient City, but of no greatneſs; in former times called *Durobrivis*, after that *Roffa*, thence the name of *Roff-cheſter*; a Biſhops See, the ſecond for Antiquity in all the Iſland. 4 *Maidſtone*, upon the *Medway* alſo near the head thereof; the largeſt and moſt beautifull in all this Countrey, and moſt commodiouſly ſeated for publick buſineſs.

The Kings of *Kent*.

A. Ch.					
455	1	*Hengiſt*, the firſt.	673	9	*Lothorius*.
488	2	*Esk*, or *Oſca*.	686	10	*Edrick*.
512	3	*Octa*.	693	11	*Wightred*.
532	4	*Immerick*.	720	12	*Egbert* II.
561	5	*Ethelbert*, the firſt Chriſtian King of this Countrey.	749	13	*Ethelbert* II.
			754	14	*Alricus*.
617	6	*Edbald*.	793	15	*Ethelbert* III.
641	7	*Ercombert*.	797	16	*Guthred*.
665	8	*Egbert*.	805	17	*Barldred*, the laſt King of *Kent* who

lost both life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *Weſt-Sex*, or the *Weſt-Saxons*, *An.* 824. The progeny of *Hengeſt* having been before extinguiſhed in the perſon of *Alricus*, overthrown and ſlain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*.

II. The Kingdome of SOUTH-SEX, or of the SOUTH-SAXONs, was begun by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that people, *An.* 488. It contained only the two Counties of *Suſſex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated: the firſt ſo called *quaſi South-Sex*, the Countrey of the *South-Saxons*; the ſecond *quaſi South-Rey*, as lying on the South-ſide of the River *Thames*, in the ſame ſenſe as S. *Maries* Church on the other ſide of the River (in reſpect of *London*) is called S. *Mary-Over-Rey*. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as in other places, was reſtored again in the time of King *Edilwach*, by the preaching of S. *Wilfride*, Archbiſhop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of moſt importance in it, were, 1 *Chicheſter*, built by *Ciſſa* the 2d King hereof, and called *Ciſſan-ceſter*, encompaſſed almoſt round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town in *Suſſex*, and a Biſhops ſee, removed hither from *Sealſee*, a Demy-Iſland, in the time of the *Norman* Conquerour, where it was firſt planted by Archbiſhop *Wilfride*. 2 *Haſtings*, one of the *Cinque*-ports, in *Suſſex* alſo; the landing place of the *Normans*, and famous for the overthrow of King *Herold* in the fields adjoyning. 3 *Guildford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well built, and having in it two pariſh Churches. 4 *Arundel*, in a *Dale* or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence ſo named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Teſtament of King *Alfride* unto *Anthelm*, his Brothers Son. Of great note for a beautifull and capacious Caſtle; but more for giving the title of Earl to the noble Families of the *Albeneys*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*: this laſt of ſuch a large and diffuſed Nobility, that in the year 1641. there were no fewer than eight *Howards*, in the Houſe of *Peers*. 5 *Kingſton* upon the *Thames*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Kingſton* upon *Hull* in *York-ſhire*: heretofore famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *Engliſh Saxons*, whence it had the name of *Kingſton*, or the Kings Town. This Kingdom had only three Kings, cruſhed in the infancy thereof by more potent neighbours.

The Kings of the *South-Saxons*.

A. Ch.		
488	1	*Ella* the firſt King.
514	2	*Ciſſa*, the ſon of *Ella*, who loſt his life and Kingdom to *Cerdic*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
590	3	*Cheulin*, King of the *Weſt-Sex*, called himſelf King of the *South-Saxons*.
	4	*Edelwach*, or *Ethelwolf*, the firſt Chriſtian King, overcome and ſlain in battel by *Ceadwal* King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, *An.* 687.

After whoſe death *Berthun* and *Authun*, two Brethren, took on themſelves the Government, with the title of *Dukes* or Captains; and held it for a little while. But not being able to withſtand the puiſſance of the *Weſt-Saxons*, this Kingdom was ſubdued by *Inay*, the Succeſſor of *Ceadwall*; by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of WEST-SEX, or of the WEST-SAXONS, the third in order, and that which did in fine prevail over all the reſt; contained the Counties of *Cornwall*, *Devon*, *Somerſet*, *Dorſet*, *Wilts*, *Southampton*, and *Berks*: begun by *Cerdic*; a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, *An.* 495. who having overcome the *Britans* of this Weſtern tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entituled himſelf King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, *An.* 522. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as elſewhere, was reſtored again in the time of *Kingils*, their firſt Chriſtian King; by the preaching of S. *Birinus*, Biſhop of *Dorcheſter* near *Oxford*; then a great city of no fewer than ten Pariſhes, *Saxons.* now reduced to one. Chief Cities of this Kingdom were, 1 *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Biſhops See, removed hither from *Cridington* or *Kirton*, by *Leofricus*, *An.* 1049. Seated upon the bank of the River *Ex*, whence the name of *Ex-ceaſter*; environed with deep ditches, and very ſtrong walls, in compaſs about a mile and a half beſides the Suburbs, in which are contained in all 15 Pariſh Churches, beſides the Minſter, a beautifull and ſtately Fabrick. 2 *Bath*, ſo called from the *Bathes* there being, the chief City of *Somerſet*; by the *Latines* called *Aqua Solis*, by the *Greeks* ὕδατα θέρματα, for the ſelf ſame reaſon. Situate in a low Valley, environed about with hills very ſteep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and freſh Springs, to the great commodity of the people. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monaſtery, partner with *Wells*, the Biſhops See, in the ſtile Epiſcopal; and gives the title of an Earl to the noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3 *Falemouth*, in *Cornwall*, ſeated upon a large and capacious Bay, ſo full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the beſt Ships, that it is ſaid, an hundred ſail of Ships may be lodged therein with ſuch convenience, that from the top of the one, the Maſt of another is not to be ſeen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater ſafety with two very ſtrong Caſtles built by *Henry* the 8th; that of S. *Mandit*, on the Eaſt, and that of *Pendinas* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the Weſt. 4 *Dorcheſter*, the chief Town of *Dorſetſhire*, which is thence denominated, by *Antoninus* called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and conſequently of no great trading: not ſo much famous for ought elſe as giving the Title of a Marqueſs to *Henry* Earl of *Kingſton*, of the noble Family of the *Pierrepoints*. 5 *Wilton*, the head Town, in thoſe times, of *Wiltſhire*, and a Biſhops See, honoured with the reſidence of nine ſeveral Biſhops. But by tranſlating of the See to *Sarum*, (or *Sarisbury*) as the fitter place, and carrying thither therewithall the thorow-fare which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market-Town. 6 *Wincheſter* called *Venta* in the times of the *Romans*, by the *Saxons* *Vent-ceaſter*, ſituate on the banks of a pleaſant River, the Seat-Royal of the *Weſt-Saxon* Kings, who had here their Pallace called *Wolves-eye*: ſo named from the Kings of the *Wolphian* Family, and the ſituation of it in the circlings of the fore-ſaid River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *Wooll-Staple* here kept, as ſome; much leſs from Cardinal *Wolſey*, as others moſt abſurdly think. The houſe given after to the Biſhops, and made their Palace. The Town in compaſs two miles, beſides the Suburbs; commodiouſly ſeated in a low place, between very ſteep Hills, by which it is defended both from cold and wind. Afflicted very much ſince thoſe times both by war and fire, half of the ground within the Town being fields and gardens: but ſtill adorned with a magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Caſtle, bravely mounted upon an Hill for defence and proſpect; beſides a *Colledge*, and an *Hoſpital* added ſince thoſe dayes. 7 *Southampton*, conveniently ſeated on an Arm of the ſea, capable of ſhips of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richeſt Towns in thoſe parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large ſtreets, beautified with five Pariſh Churches, and fortified with high walls, a double ditch, and a right ſtrong Caſtle: but the Caſtle now decayed and ruined. 8 *Reeding*, on the banks of the River *Kennet*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great trade for clothing, well built, and of three Pariſh Churches; heretofore beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle and a goodly Monaſtery, but both now decayed. 9 *Windſor*, called *Windleſhores* by the old *Saxons*, ſituate near the Banks of the *Thames* on a riſing ground, which gives it a fair proſpect over all the Countrey; adorned in ſucceeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the ſeat of the Order of the *Garter*, 10 *Wallingford*, the *Guallena* of the Antients, and then the chief Town of the *Atrebatii*, as it was afterwards, (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berks*: a mile in compaſs at that time within the walls, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, and adorned with twelve Pariſh Churches. So deſolated by a Plague, *An.* 1348. that there is now but one Church left, harldy Inhabitants enough to keep that in repair; and nothing of the walls left (as not much of the Caſtle) but the track and ruins.

The Kings of the *Weſt-Saxons*.

A. Ch.		
522	1	*Cerdic*, the firſt King. 17.
539	2	*Kenric*. 29.
565	3	*Celingus*, or *Cheuline*. 10.
595	4	*Celric*. 5.
600	5	*Ceolwof*. 14.
614	6	*Kingil*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
646	7	*Kenewalchin*. 31.
677	8	*Sigebert*. 1.
678	9	*Eſewin*. 2.
680	10	*Centwin*. 7.
689	11	*Ceadwall*.
690	12	*Ina*, who firſt gave the *Peter-pence* to the Church of *Rome*.
725	13	*Ethelard*. 14.
739	14	*Cuthbert*. 16.
755	15	*Sigebert*. II. 1.
756	16	*Kinulph*. 31.
787	17	*Bithric*. 13.
800	18	*Egbert*, the moſt puiſſant King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who united all the *Heptarchie* into one Eſtate, of whom ſee more amongſt the Monarchs of the *Saxons*, and the Kings of *England*.

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Erchenwin*, deſcended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*; from whom we have the name of *Wedneſday*, or *Wodenſday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Connties of *Midleſex*, *Eſſex*, and ſo much of *Hartfordſhire*, as is in the *Dioceſe* of *London*. The *Chriſtian* Faith expulſed here as in other places, was reſtored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the Abby Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, by the preaching of *Mellitus* the firſt Biſhop of *London* after the entrance of the *Saxons*; ſuppreſſed again by *Seward*, and *Sigebert*, the ſons of *Sebert*; but ſetled ſtronger than before by *Cedda*, the next Biſhop there. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, beſides *London*, ſpoken of already, were

1 *Weſtmin-*

Saxons.

1 *Weſtminſter*, ſituate in thoſe times, a mile from *London*, now adjoyning to it. The See of the Arch-biſhop of *London* in the time of the *Britains*: afterward by the *Saxons* called *Thorn-eye*, or the Thorny Iſland; till the new *Minſter* built by *Sebert* as before is ſaid, and the *weſtern* ſituation of it in regard of S. *Pauls*, built at the ſame time by *Ethelbert*; the King of *Kent*; gained it this new name. A City honoured with the ſeat of the Kings of *Eaſt-Sex*, and ſince thoſe times with that of the Kings of *England*; the names of the *old Palace* of the one, and the *new Palace* of the other, ſtill remaining there; beautified upon that occaſion with more ſtately and magnificent houſes, belonging to the King, Biſhops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom; having of late a new Town added to it in the *Convent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the Monks of *Weſtminſter*) for uniformity of building, and handſom ſtreets, inferior to no City of *France*, or *Italy*. 2 *Colcheſter*, the chief Town of *Eaſt-Sex*, ſituate neer the Sea, on the River *Coln*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinenſium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Biſhops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Ceaſter*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colcheſter*. A fair and well built Town, and of good reſort, fortified with an old *Roman* wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3 *Ithanceſter* in *Dengey* Hundred, where S. *Ceadda* the ſecond Biſhop of *London*, baptized the relapſed *Eaſt-Saxon*. 4 *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County ſo called; by *Beda* named *Herudford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Chriſtianity amongſt the *Saxons*; in which S. *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Apoſtle of that people, had a conference or conſultation with the Britiſh Biſhops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the title of an Earl to the illuſtrious Family, ſurnamed *De Clare*; the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimony to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*; and at this time, the title of Earl, and Marqueſs, to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the *Eaſt-Saxons*.

A.Ch.					
527	1	*Erchenwin*, the firſt King.	664	8	*Sighere*.
587	2	*Sledda*.	664	9	S. *Sebba*.
596	3	S. *Sebert*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.	694	10	*Sigheard*.
	4	*Seward* and *Sigebert*.		11	*Seofride*.
623	5	*Sigebert* II. or the Little.	701	12	*Offa*.
	6	*Sigebert* III.	709	13	*Selred*.
661	7	*Swithelme*.	774	14	*Suthred*, the laſt King of the *Eaſt-Saxons*, ſubdued by *Egbert* the great and potent King of *Weſt-Sex*, *Anno* 828. and his Kingdom made a member of that riſing Monarchy.

V. The Kingdom of the EAST-ANGLES, ſo called from the *Angli* or *Engliſh*, which poſſeſſed theſe parts, and the *Eaſtern* ſituation of it; begun by *Uffa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, *Anno* 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeſhire*, and the Iſle of *Ely*. The *Chriſtian* Faith firſt planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Miniſtry of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the firſt Biſhop of the *Eaſt-Angles*; the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of moſt importance in it, were 1 *Dunwich* on the Sea-ſhore, the firſt Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles*, for the County of *Suffolk*; then a Town capable of that Dignity, now ruinous, decayed, and for the greateſt part worn into the Sea. 2 *Ipſwich* in the ſame County of *Suffolk*, and the chief of the Countrey, a rich, populous, and well-traded Empory, conſiſting of no fewer then twelve Pariſh Churches. 3 *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, ſituate on the River *Yare*, which runs thence to *Yaremouth*; lying out in length a mile and a half, half as much in breadth, and in that Circuit comprehending about 30 Pariſhes; well walled about with many a Turret, and 12 Gates for entrance; but hath within it much waſte ground, the City ſuffering great loſs both in wealth, and buildings, by *Kets* Rebellion, in the time of King *Edward* the ſixth. Recovered of the firſt blow by the *Dutch Manufactures*, of the laſt ſtill languiſhing: yet ſtill it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Biſhops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surrey*; and the ruines of an antient Caſtle of the *Saxons* building. 4 *North Elmham*, the Biſhops See of the *Eaſt-Angles*, for thoſe parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this, and that of *Dunwich* ruinated in the *Daniſh* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years, and here continuing; both Sees united unto one; till removed to 5 *Thetford*, another Town of this County, ſituate on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the leſſer *Ouſe*: a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at laſt removed to *Norwich*. 6 *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Camboritum*, whence the modern name: unleſs we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for ſome call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reaſon of the Univerſity, ſaid to be founded by *Sigebert*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda* that he Founded a School for the education of children in the wayes of good Learning; but he ſpeaketh neither of *Univerſity*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7 *Ely*, ſituate in the Iſle ſo named, occaſioned by the divided ſtreams of *Ner* and *Ouſe*, with the over-flotes of other Rivers; turning a great part of this tract into Fens and Mariſhes, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Girvii*. A place of no great beauty or reputation, as ſituate in foggy and unhealthful air; but only for a fair Monaſtery, built by S. *Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northumbers*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and repleniſhed with Monks by *Ethelwold* Biſhop of *Wincheſter*, *An.* 970. or thereabouts; finally made a Biſhops See in the time of King *Henry* the firſt, *An.* 1109.

The Kings of the *Eaſt-Angles.*

An. Ch.		
575	1	*Uffa*, the firſt King.
582	2	*Titullus.*
593	3	*Redwall*, the firſt Chriſtian King.
624	4	*Erpenwald.*
636	5	S. *Sigebert.*
638	6	*Egric.*
642	7	*Anna.*
654	8	*Ethelbert.*
656	9	*Edelwald.*
664	10	*Alduffe.*
683	11	*Elſwolph.*
714	12	*Beorn.*
714	13	S. *Ethelred.*
749	14	*Ethelbert* II. treacherouſly murdered by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, to whoſe Court he came an invited Gueſt, *An.* 793. after whoſe death this Kingdom became ſubject to the *Mercians*, and then to *Egbert* the *Weſt-Saxon*, governed by Tributary Kings of their own Nation, of whom we have no conſtat till the time of
870	15	S. *Edmund.* deſcended from *Anna*, the ſeventh King hereof, Martyred by the *Danes* for his ſtout and conſtant perſeverance in the Faith of CHRIST; from whence that fair Town of S. *Edmundsbury*, in the County of *Suffolk* took denomination. After whoſe death the Kingdom was poſſeſſed by the *Danes*, till vanquiſhed by King *Edward* the Elder, by whom it was united unto the reſt of *England*.

VI. The Kingdom of *NORTHUMBERLAND*, ſo called from the ſituation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *York*, *Lancaſter*, *Durham*, *Weſtmorland*, *Cumberland*, and *Northumberland* properly ſo called; and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbritton*, formerly reckoned of as Members of the *Roman* Empire. Extorted from the *Britans* by *Occa*, the Son, and *Ebuſa*, the Brother of *Hengiſt*, Conducters of new Forces hither, (all of the Nation of the *Angli*) by the leave of *Vortiger*; under pretence of guarding theſe Countries from the inroads of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber* to the River of *Twede*; the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Twede* to the two *Frythes* before-mentioned: both Governed a long while by Dukes, under the Soveraignty and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the year 547. Duke *Idu* takes unto himſelf the title of King of *Bernicia*, and *An.* 559. Duke *Ella* doth the like in *Deira*. Towns of moſt notice in this laſt (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) beſides *York*, ſpoken of before, were 1 *Loncaſter*, the chief Town of that County, ſituate on the River *Lon*, which with the addition of *Ceaſter* much uſed by the *Saxons*, made the name thereof; called for the ſame reaſon *Longovicus* by the Emperour *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled, nor much frequented, but of ſufficient fame in our *Engliſh* Annals for thoſe noble perſons, which have ſucceſſively born the titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greateſt Princes for revenue, of any Subjects in *Chriſtendome*. 2 *Kendall*, or *Candale*, ſituate in a dale on the River *Can*, whence it had the name; the chief Town of *Weſtmorland*: built in the manner of a Croſs, two long and broad ſtreets thwarting one another. A rich, populous, and well-traded Town, eſpecially for the making of fine woollen cloth; but of more fame for giving the title of an Earl to *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*; and to *John de Foix*, created Earl hereof by *Henry* the ſixth. 3 *Carlile*, upon the River *Eden*, a frontire Town betwixt the *Romans* and the *Scots*, as now between the *Scots* and *Engliſh*: conſumed to aſhes in the time of the *Daniſh* furies; afterwards re-built by *William Rufus*, made an Epiſcopal See in the reign of K. *Henry* the firſt, and beautified with a Cathedral founded at the perſwaſion of *Athelfolfus*, the firſt Biſhop thereof. 4 *Monck chester*, on the Northern banks of the River *Tine*, which maketh there a ſafe and capacious Haven. Of no great note, till the *Norman* conqueſt, when, from a Caſtle built by *Robert* Son of *William* the Conqueror, it was called *New-Caſtle*: growing from that time forwards to ſuch wealth and trading, by the neighbourhood of the Cole-mines there, that it is now the goodlieſt Town in all the North; fortified with ſtrong wals, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the L. *Will. Cavendiſh*, Viſcount *Mansfield*, the honorary titles of Earl and Marqueſs. 5 *Hagueſtade*, or *Hextold*, by the *Romans* called *Axelodunum*, by the *Normans*, *Kexham*; a Biſhops See in the firſt times of *Chriſtianity* amongſt theſe *Northumbers*, ſpecially ſo called, converted to the faith in the time of *Oſwald* their tenth King, by the Miniſtry of *Aidan* the firſt Biſhop of *Lindisfarn*: *Eata* the fifth Biſhop erecting here an Epiſcopal See, for the better propagation of the Goſpel amongſt this people; after a ſucceſſion of ten Biſhops ruinated and ſuppreſſed by the *Daniſh* furies. 6 *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, ſituate on an hill as the name importeth, a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither with the body of S. *Cuthbert*, *An.* 990. or thereabouts, from *Lindisfarn*, a ſmall Iſland on the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, where it was firſt erected by S. *Aidanus*, the firſt Biſhop thereof: planted in *Lindisfarn*, becauſe of the ſolitude of this place, tranſlated hither to avoid the fury of the *Danes*, who then raged extremely in theſe Quarters. And being ſetled here, was fortified with ſuch ample priviledges, and poſſeſſions, by the *Saxon* Kings; that the Biſhops were reputed for *County Palatines*, at and before the *Norman* Conqueſt. 7 *Halifax*, in the *Weſt Riding* of *Yorkſhire*, of great wealth by making of cloth. 8 *Rippon*, in the ſame, adorned with a fair Cathedral or Collegiate Church, ſubordinate to that at *York*. 9 *Godmanham*, (by *Beda* called *Gotmadin Gaham*) famous in thoſe dayes for a Temple of the *Saxon-Idols*, burnt down and utterly deſtroyed by *Coife*, the chief Prieſt thereof, converted to *Chriſtianity* by *Paulinus* the firſt Archbiſhop of *York*, and the Apoſtle of the *Northumbers* in theſe parts. The Catalogue of the Kings of which mighty Nation, by reaſon of the diviſion of it into two Kingdoms, as before is ſaid, is very intricate and confuſed; the Kingdoms being ſometimes united, and ſometimes dis-joyned. But in regard that the moſt prevalent King of either was King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* only, I ſhall accordingly ſubjoyn them in this order following.

The Kings of *Northumberland*.

A. Ch.		
547	1	*Ida*, the firſt King.
560	2	*Ella*, King of *Deira*.
589	3	*Ethelick*, Son of *Ida* King of *Bernicia*.
593	4	*Ethelfride*.
617	5	*Edwin*, Son of *Ella*, the firſt Chriſtian King.
633	6	*Oſrick*.
644	7	S. *Oſwald*.
645	8	*Oſwy*, who having ſubdued and ſlain *Oſwin* King of *Deira*; was the firſt abſolute King of all *Northumberland*, no more divided after that.
671	9	*Egfride*.
686	10	S. *Alfride*.
705	11	*Oſred*.
716	12	*Kenred*.
718	13	*Oſrick* II.
729	14	*Ceolnulph*.
738	15	*Ogbert*.
758	16	*Eſwulph*.
759	17	*Edilwald*.
765	18	*Alured*.
674	19	*Ethelred*.
778	20	*Aſwald*.
789	21	*Oſred* II.
794	22	*Ethelred*, II.

After whoſe death, ſlain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his Predeceſſors had been before him) the Kingdom became diſtracted into parts and factions; invaded by the *Danes* on one ſide, the *Scots* and *Picts* on the other, who during theſe diſtractions had poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Countries on the other ſide of the *Twede*. At the laſt *An.* 827. they yeelded themſelves to *Egbert*, the moſt potent King of the *Weſt-Saxons*; ruled by his Deputies for a while, then ſubdued by the *Danes*, and finally recovered to the Crown of *England*, by *Athelſtan* and *Edred*, *An.* 950. or thereabouts. Content ſince that to give the Title of an Earl to ſome eminent perſons, both of *Engliſh* and *Norman* races; as it hath done ſince the firſt year of King *Richard* the ſecond to the noble Family of the *Percies*, deſcended by *Joſceline* of *Brabant*, Brother of *Adelize* the ſecond Wife of King *Henry* the firſt, from *Charles* the *Great*, Emperor, and King of *France*.

VII. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, was begun by *Cridda*, or *Creodda*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *Engliſh* Nation; who ſetling in the heart of *Britain*, where the people were leaſt uſed to Arms, made themſelves maſters of the Counties of *Glouceſter*, *Worceſter*, *Hereford*, *Salop*, *Cheſter*, *Stafford*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, *Warwick* *Oxon*, *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and the reſt of *Hartfordſhire*: which bounded in a manner by all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Meare*, which ſignifieth a bound or limit. The Chriſtian Faith ſuppreſſed here, as in other Kingdoms of the *Saxons*, was reſtored again in the reigns of *Penda*, *Peada*, and *Wulfhere*, by the preaching of S *Chad*, the firſt Biſhop of *Lichfield*. Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Hereford*, ſeated on the banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of moſt nouriſhing meadows, and no leſs plentiful Corn-fields; raiſed out of the ruines of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine* the tract of which name it doth ſtill retain. A Biſhops See in the time of the *Britans*, reſtored to that dignity by the *Saxons*, *An.* 680. the honorable title of the *Bohuns*, once Earls hereof; and afterwards of *Henry* of *Bullingbrook*, Duke of *Hereford*. 2. *Worceſter*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Biſhops See, *An.* 679. beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way conſiderable for ſcituation, number of Churches, neat buildings, the induſtry of the Inhabitants, and giving the title of an Earl to the noble family of the *Somerſets*, extracted by the *Beauforts* from *John* of *Gaunt*. 3. *Lichfield*, the firſt Biſhops See amongſt the *Mercians*, founded there *An.* 646. by *Oſwy* King of the *Northumbers*, but fixed and ſetled by S. *Chad*, in the reign of *Wulfhere*, King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very infancy with ſuch fair poſſeſſions, that in the year 798 *Adulfus*, the Biſhop hereof, was made Archbiſhop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a perſonal honor, and died with him. 4 *Coventry*, ſo called from an old *Covent* or Religious houſe, which gave name unto it. Scituate in *Warwickſhire*, and now the principal of that County, though eſteemed a County of it ſelf. Beautified with a goodly wall, two fair Pariſh Churches, large ſtreets, and very handſom houſes. A City of great trade and riches, though deſtitute of all advantages, which a navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great fame for a ſtately Monaſtery, to which the See Epiſcopal was a while removed from *Lichfield*; now a ruine onely. 5. *Leiceſter*, once a Biſhops See, the Dioceſe taken out of *Lichfield*, *An.* 733. removed to *Dorcheſter* neer *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in thoſe days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abby, and a ſtrong Caſtle; all decayed and ruined by the iniquity, and injury of theſe later times: the Town remaining in as good plight both for trade and buildings, as moſt Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of moſt fame for the Earls hereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble *Saxons*, *Simon de Monfort* the *Catiline* and great *Incendiary* of this Kingdom; the Princes of the houſe of *Lancaſter*, who bore this title; with ſome others ſince 6 *Derby*, upon the River *Derwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good reſort; adorned with five Churches, a goodly ſtone-bridge, and a large Market-place; the honorary title of the noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls hereof by K. *Henry* the ſeventh. 7 *Nottingham* ſeated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an hill, which over-looks it: For buildings, fair ſtreets, and a ſpacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of moſt fame for a Royal and magnificent Caſtle, which for ſtrength, ſtatelineſs and proſpect, may juſtly challenge the precedency of moſt in *England*. 8 *Lincoln*, a Town in thoſe dayes of great ſtrength and note, one of the beſt peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchy*; and of great merchandize and traffick both by Sea and Land: inſomuch that *Remigius*, then Biſhop of *Dorcheſter*, thought fit to tranſlate hither the Epiſcopal See. Now much decayed, Saxons. and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln* was, *London* is, &c. The chief fame which now it hath is for the *Minſter*, one of the ſtatelieſt Piles in *England*, and perhaps in *Chriſtendom*; high ſeated on an hill, and from thence diſcerned over all the Country. 9 *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great ſport the *Hunters* found in the neighbouring *Forreſt*; commodiouſly ſeated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouſe*, riſing unto the North with a ſoft aſcent, conſiſting of four Pariſh Churches, and ſhews the ruines of a Caſtle built by *Edward* the Elder, *An* 917. 10 *Peterburgh*, ſeated in a Nook or Angle of *Northamptonſhire*, where formerly had been a gulf or whirlpool of exceeding depth: but made firm ground by *Wolfere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the foundations of the Monaſtery, *An.* 633. dedicated to S. *Peter*, whence it had this name, before then called *Medanſtede*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great eſteem, as ſtanding out of the way for trade, and in no plauſible place for health or pleaſure: yet ſhewing two handſom ſtreets, a large Market-place, and a fair Pariſh Church (beſides the Abby) made an Epiſcopal See by King *Henry* the eighth. 11. *Northampton*, built on the Northern bank of the River *Antona* (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very ſtrong Caſtle, and ſeated in ſo good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpoſe to remove their Univerſity hither. The noble Family of the *Comptons* are now Earls hereof. 12 *Bedford*, ſo called from Beds and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both ſides thereof, for the uſe of Travellers; growing in time to ſo great bigneſs as to contain in it five Pariſh Churches: famous in former times for the great battel fought in the adjoyning Fields, *An.* 572. in which *Cuthwolf* the *Saxon* vanquiſhed the *Britans*, and became Maſter of the Country. But more famous for giving the title of Duke to *John* of *Lancaſter*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the ſixth, and *Jaſper* of *Hatfield*, Uncle to King *Henry* the ſeventh. 13. S. *Albans*, ſo called from a famous Monaſtery here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of S *Alban*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, neer adjoining to it: out of the ruines whereof, decayed by Age, and deſtroyed by War; aroſe the preſent greatneſs of S. *Albans*, the faireſt and beſt-traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 14 *Buckingham* the chief Town of the Country ſo called, ſituate on the River *Ouſe*: fortified by King *Edward* the Elder againſt the *Danes*, *Anno* 915. otherwiſe not much obſervable, but for thoſe many noble perſonages which have had the title of Dukes hereof.

The Kings of *Mercia*.

A. Ch.
582 1 *Criedda*, the firſt King.
593 2 *Webba*.
614 3 *Cheol*.
626 4 *Penda*.
656 5 *Peada*, the firſt Chriſtian King.
659 6 *Wulfhere*.
675 7 *Ethelred*.
704 8 *Kenred*.
709 9 *Chelred*.
716 10 *Ethelbald*, overcome by *Cutbert*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, at a fight neer *Burford*, in the County of *Oxon*, the place ſtill called *Battelage* hill.
758 11 *Offa* the great.
796 12 *Egfride*.
697 13 *Kenwolf*.
819 14 *Kenelm*.
820 15 *Cheolwolf*.
821 16 *Bernulf*.
824 17 *Ludecan*.
826 18 *Withlaf*, overcome in fight (as were his two Predeceſſors) by *Egbert* King of *Weſt-Sex* became his tributary.
839 19 *Berthulf*.
852 20 *Burdred*, a ſubſtituted King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the laſt King of the *Mercians*, (the ſhort reign of his ſix Predeceſſors portending that fatal period to be neer at hand.) After whoſe death, *An.* 886. this Kingdome for ſome few years tyrannized over by the *Danes*, was united by King *Alured*, to the *Engliſh* Monarchy.

Such was the Order and Succeſſion of the Saxon Kings, during the *Heptarchy*, or diviſion of it into ſeven Kingdoms; continuing ſeparate and diſtinct till the prevailing fortune of the *Weſt-Saxons*, brought them altogether into one, by the name of *England*. But ſo, that they were ſubject for the moſt part unto one alone, who was entituled, *Rex Gentis Anglorum*; thoſe which were ſtronger than the reſt, giving the Law unto them in their ſeveral turns; and are theſe that follow.

The *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh Saxons* in the time of the *Heptarchy*.

A. Ch.
455 1 *Hengiſt*, King of *Kent*, who firſt brought the *Saxons* into *Britain*.
481 2 *Ella*, the firſt King of the *South-Saxons*.
481 3 *Cerdic*, the firſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
534 4 *Kenrick*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
561 5 *Cheuline*, or *Cellingus*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
562 6 *Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *Saxons*.
616 7 *Redwald*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*.
617 8 *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*.
634 9 *Oſwald* King of *Northumberland*.
643 10 *Oſwy*, King of *Northumberland*.
659 11 *Wulfhere*, King of *Mercia*.
675 12 *Etheldred* King of *Mercia*.
704 13 *Kenred*, King of *Mercia*.
709 14 *Chelred*, King of *Mercia*.

726

716 15 *Ethelbald* King of *Mercia.*

758 16 *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians.*

794 17 *Egfride*, King of *Mercia.*

796 18 *Kenwolf*, King of *Mercia.*

800 19 *Egbert*, the Son of *Alcmond*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who having vanquiſhed all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kings, and added moſt of their Eſtates unto his own; cauſed the whole united body to be called *Engel-lond*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Councel held at *Wincheſter*, *An.* 819. being the ninteenth year of his Reign over the *Weſt-Saxons*; and by that name he was then crowned in the preſence of his Nobles, and the reſt of his Subjects, leaving it unto the reſt of his Succeſſors.

But before we come to the recital of their names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next conſiderable *Actors* on the Stage of *England*; who in the time of this *Egbert* firſt invaded the Countrey, and after exerciſed the patience of his Poſterity, till in fine they got the Kingdom to themſelves. Of the Original and firſt Succeſſes of this people, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark.* Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Iuites* and *Engliſh* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*; they thought it not amiſs to follow them into *Britain*; making a Diſcovery of ſome part of the Coaſts thereof with three Ships only, *Anno* 787, being the firſt year of *Bithric* (the Father of *Egbert*) Kings of the *Weſt-Saxons.* Which having done, and prepared themſelves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert* they invaded *Northumberland*, the Iſle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coaſts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Reign of the three Kings ſucceeding, having vanquiſhed the *Northumbrians*, *Eaſt-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected in thoſe kingdoms many petit Tyrannies: By *Alfred* firſt ſtopped in their Career; by *Edward* the Elder outed of the *Eaſt-Angles*, and by *Athelſtan* of *Northumberland* alſo; the *Danes* for ſome time after being ſubject to the *Engliſh* Government, mixing in marriages and alliance, and incorporate with them. By the valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the perſon of *Canutus* obtained the kingdome: who having impolitickly ſent back his *Danes* into their Countrey (as if a kingdom got by force could be held by favour) opened a way to their excluſion from the Crown; which happened within ſeven years after his deceaſe. Which ſaid, we come to the Succeſſions of

The Kings of *England* of the *Saxon* Race.

819 1 *Egbert*, the laſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the firſt of *England*. 18.

837 2 *Ethelwolf*, the Eldeſt Son of *Egbert*. 20.

857 3 *Ethelbald*, the Eldeſt Son of *Ethelwolf*. 1.

858 4 *Ethelbert*, the Brother of *Ethelbald*. 5.

863 5 *Ethelfred*, the Brother of the two former Kings, the third Son of *Ethelwolf*, and as much moleſted by the *Danes*, as his Brethren were. 10

873 6 *Afride*, the fourth Son of *Ethelworth*, who totally united the *Saxon Heptarchie* into one Eſtate; vanquiſhed the *Danes*, whom he had made ſubject to his commands, though he could not expell them. He divided *England* into ſhires, and reſtored the Univerſity of *Oxon.*

900 7 *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Elder*, the Son of *Afride*, who recovered the *Eaſt-Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he ſhut up in *Northumberland*. 24.

924 8 *Athelſtan*, the Son of *Edward*, who ſubdued the *Britains* of *Cumberland*, and *Cornwall*; and compelled the *Danes* to ſubmit themſelves to the *Engliſh* Government. In his time lived S. *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Daniſh* Champion (the great *Goliah* of that people) near the Walls of *Wincheſter*. 10.

940 9 *Edmund*, the Brother of *Athelſtan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience; and the kingdome of the *Britains* in *Cumberland* utterly ſubverted.

946 10 *Edred* the Brother of *Edmund* and *Athelſtan*, ſo fortunate againſt the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be chriſtened. 9.

955 11 *Edwy*, the Son of *Edmund*.

959 12 *Edgar*, the Brother of *Edwy*, ſurnamed the *Peaceable*, the moſt abſolute *Monarch* of *England* ſince the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the tribute of money impoſed by *Athelſtan* on the *Welch*, was exchanged into a tribute of Wolves. 16.

975 13 *Edward* II. Son of *Edgar*, treacherouſly murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her Son, hence ſurnamed the *Martyr*. 3.

978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger Son of *Edgar*, and half Brother to *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unquietly which he got unjuſtly. Oppreſſed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 10000 pounds; inhanced to 48000 pounds within ſhort time after; which moneys were raiſed upon the ſubjects, by the name of *Danegelt*. Weary of theſe exactions, he plotted warily with his ſubjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they ſlept in their beds; which accordingly was put in execution on S. *Brices* night, Novemb. 12. *An.* 1012. To revenge this out-rage and diſhonour, *Swain* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 ſhips, came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuiſſant Prince to fly into *Normandy*; leaving his poor ſubjects to the mercy of the *Daniſh* Tyrant, who miſerably plagued them till his death. To whom ſucceeded his Son *Cnute* (*Canutus*) a more temperate Prince; who maugre *Ethelred* now returned, or his Son *Edmund Ironſide*, a moſt valiant King, did in the end poſſeſs himſelf of the whole Kingdom.

England. 1016 15 *Edmund* II. ſurnamed *Ironſide*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom; at laſt divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherouſly and baſely murdered, by *Edward* ſurnamed the *Out-Law*, his Eldeſt Son, he was Grand-father of *Edgar Atheling*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, the King of the *Scots*.

The *Daniſh* Kings.

1017 1 *Canutus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, after the death of *Edmund* the ſecond, ſole King of *England*. He married *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred*, and daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*. 20.

1037 2 *Harald* the baſe Son of *Canutus*, ſurnamed *Harfuger*. 4.

1040 3 *Canutus* II. commonly called *Hardy-Cnute*, the lawfull ſon of *Canutus* by *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred* the ſecond, and Mother of *Edward*, ſurnamed the *Confeſſor*; the laſt King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whoſe death, that people having tyrannized in *England* for the ſpace of 255 years, (of which they had Reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Countrey, or paſſed in the Accompt of *Engliſh*; *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, the youngeſt ſon of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practiſes of his Mother *Emma*, and the abſence of the Children of *Edmund Ironſide* his elder Brother, *Anno* 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence, as they did, I obſerve three cuſtoms yet in uſe amongſt us. Firſt, each Engliſh houſe maintained one *Dane*, who living idly like the *Drone* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now where we ſee an idle fellow, we call him a *Lordane*. 2 The *Danes* uſed when the *Engliſh* drank, to ſtab them, or cut their throats: to avoid which villany, the party then drinking, requeſted ſome of the next unto him, to be his ſurety or *pledge*, whilſt he paid nature her due: and hence have we our uſual cuſtom of pledging one another. 3 The old *Romans* at the expulſion of their Kings, annually ſolemnized the *Fugalia*: according to which pattern the joyfull *Engliſh* having cleared the Countrey of the *Danes*, inſtituted the annual ſports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *ſcorning*, or triumphing. This *ſolemnity* conſiſteth in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in thoſe dayes, during which the *Feſtival* laſted, and was celebrated by the younger ſort of both ſexes, with all manner of exerciſes, and paſtimes in the ſtreets, even as *Shrovetide* yet is. But now time hath ſo corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no ſign of the firſt inſtitution.

The *Saxons* reinthroned.

A. Ch.

1042 16 *Edward* III. ſurnamed the *Confeſſor*, half a Brother both to *Edmund Ironſide*, and *Hardy-Canute* the *Dane*, called out of *Normandy*, where he lived with the Dukes his Couſins, ſucceeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Daniſh*, *Saxon*, and *Mercian* Laws one univerſal and general Law; whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its Original: which may be true of the *written* Laws, not of the *cuſtomary* and unwritten Laws; theſe being certainly more antient. He was in his life of that Holineſs, that he received power from above to cure any diſeaſes; amongſt others the ſwelling of the throat, called by us the *Kings evil*: a Prerogative that continueth *Hereditary* to his ſucceſſors of *England*. Finally, after his death, he was Canonized for a *Saint*; and died, having reigned 24 years.

1066 17 *Harald* II. Son to Earl *Godwin*, was choſen King in the nonnage of *Edgar Atheling*, Grand-child to *Edmund Ironſide*, the true Heir of the Kingdom: to which *Herald* might pretend ſome title as being born unto Earl *Godwin* by *Thyra* the baſe daughter of *Canutus* the firſt, ſiſter by the whole bloud to *Harald Halfuger*, and of the half bloud to *Canutus* the ſecond, the laſt Kings of the *Danes* in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which people we have ſpoke already when we were in *France*, and ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the laſt *Actors* on the *Theatre* or ſtage of *England*:) This *William* (I ſay) pretending a Donation from his Couſin, King *Edward* the *Confeſſor*; invaded *England*, ſlew *Harald*, and with him 66654 of his *Engliſh* Souldiers, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Kingdom; uſing ſuch Policy in his new Conqueſt, that he utterly diſheartned the *Engliſh* from hopes of better fortune. From him beginneth the new Accompt of the Kings of *England*, thoſe of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the firſt, ſecond, or third, &c.

The *Norman* Kings.

1067 1 *William*, ſurnamed the *Conquerour*, after the vanquiſhment and death of *Harald*, acknowledged and crowned King, altered the antient Laws of *England*, and eſtabliſhed thoſe of *Normandy* in the place thereof, governing the people abſolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and ſuch as were engaged in the Action with him; from whom moſt of our antient *Families* do derive themſelves; thoſe Lands to be holden in *Knights-ſervice*, which drew along with it the *Wardſhip* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.

1089 2 *William* II. ſurnamed *Rufus*, ſecond Son to the Conquerour, ſucceeded by the appointment of his Father, and was crowned King; ſlain afterwards in the *New Forreſt*, by an arrow levelled at a *Deer*.

1102

England.

1102 3 *Henry*, for his learning ſurnamed *Beauclark*, the third Son of the Conqueror, in the abſence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy-Land* Wars) entred on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him alſo the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-iſſue, he left one only Daughter whoſe name was *Maud*; firſt married to the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, and after to *Geofry Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*. 34.

1136 4 *Stephen*, ſecond Son of *Stephen* Earl of *Campagne* and *Blois*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the *Conqueror*, ſucceeded; who to purchaſe the peoples love, releaſed the tribute, called *Danegelt*: he ſpent moſt of his reign in war againſt *Maud* the Empreſs. 19.

The *Saxon* bloud reſtored.

1155 5 *Henry* II. Son to *Maud* the Empreſs, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret*, Siſter to *Edgar Atheling*; reſtored the *Saxon* blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *Engliſh* Empire, as alſo the Dutchie of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poictou*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by conqueſt. Happy in all things, the unnatural rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.

1189 6 *Richard*, the Son of *Henry*, ſurnamed *Ceur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almoſt driven out of *Syria*; took the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy achievements, returning homewards to defend *Normandy*, and *Aquitain*, againſt the *French*, was by the Tempeſt caſt upon *Dalmatia*: and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Auſtria*, was taken priſoner, put to a grievous ranſom; and after his return, ſlain at the ſiege of *Chaluz*, in the Province of *Limoſin*. 12.

1201 7 *John* Brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better; as being an unnatural Son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Diſtreſſed for a great part of his reign, by Wars with his Barons; outed of all *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the *French*; to whom alſo he was likely to have loſt the Realm of *England*: Finally, after a baſe ſubmiſſion of himſelf and his Kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is ſaid to have been poyſoned at *Swinſtede* Abby. 17.

1218 8 *Henry* III. Son of *John*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a Compoſition with King *Lewis* the 9th, was reſtored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Succeſſors till the reign of King *Henry* the ſixth. Exhauſted by the Pope, and oppreſſed a long time by his factious and unruly Barons, but at laſt victorious. 56.

1274 9 *Edward*, the Son of *Henry*, awed *France*, ſubdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into ſubjections of whoſe King and Nobility he received homage. 34.

1308 10 *Edward* II. Son of *Edward* the firſt, a diſſolute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the vulgar, for his immeaſurable love to *Pierce Gaveſton*, and the *Spencers*; was twice ſhamefully beaten by the *Scots*: and being depoſed by a ſtrong faction raiſed againſt him by his Queen, and *Roger* Lord *Mortimer*; was barbarouſly murdered in *Berkley* Caſtle. 19.

1327 11 *Edward* III. Son of *Edward* the 2d, a moſt vertuous and valourous Prince, brought the *Scots* to obedience, overthrew the *French* in two great battles, took the Town of *Callice*, and many fair Poſſeſſions in that Kingdom. 50.

1377 12 *Richard* II. another of our unfortunate Kings, loſt many of his Peeces in *France*, and at laſt being over-awed by his two great Uncles of *Lancaſter* and *Gloceſter*, and taken Priſoner by his Couſin, the Duke of *Hereford*, he was forced to reſign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Pomfret* Caſtle.

The *Lancaſtrian* Line.

1399 13 *Henry* IV. Son to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*, the fourth Son to *Edward* the 3d, was by the power of the Sword, but with the conſent of the people, ſetled in the Throne; and ſpent his whole Reign in ſuppreſſing home-bred Rebellions. 15.

1414 14 *Henry* V. the mirrour of Magnificence, and Pattern of true vertue, purſued the Title of *France*, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the *French* Crown, but lived not to poſſeſs the Kingdom. 9.

1423 15 *Henry* VI. a pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of *France* in *Paris*; which he held during the life of his Uncle *John* of *Bedford*, and *Humphrey* of *Gloceſter*; after whoſe deaths, he not only loſt *France* to the *French*, but *England* and his life to the *Yorkiſh* Faction. 38.

The *Yorkiſh* Line.

1461 16 *Edward* IV. Son of *Richard* Duke of *York*, the Son of *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, and Grand-ſon of *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *York*, the fifth Son of King *Edward* the third; challenged the Crown in right of the Lady *Anne* his Grand-mother, Daughter of *Roger*

Mortimer Earl of *March*, the Son of *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, and of *Philippa* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, the third Son of the ſaid King *Edward*, and Elder Brother of *John* of *Gaunt*. The claim firſt ſet on foot by his Father the Duke of *York*, who loſt his life in purſuance of it in the battel of *Wakefield*; with better fortune and ſucceſs purſued by King *Edward* himſelf, who finally after nine bloody battles, fought between the houſes (eſpecially that of *Towton*, in which were ſlain 36000 *Engliſh*) was quietly ſeated in the poſſeſſion of *England* and *Ireland*. 23.

1484 17 *Edward* V. his Son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle *Richard*, in the Tower of *London*.

1484 18 *Richard* III. Brother of *Edward* the 4th, a moſt wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered 1 King *Henry* the 6th, and 2 Prince *Edward* his Son. 3 *George* Duke of *Clarence*, his Brother. 4 *Haſtings* a faithful ſervant to King *Edward*. 5 *Rivers*, *Vaughan*, and *Gray*, the Queens kindred. 6 *Edward* the 5th his Soveraign, with his Couſin *Richard*. 7 *Henry* Duke of *Buckingham* his dear friend, and greateſt Coadjutor in theſe his ungodly practices; and 8 his Wife *Anne*; ſo to make way to an inceſtuous marriage with his Neece *Elizabeth*, the eldeſt Daughter of *Edward* the 4th, but before the ſolemnity he was ſlain at *Boſworth*. 3.

The union of the *Families*.

1487 19 *Henry* VII. Earl of *Richmond*, Heir to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, (as Son of *Margaret* Daughter of *John* Duke of *Somerſet*, Son of *John* Earl of *Somerſet*, Son of *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*) after the overthrow of *Richard*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir to *Edward* the 4th, uniting by that marriage the divided *Families*. He was alſo extracted from the *Britiſh*, and *French*, Royal blood, as being Son to *Edward Tudor* Earl of *Richmond*, Son to *Owen Tudor* (deſcended from *Cadwalladar*, the laſt King of the *Britans*) and *Katherine* of *France*, Widow of *Henry* the fifth. His whole wars was againſt home-bred Rebels; the chief being *Lambert*, and the Followers and Fautors of *Perken Warbeck*. 23.

1509 20 *Henry* VIII. Heir to both *Families*, between which were fought for the Diadem, 17 pitched Fields; in which periſhed 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marqueſſes, and Earls, 200000 of the common people, beſides Barons and Gentlemen. This King baniſhed the uſurped *Supremacy* of the *Popes*, and began the *Reformation* of Religion; though formerly he had writ a Book againſt *Luther*, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*, afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs, and Succeſſors. A Prince of great vices, but of greater vertues. 38.

1547 21 *Edward* VI. the Son of *Henry* the 8th by *Jane Seymour* his third Wife; out of whoſe womb he was fain to be cut, to come into the world, as *Cæſar* was: but he had neither *Cæſars* Fortune, nor length of life, dying very young, and his affairs conducted by divided Counſels; though otherwiſe of great hopes, and of a pregnancy of judgement above his years.

1553 22 *Mary*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th by *Katharine* of *Spain*, the Widow of his Brother *Arthur*, reſtored the Popes Supremacy baniſhed by her Father, with the whole maſs of Popery aboliſhed in her Brothers Reign. To which Religion ſo addicted, that in the ſhort time of her Reign there was more blood ſhed, than in the whole 44 years of her Siſter *Elizabeth*. In the laſt year of her Reign ſhe loſt *Calice* to the *French*, which proved the loſs of her life alſo, as it was ſuppoſed. 5.

1558 23 *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th by the Lady *Anne Bullein* his ſecond Wife; a moſt gracious Heroick Princeſs; was by the divine providence of God preſerved from the practices of her Enemies in her Siſters reign, to ſway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She purſued the Reformation of Religion, begun in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt coin brought in by her Father; furniſhed the Royal Navy with all kind of warlike Ammunitions; encreaſed the Revenue of the Univerſities; by the Statute of *Proviſions*; ſuccoured the *Scots* againſt the *French*, the *French* Proteſtants againſt the Papiſts, and both againſt the *Spaniard*: defended the *Netherlands* againſt the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entred League with the *Muſcovite*; and was famous for her prudence and government amongſt the *Turks*, *Perſians* and *Tartars*, yea her very enemies. Finally ſhe died in the 45 year of her reign, and the 70th of her life, on the 24 of *March*, Anno 1602. according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the new year with the Feaſt of the *Annuntiation*. To whom ſucceeded *JAMES* the ſixth King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all men, as the next undoubted heir of the Crown. Of whom we ſhall ſay more when we come to ſpeak of the *Monarchs* of *Britain*; of which he was the firſt ſince the fall of the *Roman* Empire, and ſuch more properly than the greateſt of all thoſe Emperors had been before; None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* it ſelf, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the Iſles adjoyning, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State diſtinct, we will conſider it and the Kings thereof, with

England.

with reference to reputation abroad and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Arms*, and *Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And firſt for *Reputation*, when all Chriſtendom in the Council of *Conſtance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana Natio* was one of the Principal, and not *Subaltern*; and had its vote of equal balance with the Nations of *France*, or *Italy*, in all affairs concerning the doctrine, diſcipline, and peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in thoſe *General Councils*, and the rank they held among other *Chriſtian* Princes; I find that the Emperour of *Germany* was accounted *Major filius Eccleſiæ*; the King of *France*, *Minor Filius*, and the King of *England*, *filius tertius*, *&* *adoptivus*. The King of *France* in *General Councils*, had place next the Emperour, on his right hand; the King of *England* on his left hand; and the King of *Scotland*, next before *Caſtile*. Now indeed the King of *Spain* being ſo much improved, is the *dearely beloved Son of the Church*; and arrogateth to himſelf the place above all other Princes: but in the time of Pope *Julius*, the controverſie ariſing between the Ambaſſadors of the two Princes, for precedency; the Pope adjudged it to belong of right unto *England*. And Pope *Pius* the fourth, upon the like controverſie, ariſing between the Ambaſſadors of *France*, and *Spain*, adjudged the precedency to the *French*.

Touching the *Souldierie* of *England*, and their moſt notable atchievements, both by Sea and Land, ſufficient hath been ſaid already. What *Forces* the Kings hereof have been able to raiſe, and may command for preſent ſervice, will beſt be ſeen by the action of King *Henry* the 8th at *Bullen*, the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88 and the numbers of the trained Bands of the ſeveral Counties. Firſt for the Action of King *Henry* the eighth, he had in his *Avant-guard* 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horſe in *blew Jackets* with red Guards, in the *Rere-ward* a like number both of Horſe and Foot; and in the main Battel 20000 Foot and 2000 Horſe, all in *Red Jackets* and yellow guards: the whole number 44000 Foot and 3000 Horſe. They drew after them 100 great Peeces, beſides ſmall ones; and for conveyance of their *Ordnance*, Baggage, and other neceſſaries, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horſes, beſides other carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen diſperſed in ſeveral places on the Southern Coaſts of the Kingdom, to hinder the Landing of the enemy, 25000 Souldiers of both ſorts; at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of *London*, under the command of the Earl of *Leiceſter*, 22000 Foot and 1000 Horſe, and for the guard of her own perſon, under the Lord *Hunſdon*, 34000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe: in all, the number of 84000 men: beſides thoſe goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did preſent her with, at their own proper charges. And as for the trained Bands, the number of both ſorts diſciplined & muſtered to be ready upon all occaſions in the eighth year of King *James*, (for I have ſince ſeen no Muſter-Roll of them) amounted to 296150 able men, 144300 Armed men, 935 Demilances. 677 Light Horſe, 16545 Pioneers; beſides what was required of *Peers* and *Prelates*, ſuppoſed to amount to 20000 Armed men, and 4000 Light Horſe. And for their ſtrength at Sea, beſides the *Navy Royal* conſiſting of about 30 gallant Ships, (beſides the leſſer veſſels) the beſt and braveſt, that any Prince in *Chriſtendom* can boaſt of, as his own propriety: there are ſuch ſtore of *Colliers* and *Merchants* ſhips, fit for any ſervice, that in the year 88 aforeſaid, the Queen had 100 Sayl of good Ships to oppoſe the *Spaniards*; and 20 more, to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*. And in the year 1597 ſhe ſet out for the Iſland-Voyage no fewer than 120 Sayl of all ſorts, of which 60 were men of war.

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of *Henry* the ſeventh, to be no more then 400000 Crowns *per An.* but grants, that afterward they were improved to a million more, by King *Henry* the eighth; the diſſolution of Monaſteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of *Wards*, making that improvement. And, to ſay truth, the Univerſal diſſolution of Religious Houſes of all ſorts, did, for the time, ſo mightily increaſe his annual income: that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveyors*) for the better managing of the ſame. But theſe Additions being waſted by his own exorbitant expenſes, and the ſeveral Alienations made by King *Edward* the ſixth; thoſe Courts of new erection were diſſolved again; and the Revenue fell ſo ſhort of its former height, that in the 12 year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (beſide the Court of *Wards*, and the *Dutchie* of *Lancaſter*) came to no more than to 188197 l. 4 s. Of which 110912 l. 13 s. went out that year upon the Navy, the charge of Houſhold, and other neceſſary Aſſignements. Since which time the great increaſe of trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of mony in all parts of the World; hath added very much to the *Intrado*: The certainty whereof I do not know, ſo neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hear-ſay.

The Arms of the Realm of *England*, are *Mars*, 3 Lions *paſſant Gardant*, *Sol*, The reaſon why theſe Armes quartered with the *French* took the ſecond place; are 1 becauſe that *France* at the time of the firſt quartering of them, was the larger and more famous Kingdome. 2 That the *French* ſeeing the honour done to their Arms, might more eaſily be induced to have acknowledged the *French Title*. 3 Becauſe the *Engliſh* Arms were compounded of the Lion of *Acquitane*, and the two Lions of *Normandy*, being both *French* Dutchies.

The principal Orders of *Knight-hood* are, and were, 1 of the *Round Table*, inſtituted by *Arthur* King of the *Brittans*, and one of the Worlds *nine Worthies*. It conſiſted of 150 Knights, whoſe names are recorded in the Hiſtory of King *Arthur*, there were Sir *Ure*, a wounded Knight, came to be cured of his hurts: it being his Fate that only the beſt Knight of the Order ſhould be his *Chirurgeon* The Arms of moſt of theſe, with their ſeveral *Blazons* (I know not on how good authority) we find in *Bara*, the *French* Herald. The principal of them were Sir *Lancelot*, Sir *Triſtrum*, Sir *Lamarock*, Sir *Gawin* &c. all placed at one *Round Table*, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The

Round Table hanging in the great Hall at *Wincheſter*, is falſly called *Arthurs round-Table*, it being not of ſufficient Antiquity, and containing but 24 Seats. Of theſe Knights there are reported many fabulous Stories· They ended with their *Founder*, and are feigned by that *Lucian* of *France*, *Rablaies*, to be the Ferry-men of Hell; and that their pay is a peice of mouldy bread, and a phillop one the noſe;

2 Of S. *George*, called commonly the *Garter*, inſtituted by King *Eward* the third, to increaſe vertue and valour in the heart of his Nobility; or, as ſome will, in honour of the Counteſs of *Saliſburies* Garter, of which Lady, the King formerly had been enamoured. But this I take to be a vain and idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the *Founder*, and the *Order*; firſt publiſhed by *Polydore Virgil*, a ſtranger to the affairs of *England*, & by him taken upon no better ground than *famæ vulgi* the tradition of the common people; too trifling a Foundation for ſo great a building; Common bruit, being ſo infamous an Hiſtorian, that wiſe men neither report after it, or give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this fame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elſewhere canvaſſed. Suffice it to obſerve in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto this *Order*, in teſtimony of that Bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the *Knights* or *Fellows* of it were to be bound ſeverally one to another, and all of them jointly to the King as the *Soveraign* of it. So ſaith the *Regiſter* of the Order, (in which occurreth not one word of the Ladies *Garter*) affirming that King *Edward* did ſo fit the habit unto that deſign, *Vt omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*. But to return unto the *Order*, there are of it 26 Knights, of which the Kings of *England* are *Soveraigns*: and it is ſo much deſired for its excellency, that 8 Emperors, 21 foreign Kings, 22 foreign Dukes and Princes, beſides divers Noble-men of other Countries, have been *Fellows* of it. The Enſign is a blew Garter, buckled on the left leg, on which theſe words are imbroydered, viz *Honi ſoit qui mal y penſe*. About their necks they wear a *blew Ribband*, at the end of which hangeth the Image of S *George* upon whoſe day the *Inſtallations* of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3 Of the *Bath*, brought firſt into *England*, 1399, by *Henry* the fourth. They are created at the *Coronation* of Kings and Queens, and the *Inſtallation* of the Princes of *Wales*: their duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the Kings Rights. The Knights thereof diſtinguiſhed by a *Red Ribband*, which they were ordinarily about their necks, to difference them from Knights *Batchelors*, of whom they have in all places the precedency; unleſs they be alſo the Sons of Noble-men, to whom their birth gives it before all *Order*.

4 Of *Baronets*, an Order inſtituted by King *James* in the ninth year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Vlſter*. They have Precedency of the *Knights* of the *Bath*, but not of thoſe of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sons of the Nobility. But this being *Hereditary*, not *perſonal*, & rather *civil* than *military*; is not ſo properly to be ranked amongſt *Orders* of Knighthood.

There were in *England*, at and ſince
the time of the Reformation,
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 20.

WALES.

W*ALES* is bounded on all ſides with the Sea, except towards *England*, on the Eaſt; from which ſeparated by the River *Dee*, and a line drawn to the River *Wye*. Antiently it extended Eaſtwards to the River *Severn*, till by the puiſſance of *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, the *Welch* or *Britans* were driven out of the plain Countries beyond that River, & forced to betake themſelves to the Montains: where he cauſed them to be ſhut up and divided from *England*, by an huge Ditch, called in *Welch*, *Claudh Offa*; i.e. *Offa's Dike*: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the *Wye*, into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepſtow*; extended 84 miles in length, even as far as *Cheſter*, where the *Dee* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by *Harald*, That if any *Welchman* was found with a weapon on this ſide of it, he ſhould have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

The name of *Wales* ſome derive from *Idwallo*, the Son of *Cadwallader*, who with the ſmal remainder of his *Britiſh* Subjects, made good the faſtneſſes of this Country, and was the firſt who had the title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive that the name of *Welch*, & *Wales* was given them by the *Saxons*: who having poſſeſſed themſelves of all the reſt of the Country, called the *Britans*, who lived here, by the name of *Walſh*, which in their Language ſignifieth as much as *Aliens*; becauſe they differed from them both in Laws and Language, which is the general Opinion. Moſt probable it is, that as the *Britans* derive their Pedigree from the *Gals* (as before was proved) ſo they might ſtill retain the name; and were called *Walliſh* by the *Saxons*, inſtead of *Galliſh*, the *Saxons* uſing in moſt words W. for G. as *Warre* for *Guarre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather becauſe the *Frenchmen* to this day, call the Country *Galles*; and the Eldeſt Son of *England*, *Le Princes de Galles*; as alſo that the *Dutch* or *Germans* (of whom the *Saxons* are a part) do call ſuch Nations as inhabit on the skirts of *France*, by the name of *Wallons*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, before it had the name of *Wales*, were the *Silures*, poſſeſſing the Counties of *Hereford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth*, and *Clamorgan*, all

Gloceſter-

Wales.

Gloceſterſhire beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Worceſterſhire* on the ſame ſide alſo: their cheif Towns, *Ariconium*, now *Hereford* (not reckoned ſince the time of *Offa* as a part of *Wales*) *Balleum*, now *Buelth*, in *Brecknock*; *Gobannium*, now *Abargevenny*, in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor*, in the County ſo named; and *Bovium*, now *Boverton*, in *Glamorgan*. 2 The *Dimetæ*, poſſeſſing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*, and *Pembrokeſhires*. Whoſe chief Towns were, *Loventium*, now *New-Caſtle*, in *Caermarthen*; *Maridunum*, or *Caermarthen* it ſelf; and *Octopitæ*, where now ſtands S. *Davids*, by the *Welch* called *Menew*, whence that Biſhop hath the name of *Menevenſis* in *Latine*. 3 The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Angleſey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of *Worceſterſhire* beyond the River *Severn*, and all *Shropſhire*, on ſame ſide of the River. Their chief Towns were, *Segontium*, now *Caer Seont*, in *Carnarvonſhire*; *Gononium*, now *Conwey*, in the ſame County; *Bonium*, where after ſtood the fomous Monaſtery of *Banchor*, in *Flintſhire*; and *Mediolanium*, now *Llanvillin*, in the County of *Montgomery*. By theſe three Nations was all that tract poſſeſſed, which lyeth on the other ſide of the *Severn*. A very ſtout and hardy people, and ſo impatient of the yoke, that two of the three *Legions* which the *Romans* kept conſtantly in *Britain*, as before is ſaid, were planted in and near theſe people, the better to contain them in due obedience; that is to ſay, the ſecond Legion at *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Deuvana*, where now ſtands *Weſt Cheſter*. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation ſubject to the power of *Rome*; and no leſs difficult to bring them under the command of the *Saxons*: whom they withſtood, when all the reſt of *Britain* had been conquered by them; and lived to ſee their *Victors* overcome by the *Normans*, before themſelves had yielded to a forain yoke.

The *Chriſtian* faith planted amongſt the *Britains*, in the time of *Lucius*, they ſtill retained, when all the reſidue of the Iſland had been relapſed to *Paganiſm*: and they retained it not in ſecret, as afraid to own it, but in a well conſtituted Church. Inſomuch that *Auguſtine* the Monk, when he firſt preached the Goſpel to the *Engliſh Saxons*, found here no fewer than ſeven Biſhops; that is to ſay, *Herefordenſis*, *Tavenſis*, *Paternenſis*, *Banchorenſis*, *Elwienſis*, *Wiccienſis*, and *Morganenſis*, (or rather *Menevenſis*:) all which, excepting only *Paternenſis*, do ſtill remain amongſt us, though in other names, *Hereford*, and *Worceſter* (*Wiccienſis*) reckoned now in *England*; S. *Davids*, or *Menevenſis*, *Tavenſis* or *Landaff*, *Bangor*, and *Elwyenſis* or S. *Aſaph*, in *Wales*, according to the preſent boundaries and limits of it: And as they did retain the *Faith*, ſo they retained it after the *tradition* of their Predeceſſors; neither ſubmitting unto *Auguſtine* as Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, nor to the Pope from whom he came, as *Oecumenical*, or chief Paſtour of the Church of *Chriſt*; not receiving any new doctrines or traditions from them: but ſtanding on thoſe principles of *Liberty*, and *Religion*, which they were poſſeſſed of; till all the World almoſt had yielded to that powerfull See. Not manumitted from the vaſſalage and thraldom to it, till they embraced the Reformation of the Church of *England*, in Doctrine, Diſcipline, and Worſhip: the Liturgy whereof was by the command of Queen *Elizabeth*, tranſlated into the *Welch* or *Britiſh*, as the Bible alſo was by vertue of an Act of Parliament in the fifth of that Qneen; the care thereof committed to the Biſhop of *Hereford*, and the four Biſhops of *Wales*. But becauſe the Bible then ſet forth was only in the large Church volume; it was in the beginning of the Reign of King *Charles* reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the coſt and charge of my Couſin Mr. *Rowland Heylyn*, one of the Aldermen of *London*; who alſo cauſed the book called *The Practice of Piety* to be printed in that Language for the inſtruction of the people; and a *Welch* or *Britiſh* Dictionary to be made and publiſhed, for the underſtanding of the Language.

But to return unto the Church, and affairs thereof, for the better ordering of the ſame, it hath been long ago divided into four Dioceſes (beſides that of *Hereford*) for the exerciſe of *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline*; thoſe Dioceſes ſubdivided into 9 *Archdeaconries*, as before in *England*: all ſubject heretofore to their own *Primate* or Archbiſhop, reſiding in the City of *Iſca Silurum*, the *Metropolis* of the *Province* of *Britannia Secunda*; called by the *Welch* or *Britains*, *Caer-Leon*, or the City of the *Legion*, from the *ſecond Legion* fixt there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, becauſe ſituate on River ſo named. But this City being too much expoſed to the fury of the *Saxons*, the Archiepiſcopal See was tranſlated to *Menew*, ſtanding on a Promontory in the extreme Angle of *Pembrokeſhire*, by *David* then Archbiſhop thereof, and near kin to *Arthur* that renowned King of the *Britains*: from whom, in tract of time, the name of *Menew* being left off, the See and City came to be called S. *Davids*. From *David* unto *Samſon*, the 26th Archbiſhop of the *Welch*, (being above 400 years) did they hold this dignity: but then the *Peſtilence* extreamly raging in theſe parts, Archbiſhop *Sampſon* carried with him the Epiſcopal *Pall*, and therewith the dignity it ſelf, to *Dole* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no Archbiſhop in *Wales*, in name and title, though the power proper thereunto ſtill remained amongſt them; the *Welch* Biſhops acknowledging no other *Primate*, nor receiving *conſecration* from any other hands, than their own Biſhops of S. *Davids*; till Biſhop *Bernard* was compelled to ſubmit himſelf to the power and juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Canterbry*, in the time of King *Henry* the firſt.

But it's time to look upon the face of the Countrey as it ſtands at the preſent, which we find mountainous and barren; not able to maintain its people, but by helps elſewhere. To make amends for which defect, there were ſome Silver mines diſcovered in it not long ſince, by Sir *Hugh Middleton*, Knight and Baronet; not only to the great honour of his own Countrey, but to the profit and renown of the whole Iſland of *Great Britain*. Their chief commodities are courſe Clothes, entituled commonly by the name of *Welch Freeze*, and Cottens; which Merchandiſe was heretofore brought to *Oſweſtre*

(the

Wales. (the furtheſt Town of *Shropſhire*) as the common *Emporie* ; and there bought by the Merchants of *Shrewſbury*. But the *Welch* coveting to draw the Staple more into their own Countrey, occaſioned the Merchant to hold from buying their commodities : till in the end the Merchant got the better of them, and inforced them to ſettle the whole trade at *Shrewſbury*, where it ſtill continueth.

To ſpeak of Mountains in a Countrey which is wholly mountainous, were a thing unneceſſary : yet of moſt note are thoſe 1 *Snowdon*, 2 *Brechin*, 3 *Rarduvaure*, and 4 *Plinlimmon*. Not much obſervable but for their vaſt height, and thoſe many notable Rivers which iſſue from them. The principal whereof are, 1 *Dee*, in *Latine* called *Deva*, ariſing out of *Rarduvaure* hills in *Merionethſhire*; and running into the Sea not far from *Cheſter*. Over this River *Edgar* King of *England* was rowed triumphantly in his Barge, by eight inferiour Kings, Vaſſals and Tributaries to him, that is to ſay, *Kenneth* King of the *Scots*, *Malcolm* King of *Cumberland*, *Mac-cuis* King of the Iſles, *Dufwall*, *Gryffith*, *Howel*, *Jago*, and *Indethel*, Princes or Kings of *Wales* : uſing theſe words to ſuch as attended on him, that *then his Succeſſors might call themſelves Kings of* England, *when they did the like*. This was in the year 937, and the laſt of his reign. 2 *Wie*, in *Latine* called *Vaga*, ariſing from *Plinlimmon* hills, and emptying it ſelf into the *Severn* at *Chepſtow*. More in the heart of the Countrey (for theſe are but borderers for the greateſt part of their courſe) 3 *Conwy*, which riſing in *Merionethſhire*, and dividing the Counties of *Denbigh* and *Carnarvon*, mingleth with the Sea at *Abur Conwey*. 4 *Tyvie*, which riſing in *Montgomeryſhire*, and paſſing between the Counties of *Cardigan*, *Pembroke*, and *Carmarthen*; runneth into the Sea a little below *Cardigan*. 5 *Chedlady*, which running quite through *Pembrokeshire*, emptieth it ſelf into *Milford* Haven ; one of the moſt capacious and ſafeſt havens, not of *England* only, but of all the world.

The men are of a faithfull carriage towards all men, eſpecially towards one another in a ſtrange Countrey, and towards ſtrangers in their own. Of a temper queſtionleſs much inclining to choler, as being ſubject to the paſſion, by *Ariſtottle* called ἀκροχολία, by which men are quickly moved to anger, and as ſoon appeaſed : of all angers the beſt and nobleſt. Their Language (the old *Britiſh*) hath the leaſt commixture of forein words of any in *Europe* ; and by reaſon of its many Conſonants and guttural Letters, is not ſo pleaſing as ſome others in the Pronunciation. A Language not much ſtudied by thoſe of other Nations ; in regard that ſuch of the Inhabitants who have addicted themſelves to learning, have rather choſe to expreſs themſelves in the *Latine* or *Engliſh* tongues, than that of their own Native Countrey. The principal of which (not to ſay any thing of *Merlin*, the *Tages* of the *Welch* or *Britiſh*) were 1 *Gildas*, for his great knowledge ſurnamed *Sapiens*; 2 *Godfry* of *Monmouth*, and 3 *Giraldus Cambrenſis*, the Hiſtorians ; and of later times, 4 *William Morgan*, the Tranſlation of the Bible into *Welch* : for which performance moſt deſervedly made Biſhop of *Landaff*. 5 Sir *John Price* the Antiquary. 6 *Owen* the Epigrammatiſt, &c.

The whole Countrey (not taking the Counties of *Shropſhire* and *Monmouth* into the reckoning) contains in it 12 Shires only : of which, ſeven were ſet ont by King *Edward* the firſt, that is to ſay, *Glamorgan*, *Pembroke*, *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, *Merioneth*, *Angleſey*, and *Carnarvon*. The other five, *viz.* the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Montgomery*, *Radnor*, and *Brecknock*, were after added out of the *Marchlands*, by King *Henry* the eighth. Theſe 12 Shires are again contracted or ſubdivided into four *Circuits*, for the adminiſtration of Juſtice. Of which the firſt containeth the Counties of *Montgomery*, *Flint*, and *Denbigh*; the ſecond thoſe of *Carnarvon*, *Angleſey*, and *Merioneth*; the third thoſe of *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Pembroke* ; and the fourth thoſe of *Glamorgan*, *Brecknock*, and *Radnor*.

In theſe 12 Shires are reckoned one Chaſe, 13 Forreſts, 36 Parks, 230 Rivers, and an hundred Bridges. They contain alſo 1016 Pariſhes, amongſt which, four Cities, 55 Market-Towns, and 41 Caſtles of the old erection. The Cities ſmall, poor, and inconſiderable. The Market-Towns, thoſe ſpecially on the *Marches* and out-parts of the Countrey, very fair and ſtrong; as being not only built for commerce and trade, but fortified with Walls and Caſtles to keep in the *Welch* : and ſo employed, till the incorporating *Wales* with *England*, took away all occaſion of the old hoſtilities. And for the Caſtles in the In-lands, partly by the iniquity of time, which is *Edax rerum*, but chiefly by the policy of the Kings of *England*, who would not ſuffer any place of ſtrength to remain in a Countrey almoſt inacceſſible, and amongſt men apt to take the advantage offered ; the very ruines of them are now brought to ruine.

But to proceed more particularly ; the four Cities (or Epiſcopal Sees) are 1 S. *Davids*, formerly the *Metropolitan* of *Wales*, ſituate on the promontory in *Pembrokeſhire*, by the Antients called *Octopita* ; in a ſafe place, and far enough from the *Saxons*, whom the *Welch* moſt feared ; but incommodious enough for all the reſt of the *Clergy* to repair unto it : and not ſo ſafe neither unto the Inhabitants of it, in reſpect of ſundry other Nations, who have often ſpoiled and defaced it. For ſtanding near the Sea, it hath been frequently viſited and ſpoiled, by the *Danes*, *Norwegians*, and other *Pirates*; inſomuch that the Biſhops were inforced to remove their dwelling to *Caermarthen* ; which brought the City, (ſmall enough before, when it was at the biggeſt) to the condition of a Village. 2 *Landaff*, upon the River *Taffe*, whence it took the name, *Llan* in the *Welch* or *Britiſh* ſignifying a Church ; *Landaffe*, the Church upon the *Taffe* : the Biſhops whereof derive their Lineal ſucceſſion from thoſe of *Caer Leon* upon *Usk* ; though the Primacy or Archbiſhops See were removed to *Menew*. A ſmall Town now it is, God wot, nothing to ranck it for a City, but the Cathedral Church, and the Prebends houſes, 3 S. *Aſaph* a ſmall Town in *Flintſhire*, ſo called from S. *Aſaph*, the ſecond Biſhop hereof ; left here by *Kentigern a Scot*, by whom the Cathedral Church was founded, about the year 560. Situate on the Banks of the River *Elwy*, thence called *Llan-Elwy* by the *Welch*, the Biſhop *Elwynſis* in ſome *Latine* Writers.

4 *Bangor*,

Wales.

4 *Bangor* upon the *Menai*, a branch of the *Iriſh* Sea, of no more beauty and renown than the other three; but only for the *Cathedral* founded here, by the firſt Biſhops, defaced by *Owen Glendower*, and afterwards re-edified by *Henry Dean*, Biſhop hereof, *An*. 1496.

Towns of chief note, (for theſe Cities have not ſo much in them which is worth the noting) are 1 *Shrewsbury*, counted now in *England*, but heretofore the ſeat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, who had here their palace: which being burnt in ſome of their broils with *England*, is now converted into gardens for the uſe of the Townſmen. The Town well traded and frequented by the *Welch* and *English*, the common Empory of both; well built, and ſtrongly ſituate on a riſing ground, almoſt encompaſſed with the *Severn*; that part thereof which is not fenced with the River, being fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, the work of *Roger de Montgomery* the firſt Earl hereof, *An*. 1067. Over the river for convenience of paſſage, it hath two bridges, and but two, the one toward *England*, and the other called the *Welch-bridge* which is towards *Wales*; built by *Leoline*, or *Llewellen* the firſt, one of the Princes of *North-Wales*; whoſe they conceive to be that *Statua*, which is there ſtanding on the gate. Remarkable ſince the times of King *Henry* the ſixth, for giving the title of Earl to the noble Family of the *Talbots*: a Family of great honour, and as great an eſtate, till the parcelling of the lands betwixt the Daughters and Co-heirs of *Gilbert Talbot*, late Earl hereof; according to the ill cuſtom of *England*, where many times the eſtate goes to the females, and the honour (with nothing to maintain it) to the next Heir Male. 2 *Banchor*, by *Beda* called *Bancornaburg*, a famous Monaſtery of the *Britains*; containing above 2000 *Monks*, attending their devotions at the time appointed, at other times labouring for their livelihood: moſt cruelly and unmercifully ſlaughtered by the *Saxons*, at the inſtigation of *Auſtin* the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, offended that they would not yield unto his authority. 3 *Carnarvon*, on the *Menai* before mentioned, not far from *Bangor* (the Monaſtery of *Banchor* being in *Flintſhire*;) well walled and fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, by King *Edward* the firſt, after his conqueſt of the Countrey; formerly much reſorted to, for the *Chaancery* and *Exchecquer* of the Princes of *North-wales*. 4 *Denbigh*, well ſeated on the banks of the river *Iſtrad*, which from thence runs into the *Cluyd*; the faireſt river of all thoſe parts. A town well traded and frequented, eſpecially ſince it was made by King *Henry* the eight the head town of a County: before which time of great reſort, as being the head town of the Barony of *Denbigh*, conceived to be one of the goodlieſt territories in *England*; having more Gentlemen holding of it than any other. 5 *Matravall*, not far from *Montgomery*, heretofore, a fair and capacious town, honoured with the Palace, and made the chief ſeat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, thence called Kings of *Matravall*; now a poor village. 6 *Caermarthen*, *Maridunum* antiently, whence the modern name, the *Britans* adding *Caer* unto it: not called from *Caer-Merlin*, or the City of *Merlin*, inchanted by the *Lady of the Lake*, in a deep Cave hereabouts, as old Fablers and *Romances* tell us. A fair large town, beautified with a Collegiat Church, to which there was a purpoſe in the time of King *Edward* the ſixth, of removing the Epiſcopal See from S. *Davids*. Not far off, on the top of an hill, ſtands *Dinevour* Caſtle, the chief ſeat of the Princes of *Sonth-Wales*, thence called Kings of *Dinevour*, who had their *Chancery* and *Exchecquer* in the Town of *Caermarthen*. 7 *Haverford Weſt*, ſituated in the *Cherſoneſe*, or Demi-Iſland of *Pembrokeſhire*, by the *Welch* called *Roſs*, by the *Engliſh*, *Little England beyond Wales*, by reaſon of the *Engliſh* Tongue there ſpoken: a Town the beſt traded and frequented of all *South-wales*. 8 *Milford*, in the ſame County of *Pembroke*, famous for giving name to the moſt ſafe and capacious Haven in all the Iſland; conſiſting of ſundry Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships, which make it capable of entertaining the greateſt Navie: the landing place of *Henry* the ſeventh when he came for *England*. 9 *Monmouth*, ſituate at the mouth or influx of the river *Munow* (where it falleth into the *Wie*) whence it had the name: a Town belonging antiently to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, the birth place of King *Henry* the fifth, called *Henry* of *Monmouth*. That one particular enough to renown the place, and therefore we ſhall adde no more. 10 *Ludlow*, a Town of great reſort, by reaſon of the *Court and Councel of the Marches*, kept here for the moſt part, ever ſince for the incorporating of *Wales* with *England*, for the eaſe of the *Welch*, and bordering Subjects, in their ſuits at Law. Situate on the confluence of the *Temd*, and *Corve*, and beautified with a very ſtrong Caſtle: the palace heretofore of ſome of the Princes of *Wales* of the bloud Royal of *England*, at ſuch times as they reſided in this Countrey (of which more anon;) and of late times, the ordinary Seat of the Lord *Preſident of Wales*: now reckoned, as all *Shropſhire* on that ſide of the *Severn*, as a part of *England*. Of *Angleſey* and the towns thereof, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter; now taking notice only of *Aberfraw*, the Royal Seat ſometimes of the Princes of *North-Wales*, called thence *Kings of Aberfraw*.

The Story of the *Britans* till the time of *Cadwallader* their laſt King, we have had before. After whoſe retirement unto *Rome*, the whole name and Nation became divided into three bodies; that is to ſay, the *Corniſh-Britans*, the *Britans* of *Cumberland*, and the *Britans* of *Wales*. The *Corniſh-Britans* governed by their own Dukes, till the time of *Egbert* the firſt Monarch of *England*; by whom ſubdued, *An*. 809. and made a province of that Kingdom. The *Britans* of *Cumberland* had their own Kings alſo (ſome of whoſe names occurre in Story) till the year 946. when conquered by *Edmund* King of *England*, the ſon of *Athelſtan*; their laſt King being named *Dumilius*, as *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter* inform us. But the main body of them getting into the mountainous parts beyond the *Severn*, did there preſerve the name and reputation of their Countrey; although their Princes were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but of the *Walliſh-men* or *Welch*; and much ado they had to make good that title: all the plain Countrey beyond *Severn* being taken from them, by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*; and themſelves made Tributaries for the reſt by *Egbert* before mentioned, and by *Athelſtan* afterwards. Which laſt impoſed a tribute on them of 20 pounds of Gold, 300 pounds of Silver, and 200 head of

Wales. Cattel yearly; exchanged in following times for a tribute of Wolves. But howſoever, they continued for a time the title of Kings, whoſe names are ſet down by *Glover*, in his *Catalogue of Honour*, publiſhed by *Milles*.

The Kings of *Wales*.

A. Ch.

690 1 *Idwallo*, Son of *Cadwallader*,

720 2 *Rodorick*, Son of *Idwallo*. 25.

755 3 *Conan*, Son of *Rodorick*. 63.

818 4 *Mervin*, the Son in law of *Conan*. 25.

843 5 *Rodorick* II. ſirnamed the Great, Son of *Mervin* who divided his Kingdom, ſmall enough before, amongſt his Sons: giving *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*, to *Amarawdh* his eldeſt Son; to *Cadel* his ſecond Son, *Deheubarth* or *South-Wales*; and *Powis-Land* to his youngeſt Son, *Mervin*: conditioned that the two younger Sons, and their Succeſſors, ſhould hold their Eſtates in Fee of the Kings of *North-Wales*, and acknowledge the the Soveraignty thereof, as *Liegemen* and *Homagers*, According unto which appointment, it was ordained in the Conſtitutions of *Howel Dha*, the *Legiſlator* of *Wales*, that as the Kings of *Aberfraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in way of tribute to the Kings of *London*; ſo the Kings of *Divenour*, and *Matravall*, ſhould pay in way of tribute the like ſum to the Kings of *Aberfraw*. But notwithſtanding the reſervation of the *Soveraignty* to the Kings of *North-Wales*, *Rodorick* committed a great *Solœciſm* in point of State, by the diſmembring of his Kingdom; eſpecially at a time when all the Kingdoms of the *Saxons* were brought into one, and that one apt enough upon all accaſions to work upon the weakneſs of the neighbouring *Welch*: which had they continued under one ſole Prince, might have preſerved their Liberty, and themſelves a Kingdome, as well as thoſe of *Scotland*, for ſo long a time, againſt the power and puiſſance of the Kings of *England*. Yet was not this the worſt of the miſchief neither; his Succeſſors ſubdividing (by his example) their ſmall eſtates into many parcels, inſomuch that of the eight tributary Kings which rowed King *Edgar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *Wales*. But *Rodorick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we muſt follow in our ſtory, according to the diviſion of the Countrey made by him into three Eſtates, of *North-Wales*, *Southwales*, and *Powyisland*.

1. *NORTH-WALES*, or *Guinedth*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Carnarvon*, the Iſle of *Angleſey*, and the greateſt parts of *Denbigh* and *Flintſhires*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Denbigh*, *Carnarvon*, *Aberfraw*, ſpoken of before; and ſome in *Angleſey*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter. The Countrey (*Angleſey* excepted) the moſt barren and unfruitfull part of *Wales*; but withall the ſafeſt, and furtheſt from the danger of the incroaching *Engliſh*: which poſſibly might be the reaſon, why it was ſet out for the portion of the eldeſt Son, in whom the Soveraignty of the *Welch* was, to be preſerved by the Kings or

Princes of *North-Wales*.

877 1 *Amarawdh*. 36.

913 2 *Idwallo*, ſon of *Amarawdh*.

3 *Merick*, ſon of *Idwallo*.

4 *James*, or *Jago*, Brother of *Merick*.

1067 5 *Conan*, ſon of *James*, or *Jago*.

1099 6 *Gyffith ap Conan*.

1120 7 *Owen Guinedth*, ſon of *Gryffith*.

1178 8 *David ap Owen*, ſon of *Owen Guinedth*.

1194 9 *Llewellen ap Jorweth*, the Nephew of *David*.

1240 10 *David ap Llewellen*.

1246 11 *Llewellen* II. ſon of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David ap Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales* of the *Britiſh* race. Of whom it is ſaid, that once conſulting with a Witch, he was told by her, that it was his deſtiny, to be carried in triumph thorow *London*, with a Crown on his head. Hereupon making ſome excurſions on the *Engliſh* Borders, he drew upon himſelf the whole power of King *Edward* the firſt, which not being able to withſtand, and the King as willing on the other ſide not to fight with Mountains; Commiſſioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert* Lord *Tiptoff*, and ſome others, for the King of *England*; for the Welch Prince, *Grono ap Heylyn*, a great man of that Countrey, deſcended from *Brockwell Skythrac*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land*, (from whom, if *Camden Clarentieux* be of any credit, the Authour of theſe papers doth derive his pedigree) under whom that Family had the office of *Hereditary Cup-bearer*, and from thence their name; (*Heylyn*, *Promus*, *ſive à poculis*, *quæ vox in proprium nomen abiit*, ſaith the Welch Dictionary.) By thoſe Commiſſioners it was concluded and agreed on, that *Llewellen* ſhould enjoy a part of the Countrey with the title of Prince, during his life: the reſt in preſent, and the whole after his deceaſe, to be ſurrendred over to the King of *England*. But *David* the brother of *Lewellen*, finding himſelf excluded by this agreement, from the hope of ſucceſſion, incenſed his brother and the Welch to a new revolt: the iſſue whereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of juſtice; and the death of *Llewellen*, ſlain in battel, near the *Buleth* in *Brecknockſhire*. Whoſe head being pitched on a ſtake, and adorned with a *Paper-Crown*, was by a Horſeman carried triumphantly thorow *London*, *An.* 1282. And ſo the *Propheſie* was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-Wales*, after they had for the ſpace of 405 years, reſiſted not only the private undertakers and *Adventurers* of *England*, but the Forces of many puiſſant Monarchs; whoſe attempts they alwayes made fruſtrate, by retiring into the heart of their Countrey, and leaving nothing for the *Engliſh* to encounter with, but their woods and mountains. But now the fatal period of the *Britiſh* Liberty being come, they were conſtrained to yield to the ſtronger. What followeth after this we ſhall ſee anon.

The Arms of theſe Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions Paſſant gardant counterchanged.

2 *POWIS LAND* contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery*, and *Radnor*, all *Shropſhire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the reſt of *Denbigh* and *Flintſhire*; comprehending by the eſtimate of thoſe times, 15 *Cantreds*, or *hundreds* of Villages: the word *Cant* ſignifying an Hundred, and *Tret* a Village. The principal Cities, and Towns of it, were S. *Aſaph*, *Shrewſbury*, *Matraval*, ſpoken of before. A Countrey more partaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*; but alwayes lying in harms way, by reaſon of the Neighbour-hood of the more potent *Engliſh*: and therefore given by *Roderick* to *Mervin*, his youngeſt Son, partly becauſe he was the youngeſt; but chiefly becauſe he was a man of approved valour, and ſo more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and diſmembred by the Earles of *Cheſter*, and *Shrewsbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint*, *Denbigh*, and *Shropſhire*; and by the Princes of *North-Wales*, who caſt many a greedy eye upon it. Of the Succeſſours of Prince *Mervin*, I find no good *Conſtat*, more than of *Brookwell*, *Skythrac*, before remembred. The laſt that held it all entire was *Meredyth ap Blethyn*, who following the ill example of *Roderick Mawr*, divided it betwixt *Madoc*, and *Gryffith*, his two Sons. Of which *Madoc* died at *Wincheſter*, An. 1160. in the time of King *Henry* the ſecond; his part hereof depending after his deceaſe, on the Fortunes of *Guynedth*: and *Gryffith* was by *Henry* the firſt made Lord of *Powys* (the ſtile of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his race it continued till the time of King *Edward* the firſt: to whom at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith* the fifth from *Gryffith ap Meredith* before mentioned, ſurrendred his place and title; and received them of the King again to be holden *in Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the cuſtom of *England*. *Avis*, or *Hawis*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was married unto *John Charleton*, *Valect* (or *Gentleman of the Privy Chamber*) to King *Edward* the ſecond, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powis*. *Edward* the fifth alſo of this Line of the *Charltons*, was the laſt of that Houſe; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Eſtate and Title to the Houſe of the *Greyes*: and of them alſo five enjoyed it, the laſt Lord *Powis* of the Line or Race of *Mervin*, being *Edward Grey*, who dyed in the days of our Grand-Fathers. And ſo the title lay extinct, until revived again in the perſon of Sir *William Herbert* of *Red-caſtle*, deſcended from the *Herberts*, Earls of *Pembroke*; created Lord *Powys* by King *Charles* the firſt, *An.* 1629.

The Arms of the Princes of *Powyſland*, were *Or*, a Lyon Rampant, *Gules*.

2 SOUTH-WALES, or *Debenbarth*, contained the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Brecknock*; the greateſt and moſt fruitful part of all *Wales*, but more expoſed to the invaſion of Forrein Nations, *Engliſh*, *Danes*, *Flemings*, and *Norwegians*, by whom the Sea-Coaſts were from time to time moſt grievouſly plagued: Inſomuch that the Kings and Princes hereof were inforced to remove their ſeat from *Caermarthen*, where it was fixt at firſt; unto *Dynevour* Caſtle, as a place of great ſtrength and ſafety: where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence Kings of *Dynevour*, as before is ſaid. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarthen*, *Monmouth*, *Landaffe*, S. *Davids*, ſpoken of already. The Kings and Princes, as far as I can find upon any certainty, are theſe that follow.

The Princes of *South-Wales*.

An.Ch.		
877	1	*Cadal*, the Son of *Rodoric Mawre*.
	2	*Howel*.
907	3	*Howel Dha*, Soveraign King of *Wales*.
948	4	*Owen*, the ſon of *Howel Dha*.
	5	*Meredith*, ſon of *Owen*.
998	6	*Arneas*, or *Enive*, brother of *Meredith*.
	7	*Theodoret* the Great.
1077	8	*Rheſe ap Theodore*.
1093	9	*Gryffith ap Rheſe*.
	10	*Rheſe* II. *ap Gryffith*.
	11	*Gryffith ap Rheſe*, the laſt Prince of *South-Wales* of the Line of *Cadel*,

after they had with great ſtrugling maintained their liberty for the ſpace of 300 years and upwards: but ſo, that though they ſtill preſerved the title of *Princes*, they loſt a great part of their Countrey to the *Norman-Engliſh*. For in the reign of *William Rufus*, *Bernard de Newmark* a Noble *Norman*, ſeized upon thoſe parts which now make the County of *Brecknock*, being then a fair and goodly Lordſhip: and *Robert Fitz-Haymon*, with ſome other noble adventurers, made themſelves maſters of *Glamorgan*; in which the poſterity of ſome of them are ſtill remaining. Incouraged by their good ſucceſs, *Arnulph* of *Montgomery*, in the time of King *Henry* the firſt, won from the *Welch* a great part of *Dyvet*, which we now call *Pembrokeſhire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Mortimer*, about the ſame times did prevail exceedingly in the conqueſt of *Cardigan*, and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no one Countrey left intire, but *Caermarthen* onely; too little to maintain them in ſo high a title. And though this laſt *Gryffith*, in the times of the wars in *England*, betwixt *Maud* the Empreſs, and King *Stephen*, had recovered a great part of this loſt Eſtate; yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long; himſelf deceaſing ſhortly after, and his two Sons, *Cymmerick* and *Meredith* being taken by King *Henry* the ſecond, who moſt cruelly put out their eyes: Yet did the *Welch*, as well as poſſibly they could, endeavour to preſerve the liberty which their Fathers left them; till the felicity and wiſdom of King *Edward* the firſt, put an end unto the wars of *Wales*, and ſetled them in ſome degree of peace and quiet.

But before we come to ſpeak of this, we are to ſhew another Catalogue of the Kings and Princes of *Wales*, different from the ſucceſſion of them before laid down; and made according to the Hiſtory

Wales. of *Wales* writ by *Humfrey Lloyd*: this Catalogue containing the Succeſſion of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Guynedth*, *Dehenbarth*, or *Powyſland*; ſuch as gave law unto the reſt, and had the honor to be called Kings of *Wales*, though Princes only of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh Saxons*, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon Heptarchie*. Only we ſhall find ſome in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expreſſed in the former Tables: but ſuch as by ſtrong hand had intruded into thoſe Eſtates, to the prejudice of the right heirs, overpowered by them.

The Kings and Princes of *Wales*, according to the *Welch* Hiſtory.

A. Ch.		
688	1	*Ivor*, a potent Interloper, upon *Cadwalladers* departure, uſurped the Kingdom.
690	2	*Idwallo*, or *Edwall*, Son of *Cadwallader*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne.
720	3	*Roderick Malwinnoe*, the Son of *Idwallo*.
755	4	*Conan Tudaethwy*, the Son of *Roderic*.
820	5	*Mervin Urich*, in right of *Eiſylht*, his Wife, the Daughter of *Conan*.
843	6	*Roderick Mawre*, (who divided *Wales* into three Eſtates) the Son of *Mervin*.
877	7	*Amarawdh*, Prince of *Guynedth*, the Son of *Roderick Mawre*.
913	8	*Edwall Voel*, Prince of *Guynedth*, Son of *Amarawdh*; made tributary to *Athelſtan* K. of *England*.
940	9	*Howel Dha*, (or the Good) Prince of *Dehenbarth*, and *Powys*.
948	10	*Jevaf*, and *Jago*, Sons of *Edwall Voel*, to whom King *Edgar* did releaſe the tribute ordained by King *Athelſtan*, to be paid in money, for a tribute of *Wolves*; of which we ſpake before when we were in *England*.
982	11	*Howel*, the Son of *Jevaf*, ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his Father being ſtill alive, and of right Prince of *Guynedh*.
984	12	*Cadwallan*, the Brother of *Howell*.
986	13	*Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Dehenbarth*.
992	14	*Edwall* III. Son of *Merick*, the Eldeſt Son of *Edwall Voel*; which *Merick* had been pretermitted, as unfit for Government.
1003	15	*Aedan ap Blethored*, an Uſurper.
1015	16	*Lewellen ap Sitſylth*, deſcended from *Amarawdh*, the firſt Prince of *Guynedh* or *North-wales*.
1021	17	*Jago ap Edwall*, Prince of *Guinedh*, Son of *Edwall* the third.
1037	18	*Gryffith ap Llewellen*, the Son of *Llewellen ap Sitſylth*, and the Lady *Angharad*.
1061	19	*Blethyn* and *Rhywallon*, Sons of *Angharad*, the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen* Prince of *Dehenbarth*, by a ſecond Husband.
1073	20	*Trahaern ap Caradoc*, Couſin to *Blethyn*.
1078	21	*Gryffiyth* Prince of *Guynedh*, Son of *Conan*, the Son of *Jago ap Edwall*, one of the Princes of the ſame; did Homage to *William* the Conqueror, and was the laſt that had the title of King of *Wales*.
1137	22	*Owen Guinedh* Prince of *Guinedh*, and Soveraign Prince of *Wales*, Eldeſt ſon of *Gryffith*.
1169	23	*David ap Owen* Prince of *Guinedh*, the younger ſon of *Owen Guynedh*.
1194	24	*Llewellen*, Son of *Jorwerth*, Eldeſt Son of *Owen Guynedh*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.
1242	25	*David ap Llewellen* Prince of *Guinedh*, Son of *Llewellen ap Jorweth*.
1246	26	*Llewellen*, Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David*, the laſt Soveraign Prince of *Wales*, of the race of *Cadwallader*; overcome and ſlain in battel by King *Edward* the firſt, An. 1282. as before is ſaid: by means whereof the *Principality of Wales* was added to the Crown of *England*.

When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great buſineſs, he gave unto his *Engliſh* Barons and other Gentlemen of note, many fair Signeuries and Eſtates; as well to reward them for their ſervice in the conqueſt, as to engage ſo many able men, both in purſe and power, for the perpetual defence and ſubjugation of it. As for the Lordſhip of *Flint*, and the Towns and Eſtates lying on the Sea-coaſts; he held them in his own hand, both to keep himſelf ſtrong, and to curb the *Welch*: and (wherein he dealt like the politick Emperor *Auguſtus*) pretending the eaſe of ſuch as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and men of employment under himſelf only.

This done, he divided *Wales* into ſeven Shires, viz. 1 *Glamorgan*, 2 *Carmarden*, 3 *Pembroke*, 4 *Cardigan*, 5 *Merioneth*, 6 *Carnarvon*, and 7 *Angleſey*, after the manner of *England*. Over each of theſe, as he placed a particular *Engliſh* Lieutenant, ſo he was very deſirous to have one general *Engliſh* Vicegerent over the whole body of the *Welch*. But this when they mainly withſtood, he ſent for his wife, then great with child to *Carnarvon*: where ſhe was delivered of a Son. Upon newes whereof, the King aſſembled the *Britiſh* Lords, and offered to name them a Governour born in *Wales*, which could not ſpeak one word of *Engliſh*, and whoſe life no man could tax. Such a one when they had all ſworn to obey, he named his young Son *Edward*; ſince which time our Kings Eldeſt Sons are called *Princes of Wales*. Their *Inveſtiture* is performed by the impoſition of a cap of eſtate, and a *Coronet* on his head that is inveſted, as a token of his *Principality*; by delivering into his hand a *verge*, being the Emblem of government; by putting a ring of *gold* on his finger, to ſhew him how now he is a *Husband* to the Country, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a patent, *to hold the*

ſaid

Wales.

ſaid Principality, to him and his heirs Kings of England. By which words, the ſeparation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themſelves ſo excellent an occaſion, of obliging unto them their eldeſt Son, when they pleaſe. In immitation of this cuſtom, *more ex* Anglia *tranſlato* (ſaith *Mariana*) *John* the firſt of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, made his Son *Henry* Prince of the *Aſturia's*; which is a countrey ſo craggie and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Wales of Spain*. And all the *Spaniſh* Princes even to theſe times, are honoured with this title of *Prince of the Aſturia's*.

Notwithſtanding this provident care of *Edward* the firſt, in eſtabliſhing his Empire here; and the extream rigor of the Law here uſed by *Henry* the 4th. in reducing them to obedience, after the rebellion of *Owen Glendower*, yet till the time of *Henry* the 8th, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welch* bloud) they ſeldom or never contained themſelves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by act of Parliament) one Nation with the *Engliſh*, ſubject to the ſame Laws, capable of the ſame preferments, and priviledged with the ſame immunities. He added alſo 6 Shires to the former number, out of thoſe Countries which were before reputed as the Borders and *Marches* of *Wales*; and enabled them to ſend Knights and Burgeſſes unto the *Engliſh* Parliaments: ſo that the name and language only excepted, there is now no difference between the *Engliſh* and *Welch*; an happy Union.

The ſame King *Henry* eſtabliſhed for the eaſe of his *Welch* ſubjects, a Court at *Ludlow*, like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*: wherein the Laws are miniſtred according to the faſhion of the Kings Courts of *Weſtminſter*. The Court conſiſteth of one *Preſident*, who is for the moſt part, of the Nobility, and is generally called, the *Lord Preſident of Wales*; of as many Counſellors as it ſhall pleaſe the King to appoint; one Attourney, one Sollicitor, one Secretary, and the four Juſtices of the Counties of *Wales*. The Town it ſelf (for this muſt not be omitted) adorned with a very fair Caſtle, which hath been the Palace of ſuch Princes of *Wales*, of the *Engliſh* bloud, as have come into this Countrey, to ſolace themſelves among their people. Here was young *Edward* the 5th, at the death of his Father; and here dyed Prince *Arthur*, Eldeſt Son to *Henry* the 7th: both being ſent hither by their Fathers to the ſame end, *viz.* by their preſence to ſatisfie and keep in order the unquiet *Welchmen*. And certainly, as the preſence of the *Prince* was then a terror to the rebellious, ſo would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable people.

What the *Revenues* of this *principality* are, I cannot ſay: yet we may boldly affirm that they are not very ſmall, by theſe reaſons following, *viz.* 1 By the Compoſition which *Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the firſt: who being Prince of *North Wales* only, and diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of that, was fain to redeem the reſt, of the ſaid King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 100000 pounds of our preſent money) to be paid down in ready coin; and for the reſidue to pay 1000 *l. per annum*. And 2ly, by thoſe two circumſtances, in the marriage of the Lady *Katharine* of *Spain*, to the above named Prince *Arthur*. For firſt, her Father *Ferdinando* being one of the warieſt Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats; required for her Joynture, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Cheſter*. And ſecondly, after the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the Realm perſwaded Prince *Henry* to take her to Wife; that ſo great a Treaſure as the yearly *Revenue* of her Joynture, might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of *Wales* differ from thoſe of *England*, only by the addition of a *Label* of three points. but the proper and peculiar device, and which we commonly, though corruply, call the *Princes Arms*, is a Coronet beautified with three *Oſtrich* Feathers, and inſcribed round with *ICH DIEN*, that is, I ſerve: alluding to that of the Apoſtle, *The Heir while he is a child differeth not from a Servant*. This *Coronet* was won by that valiant Prince, *Edward* the black Prince, at the battel of *Crecie* from *John* King of *Bohemia*; who there wore it, and whom he there ſlew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now ſhut up my diſcourſe of *Wales*, with that teſtimony of the People, which *Henry* the 2d. uſed in a Letter to *Emanuel* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*; *The Welch Nation is ſo adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed men; ready to ſpend their bloud for their Countrey, and pawn their life for praiſe*: and adding only this, that ſince their incorporating with the *Engliſh*, they have ſhewed themſelves moſt loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State: cordially devoted to their King; and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties, and Religion, as well as any of the beſt of their fellow-ſubjects; whereof they have given good proof in theſe later times.

There are in *Wales*
Archbiſhops 0. Biſhops 4.

The Borders.

The BORDERS.

BEfore we come into *Scotland*, we muſt of neceſſity paſs through the Battable ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms; called The Borders; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of military men, ſubtle, nimble, and by reaſon of their often ſkirmiſhes, well experienced, and adventurous. Once the *Engliſh* Border extended as far as unto the *Fryth*, or Strait of *Edenburgh* on the Eaſt, and of the *Dunbriton* on the Weſt (the firſt *Fryth*, by the Latines called *Bodotria*, and the latter *Glotta*:) betwixt which, where now ſtandeth the Town of *Sterling*, was an antient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the *Fryth* of *Edenburgh*; on a Croſs ſtanding, whereupon was writ this *Paſport*.

I am *Free march* as paſſengers may ken,
To *Scots*, to *Britains*, and to *Engliſh-men*.

But when *England* groaned under the burden of the *Daniſh* oppreſſion, the *Scots* well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the *Tweed*, but alſo took into their hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Weſtmorland*. The *Norman* Kings again recovered theſe Provinces, making the *Borders* of both Kingdoms to be *Tweed*, Eaſt; the *Solway*, Weſt; and the *Cheviot* hills in the midſt. Of any great wars made on theſe *Borders*, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of *Edward* the firſt: who taking advantage of the *Scots* diſagreements, about the ſucceſſor of *Alexander* the 3d, hoped to bring the Countrey under the obedience of *England*, This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end: the Wars ſurviving the Authour: ſo that what *Velleius* ſaith of the *Romans*, and *Carthaginians*, I may as well ſay of the *Scots* & *Engliſh*; for almoſt 300 years together, *aut bellum inter eos populos, aut belli præparatio, aut infida pax fuit*. In moſt of theſe conflicts the *Scots* had the worſt. So that *Daniel* in his Hiſtory ſeemeth to marvail how this Corner of the Iſle could breed ſo many, had it bred nothing but men, as were ſlain in theſe wars. Yet in the Reign of *Edward* the 2d, the *Scots* (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became ſo terrible to the *Engliſh Borderers*, that an hundred of them would fly from three *Scots*. It is a cuſtom among the *Turks*, not to believe a *Chriſtian* or a *Jew* complaining againſt a *Turk* except their accuſation be confirmed by the Teſtimony of ſome *Turk* alſo; which ſeldom hapning, is not the leaſt cauſe why ſo little juſtice is there done the *Chriſtians*. In like manner, it is the Law of theſe *Borderers*, never to believe any *Scots* complaining againſt any *Engliſh-man*, unleſs ſome other *Engliſh-man* will witneſs for him; and ſo on the other ſide. *Ex jure quodam inter limitaneos rato* (ſaith *Camden in his Elizab.*) *nullus niſi Scotum, nullus niſi Anglus in Anglum, teſtis admittitur*. This Cuſtom making void in this faſhion, all kinds of accuſations; was one of the greateſt cauſes of the Inſolencies of both ſides committed. Beſides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but ſometimes were *Scots*, ſometimes *Engliſh*, as their preſent crimes and neceſſities required protection, or pardon. To keep in this people, and ſecure the *Borders*, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Warden of the Marches*: one being placed over the Eaſt, the other over the Weſt, the third over the middle *Borders*. In *England*, the *Warden* of the Eaſt *Marches* had his Seat at *Barwick* (a Town of great ſtrength, and which for the conveniency of its ſituation, was the firſt thing which the *Engliſh* took care to defend, and the *Scots* to ſurpriſe) of which he was alſo Governor. The *Warden* of the Weſt *Marches*, had his Seat in *Carlile*, which *Henry* the 8th. for that cauſe ſo well fortified. The *Warden* of the middle *Marches* had no ſet place of reſidence, but was ſometimes in one place, ſometimes in another, according as accaſion required; the Office being executed for the moſt part, by the Wardens of the Eaſtern or Weſtern Marches. But *Imperii medium eſt, terminus ante fuit*, by the bleſſed marriage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; theſe Officers, and the cauſe of them, the wars, are quite extinguiſhed.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of *Britain*, ſeparated from *England* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*; and the *Cheviot* Hills, extending from one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgill*) 480 miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place diſtant from the Sea above 60 miles, and the Countrey ending like the ſharp point of a Wedge. And for the length aſſigned unto it by *Polydore*, it muſt be made up by meaſuring the crooks and windings of the ſhores, every where thruſting out with very large *Promontories*, and cutting-deep *Indentures* into the land. For meaſuring in a ſtrait line from North to South, the length thereof from *Solway Fryth* to the *Straitby-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten *Italian* miles; and from *Barwick* unto *Straitby-head*, is a great deal ſhorter. So that there is no ſuch over-ſight in the *Maps* of *Britain*, nor ſuch neceſſity to correct them, as was ſometimes thought.

Scotland.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii* a chief People of it: ſometimes *Albania*, from *Albanie* or *Braid Albin*, a principal Province in the North. But the more uſual name is *Scotia*, or *Scotland*; though the reaſon of the name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Ægyptian Pharaoh*: of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reaſon (though that none of the beſt) from the *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *German*, or *Samaritan* people, of noted fame; whom they will have to ſeize firſt on ſome parts of *Spain*, from thence to tranſplant themſelves into *Ireland*; and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſlands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable opinion is that they were no other then meer *Iriſh*, (whoſe language, habit, and the moſt barbarous of their cuſtoms, the *Highlanders* or natural *Scots* do ſtill retain) united in the name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman* Empire: the word *Scot* ſignifying in their Language, a body aggregated into one, out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the *Dutch*. *Scot illud dicitur*, ſaith *Camden* out of *Mathew* of *Weſtminſter*) *quod ex diverſis rebus in unum acervum aggregatur*. Firſt mentioned by this name in ſome fragments of *Porphyrie* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Aurelian*) as they are cited by S. *Hierom*: after the death of *Conſtantine* much ſpoken of in approved Authors, as the confederates of the *Picts*, in haraſſing the *Roman* Province.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlanders*, and the *Lowlanders*, The *Highlanders* or *Iriſh Scots* inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the Weſt parts of the Continent adjoyning to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Iriſh* at this day: not to be civiliz'd (as K. *JAMES* obſerveth in his moſt excellent *Baſilicon Doron*) *but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly Scots* among them. The *Lowlanders*, or *Engliſh Scots* (as I may well call them) inhabiting on this ſide the two *Fryths* of *Dunbritton* and *Edenburgh*, and the plainer Countries all along the *German* Ocean; are the more civil of the two, as being of the ſame *Saxon* race with the *Engliſh*. This is evident, firſt by their Language, being only a broad Northern *Engliſh*, a *Dialect* only of that tongue: 2ly, by the teſtimony of the *Highlanders* themſelves, who are the true *Scots*, and ſpeak the old *Iriſh* language, by whom the *Lowlanders* and the *Engliſh* are called by the ſame name of *Saxons*: 3ly, by the general conſent of all Hiſtorians, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northumbers* or *Engliſh Saxons* beyond *Humber*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Frythes* beforementioned: and there continued for the ſpace of 300 years: and 4ly, by the confeſſion of ſome ingenuous Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, that the *Saxons* and the *Scots* invading *Britain* much about the ſame time; the *Saxons* might extort the Eaſtern ſhore, lying next their Countrey, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Weſtern parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides*, or *Weſtern Iſlands*, from whence they firſt paſſed into *Britain*.

The Country for the moſt part, eſpecially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford ſuſtenance for the *Natives* of it; were they not a people patient of want and hunger; temperate in diet, and not accuſtomed unto that riot and exceſs, uſed commonly in richer and more plentiful Countries. Fruit they have very little, and not many trees either for building or for fewel: the people holding, as in *France*, at the *Will of the Lord*, and therefore not induſtrious to build, or plant. Their chief Commodities are courſe cloath, Fiſh in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two laſt their mountains do afford ſome rich undecaying mines.

The people have been noted by their beſt Writers, for ſome barbarous cuſtoms entertained amongſt them. One of which was, if any two were diſpleaſed, they expected no law; but bang'd it out bravely, one and his kindred, againſt the other and his: and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word ſo barbarous, that were it to be expreſſed in *Latine*, or *French*, it muſt be by *circumlocution*. Theſe deadly *Feides*, King *James* in his moſt excellent *Baſilicon Doron* adviſeth his ſon to redreſs with all care poſſible: but it pleaſed God to give him ſo long a life as to ſee it in his own dayes remedied: wherein he got a greater victory over that ſtubborn people, than ever did any forein Prince, or any of his Predeceſſors could do before him; an act indeed truly royal, and worthy himſelf. Another cuſtom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongſt the Heathen, and much leſs in *Chriſtendom*; which took beginning as the *Scottiſh* Hiſtorians affirm, in the reign of *Ewen* the 3d, who is the fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the firſt *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto laſciviouſneſs, made a Law, that himſelf and his ſucceſſors ſhould have the *maidenhead* or firſt nights lodging with every woman, whoſe husband held land immediately from the Crown: and the *Lords* and Gentlemen of all thoſe, whoſe husbands were their tenants or *homagers*. This was, it ſeems, the *Knights ſervice* which men held their ſtates by; and continued till the days of *Malcolm Comnor*: who at the requeſt of his wife *Margaret*, (ſhe was the ſiſter of *Edgar Atheling*) aboliſhed this Law; and ordained, that the *tenants* by way of commutation, ſhould pay unto their Lords a mark in money; which tribute the *Hiſtorians* ſay is ſtill in force. It was called *Marcheta Mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a horſe in the old *Gallique*, (implying the obſcene ſignification of *Equitare* as Mr. *Selden* thinks; or from *Marca*, the ſum of money by which it was afterward redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am that this laſt cuſtom was of ſuch a barbarous and bruitiſh nature, that the cuſtom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramines* the firſt nights lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in proſtituting their Wives and Daughters to the luſts and pleaſure of their *Gueſts*; have not more *unchriſtianity* in them, then this of thoſe *Scottiſh* Chriſtians, if I may ſo call them.

Theſe Cuſtoms ſhew the antient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the neighbouring Nation; nor are they ſo broken of the former, but that they are obſerved by a *modern Writer*, to be ſtill greedy of revenge where they find means to take it; as alſo to be a ſubtile and politick people, inclined to Factions and Seditions among themſelves; which he that reads their Srories

cannot

Scotland. cannot cauſe but [illegible], as King *James* obſerveth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, ever weary of the preſent ſtate, and deſirous of novelties; accuſtomed to judge and ſpeak raſhly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have alwayes carried themſelves with ſuch untractableneſs, that more Kings have been betrayed, murdered, and depoſed by the *Scots*; than by all the Nations in the world. But take them in themſelves without theſe relations, and they are ſaid to be an induſtrious people, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well verſed in *Grammatical* learning, of which moſt of their *Gentry* have a ſmattering. And of moſt note in point of learning, have been 1 *Marianus* (ſurnamed) *Scotus*, and 2 *Hector Boetius*, the Hiſtorians; 3 *John Major*, a well-known School-man, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4 *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unſound *States-man*; whoſe Hiſtory, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more miſchief in the world, than all *Machiavels* works. Not to have been remembred here, but becauſe he was Pædagogue to 5 King *James*, of moſt famous memory; whoſe printed works declare his large abilities in all kinds of learning. 6 *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchiſton*. 7, 8 *Barclay*, the Father and the Son. 9 *John Skene*, the beſt Antiquary of this Nation. 10 Doctor *John Maxwell*, the late learned Biſhop of *Roſſe*, and my very good friend; beſides ſome others of leſſe note.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was here planted by divers men, according to the ſeveral Nations who did here inhabit; amongſt the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan*, the firſt Biſhop of *Lindiſfarn*, or *holy Iſland*; amongſt the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eaſtern parts, by *Ninias*, Biſhop of *Candida Caſa*, or *Whit-hern*, in *Galloway*; amongſt the *Northern-Picts*, An. 555. and finally amongſt the *Scots*, by *Palladius*, a Deacon of *Rome*, ſent to them hither for that purpoſe by Pope *Celeſtine*, An. 435. or thereabouts. And for the *Reformation* of *Religion*, overgrown with the ruſt and rubbiſh of the *Romiſh* Church, (degenerated from it ſelf in the later dayes) it was here made by a ſtrong hand, according to the judgement of *Knox* and others: not taking counſel with the *Prelates*, nor ſtaying the leiſure of the Prince, as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and *Prelates* out of all authority; made by that means, more naturally ſubject unto alterations than it had been otherwiſe; or onely to be made good by the ſame violence, which firſt introduced it. 'Tis true, that for a while, being in danger of the *French*, and of neceſſity to ſupport themſelves by the power and favour of the *Engliſh*, they bound themſelves by a ſolemn ſubſcription, to adhere onely to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to obſerve that form of Worſhip, which was there eſtabliſhed. *Religionis cultui, & Ritibus cum Anglis communibus ſubſcripſerunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan*, their own State-Hiſtorian. But no ſooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leiſure to effect their ends; and have endeavoured ever ſince by practices, and correſpondency with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thruſt their own Conſtitutions and Form of Worſhip on the Church of *England*.

As for the Government of the Church, it was originally by Biſhops, (as in all parts elſe;) but ſo as they exerciſed their Functions and Juriſdictions in all places, equally, whereſoever they came: The Kingdom not being divided into *Diocèſes*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third, *An.* 1070. or thereabouts. Nor had they any Archbiſhops till the year 1478. The Archbiſhop of *York* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the Metropolitan of *Scotland*. But being once ſetled in an orderly and conſtant *Hierarchy*, they held the ſame untill the *Reformation* began by *Knoxe*: when he and his aſſociates approving the *Genevian* plat-form, took the advantage of the Minority of King *James* the ſixth, to introduce *Presbyterian* Diſcipline, and ſuppreſſe the Biſhops; forbidding them by their own ſole authority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the *Church*, and *Cantoning* the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own aſſigning. And that the King might not be able to oppoſe their doings, they kept him under by ſtrong hand, impriſoned him at *Sterlin*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*, removed from him all his faithfull ſervants, and ſeized upon his principal Fortreſſes: and in a word ſo baffled and affronted him upon all occaſions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom, and retire to *Venice*. Which doubtleſs he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by ſome of great place and power) had not the hopes of coming at the laſt to the Crown of *England*, made him ſtay it out: So that this *Maxim* of *No Biſhops no King*, was not made at random, but founded on the ſad experience of his own condition. And though upon the ſenſe of thoſe inconveniences which that alteration brought upon him; he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, reſtore again the *Epiſcopal* Order, and ſetled it both by *Synodical* Acts, and by Acts of Parliament: yet the ſame reſtleſs ſpirit breaking out again in the reign of his Son, *An.* 1638. did violently eject the Biſhops, and ſuppreſſe the calling; and ſet up their Presbyteries throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous, or miraculous things rather of this Countrey are, 1 the Lake of *Mirton*, part of whoſe waters do congeal in Winter, and part of them not. Secondly, That in the Lake of *Lennox*, being 24 miles in compaſs, the Fiſh are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. Thirdly, That when there is no wind ſtirring, the waters of the ſaid Lake are ſo tempeſtuous, that no Mariner dares venture on it. Fourthly, That there is a ſtone called the *Deaf Stone*, 12 foot high, and 33 Cubits thick; of this rare quality, that a Musket ſhot off on the one ſide, cannot be heard by a man ſtanding on the other. If it be otherwiſe (as he muſt have a ſtrong faith, who believes theſe wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot* Hills upon the *Borders*; and Mount *Grampius* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; the ſafer ſhelter of the *Picts*, or Northern *Britans* againſt the *Romans*, & of the *Scots* againſt the *Engliſh*; now called the Hills of *Albany*, or the mountainous Regions of *Braid-Albin*. Out of theſe ſpringeth the 1 *Tay*, or *Taus*, the faireſt River of *Scotland*, falling into the Sea about *Dundee*, in the Eaſt-ſide; and 2 the *Cluyd*, emptying it ſelf into *Dunbritton Fryth*, on the Weſt-ſide of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of moſt note, are, the 3 *Banoc*, emptying it ſelf into the *Fryth* of *Edenburgh*;

on the banks whereof was fought that fatal battel of *Bannocks-bourn*, of which more anon. 4 *Spey*, 5 *Dee*, the *Ocaſa* of *Ptolemie*: none of them of any long courſe, by reaſon that the Countrey Northward is but very narrow.

In reference to *Eccleſiaſtical* affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 Dioceſes, to which the Dioceſe of *Edenburgh* (taken out of that of S. *Andrews*) hath been lately added: and in relation to the *Civil*, into divers *Seneſcalſies* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the moſt part hereditary, are no ſmall hindrance to the due execution of Juſtice. So that the readieſt way to redreſs the miſchief (as King *James* adviſed) is to diſpoſe of them as they fall or Eſcheat to the Crown, according to the laudable cuſtom (in that caſe) in *England*.

The greateſt *Friends* of the *Scots*, were the *French*, to whom the *Scots* ſhewed themſelves ſo faithfully, that the *French* King committed the defence of his perſon to a ſelected number of *Scotiſh* Gentlemen: and ſo valiantly, that they have much hindred the *Engliſh* Victories in *France*. And certainly the *French* feeling the ſmart of the *Engliſh* puiſſance alone, have continually heartned the *Scots* in their attempts againſt *England*, and hindred all means of making union betwixt them: as appeared, when they broke the match agreed on, between our *Edward* the ſixth, and *Mary* the young Queen of *Scots*. Their greateſt enemy was the *Engliſh*, who overcame them in many battels, ſeized once upon the kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the mountainous and unacceſſible woods hath not been more advantagious to the *Scots*, than their power: for ſo much King *James* ſeemeth to intimate in his ſpeech at *Whitehall*, 1607. *And though*, ſaith he, *the* Scots *had the honour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the defenſible ſide; and may in part thank their hills and inacceſſible paſſages, that ſaved them from an utter overthrow, at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them.* But

Jam cuncti gens una ſumus, ſic ſimus in ævum:

One onely Nation now are we,
And let us ſo for ever be.

The chief Cities are *Edenburgh* (of old called *Caſtrum Alatum*) in *Lothien*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Court of Juſtice. It conſiſteth chiefly of one ſtreet, extending in length one mile, into which run many pretty lanes; ſo that the whole compaſs may be nigh three miles: extending from Eaſt to Weſt on a riſing ground, at the Summit or Weſt end whereof ſtandeth a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep and precipitious Rock, which commandeth the Town; ſuppoſed to be the *Caſtrum Alatum*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemie*. Under the command or rather the protection of which Caſtle, and through the neighbourhood of *Leith*, ſtanding on the *Fryth*, and ſerving as a Port unto it; and finally by the advantage of the Courts of Juſtice, and the Court Royal called *Holy-Rood-Houſe*, it ſoon became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withall factious and ſeditious, conteſting with their Kings, or ſiding againſt them upon all occaſions. No way to humble them, and keep them in obedience to their Soveraign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it the priviledges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royal and the Courts of Judicature; which they more fear then all the Plagues that can befall them. It belonged in former times to the *Engliſh Saxons*, (as all the reſt of the Countrey from *Fryth* to *Barwick*) from whom oppreſſed by the tyranny of the *Danes*, it was taken by the *Scots* and *Picts*, *Anno* 800. or thereabouts. 2 *Sterling*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom ſo called: a ſtrong Town, and beautified withall with a very fair Caſtle, the birth-place of King *James* the ſixth, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*. Near to which Town, on the banks of the River *Bannock*, happened the moſt memorable diſcomfiture that the *Scots* ever gave the *Engliſh*: who beſides many Lords, and 700 Knights and men of note, loſt in this Fight (as the *Scotiſh* Writers do report) 50000 of the common Souldiers (our *Engliſh* Hiſtories confeſs 10000, and too many of that) the King himſelf (*Edward* the ſecond) being compelled to flie for his life and ſafety. Some of the *Scotiſh* Writers tell us that the purer ſort of ſilver, which we call *Sterling* money, did take the name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our ſilver *Bullion* comes from *Bovillon* in *Luxemburgh*, or from the Port of *Boulogne* in *France*; the truth being, that it took that name from the *Eaſterlings*, or Merchants of *Eaſt Germany*, drawn into *England* by King *John*, to refine our Coin. 3 *Glaſco*, in *Cluidsdale*, honoured with an Archbiſhops See, and a publick School (to which ſome give the name of an Univerſity) founded here by Archbiſhop *Turnbal*, *Anno* 1554. 4 S. *Andrews*, the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archiepiſcopal See, and an Univerſity; by the *Latines* called *Fanum Reguli*: which, and the *Engliſh* name, it took from the bones of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, tranſlated firſt from *Patras* in *Peloponneſus* where he ſuffered death, unto *Conſtantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Albatus Regulus*, in the year 378. (if they be not miſtaken in the time, who made the ſtory.) Over which *Relicks* he is ſaid to have built a Monaſtery, which after grew to be a City: called from the Founder, *Fanum Reguli*; in honour of the Saint, S. *Andrew*. The Biſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *Scotland*; the City ſeated on the Ocean, near the fall of the *Ethan*, overlooked with a ſtrong & goodly Caſtle, the Archbiſhops ſeat. 5 *Falkland*, in the ſame Province of *Fife*, beautified with a retiring houſe of the Kings, reſorting often thither on *receß* from buſineſs, or for the commodity and pleaſure of hunting, which the place affords. 6 *Dundee*, in *Latine*, *Toadunum*, a rich and noted Port at the mouth of the *Tay*, the chief Town of *Anguis*. 7 *Aber-don*, at the mouth of the River *Done*, whence it hath the name, (the word *Aber* in the *British* ſignifying the mouth or influx of a River) an Univerſity, and Biſhops See. 8 *Perth*, or S. *Johns Town*, ſeated on the *Tay*, but in the middle of the Kingdom; walled and repleniſhed with an induſtrious people: the chief Town of the Sheriffdom of *Perth*. 9 *Scone*, on

the

ther further ſide of the *Tay*, adorned heretofore with a famous Monaſtery; the uſual place for the Inaugeration of the *Scotiſh* Kings: the fatal ſtone, on which they did receive the Crown, (the *Palladium* of the *Scotiſh* Kingdom) here kept, till the removal of it unto *Weſtminſter*, by King *Edward* the fiſt. Upon which ſtone there were of old ingraven theſe Verſes.

> *Ni fallat fatum*, Scoti *quocunque locatum*
> *Invenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem*,
> Tranſlated in old Meeter thus;
> The *Scots* ſhall brook the Realm as natif ground,
> If *Wierds* fail not, whaire ere this *Stane* is found.

Moſt happily accompliſhed in the Succeſſion of K. *James* the ſixth, to the Crown of *England*. 10 *Dunbritton* (*Britannodunum* in the *Latine*) ſeated in a graſſie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Cluyd*, upon two ſteep and precipicious Rocks, flanked on the Weſt with the ſaid two Rivers, and on the Eaſt with a myery Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the ſtrongeſt hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable but by Famin or Treaſon, and the chief Town of the Weſt ſide of *Scotland*; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoyning.

The Antient Inhabitants of this Countrey dwelling within the limits of the *Roman* Province, were the *Gadeni*, poſſeſſing *Tevidale*, *Twedale*, *Merch*, and *Lothien*, whoſe chief City was *Caſtra Alata*, now *Edenburgh*. 2 The *Damnii*, dwelling in *Cluydsdale*, *Lennox*, *Sterling*, and *Mentieth*, whoſe chief City was *Vanduara*, now *Renfraw*; *Lindum*, now *Lelinthquo*. 3 The *Selgovæ*, inhabited in *Liddiſdale*, *Euſedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annondale*, and *Niddiſdale*, whoſe chief place was *Carbantorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*: and 4 the *Novantes*, containing *Galloway*, *Carrickt*, *Kyle* and *Cunningham*: principal places of the which were, *Lucopibia*, now *Whit-herne*, and *Berigonium*, now *Bargenie*. Without the *Province*, amongſt the *Picts* or *barbarous Britans*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Mæta*, the Nations of moſt note were, 5 the *Caledonii* properly ſo called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Perth*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6 The *Vermines* of *Mehnis* and *Mar*. 7 The *Talzali* of *Buquhan*. 8 The *Vacomagi* of *Loquhabre* & *Murray*. 9 The *Cantæ* of *Roß* & *Southerland*. 10 The *Cantini* of *Cathneß*; and 11 The *Cornubii* of *Strathnavern*, the furtheſt Countrey Northward of all the Iſland. Chief Towns of which were, *Tama*, *Banatia*, *Orca*, *Devana*, and *Tueſis*; which we know not where to find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this people, as they related to the *Romans*, hath been ſhewn before. On the withdrawing of whoſe Forces, ſo much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was poſſeſſed by the *Saxons*, the reſidue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*: ſave that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held, made themſelves maſters alſo of the plain Countreys, lying on the *German* Ocean, to which the paſſage out of *Germany* was both ſhort and eaſie. By which accompt, beſides thoſe places in the Eaſt, they were poſſeſſed of their Counties or Sheriffdoms of *Teifudale*, *Twedale*, *March*, *Lotien*, *Liddiſdale*, *Euſedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, *Niddiſdale*, *Cluydsdale*, *Galloway*, *Carick*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lennox*, and *Sterling*, being the richeſt, and moſt flouriſhing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots* for their part, had the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid-Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorn*, *Loquhabre*, and *Strathnavern*, lying on the Weſt and North: the other Northern moity (excepting ſome parts near the coaſt of the *German* Ocean poſſeſſed by the *Saxous*) containing the now Counties of *Cathneſs*, *Southerland*, *Roß*, *Murray*, *Buquhan*, *Marre*, *Mern*, *Angus*, *Athol*, *Perth*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into theſe parts hath been ſhewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of thoſe who will have to deſcend from the *Agathyrſi*, a people of *Scythia*) they were no other than ſuch of the natural *Britans*, as never were brought under the *Roman* Empire, but ſtill preſerved their Countrey in its former Liberty; called therefore by *Tertullian*, *inacceſſa* Romanis *loca*, as indeed they were: and uſing ſtill their antient cuſtom of painting their bodies, after the reſt of their Countreymen had conformed themſelves to more civil courſes, were by the *Romans* called *Picti*; and by that name firſt mentioned in the *Panegyrick* of *Eumonius*, in the time *Conſtanſtine* the *Great*. They long poſſeſſed theſe parts without an *Inmate*, even till the year 424. when the *Iriſh-Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly poſſeſſed themſelves of the Weſtern Iſles, firſt ſet foot in *Britain*: with whom they had continual War, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Weſtern parts, and withdraw themſelves into the Eaſtern. Afterwards growing into better terms with one another, and willing to enlarge their borders toward the more flouriſhing *South*; they contracted an *Offenſive* and *Defenſive* League againſt the *Britans*; whom on all ſides they moſt miſerably tortured, till vanquiſhed and beat back by the conquering *Saxons*, againſt whom they contracted a new *Confederacy*. Taking the advantage of the death of *Ethelred*, King of the *Northumbers*, and the invaſion of the *Danes* on the reſt of *England*; they got into their hands all *Bernicia*, or ſo much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Tweed*, and *Solway*; reckoned from that time forward as a part of their Dominions. But this good neighbourhood held not long betwixt theſe two Nations. It hapned at the laſt, that *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, married *Ferguſia*, Siſter unto *Hunguſt* King of the *Picts*, and had by her a Son called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hunguſt*, dying without iſſue, and having none of a nearer kindred, was in the judgement of the *Scots*, to ſucceed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alledging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, choſe one *Ferreth* of their own Nation, to be their King: with whom *Alpine* contended in a long War, victorious for the moſt part, in concluſion ſlain. The quarrel notwitſtanding did remain betwixt the unfriendly Nations, till at the laſt, after many bloudy battels, and mutual overthrows (the *Scots* being thus for the moſt part on the loſing ſide) *Kenneth*, the ſecond of that name, vanquiſhed *Donſken*, the laſt King of the *Picts*, with ſo great a ſlaughter of his People, that he extinguiſhed not their Kingdom only, but their very name; paſſing from that time forwards unto that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Pictiſh* Nation: unleſs perhaps we will believe that ſome of them paſſed into *France*; and there, forſooth, ſubdued that Countrey which we now call *Picardy*.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I ſhall begin the ſame with *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name in the Accompt of their Hiſtorians: leaving out that rabble of 38 Kings (half of them at the leaſt before *Chriſts* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector Boetius*, *Buchanan*, and others of their *Claſſick* Authors. Neither ſhall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more judicious and underſtanding men of the *Scottiſh* Nation, (and for others I take little care) ſince I deal no more unkindly with their firſt *Fergus*, and his Succeſſors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his. The firſt *Scottiſh* King that ſetled himſelf in the North of *Britain*, is, according to the above named *Hector Boetius*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Coyle* governed the *Britains*, came (forſooth) into theſe parts out of *Ireland*. From him, unto *Eugenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued ſucceſſion: which *Eugenius*, together with his whole Nation, is ſaid to have been expelled the Iſland, by a joynt confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britans*, and *Picts*. Twenty and ſeven years after the death of this *Eugenius*, they were reduced again into their poſſeſſion here, by the valour and conduct of another *Fergus*, the ſecond of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scotiſh* Kingdom in *Britain*, holding the ſtories of the former 39 Kings, to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this aſſertion, this expedition of *Fergus* into *Britain*, being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*; at what time the beſt Writers of the *Roman* ſtory for thoſe times, report the *Scots* to have firſt ſeated themſelves in this Iſland.

The Kings of chief note in the courſe of the whole Succeſſion are. 1 *Achaius*, who died in the year 809, and in his life contracted the offenſive and defenſive league with *Charles* the Great, between the Kingdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The conditions whereof were, 1 Let this league between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2 Let the enemies unto one, be reputed and handled as the enemies of the other; 2 If the *Saxons* or *Engliſh men* invade *France*, the *Scots* ſhould ſend thither ſuch numbers of Souldiers as ſhall be deſired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4 If the *Engliſh* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* ſhall at his own charges ſend competent aſſiſtance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any league, which was either more faithfully obſerved, or longer continued, than this between theſe two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occaſions ſo readily aſſiſting the *French*, that it grew to a proverb or by-word, *He that will* France *win*, *muſt with* Scotland *firſt begin*. 2 *Kenneth* the ſecond, who having utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extended his Dominions over all the preſent *Scotland*, deſervedly to be accompted the firſt *Monarch* of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or ſo few in number, that they paſſed afterwards in the name and accompt of *Scots*) for that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3 *Malcolm* the firſt, who added *Weſtmorland*, and *Cumberland* unto his Dominions; given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the Son of *Athelſtane*, to have his aid againſt the *Danes*, or to keep them neutrall, after which time, thoſe Countries were ſometimes *Scottiſh*, and ſometimes *Engliſh*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the ſecond, and united to the Crown of *England*; never ſince disjoined. 4 *Kenneth* the third, who by conſent of the Eſtates of his Realm, made the Kingdom *hereditary*, to deſcend from the Father to his Eldeſt Son; before which time (keeping within the compaſs of the Royal Family) the *Uncle* was ſometimes preferred before the *Nephew*; the eldeſt in years, though further off, before the younger Kinſman, though the neerer in bloud. After which time (the oppoſition and interruption made by *Conſtantine* the third, and *Donald* the fourth, excepted only) the Eldeſt Sons of the Kings, are the next in birth, have ſucceeded ordinarily in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of thoſe Tributary and *Vaſſal Kings*, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, neer *Cheſter*, in ſuch pomp and majeſty. 5 *Machbeth*, of whom goeth a famous ſtory, which ſhall be told at large anon. 6 *Malcolm* the third, the Son of *Danc*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Machbeths* tyranny; and thence brought into *Scotland* at his return, not only ſome *Civilities* of the *Engliſh* garb; but the honourary titles of *Earls* and *Barons*, not here before uſed. At the perſwaſion of the Lady *Margaret* his wife, (ſiſter of *Edgar*, ſurnamed *Atheling*, and after his deceaſe the right Heir of the Crown of *England*) he aboliſhed the barbarous cuſtom ſpoken of before. He did *homage* to *William* the *Conqueror* for the Crown of *Scotland*, but afterwards ſiding againſt him with the *Engliſh*, was ſlain at *Alnwick*. 7 *David*, the youngeſt Son of *Malcolm* the third, ſucceeded his two Brothers, *Edgar* and *Alexander* (dying without iſſue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter & Heir of *Edgar Atheling*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldeſt Son of *Edmund* the ſecond, ſurnamed *Ironſide*, King of *England*, had the beſt title to that Kingdom alſo: but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the *Norman Conquerors*; with whom, by reaſon of the great puiſſance of thoſe Kings, and the little love which the *Engliſh* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to diſpute their Title by force of Armes. From *Maud* the Siſter of this *David*, married to *Henry* the firſt of *England*, deſcended all the Kings of *England*, (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeths* death: from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *James* the ſixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeth*, ſucceeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his deſcent from another *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of K. *Henry* the ſeventh. So that in this perſon there was not an union of the Kingdoms only, under the Title of *Great Britain*, but a reſtoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate heir) to the Crown of *England*; the poſſeſſion whereof had for ſo long time continued in the Poſterity of the *Norman* Conqueror. And upon this deſcent it followeth moſt undeniably, that though the *Norman* Conqueror got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund* the

Scotland. the ſecond, ſurnamed *Ironſide*; and that his Succeſſors had enjoyed it by no other Title, till Queen *Elizabeths* death: yet *James*, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*, ſucceeded by a right deſcent from the *Saxon* Line: without relation to the Conqueſt of the *Norman* Baſtard. 8 *William* the Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Son Prince *Henry*, (who died in the life of his Father) being taken priſoner at the Battel of *Alnwick*; did *homage* to King *Henry* the ſecond for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon reſtored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the ſucceeding Kings, when their affairs with *England*, and the World abroad became more conſiderable, we ſhall ſee anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the ſtory of *Machbeth*, than which for variety of action, and ſtrangeneſs of events, I never met with any more pleaſing. The ſtory in brief is this. *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principal men, whom he employed in all matters of importance; *Machbeth*, and *Banquho*. Theſe two travelling together through a Forreſt, were met by three *Fairies*, Witches, (*Weirds* the *Scots* call them) whereof the firſt making obeyſance unto *Machbeth*, ſaluted him *Thane* (a title unto which that of E*arl* afterward ſucceeded) of *Glammis*: the ſecond, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*, This is unequal dealing, ſaith *Banquho*, to give my friend all the honours, and none unto me, to which one of the *Weirds* made anſwer, That he indeed ſhould not be King, but out of his loyns ſhould come a Race of Kings, that ſhould for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus ſaid, they all ſuddenly vaniſhed. Upon their arrival at the Court *Machbeth* was immeadiately created *Thane* of *Glammis*; and not long after, ſome new ſervice of his requiring new recompenſe, he was honoured with the title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the two former; he reſolved not to be wanting to himſelf in fulfilling the third: and therefore he firſt killed the King, and after, by reaſon of his command among the Souldiers and common people, he ſucceeded in his Throne. Being ſcarce warm in his ſeat, he calling to mind the prediction given to his Companion *Banquho*: whom hereupon ſuſpecting as his ſupplanter, he cauſed him to be killed, together with all his whole Poſterity; *Fleance* one of his Sons, eſcaping only with no ſmall difficulty, into *Wales*. Freed, as he thought, from all fear of *Banquho* and his iſſue, he built *Dunſinan* Caſtle, and made it his ordinary ſeat: and afterwards on ſome new fears, conſulting with certain of his *Wizards*; about his future Eſtate; was told by one of them, that he ſhould never be overcome, till *Bernane* Wood (being ſome miles diſtant) came to *Dunſinan* Caſtle; and by another, that he ſhould never be ſlain by any man which was born of a woman. Secure then, as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the ſpace of 18 years, for ſo long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the meaſure of his iniquities, *Mac-duffe* the Governour of *Fife*, aſſociating to himſelf ſome few *Patriots*, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyranny; privily met one evening at *Bernane* Wood: and taking every one of them a bough in his hand, (the better to keep them from diſcovery) marched early in the morning towards *Dunſinan* Caſtle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Machbeth* eſcaping was purſued by *Mack-duffe*, who having overtaken him, urged him to the combat; to whom the Tyrant, half in Scorn, returned this Anſwer, That he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his *deſtinie* never to be ſlain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then ſaid *Mac-duffe*, is thy fatal end drawing faſt upon thee, for I was never born of Woman: but violently cut out of my Mothers belly: which words ſo daunted the cruel Tyrant, though otherwiſe a valiant man and of great performances, that he was very eaſily ſlain; and *Malcolm* **Conmer**, the true heir of the Crown, ſeated in the Throne. In the mean time *Fleance* ſo proſpered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Countrey; and on her begat a Son called *Walter*; who flying out of *Wales*, returned into *Scotland*; and his deſcent once known, he was not only reſtored to the Honours, and Eſtates of his Anceſtors, but preferred to be *Steward* of the houſe of *Edgar*, the Son of *Malcolm* the third, ſurnamed **Conmer**; the name of *Stewart*, growing hence hereditary unto his Poſterity. From this *Walter* deſcended that *Robert Stewart*, who ſucceeded *David Bruce* in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have reigned ſucceſſively in that Kingdom. But it is now time to leave off particulars, and look into the general Succeſſion of

The Kings of *Scots* before the Conqueſt of the *Picts*.

424 1 *Fergus.*
2 *Eugenius.*
449 3 *Dongal.*
4 *Conſtantine.*
5 *Congall.*
6 *Goran.*
7 *Eugenius* II.
8 *Congall* II.
9 *Kinnatel.*
10 *Aidan.*

604 11 *Kenneth.*
12 *Eugenius* III.
622 13 *Ferchard.*
14 *Donald.*
15 *Ferchard* II.
16 *Malduine.*
17 *Eugenius* IV.
18 *Eugenius* V.
19 *Amberkeleth.*
20 *Eugenius* VI.

21 *Mordac.*
730 22 *Etfinus.*
23 *Eugenius* VII.
24 *Fergus* II.
25 *Solvathius.*
26 *Achaius.*
809 27 *Congall* III.
28 *Dongall* II.
29 *Alpine*, ſlain in a Battel by the *Picts*, in purſuit of his quarrel for that Kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in Right of his Mother, Siſter and Heir of *Hungius* the laſt King thereof.

30 *Kenneth* II. Son of *Alpine*; who utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby the *Scottiſh* Kingdom, from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern *Scotland*;

Scotland.

Scotland; of which deſervedly accounted the firſt *Monarch*; the Founder of the new Succeſſion of

The Kings of the *Scots* after the Conqueſt of the *Picts*.

A. Ch.

839 1 *Kenneth* II. the firſt ſole King of all *Scotland*. 17.

856 2 *Donald* II. Brother of *Kenneth* the 2d.

862 3 *Conſtantin* II. Son of *Kenneth* the 2d.

875 4 *Ethus*, Brother of *Conſtantin* the 2d.

890 5 *Donald* III. Son of *Conſtantin* the ſecond.

903 6 *Conſtantin* III. 30.

933 7 *Malcolm*, Son of *Donald* the third.

949 8 *Ingulph*, an Intruder. 12.

961 9 *Duffe*, Son of *Malcolm*. 1.

961 10 *Kenneth* III. Brother of *Duffe*.

994 11 *Conſtantin* IV. an Intruder, againſt the Law, and Line of *Kenneth* the 3d.

100. 12 *Malcolm* II. Son of *Kenneth* the 3d. oppoſed by *Grime*, the Nephew of *Duffe*.

1035 13 *Duncan*, Sonne of *Grime*, ſucceeded *Malcolm* the ſecond dying without iſſue.

1040 14 *Macbeth*, the Tyrant and Uſurper.

1057 15 *Malcolm* III. Son of *Duncan*.

1096 16 *Donald* IV. ſurnamed *Ban*, Brother of *Malcolm* the third.

1198 17 *Edgar*, Son of *Malcolm* the third.

1107 18 *Alexander* Brother of *Edgar*.

1124 19 *David*, Brother of *Alexander*.

1133 20 *Malcolm*, Son of *David*.

1166 21 *William*, Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth.

1213 22 *Alexander* II. Son of *William*.

1250 23 *Alexander* III. Son of *Alexander* the ſecond after whoſe death, dying without any iſſue, *An.* 1285: began that tedious and bloudy Quarrel about the ſucceſſion of this Kingdom, occaſioned by ſundry Titles and Pretendants to it: the principal whereof were *Bruce*, and *Baliol*, deſcended from the Daughters of *David*, Earl of *Huntingdon*, younger Son of *William*, and Great Uncle of *Alexander* the third, the laſt of the Male iſſue of *Kenneth* the third, thoſe of nearer Kindred being quite extinct. And when the *Scots* could not compoſe the difference, among themſelves; it was taken into conſideration by King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, as the Lord Paramount of that Kingdom: who ſelecting twelve *Engliſh*, and as many of the *Scots* to adviſe about it, with the conſent of all adjudged it to *John Baliol* Lord of *Galloway*, Son of *John Baliol* and *Dervorguilla* his Wife, Daughter of *Alan* Lord of *Galloway*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of the ſaid *David*; who having done his homage to the ſaid King *Edward*, was admitted King.

1300 24 *John Baliol*, an *Engliſh man*, but forgetfull both of *Engliſh* birth, and *English* Favours, invaded the Realm of *England* in Hoſtile manner, and was taken priſoner by King *Edward*. Who following his blow, made himſelf Maſter of all *Scotland*, which he held during the reſt of his life, and had here his *Chancery*, and other Courts. 6.

1306 25 *Robert Bruce*, Son of *Robert Bruce* Lord of *Annandale* (Competitor with *Baliol* for the Crown of *Scotland* in Right of *Iſabel* his Mother, the ſecond Daughter of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, and conſequently a degree nearer to the King deceaſed than *Baliol* was, though deſcended from the eldeſt Siſter) was crowned King in the life-time of King *Edward* the firſt; but not fully poſſeſſed thereof untill after his death: confirmed therein by the great defeat given to *Edward* the ſecond, at the fight of *Banocks-bourn*, not far from *Sterling* ſpoken of before. But he being dead, *Anno* 1332, *Edward* the third confirmed the Kingdom on

1332 26 *Edward Baliol*, Son of *John Baliol*, rejected by the *Scot* for adhering ſo firmly to the *Engliſh*; who thereupon harried *Scotland* with fire and ſword. 10.

27 *David Bruce* the Son of *Robert*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne by the power of the *Scots*, and a great enemy to the *English*. Invading *England*, when King *Edward* was at the ſiege of *Calice*, he was taken Priſoner by Q. *Philip*, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windſor*; where he was Priſoner, for a while with King *John* of *France*. Releaſed at laſt on ſuch conditions as beſt pleaſed the Conquerour. 29.

1371 28 *Robert* II. ſurnamed *Stewart*, King of the *Scots* by deſcent from the eldeſt Siſter of *David Bruce*, was extracted alſo from the antient Princes of *Wales* (as was ſaid before:) reſtoring thereby the *British* bloud to the Throne of *Scotland*.

1390 29 *Robert* III. Son of *Robert* the ſecond, called *John* before he came to the Crown; in which much over-awed by his own brother the Duke of *Albanie*, who had an aim at it for himſelf. 16.

1406 30 *James*. Son of *Robert* the third, taken priſoner by King *Henry* the fourth of *England*, as he was croſſing the Seas for *France*, to avoid the practiſes of his Uncle. Reſtored unto his Countrey in the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the ſixth, after 18 years abſence, he was at laſt moſt miſerably murdered by the Earl of *Athol*, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.

1447 31 *James* II. ſlain by the *English* at the Siege of *Roxborough* Caſtle. 24.

1464 32 *James* III. ſlain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.

Scotland. 1491 33 *James* IV. married *Margaret*, the eldeſt daughter of King *Henry* the ſeventh, but at the ſoliciting of the *French*, (againſt the Peace between the Nations) he envaded *England* (in the abſence of King *Henry* the eighth) with 100000 men: but was met with by the Earl of *Surrey* (having 26000 men in his Army) nigh unto *Flodden*; where he was ſlain, together with two Biſhops, twelve Earles, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.

1514 34 *James* V. Son of *James* the fourth, and the Lady *Margaret*, kept for a time ſuch good correſpondency with the *Engliſh*, that in the year 1536. he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred againſt them, he invaded their Borders in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord *Wharton*, then Warden of the *Weſt Marches*. The battel being ready to joyn, one Sr. *Oliver Sincleer* the Kings favorite, though otherwiſe of no great parentage, was by the Kings direction proclaimed *General*: which the *Scotiſh* Nobility took in ſuch indignation, that they threw down their weapons, and ſuffered themſelves to be taken priſoners; there being not one man ſlain on either ſide. The principal priſoners were the Earls of *Glencarn*, and *Caſſiles*; the Barons *Maxwell*, *Oliphant*, *Somerwell*, *Flemming*, with divers others: beſides many of the principal Gentry. 28.

1542 35 *Mary*, the Daughter and only lawfully-begotten child of *James* the fifth, ſucceeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promiſed in marriage to King *Edward* the ſixt of *England*; but by the power of the *Hamiltons* carried into *France*, where married to *Francis*, then *Dauphin*, afterwards King of the *French*, of that name the ſecond. After whoſe death, ſhe married *Henry* Lord *Darnly*, eldeſt Son of *Matthew* Earl of *Lennox*. Outed of her dominions by a potent Faction, ſhe was compelled to flie into *England*; where, after a tedious impriſonment, ſhe was put to death in *Fotheringhay* Caſtle in *Northamptonſhire*, and interred at *Peterburg*, *Anno* 1586.

1568 36 *James* VI. The Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, and of *Henry* Lord *Darnly*, was crowned King in his Cradle alſo. He married *Anne*, the Daughter of *Chriſtiern* the 3d, King of *Denmark*; was choſe of the Order of the Garter, *An.* 1590. and ſucceeded Queen *Elizabeth* in the Realm of *England*, March 24. *An.* 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent foreſight of *Henry* the ſeventh, who having two Daughters, beſtowed the Eldeſt (contrary to the mind of the Councel) on the King of Scots, and the younger on the King of the *French*: that ſo, if his own Iſſue male ſhould fail, and that a Prince of another Nation muſt inherit *England*; then *Scotland* as the leſſer Kingdom would depend upon *England*, and not *England*, wait on *France*, as upon the greater. In which ſucceſſion of the *Scots* to the Crown of *England*, the Propheſie of the fatal *Stone*, ſpoken of before, did receive accompliſhment. And ſo perhaps might that aſcribed in the *Polychronicon* to an holy *Anchoret* living in King *Egelreds* time, which is this, Engliſhmen, *for that they wonneth them to* drunkenneſs, *to* treaſon, *and to* rechleſneſs *of Gods Houſe, firſt by* Danes, *and then by* Normans, *and the third time by* Scots, *whom they holden leaſt worth of all, they ſhall be overcome. Then the world ſhall be unſtable, and ſo divers and variable, that the unſtableneſs of thought ſhall be betokened by many manner* diverſity *of Clothing*. For on this union of the Kingdoms, this prediction ſeems to have been accompliſhed; the circumſtances mentioned in the ſame ſo partly agreeing, and the *Scots* never ſubduing *England*, but by this bleſſed Victory. Unleſs perhaps the accompliſhment thereof be ſtill to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great defeat at *Banocks-bourn*, in which was ſlain 50000 *Engliſh*, as the *Scotiſh* Writers do report, and the name of *Scot* growing ſo terrible for a time, that an hundred of *Engliſh* would flie from three *Scots*, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* eſtimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 ſterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not commodity in this Kingdom to allure ſtrangers to traffick: the Demain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Countrey in moſt places, barren; and many of the Subjects, thoſe eſpecially of the Out-Iſles, and the Weſtern parts, ſo extreamly barbarous, that they add very ſmall improvement to the publick Treaſury.

And anſwerable to the ſhortneſs of their ſtanding Revenue, were their Forces alſo. For though the Countrey be very populous, and the men generally patient both of cold and hunger, and inured to hardſhip; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces ſeldom held together above 40 days; and then, if not a great deal ſooner, did diſband themſelves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to ſerve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them ſuch and ſo many of their *Vaſſals*, as the preſent ſervice did require: uſed to provide for themſelves and their followers, tents, money, victuals, proviſion of all ſorts, and all other neceſſaries; the King ſupplying them with nothing. Which being ſpent, they uſually diſbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reaſon, why the *Scots* in the time of hoſtility betwixt the Nations, made only ſudden and tumultuary incurſions into *England*; without performing any things of ſpecial moment: and that they have not acted any thing elſewhere in the way of conqueſt; but only as Mercenaries to the *French* and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King *James* the fourth, (when he invaded *England* in the time of King *Henry* the eighth, being then in *France*) conſiſted of 100000 fighting men; yet this I look on only as an argument of their populoſity: few of theſe men being armed or trained up to ſervice; and therefore eaſily diſcomfited by a far leſs Army. It's true, that in the year 1643 the *Scotiſh Covenanters* raiſed an Army conſiſting of 1800 Foot, and 2000 Horſe, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery and Ammunition correſpondent to it: which was the gallanteſt Army, and the beſt apppointed, that ever that nation did ſet out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withal, that this Army was maintained & paid, by the two Houſes of the Parliament of *England*, at the rate of 30000 *l. per menſem*, & an advance of 100000 *l.* before-hand, the better to invite them to embrace the action, and prepare neceſſaries of it; without any charge unto themſelves. And though the Army which they ſent into *England* above five yerrs after, under *James* Duke *Hamilton* of *Arran*, was little inferiour unto this in number, but far ſuperiour to it both in Horſe and Arms, and other neceſſary appointments: yet it is well known, that the *Scots* brought nothing but their own bodies to compound that Army; the Horſe and Arms being ſuch as they had gotten out of *England*, in the former war.

In point of reputation amongſt forain Princes, the Kings of the *Scots*, and their Ambaſſadors and Agents, had place in all General Councels, and Eccleſiaſtical Aſſemblies, before thoſe of *Caſtile*: and by the *Statiſts* of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*) for abſolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only ſince the firſt years of King *Edward* the third, when they had quitted that ſubjection and vaſſalage to the Crown of *England*. For that antiently the *Scots* were Homagers to the Kings of *England*, may be apparently demonſtrated by theſe following Arguments. 1 By the Homages, and other ſervices, and duties, done by the Kings of the *Scots* unto thoſe of *England*: *Malcolm* the third doing Homage unto *William* the Conquerour; as *William* one of his Succeſſors, did to K. *Henry* the ſecond: and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of *Huntingdon* (as by ſome pretended) but for the very Crown it ſelf: *Kenneth* the third, being alſo one of thoſe eight Tributary or Vaſſal Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interpoſing of King *Edward* the firſt, and the ſubmiſſion of the *Scots* to that interpoſing, in determining the controverſie of ſucceſſion betwixt *Bruce*, and *Baliol*: as in like caſe, *Philip* the *Fair* adjudged the title of *Artoys*, which was holden of the Crown of *France*, and then in queſtion betwixt the Lady *Maud*, and her Nephew *Robert*; or as King *Edward* the third, in the right of the ſaid Crown of *France*, determined of the controverſie betwixt *John* Earl of *Montford*, and *Charles* of *Blois*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagn*. Thirdly, By the confeſſion & acknowledgment of the Prelates, Peers, & other the Eſtates of *Scotland*, ſubſcribed by all their hands and ſeal in the Roll of *Ragman*; wherein they did acknowledge the ſuperiority of the Kings of *England*; not only in regard of ſuch advantages as the ſword had given him, but as of his original & undoubted right. Which Rol was treacherouſly delivered into the hands of the *Scots*, by *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, in the beginning of the reign of King *Edward* the third. 4ly, By the tacit conceſſion of the Kings themſelves, who in their Coins, Commiſſions, and publick Inſtruments, aſſume not to themſelves the title of Kings of *Scotland*, but of *Reges Scotorum*, or the Kings of the *Scots*: and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is ſome ſuperiour Lord (King Paramount as we may cal him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. Fifthly, By the Judgments and Arreſts of the Courts of *England*, not only in the times of K. *Edward* the firſt, but in ſome times ſince. For when *William Wallis* a *Scotiſhman* by birth, and the beſt Souldier of that Countrey, was taken *Priſoner* & brought to *London*, he was adjudged to ſuffer death as a Traytor: which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgment, had he been a Priſoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of *England*. The like done in the caſe of *Simon Frezill*, another of that Kingdom, in the ſame Kings reign. In like manner, in the time of King *Edward* the third, it was reſolved by the Court, in the Lord *Beaumonts* caſe, when it was objected that one of the Witneſſes was a *Scot*, and therefore as an *Alien* not to give his evidence; that his teſtimony was to be allowed of, becaume the *Scots* in the Law of *England*, did not go for *Aliens*. And when one indicted for a Rape in the thirteenth of Queen *Elizabeths* reign, deſired a *Medietatem linguæ*, becauſe he was a *Scotchman*, and ſo an *Alien*; it was denied him by the Court, *becauſe the* Scots *were not reputed here as* Aliens, *but as* Subjects *rather*. So alſo, when *Robert Umframville*, Lord of *Kyme*, was ſummoned to the Parliament of *England*, in the reign of King *Edward* the third, by the name of *Robert* Earl of *Angus*, (which is a dignity in *Scotland*;) and after in a Writ againſt him was called only by his own name of *Umfraville*, without any addition of that honour; the Writ was judged to abate: which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if *Scotland* had not been reputed to be under the Vaſſalage of the Kings of *England*. Sixthly, and laſtly, by a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my cuſtody) granted by King *Edward* the firſt, in the laſt year of his reign, to *Peter Dodge* of *Stopworth* in the County of *Cheſter*, one of the Anceſtors of my Mother: in which it is expreſſed, that the ſaid Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent ſervices, *encontre ſon grand Enemy & Rebel*, Baliol, *Roy d'*Eſcoſſe *& Vaſſal de* Angleterre; that is to ſay, againſt his great Enemy and Rebel *Baliol* King of *Scotland*, and Vaſſal of *England*. A thing ſo clear, that if King *James* had not been extremely tender of the honour of his native Countrey, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a *New invention*, in hammering the Caſe of the *Poſt-nati* for him; to make the *Scots* inheritable unto Lands in *England*. The acknowledgment and *Reviver* of their *old Subjection* would have ſerved his turn. But of this argument enough, and perhaps too much. I onely add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable perſon of that Kingdom of *Scotland*, employed unto the Court in a buſineſs of no mean conſequence to the peace and quiet of his Countrey: I found him ſo ſenſible of the inconveniences of their preſent Government, by reaſon of the Kings abſence, and the frequent diviſions and partialities of his Councel there; that he confeſſed that Nation could be

Ireland.

be never rich, or happy, till they were made a Province of the *Engliſh* Empire; and governed by a *Vice-Roy*, as *Ireland* was.

The principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of S. *Andrew*, inſtituted by *Hungus*, King of the *Picts*, to incourage his ſubjects in the War againſt King *Athelſtane* of *England*. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thiſtles, with the picture of S. *Andrew* appendant to it: The Motto, *Nemo me impunè laceſſit*. It took this name becauſe after the battle, *Hungus* and his Souldiers went all bare-foot to S. *Andrews*, and there vowed that they and their Poſterity would thence forth uſe his Croſſe as their Enſign (which is a Saltire *Argent* in a Field *Azure*) whenſoever they took in hand any warlike enterpriſe.

2 But this Order being expired many Ages ſince, there is now no Order of Knighthood in it, (except *Knights Batchelors*) but that of *Nova Scotia*; ordained by King *James*, Anno 1622. for the planting of that Countrey by *Scotiſh* Colonies; in imitation of the order of Baronets in *England*, for the plantation of *Vlſter*. Hereditary, as that alſo is, but the Knights hereof diſtinguiſhed by a Ribband of *Orange-Tawny*.

The Arms are *Sol*, a Lion Rampant *Mars*, within a double Treſſure *counter-flowred*; Which Treſſure *counter flowred* was added to the Lion by *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, at what time he contracted the League with *France*: ſignifying (ſaith *Hector Boetius* one of their Hiſtorians) *Francorum opibus Leonem exinde muniendum*; that the *Scotch* Lion ſhould by guarded be the riches of *France*.

Reckoned in *Scotland*, with
the Iſles of it
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 12.
Univerſities two,
St. *Andrews*. *Aberdeen*.

IRELAND.

IRELAND is invironed on all ſides with the Ocean; parted from *Britain* by a violent and unruly Sea, called S. *Georges* Chanel. Situate on the Weſt of *Britain*, next unto which it is the biggeſt Iſland of *Europe* containing in length 300. and in breadth 120 miles: and is ſeated under the eighth and tenth *Climates*; the longeſt day being 16 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts.

It was once called *Scotia*, from the *Scots*, who did there inhabit; and *Scota Minor*, to difference it from *Scotland*, in the Iſle of *Britain*. But the general name hereof is *Ireland*; by the *Latines* called *Hybernia*, by the Greeks, *Iernia*. And though ſome frame a wreſted *Etymologie* from *Iberus*, a *Spaniſh* Captain and ſome from *Irnaulph*, once a ſuppoſed Duke hereof; as others *ab Hyberno aëre*, the Winter-like and inclement aire: yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which ſignifieth in their own language a Weſtmerland. And yet I muſt not pretermit the *Etymon* given us by *Bochartus*, (more near the name than moſt of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Ibernae*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying the furtheſt Habitation: there being no Countrey known amongſt the Ancients, which lay Weſt of *Ireland*.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Caſarea*, *Noahs* Neece, inhabited here before the Floud; and how 300 years after the Floud, it was ſubdued by *Bartholanus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Gyants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delm* a *Grecian*, came hither: and laſt of all *Gaothel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* Daughters; who muſt needs name this Iſland *Scota*. But not to honour ſuch *fopperies* with a confutation, doubtleſly the firſt inhabitants of this Iſland came out of *Britain*. For *Britain* is the nigheſt Countrey unto it, and ſo had a more ſpeedy waſtage thither; Secondly, the ancient Writers call this Iſland a *Britiſh Iſland*; and thirdly, *Tacitus* giveth us of this Countrey this verdict; *Solum, cœlumque cultus & ingenia hominum, haud multum à Britannia differunt*; the Soyl and Aire, the habits and diſpoſition of the people, were not much unlike the *Britans*. For further evidence whereof, it was obſerved, at the reduction of *Wales* to the Crown of *England*, by King *Edward* the firſt, that many of their Laws and Cuſtomes were thoſe of the *Iriſh*: which ſhews that they did both deſcend from the ſame Original. But then we muſt obſerve withall, that they were counted far more barbarous and ſavage by moſt ancient Writers, than thoſe of *Britain* are deciphered at the firſt diſcovery: ſaid by *Strabo* to be man-eaters; accuſtomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the bloud of thoſe whom they ſlew in fight. Nor were the women, though the ſofter and more tender Sex, free from ſuch wilde and ſavage cuſtomes: it being a conſtant courſe amongſt them, when they were delivered of a man childe, to put ſome meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a ſword; wiſhing therewith it might not die but in the middeſt of Arms, and the heat of battel. Both Sexes uſed to trim themſelves, with the teeth of fiſhes, white as the driven Snow, or the poliſhed Ivory; and therein placed the greateſt part of their pride and bravery.

Nor are the modern *Iriſh* much abhorrent from ſuch barbarous cuſtoms, as plainly ſhew from what Original they deſcend; altered but little by converſe with more civil Nations. Of natural conſtitution generally ſtrong and nimble of body, haughty of heart, careleſs of their lives, patient in cold and hunger, implacible in enmity, conſtant in love, light of belief, greedy of glory: and in a word, *if they be bad, you ſhall no where find worſe*; if *they be good, you ſhall hardly meet with better.* The Diets, eſpecially of the *meer Iriſh*, is for the moſt part, on herbs, roots, butter mingled with oat-flowre, milk, and beef-broth: eating fleſh many times without bread, which they digeſt with *Uſquebaugh*; and give their bread-corn to their horſes in ſtead of *Provender*. But more particularly, thoſe of the richer ſort in all parts, and of all ſorts thoſe which inhabit within the *Pale* (as they themſelves call it) and in ſuch places where the *Engliſh* Diſcipline hath been entertained, comformable to civility, both in behaviour and apparel: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the *wild Iriſh* of the poorer and inferiour ſort) moſt extremely barbarous; not behaving themſelves like *Chriſtians*, ſcarcely like men. All of them ſo tenacious of their antient cuſtoms, that neither power, nor reaſon, nor the ſence of the inconveniences which they ſuffer by it, can wean them to deſert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their uſe of *Ploughing*, not with ſuch geares or harneſs, as in other places; but by tying the hindmoſt horſes head to the tayl of the former: which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unſerviceable by the ſoon loſing of their tails; and withall is a courſe of ſo ſlow a diſpatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a week, as a good Team well harneſſed would perform in a day; yet no perſwaſion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtful and ridiculous cuſtom. And when the Earl of *Strafford*, the late Lord *Deputy*, had damned it by *Act* of *Parliament*, and laid a penalty on ſuch as ſhould after uſe it: the people thought it ſuch a grievance, and ſo injurious to the Nation, that among other things demanded towards a *Pacification* of the preſent troubles, their *Agents* and *Commiſſioners* inſiſted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of *Huſbandry*, we ſhall hereafter meet with, in another place. Neer of kin to which, is a lazie cuſtom that they have of burning their ſtraw (rather then to put themſelves to the pains to threſh it) by that means to part it from the corn. From which no reaſon can diſſwade them, nor perſwaſions win them. They have among them other cuſtoms as abſurd, though leſs inconvenient: as placing a green buſh on *May-day* before their doors, to make their kine yeeld the more milk; kneeling down to the *New Moon* as ſoon as they ſee it, deſiring her to leave them in as good health as ſhe found them; and many others of like nature.

They uſe a language of their own, but ſpoken alſo in the Weſt of *Scotland*, and the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſlands; which though originally *Britiſh*, or a Dialect of it, by reaſon of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Eaſterlings* or *Ooſt-mans*, and *Engliſh-Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Welch*, for ought I can learn.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached among them by S. *Patrick*, affirmed to be the Nephew of S. *Martin* of *Tours*. *Anno* 435. Reformed in the more civil parts, and the *Engliſh* Colonies, according to the platform of the Church of *England*: but the *Kernes*, or natural wild *Iriſh* (and many of the better ſort of the Nation alſo) either adhere unto the Pope, or their own ſuperſtitious fancies, as in former times. And to ſay truth, it is no wonder that they ſhould; there being no care taken to inſtruct them in the Proteſtant Religion: either by tranſlating the Bible, or the *Engliſh Liturgie*, into their own language, as was done in *Wales*; but forcing them to come to Church to the *Engliſh* Service, which the people underſtand no more then they do the Maſs. By means whereof, the *Iriſh* are not only kept in continual ignorance, as to the doctrine and devotions of the Church of *England*, and others of the *Proteſtant* Churches: but thoſe of *Rome* are furniſhed with an excellent Argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers do not underſtand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State) when theſe diſtempers are compoſed) to provide, that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of *Chriſtian* inſtruction, in their natural tongue.

The Soil of it ſelf is abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for graſs and paſturage, then it is for tillage: as may be ſeen in ſuch places where the induſtry of man is aiding to the natural goodneſs of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Countrey is either over-grown with Woods, or encombred with vaſt Boggs and unwholeſom Mariſhes; yeelding neither profit nor pleaſure unto the Inhabitants. In ſome places, as in the County of *Armagh*, ſo rank and fertil; that the laying of any ſoil or compoſt on it, doth abate its fruitfulneſs, and proves the worſt Husbandry that can be.

It hath been antiently very famous for the Piety and Religious lives of the Monks. Amongſt whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apophthegm*: when offered many fair preferments to leave his Countrey, he returned this Anſwer, ***It becomes not them to imbrace other mens goods, who for*** Chriſts ***ſake had forſaken their own.*** Of no leſs piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Raſe*, Archbiſhop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flouriſhed about the year 1350. A declared enemy of the Errors and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

It is affirmed of this Iſland that (amongſt other priviledges which it hath above other Iſlands) it foſtereth no venomous Serpent, and that no ſuch will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her ſelf we find her ſpeaking in the Poet.

Ireland.

Illa ego ſum Graiis *Glacialis* Hibernia *dicta* ;
Cui Deus , *& melior rerum naſcentium Origo* ,
Jus commune dedit cum Creta *altrice* Tonantis,
Angues ne noſtris diffundant ſibilia in oris.

I am that Iſland which in times of old
The *Greeks* did call *Hibernia*, ycie-cold:
Secur'd by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Joves* Mother dear;
That poyſonous Snakes ſhould never here be bred,
Or dare to hiſſe, or hurtfull venom ſpred.

The other miracles of this Iſland, are, 1 That there is a Lake in the Country of *Armagh*, into which if one thruſt a piece of Wood, he ſhall find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned into Iron; and that which is in the water, to be turned into a Whet-ſtone: richly deſerved by him, if the tale be falſe, who did firſt report it. 2 That the Kine will yield no Milk, if their Calves be not by them; or at leaſt their Calves skins ſtuffed with ſtraw, or hay. It is ſaid alſo, that all the breed of this Countrey are of leſſe ſize than they be in *England*, except Women and Greyhounds, and thoſe much bigger then with us.

As for the *Clergy* of this Countrey, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons*, in former times: ſome of their Biſhops being ſo poor, that they had no other Revenues then the Paſture of two Milch-beaſt. And ſo far had the Monaſteries and Religious houſes invaded by *Appropriations*, the Churches rights; that of late times in the whole Province of *Connaught*, the whole ſtipend of the *Incumbent* was not above 40 ſhillings, in ſome places not above 16. So that the poor *Iriſh* muſt needs be better fed then taught: for *ad tenuitatem* Beneficiorum, *neceſſariò ſequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum*; Poor benefices will be fitted with ignorant Prieſts, ſaid *Panormitan* rightly. But this is remedied in part by his Sacred Majeſty King *CHARLES*, the ſecond Monarch of *Great Britain*, who liberally (at the ſuit of the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*) reſtored unto this Church all the *Impropriations* and Portions of *Tithes*, which had been veſted in the Crown. An action of moſt ſingular piety, and Princely bounty.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey, are, 1 The *Shannon* (the *Senas* of *Ptolemy*) which ariſing in the Mountains of *Letrim* in the County of *Connaught*, and making many fair Lakes as it paſſeth forwards; loſeth it ſelf, after a courſe of 200 miles (of which 60 navigable) in the Weſtern Ocean. 2 The *Liff*, by *Ptolemy* called *Libnius*, neighboured by the Citie of *Dublin*. 3 *Awiduffe*, or *Blackwater*, as the *Engliſh* call it. 4 *Sione*, ſuppoſed to be the *Medona* of the ancient Writers. 5 The *Showre*. 6 The *Slanie*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue, out of the Canto of the mariage of the *Thames* and *Medway*, in the *Faiery Queen*.

There was the *Liffie* rowling down the lea,
The ſandy *Slane*, the ſtony *Aubrian*,
The ſpacious *Shenin* ſpreading like a ſea,
The pleaſant *Boyne*, the fiſhy fruitfull *Banne*,
Swift *Awiduffe*, which of the *Engliſh-man*
Is call'd *Blackwater*; and the *Liffar* deep,
Sad *Trowis* that once his people over-ran,
Strong *Allo* tumbling from *Slewlogheer* ſteep,
And *Mallo* mine, whoſe waves I whilom taught to weep.

There alſo was the wide-embayed *Mayre*,
The pleaſant *Bandon* crown'd with many wood;
The ſpreading *Lee*, that like an Iſland fair
Incloſeth *Cork* with his divided flood;
And balefull *Oure*, late ſtain'd with *Engliſh* blood,
With many more, —— ————

So the renowned *Spencer* in his *Canto* of the mariage of *Thames* and *Medway*.

But beſides theſe Rivers, this Iſland is in moſt places well ſtored with Lakes, yielding great plenty of fiſh to the parts adjoyning. The principal of which, 1 *Lough-Erne*, containing 50 miles in breadth, and 30 miles in length; ſhaded with woods, and ſo repleniſhed with fiſh, that the Fiſhermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their Nets. It hath alſo in it many Iſlands, one moſt remarkable for the ſtrange and horrid noiſes which are therein heard; called therefore by the Vulgar St. *Patricks Purgatory*. Almoſt as big as this is. 2 the Lake of *Corbes*, which loſeth it ſelf in the Sea not far from *Galloway*. A Lake of 26 miles in length, and four in breadth; ſaid to have in it 30 Iſlets, abounding with *Pine-trees*. 3 *Lough-Foyle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Logia* of *Ptolemie*. 4 *Lough-Eaugh*, out of which the River *Banne*, abundantly well ſtored with Salmons, hath its firſt Original. And beſides, theſe and many others of leſſe note, there are ſaid to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meth*, not far aſunder, and having an entercourſe of waters: but of ſo different a temper, that the fiſh which are proper to the one (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar ſorts) will not live in the other: but either dieth, or by ſome ſecret conveyances, finde a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought.

It was divided anciently into five Provinces, each one Kingdom of it ſelf; that is to ſay, 1 *Leinſter*, 2 *Meth*, 3 *Ulſter*, 4 *Connaught*, and 5 *Mounſter*: but of late time the Province of *Meth* is reckoned for a Member, or part of *Leinſter*.

1 LEINSTER, by the *Latines* called *Lagenia*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Channel, (commonly called St. *Georges* Channel) by which parted from the Iſle of *Great Britain*; on the Weſt, the River *Newry*,) *Neorus*, as the *Latines* call it) which divides it from *Mounſter*; on the North, the Province of *Meth*; and the main Ocean on the South. The ſoyl more fruitfull generally then the reſt of *Ireland*, becauſe better cultivated and manured, as having been longeſt in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*; from whom a great part of the Inhabitants do derive themſelves, and for that reaſon more conformable to the civilities and habit of the *Engliſh* Nation. Well watered, beſides a large Sea-coaſt, with many fair and pleaſant Rivers, the principal whereof, 1 the *Barrow*, called in *Latine Birgus*; 2 the *Newry*, 3 the *Showre*, and 4 the *Liffie*, (the *Libnius* of *Ptolemy*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief Citie.

It containeth Counties of 1 *Dublin*, 2 *Kilkenny*, 3 *Caterlough*, 4 *Kildare*, 5 *Leaſe*, or Queens Countey, 6 *Ophalie*, or Kings Countey; and 7 *Weiſhford*: in which are comprehended 34 Towns of note, and 88 Caſtles well fortified, and able to make good reſiſtance againſt an Enemy; the *Engliſh* being forced to fortifie themſelves in their Plantations with ſtrong holds and forterеſſes, againſt the incurſions of the Natives.

Places of moſt obſervation in it. 1 *Dublin*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eblana* of *Ptolemy*; by the *Iriſh* called *Balacleigh*, becauſe being ſeated in a fenny and mooriſh ſoyl, it was built on piles, as the word doth ſignifie in that language. Situate at, or near the mouth of the River *Liffe*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are many times encumbred with heaps of Sand. The Citie very rich and populous, as being the *Metropolis* of all the Iſland, the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity, beſides the benefit redounding from the Courts of Juſtice. In thoſe reſpects well-fortified againſt all emergencies; and adorned with many goodly buildings, both private and publick. The principal of which, are the Caſtle, wherein the Lord Deputy reſideth, built by *Henry Loandres* once Archbiſhop here; a College founded by Queen *Elizabeth*, to the honor, and by the name of the bleſſed *Trinity*; the Cathedral Church dedicated to St. *Patrick*, the Apoſtle of the *Iriſh* Nation; a fair Collegiate Church, called *Chriſt Church*; beſides thirteen others deſtinated to Parochial meetings. Being deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the *Daniſh wars*, it was reedified by *Harald*, ſurnamed *Harfager*, King of the *Norwegians*, then Maſter of moſt parts of the Iſland; and after the ſubjection of it to the Crown of *England*, was peopled with a Colonie of *Briſtol* men. 2 *Weiſhford*, or *Wexford*, the *Menapia* of *Ptolemy*, ſituate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, ſuppoſed to be the *Modona* of the ſame Authour: the firſt of all the Towns in *Ireland* which received a Colony of *Engliſh*. 3 *Kilkenny*, on the River *Newre*, the chief Seat of the Biſhop of *Oſſerie*, and the faireſt Town of all the Inlands: ſo called, *quaſi Cella Canici*, the Cell, or Monaſtery of *Canicus*, a man of great renown for piety, in theſe parts of the Countrey. 4 *Kildare*, an In-land Town alſo, and a Biſhops See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earle to the ancient Family of the *Fitz-Geralds*, of long time honoured with this Title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the 8th. as a man of ſo unquiet and turbulent a nature, that his Adverſaries cloſed their charge againſt him with this expreſſion; *Finally, all* Ireland *cannot rule this Earle*; the King replied, that *then this Earle ſhould rule all* Ireland: and ſo for his Jeſts ſake made him *Lord Deputy* of the Kingdom. 5 *Roſſe*, once populous, well traded, and of large Circumference, now a ruine onely; nothing remaining but the Walls, which were built by *Iſabell*, the daughter of *Richard Strongbow* Earle of *Pembroke*, the fortunate Conqueror of this Iſland for King *Henry* the ſecond. 6 *Philips Town*, the principal of the County of *Ophaly*, or Kings County; ſo called in honor of King *Philip*; as 7 *Marieburg*, the chief of *Leaſe*, or the Queens County, was in honour of Queen *Mary*. 8 *Leighlin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified againſt the incurſion of the *Iriſh*, by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9 *Caterlogh*, commonly, but corruptly *Carlough*, a Town of great ſtrength, and the chief of that County. 10 *Rheban*, not otherwiſe of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rheba* of *Ptolemy*.

2 METH, by the *Latines* called *Media*, by *Giraldus*, *Midia*; becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, hath on the South *Leinſter*; on the Weſt, *Connaught*; on the North, *Ulſter*; on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Sea, or St. *Georges* Channel. A ſmall, but rich and pleaſant Province: well ſtocked with people, and ſtored with all things neceſſary for their ſuſtentation; and for a ſweet and wholeſom aire, not inferiour to any. Divided into three Counties onely, that is to ſay, 1 *Eaſt Meth*, 2 *Weſt-Meth*, and 3 *Long-ford*; containing 13 Tows of note, and 14 Caſtles of good eſteem. By reaſon of which ſtrength, it is called by ſome writers, the *Chamber of Ireland*.

Towns of moſt conſequence herein, are 1 *Trim*, the chief Town of the County of *Eaſt-Meth*; the ancient Barony of the *Lacies*; poſſeſſed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and the Lords of the greateſt part of *Ulſter*. 2 *Tredah*, more properly *Droghedah*, ſituate on the River *Boine* on the edge of *Ulſter*, to which Province belongs ſo much of the Town as lieth on the North ſide of that River: a very fair and populous Citie, as well by Art as Nature very ſtrongly foritified, and furniſhed with a large and commodious Haven. It took the name of *Droghedah* from the Bridge there built upon the River, for the conveniency of paſſage (as the word ſignifieth in that Language) and therefore called *Pontana* by ſome *Latine* writers. 3 *Mulinga*,

the

Ireland. the chief Town of *Weſt-meth.* 4 *Delvin*, in the ſame County alſo, the Barony of the *Nagents*, an ancient Family in this tract. 5 *Longford*, of moſt note in the County ſo named, but not elſe obſervable.

As for the fortunes of this Province (for *Lemſter* ſince the firſt Conqueſt of it, hath been inſeparably annexed to the Crown of *England*) it was firſt granted in Fee-Farm by King *Henry* the ſecond to *Hugh Lacy*, a man of great merit and imployment in the Conqueſt of *Ireland*; who left it unto *Walter*, his younger Son. By *Margaret* and *Matilda*, the Neeces of this *Walter* by his Son *Gilbert*, one moity hereof came to the *Mortimers* Earls of *March*, and in their right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the fourth: and the other moity to the *Verduns*, by whom diſperſed and ſcattered into divers Families. Accompted for one County onely, till the time of King *Henry* the eighth, in whoſe reign it was divided into *Eaſt-Meth*, and *Weſt-Meth*; to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3. ULSTER, by the *Latines* callid *Ultonia*, is the largeſt Province of all *Ireland*, bounded on the South, with *Meth*, and *Connaught*; on the Weſt, with the vaſt *Iriſh* Ocean; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean, to which *Ptolemy* gives the name of *Hyperborean*; and on the Eaſt, with St. *Georges* Channel. A Countrey fruitfull of it ſelf, but in moſt places formerly over-grown with woods, and drowned in Mariſhes and great Bogs, by the natural ſlothfulneſſe of the people: made more reſponſal to the husband-man both for Corn, and Paſturage, ſince the late Plantation of the *Britiſh*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1 *Louth*, 2 *Cavon*, 3 *Fermanath*, 4 *Down*, 5 *Monaghan*, 6 *Armagh*, 7 *Colrane*, 8 *Tirconnel*, 9 *Tir-Oen*, and 10 *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and Traffick, and 50 Caſtles for the defence of the Countrey, and keeping under the wild *Iriſh*; wilder and more untractable in theſe Northern parts, than the reſt of *Ireland*. The whole well watered with a large and ſpacious Sea, on three ſides thereof; many great Lakes in the body of it, beſides the Rivers of 1 *Boyne*, called in *Latine Boanda*, which divides it from *Meth*, a the *Ban*, 3 *Moandus*, and 4 the *Eyn*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Armagh*, on, or near the River *Kalip*, the chief Town of the County ſo called, and the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Primate of all *Ireland*. An ancient Citie, but ſo miſerably defaced by fire in *Tir-Oens* Rebellion, that it can ſcarſe preſerve the reputation of a Market-Town. 2 *Carlingford*, and 3 *Dundalk*, both ſituate on the Sea-ſide, and both within the County of *Louth*. 4 *Knock Fergus*, the chief of *Antrim*, more properly *Rock-Fergus*, and in that ſenſe called *Carig-Fergus* by the *Iriſh*) ſo called from *Fergus* one of the Kings of the *Iriſh Scots*, who there ſuffered Shipwrack. Seated upon a large and capacious Bay (the *Vinderius* of *Ptolemy*) which giveth it both a ſafe and commodious Port; as well by natural ſituation, as the works of Art, very ſtongly fortified; by reaſon of the neighbourhood of the *Scots* in *Cantire*, from which little diſtant. 5 *London-Derry*, a Colony of the *Londoners*, beſt built of any Town in the North of *Ireland*. 6 *Dungannon*, the principal ſeat and reſidence in former times, of the great *Oneales*. 7 *Dungall*, the principall of *Tir-Connell*. 8 *Robogh*, a ſmall Village at preſent, but anciently a Biſhops See: fit to be mentioned in this place in regard it ſtill preſerveth ſome footſteps of the old *Robogdii*, an *Iriſh* Tribe, and placed by *Ptolemy* in this tract, where they gave name unto the promontory by him called *Robogdium*, now the *Fair-Fore-land*; as is probably conceived by the learned *Camden*.

This, at it is the largeſt Province of all this Kingdom, ſo was it with moſt difficulty ſubjected to the Crown of *England*, and reduced to good order and civility. Firſt conquered by *John Curcie* a valiant *Engliſh-man*, in the reign of King *Henry* the ſecond, by whom created Earle of *Ulſter*. But being maligned for his eminent vertues, and after proſcribed by King *John*, this Title and Eſtate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lacie*, the Lord and Conquerour of *Meth*, whom before we ſpake of. By an Heir General of the *Lacies*, it came unto the *Burghs* then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the mariage of *Elizabeth* daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the laſt Earle of that Family, it came to *Leonel* Duke of *Clarence*, the ſecond ſon (then living) of King *Edward* the third; as by his Daughter *Philip* to the Earles of *March*, from them by the like mariage to the houſe of *York*, and in the perſon of King *Edward* the fourth, to the Crown again. But being neglected by the *Engliſh*, in the whole courſe of their Government, eſpecially in the Wars betwixt *York* and *Lancaſter*, it was cantoned into many Eſtates and Principalities, by the great Lord of the natural *Iriſh*, (who had born too great ſway here in the former times:) and ſo eſtranged from the civilities of *England*, and their Allegiance to that Crown, as if it had never been in ſubjection to it. In which eſtate it did continue (the Kings of *England* having here no more power, or profit, than the great ones of the Countrey were pleaſed to give them:) till the Rebellion firſt, and afterwards the vanquiſhment of *Hugh Oneal*, the then Earle of *Tir-Oen*, brought it in full ſubjection to the *Engliſh* government, of which more hereafter.

4 CONNAUGHT, in *Latine* called *Connacia*; by the *Iriſh*, *Connaught*, is bounded on the North, with *Ulſter*; on the Weſt, with the main Ocean; on the South, with *Munſter*, from which parted by the River *Shanon*; and on the Eaſt, with *Meth*, and ſome part of *Lemſter*. So called from the *Nagnata*, an old *Iriſh* Nation, or from *Nagnata* a Port Town, both placed by *Ptolemy* in this tract. The ſoyl of the ſame temper with that of *Ulſter*; as woody and as full of Bogs till theſe latter times, in which indifferently well cleared of both inconveniencies.

It hath been alſo called by our *Engliſh* Writers, the County of *Clare*, from *Thomas de Clare*, one of the younger Sons of *Gilbert de Clare* Earle of *Glouceſter*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward* the firſt: and is divided at the preſent, into theſe five Shires, that is to ſay, 1 *Letrim*, 2 *Roſcommon*, 3 *Maio*, 4 *Slego*, and 5 *Galloway* and *Twomond*. In which are comprehended but ſix Towns of any conſequence, for commerce and traffick; (an argument of the imperfect plantation of it by the *Engliſh* Conquerours;) and about 24 Caſtles, for defence of the Countrey, of old erection, beſides ſuch Fortreſſes as have been raiſed occaſionally in theſe later troubles.

Places of moſt note and obſervation, 1 *Toam*, an Archbiſhops See. 2 *Athenry*, an ancient Town, but decayed and ruinous; of moſt renown for being the Barony of *John de Bermingham*, a noble *Engliſhman*, who had great poſſeſſions in this tract. 3 *Letrim*, the chief Town of the County ſo named, neighboured by the *Curlew*-Mountains, unfortunately memorable for the great defeat there given the *Engliſh*, in *Tir-Oens* rebellion; and by the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Shenin*, or *Shanon*, whoſe courſe we have before deſcribed. 4 *Slego*, and 5 *Roſcommon*, the chief Town of their ſeveral Counties. 6 *Athlone*, a piece of great ſtrength, and the Key of *Connaught*. 7 *Twomond*, not otherwiſe much obſervable, but for giving the title of an Earle to the noble Family of *Obrian*, (deſcended from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that honour by King *Henry* the eighth. 8 *Galloway* the principal of this Province, a Biſhops See, and the third Citie of the Kingdom for beauty and bigneſſe. Situate near the fall of the great Lake, or River of *Corbes*, in the Weſtern Ocean, defended on that ſide from the turn of the Sea, and the fear of invaſions, by the interpoſition of ſome Iſlands (called the Iſles of *Arran*) very ſtrongly fortified. A noted Empory, and lately of ſo great fame with forreign Merchants, that an out-landiſh Merchant meeting with an *Iriſh-man*, demanded *in what part of* Galloway Ireland *ſtood*; as if *Galloway* had been the name of the Iſland, and *Ireland* onely the name of ſome Town.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, as the reſt of thoſe Provinces; the laſt King whereof was *Rodorick*, ſurnamed the *Great*, who having a great hand over the reſt of the Roytelets, entituled himſelf ſole Monarch, or King of *Ireland*. But being forced to ſubmit himſelf to King *Henry* the ſecond, his Countrey at the laſt was brought into ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, by the valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare*, Earle of *Glouceſter*, *William de Bermingham*, and other noble Adventurers of the *Engliſh* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their labours; yet the greateſt part of the ſpoyl, together with the title of Lords of *Connaught*, fell to the Family of the *Burghs*; from them to *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was ſhewn. Cantoned again amongſt the *Iriſh* and degenerate *Engliſh*, as *Ulſter* was, by the ſupine neglect of the Kings of *England*: till the Rebellion of *Tir-Oen*, involving all the chiefs of the *Iriſh* Nation in the ſame cauſe with him, involved them alſo conſequently in the ſame deſtruction.

5 MOUNSTER, by the *Latines* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North, with *Connaught*; on the Eaſt, with *Leinſter*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick*, or Weſtern Ocean; and on the South, with the *Vergivian*. By the natural *Iriſh* it is callid *Mown*, whence the *Engliſh* had the name of *Mounſter*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertility of the ſoyl, yeilds not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into ſix Counties, *viz*, 1 *Limerick*, 2 *Waterford*, 3 *Cork*, 4 *Deſmond*, 5 *Kerry*, and 6 *Tipperary*; which two laſt anciently enjoyed all the rights of a County Palatine: And in theſe Shires are comprehended (beſides many ſafe Stations and Rodes for ſhipping) 24 Towns of note and trading, and 66 Caſtles of old erection.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1 *Caſſiles*, in the County of *Limerick*, an Archbiſhops See, advanced unto that honour by Pope *Eugenius* the third, about the year 1150. 2 *Limerick*, the principal of that County, and the fourth in eſtimation of all the Kingdom: Situate in an Iſland compaſſed round about with the River *Shanon*, by which means well fortified; a well frequented Empory, and a Biſhops See; diſtant from the main Ocean about 60 miles, but ſo accommodated by the River, that ſhips of burden come up cloſe to the very walls. The Caſtle and the Bridge, pieces of great both ſtrength and beauty, were of the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with the ſituation. 3 *Clonmel*, in the County of *Tipperary*, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 4 *Holy Croſs*, in the ſame County alſo, once flouriſhing by reaſon of the great reſort of Pilgrims, to ſee and worſhip there a piece of the holy Croſs, as it was ſuppoſed: which ſuppoſition as it drew much wealth unto the Town, ſo it obtained the rights of a County *Palatine* for the County alſo. 5 *Thurles*, in the ſame County, which gives the title of a Vicount to the Earls of *Ormond*, but not elſe obſervable. 6 *Waterford*, on the River *Showre*, a well traded Port, a Biſhops See, and the ſecond Citie of the Kingdom. Of great fidelity to the *Engliſh* ſince the conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for that cauſe endowed with many ample priviledges. Firſt built by ſome *Norwegian* Pirats, who though they fixed it in one of the moſt barren parts and moſt foggy air of all the Countrey, yet they made choice of ſuch a ſafe and commodious ſite for the uſe of ſhipping, that of a neſt of Pirats it was eftſoon made a Receipt for Merchants, and ſuddenly grew up to great wealth and power. 6 *Cork*, by the *Latines* called *Corcagia*) the principal of that County, and a Biſhops See: well walled, and fitted with a very commodious Haven; conſiſting chiefly of one ſtreet reaching out in length; inhabited by a civil, wealthy, and induſtrious people. 7 *Dunk-Eran*, an old Epiſcopal See, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Ivernis* of *Ptolemy*, but not elſe obſervable. 8 *Kinſale*, upon the mouth of the River *Bavy*, a commodious Port, oppoſite to the Coaſts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tir-Oens* Rebellion by a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, under the command of *Don John de Aquilar*: but ſoon recovered (after the defeat of that Grand Rebel near the walls hereof) by the valour and indefatigable induſtry of *Charles* Lord *Mountjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom. 9 *Baltimore*, 10 *Youghall*, and 11 *Bere-haven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of ſafe Roads, or convenient Havens. 12 *Leſmore*, of old a Biſhops See, now annexed to *Waterford*, in which Shire it ſtandeth. Nothing in point of ſtory ſingular which concerns this Province; but that in was ſo carefully looked to by the Kings of *England*, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer) in the reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to the

Ireland.

the *Deputy* himſelf) called the *Lord Preſident* of *Mounſter* : by whoſe vigilancy there have hapned fewer Rebellions here, than in any Province of this Iſland.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Iſland, being originally *Britans* (as before is ſaid) were in the time of *Ptolemy*, diſtinguiſhed into the Nations of *Rhobognii*, *Darnii*, *Voluntii*, *Venicnii*, and *Erdini*, poſſeſſing the Northern parts, now *Vlſter*, the *Auteri*, *Gangani*, and *Nagnata*, inhabiting *Connaught* : the *Velibory*, *Uterni*, *Vodi*, and *Coriondi*, in the South, now *Mounſter* : and the *Menapii*, *Cauci*, *Blanii*, *Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meth* and *Leinſter*. Principal Cities of the which, were, *Eblana*, now *Dublin*; *Menapia*, now *Waterford*; *Nagnata*, which *Ptolemy* honored with the title of *Urbs inſignis*; *Rhigia*, *Rheba*, *Macolicum*, *Laberus*, *Ivernis*, *&c.* not eaſily diſcernible by what names we may call them now : this Countrey never being ſo happy as to come under the power of the *Romans*, the great Maſters of *Civility* and good Letters in the Weſt of *Europe* : and by that means, the actions and affairs thereof buried in ignorance and ſilence. Towards the falling of which Empire we finde the Nation of the *Scots* to be ſeated here, and from hence firſt to take poſſeſſion of the *Hebrides*, or Weſtern Iſles, next of the Weſtern part of *Britain* on the North of *Solway*. Afterwards ſome of the *Saxon* Monarchs caſt their eyes upon it, and made themſelves Maſters of *Dublin*, and ſome other places; but being incumbred with the *Danes* could not hold them long : being hardly able to defend their own againſt that people. The next that under took the conqueſt, were the Northern Nations, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Normans*, all paſſing in the Chronicles of that time, under the name of *Norwegians* : who firſt onely ſcowred a long the Coaſt in the way of Piracy. But after finding the weakneſſe of the Iſland, divided amongſt many petit and inconſiderable Princes, they made an abſolute conqueſt of it under the conduct of *Turgeſius*, whom they elected for their King : ſoon rooted out by the policy of the King of *Meth*, the onely *Iriſh* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petit King, by name *Omo Caghlon*, had a daughter of renowned beauty whom *Turgeſius* demanded of her Father to ſerve his luſts : and he ſeeming willing to condeſcend to the motion, as if honoured by it, made anſwer, That beſides his Daughter, he had at his dſpoſing many others of more exquiſite beauties, which ſhould all be ready at command. *Turgeſius* ſwallowing this bait, deſired him with all ſpeed to effect this meeting. But the King of *Meth* attiring in the habits of women, a company of young Gentlemen, who durſt for the common liberty adventure their ſeveral lives; conducted them to the Tyrants Bed-chamber. And they according to the directions given them, (when for that little modeſty ſake he had in him, he had commanded all his attendants to avoid the room) aſſaulted him, now ready for, and expecting more kind embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Mathian* King had by this time, acquainted divers of the better ſort with his plot; all which upon a ſigne given, ruſh into the Palace, and put to death all the *Norwegians*, and other attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Roytelets* enjoyed their former Dominions, till the year 1172. in which *Dermont Mac Morohg* King of *Leinſter*, having forced the Wife of *Maurice O Rock* King of *Meth*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom; came to the Court of *England* for ſuccour. To his Petition, *Henry* the ſecond then King, condeſcended; ſending him aid under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, ſurnamed *Strongbow*, Earle of *Pembroke*, who reſtored King *Dirmot*, and brought a great part of the Iſland under the *Engliſh* ſubjection. *John*, King of *England*, was the firſt who was entituled *Lord of Ireland*; which ſtile was granted him by Pope *Urban* the third, who for the ornament of his royalty, ſent him a plume of Peacock Feathers : and when *Tir-Oen* ſtiled him *Defender of the Iriſh Liberty*, he was by *Clement* the eighth honored with the like plume. But here we are to underſtand, that though the Kings of *England* uſed no other title then *Lords of Ireland*; yet were they Kings thereof in effect and power, *Lords Paramount*, as we uſe to ſay. And though themſelves retained onely the name of *Lords*, yet one of them have to one of his *Engliſh* Subjects, the honorable, but invidious title of *Duke of Ireland*. And they retained this title of *Lords*, till the year 1542. in which *Henry* the eighth, in an *Iriſh Parliament*, was declared King of *Ireland*, as a name more ſacred, and repleat with Majeſty, than that of *Lord* : at which time alſo he was declared to be the *Supreme Head* under God, of the Church of *Ireland*; and the pretended juriſdiction of all foreign powers, eſpecially the uſurped Authority of the Pope of *Rome* renounced by Law, though ſtill acknowledged by too many of this ſuperſtitious and untractable people.

The Government of this Countrey, ſince the firſt Conqueſt by the *Engliſh*, hath been moſt commonly by one Supreme Officer, who is ſometimes called the *Lord Lieutenant*, moſt generally the *Lort Deputy* of *Ireland*; than whom no *Vice-Roy* in all *Europe* hath greater power, or comes nearer the Majeſty of a King in his Train and State. For his aſſiſtance he hath a Privy Council attending on him though reſident for the moſt part at *Dublin* : and in emergencies, or caſes of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the ſtanding Rule of all civil Government, they owe their being and original to the *Engliſh* Parliaments. For in the reign of King *Henry* the ſeventh, Sir *Edward Poynings*, then *Lord Deputy*, cauſed an Act to paſſe in the *Iriſh* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in *England* before that time, were to be entertained and ſtand in forces as the Laws of *Ireland*. On which foundation they have raiſed many *Superſtructures* both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, ſummoned by the *Lord Deputy* at the Kings appointment : in which, by an other Statute made in the time of the ſaid *Poynings*, the people are enabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were firſt tranſmitted to the Court of *England* to be conſidered of by the King, before they were *Voted* to in either of the Houſes of the *Iriſh* Parliaments. Which Laws commonly called *Poynings Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongſt them; though the laſt much ſtomached and repined at; not onely as a badge of their Subjection to the Crown of *England*, but as a Curb, or Martingal to hold them in.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe good *Lawes*, and the ample power of their Commiſſion, the Lord Deputies could never abſolutely ſubdue the Iſland, or bring the people to any civil courſe of life; the Fathers inflicting an heavy curſe on all their poſterity, if ever they ſhould ſow Corn, build houſes, or learn the *Engliſh* tongue. To this indiſpoſition of the *Iriſh* themſelves, let us add the defects of the Kings of *England*, and *Iriſh* Deputies, in matters of civil policy, as I find them particularized by Sir *John Davies*, in his worthy and pithy diſcourſe of this Subject. I will onely glean a few of them. Firſt then, ſaith he, a *barbarous* Countrey is like a field over-grown with weeds, which muſt firſt be well broken with the *Plough*, and then immediately *ſown* with good and profitable ſeed: ſo muſt a wild and uncivil people, be firſt broken and ploughed up by war, and then preſently *ſown* with the ſeed of *good Laws* and diſcipline; leſt the weeds revive in the one, and ill manners in the other. Here then was the firſt defect in our *Engliſh* Kings, not to tame and take down the ſtomachs and pride of this people, though either civil, or forreign wars perhaps occaſioned this neglect: and alſo the *Iriſh* Deputies, who at ſuch times as the people upon a ſmall diſcomfiture, were creſt-faln, neglected the ſo keeping of them by ſeverity of Diſcipline. The ſecond overſight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave ſuch large poſſeſſions and *regalities* unto the firſt Conquerors, that the people knew no Authority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. The Laws of *England* were not indifferently communicated to all the *Iriſhry*, but to ſome particular Families and Provinces onely: inſomuch as there were but five great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, who had the benefit and protection of the Laws of *England*, that is to ſay, *O Neal* in *Ulſter*, *O Connohor* in *Connaught*, *Mac Morrough* in *Lemſter*, *O Malaghlin* in *Meth*, *O Brian* in *Twomond*; known by the name of *Quinque Sanguines* in ſome old Records. By means whereof the reſt of the people being in the condition of *Out-Laws*, or at the beſt of *Aliens*, had no incouragment either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themſelves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the *Deputies*, or Lords *Lieutenants*, who having made good and wholeſome Laws againſt the barbarous cuſtomes of the Common people, and the mercileſs oppreſſions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for terror, not for reformation. Fifthly, add unto theſe (which Sir *John Davies* hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken by the Kings of *England* in the choice of their *Deputies*: ſometimes conferring that high Office as a Court-preferment, without Relation unto the merits of the perſon; and ſometimes ſending men of weak, or broken fortunes, who attend more their own profit than their Maſters ſervice, and were more bent to fleece than to feed his flock. Sixthly, and yet beſides theſe Errors of the Kings and Deputies in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the *Planters* themſelves: who building all their Forts and Caſtles in the open Countrey, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Faſtneſſes to the natural *Iriſh*; the ſtrength whereof not only animated them to Rebellion on all occaſions: but ſerved too fitly to continue them in their ancient *Barbariſm*.

In theſe termes of wildneſs and non-ſubjection ſtood *Ireland*, till the later end of Queen *Elizabeths* reign; at what time the rebellion of *Hugh O Neal* Earle of *Tir-Oen* had ingaged almoſt all the *Iriſhry* in that deſperate action: which ending in the overthrow of that ingratefull Rebel, and all his partizans, not onely cruſhed the overmuch powerableneſs of the *Iriſh* Nobility; but made the final and full conqueſt of the whole Nation. So true it is, that *Every Rebellion, when it is ſuppreſt, doth make the Prince ſtronger, and the Subjects weaker*. *Ireland* thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a victor over all her enemies, and left the *ſowing* of it unto her ſucceſſor King *James*, who omitted no part of a skilfull *Seedſman*. 1 Then there was an ἀμνηστία, or *Act* of *Oblivion* made, whereby all offences againſt the Crown were remitted, if by ſuch a limited day the people would ſue out their *Pardons*, and by the ſame Act, all the *Iriſhry* were manumitted from the ſervitude of their Lords, and received into the Kings immediate *protection*. Secondly, The whole Kingdom was divided into *Shires* and *Judges itinerant* appointed to circuit them: whereby it hath followed that the exactions of the Lords are laid aſide, the behaviour of the people narrowly looked into, the paſſages before unknown unto our Souldiers, are laid open by our *Under-Sheriffs* and *Bayliffs*; and the common people ſeeing the benefit and ſecurity they enjoy by the *Engliſh* Laws, and loth to plead alwayes by an *Interpreter*, begin to ſet their children to School, for the learning of the *Engliſh* tongue. Thirdly, The *Iriſh* were not rooted out, as in the firſt plantation in *Lemſter*, and the *Engliſh* onely eſtated in their rooms; but were onely removed from the woods, bogs, and mountains, into the plain and open Countrey; that being like *wild trees* tranſplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better fruit. And fourthly, whereas there was but one *Freeholder* in a whole Countrey, which was the Lord himſelf, the reſt holding in villenage, and being ſubject to the Lords immeaſurable taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to build, or plant, now the *Lords eſtate* was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himſelf, which was ſtill left unto him; and that which was in the hands of his *Tenant*, who had eſtates made in their poſſeſſions, according to the Common-Law of *England*, paying in ſtead of uncertain *Iriſh* taxations, certain *Engliſh* rents: whereby the people have ſince ſet their mindes upon repairing their houſes, and manuring their lands, to the great increaſe of the private and publick *revenue*.

But that which moſt advanced the reduction of *Ireland* to a ſetled and civil Government, and rooted it in a ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of *Tyrone*, and *Tirconnel*, Sir *John Odaugherty*, and other great men of the North, poſſeſſed of large territories and great juriſdictions. Who being both uncapable of Loyalty, and impatient of ſeeing the Kings *Judges*, *Juſtices*, and other Miniſters of State, to hold their *Seſſions*, and execute their Commiſſions of *Oyer* and *Terminer*, within the parts where they commanded: without more provocation, or the fear of any danger but a guilty Conſcience, forſook the Countrey, and left their whole eſtates to the Kings diſpoſing

Ireland.

poſing. By whoſe directions, their Lands were ſeized upon and ſold to ſeveral Purchaſers, the City of *London* infeoffed in a great part of them, a great plantation made in *Ulſter* of *Engliſh*, *Welch*, and *Scots*, by the united name of a *Britiſh Plantation*; and a new Order of Knights *Baronets* erected in the Kingdom of *England* for raiſing money to advance and indear the work. Which had it been as cordially affected by the *Engliſh*, as it was by the *Scots*, if more of this Nation had gone thither, and not abandoned ſo great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the *Scots*, being factious for another, did not eaſily brook) and the uniting of both people in the bonds of amity: the *Iriſh* looking on the *Scot* as a meer *Intruder*, but on the *Engliſh* as his old Maſter, or his *Fellow-Subject*. Howſoever, ſo great a part of the Countrey (and that which heretofore was the neſt of the *Rebels*) being thus diſpoſed of, it came to paſs, that *Ireland*, which before ſerved onely as a *grave* to *bury* our beſt men, and a *gulf* to ſwallow our greateſt treaſures; being governed neither as a Countrey *Free*, nor conquered: was brought in ſome hope, by the prudence and policy of her laſt Kings, and late *Lord Deputies*, to prove an orderly *Common-wealth*; civil in it ſelf, profitable to the Prince, and a good ſtrength to the *Britiſh* Empire. For to ſuch Order it was reduced, in a little time, that the *wayfaring* men might travel without danger, the *ploughman* walk without fear, the Laws adminiſtred in every place alike, the men drawn unto Villages, the woods and faſtneſſes left to beaſts; and all reduced to that civility, as our fathers never ſaw, nor could we well ſample out of antient Hiſtories.

The *revenues* of this Kingdom are ſaid by *Walſingham*, in the time of *Edward* the third, to have been yearly 40000 pounds; but his ſucceſſors, till of late, have ſcarce got ſo much as the keeping of it coſt them: King *Richard* the ſecond by the ſame *Walſingham* reported to have ſpent 30000 Marks out of his own purſe, over and above the money which he received thence. Whether this Countrey were ſo profitable to *Edward* the third, or no, I determine not, though I find good reaſons to perſwade me, that *Walſingham* was not well acquainted with the ſtate of that *Exchequer*. But ſure I am that the Revenues of the Crown are more then double what they were in the ſaid Kings reign, and more duely paid into the *Exchequer* of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the profits of the *Cuſtomhouſe* amounting to 30000 *per Annum*, in the laſt year of King *James* his reign. Not to ſay any thing of the great improvements which were made by the Earl of *Strafford*, in the time of his Government, becauſe they fell together with him.

The ſtrength of this Kingdom conſiſteth partly in the ſituation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Caſtles firſt built and fortified by the *Engliſh* Planters; and partly in a ſtanding Army continually kept by the Kings of *England*, for defence of their hold and intereſſe againſt the Rebellions of the Natives. What Forces it is able to raiſe both of Horſe and Foot, could never be conjectured at till now of late. For formerly the Kings of *England* being actually poſſeſſed onely of thoſe four Counties which they call the *Pale*, that is to ſay, the Counties of *Dublin*, *Lonth*, *Kildare*, and *Meth* (which laſt hath ſince the time of King *Henry* the eighth been ſubdivided into three) were not able to raiſe any great power out of that Eſtate, but were forced to ſend Souldiers out of *England* (as occaſion was) to preſerve their Soveraignty in *Ireland*. The greateſt Levie which I read of, was that of 1500 *Iriſh*, led by the Prior of *Kilmainham* to King *Henry* the fifth, then being at the ſiege of *Harflew* in *Normandy*. And on the other ſide, the great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, and degenerate *Engliſh*, being divided into factions amongſt themſelves, and never joyned in any one principle of common intereſſe; were more inconſiderable, than the weak but united forces of the Kings of *England*. And though moſt of them at laſt, were drawn into a confederacy with the Earle of *Tir-Oen*, to make good his rebellion: yet find I not that their Army did exceed at any time, the number of 8000 men; and thoſe not well appointed neither. So that the beſt eſtimate which can be made of the forces of *Ireland*, muſt be meaſured by the Armies raiſed in the late Rebellion, when the *Iriſhry* had both time, and leiſure, to get themſelves ſome reputation in the world, and make proviſion for a War. In proſecution of which, he who conſiders the many Armies they have raiſed, ſince their firſt muſtering under the command of Sir *Phelim O Neal*; the many defeats which have been given them, and thoſe as many new recruits after each defeat; all of them raiſed out of the bodies of their own people, without ſupply from other Countreys (beſides ſuch as have ſerved againſt them for the King:) muſt needs conclude that they want not men enough for ſervice; nor skill nor courage to attempt the moſt difficult enterpriſes.

The Arms of *Ireland* are *Azure*, an Harp, *Or*, ſtringed *Argent*. Which Coat King *James*, (to ſhew himſelf the firſt abſolute King of *Ireland*) firſt cauſed to be marſhalled with the Royal Arms of *Great Britain*.

Reckoned in *Ireland* at, and ſince
the *Reformation*,
Archbiſhops 4. Biſhops 19.
One Univerſity, *Viz.*
Dublin.

Orcades & Schetland.

The LESSER ISLANDS.

AND now we come at the laſt to the *LESSER ISLANDS*, diſperſed in ſeveral parts of the *Britiſh* Ocean. The chief whereof are, 1 The *Orcades*, 2 *Schetland*, 3 The *Hebrides*, 4 *Man*, 5 *Angleſey*, 6 The Iſlands of the *Severn* Sea, 7 The *Sorlinges* or Iſles of *Silly*, 8 *Wight*, 9 *Thanet*, 10 *Sunderland*, 11 *Holy-Iſland*.

I. The ORCADES or Iſles of *Orkney* are in number 32, ſituate over againſt *Cathneſs*, the moſt Northern Countrey of all *Scotland*; and ſeperate from one another by ſome narrow Straights. The ſoil indifferently fruitful, exceedingly well ſtored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattel; plentifull in Hares and Conies, as of Cranes and Swans: but deſtitute of Wheat, and unfurniſhed both of woods and trees. But their chief commodity is their Fiſh, which the inhabitants catch upon the coaſts in great abundance. Thoſe of moſt note in all the cluſter, are, 1 *Heth*, conceived to be the *Ocetis* of *Ptolemie*: as 2 *Fair Iſle*, on good reaſon thought to be the *Dumna* of *Pliny*; the chief Town of it being ſtill called by the name of *Dumo*. 3 *Hey*, taken or miſtaken for the *Dumna* of *Pliny*, but not elſe obſervable. 4 *Pomona*, the chief of all, in length about 26 miles, in breadth, where it is broadeſt, ſix. The chief Town of it *Kirkwall*, honoured with a Biſhops See, and ſtrengthned with two Caſtles. This Iſland is well ſtored with Tin and Lead, and is at this day by the inhabitants called *Mainland*.

The people of theſe Iſles (according to *Maginus*) are great drinkers, but no drunkards; *bibaciſſimi ſunt incolæ, nunquam tamen inebriantur.* They uſe the *Gothiſh* language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whoſe poſſeſſion they once were; and of whoſe qualities they ſtill retain ſome ſmack. The Iſles themſelves in the time of *Solinus* were not inhabited, being then overgrown with ruſhes; (now in a meaſure, populous and fertile, as before was ſaid) and were firſt diſcovered by *Julius Agricola*, the firſt that ever ſailed about *Britain*. In later times they were poſſeſſed by the *Normans*, or *Norwegians*, who held them till the year 1266. when *Magnus* King of *Norwey* ſurrendred them up to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, which ſurrendry ſome of our ſucceeding Kings did afterwards ratifie: the claim hereto being finally relinquiſhed by *Chriſtiern* the firſt, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, on the marriage of his daughter *Margaret* with King *James* the third, *Anno* 1474. ſome money being added to make good the contract, without which the *Danes* would not forgo their pretenſions to them.

II. Two dayes ſailing North of theſe *Orcades*, lieth SCHETLAND, an Iſland belonging to the Crown of *Scotland*: and is by many learned men, upon very good reaſons, ſuppoſed to be the *Thule* of the ancients. For firſt, it ſtandeth in the 63 degree of *latitude*, in which *Ptolemy* placed *Thule*. 2ly, It lieth oppoſite to *Bergen* in *Norwey*; againſt which *Pomponius Mela* hath ſeated it. And 3dly, *Caſper Pencerus* hath obſerved, that this *Schetland* is by Mariners called *Thylenſel*, a name in which that of *Thule* is apparently touched. That this *Iſe-land* was not *Thule* (as moſt ſay) we ſhall ſhew you when we come to *Norwey*, and the Northern Iſlands. Here we adde only, that the ancients did report many ſtrange things of it, and ſome of them beyond all belief. *Pliny* affirming that they had no day here for all the winter (*nulli per brmmam dies*, as his own words are:) with whom agree *Solinus* & many others, as to that particular. *Iſidore* adds (*Origen.* lib. 14. c. 6.) *nullam ultra eam diem eſſe*, that beyond this Iſle there was no day in any place; as if here had been the end of the world and nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polybius* goes beyond them all, reporting that in this Iſle there was no diſtinction of Earth, Aire, and Water: ἀλλὰ σύγκριμά τι ἐκ τούτων, but a confuſed mixture of all together, like the primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. The reaſon of which ſtrange reports, was the audaciouſneſs of thoſe who had ſeen the Iſland, and thought that whatſoever they ſaid of it would not be diſproved, becauſe of the remoteneſs of it from more civil Countreys. So truely and judiciouſly ſpoken was that of *Syneſius*, a right learned Prelate, Ἡ Θούλη διδοῦσα τοῖς διαπλεύσασιν αὐτὴν ἀνύθυνα καὶ ἀνέλεγκτα ψεύδεσθαι. *Thule* (ſaith he) gave thoſe who had ſayled unto it, the opportunity of lying without controul. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers have made too much uſe of in theſe laſt times alſo.

III. The HEBRIDES, HEBUDÆ, or *Weſtern Iſlands*, ſituate on the Weſt of *Scotland*, are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1 *Ella*, 24 miles long, and 16 in breadth; plentifull in Wheat, Cattel, and herds of Deer. 2 *Jona*, famous for the Sepulchres of the old *Scotiſh* Kings; whoſe chief Town is *Sodore*, once a Biſhops See, called hence *Sodorenſis*; his juriſdiction comprehending theſe Iſlands with the Iſle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope *Gregory* the 4th, *An.* 840. or thereabouts. His dwelling for the moſt part in the Iſle of *Man*, as the wealthier and more pleaſant part of his *Dioceſe*; till the conqueſt of it by the *Engliſh*; at what time thoſe of the *Weſtern Iſlands*, withdrew themſelves from his obedience, and had a Biſhop of their own: both of them for a long time called *Sodorenſes*; but at laſt this took the name of *Inſulanus*, Biſhop of the Iſles, which he ſtill retains. 3 *Mela*, by *Ptolemy* called *Maleos*, (that of *Ila* before-mentioned being his *Epidia*) mountainous and hilly, but affording good mines of Lead and Copper; 25 miles more in compaſs than that of *Ila*. 4 *Leunes*, or *Leviſſa*, the largeſt of all the *Hebrides*, ſaid to be 60 miles in length, and 30 in breadth, the more Weſtern of the two *Ebudaes* ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*: the other being now called 5 *Skie*, famous for multitudes of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6 *Racline*, the *Recina* of *Ptolemy*, the ſmalleſt of the *Hebrides*, and moſt neer to *Ireland*. The reſt of leſs note, not known, nor inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, and not very well peopled at preſent, I forbear to name: ſome of them rather Rocks than Iſlands, others ſcarce having graſs enough to hide their barenneſs. The people of them all, as well in language as behaviour, re-

Man.

ſemble the *wild-Iriſh*, and are called *Redſhanks* : a people, as King *James* affirmeth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, utterly rude, and without all ſhew of Civility; ſuch as endure not to be governed by Laws, or kept under by Diſcipline. *Legum ſeveritate, & judiciorum metu, ſe alligari non patiuntur*, ſaith judicious *Camden*. Such as they are, they came unto the Crown of *Scotland* by a contract betwixt *Magnus* King of *Norwey*, and King *Alexander* the third: the *Orcades* being bargained for at the ſame time alſo.

South of the *Hebrides*, in the Bay of *Dunbritton Frith*, lyeth the Iſle of *Rothſay* (now called *Buthe*) which gives the title of a Duke to the *Prince* of *Scotland*: and the Iſle of *Arran*, which gives the title of an Earl, to the chief of the *Hamiltons*.

IV. *MAN* is ſituate juſt over againſt the Sothern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is diſtant 25 miles; and was judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*, becauſe it foſtereth venemous Serpents brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Monœda*, or the further *Mona*, to difference it from that which we call *Angleſey*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*; *Menavia*, by *Oroſius* and *Beda*; *Eubonia*, by *Gildas* an old *Britiſh* Writer. The *Welch* at this day call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Maning*, and the *Engliſh Man*. It is in length 30 miles, in breadth 15, and 8 in ſome places. The people hate theft, and begging; and uſe a Language mixt of the *Norwegian* and *Iriſh* tongues. The ſoyl is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oats, Barley, and Wheat; with which they uſe to ſupply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the *Continent* it ſelf, yet queſtionleſs the *Weſtern Iſles*, which are a member of it. For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God *John Merick* late Biſhop of this Iſland, in a letter to Mr *Camden*, at ſuch time as he was compoſing his moſt excellent *Britannia*. *Our Iſland* (ſaith he) *for cattel, for fiſh, and for corn, hath not only ſufficient for it ſelf, but ſendeth alſo good ſtore into other Countries*: Now what Countries ſhould need this ſupply (*England* and *Ireland* being aforehand with ſuch proviſion) except *Scotland*, or ſome members thereof, I ſee not.

Venerable Bede numbred in it 300 Families, and now it is furniſhed with 17 Pariſh Churches. The chief Towns are 1 *Balacuri*, and 2 *Rußin*, or *Caſtle-Town*, the ſeat of a *Biſhop*, who though he be under the Archbiſhop of *York*, yet never had any voice in the *Engliſh* Parliament. In this Iſland is the hill *Sceafull*, where on a clear day one may ſee *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: here alſo are bred the *Soland* Geeſe, of rotten wood falling into the water. This Iſland was taken from the *Britains* by the *Scots*, and from them regained by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*. Afterwards the *Norwegians* ſeized it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings hereof ruling over the *Hebrides*, and ſome part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander* the third of *Scotland*, by a mixt title of Arms and purchaſe. After which time it was ſometimes *Engliſh*, ſometimes *Scotiſh*, as their fortunes varied: till the end, and about the year 1340. *William Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, deſcended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and ſold it to the Lord *Scrope*; who being condemned of Treaſon, *Henry* the fourth gave it to *Henry Piercy* Earl of *Northumberland*, but he alſo proving falſe to his Soveraign, it was given to the *Stanleys* now Earls of *Darby*.

The Kings of *Man* of the *Daniſh* or *Norwegian* Race.

1065	1	*Godred*, the Son of *Syrrick*.
1066	2	*Fingal*, Son of *Godred*.
1066	3	*Godred* II. Son of *Hararld*.
1082	4	*Lagnan*, Eldeſt Son of *Godred* the ſecond.
1089	5	*Donald*, Son of *Tado*.
1098	6	*Magnus*, King of *Norway*.
1102	7	*Olave*, the third Son of *Godred*.
1144	8	*Godred* III. Son of *Olave*.
1187	9	*Reginald*, baſe Son of *Godred* the third.
1226	10	*Olave*, the lawfull Son of *Godred* the third.
1237	11	*Harald*, Son of *Olave*,
1243	12	*Reginald* II. Brother of *Harald*.
1252	13	*Magnus* II. Brother of *Reginald*.
1266	14	*Magnus* III. King of *Norway*; the laſt King of *Man* of the *Daniſh* or *Norwegian* Race.

The Kings and Lords of *Man* of the *Engliſh* Bloud.

1340	1	*William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, King of *Man*.
1395	2	*William* Lord *Scrope*, King of *Man*.
2399	3	*Henry*, Earl of *Northumberland*, King of *Man*.
1403	4	*William* Lord *Stanley*, Lord of the Iſle of *Man*.
	5	*John* Lord *Stanley*.
	6	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*.
	7	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1503	8	*Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1521	9	*Edward* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1572	10	*Henry* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
1593	11	*Ferdinando* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
	12	*William* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*.
	13	*James* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*, Lord of the Iſle of *Man*, now living *An.* 1648.

King
in

in effect, though but Lord in title, as having here all kind of *Civil* power and juriſdiction over the inhabitants, under the *Feiſe* and *Soveraignty* of the Crown of *England*; together with the nomination of the *Biſhop*, whom he preſents unto the *King* for his *Royal aſſent*, then to the Archbiſhop of *York* for his conſecration. And this I take to be the reaſon why the Biſhop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honour, but ſuch as held immediately of the King himſelf; nor was it reaſon that they ſhould.

Angleſey.

V. ANGLESEY, is an Iſland ſituate in the *Iriſh* Sea, over againſt *Carnarvonſhire* in *North Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow Straight, which they call the *Menai*. By the *Britans* themſelves, as by the *Welch* at this day, it was called *Mon*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Mona*, but being conquered by the *Engliſh*, it obtained the name of *Angleſey*, as one would ſay, the Iſland of the *Engliſh-Men*, (*eye* in the *Saxon* language ſignifying an Iſland (A place of ſuch a fair revenue to the Princes of it, that *Llewellen* the laſt Prince of Wales being ſtripped of almoſt all the reſt of his Eſtates by King *Edward* the firſt, paid to that King a tribute of 1000 *per Annum* for this Iſland only.

And to ſay truth, the Iſland is exceeding fruitful both in Corn and Cattle; from whence the *Welch* are liberally ſtored with both: and therefore it is ſaid Proverbially, *Mon Mam Cimri*, that *Angleſey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from Eaſt to Weſt, about 20 miles, and 17 in breadth. Containing in that compaſs 74 Pariſhes, divided into ſix hundreds, and hath in it only two market Towns: that is to ſay, 1 *Beaumaris*, ſeated on a flat or mariſh ground, near the *Menai*, built by King *Edward* the firſt to ſecure his Conqueſt: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2 *Newburg*, a Town of no great antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welch* called *Roſſur*: in former times it had an Haven of ſome good receipt, but now choaked with ſand. The other places of moſt note are, 3 *Aberfraw*, a ſmall village now, but heretofore the Royal ſeat of the Kings of *Wales*: and fourthly, *Holy-head*, ſeated on an head-land or *Promontory* thruſting into the Sea, made *holy* (or thought ſo at leaſt) by the religious retirement of S. *Kuby*, or *Kibius*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Hilarie* of *Poictiers*; from whence by the *Welchmen* called *Caer Cuby*: of moſt note for the ordinary paſſage betwixt *Wales* & *Ireland*. Antiently this Iſland was the ſeat of the *Druides*, & brought with no ſmall difficulty under the power of the *Romans*, by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the people fighting in other parts of *Britain*, for their liberty only: but here *pro Aris & focis* too, for their *Religion*, *Liberty*, and their Gods to boot: Being deſerted by the *Romans* with the reſt of the *Britains*, it remained in the poſſeſſion of its own natural Princes, till the fatal period of that State; when added to the Crown of *England* by the puiſſance of King *Edward* the firſt, by whom made one of the ſhires of *Wales*, as it ſtill continues.

Not far from *Angleſey*, ſomewhat inclining to the South, is the Iſle of *Bardſey*, by *Ptolemie* called *Edri*, by *Plinie Adros*, by the *Welch Enlhy*; extending towards the Eaſt with a rocky *Promontory*, but rich and fruitful towards the Weſt: the retiring place of many godly and devout *Hermits* in the former times. Southwards from hence, and over againſt S. *Davids*, are two other Iſlands, the one called *Selame*, plentiful of wild honey; the other named by the *Welch Lymen*, by the *Engliſh Ramſey*; thought to be the *Limni* of *Ptolomie*, the *Silimnum* of *Plinie*, but not elſe remarkable.

VI. THE ISLANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA four in number; of no great note, but I muſt take them in my paſſage to the Iſles of *Silly*. Of thoſe the firſt is *Flat-Holm*; for the flat & level; the 2 *Stepholm*, from the ſteep and craggy diſpoſition of it: both by the *Welch* called *Echni*, and both ſituate over againſt the County of *Somerſet*. More toward the opening of the *Channel*, lyeth the Iſle of 3 *Chaldey*, called by the *Welchmen Inis Pir*, of a ſmall note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Iſle of 4 *Lundey*, over againſt *Devonſhire*, the principal Iſland of this Sea: extending two miles every way: of excellent paſturage, well ſtored with *Conies*, and great plenty of *Pigeons*. Situate a good diſtance from any part of the land, in the midſt of the ſalt and brackiſh Ocean, and yet yeeldeth many Springs of *Freſh Water* for the uſe of the people; inhabiting for the moſt part in a Town of the ſame name with the Iſland. A place of very great ſtrength and ſafety; begirt about with dangerous unapprochable Rocks; and having but one way of acceſs into it, and that ſo narrow that two men cannot go a breſt.

VII. The Iſles of SILLY, in number 145, are ſituate over againſt the moſt Weſtern *Promontory* of *Cornwall*, from which diſtant 24 miles; and lie round together in the manner of a ring or *Circle*. Diſcovered firſt by the *Silures*, a *Phœnician* Colony in *Spain*, oppoſite againſt which they lie; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*: much traded and reſorted to by the ſaid *Phœnicians* from the Iſle of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhauſtible Mines of *Tinne*, which they found among them. A Trade ſo great and gainful to them, that they held it a great point of State: κρύπτειν ἅπασι τὸν πλοῦν, to keep it as a ſecret from all the world, as we find in *Strabo*: who addes the ſtory of a *Carthaginian* or *Phœnician* Merchant incountred in his voyage hither by ſome *Roman* Veſſels; and ſplitting his ſhip on the next ſhore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him) rather than let them know to what place he was bound; rewarded for his honeſt care, and recompenſed for the loſs of his ſhip & goods, out of the publick Treaſury. From this abundance of *Tinne*, the *Gracians* when they came to know them, called them *Caſſiterides*: (*Caſſiteros* in that language ſignifying *Tynne*) accordingly *Herodotus* οὔτε νήσους οἶδα Κασσιτερίδας ἐούσας τῶν ὁ κασσίτερος ἡμῖν φοιτᾷ, affirming that he knew not thoſe Iſlands called *Caſſiterides*, from whence *Tynne* was brought. The richneſs of this commodity, the pleaſures of the place, & the Weſtern ſituation of them; makes many of the *Grecians* call them the *Heſperides*: miſtaking them for the *Fortunate Iſlands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*, as before is ſaid, *Sigdeles* in the corrupt Copies of *Antoninus*; *inſulæ Sillinæ*, by *Severus Sulpitius*, from whence we have the name of the *Iſles* of *Silly*. The *Flemings*, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitful in Corn and Herbage, beſides the treaſures hid within: well ſtored with Conies, Cranes, Swans, and moſt ſorts of wild Fowl. Ten of them more eſteemed than the reſt, are called by the names of 1 *Armath*, 2 *Agnes*, 3 *Sampſon*, 4 *Silly*, 5 *Breſar*, 6 *Ruſco*, 7 *S. Helens*, 8 *Arthur*, 9 *S. Maurice*, and 10. *S. Maries*: Of which the moſt famous in the accompt of the former times, was that of *Silly*, as giving name unto the reſt; but in the preſent eſtimate *S. Maries* is accompted the chief of all: 8 miles in compaſs, fruitful of all neceſſaries, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle built by Queen *Elizabeth*; well manned and *Garriſoned*, for defence of a large & goodly Harbour made amongſt theſe Iſlands, capable of the greateſt Navies.

Theſe Iſlands firſt diſcovered by *Himilco* a *Carthaginian*, ſent by that State to ſearch into the Weſt Coaſts of *Europe*, became of great fame afterwards both in *Greece*, and *Italy*; by reaſon of the Mines of *Tinne* ſpoken of before. So beneficial to the *Romans*, that they uſed to ſend hither their comdemned Priſoners to work in the Mines; as the beſt ſervice to be done by their forfeited lives. And hither, amongſt others, *Juſtantius*, a fierce *Priſcillianiſt*, for his factious and ſeditious carriage, was ſent by *Maximus*; *ad Sillinam inſulam ultra Britanniam deportatus*, as *Sulpitius* hath it. After the *Romans* had forſaken their hold in *Britain*, they returned again into the power and poſſeſſion of the *Natives*; from whom ſubdued, and added unto the *Engliſh* Crown by *Athelſtan* the eighth King of *England*. Now ordered for *Civil* matters, as a part of *Cornwall*; for military, by their own Captain, ſubordinate to the Lord *Lieutenant* of that Countrey; and for the *Tin trade*, by the Lord *Warden* and Court of *Stanneries*. An Officer & Court erected for the benefit & regulating of the *Tinners* of *Cornwall*, who by reaſon of their imployment in theſe *Mines* have many priviledges and exemptions more than other Subjects; but of late limited and reſtrained by Act of Parliament.

VIII. The Iſle of WIGHT lieth over againſt *Hampſhire*, from which it ſeemeth to have been divided; the paſſage betwixt it and *Hurſt-Caſtle* on the oppoſite ſhore, being very narrow; and the name of it intimating ſome ſuch diviſion. For by the *Britans* it was antiently called *Guith*, which ſignifieth a breach or ſeparation, from whence the *Engliſh* have their *Wight*; the turning of *Gu.* to *W.* being familiar with the *Saxons*, and all other *Dutch* people: and from the ſame root probably the *Romans* had the name of *Vectis*; *Vecht*, *Wight*, and *Guith*, beeing words of ſuch neer reſemblance, that we need not travel further for an *Etymologie*. The Iſland of an *Oval* form, 20 miles in length, and 12 miles broad about the midſt; from thence growing narrower towards each end, to the Eaſt and Weſt. Naturally fenced about on all ſides, on the South eſpecially, where it looks towards *France*, on which ſide inacceſſible by reaſon of the ſteep & craggy Rocks, the whole length thereof; and not much leſs ſafe on the North-weſt, where the remainder of the Rocks, (which they call the *Shingles*, and the *Needles*) not worn away either at or ſince the firſt *ſeparation* from the other ſhore, make the paſſage dangerous except to ſingle ſhips, and thoſe not unacquainted with the courſe of the Channel. Towards the North-Eaſt more flat and level, and therefore fortified with the two Caſtles of the *Cows*, and *Sandham*. There is alſo the Caſtle of *Yarmouth* in the Weſt parts of the Iſland, and that of *Gareſbrook* in the midſt (but more towards the North:) in which laſt there is ſaid to be Armour for 5000 men; and in each Village (of which here are 33, beſides many Market Towns) a peece of Ordinance. Yet do not all theſe Arms and Caſtles adde ſo much to the ſtrength of it, as the natural courage of the People; warlike and ſtout, and trained unto the poſtures of War from their very childhood.

The ſoil hereof abundantly anſwereth the pains of the Husbandman, ſo plentiful of Corn, and all the fruits of a good *paſturage*; that they have not only enough for themſelves, but furniſh the markets of *Southampton* and *Portſmouth*, (but the laſt eſpecially) with the greateſt part of the Wheat, Fleſh, Cheeſe, and Butter, which is ſpent among them. Inſomuch that the Souldiers of *Portſmouth* preſuming on the ſtrength of the Town, have been uſed to ſay, That if *they had the Iſle of WIGHT to their friend, and the Seas open, they cared not for all the World beſides*. Their Sheep here of ſo fine fleece, that the Wool hereof hath the ſecond place of eſteem next to that of *Lemſter* (in the County of *Hereford*,) and precedency of that of *Cotſwold*.

Their chief Town, 1 *Yarmouth*, on the North-Weſt of the Iſland, ſeated on a convenient Haven which is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance to that of *Rochel*; and that Haven defended with a Caſtle. 2 *Brading*, another Market-town. 3 *Newton*, an antient *Burrough*, and priviledged with ſending Burgeſſes to the *Engliſh Parliament*. 4 *Gareſbrook*, a large Town, and neighboured with an antient Caſtle. 5 *Newport*, now the chief of all the Iſle, called in the times paſt *Medena*, afterward *Novus Burgus de Medena*, at laſt *Newport*; ſeated upon an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of leſſer burden to the very key; and by that means populous, wel traded, and inhabited by a civil and wealthy People.

The Iſland firſt ſubdued to the *Romans* by the valour of *Veſpaſian*, (afterwards Emperour of *Rome*) in the time of *Claudius*. Extorted from the *Britans* by *Cerdick*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and by him given to *Stuffa* and *Whitgar*, two of that Nation, who had almoſt rooted out the old Inhabitants. It was the laſt Countrey of the *Saxons* which received the Goſpel, and then upon compulſion too; forced to it by the power as well as the perſwaſion of *Cedwalla*, the *Weſt-Saxon* King. Took from the *Engliſh* in the time of the *Norman* Conquerour, by *William Fitz-Osborn* Earl of *Hereford*, who thereupon was made the firſt Lord thereof. From whoſe Family, by the gift of *Henry* the ſecond, it paſſed to that of *Redvars*, or *Rivers*, (*de Ripariis*) then Earls of *Devonſhire*: and on the failing of that Houſe returned to the Crown in the Reign of *Edward* the firſt. Never ſo much ennobled as by *Henry* the ſixth, who bearing a great affection to *Henry Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, in the 23 of his reign crowned him *King of Wight*, *An.* 1445. Which title ended with his life about two year after.

IX. THANET, is a little Iſland in the North-Eaſt of *Kent*, not far from *Sandwich*, environed on three parts with the Sea: into which it ſhooted with a large Promontory called the *North-Fore-land*; the *Cantium* of the antient Writers: and towards the Weſt, ſevered from the main land of *Kent* by the River *Scoure*, which is here called *Yenlade*, but ſevered ſo, that by the benefit of a Cauſey and

Sunderland and Holyland.

and paſſage to the waters in convenient places, it is united to the Continent, or main Land of *Kent*. The quality, ſite, and figure of it, take in theſe old Rhythmes (for I dare hardly call them Verſes) extant not long ſince in a window of the chief Church there, *viz.*

Inſula rotunda Thanatos quam circuit unda,
Nobilis & munda, nulli eſt in orbe ſecunda.

That is to ſay,

Thanet is rounded with circling waters bound,
A neat and noble ground, none like it to be found.

Called by *Solinus*, *Athanatos*, in ſome Copies *Thanatos*, from whence the *Saxons* had their *Thanet*. Famous, as in other things, ſo in theſe particulars, that it was the place which the *Saxons* landed at, when they firſt came into *Britain*; the firſt *Livery* and *Seiſin*, which they had of the whole Kingdom, conferred upon them by the improvident bounty of *Vortiger*, to whoſe aid called in; and the landing place of *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, when he brought the Goſpel to the *Saxons*. The whole about two miles in length, and four in breadth, was reckoned to contain in thoſe times, 600 Families; now very populous for the bigneſſe, and plentifull of all commodities neceſſary, but of Corn eſpecially. The people generally are a kinde of *Amphibii*, able to get their livings both by *Sea* and *Land*; well skilled, as well in ſteering of a ſhip at Sea, as in holding the Plough upon Land; and in both induſtrious. Of moſt note in it, 1 *Stonar*, a Port-Town, the uſual landing place of the *Saxons*; more memorable for the Sepulchre of *Vortimer*, King of the *Britans*; who having vanquiſhed the *Saxons* in many battels, and finally driven them out of the Iſland, deſired to be here interred; on a conceit, that his dead Corps would fright them from landing any more upon theſe Coaſts. And this perhaps he did in imitation of *Scipio African*, who having had a fortunate hand againſt thoſe of *Carthage*, gave order to have his Tomb placed towards *Africk*, to fright the *Carthaginians* from the Coaſts of *Italy*.

X. SUNDERLAND is an Iſland onely at an high-water, when environed on all ſides with the Sea; at other times joyned unto the Land, or of an eaſie paſſage from the one to the other: pulled by ſome tempeſt, or by the working of the Sea from the reſt of the Land; whence the name of *Sunderland*. Situate in the North-Eaſt part of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, over againſt the influx of the River *Were*. Rich in its inexhauſtible mines of *Coal*, and for that cauſe ſeldom without the company of forein Merchants: yet not to have been here remembred, but that it hath been thought worthy by our Soveraign Lord King *Charles*, the ſecond Monarch of *Great Britain*, to confer the title of Earl to the two Noble Families of the *Scropes* and *Spencers*; the firſt in the third year of his reign, *An.* 1627. the ſecond in the eighteenth, *An.* 1642.

XI. THE HOLY ISLAND lieth upon the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, not far from *Barwick*; ſtretched out in length from Eaſt to Weſt, with a narrow point unto the Land, from thence growing broader like a wedge: fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and of great ſafety, but more famous for what it hath been, than for what it is. In the dawning of *Chriſtianity* amongſt the *Northumbers*, made a Biſhop See, by S. *Aidanus*, one of the firſt *Apoſtles* of that potent Nation. Select for this dignity by that godly man, for the *ſolitude* and privacy of it; which made it thought more fit and proper for *Devotion*. The name then *Lindisfarn*; but the *Religious lives* of ſo many pious Biſhops, Monks, and others of the Clergy as did there inhabit, gained in the name of *Holy Iſland*. The See continued there 353 years, that is to ſay, from the year 637. to 990. under 22 Biſhops, hence called Biſhops of *Lindisfarn*; then removed to *Durham*: the inſolencies of the *Danes*, (who then raged terribly on thoſe Coaſts) compelling them to abandon that *religious ſolitude*.

Thus have we taken a ſurvey of the *Britiſh Iſlands*, and ſhewn by what means *Ireland* and all the *leſſer Iſlands* became united either to the Crowns of *England*, or *Scotland*; and thoſe two Kingdoms to each other: joyned in the perſon of the ſame King, and the participation of his favours, though different ſtill in Laws, and ſome forms of Government; as moſt of the Eſtates of *Spain*, at the preſent time. United alſo in one name, the different Appellations of *England* and *Scotland* being ſwallowed up, or corporated rather in that of *GREAT BRITAIN*, which it pleaſed King *James* to own for his Stile *Imperial*. And for a memory thereof, to cauſe a piece of Gold to be coyned of 20*s.* (ſince raiſed to 22*s.*) which he called the *Unity*: ſtamped on the one ſide with his picture, and this *Inſcription* *JACOBUS D. GR. MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ, FR. ET HIBERNIÆ REX*, and on the other ſide with his Arms, Crowned with this *Motto*, *FACIAM EOS IN GENTEM UNAM*. All we have now to do, is to lay down the names of thoſe puiſſant Princes, whom God hath raiſed to be.

The Monarchs of *Britain*.

1602 1 *James*, the ſixth of that name, King of the *Scots*, Son of *Marie* Queen of *Scots*, Daughter of *James* the fifth, the Son of *James* the fourth, and of the Lady *Margaret*, eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*: which *Margaret* being after married to *Archembald Douglaſſe*, Earle of *Angus*, had a Daughter named *Margaret* alſo (the onely Child of her Parents) married to *Matthew Stewart*, Earle of *Lennox*; by whom ſhe was made the Mother

ther of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, the Father of King *James* the ſixth, by the ſaid *Marie* Queen of *Scots*. So that King *James* deſcending from the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the ſeventh, both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry* the eighth, in the perſon of Queen *Elizabeth* of famous memory; was the next Heir to the Crown of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyfull acclamations proclaimed and acknowledged King in the Citie of *London*, March 24 *An.* 1602. (according to the accompt of the Church of *England.*) A learned and Religious Prince, a true *Defender of the Faith*, a *Nurſing Father of the Church*, and a lover of learning. He died at *Theobalds*, March 27. 1625. having reigned 23 years, and four dayes over.

1625. 2 *Charles*, ſecond Son of King *James*, and of *Anne* of *Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before) the 63d King in deſcent from *Cerdick* King of the *Weſt-Saxons*; the 45th King of *England*, in deſcent from *Egbert*; the 24th from the *Norman* Conquerour; the 64th Monarch of the *Engliſh*, and the ſecond Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his reign he married the Princeſſe *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter to *Henry* the 4th. and Siſter to *Lewis* the 13th. *French* Kings; by whom bleſt with a *Royal Iſſue* of Sons and Daughters.

As for the *Forces* and *Revenues* of theſe *Britiſh* Monarchs we cannot put the eſtimate of them in a better way, than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each ſeveral part; out of which *Items* the *ſumma totalis* of the whole both in *power* and *treaſure*, will be eaſily gathered. For though theſe Monarchs never had any occaſion, to muſter and unite the *Forces* of their ſeveral Kingdoms upon any one action: yet by conſidering what they have been able to do divided; we may conclude of what they may do, if need be, being now united. And ſo we are to do in marſhalling the Arms of the *Britiſh* Monarchy, which are 1 quarterly *France* and *England*; ſecondly *Scotland*; thirdly *Ireland*; and the fourth as the firſt. I ſhut up this diſcourſe of the *Britiſh* Empire, with thoſe words of *Scripture* (the *Motto* of another of King *James* his Coins) *QUÆ DEUS CONJUNXIT NEMO SEPARET.*

And ſo much for *Britain.*

* * *

A TABLE,

Of the Longitude and Latitude of the chief Cities mentioned in this First Book.

	Lon.		Lat.	
A				
ABerdene.	22	20	57	20
Alcala de Henares.	23	0	40	30
Alicante.	28	40	39	0
Almodine.	34	0	33	40
Ancona.	43	10	43	50
S. *Andrews.*	22	10	56	20
Angoleſme.	27	0	46	0
Angiers.	18	10	47	25
Aquilegia.	42	50	46	40
Armagh.	14	50	54	9
Avero.	17	30	41	10
Avignon.	23	40	43	50
Aux.	22	40	43	40
S. *Anderos.*	22	20	43	
Aix.	22	20	42	10
Arls.	22	45	43	20
Amboiſe.	20	35	47	35
B				
Badaios.	19	40	38	30
Baione.	24	20	42	10
Baſil.	28	10	48	30
Beſanſon.	26	30	47	30
Bilbao.	23	30	41	10
Baden in *Switzerland.*	31		48	44
Blavet.	21	15	47	50
Bononia.	35	50	43	33
Breſt.	20		48	50
Bath.	20	56	51	20
Bragance.	6		45	
Barwick.	22	43	55	48
Barcelone.	17	15	41	36
Burdeaux.	18		45	10
Burges.	24	10	48	20
C				
Cambridge.	23	25	52	10
Calice.	26	2	52	
Canterbury.	24	50	51	16
Cartagena.	28	20	38	20
Cane.	21		50	
Carlile.	21	31	52	57
Cheſter.	20	23	53	11
Chicheſter.	26	10	51	
Clermont.	30	15	45	50
Chur.	32		42	
Corck.	15	40	41	40
Corduba.	9	4	37	50
Conimbre.	5	45	50	19
Compoſtella.	17	15	44	18
Coventry.	25	52	52	23
D				
Dieppe.	28	40	49	30
Degion.	25	45	47	
Dole.	28	3	49	5
Dover.	26	10	51	
Dublin.	16	40	54	27
Dunbritton.	19	24	57	10
Durham.	22		54	55
E				
Edenburgh.	22		55	50
Embrum.	28		44	
Elie.	25	20	52	40
Exeter.	22	10	51	
F				
Florence.	41	10	43	40
Ferrara.	44		36	
Fayall.			48	40
G				
Geneva.	33	40	46	20
Galway.	13	17	54	6
Glocester.	19		53	
Gades.	15	10	37	
Granada.	11		37	50
Groine.	16	50	43	20
Genoa.	37	50	45	0
Grenoble.	27		45	30
H				
S. *Hilary* in *Guernzey.*	22	20	49	40
Hull.	25	20	53	40
L				
Leon.	21	10	42	15
Lisbon.	9	10	38	38
Lions.	23	15	45	10
Lincoln.	22	15	53	12
London.	23	25	5	34
Luca.	42	10	40	
Legorn.	40	20	43	30
M				
Majorca.	39	50	33	
Malaga.	23	50	37	22
Marſeilles.	24	30	43	16
S. *Malo.*	19		49	
Medina Cæli.	23	30	41	10
Millaine.	38	30	46	10
Modena.	41	50	35	40
Montpelier.	25	30	44	10
Montalban.	23		45	
Meſſana.	45	50	37	50
Minorca.	40	30	40	0
N				
Naples.	46		36	30
Nantes.	24	10	47	10
Narbon.	30	20	43	20

Nevers

	Lon.		Lat.	
Nevers.	25		47	
Newcaſtle.	22	30	54	57
Niſmes.	26		44	2
Norwich.	24	55	52	40
O				
Oleron.	24	30	45	30
Orleans.	28	30	48	0
Orange.	26	20	43	20
Oxford.	22		51	50
Otranto.	49	30	40	20
P				
Pampelun.	24	30	43	3
Paris.	23	30	48	5
Pavie.	44	1	33	40
Padua.	44	45	36	20
Parma.	39	20	45	10
Peſcara.	43	0	30	10
Palermo.				
Peragia.	42	20	20	10
Peterport in Jarſey.	23	0	0	20
Piſa.	40	30	30	40
Placentia.	20	40	40	0
Poictiers.	26	30	30	
R				
Ravenna.	41	20	44	20
Rhemes.	25	25	48	30
Reves.	19		48	
Rochel.	18	15	45	50
Rome.	42	30	42	
Roven.	23	40	48	50
Rheſo.	47	0	38	20
S				
Salisbury.	18	3	51	10
Salamanca.	8	5	40	15
Saragoſſa.	24	15	41	45
Sevill.	7	15	37	
Sion, or *Sittia.*	29		45	
Sterling.	20	10	56	20
Siena.	42	20	36	16
Siguenca.	18	2		
Syracuſe.	40	30	37	30
T				
Tarantaiſe.	29		45	
Tarragon.	78	30	38	20
Tholouſe.	28	40	43	10
Toledo.	16	20	39	40
Trieſte.	44	10	46	10
Tredagh.	16	34	54	10
Turin.	31	30	43	45
Tarentum.	48	0	40	30
V				
Valladolid.	16	10	42	5
Valentia.	19	20	39	4
Venice.	41	40	45	50
Verona.	40	40	45	50
Viterbo.	41	50	42	4
Weymouth.	23	50	51	0
Wincheſter.	22		52	
Wexford.	16	44	53	
Y				
Yarmouth.	27	30	53	0
York.	22	25	54	10
Z				
Zurick.	30	20	47	

The end of the first Book.

COSMOGRAPHIE.
The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHIE
AND
HISTORIE
OF

BELGIUM, *GERMANY*, *DENMARK*,
SWETHLAND, *RUSSIA*, *POLAND*, *HUNGARIE*,
SCLAVONIA, *DACIA*, and *GREECE*,
With the *ISLES* thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN*.

TACIT. HIST. l. 4.

Humanarum rerum poſſeſſionem Trans-Alpinis *gentibus portendi*, Druidæ *canebant*.

SENEC de Conſolat. ad ALBINUM.

Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; *Nova* Urbium *fundamenta jaciuntur*, *nova* Gentium *nomina*, *extinctis nominibus prioribus*, *oriuntur*.

LONDON,
Printed by *T. R.* for *Philip Chetwind*, 1665.

COSMOGRAPHIE.
The Second Book,
CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHIE
AND
HISTORIE
OF
BELGIUM, GERMANY, DENMARK,
SWETHLAND, RUSSIA, POLAND, HUNGARIE,
SCLAVONIA, DACIA, and *GREECE*;
With the *ISLES* thereof.

OF BELGIUM.

HAving purſued the fortunes of the *Roman* Empire through the 4 *Weſtern Dioceſes* or Diviſions of it, wholly ſubdued to the command of that conquering State: let us next look on thoſe Countries which lay further North, and either never felt the force of the *Roman* Armies, or were but conquered in part; or elſe were reckoned as the members of ſome greater Province. Of this laſt ſort was all that tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the Land of *Triers*, Provinces of the *Higher Germany*; on the Weſt, with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North, with the River *Ems*, which parts it from *Eaſt-Friezland*; on the South, with *Picardy* and *Champagne*, two *French* Provinces; upon the South eaſt, with the Dukedom of *Lorrein*.

By the *Latines* (eſpecillay of theſe laſt times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belgæ*, the moſt potent people of all theſe parts, and ſometimes alſo *Germania Inferior*, or the *Lower Germany*, (in the ſame ſenſe as by the *Engliſh* it is called the *Low-Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low ſituation; and the conformity which they have with the other *Germans* in Laws, Language, Cuſtoms, and Manners. By ſome it hath been called by the aggregate name of *The ſeventeen Provinces*, from the like number of ſeveral and diſtinct Eſtates united under the command of the King of *Spain*. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which though but one of the 17. Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*; the people of which were once generally called by the name of *Flemmings*; and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reaſon of the great trade and traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or Marts of *Bruges* (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all parts of *Europe*; or in reſpect that lying nearer than the reſt to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *England*, that name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Country was under the command of many Princes, of which the Earls of *Flanders* were eſteemed moſt potent. And though this name continued alſo after the incorporating of moſt of theſe Provinces in the Houſe of *Burgundy*, at which time they were called the *Eſtates* of *Flanders*: yet ſince the falling off of *Holland*, and the reſt of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath loſt this honour; the name of *Flanders* being now reſtrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name moſt currant amongſt the *Latines* of this Age, yet I ſee little reaſon for it. For firſt, old *Belgium* contained it it many fair and large *Eſtates*, which are not now within the compaſſe of theſe *Belgick* Provinces; that is to ſay, the Dukedoms of *Lorrein*, *Berg*, *Juliers*, and great part of *Cleve*; the Biſhopricks of *Triers*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*; and ſo much of the Kingdom of *France*, as takes up all *Picardy*, with parts of *Champagne*, and of *France* ſpecially ſo called. Secondly, *Gallia Belgica* extended ſomewhat further yet, comprehending a great part of the Lower *Palatinate*, all *Elſats*, the whole County of *Burgundy*, and ſo much of *Switzerland*, as lieth on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *Weſt-Friezland*, *Groyning*, *Over-yſſel*, *Zutphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and ſo much of *Guelderland*, and *Utrecht*, as lieth on the further ſide of the middle Channel of the *Rhene*, were never accounted of either as parts of *Germany*; clearly without the limits of the antient *Gaul*, of which body *Belgium* was a limb or member in the *Roman* eſtimate.

As for the *Belgæ*, from whence we have the names of *Belgium*, and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themſelves within the *Rhene*; eſteemed by *Cæſar* to be the valianteſt of the *Gallick* nations for theſe three reaſons; firſt they were the fartheſt from *Provence*, where the *Roman* civilities, and more affable courſe of life was embraced. Secondly, they dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and ſo wanted thoſe allurements, to effeminacy, which are in Countries of traffick. And thirdly, they bordered on the *Germans*, a warlike nation; with whom they were continually in armes. This people ſeeing the proſperous ſucceſſe of *Cæſars* victories in *Gaul*, joyned together in a League, and muſtered an Army of 269000 fighting men againſt him. But ſeeing they could not draw him out of the *Fortreſſes*, they retir'd again, and that in ſuch diſorder, that three *Legions* (for no more was *Cæſars* Army) put them to an infinite ſlaughter. After this, *Cæſar* fighting againſt them ſeverally, overcame them all; and made their Country, and the Country of the Bordering *Germans*, whom he alſo vanquiſhed, ſubject unto the *Roman* Empire: By *Conſtantine* the Great made part of the *Dioceſe* of *Gaul*, and by him caſt into four *Provinces*, that is to ſay, 1. *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, and the land of *Triers*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Triers*; 2. *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardy*, and the Country of *Cambray*, with part of *Champagne* and *France Special*, of which the *Metropolis* was *Rhemes*. 3. *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alſatia*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the Biſhoprick of *Mentz*, the *Metropolitan* City of that Province; and 4 *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Guelderland*, *Utrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Luxembourg*, *Limbourgh*, and the land of *Colen*; which laſt was honoured with the title of *Metropolitan*. 5. *Maxima Sequanorum*, ſo called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundy*, and ſo much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, of which *Beſancon* was the mother City. But at this time none of the Provinces above ſpecified are comprehended under the accompt and name of *Belgium*, but ſuch as were poſſeſſed in theſe later Ages by the Houſe of *Burgundy*; ſome petty Signeuries and Eſtates, which properly do belong to *Germany*, being added to it; that is to ſay, the Lordſhip of *Weſt-Friezland* given to the Earls of *Holland* by *Charles* the *Bald*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, united unto that of *Guelders* by Earl *Otho* of *Naſſaw*; and finally the Eſtate of *Groyning*, *Over-yſſel*, and ſome part of *Utrecht*, by *Charles* the fifth. Under which name and notion we do now conſider it.

And taking it according to this name and notion, it is in compaſſe 1000 *Italian*, or 250 *German* miles: and is ſituated in the northern Temperate Zone, under the 7. 8. and 9. *Climates*: the longeſt day in the midſt of the 7. *Climate* where it doth begin, being 16. hours; in beginning of the 9. *Climate* increaſed to 16. hours three quarters, or near 17. hours. The Air in theſe later dayes grown more wholeſome than formerly; partly by the wonderfull increaſe of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible induſtry of the people, who by draining the Mariſhes, and converting the ſtanding waters into running ſtreams, have purged the Air of many groſſe and unhealthy vapours; which did thence uſually ariſe in times foregoing.

The Country is very populous, containing welnigh three millions of ſouls; the men being for the moſt part well proportioned, great lovers of our *Engliſh* Beer, unmindful both of good turns and injuries: of good wit for inventing; and of a moſt indefatigable induſtry for perfecting the rareſt Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as alſo for *Arras hangings*, *Dornix*, Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the *Mariners* Compaſſe. They reſtored *Muſick*, and found out divers *Muſical* Inſtruments, being naturally good *Muſicians*; and generally ſo given unto it, and ſo perfect in it, that heretofore (till the Art of Muſick grew more common) there were not many great mens Houſes, which had them not to teach their Children. To them belongeth alſo the invention of Chariots, the laying on of colours with oil, the working of Pictures in glaſſe, and the making of Worſteds, Saies, and Tapeſtries: the making of which and other Stuffes, being driven out of their Country by the Duke of *Alva*, they firſt taught the *Engliſh*. The women generally are of a good complexion, well proportioned, eſpecially in the leg and foot; honourers of vertue, active and familiar. Both within doors and without, they govern all; which conſidering the natural deſire of women to bear rule, maketh them too imperious and burdenſome.

They uſe for the moſt part the *German* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect: But in the Provinces adjoyning to *France*, that is to ſay *Luxembourg*, *Mamurſe*, *Artois*, *Hainalt*, and ſome parts of *Flanders*, and *Brabant*, they uſe the *French*; but ſpeak the ſame very corruptly and imperfectly, by reaſon of that mixture which it hath of the *Dutch* or *German*; yet ſo that one may eaſily diſcern thoſe people to be *French* originally; or ſome remainder of the old *Gauls*, maſtered by the *French*, but not rooted out: from their langnage or firſt original called to this day by the name of *Wallons*; the *Germans* uſually changing G into W, as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and in the like caſe *Wales* for *Galles*. I know there is another *Etymology* of the name of *Wallons*, ſome making them to be of the *Burgundian* race; who at their firſt paſſing over the *Rhene* enquired their way of the Country people in theſe words, *Ou allons*, i. e. *Whether go we*? which being oft repeated by them, occaſioned them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtleſſe, but of no ſolidity; nor to be further honoured with a confutation.

The Country in thoſe parts which lie towards *Germany*, eſpecially on the South-eaſt bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorrein*, is ſomewhat ſwelled with hills, and overſhaded with woods; the reliques of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof. But towards the Weſt and North, where it joyns to the Seas, it is plain and level, full of flats and mariſhes, affording very little corn, but abounding in paſturage, which yeild a great increaſe of Butter and Cheeſe, good ſtore of beeves, and horſes of more than ordinary bigneſſe. By reaſon of which low and level ſituation, and the ill neighbourhood of a troubleſome and unruly Sea, it hath been formerly much ſubject to inundations; inſomuch as in the time of King *Henry* the 2d, *Flanders* was ſo overflown, that many thouſands of people, whoſe dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new ſeats; and were by that King firſt placed in *Yorkeſhire*, and then removed to *Pembrookeſhire*. Since that, it hath in *Zealand* ſwallowed eight of the Iſlands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages: many of whoſe Churches and ſtrong buildings, are at a dead low water, to be ſeen. And as once *Ovid* ſaid of *Helice*, and *Buris*, Cities of *Achaia*, ſo may we of theſe.

Invenies ſub aquis; & adhuc oſtendere nautæ.
Inclinata ſolent cum manibus oppida verſis.

That is to ſay,

The waters hide them, and the Saylers ſhow
The ruin'd walls and ſteeples as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into other Countries, are Linnen, Scarlets, Worſted, Saies, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffes; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheeſe, *&c.* Of which, excepting Cheeſe and Butter, there is nothing of the natural growth of the Country: the reſt being *Manufactures*, which they make out of ſuch materials, as they fetch out of forein Regions. But the Commodity which yieldeth them moſt benefit, is that of Fiſh, not caught upon their own coaſt neither, but either in the Northern Seas, or the coaſt of *England*: the very *Herrings* which they catch on the ſhores of *England* (to the no ſmall diſhonour of the *Engliſh* Nation) bringing them a revenue (beſides what is purſed up by the Adventurers) of 440000 pounds *per annum*; and that of *Codfiſh* which they catch on the coaſts of *Friezland*, amounting to 150000 *l.* ſterling yearly.

Captains of note and eminence it hath bred but few, the people living till of late in perpetual peace. The chief of thoſe whoſe names have been tranſmitted to us. 1. *Civilis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for ſubtilty of wit compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*; of which in the long war againſt the *Romans*, in the time of *Veſpatian*, he gave very good proof. In the middle time. 2. *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperour of *Germany*. 3. *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*. 4. *Philip* the good, and 5. *Charles* the Warlike, Dukes of *Burgundy*. 6. *Charles* the fifth, Emperour and King of

Spain: and of late times the Princes of the houſe of *Naſſaw* and *Orange*, tranſplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian*, out of higher *Germany*. And to ſay truth, their *Genius* doth not lie ſo much, for land-ſervice, as it doth for the Seas; in which they have been very famous, and not leſſe fortunate. For of this Nation was *Oliver de Noort*, the fourth that compaſſed the World; *Jacob le Maire*, the firſt diſcoverer of the Straight or *Fretum*, which now beareth his name; beſides divers others. And generally the people are ſo expert in Navigation, (eſpecially thoſe bordering on or near the coaſts) that they ſeem born for and to the Seas: many of which being born on ſhipbord, and bred up at Sea, know no other Country; and brook the Land as ill, as a fiſh doth the dry ground. Which natural inclination to it, and the neceſſity they have of employing themſelves that way, (the Country not being otherwiſe able to provide ſuſtenance for thoſe multitudes of men, which it doth abound with) hath ſo exceedingly increaſed their ſhipping; that it is thought that they are Maſters of more veſſels of all ſorts, taking one with another, than almoſt all the reſt of *Europe*.

Scholars of note it hath bred many. 1. *Eraſmus*, the great Reſtorer of Learning in theſe parts of the World. 2. *Juſtus Lipſius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latine* Elegancies. 3. *Joſeph Scaliger*, the ſon of *Julius*, ὁ περὶ πᾶν πεπαιδευμένος, a man not to be followed in all parts of learning; but of equal arrogance. 4. *Rodolphus Agricola*. 5. *Levinus Lemnius*. 6. 7. *Janus Douza*, the Father and the Son. 8. *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9. *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 10. *Geo. Caſſander*. 11. Dr. *James Harmin*. 12. *Gerard Voſſius*, eminent Divines. 13. *Hugo Grotius*, of as great parts, (but ſeaſoned with more modeſty and moderation) as the famous *Scaliger*. 14. *Janſenius*, and 15. *Pamelius* two right learned men, but of the *Pontifician* party.

The *Chriſtian* Religion was planted in ſeveral Provinces, by ſeveral men: in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Friezland*, by *Willibrode* an *Engliſhman*, the firſt Biſhop of *Utrecht*; whence by degrees it gained on the reſt of the Country: theſe being the firſt people of the *Frankes*, or *Germans*, converted totally to the Goſpel. In tract of time it fell from the primitive purity, participating of the Errours and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they deſired to reclaim themſelves, they were therein oppoſed by the King of *Spain* and his Miniſters. Hence the beginning of the troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of *civil rights*, invaded and infringed by the *Spaniards*; affecting a more abſolute Dominion over them, then their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Country doth ſtand divided betwixt the *States* and the *Spaniards*; ſo ſtands it with *Religion* alſo: the *Spaniard* permitting only the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, within the Provinces and Eſtates under his command; and the *States General* indulging the free uſe of all Religions (even the very *Jews*) but countenancing only that of the *Reformed Churches*, according to the Platform laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief *Foreſts* of this Country are, 1. that of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cæſar* extended from the banks of *Rhene*, as far as *Tourney* one way, and *Champagne* another way; and was in compaſſe 500 miles, in the leaſt accompt. In which circuit there were comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant*, and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg*, *Luxembourg*, *Luychland*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*; together with the land of *Gulick* in the higher *Germany*, as ſome Writers ſay. At this time, though the greateſt of all *Gaul Belgick*, it reacheth but from *Leige* to *Theonville*, 30 leagues in length; and yet not all that *Woodlands* neither, through within the *Vierge* of the *Foreſt*: there being much tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground; the principal of which is the Town of S. *Hubert*, ſituate almoſt in the midſt of it. 2. *Niepe*, and 3. *Numen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the firſt extending to the banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up cloſe to *Ypris*. 4. *Pondſberg* in the Confines of *Hainalt* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mount Gerrard*: all of them parts of this great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, which once overſhadowed all this Country. 5. *Normault* in *Hainalt*, in which is much Char-coal made; ſuppoſed for that reaſon to be a part of that Foreſt, which the old *French* called *La Charboniere*. 6. *Echterwald* in *Guelderland*, near *Arnhem*, &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Rhene*, which ariſeth out of two ſprings in the *Lepontian Alpes*, amongſt the *Griſons*; united into one ſtream near *Chur*: thence paſſing by the Cities of *Conſtance*, *Baſil*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*, is again divided about the confines of *Guelderland*, into four branches or channels. Of which the firſt is called the *Wael*, which running through *Guelderland* by *Nimmegen*, and *Bomel*, loſeth it ſelf in the *Maes*; the ſecond, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, paſſeth by *Arnhem*, from thence in a contracted channel to *Utrecht*, and ſo through *Holland* unto *Leiden*: the third called the *Lecle*, taketh his courſe through the Provinces of *Utrecht*, and *Holland*; and ſo into the Sea betwixt *Dort*, and *Rotterdam*; and the fourth called the *Yſſel*, which paſſing by the Towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer*, betwixt *Guelderland*, and *Over-Yſſel*, emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean, near *Amſterdam*. And of theſe branches I have given the exact reckoning, partly becauſe the courſe of that famous River is otherwiſe not eaſie to be obſerved; and partly becauſe the knowledge of a great part of theſe Provinces, dependeth on the knowledge of the courſe of this River: it being the middle branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leiden*) which antiently divided Germany from *Gallia Belgica*. A River of ſuch reputation in the ancient times, that into it the old *Belgæ* uſed to caſt the children which they ſuſpected to be *Illigitimate*: for were they born of lawful bed, they floated on the waters, if of an unlawfull, they ſank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian* alluding ſaith, *naſcentes explorat gurgite Rhenus*. But the great ſearcher of Antiquities, *Verſtegan*, is of opinion, that thereby they only inured their children to hardneſſe, and made tryal of their ſtrength; *adultery* being rarely found among them, and ſo theſe kindes of experiments needleſſe. 2. *Moſa*, the *Maes*, as the *Dutch*; or the *Menſe* as the *Frenchmen* call it, which ſpringing from the mountains of *Vauge*, in the confines of *Lorraine*, and not far from the fountains of the *Seine*, and *Marne*, runneth through *Lorrain*, *Luxembourg*, *Luychland*, and *Namur*; from thence by *Ruremond*, and *Venlo*, two known Towns of *Guelderland*, where turning towards the Weſt, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and from thence paſſing by *Maſtreicht*; divides *Brabant* from *Holland*; watering the Town of *Grone* in the one, and of *Dort*, in the other; and falleth into the Sea not far from *Bril*, with ſo great a violence, that the waters of it for a long ſpace do continue freſh. 3. *Ems*, in *Latine* called *Amiſus*, dividing the two *Friſelands*; of which more in *Germany*. 4. *Scaldis*, which riſing in *Picardy*, and running through *Artois*, and between *Hainalt* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the Sea a little above *Antwerp*. And 5. *Lis*, or *Ley*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Beſides which Rivers and others of inferiour note (which we ſhall meet withal in their proper places) here are great ſtore of lakes, pools, and mariſhes; which do both fortifie the Country, and provide it of fiſh: beſides many navigable channels, made by the hand of man, from one River to another, for the convenience of paſſage, and the more eaſie tranſport of their commodities.

The ſhore of this Country hath been much worn out by the Sea; eſpecially that of the Iſlands of *Zealand*, and ſuch as lie ſcattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with banks and ramparts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. Theſe banks are about ten ells in height, and twenty five in breadth at the bottom. They are made of the hardeſt clay that may be gotten; in the inſide ſtuffed with wood and ſtone, on the outſide covered with mats ſtrong and thick made.

The former Inhabitants were divers, and were as differently diſpoſed of in their ſeveral Countries; that is to ſay, the *Attrebates* in the greateſt part of *Artois*, the *Morini* in the reſt of *Artois*; and thoſe parts of *Flanders*, which make up the *Imperial* and *Dutch Flanders*; the *Nervii* in *Hainalt*, *Namur*, and *Flanders Gallicant*; the *Batavi* in *South-Holland*, and ſo much of *Guelderland*, and *Utrecht*, as lies on the South ſide of the *Rhene*, with the *Menapii*, intermixt in the Dukedom of *Guelders*, the *Mattiaci* in the Iſle of *Zealand*, the *Advatici*, and part of the *Tongri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, with part of the *Treveri* in **Luxembourg**, and of the **Eburones** in **Luichland**, and the Dukedom of *Limbourg*: all which were **Belgick** Nations, and therefore antiently accompted of as parts of *Gallia*. Then on the Northern ſide of the middle channel of the *Rhene*, there dwelt *Friſii Minores* in *North-Holland*, and ſo much of the Diſtrict of *Utrecht*, as lies on the further ſide of that channel; the *Friſii Majores* in *Weſt-Friſeland*, and the State of *Groyning*; ſome parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the reſt of *Guelderland*, with part of the *Bructeri* in *Over-yſel*: all *German* Nations, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica*. Thoſe which paſſed under the accompt and name of *Belgæ*, being ſubdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation, by the valour and good fortune of *Julius Cæſar*; continued ſubject to the *Romans*, without any notable diſturbance unto their affairs, but the Rebellion raiſed againſt them by *Civilis* Prince of the *Batavians*, in the time of *Veſpaſian*. In the declining of the Empire, they were poſſeſſed by the *French*, under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz*, or *Oſtenreich*; united by *Childrick* the third, to the reſt of *France*, and made a member of that Kingdom: as they continued till the time of *Lewis* the *Godly*, ſon of *Charles* the Great, in the diviſion of whoſe Empire amongſt his Children, the Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France*, the reſidue of theſe Countries on this ſide of the *Rhene*, made up a ſpecial part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*. Thoſe on the further ſide of the middle channell of that River, being *German* Nations, gained to the vaſt Empire of the *French* by *Charles* the Great, in the diviſion of the ſpoil ſpoken of before, fell to the ſhare of *Lewis* ſurnamed the *Antient*, the firſt King of *Germany*, and after his deceaſe to his Succeſſors in that Eſtate, whether Kings or Emperours. And ſo we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings of *France*, *Lorrein*, and *Germany*; by which means ſubdivided into leſſer parcels, (no fewer than nineteen in all) we ſhall ſee anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* conqueſts in the reſt of *Gallia*, there ſtarted up in *Belgica* two great Eſtates, founded by *Auberon*, *Regnault*, and *Ranchaire*, Sons of *Clodion*, the ſecond King of the *French*: who being diſherited of their Fathers Kingdom by *Merove* Maſter of his horſe, to whoſe tuition and guardianſhip they had been committed, betook themſelves to the moſt defenſible places of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, and the Countries on the banks of the River *Moſelle*; where they founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Ardenne* (for of the Earldom of *Moſelle* we ſhall ſpeak elſewhere) contained part of the modern *Flanders*, and ſome part of **Brabant**, together with all *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Lemburg*, *Luxembourg*, and the Dukedom of **Bovillon**. Grown to this greatneſſe by the withdrawing of the *French* forces into richer conqueſts, and the diſmembring of that Empire into many Kingdoms, and truſting too much to that greatneſſe, they drew upon themſelves the jealouſy of thoſe mightier Princes: occaſioning *Clotaire* the ſecond, to give their Country unto *Dagobert* his eldeſt Son, then King of *Metz*, whom he furniſhed with convenient Forces for the conqueſt of it: *Brunulph* the then Prince hereof, being by him diſcomfited, and ſlain in Battel. By *Sigebert*, who ſucceeded his Father *Dagobert* in the Kingdom of *Metz*, the Earldom of *Hainalt* is taken out of it, and given to *Albert* one of the youngeſt ſons of **Brunulph**. By *Dagobert* himſelf ſucceeding in the Realm of *France* (and whileſt he lived ſole King of the *French*) the parts of *Flanders* and **Brabant**, formerly belonging to theſe Princes, were diſmembred from it, and laid unto two new Eſtates of his own erecting. And probable it is, that either to weaken this great Houſe, or to comply with the ill cuſtomes of thoſe times, the Earldom of *Namur* might be taken out of it at the ſame time alſo, for the portion of ſome other of the younger

Brethren. The reſt of the Eſtate, with the title of Earl of *Ardenne*, remained unto the eldeſt Son: whoſe poſterity, notwithſtanding this great diminution, grew to ſuch eſteem, that *Judith* the Widdow of *Bovis* and ſiſter of *Boſon* Earls of *Ardenne*, was thought a fit wife for *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France* and Emperour: by whom (the more to honour his Family) the ſaid *Boſon* was created King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. During the Empire of *Otho* the firſt, the Earldom of *Luxembourg* was divided from it; and given to *Sigefride* one of the younger Sons of *Ricuine*, the preceding Prince; and ſo perhaps was *Limbourg* alſo for another of them. The reſt remained to *Godfrey* the eldeſt ſon, who by *Matilda* a daughter to *Otho* the ſecond, was Father of another *Godfrey*, who ſucceeded after *Charles* and *Otho*, the third Duke of *Lorrein*: that Dukedom ever ſince enjoyed by the Houſe of *Ardenne*, and there we ſhall hear further of it. This ſaid, and ſo much of the ſtory opened as concerns the general, we will proceed to a particular Survey of the modern *Belgium*: divided at the preſent into ſeventeen Provinces; beſides the two great Biſhopricks of *Leige*, and *Cambray*; which being alwayes under the protection of the *Belgick* Princes, partakes of their fortunes either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their eſtates; ſhall have their turn in the deſcription of theſe Countries, divided generally

into
- 2 Biſhopricks
  - 1 *Leige* or *Luick*.
  - 2 *Cambray*.
- 4 Dukedoms
  - 1 *Limbourg*. 2 *Luxembourg*.
  - 3 *Guelderland*. 4 *Brabant*.
- 1 Marquiſate viz. of *the holy Empire*.
- 7 Earldomes
  - 1 *Flanders*. 2 *Artois*.
  - 3 *Hainalt*. 4 *Namur*.
  - 5 *Zutphen*. 6 *Holland*. 7 *Zeland*.
- 5 Baronies
  - 1 *Weſt-Frieſland*.
  - 2 *Utrecht*. 3 *Over-yſſel*.
  - 4 *Machlin*. 5 *Groyning*.

Of theſe nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Soveraignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders*, and *Artois*: the Earls whereof were *Homagers* unto that Crown; but ſeldom did deſcend ſo low as to do their *Homage*; quitted at laſt to *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*, and his Succeſſours by King *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, in the treaty at *Cambray*, Anno 1558. The reſt were held originally of the *German* Empire, and by *Maximilian* Emperour of *Germany*, and Regent of thoſe Countries for his ſon *Philip*, (who had a purpoſe to ſubject them to the Empire again) were made the tenth *Circle* of the Empire, called the *Circle of Burgundy*. But neither ſince, nor before that time, would the Princes of the Houſe of *Burgundy* acknowledge any ſuch ſubjection; but governed theſe Eſtates as *abſolute Princes*, without relation to the Empire, or ſubordination to the Emperour, or Imperial Officers: never appearing at the *Diets*, nor contributing to any *Taxes* there impoſed, nor holding themſelves bound by any *Conſtitutions*, which were made therein. So that theſe ſeveral Relations being out of uſe, we muſt behold it at this time as it ſtands divided betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *States*: beginning firſt with thoſe Provinces which belong to the *Spaniard*, the true Proprietary of the whole; and therein firſt with *Flanders*, as of moſt eſteem.

Flanders.

1. FLANDERS and ARTOIS.

THeſe two I have thought fit to joyn together, becauſe at firſt but one Eſtate; and though divided for a time, yet after five or ſix deſcents were again united, and ſo continued ever ſince.

1. **FLANDERS** is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Hainalt* and *Brabant*; on the Weſt, with the *Engliſh* or *German* Ocean; on the North, with the Seas of *Zeland*, and a branch of the *Scheld*; and on the South, with part of *Picardie* in *France*, interpoſing betwixt *Calice* and *Graveling*. So called, as ſome ſay, *à Flando*, becauſe it lieth open to the windes; as others ſay, from Flandbert the ſon of *Bleſinda* daughter of *Clodion*, the ſecond King of the *French*: ſome fetch it from a Town of this name, ſituate in that part of the Country where now *Ardenbourg* ſtands: ſo long ſince ruined, that very few except themſelves, could ever hear of it; and others (which I think moſt probable) from *Flandrina* the wife of *Lideric* the ſecond, the firſt who governed in theſe parts by the name of *Forreſter*.

The Soil indifferently fruitful in Corn and Paſtures; the air healthful, temperate and pleaſant. The whole Country not in length above 90 miles, and in breadth but 60, and yet containing in that compaſs above thirty Cities, (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) 1154 Villages which ſtand ſo thick, (as needs they muſt in ſo narrow a compaſſe) that the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming in with King *Philip* the ſecond, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into, 1. *Imperialem*, 2. *Gallicam*, and 3. *Teutonicam*: or *Flanders Imperial*, 2 *Flanders* Gallicant, and 3. *Flanders Flammengant*.

1. **FLANDERS FLAMMENGANT**, which is the greateſt of the three, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Imperial Flanders*, and the River *Scheld*; on the Weſt, with the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the North, with the Seas of *Zeland*; and on the South, with *Artois* and *Flanders* Gallicant: The chief towns of it, 1. *Gaunt*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, ſeven miles in compaſs; but taking in the *Suburbs*, which are great and large, the whole circuit is ten miles at leaſt. One of the greateſt Cities of *Europe*, for extent of ground, but not ſo populous as many of leſs capacity; there being made waſte ground even within the walls. Commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Scheld*, and the *Ley*, both which run thorow it, and make in it 26 Iſlands, joyned together with 98 Bridges: and had not her many ſeditions ruinated her beauties, ſhe might have been the Queen of *Europe*. In this Town were born *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, commonly called *John* of *Gaunt*; and *Charles* the fifth, Emperor, and King of *Spain*: which laſt, to reſtrain the people from their old ſeditions, which had been very troubleſome to his Predeceſſors (the *Gauntois* taking on them many times to rule and over-rule their Princes) built a ſtrong Citadel in the place where ſtood the Abby of S. *Bavons*. For Churches, Monaſteries, and other places of devotion, there were numbred in it 55; all of them anſwerable to the grandeur and renown of the City; the private buildings being alſo very ſtately, if not majeſtical. But now it is much fallen from its former glories, the often ſeditions of this people drawing upon themſelves the vengeance of their angred Prince; and their wealth much impaired by the long wars, and the diverſion of their trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the Seas. 2. *Bruges*, or *Brug*, more within the Land. A Town that hath neither Port nor River; yet formerly of ſuch wealth, and the people of thoſe times ſo willing to ſhew it, that Queen *Joan* the wife of *Philip* the *Fair*, having been there and marked the pomp of the women, complained, that *She was not Queen alone*. The Town of four miles circuit within the walls, wonderfully well peopled; the buildings fair and ſumptuous, (amongſt which 60 Churches and Religious Houſes) the ſtreets large and ſtreight, and a ſpacious Market-place; from which the ſix principal ſtreets of the City do paſſe directly on to as many Gates, which is very pleaſant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port nor River, as before was ſaid, yet was it antiently of ſo great trading, that it was accounted one of the four Mart-towns of *Chriſtendom*; flouriſhing chiefly by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Cloth, and ſenſibly decaying when the *Engliſh* traffick was removed thence to *Antwerp*. It was walled by Earl *Baldwin*, *An.* 890. is diſtant three Leagues from the Sea, and ſeated on a fair and deep channel made by Art, and filled with the waters of all the adjoyning Fountains and Rivulets; which artificial chanels are in theſe Countreys very frequent, to the great enriching of the whole State. 3. *Ypres*, a Town ſeated very ſtrongly, and almoſt impregnable, on a ſmall River ſo named; a reaſonable rich Town, and well built, though moſt of the Houſes be of Timber: very well ſerved with water, conveyed into every Houſe almoſt in leaden pipes; of which there is ſo great number, that the foundation of it ſeems to be laid in Lead. 4 *Bourbourg*, a fine ſtrong Town, but little, pertaining to the *French* King, in the rights of the Houſe of *Bourbon*. 5. *Comines*, on the River of *Lis* or *Ley*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and an excellent Library; but more in being the birth-place of *Philip de Comines*, that notable Stateſ-man and Hiſtorian. 6. *Courtray*, on the ſame River of *Ley*, one of the antienteſt Towns in *Flanders*, yet ſtill continueth well built, and of very great ſtrength both by art and nature, famous for a great overthrow given the *French*, *Anno* 1301. for which the Town was called of long time the *Sepulchre* of the *Frenchmen*. 7. *Ardembourg*, (called in times paſt *Rodembourg*) a prety Town, enriched every year with a great Horſe-fair every *June*, and beautified with one of the goodlieſt Churches in all this Province: the principal Town of that part hereof, which properly is called *Flanders*; that name firſt given unto the parts hereunto adjoyning, as ſome conceive, and after by degrees communicated to the reſt of the Country, 8. *Bieruliet*, both a Town and an Iſland, furniſhed with a good and commodious Haven; yet not to be mentioned in this place, but that the ſalting of Herrings was here firſt invented, by one *William Beukeleme*, who died *Anno* 1397. 9. *Winocksberg*, ſo called of a goodly Abby built upon an Hill, in the honour of St. *Winock* an *Engliſhman* of an holy life: ſacked by the *French*, *An.* 1538. but ſince re-edified, and made more beautiful than it was before. 10. *Graveling*, on the Sea-ſide, which ſince the taking of *Calice* by the *French*, hath been made the ſtrongeſt Town

Flanders. in the Low Countries. 11. ***Oudenard***, ſeated on the ***Scheld***, a fair ſtrong Town, and of very great traffick, eſpecially for Tapeſtry, and the fineſt Linnens, which are herein made: The birth-place of ***Margaret*** Dutcheſs of ***Parma***, and mother to ***Alexander*** Prince of ***Parma***, that renowned Souldier.

The principal Ports of ***Flanders*** being four in number, are all of them ſeated in this part, *viz.* 1. ***Dunkerk***, a ſmall but ſafe Port, belonging to the ***French*** King (as doth ***Graveling*** alſo) in the right of the Houſe of ***Vendoſm***; both taken lately by the ***French***, and ſo returned *e x poſt-liminio*, to the proper owner. Moſt memorable in theſe days, in that the People of it, in the times of war, ſo infeſted the ſeas. 2. ***Scluſe***, ſeated at the mouth of the Chanel of ***Bruges***, beautified with a very fair Haven, able to contain 500 good ſhips, and is now ſubject to the ***States***, with whoſe ſafety it could not well ſtand to let the ***Spaniards*** enjoy any ſafe and large harbours ſo near unto them. Over againſt it lieth the Iſle of ***Caſſandt*** (famous for the birth of ***George Caſſander***, a moderate and learned Papiſt.) Formerly as big again as it is at the preſent, having then a fair Town in it, and many rich Villages; of which there is but one remaining (of the ſame name with the Iſland) the reſt all ſwallowed by the Sea. 3. ***Newport***, a pretty Town, with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built on a well frequented Haven, but not very ſafe, and therefore not much uſed by the men of war, nor made rich by Piracies, as ***Dunkerke***. Near to this Town, *An.* 1603. was fought the field-battel betwixt the Arch-duke ***Albert***, and the ***States***; the victory next under God, being gotten for the ***States*** by the valour of the ***Engliſh***, and the excellent conduct of the ***Veres***. 4. ***Oſtend***, not walled till the Low-Countrey wars, and then but with a mud-wall only, and that not finiſhed, till the Arch-duke ſate down before it; Inſomuch as the Arch-dutcheſs ***Iſabel*** is ſaid to have ſworn, that ſhe would not ſhift her ſmock till the Town were taken; who, had ſhe kept that raſh oath, had been very lowſie; the Town (then garriſoned with ***Engliſh***) holding out againſt the ſaid Arch-duke, a ſiege of three years, and as many moneths.

2. ***IMPERIAL FLANDERS***, ſo called, becauſe it was long under the obedience of Emperors, is ſevered from ***Brabant*** by the River ***Lender***, and from the ***Gallick Flanders***, by the River ***Scheld***, about ***Oudebard***. It was ſometimes called ***Bracant*** of a Caſtle of that name, deſtroyed by ***Baldwin le Debonaire*** Earl of ***Flanders***: and is now called the County of ***Aloſt***, from the chief Town thereof ſo named; the juriſdiction whereof containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the walls of ***Gaunt***, and the Gates of ***Oudenard***. The Town ſtrong, and indifferently fair, ſituate on the River ***Dender***, moſt famous in theſe times for a Fair of Hops, which is kept there yearly. 2. ***Hulſt***, a walled Town, and the chief of the four Towns in the County of ***Waes***; the other three being 3. ***Axele***, 4. ***Mouchant***, 5. ***Aſſeneds***, of which little more memorable, but that they were all taken from the Empire, by the ſaid ***Baldwin le Debonaire*** in the time of the Emperour ***Henry*** the fourth. 6. ***Dendremond***, ſituate on the mouth of the ***Dender***, where it entreth into the ***Scheld***; a ſtrong Town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making Fuſtians, and a weekly Market of Flax. A diſtinct Signeury of it ſelf, with many rich Villages belonging to it; incorporated into the Earldom of ***Flanders*** by the marriage of Earl ***Lewis de Malaine*** with the Lady ***Margaret*** of ***Brabant***, to which Houſe it formerly appertained. 7. ***Rupelmond***, on the mouth of the River ***Rupel***, where it falleth into the ***Scheld***: famous in former times for an antient Caſtle in which were kept the Minuments and Records of the Earls of ***Flanders***: more in late times, for being the birth-place of ***Mercator***, that renowned Coſmographer. 8. ***Mont-Gerbard***, called by the ***French***, ***Grand-mont***, a fine and pleaſant Town ſeated on the ***Dender***. Which three laſt Towns, together with ***Bornben***, a fair large Village, having ſome juriſdiction on the parts adjoyning, made up that eſtate, which was called the ***Propro***, or ***Domaine*** of ***Flanders***; becauſe not holden of the Empire, or the Kings of ***France***, but in the ſoveraignty alone of the Earls hereof.

3. ***FLANDERS GALLICANT***, ſo called from the ***French*** language there ſpoken, lieth on the South of ***Flanders Flammengant***, having ***Hainalt*** on the Eaſt, ***Artois*** on the Weſt, and the Country of ***Cambray*** on the South. The chief Towns of it, are 1. ***Liſtle***, in Latine, ***Inſula***, ſo called from its Iland-like ſituation, amongſt ponds, pools, mariſhes; dried up, and made firm Land by Earl ***Baldwin de Barbu***, who built the Town ***Anno*** 1007; which afterwards was walled by ***Baldwin de Liſle***, his Son, (born in this Town, and hence ſo named) ***Anno*** 1066. The town made rich by manufactures, and reſort of Merchants; accounted the beſt town of traffick next ***Amſterdam*** and ***Antwerp***, in all the ***Netherlands***. Not far from which are to be ſeen the ruines of an antient Caſtle called ***Brug***, the Seat or Mannor-houſe of the antient ***Forreſters***, who had the government of this Country for the Kings of ***France***. 2. ***Doway*** (***Duacum*** in Latine) a fair and ſtrong Town ſeated on the ***Scharpe***, having many fountains, good buildings, and a great number of Churches; made an Univerſity by King ***Philip*** the ſecond of ***Spain***, who built therein a Seminary or College for ***Engliſh*** Fugitives. 3. ***Orchies***, a pleaſant town, and well traded for the making of Serges; which, with the other two, make up the three Eſtates of this part of ***Flanders***. 4. ***Armentiers***, an unwalled town, but of very great trading; here being yearly 25000 pieces of Cloth ſent hence to ***Italy***, and thence to ***Conſtantinople***. 5. ***Tournay***, (or ***Dornick***, as the ***Dutch*** call it) a great, rich, mighty, and ſtrong town, ſeated on the ***Scheld***: well built, and full of ſtately and magnificent Churches, and religious Houſes, and antiently honored with a See Epiſcopal. A town of great importance, and much contended for betwixt the ***Flemmings*** and the ***French***; but finally fell unto the ***French***, as the more puiſſant Prince; taken from them by ***Henry*** the eighth of ***England***, ***Anno*** 1513. to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Duckets for their preſent ranſon; reſtored by him unto the ***French***, ***Anno*** 1514, for the ſum of 600000 Crowns: and finally, from them recovered by ***Charles*** the fifth, who reſtored it to the body of ***Flanders***, from which it hath been long diſmembred; but ſo, that it is governed as a State apart, and is called the Signeury of ***Tourneſis***, having a goodly juriſdiction over the Country round about it. 6. S. ***Amand***, in the Country of ***Tourneſis***, pleaſantly ſeated on the ***Scharp***; in which is one of the richeſt Abbies in all ***Flanders***; the Abbot thereof having the ***temporal*** and ***ſpiritual*** juriſdiction over it, and

the parts about it. And ſo much for the *Chorographie* of the Earldom of *Flanders*; inhabited by the *Nervii* and *Morini* in the time of *Cæſar*.

Artois.

11. *ARTOIS*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Flanders Gallicant*, and the Country of *Cambray*; on the South, and Weſt, with *Picardie*; on the North, with *Flanders Flammengant*, and the River *Lis*. The name derived from the *Attrebates*, the old inhabitants hereof: the air exceeding temperate, and the ſoil ſo fruitfull, that it ſerveth as a *Granary* to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

On the Weſt part hereof towards *France*, lyeth the Earldom of S. *Paul*, ſo called from the chief town thereof; a goodly *Signeurie*, and of great juriſdiction and revenue: containing beſides many Villages, the good Town of *Peru*, a walled Town, and of great importance. The Earls hereof were lineally derived from *Walhſilan*, brother of *Henry* the 7th. Emperour of *Germany*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*; the laſt of which was *Lewis* of *Luxembourg*, made Conſtable of *France*, by King *Lewis* the 11th. With whom, as alſo with *Edward* the 4th of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, he plaid ſo many croſſe tricks, that having long deluded them all, and kept them in a continual jealouſie of one another, he was at laſt by Duke *Charles* taken and beheaded. After whoſe death, this goodly *Seigneury* fell to the Houſe of *Vendoſme* in *France*, by the marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendoſme*, with *Mary* the daughter of this *Lewis*: to whom it was adjudged by the power and favour of the *French Kings*: the Heirs Males being made uncapable of ſucceſſion in it, by the Attaindure and Confiſcation of the ſaid laſt Earl. By means whereof the Houſe of *Vendoſme* were entituled to many fair Eſtates in *Artois* and *Flanders*, and much good lands in *France* which they were poſſeſſed of: *Francis* the 2d. ſon of that *Francis*, and *Francis* the onely ſon of this, being entituled whilſt they lived, Earls of St. *Paul*, and Dukes of *Touteville*.

The Armes of theſe Earls were *Argent*, a Lion *Gules* armed and Crowned *Or*, his tail forked of the ſecond.

As for the reſidue of *Artois*, the Towns of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Arras*, in *Latine Attrebatum Civitas*, the chief City of the *Attrebates*, the old inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*, and ſtill the chief City of this Province; a large, populous, and well-fortified City, antiently honoured with a See Epiſcopal, and ſtocked with an induſtrious people; the firſt makers of the Cloth of *Arras*, which took name from hence. Divided into two diſtinct Towns, both of them walled, and called by two ſeveral names: the leſſer called *La Cite*, ſubject to the Biſhop, beautified with a fair and ſtately *Cathedral* Church, and a *Library* containing many excellent *Manuſcripts*; the leſſer called *La Ville*, ſubject to the Prince, having large ſtreets, and a rich Monaſtery of the yearly revenue of 20000 Crowns. By *Ptolomy* it is called *Regiacum*, ſeated within a bow-ſhoot of the River *Scharp*; and heretofore the Metropolitan Town of *Flanders*, till *Artois* was diſmembred from it: ſince which time the chief City of this Province, as before is ſaid. 2. S. *Omer*, a fair Town, and well peopled, ſeated upon the River *An*, ſome 8 *Dutch* miles from the *Ocean*; ſo called from S. *Omer*, or *Audomarus*, Biſhop of the *Morini*, who built a Monaſtery in this place, from which grew the Town; the ſecond of eſteem and rank in all the Country. Near to it is a goodly lake of freſh water, in which are many little Iſlands affording good paſturage for cattel: of which *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that by faſtning a cord unto the buſhes which grow in them, a man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great numbers of fiſhes, who bed themſelves there for ſhelter againſt the Weather. 3. *Betune*, a ſtrong Town, and ſeated amongſt excellent paſtures, of which the people make great plenty of the beſt cheeſe: which, with the territory hereof, fell to *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*, in right of *Maud* his wife, daughter and heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this Town: honoured in that regard with the birth of their eldeſt ſon, who from this place had the name of *Robert de* Betune. 4. *Aire* on the *Lys*, a ſtrong Town, with a Caſtle of great antiquity. 5. *Bapaulme*, a little, but well-fortified Town; and yet more ſtrong, becauſe it cannot be beſieged for want of freſh water, which is not to be had within three leagues of it. 6. *Renty*, an unwalled town, but fenced with a very ſtrong Caſtle, beſieged by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. but being overcome in a ſet-field by *Charls* the 5. they were fain to raiſe the ſiege and go home again. 7. *Hedinfert*, on the confluence of two little Riverets, *Blangis* and *Canche*; a frontire Town on the edge of *France*, one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt defenſible places of all the *Netherlands*; built by *Charles* the 5. out of the ruines of old *Heſdin*, which having taken from the *French*, he commanded it to be razed, as no longer ſerviceable; and raiſed this Town inſtead thereof, ſomewhat nearer *France*. 8. *Terwin*, or *Theroven*, the *Tervanna* of *Ptolomy*, and *Civitas Morinum* of *Antoninus*, a frontire town, held for a long time by the *French*, by whom though impregnable, till taken by King *Henry* the 8. *Anno* 1513. they changed their opinion. A ſiege not only memorable for the iſſue of it, but for two other matters of great moment: The one, that the Emp. *Maximilian* came and ſerved in perſon under the colours of S. *George*, with the *Engliſh* croſſe upon his breaſt; The other, that the *French* intending to victual the Town, had ſo great an overthrow, that had the *Engliſh* followed their fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themſelves Maſters of all *France*; the *French* King being ſo aſtoniſhed on the news hereof, that he prepared to flee into *Britain*. But the *Engliſh* more minded the ſpoils and riches of *Terwin*, than the ſequel of an abſolute victory; *Et frui maluerunt victoria, quam uti*, as the Hiſtorians ſaid of *Hannibal*. It is now after many changes of Fortune in the hands of the *French*; and by ſome reckoned and accounted of as a part of *Picardie*. There are beſides theſe, four walled Towns more; that is to ſay, *Lilliers*, *Pern*, *Lens*, and *La Baſſei*, of which little memorable; and to the number of 854 Villages.

Theſe Countries of *Flanders*, and *Artois*, were antiently, if not a part (as the parts hereof about *Tournay* moſt undoubtedly were) yet much of the ſame nature with the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continual waſt of Woods and Deſerts, till the Conqueſt of it by the *French*: the Sea-coaſts

Flanders, and Artois.

being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent *Piracies* did much vex thoſe ſhores; and the inland Countries meanly planted, for want of corn and other neceſſaries, for the life of man. Subject in part to the great Princes of *Ardenne*, till the diſcomfiture of Earl *Brunulph* by *Dagobert* ſole King of the *French*. By whom about the year 621, this wilde Country extending then as far as the River *Some*, and comprehending beſides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardy*, was given unto one *Lideric le Bucq*; with the title of *Forreſter*, to be holden under the Soveraignty of that Crown. In whoſe poſterity it continued with the title of *Forreſters*, till the time of *Baldwin* the firſt, the ſon of *Odoacer*, the ſeventh of the *Forreſters*, whoſe names occurre upon record; there being a long intermiſſion of their names and memories, during the ravagements and depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having firſt raviſhed, and afterwards married *Judith*, ſiſter to *Charles the Bald*, King of *France* and Emperour, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Soveraignty thereof reſerved as before it was: in whoſe iſſue it remained intire, till *Philip* the firſt Earl of that name, gave unto *Phili Auguſtus* King of *France* the Country of *Artois*, with the Earldom or Country of *Veromandois*, parts o *Picardy*, in marriage with *Iſabel* his Niece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt*. By *Lewis* the 8th. ſon and ſucceſſor of *Philip Auguſtus*, *Artois* was given in portion to his youngeſt ſon *Robert*, made the firſt Earl of *Artois* by King *Lewis* the 9. *Anno* 1234. And by the marriage of *Lewis* the firſt of *Flanders*, with *Margaret* the heir of *Artois*, and of the Earldom of *Burgundy*, both theſe Eſtates were added unto this of *Flanders*, now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great acceſſion of eſtate, it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millain* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: theſe Earls being priviledged to write themſelves *Dei gratia*, all others *Dei clementia* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad to ſo great eſteem, that it was generally uſed for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the marriage of *Margaret* daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the *Hardie* Duke of *Burgundy*, this great eſtate became united to that Houſe; and afterwards was conveyed unto that of *Auſtria*, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter, in due time and place. In the mean ſeaſon let us take a brief ſurvey of

The Earls of *FLANDERS* and *ARTOIS*.

864	1	*Baldwin* the firſt Earl of *Flanders*.
879	2	*Baldwin* II.
918	3	*Arnulph*, ſon of *Baldwin* the 2.
960	4	*Baldwin* III. ſon of *Arnulph*.
964	5	*Arnulph* II. ſon of *Baldwin* 3d.
988	6	*Baldwin* IV. ſon of *Arnulph*.
1029	7	*Baldwin* V.
1067	8	*Baldwin* VI. Earl of *Hainalt*.
1070	9	*Arnulph* III. Earl of *Hainalt*.
1071	10	*Robert* I. ſon of *Baldwin* the 5th. and brother of *Baldwin* the 6th.
1093	11	*Robert* II. ſon of *Robert* the firſt.
1111	12	*Baldwin* VII.
1118	13	*Charles*, ſon of *Canutus* King of *Denmark*, and *Adelize* the daughter of *Robert* the firſt.
1127	14	*William*, ſon of *Robert* the ſon of *William* the Baſtard, Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Maud* his Wife, daughter of *Baldwin* the 5th.
1132	15	*Theodorick* of *Elſas*, Nephew of *Robert* the firſt by his daughter *Heltrude*.
1169	16	*Philip* of *Elſas*, ſon of *Theodorick*.
1191	17	*Baldwin* VIII. Earl of *Hainalt*, ſucceeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, daughter of *Theodorick*, and ſiſter of *Philip*.
1199	18	*Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainalt*, and Emperor of *Conſtantinople*.
1205	19	*Joan*, eldeſt daughter of *Baldwin* the Emperour, firſt married to *Ferdinand* ſon of *Sancho* King of *Portugal*, and after to *Thomas*, the third ſon of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*; both in her right called Earls of *Flanders*.
1244	20	*Margaret* ſiſter of *Joan*, and 2d. daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, widow of *Wil.* of *Dampierre*, governed the Eſtate of *Flanders* as long as ſhe lived; admitting *William* her eldeſt ſon to the title of Earl, which he continued till

The Earls of *ARTOIS*.

1234	1	*Robert* of *France*, Grandſon of *Philip Auguſtus*, and *Iſabel* the daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th. made the firſt Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.
1245	2	*Robert* II. ſon of *Robert*.
1302	3	*Otheline*, Earl of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in right of *Maud* his Wife, the daughter of *Robert* the 2d.
1315	4	*Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*, Earl of *Burgundy* & *Artois* in right of *Joan* his wife

his death (being many years before his Mother) *Anno* 1255.

1278 21 *Guy* of *Dampierre*, the ſecond ſon of *Margaret*, admitted to the Title of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the Eſtate it ſelf on the death of his Mother.

1304 22 *Robert* III. ſurnamed of *Betune*, who maried *Yoland*, Heir of *Odon* of *Bourgogne* Earl of *Nevers*, by whom he had a Son called *Lewis*, who married *Mary*, daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*.

1323 23 *Lewis*, ſon of *Lewis*, and grandſon of *Robert* the 3. in right of his mother, Earl of *Rethel*, in right of his Grandmother Earl of *Nevers*; and of *Flanders* in right of his Father and Grandfather.

wife, the daughter and heir of *Maud* and *Otho*, or *Otholine*.

1331 5 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his wife, the eldeſt daughter of *Philip*.

6 *Philip*, the only ſon of *Eudes*, in right of his mother Earl of *Artois*, and ſo called in his Fathers life-time.

1349 7 *Philip* III. ſon of *Philip* the 2. and Nephew of *Eudes*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Artois*, who died young, and without iſſue, *Anno* 1361.

1361 8 *Margaret*, daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and of *Joan* Counteſſe of *Artois* and *Burgundie*, married to *Lewis* Earle of *Flanders*, &c. Succeeded *Philip* the 3. (being then a widdow) in the Earldomes of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, *Anno* 1361.

1347 24 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Nevers*, and *Rethel*, in right of his Father; and of *Artois*, and *Burgundy* in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded at her death, but the time I find not.

1369 25 *Philip* II. ſirnamed the *Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, &c. in right of *Margaret* his wife, daughter and heir of *Lewis de Malain*, whom he married ſolemnly at *Gaunt*, *Anno* 1369. Of which *Philip* and his Succeſſors in theſe Eſtates, we ſhall hereafter ſpeak in a place more proper.

The Arms of *Flanders* were *Or*, a *Lion* ſable langued, and armed *Gules*. Thoſe of *Artois* being *Semé* of Flower de Lyces *Or*, in a field *Azure*, a file of three Labels *Gules*, charged with as many Caſtles of the firſt.

HAINALT.

HAINALT is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Namur*; on the Weſt, with *Flanders*; on the North, with *Brabant*; on the South, with *Picardy* and *Champagne* in *France*. It was antiently called *Saltus Carbonatius*; by ſome writers of the middle times, the *lower Picardy*; by the *Latine* writers of theſe times called *Hannonia*. It ſeemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Haine*, or *Hania*, which paſſeth through it; and the word *Holt*, ſignifying a wood, as being overſpread in a manner with the Forreſts of *Narmault*, S. *Amand*, *De Faignd*, and that of *Poodsberg*. And then *Hainalt* will be *quaſi Haine-holt*, *i. e.* a Country of Woods and Forreſts on the River *Haine*. Thus called originally by the *French*, (as the word importeth) but by the *Dutch* beſt known by the name of *Hennegouw*, *i. e.* the County bordering on the *Haine*, as the name ſignifieth in that language.

The length thereof is 60 miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compaſſe 930 Villages, and 24 Towns; in and amongſt which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms, or *Pairries*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeys, one Lord Marſhall, (beſides other Officers of the Prince) deſcending by inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The air hereof is very good, and the ſoil fruitfull; by reaſon the Country is watered with ſo many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and ſeveral leſſer ſtreams, beſides divers lakes, mariſhes, ponds and pools, which do much inrich it; the Country abounding in moſt places with freſh Meadows and ſweet Paſtures, good fruits, and profitable trees, but eſpecially with great plenty of corn. Here are alſo in ſome parts of it notable Mines of Iron and Lead; and excellent quarries of the beſt ſtone, fit for all kind of buildings.

The principal of the Towns are 1. *Monts*, ſituate at the confluence of the *Haine*, and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural ſtrength unto it; fortified beſides with a very ſtrong wall, three large deep ditches, and an antient Caſtle. The Town great, beautifull, and rich, adorned with ſumptuous buildings both private and publick, and repleniſhed with wealty Merchants, and men of trade: the principal of all the Province, erected into an Earldom by *Charles* the Great, and ſometimes uſed for the ſtile of the Earls of *Hainalt*. In this Town is the noble Nunnery of St. *Valdrude*, once a Dutcheſſe of *Lorrein*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies and Gentlewomen of noble Families; in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns; in the afternoons according to their birth and qualities: who when they pleaſe may leave the Cloiſter, and be married. The Abbeſſe hath both *juriſdictions* in the Town and Country about it, and antiently did put the Earls of *Hainalt* into poſſeſſion of the State. Another Nunnery like this (but not of ſuch large Revenues) there is at 2. *Maubuige* on the *Sambree*, a good Town of Merchandiſe. 3. *Valenciennes*, ſeated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Rouelle*; which make not only in it many pleaſant Iſles, but paſſe almoſt under every mans houſe, to the great benefit and delight of the place and people. The ſite hereof ſo ſtrong by nature, (beſides the fortifications of Art) that on the one ſide it may be eaſily made unapproachable by water, and on the other ſides ſo defended by hills, that it can hardly be beſieged, but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large, and beautifull Town, eſpecially for publick buildings; the chief whereof are the *Church of our Lady*, *Hainalt.*

built after the ancient manner of *Architecture*, with ſumptuous arches, and goodly pillars of *Marble* and *Porphyrie*; the Earls Palace and the Town-hall buildings of great magnificence and excellent workmanſhip: the birth-place of *Henry* the 7. Emperour of *Germany*; of *Mary* daughter of *Charles* the *Warlike*; and of *Froiſſart* the great *French* Hiſtorian. Finally a town, which for the eminence thereof is governed as a *State* apart by it ſelf, having under the juriſdiction of it 3. Towns, and 132 Villages; which on occaſion of *appeal* reſort not to the Provintial Councel at *Mentz*, but the Great Council at *Machlyn*. 4. *Chimay* upon the River *Blanche*, near a pleaſant Forreſt, which gives the title of a Prince to the eldeſt Son of the Duke of *Arſchot*, one of the principal Lords of *Brabant*, who hath here a very goodly Palace. 5. *Halle*, ſeated on the *Seine*, which runs through it, a place of great credit amongſt the Papiſts, by reaſon of an Image of the bleſſed Virgin, famed for many miracles. Of which, ſee *Lipſius* on that ſubject. 6. *Beauvais*, an old Town, at a pillar whereof begin all the wayes leading into *France*, made of paved ſtones by *Brunehault* the wife of *Sigebert* King of *Mets* and *Auſtraſia*, who with *Fridegonde* the wife of *Chilpericke*, and *Katherine Medices* the wife of *Henry* the 2. are ſaid to be the three *Furies* of *France*. 7. *Landrecie*, on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable reſiſtance which it made to *Charles* the V. 1543. 8. *Mariemburg*, built by *Mary* Queen of *Hungarie*, Governeſs here for the ſaid *Charles*, *An.* 1524. to ſerve as a Bulwark againſt *France*, on which it frontireth. 9. *Philippe Ville*, built and well fortified for the ſame reaſon by King *Philip* the II. 10. *Bouchant*, upon the *Scheld*, in the County of *Oſtrinand*, which County is the title of the firſt ſon of *Hainalt*: and by that name *William* the eldeſt ſon of *Albert* Earl of *Hainalt* and *Holland* was admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the II. 11. *Conde*, a good little Town ſeated on the *Scheld*, the moitie whereof belonged heretofore to the houſe of *Monjenſier* in France; as 12. *Anghien* a Town of great trade for *Tapeſtrie*, to the houſe of *Vendoſme*: from whence the Princes of *Conde*, and Dukes of *Enghien* do derive their titles. 13. *Beaumont*, upon the knap of a goodly hill, whence it hath the name; belonging at the preſent to the Dukes of *Arſchot*; but anciently the *partage* of the ſecond Son of the Earls of *Hainalt*. 14. *Bins*, or *Binche*, on a branch of the River *Hain*, one of the Jointure-towns of the Counteſſes of *Hainalt*; much beautified, and made a place of pleaſures by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, to whom it was given by *Charles* the 5. (commonly called the *Queens Paradiſe*) but burnt and utterly deſtroyed by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. 15. *Ath*, ſeated on both ſides of the *Dender*, a little, but a pleaſant and wealthy town; here being held the Staple of Linnen for all this Country, and the cloth here ſold amounting to 200000 Crowns *per annum*.

As for the Hiſtory of *Hainalt*, the ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Nervii*, the moſt valiant and moſt potent people of all the *Galls*, poſſeſſed not only of this Province, but of the whole Earldom of *Namur*, and ſome part of *Flanders*, able to bring, and *de facto* did bring into the field, when the *Belgæ* muſtered up their united Forces againſt *Julius Cæſar*, no fewer then 50000 fighting men; won from the *Romans* by the *French*, they became a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, continuing ſo till the death of *Brunulph*, diſcomfited and ſlain in battel by *Dagobert* ſole King of the *French*, whom his Father in his life-time had made Duke of *Ardenne*, and deſigned unto the conqueſt of it, but the fury of the Warre being over, the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant* which belonged unto it, eſtated upon other houſes, and the reſt allotted out amongſt his children: *Alberic*, ſirnamed the *Orphelin*, one of his younger ſons, was by *Sigebert* King of *Mets* or *Auſtraſia* enfeoffed of this Country, by the name and title of Earl of *Hainalt*. Twice this Eſtate was added or united to that of *Flanders*; Firſt, in the perſon of *Baldwin* the 5th Earl of *Flanders*, ſucceeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his wife, daughter of *Regnier* the 3d. And 2dly. By the marriage of *Baldwin* the 6. of *Hainalt*, with *Margaret* Counteſſe of *Flanders*, ſiſter and heir of *Philip* of *Elſas*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the firſt time by the uſurpation of *Flanders*, wreſted from *Arnulph* the 3d. by his Uncle *Robert*; and the ſecond time by the intruſion of *John de Aveſnes*, natural ſon of *Margaret* the ſecond daughter of the Emperor *Baldwin*, into the Eſtate and Earldom of *Hainalt*; it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the marriage of *John de Aveſnes* to *Adelize*, or *Aleide*, daughter, and (at the laſt) heir of *Florence* the 4th Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, &c. From which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundy*.

The EARLES of *Hainalt*.

1 *Alberic*, one of the younger ſons of *Brunulph* Earl of *Ardenne*.
2 *Waultier*, ſon of *Alberic*.
3 *Waultier* II. ſon of *Waultier* the firſt.
4 *Waultier* III. ſon of *Waultier* the ſecond.
5 *Albon*, in right of his wife, eldeſt daughter of *Waulter* the third.
6 *Albon* II. ſon of the ſaid *Albon* by that wife.
7 *Manaſſier* ſon of *Albon* the ſecond.
8 *Regnier* ſon of *Manaſſier*.
9 *Regnier* II. ſon of *Regnier* the firſt.
10 *Regnier* III. ſon of *Regnier* the ſecond.
11 *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, and the firſt of that name in *Hainalt*, ſucceeded in right of *Richild* his wife, the ſole daughter to *Regnier* the third.
1070 12 *Arnulph*, ſon of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, deſpoiled of his eſtate and life by his Uncle *Robert*, who ſeiſed on the Earldom of *Flanders*.
1071 13 *Baldwin* II. brother of *Arnulph*, ſucceeded in *Hainalt*.

14 *Baldwin* III. ſon of *Baldwin* the ſecond.
15 *Baldwin* IV. ſon of *Baldwin* the third.
16 *Baldwin* V. ſon of *Baldwin* the fourth.
17 *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainalt*, ſon of *Baldwin* the fifth, and the 8th of that name in *Flanders*, into which alſo he ſucceeded in right of *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter and heir of *Philip* of *Elſas* Earl of *Flanders*.
1199 18 *Baldwin* VII. of *Hainalt*, and IX. of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*.
1195 19 *Joan* Counteſſe of *Hainalt* and *Flanders*, firſt married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.
1244 20 *Margaret* the younger ſiſter of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bourbon* Lord of *Dampierre*, by whom ſhe had *William* and *Guy*, both Earls of *Flanders*.
21 *John de Aveſnes*, baſe ſon of *Margaret*, begot before her mariage by *Buſchart* her Guardian, the Prior of S. *Peters* in *L'Iſle*, by force and fraud extorted *Hainalt* from his Brethren born in lawfull wedlock; and married *Alcide* daughter and heir of *Florence* the 4. Earl of *Holland*: whoſe ſucceſſors in both Eſtates we ſhall meet with there, and amongſt them, with *William* the 2d. Father of Queen *Philippa*, wife of *Edward* the 3d. one of the moſt conſiderable of all the number.

The Armes hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.

The Biſhoprick of CAMBRAY.

Southward from *Hainalt* lieth the Biſhoprick of CAMBRAY, containing a goodly town and territory, reckoned of antiently as a part of *Hainalt*, now a State diſtinct; rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, than ſubject to them.

The Principal City hereof is *Cambray*, (called in *Latine*, *Cameracum*) ſeated on both ſides of the River *Scheld*; a fair, goodly and mighty City, full of people, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them induſtrious; eſpecially in making that fine linnen Cloth, from hence called *Camerac*, or *Cambrick*. The private buildings very fair, but the publick much fairer, eſpecially the Monaſteries and other Churches, of which the moſt remarkable is that of *our Lady*, an ancient and ſumptuous fabrick, and the See Epiſcopal. From hence the Countrey and territory hereunto adjoyning is called *Cambreſis*; in which are divers Villages and places of importance. The chief of which are 1. *Caſteau Cambreſis*, ſix leagues from the City, remarkable for the treaty held there betwixt *France* and *Spaine*, *Anno* 1559. in which a peace was happily ſetled amongſt all the chief Princes of *Chriſtendom*, after a long and tedious war betwixt thoſe *Kings*, and the Confederates of each; and before that, for the Confederacy there made by the ſaid Kings of *France* and *Spain*, the Emperour, the Pope, and many of the Princes of *Italy*, againſt the *Signeurie of Venice*, *Anno* 1508. called the *League of Cambray*. 2. *Aveſnes le ſec* (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Aveſnes* in *Hainalt*) near which are digged excellent white ſtones for building, little inferiour unto *Marble*.

This *Biſhoprick* was founded in the perſon of S. *Diogenes*, a *Grecian* born, *An*. 390. or thereabouts. Whoſe Succeſſors in tract of time became ſo potent, that at the laſt the Biſhop hereof became both the Lord *ſpiritual* and *temporal* of the town and territory; honoured with the title of a Duke, and *Prince* of the Empire; and in the end made an Archbiſhop by Pope *Paul* the 4th. *Anno* 1562. And as for the City of *Cambray*, it was made *Imperial* by the *German* Emperors, afterwards by *Henry* the fifth given in protection to *Robert* of *Hieruſalem*, Earl of *Flanders*; and finally ſetled and confirmed on all his Succeſſors, by the Emperour *Frederick*, *An*. 1164. Which notwithſtanding, the *French* finding it convenient for them, divers times poſſeſſed it; but governing with too great inſolence, they were driven out by the people, in the time of *Lewis* the 11th. and the town yielded voluntarily unto *Maximilian*, governor of theſe Countries for his ſon *Philip*. *Charles* the 5th. in the year 1543. built a ſtrong *citadel* in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the Town againſt the *French*, but indeed to keep it for himſelf. After this it was taken by the Duke of *Alenſon*, (brother of *Henry* the 3d of *France*,) then Governour of the *Netherlands*, *Anno* 1582. but regained not long after by the *Spaniards*, the Inhabitants giving up the Town for want of victuals. Since that continually poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, by whom ſtrongly garriſoned, but ſo, that the people ſtill enjoy their antient priviledges, and are governed by their own Laws, and Biſhops, as in former times.

5 NAMUR.

The Earldom of *NAMUR* hath on the Eaſt, *Hainalt*; on the Weſt, the Biſhoprick of *Liege*; on the North, *Brabant*; and on the South, *Luxenbourg*. So called from *Namur*, the chief Town of it; *Namurcum*, and *Namurcenis Comitatus* in our *Latin* Writers. The Countrey very ſmall, containing only 182 Villages, and four walled Towns; but plentifull of all commodities, and repleniſhed with a loyal and induſtrious people. Particularly the air hereof is very wholeſom: the Country watered with many rivers and pleaſant brooks, (amongſt which the *Sambre*, and the *Maes*) which beſides the benefit of portage, yield great plenty of Fiſh. The Hills, whereof it hath not many, cloathed with woods, abounding with all kind of Fowl and Veniſon; the Vallies eminently fruitfull of all ſorts of grain, rich mines of Lead, quarries of Marble of all colours, as alſo of *Porphyrie* or *Jaſper*, and great plenty of *Coal*. In mines of Iron ſo abounding, and that continually hammered by a painfull people, that *Vulcans* forge may ſeem to be reſtored to the world again, and ſeated here; which as it makes the people wealthy, ſo

Namur. ſo it keeps them from idleneſſe. And as for the Nobility, they are generally valiant, given to all military exerciſes fit for their degrees, and very affectionate to their *Princes*, the greateſt virtue of a ſubject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was ſaid, that is to ſay, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where reſideth the *Council* for the Countrey, from which lyeth no appeal but to *Machlyn* only. Seated between two hills on both ſides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuſe*. The City rich, inhabited for the moſt part by the Nobility, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, founded here in the Church of St. *Albin*, *Anno* 1559. Not far off in the Villages of *Ardenne* and *Monſtier*, are two Nunneries of Ladies: like thoſe of *Montz* and *Maubuige* ſpoken of in *Hainalt*. 2. *Bovines* upon the *Meuſe*, ſacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. ſince repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a ſmall Town, but of moſt exact Fortifications, built by *Charles* the 5th. *An.* 1555. to oppoſe the *French*; who had then poſſeſſed themſelves of *Mariemburg*, a Town of *Hainalt*. 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but ſtanding in a goodly and fruitfull Countrey. Of the Villages, the chief is *Doue*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and honoured with the title of a *Viſcountie*; 2. *Floren*, 3. *Vaſcie*, and 4. *Sauſin*, of much beauty and greatneſs.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were a part of the *Nervii*; firſt made an Earldom by ſome of the deſcendents of the ſons of *Clodion*, the ſecond King of the *French*: who being diſpoſſeſſed of their Fathers kingdom by *Meroveus* the Maſter of his horſe, (to whom he had committed the guardianſhip or tuition of them) were forced to betake themſelves to the moſt defenſible places of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, and the parts adjoyning, where they founded the great Earldoms of *Ardenne* and *Moſelle*, as before is ſaid. Divided in ſucceeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls poſſeſſed, I am yet to learn; the Eſtate being ſmall, and conſequently the Princes of it not much conſiderable. Allied to the Royal houſe of *France* by the marriage of *Albert* Earl hereof, with *Irmingrade* daughter of *Charles* of *France*, the firſt Duke of *Lorrein*: and after unto the houſe of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *N.* the daughter and heir of *Peter* the laſt Earl of that Race, to *Henry* ſecond ſon *Baldwin* the 8th. of *Flanders*, and brother of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and the firſt Emperour of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople*, whom he ſucceeded in that Empire. After whoſe death it came by *Yoland* his daughter to *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who ſucceeded alſo in the Empire, and after his deceaſe, to *Philip* his younger ſon. But he deceaſing without iſſue, and *Robert* his elder brother reigning in *Conſtantinople*, it was ſeiſed on by *Philip* the brother of *Henry*, who to aſſure himſelf thereof, took to wife *Mary* daughter of *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*. By a Neece or Coſin of this *Philip* conveyed in marriage to *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg*, (the Father by a former wife of *Henry* the 7th, Emperour and Earl of *Luxembourg*) and finally brought back again to the houſe of *Flanders* by the marriage of *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*, with *Iſabell* daughter of that *Henry* by the heir of *Namur*. And in his iſſue it continued (for ought I can find) till it was ſwallowed up, with the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the houſe of *Burgundy*: So that the higheſt we can go in ſearch of the Earls of *Namur*, is to the time of *Hugh Capet* and *Charles* of *Lorreign*; which was 540 years after the coming in of the ſons of *Clodion*. From which time downwards the ſucceſſion is confuſed and broken; and towards the later end diſcontinued for 140 years. Such as are left upon Record, I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good Order as I could; and here preſent them in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *Namur*.

1 *Albert*, the Co-temporary of *Hugh Capet*, ſpoken of before.

2 *Godfrey* the ſon of *Albert*, and Father of *Alice* wife of *Baldwin* the 5th of *Hainalt*, and Mother of *Baldwin* the 6th of *Hainalt*, and the 8th of *Flanders*.

3 *Peter*, the ſon or brother of *Godfrey*.

4 *Henry* the ſecond ſon of *Baldwin* the 8. of *Flanders*, in right of *N.* his wife, the heir of *Peter* Emp. of *Conſtantinople* alſo on the death of *Baldwin* the 9th, his elder Brother.

1216 5 *Peter* II. ſon-in-Law of *Henry* Emp. of *Conſtantinople*, and Earl of *Namur*.

6, 7. *Philip* the younger ſon of *Peter*, and *John* the elder brother of *Henry*, both taking to themſelves the Title of Earl of *Namur*, the one at *Conſtantinople*, the other in the *Netherlands*, and both deceaſing without iſſue.

8 *Philip* II. brother of *John* and *Henry*, without iſſue alſo.

9 *John* II. ſirnam'd of *Dampierre*, the 3d ſon of *William* of *Dampierre*, by *Margaret* Counteſſe of *Flanders*, daughter and heir of the Emp. *Baldwin*, ſucceeded by the gift of his Mother, challenging the diſpoſing of it, as next heir of *Philip* the 2. or in the right Paramount of the Earldom of *Flanders*, enjoyed upon a better title by

10 *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*, and elder brother of *John* the 2d. in right of *Iſabel* his wife daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg* by the heir of *Namur*; but I neither find her name or Parents.

11 *John* III. ſon of *Guy* and *Iſabel*.

12 *John* IV. ſon of *Guy* by a former wife: the Brothers of *John* the 3d. by the whole blood being abſent or unfriended, and ſo put beſide.

13 *Guy* II. the Brother of *John* the 4th by the ſame *Venter*.

14 *John* V. ſon of *Guy* the 2d. who in the year 1307. married a Neece of *Lewis* the 9th of *France*, by *Robert* Earl of *Clermont* a younger ſon.

15 *John* VI. who in the year 1429. ſold

this eſtate to Duke *Philip* the *Good*, to be enjoyed by him on the death of *Theodorus* the next heir hereof, infirm, and (as it ſeems) without hope of Children.

16 *Theodore*, or *Theodorick*, the laſt Earl of *Namur*, after whoſe death Duke *Philip* entred on this Earldom by the former contract, and as the next heir of the Houſe of *Flanders*, continued ever ſince unto his Poſterity.

The Armes hereof are, *Or*, a Lion *ſable*, debruiſed with a Bend *Gules*.

6. *LVXENBOVRG.*

LVXENBOVRG is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Moſelle*, and the land of *Triers*; on the Weſt, with the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, and a branch of the Forreſt of *Ardenne*; on the North, with *Luickland*, *Namur*, and a part of *Hainalt*; and on the South, with the Dutchie of *Lorrein*; ſo called from the Caſtle, near the Town of *Luxenbourg*, ſelected by *Sigifride* the firſt Earl hereof for his ſeat and reſidence. The whole divided into two parts; the Eaſtern part being called *Fanenne*, fruitfull of corn, and yielding withall ſome wines, ſome mines, and many excellent quarries of goodly ſtone; the Weſtern called the *Ardenne*, a remainder of that ſpacious Forreſt, which ſometimes overſhadowed all this Country; barren of corn, but very plentifull of Veniſon, and of Fowl good ſtore.

The people of this Country are not all of one Language, thoſe nearer *Germany*, as in *Luxenbourg*, *Arlune*, *Rodemark*, *Theonville*, and the reſt on that ſide, ſpeaking the *Dutch*; as thoſe of *Ivois*, *Mommedi*, *Morvill*, and *Damvilliers*, with the reſt bordering on *France*, do a corrupt or broken *French*. In which regard the pleadings held before the *Council* reſiding in *Luxenbourg*, are made in both languages; that ſo they may be underſtood by all that have buſineſſe there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the ſeventeen) ſpeak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of men full of vertue, courteſie, and hoſpitality, towards one another; and of great truth and faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worſt *Landlords* in all theſe Countries; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the *Peſants* of *France*, contrary to the uſe and liberties of the reſt of the *Netherlands*. Both ſorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both *Law* and *Lawyers*; and for the moſt part end their controverſies amongſt themſelves, without any *proceſſe*.

The whole Country containeth in compaſſe about 70 leagues, or 200 *Italian* miles; in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages. The Principal of which are 1. *Lucembourg*, built in the place where antiently ſtood the *Auguſta Veromanduorum* of *Ptolomy*; and took this new name *quaſi Lucis burgum*, from the Image of the *Sun* there worſhipped; ſeated on the *Alſinuſius* or *Alze*, which runneth through it; large, and of a ſtrong ſituation, but not very well built, nor yet recovered of the ſpoils, which the long Wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniard* brought upon it, before the treaty of *Cambray*. However it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the reſidence of the *Council* hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* King of *Bohemia*, ſlain in the battle of *Crecie* againſt the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1348. 2. *Arlune*, on the top of an high hill, ſo called *quaſi Ara luna*, from an Altar conſecrated to the *Moon* in the times of *Paganiſm*. 3. *Theonville*, on the *Moſelle*, over which it hath a goodly bridge; a Frontier Town near *Metz*, and the border of *Lorrein*; and for that cauſe made marvellous ſtrong, but taken by the *French*, *Anno* 1558. and reſtored the next year by the peace of *Cambray*. 4. *Boſtonack*, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris of Ardenne*, in which part it ſtandeth. 5. *Mommedi*, on an high hill, at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. 6. *Danvilliers*, once a very ſtrong place alſo; both taken and ranſacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1552. 7. *Morville* upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belongeth to the Duke of *Lorrein*, the other to the King of *Spain*, as Duke of *Luxenbourg*, for which cauſe called *La ville commune*. 8. *Rock di March*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle. 9. *Ivoys*, a place once of great importance, ſacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1552. and reſtored by the treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it ſhould never more be walled. 10. *La Ferte* on the *Chiers*, a Town of the ſame condition.

In the skirts of this Country towards *France* ſtandeth the Principality of *Sedan*, extended all along the banks of the River *Maes*, from the borders of *Lorrein* on the South, to the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, and the Dukedom of *Bovillon* on the North. A ſmall, but very fair eſtate of fruitfull ſoil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and ſome Towns of note, the principal whereof, 1. *Jamais*, upon the borders of *Lorrein*, by the Duke whereof it was taken, after a long ſeaſon, from the Lady *Charlotte*, the laſt heir general of the Houſe of *Mark*, *Anno* 1585. and laid unto that Dukedom as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. *Donchiery*, a ſtrong Town of War, bordering on *Tiraſche* in *Picardy*, to which by ſome it is aſcribed. 3. *Sedan*, in *Latine* called *Sedunum ad Moſam*, becauſe ſituate on the banks of the *Maes* or *Moſa*, the uſual reſidence of the Prince; a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80 braſs pieces of Ordnance; honoured alſo with a ſeat of Learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar-School, and an Univerſity, is in the *Criticiſm* of theſe times called a *Schola illuſtris*, to which men may ſend their children to learn good letters, though they can take in them no *Degrees*, that being a priviledge reſerved only to the Univerſities. So that theſe Schools may be ſomewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Weſtminſter*, *Wincheſter*, and *Eaton*, but that the younger Students in theſe laſt named, are more reſtrained to *Rhetorick* and *Grammar*, than in the other; though theſe more liberally indowed for the encouragement and reward of Learning, than all the *Scholæ illuſtres* of either *Germany*. 4. *Mouſon*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence upon the River *Maes*; upon ſome jealouſies of State, garriſoned by the *French*, as alſo is *Sedan* it ſelf, and moſt of the other good Towns belonging unto this Principality;

Bouillon. cipality; but ſo that the revenues of it, execution of Juſtice, and all other rights of Soveraignty are ſtill enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof.

This Eſtate antiently was a part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*; from which diſmembred for the portion of ſome younger Prince, at ſuch time as *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon* ſucceeded in the Dukedome of *Lorrein*, after *Charles* and *Otho* the firſt Dukes; or elſe excepted and reſerved by *Godfrey* (ſurnamed) of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrein*, and King of *Hieruſalem*, when he ſold the Dukedom of *Bouillon* to the Biſhop of *Liege*. By many mean conveyances and alterations of the Owners, it came at laſt to the Houſe of *Arimberg*, a Family of great wealth and power in *Weſtphalen* (a Province of *Germany* not far off) by the Heir general of which Houſe it was brought in marriage to *Engelbert* Earl of *Mark*, about the year 1330. from whom deſcended *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Soveraign of *Sedan*, with the Towns annexed, who ſucceeding his Mother in the eſtates of *Sauſi* and *Florenge*, *Feifs* holden of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*; and eagerly affecting to unite the eſtates together (as they had been antiently) purchaſed the Town and Title of Duke of *Bouillon*, of *Eberhard* Earl of *Mark*, his brother, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Liege*, and conſequently Duke of *Bouillon* alſo. Proud of his honour, and being ſomewhat too ſtiff in maintaining the rights of his new Dukedom, againſt a ſentence paſſed in the Imperial Chamber, in a ſute there depending betwixt two of his Vaſſals, he took up arms againſt the Empire, with far more courage than diſcretion. For being in the courſe of that War worſted by *Charles* the fifth (for whom he was too weak an enemy) the Town of *Bouillon* being taken by the conquering Emperour, was afterwards reſtored to the Biſhops; and nothing but the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon* left to the Princes of *Sedan*. And that he might be able to hold *Sedan*, this *Robert* was fain to return again to the protection of the *French* (as his Anceſtors, from the time of *Charles* the 8th. had done before) and died *Anno* 1535. leaving his titles and eſtate unto *Robert* his ſon, one of the *Marſhals* of *France*; whoſe Grandſon, called alſo *Robert*, being a dear friend and companion of *Henry* of *Bourbon* King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France* alſo, dying without iſſue at *Geneva*, *Anno* 1588. committed to him the diſpoſal of his eſtates, and of the Lady *Charlotte* his only Siſter. And he ſo well diſcharged his truſt, that (having ſetled his own affairs) he gave the Lady in marriage to *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turenne* in *France*, (one who had done him very good ſervice in the courſe of his long warr againſt the Leaguers) and with her the poſſeſſion of *Sedan*, and title of *Bouillon*; whoſe poſterity do ſtill enjoy it. The whole ſucceſſion of theſe Princes we ſhall find in *Bouillon*, of which more anon.

But to return again to the *Dutchy* of *Luxembourg*, it was at firſt a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, diſmembred from it in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, by *Sigifride* the ſon of *Ricuinus*, Prince thereof; who in the diviſion of that eſtate amongſt his Brethren, had this for his portion, with the title of Earl. Of his Succeſſors there is little to be found upon good record, in a conſtant Order of Succeſſion, untill the time of *Henry* the 1. Father of *Henry* the 7th Emperour of *Germany*, and of a Royal Progeny of Kings and Princes; two of the which are moſt conſiderable, though all of them of eminent quality in their ſeveral times, *viz.* 1. *Henry* elected and crowned Emperour, by the name of *Henry* the ſeventh, ſaid to be poiſoned by a Frier in the Holy Chalice, to prevent ſome deſignes he had againſt the Pope, in aſſerting the Imperial power in *Italy*. 2. *John* the ſon of this *Henry*, choſen King of *Bohemia*, in regard of his marriage with *Elizabeth* the daughter of *Wenceſlaus* King thereof; the poſſeſſion of which Realm he left unto his poſterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by *Charles* the 4th. the eldeſt ſon of this *John*, in the perſon of *Wenceſlaus* his younger brother. What elſe concerns it, we ſhall find in this following Catalogue of

EARLES and DUKES of *LUXEMBOURG*.

1 *Sigifride*, the ſon of *Ricuine*, Prince of *Ardenne*; the firſt Earl of *Luxembourg*.

2 *Gilbert*, the Father of *Ogine* wife of *Baldwin* the 4th of *Flanders*; but whoſe ſon I find not.

3 *Godfrey*, Earl of *Namur*, was alſo Earl of *Luxembourg* by the right of marriage. Father of *Agnes*, the wife of *Simon* the 2d. Duke of *Lorrein*.

4 *Conrade*, perhaps the ſon of *Godfrey* by the daughter of *Luxembourg*, Father of *Catherine* wife of *Matthew* the 2d. Duke of *Lorrein*.

5 *Henry* Earl of *Luxembourg*, ſlain in the quarrel of *Rainold* Earl of *Gueldres*, contending with *John* Duke of *Brabant* for the Dutchy of *Limbourg*.

6 *Henry* II. ſon of *Henry* 1. by means of his Brother *Baldwin* Elector of *Triers*, was choſen Emperor of the *Germans*, the 7th of that name, *Anno* 1308. firſt crowned at *Aken*, and afterwards at *Rome*; one of the laſt Emperors that medled in the affairs of *Italy*.

1313 7 *John*, ſon of *Henry* II. Earl of *Luxembourg*, married *Elizabeth* daughter of *Wenceſlaus* the elder, King of *Bohemia*; of which he was upon that marriage elected and crowned King, *An.* 1311. in the life of his Father, ſlain by the *Engliſh* in the battel of *Crecie*, *Anno* 1346.

1346 8 *Wenceſlaus*, the younger ſon of *John*, created Duke of *Luxembourg* by his elder brother *Charles* the 4th. Emperor and King of *Bohemia*.

1383 9 *Wenceſlaus* II. eldeſt ſon of the ſaid *Charles* the 4th. Emperour, and King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.

1419 10 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, ſucceeded *Wenceſlaus* in all his eſtates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungary*, by the marriage of *Mary* daughter of King *Lewis* the firſt.

11 *Elizabeth*, daughter of *John* Duke of *Garlitz*, (a Town of *Luſatia*) the brother of *Sigiſmund*, by the gift of *Sigiſmund* her Uncle, being then alive; the better to fit her for the bed of

An-

Limbourg.

Anthony of *Burgogn* Duke of *Brabant*; after whoſe deceaſe ſhe married *John* the 3d. Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. But having no iſſue by either of them, ſhe ſold her intereſt in this Dukedom to Duke *Philip* the *Good*.

12 *Philip* the *Good*, ſucceeded on the ſale aforeſaid, made by the ſaid *Elizabeth*, in purſuance of the Contract and Agreement made at her firſt marriage, for ſettling this eſtate in the Houſe of *Burgundy*. Of whom, and his Succeſſors in theſe *Belgick* Provinces, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

The Arms are *B*, ſix Barrulets *A*, ſupporting a Lion *G*, crowned and armed *Or*.

7 LIMBOURG.

THe greateſt of the Eſtates of *Belgium*, for extent of territory, at the time of their incorporating in the Houſe of *Burgundy*, was that of *Brabant*, comprehending 5 of the 19 Provinces, that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, the Marquiſate of the Holy Empire, and Signeury of *Machlyn*, with the Soveraignty of *Leige*, or *Luick-land*.

7. LIMBOURG, hath on the Eaſt, the Dukedom of *Gulick* in *High Germany*, on the Weſt, the Biſhoprick of *Liege*; on the North, *Brabant*; and on the South, the Dukedom of *Luxembourg*. The Soil fruitful of all neceſſary Commodities, excepting Wines, the want whereof is recompenced with moſt excellent Wheat, great ſtore of Fewel, and plenty of the beſt Iron-mines in all theſe Countries: all which Commodities it hath of ſo great excellency in their ſeveral kindes, that it is ſaid of them proverbially, that *their Bread is better than bread*, *their Fire hotter than fire*, and *their Iron harder than iron*. It is alſo well ſtored with medicinable ſimples, and enriched with a mine of *Copperas*, (by *Pliny* called *Lapis æroſus*, *lib.* 34. *c.* 10.) which being incorporated with braſſe makes *Lattin*, and increaſeth the braſſe by one third part. *Lapis æroſus multum æris habet*, *& ex eo fuſo fit æs*, as that Author hath it.

It is one of the leaſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages, and no more than five walled Towns or Cities, *viz.* 1. *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole eſtate, pleaſantly ſeated on a hill amongſt ſhady woods, under which runneth the River *Weſdo*, which having watered the whole Country, emptieth it ſelf into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep *Precipice*, of no eaſie acceſſe. 2. *Walkenbourg*, called by the French *Fauquemont*, a reaſonable fair Town, with a large Territory, two Dutch miles from *Maeſtricht*, conquered from *Reynold* Lord hereof, by *John* the 3d. Duke of *Brabant*. 3. *Dalem*, a little Town with a Caſtle, the Territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*; conquered by *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, of that name the ſecond. 4. *Rhode le Duck*, a little old Town, with as old a Caſtle, half a league from *Walkenburg*. 5. *Carpen*, ſituate between *Gulick* and *Colen*, beautified with a Collegiate Church, and a ſtrong Caſtle, in which there is a Governour with a good Garriſon for defence of the place. Each of theſe Towns hath juriſdiction on the parts adjoyning; but with appeal unto the *Chancery* at *Brabant*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Tract, and the Biſhoprick of *Leige* adjoyning, were the *Eburones*. When it was firſt made an Earldom, I am yet to ſeek. Moſt probable it is, that lying within the verge of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, it was at firſt a Member of that Earldom alſo, diſmembered from it for the portion of ſome younger ſon, as Luxembourg and *Namur* were, or ſeized on by ſome ſtrange Pretender (as *Gulick* was) when *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorrein*, and the direct Heirs of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, were abſent in the Wars of the *Holy Land*. But whenſoever, and by whomſoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *Anno* 1172. *Henry* one of the Dukes hereof, married his daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the third Duke of *Brabant*; which gave that Houſe ſome colour to pretend to it: backed with a better title on the death of another *Henry*, the laſt Duke of *Limbourg*, whoſe next Heir *Adolph*, ſold it to *John* Duke of *Brabant*, pretending to it in the right of the former marriage, *Anno* 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Gueldres*, thinking himſelf to have a better Title than *Adolph*, in right of *Ermingrade* his wife, the daughter of *Herman* a late Duke hereof, put in his plea, and challenged it by force of Arms: but being vanquiſhed and taken Priſoner by the ſaid Duke *John*, in the battel of *Worancan*, was fain for his releaſe, to releaſe all his claim and title to the Dukedom of *Limbourg*: after that quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they fell both together to the Houſe of *Burgundy*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, *Or*, and *Gules*.

8. LUICKLAND:
OR
The *Biſhoprick* of *LIEGE.*

WEſtward of Limbourg, but a far mightier eſtate than it, lieth LUICKLAND, as the *Dutch*, or the Biſhoprick of LIEGE, (*Leodienſis*) as the Latine and French Writers call it: antiently under the protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, as Lords of that Country. But by ſome accounted of, and deſcribed as a part of *Germany*: but for the reaſons before mentioned I ſhall place it here: environed on all ſides with the *Belgick* Provinces, that is to ſay, with the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and the Earldom of *Namur* on the Eaſt, with *Brabant* on the North and Weſt; on the South with *Luxembourg*.

The Air hereof is very wholſom, and the Earth is fruitfull, abounding with all kind of grain and fruits, ſome ſtore of Wine; and as for Fleſh, Fiſh, Fowl, and Veniſon, it hath very great plenty, and

Liege.

that too of an excellent taſte, leſſe fertile in ſuch parts hereof as lie towards *Luxembourg*, in which it is more ſwelled with hills, and over-ſpread with ſhady-woods, remainders of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, within which it ſtood. But the chief riches of this Countrey is under ground, conſiſting in mines of Lead, and Iron, and ſome few of Gold; quarries of *Alabaſter*, mingled with all ſorts of *Marble*; rich veins of *Brimſtone*, and unexhauſtible pits of Coal; which laſt it hath in ſuch abundance, that there is digged within the compaſs of one league of the City of *Liege*, not only ſufficient for that great City; but ſo much over-plus, as being ſold at mean prices about the Country, amounts unto 100000 Ducats of yearly value. The Coal much ſweeter than elſewhere, and of a nature much contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with water, and quenched with oyl; and the ſtrong fervour of it taken off, by caſting ſalt on it.

The whole Countrey containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800 Villages, the principal of which are 1. *Liege*, or *Luick* (in Latine *Leodium*) ſituate in a pleaſant valley, environed with hills, the *Meuſe* entring it in two branches, accompanied with four leſſer Riverets, which make in it many delightful Iſlands. The compaſſe of it about four miles, the ordinary buildings very fair, all built of Stone; the Biſhops Palace a magnificent and ſumptuous piece: the Churches in number forty, of which eight are *Collegiate*, 32 *Parochial*; all of them for their riches and beauty excelling all in any City of *France* or *Germany*. Beſides theſe, there are ſo many *Convents*, *Monaſteries*, and religious Houſes about the Town, that taking all together they amouut to an hundred: all of them of ſuch fair revenues, ſo well endowed, and the Religious perſons there of ſo great authority, that it is called the *Paradiſe of Prieſts*, and that deſervedly. It is alſo an Univerſity of good antiquity, wherein were ſtudents at one time, 9 Kings ſons, 24 Dukes ſons, 29 Earls ſons, beſides Barons and Gentlemen; the greateſt part of which were *Canons* of the Church of S. *Lambert*, which is the *Cathedral* of the City. Yet notwithſtanding it hath taſted of the malice of Fortune, as well as others, being firſt deſtroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once deſtroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy*, *Anno* 1468. Subject it is unto the Biſhop as Lord Temporal of it; from whom (being long ſince made an Imperial City) there lieth an *Appeal* to the Chamber of *Spires*. 2. *Dinand* upon the *Meuſe*, near *Namur*, of very great traffick, till deſtroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy*, in the ſame year with *Liege*: hardly recovered of which wounds, it was again ſacked by King *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, *Anno* 1554. 3. *Muſeck*, upon the *Meuſe* or *Maes* alſo, a league from whence is the fair Nunnery of *Thuren*, of the ſame nature with that of *Mentz*, and others ſpoken of before: the like to which there is near, 4. *Bilſen*, another Town of this Biſhoprick; the Abbeſſes of each having the priviledge of coyning both gold and ſilver. 5. *Lootz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borelom*, in the County of *Dioſtein*; made a County in the time of *Charles* the *Great*, the title and poſſeſſion of *Ogier* the *Dane*, ſo famous in the Hiſtory of *Gallen* of *France*, and others of the old *Romances*. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the title of a Marqueſſe to the Biſhop of *Liege*. 7. *Centron*, or St. *Truden*, a fair Town, ſo called of the Abby dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Huy* or *Hoey*, ſo called of a violent River, which there runs into the *Meuſe*. 9. *Tongres*, the chief City of the *Tongri*, which (together with the *Eburones*) were once the Inhabitants of this Tract; in which are ſtill the ruines of a Temple conſecrated to *Hercules*. Antiently an Epiſcopal See, tranſlated hence to *Maeſtricht*, and at laſt to *Liege*: and in thoſe times ſo great, and of ſuch renown, that *Attila* the *Hun* deſtroyed in it 100 Churches; now but a very ſmall Town, and not worth the mentioning, but for theſe antiquities. Eight leagues from hence, amongſt the ſhady thicket of the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, is that ſo celebrated 10 Village, and thoſe famous hot Bathes, frequented from all the places of *Europe*, called the *Spa*: not ſo pleaſant as wholſome, not ſo wholſome as famous. Yet are they good for ſundry diſeaſes, as the *Tertian Ague*, and *Dropſie*, the *Stone*, the exulceration of the Lungs, the *Sciatique*, &c. They are of moſt vertue in *July*, becauſe they are then hotteſt; and to ſuch as taſte them, they relliſh much of Iron, from ſome Iron-mines, it ſeems, through which the waters run, which feed them. Thoſe Bathes of great ſame in the time of *Pliny*, who doth thus deſcribe them: *Tungri Civitas fontem habet inſignem, plurimis bullis ſtillantem, ferruginei ſaporis, quod ipſum non niſi in fine potus intelligitur. Purgat hic corpora, febres tertianas diſcutit, calculorumque vitia.* So he, *lib.* 31. *cap.* 2. agreeable to the nature of them at this preſent time

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, in this accompt) followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Belgica*, till the conqueſt of it by the *French*, by whom it was made a part of the kingdom of *Lorrein*; in the diviſion of which kingdom between the King of *France* and *Germany*, it fell unto the ſhare of the Kings of *France*, as lying almoſt wholly on the Weſt or *French* ſide of the River *Maes*, which parted their poſſeſſions in that broken Kingdom. Won from *Lotharius* the *French* King (the laſt but one of the Caroline race) by *Otho* the 2d. it was by him made part of the Dukedome of *Lorrein* then by him erected, and continued as a part thereof, till ſold by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrein* to the Biſhop of *Liege*, (of which more anon) ſince which time it hath been the Patrimony of thoſe wealthy Prelates. As for the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, it was founded at *Tungres*, as before was ſaid: after the ſackage of which City by *Attila*, removed *Anno* 498. by S. *Servatius* unto *Maeſtricht*. But the people of *Maeſtricht* having martyred S. *Lambert*, their Biſhop, *Anno* 710. by *Hubert* his deſigned Succeſſor, with the leave of Pope *Conſtantine*, it was tranſlated to this place, and a Cathedral Church here founded by the name of St. *Lambert*. His Succeſſours did ſo well husband their advantages, that they did not onely buy the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but the City and Territory of *Liege*, ſold unto *Spentus* and *Obertus* ſucceſſively Biſhops of it, by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrein*, at his departure hence to the *Holy-land*: not much increaſed ſince that in Lands, though he be in Titles, the Biſhop being ſtiled a Prince of the Empire, Duke of *Bouillon*, Marqueſſe of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Lootz* and *Hasbain*. Yet are not his ordinarie revenues above 30000 Du-

ducats yearly, his ſubjects living very well under him, at eaſie rents, and growing for the moſt part unto good eſtates: An argument whereof may be, that when the *Leigeois* had rebelled againſt *Philip* the *Good* Duke of *Burgundie*, (under whoſe *Clientele* they were, as Duke of *Brabant*) they bought their peace of him at the price of 60000 *Florens* of the *Rhene*, to be paid in ſix years. After which again rebelling againſt *Charles* the *Warlike*, (as they have been obſerved to be the moſt rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Gaunt*) they were able to wage 30000 men, but not being able to withſtand the forces of their *Lord Protector*, fell into that miſerable deſtruction ſpoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*: but counted *neutral* in the quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain* and the *States Confederate*, as formerly between the *Spaniard* and the *French*; though many times they ſuffer in the conteſtations.

Bouillon.

Southward hereof, betwixt it and *Luxembourg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, ſubject unto the Biſhops of *Leige*; but a State diſtinct, and holden by a different title. It taketh up a great part of that Countrey, which more particulary and ſpecially is called the Forreſt of *Ardenne*, with the Woods whereof in many places overſhadowed; but not unfurniſhed of fair Towns and wealthy Villages. The principal of which 1. *Loni*, and 2. *Muſon Court*, deſtroyed by *Charles* the fifth in his War againſt *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Duke of *Bouillon*; but on the peace enſuing repaired again. 3. *Sanſi*, and 4. *Floringe*, *Feiſs*, as before is ſaid, of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*; but poſſeſſed by the Soveraigns of *Sedan*, ſince the time that *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Soveraign of *Sedan*, had them in marriage with *Joan* his wife, the right Heir thereof, from whom came *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, the firſt Duke of *Bouillon* of that family. The laſt a pretty Town, till deſtroyed by the *French*, in the Wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the ſecond, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, ſince paſſing in accompt as a principal Village. 5. *Herk*, in the Forreſt of *Ardenne*, the cauſe of the great War betwixt *Charles* the fifth, and *Robert* Duke of *Bouillon*, ſpoken of before; the Emperour having paſſed ſentence in behalf of the *Embries*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the pretenſions of the houſe of *Chimay*. 6. *Bouillon*, built on the ſide of a Hill near the River *Senoy*, a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Caſtle on the top of the ſaid Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, ſo ſtrong, as well by Art as Nature, that before the uſe of great Ordnance, it was held impregnable. Much ſpoyled in the War betwixt *Charls* the fifth, and *Robert* of *Mark*, and toſſed from one Maſter to another in a little time: For being taken from Earl *Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French*, *An.* 1552. and finally reſtored to the Biſhop of *Leige* by the treaty of *Cambray*, *An.* 1559. but without prejudice to the claim and title of the Prince of *Sedan*: So that there are no fewer then three diſtinct families which at this time enjoy the title of Dukes of *Bouillon*; that is to ſay, the Biſhop of *Leige*, who hath precedency of Title, and the poſſeſſion of the City; the houſe of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Sanſi*, and ſome other pieces; and the Heirs Males of the Collateral line of the houſe of *Mark*, who hold *Lumainge*, *Rochfort*, and ſome other places; but of leſſe importance.

This Dukedom once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the diviſion of that eſtate betwixt the Children of *Ricuini*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the ſhare of *Godfrey* his eldeſt Son, (*Sedan*, with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the title of Earl of *Ardenne*, and *Bouillon*. By *Godfrey* his ſon united to the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, ſucceeding into that eſtate after *Charles* and *Otho*; and by another *Godfrey* the firſt Duke of *Lorrein* diſmembred from it, and given in Dower with his Siſter *Ida*, at her marriage with *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of theſe was born the famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, either becauſe he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof, before he did attain to the Dukedom of *Lorrein*; who to provide himſelf of neceſſaries for the Warrs of the *Holy-land* (ſo fortunately conveyed and conducted by him) ſold firſt this Dukedom unto *Obert*, as afterwards the whole County of *Luick-land* to *Speutus* Biſhops of *Leige* ſucceſſively, and their ſucceſſors for ever; which though accounted by moſt Writers for a part of *Luickland*, or of the Biſhoprick of *Leige*, call it which you will, was notwithſtanding held by thoſe great Prelates as a State diſtinct, and governed under them by the Eſtates of the Countrey, from whoſe ſentence there lay no Appeal: The maintenance of which Priviledges, on an Appeal made by the *Embries* unto *Charles* the fifth, coſt *Robert* Earl of *Mark* ſo dear, who had not long before purchaſed this Eſtate of his brother *Eberhard*, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Leige*, as was ſaid before The reſt of the ſtory we have had already in our deſcription of *Sedan*; we will now look upon the Princes which have born theſe titles.

The Dukes of *Bouillon* of the Houſe of *Ardenne*.

1 *Godfrey*, the eldeſt ſon of *Ricuine*, Prince, or Earl of *Ardenne*, the firſt Earl of *Bouillon*, and husband of *Matilda*, a daughter of the Emperor *Otho* the ſecond.

2 *Godfrey* II. ſon of *Godfrey* the firſt, who in the year 1004. by adoption of Duke *Otho* his Couſin, and the power of *Henry* the 2d. Emperour, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*.

1019 3 *Gozelo*, brother of *Godfrey* the ſecond Duke of *Lorrein* and *Bouillon*.

1044 4 *Godfrey* III. ſon of *Gozelo*.

5 *Euſtace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and *Ida* his wife, daughter of *Godfrey* the third, by whom endowed at her marriage with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*.

6 *Godfrey* IV. ſirnamed of *Bouillon*, ſon of *Euſtace* and *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey* ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, *An.* 1078. and died King of *Hieruſalem*. Going unto the Wars of the *Holy Land*, he ſold this Dukedom to *Obert* Biſhop of *Leige* and his Succeſſors, *An.* 1509. who did accordingly enjoy it till the year 1096. or thereabouts; when ſold by *Eberhard* of *Mark* to his brother *Robert*, of whoſe deſcent and Succeſſors you may take

this view in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Soveraigns of *Sedan* and Dukes of *Bouillon* of the Houſe of *Mark*.

1. *Englebert* the ninth Earl of *Mark* in *Germany* by marrying with the Daughter and heir of *Aremberg*, added *Sedan*, *Jamais*, &c. to the Houſe of *Mark*.
2. *Everhard*, ſecond Son of *Engelbert* by the Heir of *Aremberg*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
3. *John*, Son of *Everhard*, Earl of *Mark*, &c.
4. *Everhard* II. Brother of *John*, Earl of *Mark*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
5. *John* II. Earl of *Mark*, Son of *Everhard* the ſecond.
6. *Robert* of *Mark*, the II. Son of *John* the ſecond, Lord of *Sedan*; his elder brother of *Everhard* ſucceding in the eſtates of *Aremberg*, he added *Florenge* and *Sanſi*, Towns of the Dukedom of *Bouillon* to his other pieces.
7. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert* the firſt, Soveraign of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, which Dukedom he purchaſed of *Everhard* his Brother, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Liege*.

1535 8. *Robert* III. Son of *Robert* the ſecond, one of the Marſhals of *France*, Soveraign of *Sedan* and titulary Duke of *Bouillon*.

1556 9. *Henry-Robert*, Son of *Robert* the third.

10. *Robert-William*, Son of *Henry-Robert*, zealous in the reformed Religion, and a great follower of *Henry* of *Vendoſm*, King of *Navarre*, to whom dying at *Geneva*, *Anno* 1588. he bequeathed the care of his eſtates.
11. *Charlotte*, the Siſter of *Robert-William*, married by *Henry* of *Navarre* (then King of the *French*) to *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turrenne*.
12. *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turenne* in *France*, deſcended from the Heirs General of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* and Duke of *Bouillon*, by marriage of the Lady *Charlotte*, and the gift of *Henry* the fourth of *France*, ſucceeded in the Soveraignty of *Sedan* and title of *Bouillon*; A Proteſtant, and the Founder of the *Schola Illuſtris* in *Sedan*.

De La Tour, Son of *Henry* by one of the Daughters of *William*, Prince of *Orange*, ſucceeded his Father in his Eſtates, but not in his Religion alſo, which to ingratiate himſelf with the *French* King he exchanged for *Papiſtry*, made thereupon one of the Marſhals of *France*, and now living, *Anno* 1648.

9. BRABANT, 10. The MARQVISATE, And 11. MACHLYN.

THeſe I have joyned together, though diſtinct Eſtates, becauſe they have a long time followed the ſame fortune, and that the two laſt do no otherwiſe differ from the firſt, then the parts from the whole: the *Marquiſate*, and *Machlyn*, being now reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

9. BRABANT is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Luickland*, or the Biſhoprick of *Leige*; on the Weſt, with the River *Scheld*, and a part of *Flanders*; on the North, with the *Maes*, which ſevereth it from *Holland*, and *Guelderland*; and on the South, with *Hainalt*, *Namur*, and a part of *Luickland*. So called *quaſi Beuckland*, that is to ſay, a barren Land, as at firſt it was; or from the old *Bratiſpantium*, which *Cæſar* placeth in this tract, but from whether of the two is not yet determined.

The air hereof is generally very wholeſome, and good; and the Soil naturally fruitfull, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it ſelf, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattle, Soiling the ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The people live in moſt freedome, and are the beſt priviledged of any in *Belgium*. A thing for which they are more beholding to the Princes goodneſſe, than their own great wits; being noted to be none of the wiſeſt, eſpecially as they grow in age, when moſt men learn wiſdome. *Brabanti quo magis ſeneſcunt, eo magis ſtulteſcunt*, as *Eraſmus* telleth us.

The length hereof, from S. *Gertrudenberg* to *Genblaurs*, North and South, is 22 *Dutch* or *German* miles; from *Helmont* to *Berghen ap Some*, Eaſt and Weſt, 20 of the ſame miles; the whole compaſs 80. Within which circuit are contained 26 walled Towns; and Villages with Pariſh Churches 718. of which, the odd 18 called *Franks*, or Market-Towns, enjoy the Priviledges of walled Towns, or Cities, though unwalled themſelves.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Shertogen Boſch*, or the *Boſch*, as the *Dutch*; *Bois le Duc*, or *Boldue*, as the *French*; and *Silva Ducis*, or *Boſcum Ducis*, as the *Latines* call it: each name derived according to their ſeveral Languages, from a pleaſant Wood belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now ſtands, ſituate on a little River called *Deeſe*, ſome two leagues from the *Maes*, near the borders of *Guelderland*: a large and well built Town, very ſtrongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper; made an *Epiſcopal* See *Anno* 1559. the Cathedral which is fixed in the Church of S. *John*, being fair and large, and beautified with one of the goodlieſt *Dials* in the *Chriſtian* world. This is the principal Town of *Brabant* (properly and diſtinctly ſo called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Maeſland*, *Peeland*, and *Oſterwick*; and was taken by the *Confederate Eſtates* from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable ſiege, *Anno* 1628. 2.

Tilmont, on the little River *Geet*, once chief of *Brabant*, but long ſince decayed. 3. *Aſchot* on the little River *Dennere*, which gives the title of Duke to them of the Noble houſe of *Croy*, and deſcended from the Kings of *Hungary*, (of which we ſpake before at large when we were in *Picardy*) the Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the 5th.) being men of greateſt Religion and Authority of any in *Belgium*. 4. *Bergen ap Zome*, ſo called from the River *Zome*, upon which it is ſituate; about half a league from the influx of it into the *Scheld*, and not far from the Sea, which gives it a reaſonable good Haven. A Town of great ſtrength by nature, but more ſtrongly fortified: Famous for being made a *Marquiſate* by *Charles* the 5th. *Anno* 1553. more for the notable reſiſtance which it made to the Marquis *Spinola*, *Anno* 1622. 5. *Breda*, upon the River *Merck*, a Town pleaſantly ſeated, well fortified, and of great Revenue; having under it the Town and Territory of *Steenberg*, the Franchiſe of *Roſindale*, and the Seigneury of *Oſterhout*; the reſidence, Barony, and chief Town of the Princes of *Orange*, from whom being taken by the *Spaniard* in the beginning of thoſe Wars, it was again recovered by ſome venturous Gentlemen, who hiding themſelves in a Boat covered over with Turf, were conveyed into the Caſtle, which they eaſily maſtered, and made the Prince Lord of it again: After re-taken by the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1625. but now in the poſſeſſion of its natural owners: to whom it came by the right of the houſe of *Naſſaw*, by the marriage of *Engelbert* the 7th. Earl of that houſe, with *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the laſt Lord hereof, about the year 1400. 6. *Dieſt* on the River *Dennere*, a good Town, and inveſted with a goodly Territory; belonging to the Prince of *Orange*, whoſe anceſtors of the houſe of *Naſſaw* had it in exchange for ſome other Lands of the Duke of *Cleve*; and in right hereof is *Burgrave* of the City of *Antwerp*. 7. *Grinbergen*, an antient Barony, with a large Juriſdiction, deſcendible on the youngeſt ſon only, after the manner of *Burg Engliſh*, as our Lawyers call it. 8. *Gertrudenberg*, ſtanding on the *Douge*, not far from the influx of it into the *Maes*, the furtheſt Town in the North of *Brabant*, where it joyns to *Holland*: which makes it a matter of diſpute betwixt thoſe Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A Town of great trade for fiſhing, plenty of *Salmons* and *Sturgeon* being taken here; but of *Shads* eſpecially, whereof 18000 are ſometimes caught in a day, ſalted, and ſent abroad into foreign parts. It acknowledgeth the Prince of *Orange* for the Lord thereof, as doth alſo 9. *Grave*, a good Town upon the *Maes*, bought by theſe Princes of the King of *Spain*, with conſent of the *States*; without whoſe approbation no part of the *Domain* is to be diſmembred. 10. *Maeſtreicht* (in Latine *Trajectum ad Moſam*) ſo called of a Ferry over the *Maes* in former times, ſupplyed now with a goodly Stone Bridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly Town, beautified with two Collegiate Churches, in one of which the Dukes of *Brabant* were alwayes *Canons*; ſubject in part to the Biſhop of *Leige*, and partly to the Duke of *Brabant*: the Children are ſubject to that Prince to whom the Mother was ſubject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father; according to that *Maxim* of the Civil Law, *Partus ſequitur ventrem*: and if a Stranger come to live there, he muſt declare to which of the two he will be ſubject; yet is the Duke of *Brabant* the chief Soveraign of it, he only having the power of Coynage, and of granting pardon to Offenders; and as a Town of this Dukedom, beſieged and taken by the confederate *States*, *Anno* 1632

Here is alſo within the limits of this Dukedom, the Town and Seigneury of *Raveſtein*, ſituate on the banks of the *Maes*, held by the Dukes of *Cleve*, of the Duke of *Brabant*; but no otherwiſe ſubject: and on the ſame River, the Town and Country of *Horn*, a *Fief Imperial*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a goodly Territory; in which is *Wiert*, the reſidence of the Earls of *Horn*, deſcended of the antient houſe of *Montmorency* in *France*.

The Marquiſate.

2. *THE MARQUISATE OF THE EMPIRE*, ſo called, becauſe the fartheſt bounds and *Marches* of the *German* Empire, frontiering on *Flanders*, which appertained unto the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*; comprehendeth four of the beſt Towns in *Brabant*, with very large and ſpacious Territories adjoyning to them, *viz.* 1. *Lovain*, on the River *Dyle*, about four *Engliſh* miles in compaſs; but in that compaſs much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadows, and pleaſant Fields; which make the ſituation far more delightfull, than if all built, and peopled. It was the Mother Town of *Brabant*, and ſometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes hereof: afterwards made an Univerſity by Duke *John* the 4th. *Anno* 1426. wherein are contained about 20. Colledges, ſuch as they be; much priviledged, and inriched with penſions for publick Readers, by King *Philip* the 2d. 2. *Bruſſells*, (*Bruxella*) the ſeat of the antient Dukes of *Brabant*, and of the Dukes of *Burgundy* alſo, after they came to be Lords of thoſe Countries; ſeated upon the *Sinne*, and other ſweet Springs and Riverets, which make it one of the ſweeteſt ſituations in all *Europe*: having withall, a goodly channel made by Art from *Bruſſells*, to the River *Dele*, and from thence to the *Scheld*: the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the ſame compaſſe with *Lovain*, the buildings ſumptuous, and the Town very rich; not only in regard that it is the ordinary ſeat of the Prince, or his *Regent*, and of the *Chancery* for all *Brabant*, and the Dutchy of *Limbourg*; but in regard of the rich *Manufactures* of Armour and Cloth of *Arras*, of Silk, Gold and Silver, which are there induſtriouſly purſued. 3. *Nivello*, on the borders of *Hainalt*, in a very rich and fruitfull ſoyle, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linnen, which is therein made; but moſt of all for a very rich *Nunnery* (or rather a *Nurſery*) of Noble Ladies; of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mentz*, and others before deſcribed. 4. *Antwerp*, ſituate on a goodly plain on the River *Scheld*, above 17 leagues from the Sea, but furniſhed with eight Channels cut out of the River for the tranſport of Commodities; one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships. The private buildings very handſome, but the publick ſumptuous; the chief whereof were reckoned the Church of *Noſtre Dame*, the *Bourſe*, the *Town-houſe*, and the houſe of the *Eaſterlings*, or Eaſtern Merchants: well peopled, and of ſo great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richeſt *Empory* of the Chriſtian world: the Commodities here bought and ſold,

Machlyn.

amounting to more in one moneth, than that of *Venice* in two years. The cauſes of which ſudden growth, and increaſe of Trading, are ſaid to be theſe: 1. The two *Marts* holden here every year, either of them during ſix weeks, in which time no mans perſon could be arreſted, or his goods diſtrained. 2. The King of *Portugal* having in the year 1503. diverted the courſe of Merchandize from *Alexandria* and *Venice*, to the City of *Lisbon*; kept here his Factories, and ſent hither his Spices, and other *Indian* commodities: for which cauſe the Merchants, in the year 1516. forſook *Bruges* in *Flanders*, and ſetled here. And 3. many of the Nobility and Gentry, during the long and bloody Wars betwixt *France* and *Spain*, forſook their Country houſes, and repaired hither; by means whereof *Antwerp*, in a very little time, grew bigger by 3000 houſes than it had beeen formerly. But as the growth hereof was ſudden, ſo the fall ſenſible; occaſioned through the yoking of it with a *Citadel* by the D. of *Alva*, which made Merchants afraid to reſort any longer thither, as a place of little freedom, and leſs ſecurity: chiefly by blocking up the Haven, and intercepting the Trade at Sea, by the more powerful *Hollanders*, which hath removed this great Traffick to *Amſterdam*, and other Towns of their Country. So that now the chief ſupport of it is the reputation which it hath of being an *Imperial City*, the place of receipt for the Kings Revenues, and a Biſhops See founded here in the year 1559, which draweth hither ſome reſort of Lawyers and Church-men.

3. The *Signeurie* of *MACHLYN*, conſiſteth onely of that City, and a ſmall Territory of nine Villages adjoyning to it. The City ſeated on both ſides of the River *Dele*, which ebbeth and floweth to the Town, and a League above it: and running through the very midſt, maketh in it a number of ſmall Iſlands, to the great ornament and commodity of it. A goodly Town, containing ſeven Pariſh Churches, beſides the Cathedral, being the See of an Archbiſhop, founded here in the year 1559. Strong, in regard it may be eaſily drowned on all ſides; and of great wealth, by reaſon of the many *manufactures* of Linnen, great Artillery of Braſs and Iron, Bels, painted works, and others of like uſe and ornament. And being ſituate in a manner in the Center of *Brabant*, diſtant 4 Leagues from *Antwerp*, *Lovain*, and *Bruxels*, was made by *Charles* the *Warlike* (who loved the place) the ordinary ſeat of the great *Council* of *State*, to which *Appeals* are made from the other Provinces. But yet more beautiful in former times than it is at the preſent; the City being much defaced by firing 200 barrels of powder, *Anno* 1546. and by the ſackage of the *Spaniard*, by whom it was taken by force, *Anno* 1572. Moſt memorable at this time for a famous *Nunnery*, like to that of *Nivelle*, wherein are ſometimes 1600 Nunns; who when they pleaſe may leave their Cloiſter, and be married. A Town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State diſtinct: for which cauſe many women at the time of their Child-birth, uſe to lay down their bellies in ſome Villages of *Brabant*, that their Children may be capable of the priviledges and immunities of that Country. The principal of the Villages is named *Leeſt*, or *Heyſt*, pleaſantly ſeated on an Hill, the reſidue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages the Patrimony heretofore of the noble family of the *Bertholds*: which failing in the perſon of *Gualter*, ſlain in the battel of *Worancan*, by *John* Duke of *Brabant*, it fell the one half to the Biſhop of *Leige*, who ſold his moiety to *John* the ſecond Duke of *Brabant*; the other, to the Earl of *Gueldres*, who in the year 1333. ſold his part unto *Lewis* of *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*. But he ſold nothing but the title, *John* the third Duke of *Brabant* having ſeized upon it, and added it to his Eſtate: the occaſion of ſome quarrel betwixt thoſe Princes, compoſed by the marriage of that *Lewis*, with the Heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it ſelf, the antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Advatici*, and ſome part of the *Tungri*; accompted by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania ſecunda*; and by the *French*, a Province of the kingdom of *Eaſt-France*, or *Auſtraſia*; the Southern parts thereof towards *Hainault*, under the governance and command of theEarls of *Ardenne*; the northern parts, lying towards the Sea, and terribly infeſted with the depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*, committed to the care of ſome principal Officers, whom they called *Lords Wardens of the Marches*. *Theodebert* Son of *Theodorick* the firſt King of *Auſtraſia*, accompanied with *Utilo* a *Boiarian* Prince, having repulſed theſe common Robbers, obtained for *Utilo* of his Father, the Command of thoſe Countries, and poſſeſſion of a great part of them alſo, by the title of Lord Marqueſs of *Antwerp*; the fourth from whom called *Arnulph*, was the firſt Mayor of the Palace (of this houſe) to the Kings of *France*, made as it were hereditary unto his Succeſſors. By *Dagobert* the firſt, ſole King of the *French*, that part of this Country, which was under the Earls of *Ardenne* being taken from them; the whole eſtate was conferred on *Anſegiſus*, the Son of *Arnulph*, with the title of Duke of *Brabant*. The actions and atchievements of ſo many of them as were Mayors of the Palace, we have already ſeen when we were in *France*. The whole ſucceſſion follows here in the inſuing Catalogue of

The Marqueſſes of *ANTWERP*, and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the *German* or *Boiarian* Race.

1. *Utilo*, Son of *Theodore*, the firſt Duke, and Nephew of *Aldiagerius*, the laſt King of the *Boiarians*,
2. *Hugopert*, Son of *Utilo*.

563 3. *Aſopert*, the Son of *Hugopert*, and Huſband of *Plythilda*, Daughter of *Clotair* the firſt of *France*.

579 4. *Arnoldus*, the Son of *Aſopert*.

601 5. *Arnulph*, Son of *Arnoldus*, the firſt Mayor of the Palace of this family.

641 6. *Anſegiſus*, Son of *Arnulph*, Marqueſs of *Antwerp*, and Mayor of the Palace, by *Dagobert* the firſt, made Duke of *Brabant*.

679 7. *Pepin*, ſurnamed the *Fat*, Son of *Anſegiſus*, Succeſſor to his Father in his Honours, Offices, and States, and was herein ſucceeded by

714 8. *Charles*, the baſe Son of *Pepin*, for his valiant acts ſurnamed *Martel*, there

being no lawful iſſue of the Father living.

741 9 *Pepin* II. ſirnamed the *Short*, Son of *Charles Martel*, having managed the affairs of *France*, from the death of his Father, for the ſpace of ten years, uſurped the Kingdom and was ſolemnly crowned King at *Soiſſons* by *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, on *May day*, Anno 751. The Dukedom of *Brabant* returning by this means to the Crown of *France*, continued a Province of that Kingdom, till the diviſion of the *French* Empite among the Sons and Nephews of *Lewis* the *Godly*; when made a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*; not long before the fatal period of that Kingdom, having been many years before divided by the River *Meuſe*, betwixt the Emperours of *Germany*, and the Kings of *France*, (each taking to themſelves the Titles of Kings of *Lorrein*) it was by *Lotharius* the 3d. of *France*, in whoſe ſhare it lay, conferred on *Charles* his younger Brother, together with the title of Duke of *Brabant*. But indeed this Donation proved of little worth, the greateſt part hereof, together with the reſt of that part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, which of right belonged unto the *French*, being conquered by the Emperour *Otho* the 2d. and by him added to the Empire: And yet this alſo fell out in fine to the profit of *Charles*, who being Couzin German to this *Otho* the 2d. by the Lady *Gerburg* (ſiſter of *Otho* the firſt, and wife of *Lewis*, ſirnamed *Tranſmarine*, King of *France*, the Father of *Charles*) was by him inveſted into the great Dukedom of *Lorrein*, that Dukedom in the full latitude and extent thereof containing the modern Dukedoms of *Lorrein*, *Gulick*, and *Brabant*, with the Lands of *Luic*, with part of the Lands of *Triers* and *Colen*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Baſſe* (or *Low*) *Lorrein*, and as a memory thereof, there is a Court for *Criminal* and *Civil Cauſes* held at *Genappe* (one of the *Franks* or Market Towns of *Brabant*) called, *La Court de Lorrein*, to this day. An Eſtate firſt erected, as before is ſaid, by the Emperour *Otho* the 2d. who giving it to the ſaid *Charles* of *France*, reſerved out of it, as a Dower for his ſaid Aunt *Gerburg*, the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Bruxels*, *Nivelle*, and *Antwerp*, lying on the *Marches* of his Dominions, towards *France*; which (with reference perhaps to the old *Marquiſate* of *Antwerp*) he honoured with the Title of Marquiſate of the holy Empire, *Anno* 981. *Gerburg* the ſiſter, and after the death of her Brother *Otho*, the Heir of *Charles*, diſſeiſed of *Lorrein*, and the right of that fair Inheritance, by the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond (who gave it to *Geofrey* of *Ardenne*) ſucceeded her Grandmother, the firſt *Gerburg*, in the Town and Territories of *Lovain*, *Nivelle* and *Bruxels*; which ſhe conveyed in marriage to *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Reyner* in *Hainalt*, with the Title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Henry* his Son having made himſelf Maſter of *Antwerp* alſo, was by that means poſſeſſed of the whole *Marquiſate*, but ſtill retained the title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Godfrey* the 6. Earl having enlarged the bounds of his Dominions, by the conqueſt of the reſt of this Country, *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorrein*, being then abſent in the wars of the *Holy Land*, was by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth (whoſe Siſter he had married) created the firſt Duke of *Brabant*. *John*, the firſt Duke of that name, added hereunto the Dutchy of *Limbourg*; and *John* the third, the Signeurie of *Malines* or *Machlin*. How it became united to the Houſe of *Burgundy*, is to be ſeen in the enſuing Catalogue of

Machlyn.

The EARLS of *LOVAIN*, and DUKES of *BRABANT*, of the Race of *CHARLEMAGNE*.

1004 1 *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainalt*, made the firſt Earl of *Lovain*, in right of *Gerburg* his wife.

1015 2 *Henry*, the Son of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the *Marquiſate* of the *holy Empire*.

1046 3 *Lambert* II. Son of *Henry*.

1054 4 *Henry* II. Son of *Lambert* the ſecond.

1068 5 *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the ſecond.

6 *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third.

1096 7 *Godfrey*, ſirnamed *Barbatus*, brother of *Henry* the fourth, created the firſt Duke of *Brabant*, in right of his deſcent from *Charles* Duke of *Lorrein*, challenged the Country, and recovered it from the Houſe of *Ardenne*: and finally by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth, *Anno* 1108. Father of *Adelize*, the ſecond wife of our *Henry* the firſt, and of *Joſceline de Lovain*, the Progenitor of the (now) Earl of *Northumberland*.

1140 8 *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* II. Son of *Godfrey*.

1143 9 *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* III. Son of *Godfrey* the ſecond.

1183 10 *Henry* V. Son of *Godfrey* the third.

1230 11 *Henry* VI. ſirnamed the *Good*, Son of *Henry* the fifth.

1247 12 *Henry* VII. ſirnamed the *Magnanimous*, by whoſe marriage with *Sophia* daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth, Lantgrave of *Turingia*, the Lantgravedome of *Haſſia* came into this Houſe, inveſted on it in the perſon of *Henry* his Son, by the ſaid *Sophia*.

1260 13 *John* Son of *Henry* the ſeventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and deſtroyed the potent Family of the *Bertholds*: his younger brother *Henry*, by another *venter*, ſucceeding in *Haſsia*.

14 *John* II. Son of *John* the firſt, bought of the Biſhop of *Leige*, the moyety, or one half of *Machlyn*.

1312 15 *John* III. Son of *John* the ſecond, added the whole eſtate of *Machlyn* to the Dukedom of *Brabant*.

1355 16 *Joan*, the eldeſt daughter of *John* the third, married to *Wenceſlaus* the firſt Duke of *Luxembourg*, but died without iſſue.

Holland. 1406 17 *Anthony* of *Burgogne*, ſon of *Philip* the *Hardie*, and the Lady *Margaret* his wife, daughter of *Lewis de Malain* Earl of *Flanders*, and of *Margaret* the Siſter and Heir of *Joane*; after the death of the ſaid *Wenceſlaus* and *Joane* his wife, ſucceeding in the Dukedom of *Brabant*; his elder Brother *John*, giving way unto it, at the requeſt of their great Aunt *Joane*, the proprietary of it.

1415 18 *John* IV. ſon of *Anthony* by his firſt wife *Joan*, daughter of *Waleran* Earl of Saint *Paul*.

1426 19 *Philip*, the ſecond ſon of *Anthony*, and brother of *John* the 4th.

1430 20 *Philip* II. called the *Good*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son and Heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, elder brother of *Anthony*; on the death of his two Couſin Germans *John* and *Philip*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, as the direct heir of the Lady *Margaret*, wife of *Lewis de Malain*, and daughter of *John* the third, the laſt Duke of *Brabant* of the Houſe of *Lovain*. Of whoſe Succeſſours more in another place.

The Arms hereof are *Sable*, a Lion *Or*.

12 HOLLAND, 13. ZELAND, 14. WEST-FRISELAND.

Having thus ſpoken of thoſe Provinces which ſtill continue in ſubjection to the King of *Spain* (except ſome few towns in *Flanders* and *Brabant*, before mentioned;) let us next look on thoſe which have withdrawn their obedience from him; beginning firſt with *Holland*, and its Appendixes, as of more power and conſideration than all the reſt. Which though diſtinct Provinces, and acting in their ſeveral capacities at the preſent time: yet having been always under the command of the ſame Princes, they muſt be joyned together in the ſtory of them, but ſhall be ſeverally handled as to the *Corography*.

HOLLAND hath on the Eaſt, the *Zuider-See*, *Utrecht*, and ſome part of *Guelderland*; on the Weſt and North, the *German* Ocean; on the South, the Iſlands of *Zeland*, and ſome part of *Brabant*. So called, as ſome think, *quaſi Holt-land*; that is to ſay a woody Country; as others, *quaſi Hollow-land*, from the Boggs and Mariſhes and unſound footing on the ſame; and ſome will have it called ſo, *quaſi Hoy-land*, from the great quantity of Hay. But the learned *Junius* not reliſhing any of the three, conceives, that both this Country, and the Iſles of *Zeland*, being planted by ſome Colonies of *Danes*, and *Normans*, (at the time of the irruption of thoſe Northern Nations,) were called thus with reference to *Seland* and *Oeland* two Iſlands of the *Baltick* Sea out of which they came. The Reader hath good choice, and may pleaſe himſelf.

The Country for the moſt part lyeth very low, in ſo much that they are fain to fence it with Banks and *Ramparts* to keep out the Sea, and to reſtrain the Rivers within their bounds: ſo that in many places one may ſee the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulſed with thoſe Banks: and is with all ſo fenny and full of Mariſhes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable dikes and chanels, to make it firm land, and fit for dwelling; yet not ſo firm to bear either trees or much grain. But ſuch is the Induſtry of the People and the trade they drive, that having little or no *corn* of their own growth, they do provide themſelves elſewhere; not onely ſufficient for their own ſpending, but wherewith to ſupply their neighbours: having no Timber of their own, they ſpend more *timber* in building ſhips, and fencing their water-courſes, than any Countrey in the world; having no *wine*, they drink more than the people of the Countrey, where it groweth naturally; and finally, having neither *Flax* nor *Wooll*, they make more Cloth of both ſorts, than all the Countries in the world, except *France* and *England*.

The preſent Inhabitants are generally given to Sea-faring lives; ſo that it is thought that in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Weſt-Friſeland*, there are 2500 ſhips of war and burden. The women for the moſt part laborious in making Stuffs. Nay you will hardly ſee a Childe of four years of age, that is not kept to work, and made to earn its own living; to the great commendation of their Government. The greateſt of their natural Commodities is Butter and Cheeſe; of which beſides that infinite plenty which they ſpend in their own Houſes, and amongſt their Garriſons; they ſell as much unto other Countries, as comes to 10000 Crowns *per annum*. By which means, and by the greatneſs of their fiſh-trade ſpoken of before, they are grown ſo wealthy on the Land, and ſo powerful at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*; ſo now *Holland* is taken generally for all the *Provinces Confederated* in a league againſt the *Spaniard*.

The whole compaſs of it is no more than 180 miles, no part thereof being diſtant from the Sea, above three hours journey: and yet within that narrow Circuit, there are contained no fewer than 23 walled Towns, and 400 Villages: ſome ſcituate in the North, and others in *South-Holland*, as it ſtands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part hereof that lyeth next to *Zeland* and the middle chanel of the *Rhene* paſſing from *Utrecht* unto *Leiden*) the principal Towns are, 1. *Dort*, (in *Latine Dordrectum*) formerly the Staple for *Rheniſh* wines, a large, rich, and well peopled Town: antiently joyned to the firm Land, but in the year 1421. rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Iland; of great command upon the traffique of the *Maes*, and the *Wael*, upon whoſe confluence it ſtands; but of moſt note in theſe later times, for an *Aſſembly of Divines* out of divers Countries following *Calvins* Doctrine for condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Univerſal Grace and Predeſtination, *Anno* 1618. 2. *Gorichem*, ſituate on the *Wael*, where it meeteth with the *Linge*: a Town of great trade and riches, by reaſon of a daily Market of Cheeſe and Butter, brought hither in very great quantity. Beautified antiently with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a fair Church, from the Steeple whereof one may behold 22 walled Towns, beſides an infinite number of Villages. The Country is round about it, called by that People *Van Arckel*, or the land of *Hercules*, from an opinion that *Hercules* the *German* did there appoint his Camp; or rather from ſome Temple dedicated to him; in the place whereof the Lords of this tract, who from hence took the name of *Arckel*, (*Arcuſei* they are called in our *Latine* Writers) founded a Church unto the honor of the Virgin *Mary*, in the time of *Thierrie* the 2d Earl of *Holland*, by whom firſt ſettled in this Country. And here they flouriſhed as Lords of *Gorichem*, *Lerdum* and the parts adjoyning, till the year 1416 when falling to *John* L. of *Egmond*, by *Mary* his wife, daughter of *John* of *Arckellandt*, the laſt Lord hereof, and Mother of *Arnold* of *Egmond*, D. of *Gueldres*, It was by him ſold to *William* the ſixth, Earl of *Holland*, and ſo again united unto that Eſtate. 3. *Rotterdam*, ſeated on a dike or channel called the *Rotter*, not far from which, at a place named *Rempen* the *Leck*, one of the three main branches of the *Rhene*, falleth into the *Maes*: a ſtrong, fair and weltraded Port; the birth-place of the learned *Eraſmus*. 4. *Schoonhoven*, ſituate on the *Leck*, a fair Town, having a commodious Haven. 5. *Goude*, one of the ſix principal Towns of *Holland*, rich, and well fortified; ſeated on the River called *Yſſel*, which riſing about *Yſſel-Stein* ſpoken of anon, falleth into the *Leck* at a place called *Yſſelmond*, and therefore different from the branch of the *Rhene*, ſo called, which giveth name to *Overyſſel*. On the ſame River alſo ſtand, 6. *Oudwater*, and 7. *Yſſel-ſtein*, this laſt belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the firſt of great trade for making Cables and Cords for ſhipping. 8. *Leiden*, or *Lugdunum Batavorum*, an Univerſity, founded *Anno* 1564. The Town conſiſteth of 41 Iſlands, to which they paſſe partly by Boats, partly by Bridges, whereof there are 144, and of them 104 builded with Stone. Here is in this Town a Caſtle, ſaid to have been built by *Hengiſt* the *Saxon*, at his return out of *England*. And not far off ſtood the famous *Nunnerie* of *Rainsburg*, of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mentz* and *Nivelle*, before deſcribed, ſo liberally indowed, that 2000 Perſons did there daily receive relief. 9. *Vianen* on the *Leck*, a Siegneury diſtinct from *Holland*, pertaining antiently to the Lords of *Brederode*: And ſo was alſo, 10. *Heuſden*, a good old Town, once beautified with a fair Caſtle, and a goodly Territory, but belonging to the Earls of *Cleve* of which Houſe it had Lords of its own, as acknowledging no ſubjection to the Earls of *Holland*, from the year 850, or thereabouts, to the year 1290; at which time *Theodoric* the 9th of *Cleve*, at a merry meeting transferred the Soveraignty thereof to *Florence* Earl of *Holland*, of that name the fifth. Finally, having continued in the poſſeſſion of 20 Lords of that Family, on the expiration of that line, in the perſon of *John* the 9th dying without iſſue, *Anno* 1334 it was made a Member of this Earldom (after ſome ſharp diſputes with the Dukes of *Brabant*, claiming it by a reſignation of the laſt Lord *John*) by *William* of *Buvurin*, Earle of *Holland* and *Hainalt*, *Anno* 1361 or thereabouts. 11. *Lerdum*, upon the River *Linge*, which together with *Yſſel-Stein* before mentioned, fell unto *Philip* Prince of *Orange*, in right of his deſcent from the Earls of *Buren*. 12. *Delfe*, a Town of great trade for cloathing, large, and well-built, beautified with ſpacious ſtreets, and goodly Churches; the birthplace of that monſtrous Heretick *David George*, who called himſelf *King*, and *Chriſt immortal*. He fled with his Wife and Children, *Anno* 1544. to *Baſil*, where he ſet up this Doctrine: the points whereof were, 1. That the Law and the Goſpel were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to ſave ſuch as receive it. 2. That he was the true *Chriſt* and *Meſſias*. 3. That he had been till that preſent, kept in a place unknown to all the Saints: and 4. That he was not to reſtore the houſe of *Iſrael* by *death* or *tribulation*, but by *love* and *grace* of the Spirit. He dyed in the year 1556. and three days after, his doctrine was by them of *Baſil* condemned, his goods confiſcate, and his bones taken up and burned. He bound his Diſciples to three things, 1. To conceal his name; 2. Not to reveal of what condition he had been; and 3. Not to diſcover the *Articles* of his Doctrine to any man in *Baſil*.

In that part thereof which is called *North-Holland*, lying betwixt the middle chanel of the *Rhene*, and the *Zuider-See*, the Towns or Cities of moſt importance are, 1. *Alkmar*, encompaſſed with deep fens and mariſhes; a rich Town, in regard of the great plenty of Butter and Cheeſe, which is made about it, more than in any place of *Holland*; and famous for the defeat which the D. of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the *Low-Country* troubles, having with the loſſe of 20000 of his own men, forced *Harlem*, laid his ſiege round about this Town. Had he left any way for the Souldiers to have fled thence, the Town had been abandoned: but having invironed them round, he put them to ſuch a reſolution, or deſperation (chooſe you whether) that manfully they reſiſted three of his aſſaults; and in the end made him depart with great loſſe, as well of his Souldiers, as his reputation. 2. *Amſterdam*, a very fair Haven Town, where divers times at one tide, 1000 ſhips of all ſorts have been ſeen to go out and in: So truly ſaid a modern Poet.

> *Quod* Tagus, *atque* Hermus *vehit, &* Pactolus, *in unum*
> *Verè hunc congeſtum dixeris eſſe locum.*

> What *Tagus*, *Hermus*, and *Pactolus* bear,
> One would conjecture to be heap'd up here.

The People thereby made ſo rich, that if a Fleet of 300 ſail ſhould come into the Port, fraught with all kinde of commodities, in five or ſix dayes they would be ready to buy all the lading. Situate it is on the Gulph called the *Tie*, and the dike or chanel called *Amſtel*; whence it hath the name of *Amſteldam*, in Latine *Amſtelodunum*; built upon piles like *Venice*, and reſembling it in ſo many points, that it may juſtly be called the *Northern Venice*. Firſt fortified with Towers and Ramparts by *Giſebert of Amſtel*, about 300 years agone. But being burnt through the envy of its neighbours, it began to be walled, *Anno* 1482. Grown to this wealth ſince the diverting of the Trade from *Antwerp* hither, and for that cauſe inhabited by men of all Nations, and of all *Religions*; and thoſe not onely *tollerated*, and *connived* at in private, but openly and freely *exerciſed*, without any diſlike. A greater confuſion (in my mind) than that of *Babel*; this being of *Religion*, that of *Languages* only. 3. *Harlem*, on the Lake called *Harlem-meer*, the greateſt Town of all *Holland*, and the ſecond ſort for dignity; well built, and very pleaſantly ſituated amongſt many goodly meadows, near a delightful Foreſt, and round about environed with wealthy Villages; famous for the invention of printing, invented here; but perfected at *Mentz* in *higher Germany*; the firſt Book which was ever printed being *Tullies Offices*. 4. *Naerden* on the *Zuider See*, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, held of the Earles of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brunſwick* to whom it antiently belonged. 5. *Enchuiſen*, on the very point of the Gulph of *Zuider See*, oppoſite to *Friſeland*, from which not diſtant above two leagues. A town of great conſequence to the Prince of *Orange*, in the firſt revolting of theſe Countries from the King of *Spain*. For ſiding with him in that war, and ſtanding conveniently to obſtruct the paſſages by Sea, unto *Amſterdam*, it compelled that City, in ſhort time, by ſtopping all ſupply of victuals and other neceſſaries, to yield it ſelf unto the Prince. 6. *Hoorn*, on the ſame Gulf alſo, a rich Town with a very good Haven; and of ſo great ſtrength by reaſon of the multitude of Dikes and Chanels which are round abound it, that it ſeems impregnable. 7. *Edam*, upon the ſame Gulph (of *Zuider See*) remarkable for the great number of ſhips which are built yearly in it: and an incredible number of the beſt *Holland Cheeſes* made in the Country round about it. 8. *Medemblick* on the Ocean, ſeated in the beſt Country of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattel: unwalled, but enjoyning all the priviledges which a walled Town hath, and fortified with a right ſtrong Caſtle.

The chief of the *Holland* Villages is the *Hague*, or *Graven Hague*, in Latine *Haga Comitis*, becauſe formerly the Court and reſidence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautiful Palace, founded by Earl *William* King of the *Romans*, and therein a chief and excellent Library gathered together by *John Haire* a *Canon Regular* of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the fifth. In former times the reſidence of the *Council* for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commiſſioners or *Delegates* of the *confederate Provinces*, called by the name of the *States-General*. Now much increaſed in buildings, of what it was, and yet ſo great in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, that it then contained 2000 houſholds. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as deſiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Europe*, than the ſecond City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Brederode*, 4. *Waſſenar*, which antiently gave names to three noble Families; of which none ſo illuſtrious and renowned as that of *Egmond*, deſcended lineally from *Radbold*, ſon of *Adgillis* the King of *Frizons*, the firſt Lord of *Egmond*, who died, *Anno* 791. Advanced by marriages to the Dukedom of *Guelderland*; the Signeuries of *Yſſel-ſtein* and *Buren*, and finally made Earls of *Egmond*, by *Maximilian* the Emperor, *Anno* 1592. But both this Houſe and that of *Waſſenar* being now extinct, there is none left but that of *Brederode*, for ought I can learn. Near to the laſt ſtood the famous Fortreſs called *Arx Britannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great Battel upon this Shore. For making ſhew of a voyage into *Britain*, to ſubdue that Iſland, he borded his Galleys, embatteled his Souldiers, cauſed his Trumpets ſound, gave them the Signal; and then commanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortreſſe was at the fall of the *Roman* Empire; overwhelmed by the Sea; the ruines whereof at a dead low water are ſtill to be ſeen.

Beſides theſe places on the firm Land or *Continent*, there are ſome Iſlands, which pertain to the States of *Holland*, called by the general name of *Voorn*, becauſe ſituate directly againſt *Holland*; *Voorn* ſignifying as much as *before*, or in old *Engliſh Beforne*: but known by their diſtinct and more proper names of 1. *Somerſdike*, 2. *Gawrode*, 3. *Pierſchille*, ſo called of their principal Towns: and 4. *Voorn*, ſpecially ſo named, the chief of them all, being of a fat and fruitful ſoyl, and plentiful of moſt ſorts of grain. The principal Towns whereof are 1. *Briel* (which we call the *Brill* a ſtrong Town, and the firſt that revolted againſt the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1572. *Cautionary* to the *Engliſh*, with the Town of *Fluſhing*; choſen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the paſſage to *Gertrudenburg* and the reſt of *Brabant*; as alſo to *Delfe*, *Dort*, and *Roterdam*; the greateſt Town of trade in the South of *Holland*. 2. *Gerulit*, a ſmall Town, but having juriſdiction over many Villages. There are alſo on the North-ſide of *Holland*, the Iſles of *Wyerengeh*, and *Texel*; of which little memorable, but that the laſt is furniſhed with a ſafe and capacious Bay for receipt of ſhipping.

One ſpecial accident concerning *Holland*, I cannot over-paſs in ſilence, namely, how *Margaret* Counteſſe of *Hennenberg*, and ſiſter to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 years, was delivered at one birth of 365 Children, the one half Males, the other half Females, the odde one an *Hermaphrodite*; all Chriſtned at the Church of *Laſdune*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, in two Baſins: ſtill to be ſeen in the ſaid Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utrecht*; all which immediately after died and with them the Mother.

The Armes of *Holland* of it ſelf, are as a State diſtinct *Or*, a Lion *Gules*.

ZELAND conſiſteth of ſeven Iſlands, the remainder of 18 which the Sea hath ſwallowed; and in them 300 inhabited Towns. Severed from *Flanders* with the left branch or arm of the *Scheld*, which they called *Honte*; and on the Eaſt, from *Brabant*, with the right branch of the ſaid River, which ſtill keeps his name; on the North, from *Holland*, with the Gulph called the *Flack*; and on the Weſt, with the main Ocean, from the Kingdom of *England*. So called, as ſome ſay, *quaſi*, Sea and *Land*; but as *Junius* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Iſland of *Denmark*, as before was noted.

The

Zeland.

The Country generally more fruitful than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent Corn, plenty of *Coriander*, and abundance of *Mader*, uſed in dying; the ſoil alſo very rich in paſture, but low and mariſhy, which makes the Air to be very unhealthy; and the whole deſtitute both of freſh water, and wood, the want of which laſt is ſupplied with coal out of *England* and *Scotland*, or by turf digged amongſt themſelves, but very ſparingly for fear of weakning the Sea-banks. The whole containeth 8 Towns and 100 Villages. The Iſlands which remain, are commonly divided into the Weſtern and the Eaſtern, according as they lie with reference to the River *Scheld*. The Weſtern Iſlands four in number, that is to ſay, 1. *Walcheren*, (*Valachria* in *Latine*) lying to the South-weſt of *Sluys* in *Flanders*, the richeſt and moſt populous of all this Province, in compaſs 10 *Dutch*, or 40 *Italian* miles. The principal Towns of which are, 1. *Middleburg*, ſeated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the ſtreets ſpacious, the houſes and Churches well built: inhabited by wealthy Merchants, and induſtrious Tradeſmen; and of late times (ſince the removing of the *Engliſh* Trade from *Antwerp*) a moſt flouriſhing *Emporie*. So called, becauſe built in the midſt of the Iſlands; or becauſe built (as ſaith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named, in honour of his Grandfather *Metellus*, and by him called *Metelli Burgum*. 2. *Fluſhing*, of great note for its good Port, and invincible ſtrength. One of the firſt Towns which the *Low-Countrymen* took from the Spaniards, by the diligence of *Voorſt* a Seaman, and *Monſieur de Berland*, then the Bayliff thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the *Engliſh*, as a Town of Caution: the firſt Governour of it being the renowned *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the key of the *Netherlands*, without whoſe licenſe no ſhip can paſs either to or from the City of *Antwerp*, inſomuch that if the Duke of *Alva* in the beginning of his government had beſtowed that pains in fortifying this and others of the Maritim Towns, as he did in the ſtrengthning *Antwerp*, and ſome mid-land Cities; he had in all probability, hindred the remedileſs revolt of theſe flouriſhing Countries. Not far off ſtandeth the Fort called the *Rammekins*, once cautionary to the *Engliſh* alſo, together with the *Brill*, the chief Town in the Iſle of *Voorn*, (an Iſle of *Holland*) all three being taken from the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1572. made cautionary to Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno* 1585. and finally ſurrendred by King *James* to the *States* united, *Anno* 1616. *Robert* Lord *Liſle* (afterwards created Earl of *Leiceſter*) the Brother to Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governour of *Fluſhing*. 3. *Rame*, or *Armynygden*, an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodlieſt and moſt frequented Havens in all the World: out of which one may ſometimes ſee 500 ſail of ſhips of great burden, ſet forward in their voyages to ſeveral parts. 4. *Vere*, or *Camfere*, ſeated in the North part of the Iſland; which once gave a title to a Marqueſſe, and from the which the noble Families of the *Veres* (now, and of long time Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that ſo many of that Family have ventured their Eſtates and Lives in the Wars of this Country, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their Primitive Parent, from whence tranſplanted into *England*.

2. *SOUTH-BEVERLAND*, ſituate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greateſt of the Iſles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 Dutch miles in compaſs, but now much diminiſhed by the rage and fury of the Sea; by which the Town and Signeury of *Borſule*, with all the Countries round about it, was ſwallowed up, *Anno* 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods, and pleaſant thickets, full of Fowl and wild Beaſts for hawking and hunting. Chief Towns here are, 1. *Romerſwal*, ſeated on the Eaſt, towards *Bergen ap Some*, ſevered at the ſame time from the reſt of the Iſland, and made an Iſland of it ſelf; defended with continual charge from following the ſad fate of the Town of *Borſule*. 2. *Goes*, or *Tergoes*, on the Northern Coaſts, a ſtrong Town, well priviledged, and the only walled Town in all the Iſland.

3. *NORTH-BEVERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Iſle of *Schowen*, in former times eſteemed the Paradiſe of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town called *Chort Cheen*; but ſo deſtroyed by the Sea-breach ſpoken of before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WOLFERSDIKE*, lying between the two *Beverlands*, the ſmalleſt of the *Weſtern* Iſlands, as having in it no more than two Villages, but repleniſhed with good ſtore of Paſture.

And theſe are all which fall in the diviſion of the *Weſtern* Iſlands, ſo called, becauſe they lie Weſtward of the River *Scheld*; as thoſe which they call the *Eaſtern* Iſlands, on the Eaſt thereof. Of which laſt there are three in number:

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the Northweſt of *Holland*, ſo near unto *North-Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one ſhore to the other: but now the Sea hath ſet them at greater diſtance. It containeth in compaſs ſix Dutch miles. Chief Towns wherein are 1. *Sirickzed*, the antienteſt Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with Beach, yet ſtill reputed for the ſecond Town of all the Province: the whole Trade thereof conſiſting in Salt and *Mader*, of which it yields good plenty. Moſt famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius*, that renowned Philoſopher and Phyſician. 2. *Brewers-Haven*, inhabited only by Fiſhermen, not elſe remarkable.

2. *DUVELAND*, ſo named from the multitude of *Doves* or Pigeons, ſituate between *Schowen* and *Tolen*, in compaſs about four Dutch miles; hath no good Town in it, but only Country Villages, and Gentlemens Farms ſurrounded by the Sea, *Anno* 1530. but by the induſtry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Burgundy*, and Lord of *Boforeres* in *Flanders*, recovered again; and at the exceſſive charge of the people hitherto preſerved.

3. *TOLEN*, ſo called from the chief Town of the Iſland, where the Earls *Toll* was wont to be paid, whence it had the name; is ſituate over againſt the North-weſt of *Brabant*, from which diſ-

joyned

Weſt-Friſeland.

joyned by a narrow Creek or Arm of the Sea: the ſecond Town of note being called S. *Martin Dike*, walled, but not otherwiſe conſiderable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Country of *Zeland*, are the Arms thereof; being *Or*, a Lion *Gules*, riſing out of a Sea, wavie, *Argent* and *Azure*.

WEST-FRISELAND hath on the Eaſt *Groyning-land*, and a part of *Weſtphalen* in High *Germany*; on the South *Over-Yſſel*, and the *Zuider-See*; on the North and Weſt, the main Ocean. The Country generally mooriſh and full of Fens, unapt for Corn, but yielding great ſtore of Paſturage: which mooriſhneſs of the ground makes the air very foggy and unhealthy; nor have they any fewell wherewith to rectifie it (except in that part of it which they call *Seven Wolden*) but Turf and Cow-dung, which addes but little to the ſweetneſs of an unſound air. Nor are they better ſtored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Country, but that of *Leuwars*; the want of which is ſupplyed by great chanels in moſt places, which do not only drain the Marſhes, but ſupply them with water. Which notwithſtanding, their Paſtures do afford them a good breed of Horſes fit for ſervice; plenty of Beeves both great and ſweet, the beſt in *Europe* next theſe of *England*: and thoſe in ſuch a large encreaſe, that their Kine commonly bring two Calves, and their Ewes three Lambs at a time.

The Country divided into three parts. In the firſt part called *WESTERGOE*, lying towards *Holland*, the principal Towns are 1. *Harlingen*, an Haven Town upon the Ocean, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Hindeloppen* on the ſame Coaſt alſo. 3. *Staveren* an *Hanſe Town*, oppoſite to *Enchuiſen* in *Holland*; the Town decayed, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle which ſecures the Haven. 4. *Franeker*, a new Univerſity, or a *Schola Illuſtris*, as they call it. 5. *Sneck*, in a low and inconvenient ſituation; but both for largeneſs and beauty the beſt in this part of the Province, and the ſecond in eſteem of all the Country. In *OSTERGO*, or the Eaſt parts lying towards *Groyning-land*, the Towns of moſt note are 6. *Leuwarden*, ſituate on the hinder *Leuwars*, the prime Town of *Weſt-Friſeland*, and honored with the ſupreme Court and *Chancery* hereof, from which there lyeth no *appeal*: a rich Town, well built, and ſtrongly fortified. 7. *Doccum*, bordering upon *Groyning*, the birth-place of *Gemma Friſius*. In *SEVEN-WOLDEN*, or the Country of ſeven Foreſts, ſo called from ſo many ſmall Foreſts joyning near together, is no Town of note, being long time a Woodland Country, and not well inhabited till of late. The number of the Walled Towns are 11. in all; of the Villages or Burroughs 345.

To this Province belongeth the Iſle *Schelink*, the ſhores whereof are plentifully ſtored with *Dog-fiſh*, took by the Inhabitants in this manner. The men of the Iland attire themſelves with beaſts skins, and then fall to dancing; with which ſport the Fiſh being much delighted, make out of the waters towards them; nets being pitched preſently betwixt them and the water. Which done, the men put off their diſguiſes, and the frighted Fiſh haſtning towards the Sea, are caught in the toyls.

Touching the *Friſons*, heretofore poſſeſſed of this Country, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Eaſt-Friſeland*, poſſeſſed alſo by them, and ſtill continuing in the quality of a *Free-Eſtate*, governed by its own Laws and Princes: here only taking notice that the Arms of this *Friſeland* are *Azure*, ſemy of Billets *Argent*, two Lions *Or*.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces, were the *Batavi*, and *Caninefates*, inhabiting the Iſland of the *Rhene*, ſituate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *Wael*, which now containeth *South-Holland Utrecht*, and ſome part of *Gueldres*; the *Friſii* dwelling in *Weſt-Friſeland* and the North of *Holland*; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Iſles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the *Bald*, theſe Countries being almoſt unpeopled by the *Norman* Piracies, were given to *Thierrie*, ſon of *Sigebert* a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the title of Earl; his ſucceſſors acknowledging the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*, till the time of *Arnulph* the 4th. Earl, who atturned *Homager* to the Empire. In *John* the 2d. they became united to the Houſe of *Hainalt*; and in *William* the 3d. to that of *Bavaria*; added to the Eſtates of the Dukes of *Burgundie* in the perſon of the Duke *Philip* the *Good*, as appeareth by this ſucceſſion of

The EARLS of *HOLLAND*, *ZELAND*, and LORDS of *WEST-FRISELAND*.

863 1 *Thierrie* or *Theodorick* of *Aquitain*, the firſt Earl, &c.
903 2 *Thierrie* II. ſon of *Thierrie* 1.
3 *Thierrie* the III. the ſon of *Theodorick* the 2d.
988 4 *Arnulph*, who made firſt this Eſtate to be held of the Empire; ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*. From *Sigefride* the ſecond ſon of this *Arnulph* came the Lords of *Brederode*, advanced by marriages to the Signeuries of *Geneppe*, and *Viallen*, and many other fair Eſtates both in *Brabant* and *Holland*.
993 5 *Thierrie* IV. ſon of *Arnulph*.
1039 6 *Thierrie* V. ſon of *Theodorick* the 4th.
1048 7 *Florence*, brother of *Thierrie* the 5th.
1062 8 *Thierrie* VI. ſon of *Florence*, in whoſe minority the Eſtate of *Holland* was uſurped by *Godfrey le Boſſu* Duke of *Lorrein*, by ſome accompted of as an Earl hereof.
1092 9 *Florence* II. ſurnamed the Fat, ſon of *Thierrie* the 6th.
1123 10 *Thierrie* VII. who tamed the ſtomachs of the *Friſons*.
1163 11 *Florence* III. a companion of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*.

Utrecht and *Over-Yſſell.*

1190 12. *Thierrie*, Son to *Florence* the third.

1203 13. *William*, the Brother of *Thierrie*, and Earl of *Eaſt-Friſeland*, which Country he had before ſubdued, ſupplanted his Neece *Ada* his Brothers Daughter; but after her deceaſe, dying without iſſue, ſucceded in his own right unto the Eſtate.

1223 14. *Florence* IV. Son of *William*.

1235 15. *William* II. Son of *Florence* the fourth, elected and crowned King of the *Romans*; ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*.

1255 16. *Florence* the V. the firſt, as ſome write, who called himſelf Earl of *Zeland*: the title to thoſe Iſlands formerly queſtioned by the *Flemings*, being relinquiſhed to him on his marriage with *Beatrix*, the Daughter of *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*.

1296 17. *John*, the Son of *Florence* the fifth, ſubdued the rebellious *Friſons*; the laſt of the male iſſue of *Thierre* of *Aquitain*.

EARLS of HAINALT, HOLLAND, &c.

1300 18. *John* of *Aveſnes*, Earl of *Hainalt*, Son of *John* of *Aveſnes*, Earl of *Hainalt*, and of the Lady *Aleide*, Siſter of *William* the ſecond, and Daughter of *Florence* the fourth, ſucceeded as next Heir in the Earldom of *Holland*, &c.

1305 19. *William* III. ſurnamed the Good, Father of the Lady *Philippa*, Wife of our *Edward* the third.

1337 20. *William* IV. of *Holland*, and the ſecond of *Hainalt*, ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*.

1346 21. *Margaret*, Siſter and Heir of *William* the fourth, and eldeſt Daughter of *William* the third; married unto *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Emperour of the *Germans*, forced to relinquiſh *Holland* unto *William* her ſecond Son, and to content her ſelf with *Hainalt*.

1351 22. *William* V. ſecond Son of *Lewis* and *Margaret*, (his eldeſt Brother *Steven* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*) in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Co-heir of *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*, ſucceeeded in the Earldom of *Leiceſter*.

1377 23 *Albert* the younger Brother of *William* the fifth, fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Friſons*. Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c.

1404 24. *William* VI. Earl of *Oſternant*, and by that name admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the ſecond, eldeſt Son of *Albert*.

1417 25. *Jaqueline*, only Daughter of Earl *William* the ſixth, firſt married to *John* the fourth, Duke of *Brabant*, the Son of *Anthony* of *Burgogne*; from whom divorced under colour of Conſanguinity, ſhe was married after to *Humfrey* Duke of *Glouceſter*, and then to *Frank* of *Borſelles*, a private Gentleman: being unworthily handled by Duke *John* of *Burgundy*, ſurrendred her Eſtates to Duke *Philip* the Good.

26. *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of Earl *William* the ſixth, and Daughter of *Albret*, Earls of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. ſucceeded on the reſignation of the Lady *Jaqueline*, his Couſin Germain, tranſporting theſe Eſtates to the Houſe of *Burgundy*; his Succeſſors we ſhall meet with ſhortly in another place.

15. UTRECHT. 16. OVER-YSSELL.

THe Biſhoprick of *UTRECHT*, I mean the temporal Juriſdiction and Eſtate thereof, contained once all that tract of ground which now makes up the Provinces of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſell*, and *Groining*. But *Groining* was long ſince diſmembred. *Utrecht* and *Over-Yſſell* remaining parts thereof till the year 1528. when added to the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, by *Charles* the fifth.

UTRECHT hath on the Eaſt, *Guelderland*; on the Weſt, North, and South, environed with *Holland*. The Country very fruitful, much dryer than *Holland*, and ſo fitter for all ſorts of grain. It containeth 70 Villages, and 5 walled Towns; that is to ſay, 1. *Wick* at *Duerſteed*, ſituate on the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, where it diverts into the *Leck*; well built, and fortified antiently with a good Caſtle; ſuppoſed to be the *Batavoducum* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, the manſion at that time of the ſecond *Legion*. 2. *Rhenen*, upon the ſame branch or Chanel, whence it hath the name; about which is digged abundance of turf for fewel. 3. *Amesfort* on the River *Ems*, (called in Latine *Amiſus*) a fair Town, and well peopled. 4. *Montfort*, upon the *Yſſell*, pleaſantly ſeated, and of great ſtrength, as being antiently a frontier Town againſt the *Hollanders*. 5. *Utrecht*, ſituate on the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, firſt called *Antonina*, from one of the *Antonines* of *Rome*, but *Dagobert* King of *France* gave it the name of *Trajectum* (or *Ultrajectum*, we now call it *Utrecht*) becauſe there was at that time the common Ferry over the River. The Town large, beautiful, and very ſumptuouſly built, having in it many goodly Churches, of which 5 were antiently Collegiate; beſides two famous Monaſteries of noble Women, ſuch as thoſe ſpoken of elſewhere: the private Houſes well contrived, moſt of them having goodly Cellars, vaulted with wonderful Art and Skill, to which the people may reſort in all times of danger. Sometimes the Seat-Royal of *Radbold*, King of the *Friſons*, then of the Biſhops; honoured of old with a *Juridical Reſort* for the parts adjoyning, and now the principal of this Province. A City, ſo miraculouſly ſeated amongſt walled Towns, that a man may go from hence in one day, to any one of 50 walled Towns or Cities, thence equally diſtant, or to any one of the 26 Towns to Dinner, and come home to bed.

Over-Yſſell, and Guelder-land.

OVER-YSSELL, in *Latine*, *Tranſiſulana*, ſo named from its ſituation beyond the *Yſſell*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt, with *Zuider-See*; on the North, with *Weſt-Friſeland*; on the South, with *Guelderland*. The Country very plain, and without Hills, but wet, and mooriſh, affording excellent good Paſturage, and not defective in Corn. Divided into three parts, that is to ſay, *Tuent*, confining upon *Weſtphalen*; *Yſſelland* on the River *Yſſell*, and *Drent* beyond the River *Vecht*; in all which are contained 11 Towns and 100 Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Deventer*, on the River *Yſſell*, ſtrong and well fortified, and withall beautifull and well peopled; an *Hanſe town*, and the chief of all this Province: firſt taken for the States by the Earl of *Leiceſter*, then Governour of thoſe Countries for Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno* 1586 treacherouſly re-yielded to the *Spaniard* by Sir *William Stanley*; but in the year 1590. again recovered by the States. 2. *Swoll*, ſtanding on a little River which runnes into the *Vidre*, anciently fortified with a double ditch, and very ſtrong ramparts: an *Hanſe town*, as is alſo 3. *Campen*, ſituate on the left ſhore and fall of the *Yſſell* into the *Zuider-See*; a fair and large Town, and of very great ſtrength by reaſon of thoſe inacceſſible mariſhes amongſt which it is ſituate. Theſe three are in that part hereof which is called *Yſſelland*, and by ſome *Saland*, by whom (erroneouſly) ſuppoſed to be the Country of the antient *Salii*. In that part hereof which is called *Tuent*, we have the Towns of 4. *Oldenſel*, 5. *Enſchede*, 6. *Delden*, 7. *Almeloo*; of which little memorable. And in that of *Drent*, the Town and Caſtle of *Vallenhoven*, ſtanding upon the *Zuider-See*, well ſerved with all ſorts of victuals: for which cauſe made the ordinary reſidence of the *Governor* and *ſupream Councel* for the whole Province.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe two Provinces, were ſome parts of the *Batavi* and *Friſii minores* for that of *Utrecht*; the *Bructeri*, and (as ſome ſay) the *Salii* in *Over-Yſſell*. Both Provinces belonging antiently to the Epiſcopal See of *Utrecht*, founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, who endowed it with great Lands and Territories, the firſt Biſhop being *Willibald* an *Engliſhman*, who converted theſe parts to *Chriſtianity*. His Succeſſors grew to ſo great power, that they were able to bring 40000 men into the field, and with great courage did maintain their Eſtate and Patrimony, againſt the incroaching Earls of *Holland*. But at the laſt, having continued for the ſpace of 900 years, *Henry* of *Bavaria* Biſhop hereof being extremely diſtreſſed with warr by the Duke of *Gueldres*, and driven out of the City of *Utrecht* by his own ſubjects, (perhaps upon ſome humor of *Reformation*) alienated all the *temporalties* of his Biſhoprick to *Charles* the fifth, *Anno* 1527. And the next year, the *Imperialiſts* by one of the factions were let into *Utrecht*; at what time both the *Eſtates* of the Country, and Pope *Clement* the 7th. confirmed the *Alienation* made by the Biſhop. After which ſolemn acts of theirs, the Emperour cauſed himſelf to be inveſted in this Eſtate by the *States* of the Empire, (for *Utrecht* was of old an *Imperial Fief*,) and for the better government and adminiſtration of it, divided it into two Provinces, as it ſtill continueth. But what this Biſhop loſt in power, his ſucceſſors not long after gained in title, the Biſhop of *Utrecht* being made an Archbiſhop or *Metropolitan*, *Anno* 1561. but by reaſon of the change of *Religion* which was then working, and the falling off of theſe Countries, which ſoon after followed, he had but little joy in his new preferment.

17. *GUELDERLAND*. 18. *ZUTPHEN*, and 19. *GROINING*.

THe *Dukedom* of *Guelderland*, at ſuch time as it was firſt taken in by *Charles* the fifth, contained under it, the Dutchy of *Guelders* properly and ſpecially ſo called, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Town and *Signeurie* of *Groining*: held by diſtinct titles, and governed, ever ſince their union with the *Belgick* Provinces, as diſtinct eſtates.

GUELDERLAND, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Cleveland*, and the Earledom of *Zutphen*; on the Weſt, with *Holland* and *Utrecht*; on the North, with *Over-Yſſell*, and the *Zuider-See*; and on the South, with *Brabant*, and the Land of *Gulick*. The Country flat, having few Hills in it, but many pleaſant and commodious woods, eſpecially that called *Echterwalt*; of Corn and Cattel very fruitfull.

The whole Country is generally divided into two parts: 1. The *Veluwe*; contained within the *Zuider See*, the middle channel of the *Rhene*, and the *Yſſell*; the barrenner of the two, and the worſe inhabited, the people hereof preferring health before wealth, as in other places, but affording a more pure air, and a pleaſanter dwelling than the other, the woods and forreſts well repleniſhed with moſt kinds of game. 2. The *Betuwe*, (ſo called of the *Batavi*, who poſſeſſed theſe parts) intercepted betwixt the ſaid middle channel of the *Rhene* and the *Wael*, exceedingly fruitfull in Corn, and of ſo excellent paſturage for the feeding of Cattel, that in the year 1570. there was a *Guelderland* Bull ſold in *Antwerp*, which weighed 3200. pounds.

In both diviſions (not reckoning in the County of *Zutphen*) are contained 300 Villages, and 16 walled towns, beſides ſome fortified of late ſince the warres began. The chief whereof are 1. *Nimmegent* (in *Latine*, *Noviomagus*) an *Imperial City*, ordained by *Charles* the Great to be one of the three *Seiges* of the Empire for theſe outer parts; the other two being *Theonville* in *Luxembourg*, and *Aix* or *Aken* in the land of *Gulick*. And as a Town *Imperial* it had antiently the priviledge of *coyning* money: for which and other freedoms or immunities indulged unto it, the people did no other ſervice to the Emperors, then once a year to ſend a man to *Aix* or *Aquiſgrane* with a Glove full of Pepper. But the Town being ſold to the *Gueldrois* by *William* Earl of *Hainalt* and King of the *Romans*, for 21000 marks of Silver, *Anno* 1248. the power of *coynage* fell to thoſe Princes, and yet the Town was brought

Zutphen.

to do better ſervice, than formerly it had done at *Aken*. The Town high mounted on the top of an Hill, the *Wael*, which is there large and deep, running at the foot of it, rich, great, and populous, having beſides the modern fortifications an antient Caſtle, with ſo good a proſpect, that from thence one may behold the beſt part of the Country; built, as ſome ſay, by *Julius Cæſar*, to command thoſe parts. Under the Juriſdiction of it, are 2. *Tiel*. 3. *Bomel*, two walled Towns, both ſituated on the *Wael*, both ſtrong, and having many rich Villages under their command; and 4. *Ghent*, on the *Wael*, alſo, an unwalled Town, but having all the privileges which the walled Towns have. Not far off, at the firſt meeting of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, ſtands the ſtrong Fort of S. *Andrews*, raiſed by the Arch-Duke *Albert* to command the paſſage of thoſe Rivers; but in the year 1600. taken in by *Maurice* Count of *Naſſaw* (after Prince of *Orange*) and ever ſince garriſoned by the *States* to ſecure that paſſage. 5. *Rivermond*, ſeated on the mouth of the *Ruer*, where it falleth into the *Maes*; a beautifull and well-peopled City, ſtrong by Art and Nature, and ſeated in a fruitfull Country: heretofore of the Dioceſe of *Leige* (as *Nimmegen* antiently of *Colen*) but made a See Epiſcopal by King *Philip* the ſecond, *An*. 1559. This is the ſecond *Capital* City of *Guelderland*, and hath under the Juriſdiction of it, 6. *Venlo*, a ſtrong Town on the *Maes*, in which the Duke of *Cleve* yielded himſelf to *Charles* the fifth, *Anno* 1543. 7. *Gueldres*, heretofore of ſuch reputation that it gave name to all the Country, and well it doth deſerve to do ſo ſtill; being the only Town in all this Dukedom, which neither firſt nor laſt hath been won by the *Hollanders*, but ſtill preſerved themſelves in their obedience to their natural Princes. 8. *Strael*, or *Straelen*, a well fortified piece; but which according to the chances of War, hath oft changed its maſters. 9. *Arnhem*, the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*, and in thoſe times the manſion of the tenth *Legion*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, not above a mile from the great Channel, which *Druſus* to keep his Souldiers from idleneſs cauſed them to dig, to let the waters of the *Rhene*, into thoſe of the *Yſſel*; called therefore by the ancients *Foſſa Druſiana*, by the Moderns *Yſſel-Dort*. The Town large and well-built; the ordinary reſidence heretofore of the Dukes of *Guelderland*, who had here their Chancery, and other ſupreme Courts of Juſtice. This is the third *Capital* City of *Gueldres* (antiently of the Dioceſe of *Utrecht*) and hath under the Juriſdiction of it, beſides divers Villages. 10. *Wagheninghen* on the *Rhene*, the ſame which *Tacitus* calls *Vada*. 11. *Harderwick* on the *Zuider-See*, burnt to the ground, *Anno* 1503. but ſince re-edified, and now more ſtrong and beautifull than ever formerly. 12. *Hattem* upon the *Yſſel*, a good Town of War, but not elſe obſervable.

Within the limits of this Dukedom ſtands the Town and County of *Culembergh*, erected into a County by King *Philip* the ſecond, by reaſon of the fair Territory which belonged unto it: formerly held in Fee of the Dukes of *Guelderland*, but otherwiſe not reckoned as a Member of it. 2. The Town and Earldom of *Buren*, ſituate on the River *Ringhe*, having a ſtrong Caſtle antiently, and a goodly Territory, holden immediatly of the Empire, as a *Fief Imperial*. Firſt made an Earldom in the perſon of *Frederick* Lord of *Egmond*, brothers ſon to *Arnold* of *Egmond*, the ſixth Duke of *Guelders*, created Earl of *Buren* by *Maximilian* the firſt, *Anno* 1492. which *Frederick* was Grandfather of the valiant *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, who died *Anno* 1549. after whoſe death it fell at laſt to *Philip* of *Naſſaw*, eldeſt ſon of *William* Prince of *Orange*, and of *Anne* the daughter and Heir of the ſaid *Maximilian*, upon the death of the ſaid *Anne*, *Anno* 1551.

ZUTPHEN, accompted formerly for the fourth *Capital* City of *Guelderland*, now a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt, with that part of *Guelderland*, which is called the *Velluwe*; on the North, with *Over-yſſel*; on the South, with *Cleveland*. It containeth 8. walled Towns, beſides many Villages; that is to ſay, 1. *Doeticum*, ſtanding on the old *Yſſell*, riſing out of *Weſtphalen*. 2. *Doesburg*, where the old *Yſſell* falleth into the new *Yſſell*, or the trench called *Foſſa Druſiana*, communicating thereunto its name. 3. *Brookhurſt*, a County of it ſelf, which antiently had its particular Governour. 4. *Lochen* upon the River *Berkell*. 5. *Tſheerenbergue*, a Town and County. 6. *Groll*, taken by the Prince of *Orange* for the States Confederate, *An*. 1627. 7. *Bredervord*, a Town of War, and ſubject to the change of Maſters, as ſuch places are. 8. *Zutphen*, or *Zuidſen*, ſo called of the Southern ſituation of it amongſt the Fennes, on the right ſhore of the *Yſſell*, where it receiveth in it the River *Berkel*, which runs through the Town. A Town indifferently well built, as well for private as publick edifices; a diſtinct State in *Civil* matters, but in *Spiritual* ſubject (in former times) to the Biſhop of *Munſter*: a thing obſervable, and not be paralleld elſewhere, that the four chief Towns and quarters of one Province only, ſhould appertain (as here in *Guelderland*) to four ſeveral *Dioceſes*. Of which there may ſome reaſon be aſſigned for *Zutphen*, in regard it is a State more antient than that of *Guelderland* it ſelf, and not depending antiently on the fortunes of it: united to it by the marriage of *Otho* of *Naſſaw*, the firſt Earl of *Guelderland*, with *Sophia* daughter and Heir of *Wickman*, the laſt Earl of *Zutphen*. So as this Earldom ended when that firſt began. After this it continued ſubject to the Earls and Dukes of *Guelders*, till the revolt of *Holland*, and the other Provinces, from the King of *Spain*; at what time it was beſieged for the *States* by the Earl of *Leiceſter*: at the ſiege whereof fell that gallant Gentleman Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom our *Britiſh Epigramatiſt* thus verſifieth;

Digna legi ſcribis, facis & digniſſima ſcribi;
Scripta probant doctum te tua, facta probum.

Thou writ'ſt things worthy *reading*, and didſt do
Things worthy *writing* too;
Thy Acts thy valour ſhow,
And by thy works we do thy learning know.

Groiningland

And though upon the loſſe of that gallant man (Nephew and Heir unto that Earl) the ſiege was raiſed at the preſent; yet was it re-inforced again, *Anno* 1590. and the Town then taken: continuing ever ſince in the confederacy of the *States united*.

GROINING-LAND, hath on the Eaſt, *Eaſt-Friezland*; on the Weſt, *Weſt-Friezland*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, *Over-Yſſel*; ſo wedged in as it were betwixt both *Friezlands*, that ſome hold it to be but a part of the Weſt. It containeth under it the Country called the *Ommelands*, (corruptly for the *Emmelands*, as I conjecture, becauſe lying along the River *Ems*) and therein 145 Burroughs and Villages. The chief whereof are 1. *Dam*, near the *Ems*, bordering on *Eaſt-Friezland*. 2. *Keykirk*. 3. *Old-Haven*, ſtanding on the Sea, 4. As for the Town of *Groining* it ſelf, it is rich, great, and very well built, ſituate amongſt divers ſmall ſtreams which run through it; and having alſo divers Channels for conveyance of waters, which adds much to the ſafety and ſtrength thereof. A Town of great Juriſdiction, both within and without, judging abſolutely without *appeals*, in cauſes both *Civil* and *Criminal*; in *Spirituals* ſubject heretofore to the Biſhop of *Munſter*, till made one of the new Biſhopricks, by King *Philip* the ſecond, *An.* 1559. And though the Prince in *Civil* cauſes had his Officer, or Lieutenant there; yet in *Criminal* the Town was *Soveraign*, and granted Pardons as *Soveraign* of the whole eſtate, paying to the Prince for all duties yearly, but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country anciently belonged to the Biſhops of *Utrecht*, by whoſe negligence in defending them, thy ſubmitted their eſtate to the Dukes of *Guelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxony* laying ſome claim to it, diſturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Ezardus* the Earl of *Eaſt-Friezland* poſſeſſed himſelf of it; but not able to make good his unjuſt poſſeſſion, ſold his eſtate therein to the Duke of *Gueldres*, *An.* 1514. to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the year 1536. they put themſelves under the Command of *Cherles* the fifth, but with the reſervation of all their Privileges, and ancient Liberties; for preſervation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the *Spaniard*, they confederated with the reſt of the *United States*, *An.* 1594. and ſo ſtill continue.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe Countries were the *Menapii*, and *Sicambri*, very valiant people poſſeſſing *Guelderland*; and the *Majores Friſi*, which were planted in *Groyning*, and the reſt of *Friezland*. Of theſe the *Sicambri* were accompted the moſt valiant people, uniting with other Nations in the name of *French*, and by that name poſſeſſing with the reſt of thoſe Nations, the mighty Empire of the Weſt. In the diviſion whereof, by the poſterity of *Charles* the *Great*, theſe Countries were firſt part of the Kingdom of *Auſtraſia*, or *Eaſt-France*, afterwards of the *German* Empire: governed at the firſt by *Guardians*, or *Protectors*, created by the people in the reign of *Charles* the *Bald*; the two firſt being *Wickard*, and *Lupold*, (or *Leopold*) two brethren; who fixing their chief Seat in the Caſtle of *Gueldres*, occaſioned the whole Country to be called *Guelderland*. But they, and their Succeſſors, by what name, or title ſoever called, were in effect but *Provincial Officers*, accomptable to the Emperours for their adminiſtration; the firſt *free Prince* hereof being *Otho* of *Naſſaw*, who having to his firſt wife the *Lady Aleide*, daughter of *Wickard*, the laſt *Guardian*; was by the Emperour *Henry* the third made Earl of *Guelderland*; adding thereto the State of *Zutphen*, by a ſecond marriage, as is ſaid before. In *Rainold* the ninth Earl it was made a Dukedom, by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *Anno* 1339. ſold by Duke *Arnold* (juſtly incenſed at his ungracious ſon *Adolph*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, for 92000 *Florens* of ready mony, and an Annual penſion, *Anno* 1472. But notwithſtanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charles*) poſſeſſed himſelf of it, and left it unto *Charles* his ſon, who finally ſurrendred it unto *Charles* the fifth, *Anno* 1547.

EARLS and DUKES of *GUELDERLAND*.

1076	1	*Otho* of *Naſſaw*, the firſt Earl.
	2	*Gerard*, the ſon of *Otho* by his firſt wife *Aleide*.
1131	3	*Henry*, the ſon of *Gerard*.
1162	4	*Gerard* II. ſon of *Henry*.
1180	5	*Otho* II. brother of *Gerard*.
1202	6	*Gerard* III. ſon of *Otho* the ſecond.
1229	7	*Otho* III. ſon of *Gerard*, who walled the Towns of *Ruremond*, *Arnhem*, *Bomel*, *Goch*, *Wageningen*, and *Harderwick*.
1271	8	*Rainold*, ſon of *Otho* the third, taken and impriſoned till his death, by
1326	9	*Rainold* II. his own ſon, created the firſt Duke of *Gueldres*, by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, at *Francfort*, *Anno* 1339. liberal to the poor, and a great Patron of the *Muſes*.
1343	10	*Rainold* III. ſon of *Rainold* the ſecond, moleſted with continual Wars with his brother *Edward*, by whom taken, and impriſoned till his dying day.
1371	11	*Edward*, the ſon of *Rainold* the 2d. by *Eleanor* the daughter of *Edward* the 3d. of *England*, his 2d. wife, died the ſame year with his brother; the laſt of the male iſſue of *Otho* of *Naſſaw*.
1371	12	*Marie*, (by ſome called *Joan*) ſiſter of *Edward* by the ſame *venter*, and wife of *William* Earl of *Gulick*.
	13	*William*, ſon of *William* Duke of *Gulick*, and *Marie* of *Gueldres*, admitted Knight of the *Garter* by King *Richard* the ſecond.
	14	*Rainold* IV. the brother of *William*.
	15	*Arnold* of *Egmond*, ſon of *John* Lord of *Egmond*, and *Marie* his wife, daughter of *Joan*, the ſiſter of *Rainold*, and *William*, the two laſt Dukes, ſucceeded in the eſtate of *Gueldres*; the

Guelderland.

the Dukedom of *Gulick* being ſeized on by *Adolph*, ſon of *William* the firſt Duke of *Berg*, as the next heir male to the two laſt Dukes. Being afterwards taken, impriſoned, and moſt barbarouſly handled by his own ſon *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke of *Burgundy*, he ſold to him his eſtates of *Gueldres*, and *Zutphen*, to be injoyed by him after his deceaſe, *Anno* 1472.

1473 16 *Adolph*, the wicked ſon of *Arnold*, diſpoſſeſſed of his eſtate by the ſaid agreement which Duke *Charles* enjoyed for his life; after the death of the ſaid *Charles*, was reſtored to liberty by the *Gauntois*, *Anno* 1467. and made the General of their forces againſt *Lewis* the eleventh.

1477 17 *Charles*, ſon of *Arnold*, after long Wars with the Princes of the houſes of *Burgundy*, and *Auſtria*, pretending the ſale and legacy of Duke *Arnold*, to *Charles* the *Warlike*, ſurrendred his eſtates unto *Charles* the fifth, to be enjoyed by him after his deceaſe, if he left no iſſue. According to which contract the Emperour *Charles* ſucceeded him in *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*, *Anno* 1538. being the year of his deceaſe; after that time accompted in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Arms hereof were Quarterly, 1. *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, crowned *Gules*, for the Dukedome of *Guelderland*; 2. *Azure*, a Lion *Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zutphen*.

Thus have we ſeen a Country, which at the firſt erecting of theſe Eſtates, was nothing in a manner but *Bogs* and *Mariſhes*; and at the beſt but a continual Wilderneſſe of Woods and Forreſts; by the great *providence* of the Princes, and extreme induſtry of the people, made the moſt populous, beſt-planted, and the wealthieſt Eſtate (for the bigneſſe of it) in the whole habitable world. And we have ſeen thoſe ſeveral Eſtates and *Principalities*, by Marriages, and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the houſe of *Burgundy*: under the Princes of which great and illuſtrious Family, inferiour to no Kings of *Chriſtendom* for power and riches (eſpecially under Duke *Philip* the *Good*) the ſubjects hereof did ſo abound in wealth and plenty, that *Philip de Comines*, who then lived, affirmeth, that this Country ſeemed like the *land* of *Promiſe*. Some thought there was a purpoſe in this Duke *Philip*, of erecting theſe States into a Kingdom. Diverted from it by the difference and variety of laws and priviledges which thoſe people ſeverally lived under: not to be brought without great difficulty and diſtaſte, to one form of Government; yet might he have done it if he would, as himſelf openly affirmed to the Ambaſſadours of King *Lewis* the eleventh. But *Charles* his ſon being more bent on the deſign, negotiated to that end with the Emperour *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, *An.* 1473. and doubtleſſe had obtained his purpoſe, upon the marriage of his daughter with *Maxmilian*, *Fredericks* ſon (which was then propounded) had not his raſh engagement againſt the *Swiſſers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the courſe of theſe projects; which projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had but for that engagement, he had extended his Dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both ſides of it, from the *Alpes* unto the *German* Ocean, and been the moſt conſiderable Prince at that time in *Chriſtendom*: all *Elſats* in *high Germany*, being ſold, or mortgaged to him by the Duke of *Auſtria*, the Dukedom of *Lorrein* at his mercy; beſides, the hopes he had of the Earldom of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reny*, which would have opened him away to the *Mediterranean*. He being dead, the Government continued as before it was; each Province having its *diſtinct Laws*, and living according to their antient *Priviledges*; till the attempt of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*, moſt reſolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown, to cancell all their privileges, and new mould the Eſtate, according to his own will and pleaſure: occaſioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country; and the ſetting up of a new Eſtate, oppoſite unto him, and deſtructive of his intereſſe in it. But before we come unto this change, we will firſt look upon the Princes, Power, Revenue, and other things conſiderable touching his Eſtate, whileſt it ſtood entire, under the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundy*, and

LORDS of *BELGIUM.*

1369 1 *Philip* the *Hardy*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the firſt great raiſer of this Houſe.

1404 2 *John* the *Proud*, Duke of *Burgundy*, &c.

1419 3 *Philip* the *Good*, added to his eſtates the Dukedoms of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the *Marquiſat*, and *Machlyn*, by the death of his Couſin *Philip*, the Earldoms of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, *Zeeland*, and the Lordſhip of *Weſt-Friſeland*, by the reſignation and death of the Counteſſe *Jaqueline*, whoſe next Heir he was; the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and the Earldom of *Namur*, which he bought for money.

1467 4 *Charles* the *Warlike*, who bought the Eſtates of *Gueldres* and *Zutphen*; and held them peaceably all his life.

1476 5 *Marie*, the daughter and Heir of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian*, ſon of the Emperour *Frederick*, from whom King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* took the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the greateſt part of the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Artois*; unfortunately killed with a fall from her Horſe, and an unſeaſonable modeſty in not ſuffering the *Chirurgions* to dreſſe her wound; the hurt which ſhe had taken being on her thigh.

1482 6 *Philip* III. ſon of *Marie* and *Maximilian*, to whom *Charles* the 8. of *France* reſtored all the places in *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy* taken by his Father; married *Joan* daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel* Kings of *Spain*.

1506 7 *Charles* II. Archduke of *Auſtria*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of that name the fifth; added to his Eſtate in theſe Countries, the Dukedom of *Guelderland*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, the Lordſhips of *Utretcht*, *Over-Yeſſel*, and *Groining*.

1558 8 *Philip* IV. of *Belgium*, and the II. of *Spain*, invading theſe Countries againſt their priviledges, was by a great part of them rejected from being their Prince, *Anno* 1581. which made him after a long, and bloody War, to ſurrender all his intereſſe in them to

1599 9 *Iſabella Clara Eugenia* his daughter, and *Albert* Archduke of *Auſtria*, whom he married to her: during whoſe Government, a truce for 12 years was made, and in the preface to that Truce, the *Confederate Eſtates* declared to be treated with as a *Free Eſtate*, to whom the Kings of *Spain* could pretend no Title.

10 *Philip* V. of *Belgium*, and IV. of *Spain*, on the deceaſe of the Arch-Dutcheſſe *Iſabella* his Aunt, ſucceeded in the poſſeſſion of ſome, and the Title unto all the *Belgick* Provinces.

The ordinary *Revenue* of theſe Countries to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, and after to the Kings of *Spain*, before the breach, were eſtimated at three Millions of Crowns yearly; which was more than any King in Chriſtendom at thoſe times received, the *French* only excepted: the very meaſuring of Corn in the City of *Antwerp*, being farmed yearly for 100000 Crowns in ready mony; But the *extraordinary* was far greater: the Eſtates of theſe Countries in the year 1550. granting to *Charles* the fifth an aide, which they call the *Noventale*, amounting to 150000. Crowns a moneth; and yet the Provinces of *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, *Gueldres*, and *Groining*, were not rated to it; And it is ſaid, that *Philip* the ſecond at his firſt coming to the Eſtate, was preſented with a grant of 40 Millions of *Florens*, to be paid in few years. So that theſe Countries were the true *Correlative* of both his *Indies*, the loſſe of which, before the making of the truce, *Anno* 1609. coſt him above 100 Millions of Crowns, and the loſſe of 400000 men.

The Forces of theſe Princes by Land, may beſt be ſeen in the expedition of *Charles* (then Earl of *Charolois*) againſt *Lewis* the eleventh, whom Duke *Philip* the *Good* his Father furniſhed to that enterpriſe with 9000 Archers, and 1400 men of Armes, every one of which had five or ſix great horſes attending on him: and at his ſetting forward, was told by his Father, (never accompted for a *Braggart*) that if he fell into any danger, he ſhould not be abandoned for the want of 100000 fighting men. The ſaid Duke having thus ſent away his ſon, and being provoked by the indignites of thoſe of *Leige* and *Dinand*, who revolted from him, ſuddenly raiſed an Army of 28000 horſe, and a proportionable number of foot, for the chaſtiſement of that proud and rebellious people, And *Charles* himſelf ſucceeding on the death of his Father, in his unproſperous attempt upon the *Switzers*, had no leſſe than 80000 men at the ſiege of *Morat*. As for their power at Sea, I find not that they kept any ſtanding Navy, nor needed they ſo to do, as the caſe ſtood with them; conſidering that when they had occaſion of any ſuch ſervice, they uſed to take up all the ſhips which they found in their harbours (of which there never wanted good ſtore) employing as many as they pleaſed, and diſmiſſing the reſt.

The principal order of *Knighthood* ordained by theſe Princes, was that of the *Golden Fleece*, firſt inſtituted by Duke *Philip* the *Good* (in imitation of the Order of S. *George* in *England*) *Anno* 1430. The name and fancy borrowed, as ſome conceive from *Gedeons Fleece*; from *Jaſons Fleece*, as others think; but more probably from the *Golden Fleece* of *England*, which brought him in ſo much Gold and Treaſure in the way of cuſtom. Their habit is a Collar of Gold interlaced with Irons, ſeeming to ſtrike fire out of a Flint, (*ex ferro flammam* being the word:) at the end whereof hung the *Toiſon d' Or*, or *Fleece* of *Gold*. Their number at the firſt was but 25. (which is the number of Knights of the *Engliſh Garter*) increaſed afterwards by the ſame Duke *Philip* unto thirty one. *Charles* the firſt raiſed them to fifty one: And now the *King* of *Spain* hath aſſumed a liberty of making as many as he pleaſeth: this being the only *Military*, or *Civil* Order of which thoſe Kings have the beſtowing: the Orders of *Alcantara*, *Calatrava*, and the reſt of *Spaniſh* inſtitution, being rather *Religious* and *Monaſtical*, at the beſt but mixt. St. *Andrews* day, the day of the Inſtallation.

In this great Pomp and Glory did theſe Princes live, as long as they continued in good terms with the ſubject Provinces; being maſters of more goodly *Jewels*, magnificent furniture for their houſes, and coſtly movables than any three of the greateſt Princes in all *Europe*. And on the other ſide, the ſubjects whileſt they lived in duty under ſo great Princes, attained unto the height of all worldly happineſſe: in their *Apparel* exceſſively gorgeous, in their Feaſts and Banquets over-ſumptuous, in their *Manners* diſſolute; vices which uſually accompany that kind of felicity. An happineſſe too great to continue long. By the ambition and violence of *Charles* the *Warlike*, they were firſt plunged into a War againſt *Lewis* the eleventh; of which they did not only feel the preſent miſeries, but loſt all the Towns and Holds which they had in *Picardy*, with the whole Dutchy of *Burgundy*. And by a like, but better grounded Ambition of *Charles* the fifth, they were exerciſed in continual Wars againſt the *French*, who miſerably harrowed and ranſacked the Countries of *Luxemburgh*, *Hainalt*, and *Artois*, bordering next unto them. *Charles* at his death commended them to the eſpecial care of *Philip* his ſon, adviſing him to uſe them kindly, as thoſe that were the chief ſupporters of his State and Glory: adding, that if he ſhould deal otherwiſe with them, it would prove the ruine of his Fortunes. And on the other ſide, the People, to obtain his favour, preſented him at his firſt entrance on the Government, with a grant of 40 millions of Florens, as before was ſaid. But he, tranſported with ambition, and a Catholike zeal, not only forgot their love, but his Fathers counſell; and had no ſooner concluded a Peace with *France*, effected by the Treaty of *Cambray*, *Anno* 1559. but preſently he caſt his thoughts on the ſubjection of this People to his will and pleaſure. For they were ſo fortified with priviledges, which their former Princes had granted, and the latter had been ſworn to obſerve, that he wanted much of that abſolute and uncontrollable command, which he ſtrongly aimed at. Some of which priviledges were, that the Prince could place no ſtranger amongſt them, with juriſdiction over their eſtates and perſons, in offices of war or Juſtice. 2. The Prince could give nothing to the *Clergy*; nor 3. leavy any *Subſidies*, without the *States* of the Country. 4. But the main *Prerogative* was, that if the Prince by violence or wrong, did infringe any of the ſaid *Charters* and *Franchieſes*, the People after declaration thereof made, might go to election of a new Prince. This not a little grieved the *Spaniards*, that ſuch baſe and unworthy people (for ſo they eſteemed them) ſhould in ſuch liberty poſſeſſe ſo brave and rich a Country, their King bearing no title of Majeſty, or abſolute command over them. Beſides, the *Reformation* of *Religion*, which then began to grow to ſome ſtrength, moved the King to reduce them back to the Church of *Rome*, by the power and terrour of the *Inquiſition*; and by the erecting of ſome new *Epiſcopal* Sees amongſt them (for before there were but three in all) to ſettle ſome more conſtant courſe of *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline*. Againſt both which, when the people violently oppoſed, he then reſolved of bringing them by *Spaniſh* Rhetorick (that is, by the Sword and the Canon) to their old obedience. To theſe ends he ſends the Duke of *Alva*, an old and expert Captain (as havin 60 years been a Souldier) with a puiſſant Army, to be his *Vice-Roy*, among them. He alſo gave him a Commiſſion of that large extent, that he might place and diſplace whom he would, and execute all ſuch as he could find oppoſite to his deſign. At that time the two cheif men among them were the Prince of *Orange*, and Count *Egmont*; the firſt more potent with the People; the latter, with the Souldiers. Had theſe two joyned together, they might eaſily have prevented D. *Alva's* entrance; but *Egmont* was ſo ſoothed up with Letters from *Spain*, that he believed not the intelligence which the Prince had, concerning the Dukes Commiſſion. The Earl exhorted the Prince to ſubmit himſelf to the pleaſure of the King, and ſo to prevent the ruine of his Houſe. The Prince deſired the Earl to maintain the liberty of the Country; as for himſelf, *He had rather be a Prince without an houſe, then a Count without an head.* Being thus reſolved, the Prince retires to his friends at *Naſſaw*, in high *Germany*; the Earl ſtayeth to congratulate the entrance of the new Governour: who had no ſooner ſetled himſelf, but he intrapped the Counts of *Horn* and *Egmont*, and beheaded them, *Anno* 1567. Being thus rid of theſe two, with divers others of good quality, who living would have much hindred his proceedings; he quartred his *Spaniards* in the Towns and Provinces, ſpoiled the people, not of their *Priviledges* only but their *Liberty*. Amongſt the Reformed he brought in the bloody *Inquiſition*, and indeed ſo tyrannically did he behave himſelf, that the people were forced to a *defenſive war*, as well for their lives, as ſubſtance. This was a war of *State*, not *Religion*; the moſt part of the *Hollanders* being Papiſts, at the time of their taking Arms. During theſe troubles, the Prince of *Orange* was not idle, but he in one place, and Count *Lodowick* his brother in another, kept Duke *Alva* imployed, though divers times not with ſuch fortunate ſucceſſe as they did expect. In the year 1572. *Fluſhing* was ſurpriſed by *Voorſt*, and *Berland* as we have before ſaid. So alſo was the *Brill* in *Voorne*, an Iſland of *Holland*, by the *Cout de la March*; and not long after, all *Holland*, except *Amſterdam*, followed the fortune and ſide of the Prince; together with all the Towns of *Zealand*, *Middleburg* excepted, *Anno* 1573. Duke *Alva* being recalled, *Don Lewis de Requiſens* was appointed Governor, during whoſe rule many of the *Belgians* abandoned their Country; ſome flying into *Germany*, others into *France*, moſt into *England*. After his death, and before the arrival of *Don John*, the Prince and his party recovered ſtrength and courage again; till the comming of the Prince of *Parma*, who brought them into worſe caſe than ever. Yet *Anno* 1581. they declare by their writings directed to all people, that *Philip* of *Spain* was fallen from the Government: and take a new oath of the people, which bound them never to return to the *Spaniſh* obedience. This done, they elect *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, heir apparent to the *French* King, and then in no ſmall hopes of marrying Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, to be their Lord. But he intending rather to ſettle Tyranny in himſelf, than to drive it from the *Spaniard*, attempted *Antwerp*, put his men into the Town; but was by the valour of the *Burgers* ſhamefully repulſt. Shame of this ignoble enterpriſe, eſpecially grief for its ill ſucceſſe, took him out of the world. About which time, the eſtate of theſe Countries was thus by this *Hieroglyphick* expreſſed. A Cow repreſented the body of *Belgium*: there ſtood the King of *Spain* ſpurring her, the Queen of *England* feeding her, the Prince of *Orange* milking her, and Duke *Francis* plucking her back by the tail, but ſhe foul'd his fingers. During his unfortunate Government, *Parma* prevailed in all places, eſpecially after the death of *William* Prince of *Orange*, treacherouſly ſlain with a Piſtoll, *Anno* 1584. Now were the poor *Hollanders* truly miſerable, deſperate of pardon from their Prince, and having none to lead them, none to protect them, but ſuch as were likely to regard their own profit more than theirs. *England* was the only Sanctuary they had now left; to which they ſue, offering the Queen thereof the ſoveraignty of their Provinces; who had, if not a true, yet a plauſible title to them; as being generally deſcended from *Edward* the third, and *Philip* his wife, who was Siſter; and (as ſome ſay) Heir to *William* Earl of *Hainalt*, *Holland*, &c. If *Margaret*, from whom the right of *Spain* is derived, were daughter to Earl *William*, then was our Queen to ſucceed after *Philip*, who was rejected: if that *Margeret* were (as many write) his younger ſiſter, then was our Queen the undoubted Heir, her Predeceſſor *Philippa* being Earl *Williams* eldeſt ſiſter. But that Heroick Queen not diſputing the right of the title, nor intending to her ſelf any thing, ſave the honour of relieving her diſtreſſed neigbours, and providing for her own eſtate, by this diverſion, took them into her protection. Under which the *Belgian* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly (I will not now ſtand upon the particulars) that before they would hearken to any treaty of peace, they forced the King of *Spain* to this concluſion, that he treated with them as with a Free Eſtate, abſtracted from all right and title which he might pretend unto the places which they were poſſeſſed of. This peace was concluded *Anno* 1609. ſince which time they have kept Garriſons well diſciplined, and as well paid; ſo that theſe Countries have in theſe late dayes been the *Campus Martius*, or School of defence for all Chriſtendom, to which the youth of all Nations repair to ſee the manner of Fortifications, and learn the Art of war. Thus did they for 40 years hold the ſtaff againſt a moſt puiſſant Monarch, and in the end capitulated with great advantage; that it is obſerved, that whereas all other Nations grow poor by war, theſe only grow rich. Whereupon it is remarkable to conſider into what follies and extremities Princes run, by uſing their people to the war. The Kings of *France* place moſt of their hopes in their Cavalry, becauſe in policy they would not that the Vulgar ſhould be exerciſed in Arms. *Lycurgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedemonians*, that they ſhould never fight often with one enemy: the breaking whereof made the *Thebans* a ſmall Common-wealth, to be their equals in power; whereupon it was tartly ſaid by *Antalcidas* to *Ageſilaus* King of *Sparta*, that by his frequent warring on them, and fighting with them, *he had made the* Thebans *good Sonldiers againſt their will.* The *Turks* won the vaſt Empire they now poſſeſſe, by making many and ſpeedy wars. But now that policy being worn out of faſhion, we ſee that (to omit *Perſia*) the little and diſtracted Kingdom of *Hungary*, hath for 200 years reſiſted their Forces. So was it between the Dukes of *Auſtria*, and the *Switzers*; and ſo it is betwixt the *Spaniard*, and *Low-Country* men, who formerly being accounted a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the wars; by their continual combating with the *Spaniard*, are become ingenious, full of action, and great managers of cauſes appertaining to fights, either by Sea or Land. We may hereby alſo perceive, what advantage a ſmall *State* gaineth by fortifying places and paſſages: there being nothing which ſooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince, than to beleaguer a well fortified Town: for that herein he conſumeth his time, and commonly loſeth his men, credit, and money; as the *Romans*, before *Numantia*; the great *Turk*, in *Malta*; and *Charles* of *Burgundy*, before *Nancie*: For where war is drawn out of the field into the walls, the Mattock and Spade being more neceſſary than the Sword and Spear; there the valour of the Aſſailant is little available, becauſe it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought theſe ſeveral Eſtates and Provinces into one hand; ſo now we have broke them into two: the one part continuing in obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themſelves as a State apart. Under the King remain the Dukedomes of *Luxembourg*, *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, (ſome few Towns excepted) the *Marquiſate* of the Empire; the Earldoms of *Hainalt*, *Namur*, *Artois* and *Flanders* (eecept only St. *Sluys*) and the Lordſhip or Signeury of *Machylin*, with many places of importance in the Dutchy of *Gueldres*, to countervail the Towns with-held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitfull, in regard of the commodities there naturally growing; but as much inferiour to the other in power, and riches, by reaſon of their ſtrength and ſhipping, by which they have the command at Sea, and thereby draw the whole trade of Chriſtendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amſterdaus*, and other Towns of their Confederacy.

For the government of theſe Provinces, there is a *Regent* ſent from the Court of *Spain*, whoſe authority is generally as great as that of the Kings; ſave that all matters of moment paſſe under the Kings name, and that all Officers of any great truſt and concernment are appointed by him: and that all laws, decrees, ſentences and negotiations are diſpatched in his name.. For the aſſiſtance of the *Regent* there is a *Privy Councel*, a *Councel of State*, and a *Councel of Finances*, by whom all things are ordered which concern the publike, the *Regents* authority co-operating and concurring with them: without which, though they may conſult, they can execute nothing. And for the governance and well ordering of the ſeveral *Provinces*, there is in every one of them a Lieutenant, or Provincial Governour, ſubordinate to the *Regent*, and accomptable to him: and in each Province a particular Councel held in the Kings name, conſiſting of more or leſſe Counſellours, (as the bigneſſe of the Province is) for the moſt part *Doctors* or Licentiates of the *Civil-Laws*, with a Preſident, as the head thereof: which in ſome places they call the *Parliament*, after the manner of the *French*, an in ſome the *Chancery*. To theſe Courts all the Subjects do reſort for juſtice, in cauſes both *Criminal* and *Civil*: to theſe are brought appeals from inferiour *Judicatures*, ſuch as the Courts of great Towns and particular *Franchiſes*: and from theſe lieth an appeal to the great *Councel* at *Machlyn*, ſupreme and ſuperintendent unto all the reſt.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwiſe is of publike moment, the Regent ſendeth out letters in the Kings name to commmand the *Eſtates*, that is to ſay, the *Clergy*, the *Nobility*, and the principal *Towns* of every Province (except thoſe of *Luxembourg*, *Guelders*, *Weſt-Frieſeland*, and *Over-Yſſell*, who by ſpecial priviledge cannot be called out of their own countries, to come before him. The place of their Aſſembly is for the moſt part at *Bruxels*, the Court and reſidence of the Regent; becauſe the *Brabanters* are alſo priviledged not to be ſummoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the *States* aſſemble not all together: but thoſe of one Province at a time, ſo one after another: to whom the Preſident, or ſome one of the Councel of *State*, propoſeth in the Princes name, that which he demandeth: To which if any Town oppoſe, then all which the reſt have done is of no effect; nothing being granted by the Deputies, or *States*, of any Province; but with this condition, that all the reſt of the *Eſtates* do agree unto it. Without this punctual conſent of all parties intereſſed, the Prince can impoſe nothing by their Laws, upon the Subject, nor alter any thing at all in the publike government.

And as the people are thus priviledged in regard of the Prince, ſo are the Princes and Prelates priviledged in regard of the Pope: it being agreed upon between them,

1. That the Prince is to give *Clergy Benefices*, and the Pope to confirm them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-perſon may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to ſend his Delegates or Commiſſion into the Country.
3. The Pope not to give a *Benefice*, not grant a Pardon, nor ſend a ***Bull*** into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no *Clergy man* can buy lands, or other immoveables, without the Princes conſent. And,
5. That the Prince hath power to viſit the *Clergy*, to ſee if they be well governed, or not; and if they be not, to reform the abuſes.

Great priviledges, if conſidered rightly; greater than which few Proteſtant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the *Revenue* raiſed by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Eſtate, it is not eaſie to be gueſſed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his coffers. The expence of his Court there, is as great as ever, under any of the former *Regents*; and his charge of entertaining Souldiers for his Towns and Garriſons, greater than before. Nor doth it now ſtand with reaſon of *State*, to lay any arbitrary taxes upon the people, leaſt he exaſperate them to a ſecond *Rebellion*, or ſtartle them to ſome new *Confederacies* againſt his quiet.

Under the government of the *Confederate Eſtates*, are the Dukedom of *Guelderland*, excepting ſome few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniards*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Zutphen*, the *Signeuries* of *Weſt-Friſeland*, *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſell*, *Groining*, the Town of *Sluys*, with the Iſle of *Caſſandt* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchy of *Brabant*. This is the leſſer part by far, and far inferiour to the other in regard of the ſoil, but the more populous of the two, and by the induſtry and great trading of the people, the more rich and powerfull. Governed after their own old Laws, by the *Particular Eſtates* of every Province not yet united into one entire body of a Common-wealth; ſaving that for the better preſervation of their *Confederacy*, the Commiſſioners of the ſeveral Provinces do conſult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The *Eſtates* of the *particular Provinces*, elected out of the principal Towns and places of moſt importance, do order the affairs thereof according to their antient priviledges, rights, and cuſtoms, as well by themſelves as by their Colleagues and Officers, whom they do appoint: and that as well for matters of *State*, as in point of *Juſtice*. For adminiſtration of the which, the *Governor*, *Preſident*, and *Counſellors* of the *Provincial* Courts, have the cognizance of all caſes both *civil* and *criminal*; and in all cauſes of *appeal* from inferiour Courts, in each of which they do proceed without *appeal*, making their Acts and Commiſſions in the name of the ſaid *Governours*, *Preſident*, and *Councel*; but pronouncing ſentence and and executing judgement, in right of the Soveraignty of the ſaid Province. And theſe *Provincial States* are choſen generally out of the *Plebians*, or common people, and the *Burgers* (at the beſt) of the greater Townſhips: the Nobility and Gentry being ſo worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above three families of Gentlemen; and thoſe compelled to live after the *Plebeian* faſhion for fear of envy, and to avoid the inſolency of the ſaucy *Clowns*; who out of rudeneſſe and the deſire of equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of theſe *Provincial States*, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleaſure of the *Community* for which they ſerve, are choſen one or more for each ſeveral Province, according to the condition and capacity of thoſe which are choſen to reſide at the *Hague*, there to conſult of the affairs which concern the publike: but ſo, that be they more or leſſe out of every Province, they make amongſt them but one *ſuffrage*, when any thing is to be put unto the Vote. And theſe they call the *States General*, firſt, becauſe a collected body out of all the Provinces; and ſecondly becauſe they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular concernment, which are determinable abſolutely by the *States Provincial*, but only in ſuch things as concern the *general* good of the whole Eſtate, as treating with Ambaſſadours, making war and peace, &c. For their aſſiſtance in which, there is a *Councel of State* made up of the Governours and ſome eminent men of every Province (in which the Ambaſſadour of *England*, as long as we held *Fluſhing*, and the other Cautionary Towns, had his voice or *ſuffrage*) by whoſe advice they diſpoſe of all things which concern the publike. But ſo, that if any difficulty do appear in the buſineſſe, they conclude nothing, till they have the approbation and conſent of the particular *Cities* and *Provinces* for which they are choſen; to whom they are *accomptable* for their adminiſtration, and by whom *revocable* whenſoever they pleaſe.

The *Revenue* of this *Eſtate* doubtleſſe is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual entertainment, conſiſting of no leſſe than 30000 men, which they can draw into the field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided: yet ſo well paid, that we never read of any mutiny amongſt them for want thereof. The whole charge, with the entertainment of Captains and ſuperiour Officers, is ſaid to amount to 500000 *l. per annum*, raiſed on the people by *Exciſe* laid upon all commodities, and many *taxes* of like nature, ſo inſupportable in themſelves, and amongſt men, which would be thought to live in a free *State*; that ſhould the *Spaniard*, or any Prince in *Chriſtendom*, lay but half ſo much upon their Subjects, it would occaſion a *Revolt*. So that whereas one of the firſt cauſes of their falling off from the King of *Spain*, was to free themſelves from taxes and impoſitions, illegally (as the

ſai

ſaid, inforced upon them; they have drawn upon themſelves more arbitrary and illegal payments, than any Nation in the world. So little have they got by the change of government. Touching their power at Sea, we have ſpoke already. All I ſhall now adde to it, is by way of inſtance, which is that in the year 1587. the King of *Denmark* on pretence of ſome diſpleaſure, arreſted 608. ſhips of theirs, of all ſorts at one time, in the *Sound*; and that the next year after they ſet out upon very ſhort warning, an hundred good men of war to joyn with *England*, againſt the invincible *Armada*, which then threatned both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to theſe Countries, wherewith the God of all bleſſings doth enrich a Nation, but a *gracious Prince*, *unity of Religion*, and *a quiet Government*: which if it pleaſed the Almighty to confer upon them, they would ſurpaſſe all neighbouring States in treaſure, potency, content, and all worldly happineſſe.

There are in theſe Countries,
Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 15.
Univerſities 7.
Viz.
Louain, *Liege*, *Harderwick*, *Groyning*.
Doway, *Leyden*, *Franeker*.

And thus much for *Belgium*.

OF
GERMANIE.

GERMANIE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pruſſia*, *Poland*, and *Hungary*; on the Weſt, with *France*, *Switzerland*, and *Belgium*; on the North with the *Baltick* Seas, and ſome part of *Denmark*; on the South, with the *Alps*, which part it from *Italy*. By which accompt the modern *Germany* much differeth from that deſcribed by *Tacitus*, and others of the Roman writers: that comprehending the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, with ſo much of the Kingdom of *Poland* as lieth on this ſide of the River *Viſtula*; but bounded on the Eaſt with the *Rhene*, and on the South with the *Danow*: the modern *Germany* containing on the further banks of thoſe Rivers, five whole *Roman* Provinces, that is to ſay, *Noricum Ripenſe*, and *Mediterraneum*, *Rhœtia ſecunda*, *Belgica*, and *Germania prima*, with ſome parts of *Rhœtia prima*, and *Germania ſecunda*; but terminated with the *Danes* and the *Baltick* Sea.

It was firſt called thus by the *Romans* (as ſome conceive) who ſeeing the people both in cuſtoms, ſpeech, and courſe of life, ſo like thoſe of *Gallia*, called them the *Germans* to the *Gauls*: the word *Germanus* in the Latine, ſignifying a brother of the whole blood, (as our Lawyers phraſe it) that is to ſay, a brother both by father and mother; thoſe which have the ſame mother, but divers fathers, being called *Fratres uterini*. And of this mind is *Strabo*, who ſpeaking of the great reſemblance which was betwixt theſe Nations, in manners, ſpeech, cuſtoms, and way of life, coucludes it thus, that the *Romans* did with very good reaſon call them *Germans*, *cum fratres eos Gallorum hoc nomine vellent oſtendere*; intending to ſignifiy by that name, that they were the brethren of the *Gauls*. But this is to be underſtood of thoſe people only, which dwelt next to *Gaul*, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vaſt Continent, according to the ancient extent thereof, it being very well obſerved by *Tacitus*, that *Germany* was at firſt *Nationis non Gentis nomen*, the name of ſome of the Nations only, not of all the Country; the name in proceſſe of time ſpreading over all that large tract of ground, and thoſe ſcattered Nations which were either conquered by them, or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be meerly *Dutch*, deriving it from *Ger*, which ſignifieth *all*, and the word *man*, ſignifying in that language as in ours; whence alſo they derive the name of *Almans*, by which they would imply that the *Almans* or *Germans* are a very warlike Nation, a people that have in them, *nihil niſi virile*, nothing not worthy of a *man*. *Bocartus* ſomewhat near to this, telling us that *Ger* in the antient *Gallick*, did ſignifie as much as *Guerre* in the modern *French*, would have them at their firſt coming over the *Rhene* to be called *Germans*, by the *Gauls*, that is to ſay, *men of war*, (or *Gens d' Armes* in the preſent *French*) by reaſon of the great and many victories obtained by them.

The like diverſity I find for the name of *Almans*; For though ſome gave them the name of *Almans* from the ſame original, from which they fetch the name of *Germans*, as was ſaid before: yet others as probably conjecture, that they had that name becauſe they conſiſted of ſo many ſeveral Nations, comming out of the North and North-Eaſt hither; that they ſeemed to be a Hotch-potch of all ſorts of men, kneaded into one name and Nation, which is the conceit of *Aſinius Quadratus*. But for my part I do conceive (ſuppoſing the name of *Almans* to be *Dutch* originally) that the whole Country was not called *Almain*, till ſuch time as the Princes of the Dukedom of *Almain* (ſince called *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*) did poſſeſſe the Empire; which continuing in that potent family near 100 years, might very well occaſion them to be called the Emperours of *Almain*, or the *Almain* race; and ſo impart that name to the Empire alſo. And for the *Almains* naturally and properly ſo called, (of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Suevia*) I ſee no *Etymology* more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from *Mannus*, the ſon of *Tuiſco*, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (*Tuiſconeum Deum, & filium Mannum, originem gentis conditoreſque*,) as is ſaid by *Tacitus*: the people being called *Alemanni* (with a double *n*) in all ancient Writers, as men that did derive themſelves from this *Mannus*, the ſon of *Tuiſco*. In like ſort, as I think, the *Marco-manni* inhabiting the Countries of *Moravia*, were ſo called, as the *Manni of the Marches*, or out-borders of *Germany*; and not the *Markmans*, as if they were men of *mark*, the only men of fame and honour of all thoſe Nations, which might as well be preſſed from the *Dutch* original, as that of *All-man*, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this opinion I am ſwayed the rather, becauſe I find the Dutch Nation generally ſo much inclined, to derive their original from *Tuiſco* (from whom the *Teutones* inhabiting about *Brandenbourg*, may well fetch their Pedegree;) the name of *Dutch-land*, or *Dutch-men*, coming near in ſound to *Tuiſc-land*, and *Tuiſc-men*: In which I ſhall ſubſcribe to *Verſtegans* opinion, though for the moſt part I look upon him; but as the ſecond part of *Goropius Becanus*.

But being the *Etymologies* of the names of moſt antient Nations, are very uncertain, and for the moſt part founded on conjectures only; let us leave the name a while and ſurvey the Country; the length whereof (according to the trueſt and exacteſt meaſurement) from Eaſt to Weſt, that is to ſay, from the *Viſtula*, or *Wixell*, to the *Rhene*, is eſtimated at 840 *Italian* miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to ſay, from the Ocean to the Town of *Brixen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the ſame miles. So that the figure of it being near a ſquare, it may take up 3160 miles in compaſſe, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle Parallels of the ſixth and tenth *Climates*, the longeſt day in the moſt Southern parts, being 15 hours and an half; and in the moſt Northern, ſeventeen hours and a quarter.

In this compaſſe and extent of ground are ſuppoſed to live ten Millions of people. The men of the poorer ſort laborious, painfull, and of a ſincere and honeſt carriage; the Nobles for the moſt part either Scholars, or Souldiers, and true lovers of honour; though *Tacitus* hath otherwiſe reſolved it, affirming that the *Gaules* fight for liberty, the *Belgians* for honour, and the *Germans* for gain. Which yet is true enough of the common Souldiers, who if they fail of pay, fail in courage preſently. Of both ſorts they are generally tall and big, of great bones, much fleſh, and large ſinews; but commonly of ſuch a phlegmatick conſtitution, that they have not ſpirit enough to mannage ſuch a maſſe of fleſh as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that humour, makes them for the moſt part to be men of a bright, or light-brown hair, and fair complexion. They are little addicted to *Venus*, and very much to *Bacchus*; whence the Proverb, *Vivere Germanorum eſt bibere*; and the old Verſes,

Germani poſſunt cunctos tolerare labores,
O utinam poſſent tam bene ferre ſitim.

The *Dutch* themſelves to labour well inure;
O would they thirſt could half ſo well indure.

Their love unto their liquour, together with their natural temper, maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon Pope *Julio* the ſecond, ſtiling the *Spaniards* birds of the air, becauſe of their ambition; the *Venetians* and *Genoeſes*, fiſhes of the Sea, becauſe ſo much accuſtomed to Navigation: called the *Germans*, by the name of the beaſts of the field. And when *Auguſtus* was reſolved to take unto himſelf the Supream government of *Rome*, he was adviſed by *Agrippa* to chooſe a guard of *Germans* to attend upon him. The reaſon was (as *Dion* giveth it) becauſe in thoſe great bodies there was little *malice* hidden, and leſſe *ſubtlety*; and that they were a people that took more pleaſure to be commanded than to command. In matters of War this people have been formerly in a meaſure famous; yet not ſo much by the valour, or conduct of their *Captains* (for they had but few ſuch) as by their own hardineſſe. They withſtood the *Romans* 210 years, afflicting and troubling them more in that ſpace, than either the *Carthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Parthians*: and even at the laſt (ſaith *Tacitus*) *Triumphati magis quam ſunt victi*. In our times the *Rutters* and *Lansknights* of *Germany* (for ſo they call their horſe and foot) have been much imployed: but more by reaſon of their numbers, eaſily raiſed out of ſo large a Country, than any opinion of their valour; being ſlow of motion, dull of apprehenſion, fearfull of putting any thing to the chance of War. By reaſon of which fearfulneſſe as they are very cruel upon all advantages, not ſparing either age, or ſex when they get the victory: ſo are they apt to run upon any *Alarm*; not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any perſwaſions. Inſomuch as *Charles* Count of *Manſfield*, General of an Army of 50000 fighting men, but moſt of this Nation, was forced to ſuffer a ſmall Army of 10000 *Turks* to paſſe by his Trenches, being then ſtrongly encamped before *Strigonium*, (now *Gran*) a Town of *Hungary*, and to victual the Town before his face: not daring to ſet upon them, or diſturb their purpoſe, for fear leaſt being luſtily charged, his *Germans* would give back and indanger all. And yet beſides theſe weakneſſes they have ſome great faults. One of which is a cuſtome, if there wages be not duely paid, (though it be in the very midſt of battel) to cry *Guelt*, *Guelt*, throw down their weapons, and ſuffer themſelves to be cut in pieces by the enemy. And ſo they ſerved *Frederick* the Electour *Palatine* at the battel of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of ſpoil and plunder: on which they are ſo bent whereſoever they come, that ſuch as entertain them have juſt cauſe to ſay, that they receive more damage by them than they do by their enemies. Two undeceiveable notes of mercenary valour.

The women are of a good complexion, but by reaſon of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to corpulency: women of a good carriage (as the ſaying is) good Bearers, and as fruitfull breeders. Severely *obſequious* to their *Husbands*, whom many of good rank ſerve at the table with *Trenchers* and other neceſſaries, and take away when he hath done; eating the reſidue apart with and amongſt their Maids: ſcarce ſitting down with him once a week, and then too at the lower end, or at ſome ſuch diſtance. And though the women by their Laws, have a *property* in the goods which they bring with them at their marriage, or are given them after, (ſo as the *Husband* hath but the uſe of them only;) and may diſpoſe of them by their *laſt Will*, at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better; the Husband being no leſſe churliſh and imperious than he would be otherwiſe. Which made *Caracalla* to ſay often, that onely that *Nation knew how to rule their Wives which added the Feminine Article to the Sun, and the Maſculine to the Moon*, as the *Germans* do. Moſt of them, as well *Wives* as *Virgins*, (except perſons of honour) uſe to go bare footed within doors, and ſeldom put on ſhooes, or ſtockings, but when they are to go abroad on their occaſions. A thing that ſeems the more ſtrange in regard of the extrreme coldneſſe of the Country, which is ſo fierce, that generally they lodge within two feather beds, both in ſummer and winter: and in moſt houſes have their *Stoves*, of which the doors and windows are kept very cloſe, as well to retain the heat, as to keep out the cold. Which though they may be uſefull and inoffenſive in Gentlemens houſes; yet in the *common Innes* where all ſorts of people are neceſſitated to throng together, the ill ſmels, never purged by admitting any freſh air, are ready to ſtifle and choak up the ſpirits of raw Travellers, not accuſtomed to them.

The diet of *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy*, is by a Traveller thus cenſured: the *Germans* have much meat, but ſluttiſhly dreſt; the *French* little, but neatly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other. And to ſay truth, the *Germans* have meat enough: the people being generally of good ſtomachs, and either by nature, or ill cuſtom, exceſſive both in eating, or drinking; ſeldom riſing from the table till they have conſumed all which was ſet before them. Inſomuch as in ſome places it is provided by Law, that in their feaſts they ſhall not ſit above five hours at the table. During which time, if by intemperance either in eating, or drinking, a man diſgorge his foul ſtomach in his fellows lap, or piſſe under the table, it is no diſgrace to him; nor at any time taken notice of to his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and exceſſive drinking, not only is cheriſhed among the Vulgar, but even amongſt their greateſt Princes: who beſide what they do in this kind themſelves, have their *drinking champions*, as well to anſwer all challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whoſe Cellar ſhall afford the greateſt and moſt capable Veſſels.

The title of the Father deſcends to all the Children; every ſon of a Duke being a Duke; and every daughter a Dutcheſſe; a thing which the *Italians* hold ſo ridiculous, that they put it in the forefront of this facetious *Satyre*. The Dukes and Earls of *Germany*, the *Dons* of *Spain*, the *Mounſieurs* of *France*, the Biſhops of *Italy*, the Nobility of *Hungary*, the *Lairds* of *Scotland*, the Knights of *Naples*, and the younger brethren of *England*, make a poor company. For by this common aſſuming of the Fathers honour, and parting his Lands among all the brethren, the Nobility is beyond reaſon multiplied, and no leſſe impoveriſhed: there being not long ſince, 17 Princes of *Anhalt*, and 27 Counts of *Mansfield*; to moſt of which, their Arms have been the beſt part of their riches; *& nihil niſi arma & manus, & in his omnia*, as *Tacitus* once ſaid of the ancient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchſafe to marry with the daughter of the *wealthieſt Merchant*; or ſuffer any of their ſiſters to be married to any under the degree of a Nobleman: nor any juſter cauſe of a diſheriting their Children, then *ignoble marriages*; never permitting the iſſue of ſuch a Bed to ſucceed in any of their *Fees*, Eſtates, or Titles, by means whereof though they debar themſelves from ſuch acceſſions of wealth as matches of that kind might bring them: yet, to the great honour of their generoſity in this particular, they preſerve the *pure ſtream* of their blood from running into *muddy channels*; and keep the *ſpirits* of brave men, though they want the *fortunes*.

The *Languages* here ſpoken are the *French* in *Lorrein*, and ſome Towns of the Biſhop of *Triers*, the *Italian* in the higheſt parts of *Tyrol*, which lye next to the Common-wealth of *Venice*; the *Sclavonian* ſpoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and ſome part of *Luſatia*: and the *high Dutch*, the general Language of the Country. A language very ancient doubtleſſe (though I am not ſo much a *Goropian* as to think it ſpoke in *Paradiſe*, or before the *Flood*,) and ſuch as by reaſon of the little or no impreſſion which the *Roman* Armies made upon this Country, hath leſſe Commixture with the *Latine*, than any which is uſed in theſe Weſtern parts, (the *Welch* excepted) and is very harſh by reaſon of its many Conſonants.

This Country was eſteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Forreſts, unprofitable Heaths, and unhealthfull Pools. *Germaniam informem terris, aſperam cœlo, triſtem cultu aſpectuque*, as he further addeth. And ſuch no doubt it was in thoſe times wherein *Tacitus* lived: the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated, nor any means found out to rectifie the ſharpneſſe of that Northern aire. But he who doth obſerve it now, cannot but confeſſe that there is no Country in the world either better planted, or repleniſhed with more goodly and Gallant Cities:

being alſo in moſt parts both pleaſant, healthy, and profitable, abounding with Mines of ſilver, and inferiour metals, plentifull in Corn and Wines, with which they ſupply the defect of other Nations; as alſo with Fleſh, Fiſh, Linnen, Quickſilver, Allom, Saffron, Armour, and other Iron-works. The Arable land ſo ſpacious in the Eaſtern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turned not back again till noon; ſo making but two furrows for his whole dayes work. For this *Verſtegan* is my Author, and if it be not credible, let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of moſt eminency in the elder times, were 1. *Arminius*, the Prince of the *Cheruſci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus*, and the *Roman* Legions. 2. *Witikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*: for the middle ages 3. *Otho* the firſt. 4. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. 5. *Rodulph* of *Habsburg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*. 6. *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*. 7. And the laſt Century of years. 8. *Frederick* the ſecond Electour *Palatine*, who made good *Vienna* againſt the *Turks*. 10. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter. 11. *Erneſt* Earl of *Mansfield*. 12. *John George* of *Jogerndorf*. 13. *Albert Wallenſtein*, Duke of *Frideland*, and divers other of late dayes.

Schollars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; learning being here ſo rare in the middle of the eighth Century, that *Vigilus* Biſhop of *Saltzburg* was condemned of Hereſie for holding that there were ſome *Antipodes*. In the next age there flouriſhed *Rhabanus Maurus*, *Haimo* of *Halberſtade*, *Walafridus Strabus*, men learned for the times they lived in. And in the following times, *Ockam*, a ſtout defender of the rights of the Empire, againſt the Encroachments of the Pope; *Otho Friſingenſis* the Hiſtorian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philoſopher: of which laſt it is ſaid, that he made the *Statua* of man, which with the help of artificial Engines could ſpeak articulately; and was the work of fifty years. Then in the dayes of our Grandfathers, we have, 1. *Martin Luther*, that great inſtrument of the reformation. 2. *Philip Melanchthon* his Coadjutor in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; thence called the *Phœnix* of that age. 3. *Joachim Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4. *Martin Chemnitius*, a ſolid and laborious writer. 5. *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian* Centuries, and Father of the *Rigid Lutherans*, 6. *Sebaſtian Munſter*, an induſtrious Coſmographer, and a learned Linguiſt. 7. *Silburgius*, and 8. *Buxdorfius*, as great *Linguiſts* as he: not to deſcend to further inſtances in thoſe, who have ſo filled the Marts of *Francfort* in theſe later times.

But the greateſt excellency of this people lieth in the *Mechanical* part of learning, as being eminent for many *Mathematical* experiments, ſtrange water-works, *Medicinal* extractions, *Chymiſtry*, the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no leſſe benefit than admiration of the world. Amongſt which I cannot chuſe but inſtance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent *Mathematician*, and a cunning Artizan, ſpoken of *Keckerman*; who at the coming of the Emperour *Maximilian* to the City of *Nuremberg* made a *wooden Eagle*, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and ſo accompanied him to his lodging. A thing if true (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuſe the world with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that miracle of a *flying Dove*, for which *Archytas* is ſo famed amongſt the ancient. Exceeded onely by himſelf in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of Art, becauſe leſſe in quantity) which at a Feaſt, to which he had invited ſome of his ſpecial friends, flew from his hand about the room, and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*. Expreſſed thus by Divine *Dubartas*,

> Once as this *Artiſt*, more with mirth than meat,
> Feaſted ſome friends, whom he eſteemed great;
> From his learn'd hand an *Iron Flie* flew out,
> And having flown a perfect Round, about,
> With wearied wings return'd unto her Maſter,
> And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
> O Divine wit, that in the narrow Womb
> Of a ſmall Flie could find ſufficient room
> For all thoſe Springs, Wheels, Counterpoiſe, and chains,
> Which ſtood inſtead of life, and ſpur, and reigns!

And amongſt theſe I reckon *Bertholdus Swart*, a *Franciſcan* Fryer, the inventer (though by accident) of the fatal inſtrument, the Gun, Studious in *Chymiſtry*, he mingled dried earth, ſulphur, and ſome other ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar, covered with a ſtone; and ſtriking fire to light a Candle, as the night came on, a ſpark by chance fell into the Mortar, and catching hold of the *Sulphur* and other Minerals, with great violence blew up the ſtone wherewith it was covered. Amazed at which, he made trial ſeverally of theſe ingredients, to find out which of them it was which produced that effect, which having diſcovered, he cauſed an iron pipe to be made, crammed it with *Sulpher*, *Saltpeter* and ſtones; and putting fire to it, ſaw with what violent noiſe and fury it diſcharged it ſelf. This invention he is ſaid to have firſt communicated to the *Venetians*, *Anno* 1330. or thereabouts, who having been often vanquiſhed by the *Genoys*, and driven almoſt to a neceſſity of yielding to them, by the help of their *Guns*, (*Bombards* they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable diſcomfiture. And this was the firſt battel that ever thoſe warlike pieces had a part in; which not long after, put to ſilence all the *Engines* and devices wherewith the ancients were wont to make their batteries. The next that made uſe of this inſtrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick* Sea; and not long after them, the *Engliſh*, at the ſiege of *Calice*, *Anno* 1347. about which time, they began alſo to be uſed in *Spain*. The *French*, it ſeemeth learned the uſe of them from the *Engliſh*:

and the firſt benefit received by them, was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute* Earl of *Saliſbury*, who at the ſiege of *Orleance* was ſlain with a great ſhot, *Anno* 1425. Twenty years after this, *An.* 1446 they were firſt uſed in *Spain*, at the ſiege of *Septenil*, a Town of the kingdom of *Granada*, by the *Caſtilians*, and after by degrees made common to the reſt of that Continent. And being grown common in this Continent, as well unto the *Jews* and *Moors* as unto the *Chriſtians*, it was not long before they taught it to the *Turks*. For the *Jews* being forced to abandon *Spain*, An. 1492. betook themſelves to *Greece*, and other parts of the *Turks* Dominions, to whom they ſhewed the Art of making Ordnance, Gunpowder, Herquebuzes, ſufficiently ſince uſed to the hurt of Chriſtendom. But ſomewhat before this the *Turks* had been in part beholding for them, to the Wars they had with the *Venetians*; beholding I ſay; for notwithſtanding the harm received by them at firſt, yet afterwards growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Vſſan Caſſanes*, and *Hyſmael*, two of the moſt mighty Emperours of *Perſia*, two memorable overthrows, by the help of their great Ordnance only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Perſians*: for as *Solyman* the *Turkiſh* Emperour objected againſt them, they not onely aided *Tamas* the *Sophi* with certain *Herquebuziers*, but alſo ſent him workmen to ſhew him the uſe and making of *Artillery*. Theſe great pieces at the firſt invention were rude, unwieldly, and charged with ſtone bullets onely: but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall, and the hand, which they now have. Whether now *Archery*, or *Gunning* be to be preferred, I ſtand not here to determine; only this I am ſure of, that victories have been of late purchaſed with leſſe expence of blood and life, than ever formerly. But of this Theam more perhaps hereafter, when we ſhall come to take the *Parthian* Archery into conſideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not eaſie to name, conſidering ſo many are here allowed; *Jews* being intermixt with *Chriſtians*, and theſe divided into *Papiſts* and *Proteſtants*; the latter alſo divided into *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, &c. The *Chriſtian* faith firſt planted here, if *Dorotheus* Biſhop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by S. *Thomas* ſirnamed *Didymus* one of the Twelve. But being there is little truſt unto his *Relations*, the beſt were to ſay with the *Magdeburgians* and the *Martyrologies*, that the *Germans* had not all the ſame *Apoſtle*: That the *Goſpel* was firſt preached amongſt the *Rhœtians* and *Vindelici* by S. *Lucius* of *Cyrene*; amongſt thoſe of *Noricum*, by S. *Mark*: by S. *Creſcens* at *Mentz*, S. *Clemens* at *Mets* in *Lorrein*; all of them *Apoſtolical* men, and of the number of the 70. after that by S. *Maternus* at *Colen*, and by S. *Eucherins* at *Triers*. That the faith was planted very early in theſe Countreys, *Ireneus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lyons*, *An.* 170. is ſufficient evidence; who takes notice of it: and that it proſpered very well, and took very good root, appeareth by the Biſhop of *Ments*, *Triers*, *Wormes*, *Spires*, *Baſil*, and *Strasbourg*, ſubſcribing to the Council of *Colen* in the reign of *Conſtantius* the ſon of *Conſtantine* the Great, *An.* 347. But the light hereof being extinguiſhed for a time, by thoſe barbarous Nations, who fell upon theſe out-parts of the *Roman* Empire, began to ſhine again, on the converſion of the *French*, in all parts of this Country: the Conqueſts and example of this puiſſant Nation, giving great incouragement thereunto. In which, as thoſe of other Countries do not want their honour, ſo the greateſt part thereof belongs to the *Engliſh Saxons*: *Willibrod* the firſt Biſhop of *Utrecht*, *Willibald* of *Aichſtat*, *Swibert* of *Virdin*, *Willibald* of *Breme*, and ſpecially *Boniface* the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, being moſt glorioully fortunate in that ſacred ſervice. The *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, and others farther off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the faith, they began to ſuck in the corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; diſcerned and oppoſed by *John Huſſe*, and *Hierom* of *Prague*, *Bohemian Divines*: who by reaſon of the marriage of King *Richard* the ſecond of *England* with the daughter of *Wenceſlaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the preaching of *Wiclef*; the points of whoſe Doctrine they approved and propogated. But theſe two being burnt at *Conſtance*, by the decree of that Council, their followers in *Bohemia* would not ſo give over; but after many ſufferings and much bloodſhed, obtained at laſt a toleration of the Emperour *Sigiſmund* their King: more able to make good his word in his own Dominions, than he had been to ſave the two *Martyrs* from the fire at *Conſtance*; to whom he had granted his ſafe conduct, for their coming and going. In this condition they remained, under the name of thoſe of the *Sub utraque*, or *Caliſtini*, becauſe of their adminiſtring the Sacraments in *both kinds*, till the riſing of *Luther*: who juſtly offended at the impious and unwarrantable aſſertions of Frier *Tekel*, and others of the Popes *Pardon-mongers*; firſt oppoſed their doings, and after queſtioned that authority by which they acted: falling from one point to another, till he had ſhaken the foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the ſucceſſe of his undertaking we ſhall ſpeak but little, as in a thing well known to all men of knowledge. Suffice it in this place to ſay, that his Doctrine was not only received in *Germany*, but generally imbraced in the great Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Swethland*, with the Provinces and Iſlands appertaining to them, in a great part of *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Tranſylvania*, as far almoſt as to the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea; but for the progreſſe of it here, (which we are more eſpecially at this time to inquire into) it was ſo well approved of, that that the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunſwick*, *Lunenbourg*, *Wirtenberg*, *Micklenberg*, and *Pomerania*; the Marqueſſe of *Brandenbourg*, the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, and moſt of the *Free* and *Imperial Cities* did adhere unto it, who from their *Proteſtation* made at *Spires* (the *Imperial Chamber*) to that effect, *Anno* 1529. had the name of *Proteſtants*. The next year following they delivered in the *Confeſſion* of their faith at *Auſpurg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confeſſio Auguſtana*; authorized, or tolerated at leaſt, after a long War, with variable ſucceſſe on both ſides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, at the *Pacification* made at *Paſſaw*, *An.* 1552. and afterwards more fully at *Ausburg*, (where their Confeſſion had firſt been tendred.) *Anno* 1555.

But not to paſſe over this great matter in theſe Generals only, we may know once for all, that in the year 1530. the Proteſtant Princes having tendered their Confeſſion at *Ausburg* (as before is ſaid) and finding it not ſo well received as they did expect, entred into a Confederation at the Town of *Smalcald* (belonging to the Duke of *Saxony*) for defence thereof, and for the defence of one another in purſuance of it. Into this confederacy firſt entred *John-Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony*, and his ſon; *Erneſt*, and *Francis*, Dukes of *Lunebourg*; *Philip* the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, *George* Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg*, the Cities of *Strasbourg*, *Nurenberg*, *Heilbrune*, *Ruteling*, *Ulmes*, *Lindaw*, *Conſtance*, *Mening*, and *Campedune*. Afterwards, *Anno* 1535. there entred into it *Barnimus*, and *Philip*, Princes of *Pomeren*; *Ulrick* Duke of *Wertenberg*, *Robert* Duke of *Zweibrucken*, (or *Biponts*, as ſome Writers call him) *William* Earl of *Naſſaw*, *George* and *Joachim*, Earls of *Anhalt*, the Cities of *Franckford*, *Hamborough*, *Auſpurg*, *Hannolder*; and not long after the *Palſgrave*, and King of *Denmark*. But this confederacy was like to have daſhed the buſineſs. For *Charles* the fifth looking upon it as a matter of dangerous conſequence to the power and ſafety of the Empire, and withall inſtigated thereunto by the Popes of *Rome*, whoſe intereſs was no leſſe concerned in it; conſidering that he could not otherwiſe untie this *Gordian* knot, reſolved to cut it with the ſword. At firſt the war ſucceeded luckily with the Proteſtant Princes, who armed themſelves upon the noiſe of his preparations: But there being an equality of Command between the Duke *John-Frederick* and *Philip* the Lantgrave, the one ſometimes not approving, otherwiſes thwarting the others Projects, the end proved not anſwerable. Beſides, the politick Emperour knowing full well that the forces of confederate States are oftner broken by delayes than Battel, avoided all occaſions of fighting, and thereby wearied out this great Army, which without performing any notable exploit, disbanded it ſelf, every man haſting home to defend his own. But none had more reaſon ſo to do, than the Duke Elector. For in his abſence, his couſin *Maurice* forgetting the education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him, and eſtated him in thoſe parts of *Miſnia* (maugre all oppoſition of the Popiſh party) which formerly had belonged to Duke *George* his Uncle; combined himſelf with the Emperor, and invaded the Electors Country: who notwithſtanding recovered not only all his own, but a great part alſo of thoſe lands and territories in which he had before Eſtated his ungratefull Kinſman. But while he was in this career, the Emperor ſuddenly falls upon him not far from *Mulberg*, (where the Duke was then hearing a Sermon) and by the ſuddenneſs of his coming routeth his timorous unprovided Army; the Duke himſelf with ſome few reſolute Gentlemen making head againſt him, till the moſt of them were ſlain, and the Duke taken priſoner. The next morning he was condemned to loſe his head, but pardoned at the laſt upon ſome conditions: amongſt which it was none of the leaſt, that he ſhould ſurrender his Eſtates, and reſign the Electoral dignity to be diſpoſed of by the Victor. As alſo that he ſhould without ranſom releaſe Marqueſſe *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, (a buſie and unquiet man) who was then his priſoner. This done, the Emperour fraudulently intrappeth the *Lantgrave*, as we ſhall ſhew more at large hereafter in another place; and carrying on the war from one Free City to another, compelled them to receive the Maſs, and to ſubmit to ſuch compoſition as he pleaſed to grant them; inſomuch as it was thought that the Emperour gained in this journey a Million and 600000 Crowns, and 500 pieces of great Ordnance. But theſe ſucceſſes were too great, and too unjuſtly grounded to continue long. For *Maurice* the new Duke Elector, who had married the Lantgraves daughter, and engaged himſelf unto his Children both by Word and Bond (and that too at the Emperours inſtance) for his ſafe returning, conceived himſelf unworthily dealt with ſo to be made the inſtrument of his Fathers thraldom, and therefore that he was obliged both in love and honour to leave no way untried, which might gain his liberty. And withall, finding cauſe to fear, that the courſe of the Emperours great ſucceſſes might end at laſt in the ſubverſion of the Common liberty, he ſecretly by an under-hand practice, called in the *French*, and raiſing forces under colour of the Emperours ſervice, gained Marqueſs *Albert* before-mentioned (who had then a running Army in the field) to aſſociate with him, and fell ſo ſuddenly on the Emperour lying then at *Inſpruch*, that he compelled him to run away in poſt-haſte by torch-light, and the Prelates to break off the Council of *Trent*, where at that time they were aſſembled. Upon which turning of the ballance a Peace ſoon enſued, which brought forth the Edicts of *Paſſaw* and *Ausbourg*, ſpoken of before, the beſt and ſureſt Pledges of the Peace of *Germany*.

In the mean time, whiles the *Lutherans* thus played their game, there ſtarted up another party; began at firſt by *Zuinglius* amongſt the *Switzers*, of whoſe both Doctrine and ſucceſſe we have ſpoken there. Theſe not communicating Counſils went two ſeveral wayes, eſpecially in the points of *Conſubſtantiation* and the *Real preſence*; not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongſt their followers. For *Calvin* riſing into the eſteem and place of *Zuinglius*, added ſome *Tenits* of his own to the former doctrines, touching *Predeſtination*, *Free-will*, *Univerſal Grace*, *Final perſeverance*, (points fitter for the *Schools* than a popular Auditory;) by which the differences were widened, and the breach made irreparable: the cauſe being followed on both ſides with great impatience, as if they did not ſtrive ſo much for *truth*, as *victory*. And of the two, thoſe of the *Lutheran* party ſeemed more violent (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not chuſe but ſtomach it, to ſee themſelves undermined and blown up by a new form of doctrine, not tolerated in the Empire, but under colour of conformity to the *Confeſſion* of *Ausbourg*. For *Zuinglianiſm* being entertained amongſt the *French*, a buſie and active people, ſpread it ſelf further in few years than it was propagated by the *Switzers* (men of the ſame temper with the *Dutch*) in all times before. Inſomuch as it did not only prevail in *France*; but by the reputation of *Calvin*, and the diligence of his followers, was wholly entertained in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, in many parts of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and even in *Germany* it ſelf: in which it got footing in all the territories of the Counts *Palatines* of the *Rhene*, in ſome of the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, in the Imperial City of *Strasbourg*, many of the *Hanſe-*

towns, and amongſt other Princes and Free Cities of inferior note. The reſt of *Germany*, containing the Patrimonial Eſtates of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, the Dukedoms of *Bavaria* and *Lorrein*, the territories of the three *Spiritual Electors*, and of all the other Biſhopricks in the hands of the Clergy, ſome of the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, part of the ſubjects of *Cleve*, and but three of the Imperial Cities (and thoſe ſmall ones too) that is to ſay, *Gmund*, *Uberlinque*, and *Dinkell-Spuell*, (unleſſe ſome more be added by the late great ſucceſſes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*) remain in their obedience to the See of *Rome*: all which together, will hardly make up one fifth part of this ſpaciour Countrey, the other ſort being in the power and poſſeſſion of the *Proteſtant* party; yet ſo, that there be many *Proteſtants* in *Bohemia*, *Auſtria*, and in other the Eſtates of the *Popiſh* Princes; as there be *Papiſts* in the *Free Cities* of *Frankford*, *Nurenberg*, *Ulm*, *Aken*, and ſome other places, beſides the late increaſe of them in both the *Palatinates*. Of ſuch a ſpeedy growth was the Reformation, that within the ſpace of 40. years, it was not only received in all thoſe Countries which do now profeſſe it; but had once alſo got ſome footing both in *Spain* and *Italy*.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly uſed for the Promoting of this work, by which it came to ſpread ſo far in ſo little time; and next upon the ſtops and hindrances which were given unto it, by which it was reſtrained from ſpreading further. 1. For the means uſed in the advancement of this work (next under the Almighty power of the moſt wiſe God) they were theſe eſpecially. 1. The tranſlating of the Scripture into vulgar Languages, which eaſily diſcovered the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, both in Doctrinals and Forms of Worſhip. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Miniſtry, both in Towns and Villages, for the Expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the capacities of the meaneſt Auditors; which gained exceedingly, both on the judgement and affections of the Common People, the courſe of Preaching having been formerly neglected by the Pariſh Curate, and turned off wholly in a manner to the begging Friars. 3. The publiſhing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which mightily inflamed the hearts of all ſorts of men; accuſtomed before to no other duties, than to tell over their *Credoes*, and *Pater-noſters*, and to keep a juſt account of their *Ave Maries*, and that moſt commonly in a tongue which they underſtood not. 4. The education of youth, eſpecially in Catechiſmes, containinig the whole body of Chriſtian Religion, which once well planted in their minds, could not ſo eaſily be pulled up or removed thence by any contrary perſwaſions. 5. Their continual offers of diſputation with the adverſe party, in a publick audience; which being denyed (as generally at the firſt it was) gave great aſſurance of the truth and ſoundneſſe of the one ſide, as of the falſhood and weakneſſe of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies, and Hiſtories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Conſtancy, both in the Readers and the Hearers, animated thereunto by thoſe brave examples which therein were preſented to them. One point of prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Proteſtant and Reformed Churches, for the compoſing of the differences which have grown between them: and this I look on as the firſt, and greateſt ſtop to the *Reformation* from proceeding farther, many men (not improbably) thinking that there muſt be ſome want of truth in the *Foundation* of that building, which had ſuch wide and open breaches in the *Superſtructures*. The *Tyranny* and terrour of the *Inquiſition*, by which it is kept out of *Spain*, and kept down in *Italy*, and all other parts of the Popes obedience; together with thoſe other policies both to diſcountenance and ſuppreſs it (which we have ſpoken of in our deſcription of the Papacy) may come next to this. Then add to theſe the care and diligence of the *Jeſuites*, and *Seminary Prieſts*, in applying themſelves to all their means which they found ſo effectual on the other ſide, thereby not only countermining their endeavours, but fighting them upon even ground with the ſelf-ſame weapons: And laſt of all, the plots and practices of the *Papal Miniſters*, in working on the humour, of the oppoſite parties, thereby enraging them not only into tongue-combats, and velitations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an ophen war once I am ſure, that by this means they have not only ſtopped the Progreſs of the Reformation, but would fain give themſelves ſome hopes to deſtroy it utterly, and thereby to reſtore the Pope to that power and ſplendor which formerly he had attained unto in theſe parts of *Europe*. But of theſe and ſuch like ſelf-flatterers, I ſhall ſay with *Seneca*, or rather in his words applyed to my own Intention,

——*Hæ manus* Trojam *erigent*?
Parvas habet ſpes Troja, *ſi tales habet.*

That is to ſay,

Shall theſe ſmall jarres reſtore the ruin'd Pope?
Small hopes he hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, thoſe that continue in obedience of the See of *Rome*, are under the old form of Archbiſhops and Biſhops; co-æval in all *Germany* (as in moſt places elſe) with the faith it ſelf. The *Calviniſts* (by which name the *Zuinglianiſt* now alſo paſſeth, if not eaten out) ſubmit themſelves for doctrine, diſcipline, and forms of worſhip, to *Calvins* Model; whereof we have ſpoke more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the *Epiſcopal* function from the *Revenues*: giving thoſe laſt to ſome of their younger Princes, with the title of *Adminiſtrators* of ſuch a Biſhoprick; the function or juriſdiction to ſome of the more eminent Clergy, with the title of a *Superintendent*, aſſigning to them a priority both of place and power before other Miniſters; which they enjoy for term of life, together with ſome liberal maintenance in proportion to it. In other things, as *order*, *habit*, and *title of dignity*, they differ not all from the other *Miniſters*:

And over them in the place of Archbiſhops, they have their *general Superintendents*; all of them of each ſort accomptable to the ſupreme *Eccleſiaſtical Conſiſtory* (as formerly to the *Provincial* or *National Synod*) made up of Counſellors of State, and the heads of the *Clergy*: So that the form ſeems to be much the ſame as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it ſeems to be; a great part of the Alteration being in the names; and that no other in a manner, than by changing the old *Greek* word *Epiſcopus*, into the new *Latine* word *Superintendens*: both ſignifying an *Overſeer*, though in different languages. And ſo *ex Græcis bonis, Latinas fecere non bonas*; in the Poets words: which brings into my mind the ſtory of a people of *Africk*, who having received much hurt by *Tigers*, made a Decree that no man from thenceforth ſhould call them *Tigers*, but give them a more harmleſs, or leſs hated name, and then all was well. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of government: ſo do they alſo come up to them in their forms of worſhip; retaining ſtill a ſetled and preſcribed *Liturgie* for all their Churches, moſt of the *holy dayes* obſerved in the former ages, the *Croſs* in Baptiſm, *kneeling* at the Communion, and many other innocent and *ſignificant* Ceremonies, commended to the Church by moſt pure Antiquity. In point of maintenance as defective as the *Calviniſts* are; few of their Miniſters having *Tithes*, moſt of them *penſions* or ſtipends, and thoſe ſmall ones alſo; ſeldom exceeding two or 300 *Guldens*, beſides wood for fewel, corn, and ſome other neceſſaries.

Now becauſe mention hath been made of the *Hanſe-towns* and *Imperial Cities*, we are to undeſtand that the Cities of this Country are of three ſorts. 1. Such as are holden in poſſeſſion by ſome of the Princes in way of inheritance, part of their patrimony and eſtates, as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munchen*, *Wittenberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held orignally of the Empire it ſelf, which are called *Free Cities*, for their great *Prerogatives* of coyning money, and governing themſelves by their *local* Ordinances; *Imperial* in regard they know no Lord or Protector but the Emperour only, to whom they pay two third parts of ſuch contribution, as are aſſeſſed in the Aſſemblies or general *Diets*, and 1500 *Florens* yearly for themſelves and their territories. They are in number about 60. many of which are of a fair and large eſtate, ſuch as are *Nurenberg*, *Ausburg*, *Ingolſtade*, *Spires*, *Worms*, &c. Of which thus *Guicciardine*. Thoſe (ſaith he) are called *Free Cities*, which acknowledging by a certain determinate tribute the authority of the Empire, do notwithſtanding in all other things govern themſelves after their own laws, not ſeeking to amplifie their *Territories*, but defend their *Liberties*. 3. The third ſort is of thoſe which are called *Hanſ-towns*, or *Hanſteden*, that is, (ſay ſome) *Anzeeſteden*, Towns upon the Sea, ſuch as thoſe were who firſt entred into this *confederacy*; but at this time the name extends to many in-land Cities, and of no great trading; joyned with them in a league for their common defence and preſervation. A league firſt made againſt the *Danes*, and the Earls of *Holſt*, by ſome of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them; that is to ſay *Lubeck*, *Hambourg*, *Roſtock*, *Wiſmar*, *Straelſund*, and *Luneburg*: but afterwards many other of the *Imperial Cities* and Towns of trade, aſſociated with them in an *offenſive* and *defenſive* league againſt all enemies whatſoever. In number about 72. thoſe of *Livonia* and *Pruſſia* being taken into the reckoning: many of which are able to put to ſea 150 good ſail of ſhips; ſuch as lie more within the land, contributing in money or otherwiſe to the common charge. Firſt hanſelled by *Waldomar* the 3d. of *Denmark*, whom they vanquiſhed in a Naval battel. After that growing into credit, and driving a great trade in moſt parts of *Chriſtendom*, they enjoyed many large and ample priviledges, whereſoever they came: called amongſt us ſometimes by the name of *Eaſterlings*, from their *Eaſternly* dwellings; and Merchants of the *Steel-yard*, from the place where they ſtowed their commodities; and *Guilda Teutonicorum* in regard of their nation, for the moſt part *Dutch*. But the *Engliſh* learning ſo much wit at the laſt, as to make uſe of their own ſhipping, they began here by little and little to decay; and are now almoſt worn out of memory with us, though ſtill of good eſteem and credit in other Countries.

The principal Rivers thereof, are 1. *Danubius*, or the *Danow*, which riſing out of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Schwartzen Wald*, as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* called *Don Eſchingen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the ſhores of the *Rhene*, paſſeth through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regensberg*, *Paſſaw*, *Vienna*, *Rab*, *Buda* and *Belgrade*. Beyond which it beginneth to be called *Iſter*, by which name moſt generally known amongſt the *Grecians*: and receiving into its chanel, from the long tracts of the *Alps*, the *Sarmatian* and *Carpathian* mountains, about 60 navigable Rivers, beſides leſſer Brooks, diſgorgeth his full ſtomach by ſeveral mouths (the names whereof we ſhall find in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine Sea*; the whole length of his courſe 1500 miles. Inſomuch as we may ſay with a modern Poet,

Cedere Danubius ſe tibi Nile negat.

O ſeven mouth'd *Nile*, I plainly ſee,
Danow will ſcarce give way to thee.

2. *Rhene*, (of whoſe original and courſe we have ſpoke more fully when we were in *Belgium*) which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a courſe of 800 miles, emptieth it ſelf into the *German Ocean*. All which ſhall here be added, is, that it gives the title of the *Rhine-Grave* to ſome Princes, of as good blood as the beſt in *Germany*, whoſe poſſeſſions and eſtates bordered near unto it, and from thence ſo called; but of late times decayed (almoſt to nothing) in their Eſtates, and living for the moſt part on the entertainment of other Princes, whom they ſerve in their wars; the Palſgraves of the *Rhene*, and two at the leaſt of the three Biſhops Electors, raiſing themſelves upon the ruine of this Houſe. 3. *Elb*, (*Albis*) which ſpringing out of the mountain of *Riſenberg* in the skirts of

Bohemia runneth a courſe of 400 miles, and paſſeth by the Cities of *Dreſden*, *Miſen*, *Torgan*, *Wittenberg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Lawenbourg*, Cities of the Electoral and Antient *Saxony*, and ſo betwixt the Dukedom of *Holſtein* (now part of *Denmark*) and the reſt of *Germany*. 4. *Odera*, which hath its fountain in the hithermoſt parts of *Moravia*; and after it hath run its courſe through *Brandenbourg*, and *Pomerania*, of ſome 300 miles in length, falleth at laſt into the *Baltick* Sea. 5. *Viſurgis* or the *Weſer*, which iſſuing out of the hills of *Turingia*, runneth through *Haſſia* and *Weſtphalen*, to the City of *Breme*; not far from which it falls into the *German Ocean*. 6. *Viſtula*, or the *Wixel*, which riſing out of the *Carpathian* mountains, betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, firſt paſſeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Pole*; then betwixt *Pomeren* and *Pruſſia*, and ſo into the *Baltick* Sea, the antient boundary of this Country, dividing it from *Sarmatia Europæa*, and the *Europæa Moſelle*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Vauge*, in the confines of *Lorrein*, and the Country of *Burgundy*, paſſeth directly thorough *Lorrein*, and the Diſtrict *Triers*, by the Cities of *Toule*, *Metz*, and *Triers* it ſelf, beyond which laſt it falleth into the *Rhene* at the Town called *Confluentz*. 7. *Sala*, or *Salta*, which riſing in the Mountains of *Fitchcelberg*, in the borders of the upper Palatinate, and paſſing by the skirts of *Miſnia* and *Saxonie*, ſpecially ſo called, falleth into the *Elb* beyond *Wittenberg*, having firſt watered the Cities of *Naumberg*, *Mersbourg*, and *Jene*, very obſervable for being the moſt Eaſtern bounds of the *Saxon* Conqueſts, by this River parted from the *Sclaves*. 8. *Manus*, or the *Maine*, which had its ſpring in the mountains of *Bohemia*, and paſſing by the Cities of *Bambergh*, and *Weirtixberg*, is received into the *Rhene* beneath *Franckford*. 9. *Amiſus*, or the *Ems*, which hath its fountain near *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*; and paſſing between the two *Friezlands*, falleth into the *German* Ocean, not far from *Emden*.

Chief Mountains of this mighty Country, beſides the *Alps* ſpoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are 1. *Abnoba*, now called *Schwartxewald*, (the preſent name both of this Mountain and the Forreſt of *Martiana*, which doth overſhadow it) out of which riſe the Springs of *Danow*, and the *Neccar*, two principal Rivers of this Country. 2. The *Sudeta*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the woods called antiently *Gabreta* and *Luna*, now called the Wolds of *Paſſaw* and *Behaimer* from the places adjoyning. 3. *Cetius* in *Auſtria*, now called *Culemberg*, the antient bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two *Roman* Provinces. 4. *Vogeſus*, commonly called *Vauge*, and by ſome *French* Writers *Le Mont de Faucities*, which encircling *Lorrein*, divideth it on the Eaſt and South from *Elſats*, and the County of *Burgundy*. As for the *Forreſts* of this Country, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, that of moſt note was the Forreſt of *Hercinia* (of which all the reſt were but limbes or branches.) The beginning whereof was about the borders of *Switzerland* and *Alſatia*, from thence running Eaſtward along the courſe of the *Danow* unto *Tranſilvania*, and thence declining on the left hand through the vaſt Countries of the *Lituanians*, *Moſcovites* and *Ruſſes*, in which laſt there are ſtill many vaſt Deſerts of it; the greateſt part thereof in *Germany* being long ſince conſumed; in place whereof are many goodly Corn-fields, and well-built Cities. A wood ſo formidable to the *Romans*, that they durſt never venture to ſearch the end of it; the length thereof after the end of 60 dayes journey being undiſcoverable, and the further ſearch into it quite laid aſide.

Theſe *Boundaries* and *Landmarks* being thus deſcribed, we ſhall the better follow the *Corography* of this great Continent, according to the ſeveral *Principalities* and Eſtates therein: having firſt taken a ſurvey of the antient condition of it, with ſo much of the ſtory as concerns the whole, before it came to be divided into ſo many hands. The Country firſt planted by the poſterity of *Gomer*, who deſcending from the Mountains of *Alcania*, their firſt Seat, in memory thereof firſt called *Gomerini*, after *Cimmerini*, by which made known to *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and others of the antient Writers: removed into the more fruitful plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris* which *Pliny* ſpeaks of. But that ſmall Province proving of too narrow a compaſſe to contain his Off-ſpring, and the adjoyning Countries being taken up in the former *Plantations*; they removed into the North-weſt of the *Euxine Sea*; where we finde a City of their building called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*; and the adjoyning ſtreight of *Fretum*, called by the name of *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. Driven from theſe dwellings by the more powerful *Scythians*, they ſpread themſelves into the Weſt, where they began to be called *Cimbri*, and by that name, and under thoſe of the *Ambrones*, and *Teutones*, ſeveral branches of them, intended an invaſion and conqueſt both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *niſi iſti ſeculo Marius contigiſſet*, had not *Marius* hapned to have lived in that Age; by whom diſcomfited and deſtroyed. That theſe *Gomerians* or *Cimbri* were the firſt Inhabitants of *Gaul*, *Germany*, and all the Nations of the North and Weſt of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the learned; divided into ſeveral Nations, and thoſe alſo ſubdivided into leſſer Tribes, and more obſcure families, amongſt which thoſe of *Teutones*, or *Tuiſcones*, from which the *Dutch* do ſo affect to derive themſelves, might be ſome of the principal. There ſetled, and not pleaſed with that deſert dwelling, ſuch of them as dwelt neareſt to the *Rhene* paſſed over that River; and beating the *Gauls* further up into the Country; poſſeſſed themſelves of their dwellings: enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Cæſar*) without any Rival. But *Cæſar*, moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the inſolencies of *Arioviſtus* a King of the *Germans* (for by that name for the Reaſons aforeſaid, the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being ſo afraid of this dreadful Enemy, *ut teſtamenta paſſim in principiis ſcriberentur*, (ſaith the Hiſtorian) that many of them made their *teſtaments* at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquiſhed by *Cæſar*, and *Arioviſtus* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans* by command of their General, made a bridge over the River, and rather terrified than conquered the neighbouring *Germans*: more fully brought into ſubjection by *Druſus*, the adopted Son of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, from thence called *Germanicus*, by whom not onely the *Rhœti* and *Norici* then lying out of the bounds of

Germany (now included in it) were ſubdued in fine, and brought into the form of *Roman* Provinces; but the whole Countrey, in a manner to the very Ocean, was forced to yield obedience to the *Roman* Empire. But this was for ſo ſhort a time, that it was both won and loſt during the reign and government of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. So that the whole eſtabliſhed Conqueſts of the *Romans* upon this Country; as it is now bounded, contained no more than the Provinces of *Germania*, and *Belgica prima*, with part of *Germania ſecunda*, belonging unto the Dioceſe of *Gaul*; the greateſt part of the two *Rhœtia's* being under the *Dioceſe* of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum*, and *Ripenſe*, with ſome parts of *Pannonia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum*. But none of theſe (as lying on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*, and the South of the *Danow*) did ever paſſe in the accompt of the antient *Germany*, the *Germans* not enduring the yoke ſo long, as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the luſt and inſolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who ſucceeded *Druſus* in that charge, they ſet upon him under the conduct of *Armenius*, a chief Prince amongſt them, kill him, and utterly cut off three Legions. After which defeat *Auguſtus* laid aſide the affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Druſus* had extended to the banks of the *Ocean*. ***Hac clade factum, ut imperium quod in littore*** Oceani ***non ſteterat in Ripa*** Rheni ***fluminis ſtaret***, ſaith the Hiſtorian. Nor did the *Romans* only forbear to revenge this loſſe, by making a new war upon them; but ſeemed more carefull to defend themſelves againſt their invaſions, than to incurre the hazard of a new defeat: quartering eight *Legions* with their ſeveral Wings and Aides, on the ſhores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the banks of the *Danow*, to keep theſe people from incroaching on the *Romans* Provinces. But the fatal period of that Empire drawing on apace, the *French*, *Burgundians*, *Almains*, and other *Dutch* Nations break through thoſe Guards, diſpoſſeſſe the *Romans* of all *Gaul*, *Rhœtia*, and *Noricum*, which they ſhare amongſt them: till in the end, the *French* prevailing over the reſt, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germany*; chiefly performed by the valour of *Charles* the Great, created *Emperour* of the Weſt by the people of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperial Crown by Pope *Leo* the 4th. on *Chriſtmaſs-day*, *Anno* 801. So that now the old Propheſie of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the Weſt, came to be accompliſhed; though *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle prediction. For when *Civilis* raiſed a Rebellion amongſt the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoyning) againſt *Veſpaſian*, then newly made Emperour: ***poſſeſſionem rerum humanarum*** Tranſalpinis ***gentibus portendi***, Druidæ ***canebant***; the *Druides* propheſied of the tranſlation of the Empire to the *Tranſalpine* Nations. Accompliſhed, as before is ſaid, in the perſon of *Charles* the Great, King of *France* and *Germany*. By whom divided, (for the better ordering or Governance of it) into ***Weſt-France*** or ***Weſtreicks***, in the barbarous *Latine* of thoſe times called *Weſtraſia*; containing the modern *France*, and ſo much of the *Netherlands* as lyeth on the *French* ſide of the River *Maes*; and *Oſten-rich* (*i.e.* the Eaſtern kingdom) in the *Latine* of thoſe times *Auſtraſia*, containing ſo much of the modern Ger*many* and *Pannonia*, as was poſſeſſed by the *French*, with the reſt of the *Netherlands*. This afterwards ſubdivided into the kingdoms of *Lorrein* and Ger*many*; whereof the firſt contained all Ger*many* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before deſcribed, the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois* excepted only, the kingdom of Ger*many* taking up the reſt. For in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, the ſon of *Charles*, the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many members, as *Italy*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Lorrein*, and Ger*many*; diſtributed amongſt his ſons and nephews, with the title of Kings: By means whereof the kingdoms of Ger*many* and *Lorrein*, united in the perſon of *Lewis* the *Antient*, in little time were alien'd from the Houſe of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*; poſſeſſed by the great Princes of *Lorrein*, *Saxony*, *Schwaben*, and *Bavaria*; by whom diſmembred into many principalities and inferiour ſtates, all paſſing under the accompt and name of the *Dutch* or Ger*mans*. The Kings and Emperours of which here follow.

The KINGS and EMPEROURS of *GERMANIE*.

Anno Chr.

801 1 *Charles* the Great Emperour, K. of *France* and *Germany*.

815 2 *Lodovicus Pius*, King of *France*, *Germany*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.

841 3 *Lewis*, ſurnamed the *Antient*, ſecond ſon of *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *Germany*, to which, *Anno* 876. he united that of *Lorrein* alſo.

4 *Charles* the *Groſſe*, ſon of *Lewis* the *Antient*, reigned at firſt joyntly with *Caroloman*, and *Lewis* his elder Brethren; after their deaths ſole King of *Germany*, *Anno* 880. he ſucceeded *Lodovicus Balbus* in the title of Emperour, continued unto his Succeſſors; and during the minority of *Charles* the *Simple*, by a faction of the *French* Nobility, was choſen King of *France*: the whole eſtate of *Charles* the Great, becoming once again united in the perſon of one Soveraign Prince.

891 5 *Arnulph*, the natural ſon of *Caroloman*, the brother of *Charles*, King of *Germany*, and Emp.

903 6 *Lewis*, or *Ludovicus* IV. (*Lewis* the brother of *Charles* and *Caroloman* being reckoned for one) King of *Germany*, and Emperour, the lawfully begotten ſon of *Arnulph*.

913 7 *Conrade*, the ſon of *Conrade*, the brother of *Lewis* the 4th. the laſt Prince of the maſculine iſſue of *Charles* the Great. After whoſe death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, ſeeing *Charles* the *Simple*, King of *France*, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroild by the Princes of the Houſe of *Anjou*, took that advantage to transfer the Empire to themſelves; and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperour. A worthy Prince, by whom ſome Nations of the *Sclaves*, the *Hungarians*, and part of *Lorrein* were ſubdued, or added to the Empire

929 8 *Henricus*, ſurnamed *Anceps*, or the *Fowler*, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the *German* Princes, but diſreigned by *Conrade*, as being eldeſt ſon of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgardis*, Daughter to the Emperour *Arnulph*, and conſequently a branch of the *Caroline* ſtock.

938 9 *Otho* ſurnamed the Great, the ſon of *Henry*, Emperour, and King of *Italy*. 36.

974 10 *Otho* II. ſon of *Otho* the firſt, Emperour, and King of *Italy*. 10.

984 11 *Otho* III. ſon of *Otho* the 2d. Duke of *Saxony*, and the laſt of that houſe which had the title of Emperour, and King of *Italy*. After whoſe death, all right of ſucceſſion being diſclaimed, the Emperours became *Elective*; but for the moſt part wholly ingroſſed or Monopolized (ſince the Failer of the houſe of *Saxony*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria*, and *Auſtria*, notwithſtanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The buſineſs firſt projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours leſſe powerfull, and diſtract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into ſides and factions: confirmed by a decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Country.

1002 12 *Henry* II. ſurnamed the *Saint*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the firſt Emperour elected according to the conſtitution of *Gregory* the fifth, but ſo elected, that he challenged it in a manner by the right of blood, as being the grandchild of *Henry* ſurnamed *Rixoſus* (the firſt Duke of *Bavaria*, of the *Saxon* race) the ſecond ſon of *Henry* the firſt, and conſequently the next heir male of that houſe after *Otho* the 3d. compelling ſome of the Electors who oppoſed his title by the force of Arms to yield unto it. So that the firſt Emperour who came in by a clear election; but not without a pretenſion of a title alſo, was

1025 13 *Conrade* II. Duke of *Franconia*, ſurnamed *Salicus*, Husband to *Luitgardis* one of the daughters of *Otho* the firſt, and conſequently not a ſtranger to the former *Family*.

1040 14 *Henry* III. ſurnamed *Niger*, the ſon of *Conrade*.

1056 15 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third, in whoſe dayes the Popes began to uſurp authority over the Emperours: inſomuch as *Leo* the ninth having received the Popedom at the Emperours hands, repented himſelf of it, put off his Papal veſtments, went to *Rome* as a private perſon, and was there new choſen by the Clergy. This done by the perſwaſion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7th. excommunicated this *Henry*, the firſt Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time, till the year 1254. there were continual wars and thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours; ſome of them being excommunicated, ſome forced to put their necks under the Feet of the Pope; others to quit the care of the Common-wealth, and betake themſelves unto the wars of the *Holy-land*, leaving the Pope to do what he liſt in *Germany*.

1106 16 *Henry* V. ſon of *Henry* the 4th. armed by the Pope againſt his Father; whom he had no ſooner ſucceeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too ſtiff in the buſineſs of *inveſtitures*, and raiſed up the *Saxons* againſt him, by whom vanquiſhed, and otherwiſe afflicted by the Popes practiſes, he was forced to ſubmit unto his commands, and was the laſt Emperour of the Houſe of *Franconia*.

1125 17 *Lotharius*, Duke of *Bavaria*, ſeized on the Empire without any *election*, reconciled unto the *German* Princes by the means of S. *Bernard*. He ſetled the affairs of *Italy* in two journeys thither. 13.

1139 18 *Conrade* III. ſon of *Frederick*, the firſt hereditary Duke of *Sueve*, or *Schwaben*, and ſiſters ſon unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquiſhed *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Proud*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and going to the *Holy-wars* with *Lewis* King of *France*, diſcomfited the *Turks* near the Banks of *Meander*. 15.

1164 19 *Frederick*, ſurnamed Barbaroſſa, Duke of *Sueve*, crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4th. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3d. to whom he was fain at laſt to ſubmit himſelf, the Pope inſolently treading on his neck. He went after to the *Holy-land* (where he dyed) having diſcomfited the *Turks* in three great battels. 39.

1190 20 *Henry* VI. ſon of *Frederick* King of *Sicil*, in right of *Conſtance* his wife; crowned by Pope *Celeſtine*, who imployed him in the wars of the *Holy-Land*; in his journey towards which he dyed at *Meſſina*. 8.

1198 21 *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, brother of *Henry* the 6th. excommunicated by the Pope (who loved not this Family) by whoſe means *Otho*, the ſon of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, was ſet up againſt him. The occaſion of great wars among the *Germans*, reconciled by marriage of *Otho* with a daughter of *Philip*. 9.

1207 22 *Otho* IV. ſon of *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3d. by whom not long after excommunicated, for taking into his hands ſome Towns of *Italy* which belonged to the Empire: vanquiſhed in *Brabant* by the faction raiſed up againſt him, he relinquiſhed the Empire to his Competitor.

1212 23 *Frederick* II. King of *Sicil* and *Naples*, ſon of *Henry* the 6th. having ſetled *Germany*, diſpoſed himſelf for the wars of the *Holy-Land*, where he recovered the poſſeſſion of the Realm of *Jeruſalem*; excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italy*; is not long after poiſoned.

1250 24 *Conrade* IV. ſon of *Frederick*, the laſt Emperour of the Houſe of *Schwaben*. After whoſe death, the Empire being diſtracted by the Popes practiſes into many factions, each faction choſe an Emperor or King of the *Romans*: ſo that at one time there were elected; *Henry*

Earl of *Turingia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile*, the renowned Author of the *Alfonſive* Tables, and

1254 25 *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, brother of *Henry* the 3d. of *England*, the beſt monyed-man of all his time, ſuppoſed therewith to buy the ſuffrages of the Archbiſhop of *Colen*, and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, *An.* 1254. and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he dyed. After whoſe death, or an *Inter-regnum* of 12 years from his *Exit* rather, the Title was at laſt accepted by

1273 26 *Rodolph* Earl of *Hapsburg*, a petit Prince, (others of greater Eſtates and Fortunes not dareing to take up the honour) the Raiſer of the preſent *Auſtrian* Family.

1292 27 *Adolph* Earl of *Naſſaw*, who ſerved in perſon under King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, againſt the *French*; for which diſrelliſhed by the *Germans*, he was encountred and ſlain near the City of *Spires*.

1298 28 *Albert*, Duke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Rodolphus* the Emperour, to whom Pope *Boniface* the 8th. gave the Realm of *France*, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the *Fair*. But *Albert* would not meddle out of *Germany*, and did nothing in it.

1308 29 *Henry*, Earl of *Luxembourg*, made a journey into *Italy* to recover the rights of the Empire, (where an Emperour had not been ſeen in 60 years) ſuppoſed to be poiſoned in the *Chalice*, by a Friar at *Benevent*, a Town of the Popes. 6.

1314 30 *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner; oppoſed by *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, choſe by another Faction, and crowned at *Bonna*, a Town of the Archbiſhop of *Coleno*; but being defeated, *Lewis* remained ſole Emperour, excommunicated by Pope *John*. 22. 33.

1346 31 *Charles* IV. ſon of *John* King of *Bohemia*, and grand-ſon of *Henry* the 7th. crowned with the iron Crown at *Millain*, 1354. the framer of the *Golden Bull*. 32.

1378 32 *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, deformed and vicious; depoſed by the *German* Princes. 22.

1400 33 *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*, paſſed into *Italy* for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Millain*, ſold by *Wenceſlaus*; but was well beat by *John Galeazzes*, and ſo returned. 10.

1410 34 *Jodocus Barbatus*, Marqueſſe of *Moravia*, Uncle to *Wenceſlaus*.

1411 35 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxembourg*, crowned at *Rome* on Whitſunday, 1432. travelled exceedingly for eſtabliſhing the peace of Chriſtendom, diſtracted at that time with three Popes at once; a great promoter of the Council of *Conſtance*.

1439 36 *Albert* II. Duke of *Auſtria*, ſon-in-law of *Sigiſmund*, whom he ſucceeded in all his eſtates and titles excepting *Luxembourg*. 1.

1440 37 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Auſtria*, and ſon of *Erneſt* of *Auſtria*, and next heir of *Albert* the 2d. procured the calling of the Council of *Baſil* for the peace of *Chriſtendom*; travelling for that cauſe to *Rome*, where declared Emperour, *Anno* 1442, 54.

1494 38 *Maximilian*, ſon of *Frederick*, Duke of *Auſtria*, who firſt united the eſtates of *Burgundy* to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went thorow with none. 25.

1519 39 *Charles* V. King of *Spain*, ſon of *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*. A puiſſant Prince, who had priſoners at the ſame time, the *French* King, and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruined the *League* made by the *Proteſtants* at *Smalcade*, took priſoners the Electors of *Saxony*, and the Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, drave the great Turk from *Vienna*, won the kingdom of *Tunis*; and in the end reſigned all his Eſtates, and dyed in a Monaſtery. 39.

1558 40 *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, the brother of *Charles* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charles*, *Anno* 1531. Upon whoſe reſignation he was choſen Emperour, *Anno* 1558. 7.

1565 41 *Maximilian*, the ſon of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, *Anno* 1562. ſucceeding in the Empire after his deceaſe.

1577 42 *Rodolphus*, the eldeſt ſon of *Maximilian*, had great wars againſt the *Turks*, with whom in the year 1600 he concluded a peace; but being undermined by his brother *Matthias*, was forced to ſurrender to him the kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and to content himſelf with *Auſtria* and the Empire only. Theſe eight laſt Emperours were all of the Order of the Garter.

1612 43 *Matthias* brother of *Rodolphus*, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*; in whoſe time were ſown the ſeeds of that terrible war, which had almoſt deſtroyed the Empire. Having no children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gratz*, to be declared Succeſſor into his Eſtates. 36.

1619 44 *Ferdinand* of *Gratz*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Charles* of *Gratz*, the younger ſon of *Ferdinand* the firſt, ſucceeded *Matthias* in all his Eſtates and titles. A Prince more zealouſly affected to the See of *Rome*, than any of his Predeceſſors; and a great enemy of the Proteſtant Religion; occaſioning thereby that long and bloody war in the Empire of *Germany*, not yet fully ended.

1637 45 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2d. broke the great power of the *Swedes*, (called in for the ſupport of the *German* liberty, againſt the violent reſolutions of his Father) at the battel of *Norlingen*; the 12th Emperour of the Houſe of *Hapsburg*, and the 9th of the Houſe of *Auſtria* without intermiſſion. The cauſe of which is to be attributed to *Charles* the fifth, who procured in his life time, that his brother might be choſen *Rex Romanorum*, as his Succeſſor in the Empire: A policy which hath been ever ſince continued by his Succeſſors; and the *Germans* are the more willing to hearken to it, becauſe the *Auſtrian* Princes are not only Natives of this Country, but better able to back out the Empire in its compleat Majeſty, than any of the reſt of that Nation are.

And to ſay truth, it is but need that ſome great Prince or other be *elected* to it, who by the power and reputation of his own eſtate, may preſerve the honour of the *Empire*: confined in a manner within *Germany*, and there ſo weakened by the alienating of whole Countries from it (ſome titulary acknowledgement excepted only;) that it is nothing in effect, but *magni nominis umbra*, the ſhadow of a mighty body, a meer empty title. For if we look upon the preſent ſtate and condition of it, we ſhall find it otherwiſe too weak, to ſupport the great and ſwelling title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire it ſelf it hath ſome Countries reputed as parts of it, which yet acknowledge no ſubjection, as *Belgium, Switzerland*, and *Denmark*: Some do acknowledge a kind of ſubjection, but the Princes of them come not to the *Imperial Diets*, as the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Lorrein*, and ſome of the *Italian* Potentates. Finally, ſome both confeſs the Emperour to be their Soveraign, and that they owe ſervice to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of *Germany* only; but thoſe ſo priviledged, ſo exempted from his commands, ſo abſolute and intollerable in their own eſtates, that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his perſon; of which we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter, when we come unto the form of the publick Government. In the mean time, if we would know by what occaſions the Empire became ſo infeebled; it may be ſaid, that the reaſons and occaſions of it have been very many. As firſt, the weakneſs and improvidence of the *Caroline* race, diſmembring from it many powerful and wealthy Provinces; reſerving only a bare *Homage*, and ſome ſlight acknowledgement. 2ly, The cunning of the *Popes*, who from the time of *Henry* the 4th, to *Rodolph* of *Hapsburgh*, had by their *Excommunications* and other practiſes, ſo exerciſed the Emperors with inteſtine troubles, that they forced them in a manner, to abandon *Italy*: inſomuch that the ſaid *Rodolph*, finding the inconvenience of it, ſold moſt of his Eſtates there to the faireſt Chapmen. 3ly, This done, and the *Popes* knowing well enough that they could not wax ſtrong in *Italy*, if they did not weaken the Emperors eſtate in *Germany*, firſt wreſted out of their hands the *Inveſtiture* of the *Biſhops, Abbots*, and other *Eccleſiaſtical preferments*: who being now made their own creatures, were ſo increaſed both in revenue and power by little and little, and fortified with ſo many immunities, that ſome of them grew in time to be *Free Eſtates*, all of them *Princes* of the *Empire*. 4ly, But fearing that this might not bring the Emperors low enough, they baited them with continual factions and perpetual broyls: which put them to a neceſſity of making what friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them, and taking up what monies they could of the wealthier Cities, paying them in *exemptions* and and Royal priviſedges, when they could not otherwiſe cancel or diſcharge the debt. 5ly, And unto this, the making the Empire *Elective* gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire, but as *Tenants* for *term of life*; and therefore were more likely to diſcharge ſuch debts by impairing the Publick *Patrimony*, which they had no hold in, than to diminiſh any thing of their own eſtates. 6ly, But being the title of Emperor was the greateſt honour, which any of that Nation could be capable of, and ſuch as by good husbandry might be made beneficial unto their poſterity, (as we ſee what good uſes have been made of it by the *Auſtrian* Family, ever ſince the time of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*:) who would not part with ſome of the *Imperial* rights, to advance his own Houſe to an equal greatneſs? And herein many of the Emperours were exceeding faulty, who to get the Empire to themſelves, or leave it after them unto their poſterity, diſmembred from the ſame many Towns and fair poſſeſſions, given by them to the *Electors* for their Votes and Suffrages. 7ly, A thing which the *Electors* underſtood ſufficiently, and therefore were reſolved to make the beſt of the Market, knowing that the commodity could be bought of none but themſelves: as in the *Election* of *Wenceſlaus* ſon of *Charles* the fourth, of whom it was but *ask* and *have*, what they had a mind to. By means whereof the Princes grew in time ſo ſtrong, that there were few of them who durſt not undertake a war againſt their Emperors. And this appeareth by the ſtory of *Charles* the fifth, who though the moſt puiſſant Emperour which had reigned in *Germany* ſince *Charles* the Great, yet found him himſelf ſo over-matched by theſe ruffling Princes, that he was willing to reſign the Empire to his brother *Ferdinand*.

But to proceed. By theſe and every of theſe means, the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Eſtates, and thoſe Eſtates to be made *abſolute* and *Independent*, as before is ſaid. The principal whereof, which being deſcribed will make up the *Corographie* of this great Continent, are thoſe of 1. *Cleveland*, 2. the Eſtates of the three ſpiritual Electors, 3. the Palatine of the *Rhene*, 4. *Alſatia*, 5. *Lorrein*, 6. *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*, 7. *Bavaria*, 8. *Auſtria*, and its *appendixes*, 9. the confederation of *Wederaw*, 10. *Franconia*, 11. *Wittenberg*, and 12. *Baden*, 13. the Palatine of *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatine*, 14. *Bohemia*, and the incorporate Provinces, 15. *Pomerania*, 16. *Mecklenberg*, 17. the Marquiſate of *Brandenberg*, 18. *Saxony* and the Members of it. 19. the Dukedomes of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, 20. the Lantgravedom of *Haſſia*, 21. *Weſtphalen*, 22. *Eaſtfriſeland*. Such leſſer States as being abſolute and free, are of leſſer moment, ſhall be reduced (together with the *Imperial* Cities) to thoſe ſeveral Provinces, in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Holſtein* or *Holſatia*, though it be *Imperial*, in which reſpect by ſome accounted as a province of *Germany*: yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that kingdom; I ſhall there ſpeak of it. Some of theſe are thus cenſured by *Aubanus* a late

Cleveland.

late Writer. They of *Suevia*, (ſaith he) are Whores; they of *Franconia*, Raviſhers and Buggers; they of *Bohemia*, Heretiques; thoſe of *Bavaria*, Thieves; they of *Saxony*, Drunkards; they of *Friſeland*, and *Weſtphalia*, Swearers; and they of the *Palatinate*, Gluttons. But I hope charitably of them all than ſo. I know there is another diviſion of this Country, made by the Emperour *Maximilian* at the Diet of *Colen*, *Anno* 1522. who for the better raiſing both of men and money for all Publick ſervices, cauſed it to be divided into the ten Circles of, 1. *Lower Saxony*, 2. *Upper Saxony*, 3. *Weſtphalin*, 4. of the *Rhene*, 5. of the *four Electors* of that part, 6. *Franconia*, 7. *Suevia*, 8. *Bazaria*, 9. *Auſtria*, and 10. *Burgundy*. But that before propoſed being the more particular, I ſhall follow that, according to the order before laid down: beginning firſt with thoſe, which together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, contained antiently the Provinces of *Belgica*, and *Germania prima*, and ſome part of *Germania ſecunda*; and made up the kingdom of *Auſtraſia* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called.

CLEVELAND.

CLEVELAND, or the Eſtates of the Duke of *Cleve*, before diſmembred and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedom, on the death of the laſt Duke hereof, *Anno* 1609. contained the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, and the Earldom of *Mark* or *March*, all lying in a ring together. And though theſe two laſt lie on the other ſide of the *Rhene*, and ſo not properly within the old precincts of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, or any of the *Roman* Provinces before named: yet being they belonged all to the ſame Prince, not parted by the interpoſition of other Countries, they ſhall be handled here together as the ſame Eſtate.

1. The Dukedom of CLEVE, properly and diſtinctly ſo called, hath on the Eaſt, the Countries of *Mark* and *Berg*, with ſome part of *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt, *Guelderland*, and ſome part of *Limbourg*; on the North, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, and the Land of *Over-Yſſel*; and on the South, *Gulick* and the land of *Colen*. So called from *Cleve* the chief Town of it.

The Country very fruitful both for Corn and Paſturage, well ſtocked with Cattel of all ſorts, for neceſſary uſe and pleaſure; good ſtore of *fowl*, both tame and wilde: bleſſed alſo with an healthy air, and in a word, with all things needful for the life of man: well watered with the *Rhene*, the *Roer*, the *Duſſel*, the *Ezfat*, and the *Nirſi*, common to this and the reſt of the incorporated Provinces.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Cleve*, (in Latine *Clivia*) ſo called becauſe built on the ſides of three little hills (which the Latines call *Clivi*) gently deſcending towards the Banks of the *Rhene*, which not far off divides into ſeveral Channels. An antient Town, and of great note in former time, as appears by many old foundations, and other monuments of Antiquity, continually digged up in the fields adjoyning; but chiefly by an old fore-ſquare Tower, built on the higheſt of the three hills, of great height and ſtate; founded by *Julius Cæſar* as a Bulwark againſt the *Germans*, inhabiting the further ſide of the River. For proof of which, beſides the old tradition conſtantly maintained, there is an *Inſcription* on the Gates of the Dukes Palace, near adjoyning to it, which ſaith *Anno ab Urbe* DCXCIIX. C. Julius Dictator, *his partibus ſubactis*, *hanc Arcem fundavit*, *i. e.* that in the year 698. from the building of *Rome Julius Cæſar the Dictator*, having ſubdued thoſe parts of the Country, cauſed this *Tower* to be built. 2. *Santen*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, a Town of great Antiquity, as the ruines of it do declare; ſuppoſed by *Pighius* to be the *Trajana Colonia*, of the Antients. 3. *Weſel* (in Latin, *Veſalia*) a fair and rich Town, ſeated on the confluence of the *Rhene* with the River of *Lippe*; which riſing in *Weſtphalia*, doth here loſe it ſelf: of great note for a Colledge of ſecular Canons, built here by *Eberard* the ninth Earl, *Anno* 840 or thereabouts; and an Hoſpital liberally endowed for old impotent perſons, founded by *Henry de Baers*, the Dukes *Chancellour*. A Town not ſubject to theſe Dukes, though within the Dukedom, being reckoned an Imperial City, and one of the *Hanſe-towns*; now neither ſo Imperial nor ſo Free, as formerly: poſſeſſed firſt for the *Spaniard* with a Garriſon of 3000 men, (at the beginning of the war of *Cleve*) by D. Lewis *Velaſco*; and from thence taken by the *States* of the *United Provinces*, Anno 1628. 4. *Burich*, on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, over againſt *Weſel*, amongſt goodly Corn-fields, and pleaſant Paſtures. 5. *Duisberg*, or *Tuitchberg*, in Latin called *Teuto-burgum*, a Town of the antient *Germans*, (as the name importeth) ſituate on the *Rhene*, betwixt the *Angra* and the *Ruer*, two noted Rivers. A Town formerly of great trading, and notably well built: Imperial, and one of the *Hanſe*, but ceaſed to be Imperial when ſold by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* to *Theodorick* the ninth of that name, Earl of *Cleve*; together with 6 *Cravenburg*, another Town of this Dukedom, but of leſſer note. 7. *Emmerick* on the *Rhene*, a well frequented Town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8. *Rees*, 9. *Griet*, and 10. *Griethuſen*, all upon the *Rhene*. 11. *Calcar*, a Town more within the Land, but not far from the River; grown wealthy by the trade of cloathing, and the beſt *beer* or *ale* in all theſe parts, ſold thence abundantly into the Country round about. Not far from whence, at a place called *Auf de Baern*, it is ſuppoſed that *Cæſar Germanicus* built his Bridge over the *Rhene*, when he went from *Vetera Caſtra* againſt the *Marſi*, a Nation of *Germany*. 12. *Gennep*, upon the *Niers* or *Nirſi*, not far from its influx into the *Maes*; which together with *Duiſſele* and *Riexward* were bought of *Sigiſmund* the Emperour by *Adolph* the firſt Duke of *Cleve*, for a great ſum of money.

South of the Land of *Cleve*, betwixt it and *Colen*, lyeth the County of MUERS, extended all along on the banks of the *Rhene*; a diſtinct State, the Earl of which is ſubject to no other Prince, but the Emperour onely: ſo called from *Muers*, the chief Town of it, ſituate on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, over againſt *Duyſburg*. Next Towns to which are, 2. *Orſey*, 3. *Angur*; of which little memorable. A ſmall Territory, but in a very fruitful ſoil. The neighbourhood whereof to the land of *Colen* (to

Gulick-land. which it ſerveth as an Out-work upon that ſide) preſerving it in former times from the Dukes of *Cleve*; who otherwiſe, no doubt, either by Arms or Marriage had been maſters of it; as they were of the adjoyning Provinces, on both ſides of the River.

2. *GULICK-LAND*, or the Dukedom of *Gulick*, hath on the Eaſt, the County of *Muers*, and the land of *Colen*; on the Weſt *Guelderland* and *Limbourg*; on the North, **Cleve**; and on the South, the reſt of the land of *Colen*. The Air and Soil much of the ſame nature as in *Cleve*; ſave that here is a greater plenty of Woad for dying, and a better breed of Horſes than in the other. The Seat of the *Menapii* in the times of old.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Gulick*, in *Latine Juliacum*, (whence the *French* call it *Juliers*) knowing that name in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, ſufficient proof for the Antiquity thereof; but not otherwiſe famous. Seated upon the River *Roer*; the chief ſeat heretofore of the Dukes of *Gulick*, before the uniting hereof with *Cleve*: and ſince the diſſolution of that Eſtate poſſeſſed ſometimes by the States of the *United Provinces*, and ſometimes by the *Spaniards*; called in by the Competitors to aſſert their Titles. 2. *Dueren*, on the ſame River, the *Marcodurum* of the old Writers; and of late memorable for the long ſiege which it held againſt *Charles* the fifth, in his wars againſt *William*, Duke of *Cleve* and *Gulick*, for the Dukedom of *Gueldres*. 3. *Munſter Eyphelt* (in *Latine*, *Monaſterium Eyphaliæ*) ſo called, to diſtinguiſh it from *Munſter* of *Weſtphalen*; pleaſantly ſeated in a valley begirt with Mountains, not far from the ſpring or fountain of the River *Erfae*. 4. *Caſter*, ſo called of a ſtately and magnificent *Caſtle*, built for defence of this part of the Country. 5. *Berken*, on the River *Erp*. 6. *Meroden*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which gives name to an honourable and antient Family. 7. *Enskerch*. 8. *Berklen*, &c.

There is alſo within the limits of this Dukedom, the famous Town of *Aix*, as the *French*, or *Aken*, as the *Germans* call it: famous of old times for the *hot Baths* both within and without the Town; whence it had the name of *Aix*, or *Aquen*, (in *Latine*, *Aquiſgranum*) ſituate on the edge of *Limbourg*, in a fruitful ſoil; but the buildings nothing anſwerable to the fame of the place. Inhabited for the moſt part by *Smiths* and *Braſiers*, who drive the greateſt trade herein; working continually on Iron and other Metals, with which they are ſupplyed abundantly out of *Liege*, and *Limbourg*. The Town *Imperial*; but under the protection of the Dukes of *Cleve*: at the expiration of which Family, under colour of ſome quarrels about *Religion*, it was ſeized on, and garriſoned by Marquis *Spinola* for the King of *Spain*. Of great fame formerly for the death and ſepulture of *Charles* the Great, by whom made one of the three Seats of the Weſtern Empire, and deſigned by him to be the place in which the *King* of the *Romans* ſhould receive his Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany*, at the hands of the Archbiſhop of *Colen*. The Town ſuppoſed to be formerly the wintring Camp of the *Romans*, called in *Tacitus*, *Vetera*, which was taken by *Civilis*, in the beginning of his rebellion againſt *Veſpaſian*; during which wars, it is often mentioned by the Writers of thoſe times. They were built and ſtrengthened by *Auguſtus*, the better to keep under the *Germans*; *quippe illis hybernis obſideri premique* Germanias Auguſtus *crediderat*, as *Tacitus*. At this day this Town and *Triers* are reputed famous for holy reliques: here being ſaid to be amongſt others, the *bearing cloth* wherewith our Saviour was wrapt when he was in his ſwadling-clouts; which the Emperour ſolemnly worſhipped at his *Inauguration*. Concerning the ambition which the Papiſts have to be thought poſſeſſors of theſe *reliques*, ſee I beſeech you how pittifully they have mangled the head of S. *John Baptiſt*. They of *Amiens* brag that they have his face, and ſo do they of S. *John D' Angelie*. The reſt of his head is at *Malta*, yet is the hinder part of his ſcull at *Namur*, and his brains at *Novum Roſtovienſe*. Another part of it is at *Maurienne*, another piece at *Paris*; his jaw at *Weſel*, his ear at S. *Flowres*, his fore-head and hair at S. *Salvadores* in *Venice*; another part of his head is at *Noyon*, and another at *Luca*; yet is his whole head intire and unmaimed in S. *Sylveſters* Church at *Rome*; and ſo no doubt is this bearing cloth, at more places than one.

But to return again to *Gulick*, It was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Dukes of *Lorrein*; whether layed to it at the firſt erection of that Dukedom, as ſome Writers ſay, or added to it by the Princes of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, when they ſucceeded in the ſame, I dare not poſſibly determine; although the lying of this Country within the antient Verge or perambulation of the great Forreſt of *Ardenne*, makes the laſt in my opinion not to be improbable: Firſt made an *Earldom* of its ſelf in the perſon of *Euſtace*, brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrein*, who ſeiſed upon it as his part of the Eſtate on the death of *Godfrey*; his elder brother **Baldwin** being abſent in the *Holy-Land*. In the perſon of *William* the 4th. of that name, it was made a Marquiſate, advanced unto that honour by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *Anno* 1329. created not long after Duke of *Gulick* by *Charles* the 4th. *Anno* 1356. His eſtate much augmented about that time, or but ſhortly after, by his marriage with *Mary*, Siſter and Heir of *Rainold*, and *Edward* Dukes of *Gueldres*, adding thereby that Dukedom unto this of *Gulick*. His two ſons *William* and *Rainold*, both Dukes ſucceſſively, dying without iſſue; the eſtate fell to *Adolphus*, Duke of *Berg* or *Mont*, as the next heir male, *Anno* 1425. and finally, together with that of *Berg* was added to the Dukedom of *Cleve*, by the marriage of *Mary* heir hereof, with *John* the 3d. Duke of **Cleve**, with which conjoyned till the expiration of that noble Family; whereof more anon.

As for the Eſtates of *Berg* and *March*, they had one original, begun by two brothers, the ſons of *Theodorick* Lord of *Teiſterbant*, of the Houſe of *Cleve*; out of which houſe as they deſcended, ſo into that they finally were again reſolved, as the firſt materials. Of theſe two brothers, *Adolphus* being the Elder, was by the Emperour *Henry* ſurnamed the *Fowler*, made Earl of *Altena*, *Anno* 930. or thereabouts:

Gulick and *Berg.*

abouts: and *Eberard* the younger, by the ſame Emperour made Earl of *Berg*. But *Eberard* entering a Monaſtery of his own Foundation, left his Eſtate and Earldom of *Berg* to the elder brother. United thus into one eſtate, they became again divided betwixt the ſons of *Adolph*, the third of that name, and fourth Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*: *Engelbert* the younger ſon enjoying the eſtate of *Berg*, and *Eberard* the elder ſucceeding his father, in that of *Altena*. How they became united to the Houſe of *Cleve*, we ſhall ſee hereafter; having firſt looked over the *Chorographie* or *Deſcription* of them.

3. The Dukedom of BERG, bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, and the Country of *March*; on the Weſt, with the *Rhene*, from *Weſel* up as high as *Colen*, by which parted from the Dukedom of *Cleve*; on the North, with the River *Lippe*, which ſeparates it from the reſt of *Cleve*; and on the South, with the Land of *Colen*. So called from the hillineſs of the Country, *Berg* in *Dutch* ſignifying a hill, (as *Bourg* doth a Town or Burrough) from whence the Earls and Dukes hereof are called *Montenſes* in *Latine*, and *Les Contes*, and *Ducs de Mont* in *French*. The Country for the moſt part, in the Vales eſpecially, yields a great ſtore of the beſt wheat, and conſequently of the pureſt bread; and in the hill Countries rich Mines of Coal, whereby they do ſupply their neighbours.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Duſſeldorp*, ſo called of the River *Duſſel*, upon which it is ſituate, the River not far off falling into the *Rhene*. 2. *Adenbourg* built by *Eberhard*, the firſt Earl of *Berg*, the ſeat of him and his Succeſſors, till removed to *Duſſeldorp*. 3. *Keiſerſwerd*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, belonging antiently to the Empire, but bought for a great ſum of mony of *Charles* the 4th. by *John*, Earl of *Cleve*. 4. *Mulheim*, on the *Rhene* alſo, juſt againſt *Colen* on the other ſide of the water; fortified in the year 1614. and made the Receptacle of the Proteſtants of that Biſhoprick, prohibited the free exerciſe of Religion in their own dwellings; but raiſed not long after by Marquis *Spinola* on complaint made by thoſe of *Colen* to the Emperour *Matthias*. 5. *Stelt*, or *Steltium*, on the *Roer*, amongſt the Coal-mines. 6. *Angermond*, on the mouth of the River *Angra*, as the name imports. 7. *Eſſen*, or *Eſſendia*, on the borders of the County of *March*, once an *Imperial*, but under the protection of the Earls of *Berg*. Of moſt note for a Monaſtery here built by *Alfride* the 4th. Biſhop of *Hildeſheim*, for 52 Nuns and 20 Canons, liberally endowed, and having great command on the *Dorps* adjoyning.

How *Berg* at firſt was made an Earldom, how joyned unto *Altena*, and disjoyned again, hath been ſhewed before. No ſooner made a State diſtinct, but it was added to the Patrimony of the Earls of *Gulick*, by the marriage of Earl *William* with the daughter and heir of *Berg*; Parted again betwixt *William*, and *Adolphus*, ſons of *Gerrard* the 2d. *Anno* 1247. the firſt ſucceeding in the Earldom of *Gulick*, and the laſt in *Berg*. During this partage, made a Dukedom in the perſon of *William* the firſt of that name, *Wenceſlaus* the Emperour, *Anno* 1389. whoſe ſon *Adolphus*, as next heir, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Gulick*, *Anno* 1423. How both were added unto *Cleve*, hath been ſaid already.

The DUKES and EARLS of

A. Ch.		***BERG.***	A. Ch.		***GULICK.***
	1	*Englebert* the firſt Earl of *Berg*, diſtinct from *March*.	1129	1	*Euſtace* the firſt Earl of *Gulick* diſtinct from *Lorrein*.
	2	*Adolphus*, ſon of *Engelbert*,		2	ſon of *Euſtace*.
	3	*N.* the ſiſter of *Adolphus*.		3	*William* Earl of *Gulick*.

>—<

4 *Gerrard*, Earl of *Gulick* and *Berg*.
5 *William* II. ſon of *Gerrard*.
6 *Gerrard* II. ſon of *William* the 2d.

A. Ch.		*BERG.*	A. Ch.		*GULICK.*
1247	7	*Adolphus* II. younger ſon of *Gerrard* the 2d. took priſoner by the Archbiſhop of *Colen*, (whom not long before he had held in cuſtody) ſhut up in an Iron veſſel daubed with honey, and moſt miſerably ſtung to death by Bees.	1247	7	*William* III. eldeſt ſon of *Gerrard* the 2d.
1296	8	*William* III. ſon of *Adolphus*.		8	*Gerrard* III. ſon of *William*.
1337	9	*Gerrard* III. ſon of *William* the 3d.		9	*Gerrard* IV. ſon of *Gerrard* the 3d.
	10	*William* IV. created the firſt Duke of *Berg*, *Anno* 1389. outed of the greateſt parts of his eſtate by his ſon *Adolphus*.	1325	12	*William* IV. created firſt Marqueſs, after Duke of *Gulick*.
			1366	11	*William* V. Duke of *Gulick* and *Gueldres*, this laſt accruing to him in the right of his Mother *Mary*, heir of that eſtate.
			1404	12	*Rainold*, Duke of *Gulick* and *Gueldres*; who dyed in the year 1423.

A. Ch.

11 *Adolphus* III. the ſon of *William* the firſt Duke of *Berg*, ſucceeded alſo unto *Rainold* the laſt Duke of *Gulick*, dying without iſſue, as the next heir male, the Dukedom of *Guelderland* falling by the heirs general to the Houſe of *Egmond*.

1434 12 *Ger-*

Cleve and *Mark.*

1434	12	*Gerrard* IV. of *Berg*, and V. of *Gulick*, ſon of *William*, and brother of *Adolphus*.
1475	13	*William* V. of *Berg*, and VI. of *Gulick*, ſon of *Gerrard*.
1511	14	*Mary*, daughter and heir of *William*, Dutcheſſe of *Gulick*, and *Berg*, conveyed the whole eſtate in marriage to *John* the 3d. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, continuing in that Family till the expiration of it in the perſon of *John William*, the laſt Prince hereof, *Anno* 1610.

4. The Earldom of *MARCH*, or *MARK*, hath on the Eaſt, and North, *Weſtphalia*; on the Weſt, the Dukedom of *Cleve*; on the South, that of *Berg*, or *Mont*. So called as being ſeated in the *Marches* of *Weſtphalen*, out of which it was taken. The Country for the moſt part like the reſt of *Weſtphalen* more fit for paſturage than Corn: woody and yielding ſtore of *pannage* to thoſe herds of Swine, with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Werden* upon the River *Ruer*, on the edge of *Weſtphalia*, the people whereof get great wealth by grazing of Cattel. 2. *Soeſt* (in *Latine*, *Suſatum*) for wealth and greatneſſe not inferiour to any in *Weſtphalen*, (except *Munſter* only) conſiſting of ten pariſhes, and Lording it over many rich and pleaſant Villages. Antiently it belonged to the Biſhops of *Colen*; but in the year 1444. did voluntarily yield it ſelf to the Duke of *Cleve*, (being then Earl of *March* alſo) and by Duke *John* the 4th. couragiouſly defended againſt thoſe *Prelates*. 3. *Arnsberg*, a fine and pleaſant ſite, uſed for a retiring place by the Electors of *Colen*, unto whom it belongs. 4. *Dortmond*, (in *Latine*, *Tremonia*) a Country antiently of it ſelf, and held immediately of the Empire; poſſeſſed by the *Trotmanni*, a tribe of the *Suevians*, from whence firſt called *Trotmania*; and at laſt *Tremonia*. 5. *Blancoſtein*, built commodiouſly by *Adolphus* the fifth of that name, and firſt Earl of *March*; as was alſo 6. *Ham*, or *Hammone*. 7. *Unna*, of which nothing memorable. 8. *Altena*, the firſt title of the Earls of this Houſe, before they aſſumed that of the Earls of *March*, aſſumed firſt by *Adolphus* the 4th. on the Conqueſt of ſome Lands in the *Marches* of *Weſtphalen*, continuing in that Family till united with *Cleve*.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of *CLEVE*, out of which it was taken, and to which the reſt of thoſe eſtates did in time accrew; it was one of the moſt antient Eſtates or Principalities in theſe parts of the World; continuing in a direct line for the ſpace of 900 years: held by them of the Kings of *France* and afterwards of the Kings of *Lorrein*, till the incorporating of that kingdom with the *German* Empire. Begun firſt by *Elias Grallius*, companion to *Charles Martel*, in his wars againſt the *Friſons*, *Saxons*, and *Bavarians*; whoſe ſon *Theodorick* added hereto by marriage the County of *Teiſterbant*, containing the Towns and *Signeuries* of *Altena*, in *Weſtphalen*; as alſo of *Bornel*, *Heuſden*, *Buren*, *Culemberg*, in the *Belgick* Provinces. By *Baldwin* the ſixth Earl was added the territory of *Twentzen* (in *Latine*, *Regio Tuentana*) given him by *Ludovicus Pius*; by *Theodorick* the fifth, the Town and *Signeurie* of *Duiſlack*, ſetled upon him on his marriage with *Matilda*, the heir thereof: by *Theodorick* the 9th. the County of *Hulkenrade*, near *Nuys*, in the land of *Colen*; together with the Towns of *Duysbourg*, and *Culembourg*, bought of *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*: by *John* his ſon, the Town and territory of *Keiſarwerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4th. By *Adolph* the 29th. Earl, the Earldom of *March*, formerly taken out of it, was again united: by *Adolph* his Succeſſor, (made the firſt Duke hereof by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, *Anno* 1417) the Lordſhips of *Gennep*, *Duiſſels*, and *Reixwald*, bought of the ſaid Emperour; together with the County of *Ravenſtein*, the Towns of *Leoberg*, *Liniers*, and *Hatteren*, for the ranſom of *William* Duke of *Berg*, and other Noble perſons taken priſoners by him, *Anno* 1397. By *John* the firſt Duke of that name, the Town and territory of *Soeſt*; and finally by *John* the 3d. the Dukedoms of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as heir thereof by his mother *Mary*, ſole daughter and heir of *William* the fifth and ſixth, the laſt Duke thereof. To which great hight this antient and noble Family had not long attained, and thereby made themſelves and their ſons and daughters fit matches for the greateſt Princes: but it pleaſed God to bring it to its fatal end, and by that means to diſſipate this brave eſtate in the hands of ſtrangers; as ſhall be ſhewed in the concluſion of this Catalogue of

The EARLS and DUKES of *CLEVE*.

A. Ch.		
717	1	*Elias Grallius*, companion in the wars of *Charles Martel*.
732	2	*Theodorick*, Earl of *Cleve*, and Lord of *Teiſterbant*.
755	3	*Rainold*, ſon of *Theodorick*, Earl of *Cleve*, and *Teiſterbant*.
767	4	*Conon*, of great fame in Arms, under *Charles* the Great.
778	5	*John*, ſon of *Conon*, married the daughter of *Michael Curopalates* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*.
790	6	*Robert*, the eldeſt ſon of *John*.
798	7	*Baldwin*, the brother of Earl *Robert*. After whoſe death, *Anno* 830, the Earldom of *Teiſterbant* was taken out of it, and made the portion of *Robert* a younger ſon; from whom deſcended

Cleve & Mark.

deſcended the two houſes of *March* and *Berg.*

830 8 *Ludowick*, ſon of *Baldwin.*

834 9 *Eberard*, brother of *Ludovick*; who gave *Teiſterbant* to his brother *Robert.*

843 10 *Luithardus*, Earl of *Cleve.*

878 11 *Baldwin* II.

928 12 *Arnold.*

968 13 *Wignan*, ſon of *Arnold.*

1004 14 *Conrade*; made an Earl of the Empire, in the life of his father.

1045 15 *Theodorick* II.

1088 16 *Theodorick* III. companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, in the *Holy Land.*

1114 17 *Arnold* II. brother of *Theodorick* the third.

1161 18 *Theodorick* IV.

19 *Arnold* III.

1205 20 *Arnold* IV.

1218 21 *Theodorick* V.

1229 22 *Theodorick* VI.

1247 23 *Theodorick* VII.

1255 24 *Theodorick* VIII.

1271 25 *Theodorick* IX.

26 *Otho*, ſon of *Theodorick.*

1309 27 *Theodorick* X. brother of *Otho* II.

1325 28 *John*, brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the laſt of the maſculine iſſue of *Elias Grallius.*

EARLS of ALTENA and MARCH.

A. Ch.

843 1 *Robert*, ſon of *Baldwin*, to whom the Countrie of *Teiſterbant* was given by *Eberhard.*

2 *Theodorick*, ſon of *Robert*, the firſt Lord of *Altena.*

3 *Adolphus* I. Earl of *Altena.*

4 *Adolphus* II. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg.*

5 *Conrade*, Earl of *Altena* and *Berg.*

6 *Adolph* III. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg.*

7 *Eberhard*, Earl of *Altena*; his younger brother *Engelbert*, ſucceeding in *Berg.*

8 *Frederick*, Earl of *Altena.*

9 *Adolphus* IV. created the firſt Earl of *March.*

1249 10 *Engelbert*, Earl of *March* and *Altena.*

11 *Adolphus* V. ſon of *Engelbert.*

12 *Engelbert* II. from whom by a ſecond wife the daughter and heir of *Aremberg*, deſcended that branch of the houſe of *March*, which ſtill of late, were Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon.*

13 *Adolph* VI. husband of *Mary* (or *Margaret*) daughter and heir of *Theodorick* the 9th Earl of *Cleve.*

29 *Adolphus*, the VII. of *March*, ſon of *Adolph* the VI. of *March*, and *Mary* of *Cleve*, firſt Archbiſhop of *Colen*, (as ſix of this houſe of *March* had been (almoſt) ſucceſſively before him) ſucceeded on the death of his Uncle *John*, to the Earldom of *Cleve*; inaugurated thereunto by *Charls* the 4th.

1389 30 *Adolph* II. of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the firſt Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, at the Council of *Conſtance*, *Anno* 1417.

1443 31 *John* III. ſon of *Adolph* Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravenſtein.*

1481 32 *John* II. of the rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.

1521 33 *John* III. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, &c. by deſcent from his Father, and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in right of his wife, daughter and heir of *William* the laſt Duke thereof.

1539 34 *William*, ſon of *John* the 3d, and *Mary* his wife, daughter and ſole heir of *William* the laſt Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*: father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the wives of *Henry* the 8. of *England.* He contended very ſtrongly againſt *Charles* the fift for the Dukedom of *Gueldres*; but being too weak for ſo great an Adverſary, made his ſubmiſſion to him at *Venlo*, and ſo ſaved his eſtates.

1584 35 *John William*, ſon of the former *William*, during the life of *Charles Frederick* his elder brother, was Biſhop of *Munſter*; on whoſe death, *Anno* 1575. he reſigned that dignity and in the end ſucceeded his Father in his whole eſtates; which he managed with great piety and prudence till the year 1610. and then died iſſueleſs. The laſt of that antient and noble family of the Dukes of *Cleve.* After whoſe death, much quarrel and contention grew about the ſucceſſion, betwixt the ſeveral competitors and pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1 *Leopold* Archduke of *Auſtria*, pretending an inveſtiture from the Emperour *Rodolphus* in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, to whom for want of heirs males the eſtate was ſaid to be eſcheated. 2 *John George*, Duke of *Saxonie*, deſcended from *Sibyll*, Daughter of Duke *John* the third: at whoſe marriage with *John Frederick* the Elector of *Saxonie*, *Anno* 1535. it was ſaid to have been ſolemnly agreed upon, that on the failing of the heirs males of *Cleve*, the iſſue of that marriage ſhould ſucceed therein. 3 *George William*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, ſon of *John Sigiſmund* the Elector of *Brandenbourg* by the Lady *Anne* his wife, eldeſt daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenbourg* Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Maria Eleonora*, the eldeſt ſiſter and next heir of the Duke deceaſed. 4 *Wolfgangus Guilielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, ſon of *Magdalen*, the younger ſiſter of that *Mary* who claimed the eſtate as neareſt kinſman, one degree, to the ſaid laſt Duke. And though the right ſeemed moſt apparently on the ſide of *Brandenbourg*; the *Eſtate* in *Tayl* pretended by the Duke of *Saxonie*, being formerly cut off by *Imperial* authority; and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg*, not of force in *Germany*: yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a poſſeſſion of *Juliers*, and of moſt parts of that Countrey; the two Princes of *Brandenbourg* and *Newburg* ſoon agreed the controverſie, and by the help of the *Proteſtant* Princes their *Confederates*, recovered the greateſt part of it from the hands of *Leopold.* But the Palatine of *Newburg* not content with his partage, firſt married with a daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*; called in the *Spaniſh* Arms under the command of Marques *Spinola*, to abet his quarrel;

which

Colen. which made *George William*, ſon of the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the *forces* of the *States*, under the command of *Maurice* Earl of *Naſſaw*, after Prince of *Orange*. The iſſue of which war was this, that *Spinola* poſſeſſed himſelf of *Weſel*, *Aken*, *Mulheim*, *Duſſeldorp*, and moſt other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*; and the States got into their power the Towns of *Gulick*, with *Rees* and *Emmerick* in the Dukedome of *Cleve*; and almoſt the whole Country of *Mark*. And though moſt parts of theſe Eſtates have been delivered ſince to the rightful Owners: yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which, notwithſtanding that they both pretend to keep them for the uſe of thoſe Princes, in whoſe cauſe they ſtood; yet when ſuch ſtrong parties keep the Stakes, it is moſt eaſie to determine, who will win the *game*: Such alterations as have hapned in the chance of war, by the reciprocal winning and loſing of ſome Towns on both ſides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightfull Owners.

The Arms of theſe Princes were 1 *Gules*, over an Eſcocheon in Feſſe *Argent*, a Carbuncle peirced Pometted, and flowred *Or*, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*, 2ly. *Or*, a Lion armed *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Armes of *Berg* and *Mark* I have no where found.

2. *The Eſtates of the three* ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

Adjoyning to the Eſtates of *Cleve* are thoſe of the *Spiritual Electors* of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Ments*, and *Triers*; not ſo contiguous and conterminous as thoſe of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out ſeverally by their metes and boundaries: And firſt for

1. *COLEN-LAND*, or the Eſtate of the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Colen*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Dukedom of *Berg*, from which divided by the *Rhene*; on the Weſt, with *Gulick*; on the North, with *Cleve* it ſelf, and the County of *Muers*; and on the South, extending to the land of *Triers*. The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Ubii*, in former times poſſeſſed of the Countreys of *Berg* and *March*; But being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the Clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the borders of the *Roman* Empire, as for their own ſecurity againſt that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the reign and under the conduct of *Childerick*, *Anno* 412. or thereabouts; and from the *French* by the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, *An.* 949. By *Otho* the 2d, made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, or at the leaſt given by him unto *Charles* of *France*, the firſt Duke thereof, after his death, to weaken the great houſe of *Ardenne*, deſigned by *Otho* ſon of *Charles* to that goodly Patrimony, it was ſeized on by *Otho* the 3d, and by him reſtored to the Empire. Since that time the City of *Colen* hath remained *Imperial*, and of late times incorporated amongſt the *Hanſe-towns*; but the territory near unto it, and a great part of *Weſtphalen*, ſubject immediately to the Biſhop. The Biſhops See firſt founded here by St. *Maternus*, one of the Diſciples of Saint *Peter*, as hath been conſtantly affirmed by old tradition: but howſoever an Epiſcopal See without all queſtion, in the time of *Conſtantine*; *Maternus*, Biſhop hereof, ſubſcribing amongſt other to the Council of *Arles*, *An.* 326. And being *Colen* was in thoſe times the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Germania ſecunda*, the Biſhop had the power of a *Metropolitan*, according to the rule and obſervation ſo often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made *Elective*, theſe Biſhops, with their brethren of *Ments* and *Triers*, were made three of the ſeven, which were to nominate and *elect* the ſucceeding Emperour; after which time it is no wonder that they grew both in power and Patrimony.

Places of moſt importance within this *Electorate* are, 1 *Bonn*, ſituate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the moſt pleaſant and fruitful place of all the Countrey; the ordinary reſidence of the Archbiſhop, whoſe houſe or *Palace* here, is ſaid to be one of the faireſt in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* called *Bonna*, and ſometimes *Caſtra Bonnenſia*, the wintering Camp in his time, of the ſixt Legion. 2 *Nuys*, by the ſame writer called *Noveſium*, (*Niveſia* by *Antonine*) ſeated on the *Erp*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the glories of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*: who being reſolved to get this town into his hands, as a convenient paſs into *Germany*, lay ſo long before it, that he loſt the opportunity of joyning with King *Edward* the 4th of *England*, whom he had purpoſely invited to the war of *France*, and yet was fain to go without it. By means whereof he grew ſo low in reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Lorriner*, forſook by the *Engliſh*, baffled by the *Switzers*, and at laſt overthrown and ſlain by that beggarly Nation. 3. *Ernace*, or *Andermach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Antenacum*; one of the ten Garriſons erected by the *Romans* on the banks of the *Rhene*, to ſecure their Province from the *Germans*: the other nine being *Confluentz*, *Bopport*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Selts*, *Strasburg*, and *Waßenberg*. 4 *Lintz*, ſeated on the ſame River alſo. 5 *Sontina*, a town of good repute. 6 *Zulph*, now a village of no eſteem, but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antonine* called *Tolbiacum*; moſt memorable for the great victory which *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French* (upon a vow made in the heat of the fight to embrace the Goſpel) obtained againſt the whole power of the *Almans*, never preſuming after that to invade his territories. 7 *Rhineburg*, commonly called *Berck*, the moſt northern town of all the Biſhoprick, ſituate on the *Rhene* (as the name imports) there where the lands of this Biſhop, as alſo of the Dukes of *Cleve*, and the Earls of *Muers*, meet upon a point. A Town which for theſe 60 yeaas hath been of little uſe or profit to the right owner, poſſeſſed ſometimes by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes by the confederate *States*, for each commodiouſly ſeated, as opening a paſſag[illegible] the River, and receiving great cuſtomes on all kind of Merchandiſe paſſing to and fro. But having finally been poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard* from the year 1606, till 1633. it was then regained for the *States* by *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loſs of no more than 60 men: there being found in the Town 30 Braſs peeces of Ordnance,

70.

Triers.

70 barrels of powder, with victuals and ammunition of all ſorts thereunto proportionable. 8 *Colen*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, firſt built by the *Ubii* before mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Ubiorum*; afterwards in honour of *Agrippina* (daughter of *Germanicus*, and wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a **Roman** Colony, and called **Colonia** *Agrippina*; and ſometimes by way of eminency, *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous, and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compaſs; in which are numbred 19 Hoſpitals, 37 Monaſteries of both Sexes, 30 Chappels of our Lady, 9 Pariſhes, and 10 Collegiate Churches, beſides the Cathedral, being a Church of vaſt greatneſs, but of little beauty, and not yet finiſhed: the *Metropolitan* whereof is Chancellour of *Italy*, the ſecond of the three Electors; and writes himſelf Duke of *Weſtphalen*, and *Angrivaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Cæſar* with incredible expedition make a bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous enemy than the reports of his valour: ſo powerfull is laborious induſtry, that it overcometh all diſaſters, and maketh the moſt unpaſſable waters yield to Heroick reſolutions.

In this Town alſo are ſaid to lie the bodies of the *three wiſe men*, which came from the *Eaſt* to worſhip our Saviour; vulgarly called the three Kings of *Colen*. The whole ſtory is at large written in *tables*, which are faſtned unto their Tombes. The pith whereof is this. The firſt of them called *Melchior*, an old man with a large beard, offered *Gold* as unto a *King*; The ſecond called *Gaſper*, a beardleſs young man, offered *Frankincenſe*, as unto God: The other called *Balthaſar*, a *Blackmoor* with a ſpreading beard, offered *Myrrhe* as unto a *Man* ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the tale ſaith, is probable; firſt becauſe they came from the Eaſt, and ſo is *Arabia* in reſpect of *Hieruſalem*: And 2ly. becauſe it is ſaid in the 72 *Pſalm*, *The Kings of* Arabia *ſhall bring gifts*. As for their bodies, they are there ſaid to have been tranſlated by *Helena*, the mother of *Conſtantine* unto *Conſtantinople*; from thence by *Euſtorſius*, Biſhop of *Millain*, removed unto *Millain*; and finally brought hither by *Rainoldus* Biſhop hereof, *Anno* 1164. This is the ſubſtance of the Hiſtory: which for my part I reckon amongſt the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their coming from ſome part of *Arabia*) but have not leiſure in this place to refell the Fable.

As for the temporal eſtate of the Biſhop of *Colen*, it came unto them ſpecially by the munificence of the Emperours of the houſe of *Saxony*; the Dukedom of *Engern*, containing a good part of *Weſtphalen* being acquired unto this See by *Bruno*, once Archbiſhop hereof, one of the younger ſons of the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, ſurnamed the *Fowler*, with the conſent of *Otho* the firſt, his elder brother. To which was added, not long after, the whole land of *Colen* (as we have formerly deſcribed it) by *Otho* the 2d. which being formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, was taken out of it, and ſetled on the Biſhops hereof, at ſuch time as the Dukedom of *Lorrein* was erected by him: Such pieces only as are found on the other ſide of of the *Rhene* (neither great nor many) being added by the wit and induſtry of the following Biſhops: Exceedingly increaſed both in power and patrimony by the addition of *Liege* to this Electorate: it being of late the conſtant cuſtom of the Canons of *Liege*, to chooſe the Archbiſhop of *Colen* for their Prince and Paſtor.

Next to the Biſhoprick of **Colen** lieth the land of *TRIERS*, extended all along the courſe of the *Moſelle*, from the Dukedom of *Lorrein* on the South, beyond the influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of **Confluentz**, where it bordereth on the land of **Colen**: and being bounded on the Eaſt with **Luxemburg**; as on the Weſt, with that part of **Franconia** which lieth below the confluence of the ſaid two Rivers, and is now called *Rhinegouw*; more Southward on that ſide with the Countrey of *Weſtreich*, and the Dukedom of *Zweibruck*, parts of the Palatinate of the *Rhene*. The Countrey towards *Lorrein*, and *Luxembourg*, ſomewhat wild and barren; more fruitfull about *Triers* it ſelf, and the bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleaſant than profitable, the greateſt riches of it lying in Woods and Minerals. The Biſhops See here firſt erected by *Eucherius*, a Diſciple and follower of S. *Peter*. The reality whereof, not only teſtified by the *Martirologies*, but by *Methodius*, a writer of approved credit; who adds *Valerius* and *Maternus* for his next ſucceſſors; the line Epiſcopal continuing till the Council of *Arles*, *Anno* 326. *Agritius* Biſhop of *Triers* ſubſcribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards, and before, the Biſhop had the reputation and authority of a *Metropolitan*, the City of *Triers* being antiently the *Metropolis* of *Belgica prima*, within which it ſtands. Increaſed exceedingly by being made one of the three *Electors* of the *Spirituality*, though the laſt in order, and **Chancellour** to the Emperour for the Realm of **France**: the fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wreſted from it, with the reſt of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, by the *German* Emperours.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1 **Confluents**, now **Cobolentz**, the *Confluentes* of *Antoninus*, ſo called becauſe ſeated on the *confluence* or meeting of the *Rhene*, and the *Moſelle*; the ſtation antiently of the firſt *Legion*. A populous and well-built Town; and ſeated in a pleaſant and fertill Countrey. 2 *Embretſtein*, over againſt **Cobolentz**, on the other ſide of the *Rhene*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle of the Biſhops mounted upon a lofty hill, which not only gives a gallant proſpect to the eye, but commands both the Town and River. 3 *Boppart*, ſeated on the *Rhene*, and called ſo *quaſi Bonport*, from the commodiouſneſs of the Creek (upon which it ſtandeth) for the uſe of ſhipping: one of the Forts (as *Confluents* before mentioned was) erected by the *Romans* on the *Rhene*, for defence of *Gaul* againſt the *Germans*; occaſioning in time both Towns. It was once miſerably waſted by *Richard* Earl of *Cornwal*, and King of the *Romans*, becauſe the Biſhop of *Triers* agreed not unto his *Election*, but ſoon recovered of thoſe hurts. The antient name hereof in the *Itinerary* of *Antonius*, is ſuppoſed to be *Bodobrica*: pawned to the Biſhops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7th. and not yet redeemed. 4 *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorrein* (by *Antoninus* called *Pons Sarvix*) ſeated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it had the name) at the fall thereof into the *Moſelle*; poſſeſſed of the preſent by a branch of the houſe of *Naſſaw* (but *Homagers* of this *Elector*) entituled hence according to the *Dutch* faſhion, *Triers.*

Counts of *Naſſaw* in *Sarbruck*. 5 *Veldents*, and 6 *Balſtern* on the *Moſelle*, of which nothing memorable. 7 *Treves*, or *Triers*, in *Latine Treveris*, the principal City of the *Treveri*, who poſſeſſed this tract; ſeated upon the *Moſelle* alſo, the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Belgica Prima*, and honoured with the reſidence of the *Vicar* or Lieutenant General, for the whole Dioceſe of *Gaul*; by conſequence the ſeat of a *Metropolitan* when it ſubmitted to the Goſpel. Of ſuch antiquity, that it is ſaid to have been founded 150 years before the City of *Rome*: of no great beauty of it ſelf, and as little trading; the River not being capable of ſhips of burden; and the air generally ſo cloudy and inclined to rain, that it is by ſome called merrily *Cloaca Planetarum*. It paſſed ſometimes among the number of *Imperial Cities*, but now acknowledgeth the *Elector* for the Lord thereof; by whom made an *Univerſity*, one of the antienteſt in all *Germany*, and of as much reſort for the ſtudy of good Arts and Sciences, as the beſt amongſt them. 8 *Obert-Weſel*, or *Veſalta ſuperior*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Weſel* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, which is *Veſalta inferior*, or the *Under-Weſel*: the furtheſt place of this Diſtrict, ſeated on the *Rhene*, not far from *Baccharach*, a Town of the *Palatinate*; of no great note, but that it is accompted for a Town *Imperial*.

This Countrey antiently was part of the great and famous Earldom of *Moſelle*, denominated from the River *Moſelle*, along the courſe whereof it was firſt erected. An Eſtate founded by the diſherited ſons of *Clodian*, ſecond King of the *French*, at the ſame time (and on the ſame occaſion alſo) in which the Earldom of *Ardenne* was erected by them; of which we have already ſpoken, when we were in *Belgium*. This of the two the more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Metz*, as lying nearer to the Court, and ſo more in ſight; the other being further off, in Countries, far leſs cultivate, but more defenſible. This Earldom comprehending, beſides this of *Triers*, the Countries of *Sweibrucken*, and *Weſt-rich*, and ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lyeth on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, occaſioned the Princes of it to be much looked after; and they maintained their port to the very laſt; inſomuch that *Giſlebert* or *Gilbert* Earl of *Moſelle*, in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, ſurnamed the *Fowler*, was thought by him a fit Husband for his daughter *Gerberg*; married after his deceaſe to *Lewis* ſurnamed *Tranſmarine* King of *France*, and *Gertrude* daughter of *Theodorick*, who came after *Gilbert*, married to *Henry* ſurnamed *Gozelo* Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*, and by him made the mother of another *Henry*, Succeſſor unto *Otho* the 3d. in the Roman Empire. Impoveriſhed not a little both in power and patrimony by the erection of the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, there grew ſome *feuds* between thoſe houſes: occaſioning the death of *Albert* another of theſe Earls, ſlain (as is ſaid by *Lazius*) by *Godfrey* ſon to *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrein*: more probably by ſome other Prince of the houſe of *Ardenne*, it not being found in any other approved Author, that *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was the father of any Children. But this difference being reconciled by the marriage of *Bertha* daughter of *Simon* Earl hereof, with *Thierry*, the 9th. Duke of *Lorrein*, and the family of theſe Earls expiring in a ſhort time after; this part of the Eſtate was ſeized on by the Biſhops of *Triers*; that part of the *Palatinate* which lieth on the *Gallick* ſide of the *Rhene*, by the Biſhops of *Mentz*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, and the Princes *Palatine*; the reſt being taken in by the Dukes of *Lorrein*, who do ſtill enjoy it: the Emperours of thoſe times being either willing to it, or not able to help it.

3 The Biſhoprick of *MENTZ*, is not laid out by bounds and limits as the other; becauſe the Patrimony and eſtate thereof doth not lie together: diſperſed for the moſt part about *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands and Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Biſhops of *Wormes*, *Spires*, and others. So that the *temporal* Eſtate of this Elector is every way inferiour unto thoſe of *Triers*, and *Colen*; ſuperiour unto both in place and dignity: he being the firſt in rank of the whole *Electoral Colledge*, *Chancellour* for the Empire, and in all meetings ſitteth at the right hand of the Emperour. The Biſhops See firſt placed here, as ſome report, by S. *Creſcens*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Paul*, of whoſe being ſent by him into *Gallia* (for ſo the antient writers underſtand *Galatia*) the Apoſtle ſpeaketh, 2. *Tim*. 4. Though others with more probability ſeat him at *Vienna* in *Daulphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is, that antiently this City was a See Epiſcopal; *Martin* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, *An*. 347. And if a Biſhop, certainly a *Metropolitan* Biſhop, this City being in thoſe times the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Chriſtianity being worn out of theſe parts of *Germany*, by the conqueſts of the *French*, *Almans*, and other Infidels, was again reſtored in this tract by *Boniface*, an *Engliſh-man*, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Mentz* of this new plantation (in and about the time of *Pepin*, ſurnamed the *Groß*, *Maire* of the Palace to the *French* Kings, and Father of *Martel*) who for the *Orthodoxy* of his doctrine, and the number of the Churches planted by him, hath been deſervedly honoured with the title of the *Apoſtle of Germany*.

Towns of moſt note belonging to the Biſhops hereof are, 1 *Mentz* it ſelf, the *Moguntiacum* of the Antients, ſo called from the River of *Maine*, formerly *Mogus* and *Moganus* in the *Latine* (now better known by the name of *Mœnus*) oppoſite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old; ſo having the command of both Rivers: for that cauſe made the ſeat of a *Roman* Officer, commonly called the Duke of *Mentz*, who had a charge of the *Frontiers*; and eſpecially of thoſe ten Garriſons planted on the banks of the *Rhene*, ſpoken of before. Stretched out in great length on the River ſide, but not of anſwerable breadth; well built, and populous towards the water, in other parts not ſo well inhabited. The publick buildings generally very large and beautifull, the houſes built according to the old *Roman* model; the moſt magnificent whereof is the Biſhops Palace, who is the immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both ſides of the *Rhene*, fruitfull in all naturall commodities, and abounding with moſt excellent wines. Of good note alſo for an Univerſity here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the *Electors*: but eſpecially for the Art of Printing which was here invented, or perfected at the leaſt, and made fit for uſe. 2 *Bing* ſeated on the *Rhene*, another of

the

Palatinate of Rhene.

the Gariſon towns, erected by the *Romans* on the banks of that River. In a ſmall Iland of which not far from this Town, is a Tower, or Caſtlelet, called the *Mouſeturn*, *i. e.* the Tower of Mice: built by one *Hatto* (or *Hanno*) Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *An.* 900, or there abouts. Who in a year of great ſcarcity pretending to relieve the poor people oppreſſed with Famine, cauſed them to be gathered together into an old barn, where he burnt them all; ſaying, they were the *Rats* and *Mice* which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was ſo perſecuted by thoſe *Vermin*, that to avoid them he was fain to build a Palace in the midſt of the *Rhene*, whither the *Rats* and *Mice* followed him, and at laſt devoured him. 3. *Lawſteine*. 4. *Hasford*. 5. *Oxenford*. 6. *Alderburg*. 7. *Middleburg*. 8. *Carloſtadt*, the birth-place of *Coroloſtadius*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9. *Biſcoffſtein*. 10. *Koningsberg* (*mons Regius* in *Latine*) the birth-place of *Johannes de Monte Regio*, a famous *Mathematician*, as appeareth by his Comment upon *Ptolemies Almageſt*. Moſt of which Towns being in *Frankenland*, though of his Electorate, were not gained in groſſe by theſe Electors, as were the land of *Colen*, and Diſtrict of *Triers*, but peecemeal in a manner, and by retailer, partly upon the failer of the houſe of *Schwaben* Dukes of *Franconia*, alſo, partly by the munificence of the *German* Emperors, but ſpecially by making the beſt uſe of their Votes and Suffrages in the Change of Emperors, which they did not part withall for nothing: Such Towns hereof, as lie on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, gained by like means upon the expiration of the houſe of *Moſelle*.

3. The *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE*.

The *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE* is bounded upon the Eaſt, with the Dukedome of *Wirtenberg*, and ſome part of *Franconia*; with the reſidue thereof, and the River *Main*, upon the North: on the South, with *Elſats*, or *Alſatia*; on the Weſt, with the Land of *Triers*: extended in length from *Coub* to *Gemerſheime*, north and ſouth, 72 miles; and in breadth from *Sweibrucken* to *Lawden*, eaſt and weſt, 90 miles.

It is called alſo the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper*: the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, becauſe lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is ſaid to be the moſt pleaſant part of all *Germany*, ſtored with all ſorts of fruits and metalls, abounding with thoſe cool wines, which growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rheniſh*, adorned with many goodly Towns, both for ſtrength, populouſneſs, and beauty, and finally, watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Moſpach*, a pretty neat town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a *Prefecture*, not far from the borders of *Wirtenberg*; 2. *Ladenberg*, near the influx of the ſame River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Rupertus*, the Emperour and *Palatine*, of the Earls of *Hoenloe*, *Anno* 1371. the other moiety belonging to the Biſhop of *Wormes*. 3. *Winheime*, a ſmal town not far from *Ladeberg*, belonging once to the Arch-biſhop of *Mentz*; but on ſome controverſie ariſing about the title, adjudged unto the ſaid *Rupertus*, and his heirs for ever. 4. *Scrieſſen*, in the ſame tract, well ſeated, but not very large, ſold with the Caſtle of *Straluberg*, to the ſaid *Rupertus*, by *Sifride* (of *Sigifride*) or *Straluberg*, the right heir hereof, *Anno* 1347. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right ſhore of the *Neccar* (going down the water) compaſſed on three ſides with Mountains, and lying open only towards the Weſt, which makes the air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief beauty of it lyeth in one long Street, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt: on the South-eaſt ſide whereof is a fair and pleaſant Market-place; and not far off a very high mountain called *Koningſtall* (that is to ſay, the *Kingly ſeat*) upon the middle aſcent whereof is the *Caſtle*, where the Princes *Electours* uſe to keep their Courts; and on the very *ſummit* or top thereof, the ruines of an old Tower blown up with gun-powder. A town of no great bigneſs, nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was uſed in the time of my Authour for Prayer and Preaching: the reſt being either ruined, or imployed unto other uſes, if not repaired again ſince the *Spaniards* became maſters of it, for more frequent Maſſes. Howſoever, it hath the reputation of being the chief City of this Palatinate; not long ſince furniſhed with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books (eſpecially *Manuſcripts*) was thought not to be fellowed in all *Europe*, till matched, if not over-matched by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*: moſt of them, to the great prejudice of the *Proteſtant* cauſe, being carried to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, *Anno* 1620. Finally for the Town it ſelf, it was once part of poſſeſſions of the Biſhop of *Wormes*; from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*; and it is now famous, for being the ſeat of the *Palſgraves*, the ſepulchre of *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for an Univerſity founded by the Emperour, and Palatine *Rupertus*, *Anno* 1346. 6. *Baccharach*, on the banks of *Rhene*, ſo called, *quaſi Bacchi ara*, for the excellent wines. 7. *Coub*, on the other ſide of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Caſtle called *Pſalts*, from whence the name *Pſalts-grave* or *Palſgrave*, ſeemeth to ſome, to have been derived. 8. *Openheim*, a ſtrong Town, which together with *Keiſars Lautern* and *Ingelheim*, were given to the Palatines by *Wenceſlaus*: and after ſetled on them, by *Rupertus* the Emperour and *Palatine*, for 100000 Florens, *Anno* 1402. 9. *Cruintznacke*, called antiently *Stauroneſus*. 10. *Frankendale*; lately a Monaſtery only, but being well peopled by ſuch of the Netherlands, which to avoid the fury of the Duke *Alva*, fled hither; is now a Town of principal ſtrength. 11. *Gemerſheim*, and 12. *Manheim*, a well fortified Town, ſeated on the confluence of *Rhene* and *Neccar*.

On the Eaſtern part of the Country ſtandeth 13 *Laden*, ſituate on the little River *Tuberus*, the furtheſt bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-eaſt, there adjoyning to the reſt of *Frankenland*. And on the Weſt ſide the Towns of 14 *Newſtat*, 15 *Keiſars Lautern*, in Latine called *Cæſarea Lutra*, once a

Palatinate of *Rhene.*

town imperial; from which, and from its ſituation on the River *Luter*, it received this name. 16 *Swetbrucken*, inveſted with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Country of *Sweibroock*; the patrimony and title of a younger Houſe of the *Pſaltſgraves*, whom the Latine writers call *Principes Bipontani*, the *French*, the Princes of *Deuxponts*. 17 *Simmeren* on the North-weſt point of it, where it meets with the Diſtrict of *Triers* the title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Dukes of *Simmeren*; ſituate in that part of the Country which is called *Weſt-reich*, of which *Zweibrucken* is alſo part. In all there are contained within the *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince: moſt of which they have added to their eſtate within little more than 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own eſtate, ſo potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in war and peace, and ſo ingraffed themſelves into the moſt notable families of *Germany*, that I may well ſay with *Frenicus*, *Non eſt alia* Germaniæ *familia, cui plus debeat nobilitas.*

Within the limits of this Country, and intermingled with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Biſhopricks of *Spires* and *Worms*; both antient, and of great *Revenue*, but *feudataries* for a great part of their eſtates, to theſe *Electors*. Of theſe, more towards the head of the *Rhene*, and on the *Gallick* ſide thereof, ſtands the City of *Spires*, by *Ptolomy* called *Neomagus*, from the newneſs of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemetum*, from the *Nemetes*, who poſſeſſed this tract; and ſometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth ſtil continue. A town *Imperial*, and antiently a Biſhops See; *Teſſes* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, *An.* 347. A neat Town, and very delectably ſeated. Of great reſort, by reaſon of the *Imperial Chamber*, the ſoveraign Court of *Judicature* of all the Empire; capable of *Appeals* from the Tribunals of all the Princes, and free States thereof. A Court which firſt followed the Emperour in all his Removes: (as antiently the *Kings Bench in England*(by *Maximilian* the Emperour firſt made *Sedentary*, and fixt at *Franckfort*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charls* the fifth. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Proteſtants* was here taken up, given to the Princes, & free Cities following the *reformed Religion*, upon their legal *Proteſtation* here exhibited. More down the water and on the ſame ſhore thereof, ſtands the City of *Wormes*, one of thoſe built upon the *Rhene*, for defence of *Gaul* againſt the *Germans*; by *Ptolomy* called *Borbegomagus*; by *Antonine*, *Civitas Wormenſis*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones*, the old Inhabitants of thoſe parts, whoſe chief City it was. A Town *Imperial* as the former, and a See Epiſcopal as that is, and as antient too; *Victor* the Biſhop hereof ſubſcribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, before mentioned. A Town to be obſerved for the firſt appearance, which *Luther* made before *Charls* the fifth, (the *Imperial* Chamber then being holden in this City:) who being diſſwaded from that journey by ſome of his Friends, returned this reſolute anſwer; That *go he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town, as there were tiles on the Houſes.* Chief towns belonging to theſe Biſhops, are 1. *Vdenheim*, a town belonging to the Biſhop of *Spires*, whoſe reſidence it ſometimes is: conveniently ſeated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon ſome deſign which was then in hand, fortified ſtrongly by the Biſhop. But this new *Fortification* being begun in a time of peace, gave great occaſion of diſtruſt to the neighbouring Princes; who interpoſed with *Frederick* the fifth, then Prince *Elector*, (of whom held in chief) to cauſe the Biſhop to deſiſt from the finiſhing of it. Which when he had refuſed to do, pleading a *Placart* from the Emperour *Matthias*, to compleat the work; the Prince *Elector*, with the reſt of the *Confederates*, beat it down by force: for this contempt, cited to *Spires* the *Imperial* Chamber, in which it was alſo reſolved to proceed ſuddenly, and ſeverely to their condemnation. One of the chief motives which occaſioned that unfortunate Prince, to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*, and conſequently a chief cauſe of the *German* warts. In managing whereof this Town was thought ſo commodious, that Marquis *Spinola* cauſed the works to be raiſed again, made it the ſtrongeſt hold in all thoſe Countries, and cauſed it to be called by the name of *Philipsberg*. 3. *Rotenberg*, originally belonging to the Biſhops of *Spires*, but of late times poſſeſſed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of leſſer note I forbear to mention.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, were the *Nemetes* and *Vangiones* ſpoken of before; on the other ſide, the *Intuergi*. That on the Weſt ſide of the River, firſt conquered by the *Romans*, and from them by the *French*; of whoſe Empire it remained a part, but ſo that it was ſubjected more immediately to the Earls of *Moſelle*, firſt under the Soveraignty and vaſſallage of the Kings of *Mets*, and after of the Kings of *Lorrein*. In the dividing of which Kingdome between the Emperours of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, it became ſubject to the Empire, but ſtill poſſeſſed by thoſe of *Moſelle* as it was before. Eſcheating to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of arms, partly by paying down ready mony, and partly too by ſelling of their voices, as they ſaw occaſion, it was gained by the Electors *Palatine*: and ſo was alſo that part of it, which lies on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, which being antiently and properly a part of the *Frankenland*, followed the fortunes of that Countrey, till the failer of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, and then divolved unto the Empire as the other did. By little and little got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperours Houſhold (ſuch as the *Maires of the Place* to the *French* Kings at the firſt inſtitution) had firſt the honour of Counts *Palatine* beſtowed upon them; and afterwards the place of an *Electour*, in the choice of the Emperour. But where their eſtates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what provinces or people they had ſubjected to them *à nullo inveni ſcriptum*, I could never find any good Record to build on, ſaith the learned *Munſter*; their habitation and poſſeſſion in & of theſe parts (acquired for the moſt part by Arms and Mony) not being above 450 years ſtanding at the utmoſt, Likely it is, they had their reſidence, for the moſt part, in the Emperours *Palace* living upon their rents, (as other great Officers of Court in theſe latter times) the dignity and authority of ſo great a

place

Palatinate of Rhene.

place ſeeming ſufficient to content them: but called *Count Palatines* of the *Rhene*, becauſe their *Juriſdiction* and Authority lay moſt eſpecially in thoſe parts of the Empire, which were towards that River. Afterwards on the marriage of *Otho*, the ſecond of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gertrude*, the Daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*, this office, with the *Electoral* dignity, fell into that Houſe: poſſeſſed at that time of thoſe parts of *Franconia* and the Earldom of *Moſelle*, which not long after on the dividing of that eſtate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the ſons of *Ludovick* the 2. Electour *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which ſuddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperour and *Elector Palatine*; partly by the weakneſs and ambition of *Wenceſlaus*, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, and partly by the valour of *Frederick*, the Prince Electour. Of theſe the firſt bought in the Towns of *Winhein*, *Ladeberg*, *Strienſſen*, and the Caſtle of *Stralnberg*, with their lands and territories. The ſecond gave unto the *Palatines*, for their voices in his Election three ſtrong Towns of the Empire, *viz.* *Keiſars Lauterne*, *Ingelheim*, and *Openheim*: and the laſt took in Battel, *Anno* 1452, The Earl of *Wirtenberg*, the Marqueſs of *Baden*, the Biſhop of *Spires*, and the Arch-biſhop of *Mentz*; and ranſomed them on what condition he pleaſed. More particularly the Earl of *Wirtenberg* (for it was not yet erected into a Dukedom) payed for his ranſome 100000 *Florens*. The Biſhop of *Mentz* redeemed himſelf for 450000 *Florens*. The Biſhop of *Spires* gave for his liberty, the Towns of *Rottenberg* and *Werſaw*: And the Marqueſs of *Baden* yeelded up in lieu of his freedoom, the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Cruitznack* is a part; the Towns of *Beſikens* and *Binheim*; the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a Town over againſt *Gomerſheim*; and his royalties between this *Gemerſheim* and *Selts*, a Town of *Alſatia*, in fiſhing and hunting. So having brought theſe Princes unto their eſtate; let us next take a view of thoſe, who have ſucceſſively enjoyed both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light of Story.

ELECTORS *Palatine* of the *RHENE*.

A. Ch.

1 *Henry*, Count *Palatine* in the time of *Otho* the third, by whom ordained to be one of the ſix Electours.
2 *Sigefride*, the ſon of *Adelheild*, wife of this *Henry* the Elector, by a former husband.
3 *Ezeline*, and *Conrade*, ſons of *Sigefride*.
4 *Ludolphus*, ſon to *Ezeline*.
5 *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fift.
6 *Frederick*, ſon to *Frederick*, Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew to the Emperour *Conrade* the third.
7 *Henry* II. ſurnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxonie* and *Bavaria*.
1085 8 *Henry* III. ſon of *Henry* the *Lion*, and Husband of *Clementia*, daughter of *Conrade* Duke of *Schwaben*, and Elector *Palatine*.
9 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third, in the life of the Father, the laſt Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointement of the Emperour, the dignity from hence forwards becoming *hereditary*.
10 *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the ſecond, *Elector Palatine* of the *Rhene*, in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, ſiſter and next heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he ſucceeded in the *Electoral* dignity, confirmed therein by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond.
1167 11 *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, the ſon of *Otho*.
1294 12 *Rodolphus*, the eldeſt ſon of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, ſucceeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and *Electoral* dignity; *Northgoia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the ſcale: his younger brother *Ludovicus* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*.
1315 13 *Adolphus*, ſurnamed the Simple, reſigned the *Electoral* dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter man to undertake it.
1327 14 *Rodolphus* II. on the reſignation of *Adolphus*.
1337 15 *Rupertus*, the brother of *Rodolphus* the ſecond, founder of the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*, *Anno* 1346.
1385 16 *Rupertus* II. ſon of *Adolphus* the Simple.
1398 17 *Rupertus* III. elected Emperour in the place of *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1406, made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the fourth.
1410 18 *Ludovicus* II. ſurnamed *Cacus*, and *Barbatus*, the eldeſt ſon of *Rupertus* the Emperour, married *Blanch*, daughter to King *Henry* the fourth of *England*.
1439 19 *Ludovicus* III. ſon of *Lewis* the ſecond.
1451 20 *Frederick*, brother of *Ludovicus*, during the minority of *Philip* his ſaid Brothers ſon, ſucceeded in the *Electorall* dignity; and added much to that eſtate by his perſonall vertue.
1478 21 *Philip*, the II. of *Lewis* the third, pretended to the Dukedom of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his wife; but after a long and bloody war, forced to go without it.
1508 22 *Ludovicus* IV. ſon of *Philip*;
1544 23 *Frederick* II. brother of *Lewis* the fifth, who firſt introduced the *Reformed Religion* into the *Palatinate*.
1556 24 *Otho Henry*, ſon of *Rupertus*, the brother of *Frederick*, and *Lewis* the laſt of the direct line

and

Palatinate of Rhene.

and of this houſe of *Bavaria*.

1559 25 *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, deſcended from *Stephen* Palatine of *Zweibruck* or *Bipont*, younger ſon of the Emperour *Rupert*, ſucceeded on the deceaſe of *Otho-Henry* without iſſue.

1576 26 *Ludovicus* V. ſon of *Frederick* the third, a munificent benefactor to the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*.

1583 27 *Frederick* IV. ſon of *Lewis* the fifth, married *Ludovica*, or *Loiſe*, daughter of *William*, and ſiſter of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*.

1610 28 *Frederick* V. ſon of *Frederick* the 4th. married the Princeſs *Eliz.* daughter of *James*, King of *Great Britain*. In danger of being proſcribed for demoliſhing the works of *Udenheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worſted at the battel of *Prague*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he loſt both that, and his own native eſtates and Dignities; of which deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperour: the *Lower Palatinate* being aſſigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*, the *Upper Palatinate*, with the *Electoral* dignity, beſtowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Reſtored to the poſſeſſion of the moſt part of his Countrey, by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*. November 29.1632. the whole Countrey falling again not long after under the power and government of the former Conquerours.

1631 29 *Charles Ludowick*, the heir both of his Fathers eſtates, and misfortunes too; not yet admitted to his honours (contrary to the *fundamentall conſtitutions* of the Empire, by which the ſons of the *Electors* and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Fathers offences:) but in fair hopes to be reſtored thereto in part, by the *Pacifications* made at *Munſter* this preſent year, 1648. which I pray God to proſper for the peace of afflicted *Chriſtendome*.

The *Religion* of this Countrey, and that of the *Upper Palatinate* which depends upon it, hath much varied ſince the firſt Reformation, eſtabliſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond, according to the form and doctrine of the *Confeſſion of Auſpurg*: the doctrine and diſcipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third; the *Lutherans* forms reſtored again by *Lewis*, or *Ludowick* the fift: after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*; as more conducing to the ends of ſome needy *Statiſts*; who could not otherwiſe raiſe their fortunes than by invading the *Tithes* and *Glebe*, and other poor remainders of the Churches *Patrimony*. Of which the *Clergie* being Univerſally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miſerable ſhort ſtipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became ſo contemptible, and neglected by all ſorts of men, that at the laſt the Church of the *Palatinate*, was in the ſame condition with the Church of *Iſrael*, under the reign of *Ieroboam*, when *Prieſts were made out of the meaneſt of the people*. And for the government of their Churches, though moulded to the *Genevian* plat-form, as near as it might be, yet were thoſe Princes loath to leave too much power in the hands of the *Elderſhips*; and therefore did appoint ſome ſuperiour Officers to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inſpectores & Præpoſitos*, their power being much the ſame with that of the *particular Superintendent*, among the *Lutherans*; and over them a ſtanding *Conſiſtory* conſiſting of three Miniſters, and as many *Counſellers of State*, of the Princes nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A *temperament* for which they were beholding to *Eraſtus*, a Doctor of *Phiſick*, in the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*; who made this *Pill* to purg *Presbitery* of ſome *Popiſh* humours, which ſecretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole modell and Religion of the Country is much changed of late, and the Religion of the Church of *Rome* reſtored in moſt parts thereof, ſince the conqueſt of them by the *Spaniards*, and *Bavarians*, which before we ſpake of.

But to return again to the *Civil State*, and the concernment of thoſe Princes. The *Palſgrave* hath many prerogatives above the *Electors* of either ſort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxony*, and Marqueſs of *Brandenburg*; becauſe *Henry the Palatine*, was deſcended of *Charls* the great: for which cauſe he is alſo in the vacancy of the Empire, *Governour* of the Weſtern part of *Germany*. In which office he had power to alienate, or give offices, to take *fealty* and *homage* of the ſubjects; and which is moſt, to ſit in the *Imperial Courts*, and give judgement of the Emperour himſelfe. And look whatſoever ſhall in the vacancy of the Empire be by the *Palatines* enacted, that the new Emperors are bound by oath to confirm, and ratifie.

The *Revenues* of theſe Princes where conceived to be about 100000 *l. per annum*; nor could they be ſuppoſed at leſſe: the ſilver Mines about *Amberg* only in the *Upper Palatinate*, yeelding 60000 Crowns a year, and the paſſage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more; beſides the demeaſn Lands, and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (ſince the *Reformation*) into their Eſtate.

The Arms hereof are *Diamond*, a *Topace*, Armed and Crowned *Ruby*.

4. *ALSATIA*.

ALSATIA or *ELSATS*, as the *Dutch* call it, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the *Marquiſate* of *Baden*, and ſome parts of *Schwaben*: on the Weſt, with the Mountain *Vauge*, or *Vogeſus*, which ſeparateth it from *Lorrein*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South, (where it groweth very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Countrey for the pleaſantneſs and fertility of it, inferior to none in *Germanie*: called therefore *Elſats*, (as ſome think) *quaſi Edelſats*,

that

Elſats.

that is to ſay, a *noble Seats* derived more probably by others from the river *Ill*, the only River of note in all this tract; and called ſo, *quaſi Ill-ſats*, the *ſeat* or ſituation on the River *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower* and *higher*, to which the Country called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The ***LOWER ALSATIA*** is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, ſo called, becauſe further off from the Mountains, and down the water in reſpect of the courſe of the *Rhene*. A Countrey ſo abundantly fruitfull in wine and corn, (with which it furniſheth ſome parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour Countries) that it is generally called *Germania nutrix*, or the nurſe of *Germany*; by *Wimphelegius*, the *Epitome* or Abſtract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1 *Strasburg*, ſo called from the multitude of *Streets* (the *Dutch* call them *Strats*) antiently *Argentoratum*, and then *Argentina*, from the *Roman Exchequer*, or Receipt, here kept in the time of their greatneſſe; or from ſome Mines of ſilver which were found about it. A ſtately, rich, and populous City, well ſtored with publick garners and cellars of wine, againſt times of dearth. Situate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Bruſch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*; by which, and by the helps of Art, very ſtrongly fortified: Deſigned from the firſt foundation for a Town of war; this being another of the Towns which the *Romans* built, to defend the *Rhene* againſt the *Germans*. Now an Imperial City, and a *See* Epiſcopal, the Biſhop whereof is Lord of the *Lower Alſatia*. The Church Cathedral, one of the faireſt in all *Germany*: much famed for a *Clock* of moſt admirable workmanſhip, and a *Steeple* of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 foot in height, the higheſt of any in Chriſtendom; higher (if the meaſure of it be not miſtaken) by 40 foot than the Steeple of S. *Pauls* in *London*, before the firing of it. Of this thus ſaith the *Poet* in *Adrianus*,

Urbs præclara ſitu, ripis contermina Rheni,
Maxima cui celſa metiuntur mœnia turris.

Strasburg on *Rhenes* inamell'd banks doth lie,
Whoſe Tower even bids defiance to the skie.

2 *Zabern*, or *Elſatz Savern*, the *Taberna* of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old *Roman* Garriſons; deſtroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, then Emperour. Now the chief place of Reſidence for the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Juſtice, kept by his Officers in this City, for the *Lower Alſatia*. 3 *Altrip*, ſo called from *Alta ripa*, from the high banks of the river, on which it is ſeated; another of the Towns or Forts, which the *Romans* like politick conquerors built on the Weſt-ſide of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the incurſions of the barbarous Nations. And ſo was 4 *Selts*, ſeated on the *Rhene* betwixt *Strasburg* and *Zabern*; and 5 *Weiſſenberg*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a town *Imperial*, but ſeated on the river *Lutra*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompaſſed with little hills and delightfull groves. The River gently waſhing the walks thereof, and adding much to it both of ſtrength and beauty. 6 *Hagenaw*, between *Selts* and *Strasburg*, but not ſo near unto the *Rhene* as either of them: firſt walled by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *Anno* 1164. and ſince that time of great importance for command of the Countrey; but ſeated in a ſandy and unfruitfull ſoil, frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elſats*, for the commoditie of hunting. More from the *Rhene*. 7 *Steehfield*, corruptly ſo called for *Steffansfield*, from the Monaſtery of S. *Stephen* there founded. 8 *Haſle* on the *Bruſch*, &c.

Places of moſt importance in the ***HIGHER ALSATIA***, are 1 *Ruſach*, on the river *Ombach*, belonging to the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, of old called *Rubeacum*, from the red colour of the earth, well built, invironed with a double Suburb. In antient times of great reſort by the *Roman* nobility, much taken with the fruitfulneſs and pleaſures of it: and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Countrey round about it, by reaſon of their vigorous proceedings againſt Theeves; from whence the *Germans* have a *Proverb*, that the *old gallows at Ruffach is made of oak*. 2 *Enſheim*, or *Enſiſheim*, on the river *Ill*, antiently the ſtation of the tenth *Legion*, and then called *Aruncis*; now of moſt note for the *ſupreme Court* of juſtice there held for *Briſgow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alſatia*, by the Archdukes of *Auſtria*, the chief Lords thereof. 3 *Colmar*, an *Imperial City* raiſed out of the ruines of old *Argentaria*, deſtroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*: well built, and ſituate almoſt in the very navel of *Alſatia*, not above an hours journey from the foot of the Mountains; but in a fruitfull and rich ſoyl both for corn and paſturage, the Countrey hereabouts being very well watred with the *Louch*, *Duro*, *Fecht*, and *Ill*. 4 *Schleſtad*, in the modern *Latine*, *Seleſtadium*, but by the antients called *Elcebus*, the ſtation at that time of the 19 *Legion*; afterwards of great fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis* Dutcheſs of *Schwaben*, *An.* 1044. according to the pattern of the Temple of *Hieruſalem*; which in tract of time became the richeſt *Monaſtery* in all theſe parts. Situate in a very fertile and delightful ſoil, having the *Rhene* on the one ſide, and ſome ſpurs of the Mountain *Vange*, ſhadowed with Groves of Cheſnuts upon the other: walled in the time of *Frederick* the 2d. about the year 1216. and on the Eaſt defended with impaſſible fens. 5 *Gebwiler*, and 6 *Watwell*, both ſeated near the aforeſaid mountains, and both ſubject to the Abbat of *Murbach*. 7 *Keiſersberg*, 8 *Turcheim*; two *Imperial* Towns, but not otherwiſe memorable; as neither are many of the reſt, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this ſmall Province of *Elſats*, (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns begirt with walls, beſides Caſtles, Forts and Villages almoſt innumerable; and amongſt them more *Free* and *Imperial* Cities, than in any one Province of the Empire.

The Southern parts of *Elſats* bordering on the *Canton* of *Baſil*, is commonly called by the name of *SUNGOW*, in *Latine Sungovia*, and *Sungoia*; but in former times the Dukedom of *Pſirts* from *Pſirt*

Lorrein. the chief Town of it, and the Dukes ſeat: the Country very plentifull in corn and wine (as the reſt of *Elſats*, affording good ſtore of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*; Chief Towns hereof are 1 *Mulhauſen* on the River *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, as were alſo *Keiſersberg* and *Colmar*: but being taken in by *Rodulph* of *Habspurg*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made *Imperial*; and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2 *Befort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lie buried 13 Earls, and as many Counteſſes. 3 *Maſz-Munſter*, ſo called from a *Monaſtery* of *Nuns* there founded by *Maſo*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4 *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Engleberg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty hill. 5 *Morſ-Munſter*, ſo named of an ancient Monaſtery there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*; moſt of them great builders of Religious houſes. 6 *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Ill*. 7 *Pfirt* it ſelf, ſeated on the *Ill*, not far from *Altkirk*, in a Countrey heretofore over-grown with *Woods* and *Forreſts*, whence it had the name. Called by the *French*, *le Pais de Ferette* (corruptly for *le Pais de Forreſt*) by the *Dutch* moulded into *Pfirt*: by which name (of the County of *Ferrette*) it is called by *Philip de Comines*, and other *French* writers; and by that name pawned by *Sigiſmund* the Arch-duke, to *Charls* Duke of *Burgundie*, made by that means too near a neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Weſtward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundie*; lieth the Town and Earldom of *MONTBELGRAD*, (*Montis Belligardium* in the *Latine*) united by the marriage of *Henrica*, daughter and heir of *Henry* the firſt Earl hereof, *An* 1396. to the houſe of *Wirtenberg*. Chief Towns whereof, are, 1 *Clarewang*. 2 *Paſſewang*. 3 *Grans*, all antiently beautified with Caſtles, and 4 *Montbelgar*, a Town of great ſtrength, proud of a Caſtle Royal on the top of a fair and lofty *Mountain*, whence it took that name; once the ſeat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the houſe of *Wirtenberg*; but, now both Town and Caſtle in the power of the *French*, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, cauſed a good Garriſon of their own to be put into them, *Anno* 1633. under pretence of keeping them for the Children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtenbergs*, to whom the inheritance belonged.

The antient Inhabitants of this tract were the *Tribochi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then ſubdued by the *Almains*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*; in the fall of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German* Empire. Governed for the Emperours by *Provincial* Earls, in the *Dutch* language called *Landgraves*: at firſt *officially* only, and accomptable to the Emperours under whom they ſerved; in the end made *hereditary*, and ſucceſſional unto their poſterities. The firſt *hereditary* Landgrave ſaid to be *Theodorick* in the reign of *Otho* the third; after whoſe death the Empire being made *elective*, gave the *Provincial* Governours ſome opportunities to provide for themſelves. In his male-iſſue it continued till the reign of *Frederick* the 2d. who began his Empire *Anno* 1212. and died *Anno* 1250. during which interval this Eſtate was conveyed by daughters to *Albert*, the 2d. Earl of *Habſpurg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Ottingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, ſon of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperour of the *Germans*, marrying with *Anne* the daughter of the Earl of *Hohenloe*, became poſſeſſed alſo of his part of the Country: which added to his own, made up the whole *Upper Elſats*; continued ſince that time in poſſeſſion of the houſe of *Auſtria*, deſcended from him. The third part comprehending all the *Lower Alſatia*, was not long after ſold by the Earl of *Ottingen*, to the Biſhop of *Strasburg*; whoſe Succeſſors hold it to this day, aſſuming to themſelves the title of the *Landgraves of Elſats*. But as for *Sungow*, or the County of *Pfirt*, that belonged antiently to the Princes of the houſe of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illuſtrious Family, by the death of *Conradine*, the laſt Duke, *Anno* 1268. that great Eſtate being ſcattered into many hands, it was made a diſtinct Earldom of it ſelf. And ſo it continued till the year 1324. when *Ulrick* the laſt Earl dying without iſſue male; left his eſtate betwixt two daughters: whereof the one named *Anne*, conveyed her part in mariage to *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſurnamed the *Short*, Grandchild of *Rodolphus* the Emperour before mentioned, the other named *Vrſula*, ſold her moiety to the ſaid *Albert*, for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been alwaies in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes of *Auſtria* (ſave only for the time in which it was pawned or morgaged, together with *Alſatia*, to the Duke of *Burgundie*) governed in *Civil* matters and points of Judicature, by the Parliament, or Court of *Enſheim* in the *Upper Elſats*.

5. *LORREIN*.

The Dukedom of *LORREIN* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Elſats*, and that part of the Lower *Palatinate*, which paſſeth by the name of *Weſt-reich*; on the Weſt, with the River *Mueſe* or *Maes*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Dukes hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North, with *Luxenbourg*, and the Land of *Triers*; and on the South, with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Province of *Elſats*, parted by the *Vogeſus* or *Vange*, wherewith incompaſſed on thoſe ſides. Aſſigned unto *Lotharius*, ſecond ſon of *Lotharius* the Emperour, (who was the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* the *Godly*) with the ſtile of a *Kingdom*: from thence called *Lot-reich* by the *Dutch*, *Lot-regne* by the *French*: from which the modern name of *Lorrein*, and the Latine, *Lotharingia*, are to fetch their Pedigree.

The Countrey is in length about four daies journey; almoſt three in breadth: much overgrown with Forreſts, and ſwelled with Mountains, the ſpurs and branches of *Vogeſus*, and the once vaſt Wilderneſſe of *Ardenne*; yet ſo ſufficiently ſtored with all manner of neceſſaries, that it needeth no ſupply out of other places. Some lakes it hath, which yield great quantity of fiſh; one more eſpecially 14 miles in compaſs, the Fiſh whereof yield to the Dukes coffers 20000 *l.* yearly.

It affordeth alſo divers metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in ſome places Pearls: *Chalcidonians* alſo of ſuch bigneſs, that whole drinking cups are made of them; and a matter, of which they make the pureſt glaſſes not to be paralleled in *Europe*. They have alſo a goodly breed of Horſes, equal to thoſe of *Barbary*, or the Courſer of *Naples*.

The people, by reaſon of their neighbourhood to, and commerce with *France*, ſtrive much to imitate the *French* in garb and faſhion; but one may eaſily ſee that it is not natural: and have much in them alſo of the *Dutch* humour of drinking; but far more moderately than the *Dutch* themſelves. Generally they are a politick and hardy Nation; not otherwiſe able to have held their eſtate ſo long, againſt the *French* Kings, and the Princes of the houſe of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppreſſed with taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and uſefull unto one another. Their language for the moſt part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxembourg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times: not ſo refined and elegant, as is ſpoke in *France*; not ſo corrupt and courſe as that of *Montbelgard*, and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in reſpect of the *French* language ſpoken here among them, accompt this Countrey among the Provinces, of *France*, and uſually deſcribe it ſo in their Charts and writings: but I have placed it with more reaſon (as I conceive) amongſt thoſe of *Germany*. Firſt, in regard that the Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire: but eſpecially becauſe that in the diviſion of the Kingdom of *Lorrein* betwixt the Emperours of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, whatſoever lay on the Eaſt ſide of the River *Meuſe*, (as this Dukedom of *Lorrein* for the moſt part doth) was reckoned in the ſhare or portion of the *German* Emperours.

The Rivers of chief note, are 1 *Marta*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and paſſing with a ſwift ſtream by the walls of *Nancie*, glides along fairly for a good ſpace within ſight of the *Moſelle*; into which at laſt it falls near *Conde*. 2 *Moſa*, the *Meuſe* or *Maes*, whoſe ſpring and courſe hath been already deſcribed in *Belgium*. 3 *Moſelle*, famous for the deſign of *Lucius Verus*, Governour for the Emperor *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariſeth in the mountain *Vauge*, not far from the head of the River *Soaſne*, and diſburtheneth it ſelf into the *Rhene* at *Confluentz*, he intended to have cut a deep chanel from the head of this unto the other, ſo to have made a paſſage from the *Ocean* to the *Mediterranean*: the *Soaſne* emptying it ſelf into the *Rhoſne*, a chief River of *France*; as the *Moſelle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4. *Selle* which mingleth waters with the *Moſelle*, not far from *Mets*. 5 *Sora*. 6 *Martane*. 7 *Voloy*, others of leſs note; all of them plentifull of *Salmons*, *Perches*, *Tenches*, and the beſt ſorts of fiſh: as in their Lakes great ſtore of *Carps*, ſom of them three foot long, and of excellent taſt.

Principal Cities in it, are 1 *Mets*; by *Ptolemy* called *Divodurum*; *Metis*, and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrices* who poſſeſſed this tract. Seated in a pleaſant plain at the confluence of the *Sore* and *Moſelle* the Royal Sea, in former times, of the *French* Kings of *Auſtraſia*, hence called King of *Mets*; long before that a Biſhops See, as it ſtill continueth. 2 *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Ptolemy*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, ſo called from the *Luci*, the Inhabitants of it, and the tract about it: pleaſantly ſeated on the *Moſelle*, and antiently honoured with a See Epiſcopal. 3 *Verdun*, an antient Epiſcopal See alſo, the *Civitas Verodonenſium* of *Antoninus*, ſeated on the *Meuſe* or *Maes*: the Town and Territory adjoyning in preceding times belonging to the Great Princes of the houſe of *Ardenne*, at and before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorrein*; but whether they had it in right of their Patrimonial Eſtate, as lying in the North part of this Countrey towards *Luxemburg*, as it well might, or that it came to them in the right of marriage with ſome daughter of the houſe of *Moſelle*, or other heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howſoever it came to them, it gave unto this houſe the title of Earls of *Verdun*, uſed in their Stile, till ſwallowed with the reſt in that of *Lorrein*. The Biſhops whereof, as alſo thoſe of *Mets* and *Toul* (being the only ones of this Countrey of *Lorrein*) acknowledge the Archbiſhops of *Triers* for their *Metroplitan*. All of them in the number (heretofore) of *Imperial Cities*, poſſeſſed of large and goodly territories, and of great revenue: but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the ſecond, *Anno* 1552. during the wars between *Charles* the fift and the *Proteſtant* Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them againſt the Emperour. And though *Charles* tryed all wayes to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and deſperate ſiege againſt the City of *Mets*: yet was the Town ſo gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guiſe*, that he was fain to raiſe his ſiege, and go off with diſhonour. Since that, they have been alwayes under the ſubjects of *France*; a Parliament being erected at *Mets* for the eaſe of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdom.

Of ſuch Towns as immediately belonged to the Duke of *Lorrein*, the principal are *Nancy*, not great, but of a pleaſant and commodious ſite: well watered by the river *Meurte* or *Marta*; and fortified better than before, in the year 1587. on occaſion of a great Army of the *Germans* paſſing into *France* to aid the *Proteſtants*: moſt commonly the Dukes ſeat, and famous for the diſcomfiture which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* here ſuffered with the loſs of his life. 2 S. *Nicolas*, a Town ſo populous, well ſeated, and neatly built; that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedency unto *Nancy* it ſelf: ſo called from a Church here built unto the honour of S. *Nicholas*, Biſhop of *Myra* in the leſſer *Aſia*, whoſe body they pretend to be buried here, or at leaſt ſome part or Relick of it to be here inſhrined; occaſioning a great reſort of Pilgrims and other people. 3 *Ponta Mouſon*, about 4 leagues from *Nancie*: So called from a bridge on the River *Mouſon*, upon which it ſtandeth; of eſpecial note for a ſmall Univerſity lately founded in it; and for giving the title of Marqueſs to the eldeſt ſon of the Dukes of *Lorrein* called commonly and contractedly Marqueſs *Du Pont* (*Marchio Montiſſimo Pontis*, by our

Modern

Lorrein.

Modern Latiniſts. 4 *Vaucoleur*, the birth-place of *Joan* the Virgin, to whoſe miracles and valour, the *French* attribute the delivery of their Countrey from the power of the *Engliſh*: but being at laſt taken priſoner, ſhe was by the Duke of *Bedford*, then Regent of *France*, condemned and burned for a Witch. Of which crime I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwiſe conceive of her and her brave exploits, than of a luſty laſs of *Lorrein*, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Baſtard* of *Orleans*; and ſo preſented to *Charles* the ſeventh, the *French* King, as if ſent immediately from Heaven. A project carried on of purpoſe (as the moſt intelligent of the *French* writers ſay) *pour fair revenir le courage aux Francois*, to revive the drooping ſpirits of the beaten *French*, not to be raiſed again but by help of a miracle. Upon the ſight of her *Statua* on the bridge of *Orleans*, a friend of mine did adventure on a Copy of Verſes in her commendation; too long to be inſerted here; but they ended thus.

She di'd a *Virgin*; 'Twas becauſe the earth
Bred not a man whoſe valour and whoſe birth
Might merit ſuch a *bleſſing*. But above
The Gods provided her an equal *Love*,
And gave her to Saint *Denys*. She with him
Protects the *Lillies*, and their Diadem.
You then about whoſe *Armies* ſhe doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her *match*.
And when in field your *ſtandards* you advance,
Cry loud, *Saint Denys* and *Saint Joan* for *France*.

Next theſe we have, 5 *Vandemont*, which gave the title of an Earl to a younger branch of the houſe of *Ardenne*, ſucceeded at the laſt in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, in perſon of Duke *Rhene* 2d. and ſince a Title of the younger ſon of the Dukes hereof. 6 *Neuaf-Chatteau*, on the edge of the Countrey towards *Barrois*. 7 *Amance*, ſeven leagues on the South of *Mets*, ſometimes the Chancery of *Lorrein*. 8 *Riche Court*, near the Lake called *Garde lake*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Meurte*. 9 *La Mothe*, ſeated on a River which falls preſently into the *Moſelle*. 10 *Churmes*, ſeated on the *Moſelle*, the place of treaty between the Duke of *Lorrein*, and the Cardinal *Richelieu*; the reſult whereof was the ſurrender of the Town of *Nancie*, and by conſequence of all the Dukedom into the hands of the *French*, *Septemb.* 1633. 11 *Stenay*, in the extream North of all this Countrey, a well fortified Town, and of great conſequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, or wreſted from the Soveraignty of *Sedan*, upon which it bordereth (as *Jamais* near unto it was) I have no where found. Of leſs note there are, 1 Saint *Die*, 2 Saint *Hippolit*. 3 *Bonquenon*, and 4 *Saverden*; the firſt Towns of this Dukedom taken by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1633. in the war againſt *Lorrein*. 5 Saint *Miel*. 6 *Oden Chaſteau*. 7 *Mirecour*, all taken the ſame year by the *French*, in the proſecution of that war, before the treaty, at *Churmes*. 8 *Romberville*. 9 *Eſpinul*. 10 *Gerbrevillier*, &c.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey were the *Mediomatrices*, and the *Leuci* ſpoken of before; together with the *Vindonenſes*, all of them conquered by the *Romans*: under whom this Countrey and the *Diſtrict* of *Triers*, made up the whole Province of *Belgica Prima*. From them being taken by the *French*, with the reſt of *Gaul*, it was made a Kingdom; the Provinces of *Germania Prima & Secunda*, (containing all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, and ſo much of the *Netherlands*, as lie on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*) being added to it: called firſt, from the Eaſtern ſituation, by the name of *Ooſtenreick*, or *Auſtraſia*; the portion of *Theodorick*, the fourth ſon of *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*; from the chief City of this Kingdom, called the King of *Mets*, whoſe ſucceſſors follow in this order.

The KINGS of *AUSTRASIA*, or *METS*.

514 1 *Theodorick*, the baſe ſon of *Clovis* the Great, vanquiſhed the *Turingians*, and extended his Kingdom as far as *Haſſia* and *Turingia*, as we call them now.

537 2 *Theodebert*, the ſon of *Theodorick*, repulſed the Danes infeſting the Coaſts of the Lower *Germany*; and added *Provence*, (taken from the *Gothes* of *Italy*) unto his Eſtates.

548 3 *Theobaldus*, the ſon of *Theodebert*, ſubdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Countrey to his own Dominions.

555 4 *Clotaire*, King of *Soiſſons*, the youngeſt ſon of *Clovis* the Great, ſucceeded *Theobald* in this Kingdom; as afterwards his brother *Childebert* in the Realm of *France*, *Anno* 560 uniting in his perſon the whole *French* Dominion.

565 5 *Sigebert* the ſon of *Clotaire*, vanquiſhed the *Hunnes*, then falling into his Eſtates: killed in his Tent by the practices of *Fredegond*, the wife of *Chilperick* King of *France*.

577 6 *Childebert*, the ſon of *Sigebert*, ſucceſſor to his Uncle *Guntrum* in the Realm of *Orleans*.

598 7 *Theodebert* the II. the ſon of *Childebert*, vanquiſhed and outed of his Kingdom by *Clotaire* the ſecond of *France*, from whoſe eldeſt ſon *Sigebert*, deſcended the Illuſtrious family of the Earls of *Habſpurg*.

617 8 *Clotaire* II. King of *France*, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Auſtraſia*, and his brother *Theodorick*, King of *Orleans*, the ſole King of the *French*.

9 *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Mets*, or *Auſtraſia*, whom he ſucceeded, at his death, in the Realm of *France*. *Lorrein.*

645 10 *Sigebert* II. the eldeſt ſon of *Dagobert*, made choice of this Kingdom, for this part of the whole *French* Empire; therein preferring it to *Weſt-France*, or *France* it ſelf, which he left to *Clovis* the 2d. his younger brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience, and ſubdued the *Sclaves*.

656 11 *Childebert* II. ſon of *Grimoaldus*, Mayre of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Mets*; *Dagobert* the ſon of *Sigebert* being ſhorn a Monk, and ſent into *Scotland*.

12 *Clovis* the 2d. King of the *French*, having vanquiſhed and beheaded *Grimoald*, diſpoſſeſſed *Childebert* of the Kingdom, which he took himſelf.

662 13 *Childerick* the 2d. ſon of *Clovis*, after the death of *Clotaire* his elder brother, ſucceeding in the Kingdom of *France*, united all the *French* Dominions into one Eſtate. In which condition it remained (but with ſome inlargement of the bounds) till the partition made by and amongſt the Children of *Lewis* the *Godly*; the name of *Auſtraſia*, or *Eaſt France*, being extended by *Charls* the Great, overall *Pannonia*, and ſo much of *Germany* as was under the command of the *French*. In which diviſion, *Lewis* the 2d. ſon, ſurnamed the *Antient*, being inveſted in the Kingdom of *Germany*, or ſo much of *Eaſt-France*, or *Auſtraſia*, as lay on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Rhene*: *Lotharius* the eldeſt ſon had for his ſhare, the title of Emperour, and therewith *Italy*, *Provence*, *Burgundie*, and ſo much of *Auſtraſia*, or *Eaſt-France*, as lay on the *French* ſide of the River. Afterwards ſubdivided into three Eſtates; *Italie*, with the title of *Roman* Emperour, being given to *Lewis* the eldeſt ſon; *Charles* the youngeſt, *Provence*, with the Kingdom of *Burgundie*; and to *Lothaire* the ſecond ſon, *Auſtraſia* on this ſide of the *Rhene*, from hence called *Lot-reich*, *Lot-regne*, and *Lotharingia*, as was before ſaid. But *Lothaire* dying without iſſue, the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, containing all the *Netherlands*, (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, became divided betwixt *Charls* the *Bald*, Emp. and King of *France*, and *Lewis* ſurnamed the *Antient*, King of *Germany*; the one calling himſelf King of *Lorrein* on that ſide, the other K. of *Lorrein* on this ſide of the *Maes*, the river *Maes*, or *Menſe* parting their poſſeſſions. but this portion held not long amongſt their ſucceſſors; For *Lewis* and *Caroloman* Kings of *France* (the ſons of *Ludovicus Balbus*) reſigning their part hereof to *Charls* the *Groſs*, Emp. of the *Romans*, and K. of *Germany*, the ſaid *Charls*, *Arnulph*, *Lewis* and *Conrade*, ſucceſſively Emperours of the *Romans*, and Kings of *Germany*, (together with *Zwentobald* the Baſtard ſon of *Arnulph* interloping in the very middle of them) enjoyed it wholly to themſelves. And ſo did alſo *Charls* the *Simple*, King of *France*, on the death of *Conrade*, till forced thereto by *Henry* the firſt (who ſucceeded *Conrade* in the Empire and Kingdom of *Germany*) he gave way to the old Partition ſpoken of before: the *Germans* after that encroaching more and more on that part hereof which of right belonged unto the *French*, till in the end (after much viciſſitude and interchangeableneſs of affairs) both Princes laid aſide the title of Kings, incorporating ſo much as they held hereof into the reſt of their Eſtates: *Otho* the 3d. of *Germany*, and *Lewis* the fifth of *France*, being the laſt that pleaſed themſelves with that broken title. In the mean time, this Countrey of *Lorrein* it ſelf, as it is now bounded, together with the Countrey of *Luickland*, a great part of *Brabant*, ſome parts of the Land of *Triers*, *Colen*, and as ſome ſay, the Countrey of *Gulick* alſo, (but in this of *Gulick* I demur, as before was ſaid) being taken out of it, were by *Otho* the ſecond made a Dukedom, *Anno* 981. and by him given with the title of Duke of *Lorrein*, to *Charls* of *France*, ſon of *Gerberge* his Aunt, by *Lewis* the 4th. ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, ſon of *Charls* the *Simple*. *Charls* thus advanced by his Couſin, and forgetting that he had been made Duke of *Brabant* not long before by *Lothaire* the *French* King, his brother; ſhewed himſelf ſo alienated from the *French*, and wedded to the *Germans*; that the *French*, after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the 5th. (whoſe next Heir he was) rejected him, and accepted *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Otho* the ſon of this *Charls*, dying without iſſue, left his eſtate to *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bouillon*, and *Verdun*, (his near kinſman by the mothers ſide:) from whom the Dukes of *Lorrein* do derive themſelves. From *Hermingrade* one of the daughters of this *Charles*, married to *Albert* (ſome call him *Charles*, and others *Godfrey*) Earl of *Namur*, by *Alice* their daughter, married to *Baldwin* the 5th of *Hainalt*, deſcended *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainalt*, the Father of the Lady *Iſabel of Hainault*, wife of *Philip* the 2d. K. of *France*, thereby uniting the bloud of *Pepin* and *Hugh Capet*, to the great content of *Lewis* the 9th her Nephew: of whom it is ſaid, that being a man of a tender conſcience, he never joyed in the Crown of *France*, till it was proved that he was lineally deſcended by his Grandmother, from *Charls of Lorrein*, whom *Hugh Capet* had ſo unjuſtly diſpoſſeſſed. But to return again to the Dukes of *Lorrein*, I find not any great improvement made of the Eſtate by any of them, more than the acceſſion of the remaining Patrimony of the Earls of *Ardenne*, in the perſon of *Godfrey*, or *Geofrey*, the third Duke hereof: and the adding of the Dutchy of *Barr*, in *France*, by *Rene* the Duke of *Anjou*, and titulary King of *Naples*; but on the contrary, a great weakning and diſtraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luickland* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* being ſold unto the Biſhops of *Liege*, by *Godfrey*, ſurnamed of *Bouillon*, after King of *Hieruſalē*; *Brabant* torn from it by *Godfrey* Earl or *Lovain* in the time of *Baldwin*, brother of *Godfrey*; and *Gulick-land*, by *Euſtace* the brother of *Baldwin*; the Biſhops of *Triers* not being negligent all this while, of the opportunity. Beſides which, ſomewhat had been done by the Emperour *Otho* the 3d. to the diminution of this Eſtate, who ſeing that *Otho* the ſecond Duke, ſon of *Charls* of *France*, intended to transfer this Dukedom to the houſe of *Ardenne*, diſmembred from it both the City of *Colen*, and ſome other pieces on the *Rhene*. But here it is to be obſerved, that this great Eſtate was either taken out of ſuch part of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*, which of right belonged unto the *French*, and had been

Lorrein.

conquered by the ſword of *Otho* the ſecond, or otherwiſe had been regained unto the Empire by his Father and Grandfather; and ſo might lawfully be diſpoſed of as to him ſeemed beſt: And 2ly. that it was not ſtrange, nor without good reaſon, that he ſhould beſtow it on a Prince of the houſe of *France*: For having no other ſon than *Otho* the ſecond (his next ſucceſſour in the Empire) nor any great hopes of Poſterity by him, who in fine died childleſs; he might conſider *Charles* of *France*, ſon of the Lady *Gerberg* his Fathers ſiſter, as moſt near in bloud, and conſequently as capable of his favours as any other whoſoever. Which ſaid, we have no more to do but to preſent the Reader with the Catalogue of

The DUKES of *LORREIN*.

A. Ch.		
981	1	*Charles* of *France*, took priſoner by *Hugh Capet*, in which ſtate he died. He married *Bona*, daughter of *Ricuine*, and ſiſter of *Godfrey* the elder, Earls of *Ardenne*.
1001	2	*Otho* ſon of *Charls* and *Bona*.
1004	3	*Godfrey*, Earl of *Ardenne*, ſon of *Godfrey* the elder, and Couzin of *Otho* by his mother, confirmed herein by the power of the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond.
1019	4	*Gozelo* of *Bouillon*, the brother of *Godfrey*.
1044	5	*Godfrey*, II. ſon of *Gozelo*.
1070	6	*Godfrey* III.
1078	7	*Godfrey* IV. of *Bouillon*, ſon of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardie*, and of *Ida* his wife, the daughter of *Godfrey*, the ſecond created King of *Hieruſalem*, An. 1099.
1100	8	*Baldwin*, brother of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorrein*, and King of *Hieruſalem*.
1119	9	*Thierrie*; ſon of *William* the brother of *Baldwin*.
1128	10	*Simon*, ſon of *Thierrie*.
1141	11	*Matthew*, ſon of *Simon*.
1176	12	*Simon* II. ſon of *Matthew*.
1207	13	*Frederick*, brother of *Simon*.
1213	14	*Theobald*, ſon of *Frederick*.
1219	15	*Matthew* II. ſon of *Theobald*, no great friend of the Popes.
1259	16	*Frederick* II. ſon of *Matthew*.
1303	17	*Theobald* II. ſon of *Frederick*.
1311	18	*Frederick* III. ſon of *Theobald*.
1329	19	*Rodolph*, ſon of *Frederick*.
1346	20	*John*, ſon of *Rodolph*.
1382	21	*Charls*, ſon of *John*.
1430	22	*Rene*, Duke of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*, &c. in right of *Iſabel* his wife, the daughter of *Charls*.
1452	23	*John* II. ſon of *Rene* and *Iſabel*, ſucceeded on the death of his mother.
1470	24	*Nicolas*, ſon of *John*.
1473	25	*Rene* II. ſon of *Frederick* Earl of *Vandemont*, and of *Violant*, or *Toland*, daughter of *Iſabel* and *Rene* the firſt; the vanquiſher of *Charls* of *Burgundie*, at the battel of *Nancy*.
1508	26	*Anthony*, ſon of *Rene* the ſecond.
1544	27	*Francis*, ſon of *Anthony*.
1545	28	*Charls* II. ſon of *Francis*.
	29	*Henry*, ſon of *Charls*, married *Katherine*, ſiſter to *Henry* the 4th. of *France*.
1624	30	*Francis*, brother of *Henry*.
1630	31	*Charls*, Nephew to *Francis*, by his brother the Earl of *Vandemont*; and ſon-in-law to him by the marriage of his daughter and Heir: ſucceeded by a mixt title of deſcent and marriage. Being reſolved to hold it in his own right, he put away his wife, the daughter of *Francis*; and took another to his bed, which he better fancied: puniſhed not long after by the loſs of his whole eſtate; for immediately he ingaged himſelf in the Wars of *Germany*, in behalf of *Ferdinand* the ſecond: but being beaten by the *Swedes* at the battel of *Pſaffenhofen*, in the County of *Hanaw*, he loſt a great part of his Countrey to the *Victors*, who purſued him home. And on the other ſide, *Lewis* the 13th. of *France*, picking a quarrel with him for receiving the *Monſieur* his brother, and the marriage of the *Monſieur* with the Lady *Margaret* the Dukes ſiſter; deprived him of the Dutchy of *Bar*: and falling into *Lorrein* with a puiſſant Army, at ſuch time as the *Swedes* were there, compelled him to put into his hands the City of *Nancy*, and by conſequence all the reſt of his eſtates, *Septemb.* 1633. Since which time the Duke hath never been reſtored thereto, nor hath any thing left him in it, for ought I can hear, but the Town of *La Mothe* (if that) together with a good cauſe, many hearts, and an invincible courage.

The Arms of *Lorrein* are Or, a Bend *Gules*, charged with 3 Larks *Argent*. But herein I find *Bara* an old *Herald*, to differ from *Paradine* the moſt exact *Genealogiſt* of the *French* Nation. For *Bara* chargeth the Bend, not with 3 *Allovettes* Larks, as *Paradine* doth, but with 3 *Allerions*: which are in Blazon, ſmall Birds, wanting beaks, feet and legs. Of this laſt opinion is the moſt worthy Antiquary *Camden Clareucieux*: who withall telleth us, that when *Godfrey of Bullaigne* was at the ſiege of *Hieruſalem*, ſhooting at S. *Davids* Tower there; he broached three feetleſs birds, called *Allerions*, upon his arrow, and thereupon aſſumed this Arms.

The revenues of this Prince are 700000 Crowns; whereof 200000 ariſe from the cuſtoms of the Salt made in his Countrey; and the other 500000. from his Coronet lands. He is an *abſolute Prince*, and giveth for his device, an armed hand coming as it were from Heaven, and graſping a naked ſword: to ſhew that he holdeth his Eſtate by no other tenure, than God and his ſword; the onely hope at this time, of the preſent Duke. For though he be accompted a *Prince of the Empire*,

Suevia.

and his Dukedom reckoned foe a part of the fifth *Circle* thereof, which is called the *Circle of the Rhene*; yet he neither comes unto the *Diets*, nor hath himſelf bound by any of the *Orders and Decrees* which are made therein, as do the reſt of the great Princes of *Germany*; his neighbourhood to the *French*, formerly ſecuring his eſtate againſt any force which the Empire durſt bring againſt him, for thoſe neglects.

SUEVIA, or *SCHWABEN*.

The Dukedom of *SUEVIA*, or *SCHWABEN*, according to the antient limits and extent thereof, was bounded on the North, with *Frankenland*, and the *Lower Palatinate*; on the South, with the *Switzerland*, and the *Alpes* of *Tirol*; on the Eaſt, with the River *Lech*, parting it from *Bavaria*; and on the Weſt, with the *Rhene*, dividing it from *Sungow*, and both *Alſatia's*. But now the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquiſate of *Baden*, and other leſſer eſtates being taken out of it, it is contracted and reſtrained within narrower bounds: having on the Eaſt, *Bavaria*; on the Weſt, the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, and ſo much of the *Rhene* as ſerveth to divide it from *Sungow*, and the *Upper Elſats*; on the North, *Franconia*, or *Frankenland*; and on the South, a little of the *Rhene*, with ſome part of the *Switzers*.

The Countrey for the moſt part mountainous and hilly, overſpread with ſome ſpurs of the *Alpes*, and the Woods of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Swartzenwald*: recompenſed notwithſtanding with great plenty of Springs and Rivers, and amongſt them the *Neccar*, and the renowned *Danubius* which do iſſue from them; which makes the Vales hereof to be very fruitfull, ſufficiently ſtored with all neceſſary proviſions. Nor are the Woods and Mountains ſo unprofitable, but that beſides the great plenty of fewel, and the pleaſures of hunting, they do afford ſome *Mines* of Iron, and other metals.

The people in regard of their mountainous ſituation, more fierce and warlike than the reſt of the *Germans*, and ſo accompted of by *Plutarch* in former times: induſtrious in ſeveral Trades and Manufactures, eſpecially in weaving of Linen Cloath, which is here made in great abundance: and who by reaſon they have ſo much in them of the South, are *ſupra modum in* Venerem *proni*, as *Aubanus* tells me, at leaſt more given to *Venus* than the other of the *Germans* are; the women being ſaid to be very forward in this kind, as tractable and eaſie as the men could wiſh them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow*, lying next to the Lake of *Conſtance*; the *Algow*, extending to *Bavaria*; *Briſgow*, upon the Weſt of the River *Rhene*; and *North-Schwaben*, on the Northern ſide of *Danubius*. Principal Cities in the *HEGOW*, are 1 *Lindaw*, ſituate like an Iſland in the Lake of *Conſtance*; encompaſſed almoſt with the waters thereof, but joyned to it with a Cauſey of 290 paces long: one of the *Free*, or *Imperial* Cities; made ſo for money, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, An. 1166. 2 *Buchorn*, and 3 *Uberlingen*, on the ſame Lake, both *Imperial* alſo. 4 *Scaff-hauſſen*, ſeated on both ſides of the *Rhene*, not far from the efflux thereof out of the Lake *Cell*, (ſo called from a Town of that name belonging to the Archdukes of *Auſtria*, but antiently by the name of *Lacus Venetus*:) and near thoſe dreadfull falls, or *Cataracts* of that River, no leſs than 50 cubits downwards, with great noiſe and violence. For which cauſe all Veſſels that go down to the *Rhene*, are fain to unlade themſelves, and by Carts to carry their goods to this Town; where they imbark them again. Which as it yieldeth great benefit unto the Town by Tolls, and Impoſts, ſo doth it alwayes keep it ſtored with abundance of Barks and other Veſſels; whence it hath the name of *Scaff-hauſſen*, that is to ſay, the *houſe of Sciffes*, or the Town of *Ship-boats*. The Town conveniently ſeated amongſt rich Paſtures, and ſweet groves on both ſides of the River; not without ſome pleaſant Hills, and thoſe well planted with Vives, near adjoyning to it: *Imperial* once, but now a *Canton* of the *Switzers*, as hath there been ſhewn. 5 *Arbon*, upon the Lake it ſelf (the *Arbor Felix* of *Strabo*) belonging to the Biſhop of *Conſtance*. 6 *Merſpurg*, the ordinary ſeat & reſidence of the Biſhop of *Conſtance*, Lord of the moſt part of this Tract, on the ſame Lake alſo. 7 *Conſtance* it ſelf, ſituate on both ſides of the *Rhene*, where it iſſueth out of the Lake, called from hence the Lake of *Conſtance*: but by the *Dutch*, *Boden-zee*, from the Caſtle of *Bodwin*; by *Pliny* & other Antients *Lacus Acronius*, & *Brigantinus*; made by the confluence of the *Rhene*, and ſome other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town *Imperial*, an Epiſcopal See, and a flouriſhing Empory. Famous for the Council here holden, *An.* 1414. of great renown as well for the multitude and quality of the people which were there aſſembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled: The people of moſt note there aſſembled, were *Sigiſmund* the Emperour, 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbiſhops and Biſhops, 564 Abbats and Doctors, 10000 ſecular Princes and Noblemen, 450 Common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Minſtrels and Jeſters. The buſineſs there handled, was firſt the pacifying of a *Schiſm* in the Church, there being at that time 3 Popes (or rather *Anti-Popes*) viz. *Gregory* the 12th. reſident at *Rome*, *John* the 23d. at *Bononia*, and *Bennet* the 13th. in *Spain*; all three depoſed by the Council, and *Martin* the 5th. made ſole Pope, by the unanimous conſent of the Council; declaring both by matter of fact, & by a publick *Conſtitution* here made and ratified, that a *Council is above the Pope*. The other main buſineſs was the proceeding againſt *John Hus*, and *Hierome of Prague*, (ſpoken of before) both which, notwithſtanding the Emperours *ſafe conduct*, were here condemned of *Hereſie*, degraded, and burnt. Now the manner of *degrading* a Prieſt is this, (I hope to be excuſed for this *digreſſon*.) The party to be *degraded* is attired in his Prieſtly Veſtments; holding in one hand a *Chalice*, full of wine and water, and in the other a gilt plate (or *Paten* as they call it) with a *Wafer*. Then kneeling down the Biſhops Deputy firſt taking from him all thoſe things, commands him to ſay no more *Maſſes* for the quick and dead. 2 Scraping his fingers ends with a piece of glaſs, he commandeth him from that time forwards not to

Suevia.

hallow any thing: and 3 ſtripping him of his Prieſtly habit, he is clothed in a *lay* attire, and ſo delivered over to the *Secular* Magiſtrate. But to return again to the City of *Conſtance*, being proſcribed by *Charls* the 5th for refuſing the *Interim*, and not able to withſtand ſuch Forces as were raiſed againſt them; they put themſelves under the *Protection* of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and brother of *Charls*. But herein they fell out of the *Frying-pan into the fire*, as the ſaying is: For *Ferdinand* being poſſeſſed of the Town, ſeized on the common Treaſury, and upon all records and writings which belonged unto them; ſet out an Edict, that all the Miniſters, within eight dayes ſhould depart the City, and that no Citizen from thenceforth ſhould wear any weapon. And ſo inſtead of a *Protector*, he became their *Maſter*.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria*, which is called the *ALGOW*, are 1 *Buchaw*, on the lake called *Feder-zee*, a Town *Imperial*. 2 *Ravenſpurg*, a Free City, ſeated amongſt mountains, whereof one hangeth over it; the River *Ach* running by it in a bed ſo narrow, that not able to receive the waters which fall down from the Hills, it much endamageth all the Countrey by frequent *Land-flouds*. 3 *Woongen* (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) *Imperial* alſo. 4 *Kempten*, the *Campodunum* of *Strabo*: and 5 *Nimmegen*, the *Druſomagus of Ptolemy*, both Imperial Cities; the laſt about 3 miles in circuit, populous, rich, and very well traded. 6 *Pſullendorf*. 7 *Zeukirk*. 8 *Bibrach*; all three Imperial; the laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Bragodurum* of the antients. 9. *Ausburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, firſt made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and by him called *Auguſta Vindelicorum*. The principal City in thoſe times of the *Vindelici*, a potent people of this tract. A City of great wealth and ſtate, containing about 9 miles in circuit, and very ſtrongly fortified; by nature on the Eaſt and North, where the ground lies low, and under water; and on the Weſt and South by Art. The buildings for three parts of it, are of Clay and Timber; but on the Weſt part ſeated on an Hill, built of *Freeſtone*, ſix or ſeven ſtories high; in which are many fair houſes of the principal Citizens, and many ſtately Palaces which belong to the *Fuggars*, a family of very great (almoſt Princely) Revenues; poſſeſſed of many goodly dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoyning Territories. Who though they have of late obtained the honour of Barons, in regard of their wealth; ſtill keep themſelves (contrary to the cuſtom of *Germany*, where Traffick is counted a diſgrace to a *Nobleman*) to the trade of *Merchandiſe*. The publick Edifices of it very decent, eſpecially the *Cathedral* Churth, a majeſtick building; the other Churches, ten in number, and the Religious houſes, correſpondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worſhipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulneſs of the ſoyl) the City gives a *ſheaf of Corn* for the Arms thereof: Since their converſion unto Chriſtianity made a Biſhops See. Deſtroyed by *Attila* and his *Hunnes*, it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly; at laſt made *Imperial*, and the Miſtreſs of as large a Territory as moſt Cities of *Germany*. Famous for the *confeſſion of Faith*, exhibited in this place to *Charls* the 5th. by the *Proteſtant* Princes, hence called *Confeſſio Auguſtana*, An. 1530. 2 For the *Interim*, or mixt form of Doctrine, containing ſome points of *Proteſtantiſm*, but moſt of *Popery*; here tendred to both parties by the ſaid Emperour (but received by neither) to be ſubſcribed to, and obſerved, till the difference could be ſetled by a *General Council*; And 3 For the publick allowance here given by *Decree* of all the States of the Empire, to the *Proteſtant* party, to profeſs openly their *Religion* without any impeachment, *An.* 1555. a Limitation only laid on the *Eccleſiaſticks*, that if they changed their *Religion*, they ſhould loſe their preferments; which were to be beſtowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*.

In the third part hereof called *BRISGOW*, lying on the Eaſt of the River *Rhene*, and the Weſt of *Wirtenberg*, and on the South cloſed in with the Canton of *Baſil*; Places of moſt importance are, 1 *Friburg*, upon the *Trieſſe*, and other ſtreams deſcending from the Mountains of *Swertzen-wald*, under which it lieth: founded by *Berchthold* the third, Earl, or Duke of *Zeringen*, (the Caſtle of *Zeringen* founded by *Berthold* the firſt, ſon of *Gebizo*, the youngeſt ſon of *Guntrum*, the 2d. Earl of *Habſpurg*, once the chief ſeat of thoſe Princes, being then near adjoyning to it) in the reign of *Henry* the 5th. Emperour, *An.* 1112. or thereabouts. Famous in thoſe dayes for ſilver Mines, now for an Univerſity here eſtabliſhed, *An.* 1459. and being in preſent eſtimation the cheif of the Countrey, of which more anon. 2 *Offenbach*. 3 *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kintrich*, and both Towns *Imperial*: the firſt ſo named from *Offa* an *Engliſh Suxon*, the *Apoſtle* of thoſe parts of *Germany*. 4 *Hochberg*, which gives the title of a Marqueſs to the Marqueſſes of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5 *Zel*, once *Imperial*, but of late times belonging, as doth alſo 6 *Badenwiller*, to the Marqueſs of *Baden*, this laſt accruing to them by the marriage of *Rudolphus* the ſixth of that name, Marqueſs of *Hochberg*, with a ſiſter of *John*, Earl of *Friburg*, the then Lord thereof. 7 *Waldſhut* upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold, and mountainous Countrey, but well ſtored with woods. 8 *Briſach*, by *Antonine* called *Mons Briſiacus*, a Garriſon in his time againſt the incroaching *Almans*; and ſituate at that time on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, the courſe of the River being ſince turned on the other ſide, where now it runneth. Built Caſtle-wiſe on the top of a round hill, in which there is alſo a ſtrong Tower, or Fortreſs, raiſed by *Berchthold* the third, for defence of the place; otherwiſe ſtrong enough by its own natural ſituation: and might be made impregnable, but for want of water, which is all drawn from one deep well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene*, which runs underneath it. The Town, fair, populous, and well built; once of moſt note in all the Countrey, from hence called *Briſac-gow*, or *Briſegow*; but after the building of *Friburg* by *Berchthold* the fourth, it grew by little and little to be leſs frequented; the other being ſeated more conveniently for trade and buſineſs. Here alſo not far off from the Caſtle of *Zeringen*, ſtood that of *Kiburg*, ſomewhat the antienter of the two; of ſuch authority and repute in thoſe elder times, that the Emperours do ſtill retain the title of Earls of *Kiburg*, in the Stile Imperial: deſcended on the houſe of *Habſpurg* by the marriage of

Eliza-

Suevia.

Elizabeth, daughter and heir of *Hartman* the laſt Earl hereof, to *Eberhard* of *Habſpurg*, Couſin German to the Emperor *Rodolph*, on the expiring of which line, *Anno* 1356. it fell, together with many fair Eſtates among the *Switzers*, to *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, ſurnamed the *Short*.

Finally, in the fourth and laſt part hereof called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, becauſe on the North ſide of the *Danow*, the places moſt obſervable are, 1 *Gmund*, on the *Rheems*; 2. *Dinkel-Spuel*, on the *Warnitzs*, two Imperial Towns: which with *Uberlinque* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in building, territory, or eſtimation) ſpoken of before; are the only three Imperial Cities in all *Germany*, which totally adhered unto the Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3. *Boptingen*, on the *Egra*, an Imperial City. 4. *Norlingen*, on the ſame River, but on a low and mooriſh ground, yet of great reſort, populous, and well-traded. Moſt memorable for the great defeat here given the *Swedes*, by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperor, at his firſt entrance on the Government: in which *Bannier*, one of the principal commanders of that nation, was ſlain on the place; *Guſtavus Horn*, another of as great eminence, taken priſoner, their whole Forces routed; and thereupon ſo ſtrange an alteration of the affairs of *Germany*, which they had almoſt wholly conquered (though not for themſelves:) that the *Palatinate*, not long before reſtored to its proper owner, was again poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankenland* by the *Imperialiſts*, and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their holds, on the *Baltick* ſeas, *Anno* 1637. 6. *Rotweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, and Imperial City and a Confederate of the *Switzers*. 7. *Donawerdt*, ſeated on the confluence of the *Danow* and the *Weerdt*, whence it had the name; moſt commonly called only *Werdt*, an Imperial Town: the habitation of *John de Werdt*, once a Brewer herein, but afterwards a chief Commander of the Forces of the Duke of *Bavaria*, in the late German wars. 8. *Villengen*, on the *Bregen*, a ſmall river falling into the *Danow*, a Town belonging to the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*. Not far from which ſtands. 9. *Furſtenburg*, an antient Caſtle, the Earls hereof are Princes of the Empire, and Lords of a great part of the Country, deſcended lineally from *Eginon*, or *Eggon*, the youngeſt ſon of the Lady *Judith*, ſiſter and heir of *Berthold* the fifth, the laſt Duke of *Zeringen*, and conſequently a branch of the illuſtrious houſe of *Habſpurg*: exceedingly increaſed both in power and patrimony, by the mariage of *Frederick* Earl hereof (in the time of *Charles* the fifth, under whom he ſerved in his wars againſt the Proteſtants) with *Anne* the daughter and heir of *Chriſtopher* the laſt Earl of *Werdenberg*, poſſeſſed of many fair eſtates amongſt the *Switzers*, and the adjoyning parts of *Schwaben*. In a village of this Earl called *Don-Eſchingen*, is the head of *Danubius*. 10. *Ulme*, an Imperial City, ſituate on the meeting of the *Blave*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*; the principal City of *North-Schwaben*: about ſix miles in compaſſe, rich, populous, well fortified; and ſtored with an Armory, for Ordinance & all manner of Ammunition, not inferiour to any in *Germany*. The Town but new, taking its firſt riſe from a Monaſtery here founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulme* from the *Elmes* about it. At firſt it belonged unto the Monks, of whom having bought their freedome in the time of *Frederick* the third, it became Imperial. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having ſo violent a ſtream, that the Boats which go down the water uſe to be ſold at the place where they land; it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence on the banks of the *Danow* lie the *Suevian Alps*, and amongſt them, the old Caſtle of *Hohenberg*; the Lord whereof, on the ruine of the houſe of *Schwaben*, became poſſeſſed of a great eſtate here, and in *Upper Elſats*, ſold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Abſpurg*, the founder of the now *Auſtrian* Family.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brixantes*, *Suanetes*, *Rugiſci*, and *Calucones*, who, together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other tribes of the *Rhæti*, (of whom ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in the *Alpine* Provinces) poſſeſſed themſelves of that Country which lieth betwixt the river *Inn*, and the head of the *Rhene*, Eaſt and Weſt; *Danubius*, and the *Alps* of *Italy*, North and South. Within which compaſſe are the greateſt part of the *Griſons*, the Dukedomes *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, on this ſide the *Danow*, and part of the Country of *Tirol*; and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Druſus* & *Tiberius Nero*, ſons-in-law of *Auguſtus*, it was made a Province of the *Romans*: divided into *Rhætia Prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lycus*; and *Rhætia Secunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck* and the river *Inn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which accompt all *Schwaben* on the South ſide of the *Danow*, was part of the Province of *Rhetia Prima*, continuing ſo till vanquiſhed and ſubdued by the *Almans*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Weſtern parts. As for the *Almans* who ſucceeded in poſſeſſion hereof, they were originally ſome tribes and families of the *Suevi*, the moſt warlike Nation of the *Germans*, inhabiting upon the banks of the river of *Albis*: who jealous of *Cæſars* great ſucceſſes, brought againſt him 430000 fighting men; of which 80000 were ſlain, and many drowned. They uſed to ſtay at home, and go to the war by turns: they which ſtayed at home, tilling the Land; to whom the reſt returning, brought the ſpoil of the Enemies. But after this blow, we hear little of them, till the time of *Caracalla*, the ſon of *Severus*; during whoſe reign, deſcending towards the banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other Nations as they paſſed a long; they aſſumed firſt the name of *Almans*; either from the promiſcuous mixture of all ſorts of men; or (as I rather think) from *Mannus* the ſon of *Tuiſco*, one of the great & national Gods of the *Germans*. And though well beaten by him at their firſt coming down, near the river *Mœnus*; and afterwards more broken by *Diocleſian*, who ſlew at leaſt 60000 of them at one time, in *Gaul*; yet never left they to infeſt the Provinces of the Empire, which lay neareſt to them: till in the end, following the tract of the *Hunns*, who had gone before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garriſons which were in their way; they made themſelves Maſters of *Rhætia Prima*, *Germania Prima*, & part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing beſides the Countries ſpoken of before, *Alſatia*, & ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate*,

Suevia.

as lies on the French ſide of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the French their next neighbors (of whoſe growth and greatneſſe they began to be very ſenſible) they were firſt vanquiſhed by *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the French, in that great and memorable fight at *Zulph*, near *Colen*: and afterwards made wholly ſubject to the Conquerour, by whom oppreſſed with an heavie and laſting ſervitude. About this time they returned again to their old name of *Suevians*; their eſtate being erected into a Dukedome, called many times the Dukedome of *Almain*: and when ſo called, divided into the *Upper Almain*, comprehending the countrey of the *Griſons*, with ſome parts of *Switzerland*, and *Tirol*; and the *Lower* or the *Proper Almain*, which contained the reſt of the Eſtates of the antient *Almans*, called for the moſt part by the name of the Dukedome of *Suevia* or *Schawben*, and finally tranſmitting that name to this Province only, the beſt part thereof. Theſe Dukes at firſt officiary only, removeable at the will of the Emperour, and accomptable to him: not ſeldome many at one time, eſpecially whilſt under the command of the French; ſome of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower *Almain*. So that there is no great certainty of their ſucceſſion: nor much care to be taken in ſearching after it; though otherwiſe men of great authority and command in their ſeverall times. The moſt remarkable amongſt them was *Rudolph*, Earl of *Reinfelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, (deſcended from the Earls of *Habſpurg*) in the reign of *Henry* the fourth; againſt whom he was choſen Emperour, by the practice and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*: but overcome and wounded at the battel of *Eyſter*, he died not long after of his wounds, with great repentance for rebelling againſt his Sovereign. After his death, ſome Provinces being diſmembered from it, and other leſſer eſtates firſt erected out of it; it was made hereditary in the perſon of *Frederick*, Baron of *Hohenſtauffen*, ſirnamed the *Antient*, by the munificence and bounty of the ſaid *Henry* the fourth, whoſe daughter *Agnes* he had married. His Succeſſours follow in this order.

The DUKES of *SCHWABEN*.

1 *Frederick* the Antient, the firſt hereditary Duke of *Schwaben*.
2 *Frederick* with one eye, ſon of *Frederick* the Antient.
3 *Frederick* III. ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, ſon of *Frederick* with one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperor, he ſucceeded the Emperour *Henry* the fifth, in the Dukedome of *Franconia*, and left the ſame unto his Succeſſours.
1190 4 *Frederick* IV. ſecond ſon of *Barbaroſſa*, his elder brother *Henry* ſucceeding in the Empire, by the name of *Henry* the ſixth.
5 *Conrade*, brother of *Frederick* the fourth.
6 *Philip*, brother of *Conrade*; after the death of *Henry* the ſixth, elected Emperour.
1207 7 *Frederick* V. ſon of *Henry* the ſixth, elected Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Naples* and *Sicil* alſo in the right of his mother.
1250 8 *Conrade* II. ſon of *Frederick* the fifth King of both *Sicils*, and Emperour of *Germany*, after the death of his Father; poiſoned, as was ſuppoſed, by his baſe brother *Manfred*, who ſucceeded in his Kingdom of *Sicil*.
1254 9 *Conradine*, the ſon of *Conrade*; purſuing his right unto the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicil*, was overcome and taken priſoner by *Charles* of *Anjou*, Succeſſour unto *Manfrede* in thoſe eſtates; and by his command beheaded at *Naples*, *Anno* 1268. After whoſe death (being the laſt of that powerful and Imperial Family:) this vaſt eſtate was brought unto a ſecond diſmembering, and divided amongſt the Biſhops, Princes, and Free Cities hereof: of which laſt there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedome, than in all *Germany* beſides. So that beholding it in the firſt and ſecond dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Eſtates (beſides what belongeth to the Cities and Epiſcopal Sees) to have been raiſed out of the ruines of this great Dukedome: that is to ſay, the Dukedomes of *Zeringen* and *Wirtenberg*, with the Marquiſate of *Baden* diſmembered from it, when conferred on *Frederick* of *Hohenſtauffen*; the Earldoms of *Pfirt*, *Hohenberg*, and *Friburg*, (beſides a great improvement of the Earldom of *Habſpurg* (advanced out of the ſecond ruine. How *Pfirt* and *Hohenberg* were united to the houſe of *Auſtria*, hath been ſhewn already; and what becomes of *Wirtenberg* and *Baden*, ſhall be ſhewn hereafter. Here it is onely to be noted, that the Family of *Zeringen*, poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow*, and great part of *Switzerland*, owe their Originall to *Berthold*, the ſon of *Gebizo*, a younger ſon of *Guntram* the ſecond Earl of *Habſpurg*. Which being extinguiſhed after a ſucceſſion of ſeven Princes onely, in the perſon of *Berthold* the fifth (who died the ſame day in which the Emperor *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* was born) *Anno* 1218 the rights hereof deſcended on the Earls of *Friburg*, the principal City of that Country. *Cuno* the firſt that bare the title of Earl of *Friburg*, being the eldeſt ſon of *Judith*, ſiſter and heir of *Berthold*, the laſt Duke of *Zeringen*. *Eggon*, the laſt Earl of which houſe, being over laid by his undutiful and rebellious Subjects, ſold his eſtate therein, for 12000 Ducats, to *Albert* and *Leopold*, Dukes of *Auſtria*, ſons of *Albert* the *Short*; whoſe Succeſſours enjoy all *Briſgow* to this very day.

The Arms of *Schwaben* were *Argent*, three Leopards *Sable*, as is ſaid by *Bara*; but *Paradine* will have them to be three Leopards *Sable*, crowned *Gules*, in a field *Or*.

7. *BAVARIA*.

BAVARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Auſtria*; on the Weſt, with the river *Leck*, or *Lyons*,

which

Bavaria.

which parts it from *Schwaben*; on the North, with *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*; and on the South, with the Earldom of *Tirol*, and *Carinthia*. It containeth the whole Province of *Rhatia Secunda*, and ſo much of *Noricum Mediterraneum*, as now maketh up the Biſhoprick of *Saltzburg*: and by a diſtinct name was called *Vindelicia*, as being the ancient habitation of the *Vindelici*; ſo named from the two rivers of *Vindis* and *Lycus* (now the *Werd* and the *Leck*) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus verſified by a German Poet.

Reſpicit & late fluvios Vindimque, Lycumque,
Miſcentes undas, *& nomina Litoris*; *unde*
Antiquam Gentem, *populumque*, Urbemque *vocarunt*
Vindelicam. ———
In *Engliſh* thus:
Vindis and *Lycus*, floods of noted Fame,
He next beholds, mingling their ſtreams and name;
To which the old *Vindelici* do own
The name; both of their Nation and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Auguſta Vindelicorum*, their *Metropolis*, or Capital City. But after ſuch time as the *Boii* or *Boiarians* had driven out the *Romans*, and got poſſeſſion of this Country; the name of *Vindelicia*, and *Rhætia ſecunda*, grew into diſ-uſe: that of *Boiaria* ſucceeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into *Bavaria*, the preſent name of the Countrey amongſt the Latines; but by the Dutch called *Bayeren*, by the French *Bavier*.

The whole divided into three parts, the Higher lying towards the *Alps* of *Tirol*; the Lower, extending all along the banks of the *Danow*; and the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg*, ſituate betwixt the *Inn*, and the Dukedome of *Auſtria*: all three much overſpread with woods and foreſts, remainders of the *Hircinian foreſt* deſcribed before. But more particularly the Higher, lying towards the *Alps*, is cold and barren, affording no wines, and but little corn: the Lower being more fruitful, and better planted, for ſome parts (eſpecially about *Regensberg*, and *Landſhut*) inferiour unto none in *Germany*, for the richneſſe and pleaſantneſſe of the ſituation. Of the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg* we ſhall ſpeak by it ſelf, becauſe by ſome not reckoned as a part hereof. In all, great quantity of fewel for the fire, and of timber for building; no leſſe of Swine fatted in the woods, and ſent away by numerous herds into other Countries.

The Chriſtian Faith firſt preached here amongſt the *Boiarians*, by *Rupertus* Biſhop of *Wormes*; driven from his See by *Childebert*, King of the French, *Anno* 540. or thereabouts; and here made the firſt Biſhop of *Saltzburg*: corrupted at this time with the Leaven of the Church of *Rome*, to which this Country (ſetting aſide the *Imperial Cities*) is more intirely devoted, than any other in all *Germany*.

Principall Cities in the Higher, are 1. *Munchen*, (in Latine *Monachium*) the Dukes ſeat, ſeated on the *Iſer*, or *Iſaurus*, in a very ſweet and dilightfull ſoil, among Ponds and Groves; daintily interlaced with pretty Riverets, and inriched with many excellent Gardens, that of the Duke being hardly to be paralleld in all this Continent. Firſt founded by *Henry* Duke hereof, in the time of *Otho* the firſt, *Anno* 972. now grown a large and populous City; the publike buildings, as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate-houſe or *Guild-hall*, and common Market-place, of ſuch excellent Structure, that they ſerve not only for uſe and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongſt them none more eminent than the Library in the Ducal Palace, wherein is conceived to be 110000 Volumes, the moſt part of them Manuſcripts. A town made choiſe of by *Maximilian* the now Duke of *Bavaria*, to be the receptacle of the ſpoils, got by him in the wars of *Germany*: here being found (at ſuch time as the Town was taken by the King of *Sweden*) 140 braſſe Peeces (beſides other great Guns) hid under the ground, one of the which was charged, in ſtead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. *Landsberg*, upon the *Leck* or *Lycus*, near the *Alps* of *Tirol*; once of great ſtrength, becauſe a Frontire towards *Schwaben*: but proving a dangerous neighbour to the Swediſh Garriſoned planted in theſe parts, during that war againſt the Duke of *Bavaria*, was by them taken and diſmantled, and is now an open village only. 3. *Martenwald*, now a place of note or beauty, heretefore the *Inutrium* of *Ptolemy*, ſeated near the *Alps*. 4. *Fridberg*, well fortified by Duke *Ludowick*, or *Lewis* the ſecond, for a Bulwark againſt thoſe of *Augsburg*. 5. Here ſtood alſo the old Caſtle of *Schyre*, built by *Arnulph*, ſecond ſon of *Arnulph* the firſt Duke of *Bavaria*; the ſeat and honorary title of his poſterity (*Dinaſta Schyrenſes*, in the Latine) till *Otho* of *Wiltersback*, by the favour of *Frederick Barbaroſsa*, and his own good fortune, did attain that Dukedome.

In the *LOWER Bavaria*, there firſt offers it ſelf to conſideration, the town of 1. *Rain*, ſeated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*: memorable for the skirmiſh near to it betwixt the Swedes & Bavarians, at the firſt paſſing of the Swediſh forces over the river, in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, ſo famous for his long and fortunate conduct, received his deaths wound, of which he died at *Ingolſtad* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg* upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the firſt Town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes*, after the ſaid defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolſtat*, ſaid to be built by a Tribe, or Nation of the *Sueves*, called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angeloſtadium*, or *Angleſtade*; firſt made a City by *Ludowick* of *Bavaria*, Duke and Emperor; and in the year 1410. made an Univerſity, much priviledged by Duke *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, and Pope *Pius* the ſecond. A Town ſo

ſtrongly

Bavaria. ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it ſeems impregnable: and indeed proved ſo to *Guſtavus* the late King of *Sweden*; who here found the firſt check to his proſperous fortunes, being forced to raiſe his ſiege without endangering it, and find work elſewhere. 4. *Regensberg* (in Latine *Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* alſo, where it receives the river *Regen*, whence it hath its name: built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Auguſta Tiberii*, ſo called of a Colony brought hither by *Tiberius Caſar*, about the time of our Saviours paſſion; afterwards called *Rhatopolis*, or the City of the *Rhatians*, the chief of *Rhatia ſecunda*. At this time a fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houſes: anciently an Epiſcopal See, and of late made the ordinary place for the *General Diets* of the Empire. In former times the ſeat of the Kings, and firſt Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made *Imperial*; and now mixt, or both. For being ſtill *Imperial*, at leaſt in name, it was ſeiſed on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*; when the *Swedes* firſt got footing within his Dominions; held by him with a ſtrong Garriſon, after the loſſe of *Munchen*, his chief place of reſidence, till at laſt won from him by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1633. 5. *Paſſaw*, by the modern Latiniſts, *Patavia*; but by ſome thought to be the *Boiodurum* of *Ptolemy*, then a Roman Garriſon. Seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn*, and the *Ills*; by which divided into three Towns, *Paſſaw*, *Innſtade*, and *Iſtade*: the whole *Compoſitum* being a rich, fair, and well-traded City. A See Epiſcopal, and ſubject immediately to the Biſhop, as chief Lord hereof; who hath his dwelling in the Caſtle of *Oberhuſen*, adjoyning to that part hereof which is called *Ilſtade*. A place remarkable for many meetings and conſultations of the German Princes; eſpecially for that of the year 1552, in which all former quarrels being laid aſide, the *Proteſtants* were firſt permitted the free Exerciſe of their Religion, by the conſent and Edict of *Charls* the fifth, who had moſt laboured to ſuppreſſe it. More in the Land is 6. *Friſing*, on the ſwelling of a fine round hill, near the river *Ambra*, which runs beneath it, called anciently *Fraxinum*: conceived to be built by ſome of the Preſidents, or Lieutenants for the Roman Emperours; honoured with an Epiſcopal See about the year 710. One of the Biſhops whereof, commonly called *Otho Friſingenſis*, was the beſt Hiſtorian of his time. 7. *Landſhut*, upon the River of *Iſar*, in the richeſt and moſt pleaſant Country of all *Bavaria*; a beautiful and well built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof, in the year 1208. adorned with a Church of moſt curious building, for the ſervice of God, and a magnificent Palace for the uſe of the Duke. 8. *Freiſtet*, the onely Imperial Town, (except *Regensburg*) in all this Dukedome. The whole number of Cities and great Towns in both *Bavaria's*, is ſuppoſed to be 80; that is to ſay, 34 Cities, 46 great Towns: of which theſe the principal.

The *Biſhoprick* or *Diſtrict* of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former diviſion of it) extendeth from the *Inn*, or *Oenus*, towards the confines of *Auſtria*. The ſoil hereof rocky, dry, & barren, excepting ſome few valleys only, as ſeated in the midſt of the *Julian Alps*, the habitation heretofore of the *Norici Mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Saltzburg*, ſeated upon the river *Saltzach*, whence it had the name: raiſed out of the ruines of *Juvania*, placed hereabouts by *Antoninus*, the ſtation of a cohort of Roman Souldiers belonging to the firſt Legion. An Alpine City, ſtrongly ſituate among the Mountains; but no leſſe beautifull than many of the lower grounds. The Royall ſeat of ſome of the Bavarian Kings, after of the Arch-biſhops hereof, the moſt powerful Prelates for revenue or juriſdiction, of any in *Germany*: the See firſt fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Rutbertus*, the firſt Apoſtle of theſe parts, ſpoken of before, whoſe image or impreſſe is ſtamped to this day on the coin of this Biſhoprick. At the time when *Luther* firſt endeavoured a Reformation, Cardinal *Matthaus Langius* was Biſhop here, who did ingenuouſly confeſſe, that the Maſſe did not want its faults, that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lives of Prieſts and Friars *fit* to be reformed: *Sed quod miſellus Monachus omnia reformet, id non eſſe tolerabile*: but that ſuch a ſorry fellow as *Luther* ſhould attempt the work, that by no means to be endured. 2 *Newkirch*, on the ſame river, near the head thereof. 3. *Rotenberg*, on the Eaſt ſide of the *Inn*, bordering on *Bavaria*. 4. *Traunſhaim*, upon the *Traun*, riſing out of the Lakes. 5. *Wildeſmet*, one of the fartheſt Northwards; and 6. *Biſhops-ſtoffe*, one of the moſt Southern in all this Tract.

The firſt Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforeſaid: A people ſo reſolvedly bent to maintain their freedom, againſt the incroachment of the *Romans*, that when *Druſus* the ſon-in-law of *Auguſtus*, and Father of *Germanicus Caſar*, made war upon them, the very women thereof took the alarm; *& deficientibus telis, infantes in ora militum adverſa miſerunt*: and when their darts were ſpent, threw their young infants (ſaith the Hiſtorian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them, in the declining of the Empire, ſucceeded the *Boiarians*, ſome of the many tribes of the *Boii*, the moſt diffuſed ad multitudinous Nation of *Gaul*, and *Germany*. Originally of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedome of *Bourbon*, from whence ſome of them paſſed with the *Senones* and others of the *Gauls*, to the further ſide of the *Alps*, (in reſpect of them;) where they took up the Countrey between the *Apenine* and the *Po*. Wearied with many bickerings, at laſt with ſharp and bitter wars againſt the *Romans*, and by them deprived of half their Country, ſome of them paſſed into *Germany*, & mingled themſelves with the *Tauriſci*, then dwelling in thoſe parts which we now call *Stiermark*: others advancing further, thruſt themſelves into the *Norici*, of whom more anon) and ſome retired themſelves into the ſhelters & faſt places of the *Hercinian* Foreſt. Driven from this laſt by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hermanduri* and *Noriſci* (now the *Upper Palatinate*) who mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarians*, and by that name firſt known in the time of *Clovis*, the 5th King of the *French*: by whoſe perſwaſion, in the 17 year of *Anaſtaſius* Emp. of the Eaſt, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Vindelicia*, or the ſecond *Rhatia*, with ſome part of *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was ſignified. Governed

firſt

Bavaria.

firſt by Kings (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigenius* (and he the laſt of that race) ſlain, fighting on the ſide of the *Almans* againſt the *French*, at the great battel of *Zulp*, near *Colen*: after which made ſubject to the Conquerours, as their neighbours and confederates the *Almans* were; but ſuffered to live under the command and government of their own Princes, by the name of Dukes. Of theſe, from *Theodo*, the ſon of *Aldigerius*, to *Taſſilo* the laſt Duke, outed of his eſtate and honours by *Charls* the Great, for conſpiring with the *Lombards* againſt him, are reckoned fifteen Dukes in all: whoſe names (for there remaineth little of them but the empty names) we ſhall ſubjoin in the enſuing Catalogue of the

DUKES of the *BOIARIANS*.

493 1 *Theodo*, ſon of *Adalgerius* the laſt King; from whoſe younger brother *Utilo*, deſcended *Pepin* the Father of *Charls* the Great.
511 2 *Theodo* II. ſurnamed the Great.
537 3 *Theodebert*.
4 *Theodo* III. the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of the *Boiarians*.
565 5 *Taſſilo*, ſon of *Theodebert*.
598 6 *Garibaldus*.
612 7 *Theodo* IV.
630 8 *Taſſilo* II.
650 9 *Theodo* V.
10 *Theodebert* II.
11 *Theodo* VI. ſon of *Grimoldus*, the brother of *Theodebert* the ſecond.
708 12 *Grimold*.
13 *Hugobert*, brother of *Grimold*.
735 14 *Utilo*.
765 15. *Taſſilo* III. the laſt Duke of the *Boiarians*. Of whom more anon.

Amongſt theſe, few of any note, but 1 *Theodo* the firſt, ſon of *Adalgerius*, who abandoning the name of King, becauſe leſs pleaſing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, aſſumed that of Duke: and paſſing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhætia ſecunda*, with part of *Noricum*, from the *Romans*, An. 508, or thereabouts. 2 *Theodo* the ſecond, named the Great, for his great and many victories againſt the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum*, and *Vindelicia*; and whatſoever they held on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Alps*. 3 *Theodo* the 3d. of that name, and 4th in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Chriſtian Faith, by the preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, *An.* 580. 4 *Taſſilo* the 3d. of that name, and the laſt of their Dukes of the race of *Adalgerius*, or of the old *Boiarian* bloud: who being depoſed by *Charls* the Great, the whole Countrey became immediatly ſubject to the *French*, governed at firſt by their Lieutenants. Diſmembred from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the *Godly*, it was made a Kingdom (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom conferred on *Lotharius* his eldeſt ſon, who was afterwards Emperour of the *Romans*: after his death poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a diſtinct Kingdom both in name and title, till the deceaſe of *Lewis* the ſon of *Arnulph* the laſt of the direct line of *Charls* the Great. He being dead, and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a ſubject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*; one *Arnulph* of the iſſue of the ſaid *Charls*, with the general liking of the *Boiarians*, took upon himſelf the title of King; but being oppoſed therein by *Conrade* the brother of *Lewis*, Emperour and King of *Germany*; as alſo by *Henry* the firſt, who ſucceeded; he changed the title of King into that of Duke, the Founder of the preſent houſe of

The DUKES of *BAVARIA*.

1 *Arnulph*, of the houſe of *Charls* the Great, firſt Duke of *Bavaria*.
2 *Eberhard*, ſon of *Arnulph*, depoſed by *Otho* the firſt.
3 *Berchthold*, the brother of *Arnulph*, confirmed in the eſtate by the ſaid Emperour *Otho*. After whoſe death, it was conferred on *Henry*, the brother of *Otho* the firſt, who had married *Judith*, daughter of *Arnulph* the firſt Duke, and ſiſter to *Eberhard*.
4 *Henry*, brother of *Otho* the firſt, ſirnamed *Rixoſus*, or the *Quarrelſom*.
5 *Henry* II. ſon of the former *Henry*, ſirnamed *Hezelo*.
6 *Henry* III. ſirnamed the *Saint*, ſon of *Henry* the ſecond, the firſt Emperour who came in by *election*, according to the *Order* made by Pope *Gregory* the fifth. After whoſe coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 ſucceſſions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleaſure of the preſent Emperour, in manner following.
7 *Henry* IV. ſirnamed *Hezzel*, brother to *Cunegund* the renowned wife of *Henry* the *Saint*; by whom preferred to this Dukedom, and by him depoſed.
8 *Henry Guelph*, ſon of *Robert* Earl of *Altorfe* in *Schwaben*, (of the ſtrange Original of which Family we ſhall ſpeak in *Brunſwick*) made Duke by the Emperour *Conrade* the ſecond.
9 *Guelpho*, ſon of *Henry Guelph*, or *Henry* the fifth.
10 *Erneſt*, created Duke hereof by the ſame *Conrade* the ſecond, by whom depoſed again for conſpiring againſt him.
11 *Henry* VI.

Bavaria.

12 *Cuno*, accuſed of conſpiracy, and diſplaced by *Henry* the 3d. to make room for

13 *Henry* VII. ſon of the ſaid Emperour *Henry* the 3d. whom he ſucceeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4th.

14 *Agnes*, the mother of the ſaid *Henry* the 4th. by the gift of her ſon.

15 *Otho*, by the gift of the Empreſs *Agnes*, depoſed not long after by *Henry* the 4th.

16 *Welpho* III. ſon of *Coniza* the daughter of *Guelph* the 2d. by *Azon*, an *Italian* Marqueſs; made Duke hereof by the ſaid Emperour *Henry* the 4th.

17 *Welpho* IV. ſon to *Welpho* the 3d.

18 *Henry* VIII. ſirnamed the *Proud*, brother of *Guelpho* the 4th. by the marriage of *Gertrude* daughter of *Lotharius* the 2d. Duke of *Saxony* alſo. Deprived of both by the Emperour *Conrade* the third.

19 *Leopold*, ſon to *Leopold* the 4th. Marqueſs of *Auſtria*, made Duke by the ſaid *Conrade* the 3d.

20 *Henry* IX. brother of *Leopold*, after Marqueſs, and at laſt Duke of *Auſtria*.

21 *Henry* X. ſirnamey the *Lion*, ſon of *Henry* the *Proud*, reſtored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* (the Duke of *Auſtria* being otherwiſe ſatisfied:) by whom not long after proſcribed and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this eſtate became fixed and ſetled, in the perſon and poſterity of

1180 22 *Otho* of *Witlesbach*, ſo called from the place of his birth, or dwelling; deſcended lineally from *Arnulph* the Lord of *Schyre* in the Upper *Bavaria*, and ſecond ſon of *Arnulph*, the firſt Duke hereof, advanced unto this honour by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, ſenſible of the too great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this eſtate being reduced by this time, to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Northgoia*.

1183 23 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis*, ſon of *Otho*.

1231 24 *Otho* II. ſon of *Lewis*, who by marrying *Gertrude* the ſole daughter of *Henry* Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral dignity into the houſe of *Bavaria*.

1290 25 *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, the ſon of *Otho* the ſecond.

1294 26 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* II. brother of *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria*, and Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.

1312 27 *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* III. ſecond ſon of *Lewis* the 2d. ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*; *Rodolph*, the eldeſt ſon, ſucceeding in both *Palatinats*, and the Electoral dignity. he was afterwards elected and crowned Emperour, known commonly by the name of *Ludovicus Bavarus*.

1347 28 *Stephen*, the eldeſt ſon of *Ludovick* the Emperour; *William* and *Albert* his two brethren ſucceſſively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their mother.

1375 29 *Stephen* II. ſon of *Stephen* the firſt, his brother *Frederick* and *John* ſharing with him parts of the eſtate.

1413 30 *Ludovick* II. ſirnamed *Barbatus*, depoſed and impriſoned by his own ſon *Ludovick*, who yet died before him without iſſue.

1447 31 *Henry* II. ſon of *Frederick*, the ſecond brother of *Stephen* the ſecond, ſucceeded on the death of *Ludovicus Barbatus*.

1450 32 *Ludovick* V. ſirnamed the *Rich*, the ſon of *Henry* the ſecond, baniſhed the Jews out of his eſtates, and ſeiſed their goods.

1479 33 *George*, ſirnamed the *Rich* alſo, the founder of the Univerſity of *Ingolſtade*: whoſe ſole daughter and Heir was married to *Rupertus* Prince *Elector Palatine*; with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dower. But *Maximilian* the Emperour not liking ſo much greatneſs in the *German* Princes, confirmed the ſame on

1503 34 *Albert* III. ſon of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John* of *Munchen*, by his ſon *Erneſtus*: which *John* was youngeſt brother to *Stephen* the ſecond, who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperour, ſucceeded unto *George* the *Rich*: The cauſe of a long and unhappy War betwixt the *Electors* of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*; the worſt whereof, beſides the loſs of this Eſtate, fell upon the *Palatines*, proſcribed and outed of their Countrey upon this quarrel; but upon their ſubmiſſion reſtored again.

1508 35 *William* the ſon of *Albert* the third.

1577 36 *Albert* IV. a great Champion of the *Doctrines* and *Traditions* of the Church of *Rome*; and ſo extreamly affected unto the *Jeſuits*, that he built Colledges for them at *Landsberg*, *Ingolſtade*, and *Munchen*, his three principal Towns.

1579 37 *William* II. ſon of *Albert* the fourth, as zealous as his Father in the cauſe of the Church of *Rome*; in which exceeded very much by

38 *Maximilian*, eldeſt ſon of *William* the 2d. who chiefly out of the ſame zeal ſided with *Ferdinand* the 2d. in the Wars of *Germany*, An. 1620. and took upon him the conduct of the Armies of the ſaid Emperour, againſt *Frederick* Count and Elector *Palatine*, choſen King of *Bohemia*. In which having done great ſervice to the *Imperial* and *Romiſh* intereſſe, he was by the ſaid *Ferdinand* inveſted in the *Upper Palatinate*, called anciently (but not more properly than now) the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, together with the *Electoral* dignity: This laſt conferred at firſt upon him but for term of life, in the Diet at *Regensberg*, 1623. the Elector of *Mentz*, *Saxonie*, and *Brandenbourg*, then proteſting againſt it: but afterwards in the Diet at *Prague*, An. 1628. conferred upon him and his Heirs for ever: to the great prejudice of the Princes of the *Palatine* Family, who by reaſon of their *ſimultaneous inveſtiture* with the firſt of their houſe, are not to be deprived of their Eſtates and dignities for

the

Auſtria.

the offence of their Fathers; the puniſhment not being to extend beyond the perſon of the offender. But notwithſtanding their pretenſions, and allegations, the Duke is ſtill poſſeſſed of the title and dignitie; confirmed therein by the concluſions of the Treaty of *Munſter*: a new Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes.

The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 pieces in *Bend*, *Argent*, and *Azure*.

The ARCH-DUKEDOM of *AUSTRIA*.

The *Archdukedom* of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in the incorporate Provinces, and Members of it, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Hungarie*, and a part of *Sclavonia*; on the Weſt, with *Bavaria*, and ſome parts of the *Switzers*, and the *Griſons*; on the North, with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; and on the South, with *Hiſtria*, and ſome part of *Friuly*, in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the ſeveral Provinces of *Auſtria*, properly ſo called, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tirol*: the quality of the whole will be beſt diſcerned by the Survey of particulars.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole, were the *Norici* of the *Romans*, parted into the leſſer Tribes of *Sevates*, *Alauni*, *Ambiſontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidranni*: ſubdued by *Druſus*, ſon-in-law to *Auguſtus Caſar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Conſtantine* the Great divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countreys of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and ſome parts of *Tirol*, with the Biſhoprick, or Diſtrict of *Saltzburg*; of which *Solyun* was the *Metropolis*, or Capital Citie: and *Noricum Ripenſe*, containing onely *Auſtria*, and thoſe parts of *Bavaria*, which lie Eaſtward of the River *Inn*; extended all along on the banks of the *Danow*. Known by no other names while poſſeſſed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avares*, and other Nations, it gained thoſe ſeveral names, and appellations, ſpecified before.

1 *AUSTRIA*, properly ſo called, hath on the Eaſt, the Kingdom of *Hungarie*, from which parted by the River *Rab*; on the Weſt, *Bavaria*; on the North, the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the Weſt, and on the other ſide, the *Teya*, which ſeparates it from *Moravia*; on the South, *Stiria*, or *Stiermark*. Called by the *Dutch*, *Oſtenreich*, and contractedly *Ooſtrich*, that is to ſay, the Eaſtern Kingdom (a part aſſuming to it ſelf the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *Eaſt-France*, or the Eaſtern Kingdom of the *French*: in the barbarous Latine of thoſe times, called by the name of *Auſtraſia*, whence the modern *Auſtria*.

The aire is generally very healthy, and the earth as fruitfull; yielding a plentifull increaſe, without help of *compoſt*, or other ſoiling; and of ſo eaſie a tillage to the husbandman, that on the North-ſide of the *Danow*, it is ploughed and managed by one horſe onely. Exceeding plentifull of Grain, and abundant in Wine, with which laſt it ſupplieth the defects of *Bavaria*: great ſtore of *Saffron*, ſome proviſion of *Salt*; and at the foot of the Mountains, not far from *Haimbourg*, ſome *Ginger* alſo. Nor wants it Mines of *Silver* in a large proportion. Divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lower*, and the *Higher*: that lying on the North-ſide of the River, towards *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*; this on the South-ſide, towards *Stiermark*.

Places of moſt importance in the *HIGHER AUSTRIA*, are 1 *Gmund*, ſeated on a Lake called *Gemunder-See*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the efflux of the River *Draun*, which ariſeth out of it. 2 *Lints*, ſeated on the confluence of the ſaid *Draun*, with the famous *Danow*; the *Aredate* of *Ptolemy*: A Town before the late Wars almoſt wholly *Proteſtant*; but then being put into the hands of the D. of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other ſide. 3 *Walkenſtein*, on the *Ens*, or *Aniſus*, near the borders of *Stiermark*. 4 *Ens*, on the fall of that River into the *Danow*; raiſed out of the ruines of *Laureacum*, ſometimes the *Metropolis* of *Noricum Ripenſe*, the Station at that time of the ſecond Legion: afterwards an Archbiſhops See, made ſuch in the firſt planting of *Chriſtianity* amongſt this people by S. *Severine*, *Anno* 464. On the reviver whereof, (ſuppreſſed by the *Hunnes*, *Boiarians*, and others of the barbarous Nations) by the diligence and preaching of S. *Rupertus*, the Metropolitan dignity was fixt at *Saltzburg*. 5 *Waidhoven*, near the head of the River *Ips*. 6 *Ips*, ſeated at the influx of that River, and from thence denominated; the *Geſodunum* of *Ptolemy* and other ancients. 7 *Newfull*, on a great Lake ſo named. 8 *Wels*, on the main ſtream of the *Danubius*. 9 *Haimburg*, on the confluence thereof, and the River *Markh*: Near to which at the foot of the Mountains now called *Haimburgerberg* (from the Town adjoining (but anciently named *Mons Cognamus*, is ſome ſtore of *Ginger*: a wonderfull great rarity for theſe coulder Countreys. 10 *Newſtat*, firſt called ſo from the newneſſe of it, being built of late. 11 *Vienna*, by the *Dutch Wien*, the principal of all theſe parts, by *Ptolemy* called *Juliobona*; *Vindebona*, by *Antonine*; the ſtation in their times of the tenth *Roman Legion*: of whoſe being ſetled here, there are many Monuments, both within the Citie and without. Seated it is on the Banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private and publick edifices: each private houſe having ſuch ſtore of cellarage for all occaſions, that as much of the City ſeems to be under the ground, as is above it. The *Streets* for the moſt part ſpacious, and all paved with ſtone, which makes them very clean and ſweet in the midſt of Winter: fenced with a mighty Wall, deep and precipicious ditches on all parts of it; and many Bulwarks, Towers, and Ramparts, in all needfull places: the Walls hereof firſt raiſed with ſome part of the money paid unto *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria*, for the ranſom of King *Richard* the firſt of *England*, taken priſoner by him as he paſſed homewards through this Countrey, from the *Holy Land*. Eſteemed at this day the ſtrongeſt hold of *Chriſtendom* againſt the *Turks*, and proved experimentally ſo to be in that moſt notable and famous repulſe here given them, *An.* 1526. At which time 200000 of them, under the conduct of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, beſieged this Citie; but by the valour of *Frederick* the

ſecond,

Auſtria. ſecond, Elector *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, and other *German* Princes gallantly reſiſted, and compelled to retire, with the loſs of 80000 Souldiers. Nor doth the ſtrength hereof ſo diminiſh the beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodlieſt Towns in all the Empire, the reſidence for theſe laſt ages of the Emperours; made an Univerſity by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond, revived, and much advanced by *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, *Anno* 1356. Adorned with an Epiſcopal See, many magnificent Temples, and ſtately Monaſteries: but above all with a moſt ſumptuous and Princely Palace, wherein the Archdukes and Emperours uſe to keep their Courts; built by *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, during the little time he was Duke of *Auſtria*. In the middle ages, as appears by *Otho Friſingenſis*, it was called *Fabiana*; but being ruined by the *Hunnes*, and again re-edified, was firſt called *Biana* (the firſt ſyllable omitted by miſtake, or negligence) from whence the *Dutch Wien*, and the *Latine Vienna*.

We ſhould now take a view of the Towns and Cities in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*, if there were any in it which were worth the looking after. The Countrey having never been in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no Town of any great *antiquity*; nor many new ones built, or beautified by the *Auſtrian* Princes, ſince it came into their poſſeſſion: the onely one of note being *Crems*, or *Cremia*, on the left-hand ſhoar of *Dannbius*, going down the water. 2 *Rets*, on the River *Teya*, bordering on *Moravia*; and 3 *Freiſtat*, at the foot of the Mountains on the Skirts of *Bohemia*. The old Inhabitants of this tract are ſuppoſed to be the *Quadi*, in that part which lieth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni*, in thoſe parts which are next *Moravia*: who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Boiarians*, won from the *Romans* the whole Province of the *Second Rhætia*, and ſo much of *Noricum* as lieth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, leaving the reſt to the *Avares*, who poſſeſſed that, and the two *Pannonia's*, extorted alſo from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty Empire.

But theſe *Boiarians* being conquered by *Clovis* the Great, and the *Avares* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Char le magne*; both Princes became Members of the *French* Empire, till the ſubduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*. To oppoſe whom, and keep in peace and ſafety theſe remoter parts, ſome *Guardians* or *Lords Marchers*, were appointed by the Kings and Emperours of *Germany*, with the title of *Marqueſſes* of *Oſtreich*. At firſt *Officiary* only, but at laſt *hereditary*. Made ſo by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, ſirnamed the *Illuſtrious*, the ſon of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg*, of the houſe of *Schwaben*; and there withall the title of *Marqueß*, *Anno* 980. This *Marquiſate* was by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* raiſed to a Dukedom. 1158. *Henry* being the firſt Duke, whoſe brother *Leopold* took *Richard* the firſt of *England* priſoner, in his return from *Paleſtine*: for whoſe ranſom he had ſo much money, that with it he bought *Stiermark*, together with the Counties of *Neobourg* and *Lintz*: and walled *Vienna*. His ſon *Fredericus*, ſirnamed the *Warlike*, was made King of *Auſtria* by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1225. Eleven years he continued in this dignity; at the end of which he was ſpoyled of his royal Ornaments by the ſame hand, for denying his apperance at the Emperours ſummons, unto whom for ſome outrages he had been complained of. Finally, he died in the year 1246. diſcomfited and ſlain in battel by the King of *Hungary*. Leaving no iſſue of his body, this eſtate of right ſhould have deſcended on *Frederick*, ſon of *Hermannus*, Marqueſs of *Baden*, and of *Gertrude* his wife, the Neece of this *Frederick* the *Warlike*, by his brother *Henry*, who was afterwards beheaded at *Naples* by *Charles* of *Valois*, *Anno* 1268. But *Ottacar*, ſon of *Primiſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending to it in the right of *Margaret* his wife, one of the ſiſters of the ſaid *Frederick* the *Warlike*, by a ſtrong hand poſſeſſed himſelf of the Dukedom of *Auſtria*, which he increaſed by the addition of *Carinthia*, and *Trevigiana*, all which he held, together with the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, till the year 1278. in which he was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, not long before advanced to the *German* Empire. *Rodolphus* thus poſſeſſed of theſe great eſtates, conferred them on *Albertus* his eldeſt ſon, who had then married *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Meinard* Earl of *Tirol*, by *Elizabeth* (or *Agnes*) his wife, the daughter of *Gertrude*, and ſiſter and ſole Heir at laſt of *Frederick*, ſo cruelly murdered at *Naples*, as before was ſaid. By means of which marriage and inveſtiture, *Albert* was quietly poſſeſſed of the Dukedoms of *Auſtria*, *Stiermark*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, together with *Marka Trevigiana*, to which the Earldom of *Tirol*, and many other fair eſtates in *Schwaben* and *Alſatia* were after added. By whom it was firſt raiſed to the title of *Arch-Duke*, is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, at the inveſtiture of his ſon *Albert* into theſe Eſtates, *Anno* 1298. Others to *Charles* the fourth, advancing to that honour *Rodolph* the *Ingenious*, *Anno* 1360. Some make it to be firſt given to *Albert* Duke hereof, in the year 1430. and others poſt it lower to the marriage of *Philip*, ſon of *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*, and of the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princeſſe of *Spain*. But by whomſoever given at firſt, it is now the conſtant and hereditary title of all this Family: the ſucceſſive Princes whereof from the firſt inveſtiture, follow in the enſuing Catalogue of

The MARQUESSES, DUKES, KINGS, and ARCH-DUKES of *AUSTRIA*.

926	1	*Leopold* of *Bamberg*, the firſt Marqueſſe.
988	2	*Henry*, ſon of *Leopold*.
1014	3	*Albert*, ſon of *Henry*, ſirnamed the *Victorious*.
1056	4	*Erneſtus*, ſon of *Albert*.
1076	5	*Leopold* II. ſon of *Erneſt*, a companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*.
1096	6	*Leopold* III. ſon of the ſecond, founder of the Abby of *Nenbourg*.

Stiria.

1136 7 *Leopold* IV. ſon of the third, by his half brother *Conrade* the third, then Emperour of the *Germans*, made Duke of *Bavaria*.

1141 8 *Henry* II. brother of *Leopold*, Marqueſs of *Auſtria*, and Duke of *Bavaria*; made the firſt Duke of *Auſtria*, by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, *Anno* 1158. the whole Country betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, being added by the ſaid Emperour unto his eſtate, on his relinquiſhing of *Bavaria* to the Duke of *Saxony*.

1177 9 *Ludovick*, ſon of *Henry*, built *Ens* and *Newſtat*; of great note in the wars of the *Holy Land*.

1193 10 *Leopold* V. ſon of *Ludovick*, the irreconcilable enemy of our *Richard* the firſt, taken priſoner by him in his paſſage homewards, and put unto a grievous ranſom, the Dukedom of *Stiermark* being purchaſed with a part thereof.

1230 11 *Frederick* the *Warlike*, ſon of *Leopold* the fifth, made King of *Auſtria* by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond; the laſt of the male iſſue of the Houſe of *Bamberg*.

1246 12 *Ottocar*, ſon of *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending the right of *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter of *Frederick*, poſſeſſed himſelf of this eſtate: adding thereto the Countries of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, which he bought of *Ulrick*, the laſt Prince thereof; but diſpoſſeſſed of all by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*.

1283 13 *Albert* II. ſon of Rodolph of *Habſpurg*, by his Father made Duke of *Auſtria*, married *Elizabeth*, the lineal and direct heir of *Gertrude*, one of the Neeces, and (on the death of that *Frederick*, who was ſlain at *Naples*) the next heir of *Frederick* King and Duke of *Auſtria*; after his Fathers death choſen Emperour alſo.

1308 14 *Rodolph* the *Ingenuous*, his other brother ſharing with him in the eſtate.

1315 15 *Albert*, ſurnamed the *Short*, the youngeſt and ſurviving brother of *Rodolph*, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate; a great advancer of his Houſe.

1358 16 *Albert* IV. ſon of *Albert* the *Short*.

1395 17 *Albert* V. ſon of *Albert* the fourth.

1404 18 *Albert* VI. ſon of *Albert* the fifth, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his wife, daughter and heir of *Sigiſmund* the King thereof.

1439 19 *Ladiſlaus*, ſon of *Albert* and *Elizabeth*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Auſtria*.

1457 20 *Frederick* II. on the death of *Ladiſlaus* without iſſue, ſucceeded into the Dukedom of *Auſtria*, as the direct heir of *Leopold* the 9th. one of the younger ſons of *Albert* the *Short*; choſen alſo Emperour.

1493 21 *Maximilian*, ſon of *Frederick*, enriched his Houſe with the marriage of the heir of *Burgundy*.

1519 22 *Ferdinand*, Grandchild to *Maximilian* by his ſon *Philip* King of *Spain*, and Archduke of *Auſtria*; ſucceeded his Grandfather in this Dukedom: King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Emperour of *Germany*.

1565 23 *Maximilian* II. ſon of *Ferdinand*.

1577 24 *Rodolphus* III. ſon of *Maximilian* the ſecond.

1612 25 *Matthias*, brother of *Rodolphus*.

1619 26 *Ferdinand* II. ſurnamed *Gratz*, ſon of *Charles* Duke of *Auſtria*, of the Houſe of *Gratz*, the youngeſt ſon of *Ferdinand* the firſt (the numerous Off-ſpring of *Maximilian* the ſecond being all dead without iſſue) ſucceeded in the eſtates of *Auſtria*, choſen Emperour alſo, King of *Hungaria* and *Bohemia*, &c.

27 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, now living *Anno* 1648. Archduke of *Auſtria*, King of *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*, and Emperour of the *Germans*. Of whoſe eſtate and the *Concomitants* thereof, we ſhall ſay more, when we have took a view of the reſt of the Provinces.

2. *STIRIA* or *STIERMARK*, is bounded on the North, with *Auſtria*; on the South, with *Carinthia*; on the Eaſt, with *Hungary*; and on the Weſt with *Carinthia*: extended in length 110. miles, but in breadth not above 60 or thereabout. For the moſt part mountainous and barren, as being overſpread with the ſpurs and branches of the *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1 *Gratz*, ſeated upon the River *Mur*, and the chief of the Province, from which the third branch of the Houſe of *Auſtria* (ſince the time of *Ferdinand* the firſt) was called *De Gratz*, had the Government of the Country for their part of that Patrimony. A Town once full of *Proteſtants*, and thoſe ſo ſtrong, that they could neither be forced out, nor hindred from the free exerciſe of their Religion, till the year 1598. in which *Margaret* the late Queen of *Spain*, Siſter to the Archduke *Ferdinand du Gratz*, was by the Citizens ſolemnly entertained; with whom entered ſo many ſouldiers, that the City was taken; and 14 Miniſters of the Reformed Religion preſently baniſhed. 2 *Rachelſpurg*, and 3 *Pruck*, both ſituate alſo on the *Mur*. 4 *Stechaw*, an Epiſcopal See ſeated on the *Dra*, or *Dravus*, a well known River, not far from the fall of the *Mur* into it. 5 *Petaw*, the *Patovio* of *Antoninus*, ſeated ſomewhat higher upon the *Dravus*. 6 *Lambach*, the *Ovilabis* of *Antoninus*, on the *Dravus* alſo. 7 *Voiteſperg*, upon the River *Kainach*. 8 *Cely*, the *Celeia* of *Pliny*, of great antiquity, as appeareth by many *Roman* Inſcriptions, and other evident ſigns of Age which are upon it; for which cauſe thought by ſome to be that *Celia*, or built at leaſt out of the

Stiria. ruines of it, which *Ptolemy* placeth in this Tract.. It is ſituate on the River *Savus*, and hath a large juriſdiction over the adjoyning Countries. 9 *Caniſia*, ſeated in a mariſh on the edge of this Countrey, a place of great ſtrength, both by Art and Nature; once one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks againſt the *Turks* in all theſe parts, and a great eye-ſore to them for many years: but taken by them at laſt, *Anno* 1600. And never ſince re-gained by the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, though many times in vain attempted.

The whole Country mountainous and hilly, generally over-ſpread with the ſpurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alps*, and rich only in *minerals*; was antiently the habitation of the *Tauriſci* (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Stiermark*: the *Germans* calling that a *Stier*, which the *Latines* call *Tauriſcus*, or a little Bullock. By which account *Stiermark*, is nothing but the borders or *Marches* of the *Tauriſci*, utmoſt bounds of their poſſeſſions; as indeed it was. Laid to *Pannonia* in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honour of *Valeria* the daughter of *Diocleſian*. But once diſmembred from the Empire, it fell upon the name of *Stiermark*, with reference to the *Tauriſci*, ſpoken of before. Firſt made an Earldom in the perſon of one *Ottocarius*, advanced unto that honor by the Emperor *Conrade* the 2d. *Leopold*, the 4th. from this *Ottacarius*, (two other *Ottacars* intervening) was made Marqueſs of *Stiermark*; and his ſon, *Ottocar* the 4th, was made Duke hereof, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. But being without hope of iſſue, and infected with the uncurable diſeaſe of the *Leproſie*, he ſold his Country to *Leopold* the fifth of *Auſtria*; bought with ſome pait of that vaſt ſum of money which he extorted for the ranſom of King *Richard* the firſt. Continued ever ſince in the poſſeſſion of this potent Family, but ſo, that it hath many times been aſſigned over for the portion of the younger brethren: as namely, to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger ſons of *Albert* the *ſhort*: *Erneſt*, the youngeſt ſon of that *Leopold*; and laſtly to *Charles*, the youngeſt ſon of *Ferdinand* the firſt, called *Charles* of *Gratz*, father of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, ſucceſſor to *Matthias* in *Auſtria* it ſelf, and all the reſt of the Eſtates *incorporate* with it: not like hereafter to be ſo impolitickly diſmembred from the chief of the Houſe, as in former times.

3 *CARINTHIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Karnten*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Stiermark*, and the River *Levandt*; on the Weſt, with the *Diſtrict* of *Saltzburg*, and the River *Saltzach*; on the North, with *Auſtria* it ſelf; and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravus*: which having its original in the skirts hereof, paſſeth through theſe *Auſtrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at laſt into the *Danow*. The Country being ſituate in the worſt part of the *Alps*, is generally poor and barren, except onely in *minerals*: extending all along the *Dravus* for the length of 100 *Engliſh* miles, and 47. in breadth betwixt that River and the *Mur*, by the which it is bounded.

Places of principal note in it, are St. *Veit*, or *Sancti Viti*, the chief town of the Countrey, ſituate at the meeting of the *Glan*, and the *Wunics*, two ſmall Rivers; adorned with a ſpacious Market-place, and a beautifull Conduit. 2 *Vittach*, ſeated on the *Dravus* in a pleaſant valley, encompaſſed about with rocks; the houſes hereof adorned on the outſide with painted ſtories, very delightfull to behold. 3 *Garch*, a ſmall Town, but an Epiſcopal See. 4 *Glagnfoot*, on the Lake called *Werd Zee*; a well fenced place; called antiently by the name of *Claudia*. 5 *Wolſperg* upon the *Lavandt*, ſo near to *Stiermark*, that it is by ſome reckoned for a Town thereof. 6 *Lavamundt*, on the ſame border, an Epiſcopal See; ſituate at the influx of that River into the *Dravus*. 7 *Freiſach*, a Town of much antiquity, ſeated on the *Oliza*. 8 *Spittal*, &c. The ſtory and ſucceſſion of the Dukes hereof, before the uniting of it to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, (this Province and *Carniola* making but one Eſtate between them) we ſhall ſee anon.

4 *CARNIOLA*, by the *Dutch* called *Krain*, is environed with *Sclavonia*, Eaſt: *Friult*, Weſt; *Carinthia*, North; and *Iſtria*, South. It is in length, from Eaſt to Weſt, (extended along the River *Savus*) 120 *Italian* miles, and about 76 in breadth. The *Alps* here being Lower, and leſs cold and rocky, than more towards the Weſt; which maketh it to be more rich both in corn and wine, and other the productions of nature, than it would be otherwiſe.

The chief Towns are, 1 *Newmarckt*, 2 *Eſling*, 3 *Marſperg*, 4 *Pogonock*, and 5 *Saxenfelt*, all upon the *Savus*; which ariſing in this Country, runneth thorough the very middle of it, and after falleth into the *Danow*. 6 *Laibach*, ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame name, by *Ptolemy* called *Pampertum*; but by *Pliny*, *Nauportus*: famous in old *Mythologie*, for the tranſport of the ſhip called *Argo*, wherein *Jaſon* and his *Comrades* brought the *Golden Fleece*: who coming out of *Pontus*, or the *Euxine* Sea, took their courſe up the *Danow*, ſo into the *Savus*, then into this town; hence carried over land into the *Adriatick*, from thence ſailing into *Greece*, where they firſt began the undertaking. 7 *Goritz*, called antiently *Noreja*, or ſeated in the place where *Noreja* ſtood, is ſituate on the River *Liſontio*, an *Italian* water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A Town of ſo much note, that antiently it was an Earldom; and in the diviſion of the Eſtate of *Meinard* Earl of *Tirol*, (to whom formerly it belonged) was given to *Albert* his ſecond ſon, with the ſtile and title of Earl of *Goritz*: continuing in his houſe till the year 1500. when on the death of *Leonard* the laſt Earl hereof, it deſcended upon *Maximilian* the firſt, as next heir unto it; whoſe Succeſſors, not onely in the Eſtates of *Auſtria*, but the Empire alſo, do ſtill retain the title of Earls of *Goritz* in their uſual ſtile.

The firſt Inhabitants of both theſe Provinces of *Kruin*, and *Karnten*, were the *Carni*, of *Pliny* and other Antients, who make them part of *Venetia*, the tenth region of *Italy*: but afterwards in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, caſt into *Noricum*, and made a member of the *Dioceſe* of the *Weſtern Illyricum*; but ſubject, or ſubordinate rather to the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*. From them not only the *Alps*, adjoyning had the name of *Carnica*; but theſe two Countries had the names by which now they go. United of long time, in the perſons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the firſt mentioned upon

good

Tirol.

good record, was *Henry* ſon to *Berchthold*, a Nobleman of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the third: by whom advanced unto this honour and eſtate, diſpoſed of in ſucceeding times at the will of the Emperours, and given from one Family unto another, as their fancies ſerved them. Not fixed in any houſe, till it came to *Henry* the ſon of *Engelbert*, Preſident or *Præfect* of *Hiſtria*: in which Family it continued under this *Henry*, and his brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the firſt, *Henry* the ſecond, *Herman*, and *Ulric* the ſecond, the laſt Prince hereof: who by his marriage with *Agnes*, ſiſter and heir of *Otho* the 2d. Duke of *Meran*, added that eſtate to his former Patrimony. But being old, and without children, he ſold his whole eſtate to *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Auſtria*; by whom theſe Countries were ſurrendred unto *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the concluſion of the peace which was made between them. And though *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tirol*, (in right of whoſe daughter *Elizabeth*, *Albert* the ſon of *Rodolph* was poſſeſſed of *Auſtria*:) yet on the death of *Henry*, the ſon of *Mainard*, without iſſue male, it fell (according to the contract) unto *Albert the Short*, eldeſt ſon of *Albert*, and Grandchild of *Rodolphus*; continuing ever ſince in that Family, though not alwayes in the chief houſe of the Dukes of *Auſtria*.

The ſtrange and obſervable *ceremonies*, with which the Archdukes of *Auſtria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carinthia*, take here out of *Munſter*. In the meadows adjoyning to the Town of *Vite*, a certain Countrey-man to whom that office by *inheritance* belongeth, ſitteth on a *Marble* ſtone there being, holding in his right hand a cow, with a black calf; and in his left hand, a mare as lean as a rake. Then cometh the new Duke, attired in a plain ruſtick *habit*, his Courtiers attending him in their richeſt apparel: at whoſe approach, the Country-man above mentioned, demandeth, *What he is that ſo* majeſtically *cometh thitherward*; and the people anſwer, That *it is the future Duke*. He again asketh, *whether he be a* juſt Judge, *and one that will maintain the liberty of the countrey, and ſincerity of the Religion*; the people anſwer, *he will*: then he asketh; *by what right he will diſplace him from his marble ſeat*; to whom the *Steward* of the new Dukes houſe replyeth, *He ſhall give thee 60 pence in ſilver, the cattel now ſtanding by thee, the cloaths which he hath at this time on, and thy houſe ſhall ever be free from tax and tribute.* The fellow upon this, taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle *cuff* on the ear, ſetteth him on the *marble ſtone*, and taking away the cattel, departeth. This done, the new Duke goeth to S. *Vites* Church, and having done his devotions, putteth off his ruſtick weeds, and dreſſeth himſelf in cloths befitting a Prince: for ſuch after their *ceremonies* he is acknowledged.

The Arms of theſe Dukes were *Argent*, 3 Lions Leopards *Sable*.

TIROLIS, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Friuly*, and *Marca Trevigiana*; by the interpoſing of which or ſome parts thereof, disjoyned from *Carniola*; on the Weſt, with the *Griſons*, and ſome part of *Switzerland*; on the North, with *Bavaria*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*. Extended over the greateſt part of the *Alpes Rheticæ*, and ſome part of the *Juliæ*: yet intermixt with many rich and fruitfull valleys, thoſe ſpecially which lie on the banks of the *Inn*, and the River of *Adiſe*. Nor are the hills ſo void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good ſtore of metals digged out of them, eſpecially of *Braſs*, and *Silver*; which laſt have yielded to the Archduke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of moſt note, 1 *Oenipons*, or *Inſpruch*, ſo called from a Bridge on the *Inn* or *Ornus*, which gave denomination to the ſecond branch of *Auſtria*. deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the ſecond ſon of the Emperour *Ferdinand*: the houſe of *Gratz* iſſuing from *Charls*, the third ſon of that Emperor. Moſt memorable for the haſty flight of *Charls* the 5th. upon the news that Duke *Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming againſt him with his Forces. Which ſo terrified him, that he fled away by *torch-light*, with ſome few of his followers; the reſidue of his Court (moſt of which were perſons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the *Black Guard* and the Skullerie. The Town being many times the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Auſtria*, who have here a very Royal and magnificent Palace. And to ſay truth, the Town deſerveth to be ſo honoured; amongſt pleaſant Meadows, ſpacious corn-fields, and ſhady mountains ſweetly ſeated: the houſes fairly built of ſtone, enriched by the Courts of *Judicature* here ſetled for all the Countrey, and provided of a gallant *Armory*. 2 *Trent*, (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latine*) ſituate in the confines of *Germany*, and *Italy*; for which cauſe the Inhabitants ſpeak both languages. built on the banks of the River *Atheſis*, or *Adiſe*: honoured with an Epiſcopal See, but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, *Anno* 1545. againſt the *Lutherans*. For 22 years together before their meeting, daſhed by one Pope, and intimated by another; advanced by *Charls* the 5th upon worldly Policies, and for as worldly Policies retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this firſt Convention of it, at ſundry times, aſſembled, ſuſpended, and diſſolved. And finally, when fixed here ſeriouſly by Pope *Pius* the fourth, *Anno* 1562. managed with ſo much art and cunning by the *Papal* party, that nothing was determined among the *Prelates*, but what had formerly been reſolved on in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by eſpecial Poſts: occaſioning that moſt bitter jeſt of one of the *Hungarian* Biſhops who was preſent at it, that the *Holy Ghoſt was ſent unto them in a Cloak-bag from Rome*. The effects of which Council ſo artificially carried on by the ſtrength of wit, I cannot better deſcribe than in the words of the Hiſtory of it, which are as followeth. “This Council, deſired and procured by “godly men to re-unite the Church which began to be divided, hath ſo eſtabliſhed the Schiſm, and “made the parties ſo obſtinate, that the diſcords are irreconcileable. And being managed by Prin-“ces for Reformation of *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline*, hath cauſed the greateſt *deformation* that ever was “ſince *Chriſtianity* did begin: and hoped for by the *Biſhops* themſelves to regain the *Epiſcopal* Autho-“rity, for the moſt part uſurped by the *Pope*, hath made them loſe it altogether, bringing them into

“ greater ſervitude. On the contrary feared and avoided by the See of *Rome*, as a potent means to “ moderate the exorbitant power thereof, mounted from ſmall beginnings, by divers degrees, to “ an unlimited exceſs; it hath ſo eſtabliſhed and confirmed the ſame over that part which remained “ ſubject unto it, that it was never ſo great, nor ſoundly rooted. So far the words of the Hiſtory. The next of note is, 3 *Falkenſtein*, remarkable for Mines of *Braß*; as 4 *Hal* upon the *Inn* for *Salt-witches*; and 5 *Schwas* for the richer Mines of *Silver*. 6 *Malk*, near the head of the River *Atheſis*. 7 *Pollen*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people whereof called *Bolgiano*, and *Bolſano*. 8 *Tirol*, an antient Caſtle, the firſt ſeat of the Earls or Governours hereof, and giving name for that reaſon to the Countrey adjoyning. 9 *Meran*, neighbouring the old Caſtle of *Tirol*, which gave the title of Dukes to a branch of the *Caroline* race, deſcended from *Rathboldus*, a baſe ſon of the Emperour *Arnulph*; poſſeſſed of many large eſtates in theſe *Alpine* Countreys, now appertaining to the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*. From one of which Dukes called *Otho* of *Meranie*, married to *Beatrix*, Heir of the County of *Burgundy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* (ſince that time) do derive themſelves.

The Earls hereof, were at the firſt no other than *Provincial* Officers; when made *Proprietaries*, I am yet to ſeek. The firſt of whom we have any certainty, was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tirol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258. leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard* who by *Rodolphus Habſpurgenſis*, was feoffed with the Dukedome of *Karenten*. But *Henry* the ſon of this laſt *Mainard* dying without iſſue male; his daughter *Margaret*, by the conſent of all her people, ſetled her eſtate therein on the ſons of *Albert*, called the *Short*: continuing ever ſince in the houſe of *Auſtria*, though ſometimes made the portion and inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the firſt, it was given in *Apennage* to his 2d. ſon *Ferdinand*, ſurnamed of *Inſpruch* for that reaſon, who by marrying with *Philippina* a *Burgers* daughter of *Augsburg*, ſo diſpleaſed his Brethren, that to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her; it was finally agreed upon amongſt them all, that *Tirol* ſhould not deſcend upon his Children of that *venter*. In purſuance whereof after his deceaſe, *Tirol* fell to the Houſe of *Gratz*: his eldeſt ſon *Charles* being made marqueſs of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngeſt, Cardinal of *Brixia*.

The Arms of the Earls when diſtinct from the Houſe of *Auſtria*, were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable*, membred *Or*.

Thus have we ſeen by what means all theſe Provinces belonging unto ſeveral Lords, became united and incorporated into one Eſtate. Beſides which, there was added to it by *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, all the *Upper Elſats*, the Caſtle and Territory of *Habſpurg* it ſelf, with many fair Eſtates amongſt the *Switzers*; by *Albert* the *Short*, the Countrey of *Sungow*; and by his ſons, the *Advocateſhip* of *Friburg*, or the Countrey of *Briſgow*. So that theſe Princes are undoubtedly the greateſt for power and patrimony, of any in *Germany*: and would be of a great revenue, if the ill neighbourhood of the *Turks* did not put them to continual charges; and make the borders of the Countrey to be thinly planted, and not very thorowly manured. Howſoever, it is thought that they may yield yearly two millions of Crowns and upwards, to the Archdukes Coffers.

The Arms of theſe Princes are *Gules*, A Feſs *Argent*; aſſumed by Marqueſs *Leopald* at the ſiege of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy Land*; becauſe his whole Armour being covered with bloud, his *Belt* only remained *white*. The Arms thereof in former times having been ſix Larks *Or*, in a field *Azure*; ſuppoſed to have been taken by the firſt Marqueſſes, becauſe they poſſeſſed thoſe ſix Provinces, for defence of which the tenth *Legion* called *Alanda*, had been fixed at *Vienna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we ſhall meet withall no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the North ſide of *Danubius*, and the Eaſt ſide of the *Rhene*, being almoſt as ſoon abandoned, as conquered by them. So that in our ſurvey of theſe Northern Countries, which are not like to find ſuch matter of *Antiquity* as we had before; but muſt content our ſelves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a leſs continuance. In which we ſhall begin with thoſe Countries which lie on the out ſide of the *Rhene*, bordering on the Eſtates of *Cleveland*, and the *Biſhop-Electors*; and ſo proceed on Eaſtward till we come to the furtheſt parts of *Germany*, and the confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North till we meet with *Denmark*, which is next of all to be conſidered.

9. *VETERAVIA.*

VETERAVIA, or *WETERAW*, is bounded on the Weſt, with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*; on the Eaſt, with *Frankenland*; on the North, with *Haßia*, and *Weſtphalen*; and on the South, with the *Lower Palatinate*. It containeth a combination of many ſmall eſtates, which being joyned in a common league for defence of each other for the preſervation of their *Laws*, *Liberties*, and *Religion*; are called the *Confederation* of *Weteraw*. The principal of the States which are thus confederated, are the Earls of 1 *Naſſaw*, 2 *Hanaw*, & 3 *Stolms*, 4 the Lord of *Lichteberg*, and the *Imperial* Cities of 5 *Friberg*, and 6 *Wetzelaer*.

The County of *NASSAW* (for fruitfulneſs of ſoil, and delightfulneſs of ſituation, not inferiour to moſt parts of *France*) lieth at the foot of the Mountains, which divide *Haßia* from *Engern*, and *Weſtphalen*; antiently called *Melibocus*; a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Towns hereof, are 1 *Naſſaw*, ſituate on the South ſide of the River *Lou*, not far from the fall of it into the *Rhene*; the firſt ſeat and honourary title of this famous Family, and ſtill in the poſſeſſion of the Princes of *Orange*, the firſt branch hereof. 2 *Dillingbourg*, the uſual ſeat of the Earls of *Naſſaw*, before their ſetling in the *Low-Countries*; hence named the Earls of *Naſſaw* of the Houſe

of

Franconia.

of *Dillingberg*, to difference them from others of the ſame family. 2 *Catzenelbogen*, which gives the title of an Earl to the owners of it; in *Latine*, *Catti Meliboci*, which ſhews the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently poſſeſſed of theſe parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The poſſeſſion of this Town much controverted between the Earls of *Naſſaw*, and the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*. Concerning which, we are to know, that *Henry* the ſecond ſon of *Lewis*, Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, ſurnamed the *Mild*, married with *Anne*, daughter and heir of *Philip* the laſt Lord hereof, and by her had a ſon called *William*, who died without iſſue; and a daughter named *Elizabeth* married to *John* the third of *Naſſaw*, to whom ſhe brought *Henry* and *William*, Earls of *Naſſaw*. *Elizabeth* on the death of her brother *William*, laid claim to the Eſtate, as the next heir to him; followed in the purſuit thereof, by *William* Count of *Naſſaw*, her ſurviving ſon. Againſt which, *William* the ſecond of *Haſſia* did alleadge a grant or donation of it from his Couſin *William*, the brother of *Elizabeth*, as before is ſaid, and having poſſeſſion of the Town, and the members of it; was made thereby the better able to defend his Title. But at the laſt it was ſurrendred by Count *VVilliam* of *Naſſaw* (father of *William* Prince of *Orange*) unto *Philip* the Lantgrave, in the time of *Charles* the fifth, for the ſum of 600000 Crowns: the houſe of *Naſſaw* notwithſtanding retaining it amongſt their Titles. 3 *Herborn*, a ſmall Univerſity, or *Schola Illuſtris*, founded of late by the Earls of *Naſſaw*: in which *Piſcator* was Divinity Reader, and *Alſtedius* (both famous in their times) Profeſſor for the Arts and Sciences. 4 *Idſtein*, lying South to *Catzenelbogen*; and 5 *Wisbad*, directly South of *Idſtein*, betwixt that and the *Mein*; theſe being the title and poſſeſſions of the ſecond branch of this Family. 6 *Weilborough* on the *Lou*, not far from *Wetzelver*; which gives Title to the third branch of this houſe, called the Earls of *Naſſaw* in *Sabruck*, and *Weilborough*.

As for the Princes of the houſe of *Naſsaw*, they are very ancient; *Otho* of *Naſſaw* being made Earl of *Gelderland* in the year 1079. Another *Otho* of this houſe, but proceeding from a different branch of it, dying *An.* 1190. the Founder of the preſent Family of the Princes of *Orange*, and of the houſe of *Wisbad* and *Idſtein*; out of which deſcended *Adolphus* Earl of *Naſſaw*, choſen Emperor in the year 1622. By the marriage of *Engelbert*, the ſeventh Earl of this houſe of *Dillingberg*, with *Mary* daughter of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, they came firſt to be poſſeſſed of Eſtates in the *Netherlands*: and by the marriage of *Henry*, great Grand-child of this *Engelbert*, with *Claude* of *Chalons*, they got the *Principality* of *Orange* in *France*. A family as much honoured for the *perſonal merit* of the Princes of it, as any other in *Europe*; of ſome of which, although we have already given a Catalogue (in the deſcription and ſtory of *Provence*) as Prince of *Orange*; yet to take here the whole ſucceſſion of them, as

The COUNTS of *NASSAVV*.

1 *Otho*, the ſon of *Henry*, and Nephew of *Waleran*, the firſt Earl of *Naſſaw* of this line.

1190 2 *Henry*, the ſon of *Otho*, who added *Dillemberg*, *Wisbad*, and *Ibſtein* unto his eſtate. Grandfather by *Waldradus* his ſecond ſon, to *Adolphus* the Emperour.

3 *Otho* II. ſon of *Henry*.

4 *Henry* II. ſon of *Otho* the ſecond.

5 *Otho* III. ſon of *Henry* the ſecond.

6 *John*, the ſon of *Otho* the third.

1362 7 *Engelbert*, the ſon of *John*, by *Mary* his wife, daughter and heir of *Philip* Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, added that Town, with many other fair eſtates in the *Netherlands*, to his former Patrimony.

8 *John* II. ſon of *Engelbert*, Earl of *Naſſaw*, and Lord of *Breda*, &c.

1471 9 *John* III. ſon of *John* the ſecond.

1516 10 *Henry* III. ſon of *Iohn* the third Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, married *Claude* of *Chalons*, ſiſter of *Philibert* Pr. of *Orange*.

1536 11 *Rene*, ſon of *Henry* the 3d. & of *Claude* of *Chalons*, ſucceſſor to his Uncle *Philibert* in the Principality of *Orange*, *Anno* 1530. and to his Father in the Earldom of *Naſſaw*, *Anno* 1537.

1544 12 *William*, the ſon of *Iohn* the 3d. by *Elizabeth* his wife, daughter of *H.* Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, & of *Anne* daughter & heir of *Philip* E. of *Catzenelbogen*; reformed the Religion in this Country according to the *Luteran* doctrins

1559 13 *William* II. ſon of *William* the firſt, ſucceeded the Prince of *Orange*, by the Will of *Rene* his Couſin-German, *Anno* 1544. and Earl of *Naſſaw*, by the death of his Father, *Anno* 1599. What elſe concerns this Prince, we have had before. I only add, that *William* the firſt, beſides this *William* had three other ſons, that is to ſay, Count *Iohn*, and the Father of *William* of *Naſſaw* Governour of *Weſt-Friſeland*; Count *Ludovick*, of great renown in the firſt wars of the *Netherlands*, in the courſe whereof he loſt his life, *An.* 1574. & Count *Adolphus*, ſlain in the ſame wars alſo, *An.* 1568.

1584 14 *Philip*, eldeſt ſon of *William* the ſecond, and of *Anne* his wife, daughter and heir of *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, ſucceeded Earl of *Buren* on the death of his mother, *Anno* 1551. Prince of *Orange*, and Count of *Naſsaw*, by the death of his Father.

15 *Maurice*, ſon of *William* the ſecond, and of *Anne* his wife, daughter of *Maurice* Duke-Elector of *Saxony*, Prince of *Orange*, and Count of *Naſſaw*. At the age of 18 years made General of all the Forces of the United *Netherlands*, which place he managed for the ſpace of 37 years, with great both courage and ſucceſs.

1625 16 *Henry* IV. Brother of *Maurice* (but by another *Venter*, the daughter of *Gaſpar Coligni*, Admiral of *France*) Count of *Naſſaw*, Prince of *Orange*, and General of the Forces of the States united.

1648 17 ***William*** III. ſon of ***Henry*** the 4th. ſucceſſor to his Father in all uis Honours and commands; A Prince of great hopes and expectations.

The Armes of the Earls of ***Naſſaw*** are quarterly, 1 *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, Armed *Gules*; Secondly, *Or*, a Lion-Leopard *Gules*, armed and Crowned *Azure*; Thirdly, *Gules*, a Feſſe *Argent*; and Fourthly, *Gules*, two Leopards *Or*, armed and membred *Gules*.

Bordering on ***Franconia*** or ***Frankenland***, lyeth the County of ***HANAVV***, ſo called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of moſt note, are 1 ***Hanaw*** it ſelf, in ***Latine*** called ***Hanovia***, honoured with a *Schola illuſtris* alſo; and much enriched by the trade of ***Printing***, with which they uſe to furniſh annually the *Mart* of ***Frankefort***, diſtant from hence about ten ***Dutch*** miles. 2 *Pfaffenhoſen*, of no note formerly, but like to be remembred in the ſtories of ſucceeding times, for the great defeat there given to the Duke of ***Lorrein***, ***July*** 31. 1633. who loſt his whole Forces, all his Ordinance, Ammunition, and baggage; and which was worſt of all, his Country: taken in part from him by the Conquering ***Swedes***, who followed him cloſe into his home; but wholly by the ***French*** King upon that advantage. 3 ***Lichteberg***, which gives title to a ſecond branch of the houſe of ***Hanow***, called the Lord of ***Lichteberg***. A Family of good eſteem, ſince the time that ***Otho*** of ***Hanaw*** was ennobled with the title of Earl thereof, which was about the year 1392. before that, ***Princes of the Empire***; and after that, advanced unto greater fortunes by, the addition of the ***Barony*** of ***Minzeberg***, in the perſon of ***Philip*** the firſt Earl; of the County of ***Reineck***, in the perſon of another ***Philip***, the third of that name, great Grandchild of the former ***Philip***; and finally, of the Lordſhip and Eſtate of ***Lichteberg***, accrewing to this houſe by the marriage of the third ***Philip***, the youngeſt ſon of ***Reynard*** the third Earl hereof, with ***Anne*** the daughter and heir of ***Ludovick***, Lord of ***Lichteberg***. The Title and poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of the Houſe ***Hanaw***, called Lords of ***Lichteberg***, and ***Hocſenſtein***, and Earls of ***Bitſch***: this laſt being an eſtate in ***Lorrein***, accrewing to them by the marriage of a fourth ***Philip***, (the fifth in name and order of the houſe of ***Lichteberg***) with ***Margaret***, ſole daughter and heir of ***Ludovick*** the laſt Earl thereof.

Betwixt the Counties of ***Naſſaw***, and ***Hanaw***, on both ſides of the River ***Lou***, lies the Earldom of ***SOLMS***, the firſt Earl whereof, (of whom there is any good *Conſtat*) was ***Henry*** honoured with this title, ***An.*** 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the ***Counts Imperial***, made before that time, I muſt conclude them to be ancienter than the date aforeſaid; though that ſufficient to ennoble a far greater Family. By the marriage of ***Conrade*** the ninth, from ***Henry***, firſt with ***Elizabeth***, one of the daughters of ***Will.*** of ***Naßaw***, Prince of ***Orange***, and after with the widow of the Earl of ***Egmond***, they came to be of ſuch authority amongſt the ***Netherlands***, as to be priviledged with a place and ſuffrage in the ***Council*** of the ***States General***: there ſetled at the preſent in their greateſt honour, eſpecially ſince the marriage of ***Henry*** of ***Naſſaw***, Prince of ***Orange***, with a daughter of Earl ***Conrade*** by his ſecond wife; the mother of ***William*** of ***Naſſaw***, now Prince of ***Orange***, and husband of the Princeſs ***Mary***, the eldeſt daughter of ***Great Britain***. But beſides their Eſtates there, they are poſſeſſed in this tract, of 1 ***Braunfels***, which gives title to the firſt branch of the houſe of ***Solms***. 2 ***Croneberg***, the poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of this Family; and 3 ***Solms***, on the North ſide of the ***Lou***, the root of both.

Of the ***Imperial Cities*** in this ***Confederation***; the firſt is ***Friberg***; called for diſtinction ſake, ***Friberg*** in ***Wederaw***; to difference it from another Town of that name in ***Briſgow***; ſituate in the middle of delicious and moſt fruitful fields, and memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to ***Adelphus*** of ***Naſſaw***, at that time Emperour: who when he could not get it by force or Famine, obtained it by fraud; and put to death no leſs then 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Caſtle. So hated for that bloody fact, that he was ſhortly after deprived of the Empire, and ſlain in fight by ***Albert*** of ***Auſtria***, his ***Competitor***. The ſecond of the two is ***Wetzelaer***, ſeated on the ***Lou***, where it meets with the ***Dille***, which riſing near ***Dillengberg***, a Town of the Earl of ***Naſſawes***, doth here loſe its name into the greater. A Town ***Imperial***, ***confederate*** with ***Friberg***, and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common liberties, and the ***Religion*** publickly profeſſed amongſt them, being that of the ***Reformed Churches*** of ***Calvins*** Platform.

10. *FRANCONIA.*

FRANCONIA or ***FRANKENLAND***, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the ***Upper Palatinate***, and part of ***Voitland***; on the Weſt, with the ***Confederates*** of ***Wederaw***, and part of the ***Rhene***; on the North, with ***Haſſia*** and ***Thuringia***: and on the South, with the ***Palatinate*** of the ***Rhene***, and ſome part of ***Schwaben***. So called from the ***French***, ***Franci***, or ***Francones***, in whoſe poſſeſſion it was, when they were firſt known unto the ***Romans***; the reſidence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province, appropriating the name unto it. Called alſo ***Francia Orientalis***, to difference it from the Realm of ***France***, which lay more towards the Weſt. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the preſent, comprehending ſo much of the ***Lower Palatinate*** as lieth on the ſame ſide of the ***Rhene***; but ſubdued from it, and made a Province of it ſelf in theſe latter Ages.

The County on the out parts over-grown wholly in a manner with Woods, and Foreſts, and environed almoſt with mountains, part of the old ***Hercinian VVolds***; is within, pleaſant, plain, and fruitfull: ſufficiently plentifull both of corn and wines, but abundantly well ſtored with ***Rape*** and ***Licoras***, and yielding good paſture for Cattel. So that we may compare it to a fine piece of ***Cloth***, wrought about with a courſe ***Liſt***; or an excellent fine piece of ***Lawn***, with a canvaſſe ***Selvedge***.

Chief

Franconia.

Chief Rivers of it, are 1 The *Main*, or *Mœnus*, which running through the midſt of it; is received into the *Rhene* below *Frankefort* 2 The *Sala*, whence the adjoyning *French* had the name of *Salii*; and 3 *Conrade*, Emperour of the *Germans*, the ſurname of *Salicus*. 3 *Radiantis*. 4 *Sinna*. 5 *Tubero*. 6 *Æſtus*, &c.

The people of it are ingenious, patient of labour, ſtrong of body, and very induſtrious, not ſuffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what ſort ſoever. The off-ſpring of the antient *French*, who having over-maſtered *Gaul*, and the parts adjoyning, left here the ſeminary of their ſtrength, and a ſtock of their ancient Princes: *Marcomir*, brother of *Pharamund*, the firſt King of the *French*, governing in theſe parts as Duke, and leaving the eſtate and title unto his poſterity. The Catalogue of which Princes, take in ordet thus:

The PRINCES of the *FRANKS*, and DUKES of *FRANCONIA*, of the old *FRENCH* Race.

A. Ch.

326 1 *Genebaldus* the ſon of *Dagobert*, deſcended from the old Regal ſtock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Duth* Nations about 60 or 70 years before in the name of *Frankes*; having ſubdued thoſe parts which lay towards the River *Mœnus*, became the firſt Prince of the Eaſtern *Franks*, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.

356 2 *Dagobert*, the ſon of *Genebaldus*, who added the Diſtrict of *Triers* unto his Eſtates.

377 3 *Clodovæus*, or *Ludovicus*, the ſon of *Dagobert*.

398 4 *Marcomir*, the ſon of *Clodovæus*, who extended his Dominion Eaſtwards towards *Bavaria*, and *Bohemia*.

402 5 *Pharamund*, or *Waramund*, the ſon of *Marcomir*, the firſt of this line which took unto himſelf the title of King of the *French*: on the aſſuming whereof, (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia*, or *Eaſt-France*, with the title of Duke, to his brother *Marcomir*.

419 6 *Marcomir*, the brother of *Pharamund*.

423 7 *Prunmeſſer*, by ſome called *Priamus*, the ſon of *Marcomir*.

435 8 *Genebaldus* II. ſon of *Prunmeſſer*.

455 9 *Sunno*, the ſon of *Genebald* the ſecond.

478 10 *Clodomirus*, or *Luitomarus*, the ſon of *Sunno*.

515 11 *Hygobaldus*, the ſon of *Clodomir*, who became a *Chriſtian*, and added *Worms* and *Metnz* unto his Eſtates

541 12 *Helenus*, by ſome called *Hermericus*, a *Chriſtian* alſo, who paſſing over the *Rhene*, ſubdued that tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorrein*, which the Dutch call *Weſtrich*.

571 13 *Gotofridus*, the ſon of *Helenus*, a *Chriſtian* alſo, but not able to perſwade his people to the ſame belief.

595 14 *Genebaldus* III. the ſon of *Gotofrede*.

615 15 *Clodomir* II. the ſon of *Genebald* the third.

628 16 *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodamir* the ſecond.

668 17 *Clodovæus*, or *Clovis* II. the Couſin-German of *Heribert*.

680 18 *Gosbertus*, the ſon of *Clovis* the ſecond.

706 19 *Gosbertus* II. the ſon of *Gosbert* the firſt.

720 20 *Hetavus*, the ſon of *Gosbert* the ſecond, the laſt Duke of *Franconia* of this line: Who dying without iſſue male, *Anno* 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charls* the great; according to a former contract made between thoſe Princes. And *Charls* no ſooner had it in his poſſeſſion, but he beſtowed the greateſt part of it on *Burchard* the firſt Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, *Anno* 752. made Biſhop of that City by *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz* (the firſt Apoſtle of this people) but a year before. The Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* by this grant were poſſeſſed hereof, as long as any of the houſe of *Charls* the Great did poſſeſs the Empire. But his poſterity failing in the perſon of *Conrade*, *Anno* 910. *Otho* the firſt (who next but one ſucceeded *Conrade*) inveſted *Conrade*, husband to *Luigardts* his daughter, with this Countrey; giving him withall the title of Duke of *Francony*. Four Princes of this houſe poſſeſſed it: that is to ſay, this *Conrade* ſurnamed *Salicus*; and after him three *Henrios*, Father, ſon, and Nephew, ſucceſſively enjoying the Imperial dignity, by the name of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fifth. This *Henry*, the laſt Prince of the male line of *Conrade*, dying without iſſue, *Franconia* fell to *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next heir to *Henry*, by the Lady *Agnes* his ſiſter, married to *Frederick* the *Antient*, Duke of *Schwaben*, the Grand-Father of *Barbaroſſa*. But that houſe being alſo extinct in the perſon of *Conradine*, *An.* 1268. and no one heir pretending to the rights thereof; the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former grant: content to let ſome great ones have a part of the ſpoyl, that he and his ſucceſſours might enjoy the reſt. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, (for antiently ſo much of the *Palatinate* and the Biſhoprick of *Mentz* as lay on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*, were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marqueſs of *Onolsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenberg*, *Henneberg*, and *Hohenloe*, and as many of the *Free* or *Imperial* Cities as are ſeated in it. Thus every one did gather ſticks when the great Oak fell: the title of Duke of *Francony*, remaining notwithſtanding to the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg*.

Veteravia.

1 *WURTZBURG*, the *Metropolis* of *Franconia*, the ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop, who is *Titular* Duke hereof, is ſituate on the *Mein*, or *Mœnus*; in a pleaſant plain environed with Medows, gardens and fruitful Mountains: and very well fenced with walls, trenches, bulwarks, and other Arts of modern fort[illegible]ti[illegible] well peopled; and for the moſt part handſomely and neatly built. Paſſing over the Bridge built of free ſtone on many large and ſpacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though antient) Caſtle; the ordinary dwelling of the Biſhop: and yet ſo ſtrong that the many vain attempts of the *Boors* and *Citizens*, apt to pick quarrels with their *Prince*, made it thought impregnable; to which the ſituation of it on the top of an hill added ſome advantage, but it proved otherwiſe when beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, *Anno* 1631. who after a ſhort, but ſtout reſiſtance, took it by aſſault. Other Towns of moſt note which belong to the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg*, are 2 *Forchein*, where it is ſaid that *Pontius Pilate* was born. 3 *Gemand*, at the meeting of the *Mein* and the *Sal*, or *Sala*. *Bretta* upon the *Salz* or *Sala*, not far from *Gemand*: remarkable enough, if for nothing elſe, for being the birth-place of *Melanchthon* that renowned Schollar; the *Phœnix* of *Germany* as ſome call him, and that not unfitly. 4 *Chronac.* 5 *Staphielſtein.* 6 *Hocſtad*, of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Biſhop as chief Lord of all; he is called in the refined *Latine* of theſe times, *Herbypolitanus*, but commonly, *Wurtziburgenſis*; differing in ſound, but not in ſence: For *Wurtzburg* is no other than a *town* of *Worts*, ſituate among plants and gardens; as before is ſaid; and *Herbipolis*, made up out of ſeveral languages doth ſignifie no more than a *City* of *Herbs*. By whom the Epiſcopal See was here firſt erected, and how the Biſhops hereof came to be entituled unto their Eſtates, hath been ſhewn already. The manner how the new Biſhop is admitted, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the deceaſe of the former Biſhop, the *Lord Elector* attended with a great train of horſe is to make his entrance. Aſſoon as come within the Gates, he alights off his horſe, and putteth off his robes, and being attired in a poor and deſpicable habit, begirt about with a rope, bare-headed alſo, and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Caſtle Wortheim*, and *Remeck*, to S. *Saviours* Church, being his Cathedral. The *Dean* and *Canons* there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modeſtly replyeth, that though unworthy, he is come to diſcharge the office unto which he is called. Then the *Dean* thus, *I admit thee in the name of this whole* Chapter, *committing to thy care this Church of S.* Saviours, *and the Dukedom thereunto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghoſt.* Which done, he putteth on his *Epiſcopal* habit, ſaith *Maß*, and from thence paſſeth to the Caſtle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The *living* Biſhop thus inveſted, proceed we next unto the burial of the *dead*: whoſe body being imbowelled, is kept in the Chappel of his Caſtle, his heart preſerved in a veſſel of glaſs. The next day he is carried to the Monaſtery of Saint *James*, holding a *Crozier Staff* in his right hand, and a *Sword* in his left; buried with which the next day after, in the Church of S. *Saviour*. As for the *Revenues* of the Biſhop, they muſt needs be great; the Biſhop hereof, in the time of *Charls* the 5th, compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg*, at the price of 220000 Crowns in ready money, and entring into a bond to pay all his debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly gueſs at the richneſs of his *Exchecquer*, and partly at the greatneſs of his *Intrado*.

2 The ſecond great Lord of *Franconie* is the Biſhop of *BAMBERG*, a City ſeated on the *Mein*, not far from *Wurtzburg*; the little River *Regnite* falling there into it: ſuppoſed by *Mercator* to be the *Granionarium* of *Ptolemy*, and to have took this new name from the hill *Baba* (ſo called from *Bada*, daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and wife of *Albert*, once Earl hereof) upon which it is ſituate: the right name being *Babemberg* (remember that *Berg* in *Dutch*, ſignifieth an hill) and contractedly *Bamberg*. A City delectably ſeated amongſt mountains and pleaſant gardens, and in a ſoil exceeding fruitfull of all neceſſaries, and yieldeth *Liquorice* in great plenty: the birth-place of *Joachimus Camerarius*, one of the great lights of *Germany*, and a See Epiſcopal, the Biſhop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, ſubject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair Towns and territories in this Countrey; but much diminiſhed ſince the time of *Charls* the 5th: the Biſhop thereof then being, giving to Marqueſs *Albert* above mentioned, for a ceſſation of Arms, *Anno* 1530. no leſs than 60 of his Lordſhips (moſt of which fall unto the ſhare of the Marqueſs of *Onaldsbach*) beſides the *titulage* and *Guardianſhip* of his *Wards* and *Clyents*. Of thoſe which are remaining in the hand of the Biſhops, the principal are 1 *Gragingliac.* 2 *Schleiſtat.*

3 The third great Lord to be conſidered is the Marqueſs of *Onaldsbach*, or *Ansbach*, who is Maſter of no ſmall part of this Countrey; but his Eſtate (as thoſe of of the other *German* Princes) confuſed and intermixed with his neighbours. His chief Towns, 1 *Onaldsbach* or *Ansbach*, the uſual reſidence of theſe Marqueſſes, and the birth-place of moſt of their Children. 2 *Hailbrun*, on the edge of *Wirtenberg*; walled in about in the year 1085. and honoured with ſome publick Schools there founded by Marqueſs *George Frederick*, *Anno* 1482. 3 *Pleinfelt*, not far from *Nuremb.rg.* Such places as they hold in *Voiteland*, we ſhall meet with there.

Theſe Marqueſſes are of the puiſſant family of *Brandenbourg*, by whom this fair eſtate was wreſted from the Female Heirs of *Wolframius*, the laſt Lord hereof. The firſt who did enjoy this Eſtate and Title was Marqueſs *George Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*; the Father of *Albert* the firſt Duke of *Prußia*, and of *George*, the firſt Marqueſs of *Jagendorf*; and the Grandfather of that Marqueſs *Albert*, who in the dayes of *Charls* the Fifth ſo haraſſed this Countrey. But his Male-iſſue by *Caſimir* his eldeſt ſon, failing in that *Albert*, *Anno* 1557. it returned to the Electoral houſe; and by *Sigiſmund*, a late *Elector*, was given to *Joachim Erneſtus*, one of his younger Brethren, who by the *Princes of the Union* for defence of the *Palatinate*, was made chief Commander of their Forces, *Anno* 1620. A charge in which it was ſuppoſed, that he carried himſelf neither ſo faithfully nor ſo valiantly, as he ſhould have done; being much condemned for ſuffering *Spinola* with his Army to paſs by unfought with, when he had all advantages that could be wiſhed for, to impede his march: the greateſt part of the *Palatinate* being loſt immediately upon that neglect; and by degrees the reſt of the *United Provinces*, either taken off from their engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a conſtancy. To him ſucceeded his Son *Chriſtian* now poſſeſſed hereof.

As for the other ſecular Princes which have any conſiderable eſtates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenloe*, *Rheineck*, *Caſtell*, *Wortheim*, *Horpach*, and *Swartzenbourg*, together with the Lords of *Lemburg*, and *Rheichisberg*: all of them named ſo from the chief Town of their Eſtates, and all thoſe Towns enriched which ſome ſuitable Territory. Of theſe the Earles of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Caſtell*, and *Wortheim*, are *Homagers* to the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him ſervice at his Inthronization: the Earldome of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hanow*, as was ſhewn before; and that of *Henneberg* moſt famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increaſe of Children (as many as there be dayes in the year) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his wife, ſiſter of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as moſt in *Germany*, fetching their Pedigree as high as to *Charles* the *Great*, without help of the *Heralds*. But they of greateſt power and parentage amongſt them, are the Earls of *SWARTZENBURG*, deriving themſelves from one *Witikindus*, of the Houſe of *Saxony*: who fighting for his Country againſt the *French*, *Anno* 779. was taken priſoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized at the perſwaſion of *Lewis* the *Godly*, ſon of *Charles* the *Great*. *Witikindus* his ſon and Succeſſor, being baptized at the ſame time alſo by the name of *Charles*, was the firſt Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Caſtle of his own building on the edge of *Thuringia*, *Anno* 796. whoſe poſterity do ſtill hold the ſame, but much improved in their Eſtates by marriages and other accrewments. A race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence, in the affairs of *Germany*: amongſt them *Gunther* Earl of *Schwartzenburg*, elected Emperour of the *Romans*, againſt *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovick* Marqueſs of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*. By which laſt ſolemnity inaugurated at *Aken*, (or *Aquiſgrave*) *Anno* 1349. But being unworthily poiſoned by his Competitor, though he died not of it, yet he was made ſo weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to ſurrender his pretenſions to his mortal enemy; receiving in compenſation for his charges 22000 marks in *ſilver*, and ſome Towns in *Turingia*.

Of the *Imperial* Cities, which ſhare amongſt them the remainders of *Frankenlandt*, the principal are 1 *Frankford* on the *Meine*, ſo called from its ſituation on the River *Meine*, to difference it from *Frankford* in the Country of *Brandenburg*. Divided by the River into two parts, joyned together by a Bridge of ſtone; the leſſer part, ſituate on the right-hand ſhore of the River, being called *Saxenhauſen*, the greater part, properly called *Frank-ford*, ſeated on the other; Both under one Magiſtrate, and both together making up a fair, rich, populous, and well-traded Town, of great both riches and repute, by reaſon of the famous *Marts* here held, in the midſt of *Lent* and *September* yearly; and the *Election* of the Emperour, or King of the *Romans*, as occaſion is. The City of a round form, compaſſed with a double wall, beautified with ſome walks without the Town on the banks of the River, amongſt Vineyards, Meadows, and ſweet Groves: called thus, as ſome ſay, from *Francus* the ſon of *Marcomir*, ſuppoſed to be the Founder of it; or *à Francorum vado*, as the *Ford* of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. 2 *Schweinford*, on the *Meine* alſo, in a fruitfull ſoil. 3 *Rotenburg*, on the River *Tuber*. 4 *Winſheim*. Here is alſo the Town of 5 *Koburg*, which belongeth to the Houſe of *Saxony*, and gives title unto ſome of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxen-Koburg*. And hereto may be added 6 the fair City of *Nurenburg*, conceived by moſt to be within the *Upper Palatinate*; but by the Emperour *Maximilian* made a member of the *Circle* of *Franconie*, in regard moſt of the Eſtates and poſſeſſions of it lie within this Country. Of which indeed they have ſo plentifull a ſhare, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony*, and his confederates had driven *Charles* the 5th. out of *Germany*, Marqueſs *Albert* before mentioned (whoſe ſword was his beſt Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no leſs than an hundred Villages belonging to it, 70 Mannors and Farm-houſes appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Woods; and after all this havock made of their eſtate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Crowns in Money, and ſix pieces of Ordnance. But being the City it ſelf ſeems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we ſhall there meet with it.

Amongſt theſe *Prelates*, *Princes*, and *Imperial* Cities is the great Dukedom of *Franconia*, at this time divided; the title ſtill remaining in the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg*, and ſome part of the Country: but both the Country and the title of Duke of *Francony*, not long ſince otherwiſe diſpoſed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg*, *Anno* 1631. as before is ſaid, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them; conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxon-Weymer*, with the ſtile and title of Duke of *Franconia*. Inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*, *July* 19. 1643. the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing *homage* to him, and all the *Magiſtrates* and Officers of the ſeveral Cities taking the *oaths* of *Allegiance*; the new Duke alſo making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their rights and *Priviledges*. In the ſolemnities of which day, the firſt great Gun diſcharged in the way of triumph, broke in the going off without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Souldier onely. An *omen* that all this ſolemn *Act* would prove but a *Pageant*, and break in pieces at the firſt giving fire unto it. And ſo accordingly it did: the victory at *Norligen*, which followed not long after this, putting the *Bi-*

Wirtenberg, and Baden. *ſhops* once more into their poſſeſſions; and leaving nothing to the new Duke, but an hungry title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here adde the Catalogue of thoſe who were Dukes indeed, and had, together with the Title, the full poſſeſſion of the Country.

DUKES of *FRANCONIA* of the *DUTCH* or *GERMAN* RACE.

974 1 *Conradus*, ſurnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the firſt, whoſe daughter *Luitgarda* he had married: after the death of *Henry* the ſecond, elected Emperour, by the name of *Conrade* the ſecond, *Anno* 1025.

1040 2 *Henry*, the ſon of *Conrade*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperour, by the name of *Henry* the third.

1056 3 *Henry* II. of *Franconia*, and IV. of the Empire.

1106 4 *Henry* III. of *Franconia*: and V. of the the Empire.

1125 5 *Frederick* (ſurnamed *Barbaroſſa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the *Antient*, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his wife, the ſiſter and next heir of *Henry*; ſucceeded in the Empire after the death of *Conrade* the third, his Uncle, *Anno* 1153.

1190 6 *Frederick* II. the ſecond ſon of *Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.

7 *Conrade* II. brother of *Frederick* the ſecond, ſucceeded in both eſtates.

8 *Philip*, the younger brother of *Conrade*, ſucceeded in both Dukedoms after his deceaſe; and on the death of *Henry* the ſixth his elder brother, was elected Emperour, *Anno* 1198.

1207 9 *Frederick* III. of *Franconia*, and the V. of *Suevia*, ſon of the Emperour *Henry* the ſixth, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, *Anno* 1202. and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, *Anno* 1212. was elected Emperour, of that name the ſecond.

1250 10 *Conrade* III. of *Franconia*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV. of the Empire, the ſon of *Frederick* the third, whom he ſucceeded in all his Titles and Eſtates.

1254 11 *Conradine*, ſon of *Conrade* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*; diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicil* by *Manfred* the baſe brother of his Father: and finally beheaded by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who ſucceeded *Manfred* in thoſe Kingdoms, *Anno* 1268. After whoſe death his Royal houſe being quite extinguiſhed; the Biſhops of *Wurtzburg* did again reſume the titles of Dukes of *Franconia*; content to let ſome of the greater Lords and Prelates which lived near unto him, to ſhare in the poſſeſſion of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the antient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the Houſe of *Schwaben*, were *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces *Argent* and *Gules*, crowned *Or*, which, why it is now born by the *Landgrave* of *Haſſia*, we ſhall tell you there.

11. *WIRTENBERG*,
and
12. *BADEN*.

Theſe I have joyned together, though diſtinct Eſtates, becauſe both of them taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*; erected both about one time, and lying very cloſe in a round together; bounded upon the Eaſt, and South, with the *Schwaben* properly ſo called; on the North, with the *Lower Palatinate*; on the Weſt, with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schwaben* which is called *Briſgow*: parted aſunder by the Mountainous ridge of hills called *Schwartzwald*; *Wirtenberg* lying on the Eaſt-ſide thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*.

And firſt *VVIRTENBERG*, the air thereof is very healthy, neither too hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the ſoil near *Swartzenwald* lying on the Weſt, and the *Alps* of *Suevia* on the South, of it ſelf barren and unprofitable; but in ſome places by the induſtry of the *Plough-man*, made to yield good corn. But in the middle parts thereof which lie towards the *Neccar*, little inferiour for fruitfulneſs both of corn and wine, unto any in *Germany*; beſides ſome ſilver Mines near *Wiltberg*; and about *Puellach*, a ſmall Town, ſuch abundance of *braſſe*, that the Foundation of the houſes ſeem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Caſtle of *Wirtenberg*, the firſt ſeat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Intuergi*, inhabiting the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*; or from the *Virtungi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Trebellius Gellio* in the life of *Aurelianus*; to which word *Berg* being added for a termination, made it firſt *Tuergin-berg*, or *Virthun-berg*, and after *Wirtenberg*.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Stutguard*, the Dukes ſeat, a fair, rich, and populous Town, and the chief of the Dukedom; ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitful Plain, not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of wine almoſt incredible. 2 *Tubingen*, on both ſides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair ſtone Bridge. A Town well built, ſituate in a very rich ſoil, and finally adorned with an Univerſity here founded by *Eberhard*, the firſt Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Anno* 1477. in which *Leonardus Fuchſius*, that great *Herbaliſt* and *Reſtaurator* of *Phyſick*, was once a Profeſſor of that Faculty. 3 *Conſtat*, upon the *Neccar* alſo, not far from which on the top of an hill, ſtands the old Caſtle of *VVirtenberg*, *Wirtenberg.*

berg, before mentioned. 4 *Wiberg*, of great eſteem for its Mines of Silver. 5 *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by *Jews*. 6 *Schorndorf* upon the *Rheems*, much reſorted to by reaſon of the hot *Baths* there; as is alſo 7 *Newnburg*, on the *Entz*. 8 *Heidenheim*. 9 *Grieningen*. 10 *Maroach*, of which little memorable. There are alſo within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns *Imperial*, as 1 *Wimpſen*, and 2 *Haibrum* on the *Neccar*. 3 *Gepping*, upon the River *Vils*. 4 *Weil*. 5 *Rentling*, on the *Neccar* alſo, made *Imperial* by **Frederick** the 2d. *Anno* 1240. otherwiſe of no great note but for the Paper-Mills. 6 *Eſling*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof, were the *Chartini* of *Ptolemy*, & part of the *Intuergi*, ſpoken of before; made ſubject with the reſt of theſe parts to the *Almains*, after to the *French*, and finally a member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which diſmembred in the time of *Henry* 4th. after the dangerous war raiſed againſt him by the Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practiſe of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne *Imperial*, it came to have Princes of its own: the firſt Earl being **Conrade**, in the year 1100. by the grace and favour of the ſaid Emperour *Henry*. Increaſed by the addition of the Earldom of *Monibelguard*, and many other accrewments, it was made a Dukedom in the perſon of *Eberhard* the 6th. by *Maximilian* the 1 *Anno* 1495. The Earls and Dukes whereof follow thus in order:

The EARLS and DUKES of *WIRTENBERG.*

1 **Conrade** the firſt Earl.
2 *Ulric*, ſon of *Conrade*.
3 *John* ſon of *Ulric*.
4 *Lewis* ſon of *John*.
5 *Henry* ſon of *Lewis*.
6 *Eberhard* ſon of *Henry*.
7 *Ulric* II. ſon of *Eberhard*.
8 *Eberhard* II. ſon of *Ulric*.
1325 9 *Ulric* III. ſon of *Eberhard*.
1344 10 *Eberhard* III. ſon of *Ulric*.
1394 11 *Ulric* IV. ſon of *Eberhard*.
12 *Eberhard* IV. ſon of *Ulric*.
1417 13 *Eberhard* V. ſon of *Eberhard* the 4th. by his marriage with *Henrica* or *Henriette*, daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Monthbelguard*, added that Earldom to his Houſe.
1419 14 *Lewis*, or *Ludovick* II. ſon of *Eberhard* the 5th.
1456 15 *Eberhard* VI. ſon of *Lewis*, Founder of the Univerſity of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the firſt, the firſt Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Anno* 1495. He deceaſed without iſſue, *Anno* 1490.
1496 16 *Eberhard* VII. ſon of *Ulric*, the younger brother of *Lewis* the 2d. ſuccceeded on the death of *Eberhard*, his Couſin-German.
1504 17 *Henry*, the brother of *Eberhard* the 7th.
1519 18 *Ulric* V. ſon of *Henry* the 2d. expulſed out of his Dukedom by **Charles** the 5th. for the ſack of *Reutling* an *Imperial* City; and his eſtate conferred on **Ferdinand** of *Auſtria*, the brother of **Charles**: but after 15 years exile, reſtored to his Dukedom, by *Philip* Langtrave of *Haſsia*. He reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the Univerſity of *Tubingen*. 31.
1550 19 **Chriſtopher**, the ſon of *Ulric* the 5th. a follower of his Fathers ſteps in Reformation of the Church and Advancement of Learning.
1568 20 *Ludovick* or *Lewis* III. ſon of **Chriſtopher**.
21 *Frederick*, ſon of *George* Earl of *Monthbelguard*, the brother of *Ulric* the 5th, made Knight of the *Garter* by Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno* 1597.
22 *John Frederick*, ſon of **Frederick** the firſt.
23 *John* **Eberhard**, eldeſt ſon of the former Duke, now living, *Anno* 1649.

The *Revenues* of this Duke are ſuppoſed to be equal unto thoſe of the *Electors Palatine*, ſpoken of before; and were it not for the *ſilver* Mines in *Saxony*, little inferiour to thoſe of that Duke. But for proviſions of war, (excepting *Powder* only) he is meanly furniſhed. A main defect, conſidering the ill terms he ſtands in with the *Imperial* Cities, betwixt whom and the Houſe of *Wirtenberg*, there have been alwayes open wars, or ſecret jealouſies.

His Arms are, *Or*, 3 Attires of a Stag born Pali-barrie, *Sable*.

As for the Marquiſate of *BADEN*, lying on the Weſt ſide of *Schwartzenwald*, betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the moſt part, except towards thoſe *Wolds*, a very pleaſant and fruitfull Countrey; and much of the ſame nature, with the reſt of *Wirtenberg*; ſo called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marqueſs keeps his ſeat in Winter; and that ſo named from the hot Baths there, as is alſo *Baden* (called for diſtinction ſake, the *Upper Baden*) amongſt the *Switzers*; in which reſpect the City of *Bath* in *Somerſetſhire* had antiently the name of *Caer-Baden* alſo. Of theſe Baths it is ſuppoſed that there are in this City at leaſt 300, profitable for many diſeaſes and exulcerate ſores, drawing a great reſort of people from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquiſate, from whence the Princes have the title of Marqueſſes of *Baden*. The next to this is 2 *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a ſecond branch of this houſe; called alſo ſometimes Marqueſſes of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marqueſſes of **Baden-Durlach**. 3 *Liebenzel*, amongſt the hills of *Schwartzenwald*, famous for hot *medicinal* Springs. 4 *Lichtall*, remarkable for a Monaſtery, the burial place of the firſt Marqueſſes. 5 *Gerſpach* in the very heart of that mountainous tract. 6 *Pfortheim*, adjoyning to the Wood *Hagencheis*, a branch of *Schawrtzenwald*. 7 *Rotelen*. 8 *Badenwile*, and 9 *Suſenburg*, all ſeated in the

Up-

Northgoia.

Upper Baden, being that part hereof which lies next to *Briſgow*. 10 *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, the uſual retiring-place of theſe Princes in the heats of Summer.

This Marquiſate being alſo taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was founded in the perſon of *Herman*, of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deſerving well of the Emperour *Henry* the 5th. was by him ſetled in ſome Lands about theſe parts, *Anno* 1120. and after marrying with the daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa* created the firſt Marqueſs of *Baden*, *Anno* 1155. The Eſtate was after much increaſed by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg*, and the Appendixes thereof in *Schwaben*; into which *Chriſtopher* the 13th. Marqueſs hereof, ſucceeded on the death of his Couſin *Philip*, the laſt Earl of *Hochberg*; both Princes deſcending originally from two brothers: of which the eldeſt in right of the Lady *Judith* his wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the ſecond by the favour of the ſaid *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, was made Marqueſs of *Baden*. They were Maſters alſo of many fair Eſtates in the *Lower Palatinate*, which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there ſaid) are ſince poſſeſſed of. Other particulars ſhall be ſhewn (if occaſion be) in the enſuing Catalogue of

The MARQUESSES of BADEN.

1155 1 *Herman* the firſt Marqueſs.
2 *Herman* II.
3 *Herman* III.
4 *Herman* IV.
1281 5 *Rodolph*, ſon of *Herman* 4.
1295 6 *Herman* V. ſon of *Rodolph*.
7 *Rodolph* II. ſon of *Herman* the 5th.
1356 8 *Frederick*, ſon of *Rodolph* the 2d.
9 *Rodolph* III. ſon of *Frederick*.
1372 10 *Barnard*, ſon of *Rodolph* the 3d.
1431 11 *James*, ſon of *Barnard*.
1453 12 *Charles*, ſon of *James*; the firſt of theſe Marqueſſes which was poſſeſſed of the County of *Spanheim* in the *Lower Palatinate*, deſcending on this houſe by *Matild* wife of *Rodolph* the ſecond.
1475 13 *Chriſtopher*, ſon of *Charles*, who after the death of *Philip*, the laſt Marqueſs of *Hochberg*, ſucceeded alſo in that eſtate.
1515 14 *Barnard*, ſon of *Chriſtopher*, his brother *Erneſt* ſucceeding in that of *Hochberg*.
15 *Chriſtopher* II. ſon of *Barnard*, his elder brother *Philbert*, and *Philip* ſon of *Philbert*, dying in the life of *Barnard*.
16 *Edward*, ſon of *Chriſtopher*, intending the ſale of his Eſtates to pay his debts, was forcibly deprived of all by
17 *Erneſt*, Marqueſs of *Hochberg*, Nephew of *Erneſt* above mentioned; who by that means not only preſerved the Marquiſate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it; and removed his ordinary ſeat to *Durlach*.
18 *George*, brother of *Erneſt*, Marqueſs of *Baden* and *Hochberg*.
19 *Frederick*, the ſon of *George*, born in the year 1594. ſucceeded his Father in both Eſtates; and (if living) hath a ſon called alſo *Frederick*, to enjoy them after his deceaſe.

NORTHGOIA,
OR
The UPPER PALATINATE.

The Countrey of NORTHGOIA, ſo called from the *Northern* ſituation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is ſometimes alſo called the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, becauſe anciently belonging to that Eſtate; but generally *Ober Pfalts*, or the *Upper Palatitinate*, to difference it from the *Lower*. It is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bohemia*; on the Weſt, with *Franconia*, and part of *Schwaben*; on the North, with *Voiteland*; and on the South, with *Bavaria*. The Countrey for the moſt part ſomewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in Mines of Iron, which it yieldeth in moſt places, and ſome of ſilver about *Amberg*; extended from *Haimbourg* to the edge of *Bohemia*, 80 miles; and from the hill *Felchtelberg* in the edge of *Voiteland*, to *Weiſenberg* near the banks of the *Danow*, 68 miles.

Obſervable things touching this Province, are chiefly two. Firſt, that out of the mountain *Felchtelberg*, before mentioned, ariſe 4 Rivers running to the four quarters of the world; that is to ſay the *Eger* towards the Eaſt, the *Mein* or *Mœnus* towards the Weſt, the *Sala* or *Saliza* to the North, & the *Nab* or *Nabus* to the South; ſo that it may be probably thought to be the higheſt hill in all *Germany*. 2ly. That in the Southweſt corner of it are two little Rivers, the one called *Almul*, which falleth into the *Danow*; and the other *Rednitz*, which runs into the *Mein*, and finally into the *Rhene*, between the heads whereof, being not much diſtant, *Charles* the *Great* once began to dig a Chanel, for making a paſſage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thouſand men: but partly by exceſs of rain, and partly by ſome ſtrange *affrightments* (all which they did in the day, being undone in the night) he was fain to deſiſt. Some parts of the intended water-courſe are to be ſeen near *Waſſenburg*, ſpoken of before, which ſtandeth in the middle way betwixt both Rivers.

Chief places of this Countrey which belong to the *Electoral* Family, are 1 *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commodity of iron digged out of the neighbouring hills; here faſhioned into all ſorts of *Utenſils*, and hence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoyning; but prouder of its Mines of *Silver*, than thoſe veins of *Iron*, affording to the Princes Coffers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2 *Menheim*, in the midſt of a fruitfull valley, near a wood of *Juniper*. 3 *Newburg* upon the River *Swartzach*, which gives title to the ſecond branch of the *Palatine* houſe, called the Count *Palatines*

of

Northgoia.

of *Newberg*, competitors with the Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg* for the Dukedom of *Cleveland*. 4 *Kelhaim*, at the meeting of the *Danow*, with the River *Almul*. 5 *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the River *Regen*; which paſſing thence falleth into the *Danow*, near the City of *Regensberg*. 6 *Caſtel*, where the *Electors* for the moſt part hold their *Reſidence*; when they are in this Countrey. 7 *Awerbach*. 8 *Saltsbach*. 9 *Weiden*. 10 *Newmarckt*.

There are alſo in this Country ſome Towns belonging to the *Lantgraves* of *Luchtenberg*, one of the four old *Lantgraves* of the Empire; the other three being *Duringen*, *Haſsia*, and *Alſatia*: ſo called from *Lutchenberg*, an old Caſtle, ſituate on a lofty hill not far from *Pfriemd*, the chief Town and ordinary paſs and baiting place, in the way from *Prague* to *Nurenberg*.

But the chief City of this Countrey, and perhaps of *Germany*, is *Nurenberg* it ſelf, *Norimbega* in the modern, but *Noricum* in the antient *Latine*. So called from an antient Caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, the ruines of which are ſtill remaining: encompaſſed with a deep but dry ditch, now of no uſe nor ornament to the City at all; but reverenced for its antiquity as the Mother of *Nurenberg*. The Caſtle ſaid by ſome to be built in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*. More probably by ſome of the *Norici*, who terrified with the invaſion of *Attila*, in the decline and wain of the *Roman* Empire; relinquiſhed *Bavaria*, where before they dwelt, and paſſed over the *Danow*, there to provide themſelves of a ſafer dwelling. Conquered by the *Bavarians*, it became, together with their Conquerours, ſubject to the *French*: in the time of *Lewis* the third, it became *Imperial*, and was walled and fortified during the reign of *Charls* the fourth. From that time it increaſed ſo faſt both in wealth and beauty, that it is counted the greateſt and wealthieſt City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it eleven ſtone bridges for paſſage over the River *Pegnits*, which runneth through it, 12 Conduits of freſh water; 13 common Baths, 116 publick Wells, and 128 Streets. Of figure ſquare, environed with a triple wall of 8 miles in circuit, and plentifully ſtored with all ſorts of *Ammunition*. The Marqueſſes of *Brandenbourg* in former times were the *Burgraves* of it; an office of great power and juriſdiction; but ſold for a good ſum of money by *Frederick* the third, *Anno* 1513. *Albert* his ſon attempting to recover the old office again, beſieged the Town having no leſs then 17 Princes on his ſide, and yet could not force it. That for an Argument of its ſtrength. A proof and evidence of the wealth of it we have ſeen before, in that great havock made of their Towns and Villages, and the great ranſom they were put to by another *Albert*, ſpoken of in *Franconia*. And it adds much unto the commendation of the people, that this great wealth is gotten by their indefatigable *induſtry*; the Town being ſituate on a barren and ſandy ſoyl, and deſtitute of thoſe helps which commonly a *navigable* River brings into a City: thoſe great poſſeſſions which belong to the State hereof, being gotten out of the fire, as the ſaying is, by their continual working of iron and other manufactures; occaſioning a reſort hither of Merchants from all parts of *Germany*.

Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate*, are 1 *Altorf*, where the *Nurenburgers* founded an univerſity for the ſtudy of all Arts and Sciences, *Anno* 1575. 2 *Erſpruck*, a great Town and well ſeated, belonging to the State of *Nurenberg* alſo. 3 *Eiſted* (*Aichſtadium* in the *Latine*) an Epiſcopal See, ſituate on the River *Almul*. 4 *Waſſenburg*, an *Imperial* City on the borders of *Schwaben*. Here was alſo in this Province (if not ſtill remaining) the Town of *Winsberg*, memorable for the piety and gallantry of the women of it. For the Town being beſieged and diſtreſſed by the Emperour *Conrade* the third, for ſiding againſt him with the *Guelfs* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the ſurrender of it, but that the women might have leave to depart in ſafety, and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained, they took their husbands on their backs, and ſo left the Town: and by that noble act ſo moved the affections and compaſſion of the angry Prince, that he ſpared the Town, and gave them all a general pardon. It is ſaid by ſome, that the odious names of *Guelfs* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of *Chriſtendom* was ſo long diſtracted) took their beginning at this ſiege; the firſt ſo called from *Guelfo*, brother of *Henry* the *Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whoſe cauſe they fought; the other from *Veibling*, (the *French* and *Italians* ſpeak it *Gueibling*) a Town of *Frankenland*, in which that Emperour was born. Another original hereof, we had in our deſcription of the State of *Florence*: but I take this to be the more probable of the two, though neither certain.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Nariſci* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards ſome of the *Norici* fearfull or grown impatient of the *Roman* yoke, came over the *Danubius* to them, and built that famous Caſtle called *Caſtrũ Noricum*, where now ſtands *Nurenberg*, overpowred by the *Boii*, & uniting with them in the name of *Boiarians*, they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339. when *Ludovick* the Emperour and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the eſtate betwixt him and *Radolphus* his elder brother, relinquiſhed it for ever to the houſe of the *Palatines*. Returned for the preſent to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom conferred, together with the *Electoral* dignity, by the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in recompence of the great ſervice done him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof, in the war of *Bohemia*; and the great charge he had been at, in the reduction of that kingdom to the houſe of *Auſtria*. How long it will continue thus, is known only to God, the diſpoſer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly; nor the *Palatines* ſince, have been ſo fully Maſters of it, but that the Landgrave of *Luchtenberg*, and the City of *Nurenberg*, have put in for a ſhare.

The Arms of which great and puiſſant City are *Azure*, an *Harpie* diſplayed, crowned, crined, and armed, *Or*.

Bohemia.

3. The KINGDOM of *BOHEMIA*.

The *Kingdom* of *BOHEMIA*, containing *Bohemia* it ſelf, with the incorporate *Provinces*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Poland* and *Hungary*; on the Weſt, with the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voiteland*, and *Miſnia*; on the North, with the Marquiſate of *Brandenberg*, and ſome part of *Miſnia*; and on the South, with *Auſtria*, and *Bavaria*. It comprehends in it, beſides *Bohemia* it ſelf, the Marquiſate of *Moravia*, with the Dukedoms of *Sileſia*, and *Luſatia*.

1. *BOHEMIA*, encompaſſed about with woody Mountains, part of the *Hercynian*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Moravia*; on the Weſt, with the *Upper Palatinate*, and *Voiteland*; on the North, with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, and ſome part of *Sileſia*; on the South, with parts of *Bavaria*, and *Auſtria*.

It took this name from the *Bemi*,, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof. By *Pomponius Mela* called *Bemi*, with the Addition of *Gens magna*; by *Tacitus* they are called *Boiemi*, who makes them the Deſcendants of the *Boii*, a *Gallick* Nation, who to avoid the ſervitude which they feared from *Rome*, put themſelves into theſe *Hercynian* Deſerts, which from them was named *Boiohemum*; by which name it occurreth in *Velleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* firſt, and the *Sclaves* and *Croatians* afterwards became Maſters of it, theſe laſt continuing their poſſeſſion to this very day: yet it retaineth ſtill the name of *Bohemia* among the *Latines*, as that of *Bohemerland* amongſt the *Dutch*.

It contains in compaſs about 550 *Engliſh* miles. The ſoil indifferently fruitfull, and enriched with mines of all ſorts, except of *Gold*. *Tinne* they have here in good plenty, the mines whereof were firſt found out by a *Corniſh*-man, baniſhed out of *England*, *Anno* 1240. which diſcovery of *Tinne* in theſe parts, was, as ſaith my Authour, *in magnam jacturam Richardi Comitis Cornubiæ*, (he meaneth that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*:) and no marvel, for in thoſe times there was no *Tinne* in all *Europe*, but in *England*. Wood they have here good ſtore; and in ſome of their Forreſts a Beaſt called *Lomie*, which hath hanging under its neck a bladder full of ſcalding water; with which, when ſhe is hunted, ſhe ſo tortureth the Dogs, that ſhe eaſily eſcapeth them. Of corn they have ſufficient for their own uſe, and ſometimes alſo an increaſe above their ſpending, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours of the *Upper Palatinate*: but they want wine, the Air here being too ſharp and piercing to produce a good *Vintage*. And it yields alſo ſtore of *Saffron*, no where to be bettered; with plenty of *medicinal* drugs.

The Principal Rivers hereof, are 1 the *Elb*, or *Albis*, having here its ſpring; of whoſe courſe we have ſpoken elſewhere. 2 *Egra*. 3. the *Muldaw*, or *Muldavius*, and 4 the *Warts*; all three exonerating themſelves into the *Elb*, which runneth through the midſt of the Countrey.

The kingdom is not (as others) divided into Counties, and Provinces, but into the Territories and poſſeſſions of ſeveral Lords; who have great authority and command over their Vaſſals. The figure of the whole in a manner *Circular*, the *Diameter* whereof reacheth every way ſome 200 miles: containing in that compaſs 700 Cities, walled Towns, and Caſtles; and (as ſome ſay) 30000 Villages. Inhabited by a people given to drink and gluttony; and yet valiant, and with ſenſe of honour: this laſt belonging to the Nobility, and Gentry; the former to the common people; but more moderately than moſt others of the *German* Nations. All of them, Princes or Plebeians, rich, poor, noble, and baſe, uſe the *Sclavonian* language, as their Mother tongue.

The chief *Bohemian* Captain that ever I read of, was *Ziſca*; who in eleven battels fought in the defence of the *Huſſites*, againſt the Pope and his confederates, prevailed, and went away victorious: inſomuch, that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flea him, and make a Drum of his skin; perſwading himſelf, if they ſo did, they would never be overcome. A fancy like to that of *Scipio African*, and *Vortimer*, King of *Britain*, ſpoken of before. Scholars of moſt note, *John Hus*, and *Hierom* of *Prague*, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt here preached by S. *Methodius*, the firſt Biſhop and Apoſtle of the *Moravians*, (whom ſome call *Borſinous*) *Anno* 900. or thereabouts: *Borzivinſo*, the eighth Duke from *Crocus*, being the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince, and next to him, *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond. This laſt moſt cruelly murdered by *Boleſlaus*, his brother, at the inſtigation of *Drahomira*, an obſtinate Heathen, mother to them both: who having cauſed the Miniſters of the Lord to be butchered; and their bodies to lie unburied for two years together, was ſwallowed, coach and all, in that very place where their bodies lay. Confirmed by this prodigy, they continued conſtant in the faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of ſome notable vanity. For one *Picardus* coming out of the *Low-Countries*, drew a great ſort of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the ſame ſtate of perfection, that *Adam* was in before his fall; from whence they were called *Picards* and *Adamites*. They had no reſpect unto marriage, yet could they not accompany any women, untill the man coming to *Adam*, ſaid unto him, *Father* Adam, *I am inflamed towards this woman*: and *Adam* made anſwer, *Increaſe and multiply*. They lived in an Iſland which they called *Paradiſe*, and went ſtark naked; but they continued not long: for *Ziſca* hearing of them, entred their *fools Paradiſe*, and put them all to the ſword, *Anno* 1416. But to make amends for this folly, they were exceeding zealous of the *Reformation*. For much about the ſame time, the works of *Wickliff* were brought into *Bohemia*, by a certain Scholar who had been Student in the Univerſity of *Oxford*, which hapning into the hands of *John Hus* and *Hierom* of *Prague*, two men whereof the Countrey doth much boaſt; wrought in their hearts a deſire to reform the Church. A buſineſs which they proſecuted ſo earneſtly, that being ſummoned to the Council of *Conſtance*, they were there condemned for *Hereticks*, and burned, *Anno* 1414. yet had their doctrine ſuch deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be deſtroyed by the Tyrannies of war, or perſecution (though both were uſed) to this very day; multitudes of the Profeſſors of it living in this kingdom under the names of *Caliſtini*, and *Sub utraque*, as before is ſaid, but much both ſtrengthened and increaſed by the writings of *Luther*, *Melanchthon*, *Calvin*, and ſuch other of the *Proteſtant* Doctors, as travelled in the work of *Reformation*. But this increaſe of ſtrength and number proved their greateſt weakning. For growing inſolent upon the ſenſe of their ſtrength and power, they formed themſelves into a party, got many of the *Romiſh Catholicks* to adhere to them under colour of aſſerting their Civil rights, and in the heat of ſome diſputes, cauſed certain of the Emperours Counſel to be thrown out of the windows of the Counſel-chamber; and finally about the later end of the reign and Empire of *Matthias*, they brake out into open Arms. In the courſe whereof, the *Calvinians* being of moſt power, and having got a King of their own opinions, ſo diſobliged the *Lutherans*, and more moderate Papiſts, who had concurred with them at the firſt: that being invaded on the one ſide by a *Lutheran* Army under the command of the Duke of *Saxony*, and a Popiſh Army on the other by the Duke of *Bavaria*, they were, in fine, utterly ſuppreſt, and made inconſiderable: the conquering and ſucceſsfull Emperour (*Ferdinand* the ſecond) taking this occaſion to extirpate the *Proteſtant* Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Budweis*, (conceived to be the *Marobodurum* of *Ptolemy*) a town towards *Auſtria*. 2 *Augſt*, near the head of the *Elb*. 3 *Tabor*, a ſtrong Town built by *Ziſca*, to be a retreat for the *Huſſites*. 4 *Jaromir*, and 5 *Molmuck*, both upon the *Elb*. 6 *Littomiſſel*, an Epiſcopal See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7 *Pilſen*, the laſt town of this kingdom which yielded to the prevailing *Imperialiſts*, in the late long war about that Crown: and then alſo betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a ſum of mony, by ſome of the Souldiers of Count *Mansfield*, who was then abſent, and had ſo long defended it againſt the Enemy. 8 *Elbogen*, much eſteeemed for the hot *medicinable* Bathes; ſituate on the River *Egra*. 9 *Egra*, ſo called of the ſame River, on which (near to the borders of the *Upper Palatinate*) it is ſtrongly ſituate: a large fair City, containing three miles compaſſe. *Imperial* once, but ſold by the Emperour *Ludovicus Bavarus*, to *John*, King of *Bohemia*, for 400000 marks of Silver: in compaſſe leſs, for ſweetneſs of the place, elegancy of the buildings, pleaſantneſſe of ſite, and richneſſe of ſoil, ſuperiour farre to *Prague* it ſelf. 10 *Prague*, the *Metropolis* of the kingdom; ſituate in the midſt thereof, on the River *Muldaw*: conſiſting of four ſeveral Towns, each of which hath its ſeveral Cuſtomes, Lawes, and Magiſtrates. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly buildings, a ſpacious Market-place, and a ſtately Counſel-houſe: the ſecond called the *New Town*, ſeparated from the *Old*, by a Ditch of great depth, and wideneſſe. The third, called the *Little Town*, is divided from the *Old*, by the River *Muldaw*, joyned to it by a beautifull Bridge, conſiſting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the hill *Rachine*; on the ſides of which are many fair and ſtately houſes belonging to the *Nobility*, over-looked by the ſtrong Caſtle of S. *Wenceſlaus* (ſituate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian* Kings and the later Emperours, have kept their reſidence. The fourth town is that of the *Jewes*, who have here five *Synagogues*, and live according to their own Law. The whole City rather large than fair, the ſtreets being in winter very dirty, of ill ſmell in the ſummer; the buildings for the moſt part of clay and timber, clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though incompaſſed with walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open town (ſo poor and weak are the defences) inſomuch, that whoſoever is Maſter of the Field, will be Maſter of the City alſo. And yet beſides the honour of being the *Royal* Seat; it hath alſo of long time been an Archbiſhops See; and by *Charles* the fourth, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, made an Univerſity. Near unto this Town was fought that memorable battel, between the Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count *Bucquoy*, Lieutenant for the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond; with 50000 men on the one ſide; and *Frederick* newly elected King of *Bohemia*, with the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Thurne*, and 30000 men, on the other ſide. It was fought on the eighth of *November*, *ſtylo novo*, wherein (ſuch was the unſearchable will of God) the victory fell unto the Imperials: the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Thurn*, and *Saxon-Weimar*, with divers others, being taken priſoners; the *Bohemian* Ordnance all ſurprized, *Prague* forced to yield unto the Victor, and King *Frederick* with the Queen, compelled to flie unto *Sileſia*. A moſt lamentable and unfortunate loſs, not to this people only, but to the whole cauſe of the *Reformed Religion*. Yet it is not unworthy of our obſervation, that this great Battel was fought upon a Sunday, the eighth of *November*, about the time of the morning Prayer: in the Goſpel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after Trinity Sunday) is that famous paſſage, *Reddite* CÆSARI, *quæ ſunt* CÆSARIS, *i. e.* Render unto *Cæſar*, the things which are *Cæſars*; which ſeemed to judge the quarrel on the Emperours ſide.

But whether of the two Pretenders had the juſter Cauſe, may beſt be ſeen by canvaſſing the Records of that State and Nation (for the ſucceſs of *War* is no ſtanding Rule for meaſuring the equity, and juſtice of the cauſes of it:) by which it will be clearly ſeen, that ſince the erecting of this Kingdom by the *Sclaves* or *Croatians*, it hath been evermore diſpoſed at the will of the Emperour, or by *election* of the States and People. But I intend not at the preſent to diſpute that point, but onely lay down the ſtory of the Kings and People, as in other places; ſince the firſt coming of the *Sclavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Juſtinian*; at what time they inhabited on the banks of the *Iſter*; but on the further ſide hereof, oppoſite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good ſucceſſes againſt that Empire, their name was taken up by the reſt of the *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; who either wanting room, or not liking af their colder Countries, paſſeh on more Weſtwards: and by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Germany*, which formerly had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Burgundians*, and *Boiarians*; but were then either quite forſaken, or but ill inhabited, by the drawing down of thoſe people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they better liked. Divided at, or after their coming thus far Weſt, into four main bodies; that is to ſay, the *Winithi*; poſſeſſed of the (now) Marquiſates of *Brandenbourg*, *Miſnia*, and *Luſatia*, as alſo of the Dukedoms of *Mecklenbourg*, and *Pomerania*; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the *Lower Auſtria*, and the *Upper Hungary*; the *Poles*, poſſeſſed of *Poland*, and the Dukedom of *Sileſia*; and finally, the *Bohemian Sclaves*, confined within the limits of that Kingdom only. Under what form of Government they lived at their firſt coming hither, is not certainly known. But being ſetled in theſe Countries of *Poland*, and *Bohemia*, it was not long before they were erected into ſeveral kingdomes: occaſioned by the coming of a new body of *Sclaves*, *Croatians*, and others of thoſe ſcattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechius*, a great Prince amongſt them; who about the year 640. together with his brother *Leches*, was baniſhed *Croatia* for a murther. And being very acceptable to the *Sclaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own Original extraction, one of the ſame Language, Laws, or Cuſtoms that themſelves were of; they admitted him to be their *Chief*, or ſupreme Governour, by whatſoever name he was called at firſt: in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own language, do call themſelves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapſed again into a confuſed *Anarchy*, till the year 670. at what time not reſpecting the Progeny of *Zechius*, the founder of their Common-wealth, and firſt eſtate, they faſtned upon *Crocus*, a man of good eſteem amongſt them, and elected him to be their Duke. *Crocus vir juſtus, & magna apud* Bohemos *opinionis Princeps electus eſt*, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Crocus* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libuſſa*, his youngeſt daughter; and of her government ſoon wearied, they made choice of *Primiſlaus* for their Prince, and made him huſband to *Libuſſa*. A man taken from the *Plough* (as their ſtories tell us) to eſpouſe the Princeſs: it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suters, that he (whoſoever he was) before whom an horſe purpoſely let looſe, did firſt make a ſtand, ſhould be the Husband of the Lady, and have the government of the State. The Horſe firſt makes a ſtand before *Primiſlaus*, being then at *plough* (having perhaps ſome Mare in his Teem;) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. Theſe with the other Dukes from the time of *Crocus*, the firſt *Legiſlator* of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus.

The DUKES of *BOHEMIA*.

1 *Croeus*, the Law-giver or *Lycurgus* of *Bohemia*.
2 *Libuſſa*, youngeſt daughter to *Crocus*, with *Primiſlaus* her husband, (a ſecond *Quinctins*) Founder of *Prague*.
3 *Neramiſlaus*, ſon of *Primiſlaus* and *Libuſſa*.
4 *Mnatha* one of the ſons of *Neramiſlaus*; Co-temporary with *Charles* the Great.
5 *Voricius*, ſon of *Mnatha*.
6 *Wenceſlaus*.
7 *Bela*.
8 *Naſtricius* ſon of *Bela*.
9 *Bozzivoius*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Bohemians*; Co-temporary with the Emperour *Arnulph*.
10 *Sbitignaus*, ſon to *Bozzivoius*.
11 *Uladiſlaus*, brother to *Sbitignaus*.
12 *Wenceſlaus* II. ſurnamed the *Saint*, ſlain by his brother *Boleſlaus*.
13 *Boleſlaus*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
14 *Boleſlaus* II. ſonne of the former, a great advancer of Chriſtianity amongſt his people.
15 *Boleſlaus* III. one of the ſons of *Boleſlaus* the ſecond.
16 *Jaromir*, ſon to *Boleſlaus* the third.
17 *Uldaricus*, brother to *Boleſlaus* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir*.
18 *Prediſlaus*, ſon to *Udalricus*.
19 *Sbitignaus* II. ſon to *Prediſlaus*.
1061 20 *Uratiſlaus*, brother of *Sbitignaus*, whom for his manifold deſerts, the Emperour *Henry* the fourth created the firſt King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1086. whoſe Succeſſors take thus out of *Bertholdus* and *Dubravius*.

The KINGS and DUKES of *BOHEMIA*.

A. Ch.
1086 1 *Uratiſlaus*, the brother of *Sbitignaus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the fourth at *Metz* created King.
2 *Conrade*, brother to *Uratiſlaus*, notwithſtanding that his brother had three ſons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia*.
3 *Breciſlaus*, ſon to *Uratiſlaus*, the two ſons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* choſen Duke.
1100 4 *Borivorius*, the fourth ſon of *Breciſlaus*, is choſen by the *Bohemians*; his eldeſt brothers then all living.
1109 5 *Sutopulchus*, Couſin-german to *Borivorius*, by the conſent and favour of the people, depoſed *Borivorius*, and cauſed himſelf to be elected in his place.

6 ***Uladiſlaus*** II. brother to ***Borivorius***, preferred by the people to the throne, before ***Otho*** the brother, and ***Henry*** the ſon of ***Sutopulcus***, the laſt Prince.

7 ***Sobeſlaus***, brother to ***Uladiſlaus***, promoted to the State before the ſon of ***Uladiſlaus***.

1159 8 ***Uladiſlaus*** III. ſon to ***Uladiſlaus*** the ſecond, (the four ſons of ***Sobeſlaus*** omitted) is choſen and crowned the ſecond King of ***Bohemia***, by ***Frederick*** the Emperour; but depoſed by the States, becauſe he was not by them formally elected, according to their *priviledges*, and cuſtomes.

9 ***Uldericus***, the third ſon of ***Sobeſlaus***, his elder brethren yet living, was by the people elected in the room of ***Uladiſlaus***, and his ſon ***Frederick***, whom the Emperour ***Frederick*** had by force eſtabliſhed in the throne.

10 ***Sobeſlaus*** II. ſecond ſon to ***Sobeſlaus***, was by ***Frederick*** above named expelled; and he alſo by the ***Bohemians***.

11 ***Conrade***, Grandchild to ***Otho*** the brother of ***Sutopulcus***, elected by the ***Bohemians*** in place of ***Frederick***; between which two Princes there was continual war.

12 ***Wenceſlaus***, Unkle unto ***Conrade***, and ſon of ***Otho*** aforeſaid, was preferred before many nearer the ſucceſſion. Him ***Primiſlaus*** expelled, but fearing his return, quitted ***Prague***.

13 ***Henry*** Biſhop of ***Prague***, a ſtranger to the blood, was by a general conſent elected Duke.

14 ***Uladiſlaus*** IV. brother to ***Primiſlaus*** the ſon ***Wenceſlaus*** being put by, ſucceeded ***Henry***, and ſoon afterward reſigned.

1199 15 ***Primislaus*** elected by the ***Bohemians***, and by the Emperour ***Philip***, crowned the third King of ***Bohemia***, at ***Mentz***, was brother to ***Vladislaus*** the fourth.

1248 16 ***Ottocarus***; notwithſtanding that ***Wenceslaus*** his elder brother had been crowned in his Fathers life time, was acknowledged King. He was ſlain in battel by ***Rodolphus*** the Emperour, near ***Marckh*** a River of ***Moravia***, ***Anno*** 1278.

1278 17 ***Wenceslaus*** II. ſon to ***Ottocarus***.

1284 18 ***Wenceslaus*** III. ſon to the ***Wenceslaus*** the ſecond, the laſt of the ***Bohemian*** Princes of the maſculine race.

1304 19 ***Rodolphus***, ſon to the Emperour ***Albertus***, is by the potency of his Father, and the election of the ***States***, ſeated on the Throne; being otherwiſe a Stranger to the blood-royal of ***Bohemia***.

1305 20 ***Henry***, Duke of ***Carinthia***, the ſon of ***Meinard***, Earl of ***Tirol***, and husband to ***Anne*** the ſecond, daughter of ***Wenceslaus*** the ſecond, is choſen by the ***Bohemians***: but being weary of his Government, they elect ***John*** Earl of ***Luxenbourg***. Finally, ***Henry*** was murdered by one of his ***Nephewes***.

1311 21 ***John***, Earl of ***Luxenbourg***, ſon to ***Henry*** the ſeventh Emperour, and husband to ***Elizabeth***, youngeſt daughter to ***Wenceslaus*** the ſecond, is elected; the ***Lady Anne*** yet living.

1346 22 ***Charles***, ſon to ***John***, and Emperour of that name the fourth, the Author of the Golden ***Bull***.

1362 23 ***Wenceslaus*** the IV. Emperour alſo, in whoſe time the troubles of the ***Huſſites***, and the valour of ***Ziſca*** was famous.

1418 24 ***Sigiſmund***, brother to ***Wenceslaus***, maketh himſelf King by force; and at his death commendeth ***Albertus*** Duke of ***Auſtria***, the husband of his daughter ***Elizabeth***, unto the *States* of the kingdome.

1437 25 ***Albertus***, Duke of ***Auſtria***, elected upon the commendation of ***Sigiſmund***, by the ***Bohemian*** Lords.

1440 26 ***Ladislaus***, ſon to ***Albert***, who being the brother of two ſiſters, commended yet one ***George Pogibrachius*** unto the ***States***, as fitteſt to ſucceed him.

1458 27 ***George Pogibrachius***, neither by affinity or canſanguinity of the blood, ſucceeded. And he, though he had three ſons, yet for the benefit of his Country, adviſed the Nobles, after his death, to elect their King from ***Poland***.

1471 28 ***Ladislaus*** II. ſon to ***Caſimire*** King of ***Poland***, and to ***Elizabeth***, the younger daughter of ***Albert*** Duke of ***Auſtria***, the iſſue of ***Anne*** the elder ſiſter ſtill living, elected King of ***Bohemia***.

1516 29 ***Ludovicus***, ſon to ***Ladislaus***, elected and crowned by the means of his Father, then living, King of ***Hungary*** alſo.

1526 30 ***Ferdinand***, Archduke of ***Auſtria***, brother to ***Charles*** the fifth, and husband to ***Anne***, ſiſter to ***Ludovicus***, by his *letters reverſal*, acknowledged that he was choſen King of ***Bohemia***, not of any right, but of meer free-will, according to the liberties of that kingdom.

1565 31 ***Maximilian*** eldeſt ſon of ***Ferdinand***, was in his Fathers life time, and at his ſute, elected King, ***Anno*** 1540. into which he actually ſucceeded on his Fathers death.

1575 32 ***Rodolphus***, Emperour of ***Germany***, and the eldeſt ſon to ***Maximilian***, elected King.

1608 33 ***Matthias***, brother of ***Rodolphus***, was at the joint ſuit of them both, nominated and appointed King of ***Bohemia***, by the general conſent of the ***States***, during his Brothers life time, ***Anno viz***, 1608. which nomination they both proteſt in their *letters reverſal*, ſhould not be to the prejudice of the liberties and ancient cuſtomes of that kingdom.

1618 34 ***Ferdinand*** II. Archduke of ***Auſtria***, and of the houſe of ***Grats***, was by ***Matthias*** adopted for his ſon, and declared ſucceſſor to the Crown of ***Bohemia***, but never formally and legally elected: for which cauſe amongſt others, he was by the ***States*** rejected, in like caſe as ***Uladislaus*** the third, had formerly been.

Moravia. 1619 35 ***Frederick***, Elector ***Palatinate***, the ſtrongeſt *German* Prince of the *Calviniſts*, and moſt potent by his great alliances: was elected King of ***Bohemia***, and crowned at *Prague*, together with his wife, on the fifth day of *November*. This Prince derived his deſcent from the Lady *Sophia*, ſiſter to ***Ladislaus*** the ſecond, King of *Poland* and ***Bohemia***; and married ***Elizabeth***, daughter to *James* King of great *Britain*, and ***Anne*** of *Denmark*; which ***Anne*** deſcended from the Lady ***Anne***, daughter of *Albertus* of *Auſtria*, and elder ſiſter to ***Elizabeth***, mother to ***Ladislaus*** the ſecond above named, from whom the claim of *Auſtria* is derived,

1621 35 ***Ferdinand*** III. ſon of ***Ferdinand*** the ſecond, elected King of ***Bohemia***, during the life both of his Father, and of ***Frederick*** the Prince ***Elector*** alſo; after whoſe death he ſucceeded in this Kingdom both in right and fact: King of ***Hungary*** alſo, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Emperour of *Germany*, now living, *Anno* 1648. more moderate in his Counſels than his Father ***Ferdinand***, and more inclinable to peace (though honoured with a more ſignal victory againſt the *Swedes*, in the battel of *Norlingen*, than his Father was in all his life:) which the Concluſion made at *Munſter*, did declare.

Of the *Revenues* Armes, and other things which concern this Kingdom; we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we have took a view of the reſt of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. *MORAVIA* is bounded on the Eaſt, with ***Hungary***; on the Weſt, with ***Bohemia***; on the North, with *Sileſia*; and on the South, with the *lower Auſtria*, and the River *Tein*: fenced on the Weſt, by the Woods and Mountains of ***Bohemia***, parts of the ***Hercynian*** Foreſt; on the North, by ſome ſpurs or branches of it, called *Aſciburgius* by ***Ptolemy***; on the two other ſides open like an halfe Moon, or ſemi-circle. The moſt fruitful place of corn in all *Germany*, and hath no ſmall ſtore of ***Frankincenſe***; which, contrary to the nature of it, groweth not on a tree, but out of the earth: and that too (which addes much to the miracle, if ***Dubravius*** do report it rightly) in the ſhape and figure of thoſe parts, which men and women do moſt endeavour to conceal,

The former Inhabitants of this Province were the *Marcomanni*, and part of the *Quadi*, againſt whom, when *M. Antonius* the Emperour made war, he had unawares run himſelf into ſuch a ſtraight, that his Army was environed with Mountains one way, and enemies the other. To this (as calamities ſeldome go alone) was added the extraordinary heat and drought then being. To the Emperor thus put to his plunges, came the *Captain* of his ***Guard***, telling him, that he had in his army a *legion* of *Chriſtians*, (*Melitens* he calleth them) which by prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperour ſendeth for them, deſiring them to make *ſupplication* for the Army; which they did, and God Almighty that never turneth a deaf ear to the prayers of his ſervants, when they are either for his glory, the Churches, or their own good; ſcattered and vanquiſhed the *Quadi*, with *Thunderſhot* and *artilery* from heaven; and refreſhed the faint and dying ***Romans*** with many a gentle and pleaſant ſhowre. This miracle purchaſed to that *legion* the ſurname of κεραυνοβόλος, *i. e.* the *thunderer*; and induced the Emperour to honour men of that holy profeſſion, and to make an end of the fourth perſecution, A. Ch. 174. Thus *Ziphilinus* hath it in his *Dion*; which coming from the pen of an Heathen, as his Authour was, is of more credit in a matter of ſuch concernment unto *Chriſtianity*, than if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other *Eccleſiaſtical* Writer,

Places of moſt note herein, are 1. *Olmunts*, on the River *Marck* (or *Mora*) the chief town of the Country, and a ſmall Univerſity; near which, out of the hill *Odenberg* bordering on *Sileſia*, ſpringeth the great river of *Odera*, whoſe courſe we have before preſcribed. 2. *Brian*, on the river *Schwats*, the ſeat of the ancient Marqueſſes. 3. *Radiſch*, and 4. *Cremſer*, both upon the *Marck* or *Mora*. 5. *Swaim*, on the *Teia*; 6. *Niclasberg* (*Mons Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the *Lower Auſtria*. 7. *Iglaw*, 8. *Newburg*, 9. *Wetsgorchem*, 10. *Boſerlitz*, of which little memorable. 11. *Gradiſco*, near to which (and to this place onely) the *Frankincenſe* is found to grow in the ſhape and form before mentioned.

The old Inhabitants thereof (as before is ſaid) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*; after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who from their habitation on the river *Mora*, called themſelves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia* (the ***Dutch*** call it *Merberen.*) Extended at that time over all the ***Lower Auſtria***, to the Banks of the ***Danow*** on the South, and as far as to the River *Tibiſcus* (overſpreading a great part of the ***Upper Hungary***) towards the Eaſt. Governed at the firſt by their own Kings, the firſt, whoſe name occurs, being ***Raslai***, in the time of the Emperour ***Lewis*** the *Godly*; by whom taken Priſoner, and his Realm made ***Tributary*** to the Empire. After him ſucceeded ***Hurmodurus***, and then ***Suantopulcus***, in whoſe time the ***Moravians*** and other Nations of the *Sclaves*, received the Goſpel, by the preaching of *Cyril* and ***Methodius*** two *Grecian* Doctors: officiating all divine ſervices in the ***Sclavonian***, or vulgar Language. For which when they made ſute to the Pope then being, to whoſe authority (as a part of the Weſtern Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delaid the buſineſſe; a voice was heard, as if it had come from heaven, ſaying theſe words, ***Omnis ſpiritus laudet dominum, & omnia Lingua confiteatur ei.*** Upon which miracle their ſute was granted at the laſt, and a Letter ***Decretal*** ſent unto that effect from *Pope* ***John*** the eighth, to ***Suentopulcus*** (or ***Sfentopulcher*** as ſome call him) above mentioned. A priviledge by them enjoyed full 200 years, and then reverſed by ***Gregory*** the ſeventh, commonly called Pope ***Hildebrand***, in his letters to ***Uratislaus*** the firſt King of ***Bohemia***, Anno 1086.

But to return unto the ſtory, ***Suantobegius*** ſon to ***Suantopulcus***, ſucceeded next, depoſed, or rather beaten out of his Country, by the Emperor ***Arnulph***, for denying the accuſtomed *tribute*. A Prince of great

Sileſia, and *Luſatia.*

ſpirit, and of as great command; having at one time under him, not *Moravia* only, according to the largeſt limits, but *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* alſo. *Arnulph* not able otherwiſe to effect his purpoſe, called in the *Hungarians* (though at that time *Pagans*) by whoſe help the *Moravian* was ſubdued, and his kingdom ſhattered into pieces: ſeiſed on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations; and finally reduced to the preſent limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquiſate, (but by whom we find not) one of the Marqueſſes hereof being *Iodocus Barbatus*, elected Emperor, *Anno* 1410. After whoſe death, *Sigiſmund* his next heir, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his ſon-in-law *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, *Anno* 1417. who in the end ſucceeded him in all his Eſtates, ſince which time it hath alwayes gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it, were *Azure*, an Eagle chequered *Or* and *Gules*, membred and langued of the ſame.

3. *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESI*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Poland*; on the Weſt, with *Luſatia*; on the North, with *Brandenbourg*; and on the South, with *Moravia*. Wholly encompaſſed with Mountains, except towards the North; which lets in a ſharp air upon them: the midland part being full of Woods, but withal of Mineralls.

Chief Cities are *Jagendorf*, or *Jegerndorf*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius* of the Family of *Brandenbourg*, commonly called the Marqueſſe of *Jagendorfe*. The Lands and Eſtates in his poſſeſſion, firſt given by *Lodislaus* King of *Bohemia*, to *George* ſurnamed *Pius*, one of the ſons of *Frederick* of *Brandenbourg*, the firſt Marqueſs of *Auſpach* of this houſe, for the many good ſervices he had done him. But his poſterity being extinct, they fell to the ſaid *John Georgius*, brother to *Sigiſmund* the Elector: proſcribed by *Ferdinand* the ſecond, for adhering to the party of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine: A Prince of great note and activeneſs, in the beginning of the late *German* and *Bohemian* wars. 2. *Munſterberg*, which gives title of Duke to the poſterity of *George Pogebraccio*, once King of *Bohemia*, advanced by him unto this honour, and a fair eſtate. 3. *Glatz* or *Gletz*, the laſt town of *Bohemia*, which held out for *Frederick* the Elector, againſt that Emperour. 4. *Glogaw*, a ſtrong town on the River *Odera*. 5. *Nieſſe*, on a River ſo named, an Epiſcopal See. 6. *Breslaw*, in *Latine Vratislavia*, ſo called from *Vratislaus*, the founder of it; once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whoſe procurement it was made an Epiſcopal See, *Anno* 970 or thereabouts. It is ſituate on the River *Odera*, all the water wherein could not ſave it from being burnt down to the ground, *Anno* 1341; but it was preſently re-edified with fair Free-ſtone, and is now one of the prettieſt Cities (for the bigneſſe of it) in all *Germany*: fair, populous, and well contrived, with open and even ſtreets; the chief of the Country. 7. *Oppolen*, on the *Odera* alſo, well fortified both by Art and Nature, barricadoed by the River on the Weſt, and on the Eaſt with good out-works, ſtrong walls, and a fair Caſtle. 8. *Straten*. 9. *Reichenbach*, both made Towns of war, ſince the beginning of the *Bohemian* trouble.

There are alſo within this Province the two *Seigneuries* of *Prignitz*, and *Croſſen*, ſo called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the *Elector* of *Brandenbourg*; the two Dukedoms of *Oſwitz*, and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*; as alſo the Dukedom of *Lignitz*, and *Sueinits*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns; of which two laſt, *Sueinits* is in the immediate poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*; and *Lignitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an *Homager* and *Tributary* of that King.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Marſigni*, *Burii*, *Gothini*, and ſome part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eaſtern parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, laid unto the Dukedom or kingdom of *Poland*; continuing part thereof till the time of *Vladislaus* the ſecond: who being driven out of his kingdom, by his brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, eſtated in this Country, to be held under the Soveraignty of the kings of *Poland*. Divided betwixt his three ſons, and afterwards ſubdivided amongſt their poſterities, according to the ill cuſtome of *Germany*, it became broke at laſt into fourteen Dukedoms, of 1. *Breslaw*, 2. *Oppolen*, 3. *Ratibor*, 4. *Ceſſin*, 5. *Bethom*, 6. *Glogaw*, 7. *Segan*, 8. *Olents*, 9. *Steinaw*, 10. *Falkenbourg*, 11. *Sueinits*, 12. *Lignitz*, 13. *Oſwits*, and 14. *Zator*. Of all which, onely the two laſt do remain to *Poland*; the five firſt being made ſubject to the Kings of *Bohemia*, by *Wenceslaus* the ſecond; the five next, by king *John* of *Luxembourg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the poſſeſſion of a *Proprietary* Duke (as before was ſaid) and *Sweinits* given to *Charles* the fourth Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, by the Will and Teſtament of *Boleslaus* the laſt Duke: all *Schleſi* by this means, (except the Dukedoms of *Oſwitz* and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of *Bohemia*: of which it is rather an incorporate, than a ſubject Province.

4. *LVSATIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Lauſnitz*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Sileſia*; on the Weſt, with *Miſnia*; on the North, with *Brandenbourg*; and on the South, with *Bohemia*. The Country rough and full of Woods, yet plentiful enough of corn, and of ſuch fruits, as naturally ariſe out of the earth: ſo populous and thick with people, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot, as good as any in *Germany*. Moſt commonly it is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*; the firſt confining on *Bohemia*, the laſt on *Brandenbourg*.

Places of moſt note in the higher *Lauſnitz*, are 1. *Bautſen*, (*Badiſſimum* the *Latines* call it) the firſt town attempted and taken in by the Duke of *Saxony*, when he took upon him the execution of the Emperors *Bann*, againſt *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, then newly choſen King of *Bohemia*: The poor Prince in the mean time in an ill condition, the *Saxon* being the head of the *Lutheran*; and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Popiſh* party, arming both againſt him. So jealous are both ſides of the active and reſtleſſe *Calvinian* ſpirit; as to leave no means unaſſayed for the ſuppreſſing of it. Seated it is upon the

Spre, and for the moſt part is the ſeat of the *Governor*, for the King of **Bohemia.** 2. *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Niße*, which gave the title of Duke to *John*, brother of *Sigiſmund* Emperor and King of *Bohemia*; and Father of *Elizabeth* the laſt Dutches of *Luxembourg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and ſtrongly fortified: founded about the year 1231. and not long after ſo conſumed by a mercileſſe fire, *An.* 1301. *ut ne unica domus remanſerit*, as my Author hath it, that there was not one houſe left of the old foundation. But it was preſently re-built in a more beautiful form, and more ſtrong materialls, than before it was; both publick, and private buildings, very neat and elegant. 3. *Zittaw*, on the ſame River, bordering on *Bohemia*. 4. *Lauben*, 5. *Lubben*, 6. *Camitz*, of which little memorable: but that together with the former they make up thoſe ſix towns which are *confederate* together in a ſtricter league, for their mutuall defence and preſervation; but under the protection, and with the approbation, of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *LOWER Luſatia* there is 7. *Sprenberg*, ſo named from its ſituation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Country; and in antient times was called *Suevus*; ſuppoſed by ſome (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation, inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elb*. 6. *Trabelli*, upon the *Niſſe*, *Cotthouſe* upon the *Spre*, or *Suevus*; which together with ſome parts of the *Lower Luſatia* belongs unto the Marqueſſes of *Brandenbourg*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof are by ſome ſuppoſed (and but ſuppoſed) to be the *Senones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of theſe parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, made ſubject to the *Winithi*, or *Venedi*, the greateſt and moſt ſpreading Nation of all theſe People. When, and by whom firſt made a *Marquiſate*, I am not able to ſay for certain, but ſure I am, it hath been very much given to the change of Maſters. It had firſt a Marqueſſe of its own. *Conrade* the Marqueſſe hereof, who died in the year 1156. being by the Emperor *Henry* the fifth made Marqueſſe of *Miſnia*, added it unto that Eſtate: remaining for ſome time united to it. After, being ſeized on by the *Poles*, it was ſold to *Frederick* the ſecond, Marqueſſe and *Elector* of *Brandenbourg*: who keeping *Cotthouſe* and ſome other Towns bordering next upom him, in his own poſſeſſion, ſurrendred the reſt on compoſition, to *George* King of *Bohemia*; claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the fourth to *Uratiſlaus* the firſt *Bohemian* King, *Anno* 87. A grant on which no poſſeſſion followed, unleſſe it were the *Homage* and acknowledgement of the Princes of it; holding it afterwards of that *Crown*, as the Lord in Chief.

Thus have we brought theſe four Provinces into the power and poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*: remaining ſtill diſtinct in their Laws, and Governments (as ſeveral limbs of the great body of the *Sclaves*, made up into one Eſtate) though joyned together in the perſon of one ſupreme Governor: who is ſeverally admitted and acknowledged by each Province diſtinctly, for it ſelf; and not by any one of them, in the name of the reſt. Out of all which ſo laid together, there may be raiſed the ſum of three millions of Crowns yearly, for the Kings *Revenues*; towards the defrayment of all charges.

The Arms of this kingdom are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked tail, *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which *Arms* were firſt given by *Frederick Barbaroſſa* to *Uladiſlaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good ſervice he had done him at the ſiege of *Millain*. And though *Vladiſlaus* was depoſed by the States of that kingdom, becauſe never formally and legally *elected* by them; yet his ſucceſſors keep thoſe Arms to this very day.

14. *BRANDENBOURG.*

The *Marquiſate* of BRANDENBOURG, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the kingdom of *Poland*; on the Weſt, with the Dukedom of *Saxony*; on the North with *Pomerania*, and parts of *Mecklenbourg*: and on the South, with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, and *Sileſia*. So called from *Brandenbourg* the chief Town of it, and becauſe once the *Marches* of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *middle Marches*; according as they were extended further towards *Poland*, by little and little as the Emperors were able to get ground of thoſe potent people.

The Country containeth in length from Eaſt to Weſt, 60 *Dutch* or 240 *Italian* miles, and is of correſpondent breadth; the whole compaſſe making up 540 miles of the laſt accompt. Within which tract are comprehended 55 Cities or walled Towns, 80 Towns of trade, (*Mark-ſtechen*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them:) 38 Caſtles or Manſion-houſes of Noblemen, 17 Monaſteries, and 10 Parks well ſtored with beaſts of game: the Country otherwiſe (conſidering the extent thereof) but thinly inhabited; nor well provided of neceſſaries, excepting corn, of which theſe North-Eaſt Countries afford very great plenty.

1. *ALTEMARK* or the *OLDMARK*, ſo called becauſe the antient *Marches* of the Empire, againſt the *Sclaves*, lyeth betwixt *Lawenbourg* and the *Elb*; with which it is bounded on the Eaſt. Chief Towns thereof, 1. *Tangermond*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tonagra* or *Augra*, honoured ſometimes with the *Reſidence* of **Charles** the fourth. 2. *Stendal*, the chief of theſe *Old Marches*. 3. *Soltwedel*, divided into two Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gurdeleben*, fortified with the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſhimpe*. 5. *Oſterberg*. 6. *Senhurſen*, ſaid by ſome, but falſely, to be ſo called from the *Senones*, whom they would make the old Inhabitants of this Country (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation,) 7. *Werb*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE-MARCHES* or *UPPERMARCH*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Odera*, the Towns of moſt note are 1. *Butzau*, a *Commendatory* of the *Templers* in former times. 2. *Spandaw* upon the *Spre*, a well fortified piece. 3. *Oderburg*, called ſo from that River, on which it

is

Brandenbourg.

is ſituate: remarkable a ſtrong Caſtle built by *Marqueſs Albert* the ſecond, at which all paſſengers by water are to pay their Toll. 4 *Brandenbourg*, on the River *Havel*, a Biſhops See, the Seat of the Lords Marchers in former times, taking name from hence. By ſome ſaid to be built by *Brennus*, Captain of the *Gauls*, more truly by one *Brando* a Prince of the *Franconians*, *An. Ch.* 140. 5. *Frankfort* (for diſtinction ſake named) *ad Oderam*, on which River ſituate; the ſoil about it being ſo plentifully ſtored with Corn and Wines, that it is not eaſie to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be moſt enamoured of it. It was made an *Univerſity* by Marqueſs *Joachim*, *Anno* 1506, and is alſo a flouriſhing and famous *Empory*, though not comparable to that of the other *Frankfort*, ſeated on the *Mem.* 5. *Berlin*, the ordinary Reſidence of the Marqueſs, ſituate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevus*) which riſing in *Luſatia* falleth into the *Albis*. 7 *Havelbourg*, on the River *Havel*, a Biſhops See, who acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Magdebourg* for his Metropolitan.

3. In the *NEWMARCK*, extending from *Odera*, to the borders of *Poland*; and called ſo, becauſe laſt conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire; there is *Cuſtrine*, a very ſtrong and defenſible Town, ſeated on the two Rivers, *Warts* and *Odera*; fortified with great charge by *John* ſon of Marqueſs *Joachim*, and by him intended for his Seat. 2 *Sunnerberg*; and 3 *Landsberg*, both upon the *Ware*. 4 *Soldin*, in former times the chief of this *Marck*. 5 *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6 *Falkenberg*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with as ſtrong a Caſtle towards *Pomerania*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Countrey, were the *Varini* and *Naithones*, part of the great Nation of the *Suevians*: and after them, the *Helvoldi*, *Willini*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, who poſſeſſed themſelves of it. But *Brandenbourg* being won from them by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, *Anno* 920. (at what time the Goſpel was firſt preached amongſt them) the Country hereabouts was given by him to *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim* (eldeſt ſon of *Theodorick*, the ſecond Earl of *Oldenberg*) a valiant Gentleman, with the title of *Marqueſs*, or *Lord Marcher*, *Anno* 927. conditioned that he ſhould defend thoſe *Marches* (the *old Marck*, as they now call it) againſt the *Sclaves*. The Marqueſſes at the firſt *Officiary*, at the appointment of the Emperour, and to him accomptable. *Sigard* the 4th. from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the firſt *Elector* of theſe *Marqueſſes*, and *Eudo* the ſecond of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the laſt that held this honour at the Emperours pleaſure; that dignity after his deceaſe being made Hereditary, in the perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, ſurnamed *Urſus*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his border, by the conqueſt and extermination of the *Sclaves*; cauſed their unpeopled Country to be planted with new *Dutch* Colonies, out of *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Flanders*, and thoſe parts of the *Netherlands*. The houſe of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the 4th, it was given by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, to *Lewis* his ſon, by *Otho*, the brother of that *Lewis*, ſold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth; by *Sigiſmund* the ſon of *Charles*, to *Iodocus*, Marqueſs of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the ſaid *Sigiſmund* conferred on *Frederick Burgrave* of *Nurenberg*, in recompence of his faithfull ſervice in the wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. In his poſterity it remaineth, but much increaſed in power and patrimony, by the additions of the Dukedom of *Pruſsia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Marquiſate of *Anſpach*, and *Iagendorfe*; the Earldom of *Marck* in *Weſtphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*; the Lordſhips of *Prignits*, and *Croſſen*, in *Sileſia*; the Towns of *Hoff*, and *Colmebach*, in *Voiteland*; with the County of *Rapin*, and the Town and Territory of *Cothus* in the *Lower Alſatia*. Inſomuch that this is now the moſt powerfull Family in all *Germany*. The Marqueſſes hereof from *Sigifride* to *Albert*, the ſon of *Urſe*, &c. follow in this order.

The MARQUESSES of *BRANDENBOURG*.

A. Ch.

927 1 *Sigifride*, Earl of *Ringelheim*, made the firſt Marqueſs of this border, by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt.

2 *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the firſt.

3 *Bruno*, Earl of *Within*, created Marqueſs hereof by the ſame Emperour.

4 *Hugh*, the ſon of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.

5 *Sigard*, the brother of *Hugh*, made by the ſame Emperour, the firſt Marqueſs Elector.

6 *Theodorick*, the ſon of *Sigard*, outed of his command by *Miſtivoias*, one of the Princes of the *Sclaves*, named *Obotriti*.

7 *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel* (the *Sclaves* being beaten and expulſed) created Marqueſs and Elector, by *Conrade* the ſecond.

8 *Udo* II. ſon of *Udo* the firſt, proſcribed by *Henry* the fourth, for joyning with *Rodolph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the war againſt him.

9 *Primiſlaus*, King of the *Obotriti* (the Anceſtor of the Dukes of *Mecklinbourg*) advanced unto theſe honours by the ſaid *Henry* the fourth, and by him held unto his death. After which made hereditary by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, in the perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the ſon of *Urſus*.

1152 10 *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the firſt *Hereditary* Marqueſs, father of *Bernard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Lion*, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*.

11 *Otho*, ſon of *Albert*.

12 *Otho* II. ſon of *Otho* the firſt.

13 *Albert*

Brandenbourg.

13 *Albert* II. brother of *Otho* the 2d.

14 *John*, ſon of *Albert* the 2d.

15 *John* II. ſon of *John* the firſt.

16 *Conrade*, brother of *John* the 2d.

17 *John* III. ſon of *Conrade*.

18 *Waldemar*, brother of *John* the 3d.

19 *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the firſt, by his brother *Henry*.

20 *John* IV. brother of *Waldemar* the ſecond, the laſt Marqueſs of the houſe of *Anhalt*; the Marquiſate eſcheating to the Empire, for want of heirs.

21 *Lewis of Bavaria*, created Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, by his Father the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the ſaid eſcheat.

22 *Lewis* II. ſurnamed the *Roman*, on the reſignation of his brother, ſucceeds in the Marquiſate, and Electoral dignity.

23 *Otho*, brother to *Lewis* the firſt and ſecond, who ſold the Marquiſate and Electoral dignity to *Charles* the fourth.

24 *Wenceſlaus*, ſon of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia*, and Emperour of the *Romans*.

25 *Sigiſmund*, brother of *Wenceſlaus*, Emperour of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxenbourg*; who ſold this Marquiſate to *Iodocus*, Marqueſs of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the ſame on

1417 26 *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nurenberg*, ſolemnly inveſted herein at the Council of *Conſtance*, *Anno* 1414. for which inveſtiture he paid unto the Emperour the ſumme of 400000 Crowns.

1440 27 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Frederick* the firſt, to whom the Emperour *Frederick* the 3d. gave the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.

1470 28 *Albert*, brother of *Frederick* the 2d, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, relinquiſhed to *Bugeſlaus* the 10th, the poſſeſſion of *Pomeren*; but his ſucceſſors ever ſince have retained the Title, and kept on foot their pretenſions to it. From *Frederick* his ſecond ſon, deſcended *Albert*, the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Frederick* the firſt Marqueſs of *Anſpach*, *George* the firſt Marqueſs of *Jagendorf*, and *Albert* called the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, who ſo haraſſed *Franconia* in the dayes of *Charles* the 5th.

1486 29 *John*, ſon of *Albert*.

1499 30 *Joachim*, ſon of *John*, who founded the Univerſity of *Frankfort*, *An.* 1506 and authorized the *Reformation* of Religion in his time begun.

1535 31 *Joachim* II. ſon of *Joachim* the firſt.

1571 32 *John George*, the ſon of *Joachim* the 2d.

33 *Joachim Frederick*, ſon of *John George*.

34 *John Sigiſmund*, ſon of *Joachim Frederick*, who had to wife the Lady *Anne*, daughter of *Albert Frederick*, the ſecond Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Mary Eleanor* his wife, eldeſt daughter of *William* the firſt, Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, &c.

1620 35 *George William*, ſon of *John Sigiſmund*, and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right, the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Marck*, and *Ravenſpurg*, and the Seigneury of *Ravenſtein*; which he poſſeſſed a while, divided with his Couſin *Volfgangus* Palatine of *Newberg*, ſon of *Magdalen* the younger ſiſter of *Mary Eleanor*. But falling out about their *partage*, the Palatine of *Newberg*, called in the *Spaniard*; and the Father of this Marqueſs in behalf of his ſon, called in the *Confederate States* of the *Netherlands* to aſſert their Titles. After the death of *Bugeſlaus* the laſt Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have ſucceeded alſo in that eſtate, then poſſeſſed by the *Swede*. Of the agreement made between them, and the great accrewment thereby following to the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, we ſhall ſpeak more there.

36 *Frederick William*, ſon of *George William*, now Elector of *Brandenbourg*.

The *Religion* of this Countrey is for the moſt part according to the form and doctrine of *Luther*: firſt introduced and authoriſed by Marqueſs *Joachim* the firſt. In which eſtate it continued till the breach betwixt *George William*, the Father of the preſent *Elector*, and the *Palatine* of *Newberg*. At which time the *Palatine* married a daughter of *Bavaria*, the moſt potent Prince of the *Popiſh* party, reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, the better to aſſure himſelf of the aid of *Spain*: and this *Elector* having married a ſiſter of *Fredirick* the 5th, *Elector Palatine*, the moſt potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himſelf to be of that party and opinion, the better to aſſure himſelf of the aids of *Holland*, *Anno* 1614. But when, on the perſwaſions of his wife, he ſet out an *Edict* for ſuppreſſing the *Lutheran* forms, and authorizing the *Calvinian* only throughout his Dominions, (which was the year 1615.) the people of this *Marquiſate* roſe in Arms againſt him: the difference being thus compoſed, that the *Lutheran* forms only ſhould be uſed in all the Churches of the *Marquiſate* of *Brandenbourg*, for the contentation of the people, and the Marqueſs have the exerciſe of his new *Religion*, for himſelf, his Lady, and thoſe of their opinion, in his private Chappels.

The Territories of this Family are the greateſt, as before is ſaid, of any in *Germany*; but a great part of it is very barren, and his ſubjects in thoſe parts as poor as the Countrey: much of his new acceſſions yielding little but the titles only. So that neither in *Revenue* or *Power*, he is able to keep rank with the

the

Pomerania.

the Duke of *Saxony* : his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmoſt to 200000 l. *per annum*, which is but half of the receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membred and beaked *Or*.

15. *POMERANIA.*

POMERANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pruſſia*, from which parted by the River *Weſel*, or *Viſtula*; on the Weſt, with *Mecklenberg*, divided from it by the River *Bartze*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coaſt hereof for the ſpace of 200 *Engliſh* miles; and on the South with the Marquiſate of *Brandenbourg*. So named from the *Pomortzi*, or *Pomerani*, a nation of the *Sclaves*, to whoſe ſhare it fell; or from the ſituation of it on the Sea-ſhore, as the word in the *Sclavonian* doth ſeem to import.

The Country is for the moſt part plain, abundantly fruitful in Corn, carried hence to *Dantzig*, and tranſported thence to all parts of *Chriſtendom*, in their times of ſcarcity: yeelding alſo good ſtore of paſturage, and great herds of Cattel; with plenty of butter, cheeſe, honey, and ſome reaſonable quantities of flax. Populous, and thoſe people of ſtrong conſtitution, as living under a ſharp and piercing air. The whole divided into the Continent, and the Iſlands; the Continent into the *Upper Pomeren*, burdering upon *Mecklinburg*, extended from the *Bartze*, to the River *Odera*; the *Lower*, reaching from the *Odera*, to the borders of *Pruſſia*.

Chief places in the UPPER, are 1 *Barth*, at the mouth of the River *Bartzo*, taking name from thence; a well-traded Town, and many times the ſeat of the Dukes of this hithermoſt *Pomeren*. 2 *Wolgaſt*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, over againſt the Iſle of *Uſedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomeren*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomeren-Wolgaſt*: the firſt Town taken in by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous war for the relief of *Germany*, *Anno* 1630. 3 *Straelſund*, a Town of great Trading, and much reſort, ſeated upon the ſame Sea alſo, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Rugen*; a Town of great name in the courſe of the *German* war. 4 *Gripſwald*, on the ſame Sea, betwixt *Wolgaſt*, and *Straelſund*, made an Univerſity, *Anno* 1456. 5 *Anclaw*, upon the River *Pone*. 6 *Tribſca*, ſituate on a lake, out of which the ſaid River hath its courſe.

Then in the LOWER *Pomeren*, there is *Camin*, an Epiſcopal See, ſituate on the *Baltick* ſhore, over againſt the Iſle of *Wollin*. 8 *Colberg*, a ſtrong Town on the ſame ſhore alſo, at the fall of the *Perſant* into the Sea. 9 *Coſtin*, the laſt Sea-Town of this tract, lying towards *Pruſsia*. 10 *Stargard*, on the *Ina*, more within the land; as is alſo 11 *Criffenberg* upon the *Roga*, and 12 *Stetin*, on the *Odera*, once a poor fiſher-Town, now the *Metropolis* of this part of the Country; riſing to this greatneſs (after the embracing of *Chriſtianity*) by the fall of *Wineta*, formerly the chief Mart-Town of all theſe parts. The ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of the *Lower Pomerania*, the Dukes of *Pomeren Steten*, as for diſtinction ſake they are uſed to call them.

The *Iſlands* hereunto pertaining, are thoſe of *Rugen*, *Wollin*, *Uſedom*, touched upon before; but now more punctually to be handled. That of moſt note is *RUGEN*, over againſt *Straelſund*, from which divided onely by a narrow ſtrait, in length ſeven *Dutch* miles, and as much in breadth, ſo that the compaſs of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 *German*, or an hundred *Italian* miles; and yet once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309, by the force of an outragious tempeſt, a great part of it lying towards the South-Eaſt, as far as to the Iſle of *Buden* (then conjunct hereto) was torn away, and ſunk ſo deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greateſt Ships that be, ſail over it. The Iſland plentiful of Corn, the *Granary* of *Straelſund*, as they call it commonly; and reaſonably well ſtored with Cattel; full of Bayes, Creeks, and winding ſhores, with many and vaſt Promontories thruſting into the Sea, which gives them great increaſe of fiſhing; Anciently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third, to *Bugiſlaus*, and *Barnimus*, Dukes of *Pomeren*; continuing ever ſince part of that eſtate. The chief Town of it is called *Berga*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, but not containing above 400 Families; others of leſs note and eſtimation, being 2 *Sugart*, 3 *Vick*, 4 *Bingſt*, &c. ſmall Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the beſt they have. And yet ſo populous is the Iſland, that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men, if there be occaſion.

The ſecond of the three, in repute and bigneſs, is that of *Wollin*, ſituate over againſt *Camin*: ſo called from *Wollin*, the chief Town (*Julinum* it is called in *Latine*) made an Epiſcopal See by *Wartiſlaus*, the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of this nation, and on the ſackage of this City removed to *Camin*; A Town which once ſo flouriſhed in Traffick, that it gave place to none but *Conſtantinople*; The *Ruſsians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandales*, &c. having here their particular ſtreets. But being miſerably ſacked by *Waldemar*, King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1170. moſt of the trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, ſince which time it never could come near its former glories. The laſt in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, ſeated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgaſt*; ſo called from *Uſedom*, the chief Town in it, of which little obſervable. All three the habitation of the antient *Rugii*, who under *Odoacer*, King of the *Heruli*, ſubverted the Weſtern Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themſelves Maſters of it, till ſubdued by the *Gothes*. Thoſe which remained in their Iſlands became after ſubject to the *Sclaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the firſt whoſe name occurs in ſtory, being *Crito*, the ſon of *Ratze*, a puiſſant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Holſt*, *Ditmarſh*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built, about the year 1100. afterwards beautified and inlarged by *Adolph* the ſecond, Earl of *Holſt*, by ſome eſteemed the Founder of it. But his male iſſue failing in the year 1326. it fell by compact made between

them

Pomerania. them, to the Dukes of *Pomeren*, to whom theſe Iſlands ever ſince have continued ſubject.

And as for *Pomeren* it ſelf, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Rugii* before mentioned, the *Reudigni*, *Longi-nani*, and *Longi-Diduni*, with parts of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians*: into whoſe void rooms, the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, (the moſt potent Nation of the *Sclaves*) did in fine ſucceed; extending their Dominions on the banks of the *Viſtula*, which to difference it from *Pomeren*, was called *Pomerella*. But that part of it being given by *Meſtovinus* the laſt Prince thereof, dying without iſſue, *Anno* 1295. to *Primiſlaus* Duke of *Poland*: the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania*, became confined within the bounds before laid down. The firſt Prince of it whom we meet with on good record, was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* Family, *an.* 933. whoſe Grandſon *Suantiborus*, commanded over all this tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his ſons, *Bugiſlaus* who had *Pomerella*, retained the language, and old cuſtomes of the *Sclavonians*, *Wartiſlaus*, who poſſeſſed the reſidue, conformed himſelf to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*; the Country by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*: added unto the Empire and accompt thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, by whom *Bugiſlaus* and *Caſimir*, ſons of *Wartiſlaus*, were made Princes of the *Empire*, and Dukes of *Pomeren*. The Eſtate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugiſlaus* and *Otho*, ſons of *Barnimus* the firſt; and the houſe of *Otho* failing in the perſon of *Otho* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperour *Frederick* the third, to *Frederick* the ſecond, Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*: the cauſe of much contention amongſt theſe Marqueſſes, and the other houſe of the Dukes of *Pomeren*, but thus agreed upon at laſt; that both Princes ſhould continue the *Arms* and Title, the poſſeſſion of it to be yielded to the Duke of *Pomeren*, on the failing of whoſe iſſue male, it ſhould deſcend upon the heirs of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*. The ſucceſſion of theſe Princes followeth in this order.

The DUKES of *POMERANIA*.

	1	*Wartiſlaus*, the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of the *Pomeranians*, baptized by *Otho* Biſhop of *Bamberg*, *Anno* 1124.
1128	2	*Bugiſlaus*, ſon of *Wartiſlaus*, created by *Frederick Barbaroſa* the firſt Duke of *Pomeren*.
1188	3	*Bugiſlaus* II. ſon of *Bugiſlaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomeren* with *Saxon* Colonies.
1222	4	*Barnimus*, ſon of *Bugiſlaus* the ſecond, after whoſe death *Pomeren* was divided into two Principalities.

DUKES of *Stetin*.

1277	1	*Otho*, Duke of *Pomeren-Steten*.
1345	2	*Caſimir*, ſon of *Otho*.
1368	3	*Caſimir* II. ſon of *Caſimir*.
1374	4	*Suantiborus*, brother of *Caſimir* the 2d.
1413	5	*Caſimir* III. ſon of *Suantiborus*.
1433	6	*Joachim*, ſon of *Caſimir* the 3d.
1451	7	*Otho* III. ſon of *Joachim*, died without iſſue, *Anno* 1464.

DUKES of *Wolgaſt*.

1277	5	*Bugiſlaus* II. ſon of *Barnimus*.
1319	6	*VVartiſlaus*, ſon to *Bugiſlaus*.
1326	7	*Barnimus* II.
1365	8	*VVartiſlaus* II.
1394	9	*Barnimus* III.
1405	10	*VVartiſlaus* III.
1456	11	*Ericus*, ſon of *VVartiſlaus*.
	12	*Bugiſlaus* III. commonly called the tenth, the younger Princes of both Houſes making up the tale, ſucceeded *Otho* the third in that part of *Pomeren*, uniting ſo the whole into one eſtate.
1523	13	*George*, ſon of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth.
1531	14	*Philip*, ſon of *George*, in whoſe time the *Reformation* made by *Luther*, was admitted into *Pomerania*.
1583	15	*Bugiſlaus* IV. but the 13th. in the *Dutch* accompt, ſon of *Philip*; his younger brother *Erneſtus Ludovicus* having that of *Stetin* for his ſhare.
	16	*Bugiſlaus* V. and 14th. ſon of *Bugiſlaus* the fourth, born in the year 1580. ſucceeded in *Pomeren* of *VVolgaſt*; as *Philip Julius* ſon of *Erneſtus Ludovicus* did in that of *Stetin*.

After whoſe death *Bogiſlaus* became Lord of all *Pomerania*; in a fair way to have loſt all to the prevailing *Imperialiſts*, had not the timely coming in of the King of *Sweden* ſtopped their violent Progreſs. But *Bogiſlaus* dying without iſſue in the time of the war, and in him the male iſſue of the Houſe of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth being quite extinguiſhed, *George VVilliam* Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg* put in his claim for the Eſtate; according to the compact and agreement ſpoken of before. Betwixt whom and the *Swedes*, (who under colour of aiding the laſt Duke, had poſſeſſed themſelves of all the ſtrong places in the Country) it was accorded and concluded at the Treaty of *Munſter*, that all the *Higher Pomerania*, with the Iſles of *Rugen*, and *VVollin*, and the town of *Stetin*, ſhould from thenceforth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*; the *Lower Pomeren* to be enjoyed by the Houſe of *Brandenbourg*, ſo long as the male iſſue laſteth; on default whereof, that alſo to be added unto that Crown; the Arms, and Titles, to be uſed by both promiſcuouſly. And in regard the Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg* was to part with the *Upper Pomeren*, for the contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm peace could be made in *Germany*:) it was alſo there agreed upon, that the *temporal* eſtates of the Biſhopricks of *Halberſtad*, *Minden*, and *Camine*, together with that of *Magdeburg*, (after the deceaſe of the preſent Biſhop) ſhould be for ever added to the poſſeſſions of that houſe; the Marqueſſes and Electors of it to be thenceforth entituled Dukes of *Magdeburg*, Princes of *Halberſtad*, and *Minden*. But what will be

the iſſue of theſe concluſions, future times muſt ſhew.
The Arms of *Pomeren*, are A *Gryphon*.

16. MECKLENBOURG.

The *Dukedom* of MECKLENBOURG, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pomerania*; on the Weſt, with *Holſtein*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Danemark*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the South, with *Brandenbourg*, and *Saxen-lawenbourg*. So called from *Mecklenburg*, or *Megalopolis*, (both names in ſeveral languages of the *Dutch*, and *Greeks*) ſignifying a great City, (a great town of that name here being, in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals*, (the old Inhabitants of theſe parts) whoſe chief City it was; but on their leaving of this Countrey, decayed to nothing. The Countrey of the ſame nature as *Pomerania*, and as rich in corn.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Wiſmar*, a noted Port, on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick* Sea; raiſed out of the ruines of old *Mecklenburg* before mentioned, about the year 1240. the Haven hereof capable of the greateſt veſſels, to which it gives a ſafe and aſſured *Station*, whence the name of *Wiſmar*; the word ſignifying in the *Sclavonian* language *idem ac certum mare* (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or ſafe Sea. Now one of the *Hanſe-towns*, and being it lies conveniently for the uſe of the *Swedes*, allotted to that Crown by the treaty of *Munſter*; the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompenſe thereof, to have the temporalities of the Biſhopricks of *Swerin*, and *Ratzenburg*. 2 *Swerin*, ſeated upon the South ſide of the Lake ſo named; an Epiſcopal See, and honoured with giving the title of a Barony to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. 3 *Malcaw*, firſt walled by *Nilcot*, Prince of the *Vandals*, *Anno* 1270. 4 *Ratzenburg*, an Epiſcopal See, ſpoken of before. 5 *Roſtoch*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanſe-towns*, to *Lubeck* and *Dantſick*. Large, rich, and much frequented by all ſorts of Merchants; in compaſs almoſt ſix *Engliſh* miles, ſituate on the River *Warn*, neer the fall thereof into the *Baltick*. Honoured with an Univerſity, here founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, *Anno* 1419. The firſt Profeſſors in it being brought from *Erdford* in *Saxony*. 6 *Stargard*, which once gave the Title of Duke, to the younger Princes of this houſe. 7 *Sarentine*, memorable for a Nunnery, there founded by Duke *Magnus* the ſecond. 8 *Lau*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry* the ſecond, as an out-work to *Roſtock*, which he had lately bought of *Chriſtopher*, then King of *Denmark*. 9 *Sternberg*, of which little memorable. 10 *Fridland*, on the edge of *Pomeren*, not far from *Stargard*, which gave the title of Duke to *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, after that called Duke of *Fridland*, that eminent and proſperous Commander of the *Imperial* Forces, in the late war of *Germany*: but miſerably murdered after all his ſervices, by command of the Emperour. 11 *Fichtel*, both pleaſantly and ſtrongly ſeated, on the edge of a Lake. 12 *Dammin*, a ſtrong Town on the *Marches* of *Brandenbourg*.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the reſt of the *Heruli*, and *Burgundians*. But the *Burgundians* being reckoned as a part of the *Vandals*, were not much notice took of, till their irruptions on the borders of the *Roman Empire*, made them more conſiderable: the Princes of theſe Nations uſing no other title than Kings of the *Heruli*, and *Vandals*. Of theſe the firſt is ſaid to be one *Anthyrius*, ſon of an *Amazonian* Lady, who learned his firſt rudiments of warfare under *Alexander* the *Great*. Out of his loins deſcended a long race of Kings, amongſt whom *Rhadaguiſe*, who together with *Alarick* the *Goth*, invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick* the ſeventeenth of theſe Kings, weary of ſo cold a dwelling, paſſed towards the South; and having haraſſed *Gaul* and *Spain*, ſhipped himſelf over the Straights of *Gibralter*, and erected the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*: whoſe ſucceſſors we ſhall meet with there. By *Vitalaus*, the youngeſt ſon of *Genſericus*, the ſon of *Gunderick*, the line of theſe Princes is continued; who after mingling with the *Obotriti*, and other of the *Sclaves*, ſucceeding into the void places of the *Vandals*, left off the title of *Kings of the Vandals*, and called themſelves Kings of the *Heruli*, and *Obitriti*: continuing it to *Pribiſlaus*, or *Primiſlaus* the ſecond, who wrote himſelf *Pribiſlaus Dei gratia*, *Herulorum*, *Wagriorum*, *Circipanorum*, *Palumborum*, *Obotritorum*, *Kiſſinorum*, *Vandalorumq́*, *Rex*. Making herein a general muſter of thoſe tribes of the *Sclaves* and *Heruli*, which remained under his command. But he being vanquiſhed by *Henry* ſirnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the title of King was laid aſide; his ſucceſſors contenting themſelves with that of Princes. Divided betwixt *Henry* and *Nilcot*, the Nephews of *Pribiſlaus*, by his ſon *Henry*, into two Eſtates: *Henry* aſſuming to himſelf the title of Prince of the *Obotriti*; and *Nilcot*, that of Prince of the *Vandals*. But the poſterity of *Nilcot* failing in *William*, the laſt of that line, *Anno* 1430. his title, with the lands thereunto belonging, fell to *Henry* the *fat*, the fourth Duke of *Mecklenburg*; to which honour, *Albert* and *John*, the ſons of *Henry* the fourth, deſcended from the elder houſe, had been advanced by the Emperour *Charls* the fourth, at *Prague*, *Anno* 1348. The ſucceſſion of which family from *Pribiſlaus*, take in order thus.

The PRINCES of the HERULI, and DUKES of MECKLENBURG.

1158 1 *Pribiſlaus*, the laſt King, and firſt Prince of the *Heruli*, after their ſubjection to the *Saxons*; reſtored to this title and his former eſtate by the bountifull conquerors, to be held under the right and *homage* of the houſe of *Saxony*.

1179 2 *Henry*, ſon of *Pribiſlaus*, baptized, with all his people, in his fathers life-time, by the perſwaſion of *Henry*, Duke of *Saxony*, and *Bavaria*; by whom reſtored to their Eſtates.

3 *Henry* II. ſon of the former *Henry*, dividing the eſtate with his brother *Nilcot*.

1228 4 *John*, ſirnamed the *Divine*; ſo called, becauſe created *Doctor of Divinity* in the Univerſity of *Paris*, whither he was ſent by his Father to learn good Arts.

1260 5 *Henry* III. ſirnamed of *Hieruſalem*; becauſe of his expedition thither againſt the *Saracens*.

1302 6 *Henry* IV. ſirnamed the *Lion*, for his valour and undaunted conſtancy.

1316 7 *Albert* and *John*, the ſons of *Henry*, going to *Prague* with a Princely train, to attend on the Emperour *Charls* the fourth, were by him created *Princes* of the *Empire*, and Dukes of *Mecklenberg*, *Anno* 1348.

1380 8 *Magnus*, ſon of *Albert*.

1384 9 *John*, ſon of *Magnus*, the founder of the Univerſity of *Roſtock*, *Anno* 1419.

1423 10 *Henry* V. ſirnamed the *Fat*, who on the death of *William* the laſt Prince of the *Vandals*, ſucceeded into his Eſtate.

1447 11 *Magnus* II. ſon of *Henry*, founder of the Cathedral Church of *Roſtock*.

1503 12 *Albert* II. ſon of *Magnus* the ſecond.

1547 13 *John Albert*, ſon of *Albert* the ſecond, endowed the Univerſity of *Roſtock* with the lands of ſome diſſolved *Monaſteries*; and authorized in his Eſtates, the *Reformation* of Religion begun by *Luther*.

1574 14 *John* III. ſon of *John Albert*.

1592 15 *Adolph Frederick*, and *John Albert*, ſons of *John* the third, diſpoſſeſſed hereof by the Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *Anno* 1628. their Eſtates, with the title of Duke of *Mecklenberg*, being conferred on *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, Duke of *Fridland*. Who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, the *Aſſertor* of the liberties of *Germany*, reſtored it to the proper owners. The heir to whoſe Eſtates is *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the only ſon and heir of *John Albert*; the other of theſe two Brothers being without iſſue.

The DUKEDOM and ESTATES of *SAXONY*.

The Dukedom and Eſtates of *SAXONY* (not reckoning thoſe which now paſs under other names, and ſhall hereafter be deſcribed in their ſeveral places) are bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenbourg*; on the Weſt, with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and part of *Lunenbourg*, and *Holſtein*; on the North, with other parts of *Brandenbourg*, and part of *Mecklenbourg*; and on the South, with *Franconia*, and ſome parts of the *Upper Palatinate*.

It is (we ſee) an aggregate body, conſiſting of two General limbs, 1 The Dukedom of *Saxony*, 2 The eſtates of *Saxony*, or *Saxony* properly ſo called; The firſt containing the whole Provinces of 1 *Oberſax*, or the *Upper Saxony*, the proper ſeat of the Duke-Elector; 2 *Miſnia*, 3 *Voiteland*, and 4 *Turingia*; The other, thoſe of 1 *Anhalt*, 2 *Mansfield*, 3 *Meydebourg*, and 4 *Lawenbourg*. And as it is an aggregate body, ſo is it comprehenſive of all thoſe honourary Titles, by which the Princes of *Germany* are diſtinguiſhed from one another; that is to ſay, the Electorſhip of *Saxony*, the Dukedom of *Lawenbourg*, the Biſhoprick of *Meydebourg*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, the Marquiſate of *Miſnia*, the Lantgravedom of *Turingia*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, and the Signeury or Lordſhip of *Voiteland*. Of theſe eight Provinces, the 4. firſt mentioned are wholly ſituate without the limits and precincts of the antient *Saxonie*; and yet now are, and have been called long before, the Dukedom of *Saxonie*, becauſe they make up the whole Patrimony and Eſtate of the Dukes Electors, who ſince the preſcription and deprivation of Duke *Henry*, ſirnamed the *Lion*, *Anno* 1180. in ſome or other of theſe Countries have had their fixed ſeat and habitation. The 4. laſt being parts of the antient *Saxonie*, and heretofore in poſſeſſion of the Dukes hereof, do ſtill paſs under the accompt and name of *Saxonie*, though in the hands of ſeveral owners; all of which do acknowledge a ſuperiority in the Duke Elector, if not ſome great relation to him, and dependance on him: ſo that we have an Heterogeneous body to diſcourſe upon, and therefore muſt conſider ſeverally the parts thereof, but ſo, that either firſt or laſt we ſhall find them all in the ſucceſſion and affairs of the Dukes of *Saxonie*, 1. then,

The Dukedom of *Saxonie* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenbourg*; on the Weſt, with *Haſſia*, and part of the Proper *Saxonie*: on the North, with the proper *Saxonie* only; and on the South, with *Franconia*, and the Upper *Palatinate*. So called, becauſe the proper Seat, and Patrimony of the Duke Elector; of very different nature both for Air and Soil; but the laſt eſpecially: as we ſhall ſee by looking over the particular Provinces of 1 *Oberſax*, 2ly. *Miſnia* or *Meiſſen*, 3ly. *Voiteland*, 4ly. *Turingia*, by the *Dutch* called *Duringen*.

1. *OBERSAX*, or the *Upper Saxonie*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Marches of *Brandenbourg*; on the Weſt, with *Mansfield*, from which parted by the River *Salza*; on the North, with *Meydebourg*; on the South, with *Miſnia*. The Reaſon of the name we ſhall ſee anon. The Air hereof ſomewhat ſharp and piercing, the ſoyl ſufficiently fruitfull, but therein not to be compared with *Miſnia*, much leſs with *Duringen*, being both of them of a richer and more liberal nature.

Miſnia.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Torge*, or *Torgow*, by ſome placed in *Miſnia*, but by *Mercator* in this Province. Built on the weſt ſide of the *Elb*, in form *Orbicular*, and falling every way from the ſides of a mountain: beautified with a ſtately and pleaſant Caſtle, belonging to the *Elector* of *Saxony*, who is Lord hereof; built by *John Frederick* the *Elector*, *Anno* 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compaſs; for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke, 500 *Guldens*. 2 *Warlitz* upon the *Elb*, once a *Commandery* of the *Templars*. 3 *Weiſenberk*, lying towards *Brunſwick*. 4 *Kemberg*, on the weſt ſide of the *Elb*. 5 *Bitterfelt*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Mulda*, and 6 *Wittenberg*, on the *Elb*, in an open plain; but ſtrongly fenced with walls, ramparts and deep ditches. The chief beauty of it lyeth in one fair ſtreet, extending the whole length of the City; in the midſt whereof is the Cathedral Church, a large Market-place, and the common Council-houſe. In former times the ſeats of the *Dukes Electors*, till the *Electoral* dignity was conferred on the houſe of *Meißen*, who liking better their own Country, keep their Courts at *Dreſden*. But ſo that *Wittenberg* is ſtill acknowledged for the head City of the *Electorate*; and was made an Univerſity for *Divines* by Duke *Frederick*, *Anno* 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as ſome conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of *Saxony*, when the extent thereof was greateſt: famous for the ſepulchres of *Luther* and *Melanchthon*, but chiefly for that here were the walls of Popery broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*; of the wonderfull ſucceſs whereof we have ſpoken already.

Of the affairs of this little Country we can ſay but little, more than the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of *Saxony*, and conſequently to the name which it ſtill retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, ſirnamed the *Lion*, whoſe greatneſſe was grown formidable even to the Emperours themſelves: the Dukedom of *Saxony* was diſmembred into many parcels; *Brunſwick* and *Lunenbourg* being given unto the Children of the Duke deprived; the lower parts of *Weſtphalen* ſeazed on by *Philip* Archbiſhop of *Colen*; the parts thereof about the *VVeſer* by the Biſhop of *Paderborn*; *Herman* the Lantgrave of *Turingia* laying hold of that part of of this eſtate which was neareſt to him; *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made imperial, or governing themſelves as Free Eſtates; the Anceſtors of the Princes of *Anhalt*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*, endowed with large poſſeſſions alſo out of this great Patrimony, the Emperours not only conniving at it, but willingly conſenting to that diſſipation, the better to reward and content thoſe Princes, who had aſſiſted him in his wars againſt the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the antient *Saxony* to be eſtated upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, whom *Frederick Barbaroſſa* had created *Duke Elector* in the room of *Henry* ſo deprived. And though Duke *Bernard* for his many good ſervices to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Wittenberg* by *Conrade* the 3d. and had conquered from Duke *Henry* the whole County of *Lawenbourg*, yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a *Duke Elector*. It pleaſed the Emperour *Frederick* to beſtow upon him all thoſe Lands and Territories which lay between the *Salza*, and the *Elb*, on the North of *Miſnia*, to make *Wittenberg* the *Electoral* City, and give unto the Country thus united to it, the name of *Oberſax*, or *Upper Saxony*, which it continueth to this day.

2. *MISNIA*, or *Meiſſen*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Luſatia*; on the Weſt, with *Duringen*; on the North, with *Saxony*, ſpecially ſo called, and ſome part of *Brandenbourg*; on the South, with *Voiteland*, and ſome part of *Bohemia*. The Country once overſpread with woods, and full of bogs, rendring the air unwholeſom, and the ſoil unprofitable, both rectified by the care and induſtry of the people; now yielding ſome mines of ſilver, and great plenty both of Corn and Paſturage: well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Pliſſes*, *Elſter* and *Mulda*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, are 1 *Dreſden*, ſeated on the *Albis*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks, 150 Pieces of Ordnance; a ſtable of the Dukes, in which are 128 horſes of ſervice; and a Magazine, out of which 30000 Horſe and Foot, may be armed at a dayes warning. The Town it ſelf ſituate on both ſides of the River; by which divided into the old Town and the new, joyned into one by a bridge of 800 paces in length: the Country round about it very rich and pleaſant, able to ſuſtain great multitudes; for that cauſe made the ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of *Saxony*, who have here a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle. 2 *Naumburg*, 3 *Mersburg*, both ſeated on the River *Salza*, two Epiſcopal Sees. 4 *Lipſique*, as famous a Univerſity for *Philoſophers*, as *Jene* in *Lorrein* is for *Phyſicians*. It ſeemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not ſuffer their *Beer* to periſh, of which here is ſo much drunk and exported; that the very Cuſtom of it due unto the Duke, amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly: yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the moſt part of fair free ſtone, honoured with the Courts of Juſtice for all the Countrey. Though ſeated on the meeting of *Pleiſs*, *Parde*, *Elſter*, 3 Rivers, which lie almoſt on all ſides of it: yet it is not ſtrong, having been thrice taken by the *Imperialiſts* in leſs that two years, during the late *German* wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing elſe) for the great battel fought near it, between the late King of *Sweden*, and the Count of *Tilly*: the honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons*, (with the death of 15000 on both ſides, and the loſs of all the baggage, Arms and Ammunition of the *Imperials* (freed all theſe parts of *Germany* from that civil and ſpiritual bondage, which was intended by the Emperour to be put upon them. 5 *Mulberg*, on the *Elb*, where *John Frederick* the *Elector* was diſcomfited and taken priſoner by *Charls* the fifth, by whom deprived not long after of his ſtate and dignity. 6 *Meiſſen*; on the Weſt ſide of the ſame River, in a hilly and uneven ground, built by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, for defence of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*: a Biſhops See, and the firſt ſeat of the Marqueſſes of this Country, both which, together with the *Burgrave* of the Town, had their Palaces or Manſion-houſes ſtanding cloſe together on the top of a hill, over-looking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meiſſen*. 7 *Friberg*, near the

Voiteland and *Turingia.*

Mountains of *Bohemia*, rich in mines of ſilver. 8 *Roclite*, not far from which are rich mines of Tin; diſcovered firſt in theſe parts by a *Corniſh-man* ſpoken of before.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermanduri*, and *Suardones*, ſubdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Sclaves*, ſirnamed *Wennithi*: firſt conquered by the Emperour *Henry* the firſt; who built the ſtrong Town of *Meiſſen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Sclaves* from any incroachment on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of *Germany*, it was a while governed by ſuch Officers, as by the Emperours were appointed to guard theſe *Marches*: the firſt *Proprietary* Marqueſſe being one *Echard*, ſon of the Earl of *Ooaſtland*, (deſcended from a younger ſon of *Wittikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Otho* the third: not made hereditary, till the time of *Henry* the fifth, who gave it in Fee to *Conrade*, Marqueſs of *Landsberg* and *Luſatia*, whoſe Nephew *Theodorick*, by his ſon *Otho*, ſirnamed the *Rich*, married *Judith* daughter of *Herman* Lantgrave of *Duringen*; by which match, *Duringen* accrewed to the houſe of *Meiſsen*, *Henrie* their ſon ſucceeding in both eſtates. To this *Henry* ſucceeded *Albert* his ſon, and after him ſucceſſively four *Fredericks*: the laſt whereof, on the failer of the houſe of *Anholt*, was by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, created *Elector*, and Duke of *Saxony*; either becauſe deſcended from the houſe of *Wittikindus*, or as moſt able to pay for the Inveſtiture, or elſe beſt able to ſuſtain the eſtate and dignity of a Duke Elector, which had but weakly been ſupported by the former Family. In his poſterity theſe honours and eſtates do as yet continue. But neither all nor alwayes in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes Electors. For in the partage made between *Erneſtus* and *Albert*, the ſons of *Frederick*, (according to the ill cuſtom of *Germany*) this Country, or the greateſt part of it, was aſſigned to *Albert*, ſucceeded in the ſame by *George* and *Henry* his two ſons; which was Father of that *Maurice*, who being ſetled and confirmed herein by Duke *John Frederick*; did after moſt unworthily take up arms againſt him, ſupplanted him, and finally poſſeſſed himſelf of his whole Electorate; of which more anon.

3. *VOITELAND*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bohemia*; on the Weſt, with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Miſnia*, or *Meiſſen*; on the South, with the *Upper Palatinate*. So called, as ſome ſay, from the *Iuites* or *Vites* (ſome of that people, who, together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquered *Britain*) of whom it had the name of *Viteland*, that is to ſay, the Land or Country of the *Vites*. But being I find not that the *Saxons* did ſpread ſo far Eaſtward, I rather think that this name was given it by the *Sclaves*, who finding it deſerted, or but thinly peopled, at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voidland*; from which the alteration unto *Voitland*, is both plain and obvious. It is the ſmalleſt Province of all *Germany*, and never of ſuch repute as to have any particular Prince, as moſt others had; but alwayes reckoned as acceſſary to ſome greater Eſtate. Nor hath it any Towns or Cities of great eſtimation: the chief of thoſe which are, being 1 *Olnits*, 2 *Worda*, 3 *Corna*, 4 *Sebneberg*, near the mountains called *Studeta* by *Ptolemy*, famed for ſilver mines. 5 *Gotzberg*, 6 *Culmbach*, and 7 *Hoffe*, not much remarkable; but only for the Princes of it of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, called formerly *Curta Pegniana*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Nertereates* and *Danduti*: ſucceeded to by the *French* and *Sclaves*, as they ſeverally deſcended Southwards into warmer Countries. Poſſeſſed and planted by the *Sclaves* it obtained this name. But being a ſmall Nation, and a ſmall Eſtate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince: but did moſt probably belong to the Lords of *Meiſſen*, upon which it bordereth; and now, in their right, to the Duke of *Saxony*. But ſo that the Duke of *Saxony* is not the ſole Lord hereof: the Marqueſſes of *Ansbach* of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*, poſſeſſing the Towns of *Hoffe* and *Colmbach*, and ſome other parts of it: the Patrimony at preſent of *Chriſtian*, ſon of *Joachim Erneſt*, the late Marqueſs of *Ansbach*: who now enjoyeth them, with the title of the Marqueſs of *Colmbach*.

4. *Turingia* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Miſnia*, and the River *Salza*; on the Weſt, with *Haſſia*; on the North, with the wood *Hartz*, and the proper *Saxony*; on the South, with the Mountainous Forreſt of *Duringer-wald*, by which parted from *Frankenland*: the Forreſt and Countrey both ſo called from the *Turingians*, the antient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Country invironed round about with woody mountains, but within thoſe mountains plain and pleaſant, fruitfull in Corn, and very plentifull of woods, which yeeld great profit to the people; not without ſome mines of gold and ſilver, and rich pits of ſalt; able to furniſh out a feaſt, but for wine only, which is the greateſt want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth no more, yet it is ſo populous and well planted, that there are ſaid to be in it 13 Earldoms, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many Market Towns, 150 Caſtles, and 2000 Villages.

The principal of theſe are 1 *Jene*, on the River *Salza*, bordering upon *Miſnia*, an Univerſity chiefly of *Phyſitians*, founded in the year 1555. by the ſons of *John Frederick* the Elector, taken priſoner and deprived by *Charls* the 5th. 2 *Erdford*, on the River *Gers*, out of which are cut ſo many chanels, that every ſtreet hath almoſt the benefit of it. A rich, populous, and well-built City, accompted amongſt the beſt of *Germany*, and made an Univerſity in the time of the Emperour *Wenceſlaus*, *Anno* 1382. Many times burnt, but ſtill reviving, as the Phœnix out of the Aſhes, into greater glory. At firſt immediately ſubject to the Archbiſhops and Electors of *Mentz*, the firſt founders of it; as being built by *William*, ſon of the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, and, then Archbiſhop of that City; of whom more anon; but having freed themſelves from him, they have ſince governed themſelves as a free eſtate, and one of the *Hanſe Towns*, not ſubject to the Duke of *Saxony* as their Lord, but their Patron and good neighbour only. 3 *Mulhuiſen*, and 4 *Noorthuiſen*, two Imperial Cities; but elſe not obſervable. 5 *Smalcald*, famous for the levy here made *Anno* 1530, Between all the Princes and Cities which maintained the doctrine of *Luther*, for defence thereof and of one another in the purſuance of that work, by which famous confederacy *Luther* not only kept his head on his ſhoulders; but the Religion by him reformed, grew to that ſtrength, that no force nor policy could ever root it up. 6 *Kala*, or *Hale*, on the River *Falta*; of great reſort for the exceeding quantity of Salt there made, and vended into other places; at which Town *Philip* the Lantgrave was treacherouſly taken Priſoner, as you ſhall hear anon. 7 *Weemar*, a Town which together with the Caſtle of *Galha* were aſſigned for the Eſtate and maintenance of that religious, though unfortunate, Prince *John Frederick*, Duke of *Saxony*, after his diſcomfiture and impriſonment by *Charles* the 5th. the ordinary ſeat of the Dukes of the *Saxon Weymar*, who lived here in a ſtately and magnificent Caſtle, made of poliſhed ſtone, moſt artificially contrived, and beautified with Orchards, Gardens and other pleaſures; but made more pleaſant by the Watering of the River *Lima*, upon which it ſtandeth. 8 *Gotha*, upon the River *Lonne*, ſaid by *Raithamerus* to be built by the *Gothes*, and by them thus named. A place not long ſince of great importance, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, called *Grimmenſton*, that being made the retiring place of one *Grunbachius*, and other ſeditious perſons, under the protection of *John Frederick*, one of the ſons of the deprived *Electors*; it was taken after a long ſiege by *Auguſtus* the *Elector* of *Saxony* (to whom the ſtrength of this piece being in the hands of the injured Family, was a great eye-ſore and by the command of the Eſtates of the Empire in the Diet at *Regensberg*, *Anno* 1597. demoliſhed, and levelled with the ground.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chaſnari* of *Tacitus*, and after them the *Turingi*, who with the *Heruli*, under the conduct of *Odoacer*, conquered *Italy*, called by ſome *Turcillingi*; by others ſuppoſed to be the *Tyrangetæ* of *Ptolemy*. Not heard of in this Countrey till the reign of *Childerick*, the fourth King of the *French*; then taking up the whole Provinces of *Haſſia* and *Turingia*, under one *Baſſinius* their King. Their Arms at that time, and long after, *Azure*, a Lion *Barri*, *Argent* and *Gules*, armed and crowned *Or*. Being overcome at the great battel of *Zulph*, near *Colen*, where they joyned with the *Almans*, they were afterwards totally ſubdued by *Theodorick* the *French* King of *Metz*, their King *Hermaufridus* taken, and moſt perfidiouſly ſlain; part of their Country taken from them and given to the *Saxons* (who aſſiſted in that war againſt them) becomming ſubject for the reſt to the Kings of *France*. But ſo, that for ſome time after they had Kings of their own, *Baderick* and *Hermanfroy*, two brothers, Kings hereof ſucceſſively, being Uncles to *Radegond*, a Princeſs of great piety, the wife of *Clotaire* King of *France*, *Anno* 559. In following times it was united to the Empire by *Henry* the firſt, conferred not long after by *Otho* the firſt (the ſon of *Henry*) on *William*, one of his younger ſons, then Arch-biſhop of *Mentz*, which he left to his ſucceſſors in that See, governed by the *Vidams*, and Provincial Officers, till the time of *Conradus Salicus*; when *Ludovicus Barbatus* one of theſe *Vidams*, or *Vicedomini*) made himſelf the proprietary of it, and left the ſame unto his children after his deceaſe. But in the time of *Conrade* the 2d. the iſſue of this *Ludovicus* either failing or diſpoſſeſſed, it it was by the Emperour conferred on *Lewis* of *Orleance*, ſon to a ſiſter of his Empreſs, the title of Lantgrave being given to them of this Family for their greater honour. Under eight Princes of this Line, whereof five ſucceſſively had the name of *Lewis*, this eſtate continued: next falling to *Herman*, brother of the 5th *Lewis*, who by contributing to the ruine of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, ſirnamed the *Lion*, in favour of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, had for his ſhare (in the dividing of the ſpoil) thoſe parts of his eſtates which lay neareſt to him, called then the Palatinate of *Saxony*, recovered for the moſt part afterward by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*. He being dead this Country fell to a ſixt *Lewis*, and laſt of all to *Henry* the brother of that *Lewis*, in whom the male iſſue failed, have continued for the ſpace of 252 years. To pleaſe all parties intereſſed in the ſucceſſion, the eſtate before entire, was divided into two parts or Provinces, of which this now called *Duringen* or *Turingia*, was allotted to *Henry* Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, ſon of *Judith*, the daughter of *Herman*: The Weſtern part thereof, with the title of the Lantgravedom of *Heſſen*, adjudged to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, in right of *Sophia* his wife, daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth; in the deſcription of which Countries we ſhall have more of them. United thus to the houſe of *Meiſſen*, in the perſon of *Henry* the then Marqueſs, *Anno* 1263. It flouriſhed in long peace and happineſs under the Princes of that houſe; finally, much increaſed both in power and dignity by the addition of *Oberſax*, and the Electorſhip of *Saxony*, conferred on *Frederick* the 4th. Marqueſs and Lantgrave of the Countries, *Anno* 1423. in which eſtate it ſtill continueth, the 4th. and faireſt of all theſe Provinces, which now make up the Dukedom of *Saxony*, (as for the reaſons above mentioned it hath long been called) though none of them, nor any part or parcel of them, within the bounds and limits of the the antient *Saxony*, as before was ſaid.

2. **SAXONIE**, properly ſo called, or the *Proper* **SAXONIE**, is bounded on the South, with *Duringen*, and the great wood *Hartz*, part of the old *Hercynian* Forreſt, and from thence ſo named; on the Eaſt with part of *Miſnia*, *Oberſaz*, and the Mariſhes of *Brandenbourg*; upon the North, with the Dukedom of *Mecklenbourg*; and on the Weſt, with that of *Brunſwick*, *Lunenbourg*; and part of *Holſtein*: So called from the *Saxons*, once the Lords hereof (of whom more anon) and the ſole part of all their great and many conqueſts, which reteins their name.

The Air hereof ſomewhat ſharp, but healthy: the ſoyl in the South-weſt parts hilly and uneven

Anhalt, and *Manſfield.*

chiefly rich in Minerals, elſewhere ſufficiently fruitfull: Divided into 4 Eſtates, that is to ſay, 1. the Principality of *Anhalt*, 2. the Earldom of *Manſfield*, 3. the Biſhoprick of *Meydeberg*, 4. the Dukedom of *Lawenberg*.

1. The Principate of ***ANHALT***, is bounded on the South, with *Duringen*, and the Wood called *Hartz*; on the Weſt, and North; with the County of *Manſfield*; on the Eaſt, with *Miſnia*, much ſhaded, if not too much overgrown with woods; parts of the *Hartz* or old *Hercynian* Forreſt, whence it had the name; *Holt* in the *Dutch* ſignifying a wood or Forreſt; and the Princes of this houſe created to this dignity by the ſtyle of *Principes Hercynniæ* in *Anhalt*. Chiefer Towns of it are 1 *Berneberg*, the Dynaſtie and uſual title of this houſe, before they were created Princes of *Anhalt*. 2 *Bullenſtede*, part of the antient Patrimony of the firſt Princes hereof. 3 *Deſſaw*, the birth-place of ſome, and the burial place of others of this Family; beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle built by Pr. *Albert* the 2d. *Anno* 1341. 4 *Sterveſt*, the uſual place of the Princes reſidence. 5 *Cœten*, a well fortified place; in vain beſieged by the joynt Forces of the Archbiſhop of *Meydebourg*, and the Earl of *Schwartzenwald*. 6 *Candt*, here ſometimes alſo ſtood the old Caſtle of *Aſcandt*; the firſt ſeat of theſe Princes, but long ſince deſtroyed, now only to be viſited in records and Hiſtories.

We ſhall be ſent no higher than the firſt beſieging of the *Roman Capitol* by the antient *Galls*, to find out the pedigree and deſcent of the Earls of *Lyppe*; but we muſt go as high as the *Ark* for the Princes of *Anhalt*; ſome fetching from *Askenaz*, the ſon of *Gomer*, and the nephew of *Japhet*; from whom and no other this *Aſcanian* Family (for by that name it is called) are to fetch their Pedegree. But to content our ſelves with more ſober thoughts, we are to know, that when *Theodorick* K. of *Metz* undertook the Conqueſt of the *Turingians*, he was was therein aided by the *Saxons* with 9000 men under the conduct of one *Bernewald*, or *Bernthobald*, a man of great power and rank amongſt them; the *Saxons* recompenſed for that ſervice, with ſuch parts of the conquered Countrey as lay neareſt to them, and *Bernthobald* himſelf rewarded with the Town of *Aſcandt*, *Ballenſtede*, and the Lands adjoyning, *Anno* 524. to be holden by them under the ſoveraignty of the *French*. From which Town and the Caſtle of *Aſcandt*, afterwards razed to the ground by *Pepin* K. of the *French*, (for denying the accuſtomed tributes) *Anno* 747. moſt probable it is that the name of *Aſcanian* Family was aſſumed by them: So that we may behold it as a Family, of as great antiquity as the moſt in *Europe*, little inferiour unto any of the greateſt Monarchs. His ſucceſſors for the moſt part buſied in wars againſt their neighbours of *Miſnia*; but rather upon hope of ſpoyl and plunder, than in way of Conqueſt: Their power and Patrimony being very little improved, till the time of *Albert* ſirnamed *Urſus*, deſcended by a long ſucceſſion of Princes from *Bernewald*, or *Bernthobald* before remembred. This *Albert* having done many ſignal ſervices unto *Conrade* the 3d. and his ſon *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, (eſpecially in taking the Cities of *Breme*, and *Lunebourg*) was by the laſt created Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, *Anno* 1153. the Father of that *Bernard*, who by the munificence and bounty of the ſame Emperour, was created Duke Elector of *Saxony*, in the room of Duke *Henry* ſirnamed the *Lion*, *Anno* 1180. becoming ſo the ſtem of the two greateſt Princes of all the Empire. *Henry* the 2. ſon of this *Bernard*, was by the ſame Emperour not long after inriched with much of the lands and territories lying neareſt to him, which had before belonged to *Duke Henry* the *Lion*, and created the firſt Prince of *Anhalt*, the firſt of all this antient and illuſtrious Family; which had been honoured with that Title, both Lands and Title continuing in his race to this very day. The two Electorates of *Saxony*, and *Brandenbourg*, being in the mean while tranſlated unto other Families; the moſt conſiderable of which Princes, though all men of *Eminence*, were 1 *Rodolph*, General of the Forces of the Emperour *Maximilian* the firſt, againſt the *Venetians*, whom he twice overcame in battel. 2 *George* the *Divine*, a great Reformer of the Church by his diligent Preaching; whoſe Sermons and other tractates (learned for the times he lived in) are ſtill extant. 3 *Chriſtian*, born in the year 1568. Commander of the Forces of *Frederick*, Prince Elector *Palatine*, in the wars of *Bohemia*.

2. The Earldom of ***MANSFIELD***, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the river *Salza*, parting it from *Oberſax*; on the Weſt, with the river *Wyeper*, which divides it from *Brunſwick*, on the North, with the Biſhoprick of *Meydebourg*, and on the South, with *Anhalt*, and part of *Duringen*; ſo called from *Manſfield*, once the chief Town of it, ſituate on the river *Wyeper*, but now much decayed; the other Towns of note herein being, 2 *Iſleben*, more in the middle of the Country; for that cauſe more convenient for the ſeats of Juſtice, firſt ſetled here by Earl *Voldradus*, *Anno* 1448. and by that means made the Metropolis of this Earldom; By ſome affirmed to have took this name from the Goddeſs *Iſis*, who after the death of her husband (as is ſaid by *Tacitus*) viſited theſe parts. Famous more certainly for the birth of *Luther*, tranſplanted hence for the ſtudy of good Arts to *Medebourg*, and choſen thence to be Divinity-Reader in *Witteberg*; where he hammered out that great work of the Reformation; as before was ſaid; born here in the year 1483. and here deceaſing in the houſe of the Earl of *Manſfield*, *Anno* 1546. 3 *Wyeper* (or *Wypra*) ſo called of the river on which it ſtandeth. 4 *Querefort*, the honourary title of the Anceſtors of the Earls of *Manſfield*. 5 *Rotenberg*. 6 *Abſted*. 7 *Heldernng*, bought all the Earls of *Houſtein*.

Some who delineate the Pedegree of theſe Earls of *Manſfield*, fetch it out as high as from one *Begor* one of King *Arthurs* Knights of the round table, born at *Manſfield* in *Nottinghamſhire*: who ſetling himſelf in *Germany*, gave that name to his houſe; a military original, and very ſuitable to ſuch an active and warlike *Family*. But thoſe that do not ſoar ſo high, derive them from the Earls of *Quereford*, men of authority in theſe parts; made more conſiderable by *Lotharius* Emperour and

Duke

Meydeburg and *Lawenburg*

Duke of *Saxony*, but moſt of all by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who conferred many goodly Lordſhips, lying hereabout (once part of the Eſtate of Duke *Henry* the *Lion*) on *Burchard* the fifth Earl thereof; a conſtant follower of his, not only in his wars againſt Duke *Henry* before named, but in thoſe alſo which he managed in the *Holy-land*, in the courſe whereof he died at *Antioch*, Anno 1189. His Nephew *Burchard* by a ſon of the ſame name, was the firſt of this Family that had the title of Earl of *Mansfield*, about the year 1250. Continued ever ſince unto his poſterity (but under ſome acknowledgments to the *Electors* of *Saxony*.) Of theſe the moſt eminent *Valeradus* one of the council of Eſtate to the Emperor *Sigiſmond*, *Anno* 1411. a great improver of the Patrimony of the Earls hereof. 2 *John George*, Lord Deputy or Lieutenant of *Saxony* under Duke *Auguſtus*. 3 *Peter Erneſt*, Governour of *Luxembourg*, under *Charles* the 5th. and *Philip* the 2d. by whom much exerciſed and employed in their wars with *France* and their Baltick Rebels. 4 *Albert*, a conſtant Friend of *Luthers*, and a faithfull follower of *John Frederick*, the deprived *Elector*, in whoſe quarrel being outed of his Eſtate, he retired to *Meydebourg*, which he moſt gallantly defended againſt the Emperour: and 5 *Erneſtus*, Nephew of that *Albert* by his ſon *John*, ſo famous for the war which he maintained in moſt parts of *Germany*, againſt *Ferdinand* the 2d. in behalf of *Frederick* Prince *Elector Palatine*, and the States of *Bohemia*, with ſo great conſtancy and courage.

3. On the North of *Mansfield* and *Oberſax* lyeth the Biſhoprick of *MEYDEBOURG*, having on the Weſt, parts of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenbourg*; and on the North and the Eaſt, the Marches of *Brandenbourg*. So called from the Epiſcopal See founded in *Magdeburg* the chief City; by ſome called *Meydburg*, and *Meydenburg*: whence by a *Greek* name *Parthenopolis*; and *Virginopolis*, by a mungrel word made of *Greek* and *Latine*. A City ſeated on the *Elb*, divided into three parts, but all ſtrongly fortified; begirt with high walls, deep ditches, and almoſt unconquerable Bulwarks: yet very beautifull withall (before the laſt deſolation of it) of elegant buildings, fair ſtreets, and magnificent Temples. Built in the form of a *Creſcent*, by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, the founder of it, who having tranſlated hither the *Archiepiſcopal* See, for the greater honour of the place, built the Cathedral of S. *Maurice*, where his Wife lies buried, *Anno* 948, teſtified by the inſcription to be the daughter of *Edmund*, King of *England*. A Town which hath long flouriſhed in a great deal of glory, and taſted of as much affliction as any other in *Germany*. For refuſing to receive the *Interim*, it was out-lawed by the Emperour *Charls* the fifth, and given to him that could firſt take it. It was firſt hereupon attempted by the Duke of *Meglenberg*; but he was in a *Camiſado* taken Priſoner, his Army routed, his Nobles made Captive, and 260 horſe brought into the City. Next, it was beſieged by Duke *Maurice* of *Saxony*, who on honourable terms, was after a long ſiege received into it, *Anno* 1550. when it had ſtood on its own guard the ſpace of three years. Which long oppoſition of one Town, taught the *German* Princes what conſtancy could do: it held up the coals of Rebellion in *Germany*, and indeed proved to be the fire which burned the Emperours *Trophies*. For here Duke *Maurice* coming acquainted with Baron *Hedeck*, hatched that confederacy, by which not long after this great Emperour was driven out of *Germany*. At laſt it yielded to Duke *Maurice*, under the protection of whoſe ſucceſſors it hath ſince enjoyed a long courſe of felicity, till 1631. in which moſt miſerably burnt and ſacked by the Earl of *Tilly*: of whom it is obſerved, that after that fact he never proſpered, being ſhortly after totally routed at the Battel of *Leipſick*; and wounded to the death not long after that, near the River *Leek*. Other places of note in this Biſhoprick, are, 1 *VVormſted*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, not far from *Magdeburg*, the ordinary ſeat, or retiring place of the Biſhop. 3 *Grabatz*, upon the river *Struma*. 4 *Mockern*, on the ſame River. 5 *Barleben*, beneath *Meydebourg* on the *Elb*. 6 *Lunburg*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Struma*; not much obſervable.

The *Archiepiſcopal* See being tranſlated hither from *Valerſleve*, and *Ureſe*, (places too obſcure for ſo great a dignity) by *Otho* the firſt; and by him endowed with great *Revenues*, and a goodly territory round about it: the Arch-biſhop hereof was alſo by his procurement made the *Primate* of *Germany*; acknowledged ſo by all, but the Biſhop of *Saltzburg*, and the three *Spiritual Electors*. For the Adminiſtration of Juſtice in matters *Criminal* and *Civil*, the ſaid *Otho* did ordain an Officer, whom they called the *Burgrave*; conferring that office on *Gero*, Marqueſs of *Luſatia*. Through many hands it came at laſt to *Burchard*, Lord of *Quernfort*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*; many of which enjoyed this honour: ſetled at laſt by the Emperour *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the Dukes of *Saxony*, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Eſtate. The *Archbiſhops* notwithſtanding continued Lords of it, and the whole territory or Diſtrict adjoyning to it; till the *Reformation* of *Religion*: when the *Revenues* ſeparated from the juriſdiction, were given to *Lay Princes*, (for the moſt part of the houſe of *Brandenbourg*) with the title of Adminiſtrator. Finally, by the *Pacification* made at *Munſter*, this fair eſtate to be ſetled for ever on the *Electors* of that houſe, to be poſſeſſed by them, and their Heirs and Succeſſors, by the title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*; the better to content them for the conceſſion which they made to the Crown of *Sweden*, of a great part of their right and title to the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.

4. On the North-weſt of *Magdebourg*, and on both ſides alſo of the *Elb*, lyeth the Dukedom of *LAWENBOURG*, bounded on the North, with *Mecklenbourg*; on the Eaſt, with part of *Holſtein*; and on the South, with the River *Elb*, and part of *Lunenbourg*; So called of *Lawenbourg* the chief Town thereof, and the ſeat of the Dukes. The Town firſt built, as ſome conceive, by *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, ſirnamed the *Lion*, the better to aſſure his Conqueſts on that ſide of the River, by whom it

was

Lawenburg.

was called *Leopolis*, or *Leobourgum*, and *Lawenbourg* for the ſame reaſon by the *Dutch* or *Germans*: on the proſcription of which Prince, the Country being waſted, and the Towns deſtroyed, *Barnard* of *Anhalt* deſigned his Succeſſor in the Dukedom of *Saxony*, liking the ſituation of it, cauſed it to be re-edified in ſtronger manner than before, a great part of the materials of the town of *Edenbourg* being carried croſs the water to inlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the ſaid Duke *Henry*, in the courſe of that war, it was re-built again by D. *Barnard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by ſome writers made the Founder of it. Other places of note herein, are 2 *Endenbourg*, a well-fortified piece, oppoſite to *Lawenbourg*, on the hither ſide of the *Elb*; not ſo large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lawenbourg* being made greater by the leſſening of this. 3 *Racebourg*, an Epiſcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* ſurnamed the *Lion*, upon his gaining of the *Sclaves* to the Chriſtian Faith, and of late times the Sepulture of this Ducal Family. 4 *Moelen*, on the further ſide of the *Elb*, not far from *Lawenbourg*, the cauſe of much contention betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a title thereunto.

This Country being for the moſt part under the command of the *Sclaves*, was from them conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the *Lion*, and by his race converted to the Chriſtian Faith: but he being proſcribed, and this Seigneurie extorted from him, by Duke *Barnard* of *Anhalt* his ſucceſſor in the Electoral dignity, it was by *Albert*, the ſon of this *Barnard*, conferred on *John* his ſecond ſon, from whom the Dukes of *Saxony*, commonly called the Dukes of *Saxon Lawenbourg*; do derive themſelves; who being pretermitted by the Emperour *Sigiſmund* at the death of *Albert* the 3d. the laſt of the direct line of *Barnard*; or elſe not caring for a title, which carried with it too great ſail, for ſo ſmall a veſſel, as the Eſtate of the *Elector* at the preſent was, have ſince contented themſelves with their antient Patrimony.

It is now time we ſhould proceed to the Story of *Saxony*; the ancient Inhabitants of which tract were the *Longobardi*; or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*; and part of the *Cherusci* about *Mansfield*, and *Witteberg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is: containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhene* and the River *Eydore* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*; and from the River *Saltza*, to the *German* and Baltick Oceans. Theſe ſaid by ſome to be a people of *Aſia*, and there called the *Sacæ*; who finding that ſmall territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, forſook their Countrey, and at laſt fixed themſelves into the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*; where they firſt took the names of *Sicaſons* (or *Sac-ſons*) that is to ſay, the ſons of the *Sacæ*. The improbability of this we have there diſputed. Omitting therefore that and the like *Originations* of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *Germans*; ſome tribe of that moſt populous and potent people of the *Suevi*; but for the reaſon of the name, let every man enjoy the pleaſures of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolemies* times, they were poſſeſſed of thoſe parts beyond the *Elb*, and thence extended to the *Eydore*, part of which tract is now known by the name of *Holſtein*: and were accompted in that time to be no new-commers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they inlarged their quarters, and paſſing over the *Elb* in the time of the later *Roman* Emperors, poſſeſſed themſelves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then buſied in the conqueſt of more fruitfull Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in fine, they ſtretcht themſelves from the River *Saltza* on the Eaſt, to the *German* Ocean on the Weſt, and took up the now Dukedomes of *Holſtein*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Brunſwick*, the Biſhopricks of *Bremen*, *Verda*, *Hilderſheim*, *Halberſtad*, and *Magdeburg*, the *Marchrs* of *Brandenbourg*, the Earldome of *Mansfield*, *Weſtphalen*, both *Friſelands*, *Overyſſell* with as much of *Guelderland* and *Holland*, as lay on that ſide of the *Rhene*. By which accompt the preſent *Electoral* Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony*, in their poſſeſſion: the ſeat and Patrimony of the *Electors* being removed into other Countries, upon the alterations and changes which have hapned in that Eſtate: the name and title of *Saxony*, being given to the Country about *Witteberg* for no other reaſon; but becauſe it was the chief ſeat of the Duke *Electors*. But to proceed, a ſtout and valiant Nation queſtionleſs they were, the conquerors of the Iſle of *Britain*; and the laſt people of the *Germans*, which yielded up their Country unto Charls the Great; by whoſe means gained unto the Goſpell, *Anno* 785. Their laſt King was called *Wittikindus*, from whom deſcended the Kings of *France*, ſince the time of *Hugh Capet*; the preſent Kings of *Denmark*, of the houſe of *Oldenburg*; the Dukes of *Burgundy*, and *Savoy*; the Marqueſſes of *Montferrate*; beſides many other noble and illuſtrious Families, though, of leſſer note. The right or direct line of the male iſſue of *Wittikind* (whom *Charles* the Great created of a King, the firſt Duke of *Saxony*) determining in the perſon of *Otho* the third, Emperour of *Germany*, it was by him conferred on *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenburg*, (but the preciſe time I find not:) *Henry* ſirnamed the *Saint*, who ſucceeded this *Otho* in the Empire, the next in the collateral line, being pretermitted, either becauſe at that time ſetled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or becauſe there was no hope of Poſterity by him, or for ſome other private grudge, which I read not of. And it continued in this line, till on the forfeiture incurred by his poſterity, in the perſon of Duke *Henry* the *Lion*, it was beſtowed by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, Anno 1180. whoſe iſſue in the right line failing, it was finally eſtated by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*, or *Frederick* Lantgrave of *Turingia*, and Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, Anno 1423. In his Family it hath ſince continued, but not without a manifeſt breach in the courſe of the ſucceſſion: which hapned, when *John Frederick* being deprived of the *Electoral* dignity and Eſtate; his Couſin Duke *Maurice* was inveſted in them by *Charls* the fifth. For that religious but unfortunate Prince (if he may juſtly have the title of unfortunate who ſuffered in ſo good a cauſe, for ſo good a Conſcience) being diſcomfited and taken priſoner at the battle of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die; but pardoned at the laſt upon the interceſſion of ſome powerfull friends, upon condition that he ſhould reſign the Electoral dignity, and all the reſt of his Eſtates, into the power of the Emperour: Which done, the Emperour gave him back again of his own accord the Caſtle of *Gotha*, and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the lands and territories thereunto adjoyning; from which laſt place his poſterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon Weymar*. It was alſo much inſiſted on that he ſhould relinquiſh his Religion, and reconcile himſelf to the Church of *Rome*; but thereto he oppoſed with ſuch Chriſtian ſtoutneſs, that in the end it was omitted. Theſe matters being thus tranſacted, the Emperour (with the general conſent of the Electors) inveſted *Maurice*, Couſin German to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral dignity, and all the Land, Honours and Eſtates (the Signeuries of *Gotha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belonged to him; which though it were a great wrong both to the Perſon and Poſterity of the Duke *John Frederick*; yet is it obſerved by ſome grave writers, to have fallen out not unhappily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. 1. In regard of *John Frederick*, whoſe Chriſtian patience and magnanimity during the whole time of his impriſonment, added great reputation to the cauſe for which he ſuffered. 2. In reſpect that Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work, and every way as zealous in purſuing of it, as the other was. And 3. In relation to the children of the deprived Duke, men not to be relied on in a matter of ſuch weight and moment; inſomuch as it was ſaid of him after his deceaſe, *Quod filios reliquerit ſui diſſimillimos*. It is now time we ſhould proceed to the inveſtiture of the new Elector. And becauſe the *tranſlations* of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the ceremonies thereat uſed, as I have collected them out of *Sleiden*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which ſate the Emperour, and *Princes Electors* in their Robes. On the back ſide of the State, were placed the Trumpeters; right againſt it ſtandeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of horſemen; The firſt in a full career run their horſes up to the pavilion: Out of the ſecond iſſued *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick*, *Wolfang* Prince of *Bipent*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavier*. Theſe when they had in like manner courſed their horſes about, alighted, aſcended to the Throne, and humbly requeſted the Emperour, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice*, to the *Electorſhip*. He conſulted with the *Electors*, made anſwer by the Biſhop of *Mentz*, that he was content, ſo Duke *Maurice* would in perſon come and deſire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice*, with the whole troup; before him were born *ten Enſignes* bearing the *Arms* of as many *Regions*, wherein he deſired to be inveſted. When he came before the Throne he kneeled down on his knees, and humbly deſired the Emperour to beſtow on him the *Electorſhip* of *Saxonie*, and all the lands of *John Frederick* late *Elector*. His Petition was granted. Then the Biſhop of *Mentz* read unto him the oath, by which the *Electors* are bound unto the Empire: which Oath, when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperour delivered unto him a Sword, which was a ſign of his perfect *inveſtiture*. Duke *Maurice*, now the *Elector* of *Saxony*, aroſe, gave the Emperour thanks, promiſed his *fidelity*, made obeyſance, and took his place amongſt the *Electors*. This ſolemnity was on the 24 day of *Feb. Anno* 1548. Which ſaid, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

The Dukes of SAXONY.

785 1 *Wittikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*, vanquiſhed, and created the firſt *Duke* by *Charls* the *Great*.
825 2 *Bruno*, the brother of *Wittikind*.
743 3 *Luitulphus*, ſon of *Bruno*.
855 4 *Bruno* II. ſon of *Luitulphus*.
876 5 *Otho*, brother of *Bruno* the ſecond.
916 6 *Henry*, ſurnamed the *Fowler*, ſon of *Otho*, Emperour of the *Romans*, and King of *Germany*
938 7 *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* I.
974 8 *Otho* III. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* II.
984 9 *Otho* IV. Duke of *Saxony* and Emperour, called *Otho* III.
10 *Barnard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, created Duke of *Saxony*, and the firſt *Elector*, by *Otho* the third, who was the laſt Duke of the race of *Wittikind*.
1021 11 *Barnard* II. ſon of *Barnard* the firſt.
1063 12 *Ordulphus*, ſon of *Barnard* the 2d.
1073 13 *Magnus*, ſon of *Ordulphus*, who taking part with *Rodulphus* of *Schwaben* againſt *Henry* the 4th, was taken priſoner and deprived.
14 *Lotharius*, Earl of *Quernfort*, created Duke of *Saxony* by *Henry* the 4th. He was alſo Emperour of the *Romans*.
1125 15 *Henry Guelph*, ſurnamed the *Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, the husband of *Gertrude*, daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom created Duke *Elector*.
1139 16 *Henry* II. ſurnamed the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, ſon of *Henry* the *Proud*, by his firſt wife *Walfildis*, the daughter of *Magnus*, added to this eſtate the Countrey of *Mecklenbourg* and *Lunenbourg*, which he had conquered from the *Sclaves*, becomming by that means ſo great, that neglecting his duty to the Emperour *Frederick*, ſurnamed *Barbaroſſa*, and ſiding with the *Pope* againſt him, he was by him publickly proſcribed, his neighbour Princes armed againſt him, and by their joynt forces outed of all his eſtates every one lay-

laying hold of that which lay neareſt to him, by means whereof this great Eſtate being parcelled and divided into many parts; the title of the Duke *Elector of Saxony*, was given by the ſaid Emperour to

1180 17 *Barnard* of *Anhalt* ſon of *Albert*, Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg*, and grandchild of *Elica*, another daughter of Duke *Magnus*: to whom for his ſeat and habitation, the Emperour gave the City of *Witteberg*; the head ſince that time, of this *Electorate*.
1212 18 *Albert*, ſon of *Barnard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lawenburg* doe derive their pedegree.
1273 19 *Albert* II. ſon of *Albert* the firſt.
1327 20 *Rodolph*, ſon of *Albert* the 2d.
1356 21 *Rodolph* II. ſon of *Rodolph* the firſt.
1373 22 *Wenceſlaus*, ſon of *Rodolph* the 2d.
1389 23 *Rodolph* III. ſon of *Wenceſlaus*.
1419 24 *Albert* III. ſon of *Rodolph* the third. the late *Elector* of *Saxony* of the houſe of *Anhalt*.
1423 25 *Frederick*, Lantgrave of *Duringen*, and Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, (on the falling of the houſe of *Anhalt*, *Anno* 1422.) created Duke of *Saxony* by the Emperour *Sigiſmund*; the houſe of *Lawenberg* pretermitted for want of putting in their claim; by the advancement of which Prince, the title of Duke of *Saxony* returned again to the houſe of *Wittikind* (the firſt King and laſt Duke hereof) after it had been alienated into other Families for the ſpace of 200 years.
1428 26 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Frederick* the firſt.
1464 27 *Erneſt*, ſon of *Frederick* the ſecond.
1486 28 *Fredereck* III. ſon of *Erneſt*.
1525 29 *John*, brother to *Frederick* the third.
1532 30 *John Frederick*, ſon of *John* the firſt; a great advancer of the *Reformation* of *Religion*; impriſoned, and deprived of his *Electorſhip* by *Charles* the 5th.
1547 31 *Maurice*, Couſin German once removed to the Duke *John Frederick* as being grandſon or nephew of *Albert*, the younger brother of *Erneſtus* the Duke *Elector*) created Duke *Elector* by *Charles* the 5th, whom afterwards he drave out of *Germany*, and was ſlain in the battel of *Siffridhuſe*, againſt Marqueſs *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*.
1553 32 *Auguſtus*, brother of *Maurice*.
1586 33 *Chriſtian*, ſon of *Auguſtus*.
34 *Chriſtian* II. ſon of *Chriſtian* the firſt.
35 *John George*. brother of *Chriſtian* the 2d. who firſt ſided with the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond againſt the Elector *Palatine*; and after with the King of *Sweden* againſt the Emperour.

The *Revenues* of this Duke are thought to be the greateſt of any one Prince of *Germany* (the *Imperial* Family excepted) amounting at the leaſt to 400000 *l. per annum*; though in multitude of Vaſſals, and greatneſs of territory he came ſhort of ſome of them. And to make up this ſum (or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariſeth to him out of *ſilver Mines*, is no leſs than 130000 *l.* yearly; the *impoſt* laid on *Beer* in *Leipſich* only, a City but of two pariſh Churches (by which conjecture at the reſt) being farmed at 20000 *l. per annum*. Then hath he the *tenths* of all ſorts of increaſe, as of corn, wine, &c. the *Salt houſes* at *Hall*, and ſome other places; very fair lands belonging unto his domain; and beſides this, a ſtanding and perpetual tax laid upon the Subject, towards the maintenance of the war againſt the *Turk*; granted at firſt in times of danger and hoſtility; but gathered ever ſince in the times of peace (as to that Enemy) under colour of being ready and prepared againſt him. According to the quantity of his *Intrado* ſo he keeps his States, well ſerved, and better attended, than any other of the *Electors*: there being at one time in the Court of *Chriſtian*, the Father of the preſent Duke, three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations (beſides the Nobility of his own) all penſioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhalt*, and one of the Earls of *Mansfield*, both Homagers unto the *Saxon*, being two of the number.

The Arms of *Saxony*, are Barre-wiſe of ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowred *Vert*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emp. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, when he confirmed *Barnard* of *Anhalt* in this Dukedom. For *Barnard* deſiring of the Emperour to have ſome difference added to the Ducal coat; (being before only Barry, *Sable* and *Or*) to diſtinguiſh him and his ſucceſſors from thoſe of the former houſe: the Emperour took a Chaplet of *Rue*, which he had then upon his head, and threw it croſs his Buckler or *Eſchocheon* of Arms, which was preſently painted on the ſame.

18. BRUNSWICK, and 19. LUNENBOURG.

The Dukedoms of BRUNSWICK and LUNENBOURG, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of *Saxony*, extracted both from the ſame root, and many times united in the perſon of the ſame one Prince; ſhall be joyned together in the ſtory, though ſevered in the *Chorographie*, or deſcription of them; bounded on the Eaſt, with *Magdebourg* and *Mansfield* in the Upper *Saxony*; on the Weſt, with *Weſtphalia*; on the North, with *Denmark*; on the South, with *Haſſia*. The Air in all parts hereof very cold and comfortleſs, but ſound and healthful; the ſoyl towards the old *Marches* of *Brandenbouag*, but meanly fertile; towards *Duringen* & *Haſſia*, mountainous & woody; in

Brunſwick, and Lunenburg.

in other parts very plentifull of corn, and well provided alſo of ſuch other commodities, as uſually do grow in thoſe colder climates.

But to take the *Chorography* of them ſeverally, **BRUNSWICK** is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Earldom of *Mansfield*; on the Weſt. with *Weſtphalen*; on the North, with *Lunenburg*; on the South, with *Haſsia*. So called from *Brunſwick* the chief City, and head of this Dukedom.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1 *Goſlar*, upon the River *Goſe*, whence it had the name; Of a poor Village, made a City by *Henry* the firſt, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who founded here two Churches and a ſtately Palace. Now one of the *Imperial* Cities. 2 *Helmſtat*, in the middle way betwixt *Brunſwick* and *Magdeburg*; firſt fortified by *Charls*, ſon of *Charls* the *Great*, for a bridle to the neighbouring *Sclaves*: and being after given to the Abbats of *Werda*, was by them ſold to *William* Duke of *Brunſwick*. 3 *Quedelnberg*, built alſo by *Henry* the firſt, much increaſed ſince by the neighbourhood of a very rich Nunnery, the *Abbeſs* whereof had formerly the priviledges of a *Prince* of the *Empire*. 4 *Hildeſheim*, an antient City, honoured with an *Epiſcopal* See by *Charles* the *Great*, at the firſt converſion of the *Saxons*. 5 *Grubenhagen*, which gave title to a younger branch of the houſe of *Brunſwick*; a *principality* and a member of the Empire. 6 *Hannover*, on the River *Lein*, well built, very ſtrongly fortified, and not meanly traded. 7 *Brunſwick* upon the River *Onacter*, which paſſeth through it, paſſed over by many handſom Bridges; the *Metropolis* of the antient *Saxony*, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom: though of it ſelf *Imperial*, and one of the *Hanſe*. The City of a *Quadrangular* form, ſeated on the midſt of a plain very fruitfull of corn, in compaſs about two *Dutch*, or eight *Engliſh* miles; ſomewhat larger than *Nurenberg*, and leſs than *Erdford*: containing in that compaſs not above twelve Churches, whereof two have Steeples covered with Lead, a third with Braſs, all the reſt with Tile. Rich, populous, and ſtrongly fortified, on ſome ſides with a double, on others with a trebble wall; within which walls are five Cities, diſtinguiſhed by *priviledges*, but united by *Laws*. The whole firſt built by *Bruno*, ſon to *Ludolphus* Duke of *Saxony*, and Uncle to the Emperour *Henry* the firſt, about the year 861. from whence it had the name of *Brunſwick*, or *Brunonis vicus*; by the more elegant *Latiniſts*, *Brunopolis*. 8 *Hamelen*, on the Eaſt ſide of the *Weſer*, or *Viſurgis*, encompaſſed with a deep moat, (occaſioned by a ſtream cut out of the River) round about which are divers fortifications, and planted with Ordnance. Nigh unto this town is the mountain called alſo *Hamelen*; unto which the *Pied piper* (as they call him) led the children of *Halberſtadt*, where they all ſunk and never more were ſeen; but of this ſtory more hereafter, when we come to *Tranſylvania*. 9 *Wolfebaiten*, or *Wolfen buttel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For though *Brunſwick* giveth him his title, yet will it not yield him any obedience, but reputeth her ſelf among the *Hanſetowns*; for which cauſe there hath been great wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10 *Halberſtadt*, a Biſhops See; the late Biſhop (or *Adminiſtrator* of the Biſhoprick) being *Chriſtian* Duke of *Brunſwick*, that noble young ſouldier, who had vowed his life and fortune to the ſervice of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Couſin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the *Garter*. A Biſhoprick of great revenue, and a very large territory, ſince the alteration of *Religion*, given with the title of *Adminiſtrator*, to the ſons of *Brunſwick*: but now by the concluſions at *Munſter*, aſſigned over to the Elector of *Brandenbourg*, with the title of Prince of *Halberſtadt*, the Family of *Brunſwick* being to be recompenſed with an alternate ſucceſſion in the Biſhoprick of *Oſnaburg*, and ſome other additionals. 11 *Hetfeld*, the ſeat ſometimes of the old *Palatines* of *Saxonie*: but not elſe obſervable. 12 *Amelungsbame*, another town of the ſaid *Palatines*, by one of which called *Sigifridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abby; the principal towns (in thoſe dayes) of this *Palatinate*, which bordering on that part of the *Turingians* which is now called *Haſsia*, was taken in by *Hurman*, one of the Lantgraves of that Countrey, on the proſcription of Duke *Henry* ſurnamed the *Lion*; but on the failer of his iſſue, recovered for thr moſt part by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, the right heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of **LUNENBOURG** hath on the Eaſt, the Dioceſe of *Magdebourg*; on the Weſt, the Dioceſe of *Bremen*, a part of *Weſtphalia*; on the North, the *Elb*; and on the South, the Dukedom of *Brunſwick*. So called from *Lunenbourg* the chief City, once the ſeat of the Dukes.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, are, 1 *Lunenbourg* it ſelf, ſituate on the River *Elvenaw*, an *Imperial* City, and one of the principal of the *Hanſe*; ſo called from the *Moon* here worſhipped in the times of *Idolatry*. Of a round form, and ſeated in a pleaſant valley; but with mountains near it: on one of which called *Calberg*, is a very ſtrong Caſtle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens; who without this Fort, could not be maſter of their *Liberties*. The walls about it are of earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep; the buildings generally fair (for the moſt part of Brick) the chief whereof is the *Common-Council* houſe; the ſtreets broad and long, with two ſpacious Market-places; but of no very pleaſing ſmell: the whole about a mile and a half in length, half a mile in breadth; containing ſix Pariſh Chutches. But the thing moſt conſiderable in it is the *Fountain* of *Salt*, (the greateſt riches of this City) and the *houſe* in which the *Salt* is boiled, containg 52 rooms, and in each room 8 leaden pans, in which are boiled daily 8 tuns of *Salt*, every tun being ſold for 8 *Flemiſh* ſhillings, bought by the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; ſome part of the profits of it belonging to the Duke, ſome to the City, the reſt to the *Adventurers* who employ their ſtocks on it. 2 *Cella*, the ſeat of the Dukes of *Lunenberg*. 3 *Gethern*, of no great bigneſs or eſtimation, but for a ſtrong Caſtle of the Dukes. 4 *Oldendorp*, ſituate betwixt the *Venaw* and the River *Eſca*, memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, *Anno* 1633. betwixt the *Imperialiſts* and the *Swedes*, the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, beſide, ſuch as were found dead in the fields and high wayes, all covered over with dead bodies: took

1500.

Lunenburg. 1500 of them priſoners, and got into their hands 13 pieces of *Ordnance*, good ſtore of Ammunition, and three mules laden with ſilver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this victory drawing in *Hamelen*, ond other places of importance, which ſtood out before. 5. *Verda*, an Epiſcopal See, but made a *Lay fee*, as moſt other *Biſhopricks* amongſt the *Lutherans*; the profits hereof being received commonly by a ſon of *Danemark* with the title of *Adminiſtrator*: and laſtly by the treaty of *Munſter*, appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*; the Kings whereof to be entituled Dukes of *Werden*. 6 *Rotenberg*, the chief ſeat of the Biſhops of *Verda*.

The antient Inhabitants of theſe Dukedoms were the *Dugublini* of *Tacitus*, with ſome parts of the *Chanci* and *Cheruſci*: theſe laſt of moſt fame for the blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in *Germany*, after *Druſus*, for *Auguſtus Cæſar*. Who behaving himſelf with great inſolency towards the Natives, was ſetupon by theſe *Cheruſci*, and their confederates, under the conduct of *Arminius*, a great Prince amongſt them; himſelf ſlain, and his whole Army conſiſting of three Legions, miſerably cut off, and deſpightfully uſed: which loſs, and the ſhame thereof, ſo diſtracted the Emperour, (not formerly accuſtomed to the like miſſortunes) that he was many times obſerved to tear his beard, knock his head againſt the poſts, and cry out in the bitterneſs of his paſſion, *Redde mihi legiones Quintili Varo*. Having long time after this maintained their liberty (for the *Romans* kept themſelves from that time forwards, on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*) they were at laſt ſubdued by the *Saxons*: continuing part of that great Dukedom till the time of the 3 *Othoes*, Emperours of the *Romans*, and Dukes of *Saxonie*; who looking on the Empire as a ſtate of inheritance, diminiſhed both the Grandure and Revenue of their antient Patrimony, partly by the Donation or endowment of many Biſhopricks, and partly by the Erection of many petit Seigneuries, to be holden under them as chief Lords of all. Amongſt which, that of *Lunenbourg* was one of the leaſt, continuing as a State diſtinct, till ſuch time as *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenbourg* was by the Emperour *Otho* the 3d. made Duke of *Saxony*, and created the firſt Duke Elector, whereby again united to the reſt of that Dukedom, the greateſt part whereof he held in his actual poſſeſſion, together with a Superiority or Juriſdiction over the reſidue (the great Biſhopricks excepted only) which had been parcelled out, as before is ſaid, and it continued thus united, till the proſcription of *Henry* ſurnamed the *Lion*, ſpoken of before: whoſe reconciliation being made, by means of *Henry* the ſecond of *England*, whoſe daughter *Maud* he had formerly married, the Emperour *Barbaroſſa* reſtored to him again the Cities of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenberg*, with their ſeveral Territories; of which his two ſons *Henry* and *William* were firſt created Earls, then Dukes, the one of *Brunſwick*, and the other of *Lunenbourg*, by the Emp. *Frederick* the ſecond. Which honours and Eſtates do ſtill remain unto their Poſterities. Before I come to the ſucceſſion of which Princes, I ſhall crave leave to ſpeak of the Original of the *Guelfian* Family, Dukes at the ſame time, of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*; of which they are at this time the ſole remainder. A Family derived from one *Guelphus* (whence it had the name) the ſon of *Iſenberdus* Earl of *Altorf* in *Schwaben*; whoſe wife called *Jermintrudis*, having accuſed a poor woman of Adultery, and cauſed her to be grievouſly puniſhed, for having 12 children at a birth; was afterwards delivered of the like number, and all of them ſons. Her husband being abſent at the time of her delivery, ſhe commanded the *Nurſe* to kill 11 of them; fearing (it ſeems) the like ſhame and puniſhment, as by her inſtigation was inflicted on the other woman. The *Nurſe* going to perform this ungodly command, was met by the old Earl, then returning homewards: who asked her what ſhe had in her Apron, ſhe made anſwer *Whelps*; he deſired to ſee them, ſhe denyed him. Angry at this refuſal, he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his own ſons pretty ſweet babes, and of moſt promiſing countenances. Examining the matter he found out the truth, and enjoyning the *old Trot* to be ſecret in it, he put the children out to Nurſe; ſix years expired, the Earl invited to a Feaſt moſt of his own and his Ladies kinred, and attiring the young boyes all alike, preſented them unto their mother. Who ſuſpecting by the number of them, what the matter was, confeſſed her offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her children: Whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelpes*, alluding to the *Whelps* or Puppies, which the Nurſe told him ſhe had in her Apron. From the eldeſt of theſe *Guelphs* or *Guelpes* ſucceeded that *Henry Guelph*, ſon of *Robert* Earl of *Altorf*, whom *Conrade* the ſecond made Duke of *Bavaria*, many of whoſe poſterity enjoyed that Dukedom: increaſed at laſt by the addition of the Duke of *Saxony*, in the perſon of Duke *Henry* ſirnamed the *proud*, Father of *Henry* called the *Lion*, and grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the firſt Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, whoſe ſucceſſion followeth in this Order.

The DUKES of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*.

1 *Henry* ſirnamed the *Lion*, the laſt Duke of *Saxony*, and the firſt of this Title.

Brunſwick.

1195 2 *Henry*, firſt Earl, after Duke of *Brunſwick*.
1213 3 *Otho* ſon of *William* Duke of *Lunenburg*; after the death of *Henry* Duke of *Brunſwick* alſo.
1254 4 *Albert*, ſon of *Otho*.
1279 5 *Albert* II. ſon of *Albert*.
1318 6 *Otho* II ſon of *Albert* the ſecond.

Lunenberg.

1195 2 *William*, firſt Earl, after Duke of *Lunenburg*.
1252 4 *John*, ſon of *Otho*.
1261 5 *Otho* II. ſon of *John*.
1330 6 *Otho* III. ſon of *Otho* the ſecond.

1334 6 *Magnus*

Haſſia.

7 *Magnus*, ſon of *Albert* II. on the failing of the other houſe, enjoyed both Eſtates.

334 8 *Magnus* II, ſon of *Magnus* the firſt,
368 9 *Henry* II. ſon of *Magnus* the ſecond.
373 10 *William*, ſon of *Henry*.
416 11 *William* II. ſon of *William*.
482 12 *Henry* II. ſon of *William* the ſecond.
503 13 *Henry* III. ſon of *Henry* the ſecond.
514 14 *Julius*, ſon of *Henry* the third.
568 15 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Julius*, who married the Lady *Elizabeth*, ſiſter to *Anne* Queen of *England*.
589 16 *Frederick Ulric*, ſon of *Elizabeth* of *Denmark*, and of *Henry Julius*.
634 17 *Auguſtus*, ſon of *Henry* Duke of *Lunenbourg*, ſucceeded on the death of *Frederick Ulric*, and the failer of the houſe of *Brunſwick* in him, in this Dukedom.

10 *Barnard*, brother of *Magnus* the ſecond.
1434 11 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Barnard*.
1478 12 *Otho* III. ſon of *Frederick*.
1514 13 *Henry* the III. ſon of *Otho* the third.
1532 14 *Otho* IV. ſon of *Henry* the third.
15 *Erneſt*, the brother of *Otho* ſucceeded in his brothers life time: ſurrendring his Eſtate for an Annual penſion.
1546 16 *Henry* IV. ſon of *Erneſt*.
1590 17 *Erneſt* II. ſon of *Henry* the fourth.
18 *Wolfgangus*, the brother of *Henry* the fourth, and Uncle of *Erneſtus* the ſecond now Duke of *Lunenbourg*, Anno 1648.

The Arms of theſe Dukedoms were firſt the ſame, that is to ſay, *Gules*, two Lyons, *Or*, Armed *Azure*; which Arms they took by reaſon of their extraction from the Kings of *England*, then Dukes of *Normandy*; reteined to this day by the Dukes of *Brunſwick* without any addition. But thoſe of *Lunenbourg* have added three Coats more unto it: the whole bearing being quarterly, 1. *Gules*, two Lions, *Or*, Armed *Azure*; 2 *Azure*, Seme of Hearts *Gules*, a Lion of *Azure*, Armed and Crowned, *Or*, 3 *Azure*, a Lion *Argent*, Crowned *Gules*; and 4. *Gules*, within a Border Componie, *Or*, and *Azure*; a Lion of the *ſecond*, Armed of the *third*.

HASSIA.

HASSIA, is bounded on the North with *Brunſwick*; on the South with *Veteravia*, or the State of *Wederaw*; on the Eaſt with *Turingia*; and on the Weſt with *Weſtphalia*. So called from the *Heſſi*, who having vanquiſhed the *Chatti*, the old Inhabitants of this Countrey, poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached here by *Boniface*, or *Winifred*, an *Engliſh Saxon*, (afterwards Archbiſhop of *Mentz*) *An* 730. or thereabouts. Of whom I find this memorable Apophthegm, *That in old time there were golden Prelates, and wooden Chalices; but in his time wooden Prelates and golden Chalices.* Not much unlike to which I have read another, but of late date, *viz.* that once the *Chriſtians had blind Churches, and lightſom hearts*: but now they have *lightſom Churches, and blind hearts.*

The Countrey is very fruitful of Corn, and affordeth good Paſturage for the feeding of Cattel, of which they have great droves and herds in many places; with great abundance of Stags, and other Deer for the pleaſure of hunting, harboured in the Woods hereof; with which in many parts of it, it is very much ſhaded. It breedeth alſo on the Downs good ſtore of ſheep, enriched with the fineſt fleece of any in *Germany*; the Staple commodity of this Countrey: and in the mountainous parts hereof there want not rich Mines of Braſs, Lead, and other Metals; which yield great profit to the people.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Alendorf*, on the *Weſer*, (or *Viſnegis*) of much eſteem for the ſprings or Fountains of Salt which are thereabouts. 2. *Friſlar*, upon the *Eder*, well walled, and ſituate in a fruitful and pleaſant ſoyl, belonging to the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Mentz*; but in regard of the convenient ſituation of it, much aimed at, many times attempted, and ſometimes forcibly poſſeſſed, both by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, and Dukes of *Saxony*. 3 *Fuld*, on a River of that name, remarkable for the Monaſtery there founded by *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, by the name of Saint *Saviours*, the Abbot of which is a Prince of the Empire, Chancellour of the Empereſs, and Lord of a goodly Territory in this Countrey; called from hence *Stift Fuld*. 4. *Frankenberg*, on the *Eder* alſo, ſo called from the French, who incamped there in their Wars againſt the Saxons; firſt founded by *Theodorick* the French King, *Anno* 520. but much enlarged by *Charles* the Great, about the year 804. 5. *Eſchewege*, on the brow of an hill neer the River *Wert*; of great trading for the Wood, of which the fields adjoyning yield a rich encreaſe. Being deſtroyed by the Hungarians, it was re-edified and enlarged by the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond: and having ſuffered much miſery in the long War between *Adolph*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz* and the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, it fell at laſt into the poſſeſſion of the Lantgrave, *An.* 1387. 6 *Melſingen*, on the River *Fuld*. 7 *Darmſtad*, lately, if not at the preſent, the ſeat and inheritance of Count *Ludovick*, of the younger houſe of the Lantgraves, taken priſoner by Count *Manſfield*. An. 1622. and his whole Countrey expoſed unto ſpoil and rapine: becauſe (beſides many other ill offices) he was the chief perſuader of the *Princes of the Union*, to diſband their forces, provided for defence of themſelves and the *Palatinate*; and to reconcile themſelves to the Emperour. 8 *Marpurg*, the ſeat of the ſecond houſe of the Lantgraves, deſcending from that *Philip*, who was Lantgrave in the time of *Charles* the fifth, whom he ſo valiantly withſtood; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Lon*, amongſt Viny downs, and ſhady Mountains: honoured with an Univerſity founded here by *Lewis*, Biſhop of *Munſter*, *Anno* 1426. and beautified with a magnificent Caſtle (the ordinary dwelling of thoſe Princes) ſituate on an high Hill ſomewhat out of the Town, which gives it a very gal-

Haſſia. gallant proſpect over the Town and Countrey. 9 *Geiſen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*, and a ſmall Univerſity alſo. 10 *Dietz*, upon the River *Lon*, belonging alſo to the houſe of *Caſſels*. 11 *Caſſels*, the chief Town and ordinary reſidence of the Lantgraves of the elder houſe, who are hence ſometimes called the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*: commodiouſly ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoyl, and well fortified with ſtrong earthen walls, and deep ditches; but the houſes in it of no great beauty, being compoſed for the moſt part of wood, thatch and clay.

Within the limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, not ſubject to the *Lantgraves* of *Haſſia*, though included within the bounds of it before laid down, taking up the Weſtern parts thereof, where it meets with *Weſtphalia*: in figure very near a ſquare, each ſide of which is of the length of ſix ordinary *Dutch*, or 24 *Engliſh* miles. The ſoyl much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *Haſſia*, ſave that it hath ſome veins of Quickſilver, and inexhauſtible Mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; theſe laſt in greateſt plenty about *Veldug*, and the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſenburg*, two of the beſt Towns and places of it. Others of chief note. 3 *Waldeck* it ſelf on the River *Eder*, the firſt ſeat of the Earls hereof, who have here an antient Caſtle, from whence the whole Countrey takes its name. 4 *Mengerhuſe*, in a fair Caſtle whereof live the preſent Earls. 5 *Witterberg*, in a pleaſant and fruitful ſoyl, betwixt the Rivers *Twiſt* and *Abra*. 6 *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Albertus Magnus*, for its Golden Mines, yielding great profit to theſe Earls. The Pedegree of which Earls is fetched from one *Witichind* Earl of *Snalenberg*, whom *Charls* the Great made Advocate, or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*, being an Office in theſe times of great juriſdiction. By *Witichind* the ſecond, one of his Succeſſors, this Office was ſurrendred into the hands of the Chapter, for the ſum of 300 Marks in ſilver; and to cut off all further claims, *Henry*, the nephew of this *Witichind*, by his ſon *Otho*, was by the Chapter gratified with the Town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the firſt Earl: whoſe nephew *Henry*, ſurnamed *Ferreus*, ſubdued *Corbach*, *Anno* 1366. and added it to his Eſtate. By a third *Henry*, Grandchild of this *Ferreus*, or man of Iron, this Earldom formerly held in fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was firſt put under the patronage and protection of the *Lantgraves* of *Haſſia*, *Anno* 1428. as it continueth to this day: the Earls hereof content with their Eſtates, and more addicted to the Book, than unto the ſword, have acted little in the Wars to improve their fortunes.

The antient Inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the reſt of *Haſſia*, and alſo of the County of *Naſſaw* in *Veteravia*, near unto adjoyning, were the *Catti*, or *Chatti*, mentioned by the antients: firſt conquered (after the withdrawing of the *Roman* forces) by the *Heſſi*, and both ſubdued not long after by the *Thuringians*. Subject unto the *Lantgraves* of *Duringen*, till the death of *Henry*, the laſt of the male iſſue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the diviſion of whoſe eſtate, the Weſtern moiety of *Duringen* fell to the ſhare of *Henry*, Duke of *Brabant*, one of the competitours, who leaving the title of *Lantgrave* of *Duringen* to the Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, took to himſelf the title of the *Lantgrave* of *Heſſen*, in memory of the *Heſſi* ſpoken of before. Of his Succeſſors the moſt puiſſant was that *Philip*, who in the time of *Charles* the fifth, much ſwayed the affairs of *Germany*, *Anno* 1520. he diſcomfited King *Ferdinand*, and reſtored *Ulrick* to the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*; *An.* 1530. he united all the *Proteſtant* Princes and Cities of *Germany* in a *common league* at *Smalcald*; for the defence of the Proteſtant *Religion*; *Anno* 1545. he undertook the cauſe of *Goſlaria* againſt the Duke of *Brunſwick*, whom in a ſet battel he took priſoner, together with his ſon, and poſſeſſed his Countrey; *Anno* 1548. he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany* in an *offenſive* and *defenſive* league againſt *Charles* the fifth. But that War ſucceeded not proſperouſly. For the Duke of *Saxony*, his perpetual *Confederate*, being taken priſoner, he ſubmitted himſelf to the Emperour at *Kale*, or *Hale* in *Duringen*, his ſons-in-law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marqueſs of *Brandenburg*, and *Wolfang* Prince of *Deux ponts*, having given their bonds for his return. The conditions of his pardon were, firſt, that he ſhould diſmantle all his Towns except *Caſſel*. 2 That he ſhould yield up unto the Emperour all his munition. 3 That he ſhould pay unto the Emperour 150000 Crowns. The ſame night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to ſupper, his ſons-in-law of *Saxonie* and *Brandenburg* accompanying him. After ſupper, he was contrary to the Laws of hoſpitality, and the Emperours exact promiſe, deteined priſoner. The fallacy ſtood thus. In the Emperours compact with the three Princes, the words were, that the *Lantgrave* ſhou'd be kept, *Nicht in einig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in any priſon*: which the Emperours Secretary by a ſmall daſh of his pen, turned into *Nicht in ewig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in everlaſting Priſon*. Well, in priſon he ſtaid five years; which being expired, he was again ſet at large by Duke *Maurice*, the overthrower and reſtorer of the *German* liberty. The reſidue of theſe *Lantgraves* in their ſeveral times, occur in the enſuing Catalogue of

The LANTGRAVES of *HASSIA*.

1263 1 *Henry* of Brabant, ſon of *Henry*, Duke of Brabant, and of *Sophia* his wife, daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth, *Lantgrave* of Thuringia; after a nine years War betwixt him and the Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, divided the eſtate, and took unto himſelf the title of *Lantgrave* of *Heſſen*.
1308 2 *Otho*, and *John*, ſons of *Henry*.
1323 3 *Henry* II. and *Lewis*, ſons of *Otho*.
1376 4 *Herman*, the ſon of *Lewis*
1414 5 *Lewis* II. ſon of *Herman*, ſurnamed the *Milde*.

Weſt-phalia.

1458 6 *Lewis* III. ſon of *Lewis* the *Milde*.
7 *William*, the eldeſt ſon of *Lewis* the third, diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by
8 *William* II. his youngeſt brother.
1509 9 *Philip*. the famous Lantgrave ſpoken of before, ſon of *William* the ſecond.
1567 10 *William* III. eldeſt ſon of *Philip*, ſucceeded in one moiety of the eſtate, and reſided at *Caſſiles*: the other moiety being divided betwixt his brethren *Ludowick* of *Marpurg*, and *George* of *Darmſtad*, father of *Ludowick* of *Darmſtad* before mentioned.
1590 11 *Maurice*, eldeſt ſon of *William* the third.
12 *William* IV. ſon of *Maurice*, now living, 1648.

The Arms of theſe Lantgraves are Azure, a Lyon Barry of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Gules*, Crowned *Or.* Which being properly and originally the Arms of the Antient Dukes of *Fraucony*, were given by *Conradus Salicus*, Duke of *Franconia*, and Emperour, to *Lewis* of *Orleans*, at ſuch time as he inveſted him in the Lantgravedom of *Turingia*: on the expiration of whoſe line, challenged and born by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, as the the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the ſixth, and his brother *Henry*, the laſt made Princes of that houſe.

WESTPHALIA.

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and part of *Lunenburg*; on the Weſt, with the Biſhoprick of Colen, Cleveland, Overyſſel, Weſt and Eaſt-Friſeland. and the German Ocean; on the North, with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holſtein*; and on the South, with *Weteravia*, and ſome part of *Haſſia*,

It was thus called of the Weſtphali, a tribe, or diviſion of the Saxons, diſtinguiſhed heretofore into the Tranſalbinos, inhabiting in the County of Holſtein, now a part of Denmark; the *Ooſtphali*, betwixt the Elb, the Ocean, with the River of Saltza, and the Weſer; taking up the Biſhopricks of Breme, Verden, Hildeſhem, Halberſtat, and Meydburg, with the Dukedoms of Lunenburg and Brunſwick: the Angrivarians, taking up the North-weſt part of the modern Weſtphalen, betwixt the Biſhoprick of Breme, and the Earldom of Colen: and finally, the Weſtphali, or Weſtern Saxons, inhabiting the reſt of the modern Weſtphalen, with the Earldoms of Mark, Berk, Zutphen, the ſeigneury of Over-yſſell, and ſome parts of Guelderland, and Holland: but the Saxons being ſubjugated by the power of the French, and ſeveral new Eſtates erected out of that old ſtock; the remnant of the Weſtphali and Angrivarians, (the Biſhoprick of Breme being added unto the accompt,) were comprehended and united in the name of WESTPHALEN.

The ſoil, according to the ſeveral parts of it, is of different natures: the parts adjoyning to the Weſer being deſert, and barren; thoſe towards the Earldoms of Mark and Bergen, mountainous and full of Woods; the Biſhoprick of Bremen, except towards the Elb, full of dry ſands, heaths, and unfruitful thickets, like the wild parts of Windſor Forreſt betwixt Stanes and Fernham. In other parts exceeding plentiful of Corn, and of excellent paſturage; ſtored with great plenty of wild fruits, and (by reaſon of the many Woods) abundance of Acorns: with infinite herds of ſwine (which they breed up with thoſe natural helps) of ſo good a relliſh, that a Gammon of Weſtphalian Bacon, is reckoned for a principal diſh at a great man's Table.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Majores* about Bremen, the Chanani, Angrivarii, and Bructeri, inhabiting about Munſter, Oſnaburg, and ſo onwards to the land of Colen; and part of the Cheruſci (before ſpoken of) taking up thoſe parts which lie neareſt unto Brunſwick, and Lunenburg. All of them vanquiſhed by *Druſus*, the ſon-in-law of *Auguſtus*; but ſoon reſtored to their former liberty, by the great overthrow given by the Cheruſci, and their aſſociates, to *Quintilius Varus*. Afterwards uniting into one name with the French, they expulſed the Romans out of Gaul: leaving their forſaken, and ill-inhabited ſeats, to be taken up by the Saxons; with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themſelves, both in name and Nation. Of that great body it continued a conſiderable Member (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom) till the proſcription and deprivation of Duke *Henry* the *Lion*; at what time, the parts beyond the Weſer were uſurped by *Barnard* Biſhop of *Paderborn*; thoſe betwixt the Weſer and the Rhene, by *Philip* Archbiſhop of Colen, whoſe ſucceſſors ſtill hold the title of Dukes of Weſtphalen: the Biſhopricks of Breme, Munſter, Paderborn, and Mindaw, having been formerly endowed with goodly Territories, had ſome accrewments alſo out of this eſtate: every one catching hold of that which lay neareſt to him. But not to make too many ſubdiviſions of it, we will divide it onely into theſe two parts; *viz.* 1 Weſtphalen, ſpecially ſo called, and 2 The Biſhoprick of Bremen.

In *WESTPHALEN*, ſpecially ſo called, which is that part hereof which lyeth next to Cleveland, the places of moſt obſervation are, 1 Geſeke, a Town of good repute; 2 Brala, a Village of great beauty; 3 Arusberg; and 4 Fredeborch, honoured with the title of Prefectures; 5 Wadenborch; 6 Homberg, lording it over fair and ſpacious Territories. All which, with two Lordſhips, and eight Prefectures more, diſperſed in the Dukedom of Engern, and County of Surland, belong unto the Biſhop of Colen; the titulary Duke of Weſtphalen, and really of Angrivaria, (Engern) as he ſtiles himſelf; the title and poſſeſſion of Duke of Engern, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno* Archbiſhop hereof, ſon of *Henry* the firſt. Emperour and King of Germany, ſurnamed the Fowler, with the conſent of *Otho* the firſt his eldeſt brother. 7 Mountabour, (perhaps Mont-Tabor) ſeated in that part hereof, which is called Weſterwald, a Town of conſequence, belonging to the Elector of Triers. 8 Rhenen, *Weſtphalen* and *Breme.*

9 Schamlat, and 10 Beckem, reaſonable good Towns, all of the Biſhoprick of Munſter. 11 Munſter it ſelf, famous for the Treaty, and concluſions made upon that treaty, for the Peace of Germany, ſeated upon the River *Ems*, and ſo called from a Monaſtery here founded by *Charls* the Great, which gave beginning to the Town; ſuppoſed to be that Mediolanum, which *Ptolemy* placeth in this tract. A beautiful, and well fortified City, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the *Temporal* Lord of it, Famous for the woful Tragedies here acted by a lawleſs crew of *Anabaptiſts*, who choſe themſelves a King (that famous Taylor, *John* of *Leiden*) whom they called King of Sion; as they named the City New Jeruſalem; proclaimed a community both of goods and women, cut off the heads of all that oppoſed their doings: and after many fanatick and deſperate actions, by the care and induſtry of the Biſhop and his confederates, brought to condigne puniſhment. The Story is to be ſeen at large in Sleiden, Mr. *Hooker's* Preface, and ſome modern Pamphlets; wherein, as in a Mirrour, we may plainly ſee the face of the preſent times. 12 Oſnaburg, firſt built, as ſome ſay, by *Julius Caſar*; as others, by the Earls of Engern; but neither ſo antient as the one, nor of ſo late a ſtanding as the others make it; here being an Epiſcopal See founded by *Charles* the Great, who gave it all the privileges of an Univerſity. Liberally endowed at the firſt erection of the ſame, and ſince ſo well improved, both in Power and Patrimony, that an alternate ſucceſſion in it by the Dukes of Brunſwick hath been concluded on in the Treaty of Munſter, as a fit compenſation for the Biſhoprick of Halberſtad, (otherwiſe diſpoſed of by that Treaty) of late enjoyed wholly by that family. 13 Quakenberg, on the River Haſe. 14 Warendorp; and 15 Wildſhuſen, Towns of that Biſhoprick. 16 Paderborn, an Epiſcopal See alſo, founded by *Charles* the Great, at the firſt converſion of the Saxons; more antient than ſtrong, yet more ſtrong than beautiful. 17 Ringelenſtein; and 18 Oſſendorf, belonging to the Biſhop of Paderborn. 19 Minden, upon the Weſer, another of the Epiſcopal Sees founded by *Charls* the Great, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony: converted to lay-uſes ſince the Reformation, under colour of Adminiſtration of the goods of the Biſhoprick; and now by the concluſions at Munſter, ſetled for ever on the Electors of Brandenburg, with the title of Prince of Minden. 20 Rintelin; a ſtrong Town, conveniently ſeated on the Weſer, not far from Minden; to the Biſhop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that Weſtphalen had formerly been a part of Saint *Peter's Patrimony*, belonging wholly to the Clergy; but there are ſome Free Cities, and ſecular Princes, which have ſhares therein. As 1 Warburg, a neat Town, but ſeated on an even piece of ground, near the River Dimula; a Town which tradeth much in good Ale, brewed here, and ſold in all parts of the Countrey: heretofore a County of it ſelf under the Earls hereof, now governed in the nature of a Free eſtate, and reckoned an Imperial City. 2 Brakel, accompted of as Imperial alſo. 3 Hervorden, a Town of good ſtrength and note, governed by its own Laws and Magiſtrates, under the protection of Colen. 4 Lemgow, belonging heretofore to the Earls of Lippe; but by them ſo well privileged and enfranchiſed, that now it governeth it ſelf as a Free eſtate. Here is alſo 5 The Town and County of Ravensburg, belonging antiently to the Dukes of Cleve, and now in the rights of that houſe, to the Elector of Brandenburg: As alſo 6 the Town and Countrey of Lippe, lying on the Weſt-ſide of the Weſer; the Pedegree of the Earls whereof ſome fetch from that Sp. Manlius, who defended the Roman Capitol againſt the Galls, (they might as well derive it from the Geeſe which preſerved that Capitol;) others with greater modeſty look no higher for it, than to the times of *Charles* the Great, one of the noble Families of the antient Saxons. 7 Here alſo ſtands the Town and Caſtle of Aremberg commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony thereunto adjoyning; which being much increaſed by the acceſſion of Sedan in the neighbouring Belgium, was by the Heir general of this houſe conveyed in married to Engelbert, the ninth Earl of Mark, whoſe ſecond ſon, called *Eberhard* (but the onely one he had by this venter) ſucceeded in his Mothers eſtates and honour; which were kept undivided, till Eberhard the ſixth Lord thereof of the houſe of Mark, contenting himſelf with the titles and eſtates of Aremberg, left Sedan and the pieces which belonged unto it, to his younger brother *Robert*. The Great Grandchild of this *Eberhard*, called alſo *Robert*, created the firſt Earl of Aremberg, left his eſtates and titles to his ſiſter *Margaret*, married to *John* Lord of Brabanſon, a perſon of great note and power in the Belgick Provinces, and faithful to the laſt in the cauſe and quarrel of King *Philip* the ſecond, in which finaly he loſt his life, *Anno* 1568. leaving both his eſtates and title unto *Charles* his ſon, frequently mentioned by the name of *Charles* Earl of Aremberg in the Stories of the Belgick Wars, in which he was no leſs conſiderable for his eminent Valour, than for his ſingular fidelity to his Lord and Maſter. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but theſe moſt conſiderable: all of them Homagers of the Empire, but their acknowledgments hereof little more than titular; though ſince in danger of performing more real ſervices; the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond after the ſurprize of Holſtein, and ſome part of Danemark, *Anno* 1627. gaining ſo far upon this Countrey, that had not the King of Sweden come in ſo ſeaſonably, he had made himſelf abſolute Maſter of it; and by the opportunity of the ſituation of it on the back of the Netherlands, forced the United States to ſome great extremities. As for the title of Duke of Weſtphalen and Engern, it hath been long uſed (as before was ſaid) by the Biſhops of Colen: as alſo (but with better right, as to that of Weſtphalen) by the houſe of Lawenburg, deſcended from the antient Electoral Family; writing themſelves in that regard Dukes of Saxony, Weſtphalen, and Angrivaria, or Engern.

2. The Biſhoprick of *BREME* lieth on the other ſide of the Weſer, extending as far as to the Elb and the German Ocean. So called of 1 Breme the principal City, ſeated on the Weſer, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous, and rich; beautified with fair and

even ſtreets, and very ſtrongly fortified, againſt all invaſions, both by art and Nature; the Town being ſo ſeated amongſt Fens, occaſioned by the overflowings of the River, that it may be eaſily drowned on all ſides to keep off an enemy. Adorned alſo with a ſpacious Market-place, a fair Councilhouſe, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Arch-biſhop, who is the temporal Lord of the Town and Territory. Other Towns of ſpecial note are. 2 *Oſenbridge*, not far from *Breme*, from whence great quantity of Linnen is brought yearly to *England*, and other places. 3 *Arуſten*, on the *Weſer*; alſo. 4 *Oterenberg*, on the river *Bolla*, not far from the fall thereof into the Ocean. 5 *Buxtertrude*, on the *Elb*, not far from *Hamburg*, but on the hither ſide of the water. 6 *Stode*, *Stadt*, or *Stadium*, ſeated on the river *Zuinghe*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*; accompted the antienteſt Town in all *Saxony*, and one of the firſt which was enrolled amongſt the *Hanſe*; and by ſpecial privilege had the pre-emption of all the Rheniſh wine that paſſed by them, and the right alſo of coining money. But being over-topped by the power and trade of *Hamburg*, (five Dutch miles from it) it grew at length ſo poor, and in ſuch decay, that their yearly Revenues came but to 90 l. *per annum*; ſo that they were fain to ſell their privileges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themſelves under the protection of the Biſhops of *Breme*. Revived again upon the coming thither of the Engliſh Merchants, who finding ſome hard meaſure from the *Hamburgers*, fixed their Staple here: by means whereof the Citizens in ſhort time grew exceeding wealthy; the building fair and beautiful, the town ſtrongly fortified. Situate in a place ſo eaſily overwhelmed with water, that the people in oſtentation of their ſtrength and ſecurity, uſed to have Ordnance of ſtone planted over their gates. But the late *German* wars have made them ſenſible of their folly: when notwithſtanding their new works, and an *Engliſh* Garriſon under Sir *Charles Morgan*, they were compelled to ſubmit themſelves to the Earl of *Tilly*, *An.* 1627. recovered after by the *Swedes* in the courſe of their victories.

As for the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, it was firſt founded by *Charles* the Great, in the perſon of *Willibode*, an *Engliſh Saxon*, one of the firſt Preachers of the Goſpel in theſe parts of this Countrey. The town before that time a poor village onely, being made an Archiepiſcopal See, and the Metropolitan of all the Churches of the North, quickly grew up into eſteem, as the Biſhop did in power and Patrimony, till they became Lords of this Tract. Governed ſince the reformation of Religion, by *Lay-Biſhops* or *Adminiſtrators* of the rents of the Biſhoprick; which under that title they inverted to their proper uſe. And now of late, by the Concluſions made at *Munſter*, ſetled as an inheritance on the Crown of *Sweden*, to be enjoyed, together with the Biſhoprick of *Verda*, by the Kings thereof; with the title of Dukes of *Breme*, and *Verden*: the antient liberties of thoſe Cities, formerly granted by their Biſhops, being ſtill preſerved.

EAST-FRISELAND.

EAST-FRISELAND is bounded on the Eaſt with the river *Weſer*, by which parted from *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt, with the river *Ems*, which parteth it from *Groyningen*, and the reſt of *Weſt-Friſeland*, on the North with the German Ocean; and on the South with the Earldom of *Mark*, a part of *Cleveland*. So called from the *Friſii*, who caſting out the old Inhabitants, poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and called it by their own name, *Friſeland*: divided by the *Ems* or *Amiſus*, into the Weſtern, ſpoken of amongſt the *Netherlands*, and the Eaſtern or *Eaſt-Friſeland*, in which now we are.

The nature of the ſoyl we ſhall ſee anon, when we come to the ſubdiviſion of it. Chief Rivers, beſides thoſe of *Ems*. and 2 *Weſer*, ſpoken of elſewhere. 3 *Jada*, which falleth into a great Bay, or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence *Die Jadie*: 4 *Dalliart*, on which ſtandeth the City of *Emden*. 5 *Delm*, and 6 *Honta*, neighbouring by *Delmenhorſt*, and *Oldenborch*, towns of this Countrey. The whole divided into 1 the County of *Emden*, or *Eaſt-Friſeland* properly ſo called; and 2 the Earldom of *Oldenburg*.

1. *EAST-FRISELAND* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the Weſt, the River *Ems*; on the North, the Ocean; on the Weſt, and South, the Earldom of *Oldenbourg*: called alſo the County of *EMDEN*, from the fair town of *Emden*, the chief City of it. The ſoyl hereof is very fruitfull, both in corn and paſturage; ſending great ſtore of Oxen, Horſes, Wool, Swine, Butter, Cheeſe, and all ſorts of Grain, into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not eaſily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatſoever. Chief towns herein are; *Emden*, ſo called from the *Ems*, on which it is ſituate, *Dollaert* a ſmall river falling here into it: a noted and wel-traded town, beautified with a Haven ſo deep and large, that the greateſt ſhips with full ſail are admitted into it. The people rich, affirmed to have 60 ſhips of 100 tuns apiece, and 600 leſſer Barks of their own, beſides 700 Buſſes and Fiſher-boats, maintained for the moſt part, by their Herring-fiſhing on the coaſts of *England*. The buildings generally fair, both private and publick, eſpecially the Church, the Town-hall, and Earl's Palace. The laſt a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle, ſituate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all ſides compaſſed by the Sea, and yet not ſtrong enough to preſerve the Townſ-men in their due obedience: who about 50 years ago, taking advantage on the abſence of their Earl, kept him out of their Town, becauſe he ſeemed not to approve the *Calvinian* humor, and have ſince governed in the nature of a Commonwealth, confederate with the *States* of the *United Provinces*, for their better eſtabliſhment and ſupport. So eaſily is Religion made a mask to diſguiſe rebellion. 2 *Auricts*, by ſome called *Anſeling*, ſeated in the Inlands, rich, and well walled, of great reſort, by reaſon of the pleaſure of hunting, afforded very liberally in the Foreſts and Woods adjoyning; drawing hither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3 *Eſen*, on the Sea ſhore, which gives the title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth

Eaſt-Friſeland.

alſo. 4 Jevere, ſituate on the Weſt of the River Jada, but both Earls ſubject to the Earl of Eaſt-Friſeland. 5 Vredeburg (that is to ſay, the Free Village) ſo-called from ſome immunities granted by the Earls; poſſeſſed a while by thoſe of Brunſwick, who fenced and garriſoned it for themſelves, but in the end recovered by Ezard the 2d. Earl. 6 Broick, the ſeat and proper government of the Anceſtors of theſe Earls, from whence the parts adjoyning are called Broickmerland. 7 Norden, another Præfecture or Captain-ſhip of the ſaid Anceſtors. 8 Dunort, a ſtrong Caſtle and retiring place of the Earls. 9 Linghen, upon the Ems, a ſtrong Town well fortified and as well garriſoned, belonging to the King of Spain, as Vicar to the Empire over all Friſeland, even to Ditmerſh and the confines of Danemark. A dignity procured by *Maximilian*, Grand-father to *Charles* the 5th, of the Emperour *Frederick* the 3d in right whereof, the King of Spain, as heir of the houſe of Burgundy, hath ſome preheminence over Emden, of little uſe to him ſince the falling off of the Belgick Provinces. More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Caſtles, ſtately dwelling houſes, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; ſtanding ſo thick, that in many places they joyn together: ſome of them being withal ſo large, ſo well peopled, and of ſtreets ſo ſpacious, that they may compare with many Cities in Germany, of all which the moſt City-like is named Leere.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci Minores*, deſcribed by *Pliny* to be ſo barbarous a people, and ſo deſtitute of all neceſſary proviſion for the life of Man, that they had no drink but rain-water, preſerved in great troughs before the doors of their Cottages. Theſe outed or ſubdued by the Friſons, a neighbouring people, poſſeſſing North-Holland, the Diſtrict of Utrecht, with the Countreys of Groyning and Weſt-Friſeland: who having once paſſed over the Ems, extended their Dominions as far as Danemark. Governed by Kings, but intermingled with, and overpowered by, the Saxons, till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom the laſt King *Roboald* overcome in fight, was perſuaded to receive the Sacrament of holy Baptiſm. But being told that his friends and kinſfolks were in hell, becauſe no Chriſtians; neither will I (ſaith he) be of that profeſſion, *for I love to be amongſt my kindred.* After this, Friſeland was a member of the French Kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of Holland by *Charles* the Bald, *Anno* 893. at which time all Friſeland on the Weſt-ſide of the Ems, was conferred upon him: poſſeſſed, but not without much war and bloodſhed, by his ſucceſſours; the Friſons ever and anon rebelling againſt them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Thoſe parts of it on the other ſide of the Ems, remained unto the German Empire, governed by Deputies, Lieutenants, and Provincial Earls, accomptable to the Emperours for the Adminiſtration, till the year 1453. in which *Vlrick* Governor hereof for the Emperour *Frederick*, having got the town of Emden out of the hands of the Hamburgers, was made Earl of Eaſt-Friſeland, tranſmitting the eſtate and title unto his poſterity.

Earls of EAST-FRISELAND.

1453 1 *Vlricus*, ſon of *Enno*, the ſon of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governors for the Empire in Broick, and *Norden*, made the firſt Earl of Eaſt-Friſeland by the Emperor *Frederick*.

1460 2 *Ezard*, the ſon of *Vlrick*, who got *Vreburg* from the Citizens of Brunſwick.

1528 3 *Enno*; the ſon of *Ezard*, who regained Greetzil, formerly uſurped by the Dukes of *Gueldres*.

1540 4 *Ezard* II. ſon of *Enno*, who married *Katharine* daughter to *Guſtavus* the firſt of *Sweden*.

5 *Enno* II. ſon of *Ezard* the ſecond, and the Lady *Katharine*.

1586 6 *Rudolphus Chriſtianus*, ſon of *Enno* the 2d. who being well affected to the *Lutheran* forms, (firſt introduced in the time of *Enno* the 1.) was by a *Calvinian* party grown up in Emden, diſpoſſeſſed of that City, *Anno* 1592.

1608 7 *Enno Ludovicus*, ſon of *Rudolphus Chriſtianus*, ſucceeded in this Earldom on the death of his Father, and is ſtill living for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of Earls of Eaſt-Friſeland, are *Argent*, four Bendlets *Azure*, charged with ten Hearts *Or*, 4.3.2.1.

2. The *Earldom* of OLDENBOURG, conteineth that part of this Countrey which lyeth on the Weſt ſide of the Weſer, betwixt the Biſhoprick of Munſter and *East*-Friſeland, ſpecially ſo called, and ſo extending Northwards to the German Ocean. So called from Oldenbourg the chief City of it, and the head of this Earldom.

The ſoil hereof exceeding rich, but in paſtures ſpecially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattel, and furniſh not this Countrey onely, but ſome of their German neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations, with Horſes, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheeſe. Here is alſo good ſtore of Pulſe, Barley, and Oats; plenty of fruits and trees of all ſorts. Large Woods, and thoſe well ſtored with Veniſon, which yeeld unto the Gentry the delights of hunting. But the air cold and foggy in ſome extremity; eſpecially in winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief towns hereof are, 1 Oldenborch, on the river Honta, repaired, if not built, by *Otho* the Great, who founded the Church of S. *John Baptiſt*. A town of no great ſtate or beauty, the houſes generally of clay, but the Caſtle (the dwelling place of the *Earls*) of well hewen ſtones, of an orbicular form, with deep ditches of water, the town and Caſtle being ſtrongly fortified. 2 Delmenhorſt, on the River Delm, a ſtrong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247. by *Otho* brother of *Earl Chriſtian* the 2d. and having been 65 years in poſſeſſion of the Biſhop of Munſter, was ſuddenly ſurpriſed on *Palm Sunday* morning, by *Anthony* Earl of Oldenburg, *Anno* 1547. continuing ever ſince part of this eſtate. 3 *Beck-huſen*, on a River, which falleth not far off, into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea, which is called *Die Jade*. 4 *Equarten* 5 *Ovelgard*, both ſeated on a long *Languet*

Oldenburg.

or Demi-Iſland, betwixt the ſaid *Die Jade*, and the River *Weſer*, called *Butiada*; both taken, and the laſt well fortified by *John* Earl of *Oldenborch*, *Anno* 1520. belonging formerly to the *Prefecture* of *Eaſt-Friſeland*, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. *Weſterberg*, the chief Town of a ſpacious Territory. 7. *Vriciade*, a ſtrong place, on the River *Jade*, built by the Earl *Chriſtiern*, one of the younger branches of the Houſe of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8. *Mellum*, 9. *Jadelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Jade*, the other near the Ocean. Here is alſo within this Earldom, the Province of *Amerlander*, ſuppoſed by ſome to have been the ſeat of the *Ambrones*; who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* in their expedition towards the *Roman Provinces*, and were ſlain by *Marius*.

As for the Earls of *Oldenburg*, they derive themſelves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Witikindus*, the laſt King and firſt Duke of the *Saxons*: who having about the year 850. built a ſtrong Caſtle on the borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his Wife *Altcburg* (whom he dearly loved) called it *Alteburgum*, ſo called by the *Latiniſts* to this day, by the *Germans Oldenborch*. But his Male iſſue failing in *Frederick* the ſeventh Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the Son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Friſian* Bloud, who had married *Richſa*, the Daughter of *John* the fifth Earl of this Family. From him in a direct line deſcended *Chriſtian* or *Chriſtiern*, eldeſt Son of *Theodorick*; who being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1448 left his eſtate in this Earldom (but reſerving the Title; according to the faſhion of *Germany*) to his brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his pretenſions to the Dukedom of *Sleſwich*, and the Earldom of *Holſt*; in which he did pretend a ſhare. The patrimony of it much improved, by the additions of the Countries of *Ruſtingen*, *Oyſtingen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea; bequeathed by the laſt Will and Teſtament of the Lady *Mary*, Counteſs of *Jevere* in *Eaſt-Friſeland*, to *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The ſucceſſion of theſe Earls, in regard the Royal Line of *Danemark*, and by conſequence of *Great Britain*, is deſcended from them, I have here ſubjoined, in this enſuing Catalogue of

The EARLS of *OLDENBURG*.

850 1 *Walpert*, of the Race of *Witikind*, the firſt Earl of *Oldenburg*.
856 2 *Theodorick*, the Son of *Walpert*.
3 *Theodorick* II. the Son of *Theodorick* the firſt.
4 *Otho*, Son of *Theodorick* the ſecond.
5 *John*, the Son of *Otho*, acompanied the Emperor *Henry* the Second in his Warrs againſt the *Greeks*, and *Saracens*, *Anno* 1007.
6 *Huno*, ſirnamed *The Glorious*, Son of *John*.
7 *Frederick*, Son of *Huno*, fortunate in his warrs againſt the *Friſians*, the laſt of the male Line of this Houſe.
8 *Elimarus* the Son of *Haio*, a Noble man of the *Friſian* Bloud, and of *Richſa* his Wife, the Daughter of *John* the fifth Earl
1120 9 *Elimarus* II. Son to *Elimar* the firſt.
10 *Chriſtianus*, the Son of *Elimar* the ſecond, ſirnamed *The Couragious*, or *the Warlike*, a profeſſed enemy of *Henry* the *Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*; from whom he took the City of *Breme*.
11 *Maurice*, the Son of *Chriſtian*, an Aſſociate of *Arnulph*, Earl of *Holſtein*, in his Warrs with *Danemark*,
12 *Chriſtian* II. Son of *Maurice*.
13 *John* II. Son of *Chriſtian* the ſecond.
14 *John* III. Son of *John* the ſecond.
15 *Conrade*, the Son of *John* the third.
16 *Chriſtian* III. Son of *Conrade*, a Student in *Colen*, where initiated into holy Orders, which he relinquiſhed much againſt the will of his brother *Maurice*, on the death of his father.
17 *Theodorick*, Son of *Chriſtian* the third, the firſt Earl of *Delmenhorſt* of this Line, which fell to him at the death of *Nicholas* Archbiſhop of *Breme*, deſcended from a younger Son of *John* the ſecond.
1440 18 *Chriſtian* IV. Son of *Theodorick*, and *Heduigis*, Siſter and Heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus* Dukes of *Sleſwick*, and Earls of *Holſtein*; elected, on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, to the Crown of *Danemark*, *Anno* 1448.
1448 19 *Gerrard*, the brother of *Chriſtian* the fourth, a Prince of an unquiet ſpirit, always in Warrs, and always worſted; he loſt the Town of *Delmenhorſt* to the Biſhop of *Munſter*.
1500 20 *John* IV. Son of *Gerrard*, repaired the ruines of his eſtate, and ſettled the diſtractions of it in the time of his father, being then in exile; and after, very much enlarged by the reduction of *Butiada*.
1526 21 *Antony*, the Son of *John* the fourth, by a ſudden ſurpriſe, recovered *Delmenhorſt* from the Biſhop of *Munſter*, *Anno* 1547. which he ſtrongly fortified.
1573 22 *John* V. Son of *Antony* enlarged this Earldom with the Provinces of *Fuſtingen*, *Oyſtingen*, and *Wangerland*, bequeathed to him by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Jevere* in *Eaſt-Friſeland*.
23 *Antony* II. Brother of *John* the fifth, in whoſe life-time he was Earl of *Delmenhorſt*, and after his death, of *Oldenburg* alſo: ſtill living, *Anno* 1648. for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And thus we ſee the preſent eſtate of *Germany*, diſtracted and divided amongſt many Princes, Prelates, and Incorporate Towns, the chief of which are herein mentioned and deſcribed. But beſides theſe, there are many other of leſs note, and ſmaller Territories, which are yet abſolute and free : in ſo much, that in one day's riding, a Traveller may twice or thrice meet with divers Laws, and divers Coins ; every free Prince and free City (whoſe laws the Emperors are ſworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what Laws, and Coin what Money they will. And hence in the cenſure of Kingdoms, the King of ***Spain*** is ſaid to be *Rex Hominum*, becauſe of his Subjects reaſonable obedience ; the King of *France*, *Rex Aſinorum*, becauſe of their infinite Taxes and Impoſitions ; the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, becauſe of his Subjects often inſurrection againſt, and depoſition of their Princes : but the Emperor of *Germany* is called *Rex Regum*, becauſe there is ſuch a number of *Reguli*, or Free Princes, which live under his command, or rather at their own command (for they do even what they liſt) as the Emperor *Maximilian* the firſt, well noted.

And to ſay truth, the publick Government hereof is nothing leſs than Monarchical: the Emperor being accompted amongſt the Princes, but as the chief Officer of Empire ; not reckoned of by *Bodin*, and other of our great *Statiſts* and *Civilians*, as an abſolute Monarch, ſuch as the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*, are confeſſed to be. For the privileges of the free Cities being made perpetual, the great Eſtates hereditary, and the Empire eligible ; the Emperors were brought at laſt to ſuch low condition, as to be made accomptable to the States of the Empire : who, if they be perſuaded in their conſciences, or but think they be ſo, that he is likely by his *mal-adminiſtration* to deſtroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good advice, *ab Electorum Collegio Cæſarea Majeſtate privari poteſt* (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the *Electors*, and a more fit and able man choſen into the place : and that too, as the Emperor *Jodocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his *Conſtitutions*, *Anno* 1410. *ſine fidelitatis, vel rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of treaſon or diſloyalty. So that the ſupreme power and Majeſty of the Empire, ſeems to reſide eſpecially and contractedly in the Electoral College ; diffuſedly, in the *Imperial Diets* ; by way of execution in the *Chamber of Spires*, and other the ſupreme Courts of the ſeveral Circles. But that which makes that body, which they call the Empire, is the Aſſembly of the Prelates, Princes, and Commiſſioners of the free Cities, in their *Diets* or *Parliaments* ; the Emperor preſiding in them : whom he that ſaw adorned in his royal Robes, with the Imperial Crown and Scepter, with Titles of *Cæſar* and *Auguſtus* given him at every word, would think that the whole action did take life from him : whereas indeed he hath not ſo much privilege as a negative voice, but is to put in execution ſuch *Decrees* and *Sanctions*, as theſe *Eſtates* aſſembled have thought fit to make ; nor able to do any act by his own Authority, which may ſpeak him Emperor. But on the other ſide, the Princes take power unto themſelves of making Laws, and impoſing Taxes on their Subjects : of raiſing Warr upon one another, or againſt a third, and doing many acts of Supreme Authority, which in the Emperor would be counted matter of *mal-adminiſtration*. Such points as theſe, together with the appointing of Judges, and the like chief Magiſtrates (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of, but in general *Diets* ; which may be ſummoned by, or without the Emperor, as occaſion ſerveth. And to this weakening of the Majeſty and power Imperial, the neighbouring Princes have afforded their beſt aſſiſtance: jealous of their own intereſs and decreaſe of power, if that vaſt body ſo well limbed ſhould be ſtrongly jointed, and all the ſeveral Members of it united under the command of one Supreme Head. Clear proof whereof we have in thoſe ſolemn Leagues, and confederations, made in their ſeveral times againſt *Charls* the fifth, and the late Emperor *Ferdinand* the ſecond, as ſoon as they began to be in ſome poſſibility of ſettling the Imperial Majeſty in its proper ſplendor, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been by the way of Election, as before was noted. The buſineſs firſt projected in the Court of *Rome*, by *Gregory* the firſt, then Pope, who being a Native of this Countrey, thought it the moſt expedient courſe to continue the Imperial Title among thoſe of his Nation. But whatſoever was pretended, the deſign of it chiefly was to make the Emperors leſs powerful, and diſtract the *Germans* (whom they feared) into parts and factions, that ſo the Popes might have the better opportunity to grow great in *Italy*. And that the Emperor might be ſuch as the Pope ſhould like of, the matter was ſo ordered, that the one half of the *Electors* ſhould be always of the *Eccleſiaſticks*, who being obnoxious to the Popes, and for the moſt part driving on their intereſs, were very like to ſerve him on all occaſions. The *Electors* onely ſix in number, that is to ſay, 1. The Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, Chancellor of the Empire, 2. The Archbiſhop of *Colen*, Chancellor of *Italy* ; 3. The Archbiſhop of *Triers*, Chancellor of *France* ; 4. The Count Palatine of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer ; 5. The D. of *Saxony*, L. Marſhal ; and 6. the Marqueſs of *Brandenburg*, Lord Chamberlain. Upon equality of voices, the D. of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for the ſeventh, who by office is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great ſolemnities. For upon days of great ſolemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the firſt days of *Imperial Diets*, and the like to theſe, theſe Offices are performed onely : and then performed in this manner following, either in perſon, or by Proxy. Before the Palace gate ſtands an heap of Oats, ſo that it reacheth to the breſt of the Horſe on which the Duke of *Saxony* rideth, having in his hand a Silver Wand, and a Silver Meaſure, both which together are to weigh 200 Marks. The Duke ſtill ſitting on his Horſe, filleth up the meaſure with Oaks, then ſticks his Wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the meaſure of Oats unto ſome of his ſervants who ſtand neareſt unto him ; and ſo attends the Emperor into the Court. The Emperor being entred, and ſate down at the Table, the three Spiritual *Electors* ſtanding orderly together, ſay Grace before him. Then cometh the Marqueſs of *Brandenburg* on Horſe-back alſo, with a Baſin of Water in his hand (the Baſin being

ing of the weight of 12 Marks of Silver) and a fine clean Towel on his arm; which, alighting from his Horſe, he holds to the Emperor till he waſh. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene*, mounted on his Horſe, with four ſilver Platters full of meat, every one of the weight of three Marks of Silver; which, deſcending from his Horſe, after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally, the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entring the great Hall on Horſeback, as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his hand, of the weight of twelve Marks in Silver, alighteth from his Horſe, and preſenteth the Cup unto the Emperor. But we muſt know, that of late times, theſe offices are ſeldom, or never performed by the *Electors* in their own perſons. It is enough if they ſend their Ambaſſadours, or ſubſtitute ſome one or other of the Emperor's Court to do it for them.

The Election is uſually celebrated at *Frankford* on the *Main*, to which place the *Electors*, or their Deputies are to make repair, upon the day appointed by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* (whoſe office it is, (as being Chancellor of the Empire) to iſſue out the Summons for this Aſſembly. In their paſſage unto *Frankford*, they are to be ſufficiently guarded by every Prince, through whoſe Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 Horſe, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met, they go into S. *Bartholomew's* Church (the moſt capacious of that City) where, after the high Maſs is ſaid, the three Spiritual Electors laying their hands upon their breaſts, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make Oath to chooſe a fit temporal Head for the people of *Chriſtendom*. Upon equality of voices, as it ſometimes happeneth, the *Bohemian* hath the caſting voice, and concludes the Buſineſs; If in the ſpace of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then muſt they have no other allowance, but of Bread and Water, nor be ſuffered to go out of the City, till that neceſſity compelleth them unto ſome agreement: which being at the laſt reſolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince ſo elected, is preſently ſaluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of Emperor not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the Pope; though ſince the time of *Charls* the Fifth, without any ſuch trouble to themſelves, or the Popes of *Rome*, the Title both of Emperor and Imperial Majeſty is uſually conferred upon them for their firſt Election. The Election being finiſhed and ſignified to the party choſen, the Inauguration was held antiently at three ſeveral places, *viz.* Firſt, At *Aquiſgrave*, or *Aken*, in the Land of *Gulick*, where he received the Silver Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany*. Secondly, At *Millain*, by the Archbiſhop whereof he was crowned with the Iron Crown for *Lombardy*, or the Realm of *Italy*. Thirdly, At *Rome*, where, at the hands of the Pope himſelf, he was crowned with the Golden Crown for the *Roman* Empire. But ſince, thoſe journeys unto *Rome* and *Millain* have been long laid by; the Emperors holding their Elections to be ſtrong enough to make their Title to that Dignity, being meerly Titular, and their Inauguration at *Aken*, to be as effectual, as if they had alſo viſited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the privileges of the *Electors*, and other fundamental Conſtitutions of the *German* Empire, we find ſummed up together in the Golden Bull of *Charls* the fourth, by whom firſt promulgated, *Anno* 1359. But we muſt know, that ſince the publiſhing of that Bull, the Buſineſs of Election hath received ſome change as to the number and the perſons of the parties intereſſed. For firſt it pleaſed the Emperor *Ferdinand* the Second, on the Proſcription of *Frederick* the firſt Elector *Palatine*, to tranſferr the Electoral Dignity, with the Office of *Archi-Dapifer*, or *Arch-Sewer*, from that Houſe to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of Elector of *Bavaria*, with all the powers and privileges which belonged unto it, to be infeoffed upon him and his Heirs for ever. Which action of the Emperor being proteſted againſt by ſome of the *Electors*, in favour of the *Palatine* Family, and in due care unto themſelves, in not admitting ſuch a dangerous precedent for the time to come; it was at laſt concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munſter*, *Anno* 1648. that the Duke of *Bavaria* and his Heirs enjoying the ſaid Electoral Dignity, with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the Tranſlation of it from the *Palatine* Family ſpoken of before; an eighth Electoral ſhould be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate*, by *Charls Ludovick*, the now Prince *Elector Palatine* and his Heirs, who alſo on the failer of the Line of *Bavaria*, are to be re-poſſeſſed of their antient rights, the Title of *Arch-Treaſurer*, being given unto them at the preſent, inſtead of that of *Archi-Dapifer*, or *Arch-Sewer*, which they had before.

Now, as a ſtep unto the Empire, and for the better aſſurance of the Imperial Dignity to the *Auſtrian* Family, it was cunningly projected by *Charls* the Fifth (having received the Imperial Crown from Pope *Clement* the Seventh) that his brother *Fordinand* ſhould be choſen King of the *Romans*, whileſt himſelf was living, and by that means be the more certain of the Empire after his deceaſe. Which policy being followed by his Succeſſors, the Title of *Rex Romanorum*, or *King of the Romans*, is grown to be the Title of Heir apparent, or deſigned Succeſſor, in the preſent Empire of the *Germans*; as that of *Cæſar* was from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the antient *Romans*. Inſomuch as *Rex Romanorum*, is now defined to be one, who is already ſo farr eſtated in the Empire, that on the death, deprivation, or reſignation of the preſent Emperor he is immediately to ſucceed. And ſo accordingly it hath happened ſince this act of *Charls*. Who, though he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto *Philip* his Son and Heir, whom he found capable enough of ſo high an Honour: yet he could not do it; it being thought by many underſtanding men, that on notice of this under-hand practice, his brother *Ferdinand*, who had the like mind to tranſmit the Empire to his own poſterity, did ſecretly lend Prince *Maurice* his helping hand to drive him out of *Germany*, as in brief he did. As for the reaſons, or to ſay better, the Pretences, upon which *Charls* did inſtitute this *Rex Romanorum* (for queſtionleſs, the true reaſon of it was, to perpetuate the Empire in the *Auſtrian* family) they were theſe that follow. First, Becauſe that having the command of many Nations, he could not always perſonally attend the affairs of *Germany*. Secondly, The troubled eſtate of Chriſtendom, of the Empire eſpecially, occaſioned by the preachings and works of *Luther*. Thirdly, The late *Rural* Warr raiſed by the Boors of that Countrey, on the coming out of theſe new Doctrines, and not yet throughly extinct. Fourthly, The violent power of the *Turks*, who by his conqueſt of a great part of *Hungary* was grown too near a neighbour to them. And, Fifthly, The imminent diſobedience in all parts of the Empire. All which conjunctly ſeemed to require ſome Prince of Power and Title, to aſſiſt him in the bearing of ſo great a burthen; and by theſe and the like ſuggeſtions he effected his deſign herein, though thereby he changed in a manner the Imperial Stile: For whereas the firſt Emperors of the Houſe of *Charls* the Great, were Emperors of the *Romans*, and Kings of *Germany*; the later Emperors of the Houſe of *Charls* the Fifth, may not improperly be called Emperors of *Germany*, and Kings of the *Romans*. It is true indeed, that the wiſe and underſtanding Duke of *Saxony*, ſaw farther through theſe pretences, than the reſt of the *Electors* either did, or would, and that the main Plot was no other, than to make *Germany* (as *Galba* ſaid in his Oration unto *Piſo*, of the Empire of *Rome*) *unius quaſi Familiæ hæreditatem*, hereditary in times following to the Houſe of *Auſtria*: and thereupon did openly deny his ſuffrage to the ſaid Election. But finding the Major part of the *Electors* were reſolved upon it, he moved for an Act to paſs, prohibiting the continuance of the Imperial Title in any one Family, more than three Succeſſions: in which not able to prevail (as the Game was playd) he left the *Electors* to themſelves, by whom *Ferdinand* was choſen King of the *Romans*, and not long after crowned at *Aken*, with the uſual Rites, *Jan.* 16. *Anno* 1531. The ſame courſe followed by this *Ferdinand*, when poſſeſſed of the Empire, in cauſing his Son *Maximilian* to be elected *Rex Romanorum*, whileſt himſelf was living; and ſo by all the reſt ſince then, as before is ſaid.

As for the Forces of the Empire, for by that name we are to meaſure the abilities and power of *Germany*; we may diſcern them by thoſe *Levies* which have been raiſed by particular occaſions, or by the joint conſent of the Free Eſtates aſſembled in the *Imperial Diets*. Firſt, for particular *Levies* made by private perſons, we find 12000 Foot, and 8000 Horſe, raiſed by the Prince *Palatine* of *Zweybruck*, for aid of the *French Hugonots* againſt their King; and on the other ſide, no fewer than 7000 Horſe, under the conduct of the Duke of *Aumal*, and the Earl of *Mansfield*, for the ſervice of that King againſt the *Hugonots*. And as for *Levies* made by conſent of the *States*, we find that *Charls* the Fifth, had under his Enſigns at *Vienna*, 90000 Foot, and 35000 Horſe; *Maximilian* the Second, at *Javerin* in *Hungary*, 34000 Horſe, and full 100000 Foot: and finally, that in the Warr betwixt *Charls* the Fifth, and the Proteſtant Princes, there was no leſs than 150000 men on both ſides; which numbers, no one Countrey in *Europe* is able to equal. In a word, it is generally conceived, that the Empire is able to raiſe 200000 Horſe and Foot, with Arms, Canon, and Ammunition of all ſorts, proportionable; which the inſtances before brought do moſt plainly evidence.

Touching the Revenue of the Empire, I find them eſtimated by *Boterus*, and ſome others ſince, at ſeven Millions of Crowns yearly. Which may be true enough, taking the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, with the hereditaty Eſtates of *Auſtria*, into the accompt. But ſince they are not ſo united unto the Empire, but they may at ſome time or other be diſ-joined again, no reaſon they ſhould come into the reckoning, unleſs it be as the Revenue of the Emperor, though not of the Empire. But as for the Revenue of the Empire it ſelf, taken abſtractedly from the perſonal and patrimonial Eſtate of the Emperor, whoſoever he be, it can amount to no ſuch ſumm: the Tribute paid by the *Free*, or *Imperial* Cities (at leaſt 60 in number) amounting to no more *per annum*, than 15000 *Florens*, or 1500 *l.* *Engliſh*; and what is that, but like a Pepper-corn for a *Quit-Rent* in that mighty Continent? By this we may conjecture what the reſt may come to. And though in the way of ſaving charges (which may be reckoned as a part of his in-come alſo) the Princes and Free Cities be bound to aid him in the time of Warr againſt the *Turk*, with 3842 Horſe, and 16200 Foot, which he may challenge without troubling the *Diets* for it: yet Warr is ſuch a great devourer, that if the *Diets* do not grant him greater helps, he is like to be but a ſorry gainer by the undertaking; beſide, the ſmalneſs of thoſe forces conſidered with the numbers they are able to raiſe, and the puiſſance of the enemy whom they are to encounter.

Finally, for the *Arms* of the Empire, they are *Sol*, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, *Saturn*, armed and crowned *Mars*: the two heads ſignifying (as ſome think) the Eaſtern and the Weſtern Empires. *Cuſpinian*, a learned *German*, conceives rather, that theſe *Arms* are two Eagles conjoined, and not one Eagle with two heads: and that they were taken up by the *German* Nation, in memory of the three *Legions* of *Quintillius Varus*, diſcomfited by them; at what time they ſeiſed on two of the *Roman Eagles* (the Military Enſign of that People) the third being caſt into the *Fenns* by the Standard-bearer. But whether it be one, or two, certain it is, that the one head is quite pulled off, and the whole body quite ſtripped of all its Feathers; the *Imperial* Dignity being little more than *Titular*, diſpoyled and ſtript of all Authority appertaining to it.

There are in *Germany*.

Archbiſhops 6. Biſhops 34.

Univerſities 21. *Viz.*

1 *Colen.*
2 *Triers.*
3 *Ments.*
4 *Heidelberg.*
5 *Tubingen.*
6 *Ingolſtade.*
7 *Vienna.*
8 *Herborn.*
9 *Hanaw.*
10 *Wirtenberg.*
11 *Friberg.*
12 *Altorf.*
13 *Prague.*
14 *Olmunts:*
15 *Frankford.*
16 *Roſtock.*
17 *Gripswald.*
18 *Jene.*
19 *Lipſique.*
20 *Wittenberg.*
21 *Marpurg.*

And ſo much for *Germany*.

OF DENMARK.

THE Kingdom of *DENMARK*, or *DANEMARK*, reckoning in the additions of the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, and the great Continent of *Norwey*, with the Iſles thereof, now all united and incorporated into one Eſtate; is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Baltick* Sea, and ſome part of *Sweden*; on the Weſt, with the main Weſtern Ocean; on the North-Eaſt, with a part of *Sweden*; full North, with the main *Frozen* Sea; and on the South, with *Germany*, from which divided on the South-weſt, by the River *Albis*; and on the South-eaſt, by the *Trave*; a little *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land uniting it to that Continent.

It took this name from the *Danes*, of long time the Inhabitants and Poſſeſſors of it; ſo called *quaſi Danorum tractus, ſive Regio*, (as *Mercator* hath it) becauſe the Countrey of that People: but rather *quaſi Danorum limes*, the Bounds or Marches of the *Danes*, bordering cloſe upon the *Dutch*; from whom it hath the name of *Danemarch*.

As for the ſituation of it, in regard of the Heavens, it lyeth partly in the Northern temperate *Zone*, and partly within the Arctick Circle: extending from the middle Parallel of the tenth Clime, or 55 degree of Latitude, where it joineth with *Germany*, as farr as the 71 Degree, where it hath no other bound but the *Frozen* Ocean. By which accompt, the longeſt day in the moſt Southern parts hereof, is ſeventeen hours and a quarter, but in the parts extremely North, they have no night for two whole Moneths, three weeks, one day, and ſome ſeven hours over; as on the other ſide, no day for the like quantity of time, when the Sun is moſt remote from them, in the other *Tropick*. The air hereof by conſequence muſt be ſharp and bitter, even in the warmeſt places. Of which, and of the nature of the ſoil, we ſhall ſpeak more punctually, in the Deſcription and Survey of the ſeveral parts.

The Inhabitants generally are of good ſtature, clear of complexion, well coloured, for the moſt part healthfull and long lived: for though they eat and drink beyond meaſure, they have good digeſtious. In manners very ſevere, crafty and provident in the mannaging of their affairs, but proud withall, and (as the Hiſtorian ſaid of another perſon) *Omnium quæ dixerant fecerantve Oſtentatores*, great Vaunters of whatſoever they do or ſay, highly opinionated of their own actions, and peremptory in maintaining their own opinions; religious obſervers of their words and contracts, and ſtrict in executing Juſtice; eſpecially, in puniſhing of Thievs and Pirats. Such of them as do follow the Warrs, prove reaſonable good Souldiers both by Sea and Land; but fitter for the Sea than field-ſevice: The Magiſtrate wiſe rather by experience than ſtudy; though they love learning, and eaſily attein all Languages which they give their minds to: the old men covetous, the young men thrifty, and the Merchant ambitious. The Nobility and Gentry are generally of as antient Families, as moſt in Chriſtendom, here being ſome of thoſe Houſes ſtill remaining, which were preſent at the pacification made betwixt *Charls* the *Great*, and *Hemingus* King of the *Danes*: and, which adds much unto their honour, they keep their Bloud unmix'd from Marriages with the Vulgar ſort; and reckon it for an high diſgrace to change their Arms, or make any addition thereunto. The *Women* are fair, diſcreet, and courteous, and know well how to govern their houſholds; exceeding fruitful in bearing Children, but delivered of them with great difficulty. Both Sexes ſpeak the *Dutch*, or *German*, common (but with ſome difference in the pronunciation) to all the Northern Nations in *Norwey* and *Sweathland*.

Of no great note for men of Learning in the former times; It hath been fortunate in theſe laſt, for, 1. *Tycho Brahe*, that renowned Aſtronomer. 2. *Hemingus*, a well-known Divine. 3. *Bartholinus*, a Phyſician and Philoſopher of good eſteem. 4. *John Cluverus* the Hiſtorian, *&c.* More famous for great Captains, and men of Warr; eſpecially for 1. *Godfrey*, or *Gottricus*, who ſettled the government of the Kingdom, and endangered the great Realm of *France*. 2. *Sueno*, and 3. *Canutus*, the fortunate Con-

Cimbrick, Cherſoneſe.

querours of ***England***. 4. ***Waldemare*** the 3d. a right valiant Prince; but unſucceſsfull in his Warrs againſt the *Hanſe-Towns*, then newly entred into league. 5. ***Chriſtiern*** the 2d. a great Commander in the Warrs; but of great cruelty. 6. ***Chriſtiern*** the 4th. little inferiour unto any of his Predeceſſors; to whom we may ſubjoyn (though of different Sex) Queen ***Margaret***, the *Semiramis* of theſe Northern Countreys; a Lady of a Maſculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all enterpriſes, as ſhe declared in the conqueſt of ***Sweathland***, and ſubjection of *Norway*, by her united to this Crown.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt preached to thoſe of ***Holſtein*** (the next neighbouring Countrey under *Germany*) by S. ***Angarius***, Biſhop of ***Bremen***, the general *Apoſtle* of thoſe Northern parts, in the year 826. *Lewis* the *Godly* then being Emperor of the Weſt. In whoſe time *Harald* King of *Denmark* being expulſed his Kingdoms by the Sons of *Godfrey*, or *Gottricus*, was baptized at ***Mentz*** with a great number of that people which attended on him, by the hands of ***Ebbo*** Archbiſhop of *Rhemes*, employed by the Emperor in that ſervice: the converſion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperor *Otho* the firſt, aſſiſted by the Miniſtry of one *Poppo*, the firſt Biſhop of *Arthuſen*; ***Sueno***, or ***Swain***, then reigning amongſt the *Danes*. The ***Norwegians*** came not in till after, converted in the reign of *Olaus* the third, *Anno* 1055. or thereabouts: the *Engliſh* aſſiſting in the work, and the good King ſo zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint, after his deceaſe. Relapſing for the moſt part to their antient *Gentiliſm*, they were finally regained unto *Chriſtianity*, by the means of Pope *Adrian* the fourth, an ***Engliſh-man***, about the year 1156. before his aſſuming of the Popedom, called *Nicolaus Breakſpear*. But by whomſoever firſt converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend ſome power and juriſdiction over them. Which when they began to exerciſe with too much authority, ***Waldemar*** the third is ſaid to have returned this Anſwer, *Naturam habemus à Deo, Regnum à Subditis, Divitias à Parentibus, Religionem à* Romana *Eccleſia, quam ſi nobis invides renunciamus per præſentes*; that is to ſay, We hold our Life from God, our Crown from our Subjects, our Riches from our Anceſtors, our Religion from the Church of ***Rome***; which if you envie us, we do here remit it by theſe preſents. But this ***Renunciation***, though then threatned, was not made till afterwards: when the whole Maſs of *Popery* was aboliſhed by King ***Frederick*** the firſt, uſing therein the Miniſtry of ***Beugenhage***, a ***Divine*** of ***Pomeren***; by whom *reformed* according to the Doctrine of the ***Lutheran*** Churches.

As for the *Government* of the *Church*, ſince that *Reformation*, it continueth as before it was, by *Archbiſhops* and *Biſhops*, in number as before; but much abridged of their *Revenues*, and a great part of their power. For *Frederick*, though he found it neceſſary to remove the old *Biſhops* (not one of which would be perſuaded to the change of ***Religion***) yet he ſubſtituted others in their places, allowing them a convenient maintenance, with a power of *Preſidence* in all *Church-Aſſemblies*, where they are to take the advice of other *Presbyters* along with them: and out of ſuch *Aſſemblies*, to receive complaints, to provide remedy againſt ſcandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar *Inſpectors*, which concern the Church. So that in all the King's Dominions, there are two Archbiſhops, and thirteen Biſhops: that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of ***Londen***, the Biſhops of ***Roſchile***, ***Odenſee***, ***Ripen***, ***Wiborch***, *Arthuſen Sleſwick*, and *Haderſleve*, for the Kingdom of ***Denmark***; the Archbiſhop of *Nidroſia*, the Biſhop of ***Bergen***, *Anſlo*, *Staffanger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norwey*; and the Biſhops of ***Halar***, and *Schalhelt*, for the Iſle of *Iſeland*: the Churches of ***Holſtein*** (formerly under the Biſhops of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by ***Super-intendents***, as the reſt of the ***Lutherans***:

The whole body of the eſtate (as appears by this) conſiſteth chiefly of three Members; *viz.* 1. the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, containing ***Wagerland***, *Ditmarſh*, *Stormaria*, and *Holſtein*, ſpecially ſo called: 2. the Kingdom of ***Denmark***, comprehending both *Juitlands*, part of *Scandia*, and the *Hemodes*, or *Baltick* Iſlands: and 3. the Kingdom of ***Norwey***, conſiſting of *Norwey* it ſelf, and the Iſlands of the *Northern Ocean*. Which parts we ſhall ſurvey in order, as before laid down, premiſing firſt a word or two of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, in which the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, and the two *Juitlands* are conteined.

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE.*

The ***CIMBRICK CHERSONESE***, hath on the Eaſt, the *Baltick* Sea; on the Weſt, the main *German* Ocean; on the North the narrow Strait, or *Fretum*, which they call the *Sundt*, on the South-weſt, the great River of *Albis*; on the South eaſt, the ſmall River of *Trave*; betwixt which is the neck or *Iſthmus*, which unites it to *Germany*. I know that ſom contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South, with the River *Eydore*: but I have drawn it down to the ***Elve*** and the *Trave*, which give it more reſemblance to a *Cherſoneſe*, or *Demy-Iſland*, than the other doth; diſſenting in this point from the common Opinion. It had the name of *Cherſoneſus*, ἀπὸ τῆς χερσοῦ ϗ νήσου, *à terra & inſula*, it being the ſame with a *Peninſula* in the *Latine*; of which name there are five moſt famous, that is to ſay; Firſt, *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, which is now called *Morea*. 2. *Thracia Cherſoneſus* in *Thracia*, near the Sea *Propontis*. 3. *Taurica Cherſoneſus* in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartary*. 3. *Aurea Cherſoneſus* in *India*, which we now call *Malaca* (of all which we ſhall ſpeak in their proper places) and 5. *Cimbrica Cherſoneſus*, where now we are. This laſt, ſo called from the *Cimbri*, the firſt Inhabitants thereof, originally deſcended from *Gomer*, the Son of *Japhet*; thence called *Gomerii*, and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbri*. Leaving the Plains of *Phrygia*, as too narrow for them, they ſought out new dwellings, and are ſaid to have firſt dwelt in the Banks of *Palus Maotis*; where they gave name to *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, there being. Being overcome by the *Scythians*, they removed their ſeats more Northward, into a Countrey bounded

Holſtein.

bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great *Ocean* on the one ſide; and the Foreſt of *Hercynia* on the other; within which bounds is the *Peninſula*, or Countrey where we now are. They were a people of extraordinary bigg ſtature, having Blue and Red eyes, and lived moſt upon theft: ſo that for their ſakes, Κίμβρες ἐπονομάζουσι γέρμανοι τὰς λῃστὰς, the *Germans* called all thieves *Cimbers*. It hapned that the *Ocean* overflowing a great part of their Countrey, compelled them to ſeek new ſeats; whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then Lording over a great part of the World, for ſome place to ſettle in. This requeſt being denied, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their ſwords, what their petitions could not obtein. *Manlius*, *Sillanus*, and *Cepio*, all *Roman* Conſuls, periſhed by them; ſo that now (ſaith *Florus*) *Actum eſſe de* Imperio Romano *niſi illo ſeculo*, Marius *contigiſſet*: for he, as we have elſewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitants hereof were the *Saxons*, *Jutes*, and *Angles*; upon whoſe removal into *Britain*, the greateſt part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who ſtill poſſeſs it.

It conteineth in length, about 100 *Italian* miles, and 80 of the ſame miles in breadth; and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of ground, 30 walled Towns, 6 Epiſcopal Sees (beſides thoſe of *Hamburg*, and *Lubeck*, which are under the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*) and 20 royal Caſtles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and Great Men of the Countrey, as the private retirements of the King. The ſoil naturally more fit for paſturage than tillage; feeding ſuch multitudes of Oxen, that from hence, no fewer than 50000 are ſent yearly to *Germany*. Divided at the preſent into the Dukedom of *Holſtein*, and the Province of *Juitland*.

1. *HOLSTEIN.*

The Dukedom of **HOLSTEIN** taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, where it joins to *Germany*, extending as farr North, as the River *Eydore*, which divides it from *Juitland*. So called from the *Dutch* word *Holt*, which ſignifies a Wood, or Foreſt, according to the nature of it; the Countrey being low, mariſhy, and full of *Woods*, as it continueth to this day. It conteins in it theſe four Provinces, 1. *Wagerland*, 2. *Stormarſh*, 3. *Ditmarſh*, and 4. *Holſt*, or *Holſtein* ſpecially ſo called.

1. *WAGERLAND*, is that part of *Holſtein*, which lies on the South-eaſt of this *Cherſoneſe*, bounded on the Eaſt, with *Mecklenburg* and the *Baltick* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Holſtein* ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with the Sea *Baltick* alſo; on the South with ſome part of *Mecklenbourgh*. So called from the *Wagrii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who poſſeſſed this tract; from whence the name of *Wagria*, in our *Latine* Writers.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Lubeck*, pleaſantly ſeated on the confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billew*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*, from which diſtant five *Italian* miles. The River capable of Ships of a thouſand Tun, which commonly they unlade at *Termuren*, the Port Town to the City; ſeated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it. It was firſt built by *Adolph*, the ſecond Earl of *Holſtein*, *Anno* 1143. but ſo well privileged by him and his next ſucceſſors, that in ſhort time, it bid defiance to the Founders (the cauſe of many differences betwixt it and thoſe Princes) and was made a Dukedom of it ſelf. By *Frederick* the firſt it was united to the Empire, after whoſe death they choſe themſelves another Duke; who having governed them five years, was ſubdued by the *Danes*, and the City made ſubject to that Kingdom: remaining ſo, till delivered by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond. By whom again once infranchiſed, it became *Imperial*; afterwards liſted amongſt the *Hanſe-towns*, and the firſt in eſtimation of all the company; having above 600 Ships, of all ſorts (ſome of a thouſand Tunn and upwards) which belong unto it. But, being their Trade is for the moſt part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from *Pirats*, they are moſt of them built for burthen, and are ſlow of ſail, and little ſerviceable, if at all, for a fight at Sea. But to return unto the City, it is built upon all the ſides of a riſing Hill, on the top whereof ſtandeth the Church of S. *Mary* (once the *Cathedral* of the City, for it was *Epiſcopal*) whence is a deſcent to all the Gates of the City, affording to the Eye a moſt pleaſing proſpect. The Buildings very beautiful, and all of Brick, the Streets ſtreight and even, the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorned with excellent Imagery, and much admired even by skilful Workmen: and unto every private houſe a pipe of Water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the pattern whereof, it hath been obſerved, that the Conduits were firſt made in *London*, and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany*, or the more Northern Countreys, which can equalize it, either for the beauty and uniformity of the Houſes, the pleaſant Gardens, fair Streets, delightful Walks without the Walls, or for the Citizens themſelves, who are much commended for their civility to ſtrangers, and ſtrict execution of Juſtice without partiality. The whole in compaſs about ſix miles, fortified with a double Wall, deep Ditches, and unfordable Rivers. 2. *Segeberg*, on the River *Trave*, four *Dutch* miles from *Lubeck*, and near the head of that River. 3. *Oldeſlo*, on the ſame River, in the midſt betwixt both. 4. *Gounebürg*, and 5. *Newkirk* on the *Baltick* ſhore: and 6. *Stendorp*; more within the Land; near the edge of a Lake, out of which runs the River *Suentin*.

South-weſt of *Wagerland*, lyeth *STORMARSH*, betwixt the *Elb*, and two leſs Rivers, called the *Billen* and the *Store*; from which laſt, and the mariſhneſs of the ſituation, or from the River and the *Marſi*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Storemarſh*. Places of moſt importance are 1. *Crempe*, on a little River ſo named, which falls not farr off into the *Store*, and both together not much further into the *Elb*. A Town well fortified by *Chriſtian* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom; as well appears by the reſiſtance which it made to the Duke of *Fridland*, againſt

Holſtein.

whom it held out 13 Moneths, and yielded at the laſt upon good conditions, *Anno* 1628. 2. *Tychenberg* (*Tychopolis* my Author calls it) a *Dutch* mile from *Crempe*, but on the very bank of the River *Elb*, where it receives the *Rhin*, a ſmall River, upon which it is ſeated: firſt built, and afterward well fortified by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, of purpoſe to command the *Elb*, and to put a ſtronger bridle in the mouths of the *Hamburgers*, *Anno* 1603. now held to be the ſtrongeſt piece of all his Dominions; the onely Town of all this Dukedom, which yielded not to the prevailing *Imperialiſts* in their late Warrs againſt the *Danes*, *Anno* 1628. 3. *Bredenberg*, a ſtrong Town, belonging to the *Rantzoves*, one of the beſt pieces of the Kingdom; remarkable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made to *Wallenſtein*, Duke of *Fridland*) in the Warr aforeſaid; who at laſt, taking it by aſſault, put all the Souldiers to the Sword. 4. *Pippenberg*, another ſtrong place, and of very great conſequence. 5. *Jetzebo*, on the River *Store*. 6. *Gluck-Stude*, upon a Creek or Bay of the *German* Ocean, repaired and fortified by the ſaid *Chriſtiern* the fourth (who much delighted in the place) to command the paſſage up the *Elb*. 7. *Store*. 8. *Hamburg*, upon the *Billen*, where it falls into the *Elb*; an antient City, built in the time of the *Saxons*, repaired by *Charls* the *Great*, and walled by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth. Accompted ſince that time an *Imperial* City, and made one of the *Hanſe*, on the firſt incorporating of thoſe Towns. Which notwithſtanding, on a controverſie ariſing about that time, betwixt the Earl of *Holſtein* and the people hereof, it was adjudged to belong to the Earls of *Holſt*; and that determination ratified by *Charls* the fourth, *Anno* 1374. In perſuance whereof the *Hamburgers* took the Oath of Allegiance, to *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of *Denmark* of that Houſe, as Earl of *Holſt*; acknowledging him and his ſucceſſors for their lawfull Lords: though ſince they have endeavoured to ſhake of that yoak, preſuming very much on their power at Sea, and the aſſiſtance which they are aſſured of upon all occaſions from the reſt of the *Hanſe-towns*. As for the Town it ſelf, it is ſeated in a large Plain, with fat and rich paſtures round about it: well fortified by Art and Nature; the Haven being ſhut up with a ſtrong Iron chain. The Building, for the moſt part, of Brick, but more beautiful than well contrived; and the ſtreets ſomewhat of the narroweſt. The publick Structures very fair, eſpecially the Council-Houſe, adorned with the Statua's of the *Nine Worthies*, carved with very great Art; the Exchange or Meeting place for Merchants, and nine large Churches. The Citizens generally rich, Maſters of many as great Ships as ſail on the Ocean, ſome of them 1200 Tunn in burthen, which bring in great profit; beſides the great reſort of Merchants, and their Factors, from moſt places elſe; ſometimes the Staple Town for the Cloth of *England*, removed on ſome diſcontents to *Stode*; and from thence to *Holland*. It is obſerved, that there was in this Town at one time, 177 *Brewers*, and but 40 *Bakers*; not more than one *Lawyer*, and one *Phyſician*. The reaſon of which diſproportion was, that a Cup of *Nimis* was their onely Phyſick: their differences ſooner ended over a *Cann*, than by order of *Law*, Bread being accompted a binder, and ſo not to be uſed but in caſe of neceſſity.

Betwixt the Rivers *Store* and *Eydore*, coaſting along the *German Ocean*, lies the Province of *DITMARSH* moſt properly called *Tuitschmarſh*, from the mariſhneſs of the ground, and the *Dutch* Inhabitants, or from a mixture of thoſe people, with the *Marſi*, ſpoken of before. The people being naturally of the *Saxon* Race, retein much of the ſtomach and animoſity of the antient *Saxons*: never brought under the command of the Earls of *Holſt* (as *Wagerland*, and *Storemarſh* were) till *Holſt* it ſelf was joined to the Crown of *Denmark*. And though it was aliened from the Empire by *Frederick* the third, and given in Fee to *Chriſtiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the firſt King of that Houſe, *Anno* 1474. yet would they not ſubmit unto his Authority: but held it out againſt him, and ſome of his ſucceſſors, whom in the year 1500 they vanquiſhed in the open field, till broken, and made ſubject, by the valour and good fortune of King *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1559. Chief places in it are, 1. *Melthorp* upon the Ocean, the chief Town of the Province; the Inhabitants of which are ſo wealthy, that many of them cover their houſes with *Copper*. 2. *Londen*, oppoſite to a *Peninſula*, or *Demi-Iſland*, called *Elderſtede*, on the Weſt-ſide whereof it ſtandeth. 3. *Heininckſte*, 4. *Tellinckſte*; of which nothing memorable.

And as for *HOLSTEIN* it ſelf, the fourth and laſt number of this Eſtate, though the firſt in power and reputation, it taketh up the *Inland* parts, betwixt *Storemarſh* and *Juitland*, ſave that it hath an out-let into the *Baltick*, on the North-weſt of *Wagerland*. Chief places in the which are, 1. *Chyel*, (*Chilonium* in *Latine*) ſeated upon a navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*; a Town well traded, and having a capacious Haven, ſeldom without good ſtore of Shipping, from *Germany*, *Lifeland*, *Sweden*, and the reſt of *Denmark*. 2. *Rendesberg*, the beſt fortified piece in all this Province. 3. *Neimunſter*, on the North-weſt of the *Store*, not farr from the head of it. 4. *Wilſtre*, on a ſmall River ſo called. 5. *Bramſtede*, 6. *Borſholm*, not much obſervable; but for a *Monaſtery* in which *Henry*, one of the Earls thereof (of a younger Houſe) turned *Monk* and dyed, *Anno* 1241.

The antient Inhabitants of this and the other three, were the *Saxons*, *Sigalones*, and *Subalingii*, placed here by *Ptolemy*, whom I conceive to be no other than ſome Tribes of the *Cimbri*, of whom this *Cherſoneſe* took name. The two laſt paſſing into the name of the firſt, and in the declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and ſpreading all along the Coaſts of the *German* Ocean, moleſted with their Piracies and Depredations, the ſhores of *Britain*. Known by that means unto the *Brituins*, they were invited to aſſiſt them againſt the *Scots*; which action, with the aid of the *Juites* and *Angli* (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*) they performed ſo honeſtly, as to make themſelves Maſters of the beſt part of the Iſland. Such as remained behind not being able to defend their own againſt the *Sclaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Mecklenburg*: which being peopled by the *Wagrii*, took the name of *Wagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquiſhed

by

Juitland.

by *Charles* the *Great*, theſe on the North ſide of the *Elb*, became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*; and ſo continued till diſmembred by *Lotharius* both Duke and Emperour: who gave the propert *Holſt* (or *Holſtein*, ſpecially ſo called) with the Province of *Storemarſh*, to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deſerved well of him in his wars, with the title of Earl of *Holſtein*, *Anno* 1114. By *Adolph* the ſecond, his ſucceſſor, ſetled in this houſe, who having made a full conqueſt of it, cauſed it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *Germans*, from *Holland*, *Weſtphalen*, and *Friſeland*; by which means the name of *Sclaves* was at laſt worn out. By *Gerrard* the fifth, the Dukedom of *Sleſwick* was alſo added; conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whoſe wars he ſerved. *Adolph* the laſt Earl of this houſe dying without iſſue, the whole eſtate fell on *Chriſtiern*, ſon of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Hedwigis* his wiſe, ſiſter and heir to *Adolph* before mentioned: who being called to the Crown of *Denmark*, compounded with his brother *Gerrard* for the ſum of 50000 Marks; having gotten *Ditmarſh* alſo of the Emperour *Frederick* the third, prevailed ſo far, as to have the whole Eſtate erected into a Dukedom, *Anno* 1474. to be held by him and his ſucceſſors of the *Sacred Empire*. Which ſaid, we will next add the Catalogue of

The *EARLS* and *DUKES* of *HOLSTEIN*.

1114 1 *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*, by *Lotharius*, Emperour, and Duke of *Saxony*, made the firſt Earl of *Holſtein*.
1137 2 *Adolph* II: ſon of *Adolph* the firſt.
1164 3 *Adolph* III. ſon of *Adolph* the ſecond, vanquiſhed by *Canutus*, King of the *Danes*, loſt himſelf and his Countrey.
1232 4 *Adolph* IV. in his Fathers life time recovered his eſtate from *Waldemar* the ſucceſſor of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well-fought battel, *Anno* 1226. his Father then priſoner to the *Danes*.
1261 5 *Gerrard*, the ſecond ſon of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland* ſucceeded in *Holſtein*.
1281 6 *Henry*, the ſon of *Gerrard*, the firſt that ſet up a Cuſtom-houſe at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his *tolls* and *taxes*.
1310 7 *Gerrard* II. ſon of *Henry*, ſlain Treacherouſly by the *Danes*.
1339 8 *Henry* II. ſon of *Gerrard* the ſecond.
1381 9 *Gerrard* III. ſon of *Henry* the ſecond, created the firſt Duke of *Sleſwick*, by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.
1404 10 *Henry* III. ſon of *Gerrard* the third.
1427 11 *Adolphus* V. commonly called the XII. (thoſe of the younger houſes being reckoned in) the laſt Earl of this houſe.
1459 12 *Chriſtiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, ſon of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his wife *Hedwigis*, ſiſter of *Henry*, and *Adolphus*, the two laſt Earls, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Holſtein*: enlarged with the addition of *Ditmarſh*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperour *Frederick* the third, *Anno* 1474. But ſeeing that *Otho* Earl of *Schaumberg*, pretended a right unto the whole, as the next heir male, according to the conſtitutions of the *Empire*, of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the brother of *Chriſtiern* put in for his ſhare, according to the ill Cuſtom of *Germany*, of which it was then counted part: he was fain to buy his peace of both: giving to *Otho* 43000 *Florens* in ready money, with the Towns of *Pinnenberg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bramſtede*, the antient poſſeſſions of the Earls of *Schaumberg*; and 50000 marks to his brother *Gerrard*, beſides his whole intereſt in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was ſaid. By this means *Holſtein* was united to the Crown of *Denmark*, the Kings whereof as Dukes of *Holſt*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither ſend unto the *Diets*, not contribute any thing at all to the publick *taxes*, nor acknowledge any kind of ſubjection to it, more than meerly *titulary*. Onely it was ordained at the requeſt of the Subjects, when firſt they were incorporated into that Kingdom; that in caſe of any grievance, or unjuſt ſentence in the *Ordinary Courts* of *Juſtice*, wherein they found no remedy in the ſupream *Council* of the Province; it might be lawful for them to *appeal* to the Imperial *Chamber*, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the preſent time, on ſufficient caution; ſo hath it ſeldom or never been put in practice: the very grant or *Privilege* (if ſuch it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But ſince this uniting of the two Eſtates, the title of the Duke of *Holſtein*, and a good part of the Countrey, was given unto *Adolphus*, brother to *Chriſtiern* the third, (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the *Garter*, *Anno* 1562.) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their ſeveral turns: after whoſe death, and the death of all his children dying without iſſue male, the title of it was conferred on *Ulrick*, ſon of *Frederick* the ſecond, and brother of *Chriſtiern* the fourth; created Knight of the *Garter* by King *James*, *Anno* 1605.

JUITLAND.

JUITLAND, conteineth all the reſt of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holſt* by the River *Eydore*, the antient boundary betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*: but principally by a long trench, and that from one Sea to the other, of ſuch breadth, that a chariot, or two horſemen

Juitland.

men a-breaſt might ride upon it. Firſt built in imitation of the *Picts wall* in *England*, by *Godfred* King of *Denmark*, in the time of *Charles* the *Great*, either to hinder the daily incurſions of the *Saxons*, as ſome, or to ſtop the current of the victories of the ſaid *Charls*, as others think. The tract whereof ſtill very eaſie to be ſeen, is called *Dennewerch*, (or the *Danes work*) to this very day.

It was ſo called from the *Juites*, who together with the *Angli*, and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a conqueſt of the beſt parts of *Britain*. The Countrey ſo abounding in Cattel, that it ſendeth yearly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, beſides great ſtore of Butter, Cheeſe, Tallow, Hides and Horſes: divided commonly into *North Juitland*, and *South Juitland*; or *Juitland* eſpecially ſo called, and the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*.

SOVTH-JVITLAND, or the Dukedom of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* which lies next to *Holſtein*: called *South-Juitland*, from the *Southern* ſituation of it; and *Sleſwick*, from the chief Town of it, and the head of this Dukedom. The Countrey for the moſt part, plain, little ſwelled with Mountains: the fields whereof do interchangeably yield both fiſh, and corn. For during one three years they ſow it conſtantly, and reap their fruits of it: and for the next three let the *Pools* overflow the land, to the end the fiſh may eat up the graſs (whom they catch as often as they pleaſe) and the mud which is left behind enrich the ſoil. But beſides their *pools*, they have alſo on the Baltick ſhores many goodly Bays; not only commodious for Merchants, but well-ſtored with fiſh, and with Salmons eſpecially.

Chief Towns herein are 1 *Flensburg*, ſeated amongſt very high Mountains, on the ſhore of the Baltick Sea, where there is a Port ſo deep, ſo ſafe, and ſo commodious, that all the inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their ſhips, cloſe to their houſes. 2 *Huſem*, upon the *German* Ocean, not far from the mouth of the River *Eydore*. 3 *Haderſlave*, a Biſhop's Sea, if not rather ſome Town or Manor of the Biſhops of *Sleſwick*, ſituate on a navigable in-let of the Baltick Sea, wherewith it is almoſt encompaſſed, beautified with the fair Caſtle of *Hansburg*, begun by *John* the eldeſt ſon of King *Chriſtiern* the firſt, then Duke of *Holſt*; but finiſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Denmark*. 4 *Londenberg*, in the *Peninſula* called *Elderſtede*, over againſt *De Sorants*, an Iſland of the *German* Ocean. 5. *Sternberg*, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*, 6 *Gottorp*, a ſtrong Fort or Caſtle of the Duke of *Sleſwicks*, at the end of a large Bay or in-let of the Baltick alſo: remarkable for the *Toll-booth*, or cuſtom-houſe, there erected, at which there is *Toll* paid one year with another for 50000. Oxen, ſent out of *North-Juitland* into *Germany*. 7 *Sleſwick* originally by the *Danes* called *Heydebui*, built, as they ſay, by *Hethe*, a Queen of that Nation, but by the *Saxons* called *Sleſwick*, as the Town upon the River *Slea*, there running into the Baltick, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of the Province, honoured with an Epiſcopal See, and being made the head of the Dukedom; ſo giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom firſt erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Abel*, a former King, *Anno* 1280. to be held by him under the right and *ſoveraignty* of the Kings thereof. But the male-iſſue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, conferred on *Gerrard* Earl of *Holſtein*, as before was ſaid, *Anno* 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, ſhe extorted it out of the hands of the Widdow of *Gerrard*; again recovered by the valour and good fortune of his ſon *Adolphus*. After whoſe death it fell, together with *Holſtein*, upon *Chriſtiern* of *Oldenberg*, King of *Denmark*, as before related; by whom incorporated with the Crown; never ſince aliened, but aſſigned ſometimes in portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the ſons of *Alexander*, ſurnamed of *Sunderburg*, (the place of his Nativity) ſon of *John*, one of the younger ſons of King *Chriſtiern* the third.

NORTH-JVITLAND, the moſt Northern part of all the *Cherſoneſe*, hath on the South, the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*; but on all other parts the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the Biſhopricks, into four *Dioceſes*, or *Diſtricts*; that is to ſay,

1. The Dioceſe of *RIP* or *Ripen*, bordering next to *Sleſwick*, containeth 30 *Prefectures* or *Heretts*, (as they uſe to call them) ſeven Cities, or walled Towns, and ten Caſtles. The chief of which are 1 *Ripen*, the Epiſcopal See, ſituate near the *German* Ocean. 2 *Koldins*, on a Creek of the Baltick Sea, where *Dorothy*, the Dowager of *Chriſtiern* the third, built a publick School, (one of my Authors calls it an Univerſity.)

2. The *Dioceſe* of *ARTHVSEN* lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the Baltick, containeth 31 *Herets* or *Prefectures*, ſeven Cities, or walled Towns, and five Caſtles. The chief whereof are 1 *Arthuſen*, the Epiſcopal See: ſeated on the Baltick, enjoying a commodious Port, and well frequented: the firſt Biſhop hereof being that *Poppo*, who converted this Nation: *Chriſtianity* and *Epiſcopacy* going, for the moſt part, hand in hand together. 2 *Schunderburg*, on the South of *Arthuſen*. 3 *Kalla*,. a ſtrong Caſtle of the Kings, ſeated in the inmoſt part of a large Bay, occaſioned by the *Promontory*, or Cape of *Hillenis*; extending hence two *Dutch* miles to the high hill of *Ellemanberg*. Oppoſite whereunto, and pertaining to this Juriſdiction, lie the Iſlands of 1 *Samſoe*, 2 *Hiolm*, 3 *Tuen*, 4 *Hiarnee* (perhaps *Gerno*) 6 *Hilgenes*, and others.

3. The *Dioceſe* of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arthuſen*, containeth ſixteen *Herets*, the Iſlands of 1 *Jegen*, 2 *Hanſholm*, 3 *Oſtholm*, 4 *Ciſland*, 5 *Egholm*, and 6 *Bodum*: three Cities, or walled Towns, and as many Caſtles. The principal of which are 2 *Wiborch*, the Epiſcopal See, an Inland City; but ſituate on a water which runneth into the Bay of *Limford*. The ordinary ſeat of *Judicature*, for both the *Juitlands*; for all Cauſes, as well *Criminal*, as *Civil*: The Court continually ſitting from one day to another, unleſs perhaps the *Judges* do ſometime adjourn it for their own refreſhments.

4. The

Baltick Iſlands.

4. The *Dioceſe* of *BURGLAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying furtheſt North, is commonly ſubdivided into four parts or members; that is to ſay, 1 *Thyland*, lying South of the Bay of *Limford*, on the *Baltick* ſide, whoſe chief Town is, 1 *Alborch*; the ordinary ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times ſtiled *Alburgenſis*; ſituate on the Bay aforeſaid, which opening into the *Baltick* Sea, extendeth thorow the main Land Weſtwards, almoſt as far as the *German* Ocean. 2 *Morſee*, lying on the Ocean, and conteining three *Prefectures*, or *Herets*, the Town of *Nicopen*, the Caſtle of *Lunſted*, and the Iſle of *Ageroe*. 3 *Hanheret*, on the Northweſt of the Bay of *Limford*, conteining four *Herets*, the Town of *Thyſtad*, where *Chriſtiern* the third founded a publick School, or ſuch another Univerſity as that of *Kolding*; the Caſtle of *Orumne*, and the Iſland of *Oland*, and *Oxcholm*. There is in this part alſo, the high Rock called *Skaringelin*, a noted Sea-mark; fitly ſerving to give notice to the Saylor, of the *Quick-ſands* which lye underneath it, and about this Coaſt. 4 *Venſyſſel*, *Venſlia*, or *Wenſlie*, that is (as *Mercator* doth expound it) *Vandalorum ſedes*, the ſeat of the *Vandals*; taketh up all the reſt of the North of *Juitland*, conteining ſix *Prefectures*, the Iſland of *Groyſholm*, 2 *Hartzholm*, and 3 *Tydſholm*; three towns, and one Caſtle, the moſt remarkable of which is *Schagen*, with the moſt Northerly point of all this *Cherſoneſe*. In this part is a very high Mountain called Mount *Alberg*, in which are found ſome marks and remainders of the antient Gyants, as the Inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Juitlands* in the time of *Ptolemy*, and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phundufii*, *Charudes*, and in the moſt Northern tracts the *Cimbri*: of whom the four firſt were but *Tribes* or Nations. Theſe moving towards the South in that great expedition againſt *Spain*, made by the neighbouring *Vandals*, on the *Roman* Empire, occaſioned the *Juites* and *Angli* to inlarge or ſhift their dwellings: each taking up the parts which lay neareſt to them. The *Juites*, or *Gutæ*, being a people of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Ptolemy*, took up the Northern parts thereof, from them named *Juitland*: the other being a people of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*, poſſeſſed them of thoſe parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old friends and confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleſwick*) where *Angelen*, now an obſcure Village, once of greater note, doth preſerve their memory. But theſe uniting with the *Saxons*, in the Conqueſt of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep poſſeſſion of the Countrey againſt new *Invaders*; gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them. By whom theſe Countries being conquered, as far as to the River *Eydore*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdome: of whom we ſhall ſay more in the cloſe of all: firſt taking a ſurvey of the *Baltick* Iſlands, and ſuch Provinces on the main land of *Scandia*; as properly make up the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

2. The *BALTICK* ISLANDS.

The *BALTICK ISLANDS* are in number 35. and are ſo called, becauſe they lye diſperſed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *Germans*, *De Ooſt zee*; antiently by ſome, *Mare Suevicum*; by *Pomponius Mela*, *Sinus Codanus*; by *Strabo*, *Sinus Venedicus*; but generally, *Mare Balticum*: becauſe the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by ſome Writers of the middle and darker times, called *Balthia*. It beginneth at the narrow paſſage called the *Sound*; and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia*, and *Lituania*. The reaſons why this Sea being ſo large, doth not *ebbe* and *flow*: are 1 the narrowneſs of the ſtrait, by which the Ocean is let into it; and 2 the Northern ſituation of it, whereby the *Celeſtial* Influences have leſs power upon it. The Principal of this great ſhole of Iſlands, are 1 *Seland*, 2. *Fuinen*, or *Fionia*, 3. *Langeland*, 4. *Lawland*, 5. *Falſtre*, 6. *Azze*, 7. *Alen*, 8. *Toſinge*, 9. *Wheen*, 10. *Fimera*, and 11. *Bornholim*. Some other of leſs note we ſhall only name, and ſo paſs them over.

1. *SELAND*, the greateſt Iſland of the *Baltick* Seas, is ſituate near the main Land of *Scandia*, from which parted by a narrow *Strait*, or *Fretum*, not above a *Dutch* mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sundt*, or *Sound*. A Strait thorow which all ſhips, which have any trading to or from the *Baltick*, muſt of neceſſity take their courſe: all other paſſages being barred up with impaſſable Rocks, or otherwiſe prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon forfeiture of all their goods. So that being the onely ſafe paſſage which the Seas afford, one may ſometimes ſee two or 300 ſhips in a day paſs thorow it: all which pay a *toll* or *impoſition* to the King according to their bills of lading. And to ſecure this paſſage, and command all *Paſſengers*, there are two ſtrong Caſtles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helſinbourg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Iſland, which is called *Croneberg*.

But before we come unto that Caſtle, wee muſt view the other parts of the Iſland, being in length two days journey, and almoſt as much in breadth: the ſoyle ſo fertile, that without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all neceſſaries for the life of Man. It was antiently called *Codonania*, and conteineth in it fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Caſtles. The principal whereof, 1 *Haffen*, or *Hafaia*, the *Metropolis* of the Iſlands: by the *Dutch* called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven* of *Merchants*, ſituate near the Sea, with an handſome Port; the Iſle of *Amager* which lyeth on the Eaſt-ſide of the Town, making a very ſafe road for all kinds of ſhipping. The town of an *Orbicular* form, and reaſonably well fortified; but the building mean; for the moſt part of clay and timber, onely to be commended for a ſpacious *Market-place*. Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdom, and ſituate in the heart of thoſe dominions,

nions, is the *Palace Royal*, built of Free-ſtone, in form of a *Quadrangle*, but of no great beauty or magnificence. Moſt memorable for the *Univerſity* here founded by *Henry* or *Ericus* the ninth; but perfected by King *Chriſtiern* the firſt, by whom, and the ſucceeding Princes, liberally endowed. 2 *Fredericksburg*, amongſt Woods of Beech, built for a place of pleaſure by *Federick* the ſecond, where the King hath a fine houſe, and a little Park; in which (amongſt other forein Beaſts) are ſome fallow Deer tranſported hither out of *England*, in the 24 year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3 *Roſchild*, not walled, but counted for a City, as a See Epiſcopal, the Biſhops whereof have antiently had the honour of *Crowning*, and inaugurating the Kings of *Denmark*. In the *Cathedral* Church whereof are to be ſeen the Tombes of many of the *Daniſh* Kings; ſome of them very fair and ſumptuous, the moſt mean, and ordinary. 4 *Sore*, of old times beautified with a goodly *Monaſtery*, the *Revenues* whereof, at the alteration of *Religion*, were converted to the maintenance of a *Free School*, built here by *Frederick* the firſt. But in the year 1623 *Chriſtiern* the fourth, adding hereunto the Revenues of two other *diſſolved Monaſteries*, the one in the Iſle of *Lawland*, and the other in *Juitland*, founded here a new *Univerſity*: for the better ſupply of learned Miniſters for the Churches of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*, (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*;) and furniſhed it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences, for its firſt profeſſors. 5 *Elſinure*, or *Helſingore*, a Village onely, but much frequented by Sea-faring men, as their ſhips paſs by the *Sound*; upon which it is. Near unto which is 6 the ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle of *Cromberg*, built with uncredible charge and pains by King *Frederick* the ſecond: the foundation of it being laid on huge ſtones ſunk into the Sea, and ſo faſtned together, that no ſtorm or tempeſt, how violent ſoever, is able to ſhake it. Well fortified, as well as founded, and mixt of a Palace, and a Fort, being ſince the firſt building of it the moſt conſtant reſidence of the Kings of *Denmark*: who from hence may eaſily diſcern each ſhip which ſailes thorow the *Sundt*, each of which addeth more or leſs unto his Revenues. A profitable and pleaſing proſpect. By the commodity of this, and the oppoſite Caſtle, the King doth not onely ſecure his *Cuſtomes*, but very much ſtrengthen his Eſtate: the Caſtles being ſo near, and the *Strait* ſo narrow, that by the addition of ſome few Ships, he may keep the greateſt Navy that is, from paſſing by him.

Unto the Government and juriſdiction of this Iſland belong many others, the principal whereof are 1 *Amagria*, or *Amagger*, which helps to make up the *Port* or *Road* of *Copenhagen*, ſpoken of before; planted with *Hollanders*, brought hither by the procurement of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond. 2 *Mund.* or *Moem-land*, the chief Town whereof is called *Stegoe*. 3 *Huene*, or *WHEEN*, a little South of *Croneberg* Caſtle, a *Dutch* mile in length, but not quite ſo broad: remarkable only for the ſtudies of that famous aſtronomer *Tycho Brahe*, to whom *Frederick* the ſecond gave this Iſland; that living in a private and ſolitary place, removed from all company but his own Family onely, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day moſt obſervable for the Caſtle of *Uranopolis*, or *Urenbourg*, in which the greateſt part of his *Mathematical* inſtruments are preſerved in ſafety..

III. *FIONIA*, or *FUINEN*, the ſecond Iſland of accompt in all the *Baltick*, is ſituate betwixt *Seland*, and *Juitland*; from which laſt parted by a Strait called *Middlefar Sundt*, ſo narrow and of ſo ſmall a Sea, that the Iſland and the *Cherſoneſe* ſeemed joyned together. A Countrey of a pleaſant and delightful ſituation, and as fruitful withal: conteining twelve *Dutch* miles in length, and four in breadth; and therein 24 *Herets*, or *Prefectures*. 16 Towns, and ſix Royal Caſtles, beſides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemens houſes. The chief whereof are 1 *Odenſee*, or *Othenſohe* (called in *Latine Othonia*) an Epiſcopal See, founded here, at the firſt converſion of this people, by *Otho* the *Great*, whence it had the name. The Town not large, but beautified with two fair Churches; the one dedicated to Saint *Canute*, the other to Saint *Francis*; ſituate in the midſt the Iſland, from which the reſidue of the Towns are almoſt equally diſtant; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated for Trade and Merchandiſe, as they do not onely traffick in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Ruſſia*, *Flanders*, and *Germany*. 2 *Nibourch*, 3 *Fabourch*, 4 *Suibork*, 5 *Middlefar*, whence the ſtrait ſo named: 6 *Bogen*, and 7 *Kertominde*; all ſeated on ſome *Haven*, or convenient *Creek*, the Principal of the Caſtles being 1 *Newbourg*, 2 *Hagenſcow*, 3 *Eſchebourg*, 4 *Hinſgagell*, 5 The Court of *Rugard*. In this Iſland, not far from the Caſtle of *Hagenſcow*, is the mountain *Ochenberg* where *John Ranzovins*, *Anno* 1530. diſcomfited the great Army of *Chriſtopher*, the brother of *Anthony*, Earl of *Oldenbourg*, coming in thoſe unſetled times to invade the Kingdom under colour of reſtoring *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, formerly depoſed: in which fight the Earl of *Hoye*, and *Tecklebourg*, were both ſlain in the place, and the Kingdom after that in quiet from the like pretenders.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are 90 leſſer Iſlands, moſt of them inhabited: the chief of which are.

IV. *LANGELAND*, ſeven *Dutch* miles in length, in which, beſides many Villages, and Gentlemens houſes we have the Town of *Raidkeping*, and the Caſtle of *Franeker*.

V. *LALAND*, disjoyned from *Selandt* by a little narrow ſtrait called *Groneſundt*; ſo plentifull of corn and Cheſnuts, that ſhips full fraighted with them, are ſent yearly hence. An Iſland, which beſides many Caſtles, Villages, and Manſion houſes of the Gentry; hath five good Towns, *viz.* 1 *Nyſtads*, 2 *Naſco*. 3 *Togrop*, 4 *Richus*, and 5 *Mariboane*; in which laſt antiently was a very rich *Monaſtery*, the Revenues whereof are now imployed for the indowment of the new *Univerſity* of *Sora*, founded by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, as before was noted

VI. *FALSTRE*, four *German* miles in length, affording plenty of corn yearly to ſome neighbouring Iſlands. Chief Towns wherein are, 1 *Nicopen*, which for the elegancy of the place, and pleaſantneſs of the ſituation, is called the *Naples* of *Danemark*, 2. *Stabecopen*, from whence there is the ordinary paſſage into *Germany*, ſeven *Dutch* miles hence.

VII. *TVSINGE*, not farr from *Sviborch*, or *Swineburg*, a Town of *Fionia*, a *Dutch* mile in length, ſituate in a dangerous and trobleſom Sea; from whence there is no ſafe paſſage, either to *Selandt*, *Fuinen*, or *Juitland*, though much diſtant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1. *Aſcens*, towards *Juitland*, 2. *Niburg*, towards *Selandt*, and, 3. the *Court* of *Keltrop*, belonging to the noble Family of *Reſencrantz*.

VIII. *FIMERA*, or *FEMEREN*, a fruitful and well-peopled Iſland, having in it the Towns of 1. *Derborch*, 2. *Stabul*, and, 3. *Pietterſborn*. A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not ſo much in danger of being made ſubject to the *Imperialiſts*, by the taking of *Holſtein*, and both *Juitlands*; as by planting a ſtrong Garriſon in this ſmall Iſland: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again; and better fortified than before, againſt all invaſions, *Anno* 1628. Of the remaining Iſland which pertein unto *Fionia*, we find the names of 1. *Aroe*, 2. *Remſo*, 3. *Eurdelo*, 4. *Ebelo*, 5. *Boko*, 6. *Brando*, 7. *Zoroe*, 8. *Agernis*, 9. *Hellenis*, 10. *Jerdo*, 11. *Birkolm*; of which nothing memorable.

Amongſt theſe Iſlands, but not ſubordinate to *Fionia*, are,

IX. *ARIA*, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, conſiſting of three Pariſhes ſome Gentlemens Houſes, and the Town and Caſtle of *Koping*; ſuppoſed to be the habitation of the *Arii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, but a Colony rather of them, as I ſuppoſe; And not farr off

X. *ALSEN*, another little Iſland, but of more repute, called in *Latine*, *Elyſia*; oppoſite to the Gulf or Bay of *Flensburg*, in the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, to which it alſo apperteineth. Well ſtored with Beaſts for profit, and Game for pleaſure; ſo populous, that ſome thouſands of men may be eaſily and ſuddenly raiſed in it; conſiſting of 13. Pariſhes and 4. Towns, that is to ſay, 1. *Gammelgard*, 2. *Oſterholm*, 3. *Norborch*, and 4. the good Town and Caſtle of *Sunderburg*, one of the ordinary reſidences of the Dukes of *Sleſwick*, and honoured with the birth of many of the Princes of the *Royal Family*. Some think it was the habitation antiently of the *Elyſii*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*. But being the *Angli* in thoſe times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, when ſome Colonies of the *Angli* ſeated themſelves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, as before was ſaid, ſome of the *Arii* and *Elyſii* might go along for company, and plant themſelves near them, in theſe Iſlands.

XI. *BORNHOLM*, the laſt of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is ſituate more Eaſtward, oppoſite to that part of *Scandia*, which is called *Blecking*, betwixt it and *Pomeren*. An Iſle of excellent paſturage, breeding plenty of Cattel, wherewith, as alſo with Butter, Cheeſe, Wool, Hides, and ſome ſtore of Fruits, they ſupply the wants of their neighbours; beſides good quantities of powdered Beef and Mutton, which they Barrel up, and ſell to Mariners. It conteineth many good Towns, and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Iſland: Both Town and Iſland pawned by ſome former Kings unto thoſe of *Lubeck*; from whom redeemed by King *Frederick* the ſecond, for a great ſumm of Money, after it had been in their poſſeſſion about 50 years.

Theſe Iſlands in the time of *Pomponius Mela*, were by one general name called the *Hemodes*, in number reckoned to be ſeven; the reſidue either not inhabited, or not taken notice of, are no where mentioned in the Antients: Of theſe ſeven, the greateſt and beſt peopled, was called *Codonania* (ſuppoſed to be *Selandt*) in which the ſaid Authour placeth the *Teutoni*. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Scandia Minor*, with reference to the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, ſuppoſed by him to be an Iſland. From this, or from the Sea adjoyning, called *Sinus Codanus*, the people of theſe Iſlands, and the next Eaſtern Continent, took the name of *Danes*; ſpreading their name afterward, as they did their Conqueſts; of which more anon. In the mean time, we muſt croſs over the *Sound*, and take notice of ſuch other parts of this Kingdom, as lie on the other ſide thereof, in the vaſt Continent, or Demi-Iſland (which you will) of *Scandia*: of which ſomewhat muſt be firſt premiſed, in regard, that not onely ſome parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Countrey of *Norwey* (the Northern Iſlands excepted) are conteined in it.

SCANDIA.

SCANDIA, by *Pliny* and *Solinus* called *Scandivania*, by *Jornandes Scanzia*, hath on the Eaſt, that Bay or branch of the *Baltick*, which is called the *Finniſch*, and *Bodner* Seas; on the North, and Weſt, the main Ocean; on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick*, or *Ooſt Zee*, as the *Dutch* call it: joined to the main Continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land, at the bottom of the *Bodner* Sea, not farr from *Wardhuys*. In regard of ſo great Seas on all parts thereof, it was generally by the Antients thought to be an Iſland, but *incompertæ magnitudinis*, of an unknown greatneſs, as both *Pytheas*, and *Xenophon Lampſacenus* do affirm in *Pliny*: by one of which it is called *Baſilia*, by the other, *Baltia*; from whence the name of *Baltick* to the Sea adjoining. But later Navigations and Experience, have confuted that Opinion; by which it is found to be no Iſland, but a part of the Continent, and a great one too; conteining the whole Kingdom of *Norwey*, the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and ſome part of *Denmark*. That part hereof which belongs to *Denmark*, ſituate in the South eaſt of this great *Peninſula*, and divided into the three Provinces, of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Bleſcida*: and in them three and twenty *Herets* or *Prefectures*, and fifteen Cities.

HALLANDIA, or *HALLANDT*, hath on the Eaſt, the wild Woods which part it from

Scandia. *Gothland*; on the Weſt, the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Juitland*; on the North, *Sweden*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the South, *Scania*, or *Schonen*. A Countrey, for the healthfulneſs of the Air, plainneſs of the Soil, commodiouſneſs of Havens, plenty of Fiſh, pleaſure of Hunting, for inexhauſtible Mines of Braſs and Lead (with ſome veins of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Towns and Villages, and civility of the Inhabitants, not inferiour to any. Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1. *Laholm*, 2. *Halmſtad*, 3. *Falkendorch*; all of them on the Sea, at the mouth of navigable ſtreams, whoſe names I find not: 4. *Warburg*, upon the Sea ſide alſo, but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an Hill. Taken and garriſoned by the *Swedes*, *Anno*, 1569. and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again, *Anno* 1569.

II. *SCANIA*, or *SCHONEN*, hath on the Eaſt, *Bleſcida*, or *Blecking*; on the Weſt, the *Sound*, running along the ſhore hereof for the ſpace of twenty *German* miles; on the North, *Hallandt*; on the South, the *Baltick* or *Ooſt Zee*. The Countrey of the ſame nature with *Hallandt*, as before deſcribed; the Character of that perteining to all the three, this having over and above, as peculiar to it, that the Sea ſhores are ſtored with ſuch ſholes of *Herrings*, that ſometimes Ships are ſcarce able with Wind and Oars to break through them, and row off the Harbour. It is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief Towns in which, are 1. *Lunden*, an Archbiſhop's See, the *Metropolitan* of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; advanced unto that honour by the means and mediation of *Ericus* the firſt, who purpoſely made a journey to *Rome* to effect that buſineſs: the Church of *Danemark* being before that time, ſuject to the Archbiſhops of *Breme*. This was about the year 1100. It is ſituate ſomewhat within the Land; but the *Cathedral* eaſily diſcernable by Mariners as they ſail along. The City mean, and were it not for the *Cathedral*, of no beauty at all. But that indeed affirmed to be a work of much Magnificence and Art; eſpecially for the Clock and Dial, and ſome outward adjuncts. For in the Dial curiouſly ſet out with divers colours, are to be ſeen diſtinctly, the Year, Moneth, Week, Day and Hour of every day throughout the year; with the Feaſts, both movable and fixed, together with the motion of the Sun and Moon, and their paſſage through each degree of the *Zodiack* Then for the Clock, it is ſo framed by Artificial Engines, that whenſoever it is to ſtrike, two Horſe men encounter one another, giving as many blows a piece, as the Bell ſounds hours: and on the opening of a door, there appears a Theatre, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne, with *Chriſt* in her Arms, and the three Kings or *Magi* (with their ſeveral trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and preſenting ſeverally their gifts; two *Trumpeters* ſounding all the while, to adorn the Pomp of that Proceſſion. 2. *Malmoge*, or *Elbogen* (called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, juſt oppoſite to *Copenhagen* in *Seland*, a well-traded Port; the birth-place of *Gaſpar Bartholinus*, otherwiſe called *Malmogius Danus*, that great *Mathematician*; ſuppoſed to be the Author of the Clock and Dial, before deſcribed. 3. *Trelleberg*, on the North of *Elbogen*, 4. *Landiſcron*, on the Sea ſide, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 5 *Helſemberg*, a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, juſt oppoſite to *Helſinare*, and *Croneberg* in *Selandt*; the other of the two Keys which openeth ino the *Sound*. 6. *Radneby*, a frontier Town, bordering on *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*. 7. *Chriſtiania*, or *Chriſtendorp*, a ſtrong piece built by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, *Anno* 1604. compaſſed by the Sea, and fortified by Fenns and Marſhes. thought to be impregnable.

III. *BLESCICA*, or *BLECKING*, is bounded on the Eaſt and South, with the *Baltick* Sea; on the North with *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*; on the Weſt, with *Scania* or *Schonen*: more mountainous and barren than either, but yet partaking ſomewhat of the former Character, which we had of *Hallandt*. Chief Towns thereof, are, 1 *Vſted*, on the mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2. *Chriſtenberg*, in *Latine*, *Chriſtianopolis*, on the borders of *Swethland*; raiſed out of the ground by *Chriſtiern* the fourth to defend his Kingdom on that ſide, *Anno* 1604. but not long after by a warlike Stratagem. ſurpriſed by the *Swedes*, in the late Warr betwixt theſe Kingdoms, in the year 1611. Deſtroyed and diſ-peopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleaſant object, but ſince repaired and repleniſhed. 3. *Abuys*, upon the River which divides the Kingdoms, not farr from *Chriſternberg*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Guta* and *Dauciones*, taking up the South parts of this great *Peninſula*. *Meridionalia tenent Guta & Dauciones*, as we find in *Ptolemy*, *Geogr.* l 2 c 11 which in all probability muſt be meant of the Provinces. Of theſe, the *Gutes* paſſing over into the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the North parts of it, ſince from thence called *Juitland* The reſt uniting with the people of thoſe many Iſlands, which lie together in the Bay or Gulph called *Sinus Codanus* (now the *Baltick* Sea) took the names of *Danes*; and not from *Dan*, I know not what King thereof, above a thouſand years before the birth of our Saviour. Firſt taken notice of by that name in *Gernandes de Rebus Geticis* who lived about the time of *Juſtinian* the firſt; about which time or not long after, it is conceived that they made themſelves Maſters of ſo much of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, as had been formerly poſſeſſed by the *Juites* and *Angli*; whoſe forſaken, or ill-peopled ſeats they poſſeſs themſelves of. After this we hear little of them, till the time of *Charls* the Great, living in a confuſed eſtate, ſometimes made ſubject to the *Norwegians*, ſometimes to the *Swedes*, but always without Law and order; till by their King *Godfrey*, or *Gotricus*, they were regulated by Laws, and reduced to an orderly kind of life, *Anno* 797. About this time they began to infeſt the Coaſts of *England*, invaded *Friſeland*, with a Fleet of 200 ſail; and had much weakened and endangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unſeaſonable death of *Godfrey*, and the quarrels which aroſe about the ſucceſſion after his deceaſe, had not taken them off. Their affairs at home being well ſettled, they imployed their whole Forces againſt *England*, as the weaker enemy: over which they tyranniſed 250 years, and reigned 26 under three Kings of that Nation. Outed of that, and the terrour of their name being over, they

they

Scandia.

they have been moſt buſied with their neighbours of *Sweden* and *Germany*: improving their eſtate, but rather by Marriages and civil Contracts, than by force of Arms, with the addition of the Kingdom of *Norwey*, and the Dukedom of *Holſtein*; their pretenſions to, and for a time the poſſeſſion of, the Crown of *Sweden*, getting them nothing in concluſion, but blows and loſſes. So that we have no more to do, than to ſumm up a Catalogue of the Kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; leaving the reſt that follow to another place.

The KINGS of *DENMARK*.

A. Ch.

797 1 *Gotricus*, the firſt *Legiſlator* of the *Danes*, and the Eſtabliſher of their Kingdom, a Prudent and Valiant Prince.

2 *Olaus*, Son of *Gotricus*, or *Godfrey*.

3 *Henningus*, Son of *Olaus*.

873 4 *Siward*, Son to a Daughter of *Godfrey* by the King of *Norwey*.

5 *Regnier*, Son of *Siward*.

6 *Siward* II.

7 *Ericus*, or *Henricus*, baptized at *Mentz*, at the ſame time with his brother *Harald*, recovered the Kingdom to his Houſe (of which they have been outed by the Race of *Godfrey*.)

8 *Canutus*, the Son of *Ericus*, the Heatheniſh Son of a Chriſtian and pious Father.

880 9 *Froto*, the Son of *Canutus*, a profeſſed Chriſtian.

886 10 *Gormo* (our *Engliſh* Writers call him *Gormund*) Son of *Froto*.

889 11 *Harald*, the Son of *Gormo*, or *Gormund*.

900 12 *Gormo* II. Son of *Harald*, an enemy of the Chriſtian Faith.

927 13 *Harald* II. Son of *Gormo* the ſecond, a good Chriſtian.

975 14 *Sueno*, or *Swain*, Son of *Harald*, at firſt a great enemy of the Goſpel, an Uſurper of the Throne in his Fathers life-time, and a great ſcourge unto the *Engliſh*. Outed of his Eſtate by *Ericus* of *Swethland*, he received the Goſpel, re-gained his Kingdom, and eſtabliſhed Chriſtianity in this Countrey, his Warr on *England* ſtill continuing.

1010 15 *Olaus*, the eldeſt Son of *Swain*, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*.

1020 16 *Canutus* II. brother of *Olaus*, the firſt King of *England* of the *Danes*, ſucceeded his brother in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; to which he added alſo the Crown of *Sweden*.

1037 17 *Canutus* III. Son of *Canutus* the ſecond, the laſt King of *England* of the Race of the *Danes*.

18 *Magnus*, Son of *Olaus*, King of *Norwey*

1051 19 *Sueno* II. Siſters Son of *Canutus* the ſecond, by *Vlfo* an *Engliſh* Duke.

1074 20 *Harald* III. Baſe Son of *Sueno* the ſecond.

21 *Canutus* IV. Another of the baſe Sons of *Sueno*, murthered at the Altar in the Church of *Otenſee* in the Iſle of *Fionia*; afterwards canonized a Saint.

1088 22 *Olaus* II. Another of the baſe Sons of *Swain*.

1096 23 *Ericus* II. Another of the baſe Sons of *Swain*, the Founder of the Archiepiſcopal See of *Lunden*.

1102 24 *Harald* IV. Baſe Son of *Henry*, or *Ericus* the ſecond.

1133 25 *Nicolas*, Another of the baſe Sons of *Swain*.

1135 26 *Ericus* III. Another of the baſe Sons of *Ericus* the ſecond.

1140 27 *Ericus* IV. Commonly called the fifth (ſome of the younger Houſes being reckoned in) Nephew of *Ericus* the ſecond.

1150 28 *Sueno* III. Son of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grand-child to *Nicolas*, both Kings; the firſt reigning in *Scandia*, the other in *Juitland*: both dead without iſſue, *Canutus* being ſlain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.

1157 29 *Waldemar*, Son of *Canutus*, the lawful Son of *Ericus* the ſecond, after the interpoſition of ſo many Baſtards, ſucceeded at the laſt in the Throne of his Fathers. By this means the *Rugians* and *Vandals* imbraced the Goſpel.

1185 30 *Canutus* V. Son of *Waldemar*.

1203 31 *Waldemar* II. Brother of *Canutus*, and Duke of *Sleſwick*, before his coming to the Crown.

1243 32 *Ericus* V. called the VII. Son of *Waldemar* the ſecond, ſlain by the practices and treaſon of his brother *Abel*.

1251 33 *Abel*, Brother of *Ericus*, ſlain by the Paiſants of *Friſeland*.

1252 34 *Chriſtopher*, Brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.

1260 35 *Ericus* VI. (VIII.) Son of *Chriſtopher*.

1287 36 *Ericus* VII. (IX.) Younger Son of *Ericus*, ſupplanted his elder brother *Chriſtopher*.

1327 37 *Chriſtopher* II. Eldeſt Son of *Ericus*, firſt diſpoſſeſſed of his birth-right by his brother *Ericus*; after whoſe death, he ſucceeded in the Crown, by the help of his half brother the Earl of *Holſt*.

1334 38 *Waldemar* III. Son of *Chriſtopher* the ſecond, againſt whom and his encroachments, the Sea-towns, commonly called the *Hanſe*, did firſt confederate, and vanquiſhed him in many battels.

1376 39 *Mar-*

Norwey.

1376 39 *Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of *Waldemar* the third, married with *Aquin* King of *Norwey*, ſo uniting the Kingdoms: of whom, and their ſucceſſors, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter; when we have took a view of the Kingdom of *Norwey*, and of the *Appendixes* thereof.

NORWEY.

NORWEY is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Swethland*, from which, parted by a perpetual ridg of rough and wild Mountains, called the *Dofrine Hills*; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to ſay, by the *frozen Sea* upon the North; the *German*, or *Norwegian* Ocean upon the Weſt; and on the South, with the *Daniſh Sea*, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*. Being in breadth from *Schagen*, the moſt Northern point of *Juitland*, to *Congell*, the moſt Southerly Town of *Norwey*, no leſs than 250 miles.

It is called *Norwey*, *quaſi tractus ſeu via Septentrionalis*, from the Northern ſituation of it, conteining in length 1300 miles, in breadth not above half ſo much; inhabited by a People given to hoſpitality, plain dealing, and abhoring theft. Antiently they were great Warriers, and became terrible to all the more Southern Nations; by whom called *Normans* (that is to ſay, *Homines Boreales*, or *Northmen*, as *Williel. Gemiticenſis*, rightly hath it) being at that time a mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the *Norwegians* and *Swethlanders* a-part from the *Danes*; whoſe ſteps they followed in their frequent, or rather continual Piracies on the coaſts of *England*, *France* and *Ireland*. By *Helmoldus* in the ſame ſenſe, they are called, *Nordluidi*, a name made in *Latine*, out of the *Dutch* word *Nord*, and the *French* word *lein*, ſignifying men of a Northern place or Nation.

Of the Poſition of it in regard of the Heavens, we have ſpoken already; but more particularly it reacheth from the firſt *Parallel* of the twelfth *Clime*, where the *Pole* is elevated 53 degrees 26 minutes, as farr as to the 71 degree of *Latitude*. By which accompt, the longeſt day in the Southern point is but 18 hours; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being ſituate furtheſt North of all the Countrey, they have no night for almoſt three whole Moneths together.

The Countrey for the moſt part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vaſt Woods, extreme cold, and but ill inhabited. In the beſt parts thereof, it affords little Corn; and in the moſt Northern, none at all: in ſo much that the common ſort of people are fain to uſe dried Fiſh (that which we commonly call *Stock-fiſh*) inſtead of Bread. But the better (that is, the richer ſort) buy Corn of ſuch Merchants as come to traffique with them. Their chief Commodities are *Stock-fiſh*, rich Furrs, Train-oyl, Pitch, and Tackling for Ships; as Maſts, Cables, Deal-boards, and the like; which the Inhabitants exchange for Corn, Wine, Fruits, Beer, and other neceſſaries for man's life. The Countrey is exceedingly troubled with certain little Beaſts which they call *Lemmers*. They are about the bigneſs of a *Field-Mouſe*, and are by the Inhabitants ſaid to drop out of the clouds in tempeſtuous weather. They devour, like the *Locuſts*, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time die all in heaps (as it were) together: and with their ſtench ſo poiſon the Air, that the poor people are long after troubled with the *Jaundies*, and with a giddineſs in the head. But theſe Beaſts come not ſo often to infect the Land, as the *Whales* do to terrifie and moleſt the Shores, the Weſtern Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for thoſe great *Leviathans*: againſt whoſe violence and fury, the Mariners and People of the Sea-coaſt have found a *Remedy*, which is by caſting out ſome Water, intermixt with the Oyl of *Caſtor*; the ſmell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this help, there were no fiſhing on theſe Coaſts, which is the greateſt Staple Commodity (beſides materials for Shipping) which the Countrey yieldeth.

The Towns here, are exceeding thin, and in them the houſes, for the moſt part, very poor and miſerable; commonly patched up of Dirt and Hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage-houſes in the Fen Countreys. Diſtributed into five *Prefectures* or *Governments*, according to the number of the Caſtles which command the ſame. Of theſe,

1. The firſt moſt towards the South, is the Caſtle of *BOHUS*, to which are ſubject the Towns of 1. *Marſtrand*, ſeated in a *Demi-Iſland* begirt with Rocks; of moſt note for the infinite quantity of *Herrings* caught hereabouts. 2. *Congel*, upon the Sea, a Town of Merchandiſe, oppoſite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*. 3. *Oddewald*.

2. *AGGERHUIS*, the ſecond of the five *Royal Caſtles*, hath under its command the Towns of 1. *Anſlo*, or *Aſloia*, on a Bay or Gullet oppoſite to *Juitland*, an Epiſcopal See, and of moſt eſteem of all the Country, by reaſon of the Courts of *Judicature* which are therein held. 2. *Tonſberg*, or *Koningſberg*, that is to ſay, the *Kings*, or the *Kingly* Mountain, formerly a retiring place of the *Kings* of *Norwey*. 3. *Fredrichſtrad*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Danemark*. 4. *Schin*, or *Schon*, remarkable for its Mines of Iron and Copper. 5. *Saltzburg*. 6. *Hammar* the greater, and 7. *Hammar* the leſs, divided by the interpoſing of the Bay called *Sinus Mœſianus*, in former times the See of a Biſhop, ſince removed to *Aſloia*; or rather thereunto united in theſe later times, as many poor Biſhopricks be in *Ireland*.

3. *BOGERHUSE* is the third Caſtle of Command herein. Subordinate whereunto are 1. *Bergen*, the principal Town of the Countrey, an *Epiſcopal* See, and the ordinary reſidence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*; ſituate amongſt high Mountains, at the bottom of a deep Creek or Arm of the Ocean called *Carmeſunt*. A noted Port, and much reſorted to by Merchants of moſt forein Nations; bringing in Corn, Meat, Bread, Beer, Wine, and *Aqua vita*, to ſupply the natural wants and defects hereof: and in exchange tranſporting hence Fiſh, Furrs, Cordage, and other materials for Ship-

ping. In which regard, accompted formerly one of the four chief *ſtaple* Towns of the *Dutch* Merchants of the *Hanſe*: the other three being *London* in *England*, *Novogrod* in *Muſcovie*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time, this *Bergen* hath loſt moſt of its Trade, removed hence to *Wardhuis*, nearer unto *Muſcovie*: as the great Town of *Novogrod*, by reaſon of the change of Navigation through the *Baltick* into the Northern paſſage, hath given way to S. *Nicolas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amſterdam*. For the *Hollanders* by blocking up the Haven, but eſpecially by keeping *Bergen-ap-Zome*, have ſuch a command over the River, that no Veſſel can paſs or repaſs without their licence. 2. *Staffanger*, an *Epiſcopal* See alſo, but not elſe obſervable.

4. The Caſtle of *TRUND-HEIM*, is the fourth, ſituate in the Town of *Trondheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latine Nidroſia*; the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the *Metropolitan* of *Norwey*. A beautiful City heretofore, but ſince the ſubjection of this Countrey unto the *Danes*, reduced to a Burrough. So called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is ſeated, and *Roſa* the name then of the principal Church; which in time gave place to the *Cathedral*, for greatneſs and neatneſs of the Fabrick, all of poliſhed ſtone, not giving place to any in *Europe*; about the year 1530. much defaced with fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it, being eſtimated at 7000 Crowns. A great ſumm of money in thoſe times, and in ſo poor a Countrey. So that by caſting up our reckoning, we find in *Norwey*, one Archbiſhop, and four Biſhops, that is to ſay, the Archbiſhop of *Trundheim*, or *Nidroſia*, the Biſhops of *Bergen*, *Anſlo*, *Staffanger*, and *Hammar*: Of the ſame power, juriſdiction, and revenue, ſince the *Reformation*, as thoſe of *Denmark*; whereof, and of the firſt converſion of this people to the *Chriſtian Faith*, we have ſpoken already.

5. The fifth and laſt Caſtle which commands this Countrey, is that of *WARDHUYS*, ſo called of the Town of *Wardhuys*; as that is from the Iſle *Ward*, in which it is ſeated. A ſmall Caſtle, and the Town in former times but mean and poor, ſituate in the extreme North point of all this Kingdom; but in thoſe times accompted (as it eaſily might) for the chief of this *Prefecture*, and honoured in Summer time with the ſeat and reſidence of the *Governour*; retiring more Southwards in the Winter; at what time, by reaſon of the extremity of the cold, and long abſence of the Sun for Moneths together (the Town lying within the *Arctick Circle*) it is hardly habitable. But of late times it is much improved, both in wealth, and building; by reaſon of the removal of the *Engliſh* Trading from *Novogrod*, near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of Saint *Nicolas*, not farr from hence; drawing by that means the Trade of *Muſcovie*, and *Norwey*, more near together. So that now it is not only uſeful unto the *Danes*, in regard that it ſomewhat aweth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives; for that cauſe fortified very ſtrongly by King *Frederick* the Second: but made very profitable to him alſo, by the reſort of *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, who muſt of neceſſity touch at it (if they make no ſtay here) in their Way to *Muſcovie*. Other Towns in theſe two laſt *Prefectures* are not worth looking after.

And ſo much for the *Continent*, or Main land of *Norwey*; let us next look upon the *Iſlands* in the Northern *Ocean*, which belong unto it.

The ISLANDS in the *NORTHERN* OCEAN.

The *NORTHERN SEA*, ſo named from its Northern ſituation, is by ſome called *Mare Scythicum*, becauſe it coaſted along the ſhores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal* called *Oceanus glacialis*, becauſe often frozen; by *Pliny* in the ſame ſenſe, *Mare Amalchium*, the word in the *Scythick* Language ſignifying frozen, or congealed; by the *Ruſſes*, or *Muſcovites*, *Myrmanskoy More*; by the *Cimbrians* in their Tongue, *Marimorusa*, that is to ſay, the *dead Sea*, becauſe of the ſlowneſs of its motion, often clogged with Ice, and in the ſame ſenſe, *mare pigrum* by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth beſt deſcribe it, from whom take it thus; *Trans* Suetones *Mare aliud pigrum & prope immotum*, &c. Beyond the *Sweeds* there is another Sea, ſo ſlow, and almoſt immovable, that many think it to be the bounds which compaſs the whole World. Some are perſuaded that the ſound of the Sun is heard, as he ariſeth out of this Sea; and, that many ſhapes of gods are ſeen, and the beams of his head, *Illuc uſque* (*& fama vera*) *tantum natura*; At this Sea (the report is credible) is the end of Nature, and the World. The *Engliſh* were the firſt of all civil People, who adventured to open and diſcover the paſſages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancellour*, arriving by this way in *Ruſſia*, *Anno* 1553, and tracing out the way, which others of that Nation, together with the *Flemings*, *Hollanders*, and ſome Towns of the *Hanſe*, have ſince followed. Of which more in *Muſcovie*. The principal Iſlands diſperſed in it, are, 1. *Groenland*, 2. *Iſeland*, 3. *Freezland*, belonging to the Crown of *Norwey*, to be ſurveyed at the preſent; *Nova Zemla*, and Sir *Hugh Willoughbie's* Iſland, apperteining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muſcovie*; of which more hereafter.

I. *ISELAND*, is ſituate under the *Arctick Circle*, in length 144 *German* miles, 65 in breadth. So called from the abundance of Ice in it, and about it, frozen continually for the ſpace of 8 Moneths, and ſo vehemently chilled with *Northern* winds, that it yieldeth neither Corn nor Trees, except *Juniper* onely: yet there is graſs in ſuch abundance, that the People are of opinion, that if they do not ſometimes keep their Cattel from feeding, they are in danger to ſurfeit and die with fulneſs. Beaſts for labour here, are both Horſes and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without Horns, but the Sheep not ſo: and they have alſo here a fine breed of little Doggs, known amongſt us by the name of *Iſeland Doggs*, the *delight of Ladies*; as alſo white *Faulcons*, and white *Ravens*, *Eagles* with white tails, with *Hares* and *Bears* of the ſame colour. By reaſon of their want of Corn, the people eat

Stock-

Freezland.

Stock-fiſh (as in *Norwey*) inſtead of Bread; yet notwithſtanding, by reaſon of the benefit of the Sea, and acceſs of ſtrangers, they have all things neceſſary brought unto them (even to Wood and Timber) of which the richer ſort make uſe: giving the Merchant in return, ſometimes the fleſh of Beeves and Mutton; but ordinarily, Butter, Skins, Horſes, Hawks, Brimſtone, and Fiſh eſpecially, the *Staple* commodity of the Countrey. Of which they have ſuch plenty, and of ſo good condition, that a piece of *Iſeland Ling* is counted with us, as a fit diſh for a Nobleman's Table.

The people, for the moſt part, are of a plain and ſimple nature, living (as in the *Golden Age*) on that which nature gives them, without help of Art, more than that of making Cheeſe and Butter: the Mountains ſerving them for Towns, and the Rivers for Drink, and lodging all under one roof, with their Horſes and Oxen. They uſe neither *Phyſick* nor *Phyſicians*, yet live ſo long (and probably the longer for it) that many of them attein to the age of 150 years and more. The Women are exceeding fair, but they know not how to attire themſelves; nor is there any difference in apparel betwixt the *Sexes*, ſo that it is not eaſie to know one from another. Few of them but have ſome *familiar Spirit* to do them ſervice; and notwithſtanding the endeavour of the *Miniſters* to purge them from this *impiety*; yet it is ſo graffed in them, that they cannot leave it.

It is obſervable, that notwithſtanding the cold condition of this Iſland, yet in many places it is full of heats and fire under the ground; which by the *Antiperiſtaſis* of the cold air, ſtopping the pores of the earth, and taking from it the liberty of evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: in ſo much that there are three high Mountains, whoſe tops are alway covered with Snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecle*, *Helge*, and *La-Croix*, but the firſt the principal; by ſome called *Heclefort*, which ſometimes caſts out fire, ſometimes flaming water, then black aſhes, and *Pumice-ſtones*, in ſo great abundance, that it darkeneth the Sun, and makes the Countrey for ſix miles round about it to be uninhabited. Stranger things are not ſpoken of *Ætna*, than of theſe three Mountains: and here the ſuperſtitious people have the ſame opinion which they have in *Sicil. viz.* That underneath muſt needs be Hell, and the habitations of the damned. But to judicious men the natural reaſon of the flames is plain and obvious; occaſioned by thoſe veins of *Brimſtone* (great quantity whereof they ſend into forein parts) on which the foundation of the hills is laid: here being many *Bathes*, and fountains of hot water, which have ſulphur ſwimming at the top.

At the firſt planting of this Iſland, the people did not trouble themſelves with building Towns, but every one ſeated himſelf where he thought convenient; and dwelling in *Cels*, and *Caverns* digged in the bottom of the Rocks. By means whereof the in-land parts have not many houſes: but the Sea-coaſts, ſince the coming of ſo many ſtrangers to them, begin to be built in many places; the Buildings, for the moſt part, being of Timber, roofed with flaggs, with an hole on the ſides of the roof to let in the light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principal of them which are, being 1. *Halar* in the North, and 2. *Schalholt* in the Southern part; both Biſhops Sees; having petty *Schools*, conſiſting of 24 Scholars apiece, to whom the *Latine Tongue* is taught at the charge of the Biſhops. 3. *Haffenfordt*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Dutch* Merchants barter their commodities: and 4. *Bedſtede*, a Caſtle, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived, that this Iſland is that *Thule*, which the Poets ſo often ſpeak of, as, *Tibi ſerviat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec ſit Terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca*, the *Tragedian*: nor did there want ſome reaſon to perſuade them to this opinion; this being indeed the furtheſt part of the old known World. But greater reaſons are againſt it. For when *Solinus* ſaith, *multa ſunt circa* Britanicum *Inſula, è quibus* Thule *ultima*; I hope *Thule* muſt be one of the *Britiſh* Iſles. And when *Tacitus* ſaith of *Agricola*, *inſulas quas* Orcadas *vocant domuit, deſpecta eſt &* Thule; I am ſure that *Iſeland* is ſo farr from being kenned by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at leaſt eight degrees diſtant. So that *Thule* muſt be ſought for in another place, and where that is, hath been ſhewed already. As for *Iſeland*, it was ſo farr from being known unto the Antients, that it was hardly known unto thoſe of *Norwey*, till the year 874, when ſome of the *Norwegians* driven out of their Countrey by *Harald* the firſt, who firſt ſuppreſſing the many petit King of the *Norwegians*, made many of them ſeek new dwellings, of which ſome few arrived here; where finding room to plant in, and no great loſs (if any) by change of their dwelling; they invited many of their friends and Countrey-men to come unto them, *Anno* 1070. they were converted to the *Goſpel* by ſome *Preachers* ſent thither from *Adelbert* the Archbiſhop of *Breme*. By whoſe perſuaſion and procurement they founded two *Epiſcopal* Sees; adding thereto in tract of time, eight *Religious Houſes*: that is to ſay, the Monaſteries of *Pingore*, *Remeſtede*, *Modur*, and *Monkeniere*, under the Government and Juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Hallar*; and thoſe of *Vedey*, *Pernebar*, *Kirckebar*, and *Skirde*, under the Biſhop of *Scalholt*. In the year 1260 it was firſt brought under the Crown of *Norwey*, following ſince that the fortunes of it, in all changes, both of Church and State: made ſubject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*; together with it *reformed* in matters of *Religion*, according to the confeſſion of *Ausburg*; reteining ſtill their Biſhops, with a limited power, and turning the *Revenues* of their *Monaſteries* unto other uſes, as there they did, according to the will and pleaſure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

II. South-weſt of *Iſeland* lies another, and as cold an Iſle, commonly called by the name of *FREEZLAND*, from the continual *Froſts* unto which it is ſubject. By the *Latines* it is called *Frizlandia*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Friſia*, or *Friſeland*, in *Germany*. Situate under the North *frigid-zone*; but not ſo much within the *Arctick* as *Iſeland* is: the longeſt day here in the height of Summer, not exceeding 20 hours: and yet the ſoil ſo cold and barren, that it beareth neither Corn, nor Fruit, the Inhabitants living moſt on Fiſh; which as it is their onely food, ſo is it alſo their chief

com-

Groenland

commodity, wherewith to entertain or invite the *Merchant*. And hereof there is ſuch abundance caught upon their coaſts, that they are never without the company of *Hanſemen*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes*, and *Engliſh*; by which laſt ſo frequented in theſe later times, that it hath been called by ſome, the *Weſtern England* For quantity it is ſomewhat bigger than *Iſcland*; but by reaſon of the bitter air, and the defects above-mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freezeland*, by the name of the Iſland; ſituate on the Eaſtern ſhore of it. Beſides which, there are ſome others ſet down in the Maps, as 2 *Sameſcot*, 3 *Andefort*, 4 *Sorund*; but not much obſervable. Weſtward hereof, as *Zieglerus* (and out of him *Maginus*) telleth us, is a leſs Iſland called *Icaria*, giving the name of *Mare Icarium* to the Sea adjoyning: ſo called (by his miſtake or tranſlation of the Fable) from *Icarus* the ſon of *Dadalus*, a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over theſe Iſlands.

III. GROENLAND, ſo called, as ſome ſay, from the greenneſs of it in Summer; as others ſay by *Antiphraſis*, becauſe never green, by reaſon of the ſharpneſs of winter. But the former *Etymologie* is more agreeable to the ſtate of the Countrey. For though it be continually covered with ſnow, except in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, (inſomuch that though the people be always clad with *Furrs* and *Skins*, yet they feel no heat) yet in thoſe months it is exceeding freſh and green, and affords good paſturage. It is ſituate for the greateſt part, within the *Arctick*, between the 65 and 77 degrees of the Northern Latitude: ſo that the longeſt day in the Southern part is 21 hours and an half; and in the moſt Northern, they have no night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirmed to be 600 miles, and may be much longer than ſo, for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect diſcovery made of it hitherto; though much frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, (two great Sea-faring Nations) for the benefit of *Whale-fiſhing*, much there in uſe. Their commodities are fiſh, white bears, wild Deer, and ſome ſtore of Cattel there bred upon their paſtures, but houſed for the moſt part all the Winter: the greateſt part of the people dwelling in Caves, and delighting in *Necromancy*, to which more wilfully addicted than thoſe in *Iſeland*, becauſe leſs acquainted with the Goſpel.

Places of moſt importance in it are 1 Saint *Thomas* (in which there is a Monaſtery of *Dominican Friers*) ſeated in the North-Eaſt of the Iſland; concerning which *Mercator* ſpeaks of one thing which is very obſervable: relating, that it is not far from a flaming or burning mountain, ſeated upon hot *ſcalding ſprings*, conveyed by pipes of ſtone into the Monaſtery, and ſerving both as a *ſtove* to warm them, and for a *fire* to boyl their Victuals. The walls of the Monaſtery built of *Pumice* ſtones caſt out of that Mountain; which being tempered with the water of thoſe burning ſprings, doth make a glutinous ſubſtance, ſerving inſtead of *Lime*, and as long durable. The Gardens of the *Convent*, in regard of this heat, flouriſh all the year with herbs, and ſweet-ſmelling flowers: and the adjoyning Sea for the ſame reaſon being never frozen, affords good plenty of fiſh and fowl, the whole year about; not only for the *Monks*, but the neighbouring Iſlanders. So far, and to this purpoſe he.

The ſecond Town of note, is *Ilva*, not far from this *Monaſtery*: and 3 *Munderpre* on the South-Eaſt point. Others, as in a Countrey not well diſcovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years ſince *Nicolas Zeni*, a *Venetian*, caſt by a tempeſt on the Coaſt of *Freezeland*, and by the King thereof employed upon new diſcoveries, *Anno* 1380, firſt made it known to us of *Europe*; immediately on that diſcovery poſſeſſed by the *NORWEGIANS*, and made a Member of that Crown.

As for the *NORWEGIANS* themſelves, now their fellow ſubjects, they were firſt known in the time of *Ptolemy*, by the name of *Chedini*; poſſeſſing then the Weſtern part of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swethlanders*, they became better known in the flouriſhing time of the French Empire, by the name of *Normans*; firſt called ſo by *Eginhartus* in his Hiſtory of the life of *Charls* the *Great*, infeſting then the Sea coaſts of *France*, and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell ſo heavily on the French, eſpecially in the times of *Charles* the *Simple*, that they extorted from him that goodly Countrey, ſince of them called *Normandy*; conferred on *Rollo*, firſt Duke thereof, *Anno* 912. whoſe Succeſſors much increaſed their glory by the Conqueſt of *England*; as ſome private adventurers of them did, by the Conqueſt of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards ſetling on their own bottom, every one of theſe Northern Nations acting by it ſelf, they were called *Norwegians*: ſometimes, as formerly commanding over all three Kingdoms, ſubject ſucceſſively to each; but moſt an end governed by their own Kings, till their finall ſubjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting ſolely, and by it ſelf, they ſubdued *Ireland*, under the conduct of *Turgeſius*, who tyrannized there for a time; as alſo all the *Orcades*, and the Iſle of *Man*, ſold, or ſurrendered by them, upon good conditions, to the *Engliſh* and *Scots*, who by thoſe Titles ſtill poſſeſs them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all thoſe of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute*, and the firſt *Scotiſh Fergus*) as meerly fabulous; we will begin with King *Suibdagerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongſt his three ſons, whoſe Succeſſors *Munſter* thus reckoneth.

The KINGS of *NORWEY*.

1 *Suibdagerus*.
2 *Haddingus*.
3 *Hetbarius*.
4 *Collerus*.
5 *Frogerus*.
6 *Gotarus*.

7 *Rotherus.*
8 *Helga.*
9 *Haſmunus.*
10 *Reginaldus.*
11 *Gumaraus.*
12 *Oſmundus.*
13 *Olaus.*
14 *Oſmundus* II. not long after whoſe time *Anno ſcil.* 800, the *Normans* began their irruptions.
15 *Aquinus.*
16 *Haraldus.*
17 *Olaus* II.
18 *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth, and *Norwey* by Conqueſt.
19 *Olaus* III. ſon of *Swain*, or *Sueno*, ſucceeded in the Realms of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; *Canutus* his younger brother being King of *England*. In this Kings time the *Norwegians* firſt received the Goſpel.
20 *Canutus*, King of *England*, ſucceeded his brother *Olaus* in the Kingdom of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, to which he alſo added the Crown of *Sweden*.
21 *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdom was reſtored to the *Norwegians*.
22 *Canutus* II.
23 *Magnus.*
24 *Harald* II.
25 *Magnus* II. King of *Sweden*, and *Norwey*.
1326 26 *Magnus* III. King of *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, intending the Crown of *Sweden* for *Ericus* his eldeſt ſon, conferred that of *Norwey* on *Hacquin*, or *Aquinus*, his ſecond ſon.
1359 27 *Aquinus*, King of *Norwey*, younger ſon of *Magnus* the third, maried with *Margaret*, eldeſt daughter of *Waldemar*, the third; King of *Denmark*; ſo uniting the Kingdoms. And though *Olaus* the onely ſon of this bed died young, without any iſſue; yet the *Danes* having once got footing in *Norwey*, ſo aſſured themſelves of it, that they have ever ſince poſſeſſed it as a ſubject Kingdom: keeping the *Natives* ſo poor and low, that they are not able to aſſert their former liberties; and not permitting them to uſe any ſhipping, ſo much as for tranſporting their own commodities; for fear they ſhould grow wealthy and ſtrong at Sea. Beſides, the ſtrong Garriſons maintained in moſt parts of the Countrey, keep it in ſuch an abſolute awe, that they dare not ſtir againſt the *Danes*, if their ſtomachs ſerved them. So that now *Norwey* being made ſubject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made fellow-ſubjects to the ſame King: We muſt next look upon theſe Kings, not as Kings of each, diſtinct and ſeparate from the other: but as they are in fact and Title,

The KINGS of DENMARK and NORWEY.

1376 1 *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*; of this laſt by deſcent, of the other by marriage.
1389 2 *Olaus*, ſon of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*.
1383 3 *Margaret*, wife of *Aquinus*, mother of *Olaus*, and daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her ſon (in whoſe time ſhe governed as his *Guardian*) took upon her the Kingdom in her own right; not onely keeping *Norwey* in the ſtate ſhe found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the vanquiſhment of *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*.
1411 4 *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeren*, and Knight of the Garter, ſon of the Lady *Mary*, Dutcheſs of *Pomeren*, daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the ſiſter of *Margaret*, by whom adopted for her heir; ſucceeded after her deceaſe in all the three Kingdoms: outed of all before his death, by a ſtrong Faction made againſt him, and his eſtate conferred on
1430 5 *Chriſtopher*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria* (but in title onely) the ſon of *Margaret*, ſiſter of *Ericus*; choſen by the joynt conſent of all the States of theſe Kingdoms. After whoſe death, (without iſſue) the *Danes* conſidering the great advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norwey*; pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleſwick* and Earl of *Holſt*, for the next Succeſſor: that they might get in thoſe eſtates to their Kingdom alſo. Who excuſing himſelf by reaſon of his Age, and want of Children, commended to them *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, his kinſman, and next heir, who was choſe accordingly.
1448 6 *Chriſtiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, choſen King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*; ſucceeded his ſaid Uncle in the eſtates of *Holſt*, and *Sleſwick*, continuing ſince united unto that Crown: and added alſo thereunto by conqueſt the Kingdom of *Sweden*.
1482 7 *John*, ſon of *Chriſtiern*, ſucceeded in all three Kingdoms; Knight of the Order of the Garter.
1514 8 *Chriſtiern* II. ſon of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norwey*, and *Sweden*, which laſt he held under with great cruelty: hated, by reaſon of his Tyranny towards all ſorts of people, and outed of his Kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, *Anno* 1522, by whom at laſt taken, and kept in priſon till he died, *Anno* 1559.

1523 9 *Frederick*, brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, choſen King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, on the abdication of his Nephew, reformed *Religion* in both Kingdoms, according to the *Confeſſion* of *Ausbourg*.

1535 10 *Chriſtiern* III. ſuppreſſed with great trouble, the party formed againſt him in behalf of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond; perfected the *Reformation* begun in the time of his Father, and was a great *Benefactor* to the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*.

1559 11 *Frederick* II. ſon of *Chriſtiern* the third, ſubdued *Ditmarſh*, before unconquered by the *Danes*, or the Earls of *Holſt*, and added it unto that Dukedom: both being united to that Crown, though held of the *Empire*; Knight of the Garter.

1588 12 *Chriſtiern* IV. ſon of *Frederick* the ſecond, brother of *Anne* Queen of *Great Britain*, and Knight of the *Garter*; engaging in a war againſt the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond, for the liberty of *Germany*, was ſuddenly beaten out of the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe* by the prevailing *Imperialiſts*, but compounded the buſineſs upon very good tearms, and was reſtored to all his own.

1648 13 *Frederick* III. the youngeſt ſon of *Chriſtiern* the fourth, his elder brethren being all dead without iſſue, ſucceeded in the Crown of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*.

Having thus muſtered up the Kings of theſe ſeveral Kingdoms, taken diſtinctly, and conjunct, we muſt next look upon the way of their coming to their Regal throne, their form of Government, together with their powerableneſs and revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their coming to the *Regal Throne*, the *Danes* pretend the Kingdom to be *Elective*, and not *Hereditary*: yet ſo as they have always ſet the eldeſt ſon on the throne of his Father; unleſs ſome extraordinary occaſion have diſpoſed it otherwiſe. But they that look upon their ſtories in the former times, can ſee no ſuch matter: the Kingdom going generally in the way of *Succeſſion*, unleſs by Faction or uſurpation ſome popular and powerful Pretender hath interloped; as oftentimes hath hapned in ſuch other Eſtates, as are *hereditary* meerly, without claim or colour of *Election*. 'Tis true, that the male iſſue failing in *Olaus*, the ſon of *Margaret*; and the Princes which pretended by the Females after her deceaſe, not being of ſufficient power to aſſert their titles, the Kingdom was transferred to the houſe of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of *Election*. Which being an extraordinary caſe, is to make no Precedent; though ſeconded by the outing of King *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Eſtate: being acts of violence and force, and juſtified onely by the falſe *Topick* of ſucceſs. But whoſoever loſt by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it, King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon ſuch conditions as have made him and his ſucceſſors little more than *Titulary*. For he was fain to ſwear at his *Coronation*: that he would put none of the Nobility to death, or baniſhment, but by the judgement of the Senate; that the great men ſhould have power of *Life* and *Death*, over their *Tenants* or *Vaſſals*; that no *Appeal* ſhould lie from them to the Kings *Tribunal*, nor the King be partaker of the Confiſcations; nor finally, advance any to Commands and Honours, but by conſent of his *Great Council*. Which Oath being alſo taken by his Succeſſors, made *Bodinus* ſay, *Non tam re ipſa quam appellatione Reges eſſe*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the *Nobility* (ſo they call their *Gentry*) have but ſmall Eſtates, none of them above the degree of Knights, (except onely the Princes of the Blood) and that degree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to croſs or oppoſe their King, but when ſome of the *Royal Family* (out of private ends) have concurred with them in it: as in the caſe of *Chriſtiern* the 2d. depoſed by the people, but thoſe people headed, and ſet on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an eye upon the Crown.

As for the *Senate*, or *Great Council*, ſpoken of before, it conſiſts wholly of men choſen out of the *Nobility*, (who are to prove their *Gentry* by a long deſcent) ſeldom exceeding the number of 28, to each of which, there is allowed a convenient *Salary*, with ſome fair Caſtles in the Country for his retirement, during his being of that body: his whole eſtate being freed alſo for that time, from all publick payments. Without their *Counſel* and advice, the King is neither to determine of *Peace* or *War*, or to enter into any new Leagues, or Confederacies, nor impoſe any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King jointly, is the laſt *Appeal*: ſuch being the conſtitution of this Eſtate, that all *Cauſes* and *Controverſies* are firſt decided in the *Prefecture* or *Heret* (184 in number) where they firſt ariſe; from whence it is lawful to appeal to the *Judge* of the *Province*, from him to the *Chancellour* of the Kingdom, and finally to the King and *Council*. By the Laws of *Waldemar* the firſt, who firſt reduced the Laws into ſet form, and writing, the Biſhops were to ſit with this *Council* in all cauſes of moment: diſcharged from that employment by King *Chriſtiern* the third, by whom it was alſo ordained, that the *Clergy* ſhould not ſell any of the Church-lands, without leave of the King.

The *Forces* which this King or Kingdom are able to raiſe, may beſt be ſeen by ſome of their particular undertakings: thoſe ſpecially of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, who at the conqueſt of Henry the ſecond of *France*, ſent a Navy of an hundred ſail into *Scotland* againſt the *Engliſh*, and therein no fewer than 10000 Souldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holſt*, who in his war againſt this *Chriſtiern*, (whoſe removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 men into the field, to make good his quarrel. And queſtionleſs, conſidering the many *Ports*, and Iſlands, that this Crown is Maſter of both within the *Baltick*, and without, it cannot be but he may ſuddenly raiſe a ſtrong power at Sea: And then conſidering that each of the *Nobility*, which are here numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horſe upon all occaſions; as are thoſe alſo who hold lands of the Kings, which the *Danes* call *Verlehninge*: it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good *Levies*, for a ſudden ſervice; eſpecially in defence of their own dominions.

The *Revenue* of this King conſiſteth principally in the great *impoſt* laid upon all ſhips which paſs through the *Sound*: the greatneſs whereof may eaſily be conjectured at by the multitude of ſhips, which of neceſſity muſt paſs by it in the trade of the *Baltick*; though of late ſomewhat leſſened of what it was, ſince the *Engliſh* found out and frequented the *Northern* paſſage into *Muſcovia*. There are alſo ſome *Crown-lands*, and a great yearly *Toll* made of the Cattel, which paſs into *Germany*: as alſo of the *fiſh* tranſported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived, that the Treaſures of this King are not very great: partly becauſe there is no other important commodity, but *fiſh*, to draw Merchants thither: and partly that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realms, for the entertaining of commerce.

The chief Order of *Knighthood* in it, is that of the *Elephant*, inſtituted by *Frederick* the ſecond. Their badge, a *Collar* powdred with *Elephants* towred, ſupporting the *Kings Arms*, and having at the end the picture of the Virgin *Mary*.

The Arms hereof are Quarterly, 1 *Or*, three Lions Paſſant *Vert*, crowned of the firſt, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*: and ſecondly *Gules*, a Lion Rampant *Or*, Crowned and armed of the firſt, in his pawes a *Dansk* hatchet *Argent*, for the Kingdom of *Norwey*. What Arms belong to him as Duke of *Holſt*, and *Sleſwick*, I am yet to ſeek.

There are in *Denmark*,
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.
Univerſities 2. *Viz.*
Copenhagen. *Sores*

And ſo much for the Kingdom of *DENMARK*.

OF
SWETHLAND.

SWETHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Muſcovie*; on the Weſt, with the *Dofrine* hills, which divide it from *Norwey*; on the North, with the great *Frozen* Ocean, ſpoken of before; on the South, with *Denmark*, *Lieſland*, and the *Baltick* Sea. So called from the *Suevi*, *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, and the word *Land* added for termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length from *Stockholm*, unto the borders of *Lapland*, above a 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner* Sea, to the borders of *Denmark*, about twenty good days journey on horſeback: inſomuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this ſide of *Lapland*, and the Gulf, or Bay of *Bodner*, account it little leſs than all *Italy* and *France* together: but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other ſide of the *Gulf*, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The ſituation of it, in regard of the heavenly bodies, is the ſame with *Norwey*, under the ſame *Parallels* and *Degrees*; but of ſo different a temper, both for ſoil and air, as if diſpoſed of under ſeveral and long diſtant *Climes*. For the Air here is very pure, but not ſo ſharp and inſupportable, as it is in *Norwey*: though in ſome places, where the *Moors* and *Waters* ſettle, for want of care to open and clenſe the *water-courſes*, they have great foggs and miſts, which do ſomewhat putrifie it. And for the ſoil, it is more fertile than any of the other *Northern* Provinces: ſo that beſides thoſe neceſſaries which they keep for themſelves, they uſually tranſport into other Countries ſtore of Malt and Barly; together with great quantities of Braſs, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and coſtly Furrs. The have alſo ſome *Mines* of *Silver*, not mixt with any other metal; plenty of fiſh, in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of *Pine-Trees*, Firr, Oaks, both for ſhips and houſes;

yielding beſides, among the woods, good ſtore of Tarre, and Honey, and ſome other neceſſaries. But hereof we ſhall ſpeak more punctually in the ſeveral Provinces.

The principal mountains of this Countrey are the *Dofrine* hills, a vaſt and continual ridge of mountains, which divide it from *Norwey*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uſes, yet partly by reaſon of their great froſts and flakes of Ice, partly by reaſon of the falling of trees which lie croſs their *Channels*, they have not many *Navigable*, or of any great fame. The principal of ſuch as be, are 1 *Meler*, at the mouth whereof ſtands the City of *Stockholm*; 2 *Luſen*, 3 *Dalecarlie*, giving name to the Province ſo called, or as denominated from it. And of the Lakes, whereof here are exceeding many, that of moſt note is the Lake of *Weret*, which, receiving into it 24 Rivers, disburtheneth it ſelf at one mouth, into the *Baltick*; with ſuch noiſe and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devils Head*.

The people are naturally ſtrong and active, provident, patient, and induſtrious; *hoſpitable* towards ſtrangers, whom they entertain with great humanity: ſo *healthy*, that if they do not ſhorten their days by exceſs and riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age; and ſo laborious, that a beggar is not ſeen amongſt them. Of no great note for Art or Arms in the times foregoing, not much addicted to the one, and ſo kept under by the *Danes*, that they could not grow eminent in the other; but much improved in both reſpects in theſe later days: *Ericus*, the firſt King of the preſent race, who cleared his Countrey of the *Danes*, and *Guſtavus Adolphus* the laſt King, who freed the *Germans* from the yoke of the houſe of *Auſtria*, not being eaſily to be matched in the Arts of War. And ſince they began to give themſelves to the ſweets of learning, this Countrey hath produced (amongſt ſome other learned men) *Olaus Magnus*, Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, of great note for his Hiſtory of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; the firſt fruits of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable, by reaſon of their late commerce with the *German* Nations, they will give better teſtimony to the world hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the *Arts Mechanical*, every man in a manner being his own *Artificer*, without imploying Smith, Maſon, Carpenter, or any other *manual trades*: very valiant both on foot and horſe-back, which their long wars againſt the *Danes*, and their late wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their women are diſcreet and modeſt, free from that intemperance which theſe Northern parts are ſubject to. Both ſexes uſe a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern Kingdoms: except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other ſide of the *Bodner* ſea, where they partake ſomewhat of the *Muſcovite*, or *Ruſſian* language.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was firſt planted amongſt them by the care and diligence of *Anſgarius* Archbiſhop of *Breme*, the Apoſtle general of the North. Corrupt with Popiſh ſuperſtitions, it was reformed, according to the *Auguſtane Confeſſion*, in the time of *Guſtavus Ericus*, the firſt of the preſent Royal family; ſollicited thereunto by one *Peter Nevicius*, a Lutheran Divine, and *Lawrence* the Archdeacon of *Strengnes*: but chiefly moved (as others ſay) by a deſire to appropriate to himſelf the *goods* of the Church. And this appears to have had ſome ſtrong influence upon him in it, in that he preſently ſeiſed upon what he pleaſed; and made a Law, that Biſhops ſhould enjoy no more than the King thought fit: yet having pretty well leſſened their *Revenues*, he was content they ſhould remain as formerly, both in power and number, reſerving to himſelf and his ſucceſſors the nomination of the perſons; but ſo as the approbation of the Clergy (in a kind of election) doth uſually go along with the Kings appointment.

The Biſhops are in number ſeven; that is to ſay, 1 of *Lincopen*, conteining in his Dioceſe 216 Pariſhes: 2 of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3 of *Scara*, ruling over the ſame number of Churches: 4 of *Strengnes*, under whom are an hundred onely; 5 of *Aboe*, the greateſt for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Pariſhes; 6 of *Wiburg*; 7 of *Habſay*, whoſe *Dioceſes* for the moſt part lye out of the bounds of *Sweden*, in *Muſcovie*, *Livonia*, and ſome other in the out parts of *Poland*, all of them under the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*; as their *Metropolitan*, whoſe *Dioceſe* extending into *Lapland*, and *Finmarch*, conteineth 171 Pariſh Churches. By which accompt there are in all the Kingdom of *Swethland*, but 1417 Pariſhes; but many of them of a thouſand, or eight hundred families: the people being diſperſed in *Foreſts* and other places, where they have ſtore of *timber* to build them houſes, and ſtore of *Paſturage* for their Cattel; which is the reaſon why they have not ſo many great Towns, nor ſo well inhabited, as is uſual in far leſſer Countries. As for the authority of theſe Biſhops, they ſtill retein their voice in *Parliament*, and with them ſo many of the *inferiour Clergy*, as are from every *Socken*, (a certain number of Pariſhes like our *Rural Deaneries*) deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the affairs whereof the Biſhops do direct and order, aſwel in as out of publick meetings, according to the *Eccleſiaſtical Conſtitutions* formerly eſtabliſhed: and if any great occaſion be, they may either adviſe with their *Conſiſtorials*, or call a *Dioceſan Synod*, (as they think moſt fit) and therein make ſuch *Laws* and *Canons*, as they conceive to be moſt proper for their own edification.

The whole Kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the Eaſt, the other on the Weſt, ſide of the *Bay*, or Gulph of *Bodner*, called *Sinus* Bodicus in *Latine*, being a large and ſpacious branch of the *Baltick Sea*, extending from the moſt ſoutherny point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the North. According to which diviſion, we have the Provinces of 1 *Gothland*, and 2 *Sweden*, lying on the Weſt ſide of the Golf; 3 *Lapland*, ſhutting it up upon the North; 4 *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, and 5 *Finland*, on the Eaſt ſide thereof; and 6 the *Swediſh Iſlands*, where it mingleth with the reſt of the *Baltick*.

Goths.

1. GOTHLAND.

GOTHLAND, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Bodner* Sea; on the Weſt, with the Mountains which divide it from *Norwey*, and ſo much of *Denmark* as lies in the ſame continent with it; on the North, with *Sweden*; on the South, with the Sea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Goths*, whoſe original Countrey it is commonly affirmed to be; or *quaſi goot landt*, from the goodneſs and fortility of the ſoil; *Goot landia, quæ Germanice* Terra bona *ſonat* (as *Maginus* out of *Munſter* hath it) the ſoil being very fruitful for Corn and Cattel, affording plenty of Mines, with great ſtore of *Fiſh*; and generally a better conditioned Countrey, than any of the reſt of theſe Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Oſtrogoth*, or *Eaſt Gothland*; *Weſtergoth*, divided from the former by the great lake of *Weret*, ſpoken of before; and *South Gothland*, ſubdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiſcia*, and *Verendia*. Chief Towns whereof in *Oſtrogoth*, are 1 *Lincopen*, a *Biſhops* See; 2 *Loduſe*, adorned with a very fair *Haven*: in *Weſtergoth*, 3 *Scara* on the lake *Weret*, a *Biſhops* See alſo, 4 *Elſeburg*, on the Weſtern Sea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norway*, a place of conſequence, and flankerd with two very ſtrong Caſtles in the parts adjoyning, the one called *Croneberg*, and the other *Goldberg*. 5 *Tragnalle*, remarkable for iron works, occaſioned by the *Mines* adjoyning. And finally in *South Gothland*, there is 6 *Vexim*, or *Vexio*, another of the *Epiſcopal* Sees. 7 *Walburg*, a reaſonable fair Town, with a ſtrong Caſtle. 8 *Elcholm* in that part hereof which is called *Verendia*, near the confines of *Denmark*. 9 *Colmar*, a noted and well-traded Port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Caſtle, not inferiour to that of *Millain*; and ſo well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Chriſtiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, *An.* 1611. there were found mounted on the works 108 braſs pieces of Ordnance, ſix men of war for guard to the Haven, with all manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. 10 *Gottenberg*, (or *Gothorum Burgus*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth, enjoyeth a commodious Haven on the *Baltick* alſo, and very much frequented for the trade of *Germany*, to which it ſerves exceeding fitly; the principal Town of all this Province, and for that cauſe the ordinary ſeat or reſidence of the Governor for the King of *Sweden*.

The firſt Inhabitants of theſe South parts of *Scandia*, are commonly affirmed to have been the *GOTHS*, whom *Jornandes*, in his Book *de Rebus Geticis*, makes to have iſſued out of this Countrey and to plant themſelves on the North banks of the *Iſter*, near the *Euxine* Sea, ſome time before the *Trojan* war: aſcribing to them whatſoever is reported in old writers of the antient *Scythians*, as their encounter with *Vexoris* or *Seſoſtris*, the King of *Egypt*, the Acts and atchievements of the *Amazons*, their *Congreſs* with *Alexander* the great, in his *Perſian* war, and the like to theſe. In which *Jornandes*, being himſelf a *Goth*, is no more to be credited than *Geffrie* of *Monmouth*, a *Welſhman*, in the ſtory of *Brute*, and his ſucceſſors, to whom he doth aſcribe the taking and ſack of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to be the brother of *Belinus*, a King of Britain. Moſt probable it is, that they were originally a *Dutch* or *German* people, part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the land of *Pruſſia*. Who finding their own Countrey too narrow for them, might paſs over the Baltick, unto the next adjoining Regions; and not well liking that cold Clime, might afterwards in ſome good numbers go to ſeek new dwellings, and at laſt ſeat themſelves on the banks of the *Iſter*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were Dutch originally, beſides the general name of the *Gothones* or *Goths*, and thoſe of *Oſtrogothes* and *Wiſigothes*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alarick*, *Theodorik*, *Riccared*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) ſeem to me to evidence. That they were once ſeated in this Countrey doth appear as plainly, 1. By the name of *Gothland*, here ſtill remaining; 2ly, By the title of *Rex Gothorum*, which the King of *Swethland* keep in the *Royal ſtile*; and 3ly, by ſome inſcriptions in antient unknown Characters, engraven on the rocks neer *Scara* in the Continent, and in *Wisby* in the Iſle of *Gothland*; ſuppoſed by learned men to be ſome monument of that people. And finally, that their fixed dwellings, when firſt known by this name amongſt the Romans, was on the North ſide of the *Iſter*; is evident by the teſtimony of all antient Writers, from the time of *Antonius Caracalla*, with whom they had ſome tumultuary skirmiſhes in his way towards *Perſia*; till their violent irruption into *Italy* and the Weſtern Provinces: moſt famous in this interval for a great fight with *Decius* the Roman Emperour, whom they overcame and ſlew in battel, *Anno* 253. In the time of *Valens*, and *Valentinian*, the Roman Emperours, a quarrel being grown amongſt them, managed by *Phritigernes* and *Athanaricus*, the leaders of the oppoſite factions; *Phritigernes* overthrown in fight, had recourſe to *Valens*; from whom he received ſuch ſuccours, that giving his adverſary another day for it, he obteined the victory. Whereupon *Phritigernes* and his party received the Goſpel, but intermixt and corrupt with the leaven of *Arianiſm*, by the practice of *Valens*, who ſent them none but *Arian* teachers, to whom, and their factions in the Church, he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Iſter*, by the barbarous *Huns*, they obteined of *Valens* the out parts of *Thrace* for an habitation; on condition they ſhould ſerve under the pay of the Emperour, and become *Chriſtians*: the cauſe that *Arianiſm* over-ſpread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one party onely. *Ulphilas* a devout and learned man was their firſt Biſhop; who for their better edification in the way of *Godlineſs*, invented a new *Gothick Character*, and *Tranſlated* the *Scriptures* into that language: in the ſtudy whereof they ſo well profited, that many of them, in the time of their firſt converſion, ſuffered death for it, at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted *Martyrs*. Burdned by *Valens*, and denied their accuſtomed pay, they

Goths.

haraſs and depopulate the reſt of *Thrace*, marching towards *Conſtantinople*: encountred in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame, and killed after all his favours. Vanquiſhed by *Theodoſius* the ſucceeding Emperor in many battells, they became good neighbours, enlarging their bounds with his leave and licence as farr as *Pannonia*, and grown into ſuch eſtimation with him, that *Ricimer*, and *Fravita*, two of that Nation, did obtein the Conſulſhip; not to ſay any thing of that exorbitant power and favour which *Gainas* had atteined unto in the Court it ſelf. Made inſolent by ſo great honours, and apt to pick quarrels with their Patrons, they invaded *Italy* in two great bodies, conſiſting of no fewer than 200000 fighting men: the firſt whereof, under the conduct of *Rhadaguiſus*, was diſcomfited and cut in pieces, by *Stilico*, Lievtenant to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor, at *Feſulæ* in the Straits of the *Appennine*. The other by his treachery permitted to paſs, ſacked *Rome*, and ſubdued the moſt part of *Italy*, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He dying immediately after this great Victory, left the fruits of it to his Son *Athaulfus*; who marrying with *Galba Placidia*, the Emperor's Siſter, relinquiſhed *Italy*, and had all *Gaul Norbonnoiſe*, and a great part of *Hiſpania Terraconenſis* aſſigned unto him; where he erected the Kingdom of the *Wiſigothes*, or Weſtern *Goths*, poſſeſſed of *Spain* and *Tingitana*, for the ſpace of 300 years and upward, when they loſt that Kingdom to the *Mores*, as hath there been ſaid. In the mean time, the *Goths* which were left in their own Countreys, diſtinguiſhed from theſe by the name of *Oſtro-Goths*, by reaſon of their more Eaſtern ſituation, kept themſelves in quiet: firſt ſubdued by the *Huns*, and when by *Wilamar* freed from that ſubjection, not intermedling or attempting any thing againſt the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperor of *Conſtantinople* into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, who had then ſubdued it. Which action they managed with ſo much prudence, and good fortune, by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquiſhed *Odoacer*, poſſeſſed *Italy*, and held it above 60 years; when broken in many ſet battels by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, Lievtenants for the Emperor *Juſtinian*; their Kingdom and name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a ſucceſſion of them in *Jornandes*, from *Berig*, who firſt conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the Eaſt; till the going of *Theodorick* into *Italy*; but made up with ſo little probability, that I dare give no more credit to it, than to the Stories of *Brute*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota*, *Pharaohs* Daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledg and ſucceſſion, are theſe few that follow:

The KINGS of the *GOTHS*.

344 1 *Athanaricus* King of the *Goths*, in the time of *Conſtantins*, and *Conſtans* the Sons of *Conſtantine* the *Great*.

357 2 *Alaricus*, the firſt of that name, in the time of *Conſtantius*.

3 *Phritigernes*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince among that people.

370 4 *Athanaricus* II. in the time of the Emperors, *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* the ſecond; under whom the *Goths* were firſt ſettled on this ſide of the *Iſter*.

379 5 *Rhadaguiſus*, who, in the time of *Honorius*, firſt led the *Goths* into *Italy*; ſlain at the battel of *Feſulæ*.

410 6 *Alaricus* II. who perſuing the Warr of *Italy*, ſacked *Rome*, ſubdued *Naples*, and the moſt of *Italy*.

412 7 *Athaulfus*, the Son of *Alarick* the ſecond, who firſt erected the Kingdom of the *Wiſigoths* in *Gaul* and *Spain*, continuing there for the ſpace of 300 years and upwards; the preſent King of *Spain* coming from this Stock.

417 8 *Athalaricus*, King of the *Goths* remaining in the Eaſt, at the departure of *Rhadaguiſe* and *Alaricus*, diſtinguiſhed from their plantations, by the name of *Oſtrogoths*: vanquiſhed by *Attila*, they became ſubject to the *Huns*, in the time of *Theodoſius* the ſecond, and *Valentinian* the third, Emperor of the Eaſt and Weſt.

9 *Wilamir*, one of the Bloud Royal of the *Goths*, Vaſſal to *Attila* at the firſt, whom he aſſiſted, or ſerved rather, in the great battel near *Tholouſe* againſt the *Romans*: but taking advantage of ſome quarrells amongſt the Sons of *Attila*, ſhook off that yoak, and recovered the Kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperor *Marcianus*

10 *Theodomir*, Son of *Winithar*, and Brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*.

11 *Theodorick*, Son of *Theodomir*, kept at *Conſtantinople* in his youth, as a *Pledg* or *Heſtage* for his Father, where he was inſtructed in all the *Greek* and *Roman* learning, and made the adopted Son (as is ſaid by *Scaliger*) of the Emperor *Zeno*; by whom he was ſent into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, erecting there the Kingdom of the *Oſtrogothes*; which continued till the reign of *Juſtinian*, when deſtroyed by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, as before is ſaid; the name of *Goths* in *Italy* being thus extinct, but their bloud intermixed with the beſt *Italian*. The ſumm of their whole Story, for varieties ſake, take thus out of *Du Bartas*:

> The warlike *Goth*, which whilom iſſued forth
> From the cold *frozen* Iſlands of the North,
> Incamp'd by *Viſtula*; but th'Air almoſt
> Being there as cold as in the *Baltick* Coaſt,

He with victorious Arms *Sclavonia* gains,
The *Tranſilvanian*, and *Valachian* plains.
Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greeks*,
Greedy of ſpoil, four times he bravely ſeeks
To pluck from *Rome*, then *Mars* his Minion,
The Plumes which ſhe from all the World had won:
Guided by *Rhadaguiſe*, and *Alarick*,
Bold *Vindimarus*, and *Theodorick*.
Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulſt, his Legions
Reſt ever ſince upon the *Spaniſh* Regions.

The Arms of theſe Kings are ſaid to have been *Or*, three Ravens, with diſplayed wings *Purple*, membred *Gules*. And let this ſuffice for the original, ſucceſſes, and final period of the *Goths*; reſerved by me unto this place, becauſe moſt commonly conceived to be their original Countrey; at leaſt the place out of which they iſſued, when they firſt moved towards the Eaſt to ſeek new dwellings.

SWEDEN.

SWEDEN is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Bodner* Sea; on the Weſt, with the *Dofrine* Hills, which part it from *Norwey*; on the North, with *Lapland*; on the South with *Gothland*. So called from the *Suethians*, or *Suethidi*, the old Inhabitants hereof, of whom more anon. A Countrey ſufficiently fruitful, but for the goodneſs of the ſoil inferiour to *Gothland*; and not ſo well planted or inhabited as that is, by reaſon of the vaſt Woods which they will not ſuffer to be deſtroyed, and the greatneſs of ſome Mariſhes hitherto undrained; but might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would; as appeareth by that plenty of Corn growing amongſt the Woods, though much hindred, by their ſhade and thickneſs, both from Sun and Rain. But for the *Character* of this Countrey we had it formerly, when we ſpake of *Swethland* in the general; relating eſpecially to this, as the principal part.

And as the largeſt and principal part of this great body, it conteins in it many Provinces, and ſubdiviſions: as namely, 1. *Upland*, 2. *Suderman*. 3. *Noricia*, 4. *Weſtman*, 5. *Dalecarle*, 6. *Wermelund*, 7. *Coperdale*, 8. *Geſtricia*, 9. *Helſingen*, 10. *Middelphat*, 11. *Angerman*, bordering on *Lapland*, the furtheſt of theſe Provinces towards the North. Many of which have no Towns or Cities of any greatneſs, or beauty, the people living thin, and ſcattered, where they have Wood for building, Paſturage for their Beaſts, and Elbow room enough for themſelves and their Cattel. Of theſe the principal are, 1. *Upſal*, an *Archbiſhop*'s See, and an *Univerſity*, ſituate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*: beautified with a large *Cathedral*, wherein many of the Antient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City, the Countrey hereabouts is ſtiled *Archiepiſcopatus Upſalenſis*. 2. *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Ruſſians*, *Stecolne*; the Royal Seat of the Kings, a noted and well-traded Port, and the chief of the Kingdom: exceeding ſtrong both by Art and Nature, as being ſituate in the Mariſhes, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake, or River of *Meler*, the paſſage to it out of the Bay, being very narrow, and by conſequence eaſily defended; and yet ſo deep withall, that the greateſt Ships of burthen may ſail up to the City: the Port within the Strait being ſo ſafe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 ſail, which uſually ride here without any Anchor. The Caſtle of this City is conceived to be one of the ſtrongeſt Holds in the World; fortified for the more aſſurance of it with 400 Braſs pieces, many of which are double Canons. 3. *Nicopen*, a Sea Town on the ſame Bay alſo. Theſe three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4 *Strengnes*, an *Epiſcopal* See; and 5. *Telge*, on the Lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Suderman*: the Title and eſtate of *Charls*, Father of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, late King of *Sweden*, before his getting of the Crown, called Duke of *Sudermar*. Next, in the Province of *Weſtman*, there are 6. *Arbegen*, on the Weſt ſide of the ſaid Lake of *Meler*; and 7. *Aroſe*, rich in *Silver Mines*, out of which are made the beſt *Dollars* of *Sweden*: the Mines here being ſo rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of *Silver*, the Workmen draw a pound of *Gold*. 8. *Helſinge*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helſingen*, taking name from hence. 9. *Ozebo*, or *Ourbou*, a ſtrong piece in *Neriſia*; and 10. *Leſinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the furtheſt North of *Sweden*, diſtinctly and ſpecially ſo called.

LAPLAND.

LAPLAND, the moſt Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the Eaſt, *Ruſſia*; on the Weſt, the Province or *Prefecture* of *Wardhuys*, in the Kingdom of *Norwey*; on the North, the main frozen Ocean; and on the South, *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, on both ſides of the Bay ſo called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi*, or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it, as they are from their blockiſh behaviour; the word *Lappon* ſignifying the ſame with *ineptus* or *inſulſus* in *Latine*, for ſuch they are: rude, barbarous, and without the knowledg of *Arts* or *Letters*, as alſo without Corn and Houſes, or any certain Habitatious (except onely in *Finmarch*) feeding for the moſt part on Fiſh, and the fleſh of wild Beaſts, with the skins whereof, ſowed together, they hide their nakedneſs. Generally, they are meer Idolaters, giving divine Honour all day following to that living Creature, whatſoever it be, which they ſee at their firſt ſetting out in the morning: great *Sorcerers*, and abhorring

ring the ſight of ſtrangers, whom till of late, they uſed to flie from, at their firſt approach; but within few years paſt, beginning to be more ſociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true deſcendants of the antient *Finni* (poſſeſſed in old times of all that Tract, which lyeth between the Bay of *Finland*, and the *Frozen* Ocean) whoſe natural rudeneſs and barbarity, unmixed with the conditions of more civil people, they do ſtill retein.

It is divided into the Eaſtern and Weſtern *Lapland*. The former, apperteining to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muſcovie*, by which people, the Inhabitants are called *Dikiloppi*, or the wild *Lappians*; is ſubdivided into *Biarmia*, and *Corelia*; of which, if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, we ſhall there ſpeak more. The later doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, ſubdivided into two parts alſo, that is to ſay: 1. *Finmarch*, 2. *Scricfinnia*.

1. *FINMARCH*, being that part hereof which lyeth next unto *Norway*, is the more populous of the two; the people for the moſt part Idolatrous, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and reſort of ſtrangers unto *Wardhuys*, and the parts adjoining, ſomewhat civilized; and in the borders of both Kingdoms ſavouring of Religion; poſſeſſed of Sheds or ſorry Houſes, and thoſe Houſes reduced to Pariſhes, under the Juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*; the chief of which (if there be any chief amongſt them) are named, 1. *Samman*, and 2. *Hielſo*. Called *Finmarch*, as the antient bounds and Marches of the *Finni* (of whom more anon) and therefore erroniouſly, by *Maginus*, made a part of the Kingdom of *Norwey*.

2. *SCRICFINNIA*, lyeth between *Finmarch* and *Ruſſia*. The name derived from the *Finni*, a great people of *Scandia*, and *Scriken*, a *Dutch* word, ſignifying leaping, ſliding, or bounding, for ſuch is their gate. An *Etymologie* not much improbable, in that the Wooden-ſoled Shoes, with ſharp bottoms, which they uſed for their more ſpeedy ſliding over the Ice, of which this Countrey is full, are by the *Germans* (who alſo uſe them) called *Scrikeſhoenen*, or ſliding-ſhoes. The antient Writers call the people *Scrictofinni*.

Theſe are indeed, the Natural and proper *Laplanders*; and unto theſe, the former Character doth of right belong. Of ſtature very low, little more than *Pygmies*, but ſtrong and active; well skilled in Archerie, and patient of cold and labour. Much given to hunting of wild Beaſts, whom they kill with their bows, devour the fleſh, and cloath themſelves with their skins, which they tie at the top of their heads, and leave no place open but for the ſight; giving thereby occaſion unto ſome to write, that they are hairy all over, like Kine or Horſes. Such *Deer* (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkilled, they make to draw in little Carts, as they ſhift their Quarters. But having ſerved them for a while, they are killed at laſt, though perhaps for nothing but their skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden*, in the way of *Tribute*. Three Companies of theſe *Laplanders*, ſo clad and armed as aforeſaid, came into *Germany* in the year 1630. to ſerve *Guſtavus* in thoſe Warrs; looked on with admiration by all ſpectators.

Towns we muſt look for none here, where no Houſes be; and yet there are ſome Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea ſhore; which Mariners having made for their refreſhment when they come on Land, have beſtowed ſome names on, and poſſibly in time may become good Towns, now not worth the naming.

BODIA.

BODIA, BODEN, BODNER, is ſituate on the South of *Scricfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or Gulf hence named; extending Southward on the Weſt ſide of it, till it joins with *Sweden*, and on the Eaſt ſide, till it meet with the Province of *Finland*. Hence the diviſion of this Countrey into the Eaſtern, Northern, and Weſtern *Bodden*; with reference to the ſituation of it on the Bay aforeſaid. The Countrey not very plentiful of Grain or Fruits, but full of great variety of wild Beaſts, whoſe rich skins yield great profit unto the Inhabitants; and by reaſon of the commodious ſituation, on all ſides of the Bay, well ſtored with Fiſh. Antiently it was part of the Poſſeſſions of the *Finni*, but how, or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whence ſoever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the Gulf adjoining, is called *Sinus Bodicus*, *Bodner Zee*, by the *Dutch* or *German*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Barkara*, in Weſt *Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable Lake; 2. *Gernia*, a well-traded Empory at the very bottom of the Bay, in North *Bodden*; 3. *Helſingelias*, more North than that, towards the borders of *Lapland*, and 4. *Kerldby*, in Eaſt *Bodden*, on the bank of the Gulf, conveniently ſeated for a Town of Trade.

3. *FINLAND.*

FINLAND hath on the North, *Bodia*; on the South, the *Baltick* Sea, or *Mare Suevicum*; on the Eaſt, *Sinus Finnicus*; on the Weſt, *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Munſter* thought to be called *Finland*, *quaſi* fine land; *quod pulchrior & amœnior ſit Suecia*, becauſe it is a more fine and pleaſing Countrey than *Sweden* it ſelf. But indeed it is ſo called from the *Finni*, or *Fenni*; a potent Nation, who have here dwelt; whoſe Character is thus framed by *Tacitus*. Finnis *mira feritas, fœda paupertas, non arma, non equi, non penates; victui herba, veſtitui pelles, cubile humus, ſola in ſagittis ſpes*. The *Finnes*, ſaith he, are wonderful barbarous, miſerably poor, without Arms, Horſe, or Houſhold Gods: Herbs their food, the ground their bed, and the skins of Beaſts their beſt apparel, armed onely with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our preſent *Finlanders*, eſpecially eſpecialy thoſe of *Scricfinnia*, and ſome parts of *Finmarchia*; who are not ſo well reclaimed to civility, as the other are; but very different from that which *Jornandes* gives them, who living within 400 years after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) entercourſe with forein Nations; telleth us of them, that they were *Scanzia Cultoribus omnibus mitiores*, more tractable and civil than any of the Inhabitants of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suethidi* themſelves. If ſo, they did deſerve to live in ſo good a Countrey, more plentiful and plain than *Sweden*, and neither ſo hilly, nor ſo mooriſh.

The principal places in it are, 1. *Abo*, an Archbiſhops See, ſituate on the moſt Southern point of it, ſhooting into the *Baltick*. 2. *Wiburg*, a Biſhops See alſo, whoſe Juriſdiction for the moſt part is without this Province, on ſome part of *Ruſſia*; all *Finland* being in the Dioceſe of the Biſhop of *Abo*. A Town conveniently ſeated at the bottom of the Bay or Gulph of *Finland* (called *Sinus Finnicus* in *Latine*) which divides this Countrey from *Livonia*; well fortified, as the chief Bulwarks of this Kingdom, againſt the *Muſcovite*; and ſo well garriſoned withall, that the keeping of this Town, and *Rivallia*, in the borders of *Liefland*, do coſt the King of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a point or *Promontory* of the ſame Gulph, oppoſite to *Narve*, another Garriſon of this King, in *Liefland*. 4. *Verma*, upon the *Bodner* Zee. 5. *Cronaburg*, more within the Land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Puente*. 6. *Deckala*, on the banks of the great Lake called *Hoſela*. 7. *Varta*, more Northwards towards *Lapland*; of which laſt four, I find not any thing obſervable in the way of Story.

6. The SWEDISH ISLANDS.

And now at laſt, I come to the *Swediſh* Iſlands, here and there interſperſed in the *Baltick* Seas, betwixt the Iſle of *Bornholm*, which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Liefland*, or *Livonia*, apperteining to the King of *Poland*; the principal of which, are, 1. *Gothia*, or the Iſland of *Gothland*, and 2. *Inſulæ Ulandæ*, or the Iſles of *Oelandt*.

1. GOTHIA, or the Iſle of GOTHLAND, is ſituate over againſt *Colmar*, a ſtrong Town in the Continent of *Gothland*; in length 18 *Dutch* miles, and five in breadth. Of a rich ſoil, but more fit for paſturage than tillage, yielding great herds of Cattel, ſtore of game for hunting, plenty of Fiſh, excellent Marble, and abundance of Pitch, which it ſends forth into other Countreys. There are in it 18 large and wealthy Villages; beſides the Haven Town of *Wisbich*, heretofore rich, and of very great trading, as much frequented by the Merchants as moſt in *Europe*; but now much decayed, and neither ſo well peopled, nor ſo rich as formerly. The Trade removed hither from *Wollin* in *Pomerania* (deſtroyed by *Waldemar* the firſt of *Denmark*, *An.* 1170.) made it flouriſh mightily; the greateſt traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here: but after that, by reaſon of the long and continual Warrs, betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the poſſeſſion of this Iſle, it became unſafe; the Factory was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently ſeated to annoy the *Swedes*, the *Danes* have much contended for it, and ſometimes poſſeſſed it; but at the preſent is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By ſome conceived to be the *Eningia* ſpoken of by *Pliny*.

2. OELAND, or the Iſles of *Ulandt*, ſo called in the plural number, becauſe there are many of them, of which this the principal, is ſituate over againſt *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiouſly ſeated to invade, or annoy this Kingdom; and therefore very well fortified, and as ſtrongly garriſoned; here being the good Towns of 1. *Viburg*, 2. *Vames*, and 3. the ſtrong Caſtle of *Caſtrolm*.

Beſides which Countreys here deſcribed, the King of *Sweden* is poſſeſſed of the ſtrong Towns of *Narve*, and *Ravillia*, and *Pernow* in *Liefland*; of *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in *Corelia*, a Province of *Ruſſia*; with very fair and ample Territories apperteining to them; ſubdued and added to this Crown by *John* the ſecond, *Anno* 1561. But being theſe Towns and Territories are not within the bounds of *Swethland*, we ſhall deferr all further diſcourſe thereof, to a place more proper.

The firſt inhabitants of this Kingdom, beſides the *Goths* and *Finni*, ſpoken of already, were the *Sitones*, and *Suiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phavonæ*, the *Phiræſi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we find in *Ptolemy*, placed by him in the Eaſt and middle of this great *Peninſula*. Which being the general names of ſome mighty Nations, are by *Jornandes* branched into leſſer Tribes, of the *Suethans*, *Thenſtad*, *Vagoth*, *Bergio*, *Hallin*, *Liothida*, *Atheſnil*, *Gaurigoth*, *Raumaricæ*, *Rauragnitii*, *Grannii*, *Aganzia*, *Unixiæ*, *Arochitamii*, *Enagera*, *Othingi*, and divers other by him named. But from what root the name of *Sweden*, *Swedes*, or *Swethland*, by which the chif Province of it, the people generally, and the whole Kingdom is now called, is not yet agreed on; nor ſpoken of at all by *Munſter*, or *Crantzius*, which two (but ſpecially the laſt) have written purpoſely of this people. *Gaſper Peucerus* deriveth them from the *Suevi*, who antiently inhabited in the North parts of *Germany*, beyond the *Albis*; from whom, the *Baltick* Sea was called *Mare Suevicum*: which people he conceiveth to have been driven by the *Goths* and *Daci*, into this Countrey; and by the change of one Letter onely, to be called *Sueci*. But this hath no good ground to ſtand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left thoſe colder Countreys, they fell into theſe parts, which are ſtill called *Suevia* (the *Schwaben* of the Northern *Dutch*) where we find them in the time of *Cæſar*. And after, *in fatali illa gentium commigratione*, when almoſt all the Northern Nations did ſhift their ſeats, we find ſuch of them as had ſtaid behind, to have accompanied the *Vandals* in their on-falls into *Gaul*, and *Spain*. Of any expedition of theirs croſs the *Baltick* Seas, *ne gry quidem*; nothing to be found, in more antient Authors. We muſt therefore reſerve the original of this people either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, or perhaps to both: both being antiently ſettled in theſe Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* we read in the Book of *Tacitus*, inſcribed *De Moribus Germanorum*; by whom reported to be ſtrong in Men, Armour, and Shipping: and that they were Inhabitants of *Scandia*, appears by two circumſtances in that Author. 1. That the people were not permitted to wear Weapons, *quia ſubitos hoſtium incurſus prohibet Oceanus*, becauſe the Ocean was to them a ſufficient Rampart; which could not be affirmed of the antient *Suevians*, but agreeth very well with the ſituation of this preſent Countrey defended by the *Baltick*, and vaſt Northern Ocean, from the ſudden aſſault of any enemy. 2. Becauſe the Sea which hemmed in that people, was conceived to be the outmoſt bound of the World, *Trans* Suiones *mare aliud, quo cingi claudique terrarum orbis fines*, as his words there are; which we know to hold good of this Countrey. Add unto theſe this paſſage of the old Annals of the Emperor *Lewis* the ſecond, where it is told us of *Danes, relicta patria apud* Suiones *exulabant*, that they were baniſhed into the Countrey of the *Suiones*, which cannot ſo well be underſtood of any place, as of this *Sweden*; being next neighbour unto *Denmark*. And fourthly, that this people, both by *Munſter* and *Crantzius*, are as well called *Suiones*, as *Sueci*, or *Suedi*; which ſheweth what they conceived of their true Original. Then for the *Suethans*, or the *Suethidi*, whom *Jornandes* ſpeaks of, in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, they are by him placed in the Iſle of *Scandia* (for ſuch this great *Peninſula* was eſteemed to be by moſt antient Writers.) Now, that theſe *Suethidi* are no other than the preſent *Swethlanders*, appeareth, 1. by the propinquity of the names; 2. In that he maketh the *Finni*, and *Finnaitha*, the next neighbours to them; And 3. in that they are affirmed by the ſame Author, to have furniſhed the *Romans* with rich Furrs, and the Skins of wild Beaſts, with which Commodities this Countrey is abundantly well ſtored. Now, to which of theſe two Nations, either the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, thoſe of *Sweden* are moſt indebted for their original, will (I conceive) be no great controverſie: the *Suethans*, and *Suethidi*, of *Jornandes*, being no other than a Tribe of the *Suiones*, though the greateſt and moſt powerful of thoſe Tribes; placed themſelves in the front to command the reſt, and ſo moſt like to give name unto the whole.

Their Government was antiently under Kings, affirmed ſo to be by *Tacitus*, who telleth us alſo that they were abſolute and free, *nullis exceptionibus, non pracario jure regnandi*; not bound in *Covenant* with their people, nor holding their Eſtates at the will of the Subject. But their *Hiſtorians* have gone for *Antiquity* hereof, beyond the Story of *Brute*, or the *Trojan* Warr (beyond which, very few of that ſtrain have dared to pretend) as high as unto *Magog*, the Son of *Japhet*, reigning here within 90 years after the Floud. But letting paſs theſe dreams and dotages of the *Monkiſh* times, certain it is, that ſometimes they were under the *Danes*, ſometimes under the *Norwegians*, ſometimes had diſtinct Kings of their own: and finally, ſometimes were comprehended with the *Danes*, and *Norwegians*, under the general name of *Normans*; conducted by one King, or Captain, upon forein actions. Omitting therefore the ſucceſſion of their former Kings, of whoſe very being there is cauſe to make great queſtion; we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Jermanicus*, who entertained *Harald* King of *Denmark*, and his brother *Regenfride*, driven out of that Kingdom by *Gottricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemagn*; of whoſe ſucceſſors *Munſter* giveth us more certainty.

The KINGS of *SWEDEN*.

1 *Jermanicus.*
2 *Frotho.*
3 *Herotus.*
4 *Sorlus.*
5 *Biornus.*
6 *Wichſertus.*
7 *Ericus.*
8 *Oſtenus.*
9 *Sturbiornus.*

10 *Ericus* II.
11 *Olaus.*
12 *Edmundus.*
13 *Stinkalis.*
14 *Halſtenus.*
15 *Animander.*
16 *Aquinus.*
17 *Magnus.*

1150 18 *Sherco* 13.
1160 19 *Carolus* 8.
1168 20 *Canutus* 54.
1222 21 *Ericus* III. 27.
1249 22 *Bingerius* 2.
1251 23 *Waldemarus* 26.
1277 24 *Magnus* II. 13.
1290 25 *Byrgerius* II. 23.

1313 26 *Magnus* III. Son to *Ericus* the brother of *Byrgerius*, was alſo choſen King of *Norwey*.

1326 27 *Magnus* IV. King of *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, which laſt he gave in his life-time to *Haquin*, or *Aquinus* his ſecond Son; and after the death of *Ericus* his eldeſt Son (his deſigned ſucceſſor in his Crown) was outed of his Kingdom, by the practice of

1363 28 *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Son of *Euphemia*, the Siſter of *Magnus* the fourth; to the prejudice of *Aquinus* King of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*, made King of *Sweden*; on that quarrel vanquiſhed by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, Widow of *Aquinus*, *Anno* 1387. to whom, deſirous of liberty, he reſigned his Kingdom, and died in his own Countrey, *An.* 1407.

1387 29 *Magaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norwey*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three Kingdoms under her command; cauſed an Act of State to be paſſed in *Colmar*, a chief Town in *Swethland*, for the perpetuation of this Union unto her Succeſſors; the Laws and Privileges of each Kingdom, continuing as before they were.

1411 30 *Ericus* IV. Duke of *Pomeren*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whoſe Siſter *Ingelburgis*, he was deſcended; was in her life-time choſen King of the three Kingdoms, into which he ſucceeds actually after her deceaſe; but outed of them all by a ſtrong faction raiſed againſt him, *Anno* 1439. he dyed in a private eſtate in *Pomeren*, *Anno* 1559.

1439 31 *Chri-*

1439 31 *Chriſtopher*, Count *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavier* (in Title only) Son of the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter of *Ericus*, ſucceeded in all three Kingdoms. After whoſe death the *Swethlanders*, being weary of the *Daniſh* Government, broke the agreement made at *Colmar*, for the uniting of the three Kingdoms under one Prince; and choſe one *Carolus Canutus* to be their King, *Anno* 1448.

1448 32 *Carolus Canutus*, one of the meaneſt of the Nobility, and not long pleaſing to the Great ones: whoſe diſpleaſure when he had incurred, and feared the conſequents thereof, he gathereth together all the treaſure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his days.

1455 33 *Chriſtiern*, King of *Denmark*, and *Norwey*, called in by a party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but outed again under colour that he had not kept conditions with them: the Kingdom governed after that (for a time) by Marſhals.

1458 34 *John*, King of *Denmark* and *Norwey*, the Son of *Chriſtiern*, received King by the *Swedes*, then over-powered by the *Muſcovite*; but their turn being ſerved, they expelled him again; returned to their former Government under Marſhals. Of which Marſhals (deſcended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Canutus* by his Mothers ſide) there were three in number; *viz.* 1. *Steno*, 2. *Suanto*, and 3. *Steno Stur* the ſecond: of which the two firſt dyed natural deaths, and the laſt being by *Chriſtiern* the ſecond ſlain in battel, this Kingdom was again poſſeſſed by the *Danes*.

1519 35 *Chriſtiern* II. King of all three Kingdoms, uſed his victory ſo cruelly here, and his Subjects ſo inſolently at home, that here he was outed by *Guſtavus Ericus*, and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Frederick*.

1523 36 *Guſtavus Ericus*, deſcended from the antient Race of the Kings of *Sweden*, having vanquiſhed and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of the action choſen King of *Swethland*; which ſtill continueth in his Houſe.

1561 37 *Ericus* V. Son to *Guſtavus* 8.

1569 38 *John* II. Brother of *Ericus*, married *Catharine* the Siſter of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, King of *Poland*.

1593 39 *Sigiſmund*, the Son of *John* the ſecond, in the life-time of his Father choſen King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1586. but was diſpoſſeſſed of the Crown of *Sweden*, (after a long Warr) by his Uncle *Charls*.

1607 40 *Charls* II. Duke of *Suderman*, the youngeſt Son of *Guſtavus Ericus*, and brother of *John* and *Eric*, the two former Kings; firſt governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigiſmund*. But having an aim upon the Crown (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) he raiſed up a *Calvinian* party within that *Realm*; according to whoſe *principles*, he began firſt to withdraw his obedience from his natural Prince, and afterwards to aſſume the Government to himſelf: ſpeeding ſo well in his deſign, that after a long Warr, he forced his Nephew to deſiſt from all further enterpriſes, and made himſelf King, *Anno* 1607.

1611 41 *Guſtavus Adolphus* Son of *Charls*, having ſettled his affairs in *Sweden*, and made peace with the King of *Denmark*, with whom his Father was in Warr at the time of his death; fell firſt upon his Couſin *Sigiſmund*, the King of *Poland*, from whom he took many places of importance in *Pruſſia*, and *Livonia*; and in perſuance of that Warr was made Knight of the *Garter*. Afterward, having ſettled a Truce with him, he paſſed into *Germany*, then in great danger of being abſolutely inthralled to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. In which he proſpered ſo beyond all expectation, that in one year he paſſed over the *Elb*, the *Rhene*, and the *Dancw*. (which no Conqueror ever did before:) and having twice vanquiſhed the *Imperialiſts*, led by *Tilly*, and reſtored many of the *German* Princes into their Eſtates; was in the current of his Victories, ſlain in the battel of *Lutzen*, November 1632. his body royally conveyed to *Swethland*, and there interred.

1632 42 *Chriſtina*, ſole Daughter of *Guſtavus*, of the age of ſeven years, acknowledged Queen of *Sweden*, the eſtate governed by the Counſels of the Nobility. After a long war, with variable ſucceſs in *Germany*, they came at laſt to this Accord in the Treaty of *Munſter*; That ſhe and her Succeſſors, Kings and Queens of *Swethland*, ſhould peaceably enjoy all the *Higher Pomeren*, with the Iſles of *Rugia*, *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stetin*, in *Lower Pomerland*; the Town and Port of *Wiſmar*, in the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and the whole Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, *Pomeren*, and *Verden*, and the *Prefecture* of the Town of *Wilchuſen*; with the Title of Duke of *Bremen*, *Pomeren* and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords of *Wiſmar*; and by thoſe Titles to have place, as Princes of the Empire, in all Diets and Aſſemblies which concern the publick By which agreement (if it hold) the *Swedes* have not onely got a good footing in *Germany*, a ſtrong influence upon all the Counſels of the *Empire*, a door for many forces (if occaſion be) and a free paſſage into the Weſtern *Ocean*, which before they wanted: but may in time prove abſolute Maſters of the *Baltick* Sea; and make the *Hamburgers*, thoſe of *Lubeck*, and poſſibly the Kings of *Denmark*, and the *Empire* it ſelf, be at their devotion.

But leaving theſe things to the doubtful iſſue of *contingency*, let us next look upon the *Forces* and *Revenues* of the Crown of *Sweden*, before the time of *Guſtavus Adolphus*, or as he found it at his ſucceſſion to that Crown. For, though the *Swedes* pretend their Kingdom to be *Elective*, eſpecially ſince the failing of the Royal Line in *Magnus* the fourth, and *Albert* of *Micklenbourg*: yet ſtill the eldeſt ſon, or next heir, ſucceedeth; unleſs put by, by faction and ſtrong hand, as in the caſe of *Sigiſmund* and his Uncle *Charls*; Which *Charls* ſo ordered his affairs, that having engaged the Kingdom in a war againſt his nephew, he was ſollicited at the laſt to accept of the Crown: to which he would by no means yeeld, till a Law was made, for the entailing of the ſame for ever unto his poſterity, whether male or female, as an *Hereditary* Crown. But whether *Hereditary* or *Elective*, the King once ſetled to the Throne, is an abſolute *Monarch*: having not only power to levy taxes on his ſubjects, as he ſeeth occaſion, as five, ſix, ſeven, eight *Dollers* or more, yearly upon every Houſholder, according to the proportion of his eſtate; but alſo to grant a certain number of *Paiſants* unto ſuch as he means to favour, to be as ſubjects and vaſſals to him, according to his well-deſerving. And whereas in the Conſtitution of this Government, every Pariſh hath a Landſman or Conſul to decide the controverſies of the ſame; as every *Territory* hath its *Vicount*, and each province his *Lamen*: there lyeth an appeal from the Landſman unto the *Vicount*, and from the *Vicount* to the *Lamen*; who if they be ſuppoſed not to judge uprightly, then the Appeal lies unto the *Council*, and from the *Council* of *Eſtate* to the King himſelf, (in whom is fixed the *Soveraignty*, and *DERNIER BESORT*) and not unto the *King* and *Council*, as before in *Denmark*.

The *Forces* of this King are either by Sea, or Land. By Sea, he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodner*, and hath a great power in all the reſt of the *Baltick*: being able to ſet out 70 good *Men* of *War*, as *John* the ſecond did in the year 1578. ſeven of which were good *Gallions*, and all the reſt did carry above fifty caſt pieces of all ſorts; beſides many other good Veſſels fit for ſervice. And if a Navy of this ſize will not ſerve the turn, he is not only furniſhed with timber, cordage, and all other neceſſaries for the building of Ships, and with good ſtore of Ordnance and Ammunition for preſent uſe; but is able to raiſe upon a ſudden 6000 Mariners, and upon little warning as many more: all which he entertaineth at no other charges in a manner, than to find them victuals, inſomuch as *John* the ſecond, before mentioned, did uſe to ſay, that that *which coſt the King of* Spain *a Million of Crowns, coſt not him* 100000 *Dollars*.

For his Land forces, they may beſt be eſtimated by the Trained Bands, as we may call them, in every Province: there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Enſigns) of foot conſtantly trained and muſtered in the ſeveral Provinces; each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the total to 20000 Foot, all in a manner Musketiers, ready to march whenſoever the Kings occaſion ſhall ſo require; and then for *Horſe*, there are eleven *Cornets* in continual readineſs, for *Sweden* and *Gothland*, and two for *Finland*, maintained at the charges of thoſe Countries: to which the King may add at his own charges as many more as he pleaſeth. And for an inſtance of what this King is able to do, without putting his eſtates in hazard by draining them too dry of men to make good his Kingdom: we find that *John* the ſecond in his Navy of 70 Ships ſpoken of before, had above 18000 Land Souldiers, beſides Mariners. And in the Army which *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the late King, brought into *Germany*, there were muſtered no fewer at one time, than 12000 *Horſe*, and 34000 *Foot*, all *Finnes* and *Swethlanders*. For the accommodating of which Armies with *Artillery*, and the like Engines of war, it is thought that the Kings hereof are maſters of 8000 great peeces, for the moſt part Braſs, and Morterpeeces and Granadoes in proportion to them.

But that which makes his Land-forces moſt conſiderable, is their hardineſs in enduring the extremities of wind and weather; inſomuch that it is uſual with them, to ſtand Centinel a whole winter night of 18 hours long without being relieved: their exact Diſcipline, and obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable induſtry in making their own ſhoes, apparel, ſtocks for Muskets, and all other neceſſaries. Which doth not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the Wars; but keeps them from idleneſs, and the pride of Mutinies, the ordinary effects, in great Armies, of ſloth and eaſe. Nor do they want incouragement on the Kings part neither; who firſt, gives to every ſouldier victuals, which he accompts not in their pay, and that according to his obedience and deſert; 2 If a ſouldier be taken priſoner, him the King doth uſually redeem at his own charges; and 3 If a ſouldiers horſe be ſlain under him, the King ſupplyeth him with another, which makes the ſouldiers (very ſenſible of ſuch obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his commands, how dangerous ſoever they may ſeem to be.

Finally, as for his *Revenues*, they muſt needs be great, there being four ways allowed him to amaſs his treaſures. Firſt, the *Revenues* of the Church, conſiſting before the *Reformation* of ſeven Biſhopricks and ſixty Monaſteries, which enjoyed very great poſſeſſions; all ſeized on by *Guſtavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the Crown; excepting only what is given back to maintain the Biſhops. 2ly. *Mines*, which are here of all metals in very great plenty, except of *Gold* and *Silver*, which they have more ſparingly; the tenth whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yeelds him ſuch a fair *Intrado*, that in the year 1578. the Kings part out of two or three *Mines* of *Copper* only, amounted to 30000 *Dollars*. 3 Tenths out of all encreaſe, as Rie, Wheat, Barley, Fiſh, Oxen, Skins, and the like commodities; the ſum whereof though not certainly known (becauſe the increaſe is ſo uncertain) yet it was once computed, that the tenth of the Oxen only came in one year to 48000 *Dollars*, beſides proviſion for his houſhold. 4 And laſtly, *Cuſtoms* impoſed on *Merchandiſe*, and paid in all his Haven Towns for all commodities imported, or exported; of what ſort ſoever. Beſides all which he hath his *Contributions* in all times of War, power of impoſing taxes (though moderately uſed) as his neceſſities require; and on the marriage of a *Daughter*, the Kingdom is to provide her portion: which of late times hath been fixed at the certain ſum of 100000 *Dollars*, beſides plate and moveables. Out of which ſeveral *Items* to ſum up the *total*: it was obſerved, that in the year 1578 King *John* the ſecond (all charges, ordinary and extraordinary, being firſt deducted) did lay up in his treaſury no leſs than 700000 *Dollars*: which was a vaſt ſum for thoſe times, conſidering eſpecially the great charge which the King had been at that year, in furniſhing a Navy of 70 ſail, and raiſing 18000 Land-ſouldiers, (beſides Horſe) for defence of his Realm againſt the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by ſome knowing men, that his *Revenues* would be much greater than they are; if he did employ ſtrangers to work the *mines*, which the Natives do not husband to the beſt advantage; and yet are fearful to diſcover them to other Nations, upon ſome jealouſies, which they are naturally addicted to; or if he would turn Merchant, and in his own ſhips ſend out *Corn* and *Cordage*, with Maſts and Timber fit for building; and in them bring back ſalt and other neceſſaries, which his Kingdom wants, ſetting them at a far leſs price than now they go at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, three Crowns, *Or*.

There are in *Swethland*
Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 8.
Univerſities but one,
viz. *Upſal*.

And thus much for *SWETHLAND*.

OF
RUSSIA.

R*VSSIA*, is bounded on the Eaſt, by *Tartarie*; on the Weſt, with *Livonia*, and *Finland*, from which divided by great mountains, and the River *Poln*; on the North, by the *Frozen* Ocean, and ſome part of *Lapland*: and on the South, by *Lituania*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the *Crim Tartars* inhabiting on the banks of *Palus* M*æotis*, and the *Euxine Sea*. It ſtandeth partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Aſia*, the River *Tanais*, or *Don*, running through it; the common boundary of thoſe great and noted parts of the world.

It was thus called from the *Roſſi* or *Ruſſi*, a people of Mount *Taurus*, or *Taurica Cherſoneſus* (if not both) who in the declining times of the *Greek* Empire, poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome parts of it; and being the prevailing people, impoſed their name on all the reſt. Called alſo *Ruſſia Alba*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Ruſſia Nigra*, a Province of *Poland*, *quod incolæ omnium Gentium ipſius imperio ſubjectarum* (as one obſerves diſcourſing of the affairs hereof) *veſtibus albis & Pileis plerumq; utantur*, becauſe the inhabitants uſe to wear white caps and veſtments. And why not thus? ſithence the people of *Margiana*, and *Sogdiana* in *Aſia*, have the name of *Jeſelbaſſe*, only becauſe they wear *green turbants*, as the word importeth. Finally, it is called *Moſcovie* from *Moſcovie* the chief Province of it; as that denominated from the *Moſchi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the heavenly bodies, it is ſaid by ſome to be ſituate betwixt the 8th and 20th *Climates*; the longeſt day in the Southern parts, being but 16 hours and an half, and almoſt 22 hours and an half in the Northern parts. But this is to be underſtood only of the Province of *Moſcovie*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; and not of the whole Empire of the *Moſcovite*, according to the bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it; as Eaſt *Lapland*, *Condora*, and *Petzoro*, lying within the *Arctick* Circle, the longeſt day in Summer will be full 6 months (for ſo long do thoſe Countries ſee no night at all) which is a mighty diſproportion, from the length of the longeſt day in the moſt Southern parts, being but 16 hours and an half, as before is ſaid. And by this rule we are to take the dimenſions alſo. For though ſome make the length hereof from North to South, that is to ſay, from *Cala* in the North, to *Aſtrachan* near the *Caſpian* Sea, to be no more than

2260

4460 *Verſts*, or 3690 *Italian* miles; yet they confeſs, that reckoning forwards from *Tromſchua*, the furtheſt point of *Petzora*, the full length thereof will be full ſo much more. And for the breadth, reckoning from *Narve*, on the Bay of *Finland* (now in the poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Severia* in the Eaſt, it amounteth to 4400 *Verſts*, or 3300 *Italian* miles: each *Verſt* being eſtimated at 3 quarters of an *Engliſh* mile. Which mighty Territory, if it were peopled anſwerable to ſome other parts of the world, would either make it too great for one Prince to hold; or make that Prince too great and puiſſant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty, and deceitfull in all their bargains, falſe-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their promiſes, and ſtudying nothing more than wayes to evade their Contracts. Vices ſo generally known, and noted in them, that when they are to deal with ſtrangers, they diſſemble their Country, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear leaſt no body ſhould truſt them. Deſtitute of humane affections, and ſo unnatural, that the Father inſults on his Son, and he again over his Father and Mother: So malicious one towards another, that you ſhall have a man hide ſome of his own goods in the houſe of ſome man whom he hateth, and then accuſe him for the ſtealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, inſomuch that all heady and intoxicated drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days onely in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the moſt part they are ſtrong of body, ſwift of foot, of a ſquare proportion, broad, ſhort, and thick; grey-eyed, broad bearded, and generally furniſhed with prominent paunches. The *Commons* live in miſerable ſubjection to the *Nobles*, and they again in as great ſlavery to the *Duke* or *Emperour*; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his grievances: nay, the mean *Lords* and officers are ſqueamiſh in this kind, and but on great ſubmiſſion, will not commend unto the *Duke* a poor mans cauſe. They are altogether unlearned, even the *Prieſts* meanly indoctrinated; it being cautionated by the great *Duke*, that there be no *Schools*, leſt there ſhould be any *Scholars* but himſelf; ſo that the people uſe to work commonly on the Lords day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen, and to ſay in a difficult queſtion, *God and our great* Duke *know all this*; and in other talk, *All we enjoy* health *and* life, *all from our great* Duke. According to whoſe pleaſure every man is preſcribed what habit he ſhall wear, both for matter and faſhion ſuitable unto their condition. In the time of my Author, their habit was a long garment without plaits, which hung down to their heels; commonly of white or blue, with very ſtrait ſleeves; on their legs wearing *Buskins* up as high as the calf, for the moſt part red, high at the heels, and beſet with nails of iron. The ſtuff, and trimming of the dreſs is the only difference betwixt the *Noble* and the *Paiſant*.

The women are attired alſo much after this manner; but if great and noble, ſuffered to ſet forth themſelves with ſtore of pearls and pretious ſtones, which hang ſo thick about their ears, that they do almoſt pull their ears from their heads. A ſecond marriage is conceived no blemiſh in point of *chaſtity*, but the third condemns them of *Incontinence*: naturally ſubject enough to the luſts of the fleſh, but private, and fearful to offend; if once laſcivious, then moſt intollerably wanton. It is the faſhion of theſe women, to love that husband beſt which beateth them moſt; and to think themſelves neither loved nor regarded, unleſs they be two or three times a day well favouredly ſwadled. The Author of the *Treaſury* of times, telleth a ſtory of a *German* Shoomaker, who travelling into this Country, and here marrying a widow, uſed him with all kindneſs that a woman could (as he thought) deſire; yet did not ſhe ſeem contented. At laſt learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her was the cauſe of her penſiveneſs, he took ſuch a vein in cudgelling her ſides, that in the end, the hangman was fain to break his neck for his labour.

They uſe the *Sclavonian* language, but ſo corrupt and mixt with other languages, that they and the *Sclavonians* underſtand not one anothers meaning, but by circumſtance only: yet in *Jugaria* (out of which the *Hungarians* are thought to have iſſued) they ſpeak a corrupt *Hungarian*, and in *Petzora* and the Country of *Czeremiſſians*, they have a language to themſelves, diſtinct from others.

They firſt received the *Chriſtian Faith* in the year 987. or as ſome ſay, *Anno* 942, by the preaching and miniſtry of the *Greeks*, ſent hither by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: of which Church they are conſtant followers, both for rites and doctrine; but not without ſome ſuperſtitions of their own ſuperadded to them, *viz*, not coming near a *Croſs*, Church or Monaſtery, but they kneel down, and make the ſign of the *Croſs*, ſaying *Miloy Hiſpody*, i. e. *Lord have mercy upon us*; not entring into any Church, untill waſhed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the Jews, whom they ſuffer not to live amongſt them; and ſo great friendſhip unto a Calf, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his fleſh. Their Church is Governed by 18 Biſhops, and 2 Metropolitans; all of them ſubordinate to their Archbiſhop or *Patriarch*; as he, in former times, to the *Conſtantinopolitan*, by whom he uſed to be confirmed. But about an hundred years ago they withdrew themſelves from that ſubjection; the *Patriarch* being nominated by the great Duke, and conſecrated by two or three of his own *Suffragans*. Without the Counſel and Advice of this *Patriarch*, the Emperour or great Duke doth nothing of any moment. The Biſhops are all choſen out of the *Monaſtick* or *Regular* Clergy; which makes the Monks (being all of the Order of St. *Baſil*) to live very religiouſly; in hope to be advanced to the *Epiſcopal* dignity. And for the *Secular* Clergy, or *Parochial* Prieſts, there is not much required of them, but to ſay their Maſſes (which being in their own language they may eaſily do) and to read now and then one of St *Chriſoſtoms* Homilies, tranſlated heretofore for the uſe of thoſe Churches: after the death of their firſt wives not permitted to marry, in other things little differing from the reſt of the people. Once in the year it is lawful and uſual with them to hold a *Synod*, at which the *Patriarch* hath his *Crozier* or *Paſtoral* ſtaff carryed before him, as the Popes *Legate* hath the *Croſs*; when they make *Conſti-*

tutions for the publick government, and the regulating of Divine matters; moſt punctually and carefully obſerved by the Prince himſelf.

As followers of the *Greek* Church (but ſo as to be counted a Church diſtinct) they differ much both from the *Romiſh*, and *Reformed*: 1 Denying the *Holy Ghoſt* to proceed from the Father and the Son; 2ly. Denying *Purgatory*, but praying for the dead; 3ly, Believing that holy men enjoy not the preſence of God, before the reſurrection; 4ly. Communicating in both kinds; but uſing leavened bread; and mingling warm water with the wine, which both together they diſtribute with a ſpoon; 5ly. Receiving children of 7 years old to the *Sacrament* of the *Euchariſt*, becauſe then they begin to ſin: 6ly. Forbidding extream *unction, confirmation*, and fourth Marriages; 7ly. Admitting none to Orders but ſuch as are *maried*, and yet prohibiting marriage to them that are actually in Orders; 8ly. Rejecting carved Images, but admitting the painted; 9ly. Obſerving four Lents in the year; 10ly. Reputing it unlawfull to faſt on *Saturday*; or to eat blood, or any thing that hath been ſtrangled, according to the firſt Council holden at *Hieruſalem*; 11. And finally, diſſolving marriage by divorcement, upon every ſlight occaſion, or conceived diſpleaſure. Which diverſity betwixt the *Romaniſts* and this people, in point of Religion, hath bred ſuch a difference betwixt them in point of affection, and made them ſo ill conceited of one another; that if a *Muſcovite* be known, or but ſuſpected to have converſed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted perſon, and muſt be ſolemnly purged and purified, before he be admitted to partake of the bleſſed Sacrament.

In matters of war the people are indifferent able, as being almoſt in continual broils with their Neighbours: and have a cuſtom, that when they go to the wars, every Souldier giveth to the Emperour, or great Duke, a piece of mony, which at the end of the war he receiveth again; and by that means the number of the ſlain is exactly known. At their funerals they uſe to put a penny into the mouth of the party deceaſed, a pair of ſhoes on his feet, and a Letter in his hand, directed (ſuch is their ſuperſtition) to S. *Nicolas*, whom they deem to be the *Porter* of Heaven: an opinion doubtleſs very prejudicial to the *Popes* and S. *Peters prerogatives*.

This Countrey is not ſo populous as ſpacious. The *Eaſtern* parts are vexed with the *Tartars*; who like *Æſops* dog, will neither dwell there themſelves, nor ſuffer the *Moſcovites* to plant Colonies in them: the *Weſtern* parts almoſt as much moleſted by the *Sweden* and *Polonian* Kings; the *Southern*, by the *Turks*, and *Precopenſes*; and the *Northern*, by the coldneſs of the air, which is of ſuch vehemency, that water thrown up into the Air, will turn to ice before it fall to the ground. The better to reſiſt the extremity of this cold, not onely the clothes of this people, but their very houſes, are lined with thick *Furs*. Every Gentleman or Man of note hath in his dwelling houſe a *ſtove* or *hot-houſe*, in which they keep, as it were, to thaw themſelves. Such as travel on the way, uſe often to rub their noſe or ears, with ſnow or ice, to ſettle and recall the motive ſpirits into thoſe parts; which otherwiſe they would be in danger to loſe: the ignorance of which preventing *Chirurgery*, was not the leaſt cauſe, that in the year 1598. of 70000 *Turks* which made an inroad into *Moſcovie*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reaſon of theſe extremities of froſts and cold, it is the cuſtom of this people to lay the bodies of their dead all the winter long, on heaps in the *Belfrees* of their Churches; where they lie without *Putrifiing* or any ill ſavour, till the end of *March*, at what time the air beginning to wax warm, and the earth to be fit for digging, each family looks out their dead bodies, and takes care to bury them. This exceſs of cold in the air, gave occaſion to *Caſtilian* in his *Aulicus*, wittily, and not incongruouſly to feign, that if two men being ſomewhat diſtant, talk together in the *Winter*, their words will be ſo frozen, that they cannot be heard: but if the parties in the *Spring* return to the ſame place, their words will melt into the ſame order that they were frozen and ſpoken, and be plainly underſtood. Such is their *Winter*, neither is their *Summer* leſs miraculous. For the huge Seas of Ice, which in a manner covered the whole ſurface of the Country, are at the firſt approach of the Sun ſuddenly diſſolved, the water quickly dried up, and the earth dreſſed in her *holy-day* apparel: ſuch a mature growth of fruits, ſuch flouriſhing of herbs, ſuch chirping of birds, as if here were a perpetual *Spring*. The reaſon of which ſtrange and ſudden alteration is conceived to be the long lying of the ſnow on the face of the earth, keeping it from the rigour of the winter froſts; which being diſſolved by the Sun in the beginning of the *Spring*, doth ſo thorowly drench and ſoak the ground, (being of a light and ſandie mold) and conſequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun, ſhining hotly on it, that it forceth in a manner the *Herbs* and *Plants* to ſhoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a ſhorter time than can be imagined.

The whole Countrey generally is very much over-ſpread with woods, parts of the great *Hercynian* Foreſt, heretofore over-running all the North, and ſtill more viſible here than in other places: either by reaſon of the idleneſs of the people, naturally given to ſloth and eaſe; or for that the Countrey is not populous enough to overcome them: or that there is already ground enough for tillage to ſupply their neceſſary uſes. For here do grow the goodlieſt and talleſt trees of the world, through which, by reaſon of their thickneſs, the brightneſs of the Sun-beams can hardly pierce; affording ſhelter to great multitudes of Cattel, but of wild beaſts eſpecially, whoſe skins are better than their bodies; as *Bears*, *Marterns*, *Zibellines*, *Wolves*, *black Foxes*, whoſe skins are of very great eſtimation. Of the timber of theſe trees are ſquared all neceſſaries, both for Forts and Houſes: the Fortifications in this Countrey being made of huge beams faſtned together, (the chinks filled with earth) not eaſily ſhaken by battery, though much ſubject to fire. And out of them iſſueth an unſpeakable quantity of *Pitch* and *Rozin*, which are hence diſtilled: beſides an everlaſting fountain of wax and honey, the *Bees*, without the Midwifry of the Art of men, building their Hives or Houſes in the hollow trees. Concerning this there goeth a ſtory (reported and believed for a certain truth) of a Country-man, who accidentally had ſlipped down into a great hollow Tree, where he ſtood up to the breaſt in hony; continuing there two daies without other ſuſtenance: at the end whereof a Bear coming to partake of the booty, he laid hold of his legs; and ſo terrified him with his cries, that he made him leap out with the man at his heels. The Countrey yieldeth alſo great ſtore of *Flax* and *Hemp*, which is tranſported yearly into other Countreys; and would make them very excellent *Cordage*, if the people had any ſkill in Manufactures, or Mechanical Arts: and in ſome places rich paſtures, and ſuch ſtore of Corn, that therewith they do furniſh *Lapland*, and the North part of *Sweden*. Fiſh they have alſo in good plenty, which they ſalt and dry, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in ſtore for their Forts and families. By which accompt it will appear that the principal commodities which they ſend abroad, are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales-greaſe, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Roſin, Nuts, Filberds, and the like: which either the *Dutch* or the *Engliſh* buy of them at the port of S. *Nicolas*, or the *Armenians* at *Aſtracan* neer the *Caſpian* Sea: giving them in return Cloath, Silks, Tapeſtry, and ſome other Merchandiſe, tranſported to the value of 500000 Rubbles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 *poad* (every *poad* containing 40 Engliſh pounds) of Tallow 100000 *poad*, 100000 *hides*, 100 ſhips laden with Flax and Hemp; the reſt of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author: ſince whoſe time the trade hereof hath been much increaſed.

This Countrey not improperly may be called (as by ſome it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are 1. the *Don*, called *Tanais* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*; the Northern parts of this Countrey being then unknown. It diſburtheneth it ſelf into *Palas Maotis*, and hath its fountain not out of the *Riphean* Mountains, as was thought of old; but out of a great Lake called *Iwanoweſero*, in the Forreſt of *Okonitzkilies*, or *Jephapinolies*, ſome 20 *Engliſh* miles from the City of *Tulla*; and having run a great way Eaſtward, turneth back again, and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Maotis*, as was ſaid before. 2. *Boryſthenes*, now called *Nieper*, whoſe ſpring was unknown unto *Herodotus*, but now diſcovered to be neer *Dnieperk*, a Village of *Muſcovie* (ſpecially ſo called) in the Forreſt of *Wolkonskie*. Whence paſſing South, and running by the Town of *Smolensko*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongſt them that of *Doſna*, (by the antent Writers called *Hipani*:) notwithſtanding whoſe muddy waters, it ſtill retains its natural clearneſs, and ſo fals into the *Euxine* Sea. 3. *Taruntus* (ſo called by *Ptolemy*) or *Duina* the leſs (to difference it from *Duina* the greater:) which riſing not far from the head of *Boryſthenes*, out of the Lake of *Duina*, and waſhing the walls of *Riga*, the chief Town of *Livonia*; loſeth it ſelf in the *Baltick* Sea. 4. *Dſina*, or *Dwine* (commonly called *Duina* the greater) ſo called from the meeting of two Rivers, the *Juch* and the *Sachan* (whereof more hereafter) of which that of the longeſt courſe, not known unto the antients, hath its head in the Province of *Permia*, and its fall into the Frozen or Northern Ocean, at the Port of S. *Nicolas*. 5. *Occa*, or *Ocyne*, riſing in the Territory of *Miſceneck*, and making all the Country fruitful through which it paſſeth; emptieth it ſelf into the *Volga*. 6. *Volga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Rha*; by the Tartars, *Edill*; which riſeth 25 Dutch miles from *Moſco*, towards *Lituania*; and fetching a great compaſs in and out, after it hath ſwallowed up many leſſer Rivers, diſchargeth it ſelf with 70 mouths into the *Caſpian* Sea, now called *Mer di Bachu*. Here are, beſides theſe Rivers, many notable Lakes, as thoſe of *Duina*, and *Volga*, out of which the ſaid two Rivers iſſue; that called *Ilmen* not far from *Novogrod* the great, 80 Italian miles in compaſs; that of *Ladoga*, 100 Dutch miles in length, and 60 in breadth, in which are many pleaſant Iſlands: and that called *Bideloyeſero* (*Lacus Albus* in Latine) about 12 German miles long, and as many broad, into which 360 rivers are ſaid to diſcharge their ſtreams; in the midſt whereof is a very ſtrong Caſtle, ſaid to be impregnable, in which the great Duke keeps the moſt part of his Treaſure, and into which he doth withdraw in the times of danger and ſedition.

As for the Mountains of this Countrey, here are the *Montes Amadoci*, *Riphæi*, and *Hyperborei*, ſo much talked of, and ſo little known amongſt the antients. A continual and craggy chain of hils running croſs *Sarmatia Europæa*, South and North; and thence Eaſtwards, into *Aſiatica*. Beginning not far from the fall of *Boryſthenes* into the *Euxine*, they extend directly towards the North, and are there called *Montes Amadoci*. Afterwards bending for a long ſpace toward the North-eaſt, they are called *Riphæi*; and then paſſing on directly Eaſt, by reaſon of their Northernly ſituation, called *Hyperborei*. And though Sir *Walter Rawleigh* ſay, I know not on what authority, that there are no *Riphean* mountains in *Rerum natura*: yet *Mercator* placeth them in this tract, and telleth us, that in regard of their being alwaies covered with Ice and Snow, they are hardly paſſable: calling thoſe and the ſaid *Hyperborei* (in his *Europa*) by the name of *Cingulum terræ*, or the *Girdle* of the *Earth*, a great part whereof (though known in divers places by different names) they do ſeem to compaſs.

It is divided, for the better Government hereof, into four parts (by them termed *Chetfords*) and thoſe governed by four Lieutenants, not reſident upon their charges, but attending on the Emperors perſon whereſoever he goeth, and there holding their Courts; but eſpecially at *Moſco*, the prime ſeat of the Empire: where from their *Under-Deputies* they receive the complaints of their Provinces, and inform the Emperors Counſel of the buſineſs, and from them again receive inſtructions for *Reformation*. But as to the *Chorography* of it, it is divided into the Provinces of *Muſcovie* eſpecially ſo called, 2 *Novogrod the Great*, 3 *Smolensko*, 4 *Moſaiskie*, 5 *Ploſcow*, 6 *Corelia*, 7 *Biarmia*, 8 *Petzora*, 9 *Condora*, 10 *Obdora*, 11 *Jugria*, 12 *Severa*, 13 *Parmia*, 14 *Rhezan*, 15 *Wiathka*, 16 *Caſan*, 17 *Aſtrachan*, 18 *Novogordia inferior*, 19 the *Mordwits*, 20 *Worotine*, 21 *Tuvir*, 22 *Wolodomir*, 23 *Dwina*, and 24 the Ruſſian Iſlands Others of leſs note (of which there is no want) are reduced to theſe. In my Deſcription whereof I ſhall not be ſo exact and punctual as I have been hitherto: the Countrey not being much travelled by Strangers; nor any of the Natives ſuffered to go into forein Nations, or permitted (out of *jealouſies*

ſies of State) to hold diſcourſe with the Ambaſſadors of neighbouring Princes, but only in the Emperors hearing. By means whereof the Chronography of this vaſt Empire is come but lamely to our hands; though the Power, Policy, and Revenues of it, being points diſcernable by the Miniſters of other Princes, and by the courſe and conduct of their affairs; are as well known as thoſe of leſs diſtance. Which ſaid, we will firſt begin with *Moſcovy*, the prevailing Province, that which gives name to this whole Empire; with reference to which the ſituation and poſition of the reſt of the Provinces, is ſet forth unto us in our Authors.

1. *MVSCOVIE.*

1. *MVSCOVIE*, ſpecially ſo called, is ſeated in the very center of this Eſtate, and ſo more fit to order the affairs thereof; the largeſt Province of the whole, extending from Eaſt to Weſt 600 Dutch, or 2400 Engliſh mile[illegible] ſo populous withal, that beſides 30000 *Boiares*, or Gentlemen, bound to ſerve on Horſe-back at their own charges (like the Turks Timariots;) the Great Duke is able to raiſe 70000 foot (which is a great matter for a Countrey ſo little cultivated.)

The ſoil hereof is ſtiff and clammy, but might be made more profitable than it is, were it well manured, or ploughed and ordered, as it is in all other Countries. For here, and in moſt parts elſe of this large Dominion, the people are accuſtomed to ſow no more of their Land, than what they dig with the ſpade, or can break up with a ſtick very ſharply pointed; whereof they carry great numbers into the field, that when one breaks they may uſe another.

Chief places in this Province are, 1. *Moſco*, the Imperial ſeat, and the See of the Patriarch, ſo called of the River *Moſco* upon which it is ſcituate. Exceedingly improved both in ſtate and beauty, ſince the time that *Daniel* the fourth Lord of *Muſcovie* removed the ſeat Royal thither, from *Valadomire*, where before it was: inſomuch that it was once grown to nine miles in compaſs, containing then 41500 Families; but being fired by the *Tartar*, Anno 1571. (at what time there were burnt 80000 perſons) it is reduced to five miles only The houſes for the moſt part of wood and durt, the ſtreets very miry; without either Ditch, Wall, or Rampart to defend it againſt an Enemy. Inſtead whereof there are two Caſtles, in the outward parts of it, the one called *Kitagonod*, the other *Balſigorod*; environed with the River *Moſco*, and another water called *Neglinna*, which here falls into it. It contains 16 Churches, moſt of them of the ſame materials as the houſes are: and the *Palace* of the great Duke ſituate in the midſt hereof, (which for the greatneſs of it may be thought a little City) fortified with 17 Towrs, 3 Bulwarks, and a continual Garriſon (if the great Duke be here) of 25000 men for the guard of his perſon. 2. *Sloboda*, a Biſhops See, North-eaſt to *Moſco*, on the Banks of one of the greateſt Rivers which fall into the *Volga*. 3. *Ruſchow*, the title of a Dukedom, fortified with a Caſtle of wood (of which ſtuff moſt of the fortreſſes of this Country are made) ſituate 23 leagues from *Moſco* towards the Weſt, on the Banks of the *Volga*; which hath its fountain in the Territory and precincts hereof. 4. *Jaroſlave*, on the *Volga* alſo, a Town and Caſtle diſtant about 46 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*, formerly the eſtate and patrimony of the ſecond ſons of the great *Duke*, but united to the Royal Domain, by *John Waſiliwick*, and by him added alſo to the ſtyle Imperial. It is alſo one of the Sees *Epiſcopal*. 5. *Ruſtow*, the See of one of the two Metropolitans, ſituate in a fruitful ſoyl, well ſtored with fiſh, and yielding good plenty of Salt. One of the antienteſt *Principalities* of all this Empire, and held accuſtomably by the ſecond ſon of the great *Duke*, as a ſtate diſtinct: but conquered by *John Vaſiliwick*, An. 1565. and added to the ſtyle and Patrimony of the great *Duke* himſelf, the younger ſons being from thenceforth put off with penſions. 6. *Vologda*, a Biſhops See, ſituate in a fenny and woody Countrey; very ſtrong by nature, and beautified with one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles of all this eſtate, where the great *Duke* doth ſometime lay a part of his treaſure: that part eſpecially which is raiſed of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchandiſe; which being landed at the port of St. *Nicholas*, is firſt brought thither, where having paid a new toll, or cuſtom, it goeth on to *Moſco*. Betwixt the City and that of *Yaroſlave* before-mentioned, for the ſpace of an 100 *Engliſh* miles, where ſtood in former times 50 goodly Villages (ſome of them a mile in length) the Countrey in a manner is left wholy deſolate, and without Inhabitants; abandoned by the people, by reaſon of the inſupportable preſſures which were laid upon them.

2. *SMOLENSKO.* 3. *MOSAISKI.* 4. *PLESCOW.*

The Dukedom of *SMOLENSKO*, is ſituate on the courſe of the River *Nieper*, or *Boryſthenes*, full of many thick Forreſts, from whence they carry a great number of rich skins yearly. Places of moſt obſervation in it, are 1. *Smolensko*, ſituate on the *Nieper*, a Biſhops See, about 80 *Polonian* miles from *Moſco*; begirt on every ſide with Mountains, and ſpacious Woods. A large Town, and of great eſteem in theſe parts of the Empire; and giving name unto this Province; which heretofore was governed in a free condition under the patronage and protection of the Kings of *Poland*; in the time of *Alexander* a late King thereof, by *Baſilius* the Great Duke conquered, and added to this Eſtate. Taken by the *Polanders*, in the year 1610. after a long ſiege of two years, with the ſlaughter of 200000 Muſcovites, and to the loſs of many of the beſiegers; but reſtored again to *Michael Fedrovitius* the Great *Duke*, on the making of the peace between them. 2. *Biela*, a Principality of it ſelf, having the honour of a Caſtle, and reckoned in the uſual ſtile of the *Knez*, or Emperor.

2. *MOSAISKI*, hath in length 350 *Italian* miles, and as much in breadth, ſo called from *Moſaiskie*, the chief Town hereof, and a Biſhops See; taken together with the Territory, or Province appertaining to it, from *Alexander* King of *Poland*, by *John* the great Duke, father of *Baſilius* before-mentioned.

4. PLESCOW, or PSKOW, contains in length 350 *Italian* miles, in bredth 230, or thereabouts; ſo called from *Pleſcow*, or *Pskow*, the chief City of it; and a Biſhops See: great, powerful, and well walled about, the only walled City of all this Empire. So large within the Walls, that when it was beſieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland*, there were in it for defence thereof 70000 Foot, and 7000 Horſe, beſides the natural Inhabitants of it; which in all ordinary computation muſt be many more. It belonged formerly to the *Poles*, in the right of the Dukedom of *Lituania*; taken from them by *Baſilius* the great Duke of *Muſcovy*, *Anno* 1509. by whom and his Succeſſors uſed in the Royal ſtyle.

5. NOVOGORD.

Novogrod.

5. NOVOGORD, or NOVOGROD, is one of the largeſt Provinces or Dukedoms in all *Ruſſia*, bordering on *Livonia*, towards *Sinus Finnicus*, or the Gulf of *Finland*. A colder Country and leſs fruitful than that of *Muſcovy*, becauſe ſituate ſomewhat farther North: the longeſt Summer-day in *Moſco* not being above 18 hours, whereas in *Novogrod*, the chief City hereof, it is very near twenty. By conſequence the Winter-nights being of that length, muſt make the Air exceeding cold, and the Soil as comfortleſs. Here is in this Province the great Lake *Ilmen*, ſpoken of before, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſs; as alſo that called *Ladoga*, before alſo mentioned.

Towns of moſt eſtimation in it are, 1. *Novogrod* it ſelf, the wealthieſt and goodlieſt City of all the North, affirmed to be in greatneſs not inferiour to *Rome*; called therefore *Novogrod the Great* (to difference it from another of the ſame name near unto *Valodomir*:) an Archbiſhops See, and one of the four Mart-Towns of the *Hanſe*-Merchants, reſorted to from all parts for the Trade of *Muſcovy* brought thither by Land, and thence tranſported through the *Baltick* to moſt parts of Chriſtendom. So confident in thoſe times of their power and ſtrength, that they uſed to ſay, that *men could do nothing againſt God and them*: but found the contrary when taken from the Crown of *Poland* by the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*. The trade thereof ſince much decayed, by the finding out of the North-eaſt paſſage to the Port of S. *Nicolas*, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants barter with the *Muſcovite*. Yet ſtill it keeps the reputation of the principal City, ſituate on the River *Naſ*, which the *Dutch* call *Ny*; the buildings for the moſt part of wood and clay: diſtant from *Moſco* 120 *Dutch* miles, and about 200 from the main body of the *Baltick*; betwixt which and this City lieth the whole Bay of *Finland*, the Entrances whereof upon the *Dwina* (which leads towards *Novogrod*) are fortified with the ſtrong Towns and Gariſons of *Narve* and *Rivallia*, both in the hands of the King of *Sweden*; which is another great hindrance to the trade of this Town. 2. *Narve*, on the North-bank of *Dwina*, where it falls into the Bay of *Finland* or *Sinus Finnicus* in the Province or Territory of *Wichidaw*; heretofore reckoned of as a part of *Livonia*: but being taken by *Baſilius* the Great Duke, with the reſt of this Country, and the Town of *Novogrod* it ſelf, *Anno* 1477. it was impregnably fortified by the care of his Son *Vaſilwich*, who for a reward unto the Architect, being a *Polonian*, put out both his eyes, to diſable him from building the like again. But having left all the Natives in their own habitations, without abating either their ſtrength or number, the Town and Caſtle not long after was betrayed to the King of *Sweden*, who ſtill holds it. 3. *Pozow* or *Pozovia*; and 4. *Volocoluc*, two ſtrong pieces, ſituate in the Borders againſt the *Polanders*. 5. *Vobſco*, beſieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland*, with an Army of 100000 men, forced to retire without taking it, with the loſs of many of his beſt Captains and common Souldiers. It is diſtant from *Novogrod* 28 *Dutch* miles, the Country about it called *Volsk*: where they ſay for certain, that all Cattel which are brought thither, of what hair or colour ſoever they be, upon a little ſtay there become all white. The people of this tract have a language (or ſome Dialect rather) peculiar only to themſelves. 6. *Juvanogrod*, a ſtrong Caſtle not far from *Vobſco*, 40 miles from *Novogrod*; a frontire Caſtle againſt the *Swedes* gariſoned in *Narve*, to repulſe whoſe inrodes it was built.

In this Country, and not far from the Town of *Novogrod*, was fought that memorable battel betwixt the *Sarmatians* and their Slaves. For when the *Aſiatick Scythians* went to plant themſelves in *Media*, and the parts adjoining, ſome of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this tract, went along for company. Their long ſtay cauſed their Wives, deſpairing of their return, to comfort themſelves with their Slaves, both at bed and board; to whom they brought a luſty increaſe of youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joined together againſt them; the Slaves to retain that wealth and freedom which they were poſſeſſed of; the Women for fear of the diſpleaſure of their Husbands; and the Young-men for defence of their Fathers and Mothers. With joint forces they go out to meet them, before their entry into the Country; neither are the Maſters ſlow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the firſt ſight of each other. The Maſters ſcorning to defile their Swords on ſo ignoble an Enemy, aſſault them with Whips; and by the terrour thereof got a ſignal victory. In memory of which battel, the people of that City have ever ſince ſtamped their money with the figure of an Horſeman ſhaking a Whip in his hands: And it is the cuſtom of all *Muſcovy*, that the Maids in the time of wooing ſend ſuch a Whip, curiouſly wrought by her own hands, to that Suitor whom ſhe reſolves on for her Husband, in token of her future ſubjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6. CORELIA. 7. BIARMIA.

6. Sixty *Dutch* miles from *Novogrod* lieth the Province called *Corelia*, extending North-wards as far as to a branch of the *Frozen* Sea, where the longeſt day is 20 hours and an half; the nights propor-

tionable

Petzora.

tionable in the Winter, make it cold and barren. It bordered on the Eaſt of *Finland*, from which parted by a long and rough ridg of Mountains. By reaſon of which ſituation betwixt two great Princes, the people are enforced to pay tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*. Chief Towns whereof are *Kexholm* or *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Swedes*; and, 2. *Corelnburg*, the chief Town of the Province, belonging with the reſt of the Country unto the *Moſcovite*. By ſome this Province is made a part of the *Eaſtern Lapland*; but, I think, erroneouſly: the people having ſome good Towns, and ſavouring of ſome Humanity; neither of which are known or heard of amongſt the *Laplanders*. 3. *Nordenberg*, on the mouth of a Lake, which by the River called *Warſuga* emptieth it ſelf into the Bay of S. *Nicolas*.

7. On the North-ſide of that branch or Arm of the Frozen Ocean, which bounds *Corelia*, lieth the Weſtern part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMIA*: the Country of the *Dikiloppi*, or *wild Lappians*, as the *Moſcovites* call them, to whoſe Duke or Emperour they are ſubject. We had their Character before, when we were in *Swethland*; nor ſhall we need to repeat it here: as barbarous and as rude as the worſt ſort of thoſe mentioned in *Scricfinnia*, and as Idolatrous as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to luſtfulneſs than the others. In the Winter Solſtice, when the Sun entreth into Capricorn, they have night for three whole months together: during which time, lurking in their Caves, they have leiſure to conſult with the Prince of Darkneſs; being very great Sorcerers, able (as ſome affirm) to raiſe Winds, Clouds, Tempeſts, and do many ſtrange things. Towns here are none. Some Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea-Coaſts, patched up by the Sailers, for their reception and refreſhment as they came on Land, and named according to their fancies; but not here conſiderable.

8. *PETZORA.* 9. *CONDORA.* 10. *OBDORA.* 11. *JUGRIA.*

Oppoſite to *Biarmia*, or *Eaſt-Lapland*, on the other ſide of the Bay leading towards the Port of S. *Nicolas*, lieth a large Promontory, or Head-land, ſtretching out far into the North, beyond the Artick; comprehending in it four Provinces of the *Ruſſian* Empire: that is to ſay, *Petzora*, *Jugria*, *Obdora*, and *Condora*; belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Ruſſian* Emperours; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in Power or Patrimony. Howſoever, ſomewhat muſt be ſaid of them, becauſe parts of this great body which we are to diſſect.

8. *PETZORA*, ſo called from a River of that name, is fenced on every ſide by Mountains and unpaſſable Rocks; extending North-wards to the Sea, and croſſed with a vaſt chain of Hills, part of the *Hyperborei*, ſpoken of before: ſo high, that a certain man, having travelled in the aſcent of them 17 days together, is ſaid to have returned back again, deſpairing to attain to the top of them. Covered in the Winter-time with perpetual Snows, in the Summer with as ſcorching heats, by the continual lying of the Sun on all parts thereof. The people are of a plain and ſimple nature, and received the *Ruſſian* Faith and Empire at one time together, *Anno* 1518. The chief Town of it *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea; a ſmall Town, but having three Churches in it: the people whereof, though otherwiſe ſufficiently ſimple, as before is ſaid, do in the Summer-time catch Partridg, Ducks, Swans, Geeſe, and other fowl, which they ſalt and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a Tutor is the Belly, that the Poet did not unfitly give it the titles of *Artis magiſter*, and *Ingenii largitor venter*; whereof this may ſerve for one example.

9. *CONDORA* lieth on the North of *Petzora*, more near the Pole; by conſequence a colder Country, and of worſe condition: in one half of the Country being continual day, and the other half as long a night. The people univerſally Idolaters, worſhipping ſome Images (or Idols) in the ſhape of a Man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, *&c.* which they adorn with the richeſt Furs they can get. and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Ruſſes*; who, if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt thoſe parts for Sables, Foxes, and Bevers, take away their Furs, and beſtow a greater heat upon them in fires. The chief Town hereof is *Puſtozrea*, over againſt *Nova Zemla*, on or near the great Lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; ſituate in the 68 Degree of Northern Latitude, fifty minutes over.

10. *OBDORA*, ſo called from the River *Ob*, on both ſides of whoſe Banks it lieth, is the moſt North-Eaſtern Province of all theſe Dominions; won to the obedience of the *Ruſſes* in the Reign of *Theodore*, the Son of *John*, Great Duke of *Muſcovy*. At what time the people had no Cities, lived in Hoords or Companies, eat the Beaſts they took, knew no Corn nor Bread. They were then very good Archers, ſharpening their Arrows with fiſh-bones; with which bones and the ſinews of the Beaſts they ſewed Furs together for their Clothing, which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the Summer, covering their Houſes with Elk-skins. By this *Theodore* were ſome Caſtles built on the River-ſide, to which he ſent condemned perſons, and brought it into the form of a petit Kingdom. But his Succeſſor *Boris* built *Tooma*, the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both ſides of the water, not worth naming here. But notwithſtanding this ſubjection to the *Muſcovite*, they continue ſtill in their Idolatry, worſhipping an antient Idol, in form of an old woman, holding in each Arm a Child, and a third at her feet, called by them *Zlatu Bahu*, or the *Golden old Wife*; to which they offer pretious Furs, ſacrifice Harts, and therewith do conſult touching things to come. But ſome account this for a Fable, or a meer miſtake.

11. *JUGRIA*, or *JUHAR*, lieth alſo on the Northern Seas, but more South than either of the other; betwixt *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Dwina*: the longeſt day in Summer being

not

Severia, &c.

not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The people for the moſt part Idolaters, and worſhip the ſame Images as do thoſe of *Obdora*: affirmed by ſome to be the Progenitors of the preſent *Hungarians*; who coming out of this Countrey over-ran all *Pannonia*, and there fixed their dwellings. For proof of which, it is affirmed, that they ſpeak the old *Hungarian* language, not uſed but in this Countrey, and the North parts of *Hungarie*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*: Which more learned men affirm to be the *Jazygian*, the language of the *Jazyges*, who antiently poſſeſſed that Countrey in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this diſpute to another place, certain it is, that they are ſubject to the *Moſcovite*, but ſo poor and miſerable a people, that they have few towns, and not many houſes; and ſo bare of money, that in ſtead thereof they pay *Furs* for tribute to their Emperour.

12. SEVERIA. 13. PERMIA. 14. RHEZAN.

12. *SEVERIA*, or *SIBIOR*, as the *Moſcovites* called it, lieth in a long tract on the banks of the River *Ob*, or *Oby*, ſouth of *Obdoza*, and the reſt of the four laſt Provinces. The Countrey very fruitfull, and abounding with all things neceſſary, notwithſtanding that there be great Deſarts, and ſome Foreſts alſo: but thoſe Foreſts well ſtored with *black Foxes*, *Ermines*, *Sables*, and the like wild beaſts; which yield more profit by their *rich Furs*, than any more fertile Countrey doth by its Corn and Fruits. Inſomuch that in the year 1589. there were collected out of this Province only, in the way of of tribute for the Emperour, 466 Timber of *Sables*, (every Timber containing 40 skins) 5 Timber of *Marterns*, 180 Caſes of *black Foxes*, (every Caſe containing 40 skins) beſides other Commodities. The Woods alſo do afford good plenty of *Honey*, and the Plains of *Herbage*; well watered with the River *Sem*, which falleth into the *Deſna*, and both together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Boryſthenes*. There are in it many Towns and Caſtles, the principal whereof are 1. *Sibier*, on the Weſt ſide of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province; 2. *Branki*, not far from the great Foreſt from hence named; 3. *Starodus*; 4. *Potuvolo*; and 5. *Czeznigo*.

The people hereof, by reaſon of their continual skirmiſhes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the moſt warlike Nation of all the *Ruſſes*: heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the firſt acknowledged no Superiour, but afterwards was ſeverally and ſucceſſively *Tributary* to the *Lituanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Moſcovite*; and finally the laſt Duke being falſly accuſed of treaſon, was outed of his eſtate by *Baſilius* the Great Duke; who added it to the reſt of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever ſince.

13. *PERMIA*, is ſituate on the South-weſt of *Sibior*, or *Severia*, a large Province, diſtant 250 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*: ſo called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chief Town hereof, ſituate on the River *Viſohore*, or *Viſtorna*. The ſecond Town of note is called *Siewyarskey*. The people (as alſo thoſe of *Sibior*) are of the *Moſcovite* Religion, and live moſt by hunting wild Beaſts, whoſe *fleſh* they eat, and make good merchandiſe of their skins, many of which they pay yearly to the Great Duke in way of tribute: who makes a good commodity of them, ſelling them to the Merchant at exceſſive rates. They have no corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elſewhere; but in ſtead of bread, eat the fleſh of Stags, dried and prepared in the Sun: ſpeaking a language of their own, different from the reſt of the *Ruſſes*; and in ſtead of Horſes and Oxen, make uſe of great Dogs and Stags, whom they train up to draw their ſleds from one place to another. There is good ſtore of woods amongſt them; but they want Cedars, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vaſiliwich*, meaning to pick a quarrel with them, ſent to them for certain loads of Cedar wood, whereof he knew there grew none in their Countrey; and upon word returned that they had no ſuch wood, he fined them at 12060 *Rubbles*.

14. *RHEZAN*, a great and goodly Province, is ſituate betwixt the River *Tanais*, and that of *Ock*: the moſt fruitfull Countrey of all *Ruſsia*, and (if report be true) o[illegible]e whole world alſo; it being credibly affirmed that one grain of corn doth bring forth ſix ears; the ſtalks hereof growing ſo thick, that an horſe can hardly paſs through them, or a Quail flee out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is alſo great plenty of fruits, better than are to be found elſewhere in *Ruſsia*; together with good ſtore of honey, fiſh, fowl, and other commodities; beſides *Ermins*, *Bevers*, and the like, common in theſe Countries. The chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Tulla*, famous for the fountain or ſpring-head of the river *Tanais*, which ariſeth near it. 2. *Colluga*, well garriſoned for fear of the *Crim Tartar*. 3. *Corſira*, a Biſhops See: as is alſo, 4. *Rhezan*, the principal of the Province, which it giveth name to, ſeated upon the banks of the river *Ocque*. A Countrey populous and well-planted, affording to the Great Duke 15000 *Boyares*, or Gentlemen which ſerve on horſe-back, and betwixt 30 and 40000 foot.

15. WIATHKA, 16. CASAN, 17. ASTRACAN.

15. South-eaſt of *Rhezan*, beyond the banks of the river *Kamme*, and about 150 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*, lyeth the Province called *WIATHKA*; fennie and barren, but well ſtored with fiſh and honey, and wild beaſts good plenty. Heretofore ſubject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat to all fugitive ſervants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expulſed, it was made ſubject by *Baſilius* to the Dukes of *Moſcovie*. I do not read of any Towns which ſhould be here, which makes me think that they do ſtill retain ſo much of the *Tartar* with them, as to live in *Hoords*, and *Companies*, without any fixt dwellings: or at the beſt, in ſcattered houſes, not hitherto united into

Novogordia Inferior.

Towns and Villages: except it be the Town of *Wiathka* it ſelf, built ſince the ſubjection of it to the *Moſcovite*; and made a Garriſon to defend theſe out-parts of this Empire, againſt the incurſions of the *Tartars*.

16. *CASAN*, a Kingdom formerly of *Tartaria Deſerta*, lyeth on the South Eaſt of *Wiathka*, the moſt civil People of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that civility to their converſation with the *Moſcovites* (though none of the civileſt themſelves) tilling their Lands, and building Houſes where they may with ſafety. For although the ſoil hereof be tolerably fruitful, and fit for habitation, yet the Countrey for the moſt part, is deſolate and ill inhabited; partly by reaſon of ſome vaſt Deſarts, lying betwixt the Cities of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*; but principally in regard of the *Orim Tartar*, who will not ſuffer the *Muſcovite* to plant it with Colonies of his own People, nor the Natives to live there in quiet, except onely in the Weſtern part, where protected by Garriſons. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Caſan* upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the Kingdom; ſince the ſubjection of this people to the great Duke, and their converſion to the Faith, made a Biſhops See. 2. *Surick* upon the River *Sure*, in the middle of the vaſt Deſarts betwixt *Caſan* and *Aſtrachan*; built by *Baſilius* the Great Duke; for a ſtage or reſting place for Merchants and Travellers, that there they might repoſe themſelves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people hereof had once a King of their own, as before was ſaid; the laſt of which named *Chelealceſk*, ſubmitted himſelf unto *Baſilius* the Great Duke, and became tributary: but afterwards revolting, he was vanquiſhed by *John Vaſiliwich*, *Anno* 1553. and this Kingdom united to the Empire of *Ruſsia*; the Emperors ſince that time writing themſelves *Czay Kaſanski*, or King of *Caſan*. And poſſible enough it is, that *Baſilius*, who firſt made it tributary, might from hence take the name of *Baſilius Caſan*, according to the cuſtom of the antient *Romans*.

Under the Government hereof are the *Czeremiſsi*, a people that live in great Foreſts without any houſes, living for the moſt part of Honey, and the fleſh of wild Beaſts, with the skins of which they are apparelled. Their Language different from the reſt, ſwift of foot, and very good *Archers*, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and practiſing their children ſo timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after ſuch an age) untill they can hit a white which is ſet before them.

17. *ASTRACHAN* lyeth alſo South-eaſt of *Caſan*, more near unto the *Caſpian* Seas; parted from *Caſan* by thoſe Deſarts ſpoken of before, but ſituate on the ſame branch of the River *Volga*: which having run a courſe of 2000 *Italian* miles, diſchargeth it ſelf into this Sea with no leſs than 70 mouths or chanels. It took this name from *Aſtrachan*, the chief Town hereof, ſituate about 20 *Italian* miles from the fall of one of thoſe 70 mouths or chanels, into the *Caſpian*: by the commodiouſneſs whereof, it is one of the beſt towns of Trade in all theſe dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming hither, and bartering their Silks, and Manufactures, for the Furs and other natural Commodities of the *Ruſſes*, or *Moſcovites*. A Kingdom formerly, but a Kingdom of leſs eſteem than that of *Caſan*; conquered (together with it) by *Baſilius* the Great Duke, *Anno* 1494. and by him made Chriſtian. But afterwards revolting, they were more abſolutely ſubdued by *John Vaſiliwich*, who brought into the field againſt them no fewer than 120000 Horſe, and 20000 foot, (enough to over-run a farr greater Countrey) and yet had hardly got the better, but for the terrour of his great Ordnance, which the others wanted. Upon that Victory it was made a Member of the Empire of *Ruſsia*; the Emperour whereof hath ſince ſtiled himſelf, the King of *Aſtrachan*.

18. *NOVOGORDIA* Inferior,

19. The *MORDWITS*.

But it is now time we re[illegible] towards *Europe*, out of which we have wandred up and down in the ſkirts of *Aſia*, in tracing out [illegible]e ſeveral Provinces of this Empire; ſince our firſt croſſing over the Bay of *Grandic*, or S. *Nicolas*, into the Countrey of *Petzora*. But in our way we muſt firſt take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogrod* the Lower; ſo called, to difference it from *Novogrod* (ſurnamed the Great) ſpoken of before: ſituate almoſt in the midſt betwixt *Caſan* and *Moſco*, diſtant from the laſt 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the borders of the other; every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Countrey generally very rich, both for tillage and paſturage; inferiour unto none in all this eſtate, but *Rhezan* and *Wolodomir* only. So called from *Novogrod*, the chief Town, ſituate at the confluence of the *Ock* and *Volga*; beſides which, it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which ſtoreth it plentifully with fiſh. A City of great eſteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of houſes, in which not eaſily equalled by any other; partly for an impregnable Caſtle, cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges, in the time of *Baſilius* the Great Duke; but principally for a ſtately and magnificent Temple, built above 600 years ago, in imitation, or emulation (as ſome ſay) of the famous Church of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople*. To this Town the ſtory of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* ſlaves, ought, in my mind, to be aſcribed; though commonly reported of the other *Novogrod* in the Weſt parts of this Empire. My reaſon is, becauſe it is not likely that the *Sarmatians*, dwelling on the borders of the *Baltick* Sea, ſhould croſs all this Countrey, to joyn with the *Aſiatick Scythians* ſo remote from them, in a needleſs warr: which thoſe of this tract might well do, as near neighbours to them, if not of the ſame Nation or extraction with them.

Subject to the Eſtate hereof are the *Mordwit Tartars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga*, and the *Don* or *Tanais*, where it beginneth to return Weſtwards towards the *Euxine*. A people much of the ſame nature with the *Czeremiſſeis*, but that they have ſome Villages, & ſcattered houſes, which the other either want, or elſe care not for. *Idolaters* for the moſt part (and the reſt *Mahometans*) carrying their *Idols*, in their *Carts*, whereſoever they go: *Worſhipping* that Beaſt all day, which they firſt ſee in the morning; and ſwearing by it for that day, as their chiefeſt *Deity*.

20 WOROTINE, 21 TVVER, 22 WOLODOMIR.

And now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almoſt as many Titles, as Towns with Territories: four of them (beſides ſome before) either ſituate in the Province of *Moſcovie*, or elſe ſo intermingled with the Towns thereof, that they may eaſily be taken (or miſtaken) for members of it. The principal are,

20 *WOROTINE*, ſeated on the Weſt ſide of the River *Ocque*, a diſtinct Dukedom of it ſelf; ſo called from *Worotin*, the chief City of it, built upon that River, about three *Dutch* miles from *Collnga* in the Province of *Khezan*, lying on the further bank thereof; beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a pleaſant ſoil. The 2 *Miſceneck*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the head of the River *Ocque*, which ariſeth in the fields adjoining.

21 *TVVER*, or *OTVVER*, as ſome call it, is a large and goodly Countrey, lying along the banks of the River *Volga*: ſo populous, that it is ſaid to contein 40000 *Boiares*, or Gentlemen fit to ſerve on Horſe-back; and double that number of the common or inferiour ſort. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Ruſſian* Emperor, and is ſo called from *Twerde* the chief Town thereof, and a Biſhops See, affirmed to be a fairer and more ſtately City than *Moſco* it ſelf, from which diſtant thirty ſix *Dutch* miles.

22 *WOLODOMIR* is one of the moſt fruitful Countreys in all *Ruſſia*, not parallel'd by many Countreys in the World; the ſoil here (if all be true, which is ſaid of it) yielding ſuch an increaſe, that many times the Husbandman hath twenty, and ſometimes twenty five for one. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Ruſſian* Emperor, and hath precedency before *Moſcovie* in the ſtyle Imperial. So called from *Wolodomir*, the chief City of it, and a Biſhops See, and that ſo named from the Founder, who probably was the ſame *Valadomir* (one of the firſt Kings of the *Ruſſes*) who married *Helena* the Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. The City ſituate 36 *Polonian* miles on the Eaſt of *Moſco*, antiently the chief ſeat and reſidence of the Great Duke; and ſo continued till the time of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, who firſt tranſlated it to *Moſco*, that from thence he might more eaſily confront and oppoſe the *Tartars*, with whoſe irruptions and invaſions, both he and his predeceſſors had long been troubled. Under the government hereof, is the City of *Suſdali*, of great eſteem, and very well peopled as long as the Royal ſeat remained at *Wolodomir*, betwixt which and *Roſtow* it is ſeated. After it fell into decay, and being once deſtroyed by the *Tartars*, could never ſince recover its antient luſtre; having now little to uphold its reputation, but a Biſhops See.

23 DWINA.

23 *DWINA*, ſo called from the chief Town, ſituate on the confluence of two Rivers, *Juch* and *Sachano*, whence it hath the name: *Dwine* in the Language of that Countrey ſignifying two (as *twain* doth with us amongſt Countrey people) A Countrey of great extent, but exceeding barren, which makes the Villages hereof to ſtand very thin; the Towns (conſidering the great compaſs of it) to be very few; and the Inhabitants, for the moſt part, to live upon dried Fiſh, and the Fleſh of wild Beaſts, which they have no want of. The chief commoditie is in Salt, with which they uſe to furniſh the neighbouring Provinces, and provide ſuch neceſſaries for themſelves as they ſtand in need of. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Dwine*, ſpoken of before, ſituate in the midſt of the Province, on the meeting of the ſaid two Rivers, which here united into one ſtream, take the name of *Dwine*, or *Dwina*, the greater; known by that name untill its fall into the Northern Ocean, in the Bay of *Granduic*. 2. *Sagan*, ſo called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwine*) upon which it is ſeated. 3. *Colmagro*. 4. *Pinnegue*, two ſtrong Caſtles.

Unto this Province (becauſe I know not elſe how to diſpoſe of them) I muſt reduce theſe four Towns following; that is to ſay, 1. *Vſting*, a Biſhops See, ſituate on the Weſtern ſide of the River, over againſt the Town of *Dwine*, and in a Countrey ſo ill furniſhed with neceſſaries, that the people eat dried Fiſh in ſtead of Bread, but have Salt enough to ſeaſon it from thoſe of *Dwine*. 2. *Gargapol*, a Biſhops See alſo, on the ſame ſide of the River that *Dwina* is of. 3. S. *Nicolas*, a well known Port, and a Biſhops See, ſituate at the influx of *Dwina*, into the Gulph of *Granvicus*, or the Bay of S. *Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much traded, ſince the diſcovery of the North-eaſt paſſage by the *Engliſh*, and the removal of theirs and the *Dutch* traffique from *Novogrod* hither: from hence diſperſed with more eaſe and ſpeed into all the parts of this vaſt Empire. 4. S. *Michael* on the Sea ſide, commonly called *Archangel*, a Town of great Trade, by the *Engliſh* eſpecially; who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great inriching of the place; by reaſon whereof the *Engliſh* Merchants have not only great privileges and immunities (as the Authors of ſo great a benefit unto this Eſtate) not granted to others; but the whole Nation have found better, and more noble entertainment from them, than any others have received. The cauſe of which, was primarily the great opinion which their Emperors had of Queen *Elizabeth*, who held very good correſpondence with them, continued ever ſince by mutual *Ambaſſies* on both ſides; and ſecondly, the conformable behaviour of the *Engliſh* themſelves, ſo acceptable to thoſe *Barbarians* (both Prince and people) that when *John Vaſiliwich* nailed the Hat of another

ther forein *Embaſſador* to his head for his too much perverſneſs, he uſed our Sir *Thomas Smith* with all kindneſs imaginable. Another time, when the *Jeſuite Poſſevine* began to perſuade with him, to approve the Religion of the Church of *Rome:* upon the information of the *Engliſh Embaſſador*, that the Pope was a proud *Prelate*, and would make Princes kiſs his feet; he grew into ſuch a rage, that the *Jeſuite* was afraid that he would have beat out his brains. But to return again to the Port of S. *Nicolas*, it is ſo called from an Abbie there built unto that Saint, the *tutelary* Saint, and *local* Patron of the Nation. Which ſaid, I will ſet ſail from this Port to the *Ruſſian* Iſlands, and ſee what may be ſaid of them to our preſent Purpoſe.

The *RVSSIAN* Iſlands.

The ***RVSSIAN*** Iſlands are but two; both of them in the Northern or *Frozen* Ocean, on the Coaſts of this Countrey; that is to ſay; 1. Sir *Hugh Willoughbies* Iſland, and *Nova Zemla*; both ſubject (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muſcovie.*

1. ***WILLOVGHBIE'S*** Iſland was ſo called from Sir *Hugh Willoughbie*, becauſe he firſt diſcovered it, *Anno* 1553. and was hereabouts found frozen to death the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the 6, to find out a new Way to *Muſcovie, Cathaie*, and *China*, he proceeded ſo farr as to this Iſland (ſituate almoſt oppoſite to the Bay of S. *Nicolas*) where the weather proved ſo extreme, and the Froſts ſo vehement, that his Ship was ſet faſt in the Ice, and all his people, with himſelf, frozen to death; in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact deſcription of their voyage, and fortunes. Notwithſtanding which diſaſtrous beginning the enterpriſe was perſued by ſome noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinſon, Burroughs, Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *Engliſh* Nation, who opened the Way as farr as to the River *Ob* (the Eaſt boundary of *Ruſsia)* but by reaſon of the length of the Way, the vaſt floting Iſlands of Ice, and perpetual night, for many moneths together in Winter, could advance no further.

2. ***NOVA ZEMLA***, ſituate on the Eaſt of *Willoughbie* Iſland, oppoſite to *Puſtozera* in *Condora* before mentioned, was firſt diſcovered by ſuch Adventurers, as followed *Willoughby*'s deſign. Famous for nothing but a Race of ſhort-ſtatured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of Pygmies: not yet ſo farr diſcovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Ruſſes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither *Religion*, nor *civility*, nor the preſcripts of any *Law*; but that they worſhipped the *Sun, Moon*, and Northern *Starr*, to which they offer a yearly Sacrifice of their *Deer*; and that the Iſland is Woody, Deſart, and not eaſie for travel; having in it neither green bough nor graſs; yet harbouring great ſtore of Bears, and ſuch ravenous and dangerous Beaſts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrentſon*, and his Aſſociates, employed by the *Hollanders* for their diſcovery, *Anno* 1594. and 1596. in which laſt year, after many dreadful combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to Winter in this Iſland, where they built an houſe, as well to preſerve themſelves from being buried in Snow, as from being devoured by the Bears (ſome of them 13 foot in length) which with the loſs of two of their company, devoured by thoſe ſavage creatures, they at laſt effected; ſome of them coming home in ſafety the *October* following. And though they ſeemed to give ſome hope, that a Way might be found unto *Cathaie* on the North of this Iſland (themſelves having gone as farr North as 81 degrees of Latitude, within 9 of the Pole) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the ſucceſs impoſſible.

And ſo I leave it, to return to the Story of *Ruſsia*, called antiently by the name of *Sarmatia Europæa*, but known no further Northward than the head of *Tanais*. And for *Sarmatia Europæa*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolemy* by the *Baltick* Sea, and ſome *Terra Incognita*, on the North; the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ* (now *Tranſylvania*, and the *Upper Hungary*) upon the South; the River *Viſtula*, or *Wexel*, (which divided it from *Germany*) upon the Weſt; and the *Tanais* upon the Eaſt. Beyond that, all along the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, to the *Mare Caſpium*, and as farr North as any Conqueror had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Aſiatica:* the Countreys further Eaſtward being then called *Scythia.* By which accompt, as *Ruſsia* conteineth not all *Sarmatia Europæa*, of which *Pruſsia*, and the reſt of the incorporate Provinces of *Poland*, paſſed for a part: ſo neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanais* into *Aſiatica.* The antient Inhabitants called by a general name *Sarmatæ*, by the *Greeks Sauromatæ*, were ſubdivided (for ſo much of this part of it as was then made known) into the *Agathyrſi, Rutheni, Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Oſyli, Alauni, Roxolani*, &c dwelling in the South. Amongſt many other barbarous Nations, theſe were ſome of the principal. And from theſe *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the reſt, *Matthias â Michou*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the original of the *Roſſes* (which we now call the *Ruſsians*) ſeconded herein by the more learned *Bochartus*, who proveth out of anient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Cherſoneſus* (from which the paſſage into this Countrey is both ſhort and eaſie) have been formerly called *Rhos*, Ταύρȣς τινὰ Ρῶς καλεῖσθ, *Tauros vocari gentes Rhos*, as he ſaith from *Pſetzes.* Which *Rhos*, or *Rhoſsi*, firſt mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* people, might get the name of *Roxolani*; and afterwards poſſeſſing the more Northern Countreys, or mingling with the *Rhoſsi* of Mount *Taurus* (from whom thoſe of *Taurica* deſcended) in their enterprizes on *Conſtantinople*, and the parts adjoining; return to their old name of *Rhoſsi.* The *Rhoſsi*, or *Ruſsians*, were then the firſt Lords of this Countrey generally, the *Maſcovites* poſſeſſors of a Province only: ſo called from the *Moſchi*, ſpoken of by *Lucan* in his *Pharſalia*; and placed by *Plinie* near the head of the River *Phaſis*, which riſing from the *Armenian* Mountains, falls into the *Euxine*, derived no doubt from *Meſech* (or *Moſoch*, as the Antients called him) the Son of *Japhet*, planted origi-

rally

nally in the North and North-Eaſt of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Cholcis* and *Armenia*; where *Pliny*, as before is ſaid, hath fixed the *Moſchi*, and where there is a long chain of hills, which moſt of the old writers call *Montes Moſchici*. But to return unto the *Roſci*, we hear not of them by this name, till the time of *Michael* the third, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*; in whoſe reign they infeſted the *Euxine* Sea, and had the boldneſs to attempt the Imperial City. *Anno* 864. ſaid by *Cedrenus*, and ſome others of the Eaſtern Writers, to be a people of Mount *Taurus* (next neighbour to *Meſech*, or the *Moſchi*). Failing in their attempt upon *Conſtantinople*, and not willing to go home again, they ſpread themſelves with their confederates and aſſociates in this expedition, upon the North-weſt banks of the *Euxine* Seas: enlarging their bounds North-wards with leſs oppoſition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Conſtantinople* being once again in vain attempted, in the reigns of *Conſtantine* the 7. and *Henricus Auceps*. Converted to the *Chriſtian Faith*, or growing into better terms with the Eaſtern Emperours, *Helena* daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Daladomirus* one of their Kings, from that time forwards turning their forces on the *Polanders*, and their weaker neighbours; ſave that, provoked by the death of one of their Country, ſlain accidentally at *Conſtantinople* in a private quarrel, they made another fruitleſs journey againſt that City, in the time of *Michael Calaphates*. Enlarging their eſtate to the Weſt and South, they became Maſters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europæa*, *Lituania*, *Podolia*, *Nigra Ruſſia*, and other Provinces, now ſubject to the Crown of *Poland*, being then parts of their Eſtate. *Anno* 1240. the *Tartars*, under the conduct of *Bathu*, or *Baydo*, ſon of *Occata Chan*, broke in upon them, and ſubdued them: the Country before this entire, under one ſole King, being broken afterwards into divers petit and inferiour Governments, according to the will and pleaſure of the inſolent *Victors*. The principal of theſe (deſcended from the former Kings) were the Lords of *Volodomir*, *Moſchi*, and ſome other Cities, held by them with no other title than that of Lords of *Moſcovy*, and for that Tributary to the *Tartars*, as were all the reſt. Their ſeat originally at *Walodomir*, till the time of *John* the ſon of *Daniel*, the fifth Lord of the *Ruſſes*, deſcended of the old Regal line, taking a good liking to the River and Town of *Moſco*, repaired the Town, being before but mean and ordinary, and made it the chief ſeat of his Principality. From whence the reſidue of the *Ruſſes*, united in ſucceeding times unto this Eſtate, by marriages, fraud, and Conqueſt, had the name of *Muſcovites*. But notwithſtanding this increaſe of their Power and Empire, the *Tartars* held them for their Vaſſals, and tyrannized upon the Country with a barbarous inſolency. Under which thraldom they long groaned, till the *Tartarians* being divided amongſt themſelves, and grown leſs terrible to their neighbours, were outed of their power and command here, by the Valour of *John* ſon of *Baſilius* the ſecond, who thereupon changed the Title of Lord, into that of Duke, and after into that of Great Duke, as his fortunes thrived; Yet not ſo great, but that he was contented to be an *Homager* of the *Tartars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their wars, that the *Tartars* ſhould relinquiſh all their holds in the Countrey; and on the other ſide, that once every year, within the Caſtle of *Moſco*, the great *Duke*, ſtanding on foot, ſhould feed the Horſe of the *Crim Tartar* with Oats, out of his own Cap. This *Homage* was by *Baſilius* changed to a Tribute of Furres; which being alſo denyed by his ſucceſſors (as they grew in power) occaſioned the long warres betwixt the Nations: the *Tartars* alwayes preſſing on them by ſudden inroads, ſometimes by Armies of no leſs than 200000 fighting men. But notwithſtanding all their power, and the friendſhip of the *Turk* to boot; the *Moſcovite* is not onely able to aſſert his *Soveraignty*, but hath alſo wreſted from them many goodly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country, I ſhall not trouble my ſelf (as I ſee ſome do) in tracing a Succeſſion of them, as far as from the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*: when neither the *Ruſſi*, nor the *Moſchi* had here any footing. We will therefore go no higher than the time of *George*, whoſe daughter *Anne* I find to have been married to *Henry* the firſt of *France*. From whom in a direct line deſcended another *George*, with whom we do intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the laſt King of the *Ruſſes*, before the coming of the *Tartars*. Who wiſely yielding to the ſtorm, waved the title of King, contented onely with the title of Lord, as more ſafe for him, and leſs invidious to the *Tartars*: the fifth from whom, called *John* (as before is ſaid) having removed his ſeat to *Moſco*, took to himſelf the title of Lord of *Moſco*, the chief ſeat of that power and *Soveraignty*, which he tranſmitted afterwards to his poſterity: affecting for that cauſe the title of *Dukes* of *Muſcovy* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories, have their place alſo in his ſtyle) as much as that of Emperour of *Ruſſia*; which ſome of them have aſſumed alſo, ſince the time of *Baſilius*, who ſtyled himſelf *Baſilius*, by the Grace of God, Emperour and Lord of *Ruſſia*, Great *Duke* of *Dolodomir*, *Moſcovie*, *Novogrod* the great, *Pleſcow*, *Smolensko*, *Tuver*, *Jugar*, *Wiathka*, *Bulgar*, &c. Lord and great Prince of the Lower *Novogrod*, *Czernigow*, *Rhezan*, *Wologda*, *Rſow*, *Biele*, *Roſtow*, *Taroſlane*, *Poloſkie*, *Bielloziere*, *Udore*, *Obdora*, *Coudora*, &c. King of *Caſan* and *Aſtrachan*. But leaving them unto their ſwelling and voluminous Title (little inferiour unto that of the King of *Spain*) let us next look on the ſucceſſion from the time aforeſaid, of

The LORDS of *MOSCOVIE* of the old Royal *RUSSIAN* Line.

A. Ch.

1 *George* the laſt King of the *Ruſſes*, and firſt Lord of the *Ruſſes* of the Royal Line.
2 *Jaceſlaus.*
3 *Alexander.*
4 *Daniel.*
5 *John*, who transferred the ſeat to *Moſco.*
6 *John* II.
7 *Baſilius*:
8 *Demetrius*,
9 *Georgius* II.
10 *Baſilius* II.

The Great DUKES of *MOSCOVIE.*

1 *John*, the firſt great Duke, who ſtrook off the *Tartarian* bondage.

2 *Baſilius Caſan*, won the Provinces of *Severia*, *Roſcovia*, and *Smolensko*.

3 *John Baſilius*, conquered *Livonia*, and *Lituania*, both which his ſucceſſor

1548 4 *Johannes Baſiliades*, or *Waſiliwich*, loſt in his age: though in his youth he had ſubdued the *Noyhacenſian Tartars* to his Empire; and vanquiſhed *Selim*, Emperour of the *Turks*, *An.* 1659. With this King the *Engliſh* firſt began to confederate.

1583 5 *Theodorus Johannides*, the laſt of the old Royal Line of *Moſcovie.*

1596 6 *Boris Theodorus*, brother to the wife of the laſt *Great Duke*, partly by the laſt will of his Predeceſſor, partly by practiſing with the people, obteined the Empire; but being an unmerciful Tyrant, was diſpoſſeſſed by the *Polanders*, coming in favour of one

1605 7 *Demetrius*, pretending himſelf to be the ſon of *John Vaſiliwich*, (and generally believed to be ſo) preſerved in a Monaſtery from the Tyranny of *Boris*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*; by whoſe aid he overcome the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperour in the City of *Moſco*. But the *Ruſſian* Lords diſdaining to have a Prince impoſed on them from *Poland*, roſe in Arms againſt him, and at laſt vanquiſhed, and ſlew him in open field: his wife a Noble *Polonian* Lady, ſent poorly home; and the *Polanders* beaten out of the Countrey.

1606 8 *Baſil Juanniwich*, ſurnamed *Sniskius*, the chief of the Conſpirators, by the reſt of his faction choſen *Cnez*, or Emperour; and held the State with great trouble, till the year 1610. when,

1610 9 *Demetrius* II. another pretender to the State, as the ſon of *John Vaſiliwich* alſo, in oppoſition unto *Sniskius*, ſet up by a ſtronger faction, gave occaſion to the *Polander* to work upon this diſtemper; by whom *Sniskius* was taken priſoner, *Demetrius* ſlain, *Smolensko*, and other great Towns ſubdued; and *Vladiſlaus*, Prince of *Poland*, recommended to the *Ruſſians* to be choſen Emperour. But the *Ruſſes* loth to fall under the power of the *Polander*, and weary of their own confuſions, made choice at laſt, of

1615 10 *Michael Fredrovitz*, ſon of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Moſco*, who at laſt ſetled this vaſt Empire, and managed it in a more conſtant way of peace with the *Turk*, *Tartar*, *Polonian*, and *Swethlander*, than any of his Predeceſſors had done before him.

1646 11 *Alexius Michiolywitz* (or the ſon of *Michael*) ſucceeded his Father in the Empire, troubled at firſt with ſome diſtempers in the State (as in all other Countreys about that time) but now quietly ſetled, *Anno* 1648.

The Formalities with which theſe great Emperours are inveſted, or ſetled in the Throne, are not many nor ſtately; ſuch as they be, I here afford you out of the hiſtory of the life of *Johannes Baſiliades*, written in Latine by *Paulus Oderbornius*. On the ſecond of *June*, *An.* 1583. *Theodorus Johannides* went towards to the Temple of St. *Michael*, being the principal Church in all *Moſco*, the ſtreets all covered with flowers, the doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the air ecchoing with the noiſe of *Flutes* and *Trumpets*, and the people ſo crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked ſwords forced a paſſage through them, it had been impoſſible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church door, the Lords of the Countrey (*Cneſes* they there call them) went out to meet him: and the Archbiſhop of *Moſco*, clad in his *pontificalibus*, when he was come into the Church, imbraced him. The pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapeſtry, and the ſtalls adorned with coſtly hangings. The *Great Duke* ſate down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of ſilk, buttoned down with golden buttons: on his head he wore a purple cap, ſpangled with rich jewels, and on his fingers abundance of rings. Being thus ſeated, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God, to bleſs him, his people, and his government; which was ſeconded by the joyful ſhouts and acclamations of his Subjects: amongſt whom no ſmall ſtore of ſilver mony was flung by the Treaſurer, and ſo they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperour being abſolute Lord of the *Lives*, *Lands*, and *Goods* of all his Subjects: all of them, the noble as well as the baſe, ſubſcribing themſelves in their *Petitions* to him, by the name of *Keloptery*, that is, *Sclaves.* Whereupon *Mahomet*, a *Turkiſh Baſhaw* was uſed to ſay, that his Maſter and the *Muſcovite* were the two moſt abſolute Princes in all the world. Firſt, for their *Goods*, when any Embaſſadour returns home, the *Great Duke* takes from him all the preſents which he hath received, giving him perhaps ſome ſmall reward, perhaps none at all: and as for *lands*, they paſs not from father to ſon, but as he confirms it. But more particularly (beſides the caſe of *Permia* ſpoken of before) *John Vaſiliwich* ſent a command to *Moſco*, to provide a Coal-pack of *live Fleas* for a medicine; and when the Citizens returned anſwer that it was impoſſible, he fined them at 700 Rubbles for their diſobedience: Another time he laid a mulct of 300000 Rubbles upon his Nobility, becauſe he had no good ſport in his hunting, which they again extorted from the common people: and under colour of want, commanded from ſome Biſhops and Monaſteries, the ſum of 100000 Rubbles, from ſome 50000, more or leſs from others, according unto their Revenues. And it is uſual with the beſt of them, to cauſe the *Boiares* (or Gentlemen which ſerve on horſe-back) to pretend themſelves robbed, that he may ſend unto the City to find out the Felon; and on a *non eſt inventus*, fine them at diſcretion, ſometimes 8000, ſometimes 10000, and ſometimes 20000 Rubbles. Then for their *lives*, there is a ſtory, *Vaſiliwich* having found that one of his Secretaries had received a Gooſe ſtuffed full of Silver for a Bribe, cauſed him to be brought into the Market-place of *Moſco*: where, without a *legal trial*, he commanded the Executioner, firſt to cut off his legs about the ſhins, and then his arms about the elbows (ſtill aſking the miſerable man how he liked Gooſe-fleſh) and in the end, to cut off his head; in ſimilitude of a Gooſe ready for the ſpit. And that they may the better preſerve this power, the great Dukes ſeldom ſhew themſelves unto the people, but in apparrel of ineſtimable value, joyning the ornaments of a Biſhop unto the Majeſty of a King, by wearing a Mitre on their heads ſhining with Diamonds and rich Stones: and when they wear it not on their heads, they place it before the *chair of ſtate* (over which are the Image of Chriſt and the bleſſed Virgin) holding in his hand a moſt rich Crozier-ſtaff, and all his fingers full of Rings. And upon ſolemn feaſtivals and entertainments, the Great Chamber is beſet with Cobbords of Plate, of infinite value; and filled with men cloathed with Cloth of Gold to the very foot; all of them ſeeming to be men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other then the graveſt and portlieſt Citizens of *Moſco*, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperours Wardrobe; which, to ſuch as do not underſtand the fraud, look like ſo many Princes, and cauſeth no ſmall wonder at his magnificence. So that the people ſeeing him in ſuch Royal ſtate, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home; reverence him as *ſlaves* not *ſubjects*; and look upon him rather as a God, than a King.

Having ſo abſolute a command of their *lives* and *goods*, it will be eaſily ſuppoſed that he may raiſe what Forces, and amaſs what Treaſures he hath a mind to. Firſt, for his Forces, it is ſaid that he is able to raiſe 300000 Horſe, if occaſion be: and that he may come neer that number it is more then probable, in that *John Vaſiliwich* in his war againſt thoſe of *Aſtrachan* had actually 120000 Horſe; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiares*, bound by their Tenure to ſerve with Horſe whenſoever he pleaſeth. And that there are 110 men choſen by the Emperor, and by him enfeoffed with lands, (during pleaſure only) who for theſe lands are to find 65000 horſe, with all things neceſſary for the wars; and thoſe in a continual readineſs, fit for preſent action. Then for ſuch horſe as he himſelf doth keep in continual pay, there is not fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his perſon; all of them well-experienced men, and fit for ſervice: which added to the 65000 ſpoken of before, makes up a ſtanding body of 90000. Had he Foot anſwerable unto this proportion of Horſe, there were no dealing with him; but therein his Militia is defective: *Vaſiliwich* to his great Army of 120000 Horſe, having but 20000 Foot; the Foot-men which he hath in continual pay amounting to 1200 only, far ſhort of ſuch a ſtanding body of Horſe, as before we ſpake of. And this defect hath been the reaſon why the *Polanders* with far leſs Armies have prevailed againſt them: the Great *Duke* not being able with all his power, to hinder King *Stephen* of *Poland* from taking *Villocolne*, or beſieging *Pleſcow*, (though his Army was not above 60000 both in Horſe and Foot) for want of ſtanding bands of Foot to make good their ground. Generally both Horſe and Foot are very obedient to their Captains and ſuperiour Officers; patiently enduring all diſcommodities of cold, rain, and hunger; (in that regard fitter to keep a Fortreſs, than ſerve in field) and ſo regardleſs of their lives in the day of battel, that they will rather loſe them, than either yield themſelves Priſoners or demand Quarter.

For his *Revenues*, they may be what he will himſelf, conſidering (beſides his extraordinary power of oppreſſing his ſubjects before mentioned) the many ordinary waies he hath of amaſſing Treaſure: as, *viz.* the foreſtalling of home-bred commodities, and ingroſſing the forein; ſelling them at what price he liſts, and hindering all men elſe from trade, till his own be ſold; proviſion of rent-corn, and victual, raiſed in ſome years to 200000 Rubbles; rent-wood and Hay to 30000; poll-money to 400000, cuſtoms on Merchandiſe to 800000. By which and other means of collecting moneys, and the *Domain* of his Crown, though he raiſe vaſt ſums; yet it is thought, that his houſhold charges being deducted, there remaineth not towards other expenſes, three millions of *Rubbles*, every *Rubble* being as much as an *Engliſh* Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two leaves, and as many Degrees, *Or*.

There are in *RVSSIA*.
Patriarch 1. Archbiſhops 2.
Biſhops 18.

And ſo much for *RVSSIA*.

OF POLAND.

POLAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Ruſſia*, and the *Crim Tartar*, from whom parted by the River *Boryſthenes*; on the Weſt, with *Germany*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea, and ſome part of *Ruſſia*; on the South, with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*, and *Walachia*.

It is an Aggregate body, conſiſting of many diſtinct Provinces, united into one Eſtate; of which *Poland* being predominant, hath given name to the reſt, called all together the Realm of *POLAND*: and that ſo named from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* language (the common language of the Countrey) ſignifieth *plain*; becauſe but little ſwelled with hills. Of figure round, in compaſs 2600 miles; ſituate under the eighth and twelfth *Climates*: ſo that the longeſt day in the Southern parts is but 16 hours, and about 18 hours in the parts moſt North.

The Countrey *plain*, but full of woods, which ſerve to rectifie the Air, being naturally ſo cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes: in ſtead whereof they uſe that kind of drink called *Ale*, in former times the uſual Beverage of *England*, and this Countrey only. Barley they have, and Pulſe in ſuch abundant meaſure, that no ſmall quantities of each are tranſported yearly: nor yield they any thing at all to *Denmark*, or *Hungary*, for their plenty of Cattel. But of this more in our deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces.

The people are very induſtrious, and ſtudious of all Languages, eſpecially of the Latine; to which they are ſo devoted, that there is ſcarce a mean man, who is not able in ſome meaſure, to expreſs himſelf in it. According to our abilities, rather prodigal than truly liberal; and good ſouldiers generally. The Peaſants live in miſerable ſervitude unto their Lords; the Lords in ſuch equality of eſtate amongſt themſelves, that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 Ducats of yearly rent. Proud in their garb, coſtly in their Apparel, impatient in their humours, and delicate in diet: theſe laſt conditions common to the women alſo, who are for the moſt part indifferently fair, ſo called, is not perhaps communicable to the people of the reſt of the Provinces; whom we ſhall ſpeak of ſeverally in their proper places.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt planted in this Kingdom at ſeveral times, and by ſeveral perſons, according to the different parts of which it conſiſteth: in *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, in the time of their Prince *Miecislaus*, ſon of *Nemomiſlus*, *An.* 963. in *Livonia*, by the preaching of one *Meinardus*, *Anno* 1200. or thereabouts. In *Lituania*, not until the year 1386. at the admiſſion of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as ſome ſay) by *Thomas* of *Walden*, (or *Waldenſis*) an Engliſh Frier; In *Samegitia* and *Volhinia*, at the ſame time with *Lituania*. In the reſt at other times, and on other occaſions; yet ſo that in many places of it, *Idolatry* was never totally rooted out, the ſeeds and practice whereof in many points ſtill remain amongſt them. Corrupted by the ſuperſtitions of the Church of *Rome*, a *Reformation* was endeavoured, at ſuch a time as *John Hus* flouriſhed in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring Kingdom: but by the rigour of *Ladiſlaus* the ſixth, then King thereof, aſſiſted by his Biſhops and Noblemen, at that time hindred. Afterwards, in the time of *Luther*, ſome who had ſtudied at *Lipſique*, and *Wittemberg*, (Univerſities of *Saxony*) brought his opinions home with them into the Province of *Poland*; as ſome Dutch Merchants (with the reſt of their Commodities) did into *Dantzik*, the chief Town of *Pruſſia*, *Anno* 1525. from whence it ſpread it ſelf over moſt part of that Countrey. According as it was favoured or diſliked, by the *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and other great men of the Realm; ſo was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Grecians* in the mean time taking opportunity, to win ſome parts of it to their ſide, and confirm others in it; who being originally members of the Church of *Greece*, becauſe originally converted by the Biſhops thereof, did ſtill continue in conformity and obedience to it. In the end, by reaſon of the over-great liberty of the Nobility and people, and want of power in the King to controll their doings, every man took up what Religion he beſt liked; ſome following the *Auguſtane Confeſſion*, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering as tenaciouſly to the Church of *Rome:* and ſome inclining to new *Sects*, or rather to old *Hereſies* under new diſguiſes, have brought in ſuch a *miſcelanie* or *Babel* of Religions into this eſtate, (*Jeſuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, *Socinians*, *Arrians*, *Anabaptiſts*, and indeed what not, being here all tolerated) that at laſt it grew into a By-word, *that if any man had loſt his* Religion, *he might find it in* Poland, *or elſe believe it to be vaniſhed.* A By-word afterwards applyed unto *Amſterdam*, communicable ſince unto other places. *Libertas Prophetandi*, or the *Liberty of Propheſying* being now as much allowed of in ſome parts of *Chriſtendom*, as *Libertas opinandi*, was in *Rome* under *Nerva's* Government; *ubi & ſentire quæ velis, & quæ ſentias loqui liceat*, when as a man might think as he liſted of the publick, and ſpeak what he thought. But whether this be ſuch a *Rara temporum felicitas*; ſuch a *felicicy* of theſe our times, as *Tacitus* conceived the other to be of thoſe, future times will ſhew.

But to return again to *Poland*, notwithſtanding this mixture of *Religions*, yet that moſt publickly allowed and countenanced, is the *Religion* authoriſed by the Church of *Rome*, aſſerted here by the *zeal* of the Kings, unto that cauſe, and the great power of the *Biſhops*; who ſeeing how thoſe of their Order have ſped in *Germany* and other places, under colour of Reformation of ſome things amiſs, have hitherto upheld the *Eccleſiaſtical* Eſtate, in the ſame form they found it. The Government of the Church as formerly, by 3 *Archbiſhops*, and 19 *Biſhops* who challenge a juriſdiction over all the Kingdom, but exerciſe it upon thoſe onely who ſubmit unto them: thoſe who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther*, or *Calvin*, following the forms of Government by them eſtabliſhed; as others do ſome new ones of their own deviſing. And for thoſe provinces and people which lye towards *Greece*, or were parts heretofore of the *Ruſſian Empire*, and ſtill hold a *Communion* with thoſe Churches; they have Archbiſhops and Biſhops of their own Religion: that is to ſay, the Archbiſhops of *Vilne*, and *Lemburg*, the Biſhops of *Polosko*, *Luzko*, *Pinsko*, *Volodomiro*, *Preſmil*, and *Kiovia*. Yet amongſt all theſe different Churches and forms of Government, there is this Conformity, that whenſoever the *Goſpel* is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry uſe to draw their ſwords (according to an antient cuſtom which they had among them) ſignifying their readineſs to defend it againſt all oppoſers. Which reaſon doubtleſs gave beginning to the ſtanding up at the *Creed*, and *Goſpel*, in the primitive times; reteined ſtill in the Church of *England*: whereby we do declare, how prepared and reſolute we are to defend the ſame; though ſome of late, holding it for a *Relick* of *Popery*, with greater nicety than wiſdom, have refuſed to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Countrey in the Art of war, 1 *Caſſimir* the third, the great eſtabliſher of this Kingdom after long diſſentions. 2 *Jagello*, or *Vladiſlaus* the firſt, who firſt brought down the pride of the Dutch Knights in a famous victory. 3 *Caſſimir* the fourth, the fortunate conquerour of the Knights of *Pruſſia*, brought by him under the command of the Kings of *Poland*. 4 *Sigiſmund* the firſt, by whoſe valour and good fortune the *Dutch* Knights were totally ſuppreſſed, and the greateſt part of *Pruſſia* for ever added to that Crown. 5 *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, fortunate in his wars againſt moſt of them in *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom. Of moſt ſpecial note for learning, *Hoſius*, a Divine of the Papal party, whoſe great abilities advanced him to the State of a Cardinal. 2 *Crellius*, and 3 *Volchelius*, of the contrary party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heterodox and unſound opinions; 4 *Cromerus* the Hiſtorian; 5 Barth. *Keckerman* the Profeſſor at *Dansk* or *Dantzick*, a man of univerſal ſtudies, but of greater induſtry than exactneſs.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are 1 *Viſtula* or *Wixel*, the antient Boundary betwixt *Germany*, and *Sarmatia Europæa* which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountains, paſſeth by *Cracovia* the chief City of *Poland*: and dividing *Pruſsia* from *Pomerella*, falleth into the Baltick *Sea* not far from *Dantzick*, and is navigable for the ſpace of 400 miles; of old called *Vandalis.* 2 *Warta*, which runneth through the leſſer *Poland*; 3 *Dnina*, the leſs, watering *Livonia*, and 4 *Boriſthenes* or *Nieper*, paſſing through *Podolia*, both ſpoken of before when we were in *Ruſſia.* 5 *Nieſter*, by *Ptolemy* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine* Sea having firſt parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia.* 6 *Jugra*, by ſome called the leſſer *Tanais*, ariſing in *Lituania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais*, which is now called *Don.* Of leſs note there are, 1 *Reuben* or *Renhen*, 2 *Cronus* now called *Pregel*, 3 *Bogh*, ſaid by ſome to be the *Hipani* of the Antients. 4 *Minnael*, 5 *Niemen*, the *Mæander* of theſe Northern parts 6 *Winde*, a *Livonian* River falling into the Baltick. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countries for the moſt part being plain and champain: and thoſe which be, are rather boundaries betwixt this and ſome other Kingdom, than proper unto this alone, The chief of which are thoſe called *Sarmatici*, dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europæa*; by *Solinus* named *Sevo*, by *Ptolemy* the *Carpathian* Mountains; the boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungaria*, of which more anon.

The common *Metes* and *Land-marks* being thus laid down, we will next take a view of thoſe ſeveral Provinces, of which this Kingdom doth conſiſt: being ten in number: that is to ſay, 1 *Livonia*, 2 *Samogitia*, 3 *Lituania*, 4 *Pruſſia*, 5 *Poland*, ſpecially called, 6 *Maſſovia*, 7 *Podlaſsia*, 8 *Ruſsia Nigra*, 9 *Volbinia*, and 10 *Podolia*: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europæa.*

1. *LIVONIA.*

1 *LIVONIA* or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Empire of *Ruſsia*; on the Weſt, with the Baltick Sea; on the North, with the Gulf or Bay of *Finland*; on the South, with *Samogitia*, and *Lituania.* Extended in length along the ſhore of the Baltick for the ſpace of 125 *Dutch*; or 500 *Italian*

Livonia.

miles, and 40 *Dutch*, or 160 *Italian* miles in breadth: and called thus perhaps from the *Levoni*, a people of *Germany*, inhabiting not far from the River *Viſtula*.

The Countrey for the moſt part plain, without any mountains; furniſhed with corn and fruits in ſo great abundance, that they ſend part thereof into other Countries: and yet there is much ground untilled in it, by reaſon of the bogs and mariſhes which are very frequent. Here is alſo ſtore of wax, honey, and pitch, but they have neither oyl, nor wine; the want of which laſt is ſupplyed by *Meth*. Of tame Beaſts fit for mans ſervice they are well provided; as alſo of ſuch whoſe skins are of more value with the Merchant, than their *Fleſh* at the Market, as *Ermins*, *Sables*, *Caſtors*, and others of that kind, beſides good ſtore of game for hunting, the Countrey having in it many large woods, parts of the *Hercynian*. And as for Rivers, there are few Countries which have more; watered by the *Wind*, the *Beck*, the *Dwine*, the *Ruho*, all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chief is that of *Beybas*, 45 miles long, and full of fiſh.

The people are much given to gluttony and drunkenneſs, eſpecially in rich mens Houſes, where it is to be had: for the *Paiſant* lives in want enough, meer ſlaves to their tyrannical Landlords, who ſpend in riot and exceſs, what theſe get by drudgery. And when at any time the poor wretch leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with ſome other, the Lord, if he can overtake him, will cut off his foot, to make him ſure for the future. They are a mixture of many Nations, as the *Eſtones*, which are the natural Inhabitants, (derived from the *Eſtii*, a *Dutch* people, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*) of which Nation are almoſt all the *Paiſants*: the *Muſcovites*, *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Dutch*, and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, coming in upon ſeveral conqueſts, and planting themſelves in the beſt parts of it, in which they ſtill Lord it over the *Native*, but the *Dutch* eſpecially for long time *Maſters* of the whole.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt here planted by *Meinardus* of *Lubeck*, imployed herein (in the time of *Frederick* the firſt) at the perſuaſion of ſome *Dutch* Merchants who traded hither, by the Archbiſhop of *Breme*, by whom made the firſt Biſhop of the *Livonians*. The Church hereof at this time governed by the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, the Biſhops of *Derpt*, *Aſilia*, *Oſel*, *Curland*, and *Rivallia*, in thoſe parts which remain ſubject to the *Polander*; where the Religion of the Church of *Rome* is onely countenanced. Such parts of it that are under the *Swedes*, or *Danes*, are, for the moſt part, of the *Lutheran* profeſſion; planted with Colonies of that people. But the *Eſtones*, or original inhabitants, as they have a language, ſo they have a Religion by themſelves alſo; mixt of the *Chriſtian* and the *Pagan*: extremely well-affected unto their Prieſts, to whom they preſent ſalt, candles, and fruits, when they come to them for their bleſſings; great lovers of Confeſſion, eſteemers of holy water, and diligent frequenters of their Churches; but ſo extremely ignorant in all points of Religion, that there is hardly one in a village that can ſay his *Pater-noſter*. When they bury any of their dead, every one drinketh an health to him, and powreth his part upon him when his turn comes to drink; putting into the grave with him an hatchet, wine, meat, and a little money for his voyage. And in ſome places they are wholly *Idolatrous* (if not converted very lately by the care of the *Jeſuits*) ſome of them worſhipping the Sun, others ſtocks and ſtones, and ſome *Serpents* alſo. The Language of the Countrey is for the moſt part the *High Dutch* (being the Language of thoſe Nations who firſt Lorded over them;) the *Eſtones* having generally a peculiar language, which none of the others underſtand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Curland*, *Eſtland*, *Semigal*, *Virland*, *Harland*, and *Lettenland*, but theſe ſix, ſince the conqueſt of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three: *Harland* and *Virland*, being united unto *Eſtland*, and *Semigallia*, unto *Curland*.

Chief places in *Eſtland*, are 1 *Rivalle*, a Biſhops ſee, and a well-traded Port, ſituated on the Gulf of *Finland*, a Town belonging to the *Swede*, the keeping whereof and of *Virburg*, on the borders of *Muſcovie*, ſtand him yearly in 100000 Dollars; 2 *Habſay*, or *Habſes*, (*Aſilia* in *Latine*) a Biſhops See; and 3 *Pernow* a well fortified place, belonging to the *Swethlander* alſo, ever ſince the conqueſt of theſe parts of the Countrey by *John* the ſecond. Places of great importance to the Crown of *Sweden*, as all other pieces of this nature are, which ſtanding in an Enemies Country, not onely to defend our own, but offend our Adverſaries. For they are not onely *door*, to open a further paſſage into the *Territories* whenſoever we ſhall ſee occaſion: but whilſt the Enemy is beſieging thereof, or otherwiſe buſied in recovering them into his power, our own ſtate is preſerved in quiet; and time may yield fit opportunity to relieve them, if they be diſtreſſed, without waſting any part of our proper Countreys. Of which nature was *Calais*, when it was in the hands of the *Engliſh*, the Garriſons which the *Spaniards* and *Portugueze* have in *Africk*, and *India*; the charge of keeping them being ſufficiently defrayed (if the charge prove greater than the income, as ſometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them. 4 *Velin*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with an impregnable Caſtle; betrayed by the Dutch Garriſon, at that time in it, together with *William* of *Furſtenberg* the great Maſter, into the hands of *John Baſilius* the great Duke of *Muſcovie*; who ſtill holds it. 5 *Derpt* or *Derbren*, (in Latine *Tupatum*) a Biſhops See; ſituate on the *Beck* or *Einbeck*; betwixt two Lakes, in the midſt of the Province; and taken at the ſame time by the *Muſcovite*; who tranſporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted theſe parts with Colonies of his own people. 6. *Terneſt*, a caſtle of great ſtrength, taken then alſo by the *Ruſſes*: but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with *Gun-powder*, that it might no more come into the hands of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Countrey which belongs to the *Polanders*; theſe that follow do: that is to ſay, 7 *Borchlom*, the ſeat and reſidence of the Biſhop of *Rivalle*, ſince the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8. *Weiſenberg*, incommodiouſly ſeated betwixt two ill neighbours, *Narve* and *Rizalle*; but ſerving very well to prohibit the incurſions of thoſe Gar-

riſons

Livonia.

riſons further into the Country. 9. *Werneber*, in that part of *Eſtland* which is called *Odinpen*; and *Wittenſtein*, in that part thereof which is named *Jervia*.

In *LETTENLAND*, lying in the midſt betwixt *Eſtland* and *Curland*, the places of moſt note are, 1. *Rica*, (the people call it *Rig*) ſeated on the mouth of the River *Dwina*, falling there into the *Baltick*; firſt built and planted at the charges of the Merchants of *Breme*: after that the Archbiſhops See, the ordinary reſidence of the Great Maſter, and the chief City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A Town well fortified, according to the modern Rules of fortification, with a ſtrong wall, large Bulwarks, double Ditches, Paliſadoes; and well provided of all manner of Ammunition: a famous Empory, of great reſort by forein Merchants, who carry hence Pitch, Wax, Hemp, Flax, and ſuch other commodities. Governed (notwithſtanding their ſubjection to the King of *Poland*) by their own Laws; and ſuch ſtout Defenders of their Liberties, that they will by no means admit of any Foreiner to have command of the City: obedient in all other things to the Will of that King. 2. *Dunamund*, an impregnable Fortreſs, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well gariſoned by the *Polanders*, who here take Toll of all forein Merchants. 3. *Blokaws*, a Gariſon of the Kings betwixt *Riga* and *Dunamund*, where the Merchants are Tolled over again. 4. *Winden*, more within the Land, on the River ſo called. 5. *Wolmar*, upon the River *Treiden*. 6. *Kokenhan*, a ſtrong Town on the banks of the *Dwina*. This Country belongs wholly to the King of *Poland*, and ſtood firm for him in the War made by *Charls* Duke of *Suderman* againſt his Nephew *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* and *Sweden*, when almoſt all *Eſtland* had ſubmitted to him.

CURLAND, the third and laſt member of this diviſion, containing *Semigallia* alſo, lieth South of *Lettenland*, and North of *Samogitia* and *Lituania*; an entire Dukedom of it ſelf, but holden under the Sovereignty and Homage of the Kings of *Poland*. Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1. *Canden*, 2. *Goldingen*, 3. *Kies*, (the *Dutch* call it *Wenden*) the ſeat of the Great Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order in times paſt; now moſt frequented as the place of Parliament, or General Aſſembly, for Affairs which concern the publick. 4. *Dubin*, 5. *Grubin*, on the Sea-ſide, but of no trade at all. 6. *Halenpot*. And then in *Semigal*. 7. *Mitow*, the Court and reſidence of the Dukes of *Curland*. 8. *Selborch*, 9. *Baſſembourg*, 10. *Dobelin*. No Town in all this Dukedom of any trading, though lying for a great ſpace all along the *Baltick*, becauſe none of them furniſhed with commodious Havens. A Dukedom firſt begun in the perſon of *Gothardus Ketler* (of one of the Noble Families of *Danemark*) the laſt Great Maſter of the *Dutch* Knights in this Country; who in the year 1562, ſurrendring his Order and the whole poſſeſſion of *Livonia* to *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, received back again, for him and his Heirs for ever, the Dukedom of *Curland* and *Semigal*, to be held by them of that Crown: the Nobility of theſe Countries doing then preſently their Homage and Allegiance to him as their Hereditary Prince. Since which time the Princes of this Houſe have continued *Feudataries* unto *Poland*, but not reckoned as parts or members of the body thereof; not coming to the Diets, not liable to the publick charges, nor having any thing to do in the Kings Election: in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the Kings of *Poland* than Subjects to them. The preſent Duke like to be much increaſed in Eſtate and power, if the now Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg* (whoſe Siſter is his Mother) ſhould depart without Iſſue. For by that means there will be added to this Houſe the Great Dukedom of *Pruſſia*, thoſe of *Cleve* and *Gulick*; together with ſuch other Countries poſſeſſed now by that Marqueſs, as he holds by Deſcent from the Heirs general of thoſe Dukedoms: which makes him caſt eye already upon thoſe Eſtates.

There belong alſo to *Livonia* ſome few Iſlands ſituate in the *Baltick* Sea, that is to ſay, 1. *Oſilia*, 2. *Dogeden*, 3. *Mona*, 4. *Wormſe*, 5. *Wragen*, and 6. *Kien*. Of which the four laſt belong to the King of *Poland*; *Dacuden* or *Dogeden* to the King of *Swethland*; and *Oſilia* or *Oeſel* to the *Dane*. This laſt the chief of all the ſix, diſtant from the main Land of *Livonia* 12 *Dutch* miles, 14 of the ſame miles in length, half as much in bredth: the chief Towns hereof being *Oſel*, a Biſhops See, which gives name to the Iſland; 2. *Sunberg*. The Iſland made ſubject to the *Danes* by *Magnus*, Brother of *Frederick* the ſecond, King of *Denmark*; who, being choſen Adminiſtrator of the Biſhoprick of *Derpt* in *Eſtland*, made himſelf Maſter of this Iſland, and ſome other pieces; which, dying without Iſſue, he bequeathed to the King his Brother, *Anno* 1580.

As for *Livonia* it ſelf, it was firſt under the *Levoni* and *Eſti*, two *German* Nations, from whom the Country had the name of *Livonia*, the people of *Eſtlanders* or *Eſtones*. Diſtracted into many petit Principalities, it was made acquainted with the Chriſtian Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was ſaid. *Meinard* their firſt Biſhop being dead, and Bertold his Succeſſor ſlain by ſuch of the people, as had not yet received the Goſpel; the Knights of the *Port-glaive* or the *Sword* were ſent thither to defend the Preachers and their Doctrine by the force of Arms. Finding themſelves too weak to effect the buſineſs, they united with the Order of *Dutch* Knights in *Pruſſia*, to whom from that time forwards they became ſubordinate; the Great Maſter of *Livonia* acknowledging him of *Pruſſia* for his Superiour. Theſe Knights continued Maſters of it without contradiction till the year 1557, (embracing in the mean time the Opinion of *Luther*, *Anno* 1528.) when quarrelling with the Archbiſhop of *Liga*, of the Houſe of *Brandenbourg*, becauſe he would not adhere unto their Opinions; who, to ſecure his own Eſtate, was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterward being over-laid by the *Moſcovite*, who had taken from them almoſt all their Country, they were fain to put themſelves under the protection of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1559. But *William* of *Furſtenburg* the Great Maſter being betrayed by his own Mercenaries into the hands of the *Moſcovite*, *Gothardus* his Succeſſor (following the example of *Albert* the Great Maſter of *Pruſſia*) tranſacted with the ſaid *Sigiſmund* for the whole Eſtate, which he ſurrendred to his uſe in the Caſtle of *Riga*, *March* 5. *Anno* 1562, together with his Croſs, the Seal of the

Order, the Charters and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperors, which concerned the ſame; as alſo the Keyes of the City and Caſtle of *Riga*, the Office of Great Maſter, the Rights of Coinage, and all the powers and privileges appertaining to it: receiving back again from *Ratzevil* the King's Commiſſioner, the Dukedom of *Curland*, to him and his Heirs for ever, as before is ſaid. By this Tranſaction the Kings of *Pole* became Maſters of *Liefland*, more abſolutely ſetled in it after a long War betwixt *Stephen* King of *Poland*, and *John Vaſiliwich* the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*; who in the end ſurrendred all his claim therein to the ſaid *Stephen* and his Succeſſors, *Anno* 1582, reſerving only ſome few Towns on the Eaſtern Borders: the *Danes* and *Swethlanders* taking occaſion by their trouble to impatronize themſelves of *Narve*, *Rivallia*, *Oſel*, and ſome other pieces.

2. SAMOGITIA.

2. *SAMOGITIA* is a ſmall Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia* and *Lituania*, having *Livonia* on the North, *Lituania* on the Eaſt and South, and the *Baltick* Sea upon the Weſt; in length extending fifty miles from Eaſt to Weſt, but not of anſwerable bredth. It is ſo called from the lowneſs of the ſituation, (the word *Samogits* in the language of the Inhabitants ſignifying *terram inferiorem*, or the *Lowlands*) by the *Muſcovite* in the ſame ſenſe called *Samotzkaſemla*. This lowneſs of ſituation makes it very watery, and almoſt continually frozen: but withal it hath many Foreſts, which yield unto the people abundance of honey; better, more pleaſing to the taſt, and leſs mixt with Wax, than in other places.

The people are ſuppoſed to be of the *Saxon* race, of a good ſtature, well ſet, bold and apt for War, but withal boiſterous, rude and barbarous, Chriſtians in general, but many who do ſtill retain their old Idolatries: nouriſhing amongſt them a kind of four-footed Serpents, above three handfuls in length, which they worſhip as their Houſhold-gods, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their repaſts; and if any miſchance do happen to any of the Family, it is imputed preſently to ſome want of due obſervation of theſe ugly Creatures. Naturally inclined to Divinations, Charms and Sorceries; and frequently abuſed (as for the moſt part ſuch people are) by diabolical illuſions. Nay, they which profeſs the name of CHRIST are ſo ill inſtructed, that they uſe to marry many Wives, without conſideration of Blood or Parentage: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his Brothers Widow, and not unuſual to marry the Relict of their Fathers, (a Fornication not ſo much as heard of in Saint *Pauls* time amongſt the Gentiles.) They have ſome cuſtoms alſo as unprofitable as theſe are Heatheniſh; breaking up their Land, as they do in *Muſcovy*, with Spades or ſticks. And when one of their Governors, obſerving the Husbandry of other Nations, had brought them to the uſe of the Plough, it fortuned that for two or three years, either by the indiſpoſition of the weather, or ſome other accident, they had not ſo much Corn as they uſed to have. Which want the people attributed to the uſe of the Plough, *nec quicquam aliud in cauſa eſſe putantes*, and not believing that there was any other cauſe of it, grew ſo much incenſed, that the Governor, fearing ſome Sedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which before they went. An humour like that of the preſent *Iriſh*, in plowing with their Horſe-tails, ſpoken of before. So pertinacious, for the moſt part, are ignorant and ſuperſtitious people, in ſtanding to their antient Cuſtoms, though abſurd and hurtful.

Towns they have few, their Houſes for the generality being poor and low, covered with ſtraw or dirt, with an hole open in the roof to let in the light. The principal of thoſe they have (but rather Villages than Towns) are, 1. *Bigla*, near the head of the River *Swiete*; 2. *Linkaw*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath always followed the fortunes of *Lituania*; ſubject, when that was ſo, to the Kings of *Ruſſia*; converted, when that was, to the Chriſtian Faith; and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

3. LITVANIA.

LITVANIA hath on the Eaſt the Empire of *Ruſſia*; on the Weſt *Pruſſia*, *Maſſovia* and *Poland*; on the North *Livonia* and *Samogitia*; on the South *Volhinia* and *Podalia*. So called from *Lituus* the Ceremonial Staff, uſed antiently by the *Augures* in their Divinations; to which the Inhabitants hereof being very much addicted before their receiving of the Goſpel, were called *Lituani*. But this is but conjectural only. Yet rather thus, than it ſhould be peopled by ſome baniſhed *Italians*, firſt named *Italia*, then *Litalia*; and after, by a moſt unlikely corruption, come to *Lituania*, as *Matthias a Michou* would fain have it.

The Country for the moſt part full of Moors, Foreſts, ſome great Lakes, like a Sea for bigneſs, and many navigable Rivers; which, frozen over in the Winter, make the ways more travellable at that time of the year than they are in Summer. The Air in moſt places exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have ſome abundance) to be ſeldom ripe, and other fruits of the Earth to come ſlowly forward. Their Foreſts yield them Bugles, Ermins, Sables, Deer, wild Horſes, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch; but their breed of Cattel is leſs here, and of ſmaller ſtature than it is in *Germany*. Theſe Foreſts alſo are the Store-houſe out of which the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* furniſh themſelves with Timber, both for Ships and building; returning to them in exchange Salt, Wine, and other neceſſaries, which are wanting here.

The people antiently had Fire, and Serpents, for their gods; nouriſhing the laſt in their houſes, and keeping the other continually burning, the Prieſts and Miniſters of the Temples alwayes adding fewel, that it might not fail. The *Veſtal Fire* not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater ceremony. To this god whom they called *Diſhpan*, or the *Lord of the Smoke*, they uſed to ſacrifice young Pullets; to the other, their Cocks. The ſeed of this Idolatry is ſo implanted in them, that it is ſaid, that in a Village of the Kings called *Lovaniski*, not four miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they do to this day worſhip Serpents. Converted with their Prince *Jagello* to the Chriſtian Faith, *Anno* 1386. they yet retained ſuch Cuſtomes as are inconſiſtent with Chriſtianity; marrying, and unmarrying, when, and as often, as they pleaſe; no Bond being ſo ſoon cancelled as that of Matrimony. For a married man to uſe the body of an Harlot, is accounted (as indeed it is) an opprobrious crime; but for the wife to have her Stallions and Adulterers, is a thing ſo ordinary and unblameable, that the husbands call them their *Co-adjutors*, and prize them far above the reſt of their Acquaintance. The common people in a miſerable ſervitude unto their Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occaſion, yet muſt not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a crime deſerving death, he muſt hang himſelf as ſoon as the ſentence is ſignified to him; or elſe is beaten and tormented in ſo cruel a manner, that death at laſt is looked on as a better life.

The Countrey is divided into ten parts or Provinces, ſubject unto the juriſdiction of ſo many Palatines, that is to ſay, the Palatine of 1. *Vilna*, 2. *Trock*, 3. *Minsko*, 4. *Novogrod*, 5. *Breſtia*, 6. *Volhinia*, 7. *Kiovia*, 8. *Mieſlaw*, 9. *Vitebſco*, 10. *Polotzkie*. But *Novogrod*, and *Polotzkie*, being conquered by the Great Duke of *Muſcovie*, and added unto that Eſtate, and *Volhinia* reckoned (of late times) for a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, not depending of it; the remaining number is but ſeven, moſt of them taking names from their principal Towns. The chief of thoſe, and others which deſerve place here, are 1. *Vilna*, a Biſhops See, equal in bigneſs to *Cracow*, the chief City of *Poland*; ſo called of the River *Vil*, or *Viln*, upon which it is ſeated; built there in the year 1305. by one *Godemin*, a great Prince of theſe parts; well walled, but the gates thereof open night and day; large, rich, and well frequented by forein Merchants, eſpecially by thoſe that drive the Trade of *Moſcovie*, who have here their Hall, one of the chief ornaments of the City. They have in it alſo ſome Churches built of ſtone, but the moſt of wood; the principal whereof is the Monaſtery of S. *Bernard*, which is a very comely Structure. The Natives call this Town *Vilenski*; the *Dutch*, *Die Wilde*. Situate in the very heart of the Countrey, the longeſt day in Summer being here 16 hours and half a quarter; whereas in the moſt Southern parts of the Countrey it is but 16. and in the moſt Northern, not fully 18. 2. *Kiovia*, or *Kiof*, ſituate on the *Nieper*, or *Boryſthenes*, where the River *Deſna* falls into it: heretofore a beautifull and moſt ſtately City, having in it above 300 fair Churches, of which ſome remain unto this day; the ruines of the reſt to be traced out amongſt ſhrubs and buſhes, the receptacles of wild Beaſts The Seat at that time of the Metropolitan of the *Ruſsian* Empire; containing alſo under his juriſdiction the Countries of *Walachia*, in *Dacia*; and *Nigra Ruſsia*, in *Poland*. But being deſtroyed by *Barthu* or *Boydo* the *Tartarian*, in the conqueſt of theſe parts by that people, it never could come near its former luſtre; yet ſtill it holds the reputation of a Biſhops See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Moſco* for his Metropolitan, and conſequently of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*, 3. *Grodna*, on the River *Chronus*, the chief Town of the Palatinate of *Trock*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* King of *Poland*. 4. *Grumwald*, more memorable for the great defeat given near it, by *Jagello* the Duke of *Lituania*, and King of *Poland*, to the numerous Army of the *Dutch* Knights invading this Province: ſo confident of their ſucceſs in the undertaking, that they brought with them abundance of Chains and Torches; with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a Chriſtian, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained Souldiers, ſo tamed their pride, that he ſlew near 40000 of them; never recovered of that blow whilſt their Order ſtood. 5. *Ponsko*, in the Palatinate of *Breſt*. 6. *Klow*, reckoned a Countrey of it ſelf; and 7. *Striſsin*, fortified with a Caſtle, both under the Palatine of *Mieſlaw*. The reſt of the chief Towns may be known by the Palatinates, which they give their names to; but not elſe obſervable.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aorſi*, *Pagrini*, *Savari*, Tribes of the *Sarmatæ Europæi*. United into this name of *Lituanians*, they became ſubject to the Kings of *Ruſsia*, till the breaking of that Kingdom by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdizvill*, then their Prince (but an Homager and Tributary to the *Ruſsians*) withdrew himſelf from their command; as did alſo many others of the conquered Provinces. Afterwards *Mindoch*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a Chriſtian, was by Pope *Innocent* III. honoured with the title of a King, but returning again unto his vomit, he loſt that title. In the end, *Anno* 1386. *Jagello*, Duke of *Lituania*, marrying with *Heduigis* Queen of *Poland*, was upon three conditions choſen King of that Realm: 1. That he ſhould immediately receive the *Chriſtian Faith*; 2. That he ſhould draw all his ſubjects to the ſame *Belief*; and 3. That he ſhould unite this Dukedom to the Crown of *Poland*. Of theſe, the two firſt were performed without any delay; though the ſecond not without ſome difficulty, the people being obſtinate in their old *Idolatry*, eſpecially in the religious conceits they had of High Trees, which to cut down was held both unſafe and impious. Not to be weaned from this conceit, till by the authority of the King their loftieſt Trees were felled, and their Woods grubbed up: which when they ſaw done without any danger to the Prince, or any of thoſe whom he employed in that ſervice; *Regis mandato & anthoritati cedere cœperunt*, they then began to hearken unto his commands, and generally received the Goſpel, and were *Baptized*. In the laſt point there was a longer time of deliberation. For the Princes of the houſe of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themſelves of their Patrimonial eſtate, which was Hereditary

unto

Volhinia.

unto their poſterity; and to ſubject it to the election of the *Polanders*, in which it was poſſible the Princes of their family might be pretermitted: deferred the accompliſhment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Lituanians* would revolt, if they went about it. But *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, in whoſe perſon the male iſſue of *Jagello* failed, foreſeeing what diviſions might enſue after his deceaſe, and fearing that the *Muſcovites* would renew their old pretenſions, uniting it unto the Crown: ordaining that the *Biſhops*, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chaſtellans* by him eſtabliſhed, ſhould have their place and ſuffrage in the *Great Council* of *Poland*; power in the chuſing of the King, and all other privileges which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that, accounted a chief Member of that *Body Politick*: ſubject to thoſe corruptions, changes, and innovations in matters of Religion, which have been predominant in the other; excepting thoſe parts onely which relate to the Church of *Greece* or *Moſco*, adhering pertinaciouſly to the Rites thereof.

4. *VOLHINIA.*

VOLHINIA, by ſome accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lituania*, (as once it was) but by others, a diſtinct province of it ſelf; is bounded on the North and Eaſt, with *Lituania*; on the South, with *Podolia*; and on the Weſt, with *Ruſſia Nigra*, and *Podlaſſia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgari*, who dwelling on the banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this Country, calling it *Volgaria*, whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at laſt to *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds.

The Country yields good plenty both of grain and fruits, pools which abound with very good fiſh, Foreſts which do afford them ſtore of game and honey; and much good paſturage for their cattel. The people of the ſame nature with the *Lituanians* but more ſtrong, and warlike; and better weaned from their old ſuperſtitions and heatheniſh cuſtoms, than the others are. Of the ſame language and Religion with thoſe of *Ruſſia*; to which, together with the reſt of *Lituania*, it did once belong: It is divided commonly into three parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it; that is to ſay, 1 *Luzke*, in Latine called *Luceozia*, a Town of above 1000 families, where 127 only, in the time of my Author, were of the *Romiſh* Religion; the reſidue being *Ruſsians*, *Grecians*, and ſome *Armenians*: the ſeat and reſidence of two Biſhops, of which one being of the *Communion* of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbiſhop of *Lemberg* in *Ruſsia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, have alſo a Biſhop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Moſco* for his *Metropolitan*. 2 *Valodomir*, a Biſhops See alſo, of the ſame condition. 3 *Keromenze*, which (as the reſt) hath under it many fair Towns and Caſtles, beſides large Villages. The whole once part of *Lituania*, as before was ſaid; but of late diſmembred from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a ſtate diſtinct. But ſo, that the greateſt part of it is immediatly ſubject to the Duke of *Oſtrogoye*, who is ſaid to have 4000 *Feudataries* in this Country; the greateſt Prince of thoſe who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece*, in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5. *PODOLIA.*

PODOLIA hath on the North, *Volhinia*, part of *Lituania*, and the great Empire of *Ruſsia*: on the South, *Moldavia* from which parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Nieſter*; on the Weſt, *Ruſsia Nigra*; extending Eaſtward through vaſt uninhabited countries, as far as to the *Euxine* Sea. The reaſon of the name I find no where gheſſed at; the people for the moſt part of the ſame nature and original with the *Ruſsians*, to whoſe Empire it formerly belonged alſo, till gained (if ſuch a ſubjection as they give the King, may be called a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at ſuch time as the *Ruſſes* were inthralled to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Country generally ſo fertile, that the husbandman is accuſtomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one plowing for three years together: the countryman being put to no further trouble, than at the end of the firſt and ſecond years, to ſhake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which ſo falls, ſerving as ſeed for the next year following, The meadow grounds ſo ſtrangely rich, and luxuriant, and the graſs ſo high, that a man can hardly ſee the heads or horns of his Cattel: of ſo ſwift a growth, that in three days it will cover a rod which is thrown into it, and in few more, ſo hide a plough, that it is not an eaſie work to find it If theſe things ſeem beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof: though better take it on his word, than go ſo far to diſprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the miracle, the ground in moſt places ſo hard and ſtony, that there need ſix yoke of Oxen to break it up: to the great toil both of the Cattel and the men. It is alſo ſaid, that in this Countrey there are great flocks of ſheep, many herds of Oxen, abundance of wild beaſts, and great ſtore of honey. And yet for all this plenty and abundance of all things neceſſary, the Country for the moſt part, eſpecially towards the Eaſt, is meanly inhabited; by reaſon of the frequent incurſions of the *Tartars* bordering next unto it. Who have ſo waſted it in times paſt, and thereby ſo diſcouraged the people from building, planting, and all other works of peace and husbandry; that in ſo large and rich a Countrey, there is nothing to be ſeen but ſome ſcattered houſes, few Villages, and not above five Towns of note, *viz.* 1 *Orczakow*, at the influx of the *Boryſthenes* or *Nieper* into the *Euxine* Sea. 2 *Vaſzow*, at the fall of the River *Bog* into that of *Nieper*. 3 *Braclaw*, more high upon the *Bog*. 4 *Camienecz*, on the borders of *Ruſsia Nigra* built by ſome divine hand, as it were, amongſt the precipices of high and inacceſſible Rocks: and ſo well fortified withal, that it is impregnable: as is apparent by the many and great repulſes, which the *Turks*, *Tartarians*, and *Valachians*, have received before it, with much ſhame and loſs. 5. *Lemburg*, remarkable for the ſawces or ſalt meats, which they ſend thence into other Countries.

Ruſsia Nigra, &c.

6. *RVSSIA NIGRA.*

RVSSIA NIGRA, hath on the Eaſt *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and *Moldavia*; on the Weſt, *Mazovia*, and *Poland*, ſpecially ſo called; on the North, *Lituania*, and *Podlaſsia*; and on the South, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains. It is called alſo *Roxolania*, from the *Roxolani*, a chief people of *Sarmatia Europæa*, and by ſome *Ruthenia*; but generally *Ruſsia*, from the *Roſsi* ſpoken of before, in the Empire of *Ruſſia*, who ſpread themſelves over all theſe parts. Some hold that it was firſt called *Roſſeia*, which ſignifieth in the *Sclavonian* language, a *ſcattered Nation*, or a Nation diſſeminated, and diſperſed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that ſpake the *Sclavonian* tongue, and followed the Religion and Rites of the Church of *Greece*, extended from the *frozen* Seas to the *Adriatick*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This, and a greater tract of ground, I grant to have been heretofore poſſeſſed by divers Nations, under the name of *Sclavonians*; a very conſiderable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Ruſsia*, given at firſt to all the *Ruſsian* Empire, diſtinguiſhed now into *Ruſsia Alba*, and *Ruſsia Nigra*, I adhere unto my former Vote, conceiving that it came from the *Roſsi*, an *Armenian* people, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864. or thereabouts, attempted the taking of *Conſtantinople*, and after placed themſelves on the Northern banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Sclavonians* to the North and Eaſt, till they had made themſelves Maſters of all *Ruſſia Alba*, *Lituania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and this *Ruſsia Nigra*, diſtinguiſhed from the former by the Adjunct of *Nigra*, after the deſtruction of that great Empire by the coming in of the *Tartars*; either from the colour of their garments, or their black and more Southernly complexion. In which regard called alſo *Ruſsia Meridionalis*, or the *Southern Ruſsia*.

The Country is generally fruitfull, abounding in Horſes, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: ſuch ſtore of Bees, that they breed not onely in Hives and hollow Trees, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of fiſh, more naturally ſpawning here than in other places; inſomuch, that if a Pond be digged, and ſpring accordingly, the fiſh will breed therein of their own accord, without being brought from other waters. The greateſt want hereof is wine, either ſupplied with Mede, or from other places. And it is ſaid, that in the Territory of *Chelme*, the branches of the *Pine*-trees left upon the ground for three years together, will be converted into ſtone.

The people are generally valiant, and ſo ſtrong of body, that they uſe Bows of 12 foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the Kings of *Poland* to ſend Colonies of natural *Polonians* into moſt parts of the Country: inſomuch as moſt of the Knights and Gentry of it are of that extraction, and follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; the Paiſants and original Inhabitants of it being more generally affected to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Chelme*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed, that the branches of Pine-trees left upon the ground for three years together, are converted to ſtone, 2. *Premiſten*, 3. *Halitz*, 4. *Belzo*, 5. *Grodeck*, and 6. *Leopolis*, by the Natives called *Lemburg*, built by one *Leo* a *Moſcovite*; a Town of great Traffick, and an Archbiſhops See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the Patriarch of *Moſco* hath here alſo an Archbiſhop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City it ſelf, and all *Ruſsia* generally (as before was ſaid) which are of the communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are alſo in this City ſome *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Biſhop, and ſome Prieſts of their own Religion.

Of the Affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Ruſsian* Empire, hath been ſaid already. Diſmembred from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or Provincial Governours, ſubject and tributary unto thoſe Barbarians; as had alſo *Podolia*, its next neighbour. Both conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by a ſtrong hand, and the power of Garriſons. But being upon all occaſions apt to revolt, by reaſon of the hard hand which the Kings held over them; (by whom treated rather like Slaves than Subjects) they were aſſured unto the State, by giving them the ſame Liberties and Immunities, both for the Nobility and the Commons, which the natural *Polonians* had; and by that means made fellow-members of the Common-wealth. The Act of *Ladiſlaus* VI. the Son of *Jagello*, imitating therein the antient *Romans*, who much augmented their forces, and aſſured their Eſtate, by communicating the Freedom of *Rome*, and the Privileges of *Latium* to many of the conquered Provinces; and was herein imitated by *Sigiſmund* I, *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, and *Stephen*, his Succeſſors, in their incorporating of *Pruſsia*, *Lituania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

7. *MASSOVIA.*

MASSOVIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Lituania*; on the Weſt, with *Poland* ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with *Pruſsia*, and *Podlaſsia*; on the South, with *Ruſsia Nigra*, or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Maſſo*, one of the Dukes hereof; who in the year 1045. being vanquiſhed by *Caſimire* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Pruſsia*, and there unfortunately died.

The Countrey large, and for the moſt part full of Woods, where they find ſtore of Bugles, and wild Bulls. The people ſtrong, valiant, and couragious in warr; differing little from the *Polonians* in ſpeech, manners, or apparel, ſave that they uſe a kind of whiſtling, which the others do not. The principal Towns of it, are 1. *Marſchow*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the reſidence of the Duke or Prince; remarkable for the beſt Mede or Metheglin. 2. *Egrod-Czirko*, 3. *Poltouvoskie*, 4. *Gadzick*, 5. *Lozara*, 6. *Droic*, the ſeat of a *Palatine*, but not elſe obſervable.

This Province was once ſubject to Princes of its own, not ſubject or ſubordinate unto any Superior. Of which number that *Maſſo* was one, from whom named *Maſſovia*. In the years 1246, and 1260. being ſtrangely waſted and diſtreſſed by *Mindoy* Duke of *Lituania*; they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Polander*: by whom made the portion of the ſecond ſon of that Kingdom. But *John*, and *Staniſlaus*, the two laſt Dukes hereof, dying without iſſue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*; by whom incorporate to that Crown; and privileged in the election of the King, and all matters which concern the Publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, *Anno* 1526.

8. *PODLASSIA.*

PODLASSIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Volhinia*; on the Weſt, with *Pruſſia*; on the North, with *Lituania*; and on the South, with *Maſſovia*, and *Ruſſia Nigra*. The reaſon of the name I know not. The Countrey not much differing from thoſe before; the people a mixt generation of *Ruſſes*, *Muſcovites*, and *Polonians*, partake a little of the manners and garb of thoſe ſeveral Nations, from which they lineally are deſcended.

Places of moſt importance in it, are 1. *Bielsko*, 2. *Brunsko*, 3. *Suras*, all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4. *Tykdiskin*, ſtrongly fortified and well garriſoned, as being the place where the Kings Treaſures are kept. 5. *Knyſsin*, beautified with a Royal Palace, and a pleaſant Park; wherein are ſtore of wild Beaſts for hunting, and Fiſh-ponds very well repleniſhed. 6. *Narrew*, 7. *Vaſilkow*, and 8. *Auguſtow*, a very ſtrong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, and by him thus named, *Anno* 1569. at what time he diſmembred this Province from *Lituania*, to which before it appertained; uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

9. *PRVSSIA.*

PRVSSIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Lituania* and *Podlaſsia*; on the Weſt, with *Pomerania*; on the North, with the *Baltick* Sea; and on the South, with *Poland*, and *Maſſovia*. Called firſt *Boruſsia*, from the *Boruſsi*, who ſubdued it (of whom more anon;) which by an eaſie alteration was changed into *Pruſsia*, by which name ſtill called.

The Countrey is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the City of *Dantzick* in the Weſt, to *Labian* on the mouth of the *Maillank*, Eaſt; for the ſpace of 50 *Poliſh* miles, and from *Torune* bordering on *Maſſovia*, to *Memel* in the Confines of *Lituania*, 58. miles of the ſame meaſure. The air thereof very mild and temperate, the ſoil both profitable and pleaſant; full of Lakes and Rivers ſtored with fiſh, plentifull of corn and other neceſſaries, and well clad with foreſts, which yield them game for hunting, rich skins for profit, and abundance of honey. Of which laſt they make Mede for their own uſe, (their ordinary drink where there is no wine) and ſell the reſt unto the Merchants. But the Commodity wherein they do excell their neighbours, is their plenty of Amber, which is the juice of a ſtone which groweth like a Coral in a Mountain of theſe *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water; and ſhunned by Mariners three leagues off, for fear of ſhipwrack: the Mountain reaſonable large, about 50 yards high of *Engliſh* meaſure. And when any tempeſt riſeth in theſe Northern Seas, eſpecially in *September* and *December*, the Liquor by violence thereof is rent from the Rock, and caſt into divers Havens, and on divers Coaſts of this Countrey, and ſometimes upon thoſe of *Sweden*, and *Pomerania*, the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth moſt, whence they take up firſt ſome ſtore of weeds, after that this Liquor; which being taken out of the water hardneth like to Coral. Beſides the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting ſtraws and iron, as the Adamant doth; burning like pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for ſtopping Blood, all kinde of Agues, Falling-ſickneſs, Dropſies, Stone, Cholick, weakneſs of Stomach, Head-ach, and the Yellow Jaundiſe.

The people, eſpecially the Gentry, deſcend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature; having more art and induſtry than the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their antient Cuſtoms. Idolaters for long time together, converted firſt unto the Faith in the time of the Emperour *Frederick* II. by whoſe ſetting on they were ſubdued by the order of the *Dutch* Knights, *An.* 1215. and either won or forced to the Chriſtian Faith. As Chriſtians, governed ſince the plantation of the Goſpel, by the Biſhops of *Culme*, *Warme*, *Sambia*, and *Pomeſan*, ſuffragans to the Archbiſhop of *Gueſna*; under whom thoſe parts of it do ſtill continue, which have not yet forſaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other ſeparate Congregations diſtinct from them, having their own forms both of Doctrine and Diſcipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered than this is, both for Lakes and Rivers; ſome of the Lakes 7 *Dutch* miles in compaſs, and well ſtored with fiſh. The Rivers 12 in number; that is to ſay, 1. The *Viſtula*, 2. *Chronus*, 3. *Nogat*, 4. *Elbing*, 5. *Vaſera*, 6. *Paſſaria*, 7. *Alla*, 8. *Pregel*, 9. *Oſſa*, 10. *Drebnicz*, 11. *Lica*, and 12. *Lavia*, all plentifully ſtored with fiſh; beſides a large Sea-coaſt both for trade and fiſhing, no ſmall commodity to the Natives.

The Countrey formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (ſo they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the induſtry of the *Dutch Knights* ſo adorned and beautified (after they had once brought it under their obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Caſtles, and 62 good Towns of their foundation.

dation. Which number being much increaſed in theſe latter times, hath made it the moſt flouriſhing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the *Order* of theſe Knights being ſuppreſſed in this Countrey, by an agreement between *Sigiſmund* the firſt, King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the laſt *great Maſter* of the *Order*; both Town and Country are divided between the Succeſſors of the ſaid *Albert*, as Dukes of *Pruſsia*, and of the ſaid *Sigiſmund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or diviſions of *Hogerland*, *Warme*, *Galnidia*, *Micklow*, *Calmigeria*, with the City of *Mariemberg*, the Soveraignty of *Dantzick*, and *Melvin*, with the whole Couutry of *Pomerella*, lying on the Weſt-ſide of the *Viſtula*, being allotted to the King; the reſidue containing the diviſions of *Sckalavonia*, *Sambia*, *Natangia*, *Nadravia*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomeſania* (except the Citie and Territory of *Mariemberg*) to the Dukes of *Pruſsia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke, are 1. *Mimel*, a well-frequented Port, the Mart-Town for the commodities of *Lituania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the forein Merchant: part of this Province interpoſing betwixt *Lituania* and the *Baltick*. 2. *Coninsberg*, as the *Dutch*; *Regimont*, as the *French*; and *Mons Regius*, as the *Latines* call it; ſituate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulph or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea: built by the *Dutch Knights* in the year 1260. and made an Univerſitie by *Albert*, the firſt Duke thereof, 1524. the ſeat and principal reſidence of his Succeſſors; as alſo of the Biſhops of *Sambia*, in *Latine* called *Sambienſis*, by the name of the Province. 3. *Mulmeburg*, founded by the *Dutch Knights*, *Anno* 1279. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the South ſide of that bay; but more near the Sea; built, as I gueſs, by ſome of the *great Maſters* of that family. 5. *Ragnitz*, the furtheſt Town of note towards *Lituania*. 6. *Angersberg*, in *Sclavonia*; as was alſo *Ragnitz*. 7. *Nordenburg* in *Bartonia*. 8. *Ottelburg* in *Galnidia*, of which little memorable. 9. *Marienwerder*, the furtheſt of the Dukes eſtate towards the *Viſtula*, and the ordinary reſidence of the Biſhop of *Pomeſan*. Beſides which, there are reckoned in this diviſion, 80 good Towns more, and about 54 Caſtles, though not of much obſervation in the courſe of ſtory.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King are 1. *Braunsburg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, which they call *Friſch Haffe*; a Town of good trade by reaſon of the commodious Haven; and the ordinarie reſidence of the Biſhop of *Warmia*. 2. *Frawnburg*, on the ſame Bay, not far from *Braunsburg*. 3. *Elbinge*, on the ſame Bay, not far from a fair and fiſhful Lake; well-traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants. 4. *Reſel*, the chief Town of the Dioceſs and Dukedom of *Warmie*. 5. *Strasburg*, in *Micklow*, confining on *Poland*, eſpecially ſo called; at the ſiege whereof by *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Swedon*, *Anno* 1628. *Elias Tripe*, one of the *Enginiers* of that King, found out the uſe of *Leather Ordnance* which afterwards did that King great ſervice in the Wars of *Germany*. 6. *Culm*, on the River *Viſtula*, a Biſhops See. 7. *Mariemberg*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch Knights*, *Anno* 1302, and made the ſeat of the *Great Maſters* of their *Order*, tranſlated firſt from *Ptolemais*, or *Acon* in *Syria*, to the City of *Venice*; from thence to *Marburg*; and at laſt to this place by *Sifride* the twelfth *great Maſter* of it: whoſe conſtant reſidence in this Town, occaſioned the Biſhop of *Culm* to remove thither alſo. A very fair and well-built City, the chief of thoſe which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by whom ſo well garriſoned, and furniſhed with ſuch ſtore of victuals, ammunition, and other neceſſaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a ſix years ſiege. But it proved otherwiſe when beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in leſs ſpace than ſo many moneths; on the ſettling of a Peace betwixt the Crowns, rendred again unto the King of *Poland*. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleaſant Iſland, made by the *Nagot* and the *Wixell*; for the fertilitie of the ſoyl, and the great number of Houſes, Villages, and People, not equalled (for the muchneſs of it) in all this Countrey. 8. *Newburg*, on the Weſt-ſide of the *Viſtula*, or *Wixel*, in the Countrey called *Pomerella*; once part of *Pomerania*, but given by *Suantibore* Duke of *Pomeren*, *Anno* 1107. to *Bugeſlaus* his ſecond Son; whoſe poſterity enjoyed it till the year 1295. when *Meſtevin* the ſecond, dying without iſſue male, gave it to *Primiſlaus*, Duke of the *Polonians*, whoſe Succeſſors have ever ſince enjoyed it by that donotion. 9. *Dirſchaw*, or *Darſaw*, (in *Latine Darſovia*) a well-fortified Town, and of great importance, on the ſame ſide of the River, and the ſame Country of *Pomerella*. 10. *Dantzick*, in *Latine* called *Dantiſcum*, and ſometimes *Gedanum*, ſituate on the ſame ſide of the River alſo, a fair and well-built City, the Houſes for the moſt part of Brick, and the reſt of Stone, raiſed with great beauty and magnificence, ſix or ſeven floors high: beautified with a fair Council-houſe for affairs of State, and many publick Gardens for diſport and exerciſe. It conſiſteth of three Cities, governed by as many *Senates*: the one called *Furſtat*, or the fore-City, the ſecond *Altſtat*, or the old City, and the third *Reichſtat*, or the Emperors Citie; but all encompaſſed with one Wall, and governed by one chief *Senate*, or Common-Council choſen out of all three. A Biſhops See, and the ſecond in eſteem and ranck, of all the *Hanſe-Towns*, of ſo great trade, and ſuch a noted *Granary* of all ſorts of Corn iſſued from hence to ſupply the wants of other Countreys, that a thouſand meaſures of Wheat (beſides their Commodities in proportion) are here daily ſold. Heretofore it was reckoned as *Imperial*, but now eſteemed a *Free-ſtate*, acknowledging the Kings of *Poland* for their *Protector*; to whom they allow many *cuſtoms* upon their Merchandiſe, and permit his Officers to abide there for receving of them. The firſt Town in the Kingdom of *Poland*, which gave entrance to the Doctrines of *Luther*, *Anno* 1525. but in ſo tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his opinions, depoſed the old Common-Council-men, and created new ones of their own; prophaned the Churches, robb'd them of their Ornaments, and ſhamefully abuſed the *Prieſts*, and Religious Perſons, aboliſhed the *Maſs*, and altered all things at their pleaſure. But by the coming of the King they grew ſomewhat quieter; Having one Convent of *Black Friers*, and two of *Nuns*, who ſtill enjoy the exerciſe of their *Religion*. 11. *Melvin*, a noted Port Town, and of great reſort, eſpecially by the *Engliſh* Merchants, who had here their *Staple* for the *Bal-*

Pruſſia. *tick.* A ſmall, but fair, and well-built City, and fortified with a very good Wall, governed like *Dansk*, after the manner of a Free Eſtate, or Common-wealth, under the Patronage or Protection of the Kings of *Poland*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the moſt potent Nation of this Tract, extended all along the Coaſt of the *Baltick*; from them by *Ptolomy* called *Sinus Venedicus*: containing under them the *Githones*, *Phinny*, *Sulanes*, *Phrungudiones*, *Avarini*; and more within the Land, the *Sudini* and *Galinda*, whoſe name the Dukedom, or Province of *Galindia* doth ſtill retain. But great and potent though they were, they were ſubdued by the *Boruſſi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphean* Mountains: who, weary of their own cold and barren Dwellings, removed into the Weſtern parts; and vanquiſhing the *Venedi*, and thoſe other Nations, poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country, which they called *Boruſſia*, now by us named *Pruſſia*. By *Venedus*, one of their Princes, having twelve Sons in all, it was divided into twelve Provinces or Dukedoms; one for every Son: continuing by that means diſtracted into divers petit Principalities, till the coming of the *Marian*, or *Dutch Knights*, ſent hither by *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1215. by whom the Provinces, or Dukedoms of *Sudavia*, *Michlow*, and the greateſt part of *Nadravia*, were laid waſte and deſolate; the reſt ſubmitted to their power, and received the Goſpel. After this, it continued ſubject to this Order of Knights, till the year 1419. when weary of their Extortion, and the continual change of *Maſters*, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their obedience; ſeconded by the yielding up of *Mariemberg*, with many other Towns and Caſtles, ſold to King *Caſſimir* by the Garriſon Souldiers, *Anno* 1457 for 476000 *Florens*. But the Knights diſdaining to be ſo dealt withall, and refuſing to ſwear allegiance to the King of *Poland*, they brake out into open War; managed with various ſucceſs on both ſides, *Ludovicus* the then *Great Maſter*, being ſo ſucceſsful at the firſt, that he once beat the King out of the Field, routed his whole Army, ſlew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobilitie: not vanquiſhed at laſt, but by the treacherie and rebellion of his own People. In the end, wearied and worn out on both ſides by continual Wars, *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, then *Great Maſter*, having for fourteen years together couragiouſly maintained the honour of his Order; and for the four laſt years importuned in vain the aſſiſtance of the Emperour and Princes in *Germany*, began to think of ſome expedient to compound the buſineſs. Being inclined to *Luther*'s Doctrins, and willing to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate; he ſecretly practiſed with *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, to end the War to the advantage of both Parties. By whom at laſt it was agreed, that *Albert* ſhould relinquiſh his Order, and ſurrender all *Pruſſia* into the hands of the King; that the King poſſeſſing the Weſtern parts, with the Town of *Nariemberg*, and the Soveraigntie of *Dansk*, and *Melvin*, ſhould inveſt *Albert*, with the Title of Duke of *Pruſſia*, eſtating on him and the Heirs of his body, the whole Eaſtern Moiety, containing the Provinces, or Dukedoms before ſpecified; and finally, that *Albert*, and his Heirs ſhould hold the ſaid Eſtate, as ***Homagers*** to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all Aſſemblies at the King's right hand. According to this Agreement, *Anno* 1525. *Albert* attired in the compleat habit of Maſter of the *Dutch* Order, preſents himſelf humbly on his knees, before the King *Sigiſmund* at *Cracow*, the King then ſitting on his Throne. The King raiſing him from the ground, cauſed him to put off thoſe Robers, and attire himſelf in a *Ducat Habit*; which done, an Inſtrument was read and publiſhed, whereby the King conferred upon him and the Heirs of his Bodie, the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*, to be held of him and his Succeſſors Kings of *Poland*. An act, at which the whole Order were extreamly incenſed; but they could not help it: and thereupon retired into *Germany*, where there were ſome good Lands left, to maintain ſuch of them who had no minde to quit that *military honour*: leaving their own Eſtates in *Pruſſia* to the King and the Duke; whoſe Succeſſors have hitherto enjoyed their Part of it, with the Title of

DUKES of *PRUSSIA*.

1525 1 *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, Son of *Frederick* Marqueſs of *Onalsbach*, or *Ansbach*, created Maſter of the Order by the Emperour *Maximinian*, Anno 1511. and the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, by *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, Anno 1525. founded the Univerſitie of *Coninsberg*, Anno 1544.

1568 2 *Albert Frederick*, Son of *Albert* the firſt Duke, married *Marie Elianor*, Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c.

3 *Anne*, eldeſt Daughter of Duke *Albert Frederick*, Dutcheſs of *Pruſſia*, brought the Eſtate in marriage to

4 *John Sigiſmund*, Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenbourg*, confirmed therein by *Sigiſmund* the 3d. of *Poland*, pretending an *Eſcheat* thereof for want of Heirs males of the Bodie of *Albert* the firſt Duke.

5 *George William*, Marqueſs and Electour of *Brandenbourg*, in right of his Father, Duke of *Pruſſia*, in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother; and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by deſcent from *Marie Eleanor* his Grandmother.

6 *Frederick William*, Son of *George William*, Marqueſs and Electour of *Brandenbourg*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*; of whoſe inveſtiture in the Dukedom of *Pomeren*, and other large and goodly Signeuries, we have ſpoke elſewhere.

As for the Government of this Province, ſtanding thus divided, that of the Duke is more *Monarchical* than that of King; the one being abſolute and uncontroulable in his Eſtates, the other ſubject to the great *Council* of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, *Delegates* appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal juſtice, either at *Mariemberg* or *Elbing*, do compound the buſineſſe: who together with ſome other of the Dukes nomination, receive all *Appeals*, in which the Duke is intereſſed as one of the parties.

The *Revenues* of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 *Ducats* yearly.

The Arms thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Vert*, Membred and Crowned *Or*, or langued *Gules*.

10 *POLAND.*

POLAND, properly and ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Maſſovia*, *Podlaſſia*, and *Lituania*; on the Weſt, with *Sileſia*, and the Marquiſate of *Brandenbourg*; on the North, with *Pruſſia*; and on the South, with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*. It is in length 480 *Italian* miles, 300 of the ſame miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is ſaid) from the word *Pole*, ſignifying as much as *Plain*; the Country being *Plain* and level, little ſwelled with hils.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but ſharp and cold; the Country *plain*, ſhaded with thick dark woods, parts of the *Hercynian*, full of wild beaſts for hunting, and of Bees for honey, which they have here in great abundance: together with ſuch plenty of grain, but of *Rie* eſpecially, by reaſon of the continual breaking up of new grounds gained out of the *Foreſts*, that it may be called the *Granary* or Store-houſe of the *Weſtern* parts of *Europe*, ſent down the *Wexel* unto *Dantzick*, and thence tranſported by the Merchant into other Countries, according to their ſeveral wants.

The Character of the people we have had before; adding now only, that in matters of war they are ſtoute and reſolute, ſo forwards in giving the charge and purſuit of the enemy, that *John Vaſiliwich* the *Great Duke* of *Moſcovy*, comparing them with the Souldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to ſay, that the *Muſcovites wanted a ſpur to drive them forwards; and the Polanders had need of a bridle to hold them back*. Their language is the *Sclavonian* tongue; moſt generally ſpoken alſo in the reſt of the Provinces; but with ſome difference in the *dialect* or pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the *Greater* and the *Leſſer* Poland. The *Greater* lying wholly on the Weſtern ſide of the *Wexel*, and ſo accounted antiently as a part of *Germany*, contains 9 diviſions, under the juriſdiction of the 9 Palatines, 1. *Poſn*, 2. *Kaliſch*, 3. *Siradia*, 4. *Larcitia*, 5. *Uladiſlaw*, 6. *Breſtus*, 7. *Rava*, 8. *Ploczko*, and 9. *Dobrzin*: each of them ſo called from ſome Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the reſt contained in them, are 1 *Poſna*, a Biſhops See, and the principal of the *Greater* Poland, ſeated amongſt hills on the River *Warta*; built of free-ſtone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River; but much ſubject unto inundations, which add much ſtrength unto the place: of great reſort by reaſon of the *Marts* or *Fairs* holden twice a year. 2. *Koſcien*, ſituate amongſt *Mariſhes*, and fortified with a double wall. 3. *Oſtreſow*, bordering on *Sileſia*, begirt with woods. 4. *Gueſna*, the antienteſt Town of *Poland*, founded by *Lechus* their firſt Prince, the ſeat of him and his ſucceſſors, till removed to *Cracow*: ſituate in *Kaliſch*, and by old preſcription the firſt place for the inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*; in regard that here Prince *Boleſlaus* the King, received the *Regal Diadem* at the hands of *Otho* the third. The Town well-walled, and the See of the Archbiſhop; who is the *Primate* of the kingdom, by antient priviledge the *Popes Legate* for all *Sarmatia Europæa*, and in the abſence of the King or *interregnums*, the *Vicar General* of the kingdom, having power to ſummon the *Diets*, to conclude and publiſh their Decrees. 5. *Petrocow*, a walled Town, in the *Palatinate* or diviſion of *Siradia*, ſituate on a *mooriſh* ſoil: the place in former times of the General *Diets*, ſince removed to *Warſaw*. 6. *Vladiſlaw* on the *Wexel* or *Viſtulæ*, a Biſhops See. 7. *Bedgoſt*, a walled Town on the *Bard*, a navigable River; conveying the Merchandiſe of theſe parts into the *Viſtula*. 8. *Kruſwick*, in *Breſty*, built of wood, ſtanding on a great Lake named *Gopla*, in the Caſtle whereof *Popielus* the ſecond Duke of *Poland*, was after a ſtrange manner devoured with Rats, ſwarming out of the Lake. 9. *Ploczko*, upon the *Viſtula*, a walled Town, and a Biſhops See, with a Caſtle to it. 10. *Warſaw*, upon the banks of the ſame River: of no great note in former times, but of late grown the beſt-frequented and moſt traded Town in all this Province: honoured for the moſt part with the Court of the King, the holding of all publique Diets (removed from *Petrocow*, to this place) and the Tranſaction of all buſineſſes both of peace and war; which muſt needs draw to it great reſort of all ſorts of people; the fruitfullneſſe of the ſoil, and commodiouſneſſe of the ſituation rendring it very capable of thoſe publique meetings. 11. *Mlawa*, bordering on the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*.

The *LESSER POLAND* lying on the South of the *Greater*, and divided by the River *Wexel*, comprehendeth only three diviſions under the Government of the Palatines of *Cracow*. 2. *Sendomir*, and *Lublin*. Principal Cities of the which, are 1 *Cracow*, upon the *Wexel*, (called in *Latine Cracovia*) a Biſhops See, the chief of all the Kingdom, the ſeat of the Prince, and the Sepulture of the former Kings. By *Ptolomy* called *Carodunum*; fortified with a double wall (of the old faſhion) a deep ditch, the Caſtle of *Vavel* ſituate on the top of an high rock; and beautified with an Univerſity, or general ſtudy of good Arts and Sciences. The buildings are more fair than elſewhere in *Poland*, of free ſtone, and four ſtories high; but for the moſt part covered with *Shingles*, or tiles of wood: in the midſt a large *market-place*, in form quadrangular; and in the middle of that the *Common-Council* houſe, about which are many ſhops of Merchants. On one ſide of it ſtandeth the *Cathedral* Church; and on the Eaſt-ſide of the City, the *Palace Royal*, high-ſeated on an hill overlooking both the Town and Country: fair and well built, of forme ſomewhat near a *Quadrangle*, but lying open to the

South without any buildings above the wall; affording thereby to the *Gallery*, being on the North ſide of the Caſtle, the more excellent proſpect. 2 *Lelow*, a walled Town with a Caſtle, on the River *Biulo*. 3 *Sendemir*, a walled Town with a Caſtle alſo, ſeated on a hill, under which the *Viſtula* or *Wixel*. 4 *Wiſlieza*, a walled Town amongſt Mariſhes, encompaſſed with the River *Nid*. 5 *Lublin*, a walled Town, but more ſtrongly fortified by the *mariſhes* and waters, with which environed: remarkable for three yearly *Marts*, drawing hither Merchants from moſt parts adjoyning, as alſo *Muſcovites*, *Armenians*, *Turks*, and *Grecians*; the *Jews*, inhabiting the greateſt part of the ſuburbs, have here their *Synagogue*; making the Town, eſpecially at time of thoſe *Marts*, a *medley* of all Nations and Religions. 6. *Caſimir*, on the *Wixell*, ſo named from the founder of it, a King of *Poland*.

The old inhabitants of this Country, were the *Arii*, *Helverona*. *Elyſii*, and the *Naharvali*, parts of the *Suevi Lygii* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; all of them lying on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Wixell*, by conſequence, within the bounds of the antient *Germany*: the people of all the reſt of the Provinces before deſcribed, being of the *Sarmatian* race, next neighbours to the *Germans*, and not much unlike them in perſons, cuſtoms, or conditions. But theſe diſperſed and ſcattered Nations of *Sarmatia Europaa*, being united in the common name of *Sclaves*, part of them ſetled in that part which we now call *Poland*; at that time reckoned and accompted of as a part of *Germany*. The time of their firſt coming hither, and the manner of their government when firſt ſetled here, is not very well known. But for the firſt it is moſt certain, that it was ſome time, and that not long after the death of *Mauritius* the Eaſtern Emperor: and for the next it is as certain, that on the comming of *Lechus*, a *Croatian*, who fled his Country for a murder, with his brother *Zechius*, they ſetled into a more conſtant form of *Government*, than before they did. For *Lechus*, ſeeing his brothers good ſucceſſe in *Bohemia*, where the *Sclaves* received him for their Prince, paſſed into *Poland*, the next Province, and was as cheerfully received by the *Sclaves* thereof: who looked upon him as a Prince of their own *extraction*, and without quarrel or competition, ſubmitted themſelves to his commands, *Anno* 650. or thereabouts. Of this there is good *conſtat* amongſt our Authors. But neither the names or number of his ſucceſſors do occur in ſtory, till the time of *Crocus* the founder of *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and the *Legiſlator* of this people. After this, the ſucceſſion of their Princes, and the ſucceſſe of their affairs, becomes more certain: the Eſtate hereof being much improved, by the conqueſt of many *Sarmatian* Countries, all which together conſtitute and make up the kingdom of *Poland*; ſo called from this predominating and prevailing Province. The ſum of their affairs is this. The poſterity of *Crocus* falling into *Popielus* the ſecond, *Piaſtus* is elected Duke, the Princes from that time forwards becoming *Elective*, but alwayes with reſpect to the next of blood. In the time of *Mieciſlaus*, ſon of *Nemomyſtus*, they received the *Goſpel*, *Anno* 963. *Boleſlaus* the ſon of *Mieciſlaus*, was the firſt who had the title of a King conferred upon him by the Emperor *Otho* the third, about the year 1001. relinquiſhed by *Vladiſlaus* the firſt, and not reſumed again till the time of *Primiſlaus*, Duke of *Poſna*, Anno 1300. after which perpetual. In the perſon of this *Primiſlaus*, *Pomerella* is united to the ſtate of *Poland*, Anno 1295. In that of *Jagello*, or *Vladiſlaus* the fifth, the great Dukedom of *Lituania*; incorporated into this body as a Member of it, in the time of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*. By *Uladiſlaus* the ſixt, ſon of *Jagello*, *Podolia* and *Ruſſia Nigra*, are alſo added; by *Sigiſmund* the firſt, *Pruſſia* and *Maſſovia*; *Podlaſſia* by *Sigiſmun Auguſtus*, who alſo took *Volhinia* out of *Lituania*: by *Stephen*, the actual poſſeſſion of the greateſt part of *Livonia*; by *Sigiſmund* the third, a title to the Crown of *Sweden*. The Princes follow in this Order.

DUKES and KINGS of *POLAND*.

A. Ch.		
649	1	*Lechus* of *Croatia*, the firſt Duke; whoſe poſterity failing, twelve *Palatines* were choſen to direct affairs, and the ſtate became *Ariſtocratical*.
	2	*Crocus*, the *Legiſlator* of *Poland*.
	3	*Lechus* II. ſon of *Crocus*.
	4	*Venda*, the daughter of *Crocus*, and ſiſter of *Lechus* the ſecond.
	5	*Leſcus* the firſt.
	6	*Leſcus* II.
	7	*Leſcus* III. Contemporary with *Charles* the great.
	8	*Popielus*, ſon of *Leſcus* the third.
	9	*Popielus* II. devoured in moſt horrid manner by *rats* and *mice*, together with his wife and children; the laſt of the poſterity or houſe of *Crocus*.
800	10	*Piaſtus*, the firſt Duke *elected*.
	11	*Zemovitus*, ſon of *Piaſtus*.
	12	*Leſcus* IV ſon of *Zemovitus*.
	13	*Nemomyſlus*, ſon of *Leſcus* the fourth.
	14	*Mieciſlaus*, ſon of *Nemomyſlus*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Polonians*, founded the Biſhopricks of *Cracow* and *Gueſna*.
1000	15	*Boleſlaus*, ſon of *Mieciſlaus*, the firſt who had the title of King conferred on him by *Otho* the third.
1025	16	*Mieciſlaus* II. ſon of *Boleſlaus*.
1041	17	*Caſimir*, ſon of *Mieciſlaus*.

1059	18	*Boleſlaus* II. ſon of *Caſimer*, depoſed, and dyed an Exile in *Hungary*.
1082	19	*Uladiſlaus*, brother of *Boleſlaus* the ſecond, abandoned the title of King, and only uſed that of *Prince* or *Duke*.
1103	20	*Boleſlaus* III. ſon of *Uladiſlaus* Duke of *Poland*.
1140	21	*Uladiſlaus* II. ſon of *Boleſlaus* the third, outed by his Brethren, and at laſt eſtated in *Sileſia*; united formerly to *Poland* from the time of *Lechus*.
1146	22	*Boleſlaus* IV. brother of *Uladiſlaus* the ſecond.
1175	23	*Mieciſlaus* III. brother of *Boleſlaus* and *Uladiſlaus*, depoſed by his brother *Caſimer*.
1178	24	*Caſimer* II. brother of the three laſt Princes.
1195	25	*Leſcus* V. ſon of *Caſimer* the ſecond, depoſed by *Mieciſlaus* the third.
1203	26	*Uladiſlaus* III. ſon of *Mieciſlaus* the third, depoſed by *Leſcus* the fift; who again ſeiſed on the Eſtate.
1243	27	*Boleſlaus* V. ſirnamed *Pudicus*.
1280	28	*Leſcus* VI. ſirnamed *Niger*, the adopted ſon of *Boleſlaus*, and his *Couſin German* once removed, after whoſe death, *Anno* 1289. the Eſtate being diſtracted into many factions, was for ſome time without a Prince: ſetled at laſt on
1295	29	*Primiſlaus*, ſirnamed *Poſthumus*, Duke of *Poſna*, who again aſſumed the name of *King*, continued ever ſince by his ſucceſſors.
1296	30	*Uladiſlaus*, ſirnamed *Locticus*, brother of *Leſcus Niger*, outed by *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1300. after whoſe death, *Anno* 1306. he reſumed the Eſtate.
1333	31	*Caſimer* III. ſirnamed the *Great*, ſon of *Uladiſlaus* the fourth, the firſt eſtabliſher of the kingdom, after all thoſe troubles died without iſſue.
1371	32	*Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, ſon of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, by *Elizabeth* the ſiſter of *Caſimir*.
1383	33	*Heduigis*, the youngeſt daughter of *Lewis*, her elder ſiſter *Mary* ſucceeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, choſen Queen of *Poland*, married to *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania*, Chriſtened and called *Uladiſlaus* the fift.
1386	34	*Uladiſlaus* V. Duke of *Lituania*, elected King upon his marriage with Queen *Heduigis*.
1435	35	*Uladiſlaus* VI. ſon of *Jagello*, or *Unladiſlaus* the fift, by *Sophia* daughter of the Duke of *Kiovia*. He was King of *Hungary* alſo; ſlain at the battel of *Varna* by *Amurath* the ſecond, King of the *Turks*, without iſſue.
1447	36	*Caſimer* IV. brother of *Uladiſlaus*, firſt brought the Knights of *Pruſſia* under his command; Knight of the Order of the *Garter*.
1493	37	*John Albert*, the ſecond ſon of *Caſimer*; his elder brother *Uladiſlaus* being permitted, on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*.
1502	38	*Alexander*, the third ſon of *Caſimer*.
1507	39	*Sigiſmund*, the fourth ſon of *Caſimer*, his elder brethren dying without iſſue; ſuppreſſed the Order of the *Dutch Knights* in *Pruſſia*, and added part thereof unto his Eſtate.
1548	40	*Sigiſmund* II. ſirnamed *Auguſtus*, the laſt of the male iſſue of *Jagello*.
1574	41	*Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, ſon of *Henry* the ſecond, *French* King, choſen on the death of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, the only ſtranger to the blood in all this Catalogue. On the death of his brother *Charles* the ninth, he departed ſecretly into *France*, where he ſucceeded by the name of *Henry* the third.
1579	42	*Stephen Bathour*, Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, by the recommendation of *Amurath* the third Emperour of the *Turks*, having firſt maried *Anne*, ſiſter of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, is *elected* King; he united *Livonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Moſcovite*.
1587	43	*Sigiſmund* III. ſon of *John* King of *Swethland*, and of *Catharine* his wife, another of the ſiſters of *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, King of *Poland* and *Sweden*. He valiantly oppoſed *Oſman* the *Great Turk*, invading his Dominions, with an Army of 300000 fighting men.
1633	44	*Uladiſlaus* VII. eldeſt ſon of *Sigiſmund* the third; after whoſe death the kingdom was extremely embroyled by factions, eſpecially by the mutinous and ſeditious *Coſaques*; not fully ſetled by the election of
1648	45	*Caſimer* V. brother of *Uladiſlaus* the ſeventh, now King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1648.

The Government of this Kingdom is nothing leſs than *Monarchical*. For though the firſt Dukes hereof were *abſolute* Princes, and ruled after a *Deſpotical* manner; having power not only of the eſtates of their ſubjects, but of life and death, without *formalities* of Law: yet when they once became *elective*, they loſt much of that power; which decayed ſo by little and little, that at the laſt the King is counted little better than a *Royal ſhadow*; *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poets Language. A diminution which began firſt in the times of *Lewis* of *Hungary*, and *Jagello* of *Lituani*: who to gain the ſucceſſion to the Kingdom contrary to Law, the one for his daughter, the other for his ſon, departed with many of their *Royalties*, and *Prerogatives*, to buy the voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the *Nobility* in all their *elections* have ſo limitted and reſtrained the Kings authority, and enlarged their own, that without their conſent in Council, he may neither make warr, nor treat of peace, nor impoſe taxes, nor alienate any of his Demeans: nor do any thing of importance which concerns the Publick; in ſo much as *Boterus* a great *Stateſman* doth expreſly ſay, that the Government of *Poland* doth rather ſeem an *Ariſtocraſie* than a *Monarchy*, a Commonwealth rather than a Kingdom. Beſides, the King not only takes a ſolemn Oath at his Coronation, to confirm all the rights and Privileges, which have been granted to the Subject by his Predeceſſours: but adds this clauſe *Quod ſi Sacramentum meum violavero, incolæ Regni nullam nobis obedientiam præſtare tenebuntur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects ſhall not be obliged to yield him any obedience. Which as *Bodinus* well obſerveth, doth rather ſavour of the condition of a *Prince of the Senate*, than of the Majeſty of a King; reſpected accordingly by the great ones, who look not on him as their *King*, but their *elder Brother*, (or perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three dayes laſting. Which notwithſtanding, the King once choſen and inthroned, hath ſole power in many things, without conſulting with the *Senate*; as *viz.* in aſſembling *Diets*, chooſing the ſecular Counſellers, diſpoſing abſolutely of his *Vaſſals*, and the Revenues of the Crown to what uſe he pleaſeth; being *ſole Judge* of the Nobility in *Criminal* cauſes, which is a ſtrong bridle to raign them in with. By which, and either uniting himſelf unto the *Clergy*, or the well-forming of his party amongſt the *Nobility*, he may do many things not allowable in ſtrictneſs of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government, being proportionable to the ſtrength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be obſerved, that none but the *Clergy* and *Nobility*, have any ſuffrage in the *election* of the Kings: that is to ſay, the 26 *Palatines*, and 60 *Chaſtellans*, with the four *Marſhals*, and ſome others of the principal Officers of State, in behalf of the *Nobility*; and the Archbiſhops and Biſhops, in the name of the *Clergy*; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reaſon, why there is ſo much care taken to preſerve the priviledges of the two firſt Orders; without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third: moſt miſerably oppreſſed on all ſides, rather as *Bondmen* than *Tenants* in reſpect of their Lords, and not ſo much ſubjects, as plain *Slaves*, in regard of the King; whereof ſomewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the *Common people* excluded only out of theſe *elections*, but have no *place* nor *vote* in the Counſel of State, or in any of the *General Diets*: the firſt conſiſting only of the *Prelates*, *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and principal Officers, ſpoken of before, the nominating of which pertaineth to the King alone; the other aggregated of all perſons of thoſe ſeveral Orders, and the *Delegates* of each Province and Principal City, ſent thither for the reſt of the *Nobility*, whom they repreſent. Yet notwithſtanding this excluſion of the *Commons* from this *Common-Council*, they there conclude of all matters of publick intereſſe, not properly determinable by the *great Council*, or *Council of State*: in which perhaps (eſpecially in the caſe of taxes) the *Commons* may be more concerned than any other.

The *Forces* of this Kingdome or Common-wealth relate unto *Land ſervice* only. For though they have a large Sea-coaſt upon the *Baltick*; yet the *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Hanſe-towns*, having got the ſtart of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for *Land-Forces*, they conſiſt of Horſe eſpecially, whereof they are able to raiſe eight-ſcore thouſand, (that is to ſay, 10000 out of *Poland*, and 60 or 70000 out of *Lituania*) of which one half at leaſt are thought to be fit for action. And this ſeems probable enough, in regard of thoſe great bodies of Horſe, which *Stephen* and *Sigiſmund* the third, had againſt the *Moſcovite*; whereof the one had 40000 and the other 30000 (beſides draught-horſes,) very well appointed. But for their *Foot*, they are not at ſo good a paſs, their *Infantry* being for the moſt part *Germans*, or *Hungarians*, whom they hire for money; of which two Nations King *Stephon*, in his enterpriſe upon *Livonia*, had no leſs than 16000 to convey his Ordnance. Upon confidence of this great number of Horſe, and their readineſs to ſerve upon all occaſions, the *Polanders* bear themſelves ſo high, that they neither fear the power of a forein Enemy, nor regard the fortifying of their Towns, or the building of *Fortreſſes* on their *Frontires*: boaſting that they are able to defend their Countrey, without ſuch helps, againſt any Nation whatſoever; and truſting more to a *Caſtle of bones*, (as was couragiouſly ſaid by *Savage* an *Engliſh* Gentleman) than to a *Caſtle of ſtones*. And for the railing of theſe Horſe, the Gentlemen of the Countrey are bound by their tenure, (like the *Turks Timariots*) not only to ſerve in perſon for defence of the Realm, but to maintain a certain number of Horſe in continual readyneſs: eſpecially in thoſe parts which lie next the *Tartar*, where their numbers are exceeding great; and with whom many times they joyn to afflict and haraſs their own countrey, though in pay againſt them. Of theſe, ſome ſerve in the manner of our *men of Arms*, ſome like unto our *Light-horſe*, and others like the *Tartars*. And theſe they call commonly by the name of *Coſacques* (or *Adventurers*:) a race men trained of up to ſteal, waſt and depopulate, whereſoever they come, having little but their *ſwords* to live by; a murderous and wicked people, chiefly in their drunkenneſs, and that not only towards ſtrangers, but their natural Countrey-men. The cauſe of that ſedition, which for ſome years paſt, hath more depopulated and diſtracted that flouriſhing kingdom, than all the Armies of the *Turks*.

As for the *Revenues* of this King, they are computed at 600000 Crowns *per annum*, drawn chiefly out of Salt, and ſome Mines of Silver: the profits ariſing from the *Demeaſns* of the Crown, being for the moſt part, given away in penſions and gratuities, to the *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and other great men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his deſires. Moſt of which ſum is put up yearly in his Coffers, or expended in the purchaſe of eſtates for his younger ſons; his daughters being marryed at the publick charge, and expenſes of his houſhold defrayed by the *Lituanians* and moſt part of *Poland*, for the time that he remains among them. Nor do the wars at any time exhauſt his *Treaſure*, in which caſe by decree of the *Diets*, he is inabled to lay impoſitions and taxes upon the people, levied in the way of *Exciſe*, or upon their lands; which do amount to ſuch a ſum, that by means hereof, King *Stephen* maintained war three years againſt the *Moſcovite*, without expending any thing of his own *Revenue*.

Chief *Orders* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom are,

1. The *Marian* or *Dutch Knights*, inſtituted under the walls of *Acon*, or *Ptolemais*, in the *Holy Land*; in a Church whereof dedicated to the bleſſed *Virgin*, their Order was firſt allowed; from thence called *Equites Mariani*. The inſtitution was in the year 1190. The firſt *great Maſter*, *Henry Walpot*. The *Chriſtians* being beaten out of *Syria*, they firſt removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Marpurg* in *Haſſia*; where, and in ſome other parts of *Germany*, they were endowed with fair *Revenues*, from which named *Equites Teutonici*, or the *Dutch Knights*; ſent into *Pruſſia* by the Emperor *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1239. or called in, as ſome ſay, by the *Muſcovite* againſt the *Pruſſians*; they fixed their ſeat at *Mariemberg*, under *Sigefride*, the ſecond *Great Maſter*, *Anno* 1340. or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus* the 18th. *Great Maſter*, they were forced to ſubmit to *Caſimer* the fourth of *Poland*, *Anno* 1450. the occaſion of the long war between them and the *Polanders*, continuing till the time of *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, the 24. and laſt *Great Maſter* in this Countrey; who ſurrendred his order (as before ſaid) to *Sigiſmund* the firſt, by whom he was created the firſt *Duke* of *Pruſſia*. Such of the *Knights* as diſreliſhed this action, retired into *Germany*, where they choſe one *Walter Croneberg* maſter of the Order: the title afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian* one of the younger ſons of *Maximilian* the ſecond; but the *Order* ſenſibly decaying, and at this time of little eſtimation in the world.

2. Of the *Port-glaive*, or *Sword-bearers* (*Enſiferi* in *Latine*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third; by whom ſent into *Livonia* to defend the Preachers of the *Goſpel* againſt the *Infidels*, at the firſt converſion of that Countrey. Being too weak to effect that buſineſs, they united themſelves with the *Dutch Knights* by the Popes authority, and inſtead of *Knights of the Sword*, were called *Knights of the Croſs*. Separated from it in the time of *Univus* their *Great Maſter*, *Anno* 1541. the *Dutch Knights* being then diſpoſſeſſed of *Pruſſia*, and theſe inclining wholly to the opinions of *Luther*, they a while ſubſiſted of themſelves: what became of them afterwards, and how the *Order* was extinguiſhed, hath been ſhewn already in *Livonia*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are quarterly, 1 *Gules*, an Eagle *Argent*, Crowned and Armed *Or*, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2 *Gules*, a Chevalier armed *Cap-a-pea*, advancing his ſword *Argent*, mounted on a barbed Courſer of the *ſecond*, for the Dukedom of *Lituania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*

Of the *Romiſh* Church, Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 19.
Of the *Greek* Church, Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 6.

Univerſities 4.
viz.
Cracow. *Dantzick.*
Vila. *Regimont.*

And ſo much for POLAND.

THE

THE CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS.

IN our way from *Poland* unto *Hungary* (whether now we go) we muſt of neceſſity paſs over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the antient boundary of *Sarmatia Europaa*, from the reſt of *Europe*. A long and craggy ledge of hills, which beginning near the City of *Presburg*, and the borders of *Auſtria*, paſs on in a continual courſe till they come to the very *Euxine* Sea: and by that means not only divide *Hungary* from *Poland*, eſpecially ſo called; but parting *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia*, two *Dacian* Regions, from *Ruſſia Nigra* and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian* Kingdom. By *Ptolomy* in his ſecond Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici* (*Sarmatica Rupes*, by *Solinus*,) becauſe diſterminating the *Sarmatian* Nations, (who poſſeſſed the moſt part of it) from *Germany*, and the more Southern parts of *Europe*: and in his third book by one name *Carpates*, or *Mons Carpatus*, ſo called (as ſome think) from the Greek word Καρπὸς, ſignifying *Fruit*: from the fruitfulneſs of it, compared with other Mountains in thoſe Northern Countries. At the preſent known by divers names, according to the Provinces and people which it paſſeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten*, (or a Garden of Herbs) which alludeth to the name of *Carpatus*: by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzal*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria*, where it is at the higheſt, it is called in the *Sclavonian* tongue, by the name of *Tatri*; in the *German*, *Schnebeberg*: where it parteth *Tranſylvania* from *Ruſſia Nigra*, the *Roſſes* call it *Bieſcid*; and the *Dutch* men, *Crapack*. A chain of hills, of more length than fame: not much obſervable in ſtory, but for the ſhutting up the *Hungary*, *Sclaves*, and others of thoſe Northern Nations, which afterward invaded the *Roman* Provinces: nor of much notice at the preſent, but for giving an Original to many of the principal Rivers, which water the Countries lying on both ſides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will paſs them over, and deſcend unto the Plains of *Hungary*.

OF
HUNGARIE.

HUNGARIE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Tranſylvania*, and *Walachia*; on the Weſt, with *Stiria*, *Auſtria*, and *Moravia*; on the North, with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Poland*; and on the South, with *Sclavonia*, and ſome part of *Dacia*. Extended in length from *Presburg* along the *Danow*, to the borders of *Tranſylvania*, for the ſpace of 300 *Engliſh* miles; and 109 of the ſame miles in breadth. The reaſon of the number we ſhall have anon.

It lyeth in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle *Parallels* of the 7th and 9th *Climates*, ſo that the longeſt Summers day in the Southern parts, is but 15 hours and a half, and not above 16 hours in the parts moſt North: taking up all that tract of ground on the North ſide of *Danubius*, poſſeſſed by the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ*, a *Sarmatian* people; and part alſo of *Pannonia Superior*, and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it paſſeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know, that the *Romans* having made themſelves Maſters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the Dioceſe of *Illyricum Occidentale*: that is to ſay, *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Noricum*, and containing part of the *Higher Auſtria*, and the moſt Weſtern parts of the preſent *Hungarie*, on the South ſide of the *Danow*. 2 *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eaſtern parts of *Hungarie*, on the ſame ſide of the River. 3 *Valeria*, antiently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Stiria* or *Stiermark*, in the Archdukedom of *Auſtria*. And 4 *Savia*, ſo called of the River *Savus*, antiantly part of *Pannonia Inferior*, now called *Windeſchland*, one of the Provinces or Subdiviſions of *Sclavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling with the *Roman* Empire, and this Country being fallen into the hands of other Maſters, it took a new name from the Nations who poſſeſſed themſelves of it; and was called *Hungaria, quaſi Hunni-Avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Huni* and *Avares*, two *Scythian* Nations, who either ſucceſſively or conjunctly were poſſeſſed thereof: or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians* mentioned by *Jornandes* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Country by the Emperor *Arnulph* to aid him in his war againſt *Suantibogius*, King of the *Moravians*. This laſt I look on as moſt probable; the firſt as more probable than that of *Aventine* and others of our later Writers: who finding a poor Province in the moſt North-eaſt point of the *Ruſſian* Empire called *Jugra*, (and by them *Jugaria*) would have the name of *Hungary* to be thence derived.

The people are ſtrong of body, and rude of behaviour, reſpecting neither the *liberal Arts*, nor *mechanick* Trades. The greateſt aſperſion is the name of a *coward*, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of a *Turk*: after which they are priviledged to wear a feather, and by the number of their feathers to ſhew how many *Turks* they have ſlain in battel. They deſire wars, and like no trade better, being naturally ſlothfull (like the *Iriſh*) and therefore beſt approve of that courſe of life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens labour, than take pains for their *living*. Extremely covetous; yet having rather deſire than art to enrich themſelves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingroſſe all their trading, and manage ſuch commodities as the Country yieldeth; which is the cauſe (ſeconded by the oppreſſions of the *Turk* and the *Auſtrian* Princes under whom they are) that none of them riſe to any conſiderable wealth. And for ſuch as have eſtates in land they grow every day more poor than other. For though the *Females* be excluded from inheriting their fathers poſſeſſion (to whom they give no portion, but new Cloaths on the wedding day:) yet being the ſons do equally inherit the Eſtate (as ſuch who hold in *Gavelkind* do here in *England*) it muſt needs be that by ſo many diviſions and ſubdiviſions, the greateſt patrimony that is, will be brought to nothing. Both Sexes in the way of their education are inured to hardneſſe, not ſuffered to lie in beds till the night of their mariage.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt planted here in the time of *Stephen*, ſurnamed the *Saint*, the firſt King of this Countrey; invited thereunto by the ſpecial means and procurement of the Emperor *Henry* the ſecond, giving him upon that condition his ſiſter *Giſla* in mariage, and through the preaching and induſtry of *Albert* Archbiſhop of *Prague*, *Anno* 1016. or thereabouts. Since which time *Chriſtianity* hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and couragiouſly againſt the *Turks*) but broken into fractions and ſubdiviſions among themſelves: ſome pertinaciouſly adhering to the Church of *Rome*, ſome following the doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin*; and ſome, new fancies and opinions diſavowed by all the reſt, free exerciſe of Religion firſt granted by *Maximilian* the 2d. and re-obtained in the time of *Rodolphus* his ſon and ſucceſſor, by the Pacification at *Vienna*, *Anno* 1606. The violating of which Pacification by *Ferdinand* the II. in the beginning of his reign, occaſioned great wars and troubles betwixt him and this people, not quieted in a long time after: yet all theſe different parties do agree in this, to puniſh *adultery* and *fornication* with no leſſe a puniſhment than death; the father forcing his daughter, the husband his wife, and the brother his ſiſter, to the place of their *Execution*.

The language generally here ſpoken, is a kind of *Sclavonian*, differing in *dialect* from the *Polet*: but in the parts adjoyning to *Germany*, the *Dutch* is ſpoken; as the old *Jazygian* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*, the antient ſeat of the *Jazyges Metanaſta*.

The ſoil is wonderful fruitful, yielding corn and fruits in great abundance; the graſſe in ſome places (as in the Iſle of *Comara*) if it be ſuffered to grow to its full length, before the cutting of it down, being ſaid to exceed the height of a man: which doth breed ſuch a number of Cattel, that this Country alone, is thought to be able to feed all *Europe* with fleſh. They yearly ſend into *Germany* and *Sclavonia*, 80000 Oxen: they have Deer, Partridge, Pheaſant, in ſuch ſuperfluity, that any man that will may kill them; which in other places is utterly prohibited, theſe creatures being reſerved as game for Gentlemen. For at that great inſurrection of the *Boors* in *Germany* (before the end of which, 50000 of them were ſlain in fight) their chief demands were, 1. That they might chuſe their own *Miniſters*; 2ly. That they might pay no *tithes* but of corn; 3ly. That they might be free from the power of *Magiſtrates*; 4ly. That wood, timber, and fewel might be comon; 5ly. And eſpecially, That they might hunt and hauk in all times and places. The other commodities of the Country are Gold, Silver, whereof they have ſome very rich *veins*; as alſo of Tin, Lead, Iron, good ſtore of Fiſh, Copper, Wine; this laſt as good as that of *Candie*.

The worthieſt Scholar that ever this kingdom produced, was S. *Hierome*, a worthy Father of the *Latine* Church, born in *Stridon*. The moſt worthy of all their Souldiers, were *Johannes Huniades*, who ſo valiantly reſiſted the incurſions of the *Turks*, and ſlew of them 50000 at the battel at *Maron*. And 2ly. *Matthias Corvinus* his ſon, afterward King of *Hungary*; of whom thus *Adrian* out of a Poet:

——*Patra decus, unica ſtirpis*
Gloria, Pannonicæ *cædis fortiſſimus ultor.*

His Countries pride, the glory of his rarce,
Revenger of th' *Hungarians* late diſgrace.

The principal Rivers are, 1 *Danubius*, ſpoken of before, when we were in *Germany*. 2. *Savus*, which riſing in *Carniola*; 3. *Dravus*, which riſing in *Carinthia*; and 4. *Tibiſcus*, which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountains, pay their tribute to *Danubius*: of which *Tibiſcus* the *Hungarians* uſe to ſay, that two parts are *water*, and the third *fiſh*. Beſides which, and ſome others of inferiour note, there is the famous *Lake* called *Balaton* (by the *Dutch Platſe*) 40 *Italian* miles in length, but of breadth unequal: in ſome places being ten miles broad, and in ſome but three. There be alſo many *medicinal* waters, and more hot *Baths* than any one Country hath in *Europe*: ſome waters alſo of a ſtrange Nature; whereof ſome falling on the ground is turned to ſtone; others (about the Town of *Smolnice*) which falling into Ditches make up a kind of mud, out of which tried and melted they make very good Copper; and ſome again which flow in Winter, and freeze in Summer; and near unto *Biſtrice* or *Menſol*, a ſpring or fountain, out of which cometh a green water, whereof they make Solder for their Gold.

Principal Mountains of this Country are 1. *Carpatus*, the *Sarmathian* or *Carpathian* Mountains ſpoken of before. 2. *Matzan*, near the City *Agria*, covered with rich Vines. 3. *Erdol*, *omnium ampliſſimus*, the largeſt of the three, ſaith the *Atlas minor*. Which words if true, muſt needs be underſtood of the height of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without queſtion it comes ſhort of *Carpatus*.

The Country is commonly divided into the *Upper Hungary*, and the *Lower*: the *Upper* lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the bounds and territories of the *Roman* Empire; the *Lower* lying on the South of that River, and comprehending all *Pannonia Inferior*, and part of *Superior*, two *Roman* Provinces. The *Upper* again ſubdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Countries or *Juridical Reſorts*, that is to ſay, 24 on the Weſt ſide of *Tibiſcus* (or the *Tiſſe*) and 8. on the Eaſt ſide of it: the *Lower* (at the ſame time) 18 only; Of which ten were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*, and the other ſix betwixt the *Dravus* and the *Savus*. But this *Diviſion* and the *Subdiviſions* depending on it, being ſince the coming in of the Turks almoſt out of uſe; we will now look upon it as it ſtands divided at the preſent, betwixt the Emperor as King of *Hungarie*, by a mixt title of *deſcent* and *election*; and the *Great Turk*, as Lord of the moſt part of it, by *Arms* and *conqueſt*, two parts of three at leaſt being forced into his *poſſeſſion*. But here we are to underſtand, that by reaſon of the great jealouſies and diſtruſts betwixt theſe great Princes, every ordinary Town is fortified and garriſoned like a Town of War, and ſo are almoſt all the Houſes of the Nobility and Gentry throughout this Countrey : ſo that it were an infinite labour to ſpecifie in this place all thoſe Towns and Fortreſſes, which do occur in reading the *Hungarian* Hiſtories of theſe latter times. Some of the principal for ſtrength, antiquity, and other mark of eſtimation which is ſet upon them, we ſhall here ſubjoyn.

And firſt in the Emperors part of the Lower *Hungary*, we have 1 *Rab*, on the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Rab*, coming out of the Lower *Hungary*, whence the modern *Dutch* name; by *Antonine* called *Arabon*, by the *French*, *Javarine*; by our preſent *Latiniſts*, *Javoninum*. Memorable heretofore for being the boundary of the two *Pannonides*, *Inferiour* and *Superiour*, hereabouts divided; of late moſt principally for a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Turks*, by whom once taken, *Anno* 1594. but within four years after again recovered, by the induſtry of *Monſieur de Vaudre Court*, a *French* Gentleman, as the *Frenchmen* ſay; but as the *Germans* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenbourg*, at that time Governour of *Komora*. 2. *Altembourg*, in the Road leading towards *Auſtria*, a ſtrong Town, and the beſt Out-work of *Vienna*, for which cauſe much aimed at by the *Turks*, but without ſucceſs. 3. *Caſtle-Novo*, a new-erected Fortreſs, as the name importeth, but of ſpecial ſtrength, erected purpoſely in the time of the Emperour *Rodolph*, to confront the *Turks*. 4. *Sabaria*, antiently the *Metropolis* of *Panonia Superior*; the birth-place of St. *Martin* Biſhop of *Tours*; now of leſs accompt; by the *Hungarians* called *Kimarorubath*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnits*. 5. *Stidon*, the *Sidron* of *Ptolomy*, in the confines of *Hungary* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A Town of good repute, till deſtroyed by the *Gothes*; but after made of more eſteem by the birth of St. *Hierom*, one of the four chief Fathers of the *Latine* Church; and for all parts of human learning, nothing inferiour to the beſt of the *Grecian* Sages. 6. *Sopran*, (*Soprinium* in *Latine*) on the Borders of *Auſtria*. 7. *Komora*, a ſtrong piece in an Iſland of the ſame name, made by the *Circling* of the *Danow*; oft-times attempted by the *Turk*, but in vain at all times. Then in the Upper *Hungary*, we have P. *Presburg*, on the edge of *Auſtria* alſo, but on the North-ſide of the River, the *Carnuntum* of *Antoninus*; but by the modern *Latines* called *Poſonium*; ſeated in a pleaſant healthful Countrey on the River *Lyet*, whoſe waters the *Danow* there receiveth; in the Suburbs whereof, on the top of an high Mountain, ſtandeth a goodly Caſtle, the ordinary reſidence of the Emperors, as Kings of *Hungary*. For though it be a little City, and not very beautiful, yet being ſafe by the neighbourhood of *Auſtria*, it hath been made the *Metropolis* of this Kingdom, ſince the loſs of *Buda*. Before the Walls hereof dyed Count *Dampierri*, one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. 9. *Filec*, a Place of great ſtrength and conſequence, taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* in his firſt attempts upon this Kingdom, and loſt by *Amurath* the 3d. The *Turks* in vain attempting the recovery of it. 10. *Nitri*, a Biſhop's See on the River *Roch*. 11. *Vaccia*, a Biſhop's See alſo on the River *Danubius*, once in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, but reſtored again unto the Chriſtians at the making of the peace between the Emperour *Rodulphus*, and *Sultan Achmet*. 12. *Caſſovin*, a ſtrong Piece towards *Tranſylvania*. 13. *Lippe*, in the borders of that Countrey alſo, commanding the entrances thereof, and therefore much affected by the Princes or *Vaivods* of that Province; poſſeſſed by whom in the latter times of the Emperour *Rodolph*, it was by them incorporated into *Tranſylvania*; but how long it continued ſo, I am not able to ſay. 14. *Tokai*, a Place of great ſtrength, and as great fidelity, the People and Garriſon hereof holding out for the Emperor *Rodolphus*, *Anno* 1605. againſt ſome of his rebellious Subjects, in the time of ſo extreme a famine, that the Souldiers did not onely eat two boys, but many times caſt lots who ſhonld eat one another. 15. *Eperia*, a Place of no leſs conſequence, and exemplary loyaltie. 16. *Newſoll*, or *Newheuſel*, a ſtrong Town, and as ſtrongly fortified, not far from the ſpring-head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621 proved fatal to that great Commander the Count of *Bucquoy*; who at the ſiege hereof (the Town then being in Rebellion againſt *Ferdinand* the ſecond Emperor and King of *Hungary*) loſt his life. For, going privately to view ſome Places of advantage for a general Aſſault, he fell into an Ambuſh of *Hungarians*, who ſuddenly ſet upon him, diſcomfited his ſmall Party, killed firſt his Horſe under him, and at laſt himſelf, having in that skirmiſh received 16 wounds. Slain with him at the ſame time alſo, *Torquato* an *Italian* Prince, Count *Verdugo* a *Spaniſh* Earl, and one of the *Gonzagues* of the Houſe of *Mantua*.

Places of moſt importance in the *Turks* poſſeſſion, are 1. *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Hoffen*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Curta* of *Ptolomy*; by others, the *Abrincum* of *Antonius*: and to have took the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the Brother of *Attila*, ſaid to be the re-founder of it; or from the *Budini*, a *Scythian* people, mentioned in *Herodotus*. Unevenly ſeated amongſt Hills, on the Southern ſhore of the *Danow*, but in the moſt fruitful part of all the Country; evceedingly well fortified, eſpecially by a ſtrong Caſtle, thought to be impregnable, and therefore very carefully guarded by the jealous *Turk*; adorned with many Buildings both private and publick : and furniſhed with ſome *medicinal Bathes*; which owe much of their pomp and ſumptuouſneſs to their new Maſters the *Turks*; who took it from the *Chriſtians*, *Auguſt* 20, 1591. *Solyman* the *Magnificent* then preſent at the taking of it. Before that time the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief Citie of the Kingdom, as now the Seat of the chief of *Baſſa*, or Lord Lieutenant for the Grand Seigneur. 1. *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Stul-Weiſenburg*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Dravus*; ſtrongly, but unwholſomly ſeated, in the midſt of an inacceſſible Mariſh : joyned to the firm Land by three broad *Cauſeys*, blocked up at the ends with three great *Bulwarks*; but for all the ſtrong ſituation of it; taken by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1543. before that time the uſual Place, both for the Coronation and Interment of the Kings of *Hungary*, recovered from the *Turks*, *Anno* 1601. and loſt again unto them, in the next year after. 3. *Walpo*, or *Val-*

po, on the River *Dravus*, taken by *Solyman* marching towards *Alba Regalis*, to leave no enemies behind him at the ſiege of that City. 4. *Gran*, in *Latine* called *Strigonium*, ſeated upon the *Danow*, but oppoſite to the mouth of *Gran*, which ariſing in the *Upper Hungarie* doth there end its courſe, whence the name of *Gran*; honoured of a long time with the See of an Arch-biſhop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, and of great power in all buſineſs which concerns the State, took by the *Turks*, *An.* 1534. *Solyman* the *Magnificent* being in perſon at the ſiege, and loſt *An.* 1595. at what time Sir *Tho Arundel* of *Wardour* Caſtle in *Wiltſhire*, carried himſelf ſo gallantly, that forcing the Water-Tower, and taking thence with his own hands the *Turkiſh Banner*, that the Emperour *Rodolphus* created him a Count of the Empire; King *James* afterwards made him Lord *Arundel* of the *Wardour*; but the *Chriſtians* were not ſuffered to keep it long; for being many times after beſieged by the *Turks*, who were reſolved not to end the war without it, it was finally recovered by them, *An.* 1605. 5. *Fieſe-kirken*, in *Latine* called *Quinque Eccleſiæ*, from five Churches in it; a Biſhops See, conceived to be the *Tentiburgium* of *Antonius*; took by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1566. and giving them a great command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is ſeated. 6. *Sirmiſch*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Saw*, or *Savus*, now noted for a vein of the beſt Wines, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation at the preſent, though heretofore of moſt accompt in all this Province; the *Metropolis* (as I conceive) of *Pannonia inferior*; the ſeat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici*, before the diviſion of the Empire, honoured with the perſonal reſidence of many of the Emperours, and made in thoſe reſpects, the Stage of many great and memorable actions. For here *Vetranio*, or *Bretanio*, as others call him, took on himſelf the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperour, by the *Illyrian* Souldiers, lying here in Garriſon: here being deſerted by his own Souldiers, he ſubmitted himſelf unto *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine* the *Great*; here *Gratian* the Emperour, Son of *Valentinian* the firſt, was born. And finally here was held a Council againſt *Photinus*, Biſhop of this City, who held, that *CHRIST* had no exiſtence of God the Father, till he was conceived and born of the Virgin; which tenent being contrary as well to that of the *Arian*, as the *Orthodox* Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the ſaid *Conſtantius* (who was there in perſon) *Anno* 356. 7. *Zigoth*, a ſtrong Town, ſituate in a mariſh ground, on the North-ſide of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1566. who there ended his dayes. 8. *Murſa*, upon the confluence of the *Dra*, and the *Danow*, once a *Roman* Colony, and as remarkable in the ſtories of elder times; as 9. *Belgrade*, on the confluence of the *Saw* and the *Danow*, hath been in the later. This laſt a Town of divers names, firſt called *Taururum*, or *Taurunum*; after, *Alba Græca*; by the *Dutch* accordingly *Greichs Waſſenburgh*; by the *French* and modern *Latiniſts*, *Belgrade*, and *Belgradum*, from the beautiful ſituation of it, hemmed in upon the North, with the *Danow*, on the Eaſt, with the *Saw*; on the other ſides defended with ſtrong Walls, deep Ditches, and impregnable Ramparts. Belonging antiently to the *Deſpots* of *Servia*, by whom conſigned over to *Sigiſmund*, King of *Hungary*, as beſt able to keep it; the *Deſpots* being ſatisfied with Lands and Territories of a better value. The *Bulwark* heretofore of *Chriſtendom* againſt the *Turks*, who received before it many great and terrible repulſes, (of which the moſt memorable were thoſe of *Amurath* the ſecond, and *Mahomet* ſirnamed the *Great*:) taken at laſt to the great ſhame and loſs of the *Chriſtian* World, not ſuccouring the defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1520. Then on the North-ſide of the River, in the *Upper Hungary*, there is 10 *Peſth*. over againſt the *Buda*, on the River *Danow*. 11. *Colocza*, an Arch-biſhop's See, on the ſame River alſo. 12. *Zegedin*, on the Weſt-ſide of the River *Tibiſcus*. 13. *Agria*, an old Biſhops See, and ſtrongly fortified, having a great command over all thoſe parts of the Countrey; in vain beſieged by *Hala* the *Baſſa* of *Buda*, with an Army of 36000 of *Turks* in the time of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1552. But taken by *Mahomet* the third, himſelf lying at the ſiege in perſon, *Anno* 1578. not far from which, immediately after the taking of *Agria*, *Mahomet* gave the Chriſtians ſo great an overthrow, that if he had purſued his Victory, it is thought that he had finiſhed his Conqueſt of *Hungary*; as on the other ſide the *Turks* were ſo worſted, and diſordered (*Mahomet* himſelf and moſt of his Commanders flying out of the field) that had the *Chriſtians* followed the chaſe, and not betook themſelves to the ſpoyl of the Camp, they had in probability for ever freed the Kingdom from the Turkiſh Tyranny. This battel, from a Village near unto which it was fought, called the Battel of *Kereſture*, a battel of ſo ſtrange a fortune, that the Conquerors were driven out of the field, and the vanquiſhed men ran away with the Victory. 14. *Hatroan*, a very ſtrong Town, and as ſtrongly garriſoned, recovered by the *Chriſtians* after two long ſieges, and many ſharp aſſaults, *Anno* 1558. and preſently again abandoned, upon noiſe of *Mahomets* comming into *Hungary* with a dreadful Army. 15. *Temeſwar*, on the Eaſt of that River towards *Tranſilvania*: the ordinary reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*. 16. *Gyula*, a ſtrong Town on the Borders of *Tranſilvania*, betrayed by *Nicholas Kereſken* Gonernour hereof, in the laſt year of *Solyman*, on a promiſe of ſome great reward. But *Selimus*, the Son of *Solyman* cauſed him to be put up in a Barrel ſtuck full of Nails, with the points turned inwards; and ſo to be tumbled up and down, till he (moſt miſerably) died: there being on the Barrel this Superſcription written, *viz. Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and Treaſon;* Gyula *thou ſoldeſt for Gold; if thou be not faithful to* Maximilian *thy natural* Lord, *neither wilt thou be true to Me.* 17. *Singidon*, on the South of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the fields of *Maron*, memorable for the ſlaughter of 50000 *Turks*, ſlain here in battel, under the fortunate conduct of *John Huniades*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Countrey on the North-ſide of the *Danow*, and the Weſt of the *Tiſſe*, or *Tibiſcus*, where the *Jazyges Metaniſtæ*; and on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Tiſſe*, the *Daci*; known but not Conquered by the *Romans*: on the South of the *Danow* the *Pannones* (by ſome called the *Paones*) ſubdivided into the *Azuli*, *Latovici*, *Werſiani*, *Jaſſii*, *Oſeriates*, and ſome others inhabiting the Weſt parts thereof, or *Pannonia Superior*, and the *Ercuneales, Breuci, Araviſci*, and *Scordiſci*, dwelling in the *Eaſtern* parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*; *Anno V.C.* 719. *L. Cornificius*, and *Sext. Pompeius*, being *Conſuls*; but many times rebelling, and not fully ſubdued till 40 years after the inſurrection of *Bato*; being then cruſhed by *Auguſtus Caſar*, and thereby the whole Province ſetled in obedience. Divided firſt into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Savia* and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued, till ſubdued by the *Huns*, a people not heard of in the time of the *Roman* greatneſſe, unleſſe we take them, as ſome do, for the *Chuni* of *Ptolemy*. But being thoſe *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Baſtarnæ*, and the *Roxolani*, on the South-Weſt of *Boryſthenes*. I ſee not how to fit that dwelling unto the *Huns*, who were ſhut up within the *Fenns* of *Palus Mæotis*; and by all the Writers of thoſe times accompted for a Nation not ſo much as heard of, when they firſt ſet footing into *Europe*. Letting that therefore paſſe as an improbable and ill grounded conjecture, certain it is, that from the *Fenn-Countries* of *Aſia*, on the other ſide of the *Tanais*, they came firſt into *Europe*: living in their own Country a poor and miſerable life, till God thought fit to make uſe of them as a ſcourge, to chaſtiſe the *Chriſtians* of the Weſt, then grown luxurious, and almoſt incorrigible by too much felicity; and to that end miraculouſly opened them a paſſage, never found before. For having neither mind nor meaning to invade the *Roman* Empire, which poſſibly they had not heard of, not knowing how to clear themſelves of that uncomfortable Country, in which they dwelt; it pleaſed the great diſpoſer of all things, by following an *Hart* or *Stag* which they had in chaſe, to ſhew them a ſafe paſſage into *Europe*, through the *Fenns* of *Meotis*; which before they thought to be unpaſſable. The report made by thoſe Hunters at their coming back, of the rich and pleaſant Land which they had ſo fortunately diſcovered; invited the chief heads of their *Clans*, with all the ſeveral *Raſcalities* depending on them, to flock into *Europe*: into which they fell ſo ſuddainly and unexpectedly, that they forced the *Goths*, then dwelling on the North ſide of the *Iſter*, to fly over that River, and ſupplicate to the Emperour *Valens* for new habitations. This hapned in the year 373. *Athanaricus* the ſecond, or *Ermanaricus* (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Goths*, and *Balamir*, Captain of the *Huns* Fleſhed with this victory, *Balamir*, or *Balhember*, (as *Sigebert* calls him) takes the name of *King*, *An.* 386. or thereabout: and following the courſe of the *Iſter* towards this *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at; found a great Army raiſed on the other ſide of the River, of purpoſe to encounter with him, commanded by *Detricus* General for the *Roman* Empire, and *Macrinus* (or *Matrinus*) commander in chief of the *Pannonias*. Both Generals preſuming too much on the depth and wideneſſe of the River, and knowing well that the *Huns* had neither boat nor ſhip to paſſe them over; betook themſelves unto their reſt, with two much ſecurity. But the *Huns*, to the number of 100000, having croſſed the River upon *bladders*, fell on the quarters of the *Romans*, whom they ſlew like ſheep. *Macrinus* after this fought too battels with them, in the firſt whereof he was victorious, there being loſt on both ſides about 30000 men; but in the ſecond being ſlain, and his Army routed, the *Huns* poſſeſſed themſelves of both *Pannonia's*; buying this victory with the loſſe of 40000 men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Bleda* and *Attila* his ſons ſucceeded, *Anno* 436. and *Bleda* dying alſo in the year 450, left *Attila* ſole King of the *Huns*, that great *ſcourge* of the *Chriſtian* world; who having firſt waſted *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperour *Theodoſius* the ſecond, to buy his peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of gold, and an yearly tribute. Invited afterwards by *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals* in *Afric*, to war upon the *Goths* of *Spain*, (out of which Country they had driven him) he forced his way through all the Nations betwixt him and *Gaul*; and beating down all the Towns and Fortreſſes on the River *Rhene*, on that ſide of the *Roman* Empire, entred that province in the reign of the 3d. *Valentinian*; divided at that time betwixt the *Roman*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Goths* of *Spain*. Diſcomfited by *Aetius*, and the Kings of thoſe Nations then in league againſt him, in that famous battel near *Tholouſe* ſpoken of before, (with the loſſe of 180000 of his men,) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where he ſacked *Aquileia*, *Millain*, *Vincentia*, *Pavie*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the ſpoil of *Rome*, by the interceſſion of *Pope Leo*: committing in all places ſuch unſpeakable cruelties, that he was alwayes after called (as he ſtyled himſelf) *Malleus orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*. Returning home he picked a quarrel with *Marcianus* the Eaſtern Emperour, as if the tribute promiſed him by *Theodoſius*, had not been well paid. But being pacified for the preſent, and mindfull of his former project upon the *Goths*; he reſolved once again to try his fortune with that people; and was again defeated by them under the conduct of *Thoriſmund*, the third King of the *Viſigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and ſo returned ingloriouſly to his Country. Choaked after with his own blood, violently breathing out at his noſethrils, on his wedding night, he left *Panonnia* to his ſons named *Hernac*, *Aladurius*, and *Chaba*: who diſagreeing amongſt themſelves about the Kingdom, gave an advantage to the *Goths*, then poſſeſſed of *Dacia*, to make themſelves maſter of this alſo; ſcarce through warm in their new eſtates, when ſent by *Zeno* the Emperour into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer*, where they finall ſetled. After this time we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*, or any where of the *Huns* at all; unleſſe acting under the *Avares*, or joyning with them in the name of *Hun-Avaria*, as ſome think they did.

The Country being thus left to the next *Invader*, was preſently poſſeſſed by the *Longobards*, ſaid to be originally of *Scandia*, and there called *Winnili*, (and of the *Winniloth* in *Scandia*, *Jornandes* ſpeaketh) afterwards *ob longas barbas Longobardi*. But concerning this laſt name, take along with you this *old wifes tale*, recited, but not approved of by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals* warring upon the *Winnili*, went unto *Goddan* (he ſhould rather have ſaid *Woden*) to ſue for the victory: which the *Winnili* hearing, wrought by countermine, and ſent *Gambata* the mother of their King *Aion* on the like buſineſſe to *Frea*

Goddans wife. So it was, that *Goddan* had promiſed the *Vandals*, that they ſhould be victorious, whom he ſaw firſt in the morning: whereupon *Frea* willing to pleaſe *Gambata*, and not loving, as it ſeemeth, the ſight of men, gave order, that all the women of the *Winnili*, parting their hair, bringing one half over one cheek, the other over the other, and tying both under their chin, ſhould appear betimes before the window the next morning. This they did and ſhe ſhewing them to her husband, he demanded of her, *Qui ſunt iſti Lungobardi?* Hence the occaſion of the name. And like enough they might be called ſo from the length of their beards; though otherwiſe the whole tale be vain and fooliſh. Compelled by ſcarcity of victuals to ſeek new habitations, they ſeized firſt on the Iland *Rugia*, and the adjacent Countries; ſetled about the time of *Cornelius Tacitus* in thoſe parts of *Germany*, which now make up the Biſhopricks of *Meydburg*, and *Halberſtat*. Afterwards finding that Country too narrow for them, thy left their dwelling there, and fell next upon ſome parts of *Poland*; next on this *Pannonia*: and at laſt having tarried in *Pannonia* 42 years, or thereabouts, at the ſolicitation of *Narſes* (provoked by many indignities from the Empreſs *Sophia*, the wife of *Juſtinus* the ſecond) *Anno* 568. under the leading of their King *Alboinus*, they went into *Italy*, and their fixt their kingdom: at the end of 206 years overthrown by the power of *Charles* the *Great*, the moſt mighty Monarch of the Weſt. Of their Kings before their comming into this country, I ſhall only make mention of *Lamiſſus*, their third King, and of him this ſtory. *Agilmond* the ſecond King of the *Lombards*, one morning went a hunting. As he was riding by a fiſh-pond, he ſpied ſeven children ſprawling for life; which one, as ſaith *Paulus Diaconus*, (it may be many harlots) had been delivered of, and moſt barbarouſly thrown into the water. The King amazed at this *ſpectacle*, put his *Bore-ſpear* or *hunting-pole* among them. One of the children hand-faſted the ſpear, and the King ſoftly drawing back his hand, wafted the child to the ſhore. This boy he named *Lamiſſus*, from *Lama*, which in their language ſignifieth a *fiſh-pond*. He was in the Kings Court carefully brought up; where there appeared in him ſuch tokens of virtue and courage, that after the death of *Agilmond*, he was by the *Lombards* choſen to ſucceed him. This *Lamiſſus*, together with his predeceſſors, and ſucceſſors, we find thus recorded.

The *LONGOBARDIAN* KINGS.

An. C.								
383	1	*Aiou*, 10	473	6	*Godohoc*, 12	525	11	*Adoinus*, who firſt brought the *Longobards* into *Hungary*, *Anno* 1526.
393	2	*Agilmond*, 33	485	7	*Dophon*, vel *Claffo*, 5			
426	3	*Lamiſſus*, 3	490	8	*Thamus*, 10			
429	4	*Labe*, vel *Lethe*, 40	500	9	*Vacon*, 18			
469	5	*Hildehoc*, 4	518	10	*Valcharius*, 7	543	12	*Alboinus*, who in the year 583. by the ſolicitation of *Narſes* went into *Italy*, and erected the *Longobardian* Kingdom; which 206 years after was deſtroyed by the puiſſance of *Charles* the *Great*.

The *Hiſtory* of this people epitomized by *Du. Bartas*, thus;

The *Lombard* ſtrong who was in *Scowland* nurſt,
On *Rugeland* and *Livonia* ſeized firſt.
Then having well reveng'd on the *Bulgarian*
The death of *Agilmond*; the bold *Barbarian*
Surpriſed *Poland*: thence anon he preſſes
In *Danows* ſtreams to rinſe his amber treſſes;
When he ſtraight after had ſurrendred
The double-named *Iſters* flowry bed
To ſcarre-fac'd *Hunnes*: he hunteth furiouſly
The reſt of *Galls* from wealthy *Inſubrie*;
There reigns 200 years, triumphing ſo,
That Royal *Teſin* might compare with *Po*.
Which after fell in *Frenchmens* hands again,
Won by the ſword of worthy *Charlemain*.

The *Longobards* having thus left the Stage, the *Avares* entred. Some ſay the *Avarini* of *Petolomy*, a *Sarmatian* people; but moſt probably, (as *Nicetas*) a people of *Scythia*, inhabiting about *Palus Meotis*. They firſt began to ſtir in the reign of *Tiberius* the 2d. (driven by the *Turks*, their next neighbours to paſſe further Weſtward) and gave that Emperours forces a great overthrow at the mouth of *Danubius*. *Tiberius* notwithſtanding did ſomewhat quiet them; but he being dead, they took heart again, and with great courage warred upon *Mauritius*, his next ſucceſſor. Their King at that time called *Caganus*, we may Engliſh it *Chain*; as not being the proper name of any one, but the common *Attribute* of all their *Chiefs*. This *Caganus* made his firſt wars upon the *Turks*, which people were about that time firſt made known to the Inhabitants of *Europe*; and with the help of the remainder of the *Huns*, invaded and poſſeſſed *Pannonia*; vanquiſhing both the Emperours Forces, and the *Goths*, and *Gepidæ*, who had ſtill kept ſome footing in it, and on the departure of the *Lombards*, were of no ſmall power; the name of *Goths* being ſwallowed up in that of the *Gepidæ*, though not quite extinct. After this blow, *Mauritius* raiſed a ſecond War, but more with an intent to revenge himſelf on his own Souldiers, which had formely offended him; than with hope of prevailing againſt the enemy. *Comentiolus*, according to the Emperours directions, betrayed his Army, 12000 of them were ſlain, and the reſt taken. *Caganus*, an Heroick and mercifull Conquerour, offers to ranſom them for 8 *s.* 6 *d.* a piece, (for ſo much was that *nummus*, or *νόμισμα*, which he demanded for them.) When the Emperour as much loving his Gold as hating his Souldiers, had denied that condition: he offered them all for one *nummus*, and after for half a one: but being alſo here unſatified, he put them all to the ſword. For this cauſe, the reſt of the Souldiers not long after made *Phocas*, one of the *Centurions*, Emperour; and he moſt barbarouſly ſtewed the Emperour in his own broath, putting him, his wife, friends, and children to the ſword. After this we find mention of them in the time of *Phocas* and *Heraclius*, forraging *Thrace* to the very Walls of *Conſtantinople*; afterwards ſetled in *Pannonia*, and part of *Noricum*, containing now the *Upper Hungary*, and ſome part of *Auſtria*; divided from the *Bojarians* by the River *Ems*. Poſſeſſed hereof till the time of *Charles* the *Great*, by whom after a War of eight years, they are utterly ſubdued, and driven out of theſe parts; their Countrey being peopled with new *Dutch* Colonies; the remainders of them forced to betake themſelves into *Tranſylvania*, or that part of *Hungaria*, which lieth beyond the River *Tibiſcus*, where ſubject for a time to *Suantobogius* King of the *Moravians*; in whoſe overthrow by the *Hungarians*, they were ſo broken, that their name was never after heard of.

And ſo we come to the *Hungarians*, the laſt and principal *Actors* on the *Stage* of this Kingdom, the givers of the preſent name: before whoſe coming into this Country, it had no other name than that of *Pannonia*, for ought I can find, in any Authors of thoſe times. A *Scythian* people, as the *Huns*, and *Avaris* were; by *Jornandes* called the *Hungari*; firſt known in *Europe* by their acts in the time of the Emperour *Arnulphus*; when wandring in *Sarmatia Europæa* without any certain abode, they were by him called into this Country, againſt *Suantabogius* King of the *Moravians* before mentioned; from whom they took *Tranſylvania*, and ſo much of the *modern Hungary*, as lieth on both ſides of *Tibiſcus*; inhabited at that time by the *Sclaves*, and ſome ſcattered remnants of the *Avares*, whom they killed up, or forced to ſeek new *habitations*, planting themſelves in thoſe places which they took from them; now the *Upper Hungary*. In the right of *Lewis* the fourth, ſucceſſor to *Arnulphus*, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and ſubdued *Pannonia*; diſmembring it from the Empire and name of *Germany*; after that ranging with unmerciful cruelty over all *Germany*, *Italy*, *Greece*, *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*, till broken by the forces of the *Dutch* Emperours, and mollified by the ſoftneſſe of the *Chriſtian* Religion, they became more quiet. Their Government at the firſt was under Dukes: *Stephen* the 4th Duke, on his receiving of the Goſpel, being honoured with the Title of King: enjoyed by his ſucceſſors to this very day. In the time of *Ladiſlaus*, ſurnamed the *Saint*, *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* were added to the Crown of *Hungary*; bequeathed to him by his ſiſter *Zelomira*, the widow of the laſt King. In that of *Bela* the 4th. the *Tartarians* to the number of 500000 fighting men, brake into this Country, and like a violent whirlwind carried all before them, *Anno* 1248. tyrannizing here for three years ſpace, committing mercileſs Maſſacres, and making horrible ſpoils whereſoever they came. In that of *Stephen*, 4th. *Myſia*, and *Bulgaria* were made tributary. By the daughters of *Bela* and *Stephen*, both the 4th. of thoſe names, the houſes of *Naples*, and *Bohemia*, came to claim the Kingdom of *Hungary*; as *Lewis* the firſt by *Elizabeth* his mother, ſiſter of *Caſimir* the ſecond, did the Kingdom of *Poland*. The reſt of their affairs ſhall be briefly touched at in the following Catalogue of

The DUKES and KINGS of *HUNGARIE.*

A. Chr.

1 *Cuſala*, the firſt Duke (or Captain) of the *Hungarians*, ſubdued *Tranſylvania*, and the *Upper Hungary*, and paſſed over the *Danow*; ſlain in his Wars againſt the *Dutch*, then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*.
2 *Toxus*, ſubdued *Pannonia*, or the *Lower Hungary*.
3 *Geiſa*, ſon of *Toxus*.
1000 4 *Stephen*, the fourth Duke, and firſt King of *Hungary*.
1039 5 *Peter*, ſurnamed the *Alman*, nephew of *Stephen*; depoſed by *Andrew* and *Bela*, ſons of *Ladiſlaus*, ſon of *Geiſa* the firſt, and brother of *Stephen* the firſt King.
1047 6 *Andrew*, eldeſt ſon of that *Ladiſlaus*.
1059 7 *Bela*, the brother of *Andrew*.
1062 8 *Solomon*, the ſon of *Andrew*, expelled his Kingdom by
1075 9 *Geiſa*, II. ſon of *Bela*.
1078 10 *Ladiſlaus*, ſurnamed the *Saint*, brother of *Geiſa* the 2d.
1096 11 *Coloman*, ſon of *Geiſa* the 2d.
1114 12 *Stephen* II, ſon of *Coloman*.
1132 13 *Bela* II. nephew of *Geiſa* the 2d. by his ſon *Almus*.
1142 14 *Geiſa* III. ſon of *Bela* 2d.
1162 15 *Stephen* III. ſon of *Geiſa* the 3d.
1172 16 *Bela* III. brother of *Stephen* the 3d.

1191 17 *Emaricus*, ſon of *Bela* the 3d.

1201 18 *Ladiſlaus* II. ſon of *Emaricus*, reigned but 6 moneths, being ſlain by treaſon, very young, and without iſſue.

1201 19 *Andrew* II. ſon of *Bela* the 3d. and brother of *Emaricus*.

1236 20 *Bela* IV. ſon of *Andrew* the 2d.

1271 21 *Stephen* IV. ſon of *Bela* the 4th.

1273 22 *Ladiſlaus* III. ſon of *Stephen* the 4th.

1290 23 *Andrew* III. nephew to *Bela* the 4th. by his brother *Stephen*.

1302 24 *Charles*, ſurnamed *Martel*, ſon of *Charles* King of *Naples*, by *Marie*, daughter to *Stephen* the 4th. againſt whom was choſen *Wenceſlaus*, King of *Bohemia*, ſon of *Wenceſlaus* the 2d. and of *Anne* his wife, daughter of *Bela* the 4th, and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, deſcended from *Elizabeth*, another of the daughters of *Bela* the fourth, choſen alſo by a faction againſt *Wenceſlaus*. But *Wenceſlaus* ſurrendring his claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after forced to renounce his Title, *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole.

1343 25 *Ludovicus*, nephew to *Charles Martel* by his ſon *Carlcobert*, ſucceeded King of *Poland* alſo, in right of *Elizabeth* his mother, ſiſter of *Caſimir* the 2d..

1383 26 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, deſcended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Marie*, daughter of *Stephen* the fourth, before mentioned, by their ſon *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger brothers of *Charles Martel*; poiſoned after a ſhort reign by the widow of the former King, to make a way for her daughter to the Crown.

1387 27 *Sigiſmund*, Emperour, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Luxembourg*, ſucceeded in right of *Marie* his wife, eldeſt daughter of *Lewis*, or *Lodovicus*; her younger ſiſter *Eduigis* being Queen of *Poland*.

1438 28 *Albert* of *Auſtria*, Emperour, and King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his wife, the daughter of *Sigiſmund*.

1440 29 *Ladiſlaus*, or *Uladiſlaus*, ſon of *Jagello* King of *Poland*, in the minority of *Ladiſlaus* the ſon of *Albert*, choſen King of *Hungary*; unfortunately ſlain at the battel of *Varna*, with 30000 of his people: and perhaps his perjury might deſerve it. For having made and ſworn a Truce with the *Turk*; the Popes *Legate* upon a ſeeming advantage, abſolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the field. At the beginning the *Chriſtians* had the better; But at the laſt *Amurath* the 2d. againſt whom they fought, lifting up his eyes to Heaven, and deſiring *Chriſt* to look upon the *perfidious dealing wherewith his followers had diſhonoured him*; re-encouraged his men, and ſo got the victory.

1444 30 *Ladiſlaus* V. King of *Bohemia*, the ſon of Albert, by *Elizabeth*, daughter of *Sigiſmund*, and *Marie*.

1458 31 *Matthias Corvinus*, ſon of the famous *Huniades*, after the death of *Ladiſlaus* the 5th. King of *Hungarie*.

1491 32 *Uladiſlaus* II. or *Ladiſlaus* VI. ſon of *Caſimir* the 4th. of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the daughter of Albert, ſucceeded in the Kingdoms of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*; his three younger brothers ſucceſſively in that of *Poland*.

1517 33 *Ludovicus* II. King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, both born and dead before the ordinary courſe of nature: in the 21 year of his age, and the 10th. of his reign, unfortunately drawn into the field, to encounter *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, one of the hardieſt Captains in his time; the battel was fought at a Village called *Mogachz*, or *Mugace*, juſt betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*: in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were ſlain, and the young King drowned in the flight. A moſt lamentable diſcomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Sepuſio*, *Vaivod*, or Governour of *Tranſylvania*, was by the States choſen King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and brother unto *Charles* the *5th*. challenged the Kingdom in right of *Anne* his wife, daughter to *Uladiſlaus*, and ſiſter to *Lewis*, King of *Hungarie* and *Bohemia*. On this pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his competitour, who to recover his right, called *Solyman* the *Magnificent* into the Country, who took ſo faſt footing in it, that his Succeſſors could never ſince be removed.

1527 34 *John Sepuſio*, *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania*, choſen King upon the death of *Ludovicus* the ſecond, outed by *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, reſtored by *Solyman* the great *Turk*, died *An.* 1540. after whoſe death the *Hungarians* cauſed his ſon *Stephen* an Infant, to be Crowned King in his Cradle, of which immediatly deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who under colour of preſerving that Kingdom for him, ſeized *Buda* and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himſelf.

1540 35 *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in reſpect to the Lady *Anne* his wife, ſiſter of *Ludovicus* the 2d. *Anno* 1527. did in the ſame right lay claim to the Crown of *Hungary*, choſen to which by a party prepared for him; he was alwayes in contention with *John de Sepuſio*; each of them acknowledged King by their ſeveral factions; but by both ſides received on the death of *John*.

1562 36 *Maximilian*, Emperour, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, ſon of *Ferdinand*.

1572 37 *Rodolphus*, Emperour, &c. ſon of *Maximilian*.

1608 38 *Matthias*, brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperour.

618 39 *Ferdinand* II of *Gratz*, next heir unto *Matthias* of the houſe of *Auſtria*, afterwards Emperour, *&c.* againſt whom a party of **Hungarians** called in *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Tranſylvania*, whom they elected for their King, intending (as they ſaid) to crown him alſo. But the affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperours ſide, *Gabor* relinquiſhed his pretenſions, and hearkned to a peace betwixt them.

625 40 *Ferdinand* III. ſon of *Ferdinand* the 2d. choſen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627. King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceding after him in the Empire, and now living *An.* 1648.

This Kingdom doth pretend it ſelf to be *Elective*, and to have ſpecial *Priviledges* indulged them by their former Princes; and antiently indeed it was ſo in both reſpects, the laſt eſpecially: King *Andrew* giving authority to his *Prelates*, *Peers*, and other people, *Ut ſine nota alicujus infidelitatis*, *&c.* that without any imputation of diſloyalty, they might contradict, oppoſe, and reſiſt their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their liberty of *Elections*, and pretence of *Priviledges*, had been ſo ſhaken and reſtrained by their Kings of the houſe of *Auſtria*, that the *Elections* are become a matter of formality only, their *Priviledges* depending wholly on their Princes pleaſure: now grown too potent for them to contend withall, unleſſe they ſhould betray their Country into the hands of the *Turk*. To which ſome of them have expreſſed ſome ſtrong inclinations; the oppreſſions laid upon them by the *Auſtrian* family being deemed inſufferable.

The forces of this kingdom when it was entire, may beſt be ſeen by thoſe great Armies which they have brought into the field againſt the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being ſince ſubdued, that which remains muſt not be thought able to anſwer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be reaſonably expected from it. For at the battel of *Kereſture*, *Anno* 1596. there were 6000 *Hungarian* horſe, and 10000 foot of this Nation only; beſides thoſe of *Germany* and *Tranſylvania*: and the next year, notwithſtanding the diſcomfiture of that Army, they raiſed no leſſe than 20000 horſe and foot, on the noiſe of ſome preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true, their *foot* are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince, than unto the people: who can but bring their bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their *Horſe* (whom they call *Heiduks*) maintained in continual readineſſe, at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Couſins to the *Coſacques*, almoſt as miſchievous as they, and hold as ſtrict intelligence with the *Turks*, as thoſe do with the *Tartars*.

The chief *Revenues* of this Kingdom come from the *ſilver mines*, out of which is yearly raiſed about a million and a half of *Guldens*. *Maximilian* the 2d. made it up two millions, by ſeizing on the lands of *Cathedral* and *Collegiate* Churches; and aſſigning annual penſions to the Biſhops, Canons, and other Religious perſons. Moſt of which ſum comes clearly to the Emperours *Cofers*, the *Preſidiary* Souldiers being paid with *Contribution* money, raiſed upon the Country; and the Lieutenant General, whoſe entertainment comes to 30000 *Dollars* yearly, defrayed upon their purſes alſo.

The chief *Order* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, was that of the *Dragon*, inſtituted by *Sigiſmund* Emperour and King hereof; at ſuch time as by the Council of *Conſtance*, againſt *John Hus*; and *Hierom* of *Prague*, and by the ſharpneſſe of his ſword proved upon their followers, he had caſt down (as he conceived) the *Dragon* of *Hereſie* and *Schiſm*. But the device proved of no long continuance, expiring almoſt with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the *Hun*, once the King of this Country by the name of *Pannonia*, are ſaid to have been *Gules*, a Falcon diſplayed *Or* membred and crowned *Argent*. But the Arms of the Kingdom at this time, are Barre-wiſe of 8 peeces, *Gules* and *Argent*.

There are in *HUNGARIE*

Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13.

And ſo much for *HUNGARIE*.

OF

SCLAVONIA.

SCLAVONIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*; from which parted by the River *Drinus*, and a line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*: on the Weſt, with *Carniola* in *Germany*, and *Hiſtria* in the Signeury of *Venice*; from which laſt divided by the River *Arſia*; on the North, with *Hungary*; on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Sclaves* or *Sclavi* a *Sarmatian* people of whom more anon.

It contains in length from *Arſia*, to the River *Drinus*, according to *Plinies* computation, 800 *Italian* miles; the greateſt breadth being 325 of the ſame miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more than 480 miles, who may be reconciled in *Pliny*, by ſuppoſing this, that theſe laſt meaſure in a ſtrait and dirct line from River to River; and that *Pliny* coaſted by the Creeks and reaches of the *Adriatick*. Situate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, betwixt the middle *Parallels* of the ſixth and ſeventh *Climates*; ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is about fifteen houres and an half.

The Country is generally fruitfull of all thoſe commodities, which are found in *Italy*, to which little inferiour: yeelding not only *wine*, and *oyl*, in very good plenty, but good ſtore of Cattel, and of wild beaſts of pleaſure no want at all; ſome rich veins alſo of *gold* and *ſilver*. The Northern parts are mountainous, cold, for the moſt part lying under ſnows, not capable of *wine*, or any the like productions which require much heat. But even theſe mountainous parts afford very good paſturage, and breed a wealthy race of ſheep, which bring forth young twice a year, and are ſhorn four times. Nor doth the Sea Coaſt come behind in advancing the profit of the people, not only yielding ſtore of fiſh, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The people are courageous, proud, ſtubborn and untractable, of ſtrong bodies, and able conſtitutions, fit for works of drudgery; and ſo imployed by the *Venetians*, when firſt brought under their command: who uſing them in all ſervile offices both at home and abroad, occaſioned the neighbouring Nations to call their *Villains* or *Bond-ſervants*, as they of *Venice* did, by the name of *Sclaves*, that being originally as to this people, the name, not of their condition, but of their Anceſtors and Country.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt here planted, I mean in reference to this people, who do now inhabit it, about the time of *Charles* the *Bald*, Emperor of the Weſt, *Anno* 877. *Sueropilus* being the firſt of their Kings, who imbraced the Goſpel. But lying in the mid-way of *Greece* and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the *Greek* Church, are both allowed of; that of the *Greeks* being as prevalent in the Eaſt-parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Weſtern. But here it is to be obſerved, that though this people, according to their diviſion into Eaſt and Weſt, follow the Rites and Ceremonies of thoſe ſeveral Churches; yet on both ſides, it is indulged them to celebrate Divine Offices in their natural Language, contrary to the uſage of the Church of *Rome* in all places elſe, And yet the People are not all of the Chriſtian faith, the *Turkiſh* and *Mahometan*, prevailing in thoſe Towns, and Territories, under their obedience.

But though they be not of one religion, they are all of one Language; which is the old *Sarmatian* (or *Sclavonian*) Tongue, generally ſpoken in the Empire of *Ruſſia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, ſome part of *Hungary*, *Hiſtria*, *Sclavonia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, (both in *Aſia*) and by all the Captains, Officers, and other ſouldiers of the *Turkiſh* Empire; the Language generally ſpreading over all thoſe Countries, which either were *Sarmatian* in their firſt original, or made theirs by conqueſt, under the united name of *Sclaves*; or otherwiſe intermixt with them by the neceſſity of commerce and trade, or diſpatch of their common buſineſſes. Inſomuch as taking in the ſubdiviſions of the Princes and Countries before ſpecified; it is affirmed by *Geſner* a right learned man, that

there

Windiſchlan.

there are no fewer than 60 Nations which have the *Sclavonian* Tongue for their Vulgar Language.

Chief Mountains in this Country are thoſe called *Scardonici* (from *Scardona*, one of the beſt Towns of *Illyris*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the midſt, and extending along the Coaſts thereof; by *Ptolomy* called *Ardium*. Of Rivers thoſe of ſpecial note amongſt the Antients, were 1. *Titius*, now *Variecha* ſeparating *Illyris* from *Dalmatia*. 2. *Arſia*, now *Arſa*, the utmoſt bound upon the Weſt; as 3 *Drinus* is upon the Eaſt: of which the firſt falleth into the Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Golfo di Quevero*, (*Sinus Flanaticus* by the Antients,) the other into the *Saw* or *Savus*, ſomewhat Weſt of *Belgrade*. 4. *Narſo*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurus*.

The Boundaries and *Landmarks* being thus ſet out, I ſhould proceed to the diviſion of the Country as now it ſtandeth. But I muſt firſt look on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*: in whoſe time that part of the whole Province which lay from the River *Arſia* to the *Titius*, was named *Liburnia*, and *Illyris*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinus*, was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Illyrians* being the ſtouter and more warlike people, and ſuch as created greateſt troubles to the *Romans*, it pleaſed the Conquerors when they had fully ſubdued both Nations, to call the whole Country by the name of *Illyricum*: and not ſo only, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* excepted) which lay between the *Alps* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Danow*; for ſo far the Juriſdiction of the *Præfectus Prætoria* of *Illyricum*, did at firſt extend. *Huic præfecto* (ſaith *Zoſimus*) Conſtantinus *ejus inſtitutor, Macedones attribuit, Theſſalos, Cretenſes, Graciam, & circumjacentes inſulas, Epirum utramque, Illyricos, Dacos, Triballos, & Pannonios, Valeriam uſque & Myſiam ſuperiorem*. And that all theſe did then paſs by the name of *Illyricum*, appeareth as well by that of *Pollio* in the life of *Claudius* the ſecond, expreſly ſaying *Illyricum, Thracas, Myſos Dacos, Dalmatias & Pannonias continebat*; as by that of *Socrates* the Hiſtorian, who *lib.* 32. *cap.* 10. calleth *Sirmium*, the chief Town of *Pannonia Inferior*, and *lib.* 5. *cap.* 6. *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Macedon*, *urbes Illyrias*, or *Illyrican* Cities. By which accompt *Illyricum* in the largeſt extent of that name, contained no leſſe than 18 Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; that is to ſay, 1. *Noricum Mediterraneum*. 2. *Norricum Ripenſe*. 3. *Pannonia Superior*. 4. *Pannonia Inferior*. 5. *Valeria*. 6. *Savia*. 7. *Dalmatia*. 8. *Mæſia ſuperior*. 9. *Dardania*. 10. *Dacia Mediterranea*. 11. *Dacia Ripenſis*. 12. *Macedonia*. 13. *Theſſaly*. 14. *Achaia*. 15. *Crete*. 16. *Epirus vetus*. 17. *Epirus Nova*, and 18. *Pravelitana*. Theſe 18 Provinces being caſt or made up into three *Dioceſes*, *viz.* the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum*, eſpecially ſo called, containing the ſeven firſt; 2ly. the *Dioceſe* of *Macedon*, containing the ſeven laſt; and 3ly. the *Dioceſe* of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four: were governed by the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, who had firſt his chief ſeat and reſidence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the diviſion of the Empire betwixt the ſons of *Theodoſius* the Great, into the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern*: the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum* ſpecally ſo called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the *Weſtern* Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*; and thereupon the ſeat or reſidence of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, removed from *Syrmium* unto *Theſſalonica*. So that we are now to look upon *Illyricum* in a ſtricter notion, as a *Dioceſe* of the *Weſtern* Empire, containing the ſeven Provinces before ſpecified, whereof both *Noricums*, both *Pannonias*, and *Valeria* (if at leaſt *Stiermarch* be that *Valeria*, as ſome ſay it is) have been deſcribed already in their proper places. There now remain only *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be ſpoken of: the firſt containing all thoſe parts of this Country lying on both ſides of the *Savus* (whence it had the names;) the laſt, thoſe parts hereof which lye towards the Sea, known by the antient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyris* properly ſo called, being added to it. But as *new Lords* give *new Laws*, ſo they give *new names*. The Country being divided by the *Sclavi* into two Kingdoms, *viz.* of *Droatia*, and *Dalmatia*, of which the firſt contained the Province of *Savia*; the laſt took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia*, bounded as before but keeping the name of *Sclavonia* to it ſelf alone; being indeed the only Province in which the name and memory of the *Sclavi*, is retained amongſt us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at laſt it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*; we find it ſubdivided into theſe ſix parts; that is to ſay; 1. *Windiſchland*. 2. *Croatia*. 3. *Boſnia*. 4. *Dalmatia*. 5. *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6. the *Sclavonian* *Ilands*.

1. WINDISCHLAND.

WINDISCHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt, with part of the *Lower Hungary*, from which ſeparated by a line drawn from St. *Nicolas* near the River *Dravus*, to the town of *Polega*, ſtanding on a little River which falls into the *Savus*: on the Weſt, with *Carniola*, or *Krain*, a Province of the Archdukedom of *Auſtria*; on the North, with the River *Dravus*; on the South, with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch* as the *Land* or Country of the *Winnichi*, or *Vendi*; the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, whom generally they call by the name of *Windiſch*, and antiently for as much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus*, accounted part of *Pannonia Inferior*, as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*; till conquered by the *Sclaves*, and laid unto their poſſeſſions; from whom named *Windiſhland*, as before.

Places of moſt importance in it are 1 *Windiſch-greits*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, the *Vinundria* and *Vindomana* of the Antients. 2. *Sagona*, near unto the *Savus*. 3. *Gradiska*, on the South, and 4. *Zagabria*, on the North of the ſame River: from which laſt a great part of this Country is called *Comitatus Zagabrienſis*. 5. *Novigrod*, on the *Savus* alſo, but more near to *Germany*. 6. *Petrowya*, ſituate at the foot of the mountains, which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*, and divide *Hungary* from *Sclavonia*. 7. *Siſſeg*, or *Siſſakhen*, (the *Siſſia* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus*) ſituate on the *Saw*, over againſt *Zagabria*, where it receiveth the River *Zalp*; famous for the notable reſiſtance which the *Turks* there found, *Anno* 1593. Who hoping by the conqueſt of this Province, to open a free paſſage into *Germany*, entred

it

Croatia, &c.

it with a puiſſant army, (having in their way taken the Caſtle of *Oſtrowits*, and the ſtrong Town of *Wihits* in *Croatia*) and ſate down very ſtrongly intrenched before this Town. But the Town held it out moſt gallantly againſt all their batteries and aſſaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to ſuccour them: by whom 8000 of the *Turks* were ſlain in the place, and moſt of the reſt drowned in the River *Savus*, as they fled haſtily, and (through that great haſte) blindly from the ſword of the Conqueror.

This Province, for the moſt part, is under the Princes of the houſe of *Auſtria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged: thoſe parts of it which lye next to *Hungary*, on the North and Eaſt, groaning under the tyranny and bondage of the *Turkiſh* Gariſons.

2. CROATIA.

CROATIA is bounded on the North, with *Windiſchland*, from which parted by the River *Una* or *Wana*; on the Eaſt, with *Boſnia*; on the South, with *Liburnia*, or *Conrado di Zara*; on the Weſt, with *Carniolas*. The reaſon of the name I find not among my Authors; but only it was impoſed by the *Sclaves* at their firſt coming hither: who comprehended under this name all the Inland parts of *Sclavonia*, from the Mountain *Ardium* to *Pannonia*; including *Boſnia* and *Windiſchland*, though diſtinguiſhed afterwards.

The Country for the moſt part cold, mountainous and hilly, overſpread by the branches of the Mountains *Bebii* ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; yet reaſonably fruitfull, ſtored with all neceſſary proviſions for the life of man, and would yeeld more increaſe and profit (both to Lord and Tenant) were it not for the ill neighbourhood of the *Turk*; to whoſe tyranny and oppreſſions it hath been, and is ſtill expoſed. The people for the general are held to be good Souldiers, mentioned in our modern ſtories by the name of *Crabats*.

Chief Towns in it are 1. *Maſch* or *Moſth*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Aleta* of the Antients. 2. *Oſtrowits*, a ſtrong Fort of the ſame Frontire. 3. *Wihits*, by the *Dutch* called *Bihigen*, by the Antients *Funium*, the *Metropolis* or chief Place of the *Country*, encompaſſed like an Iland by the River *Una*, and fortified with ſtrong works by the help of Art: but taken by the *Turk* 1592. and all the Souldiers in it cruelly murdered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the ſurrendry. 4. *Zeng*. 5. *Wackat*. 6. *Tarnaw*. 7. *Modriſh*, of wich little memorable.

This Country with the reſt included antiently under this name, was one of the two Kingdoms of *Sclavonia*; the Princes whereof were uſually entituled Kings of *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*. In the year 1607. the *Venetians* having before poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Towns on the Sea ſide, firſt ſet footing there. How the whole Country of *Sclavonia* came to the Crown of *Hungary*; ſhall be ſhewn anon. Held, part of it in the right thereof, by the houſe of *Auſtria*; part of it by the *Turks* in the way of conqueſt; the *Venetians* having now no ſhare in it, for ought I can find.

3. BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Servia*, a province of *Dacia*; on the Weſt, with *Croatia*; on the North, with the River *Savus*, and the Eaſt part of the *Lower Hungary*; on the South, with *Dalmatia*. So called, as ſome think, from the River *Boſna*, which runneth through it; as others, from the *Beſſi* a people of *Dacia* driven out of their Country by the *Bulgari*, and removing hither; by the change of a Vowel called *Boſſi*, whence the Country *Boſnia*.

Places of moſt importance in it are 1. *Jaitza*, by the *Latines* called Jazyga, ſituate on the top of an high Hill, at the bottom whereof almoſt encompaſſed with two Rivers, which there uniting paſs from thence unto the *Savus*. The Town, by reaſon of the rocky præcipies of the Hill, the unfordableneſs of the River, and an inacceſſible Caſtle, held to be impregnable, the *Metropolis* in former times of this petit Kingdom, and the ordinary Sepulture for the Kings thereof. 2. *Warſoboni*, at this time the chief Town of the Country, but not walled about. 3. *Cazach*, the uſual reſidence or retiring place of the *Boſnian* Kings. 4. *Schwanica*, not much obſervable. 5. *Dorobiza*, the firſt Town taken by *Mahomet* the Great in his conqueſt of this Kingdom; as 6. *Clyſſa* was the laſt, the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken in it.

This Country, antiently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*; under the Patronage and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdom: but the preciſe time when, I find not. Some ſay, about the year 1420. If ſo, a Kingdom of late date, and ſhort continuance. For in the year 1464. *Mahomet* the Great, firſt Emperour of the *Turks*, having taken *Conſtantinople*, and almoſt all the reſt of *Greece*, caſt his eye upon it, ſuddenly ſupprized it: and having taken *Stephen* the laſt King hereof, moſt barbarouſly commanded him to be flead alive. After whoſe death this Kingdom was converted to a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, and governed by one of the *Baſſas* of it; as it ſtill continueth.

4. DALMATIA.

DALMATIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Albania*, from which parted by the River *Driſo*; on the Weſt, with the *Titius* (now *Variecha*) which divids it from *Liburnia*; on the North, with *Boſnia*; on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Sclavonia*, retaineth its antient name and bounds. So called from *Dalminium* the chief Town hereof in the time of the *Romans*, from which the people were called *Dalmatæ*, and the Countrey *Dalmatia*.

Dalmatia.

The Countrey in the time of the *Romans* was full of woods, and thoſe woods of *Robbers*, who from thence iſſued out to make ſpoil and booty. *Dalmatæ ſub ſylvis agunt, inde ad latrocinia promptiſſimi*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. And by the advantage of theſe woods, they intercepted and diſcomfited *Gabinius*, one of *Cæſars* Captains, marching through their Country with 1000 *horſe*, and 15 Companies of *foot* towards *Macedonia*, to the aid of his General againſt *Pompey*. But their woods being deſtroyed, they became more peaceable; and inſtead of *Robberies* by Land, began to exerciſe themſelves at Sea in the way of Merchandiqing, to which their large Sea-Coaſts and commodious Havens ſerved exceeding fitly.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Sebenic*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from the influx of *Titius*, or *Variecha*: by *Ptolomy* called *Sicum*, in whoſe time a Colony of *Roman* Souldiers, ſent hither by the Emperour *Claudius*. 2. *Salona*, a *Roman* Colony alſo, one of the *Juridical Reſorts* for theſe parts of the Province, and the ordinary *Arſenal* for their Navies. Renowned in ancient ſtories for the retreat of *Diocletian*, a Native of this Country: who having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much felicity, but a great deal of cruelty, depoſed himſelf, and retired to this City; where he followed the trade of a Gardner, working with his own hands, and obſerving with great content the productions of nature. Inſomuch that when *Maximianus Herculius* his aſſociate (who at his perſwaſion had done the like) invited him to reſume the Empire, he returned this anſwer, *Utinam poſſitis viſere olera noſtris manibus plantata, &c.* that if he would come unto *Salona*, and ſee how well the *Worts* which he had planted with his own hands, did thrive and proſper; he would never trouble his head with Crowns, nor his hands with Scepters: a rare expreſſion of a ſetled and contented mind. The name, and ſome of the ruins do ſtill remain, to preſerve the memory of ſo remarkable a place. 2. *Spalato*, Eaſt of *Sebenic*, a Sea Town, and an Archbiſhops See, who writes himſelf *Primate* of *Dalmatia*; as anciently, and of right he was, till the Biſhop of *Venice* being made a Patriarch by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, *Anno* 1450. aſſumed that Title to himſelf, together with a ſuperintendency over all the Churches of this Countrey, as ſubordinate to him. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more than for *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, who ſeeming to loath the *Romiſh* ſuperſtition, came for refuge into *England*, *Anno* 1616. and having here both by preaching and writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what projects, he declared himſelf to be of another mind, *Anno* 1622. and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may ſay of him, as *Socrates* in his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory ſaith of *Ecebolius*, who under *Conſtantius*, was a Chriſtian: under *Julian*, a Pagan; and a Chriſtian again under *Jovinian*, τοιοῦτος μὲν οὖν κοῦφος καὶ εὐχερὴς Εκεβόλιος πρότερόν τε καὶ ὕστερον. *So wavering and unconſtant a turn-coat was* Ecebolius, *from his beginning to his end.* But *Ecebolius* ſped better than *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his repentance; but this infatuated man impriſoned in the Caſtle of *Angelo*, and his dead body burnt to aſhes. A juſt reward for ſo great levity, and ſo groſſe *Apoſtaſie*, as he had ſhewed unto the World in his going hence. 4. *Almiſſa*, the *Piguritium* of *Ptolomy*, mounted on a high Rock, and defended with an impregnable Caſtle. 5. *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and ſpacious *Cherſoneſſe*, not far from which the River *Naron*, (or *Narento*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6. *Caſtle Novo*, a ſtrong Fortreſſe within the Gulf of *Catharo*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*. 7. *Antibari*, on the further, or Eaſtern ſide of the Bay, an Archbiſhops See; but that and the Sees of his *Suffragan* Biſhops, being ſeven in number, now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*. 8. *Catharo*, on the ſame ſide of the Bay, by *Ptolomy* called *Aſcruvium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a ſtrong hold for the *Venetians* againſt the *Turks*, and giving name unto the *Gulf*: which formerly called *Sinus Rhizaniſcus*, from *Rhizana* (now *Rhizins*) ſituate at the bottom of it; is at this time called from this Town *Golfo de Catharo*. 9. *Dolcigno*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians*. 10. *Scutari*, more within the land, (the *Scodra* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*) ſtrongly ſeated on a ſteep Rock, memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance which it made for a whole year, againſt the whole puiſſance of *Mahomet* the ſecond, battered for the moſt part of that time with 70 pieces of Ordnance of wondrous bigneſſe, eſpecially that called the *Princes piece*, which carried a ſtone, or bullet of 1200 *l.* weight; but taken at the laſt. *An.* 1578. Not far from this Town is the great Lake, called by *Strabo Labeates*, now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compaſſe, and environed on all ſides with Mountains, except towards the North: out of which iſſueth the *Drinus*, now called *Driana*, which parting *Sclavonia* from *Macedon* and *Servia*, paſſeth into the *Savus*. 11. *Aleſio*, the *Liſſus* of *Ptolomy*, the furtheſt Town of all *Dalmatia*, towards *Greece*; memorable for the Grave of *Scanderbeg*, who was buried here; whereof more hereafter. 12. *Medon*, raiſed out of the ruins of *Dioclea*, an ancient and famous City, the birth-place of the Great Emperour *Diocletian*, ſpoken of before. 13. *Dalminium*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province, ſituate on the River *Drinus*; firſt ſacked by *Marcus Figulus* a *Roman* Conſul, *Anno U. C.* 689. and after, on a new revolt by one *Naſica*, ſpoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two ſuch ruins to revive again; nothing being now left of it, but the name and memory.

Betwixt the *Cherſoneſſe* of *Stagno*, and the *Gulf* of *Catharo*, ſtands the Town and Territory of *RAGUSI*; not ſubject, as all the reſt are, either to the *Turk*, or to the *Venetians*, but governing themſelves by their own Laws and Magiſtrates, as a *Free Common-wealth*: paying only to the *Turk* 14000 *Zechins* yearly in way of tribute, and as much in Preſents; diſcharged in that regard of *Cuſtoms* and *Impoſitions*, in all his Dominions. It was anciently called *Epidaurus*, (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponneſus*.) But that Town being razed by the *Gothes*, the Inhabitants (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themſelves, built this in the place of it, at the foot of a ſteep Mountain; enjoying a pleaſant ſituation near the Sea, with a little, but commodious Port; forced

our

Liburnia.

out of the water, by the art and induſtry of work-men. The Town well built, fortified with Walls, and a well-furniſhed Caſtle; now an Archbiſhops See, and a noted *Emporie*: rich, and ſtrong in ſhipping, commanding over a ſmall and barren territory within the land, and ſome pleaſant *Ilands* in the Sea. So that the riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues riſing out of the Earth, but by the benefit of their traffick upon the Waters: ſecured therein by the protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other ſide preſerved by the State of *Venice* from being a prey to their *Protectors*. Of more wealth heretofore, than they are at the preſent. At what time they traded to moſt parts of this Weſtern world, in thoſe great Veſſels which from hence were called *Raguſes*, but corruptly *Argoſes*: the laſt of which (their number leſſening with their trade) they lent unto the King of *Spain* for the War of *England*, *An.* 1588. in which action it was loſt and wracked on the *Coaſt* of *Ireland*.

5. CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the Country of *Zara*, called anciently *Liburnia*, and *Illyris* ſpecially ſo named, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Dalmatia*; on the Weſt, with *Hiſtria*; on the North with *Croatia*; and on the South, with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long diſcontinued) from *Zara*, the chief Town thereof, the *Jadera* of *Ptolomy* and the antients; a *Roman* Colony at that time, now an Archbiſhops See; enjoying a ſafe and large Port, and ſituate on a low *Cherſoneſe* thruſting out like a *Promontorie* into the *Adriatick*; belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom well fenced and fortified againſt forein invaſions. For the poſſeſſion and command of this Town, there have been great Wars betwixt the *Hungarians*, and the *Venetians*: to whom it ſeemeth to be of ſuch importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns, of *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*, pretending againſt *Sigiſmund* of *Luxembourgh* to the Crown of *Hungary*. In this Town is the Church of S. *John de Malvatia*, which was built by a company of *Saylors*; who being in a Tempeſt, made a vow, that if they eſcaped, they would conſecrate a Temple to S. *John de Malvatia*, whoſe morter ſhould be tempered with *Malmſey*: and accordingly they paid their vows. Far leſſe did another Maſter of a ſhip intend to perform his promiſe, though he ſpoke bigger, who in a like extremity of danger, promiſed our *Lady* to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main maſt of his ſhip. For when one of his *mates* jogging him, told him he had promiſed an impoſſibility: Tuſh *fool* (replied the Maſter) we muſt ſpeak her fair in time of need; *but if ever I come a ſhore, I will make her be content with a Candle of eight in the pound*. And in a like fit of devotion was he, who on the ſame occaſion plainly told God, That he was no common beggar, he never troubled him with prayers before; and if he would hear him that time, he would never trouble him again.

Other Towns herein conſiderable, are 1 *Albona*, retaining ſtill the old name (the *Alvona* of *Ptolomy*) ſituate near the River *Arſia*, the divider of this Province from *Hiſtria*. 2 *Flavona*, or *Flanona*, ſituate againſt the Gulf of *Quernero*, of old called *Sinus Flanaticus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongſt Saylors for frequent Tempeſts raiſed on every wind. 3 *Zegna*, by *Ptolomy* and *Pliny* called *Senia*, ſituate on a flat, or level. 4 *Nona*, of old called *Ænona*, compaſſed with the Sea. 5 *Scriſia*, now a poor Village, in the place where ſtood the *Argyrutum* of *Pliny*. 6 *Scardona*, now a mean Village alſo, heretofore of great note, and the *Juridical Reſort* for the whole Province; from whence the neighbouring Mountains had the name of *Scardonici*; the bounds of this Country and *Croatia*.

The ancient name of this Country was *Liburnia*, as before is ſaid, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium*, or *Scardonici*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividentia* of the whole *Illyricum*. The people hereof called by one general name *Liburni*, were much given to *Piracies*; and for their better ſpeed therein, the Authors and Inventors of thoſe ſwift Veſſels which were called *Liburnicæ*, and *Liburnæ*. Of which thus *Horace*,

Ibis Liburnis *inter alta navium*
Amice propugnacula,

That is to ſay:

In a *Liburnian* ſhalt thou be
Amongſt the ſtouteſt ſhips at Sea.

In imitation of which Veſſels being ſwift and light, the *Romans* in the time of their wealth and pride, invented a kind of *Chair*, or *Litter*, (ſuch as thoſe we call *Sedans*) wherein they were carried on mens ſhoulders with ſuch eaſe and pleaſure, that they could not only ſleep, or read, but write in them alſo: the Porters, or Bearers of them of this Nation; commonly from whence, or from the faſhion of the Veſſel which they did reſemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of theſe thus *Juvenal* in his third Satyre:

Si vocat officium, turba cedente vehetur
Dives, & ingenti curret ſuper ora Liburno;
Atque obiter leget, *aut* ſcribet, *vel* dormiet *intus*;
Namque facit ſomnum *clauſa lectica feneſtra*.

Thus *Engliſhed* by my honoured friend Sir *Robert Stapleton*, in his excellent tranſlation of that harſh *Satyriſt*.

When buſineſs calls, a crowd the rich man ſhuns,
And o'r mens heads in's huge *Sedan* he runs,
Reads, *write*, and *ſleeps* within it as he goes,
For *ſleep* will come if he the curtains cloſe.

Beſides which office of *Chair-carriers* or *Sedan-men*, as we call them now; this people being, when once Conquered, a ſervile Nation, furniſhed the *Romans* with thoſe *Beadles*, whom they employed in calling the Citizens from the fields to their publick buſineſſes, to which the ſame Poet alludeth, in the next *Satyre*, ſaying, *Clamante* Liburno, *Currite*, *jam ſedit*, *&c.* But to proceed, the nearneſs of this Country to the *Adriatick*, occaſioned the Bay of *Quernero*, commonly called *Sinus Planaticus*, to be ſometimes named *Sinus Liburnicus*; the parts of *Italy* on the other ſide of it, to be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and gave the name of *Liburnades* to a ſhole of Ilands lying on the coaſt hereof, 60 at leaſt in number, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. To which and other Ilands of the *Adriatick*, we are now to haſten, leaving the ſtory of *Illyricum* to the cloſe of all.

6. The SCLAVONIAN ILANDS.

Along the Coaſts of *Sclavonia*, lie a cluſter of ILANDS, to the number of a thouſand, as is ſaid by *Pliny*: moſt of which (if indeed ſo many) are but rocks, not Ilands, or not inhabited at all, or of any note. The principal whereof, and ſuch as deſerve place here, are 1. The *Liburnades* before mentioned. 2. The *Abſyrtides*. 3. The Iſles of *Raguſi*. 4. *Arbe*. 5. *Curzola*. 6. *Zara*. 7. *Liſſa* and *Brazzia*; the reſt not worth looking after, as to our deſign: the whole number of the Inhabitants reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 perſons.

1. The *LIBURNADES* ſaid by *Strabo* to be 60 in number, lie all along the Coaſts of *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zaro*. The chief whereof are 1. *ISSA*, now called *Pago*, containing 100 miles in compaſs, having a town of the ſame name; but in all that tract of ground not above 1005 inhabitants in the time of my Author, by reaſon of the ſharp air, and great want of fewel. The Salt-pits here yield a great commodity, not only to the people themſelves, but alſo to the State of *Venice*, ſupream Lord hereof. 2. *Tragurium*, now *Tran* and *Trahis*, ſo called from the chief Town hereof, built by thoſe of *Iſſa*: ſo near the Continent, that it ſeems to be a part thereof. By *Mela* it is named *Tagurium*, with ſome little difference. 3. *Pharus*, ſo called from the *Pharii* or *Parii* of whom once a Colony, long ſince come to ruine. It is now called *Lezina*, the greateſt of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150 miles in compaſs and very fruitfull for the bigneſſe. It hath a Town of the ſame name, which enjoys a ſafe and ſpacious Harbour; unwalled, and of no greater beauty, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which commandeth both the Harbour and the ſhipping in it. The birth-place of *Demetrius Pharius*, ſo often mentioned in the ſtories of *Greece*, and *Rome*.

2. The *ABSYRTIDES* are in number many, ſo called from the River *Abſyrtus*, which thereabout falls into the *Adriatick*, according unto that of *Lucan*,

Et cadit Adriacas *ſpumans* Abſyrtus *in undas*.

Abſyrtus foaming with his haſt,
Into the *Adria* falls at laſt.

But whether that river were ſo called by the *Colchians* at their landing there, in memory of *Abſyrtus* the ſon of *Aetas* King of *Colchis*, whom they went to ſeek; or for ſome other reaſon, I determin not. Certain I am, it could not be ſo named from the ſcattering of his limbs hereabouts by *Medea* his unnatural ſiſter, as is ſaid by *Plinie*: that cruel fact being done on the ſhores of the *Euxine*; the place called *Tomos* afterwards upon that occaſion. But for theſe Ilands, being in number many, as before was ſaid, two onely are of ſpecial note, that is to ſay, 1. *Vegia*, or *Viglio*, not far from *Zegna* on the firm land, containing in compaſs betwixt 80. and 100. miles, and about 1000. Inhabitants; the moſt populous of all theſe Seas. It hath a Town of the ſame name, with a very fair harbour: the Iland, by *Plinie*, called *Curieta*, the chief towns of it in his time being *Pſulſinium*, and *Curicum*. 2. *Abſorul* as *Ptolomie*, *Abſyrtium* as *Plinie* calls it; in whoſe time it was one Iland only, but now divided into two, by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the one of them is called *Cherſo*, the other *Oſero*; Both joyned together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both together making up 140 miles in compaſs; each of them having one town only, and that of the ſame name with the Iland; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 5000 perſons. Stored with ſufficiency of corn, plenty of wine, and abundance of wood, great quantities whereof are ſent yearly to *Venice*. They have alſo goodly herds of Cattel and great flocks of Sheep, affording by their fleſh, wool, cheeſe, and butter, a good increaſe of profit to the owners of them.

3. The

Illyricum.

3. The *Ilands* of *Raguſi*, (for ſo I call them which belong to that Common-wealth) are but three in number. 1. *Gravoſa*, a very pleaſant place, full of Gardens of Orenges, Lemmons, and Pomegranates. 2. *Languſte*, environed about with very high Mountains, in which are the *Raguſians* Farms, made rich by the great charge and induſtry of the ſeveral *Occupants*, ſo as to yeeld them wine, oil, and moſt excellent fruits: which they receive more plentifully from a goodly plain, ſituate in the midſt hereof, and naturally more fruitfull than the other parts. Near to this laſt Iſland is good fiſhing for *Sprats*: And in both an Art of making their trees to bring forth *Oyſters*, by bending down their boughs, and ſtaying them under the water with ſtones; ſo as in two years there are ſo many *Oyſters* faſtned unto them, as is ſtrange to ſee, and in the third year they are very good meat. 3. *Melida* lying betwixt *Raguſi* and the Iſle of *Curzola*, by *Plinie* called *Melita*, and on that ground ſuppoſed by ſome to be that Iland on which S. *Paul* did ſuffer ſhipwrack, *Acts* 26. But the name of *Barbarous*, which the Text joyns to the Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Iland betwixt *Greece* and *Italy*, in the times of S. *Paul*, and his landing when he parted thence in *Syracuſe*, an Haven of *Sicil*, ſo far from this, ſo near unto the other *Melita*, which is now called *Malta*, ſufficiently refells this fancy, though otherwiſe not improbably grounded,

4. Of thoſe which are known only by one ſingle name, the chief are ARBE, ſo called in the time of *Plinie*, from the beſt Town of it; but by *Ptolemy* it is named *Scardona*. A pleaſant Iland, in compaſſe about 30 miles, and containing ſome 3000 Inhabitants, the only Haven-leſſe Iſle of all the *Adriatick*; but that defect abundantly recompenſed by the natural ſweetneſſe of the place. Which ſo enticed certain diſſolute Rovers of *Auſtria*, that they ſeiſed upon it, *Anno* 1618. and had like to have occaſioned an heavy war betwixt *Ferdinand* Archduke of the Houſe of *Gratz* (not long after choſen King of the *Romans*) and the State of *Venice*, if *Philip* the 3d. of *Spain* had not made up the breach.

5. CURZOLA, by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* called *Corcyra*, or *Melana*, more rightly *Corcyra Melana*, or *Corcyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, in the Sea *Jonian*: the chief Town of it being of the ſame name with the Iland, was founded by the *Gnidians* of the Iſle of *Crete*. Sufficiently fruitful, but of wine eſpecially; 40 miles long, in compaſſe 90. and very populous, for the bigneſſe; notwithſtanding that the people being Sea faring men, do much uſe the Seas, and build many ſhips, In the year 1571. a little after the taking of *Cyprus*, and before the battel of *Lepanto*, it was invaded by *Uluz Aly*, General of the *Turkiſh* Fleet, with a Navy of 60 Gallies: for fear of whom *Contarenus* the *Venetian* Governour, together with the Townſmen and Garriſon Souldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town hereof. The ſilly women thus forſaken, and preferring death before diſhonour defended the walls; and with fire ſtones, and ſuch other weapons as they had, they beat off the enemy: till at the laſt a violent tempeſt forced the *Turkiſh* General to remove his Gallies further off, to a place of ſafety.

6. ZARA, LISSA, BRAZZIA, three ſmall Iſles, not otherwiſe memorable, but for their misfortunes; ſpoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from *Curzola*, who carried thence 1600 *Chriſtians* into cruel bondage. The reſt I purpoſely omit, rather Rocks than Ilands; barren and ſtony for the moſt part, and not much inhabited.

The antient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent of it, comprehending *Liburnia*, and *Dalmatia*, were the *Japodes* bordering on *Italy*; the *Scirtones*, or *Scirtari* confining upon *Macedon*; the *Mazai*, in the midſt about *Salona*; the *Peiruſtæ*, lying toward *Pannonia*; the *Derri*, *Cerauni*, *Daurſii*, *Varde*, *Siculotæ*, *Sardiotæ*, and other of inferiour note: all making up the great and potent Nations of the *Liburni* and the *Dalmatæ*; and comprehended generally in the name of *Illyrians*. Of theſe the *Liburnian Illyrians*, (*Illyrici ſeu Lyburni*, as they are indifferently called by *Florus*) were the firſt who felt the Forces of *Rome*: which growing State they had provoked by their frequent *Piracies*; but more by murdering the *Ambaſſadours* which were ſent unto them to require ſatisfaction; *Teuta* their Queen, a proude and Imperious Dame, commanding execution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans* for ſo many injuries. under the conduct of *Gentimalus*, one of their *Conſuls*, they were overthrown (as having more of the *Pirate* than the Souldier in them) ſome of their chief Nobility executed, in revenge of the wrong done to the *Ambaſſadours*; a yearly tribute impoſed on them, and the Queen deprived of the greateſt part of her Kingdom, conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharius*, one of their *Confederates*. But he proving unfaitful to them in their war with *Hannibal*, and *Gentius*, their laſt King,, who commanded over *Illyricum*, ſiding againſt them with *Perſeus*, King of *Macedonia*; *Anicius* the *Prætor* is ſent with a ſufficient Army, to make an end of that work. Who uſed ſuch diligence therein, that *Scordra* the chief town of the Kingdom, was taken; and the King himſef together with his wife and children made priſoners: by conſequence the whole war ended *antequam geri* Romæ *nunciaretur*, before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburnians* after that became quiet ſubjects, the whole Country, on the taking of *Gentius*, being made a *Province* of the *Romans*, *Anno.V.C.*586. employed at *Rome* in many ſervile offices, as before was ſaid; and then the *Dalmatians* began to caſt off the yoke. But *Dalminium* their cheif City being firſt ſacked by *Martius Figulus*, and after by *Naſica* before mentioned; they continued quiet and obedient till the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, when they again rebelled at the inſtigation of one *Batto*, a man very potent with the people

who

Illyricum.

Who having ten years together maintained the liberty of this Countrey, at laſt broken and wearied y the forces of *Germanicus*, and *Tiberius*, he ſubmitted himſelf unto the two *Generals*: who asking he reaſon of his revolt, were anſwered, becauſe the *Romans* ſent not *ſhepherds to keep*, *but* wolves *to evour their flocks*. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman* Province till the coming of *Odoacer* nto *Italy*, who brought it under his command; as the *Gothes* alſo did having vanquiſhed him, and hereby made themſelves Maſters of *Italy*, and the reſt of his purchaſes. But the Kingdome of the *Gothes* eing brought to an end, by the good fortune of *Juſtinian*, and the valour of *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, two f his Commanders (but very ill requited by him) *Illyricum* became a part of the *Eaſtern* Empire: continuing under the power of the *Grecian* Emperours, till the time of *Phocas* that bloudy Tyrant; when made a prey to the *Sclaves*.

Of theſe though we have ſpoken before in ſeveral places, as their fortunes and affairs have led us: yet being this is the only Countrey which preſerves their name, we will ſpeak here more exactly of them, than we have done hitherto; eſpecially as to their manners, name, and firſt *Original*; and finally of their ſucceſſors in this Countrey. And firſt for their *Original*, I take it for a thing paſt queſtion that they were no other than natural *Samaritans*, inhabiting on the North of the River *Iſter*; uniting themſelves under this name, in their undertakings and attempts on the *Eaſtern* Empire: as the many Nations of *Germany* took the name of *Franks*, and *Almans*, in their actions and atchievements againſt the *Weſtern*. But why they took this name rather than another, is not yet agreed on. Some fetch the original of it from *Slowo*, which in the *Sclavonian* tongue ſignifieth a *ſpeech* or *word*, becauſe they were all of one common language: others from *Slawa*, ſignyfying in that language *Fame* or *Glory*, in regard of that great fame and honour which they had atchieved, by their ſucceſſes on the Empire. But when I find a potent Nation of the *Winithi*, *Winuli*, or *Vendi*, a *Sarmatian* people, called *Sclavini* by *Jornandes*, poſſeſſed in his time of the further ſhores of the River *Iſter*, oppoſite to *Illiricum* and *Thrace*; and by that name waſting and foraging theſe Provinces, and other parts of that Empire in the time of *Juſtinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they did; I ſee no reaſon why we ſhould look further for the name of *Sclaves*, than from theſe *Sclavini*. For having in the time of *Phocas* ſubdued this Countrey, and called it *Sclavinia*, or *Sclavonia*, after their own name: by that and other fortunate ſucceſſes on the *Eaſtern* Empire, and the honour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce the reſt of the ſcattered tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite together with them both in name and action; and try their fortunes in the conqueſt of the *Weſt* of *Europe*, as theſe had done already on the *Eaſt* parts of it. In which deſign they ſped ſo well, that they became Maſters of almoſt all thoſe Countreys, which lie betwixt the River *Viſtula*, and the *Euxine* Sea; the *Adriatick*, and the *Baltick*: communicating their language unto all the Provinces, and Nations, conquered by them; and to moſt, their manners, rites, and cuſtoms. Their Government at firſt by Kings, but ſo that the ſucceſſion ſeldom held in a Race or Family; and thoſe that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For having a Law amongſt themſelves, that he who killed a Tyrant ſhould ſucceed in his place: they had few Kings who ſome or other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and then diſpatch him out of the way; that a greater Tyrant than himſelf (as it commonly happeneth in ſuch caſes) might poſſeſs the power. Inſomuch that they had a new King almoſt every year, none of them for the ſpace of an hundred years dying natural deaths; and all that while the People (as it needs muſt be) moſt miſerably torn in pieces by inteſtine warrs. Not cured of this diſtemper, till the ſeveral Tribes and Nations of them, (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, theſe here, and thoſe of other Countreys) had their ſeveral Princes, ſucceeding one another in a Regular way. Their Religion *Gentiliſm* at the firſt. For being originally Heathens, they worſhipped ſuch gods as others of the Gentiles did; *Jeſſan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzim* for *Mars*, *Zievane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had alſo a goddeſs called *Pagode*, to whom they prayed for fair weather, and a temperate Air. To their children they uſed to give no name, till they began to grow great, aud then conducted them to the Temple of their gods; where they cut of their firſt hair, and offered it as a pledge of their future ſervice: at which ſolemnity they called together their friends and kinsfolk to make merry, with bankets, dancing, ſinging, and all kind of ſports; offering in ſacrifice an Hog, and wine mixed with honey, ſomewhat like *Metheglin*.

The Goſpel was firſt generally received amongſt them by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, two right Godly men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circaſſians*, two great *Aſian* Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. With good ſucceſs as to the work, and with no ſmall honour and advantage to thoſe Patriarchs alſo: the Eaſtern *Sclaves* inhabiting thoſe parts of this Countrey which lie next to *Greece*, and all the *Dacian* Provinces, except *Tranſylvania*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, but priviledged to officiate all Divine Services in their natural Language. The reſt, as more obnoxious to the power of the King of *Hungary*, and the *German* Emperours, ſubmitted by degrees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means did reap where they never ſowed.

But to return unto the ſtory, the *Sclaves* thus ſetled in this Countrey (ſince called *Sclavonia*) continued abſolute Maſters of it, under the Title of Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, till the year 970. when growing unſufferable by their frequent Piracies, and having raviſhed or ſurprized a company of *Venetian* Ladies; they forced that State (as the *Liburnians* did the *Romans*) to make war upon them: which ended in the loſs of *Lezina* and *Curzola*, two of their beſt Ilands, and almoſt all the Seatowns on the Coaſt of the *Adriatick*, poſſeſſed for the moſt part, ſince that time, by the State of *Venice*: a tribute alſo of 100 barrels of Wine, and a preſent to the Duke of 3000 Coney skins, being laid upon them; *Petro Urſeola* being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcomir*, King of the *Sclavonians*.

ans. Afterwards *Zelamirus* the laſt King, dying without iſſue, bequeathed the Kingdome to his wife; and ſhe as freely to her brother *Ladiſlaus*, King of *Hungary*, ſurnamed the *Saint*: the right hereof accrewing by his means to the Kings of *Hungary*; but the poſſeſſion of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*; the cauſe of much war and bloudſhed betwixt thoſe Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the fray, and got the greateſt part for himſelf, by their diſagreements. Betwixt theſe three, *Sclavonia* at this time doth ſtand thus divided: the *Venetians* poſſeſſing the greateſt part of the *Ilands*, and all the Sea-coaſts from the River *Ariſia*, to the Bay of *Catharo*,(the City and Common-wealth of *Raguſi*, excepted only) the houſe of *Auſtria*, in the right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windiſchland*, and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who firſt ſet footing here in the reign of *Mahomet* the ſecond) the whole Kingdome of *Boſnia*, the Patronage of *Raguſi*, ſome Towns in *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*, and all the reſidue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Catharo* to *Albania*.

The Arms of *Sclavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinals Hat, the ſtrings pendant, and platted in a true Loves knot, meeting in the Baſe, *Gules*.

There are in *Sclavonia*
Archbiſhops 4. Biſhops 26.

And thus much for SCLAVONIA.

OF
DACIA.

D*ACIA* is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, and ſome part of *Thrace*: on the Weſt with *Hungary*, and *Sclavonia*; on the North, with *Podolia*, and ſome other Members of the Realm of *Poland*; on the South, with the reſt of *Thrace*, and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here firſt inhabited: in *Strabo* better known by the name of the *Davi*, who proving, when firſt known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themſelves to ſervice in hope of gain; occaſioned the *Romans* in their *Comœdies*, and common Speech, to call a *Sycophant* or *Servant*, by the name of *Davus*.

It lyeth on both ſides of the *Danow*, frontiring all along the *Upper* and the *Lower Hungary*, and ſome part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the ſeventh *Climate* to the tenth, ſo that the longeſt Summers day, in the moſt Northern part thereof, is near ſeventeen hours; and in the moſt Southern, fifteen hours, three quarters.

By this accompt with reference to the other limits befote laid down, it differeth much in ſituation and dimenſions, from the antient *Dacia*, deſcribed by *Ptolemy*; that lying wholly on the North ſide of the *Danow*, but taking in ſo much of the *Upper Hungary*, as lyeth on the Eaſt ſide of *Tibiſcus*: this comprehending all the reſt of the antient *Dacia*, with both the *Myſias* and *Dardania*, and in a word, the whole *Dacian* Dioceſe in the largeſt extent thereof, the Province of *Prævalitana* excepted onely; which though a Member of this Dioceſe, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer underſtanding whereof we may pleaſe to know, that *Dacia* properly ſo called, was ſituate on the North ſide of *Danubius*, as before was ſaid; extending as far Weſtward as the River *Tibiſcus*, where it frontired on the *Jazyges Metanaſta*: inhabited by a military and valiant people, who many times, eſpecially when the froſt did favour them, paſſed over the River, and infeſted the *Roman* Provinces. And though repreſſed and made tributary by *Julius Cæſar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Auguſtus*; who ſending *Lentulus* againſt them with a puiſſant Army, compelled them to retire on the other ſide of the River, planting the Southern banks thereof with ſtrong Towns and Garriſons to reſtrain them from the like incurſions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si* Dacia *tunc non victa, ſummota atque dilata eſt*, ſaith the Hiſtorian; though *Dacia* was not overcome, yet it was remo-

ved

Tranſylvania.

ved ſomewhat further off, and the Provinces thereby ſecured from the attempts of that people. After this, from the time of **Cotiſo**, with whom *Auguſtus* had to deal, we find little of them till the reign of *Decebalus* their laſt King, a man both ready in advice, and quick in execution. Againſt him, *Domitian* made war by *Julianus* his Lieutenant; who gave *Decebalus* a great overthrow, and had then utterly vanquiſhed him, if his wit had not better befriended him than his ſword. For, fearing that the *Romans* making uſe of their victory, would enter and take poſſeſſion of his Countrey; he pitched in the way a great number of ſtakes in battel array, putting on them the old Croſlets of his Souldiers; which looking like ſo many men of arms, frighted the enemy from approaching their Countrey. *Trajan* was the next that made war againſt him, and brought him to that exigent, that having with much loſs endured ſome few skirmiſhes, he yielded himſelf, and is acknowledged a friend to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But being one of a high ſpirit, and born in a *free air*, he once again fell off from the *Romans*; but to his own deſtruction: for ſeeing by the valour of *Trajan*, his Kingdom conquered, and his Palace taken and deſtroyed; he fell upon his own Sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Loſt in the time of *Galienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*. Who finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, tranſplanted the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civil ſort of the *Natives*, on the other ſide of the River; placing them betwixt the two *Myſias*, (in ſome part of each) and calling the Countrey given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia:* leaving the *Old* unto the *Gothes*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whoſe *thorow-fare* it was in all their enterpriſes and deſignes on the *Roman* Empire. Divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripenſis*; this lying on the banks of *Danow*, the other more within the land: which with the Provinces of *Mœſia ſuperior*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia ſalutaris*, made up the whole Dioceſe of *Dacia* in the times ſucceeding. Subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfectus*, *Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, and conſequently appertaining (after the diviſion) to the Eaſtern Empire. And it continued in this ſtate till the time of *Juſtinian* who being a native of this Countrey, ſubducted it from the command of that *Præfect*, and inſtituted both a *Præfectus Prætorio* for this Dioceſs only in Civil matters, and a *Primate* for the affairs of the Church; both ſetled in the City of *Juſtiniana*, of his own foundation: enlarging the *juriſdiction* of the firſt by the addition of ſome part of *Macedonia Secunda*, and *Pannonia Secunda*, and giving to the other all thoſe preheminences, which had been antiently enjoyed by the greater *Patriarchs*. But this new Inſtitution was of no continuance. For firſt the *Sclaves*, and afterwards the *Ruſſians*, *Hungars*, and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, diſ-membred it peace-meal from the Empire, and divided it under new names amongſt themſelves. Of which together with the nature of the ſoil and people, I ſhall ſpeak anon, having firſt took a view of the Rivers, Hills, and other Land-marks, which are to be my chief guides in the *Chorographie* or deſcription of them.

The Rivers then of moſt note are, 1. The *Danow*, which here, at *Axium*, or *Axiopolis* a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Iſter*, continuing it from thence to its *Æſtuarium*, where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, with 7 mouths or channels: that is to ſay, 1. *Pence*, 2. *Naracuſtoma*, 3, *Caloſtoma*, 4. *Plendoſtoma*, 5. *Spireoſtoma*, 6. *Boreoſtoma*; the name of the laſt I find not amongſt my Authours, *quia languidiſsimum nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolemy*. 2 *Marulius*, now called *Mariſch*. 3. *Termes*, 4. *Alluta*, keeping its old name, 5. *Hieraſas*, all of old *Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *Iſter*. As do alſo *Ciabrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Servia*; and 6. *Sucoma* of *Bulgaria*, or the *Lower Myſia*. Chief Mountains of it are 1. the *Carpathian*, 2. *Scardus*, 3. *Ozbelus*; whereof the firſt parteth it from *Sarmatia Europæa*, the ſecond from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This ſaid, we will proceed to the deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces, which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to ſay, 1. *Tranſylvania*, 2. *Moldavia*, 3. *Walachia*, 4. *Raſcia*, 5. *Servia*, 6 *Bulgaria*: the firſt four in *Old Dacia*, on the North ſide of the *Danow*; the two laſt in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1. *TRANSYLVANIA.*

TRANSYLVANIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Moldavia*; on the Weſt, with the *Upper Hungaria*; on the North, with *Ruſsia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which parted by the *Carpathian* Mountains; on the South, with *Raſcia*, and *Walachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungary*, the name in *Latine* ſignifying the Countrey beyond the woods. By the *Dutch* it is called *Seben Burgen*, from ſeven Caſtles or ſtrong holds antiently built in it, to defend the Frontiers: *Septemcaſtrenſis*, in ſome *Latine* Authours, upon that occaſion. But by the more elegant *Latiniſts*, it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*, or made ſubject to them.

The ſoil doth naturally abound with wine, corn, and fruit, of which it was ſo plentifull in the times of the *Romans*, that the Emperour *Trajan* cauſed a piece of money to be coined, having the figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu-copia*, and in the other a plain *Tablet* with this inſcription, *Abundantia Daciæ*. Particularly beſides great plenty of wheat, and moſt excellent wines, it yieldeth great ſtore of Cherries, Damaſcens, Malacotoons, Musk-melons, not inferiour to thoſe of *Italy*; and alſo *Centaury* good ſtore, and many other *Medicinal* plants; ſome mines of gold and ſilver, many of Iron, Braſs, and Copper; and not a few veins of Salt and Sulphur. Of Cattel ſuch abundance, that many times large Oxen are ſold for a *Floren*, or half a Crown a piece; and a moſt notable breed of Horſes: not to ſay any thing of that variety of wild beaſts, which they have in their Woods and Foreſts, and all ſorts of Fowl both for food and pleaſure. So populous withall (for the

Tranſylvania.

the moſt fruitfull Countries are commonly populous alſo) that *Caſtaldo* Governour hereof in the minority of *Stephen*, the 4th. ſon of *John de Sepuſio*, *Anno* 1551. advanced an Army of 70000 able men, conſiſting of the Natives of this Countrey only, for the ſiege of *Lippe*; a ſtrong Town of *Hungary*, but on the borders of this Countrey.

The people are much of the ſame nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time ſubject; but ſomewhat more ſtubborn and untractable; ſpeak the ſame language that they do, with ſome difference in the *Dialect* only: converted at the ſame time to the *Chriſtian* Faith, and under the ſame forms of *Eccleſiaſtical* government. In former times they uſed to read, as the Jews do, from the right hand to the left; but of late herein conform to the Weſtern Nations, from whom they are generally deſcended.

For that the people of this Countrey are the progeny of the *Saxons*, is evident by the *Saxon* Language yet in part retained. 2ly. We find *Charls* the *Great*, like a *Politick Conquerour*, placed many of that Nation here, weakning ſo their ſtrength at home, and fortifying the bounds of his Empire. And 3ly. by a ſtory recited by *Verſtegan*, which we touched in our deſcription of *Brunſwick*; the whole narration is this. *Halberſtadt* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Muſician whom they called the *Pied-piper*, undertaking for a great maſs of money to deſtroy; they agree: hereupon he tuned his pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after him; are drowned in the next River. This done, he asked his pay, but is denyed; wherupon he ſtriketh up a new fit of mirth: all the children male and female of the Town follow him into the hill of *Hamelen*, which preſently cloſed again. The Parents miſs their children, and could never hear of them; now of late ſome have found them in this Countrey, where I alſo leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is ſaid to happen the 22 of *July* 1376. ſince which time it is ſaid that the people of *Halberſtadt* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other inſtrument to be ſounded in that ſtreet: and eſtabliſhed a Decree, that in all the writings of *Contract* or *Bargain*, after the date of our *Saviours Nativity*, the date alſo of this their childrens *tranſmigration* ſhould be added in rei *memoriam*. But though the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main body of them, yet being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies; and in the Northern parts there remain ſtill ſome of the old *Scythians*, planted there by *Attila*. Out of thoſe Members is the body of this State compoſed: ſo ſtrong and populous that it is conceived to be able to raiſe an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 horſe and 12000 foot for the battel of *Kereſture*, *Anno* 1596. being more by 2000 than the whole Realm of *Hungary* ſent unto that ſervice.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons*, are 1. *Hermanſtadt*, in *Latine*, *Hermannopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was ſituate) ſo named of one *Herman* the Founder of it; little inferiour to *Vienna* for ſtrength and greatneſs, well fortified both by Art and Nature. 2. *Cronſtad*, in *Latine* called *Corona*, by ſom *Braſſovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*, this laſt name given it by *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, who repaired and beautified it. Situate on the borders of *Walachia*, amongſt fruitfull Mountains, remarkable for a fair Library, a kind of *Academy*, and the moſt noted *Emporie* or *Mart-Town* of all this Countrey: of great reſort, eſpecially in the time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Polanders*, *Walachians*, and other Nations. 3. *Biſtricium* (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) ſo called from the River *Biſtrice*, which runneth through it: ſo pleaſant and ſo ſweet a Town, that there is no durt or mire to be ſeen at any time; or if there be, the people preſenly ſwell up the River, and ſo cleanſe the ſtreets. 4. *Medieſus*, (by the *Dutch Meduiſh*) ſo called *quaſi medius Conſeſſus*, becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Countrey; a Town almoſt as near as *Biſtrice*. 5. *Segoſwaria*, or *Scesburg*, on the declivity of an hill. 6. *Zabeſus* or *Laiz*, once the chief Town of the *Saxons*, but now much decayed; ſituate in a very deep Valley, well-fenced with waters, and thoſe waters well ſtored with fiſh. 7. *Clauſenbourg*, the *Zeugma* of *Ptolemy*, in *Latine* called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the ſecond, Emperour, by whom re-edified; at firſt a Colony of the *Saxons* or *Dutch* only, but of late times the *Hungarians* coming in as ſtrangers, were at laſt priviledged as Citizens, and inhabit it together with them. The Town well-ſeated in the middle of a pleaſant plain, encompaſſed with a handſome wall, and beautified with elegant buildings. 8. *Alba Julia*, now *Weiſenberg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolemy*, ſituate on a ſmall brook then called *Apnus*, (but now *Oratas*) whence it had the name. Built on the ſide of an hill near the River *Maruch*, (or *Moruſus*) over-looking a large and fruitfull Plain: heretofore a Biſhops See, and the ordinary reſidence of the Prince or *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania*; but now a gariſon of *Hungarian* Souldiers, holding it for the Emperour, as King of *Hungary*.

Chief Towns belonging to the *Hungarians*, and by them inhabited, are 1. *Varadin*, much mentioned in the ſtories of theſe later times, ſince the invaſions of the *Turks*; ſituate on the borders of *Hungary*. 2. *Thorda*, built in or near the place where ſtood the *Salinæ* of *Ptolemy*, ſo called from the aboundance of *Salt-pits* which were then about it. 3. *Engnedine*, by the *Romans* called *Annium*, from a *Cauſey* leading to it, raiſed by one *Annius*, and from him ſo named; ſome fragments whereof are ſtill remaining. 4. *Deva*, remarkable for a vein of the beſt Wines. 5. *Fenuſchium*, affording very pleaſant Wines alſo, not inferiour to thoſe of *Venuſium* in *Italy*. 6. *Zilhahi*, 7. *Gela*, which little memorable. 8. *Millenback*, not far from which, betwixt it and the Town of *Bros*, is a very ſtrong fortreſs, commanding a ſtrait and narrow paſſage leading into this Countrey out of *Hungary*.

In the North part hereof lyeth the Province called *ZACULEIA*, inhabited by the *Scyculi*, or old brood of *Scythians*; brought hither by *Attila*, on his firſt conqueſt of this Countrey; and here ſtill continuing. A people which have much in them of the antient *Huns*, and had heretofore a peculiar language unto themſelves; but now they ſpeak the *Hungarian* generally, differing in the *Dialect* only. But though, by the neceſſity of commerce and co-habitation, they are brought into the ſame language; they ſtill retain their antient cuſtoms, governed by their own Laws, and living after the ſame manner as the *Switzers* do: each of their *Cantons* (ſeven in number) being abſolute in and of it ſelf, but all united with the *Tranſylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Countrey, againſt the ſeveral pretenſions of the *German* and *Turkiſh* Emperours. And though they do acknowledge ſome ſubjection to the Emperour, as King of *Hungary*; yet it is but what they liſt themſelves: being antiently priviledged from all taxes, more than the paying of a *Bull* for every houſhold, in the way of an Herriot, at the *Coronation* of the new King, when and how oft ſoever it may chance to happen. Their *Cantons* (*Seds* they call them,) are 1. *Sepſi*, 2. *Orbay*, 3. *Kiſdy*, 4. *Czyk*, 5. *Gyrgio*, or *Udurrheli*, 6. *Marous Zeek*, and 7. *Aranias Zeek*; ſo called from the chief Town in each diviſion. In former times no *Nobleman*, nor any one of better means and greater eminence than other, was known amongſt them: but now of late, that *parity* (or confuſion rather) is grown out of credit, and ſome begin to over-top the reſt both in power and title, as in other places.

The firſt Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anarti*, *Tauriſci*, *Rhatacenſii*, *Cancoenſii*, the *Burredenſii*, and *Biephi*, &c. firſt conquered by *Lyſimachus*, the great and mighty King of *Thrace*, one of the renowned Captains of *Alexander* the *Great*; in token whereof, innumerable *medals*, in the age of our *Grandfathers*, were found in this Countrey, having his Image on the one ſide, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards ſubdued by the Emperour *Trajan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been ſhewn already. Being forſaken by the *Romans*, it was won by the *Goths*; their conſtant dwelling, till forced over the *Danow* by the *Hunnes*, the next poſſeſſours of this Countrey; the road or *thorow-fare* from that time of thoſe barbarous Nations, which out of *Aſia* made their inroads on the *Europaans*. Having been ſucceſſively ſubdued by the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen* the firſt King of *Hungary*, ſurnamed the *Saint*; by whoſe perſwaſion and inducements, they received the Goſpel. Governed after this time, as a member of that Kingdome, by a Deputy whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* ſignifying as much as *Præfectus Militia*, or a *Lord Lieutenant*;) a man by reaſon of the greatneſs of his place and power, of moſt authority in that Kingdom. The names and ſucceſſion of theſe *Vaivods*, till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that more clear and conſtant in this order following.

The VAIVODS and PRINCES of *TRANSYLVANIA*

1 *John*, ſurnamed *Huniades*, made *Vaivod* hereof by *Uladiſlaus* the fourth. A man of great valour and renown, the great defender of this Countrey againſt the *Turks*; whom he overthrew in many battels, eſpecially in that of *Marous*, where he ſlew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.

2 *Stephen*, of the noble family of *Battori*, Vaivod in the time of *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, the ſon of *Huniades*.

3 *Stephen* II. ſurnamed *de Sepuſio*, from the place of his Honour or Eſtate, not ſo much memorable for any thing, as for being Father of *Barbara*, the wife of *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland*, and of

4 *John* II. called alſo the *Sepuſio*, after the death of *Lewis* the ſecond choſen King of *Hungary*, of whom before, amongſt the Kings of that Realm.

1526 5 *Americus*, Biſhop of *Veradium*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepuſio*, on his taking of the Crown of *Hungary*; treacherouſly murdered for not complying with the *Turks*, *Anno* 1534.

1540 6 *Stephen* III. ſurnamed *Maylat*, a noble *Hungarian*, but extremely ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* uſurped the *Vaivodſhip*; was in the year 1440. confirmed in that dignity.

1541 7 *Stephen* IV. ſon of *John de Sepuſio* the King of *Hungary*, by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* made *Vaivod* of *Tranſylvania*, being then an Infant; (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of *Hungary* not long before) incroached upon not long after by the ſaid *Solyman*, this Countrey was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* King of *Hungary*, other lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.

1551 8 *Stephen* V. ſurnamed *Dobus*, for his valour ſhewed againſt the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made *Vaivod* of this Countrey by the ſaid King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman* not liking that this Countrey ſhould be at the Devotion of the Kings of *Hungary*, conferred the ſame (under the Vaſſalage of the Empire) upon one

9 *John* III. whoſe Family and ſurname I have no where found; a profeſſed Champion of theſe *Turks*, and as profeſſed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his ſucceſſors in the Kingdom of *Hungary*.

10 *Stephen* VI. ſurnamed *Battory*, (of which houſe he was) made *Vaivod* by the *Turk*; and afterwards on the commendation of *Amurath* the 3d. choſen King of *Poland*.

1575 11 *Chriſtopher Battori*, brother of *Stephen*, on whoſe election unto *Poland* he ſucceeded here, and was the firſt who leaving the title of *Vaivod*, took that of *Prince* of *Tranſylvania*.

12 *Sigiſmund*, ſon of *Chriſtopher*, ſhook off the *Turkiſh* bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and ſlew ſome of their *Baſſas* (the *Scanderbeg* of the times he lived in.) But not being able to hold out againſt ſo potent an adverſary, he reſigned his eſtate to *Rodolphus* the Emperour; having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppelen* and *Ratibor* in *Sileſia*, and an annual penſion of 50000 *Joachims*. But finding his penſion ill paid, he made a new reſignation of it to

1599 13 *Andrew Battori*, couſin of *Sigiſmund*, ſlain within the year by the *Vaivod* of *Valachia*. After whoſe death

1601 14. *Rodolphus* Emperour, and King of *Hungary*, is admitted Prince of *Tranſylvania*, on the ſecond reſignation of *Sigiſmund*. But his Souldiers behaving themſelves with two great inſolence, *Sigiſmund* was called back again, but never well ſetled: ſo that at laſt he was fain to leave the Countrey in the power of the Emperour, and retire to *Prague*, where, in the year, 1613. he died unlamented. In the mean time

1604 15 *Juſtine*, or *Iſtivan*, ſurnamed *Botſcay*, a noble man of this Countrey, made Prince hereof by the Great *Turk*, and ſupported by him, cleared the Province of the *Germans*, and being followed by great Companies of thoſe of the Reformed Religion, he not only obtained of the Emperour *Rodolphus* a confirmation of this eſtate unto himſelf, but liberty of Conſcience, and the Free exerciſe of Religion for both the Nations, preſently after which he died, *Decemb.* 30. 1606.

1607 16 *Sigiſmund* II. of the noble family of *Ragotzie*, elected in the *February* following by the *Tranſylvanians*; but finding himſelf not able to make his election good againſt the Emperour, and being unwilling to ſubject himſelf unto the *Turks*, after the end of one year he relinquiſhed the Government, and betook himſelf again to a private life.

1608 17 *Gabriel Battori*, of the family of the former Princes, ſucceeded by the favour of *Achmet* the Great *Turk*: after whoſe death ſo welcome unto his Neighbours and ſubjects.

1613 18 *Bethlehem Gabour*, by the ſame *Achmet* was made Prince of *Tranſylvania*; a profeſſed Enemy of the houſe of *Auſtria*; but one that with a great deal of noiſe did them little hurt.

1630 19 *Stephen* VII. ſurnamed *Ragotzi*, on the death of *Bethlem Gabour*, ſucceeded Prince by the power and favour of the *Turks*; under whoſe *Clientele* and protection he doth ſtill enjoy it, (as his predeceſſors did before him) againſt all pretenſions of the Empire and Realm of *Hungary*; as on the other ſide, defended by the *Emperour*, and Crown of *Poland*, from being made thrall unto the *Turks*.

2. MOLDAVIA.

MOLDAVIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Sea; on the Weſt, with *Tranſylvania*; on the North, with the River *Nieſter*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolemy* and the Antients, by which parted from *Podolia* a Province in POLAND; aud on the South with *Walachia*.

It is ſo called, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Mœtavia*, from its nearneſs to the fens of *Mœotis*; or rather from the *Hunnes* and other people of thoſe fens, who poſſeſſed the ſame. Others conceive that it was at firſt called *Maurdavia*, i. e. *nigrorum Davorum Regio*, the Countrey of the *black Davi*, (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and ſome others:) ſo named from their complexion, or the colour of their *Caps* and other garments; as *Nigra Ruſsia*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occaſion. But the more probable opinion (as I take it) is, that it took this name from the River *Moldava*, which runneth thorow it; as the *Moravians* had that name from the River *Morava*. The nature and Religion of the People we ſhall find in *Valachia*, whereof anciently reckoned for a part.

The Countrey is very fruitfull in corn, wine, graſs, and wood; but more uſed for *paſturage* than *tillage*, by reaſon of the great want of people to manure the land: by means whereof it afforded great plenty of *Beef* and *Mutton*, whereby they ſupply ſome parts of *Poland*, and the populous City of *Conſtantinople*. And theſe they iſſue out in ſo great a number, that the *Tenth penny* exacted by the Prince or *Vaivod*, in the way of *Cuſtom*, amounteth to 150000 Crowns *per annum*: and yet the *Clergy* and the *Gentry* are diſcharged of this *impoſt*. But the main trade of this Countrey is not driven by the *Natives*: the Port-towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Raguzian* Merchants, who foreſtall the *Markets*, and bartar all their corn and wine into *Ruſsia* and *Poland*; their ſkins, wax, honey, powdered *beef*, pulſe, and butter, into *Conſtantinople*: it being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Countrey no fewer than 5000 ſhips laden with corn, victuals, and other proviſions neceſſary to the life of man, are yearly ſent unto that City.

The Countrey is in a manner round, the *Diameter* each way being near upon 300 *Engliſh* miles: but ſo ill inhabited by reaſon of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Polonian Coſacks*, that certain *Engliſh* Gentlemen having in the year 1609. travelled at leaſt 240 miles in the Countrey, could meet in all the way but nine towns and villages; and for an hundred miles together, the graſs ſo high that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattel to eat it, and of men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities, or towns of note: though it affords two Archbiſhops, and two Biſhops Sees; followers (as all the reſt of the people are) of the traditions and doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Valachi

The principal of thoſe which be are 1 *Occazoma*, or *Zucconia*, the Vaivods ſeat. 2 *Fucciania*. 3 *Fazeling*, of which little memorable. 4 *Kotjim*, a place of great ſtrength, on the borders of *Poland*; by ſome called *Cochina*; the ordinary Magazeen of the Countrey. 5 *Jaſſi*, commonly called *Yas*, the chief Town for wealth and trade in all this Province. 6 *Bender*, a ſtrong Town on the *Euxine* Sea. 7 *Polada* near the *Danow*. 8 *Bialograd*, or *Bologrove*, ſituate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Nieſter*; a ſtrong Town againſt the *Tartars*, and *Polonians*. 9 *Kele*, antiently called *Achilleia*, ſituate on the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the moſt part compaſſed round with the waters of it; and therefore ſaid by *Ptolemy* to be an Iland. 10 *Ac-Germen*, of old called *Aſprocaſtron*, and *Moncaſtrum*, a very ſtrong Town in the ſame coaſt alſo: both taken by *Bajazet*, the ſecond Emperour of the *Turks*, *An.* 1485. But theſe three Towns are not ſo properly in *Moldavia*, at leaſt not in *Moldavia* properly ſo called, as in a little Province called *Beſarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*; formerly counted part thereof, till conquered by the *Turks* in the year aforeſaid, it became a Member of that Empire. A tract inhabited by the *Beſſi*, in the times of *Ptolemy*, who being driven out of their Countrey by the *Bulgarians*, ſetled themſelves (as ſome ſay) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Boſnia*.

The whole Countrey following the fortune of *Tranſylvania*, and the reſt of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, was for a while accompted part of the *Ruſſian* Empire; till the diſmembring of that Empire by the *Tartars*. After which it was ſometimes Homager to the *Polander*, ſometimes to the *Hungarians*, according as the *Vaivods* or Princes of it could find beſt conditions. By *Mahomet* the Great it was made *tributary* to the *Turks*; but the *tribute* at the firſt very light and eaſie, not above 2000 Crowns *per annum*: that mighty Emperour, who aimed at more profitable conqueſts, being loth to ſpend his forces on ſo poor a purchaſe, as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his ſon, finding how fit it lay for the more abſolute command of the *Euxine* Sea, took in that part hereof which is called *Beſſarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkiſh* Province, *Anno* 1485. as before was ſaid; impoſing on the reſt an increaſe of the former *tribute*, and ſo left it unto the diſpoſal of its natural Princes. After which time the *Vaivods* fearing to be made Vaſſals to the *Turks*, did many times riſe in Arms againſt them; aided therein ſometimes by the *Hungarians*, and ſometimes by the *Polander*; which laſt pretended to the Soveraignty and *chieftage* of it. *Bogdanus*, *Vaivod* hereof in the time of *Selimus* the ſecond, uniting himſelf more cloſely with the *Polonians*; became thereby ſuſpected by the *Turkiſh* Tyrant, who with a great power chaſed him out of this Countrey, and gave the ſame unto one *John* a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the moſt part in the *Turkiſh* Court (where he renounced his faith, and was circumciſed) under the yearly tribute of 60000 Crowns. But *John* the new made *Vaivod*, was no ſooner ſetled, but he returned again to his firſt *Religion*, and for that cauſe grew leſs affected by the *Turks*. Which being obſerved by the then Vaivod of *Valachia*, he practiſed to obtain that dignity for his brother *Peter*; offering to double the ſaid *tribute*, and to aſſiſt in ſubjugation of the Countrey. The *Turk* accepting of theſe offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Valachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fall into *Moldavia*: and were ſo gallantly received by the noble *Vaivod*, that few of them eſcaped the ſlaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old friend *Charnieviches*; and againſt faith given, barbarouſly murdered by the *Turkiſh Baſſa*; *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, *An.* 1574. the *Vaivods* from that time forwards, being nominated by the *Turkiſh* Emperours, and governing as *ſubſtitutes* and Lieutenants for and under them. And though *Aaron*, one of the ſucceeding Vaivods, did ſhake off this yoke, and confederated himſelf with *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania*, and *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, for defence of themſelves and their *Eſtates*, againſt that enemy: yet being afterward ſupplanted by *Roſwan*, one of his own ambitious ſubjects, and that confederacy disjoined, it became ſubject firſt unto the *Polonians*, by the power and practice of *Zamoſkie*, Chancellor of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus*, Emperour of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turk*, as before it was. And though the *Polanders* have ſince made uſe of ſome opportunities, in impoſing *Vaivods* on this Countrey, in deſpite of the *Turks*; yet was it commonly to their own loſs, little or no benefit to the *Moldavians*, and in the end drew the whole power of the *Turks* upon themſelves in the reign of *Oſman*, never ſince intermedling in the affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the *Turks* diſpoſing; who receive hence ſome yearly tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire poſſeſſion of it, ſo long ſince aimed at by thoſe Tyrants.

3. VALACHIA.

VALACHIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Moldavia*, and a branch of the *Iſter*, or *Danubius*, bending towards the North; on the Weſt, with *Raſcia*; on the North with *Tranſylvania*, and ſome part of *Moldavia*; and on the South, with the *Danubius* wholly, by which parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. Firſt called *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus*, a Noble *Roman*, who on the conqueſt hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought hither an *Italian* Colony; afterwards by corruption *Ulachia*, and at laſt *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Ulachia*, was at firſt of a more large extent, than it is at preſent; comprehending all *Moldavia* alſo: divided in thoſe times by a ridge of Mountains, into *Ciſalpina*, and *Tranſalpina*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and and ſpecially ſo called) unto the other. The people of both, in token of their firſt extraction, ſpeak a corrupt *Latine* or *Italian* language: but in matter of *Religion* follow the dictates of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*; under whom all *Eccleſiaſtical* affairs are governed by one *Archbiſhop*, and two *Biſhops*. In other things they partake generally of the rudeneſs and barbarity of thoſe Nations which have ſince ſubdued them; being a rough-hewn people, hardly civilized, ignorant for the moſt part of *letters* and all *liberal ſciences*; not weaned perfectly (in ſo long time of their profeſſion of *Chriſtianity*) from the ſuperſtitions of the *Gentiles*; ſwearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marrying and unmarrying at their pleaſures: much given to *magical* charms, and incantations, and burying with their dead both clothes and victuals, for their relief in that long journey to the other world.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 miles: the Countrey for the moſt part plain, and very fertile; affording ſtore of Cattel, a breed of excellent horſes, iron-mines, ſalt-pits, and all proviſions neceſſary to the life of man. Some *vines* they alſo have, and not few *mines* of gold and ſilver, more than for fear of the *Turks* and other ill neighbours they dare diſcover: begirt about with woody mountains, which afford them fewel, and very well watered with the Rivers of *Pruth*, called antiently 1 *Hieraſus*. 2 *Stertius*. 3 *Fulmina*. 4 *Teln*. 5 *Alluta*, all of them falling into 6 the *Danow*; which in this Province, at the influx of *Fulmina*, takes the name of *Iſter*. Yet is it not (at the preſent) very populous, the ſpaciouſneſs and fertility hereof conſidered; by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Coſsacks*: their late long war againſt thoſe Nations and the *Dutch*, having much decreaſed their former numbers; with which they ſo abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this Countrey in the year 1473. was able upon little warning to bring 70000 men into the field for a preſent ſervice.

Places of moſt note herein are 1 *Galatz*, on the influx of the River *Pruth* or *Hieraſus*, into the *Danubius*; the waters of which River are ſo unwholſome, that it cauſeth the body to ſwell. 2 *Treſcortum*, not far from which they dig a bituminous earth, ſo refined and pure, that uſually they make Candles of it inſtead of wax. 3 *Prailaba*, by ſome called *Brailovia*, the Town of moſt trade in all this Countrey: ſituate on the *Danow*, and defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle, fortified by Art, and Nature, and furniſhed with a ſtrong Garriſon of *Turks*, as the key of this Province, opening the door unto the reſt. The Town moſt cruelly deſtroyed, and razed to the ground, with an incredible ſlaughter of the Inhabitants of all ſexes and ages, for the ſpace of four days together, by *John* the *Vaivod* of *Moldavia*, ſpoken of before, at his firſt revolting from the *Turks*: but the Caſtle, in regard of the great ſtrength of it, ſcarce attempted by him. 4 *Teina*, a Fortreſs of great ſtrength; but in the hands of the *Turks* alſo. 5 *Zorza*, corruptly for *San-Georgio*, ſeated on the *Danow*, with an arm whereof the Caſtle of it is encompaſſed; garriſoned by the *Turks*, and by them held to be ſo ſtrong, and ſo ſafe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigiſmund*, the Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *Anno* 1596. there were found in it 39 great peeces of Ordinance; with ſuch ſtore of *Arms* and *Ammunition* as might well have ſerved for a whole Kingdom. 6 *Tergoviſta*, ſometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Vaivod*, till the taking of it by the *Turks*: once beautified with a fair and famous Monaſtery, by the *Turks* converted into a Fortreſs, environed with deep trenches, ſtrong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great ſtore of Ordinance: but many times loſt and got again, according to the changes and chance of war. 7 *Bucareſta*, about a days journey from *Tergoviſta*, ſeated on the *Danow*, remarkable for two bridges built near unto it: the one of Boats (the laying whereof took up no leſs than an whole months time) for the tranſporting of the Army of *Sinan Baſſa*, againſt *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania* before mentioned; and broken down by the ſaid *Baſſa* in his flight, having been worſted in all places by the *Tranſylvanian*. The other was the work of the Emperour *Trajan*, in his war againſt *Decebalus*, King of *Dacia*, built all of ſtone, and laid on piles and Arches of a wonderful greatneſs; 24 piles or pillars whereof are yet remaining, to the great admiration of all beholders. 8 *Cebium*, of old called *Lycoſtomos*, in vain beſieged by the forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in perſon to ſubdue this petit Province. 9 *Zarmizegithuſa*, the ſeat Royal of *Decebalus* King of *Dacia*, taken and deſtroyed by *Trajan* in his war againſt him: who cauſing it to be repaired and more beautified then formerly, gave it the priviledges of *Rome*, and the name of *Ulpia Trajana*; which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Now a ſmall village called *Vetzel*. Some ſtones have been digged up hereabouts with this inſcription, *COLONIA ULPIA TRAJANA, AUG. DACIE. ZARMIS*: which clearly ſhew as well the dignity and eſteem, as the antiquity of the place, before *Trajans* time.

This Province, as the reſt of *Dacia*, on that ſide of the *Danow*, after the coming in of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, was under Princes of their own; whom they called (as thoſe of *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings they lived long in peace, till ſenſible of the approaching danger, which the conqueſt of moſt part of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*, by the *Turks*, was like to bring them; the *Vaivod* of it, in the time of *Bajazet* the firſt, paſſed over the *Danow* with his forces, and having done great ſpoil on the *Turkiſh* Territories, returned again into his Countrey. Rather provoked than weakened with which invaſion, *Bajazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the *Vaivod* in a pitched field, compelled him to ſue for peace, and to pay him tribute. But *Bajazet* being not long after taken Priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and the ſucceſſion controverted amongſt his ſons, the impoſed tribute was with-held, till *Mahomet* the fifth King of the *Turks*, having ſetled the affairs of that tottering State, *An.* 1417. enforced them to a new compoſition, and the payment of all former reckonings. The fortunate ſucceſſes of *Huniades* in ſeveral battels, induced them once more to change their *Maſters*, and to put themſelves under the protection of the *Hungarians*, as they had been formerly; but they paid dear for it: their Countrey being made the *Thorow-fare* of the *Turkiſh* forces, in their attempts upon that kingdom. But the *Hungarians* being vanquiſhed at the battel of *Coſſova*, by *Amurath* the ſecond; the accuſtomed *tribute* was brought in, and the *Turks* ſatisfied for the preſent, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderbeg*. Not long after, in the year

1642. *Mahomet* the Great undertook the conqueſt of this Countrey, upon advertiſement that *Wladus* the then Vaivod of it, intended to join with the ***Hungarians*** in ſome war againſt him: and finding how unprofitably he had ſpent his Forces, in fighting againſt the woods, mountains, and a waſted Countrey, he ſet up ***Dracala*** the younger brother of ***Wladus***, to claim the Government; who making a party amongſt the people, and having the *Turk* for his aſſiſtance and ſupport, poſſeſſed himſelf of the eſtate, to be holden of him as a Vaſſal to the *Turkiſh* Empire. And it continued in this ſtate, the *Vaivods* being after this at the *Turks* appointment, and paying all exactions impoſed upon them, till the revolt of ***Sigiſmund*** the Prince of ***Tranſylvania***, ***An.*** 1595. at what time ***Michael*** the then ***Vaivod*** hereof, taking that opportunity to ſhake off this yoak, confederated with him and the ***Moldavian*** for their common ſafety. And though he held out longer againſt ***Turk*** and ***German***, than either of the other did; diſcomfited the *Turks* by his own proper forces, at the battel of ***Nicopolis***; vanquiſhed the ***Tranſylvanians***, and added that Province for a while unto this Eſtate: yet being at laſt outed of his Countrey by the ***Polanders***, and another put into his place; he was ſhamefully ſlain in his own Tent by the privity and conſent of ***Baſta***, Lieutenant of ***Rodolphus***, Emperour and King of ***Hungary***. After whoſe death the Countrey miſerably diſtracted betwixt two ***Vaivods***, the one placed by the Emperour ***Rodolph***, and the other by ***Mahomet*** the ***Grand Signieur***; endured all the ſpoil and wrack which ſo calamitous a competition could bring upon it: till in the end the fortune of the ***Turks*** prevailing, the ***Valachians*** were conſtrained to ſubmit unto their diſpoſal, and receive their ***Vaivods*** from that Court, as they had done formerly; performing their accuſtoming duties, and paying ſuch yearly *tribute* as is laid upon them. Which notwithſtanding, partly by their own natural unquietneſs, and partly by the ambition of ſuch perſons as contend for that dignity, they have ſince been many times embroiled in wars; never ſo quietly compoſed, but that a new hope, or the artifices of the ***Turkiſh*** Miniſters, ſtarts them into action. By means whereof, when they have tired and ſpent themſelves in their own combuſtions, they may in fine be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the ***Turkiſh Monarchy***.

Of what revenue theſe Provinces ſeverally were to their natural Lords, and of what ſeverally to the Turk, I am not able to determine. But look upon them as conjunct, and as they ſtood at the time of the revolt ſo often mentioned; and they yielded one way with another into the Treaſury of the *Grand Signieur*, no leſs than a million of Ducats yearly. ***Knolles*** in his Turkiſh Hiſtory doth report it ſo. And his Continuator doth affirm that *Moldavia* onely, before the ſaid Revolt, did yearly yield unto the Turk a whole Tun of Gold, 2000 horſes for ſervice, 10000 great meaſures of wheat, with as much barley, and a wonderful proportion of butter, honey, and other victuals. Adding withall that the other two Provinces paid as much, or more, for their yearly tribute. After which rate, the Eſtimate made by ***Knolles*** may hold very good. But ſince the reduction of theſe Countries to their former obedience, the Turks have been more moderate in their exactions than they were before, for fear of ſtartling them to ſome new engagement: whom they have brought to this obedience and conformity with ſuch a vaſt expenſe both of blood and treaſure, as would have purchaſed the beſt Kingdom of Chriſtendom in the open market. Inſomuch that the ordinary tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 ***Chequins***, that of ***Valachia*** but 24000 of the ſame coin: Beſides a 1000 horſes yearly ſent from both. Such bribes and preſents as are given by the ***Vaivods*** hereof, either to get or hold their places, being merchantable ware, and wholly at the Turks diſpoſings, not being part of this accompt.

4. RASCIA.

RASCIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with ***Valachia***; on the Weſt, with ***Hungary***; on the North, with ***Tranſylvania***; and on the South, with the River ***Danow***; encompaſſed on three ſides with that River, and another now called ***Temes***, by the ***Latines***, ***Samus***; and on the Eaſt divided into ***Valachia*** by the River ***Alluta***. Called ***Raſcia*** from the ***Raſciani***, a ***Sclavonian*** people, whom ***Ortelius*** placeth in this tract, and from him ***Maginus***. But here it is to be obſerved, that, beſides this Countrey, the ***Raſcians*** held ſome Towns and Territories on the other ſide of the ***Danow***, and amongſt other the ſtrong Town of ***Chryſonicum***, whereof more anon.

The Countrey poor enough, but the people poorer, oppreſſed in former times by the ***Servians***, and of late by the ***Turks***, which makes them valiant and adventurous upon all occaſions, as commonly thoſe people are, who give themſelves the hope of bettering thoſe fortunes which they cannot make worſe. Places of moſt note here, 1 ***Bodon***, a town of trade, on the ***Danow***, memorable for the ***Marts*** or Fairs which are here held annually. 2 ***Zarnovia***, 3 ***Covin***, 4 ***Novebarde***, 5 ***Severin***, not far from which, betwixt it and ***Bucareſta*** a Town of ***Valachia***, are the remainders of ***Trajans*** bridge before mentioned. 6 ***Colambes***, and 7 ***Columbella***, of which little memorable.

Theſe ***Raſcians***, as before is ſaid, were a tribe of ***Sclaves***, ſetled in this Countrey at the time of their firſt ſpreading in the Eaſt, and here continuing ever ſince in poſſeſſion of it. Governed at firſt by their own Princes, whom by a name borrowed from the ***Grecians***, they called their ***Deſpots***: that being once the title of the heir apparent, or deſigned ſucceſſor of the ***Eaſtern Empire***; as ***Cæſar*** had been formerly in the Empire of ***Rome***, and ***Monſieur*** in the ſame ſenſe in the Realm of ***France***, to ſignifie the eldeſt Brother, (if Heir apparent to the Crown) of the King in being. But as the following Emperours did affect new titles, ſo that of ***Deſpot*** fell from one ſtep to another, till given at laſt unto the ***Governours*** of ***Provinces***; as the ***Deſpot*** of ***Epirus***, ***Peloponneſus***, &c. and in the end aſſumed by the ſeveral Provinces of ***Raſcia***, ***Servia***, and ***Bulgaria***. How this eſtate became united unto ***Servia***, I am yet

Servia. yet to ſeek : but ſure I am it was united in the perſon of *George*, *Deſpot* of *Servia*, and as a part of his eſtate ſurprized by *Amurath* the ſecond : who boaſted his ſucceſs therein (in a ſpeech made unto his ſouldiers at the ſiege of *Belgrade*) notwithſtanding that he had to ſtrive with *hunger, thirſt, labour*, and *deſperation*. Nor have I found at what time, or under whoſe conduct they paſſed over *Danubius*, and there poſſeſſed themſelves of *Chryſonicum*, and ſome other towns and territories on that ſide of the river, which they ſtill retain ; either ſurrounded by the *Servians*, or at leaſt intermingled with them ; which makes ſome writers of opinion that the *Raſcians* and the *Servians*, are but one and the ſame People under divers names ; to which conjecture they, being ſubject to the ſame Prince, gave ſome further ground. But whenſoever they paſſed over, moſt probable it is, that proving either troubleſom neighbours, or unwelcom Gueſts, they gave occaſion to the *Deſpots* of *Servia* to make war upon them ; and having vanquiſhed them on that ſide of the River, to carry the war over unto this, till in the end the whole Countrey was made ſubject to them. Added to *Servia*, they fell together with it into the power of the *Turks*, as was ſaid before. But being more impatient of the yoke than the *Servians* were, they did the Turks much miſchief many times, as they came in their way ; never ſo much nor ſo effectually, as when *Mahomet* the 3d. warred againſt the *Hungarians* ; at what time they frequently diſtreſſed his Armies, by cutting off his men, and intercepting the proviſions of arms and victuals intended for the great Army of *Sinan Baſſa*. After which, at the time when *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania* had won ſo many noble victories againſt the *Turks*, 10000 of theſe *Raſcians* caſting off that yoke offered themſelves unto his ſervice; the only memorable actions which are told us of them ; and though this laſt was only the attempt of ſome private Adventurers, the whole Nation ſtill continuing in obedience, as before they did. But following (as they did) the fortunes of *Servia*, and having a concernment on that ſide of the water, we ſhall ſay there ſomething further of them.

Thus have we ſeen when, and by what means the whole Province of *Old Dacia* became in part ſubject, and in part tributary to the *Turks*. It is now time to paſs over the *Danow*, and look upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia nova*, or *New Dacia* ; containing after our accompt four Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, that is to ſay, both *Myſias*, *Scythia*, and *Dardania*, beſides the two *Dacias*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripenſis*, interjected betwixt the two *Myſias*, as before is ſaid : all now reduced only unto two of the *Turkiſh* Provinces, namely the Countries of *Servia* and *Bulgaria*.

5. SERVIA.

SERVIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bulgaria* ; on the Weſt, with *Boſnia*, and ſome part of the *Lower Hungarie* ; on the North, with the *Danubius*, by which parted from *Raſcia*, and ſome part of *Valachia* ; on the South, with *Albania*, and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Myſia ſuperior*, and a great part of *Dardania* ; and took this new name from the *Servii*, or *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* people, of whom more hereafter.

This Countrey, with the neighbouring *Raſcia*, and the modern *Sclavonia*, was firſt conveted to the Faith by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, formerly remembred, between the year 860, and 890. of both which there is remembred ſome eſpecial Monuments. For *Methodius* having obtained both of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, and the Pope of *Rome*, that the Nations by them converted might celebrate all divine Offices in their natural Language, tranſlated the whole Bible into the *Sclavonian* tongue, which ſtill they have amongſt them in high eſteem. And *Cyril* is ſaid to have deviſed the *Servian* Character, not uſed in this Countrey only (though here originally) but alſo in *Raſcia*, *Bulgaria*, *Boſnia*, *Moldavia*, and moſt parts of *Ruſsia*: which Character from this *Cyril*) or *Chiuril*, as they pronounce it) is ſtill called *Chiurlizze*.

The Countrey very rich and fruitful, before the conqueſt of it by the *Turks*, well ſtored with *mines* of gold, and ſilver, eſpecially about *Zorbenic*, a ſtrong Town hereof. The people rude and groſs, and much given to wine ; falſe of their promiſes, and that upon ſlight occaſions ; ſo that there is but little truſt to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey are 1 *Colubra*, and 2 *Lim*, falling into the *Savus*. 3 *Ibar*, falling the 4 *Morava* ; as that into the *Danow* at *Chryſonicum*, or *Cruſoveccia*, a ſtrong town of the *Raſcians*. Principal towns hereof 1 *Niſſa*, the *Neſſum* as I take it of *Ptolemy* ; by whom ſaid to be a City of the *Dardanians* ; now the *Metropolis* of this Countrey, and the key thereof: beſieged and taken by *Amurath*, the third King of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1367. 2 *Vidina*, by the *Turks* called *Kiratow*, taken by *Feris Beg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the firſt, and ever ſince the ſeat of a Turkiſh *Sanziack* under the *Beglerbeg* or Baſſa of *Temeſwar*. 3 *Cratova*, and 4 *Zerbenic*, rich in ſilver mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Countrey. 5 *Simandria*, or *Senderovia*, by ſome called *Spendorbe*; by the *Hungarians*, *Zevedrem*; by the Turks, *Semunder* ; ſituate on the *Danow* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amurath* the ſecond. *An.* 1438. ſince governed by a Turkiſh *Sanziack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. 6 *Novegrad*, in the borders hereof, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle. 7 *Stonibourg* (in Latine, *Stonibrigadun*) the ordinary ſeat of the antient *Deſpots*. 8 *Priſden*, ſaid by *Mercator* to be the birth-place of the Emperour *Juſtinian* ; moſt like to be *Taureſium*, a City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the birth-place of that Emperour; by whom repaired and fortified with four great *Turrets*, thence called *Tetrapergon*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Lochrida*, a town of *Bulgaria* ; of which more hereafter. 9 *Scopi*, by *Ptolemy* called *Scupi*, and 10 *Ulpianum*, firſt built by *Trajan*, whoſe for-name was *Ulpius* ; afterwards re-edified by the ſaid *Juſtinian*, and called *Secunda Juſtiniana*, (*Juſtiniana Prima* being in *Bulgaria*:) now a poor Village called *Pirethy*, as *Lazius*; or *Czanadre*, as *Marius Niger* is of opinion. 11 *Rhatiaria*, by *Ptolemy* for diſtinction ſake, called *Rhatiaria Myſorum*, then the chief City of the *Mœſians*; of which now no ruines are remaining. 12 *Ravenizen*, the *Vendenis* of *Ptolemy*, but not elſe obſervable.

Beſides theſe Towns, and many other of leſs note which properly belong to this Province of *Servia*, the *Raſcians* alſo hold ſome Towns on this ſide of *Danubius*, the chief whereof is *Chryſonicum*, or *Cryſovectia*, an old Town, almoſt wholly ruinated, till repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, *An.* 1449. who marking the covenient ſituation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, near to the fall or influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiouſly it ſtood, both to command and to annoy the reſt of this Countrey, and for tranſporting of their forces to the other ſide of that great River, made it their firſt work to poſſeſs themſelves of it, and have held it ever ſince with a very ſtrong Garriſon: Such other Towns as the *Raſcians* have on this ſide of the River, or of leſſer note, are looked on by our Author but as Towns of *Servia*, (by the *Deſpots* whereof they were long ſince Conquered) where before we had them.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, ſuch as are moſt conſiderable in the ſtory of it, were the *Baſtarnæ*, the *Dardani*, and the *Mœſi*: the *Tricorneſii*, and *Picenſii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*, being either branches of the *Mœſi*, or elſe an obſcure people not worth the looking after. Of theſe the *Dardanians* were moſt antient, inhabiting near Mount *Hæmus*, on the borders of *Macedon*: a barbarous people, and perpetual Enemies of that Crown; moſt miſchievous in their attempts and deſigns againſt it, in the declining ſtate thereof; making great and frequent inroads into that wealthy Countrey, with the ſpoils whereof they inriched themſelves. Inſomuch that *Philip* the Father of *Perſeus* finding no other likely means to be rid of that trouble, negotiated with the *Baſtarnæ*, a ſtrong and hardy Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their own dwellings, and come to him with their wives and children; promiſing to aſſiſt them in rooting out the *Dardanians*, and give them poſſeſſion of their Countrey. But *Philip* dying as the *Baſtarnæ* were in their march through *Thrace*, and no care taken by his ſon to purſue the buſineſs, they returned all home again, except 30000 which pierced into *Dardania*, and made their own fortunes as they could. This practice, as it gave matter of quarrel to the *Romans*, againſt the *Macedonian*; ſo it occaſioned *Perſeus* the ſon of *Philip*, to make uſe of theſe *Baſtarnæ* againſt the *Romans*; at whoſe requeſt 10000 *horſe*, and as many foot paſſed over the *Danow*, under the conduct of *Claudicus*, a King amongſt them. But finding that *Perſeus* was too ſtrait-laced to part with money for their pay, they returned again; forraging the Countrey as they paſſed: but whether they paſſed over that River, or mingled themſelves with the reſt of their Nation, who upon *Philips* invitation had before come over, that I do not find. Howſoever, coming by this means acquainted with the ſweets of this Countrey, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardanians*, or bordering near them; inſomuch as *Tacitus* for the moſt part joins them both together, either as the ſame, or a neighbouring Nation; firſt vanquiſhed and added to the *Roman* Empire by *C. Curio Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the *civil* wars, raiſed by *Spartacus* and the *Fencers*, or *Gladiatores*: the *Myſians*, or the *Mœſi*, being broken at the ſame time alſo, *An. U.C.* 681. As for the *Mœſi*, being the laſt and greateſt of theſe Nations, they were moſt probably a Colony of the *Myſians* of the *leſſer Aſia*, antiently called *Myſi*, and the Countrey *Myſia*, as thoſe *Aſians* were; and as thoſe *Europæans* are by the *Greek* writers generally, and by *Florus* and ſome others amongſt the *Latines*: though after, for diſtinction ſake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally moſt *Latine* Authors give them the name of *Mœſi*. A fierce and ſavage people they were held to be *Barbari barbarorum*, as my Author calleth them; more *barbarous* than commonly the *Barbarians* were: but for all that, ſubdued by *M. Licinius Craſſus* in the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who overcame them in two battles, and after vanquiſhed the *Baſtarnæ*, and their King *Deldo*, whom he killed in fight; the Countrey reckoned after that as a *Roman* Province. Continuing in this eſtate, till the fall of the Eaſtern Empire, when it was ſubjected by the *Sclavi*, or *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; and in the diviſion of the ſpoil fell unto the *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* people; contractedly called *Sorbi*, and at laſt *Serbi*, *Servi*, and the Countrey *Servia*. Reduced again to the obedience of the Eaſtern Emperours by *Baſilius Porphyrogenitus*, *Anno Ch.* 1000. or thereabouts; more abſolutely conquered by *John* and *Manuel Comnenus*, two of his ſucceſſors: but ſo as they were ſuffered to live under their own *Princes*, whom they called *Deſpots*; Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. Inriched with the Conqueſt and addition of *Raſcia* (the certain time whereof I have no where found.) They were firſt ſet on by the *Turks* in the time of *Lazarus* the *Deſpot*, from whom *Amurath* the firſt took the Town of *Niſſa*, being the chief of all this Countrey: provoked thereto by the great forces which the *Servian* and *Bulgarian Deſpots* had raiſed againſt him, for the ſiege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus* terrified with this loſs, made his peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out again into open war, in which he was overcome and ſlain in the plains of *Caßova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* ſucceeded *Stephen*, who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turks* being in the mean time embroyled in war amongſt themſelves, by the ſons of *Bajazet*. But that difference being once compoſed, and *Mahomet* abſolutely ſetled in his Fathers throne; the *Turks* begun again to purſue this quarrel: which *George* the ſon of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the ſecond, ſon of *Mahomet*, paying the *Turk* an yearly *tribute*, and giving him his daughter *Mary* for a Wife or Concubine. But this alliance did not ſo well unite their affections, (though *George* did many ill offices in regard thereof to his *Chriſtian* neighbours) nor ſo well ſettle his eſtate: but that *Amurath* in fine diſpoſſeſſed him firſt of *Raſcia*, and afterwards of *Servia* alſo, for letting *Huniades* eſcape; whom he had in his power. And though *Amurath* was neceſſitated to reſtore *Servia* again, upon the peace made with *Uladiſlaus* the King of *Hungary*; yet *Mahomet the Great*, on the death of *George*, ſoon poſſeſſed himſelf of it. For *Lazarus* the youngeſt of *Georges* ſons, having deprived *Stephen* and *George* his elder Brethren (whoſe eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make them uncapable of the Government of the principality;) compelled them to ſeek to *Mahomet* for aid. But dying while theſe matters were in agitation, his widow put her ſelf and her three ſons *Peter*, *John*, and *Martin*, under the protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that means, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren ſtill ſolliciting the *Turks* againſt her) held the State a while: till the people finding no aſſurance in that kind of government, and weary of the daily harms they received from the *Turks*, yielded themſelves abſolutely to the power of *Mahomet*, about the year 1460. continuing ever ſince a Province of the *Turkiſh Empire*.

6. *BULGARIA.*

BULGARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Euxine* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Servia*; on the North, with the River *Danow*, which is here called *Iſter*; on the South, with *Thrace*. Called formerly by the name of *Myſia inferior*, as lying lower than the other in the courſe of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the water, was called *Myſia Superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Caſars* in the Empire of *Diocletian*; born in this Countrey near the borders of *Thrace*, not far from the City of *Sardica*: who therefore in the Martyrologies of the middle times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* people, who in the year 566. poſſeſſed themſelves of it.

The Countrey for the moſt part full of ſharp and rugged hills, branches of the great Mountain *Hæmus*, which divides it from *Thrace*, and ſpread themſelves over all this Province, inſomuch that even the mid-lands of it are rough and ſtony: and though the lower parts have ſome plains and vallies, yet are they generally full of Woods and Deſerts; the moſt unpleaſant, and leaſt peopled part of both the *Dacias*. The Inhabitants hereof in ſome conformity to the Countrey, are patient of all toil and labour, and not eaſily tired; but nothing is more troubleſom than their converſation, more full of courage, than of valour; their courage not proceeding by the rules of reaſon, but iſſuing only out of bruitiſhneſs, or a natural fierceneſs.

They firſt received the *Chriſtian* Faith towards the later end of *Juſtinian* the 2d. who died in the year 713. *Trebellius* being then their Prince; afterwards by the perſwaſion of *Leo* the 4th. ſurnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, about the year 789. But thoſe Converſions being but partial, and for private ends, they relapſed ſhortly after to their former *Gentiliſm*: not totally gained unto the Goſpel, till the Empire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace, 860. Subject ſince unto the juriſdiction of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: but not without great oppoſition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid claim unto them.

Places of moſt note in it, are 1 *Axium*, or *Axiopolis*, on the banks of *Danubius*, which from this Town begins to take the name of *Iſter*. It is now called *Colonamich*, of no great fame otherwiſe. 2 *Dinogetia*, by *Antonine* called *Dinugatia*, now *Drimago*, ſituate alſo on the *Iſter*, oppoſite to the influx of *Hieraſus*, and the Town of *Galatz*. 3 *Meſembria*, ſituate on the *Euxine*, and ſtill retaining the old name; in *Strabo*, by ſome errour of the *Tranſcribers*, called *Menebria*. 4 *Marcianopolis*, on the *Iſter*, or *Danubius* alſo, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his ſiſter, whence it had the name: in vain beſieged by the *Gothes*, at their firſt irruptions on this Countrey; and afterwards much mentioned in the ſtories of that warlike people, for many bickerings, and ſome great battels they had near it with the Emperour *Claudius*; in one of which overthrown by him with a mighty ſlaughter. 5 *Nicopolis*, (by the *Turks* called *Nigebol*) built by the ſame *Trajan* on the *Danow*, at the fall of the river *Jatre*, at his return from the conqueſt of *Dacia*, whence the occaſion of the name; the word *Nicopolis* ſignifying the *City* of *Victory*: ſufficiently memorable for the founder of it, more for the many great battels fought near unto it; whereof two the principal. The firſt, that of *Sigiſmund* the Emperour and King of *Hungary*, beſieging it with an Army of 130000 *Chriſtians*, in the time of *Bajazet* the firſt (whoſe father *Amurath* had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*) the iſſue of which ſiege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raiſe the ſiege, obtained the victory with the loſs of 60000 *Turks*: the Army of the *Chriſtians* being wholly routed, 20000 ſlain, all the reſt almoſt taken priſoners, and the young Emperour forced to flie by Sea to *Thrace*, thence to *Conſtantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*; and at laſt, after 18 months abſence, to his Realm of *Hungary*. The other (as it were in revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the *Vaivod* got a remarkable victory: and as the fruits thereof, ſacked the City it ſelf, carrying thence great ſpoil and booty, and infinite multitudes of people; with ſome whereof he made up his Army, ſending the reſt to inhabit and manure the void and deſert places of his own Dominions. 6 *Sophia*, called *Tibiſcum* in the time of *Ptolemy*, repaired by the Emperour *Juſtinian*, who gave it this name, from a famous and magnificent Temple, founded and dedicated by him unto S. *Sophia*. The ordinary *Reſidence* for theſe late times of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, who hath the chief command of *Europe* under the grand *Signieur*: once taken by *Huniades*, and by him at the command of *Uladiſlaus* King of *Hungary*, burnt unto the ground; but afterwards repaired, and more ſtrongly fortified, than it had been formerly. 7 *Varna*, antiently called *Dionyſiopolis*, ſituate on the *Euxine* Sea, near the borders of *Thrace*: remarkable for the great defeat there given the *Chriſtians*, the firſt flight of *Huniades* from the face of the *Turks*, and the death of *Uladiſlaus*

King

Bulgaria.

King of *Hungary*, ſpoken of before. 8. *Sumium*, 9. *Pezechim*, 10. *Ca[illegible]crium*, 11. *Galata*, and 12. *Macropolis*; all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Varna*, and loſt again upon the iſſue of that battel. 13. *Silliſtria*, at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary abode of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*: delivered to *Amurath* the firſt, by *Saſmenos*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to ſave thereby the reſt of his Country. 14. *Paraſtlaba*, or *Perſtlaba*, the antient ſeat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*; till the taking of it by *John Zimiſces* Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, by whom cauſed to be called *Johannopolis*: but it ſoon loſt that new name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peretalaw*. 15. *Ternova*, the uſual ſeat or *reſidence* of the later Princes of this Country, at the conqueſt of it by the *Turks*. 16. *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being taken by *Huniades*, in the courſe of his victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the cauſe of much war to the *Chriſtians* there: ſuppoſed to be built in or near the place, where once ſtood the old City of *Oeſcus*, the principal Town of the *Triballi*, called therefore *Oeſcus Triballorum*; though ſome will have that City to be now called *Blida*. 17. *Venuzina*, a Town of great ſtrength, and one of the firſt peeces taken by the *Turks*. 18. *Coſſova*, fatal to the *Chriſtians*, who in the plains hereof had two main defeats. The firſt by *Amurath* the firſt, who here diſcomfited *Lazarus* the *Deſpot* of *Servia*, and the greateſt Army that the *Chriſtians* ever raiſed againſt the *Turks*: *Lazarus* himſelf being ſlain in the fight, and *Amurath* himſelf ſhortly after the battel ſtabbed in the belly by one *Miles Cobelitz*, a wounded and half dead ſouldier, as he was taking a view of the dead bodies which lay there in heaps. The laſt by *Amurath* the ſecond to the famous *Huniades*, whom he here diſcomfited after a cruel fight continuing three dayes together: in which were ſlain 17000 *Chriſtians*, and amongſt them the greateſt part of the *Hungarian* Nobility; *Huniades* put again to flight, and forced to ſome extremities to preſerve his life: the *Turks* buying this great victory with the loſſe of 40000 men, as themſelves confeſſed. The place in which theſe fields were fought, called the *Plains* of *Coſſova*, extended 20 miles in length, and 5 miles in breadth, incompaſſed round with pleaſant Mountains, in the form of a *Theatre*; as if it were deſigned by Nature for a *ſtage* of action. 19. *Doroſtorum*, by ſome of the Antients called *Rhodoſtolon*, the ſeat in *Ptolomies* times of the firſt *Legion* called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Towns which the *Roſſes* and *Ruſſians* had in this country, from whom taken by *John Zimiſces* the *Eaſtern* Emperour, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinate. 20, *Achrida*, the birth-place of *Juſtinian*, by whom beautified and enlarged, and called *Juſtinian Prima*: who raiſing the *Dioceſſe* of *Dacia* into a *Præfecture*, placed here a *Primate* for the affairs of the Church, which honour it doth ſtill retain, the Biſhop hereof being the *Primate* of all *Dacia*) and a *Præfectus Pratorio*, for affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town returned to its old name, now called *L'Ochrida*, contracted by *William* of *Tyre* to *Acre*; by the *Turks* called *Giuſtandil*; a diſtinct Principate of it ſelf in the time of *Amurath* the firſt, and by him made *tributary* at his firſt war with this Country.

And here it is to be obſerved, that thoſe parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea, had antiently the name of *Pontus*, as had ſome parts of *Aſia Minor*, which bordered on the ſame Sea, alſo: and that the City of *Tome*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Tomos*, as *Pliny* calls it, to which *Ovid* was baniſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, was a City of this *European Pontus*, and not of the *Aſian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomy* is by *Ptolomy* placed amongſt the Cities of *Mœſia inferior*, and by *Ovid* on the Weſt or left ſide of the *Euxine*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by theſe lines of his.

Cum maris Euxini *poſitos ad læva* Tomitas
Quærere me læſi Principis *ira jubet.*

That is to ſay,

My wronged Princes wrath commands me bide
At Tomos *on the* Euxines *Weſtern ſide.*

The place at this day called *Tomiſwar*, according to *Cœlius Calcagnius*: but others would have it to be the ſame which is now named *Kiovia*, in the ſame tract alſo; not far from which is ſaid to be a Lake called to this day *Owidow Jexcocoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cauſe hither baniſhed is not yet agreed. Some ſay it was for the unlawfull pleaſures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperors daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorum* under the borrowed name of *Corinna*. Others imagine that he had ſeen *Auguſtus* himſelf unnatnrally uſing the company of the ſame *Julia*, his daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his book *de Triſtibus*, ſaying, *Cur aliquid vidi? cur noxia lumina feci, &c.* A Crime, of which I dare not think that noble Emperor to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatſoever was the true reaſon of it, that which was openly pretended was the writing of thoſe laſcivious and inflammatory Book *de Arte amandi*, tending to the debauchment of youth, and corruption of manners, which he in divers places of his works acknowledgeth for the cauſe thereof.

But to return unto the buſineſſe of this Country, the antient Inhabitants hereof were towards the Eaſt the *Troglodytæ* dwelling near the mouth or fall of the River *Peuce* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Peucini*, inhabiting on the very mouth of it, and in a little Iland oppoſite thereunto called alſo *Peuce*, now *Pizina*, the *Cribizi*, *Piarenſii*, and *Dimenſii*: the Weſtern parts being wholly taken up by the *Tri-*

Bulgaria.

balli, the moſt potent Nation of them all; who only had the happineſſe to vanquiſh *Philip*, King of the *Macedonians*. For *Philip* having, of pretending a quarrel againſt *Mataus* a King of the *Sarmatians*, entred his Country, overthrew him in a ſet fight, carried with him great booties, and among other things, 20000 *Mares* for breed, which he took in the battel: it being the cuſtom of the *Scythians* and *Sarmathians*, to uſe *Mares* only in their wars; becauſe their not ſtooping in the midſt of a race to piſſe, could be no impediment to them in their flight. In his return homeward, theſe *Triballi* deny him paſſage through their country, unleſſe they might partake of the ſpoils. This being denied, they fall from words to blowes, and next to a pitched field. In which fight *Philip* was wounded with an Arrow, which paſſing through his thigh nailed him to his ſaddle, his horſe being galled with the wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frighted *Macedonians* ſeeing, and ſuppoſing him dead, fled out of the field, leaving all their ſpoils to the *Triballi*, as if they had been ſent out only to be their Receivers. So true an obſervation is it, that the very *life-blood of an Army runs chiefly in the veins of the General*, or ſupreme Commander. Overtopped after this by the *Mœſi*, or mingled with them, they were firſt broken by the *Romans* under the conduct of *C. Curio Scribonius*, ſpoken of before, the abſolute conqueſt of them and the reſt of the *Mœſians* being reſerved for the times of *Auguſtus Caſar*. By him or his ſucceſſors, the whole Country of the *Mœſians* being caſt into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Mœſia Inferior*; that lying Weſtward upon the Water being called *Mœſia Superior*, for diſtinction ſake. By the Emperor *Aurelianus*, the *Dacians* being forced from the other ſide of the *Danow*, by the barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Myſias*, divided afterwards into two Provinces, taken out of the other, *Mediterranea*, and *Ripenſis*: which with the help of the higher *Myſia*, *Dardania*, *Prevalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Dioceſe of *Dacia*, as before was ſaid. The reſidue hereof now paſſing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces alſo: another Province being taken out of the Eaſt parts of the *Lower Mœſia*, lying betwixt the River *Phaniſſus*, and the moſt northern branch of the *Iſter*, which they called *Scythia*, becauſe the *Aroteres* a *Scythian* people did once poſſeſſe it; the *Romans* ambitiouſly affecting to be thought the Conquerors of that unconquerable Nation. Succeſſively by the *Goths* and *Huns* was this Country taken from the *Romans*: recovered again in or before the time of *Juſtinian*, who had here his Officers; ſubordinate to the *Vicar* or *Lieutenant* of *Thrace*, to which Dioceſe they properly belonged.

But long they held not in that State; the *Sclavonians* firſt, and after the *Bulgarians*, being maſters of them. Of the firſt of theſe enough hath been ſaid elſewhere. Theſe later being a *Scythian* people inhabiting on the banks of the River *Volga*, were at firſt called *Volgari*, afterwards *Bulgari*: though ſome conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation, but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperor *Anaſtaſius*, they made their firſt ſally into the Provinces of the Empire, forraging *Illyricum* and *Thrace*: afterwards in the reign of *Heraclius* hired by *Coſrhoes* the *Perſian* (with many other barbarous Nations) to beſige *Conſtantinople*. In the reign of *Conſtantine*, ſirnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or caſting out the *Sclaves*, they planted themſelves in theſe Countries; compelling the Emperor to compound with them for a ſum of money, from making any further inroad into his Dominions. From this time forwards, we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians*; the firſt of which after their ſetling in theſe parts, was *Thebellius*, or *Trebellis*, as ſome call him, the firſt *Chriſtian* Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Juſtinian* the ſecond was firſt reſtored unto the Empire, of which he had been outed by *Abſimarus*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to flie unto *Conſtantinople* on ſome breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eaſtern Emperors, they aided them againſt the *Saracens* then beſieging the *Imperial* City; of whom the ſlew 22000 as they were foraging the Country, and in the time of *Leo* the fourth, called *Porphyrogenitus*, they became *Homagers* to the Empire, by whoſe perſwaſion *Telericus* King of the *Bulgarians* received the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*; and thereupon was honoured by him with a wife of the *Imperial* Family, and the honourable title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many priviledges indulged them by the *Conſtantinopolitans*, not uſually communicated unto other Princes, *viz.* their *Crown* of Gold, their *tiar* or *cap* of ſilk, and their *red ſhoes* for their *Regal*; which were alſo the *Imperial* ornements. To theſe Kings alſo, and to theſe only, did the *Greek* Emperors allow the the title of Βασιλεὺς, as being meerly *Imperial*. Other Kings they called Ρῆγες, from the *Latine* word *Reges*, Inſomuch that when *Baſilius Macedo* had received letters from Pope *Adrian* the ſecond, wherein *Lewis* the ſecond the Weſtern Emperor was called *Baſileus*; he raſed out that *Imperial* attribute, and diſpatched an Embaſſie to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it as his own peculiar *Epithite*. Some quarrels after falling out, *Crumus* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus* ſucceſſor to the Empreſſe *Irene*, invaded *Thrace*, taketh the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperor in his tent, and worſteth *Michael* (who ſucceeded) in the open field; *Meſembria*, a principal City of this Country being taken and ranſacked by him. But *Bogor* of another temper, not only did receive the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*, which many of his Predeceſſors had intermitted; but brought his ſubjects (who rebelled on the change of Religon, and thereupon were fought with, and vanquiſhed by him) to the ſame *faith* alſo; gratified for that cauſe by *Theodora* the Empreſſe, with ſome large acceſſion unto his Eſtate. After long wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperors, the fortune of the *Conſtantinopolitans* did at laſt prevail: *Samuel* King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 15000 of his Souldiers taken and deprived of ſight, and the Country conquered by *Baſilius* the ſecond, ſirnamed *Porphyrogenitus*. *Anno* 1015. from that time *tributary* to the *Empire*: to which they did good ſervice in the time of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, uſing their help againſt the *Uzi*, a new ſtream of *Scy-*

thians,

Bulgaria.

thians, paſſing over the *Iſter* with an Army of 60000 fighting men, and waſting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *John* another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* againſt the *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a great ſlaughter, *Baldwin* the Emperor of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople* being taken priſoner, ſent in bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly murdered, *Anno* 1206. Nor were they wanting to aſſiſt them againſt the *Turks*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire, by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the recovery whereof, they raiſed a great and puiſſant Army, unfortunately diſcomfited by the Forces of *Amurath* the firſt, 1369. Provoked with which invaſion, *Amurath* having ſetled his affairs in *Aſia*, with an Army of 30000 falleth into *Bulgaria*; takes divers places of importance, and prevailed ſo far, that *Saſmenos* the laſt Prince hereof, wrapping his *winding ſheet* about him, to ſhew that he had deſerved death, proſtrates himſelf moſt abjectly at the Tyrants feet, offering to put *Silistria* (his ſtrongeſt City) into his poſſeſſion. For not performance of which offer, his Country is again invaded, moſt part of it taken from him; permitted to enjoy the reſt upon hard conditions, as *vaſſal* and *tributary* to the *Turk*. But *Bajazet*, *Amuraths* ſucceſſor, not content herewith picked a quarrel with him, and made an abſolute conqueſt of *Bulgaria*; converting it unto a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, *Anno* 1396. In which State it hath ever ſince continued, governed by three *Turkiſh Sanſiacks* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*: the *Sanſiacks* reſiding at *Nicopolis*, *Silliſtria*, and *Sophia*, in which laſt the *Beglerbeg* himſelf doth ſometimes reſide.

There are in *DACIA*

Arch-biſhops. Biſhops.

And ſo much for *DACIA*.

OF

MOUNT HÆMUS.

BEFORE we enter into *Greece*, we muſt croſſe *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a ridge of hills, extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatick*; and thereby ſeparating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*. So high and ſubject unto the weather, that *Stratonicus* an old *Grecian* did uſe to ſay, that *for eight months of the year it was alwayes cold; for the other four, winter.* It was affirmed by ſome of the Antient writers, that from one of the higheſt heads hereof, as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been diſcerned: the truth of which report, upon very good reaſon, hath been called in queſtion. But out of doubt, from ſome one top or *Summit* of it, there is ſo full a proſpect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perſeus* taking a ſurvey of the ſite of theſe Countries, *poſitis perabruptis Caſtris, &c.* as the ſtory hath it, was able to make choice of the fitteſt places for Forts and Caſtles, whereby to lock up all the paſſages againſt his Enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* ſo rough and craggy, that it is not to be paſſed but at two places only. Whereof one was made by the Emperour *Trajan*, where is yet to be ſeen a mighty ſtrong gate built of great ſquare ſtone: by which the paſſage that way was either opened or ſhut, at the pleaſure of them who had the keeping of the ſame: with a ſmall force exceeding eaſily defended againſt puiſſant Armies. The other being ſituate near a little River, by the *Bulgarians* called *Saltiza*, not altogether ſo ſtrait and narrow as the other; but riſing high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous precipices, is alike impaſſable; defenſible at eaſe, and without any great danger: as was experimentally found by the famous *Huniades*, when he attempted (but in vain) to lead his forces this way, for the ſiege of *Adrianople*. Thoſe parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though ſomewhat opener, are not much eaſier of *aſcent*; the paſſages through the broken rocks and precipices, being very difficult, and not eaſily maſtered: inſomuch, that when *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon* had fortified the ſtreights hereof againſt the *Romans*; *non reliquiſſe aditum niſi è* cœlo *venientibus videbatur*, it was conceived (ſaith *Florus*) that there paſſage was not left for any forces, unleſſe they fell immediately from the heavens themſelves.

This great and rocky chain of Hills, as they were vehemently expoſed to wind and weather, ſo were they deſtitute of thoſe commodities, which were either comfortable or indeed meerly neceſſary to the life of man: which made the paſſage over them in a manner impoſſible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of cold and hunger. Yet were they not left deſolate and void of people, eſpecially in thoſe ſides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but moſt eſpecially in thoſe parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the ſpurs and branches of the hills ſpreading farr and wide, and taking up a great part of the Country; occaſioned the *Romans* in the diviſion of the *Dioceſſe* of *Thrace* into ſeveral Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mœſia*, by the name of *Hæmimontum*, or *Hæmimontana*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Uſcudoma*, and *Anchiala*; the principal Governour hereof a *Roman Preſident*. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Errour in the common impreſſion of the *Code*, *Lib.* VII. *Tit.* 62. *Leg.* 23. where we find *Hæmimontem*, for *Hæmimontum*: the firſt being the name only of the mountain; the latter (which is there meant) of the *Roman* Province.

But to return unto the *Mountain*, there is another of this name in *Theſſalie*, mentioned (or miſtook for this) by *Servius* in his notes on the firſt book of the *Georgicks*; in the top whereof is ſaid to be the habitation of *Mars*; on the bottom, the moſt pleaſant valley of *Tempe*: ſo called from *Hæmus*, the ſon of *Boreas*, and *Orythia* amongſt the Poets. And poſſibly to diſtinguiſh this from that of *Theſſalie*, *Ptolomie*, and others call it *Æmus*, without the *Aſpirat*: though it may well be, that there are others of this name, as that this is called in divers places, or in divers Authors, by other names: one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Ariſtotle*, another *Scombrus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Laonicus* the whole called *[illegible]raſobus*. The like may be obſerved at the preſent alſo, *Pinetus* calling it by the name of *Catena Mundi*, a great part whereof it links together: *Cuſpinianus*, *Caſtegnazzo*, *Lazius*, *Krivicine*; the *Italians*, *Mont Argentorato*; the *French*, *Monte de Caſtegnao*; the *Sclavonian*, *Cumaniza*; and the *Turks*, *Balkan*. Which I have therefore here obſerved for the Readers ſake, that meeting any of theſe names in the ſtories either of the antient or modern times, he may know what hills or mountains are intended by them. Which ſaid, I now paſs on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

OF
GREECE.

GREECE, in the preſent latitude and extent thereof, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Propontick*, *Helleſpont*, and *Ægean* Seas; on the Weſt, with the *Adriatick*; on the North, with *Mount Hæmus*, which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, and ſome part of *Illyricum*; and on the South, with the Sea *Ionian*. So that it is in a manner a *Peninſula*, or *Demy-Iland*, environed on three ſides by the Sea; on the fourth only united to the reſt of *Europe*.

But this is only in relation to the preſent extent hereof, the name being antiently reſtrained, within narrower bounds. Confined at firſt to *Attica* and the parts adjoyning; *ab Iſthmi anguſtiis Hellas incipit*, as it is in *Plinie*: and took the name of *Hellas*, from *Hellen*, the ſon of *Deucalion*; as that of *Grecce* or *Gracia*, from *Grecus* the ſon of *Cecrops*, the firſt King of *Athens*. Communicated afterwards to *Peleponneſus*, then to *Theſſalie* alſo: and finally when the *Macedonian* Empire had enlarged it ſelf over the petit Common-wealths, and Eſtates hereof, it came to be communicated to that Country alſo. The people for this cauſe known by divers names, by ſome *Achivi*, by others *Myrmidones*; ſometimes *Pelaſgi*, *Danai*, *Argivi*, *&c.* But the name whereby they are beſt known in *ſacred Writers*, is that of Ἕλληνες, ſo called from *Hellas*, the more proper and genuine name of *Greece*, in the ſtricteſt notion and acception. A name uſed frequently and familiarly in the book of God, both *abſolutely* to denote this Nation, as where it is ſaid, σοφίαν Ἕλληνες ζητȣ͂σι, that the *Grecks* ſeek wiſdom, 1 *Cor.* 1. 22. and *relatively* as in oppoſition to the *Jews*, the *Barbarians*, and the *Helleniſts*, or *Gracizing Jews*. Firſt with *relation* to the *Jews*, and then it ſignifieth the whole body of the *Gentiles* generally, of which the *Grecians* were the moſt eminent and famous people; as Ἰȣδαίῳ τε πρῶτον καὶ Ἕλληνι to the *Jew firſt, and alſo the Gentile*, Rom 11.9,10. *Give none offence* καὶ Ἰȣδαίοις καὶ Ἕλλησι, *neither to the Jews nor to the Gentiles*, 1 Cor. 10.32. and elſewhere frequently. In which and all other places of that kind, where the *Antitheſis* lieth between the *Jews* and other Nations, we are to underſtand the *Gentiles*, the whole body of them; though many times our *Tranſlators*, I know not why, render it *literally* the *Greeks*; as *Rom.* 1. 16. 10. 12, &c. Secondly with reference to all other Nations, not ſo well verſed in the learning and *civilities* of that Age, as the *Gracians* were, whom by a common name of ſcorn they called *Barbarians*, according unto that of *Strabo*, Barbaræ *ſunt omnes Nationes præter* Græcos; the *Romans* themſelves, though then the great Lords of the world, being included in the reckoning. And ſo the word is taken, *Rom.* 1. 14. *I am a Debtor*, ſaith S. *Paul* Ἕλλησι καὶ Βαρβάροις, *both to the Greeks and the Barbarians, to the wiſe and unwiſe*, in which as well the *Romans* as thoſe of other Nations, have the name of *Barbarians*. Laſt of all, for the *Gracizing Jews*, whom the *Vulgar Latine* calleth *Gracos*, and our *Engliſh*, *Grecians*; they were ſuch of the *Jews*, who living diſperſed among the *Gentiles*, uſed the tranſlation of the *Septuagint*, making that the *Cannon* both for life and doctrine. Which difference betwixt them and the *Jews* inhabiting in *Judæa*, who kept themſelves unto the Scriptures in their *mother-tongue*, and uſed the *Hebrew* only in all ſacred actions, occaſioned many jars amongſt them; which ſometimes brake out into to open violence; inſomuch as *R. Eliezer* brake into the Synagogue of the *Alexandrians* at *Hieruſalem*, and therein committed many outrages. Of this unfriendlineſs between them, mention is made, *Acts* 6. 1. where it is ſaid, that there *aroſe a murmuring of the* Græcians *againſt the* Hebrews, *&c.* In which place, though the ***Engliſh*** and ***Vulgar Latine*** uſe the name of *Grecians*, yet ought they more properly to be rendred ***Helleniſts***, or *Græcizing Jews*, as in all other places, *viz. Acts* 9.29. 11.20, *&c.* where they are called Ἑλληνισταὶ, and not Ἕλληνες, in the *Greek* Originals.

But to proceed to our deſcription of the Countrey, we find it ſituate in the Northern temperate *Zone*, under the fift and ſixt *Climats*; the longeſt day being 15 hours: inhabited by a people which were once brave men of war, ſound ſcholars, and addicted to the love of virtue and civil behaviour. A Nation once ſo *excellent*, that their precepts and *examples* do ſtill remain, as approved rules, and *Tutors* to inſtruct and direct the man that endeavoureth to be virtuous; famous for government, affectors of freedom, every way noble. For which virtues in themſelves, and want of them in other, all their neighbours and remote Nations were by them ſcornfully called *Barbarians*; a name now moſt fit for the *Grecians* themſelves, being an unconſtant people, deſtitute of all learning, and the means to obtain it, *Univerſities*; uncivil, riotous, and ſo lazie, that for the moſt part, they endeavour their profit no further than their belly compels them; and ſo perfidious withall in all their dealings, eſpecially towards the Weſtern Chriſtians, that it is grown into a Proverb amongſt the *Italians*, *Chi fida in Grego, ſara in trigo*, *i.e.* He that truſts to a *Greek* is ſure to be couſened. When they meet at feaſts or banquets, they drink ſmall draughts at the beginning; which by degrees they increaſe, till they come to the height of intemperancy: at which point when they are arrived, they keep no rule or order; whereas before to drink out of ones turn is accounted a point of incivility. Hence, as I believe, ſprung our by-word, *as merry as a Greek*; and the *Latine* word *Græcari*.

The women for the moſt part are brown-complexioned, exceedingly well-favoured, and exceſſively amorous. Painting they uſe very much, to keep themſelves in grace with their husbands; for when they once grow wrinkled, they are put to all the drudgeries of the houſe. Both ſexes generally in their habit and outward garb, apply themſelves to the State under which they live: ſuch as are ſubject to the *Turk*, conforming unto the dreſs and faſhions of the *Turks*; as thoſe who live under the *Venetians*, do to that of *Venice*.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt here planted by S. *Paul*, invited by the Spirit to come over into *Macedonia*, *Acts* 16. 12. paſſing from thence to *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Mygdonia*, ch. 17. 1. from thence to *Athens* in *Achaia*, *v.* 16. then unto *Corinth*, the *Metropolis* of *Peloponneſus*, *ch.* 18. 1. watering the greateſt part of *Greece* with the dew of heaven, and planting Biſhops in moſt Churches where he preached the Goſpel, as *Dionyſius* (the Areopagite) at *Athens*, *Ariſtarchus* at *Theſſalonica*, *Epaphroditus* at ***Philippi***, *Silas* at *Corinth*, and *Titus* in the Iſle of *Creete*. The like he did in many other Countreys alſo, accounted members of the *Greek* Church, though not of *Greece*: the name of the *Greek* Church extending over all the Provinces of the Eaſtern Empire. Governed by the 4 Patriarchs, 1. Of *Alexandria*, who preſided over *Egypt* and *Arabia*; 2ly. Of *Hieruſalem*, whoſe Patriarchate (erected only in regard of our Saviours paſſion in that City, and the great opinion which by that means accrewed unto it) confined within the bounds of *Paleſtine*; 3ly. Of *Antioch*, whoſe juriſdiction contained all *Syria*, *Armenia*, *Cilicia*, and the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and whatſoever elſe was within the dioceſe of the *Orient*; And 4ly, of *Conſtantinople*, to whoſe charge were committed all the other Provinces of the *Greek* Church, as *Greece*, *Ruſſia*, *Dacia*, *Sclavonia*, part of *Poland* and all the Ilands in the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Ægean* Seas, together with all *Aſia-minor*, and the Iſles thereof, (except only the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*) and the Countreys lying on both ſides of *Pontus Euxinus*, and *Palus Mæotis*. The reaſons of the large increaſe of whoſe *Juriſdiction*, confined at firſt within the Dioceſe of *Thrace*, were 1. The reputation of being ſeated in the Imperial City, which drew after it (by a Decree of the Councel of *Chalcedon*) all the Provinces of *Aſia-minor* (*Cilicia* and *Iſauria* excepted only.) 2ly. The voluntary ſubmiſſion of the *Grecians* upon their ſeparation from the Church of *Rome*; by which all *Greece*, *Macedon*, *Epirus*, the Iſle of *Crete*, and all the Ilands in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, which formerly had no ſuperior but their own *Primate*, the Archbiſhop of *Theſſalonica*, became ſubject unto them. 3ly. The diligence of the Patriarchs hereof, in converting by his *Suffragan* Biſhops and other Miniſters, the *Ruſſians*, *Bulgarians*, and *Sclavonians*, to the faith of Chriſt; which made thoſe people to look upon *Conſtantinople* as their Mother-Church. And 4ly. The piety and care of the later Patriarchs, in ſupplying with new *Paſtors* and *Miniſters* thoſe parts and Provinces of the Weſt, which being conquered by the *Turk*, had been forſaken by their old *Clergy*, and left like ſheep without a ſhepherd.

And yet this Church, though thus extended and enlarged in the outward Members, is very much ſtraitned and impaired at home: the Countrey being thinly peopled, and many of thoſe people trained up from their Infancy, in the *Mahometan* Law; So that it is a greater wonder, that there ſhould be any remainders of Chriſtianity left amongſt them, than that the open Profeſſors of it ſhould be ſo few: the Tyranny of the *Turks* on the one ſide, and the *temptations* of *preferment* upon the other, being rightly pondered. For who could look to find 20 Churches of Chriſtians in *Conſtantinople*, the ſeat and ordinary reſidence of the *Turkiſh* Emperors; or that in *Salonichi*, or *Theſſalonica*, there ſhould be 30 Chriſtian Churches, and but three *Turkiſh Moſquits*; that the Primate of this *Salonichi* ſhould have under him 10 Suffragan Biſhops, whereof he of *Philippi* hath no fewer than 150 Churches under his *Juriſdiction*: or finally, that under the *Metropolitans* of *Athens* or *Corinth*, there ſhould be as many? So mercifully hath God dealt with this luxurious and perfidious people, as not to take away their Candleſtick, though he hath darkened and obſcured the light hereof.

As for the Fathers of this Church, antiently and at this preſent held in moſt eſteem, there were no other than ſuch as had been *Biſhops* of the greater Sees; that is to ſay, 1. *Chryſoſtome*, firſt a Reader of *Antioch*, afterwards Patriarck of *Conſtantinople*: 2. *Baſil*, and the two *Gregories*; 3. *Nyſſen*, and 4. *Nazianzen*, all in *Aſia Minor*; this laſt of *Conſtantinople* alſo: 5, 6. The two *Cyrils*, the one Patriarch of *Alexandria*; the other, of *Hieruſalem*: 7. *Epiphanius*, Biſhop of *Salamis* in the Iſle of *Cyprus*; 8. *Theodoret* Biſhop of *Cyprus*, &c. men of renown and precious memory amongſt them, to this very day. From whoſe writings, if they deviate in any material point of doctrine, it is in that of the *Proceſſion* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, which they grant to be *per Filium*, but not *à Filio*. And though *Clichthoveus*, *Lombard*, and other moderate men of the Church of *Rome*, do grant the difference to be rather, *in modo explicandi, quam in ipſa re*; and that the Clauſe *à Filioque*, was added by the *Romaniſts* to the antient Creeds, the *Grecians* not being privie nor conſenting to it: yet ſo uncharitable is that Church towards theſe poor men, languiſhing under the tyranny of *Turkiſh* thraldom, as to perſecute them with reproach and ſcorn, brand them for *Schiſmaticks* and *Apoſtates*; and ſolemnly to *anathematize* them, in *Bulla Cœna* every *Maundie Thurſday*. And it is a very hard meaſure *to adde and anathematize too*, as is right well obſerved by the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, in his notable Diſcourſe againſt the *Jeſuite*. Other particular Tenets in which the *Greek* Church differeth from the *Romiſh* and *Reformed* (as in ſome points it doth from both) have been already ſpecified in our deſcription of *Ruſſia*: the Churches of the *Greeks*, and *Muſcovites*, differing in no material points, but 1. The manner of diſtributing the Sacrament; 2ly. The exacting of marriage by the *Muſcovite*, in the party admitted unto Orders; 3ly. The frequent admitting of divorces upon light occaſions; and 4ly. Finally in being leſs ſtrict in obſerving the *Lent* before Eaſter, than in any of the other three. For whereas the *Grecians* account it a damnable ſin to eat fleſh or fiſh which hath blood in it, in any of their other *Lents* or times of abſtinence, (they have in both Churches four in all:) in that before *Eaſter*, which of all reaſon ought to be kept moſt punctually, the *Laity* eats all ſorts of fiſh without any exception; the blood of ſome of which, as the *Cuttle* by name, is held to be a delicate food, and in great requeſt.

The Language they ſpake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects, *viz.* 1. the *Attick*, 2. the *Dorick*, 3. the *Æolick*, 4. the *Ionick*: beſides the common phraſe of ſpeech moſt in uſe among them. A language of great fame for the liberal Arts, but more for ſo great a part of the holy Scripture, firſt delivered in it: and for the lofty ſound, ſignificant expreſſions, genuine ſuavitie, and happy compoſition of words, ſo excelling all others, that even in the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Empire, it ſo much overtopped the *Latine*, that the Hiſtories of *Rome* it ſelf (as of *Polybius*, *Appian*, *Dion*, *Caſſius*,) were written in it. It was once alſo the general language of *Anatolia*, ſome parts of *Italy*, *Province* in *France*, and almoſt all the Ilands of the *Mediterranean*. But now partly by the mutilation of ſome words, and contraction of others; partly by confuſion of the true ſound of Vowels, Diphthongs, and Conſonants, and the tranſlating of the Accents; and finally by the admixture of forein Nations; it is not only fallen from its natural elegancy, but from its largeneſs of extent. For it is now ſhut up within the limits of *Greece*, and the Sea-coaſt of the leſſer *Aſia*, op oſite unto it; and there not only much corrupted, but almoſt quite devoured by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* tongues: but ſpecially by that which they call *Franco*, a *Mungrel* language, compoſed of *Italian*, *French*, and ſome *Spaniſh* words; uſed as the ordinary ſpeech for commerce and intercourſe betwixt *Chiſtians*, *Jews*, *Turks*, and the *Greeks* themſelves, who do not underſtand, and much leſs ſpeak the true genuine *Greek*. So that although they ſtill retain for ordinary dayes, S. *Chryſoſtoms* Liturgie; and that of S. *Baſil* for the *Feſtivals*: yet being both written in the antient and learned *Greek*, they are no more underſtood by the Vulgar *Grecian*, than the *Latine* Service by the common and illiterate *Papiſt*.

The ſoil queſtionleſs is very fruitfull, and would yield great profit to the *husbandmen*, if they would take pains in the tilling: but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things ſubject to the *Grand Signieure* and his ſouldiers; neglect the tillage of their lands, on the ſame grounds with thoſe who ſaid in the Poets *Eclogues*;

> *Impius hac tam culta novalia miles habebit?*
> Barbarus *has ſegetes? en queis conſevimus arva!*
>
> Shall misbelieving *Turks* theſe acres ſpoil,
> Which I manur'd with ſo much coſt and toil?
> Shall they enjoy my care? See neighbours ſee,
> For whom theſe goodly corn-fields tilled be!

The more natural and certain commodities which they tranſport into other parts, are Wines, which in memory of the water which our Saviour turned into wine, and on the ſixth day of *January* being that day whereon this miracle was wrought, they uſe to baptize: for which cauſe the *Jews* will drink none of them: they ſend alſo into other parts of the world, Oil, Copper, Vitriol, ſome Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turkie-Grograms, &c.

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, *Miltiades*, *Ariſtides*, and *Themiſtocles* of Athens; *Liſander*, and *Ageſilaus* of *Sparta*; *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas* of *Thebes*; *Aratus*, and *Philopœmen* of *Achaia*; *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*; *Philip* of *Macedon*, the ſubverter of the *Grecian* liberty, and *Alexander* his ſon (to omit infinite others) the ſubverter of the *Perſian* Monarchy. For the divine Philoſophers, *Plato*, *Socrates*, *Ariſtotle*, and *Theophraſtus*: for the moſt eminent Lawgivers,

givers, *Solon* and *Lycurgus*; for the moſt exquiſite Poets, *Heſiodus*, *Homer*, *Sophocles*, and *Ariſtophanes*: for the famous Hiſtoriographers, *Xenophon* the condiſciple of *Plato*, *Thucydides*, *Plutarch*, and *Herodotus*; the eloquent Orators, *Æſchines*, *Demoſthenes*, and *Iſocrates*; and laſtly, for the authors and eſtabliſhers of all humane learning whatſoever, only the *Mathematiques* excepted.

The chief Rivers, are 1 *Cephiſus*, which ariſing in the Frontiers of *Epirus*, disburtheneth it ſelf into the *Ægean* Sea. 2. *Erigon*, and *Alaicmon*, which beginning their courſe in the more Northern parts of *Macedon*, end it in *Thirmiacus Sinus*. 4 *Strymon* in *Mygdonia*. 5 *Athicus* and *Niſus* in *Thrace*. 6 *Stymphalus*, where *Hercules* killed the *Stymphalian* birds; And 7 *Ladon*, in *Arcadia*. 8 *Inachus*, whoſe daughter *Jo* turned into a Heifer was worſhiped by the *Egyptians* under the name of *Iſis*. 9 *Achelous* in *Epirus*, much celebrated by the antient Poets, eſpecially by *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*. As is alſo 10 *Peneus*, the chief River of *Theſſalie*, and there ariſing from Mount *Pindus*, and increaſed with the waters of many Rivers. *Daphne* the Nymph, whom *Apollo* is fabled to have loved, and turned into a Bay tree, lived near or on the banks of this River *Peneus*; and is therefore ſaid to be his daughter: as *Jo* above-mentioned was the daughter of *Inachus*. Of leſſe note,

Populifer 11 *Sperchius*, *& irrequietus* 12 *Enipeus*,
13 *Apidanuſq́*, *ſenex*, *leviſq́* 14 *Amphryſus*, *&* 15 *Æas*.

That is to ſay,

Cool *Sperchie*, *Enipeus* that troubled ran,
Smooth *Amphryſe*, *Æas*, an old *Apidan*.

The reſt of leſſe note, and the moſt eminent Mountains in each part hereof, ſhall be remembred in their places, as we ſee occaſion.

Thus much of the whole Country in groſſe And as for the diviſion of it with reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Dioceſes, *viz.* *Thrace* and *Macedon*, the firſt under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, the latter (together with that of *Dacia*) under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*. Of theſe the Dioceſe of *Macedon* lying wholly within the bounds of the modern *Greece*, containing the Provinces of *Macedonia Prima*. 2 *Macedonia Secunda* or *Salutaris* (now as in former times, called *Albania*.) 3 *Epirus Nova*, taking up the Countries of *Phocis*, *Locris* and ſo much of the *Old Epirus* as was on that ſide of the River *Achelous*. 4 *Old Epirus*, comprehending all the reſt of that Country, 5 *Theſſalie*. 6 *Achaia*, containing all *Achaia*, and *Peloponneſus*; the Countries of *Locris* and *Phocis* excepted only. And 7 *Crete* or *Candie*, with the Iſle adjoyning. And for the Dioceſe of *Thrace*, it was divided into the Provinces of 1 *Thrace*, ſpecially ſo called. 2 *Europa*, 3 *Rhodope*, 4 *Hæmi-montum*, 5 *Mœſia Inferior*, and 6 *Scythia*: of which the four firſt make up the body of *Thrace*, and ſhall there be ſpoken of; the two laſt being comprehended in the modern *Dacia*, have been deſcribed already in their proper places. But not to bind my ſelf preciſely unto this diviſion (though I ſhall look on this as occaſion ſerveth) I ſhall conſider *Greece* in the ſeveral Provinces of 1 *Peloponneſus*, 2 *Achaia*, 3 *Epirus*, 4 *Albania*, 5. *Macedon*, 6 *Thrace*, 7 The Ilands of the *Propontick*, 8 *Ægean*, and 9 the *Jonian* Seas, and 10 finally the Iſle of *Crete*.

2 PELOPONNESUS.

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Cretan*; on the Weſt, with the *Adriatick* or *Jonian* Seas; on the North-eaſt, with *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*; on the North-weſt with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now *Golfo di Patras*, or *Lepanto*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean*. So that it is almoſt an Iſland, properly called a *Peninſula*, rounded with the Sea, except where it is tyed to the main land of *Greece*, by an *Iſthmus* ſix miles in breadth: which the *Grecians*, and *Venetians*, fortified with a great wall and five Caſtels. This was called antiently *Hexamilium*, and was overthrown by *Amurath* the 2d. who haraſſed and ſpoiled all the Country. It was afterwards in the year 1453. upon the rumor of a war built up again by the *Venetians* (who then had the greateſt part of this Country) in 15 dayes; there being for that time 30000 men imployed in the work. This wall extended from one Sea unto the other, which had it been as gallantly guarded as it was haſtily made up; or as it was well fortified, had it been as well manned; might eaſily have reſiſted the *Turks*, untill more means had been thought on to defend it. Not leſſe obſervable, but more fruitleſſe was the deſign of ſome in the elder times, to cut throw this *Iſthmus*, and make a perfect Iland of it. Attempted by *Demetrius* King of *Macedon*, *Julius Cæſar*, and *Cajus Caligula*; by none more eagerly purſued, than by the Emperor *Nero*: who to hearten on his ſouldiers, loth to attempt ſo fruitleſſe an enterpriſe, took a ſpade in hand, and buſily began the work. Yet at laſt the ſouldiers, being frighted with the blood which abundantly broke forth, with the *groans*, and *roarings*, which they continually heard; and with the *Hobgoblins* and *Furies*, which were alway in their ſight; perſwaded the Emperor, now half out of the humour, to leave this, and enjoyn them ſome more profitable ſervice: given over by the former Princes on the like diſcouragements. But of this *Iſthmus* we ſhall adde no more, than theſe words of *Ovid*, and ſo paſſe forward; to the diſcription of the Country: That is to ſay,

Achaia.
Propria.

Æquora bina ſuis oppugnant fluctibu Iſthmon,
Et tenuis tellus audet utrumque mare.

Which may thus be Engliſhed,

Two Seas aſſault the *Iſthmus* with their waves,
And that thin neck of Land both Seas outbraves,

As for this Country of *Peloponneſus*, it is in compaſſe 600 miles, and was called at firſt *Ægialis*, from *Ægialus* the firſt King of *Sicyon*; next *Apia*, from *Apis* the 4th; after that *Sicyonia*, from *Sicyon* the 19th King thereof; and finally *Peloponneſus*, from *Pelops*, the ſon of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and Νῆσος, *Inſula*; the word ſignifying as much as the Iſle of *Pelops*. But it is now of late called *Morea*; and that, *à Maurorum incurſionibus*, from the incurſions of the *Mores*, as *Mercator* thinketh: but by the *Mores* he means the *Saracens*, as ſome others do.

It is conceived to be the moſt pleaſant Country of all *Greece*, abounding in all things neceſſary for the life of man; and in ſuch alſo as do ſerve for delicacy and contentment only: adorned with many goodly Plains, ſwelled with fruitfull Hills, well ſtored with Ports and Havens on all ſides thereof. And though no Country in the world, for the bigneſſe of it, hath ſuffered in the ruine of ſo many brave and ſtately Cities, yet is it ſtill the moſt populous, and beſt inhabited of all the Continent of *Greece*. Near the middle of it, in *Laconia*, is the Mount *Taygetus*, from the top whereof there was no City of note in all this *Peninſula*, but what might eaſily be ſeen. A moſt gallant proſpect. The whole divided commonly into theſe 7 Provinces, 1 *Achaia propria*, 2 *Elis*, 3 *Meſſene*, 4 *Arcadia*, 5 *Laconia*, 6 *Argolis*, and 7. *Corinthia*.

1 *ACHAIA PROPRIA* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Argolis*, and *Corinthia*; on the Weſt, with the *Jonian* Sea; on the North with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, or the *Golf* of *Lepanto*; on the South, with *Elis*. So called from the *Achai*, the Inhabitants of it; the adjunct *propria*, being added to difference it from *Achaia* in the Continent or main land of *Greece*.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, are 1 *Dyme*, ſituate in the moſt Weſtern point of it, on or near the *Promontory* called *Araxium*, the town now called *Chiarenza*, and the *Promontory Cabo di Chiarenza*. Not far from which is another *Promontory* or head-land, of old called *Rrhium*, oppoſite to another in *Ætolia*, that was called *Antirrhium*: divided by a very narrow ſtreight or *fretum*, which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; fortified on each ſide with a Caſtle for defence thereof, commonly called *Caſtelli di Lepanto*: both built and fortified by *Bajazet* the ſecond when he had finiſhed the Conqueſt of *Peloponneſus*; to ſecure the entrance of this Bay; both taken and demoliſhed by *Andrew Doria*, Lord Admiral to *Charles* the 5th, to lay the Bay open to the Chriſtians; and finally both within few years recovered and repaired by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, as they ſtill continue. 2 *Ægium*, where *Jupiter* is ſaid to have been nurſed by a *Goat*, whence it had the name; Αἶγα, in *Greek* ſignifying a ſhe *Goat*: once a ſtrong town, now ruined and deſtroyed by the *Turks*; called at this day *Voſtiza*, or *Caſtizan*. 3 *Ægira*, once the chief City of all this tract, ſituate on a ſteep and inacceſſible hill; now a ſmall Village, called *Xilocaſtro*. 4 *Olenus*, ſo named from *Olenus* the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Anaxithea*; now called *Chaminiſa*. 5 *Patræ*, ſituate at the very mouth of the *Golf*, oppoſite to *Lepanto*, Firſt called *Aroe*, but being by one *Patreus* enlarged and walled, took the name of *Patra*, which name it holdeth to this day, being ſtill called *Patras*: the town of moſt note on the Bay of *Corinth*, called from hence *Golfo di Patras*. A town of good trade, and much frequented not long ſince by the *Engliſh* Merchants, who had here their *Conſul*, called the Conſul of *Morea*: but formerly more memorable for the death of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, who here ſuffered Martyrdome. 6 *Pellene*, diſtant from the Sea about 60 furlongs: the people whereof being conſtant to their old faſhions of apparel, occaſioned the Proverb of *Pellenæa veſtis*, applyed to old cloaths out of faſhion. Here were once alſo the two Cities of 7 *Hellice*, and 8 *Buris*, ſunk by the violence of a tempeſt into the bottom of the Sea, about the time of the battel of *Leuctres*. Not to ſay any thing of 9 *Tritæa*, and 10 *Phera*, two other towns hereof, of note in the former times; ſo little now remaining of them, as if they had been ſunk at the ſame time alſo.

But the chief town of all this Province, (if not a Province of it ſelf) is that of *Sicyon*, ſituate not far from the *Iſthmus*, in the moſt Eaſtern parts hereof, and giving to the territory or adjoyning Country (as once unto the whole *Peninſula*) the name of *Sicyonia*. The territory rich, eſpecially in Olives, and works of *Iron*; the City the moſt antient of all *Greece*, built within little time of the general flood, and reſtauration of mankind. Firſt called *Ægialia*, after *Scyonia*, by the names of the firſt and nineteenth Kings hereof: by whom and their ſucceſſors much adorned and beautified with Temples, Altars, Statues, and Images of there ſeveral Gods: the antienteſt Kingdom in the world, the *Aſſyrian*, and *Ægyptian* excepted only, and perhaps not thoſe. It took beginning in the perſon of *Ægialeus*, within 150 years after the deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Noah*; continuing in a race of Princes who ſwayed the affairs of *Peloponneſus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reaſon of the undoubted antiquity of this Kingdom, I ſhall here ſubjoyn, in the enſuing Catalogue of

The

The Kings of *SICYON*.

A.M.			A.M.			A.M.		
1860	1	*Egialeus.*	2234	10	*Peratus.*	2601	19	*Sicyon.*
1910	2	*Europs.*	2280	11	*Plemnæus.*	2646	20	*Polybus.*
1950	3	*Telchin.*	2328	12	*Orthoulis.*	2686	21	*Javiſchus.*
1980	4	*Apis.*	2391	13	*Marathon.*	2728	22	*Pheſtus.*
2004	5	*Telxion.*	2421	14	*Marathus.*	2736	23	*Adraſtus.*
2055	6	*Ægyrus.*	2441	15	*Echyreus.*	2740	24	*Polyphides.*
2089	7	*Eurymacus.*	2496	16	*Corax.*	2771	25	*Pelaſgus.*
2134	8	*Leucidpus.*	2526	17	*Epopeus.*	2791	26	*Xeuxippus*, the laſt King of *Sicyon*;
2187	9	*Meſapus.*	2561	18	*Lamedon.*			

After whoſe death, *A.M.* 2812. the eſtate hereof was governed by the Prieſts of *Apollo*, ſeven of them ſucceſſively one after another: the firſt five, only years a peece; *Amphictyon*, who was the ſixt, continuing 9 years in the *Regency*; and *Charidemus* the laſt of them ruling 18 years. After whoſe death, or departure, I know not which, *A. M* 2844. the *Heraclida*, who about that time returned into *Peloponneſus*, made themſelves Maſters of this Country; there being no Kings of *Sicyonia* from this time forwards.

Of theſe Kings the moſt memorable were *Ægialeus* and *Apis*, the firſt and fourth, from whom this *Peninſula* had the names of *Apia* and *Ægialia*; *Ægirus* the 6. giving name and being to the City, *Ægira* ſpoken of before, *Marathon* the 13th. of whom perhaps the famous fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination; *Epopeu* the 17th. who founded a Temple to *Minerva*, and therein placed his own Monument or Tropheys; *Sicyon* the 19th. the Founder of the City of *Sicyon*, or at leaſt the repairer and enlarger of it; *Pelaſgeus* the 25. from whom perhaps the *Grecians* might be called *Pelaſgi*, if not known formerly by that name. After this time I find no man of note who bare ſway in *Sicyon*, till the time of *Aratus*, the ſpecial ornament of this Town, (of which a Native) and one of the principal eſtabliſhers of the *Achæan* Common-wealth againſt the *Spartans*, and *Macedonians*; of which more hereafter in the general Hiſtory of *Peloponneſus*.

2. The Country of **ELIS** hath on the Eaſt, *Arcadia*; on the Weſt, the *Jonian* Sea; on the North, *Achaia propria*; on the South, *Meſſenia*. The chief Cities are 1. *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Eliſha* the ſon of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who fixt himſelf in theſe parts of this Country, where he built this City, calling it by his own name, as his poſterity in honour of him did the Iſles adjoyning, mentioned in the Prophet *Ezekiel*, by the name of the Iſles of *Eliſha*, *Ch.* 27. *v.* 7. Nigh to this City runneth the River *Alpheus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Sicilia*: and in this City reigned the King *Augeas*, the cleanſing of whoſe Stable is accompted one of the wonders or twelve labours performed by *Hercules*. 2. *Olympia*, famous for the Statue of *Jubiter Olympicus*, one of the 7 wonders, being in height 60 cubits; compoſed by that excellent workman *Phidias*, of gold and Ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick* games inſtituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this City, *A.M.* 2757. The exerciſes in them were for the moſt part bodily, as running in Chariots, running on foot, wraſtling, fighting with the Whorlbats, and the like. But ſo that there repaired thither alſo *Orators*, *Poets* and *Muſicians*, and all that thought themſelves *excellent* in any laudable quality, to make trial of their ſeveral abilities: the very *Cryers* who proclaimed the *Victories*, contending which ſhould cry loudeſt, and beſt play his part. The rewards given to the *Victor*, were only *Garlands* of *Palm*, or ſuch ſlight remembrances; and yet the *Greeks* no leſſe eſteemed that ſmall ſign of conqueſt and honour, than the *Romans* did their moſt magnificent triumphs: thoſe which were *Conquerors* herein being met by the principal men of the City, in which, or under which they lived, and a paſſage broken in the main walls thereof for their reception; as if the ordinary *Gates* were not capable of ſo high an honour, or able to afford them entrance. Inſomuch that when *Diagoras* had ſeen his three ſons crowned for their ſeveral victories, a friend of his came to him with this gratulation, *Morere* Diagoras, *nunquam enim in Cœlum aſcenſurus es*, that is to ſay, Die now *Diagoras*, for thou ſhalt never go to heaven: as if no greater happineſſe could befall the man either in this life, or that to come, than that which he enjoyed already. The *Judges* and *Preſidents* of theſe Games, were ſome of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputed to it; highly commended for their juſtice and integrity in pronouncing who beſt deſerved, without partiality. Of theſe thus *Horace* in his *Odes*,

> *Sunt quos* Curriculo *pulverem* Olympicum
> *Collegiſſe juvat*; metaque *fervidis*
> *Evitata rotis*, Palmaque *nobilis*
> *Terrarum Daminos evehit ad Deos*,
> *Quos* Elea *domum reducit*
> Palma *cœleſtes*.

Meſſenia.

That is to ſay:

Some in *Olympick* duſt take pride
Their *Chariots* and themſelves to hide;
Whom the ſhun'd mark and *Palm* ſo priz'd.
Like to the *Gods* hath eterniz'd.
Such as like heavenly wights do come
With an *Elean Garland* home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules*, theſe games were diſcontinued for 430 years; at which time one *Iphitus*, warned ſo to do by the *Oracle of Apollo*, renewed them; cauſing them to be ſolemnly exerciſed every fourth year: from which cuſtom *Olympias* is ſometimes taken for the ſpace of 4 years, as *quinque annorum Olympiades*, for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the flood to be *obſcure*; thoſe before the *Olympiads*, and after the flood, to be *fabulous*; but thoſe that followed theſe *Olympiads*, to be *Hiſtorical*. Theſe *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the reſtauration of them by *Iphitus*, until the reign of the Emperor *Theodoſius*; the *Grecian Epoche*, by which they reckoned their *accompt*: the firſt of them being placed in the year of the world, 3174. before the building of *Rome* 24 years; the laſt in the 440 year after Chriſts nativity. According to which reckoning this accompt continued for the ſpace of 1214 years; the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympia* be not found in *Peloponneſus*: the Town at this day called by the name of *Sconri*. 3. *Piſas* whoſe people followed *Neſtor* to the wars of *Troy*; and in their return were by tempeſt driven to the coaſts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Piſa* in *Tuſcanie*. 4. *Torneſe*, a new Town, or the new name of ſome antient City; from whence the adjoyning *Promontorie*, of old called *Chilonites*, is now called *Cabo di Torneſe*.

3. *MESSENIA* hath on the Eaſt, *Arcadia*; on the North, *Elis*; on the South, and Weſt, the Sea. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Meſſene*, ſituate on *Sinus Meſſenaicus*, now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2. *Pylos*, where *Neſtor* was King, now called *Novarino*; a deſolate and poor village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* ſpeaking in the name of *Penelope*,

Nos Pylon, *antiqui* Neleia Neſtoris *arva*,
Miſimus, *incerta eſt reddita fama* Pylo.

To *Pylon*, aged *Neſtros* ſeat we ſent;
But could not hear from thence how mattters went.

3. *Metlon*, or *Methone*, ſeated in the moſt ſouthern parts of this *Peninſula*, from whence unto the *Iſthmus*, which joineth unto the reſt of *Greece*, are reckoned 175 *Italian* miles; the Town commodiouſly ſeated in a Demie Iſland, waſhed on the one ſide with the Sea, and ſo well fortified toward the land, that in the opinion of moſt men it is thought impregnable, adorned on the South ſide with a large and capacious Bay, about 3 miles wide, ſecure from all winds except the North, and ſhut up with a little Iland called antiently *Odnuſe*, but now *Sapientia*, which makes it one of the ſafeſt harbours in all theſe Seas: poſſeſſed once by the *State of Venice*, but conquered by the *Turk*, after many ſharp and fierce aſſaults, *Anno* 1500. both *Pylus* and *Corone* yeelding on the noiſe thereof; The beſt retreat ſince that time of the *Turkiſh* Navies, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Turkiſh Zanziack*, who hath the government of this whole Province of *Morea*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*. 4. *Corone*, or *Corn*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Meſſene*, called from hence *Golfo di Coron*, and the laſt which beld out againſt the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea-coaſts of *Peloponneſus*, 5. *Cypariſſi* now called *Arcudia*, from whence the Bay adjoyning hath the name ot *Golfo di Arcudia*. Here is alſo the Promontory called of old *Coryphuſium*, now *Cabo Zanchio*.

The people of this ſmall Province had once a great ſway in the whole *Peninſula*. At firſt confederate with the *Spartans* in ſo ſtrict a league, that they mutually ſent young Virgins to one another, for their publike ſacrifices: but afterwards *Corrivals* with them for the Supreme power. The *Spartans* at the laſt getting the upper hand of them, oppreſſed them with a miſerable ſervitude. The occaſion this. In the confines of this Country ſtood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Meſſenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that ſome *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Meſſenians* here raviſhed: which abuſe the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their war; the true reaſon indeed being their covetouſneſſe of the ſole Empire. This war broke out three ſeveral times. The firſt continued 20 years in which ſpace, the *Lacedamonians* fearing their abſence would hinder the ſupply of children in the City; ſent a company of their ableſt young men home to accompany their wives. Their *off-ſpring* were called *Parthenii*, who comming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, ſailed into *Italy*, and there built *Tarentum*. The ſecond being of 23 years continuance, was raiſed and maintained by *Ariſtomenes*, one of the chief men of the *Meſſenians*; in which they proſpered till *Ariſtocrates*, King of *Arcudia*, one of their confederates, revolted to ſide wirh *Lacedamon*. Then began they to decline, and *Ariſtomenes* was thrice

Arcadia and *Laconia.*

thrice taken priſoner, ſtill miraculouſly eſcaping. His laſt impriſonment was in an Dungeon, where by chance eſpying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her tail, the Fox running away, guided *Ariſtomenes* after ; till the ſtraightneſs of the hole by which he went out, made him leave his hold, and fall to ſcraping with his nails : which exerciſe he never left, till he had made the hole paſſable, and ſo eſcaped ; and having a while upheld his falling Country, dyed in *Rhodes*. The third War was like drops after a tempeſt. In which the *Meſſenians* being finally ſubdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become ſlaves unto the *Spartans* ; who put them to all drugeries and ſervile works, as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their ***bondmen*** : and to this life ſome of them did apply themſelves with ſo much obſequiouſneſs, that at laſt it grew into a Proverb, *Meſſena ſervilior*, that ſuch a one was more ſervile, or more ſlaviſhly uſed, than theſe poor *Meſſenians*. But the greateſt part of them not brooking that heavy yoake, paſſed into *Sicil*, and there built the City *Meſſana*. Others were planted in *Naupactum*, by the State of *Athens* : the reſt diſperſed up and down in all parts of *Greece* : few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas* having vanquiſhed the *Lacedamonians* at the battel of *Leuctres*, reſtored them to their antient poſſeſſions.

4. *Arcadia*, hath on the Eaſt, *Laconia*, on the Weſt, *Elis* and *Meſſene* ; on the North ; *Achaia propria* ; and on the South, the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcas*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Caliſto* ; but was formerly called *Pelaſgia* : the people whereof thought themſelves more antient than the Moon.

Orta prius Luna, *de ſe ſi creditur ipſi,*
A magno tellus Arcade *nomen habet.*

The land which of great *Arcas* took its name,
Was, ere the *Moon*, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are 1. *Mantinea*, nigh unto which the ***Theban*** Army, conſiſting of 30000 foot, and 3000 horſe, routed the Army of the *Spartans* and *Athenians*, conſiſting of 25000 foot, and 2000 horſe. In this battel ***Epaminondas*** that famous Leader, received his deaths wounds, and not long after dyed. At his laſt gaſp one of his friends bemoaning his untimely death : *Alaſs*, ſaid he, ***thou dieſt*** Epaminondas, ***and leaveſt behind thee no Children*** ; Nay, replyed he, two Daughters will I leave behind me ; the victory of ***Leuctra***, and this other at *Mantinea* It was afterwards called ***Antigonia***, in honour of *Antigonus*, Tutor or Protector of ***Philip*** the Father of ***Perſeus***, King of *Macedon* ; but by command of the Emperour *Adrian*, reſtore to its old name again ; and is now called *Mantagna*. 2. ***Megalopolis***, the birth-place of ***Polybius*** that excellent Hiſtorian. The one half of it had ſometimes the name of *Oreſtia*, from the lodging of *Oreſtes* in it ; the whole now called ***Leontara***, on what cauſe I know not. 3. *Phialia*, towards the Sea. 4. *Pſophis*, ſo called from *Pſophis*, one of the Sons of ***Lycaon***, once King of this Country, ſlain by *Jupiter*. 5. *Stymphalus*, ſituate near a Lake and River of the ſame name, where *Hercules* ſlew the ***Stymphalian*** birds ; ſo great in number and in body, that they darkened the Sun-beams, and terribly infeſted this little Province ; till driven thence by ***Hercules***. Here was alſo in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Stymphalida*. 6. *Tegea*, famous for the Temple of *Pan* here worſhipped ; and from hence called *Tegæus* ; more for the War made upon the ***Tegeates***, or people hereof, by the ***Lacedæmonians*** : who thinking themſelves aſſured of victory, brought with them ſtore of chains and fetters, wherewith to lead captive their conquered Enemies ; but being overcome in battel, were themſelves bound with them, and forced as ſlaves, to till the grounds of theſe ***Tegeates***. Here is alſo in this Country the River *Styx*, whoſe water for the poiſonous taſte was called the water of Hell : by which Poets feign, that the Gods uſed to ſwear, as may be everywhere obſerved ; and that what God ſoever ſwore by *Styx* falſely, he was baniſhed from Heaven ; and prohibited *Nectar* for 1000 years.

This Country for the fitneſs of it for paſtorage and grazing, hath made it the ſubject of many worthy and witty diſcourſes, eſpecially that of Sir ***Philip Sidney***, of whom I cannot but make honourable mention : a Book, which beſides its excellent language, rare contrivances, and delectable ſtories, hath in it all the ſtrains of Poeſie, comprehendeth the univerſal art of ſpeaking ; and to them which can diſcern and well obſerve, affordeth notable rules for demeanour, both private and publick. Which noble Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the ***Engliſh Heliodore***, ſo the ingenious Author of the Hiſtory of ***Melintus*** and ***Ariana***, may deſervedly be called the ***French Sidney***.

5. ***Laconia*** is bounded on the Weſt, with ***Arcadia*** ; on the Eaſt, and South, with the Sea ; on the North with ***Argolis***. Called ***Lelegia***, from the ***Leleges***, by ***Strabo*** ſaid to be the firſt Inhabitants of it, afterwards ***Oebalia*** from ***Oebalus***, King of ***Lacedæmon*** ; and finally ***Laconia***, of the ***Locones***, who ſucceeded the ***Leleges*** in the poſſeſſion hereof, on their removal, into the Iſlands of the leſſer *Aſia*. It is by ſome Writers alſo called ***Hecatompolis***, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The ſoil hereof exceeding rich, and the fields very ſpacious ; yet for the moſt part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hills and Mountains which overthwart it. Well-watered with the River ***Eurotas***, and memorable for many fair Bayes and Promontories ; of which the principal are the Promontories of ***Malea*** and *Tænria*, now called *Cabo Malio*, and ***Cabo Matapan*** : and of the Bayes, that called ***Golpho di Colochina***, the *Sinus* ***Laconicus*** of the antients, into which the River ***Eurotas***, (now better known

Laconia. by the name of *Vaſilo Potamo*, or the Kingly River) pours his gentle ſtreams. The nature of the people we ſhall find in *Sparta*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Louctres*, ſituate on the Sea-ſide, near the Bay of *Meſſeni*; of which name were two others in *Greece*, the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*, but this laſt moſt memorable. 2. *Amycla*, ſo called from *Amyclas* the third King of *Sparta*, by whom firſt founded: renowned afterwards for the birth of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, the ſons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the foundreſs of the City of *Amycla* in *Calabria Superior*, at firſt a Colony of this, diſtant from *Lacedamon* about 20 furlongs. 3. *Thulana*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* ſlew the Monſter *Hydra*: and not far off Mount *Tanarus* near the Promontory *Tanaria*, in which the Natives ſhew a Cave, (believed in former times to be the deſcent into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4. *Salaſſia*, where *Antigonus* vanquiſhed *Cleomenes*, the laſt king of *Sparta*. 5. *Epidaurus* (ſeated on the *Bay*, named *Golpho di Napoli*) now called *Malvaſia*; a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the ſweet Wines called *Malveſey*, or *Malmaſey*, ſent from hence into all other parts in great abundance. 6. *Sparta*, ſo called from *Sparta* the Son or Brother of *Phoroneus*, the ſecond King of *Argos*, the founder of it: but afterwards beautified and inlarged by *Lacedamon*, the ſecond King of this Country, it took that name alſo; promiſcuouſly known by both in the beſt Authors. One of the Eyes of *Greece*, and a moſt famous Commonwealth; but at firſt governed by Kings, as moſt of the *Greek* Cities in antient time. *Tyndarus* the Father of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof; After whoſe death, and the death of the ſaid famous brethren; *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta* or *Lacedamon*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, their Siſter; and though *Nicoſtratus* and *Magapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by another *venter*, ſucceeded after his deceaſe; yet the *Spartans* ſoon rejected them, and received *Oreſtes* the Son of *Agamemnon* to be their King; marrying him to *Hermione* the Daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and conſequently the Neece of *Tyndarus*. *Tiſamenes*, the Son of *Oreſtes* and *Hermione*, ſucceeded next; in whoſe time the *Heraclida* or poſterity of *Hercules* returned into *Greece*, under the conduct of *Timenes*, *Cteſiphon*, and *Ariſtodemus*, Sons of *Ariſtomachus*: whereof the firſt poſſeſſed himſelf by force of *Arms*, of the City of *Argos*; the ſecond, of *Meſſene*; and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*: which dying very ſhortly after, he left unto his two Sons *Euryſthenes* and *Procles*, the roots of the two Royal Families, which joyntly and in common governed the affairs of *Sparta*: firſt abſolutely as *Soveraign Princes*, without any controul; afterwards at the direction of the *Senate*, and finally under the command and check of thoſe popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But becauſe theſe *Spartan* Kings in each ſeveral period, were for the moſt part men of action, and often mentioned in the Hiſtories of the elder time: I will firſt make a Catalogue of them, and then ſubjoyn ſuch obſervations and remembrances, as I think moſt pertinent.

The KINGS of *SPARTA*,

Of the firſt Family.

A. M.

1. *Eurotas*, the firſt King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
2. *Lacedamon*, Brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacdamon*.
3. *Amyclas*, Son of *Lacedamon*, the founder of *Amicla*, a *Laconian* City.
4. *Argalus*, Son of *Amyolas*.
5. *Cynorta*, Son of *Argalus*.
6. *Oebalus*, Son of *Cynorta*, from a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
7. *Hippocoon*, Son of *Oebaldus*.

2700 8. *Tyndarus*, Brother of *Hippocoon*, in whoſe life he was King of *Oebalia* only.
9. *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, Sons of *Ayndarus*, famous among the *Argonautes*.
2740 10. *Menelaus*, Son of *Atreus*, and Brother of *Agamemnon*, Kings of *Mycene*, together with *Helena* his Wife, the Daughter of *Tyndarus*, whoſe Rape occaſioned the deſtruction of *Troy*.
2770 11. *Nicoſtratus*, and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menalaus* by a former Wife.
12. *Oreſtes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his Wife, Daughter to *Helena*, and *Menelaus*.
13. *Tiſamenes*, Son of *Oreſtes* and *Hermione*, who being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heraclida*, reigned in *Achaia*; and left his Kingdom there, unto poſterity.

The KINGS of *SPARTA*.

Of the Race of the HERACLIDÆ.

1. *Ariſtodemus*, the firſt King of the race of *Hercules*, left the Kingdom joyntly to his two Sons.

A. M.

2848 1 *Eriſthenes*
2890 2 *Agis*, from whom this line were called *Agida.*
2891 3 *Echeſtratus.*
2926 4 *Labetas.*
2963 5 *Dryſſus.*
2992 6 *Ageſilaus.*
3046 7 *Archelaus.*
3096 8 *Teleclus.*
3136 9 *Alcumenes.*
3173 10 *Polydorus.*
11 *Eurycrates.*
12 *Anaxandrus.*
13 *Eurycrates* II.
14 *Leonidas.*
15 *Anaxandrides.*
16 *Cleomenes.*
17 *Leonidas* II.
3470 18 *Pliſtarchus.*
3471 19 *Pliſtonax.*
3539 20 *Pauſanias.*
3553 21 *Ageſipolis.*
3567 22 *Cleombrotus.*
3576 23 *Ageſipolis* II.
3577 24 *Cleomenes* II.
3611 25 *Arius.*
3655 26 *Acrotatus.*
27 *Arius* II
28 *Leonidas* III.
29 *Cleombrotus* II.

2848 1 *Procles.*
2 *Euripon*, from whom this line were called *Euripontida.*
3 *Prytanis.*
4 *Eunomus.*
5 *Polydectes.*
3076 6 *Charilaus.*
3140 7 *Nicandrus.*
3176 8 *Theopompus.*
9 *Archidamus.*
10 *Zeuxidamus.*
11 *Anaxidamus.*
12 *Archidamus* II.
13 *Agaſicles.*
14 *Ariſton.*
15 *Demaratus.*
3447 16 *Leotychides.*
3478 17 *Archidamus* III.
3520 18 *Agis*
3547 19 *Ageſilaus.*
3588 20 *Archidamus* IV.
3611 21 *Agis* II.
22 *Eudamidas.*
23 *Archidamus* V.
24 *Eudamidas* II.
3700 25 *Agis* III.
26 *Euridamidas*, the laſt King of the line of the *Euripontida*, ſlain by *Cleomenes*, the laſt of the other line alſo.

3714 30 *Cleomenes* III the laſt of the line of the *Agida*; who having ſlain *Euridamidas* the ſon of *Agis* the 3. ſubſtituted his brother *Epiclides* in his place. But being himſelf ſhortly after vanquiſhed by *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and forced to fly his Country with his Wife and Children, the Government of the *Heraclida* ended, after it had continued here for the ſpace of 900 years; or thereabouts.

Under theſe Kings the Government at firſt was ἄγαν Μοναρχικὸν, as *Plutarch* termeth it, ſufficiently *Monarchial*, if it were not more. Under *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the ſecond houſe, the people finding the reins of Government let looſe, began to mutiny and grow too head-ſtrong. To bridle whom, and to reſtrain the Kings withall, (ſhould they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus* the Protector of *Charilaus*, the ſixth King of that houſe, did ordain the *Senate*: committing to them the *ſupreme power* in matters civil, and leaving to the Kings the ordering all *military* and *ſacred* buſineſſe. To curb the inſolencies of this *Senate*, who quickly found their own ſtrength, *Theopompus* the eighth King of that houſe with the conſent of *Polydorus* the tenth King of the other, inſtituted a new *Magiſtracy* choſen out of the *Common people*, whom they called the *Ephori*, which grew in fine to ſuch an height of pride and Tyranny, as not only to controll the *Senators*, but to cenſure, fine, impriſon, depoſe, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the ſpirit of ſedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedæmon*, was at firſt a *Monarchy* under Kings; then an *Ariſtocraty*, under the command of the Senate, next a *Democraty* under the *Ephori*; and finally by thoſe *popular Officers* made ſo plain a Tyranny, that *Ariſtotle* and *Plato*, two great Common-wealths men, who died before they had imbrued their hands in the blood of their Kings, call it in plain terms τυραννίδα & τὸ τυραννικὸν, a moſt abſolute tyranny. What think you would theſe men have called it, had they lived to ſee *Leonidas* the 3d. depoſed; and *Agis* the third of that name alſo, moſt barbarouſly murdered by theſe *popular Villains*!

But being the foundation of this Common-wealth was firſt laid, and the good Laws and *Politique* Conſtitutions by which it did ſo long ſubſiſt in great power and ſplendour, eſtabliſhed by the wit and power of *Lycurgus*, as before was ſaid: we are to know concerning him, that he was the ſon of *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the ſecond houſe, ſlain in a popular tumult by the common people. Who finding by this Eſſay, that the people were become too head-ſtrong, for the Kings to govern, unleſſe reduced to extreme bondage by their Kings, which he wiſhed not neither; took the advantage of the minority of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government: and what he could not do by fair means, to effect by Arms; forcing this *Charilaus* though his Nephew, when he came to age, to flie for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleaſed, and ſetled ſuch a form of government as himſelf beſt fancied, the better to decline the envy of ſo great a change, he got leave

Argolis.

to travel, binding the people by an oath to obſerve all his laws untill his return: and being gone, commanded at his death, that his aſhes ſhould be caſt into the Sea, leaſt being carryed back to *Sparta* the people might conceive themſelves releaſed from their oath. By means whereof his laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Common-wealth did flouriſh in all proſperity: the particulars of which inſtitutions he that liſts to ſee, may find them ſpecified at large by *Plutarch* in the life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Diſcipline was ſo ſharp and ſtrict, that many went into the wars for no other reaſon, than on an hope to rid themſelves from ſo hard a life: and that *Diogenes* returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from *men to women*, ἐκ τῆς ἀνδρωνίτιδος εἰς τὴν γυναικωνῖτιν. And being asked in what part of *Greece* he had met with the compleateſt men; made anſwer, that he could nowhere meet with men, but that he had found ſome boyes amongſt the *Spartans*. A *Cynical* and rugged anſwer, but ſuch as carryed a great deal of judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more ſtout and reſolute in all their actions, and leſſe effeminate in their lives, than the reſt of the *Grecians*. But beſides the ſtrictneſſe of the diſcipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them wiſh for wars abroad: namely the little or no power which either the Kings, or People, had in civil matters, or affairs of State; entirely left to the diſpoſing of the *Senate*, and the power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings having by the Laws the command of their armies, were willing to engage in war upon all occaſions; and the common people as deſirous to attend them in ſuch imployments, as the King could wiſh. Upon theſe grounds the *war* is made a *trade* amongſt them; beginning with the *Helots* a neighbouring people; then with the reſt of the *Laconians*; afterwards quarrelling the *Meſſenians*, their old confederates; all which they ſeverally ſubdued and made ſubject to them. In the war which *Xerxes* made againſt the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the firſt of the elder houſe, went forth to aid them; ſlain at the ſtraights of *Thermopylæ*, couragiouſly fighting for the liberty of *Greece*; and when it was thought fit to ſet upon the *Perſian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In purſuit of this war againſt the *Perſians* *Pauſanias* and *Ageſilaus* were of moſt renown: the firſt in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*, the other in making war upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Perſians*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their *Rivals* in point of *Soveraignty* and glory. Hence the long war betwixt theſe Cities, called *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, managed for the moſt part in *Peloponneſus*, from thence transferred into *Sicil*, and at laſt ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an *Ariſtocratie* under 30 *Magiſtrates* of their own appointment, commonly called the *thirty tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate ſucceſſe, their next quarrel was with the *Bœotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and *Perſians* openly aſſiſting the enemy. Here their proſperity began to leave them. For beſides many ſmall defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* ſo diſcomfited them, at the overthrowes of *Leuctres* and *Mantinea*, that *Sparta* it ſelf was in danger of utter ruine. Not long after hapned the *Holy war*, chiefly undertook againſt the *Phocians*, wherein alſo they made a party: but this war being ended by King *Philip*, they ſcarce breathed more freedom than he gave air to. But when *Alexanders* Captains fought for the Empire of their Maſter, all theſe flouriſhing Republiques were either totally ſwallowed into, or much defaced by the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedæmonians* held the chief ſtrength of a Town to conſiſt in the valour of the people; and therefore would never ſuffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediately following the death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not thoſe fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Doſon*, King of *Macedon*, who having vanquiſhed *Cleomenes* King of *Sparta*, entered the Town, and was the firſt man that ever was received into it as Conquerour: So much different were the preſent *Spartans* from the valour and courage of their Anceſtors. *Cleomenes* being forced to forſake his Country, and the race of the *Heraclida* failing in him, they became a prey to *Machanidus* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants; from whom they were no ſooner freed, but they were made ſubject (in a manner) to the power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town ſo weak and inconſiderable, that it was not able to reſiſt the pooreſt enemy; now a ſmall Burrough called *Miſithra*. And ſo I leave them to the thoughts of their former glories, having now nothing elſe to boaſt of, but the fame and memory of their actions in former times.

Argolis, ſo called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South, with *Laconia*; on the Weſt, with *Corintha* and *Achaia Propria*, on the Eaſt, and North, with the Sea. A territory remarkable for a moſt excellent breed of *Horſes*, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argus* the fourth King of this Country, and the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable as for other things, ſo 1. for the death of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who having forced his entry into it, was here ignobly ſlain, after all his victories, by the hands of an old woman, throwing a Tyle at him from the top of an houſe. 2ly. For the long race of the Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the contemporary of our father *Abraham*, *An.* 2003. unto *Acriſius* their laſt King. Whoſe daughter *Danae* being ſhut up in a Tower of Braſſe, was deflowred by *Jupiter*; to whom ſhe bare the renowned *Perſeus*, ſo memorized in antient Poets. But *Perſeus* having by miſfortune ſlain his Grandfather, the old King *Acriſius*, quitted the City of *Argos* as unluckly to him, and transferred the kingdom to *Mycene*, a City of his own foundation, and ſo better fancied, by means hereof, the ſecond City of eſteem in this little Province. Growing in ſmall time unto ſo great riches, that it got the name of *dites Mycenæ*, as appeareth by *Horace*; in whom the houſes of *Argos*, and the wealth of *Mycenæ* are placed in one verſe together.

Aptum dicis equis Argos, *diteſque* Mycenas.

For horſes *Argos* is of fame,
For wealth *Mycena* hath the name.

3. *Trœzen*, ſituate on the *Sinus* Argolicus now called *Golfo di Engia*, the Royal ſeat of *Pythaus*, the Father of *Theſeus*, who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath ſometime the name of *Pytheia Trœzen*, and *Theſeus* many times is called *Trœzenius Heros*, as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthius Heros*, from 4 *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was nurſed. 5. *Nemea*, where *Hercules* ſlew the dreadfull Lion which anoyed this Country. In honour of which noble Act, were inſtituted in time following the *Nemean Games*, which continued of great fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exerciſes were; running with ſwift horſes, whorlbats, running on foot, quoiting, wraſtling, darting, ſhooting. Some have referred the original of theſe games to one *Opheltes* a *Lacedamonian*; and in whoſe honour they conceive them inſtituted: and others fetch it higher from the war of *Thebes*. But this I take to be the more allowable opinion. 6. *Epidaurus*, on the Sea-ſide, famous for the Temple of *Æſculapius*, and the cure of all ſorts of diſeaſes there; ſo called from *Epidaurus*, the ſon of *Argus*, the founder of it. Of the ſame name, but of a different ſituation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being ſeated on the Bay called *Galfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Meliſſa*, and *Æmera*, at that time an Iſland: but by an Earth-quake laid unto the continent: now called *Pigiala*. 7. *Nauplia*, ſo called of *Nauplius* King of *Eubœa*, and father of *Palemedes*, to whom it antiently belonged. A ſtation then, as now, for ſhipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Neapolis*, the richeſt and beſt traded in all this tract; giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Napoli*, of old *Sinus Argolicus*; into which the famous River *Inachus*, having paſſed through the City of *Argos*, doth diſgorge it ſelf; ſo called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io*, and the original and *Progenitor* of

The KINGS of *ARGOS* and *MYCENÆ*.

A. M.		
2063	1	*Inachus*, the ſuppoſed father of *Io*, from whom the *Gracians* are called ſometimes by the name of *Inachii*.
2143	2	*Phoroneus*, the ſon of *Inachus* and *Meliſſa*, from whom the ſaid *Io* hath the name of *Phoronois* in the Poet.
2223	3	*Apis*, the ſon of *Jupiter*, and *Niobe* the daughter of *Phoroneus*, who leaving *Greece* went into *Egypt*, where he taught the people *tillage*, and was there worſhipped afterwards in the form of an *Oxe*.
2238	4	*Argus*, the ſon of *Apis*, and the founder of *Argos*, in whoſe time *Agriculture* was taken up amongſt the *Grecians*; from him called *Argivi*.
2308	5	*Criaſus*, by ſome *Peiraſus*, the ſon of *Argus*.
2363	6	*Phorbas*, the ſon of *Criaſus*; in whoſe time *Atlas*, and *Prometheus*, are ſaid to flouriſh.
2397	7	*Triopas*, the ſon of *Phorbas*, and the brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himſelf in the Iſle of *Rhodes*.
2442	8	*Crotopus*.
2464	9	*Sthenelus*, outed of the Kingdom by
2475	10	*Danaus*, the brother of *Ægyptus*; by whom driven out of *Egypt*, he was made King of *Argos*, by the conſent of the people: the Father of thoſe many daughters got with child by *Hercules*. From him the *Gracians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.
2525	11	*Lynceus*, ſon of *Ægyptus*, the brother of *Danaus*.
2556	12	*Abas*, the ſon of *Lynceus*, and *Hypermneſtra* the daughter of *Danaus*.
2566	13	*Pretus*, the ſon of *Abas*.
2606	14	*Acriſius*, the brother of *Pretus*, and the father of *Danae*, foretold by the Oracle that he ſhould be ſlain by a ſon of that daughter, ſhut her up in a brazen Tower. But *Jupiter* having corrupted the Guards with *Gold*, got the Ladies conſent; by whom he had *Perſeus*, ſo renowned amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians of thoſe elder times.
2637	15	*Perſeus*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, expoſed by his Grandfather to the Seas. Miraculouſly preſerved, and grown into great fame by his brave exploits; he reſtored *Acriſius* to his Throne, from which he had been depoſed by his brother *Pricus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately ſlain the ſaid *Acriſius*, he removed his ſeat unto *Mycane*; where he reigned together with his ſon *Sthenelus*.
2645	16	*Euryſtheus*, the ſon of *Sthenelus*, much ſpoken of for the difficult tasks, which, at the inſtigation of *Juno*, he impoſed on *Hercules* his foſter-child, and the ſuppoſed ſon of *Amphytryon* his Couſen German.
2688	17	*Atreus* and *Thyeſtes*, ſons of *Pelops*, on the failing of the line of *Perſeus*, ſucceded in *Argos* and *Mycane*: infamous for their murders and adultery: *Thyeſtes* abuſing the bed of *Atreus*, and *Atreus* feaſting him with the body of his own ſon, whence Θυέστεια δεῖπνα in the *Proverb*.

Corinthia.

2753	18	*Agamemnon*, the ſon of *Atreus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the war of *Troy*, in which action there engaged 69 Kings of the *Grecians*, wafted over with a Navy of 1224 ſhips killed at his coming home by *Ægiſthus*, his Couſen German.
2768	19	*Ægiſthus*, the ſon of *Thyeſtes*, having defiled *Clitemneſtra* the wife of *Agamemnon* in the time of his abſence, by her procurement murdered him at his coming home, and uſurped the Kingdom.
2775	20	*Oreſtes*, ſon of *Agamemnon*, revenged his fathers death on *Ægiſthus*, and *Clitemneſtra* his own Mother. After which falling mad, and reſtored again unto his wits, he marryed *Hermione*, daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the Kingdome of *Sparta* alſo.
2803	21	*Penthilus*, the ſon of *Oreſtes*, and the laſt King of this line; outed of his eſtate by the *Dores* and *Heraclida*; who made themſelves Maſters of all *Peloponneſus*, which they poſſeſſed untill the conqueſt of it by the *Macedonians*.

7. ***CORINTHIA*** is a little Region, lying towards the *Iſthmus* or neck of land, which joyneth *Peloponneſus* to the reſt of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis*, and *Achaia Propria*. It containeth only the territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitfull of thoſe commodities which the reſt of this *Peninſula* doth abound withall: as being mountanous and hilly, and by reaſon of the nearneſſe of the Sea, full of craggy rocks. The chief, and indeed the only Cities of note in it, 1. *Cenchrea*, the naval Road or ſtation of ſhips for *Corinth*, mentioned *Acts* 19. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a diſtinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was. 2. *Corinth* it ſelf, commodiouſly ſituate for the command of all *Greece* (had not the Inhabitans been more given to *Merchandiſe* than unto the *wars*) as being ſeated on the bottom of the neck or *Iſthmus*; the *Jonian* Sea upon the Weſt, and the *Ægean* on the Eaſt, waſhing the walls thereof, and giving it on each ſide a capacious Haven, in which regard called by *Horace*, *bimaris Corinthus*. In compaſs about eleven miles, for ſtrength impregnable: for command as powerfull; maſtering both Seas on which it ſtood, and cutting off all paſſage from one half of *Greece* to the other: to which laſt end the Caſtle called *Acrocorinthus*: looking into both Seas, ſerved exceeding fitly; and was therefore called one of the *Fettors of Greece*. The City rich, well-traded, and neatly built, moſt houſes beautified with handſome pillars, from thence called *Corinthian*: more memorable for the wealth of the people, and the conveniency of the ſituation, than for any notable exploits performed by them, or any great influence which they had on the ſtates of *Greece*. But in regard of the wealth, greatneſs, and ſituation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthage*, and *Capua*, being the other two. In this City lived the famous or infamous whore, *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachma's* for a ſingle nights lodging; which made De*moſthenes* cry out, *Non emam tanti pœnitere*; and occaſioned the old *By-word*,

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.

'Tis not for every mans avail,
Unto *Corinth* for to ſail.

Near hereunto ſtood the A*crocorinthian* mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Caſtle called hence A*crocorinthus* were ſeated: out of which flowed the famous fountain named *Pyrene*, of old conſecrated to the *Muſes*; by Per*ſius* called *Fons Caballinus*, becauſe feigned by the antient P*oets* to have been made by the Horſe P*egaſus*, daſhing his foot againſt the rock. And on the other ſide hereof in the *Iſthmus*, were celebrated yearly the *Iſthmian* games, ordained by *Theſeus* in the honour of *Neptune*; in imitation of the *Olympick* deviſed by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The exerciſes much the ſame, and the reward no other than a Garland of *Oaken boughs*; yet drawing yearly a great reſort of people to them: partly to exerciſe themſelves, and behold the ſport; and partly to ſacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard by a famous Temple.

As for the fortunes of this City, it was at firſt called *Ephyra*, at that time a ſmall and obſcure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus* the ſon of P*elops*, took the name of *Corinth*; Governed by him and his poſterity, till the coming of the H*eraclida* into P*eloponneſus*: at what time one *Aletes* of the race of *Hercules*, poſſeſſed himſelf hereof, with the name of King, *A. M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of this line enjoyed it for the ſpace of 220 years and upwards: when the houſe failing in the perſon of *Automanes*, they were governed by temporary officers, like the *Archontes of Athens*. Continuing under this government 124 years, the City was ſeized on by one *Cypſelus*, *A. M.* 3294 who left it to his ſon *Periander*, one of the ſeven wiſe men of *Greece*; counted a *Tyrant* in thoſe times, for no other reaſon; than that he had ſuppreſſed the popular government: after whoſe death, *An.* 3364 the City did recover its former liberty. In the buſtle betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedamon*, and other the eſtates of *Greece*, for the ſuperiority, it did little meddle; the aim of this people being wealth, not honour: not intereſſed in any action of renown in all thoſe times; but in the ſending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracuſans*, againſt the Tyrant *Dionyſius*, who did Lord it over them. Subdued together with the reſt, by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the reſt reſtored to liberty by the power of *Rome*; under whom growing ſtill more rich, and withall more inſolent, they abuſed certain *Roman* Ambaſſadours. But *iraſci populo* Romano *nemo ſapienter poteſt*, as is ſaid in *Livy*, which the *Corinthians* found too true: the City being beſieged, ſacked, and burnt unto the ground by *Lucius Mum-*

Achaia.

Mummius a *Roman* Conſul, *An.V.C* 607. In the burning whereof there were conſumed ſo many goodly *Statues* of gold, ſilver, braſs, and other metals; but being melted into a lump, they made up by that fatal chance, the ſo much eſtimated metal, called *Æs Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great eſteem in the time of the Emperours, converted by S. *Paul* to the *Chriſtian* Faith; and having flouriſhed a long time in pride and pleaſures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a ſmall Burrough called *Crato.*

Having thus ſpoken of the ſeveral eſtates of *Peloponneſus*, it reſteth that we ſpeak ſomewhat of the eſtate of the whole; varied according to the fortunes of thoſe particulars, which had moſt influence on the ſame. The affairs hereof are a long while ſwayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, reſtrained afterwards to the territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came into place and power, it depended much upon their pleaſures; from *Apis* the third King whereof (if not rather from *Apis*, the fourth King of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of ſome writers, it was named *Apia*. But *Pelops*, the ſon of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia* coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia* daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the moſt powerfull Prince of all this *Peninſula*, taking from him the name of *Peloponneſus*. The kingdome of *Mycena* growing into power and credit, had the next turn in ſwaying the affairs hereof for a certain ſeaſon; as after that the *Dores* and the *Heraclida*, poſſeſſed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Meſſene*. The *Spartans* getting the preheminence over all the reſt, were the next who governed the affairs of it, and they held it long; having firſt conquer'd *Laconia*, and ſubverted the eſtate of *Meſſene*; by means whereof, and by their fortunate ſucceſſe againſt the *Perſians*, they became almoſt abſolute in their commands, without any *Competitor*. But their power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*; in the *Theban* war, the *Petit States* hereof began to take heart again, and ſtand upon their own legs, as they did a while; till the Kings of *Macedon* ſucceeding *Alexander* the *Great*, brought them once more under, and made them fellow-ſervants with their *Spartan Maſters*. In the confuſions which enſued in *Macedon*, amongſt the *Competitors* for that Kingdome, *Patras* and *Dime*, two Cities of *Achaia Propria*, firſt united them in a ſtrong league of amity, at ſuch time as *Pyrrhus* firſt went into *Italy*; into which confederacy the Cities of *Tritaa* and *Phera* ſhortly after came, and not long after that, *Ægira*, and the reſt of *Achaia Propria*: their affairs governed firſt by two *Prators*, with advice of the *Senate*, as afterwards by one alone with the like advice; of which *Marcus Carinenſis* was the firſt, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the ſecond. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this *new Commonwealth* increaſing by the virtue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Trœzenians*, *Argives* and *Megarians* became members of it: maintaining gallantly the liberties of *Peloponneſus*, till finally maſtered by the *Romans*. In the diviſion of whoſe Empire it fell, with all the reſt of *Greece*, to the *Conſtantinopolitans*: and in the declining of their fortunes when the *Latines* got poſſeſſion of the *Imperial* City, moſt of the Sea-coaſts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*: the inland parts formerly parcelled out amongſt many Princes, whom they called *Deſpots*, continuing as before they were. By *Iſabel*, a daughter of one of theſe *Deſpots* (and as it ſeems the chief among them) married to *Ferdinand*, ſon of *James* the firſt, and father of *James* the 2^d^. King of *Majorca*, the title of Prince of *Morea* came into that houſe; uſed by them and the reſt of theſe petit Princes, till all together made a prey to the Turkiſh Tyrants, *Mahomet* the *Great*, and *Bajazet* the ſecond, by whom wholly conquered. For howſoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Conſtantinople*; and were received and obeyed by thoſe *Petit Princes*; yet being unable to hold out againſt the *Conquerour*; they became his *tributaries*. But falling out amongſt themſelves, and neglecting then to ſend in the *tribute* agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the *Great* occaſion to invade the Country; and under colour of aiding one brother againſt the other, to deſtroy them both, as he did accordingly; *Demetrius* being carried Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*; and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponneſus*, and flee to *Italie*, *Anno* 1457. Such Towns hereof as belonged to the State of *Venice*, followed the ſame fortune alſo in the time of *Bajazet*; by whom all taken at the laſt, and the whole Country brought under his obedience, *Anno* 1500 or thereabouts. Governed ever ſince that time, by a *Turkiſh Zanziack*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his reſidence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horſe to ſecure the Country, and 700000 *Aſpers*, (that is to ſay, 14000 Crowns) a year, for his entertainment.

ACHAIA.

ACHAIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Ægean Sea*; on the Weſt, with *Epirus*; on the North, with *Theſſalie*; and on the South, with *Peloponneſus*, and the Seas thereof. Called antiently *Hellas*, from *Helles* the ſon of *Deucalion*: but whence it had the name of *Achaia* is not yet agreed on; though ſure I am, that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achivi*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Græcians*) to difference them from the *Achæi* of *Achaia Propria*.

The Country famous in the Authors of elder times, more for the gallantry of the men, than any great goodneſſe of the ſoil and place: yet that ſufficiently memorable for the hill *Hymettus*, ſwarming with Bees, plentifull of the ſweeteſt honey; and rich in mines of excellent Marble; as alſo for the River *Cephiſus*, which runneth almoſt through the whole length hereof; divided into two main ſtreams, of which the one is called *Aſopus*, the other retaineth its firſt name. Upon the banks hereof ſtood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Deucalion* did repair to be directed in the reſtauration of mankind, as the Poets fable.

Achaia.

It was divided antiently into ſeven parts, *viz.* 1. Atica, 2. *Megaris*, 3. *Bœotia*, 4. *Phocis*, 5. *Locris*, 6. *Doris*, and 7. *Ætolia*. A diviſion now as much diſuſed as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turks* into that of *Levedia*, of which more anon.

1. *ATTICA* hath on the Weſt, *Megaris*, and ſome part of *Bœotia*; on all other parts compaſſed with the Sea: So called from *Athens* the chief City. The ſoil for the moſt part very barren, and craggy, yet by the arms and induſtry of the people made both rich, and famous: inſomuch as the yearly Revenues of the ſtate of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The money current in this country was commonly ſtamped with an Oxe, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applyed to ſuch *Lawyers* as were bribed to ſay nothing in their **Clients** cauſe. Not much unlike to which was the Proverb riſing from the coin of *Ægina* (an Iſle adjoyning) ſtamped with a figure of a *Snail*, viz. *Virtutem & ſapientiam vincunt* Teſtudines.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Phila*, a ſtrong Fortreſſe on the borders of *Bœotia*, ſurprized by *Thraſibulus*, and others of the baniſhed Athenians, during the government of the 30 Tyrants: the taking whereof was the firſt ſtep towards their own and their countries liberty; which ſoon after followed. 2. *Eleuſis*, on the borders of Megaris, almoſt impregnably fortified by the 30 *Tyrants* when they had the Command of *Athens*; by whom deſigned for their retreat in all times of danger. But having withdrawn hither on the taking of Phila and Piræus, by the *Thraſybulians*, they found ſtrong walls a weak defence for ſo much wickedneſſe, being trained out as to a parly, and ſo deprived of the place and their power together. It was firſt built by one *Eleuſinus*, who entertained *Ceres*, as ſhe was in queſt of her daughter. *Proſerpine*; who to reward him, taught him the uſe of *Agriculture*; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleuſina*, and her ſacrifices *ſacra Eleuſinia*; and ſometimes the City alſo, *Cerealis Eleuſis*, ſo called by *Ovid* in the 7. book of the *Metamorphorſis*. 3. *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Aſopis*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiaraus*, and the *Statua* of the Goddeſs *Nameſis*, hence called *Rhamnuſia* in the Poets: this *Nemeſis* or *Rhamnuſia*, being the Goddeſs of *indignation*, puniſhing thoſe who made themſelves unworthy of their preſent fortunes. 4. *Trichoritum*, of more Antiquity than Fame. 5. *Marathon*, on the ſouthſide of the river *Aſopus*, oppoſite to *Rhamnus*; of great note for the diſcomfiture given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian*, to the numerous Army of *Darius*, conſiſting of 200000 Foot, and 10000 Horſe: the Emulation of which noble victory ſtartled ſuch brave reſolves in the breſt of *Themiſtocles*. As memorable in the Poets of thoſe elder times for the *Marathonian* bull there ſlain by *Theſeus*. 6. *Moſopia*, the ordinary dwelling place of *Theſeus*, before he fixed his ſeat at *Athens*, it being at this Town that he reſtored *Helena*, (whom he had before ſtoln from her own Countrey) to her two Brethren *Caſtor* and *Pollux*; of which both Rape and Reſtitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the Epiſtle of *Oenone* to *Paris*, the other in that of *Hermione* to *Oreſtes*; in which laſt it is ſaid expreſly, *Reddita Moſopia Tyndaris urbe ſoror.* That is to ſay, that ſhe was delivered to her two Brethren, (who had took much pains in ſeeking for her) in the Town of *Moſopia*. 7. *Pyræus*, the Port-Town to *Athens*, and the ordinary ſtation for their ſhipping; the Haven hereof being capable of 400 ſail: diſtant from the City above two miles, but joyned unto it by two long walls reaching from the one to the other, for ſecuring the conveyance of their Merchandiſe to and from the Sea. The Port it ſelf impregnably fortified by the advice of *Themiſtocles*. But as theſe long walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them: ſo were the fortifications of *Pyræus* it ſelf demoliſhed by the command of *Sylla*, in his war againſt *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. 8. *Panormus*, a Sea-Town alſo, and of very good trade, but not of ſuch importance as the other was. 9. *Athene*, one of the eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Attica*, ſituate from the Sea two miles, as before was ſaid: the Haven of *Pyræus* ſerving it with all commodities, which came from other parts by ſhipping. Firſt built by *Cecrops* the firſt King of it, by whom called *Cecropia*, *A. M.* 2409. repaired afterwards by *Theſeus*, and furniſhed with good Laws by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Minerva* (whom the *Greeks* called *Athens*) to whom they dedicated, and in whoſe honour there were yearly kept ſome ſolemn games, called *Panathenaia*, A City heretofore adorned with all thoſe excellencies of ſtrength and beauty, which Art or Coſt could adde unto it. Renowned, as for many things, ſo for three eſpecially. 1. For the inviolable faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and moſt firm affection to their Friends; ſo that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an *Adage*. 2ly. For the famous ſcholars which here taught and flouriſhed: this being ſo happy a Nurſery of the choiceſt wits, and ſo fitly ſeated for the *Muſes*, that the very *Natives* being in other Countries, could ſenſibly perceive ſome want of that natural vigour, which at home was reſiant in their ſpirits: *Ita ut* corpora *iſtius gentis ſeparata ſint in alias Regiones*, ingenia *vero ſolis* Athenienſium *muris clauſa eſſe exiſtimes*, as *Velleius* hath it. Yea and to ſay the truth, it was a moſt famous Univerſity, from whoſe great Ciſtern, the Conduit-pipes of learning were diſperſed over all the world. Yet did not learning ſo effeminate or ſoften the hearts of the people, but that 3ly this one City yielded more famous Captains than any in the World beſides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltiades*, *Ariſtides*, *Themiſtocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, Alcibiades, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and inlarged this Common-wealth: yet were the people ſo ungrateful to them, or they ſo unfortunate in the end, that they either dyed abroad in baniſhment, or by ſome violent death at home, *Themiſtocles* the Champion of *Greece*, dyed an exile in *Perſia*; *Phocion* was ſlain by the people; *Demoſthenes* made himſelf away by poyſon; *Pericles* many times indangered; *Theſeus* their Founder firſt depoſed, and then deſpitefully impriſoned: *Ariſtides*, Alcibiades, *Nicias*, &c. baniſhed for 10 years by the *Oſtraciſm*: A form of puniſhment ſo called, becauſe the name

of

Athens.

of the party baniſhed was writ on an *Oyſter-ſhell*; and only uſed towards ſuch, who either began to grow too *popular*, or potent among the men of ſervice. Which device, allowable in a *Democratie*, where the overmuch powerableneſs of one might hazard the liberty of all, was exerciſed in ſpight oftner, than deſert. A Country-fellow meeting by chance with *Ariſtides*, deſired him to write *Ariſtides* in his ſheil: and being asked whether the man whoſe baniſhment he deſired, had ever wronged him, replyed, *No, he was only ſorry to hear folks call him a good man.* We find the like unfortunate end to moſt of the *Romans*, ſo redoubted in war. *Coriolanus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murdered, with divers others: only becauſe their virtue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was diſgraced by *Antony*, *Agricola* poyſoned with the privity of *Domitian*, *Corbulo* murdered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an age, wherein it was not lawfull to be valiant. In latter-times it ſo hapned to *Gonſalvo* the *Great Captain*, who having conquered the kingdom of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the mountains, and brought all the *Italian* Potentates to ſtand at the *Spaniards* devotion, was by his Maſter called home, where he lived obſcurely, though honoured after his deceaſe with a ſolemn Funeral. Worſe fared the *Guiſe*, and *Biron* in *France*; worſe *Eſſex*, and *Dudley* of *Northumberland*, with us in *England*. Neither will I omit *William* Duke of *Suffolk*, who having ſerved 34. years in our wars with *France*, and for 17. years together never coming home, at his return was quarrelled and baſely murdered. It were almoſt an impiety to be ſilent of *Joab*, the braveſt ſouldier, and moſt fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lords battels; and yet he died at the horns of the Altar. Whether it be that ſuch men be born under an unhappy Planet; or that Courtiers, and ſuch as have beſt opportunity to indeer men of war unto their Soveraignes, know not the way of commending their great deſerts; or that Envy the common Foe to Vertue, be an hinderance to it; I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are diſtruſtfull of men of Action; and are not willing to make them greater, whoſe name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the ſouldiers themſelves, by an unſeaſonable overvaluing of their own performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cauſe of the death of *Silius*, in the time of *Tiberius*. Concerning which *Tacitus* giveth us this good note, that over-merit in great ſubjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets hate inſtead of favour. *Beneficia eo uſque læta ſunt dum videntur exolvi poſſe; Ubi multum anteverterunt, pro gratia odium redditur*, ſaith that wiſe Hiſtorian.

But to look back again on *Athens*, it was firſt built by *Cecrops*, the firſt King thereof; governed by him and his poſterity with no lower title, for 400. years, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The KINGS of *ATHENS*.

A. M.

2394 1 *Cecrops*, who firſt made *Jupiter* a God, and ordained ſacrifices to be offered to him, as *Pauſanias* writeth.
2444 2 *Cranaus*, outed of his Kingdom by
2453 3 *Amphictyon*; the ſon of *Deucalion*, and Uncle to that *Amphictyon*, who firſt inſtituted the ſupream Court of the *Amphictyones*, or *Common-Councel* of all *Greece*.
2463 4 *Ericthonius* the ſon of *Vulcan*.
2513 5 *Pandion*, the Father of *Progne* and *Philomela*, ſo famous in the old Poets, of whom more hereafter.
2553 6 *Erichtheus*, whoſe daughter *Orithya* was raviſhed by *Boreas* King of *Thrace*.
2603 7 *Cecrops* II. brother of *Erichtheus*.
2643 8 *Pandion* II. ſon of *Erichtheus*.
2668 9 *Ægeus*, ſou of *Pandion* the ſecond, of whom the *Ægean* ſea took name.
2706 10 *Theſeus*, the ſon of *Ægeus*, and Companion of *Hercules*, vanquiſhed the *Minotaur* in *Crete*, collected the people of *Attica* into a body, and incorporated them into the City of *Athens*, which he had beautified and enlarged.
2746 11 *Mneſtheus*, the ſon of *Peteus*, Granchild of *Erichtheus*, ſerved with the other *Greek* Princes at the war of *Troy*.
2769 12 *Demophoon*, the ſon of *Theſeus*, reſtored unto his Fathers throne on the death of *Mneſtheus*,
2802 13 *Oxyntes*, ſon or brother of *Demophoon*.
2814 14 *Aphydas*, ſon of *Oxyntes*, ſlain by his brother.
2815 15 *Thymades*, the laſt of the line of *Erichtheus*.
2823 16 *Melanthius* of *Meſſene*, driven out of his own Kingdom by the *Heraclidæ*, obtained that of *Athens*.
2860 17 *Codrus*, the ſon of *Melanthius*, the laſt King of *Athens*; who in the wars againſt the *Peloponneſians*, having Intelligence by an *Oracle*, that his Enemies ſhould have the victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King; attired himſelf like a common Beggar, entred the *Peloponneſian* Camp, and there played ſuch pranks, that at the laſt they were fain to kill him. Which when the Enemy underſtood, they thought themſelves by this means deprived of all hopes of ſucceſſe, and ſo broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the people of *Athens* did ſo honour his memory, that they thought no man worthy to ſucceed, as King; andtherefore committed the managing of the Eſtate to Governours for term of life, whom they called *Archontes*: the firſt *Archon* being *Medon*,

Athens.

don, the ſon of *Codrus*. Not differing from the former Kings in point of power, but only in the manner of their *admiſſion*: the former Kings claiming the government by *ſucceſſion* in right of blood; and theſe *Archontes* holding by *Election* only: whoſe names here follow in the liſt of

The perpetual *ARCHONTES* in the STATE of *ATHENS*.

A. M		
2882	1	*Medon*, the ſon of *Codrus*.
2922	2	*Acaſtus*, the ſon of *Medon*.
2938	3	*Archippus*, the ſon of *Acaſtus*.
2957	4	*Therſippus*, the ſon of *Archippus*.
2998	5	*Phorbas*, the ſon of *Therſippus*.
3029	6	*Megacles*, the ſon of *Phorbas*.
3059	7	*Diogenetus*, the ſon of *Megacles*.
3087	8	*Phereclus*, the ſon of *Diogenetus*.
3106	9	*Aritthon*, the ſon of *Phereclus*.
3126	10	*Theſpieus*, in whoſe time began the kingdom of *Macedon*.
3153	11	*Agameſtor*.
3173	12	*Æſchilus*. the ſon of *Agameſtor*.

After whoſe death, *anno mun.* 3195. the *Athenians* weary of theſe *Governors for term of life*, as being leſs obnoxious to the check and cenſure of the *people*, choſe themſelves Officers or *Archontes* for ten years only: at the end of which time they were to yield up their places, and make room for others. But being a people greedy of *Novelties*, and deſirous of change, they had only ſeven of theſe *Decennial Archontes*: their Officers from that time forwards being choſen *annually*: which Officers being nine in number, we may call moſt properly the *Provoſt*, the *Chief Biſhop*, the *Marſhal*, and the ſix *Chief Juſtices*, all choſen out of the *Nobility*. And ſo it held for the ſpace of 170. years, till the time of *Solon*: who was the firſt which put the *Supream authority* into the hands of the *People*; and gave the firſt hint unto that *Democratie*, which afterwards prevailed in *Athens*, by the help of *Pericles*. Who being one of the great Councel of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their power in deciding Controverſies, and ſutes in Law, putting them over to the judgement of the common People. A Government ſo dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the Cities which they conquered or reſtored to *liberty*, or won to their party from the *Spartans*, they cauſed it to be admitted: as on the other ſide the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed the *Ariſtocratie* (their own loved Government) in all the places where they proſpered. As for the *Court*, of the *Areopagites* of much fame in *Athens*, it conſiſted from the firſt beginning ἐκ τῶν κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν Ἀρχόντων, of ſuch as had borne ſome of the nine cheif Offices, w ho being once admitted, held for term of life. Firſt inſtituted in the time of *Demophoon*, the ſon of *Theſeus*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their Court in the *ſtreet of Mars*, ἐν Ἀρείῳ πάγῳ, mentioned *Act.* 17. 32. or becauſe *Mars* being accuſed for a Murder, did firſt plead before them. A Court which held in eſtimation under all theſe changes, and ſo continued till the time of the *Roman* Empire.

But to retnrn again to the ſtory of *Athens*; in or about the latter end of the life of *Solon*, *Piſiſtratus* altered the *Free State*, and made himſelf the abſolute Maſter of the City: but he once dead, the People regained their liberty, driving thence *Hippias* the ſon of *Piſiſtratus*; who hereupon fled for ſuccour to *Darius* the *Perſian* Monarch, occaſioning by that means the firſt coming of the *Perſians* into *Greece*. What ſucceſs the *Perſians* had in *Greece*, the Hiſtories of thoſe times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquiſhed by *Miltiades*, at *Marathon*; and *Xerxes* by *Themiſtocles*, at *Salamis*. Yet did not *Athens* ſcape ſo clear; but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed firſt abandoned, and voluntarily diſmantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Perſians* were retired homewards, the people of *Athens* re-edified their Town, and ſtrongly fortified it with high and defenſible walls: which done, they put their Fleet to Sea, and ſpoiled the coaſts of *Perſia* in all quarters; inriching their City with the ſpoils, and inlarging their power and Dominion by the addition of many Iſlands and Sea-Townes. Hereby they grew unto that wealth and potency, that they were ſuſpected by their weaker neighbours, and envied by their ſtronger, the *Lacedemonians* eſpecially; who fearing to loſe their antient priority over *Greece*, but pretending the ſurpriſal of *Potidea* a City of *Thrace*, from the *Corinthians*, and ſome hard meaſure, by them ſhewed upon the *Mogarenſes*, made war upon them. In the beginning of this war, the *Athenians* not only reſiſted the whole power of all *Greece*, confederate againſt them; but ſo exceedingiy proſpered, that the *Spartans* ſued for peace, and could not get it. But the ſcales of fortune turned. For after they had held out 28. years, they were compelled to pluck down the Walls of tbe City, and ſubmit themſelves to the will and pleaſure of the *Spartans*, now by the puiſſance and good fortune of *Lyſander*, become their Maſters: by whom the government was changed, and an *Ariſtocratie*, (or rather *Oligarchie*) eſtabliſhed under 30. Magiſtrates, known commonly by the name of the 30. Tyrants, expelled not long after by the valour of *Thraſibulus*, and his aſſociates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this War, which the Hiſtorians call *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, the *Perſians* ſeeing how the *Spartans*, not having now the State of *Athens* to oppoſe them, began to work upon theit Empire: furniſhed *Conon* a Noble *Athenian* Gentleman with a Navy ſo well provided, that they overcame the *Lacedemonians* in a fight at Sea; and thereby put his Countrey-men into ſo good heart, that they made a party in the War called *Bellum Sacrum*: compoſed at the laſt by *Philip* of *Macedon*: who brought not only the *Thebans* whom he came to aid, but the *Atkenians*, *Spartans*, and the reſt of the adverſe party, under his command. A ſervitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon*, as the reſt became fellow-ſervants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then loſt her power in point of Arms, yet ſhe ſtill kept her credit as an Univerſity in point of Arts; *Origen*, *Chryſoſtom*, *Baſil*, and *Gregory Nyſſen*, men of renown and eminence in the Primitive times, are ſaid to have ſtudied at *Athens*: the like affirmed of

Pope

Bœotia.

Pope *Joane*, if the Tale be true, for the middle ages. And ſo it held, as I conjecture, though not ſo eminently as before, till the year 1440. when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondered much (as my Author telleth) at the extreme beauty of the Caſtle, and the ſtrength of the walls, not having loſt in ſo long time, their former excellencies. Since that it ſenſibly decayed, and is now an ordinary Burrough (by the *Turks* called *Seline*) but ſtill preſerveth the Reputation of an Epiſcopal See, the Biſhop of it holding up the title of *Athenienſis*.

2. *MEGARIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Attica*; on the Weſt, with the Bay of *Corinth*, on the North, with *Bœotia*; and on the South, with the *Iſthmus*, and the *Golf di Engia*. So called from *Megaris*, the chief City.

This the leaſt Province of all *Greece*, and not very fruitful; the Country for the moſt part being hard and rocky. Not beautified with many Cities; the principal of thoſe which are 1. *Pega*, or *Pegai*; ſituate on the Bay of *Corinth*, and ſpoken of by *Pliny* and *Ptolomy*; but not otherwiſe memorable. 2. *Megaris*, (now *Megra*) firſt built by *Magareus*, the Son of *Apollo*; and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philoſophers, called from hence *Secta Megarica* founded by one *Euclide* a Diſciple of *Socrates*; of whom ſee *Laertius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Niſus*, once the King of this little Territory: on whoſe head there is ſaid to have grown a Purple Hair, on which the preſervation of his life and kingdom did depend. Which Jewel his Daughter *Scylla* is ſaid to have delivered unto King *Minos* her Fathers Enemy; on whom then beſieging this City, upon the ſight of him from an high Turret, ſhe became inamoured. But he rejecting her, and her Preſent both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*: which the unhappy Woman ſeeing; threw her ſelf after him into the Sea, and was turned into a Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the moralizing of the Fable unto the *Mythologiſts*: obſerving only by the way, the antiquity of that politick practice, to *love the treaſon and hate the Traytor*. But the glories of this City did not end with *Niſus*. For ſhaking off the *Cretan* yoke, it became *ſui juris* once again: and being conveniently ſeated on the very *Iſthmus*, amounted to that height of proſperity, that they contended with the *Athenians* for the Iland of *Thalamis*. And in this war they ſo cruſhed the power and ſpirit of *Athens* by one fatal overthrow, that the *Athenians* to prevent all the like diſaſters, did ordain by Law, that whoſoever mentioned the recovery of *Salamis*, was to loſe his life: ſo that *Solon* was compelled to feign himſelf frantick, the better to encounter the enterprize. In which, although the State of *Athens* got the Iſle of *Salamis*; yet did the *Magarenſes* continue a *Free-people*, till brought under (with the reſt) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made ſubject unto *Rome*.

3. *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South, with *Megaris*, and the Bay of *Corinth*; on the North with the River *Cephiſus*; on the Eaſt, with *Attica*, and a branch of the *Ægaan* Sea; and on the Weſt, with *Phocis*. Thus named from Βοῦς. which in *Greek* ſignifieth an Ox: becauſe when *Cadmus* weary of ſeeking his Siſter *Europa* (whom *Jupiter* had ſtollen out of *Phœnicia*) came to the Oracle at *Delphos*, he was command to follow the firſt Ox he ſaw; and where the Ox did reſt it ſelf, there to build a City.

In the Country nothing ſingular, but an antient cuſtom of burning before the door of an houſe in which a new-married Wife was deſigned to dwell, the *Axle-tree* of the Coach which brought her thither: giving her by that Ceremony to underſtand (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his Morals) that ſhe muſt frame her ſelf to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Country alſo are the Streights of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the neighbouring Bathes, called *Thermopyla*, not above 25. foot in bredth: which in the war that *Xerxes* made againſt the *Greeks*, were valiantly defended by *Leonidas* King of *Sparta*, with no more than 300 of his men, who having valiantly reſiſted that Army, which in its paſſage out of *Perſia* had drank Rivers dry, and ſlain at leaſt 30000 of them, dyed every man upon the place. To hide the greatneſs of which loſs, leſt it ſhould terrifie the reſt of his Army which were coming on; *Xerxes* commanded all the ſlain men to be buried in ſeveral pits, except a thouſand; as if no more than they had been loſt in that paſſage.

Places of moſt obſevation in it: 1. *Theſpias*, on a River of the ſame name, at the fall whereof into the Bay it is pleaſantly ſeated: ſhadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*; and conſecrated as that was, unto the Muſes, hence called *Theſpiades* in the Poets. 2. *Platea*, nigh to which, *Mardonius* General to the *Perſians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the loſs of *Mardonius* himſelf and 160000 men on the *Perſian* ſide; and on the other no more than 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Arcadians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Magarenſes*. In memory of which brave exploit, and to preſerve the names and honour of thoſe *Worthies*, who there laid down their lives for the liberty of *Greece*: there was a Feſtival kept annually by the *Plateans* in the moneth of *September*, with ſolemn *Sacrifices*, and kind of divine acknowledgment unto the deceaſed; continued from the time of *Ariſtides* the *Athenian* who firſt ordained them, to the dayes of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to ſay. In this great fight the Commander in chief was a noble *Spartan*, called *Pauſanias*, who afterwards having a deſign to make himſelf ſoveraign of all *Greece*, and being diſcovered in the practice, fled for ſanctuary to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence becauſe it was counted ſacriledge to conſtrain him by violence, it was unanimouſly reſolved to wall up the entrances; his own Mother laying the firſt ſtone. It is recorded, that before the fighting of this battel, the *Athenians* had been told by the *Oracle* that they ſhould be *Conquerours* if they fought upon their own ground; whereupon the *Platetans* within whoſe Territories the *Perſians* had prepared to fight, beſtowed that field on the State of *Athens*. In requital of which noble Act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and inlarged their

Bœotia, and *Phocis*

their City; having been firſt burnt, and ſacked, by the *Perſians*; and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedamonians*, becauſe confederate with *Athens* in the War againſt them. 3. *Leuctra*, remarkable for the great overthrow, which the *Thebans*, under the conduct of *Epaminondas*, gave unto the *Spartans*, and their King *Cleombrotus* there ſlain: by which victory they did not only preſerve their own liberty, but brought their Enemies to that fall of Courage and Reputation, that they could never riſe again: the Divine Vengeance overtaking them in that very place, where ſome of their Nation had deflowred the Daughters of *Schedaſus*, who had given them courteous entertainment. For which, when no reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate Damoſels ſlew themſelves, to avoid the infamy of conſenting to their own diſhonour, and were buried in thoſe very fields where this battel was fought. 4. *Aſcra*, the birth-place of *Heſiod* a man (according to *Paterculus*) *elegantis ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis*: though it hath pleaſed that proud Critick *Julius Scaliger*, intending to deifie *Virgil*, to prefer the worſt verſe of *Georgicks* of the one, before the whole works of the other. 5. *Lebadia*, near the River *Cephiſus*, the inhabitants whereof were counted the moſt ſuperſtitious of all the *Grecians*: memorable for the Den or Cave of *Trophonia*, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trophonius*. Into which Cave none were permitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but after many anointings, waſhings, and the like ſuperſtitious preparations, too long and many to be ſpecified in this place and time. A Town which ſtill preſerves ſo much of its antient eſtimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Country of *Achaia* hath the name of *Levadia*; by which the Turks call it at this preſent. 6. *Cherona*, or *Ceronea*, the birth-place of *Plutarch*. Near unto which was fought that memorable battel, betwixt *L. Sylla*, and the *Romans*, againſt *Archelaus*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an Army of 120000 Souldiers; of which 10000 only eſcaped wih life, the *Romans* loſing but 14. 7. *Orchomenon*, no leſs memorable for another victory, obtained by the ſame *L. Sylla*, againſt *Dorilaus* another of that Kings Commanders, having an Army of 80000 men, of which 20000 loſt their lives that day. After which victories, when *Sylla* might eaſily have deſtroyed that King, he ſuddenly patched a Peace up with him, that he might haſten unto *Rome*, where *Marius* and *Cinna* had trodden his Faction under foot; preferring by that act the purſute of his own private quarrels, before that of his Country; endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, than it had been formerly. 8. *Aulis*, a Port Town on the ſhores of the *Ægaan* Sea, where the *Grecians* took ſhipping when they went to the War of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the enterprize, until they had deſtroyed that City. Concerning which, thus ſhe in *Virgil*:

Non ego cum Danais Trojanam *excindere Gentem*
Aulide juravi.

That is to ſay:

I took an Oath at *Aulis* to deſtroy,
As did the *Greeks*, the Town and State of *Troy*.

But the chef City of this Country, and ſuch as had a ſpecial influence over all the reſt, was the City of *Thebes*, ſituate on the banks of the River *Cephiſus*, where built by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician* after all his wandrings. Famous in old times for the Wars between *Eteocles* and *Polynices*, the Sons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and Wife *Jocaſta*. The Hiſtory of which War is the moſt antient piece of ſtory, that we find of all *Greece*; the former times and writings containing nothing but fables, little ſavouring of *humanity*, and leſs of *truth*; as of men changed into Monſters, the adulteries of the Gods, and the like. In this Town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who ſo cruſhed the *Lacedamonians* at the battel of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea*, that they could never after re-obtain their former puiſſance. This Common-wealth long flouriſhed, and at laſt being over-burdened in the *Phocian* War, was glad to ſubmit it ſelf to the protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Philip*: who by this means firſt got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thruſt his whole body. Upon the death of *Philip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedons*; but *Alexander* his ſucceſſor quickly recovered it: and to diſhearten the *Greeks* in the like attempts, he razed the City, ſelling all the inhabitants of age and ſtrength; only *Pindarus* houſe he commanded to be left ſtanding, in honour of that learned Poet. At this ſack of the Town, one of the *Macedonian* Souldiers entred the houſe of a principal Woman, named *Timoclea*, raviſhed her, and rifled her coffers; but ſtill demanding more treaſure, ſhe ſhewed him a deep Well, ſaying, that there all her money was hidden. The credulous villain ſtooping down to behold his prey, ſhe tumbled him into the Well, and overwhelmed with ſtones, for which noble act, the generous Prince not only diſmiſſed her unhurt, but moſt highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Caſſander*, and followed for the moſt part, as moſt of the *Bœotians* did the fortunes of *Macedon*. Reduced at this time to the State of an ordinary Burrough, and called *Scibes* by the *Turks*,

4. *PHOCIS* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Bœetia*; on the Weſt, with *Doris*, and *Locris*; on the North, with the River *Cephiſus*; and on the South, with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Country ſomewhat ſwelled with Mountains, but thoſe of eminent note in elder times. The chief whereof 1. *Helicon*. 2. *Citheron*; both conſecrated to the Muſes, and both contending with *Parnaſſus* for height and bigneſs. 3. *Parnaſſus*, of ſo great an height, that in that great deluge, in which moſt of theſe parts of *Greece* were

over

ver-whelmed wth the Waters, *Deucalion* and P*yrrha* ſaved themſelves, and many others, on the top hereof: for which, and for its two ſummits reaching to the clouds, of great renown amongſt the Poets; as in *Ovid* thus:

Mons ibi verticibus petit arduus aſtra duobus,
Nomine Parnaſſus; *ſuperatque cacumine nubes.*

Parnaſſus there with his two tops extends
To the toucht ſtars, and all the clouds tranſcends.

Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Anticyra*, ſituate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, an Herb very medicinal for the Phrenzie; whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyras*, applyed to mad men. 2. *Pytho*, or P*ythia*, ſaid to be ſeated not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the World: *Strabo* relating how *Jupiter* deſirous to know the exact middle of the Earth, let looſe two Eagles, one from the Eaſt, and the other from the Weſt, which flying with an equal wing, (ſo we muſt conceive) and meeting at this very place, ſhewed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reaſon of which convenient ſituation in the heart of *Greece*, it was made a Seſſions Town for all the *Grecians*, and honoured with the Court and general Aſſembly of the *Amphictyones*; men choſen out of the prime Cities of *Greece*, who had power to decide all Controverſies, and to make Laws for the common good. A Court firſt inſtituted by *Acriſius*, as *Strabo* telleth us; or as *Halicarnaſſeus* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the Son of *Helles*, from whom they ſeem to have their name. The Commiſſioners from the ſeveral Cities, with reference to the places for which they ſerved, had the name of P*elagora*; when aſſembled, they were called the A*mphictyones*: their meeting at the beginning of the Spring, or Autumn. Some inſtances concerning their Authority will not be amiſs. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cyrrhenians* having by Piracy wronged the *Theſſalonians*, were fined by this Council. And after that the *Lacedæmonians* for ſurprizing *Cadmea*; and the P*hocians* for ploughing np the Land of *Cyrrha*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: and becauſe they contined obſtinate, and paid not their amercements, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiſcate unto the Temple. But they diſobeying this Decree alſo, ſpoiled the Temple it ſelf: for which, War being proclaimed againſt them by the reſt of the *Grecians*, who by the aſſiſtance of P*hilip* King of *Macedon*, brought them to obedience; the Council was again aſſembled. In which it was decreed that the P*hocians* ſhould raze the wall of their Cities; that they ſhould pay the yearly tribute of 60 *Talents*; that they ſhould keep no more Horſe and Arms, till they had ſatisfied the Treaſury of the Temple; nor any longer have a voice in thoſe Conventions. It was alſo then enacted, that the loſt ſuffrages of the P*hocians* ſhould be veſted in King P*hilip*, and his ſucceſſors, Kings of *Macedon*; on whom they did alſo confer the perpetual Preſidentſhip, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the 70 Elders, amongſt the *Jews*; and in our times, the Diets of the Empire, and the Aſſemblies of the *Switzers*, carry moſt reſemblance. 3. *Cyrrha*, on the Sea-ſide, the Port Town at *Delphos*. 4. *Criſſa*, ſo called from *Criſſeus* the Son of P*hocus*, and grand-child of *Æacus*, ſituate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*; called ſometimes from hence *Criſſeus Sinus*. 5. *Scarphia*, memorable for the defeat of *Critolaus* Captain of the *Achæan* Army, by *Metellus* one of the *Roman Prætors*: the loſs of which battel drew after it the deſtruction of *Corinth*. It was obſerved in the ſucceſs of this great fight, that a band of *Arcadians* eſcaping out of the battel came unto 6. *Eleatea*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained, on memory of ſome former alliances; till news came of the overthrow of *Critolaus*: when ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquiſh the Town, (for *advenſity ſeldom meeteth with returns of friendſhip*) they were ſet upon, and all ſlain by the *Romans*, in the ſelf ſame place, in which their Anceſtors had unworthily forſaken the reſt of the *Grecians* in their War againſt *Philip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick *Liberty*. 7. *Daulis*, a City appertaining to *Tereus* King of *Thrace*, who having married *Progne* the Daughter of *Pandion*, King of *Athens*, raviſhed her Siſter *Philomela*, and cut out her tongue the better to keep his villany undiſcovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double injury, firſt made him ignorantly eat his own Son *Itys*, whom ſhe had baked in a Pye; and after killed him, with the help of her raviſhed Siſter. 8. *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which with that of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of *Egypt*) were the moſt famous *Oracles* of the antient *Gentiles*: dark Riddles of the Devil, couched and contrived with ſo much cunning, that the meaning of them was moſt hidden, when 'twas thought moſt eaſie to be diſcerned. Inſtance of which, that given to *Crœſus*, in the War by him projected againſt the *Perſian*, which was thus delivered;

Crœſus Halyn penetrans magnam ſubvertit opum vim.

When *Crœſus* over *Halys* goes,
A mighty Nation he o'rethrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, croſſed the River; was vanquiſhed by *Cyrus* King of P*erſia*, and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of P*yrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who before he made War againſt the *Romans*, conſulted with the *Oracle*, and received this anſwer.

Aio te Æacide Romanos *vincere poſſe.*

Locris.

Which doubtful prediction he thus conſtrued; *Te poſſe vincere Romanos*, that he ſhould overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his coſt that the meaning was, *Romanos poſſe vincere te*, that the *Romans* ſhould overcome him; as indeed it happened. By another kind of the ſame fallacy which the *Logicians* call *Amphibolia*, did this great enemy of mankind overthrow another: who demanding of the Oracle what ſucceſs he ſhould have in an expedition which he was in hand with, received his anſwer in theſe words.

Ibis redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *Ibis, redibis, nunquam per, &c.* engaged himſelf in the War, and was therein ſlain. Whereupon his followers canvaſing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *Ibis, redibis nunquam, per, &c.* The like juggling he alſo uſed in thoſe ſupernatural Dreams, which Philoſophers call δαιμονόπεμπτα. For *Cæſar* deaming that he carnally knew his own Mother, the night before he paſſed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common Mother of the *Romans*: and *Hippias* the Son of *Piſiſtratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the ſame projects the ſame dream, was killed and buried in the bowels of his Mother the Earth: So that had *Cæſar* miſcarried in his action, and *Hippias* thrived; yet ſtill had the Devil been reputed his crafts-maſter, and the Father of truths. But as the Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apoſtate* conſulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no anſwer, becauſe that the body of *Babylas* the Martyr, was entombed nigh his Altar: ſo neither could the Devils deceive the world as formerly they had done, after Chriſt the truth it ſelf was manifeſted in the fleſh, and tormented theſe unclean ſpirits, though as they alledged, before their time. *Auguſtus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whoſe time our Saviour was born, conſulting with the Oracle about his ſucceſſor, received this not ſatisfying anſwer:

Παῖς ἑβραῖς κέλεταί με θεοῖς μακάρεσσιν ἀνάσσων
Τόν δὲ δόμον πρωλιπεῖν καὶ ἅιδην αὖθις ἱκέσθαι,
Λοιπὸν ἄπιθι σιγῶν ἐκ βωμῶν ἡμετεράων.

An *Hebrew* Child, whom the bleſt Gods adore,
Hath bid me leave theſe *ſhrines* and pack to Hell,
So that of *Oracle* I can no more:
In ſilence leave our *Altar* and farewell.

Whereupon *Auguſtus* coming home, in the *Capitol* erected an Altar, and thereon in Capital Letters cauſed this inſcription to be ingraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by Chriſts birth loſt much of their wonted vertue, ſo after his paſſion they loſt it almoſt altogether. Concerning which *Plutarch* in a Tract of his *Morals*, called, Περὶ τῶν λελοιπότων χρηστηρίων, *why Oracles ceaſe to give anſwers*, telleth us a notable ſtory, which was this. Some company going out of *Greece* into *Italy*, were about the *Echinades* becalmed; when on a ſudden there was heard a voice, loudly calling on one *Thamus* an *Egyptian*; then in the Ship. At the two firſt calls he made no anſwer, but to the third he replyed, ſaying, *Here I am*: and the voice again ſpake unto him, bidding him when he came to the *Palodes*, to make it known, that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which were certain ſhelves and rocks in the *Ionian* Sea, *Thamus* ſtanding on the poop of the ſhip, did as the voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty noiſe of many together, who all ſeemed to groan and lament with terrible and hideous ſhreekings. News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he cauſed the learned men in his Empire, to enquire out of their Books, who that *Pan* ſhould be; by whom it was anſwered, that he was the Son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*; with ignorance enough, and little ſatisfaction to the buſineſs propounded to them. Such therefore as narrowly obſerved the circumſtances of this accident, found it to happen at the time when our Saviour ſuffered on the Croſs; who was indeed the true God *Pan*, the *chief Shepherd and Biſhop of our Souls*, as the Scripture calleth him: and that upon this divulging of his death and paſſion, the Devils who uſed to ſpeak in *Oracles*, did with great grief and lamentation forſake that Office, which had been ſo gainful to them in ſeducing mankind. That *Oracles* at that inſtant ceaſed, I dare not ſay; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: it being ſaid by *Juvenal*, who lived in the reign of *Domitian*, Delphis *Oracula ceſſant*, that the *Oracle* of *Delphos* was then ſilent; the reſt decaying ſenſibly in a ſhort time after.

But to proceed; the Temple of *Apollo* being ſpoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, cauſed the Wars betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the *Holy War*: in which the *Thebans* being likely to have the worſt, ſent for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the quarrel by ſubduing both. The treaſure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple, was reckoned at 60 talents of Gold; but it proved *Aurum Toloſanum*, and brought a ſudden ruine of their State and Nation: Sacriledge being ſo impardonable a crime, even amongſt the Heathen, that the fault of ſome few, countenanced by the reſt of a people, hath brought deſtruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill fortune ranſacked by *Brennus* and his *Gaules*, in the main of the *Macedonian* Empire; all of them miſerably periſhing who had any hand in it.

5. *LOCRIS* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Phocis*, and a branch of the *Æglan* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Ætolia*; on the North, with a long ridge of hills which part it from *Theſſaly*; and on the South, with parts of *Achaia*, *Bœotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Straits of *Antirrihum*, and a part of the

Ionian

Doris and *Ætolia.*

Jonian Sea. So that for largeneſſe of extent, and the commodiouſneſſe of the Seas, it yieldeth to no Province in *Achaia*, though not ſo fruitful as ſome others. Divided into the three Nations of the *Locri*. *Ozolæ*, lying towards the South, on both ſides of the *Straits*; ſo called from ſome ill ſmells of the Country, or people; Secondly, the *Epicnemidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, ſo named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnaſſus*; and 3. the *Opuntii*, ſo called from *Opus* their chief City; lying on the North ſide of the River *Cephiſus*, on the Coaſts of the *Ægean*, or *Eubœan* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Opus*, the head City of the *Opuntians*, ſituate on the River *Aſopus*, being one of the main branches of *Cephiſus*. 2. *Cynus*, the Port town to *Opus*. 3. *Thronium*, the prime town of *Epicnemidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Livie*, *Ptolomy*. 4. *Cnomides*, at the foot of the Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5. *Amphiſſa*, the chief City of the *Ozolæ*, ſituate in the inland parts of it: the people whereof refuſing to yield to the ſentence of the *Amphyctiones*, againſt their confederates the *Phocians*, were the cauſe that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Againſt whom grievouſly infeſting the *Bœotians*, and manifeſtly aſpiring to the command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* deſperately oppoſed; not ſo much with poſſibility of prevailing, as by the ſharp and biting Orations of *Demoſthenes*, made againſt his proceedings: which being by him called *Philippicks*, occaſioned *Tully* to call his bitter invectives againſt *M. Antonius*, by the ſame name alſo. But the ſucceſſe hereof was ſuch, as commonly attendeth a broken fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquiſhed at *Chæronea*, and *Philip* declare Captain of *Greece* againſt the *Perſians*, obtaining under that title the command he ſought. 6. *Evantia*, as *Ptolomy*, *Oeantia*, as *Pliny* and *Pauſanias* call it; oppoſite to *Ægira* in *Achaia propria*. 7. *Molychria*, by *Ptolomy* placed here; and by others reckoned in *Ætolia*; Not far from whence is the Promontory of *Antirrhium*, and ſo called becauſe juſt oppoſite to that of *Rhium* in *Achia propria*: between which runneth a narrow ſtreight (not ſo wide as the *Helleſpont*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; each Promontory for that cauſe fortified by *Bajazet* the ſecond with a very ſtrong Caſtle, that on this ſide being gallantly defended by the *Turks*, when beſieged by *Doria*, *Anno* 1532. For being forced with great ſlaughter into a ſtrong Tower, which commanded the Caſtle, they rather choſe to blow it up, together with the ammunition, victuals, and themſelves to boot, than that the Fort ſhould come intire into the hands of the Enemy. Some place this Promontory in *Ætolia* alſo; but following the authority of *Ptolomy*, I have placed it here. 8. *Naupactus*, ſo called from the building of ſhips there by the *Heraclydæ*; ſituate on the *Corinthian* Bay near the mouth thereof. Given by the Citizens of *Athens* to the poor *Meſſenians*, when after the end of the third war, the *Lacademonians* unwilling to have them troubleſom neighbours (and they ſcorning to be quiet ſlaves) compelled them to ſeek new habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the *Golf* of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by that name ſubject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1499. of theſe *Locrians*, thoſe of *Italy* were a branch or Colony, whoſe Law-giver was *Zaleucus*, ſpoken of elſewhere.

6. *DORIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phocis*; on the Weſt, with *Ætolia*; on the North, with the hill *Oeta*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Theſſaly*; and on the South, with *Ætolia*, and part of *Locris*. The air hereof is very healthy, and the ſoil ſufficiently fruitful if well manured, but now the greateſt part lyeth waſt for want of tillage. Firſt peopled by the *Dores* or *Dorienſes*, deſcended from *Dorus*, the ſon of *Hellen*, and grandchild of *Deucalion*; by whom placed in *Theſſaly*; afterwards ſpreading into this Country, which they left their name to, as their proper dwelling: though many of them following the *Heraclidæ* into *Peloponneſus*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the greateſt part of *Laconia* alſo: imprinting on the ſame their *Dialect* or form of ſpeech, from them called the *Dorick*.

Chief Cities hereof are 1. *Doris*, ſo called in memory of *Dorus*, the firſt Progenitour of this People. 2. *Erineus*, ſeated on the foot of *Parnaſſus* mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Ptolomy*, and the reſt of the antients. 3. *Bium*, as *Ptolomy*; or *Bojon*, as *Strabo* and *Pliny* call it. 4. *Cytinum*, near *Parnaſſus* alſo, in the common impreſſions of *Diodorus Siculus* the Hiſtorian, falſly called *Cynthinium*. 5. *Lilæa*, ſituate not far from the ſpring or Fountain of the River *Cephiſus*; which riſing hereabouts paſſeth thorow the whole length of *Achaia*, and falls into the *Ægean* or *Eubœan* Sea.

7. *ÆTOLIA* hath on the Eaſt, *Locris*; on the Weſt, *Epirus*; on the North, *Doris*; on the South, the *Jonian* Sea. Said to be ſo called from *Ætolus*, the ſon of *Mars*, who being by *Salomoneus* caſt out of *Elis*, fixed himſelf in this Country.

Here is the Foreſt of *Calydon*, where *Meleager* and the flower of the *Greek* Nobility, ſlew the wild Bore. Here is the River *Evenus*, over which the Centaure *Neſſus* having carried *Dejanira* wife of *Hercules*; and intending to have raviſhed her, was ſlain by an Arrow which *Hercules* on the other ſide of the River ſhot at him. Here alſo is the River *Achelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things, as that being rival with *Hercules* in the love of *Dejanira*, he encountered him in the ſhape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules*, had pluck'd off one of his horns, the *Nymphs* made it of their ſo much celebrated *cornucopia*.

The people of this Country were the moſt turbulent, and unruly people of all *Greece*, never at peace with their neighbours, and ſeldom with themſelves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reaſon of the craggineſſe of this Country: yet they brought them to ſuch terms, that they were compelled to let the *Romanr* into *Greece*, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were 1. *Chalcis*, ſituate near the ſpring-head of *Achebus* before mentioned.

Achaia.

ned, 2. *Arachthus*, near the river ſo called; which ariſing hereabouts paſſeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3. *Olenus*, not far from the Foreſt of *Calydon*. 4. *Pleurona*, giving name to the adjoining Country, called hence *Pleurona*, the people whereof had the name of *Curetes* ἀπὸ τῆς κειρᾶς, from their ſhaving; it being their cuſtom to ſhave the fore-parts of their heads, and let the hair grow on the hinder parts only; *ne hoſtes eos cæſarie apprehenderent*; becauſe their enemies ſhould not lay hold on them by the fore-tops, and ſo pull them down. 4 *Thermus*, the Parliament City, or place of general Aſſembly, for all the States of *Ætolia*, which meeting was called *Panatolium*; choſen for thoſe meetings, in regard of the ſituation and ſtrength thereof; as ſituate well-near in the midſt of the Country environed with rocky of mountains, of ſteep and difficult aſcent. For that cauſe made alſo the receptacle of their wealth, and treaſure, in all times of danger; but taken by the laſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, with all the ſpoil in it, in his war againſt them. 6. *Calydon*, near the Foreſt ſo called, giving name unto it: the royal ſeat of *Oenaus*, father of *Meleager*; divided into two parts by the River *Evenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*,

Et Meleagream, *maculatus ſanguine* Neſſi
Evenus, Calydona *ſecat*.

That is to ſay:

Calydon, *Meleagers* Town, the flood
Even divides, defil'd with *Neſſus* blood.

Adjoining hereunto with the *Athamanes*, whom *Pliny* makes a people of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Athemania*; but ſuch (as little as it was) as gave it the title of a Kingdom to *Animander*: a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made ſpecial uſe of in their wars againſt *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the father of *Perſeus*, ſuggeſting to him and his children, that they were deſcended of the houſe of *Alexander* the great, and ſo engaging them in a hope of that Kingdom to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of moſt note are 1. *Dium*. 2. *Athanaum*, both took by *Philip* in that war.

Theſe, as they were the laſt Actors on the ſtage of *Achaia*, ſo had they the moſt deſperate part in all the tragœdie of that Countrey. The affairs whereof, governed ſucceſſively by that State which was the moſt powerfull, were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*: whoſe Counſels and concluſions went for law amongſt them. But that *Eſtate* being broken, if not ſubverted by the power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Bœotians*, who came next in play, had the chief command; uniting almoſt all the reſt in deſign with them againſt the *Spartans*, who now grow terrible to all. Becoming inſolent by the courſe of too much proſperity, and the many great victories which they had againſt the *Spartans*; and thereupon quarrelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cauſe of *Philips* coming into *Greece*; who as he had learned amongſt them the uſe of arms, ſo made he uſe thereof at laſt, and of their diſſentions, to unite all the States of *Greece* under his command: *Thebes* it ſelf being took and ſacked by *Alexander*, the ſon of *Philip*, as before is ſaid. The *Macedonians* thus prevailng, partly by force, but ſpecially by Art and practice, there was no people in *Achaia* that durſt oppoſe them; till theſe *Ætolians*, a reſtleſſe, and impatient people took the cauſe in hand. Who thrived ſo well under *Antigonus*, and *Philip*, two of the laſt Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many Towns, invaded *Theſſaly*, attempted *Macedon* it ſelf; and when they could not otherwiſe obtain their purpoſe, in the deſtruction of that kingdom, opened a paſſage for the *Romans* to effect it for them. But finding no ſuch favour at the *Romans* hand as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* againſt them, drawing thereby thoſe forces againſt themſelves, which they had invited into *Greece*: and were the firſt people of all the *Grecians* that were conquered by them; though by the mediation of the *Rhodians* and ſome other friends, their Country was reſtored unto them, with the loſſe only of *Cephalenia*, *Zant*, and ſome other Ilands, which the *Romans* were reſolved to keep as the fruits of the war. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then *Conſul*, and chief Commander in this war. After which time the ſeveral *Eſtates* hereof enjoyed ſo much liberty, as the *Romans* their new *Maſters* thought fit to give them: till finally made abſolutely ſubject in the time of *Veſpaſian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province; *Peloponneſus* being reckoned as a part thereof, in the diviſion of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, the Weſt parts hereof being divided from the reſt, was called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Province of the *Dioceſe* and *Macedon*, under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; The principal Officer of this part being called the *Proconſul* of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his ſucceſſors, Emperours of *Conſtantinople*, till the deſtruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*. But ſo that it remained not alwayes under the command of one ſole Officer, the *polity* of that State being altered, and this Countrey parcelled out into many Governments: eſpecially after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, or Weſtern *Chriſtians*. At what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a noble *Grecian*, and one of the (then) *imperial* family, ſeiſed on *Ætolia*, and *Epirus*, part of which laſt, and all the firſt he left to *Michael* his ſon: who held them, though with ſome diſpute betwixt him and *Michael Palaologus*, the firſt Emperour of *Conſtantinople*, after the expulſion of the *Latins*; *Charls* the laſt Prince of that Family dying withot iſſue, about the year 1430. bequeathed *Ætolia* to another *Charles*, the ſon of his brother; and *Acarnania* (being that part of *Epirus*, which the Princes of *Ætolia* held) to his baſe ſons, *Memnon*, *Turnus*, and *Hercules*. But many quarrels happening upon this diviſion, *Epirus.*

ſion, *Amurath* the ſecond having then newly conquered *Theſſalonica*, compoſed the differences, by taking all unto himſelf, *Anno* 1432. There were at that time other Princes of like authority, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Bœotia*, but the firſt the chiefeſt: as honoured not only with the title of Dukes of *Athens*, but the Princes of *Achaia* alſo; ſuch being the fortune of that City, as to have the firſt and laſt great ſway in the affairs of *Achaia*. For the tranſlation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey* of *Troyes*, a *Frenchman*, was made Duke of *Athens*, and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Æmilius* ſpeaketh, Anno 1220. which honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter di Brenne*, a kinſman of *John di Brenne*, the laſt King of *Jeruſalem*, Protector of *Baldwin* the ſecond, the laſt Emperour of the *Latines*, mentioned by the ſaid *Æmilius*, Anno 1288. And though on the defeat and death of this *Walter* by the *Catalonians* then ranſacking thoſe parts of *Greece*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* was aſſumed by *Fredrick Alfonſo*, the ſon of *Fredrick* King of *Sicil*, and by other Princes of that houſe: yet upon better grounds by the heir general of this *Walter* it was conveyed in marriage to *Izaulus di Accio*, a noble man of the Realm of *Naples*; whoſe ſon *Walter* for a time obtained the ſoveraignty of the State of *Florence*, *Anno* 1342. but loſt it ſuddenly again by his too much cruelty. *Francis de Acciavol*, the laſt Prince of this houſe, having been brought up in the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his *Favourites*; ſurrendred his eſtate herein, at the perſwaſion of that *Tyrant*, in change for the Countrey of *Bœtica*, and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he no ſooner had received, but he was ſent by *Mahomet* to *Zoganus* his Lieutenant in *Morea*, by whom at firſt courteouſly received, at laſt cruelly murdered. And ſo the whole Countrey of *Achaia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1454 or thereabouts.

EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Ætolia*; on the Weſt, with the *Adriatick*; on the North, with *Theſſaly*, *Macedon*, and ſome part of *Albania*; and on the South, with the *Jonian* Seas. So called from the ſolidity and firmneſs of it; the word *Epiros* in the Greek tongue, ſignifying as much as *terra firma*, or the firm land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, which name they give to all the lands and Countries in their poſſeſſion, lying upon the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Countrey was born *Olympias*, mother of *Alexander* the Great: and *Pyrrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the firſt foreiner, who made tryal (though to his own loſs) of the power and puiſſance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal*, next to *Alexander*, the ſecond great ſouldier of the world. Here is alſo Mount *Pindus*, ſacred to *Apollo* and the *Muſes*, dividing this Countrey from *Theſſaly*, and therefore common unto both: as alſo the *Acroceraunan* hills, ſo called, becauſe they are ſo much ſubject unto thunder and lightning, eminent for their height, and much feared by Mariners: who when they ſee a little cloud riſing on the top hereof, are ſure of a tempeſt. Finally, here are the famous Rivers *Acheron*, and *Cocytus*, which for their *Black-waters*, and unſavoury taſte, are ſaid to be the Rivers of Hell: from which laſt the ſacrifices and ſolemnities made in honour of *Proſerpine*, whom *Pluto* raviſhed and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Whence by a *Metonymie*, theſe Rivers are taken ſometimes, for hell it ſelf, as in that of the Poet;

Flectere ſi nequeo ſueperos, Acheronta *movebo.*

Since thoſe in *Heaven* I cannot move;
The power of *Hell* I mean to prove.

The ſoil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of *Foreſts*, and thin of people: but towards the Sea ſide reaſonably fruitfull: plentifull of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep, of more than ordinary bigneſs, and yielding the beſt breed of Horſes. The people uſe a diſtinct language from the *Grecians*, though of the *Greek* tongue not utterly ignorant: and by reaſon of the barreneſs of their own Countrey, become great wanderers, eſpecially in ſummer time; when they travel into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, and *Aſia minor*, hiring themſelves to work in harveſt under the *Turks*, as alſo to threſh, winnow and make clean their corn; and in the winter times, return to their wives and children. Able of body, ſwift of foot, apt to undergo any toyl and labour; having withall good courages, and high projections: which makes ſuch of them as delight not in works of drudgery, to look for action in the war; and otherwiſe to rob and ſpoil in the neighbouring Mountains of *Albania*. Till their ſubjections to the *Turks* much uſed both by the Kings of *Hungary*, and the State of *Venice*, in their ſeveral wars; ſerving of Horſe, or Foot, as occaſion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Weſtern parts, but not ſo faithleſs to the party by whom entertained.

Antiently it was divided into *Chaonia*, (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the Weſt; and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which parted by the River *Achelous*; the middle parts hereon being *Amphilochia*, *Theſprotia*, and *Almene*, all very populous in old times, and ſo continued till *Paulus Æmilius*, on the conqueſt of *Macedon*, overthrew 70 of their Cities. Few of which being ſince re-edified, and the Countrey for a long time languiſhing under the *Turks*, here are not any fair Towns, or well-peopled Cities, at the preſent to be ſpoken of; and therefore we muſt look on ſuch as flouriſhed in the times foregoing. The principal whereof, 1. *Dodona*, one of the Cities of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and *Oracle* of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonaus*; ſituate in a fair Grove, the trees whereof were ſaid to be *Vocal*, and to give the *Oracle*; though others ſay, it was de-

Epirus.

delivered firſt by a pair of *Pigeons*, whereof the one afterwards fled to *Delphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Ægypt*. It was the antienteſt *Oracle* of all *Greece*; and ſo perhaps was the Town alſo. Said to be firſt built by *Dodone*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Europa*: more probably ſo called from *Dodonim*, the ſon of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who firſt inhabited this Region; the whole Countrey (*Greece* I mean) being called *Javan* from the Father (by which name commonly it occurreth in the *Hebrew* text,) this Town *Dodona* from the Son. 2. *Caſſiope*, a Port Town, with a fair *Promontory* of the ſame name adjoyning to it. 3. *Oncheſimus*, by *Strabo* called *Orchimus*, and by *Pliny Echinus*, a Port Town alſo, now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4. *Panormus*, on the Sea ſide alſo, retaining ſtill the old name, and but little elſe. 5. *Antigonia*, more within the land, founded or repaired by *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, now called *Argiro Caſtro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6. *Phœnice*, once the chief Town hereof; which being ſacked by the *Illyrians* under *Teuta* their Queen, gave the *Romans* an occaſion of quarrel with them, upon complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7. *Pelodes*, a Port Town, the principal in that part which was called *Theſprotia*; as 8. *Torona*, on the River *Thyamis*, and 9. *Sybora*, an antient Haven Town (now called *Syoita*) was in that part hereof which was called *Almene*. 10. *Argos*, the chief City of the *Amphilochians*. This part hereof was firſt named *Moloſſia*, from *Moloſſus*, the ſon of *Pyrrhus* and *Andromache*, remarkable for the beſt breed of Maſtives, hence called *Moloſſi*: and afterward *Chaonia*, by *Helenus* the ſon of *Priamus*, whom *Pyrrhus* the ſon of *Achilles* ſetled in this Country; who having unfortunately ſlain his brother *Chaon*, cauſed it in memory of him to be called *Chaonia*; *Chaeniamque omnem* Trojano à Chaone *dixit*, as it is in *Virgil*. Of theſe *Moloſſians*, *Pluto* the third ſon of *Saturn* was ſometimes King, called from the flat and hollow ſituation of this Countrey, conſiſting much of deep valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of eſpecial note in *Acarnania*. 1. *Anactorium*, on the bay of *Ambracia*, now called *Vanizza*. 2. *Ambracia*, the Regal Seat or Court of *Pyrrhus*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoyning Town, ſituate in or near the place where *Ambracia* ſtood. Once ſubject unto *Periander*, King or *Tyrant* of *Corinth*, who being ſlain by a woman named *Lionna*, whom he kept as his *Concubine*; occaſioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their deliverance, to worſhip a *Lion*. Afterwards being taken from the children of *Pyrrhus* by the *Macedonians*, and from them won by the *Ætolians* in the time of their greatneſſe; it was beſieged by *Fulvius*, a *Roman* Conſul ſpoken of before. Who ſeeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodians*, and other friends of both parties, to conclude a peace; but ſo that he deſpoiled this City at his going hence, of much excellent *Imagery*; carrying away with him unto *Rome*, the Pictures of the nine Muſes, moſt admirably well done by the hand of *Zeuxis*, the rareſt Painter of his times, 3. *Buthrotum*, a *Roman* Colony, by *Pliny* called *Colonia* ſimply; now a ſmall Village called *Butrinte*. 4. *Leucas*, ſituate on the point of a *Promontory* of the ſame name alſo, antiently memorable for the Temple of *Apollo*; from the top of which *Promontory*, by leaping into the Sea, ſuch as unfortunately loved were cured of that melady; the firſt tryal of that kind being made by *Sappho* that famous *Poeteſſe*. At that time joyned unto the ſand, but ſince by the violence of the Sea, or the hand of man, made into an Iland; according unto that of *Ovid*,

Leucada *continuam veteres habuere Coloni*,
Nunc *Freta circumeunt*; ——

That is to ſay:

Leucas in former times joyn'd to the land,
Environ'd round with waters now doth ſtand.

It was called *Leucas*; from the whiteneſs of the Rock or *Promontory*, having before the ſeparation or disjunction of it been called *Neritos*; the chief Town of it varying with the name of the Iſle and Promontory: both Town and Iland at this time called S. *Maure*, taken by *Bajazet* the ſecond, from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Jews*, (who do ſtill inhabit it) at their expulſion out of *Spain*. 5. *Nicopolis*, a Colony of the *Romans*, of both great wealth and beauty in the time of S. *Paul*, who from hence dated his Epiſtle to *Titus*: called in that Poſtſcript, *Nicopolis* of *Macedonia*, becauſe *Epirus* at that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a diſtinct Province of it ſelf. It was firſt built by *Auguſtus Caſar*, on a Promontory oppoſite unto *Actium*, on the other ſide of the Bay: that being the place, where his Land-ſouldiers were incamped before the Naval battle betwixt him and *Mark Antony*: and was thus called, either in memory of his victory, or from a poor man and his Aſſe, whom he met there the day before. For asking the mans name, he told him that his name was *Eutyches*, *i. e.* Fortunate; and that the name of his Aſſe was *Nicon*; *i. e.* Conquerour; which happy omen made his ſouldiers couragious, and hopefull of victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the Aſſe, the other of his Maſter. It is now a ſmall village called *Preveſa*.

6. *Actium*, on the Sea ſhore, nigh unto which *Auguſtus* and *Antony* fought for the Empire of the world. The Navy of the latter conſiſted of 500 Galleys; the former had 250 only, but thoſe crowned with victory: *Antonius* ſhamefully deſerting his ſouldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*, who on the very firſt charge fled away for *Ægypt*. The Town now ruined, the *Promontory* upon which it ſtood called *Cabbo di Figula*.

The

Albania.

The Countrey was firſt peopled by *Dodonim* the ſon of *Javan*, or at leaſt by ſome of his poſterity, coming hither from the Iſle of *Rhodes*, whoſe memory was preſerved a long time in the Town of *Dodona*, by him, or from him ſo denominated. Afterwards being parted into ſeveral Nations, and thoſe Nations united in the common name of *Epirots*, it became a great and powerfull Kingdome: governed by a race of Kings deſcending from P*yrrbus* the ſon of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time of P*yrrbus* the ſon of *Æacides*. A man of ſuch courage and magnanimity, that he did not only recover his own Kingdom, of which *Caſſander* had deprived his Father; but got the Kingdome of *Macedon* from C*aſſanders* Children: outed of which, he tryed his fortunes with the *Romans*, Anno Mundi 3683. V. C. 471. After his death this Kingdom was ſhrewdly ſhaken by the *Macedonians*, and ſhortly after ſubdued by P*aulus Æmilius*, who as we now ſaid, deſtroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For, deſirous to ſatisfie his ſouldiers after his victory in *Macedon*, he ſent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principal men of every City. Theſe he commanded to deliver up all the gold and ſilver which they had; and to that end, as he gave out, he ſent certain companies of ſouldiers along with them; unto whom he gave ſecret inſtructions, that on a day by him appointed, they ſhould fall to ſack every one the Town, whereunto they were ſent. A barbarous and bloody decree, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer than 150000 *Epirots* made and ſold for ſlaves. But the chief motive which induced him to ſo great a cruelty, was by diſpeopling this Countrey, lying with a long and fair Sea-coſt over againſt *Italy*; to give the *Romans* opportunity to land their Army without any reſiſtance, for the further progreſs of their Forces into *Macedon*, *Thrace*, *Mœſia*, or where elſe they pleaſed. Which ungodly policy was afterwards imitated by *William* the *Conquerour*, who laid waſt all that part of *Hampſhire*, ſince called *New Foreſt*, and therein 36 Pariſh Churches: that he might have a ſafe landing place for his *Norman* Forces, if the *Engliſh* ſhould at any time endeavour to make head againſt him. Being made ſubject to the *Romans*, it was a while part of the Province of *Macedonia*; but afterwards when *Macedonia* was made a *Dioceſe*, it became a diſtinct Province of it ſelf; called by the name of *Old Epirus*, to difference it from the Province of *New Epirus*, which lay Eaſtward of it. At the diviſion of the Empire it belonged to the *Conſtantinopolitans*; and ſo continued till the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Weſtern Chriſtians*: at what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a Prince of the *Imperial* Family, ſeiſed on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, as before is ſaid; and ſped ſo well in his deſigns that he took the ſtrong City of *Durazzo* from the State of *Venice*, (to whom it fell in the diviſion of that ſpoil) and cunningly (if not treacherouſly) intercepted Peter the third Emperour of the *Latines*, whom, as ſome ſay, he cauſed to be murthered at a banquet. After his death, his whole eſtate being divided into two parts; *Ætolia*, with the part hereof which is called *Chaonia*, continued in his houſe till the time of *Charles* Prince of *Ætolia* and *Epirus* ſpoken of before, after whoſe death it was ſubdued by *Amurath* the ſecond, as before was ſaid. The reſidue hereof, together with that part of *Macedon* which is called A*lbania*, fell to the Family of the *Caſtriots*: the laſt of which named *John* (the Father of *Scanderbeg*) ſeeing himſelf unable to reſiſt that Tyrant, who had already ſwallowed up all his neighbour Princes; ſubmitted his eſtate unto him, and gave unto him all his ſons for hoſtages. No ſooner was the old Prince dead, but A*murath* ſeiſed on his Eſtate, murdered the three eldeſt ſons; and cauſed *George* the youngeſt, to be trained up in the Law of *Mahomet*: who afterwards eſcaping out of his power, and recovering all his Fathers Countries, aſſumed alſo the ſtile or title of Prince of *Epirus*. After whoſe death, his children not being able to make good their game, loſt it to *Mahomet* the *Great*; as ſhall be ſhewn more fully in the ſtory and deſcription of *Albania*, which is next to follow.

ALBANIA,

ALBANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Macedonia*; on the Weſt, with the A*driatick*; on the North, with *Sclavonia*; on the South, with *Epirus*. The Country mountainous and barren; watred with few Rivers, and thoſe of no great note amongſt the Antients, as 1. *Laus*, 2. A*pſus*, 3. P*aniaſus*, 4. *Celidnus*; all of them falling into the A*driatick*.

It took this name from A*lbani*, once the Inhabitants of this tract; from whom the chief City hereof was called A*lbanopolis*. Other Towns of moſt conſideration are, 1. *Stetigrade*, or *Veſtigard* called by ſome the *Holy City*) ſituate in the borders of *Epirus*, on the top of an hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagles neſt: one of the laſt Towns in all this Countrey which was taken by *Scanderbeg*, at his recovery of his birthright and eſtate herein; but being once taken by him held good couragiouſly againſt the *Turk*, the ſouldiers never fainting in their oppoſitions, nor corrupted by money. There was in the Town one only Well, into which a treacherous *Chriſtian* caſt a dead dog; at the ſight of which, being the next day drawn up, the ſouldiers gave up the Town: being ſo unſeaſonably *ſuperſtitious*; that no perſwaſion, nor the example of the Captain, or the *Burgomaſters*, could make them drink thoſe (as they thought) defiled waters. 3. *Durazzo*, a Town of great ſtrength, firſt called *Epidamnum*, and afterwards *Dyrrhachium*. Under the walls of which Town, was the firſt bickering between the ſouldiers of *Ceſar*, and *Pompey*, not only to the preſent loſs, but alſo the utter diſcomfiture of *Ceſar*, as he himſelf confeſſed, if the enemies Captain had known how to have overcome, I muſt not omit the valour of *Scava* at this ſiege, who alone ſo long reſiſted *Pompeys* Army, that he had 220 darts ſticking in his ſhield, and loſt one of his eyes, and yet gave not over till *Ceſar* came to his reſcue.

Parque novum fortuna videt concurrere, bellum
Atque virum ——— denſamque ferens in pectore ſylvam.

Fortune beholds an unaccuſtomed ſight,
An *Army* and a *man* together fight,
Whoſe breſt a wood of Arrows covered quite.

In the diviſion of the *Eaſtern* Empire amongſt the *Latines*, it fell into the power of *Venice*; taken at laſt after a long and tedious ſiege, by *Amurath* the ſecond, *Anno* 1474. 4. *Dibra*, in the hill Countries, near *Epirus*: the firſt Town which ſubmitted to the valiant *Scanderbeg*, at his revolting from the *Turks*; ſuppoſed to be the *Deborus* of *Ptolomy*. 5. *Croia*, conceived to be the *Epicaria* of *Ptolomy*, the chief Town of all this Countrey, ſeated amongſt inacceſſible mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by *Scanderbeg*, but by wile: who having got in his power the Secretary of the principal *Baſſa*, forced him to write letters in his maſters name unto the Governour hereof to deliver it unto him; which was done accordingly. Afterwards in vain beſieged by *Amurath* the ſecond, who under the walls hereof gave up his wretched ſoul to the Devil; and thrice beſieged by *Mahomet* his ſon and ſucceſſor, before he could again poſſeſs it: but taken at the laſt after *Scanderbegs* death, as if the *Genius* or tutelar Deity of the place had departed with him. 6. *Petrella*, a Town of great ſtrength, ſeated on the top of an hill (as almoſt all the Towns of *Albania* are) about 20 miles from *Croia*; delivered unto *Scanderbeg* at his firſt ſitting down before it: as alſo was 7. *Petra Alba*, three miles from *Petrella*, near the borders of *Macedon*, and ſituate like the other on the top of a mountain; the River *Emathus* running under the bottom of it. 8. *Stelluſa*, fifty miles from *Croia*, built on the top of an high hill in the middle of a pleaſant and fruitfull valley, with great and ſpacious plains about it. 9. *Dagna* or *Dayna*, a place of great importance in the hill Countrey towards *Sclavonia*; for the poſſeſſion whereof aroſe a war againſt *Scanderbeg*, and the State of *Venice*: but the *Venetians* being worſted at the battle of *Drino*, relinquiſhed their pretenſion to it. 10. *Aulon*, a Port-Town, now called *Vallona*, ſituate over againſt *Hydruntum* or *Otranto* in *Italy*, from which diſtant about 60 miles. The Town unwalled, but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle. A Town unfortunately fit for the invaſion of *Italy*, and was accordingly made uſe of by *Achmetes* the chief *Baſſa* under *Mahomet the Great*, who from hence paſſed his Army over into *Apulia*, took the Town of *Otranto*, and had not the death of *Mahomet*, and the combuſtions thereon following amongſt the *Turks*, altered the deſign, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of *Rome* unto *Conſtantinople*. 11. *Apollonia*, a Town of great note in the time of the *Romans*. A Sea-Town furniſhed with a commodious Haven, which they held at their entrance into *Greece*; to that purpoſe ſerving them as commodiouſly, as *Calice* did the *Engliſh* in their war with *France*.

This Countrey antiently was a part of *Macedon*, inhabited by the *Talautii*, *Æſtrai*, and *Albani*, from which laſt (but not till theſe latter times) it had the name of *Albania*: but whether theſe *Albani*, were a Colony of the *Albanians* of *Aſia*, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When made a Province of the Empire, it contained all *Prevalitana*, and ſome part of *Macedonia Salutaris*; under the Dioceſe of *Dacia*, in the time of *Juſtinian*, but at firſt of *Macedon*. Diſmembred from the main body of it, when the *Latines* had ſubdued *Conſtantinople*, it fell unto the Noble family of the *Caſtriotes*: who though they took unto themſelves the title of Kings or Princes of *Epirus*, (moſt of which they held) as the Country of more note and eminence: yet was *Albania* the greateſt ſtrength, and *Croia* the chief City thereof, the ſeat of their reſidence: called in that reſpect by ſome writers, the Kings of *Albania*. *John Caſtriot*, the Father of *Scanderbeg*, ſeeing himſelf unable to reſiſt the *Turks*, became their *Homager*, and delivered four ſons for *Hoſtages*; whom *Amurath* the ſecond, in their Fathers life-time, cauſed to be circumciſed, and turn *Mahometans*: and after his deceaſe murdered the three eldeſt, and ſeiſed upon *Croia* the chief City, with the reſt of the Countrey. But *George*, the youngeſt of thoſe ſons, being reſerved for better fortunes, was carefully brought up by *Amurath*, (who ſomewhat paſſionately loved him) in the Arts of war, though ſome of his Courtiers then told him, that he nouriſhed a *Serpent in his boſom, which would one day ſting him*. *Amurath*, to make trial of his diſpoſition, offered him on a time the Crown of *Albania*: to which he prudently replyed, that he *preferred the honour of his ſervice before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a ſword, than his head for a Crown*. Satisfied with which anſwer, the *Tyrant* preferred him to the place of a *Sanziack* or *Provincial Governor*: and gave him ſome Office of Command in all thoſe Armies, which he ſet out againſt the *Chriſtians*. Eſcaping out of the battle, wherein *Caramben* the great *Baſſa* was overthrown and taken Priſoner by *Huniades*; he got the Town of *Croia* by a piece of wit, as before was ſaid: and in a very ſhort time after, made himſelf Maſter of *Petrella*, *Petra Alba*, *Stelluſa*, and all the reſt of the Countrey, by the reputation and terrour of his ſucceſs. Having recovered his inheritance out of the hands of the *Turks*, he reconciled himſelf to the *Church* of *Chriſt*: ſtyling himſelf the *Souldier* of *CHRIST JESUS*, from that time forwards. Invaded by a vaſt Army of the *Turks*, he overcometh *Alis Baſſa*, and kills 20000 of his men. With no more than 20 horſe and 50 foot, he aſſaulteth *Muſtapha* in his Camp; in which 5000 *Turks* were ſlain, and 300 taken: with whom encountring not long after in the open field, he ſlew 10000 of his men, took many priſoners, and *Muſtapha* himſelf for one, whom he ranſomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the hoſt of *Amurath*, then beſieging *Croia*, he killed *Feriſſes Baſſa*, hand to hand in a ſingle combat: and in the time of *Mahomet* who ſucceeded *Amurath*, vanquiſhed *Iſaac* the great *Baſſa*, routed his whole Army, had

Theſſaly.

the ſpoil of his Camp, took 20 of his faireſt Enſigns, and ſlew 30000 of his Souldiers. Not to inſtance in the reſt of his noble Actions, it is reported, that in the courſe of his war againſt the *Turks*, he killed no fewer than 3000 of them with his own hands: uſing a *Turkiſh Scymitar* in all his fights, of great weight and bigneſſe. Which when *Mahomet* on a peace between them had deſired to ſee, and afterwards returned again with this cenſure of it, that he *ſaw nothing in it more than ordinary*: the gallant Prince ſent back this anſwer, that the *vertue of the weapon dependeth on the ſtrength of his Arm, which he could not ſend him, for that he did reſerve it for the death of his Enemies*. Finally, having held his Guards againſt *Amurath* and *Mahomet*, two moſt fortunate *Gameſters*, for the ſpace of 24 years; he ſet up his reſt at laſt a winner: dying in peace at *Lyſſa*, then belonging to the State of *Venice*, *Jan.* 17. *An.* 1466. and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the *Turks* about nine years after, his body was digged up by them, not in ſpight, but honour: that man accompting himſelf happy who could get any of his bones, to preſerve as a relick; ſuppoſing that as long as he had it about him, he ſhould be invincible. But with him died the liberty of his Countrey alſo, not long after ſubdued by the *Turks*, and made a Province of that Empire, as it ſtill continueth: the name of *Albania* being by them extended over all *Epirus*, and ſo much of *Dalmatia* alſo as is under their power.

The Arms of this Kingdom (or rather of the Kings thereof) were *Gules*, an Eagle *Sable*.

5. MACEDONIA.

MACEDONIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Albania*, on the North, with *Mæſia Superior*, and a part of *Thrace*; and on the South, with *Epirus*, and *Achaia*.

It was firſt called *Æmonia* from Mount *Hæmus*, which ſhutteth up that ſide hereof which is towards *Mœſia*; after *Æmathia*, from a King of it called *Æmathius*; *Macedonia*, from *Macedo*, the Son of *Deucalion*, and the father of *Caranaus*, the firſt King of the line of *Alexander*: and finally *Kittim* or the Land of *Kethim*, whereof ſee *Maccab. c.* 1. *v.* 1. & *cap.* 8. *v.* 5. from *Kittim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who was planted here. Antiently of more large extent than it is at the preſent; extending from the *Ægean* Sea unto the *Adriatick*, till the taking of *Albania* out of it, which hath ſtreightned it upon that ſide, but the reſt as formerly.

The Countrey, taking it together, is very fruitfull and pleaſant, though on the outward parts thereof begirt with rough mountains and thick foreſts: in former times much celebrated for its *mines* of gold and ſilver, yet long ſince exhauſted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Æmathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelaſgia*, *Eſtiotis*, *Phiniotis*, *Theſſaly*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Paraxia*, *Edonis*, and many others of leſſe note; inhabited by 152 ſeveral Nations: now principally divided (beſides *Albania*) into 1. *Theſſaly*. 2. *Macedon* ſpecially ſo called, and 3. *Mygdonia*, which the *Turks* call *Jamboli*.

1. *THESSALY* hath on the Eaſt, the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt, *Albania*; on the North, *Macedon*, and *Mygdonia*; on the South, *Achaia*. A ſweet and delectable Country, the pleaſures and delights whereof inclined the people to be very effeminate, and diſſolute in their courſe of life: in love with luxury and eaſe, and much like the *Perſians* in behaviour; whoſe entrance into *Greece* they did therefore favour. Yet notwithſtanding this debauchedneſſe, they were eſteemed the beſt Horſemen of all the *Grecians*: by their excellent managing of which creature (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horſe their minds, or borrowed his body) they gave occaſion unto the fiction of the *Centaurs*; half men, half beaſts.

It is now called *Comenolitati*, and of old was very famous for many things, eſpecially for the Hill *Olympus*; of ſo great height, that it ſeemeth to tranſcend the clouds: and therefore frequently by the Poets took for Heaven it ſef. Secondly, For the Hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapithæ*, over whom *Pirithous* was King. Thirdly, For the Mountains of *Pelion* and *Oſſa*, the dwelling places of the *Centaures*, who intending to raviſh *Hippodame* the Bride of *Pirithous*, on her wedding day, were ſlain by *Hercules* and the *Lapithæ*. Fourthly, For the delectable Valley of *Tempe*, ſituate betwixt *Oſſa* and *Olympus*; extending in length ſix miles, and five in breadth: ſo beautified with Natures gifts, that it was ſuppoſed to be the Garden of the Muſes. Fifthly, and laſtly, For the *Dolopes*, and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had command at the ſiege of *Troy*: theſe laſt, by reaſon that they were a laborious and thrifty people, being fabled by the Poets to have firſt been *Emmets* transformed into men at the prayers of *Æacus*, when he wanted Souldiers.

——Mores quos ante tenebant,
Nunc quoque habent, parcumque genus eſt, patienſque laborum,
Quæſitique tenax, & quod quæſita reſervet.

The cuſtome they of *Emmets* ſtill retain,
A ſparing Folk, and unto Labour ſet;
Strangely addicted to all kind of gain,
And wary Keepers of what ere they get.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Tricca*, the Epiſcopal See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious piece, called the *Æthiopick* Hiſtory; which he ſo prized, that he choſe rather to loſe his Biſhoprick, than conſent to the burning his Book, which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A piece indeed of rare contexture, and neat contrivance, without any touch

of

Theſſaly. of looſe or laſcivious language: honeſt and chaſt affection being the ſubject of it, not ſuch as old or modern Poets ſhew us in their Comedies, or other Poems. For here we have no inceſtuous mixture of Fathers, and daughters; no *Pandariſm* of old Nurſes; no unſeemly action ſpecified, where heat of blood and opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one paſſage unworthy of the chaſteſt Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athenians* after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their freedoms, beſieged *Antipater*, which was the laſt honourable enterpriſe, undertaken by that great and renowned City; known in old Hiſtories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3. *Lariſſa*, ſituate on the South of *Demetrias* but on the Bay; memorable for the birth of *Achilles*, from whence called frequently in the Poets *Lariſſaus Achilles*, his birth aſcribed by others to the Town of *Phthia* (from whence the Region called *Phthiatis* takes the nomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account, and poſſibly being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his birth; and the other of his Habitation. 4. *Demetrias*, ſituate on the Bay, called *Sinus Pelaſgicus*, now the *Golf of Armenia*) of very great ſtrength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the Iſle of *Enbœa*, and the City of *Corinth*; kept all *Greece* in awe, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters* of *Greece*: the *Grecians* never thinking themſelves at liberty, till thoſe Towns were diſmantled by the *Romans*. 5. *Pharſalis*, nigh to which was fought the great battel betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, for the Soveraignty of the *Roman* Empire: a battel more famous than bloody; 6000 only of 300000, which were in the fields on both ſides, being therein ſlain. A battel before which the *Pompeians* were in ſuch a miſerable ſecurity, that ſome of them contended for the Prieſthood, which was *Cæſars* Office; others diſpoſed of the *Conſulſhip*, and preferments in the City of *Rome*: *Pompey* himſelf being ſo wretchleſſe, that he neither conſidered into what place it were beſt to flie, if he loſt the day; or by what means he might provide for his own ſafety, and end the war. As if the war had been made againſt ſome ignoble Enemy, and not againſt that *Cæſar*; who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took priſoners one million of men, and ſlain as many. 6. *Philippi*, ſo named from *Philip* the *Macedonian*, the firſt founder of it; ſituate in the further part of the ſame plains of *Pharſalia*, and famous for as memorable a battel as that before, and of no leſſe conſequence: that namely, betwixt *Auguſtus* and *M. Antonius* on the one ſide; againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius* on the other; theſe later being rather overcome by chance, than valour. For either of them thinking the other vanquiſhed, ſlew himſelf in the field: being the two laſt that ever openly ſtood out for the common Liberty, and therefore called by *Cremutius Cordus*, *Ultimi Romanorum* or the laſt of the true *Roman* Spirits. 7. *Gomphy*, an antient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Phere*, in which City *Alexander* the *Tyrant* reigned, againſt whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting, was ſlain in battel: the *Tyrant* being not long after murdered by his wives brother, and by that means all *Theſſaly* recovering liberty. 9. *Pegaſa*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Palaſgicus*; which from hence is ſometimes named *Pegaſicus*; in which the ſhip called *Argo*, was ſaid to be built, ſo famous for the renowned voyage of the *Argonautes*. The hill *Pelion* ſpoken of before, is not far from hence. 10. *Pythion*, or *Pythaum*, of great note for the *Pythian* games, there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: the Conquerours in which games were crowned at the firſt onely with an *Oaken Garland*, but afterwards with one of *Lawrel*. Of which thus the Poet:

Neve operis famam poſſet abolere vetuſtas,
Inſtituit ſacros celebri certamine ludos,
Pythia *de domiti* Serpentis *nomine dictos*, &c.

Thus made to ſpeak *Engliſh* by *G. Sandys*.

Then leaſt the well deſerved memory
Of ſuch an act in future time ſhould die,
He inſtituted the ſo famous Games
Of free contention, which he *Pythia* names.
Who ran, who wreſtled beſt, or rak'd the ground
With ſwifteſt wheels, the *Oaken Garland* crown'd.

Theſe games, together with the *Olympick*, *Iſthmean* and *Nemaan* ſpoken of before, made the four annual meetings amongſt the *Grecians*; renowned for the univerſal concourſe of the nobleſt ſpirits. 11. *Doliche*, which together with *Pythium*, and 12. *Azorium*, another City of this tract, ſtanding near together, are called in *Livius* the *Hiſtorian* by the name of *Tripolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the *Metropolis* of *Theſſaly*, ſo called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopick* Hiſtory before mentioned; who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliacus*, now *Golfo di Ziton*, and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*, upon which Mountain, *Hercules* being tortured with a poiſoned ſhirt, ſent by his innocent wife *Dejanira*, is ſaid to have burned himſelf; thence called *Hercules Oetus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pegaſa*, and *Demetrias*, are in the Region called *Phthiotis*; *Lariſſa*, *Doliche*, *Phthium*, and *Azorium*, in that called *Pelaſgia*; *Gomphi*, and *Tricca* in *Eſtriotis*; the reſt in *Theſſaly* properly and ſpecially ſo named.

This country at firſt called *Æmonia*, afterwards *Pelaſgia*, then *Pyrrhæa* from *Pyrrha* the wife of *Deucalion*, & finally *Theſſalia*, from *Theſſalus* one of the Companions of *Hercules*; by *Pliny* is called *Driopis*, *Eſtriotis*, by *Strabo*, *Pelaſgia*, by *Diodorus*, & by *Homer*, *Argos*: the name of ſome chief City, or particular Province

Macedon.

vince, being figuratively uſed for the whole. Divided commonly into four parts: 1. *Theſſaliotis*, 2. *Eſtiotis*, 3. *Pelaſgiotis*, and 4. *Phthiotis*, the name of *Theſſaly* or *Theſſaliotis* in the end prevailing; accordingly diſtributed into ſeveral Governments, united finally in the perſon of *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*: who partly by force, but eſpecially by Art and practice, made himſelf Maſter of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt *free* and *ſubject*, under the *Macedonian* Kings of the ſecond Race; it became ſubject with that Kingdom to the State of *Rome*: firſt reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*, after, a Province of it ſelf, when *Macedon* was made a *Dioceſe*, part of which it was. But from a Province of that *Dioceſe*, and a member of the *Eaſtern* Empire, it was made a Kingdom: given with that title to *Boniface* Marqueſs of *Montferrat* in exchange for *Candie*, together with the City of *Theſſalonica*, and ſome part of *Peloponneſus*, at the diviſion of that Empire amongſt the *Latines*. Which title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created Prince of *Theſſaly*, by the Emperour *Emanuel*; whoſe Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to Wife. In him as it began, ſo this title ended; *Theſſalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Theſſaly* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom ſubdued, and added to the *Turkiſh* Empire in the reign of *Amurath* the ſecond, *Anno* 1432.

2. *MACEDON* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Mygdonia*; on the Weſt, with *Albania*; on the North, with Mount *Hæmus*; on the South, with *Theſſaly*. The Country, for the moſt part fruitful, as before was ſaid; but not ſo ſurfeiting with delights as to make the people wanton or effeminate in their courſe of lives: as being naturally good Souldiers, exact obſervers of military diſcpline, and inured to hardneſs: which their many ſignal victories do moſt clearly evidence, both in *Greece* and *Aſia*

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own wits, reckoned them amongſt the barbarous Nations; and yet by a ſtrange kind of contradiction, aſcribe unto their Country the ſeat of the Muſes. For in this Country was Mount *Pimple*, with a Fountain of the ſame name at the foot thereof; both conſecrated to the Muſes, from hence called *Pimpleides*. Here alſo was the Hill *Libethris*, and the Province of *Pieria*, from hence the Muſes had the names of *Libethrides* and *Pierides*: by this laſt called more frequently than by any other name what ever; eſpecially by the *Greeks* themſelves. But the birth of *Ariſtotle* in this Countrey doth more convince the *Grecians* of this fooliſh arrogancy, than all the Muſes in the world. A man ſo admirable in the generall courſe of learning, ſo univerſally comprehenſive of all Arts and Sciencs, that the beſt-witted *Grecian* might have been his Scholar, and thought it a great happineſs, as King *Philip* did, that they had any Children but to be tutored by him.

The pricipal Rivers hereof, beſides *Erigon* and *Alaicmon*, ſpoken of before; are, 1. *Axius*, now called *Vandari*, riſing out of the Hill *Scardius*, a branch of Mount *Æmus*; and paſſing through the whole extent of this Countrey into *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Golf of *Theſſalonica*, as it is now named: the faireſt River of thoſe parts, and of ſweeteſt waters; ſuch as maketh all the cattel *black* which drink of it. 2. *Chabris*, 3. *Echedorus*, both riſing out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the ſame Bay alſo. Beſides which there are three other fair and capacious Bayes, aſcribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Migdonia*; that is to ſay, *Singeticus*, now *Golfo di monte Sacro*; and *Toronicus*, now the Golf or Bay of *Aiomana*; and the third common unto *Thrace* alſo, which is *Sinus Strimonicus*, now the Bay of *Conteſſo*.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts thereof, were for the *Almopes*, 1. *Hormia*, called afterward *Seleucia*. 2. *Europus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*. 3. *Abſalus*. Of *Syntice*, 4. *Triſtolus*, 5. *Parocæcopolis*, 6. *Gariſcus*, 7. *Heraclea*, for diſtinction called *Heraclea Syntica*; there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edonis* bordering towards *Thrace*, 8. *Scotuſa*, 9. *Berga*, 10. *Amphipolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which encompaſſed, whence it had the name; ſeated ſo cloſe on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is queſtionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garriſoned by the *Athenians*, and from them took by *Philip* the *Macedonian*, in the firſt riſe of his fortunes. 11. *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* alſo, by ſome Writers laid unto it, but I think erroneouſly: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned, by whom called *Philippi*, and ſituate in a Country ſo rich in mines of gold, that the ſaid *Philip* drew thence yearly 1000 *talents*, which make 600000 *French* Crowns, or 140000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* money. Afterward made a *Roman* Colony, and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Acts* 16.12. to the people of which, Saint *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. Next in *Emathia*, we have, 12. *Tyriſſa* in the midlands, bordering upon *Theſſaly*, now called *Cereſi*. 13. *Ædeſſa*, called afterwards *Ægeas*, and now *Vodena*; the firſt Town of all this Country taken by *Caranaus*, the Founder of the firſt race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Berœa* on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honoured with the preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof are by Saint *Luke* commended for their readineſs in receiving the Goſpel. 15. *Pella*, on the ſame Bay alſo, the birth-place of *Alexander* the Great, from hence called *Juvenis Pellæus*. 16. *Pydna*, upon the ſame Bay, at the influx of the River *Alaicmon*, in which *Caſſander* beſieged and took *Olympias* the Mother, *Roxane* the Wife, and *Hercules* the Heir apparent of *Alexander*; all whom he barbarouſly murdered. This cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himſelf of *Alexander*, who had once knocked his head and the wall together; and partly to cry quit with *Olympias*, who had before as cruelly murdered *Aridæus* the baſe Son of *Philip*, and *Euridice* his Wife; with whom *Caſſander* was ſuppoſed to be over-familiar. Memorable alſo is this Town for the great battel fought near it, betwixt *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon*, and P. *Æmilius* the *Conſul*, in which *Perſeus* having ſhamefully deſerted his Army, loſt both the battel and his kingdom, with no leſs than 20000 of his foot which were there ſlain; the *Romans* having ſo cheap a victory, that it coſt them not above an hundred or ſixcore men. 17. *Dium*,

not

Mygdonia.

not far from the hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea; of which mile the River *Helicon* becoming there a Lake, and called *Baphirus*, taketh up one half. Situate in the borders towards *Theſſaly*, the way unto it out of the *Tempe* being ſtrait and narrow, and almoſt impaſſible, by reaſon of the ſpurs of the Mountains running overthwart it: which had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted it, But P*erſeus* hearing that the Enemy had got into the *Tempe*, only took care to get his treaſure out of *Dium*, and ſo abandoned both the paſſage, and the Town together. 18. P*hylace*, more within the Land; as is 19. *Eribœa*. But theſe four laſt are in that part hereof which is called P*ieria*.

3. *MYGDONIA* hath on the Eaſt, the *Ægean* Sea; on the Weſt, M*acedon*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the North, *Edonis* and *Sinus Strimonicus*; on the South, *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the *Golf* of *Theſſalonica*. So that it is almoſt a P*eninſula*, environed on three ſides with water.

Here is in this Country the hill *Athos*, ſtanding in a P*eninſula* (the *Iſthmus* being once cut thorow by *Xerxes*, but ſince cloſed again) ſaid to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 dayes journey long, half a dayes in breadth, reſembling the ſhape of a man lying with his face upwards: the higheſt point whereof covered perpetually with Snow, is ſaid to caſt a ſhadow as far as *Lemnos*. Exceeding fruitful in graſs, fruit, oil, and wine; and wondrous plentiful in hares; according to that of *Ovid*.

Quot Lepores in Atho, *quot Apes paſcuntur in* Hybla.

How many Hares in *Athos* feed,
What ſwarmes of Bees on *Hybla* breed.

Inhabited only by *Greek* Monks, whom they call *Caloires*, of the order of Saint *Baſil*, to whom the hill commonly called the *Holy Mountain* hath been long ſince dedicated: the place being ſo priviledged by the *Grand Signeur*, that neither *Turk* nor *Grecian* may inhabit in it, except ſuch *Grecians* onely as profeſs this life. Of theſe there are about 6000, diſperſed in 42 Monaſteries, built after a military manner, for fear of Thieves and Pyrats, wherewith much infeſted in times paſt: frequented with great concourſe of people coming thither to behold and adore ſome Reliques (for which they are of much eſteem;) the free obligations of thoſe Pilgrims, and ſome benevolence from the *Turks*, which do much reſpect them, being the chief means of their ſubſiſtence. The manner of their life is like that of the antient Hermits; poorly clad, their ſhirts of wollen, which they both ſpin and weave themſelves, none of them idle at any time, doing ſtill ſomewhat for their lively-hood, and the advancement of the houſe of which they are, as dreſſing vines, felling timber, yea, and building ſhips. Few of them giving themſelves to ſtudy, and ſome of them of ſo groſs an ignorance, that they can neither write nor read: bound by their Order to lodge and entertain ſuch ſtrangers as have occaſion to paſs that way, according to their rank and calling, and that of free coſt too, if it be deſired.

Towns of moſt note, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts hereof, are for *Mygdonia*, ſpecially and properly ſo called, 1. *Antigonia*, ſo called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the firſt founder of it. 2. *Xilopolis*, 3. *Terpillus*, 4. P*hyſco*, 5. *Aſſorus*, all mentioned by P*tolomy*, but not elſe obſervable. 6. *Apollonia* for diſtinction ſake called *Apollonia Mygdoniæ*, to difference it from *Apollonia* in *Albania* then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the ſtudies of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here learnt the *Greek* Tongue. For *Amphaxitis*, there was 7. *Arethuſa*, 8 *Stagira*, now called *Nicalidi*, renowned for the birth of *Ariſtole*, hence named *Stagirites*. 9. *Theſſalonica*, ſituate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*, by the name of the Town. Antiently the Metropolis, or head City of *Macedon*, the ſeat of the P*ræfectus* P*rætorio* for *Illyricum*, after the removal thereof from *Sirmium*; as alſo of the Primate of the *Greek* Church, who reſided here. To the people of this City did Saint P*aul* write two of his Epiſtles, continuing in great power and credit till the fall of the C*onſtantinopolitan* Empire into the hands of the Latines: at which time it was beſtowed firſt on *Boniface*, Marqueſs of *Monferrat*, the new King of *Theſſaly*; after whoſe death it fell unto the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432. when forced by *Amurath* the ſecond to become *Turkiſh*. Which notwithſtanding it ſtill preſerves the reputation of a beautiful and wealthy City, inhabited by rich Merchants, who drive here a great trade, eſpecially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for beauty, riches, and magnificence, little inferiour unto *Naples*: and though the T*urks* and *Jews* make the greateſt number of the inhabitants, yet here are reckoned thirty Churches for the uſe of Chriſtians. As for the *Jews*, they ſwarm here in ſuch great abundance, that in this City and that of *Conſtantinople* only, there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and con[illegible]nned by all ſorts of people. 10. *Syderocaſpa*, of old called C*hryſites*, remarkable for its mines of Gold and Silver; ſo beneficial to the T*urk*, that he received hence monethly 18000. and ſometimes 30000 Crowns *de claro*. Next for C*halcidice*, there was 11. P*anormus*, a Port Town. 12. *Stratonice*, in the P*eninſula* of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Athos*, or *Athoſa*, in the ſame P*eninſula*, with the Promontory of the ſame name, nigh which it ſtood. 14. *Acanthus*, now called E*ryſſa*, on the Bay of the Holy Mountain. And finally in P*araxia*, we have 15. *Ampelus*, 16. T*orone*, giving name to the Bay adjoyning, called antiently *Sinus* T*oronicus*, now *Golfo di Aiomama*. 17. C*aſſandria* on the Sea ſide, ſo called from C*aſſander* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named P*otidea*. 18. *Derris*, 19. *Merillus*, 20. P*allene*, ſituate in the C*herſoneſe*, or Demy-Iſland, called P*etalene*, and by ſome P*etalia*: formerly conſecrated to the Muſes, but before that infamous for the War which the Giants are fabled to have made here againſt the Gods; at what time it was called P*hlegra*, the fields adjoyning C*ampi* P*hlegrai*, in which this great battel is ſuppoſed to be fought. The occaſion of the Fable was

(as

Macedon.

(as both *Theagenes* and *Eudoxes* do expound the ſame) that the Inhabitants hereof in thoſe elder times being men of a moſt impious and inſolent life, got the name of *Giants*, whom when *Hercules* endeavoured to ſubdue, and reduce to reaſon, it happened that there fell a great tempeſt of thunder and lightning, by which they were conſtrained to flee and ſubmit themſelves: Hence the report that thoſe *Giants* made war againſt the gods. Others have placed theſe *Phlegraan* fields in *Theſſalie*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am, that ſome place nearer to the hills of *Pelion*, *Oſſa*, and *Olympus*, doth agree beſt with it: if at leaſt *Ovid* were not out in his narration, who makes thoſe Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to his skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the ſaying is: For thus that Poet;

> *Affectaſſe ferunt regnum cœleſte* Gigantes,
> *Altaque congeſtos ſtruxiſſe ad ſydera Montes,*
> *At pater omnipotens miſſo perfregit* Olympum
> *Fulmine, & excuſſit ſubjectum* Pelion Oſſæ.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words;

> The *Giants* once the Throne of Heaven affected,
> And hills on hills unto the Stars erected:
> Till *Jove* with thunder high *Olympus* brake,
> And *Pelion* did from under *Oſſa* take.

But from thoſe Fables to proceed to more real ſtories; this Country was firſt peopled by *Cittim*, the ſon of *Javan*, paſſing over out of *Aſia minor*; in memory whereof here was not only a Town called *Citium*, ſpoken of by *Livie lib*. 42. but the whole land of *Macedon* is in the book of *Maccabees* called the land of *Keitim*, *Maccab*. 1. *verſ*. 1. and the Inhabitants hereof called *Citims*, in the eighth Chapter of the ſame book, *ver*. 5. ſpreading in tract of time from one Sea to another, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, ſome Colonies of them paſſed from hence to *Italy*, and firſt inhabited that Country, as hath there been ſaid. Such as continued in theſe parts, divided into ſeveral tribes, as in all parts elſe, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*; a people not much taken notice of in the former times, living a poor and painful life, *Goat-herds* and *Shepherds* for the moſt part, ſcarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next Invader; much leſs to dream of conquering either *Greece* or *Perſia*. And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unfitly, (though by him ſpoke in paſſion, and to their diſgrace) that *his father* Philip *had firſt made them Gentlemen*. For *Philip* having learned the *Rudiments of war* under *Epaminondas*, (being then an Hoſtage with the *Thebans*) and by that means acquainted with the temper and ſtate of Greece: not only freed his own kingdom from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the faction raiſed among the *Grecians*, (which he knew how to feed and cheriſh for his own improvement) brought them at firſt wholly to rely upon him, and after to be ſubject to him. Inſomuch that never any Monarchy had a ſwifter growth, nor a more ſpeedy diſſolution; there paſſing not full Forty years from the firſt of *Philip* to the laſt of *Alexander*, in which ſpace it was both begun, perfected, and broke to pieces. For the Foundation being laid in *murder*, *perjury*, and *treaſon*, as firſt it was, was never likely to be bleſſed with a long continuance.

The KINGS of *MACEDON*.

A. M.			A. M.			A. M.		
3155	1 *Caranaus*	28	3415	9 *Amintas*	50	3574	17 *Argæus* II.	
3183	2 *Cænus*	12	3465	10 *Alexander*	43	3575	18 *Amintas* III.	19
3195	3 *Tirimas*	38	3508	11 *Perdiccas* II.	28	3594	19 *Alexander* II.	1
3233	4 *Perdiccas*	51	3536	12 *Archelaus*	24	3595	20 *Alorites*	4
3284	5 *Argæus*	38	3560	13 *Oreſtes*	3	3596	21 *Perdiccas* III.	6
3322	6 *Philippus*	38	3563	14 *Archelaus* II.	24	3605	22 *Philip* II.	24
3360	7 *Europus*	26	3567	15 *Pauſanias*	1	3529	23 *Alexan*. the great	
3386	8 *Alcetas*	29	3568	16 *Amintas* II.	6		24 *Aridæus*	6

Of theſe 24 Kings, only ſix are famous, *viz*. *Caranaus* the firſt King, originally of *Argos*, of the race of *Hercules*; and by an Oracle commanded to lead a Colony into this Country, and to follow the firſt flock of Cattel he ſaw before him. Being here arrived in a tempeſtuous ſtormy day, he eſpied a herd of *Goats* flying the fury of the weather. Theſe *Goats* he followed unto *Ædiſſa*, into which by reaſon of the darkneſs of the air, he entred undiſcovered, won the Town, and in ſhort ſpace became Lord of all the Countrey. 2. *Perdiccas* the fourth King, who at *Æga*, built a burial place for all his ſucceſſors; aſſuring the people as long as their Kings were there buried, his race would never fail, and ſo it happened; for the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was tranſlated to the ſons of *Demetrius*. 3. *Europus*, who in his infancy was carried in a cradle againſt the *Illyrians* his enemies, and returned victorious. This the *Macedons* did, either becauſe they thought they could not be beaten, their King being preſent: or perſwaded themſelves that there was none ſo void of *honor* and *compaſſion*, as to abandon an infant, no way able to ſave himſelf from deſtruction, but by the valor and fidelity of his ſervants. 4. *Alexander* the ſon of

Macedon. of *Amintas*, famous for a notable exploit on the *Perſian* Embaſſadors; who being ſent from *Megabizus*, requeſted a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies: No ſooner were they entred, but *petulantius eas Perſis contrectantibus*, as *Juſtine* relateth the ſtory, they were called back by this *Alexander*, ſending in their ſteads young ſpringals maidenly attired; who upon the like indignities offered, ſlew theſe effeminate *Aſians*: After which, he behaved himſelf ſo diſcreetly, that the *Perſian* Monarch gave him all *Greece* between *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. *Philip* father to *Alexander*, who governed firſt as a Guardian to *Amyntas*, the ſon of *Perdiccas* his elder brother; but afterwards took to himſelf both the kingdom and title of king, which he continued in the depoſition of his Nephew and natural Soveraign, the murder of the reſt of his brethren, and the deſtruction of all ſuch as oppoſed his practice. But being otherwiſe a man of approved abilities, he cleared his own Country of the *Illyrians*, ſubdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*, and a great part of *Peloponneſus*, and was choſen General of the *Greeks* againſt the *Perſians*. But as ſoon as he had made all things ready for this expedition, he was ſlain by one *Pauſanias* a young Gentleman, whom he had formerly abuſed in the heat of his unnatural luſts. 6. *Alexander* the ſon of *Philip*, who recovered ſuch parts of *Greece*, as on the death of his father had befooled themſelves with a hope of liberty. He ſubdued *Darius*, the great King of *Perſia*, *Taxiles*, and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchy of the *Grecians*, and in the height of his ſucceſſes was poiſoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Caſſander*, one of his great Captains; his revenue at the time of his death amounting to 300000 talents yearly. After his death, his new got Empire was much controverted in the point of ſucceſſion, he himſelf dying without lawful iſſue; and having at his death bequeathed it to him, who was thought moſt worthy by his Army; and the Soldiers according to their ſeveral affections and relations, thought their own leaders moſt deſerving. At laſt the the title of King (and in effect nothing but the title) was by the conſent of his Commanders caſt on *Aridæus*, a baſtard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be Protector (for *Aridæus* was a little erazed in his brain) and to be General of the Army, by whoſe deſign he was alſo married to *Eurydice* daughter to *Amyntas*, whom *Philip* had before diſpoſſeſſed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces, they were aſſigned unto the government of the chief Commanders, *viz.* *Ægypt* to *Ptolomy*, *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philotus*, *Media* to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia*, and *Phrygia major* to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Caſſander*, *Lydia* to *Minander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia minor* to *Leonatus*, *Aſſyria* to *Selucus*, *Perſis* to *Beuceſtes*, *Thrace* to *Lyſimachus*, and *Macedon* it ſelf unto *Antipater*: The other parts of the *Perſian* Empire being left to them, unto whoſe hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this diviſion held not long, for *Perdiccas* being once ſlain by *Ptolomy*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonus*, theſe two became quickly too great for the reſt, *Ptolomy* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus* to the Kingdom of *Egypt*, and *Antigonus* bringing under his command not only all *Aſia minor*, but *Aſſyria*, *Media*, and almoſt all the Eaſtern parts of the *Perſian* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time ſucceeding in the Protectorſhip, baniſhed *Olympias* the mother of *Alexander*, out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a ſtep-dames love unto *Aridæus*, but he being dead, ſhe returned out of *Epirus* (the place of her baniſhment) into *Macedonia*, where raiſing a ſtrong party amonſt the people, ſhe put *Aridæus* and his wiſe *Eurydice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander*, the ſon of *Alexander* by *Roxane*, both ſlain not long after by *Caſſander* the ſon of *Antipater*, who to make ſure work, murdered alſo with the like cruelty *Hercules*, the ſon of *Alexander* on *Barſina* (another *Perſian* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the laſt ſurvivor of that houſe. And ſo the royal Family being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himſelf the title of King; as did *Seleucus*, who had now recovered all the *Perſian* Provinces, beyond *Euphrates*. The like did *Ptolemy* in *Ægypt*, and *Caſſander in Macedon*.

The Second Race of the *MACEDON* KINGS.

A. M.

3648 1 *Caſſander*, Son of *Antipater*, ſuppoſed to have been the poiſoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the Blood-royal of *Macedon*, his reign full of troubles and difficulties, 19.

3667 2 *Alexander* and *Antipater*, ſons to *Caſſander*, but not well agreeing, calling unto their aid *Lyſimachus* and *Demetrius*, by whom they were both in ſhort time murdered, 4.

3671 3 *Demetrius*, ſon to *Antigonus*, the powerful King of *Aſia*, after he had in one battail againſt *Seleucus*, loſt both his father, and all his *Aſian* Dominions, ſetled himſelf in *Macedon*; but being there outed by *Pyrrhus*, he fled to *Seleucus*, and with him died, 6.

3677 4 *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, was by the Soldiers, voluntarily forſaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*; but after ſeven months, the Soldiers revolted to *Lyſimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born.

3678 5 *Lyſimachus*, King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquiſhed aud ſlain by *Seleucus*, the laſt ſurvivor of *Alexanders* Captains, 7.

3685 6 *Ceraunus* or *Ptolomie Ceraunus*, ſon to *Ptolomie* of *Ægypt*, having traterouſly ſlain his friend and Patron *Seleucus*, ſeiſed on *Macedon*; but loſt it, together with his life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued theſe Countreys: After whoſe death, this Kingdom being diſtracted amongſt many Competitors, ſetled at laſt upon

3687 7 *Antigonus Gonatas*, the ſon of *Demetrius*, who for his valor ſhown in expulſing the *Gauls*, was made King of *Macedon*: And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrhus*, then re-

turning

Thrace.

turning from *Italy*; yet after the death of *Pyrrhus* he again recovered his eſtate; but outed once again by *Alexander* the ſon of *Pyrrhus*, 36.

3723 8 *Demetrius* II. ſon of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander*, the ſon of *Pyrrhus*, 10.

3733 9 *Antigonus* II. ſirnamed *Doſon*, left by *Demetrius* as Protector to his young ſon *Philip*, uſurped the Kingdom. He divers times vanquiſhed and cruſhed the *Grecians*, beginning then to caſt off the yoke of *Macedon*, 12.

3745 10 *Philip*, the ſon of *Demetrius*, 42.

3787 11 *Perſeus*, the ſon of *Philip*, the laſt King of *Macedon*, the ſubverſion of which eſtate was firſt begun in the time of his Father, who had not only warred upon the *Ætolians*, and others of the *Greeks*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their protection; but ſided with *Hannibal* againſt them. Upon which grrounds they ſent firſt *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, one of their Conſuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquiſhed at the battel of *Cunos-cephalos*, and his Kingdom made tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a quarrel againſt *Perſeus* alſo, managed with variable ſucceſſe by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders; they diſpatched *Paulus Æmilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to abſolute ſubjection. Who ſped ſo well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perſeus* led captive unto *Rome*, *Annos* 3789. In which triumph, beſides the pomp of leading a Captive King in bonds, *Æmilius* cauſed the ready money which he brought out of *Greece*, to be carried in 750 Veſſels, every Veſſel containing 3 *Talents*: which made ſo infinite a ſum, that the *Roman* people were free for many years after from all taxes and impoſitions. A. M. 3798.

Macedon thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to ſay *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, and *Prevalitana*; in the new model of *Conſtantine* became a *Dioceſe*, the *Dioceſe* hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Achaia*, *old* and *new Epirus*, *Macedonia Prima*, and the greateſt part of *Salutaris*, the reſidue of *Salutaris* and *Prevalitana*, (which makes up the Countrey now called *Albania*) being laid to the *Dioceſe* of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eaſtern Empire, till towards the laſt fatal diſſolution of it; though many times haraſſed and depopulated by the *Sclavonians*, *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, and others of the barbarous people at their ſeveral invaſions of it: finally conquered by the *Turks*, firſt under the conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonius*, now the Bay of *Conteſſo*; and after under *Amurath* the ſecond, their ſixth King, making themſelves maſters of *Theſſalonica*; the chief City of it, and therewith the Countrey. By reaſon of which many invaſions and laſt deſolation by the *Turks*, there is ſcarce one of all thoſe many Cities before mentioned, now of any eminence; except *Theſſalonica* only: the reſt being miſerably deſtroyed. And for the Countrey it ſelf it is governed by a *Turkiſh Sanziack*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, his annual *Revenue* being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing elſe required of him than to maintain 100 horſe in ordinary pay, for defence of his Province; and to find 400 horſe on extraordinary occaſions, as the *Grand Signeur* ſhall command him.

7. THRACE.

THRACE hath on the Eaſt, *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontis*, and *Helleſpont*; on the Weſt, *Macedon*; on the North, the Hill *Hæmus*; on the South the *Ægean* Sea, and part of *Macedon*. A very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days journey in length, and 6 days journey in breadth: and in relation to the heavens, reaching unto the 44 degree of the Northern latitude; ſo that the longeſt day in ſummer is about 15 hours three quarters.

By ſeveral men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names: by *Stephanus*, *Aria*; by *Suiras*, *Odryſa*; by *Lycophron*, *Creſtona*; by ſome writers, *Scythia*; by *Joſephus* the *Hebrew*, *Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that as ſome ſay from *Thrax*, the ſon of *Mars*, as others from *Thraca*, an Inchantreſſe: more probably from the ferity and barbarous condition of the firſt Inhabitants; the name of the Original *Greek* bearing that conſtruction: Moſt likely from *Thyras*, the ſon of *Japhet*, who firſt planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Joſephus*, beſides many other footſteps and remembrances of him, in the name of many of their Towns, and ſome of their Princes: of which we have already ſpoken in our general Preface. Finally, by the *Turks* it is called *Romania*, either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here; or becauſe *Conſtantinople* the chief City of it was antiently called *Nova Roma*: and by that name it is now called in moſt modern Writers.

The Countrey generally is neither of a rich ſoil, nor a pleaſant air, the corn and other fruits by reaſon of the coldneſſe of the *Climate*, leiſurely ripening, the Vines yielding more ſhade than juice, and the trees for the moſt part more leaves than fruit: yet in ſome parts there be many large and goodly plains, where they reap good ſtore of corn, but of Pulſe eſpecially; and towards the Sea ſide they have plenty of wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for ſtrength and goodneſſe.

The people antiently were very bold and valiant, and called by ſome Αὐτόνομοι becauſe every man was a law to himſelf. So that it was truly ſaid by *Herodotus*, that if they had either been all of one mind, or under one King, they had been invincible. Of manners they were rude and ſavage, ſomewhat near to brutiſhneſſe; buying their Wives, and ſelling both their Sons and Daughters, as in open market: in which, ſince imitated by the *Turks*, who poſſeſſe their

Thrace.

Countrey. The men were more couragious than comely, wearing Cloaths according to their conditions, ragged and unſeemly. The *maried* women were in love to their Husbands ſo conſtant, that they willingly ſacrificed themſelves at their Funerals. The *Virgins* were beſtowed, not by their own Parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither beauty nor vertue for their dowry, were put off according to their money; moſt times ſold as other Cattel, in the Markets. In matters of *Religion*, they worſhipped *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: ſwearing eſpecially by the firſt, from whom they bragged themſelves to have been deſcended. But their chief *national deity*, was one *Zamolxis*, ſometimes a native of this Countrey, who having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, preſcribed them good and wholeſome Laws; aſſuring them that if they did obſerve the ſame, they ſhould go unto a place when they left this World, in which they ſhould enjoy all manner of pleaſure and contentment. By this means having gotten ſome opinion of a *divinity* amongſt them, he abſented himſelf; after was worſhipped as their God. Upon theſe principles, when any one was born amongſt them, his Parents and other friends ſitting round about him, lamented bitterly his comming into the World; ripping up all the miſeries and afflictions whereunto he was to be expoſed in this preſent life, and ſo deplored his condition as abſolutely miſerable and unhappy. But on the contrary, when any one chanced to dye, they buried him with all joy and alacrity; highly rejoycing that by this means he was freed from the croſſes and diſſaſters of this wretched World. Expreſſed thus briefly, after this wonted manner, by my Author. *Lugentur Puerperia, natique deflentur; funera contra* feſta *ſunt, & veluti ſacra cantu luſuque celebrantur.* A piece of ſuch ſound and Orthodox divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in theſe times of darkneſſe; and ſavouring very much of the Primitive piety: by which the *Obits* of the Saints were kept as *Feſtivals*, no notice being taken of the day of their births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non nativitatem ſed mortem* Sanctorum *Eccleſia pretioſam & feſtam judicat.*

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymneſtor*, who villanouſly murdered *Polydorus*, a younger ſon of *Priamus*; for which fact, *Hecuba* the young Princes Mother, ſcratched him to death. Here alſo lived the Tyrant *Tereus*, of whom before in *Phocis*: and *Diomedes*, who uſing to feed his Horſes with mans fleſh, was ſlain by *Hercules*, and caſt unto his Horſes. And finally, here reigned King *Cotys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propoſe as a pattern of rare temper, both in maſtering and preventing paſſion. For when a neighbour Prince had ſent him a preſent of Glaſſes of the pureſt metal, and no leſſe accurate in the workmanſhip or faſhion of them: (having diſpatched the Meſſenger with all the due complements of Majeſty and gratitude) he broke them all to pieces; leaſt if by miſhap any of his ſervants ſhould do the like, he might be ſtirred to an intemperate choler.

Chief mountains in this Country, beſides *Hæmus* ſpoken of already, are 1. *Rhodope*, the higheſt next Mount *Hæmus* in thoſe parts of the World; craggy and rough, the top whereof continually white with ſnow: memorable for the fate and fable of *Orpheus*, who in a melancholy humour (having loſt his Wife) betook himſelf to theſe Mountains; where with his *Muſick* he affected both Woods and Beaſts, who are ſaid to have danced unto his *Muſick*: from this place of his abode called *Rhodopeius*, from his Countrey *Thracius*; *Non me carminibus vincet nec* Thraſius Orpheus, *&c.* as the Shepherd boaſteth in the Poet. The truth is, that he was a man of an heavenly *Muſe*, and by his dictates and good counſel laid down in verſe, firſt of all civilized this people, and weaned them by degrees from their beſtiality. Hence the occaſion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodope* it ſelf, it is in the midſt of this Countrey, thwarting it from Mount *Hæmus* towards the weſt: which with the ſpurs and branches of it, and the plains adjoyning, lying betwixt the River *Neſſus* on the Weſt, and *Melas* or *Niger* on the Eaſt, made up the Province of the Empire called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in mines of ſilver; 3. *Melapus*, ſhooting towards the Sea, full of rocks and cliffs; and 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principal Rivers hereof, beſides *Strymon* ſpoken of before, the boundary in ſome places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are 1. *Neſſus*, by the *Grecians*, now called *Meſtro*, by the *Turks Charaſon*, which riſing out of Mount *Hæmus* falleth into the Sea, near the Iſle of *Thaſſus*. 2. *Athyras*, in which name, the memory of *Thyras* the ſon of *Japhet*, ſeems to be preſerved: which riſing in Mount *Hæmus* alſo, loſeth it ſelf in the *Propontick*; as doth 3. *Bathynias*, another River riſing from the ſame Mount *Hæmus*. 4. *Hebrus*, the moſt noted River of all this Countrey, riſing out of *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Ægean* near the Iſle of *Samothrace*; a River of ſo ſlow a courſe, that it is not eaſie to diſcern which way it goeth: but memorable in the Poets for the fate of *Orpheus*, who being torn in pieces by the *Thracian* women, had his limbs thrown into it by thoſe *Furies*. 5. *Thearus* good againſt the ſcab both in Man and Beaſt, iſſuing out of 30 Fountains, ſome hot, ſome cold; with the pleaſantneſſe of whoſe waters *Darius* the King of *Perſia*, was ſo delighted, that he erected a Pillar in honour of it.

The chief Towns 1. *Abdera*, now called *Polyſtilo*, ſituate not far from the fall of the River *Neſſus* into the *Ægean*, the birth-place of *Democritus*, who ſpent his whole life in laughing at the follies of others. 2. *Potidea*, of old a Colony of *Athens*, from whom it revolted, and ſubmitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians* not enduring the affront, beleagured it, and after two years ſiege, and the expence of 2000 Talents; could not recover it again but on compoſition. 3. *Anus*, on the *Ægean* Sea, a Town of great ſtrength and ſafety, and therefore uſed by the later *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors for the ſecuring of great perſons. For hither *Michael Palælogus* ſent *Jathatines* the *Turkiſh Sultan*, flying to him for aid; and hither *Mahomet* the Great ſent *Demetrius*, Prince of *Peloponneſus*, when he yielded up his Country to him: both under colour of providing for their eaſe and ſafety, but in plain terms to keep them in honourable Priſons. 4. *Lyſimachia*, on the Sea-ſhore, once of great importance, built by *Lyſimachus*, who after *Alexanders* death laid hands on this Country: afterwards garriſoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perſeus*, on the withdrawing of whoſe Forces for ſome other ſervice, it was taken and razed to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the people of it carried into captivity; but by *Antiochus* the Great re-edified, and new peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient ſituation and former glories of the place. 5. *Philipopolis*, ſo called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Alexander*, who built and fortified as a bridle to hold in the *Thracians*; called alſo *Trimontium*, from three hills on which it was ſituate: beautified in the time of the *Romans*, with a goodly *Amphitheatre*, continuing entire and whole till theſe latter dayes, and might have laſted longer by many Ages, did not the *Turks* daily take away the ſtones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make money of them. Here are alſo many other antient Monuments, though the Town be much waſted and deſtroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above 100000 perſons: which notwithſtanding it is populous, and well-frequented, by reaſon of the convenient ſituation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. 6. *Trajanopolis*, ſo called from the Emperour *Trajan*, by whom either founded or repaired; indifferently well peopled, and ſtill preſerving its old name. 7. *Selimbria*, on the Coaſt of the *Propontick* Sea; beautified with a commodious Port for receipt of ſmall veſſels, and many Bayes adjoyning capable of greater: by *Ptolomy* called *Selibria*, and *Olibria* by *Suidas*. 8. *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus*, or the *Black Sea*, now *Siſopoli*. 9. *Phinopolis*, on the ſame Sea alſo. 10. *Nicopolis*, at the foot of the Mount *Hæmus*, there being another of that name near the River *Neſſus*. 11. *Perinthus*, on the *Propontick* Sea, near the influx of the River *Arſus*. A Town of great note in the antient buſineſſes of *Greece*; of great ſtrength, and peopled formerly with men of ſuch reſolutions, that they maintained their liberty againſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, after almoſt all the reſt of *Thrace* had ſubmitted to him. 12. *Heraclea*, at firſt a Colony of the *Thebans*, and afterwards of much requeſt in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Palaces of *Veſpatian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperours of *Rome*, as alſo with an *Amphitheatre*, cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the Worlds ſeven Wonders: and finally, made the *Metropolitan* City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. 13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon*, the greateſt City of *Thrace*, as poſſibly enough it was in power and riches, though not in greatneſs of extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, rich in trade, and miſtreſs of a fair and goodly territory adjoyning to it: the people whereof had been malicious enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally induced *Philip*, ſpoken of before, to ſet upon them. In which attempt he ſped ſo well, that what he could not get by force, he obtained by money; bribing ſome of the principal Officers to betray it to him: for the recovery whereof, *Demoſthenes* oft moved the people of *Athens*, in thoſe elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiacks*. 14. *Seſtos*, in the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*: which being a *Peninſula* abutting over againſt *Troas*, on the *Aſian* ſide, is now called Saint *Georges Arm*. Oppoſite whereunto, on the other ſide of the Water, is the Town of *Abydus*; remarkable for the *Tragical* Loves of *Hero*, and *Leander*, celebrated by *Muſæus*, an old *Greek* Poet. *Callipolis*, on the Northern Promontory of this *Cherſoneſe*, the firſt City of note that ever the *Turks* poſſeſſed in *Europe*; taken by *Solyman*, the Son of *Orchanes*, the ſecond King of the *Ottoman* race, *Anno* 1358. from whence they eaſily, and in a little time, ſpred themſelves all over the reſt of *Thrace*, the ordinary paſſage of late times betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*, by reaſon of the convenient Harbour, and ſafe Anchorage. 16. *Cardia*, ſeated on the weſtern ſide of it, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lemnos*, and the birth-place of *Eumenes*, who being a poor Carriers Son, attained to ſuch an ability in the Art of War; that after the death of *Alexander* the *Great*, under whom he ſerved, he ſeiſed on the Provinces of *Cappadocia*, and *Paphlagonia*; and ſiding (though a ſtranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias*, and the Blood-Royal, againſt the *Greek* Captains; vanquiſhed and ſlew *Craterus*, and divers times drave *Antigonus* (afterward Lord of *Aſia*) out of the field. But being by his own Souldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him ſlain. 17. *Sardica*, ſituate towards Mount *Æmus*, memorable for the Council there held againſt the *Arians*, *An.* 351. 18. *Adrianople*, ſeated near the midſt of *Thrace*; called anciently *Vſcudama*, but got this name from *Adrian* the Emperour who repaired and beautified it, made ſubject to the *Turks* by *Bajezet*, *An.* 1362. from the firſt taking of it made the Seat of the *Turkiſh* Kings, till the taking of *Conſtantinople*, by *Mahomet* the *Great*; by whom removed unto that City. 19. *Pera*, oppoſite to *Canſtantinople*, on the further ſide of the water (as the word doth ſignifie in the *Greek*) by ſome called *Gallata*, once peopled by a Colony of *Genoeſe*, as the Mart and Factory of that State, taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, *Anno* 1453. but ſtill repleniſhed, for the moſt part, with *Chriſtian* Merchants and Artificers. But the chief glory of this Country, and of all the Eaſt, is, the renowned City of 20. *Couſtantinople*, ſeated in ſo commodious a place for Empire, that it over-looks both *Europe*, and *Aſia*; and commands not onely the *Propontis* and *Boſphorus*, but the *Euxine* Sea. Firſt founded by one *Byza*, from whom named *Byzantium*: but being taken by the *Perſians*, and from them recovered by the *Spartans* (unwilling that the *Perſians* ſhould grow ſtrong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Pauſanias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the birth of our Saviour. In vain beſieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and of great ſtrength in the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire. The Walls of a juſt height, every ſtone whereof was ſo joyned with Couplets of Braſs, that the whole ſeemed but one intire piece; adorned beſides with Turrets, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger*, in his War againſt *Severus* the Emperour, it indured a ſiege of three years againſt all the forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were ſo diſtreſſed by Famine, that men meeting in the ſtreets, would draw and fight; the Conquerour feeding on the Vanquiſhed. For want of Artillery to diſcharge on the Aſſailants, they caſt down upon them whole *Statues* made of Braſs, *Thrace.*

and the like curious imagery. Houſes they pulled down to get Timber for Shipping; the women cutting off their hair to inch out their tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, loſt it all by one Tempeſt. Compelled to yield by this misfortune, the principal of the Nobility were put to the ſword, the wealth of the Inhabitants given for a prey to the Souldiers; the walls thereof diſmantled, the Town left in rubbiſh. Yet there appeared ſo much of Majeſty and beauty in the very ruines: *Ut mireris utrum eorum qui primi extraxerunt, vel eorum qui deinceps ſunt demoliti, vires ſint potiores*, as *Herodian* hath it. Re-edified afterwards by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, he honored it with his own Name, and made it the chief Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City finiſhed *May* 11. *Anno* 331. And being ſo finiſhed, was endowed with all the priviledges of *Rome*, an equal number of *Senators*, one of the Annual *Conſuls*, and all other Officers of State choſen out of both; the Citizens of the one being *Free* of the other, and capable of all places of moſt truſt and power. For that cauſe called *NOVA ROMA*, in ſome following times. This City he adorned alſo with magnificent Buildings, curious *Statues*, and ſuch like Ornaments, tranſported hither from *Old Rome*: which City he ſpoiled of more coſtly pieces, than any twenty of his Predeceſſours had brought unto it. At this day the chief Buildings are the *Turks Seraglio*, and the Temple of Saint *Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and ſituation, ſo as little in magnificence and State. The Temple of Saint *Sophia*, was, if not built, yet re-edified by the Emperour *Juſtinian*. It is built of an oval form, ſurrounded with Pillars of admirable workmanſhip, adorned with ſpacious and beautiful Galleries, roofed all over with *Moſaique* work, and vaulted underneath, very ſtrongly for the Fabrick, and pleaſing for the eye. The Doors are very curiouſly wrought and plated; one of which, by the ſuperſtitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noahs* Ark. And yet this Temple is little more than the Chancel of the ancient Church, which contained in length 260 foot, and a 180 in bredth: and yet to our Saint *Pauls* in *London*, may ſeem for the bigneſs, to have been but a Chapel of eaſe. But what it wants in Greatneſs, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the elegancy of the Building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the Fabricks of the whole World: the ſides and floor, all flagged with excellent Marble, and before the entrance a goodly *Portico*, or *Porch*, in which, as well the *Chriſtians*, who viſit it out of curioſity; as the *Turke*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their ſhoos. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, converted to a *Turkiſh Moſque*, as it ſtill continueth; frequented by the *Signeur* almoſt every *Friday*, which is the *Sabbath* of that people. Near hereunto ſtandeth the Palace, or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperours, on the North-eaſt Angle of the City, where formerly ſtood the antient *Byzantium*: divided from the reſt of the City by a wall, containing three miles in Circuit; and comprehending goodly Groves of *Cypreſſes* intermixed with Plains, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of pleaſures which Luxury can effect, or treaſure compaſs. The *Palace* it ſelf injoying a goodly proſpect into the Sea, was firſt built by *Juſtinus* the Emperour, afterwards much inlarged by the *Ottoman* Race; containing three great Courts one within another: the buildings yielding unto thoſe of *France* and *Italy*, for the neat contrivances; but far ſurpaſſing them for coſt and curiouſneſs.

As for the City it ſelf, it is ſaid to be 18 miles in compaſs, and to contain 700000 living ſouls; yet would be more populous than it is, if the Plague, like a cruel *Tertian Ague*, did not every third year ſo rage amongſt them. Fortified towards the Land with three ſtrong, and high Walls, the one higher than the other, the outermoſt higheſt of them all: towards the Sea with one wall only, built after the old faſhion with many Turrets, which very ſtrongly flanker, and defend the ſame. But formerly both the Town and *Cherſoneſe* in which it ſtandeth, was defended from the incurſions of the barbarous people, by a ſtrong Wall built on the very *Iſthmus* of it, ſome ten miles from the City, reaching from one ſide to the other. The work of *Anaſtatius*, who ſucceeded *Zena*, *Anno* 494. A City which a far off gives to the eye a moſt pleaſing Object; ſo intermixt with Gardens, and beſet with Trees, that it ſeems a City in a Wood: but being entred, much deceiveth the expectation which it promiſed, the Buildings of it being mean if not contemptible. The *Streets* for the moſt part exceeding narrow, but raiſed on each ſide for the greater cleanlineſs: the Houſes but of two ſtories high, ſome of rough Stone, and ſome of Timber; without any other outward grace, or exterior garniſhing: in many places nothing but low Sheds, or rows of Shops; and in ſome places long dead walls belonging unto great mens houſes. The principal beauty of the whole, next to ſome Monuments of Antiquity, which are ſtill preſerved, and the Tombs, or Sepulchres of ſome of the *Ottoman* Kings, which are very ſumptuous; are the *Moſques* or Temples of the *Turks*, about eight thouſand in number: And the Port or Haven, ſo conveniently profound, that Ships of greateſt burden may ſafely lay their ſides to the ſides thereof, for the receit or diſcharge of their lading; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated on the *Thracian Boſphorus*, that there is no wind, whatſoever it be, which brings not in ſome Shipping to it. But that which gives the greateſt pleaſure to the ſight, from the Hills adjoyning, is the ſituation of it on ſeven Mountenets, moſt of them crowned with magnificent *Moſques*, built all of *white Marble*, round in form, and finiſhed on the top with gilded *Spires*, reflecting the Sun beams with a marvellous ſplendour. On the firſt whereof, ſtandeth the ruines of *Conſtantines* Palace, exceeding ſtately to behold; On the ſecond a fair *Turkiſh Moſque*, built on the Palace anciently belonging to the *Greek Patriarch*; On the third, ſtands a ſtately *Moſque*, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the ſecond; and a very large *Hoſpital*, for entertainment of Pilgrims, and the relief of the poor: the Annual rents whereof are valued at 200000 *Checquines*. On the fourth and fifth, the Sepulchre of *Selymus* the firſt, and *Bajazet* the ſecond. On the ſixth, the *Moſque* and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the *magnificent*, numbred amongſt the preſent *wonders* of the World; and on the ſeventh, the Temple of Saint *Sophia*, and the *Turks Seraglio*, ſpoken of already. In which reſpect it is called πόλις ἑπτάλοφος, by *Nicetus*; *Urbs ſepticollis*, by *Paulus Diaconus*, and ſo acknowledged to be by *James Douza*, *Phines Moriſon*, *G. Sandys*, and other of our modern Travellers, the eye-witneſſes of it. So that if there be any Myſtery in the number *Seven*, or that the ſitting of the *Great Whore* on a *ſeven-headed* Beaſt; be an aſſured direction to find out the *Antichriſt*: we may as well look for him in *Conſtantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the *Great Turk*, the profeſſed Enemy of *Chriſt*; and the *Chriſtian Faith*, hath his ſeat and reſidence; as amongſt the *ſeven hills* of *Old Rome*, where the *Pope* reſideth. Or if his ſitting in the *Temple* of *God*, ſhews us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the *Temple* of Saint *Sophia*, now a *Turkiſh Moſque*, as Saint *Peters* Church at *Rome*, ſtill a *Chriſtian* Temple.

But to return again unto ***Conſtantinople***, as it was made by *Conſtantine* the *Imperial* City, and conſequently the chief City of the Eaſt, in all *Civil* matters: ſo it became in little time to have a great ſway alſo in affairs of ***Religion***. The *Chriſtian Faith* ſaid to be firſt preached in ***Byzantium***, by Saint *Andrew* the Apoſtle, the firſt Biſhop thereof. Afterwards ſpreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches of it regulated by many Biſhops; the chief preheminence in matters which concerned thoſe Churches, was given unto the Biſhops of *Heraclea*, *Heraclea* being at that time the *Metropolis*, or principal City of the Province. But after that *Conſtantinople* was built by ***Conſtantine***, and made the *Imperial* City, as before was ſaid, it did not onely over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it ſelf the *Metropolitan* dignity, but ſtood in competition with the other *Patriarchal* Churches, for the Supreme Power; inſomuch as at the ſecond *General Council*, holden in this City, it was unanimouſly decreed, that the *Patriarch* hereof ſhould in degree of honour be next unto the Biſhop of *Rome*, and above thoſe of *Antioch*, and *Alexandria*; the ſame decree confirmed in the Council of ***Chalcedon*** alſo. By which, not only all the Churches in the ***Dioceſe*** of ***Thrace***, but alſo of *Natolia*, or *Aſia Minor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of ***Antioch***) containing no leſs than 28 of the *Roman* Provinces, were made ſubject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the firſt, pretending only the preſervation of the Priviledges of thoſe two great Churches; but indeed fearing leſt *New Rome* might in the end get the precedency of the ***Old***, did Oppoſe this Act; and ſome of his Succeſſors perſiſted in the ſame reſiſtance: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, eſpecially after the Emperour *Juſtinian* had by his ***Imperial*** Edict confirmed the ſame. By whom it was finally ordained, *Senioris Romæ Papam primum eſſe omnium Sacerdotum; beatiſſimum autem Archiepiſcopum* Conſtantinopoleos, *Novæ Romæ, ſecundum habere locum*: that is to ſay, that the ***Pope*** of ***Rome*** ſhould have the firſt place, in all *General Councils*, and the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, or *New Rome*, ſhould have the ſecond. Encouraged wherewith, and with the countenance and favour of the Emperour *Mauritius*, *John* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the *Great*, took to himſelf the title of *Univerſal* or *Oecumenical* Biſhop, the *Paſtor General* (as it were of the Church of CHRIST.) And though Pope ***Boniface***, by the grant of that bloody Tyrant *PHOCAS*, got that title from him: yet the Patriarchs of *Conſtantinople* made good their ground, never ſubmiting either themſelves, or their Churches to the Popes Authority: for that cauſe ſpecially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for *Sceiſmaticks*, accordingly reviled, and perſecuted with all kind of indignities. How it ſucceeded with theſe Patriarchs in the times enſuing, and by what means their juriſdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Muſcovie*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and Eaſt, hath been ſaid already. Certain it is, the conſtant reſidence of the Emperours, from the time of *Conſtantine*, gave great ground unto it: of whom I ſhould here add the Names, but that I muſt firſt ſum up the affairs of *Thrace*, before the building of this mighty and predominant City; and take a brief view of the reſt of thoſe Provinces, which we have comprehended under the name of ***Greece***.

Concerning which we are to know, that the antient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strimonii*, *Bardi*, *Dolongi*, *Sapæi*, *Saii*, and ſome others; united by moſt Writers in the name of *Thracians*. Governed at firſt by Kings or Princes of their ſeveral Tribes, as moſt Nations elſe: diſtinguiſhed from the common people as in other pomps, ſo moſt eſpecially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themſelves apart, and were not to be worſhipped by the beſt of their Subjects. Theſe not agreeing well together for the common good, gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*; a good opportunity to invade their Countrey, to ſeize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them: the Coutrey in thoſe times being meanly peopled, and conſequently giving that advantage unto the *Grecians*; as the *Indies* in theſe later times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portugueze*, *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon* proving bad neighbours hereunto upon all occaſions, at laſt provoked *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*; to put in for a ſhare; who being choſen *Arbitrator* betwixt two Competitors for that kingdom (drawn at laſt into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with ſuch poor attendants as *Juſtice* and *Piety*, but with a great and puiſſant *Army*: wherewith having vanquiſhed and ſlain the two *Pretenders*, he pronounced ſentence for himſelf, aud made *Thrace* his own; compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their *Revenue* for his yearly tribute. After the death of *Alexander*, this Countrey was ſeized on by *Lyſimachus*, as his part of the ſpoil, who here built the City *Lyſimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians* now accuſtomed to the forein yoak, were either Subjects, or at leaſt Tributaries to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their wars againſt the *Romans*, they incurred the diſpleaſure of that people; who having ſetled their affairs in other places, and repulſed the *Cimbri*; thought it fit time to call the *Thracians* to account for their former actions: but ſped ſo ill in the attempt, that *Porcius Cato* loſt his whole Army in the on-ſet, cunningly intercepted in their woods, and faſtneſſes. *Didius* the *Prætor* coming in, whilſt the *Thracians* were buſie in the chaſe, gave them ſuch a ſtop, that he deſerved a *Triumph* for it: and made the Victory more eaſie to *Metellus*, who ſuc-

Thrace. ceeded *Cato* in that charge, and *triumphed* alſo over them; as alſo did *Lucullus* on another Victory. A. V. C. 680. Broken with ſo many ill ſucceſſes, that they were finally ſubdued by *Piſo* in the time of *Auguſtus*: becoming ſo obſequious to that fortunate Prince, that ***Rhitemalces***, a great and puiſſant King hereof, aided him with a ſtrength of Horſe againſt the ***Pannonians***, and *Illyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, in *Conſtantines* new Model it became a *Dioceſe*, under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*: *Thrace* it ſelf being caſt into four Province, that is to ſay, *Thrace* ſpecially ſo called, *Hæmimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia*, and the *Lower Mæſia*, ſpoken of before, being added to it: of which the Preſidents of *Rhodope* and *Hæmimontum*, were not to be appealed from to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, as the others were; but only to the *Præfect* of *Conſtantinople*, the *Imperial* City. But as *Alphonſus*, King of *Caſtile*, ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, was once heard to ſay (never the *Wiſer* for ſo ſaying) That *had he ſtood at the elbow of* Almighty God, *when he made the World, he would have ſhewed him how ſome things might be better ordered*: ſo give me leave to play the fool, and to ſay this here, that had I ſtood at *Conſtantines* elbow, I would have counſelled him to lay the *Dioceſe* of *Thrace* to the *Præfecture* of *Illyricum*, who had originally only the Dioceſes of *Macedon*, and *Illyricum* under his command; and not have placed it under the *Præfect* of the Eaſt, who had both *Aſias*, and all *Ægypt*, under his Authority. For being that there lay *Appeals* from the *Vicars* of Lieutenants of the ſeverel *Dioceſes* to their ſeveral and reſpective *Præfects*, how great a trouble muſt it be to the ſubjects of *Thrace*, on every occaſion of *Appeal*, to poſt to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the *Præfect* of the *Orient*, when *Sirmium* and *Theſſalonica*, the ordinary reſidences of the *Præfectus* Præterio for *Illyricum*, were ſo hard at hand? But *Conſtantine* was an abſolute Prince, and might do what he liſted. He had not elſe removed his ſeat ſo far towards the Eaſt, and left the Weſtern parts of the Empire open to the barbarous people, out of a fancy only to preſerve the Eaſtern. For that it was a fancy only the event did ſhew, the *Perſians* for all this, prevailing more than ever formerly; and *Thrace* it ſelf, though honoured with the *Imperial* City, and planted with ſo many *Roman* Colonies, ſo ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay waſte and deſert many ages after. Inſomuch as the *Goths* being by the *Huns* driven over the *Danow*, were by the Emperour *Valens* planted in this Countrey, (the Emperour having a deſign to uſe them in his following Wars) where not contented with the portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, waſting the whole Province, taking divers Towns, and endangering *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, from whence not driven, (*Valens* himſelf being killed in the War againſt them) but by the coming of ſome *Saracens* to the aid of the Citizens. Nor could the reſidence of the Emperours ſo protect this Countrey, but that it was continually haraſſed and depopulated by the *Sclaves*, *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, *Saracens*, and other barbarous people falling in upon it: nor hinder one *Bryonnius* in the time of *Michael Ducas*, and *Nicepharus Botoniates* from aſſuming to himſelf the title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* race from getting ground every day on the *Leſſer Aſia*, incroaching upon *Thrace* it ſelf, and in the end obtaining the *Imperial* City.

And here perhaps it is expected, conſidering the *Turks* are now poſſeſſed of *Thrace*, and the reſt of *Greece*, that we ſhould make relation of the nature of that people, their cuſtoms, forces, policies, original, and proceedings. But the diſcourſe thereof we will defer till we come to *Turcomania*; a Province of *Aſia*, from whence they made their firſt inundations, like to ſome unreſiſtible torrent into *Perſia*; and after into the other parts of the World now ſubject to them. And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our deſcription of the reſt of *Greece*, conſiſting of the Ilands ſcattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Ægaan*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian* Seas: leaving out ſuch as properly belong to *Aſia*, to our deſcription of that Countrey, though otherwiſe *Greek* Ilands, and ſo accounted both for their Language and Original.

The ILANDS of the *PONTICK* and *PROPONTICK* SEAS.

Before we come to the deſcription of theſe Ilands, we muſt firſt look upon the Seas in which they lie: beginning with the *PONTICK* firſt, becauſe the *Greateſt*, and that which doth communicate and convey its waters unto all the reſt. A Sea made up Originally of the confluence of thoſe mighty Rivers (the greateſt in thoſe parts of the World) which do fall into it: that is to ſay, the *Danow*, *Boryſthenes*, and *Tanais* falling out of *Europe*, beſides many other fair and large Rivers (though of leſſer note) to the number of at leaſt an hundred, which pay tribute to it: the whole compaſs of it being 2700 miles; in form, by ſome reſembled to a *Scythian Bow* when it is bended. A Sea not ſo ſalt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with Ice in Winter; ſeldom remitted in the Spring on the Northern ſhore: the Traffick of it wholly in a manner engroſſed by the Turks, who is maſter of all the Sea-coaſt of it, ſave what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim-Tartar*. At firſt called Ἄξενος from the inhoſpitableneſs of the neighbouring people; whch being brought to ſome conformity, cauſed the Sea to be called Εὔξενος. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Siniſtrum*, becauſe in the way from *Rome* to *Aſia Minor*, it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, for its greatneſs; and the *Black Sea*, becauſe of the great miſts thence ariſing. Others not improbably affirm, that it is called the *Black Sea*, from the dangerous and black ſhipwracks here happening. For it is a very dangerous ſhore full of Rocks and Sands: and for this cauſe there is on the top of an high Tower, a Lanthorn, in which there is a great pan full of pitch,

rozen,

Propontis.

rozen, tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the ſhore. This Sea being the biggeſt of all thoſe parts, gave occaſion to them which knew no bigger, to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant, deerant quoque littora ponto*; and in another place the ſame Poet, —— *nil niſi pontus & aër*; a better reaſon doubtleſſe of the name, than that of the *Etymologiſts*: Pontus, *quia ponte caret*. Of this Sea the chief Iſles are *Thinnius*, and *Erithinnus*, little famous.

From hence the Sea bending Southwatd, is brought into narrow bounds, nor being fully a mile broad; and called *Thracius Boſphorus*: *Thracius*, for its ſite nigh *Thrace*; and *Boſphorus*, for that Oxen have ſwom over it, and hath no Iland worth naming. Fortified on each ſide with a very ſtrong Caſtle, that on the *Aſian* ſide being the elder and the leſſer, is by the *Greeks* called *Aſio Caſtron*; by the *Turks* named *Acce-chiſar*: The other juſt oppoſite to it, by the *Turks* called *Genichiſar*; by the *Greeks* named *Neo Caſtron*, or New Caſtle. This laſt the work of *Mahomet* ſurnamed the *Great*, in the beginning of his reign: in bigneſſe not inferior to a little City; built by him in or near the place of the antient *Damalis*, environed with a wall 22 foot broad, and containing three great Towers; their wall exceeding 10 yards in thickneſs, exceeding well ſtored with all ſorts of Ordinance and Ammunition. By the *Engliſh* commonly called the *Black Towers*, partly becauſe ſeated at the entrance of the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and partly becauſe they ſerve as a Priſon for Malefactors of principal note, who ſeldom are diſcharged thence, till releaſed by death.

This Streight having continued 26 miles in length, openeth it ſelf into the *Propontis*, 30 miles in compaſs; confined with *Thrace* on the one ſide, and with *Bythinia* on the other: ſo as they which ſail in the middle, may deſcry the land on all parts. Now called *Mare di Marmore*, from the Iland *Marmora*, which formerly called *Proconneſus*, hath for its abundance of *Marble* purchaſed this new name. The ſoil apt for Vines, and not deſtitute of Corn, yielding alſo good paſturage for Goats, whereof here is plenty, with an incredible number of *Partridges* amongſt the Rocks: the Country of *Ariſtæus*, a famous Poet, who flouriſhed in the times of *Crœſus*. Antiently it had in it two Cities of the ſame name with the Iland, called the *Old* and *New* Proconneſus; the former firſt built by the *Mileſians*, an *Aſian* people; the later by the natives of this Iland. But both theſe being long ſince decayed, it hath now only a ſmall Village towards the North, with an Haven to it; inhabited by *Greeks*, as is all the reſt of the Iland: ſuch *Chriſtian Slaves* as are in great numbers imployed here by the *Turks* in digging Marble for their *Moſques*, and other buildings, being only ſojourners, not houſe-keepers, and therefore not accompted amongſt the Inhabitants. Here is alſo in this *Propontick* Sea, the Iſle of *Cyzicus*, but being it is on *Aſia* ſide, we ſhall there ſpeak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a leſſer Channel, is called *Helleſpont*, from *Helle*, daughter to *Athamas*, King of *Thebes*, who was here drowned. Over this famous *ſtreight* did *Xerxes*, according to *Herodotus*, make a bridge of boats to paſſe into *Greece*: which when a ſuddain tempeſt had ſhrewdly battered, he cauſed the Sea to be beaten with 300 ſtripes; and caſt a pair of *Fetters* into it, to make it know to whom it was ſubject. *Xerxes* in this expedition wafted over an Army conſiſting of two millions and 164710 fighting men, in no leſſe than 2208 bottoms of all ſorts. When all the *Perſians* ſoothed the King in the unconquerableneſſe of his forces; *Artabanus* told him, that he feared no enemies but the Sea and the Earth; the one yielding no ſafe harbour for ſuch a Navy; the other not yielding ſufficient ſubſiſtence for ſo multitudinous an Army. His return over this *Helleſpont* was as dejected, as his paſſage magnificent, his Fleet ſo broken by the valour of the *Greeks*, and the fury of the Sea: that for his more ſpeedy flight, he was compelled to make uſe of a poor fiſherboat. Neither yet was his paſſage ſecure; For the boat being overburdned, had ſunk all, if the *Perſians* by caſting away themſelves, had not ſaved the life of their King. The loſſe of which noble ſpirits ſo vexed him, that having given the *Steerſman* a golden Coronet, for preſerving his own life: he commanded him to execution, as a Co-author of the death of his ſervants. It is now called the *Caſtles*, or *the Sea of the two Caſtles*; which two Caſtles ſtand one on *Europe*, the other on *Aſia* ſide: in the Towns of *Seſtos*, and *Abydos*. Theſe Caſtles commonly by the Turks called *Dardanelli*, are exceeding well built, and abundantly furniſhed with munition. They ſearch and examine all Ships that paſſe that way: they receive the *Grand Seigneurs* cuſtoms, and are in effect the principal ſtrength of *Conſtantinople*. At theſe Caſtles, all Ships muſt ſtay three days; to the end, that if any *Slave* be run away from his maſter, or thieves have ſtolen any thing, they may be in that place purſued and apprehended. So that theſe Caſtles are as it were the out-works of *Conſtantinople* to defend it from all invaſions, and from any force which may come unto it by Sea, out of the *Mediterranean*; As for the ſafety thereof, from ſuch as may find paſſage out of the *Euxine*, there are ſituate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Boſphorus* the two ſtrong Caſtles, the one above *Conſtantinople* on *Europe* ſide: the other on the *Aſian ſhore*, which before we ſpake of. No *European* Iſle of note in either Streight. And therefore on unto

The ILANDS of the *ÆGEAN* SEA.

Helleſpont, after a forty miles courſe, expatiateth its waters in the *Ægean* Seas; ſo called either from *Ægeus*, the father of *Theſeus*, who miſdoubting his ſons ſafe return from the *Minotaure* of *Crete*, here drowned himſelf: or ſecondly, from *Æge*, once a principal City, in the prime Iland *Eubœa*: or thirdly, becauſe that the Ilands lie ſcattered up and down like the leaps of a wanton Goat; from the *Greek* αἰγεῖος,

The chief Ilands of it are, 1. *Samothrace*, 2. *Thaſſus*, 3. *Imbrus*, 4. *Lemnos*, 5. *Eubœa*, 6. *Salamis*, 7. *Ægina*, Lemnos.

7. *Ægina*, 8. the *Cyclades*, 9. the *Sporades*, and 10. *Cythera*: all which, eſpecially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the *Ilands* of the *Arches*; the Sea being by the *Mariners* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatneſs, compared unto the narrow Seas which lie about it.

I. *SAMOTHRACE* is a ſmall Iland oppoſite to the Coaſt of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; ſo called *quaſi Samos Thraciæ*, to difference it from the *Aſian Samos*, bordering on *Ionia*. Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the *Trojan*, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Ariſtotle* writing of the Common-weal of theſe *Samo-Thracians*, telleth us that it was firſt called *Leucoſia*, and afterwards *Samus*, from *Saus*, the ſon of *Mercury* and *Rhene*, the letter M. being interpoſed. It is now called *Samandrachi*, plentifull in Hony, and Wild Deer, and better ſtored with commodious harbours, than other in theſe Seas. It hath a Town of the ſame name with the Iland, ſituate on an high hill on the North part hereof, overlooking a capacious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infeſting of theſe Seas, in a manner deſolate.

II. *THASSUS*, another little Iland on the ſame Coaſt, oppoſite to the influx of the River *Neſſus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Pliny* called *Æria*, and *Æthria*; by *Ptolemy*, *Thalaſſia*; at the preſent, *Thaſſe*. In compaſſe betwixt forty and fifty miles, ſufficiently fruitful, well repleniſhed with woods, and yielding good ſtore of the beſt Wines. Mountainous in ſome places, but thoſe mountains fraught with *Quarries* of excellent *Marble*, which the *Romans* called *Thaſſian*, from the Iland: and in the times of *Philip* and *Alexander* the *Great*, ſo rich in Mines of uſeful metals, that thoſe Kings received yearly 80 talents for their *Cuſtoms* of them. It hath one Town of the ſame name with the Iland, ſituate on a large plain in the North part of it; bordering on a goodly Bay, which ſerves for an *Haven* to the Town: and on the South parts where the Countrey is more mountainous and hilly, there are two Towns more, each of them ſituate on an hill; but the names thereof occurr not amongſt my Authors.

III. *IMBRUS*, another ſmall Iland, now named *Lembro*, is ſituate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian Cherſoneſſe*: in compaſſe about thirty miles, but more long than broad, ſtretching North and South; and diſtant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Iland mountainous for the moſt part, except towards the Weſt; where it hath ſome pleaſant and well-watered plains: in which a town of the ſame name ſituate at the foot of the mountain, once ſacred unto *Mercury*, but not elſe obſervable.

IV. *LEMNOS*, an Iland of more note, lyeth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbrus*; memorable amongſt the Poets for the fabulous fall of *Vulcan*; who being but an homely brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great paſſion thrown out of Heaven, and falling on this Iland, came to get his halting. Howſoever, he was antiently worſhipped by the people hereof, and from hence called *Lemnius*. In compaſs about an hundred miles, but more long than broad, extended from the Eaſt to the Weſt: on every ſide well furniſhed with convenient *Creeks*, and ſome pretty Havens; by which the want of Rivers is in ſome ſort recompenſed.

The Countrey for the moſt part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Ilands, but otherwiſe ſwelled with riſing mountainets; the enterpoſed valleys being very fruitful of wheat, pulſe, wine, fleſh, cheeſe, wool, flax, linnen, and all other neceſſaries, only wood is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was ſaid, yet have they good fiſhing on the Sea-coaſt, for their uſe and ſuſtenance; and in ſome parts *Hot-baths* for health and medicine. But the chief riches of this Iland is in a *Mineral Earth* here digged, of excellent Vertue for curing wounds, ſtopping of fluxes, expulſing poiſons, preſervative againſt infections, and the like: called *Terra Lemnia*, from the place; and *Terra Sigillata*, from the ſeal or *Character* imprinted on it. For being made up into ſmall pellets, and ſealed with the *Turks* Character or *Signet*, it is then, (not before) ſold unto *Merchants*; by whom diſperſed over moſt parts of the *Chriſtian* world. Upon the ſixt of *Auguſt* yearly they go to gather it; but not without much Ceremony, and many religious preparations: brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Iland; and ſtill continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, who are the principal in the work. There is one hill only where it groweth, the top whereof being opened, they diſcover the vein, reſembling the caſting up of worms, and having gathered as much of it that day, as the *Prieſts* think fit, it is cloſed again; certain bags of it being ſent to the *Grand Seigneur* yearly, the reſidue *ſealed* up, and ſold to the forein Merchant.

But to return to the *Topography* of the place, the Eaſtern parts hereof are ſaid to be fat and fruitful, the Weſtern very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and thoſe three gariſoned by the *Turks*; who being Lords of the whole Iland, have new named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dioſpolis*. Of which the firſt was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Iland, as large and well-peopled now, as ever formerly, but of no great eſtimation, when it was at the beſt: ſeated upon an high hill looking over the Sea; with a handſom market-place, on which mount *Athos* caſts a ſhadow, though diſtant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name, called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* ſtill remaining. 2. The ſecond of the two Cities was then called *Hephæſtias*, memorable for the temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephæſtiades*; ſince deſolate and deſtroyed, and a new Town built in the place of it, being called *Cochino*. This Town not great, but of a reaſonable

ſtrength

Eubœa.

ſtrength, memorable for the ſtout reſiſtance, which a notable *Virago* named *Marulla*, made againſt the *Turks*, in the time of *Mahomet* the *great*; the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Iſland. For ſuddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpoſe to ſurpriſe this Town, they found more reſiſtance at the Gates then they did expect; none more commended then this Maiden, who ſeeing her Father ſlain, took up ſuch weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, until the reſt of the Citizens wakened with the Alarum, came unto her reſcue, and forced the enemy to retire. Near hereunto is the hill on which *Vulcan* is fabled to have fell, more eminent for the *mineral earth* here only gathered. And not far from hence *Pliny* reports a *Labyrinth* to have ſtood in the days of old; little inferior unto thoſe of *Crete* or *Ægypt*, the ruines of it ſo decayed, that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3. The third place of note is *Setira*, though an ordinary village, yet memorable for the Chappel in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their *Oriſons* on the ſixth day of *Auguſt*, before their gathering of their Earth, ſo often mentioned. In this Country antiently reigned **Thoas**, the ſon of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whoſe time the women of the Iſland upon ſome diſpleaſure murdered all the men, the King only excepted, preſerved by *Hypſiſſe* his daughter, whom they made their Queen, and by whom *Jaſon* with the *Argonautes* were ſo kindly entertained for two years together, that they had almoſt forgot their intended expedition for the Golden Fleece, ſhe her ſelf being got with child by *Jaſon* at his being there, the other women probably following her example: Following the fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at laſt under the power of the *Conſtantinopolitan* or *Eaſterne* Emperors; in the ſubverſion of that Empire by the *Latines* or Weſtern Chriſtians (of which more hereafter) it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*, who held it till the year 1463. or thereabouts.

Beſides theſe on the coaſt of *Thrace*, there are alſo ſome of leſs note on the ſhores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are 1. *Peparinthus*, as *Ptolomy*; *Evonus*, as *Pliny* calls it, containing about forty miles in compas; now called *Sarquius*, as *Caſtaldus*, or *Limene*, as *Niger* hath it, fortified on the Eaſtern part with a Caſtle built upon a Rock. Others of leſs note are 2. *Scyathos*, now *Scyathi*, 3. *Scopelos*, 4. *Alloneſus*, 5. *Cicynethus*, now *Pontico*, and 6 *Dromus*, of which little memorable. All which, together with thoſe formerly deſcribed on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, being but the *Acceſſories* of the ſeveral *Continents*, upon which they border, followed the fortune of the *Principal*, and were conquered in them.

V. *EUBOEA* known to the Antients by the names of *Macris*, and *Abantis*; to the Moderns, by that of *Necropont*, frontireth all along the Coaſt of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in fertility; one part hereof, torn away from it by an *Earth-quake*, and lying ſtill ſo near unto it, that between the Iſland and the *Continent* is only a little *Euripus*, which ebbeth and floweth ſeven times in one day. The reaſon of which, when *Ariſtotle* could not find, it is ſaid, that he threw himſelf in the Sea, with theſe words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me.* In this Iſland is the Promontory *Capareus*, where *Nauplius* the Father of *Palamedes*, placed his falſe fires, to the deſtruction of ſo many *Greeks*. For underſtanding his ſon *Palamedes*, whom he deemed to have been ſlain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherouſly circumvented by the policy of *Ulyſſes*, and *Diomedes*; he conceived ſuch a diſpleaſure againſt the whole hoſt of the *Grecians*, that he intended their general deſtruction. To this end he cauſed fires to be made on the tops of the moſt dangerous and unacceſſible rocks, in this whole Iſland; which the *Greeks* taking (according to the cuſtom of the time) to have been the marks of ſome ſafe Haven, made thitherward, and were there miſerably caſt away, there periſhing 200 ſhips, and many thouſand men. But when *Nauplius* underſtood how *Diomedes* and *Ulyſſes*, whoſe ruines he principally intended, were eſcaped, he drowned himſelf for very vexation, in this very ſame place. *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius* ſon, is ſaid to have invented four Greek Letters, *viz.* θ, χ, ξ, φ, to have firſt inſtituted *Centinels* in an Army, and to be the firſt inventer of the *Watch-word*.

It is in length 150 miles, ſtretched out from the North-weſt, to the South-eaſt, in breadth, not above twenty, where it is broadeſt; the whole compaſs 365 *Italian* miles. The Queen of the *Ægean* Sea, not only for greatneſs, but for fertility and ſtrength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyle, Fruit, and wood fit for ſhipping, enriched with many fair Harbours, and capacious *Bayes*, and thoſe well fortified; watered alſo with the Rivers of *Cireus* and *Neleus*, two Rivers of ſo ſtrange nature, that if a ſheep drink of the former, his wool turneth *white*, but *coal-black*, if he drink of the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is alſo ſaid to be a ſtone called *Aminthus*, which is drawn into thred like hemp, and good cloth made of it; which, when it is ſtained, inſtead of being ſent unto the *Fullers*, is thrown into the fire, and ſo cleanſed. But whether this be ſo or not (for I put it only upon hear-ſay) certain it is, that it was once enriched with *Mines* both of Braſs, and Iron, though thoſe now decayed; and *Quarries* of pure *Marble*, which continue ſtill.

The Iſland, before it was conquered by the Turks, was very populous; but the people moſt delighted to live in Villages; the Cities or walled Towns being only three. 1. *Cariſto*, antiently *Caryſtus*, with little or no variation, but by *Pliny* called *Ægea*, and *Chironia*, memorable for its marble quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Calyſtiæ*. 2. *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the Turks *Eribos*, ſeated on a plain near the waters ſide, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay, called the *Golf of Negropont*; a populous, ſtrong, and wealthy city, ſo fortified with walls and bulwarks, that in the judgment of moſt men, it was held invincible, when the *Turks* firſt ſate down before it. Nor was it purchaſed by the *Turk* (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Conſtantinople*, undertook the buſineſs) at a lower price, then the loſs of forty thouſand men, who were ſpent upon it: but taken at

the

Salamis.

the laſt, and the people put unto the ſword, without conſideration of Sex, or Age. A Town in former times of ſo great wealth and power, that it ſent Colonies abroad into *Macedonia* (a principal Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidica*) as alſo in *Sicil*, and ſome part of *Italy*; and had a ſtrong influence on the affairs of *Achaia* alſo, as being ſituate ſo near the Continent, that it was joyned to it by a bridge. When it was in the hands of the K. of *Macedon*, this Town, together with *Demetrias* in *Theſſaly*, and the Caſtle of *Acrocorinth*, were called the fetters of *Greece*: inſomuch, that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the father of *Perſeus*, to ſet the *Grecians* at liberty, the *Grecians* made anſwer, that in vain was their *liberty* reſtored to them, unleſſe theſe three Towns were firſt diſmantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Laws, in memory of that benefit, they refuſed to declare againſt them in behalf of *Antiochus*; who thereupon made himſelf maſter of the Town, and conſequently of the Iland. But forced to leave the place upon the loſſe of the battel at *Thermopylæ*, it became free again; till finally made ſubject unto *Rome*, with the reſt of *Greece*, and with it made a part of the Eaſtern Empire. In the diviſion whereof amongſt the *Latins*, it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*; who from hence uſed with their Gallies to infeſt the ſhores of *Turky*, and diſturb their trade. Provoked wherewith, eſpecially with their taking of *Ænus* a City of *Thrace*, under the conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that enterpriſe had took 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into the Iland: *Mahomet* the *Great* reſolves upon the conqueſt of it; and with a puiſſant Army ſets before the Town. And though it coſt him dear, yet at laſt he got it, and therewith all the Iſland alſo, which depended on the fortunes of it, *An.* 1471.

VI. *SALAMIS* is nigh unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*; famous for the overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes*, by the *Athenians*, and their confederates. What was the number of the Souldiers and Gallies of the *Perſian* ſide hath been already declared. The *Grecian* fleet conſiſted of no more than 270 veſſels, whereof 127 were rigged and ſet forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only; the reſt by the *aſſociates*. Yet was the *admiralty* committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedæmonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common ſafety, before an unſeaſonable contention for priority. The *Spartans* ſeeing the inequality of forces, intended not to have hazarded the battel, but with full ſail to have retired to *Peloponneſus*, into which Countrey the *Perſians* had made incurſions, reſpecting more the welfare of their own Countrey yet defenſible, than the deſperate eſtate of *Attica*. This deſign was by *Themiſtocles* (as carefull for the eſtate of *Athens* as they for *Sparta*) ſignified to *Xerxes*: who getting between them and home, compelled them to a neceſſity of fighting; but to his own ruine. For in the conflict more than 200 of his ſhips were ſunk, and moſt of the reſt taken; the *confederates* having loſt of their Navy, forty onely. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megarenſes* were many contentions for this Iland; the fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the ſame name, the royal ſeat of *Telamon* the father of *Ajax*, ſo famous in the war of *Troy*: more memorable for giving birth to *Solon* the *Legiſlator* of *Athens*, one of the ſeven wiſe men of *Greece*.

VII. *ÆGINA*, now called *Engie*, an Iland ſituate over againſt *Sinus Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægean*, hence called *Galfo di Engia*, the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his juſtice and integrity one of the three *Judges of Hell*: the other two being his brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been called *Oenone*, and *Oenopi*; but took this name from *Ægina* the daughter of *Aſopus* a King of *Bœotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is ſaid to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The people hereof are properly called *Æginenſes* and *Æginetæ*, much ſpoken of in the wars of *Athens*, from which diſtant about 12 miles. The ground hereof is very ſtony, but good for barley, of which very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving people, to whom they gave in thoſe dayes the name of *Mirmydons*, (the Iland being alſo called *Mirmydonia*) *quod formicarum more terram foderent*, becauſe *Emmet-like*, they digged up and under the earth, to make it the more fit for tillage; and dwelt at firſt in *Caves* without any houſes. Hence the occaſion of the fable of turning *Emmets* into men at the prayers of *Æacus*; both tale and people, after (I know not how) carried into *Theſſaly*, where before we found them.

VIII. The *CYCLADES*, ſo called becauſe they lie in a *circle* round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are alſo called the *Ilands* of the *Arches*, becauſe they are in the Sea called *Archipelago*. They ſtand ſo cloſe together, that in a clear day a man may ſee 20 of them at a time; for which cauſe it is with good reaſon accounted to be a dangerous place for ſaylers in a ſtorm. The chief of theſe *Cyclades*, are 1. *DELOS*, *quaſi* Δῆλος, ſignifying *apparent*, becauſe when all the earth had abjured the receipt of *Latona*, at the requeſt of *Juno*; this Iland then under water, was by *Jupiter* erected aloft, and fixt to receive her; and in it was ſhe delivered of *Apollo* and *Diana*: of which thus *Ovid*,

———— *Erratica* Delos
Errantem accepit, tunc cum levis inſula nabat,
Illic incumbens, ſub Palladis *arbore palmæ;*
Edidit, invita, Gemminos Latona, *noverca.*

Unſetled *Delos* floating on the wave,
A little Iland entertainment gave
To wandring *Laton*, ſpight of *Juno*'s head,
Under *Minerva*'s Palm-tree brought to bed.

Not:

Cyclades.

Notable alſo is this Iſland for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a cuſtom, neither permitting men to die, or children to be born in it; but ſending ſick men, and great bellied women to *Rhene*, a ſmall Iſland, and not much diſtant. By a more antient name it is called *Ortygia*; and by that name mentioned in many of the Poets both Greek and Latine. The chief Town of it called alſo *Delos*, is ſituate on a plain environed with Rocks, near the Hill called *Cynthus*: whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delius*, and *Delia*, from the Iſland. In this Town had *Apollo* both his Temple, and *Oracle*, delivered here more plainly than in other places, and for that reaſon (as ſome ſay, called *Delos*; the word in Greek ſignifying *manifeſt* or apparent:) made famous by the reſort of people from all places hither, eſpecially from the neighbouring Iſlands; who ſent yearly multitudes of men, and troops of Virgins, to celebrate his ſolemnities with herds of Sacrifices. More wealthy afterwards by the removing of the Trade of *Corinth* hither; that Town being utterly deſtoyed by the *Romans*, and this made choiſe of by the *Merchant*; partly by reaſon of the immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient ſituation betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*. Continuing in great wealth and power, till *Mithridates* laid it waſte; and at laſt on the ceaſing of *Oracles*, uterly forſaken. Both Town and Iſland now called *Diles*. By which name alſo *Rhene* an adjoyning Iſland (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polycrate* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the leaſt in name.

2. *TENOS*, by *Ariſtotle* called *Hydruſa*, by ſome *Ophiuſſa*, by the Moderns, *Tyna*. The chief Town of it of the ſame name; ſo called from one *Tenes* the builder of it, and giving name unto that Iſland. Memorable for a Fountain called *Dipnoſus*, of which *Ariſtotle* and *Atheneus* do both affirm, that the waters will not mix with wine. The only Iſland of this Sea, which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*; the reſt being ſubject unto the *Turk*; deſerving therefore the firſt place in our deſcription of thoſe Iſlands that encompaſs *Delos*; though antiently

3. *ANDROS*, (*prima inter Cyclades*) was reckoned chief amongſt the *Cyclades*, or firſt at leaſt in order, becauſe next to *Delos*: originally called *Cauron*, afterwards *Antandros*, and at laſt *Andros*; from *Andrus* the Son of *Eurimachus*, who founded the chief Town in it, of the ſame name alſo. Memorable for a pleaſant Fountain mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof, on the *Nones* of *January* yearly had the taſte of wine. It ſtill retains the name of *Andros*.

4. *NAXOS*, now *Nicſia*, one of the biggeſt of the pack, as being about 80 miles in compaſs. In antient times called *Veneris inſula*, or the Iſland of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionyſia*, by reaſon of its abundance of wine, and the goodneſs of thoſe wines together, conſecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the Greeks call *Dionyſius*: From its wonderful plenty of Wheat, called by ſome *Sicilia minor*, or the *leſſer Sicil*; but at laſt *Naxos*, from one *Naxos*, who had the conduct of a Colony of *Carians* thither. But notwithſtanding this new name, *Bacchus* did ſtill retain the honour to be worſhipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marrying here *Ariadne*, (as the Poets fable) whom *Theſeus* had left upon the Rocks: whoſe Coronet or Chaplet being by his means made one of the heavenly Conſtellations, is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*, by the name of the Iſland; though commonly by Aſtronomers, *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The women of this Iſland are ſaid by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth moneth; as *Bacchus* was, more certainly famous in true ſtory for the beauty and fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent Marble called *Ophitis*, or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapred with blew or purple ſpots, in much eſteem amongſt the *Romans*. When theſe Iſlands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on *John Quirino*, a *Patritian*, or Gentleman of that City, (as they did divers of the reſt on other *Undertakers*) from whom it came to the Noble Family of the *Criſpos*, who held it till the year 1572. when *James* the laſt of that Houſe loſt it to *Selymus* the ſecond.

5. *GYAROS*, a little Iſland into which the *Romans* uſed to baniſh *Delinquents*: hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys*,

> *Aude aliquid brevibus* Gyaris, *vel carcere dignum*,
> *Si vis eſſe aliquid*; *probitas laudatur*, *& alget*.
>
> If thou intend'ſt to thrive, do what deſerves
> Short *Gyaros*, or *Gives*: prais'd vertue ſtarves.

6. *PAROS*, now *Paria*, by ſome of the Antients called *Pactia*; by others, *Minois*; but obtained this new name from *Parus*, a Son of *Jaſon*: Memorable for quarries of the whiteſt Marble, of which commonly the Statues of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the Latines. In compaſs about 50 miles, running in a long plain from Eaſt to Weſt, having once a Town of the ſame name ſeated in the North; once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careleſs of keeping their promiſes and contracts: whence ἀναπαριάζειν, grew into a *by-word*, applyed to thoſe who made no reckoning of their promiſes. There is now a Town in it called *Cephalo*, but of no great note.

7. *SCYROS*, oppoſite to *Magneſia* in *Aſia Minor*, famous for the birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*;

and that it was the lurking place of *Achilles.* For his Mother T*hetis* being forewarned by an Oracle, that he ſhould be ſlain in the Trojan War, ſent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Iſland; where he was brought up in Womans Attire among the Kings Daughters, and deemed a Virgin; till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the Kings Daughter, it was proved to be otherwiſe. Others relate that *Ulyſſes* diſcovered him by a wile, who coming thither like a Pedler or Petit-Merchant, with Arms, and other ware to avoid diſtruſt, expoſed his Merchandiſe to the view of the Damoſels: and that the other Ladies falling on the tires and laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the Speer and Shield. Which when *Ulyſſes* had obſerved, he made him leave that Company, and away for T*roy*. The handſomneſs of the fraud take from *Ovid*, thus,

Conſcia venturi genitrix Nereia *fati*
Diſſimulat cultu natum; *& deciperat omnes,*
Inquibus Ajacem, *ſumpta fallacia veſtis.*
Arma ego Fœmineis animum motura virilem
Mercibus inſerui, &c.

Thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandys* in his Tranſlation of the *Metamorphoſis.*

The whole deſign in order to relate,
T*hetis* fore-knowing great A*chilles* fate,
Diſguis'd her Son, ſo like a Virgin dreſt,
That all miſtook, and A*jax* with the reſt.
When Arms, with Womens trifles, which might blind
Suſpect, I brought to tempt a manly mind.
Yet was the *Heros* Virgin-like araid;
Who taking up the Shield and Spear, I ſaid,
O Goddeſs born, for thee the fate of *Troy*
Her fall reſerves; why doubtſt thou to deſtroy
Great P*ergamus*! then made him d' off thoſe weeds:
And ſent the mighty unto mighty deeds.

There is another of this name, betwixt *Negropont* and *Lesbos*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the Scene of this Action: but the general opinion is for this, (though that the greater:) to which the ſituation of it amongſt the reſt of thoſe Iſlands where reigned ſo many of the *Greek Kings* intereſſed in the War of *Troy*, ſeems to give good countenance; the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in thoſe dayes, ſo much towards the North.

8. *MELOS*, ſituate betwixt *Crete* and *Peloponneſus*, and equally diſtant from them both: the Promontories of *Scylleum* in the one, and that of *Dyctymaum* in the other, ſhooting out againſt it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phœnicians*, who coming out of *Biblus*, a Town of that Country, gave that name unto it: called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of Honey. The birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philoſopher, hence ſirnamed *Melius*, but morre properly Ἄθεος, or the *Atheiſt*: the firſt who in thoſe dark times of ignorance, abſolutely denyed that there was a God. *Protagoras Deos in dubium vocavit*, *Diagoras excluſit*, ſaith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compaſs. The ſoil ſufficiently fruitful in Corn and Oile, but defective in Wine. Here is great plenty of Marble curiouſly beſpotted, and no ſmall ſtore of milſtones: as alſo great quantities of pitch and brimſtone, and ſome ſulphury or hot ſprings, good for many diſeaſes. The chief Town of it is called *Milo* alſo.

9. *SERIPHUS*, 20 miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the education of P*erſeus*, the Son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Iſland, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but ſuch as are brought from other places, keep their natural tone; from whence Proverbially, ſilent and ſullen perſons were called *Ranæ Seriphiæ*. It is now called *Serphena*, a ſtony and rocky Iſland, and hath a Town of the ſame name.

10. *CIA*, by ſome called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, oppoſite to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Sunium*, in compaſs about 50 miles; made the Weſt in faſhion of a Creſcent or half-Moon. Mountanous and hilly, except towards the North. By P*liny* ſaid to have been torn from *Eubœa* by a ſudden violence of the Sea, many men periſhing in the waters. Of old times beautified with three fair Towns, 1. *Julis*, 2. *Carthaa*, and 3. *Careſſus*; of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whoſe names occurr amongſt the Antients, as *Miconus*, now called *Micole*; 12. *Cynthus*, now *Cauro*; 14. *Syphnus*, now *Siſino*; 15. *Theraſia*, or T*hueſia*, now *Santorini*; 16. *Cymolis*, called formerly *Echinuſa*, but now Polino; 17. *Olyarus*, now *Quiminio*; 18. *Sicenus*, now *Sicino*; 19. P*olyegros*, now *Falconara*; 20. A*murgos*, now *Murgo*, one of the biggeſt of them all, but not elſe obſervable.

The *SPORADES*, ſo called from σπείρω, *ſpargo*, *eo quod in mari ſparſa ſunt*, *& non in circulum coacta*, becauſe they lie diſperſed and ſcattered; not formed into a Circle, as the *Cyclades* are. In number

Sporades.

number twelve, *viz.* 1 *Anaphe*, ſo called by the *Argonautes*, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀναφανείσας σκοτυμένης, becauſe the Moon did ſuddenly, and beyond her natural courſe, appear unto them, then grievouſly diſtreſſed by tempeſt. *Apollo* worſhipped here, is hence called *Anaphæus*. It is now called *Namphio*. 2 *Aſtypalea*, now *Stampalia*, in compaſſe 88 miles; by ſome of the *Antients* called *Theon Trapeza*, or the *table of the Gods*. In *Aſtypale*, the chief Town of it, was *Apollo* worſhipped, from hence ſometimes called *Aſtypaleus*. 3 *Helene*, ſo called from that fair *Greek Dame*, whom *Paris* is here ſaid to have firſt defloured: now called *Macroniſo*. 4 *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is ſaid to have been buried: but others find his grave at *Naxos*, and ſome at *Chios*; the difference being almoſt as great about the place of his *burial*, as the place of his birth. Then are 5 *Laguſa*, 6 *Phocuſa*, 7 *Phacaſia*, 8 *Philocandros*, 9 *Schinuſa*, 10 *Strybia*, of little note either in Poetry or ſtory. And finally *Thera*, not far from *Ægina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Calliſte*; but named thus by *Theras* a *Theban* Gentleman, the ſon of *Auteſion*, conducting hither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Minyans*, (theſe laſt of *Theſſaly*) caſt out of *Lemnos* by *Pelaſgus*: in memory of whom, as the founder of their name and Nation, the Ilanders uſed to celebrate an Annual Feaſt. A ſedition after happening among this people, the weaker party under the Conduct of one *Battus*, admoniſhed ſo to do by the *Oracle* of *Apollo*, paſſed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*: the birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who aſcribes his Original to this Iland, as himſelf thus wineſſeth.

Καλλίστη προπάροιθε, τὸ δ᾽ ὕστερον οὔνομος ἤρη,
Μήτηρ εὐίππου πάτριδος ἡμετέρη.

That is to ſay:

Calliſte, which men *Thera* now do call,
Of my dear Country, the *Original*.

X. CYTHERA, now called *Cerigo*, lyeth in the bottom of this Sea, not above five miles diſtant from *Capo Malo* in *Peloponneſus*; formerly called *Porphyris* from the abundance of *Marble*, whereof the Iland yeelds good plenty. In compaſſe about 60 miles, enriched with a delightfull ſoyl, and many Havens, but thoſe ſmall and unſafe, and very difficult of entrance: environed on all ſides with rocks, of themſelves inacceſſible, by which defended from the *Turks*, who hitherto have ſuffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it; to whom it fell in the diviſions of the ſpoil amongſt the *Latines*, ſo often ſpoken of before. It had a Town of the ſame name; ſome two furlongs from the Haven ſtood the Temple of *Venus*, (the antienteſt dedicated to that goddeſſe which the *Grecians* had) and therein her *Statua* in complete Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the ruins whereof are ſtill to be ſeen) was *Helen* the wife of *Menelaus*, willingly raviſhed by *Paris* the ſon of *Priam*; but not enjoyed by him, till he had brought her to a ſmall Iland of the *Sporades*, by her name called *Helene*, as before is ſaip. From the devotions of this people paid ſo duely to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cytherea*; by which often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*;

Parce metu Cytherea; *manent immota tuorum*
Fata tibi...

That is to ſay.

Drive fear fair *Cytherea* from thy mind,
Thou thy ſons Fate immoveable ſhalt find.

And ſo I paſſe from the *Ægean* to the *Cretan* Sea, obſerving this only by the way, that moſt of the 69 Kings, which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the war of *Troy*, were Kings only of theſe ſmall Ilands; or elſe of other places as inconſiderable for wealth and potency: every ſmall town and territory having in thoſe early times, amongſt the *Grecians* (when *ambition* had not taught the great ones to devour the leſſe) a peculiar King.

The ILANDS of the CRETAN SEAS.

The CRETAN SEA is properly that part of the *Ægean* or *Jonian* Seas, which lieth about the ſhores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the command and power thereof: as in thoſe times, the Sea about *Carpathos*, another Iſle of the *Ægean*, had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*; though ſituate in the *Ægean* alſo. The Iſles hereof are 1 *Crete*, 2 *Claudi*, 3 *Dia*, and 4 *Letoa*: for *Melos* and *Cimolis*, named by *Ptolomy* amongſt the Ilands which adjoyn on *Crete*, have been already ſpoken of amongſt the *Cyclades*, in the account whereof they paſſe by conſent of Writers.

1 CRETE, now *Candie*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Carpathian* Sea; on the Weſt, the *Jonian*; on the North, the *Ægean*; on the South, the *African* or *Libyck*. In form extending Eaſt and Weſt, with three points or *Promontories*, whereof that towards the Eaſt, called antiently *Samonium*, is now called *Capo di Salamone*; that on the South-weſt, looking towards *Africk*, formerly named *Hermea*, now

Crete.

Capo Grapaſſe; and finally that on the Northweſt towards *Peloponneſus*, of old called *Cimarus*, and now *Capo Cheſtin.* This laſt directly oppoſite to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being ſo troubleſome and tempeſtuous, eſpecially on *Laconia* ſide, that at laſt it grew into an ordinary *caveat*, *Maleam prætervectus obliviſcatur quæ ſunt domi, viz.* that he which was to ſail by the point of *Malea*, ſhould lay aſide the care of all other matters, and attend his preſent ſafety only.

It hath in ſeveral Ages, and in ſeveral Authors, obtained ſeveral names: by *Homer* and *Euſtathius* called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities then contained in it; by *Pliny* and *Solinus*, *Macaros* and *Macaroneſos*, that is to ſay, the *happy Iland*, from the goodneſſe of the ſoyl, and temper of the Air. By *Stephanus*, *Idæa*, from *Ida*, a famous Mountain of it; by *Giraldus*, *Telchionia*, from the *Telchini*, the Prieſts of *Cybele*, who was here had in great requeſt. At the preſent, *Candie*, either *à candore*, from the *whiteneſs* of the rocks wherewith environed; or from *Candie* the *Metropolis* or chief town thereof. But the general name which hath prevailed moſt in all ſorts of writers, is that of *Crete*, ſo called *quaſi cureta*, by a *Syncope*, or abbreviation from the *Curetes*, the firſt inhabitants hereof: who together with the *Coribantes* and *Telchini*, were the Prieſts of *Cybele*, the principal goddeſſe of this Iland; and they ſo called ἀπὸ τῆς κουρᾶς, from their *tonſure* or ſhaving of the head. A cuſtome much in uſe amongſt the Prieſts of ſome of the *Pagan* Deities, and poſſibly enough from them tranſmitted to the Church of *Rome*. And to this *Etymologie* I do rather incline, than either to derive the name from *Crete*, the ſon of *Jupiter*, and the Nymph *Idea*; or from *Crete*, the daughter of *Heſperus*: though both theſe have their Authors alſo. Nor dare I to reject the conceit of *Bochartus*, who fetching the *Etymons* of moſt people from the *Punick* language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be deſcended from the *Cerethites*, a Nation of the *Philiſtins*, well known in Scripture; the word *Cereth* being abbreviated into *Creth*, from which into *Crete*, and *Cretans*, is no difficult paſſage. But in my mind his conjecture is better than his prooff. For though it may be granted without inconvenience, that the chief arms of the *Philiſtins*, were their *Bow* and *Arrows*, as appears 1 *Sam.* 31. 3. and that the *Cretans* antiently were expert at thoſe weapons alſo: yet this concludes no more that the *Cretans* were of the race of the *Philiſtins*, than that almoſt all Nations elſe had the ſame Original; the *Bow* and *Arrows* being the ordinary weapons of moſt people formerly, till cuſtom and experience trained them up to others of a later date; as he himſelf acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate tractates.

In reference to the heavenly bodies, it is ſituate under the beginning of the fourth *climate*; ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a quarter. And in relation to the earth, ſet in the middle of the Sea, at ſo even a diſtance from *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*, as if naturally deſigned to be what *Ariſtotle* hath pleaſed to call it, the *Lady* and *Miſtreſſe of the Sea.* For it is diſtant from *Peloponneſus*, an hundred miles, as many from *Aſia the leſſe*, and not above 150 from the ſhores of *Africk*: So verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis *magni medio jacet inſula* Ponto.

Joves birth-place *Crete*, a fruitful land,
In the middle of the Sea doth ſtand.

It is in length 270. in breadth 50 miles, in compaſſe about 590. The ſoil is very fruitfull, eſpecially of wines which we call *Muſcadels*, of which they tranſport yearly 12000 *Buts*; together with Sugar-Candie, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Orenges, Lemmons, Raiſons, Melons, Citrons, Pomgranats. Yet as other Countries of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in corn; the moſt or greateſt part of which is yearly brought hither from *Peloponneſus*.

The Iland is very populous, inſomuch that it is thought that upon any ſudden occaſion, the *Seigneury* of *Venice* can raiſe in it 60000 men able to bear arms. The people have formerly been good ſea-faring men; a vertue commaculated with many vices, which they yet retain, as envy, malice, and lying: to which laſt ſo infinitely addicted, that an horrible lye was called proverbially *Cretenſe mendacium.* This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimenides*, a Native of this Iſland, whoſe words thus cited by S. *Paul* in that to *Titus cap.* 1. *v.* 12.

Κρῆτες ἀεὶ ψεῦσται, κακὰ θηρία, γαστέρες ἀργαί.

The *Grecians* alwayes lyers are;
Unruly beaſts, of labour ſpare.

To which this Proverb may be added, *viz.* Τρία Κάππα κάκιστα, that is to ſay, There are three Nations whoſe names begin with the letter K, worſe than any others; *viz.* Καππάδοκες, Κρῆτες, Κίλικες, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though ſome I know apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capua*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the ſame letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day they are ſick of their old diſeaſes, as great Lyers, and as idle as ever formerly; covetous withal, and very ſubtile, impatient of labour, and not caring to learn any ſcience perfectly: only well practiſed in ſhooting, to which accuſtomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert than the *Turks* themſelves.

The language generally ſpoken is the *Greek* tongue, though the Gentleman and Marchant by reaſon of their dependence on the State of *Venice*, ſpeak *Italian* alſo. Both Languages uſed alſo in Divine

Crete.

vine offices, the people being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* ſervice uſed alſo in many places, ſince the ſubjection of this Iland to the *Venetians*. Converted firſt unto the faith by S. *Paul* the Apoſtle, who having planted the Goſpel of life amongſt them, left the *watering* of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Biſhop of this Iſle: recommending unto him the care of the Churches there, with power of *Ordination* and *Eccleſiaſtical cenſure*, as appears clearly by the Text. Which power, that it belonged to *Titus* as Biſhop, and not their *Evangeliſt* only, is affirmed expreſly, not only by the ſubſcription of the ſaid Epiſtle, where he is plainly called τῆς Κρητῶν ἐκκλησίας πρῶτον Ἐπίσκοπον, the firſt Biſhop of the Church of the *Cretans*: but by the concurrent teſtimonies of *Euſeb. Eccl. Hiſt. l.* 3. *c.* 4. S. *Ambr. in præfat. ad Tit.* S. *Hieron. in Tit. c.* 2. *v.* 5. and in his tract *de Scriptor. Eccleſiaſticis*. *Theodoret* cited by *Oecumen. in præfat ad Ep. Tit. Oecumenius* himſelf in *Tit.* 1. and finally by *Theophylact*, in his Preface to the ſame Epiſtle. All which in plain terms call him *Biſhop*, and the Biſhop of *Crete*; according unto that ſenſe and meaning of the word *Epiſcopus*, as it was uſed in their times diſtinct from *Preſbyter*. The Church hereof whileſt wholly under the *Greek* Patriarch was governed by four Archbiſhops, and 21 Biſhops. But ſince the ſubjection of this Iſland to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbiſhop, which is he of *Candie* the chief City, and eight Biſhops only: beſides the titular Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, who hath there his reſidence; ſome Prelate of the *Latine* Church having been alwayes honoured with that empty title, ever ſince the recovery of that City from the Weſtern *Chriſtians*.

Famous was this Iland amongſt the Antiens for many things, memorized both by the *Poets* and old *Hiſtorians*. For here reigned *Saturn* in the firſt ages of the World, father of *Jupiter*, born here and ſecretly nurſed in the hill of *Ida*. For ſeeing that by the compact betwixt *Saturn* and his brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own life only, but all his male children to be murdered as ſoon as born; *Jupiter* by the care of his mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and ſecretly nurſed in Mount *Ida*, as before was ſaid: the crying of the Infant being drowned by the noiſe of loud-ſounding Cymbals, purpoſely uſed by his *Rockers* to avoid diſcovery. Whence afterwards the *Corybantes* or Prieſts of *Cybele*, uſed in her ſacrifices the like *muſical* inſtruments, continually ſounding, and withall ſhaking of their heads (like *Fidlers*) in an *antick* and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*,

Non te progenitum Cybeleius *ære canoro.*
Luſtravit Corybas,

That is to ſay;

No *Cybeleian Corybas* that day
That thou waſt born, did on his *Cymbal* play.

Here alſo lived *Minos* and *Radamanthus*, whoſe Laws were after imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*; and who for their equity on earth, are feigned by the Poets to be (together with *Æacus*) the *Judges in Hell*. In this Iland alſo lived the lewdly-luſtfull *Paſiphae*, wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a fable) to have doted on a white Bull, who they ſay, begat on her the *Minotaure*; *Dædalus* having framed for her an *artificial cow*, into which ſhe conveyed her ſelf, and by that means obtained her deſire. The fable is thus expounded, that *Paſiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Minos* Secretaries: whoſe company by the *pandariſm* of *Dædalus* ſhe enjoying, was delivered of two ſons, the one called *Minos*, the other *Taurus*. And whereas it is ſaid, that the *Minotaurs* was ſlain by *Theſeus*; like enough that the annual tribute of 7 children which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid in ſome priſon, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the keepers or jaylors. As for the action of *Paſiphae*, I think it not altogether impoſſible to be true, conſidering how *Domitian*, to vereſie the old relation, exhibited the like beaſtly ſpectacle in his *amphitheatre* at *Rome*: for thus ſaith *Martial*;

Junctam Paſiphaen Dictæo, *credite*, Tauro,
Videmus: accipit fabula priſca fidem.
Nec ſe miretur (Cæſar) *longeva vetuſtas*,
Quicquid fama canit, donat arena tibi.

The fables prov'd a truth; our eyes did ſee
The *Cretan* Bull ſport with *Paſiphae*.
What cauſe hath then *antiquity* to glory?
We ſaw it done, ſhe only heard the ſtory.

Finally, here was the ſo much celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dedalus* for the including and ſafe keeping of the *Minotaurus*; ſo full of various windings and turnings, that when any one got to the end thereof, it was impoſſible for him to come out, but by the help of a clew of threed. By this *Minotaur* (half a man, half a bull) the children of the *Athenians* paid yearly to *Minos* in way of tribute, are ſaid to be murdered; till killed by *Theſeus* ſon of *Ægeus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monſter, and gave him a clew of threed before ſpoken of, to conduct him out again: the moral or hiſtory whereof hath been ſhewn before. Nor muſt it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the *Geographer* who flouriſhed in the time of *Tiberius*

Crete.

Caſar, was of *Cretan* parents (though born in the Cities of *Amaſia*, in the Realm of *Pontus*) which adds unto this Iland as much true renown, as any of the fictions or ſtories, (be they which they will) of the former times.

Things moſt obſervable at the preſent are theſe that follow, 1. That it breeds no ſerpents, nor venomous worm, or ravenous or hurtfull creature; ſo that their ſheep graze very ſecurely without any Shepheard. 2. If a woman bite a man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it; which if true, then the laſt part of the priviledge foregoing (of breeding no hurtfull creatures) muſt needs be falſe. 3. They have an herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth, he ſhall feel no hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be believed who ſpeaks it. 4. Here is (beſides many other *medicinal* herbs) that called *Dictamnum*, or *Dictamnos*, of eſpecial virtue againſt poiſon, either by way of prevention, or preſent cure; peculiar only to this Iſland: it affordeth great ſtore of *Laudanum*, a juyce or gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain tree *Ciſto*, of which the mountains yield abundance; good to cauſe ſleep, if moderately and carefully taken, but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation, it brings the laſt ſleep upon a man, out of which not to be awakened, till the ſound of the laſt Trumpet raiſe him.

Chief Mountains of it, 2. *Ida*, now P*iſiloriti*, ſituate in the midſt of the Iland, begirt about with many fair and pleaſant Villages, ſheltred by it from the violence of Wind and Sun, the hill being ſo high that from the top hereof both ſides of the Iland may be eaſily ſeen. Here *Jupiter* is ſaid to have been ſecretly nurſed, from hence called *Idæus*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* uſe to ſhew ſome tracts of the antient *Labyrinth*, being indeed no other than the ruines of ſome larger Quarry; the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus* being ſo defaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any ruines of it. 2. *Dicte*, now called *Sethia*, in ſome places *Laſti*, ſo high, that all the winter long it is covered with ſnow; yet all the ſides thereof garniſhed with *Cypreſs* Trees, a mountain of ſuch fame, that the whole Iland ſometimes had the name of *Dictæa*, the City *Dyctinna*, the Promontory *Dictynnæum*, and the Herb *Dictamnos*, all ſeeming to take name from hence. 3. *Leuci*, a long chain of hills, ſo named from the whiteneſs of them, now called *De Marara*, and by ſome *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1. *Melipotamus*, 2. *Scaſinus*, 3. *Epicidnus*, and 4. *Divotro* towards the North; 5. *Populiar*, towards the Eaſt, and 6. *Limens*, toward the Weſt: none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of burden, ſcarce of little Barks. But that defect ſupplyed by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many *Creeks* and *Bayes*, ſome capacious Havens, and great ſtore of fiſh, among which a kind of bearded *mullet* reckoned among the delicacies of the antient *Romans*. By the convenience of which *Harbours*, their Fiſh-trade, and the ſituation of it in the midſt of the Sea; the people antiently were eſteemed ſo good *Sea-faring* men, that when the people of thoſe times did tax a man with any incredible report, they uſed to ſay, *Cretenſis neſcit pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no *Sayler*.

In former times there were reckoned in this Iland an hundred Cities, thence called *Hecatompolis*, of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolomy*: for ſo many of their names he gives us. Thoſe of moſt note were 1. *Gnoſſus* the ſeat-royal or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne*, the daughter of *Minos*, had the name of *Gnoſſis*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not farr off. 2. *Cydon*, or *Cydonia*, a Midland City (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apple, which the *Latines* call *Poma Cydonia*, amongſt whom they were in great requeſt, as they are at this day, (though by the name of *Adams apples*) amongſt the *Turks*; the moſt antient of all the Cities of *Creet*, many of which were at firſt Colonies of this; for which reaſon it was called commonly *mater urbium*. 3. *Eleuthera*, as *Ptolomy*; *Erythræa*, as the printed coppies of *Florus*, corruptly call it, one of the firſt Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4. *Miletum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolomy*, the place in which S. P*aul* left *Trophimus* ſick, as is mentioned 2 *Tim.* 4. 20. which happened when the Apoſtle hovered about that coaſt, as is ſaid *Acts* 27. 7, 8, &c. For that it could not be that *Miletum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Epheſus*, appeareth by his being at *Hieruſalem*, *Acts* 21. 19. and other circumſtances of the ſtory. 5. *Cortyna*, nigh to which ſtood the *Labyrinth* made by *Dædalus*: memorable alſo for a reed, growing on the River *Lenæus*, (near to which it ſtood) of which they made their ſtrongeſt Arrows, by *Virgil*, *Æneid.* 11. called *Spicula Cortynia*: as alſo for a light garment much uſed by Hunturs, which *Claudian* calls *Cortyniam veſtem*, apparelling *Diana* the great *Huntreſs* with it. 6. *Dictamum*, as P*tolomy*; or *Dictynna*, as P*liny* calls it, ſo named from the hill *Dicte*, near to which it is ſituate; one of the chief Cities of the North parts of this Iland; as 7. *Ampelas*, ſo named from its plenty of vines was upon the South. 8. *Minoa*, a Port Town (now called *Altomara*) ſo named from *Minos*, in the Eaſt; and 9. *Corytus*, on a Promontory of the ſame name in the Weſt ſide of it.

But theſe and almoſt all the reſt ſpoken of by P*tolomy*, being ſo deſtroyed by time and wars, that the ruines of them are hardly viſible, we muſt behold it in the preſent condition and eſtate thereof: divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities, that is to ſay, 1. *Sittia*, 2. *Candie*, 3. *Rhetimum*, and 4. *Canea*.

In the firſt part called *SITTIA*, lying towards the Eaſt, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Pariſhes: of which ſix only are of the Church of *Rome*, the reſidue holding the *Communion* of the Church of *Greece*; the principal whereof are 1. *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by ſome to be the *Ciſteum* of *Ptolomy*; a ſmall Town, but populous and very well fortified. 2. *Gerapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candie*, ſeated on the Sea-ſide on a lofty rock, at the bottom whereof is ſaid to be a dangerous whirlpit, ſuppoſed to be the P*anormus* of P*tolomy*. 3. S. *Macor*, the dwelling place of one of the Biſhops of the *Latines*.

Crete.

2. In the ſecond part hereof called the Territory of *CANDIE*, lying directly Weſt of *Sittia*, are reckoned 465 Towns and Villages, making up amongſt them 99 Pariſh Churches; whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*.. Of theſe the principal, 1. *Candia*, an Archbiſhops See, the *Metropolis* or head City of the Iland, which takes name from hence; ſituate on the North-coaſt hereof towards the *Ægean*, beautified with a ſafe and commodious Haven, and fortified ſo ſtrongly, that it ſeems impregnable; affirmed by ſome to be the *Matium* of the Antients; but I find no ſuch place in *Ptolomie*, or in *Ortelius* his *Theſaurus*. The City fair and large, built for the moſt part of free-ſtone, with low roofs, after the manner of *Italy*, the ſtreets broad and ſpacious: from whence a fair and pleaſant plain leadeth to a place called the *Cave* of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. 2. *Malviſin*, 3. *Themene*, 4. *Caſtell novo*, 5. *Bonifacio*, 6. *Belvedere*, 7. *Mirabello*; of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the territorie of *RHETIMO*, lying North-weſt of the territory of *Candie*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up of 44 Pariſhes, whereof 36 are *Grecians*, and but 8 of the *Latines*. The chief of which are 1. *Rhetimo* in the ſhore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Biſhops See; but not elſe obſervable. 2. *Melipotamo*, an Epiſcopal Sea alſo, ſo called of the River *Melipotamos*, on which it is ſeated, 3. *Agiſtiman*, 4. *Mandrus*, 5. *Lappa*, hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and laſt part hereof, being the territorie of *CANEA*, taking up all the Weſt of the Iland, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, diſtributed into 47 Pariſhes: of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church, and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Thoſe of moſt note are 1. *Canea*, built by a Colonie or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentlemen on the North Coaſt alſo, ſuppoſed to ſtand in the ſame place where once *Cydon* did; ſecond to none but *Candie* for wealth and beauty, but farr before it for the commodiouſneſs of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capable of more than a thouſand good Gallies at a time, and therefore ſtrongly fortified with two Citadels, or Caſtles, on each ſide of the Haven, one; as the door and entrance of the Countrey. 2. *Chiſamo*, in *Latine* called *Cyſamum*, old and decayed, the walls whereof only holding good againſt the ruines of time, ſituate in a low mooriſh place towards the *Ægean*. 3. *Selino*, built upon a hill on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to *Chiſamo*. 4. *Sfachia*, or *Spachia*, ſituate on the foot of the mountains, of old called *Leuci*, now *della Spachia* from this Town: unwalled, but fortified with a Caſtle, built for a place of refuge againſt the Incurſions of ſuch *Pirats* as annoyed the Coaſts; in which the Governour for his part hath his chief aboad. By which account it will appear that in the whole Iland are no more than 1044 Towns and Villages, 207 Pariſh Churches: of which there be but 48 which are accompted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the reſidue 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the ſtory of this Iland, we can aſcend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the ſon of *Uranus* and *Veſta*, or of *Heaven* and ***Earth***: who better favoured by his Mother, obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon wars ariſing betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, that *Saturn* for his own life ſhould enjoy the Kingdom, which after his deceaſe ſhould return to the *Titans*: and for performance of this contract the ſons of *Saturn* to be ſtrangled as ſoon as born. But *Cybele* the wife of *Saturn* unawares to her husband, preſerved firſt *Jupiter*, and after other of her ſons, which coming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his ſons, they made war againſt *Saturn*; but in concluſion were ſubdued by the aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring againſt the *Gods*, *Saturn* and *Jupiter* his ſon, being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquiſhed, a new war aroſe betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occaſioned only (as many unnatural wars ſince theſe times have been) by *fears* and *jealouſies*: which ending at the laſt in the flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became ſole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death: and dying was interred at *Gnoſſus*, with this Inſcription or Epitath in old *Greek* letters, ὃ Ζηνὸς τȣ̃ Κρόνȣ, that is to ſay, *Jupiter, the ſon of Saturn*. After his death worſhipped by the blind *Gentiels*, as the chief of their Gods; and honoured frequently with the title of Πατὴρ ἀνδρῶντε θεῶντε, the Father both of Gods and Men, though moſt incongruouſly and abſurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thouſands living, in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed, he being dead, *Minos* begotten by him on *Europa*, ſucceeded here: who wiſely taking the advantage which the convenient ſituation of the Iland gave him, made himſelf *maſter of the Seas*; and afterwards enlarged his Dominions, by the conqueſt of the *Megarenſes* and *Athenians*, upon which laſt he impoſed amongſt other hard conditions, a tribute of ſeven male children yearly, to be kept as *hoſtages*; determined after three years, by the valour and good fortune of *Theſeus*. But *Minos* being ſlain in *Sicilie* and his poſterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themſelves after the manner of a *Common-wealth*, or *Free State*: the Laws and Ordinances whereof firſt deviſed by *Minos*, were of ſuch eſteem, that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large deſcribed by *Ariſtotle* in the 2d. Book of his *Politicks*, ch. 8. Under this Government it continued, till the *Romans* having taken in all the reſt of *Greece*, picked a quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his war againſt them, yet *Florus* ſtates the matter rightly, affirming, that the war was undertaken on no other ground, but *ſola nobilem inſulam vincendi cupiditate*, a covetous deſire only of ſubduing ſuch a wealthy Iland. And to this war they went with ſo proud a confidence, that *M. Antony* who commanded in it, carryed more *chains* with him to bring home his Priſoners, than Arms to conquer them. An inſolence which he paid right dear for, his

Navy

Crete.

Navy being vanquiſhed by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his ſlain ſouldiers hanged upon the *Maſts*, and himſelf periſhing in the action, by a fit of ſickneſſe. *Metellus*, who ſucceeded him in that charge went on more ſucceſſefully, firſt taking *Gnoſſus*, *Eleuthera* (or *Erythræa*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydonia*, their principal Cities; and not long after all the Iland: uſing the vanquiſhed Ilanders with ſuch inhumanity, that moſt of them poiſoned themſelves to avoid his cruelty: rewarded with no other honour for ſo great a victory, then that he got the ſurname of *Creticus*; his triumph being denied by the faction of *Pompey*, againſt whoſe will he had put himſelf upon that ſervice. Thus added to the *Roman* Empire, it was united unto *Cyrenaica* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, both making up one Province only, governed by a *Proconſul* till the death of *Nero*: afterwards ſeparated from it, but the time I find not. During the reign of *Conſtantine*, in 36 years together there fell no rain, ſo that this Iland was in a manner wholly deſolated. But *Helena* the mother of *Conſtantine* having obtained rain for it by her prayers to God, it was again new peopled by ſeveral Colonies brought out of *Ægipt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoyning. By *Conſtantine* made a Province of the Dioceſe of *Macedonia*, it continued a member of the Eaſtern Empire till the time of *Michael Balbus*, when ſubdued by the *Saracens*: from whom recovered under the more fortunate conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire *Anno* 963. In the diviſion of the ſpoil amongſt the *Latines*, it was firſt given to *Boniface*; Narqueſſe of *Montferrat*, by whom ſurrendred willingly to the State of *Venice*, who had a mind to be poſſeſſed of all the Ilands of that Empire: he being recompenſed with the Kingdom of *Theſſalie*, the fair and wealthy City of *Theſſalonica*, and many Towns and territories in *Peloponneſus*. Under that State it ſtill continueth, in vain attempted by *Selymus* the ſecond, in the year 1571. at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*: and gallantly defended for this year laſt paſt, againſt all the forces of *Ibrahim* the late Grand Signeur. What the ſucceſſe of this war will be we ſhall ſee hereafter.

For the defence hereof againſt the inſurrections of the Inhabitants, who did at firſt ill brook the *Venetian* Government, there are ſome ſtanding forces kept in conſtant pay; beſides ſuch as are maintained in ſeveral Garriſons, the City of *Canea* having in it no fewer than ſix companies of ſouldiers, *Candie* 2000 ſouldiers, and the leſſer Cities proportionably: over which there is ſet ſo ſtrong a guard, that a natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the preſervation of their intereſt in it from a forrein power, they have furniſhed the Iland with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the ſhores: and have exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Suda*, with two ſtrong Caſtles, this Haven being capable of more than 1000 Veſſels, and therefore meritoriouſly reputed the door and entry into the Country. It is reported, that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the ſecond, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this Haven, money more than enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniard* ſeemed only to intend the retreat and relief of his own Navy, when he ſhould undertake any expedition againſt the *Turk*; yet the wiſe *Venetians* ſaw, that by this Haven he might at all times awe, and when he liſted, ſurprize the whole Country.

II. The other Ilands of this Sea, as of leſſer note, will be paſſed over in few words. The firſt of which is called *CLAUD*, mentioned *Act*. 27. 16. ſituate on the South-weſt of *Crete*, by *Mela* called *Gaulos*; wherein in *Plinies* time was a Town or City named *Gaudos*; now called *Golo*, with the Iland. 2. *DIA*, now *Standia*, a very ſmall Iland, and of little note. 3. *LETUA* on the South-eaſt of *Crete*, now called *Chriſtiana*. And 4. *ÆGILIA*, or *Ægialia* by *Plinie*, *Æglia*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponneſus*; now called *Ceterigo* by *Sophianus*. Of which, and others of leſſe note (if leſſe may be) there is no more to be ſaid, but that they have always followed the fortunes of *Crete*, on which they ſeem to have their principal dependance.

The ILANDS of the *JONIAN* SEA.

The *JONIAN* SEA is ſo called either from *Jonius*, the ſon of *Dyrachius*, whom *Hercules* having ignorantly killed threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preſerve his memory, as *Didymus* is of opinion; or from *Jona*, a Region in the extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Jo*, the daughter of *Inachus*, as *Lycophoron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean*, which lieth from the *Ægean* or *Cretan* Seas, unto the *Adriatick*, from which parted about *Epidamnum* (otherwiſe called *Dyrrachium*) as is ſaid by *Ptolomy*: or rather at the ſhooting out of the *Acroceraunean* hills, as affirmed by *Pliny* and other writers; and ſo along the ſhores of the two *Calabrias*, to the Iſle of *Sicil*. Chief Iſles whereof which paſſe in the accompt of *Greece*, (for of thoſe lying on the Coaſt of *Italy* we have ſpoken elſewhere) are 1. the *Strophades*, 2. *Zacynthus*, 3. the *Echinades*, 4. *Cephalenia*, 5. *Corcyra*, and 6. *Ithaca*.

1. The *STROPHADES* are two ſmall Ilands, now called *Strivalt*, lying againſt *Meſſene* in *Pelopouneſus*; famous for nothing but the *Harpies*, ravenous birds, affirmed to have the faces of women, but the talons of *Vultures*, ſent by the offended Gods, (as the fable goeth) for the puniſhment of *Phineus* King of *Arcadia*, who had put out the eyes of his ſons by a former wife, at the inſtigation of their *Step-dame*. For which ſo plagued by theſe *Harpyes*, that he could ſet no meat on his Table, whereſoever he was, but theſe ravenous creatures firſt devoured it, and then bewrayed the diſhes in which it was. Much pitied by the *Argonautes*, whom he had curteouſly entertained, they ſent *Zethus* and *Galais* the winged iſſue of *Boreas* and *Orythia*, who drave them thence, and having purſued them to thoſe Ilands, turned back again: whence the name of *Strophades*, Under which fable was

Zant.

contained the ſad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by *Flatterers*, Informers, and falſe accuſers, by whom their name and Government was made diſtaſtfull; till by good counſel they had purged their Courts of ſuch ugly monſters: concerning which *Alphonſus* King of *Naples* was uſed to ſay, that theſe *Harpies* had left the *Strophades, and dwelt at Rome.* They are inhabited only by ſome few *Greeck* Friers: and in one of them there is a ſpring of freſh water, which hath his fountain in *Peloponneſus*, and paſſing under the Sea, ariſeth here. The *Greek* Prieſts are called *Caloirs, quaſi καλοὶ ἱερεῖς, boni Sacerdotes.* About 33 in number; they wear long hair, never eat fleſh, and but ſeldom fiſh: feeding uſually on herbs, olives, oyl and the like. They never go out of the Ilands, neither do they, on any occaſion, permit women to come amongſt them. They all labour for their ſuſtenance, ſome in tillage, ſome in vineyards, ſome in fiſhing, ſo that among very many of them, three or four only can read. But of theſe ſomewhat hath been ſaid elſewhere already.

2. *Zacinthus* or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compaſſe; and diſtant from *Peloponneſus* 20 miles, ſo called of *Zacinthus* ſon to *Dardanus.* The Country is wonderfully ſtored with oil, wines, currans: of which laſt they made yearly 150000 *Zechines*, for their own coffers; and 48000 Dollars, which they pay for cuſtom to the Signeury of *Venice.* They were a very poor people when the *Engliſh* uſed to traffique there firſt, but now they grow rich and proud: At our Merchants firſt frequenting the Country, they much marvelled to what end they bought ſo many *currans*, and demanded whether they uſed to die cloathes, or fat hoggs with them; for ſo they themſelves did: but now they have learned a more profitable uſe of them. Here are alſo very good ſalt-pits, freſh water plenty, but little or no wood, and leſſe Corn; their ground being husbanded as the caſe ſtands with them, to their better advantage; but ſo that many times they are ready to ſtarve, if either the wind or the Sea prove croſſe unto them, and hinder them from fetching their proviſions both of fleſh and corn out of *Peloponneſus.* In which reſpect they are fain to hold fair Quarter with the *Turks*, conſidering how eaſie it is for him to diſtreſſe them for want of victual. The Iland is much troubled with *earthquakes*, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their houſes very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Prieſts are to ring the Bels, to ſtir the people to prayers. They have a cuſtom here at Weddings to invite many young men whom they call *Compeers*; of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring. Which done, it is accounted as deteſtable a ſin as Inceſt, to accompany her in any carnal kind; and therefore they chooſe ſuch to be their *Compeers*; who have formerly been ſuſpected of too much familiarity with her.

The Iland is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a ſpitefull and vindicative nature, not to be reconciled, if angred. It containeth in it 48 Towns and villages, the chief whereof which paſſeth by the name of a City is called alſo *Zant*, ſtretched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountain; but in bredth not anſwerable: beautified with a fair and convenient *Haven* opening towards *Greece*, ſafe from the danger of Pirates, though not of winds, capable of great fleets of ſhipping, both for bulk and number; and ſo frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to go out of it, need not ſtay for a paſſage: yet notwithſtanding this great concourſe and reſort of ſtrangers, the Town is rather rich, than well built or beautiful: the ſtreets hereof uneven and rugged, and the buildings, by reaſon of the often Earthquakes, very low. On the Eaſt ſide of it, on a round ſteep Mountain, ſtandeth a very ſtrong Caſtle, a little City of it ſelf, well garriſoned, impregnably fortified, and of a very difficult entrance: which commandeth not the City and Harbour only, but a great part of the Sea adjoyning. Upon the wall thereof continually ſtands a watchman, to deſcry what ſhipping is at hand, and hangeth out as many flags as he diſcovereth Veſſels. And over the door of the *Town-hall* (the better to inſtruct the Magiſtrates in their publick duty) it is ſaid theſe Verſes are inſcribed.

Hic locus 1 *odit*, 2 *amat*, 3 *punit*, 4 *conſervat*, 5 *honorat*,
1 *Nequitiam*, 2 *pacem*, 3 *crimina*, 4 *jura*, 5 *probos.*

Thus *Engliſhed* by *G. Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*,

This place doth 1 hate, 2 love, 3 puniſh, 4 keep, 5 requite,
1 Voluptious riot, 2 peace, 3 crimes, 4 Laws, 5 th' upright.

In matter of *Religion*, the people being generally *Greeks* both in birth and language, are for the moſt part of that Church alſo; but ſome adhere unto the *Latine*, each party having their own Biſhop: of which the *Greek* Biſhop hath his *Cathedral*, in the Church of *S. Nicolas*, near unto the Haven (which it giveth name to) and therein a Monaſtery of *Caloirs*, or *Monks* of *Baſil*; the *Latine* Biſhop hath his reſidence and *Cathedral* within the Caſtle, and therein a *Convent* of *Franciſcans*, The *Jews* have in this Town their *Synagogue* alſo: but there are not many of them, if not lately increaſed. In *civil* matters they are ſubject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whom they call the *Providore*) having his reſidence in the Caſtle, aſſiſted by a *Chancellour*, and two *Counſellours*, (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The fortunes of this Iland in former times, and by what means it fell to the *Venetians*, we ſhall ſhew anon.

The *ECHINADES* are certain little Ilands, or rather great rocks, now called *Curzolari*, famous for

no-

Cephalenia.

nothing but the great battel of *Lepanto* fought nigh them betwixt the *Venetians* and the *Turks*: the *Turks* having in their Navy 207 ſail of ſhips, the *Venetians* and their *confederates* but 145 of all ſorts. But it pleaſeth God to give the victory to the weakeſt: the iſſue of it being ſuch, that the *Turks* loſt 29000, men who were killed in the fight; 39000 more which were taken priſoners; 140 of their Gallies, 400 piece of Ordnance, and 200 *Chriſtian* Captives, which were then redeemed: the *Chriſtians* buying this great victory with the death of 7656 men or thereabouts; too great a price; could it have been purchaſed with a leſſe. A victory obtained not far from the point of *Actium*, wherein *Auguſtus* overcame the Navy of *Marcus Antonius*; and thereby got the Empire to himſelf alone, of which before he was but *Joint-tenant* with his Adverſary. So that this place ſeems to be marked out for a Stage of eminent actions; and that this latter *Naval* fight was but the ſecond part of the firſt.

But to return unto theſe Iſlands, they ſtand juſt againſt the mouth of the River *Achelous*; of which thus the Poet;

Turbidus objectas Achelous *Echinadas exit.*

Fierce *Achelous* with the Sea is mixt
Where the *Echinades* (great rocks) are fixt.

Theſe Ilands are in number five, feigned by the Poets to be ſo many *Naiades*, or Sea-Nymphes, whom *Achelous* the River God upon ſome diſpleaſure *Metamorphoſed* into theſe Rocky Ilands. But the truth is, that they were cauſed by the dirt and mud, which this River carried with it into the Sea, where at laſt it ſetled to firm ground. Of which himſelf ſaith thus in *Ovid*,

——————Fluctus noſtriq́; mariſq́;
Continuam deducit humum, pariterq́; revellit,
In totidem, mediis (quod cernis) Echinadas, *undis.*

The fury of the Sea-waves, and mine own,
Continual heaps of mud, and Earth drew down;
Which parted by the inter-running Seas
Made, as thou ſeeſt, theſe five *Echinades*.

4. *CEPHALENIA.*

CEPHALENIA, the moſt populous Iland of this Sea, is ſituate over againſt *Acarnania* part of the Province of *Epirus*, having on the South-Eaſt, *Zant*; on the North-weſt, *Corcyra*, or *Corfu*. In length containing 80 miles, 40 in bredth, the whole compaſſe being reckoned at 160. Once called *Tetrapolis*, from the number of four Cities in it: but three of them were decayed in the time of *Ptolomie*, who takes notice of no more than one, and that of the ſame name with the Iland. Woody and mountainous in moſt places: but the mountains intermixt with Valleys, and the Woods with champagn: plentiful in Wheat, Honey, Currans, *Manna*, Oil, incomparable, though not long-laſting *Muſcadels*; as alſo in Cheeſe, Wool, Turkies, and Powder for the dying of Scarlets. So deſtitute of water, as having no River and not many Fountains, that when their cattel would drink, they gape both morning and evening to receive the dew diſtilling inſenſibly from the clouds.

The people are for the moſt part *Greeks*, ſome few *Italians*, naturals of the Signeury of *Venice*, being intermixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed at 6000 famililes; the number of the towns and villages to 200 or thereabouts. The principal whereof 1 *Cephalenia*, fortified with good works, and a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2 *Argaſtolie*, an Haven town, diſtant ſix miles from *Cephalon*; the Port thereof capable of a ſufficient Navie. 3 *Sydere*, another Port-town alſo, lying towards the South.

As for the fortunes of this Iland, it was firſt called *Melena*; after *Teleboas*: and being known by that name, was made ſubject to *Thebes*, by the valour and good conduct of *Amphytryon*, the *Theban* General, by whom *Pterelas*, the King hereof, was ſlain in battel. During which war, and the ſtay of *Amphitryo* in this Iland, it hapned that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by miſadventure killed his wife *Procris* with an Arrow, which he ſhot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own countrey, fled unto *Amphytryo* his old friend, then newly victorious over the *Teleboans*: who pitying his caſe, made him the Governour of this Iland, ſince (from his name) called *Cephalenia*. Having continued for ſome time in the power of the *Thebans*, it paſſed together with *Zant*, and ſome other Ilands, into the hands of the *Macedonians*; from whom in the declining of their affairs, the *Achæans* got the Iſle of *Zant*, and the *Ætolians*, *Cephalenia*: but long they had not held them when the *Romans* began to look towards *Greece*, who under colour of ſetting the *Continent* at liberty, made themſelves maſters of both the *Iſlands*, that ſo they might at leiſure poſſeſſe the whole, as in fine they did. In the diviſion of the Empire they fell as parts of *Greece*, to the *Conſtantinopolitans*; and on the taking of that City by the Weſtern Chriſtians, they fell with almoſt all the reſt of the Ilands, to the State of *Venice*: the Governours whereof retaining *Corfu*, and ſome others of moſt importance in the hands of the *Signeury*, permitted theſe, (as many other of leſſe note) unto private Adventurers. At the concluſion of the peace betwixt *Mahomet* the *Great*, and the State of *Venice*, theſe two, with *Neritos* or *Leniadia*, (ſpoken of in *Epirus*) were ſeiſed on by that Tyrant in deſpight of that treaty or concluſion; as belonging unto private perſons, not to the *Republick*: recovered afterwards by the *Venetians* in the reign of *Bajazet* the ſecond, in the name of the State, and as parts thereof ſtill governed and defended by them.

Corcyra and *Ithaca.*

6. CORCYRA.

CORCYRA (now CORFU) more antiently was called *Phæacia*; took this latter name from a Nymph ſo called, whom *Neptune* is reported to have here deflowred. Situate over againſt *Epirus*, from which 12 miles diſtant, ſtretched out from Eaſt to Weſt in the form of a bow, the length whereof being 54 miles, 24 the breadth, and ſo the biggeſt of thoſe Seas. Commodiouſly ſeated for the Trade and Eſtate of *Venice*, as the Centre of their Dominion, and command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous, and defective in water, much ſubject to be blaſted with Southerly winds, and therefore they ſow little Corn, and plant leſs Fruits. The Northern parts level and delightful, adorned with whole Groves of Lemmons; Orenges, Figtrees, Olives, and Pomgranates; enriched with plenty of grain, abundance of Wines, great ſtore of Oile, and Olives, and moſt excellent Honey. Bleſt with a very temperate and healthful Air, made odoriferous by moſt pleaſant and ſweet ſmelling Fruits, which grow moſt plentifully in each parts hereof. *Alcinous*, who ſo courteouſly entertained *Ulyſſes* after his ſhipwrack, was once King of this Iſland: whoſe Gardens, anſwerable to the natural delights and ſweetneſs of it, are ſo much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus:

> *Quid bifera* Alcinoi *referam pomaria voſque,*
> *Qui nunquam vacui prodiſtis in athera Rami?*

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

> Why ſhould I name *Alcinous* fertile ground,
> And Trees which never without Fruit are found?

Towns of moſt note and ſtrength herein, 1. *Pagiopoli*, 2. *Caſtello*, *S. Angelo* of good eſteem in reſpect of many others, but far ſhort of 3. *Corfu*, the chief and ſtrongeſt of the Iſland, which the Turks have found by their frequent repulſes to be impregnable. For it is ſituate at the foot of a Mountain, on the top of which are built two inacceſſible Fortreſſes, as being ſtrongly fenced with a natural Rock. The one is called the *The Old Fortreſs*, and the other, *The New*: juſtly eſteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whoſe Trade and Power would ſoon decay, ſhould theſe Forts be loſt. For which cauſe the two Governours (for each Fort hath one) are ſworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold intelligence with one another, by word or writing: leſt by the treachery of the one, the other might be wrought alſo from his faith and duty. Neither is their command here for more than two years; their commiſſion then terminating, and new ſucceſſors being ſent them. The Town inhabited for the moſt by *Grecians*, as is all the reſidue of the Iſland: beautified with one of the moſt commodious Havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the reſidence of an *Archbiſhop*. A Town of ſuch a publick concernment, in regard of the ſtrength and ſituation, that it is accounted of as the key of *Venice*, and one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks of Chriſtendom againſt the encroachment of the *Turks*. The ſtory of it ſince diſmembred from the Eaſtern Empire, at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, we have had before.

7. ITHACA.

ITHACA, now called *Val de Campare*, lieth on the North-Eaſt of *Zephalenia*, being in compaſs fifty miles: moſt famous for the birth of *Ulyſſes*, the Son of *Laertes*; Of which thus the Poet,

> *Effugimus ſcopulo* Ithacæ, Laertiæ *Regna*,
> *Et terram altricem ſavi execramur* Ulyſſis.

> From th' *Ithacan* Rocks, *Laertes* Realm we fled
> And curs'd the Land which dire *Ulyſſes* bred.

It was alſo called *Dulichium*, or elſe there was ſome other Iſland of that name, not far from *Ithaca*, whereof *Ulyſſes* was alſo King, who is hence called *Dulichius Heros*, among the Poets: and in this Taunt of *Ajax* to him, *Dulichius vertex* ſignifieth the head of *Ulyſſes*.

> *Sed neque* Dulichius *ſub* Achilles *caſſide, vertex,*
> *Pondera tanta feret*;

Achilles helm's too great a weight, I trow,
For weak *Ulyſſes* head to undergoe.

But as weak a man as *Ajax* thought him, he was the Maſter wit of *Greece*, for the times he lived in, and one that did as good ſervice in the war of *Troy*, as the beſt ſword-man of them all. A war to which he went ſomewhat unwillingly, as fearing the ſad conſequences and events thereof: inſomuch that he feigned himſelf mad; ploughing the ſhore, and ſowing Salt inſtead of Corn. But *Palamedes*, to make trial whether this was real, or but counterfeit only; caſt young *Telemachus* the Son of *Ulyſſes* before the Plough: which he obſerving, either drove the Plough beſides him, or lifted it over him. Diſcovered by this means, and engaging with the reſt in the *Trojan* war, he found out the deſign of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it alſo: in the courſe whereof, by his Wit and Courage, he did very good ſervice: aſſociated with *Diomedes* in the action againſt *Rheſus* King of *Thrace*; and with *Palamedes* in forraging the Country for proviſions. By his policy was the *Palladium* ſtollen out of *Troy*, and conſequently the City taken and deſtroyed; whoſe fate depended on the preſevation of that fatal Relick. After the ending of the war, which held out ten years, he was with-held from *Ithaca* ten years longer by winds and tempeſts, and the diſpleaſure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*: in which he ſaved himſelf from the inchantments of the *Sirens*, the allurements of *Circe*, the cruely of *Polyphemus*; and after many dangers came home in ſafety. A man of ſo compleat a vertue, that *Homer* maketh him the pattern of a temperate and prudent man, in the Books called *Odyſſes*, (by his name as the *Greeks* pronounce it) as he doth *Achilles* in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect Souldier.

The Country is generally very rockie and barren, exceeding plentiful of Goats, but no Hares live in it: inhabited for the moſt part by Pirates and Exiles, men baniſhed out of civil ſociety, and willingly acknowledging no Superiour over them: but Subjects, if to any, to the State of *Venice*; which hitherto hath maintained theſe Iſlands againſt the *Turks*, though many times attempted by them in the moſt proſperous times of their arms and victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, with almoſt all the Iſlands of the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas (as being a people ſtrong in ſhipping, and ſo moſt able to preſerve a poſſeſſion of them:) ſome of the greateſt and moſt conſiderable, either for their riches, or commodiouſneſs of ſituation, were furniſhed with convenient garriſons in the name of the State. The reſt they did beſtow on the better ſort of Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own coſts and charges; who accordingly poſſeſſed themſelves of one, two, or more of them, as they were of ability to ſet out their Gallies for the keeping of them: the *Signeurie* having nevertheleſs a care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals: whereby they did not only preſerve thoſe Seas from the *Genoa* Pirats, but for long time defended all their Iſlands alſo as well againſt the *Greeks*, as the *Turkiſh* Emperours. But all the Iſles of the *Ægean* being loſt to the *Turk*, except *Cythera*, and *Tenos* on the *Europaean*, and *Carpathos* or *Scarpanto* on the *Aſian* ſide: they have now only *Crete* with the Iſles adjoyning, and thoſe of the *Ionian* Sea, under their command, and theſe (but eſpecially the Iſle of *Crete*) endangered at the preſent by the *Turkiſh* Tyrant.

Thus having took a view of the ſeveral Provinces and Iſles which belong to *Greece*, according to the antient and preſent ſtate of each particular: let us next take a view of the *Grecian* Emperors, who have had here their principal reſidence, and poſſeſſed the whole, though for a while their Empire was extended over all the Eaſt; as they here follow in this enſuing Catalogue of

The *Conſtantinopolitan*, *Greecian*, or *Eaſtern* EMPERORS.

A. Ch.

331 1 *Conſtantine*, ſurnamed the *Great*, having reigned 21 years in *Rome*, tranſlated his imperial Seat to *Conſtantinople* which himſelf had founded.

341 2 *Conſtantius*, the ſecond Son of *Conſtantine*, in the diviſion of the Empire, had for his partage *Thrace*, *Conſtantinople*, and all the Provinces of the Eaſt. After the death of his two Brethren he remained ſole Emperor, but reſided for the moſt part in the Eaſt; a great Patron of the *Arrians*, and as great a Perſecutor of the *Orthodox Chriſtians*.

366 3 *Julian* ſurnamed the *Apoſtate*, Son of *Conſtantius* the Brother of *Conſtantine* the *Great*; at firſt a Chriſtian, afterwards a profeſſed enemy of the Goſpel: fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Tranſalpine* Nations, whilſt he was a Chriſtian: prodigiouſly ſlain in the Perſian War, when become a Perſecutor.

368 4 *Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, choſen by the Army, a religious Prince, made Peace with the *Perſian*, and ſetled the Affairs of the Chriſtian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of mean Birth, but great ablities in War, was elected Emperor.

368 5 *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Conſtantinople*, and the Eaſt: *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome*, and the Weſtern parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* Faction, and the firſt who brought in the *Goths* on this ſide

of the *Danow*, whom he placed in the deſart places of *Thrace*, to the deſtruction of the Empire and himſelf to boot.

382 6 *Gratian*, the eldeſt Son of *Valentinian*, ſucceeded his Father in the Weſt, and his Uncle *Valens* in the Eaſt; after whoſe death he left *Italy* and the Weſt, to *Valentinian* his younger Brother. Diſtreſſed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodoſius* partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherouſly murdered by *Andragathius*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.

383 7 *Theodoſius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the Death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the 2d. on the Traytor *Eugenius*. He vanquiſhed the *Goths*, utterly ſuppreſt the Pagan ſuperſtitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* it ſelf; and ſtrengthened the Church of Chriſt with good Lawes and Ordinances.

399 8 *Arcadius*, the eldeſt ſon of *Theodoſius*, ſucceeded his Father in the Eaſt, as his Brother *Honorius* did in the Weſt: the *Roman* Empire after this laſt diviſion of it being ſo diſtracted and torn in pieces, that it was never ſince united.

412 9 *Theodoſius* II. ſon of *Arcadius*, made peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed againſt the *Hunnes* and *Perſians*, his more dangerous Enemies, and cauſed the *Epheſine* Council to be called againſt *Neſtorius*.

454 10 *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodoſius*, ſucceeded his Maſter, and maried with *Pulcheria* his Maſters ſiſter; he called the Council of *Chalcedon* againſt *Dioſcorus*.

461 11 *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joint conſent of the *Senate* and *Souldiery*, ſitting the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.

478 12 *Zeno*, the ſon-in-law and Lieutenant of *Leo*, ſent *Theodorick* and the *Goths* into *Italy* againſt *Odoacer*: A Tyrant and a great drinker, in one of his drunken fits, buried quick by his Empreſſe. In his time *Conſtantinople* was almoſt wholly deſtroyed by fire; in which periſhed amongſt other things 120000 Volumes of good Manuſcripts.

494 13 *Anaſtaſius*, a mean offider of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empreſſe created Emperor; a great Patron of *Eutiches*, yet fortunate in his wars againſt the *Perſians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Conſtantinople* beſieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great diſtreſſe, if *Proclus*, a famous *Mathematician*, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.

521 14 *Juſtin*, the ſon of a *Thracian* Shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anaſtaſius*; a Catholick Prince, and Patron of the Orthodox Clergy, whom he called from baniſhment.

528 15 *Juſtinian*, the Siſters ſon of *Juſtinus*, with whom firſt conſort in the Empire, recovered *Africk* from the *Vandals* by *Beliſarius*, and *Italy* from the *Goths* by *Narſes*; and finally reduced the Lawes of *Rome* into form and method.

566 16 *Juſtin* II. Nephew of *Juſtinian*, inſtituted the *Exarchate of Ravenna*, and loſt a great part of *Italy* to the *Lombards*. Unable of himſelf to oppoſe the *Perſians*, he choſe

577 17 *Tiberius*, one of his chief Commanders, to be conſort with him, who afterwards ſucceeded in ſole command.

584 18 *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his wars againſt the *Perſians*, from whom he recovered *Meſopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*; by whom at his return maried to *Conſtantine* his daughter, and declared his ſucceſſor. Refuſing to ranſom ſome of his ſouldiers, taken priſoner by *Caganns* King of *Avares*, he loſt the affections of his army.

604 19 *Phocas*, a common Souldier, in a military Tumult choſen Emperor, murdered the Emperor *Mauritius*, with his wife and children, and made Pope *Boniface* Supreme Biſhop or *Head of the Church*: ſlain in a popular Tumult by the common people for his luſts and cruelties.

611 20 *Heraclius*, a Noble man of *Conſtantinople*, choſen by the General conſent, repaired the ruines of the Empire, vanquiſhed the *Perſians*, recovered *Hieruſalem* out of their hands, and brought home the Croſſe unto *Conſtantinople* in triumphant manner, whence the feaſt called *Exaltatio Crucis*, *September* 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to diſperſe his dotages.

641 21 *Conſtans*, or *Conſtantine* II. ſon of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his wars againſt the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places; picking a quarrell with the *Romans*, he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choiceſt Ornaments which the *Gothes* and other barbarous people had left: and ranſacking the Iſle of *Sicil*, was there ſlain by the women.

670 22 *Conſtantinus* III. ſon of the former *Conſtantine*, from his long or early beard ſirnamed *Pogonatus*, repulſed the *Saracens* from *Conſtantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from paſſing over the *Danow*.

687 23 *Juſtinian* II. ſon of *Conſtantine* the III. ſubdued *Meſopotamia*, *Armenia*, and ſome part of *Perſia*; forcing the *Saracens* to ſue for peace, and become his *tributaries*. Againſt whom *Leontius* on the one ſide, and *Abſimarus* on the other ſeverally, taking armes, were declared Emperors; *Juſtinian* taken by *Leontius*, had his noſe cut off, and his perſon committed to cuſtody; but making an eſcape, by means of *Trebellin* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial dignity; and being too violent in the purſuit of his revenge, was finally murdered at the Altar by the command of .

713 24 *Philippicus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperor by the Souldiers, a great enemy of *Images*, which he cauſed to be caſt out of the Church: whereby incurring the diſpleaſure of

715 25 *Anaſtatius* II. called alſo *Artemius*, his principal Secretary, who thruſt himſelf into the Empire; forced to relinquiſh it by that Army which he had raiſed againſt the *Saracens*: in which tumult the City of *Conſtantinople* was ſacked and ſpoiled.

717 26 *Theodoſius* III. made Emperor in this tumult by the Souldiers, hearing of the approach of *Leo*, Commander of the Eaſtern Armies, reſigned the Empire, and took Orders, to preſerve his life.

718 27 *Leo Iſauricus*, in whoſe time *Caliph Zulciman* beſieged *Conſtantinople* the ſpace of three years; and when by Cold and Famine 300000 of the *Saracens* were ſlain, they deſiſted. At this ſiege was that fire invented, which we for the violence of it call *wild fire*; and the Latines, becauſe the Greeks were the Authors of it, *Græcus Ignis*: by which the *Saracens* ſhips were not a little moleſted. He was alſo a great Enemy to Images, for which cauſe hated by the Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the nick-name of *Iconomachus*.

741 28 *Conſtantinus* IV. Son of *Leo*, ſurnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized, he berayed the Font, followed his Fathers zeal in removing Images, which created him much trouble, one *Artabardus* being choſe Emperor againſt him, but at laſt defeated.

777 29 *Leo* III. Son of *Conſtantine Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo* the fourth, (*Leontius* the Uſurper, (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one) an Enemy of Images, and fortunate in his wars againſt the *Saracens*.

782 30 *Conſtantine* V. the Son of *Leo* and *Irene*, firſt governed the Empire with his Mother, by whom at laſt ſupplanted, and deprived of ſight, he dyed of a melancholly.

798 31 *Irene*, Wife of *Leo* the third, firſt conſort with *Conſtantine* her Son, and afterwards ſole Empereſs of *Conſtantinople*: for her better ſupport of which eſtate, ſhe ſided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the ſecond Council of *Nice*, for defence of Images. In her time *Charls*, ſirnamed the *Great*, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperor of the Weſt. For the Popes knowing their own greatneſs to grow out of the ruines of the *temporal* power, committed the Empire of the Weſt unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperors became much weakened; and the *French* being the Popes Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their devotion. In following times, when *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, was by Pope *Alexander* the third pronounced non-Emperor; *Emanuel* of *Conſtantinople* ſued for a re-union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this anſwer, *Non licere illi conjungere, quæ majores ejus de induſtria disjunxerunt*: Let no man preſume to joyn, what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put aſunder.

803 32 *Nicephorus*, a *Patritian*, made Emperor by the Souldiers, perſwaded that *Irene* had made choiſe of him to be her Succeſſor: ſlain in a pitch field againſt the *Bulgarians*.

812 33 *Michael*, ſirnamed *Curopalates*, from his Office, (the *Mayre* of the *Palace* as it were) Huſband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, aſſumed the Empire: which, finding his own weakneſſe, he did ſoon relinquiſh, and betook himſelf unto a Monaſterie.

814 34 *Leo* V. ſirnamed *Armenius* from his Country, General of the Horſe to *Michael*, demoliſhed the Images which his Predeceſſors had ſet up; ſlain in the Church during the time of Divine Service.

821 35 *Michael* II. ſirnamed *Balbus*, having murdered *Leo*, aſſumed the Empire; unfortunate in his government, and dyed of madneſs.

830 36 *Theophilus*, the Son of *Michael Balbus*, an Enemy of Images, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; loſing many battels to the *Saracens*, at laſt dyed of melancholly.

842 37 *Michael* III. Son of *Theophilus*, firſt with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto her ſelf the ſupream command; and after of himſelf ſole Emperor; his Mother being made a Nun.

866 38 *Baſilius*, ſirnamed Macedo, from the place of his birth, made conſort in the Empire by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus*, whom he baſely and treacherouſly murdered; killed caſually by a Stag.

886 39 *Leo* VI. for his learning ſirnamed *Philoſophus*, the Son of *Baſilus*, a vigilent and provident Prince; moſt of his time, with variable ſucceſs, ſpent againſt the *Bulgarians*.

912 40 *Conſtantine* VI. commonly called the ſeventh, Son of *Leo Philoſophus*, firſt under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his Mother, and after under *Romanus Lacopenus*, governed the Empire: by which laſt ſo miſerably depreſſed, that he was fain to get his livelihood by Painting. But *Lacopenus* being depoſed and turned into a Monaſtery by his own Sons, *Conſtantine* at laſt obtained his Rights, and reſtored Learning unto *Greece*.

961 41. *Romanus*, the Son of *Conſtantine*.

963 42 *Nicephorus*, ſirnamed *Phocas*, firſt Governor or Protector to the young Emperor *Romanus*; after whoſe death created Emperor by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greateſt part of *Aſia minor* from the power of the *Saracens*; ſlain in the night by *John Zimiſces*, his Wife *Theophania* being privy to it.

971 43 *John Zimiſces*, Emperor in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better than he did obtain it; vanquiſhing the *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, and others of the *barbarous* Nations; and left it at his death to the Sons of *Romanus*.

977 44 *Ba-*

77 44 *Baſilius* II. ſirnamed *Porphyrogenitus*, as many of the Emperours had been before him, in regard that at their births they were wrapped in purple (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyry*) the Imperial colour: ſubdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.

1027 45 *Conſtantinus* VII. or VIII. brother of *Baſilius*, and with him partner in the Empire; after whoſe death he governed three years by himſelf, but did nothing memorable.

1030 46 *Romanus* II. for his prodigality ſirnamed *Argyropolus*, husband of *Zoe*, the daughter of *Conſtantine* the 8. drowned in a Bath by the treaſon of his wife and her Adulterer.

1035 47 *Michael* IV. ſirnamed *Paphlago* from his Country, firſt the Adulterer, and afterwards the husband of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.

1042 48 *Michael* V. ſirnamed *Calaphates*, a man of obſcure birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he depoſed from the Government, and turned into a Monaſtry. Out of which being again taken, in a popular tumult, ſhe put out the eyes of *Calaphates*, and being then 60 years of age, beſtowed both the Empire and her ſelf upon

1043 49 *Conſtantine* IX. ſirnamed *Monomacus*, formerly husband to a Neece of *Romanus* the 2.

1055 50 *Theodora*, ſiſter unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Conſtantine*, managed for two years the affairs of the Empire, with great contentment of all people. But grown in age ſurrendred it to

1057 51 *Michael* VI. ſirnamed *Stratioticus*, an old, but military man, depoſed within the year by

1060 52 *Iſaacius*, of the noble family of the *Comneni*, valiant, of great courage, and diligent in his affairs; which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with conſent of the Senate and people; to

1063 53 *Conſtantine* X. ſirnamed *Ducas*, a great *Juſticiar*, and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his ſubjects, and contemned by his enemies.

1071 54 *Romanus* III. ſirnamed *Diogenes*, married *Eudoxia* the wife of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Took priſoner by the *Turks*, and ſent home again, he found a faction made againſt him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himſelf at his return, depoſed, and ſo died in exile.

1075 55 *Michael* VII. the ſon of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, ſirnamed *Parapinacius*, by reaſon of the famine which in his time happened, made Emperour in the aforeſaid tumult. But being found unable for ſo great an honour (the *Turks* prevailing in all places) he was depoſed again, and put into a Monaſtery.

1081 56 *Nicephorus* II. ſirnamed *Bolionates*, of the houſe of the *Phocas*, ſucceeded in the place of *Paripanace*, depoſed within 3 years by the *Comneni*.

1084 57 *Alexius Comnenus*, ſon of the Emperour *Iſaaicus Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whoſe time the Weſtern Chriſtians with great forces prepared for the recovery of the *Holy Land*. Of whoſe purpoſes being very jealous, he denied them paſſage through his Country; in the end forced to find them victuals and other neceſſaries.

1113 58 *Cala-Johannes*, the ſon of *Alexius*, had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, from whom he took *Laodicea* and ſome other places of importance. He alſo vanquiſhed the *Scythians* or *Tartars* paſſing over the *Iſter*, moſt of which he either ſlew in battel, or ſold as captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this ſide that River. He alſo conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, tranſporting many of them into *Bithynia*.

1142 59 *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger ſon of *Cala-Johannes*, an under-hand enemy to the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, and an open enemy to the *Turks*; by whom intrapped in the dangerous ſtreights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miſerably cut off, he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.

1180 60 *Alexius* 2. ſon of *Manuel*: depoſed and barbarouſly murdered by *Andronicus*; the *Couſin-German* of his father, with his wife and mother.

1183 61 *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenum* in *Paphlagonia*, by reaſon of his dangerous and ambitious practices; after his death, pretending to reform the State came unto *Conſtantinople*; firſt made *Protector*, afterwards *conſort* in the Empire with young *Alexius*; whom having barbarouſly ſlain, and got the Empire to himſelf, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular tumult.

1185 62 *Iſaacius Angelus*, a noble man of *Conſtantinople*, and of the ſame *Comnenian* race, deſigned to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular election proclaimed his Succeſſor; depoſed by *Alexius* his own brother, and his eyes put out.

1195 63 *Alexius Angelus*, deprived his brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64 *Alexius Angelus* 2. ſon of *Iſaac Angelus*, who being unjuſtly thruſt out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, who had recourſe to *Philip* the Weſtern Emperour, whoſe daughter *Mary* he had marryed: who ſo prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land*, was employed to reſtore him. On the approach whereof *Alexius* the Uſurper fled; *Alexius* the young Emperour is ſeated in his Fathers throne, and not long after ſlain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* aſſault and win *Conſtantinople*, make themſelves Maſters of the Empire, and divide it amongſt them: alotting to the *Venetians Candie*, many good towns of *Peloponneſus*, and moſt of the Ilands; to *Boniface* Marqueſs of *Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Theſſaly*; to others of the *Adventurers* other liberal ſhares; and finally to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, the main body of the Empire, with the

title of Emperour. The ſeat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice* a City of *Bithynia* in the *Leſſer Aſia* by *Theodorus Laſcarius*, ſon-in-law to *Alexius* the Uſurper continued, there till the regaining of *Conſtantinople* by the *Greeks* again; after it had been 60 years poſſeſſed by the Weſtern Chriſtians.

EMPEROURS of the *LATINES* in *CONSTANTINOPLE.*

1200 65 ***Baldwin***, Earl of ***Flanders***, firſt Emperour of the ***Latines*** reigning in ***Conſtantinople***, taken in fight by ***John*** King of ***Bulgaria***, coming to aid the ***Greeks***, and ſent priſoner to ***Ternova***, where he was cruelly put to death.

1202 66 ***Henry***, the brother of ***Baldwin***, repulſed the ***Bulgarians*** out of ***Greece***, and died a Conquerour.

1215 67 ***Peter*** Count of ***Auxerre*** in ***France***, the ſon of ***Peter***, youngeſt ſon to ***Lewis*** the ***Groſſe*** of ***France***, and Husband of ***Toland***, the daughter of ***Henry***, ſucceeded in the Empire after his deceaſe: cunningly entrapped by ***Theodorus Angelus*** a great Prince in ***Epirus***, whom he had beſieged in ***Dyrrachium***. But of an Enemy being perſwaded to become his gheſt, was there murdered by him.

1220 68 ***Robert***, the ſon of ***Peter***, having ſeen the miſerable uſage of his beautifull Empreſs, whom a young ***Burgundian*** formerly contracted to her, had moſt deſpightfully mangled, cutting off both her noſe and ears; died of hearts grief as he was coming back from ***Rome***, whither his melancholy had carried him to conſult the ***Pope*** in his affairs.

1227 69 ***Baldwin*** II. ſon of ***Robert*** by a former wife, under the protection of ***John de Brenne*** the titulary King of ***Hieruſalem***, ſucceeded in his fathers throne; which having held for the ſpace of 33 years; he was forced to leave it; the City of ***Conſtantinople*** being regained by the ***Greeks***, and the poor Prince compelled to ſue in vain for ſuccours to the ***French***, ***Venetians***, and other Princes of the ***Weſt***. And though both ***Philip*** the ſon of this ***Baldwin***, and ***Charles*** of ***Valois***, Father of ***Philip de Valois*** French King, in right of ***Katharine*** his wife, daughter of that ***Philip***, did ſometimes pleaſe themſelves with the title of Emperours of ***Conſtantinople***, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or poſſeſſion there.

The EMPIRE *reſtored unto the* GREEKS.

1260 70 ***Michael*** VIII. ſurnamed ***Palæologus***, extracted from the ***Comnenian*** Emperours, Emperour of the ***Greeks*** in the City of ***Nice***, moſt fortunately recovered ***Conſtantinople***; the town being taken by a party of 50 men ſecretly put into it by ſome Country labourers under the ruines of a mine. Preſent in perſon at the Council of ***Lyons***, at the perſwaſion of the Pope he admitted the ***Latine Ceremonies*** into the Churches of ***Greece***; for which greatly hated by his ſubjects, and denied the honour of Chriſtian burial.

1283 71 ***Andronicus*** 2. vexed with unnatural wars by his Nephew ***Ardronicus***, who rebelled againſt him.

1328 72 ***Andronicus*** 3. firſt partner with his grandfather, afterwards ſole Emperour.

1341 73 ***John Palæologus***, ſon of ***Andronicus*** the 3. in whoſe minority ***Contacuzenus*** his Protector uſurped the Empire, and held it ſometimes from him, and ſometimes with him, till the year 1357. and then retired unto a Monaſtery: leaving the Empire unto ***John***, during whoſe reign the ***Turks*** firſt planted themſelves in ***Europe***.

1384 74 ***Andronicus*** 4. the ſon of ***Johannes Palæologus***.

1387 75 ***Emanuel Palæologus***, the ſon of the ſaid ***John***, and brother of ***Andronicus*** the 4. in whoſe time ***Bejazet*** the ſixth King of the ***Turks*** did beſiege ***Conſtantinople***; but found ſuch notable reſiſtance, that he could not force it.

1417 76 ***John*** 2. ſon of ***Andronicus*** the 4.

1420 77 ***John*** 3. ſon of ***Emanuel Palæologus***, in perſon at the Conucil of ***Florence*** for reconciling of the Churches; in hope thereby to get ſome aid from the Weſtern ***Chriſtians***, but it would not be.

1444 78 ***Conſtantinus Palæologus***, the brother of ***John*** the 3. In whoſe time the famous City of ***Conſtantinople*** was taken by ***Mahomet*** the Great, 1452. the miſerable Emperor, who had in vain gone from door to door, to beg or borrow money to pay his ſouldiers, (which the ***Turks*** found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the throng. Now concerning this Empire of the ***Greeks***, we may obſerve ſome fatal contrarieties in one and the ſame name: as firſt, that ***Philip*** the father of ***Alexander***, laid the firſt foundation of the ***Macedonian Monarchy***, and ***Philip*** the father of ***Perſeus*** ruined it. Secondly that ***Baldwin*** was the firſt, and ***Baldwin*** the laſt Emperor of the ***Latines*** in ***Conſtantinople***. Thirdly that this Town was built by a ***Conſtantine***, the ſon of ***Helena***, a ***Gregory*** being Patriarch: and was loſt by a ***Conſtantine***, the ſon of ***Helena***, a ***Gregory*** being Patriarch alſo. And fourthly, the ***Turks*** have a Prophecy that as it was won by a ***Mahomet***, ſo it ſhall be loſt by a *Mahomet*. So *Auguſtus* was the firſt eſtabliſhed the Emperour of *Rome*, and *Auguſtulus* the laſt: *Darius* the ſon of *Hyſtaſpes*, the reſtorer; and *Darius* the ſon of *Ariſamis*, the overthrower of the *Perſian* Monarchy. A like note I ſhall anon tell you of *Hieruſalem*. In the mean time I will preſent you with a fatal obſervation of the letter *H*, I find it thus verſed in *Albions England*,

Not ſuperſtitiouſly I ſpeak, but *H* this letter ſtill
Hath been obſerved ominous to *Englands* good or ill.
Firſt *Hercules*, *Heſione*, and *Helen* were the cauſe
Of war to *Troy*; *Æneas* ſeed becoming ſo outlaws.
Humber the *Hun* with forein arms did firſt the *Brutes* invade,
Helen to *Romes* imperial Throne, the *Britiſh* Crown convey'd.
Hengiſt and *Horſus*, firſt did plant the *Saxons* in this Ile:
Hungar and *Hubba* firſt brought *Danes*, that ſwayed here long while.
At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Hardie-Cnute*, the *Dane*:
Henries the firſt and ſecond did reſtore the *Engliſh* raign.
Fourth *Henry* firſt for *Lancaſter* did *Englands* Crown obtain.
Seventh *Henry*, jarring *Lancaſter* and *York*, unites in peace:
Henry the eight did happily *Romes* irreligion ceaſe.

A ſtrange and ominous letter; every mutation in our ſtate being as if it were uſhered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire ſince the diviſion of it into the Eaſt and Weſt, I could never yet learn. That they were exceeding great, may appear by three circumſtances, 1. *Zonaras* reporteth, that the Emperour *Baſilius* had in his treaſury 200000 talents of gold, beſides infinite heaps of ſilver, and other monies. 2. *Lipſius* relateth, how *Benjamin* a *Jew* in his diſcourſe of *Europe*, ſaith, that the cuſtom due to the Emperours, out of the victuals and Merchandize ſold at *Conſtantinople* only, did amount to 20000 crowns daily. 3. We find, that at the ſack of *Conſtantinople*, there was found an invaluable maſſe of gold, ſilver, plate, and jewels, beſides that which was hid in the earth. For ſo the covetous Citizens choſe rather to imploy their wealth, than afford any part of it to the Emperour: who with tears in his eyes, went from door to door to beg and borrow money, wherewith he might wage more ſouldiers for the defence of the Town.

The Arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a croſs *Sol* between four *Greek* Betaes of the ſecond: the four Betaes ſignifying, (as *Bodin* ſaith) Βασιλεὺς, Βασιλέων, Βασιλευέων, Βασιλεῦσι.

It may perchance be expected that we ſhould here make an additional Catalgoue of thoſe *Turkiſh* Emperours, who have reigned in *Conſtantinople*, ſince the taking of it: and being they are poſſeſſed of *Greece* and do now inhabit it, that we ſhould here alſo ſpeak of the *Turks* themſelves, their cuſtoms, forces, policies, original, and proceedings. But the diſcourſe of thoſe things we intend to reſerve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Aſia*, from whence they made their firſt inundation into *Perſia*, and afterwards into other parts of the World now ſubject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their names. And though the *Peninſula* called antiently *Taurica Cherſoneſus* (now part of *Tartaria Procopenſis*) be within the bounds of *Europe* alſo: yet we will deferr the deſcription and ſtory of it, till we come to the affairs of the *Tartars*; and will here conclude our diſcourſe of *Europe*, and prepare for *Aſia*.

And ſo much for GREECE, the laſt of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.

A
TABLE
OF THE
LONGITUDE and LATITUDE
OF THE CHIEF
TOWNS and CITIES
Mentioned in this BOOK.

A

	Long.	Lat.
AMſterdam	27.39	52.40
Antwerp	24.30	51.48
Athens.	46.10	40
Ausburn	32:30	48.20
Aulona	51.20	41.30
Arras	24	51
Anſlo	36.30	59.20

B

	Long.	Lat.
BAmberg	39.15	50.10
Belgrade	45	47.40
Bergen	34.16	61.25
Bern	29.45	46.25
Brandenberg	35.30	52.36
Breme	30.20	53.23
Bruges	24.36	51.30
Brunſwick	32.40	52.30
Bruſſel	26.42	51.24
Buda	42	47.20
Boden	52.30	45.30
Bornholm	40.50	55.30

C

	Long.	Lat.
CLeve	29.35	51.58
Conſtantinople	56	43.5
Confluentz	27.30	50.30
Conſtance	28.30	47.30
Copenhagen	24.50	56
Corinth	54.20	39
Colen	27.40	51
Cracow	42.40	50.12
Cephalone	52	38.30
Caſan	96.10	35.10
Corfu	42	39.30

D

	Long.	Lat.
DAntzick	45	54.50
Darſaw	63	48.40
Deventer	33.25	51.50

Dort

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude.

	Long.	Lat.
Dort	26	52
Doway	25	51
Dreſden.	36	51.3

E

Emden	28.26	53.34
Erford	34.30	51.10
Elſenore	36.30	57

F

Flensberg	36.40	55
Franeker	27	54
Frankford ad Moen	30	50.30
Frankford ad Oderam	24	52.30
Friburg	20	48.1

G

Glowgaw	43.50	51.25
Gran	42.30	48
Gratz	34	48
Grodesk	56.30	51.30
Gaunt	30.20	50.40
Gueſna	42	52.10
Groyningen	32.10	53

H

Haderſleve	35.5	60.50
Hallar	3	67.14
Halberſtat	32.40	52.10
Heidelberg	28	49.35
Hamberg	30	54.30

J

Jene	34	52
Ingolſtad	32.10	48.40

	Long.	Lat.
Inſpruch	32.50	44.55
Juliers	27.30	52

L

Lariſſa	70	33
Leige	22	50.50
Leopolis	52.50	49
Lipſich	30.30	51.20
Lubeck	31.20	54.48
Lucern	29.53	46.42
Lunemberg	32.18	53.27
Luden	26	53
Luxenburg	28	50

M

Magdeburg	37.50	52.18
Marpurg	30.10	51
Mentz	27.30	50.30
Metz	27.40	49.9
Madleburg	25	52
Minden	31.30	52.58
Munchen	32.50	48
Munſter	29.10	52
Montz	26	51
Moſco	70.30	55.40
Melvin	48	54.50

N

Nancie	28.45	49.20
Norlingen	33	49
Nurenberg	31.30	49.30
Nimmegen	28	52
Novogrod Magn.	62.50	60.30
Novogrod Inſer.	80	55.20
Nicopolis	56.30	40
Negropont	56.10	41
S. Nicolas	69	64

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude.

O

	Long.	Lat.
OLmuntz	41	40.30
Oſnabrug	29.36	52.29
Olant	43.30	57

P

	Long.	Lat.
PRague	39.15	50.10
Preſlaw	46	51.10
Paſnaw	42	52.48
Presburg	40	48.26
Pleſcow	59.10	59
Pechora	66.50	67
Pernow	53.30	58.40
Plotzcow	57.30	57.40

R

	Long.	Lat.
RAb	40.35	48.50
Raguſi	44.40	42.30
Regensberg	32.15	48.59
Roſtoch	34.18	54.20
Ruſtow	72.50	57
Rugen	40.20	55.10
Regia	53.30	58
Regimont	49.10	55.30

S

	Long.	Lat.
SAltzburg	35.40	47.40
Scalholt	3.14	65.42
Schleiſtat	28. 6	48.22
Sleſwick	31.20	55.15
Spires	27.40	40.20
Stetin	37.40	54
Stockholm	42.	60.15
Sibiore	99.20	59.30
Slowada	86.30	58.50
Strasburg	27.50	48.44
Stagira	55.30	43.30

T

	Long.	Lat.
THeſſalonica	53.40	44.20
Triers	26	49.30
Trent	33.40	45.20
Tubing	30.30	48.40
Twer	68.10	57.20

U

	Long.	Lat.
VAlenciennes	26.29	50.10
Ulme	32.30	48.20
Vienna	37.45	48.20
Vilna	54.30	55
Upſal	40.30	60.52
Uſtling	79.30	61.30
Utrecht	27.33	52.10
Vicegrod	61.30	51.30
Veſalia	31.30	51.30

W

	Long.	Lat.
WIlburg	55.58	63.6
Witteburg	35.10	50.55
Wiſmar	33.30	54.14
wologda	74.30	60
wormes	28	49.45
woortzburg	30.10	49.57
wardhuis	50.30	70.30

Z

	Long.	Lat.
ZAra	46.25	45.40
Zemla Noua	83.30	74

The End of the ſecond Book.

COSMOGRAPHIE,
The Third Book.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHIE and HISTORIE
OF THE
LESSER and GREATER
ASIA,
AND
ALL THE PRINCIPAL KINGDOMS,
Provinces, and Iſles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

JUSTIN HIST. l. 1.

Imperium Aſſyrii *qui poſtea* Syri *dicti ſunt, annos* MCCC *tenuerunt; Imperium ab* Aſſyriis *ad* Medas Arbaces *tranſfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.

Omnes quæ uſquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quæretur; & vario exitii genere tollentur.

LONDON,
Printed for *Philip Chetwind,* 1665.

COSMOGRAPHIE,
The Third Book.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHIE and HISTORIE
of the Leſſer and Greater
ASIA,
And all the principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

OF ASIA.

ASIA is bounded on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Ægean* Seas, the *Helleſpont*, *Propontis*, *Thracian Boſphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Palus Mæotis*, the Rivers *Tanais* and *Duina*, a line being drawn from the firſt of the two ſaid Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from *Europe*; on the North, it hath the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the Eaſt, the Streights of *Anian* (if ſuch there be) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare del Zur*, by which ſeperated from *America*; on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathian* Sea, waſhing the ſhores of *Anatolia*; and the main Southern Ocean, paſſing along the *Indian*, *Perſian*, and *Arabian* Coaſts; and finally, on the South-weſt, the *Red Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africk*. Environed on all ſides with the Sea, or ſome Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Iſthmus* in the South-weſt, which joyns it to *Africk*, and the ſpace of ground (whatſoever it be) betwixt *Duina*, and *Tanais*, on the North-weſt, which unites it to *Europe*.

It took this name, as ſome will have it, from *Aſia* the Daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*, the Wife of *Japetus*, and (by him) Mother to *Prometheus*: as others ſay, from *Aſius* the Son of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Country firſt, afterwards all *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*, and finally, the whole Continent had the name of *Aſia*. Others again (but more improbably) derive the name from *Aſius* the Philoſopher, who gave the *Palladium* unto the *Trojans*; in memory whereof that Country firſt, and after the whole Continent did receive this name. But theſe *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great affection to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* Language) will have it called ſo from *Aſia* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying *Medinm*, or the middle: becauſe *Anatolia*, or the *Leſſer Aſia*, which gives name (as he conceiveth) to the *Greater* alſo, lieth in the middle, as it were, between ſome parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And ſo far the Conjecture doth find countenance from ſome antient Writers, that *Aſia* is ſaid by *Pliny* to be *inter Africam & Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *Medium noſtris æquoribus excipi*, to be embraced in the *middle* of two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus*, and the *Mediterranean*) and finally, by *Euſtathius* (conceive them all of *Anatolia*, or the *Leſſer Aſia*) μέσην ἀμφοῖν ἔχειν διάθεσιν, to have a *middle* ſituation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what name, and on what grounds ſoever it be called by the Greeks and Latines; it is otherwiſe, and with better reaſon called in holy Scriptures by the name of *Semia*; as being that portion of the world, wherein the whole poſterity of *Sem* had their ſeats and dwellings; if the obſervation of *Maginus* be of any weight.

It is ſituate Eaſt and Weſt, from the 52 to the 169 degree of Longitude; and [illegible] and South, from the 82 degrees of Latitude, to the very Æquator; ſome onely of the Iſlands [illegible] on the South of that *Circle*: ſo that the longeſt Summers day in the Southern parts, is but twelve hours only; but in the moſt Northern parts thereof, for almoſt four whole moneths together no night at all. And for a meaſurement by miles, it ſtretches in length 5200. and in bredth 4560. miles.

This Countrey hath heretofore been had in ſpecial honour, Firſt, For the Creation of man, who had his firſt making in this part of the world; Secondly, Becauſe in this part of it ſtood the Garden of *Eden*, which he had for the firſt place of his habitation; Thirdly, Becauſe here flouriſhed the four firſt great Monarchies of the *Aſſyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes*, and *Perſians*; Fourthly, Becauſe it was the Scene of almoſt all the memorable actions, which are recorded by the Pen-men of the Holy Scriptures; Fifthly, Becauſe that here our Saviour CHRIST was born, here wrought he moſt Divine Miracles, and here accompliſhed the great work of our Redemption; Sixthly, and finally, becauſe from hence all Nations of the World had their firſt beginning, on the diſperſion which was made by the Sons of *Noah*, after their vain attempt at *Babel*.

The chief Mountains of this great Continent, not limited within the bounds of any one Province (for of thoſe we are to ſpeak in their ſeveral places) are 1. Mount *Taurus*, which having its beginning in *Lycia*, a Province of *Anatolia*, paſſeth directly Eaſtwards to the *Indian* Ocean: and reckoning in its ſeveral windings and turnings, with its ſpurs and branches every way, is ſaid to be 6250 miles long, and 357 miles broad. This Mountain, or rather ridge of hills, divideth the *Greater Aſia*, as the *Æquator* doth the World, into North and South: memorable for three difficult paſſages from the one to the other, the firſt out of the reſt of *Anatolia* into *Cilicia*, called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*; the ſecond out of *Scythia*, or *Tartarie*, into *Turcomania*, called *Caucaſiæ Portæ*; and the third out of *Scythia* into *Perſia*, called *Portæ Caſpiæ*. Of which, and of the whole courſe of this Mountain, more at large hereafter. 2. *Imaus*, which beginning near the ſhores of the Northern Ocean, runneth directly towards the South; dividing the *Greater Aſia* (as the *Meridian* doth the World) into Eaſt and Weſt, and croſſing Mount *Taurus* in right Angles, in or about the *Longitude* of 140. This on the North of *Taurus* hath no other name among the *Latines*, than *Imaus* only; and by that name divideth *Scythia*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*: but by the *Tartars* is called *Altay*; by ſome writers, *Belgion*. And on the South-ſide of that Mountain is known in *Ptolomy* by the name of *Bitigo*, extending from Mount *Caucaſus*, or ſome other Branch of the *Taurus*, to the Cape of *Comari*, in the Southern Ocean: ſuppoſed by ſome to be Mount *Cephar*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. *v.* 30. of which we ſhall ſay more alſo when we come into *India*.

The Eſtate of *Chriſtianity* in this vaſt Continent is in ill condition, diſcountenanced and oppreſſed, though not quite extinguiſhed. For all the great Princes and Commanders of it being either *Mahometans* or *Pagans*; the moſt that can be hoped for of the Chriſtian Faith, is a *toleration* or connivence: and that not found but with an intermixture of ſuch afflictions as commonly attend diſcountenanced and diſgraced *Religions*. Yet is not *Chriſtianity* ſo over-powred either by *Mahometaniſm*, or *Paganiſm*, but that in *Aſia* the *Leſſer*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and *Armenia*, a great part of the Inhabitants do retain the *Goſpel*, under their ſeveral *Patriarchs* and *Metropolitans*, differing in ſome few points from one another; but in many from the Church of *Rome*, with which they hold neither correſpondency nor *Communion*. Nor want there many *Chriſtian* Churches in the Empire of *Perſia*, nor in thoſe of *Tartarie* and the *Indies*, antiently planted in thoſe Countreys; beſide the late increaſe thereof in the *Eaſtern Ilands*, by the diligent preaching of the *Jeſuits*, and ſome late *Factories* there ſetled by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*: of all which I ſhall write in place convenient.

In reference to the *Roman* Empire, whoſe Dominion did not often extend beyond the River *Euphrates*, this Continent contained only three *Dioceſſes*, or *Juridical Circuits*; that is to ſay, the *Dioceſs* of *Pontus*, *Aſia* properly ſo called, and the *Oriental* Ilands: which with the *Dioceſſes* of *Thrace* and *Egypt*, were under the Command of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; the greateſt Officer of Power and Juriſdiction, next to the Emperours themſelves, in the *Roman* Monarchy. And theſe three *Dioceſſes* contained in them to the number of thirty ſeven Provinces, *viz.* the Provinces of *Bithynia*. 2. *Hellenopontus*. 3. *Pontus Polomoniacus*. 4. *Galatia Prima*. 5. *Galatia Salutaris*. 6. *Honorius*. 7. *Paphlagonia*. 8. *Cappadocia prima*. 9. *Cappadocia ſecunda*. 10. *Armenia prima*, and 11. *Armenia ſecunda*, contained in the *Dioceſs* of *Pontus*, and governed by the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant thereof. II. The Provinces of *Pamphylia*. 2. *Lycia*. 3. *Caria*. 4. *Piſidia*. 5. *Lycaonia*. 6. *Lydia*. 7. *Phrygia Pacatiana*. 8. *Phrygia Salutaris*. 9. *Aſia* ſpecially ſo called. 10. *Helleſpont*, and 11. the *Iſles* of *Anatolia*, making up the *Dioceſs* of *Aſia*: whereof the three laſt were governed by a peculiar Officer, called the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*; the others by the ordinary Lieutenant or *Vicarius*. III. The Provinces of *Iſauria*. 2. *Cilicia prima*. 3. *Cilicia ſecunda*. 4. *Cyprus*. 5. *Phœnice*. 6. *Phœnicus Sibani*. 7. *Syria*. 8. *Syria Salutaris*. 9. *Paleſtina prima*. 10. *Paleſtina ſecunda*. 11. *Paleſtina Salutaris*. 12. *Euphratenſis*. 13. *Oſroene*. 14. *Meſopotamia*, and 15. *Arabia*, conſtituting the *Dioceſs* of the *Orient*, under the *Comes Orientis*. The reſt of *Aſia* ſubject unto the *Parthian* or *Perſian* Kings, beſides thoſe of *India* (and of many Regions and Countreys not then diſcovered) was never conquered by the *Romans*; and therefore not within the compaſs of this diſtribution.

At this time *Aſia* ſtands divided amongſt 6 great Monarchs; that is to ſay, the *Turk* commanding all thoſe parts and Provinces, which antiently belonged to the *Roman* Empire: 2ly, The *Perſian*, ruling in all the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, poſſeſſed by the *Perſian* Kings in the time of *Alex.* the *Great*, or the *Arſacidæ* or *Parthians* in the times of the *Romans*: 3ly, The *Great Cham* of *Tartarie*, commanding over all the North parts of *Aſia*, antiently known by the name of *Scythia*: 4ly, The King of *China*, governing in that large and populous Country. 5ly, The King of *Barma*, whoſe Dominion comprehends all or the greateſt par[illegible]*ndia* beyond the River of *Ganges*; and 6ly, The *Great Mogor*, whoſe Empire is extended over all *India* on this ſide of that River. And ſome there be who in the deſcriptions of the great Country, follow this diviſion. But for our parts, for the better underſtanding of the *Greek* and the *Roman* Stories, and the eſtate of the *Aſſyrian*, ***Babilonian*** and *Perſian* Monarchies, to which the holy Scriptures do ſo much relate; we ſhall conſider it as divided into the Regions of 1. *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*. 2. *Cyprus*. 3. *Syria*. 4. *Paleſtine*. 5. *Arabia*. 6. *Chaldæa*. 7. *Aſſyria*. 8. *Meſopotamia*. 9. *Turcomania*. 10. *Media*. 11. *Perſia*. 12. *Tartaria*. 13. *China*. 14. *India*. and 15. the *Oriental Ilands*.

ANATOLIA, or *ASIA MINOR*.

ANATOLIA, or *ASIA MINOR* is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from the greater *Aſia*; on the Weſt, with the *Thracian Boſphorus*, *Propontis*, *Helleſpont*, and the *Ægean* Sea, by which parted from *Europe*; on the North, with *Pontus Euxinus*, called alſo the *Black Sea*, and *Mare Maggiore*; and on the South, by the *Rhodian*, *Lydian*; and *Pamphilian* Seas, ſeveral parts of the *Mediterranean*. So that it was a demi-Iland, or *Peninſula*, environed on all ſides with waters; excepting a ſmall *Iſthmus* or neck of land extending from the head of *Euphrates* to the *Euxine* Sea, by which joyned to the reſt of *Aſia*.

It was antiently called *Aſia Minor*, to difference it from the reſidue of this great *Continent*; and afterwards *Anatolia* ἀπὸ τῆς ἀνατολῆς, from the more Eaſtward ſituation of it, in reſpect of *Greece*; and now *Natolia* by the *Turks*, with little deviation from the former name. But here it is to be obſerved, that as this *Leſſer Aſia* was a part of the greater, and the *Dioceſe* of *Aſia* a part of *Aſia* the *Leſſe*: ſo was *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo called, but a part onely of the *Aſian Dioceſs*; the *Lydian Aſia*, a part of *Aſia* properly ſo called, and the *Proconſultar Aſia*, but a part of that. The limits of *Aſia* the *Leſſe*, and the ſeveral Provinces contained in the *Aſian Dioceſe*, have been ſhewn already. And as for that part hereof which had the name of *Aſia* properly and eſpecially ſo called, it contained only the two *Phrygias*, both the *Myſias*, *Æolis*, *Jonia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*, which falling unto the *Romans*; by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Attalus*, the laſt King of *Pergamus*, were by them made into one Province, and called *Aſia*, after the name of the whole *Continent*; this being as it were the *earneſt-peny*, to make ſure the reſt. So witneſſeth *Strabo*, where he ſaith Ρομαῖοι ἐπαρχίαν ἀπέδειξαν τὴν χωρὰν Ἀσίαν προσαγορεύσαντης ὁμώνυμον τῇ ἠπείρῳ, *Lib*. 13. And for the *Lydian Aſia*, that contained only ſo much of the *Roman* or *proper Aſia*, as antiently did belong to *Lydia*; that is to ſay *Lydia* it ſelf, together with *Æolis* and *Jonia*, and ſome parts of the *Greater Myſia* adjoyning to it. Which as it had originally the name of *Aſia*, from *Aſia* a chief Citie of it near the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, which both *Suidas*, and the great *Etymologiſt* have taken notice of; before that name came became to be communicated to the Greater *Continent*: ſo it retained that name to it ſelf in ſeveral, diſtinct both from the *Greater* and the *Leſſer Aſia*; as alſo from the ***Aſia propria*** of *Ptolomy*, and others of the antient Writers. And of this *Aſia* only is it, which the Scriptures ſpeak; both in the Book of the *Acts*, and the *Revelation*: the ſeven Churches mentioned in the one being found in this *Lydian Aſia*, and the paſſages in the other concerning *Aſia*, not to be underſtood of any, but of this alone. For where as it is ſaid *Acts* 16. that when they had gone throughout *Phrygia*, and the Region of *Galatia*, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghoſt to preach the Word in *Aſia*; after they were come to *Myſia*, they aſſayed to go into *Bythinia*, and came down to *Troas*: moſt clear it is, that neither *Galatia*, nor *Bithynia*, though Regions of the *Leſſer Aſia*; nor *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, or *Troas*, all Regions of the *Proper Aſia*; were any part of that *Aſia* which the Scripture ſpeaks of. So alſo where it is affirmed, that upon St. *Pauls* preaching and diſputing for two years in *Epheſus*, all *they which dwelt in* Aſia *heard the word of the* Lord, Acts 19. ver. 10. It is not to be meant of any but the *Lydian Aſia*, whereof *Epheſus* at that time was the principal City. So alſo *Acts* 19. verſ. 22, 26, 31. and Chap. 20. verſ. 18. Finally, for the *Proconſular Aſia*, which together with *Helleſpont* and the *Iſles*, made up a Government apart, exempt from the command of the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, it contained only *Æolis*, and *Jonia*, with the South part of *Lydia*, or the Countries lying about *Epheſus*. So witneſſeth S. *Hierom* for the *Chriſtian Writers*, where he affirms, that although all the whole *Peninſula* have the name of the *Leſſer Aſia*; *Specialiter ubi* Epheſus *Civitas eſt*, Aſia *vocatur*; yet more particularly the parts adjoyning unto *Epheſus* have the name of *Aſia*. And this appeareth by the diſtribution of the Provinces before laid down, where *Lydia* is reckoned for a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, diſtinct from the *Proconſular Aſia*, which we now inſiſt on.

So having cleared our way in regard of the name, proceed we next unto the Region, or place thus named, according to the notiou in the largeſt latitude; extending from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, and from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mediterranean*. By which account it reacheth from the 51 to the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and from the 36 to the 45 degree of *Latitude*: the length hereof from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, being eſtimated at 630 miles; the breadth from *Sinus Iſſicus* in *Silicia*, to the City of *Trabezond*, at 210. As for the ſituation of it, in reference to the Heavenly *Bodies*, it lyeth almoſt in the ſame poſition with *Italy*, extending from the middle *Parallel* of the fourth *Clime*, to the middle *Parallel* of the ſixt: So that the longeſt Summer day in the Southern parts, is about fourteen hours and an half; and one hour longer in thoſe parts which lye moſt towards the North.

The temperature of the air is exceeding ſound, and the Soyl generally exceeding fruitful; abounding in moſt excellent Paſtures, which breed a notable race of Horſes, of very good ſervice in the wars, if backed with *Europæan* Riders; it being a by-word amongſt the *Turks*, that the Horſes of *Aſia*, and the Horſe-men of *Europe* are of greateſt action. It was antiently very plentiful of all Fruits, both for uſe and pleaſure, as ſtill it would be, were it cultivated as in former times. Once very populous and repleniſhed with goodly Cities, now in a manner waſte and deſolate; lamenting the deſtruction of

4000 Towns; ſome of them deſtroyed by Earthquakes, (the falling ſickneſs of moſt great Cities in the Eaſt) but moſt by War; and have little now to boaſt of but the commodiouſneſs of the Havens, which are very many; though moſt of them but meanly traded, as in a Country ill manured, and of little *Manufactures.*

The people antiently, eſpecially thoſe of *Greek* original, and the Nations bordering on the *Euxine*, were little war-like and induſtrious: the reſt, eſpecially the *Lydians*, and thoſe of the greater *Phrygia*, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their pleaſures. All of them at this time affected with the ſame diſeaſe; inſomuch that the *Turks* (unleſs compelled thereto by extreme neceſſities) never inroll their Children in the number of *Janizaries.* The greateſt part of them generally profeſs the *Chriſtian* Faith; but over-powred by *Mahometaniſm*, which is here moſt prevalent: all followers of the Church of *Greece*, and ſubject all (except thoſe of *Iſauria*, and *Cilicia*) to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople.* And as they are of the *Communion* of that Church, ſo they retain the *Greek Lyturgies* for Sacred Offices; not ſo well underſtood amongſt them as in former times, when it was more generally ſpoken there than it is at this preſent; now over-topped in moſt places by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* tongues. And though in former times, by reaſon of the many *Greek* Colonies planted in this Country, the Conqueſt of it by *Alexander* the *Great*, and the ſubjection of it to the *Syrian* Kings of the *Macedon* race, that Language became generally underſtood amongſt them; inſomuch as three of the *Greek Dialects*, *viz.* the *Dorick*, the *Jonian*, and the *Æolick* were ſpoken here: yet did it never ſo prevail, as to become the vulgar language of the People, or to extinguiſh any of the Vulgar tongues. For it is ſaid of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, that he underſtood two and twenty Languages, without any *Interpreter*; which were no other than the Languages of ſo many Nations ſubject to himſelf, whoſe Dominion was contained for the moſt part within *Aſia Minor.*

Principal Mountains of this Countrey, are *Hermione* in *Pontus*, *Argæus* in *Cappadocia*, *Ida* in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, *Olympus* in *Myſia*, *Tmolus* in *Lydia*, *Amanus* in *Cilicia*, and finally *Antetaurus* and *Scordiſcus* in *Armenia Minor*: out of which, for the moſt part, flow the chief Rivers hereof, that is to ſay, 1. *Iris*, (now *Caſilmach*) 2. *Thermodon.* 3. *Hallis*, (now *Ottomangruch.*) 4. *Parthenius*, (now *Dilop.*) 5. *Sangarius*, (now *Sangri.*) All of them falling in the *Euxine Sea.* 6. *Aſcanius.* 7. *Rhyndachus.* 8. *Æſapus*, and 9. *Granicus*, paſſing into the *Propontis.* 10. *Simoeis.* 11. *Scamander*, called alſo *Xanthus*, ending their ſhort courſe in the *Helleſpont.* 12. *Caicus.* 13. *Hermus.* 14. *Caſtrus*, and 15. *Meander*, loſing themſelves in the *Ægean.* 16. *Calbis.* 17. *Xanthus*, called alſo *Lycus.* 18. *Lymirus.* 19. *Cataractes*, diſchanelling into the *Mediterranean*; and 20. *Melas*, adding to the waters of the great River *Euphrates.* Of moſt of which we ſhall ſpeak more particularly in their ſeveral places.

In reference to the State of *Rome*, it contained the whole Dioceſe of *Pontus*, except *Armenia* the *Greater*; the *Aſian Dioceſe* intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*; together with the Provinces of *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of the Eaſt. But becauſe the names of many of thoſe Provinces were of new invention, and ſome of them of as ſhort continuance, we will conſider it according as it ſtood divided antiently, and before the *Romans* had made any Conqueſts in it, into the Provinces of 1. *Bithynia.* 2. *Pontus.* 3. *Paphlagonia.* 4. Galatia. 5. *Cappadocia.* 6. *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other names, the *Pontick Dioceſe.* 7. *Phrygia Minor.* 8. *Phrygia Major.* 9. *Myſia* the Greater and the Leſſer. 10. *Æolis* and *Jonia.* 11 *Lydia.* 12. *Caria.* 13. *Lycia.* 14. *Lycaonia.* 15. *Piſidia.* 16 *Pamphilia.* 17. the Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconſul* of *Aſia.* 18. *Iſauria.* 19. *Cilicia*, parts of the *Dioceſe* of the Eaſt, as before was ſaid.

1. *BITHYNIA*

BITHYNIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the Weſt, with part of the *Euxine*; the *Thracian Boſphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North, wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South, with *Myſia*, and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at laſt *Bithynia*, and that, as ſome ſay, from *Bithynius*, once a King hereof; more probably from the *Thyni*, a People of *Thrace*, who paſſed over the *Boſphorus*, and ſubdued it, called therefore by ſome Writers *Thracia Aſiatica.* So witneſſeth the Poet *Claudian*, ſaying,

> Thyni *Thraces erant, quæ nunc* Bithynia *fertur.*

By *Juſtin* the Hiſtorian it is called by the name of *Metapontus*, by reaſon of its neighbourhood to the *Euxine*, and the *Pontick* Regions.

The Countrey naturally rich, and in thoſe parts hereof which lye next the *Boſphorus*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, ſo plentifully enriched with fruitful Hills, and pleaſant Orchards, when kept by the more curious Chriſtians, that it was thought not to be inferiour to the ſo much celebrated *Tempe*: now robbed of all thoſe former beauties by the careleſſeneſs of the *Turks*, who affect neither art, nor ſumptuoſitie, in their retirements and delights.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1. *Phillis.* 2. *Sangarius*, now called *Sangri*, both falling into the *Euxine* Sea: this laſt ariſing from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furtheſt parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his journey hither. 3. *Aſcanius*, which riſing alſo in *Phrygia Major*, but more near the borders of this Country, falleth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay called *Sinus Aſcanius.* Which with a Lake in the ſame Country, called *Lacus Aſcanius*, doth plainly manifeſt, that the *Bythinians* are derived from *Askenas*, the Son of *Gomer*, and Grand-ſon of *Japhet.*

Bithynia.

The Principal Towns hereof are 1. *Scutari*, over againſt the Haven of *Conſtantinople*, called antiently *Chryſopolis*, for that there the *Perſians* received their tribute from the other Cities of all theſe parts of *Aſia Minor*. An ample Town, well garriſoned within, and ſurrounded round about with moſt pleaſant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal *Seraglio*. Not far off is a Tower called the *Maiden-Tower*, ſerving both for a Fort and watch-tower; and being furniſhed for defence with 20 pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Calcedon*, on the ſame ſhore alſo, a Colony of the *Megarenſes*, called *blind* by the *Oracle*, for neglecting *Byzantium*, and chooſing the leſſe convenient place for their habitation. And yet did *Conſtantine* the *Great* reſolve upon the ſame place alſo for his *Regal* City; but changed his reſolutions on a kind of miracle: it being obſerved, that when his workmen began to draw the plat-form, ſome *Eagles* conveyed away their lines to the other ſide of the *Boſphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *General Council* there aſſembled by command of the Emperour *Martianus*, for repreſſing the hereſie of *Neſtorius*, in which were 500 and 30 Biſhops: now ſo decayed, that it can only ſhew ſome few of the ruines of it; *Scutari* being riſen on the fall thereof. 3. *Nicomedia*, ſo called from *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia* (the ſon of *Zipes*, and grandchild to that *Bithynian* King, who ſo valiantly defended his own and his Countries liberty againſt *Calantus*, one of great *Alexanders* Captains) by whom founded: ſituate on the top of an hill, environed with a pleaſant and delightful plain, honoured with the ſeat and reſidence of many of the *Roman* Emperors, when their affairs called them into the Eaſt, before the building of *Conſtantinople*; on that occaſion made the Throne on which many of Gods Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdom*, eſpecially in the perſecution under *Diocleſia*. In thoſe times wealthy, and of fame, now much decayed; but notwithſtanding well inhabited by the *Greeks* and *Turks*, for the commodiouſneſſe of the freſh ſprings which are thereabouts. 4. *Libuſſa*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Aſcanius*, memorable for the death and ſepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made priſoner to the *Romans*, when *Pruſius* King of *Bithynia* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himſelf by poyſon. 5. *Pruſa*, founded by another *Pruſius*, whoſe name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as moſt in *Aſia*: honoured for a long time with the reſidence of the *Turkiſh* Kings, till the removal of their ſeat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the firſt; and ſtill ennobled with the ſepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* race, except the Emperors themſelves. By the *Turks* called *Burſa*. 6. *Nica* or *Nicæa*, by the *Turks* called *Neichia*, but moſt commonly *Iſnichs*, ſituate near the fennes of the River *Aſcanius*, occaſioned by the frequent overflowings of that River: by ſome affirmed to be the *Metropolis* of *Bithynia*, but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that honour. Firſt named *Antigonia*, from *Antigonus* the founder of it; and afterwards *Nicæa*, by the name of *Nice*, wife unto *Lyſimacus*: both of them Captains of the Great *Alexander*; which laſt had the happineſs to ſurvive the overthrow of the former, and was the longeſt liver of thoſe great Commanders Sufficiently famous both in *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Civil* ſtory, the firſt *General Council* there holden, by the appointment of *Conſtantine* the Great, *Anno* 314. for ſettling the peace of the Church, then miſerably diſtracted by the *Arian* Hereſie. The number of Biſhops there aſſembled, no more than 318. yet of ſuch high eſteem for learning and piety, that never Council hath been held in ſo great an Honour. Here was alſo held the Council by the Empreſs *Irene*, for eſtabliſhing the veneration of Images; that paſſing by the name of the *Nicene* Council, the acts thereof might be of greater reputation amongſt ignorant men. In which it was decreed by ſuch doubty Arguments, as *Let us make man in our own Image*, one mainly inſiſted on by a *Legate* of the Eaſtern Churches; that they ſhould be reverenced and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the bleſſed *Trinity* it ſelf. This City was alſo the *Imperial* City of the *Greek* Emperours, after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, and there continued till the expulſion of the *Latines*, under theſe

Emperors of the GREEKS reſiding at NICE.

A. C.

1200 1 *Theodorus Laſcaris*, ſon-in-Law to *Alexius Angelus* the Uſurper, upon the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, paſſed over into *Aſia*, and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of this Kingdom, containing *Bithynia*, both the *Phrygias*, both the *Myſias*, *Lydia*, *Æolis* and *Jonia*.

1223 2 *John*, ſirnamed *Ducas*, the husband of *Irene* daughter of *Theodore Laſcaris*, ſucceeded his Father-in-law in the Empire, to which he added *Pontus*, moſt of the Iſles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of importance in *Thrace* it ſelf.

1256 3 *Theodorus* II. the ſon of *Ducas*.

1259 4 *John* II. the ſon of *Theodore* the ſecond, an Infant of about ſix years old, ſupplanted firſt, and after cruelly depoſed and deprived of ſight.

1259 5 *Michael Palæologus*, deſcended from the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*, firſt took upon him as *Protector* of the Infant-Emperor, and afterwards as his *aſſociate* in the Empire: in which confirmed by many fortunate ſucceſſes, as well againſt the *Latines*, as ſome *Greek* Uſurpers in *Theſſaly* and *Peloponneſus*, eſpecially the taking of *Conſtantinople*; he deprived the young Emperor of his ſight, made himſelf ſole Emperor, and left it unto his poſterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual diſquiets, till the year, 1452. when conquered by *Mahomet* the great, as before was ſaid.

But this recovery of *Conſtantinople* was the loſſe of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the *Imperial* ſeat, by *Sultan Ottomar*, *Anno* 1299. who preſently thereupon took on himſelf the ſtile of *King*, from which before he had abſtained.

Pontus.

As for the fortunes of *Bithynia* it ſelf, I look upon the *Bithynians* as a *Thracian* people, whom both *Strabo* and *Herodotus* ſpeak of, as the founders of the name and Nation. Of ſuch a King of theirs as *Bithynius*, I find ſome mention in my Authors, and poſſibly it might be he who had the leading of the *Thyni*, or *Bithyni*, in this expedition; that being the name rather of his Nation, than his proper Family. But for the line of Kings which held out till the flouriſh of the *Roman* greatneſs, they begun to reign here ſome few generations, before the time of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: by which laſt having other imployment, and lying out of the road towards *Perſia*, they were little troubled. *Calantus* one of *Alexandes* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, and was vanquiſhed by them: and aferwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigomus*, (one of *Alexanders* greateſt Princes) who though he humbled them for the preſent, yet got he neither title nor poſſeſſion by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Pruſias*, ſo ſhuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* King, that betwixt both they ſtill preſerved their own eſtates. This *Pruſias*, when the *Romans* became ſo conſiderable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece*, or *Syria*, pieced himſelf with them: and having aided them in their wars againſt *Philip*, and *Antiochus* both, and moſt unworthily promiſed to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for ſuccour) unto their Embaſſadors, made all ſure on this ſide. His ſon and Succeſſor *Nicomedes*, being outed of his kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and reſtored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Feudatarie*, as did *Nicomedes*, his next ſucceſſor, ſirnamed *Philometor*: who dying without iſſue in the time of *Auguſtus*, gave his whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, continuing ſo till the diviſion of that Empire into the Eaſtern and Weſtern, when falling to the ſhare of the *Conſtantinopolitans*, and with them to the power of the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, who do ſtill poſſeſſe it.

2. *PONTUS.*

PONTUS is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the Weſt, with *Bithynia*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the North, with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*, from *Bithynia*, to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*; but not of anſwerable breadth: and gives name to the Sea adjoyning, *à Ponto regione illi adjacente ità appellari*, as *Ortelius* hath it; called from hence *Pontus* by the *Latines*, the adjunct of *Euxinus* coming on another occaſion, which we have ſpoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Maſters of it) into theſe four parts, viz. *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* ſpecially ſo called. 2. *Pontus Galaticus*. 3. *Polemoniacus*, and 4. *Pontus Cappadocius*.

1. PONTUS, ſpecially ſo called, or *Metapontus*, bordering on *Bithynia*, and bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Parthemius*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*, had for the chief Cities thereof, 1. *Claudiopolis*, ſo called, in honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman Emperor*, as 2. *Flaviopolis*, in honour of *Flavius Veſpaſianus*; and 3. *Juliopolis*, in honour of the *Julian* family; all midland Towns. 4. *Dioſpolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, ſo called from a Temple conſecrated to *Jupiter*, of great reſort. 5. *Heraclea*, a Colony of the *Phocians*, called for diſtinctions ſake, (there being many of that name) *Heraclea Ponti*: memorable of late times for being the ſeat or reſidence of a branch of the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*, when at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern Chriſtians, *David* and *Alexius Comneni* fled into theſe parts: the firſt fixing here his Royal reſidence, commanded over this part of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*; the other poſſeſſing himſelf of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabezond* his Regal or imperial City. But theſe two Empires, though of the ſame date, were of different deſtinies: that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek* Emperors reſiding at *Nice*, and partly ſeized on by the *Turks* in the beginning and firſt fortunes of the *Ottoman* family; the other keeping up the Majeſty and State of an Empire, till the year 1461. when ſubdued by *Mahomet* the *Great*. 6. *Phillium*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Phillis* upon which it is ſeated. 7. *Amaſtris*, the fartheſt Town of this part towards the Eaſt, on the Sea-ſide alſo; once of great ſtrength; but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, *Amiſus*, and other Towns, in the war againſt *Mithridates*, the great King of *Pontus*.

2. Eaſtward of *Pontus*, ſpecially ſo called, or *Metapontus*, as *Juſtin* the hiſtorian calls it, lyeth *Pontus Galaticus*, ſo named, becauſe added to *Galatia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities whereof were 1. *Sinope*, pleaſantly ſeated on a long point or *Promontory*, ſhooting into the main; remarkable in antient ſtory for the birth and ſepulture of *Mithridates*, before mentioned; and in the later times for being the chief ſeat of the *Iſfendiars*, a noble family of the *Turks*; who had taken it with the reſt of this tract from the *Comneni*, and held it till the ſame year in which the Empire of *Trabezond* was ſubdued by *Mahomet*. Firſt built by the *Mileſians*, and continuing in a *free ſtate*, till taken by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*, and made the *Metropolis* of that kingdom. 2. *Caſtamona*, the head City of the Principality of the *Iſfendiars*, before mentioned; preferred by them for ſtrength and conveniency of ſituation, before *Heraclea*, or *Sinope*. 3. *Themiſcyra*, now called *Favagoria*, ſeated on a ſpacious plain, near unto the Sea, and antiently giving name to the Province adjoyning. 4. *Amaſia*, the birth-place of *Strabo* the *Geographer*, remarkable in the Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtories for the *Martyrdom* of S. *Theodorus*, and of late times for being the reſidence of the eldeſt Sons of the *Grand Signeur*, ſent hither as ſoon as circumciſed, never returning back again till the death of their Father. Accompted now amongſt the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province: a midland Town, as alſo is 5. *Cabira*, call'd afterward *Diopolis*, memorable for the great defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*; more for the trick which *Mithrid.* there put upon *Lucullus*. For being well acquainted with the covetouſ-

neſſe

neſs of the *Romans*, he ſaw no better way to ſave himſelf and the reſt of his forces after the defeat, than to ſcatter his treaſures in the way which he was to take; that by that means his enemies might ſlacken the purſuit to collect the ſpoils, and he preſerve himſelf to another day; and ſo accordingly it proved. 6. *Comana*, to difference it from another of that name, called *Comana Pontica*; to which other, being of *Cappadocia*, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in ſafety by the trick aforeſaid, and thence eſcaped unto *Tygranes* the *Armenian* King, with 2000 horſe.

3. Eaſtward of *Pontus Galaticus* lies *POLEMONIACUS*, ſo called by the *Romans* either from *Polemonium* a chief Town of this tract, or from *Polemo* the laſt King hereof; after whoſe death this Kingdom came unto the *Romans*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Polemonium* on the Sea-ſide, ſpoken of before. 2. *Hermanaſſa*, a Sea-town alſo. More in the land, 3. *Neo-Cæſarea* (now *Nixaria*) the *Metropolis* of *Polemoniacus*, when made a Province of it ſelf. 4. *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and called *Megalapolis*; by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopontus*. 5. *Sebaſtia*, ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Sebaſtos*; a place of great ſtrength, and one of the firſt Towns in the *Leſſer Aſia*, which held out againſt *Tamerlane*: in revenge whereof, when he had took it, he cauſed 12000 men, women, and children, to be moſt cruelly buried alive in ſome hollow pits, which he had digged for that purpoſe. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow: where alſo *Tamerlane* with an Army of 800000 of his *Tartars*, encountred with *Bajazet* the *Turk*, comming to the relief of *Sebaſtia*, with an Army of 500000 fighting men. The iſſue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having loſt 200000 of his ſouldiers, was himſelf taken priſoner, and carried by the inſolent Conquerour in an iron cage, againſt the barrs whereof he beat out his brains. 6. *Barbaniſſa*. 7. *Megaloſſus*. 8. *Gozalvia*, *&c.* not much obſervable in ſtory.

In this part of *Pontus* is the riſe and fall of the River *Thermodon*, on the banks whereof the *Amazons*, a ſort of warlike women, are ſaid to dwell; ſo called either *quaſi* ἄμαζας, becauſe they uſed to cut off their right pappes, that they might not be an impediment to their ſhooting; or from α and μάζα, *ſine pane*, becauſe they uſed not to eat bread; or from ἅμα ζῆν, becauſe they uſed to live together. They were originally of *Scythia*, and accompanied their husbands to thoſe parts, about the time of the *Scythians* firſt irruptions into *Aſia*, in the time of *Seſoſtris* King of *Ægypt*. The leaders of this people into *Cappadocia*, were *Plinos* and *Scolpythus*, two young men of a great houſe, whom a contrary faction had baniſhed. They held a great hand over the *Themiſcyrii*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them. At laſt they were by treachery all murdered: But their wives now doubly vexed, both with exile and widowhood, and extremity of grief and fear producing its uſual effect, deſperateneſs; they ſet upon the Conquerours, under the conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpeſia*; and not only overthrew them, but alſo infinitely inlarged their Dominions, and for ſome time continued in great reputation: the names of whom, or of ſo many of them at leaſt as occur in ſtory we ſhall here ſubjoyn.

The *Amazon Queens*.

1 { *Lampedo*, *Marpeſia*, } Firſt *Queens* of the *Amazons* in theſe parts.

2 *Oretra*,

3 *Antiopa*, whoſe ſiſters *Hippolite* and *Menalippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theſeus* to ſingle combate, and were at laſt hardly vanquiſhed, to their eternal credits.

4. *Pentheſilea*, who came with a troop of brave *Viragoes*, to the aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*: ſhe invented the *Battail axe*, and was at laſt ſlain by *Pyrrhus*, ſon to *Achilles*. Long after her death reigned *Thaleſtris*, who came to *Alexander*, being in *Hycania*, and plainly told him that ſhe came to be his bed-fellow; which done ſhe returned; and at laſt by little and little this female nation was extinct. They uſed in matters of *copulation*, to go to their neighbouring men thrice in a year: if they brought forth males, they ſent them to their fathers; if females, they kept them, and trained them up in all diſcipline of war and courage. Of theſe more elſewhere.

4. The moſt Eaſtern part of *Pontus*, called *CAPPADOCIUS*, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*; extended from *Polemoniacus* to *Colchis*, and the River *Euphrates*, the utmoſt boundaries of this Countrey. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*. 2. *Ceraſus*, by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniacus*, from whence *Cherries* were brought firſt to *Rome*, *An.* V. C. 680. called therefore *Ceraſa* by the *Latines*; brought firſt into *Italy* by *Lucullus*, at the end of his war with *Mithridates*, no leſs deſerving for that ſervice to be made a God (as wittily *Tertullian* ſcoffs it) then *Bacchus* was for his tranſplanting of the Vine from the Eaſtern Countries. 3. *Iſchopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And ſo is alſo, 4. *Trapezus*, now *Trabezond*, the Imperial City of the *Comneni*, here reigning over *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, and theſe parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded firſt by *Alexius Comnenus* (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his ſon *Emanuel*) who at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, fled into theſe parts, which willingly ſubmitted unto his command, *Anno* 1200. Here his poſterity flouriſhed in great proſperity, preſerving the Majeſty of the Empire in a better meaſure, than the *Conſtantinopolitans* themſelves, till the time of *David* the laſt Emperour; in whoſe reign the City of *Trabezond*, and therewith all the whole Dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*; the poor Emperour led priſoner unto *Greece*; and there cruelly murdered. A famous Empory, and ſpecially for the trade of fiſh, caught by the people on the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea; here ſalted, and from hence tranſported in great quantities, to *Conſtantinople*, *Caffa*, and other places. And for their better help herein, it is ſaid that there is a Mountain not farr from

this City, affording a black ſtone, which being beaten in a Mortar, ſerves inſtead of ſalt, wherewith they ſeaſon the fiſh, which they ſend abroad. A City honoured heretofore with the reſidence of the Lord Deputies, or Lieutenants of the *Grecian* Emperour; for defence of the out-parts of the *Euxine* againſt the *Perſians*; and now the Station of ſuch Gallies as are maintained by the *Grand Seigniour*, to ſcour the coaſts of the *Black Sea*, and ſecure their trade. More in the land ſtand 5. *Zephiriam*, 6. *Aza*, 7. *Cocalia*, 8. *Cordyle*, and many others named in *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable.

The antient Inhabitants of this Country were called *LEUCOSTRI*, or *White Syrians*, governed by a race of Kings deſcended from the Royal houſe of *Achmenes* King of *Perſia*. The firſt of them called *Mithridates*, one of the ſeven Competitors for the *Perſian* Kingdom, on the death of *Cambyſes*. But that honour falling on *Darius* (of which more hereafter) he ſeated himſelf in theſe remote parts of *Aſia Minor*; the Anceſtor of many great and puiſſant Princes, but none more memorable than one of his own name, *Regum Orientis poſt* Alexandrum *Magnum Maximus*, the moſt potent King of all the Eaſt ſince the time of *Alexander* the great, as my Author hath it. A Prince of great abilities both in war and counſel, and one who longer held it out againſt the *Romans*, than *Pyrrhus*, *Annibal*, and the great King of *Macedon*, and *Syria*, had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part againſt *Ariſtonicus*, who would not conſent to the admiſſion of the *Romans* unto *Pergamus*, according to the will of *Attalus* Afterwards, conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Aſia*, in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Souldiers diſperſed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: in like manner, as in after times the *Engliſh*, taught perhaps by this example, murdered all the *Danes* then reſident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* maſſacred all the *French*, inhabiting *Sicilia*, as we have formerly declared. He diſpoſſeſſed *Nicomedes*, ſon to *Pruſias*, King of *Bithynia*; *Ariobarzanes*, King of *Cappadocia*; and *Philomenes*, King of *Paphlagonia*, of their eſtates, becauſe they perſiſted faithfull to his enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Grecians* to rebel, poſſeſſed himſelf of *Athens*, and divers places of importance in *Greece*, *Thrace*, and *Aſia*; and allured all the Iſles, except *Rhodes*, from their obedience to the *Romans*. And finally, having diſturbed their victories, and much ſhaken their eſtate, for the ſpace of 40 years, he was with much ado vanquiſhed by the valour and felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey* the Great; three of the greateſt Souldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* puiſſance ſo much pluck down his proud heart, as the rebellion of his ſon *Pharnaces*, againſt him; which he no ſooner heard, but he would have poiſoned himſelf; But having formerly ſo uſed his body to a kind of poiſon allayed, (which from his inventing of it, we now call *Mithridate*) that the *venom* could not work upon him, he ſlew himſelf. He is ſaid to have been an excellent Scholar, and to have ſpoken perfectly the languages of 22 Nations; the languages of ſo many Nations which were ſubject to him. But neither his learning nor his courage could preſerve him from thoſe common miſeries, which ordinarily attend a falling greatneſs. And ſo ended this long and tedious war, exceeding troubleſome to the *Romans*, but withall very beneficial. For under colour having given aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Galatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and both *Armeniaes*: inſomuch as it is truly ſaid by *L. Florus*, *totum penè Orientem & Septentrionem involvit*, that in his ruines he involved both the Eaſt, and North. But to proceed, after his death the Kingdom continued unto his poſterity, but *Tributaries* to the *Romans*, till the time of *Nero*: when *Polemo* the laſt King hereof dying without iſſue, it was *cantoned* and divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bithynia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*; only that part of it which was called *Polemoniacus*, retaining the dignity of a Province, diſtinct and ſeparate. And ſo it remained till the reign of *Conſtantine* the *great*, who changing the names, leſſening the bounds, and increaſing the number of the Provinces; left only the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, in the ſtate he found it. And for the reſt, he caſt it into two new Provinces, that towards the Eaſt, retaining the name, but not the bounds of the old *Polemoniacus*, wherein were the Cities of *Trapezus*, *Neo-Caſarea*, *Ceraſus*, *Comana Pontica*, *Palamonium*, and *Petræorum Civitas*, called afterwards *Juſtiniana*; of which *Neo-Caſarea* was the *Metropolis*. That towards the Eaſt, ſeparated from the Province of *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, by the River *Parthemius*, he cauſed to be called *Helenopontus*, by the name of his Mother; and thereunto aſſigned the Cities of *Amaſia* the *Metropolis* of it, *Ibora*, *Euchaita*, *Zela*, *Andrapus*, *Ægeum Climacus*, *Sinope*, *Amiſus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this diviſion held not long, both being united in one, and called *Helenopontus*, by *Juſtinian*; continuing after that a member of the Eaſtern Empire, till the coming of *David* and *Alexius Comneni* from *Conſtantinople*; whereof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabezond*, as before is ſaid. But their eſtates being overthrown, it remains wholly to the *Turks*, who do now poſſeſs it.

The Armes of the Emperour *Trabezond*, the greateſt Prince of theſe parts, till the *Turks* ſubdued them, were *Or*, an Eagle volant *Gules*.

3. *PAPHLAGONIA*.

PAPHLAGONIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Halys*, by which parted from *Cappadocia*; on the Weſt, by the River *Parthemius*, which parteth it from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; on the North, with that part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*, which was named *Galaticus*; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, and *Galatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the ſon of *Phineus*, eſtated in it by his Father, who had newly conquered it.

The Countrey was but ſmall, and of little power, and conſequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The principal of ſuch as were, were 1. *Gangra*, obſervable for a Council holden there in the *Primitive* times, *Anno* 339. commonly called *Synodus Gangrenſis*. 2. *Conica*, or *Coniata*, of ſo convenient ſituation, that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was maſter of this Countrey. 3. *Pompeiópolis*, raiſed out of the foundations of ſome leſſer Town, by *Pompey* the great, and by him ſo named. 4. *Germanopolis*. 5. *Xoana*. 6. *Andrapa*, called afterwards *Nova Claudiopolis*, to difference it from another City of that name in *Pontus*.

This Province, though but ſmall in circuit, was heretofore the ſeat of four different Nations, *viz.* 1. The *Tibareni*, of whom it is ſaid, that they never waged war on any enemy, but they faithfully certified them before-hand, of the time and place of their fight. 2. *Heptacometa*. 3. The *Moſſynoeci*, both which were a people ſo beaſtly and ſhameleſs, that they uſed to perform the work of generation in publick; not knowing that *Multa ſunt honeſta factu, quæ ſunt turpia viſu*: And 4. the *Heneti*, to whom the *Venetians*, as we have already ſaid, do owe their firſt original. The Kings which ruled in this Countrey, derived themſelves from *Philomenes*, who aſſiſted *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his defence againſt the *Greeks*; in memory of whom, this Region for a while was called *Philomenia*. Applying themſelves unto the times, they were alwaies favourable to the ſtrongeſt, ſerving the *Perſian*, and ſubmitting to *Alexander* as he paſſed that way; and ſo maintained their eſtate without much moleſtation, till the time of *Mithridatet* King of *Pontus*: who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great power in the *Leſſer Aſia*, deprived *Philomenes*, then King hereof, and took the Kingdom to himſelf, fortifying the chief Towns and places of it. Reſtored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his death. But the Countrey being very much waſted, and moſt of the Cities of it deſtroyed and deſolated in the courſe of that war, it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Galatia*. Not reckoned a diſtinct Province in the time of Saint *Peter*, who writing to the *Jewes*, diſperſed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Aſia*, and *Bithynia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwiſe eſteemed than as a member of *Galatia*, in the time of *Ptolomy*. Afterwards it was joyned to *Pontus*, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*: part of it after that, with ſome parts of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperour *Theodoſius*, and called *Honorius*, in honour of his ſon *Honorius*; whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus* properly ſo called, was made the *Metropolis*. But by *Juſtinian* the name of *Honorius* being aboliſhed, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again; the whole Country, as before limited, was governed by an *Imperial* Officer, whom he called *Prætor Juſtinianus*: continuing under the command of the *Conſtantinopolitans*, till the taking of that City by the *Latines*. After which made a member of the Empire of *Trabezond*, till the conqueſt of it by the *Turks*, by whom called *Rom*.

4. GALATIA.

GALATIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Cappadocia*; on the Weſt, with the River *Sangarius*, and ſome part of *Pontus* ſpecially ſo called, or *Metapontus*; on the North, with *Paphlagonia*; on the South, with *Lycaonia*. So called from the *Galls*, who having ranged over *Greece*, paſſed into *Aſia*, and brought a great part of it under their command: but being broken by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Myſia* and the leſſer *Phrygia*, were at laſt confined to this Countrey. It was alſo called *Gallo-Græcia*, from that mixture of *Galls* and *Græcians*, who uniting in one body when they came for *Aſia*, were commonly called *Gallo-Græci*. By *Suidas*, *Græco-Galli*, and the Countrey ſutably *Græco-Gallia*. Which mixture of *Grecians* notwithſtanding, the *Gal's* (being both the greater and prevailing Party) not only preſerved their own Language, but in ſhort time made it the common Language of the whole Countrey. And it continued ſo till S. *Hieroms* dayes, who telleth us in the Preface to his Commentaries on S. *Pauls* Epiſtle to his people, that it was *Simillima Trevirenſium*, a Language like to that of the *Trevers*, or people of *Triers*. A ſure and certain Argument of their firſt Original.

The Countrey very plentifull of all manner of fruits, even unto voluptuouſneſs; and providently provided of the ſtone called the *Amethyſt*, which is ſaid to preſerve from drunkeneſs the man that weareth it. The name doth ſignifie as much, derived from *α Privativum*, and μέθυσος, *ebrius*, which cometh from μέθυ, ſignifying wine.

The people had a cuſtom in their publick funerals to caſt letters fairly written, into that laſt and fatal fire, wherein the dead body was to be burned; ſuppoſing that their friends ſhould read them in the other world. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excelled all Nations: inſomuch that *Athenæus* telleth us of one *Ariamnes* a rich *Galatian*, that he feaſted the whole Nation for a year together with the *Sacrifices* of Buls, Sheep, Swine, and other proviſions, boiled in great Caldrons made for that purpoſe, and diſtributed amongſt them in Tents and Boothes erected for that entertainment. A brave flaſh of a vain-glorious hoſpitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Halys*, *Sangarius*, and ſome others. The Towns of moſt conſideration in it were 1. *Ancyra*, on the banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief City of the *Tectoſages*, a *Gallick* Nation, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Countrey; memorable in Church-ſtory for a *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, *An.* 299. called *Synodus Ancyrana*, but of moſt note at the preſent for the making of *Chamlets*, now called *Angauri*. 2. *Olenus*, 3. *Agrinama*, Cities of the ſame people alſo 4. *Tavium*, or *Tanium*, (for I find both names) the chief City of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen ſtatue of *Jupiter*, whoſe Temple there was a priviledged Sanctuary. 5. *Androſia*, 6. *Phabarena*, Cities of that Nation alſo. 7. *Thermæ*, a *Roman* Colony, ſo called of the hot Baths there; the chief City of the *Toliboſti*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Toliſtobogi*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8. *Talachbachora*, belonging alſo to that people.

Beſides the Nations above named, here dwelt alſo the *Byceni* and *Proſeleminitæ*; who had alſo their peculiar Cities mentioned by name in *Ptolomy*, but of little or no obſervation in the courſe of ſtory.

Cappadocia. Of all which Nations, only the *Tectoſages* were of *Gallick* Original; who with others of their Countrey-men under the conduct of *Belgius* and *Brennus*, having ranſacked *Pannonia* and *Illyricum*, fell at laſt into *Macedon*; where having tyrannized a while, and laid waſt the Countrey, they were at laſt vanquiſhed and expulſed by *Antigonus Gonatas*. After this overthrow, under the conduct of *Lamorius* and *Lutorius*, they ferried over the *Helleſpont*, and ſubdued almoſt all *Aſia Minor* on this ſide the *Taurus*; employed there by thoſe petty Kings and States againſt one another: their reputation grown ſo great, that no Prince thought himſelf ſecure without their alliance, or able to make war without their aſſiſtance. The very *Switzers* of that age; as *mercenary*, but more *faithfull* unto thoſe that hired them. But being over-rigorous in compelling their neighbour Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too ſevere in the exacting of their *Tributes*; they inforced *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by whoſe favour they had ſetled about the *Helleſpont*, to become their enemy. Vanquiſhed by him, they were conſtrained to contain themſelves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was called *Galatia*, and *Gallo-græcia*. Here for a while they kept their antient courage and eſtimation, moleſting many times their neighbours, and ſometimes ſetting themſelves to hire in the wars of others: but in the end they loſt both courage and eſteem, and were *Galls* only in name, retaining little in them of their Anceſtors valour. For as moſt plants and trees loſe much of their virtue, being tranſplanted into another ſoil: ſo theſe men loſt their native courage, ſtrength and hardineſs, being weakened by the *Aſian* pleaſures and delicacies. And as *Tully* ſaith, for a man to be good in other places, is no maſtery; but in *Aſia* to lead a temperate life, is indeed praiſe-worthy: ſo might one have ſaid to the *Galls*, that to be couragious and patient of travel amongſt the mountains, was no whit to be admired; but to have continued ſo amidſt the delights of *Aſia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But theſe men were ſo farr from aſſailing the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they loſt their own Countrey to *Manlius*, a *Roman* General. A war which *Manlius* undertook for no other cauſe, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* againſt the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable Act performed herein, but that of *Chiomena* the Kings wife, who being raviſhed by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilſt he buſied himſelf in telling the money agreed on for her ranſom, to cut off his head; which ſhe preſented to her husband. But *Manlius* got little honour by this ſucceſs, not being welcomed with a *triumph*, at his coming home, according to the *Roman* cuſtom; becauſe he undertook the war of his own accord; without commiſſion from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Feudatories*. This hapned *An.* V. C. 564. After which time, I find *Dejotarus*, by conſent of the *Romans*, to reign here as King: who ſiding with *Pompey* in his war againſt *Cæſar*, incurred the anger of the *Victor*; and had dyed for it, had not *Tully* pleaded his cauſe, and obtained his pardon. But he being dead, his Countrey in the time of *Auguſtus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lollius Paulinus* being the firſt Preſident or Governour of it: enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and ſome part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galaticus*. Reduced to its firſt bounds by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodoſius*; the one called *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris*, from its *medicinal* waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the *Metropolis*. In the falling of the *Eaſtern* Empire it was partly ſeiſed on by the *Turks*; not totally come into their hands, till the ſubverting of the Empire of *Trabezond*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chianger*.

5. *CAPPADOCIA.*

CAPPADOCIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Armenia Major*, and ſome part of *Armenia Minor*; on the Weſt, with *Galatia*; on the North, with *Pontus Polemoniacus*, and *Cappadocius*; and on the South, with *Lycaonia*, and the reſt of *Armenia Minor*. So called of a River, as *Pliny* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it, and *Galatia*.

The Countrey very plentiful of wine, and moſt kind of fruits, rich in mines of Silver, Braſs, Iron, and Allom: affording alſo beſides a mean ſort of *Alabaſter*, good ſtore of *Chryſtal*, *Jaſper*, and the *Onyx* ſtone. But the greateſt wealth hereof is their breed of horſes, infinite almoſt in numbers, and fit for any ſervice they can be put to. And this is univerſal, in all parts of the Countrey, but not the other: there being ſome parts of it mountainous and very barren, eſpecially about the ſpurs and branches of the *Anitaurus*; which is a chain of hills thruſting out of the *Taurus*, and bending themſelves unto the North, upon the edges of this Countrey, and the two *Armeniaes*. Here is alſo in this Country the mountain *Argæus*, ſaid to be of ſo great an height, that from one of the ſummits or tops thereof, a man of perſpicuous eyes may diſcern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The people of this Countrey in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, ſo vicious and lewd of life, ſo monſtruſly addicted to all kind of wickedneſs, that beſides the ſhare they had in the old *Greek* proverb, of τϱιὰ Καππὰ κάκιςα, they had ſome proverbs to themſelves: Καππαδόκης, & Καππαδόκιον τέϱας, that is to ſay, a *man* of *Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian Monſter*, being uſed *proverbially*, to ſignifie a man moſt extreamly wicked. The words ſo uſed by *Gregory Nazianzen*, ſpeaking of *Gregory* or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either *Suidas* or *Eraſmus*, two right learned *Criticks*, underſtand him rightly. And they made good the *Proverb* in the times of the Goſpel: *Gregory* that bloody butcher of *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Aſteriur*, *Euſtathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch-Heretick *Eunomius*, being all of this Countrey. Yet ſuch is the influence of *Chriſtianity*, where once entertained, that this lewd diſpoſition of the *Cappadocians* was ſo corrected and reſtrained by it; that this Countrey afforded as many godly Prelates, and couragious Martyrs, as any others whatſoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen* before remembred; who with *Gregory Nyſſen*, *Cappadocia*

and St. *Baſil*, all learned and religious Biſhops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongſt many Martyrs of great faith and conſtancy, St. *George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Colonel or Tribune of ſouldiers under *Diocleſian*, more celebrated in the Churches both Eaſt and Weſt, than any other Saints in all the *Calender*, the bleſſed Apoſtles and Evangeliſts excepted only, and for that reaſon made Patron of the Order of the *Garter* by King *Edward* the third. Finally, it is reported of theſe *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venemous alſo; inſomuch that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the mans blood was a poiſon to the ſnake, and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Country, were 1. *Halys*, ſpoken of before, which had here its fountain and Original; the end of *Crœſus* Empire both in ſite and fate, the utmoſt bound of his dominions on that ſide: which purpoſing to paſſe over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountred with, and vanquiſhed by *Cyrus* the great King of *Perſia*. 2. *Iris*, which ariſeth in this Country alſo, and paſſing through it, and a part of *Pontus*, diſchanelleth it ſelf, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperor *Tiberius*, after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by him called *Cæſarea*: the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia*, and the Epiſcopal See of renowned St. *Baſil*. 2. *Myſſa* the See of *Gregory*, ſurnamed *Nyſſenus*, the brother of *Baſil*. 3. *Nazianzum*, the Epiſcopal See of another *Gregory*, ſirnamed *Nazianzenus*; three men, which as for the piety of their converſation, were not equalled thoſe times; ſo for their admirable abilities in all kind of learning, nothing inferiour to the moſt eminent of the antient *Grecians*. 4. *Tana*, the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia ſecunda*, after the ſubdiviſion of it by the Emperor *Valens*. 5. *Archelais*, in the *Præfecture* of *Gardnacreta*, ſo called from *Archelaus* a *Cappadocian* King, the founder or repairer of it. 6. *Comana*, for diſtinctions ſake called *Comana Cappadociæ*, to difference it from another of that name in *Pontus*; by *Ptolomy* placed, I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*, as is alſo *Nyſſa* before mentioned. Memorable in old times for a Temple conſecrated to *Bellona*, whoſe *Prieſts*, and other inferiour Officers of both Sexes, amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and upward; for maintenance of whom the *Prieſts* received the *Revenue* of the Region next adjoyning to it; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the ſame kinred alſo. 7. *Dio-Cæſarea*, called formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8. *Fauſtinopolis*, ſo called in honour of *Fauſtina*, wife of the Emperor *Antoninus*. 9, *Andraca*. 10. *Phiara*. 11. *Salambria*. 12. *Campa*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, with many others as obſcure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the ancient Writers, is 13. *Erzirum*, ſituate on the very confines of the *Greater Armenia*, for that cauſe made the *Rendez-vous*, or place of meeting for the *Turkiſh* Souldiers, when there is any expedition in hand againſt the *Perſian*; at which place alſo after the ending of the war for the preſent year, they are diſbanded and ſent home to their ſeveral quartars. And 14. *Pterium*, not named in *Ptolomy*; but memorable for the great battel fough in ſight thereof, between *Crœſus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Perſia*; in which *Crœſus* having loſt the field, and with it his Kingdom, found the *Oracle* true (though not in the ſenſe which he expected) that *Crœſus* paſſing over the River *Halys*, ſhould overthrow a great eſtate, as indeed he did; but it was his own, and not the *Perſians*.

That the *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togarma*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been ſo fully proved already in our *General Preface*, that we ſhall not trouble our ſelves to repeat it here: Nor ſhall we need to ſay more in confuting of their opinion, who would fetch *Capthorim* out of *Egypt* from the reſt of his brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been ſaid. Their fortunes in the former times I find little of: ſubjected by the *Perſian*, with the reſt of *Aſia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Crœſus*, who before had given the law unto it, as to the *Phrygians*, *Paphlagonians*, *Bithynians*, *Myſians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given, together with *Atoſſa* his Siſter, to *Pharnaces* a noble *Perſian*, who had ſaved him from the fury of a ravenous Lion running upon him with full mouth, as he was a hunting. A noble loyalty, and no leſſe royally rewarded. From him deſcended *Ariarathes* King hereof in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*; continuing ſteadfaſt in his duty to the Crown of *Perſia*, when almoſt all the reſt of the Kings of *Aſia* yeelded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to account in his march for *Perſia*. But after his deceaſe, *Perdiccas* having the command of the *Army*, ſet upon him, vanquiſhed him, and moſt cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kinred as could be found. One of his ſons, who fortunately had eſcaped this ſlaughter, ſpying his time, when the *Macedonians* were at wars amongſt themſelves, recovered his eſtate again, and paſſed it over to his off-ſpring: continuing in his line, without any ſubjection, till the time of that *Ariobarzanes* who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his dominion, as was told before. Reſtored again unto his kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Succeſſors by their *courteſie* only: Continuing yet in ſtate of Kings, till the death of *Archelaus* the laſt King hereof. Who having angred *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life-time of *Auguſtus*, as did others of the *Tributary* States and Princes, was by him then poſſeſſed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting ſomewhat againſt the States. Where the old Prince, even ſpent with Age, the Gout, and ſome other diſeaſes, had without queſtion been condemned by the ſervile Senate; but that one of the witneſſes depoſed, that he had ſaid, that *if ever he went back into* Cappadocia, Tiberius *ſhould find* quales ſibi nervi eſſent, *what a man he was*. Which moved ſuch a laughter in the *Senate*, the old King being neither able to ſit nor ſtand, that he was diſmiſſed: *Tiberius* thinking that he could not puniſh him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour, which the old King conſtrued to the beſt, and in the way of gratitude, bequeathed his kingdom at his death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly inlarged by the addition of the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*: and ſo it ſtood in the time of

Armenia Minor.

Ptolomy, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocius*, and *Polemoniacus*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided beſides thoſe into theſe eight *Prefectures*, that is to ſay, *Clanianienſis*, *Sargaranſene*, *Gardiocreta*, *Cilicia*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycaonia*, *Antiochiana*, and *Cataonia*. But *Pontus*, *Lycaonia*, and *Antiochiana* (he means *Piſidia* as I take it) being made Provinces of themſelves, by the Emperor *Conſtantine*; it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cæſarea* as is ſaid before, was the *Metropolitan*: and ſo remained, till the Emperor *Valens*, a great Patron of the *Arian* faction, of purpoſe to deſpight St. *Baſil*, who oppoſed that Hereſie, created another province out of it, called *Cappadocia ſecunda*, whereof the *Metropolis* was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eaſtern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trabezond*; together with which it fell unto the hands of the *Turks*; by whom the whole Province with the addition of *Pontus*, is now called *Amaſiah*, after the name of that City, which the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his reſidence; and is ſaid to yeild yearly to the *Grand Signeur* 60000 Ducats.

ARMENIA MINOR.

ARMENIA MINOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Major*; on the South, with Mount *Taurus*, which ſeparates it from *Cilicia*; on the Weſt, and North, with a long chain of Hills called *Mons Scordiſcus*, by ſome called *Mons Amanus*, by others *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of place; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reaſon of the name hereafter.

The Country of the ſame nature with *Cappadocia*, before deſcribed; in ſome parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* ſo incloſed and fenſed, that it is difficult of entrance; in others pleaſant and delightfull, well watered with ſweet ſtreams, and ſome fair Rivers iſſuing out of the Mountains, the principal whereof is *Melas*, ſo called from the *blackneſs* of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into theſe four Regions, that is to ſay, *Laviana*, *Aravena*, *Melitene*, lying on the *Euphrates*; *Mariana* more within the land towards *Cappadocia*: each of which had their ſeveral Cities, whoſe names are to be found in *Ptolomy*. The principal 1. *Melitene*, the chief City of the Region ſo called, and the *Metropolis* of the leſſer *Armenia*. Called afterwards *Maluxia*, and now *Suur*: the territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferiour to the beſt of *Greece*. The City ſaid by *Onuphrius* to be a Colony of the *Romans*; much ſpoken of by *Euſebius*, and other writers of *Eccleſiaſtical* ſtory, for the piety of the *Chriſtians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Perſecution*. 2. *Nicopolis*, and 3. *Oromandus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his victory, there obtained againſt the forces of *Tigranes* King of *Syria*, and both *Armenias*. 4. *Garnace*, a well fortified town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gorneas*. 5. *Cucuſum*, and 6. *Arabyſſus*, memorable for the exile of S. *Chriſoſtom*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, confined unto theſe places by the power and malice of the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his *Orthodoxie* in point of faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interred.

This Country was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* by their incurſions and Colonies poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*: continuing part of their eſtate till the war of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; who being diſcomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thouſand horſe to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had married his daughter. By whom at firſt neglected, and not ſuffered to come into preſence; but afterwards on the apprehenſion of the common danger, more eſteemed and ſet by: inſomuch that his royal entertainment there, and the refuſal of *Tigranes* to yeild him up when required by the *Romans*, occaſioned *Lucullus* to bring his forces into theſe parts, who ſubdued all before him to the banks of *Euphrates*. His victories being ſeconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Auguſtus*, this Country was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; the greater *Armenia*, lying on the other ſide of that River, though conquered alſo in that war, not being taken into the accompt of the *Roman* Provinces, till the time of *Trajan*; *Auguſtus* thinking it an high point of wiſdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond thoſe banks. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eaſtern Empire: when waſted by the *Perſians*, and ſubdued by the *Turks*; by whom called *Genech*, or as ſome ſay, *Pegia*.

And ſo much of the Provinces of the *Pontick* Dioceſe, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*; converted to the *Chriſtian* Faith by the two great Apoſtles of the *Jews* and *Gentiles*; as appeareth by St. *Paul*'s Epiſtle to the *Galathians*, and St. *Peter*'s to the *Strangers* diſperſed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Aſia*, and *Bithynia*.

7. ASIA PROPRIA.

Come we now to the *ASIAN Dioceſe*, and firſt to that part thereof which *Ptolomy* and others (for the reaſon ſpoken of before) call *Aſia Propria*. Antiently the moſt rich and flouriſhing part of all this *Peninſula*; and ſo affirmed to be by *Tully*, who telleth us that the *tributes* which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly ſufficed to defray the publick charges for defence thereof, *Aſia verò tam opima eſt & fertilis, ut & ubertate agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine paſtionis, & multitudine earum rerum quæ exportentur, facilè omnibus terris antecellat.* But as for *Aſia* (ſaith he) it is ſo fertile, and ſo rich, that for the fruitfulneſs of the fields, variety of fruits, largneſs of paſture-grounds, and quantity of commodities which were brought from thence, it very eaſily excelled all other Countries. The fortunes of the ſeveral Provinces we ſhall ſee anon. Brought under the command of the *Perſians*, they continued ſubject to that Crown, for ſome generations: but at laſt taken from them by the *Grecians*, under the proſperous enſigns of victorious *Alexander*. After whoſe deceaſe, the Empire being divided among his Captains, *Aſia* fell unto the ſhare of *Antigonus*, whoſe Son *Demetrius* ſeized on the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and left *Aſia* unto *Seleucus Nicanor*, King of *Syria*, and the Eaſt, being alſo one of *Alexanders* heirs. The ſixth from this *Seleucus*, was *Antiochus* called the *Great*, who waging war with young *Ptolomy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his Father to the protection of the *Romans*, and otherwiſe practiſing againſt their eſtate, provoked the Senate of *Rome*, to ſpend *Scipio* (ſirnamed from his *Aſian* victories) *Aſiaticus*, againſt him; who compelled him to forſake *Aſia*; which the *Romans* preſently took into their poſſeſſions. But finding it agreeable to the preſent eſtate of their affairs, (the Kingdom of *Macedonia* ſtanding in their way) to make further uſe of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former war, they gave unto *Eumenes* the Provinces of *Lycaonia*, *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*; *Lycia* and *Caria* to the *Rhodians*: knowing full well, that they could eaſily take them back again, when they ſaw occaſion. More hereof in the ſtory of the Kings of *Pergamus*; on the deceaſe of *Attalus* the laſt King thereof, theſe Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*.

It contained only after the accompt of *Cicero*, the Provinces of *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Plancus*: computing the two *Phrygias* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolis* and *Jonia*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will conſider it as divided into 1. *Phrygia Minor*. 2. *Phrygia Major*. 3. *Myſia*, 4. *Æolis* and *Jonia*, or *Aſia* more eſpecially ſo called. 5. *Lydia*, and 6. *Caria*.

8. PHRYGIA MINOR.

PHRYGIA MINOR, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Myſia*, interpoſing betwixt it and the *Greater Phrygia*; on the Weſt, with the *Helleſpont*; on the North, with the *Propontis*, on the South, with the *Egean* Sea. Called *Phrygia* from *Phryx* a River in the *Greater Phrygia*, or as ſome ſay, from *Phryxus*, the Son of *Athamus* King of *Thebes*, who flying from the treacherous ſnares of his Mother-in-law, did here ſeat himſelf. *Minor* was added to it to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was alſo called *Phrygia Helleſpontiaca*, from its ſituation on that *Streight*: and *Troas*, from the chief City of it; by which name it occurreth in the book of the *Acts*. It was called alſo *Epictetus*, but the reaſon of the name I finde not, except it came from the *Epicteti*, a People dwelling on the Eaſt-parts of *Bithynia*, and conſequently near this place.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Scamander*, on whoſe Banks ſtood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Heſiod* with the title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Countrey a little before they were to be married, uſed to bath themſelves, and to ſay theſe words, λάβε τὴν μȣ̃ Σκάμανδρε παρθενίαν, that is to ſay, *Take O* Scamander *my Virginity*. Which opportunity *Cimon* an *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his head, like a River-god, and ſo defloured *Callyrrhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another: occaſioning thereby the leaving off of this fooliſh cuſtom. It was alſo called *Xanthus* by the Poets, *Xanthumq; bibiſſent*, as in *Virgil*; and watered a little Region called *Lycia*, whence *Ovid* in his firſt Epiſtle uſeth *Lyciam haſtam*, (*Sanguine Tlepolemus* Lyciam *tepefecerat haſtam*) to ſignifie a *Trojan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*. 2. *Æſapus*, parting this little Region from the *Leſſer Myſia*, the boundary of it on the North: as the Promontory called *Lectium*, is the furtheſt point of it, towards the South. 3. *Simoeis*, now called *Simoeis*, falling into the *Helleſpont* not far from the Promontory called *Rhæteum* (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*; but riſing out of Mount *Ida*, an hill of this Region, on which *Paris* (being by his Father expoſed to the fury of wilde Beaſts) judged the controverſie of the golden ball in favour of *Venus*; reſpecting neither the great riches of *Juno*, nor the divine wiſdom of *Pallas*; but tranſported with a ſenſual delight, fatal in the end to the whole Country.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Dardanum*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Æneas*. 2. *Aſſus*, mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 13. by *Pliny* called *Apollonia*; who telleth us that the earth about it is of ſuch a nature, that it will conſume a dead Body in forty days. 3. *Trajanopolis*, whoſe name declareth its founder 4. *Lyrneſſus*, on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lesbos*, deſtroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the very firſt beginnings of the *Trojan* war, who brought thence amongſt other Captives the Lady *Briſeis*, reſerved by *Achilles* to himſelf for his part of the booty, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which cauſed ſuch a great diſpleaſure in him, that he would not go into the field, till ſhe were reſtored. 6. *Sigæum*, the Port-Town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the ſame name. 6. *Troy*, ſituate on the River *Scamander*, the beauty and glory of the Eaſt; called *Ilium*, and *Pergamus* for the reaſon to be ſhown anon. A famous Town, from the people whereof, all Nations deſire to fetch their original. The beauty of it may be (as ſome write) yet ſeen in the ruines, which with a kind of majeſty entertain the beholder: the Walls of large circuit, conſiſting of a black hard ſtone cut four-ſquare, ſome remnants of the Turrets which ſtood on the Walls, and the fragments of great Marble Tombes and Monuments of curious Workmanſhip. But certainly theſe are not the ruines of that *Ilium*, which was deſtroyed by the *Grecians*; but 7. *Troas*, or new *Troy*, built ſome four miles from the ſituation of the old, by *Lyſimachus*, one of *Alexanders* Captains; who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and called it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri* in honour of *Alexander* the *Great*, who begun the work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times called

Phrygia Minor.

Troas onely, and by that name mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 6. then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruine onely; but every day made more ruinous than other by the *Turks*, who carry daily the ſtones and Pillars of it to *Conſtantinople*, to adorn the houſes of the *Baſſas*. 7. *Scamandria*, a ſtrong piece, but of later foundation: cunningly ſurprized by **Ottoman** the firſt King of the *Turks*, in the time of a funeral. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the buildings, glories, and fall of it, take this ſtory with you.

The KINGS of *TROY*.

A. M.

2487 1 *Dardanus*, Son to *Corinthus* King of *Corinth*, having killed his Brother *Jaſius*, fled into this Country, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*; according to that Verſe of *Virgil*;

> *Dardanus* Iliacæ *primus pater urbis, & autor.*
> Both of *Troy* Town, and *Trojan* race,
> *Dardanus* the firſt founder was.

2518 2 *Erichthonius*, of whom little memorable. 75.

2593 3 *Tros*, the Son of *Erichthonius*, who ſo much beautified and enlarged the City of *Durdania*, that from thenceforth it was called *Troja*, and the People *Troes*. By ſupporting the unnatural malice of *Saturn* againſt his Son *Jupiter*, he loſt his own Son *Ganymides*: who being taken Priſoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the *Eagle* for his Enſign, is by the Poets ſaid to have been ſnatched up to Heaven by an *Eagle*. 60.

2653 4 *Ilus*, the Son of *Tros*, who built the Regal Palace called *Ilium*; and did withall ſo enlarge the City, and added ſo much Ornament and beauty to it, that it is frequently called *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Turrets of it, were of his erection, which being by the *Greeks* called Πύργοι, and ſometimes Πύργαμα, occaſioned the whole City to to be called *Pergamus*. 54.

2707 5 *Laomedon*, who new built *Troy*: which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Grecians* (juſtly conceiving diſpleaſure againſt the treacherous King) took twice and defaced; *Laomedon* himbeing ſlain the later time. 36.

2743 6 *Priamus*, who re-edified *Troy*; but giving leave to his Son *Paris* to raviſh *Helena*, wife to *Menelaus* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greeks* to renew their antient quarrel: who after a ten years ſiege, forced the Town, having loſt of their own men 860000; and killed 666000 of the *Trojans*, and their Aſſociates, A. M. 2783. So as that of *Ovid* was moſt true:

> *Jam ſeges eſt ubi* Troja *fui, reſecandaque falce,*
> *Luxuriat* Phrygio *ſanguine pinguis humus.*
> Corn fit for Sithes now grows where *Troy* once ſtood,
> And the Soyl's fatted with the *Phrygian* blood.

Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be conſidered: Firſt, whether the *Gracians* in theſe ten years lay continually before it: and it ſeems they did not; but that rather they did beat up and down, waſting the Country, and robbing the Seas for the firſt nine years; and in the tenth only laid a formal ſiege. This is the more probable, becauſe that in the tenth year of the war, *Priam* is recorded by *Homer* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have ſate on an high Tower, and to have learned of *Helen* the names and qualities of the *Greek* Commanders: which he could not be thought ignorant of, if they had ſo long together laid in eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken: and here we finde a difference. For ſome Hiſtorians tell us, that *Æneas* and *Antenor* being either weary of the war, or diſcontented that it was not managed by their ſole advice, or otherwiſe corrupted by the *Grecians*, betrayed it to the enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudicial to his *Æneas*, whom he intended to make the pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth us of a *wooden-horſe*, wherein divers of the *Greek* Princes lay hidden, which by *Sinon*, one of the *Grecians*, was brought to *Troy*-gates: and that the People deſirous of that Monument of the Enemies flight, made a breach in their Walls, the gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on Hiſtory, it is thought by ſome, that over the *Scaan* Gate where the *Greeks* entered, was the Portraitour of a large and ſtately Horſe: and by others that the Walls were battered by a *wooden Engin* called an *Horſe*, as the *Romans* in after-ages uſed a like Engin called a *Ram*. Neither of which is much improbable: but with me perſwade not the integritie of *Antenor* or *Æneas*, for whoſe ſakes the fable of the *wooden horſe* was firſt invented.

The City being thus deſtroyed, the *Trojans* who remained in the Countty, when *Æneas* and *Antenor* had forſaken it, began to think of ſome other place of their habitation: which having often ſhifted, they fixed at laſt by advice of an *Oracle*, ſome four miles from the former; giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and ſilly Village when *Alexander* came thither; who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the onely one they had, and a mean one too) offered up his own ſhield, and took down another, which he uſed after in his fights againſt the *Perſians*; honouring it with gifts, and promiſing the People to rebuild and inlarge their City. But what he lived not to make good was performed by *Lyſimachus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next called the *Alexandrian Tras*, at laſt *Troas* ſimply. A free City it continued till the war of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; in the courſe whereof *Fimbria* a *Roman Queſtor* having ſeditiouſly ſlain the Conſul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bithynia*, and made himſelf Maſter of the Army; being refuſed entrance here as a Thief and a Rebel, beſieged the City, and in the ſpace of eleven dayes took it. And when he boaſted that he had done as much in eleven dayes as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in many years; one of the *Ilians* tartly anſwered, *That they wanted*

ted an Hector *to defend them*; afterwards *Julius Caſar*, emulous of *Alexanders* attempts, and deſcended from *Julius* of *Trojan* race, reſtored them to their liberty, and inlarged their territories; a *Colonie*, and an *Univerſity* of the *Romans* of no mean eſteem. But time and war, and the barbarity of the *Turks*, have brought it into rubbiſh, as before was ſaid.

Phrygia major.

In the diſtributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, this little Region, with that of *Myſia Helleſpontiaca* adjoining to it, made up the Province called by the name of *Helleſpontus*, ſubject with *Æolis, Ionia*, and the *Aſian* Iſles, to the exempt juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Following the fortunes of *Conſtantinople* till the taking of that City by the *Latines*, it became then ſubject to the *Greek* Emperors reſiding at *Nice*; conquered not long after by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* family. In the diviſion of whoſe Empire on the death of the ſecond *Aladine*, the whole Province of *Helleſpont*, with part of the greater *Myſia*, and *Æolis*, adjoining to them, and ſome part of *Lydia*, were ſeized upon by *Caraſus*, a man of great power amongſt the *Turks*, who here erected a ſmall Kingdom, called from him *Caraſia*, or *Caraſi-illi*; long ſince ſwallowed up by the *Ottoman* race, in the time of *Orchanes*, ſon of *Ottoman*, and the ſecond King of that houſe.

9. *PHRYGIA MAJOR.*

PHRYGIA MAJOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Galatia*; on the Weſt, with *Myſia*, interpoſed betwixt it and the leſſer *Phrygia*; on the North, with *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* ſpecially ſo called; on the South, with *Lydia*. Called *Phrygia* for the reaſons before laid down; the word *Major* being added for diſtinctions ſake, becauſe the *greater* of the two.

The People of this Countrey were antiently more *ſuperſtitious* than the other *Aſians*, as appeareth by the rites uſed in the Sacrifices of *Cybele* and ſome other Goddeſſes: ſaid to be alſo the Inventors of *Augury*, and other kinds of *Divination*. And yet for the moſt part men of after-wits, and all for *had I wiſt*; whence the Proverb, *Sero ſapiunt Phryges*, applyed to thoſe who wanted forecaſt, and knew better to lament misfortunes than to keep them off; and uſed not to bethink themſelves of what would follow, till it was too late. A people noted for effeminacy and lightneſs of converſation; and for fear they ſhould not of themſelves be wanton enough their very *Muſick* was ſo fitted as to diſpoſe them to *laſciviouſneſs*. Where by the way, I find three ſorts of *Muſick* ſpoken of amongſt the Antients: the firſt, that which *Ariſtotle* calleth ἠθικὴν, becauſe it ſetled and compoſed the affections; and *Boetius*, the *Lydian Muſick*, becauſe much uſed by that people, before corrupted by long eaſe and ill example. It conſiſted principally of long notes or *Spondees*, ſuch as is that ſuppoſed to be which *Eliſha* called for, *Kings* 1. *ch.* 3. *v.* 15. to invite the ſpirit of propheſie to him; and was played by *David* before *Saul*, to drive away the ill ſpirit from him. And of this ſort was the *Church Muſick* of the *Primitive* times, fitted to calm mens paſſions, and raiſe their devotions; *ut per oblectamenta aurium* (as Saint *Auguſtine* hath it) *aſſurgat animus ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleaſure of the ears the paſſion might be calmed, and the ſoul inflamed with pious and devout affections. The ſecond ſort is that which *Ariſtotle* calleth πρακτικὸν, or *Active*, (as the other ἠθικὸν or *Moral*) commending it before the other in the education of youth, becauſe more ſtirring them to action; conſiſting of *Dactiles*, or one long note, and two ſhort ones, by him and *Boetius* both called *Dorian*, as moſt peculiar to that people. The third and laſt by the Philoſopher called ἐνθουσιαστικὸν, or raviſhing, becauſe it unhingeth the affections, and ſtirreth men to laſcivious geſtures, and wanton thoughts; conſiſting of ſhort notes or *Tribrachies*. *Boetius* terms it *Phrygian*, as moſt in uſe amongſt this looſe and ungoverned nation; ſuch as the *French Muſick* in our age. A ſort of Muſick forbidden to be uſed by *Ariſtotle*, but upon the *Theatre*, for contentation of the rude and unpoliſhed people, by reaſon of that influence which it had upon mens behaviour. *Mutata Muſica* (ſaith the *Orator*) *mutantur & mores*; *Curandum itaque ut* Muſica *quàm graviſſima & ſedatiſſima retineatur*; that is to ſay, the change of *Muſick* maketh an alteration of manners; care therefore is to be taken in the Common-Wealth, that the Muſick be compoſed and grave, and ſuch only uſed. But ſee how far this fidling humor hath led me out of the way; I return again.

The Country very rich and pleaſant, well watered with the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Marſyas*. Of which the former hath its ſpring or fountain in this Country, but his fall in the *Euxine*; on the banks whereof ſtandeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The latter was ſo called from one *Marſyas*, who ſtriving with *Apollo* for peheminence in *Muſick*, was by him flead; which fact (ſay the Poets) was ſo lamented, that from the tears of the mourners grew this River. The chief Towns 1 *Gordion*, the ſeat of *Gordius*, who from a plowman being raiſed and choſen King of this Kingdom, placed the furniture of his wain and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, tied in ſuch a knot, that the Monarchy of the world was promiſed to him that could untie it; which when *Alexander* had tryed and could not undo it, he cut it with his ſword. 2 *Midæium*, the ſeat of *Midas*, ſon to this *Gordius*, who being not a little covetous, intreated of *Bacchus*, that what ever he touched ſhould be turned into gold, which petition granted, he was almoſt ſtarved, his very victual turned into gold, till he had repealed his wiſh; and afterward for preferring *Pan*'s Pipe before *Apollo*'s Harp; his head was adorned with a comely pair of Aſſes ears. 3. *Coloſſe*, where dwelt the *Coloſſians*, to whom Saint *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. 4. *Peſinus*, where the Godeſs *Cybele* being worſhipped, was called *Dea Peſinuncia*. The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they ſhould be Lords of the world, if they could get the Godeſs into their poſſeſſion. Hereupon they ſend to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to pleaſe a potent neighbour; eſpecially the *Romans*, being their Country-men, as deſcending from *Æneas* and his *Trojans*, granted their requeſt, and the Godeſs is ſhipped away for *Rome*. But behold the unluckineſs of fortune. The Ship, Godeſs and all made a ſtand in *Tiber*; neither could it be advanced forward by force or Art. It hapned that one of the Veſtal Virgins named *Claudia*, being ſuſpected of unchaſtity, reſolved to put her ſelf upon this experiment: and faſtning her girdle to the ſhip, prayed to the Goddeſs, that if ſhe were cauſeleſly ſuſpected, the ſhip might be ſuffered to go forward, which was no ſooner heard then granted, *Claudia* drawing the ſhip up the water to *Rome*; where I leave the people wondering at the miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it ſtands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by ſome made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* knot placed in it alſo; but neither rightly. Not far off ſtood the Mountain *Dindyme*, overlooking the City, in which the Prieſts of *Cybele* had their uſual reſidence, thence called *Dindymene*. 5. *Apamea*, ſituate not far from the banks of *Mæander*, antiently a moſt flouriſhing Empory, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country, till *Conſtantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pacatiana*: making 6. *Synnada*, the *Metropolis* of the firſt. 7. *Hierapolis*, and 8. *Laodicea*, two noted Cities in thoſe times, the principal of the other Provinces. 9. *Juliopolis*, and 10. *Tiberiopolis*, ſo called from the Emperour to whoſe honour dedicated. 11. *Dorylaum*, &c. Not known unto the antient Writers, but of more note in the modern ſtories, are 1. *Saguta*, the habitation of *Etrogul*, Father of *Ottoman* the firſt King of the *Turks*. 2. *Chara-chiſar*, by the *Grecians* called *Melampyrgus*, or the *Black Tower*. 3. *Billexuga*. 4. *Einegiol*, places of conſequence and importance, taken by the ſaid *Ottoman* from the Chriſtians, in the firſt riſe of his fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they deſcended (as was ſhewn before) from *Gomer* the eldeſt ſon of *Japhet*, and *Askenaz* the eldeſt ſon of *Gomer*: of which, *Gomer* firſt placed himſelf in the mountainous Countries of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleaſant plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeris* (the poſterity of *Gomer* being generally called *Cimmerians*) did preſerve his memory. And as for *Askenaz*, he firſt took up his dwelling in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, and the banks of the *Helleſpont*; where was antiently a City and Territory called *Aſcania*, ſome Iſles adjoining called *Inſulæ Aſcaniæ*, the name of *Aſcanius* alſo very frequent in *Troy* it ſelf. An antient people they were doubtleſs, eſteemed the antienteſt of the world by *Pſamniticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this experiment. Deſirous to inform himſelf to what Nation the priviledge of Antiquity did of right belong, he cauſed two children to be kept in a fold, where they were ſuckled by goats; all mankind being prohibited upon very great penalties, to have recourſe to them. All the language which the children learned from their ſpeechleſs nurſes, was no more than *Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* language ſignifieth bread; and being of no ſignification at all in any other which was then known to the *Egyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* on their ſide. But other Nations of the world not yielding to this ſentence, by a *Writ of Errour*, or an *Ad meliùs inquirendum*, impannell'd a new *Jury*; wherin it was pronounced on the *Scythians* ſide, *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*. Where by the way, *Goropius Becanus* makes the like uſe of this experiment, to prove the *High-Dutch* to be the Original or Mother-tongue of the world: becauſe *Becker* in that language ſignifieth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Countrey reigned *Niobe*, who preferring her ſelf before *Latona*, the mother of *Phœbus* and *Diana*, had her children ſlain before her face by an unſeen means, and was her ſelf turned into a ſtone, as the Poets fable. Here alſo reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting wiſdom to make uſe of it, is feigned to ſtand in hell up to the chin in water, and that too under a tree whoſe fruit toucheth his lips; yet both the one and other flie from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*,

> ------- ------ ------ *Tibi* Tantale *nullæ*
> *Deprenduntur aquæ, quæque imminet, effugit arbor.*

In Engliſh thus,

> Thou canſt not, *Tantalus*, thoſe waters taſt,
> The tree juſt at thy lips, flies off as faſt.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the tyranny of time or war, the *Phrygians* were made ſubject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their command till the conqueſt of *Lydia* by the *Perſians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the ſtronger by the acceſſion of effeminate ſubjects. Gained from them by the ſword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antigonus* one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the battel of *Ipſus*, to *Seleucus* the Conquerour, the firſt King of that race: following the ſame fortune after that with the reſt of *Aſia*, till they came to be poſſeſſed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Conſtantine* laying it to the *Greater Myſia*, made two Provinces of it: the one called *Salutaris*, from ſome miraculous cures there wrought by the *Arch-Angel Michael*, as it was then generally believed; the other called *Pacatiana*, from *Pacatianus*, who in the time of the ſaid *Conſtantine* was *Præfect* for the *Prætorium* of the Eaſt, and divers years before had begun his honours with the *Lieutenantſhip* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Conſtantinopolitans*, it became a prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; poſſeſſed by them till the death of *Aladine*, the laſt King of that race: when ſeized upon, together with the *Greater Myſia*, and thoſe parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidin*, a great *Turkiſh* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, called by his name *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi*; extorted ſhortly from his heirs by the houſe of *Ottoman*.

10. *MYSIA*.

Interpoſed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lyeth the Countrey of MYSIA, bounded on the Eaſt, with *Phrygia Major*; on the Weſt, with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with parts of

Myſia.

Bithynia, *Propontis*, and the *Helleſpont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and the *Ægean*. So called from the *Myſians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether the *Myſians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or ſome inter-lopers which thruſt in afterwards amongſt them, I find not determined. Moſt probable it is, they were natural *Phrygians*; being as ſuperſtitious in the worſhip of their ſeveral *Deities*, as any *Phrygian of them all*; and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, from the abundance of *Beech-trees* which grow amongſt them, by them called *Myſæ*. A people of ſo baſe and contemptible quality, that it grew into a common proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Myſiorum poſtremus*.

The principal Mountain of this Countrey is that called *Olympus*, ſituate in the north-parts hereof bordering towards *Bithynia*: which as it is called *Olympus Myſius*, to difference it from *Olympus* in *Greece*; ſo the people of the *Greater Myſia*, where this Mountain is, are called *Olympeni*, to difference them from the *Myſi* or *Mœſi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, thoſe of moſt note beſides *Æſopus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*, are 1. *Caicus*, on whoſe banks ſtands the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence paſſeth into the *Ægean* Sea, at the Bay of *Elea*; and 2. the famous River of *Granicus*, which hath his fountain in *Myſia Major*, and paſſing through *Myſia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the banks hereof, in his firſt eſſay againſt the *Perſians*: by whom upon the firſt noiſe of his preparations, he was ſo ſlighted, that *Darius* K. of *Perſia*, gave command to his Lieutenants reſiding in *Aſia Minor*, that they ſhould take him alive, whip him with rods, and ſo convey him to his preſence; a notable example of the pride and folly of the *Perſians*. But *Alexander* ſoon taught them another leſſon. For though the *Perſians* were poſſeſſed of the higher banks of the River, with an intent to ſtop his paſſage; yet he reſolved to charge them in the face of their ſtrength: knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of ſo great advantage, he ſhould not only leſſen them in point of reputation, but beget an opinion of himſelf that he was invincible. And ſo accordingly it proved, the *Perſians* being vanquiſhed by him, and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Aſia*, ſubmitting to him on the noiſe of the Victory (as an Enemy not to be reſiſted upon equal terms) ſome few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wiſely adviſed by *Machiavel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a paſſage: ſhould with his ableſt forces oppoſe the *Aſſailant*; becauſe in all Invaſions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Streights and Mountains, they do not only diſhearten their Souldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partakers, of being ſuccoured and defended by ſuch weak Protectors. Which caution if the *Perſian* Commanders had obſerved either here, or at *Pylæ Cilicia*, ſpoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not ſo eaſily ſubverted the *Perſian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the men either naturally Cowards, or elſe prodigiouſly beſotted.

It is divided commonly into *Myſia Minor*, or the *Leſſer Myſia*, which lying on the Weſt towards *Troas* and the *Helleſpont*, is called ſometimes *Myſia Helleſpontiaca*; and joined unto *Troas* by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, made up that Province which he called the *Conſular Helleſpont*: and *Myſia Major*, called from *Olympus* which was in it, *Myſia Olympena*, and the Inhabitants *Olympeni*; which joined by that Emperour to the Weſtern parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up the province which he cauſed to be called *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reaſon formerly delivered.

Places of moſt obſervation in the *Leſſer Myſia*, were 1. *Abydus*, ſtanding on the narroweſt of the *Helleſpont*, oppoſite unto *Seſtos* in *Thrace*; firſt built by the *Mileſians* with the conſent of *Gyges* K. of *Lydia*, to whom the Countrey then belonged. Memorable both in the antient and modern ſtories. In the antient ſtory for the famous reſolution of the Inhabitants, when beſieged by *Philip* the father of *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into ſome diſtreſs, and hopeleſs of good conditions from him, the young men of the Town who had bound themſelves by oath to die rather than fall into his hands, ſet fire thereof, and barbarouſly ſlew themſelves, with as many of the women and children as could be met with. Which news being brought to *Philip*, moved ſo little compaſſion, that he ſaid he would give the *Abydeni* 3 dayes leiſure to die; and therefore would not ſuffer any of his ſouldiers to enter the Town, then ſet open to him, either to take the ſpoil thereof, or hinder this bloudy execution, till three dayes end. In Modern ſtory no leſs memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the reign of *Orchanes* the ſon of *Ottaman*, through the treaſon of the Governors daughter: who bewitched with the perſon and valour of *Abderachmen*, a young *Turkiſh* Gallant, whom ſhe had beheld from the Towers of the Caſtle, threw a letter to him as he drew near the wall; wherein ſhe manifeſted her affection, and promiſed to make him maſter of that fortreſs, if he would perſwade his General to raiſe the ſiege, and come with a ſtrong party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever ſince in the power of the *Turks*, well fortified, and one of the two Caſtles ſpoken of before, which defend *Conſtantinople* on that ſide from all force by ſea. 2. *Cyzicus*, ſeated in the *Propontis*, in an Iland of the ſame name alſo, but ſo near the Continent, that it joined to it by two bridges. The *Metropolis* of the conſular *Helleſpont*, by conſequence an Arch-biſhops See in the proſperous times of Chriſtianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother-Cities or *Metropoleys* of their ſeveral Provinces. A Town of wonderful ſtrength and beauty, when firſt known to the *Romans*, called therefore by *L. Florus*, the *Rome* of *Aſia*, who gives this character alſo of it, *Cyzicum nobilis civitas, arce, mœnibus, portu, turribuſque marmoreis* Aſiaticæ *plagæ littora illuſtrat*, that is to ſay, that the noble City of *Cyzicum* by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautifie and illuſtrate the ſhores of *Aſia*. Honoured amongſt many other goodly and magnificent buildings, with a glorious Temple, the Pillars whereof being 4 Cubits thick, and 50 Cubits high, were each of one intire ſtone only; the whole fabrick all of poliſhed Marble, every ſtone joined unto the other with a line of *Gold*. In vain be-

Pergamus. ſieged by *Mithridates* in the time of his war, who loſt before it by the ſword, peſtilence, and famine no fewer than 30000 men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an *Earthquake*, the *falling Sickneſs* of the Eaſt, as before is ſaid, it could never be reſtored to its former luſtre: the very ruines of it daily made more ruinous, by tranſporting the ſtones and Marbles to *Conſtantinople*, for the Embeliſhing of that City. 3. *Lampſacus* on the ſame *Propontis*, in which the beaſtly god *Priapus* was worſhipped in as beaſtly a figure: *quem non denudo* (as wittily *Lactantius* ſcoffeth it) *ne quid appareat riſu dignum*; ſuppoſed to be the ſame with the *Syrian* or *Phœnician Baal*, ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures. For this and ſome other reaſons, *Alexander* had conceived againſt it ſuch an high diſpleaſure when he was in *Aſia*, that he reſolved to raze it to the very ground. And ſeeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Ambaſſadour from the Town to obtain his favour, commanded him to hold his peace; and ſware as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatſoever he requeſted of him: whereupon *Anaximenes* intreated him to deſtroy the City, which now for his oaths ſake he could not do; and ſo this wicked City at that time eſcaped. 4. *Pairum*, ſo called, as ſome ſay, from *Parius* the ſon of *Jaſon*, a Colony at firſt of the *Mileſians*, of the *Romans* afterward: *Troas* and this, the onely two *Roman* Colonies in all the Province. By *Homer* called *Adraſtia*; as *Lampſacus* in the ſame Author, is called *Pityuſa*. More in the land, are 5. *Scepſis*. 6. *Hiragerme*, both mentioned by *Ptolemy*, but of more antiquity than fame.

Chief Cities in MYSIA MAJOR or OLYMPENA, are 1. *Dainta*, in the North-parts, not far from *Olympus*. 2. *Apollonia*, near a large Lake ſacred to *Apollo*, in the ſame parts alſo. 3. *Palæ Scepſis*, or *Scepſis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Ægean* Sea, joining upon *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*. 4. *Adramyttium*, mentioned *Acts* 27. where S. *Paul* took ſhip to go to *Rome*. 5. *Antandrus*, on the ſame Sea alſo, now called Saint *Dimitri*; named at firſt *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmeritans* here inhabiting (which ſheweth that *Myſia* antiently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterwards *Edonis*, and at laſt *Antandrus*, and that either becauſe built or repaired rather by the men of *Andros*, an Iland of the *Ægean*, ſpoken of before, amongſt the *Cyclades*; or becauſe the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the ſon of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his ranſom or rather in exchange for him, as the word doth intimate. 6. *Protoſelene*, on the ſame coaſt alſo. More in the land, 7. *Præpemiſſus*, 8. *Trojanopolis*. 9. *Alydda*, of which little memorable. 10. *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this tract, ſituate in a goodly plain on the banks of the River *Caicus*; of a ſmall Town or Fortreſs made a ſtately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent *Library* containing 20000 Volumes; for the writing or tranſcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here firſt invented, which from hence to this day is called *Pergamenum*. Here alſo were thoſe coſtly hangings firſt invented which we now call *Tapeſtry*; by the *Romans* called firſt *Aulaa*, from *Aula*, ſignifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof (by whom invented) being the firſt room furniſhed and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous *Phyſician*, living very healthfully to the age of 140 years: his health preſerved to ſo great age, by theſe means ſpecially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. Secondly, Never eating any thing that was raw. Thirdly, Alwaies carrying about him ſome ſweet perfumes. Finally, this was one of the *ſeven Churches* to which Saint *John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were originally a City of *Myſia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of the *Lydian Aſia*; within the limits whereof thoſe *ſeven Churches* were all comprehended.

As for the King hereof which flouriſhed here for ſome ages in ſuch wealth and ſplendor, they came but from a poor and obſcure original. The firſt of them one *Philetarus*, an *Eunuch*, belonging to *Antigonus*, one of the Great *Alexanders* greateſt Captains; and after his death to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*, by whom truſted with his money and accompts. Fearing the fury of his Maſter then grown old and tyrannous, he ſeized on the Caſtle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 talents, which he offered with his ſervice unto *Seleucus*, the firſt King of *Syria*. But both *Lyſimachus* and *Seleucus* dying ſhortly after, he kept the money to himſelf, and reigned in the City as an abſolute King; leaving the kingdom at his death to his Brother *Eumenes*, no better man than a poor Carter, till raiſed by the fortunes of this *Eunuch*. *Eumenes* furniſhed with money, though no great territory, was able by the *Galls* and other Mercenaries, not only to preſerve himſelf againſt the *Syrian* Kings, who laid claim to this City, but alſo to inlarge his bounds as he ſaw occaſion. But the main improvement of this kingdom hapned in the daies of *Eumenes* the ſecond, the ſon of *Attalus*, the brother and ſucceſſor of this *Eumenes*: who being uſefull to the *Romans* in their wars againſt *Philip* of *Macedon*, and *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Troas*, and both the *Myſias*; which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that war. The reſt of the affairs hereof, till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this ſhort Catalogue of

The KINGS of *PERGAMUS*.

A. M.

3668 1 *Philetarus*, the firſt King of *Pergamus*, of whom before. 20.

3688 2 *Eumenes*, brother, or as ſome ſay, the brothers ſon of *Philetarus*, vanquiſhed *Antiochus*, ſurnamed *Hierax*, in a fight near *Sardis*, and awed *Seleucus Callinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*. 22.

3710 3 *Attalus*, brother of *Eumenes*, reſtored *Ariarathes* the *Cappadocian* to his kingdom, and diſcomfited the *Galls*, compelling them to keep themſelves within the Country ſince named *Galatia*. A Confederate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.

3754 4 *Eumenes* II. ſon of *Attalus*, gratified by the *Romans* with the ſpoils of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditary Enemy to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, which he laboured the *Romans* to deſtroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more uſe of theſe *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow with leſs liking with them. *Aſia ſpec. dict.*

3782 5 *Attalus* II. Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdome was offered by the *Romans* in the life of his Brother, then leſs gracious with them; but he moſt gallantly refuſed it, to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.

3792 6 *Eumenes* III. Brother of *Attalus* the ſecond, and Tutor or Protector to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whoſe minority he governed the eſtate, as King.

3813 7 *Attalus* III. ſon of *Attalus* the ſecond, ſucceeded on the death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdom but five years only, deceaſed without iſſue, and bequeathed it by his laſt Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had poſſeſſion of ſo great a Legacy, *Ariſtonicus* the baſe ſon of *Eumenes*, made himſelf maſter of *Mindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and eſtates hereof. Againſt whom the *Romans* making war were aided by the greateſt part of the *Aſian Kings*; not ſeeing their own danger and deſtruction to draw near unto them, by letting ſuch a potent neighbour come amongſt them, to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this war, though they had the better of it. For being now made maſters of the riches and ſweets of *Aſia*, they took with them their vices alſo: growing thereby to great riot and unparallel'd luxury; which overcame the rigour and ſeverity of their former diſcipline, and made them apt for faction, and thoſe bloudy quarrels, which proved the ruine of their State. So truly was it ſaid by *Juſtine*, *Sic* Aſia *facta* Romanorum, *cum opibus ſuis vitia quoque ſua* Romam *tranſmiſit*. This Kingdome, taking in the largeſt extent thereof, being thus ſubdued and ſetled as a *Roman* Province, had the name of *Aſia*, according to the name of the Greater *Continent*; by *Ptolemy*, and others, called *Aſia Propria*: continuing under the ſubjection of the *Roman* Emperours, till the tranſlating of the Imperial ſeat unto *Conſtantinople*; as after that unto the Emperours of the Eaſt, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* family. Which being ended in the perſon of *Alladine* the ſecond, thoſe parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdom of *Caraſan*, or *Cara-Illi*; as thoſe which had been laid to the Greater *Phrygia*, made up the *Aidinian*: both of them ſwallowed up long ſince by the *Ottaman* Kings, the acceſſaries running the ſame fortune as the *Principals* did.

II. *ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.*

Beſides the *Proper Aſia* ſpoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* kingdom, there was one part hereof which antiently had the name of *Aſia*, before it was communicated to the greater *Continent*, or this whole *Peninſula*. This for diſtinctions ſake the *Romans* called the PROCONSULAR ASIA; becauſe committed to the government of one of their *Proconſuls* (who had his reſidence in *Epheſus*, the Principal City of this Province) together with the *Conſular* Countrey lying about *Epheſus*, had more eſpecially the name of *Aſia*, than any other: ſo ſpecially, that *Eraſmus* thereupon inferreth, that by *Aſia* in the *New Teſtament*, (but more peculiarly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Aſia* only in which *Epheſus* ſtandeth.

This being agreed on for the name, we ſhall bound it on the Eaſt with *Lydia*, whereof it was antiently a part; on the weſt with the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with *Myſia*; and on the South, with *Caria*. And having ſo bounded it, we ſhall divide it into two Regions of ÆOLIS, and IONIA: that of *Æolis* lying on the North, towards *Myſia*; as *Ionia* doth upon the South, towards *Caria*: poſſeſſed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of them ſo named.

Principal Towns in ÆOLIS, are 1. *Acarnea*, overgainſt the Iſle of *Lesbos*, the Royal ſeat ſometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*; who being once a Scholar of *Ariſtotles*, but unworthy of ſo good a Maſter, ſeized on this City, and here committed ſo great cruelties, that at laſt he was taken by the people, ſewed in an Oxes hide, and ſo baited to death. 2. *Pitane*, on a little River ſo named, falling into *Caicus*, not far from the influx or fall thereof into the *Ægean*; in which Town they had an Art of making bricks which would ſwim on the water. 3. *Elæa*, on the mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 4. *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Auguſtus*, called *Sebaſtopolis*. 5. *Cene*, by *Strabo* called *Cane*, by *Mela*, *Canna*, not far from a *Promontory* of the ſame name. 6. *Cuma*, the principal and greateſt of all *Æolis*, the birth-place of *Ephorus* a learned man of elder times; and the habitation of *Sibylla*, ſirnamed *Cumana*, to difference her from *Sibylla Cumæa*, ſo named from *Cumæ*, a City of the Realm of *Naples*. 7. *Phocæa*, a Colony of the *Athenians*, ſo named from the multitudes of Sea-Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phocæ*) which thruſt themſelves aſhore at the building of it. The people hereof overburdened by the *Perſians*, and impatient of ſo great ſervitude as was laid upon them, forſook their Countrey, binding themſelves by a fearfull oath, never more to return unto it: and after many and long wandrings came at laſt into *Gaul*, where they founded the famous City of *Marſeilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Joſephus* ſaid to be deſcended of *Eliſha* the ſon of *Javan*, who therefore calleth them by the name of *Eliſai*. And it is poſſible enough that ſo it was. *Eliſha* being planted in *Greece*, where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponneſus*; from whence ſome of his race in ſucceeding times might paſs over into *Aſia*, and poſſeſs thoſe coaſts. For that they were a *Greek* people, is confeſſed by all; the *Æolick dialect* or phraſe of ſpeech taking name from hence. Not otherwiſe much mentioned in the courſe of ſtory, than as partakers of the ſame fortunes with the reſt of their *Aſian* neighbours before related, and ſo not neceſſary to be now repeated.

IONIA, as a larger tract, requires a more particular and punctual deſcription. For here the River

Aſia ſpec. dict. *Lycus* falleth into the *Mæander*, and here *Mæander* and *Caeſtrus*, two of the moſt famous Rivers of *Aſia Minor*, (of which more hereafter) fall into the *Ægean*. Here is the renowned City of *Epheſus*, honoured with one of the worlds *ſeven wonders*, the long abode of S. *Paul*, and the death and ſepulture of Saint *John*; the Promontory *Trogyllium*, with a little Iſle adjoining of the ſame name, mentioned *Acts* 20. *v.* 15.

The principal Cities of this tract, are 1. *Myas*, on an arm of the Sea, aſſigned by *Artaxerxes*, together with *Lampſacus*, and *Magneſia*, to *Themiſtocles*; when being baniſhed his own Countrey, he fled to his greateſt Enemy for entertainment; and there met with more ſafety than *Athens* would, and more honour than it could afford him; So that he well might ſay (as he often did) *Periiſſem niſi periiſſem*. And on the other ſide, the King was ſo overjoyed at his coming to him, (as having now upon his ſide the man who had moſt hindered him in the Conqueſt of *Greece*) that many times in his ſleep he was heard to clap his hands, and ſay, *Habeo Theomiſtoclem Athenienſem*. In after times, the water drawing ſurther off, the ſoyl brought forth ſuch an innumerable multitude of fleas, that the Inhabitants were fain to forſake the City, and with their bag and baggage to retire to *Miletus*: nothing hereof being left but the name and memory in the time of *Pauſanias*. 2. *Erythra*, memorable for the habitation of one of the *Sybils*, from hence called *Sibylla Erythræa*; of which Propheteſſes we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Africk*. 3. *Lebedus*, of moſt note in the elder times, for thoſe publick Plaies which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4. *Clazomene*, ſituate on a ſmall Ilet, near unto the ſhore, of much eſteem amongſt the *Romans* for the wines there growing; and no leſs honoured by the *Aſians* for a beautiful Temple of *Apollo* ſeated near unto it. 5. *Priene*, the birth-place of *Bias*, one of the ſeven *wiſe-men* of *Greece*. 6. *Ipſus*, renowned for the great battel betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexanders* chief Commanders; the Victory wherein falling to *Seleucus*, with the death of his Adverſary, eſtated him in all the Conqueſts of his Maſter, except *Egypt* only. 7. *Teos*, the birth-place of *Anacreon*, that laſcivious and drunken Poet, hence ſurnamed *Teius*; the *Ovid* of the *Grecians* both for wit and wantonneſs: of both which it may well be doubted, whether the ſmoothneſs of the verſe, or the wantonneſs of their expreſſions, be the more predominant. 8. *Smyrna*, a fair and antient City, on a bay thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*: the greateſt part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the faireſt on the ſide of an hill overlooking the waters. Deſtroyed by the *Lydians*, it was re-edified by *Antigonus* and *Lyſimachus*, two of *Alexanders* great Commanders; of good accompt in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the *ſeven* Aſian *Churches*, to which Saint *John* inſcribed his *Revelation*. Much traded and frequented to this very day, eſpecially for Chamlets, Grograines, and ſuch ſtuffs; made for the moſt part at *Ancyra*, the chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vended to the forein Merchant. For the government of the trade whereof, and of other commodities of theſe parts, the *Engliſh* Merchants have an Officer called the *Conſul* of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it, amongſt others, a goodly Temple dedicated unto *Homer*, ſaid to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. 9. *Colophon*, moſt memorable for the Inhabitants of it, ſo skilled in Horſe-man-ſhip, that the ſide in which they ſerved in war was ſure of Victory; whereupon *Colophon addere*, to put a good end to any buſineſs, grew in a Proverb. It was alſo another of thoſe Cities, which ſo ambitiouſly contended for the birth of *Homer*; of which there were ſeven in all, as the old Verſes tell us, ſaying,

> *Septem urbes certant de ſtirpe inſignis* Homeri,
> *Smyrna, Rhodos, Colophon, Salamis, Chios, Argos, Athenæ.*

Whether *Homer* purpoſely concealed his Countrey, that all places might challenge him for theirs, I am not able to ſay: But ſure I am that *Paterculus* ſpeaketh it in the commendation of *Heſiodus* (the next *Greek* Poet after him in courſe of time) that he had ſpecified his birth-place: *Qui vitavit ne in id quod* Homerus *inciderit, patriam & parentes teſtatus eſt.* 10. *Epheſus*, the *Metropolis* of the *Roman Aſia*, and the ſeat of the Primate of the *Aſian* Dioceſe: memorable in the pureſt times of *Chriſtianity*, for being the Epiſcopal See of *Timothy* the Evangeliſt, the firſt Biſhop hereof; Secondly, In that St. *Paul* directed to the people of it, one of his Epiſtles; and thirdly, for the burial of St. *John* the Apoſtle, who by ſome learned men of the elder times, is ſaid to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead, but ſleeping; building that thought upon that ſaying which went abroad among the Brethren, *That that Diſciple ſhould not die*, *John* 21. *v.* 23. And no leſs memorable amongſt the Gentiles for that ſumptuous and magnificent Temple here conſecrated to *Diana*; which for the largeneſs, furniture, and workmanſhip of it, was accompted one of the wonders of the World. The length thereof ſaid to be 425 foot, 220 foot in breadth; ſupported with 127 Pillars of Marble ſeventy foot in height; of which twenty ſeven were moſt curiouſly engraven, and all the reſt of Marble poliſhed. The model of it contrived by one *Cteſiphon*, and that with ſo much Art and curioſity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finiſhed. When finiſhed it was fired ſeven times, the laſt time by *Eraſtrotus*, only to get himſelf a name; which hapning on the ſame night in which *Alexander* the *Great* was born, gave occaſion to that weighty but witty ſcoff, that *Diana* (ſhe was counted one of the Goddeſſes of *midwifery*) could not attend the preſervation of her Temple, being then buſied at the birth of ſo great a Prince.

As for thoſe *Iones*, or *Ionians*, they were no doubt the deſcendants of *Javan*, the fourth ſon of *Japhet*, as hath been ſhewn before in our *general Preface*: but whether they came hither out of *Græcia*, or paſſed from hence into that Countrey, hath been made a queſtion. The *Athenians* boaſting of themſelves to be *Aborigines*, men growing as it were out of the ſoil it ſelf, without any *Anceſtors*; report that thoſe *Ionians* were a Colony of their Plantation. But *Heccatæus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the contrary, Saying, that the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from thoſe of *Aſia*; for that *Attica* was antiently called *Ionia*, *Plutarch* in the life of *Theſeus* doth declare expreſly. Moſt probable it is, that *Heccatæus* was in the right; theſe parts of *Aſia* lying ſo directly in the way from the valley of *Shinaar* unto *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave ſome of his company here, when he ferried the reſt over to the oppoſite Continent. I know *Pauſanias*, ignorant of their true antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion* the ſon of *Xuthus*, and grandchild of *Deucalion*: wherein he came ſo near the truth, though he miſſed the men, that it was the Grandſon of that man who eſcaped the flood, from whom both the *Athenians* and thoſe *Ionians* had their true original. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aid to thoſe *Ionians* againſt the *Perſians*; who on the overthrow given to *Crœſus*, pretended to the Lordſhip or Dominion of *Aſia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the firſt *Perſian* Monarch. Upon which grouud, and the ſending of freſh aid to them upon their revolt in the time of *Darius*, that King firſt undertook the invaſion of *Greece*: *Xerxes* and the ſucceeding Kings purſuing that firſt quarrel with great animoſities. After this yielding to the times they followed the fortune of the ſtrongeſt, ſubject ſucceſſively to the *Perſians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Conſtantinopolitans*, and *Turks*, till the death of *Aladine* before mentioned: when both *Æolis* and *Ionia* got a new name, and are now called *Sarcan*, from *Sarachan* a Turkiſh Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine* ſeized upon this Countrey, and erected here a petit Kingdom, long ſince ſubdued by thoſe of the race of *Ottoman*.

12. LYDIA.

LYDIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Phrygia Major*, and ſome part of *Piſidia*, from which ſeparated by a branch, of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the Weſt, with *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Aſia* ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with the *Greater Myſia*; on the South, with *Caria*. So called from *Lud*, the ſon of *Sem*, by ſome of whoſe poſterity it was firſt inhabited. In the full Latitude and extent thereof, as antiently, comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, the adjoyning Provinces; it made the *Lydian Aſia* ſpoken of before; within the verge whereof all the *ſeven Churches* were contained, mentioned by Saint *John* in the *Revelation*.

The people of this Countrey are ſaid to have been the firſt coyners of mony, the firſt Huckſters and Pedlers, and the firſt inventers of dice, ball, cheſs, and the like games: neceſſity and hunger thereunto enforcing them, according to that of *Perſius*, *Artis Magiſter, ingeniique largitor venter*. For being ſorely vext with famine, in the time of *Atis*, one of the progenitors of *Omphale*, they deviſed theſe games; and every ſecond day playing at them, beguiled their hungry bellies. Thus for 22 years they continued playing and eating by turns: but then ſeeing that themſelves were more fruitfull in getting and bearing children, than the ſoil was at that time in bringing forth ſuſtenance to maintain them, they ſent a Colony into *Italy* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the ſon of *Atis*, who planted in that Countrey, called at firſt *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuſcany*.

This Countrey was alſo called *Mœonia*, and was thought to have been the native ſoil of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the ſeven contending Cities, and thoſe which ſeem to have moſt colour for their claim, were antiently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was ſaid before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Mœonides*, and *Mœonius Vates*: and in ſome Authors *Carmen Mœonium* is uſed for *Homer*'s Poetical abilities, as *Carmine* Mœonio *conſurgere*, in *Ovid*. *Bacchus* is alſo called ſometimes by the name of *Mœonius*; but for a different reaſon, *viz.* becauſe antiently there was no trees in all this Country but the vine only.

Principal Mountains of this Country are 1. *Sipylus*, and 2. *Tmolus*, this laſt of moſt accompt in regard of the great fruitfulneſs of it, covered over with Vines, and yeelding abundance of the beſt *Saffron*. Chief Rivers of it are 1. *Hermus*, which riſing out of *Phrygia Major*, paſſeth only by the skirts hereof, and ſo falleth into a fair Bay of the *Ægean*, opening towards the Iſle of *Clazomene*. 2. *Pactolus*, which riſing at the foot of *Tmolus*, falling not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongſt the Poets for its golden ſands. 3. *Cayſtrus*, no leſs notable for the abundance of Swans which ſwim thereon, whoſe fountain is in *Phrygia Major* alſo, near the borders hereof; and his fall in the *Ægean* alſo over againſt the Iſle of *Samos*. 4. *Mæander*, which riſing out of a branch of the *Taurus*, in the furtheſt parts of the ſaid *Phrygia*, towards *Lycaonia*; paſſeth by *Magneſia*, and endeth his courſe in the ſame Sea, near the City of *Epheſus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the leaſt, as *Pruſæus* counteth them. Of which in general thus the Poet,

Mæander *toties qui terris errat iiſdem,*
Et lapſas in ſe, ſæpe retorquet aquas.

That is to ſay,

Mæander wandring in the ſelf ſame ſoil,
Whoſe waters meeting do as oft recoil.

And in another paſſage thus.

Quique recurvatis, ludit Mæander *in undis.*

Lydia.

Mæander plaies his watry pranckſ,
In his ſo many winding banks.

The Countrey by reaſon of theſe Rivers was exceeding fruitfull, abounding in all ſorts both of wealth and pleaſures, well cultivated and manured above ground, and under-neath inriched with prodigal veins of Gold and Silver, and ſome precious gemmes. Which made the people, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more ſenſual and voluptuous, and leſs fit for action, than any plot of their new Maſters could have brought them to; had not the natural delicacies of the Soil it ſelf contributed to the advancement of their deſign. And yet before they were ſufficiently infamous for their luxury, and exceſs of riot, when beſt ſeen in wars: ſo that it is a marvel they were able to prevail on the neighbour Nations, and bring them under their command; as in the times of ſome of *Crœſus* predeceſſors, it is ſaid they did. Unleſs perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Mœcenas*, the great favorite of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *ubi res vigilium exigeret erat ſanè inſomnis, providens, & agendi ſciens; ſimulac aliquid ex negotio remitti poſſit, otio ac mollitie penè ultra fœminam fluens*, No man more vigilant than in times of buſineſs, nor woman more effeminate in his times of leiſure.

Principal Cities of this Countrey were 1. *Sardis*, on both ſides of *Pactolus*, the ſeat royal of *Crœſus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*; till the conqueſt of *Lydia* by the *Perſians*. After which time, being taken by the *Græcians*, it ſo ſtartled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his Attendants, to ſay aloud every day whilſt he was at dinner, that the *Grecians had taken Sardis*; continuing that *Memento* till it was recovered. Which courſe (I note this only by the way) was commonly obſerved in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Calice* did remain in the hands of the *Engliſh*; and might be profitably revived, till again recovered from the *French*. Overthrown by a moſt terrible *Earth-quake* (to which diſeaſe moſt of theſe *Aſian* Cities had been very much ſubject) it was re-edified again at the coſt of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the *Metropolis* of this Province, and one of the *ſeven Churches* of the *Lydian Aſia*, of which the holy Spirit took ſuch ſpecial notice. The others (beſides *Pergamus*, already mentioned in the *Greater Myſia*, and *Epheſus*, and *Smyrna*, in the proper *Aſia*) were 2. *Philadelphia*, near, or on the banks of the River *Cayſtrus*, the ſecond City in accompt next to *Sardis* it ſelf: and honoured with the dignity of *Metropolitan*, as appeareth by the Acts of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Council, where *Euſtathius* Biſhop hereof doth ſubſcribe himſelf, Ἐπίσκοπος τῆς φιλαδελφέων Μητροπόλεως, Biſhop of the *Metropolis* of *Philadelphia*, in the Province of *Lydia*. 3. *Thiatyra*, honoured with the ſame priviledg alſo, as appears by the conſtant Order, obſerved as well in the *Civil* or *Eccleſiaſtical* Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The reaſon whereof (for otherwiſe it was contrary to the practice both of Church and State, to have in one Province more than one *Metropolis*) was the reſpect had to thoſe ſeveral Churches, in regard of the primitive antiquity, and the foundation of them by St. *John* the Apoſtle, as it was generally believed. 4. *Laodicea*, by *Ptolemy* placed amongſt the Cities of this Province, as it ſtood in his time, and before: but afterwards laid by *Conſtantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the *Metropolis* thereof (which honour *Hierapolis* had before enjoyed) it being well obſerved by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not diſpoſe of their Provinces according to Nations; ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕτερον τρόπον διέταξαν τὰς διοικήσεις, ἐν αἷς τὰς ποιοῦνται δικαιοδοσίας, but according to thoſe *diſtricts*, or circuits, in which they kept their Courts of juſtice. Next unto theſe, there were of eſpecial conſideration. 5. *Magneſia ad Mæandrum*, ſo called, becauſe ſituate on that River, to difference it from 6. *Magneſia penes Sipylum montem*, another of the ſame name near the hill *Sipylus*. The firſt aſſigned over to *Themiſtocles*, together with *Myus* and *Lampſacus*, as was ſaid before. The other memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*: the loſs whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occaſioned the loſs of all his *Aſian* Provinces on this ſide of *Taurus*, and the payment of 15000 talents for the charge of the war, beſides ſome other hard conditions then impoſed upon him. 7. *Alabanda*, oppoſite to *Magneſia* on the other ſide of *Mæander*, the people whereof, immediately on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not only ſent Ambaſſadors to *Rome* to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did; but built a Temple to it, and appointed *Anniverſary* Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made *Goddeſs*. A thing more to be wondred at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor people for beſtowing on their City ſo divine an honour. 8. *Trallis*, on the banks of *Cayſtrus*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Biſhop and godly Martyr, writ the Epiſtle *ad Trallenſes*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the ſon of *Sem*, is teſtified by the general conſent of ſuch antient writers as treat of the diſperſions of the Sons of *Noah*, to which opinion the nearneſs of the names of *Lud*, *Ludin*, and *Lydi*, (or Λυδοὶ, as the *Grecians* call them) ſeems to give good countenance, nor ſhall I here diſpute it further, as a point unqueſtioned: the tale of *Lydus*, I know not what Nobleman that ſhould name this Country, being taken up amongſt the *Greeks*, for want of more certain truths. Once ſetled here, they grew up ſuddenly to a Kingdom; Amongſt the antient Kings whereof are numbred *Manes* as the firſt, *Cotis* and *Atis*, and then *Aſius*, (from whom *Lydia* firſt, and after all the Continent, had the name of *Aſia*) as his immediate ſucceſſors. After them I find mention of one *Cambletes*, ſaid by *Athenæus* to be ſo great a Gormandizer, that in his ſleep he eat his wife; and finding her hand in his mouth next morning, ſlew himſelf for ſhame: and of another named *Andramites*, as infamous for filthy luſts, as *Cambletes* for gluttony. But the race of theſe Kings ending in *Omphale*, the miſtreſs of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion ſpin amongſt her Damoſels; the *Heraclidæ* or poſterity of *Hercules* ſucceeded next: of whom there is no conſtant and continued ſucceſſion till the time of *Ardiſius*, the 19. in order of that line; who began his reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*, under his ſucceſſors the affairs hereof ſo exceedingly proſpered, eſpecially under *Haliactes* the Father of *Crœſus*, thus *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Myſia*, *Caria*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia* acknowledged themſelves Vaſſals to this Crown: conceived both in wealth and power to be equal to the *Ægyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdoms, till the Conqueſt of *Syria* and *Egypt*, by *Nebuchadnezzar*, gave him the preheminence. But being come unto the height it received a fall in the perſon of *Crœſus*, the ſucceſſor of him who ſo much advanced it. The Kings hereof from the time of the ſaid *Ardiſius*, take in order following.

The Kings of *LYDIA*.

A. M.
3190 1 *Ardiſius*. 36.
3226 2 *Haliactes*. 14.
3240 3 *Melos*, who overcame the people of *Sardis*. 12.
3252 4 *Candaules*, who ſhewing his wife naked to *Gyges*, was by him ſlain; who marrying his wife ſucceeded him in his Kingdom. The whole ſtory is this. *Candaules* had to his wife a woman of unparalleld beauty, And ſuppoſing the greatneſs of his happineſs, not to conſiſt ſo much in his own fruition, as the notice which others might take of it; intended to ſhew her in natures bravery to *Gyges*, the Maſter of his herds. *Gyges* at firſt diſſwaded him from an attempt ſo fooliſh; but ſeeing no perſwaſion could prevail, he condeſcended. When he had ſeen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, *Candaules* cried to him, *Eſto fidelis, Gyges:* which words the Queen marking, and ſeeing the back of *Gyges* as he left the chamber, the next morning ſent for him: When holding a poynyard in her hand, ſhe gave him his choice; either preſently to be ſlain, or elſe to kill the King, and take her to wife, with the Kingdom of *Lydia* for her Dowry. Of which two evils he made choiſe of that which he thought the beſt, and ſo killed *Candaules*.
5 *Gyges*, the firſt of this new line, added *Ionia* to his other dominions. A Prince of ſo great wiſdom for the times he lived in, that all other Kings his neighbours, ſate as (it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them: occaſioning thereby the fiction of a Ring he had, by which made inviſible, when and as often as he pleaſed.
3305 6 *Ardis* II. the ſon of *Gyges*. 37.
3342 7 *Sardiattes*. 15.
3357 8 *Haliactes* II. of whom before. 57.
3406 9 *Crœſus*, the laſt King of *Lydia*, ſubdued *Doris*, and *Æolis*: after which victories, he was overcome by *Cyrus*, King of *Perſia*, in which battel, a ſon of *Crœſus* who had been dumb from his cradle, ſeeing a Souldier ready to kill his father, ſuddenly broke out into theſe words, *Rex eſt, cave ne occidas.* After this overthrow, and the captivity of *Crœſus* (one of the richeſt Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Perſian* Province, A. M. 2420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again ſubdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their horſes of ſervice, deſpoiled them of all their armour, and trained them up in all manner of looſe and effeminate living; weakning by this means a powerful nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoyning. After this they continued *Perſian* till the Conqueſt of *Aſia* by the *Macedonians*, in the diviſion of whoſe ſpoils they fell to the portion of *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*: following the common fortune of the reſt of this *Aſia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire; it had the *Lower Myſia*, or *Myſia Olympena* annexed unto it: by means whereof the limits of each became ſo confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one, are many times aſcribed to the other. In the falling of the Eaſtern Empire it was made (as all the reſt of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that part of it which lieth next to *Æolis*, ſubject to the *Carauſian* Family; as the other parts towards *Phrygia Major*, were to the *Aidinian*.

12. *CARIA*.

CARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Lycia*; on the North, with *Lydia* and *Ionia*; on the Weſt, with the *Icarian* or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South, with the *Carpathian*, ſo called from *Cares*, the ſon of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos* once the Lord hereof; who is ſaid to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Augury*; though others aſcribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill called *Latmus*, the dwelling or rather retiring place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the ſtudy of *Aſtronomy*, found out the changes and courſes of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been her Paramour. Others add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a cave under this Hill, and caſt him into a deep ſleep, (which notwithſtanding, ſhe deſcended ſometimes to kiſs him) whence came the old by-word of *Endymionis ſomnum dormis*. Here is alſo in this Country the River *Salmacis*, ſaid to infeeble all ſuch as either drink of it, or bath in it: from whence the Poets raiſe their fiction of *Salmacis* and *Hermaphroditus* deſcribed by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida ſpolia ſine ſanguine & ſudore*, mentioned by *Tully* in his book of *Offices*, and there uſed for effeminate and wanton exerciſes.

Places

Lycia. Places of moſt note in it, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the hill *Latmus*, the birth-place of *Thales*, one of the ſeven wiſe-men of *Greece*, from hence called *Mileſius*; and the Mother of no fewer than 75 (or as *Pliny* ſaith of 80) Colonies, diſperſed in ſeveral places of *Greece* and *Aſia*: antiently honoured with the Oracle of *Apollo*, ſirnamed *Didymæus*, whoſe Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Mileſians*, to ſo vaſt a greatneſs, that it remained without roof; compaſſed about with a *Grove*, and dwelling houſes, and ſumptuouſly ſet out with coſtly workmanſhip. This is that *Miletus* mentioned *Acts* 20. to which Saint *Paul* called together the Biſhops of *Epheſus*, and of other the adjoyning Cities, *ab Epheſo & reliquis proximis Civitatibus*, ſaith St. *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lions*, Lib. 3. cap. 14. Antiently it was called *Lelegis*, and *Anactoria*. 2. *Mindus*, which being but a ſmall Town, had ſo great Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynick* cryed out, and ſaid, *Ye men of* Mindus, *take heed that your City run not out at your Gates*. 3. *Heraclea ad Latmum*, ſo called becauſe ſituate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that name. 4. *Borgylia*, or *Borgilos*, as *Pliny* calleth it, where antiently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared with that of *Epheſus*. 5. *Milaſa*, in old times famous for two Temples ſacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 furlongs was paved with ſtone for the eaſier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of Proceſſions: the principal of the Citizens ſerving there as *Prieſts*, which office they held unto their deaths. 7. *Primaſſus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perſeus*. Who meaning to force it by Mine, and finding the earth ſo ſtony that it would not work, commanded the *Pyoneers* notwithſtanding to make a noiſe under the ground, and cauſed great Mounts of *Rubbiſh* to be raiſed ſecretly at the mouth of the Mine, as if the work went very well forwards. At laſt he ſent word unto the Townſ-men, that two parts of their wall ſtood only upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, they ſhould find no mercy; which heard, the Citizens yeelded up the Town unto him. So uſefull in the art of war is a piece of wit, that it prevails ſometimes more than mines or Batteries.

In the South-weſt of this Province, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea like a ſpacious Promontory, ſtands the Country of *DORIS*, ſo called of the *Dores*, a *Greek* people, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were 1. *Cnidus*, not far from a foreland or Promontory of the ſame name, famous of old times for the Marble image of *Venus*, called hence *Dea Cnidea*. 2. *Creſſa*, a noted Haven-Town in the time of *Ptolemy*. 3. *Halicarnaſſus*, (now called *Neſi*) the birth-place of *Herodotus*, and *Dionyſius*, (named hence *Halicarnaſſeus*) two famous Hiſtorians; and the ſeat-Royal of *Artimeſia* Queen of the *Carians* (called from hence ſometimes the Queen of *Halicarnaſſus*) who in the honour of her husband *Mauſolus*, built a ſtately monument, accounted one of the worlds *ſeven wonders*; of which thus *Martial*, ſpeaking of the *Roman Amphitheatre* erected by *Domitian*.

> *Aere nec vacuo pendentia* Mauſolæa,
> *Laudibus immodicis* Cares *ad aſtra ferat*.

That is to ſay,

> *Mauſolus* tomb filling the empty Air,
> Let not the *Carians* praiſe beyond compare.

That the *Carians* were ſo called from *Cares*, the ſon of *Phoroneus*, King of *Argos*, hath been ſaid before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them ſo called from *Car*, which in the *Phœnician* language ſignifieth a Sheep, or a Ram; with numerous flocks whereof they did once abound. And this may ſeem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians*, next neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, called ſheep by the name of *Cara*, Κάρα Ἴωνες τὰ πρόβατα, ſaith *Heſychius* the old *Grammarian*. But from whomſoever they had their name, certain it is, they were a very warlike people, *eo armorum pugnæque amans*, (ſaith *Pomponius Mela*) *ut aliena etiam bella appeterent*, who when they had no wars at home, would ſeek out for action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mauſolus* reigned here whoſe wife *Artimeſia* (lately mentioned) aided that King in his undertakings againſt *Greece*. Afterwards, in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, we meet with *Ada* Queen hereof, who aided him againſt the *Perſians*; adopting him for her ſon and ſucceſſor; ſubject after her deceaſe to the *Macedonians*, it followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of theſe Provinces, till the defeat of *Antiochus* near *Magneſia*: in the diviſion of whoſe ſpoils it was given to the *Rhodians*, incorporated not long after to the State of *Rome*, and made a Province of the Empire. Wreſted from the Eaſtern Emperours by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; the greateſt part hereof, on the death of *Aladine* II. was raiſed unto a petit Kingdom by the name of *Menteſia*, ſo called from *Mendos* (or *Mindus*) the chief City of it; the reſidue being laid to the *Caraman* Kingdom: both long ago ſubdued by the *Ottoman* Family: that of *Menteſia* by *Mahomet* ſirnamed the Great, who diſpoſſeſſed *Elias* the laſt Prince thereof, *Anno* 1451.

13. *LYCIA*.

LYCIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Pamphylia*; on the Weſt, with *Caria*; on the North, with parts of *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. Environed on three ſides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which part it from the Countries above mentioned; by conſequence naturally ſtrong, and not very acceſſible: the Sea, for the ſpace of 20 miles ſhutting up the fourth. And here it is to be obſerved, that beſides this, there was a little Region of the ſame name, not far from *Troy*, not much obſerved by our *Geographers* either old or new; but mentioned ſometimes by the Poets; as in *Virgil Æneid*. 4. *Qualis ubi hybernam* Lyciam, *Xanthique fluenta deſerit*, &c. which is meant plainly

Lycia.

plainly of the *Phrygian*, or *Trojan Lycia*; the word *Hyberna* being added becauſe of its Northern ſituation, in reſpect of this. Of this ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in *Phrygia Minor*.

The people hereof were ſometimes called *Xanthi*, from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which riſing in two Springs from the foot of Mount *Cadmus*, paſſeth by a Town called *Xanthus* alſo, and falleth into the Sea. But generally they were called *Lycii*, and the Country *Lycia*, from *Lycius* the ſon of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who either conquered them, or did ſome memorable act amongſt them, which deſerved that honour.

The principal Mountain of this Country, and indeed of *Aſia*, is the Mountain *Taurus*, which hath his beginning in this Province, extending Eaſtward to the great *Oriental* Ocean: of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already, and more is to be ſaid hereafter, when theſe hills are grown unto the greateſt.

One of the branches of it, and the moſt notable in this Country, is that called *Chimara*, vomiting flames of fire like *Sicilian Ætna*, the bottom whereof was infeſted with *Serpents*, the middle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the higher parts made dangerous by the dens of *Lions*. Hence by the Poets made a Monſter, having the head of a Lion, the body of a Goat, and the tail of a Serpent; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*,

Quoque Chimæra *jugo mediis in partibus Hyrcum,*
Pectus & ora Leo, caudam Serpentis habebat,

In Engliſh thus,

Chimæra from a Goat her mid-part takes,
From Lion head and breaſt, her tail from Snakes.

This dangerous Mountain was firſt planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monſter; employed upon his buſineſs by *Jobares* the King of *Lycia*, to whom he had been ſent by *Prœtus* King of *Argos*, who was jealous of him; and ſent his letters to require that King to kill him. Whence came the ſaying, *Bellerophontis literas portare*; applyed to thoſe who were unawares employed to carry letters tending to their own deſtruction: ſuch as thoſe carried by *Uriah*, to *Joab* the General, by the command of *David*.

This Country was ſo populous that antiently there was reckoned threeſcore Cities in it, of which ſix and thirty remained in the time of S. *Paul*; now nothing left of them but the names and ruines. Thoſe of chief note were 1. *Myra*, the *Metropolis* of *Lycia*, when a *Roman* Province; by conſequence an Arch-Biſhops See, when Chriſtian. S. *Nicolas* one of the Biſhops hereof in primitive times, is ſaid to have been a great Patron of Schollars: his feſtival annually holden on the ſixt of *December*, is celebrated in the Church of *Rome* with ſeveral paſtimes; and ſtill in ſome Schooles here in *England*) as in that of *Burford* in the County of *Oxon* (where I had my breeding and my birth) for a feaſt and a play-day. Of this City there is mention *Acts* 27.v.2. 2. *Telmeſus*, the Inhabitans whereof are famous for *South-ſaying*, and accounted the firſt Interpreters of dreams. 3. *Pataras*, or *Patra*, (formerly called *Sataros*) beautified with a fair Haven and many Temples; one of them dedicated to *Apollo*, with an *Oracle* in it, for wealth and credit equall unto that of *Delphos*. 4. *Phaſelis*, on the Sea-ſide alſo, a neſt of Pirates in the times of the *Roman* greatneſs, by whom then haunted and enriched, as *Algier* is now: but taken by *Servilius*, a *Roman* Captain, at ſuch time as *Pompey* ſcowred the Seas. And unto the *Pirates* of this Town the former ages were indebted, for the firſt invention of thoſe ſwift Veſſels, which the *Romans* called a *Phaſelus*; by the name of the Town; we may render it a *Brigantine*. 5. *Cragus*, with a Mountain of the ſame name, thruſting out eight points or Promontories near to the *Chimera*. 6. *Rhodia*, or *Rhodiopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it, moſt probably the foundation of the neighbouring *Rhodians*. 7. *Solyma*, on the borders hereof towards *Piſidia*; the people of which were conquered and added unto *Lycia* by the ſword of *Bellerophon*, whom *Jobares*, with a mind to kill him, according to the requeſt of *Prætus*, imployed in that ſervice. 8. *Corydalla*, near the Mountain called *Maſigrum*, the *Maſſycites* of *Pliny*. 9. *Podalea*, the chief Town of *Mylias*; as 10. *OEnoanda* is of *OEbalia*, two little Regions in this Country.

The *Lycians* were in former times a puiſſant people, extending their power upon the Seas, as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Perſian* not without great difficulty; the people with ſuch obſtinacy defending their liberty, that ſome of them being beſieged by *Harpagus*, Lieutenant unto *Cyrus*, the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, they firſt burnt their wives, children, ſervants, and riches, in a common fire; and then made a furious ſally upon the Enemy, by whom put all to the ſword. To *Alexander* in his march this way towards *Perſia* they ſubmitted without any reſiſtance. After whoſe death they fell with the reſt of theſe parts into the hand of *Seleucus*. On the defeat of *Antiochus* at the battel of *Magneſia*, it was given to the *Rhodians*, for their aſſiſtance in that war; but governed as a free eſtate by a *Common-Council* of 14. Senators, elected out of their principal Cities: over whom was one chief Preſident, or Prince of the Senate, whom they called by the name *Lyciarchus*. In theſe remained the whole power of impoſing taxes, making war and peace, appointing *Juſticianies* and inferiour Magiſtrates, and all things appertaining to the publick government. A ſhadow of which power they retained when brought under the *Romans*, and a ſhadow only: the Supreme power being no longer in the Senate of *Lycia*, but in that of *Rome*. Nor had their *Lyciarchus* any thing but an empty name, and the vain priviledge or ordering and diſpoſing the publique games, wherein by his office he preſided. When made a province of the Empire, it had the ſame fortune as the others had, till it fell into the power of the *Turks*: after the death of the ſecond *Aladine* made a part of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; of which more anon.

Lycaonia.

15. LYCAONIA.

LYCAONIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Armenia Minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the Weſt, with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North, with *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Piſidia.* So called from the *Lycaones* a people of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycaonians*, inhabitants of *Lycaonia*, a Town of *Phrygia Major*; who inlarging themſelves into theſe parts, gave this name unto it. Either of which I ſhould prefer before their conceit, who derive it from *Lycaon* King of *Arcadia*, diſpoſſeſſed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdom; or think that *Lycaon* was a King of this Countrey, and not of that.

Places of moſt note herein 1. *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the *Metropolis* hereof when a *Roman* Province: a place of great ſtrength and conſequence; ſituated advantagiouſly in the Mountains for defence and ſafety, and therefore choſen for the ſeat of the *Turkiſh* Kings in *Leſſer Aſia*, at ſuch time as they were moſt diſtreſſed by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*; who under the command and preſence of the Emperour *Conrade* did in vain beſiege it, forced to depart thence with great loſs both of men and honour. Afterwards made the Seat-Royal of the *Aladine* Kings, the former race being extinguiſhed by the *Tartars*; and finally of the Kings of the houſe of *Caraman*, whoſe kingdom called the kingdom of *Caramania*, contained all the South parts of the *Leſſer Aſia*, that is to ſay, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphilia*, *Iſauria*, *Cilicia*, *Piſidia*, and this *Lycaonia.* 2. *Lyſtra*, the birth-place of *Timothy* the *Evangeliſt*: where *Paul* and *Barnabas*, having miraculouſly healed a Cripple, were adored as Gods; and not long after, on the inſtigation of ſome *Jews*, which came down from *Antioch* and *Iconium*, moſt deſpitefully treated; *Paul* being ſtoned into the bargain, though it pleaſed God to raiſe him to life again *Acts* 14. *v.* 19. 20. Such was the divine pleaſure of Almighty God, that he that did conſent to the ſtoning of St. *Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the Cloaths of his Executioners, ſhould ſuffer in the ſame kind wherein he had treſpaſſed, and feel ſome ſmart remembrance of his former Actions. 3. *Derbe*, honoured by the preaching of the ſaid Apoſtle. 4. *Laranda*, ſo called by *Ptolemie*; and ſtill preſerving its old name: the ſecond place for reputation next unto *Iconium.* 5. *Adopiſſus.* 6. *Paralais.* 7. *Canna.* 8. *Caratha*, with others named by *Ptolemie*, but not elſe obſervable.

Nor indeed were the *Lycaonians* themſelves, from whomſoever were they deſcended, of any great note or obſervation in former times: ſubject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdom, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Ptolemy*, when firſt made a Province of the Empire. Diſmembred from it by ſome of the following Emperours, either to create new Offices and preferments for ſome *Court favourites*; or to ſatisfie the *ambition* of ſome Prelates, aſpiring to the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, it was made a Province of it ſelf. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at firſt a member of the *Selzuccian* Kingdom, as afterwards of the *Caramanian.* Which laſt founded by *Caraman* a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the 2. the laſt King of the *Selzuccian* Family, was a great eye-ſore unto thoſe of the houſe of *Ottoman* from the time of *Amurath* the firſt, who firſt warred upon it, to the reign of *Bajazet* the ſecond, who in fine ſubverted it, *An.* 1486. as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter when we come to *Cilicia*, the laſt of the Provinces of that kingdom, in courſe of this work.

16. PISIDIA.

PISIDIA hath on the Eaſt, *Armenia Minor*; on the Weſt, ſome parts of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North, *Lycaonia*; on the South, *Pamphylia*, and ſome part of *Cilicia*; from which parted by the Main body of Mount *Taurus.* So called from the *Piſidæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reaſon of their name I find not amongſt my Authors.

The Country ſmall, but furniſhed with great plenty of all proviſions, as appeareth by that paſſage of *Livie*, where ſpeaking of the expedition of *Manlius* unto theſe parts, he telleth us that he came into the fields of *Salagaſſa*, (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich ſoil, and plentifull of all manner of fruit. *Inde ventum eſt* (ſaith he) *in agrum* Sagallaſſarum, *uberem fertilemque omni genere frugum*: But this is to be underſtood only of the plains and champian; the mountainous parts hereof, being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* hereof, when a Province of the *Roman* Empire, called for diſtinction ſake *Antiochia Piſidiæ*; mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the *Jews* Synagogue therein, honoured by St. *Pauls* preaching, the ſum of whoſe divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Seleucus*, the firſt King of *Syria* of the *Macedon* race, and by him ſo called in honour of his Father *Antiochus.* 2. *Seleucia*, the foundation of the ſame *Seleucus*, called alſo to diſtinguiſh it from others of that name, *Seleucia Piſidiæ.* 3. *Lyſinnia*, on the borders hereof towards *Phrygia.* 4. *Selge*, a Colonie of the *Lacedemonians.* 5. *Sagalaſſa*, ſituate in the moſt fruitfull part of all this Country, as appears by that of *Livie* before mentioned. 6. *Cremna*, which only had the honour of a *Roman* Colonie. 7. *Termeſſus*, ſtrongly ſituate in the *Streights* of the Mounts; the hilly Country about which hath the name of *Milyes.* 8. *Olbanaſſa.* 9. *Plutaneſſus*, of which little memorable.

As for theſe *Piſidæ*, they were originally deſcended of the *Solymi*, Inhabitants of the borders of *Lycia.* A valiant people, and ſo affirmed to be by *Livie*, who calleth them *longè optimos bello.* Nor did he ſpeak it without cauſe, this ſmall Nation holding out againſt the *Perſians*, and not conquered by them, when their great neighbours were ſubdued. Againſt theſe, *Cyrus* the brother of *Artaxerxes Mnemon* King of *Perſia* did pretend a quarrel, as if they had treſpaſſed on the borders of his Province.

Which

Pamphylia.

Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occaſion to levy an Army, pretending revenge on them; but intending to diſpoſſeſs his brother of the Perſian Monarchy: but *Tiſaphernes* Leiutenant to the King in *Aſia*, ſeeing greater preparations than were ſufficient to oppoſe the weak *Piſidians*, made the King acquainted with his ſuſpicions, who accordingly provided for reſſiſtance. The Army of *Cyrus* conſiſting of 12000 Grecians, and 100000 Perſians: the Kings Forces were no fewer than 900000 fighting men. They met at *Cunaxa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyrus* loſt both the victory and his life. The Grecians, who had made their ſide good, and ſtood in honourable tearms of compoſition, being by *Tiſaphernes* betrayed, loſt the beſt of their Company. The reſt under the conduct of *Xenophon*, made ſafe retreat home, in deſpight of 200000 men which followed at their heels. This *Xenophon* was an Agent in, and the Hiſtorian of, this expedition: by whoſe example the Spartans firſt, and after them the Macedonians, were encouraged to attempt the conqueſt of *Perſia*. But to return to theſe Piſidians, they fell with others of their neighbours, under the power of the Macedonians, and were made part of the Dominions of *Seleucus*. Abandoned by *Antiochus* to the will of the Romans, and ſettled in obedience by the military progreſs of *Manlius*, ſpoken of before; they were in *Ptolemies* time annexed to *Pamphylia*, as a part thereof. Afterwards made a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, and ſo continued till thoſe parts of the Eaſtern Empire were ſubdued by the Turks: firſt, part of the *Selzuccian*, and *Aladinian* Kingdom; after, of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; whereof more anon.

17. PAMPHYLIA.

PAMPHYLIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Iſauria*, and *Cilicia*; and on the Weſt, with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North, with *Piſidia*, ſeparated from it by the main body of that Mountain; and on the South, with the Mediterranean Sea, which, in thoſe parts which ly next to it, is called *Mare Pamphylium*. The reaſon of the name I find not, unleſs we think with *Metaphraſtes*, that it was ſo named, *quod ex omnibus gentibus conſtata eſſet*, becauſe inhabited by a mixture of many Nations: for ſo *Pamphylia* in the Greek tongue doth expreſly ſignify. And probable enough it is, that lying near unto the Sea with an open ſhore, oppoſite to *Africk*, near *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, ſeveral Nations from thoſe parts might repair unto it; and from thence the name.

The Country, for the moſt part, is very mountainous, over-run with the branches of Mount *Taurus*, but theſe branches feed great ſtore of Goats, of whoſe hair are made abundance of *Chamlets* and *Grograins*, not inferiour unto Silks for fineneſs. Towards the Sea, which for the ſpace of a hundred and fifty miles coaſt along this ſhore, more pleaſant, populous, and fruitfull; well watered, and as well planted. The principal Rivers hereof, being 1. *Cataractus*, 2. *Ceſtrus*, and 3. *Eurymedon*; Nigh to which laſt, *Cimon* the ſon of *Miltiades*, Captain General of the Athenian Army, overthrew in one day, both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Perſians*. The manner thus: having by plain Force broke their Navy, of which he took and ſunk no fewer than forty Ships, and three thouſand Gallies, beſtowed the *Perſian* Veſſels with his beſt men, attired in the habit, and wearing the colours of the *Perſian* in the tops of their ſhips. In their approach the Camp was opened, and all prepared to entertain their victorious Countrey-men; but the *Greeks* once in, ſuddenly put them to the ſword, and took twenty thouſand of them priſoners.

Principal Cities of it, 1. *Attalia*, founded by *Ptolemy Philadelphus* King of *Egypt*, and for long time the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing City of all this Province; well fenced, and ſeated very commodiouſly for Trade, on a very fair Bay, now called *Golfo di Sattalia*, by the name of the Town, but little altered. And though the *Romans* did conferr the honour of the *Metropolitan* City upon *Aſpendus*, yet ſtill *Attalia* had the ſtart in point of riches; and is to this day a wealthy and well-Traded *Empory*, the wealthier for the fair *Tapeſtries* which are herein made. Of this Town there is mention, *Acts* 14. *v.* 25 2. *Perge*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly feſtivals there held in honour of her; from hence called *Diana Pergaa*: more famous *in the fulneſs of time*, for St. *Pauls* preaching in it, mentioned *Acts* 14. *v.* 15. 3. *Side*, renowned in times of *Gentiliſm*, for a Temple of *Pallas*. 4. *Magydis*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from *Side*. 5. *Aſpendus*, an inland Town, but ſtrongly ſituate, made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the *Romans*: remarkable for the Fidlers, or Muſicians of it, who with one hand both held their Harps and plaid upon them, keeping the other free for more gainful uſes; whence the Proverb of *Aſpendus Cithariſta*, an *Aſpendian Harper*, by which they ſignifyed a Thief. The Town firſt founded by the *Argives*, the Colony ſent thither being led by *Mopſus*, from whom the Countrey hereabouts had the name of *Mopſia*. 6. *Olbia*, not far from *Attalia*. 7. *Caracenſium*, and 8. *Colobraſſus*, two of the Towns of that part hereof, which had the name of *Cilicia aſpera*; as 9. *Cretopolis*, and 10. *Menedemium*, of that part which was called *Carbalia*.

Of theſe *Pamphylians* there is little to be ſaid in point of ſtory, but that they were for the moſt part on the ſuffering hand; ſubject from time to time to thoſe mightier Princes, who would not let their neighbours reſt in quiet by them. Being on the ſame ſide of *Taurus*, and of eaſie acceſs, they became firſt Vaſſals to the *Syrian*, and after to the *Perſian* Kings. When *Alexander* paſſed that way, in his march towards *Perſia*, he took all the Sea-Towns of it; the whole brought under with the reſt of the *Aſian* Provinces, by *Antigonus* firſt, after by *Seleucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whoſe line, this people and their neighbours of *Cilicia*, being left to themſelves, and tempted by *Mithridates* to his faction, began to be troubleſom to the Seas, and proved notable Pirates, and were the firſt Authors, or inventors, of thoſe Gallies of a hundred and fourty, or an hundred and ſixty Oars apiece; which the *Italians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphyli*. But forced to leave this Trade at laſt, being warred upon by the *Romans* with great Forces both by Sea and Land (a fuller narrative whereof we ſhall have in *Cilicia*) in the concluſion of that war, they loſt that liberty which ſo ſmall a time they had enjoyed; and were made Vaſſals unto *Rome*. Afterwards made a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, they ran the ſame fortune with the reſt, till ſubdued by the Turks: and at the death of *Aladine*, were ſeized on by *Caraman*, and ſo became a part of his Kingdom. Of which we ſhall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And ſo much for the Provinces of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, (the Provinces of the Iſles excepted, whereof more anon) converted to the Chriſtian Faith by three great Apoſtles; but more eſpecially by Saint *Paul*, of whoſe travels through moſt Cities and Regions of it, there is ſuch pregnant evidence in the Book of the Acts. And that Saint *Peter*, and Saint *John*, had alſo their parts herein, appears by the Revelation of the one, and the firſt Epiſtle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watering, but *God himſelf giving the increaſe*. Paſs we on next to *ISAVRIA* and *CILICIA*, which though Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, were parts of the *Caramanian* Kingdom: of which having taken a Survey, and ſo cleared our ſelves of this *Peninſula*, we will then ſail about ſuch Iſlands as make up the remainder of the *Aſian Dioceſe*.

18. *ISAVRIA. CILICIA.*

Theſe two, though diſtinct Provinces, I have joyned together, becauſe the firſt was only a part of the laſt: *Cilicia* antiently comprehending both. The fortunes of both being the ſame alſo an point of ſtory, which makes the conjunction the more natural.

ISAVRIA, a mountainous and hilly Province, ſeated on both ſides of *Taurus*, hath on the Eaſt and South, the reſt of *Cilicia*, whereof antiently it was a part; on the North, *Piſidia*; on the Weſt, *Pamphylia*. So called from *Iſaurus*, the chief City of it, when firſt made known unto the *Romans*; which being taken by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, employed by *Pompey* in that Service, reduced the conquered Countrey under the command of *Rome*, and gave unto the Conquerour the Sirname of *Iſauricus*.

The quality of the Soil, and the whole eſtate of this ſmall Province, take thus from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who had ſeen theſe Countries. Ciliciæ *lateri dextro adnexa* Iſauria, *uberi palmite viret, & frugibus multis; quam mediam, flumen navigabile* Calicadnus *interſcindit, &c. i. e.* "On the right hand of "*Cilicia* lieth *Iſauria*, a Province of a wealthy ſoil, plentiful of Vines, and much other fruits, which "the river *Calicadnus* parteth in the very midſt. Beautified, beſides many Towns, with two principal Cities. 1. *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*: and 2. *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperor brought a Roman Colony. For as touching. 3. *Iſauria*, heretofore a walled City, and of moſt eſteem, it hath been long ago deſtroyed, as yeelding too ſecure a refuge to the neighbouring Rebels; inſomuch that now there are ſcarce any viſible tracts of its former greatneſs. And not much after, *Hæ duæ Provinciæ bello quondam* Piratico *catervis mixtæ Prædonum, à* Servilio *Proconſule miſſæ ſub jugum, factæ ſunt vectigales, i. e.* "Theſe Provinces (*Cilicia* and this) heretofore in the Piratical war joyning with "thoſe Robbers, were brought under by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, and made ſubject to the State of *Rome*. And here, we have in brief, the nature of the Countrey, the names of the chief rivers, and the principal Cities, with ſo much of the ſtory which relates to the firſt ſubjugation of it. What further doth concern it we ſhall hear in *Cilicia*, upon the which it did depend.

2. *CILICIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Syria*, or rather that part thereof which is called *Comagena*, ſeparated from which part by a branch of the mountain *Taurus*, called *Amanus*; on the Weſt with *Pamphylia*; on the North, with *Iſauria*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Syria*, eſpecially ſo called. It was thus named, as the old Tradition was, from *Cilix*, the brother of *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, a near neighbour to it; but as *Bochartus* (of whoſe honour I have told you often) from *Callukim*, a *Phœnician* word ſignifying ſtones, *quia lapidoſa eſt regio*, becauſe in ſome parts, eſpecially in that which is called *Cilicia Trachæa*, or *Cilicia Aſpera*, is was very ſtony. It is now called *Caramania*, as the laſt Province of the *Caramanian* Kingdom, which held out for thoſe falling Princes, when the reſt was conquered by the Turks of the *Ottoman* race.

The Countrey ſaid by *Marcellinus*, to be *terra dives omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitful of all neceſſaries. Which character holdeth good, chiefly in the Eaſtern parts, which heretofore had the name of *Cilicia Campeſtris*; the Weſtern parts lying towards *Pamphylia*, formerly called *Cilicia Aſpera*, being rough and ſtony. But generally where the lands ly in ſeveral, and are duly cultivated, it anſwereth to the former Character: being alſo very well watered, and having a fair and large Sea-coaſt, for the ſpace of three hundred miles and upwards. Which notwithſtanding, it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited, a great part of the Countrey lying in large, and common fields, to which none can lay any proper claim, and therefore planted onely with Goats and Sheep: out of which the Commoners on all ſides raiſe good profit by cheeſe and butter; by their fleeces chiefly. Here is alſo a good breed of Horſes, of which ſix hundred yearly are culled out for the ſpecial ſervice of the *Grand Seignor*. But as they have ſome profitable and uſeful creatures, ſo have they others as dangerous and hurtful to them; eſpecially thoſe which the vulgar Grecians call *Squilachi*, of a mixt making, betwixt a Dog and a Wolf; which go in troops, and are ſo bold, and theeviſh withall, as the uſe to ſet upon a man when he is aſleep, and leave him neither hat, cloak, nor fardel, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1. *Pyramus*, now called *Malmiſtra*, which riſing on the North ſide of the *Taurus*, and forcing his paſſage through that mountain, makes ſuch a noiſe in falling down the precipices and rocks thereof, as reſemblanceth at a great diſtance a clap of Thunder. 2. *Orimagdus*. 3. *Cali-*

cadnus ſpoke of before. 4. *Cidnus*, which riſeth in the *Anti-Taurus*; a river of a violent courſe, and ſo cold a water, that as *Pliny* writes, it cureth the gout: the waters of which proved very dangerous to *Alexander* the Great, the coldneſs of them ſtriking violently into his ſtomack; and deadly to *Frederick* the Firſt Emperour of the Germans, as he here bathed himſelf, the violence of the ſtream tripping up his heels, and he not able to recover, was preſently drowned.

Of their chief hils I need add nothing, having already ſaid, that the Country is parted by *Amanus* from *Syria*; and by *Taurus* it ſelf from *Piſidia* and *Armenia Minor*; not eaſie of entrance by the firſt; but very difficult by the laſt: the Streights thereof called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*, or the Ports of *Cilicia*, being indeed ſo ſtreight, and almoſt impaſſable, that had they been guarded or regarded by the Perſians, as they ſhould have been, the progreſs of *Alexander's* victories might have ended there. But *Arſenes* who had the charge of them, durſt not ſtand his ground, and ſo left them open to the enemy: whom by thoſe ports he put into the poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Perſia*. With better faith, though no better fortune, did the Souldiers of *Peſceninus Niger*, make good theſe Streights againſt the Emperour *Severus*,; the Monarchy of the world lying a ſecond time at the ſtake, and to be tried for in this Cock-pit. For the *Nigrians* poſſeſſed of theſe Streights and enterances, couragiouſly withſtood the *Severian* party; till at laſt a ſudden tempeſt of rain and thunder continually darting in their faces (as if the very Heavens had been armed againſt them) they were fain to leave the paſſage, and therewith the victory, to the adverſe faction; having ſold that at the loſs of 20000 of their own lives, which *Alexander* had the happineſs or hap to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Country towards *Pamphylia*, lived a Tribe or Nation called the *Soli*, originally of *Attica*: but in long tract of time diſuſed from converſe and communication with their Country-men, they ſpake that language ſo corruptedly, that from their barbarous manner of pronunciation, and as rude expreſſion, came the word *Solæciſmus*. Yet among theſe were born three men of eminent note, that is to ſay, *Chryſippus* the Philoſopher, *Philemon* and *Aratus* the Poets; out of the writing of which laſt, St. *Paul* vouchſafed to uſe this paſſage, τοῦ γὰρ γένος ἐσμὲν, i. e. *for we are alſo his off-ſpring. Acts.* 17. *v.* 28. That bleſſed Apoſtle thought himſelf never the worſe Preacher, for being brought up in humane learning at the feet of *Gamaliel*: not held it any diſparagement to the influences of the Holy Ghoſt, to make uſe of it in his Sermons, and divine diſcourſes, and therefore to prevent thoſe cavils which ignorance or miſpriſion might chance to make in times ſucceeding, he hath thrice vouchſafed the words and teſtimony of the Heathen writers, *viz.* of *Epimenides*, *Tit.* 1. *v.* 12. of *Menander*, 1 *Cor.* 15. *v.* 33. and that of *Aratus* before-mentioned. So lawful is it in this kind, for thoſe of the *ſpiritual Iſrael*, to rob the *Egyptians*; and to make this *Hagar* ſerviceable to her Miſtreſs *Sarah*.

Principal Cities of this Province. 1. *Solæ*, the habitation of the *Soli*, before remembred, by ſome ſaid to be built by *Solon* the Athenian, but generally affirmed to have been planted by thoſe of *Rhodes* and *Attica*: miſtakingly called *Heliopolis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, which is as much in Latin as *Solis civitas* or the City of the Sun. On the ſite hereof then decayed and ruinous (the town having been deſtroyed by *Tygranes* the Armenian king in his late war againſt the *Romans*) did *Pompey* build his City of *Pompeiopolis* after his victory over the Pirates; who not only lorded it over the Seas, and conſequently obſtructed trade and Merchandiſe, but waſted and ſpoiled the villages of *Italy* it ſelf. *Pompey* being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary puniſhment on the Ring-leaders, with the reſt peopled this new Town, and the Countrey adjoyning, allowing them competent poſſeſſions, leſt want and neceſſity ſhould again inforce them to the like courſes. An action truly commendable, aud worthy ſo great a Captain, rather to take an occaſion of offending from the people, than after offence done to puniſh them. *Hythlodæus* in the *Utopia*, ſomewhat bitterly, though perhaps not unjuſtly, inveigheth againſt the laws of *England*, for ordaining death to be the puniſhment of theft, *Cum multos potius providendum fuerit, uti aliquis eſſet proventus vitæ; ne cuipiam ſit tam dira furandi primum, deinde pereundi neceſſitas.* Whereas (ſaith he) the laws ought to make proviſion for putting men into ſome orderly courſe of life, and not let them run upon the neceſſity of ſtealing firſt, and then being hanged for it. 2. *Tarſus*, the birth-place of Saint *Paul* the Apoſtle, for that ſufficiently famous, were there nothing elſe to commend it to conſideration. But it was withall a Town of great note and conſequence, the *Metropolis* firſt of all *Cilicia*, and after the diviſion, of *Cilicia Prima*. The Inhabitants whereof had the privilege of Roman Citizens. Situate in a goodly plain on the banks of the *Cydnus*, and by ſome ſaid to be the work of *Sardanapalus* the laſt King of *Aſſaria*, it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this *Tarſus*, and 3. *Anchiala*, another City of this Countrey, near the Sea ſide, and not far from the promontory *Zephyrium*: Of the ſame date (if the ſaid Monument ſpeak truth,) but neither of the ſame fortune nor continuance: that being utterly decayed, but *Tarſus* ſtill remaining of great wealth and ſtrength. Much ſpoken of in the wars of the Holy Land, and in the ſtory of the *Caramanian* and *Ottoman* Kings. And though the *Tarſians*, to ingratiate themſelves with *Julius Caſar*, would needs have their Countrey called *Juliopolis*; yet the old name ſurvived the new, and it is to this day called *Terſia* or *Teraſſa* by the vulgar Grecians: but *Hamſa* by the Turks as *Bellonius* telleth us. 4. *Adena*, the *Adana* of *Ptolemy*, a large Town, but unwalled, in ſtead whereof defended by a very ſtrong Caſtle. Situate in a fruitful ſoil, both for wine and corn, wherewith the Town is always furniſhed for the uſe of thoſe that are to travell over the *Taurus*, who commonly take in here three days proviſion. 5. *Epiphania*, the birth-place of *George* the *Arian* Biſhop of *Alexandria*; thruſt on the world of late by ſome learned men (but of more induſtry than judgment) for *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr. 6. *Mopſueſtia*, as famous, or infamous rather, for giving title to *Theodorus Mopſueſtenus*, Biſhop hereof, and a great Patron of the *Neſtorian* hereſies, in time of St. *Chryſoſtom*. The City otherwiſe of good note, and of great conſequence, in the courſe of the *Roman* wars, *Cilicia.*

deſcribed at large by *Ammianus Marcellinus.* 7. *Iſſus*, upon a ſpacious Bay, called hence *Sinus Iſſicus*, near the Borders of *Syria*: memorable for the great Battel here fought betwixt *Alexander* and an handful (in compariſon) of his *Macedonians*, and that vaſt Army of *Darius* (himſelf there in perſon) conſiſting of 600000 undiſciplined *Aſians*; whereof ſo many loſt their lives, that the dead bodies ſeemed to have buried the ground. For, partly by the unskilfulneſs of the Commanders, who choſe ſo ill a place to fight in, that they could make no uſe of their mighty numbers: and partly by the effeminateneſs of the *Aſian* Souldiers, unable to endure the charge; there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of the *Perſians*, 4000 of them being taken Priſoners, amongſt them the wives and daughters of *Darius*, and not above 100 of the *Alexandrians*, if *Qu. Curtius* be not partial in relating the ſtory. A victory which aſſured *Alexander* of his former purchaces, and opened a way unto the reſt: the *Perſians* not being able to make head again, till he had pierced into the bowels of their Empire, and added *Syria* and *Egypt* to his former Conqueſts. Of ſo great conſequence is one full victory to the loſing and getting of a Kingdom. This Town it ſelf now called *Aiazzo*, and the great Bay on which it ſtandeth *Golfo di Aiazzo.* 8. *Alexandria*, built by command of the Conquerour near the place of battel, commodiouſly for trade, as upon the Sea; but otherwiſe in a fenny and boggy ſoyl, which makes the air there to be very unwholſom to men not uſed to it; little now remaining, but a few houſes on the Sea-ſhore built of ſtraw and mud, hardly affording it the reputation of a ſorry Village, and would not long continue ſuch, but that it is the neareſt Haven to the Town of *Aleppo* (whereof more in *Syria*) which draweth unto it the reſort of ſome *Chriſtian* Factors, whoſe houſes are of Clay and Timber; but of them not many. The Town at firſt called *Alexandria* as before was ſaid; diminiſhed firſt to *Alexandretta*, now called *Scanderone.* 9. *Nicopolis*, another of *Alexander's* foundations, ſo named in memory of his great victory before mentioned. 10. *Amavarza*, a City of great Antiquity in the time of *Strabo*, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Cilicia Secunda.* 11. *Heraclea*, mentioned by *Bellonius*, and by him placed in a fruitful and well-cultivated plain, at the foot of Mount *Taurus*; a fair and large Town, as he reporteth it, and diſtant from *Adana* towards the North-weſt about three days journey. But I find no ſuch Town in *Strabo*, or *Ptolemy*, or any other of the Antients. 12. *Scandeloro*, a City of *Cilicia Aſpera*, or that part of *Cilicia*, which lyeth towards *Pamphylia*; heretofore with the adjoyning territory governed as a State diſtinct, when all the reſt of this Countrey was under the Kings of *Caramania*: againſt whom the Prince hereof, being a *Mahometan*, had preſerved his liberties, by the aſſiſtance of the Knights of the *Rhodes*, and the King of *Cyprus.* And when the *Caramanian* Kingdom was ſubdued by *Bajazet*, he made ſo good conditions for himſelf, that he had other lands and eſtates in the *Leſſer Aſia*, aſſigned to him in exchange for this, and ſo ſurrendred this to the Will of the Conquerours.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Countrey were of the Progeny of *Tarſhiſh*, the ſon of *Javan*, by whom, or ſome of his poſterity, to preſerve his memory, the City of *Tarſus* was firſt built. Increaſing in tract of time by ſome new Colonies out of the neighbouring parts of *Syria*, it followed for the moſt part the fortunes of it; ſucceſſiveſy together ſubject to the *Aſſyrians*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians.* In the declining fortunes of the houſe of *Seleucus* they began to ſtand upon their own legs, and might have continued longer in ſo good a poſture, had they not hearkned to ill Counſels. Tempted by *Mithridates* to joyn with him againſt the *Romans*, of whoſe greatneſs all the Eaſtern States were grown very jealous; and being naturally good Sea-faring men, they began together with the *Pamphylians*, to infeſt the Seas. At firſt they ventured no further than the ſhores adjoyning. But after emboldned with ſucceſs, and finding the *Romans* were ſufficiently embroiled in *Domeſtick* troubles, and a ſharp War with *Mithridates*, fell upon the Coaſts of *Greece*, and in fine of *Italy* it ſelf; *Publius Servilius* the *Proconſul* firſt employed againſt them, gave them an overthrow at Sea; and following his good fortune, ſet upon them in their Harbours and retiring places. In which perſute he not only took from them *Phaſelis*, a ſtrong Town in *Lycia*, one of their *Retreats*, and others of their beſt and ſtrongeſt *Receptacles*; but waſting the whole Countrey of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Iſaurus*, the moſt defenſible Town thereof, which he took and ranſacked. No ſooner was *Servilius* departed home, but they broke out more violently than before; filling all the Creeks and Ports of the Eaſtern Seas with their Frigots, *Brigantines*, and other light *Piratical* Veſſels, inſomuch that *Pompey* himſelf thought it to be an action not unbecoming his greatneſs, to undertake the War againſt them. And he perſued it to ſuch purpoſe, that having armed 500 ſayl of all ſorts, and ſtored his ſhips with 130000 men, he ſet upon them all at once; and in the ſpace of one ſole month made an end of the War. An action not ſufficiently to be wondered at; if we conſider either the ſpeedineſs of it, done in ſo little time as a month; or the cheapneſs of the victory, purchaſed without the loſs of one *Roman* Veſſel; or finally the importance and conſequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infeſt the Seas, and all *Cilicia* ſubjected to the State of *Rome.* How they were afterwards diſpoſed of hath been ſhewn already. After this they did very good ſervice unto *Pompey* in his War againſt *Caſar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aids.

> *Atque* Cilix *juſtâ, nunc non* Pirata, *carinâ.*
>
> And the reform'd *Cilicia*, now
> No *Pirate*, in his fleet did row.

Nor were they pliant unto him onely, as unto their Conquerour; but generally ſo tame and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the firſt *Proconſuls*, or Lord Deputies, which were ſent to govern them: that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province: ſave that the *Panthers* (ſome of which, one of his friends had prayed him to ſend to *Rome*, for the adorning of his triumph) were for fear of him fled into *Pamphylia.* At the firſt conqueſt by the Romans, it was divided only into *Campeſtrem* and *Trachæam*, as was ſaid before; of which *Campeſtris* was reduced immediately to the form of a Province. *Aſpera* or *Trachæa* was a while continued under the government of Kings, till the time of *Veſpaſian*, and then made a Province as the other. By the ſucceeding Emperours, on ſome reaſons of State (if not thoſe intimated in *Lycaonia*) the number of Provinces being increaſed (though the bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly,) the whole was divided into three: that is to ſay, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campeſtris* wholly; *Cilicia ſecunda*, conteining the Maritime parts of *Cilicia Aſpera*; and *Iſauria*, taking up the mountainous Part of this laſt diviſion. Laid by the Emperour *Conſtantine* to the Dioceſe of the Orient; and conſequently ſubject in ſpiritual matter to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis* had his uſual reſidence. In the falling of the Eaſtern Empire, it was conquered by the Saracens in the time of *Muhaveas*, or *Muavi* the ſixth *Caliph*. Continuing under their command till their declination, it was recovered by the Greek or Eaſtern Emperours, and from them conquered by the Turks in the courſe of their victories. But the firſt race of Turkiſh Kings being worn out by the Tartars, and the *Aladinian* Kings ended in *Aladine* the ſecond; it was part of the new Kingdom of the *Caramanians*, continuing theirs till the deſtruction of that line by *Bajazet* the ſecond, *Anno* 1486. by whom incorporated with the reſt of the *Ottoman* Empire.

Cilicia.

Thus having made our progreſs over all the Provinces of the *Leſſer Aſia*, and ſhewn how every one of them was made ſubject to the Turkiſh tyranny: we muſt next draw down the ſucceſſion of ſuch Turkiſh Kings as have reigned herein, till it was wholly conquered by the Princes of the Houſe of *Ottoman*. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the Turks having made themſelves Maſters of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, and following their ſucceſſes into *Syria* alſo, fell to a breach amongſt themſelves. For making up whereof it was condeſcended unto by *Axan*, the then Perſian Sultan, that *Meloch* and *Ducat*, two of his diſcontented Kinſmen, ſhould be infeoffed in the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, and their ſeveral Territories, with whatſoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Egypt*, poſſeſſed at that time of moſt part of *Syria*, and ſome of the adjoyning Provinces. It was alſo then agreed upon, that a third, but nearer kinſman, called *Cutlu Moſes*, another of the Leaders of the oppoſite faction, ſhould have leave to conquer for himſelf whatſoever he could win from the Chriſtian Princes: And he accordingly being furniſh'd with a competent Army, ſubdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the *Greater Aſia*; with *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia* in *Aſia Minor*. Which and the reſt of their affairs take here in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Turkiſh Kings in *Aſia Minor* of the *Selzuccian* Family.

1075. 1 *Cutlu Moſes*, Nephew to *Trangolipix*, the firſt Perſian Sultan of the Turks, won *Media*, part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus* and *Bithynia*.

2. *Solyman*, ſon of *Cultu Moſes*, for a while diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his eſtates by the Weſtern Chriſtians, in their firſt paſſage towards the Holy Land.

3. *Mahomet*, the ſon of *Solyman*, recovered moſt of his eſtates in the *Leſſer Aſia*; but outed of them, and ſubdued by

4. *Muſat*, Sultan, or Lord Deputy of *Iconium*; but of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family, who was thereby poſſeſſed of all the Turkiſh Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*.

5. *Ciliſaſtlan*, the ſon of *Muſat* (to whom his father left *Iconium*, with the adjacent Provinces,) wreſted *Amaſia*, and *Ancyra*, from his brother *Jagupaſan*; *Sebaſtia*, and *Caſarea*, from his brother *Dodune*; which with their ſeveral Territories were bequeathed unto them, by the Will of their father. He overthew the Emperour *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his Kingdom.

6. *Reucratine*, the third ſon of *Caliſaſtlan*, having diſpoſſeſt his three brethren, *Muſat*, *Cappatine*, *Caicoſrhoes*, of the eſtates left them by their Father, became ſole Monarch of all the Turkiſh Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*. In the later end of whoſe reign, *Occata* the *Tartarian Cham* having driven the Turks out of *Perſia*, many of them under the conduct of *Aladine*, a Prince of the ſame *Selzuccian* Family, joyned themſelves to their Countrey-men here, with whoſe help they won *Cilicia* from the Grecian Emperours, who in the reign of *Calo-Johannes*, (the Turks being then embroiled by the Weſtern Chriſtians) had not long before regained it, and after the deceaſe of *Reucratine*, advanced him to the whole eſtate.

The *Turkiſh* Kings in *Aſia Minor*, of the race of *Aladine*.

7. *Aladine*, deſcended in a direct line from *Cuſſanes*, the laſt Turkiſh Sultan in *Perſia*, having with many of his Nation ſeated himſelf in *Cilicia*, firſt made *Sebaſtia*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief ſeat or reſidence, which after the death of *Reucratine*, he removed *Iconium* as the antient Regal City of the former Kings.

8. *Azalide*, by ſome called *Azadine*, the eldeſt ſon of *Aladine*, waſted the moſt part of his reign in wars with his brother *Jathatine*; whom at laſt he forced into exile.

9. *Jathatine*, on the death of his brother poſſeſſeth the Kingdom, ſlain afterward in ſingle combat by *Theodorus Laſcaris*, Emperour of the Greeks, at *Nice*.

10. *Jathatine* II. Son of the former, driven out of his Kingdom by the Tartars, and died in exile; the Turks becoming Tributaries and Vaſſals unto the Tartarian.

Tenedos.

11 *Muſat*, and *Cei-cubades*, of the ſame *Selzuccian* family (but whether the ſons of the ſecond *Jathatine*, I am not able to ſay) ſubſtituted in his place ; as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.

12 *Aladine* II. ſon of *Cei-cubades*, ſucceeded his father in the Kingdom, but as Vaſſal and Leige-man to the *Tartars*. After whoſe death, leaving no iſſue of his body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongſt them his Dominions. To *Sarachan* fell *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and part of *Lydia*, from him named *Sarchan*, *Sarachan*, or *Saracha-Illi*; to *Aidin* the reſt of *Lydia*, *Phrygia Major*, and the greateſt part of the *Greater Myſia*, from him called *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi* ; to *Caraſus*, the *Leſſer Phrygia*, with the reſt of *Myſia*, from him denominated *Caraſan*, or *Caraſa-Illi* ; to the Family of the *Iſendiars*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus* which lyeth next to *Bithynia*. There were alſo leſſer *Toparchies*, or ſubdiviſions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a ſecond of *Amaſia*, a third of *Amiſus*, a fourth of *Scandeloro* ; beſides many others. But the main body of the eſtate was ſeized by *Caraman*, who for his ſhare had the whole Provinces of *Lycia*, *Lycaonia*, *Pyſidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Iſauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Regal City of *Iconium*, the greateſt part of *Caria*, (the reſt of it appertaining to the Prince of *Menteſia*) with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and ſome Towns in *Phrygia* ; continuing in his family for as many deſcents (as either of the former had held before) in great power and luſtre, under

The *Turkiſh Kings* in *Aſia Minor*, of the houſe of *Caraman*.

13 *Caraman*, the firſt raiſer of this Family, Contemporary with *Ottoman* the firſt King of that race.

14 *Aladine*, ſon of *Caraman*, and ſon-in-law of *Amurath* the firſt of the houſe of *Ottoman*, by whom ſubdued, but pardoned and reſtored unto his eſtate, on the humble entreats of his wife.

15 *Aladine* II: ſon of the former, ſubdued by *Bajazet* the firſt, and hanged by *Tertumaſes*, one of *Bajazet's* great Commanders.

16 *Mahomet*, ſon of *Aladine* the ſecond, recovered his Kingdom on the death of *Bajazet*, vanquiſhed and led captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon and vanquiſhed by *Mahomet* the ſon of *Bajazet*, redeemed his peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns ; and was finally ſlain at the ſiege of *Attalia*.

17 *Ibrahim*, the ſon of *Mahomet*, the ſon-in-law of *Amurath* the ſecond, againſt whom unadviſedly raiſing War, he was forced to ſubmit and become his *Tributary* : after whoſe death, rebelling againſt *Mahomet* the *Great*, he was then alſo vanquiſhed, and a reconciliation made betwixt them.

18 *Ibrahim* II. by ſome called *Pyramus*, the ſon of *Ibrahim* the firſt, ſupported *Zemes*, brother of *Bajazet* the ſecond, in his War againſt him : for which *Bajazet* having ſettled his affairs, invaded and ſubdued the Kingdom of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in battel, and ſo united that Eſtate unto the reſt of the Dominions of the houſe of *Ottoman*. The ſtrange ſucceſſes of which houſe, from the firſt riſing of it to theſe preſent times, ſhall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania* ; from whence this Nation firſt attempted and atchieved the conqueſt of *Perſia*, and which onely of all their large poſſeſſions doth retein any thing of their name. In the mean time we will ſurvey the Iſlands of this *Leſſer Aſia*, and ſo proceed to their poſſeſſions in the *Greater*, as they ly before us.

19. *The Province of the* ASIAN ISLES.

The Province of the ASIAN ISLES comprehendeth all the Iſlands in *Aſia Minor*, from the mouth of the *Helleſpont* to the *Rhodes*, reckoning that for one: united firſt into a Province by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, next reckoned as a part of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, and afterwards, together with the Province of the *Helleſpont*, and that of *Aſia* properly and eſpecially ſo called, making up the peculiar, or exempt Juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Thoſe of moſt conſideration are, 1 *Tenedos*. 2 *Leſbos*. 3 *Chios*. 4 *Samos*. 5 *Coos*. 6 *Icaria*. 7 *Patmos*. 8 *Claros*. 9 *Carpathos*. 10 *Rhodes*. Others of leſs note, having nothing memorable but their names, are ſcarce worth the naming.

1. TENEDOS, is ſituate at the mouth of the *Helleſpont*, over againſt the noted Promontory, called of old *Sigeum* (but now *Cape Janizarie*) a Promontory of *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*, from which diſtant not above five miles. The Iſle it ſelf in circuit no more than ten; ſwelling with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts level ; in both producing as good wines as the beſt of *Greece*. It took name, as the general tradition was, from *Tenes* the ſon of *Cyenus*, King of a little City in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, who being falſly accuſed by his Step-dame for ſolliciting her to that inceſtuous mixture which ſhe had violently importuned, and he as piouſly refuſed ; was by the command of his Father put into a Cheſt, expoſed to the mercy of the Sea, and here miraculouſly preſerved. Here for a time he is ſaid to reign, with great commendation for his Juſtice ; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been ſlain by the hand of *Achilles*, of whom therefore it was not lawful to make mention in any of the Sacrifices offered in the Temples hereof. But *Bochartus* caſting off all this as an old wifes fable, will have it ſo called from *Tin edum* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying *Red-clay*, which the Potters made uſe of in their earthen Veſſels. A Town it had of the ſame name with the Iſland, in which a Temple ſacred to *Apollo Smintbius* ; and another called *Aſterion*, ſituate near a little River

well ſtored with *Crab-fiſh*, whoſe ſhells were made in the form of an Ax, or Hatchet. From which Town, as the Iſlanders have in ſome Authors the name of *Aſterii*; ſo from the other circumſtance, they are ſaid to have had the ſtamp of an Hatchet on their Coin, or Money. Memorable for an old cuſtom obſerved amongſt them, which was, that at the back of the Judg, there always ſtood a man with an Ax advanced; as well to terrifie the Witneſſes from giving falſe evidence to the Judg, as the Judg from pronouncing a falſe ſentence upon the evidence. Whence the Proverb, *Tenedia Securis.* More memorable for the final deſtruction of *Troy*, which was plotted here, the *Grecians* withdrawing their forces hither, as if gone in earneſt; but from hence ſetting ſail again to ſurpriſe the Town, when they ſaw their plot had took effect. And ſo I leave it with that *Character* which the Poet gives it:

Eſt in conſpectu Tenedos, *notiſſima famâ*
Inſula, dives opum Priami *dum Regna manebant.*
Nunc tantum ſinus, & ſtatio male-fida carinis.

In Engliſh thus:

In ſight of *Troy*, an Iſland ſtands, well known,
Call'd *Tenedos*: rich, and of great renown,
Whil'ſt *Priam's* Kingdom flouriſh'd; now (they ſay)
Grown a poor Road, for Ships an unſafe Bay.

Lesbos.

2. *LESBOS*, the largeſt of theſe *Aſian* Iſles, is diſtant from the main Land of *Troas*, about ſeven miles; 168. in compaſs: reckoned the ſeventh in bigneſs of the *Mediterranean*, which *Ariſtotle* in his Book *de Mundo*, ranketh in this Order following: τούτων αἱ μὲν ἀξιόλογοι, Σικελία, ϗ Σαρδὼ, ϗ Κύρνος, ϗ Κρήτη, ϗ, Εὐβοία, ϗ Κύπρος, ϗ Λέσβος. That is to ſay, The moſt conſiderable of theſe, are *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, *Crete*, *Euboea*, *Cyprus*, and *Lesbos*. And though both *Scylax* in his *Periplus*, a nameleſs Poet in *Euſtathius*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and other of the Antients, vary in ordering of the reſt, according as their information, or fancies led them; yet *Lesbos* comes in the ſeventh place conſtantly, without change at all. Upon which ground *Bochartus* will have it called *Lesbos*, from *Esburith*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying ſeven: contracted firſt to *Esbu*, by leaving out the laſt ſyllable of it; and then by changing *bu* to *bos*, and prefixing *L* to the beginning. Farr enough fet; and were it but as dearly bought, would be good for Ladies: this Iſland being reckoned in the ſeventh place for no other reaſon, but becauſe it lay furtheſt off, and moſt North from *Sicily*, from whence they ordered their accompts, and not any myſtery in the name thereof.

It had then the name from *Lesbos* the chief City of it, as that from *Lesbus* the Son of *Lapythus*, who married *Methymna*, the daughter of *Macarius* Prince hereof: from which *Macarius*, it had ſometimes the name of *Macaria*; as that of *Mitylene*, by which it is now commonly called, from *Mitylene*, another of the daughters of the ſaid *Macarius*. And that the memory of the whole Family might be preſerved in this Iſland, *Methymna* alſo had a City called by her name, one of the principal of the Countrey.

The Countrey towards the Weſt and South, reported to be mountainous, and ſomewhat barren, the reſt level and fruitful; plentiful of excellent Corn, and abounding in delicious Wines, compared by *Athenæus* to *Ambroſia*, the liquor of the Gods, as the Poets fable, affording alſo plenty of Sheep, and ſtore of Horſes; theſe laſt couragious and ſtrong, though but low of ſtature. More memorable for the eminent perſons which it hath produced; as, 1. *Sappho*, an *Heroick* woman, whoſe invention was the *Sapphick* Verſe, and therefore called the *Tenth Muſe*. 2. *Pittacus*, one of the *ſeven Wiſe-men of Greece*. 3. *Theophraſtus*, that noble Phyſician and Philoſopher. 4. *Alcæus*, the ſucceſſor of *Opheus*, in the excellency of *Lyrical* Poeſie; and, 5. *Arion* the Muſician, who was ſo perfect on his *Harp*, that being caſt into the Sea playing on that Inſtrument, a *Dolphin* took him on his back, and wafted him ſafe as farr as *Corinth*, where he related the whole Story unto *Periander*, atteſted by the Mariners who had thrown him overboard. And though this be by ſome rejected as a Poetical Fiction; yet paſt all doubt, the man was not onely an excellent Muſician, but an eminent Poet, the firſt Inventor of *Tragedies*, a chief *Lyrick*, and the Author of the Verſe called *Dithyrambick*.

Principal Towns therein, 1. *Lesbos*, ἀφ' ἧς ἡ ὅλη νῆσος Λέσβος ἐλέγετο, from whom (ſaith *Stephanus*) the whole Iſland had the name of *Lesbos*. 2. *Methymna*, ſo named from *Methymna*, one of the daughters of *Macarius*, and wife of *Lesbus*, ſpoken of before. 3. *Mitylene*, ſo named from the other daughter, now the chief City of the Iſland; ſeated on a *Peninſula*, looking towards the main Land, ſtrong by Nature, and fortified by Art: enjoying on either ſide a commodious Haven, that on the South moſt fit for Gallies; the other capable of Ships of burthen. Beautified heretofore with magnificent Buildings, and ſweetned with variety of delights and pleaſures; little now left of it ſince ſubdued by the *Turks*, but a ſtrong Caſtle, manned with an able Garriſon, and a well-ſtored *Arſenal* for Gallies, kept here in readineſs to preſerve thoſe Seas from Pirats, with which much infeſted. But the two firſt long ſince decayed and grown out of knowledge, thoſe of moſt note next *Mitylene*, are, 4. *Vaſilica*. 5. *Theodori*. 6. *Caſtel-Gera*; all of late days, and therefore of no obſervation in point of Story.

The Iſland was firſt inhabited by the *Pelaſgians*, conducted hither by *Zanthus* the Son of *Triopus*; whence named *Pelaſgia*; afterwards by ſome *Ionians*, and people of ſundry Nations, planted here by *Macarius* (the Father of *Mitylene* and *Methymna*) who by his prudence and the reputation of his juſtice, obtained a kind of Soveraignty over the neighbouring Iſlands. *Lesbus* the Son of *Lapythus* ariving here with his Family, married *Methymna*, and had the Iſland for her Dower; though *Mitylene* had the hap to have the predominant City, and the Iſland conſequently called by her name. Made ſubject to the

Chios.

the State of *Athens*, in the time of the *Peloponneſian* Warr (when almoſt all *Greece* banded againſt that City) they revolted from it, and were ſo ſtraightly beſieged by *Paches*. an *Athenian* Captain, that they ſubmitted unto mercy. The General ſends to *Athens*, to know what ſhould be done with the *Mitylenians*; Anſwer was ſent, that he ſhould put them to the ſword. But the *Senate* on the morrow after, repenting of that cruel Decree, ſent a countermand. Theſe later Meſſengers made no ſtay, but eating with one hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene*, juſt as *Paches* was reading the former Order; by this ſpeed prevented. So near were theſe miſerable People to a fatal deſtruction. Subdued by the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Geece*, they fell together with it to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors: from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and ſome other of theſe Iſles, *Anno* 1124. by the State of *Venice*, upon a quarrel betwixt them and the *Grecian* Emperor. Confirmed unto that Signeury by the Emperor *Baldwin*, and all the reſt of the *Ægean* added to their portion; thoſe above named were again recovered by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas* the *Greek* Emperor, then reſiding at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year, 1335. the Emperor *Calo-Johannes* gave it to *Franciſcus Cataluſius*, a Noble Gentleman of *Genoa*, with one of his ſiſters, for her dower. By whoſe Poſterity enjoyed, till the year 1462. when *Mahomet* the *Great*, incenſed againſt *Dominicus Cataluſius* the then Lord hereof, for the murther of his elder brother, a Vaſſal and Tributary of his Empire (thoſe Princes paying to the *Turk* an annual tribute of 4000 Ducats) but more for harbouring the Pirats of *Spain* and *Italy*, beſieges him in *Mitylene* his principal City, which in 27 days (for ſo long it held) he conſtrained to ſubmit unto him, and therewith all the Iſland alſo. Some of the chief Families being removed unto *Conſtantinople*, upon ſome reaſons of State, the main body of the people were permitted to remain here to till the Land; and ſo continue to this day, with ſome few *Turks*, conſiderable for their ſtrength, or numbers, intermixed among them.

3. CHIOS, the next to *Lesbos* both in ſite and bigneſs, lieth oppoſite to the ſhore of *Ionia*, from which diſtant not above four leagues, is in compaſs about 126 miles. So called, as ſome ſay, from *Chione* a fair Nymph hereof, much ſought after by many Suters: others ſay, from χιὼν, a *Greek* word ſignifying *Snow*, wherewith the Mountains of it are ſometimes covered And ſome again will have it take name from *Chios*, the chief City of it, which being built in the form of the *Greek* Letter χ, firſt got that name unto it ſelf, and afterwards did communicate it to the whole Iſland. *Iſidore* in his *Origines* gives another reaſon, and will have it called ſo from a *Syriack* word ſignifying *Maſtick*, whereof there is plenty in this Iſle. *Chios Inſula* (ſaith he) *Syrâ Linguâ appellatur, eo quod ibi* Maſtyx *gignitur*; *Siri enim Maſtichen* Chion *vocant*. And were it ſo, that *Chios* in the *Syriack* did ſignifie *Maſtick*, there could no better reaſon be aſſigned for the name: this Iſland being more furniſhed with that commodity, than any place in the world beſides. A Gum it is growing out of the *Lentisk* Tree, which in the Moneth of *July* and *Auguſt* the Inhabitants force out of thoſe Trees, by making with ſharp Inſtruments a deep inciſion into the bark of them; out of which the juyce dropping, is afterwards hardned like a Gum, and in *September* following gathered. A Commodity which yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sultanies*, every *Sultany* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*: and therefore the felling of the *Lentisk* Tree, at the time of diſtilling of this precious juyce interdicted, on the penalty of loſing the right hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Iſland, are Corn and Oyl in indifferent plenty, ſome Quarries of moſt excellent *Marble*, a certain green Earth like the ruſt of Braſs; ſome Silks and Cotton-Wool, but ſhort in worth to thoſe of *Smyrna*, and other places: Honey as good as any the World affordeth; and a vein of moſt delicious Vines, thoſe eſpecially which grow on the Mountain *Arvis*, now called *Amiſta*. Of which *Pliny* gives this commendation, *In ſumma gloria fuere* Thaſium, Chiumque; *ex* Chio, *quod* Arviſium *vocant*. Of all Wines (ſaith he) thoſe of *Thaſius* and *Chios*, are of beſt eſteem; and of thoſe of *Chios* the *Arviſian*. *Strabo* extolleth them in the *Superlative* degree, and calleth the Wine hereof οἶνον ἀριςὸν τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν, incomparably the beſt of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, ſpeaking of an *Epicurean*, or voluptuous liver, affirms, that he conceived it the ſupreme felicity: Λαῒ δὲ συγγνέσθαι, ϗ πεῖν Ἀριούσιον, to *lie with* Lais, *and drink theſe* Arviſian *Wines*. Here are alſo infinite ſtore of *Partriges*, of a red colour, kept tame, and fed in flocks like Geeſe, in the Streets and *Greenſwarths* of their Villages: ſome little Boy or Girle driving them to field, and calling them home again with a *Whiſtle*, when the night comes on.

The Iſland divided commonly into two parts, the *Higher*, called *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and Weſt; hilly and rough, but intermixed with fruitful Vales and pleaſant Rivers; the *Lower* oppoſite unto it, called *Catamorea*, ſwelled here and there with gentle Hillocks, on which groweth the *Lentisk*. The whole inhabited by *Greeks*, intermix'd with *Genoeſe*, and (ſince their conqueſt by that people) ſome few *Turks* amongſt them. Which mixture with the *Genoeſe*, tempereth the levity of the *Greeks* with *Italian* gravity: the better ſort of people both in apparel, and manners, coming neer the *Genoeſe*, once the Lords of this Iſland; the common ſort continuing their old *Greek* humor of mirth and jollity (not ſenſible of the *Turkiſh* thraldom under which they ſuffer) with as much licentiouſneſs as ever. And though this intermixture hath ſo corrupted their Language, that neither the *Greek* nor the *Italian* be here rightly ſpoken, but a compound Tongue made up of both; yet keep they their Religions ſtill diſtinct and ſeparate, as if they had never known one another.

Here are reckoned in it ſix and thirty Towns and Villages, the principal whereof are, 1. *S. Elias*, in the North. 2. *Pigrine*, in the midſt hereof; and 3. *Chios* it ſelf, now calle *Sio* (as is all the Iſland) one of the ſeven Cities contending for the birth of *Homer*; whoſe Sepulchre they pretend to ſhew in an old Caſtle near the Mount and Town of *S. Elias* (which were it his, would be a better argument for his burial here, than it is for his birth.) The Town ſituate in the moſt pleaſant and fruitful part of the

Samos.

Countrey, to which both Induſtry and Art hath given great advantage: here being few houſes without Orchards of excellent fruits; as Oringes, Limons, Pomgranates, Citrons, and a kind of Figg, much praiſed for their quickneſs of taſte by the antient *Romans*. It ſtands on the Eaſt ſide oppoſite to the ſhore of *Aſia*, ſtretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the Weſt-ſide backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did ſtand. The Buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying; though otherwiſe ſecure once entred; and for directing of the entrance, a Lantern advanced by the *Genoeſe* (when Lords thereof) to give light by the night, and ſerve for a land-mark in the day. Fortified on the North-ſide by a large and ſtrong Caſtle, environed with deep Ditches, well furniſhed with munition, and a *Turkiſh* Garriſon. And, becauſe the Iſland is on all parts acceſſible, not naturally fortified with rocks, and dangerous precipices, as many others; beſides this Caſtle, they have all along the Coaſt ſmall Watch-towers, which with ſmoak by day, and fire by night, give notice unto one another, of ſuch Veſſels as they ſee approaching: the Guards about the Caſtle being ſo intent alſo about their charge, that every minute of the night, there goes a word about the walls to declare their vigilancy.

The *Chians* were at firſt a free people, governing themſelves as a Common-wealth; and by reaſon of their many Harbours, able to furniſh out a Navie of 80 Sail, which gave them the *Lordſhip* of thoſe Seas, till eclipſed by the *Rhodians*. Beſieged by *Philip*, the Father of *Perſeus*, with his utmoſt power, who, when he could not get it by force, proclaimed freedom to the Slaves (of which here were many) and liberty to marry with their Maſters Wives, if they would rebell againſt their maſters. And when this policy would not do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of indignation, he gave over the ſiege. At laſt they became ſubject to the *Romans* with the reſt of *Greece*, and followed punctually the ſame change of fortunes, as did thoſe of *Lesbos*; which we have ſpoken of before: till given by *Andronicus Palaeologus*, one of the laſt *Greek* Emperors, to the *Juſtinians*, a Noble *Genoeſian* Family, aſſiſtant to him in his Warrs. Under them it continued as *tributaries* to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themſelves Maſters of *Conſtantinople*) to whom they annually paid eighteen thouſand *Ducats*, till the year 1566. When *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, picking a quarrel with them for ſome ſuſpected correſpondency with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greateſt *Baſſa's*, to ſeiz the Iſland. And he accordingly preſenting himſelf before the City, with a ſtrong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did ſo aſtoniſh and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other ſummons than the ſight of his Navie, they ſurrendred themſelves unto his diſpoſing upon *Eaſter-day*, being the ſame day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkiſh*, all, ſave their *Religion*, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times.

4. *SAMOS*, is on the South-eaſt of *Chios*, diſtant about five miles from the ſhores of *Ionia*; about eighty, or eighty ſeven in compaſs; environed for the moſt part, eſpecially on the North-weſt, with inacceſſible rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven of little uſe by reaſon of the *Pirats* who infeſt thoſe Seas. The ſoil ſufficiently enriched with moſt kind of fruits, abundantly plentifull of Oyl and Olives, but of Vines altogether unfurniſhed; which is the more to be admired, in regard all the Iſlands and Shores about it, produce them in ſo great a plenty. It ſtretcheth from the Eaſt to the Weſt: and on the South part of it ſtood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before ſpoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited as was the reſt of the Iſland; now wholly deſolate in a manner, becauſe of the *Pirats*, and in moſt places, very much over-grown with Woods; becoming thereby very uſeful to thoſe publick enemies, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can, upon the ſudden, but a Ship to Sea, for perſute of their Robberies. The chief commodities it affordeth beſides thoſe above, is *Medicinal Earth*, uſeful for *Chirurgery* and *Phyſick*: of which in former times were thoſe Veſſels made, called *Vaſa Samia*, in great requeſt amongſt the *Romans*.

Antiently, it had the names of *Dryuſa*, *Anathemuſa*, *Melamphylas*, and *Cipariſſa*; out-worn by that of *Samos*, which it ſtill reteineth. Memorable in old times for the birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Sibyls*, hence called *Samia*; and finally, of the wiſe man *Pythagoras* (a wiſer than any of the *ſeven wiſe Maſters* ſo renowned amongſt them) who firſt brought Philoſophy into *Greece*, and from thence into *Italy*. Once *a free Common-wealth*, of no ſmall eſteem, the Inſtitutes whereof are mentioned by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the ſeveral Commonwealths then being: afterwards made ſubject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a man ſo fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any miſchance. Fearing leſt ſuch a long calm would bring on a Tempeſt, he let fall into the Sea a moſt precious Ring by him deſervedly eſteemed; that ſo it might be ſaid, he had ſome miſ-fortunes. Which afer he had found again in the belly of a Fiſh, brought accidentally to his Table, he was overcome by *Orontes*, a *Perſian*, and brought to a miſerable death. Leaving a notable example, that fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a ſharp ſting, hath always ſome miſery fellowing in the train of a long concatenation of felicity. From this time forwards, it ran the ſame fortune with the reſt of theſe Iſlands; ſubject ſucceſſively to the greateſt *Monarchies* in former times, as of late times to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5. *ICARIA* (now called *Niceria*). lieth not farr from *Samos*, to the Weſt-ward of it, narrow, but extended out in length, the whole compaſs ſeven and thirty miles: neighboured by two great Rocks, or little Iſlands, of old called *Melanthii*, now the *Fernaces*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night eſpecially. Meanly inhabited at the preſent, though abundant in paſturage, and yielding ſufficiency of Corn; Havenleſs, and therefore the leſs frequented, yet that defect ſupplied by commodious Roads. In former times called *Doliche*, then *Macris*, after *Ichſiaſa*: which name it held till the flight of *Dedalus* out of *Crete*. Who juſtly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being Pandar to his Wife

in her love with *Taurus*, ſecretly with *Icarus* his Son, fled out of that Iſland. And becauſe he would be ſure to out-ſtrip the *Rowers* who perſued him, he added ſails unto his Boat, which it is ſaid he firſt invented. But *Icarus*, coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new device, clapped on too much Canvaſs, and bearing too great a ſail, was here caſt away. Hence the new name, both to this Iſland, and the Seas adjoining to it: and the occaſion of the Fable of *Dedalus* putting wings upon his ſhoulders, when he fled from *Crete*; and of his Sons flying too high, whereby the Wax melted which his wings were faſtned with, and ſo he periſhed in the water. Of which thus *Ovid*:

> *Dum petit infirmis nimium ſublimia pennis*
> Icarus, Icariis *nomina fecit aquis.*

In *Engliſh* thus:

> Whil'ſt *Icarus'* weak wings too high did ſoar,
> He fell, and gave name to th' *Icarian* ſhore.

6. **PATMOS**, now called *Palmoſa*, is ſituate on the South of the other two; A little Iſland not above 30 miles in compaſs. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, eſpecially of Wheat and Pulſe; of other commodities and fruits, not ſo well provided. On one of theſe Mountains ſtands a Town of the ſame name with the Iſland; having on the top thereof a Monaſtery of *Greek Caloires*; and on the bottom a fair Haven (I mean in reference to the Iſland.) Fourty ſail of Ships are ſaid to belong unto it; by the trading thereof, they bring in thoſe proviſions which the ſoil affordeth not: the ſoil about the Town being ſo incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on, or near it, but on ſuch earth as is brought thither from other places, unto this Iſland (as to others in other parts of the World) did the *Roman* Emperors uſe to confine offenders. A puniſhment laid by *Domitian* on S. *John* the *Divine*, who in this place writ his *Revelation*, to the Churches of *Aſia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Iſland. And the Inhabitants by tradition, point unto a houſe on the North-ſide of the Town, in which it was written, and not farr off, the *Cave* where it was *revealed*. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. They alſo ſhew a dead man's hand, which they affirm to be his, the nails whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (ſaith *Maginus*) claim it for the Hand of one of their Prophets. Let them diſpute the controverſie, whileſt we haſten to

7. **CLAROS**, another Iſland not farr off, containing about 40 miles in compaſs. Well ſtored with commodious Harbours, but very mountainous; ſome of thoſe hills of ſuch an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Epheſus* in *Ionia*, (though diſtant at leaſt eighty miles) may be eaſily ſeen. It is now called *Calamo*. Neighboured by *Lero* (of old called *Ileron*) a little Iſland not above eighteen miles in circuit; but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furniſhing the neighbouring Countreys with ſome ſtore of *Aloes*. Sacred in former times was *Claros*, to *Apollo*; reckoned by him amongſt his honours, in his brags to *Daphne*; where he declares,

> ——— *Mihi* Delphica *tellus*,
> *Et* Claros, *&* Tenedos, Pataræaque *Regia ſervit.*

That is to ſay:

> The folk of *Delphos*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*.
> And Royal *Catara*, my Vaſſals are.

8. **COOS, COS**, or **COUS**, for by all theſe names it was called of old, is ſituate over againſt *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Ægean*, that is to ſay, in that part thereof which is called *Mare Myrtoum*, the *Myrtoan Sea*. A Sea ſo called, as ſome ſay, from one *Myrtilus*, the Coach-man, or *Charioteer*, of *Œnomaus*, who having betrayed his race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Pliny* leſs probably conceiveth that it took the name from *Myrtos*, a little Iſland not farr from *Eubœa*, a little too farr off to extend its name to the ſhores of *Caria*. And therefore conſidering that *Lydia* antiently was called *Myrtus*, and that in thoſe times *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, lying on this Sea, were accompted but as parts thereof, I think we may reſolve with more probability, that it derived this name from that of *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea ſtands the Iſle of *Coos*, now called *Lange*, affording Saylers as they paſs by, a moſt beautiful proſpect, lying for the moſt part flat and level, but ſwelling towards the Eaſt with ſome gracefull Mountains, out of which iſſue many ſweet and pleaſant Springs to refreſh the Iſland, which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypreſs* Trees, *Turpentine*, nd ſundry others, both delightful and *Medicinal*; but moſt eſpecially, celebrated for thoſe rich Wines, which the Good Fellows of *Rome* ſo much loved to quaff, called *Vinum Cos*. It is in compaſs 70 miles, having a Town of the ſame name, in the Suburbs whereof ſtood antiently the Temple of *Æſculapius*, famous and rich with the offerings of thoſe, who having by his aſſiſtance (as they ſuppoſed) recovered health, came thither to make payment of their Vows, and expreſs their Gratitude. It is now fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, held by a Garriſon of *Turks*: and beſides this, two Villages onely in the Iſland, and both inhabited by *Greeks*.

In elder times, it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria*, and *Nymphæa*, and at laſt of *Coos*. Memorable in being the Countrey of many famous men, who were herein born: *viz.* of **Hippocrates**, the Reviver of Phyſick, then almoſt decayed, who is hence called **Hippocrates Cous**. 2. *Sinius*, a Phyſician alſo; 3. *Ariſton*, a *Peripatetick* Philoſopher; 4. *Philetus*, as good an Orator, as a Poet; 5. *Nicias*, who for a time oppreſſed the liberty of his people; and, 6. of *Apelles*, the famous Painter; who to expreſs his

Carpathos and *Rhodes.*

art in the picture of *Venus* (riſing naked out of the Sea) aſſembled together all the moſt beautiful women of this Iſland, uniting in that piece their divided perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stomalimne*, one of the principal of this Iſland, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Auguſtus*, and there dedicated to *Cæſar*, as the Mother of the *Julian* Family: the *Coans* in regard thereof, being eaſed of a great part of their annual tributes. Not much leſs memorable for that fine thin Stuff (ſuch as now called *Tiffanies*) ſo much in uſe amongſt the Chief Ladies in *Rome*; which at once ſhewed them cloathed and naked. *Perlucidâ utuntur veſte, ita ut nudé conſpici poſſint*, as my Author hath it. Theſe they called *Veſtimenta Coa*, and *Veſtes Coas*, ſo often mentioned by the Poets, eſpecially, in their *Amatoria*; as *Coa puellis veſtis*, in *Tibullus*; *Indue me Cois*, in *Propertius*: *Sive erit in Cois*, ſaith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others alſo, too many, and too long to be added here. I paſs to

9. CARPATHOS, ſituate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Iſland, called hereabouts, the *Carpathian Sea*. A rugged and unpleaſing ſoil, full of difficult Mountains, but thoſe Mountains ſtored with Quarries of moſt excellent Marble. In circuit about 60 miles, extending more in length than breadth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long ſince periſhed, that of *Carpathos* being ſtill remaining, and ſtill the principal of the Iſland; both now called *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the ſhore, and every one of them, furniſhed with ſome Port, or Haven; but ſmall, and, for the moſt part, very unſafe. Situate in the middle, as it were, betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*, it hath continued hitherto in poſſeſſion of the State of *Venice* (if not taken from them very lately) to whom being given, with other of the Iſlands of theſe *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern forces, it hath the fortune, or felicity to continue theirs, when almoſt all the reſidue were ſubdued by the *Turks*. The people *Greek*, of the Communion of that Church, notwithſtanding their ſubjection to a State of *Italy*.

10. RHODES, ſituate in the *Rhodian*, or *Carpathian* Sea, lyeth over againſt the Coaſt of *Lycia*, in *Aſia Minor*, from which diſtant about 20 miles. Formerly called *Ophiuſa*, *Aſteria*, *Æthræa*, *Trinachia*, *Pœeſſa*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, and at laſt, *Macaria*; it ſettled finally and fortunately in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roſes*, which the ſoil produceth, *Rhodos* in that language ſignifying a Roſe, the *Iſle of Roſes*, as it were: but, the Poets ſay, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of theſe Seas, here deflowred by *Apollo*; or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the daughters of *Apollo* begat on *Venus*. For ſo one of them thus declareth:

Inſula dicta Rhodos, *de Sole &* Cypride *nata eſt.*

Rhoda, from whom this Iſle took name,
Of *Venus* and *Apollo* came.

The Iſland 140 miles in compaſs, enriched with a moſt temperate air, and a fertile ſoil, producing fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent paſtures; adorned with Trees, which always do continue green; and in a word, ſo bleſs'd with the gifts of Nature, that it gave occaſion to the Fable of thoſe *Golden Showers*, which were once ſaid to have fallen upon it. The *Wines* hereof ſo excellent, and ſo rich of taſte, that by the *Romans* they were uſed in their ſecond courſes, or reſerved for the ſacrifices of the Gods, as too good for mortals as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cauſe of which perpetual flouriſhing, and continual ſpring, is to be aſcribed to the powerfull influence of the *Sun*, ſo dearly cheriſhing this Iſland, or ſo much in love with it, that it is conſtantly affirmed that no day paſſeth wherein he ſhineth not clearly on it, be the air in all other places never ſo much over-caſt with Clouds, or obſcured by miſts. Feigned for that cauſe to have been naturally a meer Mariſh, altogether inhabitable, if not covered with waters: till loved by *Phœbus*, and erected above the waters by his vigorous influences.

Of the People we ſhall ſpeak anon; Look we in the mean time on the places of moſt obſervation. 1. *Lindum* (now *Lindo*, a pety Town, but formerly of more eſteem) of note in thoſe times for the Temple conſecrated to *Minerva*, by *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As alſo for the birth of *Chares* the *Architect* of the huge *Coloſſus*, whereof more preſently; but eſpecialy for the Nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the *ſeven wiſe men* of *Greece*: the other ſix being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilo* of *Sparta*, *Bias* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Miletum*, and *Pittacus* of *Mytilene*. Seven men of whom the *Grecians* moſt immenſly bragged, as if the World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number; for which derided handſomly by *Lactantius*, an old *Chriſtian* Writer, who ſcoffs their paucity, and calleth it a miſerable and calamitous Age, *In quo ſeptem ſoli fuerunt qui hominum vocabula mererentur*; in which there were no more than ſeven, who deſerved to be accompted men. 2. *Rhodes*, antiently, as now the chief City of it, the Iſland from thence taking name, and formerly, as well as in later times, depending on the fortunes and ſtrength thereof. No place in elder times held ſuperiour to it, for the conveniency of the Haven, magnificent buildings, delightful Orchards, and other excellencies. Situate on the Eaſt part of the Iſle, on the declining of an Hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a ſafe and commodious Haven: treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five ſtrong Bulwarks, beſides divers Sconces, and other out-works; this Town, and *Famaguſta*, in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two ſtrongeſt Holds in the *Turkiſh* Empire. In former times, one of the principal *Univerſities* of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marſeilles*, *Tarſus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old *Academies* of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a moſt noted place of ſtudy, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperor) did withdraw himſelf, when *Auguſtus* had declared

his

Rhodes.

his ſecond Nephews, *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his Heirs; pretending onely a deſire to improve himſelf in the ways of *literature*; whereas the true cauſe was his envie at their preferment. Honoured in thoſe times with the huge *Coloſſus*, one of the *ſeven wonders* of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindum*, before mentioned. Compoſed of Braſs, in height ſeventy *Cubits*, every finger of it being as great as an ordinary man; and conſecrated to the Sun, as the proper Deity of the Iſland. Twelve years in making, and having ſtood but 66 years was pulled down in an inſtant, by an *Earthquake*, which terribly ſhook the whole Iſland. The *Rhodians* being forbidd by an *Oracle* to erect it again (or poſſibly pretending ſuch an *Oracle* to ſave that charge) yet held the Braſs and other Materials of it, in a manner, ſacred. Not meddled with, nor ſacrilegiouſly purloined till *Mnavias*, the General of *Oſmen*, the *Mahometan Caliph*, finding in himſelf no ſuch ſcruple of conſcience (after he had ſubdued this Iſland) made a prey hereof, loading nine hundred Camels with the very Braſs of it. From this *Coloſſus* was the Iſland ſometimes called *Coloſſa*, and the people *Coloſsians*: not thoſe *Coloſsians*, (as ſome have very vainly thought) to whom S. *Paul* writ his Epiſtle, thoſe being of *Coloſſe*, a Town of the *Greater Phrygia*, as hath there been noted. Here was alſo in this City antiently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many preſents both of *Greeks* and *Romanes*; of both which people, the *Rhodians* were then held in a fair eſteem; but the *God*, and the *good Wines* in greater. Towns of leſs note, are 3 *Villana*. 4 *Ruſsicare*, and ſome others, but as little memorable.

This Iſland was firſt peopled by *Dodanim* the Son of *Javan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly, but corruptly, *Rhodanim*; miſtaking the *Hebrew* letter, *Daleth* for that of *Reſh*, letters ſo like, as eaſily it might draw them to that miſtake. Finding this Iſland too narrow for him, he left here a Colony, and, with the main Body of his people, paſſed into *Greece*; where he planted the Countrey of *Epirus*, as hath there been ſaid. Thoſe which ſtayed here, being miſtakingly called *Rhodians* (or called ſo by the *Grecians*, not looking with too curious eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundance of *Roſes* herein growing) making the beſt uſe of their Haven, and other the advantages of their ſituation, became ſo expert in Maritime affairs, that by *Florus*, they are ſtyled *Populus nauticus*; and that not onely in the way of Trade and Merchandize, but of power and government; holding for many years the command of theſe Seas, and preſcribing Laws for the Regleimant of Navigation. Which being called the *Rhodian* Laws, became a general Rule for deciding *Marine* cauſes, and ordering the affairs of Sea in all Parts and Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: and ſo continued till ſupplanted in theſe Weſtern parts by the Laws of *Oleron*. Fearfull of falling under the *Macedonians*, they applied themſelves unto the *Romans*, whom firſt they aided in their Warrs againſt *Philip*, the Father of *Perſeus*; and afterwards in that alſo againſt *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this laſt ſervice with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Aſian* Provinces, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his compoſition; they became ſo faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Iſlands of the *Mediterranean* and *Ægean* Seas revolted to *Mithridates*, King of *Pontus*; this only adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their ſtrength at Sea, or of thoſe good Offices, they began to take upon them as *Mediators*, and thought themſelves fit men to adviſe their *Maſters*. Grown troubleſome by their frequent interpoſitions, and loſing much of their eſteem by ſuch *impertinencies*; they began to grow jealous of the *Romans*, and incline to *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*; whoſe Father they before oppoſed with their utmoſt power. A change which *Paterculus* expreſſeth with ſome admiration. *Rhodii ipſi fideliſsimi antea* Romanis, *dubia jam fide proniores in* Regis *partes viſi ſunt*, as his words there are. But yet they held for them againſt *Mithridates*, as before was ſaid; and ſerved their turn on all occaſions, until inſenſibly they betrayed their liberty to the power of their friends; and of *Confederates* and Allies, became their *Vaſſals*. Made by *Veſpaſian* into a Province with the reſt of the Iſles; which gave the Title of *Metropolitan* to the Biſhop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued (or under that of *Conſtantinople* after the diviſion) till the year 1124. when taken from the *Grecians* by the State of *Venice*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperor, *John Ducas*, then reſiding at *Nice*, from the *Grecians* by the *Turks*, the Knights of Saint *John* of *Hieruſalem*, being utterly driven out of *Aſia*, poſſeſſed themſelves of it, by the favour of *Emanuel* the then Emperor, who aided them in the Conqueſt, *Anno* 1308. Afterwards proving bad neighbours to the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, whom they ceaſed not to infeſt upon all occaſions, they were many times in vain invaded: *Mahomet* the *Great*, for taking *Conſtantinople*, and the Empire of *Trabezond*, ſpending ſome time before their City, with both loſs and ſhame. At laſt, *Anno* 1522. it was again beſieged by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Lilladamus Villerius*, being then great Maſter: who did as much in defence hereof, as policy and puiſſance could extend unto. But multitude in the end prevailed, and upon *Chriſtmas-Day*, the *Turk* entred *Rhodes* as Conqueror; though poſſibly he might have ſaid (as *Pyrrhus* once ſaid of a like Victory againſt the *Romans*) that *ſuch another Victory would quite have undone him*. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by ſome *Jews* baniſhed out of *Spain*, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: the *Chriſtians* which are licenſed to dwell in the Countrey, and have leave to trade there in the day-time, not ſuffered upon pain of death to ſtay there all night. And ſo we paſs from the Iſland of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, to the Iſle of *Cyprus*, a near neighbour unto *Anatolia*; but no member of it: the reſt of that *Dioceſe*, and thoſe Seas, as 11. *Poſſidium*. 12. *Arceſine*, 13. *Bugiales*. 14. *Minyas*. 15. *Sirne*. 16. *Ceſi*, and the reſt, yielding but little matter of obſervation beſides their names.

OF

OF CYPRUS.

CYPRVS is ſituate in the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended at length from Eaſt to Weſt two hundred miles; in breadth, ſixty; the whole compaſs reckoned five hundred and fifty. Diſtant about ſixty miles from the rocky ſhores of *Cilicia*, in *Aſia Minor*, and about an hundred from the main land of *Syria*: towards which it ſhooteth it ſelf out with a long ſharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main land, from which rent in former time by a violent *Earthquake*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; and worn unto this narrowneſs by the continual working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath oftner changed his name, or at leaſt had more names on the By than this. Called at firſt *Cethin*, or *Cethinia*, from *Ketim* the ſon of *Javan*, who firſt planted in it. 2. *Ceraſtis*, from the abundance of Promontories, thruſting like *horns* into the Sea (as the word intimates in the *Greek*. 3 *Amathuſia*. 4 *Paphia*. 5 *Salamina*; theſe three laſt from the principal Towns in thoſe parts hereof. 6 *Macaria*, from the fruitfulneſs and felicities of it. Beſides theſe it hath in ſome times had theſe By-names alſo, as 7 *Aſperia*, from the roughneſs of the ſoil. 8 *Collinia*, from the frequency of Hills and Mountains. 9 *Æroſa*, from the Mines of Braſs, which abound therein. 10 And finally, all thoſe forgotten or laid by, it ſetled at the laſt in the name of *Cyprus*. So called, ſay ſome, from the abundance of *Cypreſs Trees*, with which moſt plentifully provided; as others, from *Cryptos* a *Greek* word, ſignifying *concealed*, or hidden, becauſe ſometimes concealed by the Surges from the eye of Saylors; but moſt improbably ſaid by others to take name from *Cyrus*, who founded here the City of *Aphrodiſia*; whereas indeed ſix hundred years before *Cyrus* his birth we find it by this name in *Homer*. More rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, ἀπὸ Κύπρȣ τῆς θυγατρὸς Κινύρȣ, from *Cyprus* daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the *Trojan* wars: though in my mind the firſt comes neareſt to the truth, the *Cypreſs* Tree, not onely growing here in ſo great abundance, but being antiently peculiar in a manner to this Iſland onely.

But on what ground ſoever it was called *Cyprus*, certain I am it had the name of *Ceraſtis* upon very good reaſon: no Iſland or Region that I know of (for the bigneſs of it) thruſting out ſo many ſharp Promontories. For on the Weſt, there is 1. the Promontory called *Acamas*, now *Capo S. Piſano*. 2 *Drepanum*, now *Trapano* and *Melechia*. 3 *Zephyrum*, or *Caput Calidoni*, now *Punta Malota*. On the South, 4 *Phrurium*, now *Capo Bianco*. 5 *Curias*, or *Capo della Gatte*. 6 *Gades*, or *Capo Chiti*. 7 *Throni*, or *Capo Pila*. On the Eaſt, 8 *Pendalium*, now *Capo di Griego*. 9 *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andrea*. And on the North, 10 *Cronyon*, now *Capo Cornochiette*; beſides ſome other of leſs note. Some of the Poets give another reaſon of this name, as that *Venus* offended with the people of *Amathus* for ſacrificing their gueſts, ſhould turn them into *horned* Cattel, *Vnde etiam nomen traxere* Ceraſtæ, as it is in *Ovid*. But that meerly fabulous; ſomewhat of kin unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*, and the *Kentiſh Long-tails*. Yet ſo far we may joyn with *Ovid*, that the Iſland was not onely called *Ceraſtis*, but that the people were alſo called *Ceraſtæ*, of which there wants not proof from ſome other Authors; with which we need not trouble our ſelves, that name being altogether worn out of uſe, and no other but that of *Cyprus* given it in common ſpeech. Nor is it a matter of more ſtrangeneſs, that *Cyprus* ſhould be called ſo by the *Grecians*, from its abundance of *Cypreſs* Trees, antiently and originally peculiar to this Iſland, as before was noted; than that the ſame *Grecians* ſhould give unto the neighbouring Iſland the name of *Rhodes*, from its great plenty of *Roſes*: or to the neighbouring Continent the name of *Phœnicia*, from its great plenty of *Palm-trees*; the words ſo ſignifying in that Language.

It is ſituate under the fourth *Climate*, ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is no more than 14 hours and a half; and for that cauſe the air in Summer time exceeding hot and ſweltry: the ſoil moiſtned with ſome few brooks, meriting rather the name of torrents, than Rivers, which being generated for the moſt part by rain water, are not ſeldom dried up by the heat of the Sun; inſomuch that in the reign of *Conſtantine* the *Great*; that Iſland was for 36 years together almoſt utterly forſaken, no rain falling all that time. Theſe inconveniences notwithſtanding, it is ſtored with ſuch plenty of all things, that without the help of any forein Nation, it is of it ſelf able to build a tall ſhip from the keel to the top-ſail, and ſo put it to ſea furniſhed with all things needful for a voyage, or a Sea-fight. It alſo aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wool, Turpentine, and Allom, Verdegreece, all ſorts of Metals, ſtore of Salt, Grogarins, and other commodities, whereupon this Iſland was once called *Macaria* (*i.e.* happy.) By reaſon of which wonderful affluence of all neceſſaries, and that variety of pleaſures (even to ſenſuality) which the place afforded, it was antiently conſecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence called *Venus Cypria*, and *Dea Cypri* : *Sic te diva potens Cypri*, in *Horace*; and in *Ovid*.

Feſta dies Veneris, *toto celeberrima* Cypro,
Venerat; *ipſa ſuis aderat* Venus *aurea feſtis*.

Venus feaſts hallowed through all *Cyprus* came,
And *Venus* with her preſence grac'd the ſame.

The people hereof are warlike, ſtrong and nimble; of great civility, and hoſpitality to their neighbours, and to ſtrangers of all Nations, *Jews* only excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jews* inhabiting *Egypt* and the adjoyning Countreys, drew themſelves together, and choſe one *Alexander* for their Captain : under whoſe conduct they entred into this Iſland, and laid it deſolate, killing in it 240000 perſons of all ſexes and ages; not without much bloodſhed vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Lucius* the Emperours Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no *Jew* to enter into the Iſland; but come he hither voluntarily or by force of tempeſt, they lay hands on him, and lead him preſently to execution. A hated Nation, that neither innocence can protect, or equity reprive from that cruel cuſtom.

The women in former time much noted for their Unchaſtity, to which their worſhipping of *Venus* was no ſmall incentive; it being the cuſtom of theſe women, to proſtitute themſelves on the ſhores, to the paſſers by : their very *Virgins* not refuſing to be handſelled there, before their marriage; either to raiſe their portions by the ſale of their bodies, or elſe to pleaſe their Goddeſs with ſuch beaſtly ſacrifices. And if *Volaterranus* may be credited (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on Queen *Carlotte*, when ſhe came to *Rome*, to ſeek for aid againſt *James* the baſtard, who had diſpoſſeſſed her of this Kingdom, ſhewed themſelves little chaſter than thoſe antient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the men, *Æſclepiades*, the Author of the verſe ſo named; 2. *Xenophon*, an old poet; 3. *Zeno*, and 4. *Apollonius*, the Philoſophers; 5. *Epiphanius*, the learned Biſhop of *Salamis*; and 6. above all Saint *Barnabas*, the dear aſſociate of St. *Paul*, being all natives of this Countrey.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt here planted by Saint *Paul* and *Barnabas*, as the very firſt fruits of their Apoſtleſhip, after they had been ſeparated to the work of the Miniſtry by the Impoſition of hands; as appeareth *Acts*. 13. v. 4. &c. The Church hereof, by reaſon of the Antiquity of it, and the honour of this joint foundation, ſo privileged in the beſt ages of Chriſtianity, that the Archbiſhop of this Iſland had all Prerogatives of a *Primate*; conſecrated by his own Suffragan Biſhops, and acting in all ſacred and Eccleſiaſtical affairs, without dependence on, or relation to, the See of *Antioch*; whereunto all other Biſhops in the Eaſtern *Dioceſe*, were either ſubordinate or ſubject. Which privilege being queſtioned in the Council of *Epheſus*, was by the Fathers there aſſembled, on a full hearing of the cauſe, approved and ratified; confirmed by the civil ſanction of the Emperour *Juſtinian*, whoſe wife was a native of this Iſland, and by the name of *Jus Cyprium*, the privilege or exemption of the *Cyprian* Church, tranſmitted to the Prelates of ſucceeding times. Which notwithſtanding, they continued in good correſpondence with the Eaſtern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the rites and form thereof; till the *Venetians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latine* Service into ſome of their Churches, and appointed Biſhop and other Miniſters of the *Papal* party, for execution of the ſame. And for the Government of theſe Churches, they had at firſt fourteen Biſhops and Arch-biſhops, to gratifie Queen *Alice* (who had a mind to enrich her friends with ſome of the ſpoils of them) reduced by *Innocent* the third to four only, that is to ſay, the Archbiſhoprick of *Nicoſia*, the Biſhopricks of *Famaguſta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each See furniſhed with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latines*, of which the Biſhops for the *Latines* have all the Lands, and annual *Revenues* which of right belong to thoſe Cathedrals; the *Greek* Biſhops living upon ſtipends, levied on the Prieſts and Deacons of their juriſdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was ſaid, here are very few; and of thoſe few, the principal are called *Lycus*, and *Lapithus*; the firſt running towards the South, the laſt towards the North; but not ſeldom ſo dried up, that they leave their empty Channels without any water. Both alſo have their Source from the hill *Olympus* (the higheſt Mountain of the Iſland) garniſhed with trees and fruits of all ſorts; in compaſs about eighteen Leagues (which make four and fifty *Italian* miles) and at the end of every League a Monaſtery of *Greek Monks*, or *Caloires*, and a fountain of freſh water for the uſe of the houſe. Here are alſo two other little Rivers, the one called 3. *Bodeus*, the other 4. *Tolius*; but of the ſame nature as the former.

By *Ptolemy*, or in his time, divided into four parts or Provinces, but ſince it fell into the hands of the *Luſignan* family, diſtributed into twelve Counties or *Cantrades*; moſt of them called by the names of their principal Towns. *viz.* 1. *Nicoſia*. 2. *Famaguſta*. 3. *Paphia*. 4. *Audima*. 5. *Limiſſa*. 6. *Maſorum*. 7. *Salines*. 8. *Meſſoria*. 9. *Cruſocus*. 10. *Pentalia*. 11. *Carpaſſus*. 12. *Cerines*. The whole containing, beſides theſe Cities and great Towns, 805 Villages, or thereabouts, which

Paphia, &c.

they called *Caſales*; whereof the one half antiently belonged unto the *Crown*; the other half divided betwixt the *Lay-Nobility*, and the *Eccleſiaſticks*; the Patrimony of theſe laſt being computed at 80000 Crowns of annual rents, beſides caſualities, and the vails of the Altar. But becauſe the traceing out of theſe *Cantrades* will be very difficult (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the diviſion made hereof in the time of *Ptolemy*, into the Provinces of 1 *Paphia*, 2 *Amathuſia*, 3 *Lapethia*, and 4 *Salamine*.

1. *PAPHIA*, ſo called of *Paphos* the chief Town hereof, taketh up the Weſt part of the Iſland: in which the Towns of moſt importance and obſervation, are 1 *Paphos*, on the Sea-ſide, by *Pliny* called *Pala-Paphos*, or old *Paphus*; built as ſome ſay, by *Ciniras*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and ſo named in memory of *Paphus* his father: but as others ſay, by *Paphos*, the ſon of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phœnicia*, and *Cyprus*; to which laſt, *Ovid* doth agree, who ſpeaketh of *Pygmalion's* ſtatue, turned into a woman by the power of *Venus* (or rather of his beautifull wife, fabled, for the ſurpaſſing whiteneſs of her skin, to be made of Ivory) he adds this of her,

> *Illa* Paphum *genuit de quo tenet inſula nomen.*

> She *Paphus* bare, from whom the name
> Of *Paphia*, to the Iſland came.

Here *Venus* had her ſo much celebrated Temple, hence the name of *Paphia*; and hear her *Votaries* of both ſexes in their natural nakedneſs, did perform her ſacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearful *Earthquake*: or as the *Legends* have it, by the prayers of Saint *Barnabas*; the ruines of it ſtill remaining. 2 *Paphos Nova*, or *New Paphos*, now called *Baffo*, five miles from the old, built by *Agapenor*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Law-giver, after the ſack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent tempeſt: conſecrate to the ſame impure Goddeſs, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; thoſe which here offered, not thinking they had done her ſufficient ſervice, unleſs they went in a ſolemn manner of proceſſion, and paid their vowes alſo at the other. 3 *Arſinoe*, ſituate betwixt both; built by, or called ſo in honour of, *Arſinoe* daughter of *Ptolemy*, the firſt King of *Egypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that houſe. 4 *Depranum*, now called *Trepano*, under the Promontory ſo named, a well-traded Port, but miſerably defaced by the *Turks*, when they took this Iſland: 5 *Connelia*, one of the richeſt of the Iſland, by reaſon of the plenty of Sugar, and Cotton-Wool, growing thereabouts. Built in the place of 6 *Cithera*, dedicated to *Venus* alſo, but differing from the Iſland of that name in the *Ægean Sea*, rather in pronunciation than the purity of her oblations: the laſt ſyllable ſave one, in the name of that Iſland, being ſhort in verſe, but this of *Cyprus* ſounding long, as in this of *Virgil*.

> *Eſt* Amathus, *eſt cella mihi* Paphos, *atque* Cithera.

> *Cithera*, *Amathus* divine,
> And lofty *Paphos*, are all mine.

2. On the South-Eaſt of *Paphia* lyeth the Province or *Diſtrict* of *AMATHUSIA*, taking up the South-parts of the Iſland which look towards *Egypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Amathus*, giving name unto this diviſion, then of moſt note, and much frequented for the annual ſacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples: the ruines of both hardly now diſcerned. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Amaſis*, King of *Egypt*, when he conquered this Iſland; but as others ſay, by ſome of the *Anathites*, deſcended from *Anath* one of the ſons of *Canaan*. 2. *Cetium*, or *Citium*, (for I find it called by both names) the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, hence called Κιτιεὺς, or *Citienſis*; and memorable for the death of *Cimon* the *Athenian* General. A Town wherein the memory of *Cittim*, the ſon of *Javan*, is moſt apparently preſerved. 3 *Epiſcopio*, one of the chief of all the Iſland, built on the place, or out of the decay, of 4 *Curias*, not far from the Promontory of the ſame name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollo* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollo Hylates*; his Altars in thoſe times held ſo ſacred, that whoſoever preſumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea from the Promontory or rocks adjoyning. 5 *Salines*, or *Salinæ*, ſo called from the rich Saltpits; one of the chief Towns of this part, and giving name to one of thoſe twelve *Cantrades*, into which the whole is now divided.

3. *LAPETHIA*, the third part of the Iſland, lyeth on the North thereof, oppoſite to *Cilicia* in *Aſia Minor*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Nicoſia*, the Regal City of the Kings, the See of the Arch-Biſhop, and the chief of the Iſland: antiently called *Ledronſis*, and *Lenteinis*; but thoſe names long ago laid by. Situate in the middeſt of the Iſle, and in a plain and champain Country, abundantly fertile and delightful: Environed with a fair wall, ſo exactly round as if it had been drawn with a pair of compaſſes, in circuit about five miles, and both for ſituation, numbers of people, and magnificent buildings of all ſorts both publick and private, compared by ſome to the moſt beautiful City of *Florence*: Fortified by the *Venetians*, when in their poſſeſſion, with new walls, deep ditches and eleven ſtrong Bulwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern fortification. But notwithſtanding all theſe works, and the help of 250 piece of Canon planted on the walls, and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the ſecond or third aſſault, *Septemb.* 9. *Anno* 1570. So evident a truth it is, that Fortifications are more ſtrengthened by the

Salamine. gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2. *Cerines* ſituate near the Sea, ſtrong by art and nature, and furniſhed with all things neceſſary to endnre a ſiege; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alfonſus Palacius* the unwarlike Governour, terrified with the great ſlaughter made at the ſack of *Nicoſia*, before the enemy came near it. At the firſt called *Ceurania* and ſaid to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* King, when he firſt ſubdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Iſland to that Crown; bleſt with a more temperate and wholſom air, than any other in the Countrey. 3. *Tremitus*, the birth-place of *Spiridion*, a Biſhop of the *Primitive* times, renowned for miracles; many of which reported by *Sozomen, lib.* 1. *cap.* 10. and other *Eccleſiaſtical* writers. Wholly decayed, the ruin of it much contributing to the riſe of *Nicoſia*. 5 *Lapithus* (by *Pliny* called *Lapeto*) on the banks of a ſmall Riveret of that name. Of ſo great note in former times, that it gave to this Diviſion the name of *Lapethia*. In this part ſtandeth the hill *Olympus* (now the Mountain of the *holy Croſs*) deſcribed before.

4. SALAMINE, the fourth and laſt Province of this Iſland, taketh up the whole Eaſt-parts hereof: So named from 1. *Salamis*, once the chief City of the Iſle, and the See of the *Primate*; or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Deſtroyed by the *Jews* in the reign of *Trajan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, ſacked, and razed unto the ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclius*, it never could again recover: the *Metropolitan* See after that ſubverſion, being removed to *Nicoſia*. It was ſometimes, and by ſome writers, called *Conſtantia* alſo; but that name could give it no more perpetuity than the other of *Salamis*. Memorable whilſt it ſtood for the founder of it, being *Teucer* the ſon of *Telamon* King of *Salamis*, an Iſle of the *Ægean* Sea; baniſhed his Countrey by his Father, and ſetled in this Iſland by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phœnicia*: as alſo for a famous Temple ſacred unto *Jupiter*, herce called *Salaminius*. Out of the ruins hereof aroſe 2 *Famaguſta*, now the prime City of theſe parts; built as is ſaid by *Coſta*, the Father of Saint *Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the Eaſt end of the Iſland, in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one called the *Cape* of Saint *Andrew*, and the other *Capo di Griego*, or the head of *Græcia*. In compaſs not above two miles, in form four-ſquare, but that the ſide towards the Eaſt ſtretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen foot in breadth, an old ſtone wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (oppoſite to *Tripolis*, a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South-Eaſt, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea cometh in at a narrow paſſage not above forty paces broad, but after opening wider and wider, maketh a convenient Harbour, rather ſafe than large, aſſured both by the difficult entranee, and a chain croſſed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified; the works of it of the old faſhion, generally decayed except one Bulwark, which was built according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Palyſadoes*, Curtains, Caſemates, and all other Additaments: moſt gallantly defended by *Bragadine* the noble General, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who ſpent no leſs than 118000 great ſhot upon it; and at laſt yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3 *Aphrodiſium*, ſo named of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4 *Arſinoe*, built alſo by one of the *Arſinoes* Queens of *Egypt* (there being two others of this name, and the ſame foundation,) now called *Leſcare*, and antiently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*. 5 *Tamaſſus* of good note in the time of *Strabo*, for rich Mines of Braſs, as afterwards for abundance of *Verdegreece* and *Vitriol*, found plentifully in the fields adjoyning. 6 *Idalium*, neer a Mount of the ſame name, ſo called by accident. For *Chalcenor* the founder of it being told by *Oracle*, that he ſhould ſeat himſelf, and build a City, where he firſt ſaw the riſing Sun: one of his followers, ſeeing the Sun begin to riſe, crying out ἴδον ἅλιον, that is to ſay, *behold the Sun*. Which *Omen* taken by *Chalcenor*, he here built this City. But whether this were ſo or not (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple, neighboured by the *Idalian Groves*, ſo memorized and chanted by the antient Poets. So ſtrong an influence had luſt and ſenſuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Iſland was defiled with thoſe brutiſh Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that impure deity: though to ſay truth, it was no marvail if having made their *Belly their God*, they made in the next place, their *glory their ſhame*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Iſland were the poſterity of *Cittim* the ſon of *Javan*, and grand ſon of *Japhet*: who having ſeen his brother *Tarſhiſh* ſetled in *Cilicia*, (where his memory is ſtill preſerved in the City of *Tarſus*) planted himſelf and his retinue in this oppoſite Iſland. The City of *Cetium*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Citium*, as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the antienteſt of the Iſland; which with the Authority of *Joſephus*, and other of the antient writers, put it out of queſtion. But being this Iſland was too narrow to contain his numbers, and willing to ſeek further off for a larger dwelling, he left here ſo many of his followers as might ſerve in time to plant the Countrey; and with the reſt paſſed into *Macedon*, where we have already ſpoken of him. Made tributary firſt to *Amaſis* King of *Egypt*, from which diſtant about three or four days ſailing. Subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a near neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring people, made themſelves Maſters of the Sea-coaſts and maritime places. *Cinyras* the Father of *Myrrha*; (by whom both Father and Grand-father to *Adonis*) is ſaid to have been K. of both. The like affirm'd of *Belus* one of his ſucceſſors, who is ſaid to have been the founder of the City of *Citium*, named ſo (if not rather repaired th an new built by him,) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the firſt Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Teucer* the ſon of *Telamon*, baniſhed his Countrey, accompanied with many followers from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*, was ſetled in the Eaſt parts hereof; where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his firſt Plantation. Yet ſo, that the *Phœnicians* kept their former hold: it being evident in

Story that *Elulaus* one of the ſucceſſors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*) and a Co-temporary with *Salmanaſſer* King of *Aſſyria*, paſſed over into *Cyprus* with a puiſſant Navy to reduce the *Citiaans* to obedience, who had then rebelled. The Iſland at firſt coming of *Teucer* hither ſo infinitely over-grown with woods, that the people were not able to till the land. Inſomuch, that notwithſtanding the great waſte made of them, both in building ſhips, and caſting metals, a law was made that every one which would ſhould fell them, and take as much ground in ſeveralty for his own inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for tillage. Encouraged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phœnicians*, *Egyptians*, ſo beſtirred themſelves, that at laſt they brought it unto *Champagn*: parcelled out in ſucceeding times amongſt nine Kings, for ſo many *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did ſubdue all thoſe petit Princes, yet he took not from them their Eſtates or titles: contented with the conqueſt of it, and an annual tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, we find *Evagoras*, and *Nicocles*, to whom *Iſocrates* inſcribed two of his Orations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, *Citium* it ſelf (ſuch was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not ſubject unto any other. The King whereof to indear himſelf with the Conquerour, gave to him a ſword, μαχαίραν θαυμαστὴν, ſaith *Plutarch*, an admirable ſword, both for colour and lightneſs, which he after uſed in all his fights. And after the death of *Alexander*; his great Commanders cantoning his eſtates amongſt them, the Princes and people of this Iſland were in great diſtractions, not knowing to whom they might ſubmit for their beſt advantage. But *Ptolemy*, who had ſeized on *Egypt* for his part of the ſpoil, being ſtrong in ſhipping, ſetled them by a perſonal viſit; and fortifiing ſome of the beſt pieces in it, aſſured the Countrey to himſelf. To him and his poſterity it continued ſubject till the time of *Ptolemy Auletes*, the ninth King of this line in our Accompt, who gave it for a portion to one of his Brethren: in whoſe time, the *Romans*, without any colour or pretence of quarrel, but only to enrich themſelves with the ſpoil of the Iſland, ſent *Portius Cato* to ſubdue it. And he at firſt aſſayed to get it with the Kings Conſent, offering him, in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Prieſt-hood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainful Office, and of high eſteem among that people. But when *Ptolemy* for fear of a worſe miſchief had made away himſelf by poiſon, *Cato* without more ceremony takes poſſeſſion of it. And becauſe *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath ſo ſignificantly expreſſed this buſineſs, and withall deſcribed ſo punctually the eſtate of this Iſland; we will adde to this diſcourſe from him, though ſomewhat be repeated which was ſaid before. *Cyprum inſulam procul à Continente diſtantem, & portuoſam*, &c. “ The Iſle of *Cyprus*, far diſtant from the Continent, and “ well ſtored with *Harbours*, is famous, beſides many *Municipal* Towns, by two principal Cities, that “ is to ſay, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*, the one ſacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*: An Iſle ſo admi-“ rably fruitful, and with all things furniſhed, that without the help of any forein Nation, it is able “ of it ſelf to build and rig forth a ſhip, from the very keel unto the top-ſail, and trim it with all “ tackle neceſſary for a preſent voyage. Nor do I ſhame to ſay, that with greater Avarice than “ Juſtice, the *Romans* did invade this Iſland; King *Ptolemy*, our old Confederate and Ally, being un-“ worthily proſcribed, for no other reaſon, but that our Treaſury was bare, our *Exchequer* Empty. And “ he no ſooner had prevented this diſhonour by a quick and voluntary death, making away himſelf by “ poiſon, but the Iſland was forthwith made tributary, and the riches of it, *velut hoſtiles exuviæ claſſi im-“ poſita & in urbem adducta per Catonem*, as the ſpoils of ſome conquered enemy, were brought on Ship-“ board, and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far, and to this purpoſe, he.

I know there is another cauſe alleged for the ſending of *Cato* on this Errand, *viz.* that *Clodins* who was then *Tribune*, and ſped the *Edict*, might have opportunity by his abſence to revenge himſelf on *Cicero*. and ſome others of the oppoſite faction: but the main buſineſs was the money, as before was ſaid; the prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thouſand Crowns of coin now current. Which money and movables, amounting unto ſo vaſt a ſum, he fearing to loſe by Sea, divided it into many ſmall portions, which he put into ſeveral boxes, *viz.* in every box two *Talents* and fifty *Drachms*. At the end of every box he faſtned a long rope with a piece of cork; by which, floating above the water, the money, if by Shipwrack loſt, might be eſpied again: which was not much unlike the *buoyes* which Mariners faſten by long ropes to their Anchors, that they may be the ſooner found. We ſee by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Countrey was very weak: *Avarius magis quam juſtius ſumus aſſecuti*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* alſo. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the diviſion of the Empire aſſigned to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperours: under whom it ſuffered, as all other parts of the Empire did, by the violent invaſion of the *Saracens*, who ſpoiled and ranſacked it in the time of *Conſtans* the ſecond, deſtroying then the City of *Salamis* or *Conſtantia*. But that tempeſt being overblown, they returned again unto that Empire, governed by a ſucceſſion of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus*, uſurping the *Greek* Empire, compelled *Iſaacius Comnenns*, one of the blood Royal, to ſhift for himſelf: who ſeiſing on this Iſland made himſelf King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191. when *Richard* the firſt of *England*, being denyed the Common courteſie of taking in freſh water, and ſeeing his Souldiers abuſed by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King priſoner, but ſubdued the whole Iſland. And as *Paterculus* tells us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamaſdes* King of *Armenia*, *Catenis, ſed ne quid honori deeſſet, aureis vinxit*; So did our *Richard* keep a *decorum* towards this Priſoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but ſilver. King *Richard* having thus poſſeſſed himſelf of this Countrey, ſold it for ready money, (which for the managing of his intended wars againſt the *Turks*, he moſt needed) unto the Templers: and taking it, upon I know not what diſcontent, again from them, he beſtowed it on *Guy* of *Luſignan*, the titulary and miſerable King of *Hieruſalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the title of that loſt and ſhipwracked kingdom: with which title he and ſome of his ſucceſſors for a time were honoured.

In the poſterity of this *Guy*, this Iſland continued free and abſolute, till the year one thouſand four hundred twenty three; when *Melechella* (or *Melechnaſer*) Sultan of *Egypt*, invaded this Countrey, took *John* King hereof Priſoner, ranſomed him for 150000 Sultanies, reſtored him to his kingdom, and impoſed on him and his Succeſſors, the yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was father to another *John*, whoſe two children were *Carlotte* a legitimate daughter, and *James*, a baſtard ſon. *James*, after the death of his father, diſpoſſeſſed his ſiſter *Carlotte* of the Crown, by the conſent and help of the *Sultan* of *Egypt*; and the better to ſtrengthen himſelf againſt all oppoſition, he took to wife *Catherine Cornari*, daughter by adoption to the *Venetian Senate*: whom at his death he made his heir, if the child ſhe went withall (having then none by her) ſhould die without iſſue, as it did, not long after it was born; and ſhe ſeeing the factious Nobility too head-ſtrong to be bridled by a female authority, like a good child deſigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian State*, *Anno* 1437. Theſe defended it againſt all claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Ægyptian*, and after to the *Turkiſh Sultans* the 40000 Crowns before mentioned) till the year 1570. when *Muſtapha*, General of the *Turks*, wreſted it from the *Venetians*, to the uſe of his maſter *Selimus* the ſecond, who pretended title to it as Lord of *Egypt*. The Governour of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loſs was Signior *Bragadino*, who as long as hope of ſuccours, means of reſiſtance, or poſſibility of prevailing continued, with incredible valour made good the Town of *Famaguſta*, in whoſe defence conſiſted the welfare of the whole Iſland. At laſt he yielded it on honourable conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh* General inviting to his Tent the principal men of worth in the Town, cauſed them all to be murdered: and as for *Bragadino* himſelf, he commanded his ears to be cut off, his body to be flead alive, and his skin ſtuffed with ſtraw, to be hanged at the main yard of his Gally. The chief of the priſoners and ſpoils were in two tall ſhips, and one Gallion, ſent unto *Selimus*; but he never ſaw them. For a Noble *Cyprian* Lady, deſtinated to the luſt of the *Grand Seigneur*, fired certain barrels of powder; by the violence whereof both the veſſels and the booty in them, were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroick act; inferiour to none of the *Roman Dames*, ſo much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman*, than a *Chriſtian* Lady.

Thus having ſummed up the affairs of this Iſland, from the firſt plantation of it, till this laſt ſad conqueſt, I will lay down the ſucceſſion of the *Cyprian* Kings of the Noble *Luſignan* Family, in this enſuing Catalogue of

THE KINGS of CYPRVS.

1 *Guy* of *Luſignan*, the titulary King of *Hieruſalem*, eſtated in the kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the firſt of *England*.
2 *Almericus*, the brother of *Guy*.
3 *Hugh*, the ſon of *Almericus*.
4 *Henry*, the ſon of *Hugh*.
5 *Hugh* II. ſon of *Henry*.
6 *Hugh* III. ſon of *Hugh* the ſecond.
7 *John*, ſon of *Hugh* the third.
8 *Henry* II. the brother of *John*.
9 *Hugh* IV. ſon of *Guido*, the younger brother of *John*, and *Henry* the ſecond.
10 *Peter*, the ſon of *Hugh* the fourth.
11 *Petrinus*, the ſon of *Peter*.
12 *James*, younger brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
13 *Janus*, the ſon of *James*, made Tributary by *Melechnaſer*, to the Kingdom of *Egypt*.
14 *John* II. the ſon of *Janus*.
15 *Carlotte*, ſole daughter and heir of *John* the ſecond, firſt married to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* of *Savoy*; outed of her eſtate and kingdom, by
16 *James* II. the baſtard ſon of *John* the ſecond, who by ſtrong hand ſeized upon it, and by the help of the *Venetian* kept it during his life.
17 *James* III. born after the deceaſe of his father, whom he ſurvived not very long. After whoſe death, being the laſt of this Family, the *Venetians* poſſeſſed themſelves of *Cyprus*, which they invaded with no better title, than the *Romans* had done in former times; not likely to be bleſt with a long fruition, of that which they had ſo unjuſtly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here it is to be obſerved, that theſe *Cyprian* Kings reteining the title of *Hieruſalem* (towards which they ſometimes caſt an eye) beſtowed upon their greateſt Subjects, and deſerving Servitors, both titles of Honour and Offices of State, belonging antiently to that Kingdom. So that we find amongſt them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cæſarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabor*; a Seneſchal of *Hieruſalem*, a Conſtable, Marſhal, and High Chamberlain of that kingdom alſo. With better reaſon, though no doubt with as little profit, as the Pope gives Biſhopricks and Archbiſhopricks in *Greece*, or *Egypt*. But thoſe titular Offices are now quite extinct, though poſſibly ſome of the titles of honour which were took from thence, may be ſtill remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famaguſta*, and *Nicoſia*, on which the whole Iſland did depend, all other Cities of it, and the whole by conſequence, were forced to ſubmit to the *Turkiſh* Tyranny. The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal quality, either moſt cruelly maſſacred in the ſack of thoſe Towns, or baniſhed for ever their native Countrey, as men whoſe living there might poſſibly endanger their new conqueſt. But the Countrey people, Artificers, and perſons of inferiour rank, permitted to enjoy both their lives and livelihoods; together with their ſeveral and reſpective Religions, in the ſame manner as before; paying ſuch ordinary taxes as were laid upon them. And ſo this goodly Iſland came into the hands of the T[illegible], who have hitherto enjoyed the poſſeſſion of it: For notwithſtanding that the *Venetians* in the year next following, with the help of the *Pope* and *King* of *Spain*, gave the *Turks* that great and memorable overthrow, at the famous battel of *Lepanto*; yet did they nothing in perſuit of ſo great a Victory for the recovery of this Iſland; and indeed they could not, the confederates returning home, and diſſolving their Fleet, as ſoon as they had ſecured their own eſtates by the overthrow of the *Turkiſh* Navie. And though the *Venetians*, to put the beſt face they could upon ſo great a loſs, ſo highly pleaſed themſelves with the following Victory, that they put the ſame in ballance with the loſs of *Cyprus*; yet an ingenious *Turk*, to let them ſee the folly of ſo vain a boaſting, compared the loſing of *Cyprus*, to the loſs of an Army, which could not without a miracle be recovered; and the loſs at *Lepanto*, to the ſhaving of ones Beard, which grows the thicker for the cutting, as indeed it proved: For the next year the *Turks* armed out another Navie, no leſs formidable than the other had been before; braving therewith the whole Chriſtian Forces, either then disbanded, or not re-aſſembled.

What the Revenues of it were to the King hereof, I cannot certainly determine. The profits of Salt onely, as that of the Cuſtom-houſe, yielded yearly to the Seigneury of *Venice*, when it was in their hands, a million of Crowns. For the Cuſtoms and Profits of the Salt were farmed for 500000 Crowns *per annum*, which being turned into the chief *Cyprian* Commodities, were counted double worth that Money, when unladed at *Venice*. To which, if we ſhould add the Lands of the former Kings, and other ways of raiſing Money on the Subject, I cannot ſee, but the *Intrado* of the Crown muſt needs amount conſtantly to a million and an half, if it were not more.

The Arms hereof were quarterly, firſt *Argent*, a Croſs *Potent* between four Croſſes *Or*; ſecondly, Barr-wiſe of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Azure*, ſupporting a Lion Paſſant *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; thirdly, a Lion *Gules*; and fourthly, *Argent*, a Lion *Gules*; as *Bara* a *French* Herald hath given the *Blazon*.

On the Eaſt of *Cyprus*, towards *Syria*, lie four ſmall Iſlands, which *Ptolemy* calleth by the name of *Clides*, not farr from the Promontory of that name; both Promontory and Iſlands now called S. *Andrew's*; and towards the Weſt another little knot of Iſlets, which he calls *Carpaſia*; but nothing memorable in either; So I paſs them over.

There are in CYPRVS,
Arch-Biſhops 2. Biſhops 6.
And ſo much for CYPRVS.

OF

OF SYRIA.

SYRIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Cilicia*, aud *Armenia Minor*, from the laſt parted by Mount *Taurus*: and on the South, with *Paleſtine*, and ſome parts of *Arabia*. The length hereof from Mount *Taurus* to the edge of *Arabia*, is ſaid to be five hundred twenty and five miles; the breadth from the *Mediterranean*, to the River *Euphrates*, computed at four hundred and ſeventy; drawing ſomewhat near unto a ſquare.

In the Scriptures it is called *Aram*, and the people *Aramites*, becauſe firſt peopled and poſſeſſed by *Aram* the Son of *Sem*; though *Hamath*, *Arphad*, and *Sidon*, the Sons of *Canaan*, did alſo put in for a ſhare; and yet not called thus by the Scriptures onely, but by ſome of the *Heathen* Writers alſo. For *Strabo* doth not onely acknowledg, that the *Syrians* in his time were called Ἀράμοι, but citeth *Poſſidonius*, a more antient Writer, for proof, that the Ἀρίμοι, which *Homer* ſpeaketh of, muſt be thoſe *Syrians*: further averring, that the *Syrians* called themſelves by the name of *Aramai*, or plainly *Aramites*. But by the *Greeks*, they are called *Syrians*, or *Surians*, from the City *Tyre*, called antiently by the name *Sur*, or *Tſur* (of which more hereafter:) either becauſe the *Tyrians*, or *Tſurians*, had in thoſe times the command of the Sea-coaſts of this Countrey; or elſe that *Tyre* or *Tſur*, being the chief Mart-Town of all thoſe parts, was the place where they traded with theſe *Aramites*. Conform to which antient Appellations, the City of *Tyre* is again called *Sur*, and this Countrey *Soria*. Others conceive, that being when the *Greeks* firſt knew it, a part of the *Aſſyrian* Empire, the ſeat of which was then at *Ninive*, it was called *Syria* for *Aſſyria*: as afterwards *Aſſyria* had the name of *Syria* (of which more anon) when the ſeat of that great Empire was removed to *Antioch*. And this may very well be ſo, conſidering that by the like decurtation we have turned *Hiſpania* into *Spain*, as the *Greeks* before us did into *Spania*, by which name it occurrs, *Rom.* 15. 28.

But here we are to underſtand, that though the *Syria* of the *Romans*, as it was a Member of that Empire, was limited within the bounds before laid down, yet antiently as well the *Aram* of the *Hebrews*, as the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of greater latitude: of which, becauſe it may be uſeful to the underſtanding of *Holy Scriptures*, and of ſome *Claſſick* Authors alſo, I ſhall enlarge a little further. For *Aram*, taken in the largeſt acception of it, extendeth from the Coaſt of *Cilicia*, North, to *Idumæa* towards the South, from the River *Tigris* in the Eaſt, to the *Mediterranean* Sea upon the Weſt; conteining beſides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans* (in which *Paleſtine* alſo was included) *Arabia* the *Deſart*, and *Petræa*, *Chaldæa*, *Babylonia*, and all thoſe Provinces to which the name *Aram* is either prefixed or ſubjoyned in the Book of God; as *Aram-Naharaiim*, *Aram-Sobah*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maachah*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-beth-Rehob*, all mentioned in the Holy Scriptures. Some do extend it further yet, and do not onely bring *Armenia* within the Latitude of this name, which they derive from *Aramminni*, whoſe neighbourhood to *Syria*, may give ſome colour to the errour; but even thoſe People of *Cappadocia* bordering on the *Euxine* Sea, the Inhabitants of which were antiently called *Luco-Syri*, or *White-Syrians*. But this not having any good warrant or authority wherewithall to back it, ſhall not come under the compaſs of this conſideration. But for the reſt, I find it generally agreed upon amongſt the learned, that *Aram-Naharaiim*, is the ſame with the whole Countrey of *Meſopotamia*, ſo named by the *Jews* and *Grecians*, becauſe it is environed with the two famous Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*; which *Priſtian* by a meer *Latine* name, would have to be called *Medamna* (but *Inter-Amna* by his leave would expreſs it better). And as for *Padan-Aram*, wherein *Laban* dwelt, which is called *Sede-Aram* by the Prophet *Hoſea*, Chap. 12 *v.* 13. that is a part onely of the other: the whole Countrey of *Aram-Naharaiim*, or *Meſopotamia*, being divided into two parts; whereof the more fruitful lying Northward, is called *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whoſe Inhabitants *Xenophon* gives the name of *Syrians*; the barren and more deſart lying towards the South, which by the ſame Author is called *Arabia*. For *Aram-Maachah*, mentioned, 1 *Chron.* 19. 6. It is conceived to be that part of

Syria, which was after named *Comagena*, whereof *Samoſata* was the *Metropolis*, or Mother City: And as for *Aram-Sobah*, of which, and of *Adadezar* the King thereof, there is no frequent mention in the Books of the *Kings* and *Chronicles*, it was the Province lying on the North-eaſt of *Damaſcus*, and ſo extending to the banks of the River *Euphrates*, and is the ſame with that which afterwards was called *Palmirena*, from the City of *Palmyra*. South-weſt of which, amongſt the petty Kingdoms on the North of *Geſſur*, in the Land of *Paleſtine*, lay the Kingdom of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, confederate with *Ammon* in the Warr which they had with *David*, 2 *Sam*. 10. 6. Nor did the *Greeks* leſs extend the name of *Syria*, than the *Hebrews* did the name of *Aram*, if they ſtretched it not further. Certain I am, that *Strabo* comprehendeth the *Aſſyrians* in the name of *Syria*, where he affirmeth, that the *Medes* over-ruled all *Aſia*, καταλύσασι τὸν τὴν Σύρων ἀρχὴν, the Empire of the *Syrians* (he meaneth the *Aſſyrians*) being overthrown. And in *Herodotus* it is ſaid, that thoſe whom the *Barbarians* call *Aſſyrians*, ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἐκαλέοντο Σύριοι, were called *Syrians* by the *Greeks*. And to that purpoſe *Juſtine* alſo *Imperium* Aſſyrii, *qui poſtea* Syri *dicti ſunt*, *Annos* 1300 *tenuere*. But theſe all writ after the time that *Seleucns* and his Race had the poſſeſſion of the Eaſtern Empire: who living for the moſt part in *Syria*, from whence they might more eaſily furniſh themſelves with Souldiers out of *Greece* (as they did moſt commonly for all their military expeditions) cauſed all the other parts of their large dominions to be called, in tract of time, by the name of *Syria*. But on the other ſide, as the *Syria* of the *Romans* extended not ſo farr to the Eaſt and South, as the *Aram* of the *Hebrews* did: ſo it contained ſome other Regions, that is to ſay, thoſe of *Phœnicia* and *Paleſtine*, which were not comprehended in the name of *Aram*; as being planted by a People of another Race, and of different fortunes, till brought together under the command of the *Babylonians*. In which regard we will treat ſeverally of the natures of the Soyl and people: their originals, government, and ſucceſſes, till we have brought them into one band: and then continue their affairs as one joint eſtate. But firſt we will ſurvey the antient and preſent fortunes of Chriſtianity, and other Religions herein embraced or tollerated, wherein the whole, according to the bounds and limits before laid down, is alike concerned.

And for Religions in this Countrey, here is choice enough; thoſe namely of the *Mahometan*, *Chriſtian*, *Pagan*, and one compounded out of all, which is that of the *Druſians*. The *Mahometan* imbraced by the generality of the people throughout the whole, and by all that be in any office or authority, is onely countenanced and approved, though all the reſt be tollerated. The *Pagan* entertained onely in the mountainous Countreys bordering on *Armenia*: inhabited by a people whom they call *Curdi*, or the *Curdenes*, ſuppoſed to be deſcended from the antient *Parthians*, as being very expert in Bows and Arrows, their moſt uſual Arms. A Race of people who are ſaid to worſhip alike, both God and the Devil; the one, that they may receive benefits from him; the other, that he may not hurt them. *Se alios deos colere ut proſint, alios ne noceant*, as *Lactantius* doth affirm of the antient *Grecians*. But their principal devotions are addreſſed to the Devil onely, and that upon good reaſons, as themſelves conceive; For God, they ſay, is a good man, and will do no body harm, but the Devil is a miſchievous fellow, and muſt be pleaſed with ſacrifices, that he do not hurt them. And for the *Druſians*, they are conceived to be the remainder of thoſe *Frankes* (by which name the *Turks* call all Weſtern *Chriſtians*) who driven unto the Mountains (when they loſt the Soveraignty and poſſeſſion of the Holy Land) and defending themſelves by the advantage of the place, could never be wholly rooted out by the *Turks*, contented at the length, to afford them both peace and liberty of their Religion. But they have ſo forgot the Principles of that Religion, that they retein nothing of it but *Baptiſm*; and not that generally neither; accompting it lawful moſt unlawfully to marry their own Daughters, Siſters, or Mothers: and yet conform unto the *Turks* in their habit onely, wearing the white *Turbant*, as the *Turks* do; but abhorring Circumciſion, and indulging to themſelves the liberty of Wine, by law forbidden to the *Turks*. A people otherwiſe very warr-like, ſtout, and reſolute; with great, both conſtancy and courage, reſiſting hitherto the attempts of the *Turkiſh* Sultans. The Countrey they poſſeſs environed with the Confines of *Joppa* about *Cæſarea Paleſtina*, betwixt the Rivers of *Jordan* and *Orontes*, extending Eaſtwards as farr as the Plains of *Damaſcus*: ſo that here is no part of *Syria*, except *Comagena*, unto which their habitations reach not.

But for the *Chriſtian* Faith, it was firſt preached here by ſome of the diſperſed Brethren (which fled from the rage of Perſecution) in *Phœnice*, and the City of *Antiochia*; amongſt whom S. *Peter*, *as he paſſed through all quarters*, *Acts* 9. 31. is by the Fathers ſaid to have been the chief. The Church more fully planted in it by *Barnabas* firſt, after by *Paul* and *Barnabas* jointly. Who ſpending there a whole year together, enlarged the borders of the Church, and gained much people, as is ſaid, *Acts* 11. v. 19. *&c.* in ſo much, that *here the Diſciples were firſt called Chriſtians*, verſe 26. Not called ſo accidentally, as a thing of chance, but on a ſerious conſultation had amongſt themſelves, and a devout invocation on the name of God, to direct them in it. The word χρηματίσαι, uſed in the original, importeth ſomewhat of *Oracular* and *Divine* direction. And certainly, it ſtands with reaſon that it ſhould be ſo. For if upon the giving of a name to *John Baptiſt*, there was not onely a conſultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father called to adviſe about it; and we uſe not to admit the pooreſt child of the Pariſh into the Congregation of Chriſt's Church by the door of *Baptiſm*, but by the joint invocation of the name of God for his bleſſing on it: with how much more regard of *Ceremony* and *Solemnity*, muſt we conceive that the whole body of Chriſt's people were *baptized* into the name of *Chriſtians*? And there is ſome proof of it too, beſides *probability* and *conjectures*. For *Suidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus*, an old Coſmographer, do expreſly ſay, that in the days of *Claudius Cæſar*, ten years after the Aſcenſion of our Lord and Saviour, *Euodins* received Epiſcopal conſecration, and was made Patriarch of *Antioch* the *Great* in *Syria*, ſucceeding immediately to S. *Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the *Diſciples* were firſt called *Chriſtians*, τοῦ αὐτοῦ Ἐπισκόπου Εὐοδίου προσομιλήσαντος αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐπιθήσαντος αὐτοῖς τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, *&c. i. e. Euodius* their Biſhop, calling them to a *Solemn Aſſembly*, and impoſing this new name upon them, whereas before they were called *Nazarites*, and *Galilæans*; A People ſo hated by the *Heathen*, that they ceaſed not to ſlander them from the firſt beginning. *For as concerning this Sect, we know that it is every where ſpoken againſt*, ſaid the *Jews* of *Rome* to the Apoſtle, *Acts* 28. 22. *Tacitus*, a *Roman*, but a *Gentile*, goes further with them, calling them, *homines per flagitia inviſos, & noviſſima meritos exempla*; the calumny in his time being ſtrong and general, that at their private meeting, they devoured Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Siſters. Which defamations notwithſtanding, they grew in few years to ſo great numbers, that they were a terror to their enemies; though grievouſly afflicted, tortured, and put to ſeveral kinds of death, under the ten *Famous Perſecutions*, raiſed againſt them by *Nero*, *Anno* 67. 2. *Domitian*, *Anno* 96. 3. *Trajanus*, *Anno* 110. 4. *Marcus Antonius*, *Anno* 167. 5. *Severus*, *Anno* 195. 6. *Maximinus*, *Anno* 237. 7. *Decius*, *Anno* 250. 8. *Valerianus*, *Anno* 259. 9. *Aurelianus*, *Anno* 278. 10 by *Diocleſianus*, *Anno* 293. All, but this laſt eſpecially, ſo extremely raging, that (as S. *Hierom* writeth in one of his Epiſtles) there were martyred 5000 for each day in the year, except the firſt of *January*, on which they uſed not to ſhed bloud. But *ſanguis martyrum ſemen Eccleſiæ*. This little grain of Muſtard-ſeed, ſowed by God's own hand, and watered by the bloud of ſo many holy men, grew ſo great a Tree, that the branches of it ſpread themſelves over all the World: and got ſuch footing, even in the *Roman* Army it ſelf (men commonly not of the ſtricteſt kind of *Religion*) that when *Julian* the *Apoſtat* had vomited out his ſoul, with *Viciſti tandem Galilæe*, they elected *Jovinian*, though a *Chriſtian*, for his Succeſſor, with this acclamation, *Chriſtiani omnes ſumus*, We are alſo *Chriſtians*. But ſee how the *Baptizing* of God's people by the name of *Chriſtians* in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my Way. I return again, both to the place, and to the Author; In whoſe evidence, beſides what doth concern the impoſition of the name of *Chriſtian* upon the body of the faithful, we have a teſtimony for S. *Peter*'s being Biſhop of *Antioch*, the firſt Biſhop hereof (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at leaſt) as it is ſaid poſitively by *Euſebius* in his *Chronologie*, S. *Hierom* in his *Catalogue* of *Eccleſiaſtical* Writers; S. *Chryſoſtom* in his *Homily, de tranſlatione Ignatii*, *Thodoret Dialog.* 1. S. *Gregory*. *Epiſt.* lib. 6. cap. 37. and before any of them by *Origen*, in his ſixth *Homily* on S. *Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in reſpect that *Antioch* was accompted always the principal City of the Eaſt-parts of the *Roman Empire* (the *Prefect* of the Eaſt for the moſt part reſiding in it) the Biſhop hereof in the firſt Ages of *Chriſtianity* had juriſdiction over all the Churches in the Eaſt, as farr as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Conſtantine* the *Great*, the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, with thoſe of *Meſopotamia* and *Oſroena* were after added; containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or that whole *Dioceſe* of the Orient. And though by the ſubſtracting of the Churches of *Paleſtine*, and the decay of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts by the conqueſts of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the juriſdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much leſſened: yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flouriſhed in the year 1130. recited the names of 13. *Archiepiſcopal*, 21 *Metropolitical*, and 127 *Epiſcopal* Sees, yielding obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which, that number is much diminiſhed, *Mahometiſm* more and more increaſing, and *Chriſtianity* divided into Sects and Factions: in ſo much as of three ſorts of *Chriſtians* living in theſe Countreys, *viz.* the *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and the *Melchites*, onely the *Melchites* are ſubordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And firſt for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper Members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greateſt body of *Chriſtians* in all the Eaſt; they are ſo named in way of ſcorn, by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite Schiſmatick*, ſeparating without juſt cauſe from their communion. The name derived from *Malchi*, ſignifying in the *Syriack* Language a King, or Emperour: becauſe adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and Deciſions of preceding Councils, ratified by authority of the Emperour *Leo*, by whom ſubſcription was required to the Acts thereof; and were in that reſpect (as we uſe to ſay) of the King's Religion. Conform in points of Doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate Divine Service as ſolemnly on the *Saturday*, as upon the *Sunday*: ſubject to their true and original Patriarch, who, ſince the deſtruction of *Antioch*, doth reſide in *Damaſcus*; and on no tearms acknowledging the authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name either from *Marona*, one of the principal Villages where they firſt inhabited; or from the Monaſtery of Saint *Maron*, mentioned in the firſt Act of the Council of *Conſtantinople* holden under *Mennas*, the Monks of which called *Maronites*, were the head of their Sect. Some points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Chriſtians*; other in which they differ onely from the Church of *Rome*. Of the firſt ſort, 1. That the *Holy Ghoſt* proceedeth from the Father onely, without relation to the Son. 2. That the Souls of men were created all together at the firſt beginning. 3. That Male Children are not to be baptized together, but at ſeveral times, by one and one. 4. That *Hereticks* returning to the Church, are to be re-baptized. 5. That the Child is made unclean by the touch of the Mother, till her *Purification*, and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be paſt, which after the birth of a *Male-child* muſt be fourty days, of a *Female* eighty. 6. That the *Euchariſt* is to be given to Children preſently after *Baptiſm*. 7. That the fourth marriage is utterly unlawful. 8. That the Father may diſſolve the Marriage of his Son or Daughter. 9. That young men are not to be ordained *Prieſts* or *Deacons*, except they be married. 10. That nothing ſtrangled, or of bloud, may be eaten by *Chriſtians*. 11. That Women in their Monethly courſes are not to be admitted to the *Euchariſt*, or to come into the Church. 12. And finally (which was indeed their firſt diſcrimination from the *Orthodox Chriſtians*) that there was but one will and action in *Chriſt*; the Fautors of which Opinion had the name of *Monothelites*. Of the laſt kind, 1. That the *Sacrament* of the Lords Supper was to be adminiſtred in *both kinds*, 2. and in leavened Bread; 3. that Bread to be *broken* to the Communicants (and not each Man to have his Wafer to himſelf) according to the firſt Inſtitution. 4. Not *reſerving* that Sacrament, 5. nor *carrying* any part of the conſecrated Elements to ſick perſons in danger of death. 6. That *Marriage* is nothing inferiour to the ſingle life; 7. That no man entreth the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgment; 8. That the *Saturday*, or old *Sabbath*, is not to be faſted; 9. Nor the Sacrament upon days of faſting to be adminiſtred till the Evening. They withdrew themſelves from the See of *Antioch*, and ſet up a Patriarch of their own, many Ages ſince (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schiſm, the honourable Title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Succeſſor of that Apoſtle in the See thereof. Diſperſed about the Spurrs and Branches of Mount *Libanus*, where they have many Townſhips; and ſcattered Villages, of which four are reported to retein in their common ſpeech the true antient *Syriak*: that is to ſay, 1. *Eden*, a ſmall Village, but a Biſhop's See. by the *Turks* called *Æchera*. 2. *Hatchteth*. 3. *Sherrie*. 4. *Boloſa*, or *Blouſa*, little Superiour to the reſt in bigneſs or beauty, but made the ſeat of their Patriarch, when he comes amougſt them. At ſuch time as the Weſtern Chriſtians were poſſeſſed of theſe parts, they ſubmitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulſion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever ſince depended. His reſidence for the moſt part at *Tripolis*, a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to viſit his Churches, and take an accompt of his Suffragan Biſhops (who are nine in number) then at *Blouſa*, as is ſaid before. Won to the Papacy again by *John Baptiſt* a Jeſuit, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, who ſent them a Catechiſm from *Rome*, printed in the *Arabian* Language (which is generally ſpoken by them) for their inſtruction in the Rudiments of that Religion: yet ſo that their Patriarch ſtill reteins his former power, and the Prieſts ſtill officiate by the old Liturgies of thoſe Churches, in the *Syriack* Tongue. So that this reconciliation, upon the matter, is but a matter of complement on the one ſide, and oſtentation on the other; without any increaſe of power or patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though diſperſed in many places of this Countrey; yet ſince they are more entirely ſettled in *Meſopotamia*, where their Patriarch hath alſo his abode or reſidence, we ſhall there ſpeak of them.

The Language here vulgarly ſpoken, is the *Arabick* Tongue, continued here ever ſince the ſubjugation of theſe Countreys by the *Saracens*. But antiently they ſpake the *Syrian* and *Phœnician* Languages. Of which, the firſt (for of the other we ſhall ſpeak when we come to *Phœnicia*) was the very ſame with the *Chaldæan* (as the Learned *Brerewood* hath obſerved) either originally ſo, or elſe received by them when firſt conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which reſpect the *Jews*, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the Language which they brought with them, the name of *Syriack*; being a compound of the *Hebrew* and *Chaldæan* Tongues: *Chaldæan* for a great part of it, as to the ſubſtance of the words; but *Hebrew*, as to the notation of Points, Conjugations, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original Speech. And of this more hereafter alſo, when we come to *Palæſtine*. But whatſoever their Language was in former time, it is now ſo over-topped by the *Arabick*, that it is ſpoken in ſome Villages of the *Marorites* only in all theſe Countreys; the *Arabick* being generally uſed in all the reſt, as was ſaid before.

Principal Rivers of theſe parts, are, 1. *Chorſaus*, called *Chiſon* by the *Hebrews*, which hath its fountain in *Paleſtine*, but his fall in *Phœnicia*, not farr from Mount *Carmel*. 2. *Orontes*, now called *Saldino*, and by ſome Writers, *Jordan* the leſs, ariſeth out of the Hills called *Pieria*, not farr from Mount *Libanus*; and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about *Apamia*, and paſſing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not farr from it. It was firſt called *Tiphon*, and took this name from one *Orontes*, who built the firſt Bridge over it, as we find in *Strabo*. 3. *Eleutherus*, which riſeth out of ſome part of *Libanus*, and glideth with a ſpeedy courſe through a ſtrangely-intricate Channel, into the *Mediterranean Sea*: guilty of the death of the Emperor *Frederick Barbaraſſa*, who falling from his Horſe as he perſued the *Infidels*, and oppreſſed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lyeth buried at *Tyre*. It is now called *Caſmer*. 4. *Senigas*, by ſome ſaid to be called *Marſoas* alſo, which riſing in the mountainous parts of *Comagena*, and paſſing by the City of *Aleppo*, falleth into *Euphrates*.. 5. *Euphrates*, the moſt famous River of the Eaſt; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1. *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phœnicia*, we ſhall there ſpeak of it. 2. *Pieria*, out of which the River *Orontes* hath its firſt original. 3. *Caſius*, not farr from *Antioch*, ſaid to be four miles high perpendicularly. 4. *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of *Cedars* growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solomon* for the Holy Temple. Beſides which it affordeth ſuch ſtore of *Frankincenſe*, that ſame derived the name from λιβανος, ſignifying Frankincenſe in the *Greek*: and ſo replenished with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees, that the Husbandmen uſed to ſing (as *Gallen* telleth us) that *God rained Honey*; and yearly filled their Pots and Veſſels with the ſweets thereof. This the moſt famous and greateſt Hill of all theſe parts, extending in length 150 miles, that is to ſay, from *Sidon*, a City of *Phœnicia*, to *Smyrna*, one of the Cities of *Cœle-Syria*: and taking 700 miles in compaſs. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* Chriſtians, who, to keep their dwelling to themſelves without the intermixture of *Mahometans*, do yearly pay to the *Great Turk* ſeventeen *Sultanies* a man, for every one above twelve years of Age:

each *Sultanie* being reckoned at ſeven ſhillings and ſix pence of our money. And yet thoſe *Maronites*, though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the ſmalleſt *Sect*, for numbers, in all the Eaſt, not eſtimated to exceed twelve thouſand houſholds, by reaſon of the indiſpoſition of this Mountain, in moſt places unfit for habitation. For beſides the craggineſs and ſteepneſs of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inacceſſible, the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with ſnow, not melted in ſo hot a Climate at the neareſt approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this name; the word *Leban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phœnician* language, ſignifying *White*, or *Whiteneſs*; even as from the like *Whiteneſs* of ſnow, the higheſt part of the *Pynaan* hills had the name of *Canus*; and that perpetual Ridge of Mountains, which parts *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. 5 *Anti-Libanus*, oppoſite to the former, and from that ſo called; a rich, but little Valley only being interpoſed, out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring or Fountain, the hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it ſelf. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or excurſion of it, called *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives ſome hint, in which both paſs for one, by the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Countrey was antiently divided into theſe ſix parts, *viz.* 1 *Phœnicia*, 2 *Paleſtine*, 3 *Syria* ſpecially ſo called, 4 *Comagena*, 5 *Palmyrene*, and 6 *Cœle-Syria*, or *Syria Cava*. But Paleſtine, coming under a more diſtinct conſideration, we ſhall now ſpeak only of the reſt.

1. PHOENICIA.

PHOENICIA is bounded on the Eaſt and South, with *Paleſtine*; on the North, with *Syria* properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called by the *Grecians*, from the abundance of *Palm-trees* therein growing, the word φοίνικη in that language ſignifying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etymons* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was antiently the ſpecial *Cogniſance* or Enſign of this Countrey; as the *Olive branch* and *Cony* of *Spain*, the *Elephant* of *Africk*, the *Camel* of *Arabia*, and the *Crocodile* of *Egypt*, being peculiar to thoſe Countries. And in an old Coyn of the Emperour *Veſpaſian*'s. ſtamped for a memorial of his conqueſt of *Judæa*, the Impreſs is a woman ſitting in a ſad and Melancholick poſture, at the back of *Palm-trees*, with theſe two words, *Judæa Capta*, inſcribed thereon: in which, no queſtion may be made, but that the deſolate woman ſignifyed the Land of *Judæa*, and the Palm *Phœnicia*, *Phœnicia* being ſeated immediatly on the North, at the back of *Jewry*.

But it was thus firſt called by the *Grecians* only, the *Latines* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themſelves, and the people of *Iſrael* their next neighbours, they are called *Canaanites*, or the poſterity of *Canaan*, five of whoſe ſons, *viz. Zidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chemathi*, were planted here: the other ſix inhabiting more towards the South and Eaſt, in the Land of *Paleſtine*. For further evidence hereof we may add theſe reaſons: firſt, that the ſame woman which in Saint *Matthews* Goſpel, *chap.* 15. *verſe* 22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by Saint *Mark*, *chap.* 7: *verſe* 26. called a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, where mention is made in the book of *Joſhuah*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; the *Septuagint* (who very well underſtood the Hiſtory and Language of their Countrey) call them βασιλεῖς τῆς φοινίκης, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, the *Pœni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all diſpute a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Original*, would anſwer that they were *Channai*; meaning (as Saint *Auguſtine* that Countrey-man doth expound their words) that they were Originally *Canaanites*, of the ſtock of *Canaan*. And laſtly, from the language of it, which antiently was the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanitiſh*, or the Language of *Canaan*; ſpoken both here and in *Paleſtine* alſo, before that Countrey was poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Jacob*: as appears plainly in thoſe names, by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were called, when and before the *Iſraelites* came firſt to dwell amongſt them, which are meerly *Hebrew*. And ſo much, as unto the language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* alſo, who in the entrance of his Book inſcribed *Canaan*, declares what profit may enſue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew* tongue; *cujus* Phœnicia *lingua dialectus fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* language was a *dialect* onely.

The Countrey of it ſelf not great, extended in a good length, from the further ſide of Mount *Carmel*, where it joyns with *Paleſtine*; to the River of *Volanus* on the North, by which parted from *Syria*: but withall ſo narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-coaſt, and therefore rightly called *terrarum anguſtiſſima* by a modern writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increaſe of trade (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the natural commodities which the land afforded: yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furniſhed with Oyl, Wheat, the beſt ſort of *Balm*, and moſt excellent Honey; the lower part thereof being deſigned for the ſeat of *Aſher*, of whom *Moſes* propheſied, *Dent.* 33. *v.* 24. *that he ſhould dip his foot in Oyl*. So that the Countrey generally, was well conditioned, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautiful Cities, than ſuch a ſpan of earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianns*, *Acclivis monti Libano* Phœnicia *Regio*, *plena gratiarum & venuſtatis*, *urbibus decorata magnis & pulchris*, *&c.* *i. e.* Falling from Mount *Libanus*, lieth the Countrey of *Phœnicia*, full of all graces and elegancies, adorned with great and beautiful Cities; of which the moſt renowned for the fertility of their ſoil, and the fame of their achievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The people antiently, by reaſon of their *Maritime* ſituation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almoſt all the Ports of the then known World, and ſending more Colonies abroad upon forein

Plan-

Phœnicia.

Plantations than any Nations in the earth. An active and ingenuous people, ſaid to have been the firſt Navigators, the firſt builders of Ships, the firſt inventors of Letters, (of which hereafter more on ſome other occaſion) and the firſt Authors of Arithmetick, the firſt that brought Aſtronomy to an Art or Method, and the firſt makers of glaſſe. Defamed in holy Scripture for their groſs Idolatries, by which they laid a ſtumbling block at the feet of the *Iſraelites*: *Aſtaroth* (or *Aſturte*) the Goddeſs of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or ſome other, I diſpute not here) being ſo highly prized amongſt them, that *Solomon* himſelf, when he fell from God, made this one of his Idols. Once yearly, as *Euſebius* telleth us, they ſacrificed ſome of their ſons to *Saturn*, whom in their language they called *Moloch*. And in the inmoſt retreats of *Libanus* had a Temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of moſt filthy luſts, intemperately uſing the natural Sex, and moſt unnaturally abuſing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the Chriſtian faith prevail ſo far, as to extinguiſh theſe ungodly rites, till *Conſtantine* finally deſtroyed both the Temples and Idols, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the ſhame and infamy. St. *Auſtin* addeth, that they did proſtitute their daughters unto *Venus*, before they married them: and it is moſt likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cypriots* being ſo near neighbours, and ſubject for a time to the ſame Princes alſo, could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in ſo narrow a Region, but what are common unto others, and ſhall there be ſpoken of. Moſt proper unto this is the river of *Adonis*, (now called *Canis*,) ſo named moſt probably from *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, whoſe rites are here performed with as much ſolemnitie, as they be in *Cyprus*. His obſequies celebrated yearly in the moneth of *June* with great howlings and lamentations, *Lucian* fabling that the river uſually ſtreameth bloud upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the mountains of *Libanus*,) to give the better colour to their Superſtitions. But the truth is, that this redneſs of the water ariſeth onely from the winds, which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the ſtream a great quantity of *Minium*, or *red Earth*, from the ſides of thoſe hills, wherewith the waters are diſcoloured. Such uſe can *Satan* make of a natural accident, to blind the eyes and captivate the underſtandings of beſotted people.

Chief mountains of this Countrey are, 1. *Libanus*, ſpoken of before, which hath here its firſt advance or riſing. 2. *Carmel*, which *Ptolemy* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmoſt part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Paleſtine*. Waſhed on the North ſide with the brook *Chiſon*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea: ſteep of aſcent, and of indifferent latitude; abounding with ſeveral ſorts of Fruits, Olives and Vines in good plenty, and ſtored with herbs both medicinable and ſweet of ſmell. The retreat ſometimes of *Elias*, when he fled from *Jezabel*; whoſe habitation here, after his deceaſe, was converted to a *Jewiſh* Synagogue. To this place (being then in the poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Iſrael*) did that Prophet aſſemble the Prieſts of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous experiment confuted their idolatrous follies, cauſed them to be cut in pieces on the banks of the river *Chiſon* near adjoyning to it. Upon this viſible declaring of the power and preſence of the Almighty, the Gentiles grew perſwaded that Oracles were there given by God; by *Suetonius* called the God *Carmelus*. Where ſpeaking of *Veſpaſian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial Dignity, he addeth, *Apud Judæam* Carmeli Dei *oracula conſulentem ita confirmavere ſortes, &c.* that conſulting in *Judæa* with the Oracle of the God *Carmelus*, he was aſſured that whatſoever he undertook ſhould ſucceed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Friers Carmelites*, as Succeſſours unto the *Children of the Prophets* left here by *Eliah*, had their name from hence: the ruines of whoſe Monaſtery are ſtill to be ſeen, with a Temple dedicated to the Bleſſed Virgin; and under that a Cave or Chappel, ſaid to have been the lurking place of that holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of moſt importance in it. 1. *Ptolemais*, now nothing but a ruine of what it hath been, but formerly of great ſtrength and conſequence. Named *Ace* at the firſt, a refuge for the Perſian Kings in their wars againſt *Egypt*: enlarged, or rather new built, by *Ptolemy*, the firſt of that race, by whom called *Ptolemais*, which name ſtill continued; though *Claudius Cæſar* planting there a Roman Colony, would fain have had it called *Colonia Claudii*; after the conqueſt of it by the Saracens, in the time of *Omer* the great *Caliph*, it returned towards its firſt name, and was called *Acon*, or *Acre*; both names ſtill remaining in vulgar ſpeech, as that of *Ptolemais* amongſt Latine writers. Situate in the flouriſh of it on a flat or level, in form of a triangular ſhield; on two ſides neighboured by the Sea, which comes up cloſe to it; on the third looking towards the *Campaign*: environed with a double wall, to each wall a Ditch fortified on the outſide with Towers and Bulwarks; within the wals ſo ſtrongly houſed, as if the whole Town had been a conjunction of fortreſſes, and not ordained for private dwellings. In the midſt of the city was one tower of great ſtrength and beauty, which had ſometimes been the temple of *Belzebub*, and was therefore called the *Caſtle of Flies*: on the top whereof was maintained a perpetual light, like the *Pharos* of *Egypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to ſuch Mariners, as made towards this Port. Took from the Chriſtians by the Saracens in the time of *Omer*, and from them wreſted by the Turks with the reſt of *Syria*; it became Chriſtian again *An.* 1004. in the raign of *Baldwin* the firſt, brother of the famous *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, by the help of the *Genoeſe*; who for their pains had the third part of the city aſſigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the Turks, and from him taken again by the weſtern Chriſtians, under the conduct of *Philip* of *France*, and *Richard* the firſt of *England*, *An.* 1191. it continued in the poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, notably defended by the Hoſpitalers (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. when beſieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thouſand Turks, it was forced to yeeld, though loſt by inches: and the Turks fearing leſt the Chriſtians would again attempt it, razed it to the ground: demoliſhing the

Phœnicia. large walls and arches of it, which lie like maſſie rocks on their old foundations. Memorable in thoſe times for the brave ſervice here done by the Chriſtians of the Weſtern parts, of which none more renowned then thoſe of our *Richard* the firſt, and *Edward* the firſt. This latter here treacherouſly wounded by an Infidel, with a poiſoned knife, the venom whereof could by no means be aſſwaged, till his moſt vertuous wife (herein propoſing a moſt rare example of conjugal affection) ſucked it out with her mouth. And for the former, he became ſo terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their children began to cry, they would ſay, *Peace, King* Richard *is coming*: and when their horſes ſtarted, they would ſpur them, ſaying, *What you Jades, do you think that King* Richard *is here?* By the *Mamalucks*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for habitation rather than defence: not peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have ſo many, but for the Haven adjoyning: which though a ſmall Bay, and of very ill anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Weſtern world, trading here for their Cotten Wool; with which the neighbouring Countrey is abundantly furniſhed. I have ſtaid the longer in this place, by reaſon of the great fame and importance of it, as being the laſt hold which the Chriſtians had of all their conqueſts; with the loſs whereof they laid aſide all thoughts of thoſe *holy wars*.

2, *Tyre*, ſeated in a rocky Iland, about ſeventy paces from the main land; well built, and circular of form, as well by Art as Nature impregnably fortified. A Colony of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Eſay, ch.* 23. *v.* 12. called the *Daughter of Sidon*: but by them built upon an high hill; the ruines whereof by the name of *Palætyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining ſtill. Removed unto the Ilands by *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named Sor, or *Tzor*, from the rocky ſituation of it (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the Greeks to *Tyrus*, and from them taken by the Latines, though known to them alſo by the name of *Sarra* (the *Tyrrian purple* being by *Virgil*, and ſome others of the antient Poets, called *Sarrarum Oſtrum*:) and now at laſt returned to its firſt and originall name, vulgarly at this day called *Sur*. A City in elder times of great trade and wealth: the Prophet *Eſay, ch.* 27. *v.* 8. calling the Merchants hereof *Princes*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of thoſe times both for learning and manufactures, eſpecially for the dying of *Purple*, firſt here invented; and that as *Julius Pollux* ſaith, by a very accident: the dog of *Hercules*, (or if not his, ſome dog or other) whoſe lips by eating of the fiſh called *Conchilis*, or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reaſon of the wealth and pleaſures, her deſtruction was fore-ſignified by the holy Prophets: accompliſhed in Gods own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*; who with great induſtry and toil joyned it to the Continent. But his works being demolliſhed by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrians*, it was after ſeventy years again re-edified; and having flouriſhed after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the great was again demolliſhed; to whoſe indefatigable perſeverance nothing was impoſſible. For having filled the channel with the ſtones and rubbiſh of old *Tyre*, and rammed them in with huge beams brought from *Libanus*, he made a paſſage for his Army: and having once approached the walls, ſo over-topped them with towers, and frames of timber, that at laſt he made himſelf Maſter of it, putting to the ſword all ſuch as reſiſted, and cauſing two thouſand of them to be hanged in cold bloud, all along the ſhore for a terrour to others: This rendition of the Town was divined by the South-ſayers, who followed the Camp of *Alexander*, upon a dream which he had not long before. For dreaming that he had diſported himſelf with *Satyres*; the Diviners onely making of one word two, found that Σατυρὸς was no more than Σὰ τύρος, that is, *Tua Tyrus*; and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again, both her riches and beauties, ſhe became a confederate of the Romans, in the growth of their fortunes; endued by them with the priviledges of their City, for her great fidelity. Made in the beſt times of Chriſtianity, the Metropolitan See for the Province of *Phœnicia*, the Biſhop hereof having under him fourteen ſuffragan Biſhops. Subjected to the Saracens in the year ſix hundred thirty and ſix, and having groaned under that yoak for the ſpace of four hundred eighty and eight years, was at laſt regained by *Guarimund* Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*, in the reign of the ſecond *Baldwin*, the *Venetians* contributing their aſſiſtance to it, *Anno* 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladine*; but finally brought under the Turkiſh thraldom, *Anno* 1289. as it ſtill continueth. Now nothing but an heap of ruines, but the very ruines of it of ſo fair a proſpect, as ſtriketh both pity and amazement into the beholders; ſhewing them an exemplary pattern of our humane frailty. Subject at the preſent to the *Emir*, or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the beſt of the *Levant*; but of no great trading. 3. *Sarepta*, by the *Hebrews* called *Sarphath*, ſituate on the Sea-coaſt betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*. Memorable in holy Writ for the mirecle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raiſing the poor Widows Son: in Heathen Writers, for the pureſt *Wines*, little inferiour unto thoſe of *Falernum* in *Italy*, or *Chios* in *Greece*, Of which thus the Poet:

> *Vina mihi non ſunt* Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,
> *Quæque* Sareptano *palmite miſſa bibas.*
> In Engliſh thus,
> I have no *Chian*, or *Falernian* wines,
> Nor thoſe of *Gaza's*, or *Sarepta's* vines.

4. **Sidon**, the ancienteſt City of all *Phœnicia*, and the moſt Northern of all thoſe which were aſſigned for the portion of the ſons of *Aſer*: beyond which the countrey of *Phœnicia*, having been hitherto to nothing but a bare Sea-coſt, beginneth to open towards the Eaſt in a fine rich valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once cloſed up from the reſt of *Syria* with a very

Phœnicia.

ſtrong wall, long ſince demoliſhed. It was called ſo from *Zidon*, one of the ſons of *Canaan*, who firſt planted here; not (as ſome ſay) from *Sida*, the daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof: this City being mentioned in the Book of *Joſuah*, when no ſuch *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightfull ſoyl, defended with the Sea on the one ſide, and the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it and *Libanus*; from whence deſcended thoſe many Springs, with which they watered and enriched their moſt pleaſant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are ſaid to be the firſt makers of *Chriſtal Glaſs*; the materials of the work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made fuſible in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zerobabel*, had their principal work-men, both for Stone and Timber, in their ſeveral buildings of the Temple. The people hereof ſo flouriſhing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zecharia*, chap. 9. v. 2. calleth them the *wiſe Sidonians*. A City which at ſeveral times was both the Mother and Daughter of *Tyre*; the Mother of it in the times of *Heatheniſm*, *Tyre* being a Colony of this People; and the Daughter of it when inſtructed in the Chriſtian faith, acknowledging the Church of *Tyre* for its Mother-Church. The City in thoſe times very ſtrong both by *Art* and *Nature*, having on the North-ſide a Fort or *Citadel*, mounted on an inacceſſible Rock, and invironed on all ſides with the Sea; which, when it was brought under the command of the *Weſtern Chriſtians*, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and another on the South-ſide of the Port, which the *Templars* guarded. Won by the *Turks* with the reſt of this Countrey from the *Chriſtians*, and ruined by thoſe often interchanges of fortune: it only ſheweth now ſome marks of the antient greatneſs; the preſent *Sidon* ſtanding ſomewhat Weſt of the old, and having little worth a particular deſcription, in reſpect of what it was in her antient glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or ſerving at the beſt for Gallies; with a poor *Block-houſe*, rather for ſhew than ſervice: the walls of no greater ſtrength, and as little beauty, and the buildings ordinary; but that the *Moſque*, the *Bannia* of Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are ſomowhat fairer than the reſt: yet gives a title at this time to the *Emir* of *Sidon*, one of the greateſt Princes of all this Countrey, of whom more hereafter. 5 *Berytus*, originally called *Geris*, from *Gergeſhi* the fift ſon of *Canaan*, took this new name from *Berith*, a *Phœnician* Idol herein worſhipped; and now called *Barutti*. Deſtroyed by *Tryphon* in the wars of the *Syrians* againſt the *Jews*, it was re-edified by the *Romans*, by whom made a Colony, and honoured with the name of *Julia Felix*; *Auguſtus* giving it the Priviledges of the City of *Rome*. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the *Jews*, much adorned and beautified; and of no mean eſteem in the time of the Chriſtians, when made an Epiſcopal See under the *Metropolitan* of *Tyre*. Being a place of no great ſtrength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath ſped better than the reſt of theſe Cities (though ſtronger than this) retaining ſtill her being, though not all her beauties; well ſtored with merchandiſe, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitfull valley, which they call Saint *Georges*; in which there is a Caſtle, and in that an Oratory of the ſame name alſo. All ſacred to Saint *George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the *Dragon*, and thereby delivered a Kings daughter, but what Kings I know not, nor they neither. 6 *Biblis*, ſometimes the habitation of *Hevi*, the fourth ſon of *Canaan*, and then called *Hevaa*: afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, father and grandfather of *Adonis*, by his daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already ſpoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of ſuch eſteem in the Primitive times of Chriſtianity, that it was made a Biſhops See; deſolate and of no repute ſince it loſt that honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7 *Orthoſia*, called alſo *Antaradus*, becauſe oppoſite to *Aradus*, another old City of this tract; but in after ages called *Tortoſa*, and by that name well known in the Hiſtories of the Holy War, undertaken by the Weſtern Chriſtians. To whom it made ſuch ſtout and notable reſiſtance, that though beſieged on all ſides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, ſitting down before it;) yet after three months hard ſiege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themſelves with ſpoiling the adjoining Countrey.

8. *Tripolis*, ſeated in a rich and delightfull plain, more fruitfull than can be imagined: one of which fruits they called by the name of *Amazza Franchi*, i. e. *Kill-Frank*, becauſe the Weſtern Chriſtians, whom they call by the name of *French*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is ſaid to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis*, no leſs than 200000 Crowns. As for the Town, it ſtandeth about two miles of the ſea, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*; ſo called becauſe built by the joint purſes of 3. Cities, that is to ſay, *Tyrus*, *Sidon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, till made one of the Epiſcopal Sees, belonging to the Archb. of *Tyre* in the Primitive times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal Accompt by the time that the Weſtern Chriſtians warred in the holy Land: when conquered by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the 4. Quarters of their Empire; which were, *Hieruſalem* for *Paleſtine*; *Edeſſa* for *Comagena*, or *Meſopotamia*; Antioch for *Syria*, and this for *Phœnicia*. Committed at the firſt taking of it, to the cuſtody of *Raymound* Earl of *Tholouſe* in *France*: whoſe poſterity, whileſt it laſted, had from hence the title of Earls of *Tripoli*. A City, which, I know not by what good hap; hath ſped better than any of thoſe parts, retaining ſtill as much in ſtrength and beauty as ever it had; if not grown greater by the ruine of all the reſt. Situate two miles from the Sea, as before is ſaid, but not above half a mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the Weſt ſide of it; compaſſed with a wall, and fortified with ſeven Towers, of which the fourth is commonly called the Tower of *Love*, becauſe built by an *Italian* Merchant, who was found in bed with a *Turkiſh* woman; for which he had forfeited his life, if not thus redeemed. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring bank of ſand, which every day groweth greater and nearer to it; by which in time there is a Propheſie which ſaith it ſhall quite be choaked: On both ſides of it many ſtore-houſes for the Merchant to ſtow his goods in, and ſhops to ſell them; the way from thence unto the City, having on both ſides very pleaſant

Phœnicia. Gardens, more curiouſly kept, than uſually amongſt the *Turks*. The Town it ſelf ſtretched out in length from the South to North, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleaſant ſprings into the chief of their gardens: In which, and in thoſe towards the Haven, and on other ſides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great ſtore of Silk-Worms; ſelling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in Stuff or Manufacture. Their buildings generally low, and the ſtreets but narrow, except that leading towards *Aleppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook, at the Eaſt-ſide of the City are built two Bridges; and on the South-ſide a ſtrong Caſtle mounted on a hill, built by the *French* when they had the cuſtody hereof; now garriſoned for the *Grand Seigneur* with 200 *Janizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Phœnicia*, honoured with the reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the moſt part dwelling in this Town; and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandretta*, removed hither ſome forty years ago by the *Turks* appointment; that Haven lying unfenced and more open to Pyrates.

That the *Phœnicians* were deſcended of the ſons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being deſcendants of that ſtock, they were at the firſt governed like them, by the *Chiefs* of their families, whom they honoured (as moſt Nations did) with the title of Kings. But moſt of the *Canaanitiſh* Kings being overcome and ſlain by *Joſuah Agenor*, a ſtout and prudent man, one of thoſe many Kings which commanded in thoſe parts of the Countrey, ſeeing how impoſſible it was to reſiſt that enemy, borrowed ſome aid from *Egypt*, where he had his breeding, to make good the Sea-coaſts of his Countrey: In which the *Philiſtims*, who interpoſed upon thoſe coaſts betwixt him and *Egypt*, concurred alſo with him. By which aſſiſtance, and by the fortifying of *Zydon*, *Tyre*, and *Ace*, (or *Ptolemais*) which were all the Cities of this Countrey that were then in being; he did not only preſerve his own eſtate from the preſent danger, but left it ſo aſſured to the Kings ſucceeding; that neither *Solomon* nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Iſrael* durſt attempt upon them. To *Agenor* ſucceeded his ſon *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus*, his elder brother, going into *Greece* in ſearch of his ſiſter *Europa*, raviſhed by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his death) from whom, as ſome conceive, this Countrey had the name of *Phœnicia*. And though I have declared my ſelf for another reaſon of this name, which I like much better; yet I ſhall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bochartus*; who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the ſons of *Anak*, (as if the old *Phœnicians* were ſuch Gyantly men) which muſt firſt be contracted in *Beanack*, then by the *Grecians* turned into *Theanac*, and at laſt into *Phœnix*. Such far-fetched and extorted Originations never pleaſe my Fancy, who had much rather hearken to the old received opinions touching the firſt Originals of names and nations, where there is not very pregnant reaſon to perſwade me otherwiſe; than ſtrain my ſelf ſo far for a new invention, or hearken unto thoſe that do. But for what cauſe ſoever they were named *Phœnicians*, certain it is, they were a very active and induſtrious people, trading in the moſt parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Bœotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain*; *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Carthage*, in *Africk*, were of their foundation. Nay, if we may believe *Bochartus*, ther was no Iland, or Sea-coaſt in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *Britiſh* Ocean, wherein they did not keep ſome factory, or erect ſome *Colony*. What Kings ſucceeded *Phœnix* in a conſtant and continued courſe, I can no where find. Moſt like it is, they were not under the command of any one Prince: and that beſides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were ſome others who called themſelves Kings of *Phœnicia* alſo, as well as they. Of which ſort were *Cyniras*, *Paphus*, and *Pygmalion*, who had their Regal ſeat at *Biblis*, and lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*, as did alſo *Belus*, who gave ſome part of that Iſle to *Teucer*, as is ſaid before. There is alſo found mention of one *Phaſis*, a *Phœnician* King, at ſuch time as the *Grecians* conquered *Troy*. After him none, till the ſubjugation of this Countrey by the *Babylonians*; *Tetramneſtus*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in ſucceeding times, being Tributaries to the *Perſian*, and no abſolute Princes. Whether it were that the *Phœnicians* were made ſubject to the Kings of *Tyre*, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preſerve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of *Tyre* came in ſhort time to be of very great repute, and to poſſeſs themſelves of the coaſts of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, and a great part of *Cyprus*; whereby and by the benefit of their trade and ſhipping, they grew rich, and powerfull and of great conſideration in affairs of the World. The names and hiſtory of whom I ſhall here ſubjoin, in this enſuing Catalogue of

A.M.

The KINGS of TYRE.

1 *Abibalus*, as *Joſephus*; *Abemalus*, as *Theophilus Antiochenus* calleth him, Co-temporary with *Samuel*; ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the Son of *Syriach* mentioneth, *Eccleſ.* 46. verſe 18.

2 *Saron*, the Son of *Abibalus*, whom *David*, as *Euſebius* ſaith, compelled to pay tribute; complained of by the Prophet, *Pſal.* 83. v. 7.

2931 3 *Hiram*, the Son of *Saron*, confederate with *David*, to whom he ſent Cedars, with Carpenters and Maſons, towards his building in *Jeruſalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebuſites*; as he did afterward to *Solomon* when he built the *Temple*. Much mentioned in the Books of *Kings*, and *Chronicles*. 53.

2955 4 *Baleaſtartus*, or *Bazorus*, ſucceeded *Hiram*. 7.

2962 5 *Abdaſtartus*, ſon of *Baleaſtartus*, ſlain by the four ſons of his own nurſe, having reigned 9. years, the eldeſt of which four, did for the ſpace of 12. years uſurp the kingdom.

2983 6 *Aſtartus*,

Syria Propria.

2983 6 *Aſtartus*, brother of *Abdaſtartus*, recovered the Kingdom to his houſe, out of the hands of the *Uſurpers*. 12.

2995 7 *Aſtorinus*, or *Athorinus*, as *Theophilus* calleth him, the younger brother of *Aſtartus*. 9.

3004 8 *Phelles*, the brother of theſe three Kings, and youngeſt Son of *Baleaſtartus*, reigned eight moneths onely.

9 *Ithobalus*, called *Ethbaal*, 1 *Kings* 16. 13. ſon of *Aſtorinus*, ſlew his Uncle *Phelles*, and ſo regained his Fathers Throne; before which he was the *High-Prieſt* of the Goddeſs *Aſtaroth*, or *Aſtarta*, (a dignity next to that of the King.) He was the Father of *Jezabel*, the wife of *Ahab*, ſo often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.

3037 10 *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, ſon of *Ethbaal*. 6.

3043 11 *Mettimus*, by ſome called *Matginus*, ſon of *Badezer*, and father of *Eliſa*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.

3052 12 *Pygmalion*, the ſon of *Mettimus*, who ſlew *Sicheus* the husband of his ſiſter *Eliſa*, to get his riches; but yet he was coſoned of his prey: his ſiſter *Eliſa*, accompanied with her brother *Barca* (the founder of the Noble *Barcine* family, of which *Annibal* was) and her ſiſter *Anna* flying into *Africk*; where ſhe built the renowned City of *Carthage*. 47. The names of his ſucceſſors we find not, till we come to

13 *Elulaus*, deſcended from a ſon of *Pygmalion*, who overthrow the Fleet of *Salmannaſſer*, the *Aſſyrian*, in the Port of *Tyre*.

14 *Ethobales*, or *Ethbaal* II. who vaunted himſelf to be as wiſe as *Daniel*, and to know all ſecrets, as ſaith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *chap*. 28. *v*. 1, 2. And yet not wiſe enough to preſerve his kingdom from *Nabuchadonoſor*; who after a ſiege of 13. years took the City of *Tyre*, and ſubjected it unto his *Empire*.

15 *Baal*, the ſon and ſucceſſor of *Ethbaal* the ſecond, but a *Tributary* to the *Babylonians*. After whoſe death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by ſuch titular Kings only as were ſent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sidon* did recover breath in the fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the unſetledneſs of the *Perſian*: yet being of the *Perſian* faction, and having dependence on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therefore depoſed *Strato* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrew the City of *Tyre*; in taking whereof he had ſpent more time, than in forcing all the Cities of *Aſia*.

After this time *Phœnicia*, being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the fortune of the whole, ſubject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the houſe of *Seleucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans*, ſubject to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, till the fatal year 636. when ſubdued by the *Saracens*. Succeſſively conquered by the *Turks*, *Chriſtians*, and after their expulſion by the *Turks* again, then by the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the reſt of *Syria*, by *Selimus* the firſt united to the *Turkiſh* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late, to the *Emir* of the *Druſians*, (commonly called the *Emir* of *Sidon*) of which people we have ſpoken before. A people who in the time of *Amurath*, the third, were governed by five *Emirs* or Princes; one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who ſo reſolutely reſiſted *Ibrahim Baſſa*, Ann. 1585. This *Man-Ogli* then kept his Court or reſidence at *Andirene*, a ſtrong place ſituate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he ſent to make his peace unto the above-named *Ibrahim*, 320 Arcubuſes, 20 packs of *Andirene* Silks, and 50000 Ducats. At a ſecond time he preſented him with 50000 Ducats more, 480 Arcubuſes, 1000 Goats, 150 Camels, 150 Buffes, and 1000 Oxen, and 200 Weathers. By theſe rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the preſent *Emir* of *Sidon*; who ſince the year 1600. hath reduced almoſt all the Countreys belonging once to five Princes, under his own Empire; containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barut*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Acre*, *Saffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his ſeat of reſidence, *Nazareth*, *Cana*, Mount *Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This preſent *Emir*, by name *Faccardine*, was not long ſince driven out of his Countrey by the *Turk*, and forced to flye to *Florence*: but he again recovered his own, laid ſiege to *Damaſcus*, and cauſed a notable rebellion in *Aſia*; not quenched in a long time after. And finally, having poſſeſſed himſelf of the City and Caſtle of *Damaſcus*, prepared for the taking of *Hieruſalem* alſo; threatning to make the Chriſtians once more Maſters of it. This was in the year 1623. How he ſped afterward, and whether his ſon, as ſtout and valiant as himſelf, hath ſince his death ſucceeded him in his Eſtates, I am not able to ſay: having of late heard nothing of them.

2. *SYRIA PROPRIA.*

SYRIA PROPRIA, or *Syria* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Palmyrene*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Cilicia*, on the South, with *Phœnicia*, and ſome part of *Cœle-Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the land of *Hamath*, ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures, the Kingdom of *Toi* or *Tou*, next neighbour, and ſworn Enemy to *Adadezer* King of *Aram-Sobah*: who hearing of the great diſcomfiture which *David* had given unto that King, ſent his ſon *Joram*, or *Adoram*, (for the Scripture calls him by both names) with preſents to him, as well to congratulate his ſucceſs, as to be aſſured for times to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the ſons of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in theſe parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Paleſtine* (which we ſhall meet withall in the courſe of this work) either built by him or his poſterity. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am perſwaded to believe by theſe fol-

Syria Propria.

following reaſons, *viz.* 1. From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad*, or *Arphad*, conjoyned together, as in *Eſay* 10. 9. and *Jer.* 49. 23. So in other places, *viz. Where are the Gods of* Hamath *and* Arpad? 2 *Kings* 18. 34. *The King of* Hamath, *and the King of* Arphad, *Eſay* 37. 13. And we know well that *Arvad* was the name of an Iſland over againſt the mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, one of the Rivers of this Countrey: ſo called from *Arvad*, one of the ſons of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus*; by which this Iſle was known unto them. 2*ly*, By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobah* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the Eaſt, with the King whereof (as bordering Princes uſe to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the moſt part were in open War. Of which ſee 2 *Sam.* 8. 9, 10. and 1 *Chr.* 8. 9, 10. 3*ly*, From the authority of Saint *Hierome*, who finding mention in the Prophet *Amos*, Chap. 6. verſ. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the *Great*, determineth it to be the City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principal City of this part, and indeed of *Syria*:) the title of *Great* being added to it, to difference it from ſome other Cities of this name of inferiour note. And 4*ly*, From comparing the places in Scripture, with the like paſſage in *Joſephus* the Hiſtoriographer. The Scripture telleth us, that *Hieruſalem* being forced by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekias* the King was brought Priſoner to *Nebuchadnezzer*, being then at *Riblath*, 2 *Kings* c. 2. v. 6. to *Riblath in the Land of Hamath*, v. 21. where the poor Prince firſt ſaw his Children ſlain before his face; and then miſerably deprived of ſight, that he might not ſee his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Joſephus* where this ſad Tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiq.* l. 10. c. 10. And if we ask Saint *Hierome* what he thinks of *Reblatha*, he will tell us it was *Urbs ea quam nunc* Antiochiam *vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On theſe grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of Scripture above-cited; though there were other Towns and Territories of the ſame name alſo.

The Countrey is naturally fertile; the hedges on the high-way ſides affording very good fruits, and the adjoyning fields affording to the Paſſenger the ſhade of Fig-trees. Were it not naturally ſo, it would not be much helped by Art, or Induſtry; as being very meanly peopled, and thoſe few people without any incouragement either to plant fruits, or manure the Land. Their ſheep are commonly fair and fat, but ſo overladed on the tail, both with fleſh and fleece, that they hang in long wreaths unto the ground, dragged after them with no ſmall difficulty. *Pliny* obſerves it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* ſheep were a Cubit long, and had good ſtore of Wool upon them. *Natur. Hiſt.* l. 8. c. 48. And modern Travellers report, that the tails of theſe ſheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and ſometimes 30 pounds and upwards. The like hath alſo been affirmed of the ſheep of *Paleſtine* comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the reaſon why the rumps, or tails of ſheep (and of no beaſt elſe) were ordained to be offered up in ſacrifice, of which *Levit.* 3. *v.* 9. But beſides the ſtore of Wool which they have from the ſheep, they have alſo great plenty of Cotton-wool, which groweth there abundantly; with the ſeeds whereof they ſow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The ſtalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as tough as a Beans; the head round and bearded, in the ſize and ſhape of a *Medlar*, and as hard as a ſtone: which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white ſoft *Bombaſt* intermixed with ſeeds; which parted with an inſtrument, they keep the Seeds for another ſowing, and ſell the Wool unto the Merchant: a greater quantity thereof iſſuing from that little ſhell, then can be imagined by thoſe who have not ſeen it.

The people heretofore were very induſtrious, eſpecially about their Gardens; the fruitfull effects whereof they found in the increaſe of their herbs and plants. Whence the Proverb, *Multa Syrorum Olera.* But withall they were obſerved to be very gluttonous, ſpending whole dayes and nights in feaſting; great ſcoffers, and much given to laughter, Crafty and ſubtile in their dealings, not eaſily to be truſted but upon good ſecurity: and ſo were the *Phœnicians*, their next neighbours alſo. Hence came the *Greek* Adage which *Suidas* ſpeaketh of, Σύροι πρὸς Φοίνικας, *Syri contra Phœnices*, uſed by them when two crafty knaves endeavoured to deceive each other. They were noted alſo to be ſuperſtitious, great worſhippers of the Goddeſs *Fortune*, but greater of their *Syrian* Goddeſs, whatſoever ſhe was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a womaniſh and effeminate Nation, prone unto tears, and ſuch as on the death of their friends would hide themſelves in caves from the ſight of the Sun. *Herodian* addeth, that they were wavering and unconſtant, lovers of playes and publick paſtimes, and eaſily ſtirred up to innovations. But at this time, they are almoſt beaten out of all theſe humours, having been ſo often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown ſervilely officious to them that govern them: not without cauſe, defective in that part of induſtry which before enriched them.

Whether by the way we muſt obſerve, that this Character of the people, and that of the Countrey belonging not to this part alone, excluſively of thoſe which follow, but to all *Syria*, and every part and Province of it, except *Phœnicia*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its Character by it ſelf. The whole by *Ptolemy* divided, beſides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Cœle-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and ſubdiviſions, as 1. *Pieria*. 2. *Caſiotis*, from the Hills adjoyning. 3. *Seleucis*. 4. *Apamene*. 5. *Laodicene*. 6. *Cyrreſtica*. 7. *Chalcidice*, and 8. *Chalybanotis*, from their principal Cities. Of which in all he muſters up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of ſome note, moſt of them now grown out of knowledge, and many of them of no mark, or obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs. So that omitting his method, we will follow our own, and take notice onely of ſuch places as anciently were, or at this preſent are, of moſt obſervation and importance in the courſe of Story: with reference notwithſtanding to the ſubdiviſions made by *Ptolemy*, as they come in my way, reckoning *Cyrreſtica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Caſiotis*, and the Territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamea*, into *Syria Propria*; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*.

Syria Propria.

Firſt then to begin with thoſe Cities which lye moſt towards the Eaſt, we have in *Cyrreſtica*. Firſt *Zeugma*, on the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, memorable for the paſſage of *Alexander* the *Great*, who there paſſed over his Army on a Bridge of Boats. 2. *Berrœa*, ſuppoſed by ſome both ancient and modern writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo*, but the poſition of the place agreeth not with that ſuppoſition; *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Coſmographers*, in the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and the 38 of *Latitude*: whereas *Berrœa* is aſſigned by *Ptolemy*, to the 36 degree of *Latitude*, & the 71 of *Longitude*. Beſides that, the River *Singas*, on which *Aleppo* is ſituate, keepeth it ſelf almoſt on an even courſe in the *Latitude* of 37. between 20 and 30 minutes over, which is more by a degree and a half than the ſite aſſigned unto *Berrœa*. 3. *Cybros*, as in the *Latine* Copies of *Ptolemy*, miſtook for *Cyrrhus*, once the chief Citie of this part, from hence called *Cyrreſtica*. 4. *Heraclea*, near which *Minerva* had a Temple: in which, as in that ſacred to her in *Laodicea*, they uſed once yearly to offer a *Virgin* for a ſacrifice; but afterwards on the ſight of that groſs impiety, changed it to a *Hart*. 5. *Regia*, now *Rugia*, two dayes journey from *Antioch*, took by the Chriſtians in the beginning of the Wars for the *Holy Land*. 6. *Hierapolis*, of great renown in thoſe dark times of ignorance and idolatry for the *Syrian Goddeſs* therein worſhipped; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the *Holy Citie*: being formerly by the *Grecians* called *Callinice*; by the *Syrians*, *Magog*; one of the firſt ſeats of *Magog* the ſon of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The *Goddeſſe* ſo eſteemed of in thoſe wretched times, that from all parts, *Aßyria*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and coſtly offerings. *Nero* himſelf, who ſcoffed at all Religions elſe, being for a while a great Votary of this *Syrian* Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Seleucus*, in the midſt of the Citie, encompaſſed with a double Wall, about the height of 300 Fathom: the roof thereof inlaid with Gold, and made of ſuch a fragrant and ſweet-ſmelling wood, that the Cloaths of them which came thither retained the ſent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places incloſed for Oxen, and beaſts of ſacrifice; and not far off a Lake of 200 Fathom in depth, wherein they kept their ſacred fiſhes: the Prieſts attending here for their ſeveral Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, beſides many more ſubſervient Miniſters. The tricks and jugglings of theſe Prieſts to deceive the people, he that liſt to ſee, may find them copiouſly deſcribed in the *Metamorphoſis* of *Apuleius*: which, changeing but the names and times, may ſerve for a relation of thoſe gulleries and Arts of *Leger-de-main*, which the *Friers* and *Pardoners* have practiſed in the Church of *Rome*. 7. *Chalyban*, whence the parts adjoyning were called *Chalybanotis*; conceived by *Poſtellus*, and ſome others to be *Chalepium*, or *Aleppo*, but on no good ground: this Citie having one degree leſs of Northern Latitude, than *Berrœa* had. 8. *Barbariſſus*, in the ſame ſubdiviſion, near the Banks of *Euphrates*. 9. *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwiſe memorable. 10. *Telmediſſa*, another Town of the ſame diviſion, and as little famous. 11. *Seleucus*, ſo named from the Founder of it, the firſt Eaſtern Monarch of that race, and the greateſt Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, ſixteen in memory of his father *Antiochus*, ſix by the name of *Laodice* his mother, and three in honour of *Apamia* his firſt wife; beſides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Aſia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this, the Countrey hereabouts had the name of *Seleucis*. 12. *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his mother, from which the Region adjoyning is called *Laodicene*. Built by him in the place where formerly ſtood the Citie *Rhamantus*, ſo called from a certain Shepherd, who being ſtrook with a flaſh of lightning, cried out amazedly *Rhamantus*, that is to ſay, *Deus ab excelſo*; before which time it had been named *Leuca Acte*, from the whiteneſs of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is ſituate: the Countrey round about, commended anciently for the beſt Wines, and choice of very excellent fruits. 13. *Apamea*, ſo named in honour of *Apamia*, the wife of *Seleucus*; which, together with *Laodicea* and *Seleucus* before mentioned, having the ſame founder, and maintaining a ſtrict league of amity with one another, were commonly called the three Siſters. From this the Countrey near is called *Apamene*. 14. *Emeſa*, (now *Hamſe*) the Epiſcopal See of *Euſebius*, hence called *Emeſenus*, who flouriſhed in the time of *Conſtantius*, the ſon of *Conſtantine*: in whoſe name are extant certain Homilies, juſtly conceived to be of a later date. The Citie ſeated in a ſpacious and fruitfull plain of *Apamene*, watered with many pleaſant and cheerfull Riverets: once of great note, as may be eaſily conjectured from the Walls hereof, which are ſtill perfect and entire, built of poliſhed ſtone, and of very large circuit; but the dwelling-houſes ſo decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy obſervation. 15. *Epiphania*, in the cantred, or ſubdiviſion of *Caſiotis*; called at firſt *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the founder of it, and upon that account miſtaken by Saint *Hierome* for another Town of the ſame name, in the Tribe of *Naphthali*; ſo different from this place, both in Longitude and Latitude (as we ſhall ſhew hereafter when we come to *Paleſtine*) that they can by no means be the ſame. But that old Town being gone to ruine, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*; obeyed therein, as *Joſephus* telleth us, by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* ſtill called it *Amatha*, as in former times, *Antiqu. l. 1. c. 7.* 16. *Larißa*, which ſtill preſerveth its own name, being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, eſpecially for the death of *Baldwin* the firſt, brother of *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, *Anno* 1118. 17. *Gebal*, the *Gabala* of *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers, ſituate on the South of *Laodicea*, from which twelve miles diſtant; mentioned *Pſalm* 83. as a confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumciſed Nations, in their hatred and deſigns againſt the *Iſraelites*:

as

at this day called *Gabella* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembred in the Stories of the *Holy Wars*. 18. *Aradus*, one of the Co-founders of *Tripolis*, ſituate in a rocky Iland of a mile in compaſs, directly oppoſite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and diſtant from the Continent about twenty furlongs. So called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that name in the Prophet *Ezech. ch. 27. v.* 8, 11. This once a kingdom of it ſelf, containing not this Iland only, but ſome part of the Continent; eſpecially about *Antaradus* (ſo called becauſe built over againſt it) ſituate on the Northern banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Phœnicia*. 19. *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; ſo named of *Daphne*, one of the Miſtreſſes of *Apollo*, who was here worſhipped by the name of *Apollo Daphnæus*, and had here his *Oracle* and his *Groves*, with other the Additaments appertaining unto thoſe Idolatries: as much eſteemed of, but more ſumptuous than thoſe of *Delphos*. The Grove about ten miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypreſſes*, and other trees, ſo tall and cloſe to one another, that they ſuffered not the Sun to enter in his greateſt heats: the ground perpetually covered with the choiſeſt Tapiſtry of Nature, watered with many a pleaſant ſtream, derived from the *Caſtalian* Fountains as it was given out, and yielding the moſt excellent fruits both for taſte and tincture, to which the wind and air participating the ſweetneſs of the place, did add a moſt delightfull influence.

A place deviſed for pleaſure, but abuſed to luſt: he being held unworthy of the name of a man, who transformed not himſelf unto a Beaſt, or trod on this unholy ground without his *Curtezan*; inſomuch as they which had a care of their good names, did forbear to haunt it. A fuller deſcription of it he that liſts to ſee, may find in the firſt Book and 18. chapter of *Sozomens Eccleſiaſtical* Hiſtory, who is copious in it. The Temple ſaid to have been built by *Seleucus* alſo, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperour; and therefore much reſorted to by *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, for that purpoſe alſo. But the body of *Babylas* the *Martyr* and Biſhop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the command of his Brother *Gallus*, then created *Cæſar* by *Conſtantius*, the Devil and his *Oracles* were both frighted away, as the Devil did himſelf confeſs to *Julian*. Who being deſirous to learn here the ſucceſs of his intended expedition into *Perſia*, received this Anſwer, that no *Oracle* could be given as long as thoſe divine bones were ſo near the ſhrine. Nor was it long after, before the *Idol* and the *Temple* were conſumed by a fire from Heaven; as was avowed by thoſe who obſerved the fall of it; though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Chriſtians*, and in revenge cauſed many of their Churches to be burned to aſhes. 20. *Antioch*, ſituate in that part hereof which is called *Caſiotis*, firſt built, or begun rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Aſia*, by whom named *Antigonia*; but finiſhed and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and ſlain him at the battel of *Iſſus*. Built near the place, and partly out of the ruins of an ancient City, in the ſecond Book of *Kings* called *Riblah in the land of Hamath*; *Hamath* the *Great* in the ſixt of *Amos*; by *Joſephus* and the *Syrians*, *Rablata*. Memorable in thoſe dayes for the Tragedies of *Jehoahaz* and *Sedechias* Kings of *Judah*: the firſt of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty, by *Pharaoh Neco* King of *Egypt*, 2 *Kings* 23. 33. the other of his eyes and children by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was ſaid before. In following times it was by ſome Greek writers called *Epidaphne*, from the nearneſs of it to that *Grove*: as afterwards in the times of *Chriſtianity*; by the name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God, either from the many miracles there done in the primitive time: or from the great improvement which the *Chriſtian* faith did here receive, where the *Diſciples* firſt obtained the name of *Chriſtians*. The Royal ſeat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*, and in the flouriſh and beſt fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary reſidence of the *Præfect* or Governor of the Eaſtern Provinces: next of the *Præfectus Pretorio Orientis*, who had not only the ſuperintendency over the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, though that large enough; but alſo of the Dioceſes of *Egypt*, *Aſia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending ſo his juriſdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured alſo with the reſidence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, eſpecially of *Verus* and *Valens*, who ſpent here the greateſt part of their times: and from the firſt dawning of the Goſpel, with the ſeat of the *Patriarch*. A Title of ſuch eminency in all times of the Church, the ſecond in accompt to the See of *Rome* (till *Conſtantinople* being made the Imperial City, got precedence of it) that there are at this time no leſs than four great Prelates which pretend unto it: that is to ſay, the *true Patriarch*, governing the *Chriſtians* of thoſe parts, whom they call *Syrians* or *Melchites*; the *Pſeudo-Patriarchs* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the greater credit to their *Schiſm*, do aſſume this Title; and finally a *titular Patriarch* nominated by the Pope, who ſince the time that the *Weſtern Chriſtians* were poſſeſſed of theſe *Eaſtern* Countries, hath aſſumed a power unto himſelf of nominating *Patriarchs* for *Alexandria*, *Hjeruſalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City ſeated on both ſides of the River *Orontis*, about twelve miles diſtant from the ſhores of the *Mediterranean*; the River *Parfar* paſſing the South-ſide of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration; compaſſed with a double wall, the outermoſt of which was ſtone, the other of Brick, with four hundred and ſixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Caſtle at the Eaſt-end thereof; and on the other ſide defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was adjoyning a deep Lake, coming out of the River *Parfar*, before mentioned. Adorned in former times with many ſumptuous Palaces, and magnificene Temples, anſwerable to the reputation of ſo great a City: till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamalucks*, men careleſs of all State and beauty in their faireſt Cities, it began to grow into decay. Recovered by the *Weſtern Chriſtians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a ſiege of 7 months, *June* 3. *Anno* 1098. confirmed in their poſſeſſion by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very ſight hereof within few dayes after, (*June* 28) obtained againſt

Corbanas, Lieutenant to the *Perſian Sultan*: in which, with the loſs of four thouſand and two hundred of their own, they ſlew a hundred thouſand of the Enemy. The Town and territory given by the Conquerors to *Bohemund* a noble *Norman*, and Prince of *Tarentum*: who by practiſing with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the chief Towers thereof, afterwards called S. *Georges* Tower, was ſecretly let into the City, and ſo made way for all the reſt. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as ſome ſay, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his ſon, about ten years after; ſucceeded in this principate by *Tancred* and *Roger*, Princes of great renown in thoſe *holy wars*: which laſt was unfortunately ſlain by the *Turks*, not far from *Aleppo*, in the year 1120. *Baldwin* the ſecond having revenged his death by a ſignal victory, joyned this eſtate to the kingdom of *Hieruſalem*. Betrayed about ſixty years after this, that is to ſay, in the year 1188. it came into the power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Egypt* and *Damaſcus*; and therewithall no fewer then five and twenty Cities which depended on the fortunes of it; the glories of this famous City ſo declining after this laſt *Tragedy* (but whether laid deſolate of ſet purpoſe, or deſtroyed by the injury of the time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the ſepulchre of what it was, and lieth buried in its own ſad ruins; hardly preſerving the repute of a ſorry Village. Such is the inſtability of all worldly glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembred the ſame day with *Antioch*. Of which the moſt obſervable is 21. *Albaria*, diſtant two dayes march from *Antioch*, remembred in the wars of the *Holy Land*.

Comagena.

As for the ſtory of this Province, as a State diſtinct, we find it had a king of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the kingdom of *Toi*, or *Tou* before remembred;) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Iſles adjoyning. Vaſſals in time ſucceeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who lorded it over all the Sea-coaſts hereof, and conſequently had great influence on the Inlands alſo. And it continued in this State till the *Aſſyrian* Kings began to turn their forces Weſtward, when added to that Empire by *Tiglath Phileſer*, after the ſubverſion of the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*; or by *Salmanaſſar*, after the deſtruction of that of *Iſrael*. The proud but dreadfull vaunt which *Senacherib*, the ſucceſſor of thoſe mighty Monarchs, made to *Hezekiah*, viz. *Where are the Kings of Hamath and Arphad*, ſhewes clearly that thoſe Kingdoms had been conquered not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanaſſar*, or *Tiglath Phileſer*. Afterwards in the ſtruglings betwixt the *Babylonians*, and *Egyptians*, for the chief command, it was a while at the devotions of the Kings of *Egypt*, it being at *Reblatha* in this Province, that *Jehoahaz* King of *Judah* was put into bonds, by the command of *Pharaoh Neco*, as was ſaid before. But *Neco* being not long after vanquiſhed by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown; and after followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Syria*.

3. COMAGENA.

Comagena is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*; on the Weſt, with the Mountains called *Amanus*, which divide it from *Cilicia*; on the North, with *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with *Palmyrene*. Called alſo *Euphratenſis* and *Euphrateſia*, when a *Roman* Province; by reaſon of its ſituation bordering on that River.

The reaſon of the name I find not amongſt my Authors: but find that many learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria*, which the Scriptures call *Syria Maacha*, mention whereof is made 1 *Chr. cap.* 16. *v.* 6. gain-ſayed by others, becauſe they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manaſſes*; but with no great reaſon as I take it. For being it is joyned (in the 2. of *Chron.* 19. *v.* 6. above mentioned) in the ſame action with *Meſopotamia*, and *Syria Sobah*; and not ſo only, but placed between them in the Method of that holy pen-man: I dare not think but that they were all very near neighbours, and ranked according to the natural ſituation of them. Which agreeth very well with the ſite of *Comagena*, having *Meſopotamia* on the Eaſt, and *Aram-Sobah* on the South. Nor is it any ſtronger proof unto the contrary, that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manaſſes*; than if a man ſhould ſay that there is no ſuch Province as *Mansfield* in *High Germany*, becauſe there is a Town of that name in *England*; or no ſuch place as *Savoy* among the *Alpes*, becauſe there is a place of that name in *London*.

As for the people hereof, beſides what they have common with the reſt of the *Syrians*, they were of old much given unto *Divinations*, and for that cauſe derided thus in the ſixth *Satyr* of *Juvenal*,

Spondet amatorem tenerum, vel divitis orbi
Teſtamentum ingens, calida pulmone Columba
Tractato Armenius *vel* Comagenus *Aruſpex.*
Pectora pullorum rimabitur, exta Catelli,
Interdum & pueri. Faciat quod deferat ipſe.

Thus Engliſhed by my honoured friend Sir *Robert Stapylton.*

A childleſs rich mans Legacy, or young love,
Are found i'th' Lights of a warm trembling Dove,
By Comagena South-ſayers; they look into.

A dead

Comagena.

A dead Chicks breſt, the ſame th' *Armenians* do.
They view the entrails of a Dog, and reach
A Childs perhaps? They do it, and then peach.

Chief places of this part, 1. *Samoſata*, the *Metropolis*, or head City of it, when a *Roman* Province, ſituate near the banks of *Euphrates*, over which it had a bridge for paſſage into *Meſopotamia.* Unfortunate for being the birth-place of *Lucian* that profane Scoffer of *Chriſtianity*, though otherwiſe a man of a quick wit, and of great abilities: as alſo of *Paulus Samoſatenus*, Patriarch of *Antioch*, condemned of *Hereſie* in a Councel holden in his own City. *An.* 273. (by the great and moſt learned Biſhops of that Age, there aſſembled together) for teaching that our Saviour was no other than a natural man; but neither God, nor the ſon of God, as the Scriptures teſtifie. 2. *Germanicia*, (by ſome called *Germanicopolis*) on the other ſide of the Country, near the mountain *Amanus*; no leſs unfortunate than the former, in being the birth-place of *Neſtorius*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*: who troubling the peace of the Church with *Heterodoxie* and impertinent niceties, about the bleſſed Mother of Chriſt, as alſo about the nature and perſon of Chriſt himſelf, was thereupon condemned of *Hereſie* in the Councel of *Epheſus*, *Anno* 435. In former times called *Adata*, as ſome write *Adapa*; but took this new name from *Germanicus Caſar*, in honour of whom it was made a *Roman* Colony by *Auguſtus*: teſtified by this inſcription extant in *Onuphrius*, viz. *COLONIA JULIA GERMANICA, SACRA, AUGUSTA, FELIX*. 3. *Singa*, ſo called from the River upon which it is ſituate. 4. *Antiochia penes Taurum*, ſo called becauſe ſeated at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from the other of this name in *Syria*. 5. *Pinara*, one of the chief Cities of that part which is called *Pieria*. 6. *Doliche*, a ſmall Town; but made an Epiſcopal See in the beſt times of the Church, as appears by the Acts of the Counſels of *Antioch*, and *Conſtantinople*, in which there is ſome mention of the Biſhops of it. 7. *Aleppo*, now the principal of all the Country, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Sepharvaim*, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17. 24. It was thus called as ſome ſay from *Halep*, which in the language of thoſe parts ſignifieth milk, afforded liberally by the rich paſtures round about it: as others more improbably from *Aleph*, the firſt letter of the *Hebrew* Alphabet, becauſe the firſt in eſtimation of the Cities of *Syria*; Moſt probably from *Alepius*, Lieutenant here in the time of *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, who did here many notable exploits, and amongſt others, in or near the ruins of ſome old Town of theſe parts, not yet agreed on (in caſe it be not *Sepharvaim* before mentioned) advanced this City. Situate on the banks of the River *Singas*, which riſing out of the hill *Pierius*, with many windings and turnings runneth thorow *Comagena*, and there falleth into *Euphrates*. Deſtroyed by *Haalon*, King of the *Tartars*, at ſuch time as the Weſtern Chriſtians were poſſeſſed of this Country, and the Holy Land: but being repaired and re-peopled, became by reaſon of the commodious ſituation of it, to be much frequented by Merchants from all parts of the world. Situate in the midſt betwixt *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, and *Alexandretta*, the three prime Ports of *Turkie* on the one ſide; and the *Perſian* territories on the other: it was made choice of for the ſtaple of the Eaſtern commodities, brought to *Euphrates*, and then boated to this Town by the River *Singas*. A City of great trade at preſent, the *Engliſh* Merchants (amongſt others which frequent the ſame) having here three houſes for the Stowage, and diſpoſing of their commodities; and a chief Officer, or *Super-Intendent* over the whole *Factory*, whom they call the *Conſul* of *Aleppo*. But greater was the trade hereof in former times, before the *Portugals* found out a way by Sea to thoſe Eaſtern Countreys, ſince followed by the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and other Nations, The building of it low, but of one Roof high, (as in moſt Towns of *Syria*) with a plain top plaiſtered to walk upon; and with Arches before their doors, or houſes, as well to paſs dry under them in time of rain, as to ſhew their wares. Pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Gardens, with the ſweet ſmels whereof very much refreſhed; the ordinary Reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*; ſafe rather in the remoteneſs of it from any Enemy, than the ſtrength of the place, as being nothing leſs than well-fortified. Near one of the Gates they ſhew a Sepulchre, by them affirmed to be Saint *Georges* (whom of all the *Chriſtian* Saints they only worſhip) before which they maintain a lamp which burns continually. 8. *Aman*, in the way betwixt *Tripoli* and *Aleppo*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be that *Hamath*, mention whereof is made 2 *Kings*, *chap.* 17. 12. A City of a large Circuit, pleaſantly ſeated on two hills, which give it a fair proſpect over ſix of the neighbouring Villages: a thing not to be boaſted of as the world now goeth, by many of the *Syrian* Cities. On a third hill once ſtood a Caſtle, now decayed and ruinous, beneath it a fair River which runs gently by it; environed round about with Orchards of Palm-trees, and very good fruits. 9. *Chalmodora*, ſeated by *Ptolemy* on *Euphrates*, of which no ruins now remaining; unleſs the name be changed to 10. *Byrtha*, as perhaps it may be: that being made by *Ptolemy*, the moſt Northern Town of *Comagena*; this the utmoſt Town which the *Ægyptian Mamalucks* (then Lords of *Syria*) had upon this River, and the boundary betwixt them and the Sultans of *Perſia*. Memorable for an old Ceremony here uſed by thoſe *Mamalucks*, who accounted not themſelves worthy of the name of a Sultan of *Egypt*, till in this place in ſolemn pomp in the ſight of their Army, they had forced their horſe into the River, and made him drink of the waters of it: teſtifying by that Ceremony as well the extent of their Dominions, as their readineſs to defend the ſame againſt all Invaders. A ceremony performed with great State by *Campſon Gaurus*, in the war betwixt him and *Selimus* the firſt. But for all this he loſt the field, and his life to boot in the fight near *Aleppo*: and therewith did not only leave him *Syria*, as the fruits of his Victory; but opened him a fair way to the conqueſt of *Egypt*, which ſoon after followed. And hereto I refer the Cities of 11. *Hena*, and 12. *Ivah*, with their ſeveral Territories; mentioned together with the City of *Sepharvaim*, *Eſay* 37. *verſ.* 13. and 2 *Kings* 18. *v.* 34. it being probable, that if *Sepharvaim* were the City now called *Aleppo*, as the *Jews* that dwelt there lay it was; that then the other two joyned together with it, muſt be hereabouts though we finde no tract of them in the old *Geographers*.

And if they were (as it ſeems probable to me) we have then more Kings in this Province in the elder times, than the King of *Maacha*; unleſs perhaps it may be ſaid that the Kingdom of *Maacha* (or of *Aram-Macha*) being broken in pieces, theſe petit States aroſe from the ruins of it. Of little obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs, whether entire, or ſubdivided into parcels; but that the King hereof (the King of *Maacha*) aided the *Ammonites* againſt *David* with 1000 men: no very great number I confeſs (as one who lay more out of the danger than the reſt of the *Syrian* confederates did) but ſufficient to ingage him in the quarrel with them. Nor finde we any thing after this touching their affairs, but that the Kings of *Hena*, *Ivah* and *Sepharvaim* (who ſhared the greateſt part amongſt them) being ſwallowed up by the *Aſſyrians* (as the forementioned Texts do expreſly ſay) ſome Colonies of the people hereof were ſent by *Salmanaſſar* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, to plant the deſolate dwellings of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, as appeareth plainly in the 2 of *Kings*, Chap. 17. verſ. 24. A courſe in which the Conquerour dealt exceeding wiſely; weakning thereby the great Cities and mightier States of this Countrey, which otherwiſe might have been apt enough to revolt again; and ſtrengthning therewithall their Conqueſts in the Land of *Iſrael*, which otherwiſe had lain open to the next invader, and yielded little, or no profit to the publick Treaſury. More politick in this than the *Babylonians* in the like diſſolution and deſtruction of the Kingdom of *Judah*. After this time it followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Syria*, till *Tigranes* the laſt King thereof was ſubdued by the *Romans*. At what time all the reſt of *Syria* being reduced under the form of a Province, this part being then in the poſſeſſion of *Antiochus*, ſon of that *Antiochus*, ſurnamed *Euſebes*, whom *Tigraves* had ſpoyled of his eſtates; was left unto him by the Conquerours with the Title of King. Continuing in his line till the death of another *Antiochus*, the laſt King hereof; when made a Province of the Empire by *Tiberius Caſar*, as is ſaid by *Tacitus*; *Qu. Servaus* being ſent hither as the firſt *Roman Prætor* for the government of it; though *Sueton* doth refer it to the times of *Veſpaſian*.

4. PALMYRENE.

PALMYRENE is bounded on the Eaſt, by the River *Euphrates*; on the Weſt, by *Syria* properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with *Comagena*; and on the South, with Mount *Libanus*, dividing it from the Province of *Cœle-Syria*, and part of *Arabia Deſerta*.

It took this name from *Palmyra* the Chief Citie of it. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, it had the name of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris*. Called *Syria Secunda*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Syria* ſpecially ſo called, which by them was named *Syria Prima*; and *Salutaris*, in regard of the *Medicinal* waters ſpringing in many places of it. But before it had any of theſe names, it was in the Scriptures called *Aram-Sobah*, whereof *Adad Ezar* was King in the time of *David*, as we read 2 *Sam*. 8. 3. and 1 *Chron*. 18. 3.

The Countrey deſtitute of Rivers fit for Navigation, ſave that it bordereth on *Euphrates*; but liberally furniſhed with thoſe hot ſprings, good for many diſeaſes, which gave it the name of *Salutaris*. Of which thus writeth *Marcellinus*, lib. 14. *In his tractibus navigerum nnſquam viſitetur flumen, at in locis plurimis aqua ſuapte natura calentes emergunt, ad uſum apta multiplicium medelarum*. So he. The ſenſe whereof we had before.

Places of moſt obſervation, are 1. *Palmyra*, ſeated in a deſart and ſandy plain, one of the Cities built by *Solomon* in the *Wilderneſs*, mention of which is made 1 *Kings*, Chap. 9. verſ. 17, 18. this *Palmyra* being ſuppoſed to be that Citie which is here called *Tadmar*, or *Tamar* in the *Vulgar Latine*. The cauſe for long time of much contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as ſituate in the Borders of either Empire: not fully ſetled in the *Roman*, till that they had ſubdued *Zenobia*, then the Queen hereof. By *Adrian* the Emperour, who repaired it, it was called *Hadrianople*, but it held not long; the old name in ſhort prevailing above the new. 2. *Gezer*. 3. *Bethhoron* the upper, and 4. *Bethhoron* the nether, ſaid to be fenced Cities with *Walls*, *Gates*, and *Bars*, 2 *Chron*. 8. 4. and 5. *Baalath*, four of the other Towns here built by *Solomon*; but either quite worn out of knowledge, or called by new names in the times of *Ptolemy*, who ſaith nothing of them. 6. *Adada*, built, as the name doth intimate, by ſome of the *Adads*, Kings of this Countrey, or of *Damaſcus*, to which laſt made ſubject. 7. *Sura*, more towards the River *Euphrates*, in the *Notitia*, called *Flavia*, *Firma Sura*; which ſheweth that it was either repaired, or made a Colony by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, whoſe fore-name was *Flavius*: honoured with an Epiſcopal See alſo in the times next following, as appeareth by the Acts of the Counceel of *Conſtantinople*. 8. *Alamath*, on the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, which if it were lawfull for me to *criticize* upon my Author, I ſhould conceive to be that *Hamath* of the Scriptures, which is called *Hamath-Sobah*, 2 *Chron*. 8. 3. againſt which *Solomon* prevailed, the miſtake from *Camatha* to *Alamatha*, being not uneaſie in the *tranſcripts*. Confirmed herein by that paſſage in the ſecond of *Chron*. chap. 18. verſ. 3. where it is ſaid, that *David* ſmote *Hadad-ezar* King of *Sobah* unto *Hamath*, *as he went to ſtabliſh his Dominion by the River Euphrates*: By which it ſeemeth that *Hamath* ſtood upon that River, as the *Camatha*, or *Almatha* of *Ptolemy* is ſaid to do. And if it were the ſame, as I think it was, I ſhould conceive it to be the chief ſeat of thoſe Kings, and the principal Citie of this Kingdom: the word *Sobah*, being added to it, not only for diſtinctions ſake; but in way of eminency. But if the Judicious Reader approve not of this criticiſm, I ſhould next think that this *Alamatha* of *Ptolemy* were that *Ælam*, or *Helam*, near unto which *David* diſcomfited that great Army of the *Meſopotamians*, mention whereof is made 2 *Sam*. 10. verſ. 16, 17. 9. *Raſapha*, a Town of note

in

Cœle-Syria. in the time of *Ptolemy*; but of greater note in the holy Scripture, where it is repreſented to us by the name of *Reſeph*, *Eſay* 3. 20. *Reſeph Civitas Syriæ*, as St. *Hierom* hath it; and if a Town of *Syria*, then moſt like this. 10. *Betah*, & 11. *Berothai*, two other Cities of this Kingdom, taken by *David* in his War againſt *Hadad-ezar*, 2 *Sam.* 8. 8. the laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Barathene* of *Ptolemy*, though placed by him among the Towns of *Arabia* the *Deſart*, to which it ſeems it was alotted in the change of time.

This part of *Syria*, as the reſt, was once a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, by the name of the Kingdom of *Sobah*, or of *Aram-Sobah*. The firſt King thereof, whoſe name occurs in holy Scripture, being *Rehob*, the Co-temporary of *Saul* King of *Iſrael*, by whom diſcomfited in battel, as is ſaid 1 *Sam.* 14. 47. But *Adad ezar* the Son of *Rehob*, a Prince of greater power and valour then his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command, (as is ſaid 2 *Sam.* 10. 19.) conceived himſelf a fit match for *David*, and thereupon oppoſed his paſſage, *as he went to recover his border at the River Euphrates*. In which action though he loſt a thouſand Charets, and twenty thouſand Foot, and ſeven hundred Horſe, yet would he not ſo end the War; but firſt with the *Syrians* of *Damaſcus*, and after with the *Ammonites* and their confederates; and finally by the aid of the *Meſopotamians*, renewed the quarrel. But being diſcomfited alſo in this laſt enterprize with the loſſe of fourty thouſand and ſeven hundred men, and his life to boot, the Kingdom of *Zobah* was brought under by the Kings of *Damaſcus*. The ſtory of this War we have in the 2 of *Sam.* cap. 8. and 10. in the firſt of *Chron.* cap. 18. and 1 *Kings*, 11. 23, 24. yet were not the Kings of *Damaſcus* ſo well ſetled in it, but that *David* had poſſeſſed himſelf of *Bet[illegible]h* and *Berothai*, and other pieces of importance: the Regal City of *Hamath-Soba* being won by *Solomon*, and many of the beſt Towns of it built by him to aſſure his conqueſt. But the Kingdome of *Solomon* being rent in pieces in the next ſucceſſion, the Kingdom of *Zobah* fell again unto thoſe of *Damaſcus*: and ſo continued till *Damaſcus* it ſelf was conquerd by the Kings of *Aſſyria*: unleſſe perhaps that *Hamath*, which *Jeroboam* the ſecond is ſaid to have ſubdued (together with *Damaſcus* it ſelf) to the Crown of *Iſrael*, 2 *Kings* 14. 28. were this *Hamath-Soba*, as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the affairs of this Countrey, till the time of *Gallienus* the *Roman* Emperour: during whoſe reigne, amongſt the reſt who *cantonned* that Empire betwixt themſelves (commonly called the Thirty Tyrants) *Odenatus* a man of great power and vertue aſſumed the imperial habit, and took unto himſelf the command of theſe parts of *Syria*, together with *Meſopotamia*, and ſome other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapores* the King of *Perſia*; againſt whom he had ſo good an hand, that he diſcomfited him in battel, ſeized upon his Treaſures, and took many of his Nobles, and moſt of his Concubines. For which great acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus*, he was not long after ſlain by *Mœonius* his Cozin German. Who by that murder hoped to obtain the principality of *Palmyrene* (for by that name it was now called) but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate widow, a moſt maſculine Lady, not only preſerved the principality of *Palmyrene* for the uſe of her Children; but took upon her both the *Purple habit*, and the command of his army: which ſhe managed with great wiſdom and gallantry, the reſt of the time of *Gallienus*, and all the reigns of *Claudius*, and *Quintilius*, his two next Succeſſors. But vanquiſhed and took Priſoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happineſſe to unite the broken limbs of that Empire into as ſtrong a body as ever formerly) ſhe was led in triumph through *Rome*. The terrour of her name, and the unuſualneſſe of the ſight, ſo heightning the general expectation; *ut ea ſpecie nihil unquam eſſet pompabilius*, ſaith *Trebellius Pollio*; That never any ſhew was eſteemed ſo glorious. A Lady of ſo ſtrong a virtue, and of ſuch command upon her ſelf, that ſhe is ſaid never to have made uſe of her husbands company, when ſhe perceived her ſelf with Child. After this nothing ſingular in the ſtory of *Palmyrene*, but that when all the reſt of *Syria* was ſubdued by the *Chriſtians* of the Weſt, this Province and the next onely w[illegible] made good againſt them by the *Turkiſh* Sultans of *Damaſcus*.

5. *COELE-SYRIA.*

COELE-SYRIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Palmyrene*, and *Arabia Deſerta*; on the Weſt, with *Paleſtine*; on the North, with *Palmyrene*, and ſome part of *Syria Propria*, from which divided by the interpoſition of Mount *Libanus*; on the South, with *Ituræa*, and *Arabia Deſerta* alſo.

This is the *Syria* ſo much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*, called by the *Greeks Cœle-Syria*, i. e. *Syria Cava*, becauſe partly ſituate in the hollow vallies interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; and ſometimes alſo *Syro-Phœnicia*, from the intermixture of thoſe people; as the *Phœnicians* which went with *Dido* into *Africk*, were called *Libo-Phœnicia*. By the *Romans*, when made a diſtinct Province of that Empire, it had the name of *Phœnice Libani*, or *Phœnicia Libanenſis*, to difference it from the other *Phœnicia*, which they call *Maritima*. But before all this by the *Hebrews* named *Aram Damaſek*, *Syria-Damaſcena* in the *Latine*, from *Damaſcus* the chief Citie of it: unleſſe perhaps we ſhould rather ſay, that *Aram-Damaſek* contained onely that which lay between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; the reſt being added by the *Romans*, out of the neighbouring parts of *Paleſtine* and *Arabia-Deſerta*, as perhaps it was

Chief Rivers hereof, are 1. *Abanah*, and 2. *Pharphar*, the Rivers of *Damaſcus*, as the Scripture calleth them, 2 *Kings*, Chap. 5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, ſpoken of already; the other that which *Ptolemy* calleth *Chryſorrhoas*, or the Golden flood, which riſing in the Hills of this Countrey, paſſeth by *Damaſcus*, and ſo together with the other into the *Mediterranean* Sea. Chief Mountains of it, 1. *Alſadamus*, by the *Phœnicians* called *Syrion*, by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a ridge of Hills which beginning at the Eaſt point of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly Southwards, ſhutting up on that ſide the land of *Iſrael*, whereof more in *Paleſtine*. 2 *Hippus*, a ledge of Mountains in the South *Cœle-Syria*. parts of this Province, where it bordereth on *Arabia Deſerta*.

Towns of moſt conſideration in it, 1 *Heliopolis*, ſo called from an Image of the Sun there worſhipped in the time of *Paganiſm*; now *Ballebec*, or (as ſome ſay) *Balbec*. 2 *Chalcis*, more Eaſtwards towards *Damaſcus*, which gave the title of King to *Ptolemy Mennæus*, and his ſon *Lyſanias*, the kingdom then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Ituræa* in *Paleſtine*. But that Family being either expired, or grown out of favour, and *Abila* with *Ituræa* otherwiſe diſpoſed of; the title of the King of *Chalcis*, with the Town and territory, was given to *Herod*, brother of *Agrippa* the firſt King of *Jewry*. Erroneouſly ſuppoſed by ſome learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Country called *Chalcidice* takes denomination: that *Chalcis* being placed by *Ptolemy* a degree and a half more Eaſt than *Damaſcus*, and two degrees more towards the North; whereas this *Chalcis* lyeth on the Weſt of that City, in the ſhades of *Libanus*, and in the very ſame degree of Northern *Latitude*. 3 *Abila*, ſeated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis*, from whence the Countrey round about is called *Abilene*: given to *Lyſanias*, the ſon of the former *Lyſanias*, King of *Chalcis*, with the title of *Tetrarch*. Mentioned *Luke* 3. 1. with thoſe other Princes which ſhared *Paleſtine* amongſt them. Not that he was the ſon of *Herod*, as antiently *Beda* and *Euthymius*, and of late-times ſome very induſtrious men have been of opinion: but partly becauſe the Cities of *Chalcis* and *Abila* of right belonged to thoſe of the Tribe of *Naphthalim* (though never conquered or poſſeſſed by them) and ſo to be accompted a part of *Paleſtine*; and partly becauſe the *Tetrarchy* of *Abilene*, when Saint *Luke* wrote that Goſpel, was poſſeſſed together with the reſt by King *Agrippa*. Reſtored (as it ſeemeth) to the former Family, after his deceaſe; for known it was by the name of *Abila-Lyſaniæ* in the time of *Ptolemy*. 4 *Adida*, memorable for the victory which *Aretas* King of *Arabia* obtained near unto it, againſt *Alexander* King of *Jewry*, the kingdom of *Syria*, then lying open as a prey to the next Invaders. 5 *Hippus*, or *Hippone*, as *Pliny* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that name. 6 *Capitolias*, now called *Suente*. 7 *Gadara*. 8 *Scythopolis*. 9 *Geraſa*, and 10 *Philadelphia*, reckoned by *Ptolemy* as Cities of *Cœle-Syria*, but of right belonging unto *Paleſtine*; where we mean to take more notice of them. 11 *Damaſcus*, ſituate in a large plain environed with hills, and watered with the River *Chryſorrhoas*, which with a great noiſe deſcendeth from the Mountains, and ſo abundantly ſerveth the City, that not only moſt of the houſes have their fountains of it, but their Orchards and Gardens have ſome Rivulets conveyed into them. The Country round about abundantly enriched with plenty of moſt excellent wines (the vines hereof bearing grapes all the year long) and great ſtore of Wheat; as their Orchards, with variety of moſt delicate fruit: (our *Damaſcens*, or *Pruna Damaſcena* as the *Latines* call them) coming firſt from hence; as alſo do our *Damask* Roſes, but infinite ſhort of their natural ſweetneſs, by the tranſplantation. A place ſo ſurfeiting of delights, ſo girt about with odoriferous and curious gardens, that the vile Impoſtor *Mahomet* would never be perſwaded to come into it: for fear, (as himſelf was uſed to ſay) leſt being raviſhed with the ineſtimable pleaſures of it, he ſhould forget the buſineſs he was ſent about, and make there his Paradiſe. But *Mahuvias*, one of his Succeſſors, having no ſuch ſcruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the moſt part) till the building of *Bagdat* by *Bugiafer* the twentieth *Caliph*, about an hundred years after this Removal: the Regal ſeat before that time, being at *Mecca*, *Cuta*, or ſome other of the beſt Towns of *Arabia Felix*. The chief building of it of late times (till deſtroyed by the *Tartars*) was a ſtrong Caſtle, in the opinion of thoſe times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamerlane*, whom nothing was able to withſtand: and as Majeſtical a Church, garniſhed with forty ſumptuous porches, and no fewer than 9000 Lanterns of Gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who fled thither for Sanctuary) was by the ſaid *Tamerlane* moſt cruelly and unmercifully burnt, and pulled down unto the ground. Repaired by the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt*, when Lords of *Syria*, it hath ſince flouriſhed in Trade, the people being induſtrious, and celebrated for moſt excellent Artizans: the branching of Satins, and fine Linen, which we call by the name of *Damasks*, being amongſt many others, one of their inventions. Renowned in the Old Teſtament for the Kings hereof, and the birth of *Eliezer*, *Abrahams* Steward (ſo honourably antient was this City) and in the New for the Converſion of Saint *Paul*, who firſt preached the Goſpel in this place, and here ſo narrowly eſcaped the ſnares of his enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the houſe in which he was, by the help of a *Basket*. 2 *Eden*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*, and antiently of ſuch eſteem, that the whole Countrey of *Damaſcus* was called *Beth-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5.

But though antient and honourable this City of *Damaſcus* was, we find nothing of the ſtory of it, till the time of *David*, the Kings thereof until thoſe dayes, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the Kings of *Zobah*. The firſt exploit aſcribed unto him in Holy Scripture, is their coming to the aid of *Hadadezer*, upon his firſt defeat by *David*: in which action having loſt 22000 men, they were ſo broken, that they did not onely ſuffer *David* to put Garriſons in the beſt Cities of *Damaſcus*: but patiently became his Servants, and brought preſents to him, 2 *Sam*. 8. 5, 6. The name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in Scripture, is by *Joſephus* affirmed out of *Nicolas Damaſcenus*, to have been *Adad* (a name much cheriſhed and aſſumed by the Kings Succeſſors) who keeping conſtant to the party of *Hadadezer* in his following wars, was at laſt ſlain with him in that great diſcomfiture which *David* gave them, mentioned in the 2 of *Sam*. 10. 18. In which Text the Scripture telleth us nothing of the death of thoſe Kings, that being ſupplyed to us by *Joſephus* out of the Records. Who alſo addeth, that *Rezin*, one of the chief Commanders of *Hadadezer*, taking this advantage, not only uſurped his Maſters kingdom, but made himſelf Maſter of the kingdom of *Damaſcus* alſo. From this time forward the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Syria*. Nor is this the tradition of *Joſephus* onely, but founded plainly on the Scriptures, of which ſee 1 *Kings* 11. *v.* 23, 24. the Scriptures after this taking no notice of any other Kings of *Syria* (by the name of the Kings of *Syria*) but of thoſe that reigned in *Damaſcus*; who in ſhort time had ſwallowed up the petit kingdoms of *Geſſur*, *Iſh-tok*, *Rehob*, beſides that of *Zobah* before mentioned.

The KINGS of *SYRIA* or *DAMASCUS*.

1 *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Hadadezar* King of *Zobah*, in whoſe quarrel he was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *David*.

2 *Rezin*, of whom the Scripture ſaith, in the ſecond of *Chron.* that when *David* ſlew them of *Zobah*, *he fled from* Hadadezar *his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to* Damaſcus *and dwelt therein, and reigned in* Damaſcus.

3 *Adad* II. an *Idumæan*, ſuppoſed to be of the family of *Hadadezar*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Ægypt*, where he married *Taphnes*, the Queens Siſter: and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Countrey, and as ſome write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damaſcus*, and reigned there as King.

4 *Hezion*, Succeſſor unto *Adad*.

5 *Tabrimon*, the ſon of *Hezion*, as is ſaid 1 *Kings* 15. 18.

6 *Ben-hadad*, the ſon of *Tabrimon*, hired by *Aſa* King of *Judah*, to aid him in his wars againſt *Baaſha* of *Iſrael*.

7 *Ben-hadad* II. ſon of the former, twice invaded *Iſrael* in the reign of *Achab*; but both times notably repulſed; the firſt time by a ſally of 700 men at the ſiege of *Samaria*; the next at *Aphec*, where with the like number in effect he was taken priſoner, and his Army routed.

8 *Hazael*, Captain of the hoſt to *Benhadad*, annointed King of *Syria* by the Prophet *Eliſha*, whom God appointed ſo to do, that by his hands he might avenge himſelf on *Benhadad*, whom *Hazael* ſlew; but he proved as ill a neighbour to the Kings of *Iſrael*, as thoſe before him. He attempted upon *Judah* alſo in the time of *Joas*, but bribed with the treaſures of the Temple, he withdrew his forces.

9 *Ben-hadad* III. Sonne of *Hazael*, diſcomfited in three ſet Battels by *Joas* King of *Iſrael*.

10 *Ben-hadad* IV. ſon of *Ben-hadad* the third.

11 *Ben-hadad* V. ſon of *Ben-hadad* the fourth.

12 *Ben-hadad* VI. ſon of *Ben-hadad* the fifth, in the time of one of which three Kings, but which one we find not for a certain, *Jeroboam* the ſon of *Joas* King of *Iſrael*, ſubdued both *Chamath*, and *Damaſcus*: 2 *Kings* 14. *v.* 18.

13 *Rezin* II. ſon of *Ben-hadad* the ſixth, and the laſt King of *Damaſcus*, who joining with *Pekah* King of *Iſrael*, againſt *Ahaz* of *Judah*; enforced them to call unto his aid *Tiglah Phalaſer*, King of *Aſſyria*; by whom *Rezin* was taken and beheaded, and the City of *Damaſcus* won; the Kingdom of *Syria* by that means united to the *Aſſyrian* Empire.

After this time, the *Syrians* continued ſubject to the *Babylonian* and *Aſſyrian* Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the *Medes* and *Perſians*, became a part of their eſtate: remaining ſo till the firſt battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, fought near *Iſſus* in *Cilicia*. The victory wherein falling to the *Macedonians*, gave him without more trouble than the ſiege of *Tyre*, the poſſeſſion of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*. He dying not long after his conqueſt of *Perſia*, this Countrey lay as it were at ſtake betwixt *Ptolemy* King of *Egypt*, and *Antigonus* the chief Lord of *Aſia*: but the poſſeſſion of it, together with the reſt of the *Perſian* Empire, in both *Aſias*, fell in concluſion to the ſhare of *Seleucus*, for his many great and ſignal victories ſurnamed *Nicanor*; a man ſtrangely preferred. For being, at the firſt, Governour of *Chaldea* only, he was forced to leave *Babylon*, and forſake his Province for fear of *Antigonus*, then dreadfull to all the *Macedonian* Captains; and to flie into *Egypt*, where he became *Ptolemies* Admiral. After which *Ptolemy* fighting a pitched field with *Demetrius*, ſon to *Antigonus*, took *Seleucus* with him, and having won the battel, gave him aid and licenſe to recover his former government. *Seleucus*, wel-beloved of the people, ſoon made himſelf Maſter, not of *Chaldea* only, but of all the *Perſian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*: and not long after (being ſeconded by his good friends *Ptolemy*, *Caſſander*, and *Lyſimachus*) he encountred *Antigonus* at *Ipſus* in *Ionia*, where *Antigonus* himſelf was ſlain, and his whole Army routed. This victory made *Seleucus* Lord of all *Aſia*, from whence paſſing over into *Europe*, he vanquiſhed and ſlew *Lyſimachus*: Seven moneths after which victory, he was ſlain by *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, whoſe patron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the laſt ſurvivor of all *Alexanders* Princes, and the onely poſſeſſor of all the Dominions which his Maſter had, by the way of conqueſt, *Ægypt* excepted. His Succeſſours, although they were Lords of all *Aſia*, yet ſince in *Syria* they kept their reſidence, to the end that they might the better furniſh themſelves with Souldiers out of *Greece*, upon all occaſions, as was ſaid before, they were commonly called the Kings of *Syria*. But long they held not in that greatneſs of eſtate and power, which *Seleucus* left them: though being a ful-bodied tree, and of ſeveral limbs, it endured the lopping off of many branches, and many a ſad blow at the very root of it, before it fell. For in the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of this houſe, *Arſaces* a noble *Parthian* recovered from it all the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire, lying on that ſide of *Euphrates*; and erected the ſo much celebrated

Parthian Kingdome, whereof more in *Perſia*. And in the reign of *Antiochus Magnus*, ſo called for his victories in *Egypt*, *Judea* and *Babilonia*, the *Romans* extorted from it all the *Aſian* Provinces, on this ſide Mount *Taurus*; not wanting many provocations to incite them to it, For he not only had made war againſt *Ptolemy Philopater* King of *Egypt*, whom the Romans had taken into their protection; but ſtirred up the Cities and States of *Greece* againſt them, invaded *Lyſimachia*, and ſome other parts of *Europe* in defiance of them, and had received *Annibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, their moſt mortal enemies, into his dominions, governing his counſels by the influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that ambition and avarice, to add to their fame and Empire by the overthrow of ſo great a Prince, did perſwade much with them. So that the point being brought to a ready iſſue, they pleaded it on both ſides in the battel of *Magneſia*, a City of *Lydia*; to which *Antiochns* brought an Army of 300000 foot, and as many armed *Chariots* beſides ſtore of *Elephants*, if the *Roman* writers be not over laviſh in their reports. But rejecting the advice of *Annibal*, and committing his affairs wholly to *Evil-Counſellors*, he was vanquiſhed by no more then four *Legions* of enemies: and for his peace compelled to quit all his *Aſian* Provinces, on that ſide of *Taurus*, and to pay 15000 *Talents* in ready money for the charge of the war. The reſt of his eſtates they were content he ſhould enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile ceſſiſſet* (as *Florus* handſomly puts it on him) becauſe he had ſo eaſily relinquiſhed that. Afterwards in the civil broils among themſelves, about the ſucceſſion of the Kingdom; *Alexander*, King of the *Jews*, took from them many of their beſt Towns in *Paleſtine*, as *Joppa*, *Gaza*, *Anthedon*, *Azotus*, *Rhinocorura*, almoſt all *Samaria*, and *Gaulonitis*, with *Scythopolis*, *Cadara*, and many other ſtrong Towns in *Cœle-Syria*. Finally, when they had conſumed almoſt all the Royal race, and changed their Kings no leſs then ten times in 40 years (a ſure ſigne of a falling and expiring Kingdom) they were fain to caſt themſelves upon *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, a puiſſant and ſucceſsful Prince, till ingaged in the quarrel of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*: by whom ſtripped of all his eſtates on this ſide *Euphrates*, he was fain to content himſelfe with his own *Armenia*; leaving *Syria* to the abſolute diſpoſal of *Pompey*, who preſently reduced it to the form of a Province. This ſaid, we have not much more to do with the houſe of *Seleucus*, but to lay down their names, and times of their ſeveral goverments, till we draw towards the laſt end of

The *MACEDONIAN* KINGS of *SYRIA*.

A. M.

3654 1 *Seleucus Nicanor*, the firſt King of this houſe. 31.

3685 2 *Antiochus*, ſurnamed *Soter* or the *Saviour* memorable for nothing ſo much, as marying with *Stratonice* his Fathers Wife, in his Fathers life-time

3704 3 *Antiochus* II by his flattering Courtiers ſurnamed *Theos*, or the God, but being poiſoned by his Wife he proved a mortal.

3719 4 *Seleucus* II. ſurnamed by the like flattery, *Callinicus*, or fair Conquerour; becauſe ſhamefully beaten by the *Parthians*.

3739 5 *Seleucus* III. called for the like reaſon *Ceraunus*, or the *Thunder*; the eldeſt Son of *Callinicus*.

3742 6 *Antiochus* III. ſurnamed *Magnus*, the younger Son of *Callinicus*, a Prince that imbraced many great actions, and was fortunate in his ſucceſſes beyond *Euphrates*: he plagued the *Jewes*, but loſt all *Aſia Minor* unto the Romans.

3778 7 *Seleucus* IV. called *Philopator*, the ſon of *Antiochus*, who firſt began to caſt his eye upon the riches of the Temple of *Hieruſalem*.

3770 8 *Antiochus* IV. ſurnamed *Epiphanes*, or the *Illuſtrious*, but more truly *Epimanes*, or the *mad*, the great ſcourge of the *Jewes*; brother of *Seleucus Philopator*. With whom beginneth the ſtory of the firſt Book of the *Maccabees*.

3802 9 *Antiochus* V. called by the name of *Eupator*, the ſon of *Epiphanes*; who by *Lyſius* his Captain tyrannized over the poor *Judæans*, for the little time that he reigned; as did alſo

3804 10 *Demetrius*, ſurnamed *Soter*, ſon of *Seleucus Philopater*, by the hands of *Nicanor*: having poſſeſſed himſelf of the diadem by the death of *Eupator*, ſlain in his favour by the Souldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards depoſed for a time by *Alexander Bala*, pretending himſelf to be the ſon of *Eupator*, ſupported herein by the *Antiochians*.

3814 11 *Alexander Bala*, diſcomfited in his firſt battel by *Demetrius*, whom he ſlew and vanquiſhed in the ſecond; married *Cleopatra* Daughter of *Ptolemy Philometor*, by whoſe aid he was victorious. But a quarrel breaking out betwen them, *Ptolemy* invaded *Syria*, and cauſed himſelf to be crowned King of it; *Alexander* being ſlain by ſome of his Souldiers.

3819 12 *Demetrius* II. ſurnamed *Nicator*, Son of *Demetrius* the firſt, recovered his Fathers Kingdom, a friend of the *Maccabees*, but ſo cruel to his own people, that he was driven out of his kingdom by *Tryphon* General of his Armies.

3821 13 *Antiochus* VI. ſurnamed *Entheus*, the Son of *Alexander* and *Cleopatra*, advanced unto the Throne by *Tryphon*, and after ſlain by him to make way for himſelf unto the Diadem.

3824 14 *Tryphon*, called alſo *Diodorus*, having driven out *Demetrius*, and ſlain *Antiochus*, made himſelf King.

3827 15 *Antiochus* VII. ſurnamed *Sedetes*, brother of *Demetrius*, having overcome and ſlain *Tryphon*, ſucceeded him in the eſtate; for a while victorious againſt the *Parthians*, but afterwards overcome and ſlain by them. After whoſe death *Demetrius Nicanor*) having lived in *Parthia* ſince the loſs of his kingdom) was reſtored again unto the Throne; which having held about four years, he was again diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by

3843 16 *Alexnnder* II. ſurnamed *Zebenua*, an *Ægyptian* of mean birth, ſet up by *Ptolemy Euergetes*, and pretending himſelf to be the adopted Son of *Antiochus*, afterward vanquiſhed and ſlain by

3845 17 *Antiochus* VIII. from the crookedneſs of his noſe ſurnamed *Gryphus*, Son of *Demetrius*, aided herein by the *Ægyptian*, with whom reconciled; having reigned about eight years in peace; embroiled himſelf in war with his half brother *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Cyzicenus*; which with variable ſucceſſes on both ſides, continued till the time of his death, having reigned 29. years in all.

3874 18 *Seleucus* V. Son of *Antiochus Gryphus*, in the beginning of his reign overcame and ſlew his Uncle *Cyzicenus*; but being vanquiſhed by *Antiochus* ſurnamed *Euſebes* or *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Cyzicenus*, he fled into *Cilicia*, and was there burnt in his Palace.

19 *Antiochus* IX. ſurnamed *Euſebes*, having firſt vanquiſhed *Seleucus*, and afterwards *Antiochus*, another of the Sons of *Gryphus*, was conwned King of *Syria*; but ſlain not long after in the *Perſian* wars.

20 *Philip*, and *Demetrius* III. ſurnamed *Eucarus*, younger Sons of *Gryphus*, jointly Kings of *Syria*; but reigning in their ſeveral parts. Of which *Demetrius* intending to diſſeize his brother, was himſelf vanquiſhed, and forced to fly into *Parthia*; leaving the whole kingdom unto *Philip*. During which wars amongſt themſelves, *Syria* was invaded, and in part conquered by *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, and *Alexander* King of the *Jews*.

3884 21 *Tigranes*, King of *Armenia*, during theſe diſſentions was by the *Syrians* choſen King, that by his power they might be freed from the *Jews* and *Arabians*: the moſt puiſſant Prince that reigned in *Syria*, ſince the time of *Antiochus* the *Great*, as being King of *Syria* by election, of *Armenia* by ſucceſſion, of *Media* by conqueſt. But ingaging himſelf with *Mithridates* (whoſe Daughter he had married) againſt the *Romans*, was vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*: who with the loſs of five *Romans* only, and the wounds of an hundred, is reported to have ſlain of his Enemies above a 100000 men. Finally, being again broken and vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*, he yeelded himſelf to *Pompey* (who being appointed *Lucullus* ſucceſſor, deprived him of the honour of ending that war) and retaining to himſelf *Armenia* onely, he left all *Syria* to the *Romans*, having reigned eighteen years. And though *Antiochus Comagenus*, the Sonne of *Euſebes*, petitioned *Pompey* for the reſtitution to the Throne of his Anceſtors; yet it would not be granted: *Pompey* replying, that he would not truſt the Countrey into ſuch weak hands as were not able to defend it againſt the *Arabians*, *Parthians*, and the like invaders; and ſo reduced it preſently to the form of a Province. The government of this Countrey under theſe new Lords, was accompted to be one of the greateſt honours of the Empire: the *Præfect* hereof having almoſt regal juriſdiction over all the Regions of this ſide *Euphrates*; with a ſuper-intendency over *Ægypt*. *Niger*, the concurrent of *Severus*, was *Præfect* here; and on the ſtrength hereof preſumed on that competition. So alſo was *Caſſius Syrus*, who being a Native of this Countrey, and well-beloved by reaſon of his moderate and plauſible demeanour, had almoſt tumbled *M. Antonius* out of his Throne. On this occaſion it was enacted by the Senate, that no man hereafter ſhould have any *military* or *legal* command in the Province where he was born: Leſt perhaps ſupported by the natural propenſion of the people to one of their own Nation; and heartned by the powerableneſs of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himſelf, which was common to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and paſſed but for one Province onely, *Phœnicia* being alſo taken into the accompt; which made the *Antiochians* ſo proud and inſolent, that *Adrian*, in his time intended to ſubduct *Phœnicia* from it, *ne tot civitatum Metropolis* Antiochia *diceretur* (ſaith *Gallicanus*) that *Antioch* might not be the chief of ſo many Cities. But what he lived not to accompliſh, was performed by *Conſtantine*. By whom *Phœnicia* was not onely taken off, but *Syria* it ſelf divided into four diſtinct Provinces, as was ſhewed before, each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City; but all ſubordinate to the command of the *Comes*, or *Præfect* of the Eaſt, as he to the command of the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; the greateſt Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often ſpoke already.

For the defence hereof aſwell againſt all Forein invaſions, as the inſurrections of the Natives (a wavering and inconſtant people) the *Romans* kept herein continual pay four Legions, with their aids, and other additaments. For ſo many *Mutianus* had here in the time of *Galba*; and by the ſtrength & reputation of thoſe Forces, was able to transfer the Empire upon *Veſpaſian*. And though the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperours to whoſe ſhare it fell, in the diviſion of the Empire, rather increaſed than diminiſhed any part of this ſtrength: yet when the fatal time was come, and that Empire was in the declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Haumer* their third *Caliph*, *An.* 636. poſſeſſed themſelves of it; *Heraclius* then reigning in *Conſtantinople*. And it continued in their power till *Trangrolipix* the *Turk*, having conquered *Perſia*, and the Provinces on that ſide of *Euphrates*, paſſed over the River into *Syria*, and made himſelf Maſter of a great part of that alſo. A quarrel falling out betwixt him and his neareſt Kinſ-men, and thereby a great ſtop made in their further progreſs, was thus compoſed, by the mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* in the time of *Axan* his Succeſſor.

To *Cutlu Moſes* was aſſigned a convenient Army, to be by him employed againſt the *Chriſtians*, with Regal power over the Provinces by him gained; without relation or ſubordination to the *Perſian* Sultans: of whoſe ſucceſſes and affairs hath been ſpoke elſewhere. To *Melech* and *Ducat*, two others of his diſcontented kinſmen, but all of the ſame *Selzuccian* family, he gave the fair Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, and thoſe parts of *Syria*, with whatſoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, who then held all *Phœnicia*, and the Sea-coaſts of *Paleſtine*; to be held in fee and vaſſalage of the Crown of *Perſia*. To theſe two brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the *Turkiſh* kingdom in *Syria*: who, with their Succeſſors, by reaſon that here they held their reſidence, cauſed themſelves to be called

The TURKISH KINGS of DAMASCUS.

1075 1 *Melech* and *Ducat*, the firſt *Turkiſh* Kings of *Damaſcus*, by the gift of *Axon*, the ſecond Sultan of the *Turks* in *Perſia*, added to their dominions all the reſt of *Syria*, together with part of *Cilicia*, and ſome neighbouring Provinces in the *Leſſer Aſia*.

2 ------ Sultan of *Damaſcus*, at ſuch times as the *Chriſtians* of the Weſt won the *Holy Land*: againſt whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damaſcus*; and in a ſet battel diſcomfited and ſlew *Roger* the *Norman*, Prince of *Antioch*.

1146 3 *Noradine*, (the ſon of *Sanguin*) General of the Armies, and Son-in-Law to the former King, ſucceeded him in the eſtate. A noble Prince, memorable amongſt other things for a gallant anſwer made to his Commanders, when they perſwaded him to take the advantage on the death of *Baldwin* the third, and to invade *Hieruſalem* whilſt the *Chriſtians* were buſie in ſolemnizing his Funerals. Not ſo, ſaith he, *Compaſſion and regard is to be had of the juſt ſorrow of thoſe* Chriſtians, *who have loſt ſuch a King, as could not be equalled in the world.*

1175 4 *Melechſala*, Son of *Noradine*, contemned by reaſon of his youth, by his Nobles, and Souldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King; by whom diſpoſſeſſed firſt, and after vanquiſhed.

1176 5 *Saladine* the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Egypt*, having vanquiſhed the *Perſians*, or *Parthians*, coming under the conduct of *Cacobed*, Uncle to *Melechſala*, to reſtore that Prince to his eſtate, remained King of *Damaſcus*: and by the puiſſance of his Armies, recovered from the *Chriſtians* all *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hieruſalem* alſo.

1199 6 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphzel* the eldeſt Son of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Damaſcus*: which he exchanged for that of *Egypt* with his Brother *Elaziz*.

7 *Elaziz*, the ſecond Son of *Saladine*, ſucceeded upon this Exchange in the Realm of *Damaſcus*, murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.

8 *Saphradine* the Brother of *Saladine*, having barbarouſly murdered eight of the Sons of *Saladine*, (the youngeſt called *Saphradine* eſcaping onely, who was after Sultan of *Aleppo*) poſſeſſed himſelf of the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*, left at his death to *Corradine*, his Son or Nephew.

9 *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death, left *Sultan* of *Damaſcus*; to which all *Syria* and *Paleſtine* were then made *Provincials*.

But the treacheries and murders of *Saphradine* crying loud for vengeance, *Haalon* the *Tartar*, in the year 1262. having taken the King of *Damaſcus* Priſoner (but whether *Corradine*, or ſome other, I am not able to ſay) brought him before the walls of the City; threatning to kill him in the ſight of the people, if they did not deliver it unto him. Which the Citizens refuſing to do, the wretched King was torn in pieces, and the City taken by aſſault: the kingdom by the Conquerours conferred upon *Agab* the Son of *Haalon*. And ſo ended the *Selzuccian* family of the Kings of *Damaſcus* in the perſon of *Corradine*, or the ſon of *Corradine*, moſt miſerably murdered by the *Tartars*: as it had done in *Egypt* 17 years before, in the perſon of *Melechſela*, and *Elmutam*, the ſon of *Meledine*, as villainouſly diſpoſſeſſed and murdered by the *Mamalucks*. So ſlippery is the foundation of thoſe kingdoms which are laid in blood.

Nor did this kingdom hold long in the hands of the *Tartars*, recovered from them in ſhort time by the *Mamalucks*, then Kings of *Egypt*; from them once more regained by the furious *Tamerlane*: who in the year 1400 beſieged *Damaſcus* with an Army of 1200000 men, (if the number be not miſtaken, and one Cypher added more than ſhould) in purſuite whereof he filled up the ditches with his Priſoners, put all the People to the ſword; and with great Art raiſed three Towers as a Trophey of his victory, built with the heads of thoſe whom he had ſo ſlaughtered. A man ſo ſtrangely made up of vice and vertues, that it is hard to ſay which had the predominancy. But the violence of this tempeſt being overblown, the *Mamalucks*, from whom he had alſo conquered the kingdom of *Egypt*, recovered *Syria* by degrees, and repaired *Damaſcus*, continuing in their power till the year 1516. when *Selimus* the firſt diſcomfited *Campſon Gaurus* the *Ægyptian* Sultan in the fields of *Aleppo*. Upon the news whereof the Citizens of *Damaſcus*, fearing the ſpoil of their rich City, then of very great trading, ſet open their gates unto the *Victors*; as did all the other Cities and Towns of *Syria*, by their example. By means whereof, without any more blows, the *Turks* became Lords of this Countrey; as the next year of *Egypt* alſo, by the vanquiſhment and death of *Tonombeius* who ſucceeded *Campſon*: ſo rooting out the name and government of the *Mamalucks*, and adding thoſe rich kingdoms to the *Turkiſh* Empire. And ſo much for *Syria*.

Mount Hermon.

MOUNT HERMON.

In our paſſage out of *Cœle-Syria* into *Paleſtine*, we muſt croſs Mount *Hermon*; a legde of Hills, which beginning at the Eaſt point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places, and by ſeveral Nations called by divers names. By *Ptolemy* called *Alſadamus*; by the *Amorites*, *Shenir*; by the *Phœnicians*, *Syrion*; and by that name remembred in the Book of *Pſalms*. But *Alſadamus* they are called onely where they border upon *Cœle-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Traconitis* from *Arabia Deſerta*, they are called by *Moſes* and the Scriptures *Hermon*; part of the kingdom of *Og*, the King of *Baſan*, as is ſaid, *Joſuah*, *ch.* 12. *v.* 6. *Sirion* by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed *Deut. ch.* 3. *v.* 9. Running farther after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead*, or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonitæ*, after the name of the Region along which they paſs, and are conceived to be the higheſt part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long ridge of Mountains which there take beginning. And ſo we are to underſtand the words of the Prophet *Jeremie*, ſaying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to ſay, that as the head is the higheſt part of a man; ſo theſe hills, or this part of them, was the higheſt of all the branches, or ſpurs of *Libanus*. Called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that heap of ſtones which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a witneſs of the *Covenant* which was made betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. *v.* 47. the word ſignifying in the Original, *an heap of Witneſſes*. And *Laban* ſaid, *This heap is a Witneſs betwixt me and thee this day; therefore was the name of it called* Galeed, *ver.* 48. By theſe hills, and the main body of *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phœnicia* and *Idumæa* on the Weſt; the land of *Paleſtine* is ſo ſhut up on every ſide, that no Fortreſs can be ſtronger by wit or Art, than that Countrey by Nature: the paſſages in ſome parts ſo narrow, as hardly to afford paſſage for a ſingle perſon. *Clauditur undique montibus, hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concurſu Torrentium, inde altis & implexis anfractibus ſic contractis, ut per anguſtos colles vix pateat tranſitus viatori*, as my Author hath it. I had almoſt forgot to add, that that part of theſe hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sion*, as *Deut.* 4. *v.* 48. where it is ſaid that the *Iſraelites poſſeſſed the Land from* Aroer *on the bank of the River* Arnon, *even unto Mount* Sion, which is *Hermon*. As alſo that one of the higheſt tops or Summits of it, had the name of *Amana*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the fourth of the *Canticles*; by ſome miſtaken for *Amanus*, a branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia*, in the Leſſer *Aſia*, with which *Solomon* had but ſmall or no acquaintance. And ſo having cleared our ſelves of ſo much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we paſs over to *Paleſtine*: where we ſhall meet with it again, (or rather with the Weſtern parts and branches of it) under the name of *Gilead* and *Traconitis*, as a part of that Conntrey.

OF PALESTINE.

PALESTINE is bounden on the Eaſt, with the Hills laſt mentioned, by which parted from *Cœle-Syria*,and *Arabia-Deſerta*; on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea,and ſome part of *Phœnicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus* which divides it from *Syria*, and the reſt of *Phœnicia*; and on the South, with ſome part of *Arabia Petræa*..

It was firſt called *Paleſtine* from the *Philiſtims*, the moſt potent Nation in thoſe parts. A name firſt found in the Hiſtory of *Herodotus*, but generally uſed in times ſucceeding, by the *Greeks* and *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adæquate name of the whole Countrey, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more reſtrained, and properly belonging to ſo much hereof, as was in poſſeſſion of the Tribes of *Iſrael*. And of this ſort, are 1. *Canaan*, or the land of *Canaan*, ſo called from *Canaan* the ſon of *Cham*, by whom firſt peopled after the floud. Secondly, The *Land of Promiſe*, becauſe by God promiſed to *Abraham*, and his ſeed, for an habitation; Thirdly, *Iſrael*,from the *Iſraelites*, or ſons of *Jacob*, whoſe ſurname was *Iſrael*; Fourthly, *Judæa*, and by us *Jewry*, from the *Jewes*, or people of the Tribe of *Iudah*, the moſt prevalent of the Tribes of *Iſrael*; And fourthly, *Terra Sancta*, or the *Holy Land*, becauſe the ſubject of the greateſt part of the Holy Scripture; and that the work of our Redemption was herein accompliſhed by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithſtanding we muſt know that though theſe names do many times by a *Synechdoche*, expreſs the whole Countrey of *Paleſtine*; yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Iſraelites* were ever Maſters of the whole: except onely in the times of *David*, and of ſome of the *Macchabæan* Princes, as alſo in ſome part of the reign of *Herod* the Great; all which had the good fortune to command it totally.

But being the moſt conſiderable people of it were the Tribes of *Iſrael*; we will firſt look upon the Countrey People under that capacity. And for ſo much hereof as was held by them, it is ſituate between the third and fourth Climates; the longeſt day being fourteen hours and a quarter. The whole length but to 200 miles, and not above 80 in breadth; yet was of ſuch a fruitfull ſoil, that before the coming in of the *Iſraelites*,it had 30 Kings: and after the coming in of that people, ſo extremely populous, that *David* numbred a Million and 300000 fighting men, beſides thoſe of the Tribes of *Levi*, and *Benjamin*. But of the fruitfulneſs hereof more ſhortly.

As for the People they were by compoſition of a midle ſtature, but ſtrong of body: in their beſt times a murmuring and a ſtiff-necked generation, never well pleaſed either with God or man, with their Prieſts or Princes; ſeldom conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much conſtant to themſelves. So crippled in their going betwixt ſuperſtitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly. Idolatrous above meaſure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon*: and after that as ſuperſtitious and ſevere,in the point of their Sabbath, as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worſhip of Idols. No *Medium* on either ſide, but extream in both. Divided antiently into theſe four ranks, that is to ſay, 1 *Jewes*, 2 *Helleniſts*, 3 *Proſelytes*, and 4 *Samaritans*; all of them pretending a right unto this Countrey, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of theſe the firſt called *Jewes*, from *Judah*, the predominant Tribe, and *Hebrewes*, from *Heber* the ſon of *Sela*, grand-ſon of *Sem*, and one of the Anceſtors of *Abraham*; were ſuch as naturally deſcended of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, and lived for the moſt part in their own Countrey; adhering to the Law of *Moſes*, and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Teſtament, from the book of *Geneſis* to the book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called alſo *Iſraelites*, becauſe deſcended from the loins of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave the name of *Iſrael*, for his greater honour. But after the ten Tribes were carried away by *Salmanaſſar* to an endleſs captivity; and the two Tribes (with the remainder of the reſt) turned from that temporary one which they found in *Babylon*, the name of *Iſraelites* was laid by, and that of *Jews* aſſumed, as more proper to them. Theſe read the Scriptures, and executed all *Divine Offices* in their natural *Hebrew*.

2. The *Helleniſts*, were ſuch as were *Iews* by parentage, but lived diſperſed in moſt Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: called by that name (we may *Engliſh* it, the *Gracizing Iewes*) becauſe they read the Scriptures in the *Greeks* or *Septuagints* tranſlation; and performed all publick offices in that language alſo. In other things, as *ſuperſtitious* in their Sabbaths, as tenacious of their *Circumciſion*, and others of the rites and ceremonies of the Law of *Moſes*, as the *Iewes* of *Paleſtine*: and for that reaſon, ſcorned and derided by the *Gentiles*, amongſt whom they lived; *Credat Iudæus apella*, ſaith one of the Poets, relating to their circumciſing; *Recutiaque Sabbata palles*, ſaith another of them, with ſcorn enough unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illic ritus & cæteris moralibus contrarii*, ſaith *Tacitus*, a graver Authour, of the whole body of their *Rituals*, or Acts of worſhip.

3. The *Proſelytes* were ſuch, as not being *Iews* by birth, or deſcent of parentage, conformed themſelves unto their cuſtoms, and deſired to be admitted into their Religion. And theſe were alſo of two ſorts, the one called *Proſelyti Portæ*; and the other *Proſelyti Fœderis.* The firſt of theſe, admitted by the *Iews* to the worſhip of God, and inſtructed in the hopes of the life to come; were only tyed to thoſe precepts which the *Hebrew* Doctors call the *Precepts of the ſons of Noah*: but were neither circumciſed, nor otherwiſe conform to the Laws of *Moſes*. Which Precept of the ſons of *Noah*, ſo called, becauſe ſuppoſed to be given by *Noah* unto his Sons, when he came out of the *Ark*, were ſeven in number: that is to ſay, 1. That they dealt uprightly with every man, 2. That they bleſſed and magnified the name of God, 3. That they worſhipped not any falſe Gods, but to abſtain from Idolatry, 4 To refrain from all unlawfull luſts and copulations, 5. To keep themſelves from theft and robbery, 6. And from ſhedding bloud, And 7. not to eat the fleſh or member of any beaſt, taken from it when it was alive, by which all cruelty was forbidden. Theſe though they were admitted to the worſhip of God, and might repair unto the Temple; yet becauſe of their Uncircumciſion they were not ſuffered to converſe with the *Iews*, nor to come into the ſame Court of the Temple with them: but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart aſſigned them in the worſhip of God, which was called *Atrium Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the outermoſt of all. The other *Proſelytes*, which were called *Proſelyti fœderis*, conformed in all things to the *Iews*, as in Circumciſion, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies: and were accounted of as adopted *Iews*, priviledged as they were, to worſhip in the *Inner-Court*; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile*; and in a word, partakers with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their race or parentage. Theſe laſt in the New Teſtament called ſimply *Proſelytes*, without any addition: the former by the name of Σεβόμενοι, or the *worſhipping Gentiles*, of which ſee *Act.* 16.*v.*14. and *ch.* 17.4.17. & *ch.* 18.*v.*4, &c.

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they poſſeſſed a great part of this Countrey, which the *Proſelites* did not; yet were not ſo much *Iewes*, as they. But of theſe more anon when we come to *Samaria*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jewes* themſelves they are divided alſo into ſeveral *Sects*; as *viz.* 1 *Eſſeni*, 2 the *Sadduces*, 3 the *Scribes*, 4 the *Phariſees*, 5 the *Herodians*, and 6 the *Gaulonites*, or *Gallileans*. 1 The *Eſſenes* or *Eſſeni*, derive their name, as ſome conceive, from *Aſca*, which ſignifieth *facere*, to do, becauſe they laboured with their hands; as others ſay, from *Aſa*, which ſignifieth θεραπεύειν, or to *cure diſeaſes*, becauſe they were much given to the ſtudy and practiſe of *Phiſick*. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The firſt time they were heard of, was in the time of *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas Macbæus*, about 150 years before *Chriſts* nativity; then mentioned by *Ioſephus*, *Antiq. Iudaic. l.* 13.*cap.*9. A *Pythagorean* kind of *Iew*, and not much differing in opinion from thoſe old *Philoſophers*, profeſſing as they did, 1 Community of goods, 2 Abſtaining even from lawfull pleaſures, 3 Forbidding of Oaths, 4 Forbearing Wine, and drinking Water, 5 Aſcribing the conduct of affairs to *fate* or *deſtiny*, 6 And uſing only inanimate or unbloudy Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but theſe the principal: *forbidding marriage* not being common to the *Sect*, but only to ſome few amongſt them. And though we find no mention of them in the New *Teſtament*, the *Sect* in thoſe times being ſmall and inconſiderable; yet it is thought that S, *Paul* alludeth to their *Tenets*: as where he adviſeth *Timothy* to make uſe of *Wine*, and glanceth upon thoſe who prohibited *marriage*, 1 *Tim.* 4. 3. or condemned others in the uſe of *meat and drink*, 2 *Coloſ.* 16. As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Monaſteries*, or *Colledges*, and in every one had their Σεμνεῖον, or *Oratory*: admitting none into their fellowſhips or ſociety, unleſs he brought all he had into their common Treaſury; and not then neither under a three years *Probationerſhip*. More of them he that liſteth to ſee, may ſatisfie himſelf in that tract of *Philo*, intituled *De vita centemplativa*, where he moſt copiouſly deſcribeth their *Inſtitutes* and courſe of life: miſtakingly applyed by *Euſebius* to the *Primitive Chriſtians*, as if that tract had purpoſely been compoſed of them, by that learned *Iew*.

2. The *Saduces* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander* the *Great* and is thought to be the firſt founder of them; or from *Sadoc* an *Hebrew* word, ſignifying *Iuſtice*; the men pretending to be ſo exact and ſtrict *Iuſtitiaries*, as if they would juſtifie themſelves before Gods Tribunal. The occaſion of the Sect or hereſie (for both it was) ſaid to riſe from a miſtake of *Antigonus*, a right learned man. Who teaching that we ought not to ſerve God, as Servants do their Maſters, for the hope of reward; occaſioned *Sadoc* and *Batius*, two of his Auditors, to conceive that there was no reward nor recompenſe for a godly life; and conſequently no *Reſurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. Theſe were the moſt capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Acts* 23. 7. 8. *Mat.* 22. 3. *Luke* 20, 20. 27, *&c.* But other *Dogmata* they had, not mentioned in the holy Scripture: aſcribing nothing unto Fate, or Predeſtination, but all things altogether to a mans free-will. 2. Teaching the ſoul to be annihilated, at the hour of death; 3 Rejecting all Traditions; and 4. Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moſes*. In moſt of their opinions contrary to the *Scribes* and *Phariſees*, but joyning with them both in oppoſing Chriſt: and though like *Sampſons* Foxes they looked divers wayes, and were tied together by their tails only; yet in thoſe tails they carried firebrands to deſtroy Gods harveſt, and had done it, if they had been able.

3. But indeed the Phariſees were the men, who were the Maſter-wits in the Arts of miſchief, *Homines robuſtiores impietatis*, in the Fathers words. Fellows of ſuch a perfect and concocted malice, that they were almoſt able to poſſeſs the devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to ſeperate. *Separatiſts* we may rightly call them. For they were firſt ἀφωρισμένοι εἰς τὴν νόμον, ſeperated to the ſtudy of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpoſe at the feet of *Gamaliel*: And 2. ἀφωρισμένοι εἰς τὴν ἁγιωσύνην, ſeparated from the reſt of mankind, by a more ſtrict profeſſion of ſanctity; as the *Phariſee* boaſted of himſelf that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might ſo ſeem

unto ſimple men, they did thirdly ſeparate themſelves from the ſociety and converſation of others not ſo pure as themſelves, whom they called *populum terræ*, or the Sons of the earth, upbraiding Chriſt that he kept company with *Publicans and Sinners*: and more than ſo, uſed a particular kind of habit, & had a garbe unto themſelves which no others had; uſing it for a by-word amongſt themſelves, that *Veſtes* populi terræ, *ſunt conculcatio Phariſæorum.* To which end, as their countenances were more clouded and ſevere than others; ſo did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broader ſize than others did: which, by the way, were *ſcrols of Parchment* bound about their heads and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandements of God; fooliſhly ſo interpreting the words of *Deut. And they ſhal be as frontlets between thine eyes, ch. 6. v.* 8, &c. They began at the ſame time with the *Sadduces*; which was about 300 years before Chriſts nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, beſides thoſe ſpecified above, which were alſo *practicable*, they mentioned 1 a *Pythagorean Metempſychoſis*, affirming that the ſoul of a righteous man paſſed from one into another, at the time of his death: from whence the divers opinions touching Chriſt our Saviour, *Mat.* 16. *v.* 14. are ſuppoſed to ſpring; as if his body had been animated with the ſoul of *Elias*, *John* the *Baptiſt*, *Jeremy*, or ſome other Prophet. 2 They adhered ſo tenaciouſly to unwritten traditions, that in compariſon of them, they neglected the written Law, as either inſufficient or impertinent: And 3. aſcribed ſo much ſanctity unto frequent waſhings, eſpecially when they came from Market, *Mark* 7. *v.* 4. (where poſſibly they might meet with ſome unclean perſons) and before their ſitting down to meat, *Mat.* 15. 2. that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and waſh, the *Phariſee* would rather chooſe to waſh than drink, though he died for thirſt. More of them he that liſt to ſee, may find it copiouſly ſet down in the 24 chapter of S. *Matthew*; and thither I refer the Reader. By means of which pretenſions to ſo great a *ſanctity*, and ſome other arts they had to abuſe the people; they grew ſo ſtrong, and had ſuch ſtore of followers, and dependants on them, that they became formidable in ſhort time, to their Kings and Princes. Inſomuch that *Alexandra* durſt not enter on the Government, in her Childrens nonage, as *Joſephus* telleth us, *Antiqu. lib.* 13. *cap.* 23. untill ſhe had permitted all things unto their diſpoſing; καὶ μηδὲν δίχα τῆς ἐκείνων γνώμης, *&c.* and promiſed to do nothing without their advice. And this ſhe did by the direction of King *Alexander*, her dying Husband: whoſe government, as ſhe found by too ſad experience had in many things proved unſucceſsfull, διὰ τούτους ὑβρίσθαι παρ' αὐτοῦ, becauſe ſhe had put ſome ſcorns upon them, and otherwiſe offended that prevailing faction. A faction ſo predominant amongſt the people, ſaith the ſame *Joſephus*, *Antiqu. lib.* 19. *cap.* 18. ὡς καὶ κατὰ βασιλέως τι λέγοντες, καὶ κατ' Ἀρχιερέως, *&c.* that whatſoever they pleaſed to ſpread abroad either of the *High-Prieſt*, or the King himſelf, how falſe or ſcandalous ſoever: it was received for truth without more diſpute, or any enquiry made into it.

4. But of the *Phariſees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on, as either the Authors or Promoters of any Sect of Religion in the *Jewiſh* Church; but as the names of two oppoſite factions in the Civil State. The firſt were ſuch who depending upon *Herods* fortune, as he did on the pleaſure of the *Roman* Emperors; ſollicited the paying of tribute to the *Romans*: and earneſtly preſſed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more indeared to his Maſters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground nick-named *Herodians* by the People, as men that more endeavoured the greatneſs and eſtate of *Herod*, than the proſperity and liberty of their native Country. And poſſibly enough it is, that ſome amongſt them ſeeing the magnificence of *Herods* Palace and experimentally knowing his prowefs; might fancy him to be the *Meſſiah*, ſo long looked for; and thereby own this name with a better Title, than the others did. Oppoſite unto theſe were thoſe called the *Gaulonites* (we may call the one the *Court-faction*, the other the *faction* of the *Country* or Common-people:) ſo named from one *Judas*, a *Gaulonite* as *Joſephus* calleth him, from the place of his birth; a *Galilean*, as *Gamaliel* calleth him *Act.* 5. 37. from the place of his abode or habitation. By him the *Iews* were practiſed with to deny this tribute, telling them that it was a manifeſt token of their ſervitude, and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven: drawing them finally on this ground into open arms, in which action he and his adherents periſhed and were brought to nothing. Moſt of his followers were of *Galilee*, though he had ſome Diſciples in *Hieruſalem* and *Samaria*: and of theſe *Galileans* were thoſe poor men, whoſe blood *Pilate* is ſaid *to mingle with their Sacrifices*, *Luke* 13. 1.

The language of this people by them called the *Hebrew*, was naturally & originally the ſame which *Abraham* found in the land of *Canaan*, at his coming thither: as hath been ſhewn before when we were in *Phœnicia*. Uſed by them conſtanly till their ſubjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive to that Country, and conforming themſelves to the ſpeech and dialect of it; they came at laſt to ſpeak a kind of broken language, neither true *Chaldean*, nor good *Hebrew*, but one made of both. *Chaldee* as to the main body of it, but *Hebrew* as to the affixes, points, and Conjugations; being the ſame with that which we now call the *Syriack*. And at their coming home, after ſeventy years, had ſo far loſt the knowledge of their Mother tongue; that they were not able to underſtand the words of the Holy Scripture, when *Ezra* read it in their hearing: inſomuch that he was forced to employ ſome learned in that tongue to expound it to them. To this the *Scribes* ſo often mentioned in the New Teſtament, muſt refer their original: there being no ſuch office heard of til the time of *Ezra*, though long before that time the Law had ordinarily been read unto them in the feaſt of Tabernacles. For this cauſe they were called *Scribes of the Law*, *Ezra* 7. 6. *Doctors of the Law*, *Luke* 5. 17. & ſimply by the name of *Lawyers*, *Luk.* 7. 30. as men whoſe office was to expound the Law, & make it intelligible to the people. Theſe we may beſt reſemble to the Canoniſts in the Church of *Rome*, or the Divinity Reader in ſome School or Colledg: & grew to ſo great eſtimation in the *Iewiſh* State, that it was hard to ſay at laſt whether the *Phariſees* or they were the better men, for what the *Phariſees* gained on the common people by pretence of ſanctity, theſe got more juſtifiably by their zeal to the written word; which they endeavoured to preſerve from the common dangers both of corruption, and contempt. And though I look on thoſe men eſpecially, as the name of a Function, not a Sect: yet being they held ſo cloſe to the *Phariſees*, and concurred with them in moſt of their ſuperſtitions, as appeareth, *Mat.* 23. I conſider them as a ſtrong and potent Faction of great authority and influence in affairs of moment.

For matters of *Religion*, the people of this Land were priviledged above all others, had they had the grace to make good uſe of it: the Law being given to them by God the Father, the Goſpel preached amongſt them by God the Son, and that Goſpel countenanced and confirmed before their eyes, by the miraculous operations of the Holy Ghoſt. The Government of that Church in the time of the Law, by a ſubordination of Prieſts and Levites to their ſeveral heads; the Prieſts divided by King *David* into 24. ranks or *Claſſes*, each *Claſſis* ſerving in their turns at the holy Temple: the Chiefs or Heads of which ſeveral *Claſſes*, made but that body of men which are called *Principes Sacerdotum*, or chief Prieſts ſo often mentioned in the writings of the holy Evangeliſts. Over all which there was one Supreme, whom they called *Summum Sacerdotem*, or the High-Prieſt, deſcended lineally from *Aaron*, till the *Romans* out of avarice and reaſon of State made the Office ſaleable. And becauſe poſſibly the High-Prieſt might be under ſome *pollution*, and ſo uncapable by Law to perform his Office; he had his *Saffragan* (or *Sagan*) to diſcharge it for him. Of which ſort was *Zephaniah*, the *Sagan* or ſecond Prieſt to *Semiah*, mentioned, *Jer.* 52. 24. And of this ſort is *Annas* thought by ſome to have been to *Caiphas*; and for that cauſe the title of High-Prieſt to be given to both: *Luke* 3. 2. though others think that *Annas* was High-Prieſt in right, and the other in fact; the one being depoſed by the *Romans*, and the other ſuper-induced into the place. In time of *Chriſtianity* they were governed as in other Churches, by a ſubordination of Prieſts to Biſhops, the firſt Biſhop ſaid to be S. *James*, the ſon of *Alphaeus*, commonly called the *Lords Brother*, affirmed by *Ignatius*, Schollar to the Apoſtles, in his Epiſtle *ad Trallianos*; by *Egeſippus*, who lived in the Apoſtles times, as S. *Hierom* and *Euſebius* cite him; as alſo by *Clemens* of *Alexandria* cited by *Euſebius*, Hiſt. lib. 7. cap. 14. by *Cyril* of *Hieruſalem*, *Catechiſm* 4. and 14. *Epiphanius*, *Hæreſ.* 78. n. 7. S. *Ambroſe* in *Gal.* 1. S. *Chryſoſt.* on the laſt of S. *Johns* Goſpel; S. *Hierom* in his Catalogue of *Eccleſiaſtical* writers; S. *Auguſtine cont. Creſcon.* lib. 2. cap. 37. To whom there may be added the joynt conſent of 289. Prelates, aſſembled in the ſixth General-Councel holden at *Conſtantinople*, affirming *James* the *Lords Brother* to be the firſt Biſhop of *Hieruſalem*: all of them with the Fathers before mentioned, taking the word Biſhop in that ſenſe, in which it generally paſſed for the times they lived in. His ſucceſſors ſubject at the firſt to the Biſhop of *Cæſarea*, as their *Metropolitan*; though priviledged in their own Dioceſe, with the rights of *Patriarchs*, as appears evidently by the Acts of the *Nicene* Council. But afterwards for the greater honour of the Holy City, wherein our Saviour wrought the work of our redemption, it was ordained at *Chalcedon*, that the Biſhop of *Hieruſalem* ſhould have as well the juriſdiction as the name of a *Patriarch*: the three *Paleſtines* (for *Conſtantine* had before divided it into ſo many Provinces) beeing ſubducted from the power of the See of *Antioch*, to make up his *Patriarchate*. So ſtood it in elder times; but now by the incroachment of *Mahometaniſm* the Chriſtian Faith is ſo obſcured, and the beauties of it ſo eccliſped, that were it not for ſome Sects of Chriſtians dwelling in Mount *Sinai*, and about *Hieruſalem*, it might be ſaid without any manifeſt untruth, to be quite extinguiſhed.

But to look back upon the Country, it cannot be deſcribed more fully, and ſignificantly, than *Moſes* hath done it to our hands, in the 8. of *Deut.* Where it is ſaid to be *a land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountains and depths, that ſpring out of the Vallies and Hills; a land of Wheat and Barley, and Vines, and Fig-trees, and Pomegranates; of Oyl Olive, and Honey; a Land, wherein was bread without ſcarceneſs; a Land whoſe ſtones were as Iron, and out of whoſe hills one may dig braſs.* An ample commendation; & yet in ſome ſort ſhort of the Fertility of this flouriſhing Country; which did not only conſiſt in the choiſe and plenty, but in the perpetuity of its fruits: it being on record in the Epiſtles of the Emperour *Julian* (ſirnamed the *Apoſtate*) that the Fig-trees, and other Fruit-trees herein, were ſeldome or never without fruits; the old not fully falling off, till the new came on. Which his report if true, (as certainly he did not love our Saviour ſo well as to flatter the Country for his ſake) we have then an anſwer to the difficulty, which hath ſo much perplexed all Commentators in former times; and that is, why our Saviour ſhould curſe the Fig-tree for not bearing fruit, when the Text ſaith, that *the time of Fruits was not yet come*, *Mar.* 14. 13. For though the time for new Fruits was not come as yet (it being then but early Spring) yet our Saviour being hungry might expect to find ſome of the old, and failing of his expectation lay that curſe upon it. Nor is this ſolution of the doubt diſcountenanced, (rather much confirmed) by the Character and Condition of the Country, as it ſtands at preſent: naturally adorned with beautiful mountains, and luxurious Valleys, the Rocks affording excellent waters, and the Air never pinched with colds, nor ſcorched with heats. And though either by the negligence of the Inhabitants, or ſome curſe laid upon the Land, far ſhort of that fertility with which once it flouriſhed; Yet ſtill *Figs*, *Olives*, *Pomegrannates*, *Palm-trees*, are here very frequently to be ſeen; ſome ſtore of *Wine*, with *Oranges*, and the *Apple of Paradice*, which they preſerve upon the trees all the year long (which agrees very well with that of *Julian* ſpoken of before) as well furniſhed with *Honey* and *Sugar-canes*; as alſo with Goats, Swine, Hares, Quailes, and Partridges: but peſtered ſo in many places with Rats and Mice, that if it were not for certain *Birds* which feed upon them, it were not poſſible for the people to have any Harveſt. *Balm* they had anciently, not now. Nor any Nuts, Pears, Plums, or Cherries, but what are brought hither from *Damaſcus*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are 1 *Chiſon*, the *Corſans* of *Ptolemy*, which riſeth out of Mount *Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from Mount *Carmel* in *Phœnicia*. 2. *Cedron* a *Torrent* rather than a River, paſſing betwixt *Hieruſalem* and the Mount of *Olives*; but more remarkable for many notable actions, than many others of a greater both name and courſe. For over this Brook did *David* paſs when he fled from *Abſalom*; and over this our Saviour the Son of

David paſſed, when he went to his paſſion. On the Banks hereof did *Aſa* the King of *Judah*, burn his mothers *Idols*, 1 *Kings* 15.as *Joſiah* did the Veſſels which were made for *Baal*, 2 *Kings* 23.3 *Zared*, & 4. *Naphea*, which ariſing out of the Hills of the Tribe of *Judah*, have their fall into the *Mediterranean*. 5. *Arnon*, which hath his ſpring in the Hills ſo called, and endeth his courſe in the *Mare Mortuum*. 6. *Jaboc*, oft mentioned in Scriptures; which iſſuing out of the Mountains of *Galaad*, and 7. *Hermon*; which ſpringing from the Hills ſo named, loſe themſelves in *Jordan*. 8. *Jordan*, ſo called from *Jor* and *Dan*, two neighbouring fountains, out of which he ſeems to take his ſource: though they do alſo fetch their ſpring from *Phiala*, a round deep Well at the foot of *Anti-Libanus*, about twenty four miles from theſe fountains, into which he maketh his way like a *Mole* under ground. A River of more fame than length, breadth, or depth, running from North to South, almoſt in a ſtrait line to the *Dead Sea*, where he endeth his courſe; not navigably deep, nor above ten yards in breadth, where broadeſt; ſhadowed on both ſides with *Poplars*, *Tamarisk-trees*, and reeds of many ſeveral ſorts, of ſome of which the *Arabians* make *darts* and *Javelines*, of others *Arrows*, and ſome again they faſhion into pens to write with. Paſſing along it maketh two *Lakes*, the one in the *Upper Galilee*, by the antients called *Samachonitis*, dry for the moſt part in the Summer, and then covered with ſhrubs and ſedge; not mentioned in the holy Scriptures: the other in the *Lower Galilee*, about an hundred furlongs in length, & fourty in breadth; called the *Sea* of *Galilee* from the Countrey, the *Lake of Tyberias* from a City of that name on the banks thereof, & for the like cauſe called alſo the *Lake of Genezareth*. And here it is to be obſerved, that the River paſſeth thorough this Lake with ſo ſwift a courſe, that it preſerves it ſelf diſtinct from the waters of it both in taſte and colour, as is affirmed of *Nilus* for a long ſpace in the *Mediterranean*, and other great Rivers in their fall. Finally, having run thorow the plains of *Hiericho*, it finiſheth its courſe at laſt in the *Mare Mortuum*, or *Dead Sea*. Honoured with the name of a *Sea*, becauſe ſalt, and large, ſeventy miles long, and ſixteen broad; furniſhing with ſalt the whole land of *Jewry*: but called the *Dead Sea*, either becauſe it had no viſible efflux into the *Ocean*, nor is at all increaſed with the waters of this River and many other *Torrents* which fall into it; or becauſe no living Creature is nouriſhed in it, ſuffocated with the *bituminous* ſavour which it ſendeth forth, from the abundance of which matter is alſo called *Lacus Aſphaltites*. Nigh hereunto ſtood the once-famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*, with three others more, whence the valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, deſtroyed for their abominations by a fire from heaven: now fruitfull in ſhew only, but not in ſubſtance; the fruits here growing, being very fair unto the eye, *ſed levi tactu preſſa in vagū fatiſcunt pulverem*, but if touched, moulder into aſhes, as *Solinus* hath it.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it, beſides *Anti-Libanus*, and Mount *Hermon*, ſpoken of already, which be only borderers, are, 1. Mount *Sion*, memorable for the *Tower of David*, which was built upon it, called frequently the *Holy Hill of Sion*. 2. Mount *Moriah*, famous for the intended ſacrifice of *Iſaac*, and the Temple of *Solomon*. 3. Mount *Calvary*, on which CHRIST ſuffered, ſuppoſed to be the burial place of our father *Adam*. 4. Mount *Tabor*, on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5. Mount *Olivet*, from which he aſcended into heaven. 6. Mount *Garizim*, whereon ſtood the *Samaritans* Temple, their ordinary place of worſhip, mentioned *John* 4. 20. 8. The Mountains of *Saron*, ſtretching with intermixed Vallies, from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean*, not far from *Tyre*, there ending in a white Clif, and for that cauſe called *Capo Bianco* by the Sailer. The whole Mountain pleaſantly enriched with the fragrant ſmels of Roſemary, ſweet Marjoram, Hyſſop, Bayes, and other odoriferous plants which do grow there naturally: but for all that, deſtitute of any other Inhabitants than Leopards, Boars, Jaccalls, and ſuch ſavage Creatures. 9. The Mountains of *Gilboa*, the higheſt on the Weſt of *Jordan*; as 10. thoſe of *Baſan*, celebrated for their height in the Book of *Pſalms*, & 11. thoſe of *Abarim*, on the Eaſt-ſide of it: from one of the Summits of which laſt called *Nebo*, by ſome writers *Piſgah*, the Lord gave *Moſes* a ſurvey of the *Land of Promiſe*.

As for this whole Countrey comprehended in name of *Paleſtine*, it hath had divers diviſions, according to the quality of the people, or the will of thoſe who have been formerly maſters of it. Divided firſt betwixt the *Philiſtims*, *Perizites*, *Hittites*, *Jebuſites*, & others of the Sons of *Canaan*, on this ſide *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Ammorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the Sons of *Jacob*, is was divided into the twelve Tribes, of 1. *Judah*. 2. *Benjamin*. 3. *Simeon*. 4. *Dan*. 5. *Aſer*. 6. *Naphthali*. 7. *Zabulon*. 8, *Iſſachar*. 9. *Gad*. 10. *Ruben*. 11. *Ephraim*, & 12. *Manaſſeth*. When that great breach was made by *Jeroboam*, in the Kingdom of *David*, it was broken into the two Kingdoms of *Judah* and *Iſrael*; of which the firſt contained only the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other ten. When the *Iſraelites* were led Captive into *Aſſyria*, and a new ſet of people planted in their rooms, thoſe new-comers, from *Samaria*, their Capital Citie, had the name of *Samaritans*: and when the men of *Judah* were releaſed of their long captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themſelves the name of *Jews*. After which time, the whole Countrey of *Paleſtine* anciently poſſeſſed, or ſubdued by the ſeed of *Abraham*, was divided into 1. *Peræa*. 2. *Ituræa*. 3. *Galilee*. 4. *Samaria*. 5. *Judæa*, and 6. *Idumæa*. When conquered by the *Romans*, all theſe were joyned into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria*, or at leaſt ſubordinate. But *Conſtantine* not liking of the one, or the other, went away by himſelf, and caſt it into three Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Paleſtina Prima*. 2. *Paleſtina Secunda*, and 3. *Paleſtina Salutaris*; the *Metropolis* of the firſt being *Caſaræa Paleſtinæ*; of the the ſecond, *Samaria*; of the third, *Hieruſalem*. But this diviſion of *Conſtantines* growing out of uſe, we will adhere unto the former: Beginning firſt with thoſe parts hereof which lay on the other ſide of *Jordan*, becauſe firſt conquered & poſſeſſed by the houſe of *Iſrael*; who at the Gate found entrance into all the reſt; and coming round to *Idumæa*, which laſt of all theſe Provinces was added to the State of *Jewry*. In the *Chorographie* whereof, I muſt confeſs my ſelf a Debter to Sir *Walter Raleigh*, whoſe induſtry herein hath ſaved me a great deal of ſearch; though ſometimes I make bold to differ from him, and add to him, as I ſee occaſion.

Peræa.

PERÆA.

PERÆA, is that part of *Paleſtine*, which lyeth betwixt the River *Jordan*, and the mountains of *Arnon*, (which divided *Paleſtine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*) Eaſt and Weſt; and reacheth from *Pella* in the North, to *Petra* the chief Town of *Arabia Petræa*, in the South. By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Egypt*, who deſcribes it thus. *Peræa* Judææ *pars eſt ulterior*, Arabiæ & Egypto *proxima, aſperis diſperſa montibus, & à cœteris* Judæis Jordano *amne diſcreta*. *Peræa* (ſaith he) is the furtheſt part of *Judæa*, neighbouring *Arabia* and *Egypt*, interſperſed with rough and craggy mountains, and parted from the reſt of the *Jews* by the River *Jordan*. So called from the *Greek* word περά, in regard of the ſituation of it on the other ſide of that River; and not improperly might be rendered by *Tranſ-Jordana*. Bleſſed with a rich ſoil, and large fields beſet with divers Trees, eſpecially of Olives, Vines, and Palms. The habitation in times paſt of the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, as alſo of the two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*. Of all which I ſhall ſpeak in order, beginning with the *Midianites*, and the children of *Lot*, as the firſt occupants hereof; upon the knowledge of whoſe affairs, the State and ſtory of the *Iſraelites* hath ſo much dependance.

And firſt the *Midianites* inhabited on the South-Eaſt of the *Dead* Sea, at the very entrance of the Countrey; deſcended from one or more of the five ſons of *Midian*, the ſon of *Abraham* by *Keturah* mentioned *Gen.* 25. *v.* 4. Who leaving the reſt of their brethren to ſeek themſelves new habitations, more towards the Banks of the Red Sea, and the deſarts of *Arabia Petraa*; continued near unto the place of *Abrahams* dwelling: and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in bloud and marriages, came in ſhort time to loſe all the knowledge of the true God, and to worſhip Idols, as the reſt of their Neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1. *Recome*, built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites*, which was ſlain, by *Joſuah*, afterwards called *Selah*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. accounted at that time a City of the *Edomites*; next of the *Iſmaelites* or *Arabians*, and by them called *Hagar*. Beſt known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Petra*, and by that name we ſhall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia*, 2. *Midian*, on the Banks of the *Dead* Sea, the ordinary reſidence of their Princes, abſolute of themſelves at firſt, as in other places; but at the time when *Moſes* and *Joſuah* led the people unto their poſſeſſions, ſubjected unto *Sehon* King of the *Ammorites*; whoſe Dukes their five Kings or Princes, are ſaid to be. *Joſ.* 13. 21. A people whom the *Iſraelites* had neither Commiſſion or intent to make war upon, if they had not cauſeleſly provoked them, at the requeſt of the *Moabites*, by ſending amongſt them (as *Balaam* the falſe Prophet had adviſed) the moſt beautifull of all their women, not only to intice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worſhip of their Idols alſo. A miſchievous and ſucceſsfull plot, but alike dangerous to both parties: God ſending a fierce plague amongſt the *Iſraelites*, which coſt them the lives of 24000 perſons, beſides ſuch as periſhed by the Sword; and giving a command to *Moſes*, to avenge him of the *Midianites*, who had provoked him. On which Commiſſion, *Moſes* culled out 12000 men, and ſent them under *Phineas* againſt the *Midianites*: by whom all their Princes were ſlain, their Cities and goodly Caſtles burnt with fire, their men, women, and male-children put unto the ſword; as is related in the one and thirtieth Chapter of the Book of *Numbers*. Yet notwithſtanding this great ſlaughter, they recovered their former power, if not a greater; and after the death of *Barac* the Judge of *Iſrael*, did for the ſpace of 4 years ſo afflict that people, that they were fain to hide themſeves in the *Caves and ſtrong holds of the Mountains*, as is ſaid *Judg.* 6. 2. their Enemies having left them neither ſheep, oxen, nor aſs, or any ſuſtenance at all, *v.* 4. But *Gideon* being raiſed up by God for their deliverance, encountred with their four Kings, and put them to flight: of which four, *Oreb* and *Zeeb* were taken and ſlain by the *Ephraimites* at the paſſage of *Jordan*; *Zebah* and *Salmanah*, taken by *Gideon* himſelf, and executed by his own hand, as the ſtory telleth us. In this war there are ſaid to have periſhed of this people and their Confederates, no fewer than 120000 perſons, by which ſo weakned that we hear no more of them from this time forwards, in any action of importance: their name and Countrey being firſt incorporated into that of the *Edomites*; and after into that of the *Iſraelites*, and other the inhabitants of *Arabia Petræa*.

2. The *Moabites* poſſeſſed all the Countrey, from the *Midianites* in the South, as far as *Eſebon* in the North, on both ſides the River *Arnon*: having *Jordan* on the Weſt, and the hills of *Abarim* on the Eaſt. Poſſeſſed at the firſt by the *Emmims*, a race of *Giants*, whoſe chief City was *Sheneth Kirjathaim*. But theſe being vanquiſhed and broken by *Chedorlaomer* and his Aſſociates, of which ſee *Gen.* 14. 5. their forlorn ſeats were taken up by the *Moabites*, deſcended from *Moab* one of the ſons of *Lot*; who lived here in great proſperity, till the time of *Vaheb*, Grand-father unto *Balaac*, the ſon of *Zippor*; from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab*, on the North of the River *Arnon*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the North bound or border of it. In which eſtate it ſtood in the time of *Moſes*.

Chief Cities of it at that time were 1. *Rabbat*, the Regal ſeat of *Balaac* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhalmathum* of *Ptolemy*. 2. *Diblathum*, deſtroyed with the reſt of *Moab* by *Nebuchadnezzar*, as is ſaid *Jer.* 48. 22. 3. *Gallim*, the principality of *Phalti* the ſon of *Laiſh*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal*, formerly married unto *David*, 1 *Sam.* 25. 44. 4. *Muthara*, and 5. *Nathaliel*, thorow which the *Iſraelites* paſſed, after they had left the Well called *Beer*. 6. *Bamath*, where *Moſes* was encamped when he ſent to *Sehon* to demand a paſſage thorow this Countrey, *Num.* 21. 19, &c. 7. *Mizpah*, the City of Refuge to the Father and Mother of *David*, in the time of his troubles under *Saul*. 8. *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, not medled with by *Moſes* in his march this way, the Lord himſelf forbidding him to touch upon it or diſtreſs it; becauſe it had been given by him for an inheritance

to

Peræa.

to the Children of *Lot*, *Deuter.* 2.9. Which prohibition was only for this place particularly; (though this particularly there mentioned) but for all the lands and territories then in their poſſeſſion. 9. *Kir-haſareth*, of chief note for the barbarous and inhumane fact of *Meſha* the *Moabitiſh* King, who being beſieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Iſrael*, and *Edom*, without hope of eſcape, ſacrificed his own eldeſt Son on the wall hereof; which ſo moved the Kings of *Judah*, and *Edom*, that they forſook the King of *Iſrael* whoſe the quarrel was. So the ſiege was raiſed, 2 *Kings* 3. 17.

Now as *Moſes* did not at the preſent diſobey Gods Order, in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; ſo neither did the *Moabites* on their parts provoke him to it; giving him a free and open paſſage in his march for *Canaan*: out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were ſubdued, they ſhould be put into poſſeſſion of their loſt eſtates. And though they were deceived of that expectation, the *Iſraelites* looking on that Countrey which they had conquered, as the ſpoils of the *Ammorites*, and giving it for a poſſeſſion to the Tribe of *Reuben*: yet durſt they not do any thing in the way of Armes, but ſent for *Baalam* the falſe Prophet, to caſt them by his curſes and incantations into ſome diſeaſes, whereby their ſtrength and courage might be taken from them. *Baalac* the Son of *Zippor* was at this time King. After whom we find not the name of any other, till we come to *Eglon*, who with the help of *Ammon*, and *Amalek*, over-maſtered *Iſrael*, and for the ſpace of 18 years tyrannized amongſt them: when ſlain in his own houſe, and afterwards 10000 of his people, by the hand of *Ehad*. But this indignity was in the times ſucceeding revenged by *Saul* in ſome part, who made war upon them; but more by *David* who ſubdued them, and made them Tributaries. And not ſo only, but ſubjected them to the vileſt offices, as is intimated in that form of Speech, *Moab is my waſh-pot*, *Pſal.* 60. 8. Taking their opportunity they withdrew themſelves from the houſe of *David*, and put themſelves under the command of the Kings of *Iſrael*, to whom they paid for tribute in the time of *Ahab*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their fleeces on: but quickly weary of thoſe payments, and revolting from the houſe of *Ahab* alſo, they were invaded by *Jehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah*, and *Idumæa*; by whom being vanquiſhed, *Meſha* their King was fain to ſhut himſelf up in *Kir-haſareth*, as was ſaid before. After this joyning with the *Ammonites*, and the *Idumæans* or ſons of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*; to whom God gave a memorable and ſignal victory, without blow or battel: the *Ammonites* firſt ſetting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another, till they were almoſt all deſtroyed, 2 *Chron.* 20. 23. From this time we hear nothing of them; but probably they recovered ſome part of their former dwellings, when that two Tribes and a half on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, were carried away captive by *Tiglath Pileſer*. Poſſeſſed hereof and of other their habitations, till the reign of *Zedekias* King of *Judah*; when vanquiſhed, with the reſt of theſe Nations, by the *Babylonians* and *Aſſyrians* under *Nebuchadnezzar*. Nor find we any mention of them in the ages following; the name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of uſe: the South part of their Countrey laid to *Arabia Petræa*, as the Eaſt parts were to that of *Arabia Deſerta*; and all the reſt, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Jews*, ſwallowed up in the general name of *Paleſtinians*.

3. The *AMMONITES* inhabited on the North-Eaſt of the River *Arnon*, and poſſeſſed all that tract from *Arnon*, on the head of the River, to the City of *Rabbath*; and on both ſides of the River *Jaboc*, as well within the Mountains of *Galaad* as without the ſame. The ſeat in elder times of the *Raphaims*, and *Zamzummins*, a Giant-like race of men; as the *Emmins* were; but vanquiſhed alſo, as the others, by *Cherdorlaomor*; *Aſhtaroth*, and *Heth*, being then the principal of their habitations. Succeeded to, in their deſolate and forſaken dwellings by the children of *Ammon*, the other Son of *Lot*, and the brother of *Moab*; both houſes running the ſame fortune (theſe *Ammonites* being conquered, and deprived of the beſt part of their Countrey on the South-ſide of *Jaboc*, by *Og* King of *Baſan*; as the *Moabites*, at the ſame time, of theirs by *Sehon*. A monument of which ſubjection was the bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabbath*, the chief City of *Ammon*, there to be ſeen, when *Moſes* had ſubdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth *Deut.* 3.

Chief Cities at ſuch time as the *Iſraelites* firſt conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were, 1 *Rabbath*, the Regal City of their Kings; taken by *Og* of *Baſan*, as is ſaid before; but again quitted as it ſeemeth on the coming of *Moſes*, that he might be the better able to keep the field. Memorable in ſucceeding times for the death of *Uriah*, ſlain here by a deſign of *Davids* when beſieged by *Joab*. Who having brought it to terms of yielding, ſent for the King to come before it, that he might have the honour of taking a place ſo defenſible; environed in a manner with the River *Jaboc*, and therefore called the *City of waters*, 2 *Sam.* 12. 27. Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, King of *Ægypt*, who having made himſelf Maſter of thoſe parts of *Arabia*, which lie near unto it, and liking the conveniency of the ſituation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia*. 2. *Dathema*, ſuppoſed to be *Rithma* by the learned *Junius*, mentioned *Numb.* 33. 18. (the *Hebrew* letters *D.* and *R.* being much alike) a place of great ſtrength amongſt the *Ammonites*. 3. *Minneth*, in the South border, and 4 *Abel vinearum* in the Eaſt border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the purſuit of that people when purſued by *Jephthe*. 5. *Mitſpa*, ſometimes one of the Cities of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, and at that time honoured with the reſidence of *Jephta*; but afterwards recovered by the children of *Ammon*: in whoſe hands it was, when utterly deſtroyed and burnt by *Judas*

Peræa. *Maccabæus.* 1 *Macc.* 5. 35. 6 *Magod*, and 7 *Boſor*, two other ſtrong places of the *Ammonites*, there alſo mentioned; but ſaid to be in the *Region of Galaad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Countrey of the *Ammonites* lying on this ſide of the Mountains, was at that time called.

As for thoſe *Ammonites*, they had nothing at all to do with *Iſrael* as they paſſed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them, nor provoked by them, to any acts of hoſtility. Afterwards not well pleaſed that they were not reſtored to the poſſeſſion of thoſe lands, which had been taken from them by *Og* of *Baſan*, (conferred by the decree of *Moſes* on the Tribe of *Gad*;) they joined with the *Midianites* in their expedition. But worſted by the puiſſance and good fortune of *Gedeon*, they lay ſtill a while, till ſtirred up by ſome ſecret motion from Almighty God, to avenge him on that ſinfull and Idolatrous people, who by worſhipping the gods of the Heathen, had provoked him to anger. Proſperous in it for a time, till his wrath was pacified; who having made uſe of him to chaſtiſe his people, delivered up his rod to be burnt by *Jephthe*, vanquiſhed and driven home by him with a very great ſlaughter. Not ſo much cruſhed by the unſucceſsfulneſs of this attempt, but that in the time of *Saul* they brake out again, and beſieged *Jabeſh-Gilead*; *Nabas*, a cruel tyrant, being then their King; who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loſs of every mans right eye: to the end that uſing to carry a great Target on their left Armes, wherewith the eye on that ſide was wholly ſhadowed, they might by this means be diſabled from all future ſervice. But *Saul* came time enough to ſave them from that ſhame and loſs; for that cauſe ſo offenſive to *Nabas*, that to deſpight him, he ſhewed friendſhip to *David*, in the time of his trouble. A curteſie which *David* was ſo mindful of, that he ſent Ambaſſadours to *Hanan* the Son of *Nabas*, to make acknowledgement of it, and to confirm the amity which he had with his Father: but found ſo ill requital from him, that in ſtead of thanks and kind acceptance, his meſſengers were deſpitefully handled, their beards half ſhaven, and their garments cut off by the knee. Incenſed werewith he ſent *Joab* againſt them; by whom the Countrey was laid waſte, and *Rabbath* their chief City taken, their Kings Crown, weighing a Talent of Gold, ſet on *Davids* head, and all the priſoners executed with great ſeverity, ſome of them being caſt into lime-kils, and the reſt torn in pieces with ſaws and harrows. Quiet a long while after this, we hear no great news of them till the reign of *Jehoſaphat*, againſt whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open war: but fell by one anothers ſwords, as was ſaid before. Not well recovered of this blow, they were ſubdued and made *Tributaries* by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, and ſo continued in the time of *Joatham* his Son; who ſo increaſed the *tribute* laid upon them by his father, that it amounted to a hundred *Talents* of Silver, ten thouſand meaſures of Wheat, and as many of Barly. Taught by this leſſon how to value the Kings of *Judah*, they continued either quiet neighbours, or obedient ſubjects, though much improved in power and reputation, by regaining the greateſt part of their antient dwellings, on the removal of the two Tribes and an half, on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, to the land of *Aſſyria*, by *Tiglath Phul-Aßur*. For after this (with reference to the common danger) *Baulis* their King was ſo ſtrict a confederate with *Zedechias*, that when *Nebuchadnezzar* had taken *Zedechias* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedaliah* as his Deputy to command the Countrey; *Iſmael*, one of the blood of the Kings of *Judah*, was ſent by *Baulis* to ſlay him. But he paid dear for his attempt; his Countrey being ſhortly conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Grecians* when they came to Lord it over them, to thoſe of *Gileaditis*, and *Philadelphia*; according to the new name of their principal City; and the old one of the Mountains and hills adjoining.

4. The **REUBENITES** took name from *Reuben*, the eldeſt of *Jacobs* ſons by *Leah*; of whom in the firſt muſter which was made of them at Mount *Sinai*, there were found 46000 fighting men; and 43700 at the ſecond muſter, when they paſſed over *Jordan*. Their dwelling was on the Eaſt of that famous River; having the *Gadites* on the North, the *Deſart of Arabia* on the Eaſt, and the Land of *Moab* on the South, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of moſt obſervation here 1 *Abel-Sittim*, ſeated in that part of the Countrey which was called the *Plains of Moab*; the laſt incamping place of *Moſes*: afterwards by the *Jews* called ſimply *Sittim*; memorable for the *wood* ſo often mentioned in the *Scriptures*, of which the *Ark of the Lord* was made. In after times by the *Greeks* and *Romans* it was called *Abila*, miſtook by ſome for that *Abila* or *Abilene* whereof *Lyſanias* was *Tetrarch*: that Town and Territory, as *Joſephus* doth affirm expreſly, being ſituate amongſt the ſpurs and branches of *Libanus*, far enough from hence. 2 *Bethabora*, or *Beth-Bara*, where *John* baptized, and *Moſes* made his laſt and moſt divine exhortations to the Tribes of *Iſrael*, contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3 *Macharus*, the ſtrongeſt in-land City and Caſtle in thoſe parts of the world, ſtanding aloft upon a Mountain every way unacceſſible: firſt fortified by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jewes*, as a frontire Town againſt the *Arabians*; and afterwards demoliſhed by *Gabinius*, one of *Pompey*'s Lieutenants, in the war againſt *Ariſtobulus*. Unfortunately remarkable for the death of *John Baptiſt*, where murdered by the command of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee*, and Lord of this Countrey of *Peræa*. 4. *Laſa*, or *Leſhah*, of which *Gen.* 10. 19. by the *Greeks* called *Callirhoe*, by reaſon of the fair fountains riſing from the Hills adjoining, out of which iſſue ſprings both of hot, and cold waters, as alſo bitter and ſweet; all which ſoon after joined unto one ſtream, make a wholſom *Bath*, eſpecially for *convulſions* and contraction of ſinews. 5 *Medeba*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Joab*,

1 *Chron.*

Peræa. 1 *Chron.* 19. 7. In the time of the *Greeks* laid with ſome other Towns of this Tract unto *Cœle-Syria*; but in the declining times of the *Seleucian* Family, regained unto the Crown of *Jewry* by *Alexander*, he being of the race of the *Maccabees*; and finally with eleven others in thoſe parts, delivered by *Antipater* the father of *Herod* into the hands of *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, hoping thereby to gain him to the ſide of *Hyrcanus* the ſon of *Alexander*, whoſe cauſe *Antipater* moſt favoured. 6. *Boſor*, or *Bozra*, a City of *Refuge*, and one of thoſe that were aſſigned unto the *Levites* on that ſide of the water. 7 *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod* in honour of *Livia*, the Mother of *Tiberius Caſar*: different from that which the *Geographers* call *Libias*, (though by ſome confounded) the ſame with *Laban*, mentioned *Dent.* 1.1. 9 *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, giving name unto the adjoining Deſart, from whence *Moſes* ſent his ambaſſage to *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 10 *Bamath-Baal*, the chief City of the worſhippers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balaac* to curſe the *Iſraelites*. 11 *Hesbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 12 *Adam*, or the City *Adam* (*Joſ.* 3. 17.) where the Tribes paſſed dry-foot over *Jordan*, oppoſite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the Mountain *Nebo*, from which *Moſes* took a vew of the Land of *Canaan*: an hill as it ſeemeth, of two tops, whereof that which looketh towards *Jerico*, is called *Piſgah*; that which looketh towards *Moab*, being called *Huir*. Here is alſo an high hill named *Peor*, where the filthy Idol *Baal* was worſhipped alſo, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*.

5. The GADITES, were ſo called from *Gad* the ſeventh ſon of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilphah* the hand-maid of *Lea*; of whom were found at the firſt muſter when they came out of *Egypt*, forty five thouſand five hundred and fifty fighting men; and at the ſecond when they entred the Land of *Canaan*, forty five thouſand bearing armes. Their ſituation was betwixt the *Reubenites* and the South, and the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* upon the North; the River *Jordan* on the Weſt, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on the Eaſt; by the which laſt parted from the dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*.

Cities of moſt obſervation, 1 *Aroer*, on the banks of the River *Arnon*, the principal City of the *Gadites*. 2. *Dihon*, more towards *Jordan*; of great note in the time of *Ioſuah*, and of no ſmall accompt in the time of Saint *Hierome*. 3 *Beth-nimrah*, of which *Eſay* propheſied that the water thereof ſhould be dried up; ſeated upon the *Arnon* alſo. 4 *Nattoroth*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5 *Beth-aram*, mentioned by *Ioſuah*, chap. 13. v.27. by *Ioſephus* called *Betaramtha*; new built by *Herod Antipas*, and called *Livias*, in honour of *Livia* the wife of *Auguſtus Caſar*, tranſlated into the *Iulian* family; who alſo laid unto it fourteen villages, to make it of the greater power and juriſdiction. 6 *Beth-ezob*, by *Ioſephus* called *Vetezabra*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the ſiege of *Hieruſalem* when deſtroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by famime to eat her own ſon. 7 *Succoth*, not far from the River *Iordan*, ſo called from the Tents or Booths which *Iacob* ſet up there, in his paſſage from *Meſopotamia* to the Land of *Canaan*: the people of which Town having denied relief to *Gideon* as he followed the chaſe of *Zeba* and *Zalmanah*, were by him miſerably tortured at his return, under a *tribulum* or *threſſing carre*, wherewith he tore their fleſh; and bruiſed their bodies. 8 *Iahzor*, another of the Regal Seats of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*; firſt taken by *Moſes*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Eſay* 16. 8.) then poſſeſſed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from them regained by *Iudas Maccabæus*, 1 *Macc.* 5. 8. 9 *Mahanaim*, ſo called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Iacob* (*Gen.* 32. 2.) as ready to defend him againſt all his enemies, the word in the original importing a *double Army*. A place of very great ſtrength and ſafety, and therefore made by *Abner* the ſeat of Royal *Iſhboſeth*, the ſon of *Saul*, during the war he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David*, during the rebellion of his ſon *Abſolom*. 10 *Rogelim*, the City of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, ſo faithfull to *David* in that war. 11 *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead*, ſo called from the ſituation of it near the Mountains of *Gilead*; a Town of ſpecial note in the book of God; particularly for the pacification here made, betwixt *Iacob* and *Laban*; for the death of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*, who loſt his life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally for the election of *Iehu* to the Crown of *Iſrael*, Anointed at the ſiege hereof, by a Son of the *Prophets*. 12 *Penuel*, ſo called from the enter-view which the Lord pleaſed to beſtow there on his ſervant *Jacob*, at his return out of *Meſopotamia*, mentioned *Gen.* 32. 32. the word ſignifying the place of the *face* or viſion of God: defaced by *Gideon* for their churliſh uſage of him, when he craved reliefe of them againſt the *Midianites*; to whom together with the *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, the whole territory appertaining to theſe two Tribes, did once belong. But being from them taken by *Og* King of *Baſan*, and *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of thoſe Kings to the hands of *Moſes*; by whom aſſigned unto the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben* for thir habitation. Continuing theirs till the fatal period of the Kingdome of *Iſrael* began to approach, at what time theſe two Tribes with the half Tribe of *Manaßes* lying on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, being carried captive into *Aſſyria*, by *Tiglath Philaſer*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their antient dwellings. Of which poſſeſſed till their ſubverſion by the *Babylonians*. Afterwards this whole Countrey coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the name of *Peræa*, for the reaſon formerly delivered. And being won piece-meal by the *Maccabæans*, came with the reſt of the kingdom of *Judah*, to the poſſeſſion of *Herod* the *Great*; by whom bequeathed at his death unto *Herod Antipas* one of his ſons, who held it, together with both *Galilees*, under the name of *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*, as *Ioſephus*; or of *Galilee* onely, as Saint *Luke*; who being dead, it was beſtowed on *Agrippa* King of the *Jews*, of whom more hereafter.

Ituræa.

ITURÆA.

ITURÆA. hath on the Eaſt and North, *Cæle-Syria*; on the Weſt, the River *Jordan*; and on the South, *Peræa*. So called from *Jetur* one of the Sons of *Iſmael*, ſeated on this tract; though loſt by his poſterity to the *Amorites*, one of the moſt powerfull Tribes amongſt the *Canaanites*; and by them made the patrimony of the Kings of *Baſan*. The race of which Kings ended in *Og*, the wealthieſt and beſt part hereof, were given by *Moſes* to the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*; ſuch parts of it as lay towards *Damaſcus* being ſeized on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of it ſelf, called the Kingdom of *Geſſur*; and the more mountainous and unpleaſant left to the firſt Inhabitants, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdome of *Geſſur*, and thoſe of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, ſhifting from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Grecians*: the name of *Ituræa* revived again and grew into very good eſteem: the *Ituræans* being reputed for good Souldiers, eſpecially at the Bow and Arrows; of which thus the Poet in his *Georgicks lib.* 2.

-------Ituræas *taxi torquentur in arcus.*

Of the beſt Eugh that can be had.
The *Ituræan* Bows are made.

The whole Countrey in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonitis* and *Ituræa* ſpecially ſo called: this laſt again being ſubdivided into *Batanea, Gaulonitis, Auranitis*, and *Paneas*. For whereas it is ſaid in Saint *Lukes* Goſpel, that *Philip* the Brother of *Herod* was *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa*, and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Joſephus*, that for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis, Batatea, Gaulonitis, Auranitis*, and *Paneas*: it muſt needs be that the four laſt mentioned Provinces make up that one, which by Saint *Luke* is comprehended in the name of *Ituræa*; diſtinct from that of *Trachonitis*, though a part thereof. Inhabited in the time of *Joſephus*, as in thoſe of *Joſuah* and *David*, both by *Jewes* and *Syrians*; the *Syrians* dwelling in the mountainous, and more barren parts, the *Jewes* in that which was aſſigned them in the time of *Moſes*: the whole not yielding unto *Galilee* for extent of ground, but far inferiour to it for wealth and fruitfulneſs; not well inhabited where beſt, and in ſome places which are deſert and very barren, hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but wild fruits. Such was it in the time of *Joſephus*, and not bettered ſince.

1. TRACHONITIS is that mountainous and hilly Countrey, which beginning at the borders of the *Ammonites*, Where the Hills are called the Mountains of *Gilead*; extendeth it ſelf Northwards as far as *Libanus*: the Hills in thoſe parts being by the *Jews* called *Galeed*, *Syrion*, and *Hermon*; but by the *Grecians*, for the craggineſs and roughneſs of them, by the name of *Trachones*. The people miſchievouſly bent and much given to witch-craft, as we find in *Strabo*. *Montanam regionem incolunt* Ituræi *&* Arabes, *malefici omnes.* So he, or his Tranſlatour rather, for I have not the original by me. Where by *Arabians*, he meaneth thoſe of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the ſame with *Ituræa*, though differing from it as the *Cots-wold* Countreys do from the reſt of *Glouceſterſhire*, or as a part doth from the whole, becauſe united by that name into one eſtate, at the time he lived in. *Solet &* Trachonitis Ituræ *nomine appellari*, ſaith the learned *Grotius*, according to the general conſent of the antient Writers. A people generally addicted to ſpoil and robbery, living eſpecially on the ſpoil of thoſe Merchants which trade to and from *Damaſcus*: till with ſome difficulty reſtrained to a more orderly life by *Herod*, on whom *Auguſtus Cæſar* had beſtowed the Countrey, to the end that by ſtrong hand he might hold them in.

The people and the Countrey by *Joſephus* are thus deſcribed. “The *Trachonites* (ſaith he) “have neither Towns nor Lands, nor Heritage, or any other poſſeſſions, but onely certain retreats “and caves under the ground, where they lived like beaſts: and having made abundant proviſion of water and victuals, were able to hold out a long time againſt any aſſailant. For the “doors of their Caves were made ſo narrow, that they could be entered but by one at once; “and the way of them not direct, but full of turnings and windings, not poſſibly to be found “out but by the help of a Guide: The whole Countrey naturally conſiſting of craggy Rocks. “The paſſages of the Caves once entered, they were found to be very large and ſpacious; “ſufficient to contain great multitudes of thoſe Theeviſh people, who when they had not “opportunity to ſpoil their neighbours, would rob one another, and omitted no kind of “wickedneſs; being ſo accuſtomed to theft, that they could not live otherwiſe. So he. But I conceive this is not meant generally of all the people, but onely ſome Body of Theeves or out-laws, which poſſeſſing themſelves of the ſtreits of the Mountains; from thence iſſued to aſſault and ſpoil the Paſſengers. For it is afterwards expreſſed that revolting upon the news of *Herods* death, and committing new out-rages; they no ſooner heard of his recovery but they fled the Countrey, and betook themſelves unto a ſtrong Caſtle in *Arabia*, where they increaſed to the number of 1000 perſons. So that there is no queſtion to be made at all, but they

had

Ituræa.

had Villages, and Towns, and Lands, and Heritages, in the more civil parts hereof, though not amongſt thoſe Mountainers which *Joſephus* ſpeaks of. And amongſt thoſe, I reckon, 1 *Gerra*, 2 *Elere*, 3 *Nalaxa*, 4 *Adrama*; all mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees, or upwards: more towards the Eaſt than well agreeth with the poſition of this Countrey, or with any part of *Batanea*, lying more towards the Weſt than *Trachonitis*, though to that part of *Ituræa*, by him aſcribed. Hither alſo I refer the City of 5 *Tiſhbe*, the Countrey of old *Tobit*, and of the Prophet *Elias*. 6 *Tob*, where *Jephta* lived in exile, when oppreſſed by his Brethren, till the neceſſities of his Countrey called him to the publick government: 7 *Hippus*, at the foot of thoſe Mountains, reckoned amongſt the Cities of *Cœle-Syria*, differing in ſoil as well as Etymologie from another of the ſame name in *Batanea*: this being ſo named from the Mountain *Hippus* under which it ſtandeth; that, from a Garriſon of Horſe there placed, as ſhall there be ſhewn. 8 *Bathira*, on the borders of this Countrey towards *Batanea*, built there by *Herod*, and planted with a Colonie of the *Jews* which came thither from *Babylon*; the better to ſuppreſs the inſolencies, and prevent the Robberies of this theeviſh people, accuſtomed (as before is ſaid) unto ſpoil and rapine.

2. *BATANEA* is that part of *Ituræa* which antiently made up the beſt and greateſt part of the kingdom of *Baſan*, whence it had this name: the changing of *S.* to *T.* as *Aſſyria* into *Attyria*, and the like, being uſual among the *Greeks*. But that kingdom being brought to an end by *Moſes*, it was given to the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, ſo called of *Manaſſes* the ſon of *Joſeph*; of whom there were found at the firſt muſter near *Mount Sinai*, 32200 men able to bear armes: which though conſumed in the Deſerts, yet were they of ſuch a ſwift increaſe, that there were found 52700 fighting men of them, when they paſſed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that ſide of the River, ſtretching from *Jaboc* on the South, to the Realm of *Geſſur* on the North; and from the Mountains unto *Jordan*, Eaſt and Weſt, was exceeding fertile: repleniſhed with all ſorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodlieſt woods in that part of the world, the Oaks of *Baſan* being celebrated in the Holy Scriptures.

It had in it ſixty fenced Cities when firſt conquered by thoſe of this Tribe. The principal of which, 1 *Pella*, formerly called *Butis*, but being re-built by *Seleucus*, the Great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*; with reference to a City of that name in *Macedon*, the birth-place of *Alexander*, to whom *Seleucus* owed his greatneſs and whole eſtate. Deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, becauſe not willing to admit the Law of *Moſes*; it was afterwards reſtored by *Pompey* to its former luſtre. Memorable in Church-ſtory for the Admonition or premoniſhment, given by a voice from Heaven, to the Chriſtians dwelling at *Hieruſalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*, that ſo they might eſcape that deſtruction, which the *Roman* Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. 2 *Edrey*, the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Baſan*. 3 *Carnaim*, on the banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Maccabæus*, who ſet fire on the Temple of the Idols there, and burnt therein all ſuch as fled thither for ſanctuary. 4 *Ephron*, a ſtrong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the ſame *Judas Maccabæus*, for refuſing to give a paſſage to his Army. 5 *Jabeſh Gilead*, more near unto the Mountains, whence it had that *Adjunct*; memorable in the Scriptures, for the ſiege of *Nabas*, King of the *Ammonites*, the raiſing of that ſiege by *Saul*, and the gratitude of the people towards him again, in taking down, inbalming and intombing the bodies of him and his Sons, which the *Philiſtines* had moſt deſpitefully hanged on the walls of *Bethſan*. 6 *Aſtaroth*, a City of great note in the elder times; the ſeats of the *Rephaims*, a Giant-like race of men, of whom deſcended *Og* of *Baſan*; from whence the Countrey adjoining had the name of the *Land of Giants*. *Aſtaroth* the Goddeſs of the *Sidonians* had here her worſhippers. 7 *Gaulon*, ſometimes poſſeſſed by *Og* of *Baſan*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of ſuch eſteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North part of *Baſanitis* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*; divided into *Superior* and *Inferior*, ſo often mentioned by *Joſephus*. And of this City or Countrey was that *Judas* of *Galilee*, ſpoken of in the fifth of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 8 *Gamala*, in the Lower *Gaulonitis*, ſo called becauſe the hill upon which it ſtood was faſhioned like the back of a Camel: invincibly ſituate, ſtrengthened both by Art and Nature; and at the laſt with ſo great difficulty and hazard of *Veſpaſians* perſon, ſtormed by *Titus*, that the *Romans* in the heat of the execution ſpared neither Women nor Children; inſomuch that all the Inhabitants periſhed, except ſome few Women which had hid themſelves. 9 *Gadara*, after ten months ſiege, taken and deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*; repaired by *Pompey*, and by *Gabinius* made one of the five ſeats of Juſtice for the whole Countrey of *Paleſtine*: the other four being *Hieruſalem*, *Jericho*, *Hamath*, and *Sephorath*. 10 *Geraſa*, or *Gargeſa*, the chief City of the *Gergeſites*, the people whereof on the loſs of their Swine, intreated our Saviour to depart out of their coaſts, as Saint *Matthew* hath it. Saint *Luke*, and Saint *Mark* aſcribe it to the people of *Gadara*. Not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangeliſts at ods in their Relation; but becauſe they were two neighbouring Cities, and their fields lay in Common *pour cauſe de vicinage*, as our Lawyers phraſe it: and ſo the ſtory might be common to both alike. 11 *Hippus*, not far from the River *Jordan*, ſo called from a Garriſon of Horſe there placed by *Herod*: not from the Mountain *Hippus*, as ſome ſuppoſe, which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12 *Julias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa*, in the Southern border of his eſtate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Peræa*: to ingratiate himſelf with *Julia*, the wife of *Tiberius Cæſar*. 13 *Abel*, by *Joſephus* called *Abel Maacha*, for diſtinctions ſake: where *Sheba* that Grand Rebel beſieged by *Joab*, and the City brought into ſome danger, had his

Ituræa. head cut off, and thrown over the wall, at the perſwaſion of a wiſe woman of the Town. So the rebellion ended, and the City was ſaved.

North of *Baſanitis*, or *Batanea*, lyeth the kingdom of GESSUR, by a latter name called AURANITIS, from *Hauran*, a chief City of it, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezechiel*, chapter 16.18. A kingdom ſpoken of by *Moſes* as the Northern bound of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Jordan*; *Deut*. 4. 14. by *Joſuah* as the Northern borders of the kingdom of *Baſan*, chap. 12. 5. but reckoned as a part of *Syria*, becauſe held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam*. 15. 8. A kingdom, though of no great territory, yet of ſome conſideration in the eye of the world: *David* eſteeming the alliance of the Kings hereof of ſome uſe unto him; and therefore marrying *Maacha* the daughter of *Tolmui*, King of *Geſſur*, by whom he had *Abſalom* and *Tamar*. And to this King it was that *Abſalom* fled on the killing of *Amnon*, abiding here three years, as the ſtory telleth us.

Conterminous to this, or at leaſt not very much diſtant from it, was the petit kingdom of *Isk-tob*, which ſent 12000 men to the aid of the *Ammonites* againſt *David*: and not far off, but more towards *Palmyrene*, or *Aram-Zobah*, that of *Beth-Rehob*, confederate in the ſame war alſo with the other *Syrians*; mention whereof is made in the ſecond book of *Samuel*, chap. 10. *verſ*. 6. Which whether they belonged to *Syria*, or to thoſe North-parts of *Ituræa*, is of no great certainty, and as little conſequence. For after this their greateſt and laſt exploit we hear no more news of them; ſwallowed up not long after (as it ſeems) by the Kings of *Damaſcus*.

To return therefore into *Geſſur*, as more certainly within the limits of *Paleſtine*, the places of moſt obſervation in it were, 1 *Geßur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2 *Mahacath*, or *Macuti*, as ſome call it: conceived to be that *Maacha* mentioned 1 *Chron*. 19. 6. But of this we have already ſpoken in *Camagena*. 3 *Chauran*, or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel* chap. 47. whence theſe Northern parts of *Paleſtine* were called *Auranitis*. 4 *Chatſar-Hevan*, there mentioned by that Prophet alſo. 5 *Us*, near the borders of *Damaſcus*, the firſt habitation of *Us* the ſon of *Aram* and Grandchild of *Sem*, by whoſe name ſo called: ſuppoſed to be the founder of *Damaſcus* alſo, and that more probably, than that the Countrey thereabouts ſhould be the Land of *Hus*, enobled by the dwelling and ſtory of *Job*. 9 *Sueta*, mentioned by *Brochardus*, and by ſome conceived to be the habitation of *Bildad*, ſurnamed the *Shuchite*, one of *Jobs* three friends, mentioned in that ſtory: but both of him, and *Job* himſelf, and the Land of *Hus*, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Fort of great ſtrength and uſe, for the commanding of the Countrey; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the ſecond, by digging with incredible labour through the very rock upon which it was ſeated.

As for the fortunes of this part, after the Tribes on that ſide of *Jordan* were led Captive into *Aſſyria*, and the kingdom of *Damaſcus* ſubverted by *Tiglagh-Phalaßer*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian*, and *Perſian* Empires, together with which it came to the *Macedonian* Kings of the race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of which houſe it was conquered (or at the leaſt the greateſt part thereof) by *Alexander* the ſecond king of the *Jews*, of the race of the *Maccabees*; but loſt again for the moſt part in the time of *Hircanus* the ſon of *Alexander*; yet afterwards made up the greateſt part of the kingdom of *Chalcis*, poſſeſſed by *Ptolemy* the ſon of *Mennæus*, in the beginning of *Herods* greatneſs: who dying, left it to *Lyſanias* his eldeſt ſon, murdered about ſeven years after by *Marc*. *Antonie*, on the ſuggeſtions of *Cleopatra*, who preſently ſeized on his eſtates. But *Antonie* and *Cleopatra* having left the Stage, *Lyſanias* a ſon of the murdered Prince entreth next upon it, by the permiſſion of *Auguſtus*. During whoſe time *Zenodorus*, Lord of the Town and territory of *Paneas*, farming his demeſnes, and paying a very great rent for them, not only ſuffered the *Trachonites* to play the *Robbers*, and infeſt the Merchants of *Damaſcus*; but received part of the booty with them. *Auguſtus*, on complaint hereof, giveth the whole Countrey of *Trachonites*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, before created King of *Jewrie*; that by his puiſſance and power he might quell thoſe Robbers, and reduce the Countrey into order: Leaving unto *Lyſanias* nothing but the City of *Abila* (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoining territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch* of *Abilene*, mentioned *Luke* 3. Nor did *Herods* good fortune end in this. For preſently on the death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Auguſtus* gave him alſo the deſtrict of *Paneas* (of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Galilee*) which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lyſanias*, made up the *Tetrarchie* of *Philip* his youngeſt Son; affording him the yearly Revenue of 100 *Talents*, which make 37500 l. of *Engliſh* money. On *Philips* death, his *Tetrarchy* was by *Caius Caligula*, conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his ſon *Ariſtobulus*; whom he had alſo dignified with the title of King; after whoſe death, and the death of *Agrippa Minor*, who next ſucceeded, his eſtates eſcheated to the *Romans*, and have ſince had the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

3. GALILEE.

GALILEE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Batanea*, and part of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Jordan*; on the Weſt, with the Sea-coaſt of *Phœnicia*, on the *Mediterranean*: on the North, with *Anti-Libanus*; on the South, with *Samaria*. So called, as ſome ſay, from *Geliloth* a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying as much as *borders*; becauſe the bordering Countrey betwixt them and the *Jews*.

The Countrey not ſo large as that on the other ſide of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fertile of it ſelf, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman, and ſo well cultivated in old times, that there was hardly any waſt ground to be found in it. Thick ſet with Cities, Towns, and Villages in the time of *Joſephus*, and thoſe ſo populous and rich, that the ſmalleſt Village in it is affirmed by that Authour, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitants. A number beyond all parallel if reported rightly, and not miſtaken in the tranſcripts. The people from their childhood very ſtout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want, or dread of penury: which ſeconded by their vaſt, and almoſt incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough piece of employment, when ſubdued by *Titus*. And this, together with their zeal to the *Jewiſh* Religion, make it more than probable, that there was ſomething in them of the antient *Iſraelites*; and that they were not meerly of an *Aſſyrian*, either ſtock or ſpirit; but intermixt with ſuch remainders of the Tribes as had ſaved themſelves, either by flying to the Mountains, or hiding themſelves in Caves and Deſerts, or otherwiſe were inconſiderable for ſtrength and numbers; in the great tranſplantation of them made by *Salmanaſſer*. And in this I am more confirmed by their ſpeech or language, which was the ſame with that of the natural *Jewes*, differing no otherwiſe from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *Engliſh* doth from that which is ſpoke in *London*: as appeareth by the communication which the Damoſel had with S. *Peter*, in the High-Prieſts Hall; in which ſhe plainly underſtood him, but ſo, that ſhe pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the *Tranſplantation* been ſo univerſal, as ſome think it was and that both ſick and ſound, old and young had been carried away, and none but Colonies of the *Aſſyrians* to fill up their places; it muſt needs be that thoſe New-comers would have planted their own language there; as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britans*, on this ſide of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this ſide of *Jordan*, eſpecially *Simeon* and *Dan*, which either bordering upon *Judah*, or having their Lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or ſubjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was antiently into the *Higher* and the *Lower*. The higher ſo called from its ſituation more amongſt the Mountains, had alſo the name *Galilea Gentium*, or *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*. And that either becauſe it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the reſt of the *Jewes*; or becauſe a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyre*. But for what cauſe ſoever it was called ſo firſt, certain it is, it held this name unto the laſt; known by it in the time of the Apoſtles, as appeareth by S. *Matthews* Goſpel, Chap. 4. v. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is ſituate on the South of the other, memorable for the Birth and Education of our bleſſed Saviour, whom *Julian* the *Apoſtata* called, for this cauſe, in ſcorn, the *Galilean*: as for the ſame, the Diſciples generally had the name of *Galileans* impoſed upon them, till that of Chriſtian, (being a name of their own chooſing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greateſt part of both, known in the New Teſtament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned, *Mat*. 4. 25. *Mark* 7. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to ſay, 1 *Cæſarea Philippi*, 2 *Aſer*, 3 *Cedes-Nephthalim*, 4 *Sephet*, 5, *Chorazim*, 6 *Capernaum*, 7 *Bethſaida*. 8 *Jotopata*, 9 *Tiberias*, and 10 *Scythopolis*. By which accompt it ſtretched from the *Mediterranean* to the head of *Jordan*, Eaſt and Weſt; and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a ſquare of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Iſrael*, the whole *Galilee* was ſo diſpoſed of, that *Aſer*, *Nephthali*, and a part of the Tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the Higher; *Zabulun*, and *Iſſachar* in the Lower: according to which diſtribution we will now deſcribe them.

1. the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*; was ſo called from *NAPHTHALI* the ſixth ſon of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the handmaid of *Rachel*; of whom at their firſt muſter were found 53400 fighting men, and at the ſecond 44540 able to bear Arms. The land alotted to them lay on the Weſt-ſide of the River *Jordan*, oppoſite to the Northern parts of *Iturea*; where before we left: having on the Weſt, the Tribe of *Aſer*, and that of *Zabulun* on the South. Within which tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the Tribe of *Dan*: the chief of thoſe which were withholden by the Gentiles, being *Chalcis*, *Abila*, *H[illegible]opolis*, Cities accounted of as belonging to *Cœle-Syria*, where they have been ſpoken of already.

That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN*, lay on the North-Eaſt part hereof, confronting the moſt Northern parts of *Iturea*, as before was ſaid; where the *Danites* held one Town of moment, beſides many others of leſs note. And it ſeemed deſtined to this Tribe by ſome old preſage; the Eaſtern fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its original in this tract) being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Cherdorlaomer* and his Aſſociates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a poſſeſſion in it. Of which ſee *Gen*. 14. *v*. 14. The Town of moment firſt called *Leſhem*, by ſome Writers, *Laiſh*: afterwards ſubject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon ſtrength thereof made good againſt

Galilee. thoſe of *Naphthali*; but taken by ſome Adventures of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is ſaid, *Joſuah* 19. 47. That finding their own Country too little for them, *they went up and fought againſt* Leſhem, *which they took and called* DAN. Accompted after this exploit, the utmoſt bound Northward of the Land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being meaſured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beerſheba* in the South; remarkable for one of the *Golden Calves*, which was placed here by *Jeroboam*, and for the two ſpring-heads of *Jordan*, riſing near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans*, it was called *Paneas*, from a fountain adjoyning of that name: which, with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, who held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before is ſaid, was given by *Auguſtus Cæſar* unto *Herod* the Great; and by him at his deceaſe to *Philip* his youngeſt Son, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Ituræa* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cæſarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius Cæſar*; partly to preſerve the memory of his own name; and partly to diſtinguiſh it from another *Cæſarea* ſituate on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cæſarea Paleſtina*: and being ſo repaired by him, it was made the *Metropolis* of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name *Mat.* 16. 13. when S. *Peter* made that confeſſion or acknowledgement of his Lord and Maſter, *That he was* CHRIST *the Son of the living God*. By King *Agrippa*, who ſucceeded him in his eſtates, in honour of the Emperour *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cæſarea Panea* in the time of *Ptolemy*; and ſimply *Paneas*, as before in the time of Saint *Hierome*. Of this *Cæſarea* was that woman whom our Saviour cured of the bloudy Flux, by touching but the hem of his garment: who in a pious gratitude of ſo great a mercy, erected two *Statuas* in this place, repreſenting CHRIST, and her ſelf kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, by whoſe command it was caſt down, and a *Statua* of his own ſet up in the place thereof, miraculouſly deſtroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long time before an Epiſcopal See. Of leſs note there were, 1 *Haleb*, and 2 *Reccath*, both ſituate in the confines of it. And not far off the ſtrong Town and Caſtle of 3 *Magdala*, (the habitation as ſome ſay of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Phariſees* deſired a Sign of our Saviour *Chriſt*, as it is ſaid *Mat.* 15. 39. 16. 1. the ſame, or ſome place near unto it, being by S. *Mark* (reporting the ſame part of the Story) called *Dalmanutha*. Chap. 8. 10, 11. But whether this Caſtle did antiently belong to theſe *Danites*, or thoſe of *Naphthali*, or to the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of thoſe which were in the poſſeſſion of the Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, the Cities of moſt eminent obſervation were, 1 *Hazor*, or *Axor*, by *Junius* and *Tremelius* called *Chatzar*, the Regal City and Metropolis of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendez-vous* of 24 *Canaanitiſh* Kings in the War with *Joſuah*; by whom it was taken notwithſtanding, and burnt to aſhes. But being afterwards re-built it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who ſo grievouſly for the ſpace of 20 years, afflicted *Iſrael*; till vanquiſhed by *Deborah* and *Barak*. Deſtroyed in that war and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in ſo good eſtate in our *Saviours* time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*: in being ſtill, but known by the name of *Antiopia*. 2 *Capernaum*, ſeated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Countrey it was accompted the *Metropolis*, in the time of our Saviour, with whoſe preſence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapolitans*. Some marks of its former greatneſs it retained when S. *Hierome* lived, who confeſſeth it to be a Town of ſome good capacity; but ſo decayed in the time of *Breidenbech* and *Brochardus*, that it conſiſted but of ſix poor Fiſhermens Houſes. 3 *Hamath*, ſo called from *Hamathi* the ſon of *Canaan*, planted in theſe parts; a Town of ſuch eſteem in the elder times, that it was reckoned one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *Introitum Hamath*, or the *entrance of Hamath*; as *Numb.* 34. 8. *Joſ.* 13. 5. *Judg.* 3. 3. &c. Miſtaken by S. *Hierome* for another of the ſame name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I ſay he is miſtaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolemy* two degrees more Eſtward than *Cæſarea Philippi*, the moſt Eaſtern City of all *Galilee*; and two degrees more North than that, though the moſt Northern City of all *Paleſtine*. The ground of this miſtake we have ſeen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *Damaſcus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Iſrael* by *Jeroboam* the ſecond, the Son of *Joas*: and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Scythopolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and ſome other of the Cities of this tract) unto *Cœle-Syria*. 4 *Kadeſh*, to difference it from others of the ſame name, called *Kadeſh-Naphthalim*, high ſeated on the top of an Hill, as is ſaid *Ioſ.* 20. 7. the King whereof being taken and ſlain by *Ioſuah*, it was made one of the Cities of *Refuge*, and given to the *Levites*. Moſt memorable for the birth of *Barac*, who diſcomfited *Siſera*, Lieutenant of the Hoſt of *Iabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the *Iewiſh* State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Epiſcopal See in the firſt ages of Chriſtianity. 5. *Riblah*, watered with the fountain of *Daphnis*, a little Riveret, which hereabouts falleth into *Iordan*: to which City, as ſome ſay (but I think erroneouſly) *Zedechias* the unfortunate King of the *Iews* was brought Priſoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, who cauſed his children to be ſlain before his face; and then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Errour in them that ſay it, the ſcæne of this ſad Tragedy being by *Ioſephus* laid in *Riblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*; the ſame which in ſucceeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Ioſephus*, who was ſo long governour of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be ſo ignorant of the State of this Province, as to traſfer that bloudy execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Countrey. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greateſt Towns in the Tribe of *Napthali*, ſhould be capable of the Court and train of that mighty Monarch; eſpecially for ſo long a time, as he is ſaid to have attended in that place, the ſucceſs of his forces then before *Hieruſalem*, and the diſpoſal of the State when the Town was taken. 6 *Saphet*, another of the *Decapolitan* Cities, ſtrongly if not impregnably ſeated; one of the ſtrongeſt Fortreſſes of the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, as it was after their expulſion, of the *Turks* and *Saracens*: who from hence waſted and ſubdued all the neighbouring Countrey, as far as to the very Sea; the only place, not of this Countrey only, but of all the Eaſt, in which the *Jews* (who poſſeſſed a third part of this Town) have any ſhew or ſhadow of a Common-wealth. 7 *Bethſomes*, mentioned *Joſ.* 15. 38. made tributary unto thoſe of this Tribe; though otherwiſe poſſeſſed by the *Canaanites* who held out againſt them. 8 *Carthan*, or *Kiriathaim*, ſituate near the Mountain which in following times was called *Mons Chriſti*, becauſe much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choiſe of his Apoſtles, as is ſaid *Mark* 3. 13. and where he alſo made that Divine Sermon, recited in the 5, 6, and 7 Chapters of S. *Matthews* Goſpel. 9 *Maſoloth*, a place of great ſtrength, but forced by *Barcludes* General of the Armies of the Kings of *Syria*, in the time of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Cinnereth*, a ſtrong City; after called *Genneſareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it, is ſometimes called the Lake of *Geneſareth*, as *Luke* 5. 1. &c.

2. The Tribe of *ASER*, was ſo called from *Aſer*, the eighth ſon of *Jacob*, begotten of *Zilpha* the hand-maid of *Leah*: of whom at their firſt muſter when they came out of *Egypt*, were found 41500 perſons, able to bear Arms, all above 20 years of age; and at the ſecond muſter when they entered the Land of *Canaan* 53400 fighting men of the new increaſe. The portion of the Land alotted for their habitation was plentifull in wine, oyl, and wheat, with great ſtore of *Balſam*; extending from the Coaſt of *Sidon*, to *Ptolemais*, 30 miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eaſtward, to the Tribe of *Naphthali*, ſome twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolemais*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command: yet had they in this narrow compaſs many beautiful Cities, and Towns of note; which they were quietly poſſeſſed of, till their ſubjugation by the Kings of *Aſſyria*.

The principal of thoſe, and others which have ſince been founded. 1 *Aphek*, memorable for the great ſlaughter there made of the *Syrians*, when beſieged by *Benhadad*; of whom 100000 were ſlain by the *Iſraelites* under the leading of *Ahab*, and 27000 killed by the fall of the Wall. 2 *Gabala*, mentioned by *Ptolemy* amongſt the mid-land Cities of *Phœnicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe; one of thoſe twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refuſal peopled by the *Iſraelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards re-built and ſtrongly fortified by *Herod* the *Great*. 3 *Giſcala*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence, the birth-place of *John* or *Jehochanan*, one of the three ſeditious in *Hieruſalem* when beſieged by *Titus*, where he did more miſchief than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Maſters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being re-built by the Authority of *Joſephus*, then Governour of *Galilee* for the *Jews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon compoſition. 4 *Cana*, for diſtinction ſake called *Cana-Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the *Lower-Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that woman, whoſe daughter *Chriſt* delivered of an evil Spirit, called by S. *Matthew* a woman of *Canaan*, chapter 15. a *Syro-Phœnician* by S. *Mark*, chap. 7. the *Syro-Phœnicians* of this Tract, being originally of the race of *Canaan*, as was ſaid before. 5 *Hethlan*, or *Cethlan*, the furtheſt City of the North; as 6 *Meſſal*, or *Maſhael*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aſer*. Of later date there are 7 *Thoron*, a ſtrong piece built by the *Chriſtians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to hinder the excurſions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoil, of great importance in the wars of the *Holy Land*, and giving name to the noble family of the Lords of *Thoron*: one of which being Conſtable to King *Baldwin* the third, lyeth buried in the Chappel adjoining to it; a curious piece of work-manſhip, and dedicated by the name of the bleſſed Virgin. 8 *Belfort*, ſo named from the ſtrength and beauty of it; ſeated on the high grounds near the River *Naar*: and memorable for the great repulſe which *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks* received before it: being forced to raiſe his ſiege with diſhonor and loſs, on the coming of the *Chriſtian* Armies. Some other Forts here of the ſame erection as 9 *Montfort*, and 10 *Mount-Royal* (or *Caſtrum Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended againſt the Infidels.

3. The Tribe of *ZABULON*, was ſo called from *Zabulon* the tenth ſon of *Jacob* by his Wife *Leah*: of whom there muſtered near Mount *Sinai*, 57400 able men; and 65000 at their ſecond muſter, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Territory lay on the South of *Aſer* and *Nephthalim*, and the North of *Zabulon*; extending from the Lake of *Tiberias*, to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Jokneham*, the King whereof was ſlain by *Joſuah*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2 *Zabulon*, or the *City of men*, a ſtately and magnificent City, till burnt to the ground by *Ceſtius* a *Roman* Preſident. 3 *Cana-Minor*, ſo called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aſer*, the birth-place of *Nathaniel*, and as ſome ſay of *Simon Zelotes*: memorable for the marriage, at which our *Saviour* wrought his *firſt miracle*, of turning water into wine. Called in S. *Johns* Goſpel *Cana of Galilee*. 4 *Berſabe*, ſtanding in the border betwixt both *Galilees*, and therefore ſtrongly fortified by *Joſephus* againſt the *Romans*. 5 *Dothan*, where *Joſeph* found his brethren as they fed their flocks; and where the Prophet *Eliſha* ſtrook blind the *Syrians*, who beſieged him in it. 6 *Bethſaida*, ſituate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*; but moſt renowned for the *miracle* and *preaching* of our Lord

Galilee. and Saviour. 7 *Nazareth*, now a ſmall village, ſeated in a vale betwixt two hills, not far from *Ptolemais* or *Acon*; upon one of which two hills it was formerly built; where ſtill are to be ſeen the ruins of many Churches, here founded by the *Chriſtians*; it being in the flouriſhing times of *Chriſtianity*, an *Arch-biſhops* See. Of great eſteem, for being, if not the birth-place, yet the habitation of the *Virgin Mary*; who was here ſaluted by thoſe joyfull tidings by an *Angel*, as ſhe ſate in her chamber. Of which Chamber it is ſaid in the Popiſh legends, that it was after the *Virgins* death had in great reverence by the *Chriſtians*; and remained in this Town, till the *Holy Land* was ſubdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, Anno 1291. Then moſt miraculouſly tranſported into *Sclavonia*; but that place being unworthy of the *Virgins* Divine preſence, it was by the *Angels* carried over into the Sea-coaſt of *Italy*, Anno 1294. That place alſo being infeſted with theeves and pyrats, the *Angels* removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her miracles were quickly divulged: inſomuch that *Paul* the 2d. built a moſt ſtately Church over this *Chamber*, and *Xiſtus* the fifth made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our bleſſed Saviour ſpend a great part of his life before his *Baptiſm*; from whence both he and his Diſciples had for many years, the name of *Nazarites*. 8 *Jotopata*, ſtrongly ſeated on the top of a Mountain, near the Lake of *Genneſareth*; fortified by *Joſephus* in the war with the *Romans*, but after a long ſiege taken by *Veſpaſian*, and in it *Joſephus* the Hiſtorian, Chief Governour of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9 *Tiberias*, raiſed out of the ground by *Herod* the *Tetrarch*, and named thus in honor of *Tiberius Caſar*. Situate in a fruitfull ſoil, on the edge of the *Lake*, which afterwards took the name of *Lake* or *Sea* of *Tiberias*: this City being held to be the greateſt of the *Lower Galilee*, and the *Metropolis* of the *Decapolitan* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called S. *Matthew* from the receipts of the *Cuſtom-houſe*; and near unto it that he raiſed the daughter of *Jairus*. 10 *Bethulia*, more within the Land, ſeated on an high Hill, and of very great ſtrength, as appears by the ſtory of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. 11 *Japha*, a place of like ſtrength, but forced by *Titus*; who in the fury of the ſtorm ſlew in it above 15000 perſons, and carried away with him 2000 Priſoners. 12 *Sephoris*, or *Sipphora* the habitation of *Joachim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the bleſſed Virgin; fortified with ſtrong walls by *Herod* the *Tetrarch*, who made it his Regal ſeat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that time it had been made by *Gabinius* one of the five *Juridical Reſorts* for the *Paleſtinians*: after that, not without great difficulty forced by *Veſpaſian*; and is nothing now but a Caſtle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*. The ordinary Reſidence, for the moſt part, of the *Turkiſh Sanziack* who hath the Government of this Province; and lately, if not ſtill, of the *Emirs* of *Sidon*; *Faccardine* the late *Emir* having been made the *Sanziack* of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is Mount *Tabor*; famous for the transfiguration of our Saviour, for a ſumptuous Chappel built on the top of the hill in memory of it, by the Empreſs *Helen*, mother of *Conſtantine* the Great: and for the Fountain of the brook *Chiſon*, which preſently divided into two ſtreams, runneth Eaſtward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*, and Weſtward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4. The Tribe of *ISSACHAR*, is ſo called from *Iſſachar* the ninth ſon of *Jacob*, by his wife *Leah*, of whom were found at the firſt muſter 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the ſecond muſter. Their lot, in the partition of the land amongſt the *Tribes*, fell betwixt *Zabulun* and the Half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on this ſide of *Jordan*, North and South; extending from that River to the *Mid-land* Sea. A territory not ſo well repleniſhed with ſtrong and eminent Cities, as was that before; nor yielding ſo much matter of obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs.

Thoſe of moſt note in it, 1 *Tarichea*, on the ſide of the *Lake*, about eight miles from *Tiberias*, of great ſtrength both by Art and Nature; as witneſſed the notable reſiſtance which *Veſpaſian* found when he beſieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible ſlaughter. 2 *Caſhion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3 *Remeth*, called alſo *Jarmuth*, another City of the *Levites*; where the Hills of *Gilboa* take beginning, and then range as far as the *Mediterranean* Weſtward, and the City of *Jezreel* towards the Eaſt. 4 *En-hadda*, near which *Saul* being diſcomfited by the *Philiſtims*, ſlew himſelf for grief; or elſe for fear of falling into the hands of thoſe mercileſs Enemies, againſt whom he had ſo often returned victorious. 5 *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chiſon*, where *CHRIST* raiſed to life the Widows ſon. 6 *Haphraim*, or *Apharaim*, on the Banks of the ſame River alſo. 7 *Endor*, of chief note for the *Witch* with whom *Saul* conſulted; and the diſcomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gedeon*, who periſhed at *Endor*, and *became as Dung of the Earth*, ſaith the Royal *Pſalmiſt*. 8 *Dabarath*, one of the *Cities of Refuge*. 9 *Arbela*, not far from the Cave of the two Theeves, which ſo greatly infeſted *Galilee* in the time of *Herod*. And 10 of a later date the Caſtle of *Pilgrims* (*Caſtrum Peregrinorum* in *Latine* Writers) built by *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, and after fortified by the *Templers*, for the ſecurity of ſuch as travelled to the *Holy Land*; and for long time the *Magazine* or *Store-houſe of the Weſtern Chriſtians*: now called *Tortora*. Situate on the ſhores of the *Mediterranean* near a ſpacious bay; on the North-ſide whereof Mount *Carmell*, deſcribed already.

As for thoſe *Galileans* which ſucceeded in the place of theſe Tribes, they were for the moſt part originally ſuch as were ſent hither by *Salmanaſſer* to inhabit there, when the *Iſraelites* were led away into endleſs thraldom; but intermixed with ſome Remainders of the ten Tribes as was ſaid before. And yet as if they had been wholly of the ſame extraction, with the reſt of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much deſpiſed as the *Jews*, (as witneſſeth that ſcornfull by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: though theſe as *Orthodox* in *Religion* as the *Jews* themſelves.

Samaria.

In which ſo zealouſly affected, that neither threats nor force could make them offer ſacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperours, whom they looked on as the enemies of their Law and liberty. Brought under the command of the King of *Jewry* by the *Maccabæans*, and with the reſt of that Kingdom beſtowed on *Heroe* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod*, ſirnamed *Antipas*, the ſecond of his ſons then living, with the Title of *Tetrarch*, which he enjoyed till the death of our *Saviour*: and on his deprivation (being baniſhed to *Lyons* in *France* by the Emperour *Caligula*) beſtowed upon *Agrippa* his Brothers ſon, the firſt King of the *Jews* ſo named. Under him and his ſon *Agrippa* the ſecond, it continued till the general revolt of the *Jewiſh* Nation. Subjected by the ſword of *Titus* to the power of the *Romans*, it hath ſince followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

4. *SAMARIA.*

SAMARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Jordan*; on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Galilee*; and on the South, with *Judæa*. So called from *Samaria*, the chief City of it, of which more hereafter.

The Countrey interchangeably compoſed of Fields and Mountains, excellent and good for tillage, and full of trees, yielding variety of fruits: watered both with the dew of Heaven, and many freſh ſprings which the Earth affordeth it; occaſioning thereby abundance of of graſs, and conſequently of *Milch-beaſts* exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no leſs populous, but now famed for neither.

The people for the moſt part, were originally the deſcendents of thoſe *Aſſyrians*, whom *Salmanaſſar* ſent hither to poſſeſs the dwellings of the Captive *Iſraelites*. Gentiles at firſt, till better inſtructed by the *Lions* whom God ſent amongſt them, and after by the Prieſts ſent hither by the Kings of *Aſſyria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moſes*, and out of them learned *the manner of the God of the Land*, 2 *Kings* 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the reſt of the ſacred *Canon*; and no ſtrict obſervers of this neither. And though at firſt they ſo embraced the worſhip of God, as that they ſtill adhered to the Gods of the Nations, where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Aſhimah*, *Nibban*, *Tartak*, and the reſt of that rabble, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17: yet they were ſoon taken off from thoſe impieties, and became zealous in the worſhip of one only God; erronious chiefly in the place which was deſtined to it. The wicked policy of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, was as natural to them, as if they could not have poſſeſſed his Eſtates without it: and therefore would not ſuffer their people, to go up to *Hieruſalem* to worſhip, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predeceſſors, that they erected no *Golden Calves* in *Dan*, and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: though to divert the people from the *Temple of God*, they would have a *Temple* of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as ſacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the *Jews*. *Schiſmatical* enough in this, but not Idolatrous and *Schiſmatical* too, as the others were; yet ſo conceited of themſelves, and their own perfections, that they imagined themſelves defiled by any company but their own. If therefore they had viſited any of their neighbour Nations, at their return, they uſed to ſprinkle themſelves with urine: but if by negligence, or the neceſſity of buſineſs, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themſelves, cloaths and all, in the next fountain. But in this the *Jews* cryed quittance with them, not ſo much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *John* 4. 9. but loading them, on the other ſide, with all the bitterneſs of reproach and hatred. There are two *manner of people* (ſaith the ſon of *Sirach*) *which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people*: *they that ſit on the Mountains of* Samaria, *the* Philiſtims, *and the fooliſh people that dwell at* Sichem. *Eccleſ.* 50. And this continued to the times of our *bleſſed Saviour*; whom when the *Jews* endeavoured to reproach with their heavieſt calumnies, they could find out none ſo great, as to ſay that he was a *Samaritan* and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converſe with *Devils* and familiar ſpirits.

Of theſe there were ſome *Sects* alſo amongſt the *Jews*, 1. The *Doſitheans*, ſo called from *Doſitheus* or *Doſthai*, ſuppoſed to be the firſt Prieſt who was ſent hither by the King of *Aſſyria*: agreeing with the *Jews* in *Circumciſion*, and the *Sabbath*, and the doctrine of the *Reſurrection* (in which laſt they differed from the common *Samaritan*, who was a *Saduce* in that point) but differing from them in ſome points of as ſignal conſequence. For they rejected the writings of all the *Prophets*, as not θεοπνευστοί, inſpired by the holy *Ghoſt*; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoræans*; abſtained from marriage, like the *Eſſenes*; and in the point of *Sabbath-keeping* out-went the *Phariſees*; it being reſolved upon amongſt them, that in what poſture ſoever a man was found on the *Sabbath-day-morning*, in the ſame he was to continue without alteration the whole day after. 2. The *Sebvians*, ſo called from *Sebva* or *Sebviah* one of the Companions of that *Doſthai*; who though they kept all the publick *Feſtivals*, as the *Jews* and the other *Samaritans* did, yet they kept them not at the ſame time, transferring the *Paſsover* to *Auguſt*, the *Pentecoſt* to *Autumne*, and the feaſt of *Tabernacles* to the time of the *Paſsover*; not ſuffered for that cauſe to worſhip in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3. The *Gortheni*, who kept the ſame *Feſtivalls*, and obſerved the ſame times of thoſe ſolemnities, as the *Law* required; but kept only one of the *ſeven dayes* of thoſe great

Samaria. great *Feſtivals*, and laid by the reſt, as dayes of ordinary labour. In other points not differing from the other *Samaritans*, who though at firſt poſſeſſed of all the land belonging to the *ten Tribes* of *Iſrael*, were yet reduced at laſt to a narrow compaſs: ſhut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judea*, within the antient territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, on this ſide of the water.

1. The *half Tribe* of *MANASSES* on this ſide of *Jordan*, was ſituate betwixt *Iſſachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South, extending from the *Mediterranean*, to the banks of that River. In which the places of moſt conſequence and conſideration, 1. *Beth-ſan*, environed almoſt with the land of *Iſſachar*, ſituate near the banks of *Jordan*, where it beginneth again to ſtreighten and be like it ſelf, having been almoſt loſt in the Sea of *Galilee:* firſt called *Nyſa*, and ſo called by *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater* the founder of it, in memory of his Nurſe there buried; but the children of *Manaſſes* not being able to expell the natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-ſan*, or the *houſe* of an *Enemy*. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded thoſe parts of *Aſia*, and compelled ſome of the *Jewes* to ſerve them againſt the reſt (whom notwithſtanding their good ſervice they put all to the ſword) they new-built this City: called therefore by the *Gracians*, *Scythopolis* or the City af *Scythiaus*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Cæle-Siria* memorable in the *old Teſtament* for the hanging of the dead bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the walls hereof, by the barbarous *Phyliſtims*; in the time of our *Saviour* for being the greateſt of all the *Decapolitan* Region; as afterwards in the flouriſhing times of *Chriſtianity*, for being the See of an Arch-biſhop: now nothing but a deſolate village, and an heap of rubbiſh out of which many goodly Pillars, and other pieces of excellent Marble are often digged. 2. *Terzah*, uſed by the Kings of *Iſrael* for their Regal Seat; till the building of *Samaria*, and the Removal of it thither. 3. *Acrabata*, the Territory whereof called *Acrabatena*, was afterwards made one of the ten *Toparchies* of *Judæa*. 4. *Thebes*, not far from *Samaria*, where the Baſtard *Abimelech* was wounded with a Stone which a woman threw at him from the Wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to ſlay him, that it might not be ſaid he periſhed by the hands of a Woman. 5. *Ephra* or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: near whereunto there ſtood an Altar, conſecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*; and not far off, the fatal Stone on which *Abimilech* ſlew 70 of his Brethren. An Heatheniſh cruelty, and at this day practiſed amongſt the *Turks*. 6. *Aſophon*, an ignoble Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolemy Lathurus* here gave to *Alexauder* the King of the *Jewes*; which victory he uſed with ſo great barbarity, that he ſlew all the Women as he paſſed along, and cauſed young Children to be ſod in *Caldrons*. 7. *Bezeck*, the City of that bloudy Tyrant *Adoni-Bezeck*, whoſe ſtory (touched upon before) ſee at large in *Judges* Chap. 1. By *Joſephus* it is called *Bala*; and ſeemeth to be the place in which *Saul* aſſembled the chief ſtrength of *Iſrael* and *Judah* to the number of 33000 men, for the relief of *Jabeſh-Gilead* then diſtreſſed by the *Ammonites*. 8. *Jezreel*, the royal City of *Ahab* and the Kings of his race, ſituate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa*; So near unto the borders of *Iſſachar*, that ſome have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in ſacred ſtory for the ſtoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Jezabel*, and the breaking of *Jezabels* neck, by the command of *Jehu*. A City which gave name to the plains adjoyning, called the valley or *Plains of Jezreel*, but by the name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Maccabees*, lib. 1. cap. 12.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean:* famous for the great and many battels which have been fought in it, as namely of *Gideon* againſt the *Midianites*, of *Saul againſt* the *Philiſtims*, of *Ahab* againſt the *Syrians*, of *Jehu* againſt *Jehoram*, and finally of the *Chriſtians* againſt the *Saracens*. 9. *Megiddo*, unfortunately obſervable for the death of the good King *Joſiah*, ſlain hereabouts in a battel againſt *Pharoah Neco*, King of *Egypt*; and before that, of *Ahaziah* King of *Judah*, who received his deaths-wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoyning: when purſued by *Iehu*. 10. *Dora*, or *Dor*, as the Scripture calls it, on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Caſtle of *Pilgrims* in the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. A very ſtrong and powerfull City, and therefore choſen by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having firſt treacherouſly taken, and barbarouſly murdered *Ionathan* the *Maccabæan*, after he had received 200 talents for his Ranſom; and no leſs villanouſly ſlain *Antiochus* the ſixth of *Syria*, his Lord and Maſter, whom he ſucceeded in his Throne: was by *Antiochus* the ſeventh, with an Army of 120000 foot, and 8000 horſe, beſieged in this City, and moſt deſervedly put to death. 11. *Caſarea*, antiently called the Tower of *Straton*, from *Straton* a King of the *Zidonians*; new built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large *Theatre* and *Ampitheatre*, both of poliſhed Marble, but with a fair and capacious haven, which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection in honour of *Druſus Caſar*, Son-in-law of *Auguſtus*, he cauſed one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Druſus*; the City it ſelf to be called *Caſarea Paleſtina*. The ſtatelineſs and magnificence of which City (when firſt built by *Herod*) he that liſts to ſee, may find the ſame deſcribed at large by *Ioſephus* the *Iew*, in the 15th. Book of *Antiq.* cap. 13. In this City was *Cornelius* baptized by S. *Peter*; Here did S. *Paul* plead in defence of *Chriſtianity*, before *Feſtus* then the *Roman* Preſident; and finally, here *Herod Agrippa* was ſmitten by an Angel, and devoured by worms, after his *Rhetorical* Oration, which his *Paraſites* called the *voice of God and not of man*. The Metropolis of all *Paleſtine*, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Paleſtina Prima*, when by *Conſtantine*, or ſome of his ſucceſſors, cantoned into three: the firſt Biſhop hereof being ſaid to be that *Cornelius*, whom S. *Peter* here initiated in the faith of CHRIST. 12. *Antipatris*, another City of *Herods*

Samaria.

rods building in the place, where *Kepharſalamai*, mentioned 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. had ſometimes ſtood, who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near hereunto did *Judas Maccabæus* overthrow a part of *Nicanors* Army: and not far off, the Mountain where *Abdia*, the Steward of *Ahab*, hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preſerved againſt the fury of *Jezebel*: Finally, to this City it was that Saint *Paul* was conveyed by the command of *Lyſias*, to ſave him from the *Jews*; who lay in wait to deſtroy him.

2. The Tribe of ***EPHRAIM*** was ſo called from ***Ephraim***, the ſecond and youngeſt Son of *Joſeph*; of whom were muſtered in the *Deſarts* 45000 fighting men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, on the North, and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South; extending from the River *Jordan*, to the *Mediterranean.*

Places of moſt conſideration, 1 *Saron*, on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitfull Valley, which reacheth from *Cæſaræa Paleſtinæ*, as far as *Joppa.* 2 *Lydda*, upon the ſame ſhores, where Saint *Peter* (*virtute Chriſti, non ſua*) cured *Æneas* of the *Palſey.* By the *Gentiles* it was called *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the *Chriſtians* in the time of the *holy wars*, it had the name of Saint *Georges*: partly from a Magnificent Temple which the Emperour *Juſtinian* there erected to the honour of that bleſſed *Martyr*; but principally from an opinion which they had amongſt them, that he ſuffered Martyrdome in that place. An opinion founded on miſtakes, firſt of a *Cenotaphium*, or an empty Monument, erected in this City to preſerve his memory, for the grave in which he was interred: the other, in taking the word *Paſſio*, uſed in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his ſuffering, which is meant only of the ſtory or *celebration.* But howſoever they intituled it by the name of Saint *Georges*, as was ſaid before, and made it on that account alſo an *Epiſcopal* See. 3 *Ramatha*, or *Aramathea*, a City of the *Levites*, ſuppoſed to be the dwelling of *Joſeph*, who begged of *Pilate* the bodie of CHRIST. 4 *Helon*, or *Aialon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo; by ſome placed, and perhaps more fitly in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we ſhall hear further of it. 5 *Themnath-Chares*, given by the *Iſraelites* to *Joſuah*, who enlarged the ſame, and made it a ſtrong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the nine *Worthies* of the world; and afterwards made one of the *Præfectures* of *Judæa*, by the name of *Thamnitica.* 6 *Adaſa*, or *Adarſa*, where *Judas Maccabæus* with 3000 *Jews*, overthrew the Army of *Nicanor.* 7 *Jeſleti*, called otherwiſe *Pelethi*, which gave name and birth unto the *Pelethites*, part of *Davids* guard, under the governance of *Benajah.* 8 *Silo*, ſituate on the top of a lofty mountain; the receptacle of the *Ark*, till taken and carried thither by the *Philiſtims.* 9 *Michmas*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brethren, ſituate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hieruſalem*, now called *Byra.* 10. *Naioth*, where *Saul* propheſied. 11 *Bethoron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow, which *Judas Maccabæus* here gave to *Lyſias.* 12 *Pirhathon*, on the Mountain *Amalec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judge of *Iſrael.* 13 *Sichem*, called alſo *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times, of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who deflowred *Dinah* the Daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cauſe deſtroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*: repaired again, and afterward by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground; a third time re-edified by *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damaſcus*: yet notwithſtanding theſe blowes it was of good eſteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days, and converted many. Memorable for *Jacobs* Well which was very near it, more for its neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the bleſſings were to be read to the people (of which ſee *Deut.* 11. 27. & *Joſ.* 8. 23.) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the uſe of the *Samaritan* Nation, at the coſt and charge of *Sanballat* a great Prince amongſt them. Who having married his Daughter to *Manaſſes*, brother of *Jaddus* the *High Prieſt* of the *Jews*, and fearing he would put her away, to avoid the ſentence of excommunication, which he was involved in for that match: promiſed him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple anſwerable unto that of *Hieruſalem*, and make him the *High Prieſt* thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not ſtood above two hundred years, when deſtroyed by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabæan*; the place remaining notwithſtanding a place of worſhip, as appeareth *Joh.* 4. 20. As for the City of *Sichem* or *Sichor*; it was by the *Grecians* called *Nicopolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, who cauſed it to be called *Flavia Cæſaræa*: of which Colony was that renowned *Juſtin Martyr.* 14 *Samaria*, the Metropolis of the kingdom of *Iſrael*, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Samron*, (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coaſt) whence it had the name. A ſtately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brochardus*, who had traced the antient ruines of it, to be bigger than *Hieruſalem.* Deſtroyed by the *Aſſyrians* when they carried away the Ten Tribes; but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sons of *Hyrcanus* above-mentioned. But *Herod* the Great, who was pleaſed with the ſituation of it, did again re-edifie it, in more ſtately manner than before; as appeareth by the great ſtore of goodly Marble pillars, and other carved ſtones, in great abundance found amongſt the rubbiſh: and having re-built it to his mind, incloſed it with a ſtrong wall, and beautified it with a goodly Temple; in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebaſtos*, he cauſed it to be called *Sebaſte.* Memorable after this new erection from the Sepulchre of *Iohn Baptiſt*, and being

Judæa. made the *Metropolis* of *Paleſtina Secunda*, (by conſequence an *Arch-Biſhops See*) now nothing but a few cottages filled with *Grecian* Monks.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themſelves (ſo called from this their principal City) leſs ſubject to the viciſſitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Deſcended for the moſt part from the *Aſſyrians*, and ſuch other Nations, as were ſent thither to fill up the empty places of the Captive Tribes: but called *Cutheans* by the *Iews*, either becauſe moſt of them were of *Cuth*, a Region of *Perſia*, as *Ioſephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzeſtan*; or elſe by way of ſcorn, for *Chuſites*, as being of the poſterity of the accurſed *Cham*, by *Chus* his ſon. Having imbraced the Law of *Moſes*, they began to think better of the *Iews* than the other Nations, but fitted their affections to the change of times: it being the obſervation of the ſaid *Ioſephus*, that as often as the *Iews* were in any proſperity, then they called them *Cozins*, and would be of the ſame Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were ſtrangers which came thither out of forein Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in that *Character*. For when *Alexander* the *Great* had granted the *Iews* a releaſe of the ſeventh years tribute, the *Samaritans* deſiring the like exemption, pleaded for themſelves Ἑβραῖοι μὲν εἶναι, *&c.* that they indeed were very *Hebrews*, though it pleaſed the *Sidonians* to call them *Sichemites*. But when *Antiochus* raged againſt them with fire and ſword, the *Samaritans* ſent Letters to him, diſclaiming all relation to thoſe of *Iudah*, and challenging their deſcent from the *Medes* and *Perſians*. Nor were they content only to diſclaim all kinred, with the *Iews*, in the times of trouble, when any perſecution roſe againſt them for the Law of God; but did them alſo all ill Offices, and joined with their Enemies to their deſtruction: eſpecially after the *Iews* had refuſed to admit of their aſſiſtance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindred with great malice, and no leſs perverſeneſs. But the fortune of the *Iews* did at laſt prevail, the whole Nation being ſubdued by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabaan*, who deſtroyed their *Schiſmatical* temple alſo, and levelled *Samaria* it ſelf to the very ground. After this ſubject to the *Iews*, who poſſeſſed themſelves of moſt of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrower compaſs than they were in formerly: but ſtill ſo hated and contemned, that nothing was able to appeaſe that inveterate malice, which they had conceived; till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to ſeek their dwellings in other Countries, Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman* Empire, by the name of *Paleſtina Secunda*; ſucceſſively ſubject with the reſt, to the *Perſians*, *Saracens*, and *Turks*, who do now poſſeſs it.

JUDÆA.

JUDÆA.

J*UDÆA*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Dead Sea*, and the River *Jordan*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Samaria*; and on the South with *Idumaa*. So called from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, who after their return from the Captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Jew* unto all the Nation, as they did that of *Judaa*, to this part of the Countrey.

The Soyl of the ſame nature with that of *Samaria*, before deſcribed; but that it is more ſwelled with Hills, and more ſtored with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we ſhall ſay no more, as to the general character and deſcription of it; but look on the particular parts as it ſtood divided betwixt the *Philiſtims*, the Tribes of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Judah*, and *Benjamin*.

And firſt, the *PHILISTIMS* commanded all the Sea-coaſts from the South of *Phœnicia*, to the North of *Idumaa*; or from the *Caſtle of Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both in the accompt. But *Joppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that, being taken in by the *Iſraelites*; they held no more than ſix Towns of any importance, with the Countries and Territories adjoining to them: but thoſe ſo populons and ſtrong, that by their own power, and the aſſurance of the *Edomites*, and the reſt of their neighbours, not well affected to the *Tribes*, they kept them under harder terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we ſum up the ſtory and ſucceſſes of their affairs.

In the mean time let us ſurvey the Countrey which was holden by them, notwithſtanding all that could be done againſt them by the Kings of *Iſrael*: and therein we ſhall find worth our obſervation, 1 *Geth*, or *Gath*, the birth-place of the huge Giant *Goliah*, ſlain by *David*; as alſo of many others of the like Giantine proportion, ſlain by *Davids* worthies. Deſtroyed by *David*, or rather ſlighted and diſmantled, it was re-built by *Rhehoboam* the ſon of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, who found the *Philiſtims* there garriſoned, but ill neighbours to him, and finally laid waſte by *Hazael* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in Saint *Hieroms* time; till in theſe laſt Ages *Fulk* the King of *Hieruſalem* erected there a new Caſtle, from the antient ruines. From hence as I conceive, the *Idol Dagon*, ſo much worſhipped by the *Philiſtims*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* called *Ater-Gatis*; and not from *Gatis* a *Syrian* Queen, as is ſaid by many. 2. *Accaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably againſt the *Danites* and *Judaans*. Much ſpoken of in the holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worſhip of *Bel-zebub*, that is to ſay, the *Lord of Flies*: ſo called by the *Jews*, either in contempt of the *Idolatries* committed to him, or becauſe of that great multitude of *flies* which attended his Sacrifices, whereof ſome ſay, the Temple of *Hieruſalem* was wholly free. But whatſoever he was, or for what cauſe ſo named, certain it is that he was here had in eſpecial honour, and therefore called in Scripture the god of *Accaron*: and hither *Ahaziah* the King of *Iſrael* ſent his meſſenger, to enquire of this *Idol*, concerning his health. 3 *Aſhdod*, (by the *Grecians* called *Azotus*) memorable in the Holy Writ for the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the *Ark* of the Lord was brought; that *Idol* falling down before it, as not able to ſtand upright when the *Ark* was ſo near. Near to this Town was *Judas Maccabaus* overcome and ſlain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*, and not long after the Town it ſelf was taken by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas*, who put the Citizens to the ſword; and burnt all ſuch as fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very *Idol*, conſumed in the ſame fire with the *Idolaters*. Re-built by *Gabinius* a *Roman* General: in the time of *Chriſtianity* it was made an *Epiſcopal* See; and continued a fair Village till the dayes of S. *Hierom*. 4 *Aſcalon*, on the Sea-ſide alſo, ſaid to be built by *Aſcalus* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a war againſt the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and ſtrongeſt Cities of the *Philiſtims*, of great note amongſt the *Gentiles* for a Temple dedicated to *Dirceto*, the Mother of *Semiramis*, here worſhipped in the form of a *Mer-maid*: and for another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod* the father of *Antipater*, and Grandfather of *Herod* the *Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*) is ſaid to have ſerved as the *Prieſt*. It had in the firſt times of *Chriſtianity*, an Epiſcopal See; and in the courſe of the *holy wars*, was beautified with a new wall, and many fair buildings by King *Richard* the firſt. 5 *Gaza*, more within the Land, on the River *Beſor*; a fair and ſtrong Town, formerly called *Aſſa*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the *Heathens*; or elſe it was ſo called by the *Perſians*, in regard that *Cambyſes* here laid up the Treaſure which he had provided for the war of *Ægypt*, the word *Gaza*, in the *Perſians* language, ſignifying treaſures. Of which *Cambyſes* it is ſaid by *Pomponius Mela*, *cùm armis* Ægyptum *peteret huc belli opes & pecuniam invehi curavit*. After which it was made the Receipt or Treaſury, in which the *Perſians* had the tributes of the Weſtern Provinces; whence all riches had in time the name of *Gaza*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it againſt the *Philiſtims*, he again deſerted it. Deſtroyed by *Alexander* the *Great*, and re-built again, it made notable reſiſtance againſt the *Maccabees*; till at laſt forced by *Simon*, the brother of *Judas*, who liked the place ſo well, that he intended to have made it his place of reſidence: not ſo decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the days of *Brochardus*; And it is ſtill the beſt of all the coaſt, built on a hill encompaſſed with rich and pleaſant vallies; the building low and mean, as in other places; but ſome of them adorned with Pillars of fair *Parian* marble, digged out of the remaining ruins. 6 *Maioma*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it ſelf by *Conſtantine*, by whom called *Conſtantia*: but reſtored again by *Julian* unto thoſe of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maritima*.

Theſe were the chief places holden by the *Philiſtims*, a ſtrong and Giantlike race of men, ſuch as the Scripture calls by the name of *Anak*, or the *Sons* of *Anak*. Originally deſcended from *Caſluhim*, and *Copthorim*, of the race of *Mizraim* the ſon of *Cham*: as appeareth both by the common conſent of antient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jerem*. 47. 4. and *Amos* 9. 7. Theſe being ſetled firſt in the borders of *Egypt* and *Idumæa*, where the *Caſluhim* gave name unto the Province of *Caſiotis*, and the Mountain *Caſias*; proceeded North-wards and ſubdued the *Avim*, a *Canaanitiſh* people, planting themſelves in their habitations, as is ſaid expreſly *Deut*. 2. 23. Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Iſaac* went down to *Gezar*. Governed at firſt by one King whom they called alwaies by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Egyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*; ſometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but ſtill united in the times of approaching dangers; Too ſtrong to be ſubdued by the Tribes of *Iſrael*, they made head againſt them, and maſtered them at ſeveral times, for above a 150 years, Tyrannizing over them, till broken by *Sampſon*, and for a time kept off by *Samuel*. Recovering again, they vanquiſhed the *Iſraelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they diſcomfited, and hanged his dead body barbarouſly on the Walls of *Bethſan*. But *David* a more fortunate Prince, overthrew them in many ſet battels, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the ſtrongeſt Towns they had; and by that means ſo weakned them, that they durſt not ſtir all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troubleſom in the daies of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their Army overthrown, *Ita* and *Amnia*, two of their ſtrong Ports, took and razed; and the Town of *Gath* again diſmantled. In the time of the *Idolatrous Achaz*, aſſociating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the deſtruction of *Judah*) they brake out again; took *Bethſemes*, *Ajalon*, *Timnah*, and ſome other Towns; carried away many Priſoners, and ſlew much people. But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them the greateſt part of their Countrey, betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Which notwithſtanding, they recovered to ſo great eſteem, that the whole Countrey had from them the name of *Paleſtine*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabæans*, they loſt both their power and reputation, paſſing in common eſtimate as a part of *Jewry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the times ſucceeding.

2. The Tribe of *DAN*, is ſo called from *Dan* the fifth ſon of *Jacob*, by *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were muſtered at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66400 at the ſecond muſter, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim*, on the North; *Simeon*, on the South; the Tribe of *Benjamin*, on the Eaſt; and the *Mediterranean* on the Weſt.

Places of moſt note in it 1 *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once a famous Mart-town, and the onely Haven to *Judæa* in foregoing times: the Town, where *Jonah* took ſhip to fly unto *Tarſhiſh*; where *Peter* raiſed *Dorcas* from death to life; and where he lying in the houſe of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a viſion taught the converſion of the *Gentiles*. This City they report to have been built before the *flood*. And here they ſay reigned *Cepheus*, whoſe Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perſeus* delivered from a ſea-monſter; ſome of whoſe bones the people uſed to ſhew to ſtrangers, even to the flouriſhing of the *Romans*. Juſt as our Citizens of *Coventry* and *Warwick*, ſhew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunſmear* heath, and the bones of I know not what Giant, ſlain by *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garriſoned by the *Syrians*; who having in the Port a Fleet of good power and ſtrength, invited 200 of the chief Citizens to go aboard with them, and there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas*, and ſuch as did eſcape the Fire fell upon his Sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, and the ſecond time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers, by King *Lewis* of *France*, in the year 1250, the *Holy Wars* then drawing to their final end. Now nothing ſtanding of it but two little Turrets where are certain *Harquebuſſes* for defence of the Haven; none of the beſt; defended from the South and Weſt winds with eminent Rocks, but expoſed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unſafe than the open Seas, when inraged by Tempeſts. Not much frequented by the Merchants, who trade here but for Cottons onely; and hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2 *Rama*, by the *Moors* called *Ramula*, ſituate in a ſandy plain on the riſing of a little Hill; built of free-ſtone, but the ſtreets thereof narrow, and the Houſes contemptible. More beautifull in the ruines of ſome Chriſtian Churches, and a Monaſtery built by *Philip* the Good of *Burgundy*, where the Houſe of *Nicodemus* ſtood; than in any of the remaining of edifices. 3 *Jamnia*, near *Joppa*, where *Judas* burnt the reſt of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was ſeen to *Hieruſalem*, 240 furlongs off: mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and in the times of *Chriſtianity* an Epiſcopal See; now not diſcernable in the ruines. 4 *Cedar* or *Cedron*, fortified againſt the *Jews* by *Cendebæus* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hereabouts was overthrown by the *Maccabees*. 5 *Modini*, a ſmall Town, but honoured with the birth and ſepulchre of thoſe *Maccabæans*; the Sepulchre being ſeven Marble Pillars of ſo great an height, that they ſerved as a mark for Seamen. 6. *Gibbethon*, in the Countrey called *Makats*, a City of the *Levites*, but afterwards poſſeſſed by the *Philiſtims*; at the ſiege whereof *Nadab*, the ſon of *Jeroboam* King of *Iſrael*, was ſlain by *Baaſha*, who ſucceeded; and *Omri* choſen King on the death of *Zimri*. 7 *Cariathjarim*, where the Ark of the Lord was kept for 20 years, in the houſe of *Aminadab*; that is to ſay, from the ſending it home by the *Philiſtims*, till brought to *Hieruſalem* by *David*. 8 *Beth-ſemes*, to which the *Ark* was brought by a yoke of Kine, turned looſe by the *Philiſtims*: for irreverent looking into which, there were ſlain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer than 50070 perſons of this City. 9. *Tſarah*, near which is a fountain, called the Fountain of *Ethiopia*, becauſe *Philip* there baptized the *Ethiopian Eunuch*. 10. *Caſpin*, taken with great ſlaughter by *Judas Maccabæus*. 11. *Lachis* remarkable for the death of *Amaziah* King of *Judah*. 12. *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo, touched upon before in the Tribe of *Ephraim*, in the borders whereof we find it ſituated; and therefore by ſome Authors reckoned to the ſame Tribe, and by ſome to the other, in the valley whereof the Moon is ſaid to have ſtood ſtill at the prayers of *Joſuah*, as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon*: the motions of the Heavens being ſtaid, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites*. To this Tribe alſo belonged the Town and Territory of *Dan*, or *Leſhem*, afterwards called *Cæſaria Philippi*, in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALIM*; whereof we have there ſpoke already.

3. The Tribe of *SIMEON* was ſo called from *SIMEON* the ſecond Son of *Jacob*, by his firſt Wife *Leah*: of whom were found at the firſt muſter 59300 able men: and but 22200 at the ſecond muſter, when they came into *Canaan*. Where they enjoyed but a ſmall Territory to themſelves, their lot falling amongſt the *Philiſtims*, whom they were not able to expell: and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Judah*, where they were permitted to enjoy ſome Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards, in the reign of King *Hezekiah*, ſome of them poſſeſſed themſelves of *Gedar*, belonging to the Children of *Ham*; and others paſſing Southwards into *Idumæa*, ſmote the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the Mountains thereof, and dwelt in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themſelves and their Children many of them undertook the Office of *Scribes* or *Scriveners*, and diſperſed themſelves amongſt the reſt of the *Tribes*, teaching their children to write, and giving themſelves to the employment of *Publick Notaries*: God herein verifying the curſe which *Jacob* had denounced on *Simeon*, that he *ſhould be divided and ſcattered in* Iſrael. But for their fixed habitation which fell to them by lot, it lay betwixt *Dan* upon the North, and *Idumæa* on the South; the Tribe of *Judah* on the Eaſt, and the *Philiſtims* upon the Weſt.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Gerar*, the Royal ſeat of the two *Abimelechs*, Kings of the *Philiſtims*, with whom *Abraham* and *Iſaac* had to do; and probably of ſome other of their Kings and Princes, till ſubdued by the *Iſraelites*. Situate in the South borders of *Canaan*, not far from the wilderneſſe of *Beerſheba*, but in a very healthfull air; called therefore *Regio Salutaris* in the times ſucceeding. 2. *Siceleg*, or *Ziglag*, belonging to the *Philiſtims* till the time of *David*, to whom given by *Achiſh* King of *Gath*, for his place of retreat, when perſecuted by *Saul*; from whom flying he lodged here all his goods and carriages: ſacked by the *Amalekites*, but the booty recovered from them ſpeedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David*. 3. *Haiin*; a City of the *Levites*. 4. *Cariath-Sepher*, that is to ſay the *City of Books*, ſeated within the bounds of *Simeon*, but belonging to *Judah*: which ſome hold to be the Univerſity or *Academy* of old *Paleſtine*. A City of the *Levites* alſo, and at firſt poſſeſſed by the Sonnes of *Anak*, or men of a *Gigantine* ſtature, but taken by *Othoniel*, the Son of *Kenan*, on the promiſe and encouragement which was given by *Caleb*, that whoſoever took it ſhould have his Daughter *Achſah* to Wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir*, *Judg.* 1. 11. known in the time of Saint *Hierom* by the name of *Daema*. 5. *Chorma*, conceived by ſome to be that place mentioned *Numb.* 14. 45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* purſued thoſe of *Iſraël*. 6. *Beer-ſheba*, or *Puteus juramenti*; ſo called of the Wells of waters, and the Oath which was there ſworn betwixt *Abraham* and *Abimelech*, *Gen.* 21. 31. Memorable in the Scripture for the *Grove* which *Abraham* there planted; the wandring of *Hagar* thereabouts, when ſhe was caſt out of *Abrahams* houſe with her young ſon *Iſmael*; and the dwelling of *Iſaac*, for which cauſe called the City of *Iſaac*. Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan*, the length whereof is often meaſured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan*; and for that cauſe well fortified by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, when they were poſſeſſed of this Country; as ſtanding on the borders of *Idumæa*, and the *Deſarts* of *Arabia*, in the way from *Egypt*.

4. The Tribe of *JUDAH* was ſo called from *JUDAH* the fourth ſon of *Jacob*, by his wife *L[illegible]h*: of whom there were numbered at the firſt general muſter taken near Mount *Sinai*, 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500 at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan*. The greateſt Tribe, and therefore anſwerably fitted with the largeſt Territory: bordering on the *Dead Sea*, Eaſt; upon *Simeon*, Weſt; the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumæans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes; but otherwiſe unable to contain or feed thoſe infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* muſtering 470000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the reſt of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native ſoveraignty over all the others; the *Scepter*, the *Legiſlative* power, and the Worlds *Meſſiah*, being all promiſed unto this.

Places of moſt obſervation in it. 1. *Arad*, ſituate in the entrance of *Judæa*, in the way from the Wilderneſs of *Edom*. 2. *Hebron*, one of the antienteſt Cities of *Canaan*: the ſeat of *Giants*, called *Anakim*, or the ſonnes of *Anak*. This word *Anak* ſignifieth a chain worn for Ornament, and it

Judæa.

ſeemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the ſpoils of the enemies, wore a chain of gold, leaving both the cuſtom and name to his poſterity. We read the like of *Manlius Torquatus* in the *Roman* Hiſtories. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a burial-place for his dead; in which his Wife *Sarah* was firſt buried, and after her four of the *Patriarchs*. Adjoining to this Town is the plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham* the Father of the faithfull, ſitting in his Tent, was viſited from Heaven by God in the ſhape of a man. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hieruſalem*; to this place came the Tribes to annoint him King over *Iſrael*; and hither came *Abſalon*, under the pretence of paying his vowes, to uſurp the kingdom of his Father. 3 *Tecoa*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet; and alſo that woman, who by the words which *Joab* put into her mouth, perſwaded the King to call *Abſolon* from exile. In the wilderneſs of this *Tecoa*, there aſſembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and *Mount Seir*, to overthrow *Juda*. But the Lord being appeaſed by the *publick Faſt*, proclaimed and kept by *Jehoſaphat* and the people, ſowed diſſentions amongſt them. So that *the children of* Ammon *and* Moab *ſtood up againſt the inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *utterly to ſlay and deſtroy them; and when they had made an end of the Inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *every one helped to deſtroy one another.* 4 *Cerioth*, or *Carioth*, the birth-place of *Judas*, hence ſurnamed *Iſcariot* (or the man of *Carioth*) who betrayed our Saviour. 5 *Jether*, or *Jutter*, in the North border of this Tribe, towards *Eleutheropolis*, a City antiently of the *Levites*, and called in S. *Hierom*'s time *Jethica*, and then altogether repleniſhed with *Chriſtians*, now nothing but the name remaining. 6 *Mareſa*, the native Soyl of the Prophet *Michah*, near whereunto firſt *Aſa* King of *Judah* diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Terah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, conſiſting of above a Million of men; and afterwards *Gorgias* was overthrown by *Judas Maccabæus*. 7 *Emaus*, (after called *Nicopolis*) memorable for the third overthrow which *Judas* gave to the ſaid *Gorgias*; for our Redeemers ſhewing himſelf after his *Reſurrection* to *Cleophas* and an other of his Diſciples; and for the *hot Bathes* hereabouts, which gave the name of *Salutaris* to this part of *Paleſtine*. The Sovereign vertue of which waters *Sozomen* a *Chriſtian*, attributes to the waſhing of *Chriſts* feet in them, as he paſſed by at that time; but *Joſephus*, a *Jew*, aſcribes (as it is moſt likely) unto natural cauſes. 8 *Haſor*, or *Chatſor*, one of the frontier Towns towards *Idumæa*. 9 *Odalla*, or *Hadullan*, an antient and magnificent City, taken and deſtroyed by *Joſuah*, and long after much enlarged and beautified by *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Ceila*, or *Keila*, where *David* ſometimes hid himſelf when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the aſſaults of the *Philiſtims*. 11 *Eleuthoropolis*, or the *Free City*, not far from *Hebron*; a City of later date than any of *Judah*, mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and much remembred by S. *Hierom*. 12 *Azecha*, not far from *Emaus*, to which *Joſuah* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon*, and his four Aſſociates, whom he diſcomfited in the cauſe and quarrel of the *Gibeonites*; moleſted by them for ſubmitting to their common Enemy. Seated in the Valley of *Terebinth*, and of very great ſtrength, preſuming upon which, it revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the ſame time that *Libna* and the *Edomites* had revolted from him. 13 *Beth-Sur*, (or *Beth-Sora*) that is to ſay, the *houſe* on the *Rock*, ſo called from the ſituation on a rocky hill, one of the ſtrongeſt places of *Judah*: Fortified firſt by *Roboam* the ſon of *Solomon*, after by *Judas Maccabæus*, and finally made impregnable his brother *Simeon*. 14 *Adoram*, bordering on the *Dead-Sea*, beautified alſo by *Roboam*. 15 *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took his name from the words of *Lot*, alledging that it was but a little one, *Gen.* 19. 20. as the word *Tſohor* doth import, in whoſe eſcape it was preſerved, being otherwiſe one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pentapolis*, doomed unto deſtruction; the other four, *Sodom*, *Gomorrha*, *Adama*, and *Seboim*, being at the ſame time deſtroyed by fire and brimſtone. 16 *Maſſada*, frequently mentioned by *Joſephus*, as a place of great ſtrength both by Art and Nature, and as it is by him deſcribed (in the 7 Book *de Bello Jud. cap.* 28.) to be thought impregnable; and therefore made by *Herod* (in the time of his troubles) the place of Refuge, in which he diſpoſed of *Mariamne* his betroathed wife, her mother *Alexandra*, with divers honourable Ladies, and where they were preſerved in ſafety againſt all his Enemies, till he came armed with power from *Rome*, to diſlodge their forces, which was done accordingly. Firſt built by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, as a ſure place of Refuge againſt the *Syrians*; and afterwards ſo eſteemed by *Herod* for the reaſon above mentioned, that he not onely much enlarged it, with all the requiſite additions of ſtrength and beauty, but built within the verge thereof, a magnificent Pallace. The whole environed with a wall of 7 furlongs compaſs, 12 cubits high, and 8 cubits broad, built of white ſtone, and ſituate on an high Mountain called *Collis Achilla*, waſhed on the Eaſt-ſide by the *Dead Sea*, or *Lacus Aſphaltites*, and by that ſecured; on the other ſide fenced with ſuch deep ditches, that it was a terrour to any man to look down into them: beſides which natural ſituation it was fortified by [illegible]*rod* with 27 Turrets, who left therein as in a place impregnable and inacceſſible, a *Magazine* of Armes, and warlike furniture, for an Army of 10000 men, all ſorts of victuals to ſuſtain them, and ground enough within the wall to yeeld corn ſufficient, when time and a long ſiege ſhould conſume thoſe victuals. A place of ſuch ſtrength and ſo great concernment, that it held out againſt the *Romans* (when *Veſpaſian* and his ſon *Titus* managed that great war) after all the reſt of *Judæa* had been conquered by them. 17 *Libna*, a ſtrong City ſeated in a Corner of *Judah*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*. This City revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the ſame time the *Edomites* did, and continued a *free State*, even as long as *Judah* continued a kingdom. 18. *Ziph*, in the wilderneſs, where *David* hid himſelf from the fury of *Saul*. Hither, when *Saul* purſued him, *David* came into his Camp (the watch being all aſleep) and took thence the *Spear*, and a *Cruſe* of Oyl, and departed. *Abiſhai* indeed would have killed him: but *David*, though he knew that *Samuel* had by

Gods

Judæa.

Gods command abdicated *Saul* from the Kingdom, and that himſelf was appointed in his ſtead, would not touch him; but left him to the judgement of the Lord, whoſe anointed he was. 19 *Bethlem*, or (to diſtinguiſh it from another of this name in *Zebulon* ſo called) *Bethlem-Judah*, where Chriſt was born; and the *Innocents* ſuffered for him, before he had ſuffered for them. In this general Maſſacre of young Children, a ſon of *Herods*, which was at nurſe, was alſo ſlain; which being told unto *Auguſtus*, he replyed, *he had rather be* Herods *Swine than his Son*: His *Swine* being ſafe in regard the *Jews* were forbidden hog-meat; but his *ſons* frequently made away, upon *fears* and *jealouſies*. A Town for this cauſe had in great reſpect by the Primitive *Chriſtians*, beautified by *Helen* with a ſtately Temple, which yet ſtandeth entire; by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by Saint *Hierome*) with ſome goodly Monaſteries, in one of which the body of that Father lyeth; and by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, with a See Epiſcopal. 20. On the frontier of this Countrey towards the *Philiſtims*, was that ſtrong Caſtle which *Herod* repairing, called *Herodium*; ſeated on a hill, the aſcent unto which was made with 200 ſteps of *Marble*, exceeding fair and large. In this Countrey alſo are the hills of *Engaddi*, in a Cave of which *David* cut off the lap of *Sauls* garment; and all along the bottoms whereof were the Gardens of *Balſamum* or *Opobalſamum*, the trees of which, were by *Cleopatra* (at ſuch time as ſhe governed *M. Antony*, and the Eaſt) ſent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Ægypt*; and *Herod*, who durſt not deny them, plucked them up by the roots, and ſent them to her.

5. The Tribe of BENJAMIN took the name from the twelfth and youngeſt ſon of *Jacob*, by *Rachel* his beſt beloved wife, who died in that Child-birth: of which at the firſt muſter near unto Mount *Sinai*, were numbered 35000 able men; and at the ſecond muſter, when they entred the *Promiſed Land*, there were found of them fit for Arms, 45600 perſons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the folly of the men of *Gibeah*, all *Iſrael* arming againſt it as one man. For beſides thoſe that periſhed in the former battels; there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the ſword: the fury of the Conquerours after that great victory ſparing neither man nor beaſt, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities alſo which they came unto. So great an havock was there made even of innocent maidens, that when the edge of this diſpleaſure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for thoſe young men which had eſcaped; The other Tribes having bound themſelves by ſolemn Oath, not to beſtow their Daughters on them: inſomuch that they were fain to provide themſelves of Wives of the Daughters of *Jabeſh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manaſſites* beyond *Jordan*, which they took by aſſault; and of the Daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by Stratagem. The whole ſtory ſee at large in the book of *Judges*, chap. 19. 20, 21.

The Territories of this Tribe lay betwixt thoſe of *Ephraim* on the North, and *Judah* on the South; having the *Dead-Sea* to the Eaſt, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the Weſt-ward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1 *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* brethren. 1 *Macc.* 9. 73. 2. *Miſpah*, famous in being the ordinary place of aſſembly, for the whole body of the people, in matters of war or peace: as alſo in that ſtanding in the midſt of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the ſeat of *juſtice*, to which *Samuel* went yearly, to give judgement to the people. 3. *Gebah*, the North border of the Kingdom of *Judah* toward *Iſrael*. 4 *Gibeah*, the Countrey of *Saul*, the firſt King: where the abuſing the *Levites* wife by the young men of this Town, had almoſt rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Iſrael*. 5. *Ai*, a great and ſtrong City, in the ſiege of which the *Iſraelites* were firſt diſcomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had ſtoln the *accurſed* thing, the Camp was purged, *Joſuah* by a warlike ſtratagem ſurprized it. 6. *Gibeon*, the mother City of the *Gibeonites*, who preſaging the unreſiſtable victories of the *Iſraelites*, came to the Camp of *Joſuah*, and by a wile obtained peace of him and the People. Employed by them in hewing of wood, and drawing water for the uſe of the *Tabernacle*, after the fraud was made known unto them; called *Nethinims*, *Ezr.* 43. from *Nathan*, which ſignifies to *give*, becauſe they were *given* to the ſervice of the *Tabernacle* firſt; of the *Temple* after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, ſlew ſome of them; for which fact the Lord cauſed a famine on the Land: which could not be taken away till ſeven of *Sauls* Sons were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This famine did God ſend, becauſe in the killing of thoſe poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken, which *Ioſuah* and the Princes ſwore concerning them. In defence of thoſe *Gibeonites* it was that *Ioſuah* waged war againſt the Kings of the *Canaanites*; and ſtayed the motion of the Sun by his fervent prayers. 7 *Iericho*, deſtroyed by the ſound of *Rams-horns*, was not only levelled by *Ioſuah* to the ground; but a curſe inflicted on him that ſhould attempt the re-building of it. This curſe notwithſtanding, at the time when *Ahab* reigned in *Iſrael* (which was about five hundred years after the ruine of it) *Hiel* a *Bethelite*, delighted with the pleaſantneſs of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Ioſuah*) as he laid the foundation of the walls, he loſt his eldeſt Son; and when he had finiſhed it, and was ſetting up the Gates thereof, he loſt alſo the younger. It may be *Hiel* when he began this work minded not the propheſie; it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Ioſuah*, not ſo much to proceed from the ſpirit of propheſie, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being ſpoken in way of wiſh, or execration. And it is poſſible, it may be, he choſe rather to build the eternity of his name on ſo pleaſant and beautifull a City, than on the lives and iſſues of two young men. 8. *Anathoth*, the birth-place of the Prophet *Ieremy*, and the Patrimony of *Abiathar* the *high-Prieſt*, ſent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when depoſed

from

Judæa.

from his office by that King. 9 *Nob*, called, 1 *Sam.*22. 19. the *City* of the *Prieſts*, deſtroyed by *Saul*, for the relief which *Abimelech* the high Prieſt had given to *David*; the *Ark* of the Lord then reſiding there. 10 *Gilgal*, upon the banks of *Jordan*, where *Joſuah* did firſt eat of the fruits of the Land, and kept his firſt *Paſſover*; where he *circumciſed* ſuch of the people, as were born during their wandring in the Wilderneſs; and nigh to which he ſet up twelve ſtones for a memorial to poſterity, that the waters of *Jordan* did there divide themſelves to give paſſage to the twelve Tribes of *Iſrael*. Here *Agag* King of the *Amalekites*, was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*, and here *Samuel* once every year adminiſtred Juſtice to the people. For being ſeated in the midſt of the Land of *Iſrael* betwixt North and South, and on the Eaſt-ſide of the Countrey near the banks of *Jordan*, it ſerved very fitly for that purpoſe: as *Miſpah* alſo did, which ſtood in the ſame diſtance, in regard of the length of the Land of **Canaan**, but ſituate towards the Weſt Sea, near the Land of the *Philiſtims*: uſed therefore interchangeably for the eaſe of the people. 11 *Bethel*, at the firſt called *Luz*, but took his new name in the remembrance of the viſion which *Jacob* ſaw here, at his going towards *Meſopotamia*, as is ſaid *Gen.* 28. 19. It ſignifieth the houſe of *God*, and was therefore choſen by *Jeroboam*, for the ſetting up of one of his *Golden Calves*; though thereby, (as the Prophet ſaith) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the *houſe of vanity*, *Oſee* 4. 15. and 10. 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdom of the *ten Tribes*, and the Southern border of that Kingdom on the coaſt of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Abjah* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a member of his Kingdom, till the deſtruction of it by the *Chaldæans*. Called with the reſt of thoſe parts, in the time of the *Maccabees* by the name of *Aphærema*, which ſignifieth a thing taken away; becauſe taken away from the *ten Tribes*, to which once it belonged, 1 *Maccab.* 11. 34. where it is ſaid, to have been taken from the Countrey of *Samaria*, and added unto the borders of *Judæa*. 12. *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and ſaid to have been added to the Realm of *Judah*, having been formerly the South border of the kingdom of *Iſrael*; and therefore ſtrongly fortified by *Baaſha*, in the time of *Aſa* King of *Judah*. 13 *Chadid*, or *Hadid*, one of three Cities (the other two being 14. *Lod*, and 15. *Ono*) which were inhabited by the *Benjamites* after the Captivity. Deſtroyed in the wars with the Kings of *Syria*, and afterward re-built by *Simon* the *Maccabæan*.

But the chief glory of this Tribe, and of all the reſt, and not ſo only, but of all the whole world beſides, was the famous City of *Hieruſalem*; ſeated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be aſcended with ſteep and difficult aſſents (except towards the North) environed on all other ſides alſo with ſome neighbouring Mountains, as if placed in the midſt of an *Amphitheatre*. It conſiſted in the time of its greateſt flouriſh of four parts, ſeparated by their ſeveral Wall, as if ſeveral Cities; we may call them the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City*, ſeated upon their ſeveral Hills. Of theſe, that which we call the City of *Herod*, had formerly been beautified with the Houſes of many of the *Prophets*, as in our Saviours time with that of *Mary* the Mother of *John Mark*, mentioned *Acts* 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Chriſtians*: the Weſtern part whereof was wholy taken up by the Palace of *Herod* (a wicked, but magnificent Prince) for coſt exceſſive, and for ſtrength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, fiſh-ponds, places deviſed for pleaſure, beſides thoſe for exerciſe. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it, that on the South-eaſt of the Wall, 50 Cubits high, of excellent workmanſhip, called *Mariamnes Tower*, in memory of his beloved but inſolent wife, raſhly murdered by him. Oppoſite to which on the South-weſt corner, ſtood the Tower of *Phaſeolus*, ſo called by the name of his brother, 70 Cubits high, and in form reſembling that ſo much celebrated *Ægyptian Pharos*: and on the North wall on an high Hill: the Tower of *Hippick*, exceeding both the reſt in height by 14 Cubits, and having on the top two *Spires*; in memory of the two *Hippici*, his very dear Friends, ſlain in his ſervice by the warrs.

2. On the South-ſide ſtood that part which was called the *Old City*, poſſeſſed if not built by the *Jebuſites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*: but after called the City of *David*, becauſe taken by him; who thereon built a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, the Royal Court and Manſion of the Kings ſucceeding. In the Weſt part hereof ſtood the *Tower of David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cæſar*, compoſed of Marble, and every where interlaid with gold; and not far off, the houſe of *Annas* and *Caiaphas*, to which the Conſpirators led our Saviour to receive his tryal.

3 That which was called the *Lower City*, becauſe it had more in it of the *Valley*, was alſo called the *Daughter of Sion*, becauſe built after it, and did in Majeſty and greatneſs exceed the Mother. For therein upon Mount *Moriah*, ſtood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon) and beewixt it and Mount *Sion* on another Hill, the Place which he built for his Wife the Daughter of *Ægypt*; and that which he founded for himſelf, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the *Temple*. Weſt hereof on a lofty rock over-looking the City, ſtood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabæans*, re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa* (though of *Herods* race:) and not far off the *Theatre* of *Herods* building, adorned with admiral Pictures, expreſſing the many Victories and Triumphs of *Auguſtus Cæſar*. In this part alſo ſtood Mount *Acra*, and on that once a *Citadel* built by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, but raiſed up by *Simon*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brothers, becauſe it overtopped the Temple; the houſe of *Helena* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from *Paganiſm* to *Judaiſm*, had here her dwelling, and here died; and finally *Herods Amphitheatre*, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained ſometimes with ſuch ſhews and ſpectacles, as were in uſe amongſt the *Romans*. And in this part alſo on a high and craggy rock, not far from the Temple, ſtood the *Tower of Baris*, whereon the ſame *Herod* built a ſtrong and impregnable *Citadel*, in honour of *Marc. Antonie*, whoſe Crea-

ture he firſt was, called by the name of *Antonius*; having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them 50 Cubits high, and the other 70, afterwards garriſoned by the *Romans*, for fear the *Iews* preſuming on the ſtrength of the Temple, might take occaſion to rebel.

4. As for the *New City*, which lay North to the *City* of *Herod*, it was once a Suburb only unto all the reſt inhabited by none but mechanical perſons, and the meaneſt Tradeſmen; but after incompaſſed by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with 90 Turrets. The whole City fenced with a wonderfull circumvallation on all parts thereof; having a Ditch cut out of the main Rock, as *Joſephus* an eye-witneſs writeth, ſixty foot deep, and no leſs than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. Firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Melchiſedeck* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jebuſites* themſelves, ſay others: by whomſoever built, called at firſt *Jebuſalem*, afterwards *Jeruſalem*, with the change of one letter only: inlarged in time, when made the Royal ſeat of the Houſe of *David*, to the magnificence and greatneſs before deſcribed, till it attained unto the compaſs of ſixty furlongs, or ſeven miles and a half. Unconquered for the firſt four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Iſrael*: and when *David* attempted it, the people preſumed ſo much on the ſtrength of the place, that they told him in the way of ſcorn, that *the blind and the lame* which they had amongſt them (as the Text is generally expounded) ſhould defend it againſt him. But, as I think, the learned Mr. *Gregory* of *Chriſt-Church* in *Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text then this, who telleth us, that the *Jebuſites* by the *blind and lame* (as they knew well the *Iſraelites* called *blind and lame*) did underſtand thoſe *Tutelar Idols*, on whoſe protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*) for defence hereof: and then the meaning muſt be this, thoſe Gods whom you of *Iſrael* call *blind and lame*, ſhall defend our Walls. Why elſe ſhould *David* ſay (had they meant it literally) that his ſoul hated *the lame and the blind*? 2 *Sam.* 5. 8. or why ſhould the people of *Iſrael* be ſo uncharitable, as to ſay that the *blind and the lame ſhould not come into the Houſe* (or Temple of God) were it meant no otherwiſe? but notwithſtanding in theſe vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Joab*, that fortunate and couragious Leader; and made the Royal ſeat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the *Temple* built by *Solomon*, in providing the materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* 30000 workmen, which wrought by the ten thouſand every moneth; 70000 Labourers, which carried burdens; 80000 Quarry men that hewed ſtones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overſeers of the work, no leſs than 3300 men. The deſcription of this Stately Fabrick, we have in the firſt of *Kings*, chap. 6. 7. In the year of the World 2350 it was deſtroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hieruſalem*: rebuilt again after the return from the Captivity; but with ſuch oppoſition of the *Samaritans*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tools in one hand, and their ſwords in the other, to repulſe if need were, thoſe malitious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not anſwerable to the magnificence of the former; ſo that the Prophet *Haggi* had good occaſion to ſay to the people, cap 2. v. 3. *Who is left among you that ſaw this houſe in her firſt glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing, in compariſon of it?* Nor fell it ſhort thereof only in the outward ſtructure, but ſome inward *Additaments*. For it wanted, 1. The *Pot* of *Manna*, which the Lord commanded *Moſes* to lay up before the *Teſtimony for a Memorial*, *Exod.* 16. 32, &c. 2. The *Rod of Aaron*, which only budded of all the Rods of the the Princes of *Iſrael*, and was commanded to be kept before the (Ark of the) *Teſtimony*, for a token againſt *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, *Num.* 17. 10. 3. The *Ark of the Covenant*, the making whereof we have *Exod.* 25. 10. and the placing of it in the *Oracle*, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 *Kings* 6. 19. 4. The *two Tables of the Law*, writ by Gods own finger, and by *Moſes* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5. *The fire of Sacrifice*, which came down from Heaven, mentioned *Levit.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 1. which by the Prieſt was to be kept continually burning, never to go out. This ſecond Temple, partly becauſe it was grown ruinous, partly becauſe it ſeemed not magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the *Jewes*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* pulled down, and ſet up another in the place: making it not much inferiour (if at all) unto that of *Solomon*, but far ſuperiour to the other *immenſa opulentia Templum*, as *Tacitus* moſt truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did ſometimes vouchſafe his preſence.

But here we are to underſtand, that by the Temple is not meant the *Fabrick* only, or the houſe it ſelf; but alſo all thoſe ſeveral *Courts* with which encompaſſed, being four in number. That is to ſay, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the *Prieſts Court*, which was next unto the *Temple*; wherein ſtood the *Brazen Altar* for the daily ſacrifice, and the *Laver* for the waſhing of the Prieſts and the Sacrifice alſo: into which **Court** might none enter but the Prieſt alone. 2 Then there was *Atrium populi*, or the *Peoples Court*, ſeperated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height, to which the people did repair to perform their ſacrifices, to ſay their prayers, and to make payment for their vowes. In the middle of this Court, did *Solomon* make a brazen Scaffold for the Kings his Succeſſors, 2 *Chron.* 6. 13. and afterwards in imitation of his *Porch* built before the *Temple*, were many *Porches* built about it, for the people to repair into in rainy weather; which gave to this whole Court the name of *Solomons Porch*, whereof ſee *John* 10. 23. *Acts* 3. 11. Without that ſtood 3. *Atrium Fœminarum*, or the *Womens Court*, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chron.* 20. 5. in the time of *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*; in which ſtood their Treaſury, or poor-mans Box, mentioned in the one and twentieth Chapter of Saint *Lukes* Goſpel: from whence this whole Court had ſometimes the name of Treaſury, as appeareth *Jahn* 8. 20. where it is ſaid that *theſe words ſpake JESUS in the Treaſury*, that is to ſay in the *Womens Court*, where the *Treaſury* or *Alms-Box* ſtood. Betwixt the laſt was an Aſcent of 15 ſteps, on which the *Levites* uſed to ſing thoſe 15 *Pſalms*, which do immediately follow the hundred & nineteenth *Pſalm* upon each ſtep one: from whence they had the name of *Pſalmi Graduales*, or *Cantica Graduum*, *i.e.* the *Pſalms* or Songs of *degrees*. And ſo far all was counted *holy Ground*, upon which none might tread but either natural *Jews*, or circumciſed Proſelytes, whom they called *Proſeliti fœderis*, as before was ſaid; or ſuch of the other *Sex* (not natural *Jeweſſes*) who having received all ouward *initiations*, had bound themſelves unto the obſervation of the Law of *Moſes*. 4. So was it not with the fourth and laſt Court, called *Atrium Gentium*, or the *Court* of the *Gentiles*; deſigned for the uſe of thoſe *Gentiles*, whom they called *Proſelyti Portæ*, bound only unto the keeping of the *Precepts* given to the Sons of *Noah*. For in that, as unſanctified ground (though counted part of the *Temple* alſo) did they permit a market of Sheep and Oxen, the ſale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of money-changers, for the oblations of the people: ſtabling the poor *Gentiles* amongſt their Cattel, and ranking them with the worſt of men. And out of this *Temple*, or ***Court of the Temple***, did CHRIST our Saviour caſt the *buyers* and *ſellers*, and overthrew the *Tables of money-changers*; aſſerting it to its primitive and original uſe, which was to be an *houſe of prayer for all the Nations*. This laſt *Court* ſeparated from the other by a wall of three Cubits height, adorned with certain pillars of equal diſtance, bearing this inſcription, Μηδεῖ ἀλλόφυλον ἐντὸς τοῦ Ἁγίου παριέναι, *i.e. Let no Alien* (or one that is no *Jew*) *enter into the holy place*; And to this wall it is that the Apoſtle alludeth, ſaying, ***He hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us*** (i.e. between the *Jews* and *Gentiles*) ***making one of twain***, *Epheſ.* 2. 14, 15. inferring hereupon, that the *Gentiles* are no more *ſtrangers and foreiners, but fellow-Citizens with the Saints, and of the houſhold of God*, v. 19.

But to go forwards with the *Temple*, having continued in the glories to which *Herod* brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally deſtroyed by *Titus*, the ſon of *Veſpaſian*, in the *69* year after *Chriſts* nativity. At what time the Temple of *Delphos* was utterly overthrown by *Earth-quakes*, and *Thunderbolts* from Heaven; neither of them never ſince repaired, though much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two miracles evidently ſheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the *Jewes* Ceremonies, and ***Heathen Idolatries***, that ſo the kingdom of his ſon might be all in all. For this deſtruction of the *Temple* of ***Hieruſalem*** I may call a miracle, in regard it was done againſt the command of *Titus*; who was not only carefull to preſerve it, before his Souldiers had put fire to it, but did all that poſſibly might be to quench it. His reaſon was, Ῥωμαίων γὰρ ἔσεσθαι τὴν βλάβην, as *Joſephus* hath it, becauſe the loſs thereof would redound ſo highly to the prejudice of the *Roman* Empire, in being deprived of ſuch a glorious and magnificent ſtructure. But do he what he could with his utmoſt induſtry, there was no quenching of it till it was conſumed. And it adds ſomewhat to the marvel, that this ſhould happen on the tenth day of *Auguſt*, on which day the firſt Temple had been burnt by *Nebuchadnezzar*. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope I ſhall not be accounted ſuperſtitious for this obſervation) to ſee how happy or unfortunate, one and the ſame day hath been found unto divers perſons. In the warrs betwixt the *French* and *Spaniards* for the *Realm* of *Naples*, *Friday* was obſerved to be very lucky to that great Captain *Gonſalvo*; he having on that day given the *French* many notable overthrows. *Wedneſday* is ſaid to have been fortunate to Pope *Sixtus* the fifth; for on that day he was born, on the ſame made a Monk; on that day created *General* of his Order; on the ſame made Cardinal, then choſen to be Pope, and finally on the ſame inaugurated. To *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*, *Saturday* was obſerved to be very fortunate in all his actions; as was the 24 of *February* unto *Charls* the fifth, on what day ſoever: for on that he came into the world, and in that he took King *Francis* Priſoner at the battell of *Pavie*, and on the ſame received the imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or *Saturday* it was taken by *Pompey*, on the ſame by *Herod*, and on that by *Titus*.

But go we forwards to ***Hieruſalem*** as now it ſtandeth, it lay in rubbiſh and unbuilt (after the deſtruction of it by *Titus*) till repaired by *Adrian*: and then the Temple not ſo much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the reign of *Julian* the Politick Enemy of the Church; who to diminiſh the infinite number of *Chriſtians* by the increaſe of the *Iews*, began again to build this Temple. But no ſooner were the foundations laid, but a terrible *Earth-quake* caſt them up again, and fire from Heaven conſumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other materials. As for the City it ſelf, after the deſolation in it which was made by *Titus*, it was re-edified by the Emperour *Ælius Adrianus*, who named it *Ælia*, drave thence the *Iews*, and gave it to the *Chriſtians*. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within Mount *Calvary* is comprehended, which was not in the old before. As on the other ſide, a great part of Mount *Sion*, part of the City of ***Herod***, and the Soyl where the *New City* ſtood, are left out of this: the ruins of the other ſtill remaining viſible, to ſhew the Antient greatneſs and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it ſtands at preſent, it is now only famous for the Temple of the *Sepulchre*, built by ***Helena*** (whom moſt report to have been daughter to *Coylus* a *Britiſh* King) Mother to *Conſtantine* the Great. Much adoe had the good Lady to find the place where the Lords body had been laid; for the *Iewes* and ***Heathens*** had raiſed great hillocks on the place, and built there a Temple of *Menus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the earth digged away, ſhe found the three *Croſſes*, whereon our bleſſed *Saviour*, and the two *Thieves* had ſuffered. To know which of theſe was the right *Croß*, they were all carried to a woman, who had been long viſited with ſickneſs, and now lay at the point of death. The *Croſſes* of the two *Thieves* did the weak woman no good, but as ſoon as they laid her on the Croſs on which the *Lord* died, ſhe leaped up and was reſtored to her former health. This *Temple* of the *Sepulchre*, even at the firſt building, was highly reverenced and eſteemed, by the

Chriſtians of theſe parts. And even until our daies, it is much reſorted to, both by *Pilgrims* from all the parts of the *Romiſh* Church, who fondly and ſuperſtitiouſly hope to *merit* by their journey; and alſo by divers Gentlemen of the *reformed Churches*, who travel hitherward, partly for curioſity, partly for love to the antiquity of the place, and partly becauſe their generous ſpirits imitate the the Heaven and delight in motion. Whoſoever is admitted to the ſight of this *Sepulchre*, payeth nine crowns to the *Turkiſh* Officers; ſo that this Tribute only is worth to the *Grand Signeur*, eighty thouſand Ducats yearly. The other building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible. Built of flint ſtones, Low, and but of one roof; flat on the top for men to walk on, and fenced with battlements of a yard in height to preſerve them from falling: the under-rooms no better then vaults, where they repoſe themſelves in the heat of the day. Some houſes near the Temple of *Solomon*, and the Palace of *Herod*, adorned with Arches toward the Street, where the paſſenger may walk dry in a ſhowre of rain; but not many ſuch: nor any thing left but the ruins of the antient buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles; and yet to thoſe that take a ſurvey thereof from ſome Hills adjoyning, where the ruins are not well diſcerned from the ſtanding edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleaſing proſpect. And as the place is, ſuch is the people, inhabited for the moſt part by *Artizans* of the meaneſt quality, gathered together of the ſcum of divers Nations, the greateſt part conſiſting of *Moors*, and *Arabians*; a few poor *Chriſtians*, of all the *Oriental* Sects, which dwell there for *devotion*; and ſome *Turks*, who for the profit which they make of *Chriſtians*, are content to ſtay in it. Inſomuch that when *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of ſome of this raſcal people; he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for *England*, and bad him ſay, that he ſaw *Duke* Robert *carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils.*

Come we now to the *Tribe of LEVI*, though indeed not reckoned for a *Tribe*, becauſe not planted cloſe together as the other were; nor had whole Provinces to themſelves, but mingled and diſperſed amongſt the reſt of the people; having forty eight Cities aſſigned them for their habitation, proportionably taken out of the other *Tribes*. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly that they being ſet apart for his ſervice, might be at hand in every place to inſtruct the people; and partly to fulfill the Propheſie which he had ſpoken by *Jacob*, who had foreſignified to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he ſhould *be devided in* Jacob, *and ſcattered in* Iſrael. The like fortune he had propheſied of *Simeon* alſo; of the accompliſhment whereof, ſo far as it referred to him, and the diſperſion of his *Tribe*, we have ſpoken before. Now to make up the number of the *twelve Tribes*, *Joſeph* was divided into *Ephraim*, and *Manaſſes*; and the *Levites* were reckoned to belong unto that *Tribe*, within whoſe Territory, that City which they dwelt in, ſtood Their maintenance was from the *Tenths* or *Tithes*, the firſt fruits, offerings, and Sacrifices of the people: and as it is in the eighteenth of *Ioſuah*, *v.* the 17, *The Prieſthood of the Lord was their Inheritance.* There were of them four kinds. 1 *Punies* or *Tirones*, which from their childhood, till the five and twentieth year of their age, learned the duty of their offices. 2 *Graduates* λυτῇ, which having ſpent four years in the ſtudy of the Law, were able to anſwer and oppoſe in it; 3 *Licenciates*, ϖϑλυτῇ, who did actually exerciſe the *Prieſtly* function; And, 4 *Doctors* (*Rabbins* they uſe to call them) who were the higheſt in degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is ſaid) the *tithes*, firſt-fruits, and offerings of all the reſt of the People; beſides the 48 Cities aſſigned for their habitation: which laſt, with the ſeveral Territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the ſpace of two thouſand *Cubits*; ſeems to have been a greater proportion of it ſelf, than any of the other *Tribes* (with reference to the ſmall number of *Levites*) had in their poſſeſſions. Then for the *Tithes*, there was not only a full *Tenth* ſet out of all kinds of increaſe; but ſuch an impoſition laid upon all ſorts of grain, as came to more than a ſixth part of the Crop it ſelf. For firſt, out of ſix thouſand buſhels (and ſo accordingly in all after that proportion) a ſixtieth part at leaſt, and that they termed the *Therumah* of the *evil eye*, or the *niggards* firſt fruits) was to be ſet forth at the *firſt-fruits* of the threſhing-floor; which was an hundred in the totall. Out of the reſidue being five thouſand and nine hundred Buſhels; the *firſt Tithe* paid unto the *Levites*, came to five hundred and ninety Buſhels; and of the reſidue, being five thouſand three hundred and thirty Buſhels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the *ſecond Tithe*, unto the *Prieſt*, which miniſtred in the *holy Temple*; yet ſo, that ſuch as would decline the trouble, of carrying it in hand unto *Hieruſalem*, muſt pay the price thereof at the *Prieſts* own eſtimate. Laying which ſeveral ſums together, it appears demonſtrably, that of ſix thouſand Buſhels (*& ſic de cæteris*) there will accrew one thouſand two hundreds ſeventy and one Buſhels to the *Prieſts* and *Levites*; and but four thouſand ſeven hundred ſeventy and nine unto the Lord or Tenant; which is not fully a ſixt part, as was ſaid before. Then had they the firſt born of mankind and all unclean beaſts, redeemed at a certain rate; the *firſt fruits* of Wine, Oyl, and Wool, the *firſt fruits* of the Dough, and and of the firſtlings of clean Beaſts) their bloud being ſprinkled on the *Altar*, and the fat offered for a burnt-offering) the fleſh remained unto the *Prieſt*. They had alſo the meat-offerings, the ſin-offerings, the treſpaſs-offerings, the ſhake-offerings, the heave-offerings, and the Shew-bread: as alſo of all *Euchariſtical* Sacrifices the breaſt and the ſhoulder; of others the ſhoulder, the two cheeks and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the Skin; beſides the free gifts of the people, appearing thrice yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the reſt of the *Tribes*; though they had no whole Country allotted to them, as the others had. And ſo much for ſuch parts of the Land of *Paleſtine* as were poſſeſſed in part, or wholly, by the Sons of *Iacob*; proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of *Eſay*.

Idumæa.

IDUMÆA.

IDUMÆA, or the Land of EDOM, is bounded on the Eaſt and South, with *Arabia Petræa*; on the North, with *Judæa*; and on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from the *Edomites*, or Children of *Eſau*, whoſe name is *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 1. the Father of the *Edomites*, v. 43. by whom it was planted and poſſeſſed: or, as others ſay, from the *Idumai*, a people of *Arabia*; who in a mutiny being forced to forſake their Countrey, came and ſetled here. The firſt the more certain of the two, and therefore I adhere to that.

The Countrey towards the Sea ſide very fat and fruitfull; but where it bendeth towards *Arabia* exceeding mountainous and barren. Heretofore it afforded *Balm*, not now: but ſtill it hath ſome ſtore of *Palm-trees*, for which much celebrated by ſome writers of antient times; as *Arbuſto* Palmarum *dives* Idume, in the Poet *Lucan*. Sandy, and full of vaſt deſarts, for which, and for the want of water, it is thought unconquerable. For though they have many Wells there for the uſe of the natives, yet to them only are they known, and not obvious at all to the eyes of ſtrangers, no not upon the ſtricteſt ſearch that can be imagined. But all places are not ſo well furniſhed, as appeareth by the ſad condition which the Kings of *Judah*, *Iſrael*, and *Edom* were fallen into, when they led their Armies through the Deſarts of this Countrey, againſt the *Moabite*, finding herein no water for man or beaſt: inſomuch that the King of *Iſrael* ſaid, *Alas, that the Lord hath called theſe three Kings together, to deliver them into the hand of Moab*, 2 *Kings* 3. 10. Not otherwiſe delivered out of this perplexity, but by a miracle from Heaven: God ſending them the next day an abundance of water, without wind or rain or any other viſible means, ver. 17. 20.

The people antiently rude and barbarous, greedy of change in Government, eaſily ſtirred unto inſurrections, and in love with tumults. Profeſſed enemies to the *Jews*, till conquered by them: and when compelled by *Hyrcanus* to the *Jewiſh* Religion, they were at beſt but falſe friends; and in the ſiege of *Hieruſalem* by *Titus*, did them more miſchief than the *Romans*. At this time ſubject to the *Turk*, and differ not much in life and cuſtome from the wild *Arabians*.

Rivers of note there can be none, where ſo little waters. One lake it hath, though poſſibly it had been better had they been without it, now ſmall, and every day growing leſs; the paſſage being long ſince barred which it had to the Sea. Antiently, though then narrow, it was two hundred furlongs, or five and twenty miles long; bordered on each ſide by hills of ſand, which born by the winds into the water did ſo thicken the ſame, that it was not eaſie to be diſcerned from the dry land; inſomuch as whole Armies had been ſwallowed up in it. Thence called *Barathrum* by the *Latines*; The true name of it formerly was the Lake of *Sirbon*. By the *Italians* it is now called *Lago di Teveſo*, by the Natives *Bayrema*; the utmoſt of *Paleſtine*, where it joyneth on *Ægypt*.

The chief Mountains of it, are, 1 Mount *Seir*, the firſt habitation of *Eſau*, after he left his dwelling in the Land of *Canaan*, to make roome for *Jacob*, as is ſaid, *Gen.* 36. 7. 8. Not called ſo unleſs by *Anticipation* (a thing not uſual in the Scripture) till the coming of *Eſau* thither: the word *Seir* ſignifying *hairy* or *briſled*, ſuch as *Eſau* is deſcribed to be, *Gen.* 27. 11. To this S. *Hierome* doth accord, deriving the name of *Seir* from *Eſau*, *Sumpto ab autore nomine*. His reaſon is, *Seir quippe interpretatur hiſpidus & piloſus qualis* Eſau *fuit*. So he in his Comment on *Eſaiah*, *cap.* 21. For the ſame cauſe, is the whole Countrey of *Edom*, ſometimes called Mount *Seir* in Scripture, by the name of this Mountain, as 2 *Chron.* 20. 10. 23. The ſecond hill of note is that called *Caſſius*, not far from the Lake of *Sirbon*, now nothing but an huge heap of ſand; formerly famous for a Temple of *Jupiter*, and the Sepulchre of *Pompey* the Great. Who being baſely murdered here (after his defeat near *Pharſalia* by *Julius Cæſar*) by the command of *Ptolemy* the younger, King of *Egypt*, unto whom he fled (or rather by the command of *Archillus* who then governed his Counſels) by the piety of a private Souldier was here interred, in an obſcure and homely, but honeſt Sepulchre. The Sepulchre afterwards reedified, and made more ſuitable to the man, by the Emperour *Adrian*. The piety of the Souldier not a whit the leſs for the coſt of the Emperour: in whoſe name *Lucan* had beſtowed this *Epitaph*, on that firſt Monument.

Hic ſitus eſt Magnus, *placet hoc, Fortuna, Sepulchrum*
Dicere Pompeii; *quo condi maluit illum,*
Quam terrâ caruiſſe ſocer.

Which may be *Engliſhed* to this purpoſe.

Here *Magnus* lies, Such, Fortune is thy doom
That this vile earth ſhould be great *Pompey's* Tomb.
In which even *Cæſars* ſelf would rather have.
His Son-in-Law interr'd, than want a grave.

Idumea.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Dinhabath*, the City of *Bela*, the firſt King of *Edom.* 2. *Anith*, the City of *Hadad*, and 3. *Pan*, the City of *Hadar*, two others of the Kings hereof: which three are mentioned *Gen.* 36. 32. 35. 39. 4. *Berzamna*, placed here by *Ptolemy*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame with *Berſhabee* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, the utmoſt border South-wards of the Land of *Canaan*, of which more there. 5. *Caparorſa*, 6. *Gamararis*, and 7. *Elaſa*, all of them mentioned by *Ptolemy*; which ſheweth them to be of ſome conſideration in thoſe times; though now forgotten with the former. 8. *Anthedon*, on the South-ſide of the River *Beſor*, oppoſite to *Gaza* in the Tribe of *Simeon*, which is ſituate on the Northern bank. A port Town, once of good repute, till defaced by *Alexander* King of the *Jewes*: re-edified afterwards by *Herod* the Great, and named *Agrippias*, in honour of *Agrippa* the favourite and Son-in-law to *Auguſtus Cuſar.* 9. *Roſſa*, a Fort of conſequence not far from *Maſſada*, before mentioned, when we were in *Judæa*; taken by *Herod* in his way to relieve that Caſtle. 10. *Raphia*, memorable for the great defeat which *Ptolemy Philopater* there gave unto *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Magnus.* 11. *Rhinocurura*, ſo called from a miſhap which befell the Inhabitants hereof, by mangling and defacing their noſes. By *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Rhinocurula*: and at this time *Pharamica.* Memorable for an old but ill-grounded *tradition*, that here the world was divided by lots, betwixt the poſterity of *Noah*: and ſo conſiderable in the wars of the *Holy Land*, that it was ſtrongly fortified by *Baldwin* the firſt, to obſtruct the paſſage of ſuch forces as uſually came out of *Egypt* to aid the *Turks.* 12. *Oſtracine*, now *Stragioni*; on the Sea-ſide beneath *Athedon*, and in that part of the Country which from Mount *Caſius*, hath the name of *Caſiotis*: aſcribed by *Ptolemy* to *Egypt*; but being they are both on the North of the Lake of *Sirbon*, more properly belonging to *Paleſtina.* But moſt of theſe being now buried in their ruins, there are left none but a few Caſtles and ſcattered Villages: the Villages inhabited for the moſt part by *Arabians*, the Caſtles gariſoned by *Turks.* The chief of which lying on the Sea, in the road to *Egypt*, are, 13. *Hamones*, a ſmall Caſtle not far from *Gaza*, uſed chiefly for a *Toll-booth*, to receive cuſtom of ſuch Merchants as paſs that way. 14. *Hariſſa*, a ſmall Caſtle alſo, ſerving ſpecially for the ſame uſe; but ſtronger, and of more importance becauſe near the Sea, from which not above two miles diſtant; and for that cauſe garriſoned with an hundred Souldiers: environed with a few houſes, by reaſon of the commodity of the water, which is ſweet and wholeſome; elſe little better then a Deſart. 15. *Catio*, another Caſtle, or rather *Toll-booth*, with a garriſon of about 60 Souldiers in it: ſeated in a place ſo deſert and unfruitfull, that nothing vegetable groweth in it, but a few ſtarved *Palm-trees*; the water which they have there, ſo bad and brackiſh, though eſteemed good enough for the common Souldiers; that all which the Captain drinketh is brought from 16. *Tina*, a Town upon the Sea-ſhore, about twelve miles diſtant, and the laſt upon this Coaſt towards *Egypt.*

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country were the *Horites*, the *Horites which dwelt in Mount Seir*, as we read in *Geneſis*, Chap. 14. verſ. 6. that is to ſay, which dwelt in that hilly Country which afterwards was called Mount *Seir.* But whether it was ſo called from *Eſau's* dwelling here, as is ſaid before, or from *Seir* the *Horite*, mentioned *Geneſis* 36. 20. as perhaps may probably be ſuppoſed need not now come into diſpute. Broken by *Cherdorlaomer*, and his Aſſociates, they were the more eaſily ſubdued by *Eſau.* Who leaving the Land of *Canaan* to his brother *Jacob*, *Geneſis* 6, 7, 8. becauſe thoſe parts in which they dwelt did not afford them room enough for their ſeveral Cattel; came into this Country; and having *deſtroyed the* Horites *from before them*, *ſucceeded* in their habitations, *and dwelt there in their ſtead even unto this day*, Deut. 2. 22. 'Tis true, we find *Eſau* in Mount *Seir*, before this remove: for it is ſaid, that *Jacob* at his firſt coming out of *Meſopotamia*, ſent Meſſengers before him to *Eſau* his brother, unto the *Land of Seir*, the *Country of Edom*, Gen. 32. 3. And hence a queſtion hath been moved, how *Eſau* dwelling there before *Jacobs* coming, can be ſaid to remove thither to make room for him. To this Sir *Walter Raleigh* and ſome others anſwere, that at the time when *Jacob* came out of *Padan-Aram*, *Eſau* dwelt in thoſe parts of the Mountains which lye on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, called afterwards *Galaad* and *Mount Hermon*, by which *Jacob* muſt needs paſs in his way to *Canaan*; which Mountains then were called by the name of *Seir*, and from thence *Syrion* by the *Zidonians*, or *Phœnicians* in the ages following: from whence driven by the *Amorites* at ſuch time as they vanquiſhed thoſe of *Moab* and *Ammon*, they were forced to ſeat themſelves on the South of *Canaan*, where *Moſes* found them. But with this I am by no means ſatisfied. For beſides that it maketh *Eſau* to carry a *Mount Seir* with him, whereſoever he went; it doth expreſly differ from the plain words of Scripture, both in the occaſion: and the time of his ſetling there: the victories which the *Amorites* had over the *Ammonites* and *Moabites*, being then freſh and newly gotten, when *Moſes* with the children of *Iſrael* came into theſe parts; which was at the leaſt 200 years after *Eſau* did withdraw himſelf to the Land of *Edom.* And therefore I ſhould rather think, that *Eſau* finding himſelf diſtaſted by his Father and Mother, in regard of his *Canaanitiſh* marriages, and the hatred which he bare to *Jacob*; departed from them, and ſojourned in the South parts amongſt the *Horites of Mount Seir*; that thither *Jacob* ſent his Meſſengers, to make peace between them, that the reconciliation being made, *Eſau* returned unto the place where before he ſojourned; and having brought thence his children, cattel, and the reſt of his ſubſtance: fixed himſelf again near the houſe of his *Fathers*: and finally, that on *Iſaac's* death, finding his family increaſed, his heards and flocks augmented, and the reſt of his ſubſtance alſo doubled by the death of his Father; he thought it fit alſo to enlarge his dwelling and ſo removed once more to *Edom.* A thing not needfull to be done had he dwelt in *Galaad*, *Hermon*, or any other part of that Mountainous Tract; conſidering the great diſtance betwixt thoſe

Idumæa. Mountains and the City of *Hebron*, in which *Iſaac* dwelt: nigh to which *Jacob* alſo had ſet up his dwelling.

But on what ground ſoever *Eſau* left the poſſeſſion of the land of *Canaan*, to his brother *Jacob*, certain it is, he did it not without ſome ſtrong impulſions from the Spirit of God, by whom the poſſeſſion of that land was deſigned for *Jacob*; to whom the bleſſing and the birth-right had been both preferred. And though *Eſau* over-ruled by Almighty God, ſeemed to have forgotten all diſpleaſure againſt his brother: yet the quarrel began by them in the womb of *Rebecca*, brake out more violently in the time of their poſterity. Inſomuch that *Moſes* could by no means, obtain a paſſage thorow *Edom*, into the *Promiſed Land*, though he ſought it by fair addreſs, and preſſed it by all thoſe motives and inducements, which a wiſe and an underſtanding man could have ſet before them. For though the King of *Edom* then being, ſeemed to pretend nothing but the ſafety of himſelf and his people: both which he might have hazarded (in all humane reaſon) by opening the cloſures of his mountains, and letting in a Nation mightier than his own: yet it is poſſible that there might be as much of ſtomach as worldly policie; and that as well the buying of the birth-right for ſo ſleight a trifle, as the getting of the bleſſing by ſuch fraudulent means, might not be forgotten. For he not only denied them paſſage, and ſent word expreſly they ſhould not go thorow; but came againſt them with much people and a ſtrong band, as is ſaid *Numbers* 20.20. But the *Edomites* could not for all this prevent their deſtiny, or make the word of God to be ineffectual; by which it had been ſignified, when they were yet in their mothers womb, that the *elder ſhould ſerve the younger*. Not verified in *Eſau*'s perſon, for *Jacob* called him his *Lord Eſau*, profeſſed himſelf to be his ſervant, and willingly ſubmitted to his ſuperiority; but in the iſſues of them both: then ſpecially when *David* had ſubdued the *Edomites*, and made them homagers and vaſſals to the Crown of *Judah*, 2 *Sam*. 8. 14. Nor is leſs intimated in thoſe words of the 60 *Pſalm*, where it is ſaid, *Over* Edom *will I caſt my ſhoe*; it being a cuſtom of old times to fling their ſhooes upon a Countrey conquered, or deſigned for conqueſt. *Projectio calceamenti ſuper Regionem aliquam, denotat ſubjacere*, as my Author hath it. And in alluſion unto this, there is a ſtory in the Chronicles of the Kings of *Man*, how *Magnus* King of the *Iſles* ſent his Embaſſadours to *Murchard* a King in *Ireland*, commanding on the next *Chriſtmas* day, to carry openly the ſhooes of King *Magnus* upon his ſhoulders; in teſtimony, ſaith the ſtory, that he was his Vaſſal. The caſting of the ſhooe on a conquered Countrey, or the treading of it under feet, another ceremony of this nature mentioned *Deut*. 33. 29. do come both to one, and ſignifie that vaſſallage or bondage, which ſuch a captivated Countrey was reduced unto.

But on the other ſide, there was another part of the heavenly *Oracle*, which made for *Edom*: *Iſaac* had ſignified to *Eſau*, that though the bleſſing given to *Jacob* could not be revoked, and that he muſt content himſelf with being a ſervant to his brother for a certain ſeaſon: yet there ſhould one day come a time, in which he ſhould not onely break that yoak from off his neck, but obtain the dominion over him, *Gen*. 27. 40. The firſt part verified, when the *Edomites* revolted from the Kings of *Judah*, in the time of *Joram*, or *Jehoram*, the ſon of *Jehoſaphat*: and in ſtead of a Vice-Roy ſent unto them from the Court of *Hieruſalem*, ſet up a King of their own Nation: never returning after that to the houſe of *David*. For though *Joram* made war preſently upon them, and got the victory; yet he did not proſecute it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their ſtrong holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got honour enough in the eye of the world, by being maſter of the field; or ſhewing his abilities in command of a greater Army, than the *Edomites* could bring againſt him. The like errour was committed alſo by *Amaziah*, who by a vaſt Army of 300000 fighting men, did no greater wonders, than the killing of 10000, and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left garriſons in any of their defenſible places, nor reduced any part of their Countrey under his obedience. And for the later part thereof, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater* an *Idumæan*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* his ſon, and their Succeſſours, who in the decrepit age of the houſe of *Jacob*, became King of the *Jewes*, and lorded over them with inſolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate paſſages of their ſtate and ſtory. It ſeemeth that at firſt they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of thoſe ſeveral families, of which they were the Heads or Princes. But as ambition and power did prevail among them, the more potent having vanquiſhed or awed the reſt, took to himſelf the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their ſeveral Cities in which they reigned, ſeem to have been choſen by election; or otherwiſe to come in by ſtrong hand, as the ſword could carry it. The names of which are thus ſet down in the book of *Geneſis*.

The Kings of *EDOM*.

1 *Bela*, the ſon of *Beor*.
2 *Jobab*, the ſon of *Zerah*.
3 *Haſham*, of the land of *Temani*.
4 *Hadad*, the ſon of *Bedad*, who warred againſt the *Midianites*, and vanquiſhed them in the fields of *Moab*, *Gen*. 36. 35.
5 *Samlah*, of *Maſrekah*.
6 *Saul*, of *Rhehoboth*, by the river *Euphrates*.
7 *Baal-Hanan*, the ſon of *Achbor*.

Idumæa.

8. *Hadar*, the Son per-haps of *Baal-Hanan*, for I find no mention of his Father. After whoſe death, the head of the ſeveral Families reſumed the Government again; ruling over their own *Tribes*, without any one *Soveraign* or Supreme. And all theſe Kings they had, before there reigned any King in *Iſrael*, *Gen.* 36.31. that is to ſay, before any form of *Supreme* Government was eſtabliſhed amongſt them, in the perſon of *Moſes*, called by the name of a King in the book of *Deut.* ch. 35. v. 5. But this diſtracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at ſuch times as the Children of *Iſrael* came out of *Egypt*: for it was unto the King of *Edom* that *Moſes* ſent Meſſengers from *Kadeſh*, to deſire a paſſage thorow his Country. Which being denied and the *Edomites* in Arms to defend their paſſes, *Moſes* forbore to force his way, though the neareſt for him: partly becauſe he had no mind to ſpend thoſe forces in fighting with hills and deſarts, which were deſigned for the conqueſt of another Countrey; but principally becauſe God commanded him not to medle with them, or take ſo much as a foot of their Countrey from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no ſuch *obligation*, having vanquiſhed the *Syrians*, and other Nations round about him; followed his fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Garriſons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites became his ſervants.* Governed from thence by a Deputy or *Vice-Roy* (as is ſaid before) till the time of *Joram* the ſon of *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*; in whoſe Reign they revolted, as before was ſaid. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeavoured; that ſo the word of God might be all in all. Only the *Simeonites* in the Reign of *Hezekiah*, wanting paſture for their Cattel, and room for themſelves, ſeized on the parts that lay neareſt to them, deſtroyed the Inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their habitations, becauſe there was paſture for their flocks, 1 *Chron.* 4. 39. Provoked wherewith, and with the natural *Antipathy* which was between them, no people were more miſchievouſly bent againſt *Judah*, than theſe *Edomites* were: none ſo forward of themſelves, to aſſiſt *Nabuchadonoſor* againſt *Hieruſalem*; none that ſo vehemently cryed *Down with it*, *down unto the ground*; none half ſo ready to ſet fire to the *holy Temple*. But they got little by this ſervice to the *Babylonians*, their own thraldom following cloſe upon that of *Judah*: with whom made fellow-ſubjects to the *Chaldæans*; as afterwards to the *Perſians*, and Kings of *Syria* of the race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of that houſe, ſubdued by *Hyrcanus* the ſon of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabæan* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be *Circumciſed*, and to receive the Law of *Moſes*: not only reckoned after that, as a Province of the *Jewiſh* Kingdom, but as natural *Jews*. Which notwithſtanding, and that the ſetting of that Crown on the head of *Herod* and his houſe, being originally *Idumæans*, might in all reaſon have extinguiſhed their inveterate malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Forgetting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians*, they would needs aid the *Romans* againſt them alſo: putting themſelves into *Hieruſalem*, when beſieged by *Titus*, only of purpoſe to betray it; joyning with the *ſeditious* there, doing more miſchief in the City than the enemy had done without; and finally, ſetting fire to the *ſecond Temple*, as they had done unto the *firſt*. Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

Having thuse gon thorow with the ſtory of thoſe neighbouring Nations which encompaſſed *Canaan*: it will be ſeaſonable to look on the affairs of the *Canaanites* firſt, and after of the houſe of *Jacob*, who poſſeſſed their Countrey. Firſt for the *Canaanites*, they deſcended from *Canaan* the ſon of *Cham*, who with his eleven ſons were here ſetled immediately after the confuſion of *Babel*. Of thoſe twelve (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phœnicia*, and the coaſts of *Syria*, that is to ſay, *Sidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Semari*, or *Hamathi*: the other ſeven in thoſe parts which we now call *Paleſtine*, though not all of that; the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Ammonites*, and *Ituræans*, being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of thoſe 7 came thoſe 7 Nations, which by Gods appointment were totally to be rooted out, *viz.* the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, the *Hittites*, the *Jebuſites*, the *Hivites*, the *Gergeſhites*, and the *Perizites*. But from which of the ſons of *Canaan* theſe laſt deſcended, is not yet agreed on: unleſs perhaps they were deſcended of the *Sinites*, (not otherwiſe reckoned in this muſter) and got the name of *Perizites*, on ſome new occaſion. Governed at the firſt by the *chiefeſt* of their ſeveral Families, with the names of Kings; the number of which increaſed, as their Families were ſubdivided into ſmaller branches: inſomuch as *Joſhuah* found 31 Kings of the *Canaanites* only, beſides what might deſcend from thoſe who were ſetled in *Phœnicia*, and the borders of *Syria*. The moſt potent of thoſe Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Jebuſites*, and the *Canaanites* properly ſo called. Of which the *Amorites* had not only inlarged their borders beyond *Jordan*, but in the reigns of *Og* and *Sihon*, ruling at the ſame time in their ſeveral parts, had thruſt the *Ituræans*, *Ammonites*, and *Moabites*, out of moſt of their Countries: and ſo reſtored the ſame again to the race of the *Emmims*, and *Zanzummims* (of which line *Og* and the Kings of *Baſon* were) who had been diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the ſons of *Lot*. Theſe vanquiſhed in the time of *Moſes*, and their habitations aſſigned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half-tribe of *Manaſſes*. The *Canaanites* properly ſo called, as they were the firſt which fought with the houſe of *Jacob*; ſo they were the laſt of all theſe people that contended with them. They firſt fought with them under the conduct of *Arad* their King, who thinking it more ſafe and prudent to encounter the enemy in another mans Countrey, than to expect it in his own; gave battel unto *Moſes* in the *deſarts* of *Moab*: and having cut off ſome of the out-parts of his Army, and taken a few Priſoners, he went home again. But *Jabin*, under whom they made their ſecond onſet, went to work more reſolutely; and taking a time when the iniquities of that people cried aloud for vengeance, ſo prevailed againſt them, that he tyrannized over them for the ſpace of 20 years. After which time, his Army being diſcomfited by *Barak*, in the time of *Debora*; *Siſera*, his great Captain ſlain by *Jael* the wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, and moſt of his Cities taken and poſſeſſed by the *Iſraelites*; he periſhed himſelf in the cloſe of that war: for it is ſaid, that they prevailed againſt *Jabin the King of* Canaan, *till they had de-*

Idumæa.

deſtroyed him, Judg. 4. 24. As for the *Jebuſites*, they were grown ſo formidable, (at the time of the coming of the *Hebrews*) to the reſt of the neighbours, that their King *Adonibezek* bragged that he had cut off the Thumbs and great toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the crums which fell under his Table. But being vanquiſhed by *Judah*, he was ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf by *Judah* and *Simeon*, and carried to *Hieruſalem*, where he died: the whole Countrey of the *Jebuſites*, and the City of *Hieruſalem* it ſelf, the fortreſs of *Mount Zion* excepted only, being made a prey unto the Victor. And though the *Jebuſites* held that fortreſs till the time of *David*, yet being they were only on the defenſive ſide, and made no open war againſt thoſe of *Iſrael*, I reckon the *Canaanites* as the laſt which did contend with them for the chief command.

The *Canaanites* thus conquered, and for the moſt part worn out of the Country, the *Iſraelites* ſucceeded in their poſſeſſions; according to the promiſe of God made to *Abraham*, renewed to *Iſaac*, and confirmed to *Jacob*, Governed after the death of *Moſes* and *Joſuah*, by the ***Congregation of the Elders***, as appears by many paſſages of the book of *Judg.* the *Judges* (as the Scripture calleth them) not being the *ordinary* Magiſtrates, but raiſed up *occaſionally* by God for ſome ſpecial purpoſe, according to the exigence of their affairs. Carrying in this a likeneſs unto the *Dictators* in the State of *Rome*. So that the government at the firſt was an *Ariſtocratie*; though to ſay truth, it rather was a *Theocratie*, as the Fathers call it; that is to ſay, a Government wherein GOD preſided more immediately, than in other Nations. And thereupon when the people cryed to *Samuel* to have a King, God ſaid unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the people, for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me that I ſhould not reign over them*, 1 *Samuel* 8. 7. God was their King, and he had mightily reigned over them ſince they came out of *Egypt*; but they deſired to have *a King like other Nations*, to go in and out before them, and to fight their battels; a King whom they might ſee with their bodily eyes, and converſe with him in ſuch manner as the people did, which dwelt round about them. And ſo came in the *Monarchy* or kingly Government, begun in *Saul*, but confirmed in *David*; the firſt a *Benjamite*, the ſecond of the Tribe of *Judah*; of which *Jacob* had fore-told at the time of his death, that the Kingdom of his people ſhould be veſted in it. But there were only three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole houſe of *Iſrael*; the kingdom after *Solomons* death, being rent in twain: ten of the twelve *Tribes* revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and ſo much of the Tribes of *Dan*, and *Simeon*, as lay intermingled with and in the Tribe of *Judah*, remaining firm to *Rhehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who miſguided by ſome *evil Counſellers* which were about him, had given occaſion to the breach. A breach that could never be ſoldered or made up again, notwithſtanding the fair opportunities which were after offered, of uniting *Iudah* unto *Iſrael* (for ſo the two kindoms were diſtinguiſhed) in the time of *Joas*; and rejoyning *Iſrael* to *Judah*, in the time of *Aſa*. The opportunity offered to *Aſa* King of *Judah* for re-gaining the revolted Tribes, was the confuſions which in his time had fallen out amongſt them, by ſeveral factions; each challenging the priviledge of making a King unto it ſelf: *Nadab* the Son of *Jeroboam* being ſlain by *Baaſha*, *Ela* the Son of *Baaſha* murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* depoſed by *Omri* the Father of *Ahab*, and *Tobni* a Competitor againſt *Omri* alſo. During which time, as the people muſt needs ſuffer many great oppreſſions, which might make them think of their allegiance to the houſe of *David*: ſo could not *Aſa* have wanted many fair advantages (had he made his beſt uſe of them) of working on that divided kingdom, and reducing it back to his Houſe. But there were two reaſons which prevailing more againſt this re-union, than any that could he preſented to invite them to it. Firſt the imperiouſneſs, and arbitrary Government of the Kings of *Judah*, putting to death without formality of Law, thoſe that had diſpleaſed them, as in the caſe of *Shimei*, *Joab*, and *Adonijah*, in the dayes of *Solomon*: and raiſing on the Subject what ſums they pleaſed, though more for oſtentation of their own magnificence, then the neceſſities of the State. Of which exactions *Rhehoboam* the ſon of *Solomon* was ſo far from promiſing a releaſe, or ſome mitigation at leaſt; that he threatned to make them more than double what they had been formerly: and how knew they, but that *Aſa*, and all ſuch as deſcended from him, might be of the ſame temper alſo, and act according to thoſe Principles which their Fathers left them. Whereas the Kings of *Iſrael* holding by no other title than the love of their people, and the moderate and regular form of their government over them; had put their mouths in ſuch a taſte of the ſweets of liberty, and made them ſo much maſters of their own both lives and fortunes, that *Naboth* durſt deny his vineyard to *Ahab*, though offering full compenſation for it; and *Ahab* durſt not queſtion the life of *Naboth*, but by ſuborning witneſſes to accuſe him of blaſphemy. So that the preſent confuſions under which they ſuffered, by the change and violent death of ſo many Kings one after another, being onely temporatory, and not likely to continue long, were no perſwaſions unto them to accept of *Aſa*, and much leſs to offer themſelves unto him; who conceived all adverſity to be far more tollerable, than the weighty Scepter of that houſe. And there was ſomething alſo of preceding profit, which ſwayed the buſineſs. The people were obliged by the Law of *Moſes* to make three chargeable journeys yearly to *Hieruſalem*, to worſhip there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double tenth yearly out of their eſtates (beſides offerings and other caſualties) to the *Prieſts* and *Levites*. *Ieroboam* out of an ungodly policy, fearing theſe frequent journeys unto *Hieruſalem* might be an occaſion of reducing them to the houſe of *David*, releaſed them of that charge and trouble, by ſetting up a new form of worſhip: erecting golden Calves for them in *Dan* and *Bethel*; and leaving every man unto the liberty of his own opinion, ſo it tended not to the eſtabliſhment of the *old Religion*. And on the other ſide the *Levites* which dwelt amongſt them, and received their *Tithes*, not willing to conform to theſe new impieties, and finding that their Miniſtry was no longer uſefull, withdrew themſelves into the

Kingdom of *Judah*, and left the antient places of their habitation: by means whereof, the people were releaſed of thoſe payments alſo. If they returned again to their old obedience, and accepted *Aſa* for their King, they muſt return again to their old Religion; the golden Calves of their own imaginations and inventions, muſt no more be worſhipped: and (which no doubt prevailed moſt on the common people, who like that Religion beſt which coſts them nothing) the antient payments to the *Prieſts*, and *Levites*, muſt come up again. Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to ſuffer yet a little longer, to pleaſe themſelves in expectation of more ſetled times: and ſo no falling off to *Aſa*, though as moderate and religious a Prince as they could have wiſhed for, had they had power of faſhioning a King to their own deſires. Now as this opportunity of rejoyning *Iſrael* unto *Judah*, proved unſucceſsfull unto *Aſa*, ſo did the like of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*, prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the ſon of *Jehoahaz*, and grand-child of *Jehu* King of *Iſrael*, who being provoked by *Amaziah* King of *Judah*, made war upon them; and not only diſcomfited him without battel, and took him priſoner without blowes, but led him captive to the very walls of *Hieruſalem*; and by his authority, got the gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with his honour, (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Iſrael*) he cauſed 400 cubits of the wall to be broken down; thorow which breach he entered triumphantly in his chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him, and being entred, ſacked both the Royal Palace and the Holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Joas*, of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*; and this the loſs of it. For the people, otherwiſe like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whoſe noble Acts they had heard much ſpeech; were ſo exaſperated by theſe raſh and unſeaſonable outrages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the *Holy Altars* were not ſafe from; and as a covetous and ungoverned Tyrant, not able to concoct the fulneſs of his own proſperities. If he were thus unſatiable in his covetouſneſs, and inſupportable in his pride, when he was a *Candidate* for their Kingdom; when in all common prudence he ſhould have ſought their loves, and inſinuated into their good opinion, by eaſing them of former taxes, and ſhewing them fair hopes of his moderate government: what muſt they look for when their Towns were fill'd with garriſons, *Hieruſalem* ſtuffed with armed troops; and all the Princes of the houſe of *David*, from whom they might expect redemption from cruel bondage, deſtroyed or baniſhed, or otherwiſe made unable to afford them ſuccours? rather than ſo, they were reſolved to riſe as one man againſt him, and let him ſee, that neither their Army was ſo ſcattered, nor themſelves ſo cowed, but that they durſt adventure it to a farther tryal. The fear of which made *Joas* ſenſible of the loſs of his opportunity: and ſo content with hoſtages for his ſafe retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his victory, than the ſpoil and honour. And that this poſſibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the ſucceſs of the affair to a further hazard, may be made probable by the like occurrence in the ſtory of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this. *Peter de Medicis* had very weakly opened the gates of *Florence* to *Charles* the eighth, then in his paſſage towards *Naples*. *Charles* entreth it *triumphantly* as a conquered City, armed in complete manner, and his lance on his thigh; his whole Army with him. Many inſolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to fight in defence of their liberties. *Charles*, willing to go forwards on his march towards *Naples*, propounds conditions in writing: but ſo intollerable, that *Peter* **Caponi** one of the chief Citizens catching the papers out of the Kings Secretaries hands, and tearing them before his face, *Do you*, ſaith he, *ſound your trumpets, we will ring our bells, and ſee what will follow*. Which ſtout and peremptory dealing did ſo daunt the *French* that they condeſcended upon very eaſie termes to abandon the City; and reſtore all the places appertaining unto their eſtate, which were in his power. The like conſideration probably might prevail with *Joas*, as did then with *Charls*; and prompt him not to fight with an inraged multitude in the ſtreets of a City, where he could make no uſe of his horſe: and where he might be more galled with women and children, throwing ſtones or darts out of their windows, and from the tops of their houſes; than with an armed enemy in the open field. Nor wanted *Joas* an example of this kind, in the times before him; even that of *Abimelech*, in the book of *Judges*: who having taken the Town of *Thebet*, and forced all the men and women into the *Caſtle*; was ſlain there by a piece of a Mill-ſtone, thrown at his head from one of the Turrets of it by the hand of a woman.

To proceed further in the ſtory of theſe ſeveral Kings, or recapitulate the ſumme of their principal actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unneceſſary: the Scripture being in the hands of all ſorts of perſons, in which their actions and ſucceſſions are at large contained. So that I only ſhall ſubjoyn their names, with the time of their reigns, and the year of the world in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the reſt unto the induſtry and ſearch of the Chriſtian Reader, of whoſe acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no queſtion. This only I premiſe as concerning the *Judges*, that the time of their continuance in that authority, is not to be meaſured from the time of their coming to it, till the entrance of the next Succeſſor, as in that of the King, theſe being occaſionally raiſed by Almighty God, for ſome preſent ſervice, and no ſtanding or eſtabliſhed *Magiſtrates*: except *Moſes* and *Joſuah* only, who held the government during life, and managed it as abſolute Princes.

The Judges and Captains of the *HEBREWES*.

A.M.		
2454	1	*Moſes*, a *Levite*, the Law-giver of the *Hebrews*, brought by him out of the Land of *Ægypt*. 40.
2494	2	*Joſuah*, an *Ephramite*, who ſetled them in the land of *Canaan*. 33.
2526	3	*Othoniel*, of *Judah*, by whom they were delivered from the *Meſopotamians*.
2530	4	*Ehud*, a *Benjamite*, who reſcued them from the hand of *Eglon* King of *Moab*.
2610	5	*Deborah*, the Propheteſs, and *Barak* the *Nephthalite*, who diſcomfited the hoſt of *Jabin* King of the *Canaanites*.
2656	6	*Gideon*, a *Manaſſite*, who ranſomed them from the power of the *Midianites*. 40.
2690	7	*Abimelech*, the baſe ſon of *Gideon*. 3.
2693	8	*Tola*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. 23.
2716	9	*Jair*, a *Gileadite*. 22.

A.M.		
2760	10	*Jephtah*, a *Gileadite* by whom the people were redeemed from the hand of the *Ammonites*.
2766	11	*Ibſan*, of *Bethlehem*. 7.
2773	12	*Elon*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.
2783	13	*Abdon*, an *Ephramite*. 8.
2790	14	*Samſon*, a *Danite*, the Avenger of the People upon the *Philiſtims*.
2890	15	*Eli*, the High Prieſt, in whoſe time the Ark was taken by the *Philiſtims*.
2949	16	*Samuel*, the Prophet of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, in the latter end of whoſe government, the people being weary of the command of their former Rulers, deſired to have a King, to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

The Kings of the *HEBREWES*.

A.M.		
2878	1	*Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the firſt King of the *Hebrewes*, and an unlucky one to begin withall. 17.
2890	2	*David*, the ſon of *Jeſſe*, of the Tribe of *Judah*, the moſt victorious King of the *Hebrew* Nation. 40.
2930	3	*Solomon*, the ſon of *David*, renowned for building of the Temple. The Kingdom afterward divided into *Juda* and *Iſrael*.

The Kings of *JUDAH*.

A.M.		
2671	1	*Rhehoboam*, the ſon of *Solomon*, the firſt King of *Judah*. 17.
2988	2	*Abijah*, the ſon of *Rhehoboam*. 3.
2991	3	*Aſa*, the ſon of *Abijah*, diſcomfited the numerous Army of *Zerah*, the *Ethiopian*, or *Arabian* King.
3031	4	*Iehoſaphat*, the ſon of *Aſa*, a great reformer of the State, both Eccleſiaſticall and Civil. 35.
3056	5	*Jehoram*, the ſon of *Jehoſaphat*. 8.
3064	6	*Ahaziah*, the ſon of *Iehoram* by *Athaliah* his wife, the ſiſter of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*.
3065	7	*Athaliah*, the daughter of *Omri*, and ſiſter of *Ahab*, having deſtroyed the Regal race of the houſe of *David*, uſurped the Kingdom for 7 years.
3072	8	*Joaſh*, the only ſurviving Heir of the houſe of *David*, reſtored by *Jehojada* the Prieſt, to the Throne of his Anceſtors. 40.
3112	9	*Amaziah*, the ſon of *Joaſh*, vanquiſhed by *Ioaſh* King of *Iſrael*, and a breach forced thorow the walls of *Hieruſalem*. 29.

The Kings of *ISRAEL*.

A.M.		
2971	1	*Jeroboam*, the ſon of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the firſt King of *Iſrael*. 22.
2993	2	*Nadab*, the ſon of *Ieroboam*. 2.
2995	3	*Baaſha*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*, having ſlain *Nadab*, reigned in his ſtead. 24.
3019	4	*Ela*, the ſon of *Baaſha*. 2.
3021	5	*Zimri*, a King of 7 days only, the murderer of *Ela*, and his own executioner.
	6	*Omri*, the Captain of the hoſt, who removed the Regal ſeat from *Tirzah* to *Samaria*. 8.
3029	7	*Ahab*, the ſon of *Omri*, and husband of *Iezabel*, a *Phœnician* Princeſs.
3051	8	*Ahaziah*, the ſon of *Ahab*. 2.
3053	9	*Iehoram*, the brother of *Ahaziah*. 12.
3605	10	*Iehu*, the Captain of the hoſt, vanquiſhed and ſlew *Iehoram*, reigning in his ſtead. 28.
3093	11	*Iehoahaz*, the ſon of *Iehu*. 17.
3110	12	*Ioaſh*, the ſon of *Iehoahaz*. 16.
3126	13	*Ieroboam* II. the ſon of *Ioaſh*. 41.
3178	14	*Zachariah*, the ſon of *Ieroboam* the ſecond, after an *Interregnum* of 11 years ſuc-

ſucceeded in the Throne of his Father: ſlain at the end of 6 moneths by

15 *Shallum*, who at the moneth end was ſlain by

1378 16 *Menahem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 10.

1388 17 *Pekahiah*, the ſon of *Menahim*; ſlain by

3190 18 *Pekah*, the ſon of *Remaliah*; ſerved in the ſame kind after a reign of 20 years by

2310 19 *Hoſeah*, the ſon of *Ela*; in the fifth year of whoſe reign and the 18 year from the death of *Pekah*, *Salmanaſſer* King of *Aßyria* having by a ſiege of three years carried the city of *Samaria*, deſtroyed the kingdom of *Iſrael*, and led the greateſt part of the people into Captivity.

3141 20 *Azariah*, the Son of *Amaziah*, called alſo *Uzziah*; ſmote with a *Leproſie* by the Lord. 52.

3192 21 *Jotham*, the Son of *Uzziah*, or *Azariah*. 16.

3208 22 *Achaz*, the Son of *Jotham*, in whoſe time, and on whoſe occaſion, the Kingdom of *Damaſcus* was ruined by *Tiglath Pileſer* King of *Aſſyria*; and the Tribes on the farther ſide of *Jordan* led into captivity. 16.

3224 23 *Hezekiah*, the Son of *Ahaz*, a religious Prince; in whoſe time the Kingdom of the ten Tribes was deſtroyed by the *Aſſyrians*, and that of *Aſſyria*, by the *Babylonians*.

3253 14 *Manaßes*, the wicked Son of the good King *Hezekiah*, reſtored *Idolatry*, and put to death the Prophet *Iſaiah*, for oppoſing his irreligious courſes. 55.

3308 15 *Amon*, the ſon of *Manaſſes*, and as bad as he; ſlain by a conſpiracy of his ſervants, when he had reigned but two years only.

3310 16 *Joſiah*, the ſon of *Amon*, a right godly King, unfortunately ſlain by *Pharaoh Necoh* King of *Egypt*, at the battel of *Megiddo*. 31.

3341 17 *Jehoahaz*, the ſon of *Joſiah*, a King of three moneths only, depoſed and ſent Priſoner by *Pharaoh Necoh*, to *Riblah* in the land of *Hamath*, ſince called *Antiochia*.

18 *Jehojakim*, the ſon of *Joſiah*, and half brother of *Jehoahaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necoh*, who changed his name from *Eliakim*, by which he was formerly called, into that of *Jehojakim*. 11.

3351 19 *Jehojachia*, or *Jechoniah*, the ſon of *Jehojakim*, at the end of the moneths led captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20 *Zedekiah*, another of the ſons of *Joſiah*, and brother by the whole bloud of *Jehoahaz*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jehojachin*, or *Jeconiah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling againſt his Benefactor, contrary to the Counſel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Priſoner in the 11th. year of his reign, *Hieruſalem* deſtroyed, the Temple ruinated, and the People carried Captive to the land of *Babylon*, A. M. 3362. where they lived in exile 70 years: which time expired, *Cyrus* the King of the *Perſians*, gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edifie their City and Temple. Which work being finiſhed, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah*, and *Zorobabel*; and the Nation again ſetled in ſome part of their old poſſeſſions; they were after governed by their *High-Prieſts*, and the *Counſel of the Elders*, which they called the *Sanhedrim*, the *High-Prieſts* bearing the chief ſtroke, and being looked on as a man of the greateſt power. And therefore I will here ſubjoyn the Catalogue of ſo many of them, as governed the affairs of this Country, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the eſtate hereof both as *Prieſts* and *Princes*, till their ſubjection by the *Romans*.

The High-Prieſts of the *JEWES*, after the Captivity.

A.M.

3427 1 *Joſuah*, the *High-Prieſt* at the time of the Return, aſſiſtant to *Zorobabel* in re-building the *Temple* which he lived not to finiſh; though continuing (as ſome ſay) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the names of his Succeſſors being loſt, the whole time is aſcribed to him.

3530 2 *Joiakim*, ſaid to be the ſon *Joſua*, in whoſe time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the *Temple* was finiſhed, and the worſhip of God reſtored.

3580 3 *Jonathan*, or *Johanan*. 30.

3610 2 *Jaddus*, who entertained *Alexander* the *Great*, coming to *Hieruſalem* (of whom more anon) the brother of that *Manaſſes*, for whoſe ſake, and on whoſe occaſion, the Temple on Mount *Garazim*, was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexandar*. 20.

3630 5 *Onias* ſucceeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathan*; not by birth (as formerly) but by the Election of the People.

3651 6 *Simon*, ſirnamed *Juſtus*. 9.

3660 7 *Eleazar*, the brother of *Simon*. 32.

3692 8 *Menelaus*, the brother of *Eleazar*, and *Simon*.
3718 9 *Onias* II. 14.
3732 10 *Simon* II. 10.
3742 11 *Onias* III. the ſon of *Simon* the 2d.
3787 12 *Jaſon*, the Brother of *Onias* the 3d.
3789 13 *Menelaus* II. the brother of *Jaſon*, in whoſe time the Temple was profaned by the *Syrians*, at the command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.
3794 14 *Alcimus*, under whoſe Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Country, and *Religion*, by whom ſucceeded in the office of High Prieſt, after his deceaſe.

Among theſe none of greater note than *Iaddus*, High Prieſt at ſuch time as *Alexander* the *Great* having conquered *Syria*, marched towards *Hieruſalem*, and was encountred by this *Iaddus* in his *Prieſtly* veſtments; aſſuring him in the name of the moſt high God, and making it demonſtrable from the Prophecy of *Daniel*, that he ſhould proſper in his enterprize againſt the *Perſians*. An hope which *Alexander* did embrace with the greater confidence, becauſe (as he affirmed to *Parmenio* his chief Commander) he had once at *Diu*, a City of *Macedon*, ſeen in a dream or viſion ſuch a perſon as *Iaddus* was, ſo habited, and profeſſing the ſame one God; by whom he was encouraged to purſue the action which he had in hand, with aſſurance of victory. And upon this the *Jewes* were ſo much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Lawes, and to enjoy with freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own time. For ſhortly after his deceaſe, they were on both ſides plagued by the Kings of *Egypt* and *Syria*, who ranſacked their Cities, ſlaughtered their People, made havock of their goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of forbidden meats, and offer ſacrifice unto Idols. At laſt God raiſed up *Mattathias*, and his five ſons to reſiſt theſe inſolencies; who in the reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, undertook the protection of the People, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable overthrows, inſomuch that the *Jewes* made choiſe of *Judas* ſirnamed *Maccabæus* (the eldeſt of the five brethren) for their Prince or Governour.

The *MACCABÆAN* Princes of *JEWRY*.

A. M.
3799 1 *Judas Maccabæus*, one of the nine Worthies, vanquiſhed three great and puiſſant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lyſias*, men of great renown, being Commanders of the forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, before mentioned.
3805 2 *Jonathan*, the brother of *Judas*, vanquiſhed the forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* King of *Syria*; and after many notable exploits and deeds of Arms, was treacherouſly murdered by *Tryphon*, aſpiring at that time to the *Syrian* Diadem.
3823 3 *Simon*, the brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, ſubdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Joppe*, and *Jamnia*, and cleared *Judæa* of the *Syrians*: perfidiouſly ſlain in the courſe of his fortune, by his Son in-law *Ptolemy*. 8.
3831 4 *Johannes Hyrcanus*, the third Son of *Simon* (his two other Brethren being in the power of *Ptolemy*) ſucceeded in the Government. He deſtroyed the Temple on Mount *Garizim*, conquered *Alſamaria*, and ſubdued the *Idumæans*, compelling them to be *Circumciſed*; transferred the war into *Syria*, and dying left the Sovereignty to his eldeſt ſon *Ariſtobulus*.

The *MACCABÆAN* Kings of *JUDATH*.

3862 1 *Ariſtobulus*, cauſed himſelf to be crowned, and was the firſt King of *Judah* after the *Babylonian* captivity; he ſtarved his mother, and ſlew *Antigonus* his brother.
3863 2 *Alexander*, the brother of *Ariſtobulus*, exceedingly enlarged the Kingdom of *Jewry*; by the conqueſt of all *Ituræa*, and ſome parts of *Syria*; but was withall ſo great a Tyrant that he cauſeleſly ſlew of his own Subjects fifty thouſand in battel; and commanded 800 of his principal enemies to be hanged before his face, he left behind him two ſons: *Hyrcanus* who was himſelf ſlain by *Herod* after all his troubles, leaving no iſſue male behind him: and *Ariſtobolus* the Father of *Alexander*, and of *Antigonus*, of whom more anon, of which two *Alexander* was the Father of another *Ariſtobulus*, the moſt beautifull Prince of all his time, and of *Mariamne* the Wife of *Herod*, by whoſe command they were moſt villanouſly murdered.
3890 3 *Alexandra*, by ſome called *Solome*, the wife of *Alexander*, following the Counſel of her husband at the time of his death, committed her ſelf and her Children into the hand of the *Phariſees*, then in great power and credit amongſt the people; by means whereof ſhe procured an honourable burial for her husband, obtained the Kingdom for her ſelf, and finally left it to her Children, whoſe diſagreements cauſed the ruine of his famous Family.

4. *Hyrcanus*

3899. 4. *Hyrcanus*, elder ſonne to *Alexander*, a Prince of weak Parts and of little action, and therefore at the firſt diſturbed in ſucceſſion by his younger brother *Ariſtobulus*; but was at length firmly eſtabliſhed in his Throne, by *Pompey*: who carried *Ariſtobulus*, with his ſonnes, *Alexander* and *Antigonus*, captives to *Rome*; from whence *Alexander* eſcaping out of priſon, troubled the quiet of his Country, till he was ſurpriſed by *Gabinius*, and ſlain by *Scipio*, two of *Pompeys* Captains: after whoſe death, *Antigonus* by the aid and power of the *Parthians*, deprived *Hyrcanus* of his Kingdome, and cut off his eares; but Revenge ſuddenly followed this villany; he being not long after ſlain by *Marcus Antonius*, and his Kingdom given to a ſtranger. As for the unfortunate *Hyrcanus* the rightful Prince of this Country, he remained priſoner for a time among the *Parthians*; till hearing of the death of *Antigonus*, he returned into *Jewry*, and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whoſe greatneſſe he had laid the firſt foundation, and was by him in fine moſt wickedly murdered.

The *Idumaan* Kings and Princes of *Jewry*.

A.M: 3940. I. *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, ſurnamed the *Great*, ſonne of *Antipater* an *Idumaan*, was by *Mark Antony* created, and by *Auguſtus* confirmed King of *Jewry*; under whom that Kingdome was more enlarged, and in greater ſplendour, then ever it had been in the time of *David*. A Prince of great magnificence, but of great vices. During his reign, the *Scepter being now departed from Judah*, the Lord CHRIST was born.

A.C. 6. 2, *Archelaus*, eldeſt ſon of *Herod*, at the time of his death, ſucceeded with the title of King, but in truth and reality poſſeſſed onely of a *Tetrarchy*, or fourth part of the Kingdome, though the beſt and largeſt of the four, containing *Judæa*, *Samaria*, and *Idumæa*, The reſt of *Herods* Kingdome was divided into three other *Tetrarchies*, i. e. the *Tetrarchie* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, given to *Herod Antipas*; Secondly that of *Ituræa*, given to *Philip*, another of the ſonnes of *Herod*; And thirdly, that of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lyſanias*. Baniſhed into *France*, his *Tetrarchie* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontius Pilate*, at our Saviours paſſion.

16. 3. *Herod* II. ſurnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, upon the baniſhment of *Archelaus* ſucceeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* family, but not in his *Tetrarchie*; and at laſt followed him in his baniſhment alſo. This is he who murdered *John Baptiſt*, and in whoſe time CHRIST ſuffered.

40. 4. *Herod* III, ſurnamed *Agrippa*, in honour of *Agrippa* the ſon in Law, and moſt truſty favourite of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, Nephew to *Herod* the *Great*, by his ſon *Ariſtobulus*, begotten on *Mariamne* of the race of the *Maccabees*; was by *Caligula* firſt inveſted in the *Tetrarchy* of his Uncle *Philip*, with the title of King, and next in that of *Antipas* alſo; and finally by *Claudius*, in that alſo of *Lyſanias*; ſome part of the *Tetrarchy* of *Archelaus* being added unto his Dominions; this was the man that murdered *James*, and impriſoned *Peter*; and in the end was ſtriken by an Angel, and devoured by wormes.

47. 5. *Agrippa Minor*, ſon of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom Saint *Paul* pleaded in defence of the Goſpel; and the laſt which had the title of King of the *Jewes*: for in his time the City of *Hieruſalem* was deſtroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, Anno 73

And here it is to be obſerved, that when *Salmanaſſar* had ſubdued and captivated the ten Tribes of *Iſrael*, he ſent new Colonies of his own to plant this Country; that ſo fruitful and well-ſituate a part of his Empire might yield its juſt tribute, and not lie open to the furie of the next invader. But the *Romans* not having (it ſeemeth) ſo much policy or providence, as thoſe whom they accounted barbarous; having laid the Country deſolate, left it unfurniſhed of new Colonies: whereby the *Perſians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entering the *Roman* Empire at this door, have ſucceſſively driven the *Romans* out of the whole houſe, Now that we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakned and almoſt utterly rooted out the *Jewiſh* Nation, we will relate ſome of their particular *maſſacres*: which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the enemy, then juſtly deſerved by themſelves; they wiſhing, though (I ſuppoſe) not deſiring, that the innocent Blood of our Saviour ſhould *be on them and their children*. Firſt then, the inhabitants of *Cæſarea* ſlew of the *Jews* in one day, about 20000, and ſuch as fled were took and impriſoned by *Florus* the *Roman* Lievtenant of *Judæa*. To revenge this ſlaughter, the *Jews* ſet upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmiſh 13000 of them were ſlain. The people of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the ſword, they of *Damaſcus*, 10000; *Antonius* a *Roman* captain, ſlew in *Aſcalon* 10000 of them; and *Ceſtius* another Captain, 8040 perſons. Now to come to the wars here managed by *Veſpaſian*. This *Veſpaſian*, in the ſiege of *Apbaca*, ſlew and took priſoners 17130 perſons; in *Samaria*, 11600 perſons; in *Iotopata*, 42200 perſons: In *Joppa* ſo many killed and drowned themſelves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the reſt ſo totally periſhed, that there remained none to carry tidings unto *Hieruſalem*, of the loſſe of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were ſlain, and made captives, 45000 perſons, beſides thoſe which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there periſhed 90000, and none left alive but onely two women: In *Gaſcala* 5000. men died by the ſword; in the City of *Gadera* there were ſlain 32200, beſides an infinite number of ſuch as had drowned themſelves. In *Hieruſalem* it ſelf, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the ſword, and partly by the famine; the worſer enemy of the two; there were found 2000 in privies and ſinks; and 9700 taken priſoners, inſomuch that 30 *Jewes* were ſold for a penny. So punctual was the *Divine Juſtice* in *retaliating* to this wretched people, according to the meaſure of their iniquities; that they who bought their Saviour for thirty *pence*, ſhould be ſold at thirty for a peny in the open market.

Now that *Jeruſalem* was able to contain ſuch a number of people,is evident, in that when *Ceſtius* was Leivtenant of *Jewry*, the *High-Prieſt* did, at his requeſt, number the people which came thither to eat the *Paſchal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and ſeven hundred thouſand living ſouls, all found and purified: For to leapers, or men having a flux of ſeed, or women in their monethly terms, or to ſtrangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid ſiege to the City, it was in the feaſt of the *Paſſover*, when moſt of the People were there aſſembled; God (as it were) having thus impriſoned them. All theſe maſſacres, beſides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite number which were ſlain in the fields and villages, which drowned themſelves, and which were privately made away, amounting all to almoſt 2000000 of people, hapned in the compaſs of four years; beginning at the 12 of *Nero*, and ending at the 2 of *Veſpaſian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, til the year 136. For then this miſerable people, having ſtirred two notable rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the laſt under *Adrian* the Emperours, were generally baniſhed their native Country, and never again permitted to inhabit it, otherwiſe then as ſtrangers. After this diſſolution, the *Jews* were diſperſed all over the world, and eſpecially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwell: yet they found every where ſo little favor, that having divers times been put to grievous mulcts and ranſoms, they were at laſt thruſt out of moſt of the Kingdoms of *Europe* alſo. They were baniſhed out of *England* by *Edward* the 1st, *Anno* 1290. Out of *France*, by *Philip* the Fair, 1307 Out of *Spain* by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, 1492 Out of *Portugal*, by *Emanuel*, 1497 Out of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by *Charls* the fift, 1539. Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romiſh* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*, in moſt Cities of *Italie*, eſpecially *Rome* it ſelf, where there are no leſs then 15000 or 20000 of them; and alſo in the Popes Country of *Avignion*. The reaſon why they are permitted to live thus under the Popes noſe, is pretended to be an expectation of their converſion, which is a meer pretence indeed; the true reſaon being the benefit hence ariſing to his Holineſs coffers: the hopes of their converſion being very ſmall, and the means leſs. For beſides the ſcandal *datum & acceptum*, by the *Papiſts* fond worſhipping of Images, ſo peremptorily contrary to the firſt table of the Law; they are not permitted to ſee any book of the Chriſtian Religion, no not ſo much as the New-Teſtament. And (which worketh much upon men of their metal) becauſe at their converſion they muſt quit all their goods unto the Church, as being ill-gotten, and by conſequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptiſm they promiſe to renounce. They have alſo a Synagogue at *Amſterdam*, and are pretty thick ſpread over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who notwithſtanding ſo hate them for crucifying of CHRIST, that they uſed to ſay in deteſtation of a thing, *I would I might dy a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk* unleſs he be firſt baptized. And though their multitudes be ſo great both in *Theſſalonica*, and *Conſtantinople*, that it is conceived they do amount to the number of 160000 perſons; yet are they not only contemned and hated, but there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous aſſembly of the common people, and conſtantly every *Eaſter*, whereſoever they be, in danger of death, Inſomuch that if a *Jew* do but ſtir out of doors betwixt *Maunday Thurſday* at noon, and *Eaſter Eve* at night, the *Chriſtians* of the Eaſt amongſt whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be ſure to ſtone them; becauſe at that time they buffetted, derided, and in fine crucified their Saviour. Hated in all parts of the *Turks* Dominions, becauſe employed as *Publicanes* in gathering and enhauncing the publick tributes, which they exact with all ſeverity that may be, and improve unto the moſt. And no leſs hated in all parts of the *Chriſtian* world, as enemies to the *Croſs of CHRIST*: ſo unreclaimably addicted to their ancient *Judaiſm*, and ſo abhorring from the converſation of other men; that it is not poſſible that they ſhould reap any other harveſt, then contempt and ſcorn, from thoſe amongſt whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief. They are a people which know how to comply with the times and the condition which they live in; eſpecially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like dogs, and uſed like ſlaves, yet never ſhew ſo much as an angry countenance. A Nation which wil thrive whereſoever they come, but moſt by *uſury* and *brocage*; not lending any thing but on pawns, and thoſe once forfeited, never more redeemable. The beſt of both *Sexes* ſaid to have an unſavoury rankneſs, not incident (if not cauſed by ſluttiſhneſs) to other people: from whom as different in their habit, as in their *Religion*. And as for that, they retain ſtil *Circumciſion*, as the badge and cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many ceremonies not preſcribed by the Law, nor obſerved by the Ancients: placing a void chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be preſent, though unſeen, at the ſolemnity. And upon this they are ſo beſotted, that they conceive the femal ſex uncapable of eternal life, becauſe not capable of *Circumciſion*; and therefore uſe to name them with no other ceremony, then at the ſix weeks end to have ſome young wenches lift up the Cradle with the child in it; which ſhe that ſtandeth at the head, giveth the name unto. Of their *Sabbath* ſo extreamly doting, that they have added to the *ſuperſtitions* left them by the *Phariſees*: & herein they are ſo preciſe, that if a Jew travel on the *Friday*, and in the evening fall ſo ſhort of his journeys end, that it amounts to more then 2000 Cubits or ſix Furlongs, which they count a *Sabbath-dayes* journey; there muſt he ſit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a wood or field, or the High-way ſide, without fear of wind or weather, of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for meat or drink: *periculo latronum prædonumq; omni, penuria item omni cibi potuſq; neglectis*, as *Buxdorfius* hath it. And ſo far have they gone in deſpight of Chriſt, as to declare it unlawful to lift *the Ox or Aſſe out of a ditch*; permitted in the ſtricteſt times of *Phariſacial* rigor: So pertinacious in retaining the *difference of meats and drinks*, that they wil by no means ſit at the ſame table with other men, and ſo preciſe in the dreſſing of it, that they will eat of no fleſh but of their own killing onely; and that too with ſuch cautions and reſervations, that if any of the entrails be corrupt or diſlocated, they will ſell the whole beaſt to the

Chriſtians for a very trifle. Beneficial in that only to the neighboring *Chriſtians.* Wine they forbear, except it be of their own planting, not ſo much out of diſlike of that liquor, for they are generally good fellows, and love their bellies; as for fear the Wine would be baptized; a Ceremony much uſed in the Eaſtern parts. Of the coming of their *Meſſiah* ſo full of hopes, that there is no greater Warrier ſtirring, but they look upon him as the man; till ſome ſad tragedy or other, which they ſuffer under that perſwaſion, makes them ſee their error: promiſing to themſelves, whenſoever he cometh, a reſtitution of their Kingdome; and ſuch felicities therein, in the literal ſence of ſome Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more *myſtical* and ſacred meaning. That in good time (but God's, not theirs) they ſhall be made partakers of the ſeveral bleſſings which thoſe Text do ſpeak of, is both the hope & wiſh of all pious men: who cannot chooſe but grieve to behold the *natural branches* ſo long diſmembred and cut off from the *Tree of life.* And this they neither hope nor wiſh for, but on ſome fair grounds, preſented to them by S. *Paul*; who ſaid expreſly, that when the *fulneſs of the Gentiles is once come in, that then all* Iſrael *ſhall be ſaved, Rom.* 11.25,26. The words are ſo plainly poſitive that they need no commentary. Or if they did, we have the general conſent of the Ancients, beſides the conſtant current of moſt modern Writers; who cheriſh the glad hopes of their *converſion to the Goſpel*, which the *Apoſtle* doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Athanaſius*, *Hierome*, *Auguſtine*, *Chryſoſtome*, for the primitive times: *Beda* and *Hugo Cardinalis*, in the times ſucceeding; *Gorram*, and *Thomas Aquinas* for thoſe of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bullinger*, and *Peter Martyr*, for the *Reformed Churches*: beſides divers others of great note, ſo expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much; which he that doth deſire to ſee, may finde them, with the expoſitions of moſt *Chriſtian Writers*, in a book writ by Doctor *Willet*; entituled, *De generali & noviſſima Judæorum vocatione*: and thither I refer the more curious Reader. Out of all I ſhall take theſe words of *Peter Martyr*, writen on that paſſage of Saint *Paul* to the *Romans*; Viz *Non ita* Judæi *perierunt, ut nulla de illorum ſalute ſpes ſuperſit*; The *Jews* (ſaith he) are not ſo wholly faln from the favour of God, but that there ſtill remain ſome hopes of their ſalvation. Of their *Salvation* then by the Goſpel of *Chriſt*, when the *fulneſs of the Gentiles* is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their reſtitution to their *temporal* Kingdom, is a further queſtion; and not ſo clearly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be ſomewhat in that book which may ſeem to intimate it. That the opinion of being reſtored by the *Meſſiah* to that temporal power which was taken from them by the *Romans*. was prevalent as well amongſt *Chriſt's Diſciples*, as the reſt of the *Jews*, is, as I take it, cleer enough in the holy Goſpel. In ſuch a Kingdome and no other, did the two ſons of *Zebedee* deſire to ſit on both hands of their Maſter: and the ſame was it, and no other, which all of them expected, as appeareth by the words of *Cleophas*, *Luke* 24.21. that *Chriſt ſhould have reſtored unto* them. *We thought*, ſaid he, that this would have proved the man. that ſhould have *redeemed Iſrael.* Redeemed *Iſrael?* from what? from ſin and Satan, or the curſe and bondage of the Law? Not ſo, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τοῦ ζυγοῦ τῆς δουλείας; but from the yoak of vaſſalage, which the *Romans* had ſo lately impoſed on them, ſay the Fathers rightly. Touching the ſame it was that they moved him, ſaying, *Lord wilt thou at this time reſtore again the Kingdom of* Iſrael? *Acts* 1. 6. In anſwer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no denial, as unto the *thing*, nor tells them that they never muſt expect ſuch a *reſtauration*; but only puts them off as unto the *time*, and bids them reſt themſelves on the pleaſure of God the Father, in whoſe hands the diſpoſing of all *Kingdomes* was. *It is not for you*, (ſaith he) *to know the times and ſeaſons which the Father hath in his own power*, verſe 7. By which anſwer, (as it ſeems to me) there is a poſſibility of reſtoring them unto their *Kingdome* alſo; though not in the τὸ νῦν, at that very inſtant when they were moſt deſirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know, that being a ſecret which the *Father* hath reſerved to himſelf alone.

But leaving theſe ſpeculations of a reſtitution of the Throne of *Iſrael*, and the great power & priviledges it may then enjoy; let us look back on the eſtate in which it flouriſhed in the former times: when the forces and revenues of it were at the higheſt. And firſt for the *Revenues*, they amounted in the time of *Solomon* (as is ſaid 2 *Chron.* 9.13.) to 666 *Talents* of Gold, beſides the benefits of his *Cuſtoms* & *Impoſition*; which cometh to two Millions, and nine hundred ninety and ſeven thouſand pounds, of yearly income. A vaſt ſumm for ſuch a little Kingdome. Nor can we reckon them at leſs, if they were not greater, in the time of *David*; of whom it is affirmed, 1 *Chron.* 22.14. that he left to *Solomon* an hundred thouſand *Talents* of Gold, and ten hundred thouſand *Talents* of Silver, towards the building of the Temple; beſides three thouſand *Talents* of Gold, and ſeven thouſand *Talents* of Silver, formerly depoſited for that purpoſe, as is ſaid 1 *Chron.* 29.4. which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a *Jews Talent*, reckoning a *Talent* of Gold at four thouſand and five hundred pound, and a *Talent* of Silver, at three hundred ſeventy five pound; will amount in our money to eight hundred and forty millions, and one hundred twenty and five thouſand pounds: So vaſt a ſumm, that it had been ſufficient to have built a *Temple* of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the *Temple* of *Solomon*, without other materials. I conceive therfore with our learned and induſtrious *Brerewood*, that by the *Talent* in thoſe places we are to underſtand a far leſſer ſumm, than the ordinary *Hebrew talents*: which whether it doth there ſignifie a *Sicle* only, which is half a Crown of *Engliſh* money, as *Eupolemus*, cited by *Euſebius*, was of opinion; or that every *talent* of Gold came to three golden Crowns of *Athens*, which maketh forty five ſhillings of *Engliſh* money, as *Julius Pollux* hath it in his *Onomaſticon*, I am not able to determine. But meaſuring it by the laſt eſtimate, wch I more approve of, it will amount to 2 millions, and 2 hundred ninety and five thouſand pounds; a vaſt ſumm for a King to leave in ready mony, which was alwaies exerciſed in War. And though I do not find expreſly what the *Revenues* of *Judah* might amount unto, after) the diviſion; yet by one circumſtance I find them to be very great. For it is written, 2 *Kings* 18.14. that the yearly *tribute* impoſed upon King *Hezekiah*, by the King of *Aſſyria*, was 3 hundred *talents* of Silver, and 30 *talents* of Gold; amounting, according to the ordinary *hebrew talent*, (which queſtionleſs is there intended) to two hundred forty ſeven thouſand & five hundred pounds

The Kings of Hieruſalem.

of *Engliſh* mony: and therefore probably his ordinary *Revenue* muſt be thrice as much, above that tribute; elſe the *Aſſyrian* had not left him a ſubſiſtance for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the *Revenues* of this Crown were leſs to *Herod*, than formerly to *Solomon*, or *David*; conſidering his vaſt expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeaſurable Donatives beſtowed upon *Auguſtus*, *Livia*, and the Court of *Rome*, together with the large *Legacies* he gave at the time of his death; not parallel'd by any King before or ſince, though of a larger and more ample Territory than he ſtood poſſeſſed of.

What Forces the Kings of the *Hebrews* were able to bring into the field, may beſt be eſtimated by the Muſter which *David* made, when he numbred the People; the enrolment of ſuch as were able to bear Arms, and fit for ſervice; coming in all to five hundred thouſand fighting men, in *Judah* only, and eight hundred thouſand men in the Tribes of *Iſrael*. 'Tis true, that *David* never brought into the field ſo vaſt a multitude: but when the Kingdomes were divided, and War denounced betwixt *Jeroboam* and *Abijah*, we finde almoſt the whole number brought into the field; that is to ſay, eight hundred thouſand on the ſide of *Jeroboam*, the King of *Iſrael*; and four hundred thouſand by *Abijah*, the King of *Judah*. After this, out of that ſmall Kingdome, *Aſa* the ſon of *Abijah* being invaded by *Zerah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thouſand men; which was more than the enrolment made in the time of *David*: an infinite proportion for ſo ſmall a Kingdome; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above belief: had not that God who ſaid to *Abraham*, that his *ſeed ſhould be as the ſtars of heaven for multitude*, been able to have made it good.

As for the ſtory and affairs of this Country ſince the time of *Adrian*, the *Jews* being all expelled their native Soil, and *Chriſtianity* in fine prevailing over all thoſe parts; it was inhabited as the reſt of the Empire was, by men of that *Religion* only: in this Country ſo advanced and countenanced, that *Helena* the Mother of *Conſtantine*, is reported to have built in it no leſs than 2 hundred Temples and Monaſteries, in places of moſt note, for the miracles of *Chriſt* our *Saviour*, or the dwelling of ſome of his *Diſciples*. In the year 615. the *Perſians*, under the conduct of the *Choſroes* their King, became Maſters of it, and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Hieruſalem* alſo: expelled thence by the valour and good fortune of the Emperor *Heraclius*, who recovering the *Croſs* on which *Chriſt* ſuffered, out of the hands of the *Pagans*, carried it with as great a triumph into *Conſtantinople*, as *David* once did the *Ark* into *Hieruſalem*. But this glory and rejoycing did not long continue: For within twenty years after the recovery of this City from the power of the *Perſians*, it was again conquered and ſubdued by *Homar*, or *Aumar*, *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, *Anno* 637. Under this yoak the captivated *Chriſtians* had not long ſuffered, when they changed the Tyrant, but not the tyranny; the *Turks* about the year 1079. overcoming the *Saracens*, and domineering in their ſtead. Twenty years did the *Chriſtians* languiſh under this oppreſſion, when one *Peter* an *Hermite* travelling for devotion to the *holy Land*, and being an eye-witneſs of the miſeries under which they groaned, at his return, made his addreſſes to *Pope Urban* the Second, acquainting him with the ſad condition of the poor *Chriſtians* in thoſe Countries. A *Council* thereupon is called at *Cleremont* in *France*, where the Pope (willing to imploy the *Chriſtian* Princes further off, that he might the better play his game at home,) did ſo effectually advance and endear the buſineſs, that no fewer than three hundred thouſand fighting men, under ſeveral Leaders, undertook the ſervice. And it proſpered ſo well with them in the firſt beginning, that having beaten the *Turks* out of *Aſia minor*, taken the great City of *Antioch*, and moſt of the ſtrong Towns of *Syria*, they encamped before *Hieruſalem*, and in ſhort time took it, *Anno* 1099. after it had been four hundred years, and upwards, in the power of the *Infidels*. The City being thus gained, was offered, with the Title of King, to *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, ſon of *William* the *Conqueror*: but he upon the hopes of the Kingdome of *England*, refuſed the honour; never proſpering as it was obſerved, after that refuſal. *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorreine*, had the next offer of it, which with a religious joy he accepted of, though on the day of his inauguration he refuſed the Crown, affirming that it was not fit for a *Chriſtian* Prince to weare in that City a *Crown of Gold*, where the Redeemer of the World ware a *Crown of Thorns*.

The Kings of Hieruſalem.

1099.	1.	*Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorreine*.
1100.	2.	*Baldwin* of *Lorrein*, brother of *Godfrey*, won *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria*.
1118.	3.	*Baldwin* II. ſurnamed of *Bruges*, Coſin of *Godfrey*, and *Baldwin*, the former Kings, overcame the Sultan of *Damaſcus*, and enlarged his Kingdome by the addition of *Tyre*.
1131.	4.	*Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having married *Milliſcent* the daughter of *Baldwin* the II. ſucceeded after his deceaſe: unfortunately killed with a fall from his horſe.
1142.	5.	*Baldwin* III. ſon of *Fulk* and *Milliſcent*, fortified *Gaza* againſt the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, and recovered *Paneade* from the King of *Damaſcus*.
1164.	6.	*Almericus*, the brother of *Baldwin* the 3d: ſo diſtreſſed the great *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him; by whom ſlain, and his Kingdome transferred on *Sarracon*, the *Turkiſh* General.
1173.	7.	*Baldwin* IV. ſon of *Almericus*, over-threw *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks*, in a fight neer *Aſcalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.
1185.	8.	*Baldwin* V. ſon of *Sybill* the ſiſter of *Baldwin* the 4th. by *William* Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, unnaturally poiſoned by his own Mother, having reigned only five months, to make way for her ſecond huſband, called,
1185.	9.	*Guy* of *Luſignan*, the laſt King of *Hieruſalem*, that had the poſſeſſion of the City; during whoſe time, *Saladine* the Sultan of *Ægypt* won that Kingdome, *Anno* 1187. which his Succeſ-

ſours

ſors defended againſt all invaſions, till the year 1517. in which *Selimus* the Firſt, Emperor of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, together with *Ægypt*, to his Empire. When *Hieruſalem* was taken by the *Chriſtians*, it is ſaid that the *German* Emperor's name was *Fredericus*; the Pope's, *Urbanus*; the *Hieroſolymitan* Patriarch, *Heraclius*: and that ſo alſo were they called, when the *Chriſtians* again loſt it. This is the conceit of *Roger Hoveden*, in the life of *Henry* the Second; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not ſee. *Paleſtine.*

After the taking of *Hieruſalem* by Sultan *Saladine*, the *Chriſtians* retired their forces into ſome of the other Towns of the *Holy Land*; which they made good againſt the enemy: and defended them under the Government of theſe three following, *Viz.*

10 *Conrade* Marq. of *Monferrat*, husband of *Iſabel* the daughter of *Almericus* King of *Hieruſalem*.

11. *Henry* Earl of *Campaigne*, ſecond husband of *Iſabel*.

12. *John di Brenne*, husband of *Mary*, or *Yoland*, as ſome call her, daughter of *Conrade* and *Iſabel*, the laſt *Chriſtian* King that ever had poſſeſſion in *Syria* or *Paleſtine*; inhabited ever ſince by *Moors* and *Arabians*; few *Chriſtians*, and not many *Turks* but ſuch as be in Gariſons only. *Yoland* the daughter of this *John di Brenne*, was wife to *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who in her right intituled himſelf King of *Hieruſalem*: and ſo now do the Kings of *Spain*, as heirs unto, and poſſeſſors of the Kingdome of *Naples*. Concerning which Title it would not be amiſs to inſert this ſtory. When the wars in Queen *Elizabeths* time, were hot between *England* and *Spain*; there were *Commiſſioners* of both ſides appointed to treat of peace. They met at a Town of the *French* Kings; and firſt it was debated in what Tongue the Negotiation ſhould be handled. A *Spaniard* thinking to give the *Engliſh* Commiſſioners a ſhrewd gird, propoſed the *French* Tongue as moſt fit; it being a Language which the *Spaniards* were well ſkilled in: and for theſe Gentlemen of *England*, I ſuppoſe (ſaith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the language of their fellow-ſubjects; their Queen is Queen of *France*, as well as of *England*. Nay, in faith, my maſters, replied Doctor *Dale*, (a Civil Lawyer, and one of the Maſters of the *Requeſts*) the *French* tongue is too vulgar for a buſineſs of this ſecrecy and importance, eſpecially in a *French* Town. We will therefore rather treat in *Hebrew*, the language of *Hieruſalem*, whereof your Maſter is King; and I ſuppoſe you are therein as well ſkilled, as we in the *French*. And thus much for this Title.

The Armes of the *Chriſtian* Kings in *Hieruſalem*, was *Luna*, a croſs Croſſet croſſed, *Sol*; which was commonly called the *Hieruſalem Croſs*. But for their Forces and Revenues, I cannot ſee how any eſtimate may be made thereof, in regard they ſubſiſted not by their own proper ſtrength, but by the Purſes and the Forces of the *Weſtern Chriſtians*; more or leſs active in that ſervice, as zeal, or emulation, or deſire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knight-hood in this Kingdome, after the recovery thereof from the power of the *Turks*, Were,

1. Of the *Sepulchre*, ſaid to be inſtituted originally by Queen *Helena*, the Mother of *Conſtantine* the Great, by whom the Temple of the *Sepulchre* was indeed firſt built: but more truly by *Philip* King of *France*, *Anno* 1099. at ſuch time as that Temple was regained from the *Turks*. Their Armes the ſame with that of the Kings before *blazoned*, repreſenting the five wounds of our Saviour CHRIST. At the firſt conferred on none but Gentlemen of blood and fortunes; now ſaleable to any that will buy it of the *Pater-Guardian*, who with a Convent of *Franciſcans* doth reſide neer that Temple.

2. Of Saint *John of Hieruſalem*, begun by one *Gerrard*, *Anno* 1114. and confirmed by Pope *Paſchalis* the Second. Their Badge or Cognizance, is a white Croſs of eight points. Their duty, to defend the *Holy Land*, relieve Pilgrims, and ſuccor *Chriſtian* Princes againſt the Infidels. They were to be of noble Parentage, and Extraction; and grew in time to ſuch infinite riches, eſpecially after the ſuppreſſion of the *Templars* (moſt of whoſe lands were after given uuto this Order) that they had at one time in the ſeveral parts of *Chriſtendome*, no fewer than 20000 Mannors; and of ſuch reputation in all *Chriſtian* Kingdomes, that in *England* the Lord *Prior* of this Order, was accounted the prime Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminiſhed, by the withdrawing of the Kings of *England*, and other Proteſtant Princes, from the Church of *Rome*: who on that change, ſeiſed on all the Lands of this Order in their ſeveral Countries, and either kept them to themſelves, or diſpoſed them to others, as they pleaſed. Of theſe we ſhall ſpeak more when we are in *Malta*, where they now reſide; advertiſing only at the preſent, that their firſt *Great Maſter* was that *Gerrard* by whom they were founded: the laſt that had his reſidence in the *Holy Land*, was one *John de Villers*, in whoſe time being driven out of *Paleſtine*, they removed unto *Cyprus*, and in the time of *Fulk de Villeret*, *Anno* 1309. to the Iſle of *Rhodes*. Outed of which by *Solomon* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1522. they removed from one place to another, till at laſt by the magnificence of *Charles* the Fifth, *Anno* 1530. they were ſetled in *Malta*: and there we ſhall ſpeak further of them.

3. *Of the Templers*, inſtituted by *Hugh* of *Payennes*, *Anno* 1113. and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius*. Their Enſign was a *red Croſs*, in token that they ſhould ſhed their blood to defend *Chriſt's* Temple. They were burried *croſs-legged*, and wore on their backs the figure of the Croſs; for which they were by the common people called *Croſs-backs* or *Crouch-backs*, and by corruption *Crook-backs*. *Edmund* Earl of *Lancaſter*, ſecond ſon to our *Henry* the Third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called *Edmund Crook-back*; which gave *Henry* the Fourth a fooliſh occaſion to feign, that this *Edmund* (from whom he was deſcended) was indeeed the eldeſt ſon of King *Henry* the Third, but for his *crookedneſs* and *deformity*, his younger brother was preferred to the Crown before him. Theſe Knights had in all Provinces of *Europe* their ſubordinate Governors, in which they poſſeſſed no leſs than 16000 Lordſhips; the greatneſs of which Revenue was not the leaſt cauſe of diſſolving the order. For *Philip* the fair, King of *France*, had

a plot to inveſt one of his ſons with the Title of *King of Hieruſalem*, and hoped to procure of the Pope the revenue of this order to be laid unto that Kingdome, for ſupport of the Title: which he thought he might the better do, becauſe *Clement* the Fifth then Pope, for the love he bare to *France*, had tranſferred his ſeat from *Rome* to *Avignion*. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being diſſolved, the lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights *Hoſpitallers*, or of Saint *John*. The crimes objected againſt this Order were; firſt, Their revolt from their profeſſed obedience unto the Patriarch of *Jeruſalem* who was their Viſitor. Secondly, Their unſpeakable pride; and, Thirdly, Their ſins againſt Nature. The houſe of our Law-ſtudents in *London*, called the *Temple*, was the chief houſe of the Knights of this Order in *England*; and was by the Knights of Saint *John*: whoſe principal Manſion was in *Smithfield*, ſold unto the Students of the Laws, for the yearly rent of 10 *l.* about the middle of the Reign of *Edward* the Third.

Theſe three Orders M. *Selden* (and deſervedly) put not in his *Title of honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiſs a woman; honourary Knighthood, and the love of Ladies going together, like Vertue and Reward.

Thus much for *PALESTINE*.

* * *

OF

* * *

OF ARABIA.

ARABIA hath on the *Eaſt*, *Chaldæa*, and the *Bay* or *Gulf* of *Perſia*; on the *Weſt*, *Paleſtine*, ſome part of *Ægypt*, and the whole courſe of the *Red-ſea*: On the *North* the River *Euphrates*, with ſome part of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; and on the *South*, the main Southern Ocean. But at ſometimes the name extended ſomewhat further. *Pliny* enlargeth it as far as to *Comagena*, the North part of *Syria*; in regard that many *Arabian* Colonies had been there planted by *Tigranes*; and *Xenophon* comprehended in it the greateſt part alſo of *Meſopotamia*; becauſe ſcituate on the *Weſt* of the River *Tigris*, and conſequently the Weſtern part of the *Aſſyrian* Empire, as the word *Ereb* doth import; from whence ſome derive the *Etymon*, and name hereof. Which notwithſtanding, in the general eſteem of Authors, it is bounded only as before.

As for the name, there be ſome that derive it from *Arabus*, a ſuppoſed ſon of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*: Others from three ſuppoſitious ſons of *Janus Pater*, one of the pretended Grand-ſons of *Cham*. Who is fabled to have ſent his ſon *Arabus* into *Arabia Deſerta*; *Petreius* into *Arabia Petræa*: and *Sabus*, into *Arabia Felix*, the dwelling place of the *Sabæans*. And for this trim conceit we are beholding to the *Beroſus* of *Frier Annius*. More probable is their conjecture, who derive the name from the *Hebrew*, *Arab*, ſignifying *black*; by reaſon of the ſwarthy or tawny complexion of the inhabitants, who are *inter nigrum & fulvum*, as *Vertomannus* an eye-witneſs hath informed us of them: on the ſame reaſon as one of the Provinces of *Africa*, is commonly entituled the *Land of Negroes*. But the moſt likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from *Harabi*, which ſignifieth in the *hebrew* a Thief or Rober, ſuch as the *Arabians*, in all ages, have been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet *Jeremy*; *In the waies thou haſt ſate for them, as an Arabian in the wilderneſs*, as our Engliſh reads it; *Tanquam Latro inſidians in ſolitudine*, ſaith the Vulgar Latine, *Jer.* 32. St. *Hierome*, though he render it, *quaſi Latro*, as the Vulgar doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, that the word doth alſo ſignifie an *Arabian*, *quæ gens latrociniis dedita uſq; hodie incurſat Paleſtinæ fines*, &c. which people being addicted to theft and robbery, do to this day (ſaith he) infeſt the coaſts of *Paleſtine* which border neer them, and lye in wait for thoſe which had any occaſion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the obſervation of *Martin del Rio*; *Adeo latrociniis infames ſunt, ut Hebræis Arabs latronem denotat, ſicut Chananæas Mercatorem, Chaldæus Mathematicum*: *i e.* So infamous were they for their theft and frequent robberies, that it was as familiar with the *Jews* to call a thief by the name of *Arabian*, as by *Chanaanite* to ſignifie a Merchant, or to uſe the word *Chaldæan* for a *Mathematician*. In the ſame ſence they came in the ſucceeding times to be called *Saracens*, from *Sarak* or *Saraka*, an *Arabian* word, which ſignifieth to ſteal; whereof more anon. No otherwiſe then one of the *American* Iſlands had the name of *Ladrones*, or *Inſula latronum*, given by *Magellanus*, from the thieviſhneſs of the Inhabitants, who had ſtoln his Cock-boat.

I have ſtaid the longer on the name, becauſe it doth expreſs ſo much of the *Character* of the people alſo, living for the moſt part upon ſpoil and robbery, as all that travel that way know by ſad experience. Of mean ſtatures, raw-boned, tawny, or ſwart-complexioned; having feminine voyces; of ſwift, but noiſeleſs gate, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no ſet-dwellings (except only in *Arabia Felix*) living in Tents, which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of paſturage, and hope of booty: for this laſt cauſe hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countries; and having robbed, retire with a marvellous ſpeed. Mounted on *Dromedaries* for that purpoſe, a beaſt of moſt incredible ſwiftneſs, ſatisfied with little food, though without water to it, and will eaſily carry a man a hundred miles a day, without any refreſhing. Nor are ſuch horſes as they have, though but poor and lean, of leſs ſpeed, or leſs patient of travel; whom they feed twice a day with the milk of Camels, and think them not worth keeping, if not able to out-go an *Oſtrich*. As now, ſo formerly, all horſemen, and but ill appointed; fitter to rob and ſpoil, then to deal with Souldiers; as riding ſtark naked, and truſting rather to the ſwiftneſs of their horſes, than any other way of reſiſtance, where they were oppoſed.

Their language is the *Arabick*, ſo called from this Country, but not proper to this Country only: ſpoken in all places where *Mahometaniſm* hath got any footing: The *Alcaron* being written in it, the publick offices of their Religion performed in it, and the tongue taught in Schools as generally, as with us the Latine; but made the natural language in *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, the three *Arabia's* *Ægypt*, and all *Barbary*, except the Kingdome of *Morocco*. A great extent, but ſhort of that which ſome give to it, who will have it ſpoken in two parts of the whole habitable World.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here planted by S. *Paul*, of whoſe being in *Arabia*, after his converſion, he telleth us, *Gal.* 1. 17. to which the coming in of the *Saracens* gave a great increaſe, in the time of *Mavia* their Queen, during the Empire of *Valentinian* the Firſt: *Moſes* a man of exemplary piety, and famed for many miracles, being created their firſt Biſhop; after more generally propagated over all the Country, by

their

Arabia Deſerta.

their King *Alamandarus*; *Anaſtaſius* then reigning in the *Eaſt*. But long it had not been received, when ſupplanted by *Mahometaniſm*, which had its firſt beginning here; and hath ſo univerſally over-ſpred the whole face hereof, that now there are no *Chriſtians* left in all the Country, except only in *Eltor*, a Port Town in the Bay of *Arabia Felix*; in *Petra*, the chief City of *Arabia Petræa*; and in two ſmall Monaſteries about Mount *Sinai*.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles, but of ſo unequal and *heterogeneous* compoſition, that no general *Character* can be given of it: and therefore we muſt look upon it, as it ſtands divided into *Arabia Deſerta*; 2. *Arabia Petræa*, 3. *Arabia Felix*, and 4. the *Arabick* Iſlands.

1. ARABIA DESERTA.

ARABIA DESERTA, (called *Beriara* by the *Turks*) is bounded on the *Eaſt*, with *Babylonia*; on the *Weſt*, with parts of *Paleſtine*, and *Arabia Petræa*: on the *North*, with *Palmyrene*, and *Meſopotamia*, from which laſt it is parted by *Euphrates*: and on the *South*, by ſome parts of *Petræa*, and *Arabia Felix*.

It hath the name of *Deſerta*, from the vaſt Deſarts which are in it, and the un-inhabitedneſs thereof; called alſo by *Ariſtides*, *Aſpera*, from the roughneſs: by *Servius*, *Inferior*, or the Lower, in regard of the ſituation of it more towards the River: by *Lucian*, from the frequent bottoms and valleys in it, *Arabia Cava*; and finally, by the *Jews* it was called *Kedar*, from the *blackneſs* or ſwarthineſs of the People; the word in *Hebrew* ſignifying as much as *Sun-burnt*: whence the people are by ſome Writers called *Kedareni*, and by *Pliny*, *Cedrai*.

But the common and moſt uſual name of it, is *Arabia Deſerta*, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a ſandy Country full of vaſt Deſarts; in which all ſuch as travel uſe to carry their Proviſions with them, and to guide themſelves in their journey by the courſe of the *Stars*; though in ſome parts which lie neer *Euphrates*, and the Mountains of *Arabia Felix*, it have ſome few Towns, and thoſe reſorted to by Merchants. But this is only in thoſe parts, the reſidue of the Country being ſo deſolate and waſte, that one who had travelled in it, doth deſcribe it to be ſo wilde a place, *ut nec homines, nec beſtiæ videantur, nec Aves; imo nec arbores, nec germen aliquod, ſed non niſi montes ſaxoſi, altiſsimi, aſperrimi.* A Country, ſaith *Guillandinus Melchior*, where are found neither Men nor Beaſts, no, not ſo much as Birds or Trees, nor Graſs, nor Paſture, but only ſtony, high, and moſt craggy Mountains.

The people, for the moſt part, uſed to dwell in Tents, alluded to by *David*, *Pſal.* 120. *v.* 5. which they removed from place to place, as the paſture for their Cattel failed them: taking no other care for houſes, than the boughs of Palm-trees, to keep them from the heat of the Sun, and other extremities of weather. Hence by the Ancients called *Scenitæ*, or men dwelling in Tents (in which reſpect the *Jews* call the *Tartarians*, *Kedarim*, from the like courſe of life which theſe *Kedareni*, or *Arabians* lived:) but the name reaching into the other parts of *Arabia*, where they uſe the ſame kinde of living: of whom more anon.

Yet notwithſtanding moſt memorable is this Country in ſacred ſtory, both for the dwelling place of *Job*, and the habitation of thoſe Wiſe men who came out of the *Eaſt* unto *Hieruſalem*, to worſhip *Chriſt* the new-born King of the *Jews*. That *Job* was an inhabitant here, appeareth by the ſcituation of his dwelling, being in the *Eaſt*, as is ſaid in the ſtory of him, *chap.* 1. *v.* 3. that is to ſay, in the Country lying *Eaſt* to the Land of *Canaan*, as this part of it doth; and therefore called ſimply by the name of the *Eaſt*, as *Judg.* 6. 3. where by the *Children of the Eaſt*, are meant expreſly the inhabitants of *Arabia the Deſart*, who together with the *Midianites* and *Amalekites*, oppreſſed thoſe of *Iſrael*. Secondly, by the ill neighborhood which he found from the *Sabæans*, who inhabited in this part alſo; and of the *Chaldæans* mentioned, *v.* 17. the next Borderers to it: and, Thirdly, by the inconſequences which needs muſt follow, if we place him, as ſome do, in the Land of *Uz*, neer unto *Damaſcus*. For how improbable muſt it be, for the *Sabæans* of the *Red-ſea*, or the *Perſian-Gulf*, or the *Chaldeans*, dwelling on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, to fall upon *Job*'s Cattel grazing neer *Damaſcus*, the Countries being diſ-joyned by ſuch vaſt *Deſarts*, and huge Mountains, that it is impoſſible for any ſtrangers to paſs them, eſpecially with any numbers of Cattel, in reſpect of thoſe large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extream want of water in all that paſſage? and how impoſſible muſt we think it, that the pen-man of the ſtory of *Job*, who certainly was guided in it by the *Holy-Ghoſt*, ſhould be ſo miſtaken, as to place *Job*'s dwelling in the *Eaſt*, if the *Land of Uz*, wherein he dwelt, bordered on *Damaſcus*; which lay not on the *Eaſt*, but the *North* of *Canaan*? A City called *Us*, or *Uz*, there was, ſcituate neer *Damaſcus*, ſo called from *Uz*, the ſon of *Aram*, *Gen.* 10. 23. A *land of Uz* alſo amongſt the *Edomites*, ſpoken of in the *Lamentations* of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *chap.* 4. *v.* 21. ſo called from *Uz*, one of the poſterity of *Eſau*, mentioned, *Gen.* 36. 28. And finally, a *Land of Us*, or *Uz*, ſo called from *Huz* the ſon of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*, mentioned, *Gen.* 22. 21. which is that ſcituate in this Tract, the habitation & poſſeſſion of that righteous man: The Country hereabouts being called *Auſitis*, and the people *Auſitæ*, though by miſtaking in the *Tranſcripts*, we find them named Αἰσῖται, or *Æſitæ*, in the fifth of *Ptolomy*. The like I ſay alſo of the *Wiſemen*, or *Magi*, who came to *Hieruſalem* from the *Eaſt*, that they dwelt in this Country, where the ſaid *Ptolomy* placeth the City *Saba*; according unto that fore-ſignified by the Royal Pſalmiſt, that the *Kings of Arabia and Saba ſhould bring their gifts*, Pſal. 72. 10. Confirmed herein by the ſcituation of the Country lying *Eaſt* of *Canaan*; the authority of thoſe Fathers who lived neereſt to the time of our Saviours birth, *Juſtin Martin*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*; and by the teſtimony of *Guillandinus Melchior* above mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the people hereof, that they came neither out *Meſopotamia*, or *Arabia Felix*, as many wiſe

men

Arabia Petræa.

men do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia* the *Deſart*; which City (ſaith he) when my ſelf was there, was, as I judged, called *Semiſcaſac*.

Cities of note, in a Country ſo deſart and un-inhabited, we muſt look for few; yet ſome there are, inhabited by a more civil ſort of people, whom they call by the name of *Moors*; giving that of *Arabian*, to thoſe only who live roming and robbing up and down. *Ptolomy* gives the names of forty Cities and Villages in it (*Civitates & vicos*, ſaith the *Latine*) the memory of moſt of which is now utterly periſhed. Thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1. *Sabe*, or *Saba*, the habitation of thoſe *Sabæans* who pillaged *Job*; ſo called from *Sheba* the grand-ſon of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned, *Gen*.25.3. Of whom, and of the reſt of that Line, it is ſaid in the ſixth Verſe of that Chapter, *That Abraham gave them gifts, and ſent them away from Iſaac Eaſt-ward unto the Eaſt-country*, now called *Semiſcaſac*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2. *Theman*, which poſſibly may be the Country of *Eliphaz* the *Themanite*, one of the *Viſitants* of *Job*. As 3. *Shuah*, on the North hereof was probably of *Bildad*, another of them, hence ſurnamed the *Shuite*. 4. *Tharſacas*, by *Pliny* called *Aphipolis*. 5. *Zagmais*, near the *Perſian* Gulf, in the Country of the *Raubeni*, ſuppoſed to be deſcended from *Miſhma*, the fourth ſon of *Iſmael*. 6. *Phunton* the 36th. 7. *Oboth* the 37th Manſion of the children of *Iſrael*. 8. *Rheganna*, another of thoſe named by *Ptolomy*, in the Greek Copies called *Beganna*. Of any Town of note now being, more then *Semiſcaſac*, before named, I finde nothing certain.

The firſt inhabitants of this Country, of whom there is any certain Conſtat, were the poſterity of *Huz*, the ſon of *Nachor*, and the ſons of *Abraham* by *Keturah*: of whoſe being ſetled in theſe parts, we had before good teſtimony from the Book of God; and intermixt with them lived ſome of the deſcendants of *Iſmael* alſo. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Ptolomy* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their original from *Adbeel* the third, and the *Raubeni*, from *Miſhmai* the fifth ſon of *Iſmael*, as ſome ſay they do; I ſee no reaſon but the whole Country might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar* the ſecond ſon, as well as from the tawny complexions of the people of it. From them deſcended the Tribes or Nations ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; that is to ſay, the *Orcheni*, *Chaucabeni*, *Auſitæ*, *Maſoni*, *Materni*, and *Agræi*, beſides the *Adubeni*, and *Raubeni*, already ſpecified. But being a diſ-joynted people, not under any ſetled form of Government, not poſſeſſed of any thing worth looking after, they were either held not worth the conquering, in regard of their penury; or elſe unconquerable in reſpect of their Country, impaſſable for great Armies, by reaſon of the rolling ſands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying ſo neer to the *Chaldæans*, they followed the fortunes of that mighty Monarchy; Subjects unto it whilſt it ſtood, and after Tributaries unto thoſe who ſucceſſively poſſeſſed themſelves of the Supream power. Nor looked at by the Romans, or regarded by them, who aimed at wealth as honour, in their expedition; nor otherwiſe ſubject to the *Turk* at this preſent time, then as they can make uſe of him and his protection in their frequent robberies; but counted of as a part of the *Turkiſh* Empire, becauſe the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his Subjects.

2. *ARABIA PETRÆA.*

ARABIA PETRÆA (now called *Barra*, *Baraab*, and *Barthalaba*) hath on the *Eaſt*, *Arabia Deſerta*, and part of *Sinus Perſicus*, or the Bay of *Perſia*: On the *Weſt*, the *Iſthmus* which joyneth *Africa* to *Aſia*; and part of the *Red-ſea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*. On the *North*, *Paleſtine*; and on the *South*, a long ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the rockineſs of the Soil hereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called alſo by *Ethicus*, *Sicaria*, but I know not why: by the *Hebrews Chus*, generally tranſlated *Æthiopia*: by *William* of *Tyre*, *Arabia ſecunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the firſt. By *Strabo*, *Ptolomy* and *Pliny*, it is called *Nabathæa*, which name it had from *Nabaioth*, the eldeſt of the twelve ſons of *Iſmael*, though properly that name belonged only to thoſe parts of it which lay next *Judæa*; fruitful, though joyning to the Deſarts: and thus remembred by the Poet, as an Eaſtern Country.

Eurus ad Auroram, Nabathæaque regna receſſit.
Eurus unto the *Eaſt* did flie,
Where fruitful *Nabathe* doth lie.

The Country much of the ſame nature with the other, but in ſome parts thereof more fertile if well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich Land, flouriſhing with variety of Trade and traffick; but for the moſt part full of untravellable Deſarts, except to thoſe which carry their proviſions with them for fear of ſtarving, and go in great companies, or *Caravans* for fear of robbing: and yet much travelled by Merchants who traffick into *Ægypt*, and *Babylonia*; the commodities whereof they lay on *Camels*, which are the ſhips of *Arabia*, as their Seas, the Deſarts. For upon one of theſe *Camels* they will lay ordinarily 600. and ſometimes 1000 pound weight; yet not afford him water above once in four daies, not oftner in fourteen, if there be occaſion. So that the *Camel* carrying ſo great a burden, and ſeldom f[illegible]er than 500, going in one voyage; the Merchant if he ſcapeth robbing, makes a rich return. Of theſe Deſarts, the moſt memorable are thoſe of *Sin* and *Pharan*, in which the *Iſraelites* ſo long wandered: not beautified with Graſs. nor adorned with Trees, the Palm only excepted; nor furniſhed with water, but by Rain, or Miracle.

The people of it, for the moſt part, deſcended of the ſons of *Chus*, and *Iſmael*, intermixed with the *Madianites*, deſcending from *Abraham* by *Keturah*, and the *Amalekites*, deſcended probably from *Amalek*, the grand-ſon of *Eſau*, mentioned *Gen*. 3,6. but all united at the laſt iu the name of *Saracus*. This

Arabia Petræa.

name derived, as ſome think, from *Sarra*, ſignifying a Deſart, and *ſaken* which ſignifieth to inhabit, becauſe they live for the moſt part in theſe deſart places: as others ſay, from *Sarak*, ſignifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered. This laſt moſt ſuitable to their nature, and beſt liked by Scaliger. *Saraceni à vicinis dicuntur ab Elſarak,* i. e. λῃστρικῶς νομαδικῶς, *quòd rapinis victitent.* So he, in his ſecond book *de Emend. Temp.* A people not reckoned of in the former times, till made remarkable by their conqueſt of a great part of the world; but alwaies counted warlike and martial men. Of whom take this Character out of *Marcellinns*; ‘The *Saracens* (ſaith he) whom we are neither to ‘wiſh for our friends or enemies, are a martial people, half-naked, clad as far as the groin with painted ‘Caſſocks, ranging up and down on *Camels* and ſwift horſes, as well in peace as troubleſome times. ‘Not uſed unto the Plow, to plant Trees, or get their living by Tillage, they wander from one place to ‘another, without houſe or home, or any conſtant dwelling place, or the uſe of Laws: nor can they ‘long endure the ſame either Air or Soil; the manner of their lives being alwaies fleeting, like ravenous ‘Kites; which if they chance to ſpy a prey, ſnatch it up in their flight; or if they chance to faſten on it ‘as it lieth on the ground, they make no long ſtay. Their food is chiefly upon Veniſon, and ſtore of ‘milk, herbs which they gather from the ground, and birds which they get by fowling; but altogether ‘ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their wives they hire only for a time, though for a ſhew of Matrimony, they preſent their husbands with a Spear and a Tent, as in way of Dowry; but they part with ‘them when they pleaſe. Both Sexes moſt extreamly given to carnal luſts; the women as rambling as ‘the men, married in one place, and brought to bed in another; leaving their children where they fall, ‘without more care of them. So far, and to this purpoſe, he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1. That called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which paſſing thorow this Country endeth his courſe in the *Red-ſea*. 2. *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the *torrent of Ægypt*, which riſing in this Country, and paſſing by the borders of *Idumaa*, hath its fall in the Lake of *Sirbon*; and together with the waters thereof, loſeth it ſelf at laſt in the *Mediterrancan*.

With Mountains it is better ſtored, and thoſe of eminent obſervation; as, 1. Mount S*inai*, famous in all ages, for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times for a Monaſtery of *Maronites*, on the top thereof. The hill ſo high, that both ſhores of the *Red-ſea* may be thence ſeen: but eaſie of aſcent, by reaſon of ſteps cut out of the Rock: which notwithſtanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the after-noon. The Monaſtery made an Epiſcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the Letters of *Eugenius* Biſhop thereof, to the Arch-Duke *Charles*, *Anno* 1569. complaining that the *Turk* had ſold all their Lands, and that himſelf and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy Veſſels, and take up mony on uſury. Here is alſo a *Meſque*, or *Meſquit* of *Turks*, who reſort in pilgrimage to this hill, as well as the Chriſtians. 2. Mount *Horeb*, where the *Iſraelites* worſhipped the *Molten Calf*, about a mile and a half diſtant from Mount S*inai*, but not ſo high: on the top of which is a Church alſo; and a Monaſtery of *Coloires*, or *Greek Monks*, at the bottom, exceeding hoſpitable to ſtrangers, whom they entertain of free coſt, and cheerfully ſhew them all the places worth obſervation, which the Scripture mentioneth in that Tract. Both hills by *Ptolomy* called *Melani*, or the black Mountains: the laſt now called *Orel*. 3. Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumæa*: and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1. *Petra*, the name-giver to this part, at firſt called *Recem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*; afterwards called *Selah*, when pertaining to the *Idumaans*; but falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Crat*. Beſt known in holy Scripture by the name of *Selah*, before-mentioned, which ſignifies the ſame with the *Latine Petra*. A City of great note and ſtrength in all times fore-going, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Juda*, 2 *Kings* 14.17. and by him called *Jock-heel*, but in vain beſieged by *Scaurus*, a Roman General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the perſwaſion of *Antipater*, to take a ſum of mony and raiſe his ſiege. Nor did the Emperor *Trajan* ſpeed much better at it, his Souldiers being ſtill beat off in all their aſſaults, the very next man to him ſlain with a Dart, and himſelf forced to caſt away his *Imperial* Habit, and fly for his life: the Heavens themſelves, if *Dion* (who is never ſparing of the like prodigies) may be believed, fighting againſt the Romans with thuuder, lightning, whirwinds, and tempeſts, as often as they made any approaches to it; But in the end ſubdued with the reſt of the Country. In ſuch eſteem, by reaſon of the ſtrength of it, by the S*oldans* of *Ægypt*, that they kept here their choiceſt treaſures; and in the courſe of the *Holy Wars*, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Chriſtians*, as the key that opened the Gates of *Paleſtine*: on the *South* border whereof, not far from Mount *Hor* before-mentioned, the Town is ſcituate: the *Metropolis* of the Province when firſt under the *Romans*: and made the ſeat of a *Latine* Biſhop, when the *Chriſtians* of the *Weſt* were the Lords thereof. 2. *Boſra*, ſaid to have been built by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, becauſe by him repaired, when decayed and ruined: afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the *Romans*. This laſt moſt certain, and for ſuch teſtified by this ancient Inſcription, in an ancient Coyn. *COL. BOSTRAN. T.R. ALEXANDRIANÆ?* Memorable alſo for the Birth of *Philip* the Emperor, one of that *Alexanders* next Succeſſors; by whom it was cauſed for a time to be called *Philippus*: for the *Metropolitan* dignity removed hither from *Petra*, ſomewhat before the time of *Juſtinian*, but by whom I finde not; and for being the Epiſcopal See of *Titus* (hence ſur[illegible]med) *Boſtrenus*, a Reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the *Apoſtate*. A City of as great antiquity as the moſt that be, mentioned *Gen.* 36.33. though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong; and is ſtill remaining, and well known by the name of *Buſſereth*. 3. *Elama*, on a bay of the *Red-ſea*, called hence *Sinus Elaniticus*. 4. *Phara*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderneſs of *Paran* ſeems to take its name. 5. *Berenice*, ſo

called

Arabia Petræa.

called from ſome of the Queens of *Egypt*, but better known by the name of *Ezion-geber*, one of the Stations or incampings of the children of *Iſrael*; and made by *Solomon* the ordinary harbour for his Ships, which ſailed to *Ophir* in the *Eaſt-Indies.* 6. *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, giving name to the Wilderneſſe or Deſart of *Sur*, coming cloſe up to it: remarkable for the firſt encamping of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, after their miraculous paſſage over the *Red Sea*; and the defeat which *Saul gave* to the *Amalekites*, whom he ſmote from *Havilah* to this place. 7. *Havilah*, ſo called from *Havila* the Son of *Chus*, being the furtheſt border of theſe *Amalekites*, and *Iſmaelites*, on the Gulfe of *Perſia*, as *Sur* was on the *Red Sea*, or Gulfe of *Arabia*. 8. *Madian*, ſo called of *Madian* the ſon of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, ſituate towards the *Red Sea* alſo; the City of *Jethro*, whoſe daughter *Zipporah* was the wife of *Moſes*: who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*, was by Gods ſecret providence directed thither; that keeping the flocks of *Jethro* in the Deſarts adjoyning, he might acquaint himſelf with the wayes and paſſages, thorow which he after was to lead the houſe of *Iſrael*. 9. *Rephaim*, the encamping place of *Moſes*, where he diſcomfited the *Amalekites*: and to which the ſaid *Jethro* came to him, with his wife and children, adviſing him to eaſe himſelf of ſome part of that burden, which the government of ſo great a people would elſe bring upon him. 10. *Kadeſh-barnea*, the ſtation of the Tribes, when the ſpies which were ſent to diſcover the Land of *Canaan*, returned back unto them; memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Propheteſſe. And 11. *Thara*, no leſs memorable for the mutiny and puniſhment of *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the place mentioned *Numb*. 23. 27. But others will have, 12. *Makheloth*, mentioned, *v*. 25. of that Chapter, to be the ſtage of that action; the Scriptures being ſilent in this particular. The reſt of their encamping places, being moſt of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpoſe, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do alſo ſome of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accompted of by *Ptolomy* as Cities of this Province; but ſpoken of already, in our Deſcription of *Paleſtine*, to which more properly belonging.

The old inhabitants of this Country were the *Midianites*, the *Iſmaelites*, the *Amalekites*, and the Children of *Chus*; who dwelling promiſcuouſly together, are ſometimes uſed for one another: the Merchants which bought *Joſeph* of his Brethren, being indifferently called *Midianites*, and *Iſmaelites*, Geneſis 37. 28. And *Zipporah* the wife of *Moſes*, who queſtionleſſe was a daughter of *Madian*, being by *Miriam*, and *Aaron*, called an *Ethiopian* or *Chuſite*, as in way of reproach, *Numb*. 12. 1. But being they were different Nations, and ſuch as had ſome ſpeciall engagement, with or againſt the children of *Iſrael*, we will conſider them by themſelves, till we have brought them into one body, by the name of *Chuſites*, *Ethiopians*, or *Arabians*, which are all the ſame.

And firſt, the *MADIANITES* were ſuch of the poſterity of *Madian*, the ſon of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, who preſerving the knowledge of the true God, withdrew themſelves from all communion with the Idolatrous *Canaanites*, at ſuch time as the reſt of their brethren did aſſociate with them; and ſetled themſelves more towards the banks of the *Red Sea*, where they did all good offices to the children of *Iſrael*, as they paſſed thorow their Country. Of theſe the *Kenites* were a branch, as appeareth *Judges*. 1. 16. where *Jethro* the Prince or Prieſt of *Madian*, is called a *Kenite*: ſome of which turned *Proſelytes*, and dwelt with the *Iſraelites* in *Canaan*; of which race *Heber* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael*, who ſlew *Siſera*, was undoubtedly one. The reſt continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former courteſies) to withdraw themſelves from them; leſt they ſhould periſh with them in the ſame deſtruction. Afterwards we hear little of either people, loſing their name in the greater Nation of the *Iſmaelites*, with whom intermingled, or paſſing with them into the ſame common notion of *Arabians*, *Chuſites*, or *Ethiopians*.

Secondly, nor were the *AMALEKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance; deſcended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grand-ſon of *Eſau*, (though I deny not but there are ſome reaſons to be urged againſt that opinion) and planted on the back of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or *Outwork*. A people miſchievouſly bent againſt thoſe of *Iſrael*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Eſau* their fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently ſet on at *Rephidim*, when they ſuppoſed them ſpent and wearied with their flight from *Egypt*. And though diſcomfited in that battel, yet they continued in their malice againſt the *Tribes*, joyning firſt with the *Canaanites* againſt them when they were in their march; and after with the *Midianites*, when not well ſetled in their new poſſeſſions. A provocation ſo ill taken by the *Lord of Hoſts*, becauſe unnatural, and ill grounded, that he declared his reſolution, from the time of the Battel of *Rephidim*, to put *out the remembrance of Amalek from under Heaven*, *Exod*. 17. 14. Accordingly, when the children of *Iſrael* were provided for it, he commanded *Saul* to ſet upon them, and to ſlay both man and woman, infant and ſuckling, yea, their ſheep and cattel. But ſome of them eſcaped this ſlaughter, and fell, not long after, upon *Ziglag*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ranſacked; but being by him followed, on the firſt intelligence, they were eaſily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their malice yet ſurvived their power; and what they could not do by their forces, they endeavoured to effect by joyning with the *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, and other enemies of *David*, in their warres againſt him. And this was *ultimnm conamen*, one of the laſt flaſhes of their dying light: nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times ſucceeding, moſt of the Nation being worn out. and thoſe few which were left retiring to the Mountains of *Edom*, but thereof alſo diſpoſſeſſed by the *Simeonites*, during the reign of *Hezekiah*.

Thirdly, The *ISMAELITES*, deſcending from *Iſmael*, the ſon of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nations, and grown wondrous populous, ſpred themſelves over a great part

Arabia Petræa.

of theſe three *Arabia's*: all of them either *Thieves* or *Merchants*, trading to *Egypt* in *ſpicery*, and *balm*, and *myrrhe*; or robbing thoſe which traded in the like commodities. Called alſo *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as 1 *Chron.* 5.10. *Pſalm* 83.6, &c. and by that name well known to many of the ancient writers. A people for the moſt part of a vagabond and roguiſh life, more given to ſpoil, than any honeſt courſe of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be armed againſt them; ſo verifying the prediction which was given of *Iſmael*, that he ſhould be a wilde man, *having his hand againſt every man and every mans hand againſt him.* Saint *Hierome* ſo conceives that Prophecy to have been accompliſhed. More fitly verified perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens* (by which, and by the name of *Scenites*, they were more generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made ſuch foul havock in the world, and were eſteemed the Common enemies of all Civill Nations. Never ſo governable in their beſt and moſt orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one body with the *Chuſites*, and the reſt of thoſe Nations: and then no further, then it ſtood with their luſt or liking.

Fourthly, as for the *Chuſites*, though they permitted the Nations above ſpecified to inhabite in thoſe Deſarts and waſte places, which themſelves either could not people, or cared not for; yet were they always of moſt power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground, containing now all *Petræa*, the South part of *Deſerta*, and the mountains which divide *Petræa* from *Arabia Felix*; which from them was called *Chus*, or the Land of *Chus*. Rendred in all places of the *Old Teſtament*, by the name of *Ethiopia*; firſt by the *Septuagint*, and afterwards by all the Fathers, *Greek* and *Latine*, the *Vulgar* tranſlation of the Bible, and almoſt all other Tranſlations at this day extant, and rendred right enough at firſt, as in all times ſince, though by ſome miſtaken: who having never heard of any other *Ethiopia*, then that in *Africk*, have transferred thither all thoſe actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The *Septuagint*, no doubt, were not ſo ignorant of the affairs of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Maſters. And he that looks into the Hiſtory of *Herodotus*, who lived 150 yeares before that Tranſlation will finde, that by the *Gracians* they were called *Ethiopians*; and called ſo queſtionleſſe from the ſelf-ſame reaſon; that is to ſay, the ſwarthineſs or Sun-burntneſs of their complexion, as the *Ethiops* of *Africk* were; that name being framed of the *Greek* word Αἴθω, ſignifying to burn; and Ὤψ, a countenance; by reaſon of their tawny and Sun-burnt Countenances. For ſpeaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* againſt the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceeed, Ἀραβίων δὲ καὶ Αἰθιόπων τῶν ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου οἰκημένων ἦρχε Ἀρσάμης, &c. “ *Arſames*, ‘ (ſaith he) was Captain of the *Arabians* (he meaneth the *Troglodites*) and *Ethiopians*, which are be- ‘ yond *Egypt*: but the Eaſtern *Ethiopians* were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from the other ‘ in the ſtructure of their bodies, but their hair and voyce only; the Eaſtern *Ethiopians* wearing their ‘ hair ſmooth, thoſe of *Lybia* curled. The *Ethiops of Aſia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Ethiops* ‘ *of Africa* were arrayed with the skins of beaſts. Here then we have an *Aſian* Ethiopia in the time of *Herodotus*; the ſame acknowledged by *Pauſanias* an old *Greek* writer, and by *Philoſtratus*, after him, though they look for it in the wrong place: the firſt amongſt the *Seres*, in the North of *Aſia*; the other on the River *Ganges*, too much in the Eaſt. Nor doth *Æthicus*, one of the old *Coſmographers*, publiſhed by *Simlerus*, ſhoot more neer to the mark, who ſpeaking of the River *Tigris*, ſaith that it burieth it ſelfe and runneth under the ground in *Ethiopia*: Which though *Simler* doth interpret of theſe parts of *Arabia*, yet queſtionleſſe that Authour meaneth it of the Countreys about Mount *Taurus*; where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having paſſed under thoſe vaſt mountains, riſeth up again.

But what need further ſearch be made to finde out the ſcituation of this *Ethiopia*, when it is bounded out ſo plainly in the holy Scripture? For when it is ſaid of *Zipphorah*, the wife of *Moſes*, that ſhe was an *Ethiopian* woman, *Num.* 12.1. who is well known to have been a Native of this Country; and when it is ſaid in 2 *Chron.* 21.16. that *the Lord ſtirred up againſt* Jehoram *the ſpirit of the Philiſtims, and of the Arabians that were neere the* Ethiopians: It muſt needs be that the *Ethiopia* here ſpoken of, muſt be conterminous to the reſt of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Country wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, that he *would lay waſte the land of* Egypt, *from the Tower of* Syene, *even unto the borders of* Ethiopia, *chap* 29.10. that is to ſay, from one end there of unto the other: it followeth neceſſarily, that *Ethiopia* there meant muſt be this part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Chus*, as the bound of *Egypt*, moſt remote from the Tower of *Syene*, which all *Geographers* acknowledge to be in the extream South parts thereof, towards the *Cataracts* of *Nilus*. For to expound it, as ſome do, of *Ethiopia* in *Africk*, on the borders whereof *Syene* ſtood; and ſtood ſo indifferently betwixt it and *Egypt*, that *Stephanus* an ancient Writer makes it very doubtfull to which of the two it did belong, were to make the Scripture ſpeak plain *non-ſence*: as plain as if a man ſhould ſay, that the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands*, from *Graveling* to *Flanders*: or that the ſword hath ranged over all *England*, from *Berwick* to *Scotland*. As when we have found this *Ethiopia* in the *Old Teſtament* to be neer the *Philiſtims* on the one ſide, and the land of *Egypt* on the other; ſo may we finde it to be bounded alſo on the Eaſt with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*: the River of *Gihon*, which is ſaid to compaſs the whole Land of *Ethiopia* (or the Land of *Chus*) *Gen.* 2.13. being no more then a branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldea*. So that the tranſlation of the *Septuagint*, in reading *Chuſites*, or the Land of *Chus*, by *Ethiopia*, needs no ſuch alteration or emendation, as ſome men ſuppoſe. The miſtakes (whereof there have been many) which ariſe from hence, not being to be charged on them, or on their *Tranſlation*, but on the *ignorance* of the *Reader*, or *error* of ſuch *Expoſitors*, who dreaming of no other *Ethiopia* then *of that in Africk*, have made the Scriptures ſpeak things as it never meant, and carried theſe *Chuſites* into the *African Ethiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may

Arabia Fælix.

be ſaid,that this poſterity of *Chus*,being ſtreightned in their own poſſeſſions, or willing to ſeek new adventures, might have croſſed over the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but ſeven miles broad where narroweſt) and mingling with the ſons of *Ludim* on the other ſide,might either give the name of *Ethiopians* to them, or receive it from them.

Now to go forwards with the ſtory;the firſt great action attributed to theſe *Chuſites*, or *Arabian Ethops*,incorporated with the reſt of thoſe mingled Nations,is the expedition of *Zerah* the King hereof, againſt *Aſa* King of *Judah*, drawing after him an Army of a *million*, and three hundred Chariots of war; (the greateſt Army ever read of in unqueſtioned ſtory)but for all that, diſcomfited by the *Lord of Hoſts*, on the prayers of *Aſa*, and all the ſpoil of that huge Army carried to *Hieruſalem*. After this *Tirrakah*; another of theſe *Ethiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *Aſſyrian* Kingdom might prove unto him,prepared a puiſſant Army againſt *Senacherib*,then beſieging *Libna*,threatning the conqueſt of all *Judah*, and invading *Egypt*:upon the news of whoſe approach, *Senacheribs* forces which were even upon the gaining of *Peluſium*, the Gate of *Egypt*,were fain to diſlodge and provide for their ſafety.For though *Herodotus* call *Senacherib* King of *Arabia* and *Aſſyria*,yet was he Maſter only of thoſe parts of *Arabia* which had been formerly poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Iſrael*, being no more then ſome few cities of *Petræa*,bordering next unto them , or perhaps called ſo only in reſpect of thoſe parts of *Syria* and *Meſopotamia*, which were ſometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*,as before is ſaid. What part they after took in the great war betwixt *Nebuchadnezzar* and *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Egypt*, is not hard to ſay.For beſides that,the ſame reaſons of ſtate obliging them to ſide with the *Egyptian*,were ſtill in force;their giving *Necho* leave to paſs through their Country with his Army,to invade the *Babylonians* on the banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tirrakah* and *Zerah*, were Kings of this *Aſian*, and not of the *African Ethiopia*, is moſt clear and evident : partly in regard the Kings of *Egypt* would never ſuffer ſuch huge Armies to paſs thorow the whole length of their Dominions;but principally becauſe it is ſaid in the holy Scriptures, tha[illegible]*ſa* having overthrown that vaſt Army of *Zerah*,ſmote all the Cities about *Gerar*, which formerly had belonged unto the *Philiſtims*, but were then poſſeſſed by theſe *Chuſites*,and their aſſociates.After this,either as *Confederates* or Subjects,we finde them aiding unto *Xerxes*, in his war on *Greece* : and like enough it was, that in *Alexanders* march from *Egypt* towards *Perſia*,they ſubmitted to him,as did all the other Countreys thorow which he paſſed. He being dead,*Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, ſend *Athenæus* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an ambuſh, was diſcomfited by them. *Demetrius* the ſon of *Antigonus*, thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to ſue for peace. In the time of the *Seleucian* race in *Syria*, we finde them governed by Kings of their own, moſt of them called by the name of *Aretas*;of which one was of ſpecial note in the declining fortunes of the *Seleucidans*,for bidding very fair for the Crown of that Countrey;and being a great ſtickler in the wars of *Jewry*, in the time of *Hircanus* the fourth,King of the race of the *Maccabees*,to whom at the requeſt of *Antipater*,the father of *Herod*, he gave hopes of aid; and on thoſe hopes was poſſeſſed of *Medaba*, and other Towns of good importance, which *Alexander* the father of *Hircanus* had regained from the *Syrians*, and laid unto the Crown of *Jewry*, to which,as parts of *Ituria*; and anciently poſſeſſed by the Tribes of Iſrael, he might make ſome claim. Another there was of the ſame name, and of no leſs power, whom we finde to have been warred upon by *Herod*, about the time of the battel of *Actium*, and for the moſt part vanquiſhed by him;and finally a third of more power then either, mentioned by St. *Paul*: 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damaſcus*.In the flouriſhing of the *Roman* fortunes,the Kings hereof having firſt aided *Mithridates* and *Tigranes*, in the war againſt them, ſubmitted themſelves unto *Lucullus*, being then no nearer to them then *Armenia major*. The like they did to *Pompey* alſo,being then in *Judea*.Firſt vanquiſhed by *Ælius Gallus* in the time of *Auguſtus*; but the victory not improved to an abſolute conqueſt, till the time of *Trajan*,when partly by his perſonal preſence,and partly by the valour and good fortune of *Palma*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquiſhed,and brought into the form of a *Roman* province : but ſo that they had Kings of their own (*Vaſſals* and *Feudataries* of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the riſe of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

3. *ARABIA FELIX*.

ARABIA FELIX is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Perſian*; on the Weſt with the *Arabian* Gulf; on the North with a long ridge of mountains, which part it from *Deſerta* and *Petræa*; and on the South with the boundleſs Ocean. Environed on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough impaſſable mountains; in ſituation and figure much reſembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Fælix* from the fertility and happy condition of it;being eſteemed the moſt fruitful and pleaſant Countrey in all *Aſia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balſamum*, *Frankincenſe*, *Gold*, & *precious ſtones*:by *Curtius* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincenſe*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a ſtory, that when *Alexander* in his Adoleſcency or Boyage was ſacrificing to the Gods, and caſt into the fire with both hands great ſtore of *Frankincenſe* and *Myrrhe*; *Leonidas* his Governor bid him be more ſparing of thoſe precious and dear commodities, till he was Maſter of the Countrey in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembring,when he had brought almoſt all the Eaſt under his obedience, he ſent unto *Leonidas* a ſhip laden with *Frankincenſe*,biding him from thenceforth ſerve the gods more liberally.But aſwel for the reaſon of this adjunct,as a more perfect character and deſcription of it; take along this of *Ammianus Marcellinus*,who deſcribes it thus,‘On the eaſt and ſouth hereof(ſaith he)are the *happy Arabians*,ſo called ‘becauſe ſo rich in corn,as well as plenteous in cattel,vines,& *odoriferous ſpices* of all kinds; ſhut up betwixt ‘the *Red-Sea* & the *Perſian* Gulf,and ſo acquainted with all bleſſings, which either element can afford: ‘well furniſhed with Roads and quiet harbors for ſhipping,the Towns of trade & merchandize ſtanding ‘very thick; the retiring houſes of the Kings,paſſing neat and ſumptuous. Beſides moſt wholeſom foun-

Arabia Felix.

“ tains of *medicinal* waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers very clear and pure, and a temperature “ of Air exceeding healthy; ſo that whoſoever conſidereth all things aright, may well conclude, that “ there is nothing wanting to the accompliſhment of its felicity in the higheſt degree. So *Ammianus* “ *Marcellinus*. To which we need add nothing more to ſet forth its happineſs, than that *Danæus* in his comment on Saint *Auſtins Enchiridion ad Laurentium*, is perſwaded that it was the *local* place of *Paradiſe*. *Dicitur* (ſaith he) *Paradiſi terreſtris Regio pars quædam eſſe* Arabiæ, *quæ nunc dicitur* Fælix. But it hath other names beſides this of *Fælix*. By the *Arabians* themſelves called *Jeman*, and *Al-jeman* (*Ajaman* corruptly by the *Turks*) which in that tongue ſignifieth the South, or *Southern Region*; by *Virgil* it is named *Panchaia*, *quaſi tota dehiſcens*, becauſe of the many chops and chinks which the ardour of the Sun makes in the ſands thereof, though by him much extolled alſo for its plenty of *Frankincenſe*.

Totaque thuriferis Phanchaia *pinguis arenis*,
Famed are the whole *Panchaian* lands
For rich and incenſe-bearing ſands.

The People antiently, though more civil than the reſt of the *Arabians*, had yet many ſtrange and barbarous cuſtoms. *Adultery* amongſt them was puniſhed with death, as in other places, but onely he was held an *Adulterer*, which enjoyed any that was not his own kinſwoman, be ſhe his ſiſter or his mother, and ſo they kept themſelves in their own families, community of wives or women was eſteemed no crime. And of this there is a tale in *Strabo*, that a King of this Countrey had 15. ſons, and but one daughter, who according to the cuſtoms hereof, was the common wife of all her brethren: every of which had a *ſtaff* of like making, which when he went in unto his ſiſter he did leave at the door; and by ſo doing did forbid entrance to the reſt, til it were removed. The young Lady wearied with a continual ſupply of dalliance, ſecretly procured a *ſtaff* like unto the reſt, which when ſhe was deſirous to prohibit their acceſſes to her, ſhe left at her chamber door; and by that means did many times enjoy her deſired privacy. At laſt it hapned that all the brothers being together, one of them departed towards his ſiſters lodging; where finding a *ſtaff* before the door, and knowing that he had left his brethren in one place together, he accuſed her of *Adultery*: but the truth being made known, the Lady was quitted, and their viſits aftewards reſtrained. Of *dead bodies* they took no care, not ſo much as of their *Chiefs*, or *Princes*; but left them to the cuſtody of the next dunghill. They bragged much of their deſcent from *Jupiter*; & neglected all ſciences and arts, as diſparagements to ſo great nobility. Commendable onely in the keeping of their faith and promiſes, and in that moſt punctual. Much of the ſame condition are the preſent Inhabitants, ſave that leſs faithful in their contracts; and by their law reſtrained from medling with the wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themſelves to the grazing of cattel, and the reſt to Merchandize, wherein very cautious and cunning; but hating to this day al *Mechanical* Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixed with others, till the coming of the *Turks* amongſt them, of which but few, and thoſe diſpoſed of in garriſons: boaſting of their nobility, and *glorying* in nothing more than their greateſt ſhame, namely, that the falſe Prophet *Mahomet* was their Countreyman; whoſe impieties are here generally embraced and followed.

Amongſt the rarities of this Countrey, ſome count the *Phœnix*, which growing old, burneth her ſelf in a neſt of *ſpices*, and from thence a young one is ingendred; one of them onely at a time, which after a life of five or ſix hundred years, thus reneweth her kind. But this *tradition*, queſtioned in former times by *Pliny* and ſome others, is now proved a *fiction*; contrary both unto divinity and natural reaſon: though ſome of the Fathers made uſe of it as an argument to prove the *Reſurrection*, againſt the *Gentiles*, by whom the *Tradition* was believed more common; but of no leſs obſervation is the *Oſtridge*, a bird which ſwalloweth all it findeth, be it ſtones or iron. They delight chiefly in the *Deſarts*, in the ſands whereof they lay their eggs, and then fogetting where they left them, ſit on thoſe they meet next. In that reſpect accounted for a ſimple fowl, though otherwiſe of wit enough to preſerve themſelves; keeping in flocks, and oftentimes with their fearful ſhrieches affrighting Paſſengers, to whom they do appear afar off like a Troop of horſemen. Their wings too little for their bodies, ſerve them not for flight, but to run more ſpeedily; and by that means not eaſily caught, though much laid in wait for for their skins, which the people ſell unto the Merchant with their feathers on them. Nor of leſs note is the *Frankinſence*, though of common uſe; almoſt peculiar to this Countrey, and here, but to thoſe parts thereof which were formerly poſſeſſed by the *Sabæi*: the wood out of which this *gum* proceedeth being about 100 miles long, and 50 broad; gathered onely in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Countrey is much commended by *Ammianus*, for plenty of Rivers; the principal whereof are ſaid by *Ptolomy*, to be 1. *Betius*. 2. *Prion*. 3. *Harman*. 4. *Lar*; but the modern names thereof I finde not. Many fair *Lakes*, and ſtore of large capacious *Baies* on each coaſt of the Sea, as 1. *Sinns Elaniticus*. 2. *Sachalites*. 3. *Leanites*. 4. *Sinus Magoram*. 5. *Sinus Ichthiophagorun*. 6. *Meſſanites*. 7. *Sacer Sinus* or the holy Bay, and 8. the Road or *Naval ſtation*, called *Neogilla*. Mountains of moſt note. 1. Thoſe which are called *Melanes*, at the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf. 2. *Cabubuthra*, at the entrance of the *Red ſea*, or *Gulf* of *Arabia*. 3. *Hippus*. 4. *Prionotus*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence ſo denominated. 5. *Climax*. 6. The Mountains called *Dedymi*, &c.

Towns of good note in ancient times it had very many, no Region affording unto *Ptolomy* the names of more; and amongſt thoſe, many commodious Ports for Traffick, the Sea begirting it for the ſpace of three thouſand miles and upwards. Of moſt importance and obſervation in thoſe times, were 1. *Zebrum*, 2. *Badeo*. 3. *Rhabana*. 4. *Carman*. 5. *Manambis*. 6. *Sabe*. 7. *Are*; the Royal ſeats of ſo many ſeveral Kingdoms, and therefore honored by *Ptolomy* with the title of *Regiæ*. Then there are 1. *Macoſmos*, 2. *Meara*, 3. *Magara*, 4. *Sabbatha*, 5. *Mapha*, and 6. *Saphar*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of ſome ſeveral Natrons. Amongſt the Ports, he reckoneth, 1. *Soſip-*

Arabia Fælix.

pus, 2. *Trulla*, 3. *Tretos*, 4. *Criptus*, 5. *Itamos*, and 6. *Moſcha*: amongſt the moſt noted Empories or Towns of Traffick, 1. *Muſa*, 2. *Ocelis*, 3. *Arabia*, 4. *Cane*. Beſides which there are ſome which do preſerve the memory of their firſt Plantations, as, 1. *Saphta*, upon the *Perſian* Gulf, ſo called from *Sabta* the third Son of *Chus*, 2. *Rhegama*, or *Regma*, (as the *Greek* copies of *Ptolomy* have it) ſo named from *Regma* or *Raama* his ſixth Son; on the ſame Gulf alſo. 3. *Sabe* on the ſhores of the *Red Sea*. And 4. *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, ſo called from *Seba* the eldeſt Son of the ſame *Chus*, from whom the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabeans* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him named, we ſhall take more particular notice of ſome that follow. 1. *Muſa*, a noted port on the entrance of the *Red Sea*, frequented antiently by the *Ethiopian* and *Egyptian* Merchants; who there laded their ſhips with *Frankincenſe*, *Myrrhe*, *Spices*, and other commodities of this Country, bringing in, in exchange thereof, *Saffron*, *Corne*, *Wine*, *Ointments*, *Purple-Dies*, &c. 2. *Sabe*, the Regal ſeat of the Kings of the *Sabeans*, particularly of that Queen ſo memorized in holy Scripture; called in the old Teſtament the *Queen of Sheba*, from her Country and place of dwelling, in the new Teſtament, the *Queen of the South*, becauſe of the Southern ſcituation of it in reſpect of *Judæa*: ſaid there to come from the furtheſt part of the world, becauſe there was no part of the world which lay ſouth to the Country of the *Sabeans*, over which ſhe reigned. Scituate on a little Mountain, affirmed by *Agatharcides* to be πολὺ κάλλιστον τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἀραβίαν, the moſt beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the Metropolis of the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabæans*: rich in all the excellencies of *Nature*, eſpecially in *Frankincenſe*, a gum peculiar to them onely, and growing here in a wood of about 100 miles long, and 50 broad; not gathered but in the ſpring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Thurifera*, and this ſweet gum appropriated ſolely to it. Sabæi Arabum *propter thura clariſſimi*, as we find in *Pliny*; *Solis eſt thurea virga* Sabæis, as it is in *Virgil*; and finally—Thuriferos, *fælicia Regna*, Sabæos, in the *Argonauticks* of *Valerius Flaccus*. It was called alſo *Mariaba*, and by that name occurreth in ſome ancient Writers. 3. *Saphar*, more towards the *Perſian* Gulf, on the South-ſide of the mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homaritæ*; adorned in times of Chriſtianity with a beautiful Temple. 4. *Sabbatha*, or *Sabota*, as *Pliny* calleth it, ſeated about the middeſt of the Country, on the top of an high and lofty hill, from whence it had a gallant proſpect on the fields adjoyning: antiently large and populous, and ſtrongly fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the walls; the principle they conſecrated unto *Sabis* the God of their Nation; to whom they offered the tithe of their *Frankincenſe*, *ubi decimas Deo quem* Sabin *vocant*, *menſura non pondere capiunt* Sacerdotes, as we read in *Pliny*.

But theſe and almoſt all the reſt being grown out of knowledge, there have riſen in their rooms, 1. *Egra*, on the ſhore of the *Red Sea*, neer the Bay called *Sinus Elaniticus*; by *Ptolomy* called *Arga*, by the *Arabians* themſelves, *Algiar*; the Port Town to *Medina*, from which about three dayes journey diſtant. 2. *Jathrib*, or *Jatrib*, in the way betwixt *Algiar*, and *Medina*, the birth-place of *Mahomet*; by whom fortified with a mud-wall, as his place of retreat in the firſt beginnings of his fortunes. 3. *Medina*, commonly called *Medina Talmabi*, corruptly from *Medinatho luabi*, that is to ſay, the City of the *Prophet*: ſo called from the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, that vile *Impoſture*, which is there to be ſeen, although not in ſuch an iron coffin, or drawn up to the roof of the Temple by virtue of an *Adamant* there placed, as ſome deliver. The Town ſcituate in a deſolate and barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petræa*; but of great trade, rich, and well in habited: the Sepulchre of that falſe *Prophet* drawing thither a continuall reſort of *Pilgrims*. The Temple gorgeous having 3000 lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb incloſed within an Iron grate, but of no magificence or beauty: covered with a carpet of Green Velvet, which is ſent hither yearly by the *Grand Signieur*; the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable ſhreds or pieces, and ſold for *Relicks* by the Prieſts, (to ſuch as come in Pilgrimage thither) to their great enriching, 4. *Cufa*, the ordinary reſidence of the firſt *Caliphs*, till the removing of the imperial Seat to *Damaſcus*, in *Syria*; and after that, the uſual place of meeting for conſultation in affairs for State, relating to the peace of this Country, and the common intereſt of this people: as memorable for the Sepulchre of *Mortis Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Perſian* Sophies, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*. 4. *Meccha*, ſuppoſed to be the *Mechara* of *Ptolomy*, ſcituate in the like barren ſoyl, not far from *Medina*, but of far greater reſort and traffick: the whole wealth, in a manner, of this Country, together with the commodities of *Perſia*, and *India*, being firſt brought hither; and from hence on Camels backs tranſported into *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and other parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire. Unwalled; and either for that cauſe, or for concealment of their fopperies from the eyes of Chriſtians, it is made death for any Chriſtian for to come within five miles of it. Utterly deſtitute of water, but what they keep in Ciſterns, from one ſhower of rain unto another, or elſe brought thither with great charge; otherwiſe pleaſantly ſeated, rich, and containing about 6000 families: every year viſited with three *Caravans* or troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damaſcus*, and *Grand Caire*: who having done their buſineſſe and devotion there, go afterward in *Pilgrimage* to *Medina* alſo, to the great enriching of both places. 6. *Ziden*, The Haven town of *Mecca*, from which diſtant about forty miles, ſcituate on the *Red Sea*, in a ſandy ſoyl, unwalled and much expoſed both to wind and weather; but wealthy, well-built, and of great reſort. 7. *Zebit*, now the *Metropolis* of the Country, ſcituate about halfe a dayes journey from the *Red Sea*, in a large plain between two Mountains: a Rivulet of the ſame name paſſing by it: well-traded for Sugars, Spice, and fruits; the ordinary reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, by whom taken, not long after *Aden*. 8. *Eltor*, a Port Town of this Country and the onely Town, where the Chriſtians are ſuffered to inhabit. 9. *Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, neer the Streights called *Babel-Mandel*; ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Madoce* of *Ptolomy*, but more agreeing, in ſcituation, with the famous Emporie by him called *Arabia*. The faireſt Town of the whole *Peninſula*, of great ſtrength, both by Art and Nature; well Traded, and well fortified, having a large capacious Haven, ſeldome without good ſtore of ſhipping, and containing to the number of ſix thouſand perſons. Once a diſtinct Kingdome of it ſelf, but treacherouſly ſurprized by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1538. and therewithall the reſt of the Country: made afterwards the ſeat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebit*, are ſuppoſed to be no fewer than thirty thouſand *Timariots*. 10. *Oran*, the Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. 10. *Thema*, or *Themau*, the ſame I take it, which our later Travellers call *Zeman*, ſcituate more within the Land; affirmed by *Benjamin* the *Jew*, ſuinamed *Tude Cenſis*, to be a Town of 15 miles ſquare, but to have within the Walls thereof great quantity of ground for Tillage. 12. *Zarval*, a retiring place of the *Caliphs*, when they lived in this Country. 13. *Hor*, on the point or Promontory, called *Chorodemus*, a Garriſon not long ſince of the Kings of *Ormus*. 14. *Muskahat*, on the *Perſian* Gulf, neer the point of land called *Cape Rozel gate*: oppoſite to *Surat*, in the Eaſt *India*, and poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, who have fortified it with a well-built Caſtle, for defence of their Ships and Frigots which frequent thoſe Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Perſians*, many of the Inhabitants whereof were ſince ſetled here. Of the affairs of this Country we ſhall ſpeak anon; having firſt took a brief view of the Iſlands which belong unto it.

4. The *ARABICK ISLANDS.*

THe *ISLANDS* which lie round about the ſhores of *Arabia Felix*, and have been anciently accounted as parts thereof, are diſperſed either in the, 1. *Red ſea.* 2. *Southern Ocean*, or, 3. The Gulf of *Perſia*.

1. The *RED*-SEA, (called alſo by the Antients, *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern *Ocean*, which interpoſeth it ſelf betwixt *Ægypt* on the Weſt; *Arabia Felix*, and ſome part of *Petræa*, on the *Eaſt*: the North-eaſt bound of it touching upon *Idumæa*, or the Coaſt of *Edom*. Extended in length from the Town of *Sues*, anciently called *Arſinoe*, in the bottom of it, to the ſtreights of *Babel-Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean; for the ſpace of one thouſand and four hundred miles: in breadth, for the moſt part but one hundred, but in ſome places almoſt two; the ſtreights themſelves not being above a mile and an half, anciently chained by the Kings of *Ægypt*, as is ſaid by *Strabo*, but now left open by the *Turk*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and inquiet Sea, full of ſands and ſhelves; inſomuch as they who paſs in and out, are fain to make uſe of *Pilots* which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the Channel. Sufficiently famous in all times and ſtories, for the miraculous paſſage of the Children of *Iſrael*, and the drowning of *Pharaoh* King of *Egypt*.

It took the name of the *Red-ſea*, as ſome conceived, from the *redneſs* of the ſands; as others have delivered, from the *redneſs* of the waters: but later obſervations have diſcovered the weakneſs and abſurdity of theſe *Etymologies*: the Sea, and Sands being coloured here, as in other places. By the *Grecians* it was called *Erythræum*, which in that tongue ſignifieth *Red* alſo, not from the colour either of the ſands or waters; but from one *Erythras* ſuppoſed to be the ſon of *Perſeus* and *Andromeda*, who commanded the Eaſtern ſhores hereof. And theſe come neerer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, becauſe it took beginning on the Coaſts of that Country: which word in the *Hebrew*, ſignifying *Red*, as appeareth, *Gen.* 25. 30. firſt given as a nick-name to *Eſau*, and from him afterwards to Mount *Seir*, or the land of *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 31. was by the *Greeks* rendred *Erythræum*, and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latines*. Whence the name of the *Red-ſea* became known to all; but the reaſon of the name to few.

Of the great Traffick which was anciently driven up this Sea, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we are in *Ægypt*, on the other ſide of it. Look we now on the Iſlands which belong to *Arabia*, as they all generally do: Known in the times of *Ptolomy* by the names of, 1. *Adani.* 2. *Æni.* 3. *Are.* 4. *Cardamine.* 5. *Combuſta.* 6. *Damanum.* 7. *Hieracum*, or the Iſle of *Hawks*. 8. *Maliaci.* 9. *Polbii.* 10. *Socratis.* 11. *Timagenis.* and 12. *Zygana.* But by what names now called, and of what note then, is a thing ſo doubtful, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almoſt all of them to be ſmall, deſolate, or but meanly inhabited, deſcribed by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeneſs, ſaid to be an hundred twenty and five miles long, though but twelve broad, called *Dalaqua*, with a City in it of that name, where they gather *Pearls*. 2. Then there is *Camaran*, moſt extreamly hot, of moſt note for the many ſpoils there made by the *Portugals*. 3. *Xamoa*, the earth whereof is ſaid to be *Red*, (perhaps to countenance the vulgar tradition, of calling this the *Red ſea*, from the colour of the ſands or ſhores) and the King a *Moor*. 4. The *Samaritan Iſland*, ſpoken of by *Scaliger*, inhabited by a remainder of that people; who as ſoon as they ſaw any ſtranger land upon their coaſts, would moſt religiouſly deſire him not to touch them. Such other Iſlands as lie upon the oppoſite ſhores, and ſeem to appertain unto *Ethiopia*, ſhall finde their place in our deſcription of the *African* Iſlands.

II. The SOUTHERN OCEAN comprehendeth that vaſt body of waters, which from the Eaſtern banks of both *Ethiopia's* coaſt, along on the South of *Arabia Felix*, and ſo directly Eaſt-ward, to the furthieſt *India*; in this regard called by ſome Writers *Oceanus Indicus*, by others *Mare Auſtrale*, from the ſcituation; and by ſome alſo *Mare Rubrum*, or the *Red-ſea*, from *Erythras* a great King (as they ſuppoſe) reigning hereabouts, and giving name not only to the *Red-ſea* (or Gulph of *Arabia*) ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, but to all the Sea-coaſt alſo, from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia*, to the coaſts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythræum*.

In this vaſt Ocean *Ptolomy* placeth many Iſlands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, *viz.* Two Iſlands by the name of *Inſula Agathoclis*. 2. Three more by the name of *Cocconati*. 3. *Dioſcoris*, by *Pliny* called *Dioſcurias*, with a City of the ſame name in it. 4. Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus*

Sachalites

Arabia Felix.

Sachalites, by the name of *Zenobii.* 5. *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrrina*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythras* before mentioned, being a great Hill planted with trees. 6. *Sarapias*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Turgana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Egyptian* Idol. None of them now of any credit, nor formerly of any great note, the two laſt excepted.

III. On the Eaſt-ſide of *Arabia Felix*, betwixt it and *Perſia*, lieth another large Arm of the Southern Ocean, antiently called *Sinus Perſicus*, or the Bay of *Perſia*, now *Golfo di Elkadiffe.* A turbulent and unruly Sea, the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end, and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combating or claſhing of which two great waters, makes it ſo unquiet. *Ptolomy* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*,) 1. *Tylus*, which *Arianus* ſets at the mouth of *Euphrates*, *Solinus* in the *Indian* Seas, affirming it to be well ſtored with vines, and olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophraſtus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place miſtaken) affording good materials for ſhipping. 2. *Apphana.* 3. *Tharo.* 3. *Ichara*; of which nothing memorable. To theſe ſome late Travellers have adjoyned two others, if not ſome of the former, under thoſe new names, that is to ſay, 6. *Bayren*, and 6. *Gonſiar*, where they take the beſt *Pearls* in the world, in beds of *Oiſters.* Other Iſlands of this Bay (if any) do belong to *Perſia*; where, if occaſion ſo require, we ſhall ſpeak more of them.

To return therefore to the main-land of *Arabia Felix*, the firſt Inhabitants thereof were the ſons of *Chus*, and the families which they brought with them. Their memories preſerved in the names of ſome of the chief Towns and Nations, till the days of *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and ſome others of the antient writers. Divided afterwards into the ſeveral Tribes or Sects of the *Caſſanitæ*, *Cinædocolpitæ*, *Homaritæ*, *Adramitæ*, *Eleſari*, *Sachalitæ*, *Anaritæ*, *Gerræi*, *Ægæi*, *Sabæi*, *Minæi*, *Leanitæ*, *Cattabani*, *Abuceni*, and divers others: each governed ſeparately and apart by their ſeveral *Chiefs*; whom they honoured, as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which ſpoken of by *Juſtine*, named *Hierotimus*, is ſaid to have been the father of 500 children. Eaſie to have been overcome, becauſe ſo divided, if any potent neighbour had attempted the conqueſt of them: as it is wondrous ſtrange they did not, conſidering the richneſs of the Countrey, and the many temptations which it had to invite them to it. More worthily deſerving the name of *Felix*, in that never conquered, than in all the other rarities and delights thereof. By *Alexander* once deſigned for the ſeat of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the conqueſt of it, having finiſhed his war againſt the *Perſians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petræa*, though once *Auguſtus* did attempt it; employing in that action, *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Egypt*: one *Sames* being then King of thoſe parts which lay neereſt to him. The *Romans* at their firſt entry found no reſiſtance. But when by the extraordinary heat of the air, and drinking ſalt waters, they began to grow diſeaſed and ſickly; the *Arabians* fell luſtily upon them, and made them return back both with loſs and ſhame. After this nothing done by the *Romans*, to diſturb their quiet; nor much done by the *Chriſtians* to advance their glories: the whole divided into almoſt as many *Religions*, as Principalities and Eſtates. Moſt of them Gentiles, but *Circumciſed*, as the *Iſmaelites* and other *Arabians* had been of old; many *Jews* intermingled with them, and ſome ſtore of *Chriſtians*, but thoſe divided alſo into *Sects* and *Factions*. And in this ſtate it ſtood, when *Mahomet* firſt began to broach his blaſphemous dotages. By birth of *Jathripp*, an obſcure village then, not far from *Medina*; his father called *Abdalla*, an Idolatrous *Pagan*; his mother named *Hemina*, as perverſe a *Jeweſs.* Deprived of both his parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an uncle: who not able to give him education, nor willing to be at the charge to keep him longer, ſold him at ſixteen years of age to the *Iſmaelites*; by whom expoſed to ſale in the open markets, he was bought by one *Abdalmutalif*, a wealthy Merchant. By him employed at firſt in *drudgery*: and ſervile offices, till noting his great wit, and fitneſs for better ſervices, he at laſt uſed him as his *factor*: ſending him with his *Camels* and loads of Merchandize, into *Syria*, *Perſia*, *Egypt*, and other places; wherein he did behave himſelf with ſuch dexterity, that he much increaſed his Maſters wealth, and his own eſtimation. Of perſon he is ſaid to be low, and withall ſcald-headed; but otherwiſe comely to the eye, and of good aſpect. Much troubled with the *falling ſickneſs*, which infirmity he made good uſe of afterwards; affirming that thoſe fits were nothing but *heavenly raptures*, in which he did converſe with the Angel *Gabriel.* He is ſaid to have been alſo well skilled in *Magick*, by which he taught a *white Pigeon* to feed at his ear, which he gave out to be the *Holy Ghoſt*, by whom he was inſtructed in the law which he was to publiſh: but this not till afterwards. By *Sorceries*, comelineſs of perſon, and the great knowledge which he had in his Maſters buſineſs, he gained ſo far on the affections of his *Miſtreſs*, that on the death of *Abdalmutalif*, ſhe made him her husband. Poſſeſſed of all his maſters wealth, he affected eaſe; and being till then of no *Religion*, or at beſt a *Pagan*, he began to hearken unto *Sergius*, a *Neſtorian* Monk: who flying out of *Syria* for fear of puniſhment (the hereſies of *Neſtorius* being newly both revived and cenſured) came into *Arabia*; where he found entertainment in the houſe of *Abdalmutalif*, the Maſter of *Mahomet.* By his perſwaſions, who found him a fit inſtrument for the *devil* to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of hammering out a *new Religion*; which might unite all parties in ſome *common principles*, and bring the *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles*, (into which the world was then divided,) under one *Profeſſion.* Reſolved on this, he retired himſelf unto a Cave not far from *Mecca*, as if he there attended nothing but *meditations*; *Sergius* in the mean time ſounding in the ears of the people, both his parts, and piety. The people being thus prepared to behold the *Pageant*, outcomes the principal *Actor* with ſome parts of his *Alcoran* (pleaſing enough to *ſenſual* minds) which he profeſſed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel.* And finding that this edified to his expectation, he next proclaimed liberty to all *ſlaves*, and *ſervants*, as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the *natural liberty* of mankind was moſt dearly tendred: which drew unto him ſuch a rabble of unruly people,

The *Arabick Iſlands.*

that without fear of oppoſition he diſperſed his doctrines, reducing them at laſt to a book or method.

The Book of this religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to ſay, the *Collection of Precepts*: the Original whereof they feign to be written in a Table which is kept in Heaven; and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. A Book ſo highly reverenced by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the cover of it, *let none touch this but he that is clean*. The body of it (as it now ſtandeth) was compoſed by *Oſmen* the fourth *Caliph*, who ſeeing the *Saracens* daily inclining to divers *hereſies*, by reaſon of ſome falſe copies of *Mahomets* Laws; and that the Empire by the ſame means was likely to fall into civil diſſention; by the help of his wife, who was *Mahomets* daughter, he got a ſight of all *Mahomets* papers, which he reduced into four *Volumes*, and divided into one hundred twenty and four Chapters; commanding expreſly, upon pain of death, that that book, and that onely, ſhould be received as *Canonical* through his Dominions. The whole body of it is but an expoſition and gloſs on theſe eight Commandments.

1. *Every one ought to believe that God is a great God; and one onely God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet*. They hold *Abraham* to be the *friend* of God; *Moſes*, the *meſſenger* of God; and *Chriſt*, the *breath* of God: whom they deny to be conceived by the *Holy Ghoſt*, affirming that the Virgin *Mary* grew with childe of him by ſmelling to a Roſe, and was delivered of him at her breaſts. They deny the myſtery of the *Trinity*; but puniſh ſuch as ſpeak againſt *Chriſt*; whoſe Religion was not (ſay they) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his pilgrimage to *Mecca*, doth not, coming or going, viſit the ſepulchre of *Chriſt*, is reputed not to have *merited*, or bettered himſelf any thing by his journey.

2. *Every man muſt marry to increaſe the Sectaries of Mahomet*. Four wives he alloweth to every man, and as many Concubines as he will: between whom the husband ſetteth no difference, either in affection or apparel; but that his wives onely can enjoy his *Sabbaths* benevolence. The women are not admitted in the time of their lives to come into their Churches; nor after death to Paradiſe: and whereas in moſt or all other Countreys, Fathers give ſome portions with their daughters, the *Mahometans* give money for their wives; which being once paid, the contract is regiſtred in the *Cadies* book, and this is all their formality of Marriage. More of this theam we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we are in *TURCOMANIA*, and among the *Turks*.

3. *Every one muſt give of his wealth to the poor*. Hence you ſhall have ſome buy ſlaves, and then manumit them; buy birds, and then let them flie. They uſe commonly to free Priſoners, releaſe bond-ſlaves, build canes or lodgings in the waies for the relief of paſſengers, repair bridges, and mend highwaies. But their moſt ordinary alms conſiſt in ſacrifices of Sheep or Oxen, which when the ſolemnity is performed, they diſtribute among the poor; to whom alſo, on the firſt day of every year, they are bound to give the tith or tenth part of their gettings in the year fore-going: inſomuch that you ſhall hardly finde any beggars amongſt them.

4. *Every one muſt make his prayers five times a day*. When they pray they turn their bodies towards *Mecca*, but their faces ſometimes one way, ſometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* ſhall come behind them, being at their devotions. The firſt time is an hour before Sun-riſing; the ſecond at noon-day; the third at three of the clock afternoon; the fourth at Sun-ſetting; the fifth aud laſt before they go to ſleep. At all theſe times the Cryers keep a bauling in the ſteeples (for the *Turks* and *Saracens* have no bells) for the people to come to Church. And ſuch as cannot come, muſt when they hear the voice of the Cryers, fall down in the place where they are, do their devotions, and kiſs the ground thrice.

5. *Every one muſt keep a Lent one moneth in a year*. This Lent is called *Ramazan*, in which they ſuppoſe the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This faſt is onely intended in the day time, the law giving leave to frollick it in the night, as they beſt pleaſe, ſo they abſtain from Wine, and Swines fleſh; prohibited by their Law at all times, but never ſo punctually abſtained from, as in the time of their *Lent*.

6. *Be obedient to thy Parents*; which law is the moſt neglected of any, in all the *Alcoran*; never any children being ſo unnatural as the *Turkiſh*.

7. *Thou ſhalt not kill*; and this they keep unviolated among themſelves; but the poor Chriſtians are ſure to feel the ſmart of their fury. And as if by this law, the actual ſhedding of blood only were prohibited, they have invented puniſhments for their offenders, worſe than death it ſelf. As firſt the *Strappado*, which is hanging of them by the arms drawn backwards: when they are ſo bound, they are drawn up on high, and let down again with a violent ſwing, which unjoynteth all their back and arms. Secondly, they uſe to hoiſe up their heels, and with a great cudgel to give them three or four hundred blowes on the ſoles of their feet. Thirdly, it is ordinary to draw them naked up to the top of a Gibbet or Tower full of hooks; and cutting the rope to let them fall down again; but by the way they are caught by ſome of the hooks, where they commonly hang till they die for hunger.

8. *Do unto others, as thou wouldeſt be done unto thy ſelf*. To thoſe that keep theſe Laws he promiſeth Paradiſe, a place of all delights, adorned with flowery fields, watered with Cryſtalline Rivers, beautified with Trees of gold; under whoſe cool ſhade, they ſhall ſpend their time with amorous Virgins, whoſe manſion ſhall not be far diſtant. The men ſhall never exceed the age of thirty; nor the women of fifteen; and thoſe to have their virginities renewed as faſt as loſt.

Friday he ordained to be the Sabbath-day, partly to diſtinguiſh his followers from the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, who ſolemnize the days enſuing; but principally becauſe he was on that day proclaimed *King* or *Emperor*, & ſolemnly ſo created. Wine and Swines-fleſh are the principal things forbidden by the *Alcoran*: from the laſt whereof they all unanimouſly refrain; bnt on the firſt they are ſo ſotted, that when they come at it, they ſeldome go home again unled; inſomuch that all the wines in *Conſtantinople* have been thrown

about

The *Arabick* *Iſlands*.

about the ſtreets, and death made the penalty for any that will preſume to bring any more into the City. *Mahomet* taught them that every one ſhould be ſaved by his own *Religion*; him onely excepted that revolted from the *Alcoran* unto another Law: but ſo that under the notion of Religion, he means onely ſuch as worſhip the one and onely God, excluding by that means the old Idolaters of the Gentiles from the hopes of ſalvation. And he taught too, that at the end of the world all men that profeſſed any ſuch Religion, ſhould go into *Paradiſe*; the *Jews* under the banner of *Moſes*, the *Chriſtians* under the banner of *Chriſt*, and the *Saracens* under the banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no man therefore to abjure the faith in which he was born, but commend and approve ſecretly ſuch as they finde zealous and conſtant in their own Religion; yet holding it an eſpecial honour to have daily new *Proſelytes*, they incite them by hope of freedom and preferment, which with many are motives too much prevailing. Hence I have heard many ſay, that it is better for a man that would enjoy liberty of conſcience, to live in the Countreys profeſſing *Mahometaniſm*, then *Papiſtry*; for in the one he ſhall never be free from the bloody *Inquiſition*; in the other he is never moleſted, if he meddle not with their *Law*, their *Women*, or their *Slaves*.

The opinions which they hold concerning the end of the world, are very ridiculous; as that at the winding of a horn, not all fleſh onely, but the *Angels* themſelves ſhall die, that the earth with an Earthquake ſhall be kneaded together, like a lump of dough; that a ſecond blaſt of the ſame horn ſhall after forty days reſtore all again; that *Cain* ſhall be the Captain or Ring-leader of the damned, who ſhall have the countenance of dogs, and ſwine; that they ſhall paſs over the bridge of Juſtice, laden with their ſins in ſatchels; that the great ſinners ſhall fall into hell, the leſſer into purgatory onely; with a thouſand of the like fopperies: which it is needleſs to adde here, conſidering that the *Alcoran* it ſelf is now extant in *Engliſh*, and every one that liſts may read it. A thing ſo full of *Tautologies*, incohærencies, and ſuch groſs abſurdities, of ſo impure and carnal mixture, that he muſt lay aſide the uſe of his natural reaſon, who is taken by it, if force, ambition, or the want of *Chriſtian* education do not lead him on. For if we ſeriouſly look into the cauſes of the deplorable increaſe and long continuance of this Religion, we ſhall finde them to be chiefly theſe, 1. The greatneſs of the Victories gotten by the *Saracens*; who eaſily compelled the conquered Nations to receive their Law. 2. The great zeal and diligence of the *Arabians* themſelves, who being a numerous people, and much given to Merchandize; have poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Sea-coaſts of *Africk*, from the ſtreights of *Babel-Mandel*, almoſt as far as to the *Cape of good hope*; of all the Iſlands in thoſe Seas, and many *Factories* and good Towns on the coaſts of *India*: in all which they have ſetled their Religion alſo, as a thing inſeparable from their Nation. 3. A peremptory reſtraint of all diſputation, in any point of Religion whatſoever it be. 4. The ſuppreſſing of Philoſophy, and the ſtudy of Humane Sciences; the light whereof might eaſily detect the groſsneſs of their ſuperſtitions. 5. The ſenſual liberty allowed of having variety of wives, and as many concubines as they are able to keep. 6. The promiſe of the like ſenſual pleaſures in the other world, with which a ſenſe not illuminated with the Spirit of God, doth for the moſt part uſe to be more affected, then with the ſpeculative hope of ſpiritual happineſs. 7. The forbidding of *Printing* and printed Books, by whch the people might come to ſee the verity and purity of the *Chriſtian* faith; the falſhood and impurity of the law of *Mahomet*. Theſe laſt not uſeful, or at leaſt not able to induce belief, if the firſt had not opened and prepared the way.

For indeed force of Arms was the ſtrongeſt argument by which *Mahomet* himſelf confirmed, and his ſucceſſors in their times have ſince propagated and diſperſed his doctrines. Strengthned by the reſort of that *raſcal Rabble* which repaired to him, he aſſaults *Medina*, pretending a quarrel to the *Jews*, who had there a *Synagogue*. Repulſed at firſt with loſs of men, and a wound in his face, by which ſome of his fore-teeth were beaten out; there likely to have made an end of his new *Religion*, if not recovered by his Souldiers for a further miſchief. At the next onſet he prevailed, the battel being fought near a place called *Bedez*, ſituate betwixt *Mecca* and *Medina*, frequently mentioned in the *Alcoran*. After which fight he took the City, converting the *Synagogue* to a Temple for his own impieties: the news whereof ſo ſtartled the *Phylarchæ*, or Nobility of *Mecca*, that they armed all their powers againſt him, and ſped ſo well in the beginning of the war, that they drove him forcibly from their territories; which not long after he ſubdued, and ſet his chief ſeat at *Mecca*. From that his flight, the *Saracens* began their computation of years (as we from CHRISTS Nativity) which they call the *Hegira*; which beginneth about the year of our Redemption, 617. Concerning which time, I cannot but obſerve, that *Mahomet* compiled his devilliſh doctrine, beginning his Empire; and *Boniface* the third aſſumed his *Antichriſtian* title, beginning his unlimited Supremacy nigh about the ſame year. It was called the *Hegira*, from the Arabick *Hegirathi*, which by the learned in that tongue, is rendred by διωγμὸς ὑπὲρ τῆς θρεσκείας, i. e. *the perſecution raiſed about* Religion. *Joſeph Scaliger* in the firſt edition of his moſt laborious work *de emendatione temporum*, caſteth off this *Etymology* with *purum putum mendacium*. He will not have it called *Æra fugæ* or *perſecutionis*, but *Æra Hagarena*: becauſe forſooth the *Arabians* were by ſome called *Hagarens*. I believe it would have puzled *Scaliger*, with all his reading, to ſhew unto us any *Epoche* or *Æra*, which is taken from the name of a Nation. And therefore other reaſon he giveth us none but this. *Nos autem ſcimus vocem illam primogenia ſignificatione ab* Hagarenis, *non à fuga duci*. But time, and oppoſition, at the laſt reclaimed him from this error: and in the ſecond edition of his work, he is content to follow the common opinion of thoſe men, whom in the firſt he whiſtled off with the infamous appellation of *mendaces*.

But to proceed, It hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Eaſtern Emperour, joyned themſelves unto him. They had long been diſpleaſed with their condition, and now hoped to mend it. Exaſperated by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, when they ſerved in his wars againſt the

Perſians,

Emperours of the *Saracens.*

Perſian, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he *had more ſtore of Steel than Gold*: but then they wanted a fit head to reſort unto. Now ſerving *Heraclius* in the ſame war, they were uſed by his Officers in the ſame ill manner. Asking their pay, the *Treaſurer* of the *Army* made them this churliſh anſwer, that *there was ſcarce money enough to pay the* Roman *and* Grecian *Souldiers*; *and muſt thoſe dogs be ſo importunate for their wages?* Provoked herewith, and hearing the fame of *Mahomet*, they betook themſelves to him: who ſtrengthned by their forces, and the coming in of the reſt of their Countreymen, ſoon brought the three *Arabias* under his ſubjection. To which, having defeated the Emperors forces ſent againſt him, he added ſome parts of *Syria*, and *Egypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there died frantick and diſtempered, in the 70th. year of his age, and three and twentieth of his *impoſtures*: of which he had ſpent thirteen at *Medina*, and the reſt at *Mecca*; from his firſt ſetling in which City, the years of his Empire were computed. His dead body being kept four daies in expectation of a *reſurrection*, which he promiſed to perform at the end of three; grown full of ſtench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there interred: his Succeſſors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that *Religion* after his deceaſe, which they derided in his life; and calling themſelves *Caliphs*, or *Vicars*-General, to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of which we haſten; made intricate, not more by their own *confuſions*, than by the difference of thoſe names by which they are preſented to us by ſeveral Writers; according to the times and Languages in which they writ.

The *Caliphs* or Emperours of the *Saracens.*

A.C.	A.H.	
622	5	1. *Mahomet* the Impoſtor, of whom before.
632	15	2. *Ebubezer*, or *Vquebar*, *Mahomets* Father-in-Law, and one of his great Captains, ſupplanted *Ali*, to whom the Empire was deſigned by the will of *Mahomet*; and took unto himſelf the name of *Caliph*. 2.
634	17	3. *Haumar*, the ſecond of *Mahomets* great Captains, having the command of the Army under *Ebubezer*, ſucceeded him in the eſtate; and added to it *Perſia, Egypt*, *Palaſtine*, with great part of *Syria*, and *Meſopotamia*. 12.
647	30	4. *Oſmen*, the third of *Mahomets* great Captains, husband of *Zeineb*, his ſecond daughter, ſucceeded under that pretence, and added all *Barbary* to his Empire. Diſtreſſed by the faction of *Hali*, and beſieged in his own houſe, he ſlew himſelf in the eighty ſeventh year of his age, and the tenth of his Reign.
657	40	5. *Hali*, the kinſman and next heir of *Mahomet*, and the husband of *Fatime* his eldeſt daughter, ſucceeded on the death of *Oſmen*: murdered by the procurement of *Muhavias*, near *Caſa*, in *Arabia Felix*.
660	43	6. *Muhavias*, having murdered *Hali*, his ſon *Haſem* or *Oſſan*, and eleven of the ſons of that *Haſem*, the twelfth onely eſcaping with life (from whom deſcended the Family of the *Alaveci*, and the *Perſian Sophies*) aſſumed the Government as rightful Succeſſor to *Oſmen*, whoſe widow, the daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to wiſe. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great part of *Aſia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeya*.
681	64	7. *Gizid*, the ſon of *Muhavias*, more skilled in Poetry then in Arms.
		8. *Habdalla* and *Marvan*, Competitors for the Supreme dignity; but carried at laſt by *Marvan*.
685	68	9. *Abimelech*, the ſon of *Marvan*, eſtabliſhed the begun conqueſts of *Armenia*, and *Meſopotamia*. 22.
707	90	10. *Vlidor Vlit*, under whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* firſt conquered *Spain*. 9.
716	99	11. *Zulcimin*, brother to *Vlit*, whoſe Captain *Mulſamus* beſieged *Conſtantinople*, till his ſhips were burnt, and his men conſumed with the Plague. 3.
719	102	12. *Homar* or *Haumar* II. ſon of *Vlidor Vlit*. 2.
721	104	13. *Izit*, or *Gizid* II. the brother of *Hanmar*, with whom during his life he was joynt *Caliph*, and after his deceaſe enjoyed it wholly to himſelf.
725	107	14. *Evelid*, by ſome called *Iſcham*, in whoſe time *Charles Martel* made ſuch havock of the *Moors* in *France* Anno 734. their General then named *Abderamen*. 18.
743	125	15. *Gizid* III. the ſon of *Gizid* the ſecond.
744	126	16. *Hyces*, by ſome called *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Gizid* the third, ſlain by *Marvan*.
745	127	17. *Marvan* II. the laſt of the houſe of *Ben-Humeya*, ſlain by *Abdalla*, of the houſe of *Fatime* and *Hali*.
752	134	18. *Abdalla*, of the houſe of *Alaveci*, or *Alabeci*, deſcended from *Hali* and *Fatime*, the eldeſt daughter of *Mahomet*: called alſo the Family of *Abas*, becauſe of their deſcent from *Abas* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.
756	138	19. *Abdallas* II.
		20. *Mahomet* II. ſurnamed *Bugiafer*, or *Abugefor*, who built the City of *Bagdat*, made from that time the conſtant ſeat of his Succeſſors, till their fatal period.
777	156	21. *Mahadi*. 9.
786	168	22. *Muſa*, or *Moyſes*. 1.
787	169	23. *Aaron*, or *Arachid*, who compelled *Irene* Empreſs of *Conſtantinople*, to pay him tribute. 23.
810	193.	24. *Mahamad*, or *Mahomet* III.

825.

The Babylonian Caliphs.

825. 198. 25. *Abdalla* III. who took and ſpoiled *Crete*, and overthrew the *Greeks*; he alſo ſpoiled *Sicilia, Sardinia*, and *Corſica*. 17.

832. 215. 26. *Mahomet* IV. waſted *Italy*, burnt the Suburbs of *Rome*, and haraſſed the forenamed Iſlands. 40.

Others reckon theſe *Caliphs* to have ſucceeded *Mahomet* 2d.

815. 198. 25. *Mamon* 12.
827. 210. 26. *Mutetzam* 8.
835. 218. 27. *Wacek* 4.
839. 222. 28. *Methucall* 12.
851. 234. 29. *Montacer* 1.
852. 235. 30. *Abul Hamet* 6.
858. 241. 31. *Almatez* 4.
863. 245. 32. *Motadi Bila* 7. After whoſe death, the *Ægyptians* with-drew themſelves from their obedience due to the *Babylonian Caliph*, and choſe one of their own, to whom all the *Arabians*, and thoſe of the *Mahumetan* religion, in *Africa* and *Europe*, ſubmitted themſelves. Of the *Ægyptian Caliphs*, when we come into that Country: take now with you the name only of the *Syrian*, and *Babylonian Caliphs*; for ſtory of them I finde little or none, the power being totally in the hands of the *Sultans* of the ſeveral Provinces, and nothing left unto the *Caliphs* but an aiery Title, the ſhadow of that mighty Tree, which formerly had ſpread it ſelf over moſt parts of the World.

The *Babylonian Caliphs* after the diviſion.

A.C.	A.H.	
870	252	1. *Mutemad* 21.
891	273	2. *Mutezad* 8.
897	281	3. *Muchtaphi* 8.
907	389	4. *Muchtedar* 24.
931	313	5. *Elhaker* 1.
932	314	6 *Ratze* 7.
939	321	7. *Muctade* 4
943	325	8. *Muſteraphe* 2.
947	325	9. *Macia*, and *Taia* 44.
989	361	10. *Kadar* 41.
1030	412	11. *Kaim* 5.
1035	417	12. *Muctadi* 60.
1095	477	13. *Muſtetaher* 22.
1117	499	14. *Muſteraſchad* 18.
1135	517	15. *Raſchied* 25.
1160	542	16. *Muſteneged* 9.
1169	551	17. *Muſtazi* 10.
1179	561	18. *Narzi* 39.
1225	597	19. *Taher*.
		20. *Muſtenatzar*.

1255 638 21. *Muſtatzem*, the laſt *Caliph* or *High-Prieſt* of the *Saracens* of *Bagdet*, or *Babylon*, living in the account of a Prince or Emperor; or looked on as the ſupream Lord of the *Saracen* Empire: ſtarved in his Caſtle of *Bagdet*, and his whole poſterity rooted out by *Allan*, or *Haulon* the *Tartar*, in the firſt year of his reign. Yet there is ſtill remaining a carkaſs of the old body, one whom they call *Caliph*, at whoſe hands the neighbor Princes uſe to receive their *Diadems* and *Regalities*: for ſo we find, that *Solyman* the *magnificent*, after his conqueſt of *Chaldæa, Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*, to have been by one of theſe poor titulary *Caliphs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*, *Anno* 1513.

This unwieldy body of the *Saracen* Empire having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: loſing to the Kings of *Oviedo*, and *Navarre*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoeſes, Sardinia*, and *Corſica*: to the *Normans, Naples* and *Sicily*: and finally moſt of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haallon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, ſtarved *Muſtatzem* the *Babylonian Caliph*, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his poſterity: and *Sarracon* the firſt *Turkiſh* King of *Ægypt*, brained the laſt *Ægyptian Caliph* with his horſe-mans Mace; leaving not one of his iſſue or kindred ſurviving. The office of the *Caliphs* (as to matters which concern their religion, and the ſupream determination of the doubts and controverſies which occur therein) is now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Mufti*, or chief Prieſt of the *Turkiſh Mahometans*.

As *Mars* ſhewed himſelf a friend unto thoſe *Saracens*, in their wars and triumphs; ſo alſo did *Phœbus* pour down no leſs cœleſtial influence, on ſuch as addicted themſelves to Scholarſhip. *Bagdet* in *Chaldaa*, *Cairoan, Feſs, Morocco*, in *Barbary*, and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their *Univerſities*: out of which came the Philoſophers, *Avicen*, and *Averroes*; the Phyſicians, *Rhaſis*, and *Meſue*: the Geographers, *Leo*, and *Abilfada*; and almoſt all the *Textuaries* and profound Writers (as *Hali, Algazel, Albumazar, &c.*) in *Aſtrology*; from whom a great part of our *Aſtronomical*, and *Aſtrological* terms are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdome, Iſland, or Province, which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdome of *Feſs* and *Morocco* only: *Arabia* it ſelf, the very firſt ſeat of their power, acknowledging a ſubjection to the *Turkiſh* Empire. For firſt *Petræa* and *Deſerta*, being ſubdued by the *Turks*, when they conquered *Perſia*, or otherwiſe following the fortunes of the preſent *Victor*, were afterwards accounted of as ſubject unto the *Mamulucks* of *Ægypt*, who out of that Country, and all *Syria*, had by degrees diſſeized the *Selzuccian* Family. And as the vaſſals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more moleſted *Selimus* in his march towards *Ægypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their night Alarms; than all the forces of the *Mamalucks*, in the field againſt him. But *Ægypt* being ſubdued, and the *Mamalucks* utterly deſtroyed, ſome of their *Chiefs* being gained by mony, and the reſt by promiſe of preferment; the whole Nation of theſe wild *Arabs* ſwore *alliegeance* to him: continuing in account as Subjects, unto his Succeſſors, but in effect doing what they liſt; governed as formerly by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clannes*, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk* than they do of

The Babyloniſh Caliphs.

the *Chriſtians.* And as for *Falix,* it continued alſo in a *free condition,* in reſpect of any forreign power; till of late times the *Turkes,* and *Portugals,* entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538 *Solyman Baſſa,* Admiral of the *Turkiſh* Fleet againſt the *Portugals,* who had diverted the trade of the *Red Sea,* and otherwiſe given offence to *Solyman* the *Magnificent,* by aiding the *Perſians,* went with a ſtrong army to take *Diu,* a Town and Iſland of the *Eaſt India,* then in their poſſeſſion. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden,* one of the beſt traded Ports of *Arabia Falix*; invited the King thereof aboard, moſt treacherouſly hanged him, and ſurprized the City. The like he alſo did to the King of *Zibit,* the Port Town to *Mecca,* and by that meanes got poſſeſſion of all the Coaſts of this Country, bordering on the *Red Sea,* or Gulf of *Arabia*; of which the *Turks* ſtill continue Maſters. But in the Inland parts, and towards the *Perſian* Gulf, of no power at all; not ſuffered to travel up and down without a *Paſs* from ſome of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be ſet upon by the *Natives,* who brook them not. Some parts hereof which ly next unto the Iſle of *Ormus* made one Kingdome with it; but the Kings, originally, of this Country, by whom the City of *Ormus* was firſt builded; and ſo continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals,* anno 1622, who ſince the taking of that Iſle by the King of *Perſia,* hold *Muskahat,* and ſome other Pieces upon this Continent. The reſidue of the Countrey *cantonned* amongſt a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.

Thus much for *ARABIA.*

* * *

9. CHALDEA.

* * *

6 CHALDÆA.

7 ASSYRIA.

8 MESOPOTAMIA.

THeſe Provinces, which properly and originally conſtituted the *Aſſyrian* Empire, I have joyned together in the Title, becauſe united in the Story and affairs thereof; though ſeverally to be conſidered in the Deſcription, and *Chorography* of them.

CHALDÆA is bounded, on the Eaſt with *Suſina*, a Province of *Perſia*; on the Weſt, with *Arabia Deſerta*; on the North, with *Meſopotamia*; and on the South, with the *Perſian* Bay, and the reſt of *Deſerta*. Originally called *Chaſdim*, from *Cheſed* the fourth ſon of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*. *Cheſed quoq; quartus eſt, à quo Chaſdim, id eſt, Chaldæi, poſtea vocati ſunt*, as St. *Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* ſhould derive their name from *Cheſed*, being a People long before *Cheſeds* birth, I am not able to determine: unleſs he taught them the firſt Principles of the Art of *Aſtronomy*; or was the Author of ſome ſignal benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the chief City of it; and at this day, by *Bellonius*, *Azamia*; by the *Arabians*, *Xeldan*, by the *Turks*, *Curdiſtan*.

But the name of *Chaldea* ſometimes went beyond theſe bounds, taking in ſome part alſo of *Meſopotamia*, as appeareth by that paſſage of St. *Stephen*, ſaying, *Acts* 7. *v.* 2, 3, 4. That *the God of glory appeared to our father Abraham, when he was in Meſopotamia, before he dwelt in Charran; and ſaid unto him, Get thee out of this Countrey, and from thy Kindred, and come into the Land which I ſhall ſhew thee. Then came he out of the Land of the Chaldees, and dwelt in Charran, &c.* Where clearly that part of *Meſopotamia* which lay next unto *Aſſyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the name of *Chaldea*, or the Land of the *Chaldees*. Which I deſire the Reader to take notice of, becauſe I muſt make uſe of this obſervation in another place.

The Countrey by *Herodotus* ſaid to be ſo fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily *two hundred*, and in ſome places *three hundred-fold*; the blades of wheat and barley being (as he affirmeth) four fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is ſaid of the *Babylonians*, that they mowed their corn twice, and ſeeded it a third time, or elſe it would be nothing but blades: and yet ſo, that the worſt of their Land yielded fifty, and their beſt an hundred-fold encreaſe. Nor is the nature of the ſoil ſo altered in long tract of time, but that (as late Travellers have obſerved) it would in all likelihood attain to its firſt fertility, if it were ordered with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be ſaid as to the natural fruitfulneſs and delights of this Countrey, then that it pleaſed Almighty God to make choice of ſome part hereof for the *terreſtrial Paradiſe*, or *Garden of Eden*, in which he placed our father *Adam*, at his firſt Creation. For here that *Paradiſe*, by men both skilled in Divinity, and Geography, is affirmed to have ſtood. Yet amongſt all ſorts of Writers we finde different opinions. Some make *Paradiſe* to be a place of pleaſure, and the four Rivers to be the four Cardinal Vertues; but theſe Allegories on the Scripture are not warrantable. Others place it in the air, under the circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, riſe up again in thoſe places where they are now found: but this is ſo vain a foppery, that I will not honor it with a confutation. Such as make *Paradiſe* local, are divided alſo into three ranks (for I omit the reſt) whereof ſome place is under the Æquator; but this agreeth not with the bounds preſcribed by the Holy Ghoſt. Some conceive the four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Nilus*, and *Ganges*; and that *Paradiſe* was the whole world; but this cannot be: for then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradiſe*, it muſt alſo follow that he was driven out of the world, which were abſurd. Thoſe of the ſoundeſt judgements place it here, in an Iſland which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and ſome branches running from them both: the uppermoſt of which is called *Piſon* (falſly rendred *Ganges*) which watereth the land of *Havilah*, or that part of the land of *Havilah*, which is called *Chuſeſtan*, or *Suſiana*, a Province of *Perſia*; and the lowermoſt is named *Gihon* (improperly by ſome tranſlated *Nilus*) whch compaſſeth the Eaſt parts of *Arabia Petræa*, by the *Septuagint* for the reaſons above mentioned, rendred *Ethiopia*. And this agreeth both with the poſition of this Countrey, and the courſe of thoſe Rivers. For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the *Hebrew* text calleth *Hiddekel*, and *Perah*) do here joyn their ſtreams, is confeſſed on all ſides. Then as for *Piſon*, it is no other then that River by *Ptolcmy* called *Baſilius*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more nearly *Piſo Tigris*, or *Paſi Tigris*, *pervenit ad fluvium, Paſitigrin incolæ vocant*, as his own words are. A little ſtream which watering the Land of *Havilah*, or the Countrey of the *Chavelei*, or *Chaulaſei*, or *Chaulota* (for by theſe ſeveral names they are called amongſt the Antients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabatheans*, an *Arabian* people) poureth it ſelf into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it in the Gulf of *Perſia*. And finally for *Gihon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maarſares*, and by others *Marſyrus*, it is no other then a branch of *Euphrates*, which watering the Land of *Chus*, or *Ethiopia Aſiatica*, take which name you will, loſeth it ſelf at laſt in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Countrey was extreamly fruitful, yet in ſome places was it covered with a ſlimy matter, which the overflowing of the waters, and the nature of the ſoil together, did bring forth abundantly. Uſed by them in their buildings, inſtead of morter, then which more durable and binding; and therefore choſen for the cement of the Tower of *Babel*, Gen. 11. 3. Some alſo tell of a cliff, which opening ſendeth out ſuch a ſtink, that it killeth birds as they flie over it; and others of a like open place near a Town called *Ait*, which continually throweth out boiling pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moors*, filling therewith the adjoyning fields; and that herewith the people uſe to pitch their boats. But this in ſome places onely, the Countrey generally being both healthy and delightful, as before was ſaid.

The people anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-ſaying and Divinations; and no leſs noted for being Authors of the firſt Idolatry that was ever practiſed in the world. Induced unto the laſt perhaps by the power of their Kings, who would needs confer divine honors upon ſome of their Anceſtors; but to the firſt inclined by their own diſpoſition, and the ſituation of their Countrey, yielding a fair ſenſible Horizon (for the *Region* is alike in all places, both in hills and valleys) and conſequently profitable to the obſervation of the riſing and ſetting of the Stars, whether *Heliacal*, *Acronical*, *Matutine*, or *Veſpertine*, as the *Artiſts* phraſe it. Whereunto may be added the length of life in thoſe elder times, furniſhing them with the greater meaſure of experience, concerning the diſtinct motions of each ſeveral *Orb*, and the full period of the courſes of each ſeveral Planet. Certain it is, that they grew ſo noted in this Art, that at the laſt every *Aſtrologaſter*, or Figure-flinger, was called a *Chaldean*: *Gentis nomine ad eos homines tranſlato, qui ſeſe illius ſapientiæ ſpecie venditabant*, as *Beza* hath obſerved in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the people thus flouted by the *Satyriſt*.

> *Chaldeis ſed major erit fiducia, quicquid*
> *Dixerit Aſtrologus, credent à fonte relatum*
> *Ammonis.* &c.

That is to ſay,

> *Joves* Oracles no greater credit have,
> Then *Sooth-ſayings* of a *Chaldee* cozening knave.

The language which was ſpoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldæan* tongue; of great antiquity; and ſanctified by the *Holy Ghoſt*, ſome Chapters of the Prophecy of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* did not underſtand it, as appeareth by the words of the Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18. 26. deſiring *Rabſeketh* to ſpeak to them in the *Chaldee* tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his blaſphemies. A further proof may be, that a man may have ſome knowledge in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*; as many are, no doubt, at this preſent day. But whatſoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards, when the *Jews* came to live amongſt them, during the Captivity: out of whoſe long commerce with them, both Nations loſt their proper languages, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriack*. Of this we ſpake before when we were in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*. And this is now the natural language of this Countrey, and its neighbor *Aſſyria*, but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabick*: not vulgarly ſpoken elſewhere, for ought I can finde, but uſed by many others, in their ſacred offices, by whom not commonly underſtood. For in this language, all the Sects of the Eaſtern Chriſtians do officiate their publick *Liturgies*; that is to ſay, the *Neſtorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites* (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who uſe the *Greek Liturgy*, amongſt the Sectaries.) The like do alſo the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*, the *Cophties* or *Chriſtians* of *Egypt*, and the poor remainder of the Chriſtians in the Iſle of *Zocatara*, an Iſland on the coaſt of *Affrick*. Uſed to thoſe *Liturgies*, when the language was more underſtood amongſt them; though now worn out of *vulgar* knowledge by the overſpreading of the *Arabick*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkiſh* Conqueſts. In which the Prelates of theſe Churches have fallen into the great error of the Church of *Rome*: and without taking notice of the alterations, hapning in the *vulgar* tongues of thoſe ſeveral Nations, which are united under them into one opinion, keep up a language in their *Liturgies* which they underſtand not: as if the capacities of the people could be ſooner raiſed to the underſtanding of an unknown language, then the publick *Liturgies* be fitted unto their capacities. The ancient piety of the Church, and the modern languages of Gods people, are not inconſiſtent; though out of private ends ſome have taught us otherwiſe. But I fear this error (as ſome others) will not be ſo eaſily remedied, as reprehended. From the tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, paſs we to the Religion it ſelf, whoſe Sacred Offices are ſo celebrated.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt preached in this Countrey by St. *Peter*, of whoſe being in *Babylon*, (the chief City hereof) himſelf aſſureth us in the laſt words almoſt of his firſt Epiſtle: and other buſineſs he had none here but to preach the Goſpel. Much perſecuted by the *Perſians*, (who were then poſſeſſed of all theſe parts) it prevailed at laſt; *Chriſtianity* growing up the faſter for the cutting down. The *Patriarchal* See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, ſucceſſor unto *Babylon* in repute and greatneſſe, if not alſo in name: the Biſhop whereof, by order of the *Nicene* Councill, had the *Eccleſiaſticall* juriſdiction of theſe parts, with the name of *Catholick*; and the next place in *Seſſion*, at all publick aſſemblies of the Church, next after the *Patriarch* of *Hieruſalem*. And beſides this, the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*, acknowledge him for their *Primate* or *Metropolitan*; as they did afterwards, in his right, the Patriarch of *Muzal*. At this preſent here are ſome remainders of *Chriſtianity*, part of them *Jacobites*; but the moſt *Neſtorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have ſpoke already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our paſſage forward. So that without more delay we may take a view of the principle places. And in the firſt place we meet with *Babel*, (in the *Hebrew* ſignifying confuſion) famous for the confuſion of languages which here happened. For immediately after the Univerſal deluge, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, perſwaded the people to ſecure themſelves from the like after-claps, by building ſome ſtupendious Edifice, which might reſiſt the furie of a ſecond deluge. This Counſel was generally imbraced, *Heber* onely and his Family, (as tradition goeth) contradicting ſuch an unlawful attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majeſty, 5146 paces from the ground: having its *Baſis* and circumference equal to the height. The paſſage to go up went winding about the outſide; and was of an exceeding great breadth; there being not only room for horſes, carts, and the like means of carriage, to meet and turn; but lodging alſo for man and beaſt, and (as *Verſtegan* reporteth) graſs and corn-fields for their nouriſhment. But God beholding from on high this fond attempt, ſent amongſt them (who before were of one *language*) a coufuſion of tongues: which hindred the proceeding of this building, one being not able to underſtand what his fellow called for.

2. *Babylon* on the bank of *Euphrates*, the antient'ſt City in the World, on this ſide of the flood, firſt built by *Nimrod*, in the place deſtinated to the raiſing of the Tower *Babel*, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdome: afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*, one of his Succeſſors; and finally much increaſed both in bulk and beauty by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himſelf the whole glory of it, ſaying in his pride, *is not this the great* Babel *that* I *have builded? Dan.* 4. 30. A City of great fame and ſtate, accounted one of the worlds nine wonders, and deſervedly too.

The compaſſe of the walls 365 furlongs, (or 46 miles) according to the number of the dayes in the year; in height 50 Cubits, and of ſo great breath, that Carts and carriages might meet on the top of them; finiſhed in one year by the hands of 200000 workemen, employed daily in it. Scituate on both ſides of *Euphrates*, over which there was a ſumptuous bridge, and at each end of that bridge a magnificent Palace: beautified alſo with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Penſil Gardens*, made with great charge, and born up with moſt ſtately Arches. In a word, ſo great and vaſt it was, that *Ariſtotle* ſaith, that it ought rather to be called a country, then a City: adding withall, that when the Town was taken, it was three dayes before the furtheſt parts of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town muſt be underſtood of the ſurprize thereof by the *Medes* and *Perſians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a clerk as he was) in his marginal notes upon the *Politicks* of that Authour, hath moſt vainly told us. Which, whether it were that there were Gates at the end of every ſtreet, which made it to be ſo long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not wakened from their drunken feaſt, in the time whereof it was ſurprized; I determine not. Revolting in the time of *Semiramis*, the News came to her as ſhe was ordering her hair: whereupon leaving her head halfe-dreſt ſhe went and beſieged it, never ordering the reſt of her hair till ſhe had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophons Cyri paideia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euphrates* ran quite thorow the Town, round about whoſe banks the Politick Prince cut many and deep channels: into which when the *Babylonians* were ſecurely merry at a general feaſt, he ſuddenly drained and emptied the River, conveying his own forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Channel; and in a little time made himſelf maſter of it. From the *Perſians* it revolted in the Reign of *Darius Hyſtaſpes*: and that ſuſtenance might not be wanting to the men of war, they ſtrangled the moſt part of the women, being thought, in actions of this quality, not ſo much as neceſſary evils. When they had for twenty moneths ſo obſtinately defended the Town, that the *Perſians* had leſſe hope then ever of prevailing; *Zopyrus* one of *Darius* Captains, mangling his body and diſfiguring his face by cutting off his noſe and eares, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the tyranny of his King. They crediting his words and knowing his prowes, committed the charge of the whole Army unto him, as a man, to whom ſuch barbarous uſage had made the King irreconcileable. But he taking the beſt opportunity, delivered both the Town and Souldiers into the hands of his Soveraign. Which made *Darius* often ſay, that he had rather have one *Zopyrus*, then twenty *Babylons*. Here died *Alexander* the Great, after whoſe death the *Grecian* Captains regardfull rather of their own ambitions, then the common loyalty, divided the Empire among themſelves; leaving the body of the King 8 dayes unburied. A wonderful change of fortune, that he who living, thought the world too ſmall for his valour, being dead ſhould find no place big enough for his body. After this taking of it by the *Macedonians*, the glorie and Magnificence hereof began to decline, leſſened unto a fourth part in the time of *Qu. Curtius* the hiſtorian; *in ſolicitudinem redacta*, reduced to deſolation in the days of *Pliny*; & being turned into a *Park*, in which the Kings of *Perſia* did uſe to hunt, in the time of Saint *Hierome*. That wonderous change occaſioned partly by the injury of time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat Royall of their Empire more towards *Greece*: but principally by *Seleucus Nicanor*, who offended with the *Babylonians* built the City of *Seleucia*.

3. *Seleucia*, the Second City of note in all this Country, ſituate in a place more commodious and healthy, neer the meeting of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, and about 40 miles more North than *Babylon*; out of which he drew 500000 perſons for the peopling of it. Nor did this new City rob the old onely of its power and greatneſſe, but alſo of its very name; being called *Babylon* in ſome of the Antient Authors, Βαβύλων περσικὴ πόλις, Μετρόπολις, Σελευκία καλουμένη, as (for one) by *Stephanus*. In the primitive times of *Chriſtianity*, The Biſhop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldeans*; with a ſuperintendency over the *Chriſtians* of *India* alſo, as before was ſaid. But this *Supplanter* was in time brought to ruin alſo, And

4. *Bagdat*, a new City raiſed from the ruines of it: built neer the foundation of *Seleucia*, by *Bugiafer* the twentieth *Caliph* of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as ſome write) of eighteen millions of crowns; which becauſe of the many Gardens contained in it had the name of *Bagdad*, the word ſo ſignifying in the *Arabick* tongue. Firſt built upon the Weſtern bank of the River *Tigris*, neer to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095 removed to the other ſide of the River, by *Muſtetaher*, the 45 *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; becauſe leſs ſubject to the inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned ſtill for the ſame City, as if built by *Bugiafer*; by whom being made the ſeat of his Royall Reſidence (whoſe Succeſſors were from hence called the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*) it flouriſhed in great pride and ſplendor: till taken and ſacked by *Allan*, or *Haalan*, a *Tartarian* Captain, who here ſtarved *Muſteatxem*, the laſt *Caliph* of it, and rooted out his whole poſterity; as if the *Caliphate* and City were to end together. But the Town revived again, though the *Caliph* could not; continuing to this day a City of great wealth and traffick; but nothing comparable unto what it was for beauty and bigneſs; being not above ſeven miles in compaſs, and having nothing in the buildings to be juſtly bragged of. Taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with the reſt of the Countrey, it became ſubject to the *Turks*; from them recovered by *Abas* King of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1625 and again recovered by the *Turks*, about the year 1640. In which changes it can be no marvail that ſhe hath loſt much of her former ſplendor. Maintained eſpecially at the preſent by the trade of *Aleppo*; to which, beſides ſuch goods as go up the water, there paſs yeerly many *Caravans*, or troops of Merchants, each of them having in it ſome hundreds (if not thouſands) of *Camels* laden with commodities. For whoſe ſafe lodging, as they paſs (the wayes being generally ill provided for Travellers, in theſe Eaſtern Countrys;) there are ſome houſes of receipt built at the publick charge, or by ſome ſpeciall Benefactor, to preſerve his memory: moſt of them ſtrong, and many fair and lovely, which in the dominions of the *Perſians* they call *Caravan Ruwes*; in the *Turkiſh*, *canes*. And for communicating the ſucceſs of their buſineſſe unto the place from whence they came, they make uſe of **Pigeons**, which is done in this manner. When the *Hen-Pigeon* ſitteth, or hath any young, they take the *Cock*, and ſet him in an open Cage: whom, when they have travelled a dayes journey, they let go at liberty, and he ſtrait flieth home to his Mate. When they have trayned them thus from one place to another, and that there be occaſion to ſend any advertiſements, they tie a letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by ſome of the houſe, advertiſed thereby of the ſtate of the *Caravan*. The like is alſo uſed betwixt *Ormus* and *Balſora*. But of this enough.

5. *Cteſiphon*, on the River of *Tigris*, not far from *Seleucia*, by whoſe fall it roſe, occaſioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, ſpeaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the building of *Seleucia* ſo neer unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhauriendam*, Cteſiphontem *juxta tertium ab ea Lapidem condidere* Parthi. Firſt built, ſaith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*, afterwards beautified and walled by *Pacorus*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the ſeat-Royall of the *Perſian* Kingdome. Many times beſieged and aſſaulted by the *Roman* Emperors; but moſt commonly without ſucceſs; and amongſt others, by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, that bitter enemy of the Goſpell, who here breathed out his ſoul to Satan, in theſe dying words, *Viciſti tandem* Galilæe. But *Vardanes* (whoſoever he was) cannot of right be called the firſt founder of it; who raiſed it rather from the rubbiſh of an old foundation: this City being the ſame with that which *Moſes* called *Calne*; and *Ezekiel*, *Canneh*, *Gen* 11. and *Ezek*. 27.23. and therefore rightly ſaid by *Pliny*, to be built in *Chalanitide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6. *Sipparum*, remarkeable for the great trench made neer it, to receive the overflowings of *Euphrates*, which otherwiſe might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*: in compaſs 1280 furlongs or 160 miles; in depth 20 fathoms. A vaſt and expenceful work; but that nothing was to be admired, when *Babylon* it ſelf was up and in full proſperity.

7. *Apamia*, a City of *Seleucus* foundation alſo, ſcituate at the fall of *Piſon* into the River *Tigris*.

8. *Vologeſia*, Placed by *Ptolomy* amongſt the Cities of *Chaldea*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Aſſyria*; built or repaired by one of the *Vologoſes*, Kings of *Perſia*, and from him denominated.

9. *Borſipha*, by *Ptolomy* called *Barſita*, memorable for the great victory, which *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, obtained here againſt *Nabonidus* the King of *Babylon*, by *Scaliger* ealled Darius *Medus*, (of which more anon): whom having vanquiſhed, he pardoned him (as he ſaith) his life, and gave him the government of *Carmania*.

10. *Balſora*, the Port Town to *Babylon*, ſcituate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Perſicus*, and conſequently of great wealth and trading: The riches of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and ſome part of *India*, being landed here, and ſo carried to *BABYLON*, and thence up the water to *Aleppo*. Suppoſed to be the City of *Teredon*, mentioned by *Potolomy*; built or repaired by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long ſince taken from the *Turk* by *Abas*, the *Perſian*.

7. ASSYRIA.

ASSYRIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Media*, from which parted by the mountain called *Coathras*; on the Weſt, with *Meſopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tigris*; on the South with *Suſiana*; and on the North, with ſome part of *Turcomania*, and part of *Chaldæa*. So called from *Aſſur* the ſon of *Sem*; by whom firſt inhabited. But having long ſince loſt that name, as to vulgar ſpeech, it is by *Niger* called *Adrinſa*; by *Mercator*, *Sarh*; by the *Turks*, *Arzerum*.

The Countrey very plain, and level, exceeding fruitfull, and abounding in Rivers. For beſides *Tigris*, which waſheth one whole ſide thereof, *Ptolomy* aſſigneth to this Countrey the River of 2. *Lycus*, 3. *Cuprus*, and 4. *Gorgos*; all of good note, and all of them increaſing, with their tributary Streams, the greatneſs of *Tigris*.

The people were antiently great warriers, and together with the *Babylonians* and *Chaldæans*, commanded a great part of the Eaſt; extending their dominion from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*; inſomuch that not the people of this Province onely, but of all the Provinces almoſt of this ſpacious Empire, had the name of *Aſſyrians*. The men for all this, exceeding formal in their habit, wearing long robes which trailed on the very ground, their hair long, their hats or *Caps Pyramidal* like the *Perſian Miters*; not ſtirring out of doors but perfumed with Muſk, rings on their fingers, and a Scepter in their hands; and very frequent in their waſhings, eſpecially after copulation. As for their women, it was an antient cuſtome with them, to expoſe the faireſt unto ſale in the open Market: and with the money given for thoſe, to put off ſuch as were deformed and not ſo amiable: And hence perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this leſſon, of giving leſs portions with ſuch daughters as will ſell themſelves; but greaſing the fat ſow (as the ſaying is) with the addition of ſome hundreds: which made the merry fellow ſay, *That the money were a good match, if the wench were away.*

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt here planted by Saint *Jude*, and took ſuch deep root in that plantation, that it could never be pulled up; notwithſtanding the cruel perſecutions raiſed againſt it by the Kings of *Perſia*: who when they ſaw there was no means to deſtroy it by violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with hereſie. And to that end, as alſo to revenge himſelf upon the Emperor *Heraclius*, a great Champion of the *Orthodox* Belief againſt *Neſtorianiſm*, *Choſroes* the great King of *Perſia* inforced all the *Chriſtians* of his Empire unto thoſe opinions, which he knew that Emperour condemned; permitting none who were counted *Catholicks* within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to inſtruct them otherwiſe (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Perſian* Empire,) *Neſtorianiſm* prevailed ſo far, that it extended over all the Countreys Eaſt of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; and Northwards too amongſt the *Tartars*; of which more hereafter. Governed by their own *Patriarch*, who reſideth at *Moſul*, now the chief City of this Countrey; and honoured by his people with the Title of *Jacelich*, miſtaken or pronounced amiſs for *Catholique*: an attribute given antiently to all *Orthodox* Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Neſtorians*, were, 1. That there were two perſons in our Saviour, as well as two natures; but yet confeſſing that CHRIST from the firſt inſtant of his conception, was both God and man. 2ly. That the *bleſſed Virgin* ought not to be called Θεοτόκος, or the *Mother of God*; but yet acknowledging her to be the *Mother of God the Son*. 3ly. That *Neſtorius*, condemned for theſe opinions in the third and fourth *General Councils*, was an holy man; for whoſe ſake they condemn Saint *Cyrill*, his profeſs'd *Antagoniſt*, and all thoſe Councils wherein any cenſure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough, (their rejecting *Epiſcopal Confirmation* excepted only.) As 1. in celebrating the Sacrament of the Lords Supper with leavened bread; 2ly. communicating in both kinds; 3ly. enjoyning no neceſſity of *auricular* Confeſſion; 4ly. contracting marriages in the ſecond degree of Conſanguinity; 5ly. permitting ſecond and third marriages unto men in *Orders*, after the death of their firſt wives; 6ly. not praying before the *Croſs*, nor giving religious worſhip to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for theſe *Neſtorians*, if ſo named aright, conſidering the qualifications added unto their opinions; now (but corruptly) called *Noſtranes*: the greateſt Sect of *Chriſtians* in all the Eaſt.

The ſolemnities which theſe Chriſtians uſe in contracting marriage, becauſe not very uſual, I will here relate. Their Wives they never ſee till the day of their marriage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her parents for her. Agreed upon the buſineſs, they meet in the Chancel of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the *Bridegroom* and his friends ſtanding on the one ſide; the *Bride* and her kinred, on the other. When there, the *Caſſiſſe* or Church-man biddeth the *Bridegroom* to put his hand thorow the hole in the partition, and take his *Bride* by the hand, which he doth accordingly: the mother of the *Bride*, with a ſharp-pointed inſtrument, made of purpoſe, pricking the *Bridegrooms* hand all over, with ſufficient eagerneſs. If when he feeleth the ſmart, he lets go her hand, they take it for a ſign that he will not love her; but if he hold her faſt, and wring her hand till ſhe cry again, they take it for a very good *Omen*, and are glad they have ſo well beſtowed her. After the marriage is conſummate, if a male-child be born unto them, the father loſeth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldeſt ſon: ſo as if the fathers name be *Moſes*, and his ſons name *Joſeph*; the father is no more called *Moſes*, but *Abba-Joſeph*, or the father of *Joſeph*. So highly do they reverence marriage, and the fruit thereof, poſterity.

It was antiently divided into theſe ſix parts, 1. *Arraphachitis*, bordering on *Armenia Major*; ſo called for *Arphaxaditis*, or the plantation of *Arphaxad*, the ſon of *Sem*. 2. *Adiabene*, bordering on *Meſopotamia*, ſo called, *quaſi* Ἀδιάβατος, or inacceſſible, becauſe fenced with ſuch unfoordable

Rivers, *Tigris*, and *Euphrates*, that there was no eaſie coming to it; διὰ δυσχερεϛίαν τ̃ διάβασιν, as it is in *Sudas*: or rather for *Adiavenena*, from *Dianas*, and *Adianas*, the chief Rivers of it (the ſame which *Ptolomy* called *Lycus*, and *Caprus*) as in *Media*. 3. *Calacine*, and 4. *Sitacene* from *Sittace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 5. *Arbelites*, and 6. *Apolloniates*, from *Apollonia* and *Arbela*, two other of the principal Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Aſſyria* brought unto our hand, 1. *Calach*, one of thoſe four which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Aſſur*; *Gen*. 10. 11. and one of them to which the *Ten Tribes* were tranſplanted by *Salmanaſſar*, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. & 18. 11. of ſuch eſteem in thoſe elder days, that *Calacine* as *Ptolomy*, or *Calachene* as *Strabo* more rightly calleth it, did take name from hence, 2. *Sittace*, ſcituate about two miles from the banks of *Tigris*; in the way from *Babylon* to *Suſa*. A City, when it gave name to the parts adjoyning, both great and populous; well ſeated, in a fruitfull ſoyl, and well ſhaded with trees of ſeveral ſorts; ſuppoſed by the ſcituation of it to be that *Accad*, (or rather built in or near the place of it) which was one of the firſt four Cities of *Nimrods* Kingdom. 3. *Athela*, on the banks of the River *Caprus*, built as ſome ſay by *Belus* (or *Belochus*) *Priſcus*, an *Aſſyrian* King, whence it had the name. Near unto which there is a place which *Strabo* calleth Κυπαρισσῶν, or *Cupreſſetum*, conceived by ſome to be the place where *Noah* framed the *Ark*. 4. *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* conqueſt, as appeareth by the name, which is wholly *Greek*: not otherwiſe obſervable, but for giving the name of *Apolloniates* to the Countrey adjacent. Adde unto theſe, 5. *Geguamela*, ſcituate in the middle ſpace betwixt *Lycus*, and *Caprus*, memorable for the laſt and greateſt Battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* the King of *Perſia*; who had he made good the Eaſtern banks of the River *Tigris*, might eaſily have hindred the *Macedonians* from coming over: the River being ſo extreamly ſwift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to paſs it, but by linking their hands and arms together, and making one entire body to oppoſe the current; and therewithal of ſo great depth, that the Footmen were fain to hold their Bows and Arrows over their heads, to keep them from being moiſtned and made unſerviceable. But having miſerably loſt this opportunity by the cowardiſe of *Mazeus*, who had the keeping of this Paſs; he was inforced to venture all upon a battel: drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 horſe, and 200000 foot in their accompt who ſpeak leaſt of it (for *Arrianus* makes it above a Million.) Oppoſed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 foot, and 7000 horſe of his *Europaans*; but thoſe victoriouſly ſucceſsfull: 46000 of the *Perſians* ſlain, (but *Diodorus Siculus* ſpeaks of 90000) with the loſs of 300 *Macedonians* onely, as is ſaid by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable victory, a Mountain near the place of the battel was by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Strabo*, and ſome other antients. 6. *Reboboth*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is ſaid to have built in *Aſſur*; by ſome ſuppoſed to be *Birrha*, an antient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering ſo near unto *Meſopotamia*, that by *Ptolomy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7. *Rheſen*, another of the Cities of *Nimrods* building, ſeated by *Moſes* between *Calach* and *Ninive*, *Gen*. cap. 10. v. 12. and there commended for *a great City*. Which *Character*, with the ſight thereof, have induced ſome learned men to think it to be the ſame, which is by *Xenophon* called *Lariſſa*; ſeated by him on the River *Tigris*, much about this place, and ſaid to be a City of ſuch ſtrength and greatneſs, that it was no leſs than two *Paraſangs* or four miles in compaſs: the walls in height an hundred foot, twenty five in breadth; ſo ſtrongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who beſieged it, could have never taken it, if a caſual Eclipſe of the Sun had not diſcouraged the defendants. But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Lariſſa* for another of the principal Cities. 8. *Ninive*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines* called *Ninus*; firſt built by *Nimrod*, and called *Ninive* with relation unto *Ninus*, his Son or Nephew, after the example of *Cain* whoſe ſteps he followed; of whom it is ſaid that he *built a City, and called it after the name of his Son*, Enorh, *Gen*. 4. 17. I know the building of this City is by ſome aſcribed to *Aſſur*, grounding themſelves on that of *Moſes*, *Gen*. 10. 11. *Out of that land went forth* Aſſur, *and built* Ninive, *&c*. But I like better of their judgement, who take *Aſſur* in this place for the name of the Countrey; and not of the man; making the Text to ſpeak of *Nimrod*, and to ſay of him, *Et egreſſus eſt in* Aſſur, *&c*. that is to ſay, *And he went forth so* Aſſur *or the land of* Aſſyria, and *there built* Ninive, Rehoboth, *and the reſt* there named. A City ſo enlarged by ſome of the ſucceeding Kings, that it came at laſt to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compaſs 480 furlongs, or 60 miles; and therefore ſaid in the Book of *Jonah*, to be a City of three days journey, in circuit, as indeed it was: accompting 20 miles for a days journey, according to the common eſtimate of thoſe elder times; as alſo of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, in the times ſucceeding. Nor was it of leſs ſtrength than greatneſs, the walls an hundred foot high, and ſo broad that three Carts might go abreſt on the top thereof: and in thoſe walls 1500 Turrets, each of 200 foot in height. So ſtrong, that it was thought to have been impregnable; eſpecially becauſe of an ancient *Prophecy*, which ſignified that the Town ſhould never be taken, till the River became an enemy to it. A Prophecy which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the ſeat of his war againſt *Belochus*, and *Arbaces*, then in arms againſt him: who having beſieged it three years without hope of ſucceſs, at laſt the River over-flowing, carried before it twenty furlongs of the Wall. Which accident ſo terrified the effeminate King; that he burnt himſelf in the midſt of his enemies, and left the Town to the Beſiegers. Threatned deſtruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jonah*, it eſcaped then upon repentance. But the people going on in their wicked courſes, it was deſtroyed by *Aſtyages* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an encouragement to the *Aſſyrians* to rebel againſt him, as formerly againſt ſome of his Predeceſſors: and ſo deſtroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril* of *Alexandria*, as himſelf affirmeth in his Comment on the Prophet *Nahum*, ὡς μηδὲ ὅποι ποτὲ γέγονεν ὁρᾶσθαι λοιπόν, that one could ſcarce diſcern in what place it ſtood. 9. *Moſul*, at this time, and for long ſince, the chief of *Aſſyria*; ſeated on the *Tigris*, and raiſed out of the ruines of *Ninive*: of moſt note for being the ordinary abiding place of the *Neſtorian* Patriarch, who either in the City it ſelf, or the Monaſtery of Saint

Hermes near adjoyning to it, hath his conſtant Reſidence. The *Neſtorians* in this City ſo conſiderable, both in power and number, that though it be in the hands of *Mahometans*, either *Turks* or *Perſians*, yet there are numbred in it fifteen *Chriſtian Churches*, and at leaſt 40000 ſouls. A *Sect* ſo maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Biſhop*) for the greatneſs of the juriſdiction which this Patriarch hath, that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, ſet up an *Anti-Patriarch* againſt him, to whom he gave the title of the *Catholique* of *Muſal* alſo; to whom the *Neſtorians* dwelling in the Northern parts of *Meſopotamia*, (if ſome writers of the *Papal* party may be believed) do ſubmit themſelves. 10. *Arzeri*, of greater ſtrength then *Muſal*, though of leſs antiquity and repute; from which the whole Province of *Aſſyria* is now called *Arzerum*. And 11. *Scheheruzal*, at this time of the greateſt note, as being the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*; who hath 10000 *Timraiots* under his command, to defend this Countrey, and be ready for any ſervice, as occaſion is.

MESOPOTAMIA.

MESOPOTAMIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Tigris*, by which parted from *Aſſyria*; on the Weſt, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagena*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Major*; and on the South, with *Chaldæa*, and *Arabia Deſerta*, from which laſt it parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* alſo.

In the Scripture it is called moſt commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria Culta*, but that name properly belonging to the North-parts of it, *Aram* or *Syria*, becauſe inhabited originally by the *Aramites*, whom the *Greeks* call *Syri*; and *Padan*, or *Culta*, from the fruitfulneſs and riches of it, exceeding plentifully ſtored both with corn and wine, and furniſhed with all neceſſaries for the life of man; in that regard by *Strabo* called *Meſopotamia Felix*. The Southern parts hereof being barren and full of Deſarts, not having any herbage in them, οὐδὲ ἄλλο δένδρον, nor any kind of Tree, as we read in *Xenophon*; amongſt ſome of the antient Writers, had the name of *Arabia*, partly becauſe ſo alike in nature to *Arabia Deſerta*, and partly becauſe planted with *Arabian Colonies*. The name which comprehends both parts is ſometimes *Syria Tranſ-fluvialis*, or *Syria* beyond the River (*Euphrates*) of which ſee 2 *Sam.* 10. 16. But generally in the *Hebrew* it is called *Aram-Naharaim*, which the *Greeks* render properly by *Meſopotamia*, or the Countrey in the middle of Rivers: environed by *Tigris* on the Eaſt, and *Euphrates* on the Weſt and South; the River *Caboras*, or *Abaras*, paſſing alſo thorow it. The *Latines* generally call it by the ſame name which the *Greeks* had given it; *Priſcian* only to ſhew his faculty in *Grammar*, calling it *Medamna*; by the *Turks* it is now called *Diarbeck*.

As is the Countrey, ſuch the People, the moſt *Adjective* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to ſtand by themſelves, but ſtill requiring the addition of ſome neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. Nothing that they can call their own, their Name, their Language, nor their Countrey. Beholding for their Name in the North, to *Syria*; in the South, to *Arabia*: the *Chaldæans* alſo putting in for a ſhare, and challenging thoſe parts which lie next *Aſſyria*, to belong to them. Their *Language* antiently the *Syriack*, at this day the *Arabick*. Their Countrey ſucceſſively ſubjected to the *Babylonians*, *Aſſyrians*, *Medes* and *Perſians*. From them firſt conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Pompey*; reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperor *Trajan*; more fully ſetled and confirmed by *Aurelianus*. But being recovered by the *Perſians*, they fell together into the power of the *Saracens*, and are now commanded by the *Turks*. Never appearing of themſelves on the *Stage* of action, but when once God ſhewed his mighty power in their many weakneſſes; and raiſed them up to be a ſcourge to the houſe of *Iſrael*, of which ſee *Judges* chap. 3. v. 8. Hired afterwards by *Adadezer* King of *Syria Zobah*, in his war againſt *David*; by whom moſt ſhamefully defeated, 2 *Sam.* 10. 16. 18. Yet notwithſtanding memorable in the Book of God, for the birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*; the long abode of *Jacob*, and the birth of his children, in that reſpect affording an *Original* to the *Hebrew* Nation.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached here by Saint *Thaddæus*, one of the 70 Diſciples; Anno 43. upon this occaſion. *Agbarus* the *Toparch*, or Prince of *Edeſſa*, one of the chief Cities of this Countrey, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the fame of JESUS; beſeeched him, by a ſpecial meſſage, to come and help him: whereunto our Saviour made this anſwer, *That he could not viſit him in perſon, the things he was to do, whileſt upon the earth, being to be performed onely in the land of* Canaan; *but that he would take care of his health in convenient time.* Accordingly, not long after his *Aſcenſion*, Saint *Thomas* the Apoſtle, by immediate revelation from our Saviour, ſent *Thaddæus* thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Goſpel preached, and many of the Nation converted to it: the Acts whereof, together with the Copies of the ſeveral Letters from *Agbarus* to CHRIST, and from CHRIST to him, preſerved in the *Archives* of *Edeſſa*; were by *Euſebius* tranſlated out of the *Syriack*, and inſerted into the body of his *Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory*, lib. 1. cap. 14. Once planted, it found good increaſe, continuing in the purity of it till about the year 530. at what time one *Jacobus Syrus* (ſo called from his birth and abode in *Syria*) took on him the defence of the Errors of *Eutyches*, touching the unity of natures in CHRIST our Saviour. Whoſe followers finding the Patriarch of *Antioch* too vigilant over them, removed for the moſt part further off; ſetling themſelves in *Babylonia*, and *Meſopotamia*, where they continued in great numbers: governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the *Jacobites* in Syria are alſo ſubject, who takes unto himſelf the title of Patriarch of *Antioch*, and is ſucceſſively called *Ignatius*, as if the undoubted Succeſſor of that Saint and Martyr; ſuperior in that regard, to the Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*, who is alſo a *Jacobite*. The Patriarchal See fixt it in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, near the City of *Merdin*; but the Reſidence of the Patriarchs for the moſt part, at *Caramit*: the number of *Chri-*

ſtians under his obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced ſince unto 50000. That which they hold as *Jacobites*, diſtinct from all other *Chriſtians*, is 1. The acknowledgement but of one nature, one will, and one operation (as there is but one perſon) in Chriſt our Saviour. 2. In ſigning their children before Baptiſm, in the face or arm, with the ſign of the Croſs, imprinted with a burning iron. 3. Retaining Circumciſion, and uſing it in both Sexes. 4. Affirming the Angels to conſiſt of two ſubſtances, Fire and Light; and 5. Honouring the memory of *Dioſcurias* (of *Alexandria*) and *Jacobus Syrus*, condemned by the antient Councils. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*;

1. Not enjoyning the people the neceſſity of Confeſſion to a Prieſt, before they admit them to communicate.

2. Not admitting Purgatory, nor Prayers for the dead.

3. Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt* in both kinds.

4. Allowing the marriage of Prieſts; And

5. Teaching that the ſouls of men deceaſed are not admitted preſently to the *Viſion* of *God*, but remain ſomewhere in the earth, to expect Chriſts coming. In which laſt, (ſetting aſide the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; ſo to the firſt (touching the unity of natures in our Saviour Chriſt) they have of late added ſuch qualifications, as poſſibly may make it capable of an *Orthodox* ſenſe.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey (beſides *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, of which more hereafter,) 1. *Chaboras*, which riſing in Mount *Maſius*, paſſing directly South, falleth into *Euphrates*; as alſo doth, 2. *Syngarus*, by *Pliny* called *Maſca*, ariſing out of the Mountain *Syngarus*; which is but the more Weſtern part of the ſaid Mount *Maſius*. Which names of *Maſca*, *Maſius*, and *Màſieni*, (being the name of a people dwelling thereabouts) ſhew plainly that they go upon very good grounds, who place *Maſch*, or *Meſech*, one of the ſons of *Aram*, in theſe parts of the Countrey.

It was divided antiently into, 1. *Anthemaſia*, 2. *Chalcitis*, 3. *Caulanitis*, 4. *Accabene*, 5. *Ancorabitis*, and 6. *Ingine*: each part containing ſeveral Cities or Towns of name. Theſe ſix when conquered by the *Romans* reduced unto two Provinces onely, viz. 1. *Meſopotamia*, lying on the South of Mount *Maſius*, or the head of *Chaboras*; and 2. *Oſrhoene* on the North: this laſt ſo named from one *Oſrhoes*, the Prince or Governor of theſe parts in the time of the *Perſians*, as *Procopius* telleth us.

Chief places of the whole, 1. *Edeſſa*, the Metropolis of *Oſrhoene*, ſcituate on the River *Scirtas*, which runneth thorow the middeſt of it, not far from the fall thereof into *Euphrates*. Memorable for the Story of *Agbarus* before related, amongſt Church-Hiſtorians: and in the *Roman* Hiſtories, for the death of the Emperor *Caracalla*, ſlain here by the appointment of *Macrinus*, Captain of his guard. The occaſion this. The Emperour conſcious to himſelf of his own unworthineſs, employed one *Maternianus* to enquire amongſt the Magicians in the Empire, who was moſt likely to ſucceed him: by whom accordingly advertiſed that *Macrinus* was to be the man. The letters being brought unto *Caracalla*, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the reſt of the Packets, to the hands of *Macrinus*, (who by his Office was to be attendant on the Emperours perſon) that he might open them, and ſignifie unto him the contents thereof at his better leiſure. Finding by this the danger in which he ſtood, he reſolved to ſtrike the firſt blow; and to that end entruſted *Martialis*, one of his Centurions, with the execution; by whom the Emperor was here killed, as he withdrew himſelf, *Levandæ veſicæ gratia*, as my Author hath it. So impoſſible a thing it is to avoid ones deſtiny; ſo vain a thing for any Price to think of deſtroying his Succeſſor: and therefore very well ſaid to *Nero* in the times of his Tyranny, *Omnes licet occideris, Succeſſorum tuum occidere non potes*, that though he cauſed all the men of eminence to be forthwith murdered, yet his Succeſſor would ſurvive him, and eſcape the blow. But to return unto *Edeſſa*; in following times it was made one of the four *Tetrarchies* of the Weſtern Chriſtians, when they firſt conquered *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*; the two firſt Governors or *Tetrarches*, ſucceſſively ſucceding *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the Kingdom of *Hieruſalem*. But in the year 1142. it was again recovered by *Sanguin* the *Turk*, father of *Noradin*, Sultan of *Damaſcus*; and by the loſs thereof, no fewer than three Arch-Biſhopricks withdrawn from the obedience of the See of *Antioch*.

2. *Cologenbar*, another ſtrong piece adjoyning, beſieged on the taking of Ed*eſſa*, by the ſame *Sanguin*, who was here ſtabbed in a drunken quarrel by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort ſaved for that time.

3. *Niſibis*, ſcituate ſomewhat near to the Eaſt of Mount *Maſius*, called alſo Ant*iochia Mygonia*; from the River *Mygdonius*, which runneth thorow it; and afterwards *Conſtantia*, from *Conſtantius* the ſon of *Conſtantine*. A City of great note in thoſe elder times, a *Roman* Colony, and the Metropolis of the Province of *Meſopotamia*, properly and ſpecially ſo called: which being beſieged by Sa*poris* the King of *Perſia*, (*Conſtantius* ruling in the Eaſt) and in no ſmall danger to be loſt, was gallantly defended by *James* the then Biſhop of it, whom *Theodoret* calls not onely *Epiſcopum Civitatis, ſed Principem & Ducem*, not the Biſhop onely of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, *libr.* 2. *cap.* 31. So little inconſiſtency was there found in thoſe early days, betwixt the Epiſcopal function and civil buſineſſes; that the Biſhops were not interdicted from the acts of War, when the neceſſities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after moſt unworthily delivered to the ſaid Sa*pores*, by the Emperor *Jovinian*; which drew along with it, in ſhort time, the loſs of the Province.

4. *Ur*, ſeated on the Eaſt of *Niſibis*, betwixt it and *Tigris*; and ſo placed by A*mmianus*, who had travelled this Countrey. Conceived to be the birth-place of A*braham*, and called *Ur of the Chaldees*, *Gen.* 11. 28. either becauſe the *Chaldees* were in thoſe days poſſeſſed of the place; or becauſe the name of *Chaldæa* did comprehend alſo thoſe parts of this Countrey which lay towards *Tigris*, as was ſhewn

before. For that the place from which *Terah* the Father of *Abraham* did return to *Haran* in *Meſopotamia*, was rather ſcituate in this coaſt where *Ur* is placed by *Ammianus*, then betwixt the Lakes of *Chaldea* and the *Perſian* Gulf, where moſt Writers place it, may appear probable for the reaſons which are here ſubjoyned, 1. Becauſe it is ſaid by *Joſhua*, chap. 24. ver. 12. That *Terah* the *Father of Abraham*, and the Father of *Nachor*, dwelt *on the other ſide of the Flood*; that is to ſay, on the further ſide of the River *Euphrates*, and that too ἀπ᾽ἀρχῆς, as the *Septuagint*, *ab initio*, as the *Vulgar Latine*; in the firſt beginning. Which cannot be underſtood of any *Ur*, placed on or near the Lakes of *Caldea*, thoſe being on this ſide the Northern parts of *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*: and it were ſtrange that *Terah* ſhould be planted ſo far from the reſt of his kindred. 3. Becauſe from *Ur* in *Meſopotamia*, near the banks of *Tigris*, the way to *Canaan* (to which *Terah* did intend to go) was directly by *Haran*: whereas if he had dwelt (as ſome ſay he did) by the Lakes of *Chaldea*, his way had been directly Weſt thorow *Arabia Deſerta*, and not to have travelled, with his family, ſo far North as *Haran*; and then to have fallen back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, croſſing *Euphrates* twice with his herds and cattel. 5. *Haran*, the place to which *Terah* did remove when he went from *Ur*, and from which *Abraham* did remove when he went towards *Canaan*; ſo named in memory of *Haran* the ſon of *Terah*: but called afterwards by the name of *Carræ*, and by that name well known to the *Roman* Writers for the death of *Craſſus*, that wealthy *Roman*. Whoſe eſtate (beſides the tenth which he offered to *Hercules*, and three moneths corn diſtributed amongſt the poor) amounting to 7100 Talents, which comes in our money to one Million, 331250l. but all his wealth could not preſerve him from the ſlaughter; ſlain near this City, with the routing of his Army alſo, by *Herodes* King of *Parthia*: of which briefly *Lucan*,

> ———*miſerando funere Craſſus*
> *Aſſyrias Latio maculavit ſanguine Carras.*

Which may be *Engliſhed* to this purpoſe,
By a defeat lamented *Craſſus* ſtains
With *Roman* blood the *Aſſyrian Carras* Plains.

Called the *Aſſyrian Carræ* by Poetical licence, becauſe the *Aſſyrians* formerly had been Lords thereof. And no leſs memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous Temple of the *Moon*, worſhipped here (but in no place elſe) under both *Sexes*: ſome honoring it as a female Deity, then called *Dea Luna*; and others in the ſhape and dreſs of a man, and called *Deus Lunus*. But with this fortune and ſucceſs, as ſaith *Spartianus*, *qui Lunam fœmineo nomine putabat nuncupandam, is mulieribus ſemper inſerviat*: that they who worſhipped it in the form of a *Woman*, ſhould be always ſubject to their wives (I trow there were but few of that Religion) *qui verò Marem deum crederet, is uxori dominetur*; but he that worſhipped it as a man, ſhould preſerve the maſtery. 6. *Amida*, near the River *Tigris*, the Metropolis of *Meſopotamia*, when one Province onely, and before it fell into the hands of the *Romans*, much beautified by *Conſtantius* the ſon of *Conſtantine*, by whom named *Conſtantias*. But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great ſtrength, as a frontier Town againſt the *Perſians*, and by them much aimed at. Honored of late times with the Reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Chriſtians*, as the chief City of this Province; for this cauſe alſo made the dwelling of the *Pſeudo-Patriarch* of the *Neſtorians* (or *Noſtranes*) of the Popes erection; and the chief ſeat alſo of the *Baſſa*, or other Officer, governing this Countrey for the *Turks*; by whom called *Caramit*, or *Kara Amida*, that is to ſay, *Amida the black*, becauſe it was walled with black ſtone. 7. *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the meeting of *Chaboras* with *Euphrates* not far from *Carræ*; mentioned by *Stephanus* and *Arrianus*, and by *Ptolemy* miſtakingly called *Pharga*: the ſeat or firſt plantation of *Phaleg*, one of *Abrahams* Anceſtors: *Serug*, another of them giving name to 8. *Sarug*, about a days journey off from *Haran*, ſpoken of by ſome later Writers. 9. *Singara*, on the River ſo named, a fortified City in the time of *Ammianus*, by whom mentioned, *lib.* 20. 10. *Cezabde*, mentioned by the ſame Author, by whom ſaid to have been a very ſtrong Fort, ſeated on a pretty high hill, and bending towards the banks of *Tygris*, before whoſe times it had anciently been called *Phœnicha*. 11. *Virta*, ſuppoſed to have been the work of *Alexander* the Great, circled with Walls, environed with Half-Moons and Bulwarks, and made unacceſſible: in vain beſieged by *Sapores* the *Perſian* King, after the taking of *Bezabde*. The ſame perhaps with the *Birtha* of *Ptolomy*. 12. *Merdin*, not far from which, in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, is the Patriarchal See of the *Jacobite* Sectaries.

The firſt Inhabitants of theſe Countrey, though united from the firſt beginning under the ſame Princes, and form of Government, came from ſeveral families: all the three ſons of *Noah* concurring as it were in this Plantation. From *Nimrod*, *Havilah*, and others of the poſterity of *Chus*, the ſon of *Ham*, came the *Babylonians*: with whom *Cheſed* the ſon of *Nachor*, of the houſe of *Sem*, intermingling families; or being the Author of their language, or of ſome other ſignal benefit; gave to them the name of *Chaldim*, whence came that of *Chaldeans*. From *Aſſur*, *Arphaxad*, and thoſe of *Arphaxads* poſterity, intermingled with the ſons of *Maſh*, the ſon of *Aram*, came the *Meſopotamians* and *Aſſyrians*. And that *Japhet* alſo and his children may put in for a part, the neighbourhood of the *Medes* and *Albaneſe*, deſcended from him, makes it ſomewhat probable.

But whatſoever Parents they deſcended from, *Nimrod* the ſon of *Chus* made ſo bold with them, as to bring them under his command: planting in *Chaldea*, the Cities of *Babylon* and *Calne*; in *Aſſyria*, *Ninive*, *Rheſem*, and *Calach*; and finally *Rehoboth* (if that were *Birtha* as ſome think it was)

The *Aſſyrian* Monarchs.

was) in *Meſopotamia*. By theſe ſtrong Forts he curbed the native, and aſſured his power; being the firſt that altered the Paternal form of Government, and drew unto himſelf the Government of ſeveral Nations, not having any dependance upon oneanother. The foundation thus laid by him, his Succeſſors ſoon raiſed the building to a wondrous height; advancing the *Aſſyrian* Emplre, from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*: and that too in a ſhorter time than could be imagined, but that the World was then divided into *petit* States, not cemented together with the ligaments of power and policy: for though there be little found of *Belus* the ſon of *Nimrod*, but that he ſpent moſt of his time in draining the mariſhes, and making firm ground of thoſe vaſt ſens which lay near to *Babylon*, which were works of peace: yet by thoſe and the like works of peace, he ſo ſetled his affais at home, that he gave his ſon *Ninus* the better opportunity to look abroad: who mightily improved his Empire, and was the greateſt and moſt powerful of all that line; extending his dominions, from the River *Indus*, to the *Mediterranean*; and from the *Caſpian* Sea, to the Southern *Ocean*. His Succeſſors we ſhall finde in the following Catalogue of

The *Aſſyrian* Monarchs.

A. M.	
1798	1. *Nimrod*, called bi ſome *Saturnus Babylonius*, the ſon of *Chus*, and Nephew of *Cham*, was the firſt who altered the Paternal Government, and uſurped dominion over others; making *Babylon* his Imperial City. 47.
1845	2. *Belus*, or *Jupiter Babylonicus*, the ſon of *Nimrod*, whoſe Image was worſhipped by the old Idolaters, under the names of *Bel*, and Baal. 62.
1907	3. *Ninus*, the ſon of *Belus*, conquered *Armenia*, *Syria*, *Media*, *Bactria*, and the *Perſian* Provinces; and removed the Imperial Seat to *Ninive*, by him much beautified and enlarged. 52.
1959	4. *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus* ſubdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indianss* alſo, ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain by their King *Staurobates*. Of this great Lady it is ſaid, that ſhe was born in *Aſcalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and expoſ'd to the fury of wild beaſts. But being born not to die ſo ingloriouſly, ſhe was brought up by ſhepherds, and at full age preſented to the *Syrian* Vice-Roy, who gave her in mariage to his onely ſon. Going with him to the wars, ſhe fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her perſon and ſpirit, took her to his bed. This bred in him a greater affection towards her, ſo that he granted her, at her requeſt, the command of the Empire for five days; making a Decree, that her will in all things ſhould be punctually performed: which boon being gotten, ſhe put on the Royal Robes, and (as ſome Writers do report) commanded the King to be ſlain. Having thus gotten the Empire, ſhe exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army conſiſting of one hundred thouſand Chariots of war, three millions of foot, and half a million of horſe. A woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her inſatiable luſts: in which, if the *Greek* Writers ſay true (as we have no reaſon to believe it of ſo gallant a woman) ſhe was very guilty.
2001	5. *Ninus* II. the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.
2039	6. *Arias* 30.
2069	7. *Arabius* 40.
2109	8. *Belus* II. 30.
2139	9. *Armamatrites*.
2177	10. *Belocus Priſcus* 35.
2212	11. *Belocus Jun. Balaus* 52.
2264	12. *Altades* 32.
2296	13. *Mamitus* 30.
2326	14. *Mancaleus* 30.
2356	15. *Sperus* 20.
2376	16. *Mancaleus* II. 30.
2406	17. *Sparetus* 40.
2446	18. *Aſcatades* 40.
2486	19. *Amintes* 45.
2511	20. *Belochus Jun.* 45.
2556	21. *Bellopares* 30.
2586	22. *Lamprids* 22.
2618	23. *Saſares* 20.
2638	24. *Lampares* 20.
2668	25. *Panmas* 45.
2713	26. *Scramas* 19.
2732	27.
2759	28. *Tatanes* 32.
2791	29. *Tautes* 40.
2831	30. *Tineus* 30.
2861	31. *Dercillus* 40.
2901	32. *Eupales* 38.
2939	33. *Loaſtines* 45.
2984	34. *Pyrithiades* 30.
3014	35. *Ophrateus* 20.
3034	36. *Ophraganeus* 50.
3084	37. *Aſcraſapes* 24.
3126	38. *Sardanapalus*, by *Euſebius* called *Tonoſcolos*, the laſt King of this Race.

Of which, being 38 iu all, there is ſcarce any thing remaining but the very names: regiſtred in this order by *Beroſus*, or rather by Frier *Annius* a Monk of *Viturbum* in *Tuſcany*, who hath thruſt upon the world the fancies of his own brain, under the name of that antient Hiſtorian. The chief Kings of note after *Semiramis*, were,

1. *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her ſon; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants ſubdued the *Arrians*, *Bactrians*, and *Caſpians*; but was otherwiſe a man of effeminate and unkingly carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the elder *Bacchus*, ſo much celebrated amongſt the *Grecians*.

2. *Belus* the ſecond, who recovered that Countrey which afterwards was called *Judaa*, to the *Aſſyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predeceſſor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the ſword of *Abraham*) and ſubdued many other nations.

The new Kings of Aſſyria *and* Chaldea.

3. *Bolochus Priſcus*, the tenth King, who by ſome Writers is ſaid to be the Authour of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auſpicium*. For of Sooth-ſayers there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Auſpicium*, *quaſi Aviſpicium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the right hand, or on the left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *avi ſiniſtrâ*, good luck, becauſe in giving, the right hand is oppoſite to the receivers left) or from the number of the Birds, whence *Romulus* had promiſed to him the Empire, before his Brother, becauſe he had ſeen the double number of Vultures: or laſtly, from the nature of them, whence the ſame *Romulus*, ſeeing the Vultures, was (ſaith *Florus*) *ſpei plenus urbem bellatricem fore*, *ita illi ſanguini*, *& præda aſſueta aves pollicebantur.*

2. *Aruſpicium*, *ab Aras inſpiciendo*, in which the *Sooth-ſayers* obſerved whether the Beaſt to be ſacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the entrails were of a natural colour, exulcerate, &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Hiſtories afford varieties of Examples in this kinde; I need give no particular inſtance. A kinde of *Divination* ſaid to be practiſed firſt by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians*; inſtructed in the knowledge thereof by one called *Tages*, who appearing to certain Plough-men out of a Furrow, taught them this myſtery, and ſo vaniſhed.

3. *Tripudium*, ſo called *quaſi Terripudium*, and *Terripavium*, from the trembling or ſhaking of the Earth; was a conjecture of future ſucceſſes, by the rebounding of crums caſt unto Chickins. We have an inſtance of this in the life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being ſeditiouſly buſie in promoting the Law *Agraria*, was fore-warned by the keeper of his Chickins to deſiſt from that enterpriſe; becauſe when he had thrown the crums to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickins onely, and the ſame without eating went back again; which was taken for a ſign of ill luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been of good. But *Tiberius* ſlighting the advertiſement, and purſuing his deſign, was the ſame day ſlain.

4 *Augurium*, ſo called *ab avium garritu*, was a prediction from the chirping or chattering of birds; as alſo from the ſounds and voices heard they knew not whence; nor on what occaſion. In which later kinde the death of *Cæſar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his houſe; and the poyſoning of *Germanicus* by the ſounding of a Trumpet of its own accord: In the former, an Owl ſcreeching in the Senate-houſe, was deemed ominous to *Auguſtus*; and a company of Crows following *Sejanus* to his houſe, with great noiſe and clamour, was judged to be fatal to that great Favourite: and ſo it proved

5. *Manitus*, the thirteenth King; who revived again the antient Diſcipline, corrupted by the ſloathfulneſſe and effeminacy of his Predeceſſors; and by the terrour of his name awed the *Egyptians*.

6. *Aſcatades*, the eighteenth King, more abſolute in *Syria*, and the Weſtern parts, than any of the Kings before him.

7. *Sardanapalus*, the laſt King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern ſo great an Empire; gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conſpire againſt him. By whom, aſſociated with *Belochus* Governour of *Babylon*, he was beſieged in his City of *Ninive*: and there reduced unto ſuch extremities, that gathering his treaſures all together, he burnt himſelf and them in one funeral Pile; *eo ſolum facto virum imitatus*, at is ſaid by *Juſtine*. The treaſure which he is ſaid to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of Gold, and a thouſand Millions of Talents of Silver: which in our *Engliſh* money comes to twenty thouſand and five hundred Millions of pounds. A maſs of money, which as it muſt be long in gathering, ſo probably it had not ſeen the Sun in many years, and therefore grown ruſty, might require a fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his life with that, in which he placed his *Summum Bonum*: It may be in ſpight unto his enemies; and it is poſſible it might be in policy, that ſo great a treaſure not falling to the poſſeſſion of his foes, might ſo much the more diſable them from making reſiſtance againſt, or detaining the Empire from his next rightfull Succeſſors. For it is of all things moſt fooliſh, both to loſe our Treaſure, and with it to inrich our adverſaries. On which conſideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian Fleet* at *Gades*, and the *Genoeſe* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their lading might not come into the poſſeſſion of their enemies, the *Engliſh* and *Mahometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media*, and *Perſia*, with the confining Provinces; *Belochus* ſtrengthned himſelf in *Aſſyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Aſſyria*.

The new Kings of *Aſſyria* and *Chaldea*.

A.M.	
3146.	1. *Phul Belochus*, the beginner of this new *Monarchy*, or Race of Monarchs.
3194.	2. *Phul Aſſur*, deſtroyed *Galilee*, and ſubdued the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*; the ſame who is called *Tiglah Philaſſar* in the holy Scriptures.
3217.	3. *Salmanaſſar*, who deſtroyed *Samaria*, and ruined the Kingdom of *Iſrael*, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonaſſar* of the *Chronologers*.
3227.	4. *Sennacherib*, whoſe blaſphemous hoſt was vanquiſhed by Angels from heaven, and he himſelf murdered by his two ſons, *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*. 7.
3233.	5. *Aſſerhaddon*, who revenging his Fathers death on his brothers, was depoſed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and his Seat-Royal transferred from *Nineve* to *Babylon*. 10.
3243.	6. *Merodach Baladan*, Governor of *Babylon*, ſucceeded his Maſter in the Throne, conceived by ſome, to be the *Mardocempades* of *Ptolomy*; by others, to be alſo the ſame King, who by his Captain *Holofernes* did ſo plague *Judea*.
3283.	7. *Ben Merodach*, the ſon of *Merodach Baladan*. 21.

The new Kings of Aſſyria *and* Chaldea.

3304. 8. *Nabopullaſſar*, who vanquiſhed *Pharaoh Necho. King of Egypt*. 25.

3339. 6. *Nebuchodonozar* the Great, by ſome called the *Hercules* of the *Eaſt*, who conquered *Egypt* in the life of his father; with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*. He joyned alſo with *Aſtyages* King of the *Medes*, in ſubverting the proud City of *Ninive*; and in the eighteenth year of his reign deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*, and carried the People captive unto *Babylon*. But in the laſt ſeven years of his reign he was ſo diſtracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beaſts of the field; according to the Word of God ſpoken by *Daniel*, *Chap*. 4. during which time his ſon *Evilmerodach*, his daughter *Nicocris*, with *Nigliſſat* her husband, and *Laboraſoradath* their ſon, governed his Empires as *Protectors*; and therefore are by ſome reckoned as Kings. Finally, *Nebuchadnezzar* having recovered his ſenſes, was again reſtored unto the Throne; and died, when he had reigned in all 44 years.

3383. 10. *Evilmerodach*, the ſon of *Nebuchadnezzar*, ſlain by *Aſtyages*, King of the *Medes*. 26.

3409. 11. *Balthaſſar*, ſon of *Evilmerodach* (the *Nabodinus* of *Beroſus*) a Prince of a diſſolute and cruel nature, was in the later end of his reign aſſailed by *Cyaxares* the ſon of *Aſtyages* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) and by *Cyrus* the *Perſian*: by whom he was ſlain in the ſeventeenth year of his reign, and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes* and *Perſians*. A.M. 3426.

That this was the end of *Balthaſſar*, is the common opinion. But *Joſephus Scaliger*, in his learned and induſtrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be ſlain in a tumult by his own people: who elected into the Empire a Nobleman of the *Medes*, called in prophane ſtories, *Nabonidus*; in divine, *Darius Medus*; who after a 17 years reign was ſlain by *Cyrus* King of the *Perſians*. But by the leave of ſo worthy a man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord, by his Prophet *Jeremy*, had pronounced (*Chap*. 27.) *That all nations ſhould ſerve Nebuchadnezzar, and his ſon, and his ſons ſon*; whereas *Nabonidus* was a Prince of ſtrange blood, and ſo the Nations were not to ſerve him; and in *Balthaſſar*, the ſons ſon of *Nebuchadnezzar*, was this word accompliſhed. But let us examine his arguments, and withal the ſcoffs, which very prodigally he beſtoweth on ſuch as maintain the contrary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of *Chronologers*; *boni & diligentes viri*, good ſimple meaning men; *& addunt alia nihil veriora*, are his firſt complements. *Ut igitur, quod Chronologorum eſt, omnes reſipiſcant, &c.* therefore that they may repent their ever being *Chronologers*, he bringeth in *Beroſus*, cited by *Joſephus*, in his firſt Book againſt *Appion*. But *Beroſus* there maketh *Nabonidus* (to whom he ſaith the Kingdom of *Balthaſſar* was by the people delivered) to be a *Babylonian*, and not as *Scaliger* would have him ſay, a Nobleman of the *Medes*; neither can the authority of *Beroſus* countervail that of *Daniel*, who in *Chap*.6. telleth *Balthaſſar*, that his Kingdom ſhould be *divided among the Medes and Perſians*. His ſecond argument is drawn from the nature of the word ἀναδέξατο, ϗ Δαρεῖος ὁ Μῆδος ἀναδέξατο τὴν ἀρχὴν, as it is in the ſame Chapter, *and Darius the Mede took the Empire*: by which word *took* is implied (ſaith he) not a forcible invaſion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we anſwer, that *Darius* indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him by *Cyrus*, and his army, conſiſting of *Medes* and *Perſians*, who according to the word of God had taken it from *Balthaſſar*, *Darius* being then abſent. *Quid ſi probavero* (ſaith he) *eum cognominatum fuiſſe Medum?* he hath yet one trick more then all theſe; and *Medus* muſt not be the *national* name, but the ſirname of *Darius*, which he proveth out of a fragment of *Megaſthenes*, cited by *Euſebius*, in his Work *De Præparatione Evangelica*, where he is called Μήδης, λυνάστιος ἔςαι Μήδης, &c. an argument of all others the moſt ſleight and trivial. For beſides that Μήδης may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and beſides that it thwarteth the places of *Jeremy* and *Daniel*, already quoted; it is diametrally oppoſite to another place of the ſame *Daniel*, in his ninth Chapter; where he is called *Darius*, *of the ſeed of the Medes*. Of this *Darius* more anon, when we come into *Media*. As for *Nabonidus*, queſtionleſs he was the ſame with *Balthaſſar*. For beſides that *Joſephus*, and *Beroſus*, attribute to either of them the reign of 17 years, the ſame *Joſephus* (who might beſt know the truth in this caſe) telleth us that *Balthaſſar* was by the *Babylonians* called *Naboandel*, a name not ſo great a ſtranger to *Nabonidus*, as *Scaligers Darius*, or *Herodotus* his *Labonitus*. But in this we muſt pardon *Scalig*. Scorn and contradiction was a part of his eſſence. For had he not been in ſome things ſingular, in all, peremptory, he had neither been a *Scaliger*, nor the ſon of *Julius*.

But leaving *Scalig* to the ſingularity of his own conceits we finde nothing done by the *Aſſyrians* or *Chaldeans* after this ſubjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of ſo great an Empire. Succeſſively inſlaved by the *Medes*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians*; then by the *Perſians* again, afterwards by the *Saracens*, next by the *Turks*, a third time by the *Perſians*, once again by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Family, unto whom now ſubject: never endeavouring to aſſert, in the way of war, or oppoſition, either their ancient reputation, or their native liberties; but ſuffering themſelves to be won, loſt, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrelſome Maſters, as if they had no title to their own Countrey, but were born to follow the fortunes of all pretenders. The reaſon of which is principally to be aſcribed to the form of Government uſed amongſt the *Perſians*, which was ſo *deſpotical* and abſolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the people conquered by them in the nature of ſlaves; not ſuffering any to grow great in the ſtate of inheritance, or to enjoy any place of power and profit under them in the conquered Provinces, but at the pleaſure of the Prince; as it is now uſed amongſt the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the great men having no alliances amongſt themſelves, and as few dependants amongſt the people, were never able to take head againſt the Conquerors; but in the fall of the preſent Prince fell together with him: it being a good rule of *Machiavel*, that where the antient Nobility is in good regard, linked in alliances with themſelves, and well reſpected by the common and inferiour people; there it is difficult for the Invader,though a Conqueror,to win a Country,and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other ſide, where Nobility is quite worn out,and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of ſlaves,there both the conqueſt will be eaſie and ſoon aſſur'd. For to what purpoſe ſhould the Subjects reſiſt the Conqueror,or ſtand any longer to their King,then he ſtands to himſelf,when they are ſure the Conqueror can lay upon them no heavier burdens,then they were accuſtomed to before, & have withal a flattering hope,that their new Maſters may be gentler to them,then their former were? It fares with them no otherwiſe then with *Eſops Aſs*,which refuſed to make the opportunity of an eſcape from the hands of the enemy,by whom he was taken,becauſe he knew it was not poſſible they ſhould lay more load upon his back, then his old Maſter made him bear. To which condition the *Chaldeans* and *Aſſyrians* being brought by the *Perſians*,and never accuſtomed to the taſte of a better fortune,have followed the ſame ſucceſſes as the *Perſians* did,falling together with them from one hand to another; the particular accompt of whoſe eſtate we ſhall finde in *Perſia*,taking this onely for the *cloſe*, that when *Solyman* the *Magnificent* had diſcomfited *Tamas* King of *Perſia*,and taken the great City of *Bagdat*; *Caramit*, *Meridin*, and the reſt,both in *Aſſyria*, *Chaldea*, and *Meſopotamia*, ſubmitted to him without any reſiſtance, and received his Garriſons. And for a confirmation of his eſtate, he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Babylon*(who by an old *Prerogative* had the nomination, or Confirmation at the leaſt,of the Kings of *Aſſyria* and the *Sultans* of *Egypt*)the Royal Ornaments and Enſigns, *Anno* 1534 incorporating by that meanes thoſe Regions into his eſtates,and making them provinces of his Empire; in which he left a *Beglerbeg* at *Bagdad* to command in chief; and divers *Sanziacks* in their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces. And though the *Perſian* Kings have ſince taken,and are ſtill poſſeſſed of ſome places of importance in them, yet I account them,in regard of the ſaid inveſtiture, and the long poſſeſſion following on it,for Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire: as I do *Medina* of the *Perſian*, though *Taurus* and ſome other pieces of it be poſſeſſed by the *Turks*.

OF

OF
MOUNT TAVRUS.

MOVNT TAVRVS is a conſtant and continual ridge of hills, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian* Seas; running thorow the whole length of *Aſia* from *Weſt* to *Eaſt*, and dividing it, as the *Æquator* doth the Globe, into North and South. It was called *Taurus*, from the word *Tur* or *Taur*, which in the *Syriack* and *Chaldean* ſignifieth a Mountain; the common name of all high mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reaſon of its greatneſſe and continued length: yet ſo, that it had other names alſo in ſome parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it paſſed, and on which it bordered. The courſe whereof is thus ſet down by Sir *Walter Rawleigh*: premiſing onely, that it beginneth in the Province of *Lyſia*, a Region of *Aſia Minor*. neer the *Mediterranean*. ‘Theſe Mountains (ſaith he) which ſunder *Cilicia* from the reſt of *Aſia* the leſſe, on the North thereof, are called *Taurus*; and where they part it from *Comagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called *Amanus*. On the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Euphrates* (which forceth it ſelf a way thorow it) it ſometimes reſumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in *Ptolomies* three firſt Tables of *Aſia*, and ſometimes taketh the name of *Niphates*, as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain appellation, ſo long as they bound *Armenia* from *Meſopotamia*. After the River *Tigris* hath alſo cut them aſunder, they continue the name of *Niphates* altogether, untill they ſeparate *Aſſyria* and *Media*; but then they call themſelves *Coatras*: although between the upper and lower *Media*, they appear not alwayes, but are ſeen diſcontinued, and broke in pieces; ſuch ſarts of it as are found in the middle of that Country being called *Orontes*; thoſe which lie more towards the Eaſt being named *Coronus*; out of the Southern parts whereof iſſueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the ancient *Perſia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eaſt-ward by the name of *Coronus*, they give unto the *Parthians* and *Hyrcanians*, their proper Countrys; and afterwards change themſelves into the *Mountaines* of *Seriphi*, out of which riſeth the River *Maugris*. And now beginning to draw towards the ends of their courſe, they firſt make themſelves the South border of *Bactria*, and are then known by the name of *Paropamiſus*: and after take unto themſelves the name of *Caucaſus*, where the famous Rivers, *Indus*, *Hidaſpis*, and *Zaradrus*, have their firſt beginnings. In this point do they hold their heads exceeding high, to hinder the Mountains of *Imaus*, whom they encounter within the 35. 36, & 37. Degrees of *Latitude*. and the 140 Degree of *Longitude*: known by no other name then this, till finally they terminate their courſe in the *Indian* Seas. So far and to this purpoſe, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the ancient writers could trace the courſe of this Mountain no further then the meeting of it with *Imaus*; yet latter obſervations follow it to the wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucaſus* being now known by the names of *Delangeur*, and *Naugrocot*. But this is to be underſtood onely of the main body of theſe Mountains, which hold on in an even courſe from Weſt to Eaſt; not of thoſe ſpurs and Branches of it which ſhoot either to the North, or South: ſuch as are the *Anti-Taurus* in ſome parts of the *leſſer Aſia*; the *Gordian* Hills, and the *Montes Moſchici*, with thoſe which *Pliny* called *Pariedri*, others *Pariardri*, in *Armenia Major*; and that of *Caboras*, which ſheweth it ſelfe on the North-Eaſt of *Aſſyria*, with divers others.

In ſuch a continual courſe of Mountains it muſt needs be that many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not eaſily ſubdued, nor ſo ſoon reduced unto civility, as ſuch who were poſſeſſed of places leſſe defenſible, and fitter for commerce and traffick with the reſt of mankind. And they continued in theſe late times, the laſt which were brought under by the *Turks* and *Perſians*, the mightieſt Monarchs of thoſe parts; though bordering on, or totally invironed with their dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance: one towards the Weſt, where it cloſeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria Comagena* from *Armenia Major*; the other towards the Eaſt, ſeparating *Media* from *Hyrcania*. For want of other names to deſcribe them by, we will call the firſt, the Kingdome of *Aladeules*, and the laſt the Kingdome of *Bahaman*; according to the names of the two laſt Kings.

1. The Kingdom of *ALADEVLES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it ſelf as far towards the Eaſt, as to the banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Meſopotamia* from *Armenia major*. Inhabited by a people naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing, then their want of al things; who as men dwelling in a rough and barren Country could little profit themſelves by *husbandry*, and therefore gave themſelves to *grazing*, breeding on their paſtures ſome ſtore of horſe and camels, which they ſold to others, but eſpecially maintaining themſelves and their families by hunting and ſtealing. Suppoſed to come originally from the *Cappadocians* & *Armenians* of the leſſer *Aſia*, which by long and continual wars, in the former Ages, were forced to forſake their dwellings, and for ſafety of their lives to fly to thoſe unpeopled and deſolate Mountains

tains. Where ſearching every hill and dale, and following the opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly the mildeſt *Temperature* of the Air, and moſt chearful aſpect of the Sun: they built in many places poor Villages, and afterwards ſome better Towns. The principal of which is named *Maras*, ſo called, as it is conceived, from the River *Marſias*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Cœlene*, paſſeth by the ſame, and not far off falleth into the River *Euphrates*.

When it was made a Kingdom firſt, it is hard to ſay, the Kings hereof being mean and inconſiderable in the eye of the world, not worth the conquering, and wanting power to conquer others, and enlarge their Territories: nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himſelf with reigning over Rocks and Mountains. The laſt was *Aladeules*, ſo much ſpoken of in the *Turkiſh* Hiſtories, and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by ſome Writers to have been the Author of ſuch a *Paradiſe* as we ſhall finde deſcribed when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Perſia*; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him moſt really and truely known in the ſtories of the former times, was the ſtout oppoſition which he made againſt the *Turks*, in their wars with *Perſia*: he had before given no ſmall check to the proceedings of *Bajazet* the ſecond, in his conqueſt of the *Caramanian* Kingdom; and no leſs troubled *Selimus* the ſon of *Bajazet*, in his *Perſian* Wars, impeaching what he could the greatneſs of the *Ottoman* Family. Fought with by *Selimus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of courage, till betrayed by *Alis-Beg*, General of his horſe; and ſeeing his Army terrified by the ſhot of the *Turks*, he was fain to flie. But being at laſt taken, and put to death by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdom was converted to a *Turkiſh* Province, Anno 1515. and ſo continueth to this day.

2. The Kingdom of BAHAMAN was ſcituate more towards the Eaſt, amongſt the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hyrcania*, as before was ſaid. The Mountains in thoſe parts ſo high, that Travellers, at the end of two days journey, may diſcern the *middle Region* of the Air to be beneath them, exceeding troubleſome to aſcend, about fifty miles in height, when once got to the top; but more dangerous by reaſon of the Rocks and Precipices, in the going down: full of inhoſpitable ſtreights, and ſo cold and barren, that were not *Sovereignty* a temptation above all reſiſtance, no man would take upon him the command of ſo poor a Kingdom. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it ſparkle in the night, like the Hill *Veſuvius* in *Italy*: by means whereof here are many *Hot Baths*, three of them walled about, two open; to which reſort unſound and decrepid people, in very great multitudes. The chief Town of it, *Larry-Joon*, in the ordinary road or paſs betwixt *Omoal* the laſt Town of *Hyrcania*, and *Damoan* the firſt of *Media*. But the Kings ſeat was in a valley called *Reyna*, where he had a Caſtle ſo built upon the beſt advantages of art and nature, that it ſeemed invincible: adorned above with gardens, flowers, and moſt pleaſant fruits; and furniſhed beneath with a Rivulet of pureſt water, which pleaſantly paſſing thorow the Caſtle, fell into the *Vallos*; A Caſtle of ſo large a circuit, that beſides the Kings Family or Court, it was able to admit a Gariſon of 10000. men.

The laſt King hereof was the aforeſaid *Bahaman*, derived from a long deſcent of Royal Anceſtors, comparing for antiquity with the *Perſian Sophies*: who though ill-neighboured on both ſides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the King of *Perſia* on the other; yet had they with great fortune, policy and valour, maintained their *Royalties* againſt all pretenders. But *Abas*, the late *Perſian* Sophy, having either conquered or reduced *Hyrcania*, picked a quarrel with *Bahaman*: pretending that by the opportunity of his ſcituation he might rob his *Caravans*, hinder his progreſs towards the *Hyrcanian*-Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which riſing from Mount *Taurus*, watered and enriched his *Perſian* Territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected, yet it was cauſe enough of quarrel that he might ſo do: and therefore is beſieged in his Caſtle of *Ryna*, with an Army of 30000 men. Finding no poſſibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Perſians* proceeds by Treachery: invites the old King into his Camp under colour of parley, and by his means drew his two ſons out of the Caſtle to the parley alſo. Whom having got into his power, he firſt cauſed their heads to be cut off; and after making uſe of their ſeals and ſignets, obtains a ſurrender of the place; and with it the poſſeſſion of this mountainous Kingdom, Anno 1601. or thereabouts; united ever ſince to the Crown of *Perſia*.

* * *

OF
TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Media*, and the *Caſpian* Sea; on the Weſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North with *Tartary*, and on the South with *Meſopotamia* and *Aſſyria*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*; who from hence made their firſt expedition for the conqueſt of *Perſia*, and after ſpread themſelves over all thoſe parts of *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk*, now in their poſſeſſion. A Countrey which conſiſteth of four ſeveral Provinces, each Province having to its ſelf its particular ſtory; and therefore we muſt look upon it as it is now divided into thoſe four parts, that is to ſay, 1. *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly and ſpecially ſo called; 2. *Colchis*, now called *Mengrelia*; 3. *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; 4. *Albania*, which they now term *Zuiria*.

1. *ARMENIA MAJOR*.

ARMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Media*, and ſome part of the *Caſpian* ſea; on the Weſt with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the leſſer *Aſia*; on the North with *Colchis*, or *Mengrelia*; and on the South with *Meſopotamia*, and ſome part of *Aſſyria*.

It was called *Armenia*, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Aram-Mini*, or the *Minni* of *Syria*: but as others ſay, *quaſi Har-mini*, that is to ſay, *Mons Mini*, or *Montana Miniadis*: the *Mini* or *Minni*, being a region of this tract, mentioned by *Jeremiah* the Prophet, chap. 5. ver. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Ararat* and *Askenaz*, which ſhew the ſcituation of it to be hereabouts. *Major* was added to it for diſtinction ſake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the firſt ſeat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themſelves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Countrey in the moſt part overſpread with hills, branches of thoſe huge mountains of *Taurus*, and *Anti-taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful vallies, liberally furniſhed with Cattel, and good ſtore of fruits, though much ſubject to deep ſnows, which do much annoy it. The riches of it not to be better eſtimated than by the frankneſs of *Tigranes*, once King hereof. Who being fined by *Pompey* at 6000 talents, not onely very readily laid down that ſum; but added of his own accord to every *Roman* Souldier 50 *Drachmas* of Silver, 1000 *Drachmas* to each Captain, and to every Colonel a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added ſome part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdom of *Syria*, unto his eſtate, yet thoſe being new Acqueſts, and not fully ſetled, were not much likely for the preſent to enrich his offers: new conquered Provinces being for the moſt part more chargeable than beneficial to the *Victor*.

The people are generally great bodied, of comely perſonage, and patient of all kind of labour; good archers, when put to it, but careleſs of honour got by war; merry, deſirous to be at eaſe, and apt to be ſoothed. The women tall, but homely, of a manly look, moſt of them skilful at their bow, or ſome other weapon. Their families for the moſt part great, the father and all his poſterity to the third and fourth generation, living under a roof; after whoſe death, the eldeſt, whether ſon or brother, hath the chiefeſt rule. In diet and clothing all alike; and in moſt places they are ſaid to be very induſtrious; painful in tillage, and well ſeen in manufactures, eſpecially rich tapeſtries, grograins, and watered chamlets: with which they traffick into moſt Cities of the *Turks*, and other *Mahometans*, priviledged, as they ſay, by a *Charter* under *Mahomets* own hand, above other Chriſtians, and upon that occaſion more diſperſed in the Eaſtern Countreys than any Nation in the world, the *Jews* excepted.

They have a language of their own, which they call the *Armenian*, not onely uſed amongſt them in common talk, but in ſacred offices: the Scriptures being tranſlated into that language alſo, and that as the people do affirm, by the hand of Saint *Chryſoſtome*, at ſuch time as (on the ſolicitation of the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, his moſt eager enemy) he was confined to the leſſer *Armenia*, by the Emperor *Arcadius*; to whom they alſo aſcribe the invention of the *Armenian* Characters, or letters, ſtill in uſe amongſt them.

They received the Chriſtian faith by the preaching of Saint *Bartholomew*, and were antiently of the juriſdiction of the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick* Dioceſs; which together with the *Aſian* Dioceſs, and that of *Thrace*, were by the *Council* of *Chalcedon* laid unto that *Patriarchate*. But falling into the opinions of *Eutyches*, [illegible]ching one nature onely in *CHRIST* our Saviour; they withdrew themſelves, long ſince, from th[illegible]mmunion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater deteſtation than all other Chriſtians, and choſe two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other opinions which they hold beſides thoſe of *Eutyches*, (which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* ſence

and

Armenia Major.

and thoſe wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1. Denying *Purgatory*, and prayers for the dead; 2. Admitting none to be made *Prieſts*, except thoſe that be married; 3. Denying the body of Chriſt to be really under the *ſpecies* of bread and wine; and 4. *Rebaptizing* ſuch as come to their *Communion* from the *Latine* Churches, are theſe that follow: in which they differ alſo from moſt Churches elſe; *viz.* in receiving *Infants* to the *Lords Table*, immediately after *Baptiſm*. 2. In abſtaining from *unclean* beaſts; 3. In faſting on *Chriſt-maſs* day: and 4. In holding their children over the fire, as a neceſſary circumſtance in *Baptiſm*, becauſe *John the Baptiſt* told the people which followed him, that CHRIST would baptize them with the *Holy Ghoſt, and with fire*: in which place he meaneth not *material fire*, but the lively purgation of the *Holy Ghoſt*, according to the nature of fire. The Church of this Sect is governed by two *Patriarchs*; whereof the one hath under his juriſdiction this *Turcomania*; comprehending 150000 Families, beſides very many *Monaſteries*: and the other hath under him, the two Provinces of *Armenia* the leſſer, and *Cilicia*, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts: The firſt reſiding antiently in *Sebaſtia*, the *Metropolis* of the greater *Armenia*; the ſecond originally at *Melitene*, the *Metropolis* of *Armenia Minor*, but of late at *Sis*, a ſmall City, not far from *Tarſus* in *Cilicia*. Both honoured with the title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of thirty Biſhops.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Araxes*, which riſing out of Mount *Abos*, an *Armenian* Mountain, firſt runneth Eaſtward as far as *Media*, and then bendeth it ſelf towards the North: and after a long courſe is divided into two branches; whereof the one falleth into the *Caſpian* Sea, the other into, 2. *Cyrus*, another great River of this Countrey. The fountain of this laſt in Mount *Caucaſus* in the furtheſt North of *Turcomania*; and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with, 3. *Cambyſes*, another great River of theſe parts; and ſo together haſten to the *Caſpian* alſo. 4. *Euphrates*, by the *Turks* called *Frat*, by the *Hebrews*, *Perah*, famous in Scripture for its watering the garden of *Eden*, hath its fountain in the hills which they call *Niphates*, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. A River of great length and ſwiftneſs. For having forced it ſelf a paſſage thorow the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runneth in the Weſt of *Meſopotamia*, with a ſtream ſo violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* or *Birra*, a Town on the North-weſt of *Meſopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdat*, are fain to come back again by land; ſelling thoſe Boats for eight crowns which they bought for fifty. At *Apamia*, a City of *Chaldæa*, it is joyned with *Tigris*, with which the greateſt branch of it paſſeth thorow the City of *Babylon*, and ſo into the *Perſian* Gulf: the reſt of it being cut into many *Channels*, for fear it ſhould overflow and drown the Countrey, are quite loſt in the *Lakes* of *Chaldæa*. 5. *Tigris*, a ſwifter ſtream than that, whence it had the name; the word in the *Median* tongue ſignifying an *Arrow*. A River of ſo ſtrong a courſe, that it paſſeth thorow the Lake *Thonitis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth the *Armenians* an eaſie paſſage to *Bagdat*: who on a few *Rafts* born up with *Goat-skins* blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their voyage thither. It is called *Heddekel* in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the Garden of *Paradiſe*; ſcituate in an Iſland made by the imbracement of this River and *Euphraees*, with their ſeveral Branches. Riſing originally out of the Lake of *Thelpitis*, in *Armenia Major*, where now we are: it is preſently almoſt ſwallowed by the gaping Earth; and paſſing under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compaſſing the Eaſt parts of *Meſopotamia*, which it divides from *Aſſyria*, meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its firſt and ſecond birth, thus the Poet *Lucan*.

At Tigrin *ſubito tellus abſorbet hiatu,*
Occultoſque tegit curſus; rurſuſque renatum
Fonte novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.

That is to ſay.

Tigris, ſoon ſwallowed by the thirſty earth,
Finds there a burial where it had its birth:
But breaking out at a new ſpring, vouchſafes
With the ſalt Seas to mix its ſweeter waves.

Mountains of moſt note, are, 1. *Abos*, glorying in the fountains of the great River *Araxes*. 2. *Periardes*, or *Periarges* as *Ptolomy*, *Pariedri*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a Branch or Spur of the great Mountain *Taurus*. 3. *Udaceſpes*, another branch of that great Mountain. 4. Some part of *Anti-Taurus*. 5. The Mountains called *Montes Moſchici*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea: which name they took from *Meſech*, or *Moſoch* the Son of *Japhet*, preſerving the remembrance of his planting there. 6. *Niphates*, one of the Spurs of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is ſaid to iſſue. 7. The *Gordiæan* Mountains, conceived by many learned men to be the Mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops whereof called *Baris*, the Ark of *Noah* is moſt generally affirmed to reſt. Aſſirmed by many antient Writers of the Chriſtian Church, and countenanced not onely by *Joſephus* and ſome others of the Elder Hiſtorians; but by the *Septuagint* themſelves: who in the 37 chap. of *Eſay*, v. 38. and 2 *Kings* 19. 37. have rendred *Ararat* by *Armenia*. And be it ſo, let *Arata* be *Armenia*, and conſequently the Mountain of *Ararat* be *Armenian* Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark reſted on the *Gordiæan* Mountains, or any others of this Countrey, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logically*, for ought I can ſee, that the Garden of *Eden* muſt be looked for in *Armenia* alſo; becauſe ſcituate in the circlings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two *Armenian* Rivers. Thoſe Rivers have indeed their fountains in *Armenia Major*, but compaſs not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long courſe they encounter each other in the ſpacious Plains of *Babylonia*. And ſo thoſe Mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*; becauſe there firſt grown

Armenia Major.

to a diſcernable and ſuper-eminent height above all the mountains of thoſe parts, became not the reſting place of the Ark, till after a further courſe towards the Eaſt, they were grown to their fulleſt height; which is in thoſe parts of it betwixt *Scythia*, and *Perſia*, which are called Mount *Caucaſus*: not that Mount *Caucaſus*, which lieth on the North of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrus* is ſaid to riſe; but that which lieth on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Caſpian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do croſs each other. But of this elſewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the principal whereof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordiaan* Mountains, called in ſome Writers, *Cordiai*, from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiene*, but moſt commonly called *Corduene*, bordering on *Aſſyria*. The Kingdom once of *Zarbienus*, who ſiding with *Lucullus* againſt *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* murdered with his Wife and Children: but honoured by *Lucullus* with a ſtately and magnificent funeral. 2. The 2d. Province of note is called *Cotacene*, near the *Montes Moſchici*. 3. *Toſarene*, bordering on the River *Cyrus*. 4. *Colthene* on the banks of *Araxes*. 5. *Sophene*, near the turnings of the River *Euphrates*; miſtook by ſome induſtrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the holy Scriptures. 6. *Baſi ſine*, on the North-Weſt, near the ſprings of that River. But what Cities did belong to each, I finde no where ſpecified.

Thoſe of moſt conſequence in the whole, 1. *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Caput Gentis*: of moſt eſteem in thoſe times, and the Seat-royal of the Kings of *Armenia* from its firſt foundation. Built by *Artaxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the perſwaſion of *Annibal*, whileſt he abode in this Countrey: who liking the ſcituation of the place, drew on it the model of a ſtrong and gallant City, according to which Platform it was preſently built. Taken and ſacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*; it never could revive again to its former ſplendor: in the middle ages called *Eſechia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coim*; if not built rather out of the ruines of it. A City memorable for two great battels near unto it; the firſt between *Lucullus* on the one ſide, againſt *Mithridates* & *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were victors: the ſecond between *Selimus* Emperor of the *Turks*; and *Hyſmael* the *Perſian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were conquerors, *Ann.* 1514. A victory which he bought with the loſs of 30000 of his beſt men, and ſuch a terrour to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it, the onely day of doom. The fields adjoyning to the Town wherein this cruel battel was fought, called the *Chalderan fields*. 2. *Sebaſtia*, now *Suaſſia*, ſeated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the *Mountain Taurus*; the reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their firſt ſeparation from the See of *Conſtantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: ſo named in honour of *Auguſtus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebaſtos*. But of late diveſted of that dignity, the *Patriarchal* See, by reaſon of the fierce wars raging in this Countrey, betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monaſtery of **Eomeazin**, near the City of **Ervan** in *Perſia*; in the dominions of which King theſe *Armenian Chriſtians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Jelphelins*. 3. *Tigranes certa*, beautified and inlarged if not firſt founded, by *Tigranes* above-mentioned; by whom repleniſhed with people of ſeveral Nations, whoſe Countries he had taken from them, and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdom: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Peaſant, who ſent not ſomewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great reſiſtance, thoſe ſeveral Nations not agreeing amongſt themſelves: and therein beſides other Treaſure, no leſs than 8000 Talents in ready money. The City ſcituate near a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Niceſorius*. 4. *Arſamoſata*, by *Pliny* called *Arſimote*, on the banks of *Euphrates*. 5. *Cholna*, ſo called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, one of the firſt Planters of this Countrey, 6. *Baraza*, by the Emperour *Leo* much inlarged and beautified; dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7. *Arſarata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*. 8. *Theodoſiopolis*, built on the foundation of ſome of the more antient Cities; by the Emperor *Theodoſius*, and of him thus named. 9. *Colonia*, the ſtrongeſt and moſt defenſible City hereof, when poſſeſſed by the *Romans*. 10. *Clamaſſum*, a ſtrong Town on the banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the firſt in his way towards *Perſia*, and therewith *livery* and *ſeiſin* of the reſt of this Countrey, ſince wholly conquered by his Succeſſors. 12. *Chars*, not far from the ſame River alſo, ſuppoſed to be the *Chorſa* of *Ptolomy*, of which not long ſince the ruines onely; but in three weeks ſo repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1579. that it is thought to be impregnable. 13. *Theſpia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Theſpitis*, and to the Region called *Theſpitis*; but now not in being. 14. *Arminig*, now of greateſt name, and eſteemed the *Metropolis* of this Countrey: ſcituate in that part of the Lake of *Vaſtan* (the *Martiana palus* of the antient Writers) which lieth next to this Countrey; and by that well fortified: the onely City of *Armenia* poſſeſſed by the *Perſians*, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 15. *Van*, both for natural ſcituation, and the works of art, accounted by the *Turks* for their ſtrongeſt Bulwark in theſe parts againſt the *Perſians*; and for that cauſe well garriſoned, and as well munitioned.

This Countrey was firſt planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the ſon of *Aram*, and by *Meſech* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their Families or Colonies poſſeſſed the ſame: the one leaving the remainder of his name, in the *Montes Moſchici*; the other in the Town called *Cholna*, and the Region called *Colthene* by *Ptolomy*, *Cholohatene* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdom as ſoon as any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Ninus* the third from *Nimrod* finding *Bazanes* King hereof, whom he forced to acknowledge his ſuperiority, and to aid him in his wars againſt *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*. Kings of moſt note in times ſucceeding, (for we have no conſtant Catalogue of them) were 1. *Araxes*, who being warred on by the *Perſians*, was promiſed victory by the *Oracle*, on the ſacrifice of his two fair daughters. Willing to ſatisfie the Gods, and yet ſpare his children, he ſacrificed two of the daughters of *Miesfalcus*, a Nobleman of this Countrey: by whom, in revenge hereof, his daughters were ſlain, and himſelf

ſelf

Colchis.

ſelf ſo ſolely followed, that ſwiming the River then called *Helmus*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2. *Artaxa*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; ſpoken of before. 3. *Tigranes*, the moſt mighty King that ever reigned in *Armenia*; to which he added by his prowеſs *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in *Aſia Minor*, the whole Countrys of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phœnicia*. But ſiding with *Mithridates*, whoſe daughter he had married, againſt the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrown in two great battells, and outed of the greateſt part of his dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had ſucceeded *Lucullus* in command of the Army, and truſting more unto his goodneſs then a wiſeman would, he put himſelf into his power: by whom condemned in a great ſum of money for the charge of the war, and ſtripped of all the reſt of his eſtates he was ſuffered to injoy *Armenia Major*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sophene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto it ſelf, and the leſſer *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of ſome practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried Priſoner unto *Rome*, and his Country brought into the forme of a Province. 4. *Artavaſdes*, circumvented by *Marc. Antony*, who led him Priſoner to *Rome*, but (*catenis, ne quid honori ejus deeſſet, aureis*, (as the Hiſtorian tells us of him) it was in chains of Gold, for his greater honor; giving *Armenia* to one of the Sons of *Cleopatra*. And though, 5. *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Succeſſors held it but as Vaſſals to the *Roman* Empire: the Senate after that confirming, and ſometimes nominating the *Armenian* Kings. Continuing in this eſtate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the *Pontick Dioceſs*) who added *Meſopotamia* alſo to his Dominions, made *Tigris* the Eaſtern border of his Empire, which *Auguſtus* thought fit to limit with the banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajans* time, in the reign of *Conſtantius*, *Julian*, and the Emperors following; whom they acknowledged and reverenced as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Juſtinian* the ſecond (he began his Empire, *Anno* 687) when ſubdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperor, but ſoon loſt again, it continued ſubject to the *Saracens*, till the breaking in of the *Turks*, *Anno*, 844. of whom more anon. The greateſt part of the *Turks* emptying themſelves into *Perſia*, and other Countrys which they took from the Eaſtern Emperors; the Chriſtians of *Armenia* began to take heart again and to have Kings of their own, by whom governed, till again ſubdued by *Occadan*, or *Hoccata*, ſon of *Cingis*, the firſt *Cham* of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make ſo abſolute a conqueſt of it, as to extinguiſh either Chriſtianity or the race of the Kings: *Haithon*, ſirnamed *Armenius*, reigning after this, and going in perſon to *Mango*, the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, 1257. And in our own *Chronicles*, in the reign of King *Richard* the ſecond, we finde mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian* King, who came hither to ſue for aid againſt the *Turks*; by whom then diſpoſſeſſed of his eſtates. By *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, on of the Princes of this Country, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Perſia*, *Anno* 1472 it was made a Province of that Kingdome: and ſo continued till the year 1515, when conquered by *Selimus* the firſt, and by him made a part of the *Turkiſh* Empire; more fully ſettled and aſſured in the reign of *Amurath* the third, who by cauſing many forts and Garriſons to be planted in it, made the conqueſt abſolute.

The Armes of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, governed by Princes of its own of the Chriſtian faith, were *Gules*, 3 heads of a Buck *Argent*, Crowned *Or*,

2. CHOLCHIS.

COLCHIS is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Iberia*; on the Weſt, with the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Tartars Precopenſes*; on the North, with *Tartarie*, from which parted by thoſe vaſt hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucaſi*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which ſeparated by the *Montes Moſchici*.

The reaſon of the name I finde not. Nor can yield unto *Boeherttus*, who fetcheth the original of the name and Nation, from *Cuſluhim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the ſon of *Cham*: The *Etymology* of the name being too much wreſted, and *Egypt* too far off to give a being to *Colchis* in thoſe early days: though poſſibly in times ſucceeding, the *Ægyptians* hearing, by the *Greeks*, of the wealth of the Country, might ſend Colonies of their people thither, as to other Places. It is now called *Mengrelia*.

The Country ſaid to be very fruitful, if the care of the husbandman were not wanting. Their Vines they plant at the feet of great Trees, which twining a bout the armes thereof lade them full of Grapes: with which and other fruits riſing from the Earth, they uſed of late times to furnſh the Store-houſes of their Kings, for want of ready money to fill his Coffers; their tributes being paid in ſuch commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of gold, found in the ſands of their Rivers iſſuing from the *Caucaſian* Mountains. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*, χρυσοφοροῦσι δ᾽ ἐκ τοῦ Καυκάσου πολλαὶ πηγαὶ ψῆγμα ἀφαλὲς; Many of their ſprings, ſaith he, which come out of *Caucaſus*, carry veins of Gold. The like ſaith *Strabo* alſo, and ſome other Antients. With which and out of their rich mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings hereof were ſo well furniſhed with thoſe metals, that the furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now ſo deſtitute of both, that the people for want of money to buy and ſell with, are enforced to barter their commodities, and change one for another.

The people at the preſent are very rude & barbarous; ſo inhumane & void of natural affection, that they ſell their children to the *Turks*. The better ſort of them much given to belly-chear, dancing and ſinging looſe ſonnets of love and dalliance, uſing much wine in their entertainments, which the more their Gueſts drink, the better welcome; inflamed wherewith they offer them for a cooler their wives or Siſters, with

Colchis.

charge to yield them all content, eſteeming it no ſmall credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the women much averſe from the entertainment, whether to pleaſe themſelves, or obey their husbands, let them tell that can.

The *Chriſtian* faith was here firſt planted in the time of the Emperor *Juſtinus*, by whoſe perſwaſion *Taurus* Prince of the *Colchi*, then at the Court in *Conſtantinople*, became a Chriſtian ; and being baptized was returned back into his Country with the Title of King. But *Cabades* the King of *Perſia* much offended at it, proclaimed war againſt him : which hindered the further progreſſe of the Goſpel, till the year 860, About which time *Methodius* and *Cyril*, two reverend men, wereby the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* employed in this ſervice, which they ſucceſsfully effected: in that regard they hold to the communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the juriſdiction of that Patriarch. To whom conform in moſt dogmatical points of their Religion, and in many practical. And though they have a diſtinct language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate their Divine Offices in the *Greek* tongue, and follow the *Ritualls* of that Church; which few of them underſtand any better then the *Vulgar Papiſts* of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany*, do the *Latine* Service. Whether it be that they have no learned men among them, either to tranſlate their old *Liturgy*, or to compoſe a new, or that they hold all alterations in Religion to be matters of danger ; or that ignorance is the beſt mother of devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The Chief Rivers of this Country, are 1 *Hippus*, 2. *Cyaneus*, 3. *Chariſtus*, all riſing out of the *Caucaſian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*. 4. *Phaſis*, the principal of all, riſing out of the *Montes Moſchici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there called *Boas*. Navigable with ſmaller Veſſels a great way up into the Country, and with great ſhips, 18 miles from the Sea. Memorable amongſt the Antients for the Landing of the *Argonautes*, in the mouth thereof ; and thoſe delicate Fowl called from hence *Phaſides*, or *Phaſiani* (*Pheſants*) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this expedition of the *Argonautes*, being the moſt remarkeable action of thoſe Elder ages of the world, when Piracy and depredations were accounted for *Heroical* vertues; it was no other then the adventures of ſome Noble *Gracians*, for the gold of *Colchos*. The age wherein it hapned, was about the 11 year of *Gideon* the judge of *Iſrael*. The chief adventurers, *Jaſon*, *Orpheus*, the famous Poet, *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, the ſons of *Tindarus*, *Telamon* and *Peleus*, the ſons of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Laertes* the Father of *Ulyſſes*, *Amphiaraus* the ſooth-ſayer, *Hercules*, *Theſeus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. Theſe moved with the great noiſe of the wealth of *Colchos*, and the riches of King *Ætes*, then therein reigning, reſolved upon a voyage thither, embarked in a ſhip called *Argos* (whence the name of *Argonautes*) whereof on *Typhis* was chief Pilot. Paſſing the *Helleſpont*, *Propontick*, and *Thracian Boſphorus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea : and after many difficulties and ſtrange adventures (which ſuch *Knights Errants* could not chooſe but encounter with) they landed in the River *Phaſis*, and came to the Kings Court, and there were kindly entertained. But finding the Kinges Treaſures to be too well Guarded to be took by force (ſaid by the Poets to be kept by a *Dragon* alwayes waking) they practiſed with *Medea*, the daughter of *Ætes*, to aſſiſt them in robbing her Father. Who being in love with *Jaſon*, on promiſe of marriage with him, aſſented to it : By whoſe Artifices (which the Poets call *Magical* charms) the *Guardians* being circumvented, and the treaſure gotten, they all, together with *Medea*, imbarked again, and after a long and dangerous voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the ſubſtance of the ſtory; which being the greateſt and moſt notable voyage which the *Gracians* in thoſe early days had undertaken, occaſioned the Poets to advance it to the higheſt pitch, and to diſguiſe it with many fictions, and ingenious fancies : But not without ſome ground intituled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the deſign.) For the Rivers, as before was ſaid, having Golden ſands, which fell down from the Mountains (as in many other parts of the world they are found to have :) it was the cuſtome of the people to lay many Flieces of wooll in the deſcent of thoſe Rivers in which the grains of Gold remained, though the water paſſed through ; which *Strabo* witneſſeth to be true.

But leaving theſe *Adventurers* to purſue their fortunes, let us go forward to ſurvey the *Cholchian* Cities; the principle whereof, 1 *Dioſcurias*, a Town of great wealth and trade, founded by *Amphitus*, and *Telchius*, two *Spartans*, the Charioteers of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, and ſo named in honour of their Maſters, whom the *Greeks* call Διόσκυροι : which two *Spartans* paſſing further Eaſt, were afterwards the founders of the Nation from them called *Heniochi*, or the Chariot-drivers. A Town of ſuch reſort by Merchants from moſt parts of the world, that here were ſpoken 300 different languages; inſomuch that the *Romans* (as *Pliny* ſaith) were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters, for diſpatch of buſineſſe, and negotiating with thoſe Merchants. 2. *Sybaris*, the Seat-Royal of the *Colchian* Kings, about 9 miles from which was the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonautes*. 2. *Siganeam*, neer the mouth of the River *Cyaneus* : as is alſo, 4. *Æa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Æapolis*, an *Egyptian* Colony, planted here by *Seſoſtris* (in the time of *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted, but without ſucceſſe, the Conqueſt of *Colchis*. 5. *Neapolis*, ſo called from the newneſſe or late foundation of it, when that name was given. 6. *Phaſis*, ſo called from the River upon which it is ſcituate, retaining both the ſcite and name, to this very day: the ordinary reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, by whom called *Phaſſum*. 7. *Alvati*, a well fortified place. More in the Land are placed by *Ptolomy*, 8. *Mechleſſus*. 9. *Sirace*. 10. *Zadris*, 11. *Surium*, *&c.* not much obſervable in old Story, nor now known at all.

The firſt inhabitants of this Country, moſt probably, came out of the neighbouring *Armenia*, and therefore the poſterity of *Hul* or *Chul*, from whence perhaps the name of *Colchis* ; to whom in tract of time

Iberia.

time, ſome Colonies out of *Ægypt* (a ſea-faring people) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth hereof, did adjoin themſelves; the *Colchians* on that ground, (or from ſome part of his Army left here by *Seſoſtris*) being ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be the antient off-ſpring of the *Egyptians*. The moſt antient of their Kings was *Ætes*, ſpoken of before: who entertaining *Phryxus* flying out of *Greece* from the furie of his ſtepdame *Ino*, with great ſtore of treaſure; occaſioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of *Colchos*, diſguiſed under the fiction of the *Golden Fliece*. Of moſt note after him, *Selauces* and *Eſubops*, who firſt diſcovered the rich mines of Gold and Silver; of which metals they made all their *Utenſils*, even the beams of their Chambers. The fame thereof drew thither *Seſoſtris*, the great King of *Egypt*; who being vanquiſhed in the field was fain to lay aſide all thoſe hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Egypt* in a worſe ſtate then he came; but that he left behind him an *Egyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*; which after occaſioned others of that Country to repair thither alſo. Living in peace and unmoleſted from this time forwards, they were unhappily ingaged by *Tigranes* of *Armenia*, to ſide with him againſt the *Romans*; and in his overthrow gave ſuch advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of *Colchos* was fain to ſubmit himſelfe to *Pompey*; to diſmiſs his forces, leave his faſtneſſes, and finally to redeem his peace, by ſending to him a bedſtead of pureſt Gold, and many other rich preſents. After this, the *Romans* had here their Agents, and received hence ſome annual profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Diſtreſſed between the *Perſians* and *Conſtantinopolitans*, they had much ado to ſtand upright; though betwixt both they kept themſelves in a kind of liberty: as of late times, betwixt the *Perſians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, their too potent Neighbors. But at the laſt, *Anno* 1579. *Amurath*, the third, to make the ſafer paſſage for his forces in *Georgia*, ſent *Uluzale* his Admiral, with a great Fleet, into the *Euxine* Sea: who coming up the River *Phaſis* took the City of *Faſſum*, fortified it, and laid ſo certain a foundation of a future conqueſt, that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demoliſh ſome of his fortifications, yet were they afterwards repaired, and *Faſſum* made the ſeat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, as it ſtill continueth.

3 IBERIA.

IBERIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Albania*; one the Weſt with *Colchos*; on the North, with the *Caucaſian* Mountains; and on the South, with the *Montes Moſchici*; by the firſt mountaines parted from *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and by the laſt from *Armenia Major*.

It was ſo called from the River *Iberus*, which Running thorow it, falleth at laſt into the more noted River *Cyrus*. But is now called *Georgia*, and that, as ſome ſay, from St. *George* the *Cappadocian Martyr*, whom here they have in very great reverence, as their tutelary Saint and Patron: as others ſay, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Biſhop, by whoſe preaching they were brought unto *Chriſtianity*; and ſome again will have them properly called *Gordiaans*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their neer neighbourhood to thoſe Mountains. But the moſt probable opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongſt other of the *Caſpian* nations. Though, to ſay truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth ſomewhat further than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending alſo that part of *Armenia Major*, which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Country of *Albania*, if I gueſs aright.

The Country, for the greateſt part, is covered with Mountains, Woods, and Thickets, and in that regard unconquerable for the difficultie of the mountainous paſſages; yet notwithſtanding it is very fruitfull in many places, having many fertile plains and wealthy vallies; well watered, and of great increaſe to the husband-man, if he be not wanting to himſelf of care and induſtry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written, that they were a very warlike nation, and uſed to ſet as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had ſlain Enemies in his life: as alſo that thoſe of the ſame Tribe or family had all things common; he being the Ruler, which was eldeſt: and that ſome of them did derive themſelves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cauſe never marrying out of their own kindred. The preſent *Georgians* very warlike, ſtrong of Body, and valorous in fight, for a long time defended themſelves and Country from the *Turks* and *Perſians*, with great prudence making uſe of the one againſt the other. But overpowered by the vaſt multitude of the *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have loſt many of their beſt Forts, and much of their liberty.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt here planted in the time of *Conſtantine* the *Great*, by means of a Chriſtian captive woman (ſuch extraordinary wayes doth God finde out to promote his Goſpel): who being of a moſt devout life and exemplary piety, had by her prayers to CHRIST reſtored a young Child to health, which was thought paſt cure, and healed the Queen hereof of a deſperate Malady, when no help of *Phyſick* would prevail. Whereupon the King ſent Ambaſſadors to *Conſtantine*, deſiring Miniſters and Preachers to be ſent to *Iberia*, to inſtruct the People in the faith; which was done accordingly. Since that time, Chriſtianity hath flouriſhed in this Country without interruption; though by *Mahometans* and *Pagans*, on all ſides encompaſſed: agreeable in doctrinall points to the Church of *Greece*, whoſe *Rituals* alſo the *People* do to this day follow. Not ſubject for all that to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own *Metropolitan* onely; who hath under him about 18 Biſhops, and reſideth, for the moſt part, in Saint *Catharines* Monaſtery on Mount *Sinai*. By means of which remote dwelling of their principall Paſtor, *Mahometaniſm* hath got ſome footing, and *Jeſuitiſm* began to creep in amongſt them. The occaſion of which laſt was this:

About the year 1614. the *Perſians* making an inrode into this Country, took the City *Cremer*, and therein *Cetaba*, the Mother of Prince *Teimurazes*; whom, leading her captive into *Perſia*, and not able to prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they moſt cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jeſuits* then travelling in thoſe Countreys, and willing out of that ſad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholik cauſe, cut off the head of a dead man whom they found in the way, anointed it with oyl and odours, brought it into *Georgia*, and ſignified unto the Prince, that they had with them the head of the bleſſed Martyr *Cetaba*: deſiring leave to live in ſome Monaſtery, and have the keeping of the holy *Relique* committed to them. This eaſily believed, and granted, the head was placed with great honour in the Church of Saint *George*, at *Aberdal*; much reſort to it from all parts by diſeaſed perſons: whom, if paſt cure, the *Jeſuits* ſent home again, preſcribing them in way of preparation a long time of repentance; if cureable by outward meanes, which they applyed, the cure was preſently aſcribed to the holy *Relique*. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Proſelytes* to themſelves; and had no ſmal hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimurazes* to ſubmit himſelf to the Pope as the *Vicar of* CHRIST: When in the heat of all their glories, a Letter cometh from *Maacla*, a Lady attendant on the Princeſs (but then living in *Perſia*, as a ſlave or bond-maid) ſignifying that her Maſter by her perſwaſion had got into his power the body of his Mother *Cetaba*; which he might ranſome if he pleaſed: two Travellors withal, who came out of *Perſia* with the *Jeſuites*, reporting what they ſee them do with the dead mans head. By which means the *Impoſture* being diſcovered, the body of the Queen was ſent for, the falſe *Relique* was caſt out of the Church, and the falſer *Jeſuits* into priſon, and next out of the Country.

Rivers of note I finde not any, either in *Ptolomy*, or any of our Modern writers, but what are touched upon before, except onely the River of *Iberus* ſpoken of before, from which the Country is thus named: The whole in general ſo deſtitute of waters, that *Pompey* in his march this way againſt the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 bladders filled with water for the uſe of his Army.

Places of moſt antiquity and importance in it, 1. *Artaxiſſa*, 2. *Vaſada*, 3. *Lubium*, 4. *Armaſtiça*, all named by *Ptolomy*; this laſt by *Pliny* called *Harmaſtis*. 5. *Cremen*, the chief City, now poſſeſſed by the *Georgians*, 6. *Cachete*, honoured with a faire Church, the moſt beautiful of all the Countrey, dedicated by the name of Saint *George*. 7. *Triala*, where are to be ſeen the ruines of a large City, and many Churches, by what name antiently called, I finde not. 8. *Altuncala*, or the *Golden caſtle*, a ſtrong fortreſſe, and the ordinary reſidence of the *Georgian* Princes, ſince the time of the wars betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Turks*. 9. *Archichelech*, a ſtrong Caſtle, taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, in his wars againſt *Tamas* King of *Perſia*, and ever ſince holden by the *Turks*. 10. *Teflis*, a large and capacious Town, forſaken by the *Georgians* at the coming of *Muſtapha*, General of *Amurath* the third, againſt the *Perſians*: who liking the ſcituation of it cauſed it to be repaired and fortifyed, planted thereon an hundred pieces of ordnance, and left therein a Garriſon of 6000 Souldiers. 11. *Lori*, diſtant from *Teflis* about two dayes journey of a Carriers pace, ſtrengthened with a lofty Caſtle, invironed with deep ditches, and a thick wall, amounting to a mile in compaſs. Seiſed on by *Ferat Baſſa*, the Succeſſor of *Muſtapha*, who repaired the walls, planted thereon 200 ſmall pieces of ordnance, and Garriſoned it with 7000 *Turks* for defence thereof. 12. *Tomais*, a ſhort daies march from *Lori*, the Country lying betwixt both full of rich fields and paſtures, abounding with Corn, fruit, and Cattel. Nigh unto which the ſaid *Ferat* raiſed a new Fortreſs, for the better command of the Streights and paſſages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and ſo to *Teflis* (the key of *Media* or *Sirvan*) the wall whereof being 1700 yards in compaſs, he cauſed to be planted with 200 pieces of Artillery and with incredible diligence cut down a thick wood which lay before it, and otherwiſe would have been a receptacle of thieves, or Enemies. 13. *Gliſca*. 14. *Baſcapan, &c.* poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Turks*, to make good their footing in this Country. But poſſibly moſt of theſe ſtrong holds now poſſeſſed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, though within the Country of the *Georgians*; that name not being limited to *Iberia*, as was ſaid before.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were ſuch who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the ſon of *Japhet*, from whom this people, at the firſt, as *Joſephus* hath it, had the name of *Thobeli*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the Nations of moſt note in it were the *Tibereni*, *Moſſynœci*, *Chalybes*; and of leſs eſteem the *Biſeries*, *Sapires*, *Macrones*, *&c.* united at the laſt in the name of *Iberi*, from the River *Iberus*, of which *Pliny* ſpeaketh, the principall of all this Country. Too fruitfull of increaſe for ſo narrow a dwelling, ſome of them put themſelves to ſeek their fortunes, when after long wandering they fell upon the Coaſt of *Spain* next the *Pyrenees*, where they ſtaid themſelves; giving the name of *Iberus* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Country. Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid againſt the *Romans*, they came in accordingly: and in his fall, diſcomfited by *Lucullus* in three ſeverall battells, were fain to ſtand upon their Gaurd as well as they could, firſt holding faire with *Pompey*, who ſucceeded *Lucullus* in his charge: But breaking out again on a new temptatiun, they were encountred by him; in which battel 9000 of their men being ſlain, and 10000 taken, they were conſtrained to ſue for peace; not otherwiſe to be obtained till *Artaces* the King of theſe *Iberians*, gave their ſons for pledges. After this *Feudataries* to the *Roman*, and *Grecian* Emperours, till the fatal inundations of the *Saracens* had ſo weakened that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledging no more ſubjection to thoſe of *Conſtantinople*, till *Conſtantinople* it ſelf became the Imperial ſeat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whoſe quarrels with the *Perſian Sophies*, this Country began to ſuffer a new invaſion; ſome Towns and Forts of it being taken by *Solyman*, in his march or paſſage againſt *Tamas*. Afterwards in the time of *Amurath* the third, who ſet his mind moſt eagerly on the war with *Perſia*, great part of it was ſubdued by *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh General*: who inviting the widow Princeſs and her two Sons to come to his tent, ſent the young Princes to *Conſtantinople*; and by that means had opportunity to aſſure his purchaſes. And though the *Perſians* did their beſt to aſſiſt the *Georgians*, yet proved they but a kind of miſerable comforters; as much puniſhing or plaguing this poor Country with their aides, as the *Turks* by their armies. So that now it ſtands divided betwixt the *Grand Signeior*, and its natural Princes: the *Georgian* Princes holding the greateſt part, but the *Turks* being in poſſeſſion of the ſtrongeſt holds; kept by them under colour of ſecuring their way to *Perſia*, for which this Countrey is indeed but unhappily ſeated.

4. ALBANIA.

ALBANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Caſpian* Sea; on the Weſt, with *Iberia*; on the North, with the *Caucaſion* Mountains; on the South, with the *Moſchici*. So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it; and of late called *Sairia*; but reckoned in theſe laſt ages as a part of *Georgia*.

The Countrey of ſo rich a ſoil, that without the leaſt labour of the husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her ſtore; and where it is but once ſown, will yield two or three reapings. But being ill husbands on it in former times, they occaſioned *Strabo* to give them this note for a remembrance, That they *needed not the uſe of the Sea, who knew no better how to make uſe of the Land*. The people antiently ſo ſimple, that they could not reckon above an hundred; ignorant of weights, meaſures, and the uſe of money. Old age they had in high eſteem, but held it utterly unlawfull to make ſpeech of the dead. And of theſe *Pliny* doth report, that they were gray-headed from their very youth, and could ſee as well by night as by day; the variety of which laſt may be ſomewhat queſtionable. But withal, they are affirmed to have been a ſtout and couragious people, ſtrong bodies, patient of toil and labour, as they are at this day. And well the men may be couragious and ſtout, where the women are ſo truly maſculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted credit, that they were exerciſed in Arms and martial feats, as if deſcended lineally from the antient *Amazons*; whom *Plutarch* placeth in this tract; reporting ſome of them to be aiding to theſe *Albanians*, in their war with *Pompey*: which poſſibly might be no other, than ſome the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Soania*, giving name to the *Soani*, one of the Nations of theſe parts mentioned by *Pliny* 2. *Caſius*. 3. *Gerrus*. 4. *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albani* came unto this people. 5. *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrnus*) ſpoken of in *Armenia Major*, but more properly belonging to this Countrey; becauſe herein it hath its ſpring, and the greateſt part of its courſe alſo. For riſing out of the Mountain *Caucaſus*, which ſhuts up this Province on the North, it paſſeth thorow the middeſt of it, till it come to the borders of *Armenia*; where it beginneth to bend more towards the Eaſt: and having received into its Channel all the former Rivers, beſides many others of leſs note, falleth with twelve mouths into the *Caſpian*, or *Hircanian* Sea. Mountains of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations: the *Montes Moſchici* on the South, and *Caucaſus* upon the North, being rather common boundaries betwixt ſeveral Nations, than peculiar unto any one; though from the laſt the *Iberians* and theſe *Albanians*, be in ſome Writers called *Caucaſiæ Gentes*.

Cities and Towns I finde many in it, but little of them more than their very names. 1. *Chabala*, by *Pliny* called *Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Inſignior Albaniæ urbis*, the moſt noted City of this Countrey. 2. *Albana*; ſo called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was ſeated. 3. *Telebæ*, 4. *Namechiæ*, 5. *Thelbis*; 6. *Getarra*, near unto the influx of the River *Cyrus*. How theſe are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to ſay. The chief now being, and worthy to be ſo accounted, is the City of *Derbent*, ſcituate near the *Caſpian* Sea; from which to *Teflis* a City ſpoken of before, remain the foundations of a high and thick wall; affirmed to have been built by *Alexaader* the *Great*, to defend theſe parts againſt the irruptions of the Northern unconquered nations. The Town environed with two walls, and ſo defended by difficult and narrow paſſages of the rocks, that it is not eaſily acceſſible: but taken for all that by *Muſtapha* the *Turkiſh* General, *Anno* 1587. and made the ordinary reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*. Conceived to be the *Caucaſiæ Porta* of the Antients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the title of *ingens naturæ miraculum*: by *Egeſippus*, for the ſtrength of it called *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which, by the *Turks* called *Demir-can*, the word ſignifying in their language, a *gate of iron*. The other places of this tract are either of no accompt and eſtimation, or elſe are ſpecified before amongſt the Cities and good Towns of the *Georgians*, of whoſe Countrey this is now a part: yet we may add, 2. *Sabran*, upon the borders of *Media*. 3. *Sancta Maria*, north of *Derbens*; both of them on, or near the banks of the *Caſpian* Sea.

The firſt inhabitants of this Countrey ſeem to have been of the plantation of *Gether* the ſon of *Aram*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whoſe memory was long preſerved in the City of *Getara* before-mentioned. So called by him, or ſome of his poſterity, in remembrance of him. The People living ſomewhat out of the common road, were little troubled with invaders from forreign parts; neither the *Perſians*, nor *Macedonians* looking ſo far North. Nor poſſibly had the *Romans* taken notice of them, had they not ingaged themſelves with *Tigranes* firſt, and afterwards with *Mithridates*. Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000; and well beaten by him, they were content to ſue for peace. But finding that the *Iberians* alſo had took up Arms, they ingaged again; leavying an Army of 12000 horſe and 50000 foot, in which *Oroezes* their King, with his brother *Coſis*, were in perſon preſent. And though they had made good the banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the moſt part only with skins of beaſts, they made but ſmall reſiſtance againſt the *Romans*: notwithſtanding the gallant charge of *Coſis*, who aſſaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour to be ſlain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving pledges unto *Pompey* for their good behaviours, we finde little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the time of *Trajan*. Who having conquered, and reduced *Armenia Major* to the form of a Province, reſolved to ſhew his power to theſe neighbouring nations: and to that end impoſed a King on the *Albani*; of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, do their homage to him. In times ſucceeding no news of them; either becauſe remote from the ſtage of Action, or ſerving under

the

Albania. the command of ſome greater nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered by *Occadan*, or *Haccata* the *Cham* of *Tartarie*, together with *Iberia*, and *Armenia*; they were a while ſubject to that Empire: and paſſing in ſucceeding times by the name of *Georgians*, partook of the ſame fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turks*, who by reaſon of the ſtrong footing which he hath gotten amongſt them, is become a dreadfull neighbour to them; if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of all the Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire, both in *Europe*, and *Aſia*, and touched upon the means by which they are poſſeſſed of *Ægypt*, whereunto all the reſt of their hold in *Africk* ſerves but for an acceſſory: we will now look upon the ſtory of this people, their firſt original, the great ſucceſs of their affairs, the Princes under whoſe command they have made theſe Conqueſts. Which having done, we will proceed to a Deſcription of the Perſons, Manners, and Conditions of the *Turks* themſelves, their power and policy; with other things conſiderable in ſo great an Empire.

And firſt, for the original of the *Turkiſh* Nation; they were moſt probably the Deſcendants of thoſe *Turcæ*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the Fens of *Mæotis*. Of whom thus *Mela*, ſpeaking of the *Gelani*, a *Scythian* people. *Juxta* Thirſagetæ, Turcæque; *vaſtas ſylvas occupant, alunturque venando*, &c. Next unto them (ſaith he) live the *Thyrſagetæ*, and the *Turcæ*, poſſeſſed of vaſt woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and deſart Countrey with continual rocks, as far as to the *Arympheians*. And *Pliny* muſtering up the barbarous Nations of thoſe parts, joins the *Tuſſagetæ* (or *Thyrſagetæ*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arympheians*, as *Mela* doth, *uſque ad ſolitudines ſaltuoſis vallibus aſperas*, ſpreading themſelves unto the rough deſarts, and woody valleys. Not known by action (though by name) till the time of *Tiberius* the ſecond, who began his Empire *Anno* 577. when preſſing hard on the *Avares*, a neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forſake their ſeats and paſs into *Europe*; where they made themſelves maſters of *Panonia*, now called *Hungary*. In the time of *Heraclius*, we finde them with other barbarous Nations, at the ſiege of *Conſtantinople*; but under the command of the *Perſians*. After which they began to ſet up for themſelves, and in the year 763. made a road into thoſe Countreys which we laſt deſcribed; and loading themſelves with prey and booty, returned home again. But liking better of theſe parts than their own poor dwellings; in the year 844. they brake once more thorow the *Caſpian* Streights; and paſſing thorow *Iberia*, ſeized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themſelves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*. In which wide and ſpacious Countrey they roamed up and down, without any certain habitation, removing their herds and families from one place to another; as they had formerly been uſed to do, in the Fens of *Mæotis*; and as the *Tartars* and wild *Arabs* do until this day. And ſo they lived a poor and contemptible nation, till *Mahomet* the Sultan of *Perſia*, rebelling againſt his Lord and Maſter the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, called in theſe *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a ſignal victory. The victory obtained, the *Turks* deſire their wages, and a fair diſmiſſion; but could ſpeed in neither: the Sultan being loth to part with ſuch a neceſſary miſchief, till his affairs were better ſetled; and therefore ſhutting up the paſſages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them; provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader, they began to ſpoil and waſte the Countrey; a multitude of needy people, and ſome of the diſcontented Souldiers, coming daily to them. Aſſaulted by the *Perſians*, in the firſt battel they not onely got a notable victory, but ſuch ſtore of Armour, Horſes, and other neceſſaries, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himſelf: whom having overthrown and ſlain in the ſecond fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclaimed King of *Perſia*, in the year one thouſand and thirty, or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongſt the *Turks*, two moſt noted *Tribes*; the *Selzuccian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the *Selzuccian*, *Tangrolipix*, *Cutlu Muſes*, *Melech*, and *Ducat* were the heads: of which, *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that *Clan* or Family, was ſetled in the throne of *Perſia*: *Cutlu Muſes* furniſhed with an Army againſt the Chriſtians, poſſeſſed himſelf of a great part of *Aſia Minor*; *Melech* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Couſin the *Perſian* Sultan, were veſted into the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, with their ſeveral Territories. But the line of *Tangrolipix* and the reſt being all worn out, as hath been ſhewn in our deſcription of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*; the man of moſt Nobility amongſt the *Turks*, was *Ottoman*, the chief of the *Oguzian* family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Machan*, a ſmall territory in the Realm of *Perſia*. Which *Solyman*, flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Perſia*, was drowned in croſſing the River *Euphrates*, as he paſſed with his few Subjects towards *Aſia Minor*, the beſt place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the chief-ſhip of his Tribe to *Ethrogul* his Son: who obtained of the laſt *Aladine* of the *Selzuccian* Family, the village of *Saguta* in *Bithynia*; for himſelf and his ſmall handfull of people. To him ſucceeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the year 1280. who to revenge ſome injuries done unto his people by the improvident Chriſtians, took from them Caſtle after Caſtle; and in the end poſſeſſed himſelf of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperial Seat of the *Grecian* Emperors. Emboldened with ſuch great ſucceſſes, and hearing of the death of *Aladine* the ſecond, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himſelf the Title of Sultan; *Anno* 1300. from which before he had abſtained. To this time, and theſe ſmall beginnings, we muſt reduce the firſt foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire; increaſed unto its preſent greatneſs, by the courage and good fortune of theſe Princes following.

The Kings of the *Turks* of the *Oguzian*, or *Ottoman* Family.

1300. 1. *Ottoman*, or *Oſmon*, the Son of *Ethrogul*, the firſt *Turkiſh* Sultan of this line, added to his ſmall territory the greateſt part of *Bithynia*, and ſome part of *Pontus*. 28.

1328.

The *Ottoman* Emperors.

1328. 2. *Orchanes* took the City *Pruſa*, and made it his reſidence; and was the firſt that had footing in *Europe*, where he got *Gallipolis*, and other pieces.

1350. 3. *Amurath* won the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*, the ſtrong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was ſlain by a common Souldier in the fields of *Coſſova* 23.

1373. 4. *Bajazet* made himſelf maſter of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himſelf in an iron cage, in which the inſolent Conqueror uſed to carry him. 26.

1399. 5. *Solyman* the eldeſt ſon of *Bajazet* ſucceeded in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Turkiſh* Provinces in *Europe*; but paſſing with an Army into *Aſia*, for the recovery of thoſe parts thereof, uſurped by *Mahomet* his youngeſt brother, he was forced again into *Europe*, to make head againſt *Muſa Bajazet* his third ſon (employed by *Mahomet* in that diverſion) who having there vanquiſhed and ſlain him, *Anno* 1406. ſucceeded for a time in the Throne at *Adrianople*.

1404 .6. *Mahomet* the youngeſt ſon of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince, firſt wreſted from his brother *Iſa* (*Bajazets* ſecond ſon then living) the City of *Pruſa*, with the dominions thereunto belonging, and thereupon taking to himſelf the Title of King or Sultan, by degrees recovered all which his father had loſt unto the *Tartars*: afterwards making uſe of *Muſa*, for the ſupplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him preſently into *Europe*, where he fought with him, vanquiſhed and ſlew him about the year 1416. Thereby uniting in his own perſon the whole *Turkiſh* Kingdom, which he enlarged with the more abſolute conqueſt of *Dacia*, part of *Sclavonia*, and the reſt of *Macedon*. 17.

1416. 7. *Amurath* II. ſubdued from the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achaia*, *Theſſaly*, *Epirus*; he ſhaked the State of *Hungary*, and died before the walls of *Croy*. 34.

The *Ottoman* Emperors.

1450. 8. *Mahomet* II. ſurnamed the Great, and firſt Emperor of the *Turks*, conquered the two Empires of *Conſtantinople* and *Trabezond*, twelve Kingdoms, and two hundred Cities. 31.

1481. 9. *Bajazet* II. ſubdued the *Caramanian* Kingdom, and part of *Armenia*; and drove the *Venetians* from *Morea*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.

1512. 10. *Selimus* having poiſoned his father, ſubverted the *Mamaluks* of *Egypt*; bringing it, together with *Palaſtine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the yoke of the *Turks*. 7.

1519. 11. *Solyman* II. ſurnamed the *Magnificent*, ſurpriſed *Rhodes*, *Belgrad*, *Buda*; with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Aſſyria*, *Meſopotamia*. 48.

1567. 12. *Selimus* II. an idle and effeminate Emperor, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians*, the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moors* the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and *Algiers*. 8.

1575. 13. *Amurath* III. took from the diſagreeing *Perſians*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Taurus*; and the Fort *Gnaino* from the *Hungarians*. 20.

1595. 14. Mahomet III. took *Agria* in *Hungaria*; which Kingdom in all likelihood had been loſt, if he had purſued his victory at the battel of *Kereſture*. Never but then in any battel, and then ſo frighted, that he durſt never ſee the face of an Army afterwards.

1603. 15. *Achmat*, who the better to enjoy his pleaſures, made peace with the *German* Emperor, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.

1618. 16. *Muſtapha*, brother to *Achmat*, ſucceeded, which was a novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdom; it being the *Grand Signieurs* common policy to ſtrangle all the younger brothers: howſoever this *Muſtapha* was preſerved, either becauſe *Achmat* being once a younger brother, took pity on him; or becauſe he had no iſſue of his own body, and ſo was not permitted to kill him.

1618. 17. *Oſmen*, or *Ottoman* II. ſucceeded his Uncle *Muſtapha*; and being unſucceſsfull in his war againſt *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* ſlain in an uproar, and *Muſtapha* again reſtored: yet long enjoyed he not his throne; for the ſame hand that raiſed him, plucked him down again, and ſeated young *Amurath* in the place.

1623. 18. Morat (or *Amurath* the IV.) brother of *Oſman*, of the age of 13. year, ſucceeded on the ſecond depoſition of his Uncle *Muſtapha*, who proved a ſtout and maſculine Prince, and bent himſelf to the reviving of the antient diſcipline. To the great good of Chriſtendom, he ſpent his ſtomach on the *Perſians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.

19. *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Morat*, preſerved by the *Sultaneſs* his mother, in his brothers life; and by her power depoſed again for interdicting her the Court. He ſpent a great part of his reign in the war of *Crete*, againſt the *Venetians*; but without any great ſucceſs.

1648. 20. Mahomet IV. ſon of *Ibrahim*, now reigning, Lord of all this vaſt Empire, containing all *Dacia* and *Greece*, the greateſt part of *Sclavonia* and *Hungary*, the Iſles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in *Europe*; of all the Iſles and Provinces which we have hitherto deſcribed, in *Aſia*, and in *Africk*, of all *Egypt*, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Snachem* and *Erocco*. Nor is their ſtile inferior to ſo vaſt an Empire, *Solyman* thus ſtiling himſelf in his Letter to *Villerius*, great Maſter of the *Rhodes*, at ſuch time as he intended to invade that Iſland: i.e. Solyman *King of Kings*, *Lord of Lords*, *moſt high Emperor of* Conſtantinople *and* Trabezond, *the moſt mighty King of* Perſia, Syria, Arabia, *and the* Holy Land; *Lord of* Europe, Aſia, *and* Africa; *Prince of* Meccha, *and* Aleppo, Ruler *of* Hieruſalem, *and Soveraign Lord of all the Seas and Iſles thereof.*

As for the perſons of the *Turks*, they are generally well-complexioned, of good ſtature, proportionably compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things ſuperfluous; hot and venerous, ſervile to their Prince, and zealous in their Religion. They nouriſh no hair upon their heads, except it be a tuft on the top of their crowns; by which they think that *Mahomet* will ſnatch them up into Paradiſe at the day of judgement. For which reaſon they keep one of all ſides, though never ſo poor, accounting it an approbrious thing to ſee any men uncover their heads; ſaying when they diſlike any thing which they ſee or hear, *I had as lieſe thou hadſt ſhewn me thy bare skull.* In their familiar ſalutation they lay their hands on their boſomes, and a little incline their bodies; but when they accoſt a perſon of rank, they bow almoſt to the ground, and kiſs the hem of his garment. Walking up and down they never uſe, and much wonder at the often walking of Chriſtians. ***Biddulph*** relateth, that being at his ambulatory exerciſe with his companion, a *Turk* demanded them whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloiſter, why come you downwards? If to the nether end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief recreation, which they alſo follow with much lazineſs, ſitting on carpets in the ſhadow, and ſending ſome of their ſlaves to fetch their arrows. They prefer, as they paſs the ſtreets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made maſter of his ſword with whom they walk. As they ſhave their heads, ſo they wear their beards long, as a ſign of freedom; but their ſlaves keep theirs ſhaven and cloſe cut.

The women are of ſmall ſtature, for the moſt part ruddy, clear, and ſmooth as the poliſhed *Ivory*; as neither afflicted with the weather, and often frequenting the baths: of a very good complexion, ſeldom going abroad, and then masked: ;laſcivious within doors, pleaſing in matters of incontinency, and they are accounted moſt beautiful, which have the greateſt eyes, and are of the blackeſt hue. Every *Turk* is permitted to have four wives, and as many ſlaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending women being drowned, and the man diſmembred. Theſe women live in great awe and reſpect of their husband, never ſitting with him at the table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into ſome room. If their husband hath been abroad, at his coming in, they all riſe from their ſtools whereon they ſate, kiſs his hand, and make an obeiſance, and ſtand as long as he is in preſence. The children which they have, they carry not in their arms, as we do, but aſtride on their ſhoulders, they live immured from the ſight of the world: and permit not any male children, no not their own ſons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their husbands they cannot be divorced, but on ſpecial occaſion: but their husbands may put away their wives, or give them to their ſlaves, when, and as often as they liſt. Far better is it with the ſiſters or the daughters of the Sultan; to whom when her father or brother beſtoweth her on one of the *Baſſas*, he giveth her a dagger, ſaying, *I give thee this man to be thy ſlave or bedfellow; if he be not loving, obedient, and dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this* Canzharre *or dagger, to cut off his head.* When they are married, their husbands come not to bed unto them, till they are ſent for, and then alſo they creep in at the beds feet. That ever any of their Ladies made uſe of their daggers, I could never read. Onely I finde, that *Lutzis Baſſa*, the chief man of the Empire next the Sultan himſelf, and of him very much beloved; having given his wife, which was ſiſter to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, a box on the ear, was upon complaint by her made, thruſt from all his honours, baniſhed into *Macedon*, and had doubtleſs been ſlain, if the Emperours love and his own merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the prerogative of the Sultans daughter; her ſons being accounted as meer and ordinary *Turks* onely, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they ſhould be kept to harbour ſome aſpiring thoughts.

The better ſort of the *Turks* uſe the *Sclavonian* Tongue, the vulgar ſpeak the *Turkiſh* language; which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Perſians* their words of State; from the *Arabick*, their words of Religion; from the *Grecians*, their words or tearms of war; and from the *Italians*, their tearms of navigation.

They were formerly idolatrous Pagans, and were firſt initiated in *Mahometaniſm*, when they got the Soveraignty of the *Perſian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion are, 1. The *Saffi* or *Novices*; 2. The *Calſi*, or readers, 3. The *Hegi*, or writers of books, for printing they uſe not; 4. The *Napi*, or young Doctors; 5. The *Caddi*, whereof there is at leaſt one in every City, to judge of offences; 6. The *Mudreſſi*, who uſe to overſee the *Caddis*; 7. The *Medlis*, or principal Church-Governour under the *Muſti*; 8. The *Caldeleſcais*, whereof there are onely three, one of *Greece*, the other of *Anatolia*, the third for *Egypt* and *Syria*; and theſe ſit with the *Baſſa* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporal ſuits. 9. The *Muſti*, whoſe ſentence in Law and Religion is uncontroulable. He abaſeth not himſelf to ſit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more reverence to the Emperour, than he doth to him.

His forces are either for the ſea or the land. His ſea-forces are great in regard of his ſpacious ſea-coaſts, vaſt woods, and number of Subjects. He never ſuffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he ſhewed his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his onely veſſels, which being unable to cope with Ships of any bigneſs, were not onely the occaſion of that overthrow, but alſo have heartned the *Florentine*, with ſix great Ships of War only, to ſwagger in the ſeas; ſo that for more ſafety, the tribute of *Egypt* is of late ſent to *Conſtantinople* by land. The Captain *Baſſa*, or Admiral, notwithſtanding with a Navie of 60 ſail, makes a yearly progreſs about the ſeas, and ſea-Towns, to annoy the enemy, ſuppreſs Pyrats, collect the tributes, and to redreſs the abuſes committed in the maritime Towns belonging to the Admiralty: which annual circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*.

Their land forces are either horſe, or foot. They which ſerved on horſeback, are either the *Spahi*, or *Aſapi*: theſe latter ſerving to weary the enemies, and dull their ſwords with their multitudes; of whoſe bodies the *Janizaries* uſe to make mounts, whereon to aſſault the wall of a beſieged Town; and are by hem ſo contemned, that a *Janizarie* once ſold two of them for a ſheeps head. As for the *Sphahi*, they ill they are inrol'd into pay, are of the ſame originall and education with the *Janizaries*, and called by he ſame name, *Azamaglans*. Their pay is ten Aſpers a day. The *Turk* is able and doth maintain 50000 Horſes at little or no coſt, which no other Prince can do with fourteen millions of Gold. or whereſoever any parcell of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to he manuring of divers men, whom they call *Timariots*. Theſe are to pay unto the Emperour certain Rents; and at their own charges, to ſend to his Wars ſo many Horſe excellently appointed for he Field: and which is the chief point of their ſervice, to keep in awe the Subjects, in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, diſperſed in all quarters of his Dominions, the people can no ſooner ſtir, but theſe will be aſſembled and fall upon them. Theſe *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 257000 have their abode in *Europe*, and 402000 in *Aſia*, and *Africa*. Were it not for theſe *Timariots*, as the *Turks* ſaying is, no Graſs would grow, where the *Grand Signieurs* horſe hath once ſet his hoof: for if the care of manuring the ground were committed to Peaſants, and not to military men, the greateſt part of this Empire would grow waſte and deſolate. Theſe *Timariots* were inſtituted by *Ottoman*, the firſt *Turkiſh* King of this Family, and a curſe by him laid on them that ſhould annihilate the inſtitution. The name is derived from the *Turkiſh* word *Timar*, ſignifying a ſtipend.

But the nerves and ſinews of this warlike body are the *Janizaries*, who by originall being Chriſtians, are choſen by the *Turkiſh* Officers, every five years, out of his *Europæan* Dominions: and ſo diſtributed abroad to learn the language, cuſtomes, and religion of the *Turks*; afterward according to their ſtrength, will, or diſpoſition, placed in divers chambers. They of the firſt chamber are preferred, ſome to be *Chiauſies*, ſuch as go on Embaſſies, and execute judgements; others to *Sanziacks*, or Governours of Cities; ſome to be *Baſſas*, or Commanders of horſemen; and others to be *Beglerbegs* (*id eſt*, Lord of Lords) to command the reſt in generall. They of the other chambers, are the *Janizaries*, or *Prætorian* Souldiers of the Guard, to whoſe faith and truſt the care of the Emperours Perſon is comitted. The tithing of theſe young ſpringals is, as we have ſaid, every fifth year, and oftner ſometimes, as occaſions ſerve. By which means he not onely diſarmeth his own ſubjects, and keepeth them from attempting any ſtirre or innovation in his Empire: but ſpoileth all the Provinces he moſt feareth, of the Flower, Sinews and ſtrength of their People, choice being made of the ſtrongeſt youths only, and fitteſt for war. Theſe, before they are inrol'd in pay, are called *Azomoglans*, and behave themſelves with much ſubmiſſiveneſs towards their Seniours and governours: but when once they are honoured with the title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intolerable pride and haughtineſs; till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither now can any of their ſons be accounted any other than a naturall *Turk* (whom of all the reſt they account the baſeſt) the eldeſt onely excepted: to whom this Prerogative was granted by *Amurath* the third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000. of which 16000 are alwaies reſident in *Conſtantinople*. In this City they are diverſly employed, being as Conſtables, to ſee the Peace kept; as Clerks of the Market, to ſee to the weights and meaſures; as Officers, to arreſt common offenders; as Warders, to look to the Gates, to guard the houſes of Embaſſadours, and to travel with ſtrangers for their more ſafety; in which charge they are very faithfull. Their pay is but five *Aſpers* a day, and two gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, and 100 men being their greateſt preferments: yet are they very obſequious to their Captain or *Aga*, who is in place inferiour to the meaneſt *Baſſa*, though in power perhaps above the chiefeſt. For the crafty *Turks* join not power and authority, and if they obſerve the *Janizaries* to love and reſpect their *Aga*, they quickly deprive him of life and office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the firſt, *Anno* 1365. their greateſt eſtabliſher *Amurath* the ſecond: their name ſignifieth young Souldiers. Now concerning theſe *Janizaries*, we will further conſider the ſway they bear in deſigning the Succeſſor; 2ly. Their inſolency towards the Emperour, and his Officers; 3ly. Their behaviour in the vacancy of the throne; and 4ly. Their puniſhments.

1. Concerning the firſt, I never find any particular ſway the *Janizaries* carried in the deſignation of their Emperour, till the death of *Mahomet* the Great: when the *Baſſas* having choſen *Corcut* the Son of *Bajazet*, were over-ruled by the *Aga* and his *Janizaries*, who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*. Though I am not ignorant, that when this *Mahomet* ſucceeded in the Throne, the joyfull acclamations made by the Souldiers was accounted the chiefeſt ſigne of his ſecure and perpetuated eſtabliſhment. But the chief inſtance of their power herein, was the inthronizing of *Selimus* the firſt, who being but the ſeventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not only preferred by them before his brethren, in his Fathers life time; but by their aids alſo he ſeverally maſtered them, and in the end poiſoned his Father. To omit other examples, even of late, *Anno* 1622. they ſlew the young Emperour *Oſmen*, drew his Unkle *Muſtapha* out of priſon, and eſtabliſhed him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the firſt example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the reign of the above-mentioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Baſſa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperour, *They would teach him, like a drunkard, a beaſt, and a raſcall as he was, to uſe his great place and calling with more ſobriety and diſcretion.* Not long after, conceiving further diſpleaſure againſt the ſaid *Bajazet*, they ſhook their weapons againſt him, and refuſed to take him into the middeſt amongſt them, and were not without great and vile ſubmiſſion on his part, appeaſed. Againſt *Selimus* the firſt they alſo mutined, when being reſolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better purſuit of his victories againſt the *Perſian*, he was by them forced to return home to *Conſtantinople*. Againſt *Solyman* they mutined ſo violently, that they compelled him to diſplace *Ruſtan* his chief *Baſſa* or favorite. Againſt *Amurath* the 3d. for placing over them

a new *Aga*, they ſo ſtrongly oppoſed themſelves; that firſt they ſet fire on *Conſtantinople*, and burnt therein, beſides ſhops and ware-houſes, twenty five great Innes, ſeven Temples, and 15000 houſes: and in the end conſtrained him to give them money, and to yield alſo into their hands two of his chief Counſellors, by them ſuppoſed to be their adverſaries; whom they drew about the ſtreets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622 above-named) in the year 1600. they grew ſo diſcontented with *Mahomet* the 3d. that they not onely threatned to deſtroy the principall Officers of the Court, and the baniſhment of the *Sultaneſs* his Mother, but the depoſing of himſelf alſo.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the cuſtome of theſe *Janizaries*, between the death of an old *Emperor*, and the beginning of a new, to commit divers inſolencies; as the rifling of the houſes of the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Baſſas*, and principall men about the Court, whom they ſuſpected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outragious miſchiefs. Of theſe we finde frequent mention, as after the death of *Amurath* the 2d. and *Mahomet* the *Great*: at which laſt time the Merchants of *Conſtantinople*, being naturall *Turks*, eſcaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Baſſa* avoid the fury of their ſwords. This ſpoil they took for ſo certain a due, that if they were diſappointed of it, they would preſently raiſe commotions both in Court, Field, and City, unleſs ſome preſent ſatisfaction were made them. To this end, *Achmat* diſtributed among them, two millions and an half of Ducats; *Selimus* the firſt, two millions; others made an encreaſe of their daily pay. But *Selimus* the 2d. diſtributing among them 100000 *Sultanies* onely, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had inlarged his bounty: and the great *Baſſaes* were rapped about the pate with their *Callivers*, for perſwading them to quietneſs. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious liberty, which in the vacancy of the Empire was uſually committed; the death of the old Emperour was with all ſecrecy concealed, till the arrivall of the new. To omit others, I will inſtance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the firſt, and *Solyman* onely. This *Solyman* died at the ſiege of *Sigeth* in *Hungary*, which was ſo cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Baſſa*, the ſpace of twenty dayes, that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had poſſeſſed himſelf of *Conſtantinople*, and came alſo to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately ſtrangled the Phyſicians & Apothecaries, which knew of his death, commanded the Soulders to go on in their ſiege; and divers times ſhewed them the Emperor ſitting in his horſe-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he uſed to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead body, ſitting ſtill in the ſame manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the firſt, the *Baſſaes* of the Court called their *Divanos*, as formerly they uſed, gave order for the levying of an Army, as if ſome war were intended; and the Kings Phyſicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him ſtill in cure. But the Penſioners and *Janizaries* miſdoubting the matter, with all eagerneſs deſired to ſee him; which when the *Baſſaes* durſt not deny, they appointed the next day for their viſit. The next day the body was apparelled in Royal large robes, placed in a chair, at the end of a long gallery, and a little boy cunningly ſet behind him to move the Kings hand to his head, as if he ſhould ſtroke his beard, as his manner was: which ſignes of life and ſtrength the Souldiers ſeeing, held themſelves contented, and ſo was his death concealed the ſpace of 41 dayes.

4. As for the laſt, Theſe inſolent and unſufferable pranks committed ſo commonly by theſe maſterfull ſlaves, ſo exceedingly ſtomached *Bajazet* the 2d. that he ſecretly purpoſed with himſelf, for curing ſo dangerous a diſeaſe, to uſe as deſperate a remedy, which was, to kill and deſtroy ſuddenly all the *Janizaries*. It is like, that this *Bajazet* being a Scholar, had read how *Conſtantine* the Great had caſſed the *Pretorian* Souldiers, and deſtroyed their camp, as men that were the cauſes of all the ſtirs in his Empire, and whoſe pride was come to an intolerable height: and having the ſame cauſe to deſtroy his *Janizaries*, hoped to have done it with as much eaſe and ſafety as the other did. But they having notice of the plot, for the time continued ſo united and linked together, that he durſt not then attempt it; and afterward ſiding with his Son *Selimus*, caſt him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperors never durſt puniſh them openly; but when any of them proveth delinquent, he is ſent privately in the night time to *Pera* over againſt *Conſtantinople*, where by the way he is drowned, and a piece of Ordnance ſhot off, to ſignifie the performing of the *Sultans* command.

Now for the Emperors themſelves, we will conſider them in matters of pleaſure, in matters of ceremony, and in matters of State; the laſt being conſiderable in three main points, which are the murdering of their brethren, the removing of their Sons, their revenue, and therein a touch of their government. To theſe we will add, what apparent *ſymptomes* may be obſerved to prognoſticate the ſtanding, decreaſing, and increaſing of this puiſſant Monarchy.

1. For the firſt, he hath not ſo few as 500. (ſometimes a 1000) choice virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themſelves, all ſlaves born of Chriſtian Parents, and indeed the rareſt beauties of his Empire. When he is diſpoſed to take his pleaſure with any of them, they are all ranked in a gallery, and ſhe is by the *Aga* of the women prepared for his bed, to whom he giveth his handkercher. She that beareth him the firſt Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultaneſs* (Queen Mother we may call her) neither can he make any of them free unleſs he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are ſtrictly looked to, and liberally provided for, and not ſeldom times are beſtowed by the ſucceeding *Sultan*, on his great *Baſſaes*, and ſuch as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principall honour. They are attended on by women, and Eunuches; theſe being not gelded onely, but deprived of all their genitalls, and ſupplying the uſe of nature with a ſilver quill: which inhumane cuſtome was brought in among them by *Selimns* the ſecond, becauſe he had ſeen a Gelding cover a Mare.

2 Theſe ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the moſt part, the building of a *Moſque*, onely to help to the ſalvation of their ſouls; or towards them by others, which are moſt apparent in the entertainment of Embaſſadors. For when ſuch come to his preſence, they are led between two of his

Courtiers, and coming before the Throne (on both ſides whereof the *Baſſaes* ſit with admirable ſilence, reſembling rather *Statuaes* than men;) they bow themſelves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breaſt, but never uncovering their heads, which (as we before noted) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts towards a Prince ſo glorious. The reaſon why they are thus brought in between two, is ſaid to be for their greater honour: but is indeed a fear they have, leſt the *Grand Signieur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embaſſie, ſhould be ſtabbed. Which warineſs they have uſed, ever ſince the time that *Miles Cobiletz*, a *Servian*, ſcrambling from among the ſlain at the battel of *Caſſona*, and being admitted to the ſpeech of *Amurath* the firſt, the Author of that overthrow, ſtabbed him into the belly with his dagger.

3. Amongſt all the jarres and diſcontents that be, none have been with more unkindneſs begun, or more eagerneſs proſecuted, than thoſe of brothers; and that not only in private families, but in the ſtems of Princes: the multitude of Pretendants being the originall of moſt *civill wars*. To prevent theſe publick emotions, the Emperors of *Habaſſia* uſe to immure up all their younger children in the hill *Amaza*; the *Perſians* do put out the eyes of their younger brothers; and the *Turks* do murder them: ſtrange and horrid courſes, whereby to avoid the fear of a war in the State, they ſtir up a war in their own bowels. The firſt amongſt the *Turks* that began this barbarous cruelty, was *Bajazet* the firſt, on his brother *Jacup*: whom immediately after his Fathers death, he ſtrangled with a bow-ſtring: this being the only inſtrument of their *Fratricide*, becauſe thereby none of the blood-royall of *Ottoman* is ſpilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the *Great*, cauſed his young brother then at nurſe, to dy the death; and was not without much ado perſwaded from being the executioner himſelf. *Amurath* the third cauſed his five brethren to be at once ſtrangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his Son, no fewer than nineteen in one day. By this courſe they imagine their own eſtate to be infinitely ſecured, as knowing that *Muſtapha* a younger Son, ſtirred a rebellion againſt *Amurath*; and *Zemes*, againſt *Bajazet*; both the ſecond of thoſe names: that *Solyman*, *Muſa*, and *Iſa*, ſeverally afflicted *Mahomet* the firſt; and *Corcut*, *Selimus*; the firſt of theſe names alſo. But yet they will not know, that nothing ſooner putteth their younger brothers into theſe acts of hoſtility, than an inevitable certainty of a violent and unnatural death: whereas were they but ſure of life, and a liberall and Princely maintenance, it is more than probable, they would reſt content, as in other Kingdomes the younger Princes do. And notwithſtanding their barbarous policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the *counterfeits* have heretofore much diſturbed the quiet of their Predeceſſors: for thus we find *Amurath* the ſecond to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Muſtapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet*, then late deceaſed; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of ſedition in their neighbours Countreys. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*, after that a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm ſo often troubled with theſe *Mock-kings*, as *England*; a counterfeit *Richard* the 2d. being made in the time of *Hen.* the 4th. a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Hen.* the 6th. a counterfeit *Duke* of *York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Hen.* the 7th. and a counterfeit *Edw.* the 6th. under *Q. Mary*. To prevent theſe walking ſpirits, *Mahomet* the third laid out the dead bodies of his Father and nineteen brethren, as a common ſpectacle for all that paſſed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Signieur Muſtapha* miraculouſly ſcaped the bow-ſtring twice; 1. when his brother *Achmat*, and 2ly. when *Oſmen* his young Nephew, were made *Sultans*; and was the firſt in this Empire that ever were ſucceeded in the collaterall line, as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the ſecond, on the death of *Morat*, or *Amurath*, the fourth, his elder brother.

4. The removing of the young Princes is done for three reaſons: 1. to wean them from the pleaſures of the Court; 2ly. to train them up in arms, and inure them to hardneſs; 3ly. and principally to avoid the danger of a Competitor, whereof old Princes are eſpecially jealous. The common places deſtinated to this Princely exile, are *Amaſia*, in *Cappadocia*; *Magneſia*, in *Lydia*, and ſuch like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old Sultans by ſuch a great diſtance think themſelves ſecure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons actions, and have intelligence of almoſt every particular thought: the leaſt ſuſpition being cauſe ſufficient to deſtroy them. So we find *Muſtapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopefulleſt branch that ever ſprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been ſhamefully ſtrangled by the command of his Father; upon a rumour onely of a marriage, which he was ſaid to have negotiated with the *Perſian* Kings daughter. When theſe Princes are once ſetled in their government, it is a crime meriting no leſſe puniſhment than death, to depart thence and come unto *Conſtantinople*, before their Fathers death; or unleſs they are by their Fathers ſent for. Of this we have a Tragical example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the ſecond: who deſiring to ſee the faſhion of his Fathers Court, left *Magneſia* to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a ſeafaring man to *Conſtantinople*, and having obtained his deſire he returned to his charge. This ſtrange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variouſly interpreted, ſtirred ſuch jealouſies in the ſuſpicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him ſecretly poiſoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it conſiſteth either in money received, or in money ſaved. The money ſaved, is firſt by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his wars, without any pay but the ſpoil of the Enemy. And ſecondly, by the *Timariots*, who nouriſh and bring into the Field more horſes, than any Prince in Chriſtendome can keep (as we have already ſaid) for 14 millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Boterus*) is only 15 millions of *Sultanies*, which is nothing in reſpect of ſo great an Empire: the chief reaſon whereof is the Tyrannicall government of the *Turk*, which deters men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their eſtates; as knowing all

their gettings to lie at the *Grand Signieurs* mercy. His extraordinary revenue is incredible. For beſide that no Ambaſſadour cometh before him empty-handed; no man is maſter of his own wealth, furthe than it ſtands with the Emperours liking: ſo that his great *Baſſaes* are but as ſpunges, to ſuck up riche till their coffers ſwell; and then to be ſqueezed into his Treaſury. Theſe men, as he advanceth withou envy, ſo can he deſtroy without danger: no man here hoping for Partakers, if he ſhould reſiſt, as no being ignorant that one mans fortune is built on the deſired overthrow of another. Such riches as they gain, if they hap to die naturally, return to the Emperors coffers; who giveth only what he pleaſeth to the Children of the deceaſed. Theſe *Baſſaes* have in their particular Provinces, their *Divanoes*, or Law-Courts, where juſtice hath bin adminiſtred formerly with great integrity; but now not a little corrupted; yet the comfort is, that ſuch as miſcarry in their right, ſhall without delay know what to truſt to; and the *Baſſaes* upon complaint to the Emperor, are ſure to die for it. Over theſe *Baſſaes* (the chief of whom is the *Viſier Baſſa*, or Preſident of the Council) preſide two *Beglerbeggs*; one for *Greece*, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the preſent ſtate of the Empire, many judge it to be rather in the wane, than the increaſe; which judgement they ground upon good reaſons, whereof theſe are the chief.

1. The body is grown too monſtrous for the head: the Sultans, ſince the death of *Solyman*, never accompanying their Armies in perſon (except *Morat*, or *Amurath* the fourth) but rioting, and waſting their bodies and treaſures at home.

2. The *Janizaries*, who have been accounted the principall ſtrength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp: corrupted with eaſe and liberty, drowned in prohibited wines, enfeebled in the continual converſe of women, and fallen from their former auſterity of diſcipline.

3. They have of late given no increaſe unto their Dominions: and as in the paths of vertue, *non progredi eſt regredi*; ſo in Empires, by violence gotten, when they ceaſe to be augmented, they begin to be diminiſhed.

4. Rebellions have in theſe latter times been in this Empire ſtrangely raiſed, and mightily ſupported; which commotions the former Sultans were never acquainted with.

5. The greatneſs of the Empire is ſuch, that it laboureth with nothing more than the weightineſs of it ſelf; ſo that it muſt in a manner needs decline *Pondere preſſa ſuo*, overburdened with its own mightineſs: For as in a naturall body, a ſurfeit killeth more then faſting; ſo in the body *Politick* alſo, too much extent doth ſooner draw on a ruin, than either too little, or a mediocrity.

6. The Sons of the *Grand Signieur*, whoſe bravery of mind is ever ſuſpected by their Fathers, are nurſed up (contrary ſometimes to their natural inclinations) in all effeminacy; which once rooted in them in their youth, doth always after ſubject them to the ſoftneſs and baſeneſs of libidinous pleaſure.

7. They have loſt much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very name did carry with it: inſomuch that not the *Venetians* onely have by Sea often mated them, & once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* withſtood their greateſt forces, for the ſpace of 200. years, by land; the *Polonians* forced them to diſhonourable retreat and compoſition: but the poor Prince of *Tranſylvania* did divers times diſcomfit them, with the death of many of their *Baſſaes*; the *Florentine*, with ſix ſhips onely, intercepteth their trade; and the poor *Emir* of *Sidon* held it out againſt them many years together.

8. By the avarice and corruption reigning in the Court; all peace and war, all Counſels and informations, all injuries and favours, being now made ſaleable. And

9 It is viſible and apparent, that their Empire was long ſince at the higheſt: *Et naturaliter quod procedere non poteſt, recedit*, as *Vellius* hath it: when an Empire can aſcend no higher, by the ordinary courſe of nature it muſt have a fall. All theſe are more then probable *prognoſticks* of a ſinking Monarchy: and yet there is a greater then any of theſe, that is to ſay, the preſent State of Affairs. The young Emperor *Mahomet* the fourth, now reigning, is but a weak ſtaff to ſupport ſo vaſt an Empire: conſidering not onely the infinite caſualties, to which children are naturally ſubject; but the dangers which he may juſtly fear from a rebellious Souldiery, and a factious Court. Who by the murder of one Emperor, and the depoſition of two, have made themſelves ſo formidable, but withall ſo odious in the ſight of the Imperiall houſe, that there is no way left to ſave them from a merited vengeance, but to tranſlate the Empire to ſome other Family, though by the rooting out of this. Which whenſoever it ſhall happen, either by the naturall death, or unnaturall deſtruction of the preſent *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* race: which I look on as a matter not to be avoided, except by miracle. Suppoſing then the line of *Ottoman* to fail, (as it is moſt probable that it will) what will become of this vaſt Empire? Three there will be, to offer at it, viz. the *Crim-Tartars*, the *Janizaries*, and the *Baſſas*. And firſt, the *Crim-Tartar* may plead a compoſition made by his Anceſtors, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* family; which is, that he ſupplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, ſhould on the failer of the heirs males ſucceed in this Empire. Beſides which, he may hope for no ſmall ſuccors, not onely from the reſt of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Cham* himſelf, to recover his eſtate herein, if withholden from him: thereby to adde unto the preſent greatneſs and renown of the *Tartars*, the acceſs of ſuch a ſpacious Empire. 2ly. The *Baſſaes* may conceive no ſmall poſſibilities, of dividing this great Empire among themſelves, partly by the example of *Alexanders* Captains, who after their Maſters death (there being yet ſome of the blood-Royall remaining) parted among themſelves not onely the new-gotten Provinces, which they had gotten from the *Perſians*; but even the Kingdome of *Macedon*, his old Inheritance: partly by an example in their own Hiſtories, by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Aladine* the 2d. *Caraman*, *Sarachan*, *Ædin*, *Caraſus*, and the reſt of the more powerfull Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkiſh* Kingdome in the *Leſſer Aſia*: and partly by the opportunity

which they have as Governours in their ſeveral Provinces, and having ſo many bands of Souldiers under their command; which may eaſily inveſt them as *Proprietaries* in thoſe Eſtates; of which they have already ſuch a fair poſſeſſion. And ſo we find the *Sultans* or Provincial Governours of the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*, to have done before them. 3ly. The *Janizaries* may alſo build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly. Who to excite them to the Enterprize have the example of the *Prætorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body far more politique and better compacted than this is); who out of their own company created the far greater part of the *Roman* Emperours, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppoſe them in it. But above all Examples, that of the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt* doth make faireſt for them; who were born of *Chriſtian* Parents, as theſe are; appointed for the Guard of the *Sultans*, as theſe are; purpoſely entertained and inured to the wars, to take from the natural ſubjects the uſe of Arms, as theſe are; men of approved valour, and the chief Bulwark of that Kingdom againſt the *Chriſtians*, as theſe are: and then why may they not be like them in this laſt Attempt, for ſitting in their Maſters Throne, as theſe *Mamalucks* did. Adde hereunto, that they are already (in a manner) poſſeſſed of *Conſtantinople*, the head town and heart of the Empire: and their hopes are not vain. For my part, I hold them to be the men moſt like to carry it, unleſs the Princes of *Chriſtendome* laying aſide private malice, joyn all in arms to ſtrip this proud Peacock of his feathers: and (upon ſo bleſſed an advantage) to break in pieces with a rod of iron, this inſolent and burdenſome Monarchy. A thing rather to be deſired than expected. But this by way of ſuppoſition, and as in a dream, I awake again.

The enſign of this Empire (or arms of it) is the *Croiſſant*, or half moon; but how blazonned I cannot tell you: nor are the learned yet reſolved on the beginnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them, from the Eaſtern *Gentiles*, who worſhipped the Moon under both ſexes; as we learn in *Spartianus*. Some make it common to them, with the other *Mahumetans*; and they derive it from a pretended miracle of *Mahomet*; who to ſhew his power, is ſaid to have made the Moon fall into his lap in two pieces, and to have reſtored her whole again to the heavens. Others are of opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Signieur* at the winning of *Conſtantinople*; *ut ſignum victa gentis penes quam orientis imperium eſſet.* And of this mind is *Juſtus Lipſius*, induced thereto, as it ſeemeth, by the figure of the *Croiſſant* born in ſome old *Bizantine* coins. A pretty plauſible conceit; and therefore, till we have a better, may paſs as currant as the money.

And thus much I thought convenient to inſert in this place, concerning the original, proceeding, and continuance; the natural diſpoſitions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: this being as the only Province which retaineth their name; ſo both the firſt they were poſſeſſed of, and the laſt which they have fully conquered, of all their Dominions.

And thus much of *Turcomania*.

* * *

OF
MEDIA and PERSIA:

THeſe I have joyned together alſo, becauſe the affairs thereof have been ſo united, in making up the ſecond of the four great *Monarchies*, and running the ſame fortunes ever ſince; that they are hardly to be parted in courſe of ſtory, though each muſt have unto it ſelf a diſtinct *Chorographie*. Firſt then, we begin with *MEDIA*.

MEDIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Parthia*, and ſome part of *Hyrcania*, Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; on the Weſt, with *Armenia Major*, and ſome part of *Aſſyria*; on the North, with the *Caſpian* Sea, and thoſe parts of *Armenia Major* which now paſs in the accompt of *Georgia*; and on the South, with *Perſia*. So called from *Madai* the Son of *Japhet*, by whom firſt planted and poſſeſſed, after that general diſperſion made at *Babel*. Known by this name amongſt the antients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time called *Sheirvan* by the *Turks*, and *Perſians*; the word ſignifying in the language of this Countrey, a *Milkie-Plain*.

The Countrey of a large extent, and of ſo different nature, as one would think it not the ſame. The North parts lying betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrcanian* Sea; very cold and comfortleſs: ſo barren, that for the moſt part they make their bread of dried *Almonds*, and their drink of the juice of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and thoſe but of Apples; nor any droves of tame cattel, as in other places, their food being generally on *Veniſon*, or the fleſh of wild beaſts took in hunting. But on the South-ſide of the *Taurus*, the ſoyl is very rich, and the Countrey pleaſant, plentifull both of corn and wine, and all things neceſſary; full of fat paſtures, ſome of them ſo large in compaſs, that 50000 horſes do graze upon it.

The people antiently great warriers, as thoſe who ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themſelves and their own vertue, the foundation of the ſecond *Monarchy*. But being not long after incorporated into the ſame Empire with the *Perſians*, have not onely ever ſince followed the ſame fortunes with them, but participate of their nature alſo: and therefore we ſhall hear more of their *Character*, when we come to *Perſia*. *Polygamie* antiently amongſt them, ſo far from being eſteemed a ſin or an inconvenience, that it was a puniſhment for the common *Villager* to have leſs than ſeven wives; or the woman, if of noble birth, fewer than five husbands. In their wars they uſe commonly to envenom their arrows with an oyl or liquor, made of a *bituminous* water called *Naphta*; whereof there is great plenty both here, in *Perſia*, and *Aſſyria*. The oyl called *Oleum Mediacum*, from this people onely, becauſe their invention, and by them moſt miſchievouſly uſed. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being ſhot from a ſlack bowe (for a ſwift and ſtrong motion takes away its vertue) did burn the fleſh, wherein it faſtned with ſo great a violence, that nothing but duſt could mitigate the fury of it; water increaſing rather than diminiſhing that malignant flame.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was firſt here planted by Saint *Thomas*, but never had the happineſs to be ſo univerſally embraced, as in other places; always oppoſed and ſuppreſſed, either by *Paganiſm* in the time of [illegible] *Perſian* Kings; or by *Mahometaniſm*, ſince the firſt Conqueſt of this Countrey by the power of the [illegible]. Some *Chriſtians* yet there be amongſt them, either of the *Armenian*, or *Neſtorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Perſian* Empire) the ſpecialties of whoſe *Religion* have been elſewhere ſpoke of. Here live alſo very many *Jews*, indulged the free exerciſe of their *Religion*: many of which are Deſcendants of thoſe *Tribes*, which were tranſplanted hither by *Salmanaſſar*. But the *Religion* generally embraced and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Perſian* Sects; the Language of which Nation they do alſo ſpeak, though they had a language of their own, different from that of the *Parthian*, *Elamite*, or *Perſian*, as appeareth *Acts* 2. *v*.9. where they are reckoned as diſtinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1. *Orontes*, 2. *Coronus*, 3. *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Aſſyria*, 4. *Jaſonium*, 5. *Lagoas*; all of them (except *Chaboras* only) the diſjointed branches of Mount *Taurus*; which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his courſe beſides.

Out of theſe flow their principal Rivers, 1. *Amandus*, 2. *Strato*, and 3. *Carindas*; of greateſt eminence in this Countrey, in the time of *Ptolomy*, but otherwiſe of no great account or obſervation. 4. *Canac*, the Divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*; but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Adde hereunto the great Lake, now called *Argis* (by the *Perſians*, *Vuſthlan*) but by *Strabo* named *Martiana Palus*, ſcituate in the confines of *Aſſyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the fiſh whereof, dried by the Sun and wind, and ſold into divers other Countries, the people of theſe parts raiſe a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many *Provinces*; the principal of which, 1. *Tropatene*, 2. *Charomithrene*, 3, *Darites*, 4. *Marciane*; 5. *Amariace*, and 6. *Syro-Media*: theſe and the reſt reduced to two in the later reckonings, viz. *Atropatia*, and 2 *Media Major*.

1. ATRO-

Atropatia.

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governour of theſe parts in the time of *Darius*; the laſt *Perſian* Monarch, who ſo valiantly held out againſt the *Macedonians*: The *Tropatene* (as I take it) of the antient Writers. A barren, cold, and unhoſpitable Countrey, as before deſcribed: and for that cauſe allotted for the dwelling of many of the captive *Iſraelites*, brought hither by *Salmanaſſar* when he conquered that Kingdom: their numbers being found ſo great in this Northern Region, that *Benjamin* the *Jew* reckoned no fewer than 50000 of them in one City onely, which he calleth by the name of *Madai*. And that great numbers of them were tranſplanted hither, appeareth by that paſſage 2 *Kings* 17.6. where it is ſaid, that they were placed in *Halah* and *Habor* by the River of *Gozan*, and *in the cities of the* Medes. Now *Halab* or *Chalah* ſeems moſt probably to be that region of *Aſſyria* which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chalatone*, in the North of that Countrey, towards *Media*: *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chaberus*, which parteth this Countrey from *Aſſyria*, in which mountainous tract there was in thoſe times a City of the ſame name alſo. Betwixt which City and the banks of the *Caſpian* Sea, I finde in *Ptolomy* the City *Gauzania*, in the fortieth degree and forty minutes of Northern Latitude: in which there are apparent footſteps of the name of the River *Gozan*, upon whoſe banks it was moſt likely to be ſeated.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Hamadum*, by *Benjamin* the *Jew* called *Madai*, repleniſhed in his time with families of the captive *Iſraelites*. 8. *Gauzavia*, another dwelling of thoſe Tribes, ſpoken of before. 3. *Mandagarſis*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4. *Gelan*, the *Gelæ* of the antients, whom the *Greeks* call *Caduſii*. 5. *Bochu*, more towards the *Caſpian* Sea, hence called *Mare de Bochu*. 6. *Eres*, a place of great ſtrength, but poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, and made the reſidence of ſome of their principal Officers: taken by *Muſtapha* General of the *Turkiſh* forces in the time of *Amurath* the 3d. and by him fortified as the Gate and entrance of this Countrey. 7. *Shumachia*, or *Shamaki*, betwixt *Eres* and *Derbent*, taken by *Oſman Baſſa*, at the ſame time, *Anno* 1578. and made the Reſidence of a *Beglerbeg*; *An.* 1583. Conceived to be the *Cyropolis* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Perſians* called *Cyreckbata*; bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch, by whom built or beautified. Remarkable at the preſent for a Pillar of flint-ſtones, inter-woven with the heads of many of the *Perſian* Nobility, moſt barbarouſly ſlain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a terrour to others.

2. *MAJOR MEDIA*, or *MEDIA* ſpecially ſo called, is that part hereof, which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Antients, for one of the goodlieſt Countries in all *Aſia*: the fields (ſaith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatneſs and fertility very rich, and no leſs pleaſant for freſh Springs and clear veins of water: where one may ſee plenty of great Meadows; and in them a breed of generous horſes, which they call *Niſæi*, mounted by as valiant and generous Riders, who with great jollity uſe to go unto the wars, and charge furiouſly upon the Enemy. The men commended by *Polybius* (κατὰ τὰς ἀρετὰς ἀνδρῶν, &c.) as well as the Countrey.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1. *Ecbatana*, of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we finde that *Semiramis* the wife of *Ninus*, in a war made againſt the *Medes*, who had then rebelled, taking an affection to the place, cauſed water-courſes to be made to it from the further ſide of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a paſſage thorow the hills, with great charge and labour: Deſtroyed by the injury of time, it was re-edified by *Deioces* the ſixth King of the *Medes*; and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Seleucus Nicanor*, Succeſſor unto *Alexander* in his *Aſian* Conqueſts. For beauty and magnificence little inferiour to *Babylon*, or *Ninive*, before beſcribed. In compaſs 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 *Italian* miles. The walls thereof affirmed, in the book of *Judith*, to be 70 *Cubits* high, 50 *Cubits* broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 *Cubits* higher; all built of hewn and poliſhed ſtone, each ſtone being ſix *Cubits* in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be underſtood onely of the innermoſt wall; there being ſeven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each diſtinguiſhed by the colour of their ſeveral Pinacles; which gave unto the eye a moſt gallant *Proſpect*. From which variety of colours it is thought to have the name of *Agbatha*, or *Agbathana*. In former times, the ordinary reſidence of the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Perſians*, in the heats of the ſummer; as *Suſa* (the chief City of *Suſiana*) in the cold of winter. The Royal Palace being about a mile in compaſs, was built with all the coſt and cunning, that a ſtately manſion did require: ſome of the beams thereof of *ſilver*, and the reſt of *Cedar*; but thoſe of *Cedar* ſtrengthned with plates of *Gold*. Said by *Joſephus* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*. Which muſt be underſtood no otherwiſe, in the truth of Story, than that he over-ſaw the *Workmen*, or contrived the *Model*; appointed to that office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the building of the ſame is aſcribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* race, it became a ruine. 2. *Tauris*, ſcituate in or near the place of *Ecbatana*, out of whoſe rubbiſh it was built. Diſtant 150 miles from the *Caſpian* Sea, under the ſhadow of *Orontes*, now called *Baronta*; but opening Southwards, towards a large and ſpacious *Campaign*: in compaſs about ſix miles, and beautified on the South-weſt within a large and pleaſant garden, the work of Sultan *Tamas*, who reſided here often; the buildings for the moſt part of brick, with flat roofs (as generally in all the Eaſt) well peopled, as containing 200000 perſons of all ſorts and Sects. Of great trading, till ſubdued by the *Turks*, by whom it was thrice taken within very few years, *viz.* by *Selimus* the firſt, *Anno* 1514. by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1530. and by *Oſman Baſſa*, general of *Amurath* the 3d. *Anno* 1585. But this laſt finding it too chargeable to be alwaies garriſoned, and not otherwiſe tenable but by force, pulled down the walls, and built a large and capacious *Citadel*: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Hamze Mirza*, Prince of *Perſia*, and father of Sultan *Soffy*, *Anno* 1614. after it had been for a hundred years a continual prey unto the *Turks*. 3. *Arſacia*, ſo named by *Ptolomy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by ſome of the *Parthian* race. Ruined long ſince, but more beautifully revived than ever, in the preſent. 4. *Casbin*, raiſed from the ruines of that Town. Scituate in a fair and open place on the banks of a little River, which ſerveth it for houſhold uſes, but not for traffick.

Exceedingly enriched by removal of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamus*; partly invited thereunto by the richneſs of the ſoyl, and the commodiouſneſs of the place: but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his dominions. In compaſs about ſeven miles, beautified with a large market-place, many ſtately *Moſques*, and the *Sultans* Palace: this laſt adjoyning to the firſt, convenient enough, but neither of great ſtate nor beauty. 5. *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the book of *Tobit*, ſo called from *Ragas* the ſon of *Phaleg*, the founder of it: ſcituate near the ſpacious Plain, ſo memorable for the great breed of horſes ſpoken of before; and therefore in that book called the *Plain of Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Europus*, and ſo ſtands in *Ptolomy*. 6. *Naſſivan*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Artaſata*, more probably the *Naſuana*, of the Antient Writers: a place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Perſian* wars. 7. *Ardoville*, on or near the banks of the great Lake *Argis*, ſpoken of before; the birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Aider*, the firſt Authors of the *Sophian* Sect; and the burial-place of Sultan *Hyſmael* the firſt *Perſian* Sultan of that line. 8. *Sultania*, about ſix days journey from *Taurus*, environed with high Mountains; the tops of which continually covered with ſnow, may be ſeen far off: founded by *Alyaptu*, the eighth King of the ſixth or *Tartarian* Dynaſty; and by him made the Royal Seat of the *Perſian Sultans*, whence it had the name. But ruined by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former ſplendor, but the *Moſques*, or Temples, (one of them, the faireſt in the Eaſt) which the *Tartars* ſpared. 9. *Tyroan*; in the Territory of *Sultania*, ſcituate in a large Plain, but not far from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place, many pleaſant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environed with a wall of greater circuit than the City. 10 *Turcoman*, in the middle way betwixt *Taurus* and *Casbin*. 11. *Damoan*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 houſes, not here conſiderable but for the ſignification of the name; which is ſaid to ſignifie a *Second Plantation*: and being ſcituate at the foot of ſo high a Mountain, occaſioneth ſome of the *Jews* to think, that the *Ark* reſted not far off, as perhaps it did not. 12. *Marant*, in the Extremity of the Countrey, but of leſſer note.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the poſterity of *Madai*, as before was ſaid; *Ragan* the ſon of *Phalag* taking up thoſe parts, which lay next *Aſſyria*. Divided in long tract of time into ſeveral *Tribes*, as the *Codusii*, *Amariacle*, *Margaſi*, *Sagartii*, *Debryces*, *Tapyri*, and ſome others. Governed by *Kings* immediately from the firſt *Plantation*; for we finde that *Pharnus* King hereof was overthrown and ſlain by *Ninus* the grand-ſon of *Nimrod*. After this made ſubject to the *Aſſyrians*, their Kings were only *titular*; at the beſt but *Homagers*, perhaps no better than *Provincial* Governours, under that great Monarchy. Of moſt eſteem amongſt them was that *Arſaus*, who with an Army of 800000 men (if the number be not miſtaken) incountred the *Caduſii*, by whom diſcomfited and ſlain. But the *Caduſii* ſo broken, that they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Perſians*; and ſo continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the laſt of theſe *Provincials*, and the firſt Monarch of the *Medes*. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to ſee his Lord and Maſter in a womans dreſs, ſpinning among his Concubines, and otherwiſe behave himſelf in a brutiſh manner; which ſo moved him, that he reſolved to be no longer ſubject to ſo vile a Monſter. Communicating his thoughts unto *Beloehus*, Governour of *Babylon*, and well ſeen in *Aſtrology*, he was incouraged to proceed; and ſped ſo well, that having made themſelves Maſters of *Ninive*, the imperial City (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them ſhrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his Eſtates. To *Belochus* fell *Aſſyria*, and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the Weſt of *Tigris*: to *Arbaces*, *Media* and the reſt, which now make up the Kingdome of *Perſia*. But being a mild Prince, and deſirous by fair and gentle means to aſſure his Empire, he confirmed the *Perſian Satrapaes* in their former Government; reſerving nothing to himſelf but a *titular Soveraignty*. Of whom and his Succeſſors more, when we have taken in the reſt of the Provinces.

PERSIA.

PERSIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *India*; on the Weſt, with *Media*, *Aſſyria*, and *Chaldaea*; on the North, with *Tartary*; on the South, with the main Ocean. So called from *Perſis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave law to all the reſt: as that is ſaid to do from *Perſeus*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirmed by the *Grecians* to have conquered theſe *Eaſtern* Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus *Iſodore*, Perſæ *populi à* Perſeo *Rege ſunt vocati, qui à* Græcia *in* Aſiam *tranſiens ibi barbaras gentes gravi diuturnoque bello perdomuit, & victor nomen ſubactæ Genti impoſuit*. In the Scripture it is conſtantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam* the ſon of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Perſians* had ſubdued *Babylon*, and transferred the ſupreme Monarchy to themſelves, we finde this people called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Perſian* ſeems to come) the word *Paras*, (or *Pharas*) ſignifying as much as horſemen. Given therefore to this Nation, as it is ſuppoſed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not onely taught them the art of *horſemanſhip*, but ſet forth a law, that it ſhould be a reproach to any man to go on foot; *ſive multum ſive parum itineri eſſet conficiendum*, whether the journey that he had to go were long or little. Called ſometimes alſo *Achæminis*, from *Achæmenes* the Son of *Perſes*, one of the firſt known Kings hereof; and by that name (*Non tot* Achæmeniis *armantur* Suſa *Sagittis*) they occurre in the ſecond of *Propertius*. Where by *Achæmeniæ Sagittæ*, he means *Perſian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, ſtretched out in length from the 82 degree of *Longitude*, to the 120. being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23 degree of Northern *Latitude*, to the 43. being 20 more. According unto which poſition, with reference to the heavenly bodies, we ſhall finde it ſeated under the third, fourth, fifth, and ſixth *Climates*: the longeſt ſummers day in the Southern parts; being thirteen hours almoſt three quarters; and fifteen hours, one quarter, in the parts moſt Northwards.

The Countrey not alike in all places, as it is impoſſible it ſhould in ſo great a compaſs. But generally it is of a pure & wholſome air, the high hills ſhading it on the one ſide from the heat of the *Clime* under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sea, wherewith encompaſſed, cheriſhing a great part thereof. And ſo it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius. Regio non alia in tota Aſia ſalubrior habetur; temperatum cœlum, hinc perpetuum jugum opacum & umbroſum, quod aſtas levat; illinc mare adjunctum, quod modico tepore terras fovet.* Then for the earth, it is by reaſon of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and ſandy, in many places deſtitute of water, few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by conſequence, neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatneſs of it: men loving to inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the uſe of water. Which notwithſtanding it is furniſhed with all neceſſaries both for life and pleaſure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as ſhall be ſhewed in the deſcription of the ſeverall Provinces.

The people antiently were trained up to the wars, but chiefly unto *Archery*, from their very childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many wives as they pleaſed, they never ſaw the children begotten of them, until five years old. At that age ſent unto their Fathers, they were taught preſently to handle the *Bow* and *Arrows*. Upon this ground we finde the *Bow of Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jer.* Chap. 4. and the *Quiver of Elam*, by the Prophet *Iſaiah*, Chap. 22. v. 6. as the Arms peculiar to that Nation, or moſt uſed amongſt them. They were good *horſemen* alſo, and well skilled in their darts and ſlings, till wealth, and eaſe, & the pride of ſo great an Empire, made them wholly feminine: depriving them of thoſe abilities both of mind and body, wherein they did excell moſt Nations in their harder times. In all their fortunes very obſequious, if not ſervile, to their Kings and Princes, in whoſe preſence it was a crime to ſpit: but to deny obedience to his commands, an offence ſo heinous, as was not to be puniſhed with leſs than the loſs of life, and want of burial. In this obſervance of their Kings, followed, if not out-ſtripped by the modern *Perſian*. A race of men, affirmed to be *cunctorum hominum mitiſsimi*, the moſt meek or patient of the world, eſpecially compared with thoſe of the ſame Religion, the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of learning, as the *Turks*; but ſtudious, many of them, in *Phyſick* and *Aſtrology*; moſt of the better ſort much delighted in *Poetry*, which they give their minds to. For the moſt part addicted to *hoſpitality*, magnificent in expence, Lordly in their complements, fantaſtical in their Apparel, maintainers of *Nobility*, and deſirous of peace. Such as apply themſelves to *Trades*, and Mechanick Arts, prove excellent in the making of Silks, and Cloth of Gold: thoſe which betake themſelves to war, proving very good Souldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their coſt, who by their long wars againſt them have got nothing but blows. The women ſaid to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightfull in the ſequeſtration of pleaſure.

Their *Religion* at the firſt was *Paganiſm*, wherein directed principally by their Prieſts or *Magi*; men of a ſtrict auſtere life, forbidding outward ornaments, and the uſe of gold; making the ground their bed, and the herbs their food; their whole time ſpent in offering to the Gods the prayers and ſacrifices of the people, as if they onely might be heard; or elſe in divinations, and foretelling of things to come, from whence the names of *Magick* and *Magician* are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not onely *Philoſophy*, lovers of wiſdom; but *Philothei*, lovers of God. Of ſuch eſteem, that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Perſian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the diſcipline of the *Magi*: and of ſuch power and intimacy in the Royal Court, that one of thoſe *Magi*, on the death of *Cambyſes*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the *Perſian* Monarchy. In a word, ſuch as the *Druides* were to the *Gauls* and *Britains*, the *Gymnoſophiſts*, or *Brachmans* to the antient *Indians*, and the *Chaldæans* in the Empire of *Babylon*; the ſame, if not of greater ſway in affairs of moment, were the *Perſian Magi*. And *Perſians* they muſt be, if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Countrey being to admitted of that Society: though by a *Metaphor* applyed to the Profeſſors of the ſame Arts, though of other Countries; as thoſe which came from the Eaſt to worſhip *Chriſt*, are by Saint *Matthew* called *Magi* (*Mat.* 2. 1.) though they came from *Arabia*.

The people then were *Gentiles*, as to their Religion; and beſides other Gods which the *Gentiles* worſhipped, they were great *Idolaters* of the *Fire*: which they offered ſacrifice unto in time of peace, and carried it with them as their *Tutelar Deitie*, in the time of war. At what time (eſpecially if the King were there in perſon) it was born in the very front of their Army, attended on by their *Prieſts*, and followed by a train of boyes all clothed in Scarlet, to the number of 365. according to the number of the days of the year. In this equipage, with a great deal of pomp beſides, did *Darius* ſet forward to fight with *Alexander*, at the battel of *Iſſus* in *Cilicia*. A ſuperſtition derived from them to the *Medes*, and *Aſſyrians*, their next-neighbouring Nations, and not extinguiſhed to this day in ſome parts of this Countrey: in which many of theſe *Fire-worſhippers* are ſtill remaining. But from a God, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman-Vſher*, and to attend on Kings and perſons of greateſt eminence: uſed to be born before the Emperors of *Rome*, as a point of *State*. Inſomuch that *Commodus* though fallen out with his Siſter *Lucilla*, permitted her notwithſtanding to enjoy her Seat in the publique *Theatre*, ϗ πῦρ προπομπεύειν αὐτῆς, and fire to be born before her, as in former times, as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Chriſtian faith was firſt planted in the Provinces of the *Perſian* Kingdome, by Saint *Thomas* the Apoſtle, and held in all points anſwerable to thoſe of the *Catholick* Church; till *Sapores* to deſpight the Emperour *Heraclius*, a right *Orthodox* Prince, commanded that all the Chriſtians in his Dominions ſhould conform themſelves to the opinions and tendries of the *Neſtorian* Sect, by that means univerſally ſpread over all theſe Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled ſome *Armenian* Chriſtians, who with their Patriarch removed hither, when their own Countrey was made the ſeat of a long and miſerable war betwixt the *Perſian* and the *Turk*; but found not here ſo ſafe a dwelling as they did expect: 1200 of them being ſlain by *Abas* the late *Perſian* Sultan, on a ſuſpicion that they went about to

recon-

Suſiana.

reconcile themſelves to the Pope of *Rome* (whom he held to be more inclinable to the *Turk* than to him) in the year, 1609. Which notwithſtanding (ſo miſerable a condition do theſe Chriſtians live in) he ſuffered two Convents of *Auguſtine* and *Carmelite* Friers to be ſetled at the ſame time, even in *Spaw-hawn* it ſelf; and many *Jeſuits* to live peaceably up and down the Countrey, which ſerve for little elſe than to give intelligence. Here are alſo many *Jews* diſperſed over all the Provinces of this Empire, allowed their *Synagogues*, and Publique Places of Aſſembly. But the Religion publikely authorized and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, impoſed on this Countrey by the *Saracens*, when by them ſubdued: differing in ſome points from the *Turks*, eſpecially about the true Succeſſor of that falſe Seducer (of which more anon;) the cauſe of the long wars betwixt thoſe Nations.

As for the *Perſian* Language, it is very ancient, ſuppoſed to be as old as the Confuſion at *Babel*; ſome words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra*, which lived in the *Perſian* Court, have been made uſe of in ſome parts of the holy Scripture. A tongue which ſtill hath left ſome remainders of it, in the language of the modern *Perſian* (as thoſe of judgement in this tongue have delivered to us:) notwithſtanding ſo long tract of time, and the conqueſt of this Countrey by the *Greeks*, *Arabians*, *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not ſpoken onely in this Countrey, nor limited within the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; but uſed alſo in the Court and Camp of the *Great Mogul*, and ſome parts of *Zagathay*; and where not *vulgar* unto all, ſtudied and underſtood by perſons of more eminent ſort, as the *Latine* by the Gentry of theſe Weſtern parts. Inſomuch as he that hath this Language may travell over all the *Eaſt* without an *Interpreter*.

Rivers here are but few, as before was ſaid, and thoſe few not navigable; by conſequence, of little note or eſtimation. The principal of thoſe that be, are 1. *Eulæus*, the chief River of *Suſiana*, emptying it ſelf into *Sinus Perſicus*: a River of ſo pure a ſtream, that the great *Perſian* Kings would drink of no other water. 2 *Ochus* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongſt the Antients, becauſe it was navigable; opening with a fair Channel into the *Caſpian* Sea, to which it haſtneth from *Mount Taurus*: and ſo doth alſo, 3. *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a fatal bound to theſe great neighbors. A River which the *Perſians* have ſeldom paſſed to inlarge their Dominions, but they received ſome notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*; and when the *Tartars* made over it, under the conduct of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*, for the invaſion of *Perſia*, they were ſhamefully beat back again by *Hyſmael Sophie*. Nor is it leſs memorable in old ſtories, for the famous paſſage of *Alexander* over it, in purſuit of the murderers of *Darius*. For having followed *Beſſus* to the banks of this River, and not knowing how to paſs over his men, there being neither ſhips upon it, nor timber neer at hand to build them, he cauſed a great number of bags and bladders to be ſtuffed with ſtraw, and ſo in three days tranſported his Army. So that I may truly ſay, with his owu Hiſtorian, *Unum id Conſilium quod neceſſitas ſubjecerat, iniit*; neceſſity is the beſt Author of fine inventions. 4. *Zioberis* in *Hyrcania*, which riſing out of the ſame mountainous tract (as the two laſt mentioned) after a long courſe above ground, in the open light, hideth himſelf again for the ſpace of 38 miles, and then breaketh out at a new fountain, and falleth into, 5 *Rhadaga*, another chief River of thoſe parts. And this *Alexander* the *Great* found to be true, by caſting two Oxen into the River *Zioberis*, which by the current of the ſtream were carried under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its riſe again. 6 *Hidero*, by what name known unto the Antients I am not able to ſay, but of great note amongſt modern *Travellers*, for the fall thereof into the Sea: ſo ſteep and ſtrong, that the people are ſaid to ſacrifice or banquet under the fall thereof, the ſtream ſo violently ſhooting over their heads, that it never wetteth them.

Mountains of moſt note, are thoſe which paſs by the name of *Taurus*, which having left *Media* on the Weſt, paſſeth thorow the Northern Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire; dividing *Parthia* from *Hyrcania*, and *Paropamiſus* from *Bactria*, and *Aria* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Coronus*, the *Seriphian* hills, *Paropamiſus*, *Caucaſus*; whereof more as occaſion ſerveth, in their proper places.

It is divided into particular Provinces of, 1. *Suſiana*, 2. *Perſis*, 3. *Carmania*, 4. *Ormuz*, 5 *Gedroſia*, 6. *Drangiana*, 7. *Aria*, 8. *Parthia*, 9. *Arachoſia*, 10. *Paropamiſus*, 11. *Hyrcania*, and 12. *Margiana*. Which we will ſeverally ſurvey in the *Chorography* and ſtory, till we have joyned them altogether in the *Perſian* Monarchy; and then purſue the hiſtory as conjunct and faſhioned into the body of one Empire.

1. *SUSIANA.*

SUSIANA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Perſis*; on the Weſt, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldæa*; on the North, with *Aſſyria*; on the South, with a branch of the River *Tygris*, and ſome part of the Gulfe of *Perſia*.

It was ſo called, *quaſi Cuſiana*, or the Land of the *Chuſites*, from *Chus* the eldeſt ſon of *Ham*, and the Grand-ſon of *Noah*; by whoſe Son *Havilah* it was firſt peopled; and therefore called in Scripture the land of *Havilah*: this being that land of *Havilah* which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to incompaſs, in the book of *Geneſis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that land of *Havilah* lay on both ſides of the River *Euphrates* (which the Countrey of *Suſiana* doth not) and was the Eaſtern bound of the *Iſmaelites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in thoſe parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is ſaid in the firſt of *Sam*. chap. 15. ver. 7. to *have ſmitten the* Amalekites *from* Sur *to* Havilah, that is to ſay, from the *Red Sea* to the gulf of *Perſia*: it muſt be underſtood of *Havilah* in the firſt extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the *Eaſt Indies* (ſo called from a Son of *Jocktan*) or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the Eaſt ſide of *Euphrates*, and is that *Suſiana*, in which now we are: it being no where found that *Saul* was ſo great a Traveller as to ſee the *Indies*; or of ſuch puiſſance as to force a paſſage thorow the Countreys of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being loſt, that of *Cuſiana* or *Suſiana* did ſtill remain; preſerved to this day in that of *Chuſeſtan*, by which now called.

Suſiana.

The Countrey memorable in the Scriptures for *Gold*, *Bdellium*, and the *Onyx* ſtone; which doth abundantly ſet forth the richneſs and commodities of it: *Bdellium* being a Tree (for of the other two nothing need be ſaid) about the bigneſs of an *Olive*, yielding a certain *Gum*, very ſweet to ſmell to, but bitter of taſte; which in time hardneth to a *Pearl*, as *Eugubinus* and *Beroaldus* have delivered to us.

Divided antiently into many particular Regions, or at leaſt known by ſeverall names in its ſeverall quarters. For where it bordered upon *Tigris*, it was called *Melitene*; *Cabandone*, where it touched upon *Perſis*; where it confined on the *Elymeans*, it had the name of *Ciſsia*; and neer the wall or Ditch called *Vallum Paſini*, it was called *Characene*. Watered beſide *Eulæus*, and *Tigris* before ſpoken of, with the Rivers *Orontes*, and *Maſæus*; with that branch of the River *Tigris* which *Ptolomy* called *Baſilæus*; *Curtius*, *Paſi-Tigris*; and the Scriptures, *Piſon*.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Aracca*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, the ſame which the Scriptures call *Erech*, and one of the four which *Nimrod* built in the firſt beginning of his Empire, *Gen.* 11. Remembred by *Tibullus* for the fountains of *Naphtah* (of which the *Medians* made their oyl, ſpoken of before) a bituminous liquor, eaſily taking fire, but not eaſily quenched. Of which thus the Poet.

Audet Areccæis *aut unda per hoſpita Campis.*

Whereby *unda perhoſpita*, he meaneth that *bituminous* liquor called *Napthta*, iſſuing from the fields of *Erech*, as the learned *Salmaſius* hath obſerved in his notes on *Solinus*. 2. *Suſa*, the *Shuſan* of the Book of *Heſter*, and *Nehemiah*; honoured with the reſidence of the *Perſian* Monarchs in winter, as *Ecbatana* in Summer. Scituate on the River *Eulæus*, by the Prophet *Daniel* called *Vlai*. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Memnon* the ſon of *Tithonus*, ſlain by the *Theſſalans* in the *Trojan* wars: the walls whereof, as *Caſſiodorus* hath reported, cemented with Gold. But howſoever, it was, doubtleſs, a magnificent City, and of infinite wealth: *Alexander* finding in it 50000 *Talents* of gold uncoined, beſides Silver wedges, and Jewels of ineſtimable value. Memorable for the great feaſt here made by *Ahaſuerus*, of 183 days continuance, for his Lords and Princes: imitated by the *Perſian* Sultans to this very day; who with a Royall Feaſt of the like continuance, do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruine, and perhaps not that. 3. *Elymais*, the chief City of the *Elimai*, by *Ptolomy* (unleſs his Copies be corrupted) miſtakingly called *Eldimai*. Scituate on the banks of *Eulæus* alſo, neer the border of *Perſis* (the Nation of the *Elamites* or *Elymai* taking part of both Provinces.) Of great note antiently for a ſumptuous Temple of *Diana*, ſacrilegiouſly ranſacked by *Antiochus*, of which ſee 1 *Mac.* 6. 2. and of ſuch wealth, by reaſon of the concourſe of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Severus Sulpitius* calleth it *Oppidum opulantiſſimum*, a moſt opulent City. 4. *Sela*, on the banks of *Elæus* alſo, reckoned by *Ammianus* amongſt the moſt eminent of this Province; ſo named from *Selah*, the ſon of *Arphaxad*, who firſt planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Suſa* is aſcribed by *Euſtathius*, in his *Hexameron*, Σαλὰ ἀφ᾽ ȣ̃ Σȣσιάνοι, are that Authors words; perhaps more truly than to *Memnon*: and unto whom the Originall of the *Coſſai*, whom *Ptolomy* placeth in this tract, is referred by *Euſebius*. 5. *Tarſiana*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice onely of the chiefeſt) the ſame no doubt which *Ptolomy* calls *Tiriana*, and joyns next to *Sela*. 6. *Agra*, upon the banks of *Tigris*, not far from *Erech*. But there is little left of theſe, but what is to be found in the antient Writers, now hardly viſible in their ruines. The Towns of moſt note now remaining, being 1. *Jaaroone*, inhabited for the moſt part by *Jewes*, of which here are no fewer than a thouſand Families; ſuppoſed to be the deſcendants of thoſe whom *Salmanaſſar* tranſplanted out of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*. 8. *Saum*. 9. *Caſa*, of which little memorable.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Chuſites*, of the houſe of *Havilah*, the ſon of *Chus*; the *Coſſai* and the *Suſiani* deſcended from *Sala* the ſon of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elymai*, the poſterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*. Betwixt the two laſt Nations long and frequent wars; till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Aſſyria* compoſed the differences, by making both ſubject to their Empire. After this, nothing memorable in the ſtory of it, till the tranſplanting of the *ten Tribes* into the Regions of *Aſſyria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Iſraelites* were removed hither; ſo many of this Nation were ſent out (with others) to poſſeſs themſelves of the void places of thoſe *Tribes*. Called *Cutbeans* by the *Jews*, becauſe the moſt conſiderable number of them came from this Province, called in the Scriptures *Cuſh*, by *Joſephus Cutha*; and by him reckoned for a Region of *Perſia*, as indeed it was, the time wherein he lived conſidered; different onely in the Dialect or form of ſpeech; that Countrey which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*, being named *Cuth* by the *Chaldæans*; by the *Perſians*, *Chuzeſtan*: that name continuing to this day.

2. PERSIS.

PERSIS hath on the Eaſt, *Carmania*; on the Weſt, *Suſiana*; on the North, *Media*; and on the South, ſome part of the *Perſian* Bay or *Sinus Perſicus*, which took name from hence. The reaſon of the name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in fine gave both name and Law to the reſt of this Empire. It had antiently been called *Cephene*, but now moſt commonly by the name of *Fars*, or *Farſiſtan*; more neer to *Pharas*, the old name of it, both in the *Arabick* and *Hebrew*.

Such

Perſis. Such parts hereof as lie towards the North are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either fruit or corn in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very cleer. Thoſe parts which lie towards the *Perſian* Gulf, of as bad a nature, though of different quality, ſandy, and hot, and beareth little fruit, but *Dates*, and few trees, but *Palms*. But betwixt both, there lyeth a rich and pleaſant Countrey, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattell; great ſtore of Roſes, of Roſe-water conſequently: wherewith and with thoſe skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occaſion, they uſe to furniſh all the adjoyning Provinces. And to make up the *Character* of a happy Countrey, to which nothing wanteth, it is well ſtored with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are, 1. *Bagradas*, which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2. *Rhogomanes*, by ſome called *Araxes*, now *Bindimir*, on whoſe banks ſtood the renowned *Perſepolis*. 3. *Orontes*, dividing *Perſis* from *Suſiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4. *Briſoana*, ending its courſe in the ſame Sea alſo.

Mountains of note I finde not any, but thoſe which part this Region from *Suſiana*. Not known by any ſpeciall name (for ought I can find;) but of ſufficient note for the difficult paſſages out of one Countrey into the other, called *Pylæ Perſidis*, defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Perſian*, againſt *Alexander* the *Great*, who was here very handſomely beaten, and forced to ſave himſelf by a cloſe retreat. And though *Alexander* was ſhewed a *By-path* afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* ere he was aware: yet he was taught by this hard leſſon, that if thoſe who kept the ſtraits of *Cilicia*, and the banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made like reſiſtance, he had not bought the *Perſian Monarchy* in ſo cheap a Market.

It was divided antiently into *Paraticine*, bordering on *Media*. 2. *Mardiene*, joyning on the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*. 3. *Miſnia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the ſeverall Nations intermingled here as in other places, had their ſeverall Cities. The chief whereof, 1. *Auſinza*, ſeated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas*, and *Briſoana*. 2. *Jonacapolis*, on the ſame Bay alſo, neer the influx of *Rhogomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3. *Axima*, more within the land, now called *Lanſilla*. 4. *Marraſium*: 5. *Obroatis*, or *Orebatis*, as ſome Copies have it. 6. *Paſarracha*, in the *Greek* text of *Ptolomy* called *Paſacgada*, and *Paſagrada*, by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch. Which violated by a Souldier of *Alexanders*, in hope of finding ſome rich booty, he met with nothing but this modeſt inſcription, *Cyrus ego ſum qui* Perſicum *regnum conſtitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum telluris invideas, qua corpus meum obtegitur*. The ſacrilegious Souldier, though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7. *Perſepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the Eaſt, called therefore *Regia Orientis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, ſcituate neer the banks of the River *Araxes*, and built, for the moſt part, of *Cypreſs* wood, the walls of the houſes being made of Marble, digged out of an adjoyning Mountain. Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at large deſcribes it, to be the richeſt and goodlieſt City in all the world. And well we may believe him for the richneſs of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents*, in ready mony, for his own ſhare, after the Souldiers had made what ſpoil they liſted, of coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unſpeakable value. But the chief beauty of it was the Royall Palace, built on an Hill, invironed with a treble Wall, the firſt of 16 Cubits height; the ſecond of 30. and third of 60. all of them of black poliſhed Marble, with ſtately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Turrets, which gave to the beholders far and neer a moſt goodly proſpect. Nor was the inſide of leſs beauty, than the outſide of Majeſty: the Roof thereof ſhining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings Throne being wholly compoſed of Gold, and the richeſt Pearls. But rich and ſtately though it were, and one of the greateſt Ornaments of the Eaſtern world, it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit conſumed with fire, at the inſtigation of *Lais* that infamous ſtrumpet, as in revenge of ſo many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Perſians* had formerly burnt in the *Grecian* wars. And though *Alexander* in his ſober ſenſe did repent him of it, and gave order that it ſhould be re-edefied, yet did it never riſe to its former height: the Conquerour dying ſhortly after, and that purpoſe with him. So ruined in the age of *Qu. Curtius*, (who lived in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*,) that he profeſſeth, *veſtigium ejus non inveniri niſi* Araxes *amnis oſtenderet*, that no footſteps of it had been found, if not ſhewn and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whoſe banks it ſtood. But by the fall thereof roſe, 8. *Shyras*, now the chief City of this Province, ſcituate in a fair large plain hemmed about with mountains, under one of which it is pleaſantly ſeated; in compaſs about nine miles, well built and beautified with fair Gardens and magnificent *Moſques*: two of which larger than the reſt, are made more eminent by the addition of two *Spires* or Steeples covered with a painting of *Gold* and *Azure*; the fabricks for the moſt part of *Moſaick* work, as light alſo by night as day, by reaſon of a thouſand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is ſaid by a modern *Traveller*) which for *good wine, pretty women, pleaſant fruits, and a gallant People*, may hold compariſon with the beſt in *Perſia*. 9: *Moyown*, on the North-eaſt of *Shyras*, delightfully ſcituate amongſt woods and fruitfull paſtures, and bleſſed not onely with good wine, but wholſome waters; of which laſt, few parts of *Perſia* have much cauſe to brag. 10. *Bannaraw*, on the South-weſt of *Shyras*, towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the ruines of an ancient Caſtle, ſcituate on the top of a lofty Mountain.. 11. *Goyaam*, a Town of a thouſand houſes. 12. *Berry*, of no great bigneſs, but of moſt eſteem, by reaſon of a fair *Moſque*, a School for the *Arabick* tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their falſe prophets; of which the *Perſians*, beſides *Mahomet*, and *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The firſt Inhabitants here were of the poſterity of *Elam* the ſon of *Sem*, and ſuch who under his conduct were ſetled here; called from hence *Elamites* in the uſuall ſtile of holy Scriptures, by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, *Elymai*: who ſpreading themſelves into *Suſiana*, and by degrees alſo into other Provinces, became ſo conſiderable, that the name of *Elamite* and *Elam* were of great renown: having a language to themſelves diſtinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent, *Acts* 2. and comprehending under that appellation, the adjoyning Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*,

where

here *Suſa* is ſaid to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Perſia*, hath een ſhewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of the *Meſabatæ*, *apſii, Hippophagi*, *Suzai*, *Megores*, and *Stabai*, were at firſt under the command of their own Prin-es onely: amongſt which *Cherdorlaomer* is of greateſt fame, who having the conduct of ſome *Adventu-rs* of this Nation, aſſociated himſelf with *Amramphel* the Leader of ſome *Aſſyrian* Troops: and by the ame of the Kings of *Elam* and *Aſſyria* invaded *Paleſtine*, ſubdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* priſo-er, and in the end were overthrown by the forces of *Abraham*. Of no note after this expedition, till e time of *Perſes* the Father of *Achamenes*, who being *Provinciall* Governor of theſe Countreys under *ardanapalus*, joyned with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the war againſt him: and by the victory, got for imſelf the dominion over thoſe eſtates, which he had formerly ruled for the *Aſſyrians*, with reference o the Kings of *Media* as the *Supreme Lords*. Whoſe Succeſſors till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order hus.

Carmania.

The Kings of *Perſis*..

1. *Perſes*, from whom perhaps the name of *Perſis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Perſeus* the ſon of *Danae*; or the ſon of that *Perſeus* by *Andromeda*.
2. *Achæmenes*, from whom the *Perſians* had the name of *Achemanii*, and the ſucceeding Kings were called *Achamenides*.
3. *Cambyſes*, in ſome places of *Herodotus* called alſo *Darius*.
4. *Cyrus*, from whoſe ſecond ſon named *Teiſpeus*, deſcended that *Darius*, the ſon of *Hyſtaſpis*, one of the ſeven *Perſian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the preſent Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.
5. *Cambyſes* II. the ſon of *Cyrus*.
6. *Cyrus* II. ſirnamed the *Great*, ſon of *Cambyſes*, and of *Mandane* the daughter of *Aſtyages*, King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and tranſlated thereby the Supreme power to the *Medes* and *Perſians*. Of which more hereafter.

CARMANIA.

CARMANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Gedroſia*, and ſome part of *Aria*; on the Weſt, with part of *Perſis*, and the Gulf of *Perſia*, from hence called alſo by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*, on the North, with *Parthia*, and on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief people of it: but the reaſon of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Chyrman*; thoſe parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deſerta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by ſome *Dulcinde*.

The Country for the moſt part barren, and but ill inhabited. That part which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deſerta*, being truly ſuch; a wilderneſs or very *Deſart*, having in it neither Town nor Village, but ſome ſcattered houſes, and thoſe but ill provided of food and neceſſaries; full of unprofitable Sands, deſtitute of Water, and of a very hot and unhealthy air. And though the other part hereof which lyeth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea-coaſt of above 200 Leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themſelves into it, yet are they not the richer by it: the ſhores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers ſmall, ſo that they neither have good Port, nor ſafe coming to it. The beſt Commodities hereof (beſides their *Manufactures*) are *Dates*, *Myrrhe*, *Arſenic*, ſome few Mines of Silver, more of Braſs and Iron, and good ſtore of Alabaſter. In which regard the Inhabitants hereof were anciently called *Ichthyophagi*, becauſe they lived wholly upon *Fiſh*, the Country yielding little elſe for the life of man. Carmani *ſine veſte ac fruge, ſine pecore ac ſedibus, piſcium cute ſe velant, carne neſcuntur, præter capita toto corpore hirſuti.* The *Carmans* (ſaith *Pomponius Mela*) have neither fruits, nor rayment, nor houſes, nor cattel; but cloath themſelves with the skins, and feed themſelves with the fleſh of Fiſhes; hairy not only on their heads, but over all their bodies alſo. Where by the way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* muſt be out in his Informations, who telleth us of theſe very *Carmans*, that their Country, though far leſs than that of *Arabia Felix*, and far more obſcure, was as well repleniſhed with Rivers, and for fertility of ſoyl not inferior to it. But we muſt underſtand the one of the beſt parts of *Carmania*; the other of *Deſerta* only.

Amongſt the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the reſt, he mentioneth, 1. *Saganis*, 2. *Sagareus*, and 3. *Hydriacus*. Of which *Saganis* only is named by *Ptolomy*, the other Rivers or the ſame under divers names, being 1. *Dara*, 2. *Andanius*, 3. *Cathrappis*, 4. *Achindana*, 5. *Salarus* (the *Sagareus* as I take it of *Ammianus*) 6. *Caudriaces*, 7. *Zoramba*, and 8. *Samidace*, moſt of them falling into the Gulf of *Perſia*, few Navigable, or of any uſe in the way of Trading.

Mountains of moſt note, 1. that called *Semiramis*, from ſome exploit of that great Lady. 2. *Strongelus*, ſo named from the roundneſs of it; and 3. a continued ridge of hills, dividing this Countrey from *Gedroſia*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Cantharis*, 2. *Agris*, 3. *Tiſa*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the names of Cities. 4. *Cyrza*, and 5. *Gocharta*, two Port-Towns. 6. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conquerour, who here or hereabouts kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon. 7. *Portoſpana*, by *Ammianus* called *Ortoſpana*, and by him reckoned amongſt the faireſt and richeſt of all the Country. 8. *Armuza*, (or *Armuzium* as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the ſhore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory neer-adjoyning, and to the Noble Iſle of *Ormus*, of which more anon. 9. *Gunbroone*, *Carmania.*

not long ſince a poor village; but ſince the fall of *Ormus* (from which not above nine miles diſtant) grown a populous Town, conſiſting at the leaſt of a thouſand houſes. 10. *Jaſques*, at the opening of the *Perſian* Gulf into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it, called *Carpella*, is of late named *Capo* *Jaſques*. 11. *Carmania*, the *Metropolis* or mother City of the Province, in former times of good eſteem, and now of paſſing good repute both for cloth of gold, and the making of the beſt *Scimatars*. A weapon of ſuch value amongſt the *Mahometans*, and ſo eſteemed of by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of their Navy at the battle of *Corfu*, *Anno* 1574. moſt of them who were taken priſoners, threw their *Scimatars* into the Sea, for fear the *Chriſtians* ſhould be maſters of ſuch excellent weapons. It is now called *Chyrman*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12. *Lar*, more within the land towards *Perſis*, ſeated in a barren and inhoſpitable Country, full of huge heaps of ſands, both looſe and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind ſitteth, into plains and Mountains: without graſs, water, herbs, or any other neceſſary for the uſe of Travellers; the City being ſerved with rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in ciſterns. The City notwithſtanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long ſince to the number of 5000 houſes; of which the greateſt part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an Earthquake: now moſt remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces ſquare; a goodly *Moſque*, adorned with *Moſaick* work, and a ſtrong Caſtle ſeated on the top of an hill, furniſhed with great plenty of Ordnance brought hither from *Ormus*. This once a Kingdome of it ſelf, or the head City of a Kingdome, acknowledging no ſubjection to the *Perſian Sophies*, till conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chawn* Duke of *Shyras*, who ſent hence as much treaſure as was ſaid to load 700 Camels, and put to death the poor King with his whole poſterity, *Anno* 1604. or thereabouts. 13. *Tecoa*, or *Deachow*, a Town of the juriſdiction of *Lar*, not farre from that which is a huge wall cut out of the ſolid rock by incredible labour; which ſerved formerly both for the boundary and defence of that ſandy Kingdome againſt the *Perſians*.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the poſterity of *Sabta*, the ſon of *Chus*, who wanting room on the coaſt of *Arabia Felix*, where they were firſt planted, paſſed over into *Sophta* (from them ſo named) an Iſland of the *Perſian* Gulf; and afterwards into the main land of *Carmania*, where they built and gave name to the City of *Sabis*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. Divided in ſome tract of time into the ſeveral Nations of the *Sazotæ*, *Aræ*, *Charadra*, *Chelonophagi*, *Cabadinæ*, and *Paſagardæ*.

Neither the People nor the Countrey memorable in the way of ſtory; but by Accident onely: it being here, that *Alexander* being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, in imitation of *Bacchus*, who firſt conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually feaſting with his friends, on a ſcaffold drawn with eight horſes; his Companions following in their Chariots: ſome adorned with Purple and Silk, others with Flowers and green Boughs; themſelves wearing Garlands on their heads, and carrying their carrowſing Cups in their hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler ſeen: all their Armour was Cups, Barrels, and Flaggons; their Skirmiſhing Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minſtrells, playing on their Fluits; by Women, dancing; Boyes, ſhouting; all playing the drunken Fools moſt naturally. Thus march they through the Countrey of *Carmania*, in as great diſſoluteneſs, as if *BACCHUS* himſelf had indeed been there, and led the Mummery; and for ſeven whole days this ſottiſhneſs continued. So that *Curtius* well obſerveth, *Si quid victis ſaltem adverſus comeſſantes animi fuiſſet, mille hercule viri, modò & ſobrii, ſeptem dierem crapula graves in ſuo triumpho capere potuerunt*: a thouſand *Perſians*, ſober and well provided, had their hearts been anſwerable to ſo good an opportunity, might have deſtroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the honour of their Countrey, and their own liberty.

4. *ORMUS.*

ORMUS, not ſo much memorable for the greatneſs, as the wealth, and the conveniency of the ſcituation of it, is an Iſland ſcituate in the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf: commanding not long ſince over ſome part of the Continent of *Carmania*, and ſome few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and moſt of the Iſlands of the Bay. And therefore before we come to ſpeak of the Iſle it ſelf, we muſt take a brief ſurvey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Perſicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*, ſo famous, ſo full of Iſlands, and ſo much frequented (I uſe the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the name which *Ptolomy* calls *Armuza*) a Cape or promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants call *Maces*, the paſſage is ſo ſtrait and narrow, that one may very eaſily ſee to the oppoſite ſhore. The Strait once paſſed, the Bay beginneth to open and inlarge it ſelf, as far as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balſora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfalls is loſt in the Sea. The whole Gulf meaſured by the ſhores, of *Orbicular* form, in compaſs 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 *Italian* miles) in all the coaſts and ſides whereof the Villages and Towns ſtand exceeding thick, affording frequent paſſage to and fro for ſhipping. So farre, and to this purpoſe he. To which deſcription of his, ſo exact and punctual, our late *Navigations* have not added much, but the change of names: the whole Bay being now called *Mare Elkariffe*, and the entrances thereunto the Streits of *Balſora*; theſe laſt ſo called becauſe they opened the way to the Town of *Balſora*, the moſt noted Empory of thoſe parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Iſles hereof, beſides thoſe on the *Arabian* ſhore, of which we have already ſpoken, are, 1.

Taxiana, on the coaſt of *Suſiana*. 2. *Tabiana*. 3. *Sopthiba*, and 4. *Alexandri*, or the Iſle of *Alexander*, on the ſhores of *Perſis*. Of which that which is called *Sopthiba*, ſeems to take name from *Sabta* the Son of *Chus*, planted upon the oppoſite ſhore of *Arabia Felix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Sapkta*, which we finde in *Ptolomy*: And finally joining to *Carmania*, there are the Iſlands called 5. *Sagdana*, the chief Town whereof was antiently named *Miltus*; and 6. *Vorochtha*, ſcituate at the very mouth of the Straits, now called ORMUS, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armuza*, in *Carmania*, near adjoyning to it, and unto which it did in former times belong.

Gedroſia.

The Iſland ſcituate as is ſaid at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*, is in compaſs about 20 miles, ſtony, and full of rocks, in a manner barren of all neceſſaries except ſalt, wherewith their very Rocks are covered, and of ſalt-ſtones many houſes built. So deſtitute of all things fitting for the life of man, that the Inhabitants had all their victuals, even the very water which they drank, from ſome of the adjoyning Countries. The air is ſo hot in time of Summer, that the people reſt themſelves in caves, covered over with wood, where they ſtand or ſit in water up to the chin; and have loop-holes in the tops of their houſes to let in the wind. Which notwithſtanding, in regard of the ſcituation, it was of late one of the richeſt *Empories* in all the world, the wealth of *Perſia* and *Eaſt-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by water to the River *Euphrates*, and ſo by boats or on camels backs, to *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripolis*; from whence diſperſed into all the Countreys on the *Mediterranean*, and to ſome beyond.

The people hereof in their perſons, habit, and Religion, participate ſomewhat of the *Arabians*, but moſt of the *Perſians*. *Mahometans* for the moſt part, or the *Sophian Sect*: the reſt, but few in number, of the *Chriſtian* faith; to which converted by the preachings of Father *Gaſper*, a *Portugal Jeſuite*, ſince the ſetling of that Nation there.

The chief and onely City was of the ſame name with the Iſland, founded ſome ſeven hundred years ago by one *Mahomet Dranku*, deſcended from the King of *Saba*, in *Arabia Felix*: who with many families of the *Sabaans*, paſſed over the Straits into *Carmania*, and the Iſles adjoyning, and liking the ſcituation of this Iſland, built this City in it; which he called *Ormus*, or *Armuzium*; according to the name of the Town and Promontory upon which it lieth, The City ſeated at one end of the Iſle, about two miles in compaſs; well built and adorned with a fair market-place, ſome Churches, and a well-fortified Caſtle furniſhed with all neceſſaries to maintain a Siege. By reaſon of its wealth and reſort of Merchants, grown to ſuch eſteem, that it gave occaſion to this *Diſtick*,

Si terrarum Orbis quaqua patet annulus eſſet,
Illius Ormuſium *gemma decuſque foret.*

That is to ſay,
Were all the World a Ring, this Iſle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the Stone.

It was firſt under its own King, whoſe dominion extended alſo into ſome part of the Continent on either ſide, and over all the reſt of the Iſlands within the Gulf. His *Revenue* of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was diſcovered under the conduct of *Albukerque*, *anno* 1506. Who having fortified ſome part of it for their own defence, and made it the Staple of their trade for the *Indian Merchandiſe*, ſo enriched the ſame, that the *Revenue* of thoſe Kings (though *Vaſſals* and Tributaries to the *Portugals*) amounted to 140000 *Seriffs* yearly. In this flouriſhing ſtate it ſtood till the year 1622. when *Abas* the Sultan of *Perſia* having received ſome affront at the hands of the *Portugueze*; or deſirous to remove the trade of *Ormuz*, to ſome Port of his own; gave order to *Emangoly Chawn*, the Duke of *Shiras*, to lay ſiege unto it, with an Army of 15000 men. Who ſeeing no hopes of maſtering it by his land-forces onely, furniſhed himſelf with the Ships and Cannon of ſome *Engliſh* Merchants, to whom he promiſed many things which he never performed. For being once maſter of the City he deſtroyed it utterly, removing the Ordnance to *Lar*, the wealth thereof to his own treaſury of *Shiras*, the materials of the houſes to *Gambroon* ſpoken of before: the *Portugueze*, and *Chriſtian* natives paſſing over unto *Muskabat*, in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the *Engliſh* Captains that adventured in it were diſappointed of the ſpoil which they did expect; yet ſo much honour hath been given by the King of *Perſia* to the *Engliſh* Nation, that their Agent who reſideth at *Gambroon* takes Cuſtome of all ſtrangers which do traffick thither.

5. GEDROSIA.

GEDROSIA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Carmania*; on the Eaſt, with *Cambaia* or *Guzarat*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Drangiana*, and *Aarachoſia*.. The reaſon of the name I finde not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Geſt*; by *Caſtaldus*, *Circan*.

The Countrey deſolate and barren; like the worſt part of *Carmania*, much deſtitute of freſh water, and covered over with looſe ſands, dangerous to the native and ſtranger both. Some rain they have, but not ſufficient to allay the heat and drough which they ſuffer under; and yet by reaſon of that heat it affordeth in ſome places *Nard* and *Myrrhe*, with ſome other ſpices. Some *Brooks* here are, or rather *Torrents*, which falling from the hills do ſomewhat qualifie the indiſpoſition of the ſoyl, and make it habitable, The chief of which was called *Arbius* antiently; the chief Mountain, *Batius*.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Rhagiana*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of a City; and 2. a Port or Harbor called *Mulierum portus*, or the *Haven of women*. 3. *Arbis*, upon the banks of the

Drangiana. River *Arbius*, preſented to us alſo by the name of a City. 4. *Muſarna*, the chief of the *Muſarnæ*, a chief tribe of this Countrey. 5. *Parſis*, or rather *Eaſis*, as the *Greek* text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Ptolomy*. 6. *Geſt*, the chief City at the preſent; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Naſarnæ* bordering on *Arachoſia*, the *Parſiræ* towards *Carmania*, the *Rhamnæ* on the borders of *India*, and the *Orbitæ*, or *Arbituri*, on the ſhores of the Ocean. The Countrey of no note in preceding times, till made famous by the follies of *Alexander*. Who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Porus*, that there was little hopes of the Conqueſt of *India*, would needs make a fruitleſs voyage to ſee the Ocean. And having ſatisfied himſelf with the ſight of that furious Element (as if his very ſeeing it had ſufficiently ſubdued it to him) landed his Army on this coaſt. Where in his march, for want of victuals, water, and other neceſſaries, he loſt more men in the vaſt and uncomfortable Deſarts of this Countrey, than in all the military ſervices he had put them to: the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting to 15000 Horſe, and 120000 Foot; whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiſcretion.

6. *DRANGIANA.*

DRANGIANA hath on the South, *Gedroſia*; on the North, and Weſt, bounded with *Aria*; on the Eaſt, with *Arachoſia*. So called from *Drangius*, now *Ilment*, the chief River of it; the modern name thereof being *Sigeſtan*, from *Sige*, the now principal City.

The Countrey very hilly, and ſo cloſed with Monntains, that the River above-named is ſcarce able to force its paſſage thorow them. Of no great beauty to invite, or reward a Conqueror, yet with the reſt, brought under the great *Perſian* Monarchs; the fortunes of which Crown they have alwaies followed. So meanly planted, that *Ptolomy* findeth in it but ten Towns of note: the chief whereof, 1. *Ariaſpe*, miſtook perhaps for *Agriaſpe*; and if ſo, then the mother-City of the *Agriaſpæ*, whom *Curtius* placeth in this Tract. 2. *Propthaſia*, by ſome of the Antients called *Phradag*, the Metropolis of this poor Province: much boaſted of by the old Inhabitants hereof who had ſeen no better, (as Countrey-villagers uſe to brag of the next Market-Town) and ſaid by *Ammianus* to be rich, and of high renown, the quality of the place conſidered. Still of ſome note amongſt the Natives, by whom called *Siſtan*. 3. *Arivada*, 4. *Pharazana*, of which nothing memorable. 5. *Sige*, now of moſt credit in this Countrey, from hence called *Sigeſtan*, 6. *Tim cani*. 7. *Mulebet*, the chief ſeat of the Kingdom of *Aledine*, or *Aleadine*, who had here a *Fools-paradiſe* of his own; of which more anon.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Batrii*, and the *Darandæ*, from which laſt, the greateſt of the two, the Countrey might perhaps be called originally *Darandiana*; abbreviated to *Drandiana*; and at laſt corrupted eaſily into *Drangiana* But I offer this onely as conjectural. They were called alſo by ſome Writers by the name of *Arabians*, and that, as *Ammianus* thinks, becauſe they deſcended from that people; but I think rather from a branch of the River *Arabius*, which parteth this Countrey from *Gedroſia*. For I conceive the *Arabians* were too wiſe, to forſake their own Countrey, and go ſo far, to get ſo little by the bargain. Together with the reſt of the *Perſian* Provinces, ſubdued by *Alexander*; who being in this Countrey, hapned on the diſcovery of the treaſon intended againſt him by *Philotas* the Son of *Parmenio*, the moſt renowned of all his Captains. After this little memorable till theſe later days, when it grew famous by means of *Aladine* a ſeditious *Perſian*, Lord of the valley of *Mulebet*, ſpoken of before; who there made a *terreſtrial paradiſe*, which he promiſed to all his Partizans: but the company growing too great for the ſafety of the Kingdom, they were quickly diſperſed; and *Aladins*, with his *Fools-paradiſe*, both, taken away together, *Anno* 1262. Some attribute this fiction of Paradiſe to *Aladeules*, the Mountain King of *Taurus*; vanquiſhed by *Selim* the firſt. The whole ſtory is this, out of *Paulus Venetus*. *Aladine* inhabited a valley in this Countrey, the entrance into which he fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle called *Tigadi*. Hither he brought all the luſty youths and beautifull maidens of the adjoyning Provinces. The women were confined to their chambers, the men to priſon; where having endured much ſorrow, they were ſeverally caſt into dead ſleeps, and conveyed to the women; by whom they were entertain'd with all the pleaſures, youth and luſt could deſire, or a ſenſual minde affect. Having injoyed this happineſs a whole day, they were in a like ſleep conveyed to their irons. Then would *Aladine* inform them how they had been in *Paradiſe*, and that he could ſeat them there eternally, if they durſt hazard themſelves in his quarrels. This when they had ſworn to do, they were deſtinated to the *maſſacre* of ſuch Princes as were like to prove his bad neighbours: and they accordingly did execution. But neither he, nor *Aladeules*, were the firſt who trained up their followers in the Arts of murder. One there was before either of them, whom the Writers of thoſe times call the *Old man of the Mountains*, inhabiting the mountainous parts of *Tyre* and *Sidon*; and from thence ſending his Diſciple, on the like *Temptations*, to make away the Weſtern Princes whom he ſtood in fear of, during the courſe of the *Holy Wars*. For out of his *School* came thoſe *Wretches* who murdered the Count of *Tripolis*, being in the Church at his Devotions; and deſperately ſlew *Conrade* Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, walking openly in the Market-place at *Tyre*; and with like careleſneſs of their own lives, dangerouſly wounded Prince *Edward* (after King of *England*) ſitting in his Tent. Theſe the *Italians* call *Aſſaſſines*, (whence the word to *Aſſaſſinate*) intimating thereby a deſperate *Cut-throat*, but the reaſon of that name is not yet agreed on: miſtakingly by ſome *Latine* Writers of the darker times, called *Arſacidæ*, and their commander *Rex Arſacidarum*; as if deſcended from *Arſaces*, the founder of the *Arſacidan* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

7. ARACHO-

Arachoſia. and *Parapomiſus*

7. ARACHOSIA.

ARACHOSIA hath on the Weſt, *Drangiana*; on the Eaſt, the great River *Indus*; on the South, *Gedroſia*, and *Parapomiſus*, on the North. So called from *Arachoſia*, the cheif City of it; but now beſt known by the name of *Cabul*, the name of the chief City at this preſent.

Of the Country I finde little ſpoken, but that it is watered with a branch of the River *Indus*, or rather with ſome nameleſſe River which falleth into it. By the overflowings wherof is made a Lake, which *Ammianus* calleth *Arachotoſcrene*, by *Ptolomy* called *Arachotos*; after the name of *Arachotos* the chief Town of it, neer unto which it is.

Towns here were once thirteen, whoſe names and ſcituation we finde in *Ptolomy*; but little or nothing of them in other Writers. The principall, 1. *Arachotos*, on the Lake ſo named, ſaid to be built by *Semiramis* in her march towards *India*, and by her to have been named *Cephene*. 2. *Alexandria*, or (for diſtinctions ſake) *Alexandria Arachoſia*, the work of *Alexander* the *Great* in his like march againſt the *Indians*: built at the foot of one of the branches of Mount *Taurus*, ſhooting towards the South, and peopled with a Colony of 7000 old *Macedonian* Souldiers, foreſpent with age, and with the travel of the wars, whom he left there to in habit it: his Army being here recruited with the forces which had ſerved under *Parmenio*, conſiſting of 12000 *Grecians*, and *Macedonians*. It is now called *Cabul*, accounted the chief City of it, and in that capacity gives the name of *Cabul* unto all the Province. 3. *Arbaca*, ſeeming by the name, to be the work of one *Arbaces*, but whether of *Arbaces* the great King of *Medes*, I am not able to ſay. 4. *Choaſpa*, near ſome River of that name, as I conjecture; there being beſides *Choaſpes*, the chief River of *Media*, another of that name alſo in *India*, and probably another here abouts, to give name to this Town. 5. *Phoclis*. 6. *Sigara*. 7. *Dammana*, of which I finde nothing but the names. 8. *Sin*, now a Town of name amongſt them, but not much obſervable,

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Pargyetæ*, called alſo *Arimaſpe*, and *Euergete*, a powerful Nation of themſelves, brought under the command of *Alexander* by means of *Amenides*, ſometimes the Secretary of *Darius*, whom he made their Governor. And beſides them the *Syeri*, *Rophitæ*, and the *Eoritæ*; which three made up the main body of the *Arachoſians*, committed by *Alexander* to the Government and Command of *Menon*. Following after this the fortunes of the *Perſian* Empire, they changed their Maſters as that did, till the coming in of the *Tartars*. Since that time governed, for the moſt part, by a King of their own, eſpecially ſince the dividing of the Kingdome of *Perſia* amongſt *Tamerlanes* children: ſome of which held it as a diſtinct eſtate, by the names of the Kings of *Cabul*; till growing great by the Conqueſt of ſome parts of *India*, they took unto themſelves the name of the *Great Mogul*; Now Lords not onely of this Country, but of the greateſt part of *India* on this ſide of *Ganges*; of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we are in *India*, that being the chief Seat of their Power and Empire.

8. PARAPOMISUS.

PARAPOMISUS is bounded on the South, with *Arachoſia*; on the North, with *Bactria*; from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*, which is here called PARAPOMISUS, by the name of the Country: on the Eaſt, with ſome part of *India*; on the Weſt, with *Aria*. So called *quaſi* Paraponeſus, from the reſemblance which it hath to an Iſland, begirt on all ſides almoſt with Rivers: in which reſpect by Ptolomy called Paropaniſus, and not Parapomiſus; by which laſt name the *Latines* for the moſt part call it; ſome of them Parapomiſſus, with a double *ſſ*. But that name being loſt long ſince, it is now by ſome called *Daches*, by others *Candahor*, but moſt commonly Sableſtan.

The Countrey mountainous, and hills here and there intermixt with Valleys: the Mountains of great height, and exceeding barren; the Valleys indifferent fruitful, but ſo over-ſhadowed with thoſe hills, that the cleereſt day, in ſome places, ſeems but like a twilight. The people as obſcure as their Countrey, ſcarce known to any of their Neighbors, in the time of *Alexander*; the barbarous Nations neereſt to them eſteeming them unworthy of their acquaintance. *Agreſte hominum genus, & inter Barbaros maxime inconditum*, as it is in *Curtius*.

Rivers of moſt note herein, 1. *Oxus*, (of which before) which riſing out of Mount *Caucaſus*, paſſeth Northwards, and afterwards divideth *Bactria* from Sogdiana. 2. *Dargamanis*. 3. *Coacus*, both owing their original to ſome of the branches of Mount *Taurus*, which chain of hills beginning here a bouts to draw towards their end, are towards the Weſt called Paroetes: where they give being to the river *Dargamanis*, before named; more Eaſtward they have the name of Parapomiſus; and *Caucaſus* they are properly called where they are thwarted by *Imaus*, in the very point, as it were, where *Scythia*, *India*, and the *Perſian* territories do encounter each other. The hills in that place mounted to ſo great an height, that from the tops thereof the Stars appear much greater than in other places; the riſing and ſetting of which are from hence eaſily diſcerned: made memorable by the fable of *Prometheus*, who is ſaid to have been bound here by command of *Jupiter*; on which, *vinctum* Promethea *fuiſſe antiquitas tradit*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. *Prometheus* is indeed by the Poets feigned to have ſtoln fire from heaven, and to have made a man of clay: for which preſumptuous fact, *Jupiter* bound him on the hill *Caucaſus*; where a *Vulture* continually fed on his Liver. But according either to the truth of the Story, or their gueſs at leaſt, who make ſome Story the ground of every Fable; Prometheus being a very wiſe man, inſtructed the dead and clayie carcaſſes of others with wiſdome; and that being very deſirous to learn the nature of the Stars, which is the fire he

Aria.

ſtole from heaven) he made the higheſt part of Mount *Caucaſus* his ſtudy: where the inward care he had to accompliſh his deſire, might juſtly have been compared to a *Vulture* gnawing on his entrails; and of this opinion is St. *Auguſtine*. But far more memorable is it made, for being the reſting place of the Ark of *Noah*, whereof we have alreadie ſpoken in our generall Preface.

Places of moſt conſideration in it. 1. *Naulibis*, and 2. *Ortoſtpana*, both named by *Ptolomy*, and reckoned by *Ammianus* for the moſt famous of this Country. But in what their fame conſiſted I cannot finde. 3. *Parſiana*, 4 *Gazaca*, 5. *Daroacana*, 6. *Bagarda*; all named by *Ptolomy*; but not elſe obſervable, 7. *Candahor*, now the *Metroplis* of the Country, a Town of great Trade, by reaſon of the ſcituation of it on the borders of *India*; in that reſpect giving to the whole Country the name of *Candahor*. By which name reckoned for a Kingdome, and uſed among the many Titles in the *Stile imperiall*. Nothing conſiderable of it in the courſe of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Perſian* Monarchs, it followed the fortune of the reſt, till theſe latter times, when the *Perſians* being overlaid by the *Tartars*, it became ſubject to ſome Kings of the race of *Tamerlane*, reigning in this Province, till brought under by the Kings of *Cabul*, of the ſame extraction. Finding thoſe Kings intent on the conqueſt of *India*, they freed themſelves from all ſubjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600 or thereabouts; when the laſt King unable to defend themſelves againſt *Abduxa*, King of the *Uſbeques* (a *Tartarian* people, but ſubject, in ſome ſort, to the Crown of *Perſia*) ſurrendred his Kingdom to *Echebar* the *Great Mogul* (deſcended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whoſe dominions border cloſe upon it. Recovered to the *Perſian* Crown by *Mirza*, the Son of *Abas*, and Father of *Soffie*, the now Sultan; a Prince of much gallantry, but of more misfortunes; the *Perſian Sophies*, ſince that conqueſt, uſing the Title of Kings of *Candahor*, in the Regal ſtile.

9. ARIA.

ARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Parapomiſus*; on the Weſt, with *Parthia*; on the North, with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*; from which laſt parted by the Mountain *Bagoas*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, eſpecially by the *Gracians*; till changed (as they ſay) into *Media*, on the coming thither of *Medea*. For ſo *Pauſanias*, amongſt others, Παραγενομένη δὲ εἰς τὴν λεγομένην τότε Αρίαν, τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἔδωκε τὸ ὄνομα καλεῖσθαι Μήδους ἀπ' αὐτῆς, i. e. coming into Country then called *Aria*, ſhe cauſed it after her own name to be called *Media*. But the name of *Aria* was not loſt, though it were removed; remaining proper to this Countrey till theſe latter ages; now changed with little alteration, into that of *Eri*.

The Country much ſubject unto heats, environed with Deſarts, Heaths, and Foreſts; yet near the mountains, which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have ſome fruitfull *Champaignes*; bearing very good fruits, and amongſt others, a ſtrong wine and of long continuance; keeping both taſte and colour above 80 yeares. They have alſo here a *Drug* ſomewhat like to *Myrrhe*, and a kind of *Saphir*, but not right.

Rivers of note I meet with none, but that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Arias*, by the name of the Province, making a *Lake* of the ſame name. The Fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Parapomiſus*, and the fall thereof in the ſaid *Lake*: the watters of it firſt increaſed by a nameleſs Streame, falling from the Mountains called *Seriphi*; being that part of *Taurus*, which divideth this Country from *Margiana*.

Antiently it was populous and well-inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Thoſe of moſt conſequence, 1. *Aria*, on the banks of the River *Arias*, the ſeat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* ſpeaketh of in this tract: but whether they received this name from the Province, or beſtowed their own name upon it, I determine not: 2. *Bataxa*, 3. *Sotera*, 4. *Orbitana*, 5. *Sormagana*, 6. *Artacanda*, by *Strabo* called *Artacana*, 7. *Niſibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*, 8. *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the *Great Conqueror*, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians*, for the better awing of the Country, which by ſome former rebellions had been troubleſome to him. But theſe, and moſt of thoſe remembred by *Ptolomy*, being grown out of knowledge, there remain now of ſpecial note, 9. *Heri*, or *Eri*, ſeated not far from the place of the ancient *Aria*, but much ſuperiour to it in ſtrength and greatneſſe. Said by *Maginus* to be in compaſs thirteen miles, and ſo plentifully ſtored with *Roſes*, that the inhabitants of the Country call it the *City of Roſes*. Naturally of a ſtrong ſcituation, compaſſed about with a very good Wall, and watered with deep Channels, conveyed unto it by *Tamerlane*, that moſt puiſſant *Tartar*, by whom either founded or repaired. 10. *Saſuar*, a place of good importance, and the ſecond in eſteem next to *Heri* it ſelf.

The old inhabitants were the *Maſderami*, *Niſæi*, *Aſtareni*, the *Caſſirotæ*, *Obares*, *Drachamæ*, *Borgi*, *Paranti*. &c. united all together in the name of *ARIANS*, by that name ſubject to the *Perſians*, and ſubdued by *Alexander*. Againſt whom when they had rebelled, and were worſted by him, they were compelled to betake themſelves to the ſtrength of a Cave, ſeated on the top of an inacceſſible Rock, and with ſmall force eaſily defended. But to *Alexander* nothing was impoſſible. For piling up a great maſſe of Timber, equall unto the mouth of the Cave, when the wind ſerved opportunely, he put fire unto it; and by that meanes ſo filled the Cave with fire and ſmoak, that ſome of them where ſtifled, ſome half-burnt, and the reſt forced to yield to the Victors mercy. Nor was this the onely Action of note during that Rebellion though it was the greateſt. The Common Souldier alſo had his honour in it. *Sarlibarzanes*, a *Perſian* whom *Alexander* had truſted with the command of this Province, had drawn them unto this *Revolt*, and became their head. Who to expreſs his conrage, in the fight of the *Arians*, challenged the proudeſt He of the *Macedonians* to a ſingle combat. The challenge cheerfully accepted by one *Eriguis*, one of the moſt Aged in the

Army: and ſaying aloud, *oſtendam quales milites* Alexander *habet*, he valiantly charged upon the Rebell; and at the ſecond *venew* ſlew him. The *Arians* after the trial of their diſabilities remained in quiet, taking the ſame fortunes as the reſt of the *Perſians* did, in their change of Maſters. Of late, by *Mahomet Codubanda* it was aliened for a time from the Crown of *Perſia*, and given to Sultan *Abas*, his ſecond Son; who took unto his ſelf, in his Fathers life-time, the title of the King of *Heri*. But coming to the Crown by the murder of his elder Brother, and the death of his Father, he united *Heri* once again to the *Regal Diadem*; but kept as a diſtinct title in the *Royal ſtile*.

10. PARTHIA.

PARTHIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Aria*; on the Weſt, with *Media*; on the North, with *Hyrcania*; and on the South, with that part of *Carmania*, which by *Ptolomy* and others of the Antients, was called *Deſerta*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall ſee anon. But that name being laid aſide, it is now called *Arach*.

The Country walled, as it were, round with Mountains, and in moſt parts over-grown with *Woods*: by which defended from thoſe heats, to which otherwiſe it would be ſubject, it produceth many things of neceſſary uſe, for the life of the people; but nothing for riot and exceſs. In other places, where the ſhade of the wood is wanting, the whole Country is in a manner but a ſandy *Deſart*, dangerous to Travellors, and impaſſible even with the help of *Guides*; the ſands continually driven from one place to another, taking away all tracts of a beaten way. For which cauſe there be certain Caſtles at each three miles end, built at the Kings charge, as well for the direction, as the reception of Paſſengers; and Cawſeys of many miles in length, in ſome other places, for their better travelling; for the ſands on each ſide of them ſo looſe and light, that if a man ſhould fall aſide, he were loſt remedileſſe.

The people antiently were very couragious and ſtout, as commonly they are in all barren Countryes, and were withall of a *Scythian* extract and originall. Exceeding ſpare of diet, and good reaſon for it, the Country not affording any ſuperfluities; but otherwiſe much given to pleaſure, allowing themſelves plurality of wives and Concubines. Good horſemen, and to that ſo uſed, that they conſulted of all buſineſs both private and publike, when they were on horſe-back. Such lovers of the wars, that they accompted no man happy after his deceaſe, but who died in battel; eſteeming of all others but as fools or Cowards. Their Souldiers for the moſt part *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto their weapons, and to manage horſes: inſomuch as of 50000 horſe which the *Parthian* King had in the field againſt *Marcus Antonius*, there were not above 800 *Free-men*, But their greateſt fame conſiſted in the handling of their *Bow and Arrows*, eſteemed the beſt *Archers* in the world, and not undeſervedly; having the Art of ſhooting backwards, and making their Retreat or flight more terrible, then their charge or onſet. Whence that of *Seneca*.

Terga converſi metuenda Parthi.
The *Parthian* flight
Doth moſt affright.

Which, with the manner of their fight, is more curiouſly deſcribed by *Lucan*, thus;

Pugna levis, bellumque fugax, turmaque fugaces,
Et melior ceſſiſſe loco quam pellere miles.
Illita terra dolis, nec Martem *cominus unquam.*
Auſa pati virtus, ſed longè tendere nervos.

Which I finde thus *Engliſhed* to my hand.

Light ſkirmiſh, fleeing war, and ſcattered bands,
And better Souldiers when they run away,
Than to cut off an enemy that ſtands.
Their Crafty *Gall-thraps* on the ground they lay,
Nor dares their courage come to down-right blows,
But fight beſt furtheſt off, moſt truſting to their bows.

From hence it was, that *M. Craſſus*, in his expedition againſt them, being told by an *Aſtrologer*, that his enterpriſe would prove unproſperous, by reaſon of ſome *ill aſpect* which he had found in *Scorpio*; *Tuſh* (ſaid he) *I fear not* Scorpio, *but* Sagittarius. And to theſe warlike exerciſes of horſe and Archery, the temper of the Air and Soyl gave no ſmall advantages; the dry Air ſeaſoning their bow-ſtrings, and their large fields affording them ſufficient room to train their horſes. *Cœlum enim quod ſiccum eſt, nervos intentos facit*; *Regio tota plana eſt, et ob eam rem equis accommodata*, as it is in *Dion*. But this is to be underſtood, not of *Parthia* onely, but the whole Country of *Perſia*; ſubject at that time to the power of the *Parthian* Kings. Next to theſe *Parthians*, the *Engliſh* have been looked on, formerly, as the ableſt Bow-men; having gotten by their *bow and arrows* as many notable victories, over the *French*, as the *Parthians* ever did obtain upon the *Romans*. But at this time *Archery*, both here, and elſewhere, is quite laide aſide, the *Gun* ſilencing all offenſive weapons; how juſtly I determine not. The point hath been long ſince debated betwixt Sir *John Smith*, and Sir *Roger Williams*; many great wits appearing upon either ſide; and the ſome of their ſeveral Arguments drawn up together by Sir *Clement Edmunds*, in his judicious obſervations upon *Caſars Commentaries*, to which the Reader may repair for his ſatisfaction. All I

ſhall

Partbia. ſhall ſay is onely this, that victories as great as any in thoſe elder dayes, have been obtained with far leſs bloodſhed ſince the *Gun* came up, than in any of the times before it.

The *Religion* of this People hath ſuffered under the ſame changes with the reſt of *Perſia*, but they have a language of their own, mixt of *Mede* and *Scythian*. For which, beſides the teſtimony of humane Authors, we have the Authority of Scriptures; where the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, and *Medes*, are named as Nations of a ſeveral language, or a different *Dialect*, at the leaſt, *Acts*, 2.

Rivers of note I finde not any, nor any Mountains proper and peculiar to them: *Coronus*, part of the great Mountain *Taurus*, lying in common betwixt them and *Hyrcania*; as *Maſdoramus* doth betwixt them and *Aria*, and the hills called *Parchoatras*, betwixt them and the *Deſarts* of *Carmania*. So that for want of ſuch known Landmarks, the finding out of their antient Cities will be very difficult; if any learned *Antiquary* ſhould undertake it.

The Country antiently more populous, the Towns and Villages thicker ſet then they be at the preſent; many Cities, and 2000 villages having been overthrown with *Earth-quakes*. In *Ptolomy* we finde the names of 25 of the Cities, diſtributed into the four Provinces or *Tetrarchies* of *Camiſene* towards *Hyrcania*; *Parthiene* bordering on *Media*; *Paracanticene*, confining on *Aria*; *Tabiene*, neighbouring on *Carmania*. The principal of which and of thoſe that are now in being, 1. *Genonia*. 2. *Charax*. 3. *Artacana* 4. *Apamia*, which by the name ſeems to have been the foundation of *Seleucus*. 5. *Dardamana*, 6. *Syndiga*. 7. *Paſacarta*. 8. *Hecatompyle*, the Royal City, ſo called from the number of an hundred Gates in the walls thereof; by which we may conjecture at the antient greatneſſe: the *Parthians*, which had ſeen no greater, calling it by the glorious name of *Halſe the world*. 9. *Hiſpaan*, commonly called *Spahan*, or *Spawhawn*, raiſed out of the ruines of *Hecatompyle*; and as, that was, the Regal City for theſe parts. In compaſs about nine miles, of figure round, and ſeated in the midſt of a large and capacious Plain, beautified with many pleaſant Gardens, goodly Bathes, and handſome *Moſques*. But the greateſt glory of it lieth in the Market place or *Midan*, quadrangular in form, but the ſides unequal; cloiſtred about and well ſtored with merchandiſe of all ſorts, but drugs eſpecially: the Court, or *Quadrangle*, ſerving for horſe-races, and other warlike exerciſes, which are done on horſe-back. On the Weſt ſide a magnificent *Moſque*, built of white marble, five yards high, and the reſt above that of Brick; curiouſly interwoven with *Arabick* poeſies. In the middeſt a fair Conduit, wherewith they purifie themſelves, when they go to their prayers. On another ſide the *Royall Palace*, wrought in the front with *Antique* works; the Floors on the inſide covered with rich *Perſian* carpets, and the Roofs chargeably emboſſed with Gold and *Azure*. 10. *Jelphea*, on the otherſide of the River on which *Spawhawn* is ſeated, as the Burgh of *Southwark* is to *London*; wholly inhabited (at this time) by *Armenian* Chriſtians, from hence called *Jelphelines*; who live here in great freedome, both for Perſon, and conſcience, but that their *Poll-money* is taxed at an higher rate. 11. *Croom*, a right pleaſant and wealthy City, wel built, of large ſtreets, and ſeated on the banks of a ſmal but delightful River, iſſuing out of the *Coronian* Mountains, near to which it ſtandeth. Conſiſting at the preſent of 2000 Families, but antiently, as may be gathered from ſome ruines, of far greater compaſs. Much honoured by the *Perſians* for the Sepulchre of *Fatima*, the daughter of *Mahomet*; from whom the *Sophian* Sect, and Princes do derive their Pedigree. 12. *Caſham*, a rich and pleaſant City; about 60 miles from *Spawhawn*, well built and peopled by a number of *Artizans*; who for the making of Silks, Sattins, and Cloth of Gold, are in great eſteem. Beautified amongſt other things with a ſtately and magnificent *Caravans ſera*, built by Sultan *Abas*, for the reception of Strangers, whether Merchants or other travellers, but fit to entertain any Prince of *Aſia*. The City of no great age, the worke either of *Vſſan Caſſanes*, the *Armenian*, who got the Crown of *Perſia*, in the year 1470, or at the higheſt, of *Caſſam*, the Son of *Axan*, and Grand-ſon of *Tangrolipix*, the firſt *Turk* here reigning; from one of which it had this name. 13. *Tawgebawt*, where the *Perſian* Kings have a houſe of pleaſure, of no great receipt; but for the coſt and ornaments of it, and the delectableneſs of the Gardens adjoyning to it, not yeilding to any in this large Empire: and for *Grots*, *Ecchoes*, *Labyrinths*, and the other excellencies of Art, perhaps not fellowed in the world; eſpecially conſidering, that it ſtandeth in the middle of a ſandy Deſart.

The *Parthians* were originally a *Scythian* Nation, baniſhed their own Country, and glad to plant themſelves in this barren Region; calling themſelves by the name of *Parthians*, which in their language ſignifieth as much as *Exiles*. A People ſo obſcure and poor, either not knowing, or not caring for the uſe of money, that none of *Alexanders* great Captains would vouchſafe to be their Governor; but let it lie as an Appendix to *Media*, to the Kings whereof it had originally been Subject; till one *Philip*, a man of ſmall regard, took the place upon him. Falling, at laſt, with the reſt of *Alexanders Aſian* purchaſes, into the hands of *Seleucus*, it was governed by the Leivtenants of the *Syrian* Kings, till the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of that houſe. During whoſe reign *Arſaces*, a noble *Parthian*, provoked by ſome indignities, ſlew the Governor, and took the eſtate upon himſelf; perſwading all the reſt of the Provinces to doe the like: and thrived ſo well in his deſign, that he not onely gained the Kingdome of *Parthia*, but united to it all the provinces lying on the Eaſt of *Euphrates*. Of whom, and his Succeſſors, more in the ſtory of *Perſia*. After this nothing ſingular which concerns this Province, but that, as this *Arſaces* did recover the *Perſian* liberty from the power of the *Greeks*; ſo *Gempſas*, one of the Sultans of this Province alſo, redeemed (though but for a little time) this *Parthia*, and the parts adjoyning, from the yoak of the *Tartar*; as ſhall be ſhewn in the proſecution of the *Perſian* Hiſtory.

11. HYRCANIA.

HYRCANIA is bounded on the South, with *Parthia*; on the North, with the *Hyrcanian*, or *Caſpian* Sea; on the Eaſt, with *Margiana*; and on the Weſt, with *Atropatia*, or *Atropattone* (as *Ammianus* calleth it) the North part of *Media*. Divided from *Parthia* by the interpoſition of *Coronus*, part of the main body of Mount *Taurus*. The way thorow which, ſaid by the *Perſians* to be cut out at one blow, by the *Scymitar* of *Mortis Haly*, their ſecond *Mahomet*, is not above forty yards in breadth, in the broadeſt parts of it; the hills on both ſides towring to the very clouds: With ſmall ſtrength eaſily defended againſt mighty Armies, and poſſibly may be the ſame which the Antients called *Porta Caſpiæ*, before deſcribed.

It took the name of *Hyrcania*, from *Hyrcana*, a large and ſpacious foreſt betwixt it and *Scythia*; ſometimes called *Caſpia* alſo, from the *Caſpii*, a chief People of it: of whom it is reported, that when their Parents came to the age of 70 years, they uſed to ſhut them up, and ſtarve them; as being then no longer uſefull to the Commonwealth. But both thoſe names growing out of uſe, it is by *Mercator* called *Diargument*; by ſome late Travellers, *Mezendram*; by ſome others, *Corcam*.

Thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the South, are ſaid to yield abundance of Wheat, Wines, Figs, and Fruit; thoſe towards the *Caſpian* Sea, as plentifull of Graſs and Paſture. But betwixt both, nothing in a manner but continual Foreſts, and thoſe ſo intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no ſmall difficulty to finde paſſage thorow them. Full, as moſt other Foreſts are in thoſe Eaſtern parts, of *Panthers*, *Leopards*, *Lions*, *Tigers*: theſe laſt of ſuch an horrible fierceneſs, that it grew into a common Proverb uſed of cruel men, that they had ſucked an *Hyrcanian* Tiger; *Hyrcanæque admôrunt ubera Tigres*; as it is in *Virgil*.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Zioberis*, ſpoken of before. 2. *Maxera*, or *Mazeras*, mentioned by *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ammianus*; and 3. *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caſpian*, and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caſpii* and *Hyrcani*, bordering next unto it; now from the Town of *Bochu*, in *Atropatia*, called *Mare di Bochu*. Faſhioned in an *Oval* form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 600 miles from Eaſt to Weſt. Stormy, and troubleſome, by reaſon of thoſe many great Rivers which fall into it, from all the Provinces adjoyning: which notwithſtanding it hath no viſible commerce with the *Ocean*; nor doth it at any time overflow its banks; finding ſome paſſage under ground, to diſcharge it ſelf of thoſe vaſt ſtreams of water which are poured into it. Well traded by the *Moſcovite* Merchants, who having the command of the River *Volge* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) ſail over it, and land at *Farabant*, or ſome other of the Port-Towns, where they trade for ſilks. Some Iſlands here are in it, but not many, or of any great fame, but onely that they ſerved the Nations which lay near it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* tempeſt under *Tamerlant*; as the Iſles of *Venice* did to the *Italians*, at the coming of *Attila*.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1. *Hyrcania*, once the *Metropolis* of the Province; and ſo called by *Ptolomy*; ſtill extant, but of leſs eſteem, and ſtill called *Hyrcan*. 2. *Tambrace*, in old times of the greateſt ſtrength, and moſt defenſible; but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the war againſt *Arſaces* the *Parthian*, for the recovery of thoſe Countries then revolted from him. 3. *Adrapſa*, 4. *Maſaca*, 5. *Anaroſa*; of which we finde the names, amongſt others, in the antient Writers. 6. *Aſharaffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a ſpacious Plain, containing about 2000 houſes, and now of moſt reputation of all this Province, by the long reſidence therein of *Abas*, the late *Perſian* Sultan; who built there a magnificent Palace, and another two miles off, at a place called *Abaſſebant*. The furniture whereof, beſides coſtly Carpets, in Plate and Jewels, at ſuch time as Sir *Dodmore Cotton* was there Ambaſſador, is ſaid to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at 20 millions of pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in Silks than Jewels: ſuch a vaſt ſumme to be expended on the furniture of one Palace onely, being beyond the poſſibility of the Revenue of the *Perſian Sophies*; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. 7. *Farabant*, on a navigable Arm of the *Caſpian* Sea; for beauty, wealth, and greatneſs, of moſt note in this Countrey. Well traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, eſpecially by the *Ruſſian* Merchant, as before is ſaid: whoſe ſhips come hither in *March*, and return in *July*; it being from hence to *Aſtrachan* but ten daies ſail. Beautified with goodly Gardens, a Royal manſion of the Kings, and a ſpacious Market-place. 8. *Chiacoporo*, near the Sea alſo, but on the banks of a River; the water whereof is ſaid for eleven moneths to be freſh and ſweet, and for the twelfth moneth very ſalt. 9. *Barfruſhdee*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furniſhed with wood and water. 10. *Omoall*, a Town of about 3000 houſes, ſeated on the North ſide of the *Taurus*, in a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoyl; reſorted to by the people of ſo many Nations, that ſeven languages are there commonly ſpoken. Once larger, as appeareth by ſome ruines than it is at the preſent; by ſome conceived to be the *Nabarca* of the Antients, honoured in thoſe times with an Oracle. 11. *Strava*, a Town of great traffick, for raw ſilks eſpecially. 12. *Meſandre*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoyning to it) hath the name of *Mezendrum*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Caſpii*, were the *Maxera*, *Aſtabeni*, *Chrindi*, and the *Arſitenſes*; united in the name of *Hyrcans*, in the time of the *Perſians*; and by that name well known at the coming of *Alexander*. Againſt whom they ſo defended themſelves, by tying the boughs and twigs of their Trees together, that it was impoſſible for him to come at them; till with incredible pains and labour he had cauſed their Woods to be cut down: at ſight whereof the People, who ſuppoſed the King had too much other buſineſs, and of more importance, than to put himſelf unto that trouble, did ſubmit unto him. Falling to the ſhare of *Seleucus*, they were the firſt people that were gained by *Arſaces*, and joined with him in recovering their former liberty; though they got nothing by the bargain but the change of their

Margiana and Bactria.

Maſter. In all times ſince, they have been looked upon as Members of the *Perſian* Empire, till the conqueſt of it by the *Tartars*: in the diſtractions of whoſe great Empire, after *Tamerlanes* death, it fell to ſome Princes of his houſe, who governed here under the vaſſallage and protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathay*. Recovered not long ſince to their old obedience, by Sultan *Abas*: who for the better ſetling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat royal from *Spawhawn*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Casbin*, to *Aſharaffe*, then a ſmall Town, now the chief of this Countrey.

12. *MARGIANA*.

MARGIANA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Hyrcania*; on the Eaſt, with *Bactria*; on the North, with part of *Tartary*, from which ſevered by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Aria*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*, which runs thorow the Countrey: but is now named *Tremigen*.

The Countrey environed with Mountains, and in moſt places of it full of ſandy Deſarts. But where it is watered with the Rivers, *Arias*, and *Margus*, it is very fruitfull, ſtretching it ſelf into a large and ſpacious plain, containing in the circuit near 200 miles. The Plain once compaſſed with a wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*: more memorable for the huge ſtocks of *Vines* which are ſaid to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and ſometimes bearing branches of grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired, in regard there is no other place near unto it, where the vine will grow. And if the Ark reſted on the top of Mount *Caucaſus*, as it is moſt probable it did, why may not this be ſome of the remainder of that firſt *Vineyard* which was planted by *Noah*, when he deſcended from theſe Mountains, as is affirmed by the conſtant tradition of the people which inhabite here?

The people mixt of *Scythian* and *Perſian* breed, partaking of the fierceneſs of the one, and the behaviour of the other. Conform unto the *Perſians*, in Religion, Language, and Apparel; diſtinguiſhed from them in the colour of their *Turbants* onely, which are commonly *Green*: and therefore by the *Perſians* called *Jeſelbas*, or *Green-caps*; the *Turbants* of the *Perſian* being alwaies red.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey are, 1. *Maigus*, the peculiar River of it, which riſing out of the foot of the Mountains, and paſſing thorow the middeſt of the Province, receiveth into its channel the River, 2. *Arias*, haſtning out of *Aria*; and ſo together loſe themſelves in 3. *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*. Out of the joint ſtreams of which ſeveral Rivers, is made a large Lake now called *Sabacamber*, but antiently *Palus Oxiana*, from the principal River.

Places of moſt obſervation in it. 1. *Alexandria*, or *Alexandria Margiana* for diſtinction ſake; one of the ſix Towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Countrey: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*; next *Antiochia* from *Antiochus Soter* King of *Syria*, by whom fortified with a very ſtrong wall. It is now called *Indion*, and eſteemed for the chief of the Countrey. 2. *Jaſonium*, ſeated on the confluence of *Margus* with a nameleſs River iſſuing from the *Seriphian* Mountains. 3. *Nigaa*, as the printed books of *Ptolomy* call it; but miſtook for *Niſſa*, or *Nyſaa*. 4. *Argadina*. 5. *Rhea*; of which nothing memorable. 6. *Maran*, near to which *Iſmael* the firſt of the *Sophian* race, diſcomfited the forces of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Maſſagetes*, and the *Parni*, taking up the midlands; the *Derbicca*, bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the Eaſt. United by the name of *Margians*, they were ſubdued by the Kings of *Perſia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to his Empire: who to aſſure himſelf hereof, built ſix Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the Eaſt; all ſcituate on the tops of hills, and built at ſuch convenient nearneſs that they might afford ſuccour to each other, as occaſion ſerved. After this nothing ſingular in the ſtory of them; involved in the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Perſia*, till *Perſia* was conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, though the reſt of the *Perſian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoak by *Genopſas*, the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Perſia*, for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactriana*, are ſtill ſubject to them.

13. *BACTRIA*.

BACTRIA or *BACTRIANA*, is bounded on the Weſt, with *Margiana*; on the Eaſt and North, with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamiſus*, from which parted by the hills ſo named, and the Mountain *Caucaſus*. It took this name from *Bactria*, the chief City of it; and is now called *Choraſſin*, but by ſome named *Batter*.

The Countrey towards the River *Oxus* is for the moſt part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all ſorts of fruits excepting Olives; rich metals, and ſome precious ſtones, as *Emeralds*, *Chryſolites*, and *Jacinthes*. Plenty of Paſtures there be alſo, well ſtored with Cattel, and thoſe of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greateſt part hereof, to the South and Weſt, is nothing but a ſandy Deſart; and by reaſon that the ſands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be diſcerned: inſomuch as Travellers reſt all day, and take their journey in the night; that they may guide themſelves by the courſe of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being loſt or buried, whilſt alive, in that ſandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puiſſant and warlike nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Aſſyrians*, nor with leſs by the *Perſians*; always in arms, cruel, and reſembling the *Scythians*, whoſe near neighbours they were, and (which may very well paſs for their greateſt vertue) *multum à* Perſarum *luxu abhorrentes*, abhorring naturally from the *Perſian* luxuries. But withall unnaturall to their Parents, whom when old they caſt unto their dogs, kept for that purpoſe; and called *Canes Sepulchrales*, or burial dogs. The women gorgeous in apparel, and proud of geſture, but prodigal of their bodies to their

meaneſt

Bactria.

meaneſt ſlaves. The men to this day do retain their antient ſtoutneſs; but hard beſet betwixt the *Perſians* and the *Tartars*, who ſeverally pretend a dominion over them.

No Province of the *Perſian* Empire hath ſo many Rivers. The principall of which are, 1. *Artamis*, and 2. *Zariaſpes*, mingſing ſtreams together; as do alſo 3. *Ochus*; and 4 *Orgomanes*: all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a boundary betwixt the *Perſian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either, we have ſpoke already.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Bactria*, the *Metropolis* or chief City of it, ſcituate at the foot of the Mountain *Sogdii*; giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Boohor*, and ſtill keeps the dignity of the *Metropolitan*, the ſeat of the Chief Prieſt or Biſhop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Country alſo doth now belong) having here his reſidence, in power and reputation equall to the King himſelf. Well fortified, and ſtored with all military proviſions: the birth-place (as *Maginus* ſaith) in theſe latter Ages of *Avicenna*, that learned Philoſopher and Phyſician; and in the firſt Ages of *Zoroaſter*, the more learned *Aſtrologer*. 2. *Ebuſmi*, once the Regall ſeat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of *Regia*. 3. *Zariſpe*, or *Chariſpe*, the chief City of the *Chariſpa*, a great Tribe of this Countrey. 4. *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*: theſe two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5. *Eucratidia*, built or repaired by the *Macedonians*; as the name, being meerly *Greek*, doth ſeem to intimate. 6. *Alicodra*, as antient as the reſt, but of no great note in the courſe of buſineſs. 7. *Iſtigias*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of thoſe before ſpoken of: ſuperiour to *Bochor* in elegancy, ſtate and greatneſs, though not in dignity, and held by ſome to be the pleaſanteſt of the Eaſt.

This Countrey was as ſoon peopled as any ſince the generall *Deluge*. It had not elſe been poſſible that *Zoroaſter* King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him aſſaulted, ſhould bring into the Field an Army of 400000 men of this, and perhaps ſome other of the neighbouring Provinces, as moſt credible writers ſay he did. Encountring *Ninus* with this Army he prevailed at firſt, and ſlew of the *Aſſyrians* neer an hundred thouſand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his forces, invaded him a ſecond time with an Army of 1700000 foot, and 200000 horſe (the greateſt on record in all ages ſince that time, except that of *Semiramis*): with which he overcame *Zoroaſter*, ſlew him in the field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaſter* is aſcribed the invention of *Aſtronomy*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being ſtudied before the flood, (if *Seths* pillars mentioned by *Joſephus* be of any credit): and therefore probably no otherwiſe to be aſcribed to *Zoroaſter*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or becauſe he firſt committed that unto writing which he had received by *tradition*; or becauſe he brought thoſe confuſed notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being ſlain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the wife of *Menon* (but on the merit of that ſervice made the wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became ſubject unto the *Aſſyrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* & *Perſians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Beſſus* a falſe and cruel Traitor, did command this Province: and having villanouſly ſlain *Darius*, his Lord and Maſter, aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Perſia*, under the name of *Artaxerxes*. But being betrayed by *Spitamenes*, one of his Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruell death, the *Bactrians* became ſubject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in that State; one *Theodatus*, who formerly had the government of it for the *Syrian* Kings, taking unto himſelf the title of King, and the poſſeſſion of the Countrey, about the ſame time that *Arſaces* and the *Parthians* made the like revolt. Wreſted from his poſterity by one *Euthydimus*, the recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cauſe put to the triall of a battel. In which, though *Antiochus* had the better, and ſhewed more perſonal valor in it than any time after: yet he was glad to come to a compoſition, and left to *Euthydimus* both the Crown and the Countrey. Made not long after an acceſſion to the *Parthian* Kingdome, it continued part thereof whileſt that Kingdome ſtood. And in the time of *Ptolomy* (as long time before) had for the chief tribes or nations of it, the *Salatara*, and *Zariaſpa* towards the North; the *Comani*, or *Coamoni* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in South, the middle parts being taken up by the *Thocari*, ſaid to be *gens magna*; the *Scorda*, *Savadii*, *Marica*, *Tambyzi*, *Amariſpe*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Perſian* State, one of the laſt Nations which ſubmitted to the new *Pretenders*: and at this time ſo neutrall betwixt the *Perſians*, and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is not wholly under the power of either. More averſe from the *Perſian* government, ſince the alteration of *Religion* made there by *Hyſmael*, and the reſt of the Sect of *Mortis Hali*: theſe *Bactrians* being of the old race of Mahometans, which adhered to *Haumar*, *Oſmen*, and *Abubecher*, as the true Succeſſors of their falſe Prophet; and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* faction, whom they call commonly *Caphers*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of Mahomet.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of thoſe ſeverall Provinces, which conſtitute the *Perſian* Empire, and ſhewn by what means they were firſt united into one eſtate: we muſt next look upon the names and actions of thoſe mighty Monarchs, who have ſucceſſively, and from time to time enjoyed the Soveraignty. By what good chance *Arbaces* from a Deputy or Lieutenant of Media, obtained the Diademe for himſelfe, we have ſhewn before: and we have ſhewn how liberally he enfeoffed the *Vice-Roys* of the ſeverall Provinces (which in the diviſion made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his ſhare) in the propriety and command of thoſe Countreys, which before they held. Nothing reſerved unto himſelf, and his poſterity, but the title onely; and perhaps ſome acknowledgements made to them, as the Lords in chief. Now left he leſs liberty to his own Medians, than to the reſt of the Provinces; which turning to licentiouſneſſe, was ſo hurtful to them, that they were glad at laſt of that wholſome ſeverity, which *Dioces*, a more Lordly King, began to exerciſe: who taking to himſelf a guard, building the Royall City of *Ecbd-*

Kings of the *Medes.*

tana, and fortifying ſome other places of importance, firſt brought the people under the command of law; in that regard not unfitly called by *Herodotus*, the firſt King of the *Medes*.

Kings of the *Medes*.

A. M.

3146. 1. *Arbaces*, at firſt Governour of the *Medes*, under *Sardanapalus* the *Aſſyrian*; but joyning with *Belochus*, overcame his Maſter, and was the firſt founder of the *Median* Monarchy.

3174. 2. *Mandanes*, the Son of *Arbaces*. 50.

3224. 3. *Siſarmus*. 30.

3254. 4. *Medidus*, by ſome called *Artyras*. 25.

3279. 5. *Cardicceus*, whom ſome call *Arbianes*. 13.

3292. 6. *Deioces*, the founder of *Ecbatana*, and the *Legiſlator* of the *Medes*, whom he firſt brought under the command of Law, and a Regal Government; the former Kings having left the reigns ſo looſe on the necks of the people, that they ſeemed to reign by curteſie onely; and had no more authority amongſt their Subjects, than any of the mean Lords had upon their Vaſſals.

3303. 7. *Phraortes*, a man of great prowess and fortune: He made all *Aſia* ſtand in fear, and compelled the *Perſians* to be his tributaries; but was was after overtopped by the *Scythians*. 22.

3331. 8. *Cyaxares*, united to his Empire the *Saracens*, and the *Parthians*. The King was ſo overlaid by the *Scythians*, who in the reign of *Phraortes*, had broke into *Media*; that he was little better then their Rent-gatherer. But having endured them for above two years, he plotted their final extirpation, and committed his deſign to the Nobles, who willingly gave ear to it. One night, they invited the chief of the *Scythians* to a banquet; where having well liquored them, and put them all to the ſword, the baſer ſort willingly returned homeward. 40.

3371. 9. *Aſtyages*, the Son of *Cyaxares*, who having married his Daughter *Mandane* to *Cambyſes* the Tributary King of *Perſia*; dreamed that ſhe had made as much water as drowned all *Aſia*: hereupon he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Noble men, to ſee the Child killed; but he loathing ſo cruel a fact, committed the charge of executing the Kings commandment to *Mithridates* the Kings Heard-man. He preſerved the life of the young Infant, to whom he gave the name of *Cyrus*, whoſe fortune at laſt lifted him up to the Kingdome of *Perſia*: when abhorring his Grand-Father for that intended cruelty, he both bereft him of his Kingdome, and confined him to *Hyrcania*, when he had reigned thirty five years. A. M. 3406.

3406. 10. *Cyaxares* II. in the Scripture called *Darius Medus*, Son to *Aſtyages*, at the age of 52 years ſucceeded his father. For *Cyrus* pretending no quarrel to his Unkle who had never wronged him, left him the kingdome of *Media*, and took unto himſelf the Soveraignty of *Perſia*, which before was tributary to the *Medes*; not making any other alteration in the State of *Media*.

At this diviſion of the *Median* Empire, as *Torniellus* in his *Annals*, (and that not improbably) is of opinion, it was alſo agreed on, that *Cyrus* ſhould take the daughter and only child of *Cyaxares* to wife; that they ſhould both joyn together in ſubduing of their neighbours; that whatſoever they won, ſhould belong to *Cyaxares*, (who was even then an old Prince) during his life; and that *Cyrus* ſhould be his heir. In the twentieth year of their ſeverall reigns, they took *Babylon*, ſlew *Baltazar*, and deſtroyed the Empire of the *Chaldæans*. This action, the Scriptures attribute wholly to *Cyaxares*, who is by them called *Darius Medus*; whereof *Hierome* alledgeth three reaſons: 1. *Ordo ætatis*, 2 *Regni*, 3. *Propinquitatis*. 1. *Darius* was the elder; 2. the Empire of the *Medes* was more famous than that of the *Perſians*; and 3. the Unkle ought to be preferred before the Nephew. We may add to theſe three, the compoſition above-mentioned, made between theſe Princes, at the beginning of their reigns on the death of *Aſtyages*. The *Greek* Writers attribute the victory onely to *Cyrus*, and that on three reaſons alſo. The *Perſians* deſirous to magnifie *Cyrus* their own Countrey-man, gave him all the glory of their action; and from the *Perſians* the *Greeks* had it. Secondly, *Cyrus* was onely imployed in the ſiege, (*Darius* then being abſent) and by his valour and conduct was the Empire of the *Chaldæans* ruined. And thirdly, *Darius* lived not fully two years after this great victory; ſo that before remote Nations had taken notice of the conqueſt, *Cyrus* was actually in the Throne. *Joſephus* onely in the 11 Chapter of his Book, cutteth the thread even between theſe two Princes; and telleth us that *Darius*, with *Cyrus his Ally*, *deſtroyed the eſtate of the Babylonians*. That this *Darius Medius* of *Daniel* is the *Cyaxares* of the *Greeks*, is more than manifeſt. For *Joſephus* in the place above-cited telleth us, ὃς ἦν Ἀςυάγου υἱὸς καὶ ἕτερον παρὰ τοῖς ἕλλησιν ἐκαλεῖτο ὄνομα: *That he was* Aſtyages *Son, and is otherwiſe called by the* Greeks: now ask the *Greeks* what was the name of the Son of *Aſtyages*, and *Xenophon* will tell you, that it was *Cyaxares*. As for the name of *Nabonidus*, which *Joſeph Scaliger* in ſpight of reaſon, and the whole world of Chronologers, would thruſt upon this *Darius Medus*; we have already refelled it: though we are not ignorant that *Helvicus* and *Calviſius*, two moſt worthy Writers, have followed him, as in all his *Canon*, ſo alſo in this particular error. But to proceed unto the courſe of the *Perſian* Hiſtory; after the death of this *Cyaxares*, *Cyrus* ſucceeded in his Throne, and the Empire of the *Medes* was incorporated in that of the *Perſians*, (as it hath ever ſince continued) if not ſubject to it.

The Firſt *Dynaſty*, or *Race* of the *Perſian* Monarchs, of the houſe of *Achamenes*.

3406. 1. *Cyrus*, who having vanquiſhed *Aſtyages*, united to the Empire of *Perſia* the whole Kingdome of *Media*; the Countreys of *Armenia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, ſome part of *Arabia*, and all the Provinces poſſeſſed by the *Babylonian*, and *Aſſyrian* Monarchs. After which victories, he was ſlain by *Tomyris* a Queen of the *Scythians*, as ſome Writers ſay: others affirming that he eſcaped alive (but wounded) out of the battel, died in his own Kingdom, and was buried at *Paſagarda*, a Town of *Perſis*. This *Cyrus* is magnified by *Xenophon*, as *Æneas* is by *Virgil*, and *Ulyſſes* by *Homer*. 29.

3434. 2. *Cambyſes*, the Son of *Cyrus*, ſubdued *Pſamniticus* King of *Ægypt*, which Country he united to his Empire. Having a mind to marry his Siſter, he was told by his Lawyers that they knew no law which admitted ſuch marriages; but that there was a law, that the *Perſian* Kings might do what they liſted. This King was a very bloody Tyrant.

The *Inter-Regnum* of the *Magi*.

Cambyſes at his expedition into *Ægypt*, conſtituted *Patizithes*, one of the *Magi*, Viceroy in his abſence. He hearing of the Kings death, conferred the Kingdom on his own Son *Smerdis*, making the people believe that he was the brother of *Cambyſes*: a matter of no difficulty, conſidering how retirement from the publique view was a chief point of the *Perſian* Majeſty. But the Nobles either knowing the true *Smerdis* to be ſlain, or ſuſpecting the over-much retiredneſſe of the new King, began to ſearch out the matter. *Otanes* had a daughter, which was one of the Kings Concubines. Her he commanded when the King took next his pleaſure with her, to feel whether he had any ears: for *Cambyſes* (in I know not what humour) had cut off the ears of this *Magus*. This commandement ſhe obeying, found out the falſhood. The *ſeven Princes* informed of this impoſture, joyned together, and ſlew this *Pſeudo Smerdis*, in the eighth moneth of his Reign. This done, to avoid contention, they agreed among themſelves, that the *ſeven Princes* meeting on the Palace green, ſhould acknowledge him the King, whoſe horſe before the riſing of the Sun, firſt neighed. The evening before the day appointed, the horſe-keeper of *Darius* the Son of *Hyſtaſpis*, brought his maſters horſe into the green, together with a Mare, which the horſe then covered. In the Morning the Princes met; and *Darius* his horſe knowing the place, and longing for his mare, neighed luſtily: on which the Princes preſently acknowledged *Darius* for their King.

The Reſtoring of the Kingdom.

3443. 3. *Darius Hyſtaſpis*, one of the ſeven *Perſian* Princes, deſcended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Perſians*, thus elected King, took *Babylon* (which had revolted) by the ingenious fetches of *Zopirus*; and over-ran all *Aſia*, and ſome part of *Greece*, where he was overthrown at the Battel of *Marathron*. 46.

3479. 4. *Xerxes*, to revenge the overthrow at *Marathron*, attempted to ſubdue the *Greeks*, : by whom he was overthrown by the naval Battel of *Salamis*, and that famous and honorable exploit of the *Gracians*, at *Thermopylæ*. 21.

3500. 5. *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, was he who ſent *Eſdras* to re-build the temple of the Lord; and received *Themiſtocles*, being baniſhed from *Athens*. This alſo is he, as ſome would have it, whom the Scriptures call *Ahaſuerus*, the Husband of *Heſter*; though others chooſe rather to place that ſtory in the time of *Xerxes*. 44.

3544. 6. *Darius* II. ſurnamed *Nothus*, in whoſe time the *Egyptians* revolted, and choſe a King of their own. 19.

3563. 7. *Artaxerxes* II from the greatneſs of his memory ſurnamed *Mnemon*; under whom hapned that famous retreat of *Xenophon*, with a handfull of his *Gracians*, thorow moſt of the Provinces of this Empire; by which they ſhewed the way to the *Macedonians*, how eaſie a Conqueſt they might make of that mighty Empire. 36.

3599. 8. *Ochus*, a great Tyrant, but a valiant Prince, recovered *Egypt*, ſubdued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and ſome part of *India*; and was at laſt ſlain by *Bagoas*, one of the Eunuchs of his Chamber.

3625. 9. *Arſes*, the Son of *Ochus*, moſt villainouſly murdered by the ſame Eunuch, for fear he ſhould revenge the death of his Father.

3629 10. *Darius* III. Governor of *Armenia*, and Couſin German of *Ochus*; before his coming to the Crown named *Codamannus*; by the meanes of the ſaid *Bagoas* made ſole Monarch of *Perſia*. But being vanquiſhed by *Alexander* the *Great*, in three battells of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Perſians* was transferred to the *Gracians*, A M. 3635.

The certain Revenues of this great Monarchy ſeems to have been 14560 Talents; for ſo much the laſt *Darius* received yearly. But what the caſual and extraordinary *Intrado* was, is not eaſie to ſay; though manifeſt it is, and demonſtrable by many ſtrong and evident reaſons, that they farre exceeded the *certain*. For firſt, the *Perſian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces; Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the ranſome of his mother and two daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold. Thirdly, *Alexander* found in the Treaſury of *Damaſcus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Suſa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoined; in that of *Paſagardis*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Perſepolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; beſides the infinite riches of the Treaſury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly ſpecified: An huge and moſt unſpeakable ſumme. Fourthly, in that the gold and riches which *Alexander*, now a Conqueror, ſent from *Perſia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (beſides that which every Captain and common Souldier had provided and laid up for his own maintenance) loaded ten thouſand Mules, and five thouſand Camels.

After this overthrow of the *Perſian* Monarchy, the *Perſian* Nation lay obſcure 535 years, *viz.* from the 3635 year of the World, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*; of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Succeſſors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Arſacidan* Kings of *Prathia*, Μετὰ γὰρ Δαρεῖον, *&c.* as *Herodian.* "For after *Darius* had loſt his Kingdom to *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, and after "the Victor himſelf was dead alſo; the more potent Captains divided *Aſia* among them. But diſcords "often ariſing, and the *Macedonians* puiſſance by theſe often broils not ſmally broken, *Arſaces* one "of the *Parthian* Nobility perſwaded the barbarous people of the Eaſt, and among them the *Perſians*, to "caſt off the *Greek* yoak, and ſtand for their liberty: he himſelf taking upon him the title of King, and "inveſting himſelf with a Diadem, *A.M.* 3718. The *Perſians* by this revolt got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrant* onely: theſe *Parthian* Princes lording it with as high an inſolency, as ever the old *Perſian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria*, did before. From this *Arſaces*, all the reſt of his Succeſſors, and thoſe too of the family of *Artabanus*, or the ſecond Race of *Parthian* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperors that of *Cæſar*, or the old *Ægyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their uſual ſtile was *Rex Regum*, or *King of Kings*: and by that ſtile, with arrogance and inſolence enough, *Vologeſes* thus inſcribed his letters to *Veſpaſian* the *Roman* Emperor, viz. *Arſaces, Rex Regum, Flavio Veſpaſiano*: giving himſelf the title of *King of Kings*, but the other nothing but his bare names onely. To which *Veſpaſian*, without taking notice of the *Parthians* pride, returned his anſwer to him with this ſuperſcription, *Fl. Veſpaſianus Regi Regum Arſacidi*: whether with more ſcorn, or modeſty, is hard to ſay. They alſo called themſelves the Brethren of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefeſt Gods they worſhipped. Great Princes queſtionleſs they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the world beſides: whoſe names and acts occurre in theſe following Catalogues of

2. The *Arſacidan* or *Parthian* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

A.M.

3718. 1. *Arſaces*, the founder of the *Parthian* Family.

3741. 2. *Mithridates*, or *Arſaces* the 2d. aſſaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men; but without ſucceſs.

3761. 3. *Pampatius*.

3773. 4. *Phraartes*, the Son of *Pampatius*.

3783. 5. *Mithridates* II. brother of *Phraartes*, ſubdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.

6. *Phraartes* II. ſlain in a war againſt the *Scythians*.

3857. 7. *Artabanus*, Uncle to *Phraartes* the 2d.

8. *Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*.

9. *Mithridates* III. brother of *Pacorus*.

3903. 10. *Horodes*, brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and cauſed to be ſlain in his own ſight. He alſo vanquiſhed *M. Craſſus*, and ſlew 20000 *Romans*: and becauſe *Craſſus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he cauſed molten gold to be poured down his throat, A miſerable death, but in reſpect of the divine Providence, a moſt juſt revenge upon him for his ſacriledge, in robbing the Temple of *Hieruſalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the diſgrace which thereby hapned to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompenſed by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*; who ſlew great numbers of them in a pitched field, and amongſt others, *Pacorus* the Kings Son: the day of the battel being the ſame in which *Craſſus* had before been vanquiſhed. After this victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the firſt Triumph that ever the *Romans* had held for a *Parthian* Victory) he was in a faire way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have ſhrewdly ſhaken it at the leaſt; had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that ſervice. Finally; *Horodes* was ſlain by his Son *Phraartes*.

12. *Phraartes* III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruel, as the murther of his own father and many of his brethren doth clearly evidence. Againſt him marched *Marcus Antonius* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an abſolute overthrow; of 16 Legions, ſcarce ſix returning home in ſafety. This King ſubmitted himſelf and Kingdom unto *Auguſtus*, reſtoring the *Roman* Enſigns, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Craſſus*. The onely mark of the *Parthians* ſubjection, was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperors of *Rome*; which alſo was of no long continuance.

12. *Phraartes* IV. Son of *Phraartes* the 3d. whom he ſlew and ſucceeded.

13. *Orodes* II. Son of *Phraartes* the fourth, ſlain in a conſpiracy.

14. *Voxon*,

14. *Vonon*, ſubſtituted in the place of *Orodes*, but outed by

15. *Tiridates*, who was alſo diſpoſſeſſed of his life and Kingdome by *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of Courage, and being offended with the two laſt Kings, becauſe they either had received the Kingdome, or at leaſt a Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperours. Which *Artabanus*, though deſcended either from a female, or ſome of the Collaterall line of the former family, yet not being the direct heir thereof, he is looked on as a ſtranger to the blood of the *Arſacida*, the family of the *Arſaces* giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which family we have the names of twelve Kings ſucceſſively reigning, the moſt conſiderable of them being *Choſroes*, the 8th King of this line, from whom the Emperor *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Meſopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Perſian* Crown, by *Sapores* the ninth King of the next *Perſian* Dynaſty. But for thoſe twelve Kings of this houſe, they are theſe.

The 3d. Dynaſty of the Kings of *Perſia*, and the 2d, of the *Parthian* Race.

1 *Artabanes*.
2 *Bardanes*.
3 *Goteres*.
4 *Vonnoes*.
5 *Vologeſes*.
6 *Artabanus* II.
7 *Pacorus*.
8 *Choſroes*.
9 *Parmaſpates*.
10 *Vologeſes* II.
11 *Vologeſes* III.

12 *Artabanus* III. the laſt King of this new race of the *Parthians*, whoſe overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the firſt *Perſian* King of the 4th. *Dynaſty*, occaſioned the tranſlation of the Diadem to the naturall *Perſians*; after it had continued in two *Parthian* families, for the ſpace of 470 years. Which Tranſlation, as it was wrought by the unreſiſtable power of God, who onely hath the diſpoſing of Crowns and Scepters; ſo in the way of ſecond cauſes it may be principally referred to the barbarous maſſacre of this people, by *Antonius Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperour. Who having negotiated a marriage with the daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to ſolemnize the Nuptials, was met by the old King, accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choiceſt of his Souldiers, and other Subjects, in Tirumphal Ornaments. Which honourable train was no ſooner come neer his Army, but he commanded his Souldiers (on a watch-word given) to put them all to the ſword, the King hardly eſcaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* ſucceeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* ſet upon him to revenge that ſlaughter. But underſtanding after a long fight, of three daies continuance, that *Macrinus* had ſlain *Caracalla*, they made peace with him: but were ſo weakned and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Perſians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation the Regall power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Perſian* (his name perhaps ſuggeſting ſome high thoughts unto him) did ſo well husband the opportunity, that he ſlew *Artabanus* the laſt King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the Royall ſeat into *Perſia*. Yet was not this ſo eaſily effected, the *Parthians*, notwithſtanding their former loſſes, maintaining a cruell fight for three days together: ſo difficult was it to vanquiſh that Nation, when their Forces were broken, impoſſible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes* proud of this ſucceſs, ſent a peremptory embaſſie to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman Emperor*, to have all the Provinces of *Aſia*, which had formerly belonged to the *Perſian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not ſo eaſily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to ſuppreſs ſo inſolent an enemy, marched towards *Perſia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his Eemy more work, he divided into three parts: whereof the firſt was to march into *Media*, the ſecond into *Perſia*, the third himſelf led in the mid-way between both, to ſuccour both as occaſion required. But his device ſucceeded not happily; for his two Armies being by the *Perſians* broken, he with much danger and haſte retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Perſian* Kingdome, the eſtabliſhment followed not long after, *Valerianus* the Emperor being vanquiſhed, and taken priſoner by *Sapores*, the ſecond King of this race. So that now the name of the *Perſian* grew ſo terrible to the *Romans*, that *Conſtantine* the *Great* tranſplanted many of the Colonies and Garriſons of the North-weſt part of the Empire, into the Eaſt, to keep the *Perſian* from growing too far upon the *Roman* Provinces: and removed alſo the ſeat of the Empire nigher unto them, from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople*. And thus having ſhewn the beginning and eſtabliſhment, the foundation and building of the new Kingdome of the *Perſians*: take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, untill they once more loſt the ſoveraignty of their own Nation, and became ſlaves again to more barbarous Maſters.

The fourth Dynaſty, or race of the *Perſian* Kings.

228 1 *Artaxerxes* 15.
243 2 *Sapores* 31.
272 3 *Ormiſdates* 1.
275 4 *Vararanes* 1.
278 5 *Vararanes* II. 16.
294 6 *Vararanes* III.
294 7 *Narſes* 7.
302 8 *Miſdates* 7.
310 9 *Sapar* II. 70.
380 10 *Artaxerxes* II: 12.
391 11 *Sapores* III. 5.
396 12 *Varanes* IV. 10.
406 13 *Iſdigertes* 21.
427 14 *Vararanes* IV. 20.
447 15 *Vararanes* V. 17.
464 16 *Perozes* 20.
484 17 *Valens* 4.
488 18 *Cabades* diſpoſſeſſed by

499 19 *Lambaſes* 4.
503 20 *Cabades*, again reſtored.
533 21 *Coſroes Magnus* 48.
581 22 *Hormiſda* 8.
589 23 *Coſroes* II. 39.
628 24 *Siroes* 1.
629 25 *Adheſir.*
26 *Sarbatus.*
27 *Barnarius.*
630 28 *Hormiſda* II. the 28 & laſt King of the race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth *Dynaſty*: of whom beſides the two firſt Kings, whoſe Acts are ſpoken of before, the moſt remarkable were, 1. *Vararanes* the ſecond, in whoſe time *Carus* the Emperour paſſing over *Euphrates*, and laying ſiege to *Cteſiphon*, was there ſlain by a Thunderbolt. 2. *Narſes*, the ſon of *Vararanes*, who firſt diſcomfited *Galerius*, one of the *Cæſars*, in the Empire of *Diocleſian*, and totally ruined his Army: for which *Galerius* being forced to lacquey it by the Emperours Chariot in his purple Robes, was ſo highly ſhamed, that to recover his credit he ſet upon *Narſes* once again, routed him, and took priſoners his wives and children. 3. *Sapores* the ſecond, the ſon of *Miſdates*, who began his reign before his birth. For his Father dying without iſſue, left his wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having ſignified by their Art to be a male, the *Perſian* Princes cauſed the Crown and Royall Ornaments to be ſet upon his Mothers belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puiſſant Prince he proved, holding continuall war with *Conſtantine*, and his Succeſſors, till the death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the beſt part of *Meſopotamia*: but withall a great perſecuter of the *Chriſtians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are ſaid to have ſuffered in his time. 4. *Iſdigertes*, a Prince ſo eſteemed of by *Arcadius* the Eaſtern Emperor, that he made him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his Son *Theodoſius*: which truſt he royally performed, and was a great friend unto the *Chriſtians* in his own dominions. 5. *Cabades*, firſt outed of his Kingdome by *Zamaſpes*, and reſtored again, was the firſt *Perſian* King who permitted the free exerciſe of the *Chriſtian* Religion. He ſlew *Zeliobes* a King of the *Hunnes* coming to his aid againſt the *Romans*, becauſe he had before promiſed to aſſiſt the Emperour, and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of his eſtate. 6. *Coſroes* the Son of *Cabades*, ſirnamed the *Great*, a conſtant enemy of the *Romans*, from whom he conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and ſacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the war brought home to his own doors, by *Mauritius*, who was afterwards Emperour, and his own Countries in a flame; he took ſuch thought of it, that he died of a feaver. 7. *Coſroes* the ſecond, as great an enemie to the Emperour *Heraclius*, from whom he took all that was left of *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hieruſalem* it ſelf; moſt of it recovered by *Heraclius*: in deſpight of whom he cauſed all the *Chriſtians* in his Kingdome to turn *Neſtorians*. 8. *Hormiſda* the ſecond, the laſt of this *Dynaſty*, who being firſt weakned by Civill and domeſtick diſſentions, was vanquiſhed by *Haumer* and his *Saracens*, Anno 634. burying ſo the glory of this renowned Nation in the grave of oblivion, or at leaſt ſubjection.

The *Saracenicall Caliphs* having added this Kingdome to their huge Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*: not one ſupream for the whole Kingdome, but ſeverall Governours or *Sultans* for each ſeverall Province, called by new names, and moulded into many *Toparchies*, as *Chorazan*, *Mauzenabar*, *Usbeck*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of themſelves, and warring one upon another, as their humours led them, without relation to the *Caliph* or Lord in chief. During which buſtles it ſo hapned, that *Mahomet* the *Sultan* of *Perſia* (ſo called becauſe he was the chief in command and power) picking a quarrell with his neighbour the *Sultan* of *Babylon*, (*Biſaſiris* he is called in ſome *Chriſtian* Writers, by whom taken or miſtaken for the *Caliph* himſelf) made War upon him. But finding him countenanced and ſupported by the power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then poſſeſſed of ſome part of *Armenia Major*, to come in to his aid: by whoſe means he overthrew the *Caliphs* forces, and might have got the Soveraignty of *Perſia* unto himſelf, if he had uſed his victory and his friends with any tolerable diſcretion. But denying to pay theſe *Turks* their wages, and ſend them home, he occaſioned them to make head againſt him, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix* their principall Leader; to whom being once in Arms, ſeverall diſcontented perſons of the naturall *Perſians*, did unite themſelves. Encouraged with which additions, and being furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, and other neceſſaries by the ſpoil of the Countrey, they give battel to the *Sultan* himſelf: whom having vanquiſhed and ſlain, *Tangrolipix* by the joint conſent of both Armies is made King of *Perſia*, the Founder of

The fifth Dynaſty, or the *Turkiſh* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1030. 1. *Tangrolipix*, of whom ſufficiently before.

2. *Axan*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Cuthu Muſes*, his neer kinſman, was ſent with great forces againſt the *Chriſtians*, whom he diſpoſſeſſed of a great part of *Aſia Minor*.

3. *Balak*, Sultan of *Perſia*, in the beginning of the wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, againſt whom he is reported to have ſent his forces. Of whoſe Succeſſors I find nothing till the time of

1198. 4. *Caſſanes*, the laſt King or *Sultan* of the *Turks*, vanquiſhed in the year 1202 by the *Cham* of *Tartary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the death of *Axan*, or his next Succeſſor, the *Turks* loſt the ſoveraignty of *Perſia*, though they kept the poſſeſſion of ſome parts of it; the Soveraignty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*: and that it was ſo held by both, till the *Tartars* diſpoſſeſſed the one, and deſtroyed the whole progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the opinion of *Benjamin Tudelenſis*, a learned Jew, which had travelled moſt part of the Eaſt; to whoſe judgement herein I ſubſcribe, as moſt ſound and rationall.

The

The Sixth *Dynaſty*, or the *Tartarian* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1260. 1. *Haalon*, or *Ulah-Kuhkan*, by *Occata* the great *Cham* made King of *Perſia*; exterminated the whole race of the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*.

1266. 2. *Habkakaihon*, the ſon of *Haalon*.

1282. 3. *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haiton* called *Tangador*, who made himſelf a *Mahometan*; and was named *Hamed*; the brother of *Habkakaihon*.

1284. 4. *Argon-Khon*, the eldeſt Son of *Habkakaihon*.

1292. 5. *Geniotnkhon*, brother of *Argon-Khon*.

1295. 6. *Badukhan*, the Unkle of the laſt; of which three there is little memorable.

1296. 7. *Gazhun*, the Son of *Argon*; who made *Casbin* his Imperial ſeat.

1305. 8. *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is ſaid to have been the founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the brother of *Gazhun*.

1317. 9. *Abuſaid*, Son of *Alyaptu*, the laſt of the race of *Haalon*, that reigned in *Perſia*. After whoſe death, *Anno* 1337 (being the 736 of the *Mahometan Hegira*) the more Potent Princes of the *Tartars* ſeized on the ſeveral parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himſelf King of that part or Province which he was poſſeſſed of. And amongſt them *Gempſas* the Sultan or Souldan of *Parthia*, (though a *Perſian* born) put in for a ſhare, and made himſelf maſter of his own Province, and ſome parts adjoining: made on that ground by ſome of our Chriſtian writers (who very imperfectly have tranſmitted to us the affairs of this Country) the ſole King of *Perſia*. In this confuſion it continued till the coming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind driving all before him, compoſed the differences, by getting all unto himſelf. But as Philoſophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance, ſo the courſe of buſineſs and the ſucceſs of actions may inſtruct us alſo, that a Kingdome forced to bow under the command of a proſperous Army, is not well aſſured to the Victor; but that the fury of the war once paſt, it may return again to its former liberty, or open a more eaſie paſſage to ſome new Invador; and ſo it fared with the conqueſts and ſucceſſes of *Tamerlane* whoſe iſſue quickly loſt this Kingdom, and almoſt all the reſt of his other purchaſes: leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly, by his own prudence, in cantoning his Eſtates amongſt his Children; and partly, by the weakneſs of his Succeſſors in the Realm of *Perſia*: this Kingdome did relapſe immediately to the ſame confuſions in which he found it; having almoſt as many ſoveraign Kings, as Provinces. Moſt of them Homagers, perhaps to the Kings of the houſe of *Tamerlane*; and thoſe who afterwards ſucceeded in the Title of Kings of *Perſia*, of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Dynaſty, not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithſtanding the great and proſperous ſucceſſes of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the race of *Tamerlane*, who onely in their times had the honor to be called Kings of *Perſia* (and well enough content with that:) ſuch as they were, we finde them in this order following.

1405. 10. *Mirza Charok*, the fourth ſon of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded by his appointment in the Realm of *Perſia*.

1447. 11. *Oleghbeg*, Son of *Mirza Charok*, vanquiſhed and ſlain by his own ſon.

1450. 12. *Abdalatiſe*; ſlain not long after by his own Souldiers.

1451. 13. *Abdula*, the Son of *Oleghbeg*, and Brother of *Abdalatiſe*, vanquiſhed by

1453. 14. *Abuſaid* II. deſcended from *Moroncha*, the third ſon of *Tamerlane*, ſucceeded on the death of *Abdula*.

1461. 15. *Zeuzes*, whom ſome call *Pooncha*, others *Malaonches*, diſcomfited and ſlain in Battel by *Uſſan Caſſanes*, *Anno* 1472. which was about 70. yeares from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The ſeventh *Dynaſty* of the *Turcoman*, or the *Armenian* race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1472. 1. *Uſſan Caſſanes*, by ſome called *Aſymbeius*, by others more truely *Ozem Azembec*, was the Son of *Tracheton*, one of thoſe poor *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Princes, diſpoſſeſſed by *Bajazet* the firſt, and reſtored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his neighbours, he was warned to deſiſt by *Zeuzes* laſt *Perſian* King; with whom encountring in a pitched field he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the victory.

1478. 2. *Jacub* the ſecond Son of *Uſſan Caſſanes*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne, and repulſed the *Mamalucks* out of *Meſopotamia* and *Aſſyria*, which they had invaded. He was after poiſoned by his wife.

1490. 3. *Julaver*, a Kinſ-man of *Jacubs*, ſucceeded him in the eſtate, which he held only three years, and then left it to

1493. 4. *Baiſinger*, a Prince of the ſame blood; who living in adultery with the wife of *Jacub*, had conſpired his death. 2.

1495. 5. *Ruſtan*, aſſaulted by *Aider*, or *Secaider*, of the *Sophian* faction, who then began to be of power.

1498. 6. *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the laſt King of this *Turcoman* or *Armenian* race; firſt vanquiſhed *Secaider* at the battle of *Derbent*, and cut off his head: But was afterward overthrown and ſlain by *Hyſmael* the Son of *Aider*; upon the quarrel and occaſion which here followeth.

Mahomet the Impoſtor, and firſt Emperor of the *Saracens*, by his laſt will and Teſtament, bequeathed the ſucceſſion unto that Eſtate, to *Hali* his neer Kin-ſman, and Husband of *Fatime*, his Eldeſt Daughter. But *Abubezar*, *Haumar*, and *Oſmen*, three powerfull men, and the Chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, ſucceſſively followed one another in the ſupream Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, ſupplanted firſt, and afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Muhavias*, a great man of war, who ſucceeded in it; and to ſecure himſelf therein, ſlew *Haſim* or *Oſſan*, the ſon of *Hali*, and eleven of the ſons of that *Oſſan*; the twelfth, called *Muſa Ceredine*, eſcaping with life. From him deſcended lineally one *Guiene*, the Lord of *Ardoville* in *Media*; who conſidering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the eſtabliſhing of that high honor in his own family, as the right Heirs to it. A man of ſo great reputation among the people, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conqueſt of *Perſia*, thought it no diſhonour to his greatneſs to beſtow a friendly viſit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his Son, called *Aider*, who afterwards, for the purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Sophy*; the word ſo ſignifying in that language: who alſo proved of ſuch eſteem and power with all ſorts of men, that *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, the firſt King of the *Armenian*, or *Turcoman* race, thought fit to make him husband unto one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the ſon of *Uſſan*, and ſome of his ſucceſſors, ſeeing him grow unto ſuch power and eſtimation with the common people; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to depreſſe him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the Caſe then ſtood, practiſed to adde unto his party, under the popular pretence of reforming things that were amiſs in their Religion; and grew ſo powerful in the end, that he gave battel unto *Ruſtan* and *Alamat*, the two laſt Kings of the former race. But *Alamat* having got the victory, cauſed him to be ſlain; and delivered *Hyſmael* and *Solyman*, his two ſons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a Chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual priſon. But *Amazar* a man of a more ingenuous diſpoſition, afforded them not onely liberty, but alſo good education: inſomuch that *Hyſmael Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertooke revenge for the death of his Father; which work he fulfilled, having overcome and ſlain King *Alamat*, and his ſon *Elvan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King, or *Shaugh*, of *Perſia*, altered the form of Religion: making *Hali*, and himſelfe, the true Succeſſors of *Mahomet*; but condemning *Abubezar*, *Hanmar*, and *Oſmen*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schiſmaticks*.

Hence proceeded the divers Wars, which to the *Perſians* lois hath happened between them and the *Turks*: the *Perſians* burning whatſoever book or Monument they finde concerning thoſe three; and the *Turks* holding it more meritorious to kil one *Perſian*, than ſeventy Chriſtians. *Surius*, in his Commentaries, writiug purpoſely of the Acts of *Hyſmael*, ſaith, that the *Jews*, on ſome fond conceit, were perſwaded that he was the *Meſſiah* they had ſo long looked for: but it proved quite contrary, there never being Prince that more vexed and greived them.

The eighth *Dynaſty*, or *Sophian* race of the Kings of Perſia.

1505. 1. *Hyſmael Sophi*, the founder of this family, over thrown by *Selimus* the firſt, in the *Calderan* fields. 20.

1525. 2. *Tamas*, the Son of *Hyſmael*, vanquiſhed by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countreys of *Chaldaa*, *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*, with ſome parts of *Media*. 53.

1571. 3. *Aider*, the ſecond Son of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdome, impriſoning his elder brother; but his cruelty being too much feared, he was made away, by the practice of *Periancona* his own Siſter, having reigned only fifteen dayes.

4. *Hyſmael* II. eldeſt ſon of *Tamas*, reſtored unto his Fathecs Throne; but murdered with the privity of his Siſter alſo, who found him of too rough a nature for her to govern; having reigned neer two years.

1579. 4. *MahometCodabanda*, advanced unto the throne by his Siſters faction (as being of a milder and more tractable natu e) at his firſt entrance cauſed her to be beheaded for the former murders. During his time, not fully ſetled in the State, *Amurath* the 3d. by his Leivtenants won from him almoſt al *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Gorgia*. 7.

1485. 6. *Abas*, the ſecond ſon of *Mahomet*, having treacherouſly practiſed the death of *Mirza*, his elder brother, ſucceeded his Father, recovered almoſt all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdomes of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candahor*, and *Hyrcania*, to the Crown of *Perſia*.

7. *Soffie*, the Nephew of *Abas* by his ſon *Mirza*, (whoſe eyes he cauſed to be put out, on a falſe ſuſpition) at the age of fifteen years ſucceeded: committed by his Grand-father, during his minority, to the protection of *Emangoly*, *Chawn*, or Duke of *Shiras*. A Prince, who ſince he came to age, hath had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdat* and other places, which had been taken from them in the time of *Abas*.

The Government of theſe *Perſian* Kings, though it be *deſpotical* and ſevere, hath a great deal leſs of the *Tyrant* in it, then any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: theſe cheriſhing their Brethren, maintaining *Nobility* amongſt them, and incouraging induſtry; which makes them to be better ſerv'd than the *Turk*, or *Tartar*; to both whom they are far inferiour, both in power and Treaſure. Their Officers of State, and men of principle imployment, for the moſt part *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the Eaſt:) ſuch Perſons being thought moſt truſty, becauſe abſtracted from the obligations of wife and children, they ſtudy more the Princes ſervice then their own advantages. Their forces conſiſt moſt of *Horſe*, to which they are inclined more generally, then to ſerve on foot; and yet the greateſt body of horſe which they have brought at any time into the field, came not to above 30000; but thoſe well furniſhed and appointed, maintained on *Lordſhips* and eſtates, after the manner of the *Turkiſh Timariots*. The *Foot-Souldiers* of his own Countries, but poor and raw, and very ſeldome ſtand their ground, that defect being for the moſt part ſupplied by *Mercenaries*. The inconvenience of which being found by Sultan *Abas*, he ſerved himſelf of children bought of *Chriſtian* Parents, neer the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Egyptian Sultans* had their *Mamalucks*) whom they call by the name of *Cozel-Baſſas*, or *Red caps*, ſo named from the colour of their *Turbans*: trained up by them in their Religion, & warlike diſcipline, as the *Turks*, their *Janizaries*; yet farre inferiour to the *Turks*, againſt whom if they have prevailed ſince the time of *Abas*, they may aſcribe the greateſt part of their good fortune to thoſe diviſions and *Rebellions* which in theſe late times have been frequent in the *Turkiſh* Empire. And as for their Sea-forces, they are inconſiderable. For though they have a large Sea-Coaſt both on the *Perſian* Bay, the *Caſpian* Sea, and the Southern Ocean; yet are they very poor in ſhipping: ſuffering the *Moſcovite* to ingroſs the trade of the *Caſpian* Sea; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the *Southern* Ocean; as formerly that alſo of the *Perſian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormus*.

The *Revenues* of this Kingdome, in the time of *Hyſmael* the firſt *Sophy*, were exceeding great: inſomuch that *Tamas* his Succeſſor, to ingratiate himſelf with all ſorts of people, releaſed them of all kinds of *Cuſtomes* impoſed on *Merchandiſe*, either imported or exported. And this, they ſay, amounted to the ſum of 90000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a million and 800000 Crowns of annual income. Which, notwithſtanding, his *Revenue* was computed at four or five millions of Crowns yearly; raiſed out of *Demeaſn* lands, the *tenth* of fruits, the profit of *mines*, and the *fine* payed by every Subject when he ſets up ſhop. But *Tamas* finding this not to be ſufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his money, and thereby for the preſent his *Revenues* alſo. Since that they have been much impaired by the Conqueſts made upon them by the *Turks*; who had got from them ſo much land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*, and yielded to the *Grand ſignieur* on million of yearly income; whether improved again, or not, to their former height, I am not able to determine.

And ſo much for ***PERSIA.***

* * *

OF

OF
TARTARIA.

TARTARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *China*, the *Orientall* Ocean, and the ſtreights of *Anian* (if ſuch ſtreights there be) by which parted from *America*; on the Weſt, with *Ruſſia*, and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean: and on the South, with part of *China*, from which ſeparated by a mighty wall; the River *Oxus* parting it from *Bactria* and *Margiana*, two *Perſian* Provinces; the *Caſpian* Sea, which ſeparates it from *Media*, and *Hyrcania*; the *Caucaſian* Mountains interpoſing betwixt it and *Turcomania*; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia*, and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a puiſſant and mighty people, now poſſeſſed hereof; the reaſon of whoſe name we ſhall ſhew hereafter.

It containeth all thoſe great and ſpacious Provinces, which the Antients called *Seres*, *Scythia extra Imaum*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Sacæ*, *Sogdiana*, the greateſt part of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europæa*: extending it ſelf the whole length of *Aſia*, from the River *Tanais*, to the *Eaſtern* Ocean; taking in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, and ſome other parts of *Europe* alſo. So that if we meaſure it by miles, it is ſaid to contain 5400 from Eaſt to Weſt, and 3600 from North to South; a greater quantity of ground than the *Turkiſh* Empire, but of leſſe fertility and accompt.

In meaſuring by the way of degrees, it reacheth from the 50 degree of *Longitude*, to the 195 which is 145 degrees from Weſt to Eaſt; and from the 40th degree of Northern *Latitude*, unto the 80. which is within ten degrees of the Pole it ſelfe. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the ſixt *Clime*, where the longeſt day in ſummer is 15 houres, till they ceaſe meaſuring by *Climates*; the longeſt day in the moſt Northern parts hereof, being full ſix moneths; and in the winter halfe of the year, the night as long.

The Country lying under ſuch different *Meridians*, and ſuch diſtant *Climes*, muſt needs be ſuch, as no generall *Character* can be given of it; and therefore we ſhall deferre that, with the names of the Rivers and Chief Mountains, to the deſcription of the ſeveral and particular Provinces. But for the People, being much of the ſame nature in every part, we may take the meaſure of them here. Affirmed to be of ſquare Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noſes, ugly Countenances; ſwart of complexion, not ſo much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps far enough off) as their naturall ſluttiſhneſs. Barbarous every where in behaviour, eſpecially in thoſe parts, which they call *Aſiatica*, and *Antiqua*: but withall very ſtrong of body, ſwift of footmanſhip, vigilant in time of ſervice, and patient of all extreamities both of cold and hunger. The women ſuitable unto the men, ſcorning or wanting ornaments to ſet themſelves out, or when they do, they ſeldom go beyond copper, feathers, or ſuch precious *gu-gaws*.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was ſaid; eating their *Enemies* when they take them, as in way of revenge; firſt letting out their blood, which they receive into *Cups*, and uſe it as wine unto their feaſt. Though ſwift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on *Oxen*; about whoſe necks, as about their horſes, when they travell, they uſe little bells, with which *muſick* they are much delighted. Their *ſpeech*, even in their common talk, is a kind of *whining*; and their ſinging little better then the *howling* of wolves. They eat commonly with unwaſhed hands, the durt and greaſe about their fingers ſerving for ſawce to their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink uſe mares milk; homely of Habit, made of the courſeſt ſtuff, and reaching no lower than the knee: and if they go to the charge of furrs, contrary to the cuſtome of other people, they wear the hairy ſide outwards, and the skin next their own bodies, onely to ſhew the richneſs of their Apparel. And yet ſo proud in this beggary, that they account the *Chriſtians* but as dogs, contemn all the reſt of the world, and think their *Cham* the onely conſiderable Prince; by whoſe name they *ſwear*, as by their Gods.

In matter of *Religion*, it is hard to ſay, whether *Mahometaniſm*, or *Paganiſm*, be of moſt extent: ſome parts hereof being wholly *Pagan*, ſome wholly *Mahometan*, and ſome mixt of both. But of the two the *Pagan* is the better *Gentleman*, as being of the *elder* houſe, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of *Mahomet* not being entertained amongſt them, till the year 1246.

And yet theſe have not ſo prevailed, as to extinguiſh the remainders of *Chriſtianity*, of which there are amongſt them many ſeveral *Churches*. The *Chriſtian* faith firſt planted amongſt the *Scythians*, by the preaching of Saint *Andrew*, and Saint *Philip*, two of the Apoſtles. Overgrown in theſe latter Ages by the Sect of *Neſtorians*, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to inſtruct them in more *Orthodox* Tenets. Before the prevaling of the *Tartars*, beſides the *Circaſſian* Chriſtians of whom more anon, there are in the moſt remote parts of *Tartarie*, whole Kingdomes of that *Religion*; as namely

that

Tartaria Precopenſis.

that of *Tenduch*, then the chiefeſt of all: beſides ſome numbers of them in *Tanguth*, *Cauchinteles*, *Caſſar*, *Samarchan*, *Karthim*, *Suchair*, *Ergimul*, and *Caraiam*; where in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who ſurveyed theſe parts about the year 127. they lived intermingled with the *Pagans*. Not ſo diminiſhed ſince the Conqueſt of thoſe Countries by the *Tartars*, but that they are of a conſiderable number, eſpecially in *Cathay* it ſelf: where they are ſaid to have a *Metropolitan* in the City of *Cambalu* (the principal City of that Empire) and he ſo honoured by the great *Cham*, that for a time they receive their Crowns from no hands but his.

As for the *Tartars*, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard* ſaid to be the off-ſpring of the *Ten Tribes*, whom *Salmanaſſer* led away captive, and that eſpecially for three reaſons. The firſt is, that the word *Tatari*, by which name (ſaith he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, ſignifieth in the *Syriack* and *Hebrew* tongues, a *Remnant*. But unto this it is anſwered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as ſome; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they firſt dwelt, as moſt think: and again, that though the *Hebrew* and תרתר ſignifie a remnant, yet can it not properly be applyed to the *Tartars*; who ſo infinitely exceed the *Jews*, that they cannot be thought to be a remainder of them. Secondly, he alledgeth for proof thereof, that this people uſe *circumciſion*, the character of the *Jewiſh* Nation. And hereunto it is replyed, that *circumciſion* was common to many people, beſides the *Jews*, as to the *Ægyptians*, *Æthiopians*, *&c.* and that rather as a national cuſtome, than a religious ordinance; and again, that the *Tartars* cannot be proved to have received *circumciſion*, before they received *Mahometaniſm*. Thirdly, there is brought to confirm this opinion, a place of *Eſdras*, cap. 13. lib. 2. where it is ſaid, that the Ten Tribes (that they might the better keep Gods Statutes) paſſed over the River *Euphrates*; and after a journey of one year and a half, came into a Countrey called *Arſareth*. To refell which, thoſe of the contrary opinion find no better courſe, than by ſhewing the impoſſibilities of it. For the *Tartars* (when their name was firſt known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, obſerved not the Sabbath, nor any other point of *Jewiſh* religion: and ſo the Ten Tribes retired not hither to keep Gods Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite Weſt from *Aſſyria*, and thoſe places to which *Salmanaſſer* tranſplanted the *Iſraelites*: and ſo it could not be paſſed over in a journey towards the North. And Thirdly, it is very improbable, that the *Ten Tribes* ſhould either be ſo ſimple, as to leave *Aſſyria*, where they were peaceably ſetled; or ſo valiant, as to force a paſſage through thoſe Countries of *Scythia*, which neither *Perſians*, *Greeks*, or *Romans* were able to withſtand in the beſt of their fortunes.

To let paſs therefore all imaginations of a forrein Pedegree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of *Scythians*; who preſſed by want, or otherwiſe oppreſſed by the King of *Tenduch*, unto whom they were ſubject, armed themſelves againſt him, obtained a memorable victory, and ſetled *Cingis* their chief Captain in the Royal Throne, *Anno* 1162. After which, growing of more power, and inlarging their dominions further, they united in the name of *Tartars* all the *Scythian* Nations: as *Mahomet* did thoſe of the three *Arabia's*, in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many ſeverall *Tribes* of the *German* Nations, were united in the names of *Franks*, or *Alemans*. Not known in *Europe* by this name, till their many great and ſignall victories had made them formidable; which was about the year 1212. within very little of which time they had made themſelves Maſters of a larger Empire than that of *Macedon*, or *Rome*, in their greateſt glories. But being of a haſty growth, it decaied as ſuddenly; the greateſt part of their *Europæan* purchaſes being conquered from them by the Dukes of *Muſcovy*, and the Kings of *Poland*; as their acqueſts in *Aſia* and *Africk*, by the *Turks* and *Perſians*. Yet ſtill they are poſſeſſed of ſo large a Territory, that were they not diſtracted into ſeveral States; or did thoſe ſeverall ſtates depend upon one *Supreme*: that one *Supreme* might very eaſily give law unto all his Neighbours, and make the *Turks* and *Perſians* tributaries, as in former times. But laying aſide theſe ſpeculations, of what they might do if united under one command: let us now look upon them as they are divided into theſe five parts, that is to ſay, 1. *Tartaria Precopenſis*, 2. *Aſiatica*, 3 *Antiqua*, 4 *Zagathay*, and 5. *Cathay*.

1. *TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS.*

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*; on the Weſt, with the River *Boryſthenes*, now called *Nerper*, by which laſt parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*; on the North, with part of *Ruſſia*, and on the South, with ſome part of the *Euxine* Sea: by this account lying totally within *Europe*.

It had the name of *Precopenſis*, from *Precopia* a chief Town thereof. By ſome called *Tartaria Minor*, to diſtinguiſh it from the greater body of that people: the Inhabitants hereof moſt commonly paſſing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*, in which their *Cham* or Emperour doth reſide moſt uſually. The Countrey by them now poſſeſſed, part antiently of *Sarmatia Europæa*, was inhabited by a warlike nation called the *Tauri*: from whom thoſe parts hereof which lie betwixt the Empire of *Ruſſia*, and the two Rivers *Tanais*, and *Boryſthenes*, were called *Tauro-Scythia*; that which ſhooteth out into the Sea, encompaſſed with the *Euxine* on the one ſide, and *Palus Mœotis* on the other, being called *Taurica Cherſoneſus*. In the deſcription whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made bold with ſome part of *Aſia*, to lay together the eſtate of the *Ruſſian* Empire: ſo now to ſatisfie for that treſpaſs, I ſhall make bold with part of *Europe*, to lay together the diſcourſe and affairs of *Tartary*.

The whole Countrey plentiful of fruits, and the ſoyl indifferently diſpoſed to tillage and grazing, though more accuſtomed unto the laſt: the people more delighting in their herds of cattell, than in the fulneſs of their *Garners*. Camels, Horſe, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great ſtore of de-

licate

Precopenſis.

licate fowl, and abundance of fiſh, bred in the large *Fens* of *Mœotis*, and in their Foreſts plenty of all ſorts of *Veniſon*. Which *Character* as it belongeth generally to all the Country, ſo moſt eſpecially to the *Cherſoneſe* or Demy-Iſland. United to the main land with ſo narrow an *Iſthmus*; that the *Tartars* once went about to dig it thorow: from whence ſome ſay they had the name of *Precopenſes*, *Precoph* in the *Sclavonian* tongue, ſignifying a deep trench, or a digging thorow. In length not above 24 *German*, or 96 *Italian* miles; in breadth but 60 of the one, or 15 of the other. Bleſt with a very temperate Air, and a gentle winter: which beginning with the laſt of *December*, ends the firſt of *March*. Never extream, and when the froſts are at the ſharpeſt, but of ſhort continuance. Divided in the midſt with a chain of hills, extended from Eaſt to Weſt; the boundary of the Dominions of the *Turk* and *Tartar*.

The people of the ſame complexion and compoſition, as the reſt of the *Tartars*; and not much different in manners. Their diet, Roots, Cheeſe, Garlick, and of the poorer ſort, for the moſt part, horſe-fleſh (none but the better ſort preſuming upon Beef or Veniſon, though of both abundance) which they eat without bread or any thing elſe: and therefore when they go to wars, every Souldier takes two horſes with him, the one to ſerve upon, and the other to kill. And yet for all this havock which they make of horſe-fleſh, there are few years in which they ſell not 40 or 50000 in the fairs of *Moſco*. Towns they build none, ſcarce willing to maintain thoſe which were built to their hands. Nor have they (except men of trades and *manufactures*) any ſtanding houſes; removing up and down with their Droves of Cattell, moving their houſes with them (which they build on wheels) from one place to another. Of money they make no eſteem, preferring braſs and ſteel before other metals, becauſe more uſefull to them for ſwords and knives. Good Souldiers for the moſt part, eſpecially at the *Bow* and *Arrows*; to which ſo accuſtomed from their child-hood, that they can ſhoot as readily backward as forward. Trained alſo of late times to the *Harquebuſe*, well skilled in handling the *Turkiſh Scimatars*, and their horſemens ſtaves. Not to be vanquiſhed but by death, as men that are reſolved rather to die than be taken Priſoners: and if victorious, more intent upon taking Captives (eſpecially young Boys and Girls, whom they ſell to the *Turks*) than upon any other booty or ſpoil of war.

The *Religion* moſt embraced and countenanced is that of *Mahomet*, mingled with ſome of their old principles of *Chriſtianity*: for they confeſs that CHRIST ſhall be the *Judge both of the quick and dead*, in the day of Judgement, and puniſh thoſe that ſpeak irreverently of him. In that regard more favourable to the *Chriſtians*, than other *Mahometans*, which makes great ſtore of *Grecian* and *Armenian* Chriſtians to dwell amongſt them. The language which they ſpeak is their own *Tartarian*, but intermixt with much of the *Arabick*, and *Turkiſh* Tongues; and when they write, they uſe either *Chaldaan*, or *Arabian* Characters.

Rivers of moſt note in it, are 1. *Boryſthenes*, and 2. *Tanais*, which though they have their ſpring-heads in the Empire of *Ruſſia* (as was there declared) have their falls in this: the firſt in the *Euxine* Sea, in the 57th. the other into *Palus Mœotis* in the 67th. degree of *Longitude*, by which we may conjecture ſomewhat of the length of the Countrey. 3. *Hipanes*, 4. *Carcimitis*, falling into the *Euxine*. 5. *Agaris*, and 6. *Byces*, which loſe themſelves in the Fens of *Mœotis*; as alſo do 7. *Paſiaſcus*, 8. *Gerus*, 9 *Lycus*, from the main land, and 10. *Iſtrianus* from the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*. By the confluence of which waters, and many others falling from the *Aſian* ſide, the Lake or Fens of *Mœotis* are of great extent, in compaſs at leaſt a thouſand miles, well ſtored with fiſh, and ſtill retaining ſomewhat of the ſweetneſs of thoſe many Rivers which are emptied into it. So called from the *Mœota*, who formerly inhabited on the banks hereof, and giving name to an excellent kind of fiſh which were called *Mœotides* by the Antients. At this day generally called *Mar delle Zabahe*, by the *Italians* commonly *Mar delle Tana*, the ſea of *Tanais*; and ſometimes alſo *Mer Bianeo*, or the *White Sea*; to difference it from the *Euxine*, which they call the *Black*, for the reaſons formerly delivered. Paſſing directly towards the South, it is ſtreightned by a narrow Channel, not above four miles in breadth, though about 24 in length, called antiently by the name of *Boſphorus Cimmerius*: *Boſphorus*, becauſe Oxen did uſually ſwim over it; *Cimmerius* from the *Cimmerii* who poſſeſſed the adjoyning Countrey on the *Aſian* ſide: but known at this day by the name of *Strotto di Caffa*, from the City *Capha* neer unto it; and by the Inhabitants, *Veſpero*, more neer the Original. Out of this Streight that confluence of waters which do meet in the *Mœotick* Fens, do make their way into the *Euxine*. According to that of *Lucan*.

Quaque fretum currens Mœotidas *egerit undas.*
Where the *Mœotick* pools at laſt
Thorow a narrow Streight makes haſte.

Chief Cities of it at the preſent, 1. *Capha*, or *Caffa*, in the *Cherſoneſe*, not far from the Streight called hence *Stretto di Caffa*, a flouriſhing Empire, and furniſhed with a large and capacious Haven. Heretofore poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, who by the benefit of this Port, and the Plantation which they had in *Perah* on the North ſide of *Conſtantinople*, engroſſed into their own hands the whole Trade of the *Euxine*. Taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, Anno 1475. it became ſubject unto the *Turks*, and drew into that thraldom all the Southern parts of the *Cherſoneſe*, which depended on it: deprived thereby of the greateſt part of its former luſtre, the *Chriſtian* Churches being deſtroyed, the Towers and publique buildings razed, the houſes of the *Genoa* Merchants which were fair and beautiful, deſtroyed and ruined: yet ſtill the principall of this *biand*, or Demy-Iſland, and antiently better known by the name of *Theodoſia*, and by that name remembred in *Ammianus*. 2. *Precoph*, in *Latine* called *Precopia*, a Town and Caſtle ſcituate in or neer the place where ſtood the *Eupateria* of the Antients: called alſo *Pompeiopolis*, *Heraclea*, and *Achillis*, *Curſus*, 3. *Corſunum*, the *Cherſoneſus* of *Ptolomy*, anciently a *Greek Golony*; and then accounted for the chief of the

Precopenſis.

the whole *Peninſula* : rich, populous,and well traded, by reaſon of the Haven which was ſafe and large; and of great beauty and magnificence, as the ruins teſtifie. By the *Turks* at this day called *Sari Germanum*, or the *yellow Tower*, the ſoyl about it being of a *Saffron* colour. 4. *Cremam*, or *Crim*, the antient Seat of the *Chams* or Princes of theſe *Tartars*; and at that time the faireſt and greateſt of this *Biland*. Situate in the middeſt thereof, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle; for the height of the walls, and depth of the ditch eſteemed impregnable : ſuppoſed to be the *Taphre* of *Pliny*, or the *Taphros* of Ptolomy. Mentioned by *Florus*, as then lately taken by ſome *Roman* Empire, and ſo moſt likely to be *Trajan*; the firſt that ever extended the *Roman* Empire beyond *Dannbius*, and the *Euxine*. Scituate in the very *Iſthmus*, and ſo commanding both the *Euxine*, and the Lakes of *Mæotis*; as *Corinth* betwixt the *Ægean*, and *Ionian* Seas. 5. P*anticapæum*, ſcituate on the very *Boſphorus*, and now called *Voſpero* by the natives: the antienteſt City of this P*eninſula*, and ſaid by *Ammianus* to be the mother of all the *Greek* Colonies which were planted in it. 6. *Tanas*, The *Tanais* of P*tolomy*,and other antients,becauſe ſcituate on the mouth of the River; or rather betwixt the two mouths of it, diſtant from one another a degree of *longitude*. A town of great trade, and well frequented by the Merchants of all thoſe Countries which border on the *Euxine* Sea : but ſubject to the *Turks* who have here a Garriſon, and by them called *Azac*. 7. *Ingermenum*, ſcituate on a large and lofty Mountain, and fortified with a Tower or Caſtle of ſtone; under which there is a Church, with great charge and art cut out of the Rock : formerly of great wealth and fame,now decayed and ruinous. 8. *Jamboli*,by ſome called *Balachium*. 9. *Mancopia*, by the *Turks* called *Mangutum*, 10 *Circum*; all boaſting of their ſeverall Caſtles. 11. *Oczakow*, or *Oczacovia*,ſcituate neer the influx of the great River *Boriſthenes*, into the Bay of *Carcimitis*, and ſo moſt like to be built in the place of that which P*tolomy* calleth *Olbiah*, P*liny Olbiopolis*. Honoured of late times (ſince the taking of *Taurica* by the *Turks*) with the reſidence of the Great *Cham* : from whence theſe *Tartars* are by ſome called *Olſanenſes*. 12. *Metropolis*, as P*tolomy*, or rather *Miletopolis*,as P*liny* calleth it; a Colony in old times of the *Mileſians*, not farre from *Olbiah*. Beſides all which, and many others mentioned by the antient Writers,of which there is nothing now remaining;the Court of the great *Cham* in Summer time makes a moveable City; built upon *Wheel-houſes*, and tranſported from one place to another, as occaſion ſerveth : which houſes at every ſtation are orderly diſpoſed of into Streets, and lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agara*, or a Town of Carts.

The antient inhabitants hereof were of the *Scythian* race;for by that name ſome elder writers call not onely the true and proper *Scythians*, lying on both ſides of *Imaus*;but even the *Sauromatæ* or *Sarmatians* alſo:and thoſe not onely of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, bordering next unto them; but even ſuch *Europæan* nations, as lived on the Northern Banks of *Iſter*, and the *Euxine* Sea; and ſo they are affirmed to be by P*tolomy* himſelfe; though otherwiſe more exact then any, in diſtinguiſhing *Sarmatia Europæa*, from *Aſiatica*; and *Aſiatica* from the *Scythians*. For ſpeaking of the nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*,inhabiting on the P*alus Mœotis*, he ranks them thus : Καὶ παρ' ὅλην τ̃ πλευρὰν τῆς Μαιώτιδος, &c. And all a long the Coaſts of *Mœotis* dwell the *Jazges* (diſtinct from thoſe called *Metanaſtæ*) and the *Roxolani*; and more within the Land, the *Hamoxobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*,and in the *Cherſoneſe* it ſelf,dwell the antient *Tauri*, ſubdivided into the ſeveral Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Napæi*,and *Arinchi*,by the ſaid P*tolomy* included in the general name of *Tauro Scythi*. To none but theſe,of all the *Europæan Sarmatians*,doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been thoſe *Scythians*,againſt whom *Darius* King of P*erſia* made his fruitleſs war. Picking a quarrel with this people, becauſe their King had denied to give him one of his daughters to wife; or to revenge, as others more improbably ſay, the *inrode* which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Aſia*;he drew together an army of 700 thouſand, Paſſing over the *Thracian Boſphorus*, he came at laſt to the Banks of *Iſter*, where it parteth *Moldavia*,and *Bulgaria*; and there,for the paſſage of his men,cauſed a bridge to be built;to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60 knots : commanding them every day to untie one knot; and if he came not back before all were untied, to return to their houſes. This done he marched towards his enemies, who ſtill fled before him; leading him into the moſt deſert and unhabitable parts of their Country : and when they had brought him into a ſtreight, ſent Embaſſadors to him with a *Bird*, a *Mouſe*, a *Frog*, and an handfull of *Arrows*;willing the P*erſians*,if they could,to expound that *Riddle*. *Darius* willing to hope the beſt of his deſigne,conjectured that the *Scythians* did ſubmit unto him;by delivering into his hands their *Air*, E*arth*, *Water*, and *Arms*, *Hieroglyphically* ſignified in their preſent. But *Gobrias*, one of the *ſeven* P*rinces*,made this expoſition, that if the P*erſians* could not fly like a *Bird* thorow the Air, or like a *Mouſe* creep under the Earth, or like a *Frog* ſwim over the Water, they could by no meanes ſcape the S*cythian* Arrows. And to ſay truth,this *Commentary* beſt agreed with the *Text*. For theſe *Scythians* following cloſe upon him, or rather driving him before them, and vexing him with continual skirmiſhes,forced him to make ſuch haſte to get over the River,that he loſt 80000 of his men in the fight and flight. This was the only Memorable action of theſe *Europæan* S*cythians*, in thoſe Elder ages: more memorable in the times ſucceeding, for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is ſaid of theſe *Tauri*, or *Tauro-Scythæ*, that for the pleaſing of their Gods, eſpecially of *Diana*, whom they called *Orſiloche*, they uſed to ſacrifice all ſuch ſtrangers as they could lay hands on, and with their heads moſt barbarouſly adorned the walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Chriſtian* Advocates of the Primitive times did much uſe to upbraid the *Gentiles*;taunting them with the ſacrifices of Di*ana Tanrica* (ſo named from hence)as inconſiſtent with the nature of a God or goodneſs; moſt rightly giving them this Brand or cenſure, that they were not *ſacra*, but S*acrilegia*. *Et præſtat prophanus eſſe, quam ſic religioſus.* Better it was,to be of no Religion, then of one ſo cruel.

But to go forwards with the ſtory, in the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unleſs it were that the Emperor *Trajan* (as *Florus* ſeems to intimate) took the City of *Taphre*. Which if he did, he added by that action ſomething to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman* Empire: this people being never reckoned amongſt their Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name, of their infeſting the *Roman* territories (as the other barbarous Nations did:) except they paſſed in the account of the *Gothes*, *Alani*, *Hunnes*, *Avares*, or other of the *Scythians*, or *Sarmatian* people; by which the Majeſty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Perſians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with eaſe affected by the *Tartars*. Who in the time of *Jocchata*, or *Hoccata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Bathu*, or *Roydo*, one of their moſt renowned Commanders, ſubdued all theſe parts, together with *Ruſſia*, on the North, *Bulgaria*, and *Hungary* on the Eaſt. Subject at firſt to the command of the Great *Cham* of *Cathaia*, as the reſt of the *Tartarians* were; they came at laſt to have a Prince of their own; one *Lochtan Cham*, deſcended from the aforeſaid *Bathu*, and (as it was pretended) of the blood of *Cingis*. They grew at laſt of ſo great power, by Conquering the *Aſiatick Tartars*, which lay neereſt to them, that *Mahomet* the Great thought fit to keep them down before grown too ſtrong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha*, then poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, made himſelf Maſter of the greateſt part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*, and the Port of *Tanais*; thereby commanding both *Mœotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the firſt, who had married the daughter of this *Crim-Tartar* (for ſo they called him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men againſt his Father; the *Turks* and theſe *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* ſhould aid the *Turk* upon all occaſions, with 60000 horſe, if it were required; that they ſhall not make war with any of their neighbors, (except the *Muſcovite*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they ſhall pay yearly to the *Grand ſignieur*, in the way of Tribute, 300 Chriſtians; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or depoſition of his Predeceſſor, ſhall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royal Banner, in token of his Conſirmation in that eſtate; that in reward of theſe ſervices, the *Crim-Tartar* ſhall have yearly from the *Grand-ſignieur* 5500 *Ducates*, in the way of penſion; and ſucceed finally in the *Turkiſh* Empire, if ever the male iſſue of the houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, againſt the *Perſians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not; and that with great and puiſſant Armies; the Great *Cham* ſometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects (leaving but one man in an houſe to attend their cattel;) and ſometimes adding 50000 *Circaſſians*; and others of the *Aſian Tartars*. And for the *Muſcovite*, whom he is left at liberty to aſſault by this *Capitulation*; he hath had ſo hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571. they pierced as far as to the City of *Moſco*, and ſet fire on the ſuburbs: which flaming into the City built moſt of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 miles in compaſs; within the ſpace of four houres burnt the greateſt part of it, and therein no fewer then 800000 of all ſorts of people: A quarrel not to be compoſed; the *Tartar* not onely laying claim to the Kingdomes of *Caſſan* and *Aſtrachan*, which the *Ruſſe* poſſeſſeth; but even to *Moſcovie* it ſelf, as hath there been ſhewn. Nothing ſo punctual is the *Turk*, on his part, to performe the contract; who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worſt his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his ſlave or *Vaſſall*. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling *Mahomet* the *Crim-Tartar* for a deſign to intercept *Oſman Baſſa*, in his way from *Perſia* to *Conſtantinople*, authoriſed the ſame *Oſman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by ſome of his own Counſellors (corrupted with *Turkiſh* Gold) were ſtrangled with a Bowſtring; *Iſlau* a brother of the *Crims*, firſt ſworn a Vaſſal to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of ſucceeding in the *Turkiſh* Empire, if the houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould fail, hath been already taken into conſideration, in our diſcourſe upon that ſubject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to ſay; his ſubjects having little money, and living moſt upon the bartery of their Cattel. But beſides what he hath in lands or Cuſtomes, and the 5500 *Ducats* yearly which he receiveth from the *Turk*; he hath the *tenth* of all the ſpoils which are got in the Wars, and a *Checkine* for every captive, for ſome, two or three, (whoſoever taketh them) according unto their eſtates,

As for his power, what he can do in horſe we have ſeen already; and as for foot, and Ammunition, and other neceſſaries, he is ſupplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth ſometimes eſpouſe his quarrels;) by whoſe aſſiſtance they have brought the *Moſcovites* to ſome extremities. And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Signieur*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Bathori* whom *Amurath* the 3d. commended to the Crown of *Poland*) ſent Embaſſadors to negotiate his election to that Kingdome: and to induce them thereunto promiſed them in his letters amongſt other things, that their *Pope* ſhould be his *Pope*, their *Luther* his *Luther*; and that rather than put them unto any charge to finde his Table, he could live with *Horſe-fleſh*. His Embaſſie entertained with **Laughter**, as it well deſerved.

2. TARTARIA DESERTA.

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Precopenſis*, and the Empire of *Ruſſia*; on the Eaſt, with *Antiqua*, and *Zagathay*; from which laſt parted by the River *Spane*, which falleth into the *Caſpian Sea* about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kitay*, from Eaſt to Weſt: on the North, with the *Scythick* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucaſian* Mountains, and ſome part of the *Caſpian*.

It took this name from the many *Deſarts* which are in it; and is called alſo *Aſiatica*, to difference it from *Precopenſis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or becauſe it taketh up the whole Continent of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Ptolomy*, except ſome part hereof incorporated to the *Ruſſian* Empire.

The Countrey of it ſelf ſufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious d induſtrious people, would yield large increaſe: as appears by the ill husbandry of the *Tartars*, who w nothing on it but *Mill* and *Punicum* (grains unknown to us) and yet without giving it any tillage, ceive very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a Nation that hateth *Agriculture*, & laugheth the *Chriſtians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (ſo they call our bread); neglect all that which is not of rank paſture for their Herds and Cattel: moving from one place to another, as the Graſs faileth em, which maketh it ſo full of *Deſarts*, and ſo empty of Towns, as to deſerve the name of *Tartaria* *eſerta*.

Deſerta.

The people or Inhabitants of it are of ſeverall ſorts; derived from three ſeverall Originals, and diſ-oſed of in three ſeverall parts. 1. The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are holly Idolaters. 2. the *Circaſſians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the moſt part *Chriſtians*; and 3. the *artars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mahometans*. Theſe again ſubdivided into ſeverall Tribes, hich they call their *Hordes*: of which the moſt conſiderable are, 1. the *Nagaian Tartars*, 2. the *Za-olbenſes*, 3. the *Thumenenſes*, 4. the *Kergeſſi*; beſides the *Hordes* or Kingdomes of *Caſan*, and *Aſtra-han*, added unto the Empire of *Ruſſia*, were deſcribed already; and others of inferiour note, not here onſiderable.

But before we come to ſpeak of theſe people in their ſeverall places, we muſt firſt look upon the hole Countrey, as preſented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*: bounded by *Ptolomy* as be-ore, ſave that it did extend more Weſtwards, and was unknown to him in the Northern parts of it; now oſſeſſed by the *Moſcovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of forty everall Nations which did then inhabit it, and of about as many Towns of good eſtimation. Of which here are but few or none remaining; and for the names of ſome of the principall of them, we ſhall have hem preſently.

Rivers of moſt note in it, 1. *Marabius*, 2. *Rhombitus* the Greater, and 3. the Leſs; 4. *Antichus*, 5. *Theophanius*, 6. *Pſathis*, 7. *Theſyris*, 8. *Corax*, and 9. *Vardanes*; all of them falling into the *Eux-ine*, and *Mœotick* Fennes. 10. *Udonis*, 11. *Alnuta*, and 12. *Rha*, paying their tributes to the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of theſe the principal is *Rha*, by the modern *Latines* called *Volgo*, by the *Tartars Edi*; riſing in *Ruſſia*, not far from the City of *Moſco* (where we have deſcribed it.) Moſt memorable, beſides he ſeventy mouths or Channels, wherewith it openeth into the *Caſpian*, for a *medicinable* and wholſome root growing on both ſides thereof; which the Phyſicians call *Rha*, by the name of the River; and for diſtinction ſake *Rha-Pontick*, to difference it from *Rhubarb*, or *Rha Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this laſt being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13. *Ob*, a River unknown to *Ptolomy*, riſing out of the lake of *Kitay*, a Lake in bigneſs like the Sea, and full of many little Iſlands (moſt of them inhabited.) Which River at its firſt parting from this Lake, is ſaid to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing ſtill bigger and bigger, emptieth it ſelf at laſt in the *Northern* Ocean, the preſent boundary betwixt the *Ruſſian*, and the people in the North of this Countrey.

Principall Mountains of this part, 1. *Corax*, giving name unto the River iſſuing out of it. 2. *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caſpian* Sea. 3. *Montes Ceraunii*, lying in the furtheſt parts hereof (then known unto my Author) to the North and Eaſt. 4. *Caucaſus*, or *Caucaſii Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caſpian* Seas, and parting *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, from *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*. A chain of hills of which *Ariſtotle* ſaith, *acumine & latitudine omnium maximi*, *&c.* that for height and breadth they are the greateſt of the Eaſt; the tops whereof are lightned by the Sun-beams in midnight till almoſt day-break, when it is dark night in the valleys beneath. Not paſſable for horſe or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* ſhore) but at one place onely, called *Sarmatiæ Pylæ*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucaſiæ Portæ*, from the hills adjoyning. Scituate in the 81 degree of *Latitude*, and not far from the *Caſpian* Sea: but that ſo intricate and narrow, that very ſmall force may keep it againſt ſtrong Armies. So carefull did Almighty God in his heavenly providence, ſhut up this fierce and barbarous people, from the reſt of Mankinde, by ſuch unfordable Waters, and unpaſſable Mountains: not to be freed out of their priſon, till he thought good to uſe them, as the executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the puniſhment of ſinfull and impenitent Nations. This ſaid, we will conſider thoſe particular Nations, which before we named, and are now poſſeſſed of it in their ſeverall places.

1. Oppoſite to the *Precopenſes* lie the CIRCASSIANS, extended from the *Cimmerian Boſphorus* and the Fennes of *Mœotis*, towards the Eaſtern ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea, for the ſpace of 500 miles, and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name impoſed on them by the *Tartars*: whereas before they were called by *Pliny*, *Zigæ*. by ſome Writers *Zychi*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Ptolomy*.

The Countrey very fitly ſeated for trade and merchandiſe, as having a fair and large Sea-coaſt, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of thoſe ſpoken of before paſſing thorow theſe tracts): and not a few capacious Baies, and commodious Havens. Of which the principall were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Cercetis*; *Synda*, and *Bata*, two known Havens, and ſpecified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. But theſe conveniences not much looked after by the preſent Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the wars, than to trades, or *merchandiſe*. A ſtout and military people, trained to their weapons from their child-hood, and ſold as ſoon as trained to it by unnaturall Parents. For from theſe parts did the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt* fetch their firſt *Originall*; from hence ſupply themſelves with a perpetuall *ſeminary* of ſlaves and Souldiers raiſed by degrees unto the higheſt dignities of that ſlaviſh Empire. And from theſe parts the *Perſian Sophies* are ſupplied with their *Cozzel-Baſſas*, diſciplined and inſtructed by them like the *Turkiſh Janizaries*.

Serica.

The *Chriſtian* faith was here planted in the year 860 or thereabouts, by the Miniſtry of *Cyrill* (or *Chiarill*) and *Methodus*; employed in that ſervice by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople.* In which reſpect their Churches are of the *Greek* Communion, conform thereto in rites and doctrine, and of the juriſdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters *practicall.* For it is ordinary with theſe half-*Chriſtians*, not to baptize their children till eight years old; to hear divine ſervice ſtanding without their Churches, into which they very ſeldome enter (eſpecially the Gentlemen) till the 40th. or (as ſome ſay) the 60th. year of their age: dividing the whole courſe of their life between *God* and the *Devil*, in dedicating their youth unto Theft and Robbery, their old Age (when they can no longer commit thoſe villainies) to the difficult buſineſs of repentance.

Places of moſt obſervation among the Antients, 1. *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory, ſo called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief people of theſe parts, of whom more anon; ſcituate on the very ſhore of *Boſphorus*, from hence denominated. 2. *Phanagoria*, in old times a well-traded Empory; ſcituate on a little Iſland raiſed out of the Sea, by the care and induſtry of the *Greeks*, who had here a *Factory*. 3. *Apathurgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus*, firnamed *Apaturia* (which name ſhe gave unto this place): becauſe (ſaith *Strabo*) when the Giants aſſaulted her, ſhe craved help of *Hercules*, who ſlew them all one after another. 4. *Geruſa*, by *Ptolomy* honoured with the title of *Civitas*; the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called Saint *Georges*. 5. *Oenuntia*, neer the mouth of the River *Theſyris*. 6. *Araza*, more within the Land, which with 7. *Ampſacis*, hath the name of a City alſo. The names of their chief Havens we have ſeen before. But few of theſe, or any other mentioned by the antient Authors, being now viſible in their ruines: the chief of thoſe which are now extant, are 1. *Locoppa*, 2. *Coniuce*, but of no great note.

The people antiently though divided into the ſeverall Tribes of the *Therſagetæ*, *Zigæ*, *Turcæ*, the *Hunnes*, *Avares*, and *Mœotæ*, all noted Nations; beſides the *Coaxtræ*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambæ*, *Pſelii*, and others as obſcure as they; were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which thoſe ſeveral Tribes concentred. Deſcended in the right of that common originall, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, firſt planted in the mountainous places of *Albania*: his poſterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themſelves in the mountains called *Cimmerini*. But that Country proving both too barren. and too narrow for them, ſome of them paſſed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whoſe time it was extant: and others in ſome tract of time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themſelves in theſe parts; here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Boſphorus*, & generally to all the people deſcended of them. From theſe, particularly, as the ſtout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri* do derive their pedegree: ſo from theſe and the children of *Meſech*, *Magog*, and *Tubal*; the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Aſia*, the *Moſcovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians* are to fetch their Original: all of them great and puiſſant Nations, and all involved promiſcuouſly in the name of *Scythians*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable expedition which they made into *Media* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Leſſer Aſia*: the *Cimmerians* by themſelves alone, or by them as principall; the reſt of theſe *Sarmatians* in a body together, as a *Scythian* people. Diſtreſſed with want, or to diſburden their ſmall Country of ſuperfluous multitudes, theſe *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulaſſar*, or *Salmanaſſar*, King of *Aſſyria*, communicating their deſign with the reſt of the *Scythians*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the courſe of the *Euxine* Sea, and paſſing thorow the Countrey of *Colchis*, firſt ſeized on ſome parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their carriages and the weakeſt of their train, with ſufficient Guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they poſſeſſed themſelves of *Sardis*, the royall City, and after of the reſt of the Country, or the moſt part of it; *Ardis*, the Son of *Giges*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withſtand them. Both beſides being wearied with long War, and growing more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like caſe between the *Saxons* and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the Grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the buſineſs: aſſigning to the *Cimmerians* all thoſe parts of his Dominions which lay beyond the River *Halys*, and ſetling his *Lydians* in the reſt. By this tranſaction there were ſo good correſpondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyaxares* King of the *Medes* invaded the Country of theſe *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invaſion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*, *Halyattes* did eſpouſe the quarrel, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and blood, they became one people; or at leaſt paſſed not under the accompt of ſtrangers, or the name of *Aliens*. Such end had this moſt notable expedition of theſe *Cimmerians*, not much remembred after this for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many petit Princes, but all aſſociated with *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*: that King being ſo great amongſt them, that his ſon *Machares* having married into ſome of their families, was made King of *Boſphorus*. But *Machares* having made his peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in ſucceeding times, till the invaſion of the *Tartars*, by whom ſubdued, they acknowledged at firſt the great *Cham* for their Soveraign Lord: whoſe power declining, they have ſucceſſively been ſubject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, & *Moſcovite*: but moſt commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their neareſt neighbour, and moſt able to hurt them. And him they furniſh, on command, with 50000 horſe for the *Grand Signieurs* ſervice: yet ſo that they ſupply the *Perſian* with his *Cozzel-Baſſas*, and ſometimes ſerve under him for pay, as they do under any which entertain them. Governed like the *Suiſſers*, by their ſeverall *Commonalties*: yet ſo, that every *Commonalty* hath ſome principall man (which the *Suiſſers* have not) whom they call *Morſeys*, (that is, Dukes) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt theſe and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greateſt

Hords or *Tribes* of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of theſe the *Crims*, or *Percopenſes* were a *Caſtling* only, proceeding out of this great Swarm or Neſt of Hornets, though afterwards they became their maſters. Of the Countrey or the People we ſay nothing here, having ſufficiently ſpoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, ſcituate on the River *Volga*, and from thence ſo named; *Volgar*, and *Bolgar* differing but little in *Orthographie*, and not much in ſound.

This Countrey, as I take it by the ſcituation, ſhould be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether ſo called in honour of him, by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted alliance; or that he had made any *conqueſts* there, or from ſome other Prince of the ſame name, I determine not. And in this tract were thoſe two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Ptolomy* called *Columnæ Alexandri* in whoſe time they ſtood without defacement: there being alſo *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, neer the Banks of *Tanais*; occurring in the ſame Author by the name of *Aræ Alexandri*. Which probably occaſioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander*, in purſuit of the *Scythian* war, as far as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the courſe of his actions, that he never got beyond the River *Jaxartes*, diſtant from *Tanais* no leſs than 2000 miles.

This Tribe firſt governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the *Great Cham*, was in in the year 1506. ſubdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made ſubject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Baſilius* the *Great Duke* of *Muſcovy*, who thereupon aſſumed the title of King of *Bolgar*; which his Succeſſors ſtill preſerve, with the Town it ſelf; well garriſoned to keep open the whole courſe of the River *Volga*, by which they mannage the great trade of the *Caſpian* Sea. But for the main body of this people, they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a limb of the ſame body with him, and are ſubject unto his commands: though by reaſon of their neighbourhood to the *Moſcovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themſelves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. Eaſt of the *Zavolhenſes*, on the other ſide of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, ſpreading as far as the borders of *Zagathay*, and declining Southward towards the *Caſpian* Sea, and the *Montes Hippici*. Accompted the beſt men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruell than the reſt: void of all Arts, not having, or contemning money, or the uſe of Corn. *Horſe-fleſh* and *Mares Milk* their beſt diet; the fleſh either roſted by the Sun, or heated by continuall hanging at their ſadle-bow. And with ſuch cheer (nor worſe nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinſon* and other *Engliſh* men in their Travels to the *Caſpian*, from the River *Volga*. Their chief Town, if poſſibly it deſerve that name, is called *Scharayirzik*, the Reſidence of one of their Princes; & the next, *Selliſture*, where the ſaid *Jenkinſon* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by ſeverall *Morſeys*, the Heads or *Chiefs*, no doubt, of their ſeverall *Clans*: agreeing well enough together againſt the *Moſcovite*, whom they infeſt with frequent inrodes, and put him to the charge of continuall Garriſons, at *Caſan*, *Aſtrachan*, and *Wiathka*. Their wars for the moſt part only *prædatorie*, rather to get ſome preſent booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their dominion: and therefore commonly pacified, and ſent home with preſents. The *Great Duke* is ſo good a Stateſ-man, as to think the expence of money cheaper than that of blood; eſpecially when he hath to deal with ſuch an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of conſequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and conſequently nothing to be got but blows. Their *Morſeys*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharayirzik* was the Chief, to whoſe direction and appointment (eſpecially in matters which concerned the publique) the other two do commonly ſubmit themſelves.

4 Betwixt theſe *Nagaians*, and the *Circaſſians*, lie thoſe Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, ſpreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*: but intermixt with the *Heſelites*, and *Baſchurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of leſs power. Their life, for the moſt part in continuall motion, removing with their wives and families from one place to another; and governing themſelves in their removes, by the ſight of the *Pole-ſtar*. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentiles*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number: not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a tree, though they ſtink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or ſweetned, before they return back to the ſame Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Prieſts*, by whom ſanctified and beſprinkled in their publike meeting, with a certain mixture, compounded of blood, milk, earth, and Cow-dung, a moſt ſweet *confection*, but good enough for them that deſire no better. And yet with theſe the *Moſcovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to ſend them every year ſome preſents, for fear they ſhould joyn with the *Nagaians*, or otherwiſe diſturb him in his *Caſpian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5 The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS*, lie more North than any of theſe *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolhenſes*, and the territory of *Viatka* in the Empire of *Ruſſia*. A warlike people, and living neer a dangerous neighbour: for which cauſe they do not ſtraggle ſo abroad in petit companies, as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the moſt part much delighted in *Necromancy*, and *conjurations*. In which the Devill ſo befools them, that he ſuffereth them to raiſe tempeſts; and ſometimes by *Diabolicall* illuſions to defeat their enemies. The only *Hord* of all *Deſerta*, which ſtill continue in obedience to their naturall Lord, the great *Cham* of *Cathay*. And unto theſe we may adjoyn the *Molgomozans*, all *Gentiles*, and the moſt barbarous of all: living in Caves, and feeding upon worms, and mice, and Serpents, and ſuch other Vermine as would be poiſon to any but ſuch *Molgomozans*, who are more poiſonous than thoſe creatures.

Theſe *Hords*, together with the Kingdomes of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*, and ſuch of the *Ruſſian* Provinces as lie on the Eaſt of *Tanais* and the River *Duina*, make up that Countrey which anciently paſſed under the name of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*: inhabited originally by the Deſcendants of *Gomer*, *Meſech*, *Tu-*

bal, *Magog*, the ſons of *Japhet*; ſpreading themſelves more Northwards as they grew in numbers, out of *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and the *Pontick*, or *Cimmerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olandæ*, *Gerri*, *Samocolchi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimnitæ*, *Agaritæ*, *Merdi*, *Conapſeni*, *Chanides*, *Baſilici*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippophagi*, and others of as little note: theſe laſt ſo called from their eating of horſes, which dyet they have left unto their Succeſſors. So like in manners and conditions to the neighbouring *Scythians*, that they paſſed commmonly by that name: and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into *Aſia* the *Greater*, at ſuch time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Aſia Minor*. For paſſing without oppoſition through the *Sarmatian Streights*, where they might have been eaſily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Countrey of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*: where they were encountred (but victorious) by *Phraartes*, then King of the *Medes*. Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, aſſayed it by cunning; and firſt perſwaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countreys, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon full of prey, and preſents, they marched towards *Ægypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Pſamniticus* the *Ægyptian* King, who had heard of their coming: and thought it beſt to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his greater coſt. Out-vying the *Median* (as of the two, the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treaſure, and ſo ſent them back again into *Media*, from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that people, and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their tributes, and uſing all kind of inſolencies: till in the end *Cyaxares*, the Son and Succeſſor of *Phraartes*, acquainting ſome of his moſt faithfull ſubjects with his deſign, cauſed the better part of them to be plentifully feaſted, made them drunk, and ſlew them, recovering thereby the poſſeſſion of his whole eſtate. Afterwards, imitated by the by the *Engliſh* in their *Hock-tide* ſlaughter. Such of them as eſcaped this blow, and were not willing to be ſubject to the Kings of *Media* (as many of them were) were ſuffered to return home by the ſame way they came; where at their coming, they found foul work made by their wives and their ſlaves, the ſtory whereof we had when we were in *Ruſſia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the ſtories of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, unleſs thoſe *Amazons*, who attended their Qu: *Thaleſiris*, when ſhe beſtowed a viſit on *Alexander*, were rather of theſe *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of thoſe of *Pontus* and *Thermodon*, as I think they were: the neerneſs of their dwelling to *Hyrcania*, in which place they found him, inducing me to his opinion. But poſſible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that ſome of theſe *Sarmatian* Tribes, though by other names, hearing of the ſucceſſes of the *Hunnes*, *Avares*, and other barbarous nations, which made havock of the *Roman* Empire, might joyn themſelves unto them, and make up their numbers: thoſe nations being elſe too ſmall to compound ſuch Armies as by them were brought into the field againſt the *Romans*, without ſuch like helps. What their eſtate hath been ſince ſubdued by the *Tartars*, hath been ſhewn already.

3. *ZAGATHAY.*

ZAGATHAY is bounded on the Eaſt, with the mountain *Imaus*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythick*, or *Frozen Ocean*; on the Weſt, with *Tartaria Deſerta*, from which ſeparated by the River *Soane*, and the Lake of *Kitay*; and on the South, with the *Caſpian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Perſia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imaum*, of the antient writers.

The Countrey ſpreading out ſo far on all ſides, as before appeareth, comprehendeth all thoſe Povinces and tracts of ground, which antiently were called 1. the Countrey of the *Sacæ*, 2. *Sogdiana*, with 3 *Zagathay*, ſpecially ſo called, 4. and *Turcheſtan*, included antiently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and 5. the *Terra incognita*, which *Ptolomy* makes to be the Northern boundary of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a ſurvey of all which particulars, we ſhall find the temper of the whole.

1. *SACÆ*, or the Countrey of the *Sacans*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Mountain *Imaus*, on the Weſt, with *Sogdiana*; on the North, with *Zagathay*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Sacæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reaſon of their name I find not.

The Countrey antiently either barren, or ill manured, full of vaſt Foreſts, wide Deſarts, and the like unhabitable places. Few or no Cities in it, and not many villages (*civitates autem non habent*, as my Author hath it) the people lived for the moſt part in Caves, or otherwiſe wandring up and down with their droves of Cattel. Called for that reaſon *Nomades* by ſome antient writers. The name not proper to theſe onely, but common to all thoſe who followed the like roving life; as the *Sarmatians*, wilde *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Lybia* and *Numidia* in *Africk*. Onely one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (λίθινὸς πύργος, in the *Greek*) or the Caſtle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the moſt part by *Camels*, or travellable onely with thoſe Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was antiently into many Tribes, the *Caratæ*, and *Comari*, neer the River *Jaxartes*; the *Maſſagetæ*, and *Comedæ*, neer the hills called *Aſcatancas*; the *Bylcæ* and *Grynæi*, more within the Countrey. All joyned in one by the name of *Sacæ*, and by that name made a very fortunate Progreſs into *Armenia* (to which they had an eaſie paſſage by the Northern banks of the *Caſpian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacaſena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there ſlain by the *Perſians* in the middeſt of their Feaſtings, they left there alſo ſome reſemblance of their name, in an annuall feſtivall called *Sacea*; celebrated by the *Perſians*, in memoriall of their good ſucceſs in the warre againſt them. Such as ſtaid here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, did ſo good ſervice to that

Prince,

Sogdiana,

prince, that *Amorges* the King of theſe *Sacæ*, is ſaid to have reſcued him from the hands of theſe *Scythians*, by whom otherwiſe he had been ſlain, or taken Priſoner. In the declining of that Kingdome, they were ſubdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian*, and *Sogdian* warres; who hereabouts, by *Cohortanes* a noble *Perſian*, was preſented with a Bevy of beautiful Ladies; one of which was that *Barſine*, whom he made his wiſe, and had by her that *Hercules*, whom *Polyſpercon* and his faction proclaimed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or ſuffered; as they have been made by the miſtake or opinion of others, Who building *Caſtles* in the *Air*, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Anceſtours) from this original: as if they were called *Saxons*: *quaſi Sac--ſonnes*, or the *Sonnes* of *Sacæ*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of theſe *Sacæ*, when they left theſe parts, muſt be great, or little. If little, how can we conceive it poſſible, they ſhould force their way thorough thoſe valiant Nations of both *Sarmatias*; who to the laſt maintained their liberties and eſtates againſt the *Romans*. If great enough to force their paſſage (for ſtout and provident Nations uſe not to give paſſage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it poſſible they ſhould be ſhut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*. The *Saxons* then, whatſoever they were, were no *Sons* of the *Sacæ*; and what in likelyhood they were, hath been elſe were ſhown.

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the Eaſt, the *Sacæ*; on the North and Weſt, with *Zagathay* ſpecially ſo called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Country, though of themſelves a ſpur or branch of the Mountain *Caucaſus*.

The Country indifferent fruitfull, and very rich in paſturage, becauſe they were well watered. For beſides *Oxus*, and *Jaxertes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The principall of which, 1. *Dymus*. and 2. *Araxates*, both navigable, and capable of very good ſhips; both alſo running down the hills with a head-long courſe and paſſing thorow the champain Country, empty themſelves at laſt in a Lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolomy* ſaith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of moſt conſideration are, 1. *Darepſa*, the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of this people. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus Carapſa*: ſcituate on the River *Oxus*. 2. *Oxiana*, on the ſame River, and from thence denominated. 3. *Maruca*, on the ſame River alſo. 4. *Alexandria*, called for diſtinctions ſake, *Alexandria Oxiana*; which name declareth both the founder and the ſituation 5. *Alexandria*, for the ſame cauſe of diſtinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either becauſe the laſt City which he built in theſe parts; or becauſe it lay furtheſt off on the borders of the *Scythians*; againſt whoſe Invaſions or irruptions it was ſaid to be built. 6. *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 6 *Cyroſchata*, more memorable, and not leſs ancient, then any of thoſe named before, by *Qu, Curtius* called *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus*, to ſortifie his borders againſt the *Scythians*. It held out againſt the great *Macedonian*, a long time: and he himſelf coming nigher to the walls then diſcretion would permit an ordinary General, had ſuch a blow on the neck with a ſtone, that he fell on the ground, his eyes ſwimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for ſlain. But reviving he took the Town by a Mine, and level'd it with the ground, in revenge of ſo great a danger.

The antient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxcydracæ*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* Mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cheraſmii*, near the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jaſii*, and *Tachori*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepſiani* in the Eaſt parts bordering on the *Sacæ*; whoſe chief City was *Drepſa*: deſcended from their ſeveral rootes, but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own perſon, as before was ſaid, at the ſollicitation of *Spitamenes* a Noble *Perſian*, it rebelled again. Who being ſuppreſſed, and the Country in ſome meaſure quieted, *Armiazes* a Native of the Province, renewed the war. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped on the top of a hill, in a place of ſuch notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force nor fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 300 of his youngeſt and moſt active men, on the promiſe of a great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noyſe, to ſhew themſelves at the back of the Enemy. Which having performed with the loſs of 30 of their Company, *Alexander* ſent one *Cophes* to *Arimazes*, to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back; who terrified with what he ſaw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was ſcourged and crucified for his labour, So neceſſary in the Art of ware-fare is a peece of wit. After this time, it ran the ſame alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Perſians* did; till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom ſtill ſubject.

3. *ZAGATHAY* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Cathay*; on the Weſt, with *Turcheſtan*, and part of the *Caſpian Sea*; on the North, with the Counry of *Samoyedes*, the *Terra Incognita* of the Antients; on the South, with the *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*. Anciently part of *Scythia intra montem Imaüm*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the firſt Prince hereof, ſince the time of the *Tartars*.

The Country reaſonable fruitfull, but not ſo rich in the naturall temper of the ſoyl, as the induſtriouſneſs of the people, more civill far than any other of the *Tartars*; ſtudious of good letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenuous as *Mechanick*; well skilled in *manufactures*, and very ſeldome without the confluence of forrein Merchants. Populous and well ſtored with Towns and Villages; both for their own more handſome dwelling, and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *Jaxartes*, now called *Cheſel*, the principal of all this Country: great of it ſelf, but made much greater by the waters of 2. *Diax*, another River of good note, riſing out of the mountain called *Noroſus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with whoſe ſtreames they are diſchannelled in the *Caſpian* Sea. 3 *Jartus*, and 4. *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are

Zagathay. whole names I finde not in my Authors, deſcending from the mountains of this Nothern Region, which are great and many. As viz. 1. *Noroſus*, ſpoken of before. 2. *Aſpiſii*, on the north of that. 3. *Toporus* more unto the North. 4. the Mountains called *Sychi*, more northward ſtill. 5. thoſe called *Anarai*, beſides 6. *Imaus*, and of moſt name, common unto *Cathay*, as well as *Zagathay*.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Aſpabota*, the only Town aſcribed by *Ptolomy* to this Country, and by him honoured with the Title of *Civitas*. 2. *Zabaſpia*, of leſs antiquity, but of greater eſtimation at the preſent time. Scituate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Abias*) on the brink of the *Caſpian*; and much frequented by the Merchants of forreign Countries, chiefly from *India*, and *Cathay*. 3. *Marachanda*, antient, and of fame, but placed by *Ptolomy* (why I know not) amongſt the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North-ſide of *Oxus*, and conſequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes*, (who having delivered the Traitor *Beſſus* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) againſt the *Macedonian* Army; by which beſieged under the command of *Menedemus*. But *Menedemus* being ſlain with ſome of his Souldiers, *Spitamenes* eſcaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was ſlain by his own wife, and his head preſented to the Conqueror. Here was it alſo that *Alexander*, being then Maſter of the Town, in a drunken fit ſlew his dear friend *Clytus*; who at the Battel of *Granicus* had ſaved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarchand*, the Seat-Royall of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the ſpoils and treaſures he got in the wars; there being brought thither from *Damaſcus* onely (and by that one inſtance we may gueſs at the reſt) 8000 *Camels* laden with the choiceſt moveables. Still the chief reſidence of the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, but far ſhort of that magnificence which once it held. 4. *Bichend*, of no Antiquity, nor of ſuch great name as the Regall *Samarchand*, but at this time of greater wealth: ſituate ſomewhat in the mid-land, but populous and a well-traded Town. 5. *Azara*, memorable for being made the *Rendezvous* of that mighty Army which *Tamerlane* raiſed againſt the *Turks*, conſiſting in the totall of 1200000 fighting men when it was at the biggeſt. 6. *Maranis*, from which place the ſaid *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

Theſe *Tartars*, called *Zigathayans*, by the name of their Country, are of a different government from that of the Great *Cham* of *Cathay*, though ſubject to him at the firſt: and have ſo been ever ſince the time of Zaicham or *Bathu*, the third great *Cham*; who gave it unto *Zagathay* a younger Son, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* ſucceeded *Og*, by ſome called *Zain-Cham*, (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather ſtudied to preſerve then enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fiercer and more warlike nature, made the firſt proof of his valour and good fortune againſt the *Moſcovite* (for ſpoiling a City which had put it ſelf under his protection) whom he overthrew with the ſlaughter of 25000 foot; and 15000 of his horſe. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greater, *Gino Cham*, the great Emperour of the *Tartars*, gave him to wife his onely daughter, and therewithall declared him his heir apparent. Incouraged and enabled with this advancement, he firſt brake down the wall of *China*, encountred with the King thereof, overcame him in battel, and impoſed on him the ſumme of 300000 Crowns of yearly tribute. Having left things quiet at his Back, and taking with him a great part of the forces of *China*, he advanced forwards towards *Bajazet*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatneſſe of whoſe growing Empire he began to be jealous. Paſſing a long the left-hand ſhores of the *Caſpian* Sea; and ſo through *Albaina*, and the reſt of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and Conquered as he went) he came at laſt into *Aſia Minor*: where neer the City of *Sebaſtia*, he encountred with *Bajazet*, vanquiſhed him, ſlew 200000 of his men, and carried him away captive in an iron Cage. Reſtoring thoſe Princes diſpoſſeſſed by *Bajazet* unto their eſtates, and taking to himſelf al the *Turkiſh* Provinces of *Anatolia*; he beſtowed a private viſit on *Conſtantinople*: which ſeen, he marched towards *Syria*, ſubdued both that province and the Kingdom of *Egypt*, then poſſeſſed by the *Mamalucks*; viſited *Hieruſalem*, and did honour to the *Holy Sepulchre*; returned by *Babylon*, and won it, and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia*, and *Aſſyria*. And taking *Perſia* in his way, impatronized himſelfe of that Kingdome alſo; and ſuch parts of *India* as either lay neer *Perſia* or his own dominions: now made the *Soveraign Lord* of all the Regions and Kingdomes in both *Aſias*, excepting *India*; for which the rich Kingdom of *Egypt* may be put in balance. Come home at laſt to *Samarchand*, he there died in peace. A Prince of ſtrong Body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them ſuch raies of majeſty, that ordinary men could ſcarce indure to look upon them. His Hair long, contrary to the cuſtome of the *Mahometans*, (for the moſt part ſhaved on their heads) for which he pretended a deſcent from *Samſon*. Perfect in the *Arabian* learning, and a lover of all learned men, a hater of *Idols*, and *Polytheiſm*, and a great friend of the *Chriſtians*. More fortunate in the Conquering of ſo many Kingdomes than in laying any ſure foundation to maintain his conqueſt. For by holding his Seat-Royal in *Samarchand*, *Cambalu*, and other of the chief Cities of *Cathay*; he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to their former Governors: and by parcelling his eſtate among his Children, and kindred, this mighty flood which had ſo quickly overflown both *Aſias*, returned in very little time within its own proper and originall banks. Even *Zagathay* it ſelf, divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Cham*, for the *Lord in chief*) the moſt conſiderable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the beginnings of the unſettledneſſe of the *Sophian* Empire invaded *Perſia*: But inſtead of recovering that Kingdome into the Power of the *Tartars*, he loſt ſome Provinces of his own: *Hyrcania*, *Margiana*, and ſome part of *Bactria*, being ſince ſubdued by *Abas* the lat *Sultan*. Nothing ſince memorable, that I meet with, in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*.

4. *TURCHESTAN* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Zagathay* eſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, with the River *Soane*, parting it from *Deſerta*; on the North, with thoſe deſarts which *Ptolomy* blindeth

under

Turcheſtan

under the name of *Terra incognita*; and on the South with the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from the *Turks* ſome of which people when they left their firſt Seats near the Fens of *Mœotis*, ſettled in this County, and here ſtill continue.

The Country as deſart and ill planted, as the reſt of *Tartary*, not ſo much out of any defect in the ſoyl it ſelf, as in the humor of the people: who though originally *Turks*, yet do compoſe themſelves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian Nomades*, neglecting tillage, and abiding in no place longer then that place affords them paſturage for their Cattel: huge herds of which they keep as their greateſt treaſure, but more to cloth their backs with their skins, then to fill their bellies with their fleſh.

Amongſt the Rivers of moſt note we may reckon, 1. *Rhymnus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which by the poſition of it in the 91 degree of longitude, ſeems to be of this Tract, It riſeth out of the Mountains called *Montes Rymnici*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it 2. *Ardock*, not known by that name amongſt the Antients, or whether known at all or not I am not able to ſay. Shaping its courſe towards the North, and weary of ſo cold a clime, and ſuch barbarous people; after a long and ſwift courſe of a thouſand miles, it hideth it ſelfe under the Ground, for five hundred more: but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loſeth it ſelfe for ever in the great Lake of *Kitay*,

To look for Towns amongſt a people which delight not in ſetled houſes, were a labour loſt: yet ſome I finde aſcribed unto them, The principal, but of no great note, 1. *Calba*, and 2. *Ocerra*. Then there is 3. *Cruſtina*, ſcituate on or neer the Lake of *Kitay*, never without the company of *Ruſſian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Ruſſians* ſailing to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathayan Tartars* travelling to it by land. By theſe two Nations more peopled to maintain their traffick, than by the *Turcomans* themſelves, in whoſe land it ſtandeth.

Theſe *Turcomans* are of the poſterity of ſome of thoſe *Turca*, who wanting room, or otherwiſe oppreſſed with want, forſooke their ancient dwelling neer the Fens of *Mœotis*, and the Coaſts of the *Euxine* Sea, to ſeek new ſeats, *Anno*, 844. That their whole body ſetled here, and from hence made their Conqueſt of *Perſia*, as ſome very induſtrious men are of opinion, I by no means grant. For when the Sultan of *Perſia*, having by the means of *Tangrolipix*, and thoſe mercinary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the Victory, and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his ſervice: it is ſaid he ſhut up the paſſages of the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The ſhutting up of which River, and fortifying againſt them all paſſages and bridges of it, had not ſerved his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place: for then he muſt have manned againſt them the River of *Oxus*, and ſuch as lay betwixt them and him in the common rode; nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling if this Province, on the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Volga*, would undertake the foarding of that dangerous and violent water; and force themſelves a way thorow *Albania* and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers, than 3000 men, which was the whole ſtrength which they carried with them. So that it is not to be doubted, but that they came firſt into *Perſia* out of *Turcomania*, and not out of *Turcheſtan*: and probable enough, that when they firſt left their own abode, and came unto the Northweſt ſhores of the *Caſpian* Sea, they might here divide themſelves. Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and paſſing thorow the *Sarmatian* or *Albanian* Streights, made their way into *Armenia*, and thoſe parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The reſidue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and croſſing the *Volga*, where they found the paſſage moſt eaſie for them, ſetled themſelves in theſe parts of *Scythia* which they found leſs peopled, now from them named *Turchiſtan*. Some of which hearing of the good ſucceſſe of their Country-men in the Conqueſt of *Perſia*, might afterwards joyn with them to aſſure that purchaſe. Governed ſince their firſt coming hither by the *chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clans*, whom they honour with the title or name of *Cham*; but all of them tributaries and Vaſſals to the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdome of *Zagathay*, which anciently paſſed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*; and was accounted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imaum*; hath on the South *Turcheſtan*, and part of *Zagatha*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called: extending northwards to the *Scyhick* or *Frozen* Ocean; and bounded on the Weſt, with the River *Ob*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern tracte are now called by the name of *Samoyedes*; neither the people, nor Country known to the ancient *Romans*: and indeed neither of them worth the knowing. The men black haired, naturally *beardleſs*, and not to be diſcerned from women, but that the women wear a long lock down to their ears. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer-skins*, or *Seil-skins*, with the hairy ſide outwards; (nothing more wiſe in that than the other *Tartars*.) Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place, without any propriety of houſe or dwelling; the Leader of each company their Prieſt, whom they call their *Popa*, who at every one of their Removes is to offer ſacrifice, *Idolaters* they are all and moſt of them *Witches*, eſpecially ſuch as live more towards the Eaſt, and furtheſt off from the *Moſcovite*, who many times deſtroy their *Idols*, and rob them of the skin of *Beavers*, *Black Foxes*, and *Sables*, wherewith thoſe Idols are ſet forth to the publick view; but beſtow on them greater heats in a good fire; into which they commonly uſe to caſt them.

Theſe *Zagathayan* Provinces, with thoſe of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before deſcribed, made that part of *Scythia*, which was once called *Scythia intra montem Imaum*: though in the time of *Ptolomy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Satæ*, and *Sogdiana*, were reckoned of as Provinces of the Kingdome of *Perſia*, this *Scythia* was reſtrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended onely *Turcheſtan* and the *Special Zagathay*. Inhabited beſides the ſeveral Nations dwelling in the four *Perſian* Provinces, by many fierce and ſavage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alanoeſi*, *Saubeni*, and *Maſſai*, towards *Terra incognita*; the *Tectoſages*, and *Aſiotæ*, neer the Mountain *Imaus*; the *Jaxartæ* on the banks of the River ſo called; and the *Mologeni*, not far off; the *Zaratæ*, and *Saſones*, neer the Mountaines *Alani*; the *Galactophagi*, or

milke

Scythia.

milk-eaters, more towards the Eaſt; the *Taporei*, and the *Sychi*, by the hills ſo named; and many other not material to be here remembred. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom firſt ſubdued.

And now we are at laſt come to *Scythia*, truely ſo named; *Sarmatia Europaa* and *Aſiatica* being called ſo onely by way of participation and reſemblance; becauſe the Inhabitants thereof had ſo much in them of the manners and conditions of the natural *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to ſpeak ſomething of them, their names, antiquity, diſpoſition, and cuſtomes, and the moſt memorable actions relating to them as far as we go by light of ſtory.

Firſt, for the name, the *Gracian* Fablers have derived it from one *Scythes*, the Son of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Monſter, halfe woman, halfe Viper. The *Grammarians* ἀπὸ τοῦ σκύζεσθαι ſignifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is ſaid that the *Jewiſh puritans*, who *faſted to be ſeen of men*, σκυθρωποὶ ἀφανίζουσι that they looked with a ſower, ſevere, and a disfigured countenance. *Goropius Becanus* doth derive it rather from the *Dutch* word *Schutten*, ſignifying to ſhoot: agreeable enough to the cuſtome and exerciſe of the *Scythians*; who are obſerved by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the ancient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Schutten* ſignified the ſame in the ancient *Scythick*; or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the tongue of the *Scythians*, will not eaſily appear.

Letting that paſs therefore as a matter not to be defined, let us look on the antiquity of theſe *Scythian* Nations, and we finde it to be great, if not greateſt of all. *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*, That the *Scythians* were of all others the moſt ancient people, was received from an *Oracle*, in the elder ages of the world: and ſo reſolved by way of Verdict, when the great controverſie touching the *Antiquity* of thoſe Nations, was to be determined, betwixt the *Egyptian* and *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath paſſed with ſuch a general approbation, that it is not now to be diſputed. In which regard I am ſo far in the judgement of *Becanus* in that particular, as to conceive that the Countries lying on the North of the Mount *Caucaſus* (on which the Arke is thought probably to have reſted) were peopled by the Sons of *Noah* before they travelled towards the Weſt, or ſet themſelves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had elſe no doubt heard ſomewhat amongſt our Antiquaries, of the ſetling of ſome of thoſe *Adventurers* in theſe Northern Regions; when giving off that enterpriſe, and falling upon new plantations, they either went themſelves, or ſent for their *Colonies*, into all places of the world. But of any ſuch plantations *ne gry quidem*, not one word ſay they. Nor can it probabely be ſuppoſed, that *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria* ſhould have raiſed 400000 fighting men out of that one province, (though ſome of the adjoyning Provinces were took into the reckoning) in thoſe early dayes, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the great *Aſſyrian*; had the *Bactrians* and the reſt of thoſe *Scythian* nations, being but a *Caſting* as it were of ſome ſecond ſwarme, and not *coaval* with the firſt. But beſides theſe preſumptions we have other poofs: viz. an old and conſtant tradition of this ſide the Mountains, that the great *Vineyard* of *Margiana* was of *Noahs* planting; and 2 the affirmation of *Porcius Cato*, (though one of the writers of Frier *Annius*) *in Scythia Saga renatum mortale genus*, that mankind was repaired in theſe parts of *Scythia*, ſo called from *Sabatius Saga*, an *Armenian* King, whoſe dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of ſtrong preſumption, if not demonſtrably concludent, that theſe people were of the firſt plantation which was made after the flood, before the reſt of the world was peopled by the *Confuſion of Languages*: *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*, could not elſe hold good.

As for their diſpoſitions or natural inclinations, they are ſaid by *Trogus*, or his *Epitomator Juſtine*, to be *Gens & laboribus & bellis aſpera*, " A Nation patient of labours, and fierce in war; of bodily "ſtrength immenſe and vaſt; yet ſo much maſters of their affections, that they made no uſe further of their " greateſt victories, then the augmentation of their fame. Theft they eſteeme the greateſt crime, and " that they puniſhed ſo ſeverely that their Flocks and herds might and did ſafely wander from one place " to another, without fear of ſtealing. In them we placed their greateſt wealth, feeding themſelves " with the milk thereof, and making their raiment of the ſkinnes. Silver and gold they contemned as " much as it was coveted by others; there being no deſire of riches, where there was no uſe. *Meum*, and " *Tuum*, thoſe common *Barretors*, and authours of debate amongſt other men is not knowne amongſt " them; and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any incloſures, not troubling themſelves with the " care of building. But putting their wives and Children upon waines, or wagons covered with hides " againſt the weather, they removed from one place to another, no longer ſtaying upon one, than they " found graſs and herbage to ſuſtain their Cattel. So juſt in al their actions, that they heeded not the " reſtraint of Lawes, and had attained to ſuch an eminent degree of humane perfection, as not to covet. " In a word, that moderation which the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of learning " and *Philoſophy*, was to theſe ſo natural, that the ignorance of vice did as much contribute to their wel- " fare, as the knowledge of virtue. Such are the famous *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being ſuch, it was a wonder, that the great Monarchs of the world who had wealth at will, ſhould make war upon them; amongſt whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conqueror. Yet either on deſire of glory, or to adde unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were firſt invaded by *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch: who quarelling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Maſſagetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both ſides of the River *Oxus*, diſcomfited her Army, and ſlew her ſon *Spargapiſes*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen having in the ſecond battel obtained the victory, and took *Cyrus* priſoner, is ſaid to have cut off his head, and caſt it into a boul of blood, with this ſcornfull taunt, *Satia te ſanguine quem ſitiiſti*, dow drink thy fill of blood which thou haſt ſo thirſted. But others tell us otherwiſe of the ſucceſſe of this fight. By whom it is reported that the horſe of *Cyrus* being diſordered on the ſight of ſome *Elephants*, which came from *India* to her aid, and himſelf dangerouſly wounded;

the *Scythians* had won the victory, but for the coming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacons*, (who of a conquered Enemy was become his Confederate :) by whom he was reſcued, and by the 20000 freſh men which he brought with him, obtained the honour of the day; though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. With *Alexander* they are ſaid to begin the war, as loth to be behind hand with him ; arming themſelves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, ſo neer their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them down, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulſed, and wiſe enough to ſuffer what they could not hinder, they ſued for peace, and had it granted ; *Alexander* being called away by the revolt of the *Bactrians*, a matter of more conſequence than theſe *Scythian* brabbles. With *Alexanders* Succeſſors they had nothing to do, nor with the *Perſian* Kings of the *Parthian* Race ; the *Parthians* being their *Allies*, and of *Scythian* breed. And for the *Romans*, it is well obſerved by the *Hiſtorian*, *Romanorum arma audivere magis quam ſenſere*, that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it : Remaining undiſturbed in their honeſt poverty, till the *Tartars*, an obſcure and beggarly people brake out of their *Priſon*, and carried the whole World before them.

As for their Kings, I finde ſome of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be ſuppoſed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue, did either reign in the ſame place, or over the ſame Nations, or that they ſucceeded one another : Howſoever we will take their names as they come before us, in this liſt of

The Kings of *Scythia*.

1 *Scythes.*
2 *Napis.*
3 *Phitra.*
4 *Sagillus.*
5 *Targitana.*
6 *Plinus.*
7 *Scholypethus.*
8 *Panaxagora.*
9 *Tanais.*
10 *Indathyrſus.*
11 *Saulius.*
12 *Spargapiſis.*
13 *Tomyris.*
14 *Aripethes.*
15 *Seiles.*
16 *Octimaſdes.*

17 *Lanthinus*, the laſt of all thoſe *Scythian* Kings who are conceived to have the government of theſe warlike Nations. But for my part, I dare not ſay that ever any one King did command the whole people generally : each *Tribe* or Nation having their particular Kings, as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for thoſe Kings, if ſuch Kings there were (as for ſome of them I durſt venture to ſwear the contrary) they muſt be ſuch as in their ſeverall Countries were of greateſt fame, moſt taken notice of in the world, or imployed in the conduct of their joynt and united forces, and ſo conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian* Nation : as *Caſſibeline*, King of the *Trinobantes*, and perhaps not that, is by ſome writers ſaid to be the King of the *Britains*, becauſe he had the conduct of their Forces againſt *Julius Caſar*.

CATHAY.

CATHAY is bounded on the Weſt, with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imaus* ; on the Eaſt, with the *Oriental* Sea, and ſome part of *China* ; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua* ; and on the South, with part of *India*. So called from the *Proper* or *ſpecial Cathay*, the principal Province of the whole, the other parts into which it is commonly divided, being 2. *Altay*, 3. the Countries of the *Eaſtern Tartars*.

1. **CATHAY**, more properly and ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt with *China* ; on the Weſt with the mountain *Imaus* by which parted from *Zagathay* ; on the North with *Altay* ; and on the South with *India extra Gangem* : So called from the *Chata* an old *Scythian* people, who having conquered the *Seres*, and the reſt of the neighbouring Nations, gave their name unto the whole, according to the Cuſtome of victorious people.

This Countrey is exceeding long, if it be meaſured by the Scale, and Rules laid down by *Ptolomy*; who placeth *Anzacia*, the moſt weſtern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *longitude* of 144 degrees, and *Sera* the Metropolis and moſt Eaſtern City of *Serica* in the longitude of 177 degrees and 15 minutes; as on the other ſide he placeth *Sera* the moſt Southern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum* in the *latitude* of 35 degrees, and 20 minutes, and *Damna* the moſt Northern Town of *Serica*, in the latitude of 51 degrees, and 40 minutes. By which accompt, ſuppoſing theſe four Towns to be placed in the very extremities and out-parts of this Countrey, it muſt extend from North to South 960 miles, and ſomewhat upwards, and about 1500 miles from Eaſt to Weſt in the length thereof; which as it ſheweth the dimenſions and extent of it to be very great, ſo it may probably infer that the Country is not in all places of the like fertility; the Weſt parts of it being very mountainous and barren, and conſequently not very fruitfull, as being overgrown in moſt places with the ſaps and branches of *Imaus*. But in thoſe parts thereof which lie towards the Eaſt, it is ſaid to be abounding in Wheat, Rice, Wool, Hemp, Silk, and Musk ; Great ſtore of that medicinall Root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rha-barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rha-Pontick*, growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have alſo great herds of Camels, of whoſe hair they make thoſe ſtuffs which are hence called *Camelets*, or *Chamlets* ; and ſuch an infinite breed of horſes, as beſides thoſe which they preſerve for their own uſe, they furniſh the whole Realm of *China* with ſuch multitudes of them, that at one time there were ſent no fewer then 80000 for a preſent to the

King of that Realm by the Princes of theſe Weſtern *Tartars*, as the *Chinois* call them; of which he that writ the Book called *Bellum Tartaricum* affirmeth himſelf to have been an eye-witneſs, and to his credit I refer it; That the great *Cham* feedeth yearly 10000 white Mares, which he keeps for their milk. Some of their Rivers are reported alſo to yield *golden ſands*. But whether it be ſo or not, certain it is, that it is ſo well provided of all things both for neceſſary uſe, and the pleaſures of life, that it is thought to be inferiour to few Countries of *Europe*. The air indeed not ſo temperate, as in many places; in Summer-time extreamly hot, and in winter miſerably cold: the thunders and lightnings being here ſo terrible, that in Summer many men die for fear when they hear it. The winds, no leſs violent than the thunder, do ſometimes tear up trees by the roots, and beat men from their horſes; but ſeldom bring with them any ſtorm of rain; the greateſt ſhowers which they have hardly wetting the ground.

The people are generally very warlike, ſtrong of body, quick of action, fearleſs of the greateſt dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean ſtature, little eyes, ſharp ſight, and thin beards. Induſtrious they are in ſeveral *manufactures*, of a good wit for diſpatch of buſineſs: more honourable than the reſt of the *Tartars*, as loving to dreſs themſelves gorgeouſly, to fare ſumptuouſly (if there be occaſion) to live in handſome houſes, and to frequent the moſt populous & beſt traded Cities. All which civilities or effeminacies, call them which you will, together with the greateſt part of their Arts and Manufactures, they firſt learned of the *Chineſe*, during the time that the *Chinois* lived as Subjects under the great *Cham*, and the Nations had continual entercourſe one with another. They accompt not any for a wife till ſhe bear them children, nor till then do meddle with their dowrie; but repudiate them at a certain time, if they finde them barren. They reverence their *Cham*, or Emperour, even to *adoration*; not ſuffering any Stranger to come in his preſence, except he be firſt *purged*: if any otherwiſe preſume, it is preſent death.

The *Religion* publiquely allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, but ſo that they retain the *Pentateuch* of *Moſes*, and obſerve many things therein commanded. It was much laboured by Pope *Innocent*, and King *Lewis* of *France*, that they ſhould receive the *Chriſtian* Faith; and they found ſome inclinations in the people, and chief Princes, to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their *ſuperſtition*, that *Mahomet* allowed of many wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleſhly luſts; they conformed to that: Yet ſo, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it ſelf (I mean *Cathay* ſtrictly ſo called) and ſome *Chriſtians* alſo; the ſtate of whoſe affairs we have ſhewn before.

Chief Rivers of the whole, 1. *Palyſanga*, which falling into the Eaſtern Ocean is navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great ſtore of Merchandiſe. 2. *Caromoram*, ſo broad and deep that no bridge can be made over it. 3. *Quiam*, one of the greateſt in the world; in length about an hundred days journey; for breadth, in moſt places ſix miles, in many eight, and in ſome ten. 4. *Quiantu*, about half a mile over, and well ſtored with fiſh: of all which we ſhall ſpeak more fully when we come to *China*. Here are alſo very many *Lakes*, both large, and uſefull, as 1. the Lake of *Caniclu*, in which are ſaid to be ſo many pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fiſh for them: which is therefore interdicted (without ſpecial licence) upon pain of death. 2. The Lake of *Caraim*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and ſo full of fiſh as might ſuffice for all the Countrey, did they love to eat of it. Their mountains we ſhall climb over in their ſeverall places.

Principal Cities of the whole at this preſent time under the notion of *Cathay*, are 1 *Cambalu*, ſuppoſed to be the *Iſſedan Serica* of the Antients, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable reſiſtance unto *Cingis* the firſt King of the *Tartars*, in his firſt attempts upon this Country, of which more anon. Made afterwards in regard of the pleaſantneſs of the ſcituation, and extream fertility of the ſoyl, the chief ſeat of his Empire; and being exceedingly enlarged and beautified, had the name of *Cambalu*, that is to ſay, the Seat or City of the *Cham*, in the ſame ſence as the chief City of *China* had the name of *Pequin*, ſignifying in that Language the Court or *City of the King*. Built of Free-ſtone, and ſcituate in the midſt of the Country, as the heart and center to the reſt. It is ſeated on the River *Palyſanga*, honoured with the great *Chams* reſidence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all ſorts. Beſides other Merchandizes, there are every year 10000. Carts loaded with ſilk ſent thither from *China*. Affirmed to be in compaſs 28 miles beſides the Suburbs, in which beſides other Inhabitants of all ſorts are 50000. Aſtrologers or rather Fortune-tellers. 2. *Xaindu* the Royal Palace of the Emperour, of a fourſquare figure, every ſide extending eight miles in length: within this Quadrant is another, whoſe ſides are ſix miles long, and within that another of four miles ſquare, which is the Palace it ſelf; between thoſe ſeveral Walls are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fiſhponds, places for all manner of exerciſe, and Parks, Forreſts, and Chaſes for all manner of Game. 3. *Caraio*, where the women are ſaid to gild their teeth: 4. *Gonza* a fair City and a great, adorned with many Idol Monaſteries. 5. *Careanſu*, near which there groweth an herb called *Chiny-Cathay*, of admirable effect againſt many Diſeaſes, and ſo eſteemed of by the Natives, that they value one ounce of this at a ſack of *Rubarb*. 6. *Segni*, the reſidence of a *Neſtorian* Biſhop.

Having thus took as good a view of the preſent face of this Countrey, as the times afford us, we will next look upon it in thoſe integrall parts of which it ſpecially conſiſteth, comprehending (as before was intimated) thoſe two long and ample Provinces, which the Antients called 1. *Serica*, and 2. *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, according to thoſe bounds and Characters which are given us of them.

1. SERICA hath on the Eaſt ſome part of *China*; on the South, *India extra Gangem*, and ſome part of the Country then inhabited by the Antient *Sina*: on the North, *Altay*: on the Weſt, the moun-

tains of *Imaus*. In which I followed not the bounds laid down by Ptolomy, who for want of that knowledge in theſe remote Countries which theſe latter ages have afforded, is fain to ſhut it up on the North and Eaſt, with a *Terra incognita*. At the preſent it is called *CATHAY*, and that moſt probably from the *Chata*, a *Scythian* People, who ſubduing the old Inhabitants, became Maſters of it.

Deſerta.

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera* the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres*, very induſtrious in their times, and amongſt other things in the making of *ſilks* (made of a fine wool growing on the leaves of trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great eſteem amongſt the *Romans*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere*, *tam longinquo orbe potitur*, *ut in publico* matrona *tranſluceat*; being far fetched, and dear bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they induſtrious only, but chaſte and temperate. The names of Thieves & Whores were not known amongſt them. They eat not any unclean fleſh; nor uſed the company of their wives, either after conception, or during their menſtrual purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years, the quietneſs and mildneſs of their diſpoſition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watchet or Sea-green eyes, and good compoſure. Men of few words, but very juſt in all which they ſaid or did. Governed by a common Council of five thouſand men, every one of which was to finde an *Elephant* for the uſe of the State.

If you will take the character both of the Country and People from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus "First of the Country, that it is plentifull and large, circled about with a chain of moun-
" tains, the two famous Rivers, *Oechardis* and *Banthiſis*, with a ſtill and ſlow ſtream running thorow the
" middle of the incloſed plain, ſpaciouſly ſtretched out to the ſides of the *precipices*: in one place large
" and open, in another lying flat and low with an eaſie deſcent; in which regard they have abundance
" of Corn, ſtore of Cattel, and plenty of *Orchards*. The temperature of the air pleaſant and wholſom, the
" conſtitution of the weather clear and pure, the blowing of gentle winds moſt commodious, and the
" woods with a pretty glimmering of light, both within and under them: from whence the people with
" much ſprinkling of water, ſoftning that which the trees bring forth like a kind of *Fleece*, kemb a moſt
" fine and tender matter which they ſpin into *ſilke*, ſerving in former times for the Nobility and gentry,
" now become common to thoſe alſo of inferiour rank. Then for the *People*, he ſaith that they are a
" frugall Nation, lovers of quiet, not troubleſome unto their Neighbours, without the uſe of Armes,
" and the knowledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers; and ſo far from covetouſneſs, or
" curioſities, that when any Merchants come unto them to buy their *ſilks*, without much beating of
" the price, they let them have ſuch things as are bred amongſt them, without looking after the
" Commodities of other Countries. So he. And if he did not over-act the *Panegyriſt* (as I ſee no reaſon why he ſhould) never were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Countrey happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and mountains they had very many) were 1. the *Montes Caſii*, and 2. *Auzacii* towards the Eaſt. 3. the *Anniba*, environing a great part of the Countrey. 4. the *Aſmirai*, 5 and thoſe called *Serica*, neer the City *Sera*. 6. *Tagurus*. 7. *Ennodorus*, and 8. *Ottorocorus*: But all of them probably the ſpurs and branches of the great Mountain *Imaus*; but by what names now called it is hard to ſay; and no leſs hard to ſay how to accommodate the names of the Rivers ſpoken of before, to thoſe which we finde mentioned in the antient Writers; the principall of which (all flowing out of theſe great Mountains) are, 1. *Oecharde*, by *Pliny* called *Cambris*, riſing out of the *montes Auzacii*; 2. *Pſitara*, iſſuing out of the *Aſmiri*; 3. *Bautiſus*, whoſe Fountain is in the *montes Caſii*; and 4. *Lanos*.

Towns of chief note amongſt them, 1. *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Seres* to the Province and People. 2. *Ottorocora*, neer the hills ſo called, whence it had the name. 3. *Iſſedon*, for diſtinctions ſake called *Iſſedon Serica*, to difference it from another of that name in *Scythia*, called *Iſſedon Scythica*; the chief City of the *Iſiedones*, *gens magna*, one of the greateſt Nations in all the Countrey, as is ſaid by *Ptolomy*, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that noble reſiſtance unto *Cingis* (which before I ſpake of) in his firſt attempts upon this Country. 4. *Oroſana*. 5. *Draſache*, 6. *Daxata*, of which little memorable. Some other Cities there were in it (about nine other being named by *Ptolomy*) of which we finde nothing but the names, and therefore I ſhall paſs them over without further mention.

But here it is to be obſerved, 1. that *Ptolomy* gives unto this Country, and to ſome of the Towns or Cities of it, ſuch a Northernly latitude (ranging the furtheſt parts thereof in the ſame *parallel* with the Iſle of *Thyle*) as cannot poſſibly agree with that fertility of ſoyl, and delightfull temper of the ayr, which is given to *Serica*. 2. That he tels us of a *Promontory* called *Tabyn* ſcituate in *extrema terra*, in the extremities of the Country between North and Eaſt, which I cannot but extreamly wonder at, conſidering that he ſhuts up this Country on the Eaſt and North with a *Terra incognita*, & extends not any part thereof towards the Sea, rendring it thereby uncapable of any ſuch *Promontory*. 3. That ſome of our late Writers both in their Tables and their Maps, have placed the Regal City of *Cambula*, ſo farre towards the North, as very ill agreeth with that pleaſantneſs and ſweetneſs of ſcituation, which induced the great *Chams* to make choice thereof for the Seat Royal of their Empire. But as we may eaſily pardon theſe miſtakes of *Ptolomy* in places ſo far diſtant from him, and then but little known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; ſo we may as eaſily pardon thoſe of the latter times, who grounding on the authority of ſo eminent an Author, have in ſome things been miſguided by him: it hapning very many times (which I find ſome where mentioned on the like occaſion) *Magnis erroribus, magnorum virorum authoritate, tranſmiſſis*, that great errors are often entertained upon the credit of their Authors.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in thoſe parts which lay next the *Scythians*, are ſaid to have been *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters, moſt probably a *Scythian* Nation, that cuſtom being ſo abhorrent from the mild-

Altay.

neſs of the *Serican* temper. Or elſe, we muſt correct the Copies of *Ptolomy*, by the Hiſtory of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who inſtead of *Anthropophagi*, placeth the *Alitrophagi* in the ſelf-ſame tract. The other Nations not diſtained with the like reproaches, are the *Syziges*, and *Anabi*, not far off the *Auzacian* mountains; the *Piala* neer the River *Oechardes*; the *Geranai*, and *Rhabbanai*, their neareſt neighbours; the *Throani* dwelling towards the Eaſt, the *Bata* and *Ottocorora* more towards the South. Theſe with the reſidue, governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the ſervice of the Common-wealth, as was ſaid before. And more than this we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad to vend their wares, and having little ſpeech with ſtrangers when they come amongſt them. Being vanquiſhed by the *Chata*, a *Scythian* Nation, from whom it is likely that it took the name of *CATHAY*; (for in this we go but by conjecture) they continuing under Kings of their own, till ſubdued by the *Tartars*, againſt whom they made ſuch ſtout reſiſtance, being beſieged by *Cingis* in their principall City, that when they wanted ſtones to caſt out of their Engins, they ſupplied that want with molten ſilver; and held it out ſo long, that *Cingis* finding victuals to grow ſhort in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man ſhould be eaten. But at the laſt being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens maſſacred, and their King or Emperor (as ſome call him) ſlain: after whoſe death, and not before, *Cingis* aſſumed the title of *Cham*, or Emperor. The reſidue of their Story we ſhall have hereafter.

SCYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM was bounded on the Eaſt with *Serica*, on the Weſt with *Imaus*, on the South with *India extra Gangem*; and on the North, with the Countreys comprehended in the name of *Altay*, Which *Ptolomy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Scythia*, becauſe planted by a brood of the *Scythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Scythya* which lay on the Weſt ſide of that mountain; neereſt unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain and the Country have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it ſtandeth by the name of *Scythia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring nations: the mountains called *Auzacii*, *Caſii*, and *Ennodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*, as *Imaus* joyntly to both the *Scythia's*, which it divided antiently the one from the other: though now this laſt be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, becauſe the *Tartars* on both ſides of it profeſs themſelves ſubject to that *Cham*. This the moſt famous mountain in the Eaſt of *Aſia*, beginning at the ſhores of the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean; and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or *Indian* Seas. By which account it divideth the *Greater Aſia* into Eaſt and Weſt, as *Taurus* doth into North and South, which Mountain it croſſeth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140, as before was ſaid. That part hereof which lyeth on the South of *Taurus*, was by the Antients called *Bitigo*; and by the modern is named *Gates*: of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *India*. That on the North of *Taurus*, called *Imaus* properly, was anciently moſt memorable for dividing the vaſt Countries of the *Scythians*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*; a diviſion much obſerved by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of ſome of the *Chams* of *Tartarry*; moſt generally known by the name of *Altay*, but by ſome called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1. *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hills ſo named. 2. *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chauranai*. 3. *Sata*. 4. *Iſſedon Scythica*, ſo called to difference it from the other of that name in *Serica*. Theſe with the reſt, and all the Country, as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolomy*, inhabited by the *Abii*, *Hippophagi*, or horſe-eaters, a diet ſtill uſed by the *Tartars* or modern *Scythians*. 2. The *Iſſedones*, who are ſaid by *Pomponius Mela* to make carouſing cups of their Fathers heads, firſt trimmed and gilded, 3. the *Chauranai*, and 4. the *Chata*, who being (as it ſeemeth) the moſt potent Nation, cauſed all the reſt to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name alſo to the conquered Seres. Beſides the poſſeſſions of which Tribes, there was alſo the Regions of *Acbaſſa Cuſia*, and *Auzuatis*; theſe laſt ſo called from the mountains upon which they ſtand. More than this we have not to ſay of this Country by the name of *Scythia*, there being nothing memorable of it in the courſe of ſtory, or worth the obſervation in the way of Corography.

ALTAY is bounded on the South with *Cathay*, ſpecially ſo called, and part of *China*; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*, on the Weſt with the great Mountain *Imaus*, and on the Eaſt with the Nations or Countries of the Eaſtern Tartars: So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty mountain, which the Tartars in their Language call by the name of *Altay*.

The Country utterly unknown to the Antient Writers, and not much canvaſſed or travelled by our Modern pens. In which reſpect I ſhall now trouble my ſelf no further, than by giving a brief touch on the ſeverall parts of it. Of which the moſt that can be ſaid, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not ſomething in them of further uſe. Now for theſe Provinces, the principal of them are, 1. *Caſcar*, 2. *Cheſmur*, 3. *Lop*, 4. *Camul*, 5. *Tainfu*, 6. *Caindu*, 7. *Carazan*, 8. *Cardandan*, 9. *Erginul*, 10. *Taguth*.

1. *CASCAR*, bordering on the North-weſt of *China*, a *Mahometan* Countrey, but admitting of ſome Chriſtians alſo; the largeſt Kingdom in all *Altay*, except *Tanguth* only, and furniſhed with many Towns or Cities both of Trade and Note, the principal whereof are, 1. *Hiachan*, the Royall City of this Countrey, and a Mart famous for concourſe of Merchants, and variety of Merchandiſes. 2. *Cialis*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom ſo named, but ſubject to the King of *Caſcar*, who in the year 1603. was called *Mahomet Chan*, a Prince of ſome credit in thoſe parts, but neither equal in Port or Power to the Kings of *Targuth*. The people generally rude and barbarous, inſomuch that in ſome parts hereof, both ſexes do indulge themſelves this mutual priviledge, that if the husband or the wife be abſent above twenty days, the other party is at liberty to marry again.

2. *CHESMUR*, the inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters*, and *Inchanters*, cauſing the dumb *Idols* to ſpeak, the winds to riſe, and the ſun to be darkned. For ſtudying which *black Arts* (if thy come to them by ſtudy) they have many *Monaſteries*, in which their *Hermits* or *Monaſticks* live a ſtrict kind of life, and are very abſtemious.

3. *LOP*, memorable for a great Deſart of 30 days journey; ſo true a *Deſart*, that whoſoever doth not mean to be ſtarved, muſt carry all his victuals with him. Dangerous to travellers, if not before-hand made acquainted with their danger: the *evill ſpirits* uſing to call men by their names, and make them go aſtray from their company, where they periſh with famine, or are devoured with wild beaſts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. *CAMUL*, an Idolatrous Countrey, the people whereof account it a great honour to them, to have their wives and ſiſters at the pleaſures of ſuch as they entertain. From which brutiſh cuſtome when reſtrained by *Mango Cham*, they petitioned him at three years end to be reſtored again to their former liberty; *proteſting* they could never thrive ſince they left that cuſtome. Which deſire of theirs was at laſt granted, and is ſtill in uſe.

5. *TAINFU*, more civill than the reſt, the people being very induſtrious, and good Artificers: making the moſt part of the Arms which are uſed by the *Cham*; and ſome alſo which they ſell to Merchants.

6. *CAINDU*, with a Town in it of the ſame name, of great reſort by Merchants (ſuch as we commonly call *petit Chapmen*) for the *Womens veils* here made, with very great Art, of the barques of trees. And it is well that they have veils to hide their ſhameleſsneſs, the women of this Tract being proſtituted unto every Traveller.

7. *CARAZAN*, inhabited by a barbarous and ſavage people, who in the day-time live in dens for fear of Serpents, with which (and ſome of them ten paces long, and ten ſpans in thickneſs) they are much infeſted; and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lyons. They have an uſe, that when any ſtranger cometh into their houſes, of an handſome ſhape, to kill him in the night: not out of deſire of ſpoil, or to eat his body; but that the ſoul of ſuch a comely body might remain amongſt them.

8. *CARDANDAN*, neer *Carazan*, and as ſavage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their bodies, which they count for the greateſt Ornament. In caſe of ſickneſs they ſend not to the *Phyſician*, but the next *Inchanters*: who taking Counſell of the Devill, apply ſome remedy; or if they think the man paſt cure, they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help, and ſo put him off.

9. *ERGINUL*, poſſeſſed by an *Idolatrous* people, but mixed with ſome *Mahometans* and *Neſtorian Chriſtians*. In which Countrey they have certain *Bulls* as big as *Elephants*, with mains of fine *white hair* like ſilke, ſome of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine engender a race of ſtrong and laborious Beaſts, not inferiour in that kind to Oxen. Here is alſo found a Beaſt of an exquiſite ſhape, but not bigger than a *Goat*; which at every full Moon hath a ſwelling under the belly; which being cut off by the *Hunters*, and dryed in the Sun, proveth to be the beſt *Muſk* in the World.

10. *TANGUT*, the greateſt and moſt potent of all the reſt, bordering on the North of *Cathay* ſpecially ſo called, and (like to that) inhabited by an induſtrious and laborious people, amongſt whom the Art of Printing is ſaid to have been extant a thouſand years. Bleſſed heretofore with a great increaſe of *Chriſtians*; but now the *Gentiles* or *Idolaters* make the greateſt part, with ſome *Mahometans* amongſt them. And for the ſerving of thoſe Idols, they have not onely many large and beautiful Temples, built in the manner of *Chriſtian* Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 perſons; but alſo many fair *Monaſteries* for the uſe of their *Votaries*, and *Recluſes*. They are poſſeſſed of many Towns, moſt of them well fortified, and planted with great ſtore of Artillery. The chief of which, 1. *Sachian*, bordering on the *Deſart* of *Lop*, inhabited by ſome of all the three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they firſt uſed the *Art of printing*. 2. *Campion*, the *Metropolis*, or Mother City of this Countrey, where the *Chriſtians* in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair *Churches*: now over-numbred by the *Gentiles*, who have here many *Monaſteries* for the uſe of their *Idols*, and many Religious perſons dedicated to their ſervice only. Who though they live more honeſtly than the reſt of their *Order*, and hold it an impiety to tempt a Woman to the act of Luſt; yet if the woman make the offer, they hold it no ſmall ſin to refuſe her courteſie. 3. *Sauta*, a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Succuir*, as beng 5 daies journey from the one, and 6 daies journy from the other; by which we may conjecture at the long extent of this Kings Dominions. 4. *Succuir*, ſcituate amongſt Mountains clothed with *Rhubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the World; but ſo neglected by the Natives, that did not the forrein Merchant bring it into requeſt, they would ſcorn to gather it. This once a Kingdome of it ſelf, made ſubject afterwards, with *Tanguth*, to the *Cham* of *Cathay*, or the *Great Cham* of *Tartary*: But the fury of this *Tartarian* being over-blown, the Kings of *Tanguth* did not only recover all their antient Royalty; but by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of the moſt part of *Altay*, and perhaps part of *Cathay* alſo, being looked on at the preſent as the greateſt and moſt puiſſant Prince betwixt the Mountains of *Imaus*, and the Eaſtern *Tartars*, to the deſcription of whoſe Countries we do next proceed.

The Countries of the Eaſtern *Tartars* are bounded on the Weſt with *Altay*; on the Eaſt with the *Orientall Ocean*; on the North with *Tartaria Antiqua*, and on the South with *China*; ſo called from their Eaſtern ſcituation, in regard of thoſe of *Cathay* and *Altay*, which by the *Chineſe* are called commonly the Weſtern *Tartars*.

Altay. The Countrey not very fruitfull, becauſe ill cultivated, ſo that the chief Commodities which they ſend abroad, are, the Root called *Ginſem* ſo much eſteemed amongſt the *Chineſes*, and all ſorts of precious skins, as thoſe of *Caſtor*, *Martrois* and *Zibellens*; and alſo Horſe-hair, of which the *Chineſes* make their Nets, and the men (though madly) uſe it in tying up their Hair, as the handſomeſt dreſs they can appear in. With theſe Commodities they Traffique into *Leaotong*, a Province of the North-Eaſt of *China* (from which they are parted only by an Arm of the Sea) where commonly they make good Markets, their Merchandize being thence diſperſed into all parts of that Kingdome. The people are generally of broad Faces, their colour white, but their Noſe is not ſo flat, nor their eyes ſo little as the *Chineſes* are, ſparing of ſpeech, and ſomewhat penſive, but neither ſo unſociable as their Neighbours of *China*, or ſo barbarous and rude as the *Tartars* of *Europe*. They ſhave both the Head and Beard, reſerving only the *Muſtachoes*, which they extend to a great length, and in the hinder part of their head they leave a Tuffe, which being curiouſly woven and plaited, they let hang down careleſly below their ſhoulders; they have a round and low Cap, which is always garniſhed round with ſome precious skin three fingers broad, of *Caſtor* or *Zebellin*, and ſerveth to defend their Temples, Eares, and Fore-heads from Colds and other Tempeſts. That which appears above the skin being covered over either with curious Red Silk, or elſe with Black and Purple Horſe-hair, which they dye and dreſs moſt curiouſly; ſo as their Appurtenances being handſomely joyned together, makes the Cap commodious and handſome. Their Garments are long Robes falling down to the very Foot, but their Sleeves are not ſo long and large as the *Chineſes* uſe, but rather ſuch as are uſed in *Poland* and *Hungarie*, onely with this difference, that they faſhion the extremity of the ſleeve ever like a Horſes hoof. At their Girdle there hangs on either ſide two Handkerchiefs to wipe their Face and Hands; beſides there hangs a knife for all neceſſary uſes, with two purſes, in which they carry *Tobacco*, or ſuch like Commodities. On their left hand they hang their *Scymitars*, but ſo as the point goeth before, and the handle behind, and therefore when they fight they draw it out with the right hand behind them, without holding the Scabbard with the other. They ſeldome wear Shooes, and uſe no Spurs to their Boots, which they make either of Silk or of Horſe-skin very neatly dreſſed; but they often uſe fair Pattens, which they make three fingers high. In riding they uſe Stirrups, but their Saddles are both lower and broader than ours. In matters of Warre they are very nimble, never carrying any baggage with them, nor taking care for proviſion, but filling themſelves with what they finde; yet commonly they eat fleſh, though half waſhed or half boyled, and if they finde none, they fall upon their Horſes and Camels. The Earth covered with their Horſe-Cloth is their Bed, for they care not for Houſes, and Chambers; but if they be forced to dwell in houſes, their Horſes muſt lodge with them, and they muſt have many holes beaten in the Walls to let in the Air; but their Tents are moſt beautifull, which they fixe and remove with ſuch Art and dexterity, as they never retard the ſpeedy march of an Army.

They inhabit, amongſt many other Provinces, thoſe of *Sumahania*, *Tanius gupi Niulham*, and *Niuche*; of which I am able to ſay nothing in the way of *Corographie*, or of the four firſt in way of Hiſtory, onely I finde that thoſe of *Niulham* were aiding to the King of *Niuche*, in the Conqueſt of *China*; and of the *Gupy* it is written, that they are ſo called, by reaſon they make their Coats of defence or Breaſt-plates of Fiſh-skin which grow (as is affirmed) in a manner impregnable.

Yet either terrified by the noyſe of their great ſucceſs, or willing to partake of ſome part of their fortunes, they not onely aided them in their Warres on that ſide of *Imaus*, but were content to take their very name upon them, never invaded nor ſubdued till the time of *Hembu* King of *China*, who having driven the Weſtern *Tartars*, then lording it over that Kingdome from one Port of it to another, compelled them finally to betake themſelves unto thoſe Ports and Provinces of the Eaſtern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdome or Province of *Niuche*, where the War followed after them alſo, till by little and little they became more quiet; compelled to beg their peace of the Conquering Enemy; divided into ſeven *Hordes* or Tribes, aud Governed for a long time by their ſeverall *Chiefs*, they became at laſt united into one Kingdome called the Kingdome of *Niuche*, *Anno* 1550. or thereabouts. Oppreſſed by the *Prefects* of *Leaolong* in the way of their Trade, and ſuffering amongſt many other indignities the death of their King, whom thoſe *Prefects* had entrapped and murthered, they make complaint of thoſe outrages to the King of *China*; and finding no remedy at his hand, put themſelves into Arms, invade the Province of *Leaolong* take the City *LEAOTUNG*, and having beſieged the King himſelf in the Royall or Imperiall City of *Peking*, they returned home (finding no hope of taking it at that time) with the ſpoil and plunder of all thoſe parts through which they marched. The War thus firſt begun was managed for many years with great loſſe on both ſides, the *Tartars* having got nothing by it, but the Eaſtern parts of the Province of *Leaolong*, and the honour of having ſhewed themſelves twice more at the Walls of *Peking*, till in the year 1544. Being invited into *CHINA* by *Uſangurins* to ſupport the then falling fortune of the Royall Family, they husbanded the opportunity ſo well, as to make themſelves the abſolute Maſters of that mighty Kingdome. The whole ſtory and ſucceſſes of that notable action, we ſhall ſum up in brief when we come to *China*. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of,

The Kings of *Niuche*

1550. 1, 2. N.N. advanced into this Kingdome after the reducing of the ſeveral *Hordes* into one main body, and Father of the King ſuccedning, who was ſlain at laſt by the treachery of the Prefects of *Leolong*, as before was ſaid.

1616. 3. *Thienmingus*, who to revenge his Fathers death, invaded *China*, took the City of *Leogang*, braved the great Emperour at the walls of the Regall City, and having enrichd himſelf with the ſpoils of the Country, returned home again.

1637. 4. *Thienzungus*, the ſon of *Thienmingus*, followed the War with the ſame fortune as his Father did, both of them growing greater in Renown and Riches then in Power and Patrimony.

1636. 5. *Zungteus*, the Son of *Theinzungas* ſecretly brought up among the *Chineſe*, by means whereof he grew not only acquainted with the conditions of that people, but their weakneſs alſo, and conſequently was the better prepared to lay the foundation of that greatneſs to which the *Tartars* have attained by the conqueſt of it. Called into *China* by *Uſangueirs*, as before is ſaid, he poſſeſſed himſelf of the City of *Pequin*: and though he died aſſoon as he was Maſter of that City onely, yet left he ſuch inſtructions to his Brothers, and the reſt of his Council, that very eaſily and ſpeedily they poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Kingdom.

1644. 6. *Xunchius* the ſon of the former, of the age of nine years only at the death of his Father, the management of his affairs both for war and peace being committed to his Unkle, but chiefly unto *Amavangus* the eldeſt of them, by whom ſo prudently conducted, that within the ſpace of four years he was quietly ſetled in that throne, all oppoſition and pretenders to the Royal Succeſſion being beaten down, of which more hereafter.

5. TARTARIA ANTIQUA.

TARTARIA ANTIQUA hath on the South *Altay*, and the Countreys of the Eaſtern *Tartars* on the Weſt, and North, the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the Eaſt the Streights of *Anian*, (if ſuch Streights there be) by which parted from *America*. So called, becauſe the firſt habitation of the *Tartars*; who from this Den or Jail, made their firſt eruptions, and have ſince over-grown ſo much of *Aſia*.

The Countrey cold, and comfortleſs, as lying under the *Polar Circle*, and in part beyond it; not fit for any but ſuch as can live no where elſe: yet heretofore a receptacle of many *Chriſtians* (though thoſe of the *Neſtorian* Sect) who here enjoyed that liberty of their Religion, which the *Perſians* and *Saracens* denyed them in more pleaſing Countries. It containeth many Regions, ſome not conſiderable. Thoſe of moſt note, are 1. *Thebet*, 2. *Tabor*, 3. *Tenduc*, 4. *Bargu*, 5. *Anian*, and 6. *Tartar*.

1. THEBET, a fenny *Region*, and full of woods; rich in *Coral* which they finde on the Sea-ſhore, and uſe it inſtead of money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary Seat of the *Abaſſi*, or Pope of this Idolatrous people; much reverenced, and having in his power the diſpoſing of all Offices, which concern the ſervice of their *Idols*; They have alſo ſome good ſtore of *Musk*, and abundance of wild beaſts which are bred in their Forreſts. But no beaſts wilder than the people, who in times paſt (if not at the preſent alſo) uſed to bury their Parents in their own bowels, and to make drinking cups of their ſkuls; for fear leſt in the midſt of their jollity they ſhould forget their Progenitors. Yet not more barbarous than immodeſt, it being contrary to their cuſtom to take a wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the mothers uſe to proſtitute their daughters to the Merchant-Strangers, who having had their pleaſure of them, gratifie them with a Jewel or ſome other preſent, which they wear on their wedding-day: ſhe being the moſt acceptable Bride to her husband, who bringeth the greateſt *Dowry* with her of thoſe baſe rewards. It contained once petit Kingdoms, (*Homagers* to the Kings of *Tenduc*) with many Cities; but now laid deſolate by the *Tartar*.

2. TABOR, once a diſtinct Kingdome alſo. One of the Kings whereof in the year 1540 came to the Courts of *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the firſt, where he found Princely entertainment. But upon proof that he was a *Factor* for the *Jews*, and ſecretly ſolicited many unto that Religion, by the command of *Charles*, he was burnt at *Mantua*.

3. TENDUC, a populous Kingdom of it ſelf, but greater in name and power; the Kings hereof commanding all theſe North-Eaſt parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. Chriſtian in Religion, till the Conqueſt of it by the *Tartars*, though according to the *Neſtorian* tendries: but now *Mahometan* for the moſt part, with ſome remainders, and but few, of *Chriſtianity*. Divided into many large and ſpacious Provinces, as *Chinchintales*, *Cerguth*, *Egregaiah*, *Carcham*, others of leſſe note: ſo called according to the names of their principall Towns, or having ſome Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Antiqua. Thoſe of moſt note in *Tenauc* it ſelf, 1. *Coras*, the ordinary ſepulture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was ſubdued by the *Tartars*, and ſince that alſo. 2. *Caracoras*, where *Cingis* was firſt honoured with the title of King. The Kings hereof bearing the port of Kings, and the office of Prieſts, were antiently called by the name of *Presbyter Johannes*, or *Preſter John*: a title now erroneouſly conferred by ſome on the Emperour of the *Abaſſines*, or *Æthiopians* in *Africk*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joſeph Scaliger*, a man of ſuch infinite reading, ſhould be ſo deceived: and by the authority of his judgement deceive ſo many. For finding that there was a *Presbyter Johannes* in the North of *Aſia*: and hearing vulgarly that title given unto him in *Africk*, he fell upon a fancy that this *Abaſſine* Emperour was formerly of ſo great power, as to extend his power over *India*, and the North of *Aſia*; and in this laſt, for the aſſurance of his conqueſts, to hold his reſidence. A monſtrous and undefenſible fancy. For beſides that all Hiſtories, even thoſe of the *Abaſſines* themſelves, are ſilent in it: how improbable is it, that a King reigning in the heart of *Africk* ſhould reduce the moſt remote parts of *Aſia*, and there keep his Court: ſo many great States and moſt puiſſant Nations being interpoſed, or that ſo memorable an exploit ſhould be buried in ſilence, and found in no record but in *Scaligers* head. Beſides, it well known, and generally granted, that the *Presbyter John* of *Aſia* was by Sect a *Neſtorian*; but he that is ſo called in *Africk*, of the Sect of the *Jacobites*: and further, that the Chriſtians of *Æthiopia* are circumciſed, which never was reported of thoſe of *Aſia*.

Letting this paſs therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill-grounded fancy, we are to know, that formerly this province of *Tenduc* was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin-Cham*, the King thereof. After whoſe death a certain *Neſtorian* ſhepherd (that is to ſay, the maſter of great flocks of ſheep) being Governour of the *Taymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himſelf the title of King of *Tenduc*, whom they called by the name of *Praſt John*, or Prince *John* (the ſame word in their language, as in the *Hebrew*, ſignifieth both *Prieſt* and *Prince.*) Dying he bequeathed his eſtate and flocks to his brother *Unt-Cham*, (commonly called in one word *Uncham*) a greater ſheep-maſter than he; whoſe flocks ranged over all the paſtures of the *Moles*, or *Moguls* and *Tartars*, though dwelling 14 days journey off, whom he had in ſubjection: the title of *Prieſt John*, or *Presbyter Johannes*, going along with the dignity and Royal eſtate. And though afterwards this *Uncham* was ſubdued by the *Tartars*, yet his poſterity for long time were ſuffered to enjoy the title of Kings, and Presbyters; (but Vaſſals, and *Homagers* to the Great *Cham*): the *Great Chams*, in regard of their nobility, and royall parentage, beſtowing their daughters on them in marriage, as is ſaid by *William de Rubraquis*, who travelled in thoſe Countries, *Anno* 1253. the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Uncham*) but commonly called *Presbyter Johannes*, as his Fathers were.

4. *BARGU*, on the extream North-weſt, bordering on both thoſe ſides the cold *Scythick* Ocean, ſcituate under the *North-Star*, of the ſame nature, both for the ſoyl and people, as that of the *Tartars.* And

5. *ANIAN*, on the North-eaſt, oppoſite unto it, giving name unto the *Streights* of *Anian*, lying betwixt *Tartary* and *America*; which Streights (if any ſuch ſtreights there be) the *Tartars*, and ſome other of theſe Northern nations, are thought to have paſſed over, and to plant that Countrey.

6. *TARTAR*, ſo called of the great River *Tartar*, the principall of this Northern Tract, and giving name unto the *Tartars*: this being their Original Countrey, where they lived like beaſts, having neither faith, nor letters, nor habitation, nor the uſe of Arms, nor any reputation amongſt their neighbours. In matter of *Religion*, the worſt ſort of *Gentiles*, worſhipping the Sun, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth; to which they offered in the morning faſting, the firſt of their meats and drinks.

Their *Idols* made of *Felt*, and placed on both ſides of the doors of their tents or booths, as the preſervers of their Cattel, and the Authors of milk. Divided into five *Clans*, or *Tribts*, denominating ſo many Towns and Territories in which they dwelt, that is to ſay, 1. *Mongul.* 2. *Teka-Mongul*, or the *Great Mongul.* 3. *Sommongul*, or the *water-Mongul*, 4. *Mercat*, 5. *Metrit*: each of them governed by its *Chief*, as commonly it is amongſt barbarous Nations, though all thoſe *Chiefs* ſubordinate to ſome higher power. Oppreſſed by *Uncham*, or *Unt-cham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their Paſtures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattel; with joint conſent they removed ſomewhat further off, and denied their *Tribute*. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Teka-Monguls*, and ſo well husbanded, that they admitted him for their King. For publiſhing abroad amongſt the credulous people, that an armed man appeared to him in his ſleep, with a white horſe, and ſaid, O *Cingius*, or *Cingis*, *it is the will of the immortal God, that thou be Governour of the* Tartars, *and free them from bondage, and paying tribute*; he found a generall belief, eſpecially amongſt thoſe of his own *Clan*, who joyning themſelves to him, followed him as their *Ring-leader*, in all his actions. Thus backed and ſtrengthned, he made war againſt the *Sommonguls*, ſlew their Commander, and ſubdued them: and by their help, ſucceſſively aſſaulted the *Mercats*, and *Metrits*, whom he alſo vanquiſhed. And having thus ſubdued all the *Clans* of the *Tartars*, and added the eſtates of *Thebet*, and *Tanguth*, unto his Dominions, he was by the conſent of the *ſeven Princes*, or *Chiefs* of their *Clans*, (*Thebet*, and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a ſeat on a piece of *Felt*, (the beſt throne they had or could afford) and ſaluted King, with as great reverence and ſolemnity as their ſtate could yield. And firſt to make triall of his power, and their obedience, he commanded the *ſeven Chiefs* or Princes to ſurrender their places, and each of them to cut off the head of his eldeſt Son, which was done accordingly. Had *John* of *Leiden* been a *Scholar*, as he was but a *Botcher*, I ſhould think he had ſtudied the Acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Aſſured by this of their fidelity and obedience, he ſet upon the *Naymans*, a people of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himſelf fit for ſome great alliance, he ſent to *Uncham*, & demanded one of his daughters for his wife, which *Uncham* with ſome threats, but more ſcorn, denying; he marched againſt him, ſlew him in the field, and poſſeſſed his daughter, and with her alſo his eſtate. Proud with this good ſucceſs, and encouraged by ſo great an increaſe of power, he invaded the Kingdom of *Cathay*; pretending for that alſo the authority of an *heavenly viſion*, in the name of the *immortall God*: in which attempt, diſcomfited at firſt with a very great overthrow, but at laſt victorious; conquering the ſeverall Nations of it by one and one, till in the end he brought the war to the chief City of that Kingdom, which at laſt he took, and therewithall the title of *Cham* or Emperour. Continuing in this dignity for the ſpace of ſix years, and every year adding ſomewhat to his dominions, he was at laſt wounded in the knee at the Caſtle of *Thaygin*, of which wound he died, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*.

This is the beſt accompt I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the originall of this ſpreading Nation, and the deſcription of the Countrey of their firſt habitation. They that have *chriſtned* ſome of the moſt Northern parts of it by the names of the *Tribes* of *Dan*, and *Nepthalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more credit have ſupplied thoſe vacant places, which they knew not otherwiſe how to fill, with the pictures of wilde beaſts, or monſtruous fiſhes; which might well enough have pleaſed the eye, without betraying the judgement of the looker on. Of his Succeſſors I am able to make no certain Catalogue; their names being doubtfully delivered, and the ſucceſſion much confounded amongſt our Writers: the names of the *Provincial* Sultans being many times impoſed upon us, inſtead of thoſe of the *Chams* themſelves. But we will wade through thoſe difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them, as the light of ſtory will direct me: firſt adding (what ſhould have been before remembred) that it is recorded, that *Cingis* before he joyned battell with *Uncham*, conſulted with his *Diviners* and *Aſtrologers*, of the ſucceſs. They taking a green reed, cleft it aſunder; writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Uncham* on the other: and placed them not far aſunder. Then fell they to reading their *Charms*, and conjurations; and the reeds fell a fighting in ſight of the whole Army, *Cingis* Reed overcoming the other: whereby they foretold the joyfull news of victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly hapned. And this was the firſt ſtep, by which this baſe and beggarly Nation began to mount into the chair of Empire and Soveraignty; whereas before they lived like beaſts, having neither Letters, nor faith, nor dwelling, nor reputation, nor valour, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was ſaid.

The great *Chams* of *Tartars*.

A.C.

1162. 2. *Cingis, Cinchius, Zingis*, or *Changius*, was made King or *Cham* of the *Tartars*; he ſubdued *Tenduch*, and *Cathaia*, changing the name of *Scythians* and *Scythia*, to *Tartarians*; and *Tartaria*. 6.

1168. 2. *Jocuthan Cham*, or **Hoccata**, ſucceeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was firſt known in *Europe*, Anno 1212. in which year they drove the *Poleſockie* from the banks of the *Euxine* Sea. By his Captain *Bathu*, or *Roido*, he ſubdued *Moſcovia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Cherſoneſus*; waſted *Hungary*, *Boſnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*; and by his other Captains took *Perſia* from the *Turks*.

3. *Zaincham*, *Bathu*, or *Barcham*, ruined the *Turks* Kingdome of *Damaſcus*, and *Aſia* the leſs.

4. *Gino Cham*, whoſe daughter conveyed the Empire unto her husband *Tamerlane*, or *Tamberlane*.

1370. 5. *Tamir-Cutlu*, *Tamir-Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great tyrant, but withall an excellent Souldier. It is thought that he ſubdued more Provinces in his life-time, than the *Romans* had done in 800 years. Of whoſe acts we have ſpoken at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongſt his Children; as *Perſia* to *Miza-Charok* his fourth ſon, *Zagathay* to another (perhaps unto *Sautochus* his eldeſt ſon) and ſo to others.

1405. 6. *Lutrochin*, the ſecond ſon of *Tamerlain*, ſucceeded in *Cathay*, though the eldeſt was at firſt proclaimed, which his Father had before prognoſticated: who when his ſons came to him before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Sautochus* who was the eldeſt, but lifting up the chin of *Lutrochin*, who was the ſecond. He lived not long, ſucceeded to by

7. *Allan*, who added little to his eſtate.

8. *Mango Cham*, to whom *Haiton* an *Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian* Hiſtory) went for ayd againſt the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. By whoſe perſwaſion the ſaid *Mango Cham* is ſaid to have been *chriſtned*, with all his houſhold, and many Nobles of both Sexes.

9. *Cublay Cham*, the ſon of *Mango*.

10. *Tamer Cham*, the Nephew of *Cablay* by his ſon *Cingis*.

11. *Demyr Cham*, the great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1540. or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are, who have ſince reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable acts have been done among them. The great diſtance of Countries, and difficulty of the journey, have hindred further diſcoveries. For the great *Cham*, and his next neighbour the King of *China*, will neither ſuffer any of their ſubjects to travell abroad, nor permit any forreiners to view their dominions, or enter into them: unleſs either Embaſſadors or Merchants, and thoſe but ſparingly, and under very great reſtraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their affairs; ſaving that in theſe latter times the Jeſuits have found ſome footing in *China*, by whom notwithſtanding we have received little or no intelligence in matters which concern this Country.

The Government is tyrannicall, the great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his *tongue* (beſides which they have almoſt no Laws) conſiſteth the power of life or death. He is called by the ſimple vulgar, *The ſhadow of ſpirits, and ſon of the immortall God*: and by himſelf is reputed to be the *Monarch* of the whole world. For this cauſe every day aſſoon as he hath dined, he cauſeth his Trumpets to be ſounded; by that ſigne giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the earth to go to dinner. A fine dream of univerſall Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the ſeven chief Princes aſſemble to crown his ſon; whom they place on a black coarſe cloth: telling him, if he reign well, heaven ſhall be his reward; if ill, he ſhall not have ſo much as a corner of that black cloth to reſt his body on: then they put the crown on his head, and kiſſing his feet, ſwear unto him fealty and homage. And at the Funeral of theſe great Monarchs, they uſe to kill ſome of his *guard Souldiers*, whereof he hath 12000 in continuall pay; ſaying unto them, *Ite & domino noſtro ſervite in alia vita.* *Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obſequies of *Mango Cham*, no fewer than 10000 were ſlain upon this occaſion.

Theſe *Chams* are for the moſt part ſevere juſticers, and puniſh almoſt every ſmall fact with ſudden death; but theft eſpecially: Inſomuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a pail of milk from a womans head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the womans out-cry was apprehended, and cut aſunder with a ſword, ſo that the blood and the milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* puniſhed with leſs than death, and ſo ordained to be by the Laws of *Cingis*, their firſt Emperor: a wiſer man than poſſibly could be expected from ſo rude a Country, and of ſo little breeding in the knowledge of Books or Buſineſs; the *Tartars* being utterly without the uſe of Letters, till the conqueſt of the *Huyri*, a *Cathaian* nation, but of Chriſtian faith.

What forces the *Great Chams*, in the height of their power, were able to draw into the Field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, conſiſting of 1200000 horſe and foot, as was ſaid before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we ſhall finde them not inferiour to the greateſt Princes. For *Cublay Cham*, long after the diviſion of this great eſtate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the field againſt *Naian* his Unkle, and one *Caidu*, who had then rebelled, an Army of 100000 foot; and 360000 horſe: there being 500000 horſe on the other ſide, which made almoſt a million of men in both Armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay* and thoſe of *Turcheſtan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the firſt is ſaid to have been able to raiſe 300000 horſe, and the laſt an hundred thouſand more. For ſtanding forces, he maintains 12000 horſe, diſtributed amongſt four Captains, for the guard of his perſon; beſides which he hath great forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call if occaſion be: ſo that he need not fear any outward invaſion, and much leſs any homebred Rebellions. But on the other ſide, admitting this for truth which before is ſaid, we finde him of no power at Sea, without which great Princes are expoſed moſt commonly to the invaſions and affronts of ſuch as are ſtrong in ſhipping: For either the Eaſtern Tartars interpoſed betwixt him and the main Ocean, whereby he is landlocked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he hath any Port in the North-eaſt parts of this long Country, where it joyneth on *Tartaria Antiqua*, and ſo far off, and ſo much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his power, and not much to his purſe.

Of the *Revenues* of the *Cham*, I can make no eſtimate, but may conclude them to be what he liſt himſelf: he being the abſolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of wool, ſilk, hemp, corn, and Cattell. Then doth he draw into his own hands all the gold and ſilver which is brought into the Countrey, which he cauſeth to be melted, and preſerved in his treaſury: impoſing on his people inſtead of money, in ſome places *Cockleſhels*, in others, a black coyn made of the bark of trees, with his ſtamp upon it. And beſides this he hath to himſelf the whole trade of *Pearl-fiſhing*, which no body upon pain of death dare fiſh for, but by leave from him. So that his Treaſury is conceived to be very rich, though his Annual in-come be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have proſecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors; yet muſt confeſs I am not very well ſatisfied in the truth and reality of the thing it ſelf: it being rather my opinion, that there is no ſuch man at this preſent time as a great *Cham* of *Tartary*, with Soveraign Power and Juriſdiction over all the other Members of that vaſt body; but that this Empire being ing broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the conquered Countries did a little and little return again to their former Governments, or elſe were ſeized on by the *Viſi-Chams* of Governors or the ſeveral Provinces. For firſt I conſider, it is impoſſible, that there ſhould be ſuch a mighty Monarch, of ſuch abſolute authority, ſuch an infinite power, and ſuch unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the ſpace of an hundred years and more we ſhould hear neither tale nor tidings of them, no not ſo much as of their names, eſpecially in an active age, and when this great building of the world hath ſuch Caſements in it. For it muſt needs ſeem ſtrange to a rational man, that neither *Jenkinſon* who paſſed into *Perſia* by the *Caſpian* Sea, nor Sir *Robert Sherley* who ſpent much time in the *Perſian* Court, nor Sir *Thomas Roe*, or Sir *Dodmore Cotton* (the firſt Embaſſador to the great *Mogul*, the other to the *Perſian Sophie*) ſhould tell us any thing of this Prince, if ſuch Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India* the next neighbouring Country, ſhould bring us home no tidings of him, or the *Jeſuits* with all their diligence ſhould not finde him out. Secondly, I conſider it is a thing improbable, that if there were any ſuch mighty Prince, keeping his Royall Court in the City of *Cambalu*, ſo near unto the Kingdome of *China*, he ſhould permit the beggarly Nation of the Eaſtern *Tartars* to conquer that rich and mighty Empire in ſo ſhort a time, he in the mean ſeaſon ſitting ſtill as a dull ſpectator, neither conſidering his own danger, nor putting in for a ſhare of ſo great a booty. Thirdly, I obſerve, that in the treating of a Marriage between *Xunchius* the great King of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, now reigning in *China*, with a daughter of the King of *Tanguth*; the King of *Tanguth* is called Prince of the *Occidental* or *Weſtern Tartars*, by which name the *Chineſes* call all the *Tartars* inhabiting the vaſt Countries of *Altay* and *Cathay*, ſpecially ſo called, as being Weſtward of themſelves, and the *Eaſtern Tartars*, which

title

Antiqua

title the King of *Tanguth* had not merited or durſt have aſſumed to himſelf, if there had been any ſuch great *Cham* then reigning in *Cathay*, and reſiding in *Cambalu* as our Author ſpeaks of. And 4ly, I obſerve it as a matter probable, that as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces at the death of *Tamerlane*; the *Precopenſes*, or *Europæan* Tartars ſubmitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the power and Government of whoſe Succeſſors they do ſtill continue; and much of the *Aſiatick Tartary* being ſubdued by the *Moſcovites*, the neighbouring Tartars did return to their ancient Government by *Hordes* or Tribes; that ſo the Kings of *Tanguth* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees poſſeſs themſelves of the greateſt part of all *Altay*, if not of ſome part of the *Proper Cathay* alſo. And therefore that ſome of the laſt great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other then the Kings of *Tanguth* or the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, in whom (if any where) remaineth the ſucceſſion of the houſe of *Cingis*.

From theſe Premiſes I conclude, that all which hath before been ſpoken touching the great power, authority, and revenue of the great *Chams* of *Tartary*, muſt either be referred unto the times of their greateſt glory, when their Empire was entire, or not much diſmembred; or elſe relate, with ſome qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tanguth*. But theſe my *obſervations* and *conſiderations*, with the concluſion iſſuing from them, I willingly ſubmit unto better Judgements.

And thus much for *TARTARY*.

* * *

OF

OF CHINA.

CHINA is bounded on the North with *Altay*, and the Eaſtern *Tartars*, from which ſeparated by a continuall chain of hills, part of thoſe of *Ararat*; and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great wall extended 400 Leagues in Length; built as they ſay, by *Tzaintzon*, the 117th King hereof: on the South, partly with *Cauchin-China*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean; on the Eaſt with the Orientall Ocean, and on the Weſt with part of *India*, and *Cathay*; from which no otherwiſe ſeparated then by ſuch naturall bounds and Ramparts as commonly divide great Countries from one another.

The Northern parts hereof were utterly unknown unto the Antients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; But for the Southern parts hereof, they make up that Countrey which *Ptolomy* called *Sina*, or *Sinarem Regio*, by which name the whole Countrey is called at the preſent by our modern *Latiniſts*, and from whence that of *China* ſeems to be derived. By *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countries *Sanglai*, by the natives *Taine*, and *Taybinco*: which laſt ſignifies no other then a Realm; or by way of excellence, *the Realm*. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzinin*; and the inhabitants call themſelves by the name of *Tangis*.

It is ſaid to contain in circuit 69516 *Diez* of *China* meaſure, which reduced to our *Europaan* meaſure will make a compaſs in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the borders of *India*, to the moſt *Northern* Provinces of this Continent, 1800 Leagues. But they that ſay ſo, ſpeak at random. For beſides that 1800 Leagues in length muſt needs carry a greater compaſs than 3000 leagues; they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no ſober man will grant. And anſwerable to this vaſt compaſs, it is ſaid alſo to contain no fewer than 15 Provinces, every of which is made to be of a greater Continent than the greateſt Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of waſte ground, or full of unhabitable Deſarts, as in other places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit, once for all, to lay down in this *Diagramme* following.

The Provinces, Cities, and Towns
in *China*.

Pro.	Cit.	To.	Pro.	Cit.	To.
1 *Canton*	37	190	9 *Honan*	20	102
2 *Foquien*	33	99	10 *Pagnia*	47	150
3 *Olam*	90	130	11 *Taitan*	37	78
4 *Siſnam*	44	150	12 *Quinchen*	45	113
5 *Tolenchia*	51	155	13 *Chaguian*	43	95
6 *Canſay*	24	122	14 *Suſnam*	41	105
7 *Minchian*	25	29	15 *Quinſay*	31	114
8 *Ochian*	19	74			

By which it doth appear, that in theſe fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities, 1593 walled Towns; and beſides them 1154 Caſtles, 4200 Towns unwalled; and ſuch an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Country ſeems to be but one City onely. But here we are to underſtand that theſe great Provinces are divided into many leſſer, and ſome of them preſented to us (in late ſtories) under other names, according to the Languages and appellations of theſe ſeverall Nations, which either have recourſe unto them, or do traffique with them; which the Reader may take notice of with leſs doubt or wonder, in regard that the main Country of *China* it ſelf is called by ſo many ſeverall names, as before was ſhewn.

It reacheth from the 130th, to the 160th Degree of *Longitude*: and from the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, to the 53d degree of *Latitude*. So that it lyeth under all the *Climes* from the third to the ninth, incluſively: the longeſt Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours and fourty minutes; increaſed in the moſt Northern parts to 16 hours, and 3 quarters. Enjoying by this ſight an air ſomewhat of the hotteſt, eſpecially in thoſe parts which lye neer the *Tropicks*, but withall very ſound and healthy, and fit for the production of the choiceſt fruits.

The Countrey very rich and fertile, inſomuch that in many places they have two, and in ſome three harveſts in a year, well cultivated, and ſowed with all manner of grain, and planted with the beſt kind of fruits; which do not onely come to a ſpeedy maturity, but to more excellency and perfection than any of theſe Weſtern parts. The like is alſo ſaid of their *Pearls*, and *Bezoar*, fairer and of greater vertue than thoſe of *America*, or any other part of the world beſides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley,

ley, Rice, Wool, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of metals, Fruits, Cattel, Sugar, Honey, *Rhubarb*, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, *medicinall woods* called *China-wood*, by the name of the countrey, Musk and Salt: the cuſtome for which laſt, in one City onely, which is that of *Canton*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crowns. It yieldeth alſo an *Herb*, out of which they preſs a delicate juice, which doth not onely ſerve them inſtead of Wine, but preſerveth their health, and freeth them from many of thoſe inconveniences, which the immoderate uſe of wine doth breed to others. Such ſtore of *Poultry* of all ſorts, but of Ducks eſpecially, that in the Town of *Canton* onely before mentioned, it is thought there are 12000 eaten every day, one day with another.

The people are for the moſt part of ſwart complexion, but more, or leſs, according to their neerneſs to the heats of the Sun; ſhort-noſed, black-eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their garments very long, with long looſe ſleeves, and their hair much longer then the neighbouring *Tartars*; who wear their hair exceeding ſhort, and their cloaths much cloſer; to which two faſhions ſo addicted, that more of them took up Arms for their hair and habit, (when required to conform in thoſe particulars to the will of the Conquerour) then had done either for their King, or their common liberty. So much delighted with their own faſhion and compoſure, that as the *Negroes* uſe to paint the Devil *White*, as a colour contrary to their own: ſo when theſe *Chinois* uſe to draw the picture of a deformed perſon, they ſet him forth in a ſhort coat, broad eyes, long noſe, and a buſhy beard. They are much given unto their bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately: drink their Drink hot, and eat their Meat with two ſticks of *Ivorie*, *Ebonie*, or the like, not touching their meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of Linnen. The uſe of *ſilver forks* with us, by ſome of our ſpruce Gallants taken up of late, came from hence into *Italy*, and from thence to *England*. Their marriages they celebrate moſt commonly in the *New-Moon*, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: in which ſolemnity they ſpare for no coſt or charge, Muſick, and Stage-playes, and good cheer many days together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their naturall induſtry, and their proficiency in *Manufactures* and *Mechanick* Arts. For the Son is bound to follow his Fathers occupation: which law preventing the roaving about of idle penple, and exciting in each breaſt an emulation of every Art, maketh the Inhabitants excellent *Artificers*. In giving Almes they are bountiful to the maimed, and the lame; but reject the blinde, as being ſufficiently able to get ſuſtenance for themſelves by corporall labour, as grinding of Corn, &c. They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing*, before it was known in *Europe*: but print not as we do, from the left hand to the right, nor as the *Jewes*, from the right hand, to the left; but from the top of the leaf, downward to the bottom. *Guns* alſo have been uſed among them time out of minde: whence they are ſo well conceited of themſelves, that they uſe to ſay, They themſelves have two eyes, the *Europaans* one, and the reſt of the people of the world not one. A pretty flouriſh of ſelf-praiſing. Now that *Guns* were in uſe in theſe Eaſtern Countries, and conſequently alſo amongſt them, even when *Bacchus* made his expedition into *India* (which was ſome three or four years before, or after the departure of *Iſrael* out of *Ægypt*) Sir *Walter Rawleigh* ſeemeth to affirm: becauſe *Philoſtratus* in the life of *Apollonius Tyanaus*, telleth us how *Bacchus* was beaten from a City of *Oxydracæ* by thunder and lightning, which he interpreteth to be the *Cannon*. But certainly himſelf in another place of his moſt excellent Book, acknowledgeth this *Philoſtratus* to have written fabulouſly; and therefore no fit foundation for a conceit ſo contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Beſides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of Thunder and Lightning from Heaven, *Severus* diſcomfited *Peſcinius Niger*, and by the ſame means was himſelf repulſed from the wall of *Petra* in *Arabia*: we may (if this interpretation hold good) as eaſily maintain, that *Severus* had great Ordnance in his Camp; and the *Arabians* in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Guttenberg* learned it of the *Chinois*; or whether good inventions, like good wits, do ſometimes jump, I dare not determine: ſure I am that he firſt taught it in *Europe*; and as ſome ſay, in the year 1440. at *Harlem* a Town of *Holland*, it is firſt ſaid to be practiſed, and at *Mentz*, perfected. Now whereas it is by ſome doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not; I muſt not herein be both a Judge, and a party: but muſt leave the deciſion of the point to men unintereſſed. Onely this I dare boldly ſay, that this moſt excellent Invention hath been baſely abuſed, and proſtituted to the luſt of every fooliſh and idle *Paper-blurrer*: the treaſury of Learning being never ſo full, and yet never more empty; over-charged ſo with the froth and ſcum of fooliſh & unneceſſary diſcourſes. In which (though all Nations have their ſhare therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accompted the moſt blame-worthy: who not content to ſcatter their *poor conceptions* amongſt themſelves, and print them in their own Tongue onely (as our *Engliſh Paper-blurrers* do); publiſh them in *Latine* to the eye of others, and ſend them twice a year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Readers eye, nor the Printers hand. *Scriptorum plus eſt hodie quam muſcarum olim cum caletur maxime*; the complaint once of an old *Comedian*, was never truer than at the preſent.

But not to dive too deep into this diſpute, the people, as before was ſaid, are good *Artificers*, ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *porcellan* diſhes, curious carvings, and the fine painted works which we have in Tables, Leathers, Stuffes, being brought from thence. Effeminated with much eaſe and pleaſure, they are not much given unto the Wars, which make them the more eaſy prey to the neighbouring *Tartars*, whoſe very name hath bred more terrours in them, then their Armes, and Conqueſts. Inſomuch that when *Uſangueius* requeſted aid of *Zungters* King of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, againſt *Licungius*, and his rabble of Rogues, which ſacked the City of *Peking*, and placed himſelf in the Throne Imperiall; The *Tartarian* having but few men in readineſs, adviſed him to array a good part of his own Souldiers with the Armes and Colours of the *Tartars*, that on the terror of that ſight he might obtain the cheaper, and more certain victory; which prudent Councell was purſued, and it proved accordingly; but what they want in courage they ſupply with wit, being ſaid to be a politick and judicious people; but withall very jealous of their women, and great tyrants over them, not ſuffering them to go abroad, or ſit down at the Table if any ſtranger be invited, unleſs he be ſome very neer kinſman. A tyranny or reſtraint, which the poor women give no cauſe for, being ſaid to be very honeſt, and much reſerved; not ſo much as ſhewing themſelves at a window for fear of offence: and if they uſe painting, as moſt of them do, it is rather to preſerve themſelves in the good affection of their husbands, than for any other lewd reſpects. For the moſt part of a fair hair, whereof very curious: binding it about their heads with Ribbands of ſilk, garniſhed with pearls and precious ſtones. Neat in their dreſs, and very coſtly in their apparel, with reference to their eſtates, and the degrees of their husbands: the richer ſort wearing Sattin ſtriped with Gold, and interlaced with very rich *Jewels*; the poorer in Serge, and razed velvets. They have moſt of them little feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cauſe bind them up hard from their very infancy: which they endure patiently, though it be very painfull, becauſe a ſmall foot is counted for ſo great a grace. And yet it is conceived that this proceedeth not ſo much from their own curioſity; as from the jealouſie of the men, who have brought it in: to the end that they ſhould not be able to go but with a great deal of pain; and that going with ſo ill a grace, and ſo little eaſe, they ſhould have no deſire to ſtir much abroad. A cuſtome ſo antient and received, that it hath got the force of law; and if any mother ſhould do otherwiſe in breeding their daughters, they would undergo ſome cenſure or mark of infamy. If a deſire to ſee their *Parents* get them the freedom of a viſit, they are carried to them in cloſe chairs, and attended by ſo many waiters, that it is not poſſible for any man either to ſee them, or hold any diſcourſe with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Countrey containeth no fewer than 70 millions. Which though it ſeem to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we conſider the ſpaciouſneſs of the Countrey. 2. The ſecret goodneſs of the ſtars, and temperature of the ayr. 3. The abundance of all things neceſſary to life. 4. That it is not lawfull for the King to make any war, but meerly *defenſive*, and ſo they enjoy perpetual peace. 5. That it is not lawfull for any *Chenois* to go out of the Countrey; and 6. That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elſwhere. For the ſhips do reſemble a City, in which they buy, ſell, are born, and die. And on the River which watereth the walls of *Nanquin*, up to *Paquin*, which are ſaid to be 300 leagues, the ſhips are ſaid to be ſo thick ranked, that it ſeemeth to be a continual ſtreet.

The people hereof, in matters of *Religion*, are generally all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the creation; *viz*. That there was one *Taine*, who created *Panzon*, & *Panzona*, whoſe poſterity remained 90000 years: but they for their wickedneſs being deſtroyed, *Taine* created *Lutitzam*, who had two horns; from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth, they cloth him in his beſt apparell, all perfumed, ſet him in his beſt chair, and there all his neereſt kindred kneeling before him, take their leave with tears. When he is *coffined*, they place him in a room richly furniſhed, and ſet by him a table full of viands and good cheer, with candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which *Ceremonies*, we finde, how whilſt the Funerall was preparing for *Francis* the *French* King, his *Statua* apparelled in royall robes, with the Crown, Scepter, *&c.* was laid on his bed; whither dinner and ſupper was daily ſerved in, with the like ſtate and ſolemnity as when he was living. But to return again to my dead *Chinois*; when he had lain, as is above ſaid, 15 dayes, he is carried forth to his Funerall, the place wherof is in the fields; for to be buried within the walls, were a thing of all others the moſt wretched. Hither, when they are in the manner of a proceſſion come, they burn his body, and with it men, cattell, and other proviſion, for his attendance and ſuſtenance in the other world; as they uſe in the funeralls of *Tartary*. As great *Idolaters* as any, ſacrificing to the very Devil, and that upon the ſame reaſon, as the moſt ignorant ſort of the *Gentiles* do; becauſe forſooth he is a wicked and miſchievous creature, and would otherwiſe hurt them.

Yet in the middle of this darkneſs there appeareth ſome light, whereby we may perceive that *Chriſtianity* had ſome footing here in the times foregoing: For they believe that *God* is an *immortall ſpirit*; that by him the firſt man was made of nothing; that the ſoul dieth not wirh the body, but is capable of reward and puniſhment in another life, according to the works it hath done in this. Which leſt they ſhould be thought to be onely ſome remainders of the light of nature; (the learned men amongſt the antient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having ſo much *divinity* as this without the *Goſpel*): we may here add, that the *Idol* moſt generally worſhipped by them, is painted with three heads looking one on other; ſignifying, as themſelves affirme, that they have all but one *Will*: which makes ſome think they had been antiently inſtructed in the doctrine of the *holy Trinity*. They have alſo the picture of a very *fair woman* holding a *Child* in her Arms, who as they ſay, was daughter of ſome great King; and that ſhe was delivered of that Infant when ſhe was a *Virgin*. And as ſome add, they have portraitures of the faſhion, and with the marks or *Characters* of the twelve *Apoſtles* (as uſually painted in ſome part of the *Chriſtian* Church): of whom they are able to ſay nothing, but that they were great *Philoſophers* who lived vertuouſly here, and were therefore made *Angels* in heaven. And finally they hold that there is a great number of Saints, or men eſtated in an eminent degree of happineſs, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, induſtry, or valour, or lived an auſtere life without wronging any man; or otherwiſe deſerved nobly of the Commonwealth, as the Authors of ſome ſignall benefit unto their Countrey. Theſe I conceive to be ſome evident remainders of *Chriſtianity*, or the Remembrances rather of that *Chriſtianity*, which formerly was known amongſt them: Firſt planted here (as may be probably collected) by Saint *Thomas*, or ſome of his Diſciples; an antient *Breviary* or Liturgy of the *Indian* Churches, giving good hint to it: Where it is ſaid, *Per D.* Thomam *regnum cœlorum volavit & aſcendit ad Sinas*: i. e. that by Saint *Thomas* the Kingdom of Heaven was preached unto thoſe of *China*. Some *Characters* here were alſo of it, in the time of the *Tartars*,

tars, though now obliterated, and not viſible but in theſe defacements. And in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jeſuites* (commendably induſtrious in the propagation of the *Chriſtian* faith) not without great danger to themſelves, have endeavoured, and in part effected, their *converſion*. For though they have gained but few *Proſelytes*, (in regard of thoſe infinite numbers of people which are ſaid to live here) yet ſome *Converts* they have made amongſt them; and thereby ſown thoſe ſeeds of that ſaving truth (though mingled with ſome *Tares* of their own) which may in time increaſe and ſpread over all the Countrey. For at the preſent they have not only got footing in the Ports and Sea Towns, but alſo in many mid-land Cities, and in ſome alſo very far diſtant from the Sea, in all of which they have both Churches for their followers, and Cells or Monaſteries for themſelves; and finally, have gained ſo far upon the Court, as not only to have their doings well approved of by authority Royall; but have alſo gained unto the Faith, the Mother, Wife, and eldeſt Son of *Jungly* the laſt declared Emperour of the *Chineſe*, which eldeſt Son they have baptized (and be it an *happy Omen*, for the good of *Chriſtendome*) by the name of *Conſtantine*.

Hills of great note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolomy*, in his deſcription of the Countrey called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be the Southern part of this *China*: agreeable unto the obſervation of modern Writers, by whom it is affirmed to be ſo plain and levell, and ſo unſwelled with hills at all, that they have *Carts* and *Coaches* driven with *ſayles*, as ordinarily as drawn with horſes, in theſe parts. Not the leſs deſtitute of Rivers for this want of mountains, *Ptolomy* naming in it, 1. *Aſpthara*. 2. *Senus*. 3. *Ambactu*, and 4. *Cotiaris*; all which had here their fount and fall: and yet he knew the out-skirts of the Countrey onely. But becauſe the Countrey of the *Sini* of which *Ptolomy* ſpeaks, makes but a South-part of this great Country, and that the Rivers which before we mentioned in *Serica*, paſſed into it alſo, it's poſſible enough that we may finde them all amongſt the chief Rivers of this Countrey, whenſoever we ſhall come to have a more perfect Corographie hereof then former times have given unto us. In the mean ſeaſon we may know, that the names by which the principall Rivers are now called, are *Yalo*, which riſing in the Northeaſt part of the Countrey, and paſſing by the Southern skirts of *Leaotong*, falleth into the Ocean over againſt the Iſland of *Carea*, making a little Iſlet at the Influx of it fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle called *Xainghai*, to ſecure that entrance. 2. *Croceus*, which ariſing in the Weſt Borders hereof, firſt boundeth its courſe to the Northeaſt, watering the Citie of *Kaianchen*, and after paſſeth directly Eaſtward till it falleth into the *Yalo*. 3. *Palyſangas* which iſſuing out of ſome of the branches of Mount *Imaus*, firſt paſſeth by the great Citie of *Cambalu*, and falls at laſt into the mighty Lake of *Quinſay*, and finally again contracted to its proper chanell, doth either loſe it ſelf in the Eaſtern Ocean, or in the great River of *Kiang*, of which more anon. 4. *Cacamaton*, another of theſe great Rivers, which falleth into the Lake of *Quinſay*, and poſſibly may be the ſame which the *Chatayan Tartars* call by the name of *Caromoram*. 5. *Kiang* (or *Quiam*, as the *Tartars* calls it) which having its originall from Mount *Imaus*, and paſſing thorow the whole breadth of *Cathay*, cutteth thorow the middle of this Countrey which it divideth (like an Equator) into North & South, watering therein the ſtately Cities of *Nanguin*, and *Caſung*, where it is no leſs then 4 miles broad, increaſing more and more in breadth by the falling in of many other principall Rivers till it came at laſt to be ten miles over, and caſting up ſuch mountains of water, that the *Chineſe* call it not undervedly, *The Son of the Sea*. 6. *Cienthany*, the ſame (I think) which the *Tartars* call *Quiantu*; which riſing out of ſome other ſpors or branches of the Mount *Imaus*, falleth at laſt into this Countrey; and paſſing by the goodly City of *Quanychen* on the North, and the fair Town of *Xaoking* on the South, endeth its courſe at laſt in the Eaſtern Ocean. 7. *Quei*, a River of the Southern parts; but not much obſervable. Here are alſo many great Lakes, not inferiour to ſome Seas in bigneſs; ſo plentifull in fiſh, as if they contended with the ſoyl, which ſhould be moſt profitable: and yet ſo little ſwelled with winds, (though the winds many times blow ſtrongly) that both upon theſe *Lakes*, and on the Rivers and Sea-coaſts; they paſs up and down in ſmall Barques, with no other ſail than a bough ſet up an-end in the middeſt of them; by the help whereof they make good ſpeed in their Navigations. Nor do theſe *Lakes* or Rivers uſe to overflow their banks, or endamage the Countrey: but when they do, it brings ſome fatall ruine with it; as in the year 1557. when the *Lake* of *Sancey* breaking out overwhelmed ſeven Cities, many Towns, and Villages, and Countrey people, almoſt infinite numbers.

Towns of moſt note amongſt the *Sinæ*, though nothing but the names be remaining of them, 1. *Bramna*, and 2. *Rhabana*, honoured with the title of *Civitates*. 3. *Aſpithra*. 4. *Achatara*, more within the land, but all four under ſome degree of Northern *Latitude*[illegible]5. *Thine*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, by ſome called *Sinæ*. 6. *Sarata*. 7. *Catonaragara*; theſe on[illegible]e South-ſide of the line. But in this *Ptolomy* was miſtaken, it being found by the more certain obſervations of our later writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees of the *Æquinoctial*, and ſo not capable of having any Towns or Cities of a *Southern* Latitude. Here was alſo a large bay called *Sinarum Sinus*, a Promontory named *Notium*, in the 4th degree of *Northern Latitude*; and another named *Satyrorum*, lying under the *Equinox*. More than this of the Cities of the ancient *Sinæ*, I have nothing to ſay, which I dare offer to the Reader.

But to behold them as they are preſented to our view in the modern *China*, it hath been ſaid, that for number there are no fewer than 591 Cities, and thoſe ſo uniformly built, ſo conformably one to another, that they differ not in form, and faſhion, but in quantity only. Much like the Cities of *Utopia* mention'd by Sir *Tho. Moor*, *Idem ſitus omnibus, eadem, quatenus per locum licet, rerum facies*; ſo neer reſembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Moſt of their Cities have the benefit of ſome navigable River, neer which they ſtand: the waters whereof ſerve them both for navigation, and domeſtick uſes. Two great Streets croſſing one another in the very middeſt, ſo broad, that ten horſemen may ride abreſt in the narroweſt of them; ſo ſtrait, that a man ſtanding in the middle may ſee either end, each end being ſhut up with a Gate of great ſtrength and beauty; and thoſe Gates fortified and ſtrengthned with thick plates of iron. Generally greater and more ſtately than thoſe of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegancy which the *Magnificent* Churches, and more ſumptuous buildings for the diſpatch of publique buſineſſes, in theſe parts abound with. Their private houſes for the moſt part are alſo low, and deſtitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries, the principal ornaments and graces of *Architecture*. Nor are their Cities built onely for reſort, or trade, but for ſtrength and ſafety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the walls of brick or ſtone, ſtrong above belief, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places: and every-night the Gates not only locked but ſealed; not to be opened till unſealed by the principal Magiſtrate. So like they are to one another, that we may ſay with *Ovid* on the like occaſion;

——Facies non omnibus una,
Nec diverſa tamen, qualem decet eſſe ſororum.

Which I finde thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandis.*

Amongſt them all no two appear the ſame,
Nor differed more then Siſters well became.

But not to reſt our ſelves on this generall *Character*, let us take a more particular view of ſome of the principall. And in that liſt we finde, 1. *Quinſay*, called *Suntien* by the Natives, ſcituate ſomewhat towards the South, on the Weſtern borders of this Kingdome, where it confineth on *Cathay*. Of this Town many things are reported beyond all belief, as namely, that it contained once in circuit an hundred miles, and had in the middeſt of it a *Lake* of 30 miles compaſs; in which *Lake* were two goodly Iſlands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all neceſſaries either for majeſty, or convenience; in which are celebrated the publique feaſts, and the marriages of the better ſort; The *Lake* nouriſhed with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polyſango*, and *Cacamacan*; on which Rivers 12000 bridges are ſaid to have lifted up their ſtately heads: and under whoſe immenſe Arches, great ſhips, with ſails ſpread abroad, and *top & top-gallant*, might and did uſually paſs. It is alſo ſaid to have had ten market-places, each of them four miles aſunder, and every one in form *quadrangular*, the ſides thereof half a mile in length. Here were ſaid alſo to be twelve *Companies* of Tradeſmen or Artizans, each company having 12000 ſhops, and in all a million and 600000 Families. But whatſoever it was in the former times, certain it is, that at this time (if it hath at this time any being at all) partly on the removal of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and ſince to *Nanquin* and *Paquin* by the *Princes* of the houſe of *Hombu*, and partly the fury of the Wars, and partly by the violence of Earth-quakes, it hath loſt no ſmall part of her ancient beauty and renown. 2. *Vnguen*, famous for the abundance of *ſugar* there made. 3. *Nanquin*, ſeated 9 leagues from the Sea, on the great River of *Kuny*, whereon ride for the moſt part no fewer than 10000 of the Kings ſhips, beſides ſuch as belong to private men. The Town in compaſs 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and ſtately Gates: The ſtreets in length two leagues, wide, and paved; the number of houſes is about 200000. ſo that it may equal four of the faireſt Cities of *Europe*. 4. *Paquin* or *Pagnia*, in the middle of the Province ſo named (being one of the four Northern Provinces, which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdome) where the King continually reſideth; and that, either becauſe the air hereof is more healthfull and pleaſant than any of the other; or becauſe it lieth neer unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetuall warre: ſo that from hence the dangers which may from their invaſions happen unto the Countrey may with more convenience be either prevented, or remedied. The City ſaid to be inferiour to *Nanquin* for bulk & beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Souldiers, and Magiſtrates, occaſioned by the Kings abode. Environed on the South, with two walls, of ſo great breadth that twelve horſemen may run abreſt upon them; on the North, with one wall onely, but that ſo ſtrong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little annoyance on that ſide, as they do on the other. But the greateſt Ornament hereof is the Royall Palace, compaſſed about with a triple wall, the outwardmoſt of which would well inviron a large City, within which ſpace, beſides the many lodgings for *Eunuchs* and other Courtiers, are Groves, hills, fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleaſure, larger in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royall Palaces of *Europe*: Firſt built by ſome of the *Tartar* Kings of this Countrey in imitation of the Royall Palace of *Xaindu*, mentioned in *Chatay*, honored ſometimes with the reſidence of the *Chams* themſelves, which as it gave unto the Citie the name of *Pequin*, that is to ſay, the Court or *Citie of the King*, in the language of *China*, ſo gave it occaſion unto ſome Writers to make this and *Cambalu* the ſame, both names being of the ſame ſignification, though in divers languages. 5. *Canton*, ſuppoſed to be the *Caltigara* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Chinois* called *Quamch n*, the leaſt of the *Metropolitan* Cities of this Countrey, but beautified with many triumphant Arches, a navigable River, large ſtreets, and many goodly bridges. Fortified with deep trenches, 83 Bulwarks, and ſeated in ſo rich a ſoyl both for Fowl and Cattell, that here are ſaid to be eaten daily 6000 hogs, and 12000 Ducks, beſides proportionable quantity of other victuals. If this be one of the leaſt of their *Metropolitans*, what may we think of the greateſt? A Town wherein the *Portugals* drive a wealthy Trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City it ſelf, but at night excluded, and forced to find lodging in the Suburbs. By reaſon of which reſtraint they have ſetled their Mart at *Macao* the Port Town to this, where they have their Factor and many Families; the Town being almoſt wholy peopled by them. 6 *Leaogang* the chief Citie of *Leaolong* (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the firſt Town taken by the Eaſtern

Tartars in their attempts upon this Kingdome, by this door making themſelves an entrance into all the reſt. 7. ***Ningaiven***, made the Metropolis of *Leaolong* after the taking of *Leaogang* by the Eaſtern *Tartars*. 8. ***Sigan*** or ***Singan***, the chief City of *Xenſi*, another of the four Northern Provinces, and honoured ſometimes with the Kings reſidence. 9. *Xoaking* on the ſouth ſide of the ſaid River, one of the faireſt Cities of *China*, ſo invironed with ſweet Waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty as rounding it in a Boat; conſiſting of large and fair ſtreets paved on both ſides with white ſquare ſtones, and in the middle of them all runs a Navigable Channel whoſe ſides are garniſhed with the like ornament; and of the ſame ſtone there is alſo built many fair Bridges and triumphant Arches; the houſes being all of the ſame ſtone alſo, which render it the neateſt (though not the biggeſt) Citie in this mighty Kingdom. 10. *Suchean* ſeated in Mariſhes like *Venice*, but more commodiouſly, becauſe thoſe Mariſhes are of freſh water; the ſtreets and houſes founded upon Piles of *Pine-tree*, with many bridges, and conveniences for paſſage both by land and water. Well traded, as the fitteſt *Center* for diſperſion of Merchandiſe from all the other Parts of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of ſhips, almoſt denying faith to the eyes, which would think all the ſhips of *China* to be here aſſembled. So infinitely rich, that the ſmall Region whereof it is the head containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the King, of yearly income. 11. ***Hamſeu***, or ***Hangcheu*** on the North ſide of the River *Cinithang*, out of which furniſhed with a Channel of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Chequian*, about two days journey from the Sea (of which diſtance from the Sea is *Suchean* alſo) in compaſs leſs than *Nanquin*, but better builded: no place in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other pleaſures; but all employed for houſes, ſhops, and other edifices. So beautified with *Triumphant Arches*, erected to the honour of deſerving *Magiſtrates*, that in one ſtreet there are 300. of great maſs or workmanſhip. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-ſides of the Channels watering every ſtreet, beſet with trees of ſhade, and moſt excellent fruits: and in the middle of the City a round high mountain, which gives the eye a gallant proſpect into every ſtreet. And not far off a pleaſant *Lake*, of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with groves and gardens, and the *Lake* it ſelf even cloathed with veſſels of all ſorts, on which the Citizens uſe to feaſt, and entertain their idle time with plays and ſpectacles. Two Cities ſo repleniſhed with all kinde of pleaſures, that the *Chinois* uſe it for a proverb, *Thien Xam, thien thum, ti Xamſu hum*, that is to ſay, Look what the Hall or Preſence Chamber is in heaven, that *Hamſeu* and *Sucheau* are on earth. 12. *Fochea*, beautified, amongſt many other ſtately Structures, with a magnificent Tower erected on 40 marble pillars, of great elegancy, coſt, and bigneſs, every pillar being forty ſpans in height, and 12 in breadth: not to be paralleld, as ſome ſay, by any the like work in *Europe*. 13. *Lochiau*, in which are 70000. Families. 14. *Colans*, famous for the beſt *Procellane*. 15. *Schianhay*, by ſome called *Thiencin*, a ſtation to which an incredible number of ſhips reſort, both by Sea and River from all parts of this Kingdome, ſeated within 24 hours ſail of the Iſle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with a ſtrong Garriſon, and a Navy. Scituate in a pleaſant and wholſome ſoyl, the whole Countrey ſo ſet forth with trees, as if it were one continued Orchard. So populous, that it containeth 40000. houſholds, moſt of which get their livelihood by weaving Cottons: it being ſuppoſed that here are 200000. perſons which attend that Manufacture. 16. *Chinchiamſu*, whence by a River made by hand, there is a paſſage to *Sucheau*, the water of which never freezeth, and for that cauſe ſo clogged with ſhips in time of Winter, that the paſſage is ſtopped with the multitudes of them. 17. *Zuangcheu*, a moſt rich and beautifull City environed with large waters, and the only Southern Port within the Land, to which Ships or Boats may have acceſs. 18. *Caiton* or *Caiſung*, ſeated upon the River *Kiang*, a City once of three Leagues in compaſs, whoſe Harbour was ſeldom without 500 ſhips, and ſometimes honoured with the Seat or Reſidence of the Kings themſelves; moſt miſerably deſtroyed, *Anno* 1642. by *Zunchinius* the late King of this Countrey, who breaking down the dams and ſluces to let in the River, for the diſlodging of Thieves and Out-Laws, who had then beſieged it, gave it ſo great and forcible a paſſage towards the Town, that it bare down the greateſt part of the houſes of it, and therein drowned above 300000. of the natural Citizens; before which time the *Metropolis* or chief City of the Province of *Honon*. 19. *Kaiangchen* on the South-ſide of the River *Croceus*, the richeſt and the faireſt City in theſe parts of the Countrey, commodiouſly ſeated to command that River. 20. *Chatking*, the head City of the Province of *Guangtuang*, for the ſtrength and conveniency of its ſcituation thought fitteſt for the ſeat of *Jungly*, the laſt declared Emperour of the *Chinois* againſt the *Tartars*. 21. *Queilin*, the chief City of the Province of *Quaingſi*. 22. *Taitung*, the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Xanſi* or *Canſay*, another of the four Northern Provinces, but not elſe obſervable for any thing I finde of it, either in point of Trade or Story. 23. *Nancheng*, a chief City of the Province of *Xianſi*, of which little memorable; and leſs of 24. *Cergiron*, but that it is like unto the reſt in form and ſtructure.

Beſides the Provinces before mentioned, there are three others, not directly under the dominion of the Kings of *China*, though depending on it, that is to ſay, 1. the Province of *Suchuen*, 2. the Iſland of *Coreas*, 3. the Iſland of *Cheuxan*.

1. The Province of *Suchuen* lyeth on the South-weſt of this Kingdome; of the ſame nature both for ſoyl and Air with the reſt of *China*, but poſſeſſed by a more warlike people; the women here being trained up to feats of *Armes*, and ſo well practiſed on their weapons, that when the Queen hereof went to the aid of the Emperour *Vanley* againſt the *Tartars*, *Anno* 1618. ſhee took with her a ſmall Army of 3000 women, performing Actions not unworthy the braveſt men: the chief City hereof is called *Cingtu*, of great capacity, and ſo exceeding populous withall, that *Changhienchungus* (that moſt barbarous Tyrant) cauſed no fewer then 600000. of them, men women and children all indifferently, to be ſlaughtered in one day before his face; the whole Countrey governed for a long time by its own Kings of the ſame *Tai-*

mingian race with the Kings of *China*, from whom having received their inveſtiture, they were afterwards of abſolute authority over their own ſubjects, who acknowledge no other King but him. And in this ſtate it did continue, till the year 1644. when *Changienchungus* whom before I named, entring into this Country with his rabble of Rogues made a Conqueſt of it, murdered the young King, Son to the *Amazonian* Queen, which before we ſpake of: diſpeopled the great City of *Cingtu*, butchered at one time twenty thouſand Prieſts, at another time eighteen thouſand Students; and finally committed ſuch unſpeakable outrage, that the *Tartars* in meer pity to that wretched people ſent an Army againſt him, by which he was vanquiſhed, and ſlain; this Province thereupon ſubmitting to the *Tartars* as their great deliverers.

2. *Corea*, is an Iſland of the *Eaſtern Ocean*, not far from the North-eaſt of *China*, over againſt the fall of the River *Galo*. The quality of the ſoyl, the dimenſions of it, and what Cities it containeth in it, I have no where found. The people far more warlike than thoſe of *China*, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Japonites*, with whom they have always either open wars, or uncertain peace. Invaded by thoſe Iſlanders, and in danger to be conquered by them, they made an offer of their Countrey to the King of *China*; who having repulſed the Invaders, reſtored their Country freely to them, without laying any other Impoſition on them, then of love and gratitude, which obligations thoſe of *Corea* have diſcharged moſt fully. For when *Vanley* the late Emperour of *China* was firſt invaded by the *Tartars*, they ſent unto his aid twelve thouſand men well armed, and exerciſed in the Wars; increaſing their ſupplies in the time of *Theinkius*, who next but one ſucceeded *Vanley*; drawing the whole ſtorm upon themſelves by thoſe friendly aids, they were accordingly aſſiſted by the King of *China*, whoſe forces came ſo ſeaſonably in the heat of a Battel between the *Coreans* and the *Tartars*, that the *Tartars* after a long and terrible fight, were driven out of the Iſland, but with ſuch incredible loſs on all ſides, that few or none eſcaped of the Army of *China*, ſeventy thouſand of the *Coreans* ſlain, and the *Tartars* leaving fifty thouſand of their men behind them; after this they were unmoleſted, till the fatall and final conqueſt of the Kingdom of *China*, when ſeeing the *Tartars* Lords of all, and no poſſibility of reſiſtance, they ſubmitted to them, about the year 1648. upon condition of retaining their Hair and Habit, which no extremity of perſonall danger, or fear of publique deſolation, could compel them to alter.

3. *Cheuxan*, is an Iſland of the ſame Seas, on the South of *Corea*, oppoſite to the City of *Nympus* in the Main Land of *China*; an Iſland which being heretofore a dwelling place of poor Clowns and Fiſhermen, is now become a potent Kingdome. For *Lu. Regulus*, choſen by a party of his own to ſucceed to the broken Crown of *China*, and finding no hopes of withſtanding the great power of the *Tartars*, retired himſelf into this Iſland with his friends and followers, followed not long after by great multitudes of the Natural *Chineſe*, who choſe rather to forſake their Countrey, then to conform in hair and habit to the will of the *Tartars*; Inſomuch that there are now found in this Iſland threeſcore and ten Cities, with a ſtrong and formidable Army, which hitherto hath contemned all the *Tartarian* Power and Forces, and watch for ſome happy occaſion to advance again their Kingdome in *China*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the *Sinæ*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, were towards the North, the *Semantini*, bordering on a mountain of that name, and the only one remembred in all this Countrey: more Southward, the *Archadæ*, and *Aſpithræ*; Towards the Sea the *Anabaſtæ* and *Ichthyophagi* (the laſt ſo called from living wholly upon fiſh.) United into one body by the name of *Sinæ*, and known by that name to the *Romans*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, who boundeth them on the North with *Serica*, on the Weſt with *India extra Gangem*, and on the Eaſt and South with a *Terra Incognita*: which though it make up the leaſt part of the Modern *China*, *Serica* touching only on a corner of the North-weſt of it, and the main Ocean waſhing it on the Eaſt and South: yet the *Arabians* in their *Tzinin*, and our late Latine Writers in their *Sina* and *Sinenſium Regnum*, do from hence give the denomination to this mighty Kingdome. How far they ſtretched beyond the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, and whether they ſubdued the Eaſtern and more Northern Nation, and were Conquered by them, it is hard to ſay; nor is it eaſie to reſolve, from what originall theſe and the reſt of the Inhabitants do derive themſelves, whether from the *Indians*, or the *Scythes*: or that it was primitively planted by ſome of the poſterity of *Noah*, before the enterpriſe of *Babel*: which laſt may probably be concluded from the extream populouſneſs of the Countrey, the many magnificent Cities; their Induſtry and Ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their Neighbours, more ignorant in thoſe things than themſelves. And hereunto the *Chronicles* of *China* ſeem to give ſome ground, which tell us of three hundred and fourty Kings, which for the ſpace of four thouſand years have therein reigned. For as their *Chronicles* inform us, (if they may may be credited) the Countrey being without Rule or ſetled Government, was firſt reduced into order by one *Vitey*, the Son of *Ezolem*; by whom the people were inſtructed in *Phyſick*, *Aſtrology*, *Divination*, and the Art of Tillage: to which, this *Vitey*, having found out the way of cutting or ſawing Timber, added the uſe of *Ships* and *Houſes*, and many other the effects of *Mechanical* hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of his Commanders, ſubdued a great part of the Countrey, he drew them into Towns and Villages; diſtributed them into Offices, and ſeverall Trades, diſpoſing thoſe of the ſame Trade into Streets by themſelves: and commanding that no man without leave from himſelf, or his Officer, ſhould follow any other Trade than that of his Father. He preſcribed them alſo the faſhion of their Garments, taught them the Art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdom well eſtabliſhed unto his poſterity. Of this race there are ſaid to have bin 217 Kings, who held the State 2257 years.

The laſt of them was that *Tzaintzon*, who being ill-neighboured with the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) is ſaid to have built that vaſt wall ſpoken of before: extended 400 leagues in length, and at the end of every League a ſtrong *Rampart* or *Bulwark*, continually garriſoned, and well furniſhed with all warlike neceſſaries. He being ſlain by ſome of his Subjects, burdened and waſted with this work, the race of *Vitey* ended; and that of *Anchoſan* ſucceeded, a Prince of much prudence, but greater courage. In his line it continued under 25 Kings, but ſhrewdly ſhaken towards the cloſe by a Civil War, betwixt *Trunibey* the 23^{d} of his houſe, and his Nephew *Laupy*. Hardly well ſetled under *Quiontey* the laſt of this houſe, when *Tzobu*, a great Tyrant of the other Faction, ſet upon him, and ſlew him. And ſo the majeſty of the blood-royal being trod under foot, the Crown was alſo toſſed from one hand to another, and made a prey unto the ſtrongeſt: there being of the race of this *Tzobu*, eight Kings, reigning 62 years; Of the race of *Dian*, five Kings, who reigned thirty one; of the race of *Tzoy*, three only, who reigned thirty ſeven; Of the race of *Tenco*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 294 years; and eight there were who reigned 120 years, of the houſe of *Tautzom*. Of other upſtart families to the number of five, were fourteen Kings alſo, who governed only for the ſpace of 66 years: And then one *Zaitzon*, deriving himſelf from *Vitey*, the firſt King of this Countrey, obtained the Kingdome; which he, and ſeventeen of his poſterity, for the ſpace of 320 years, governed with much peace and honour. *Forfar*, the laſt King of that Royal Family, foretold by prophecy that he ſhould be deprived of his Kingdome by one who had *an hundred eyes*, neglected the *Advertiſement*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agree able to that prediction, when vanquiſhed by *Chiſan-baan* (which word ſignifieth *an hundred eyes*) Lieutenant unto *Uſan* a *Tartarian* Prince, but *Feudatary* and Vaſſal to the *Great Cham*. *China* thus made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was governed for the ſpace of 93 years, under nine *Tartar*-Kings, Tributaries to the Great *Cham*, and dependants on him: the *Chams* themſelves many times paſſing into *China*, and abiding there according as their pleaſures or affairs did invite them to it, which occaſioned ſuch a continuall entercourſe betwixt thoſe of *China* and *Cathay*, that they have much participated, ever ſince that time, of the manners and cuſtomes of each other. But here it is to be obſerved, that the *Tartars* ſpent almoſt as much time in the conqueſt of *China*, as they did in the poſſeſſion of it; the War being firſt begun, *Anno* 1206. finiſhed 1268. the *Tartars* being totally outed when they had reigned here 90 years only, that is to ſay, *Anno* 1358. or thereabouts. For then it hapned that a mean perſon called *Hugh*, conſidering with himſelf the diſcontentedneſs of the *Chineſe* under ſo long bondage, the luxury of the *Tartars* effeminated with the pleaſures of that Country, and the unwarlike temper of *Ciina Cham*, then reigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raiſed to himſelf ſo ſtrong a party, that in ſhort time he drave the *Tartars* out of all, forcing them to betake themſelves to thoſe parts of the Eaſtern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom of *Niuche*.

1. Finally turning towards the Weſt, he not only recovered back to *China* ſuch parts thereof as had been layd unto *Cathay*, and incorporated with it by the *Tartars*, but growing thereby a formidable neighbour to the Cham himſelf. Advances for this great ſervice to the Crown of *China*, *Anno* 1269. he took unto himſelf the name of *Hunguus* (our late Writers commonly call him *Hombu*) which ſignifieth as much as the *famous Warriour*, and gave unto his children, and their poſterity, the name of the *Taimingican* Family, which they ſtill continue for the recovery of this Country; great *Tamerlane* muſtreth up his Forces: and though *Hombu* brought into the field 350000. Horſe and Foot, yet nothing could reſiſt this powerfull genius of that mighty Conquerour, who obtained a ſignall victory, with the death of 60000. *Chineſe*. But wiſely moderating his proſperity, and mainly bent upon his war againſt the Turks, he thought it his beſt and ſafeſt way to let the people of *China* have a King of their own; impoſing on him a fine of 300000. Crowns in ready money, a certain annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions; which as they were pleaſing to the Victor, ſo they were not deſtructive to the vanquiſhed. By means hereof it comes to paſs that ſuch a long communication in affairs of ſtate having paſſed between *China* & *Chathay* (thoſe of *China* in old times lording it over part of the *Cathayans*, as the *Cathayans* in late times did over the *Chineſe*) there grew a great reſemblance between both Nations in manners, conditions, arts and manufactures, as before is ſaid; which circumſtances laid together, may afford ſome reaſon why ſome Writers eaſily miſguided by ſuch probabilities, *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the ſame. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinois* extend in thoſe times, onely over part of *Scythia*, but alſo over part of *India*, and moſt of the *Orientall* Iſlands. But the Princes of the houſe of *Hombu* finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their deſires, abandoned all the *Acceſſories* and Out-parts of their Dominions: prompted thereunto, not onely by their own moderation, but by ſome misfortunes which befell them. For as we finde that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempeſts, loſt no fewer than 206 of their ſhips and Gallies, reſolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the *Seas*, which had uſed them ſo unkindly: So the *Chinois* having received a great overthrow, and loſs of 800. ſhips, nigh unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Iſlands from obedience unto them, and contented themſelves with the bounds which nature had beſtowed on them. And of their moderation herein, we have a very rare example. For when the people of *Corea*, a ſmall Iſland abutting on the confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*; they ſubmitted themſelves unto the King of *China*: who having repulſed the enemy, and thereby cleared his own Country from danger, preſently redelivers over unto the *Coreans* their Town and liberty. A rare fact of a contented people. Which whether it favoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this Family hath the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the ſpace of 266. years and upwards, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth of this line, ſucceeded his elder brother, unfortunately ſlain with a fall from an horſe. Reported for a Prince of good diſpoſition, great judgement, and a ſevere Juſticiary. This *Boneg* (otherwiſe called *Vanly*) began his Reign, *Anno* 1573. governing this Kingdom

dome in great proſperity.and glory for the ſpace of 40 years and upwards ; when cauſing the Chriſtian Subjects and the Jeſuits their Converters to be hardly dealt with , and denying Juſtice to the *Eaſtern Tartars*, for the many wrongs done them by his prefects in the Province of *Lealoung* , he drew that people into Armes , as if marked out for Executioners of Divine diſpleaſure. Stript by them in the year 1618. of a part of *Lealong*, and braved by their Forces within ſight of *Peking*, he contracted ſome melancholick diſtempers , of which he died ſome two years after , leaving the Crown to his Son *Tiachangus*, who having held it but four moneths left it , and all the troubles of it, to his Son *Tkeinkius*, a valiant Prince,and fortunate againſt the *Tartars*, but of ſhort continuance. For dying in the year 1627. he was ſucceeded in that Kingdome by his brother *Zonchinius*, a Prince of contrary diſpoſition , cruelly bent , a great Oppreſſor of his Subjects , and for theſe cauſes ill beloved ; yet they continued in obedience: (though for fear rather of the *Tartars*, then for love of him) untill the year 1640. or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppreſſed with Taxes , and in the Northern parts with Famine ariſe in 8. Companies or Armies , which growing wanton by ſucceſs, and warring upon one another , they are at laſt reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to ſay , *Lycungzus* and *Changhienchangus*.

Theſe two being come to an agreement took their ſeveral wayes,the laſt of them falling into *Suchmen*, whoſe villanies and deſerved deſtruction we have there related. *Lycungzus* the more fortunate villain, in the year 1641. beſieged *Caiſung* the chief City of the Province of *Honan*, a place of great ſtrength , but far greater riches,on the ruine whereof by the Kings improvidence, and his ſubduing the whole Province of *Kenſi* , he took to himſelf the title of King, and would be called *Lycungzus* the *Proſperous* ; and not long after eaſing the people of the Taxes which the avaritious King had impoſed upon them , putting the Tax-maſters to death, and gaining upon all ſorts of men by his courteous uſage, he took unto himſelf the title of Emperor. *Zunchinius* ſucceeds his brother, hindred by factions in the Court , from ſending ſeaſonable forces againſt the Rebels , who paſſing over the great River *Croceus* without any reſiſtance, prevailed in all places where they came , even to the taking of the great City of *Peking* , and the Palace Royall ; at the hearing whereof, the Emperour ſeeing no way to eſcape their hands , hanged himſelf in his own Orchard , *Anno* 1644. his example herein followed by the Empreſs and his principall ſervants. The body of the Emperour cut in pieces , his two younger Sons beheaded , the principall Magiſtrates murdered , and that City ſacked by command of the Victor. Forced to remove back again to *Kenſi* by *Uſangueius* Commander of the Army in *Leaolong* , who called in the *Tartars* to revenge theſe Out-rages , the Rebels taking with them all the wealth and treaſure which the Emperours of the *Taimingian* Family amaſſed together in the ſpace of 260 years and upwards. *Zungleus* the King of the *Tartars* having thus got the City of *Peking* died preſently after , leaving his Son at nine years old to ſucceed him in that glorious fortune. By him commended to the care and protection of Uncles , who very faithfully diſcharged the truſt repoſed in them ; Infinite numbers of *Tartars* thronging into *China* upon this occaſion , and theſe not only of the *Eaſtern* but the *Weſtern* Nations.

By theſe the Infant King was proclaimed Emperour of *China* , by the name of *Xanchius* , ſtiling the new Imperial family by the name of *Tailing* , the eldeſt of the Uncles whom the *Tartars* called *Amavangus*, having the chief conduct of Affairs.

Uſangueius by the *Tartars* not long after is proclaimed King of *Kenſi* , out of which he ſhortly drove the Rebels , and poſſeſſed hmſelf of it ; *Lycungzus* being either killed in the fight, or elſe otherwiſe loſt. *Hungquengus* Nephew to *Varley*, and Couſin German to *Zunchinius* elected Emperour by the *Chineſes* of the Southern parts , is oppoſed herein by one that pretended himſelf to be the eldeſt Son of *Zunchinius* ; which diviſion gave the *Tartars* a notable victory over all their Forces , and the great City of *Nanquin* in reward thereof.

The new Emperour being ſhortly after betrayed into the hands of the *Tartars* , is by them hanged on the walls of *Peking* ; which death the *Tartars* count moſt noble. The pretended Son of *Zunchinius* diſcovered & ſerved in the ſame ſort alſo. And though *Loangus* firſt,and afterwards *Jungly*, and *Lu Regulus* , were choſen and declared Emperors by their ſeverall parties , *Anno* 1648. yet nothing could prevail againſt the fortune of the *Tartars* , *Loangus* being forced to put himſelf into their power, *Jungly* to flee into the Mountains , and *Lu Regulus* to ſecure himſelf in the Iſle of *Cheuxan*.

What hath ſucceeded ſince that year,future times will ſhew.

The Government of this Kingdom is meerly *tyrannicall* ; there being no other Lord but the King, no title of dignity or nobility ever known amongſt them;nor toll or duty paid unto any but to him:the younger Princes of the blood being maintained by *ſtipends*, and *annual penſions*,large enough to ſnpport their trains , but without any Lands or *Tenants* , for fear of drawing on them any great *dependances*. The King alone is the generall Landlord, and him the Subjects do not only reverence as a Prince , but adore like a God. For in the chief City of every province,they have the Kings portraiture made of Gold, which is always covered with a veil : and at every New-moon , the Magiſtrate and other inferiour Officers uſe to kneel before it, as if it were the King himſelf. By theſe and other artifices of the like contrivement the common people are kept in ſuch awe and fear , that they are rather ſlaves than Subjects : calling their King the *Lamp of the world* , *and Son of the everſhining Sun* , without whoſe light they were able to ſee nothing.

In every Province except *Pequin* and *Tolenchia* onely, he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Royes*, maintained by liberal ſtipends from the publick treaſury : but thoſe he governeth by himſelf. Some Laws they have and thoſe affirmed to have been written 2000 years ſince, as is like enough they were. So ſtrongly do they ſavour of the ignorance and *Atheiſm* of the darkeſt times: the manner of life by them allowed, moſt *obſcene* and ſhameleſs; their *Idolatries*, moſt groſs and palpable; their *Exorciſms* ridiculous, and the proſtitution of their *Virgins* moſt abhominable; and the variety of ſenſual prophanations, to an illuminated mind moſt baſe and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their courſe of life (notwithſtanding the brags which they make of themſelves) but their Arts and Induſtry.

The *forces* which this King is able to draw into the Field muſt needs be infinite, conſidering that incredible number of ſubjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people; *Italy*, with the Iſles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Switzers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain*, not above ſeven Millions, and the Kingdome of *England* about four : this Country onely is Computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions then all together. Proportionably his Levies muſt be ſo much greater, than can be ordinarily raiſed out of thoſe Countries. But becauſe it may be thought that his ſubjects, though more in number, may be leſs trained to the warres, than thoſe of *Europe*; the contrary is affirmed by ſuch as have taken an eſtimate of the forces, which every Province is bound to entertain in continuall readineſs. And by that eſtimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557 (though a time of peace) there were diſperſed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions, 846500 Foot, and 948350 Horſe. Which notwithſtanding it may be ſaid, and not unfitly, that he is able to bring into the field, amongſt ſuch multitudes of men, but few good Souldiers, the people being generally unwarlike, and of no great courage, as was before obſerved of them, in their generall Character. Nor is he leſs powerfull for *Sea-ſervice*, having continually great *Fleets* for the guard of his Coaſts, in continuall attendance; and many more ready to ſet out when there is occaſion: inſomuch that the *Chinois* uſe to ſay in the way of a *Proverb*, that their king is able to make a bridge of ſhips from *China*, to *Malaca*, which are 500 leagues aſunder. Some of theſe ſhips(whereof the King hath above a thouſand of his own, beſides thoſe of his ſubjects) of great magnificence and beauty; the Officers and Souldiers in all which are exceeding well paid, and rewarded anſwerably to their merits. And as this King is able to raiſe greater forces then any, from his own eſtates; ſo doth he alſo *de facto* do it, when the urgency of his affairs do require it of him : his ordinary ſtent being 300000 foot, and 200000 horſe; without which compleat number (not onely in the *muſter rols*, but in bodies of men) he vouchſafes not to goe into the field.

Anſwerable unto theſe great *Levies* of men, muſt be his *Revenue* : which they who have travelled in this ſearch, (if they tell us true, and doe not build upon a hope of not being confuted, as for my part I fear they do) affirme to be 120 millions of Crowns: anſwered unto him out of the profit of the *mines* of Gold, ſilver, and other metals; the *tenth* of all commodities which the earth brings forth; the *tolls* impoſed on that unſpeakeable quantity of merchandiſe, which paſſeth on ſo many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the *cuſtomes* taken of all thoſe rich wares which are brought into *Europe*, and the *Gabell* laid on Salt in all parts of his Kingdome. out of which ſum, the payment of his Fleet diſcharged, the entertainment of the Souldiers ſattisfied, and his Court defrayed; there remaineth 40 millions of crowns *de claro* to be diſpoſed of, either in his treaſury, or private pleaſures, or the works of magnificence, and oſtentation.

And thus far alſo, according to the generall current of received opinions, have I followed the deſcription and affairs of *China*, as a diſtinct Countrey from *Cathay*, : not ignorant that there are many probable reaſons that might incline us to believe them, to be one and the ſame; for it is alleadged in favour of this opinon, that it is neither new nor ſtrange, for one and the ſame Countrey to be called by divers names, according to the languages and fancies of ſeverall Nations; that Countrey which we call *Germany* being by the Natives called *Dutchland*, not long ſince known moſt commonly by the name of *Almaine*; that part of *Britain* which we call *Wales* being by the *French* called *Galles*, and *Cambria* by the *Latine* Writers; thoſe mountainous people which the *Romans* know by the name of *Rhœti*, being by ſome of our Northern Latiniſts called *Confederati Cani, Campi Camini*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Grauntpuntnor*, by the neighbouring *Dutch*; and finally *Griſons* by the *French*; which four laſt names do carry all the ſame ſence and ſignification, though in different words: that *China* it ſelfe is by the Natives called *Tabinco*, *Tzinin* by the *Arabians*, *Mangi* by *Paulus Venetus*, and by the neighbouring Nations *Sanglag*; that as it can not be enforced from the like diverſity of appellations that *Almaine*, *Germany*, and *Dutch-Land* make three ſeveral Countries (*& ſic de cæteris*) ſo neither can it be concluded on the ſame grounds, that *China* and *Cathay* make two ſeveral Empires. In the next place it is alleadged, that ſince by latter voyages and navigations, this mighty Kingdome hath been diſcovered, and made known unto us of *Europe* by the name of *China*; the name and Empire of *Cathay* hath grown out of knowledge [illegible]r proofe whereof they bring in the *Itinerarie* of *Benedictus Goes*, a *Jeſuit*, who in the year 1605 croſſing from the Northeaſt parts of *Perſia*, to the Realme of *China*, naming all the ſeverall Countries, and Towns of any note, which lay in his way, makes no mention of any ſuch Countrey as *Cathay*, or any ſuch Prince as the Great *Cham* thereof : telling us alſo that *Martin Martinius*, who had lived long in *China*, in his Books entituled *Bellum Tartaricum*, comprehended all the Countries betwixt *China* and Mount *Imaus*, under the generall name and Nation of the Weſtern *Tartars*, not taking notice of any ſuch Country as *Cathay*; nor of any greater Prince amongſt them, then the King of *Tanguth*; and that *Ramuſio* in his notes on *Paulus Venetus*, reporteth ſome conference which he had with *Chaggimemet* a Perſian Monarch, who told him that he had ſeen *Campion* and *Succuir*, Cities of *Cathay*, in the reign of *Deimercan*, which muſt be underſtood of *Cathay* in the generall Nation, as it comprehended all the *Tartarian* Countries beyond *Imaus*, it being well known that *Campion* and *Succur* are two Cities of *Tanguth*, and not of the proper *Cathay*, or *Cathag* eſpecially ſo called. In the third rank of proofes they inſtance in the ſimilitudes, or reſemblances betwixt both Countries,and both people,which are ſo great and viſible in the temperature of Air, fertility of Soyl, and pleaſantneſs of ſituation,in cuſtomes, in ingenuity, arts and Manufactures,as may be thought to carry an Identity,or ſameneſſe with them; which ſameneſſe or Identitie they do alſo finde, in *Pequin* the Chief Citie of *China*, and *Cambalu*, the ſuppoſed chief City of *Cathay*, being two words of the ſame ſence, and ſignification though of divers ſounds;for *Pequin* ſignifieth the court or City of the King in the *Chinian* language, and *Cambalu* ſignifieth the Court or City of the *Cham*, in the language of *Tartary*. The like they alſo have obſerved of the Royall Palaces, adjoyning to the ſaid two Cities,ſo like in the vaſt greatneſſe and extent of the outer walls,the Parks and Forreſts intermingled, the magnificent form and ſtructure of the inner Palaces,with all the reſt of the particulars before recited, that a man might very well conclude them to be one and the ſame, adding withall that ſuch an immenſe, and unparalleld a work,as the Great *Chams* Palace called *Xaindu*,muſt needs require more hands and a longer time, then the great *Chams*(conſidering their continual wars,and little intervals of leaſure,could beſtow upon it.But their four head proofes, which ſeemes indeed to be the ſtrongeſt,they derive firſt from the Teſtimony of *Benedict Goes* above mentioned, who without taking notice of any ſuch Country as *Cathay*, in ſo long a Journey, telleth us that at *Giales*, a City of the Kingdom of *Caſcar*, and not far from *China*, he was firſt informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the ſame; 2^{ly}. from the Teſtimony of an old *Mahometan* Pilgrime, who returning from *Meca* by *Lahor* (the Royal ſeat and City of the great *Mogul*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambalu* the chief City of *Cathay*,which Kingdome hath in it one thouſand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a very mighty Prince, and having the ſtrength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Malaca*,and *Pegu*,and that much Merchandiſe was brought into that Country by Sea:which if it be not meant of *China*, to which the ſtory may agree in all particulars) muſt needs be one of the loudeſt lyes that ever came from the Mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a *Pilgrim* either; our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* eſpecially ſo called, no acceſſe thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring thoſe Elephants from *Pegu* to *Malaca*, which the Pilgrime dreamt of 3^{ly}. a clearer Teſtimony of ſome other *Mahometans* repairing to *Pequin* every fift year, either as Merchants or Embaſſadors,or as both together; by whom the *Jeſuits* there living were informed, that in the Dominions of the *Perſian*, and the great *Mogull*, from whence they came, the Kingdome of *China* was called by no other name, then by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Country of that name, but *China* only. And 4^{ly}. from the aſſeverance of *Pantogal*, another *Jeſuite*, who in his letters dated from *Paquin* much blamed our ordinarie Maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*, whereas (ſaith he) *China* or *Sinai* is *Cathay*,and this *Paquin* where we now are is the City of *Cambalu*, which two laſt evidences coming from the pen of one who had lived many yeares in *China*;and not conducing any way to the advancement of the *Catholick* cauſe,muſt needs be thought to carry ſome great credit, and authority with them.

Theſe reaſons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we muſt then act *Penelopes* part, and ravelling all the web which before was woven, *Atque iterum in lanas omne redibit opus*, in the Poets language; which that we may the better do, and with as little defacements to the whole peice as poſſibly we can,I ſhall thus proceed. Firſt then it is to be conceived that *Cathay* ſpecially ſo called was an aggregate body, containing many ſeveral Kingdomes, and diſtinct eſtates, though Homagers to the Kings of *Cathay*, or dependants on them: as antiently in the Realm of *France*, beſides the Kings of *France* themſelves there was a King of *Burgundy*,a King of *Metz*,a King of *Saiſtons*,a King of *Orleance*; and after that a Duke of *Normandy*, a Duke of *Britaine*, a Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earle of *Champaign*, and Earle of *Tholouſe*, all abſolute and uncontrollable in their own eſtates. And then the Kingdome of *Tanguth* which we placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*,muſt be made one of the Kingdomes of *Cathay*; and *Deimercan* whom we ranked in the Catalogue of the *Chams* of *Tartary*,muſt be brought a peg lower and looked on as a King of *Tanguth* only,and no more then ſo. Secondly,it muſt be taken for granted,that the *Tartars* having conquered the Realm of *Cathay*, and afterwards by the help of that people ſubdued *China* alſo, cauſed all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the ſame latitude, and parallels with it, and much of the ſame nature and complexion, both for Soyl and Aire, giving unto the Southern parts (which was the true and proper Country of the *Sinæ*) the name of *Mangi*, transferred afterwards by the *Tartars* to the Country generally:and having thus extended the name and Territory of *Cathay*, the firſt foundation of their greatneſs, they fixed their Regal Seat in the City of *Naguin*,which by a new Tartarian name (but of the ſame Seal and ſignification) was from thence called *Cambalu*. Thus in the firſt place the *French* Kings of the *Caroline* family, communicated the name of *France* (Eaſt *France* it was moſt commonly called) to the greateſt p[illegible] of *Germany*, then conquered by them; the *Caſtilians* of *Spain* extended the name of *Caſteile* on e[illegible] ſide, as they gat ground upon the *Moores*,till it became the largeſt Province of any one name in all that Continent; and *Roger* Earle of *Cicilie*, having conquered the Eaſtern parts of *Italy* (which now make up the Kingdome of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the further *Cicily*, and himſelfe to be Crowned King of both, by the name of King of both *Cicilies*, And in the ſecond place, the Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germanie*, are by the *French* called Dukes *De Deux ponts*, by the late Latine Writers *Duces Bipontani*, all in the ſame ſence and ſignification; the Town of *Shertzogen Boſch* is by the *French* called *Bois le Duc*, by Latine Writers *Siloa ducis*;and here at home the *Military* Towns or Stations of *Lectodurum*, *Colonia*, *Praſidium*, Papidem, and *Portus Magnus*, were turned by the Conquering *Saxons* (the former ſignifications being ſtill retained) into *Bedford*, *Colcheſter*, *Warwick*, *Stoneham*, and *Portzmuch*, commonly now called *Portſmouth*; *Caſtrum Alatum* into *Edinborg* by the Picts unconquered *Britaines*. 3ly. We may take it for a truth unqueſtioned, that *Hombu* having expulſed the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed his Royall Seat to *Nanquin*, on the South ſide of the River *Kiang* (though paying both fine and tribute to victorious *Tamerlane*) did afterwards on *Tamerlanes* engagements beyond the Mountaines and the cantonizing of that great Empire amongſt his Children, expelled them out of the North parts alſo; his ſucceſſors there upon removing his Court to *Pequin* (from hence forth known again by its true, proper, and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that dangerous Enemy. *Jeruſalem*, commanded to be called the *Elia* by the Emperor *Adrian*, and *London*, named *Auguſta Trinobantum* by ſome other of the *Roman* Emperors; returned to their old names again, as ſoon as that authority failed which impoſed the new. And 4ly. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might ſtill retain the name of *Cathay*, and being moſt traded by the *Perſian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be beſt known by that name in their ſeverall Countries: ſo by dividing this great Empire into ſo many parts, removing the Imperial Seat to *Samerland*, on the other ſide of the Mountains, erecting many new ſtates out of the antient Præfectures, and Governments of *Cathay* it ſelf, and parcelling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tanguth*, *Caſcar*, and ſuch other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themſelves in thoſe opportunities, the true *Cathay* might loſe that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to thoſe parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundians* *Lombards*, *Vandals*, *Hungars*, left thoſe names at home, in their native and ancient habitations, which ſtill remain unto thoſe Countries that were conquered by them. Theſe reaſons and conſiderations I willingly ſubmit to the Readers Judgement, being my ſelf ſo great a *Sceptick* in this point, that I dare determine nothing poſitively on either ſide. It is enough that I have laid the cauſe open without partiality, or byaſſing on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the evidence.

* * *

OF

* * *

OF INDIA.

INDIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Oriental Ocean, and ſome part of *China*; or as ſome others ſay, with a great Country called *Mauge* (not much knowne unto us of *Europe*) interjected betwixt it and *China*; on the Weſt, with the *Perſian* Empire; on the North, with ſome branches of Mount *Taurus*, which divide it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the neareſt of eſteem and note in all the Country, towards theſe parts of the world.

It is conceived to be the largeſt country of any one name in the world, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of ſuch a great extent on the Sea-coaſts of it, that it was as much as a ſhip could Sail in 40 dayes. Extended from 106, to 159 degrees of *Longitude*; and from the *Æquator* to the 44th degree of the Northern *Latitude*. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the firſt, to the end of the Sixt *Clime*: the longeſt Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 houres onely, and in the parts moſt North, 15 hours and an halfe.

Concerning the Monſtrous Fables which the ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Country, give me leave to ſay, that as the Poets uſed of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with ſtrange fixions, and prodigious *Metamorphoſes*; or as our Modern *Geographers*, in the Maps of the world, fil up thoſe unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain deſcription, with ſtrange pictures and uncouth ſhapes of beaſts and Trees; ſo alſo the Writers in former ages have filled the more remote Countries, of which they knew little, with ſuch impoſſible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the fables of men with dogs heads; of men with one leg onely, yet of great ſwiftneſs; of ſuch as live by ſcent; of men that had but one eye, and that in their fore heads; and of others, whoſe ears did reach unto the ground. It is reported alſo that this people by eating a dragons heart and liver, attain to the underſtanding of the languages of beaſts; that they can make themſelves when they liſt inviſible; that they have two tubs, whereof the one opened yields wind, and the other rain, and the like. But theſe relations, and the reſt of this ſtrain, I doubt not but the underſtanding Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the ſame mind with *Curtius*, *Plura equidem tranſcribo quam credo; nec enim affirmare auſus ſum quæ dubito, nec ſubducere ſuſtineo quæ accepi*: I may perhaps relate ſome things which I doe not credit, but ſhall not let them paſs without ſome cenſure; that ſo I neither may impoſe any thing on the Readers belief, nor defraud him of any thing conduciable to his contentation.

The Country (to report no more of it then it doth deſerve) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the air; two Summers, (or one as long as two) and a double encreaſe; bleſt with all things which are either neceſſary to the life of man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with mines of Gold and Silver, and with pretious ſtones; with ſpices of all ſorts, and Civetts; with the beſt *medicinable* drugs, metals of all kinds, except *Coper* and *Lead*; abundance of all ſorts of Cattell, except horſes. Somewhat defective alſo in Wheat and Vines, that ſo this Country might be beholden unto others, as well as others unto this. Famed alſo for abundance of *Camels*, *Apes*, *Serpents*, *Rhinocerots*, *Elephants*. Theſe laſt more ſavouring of reaſon and humane ingenuity, or elſe more tractable and docile, then any brute Creature whatſoever. Of this we have a fair inſtance in the ſtory of the acts of *Alexander*. The Elephant which King *Porus* ſate on, finding his Maſter ſtrong and luſty, ruſhed boldly into the thickeſt of the Enemies Army; but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himſelf out of the battel, kneeled down, and into his own trunk received all the Arrowes which were directed at his maſter. The greatneſs of the Creature makes it yet more admirable, that either he ſhould have ſoul enough of his own to actuate ſo vaſte a body; or being of ſuch ſtrength and bigneſs ſhould ſubmit himſelf to the inſtructions of another: ſome of theſe *Indian* Elephants, as *Ælianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high, and as many long; and in breadth or thickneſſe about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford leſſe plenty or variety, then we finde on ſhore: yielding abundance of the richeſt and faireſt Pearls, huge ſholes of fiſh, and amongſt them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that land monſter the *Elephant*. For though the ordinary dimenſion of the *Whale* be but 36 *Cubits* in length, and eight in thickneſſe: yet *Nearchus* in *Arianus* is ſaid to have meaſured one, in the *Indian* Seas, which was of the length of 50 *Cubits*, and of breadth proportionable: not to ſay any thing of that uncredible report of *Pliny*, who ſpeaketh of ſome *Indian* Whales, which were nine hundred and threeſcore foot, or four Acres long.

The people are of five ſorts, and as many *Religious*; that is to ſay, the naturall *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2ly. *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who more then two hundred yeares ago, poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Sea-Towns, driving the Natives up higher into the Countrey. 3ly. *Jews*, ſcattered and diſperſed (as in other places) into all parts of it; 4ly. *Tartars*, in thoſe parts and Provinces which are under the *Great Mogul*; and 5ly. *Portuguez*, who have many Colonies and *Factories* in the Ports and Iſlands, but brag as if they had made a conqueſt of all the Countrey. Which notwithſtanding, conſidering that the Naturall *Indians* are by far the greateſt number, we muſt relate to them onely in the *Character* which is made of this people. Affirmed to be tall of ſtature, ſtrong of body, and of complexion inclining to that of the *Negroes*: of manners civill, and ingenious, free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The common ſort but meanly clad, for the moſt part naked, content with no more covering than to hide their ſhame. But thoſe of greater eſtates and fortunes (as they have amongſt them many antient and Noble families) obſerve a majeſty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparel; ſweetning the laſt with oils, and perfumes, adorning themſelves with Jewels, Pearls, and other Ornaments befitting. They eat no fleſh, but live on Barley, Rice, Milk, Honey, and other things without life.

The *Women* not of much fairer complexion than the men, yet of lovely countenances, wear their hair long and looſe, but covered with a thin veil of *Calicut Lawn*. Their ears hung with many rings, ſo great and heavy, that they are torn, and ſtretched to much diſproportion; their noſes alſo ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their eſtate and quality. Servilely obſequious to their Husbands, whoſe affections they divide amongſt them without jarre or jealouſie: the men allowed here, as in all the Eaſt, the uſe of many wives, whom they buy of their Parents for a yoke of Oxen; and many marry as often as they liſt. In which they have too great a priviledge above the women, who after the deceaſe of their common husband, do either burn in the ſame flame with him, or elſe are forced to doom themſelves to perpetuall Widow-hood. But of this we may ſpeak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt planted in theſe Countries, by Saint *Thomas*, from whom the remainders of *Chriſtianity* take denomination; and unto whom the Records and *Monuments* of that Church do aſcribe their converſion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the *Chaldæan* tongue, & tranſlated into *Latin* by Father *John Maria Campanin* a *Jeſuit*, we finde it thus, *Per D. Thomam evanuit error Idololatriæ ab Indis, &c.* i. e. By Saint *Thomas*, the errors of Idolatry vaniſhed out of the *Indies*; by Saint *Thomas*, they received the Sacrament of *Baptiſme*, and the adoption of Sons; by Saint *Thomas*, they believed and confeſſed the Father, the Son, and Holy-Ghoſt; by Saint *Thomas*, they kept the faith received of one God; and finally by Saint *Thomas*, the ſplendour of ſaving Doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body, as they ſay, intombed in the City of *Muliapar*, upon the Coaſt of *Choromandell*; the truth of which tradition I diſpute not here. But this plantation of the Goſpel by the hand of Saint *Thomas* was not univerſal over all the Countrey, but in ſome parts and Provinces only: or elſe was forced to give ground a while to prevailing *Heatheniſm*. For in the reign of *Conſtantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the further ſide of the River *Ganges* (for ſo I underſtand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the miniſtry of one *Frumentius*, of the City of *Tyre*; who having ſpent the greateſt part of his time amongſt them, was employed in that ſervice, and conſecrated the firſt Biſhop (for thoſe Churches) by the great *Athanaſius* of *Alexandria*. But being the foundation of this building was laid by Saint *Thomas*, the remainder of *Chriſtians* here being, aſcribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*. Governed originally by their own Biſhops, ſubordinate to an Archbiſhop of their own alſo, reſiding at *Augamale*, fifteen miles from *Gochin*, one of the chief Cities of this Countrey: who for a long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Muſal*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by the *Chriſtians* of *India* he is ſtill termed. The number of the *Chriſtians* computed at 15 or 16 thouſand families; or at 70000 perſons in the accompt of other: inhabiting for the moſt part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the outlets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, ſtretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called *Cape Comari*. The points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*, 1. Their adminiſtring the Sacrament of the Euchariſt in bread ſeaſoned with ſalt; 2. Adminiſtring in both kinds, but uſing inſtead of wine (which is ſcarce or not at all to be had in this Country) the juice of Raiſins ſoftned in water over night, and ſo preſſed forth; 3. Not baptizing children untill 40 dayes old, except it be in danger of death; 4. Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Croſs; 5. Allowing one marriage to their Prieſts, but debarring the ſecond; 6. In painting God with three heads on one body, to denote the Trinity; 7. Denying the uſe of *extreme Unction*; and 8. Not acknowledging the Popes ſupremacy: but beſides theſe remainders of thoſe antient *Chriſtians*, there are ſome others now of late of a new plantation, by the pains and travell of the Jeſuits, though not with ſuch ſucceſs here, as they found in *China*: many of the Inhabitants partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by power of the great *Mogul*, having embraced *Mahometaniſme*; and being conſequently leſſer inclinable to admit the Goſpel, then when they were in the condition of their neutrall *Gentiliſme*. Yet have they made ſuch good progreſs in it, that *Echebar* the *Mogul* not only founded a fair Church for the uſe of the *Chriſtians* in the Citie of *Agra* (the Regall Citie of that Empire) but committed to the care of the Jeſuites the education of two Princes of the Regal Familie. And poſſibly they might have made a great increaſe of *Chriſtians* before this time, had they not been oppoſed therein, by *Sultan Coroen*, a bitter enemie to their proceeding, in the reign of his Father, and no great favourer of them ſince. Inſomuch that hearing a Jeſuite, called *Franciſco Carſi*, his report unto his Father how miraculouſly a wooden Croſs of his had eſcaped the fire; he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire preſently made, and the ſame Croſs to be thrown into it, upon theſe conditions, that if the Croſs conſumed not, his Father and himſelf would become *Chriſtians*; but if it did, the Jeſuite ſhould be burned in the ſame fire with it. A fiery tryall, which the poor Jeſuite had much ado to put off, and preſerve his credit. Howſoever by their practiſing amongſt the old Chriſtians they have gained one point of very great conſequence and importance to the Church of *Rome*. For in the year 1599. by the ſolicitation of the Jeſuits and the other *Indian Chriſtians*, renounced their obedience to the *Patriarch* of *Muſal*, and ſubmitted their Churches to the juriſdiction of the *Pope* of *Rome*, in a *Nationall Synod* held at *Liamper*, not far from *Maliapar*, by the Arch-biſhop of *Goa* (the Primate of the *Portugals* in thoſe parts) not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the *Romiſh* Tenets, but delivering all their Books and *Liturgies* to be altered and reformed by the ſaid Arch-biſhop according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But theſe comparatively to the reſt, come not to an handfull; the main body of the people wallowing in their *Gentiliſm*; and ſtill retaining many of thoſe ancient Cuſtoms, which they uſed of old: as *viz.* 1. Not knowing their Wives after they have born them two children: 2. Nor keeping them, if after five years *cohabitation*, they can raiſe no iſſue by them, but then exchanging them for others: 3. Rewarding none for any military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands the head of an enemy: 4. Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or ſickneſs. To theſe they have ſince added others of a larger invention, perhaps more barbarous: of which we may have opportunity to ſpeak anon. Their Prieſts or learned men, in the time of old, were called *Brachmanes* from one *Brachman*, the preſcriber of their Rites and Laws, by whom inſtructed in the *Rudiments* of their *Philoſophy*; ſome of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnoſophiſts*; who were to them as the *Chaldæi* to the *Aſſyrians*; the *Magi* to the *Perſians*; and the *Druides* to the ancient *Britains*. Had in great reverence by the People, and lived for the moſt part an auſtere and ſolitary life, in Caves and Deſarts; feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abſtaining from all carnall pleaſures; but that time paſt, they may indulge themſelves more liberty, and admit the company of women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Prieſts. Of theſe the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Country ſurprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many ſtrange queſtions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himſelf confeſſed) ſome not unſatisfying though ſtrange anſwers. To theſe *Gymnoſophiſts*, or *Brachmans*, the *Bramines* do now ſucceed, both in place and authority; but differ from them moſt extremely in point of learning, and the civilities of their lives; theſe *Bramines* being the moſt impure, libidinous, and ſenſuall beaſts in all the Countrey; priviledged with the firſt nights lodging of every Bride, which when ſatiated with their filthy luſt, they ſell, or traffique with, to ſtrangers; ſerving as *Stallions* to old men, and as *Pandars* to young: ſo fleſhed in wickedneſs, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a man but the voice and ſhape. *Mahometaniſm* is alſo entertained in a great part of the Countrey, firſt brought in by the *Tartars*, and neighbouring *Perſians*, unto whom conterminous, but much increaſed by the victories of the *Great Mogul*: who being originally a *Tartar*, and of that Religion, hath cauſed it to be propagated in moſt parts of his large dominions.

Mountains of moſt note in it, beſides *Caucaſus*, and ſome other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Perſian* Empires. 1. *Sardonix*, full of Mines of thoſe precious ſtones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2. *Vindius*. 3. *Bittigo*. 4. *Adiſathras*. 5. Thoſe called *Apocopi*, & 6. thoſe named *Orodii*. And on the further ſide of *Ganges*, 7. *Bepyrrus*. 8. *Mæandrus*. 9. Thoſe called *Damuſi*, and 10. *Semanthinus*; part of this laſt extending alſo unto *China*. All of them very fruitfull to the production of Mines and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all, is that which *Ptolomy* calls *Bittigo*, and is now named *Gates*; the Southern part of the great Mountain *Imaus* ſpoken of before: extended from Mount *Caucaſus*, where it croſſeth the *Taurus* in right Angles, to Cape *Comari*, a known Promontory of *Induſtan*, or the hither *India* (which it divideth into Eaſt and Weſt) for the ſpace of 400 leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Poſtellus* a learned Writer, to be that of Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the 10th of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the ſons of *Joktan*, *Gen.* 10. *v.* 30. with probability enough for ought I can ſee; the ſons of *Joktan* being ſetled in theſe parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire which lie neareſt to them. And ſo far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Poſtell*, as to affirm of this Mount *Sephar*, that it is *Mons Indiæ*, an *Indian* Mountain: both of them grounding on S. *Hierom*, who expreſly ſaith, *Sophera mons Orientis in* India, *juxta quem habitaverunt filii* Joctam, i.e. that *Sephar*, or *Sopher*, is the name of a Mountain of the Eaſt in *India*, neer to which dwelt the Sons of *Joktan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we ſhould transfer it into *America*, as I ſee ſome do, and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*, which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other, and thence as ſome will have it to the Streights of *Magellan*. Which ſhould we grant, we muſt not look for *Joktan*, or the ſons of *Joktan*, either in *Arabia Felix*, where *Bochartus* placeth them; nor in the Eaſtern parts of *Aſia*, where moſt probably they may be found; but we muſt croſs the vaſt Orientall Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; beſides, that granting this for true, we muſt allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moſes*, which no Author that ever I met with did ſo much as dream of.

Rivers of moſt note are, 1. *Indus*, which ariſeth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Antients call *Paropamiſus*, the Moderns, *Naugrocot*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a courſe of 900 miles,, falleth into the Ocean at ſeven Mouths, that is to ſay, 1. *Sagappa*, being the moſt Weſtern, 2. *Sinthum*, 3. *Aureum*, 4. *Cariphi*, 9. *Sappara*, 6. *Sabalaſſa*, 7. *Lonibare*, the moſt Eaſtward. But five of theſe being choaked with Sands, or drawn into the neigbouring Channels, there now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and ancient Stories, for giving name unto the Countrey, and that ſo celebrated voyage of *Alexander*, who ſailed down it towards the *Indian* Ocean: the voyage

holding

Intra Gangem.

holding above five moneths, of which there is ſaid to have paſſed no day wherein he ſailed not 15 miles, or 600. Furlongs. 2. *Ganges*, which riſeth as ſome ſay from the Mountain *Imaus*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Imaus* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is firſt collected into a Lake, or Pool (ſuppoſed by others for the fountain and original of it) whence with a gentler pace it paſſeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers. In the narroweſt place of eight miles breadth, in the broadeſt 20. ſeldom ſo ſhallow but that the depth thereof is 100 foot, or 20 *Geometrical* paces. Parted into five great Channels it falleth at laſt into the Sea; the firſt of which moſt towards the Weſt, is called 1. *Cambyſum*, 2. *Magnum*, 3. *Cambericum*, 4. *Pſeudoſtomum*, and 5. that which lyeth furtheſt towards the Eaſt, called *Antiboli*. This River erroneouſly ſuppoſed to be that *Piſon* which watered *Paradiſe*: and to encreaſe the reputation of the errour, we finde it countenanced by *Joſephus*, and other no leſſe eminent names, and alſo backed by ſome traditions of the people which inhabit neer it. By whom it is affirmed that ſome of the *Bengalan* Kings ſent men up the River, who came at laſt to a pleaſant place, bleſt with a fragrant Earth, ſweet Air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth ſo poſſeſs them, that at the mouth of this River called *Gangaſagie*, ſuch as are weary of this world uſe to caſt themſelves into the current, and are preſently devoured by a fiſh called *Sea-dogs*, by whom they hope to finde a quick paſſage to *Paradiſe*. The occaſion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from thoſe words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Piſon*, that it compaſſed the land of *Havilah*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River muſt be *Piſon*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For beſides *Havilah* the ſon of *Jocktan*, planted in ſome part of *India*; there was another *Havilah*, the ſon of *Chus*, ſetled in the land of *Havilah* or *Chuſiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this laſt indeed watered by the River *Piſon*, and the firſt by *Ganges*; too far aſunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken and miſtaken one for another. But not leſs famous, becauſe none of thoſe which neighboured the Garden of *Eden*, perhaps of greater fame than any of thoſe which did. For to this River do the ſuperſtitious *Indians* make their ſolemn Pilgrimages; vainly conceiving that they ſhall be ſure of their eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the People aſcribe the fertility of the Countreys adjoyning, as the *Ægyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Countrey anciently, and at this preſent is divided into two main parts, (each ſubdivided into many particulars Provinces) *viz.* 1. *India intra Gangem.* 2. *India extra Gangem.* Of each of which we will take a brief ſurvey, with reference to the ſtate and ſtory of it in preceding times; and then conſider them with reference to the preſent age.

INDIA INTRA GANGEM.

INDIA INTRA GANGEM, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Ganges*, till the fall thereof into the Sea, and after that with the large and ſpacious Bay, called anciently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*: on the Weſt, with *Paropamiſus*, *Arachoſia*, *Gedroſia*, Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire, and part of the *Arabian* Seas: on the North, where it is broadeſt, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamiſus*, *Caucaſus*, and other parts: and on the South, where it endeth in a ſharp point or Promontory, by *Ptolomy* called *Commaria extrema*, but now Cape *Commari*, with the *Indian* Ocean. So named from being ſcituate on this ſide *Ganges*; by the moderns, *Indoſtan*.

The Country of the ſame nature formerly, as it is at the preſent, not altered but by changing of the channels of *Indus*; which being ſhifted by an *Earthquake*, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a ſandy Deſart: *Indus* (as many other of the *Indian* Rivers) fatning and enriching all the land which it overfloweth. The people of thoſe elder times, much like the *Scythians*, eſpecially in their courſe of life; living without Cities, Temples, Houſes, in their moveable Tents: their food the bark of a tree called *Tala*, which ſerved for bread; and the fleſh of Bucks, Does, and other Veniſon, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them *Free-men*, but no *Slaves* to be found amongſt them. Leſs warlike then the *Scythians*, but as great contemners of death as they: the women contending eagerly amongſt themſelves, which ſhould accompany their Husband (one husband having many wives) to his Funeral Pile. Of which thus Saint *Hierome*, *Hæ igitur contendunt de amore viri, & ambitio ſumma certantium eſt ac teſtimonium caſtitatis dignum morte cenſeri.* A Cuſtome ſtill retained amongſt them; of which ſomewhat hath been ſaid already, and more is to be ſaid in another place.

Principall Rivers of this part, 1. *Hydaſpes*, by *Ptolomy* (and by him onely) called *Bidaſpes*, one of the furtheſt bounds of *Alexanders* Conqueſts. 2. *Suaſtus*, 3. *Coa*, 4. *Aceſines*, very memorable in the Geſts of *Alexander*. 5. *Sandabilis*. 6. *Zaradrus*: all coming from the Northern Mountains, and all falling (*Hydaſpes* with three other Rivers firſt received into it) into the greater bed of *Indus*. 7. *Diamna*, 8. *Sorabus*, and 9. *Soa*, falling from the Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10. *Naragonas*, iſſuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11. *Baris*, from *Bittigo*. 12. *Chaberis*, from *Adiſathris*. 13. *Tindis*, from the hill called *Uxentius*: and 14. *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of leſs note. By what names called at the preſent, I determine not; nor finde I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtleſs to be found in 1. *Catamul*, 2. *Cebcha*, 3. *Ray*, 4. *Chenao*, 5. *Rebeth*, all tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6. *Taphi*, 7. *Harunda*, 8. *Chambel*, 9. *Jamena*, which empty their water into *Ganges*; the which, with ſuch others of the principal Rivers which are now known by name to us, ſhall occaſionally be touched on in that which followeth. Beſides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Geſts of *Alexander*,

ander, (but the name occurreth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleaſant, ſhaded on every ſide with woods; memorable for the great refreſhment which it gave to *Alexanders* Army, when even pined with thirſt.

The Country ſo exceeding populous in the time of *Ptolomy*, that it afforded him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Countrey in the world. Of which, 1. *Cottiara*, 2. *Nigama*, 3. *Sageda*, 4. *Raraſſa*, 5. *Maſopelle*, and 6. *Pityndra*, are honoured with the name of *Metropoles*, as being the head Cities of their ſeveral and reſpective Nations. 7. *Ozene*, 8. *Sora*, 9.. *Palibothra*, 10. *Gange*, 11. *Batana*, 12. *Hippocnra*, 13 *Garara*, 14. *Modura*, 15. *Orthura*, and 16. *Malanga*, mentioned as the Royal ſeats of ſeveral Princes, by the name of *Regiæ*. 17. *Bardaxema*, 18. *Tyndis*, 19 *Argari*, 20. *Curula*, 21. *Chaberis*, on the River ſo called. 22. *Palura*, on the ſhores of the Gulf of *Bengala*, and 23. *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambyſum*, 24. *Tilegramocum*; marked out above the reſt with the name of *Civitates* (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not ſo diſtinguiſhed. And finally, 25. *Monogaſſum*, 26. *Simylla*, neer a Promontory of the ſame name, 27. *Nitra*, 28. *Maziris*, 29. *Elancorum*, 30. *Colchi*, 31. *Salur*, 32. *Sobura*, 33. *Poduca*, 34. *Melange*, 35. *Maliarpha*, 36 *Contaciſſyla*, 37. *Noſygne*, 38. *Barygaza*. Specified as the moſt noted and celebrious *Empories*; Beſides, 39. *Canthymus*, 40. *Stathmus*, (and 41. a Road oppoſite to *Chryſas*) two commodious *Stations* or Roads for ſhipping. The names and ſcituation of theſe places is the moſt we finde of them, which makes me paſs them over with a bare recital, only to ſhew how populous and well planted this Country was in the time of my Author.

Of leſs name, but of more note in the courſe of ſtory, 1. *Myſa*, built by *Bacchus* at the time of his *Indian* Conqueſt, and called thus by the name of his *Nurſe*, to preſerve her memory; his mother dying in Child-birth of him. Repleniſhed by him with his ſick and wounded Souldiers, whoſe poſterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who ſpared the City and the people for his love to *Bacchus*, who was therein worſhipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Bayes, Vines, and Ivy, whoſe ſhady branches covered the roofs of it. In the midſt thereof an Image, with all the Inſtruments belonging to a plentifull *Vintage*, all of gold or ſilver. 2. *Taxilla*, or *Taxiala* as *Ptolomy* calleth it, ſeated betwixt *Indus* and *Hydaſpes*, in the Region called *Varſa*; and built moſt probably by *Taxiles* a puiſſant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in elder times with a Temple dedicated to the *Sun*, and therein with an *Ivory* image of *Ajax*, a golden Statua of *Alexander*, and the portraiture of King *Porus*, made in Copper. The floor of *Moſaicall* work pouldred with Pearls, the walls of red marble interlayed with gold, which made it ſhine afar off, like a flaſh of lightning. 3. *Nagara*, called alſo *Dionyſiopolis*; in memory of *Bacchus*, who was alſo called *Dionyſius*, and *Liber Pater*. 4. *Adorne*, by *Diodorus* called *Aornos*, and *Avernus* by *Strabo*; ſo ſtrongly ſeated on a Rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, imitatating, and therein out-going the acts of *Hercules*, aſſault it with the greater force, and at laſt he carried it. *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaſpes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus* his beloved Horſe, which had ſerved him in all the courſe of his Fortunes, and died hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6. *Pireta*, another of his Foundations, ſo called by the name of his dog, whom he dearly loved. 7. *Aelexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his foundations alſo. 8. *Mazage*, on the Weſt of *Indus*, one of the firſt Towns of *India* taken by the *Macedonians*, though garriſoned within, and environed without by an hoſt of 300000 men: but yielded after ſome reſiſtance, with the uſe of her own body, by *Cleophe* the Queen thereof; who received it back with other favours from the hands of the Conquerour. 9. *Nora*, a ſtrong City on the ſame ſide of *Indus*, taken by *Polyſperchon*, one of his Commanders. 10. *Samus*, on the banks of the ſame River, taken by *Alexander* in the courſe of his Navigation down that Sea of Waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought againſt him with poiſoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolomy*, afterward King of *Ægypt*, was dangerouſly wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had ſeen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11. *Oxydrace*, the chief City of the *Oxydracans*, at the ſiege whereof *Alexander* is ſaid to be the firſt that ſcaled the walls, and the laſt that could do ſo: the Ladder breahing aſſoon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their Darts, he was by the Souldiers deſired to leap down amongſt them; but he in a daring *bravado* leaped into the Town among his enemies, where it was not only his good hap to light upon his feet, but to have an old tree at his back to defend him behind. In this poſture he is ſaid to have maintained the fight a long time againſt all the Souldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and by that example teaching the reſt to be more mannerly; till being wearied, aud dangerouſly wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of his body to his knees. In this caſe *Leonatus*, *Peuceſtes*, and ſome other of his Captains, came to aſſiſt him; who defended their dying Maſter, till the whole Army entred the Town, and put all the people to the ſword in revenge of their King, whoſe life they had little hope to enjoy, though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this ſtory, ranging it in the ſame Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Donzel d'l' Phœbo*, *Roſicleer*, *Belianis*, *Amadis*, and the reſt of the rabble of *Knights errant*. Neither is this the firſt time that *Curtius* hath diſgraced the ſoundneſs of *Alexanders* judgement, and the truth of his actions, with the like idle and impoſſible Fables: though indeed, in that particular, he ſaith, that it was *multo magis ad temeritatis quam ad gloriæ famam*. And 12. *Nicaa*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Aceſines*, in memory of his many great and ſignall victories. Not far from which, finding how unwilling his Souldiers were to paſs further Eaſt, he purpoſed to leave behinde him ſome Monument of his great exploits, and to make his fame immortall amongſt the *Indians*. And to that end he cauſed the form of his Camp to be enlarged, and the *Cabbins* to be made bigger than ſufficed for his men to lodge in; the *Mangers* to be ſet higher than his horſes could reach; *Armour* and *Bits* for horſes of too great a ſize (made not for uſe, but oſtentation of his might) to be ſcattered up and down the Camp; for the ſavage people to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongſt knowing men, but a ſuſpicion that his actions were intended leſs memorable than they are reported to have been; ſince he ſo vainly laboured to have them thought greater than indeed they were.

Gangem.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Indo-Scythæ*, inhabiting on the North-Weſt of *Indus*, the *Mazagæ*, *Sadani*, *Piratæ*, *Limyrices*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Arvari*, *Oxydracæ*, *Malli*, and *Lambaæ*, the *Gandarides*, or *Gangarides*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, the *Caſpirai*, under the ſhades of Mount *Vindius*. The *Muſicani*, *Chatziai*, *Polindæ*, *Phyllitæ*, *Bittigi*, *Chadramotitæ*, *Pezuari* *Adiſathri*, *Mandalæ*, *Dryllphitæ*, *Sabaræ*, *Pandioni*, with many others to the number 122 ſeveral Nations, if *Megaſthenes* be not out in his reckoning; too many and too impertinent to be muſtered here.

Originally deſcended from the Sons of *Noah*, before they left theſe Eaſtern parts to go towards the unfortunate valley of *Shinaar*. We could not elſe have found this Country ſo full of people in the days of *Semiramis*, the wife of *Ninus*: who leading an Army compounded of ſeveral nations, to the number of four millions and upwards (if *Cteſias*, and *Diodorus Siculus* who reports it from him, be of any credit, but certainly the greateſt Army that ever was raiſed) was encountered by *Staurobates*, a King of *India*, with greater forces made up of natural *Indians* onely; by whom ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth part of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than ſome one of thoſe Colonies, which were ſent from *BABEL*; or rather a ſecond or third *Swarm* of thoſe former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the firſt *Adventurers*. For that any of the firſt *Adventurers*, who were preſent at the building of the Tower of *BABEL*, travelled ſo far Eaſt, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the ſearch of their *plantations*. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, that the plantation of *India* preceeded the attempt of *BABEL*; though by whom made, there is nothing to be ſaid, for certain. Yet if I might have liberty to expreſs my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe that all the Eaſtern parts of *Perſia*, with *China*, and both the *Indiaes*, were peopled by ſuch of the Sons of *Sem*, as went not with the reſt to the Valley of *Shinaar*. For otherwiſe I can ſee no reaſon, that the poſterity of *Japhet* ſhould plant the greateſt part of the leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Iſles thereof; and that the ſons of *Cham* ſhould ſpread themſelves over *Babylonia*, *Paleſtine* the three *Arabiaes*, and the whole Continent of *Africk*: the poſterity of *Sem* being ſhut up in a corner of the greater *Aſia*, hardly ſo big as ſome one of the Provinces taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the ſons of *Sem* an equal Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in theſe Eaſtern Countries; ſpreading themſelves this way as they grew in numbers, before the reſt of the *Adventurers* went to ſeek new fortunes at the Tower of *BABEL*. And being that (the Country was large and wealthy, and might have room enough to ſpare for ſome ſecond commers eſpecially deſcending from the ſame root with them:) I doubt not but to place here all the ſone of *Jocktan*, *Havilah*, *Chatſarmaveih*, *Saba*, *Abimail*, who have left here ſome tract or monument of themſelves, as hath been ſhewn at large in our *GENERAL PREFACE*; and as concerning *Ophyr*, ſhall be ſhewed hereafter. To proceed therefore to our Story, the next who made any invaſion on this Country, after that of *Semiramis*, was *Bacchus* or *Liber Pater*, the ſon of *Jupiter* and *Semele*, accompanied with *Hercules Ægyptius*; not much more fortunate than ſhe: the forces of *Bacchus* being defeated, and *Hercules* forced to throw away his Golden Shield. But what they could not do by *Arms*, they effected by *Arts*. *Bacchus* inſtructing them in the uſe of *Wine*, Oyl, Sacrifices, and the Art of *Architecture*, and drawing them into Towns and Cities; for that cauſe honoured as a GOD. To *Hercules* they aſcribe the Nation of the *Pandioni*, proceeding from a daughter of his called *PANDÆA*: the memory of both preſerved in Statutes and Pillars errected by them.

After this, unattempted till the time of *Alexander*, who having made a full conqueſt of the *Perſian* Empire, invaded *India* with an Army of an 120000 fighting men. Beginning with *CLEOPHE*, Queen of the *Mazagæ*, a people of *Indo-Scythia*, he brought her to conformity, poſſeſſed himſelf both of her perſon and eſtate; on whom he begat a ſon called *Alexander*, who is ſaid to have ſucceeded in her Dominions. Being paſſed over the River *Indus*, *Taxiles* (by ſome called *Omphis*) a prudent Prince, whoſe Kingdom is affirmed to be bigger than *Egypt*, ſubmitted of his own accord: offering his ſervice and aſſiſtance to promote his conqueſt, and preſenting him with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents of ready money. This King made welcome, but his money not ſo much as looked on: the *Macedonian* being ſo far from fingering of this *Indian* gold, that gave him a thouſand Talents of his own treaſure. Encouraged by this Royal dealing, *Abiajares*, another puiſſant Prince of the oppoſite faction unto *Taxiles*, ſubmitted alſo, and was as graciouſly received: *Porus*, whoſe Kingdom lay on the other ſide of *Hydaſpes*, would not be ſo conquered, and therefore muſtereth up his forces, and valiantly made good the banks of the River. But vanquiſhed at the laſt, not without much difficulty, he was made a Priſoner to the Victor; who honouring the man for his brave reſiſtance, gave him his liberty and Kingdom with a great enlargement. The Conqueror had a great deſire to go further Eaſt, but the Souldiers would not be perſwaded: ſufficiently taught by *Porus*, what they were to look for, if the *Indians* ſhould unite their forces. Unable to prevail, he erected in the place twelve *Altars*, as high as *Towers*, where he obſerved many ſolemn Games and Sacrifices: and having ſacrificed to *Hydaſpes*, *Indus*, and *Aceſines*, he ſailed down *Indus* towards the Southern Ocean; which ſeen at diſtance, he turned towards *Gedroſia*, and thence to *Babylon*, where he died.

After his death *Eumenes* raiſed ſome part of his forces hence. But the *Macedonians* being plunged in

Gangem.

a *Civil* war, one *Androcottus*, ſtirred up the *Indians*, to recover their freedoms; making himſelf at firſt their Captain, but at laſt their King. Poſſeſſed of all that had been conquered by the *Greeks*, he was encountred by *Seleucus*, who had then got the command of *Aſia*: againſt whom he brought an army of 600000 fighting men. Frighted wherewith, *Seleucus* made peace with him, and contracted a ſolemn League betwixt them; continued with the interchange of friendly Offices amongſt their poſterity; and more confirmed by an interview betwixt *Antiochus* the *Great*, and *Saphagaſenus*, one of the Succeſſors of *Andracottus*; by whom *Antiochus* was preſented with 150 Elephants, and the promiſe of ſome treaſure to be ſent after him. By the poſterity of *Andracottus* was the Kingdom held, till the proſperity and full hight of the ROMAN Empire. The power whereof though they rather knew by report, then trial, yet was it not amiſs to entertain a potent, though remote State, in tearms of amity. Therefore they ſent Embaſſadors unto *Auguſtus*, who preſented him with a number of *Tigers*, (which beaſts) (ſaith *Dion*) till then, the *Romane* people had never ſeen) and which was the moſt pleaſing, a little Boy born without arms; who with his feet could bend a bow, ſhoot and play on wind inſtruments, as exactly as others with their hands. *Trajan* the Emperor had a great deſire to ſee this Country, but was diverted from that purpoſe by matters of more neceſſary importance to the State of his Empire. Moved with the fame of *Antonius*, the *Romane* Emperor, they ſent a ſolemn Ambaſſie to him; making him Umpire in ſome Controverſies which they had with the *Bactrians*: from which Ambaſſadors it is probable that *Ptolomy* the *Geographer* who then lived, might receive his informations of the eſtate of this Country. The like they did to *Julian* the *Apoſtate* alſo, then ſetting forwards on his expedition againſt the *Perſian*; deſiring his friendſhip and alliance. How it was with them in the time of *Conſtantine* and *Juſtinian*, hath been ſhewn already. After theſe times by little and little, hiſtories have been in a manner ſilent concerning the affairs hereof; but for ſome conqueſts made on the parts next *Perſia*, by the *Caliphs* of *Bagdet*. For notwithſtanding that there was continual traffick from the *Red-Sea* hither; and between the *Perſians*, *Turkiſh*, and *Indian* Merchants for ſpices, and the other commodities of this Region: yet were not theſe Merchants acquainted with the ſtate of the Country, becauſe they entered not into it; but were met by the *Indian* Merchants at *Sarmachand*, being as it were the common Emporie. Neither did the *Egyptians* at all enter into *India*, but were met by the *Indians* at *Ormus*, or ſome other Iſland: even as now the *Chinois*, make ſome of the *Philippina*, the ſtaple of their trade with the *Spaniards*; whom they licence not to come into the *Continent* among them. But our modern Travellers navigators have withdrawn this mask of obſcurity, and ſhew us her lively protraiture in as lively colors. One of the firſt which brake the ice, and gave us any certainty of their affairs, was Sir *John Mandeville*; accompted at his coming back, for the greateſt *Fabler* in the world: ſo incredible ſeemed his reports of the magnificence of thoſe Kings, and the wealth of their Countrys, and the many rarities which he found amongſt them. But better thought of by our neighbours, he obtained a monument in a Convent at *Leige* (where he ended the long courſe of his life and travels, 1372) the Friers of which keep ſome things of his, *Comme pour honorable memoire de ſon excellence*, for an honourable memorial of his Excellencies. Many of his *Relations* ſince confirmed by the *Portugals*, who under the conduct of *Vaſquez de Gama* firſt diſcovered this Country, by the new way of the Cape of *good hope*, *Anno* 1499 or there abouts. For ſo it hapned, that the *Portugals* having diſcovered all the Coaſts of *Africk*, as far as to Cape *Verd*, by the encouragement, and at the charge of *Henry* Duke of *Viſe*, one of the younger ſons of King *John* the firſt; began to think upon ſome way to the wealth of *India*, and getting into their own hands the rich trade of that Country. To which end it was firſt thought, that *Pedroid Cannanibla*, and *Alphonſo de Pagua*, ſhould make a journy into the Eaſt parts, to learn the certainty of the ſpice trade, and make report of ſuch other commodities, as theſe Countries yeilded. Being come at laſt by long journies to the City of *Calicute*, and having ſatisfied themſelves in the inquiry which they came about, they prepare for their return to *Portugal*. *Pagua* dying in the journey, and *Cannanilla* though detained by the *Hebbaſſine* Emperor, (commonly but corruptly called *Preſter John*) ſends home a full relation of his ſucceſſes; inflamed with which King *John* the ſecond ſends out *Bartholomew Diaz*, *Anno* 1587 to find out a way into the *Indies* by the back of *Africa*: who having ſayled as far as the Cape of *good hope*, without giving end to the Adventure, returned back to *Portugal*: Undertaken with better fortune 10 years after; at the command of King *Emanuel*, by *Vaſquez de Gama* above mentioned; who doubling the Cape, and ſayling Northward, all a long the ſhores of *Africk*, as far as the kingdom of *Melinde*, received from the King thereof both *Pilates*, and inſtructions to bring him to *Calicute*, where he found all true which *Cannanilla* had before reported. Full of good news at the end of 26 moneths, from his firſt ſetting out he returns to *Lisbone*, received for the preſent with joy and triumph, & about two years after (that is to ſay 1502) furniſhed with 13 Ships, and 3 Caravels, he ſets forward again, followed by *Stephen de Gama* the ſame year with 5 Ships more, by which great ſtrength he made himſelf Maſter of ſome Ports, & by that means layed the foundation of that great command, which the *Portugals* have attained unto in theſe Eaſtern Countries. Seconded in this great enterpiſe by *Ferdinando de Almeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuquerque*, and other noble Adventurers of the Realm of *Portugal*, as after them by ſuch of the *Europæan* Nations, as had the benefit and trade at the Weſtern Ocean.

If it be asked, why the *Caſtilians*, or *Spaniards*, being ſtrong in ſhipping bent not themſelves to the diſcovery of theſe wealthy Countries; it may be anſwered. 1. That they were buſied at the ſame time in the diſcovery and Conqueſt of the *new world*, which they looked on as a nearer, and no leſs profitable booty then this of *India*. 2 ly, The commodities of this Country, being brought home by the *Portugals*, were ſold to them at far cheaper rates; then they could have fetched them in their own bottoms. 3 ly, And chiefly, becauſe by the definitive ſentence of Pope *Alexander* the 6, both the *Caſtilians*, and the *Portugals*, were ſo limitted in their Navigations, that the *Caſtilians* might not intermeddle in the Eaſtern, nor the *Portugals* in the diſcovery or Conqueſt of the Weſtern parts, beyond the bounds which

he

Dulſinda.

he had ſet to thoſe ſeveral Nations before mentioned, and by ſome later obſervations we have been informed, that in this part of *India* were no fewer than 47 Kingdoms, whereof ſome few have ſtill their own natural Kings; the reſt all ſubject to the power of the *Great Mogul.* Contracted into a leſſer number by joyning many leſſer territories into one Diviſion, we ſhall look on it as diſtributed into 15 Provinces. Some have reduced them unto five, but give us neither the bounds nor extent of any of them. And others in the deſcription of their travels, ramble up and down with ſuch uncertainties, (moſt of them being men of trades and ignorance) that though they tell us where they lodged, and what entertainments they did meet with; yet we ſhall hardly know by them (for I think they did not know themſelves) in what Province they were: or to what part the ſeveral Towns thorow which they paſſed, did of right belong. So that our paſſage thorow theſe Countries (having ſuch blind guides to follow) will be full of difficulty, and not ſo ſatisfactory to the Reader as he might expect. Howſoever I deſire him to bear me company, whileſt I take the beſt ſurvey I can of theſe 15 Provinces, to which the whole may be moſt handſomely reduced: that is to ſay, 1. *Dulſinda*, 2. *Pengab*, 3. *Mandao*, 4. *Delly*, 5. *Agra*, 6. *Sanga*, 7. *Cambaia*, 8. *Decan*, 9. *Canara*, 10. *Malabar*, 11. *Narſinga*, 12. *Oriſtan*, 13. *Botanter*, 14. *Patenaw*, and 15. *Bengala.*

1. *DULSINDA.*

DULSINDA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Indus*; on the Weſt, with *Paropamiſus*, and *Arachaſia* two *Perſian* Provinces, but for the moſt parr, under the command of the *Great Mogul*; on the North, with *Caucaſus*, by which parted from *Tartary*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Cambaia.* So that it taketh up all the Northern parts of this Eſtate, which lie upon the Weſt of the River *Indus*: from which River called by the Natives *Sinda*, moſt probable it is that it took this name: and therefore I have written it with an *ſ*, *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda*, with a *c*, as I ſee ſome do, but on no good reaſon, for any thing that I am able to underſtand.

The Country by reaſon of the Northern ſcituation of it, more temperate, but leſs fruitful than the reſt of *India.* The ſeat, in antient times, of the *Mazagæ*, and *Indo-Scythæ*, when ſubdued by *Alexander.* Made up at preſent, of many leſſer Kingdomes, and ſmaller Provinces; denominated, for the moſt part, from the principal Towns and Cities of them, as in other places.

Amongſt which thoſe of moſt eſteem, are 1. *Caximir*, *Caſcimir*, or *Chuſmur*, (for by all theſe names it is called) the chief of a Kingdom once, unto which it gave name, till ſubdued by *Echebar* the *Mogul*; who in a pleaſant Iſland, (in the midſt of a great and deep Lake, about three leagues off the City) beſet round with Trees, built a Royal Palace: which he honoured ſometimes with his Court, removed hither from *Lahor*, partly the better to aſſure this new conquered Kingdom; but principally becauſe his Palace at *Labor*, and therein an infinite deal of Treaſute, had but newly been conſumed by fire. The City it ſelf ſcituate in the moſt healthy Country of all *India*, encompaſſed with high Mountains, covered for the moſt part of the year with ſnow: the reſt a delicate, goodly plain, diverſified with Paſtures, Woods, Corn-fields, Meadows, Parks, Gardens, and Rivers; even to admiration. The air hereof, and of the Country round about, by reaſon of the Northern ſcituation of it, and the ſnowie Mountains, very cool and temperate. The ſoil abundantly productive of Wheat, Rice, and Vines; which laſt they plant at the foot of the Mulberry-tree, which ſeemeth by this means to bear double fruits. Both Town and Kingdom ſubdued by *Echebar*, the *Mogul*, about the year 1597. their own diſſentions more conducing to that ſubjugation, than any viſible force which he brought before it. 2. *Roree*, a Fort of the *Moguls* towards *Paropamiſus*; but bordering upon the Country of *Multan*, to which People it properly belongeth: garriſoned not ſo much for fear of the *Perſian*, (for *Paropamiſus*, now called *Cabal*, is his antient Patrimony,) but to preſerve the People from the ſpoil of Thieves, who always hang about the Mountains. 3. In the moſt Northern parts hereof, ſtood the *Nagara* of *Ptolomy*; miſtook by ſome for the modern *Agra*, of which more anon. 4. *Seſtan*, the chief City as I take it, of the Kingdom of *Rebat*; ſcituate on the Eaſt of *Caximir*, betwixt it and the *Indus*: in the ſame Latitude with that, but not of ſo temperate an air; the ſnowy Mountains much conducing to the Temperature of the Realm of *Caximir.* 5. *Multan*, a great and antient City, and the chief of a Kingdom; on the South of *Caximir*, or *Cheſmur*; and about three *French* leagues from the banks of the River *Indus.* The ordinary thorow-fare of the *Caravans*, in the way from *Lahor* to *Spahan*, (the chief Seat of the *Sophy* or King of *Perſia*) forced to abide there divers days, ſometimes ten or twelve, to enrich the Town; which of it ſelf is of no great trading, nor otherwiſe able to ſubſiſt but by this device; famed moſt eſpecially for many excellent Bows and Arrows made in it. The Bows made of horn; excellently glued and put together: the Arrows of ſmall Canes or Reeds, both of them ſet off by rich *Paint* and *Varniſh.* They which are made here being more neat and good than in any part of *Eaſt India* beſides. There is another Town and Kingdom of or near this name on the other ſide of the River *Indus*, of which we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. 6. *Duckee*, a Fort or Garriſon, ſcituate in the Streights of the Mountains to ſecure the *Caravans*, and protect other Paſſengers from the danger of Robbers, hovering in theſe hill-countries, the out-parts of this Empire.

2. *PENGAB.*

OPpoſite to *Dulſinda*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Indus*, but more inclining towards the South, lieth the Country, or Diviſion rather, which my Author calleth by the name of *PENGAB*: bounded on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which divideth it from *Dulſinda*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Mandoa*; on the North, and Eaſt, with thoſe many Kingdoms, which we have comprehended under the name of *Botanter*.

The reaſon of the name I find not,nor any thing memorable of the Country; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambata*, *Caſpiria*, *Cylindrine*, and *Sauſtene*; ſubdued by *Alexander* in his expedition into *India*: the famous Rivers of *Aceſines*, and *Hydaſpis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their courſe. So that it ſeemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdom of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of moſt importance in it. 1. *Lahor*, on the Eaſtern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the faireſt and moſt antient City in both the *Indies*; of moſt eſteem for wealth and greatneſs. In compaſs about ſixteen miles,and honoured for a while with the ordinary Reſidence of the Great *Mogul*; till on the burning of his Palace: ſpoken of before, he removed his Court to *Caximir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at laſt to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldeſt ſon, or heir apparent, ſent hither for avoiding all occaſion of factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding trade, as being the chief Staple for the Spices in theſe parts,and other commodities of *India*, from hence tranſported into *Perſia* by the way of *Candahor*, the principal Town of *Arachoſia*; and ſo to *Spahan* the chief City of the *Sophian* Empire; where they are ſold,by reaſon of ſo long and chargeable a journey, at exceſſive rates. It is ſaid that 12000 camels at the leaſt,paſs every year thorow it with their lading, beſides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormus* till that Town was taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great Maſs of treaſure which a late Governour hereof did leave behind him. At whoſe death *Echebar* the *Mogul* (for the *Mogul* is the heir General unto all mens wealth) found in his Coffers three millions of Gold ready coined, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoined,& ſome ſtore of Jewels: beſides Horſes,Elephants,Houſhold-furniture, and other goods almoſt invaluable. 2. *Sultan-puare*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good eſteem. 3. *Athec*, in the common Road from *Lahor* to *China*; reported in the deſcription of the travels of *Benedictus a Goes*, a *Portugal Jeſuite*, to be a moneths journey from *Lahor*, and yet in the ſame Province with it. Which if it be true,either the Province muſt be large,or his journies ſhort: or if not true, we muſt remember that we had it from the pen of a *Jeſuite*. And yet as great as this Province or Diviſion is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns, of conſideration which may be ſaid with confidence to belong unto it; unleſs perhaps we may reduce under this Diviſion the Kingdoms of *Haiacan* and *Buchor*, of which laſt the chief City is called *Bucorſuccor*, enriched by the neighbourhood of the *Indus*, but not elſe obſervable.

3. *MANDAO.*

THe Kingdom of *MANDAO* is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*; on the Eaſt,with *Delly*; and on the Weſt,with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao*, the chief City of it.

The Country more mountainous and rugged than the reſt of theſe Provinces by reaſon of the many branches of Mount *Bittigo* (the Southern part of the *Imaus*) which do over-run it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The men, as moſt of thoſe who live in ſuch mountainous tracts, of a warlike temper, comparatively with the reſt of the *Indians*: the women here antiently as valiant as the men in other places; riding aſtride, and practiſed in the Arts of Horſemanſhip; for that cauſe called *Amazons*; ſome of which are ſaid to be ſtill remaining. Inſomuch as it is written in the ſtories hereof, that the King of this Country not long ſince going to the wars, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife, marching in the Front of two thouſand women, all well mounted and prepared for ſervice.

Chief Cities hereof, 1. *Mandao*, ſeated on the banks of the River *Mandavo*, (the *Manda* of *Ptolomy* and the Antients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, ſaid to be 30 miles in compaſs; yet ſo well fortified, and furniſhed with all neceſſaries for defence and reſiſtance, that it held out twelve years againſt *Mirumudius*, or *Merhamed*, the *Great Mogul*, who then beſieged it. Surrendred at the laſt, and with it the Kingdom. Memorable for the great battel fought before it, betwixt the ſaid *Merhamed*, then coming to the relief thereof; and *Badurius* King of *Cambaia* who had then diſtreſſed it: in which *Badurius* loſt his tents and Treaſures,and was fain to flie diſguiſed unto *Diu*, to crave aid of the *Portugals*. 2. *Moltan*, which being miſtaken for another Town, of or neer the ſame name, on the Weſtern ſide of the *Indus*, is by ſome writer ſaid to have been once the chief City of a Kingdom, or a Kingdom rather of it ſelf, but of no great note: the women whereof though not ſo good ſouldiers as their Anceſtors of the female ſex, yet to come as neer them as they can, uſe boots and ſpurs when they take a journey, and ſo fitted ſit aſtride the ſaddle. 3. *Scernus*, on the River ſo called, of more Antiquity than greatneſs; as is alſo, 4. *Polymbothie*, the *Palibothra* of *Ptolomy* and others of the antient writers; then the chief Town of the *Palibothei* (by *Plini* and *Strabo*, called *Praſii*) a people of as great authority and power as any in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf of great power & wealth,till *Badurius* King of *Cambaia* having conquered the Realm of *Citor*,and therewith a great part of *Sanga*, made an attempt upon this alſo. *Galgee* then King of *Mandao* finding himſelf too weak for ſo ſtrong an Enemy, craved aid of *Merhamed* (or *Miramudius* as the *Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*; then reigning in *Chabul* or *Arachoſia*, and poſſeſſed of ſome parts of *India* alſo ſince the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own ſubjects, ſome mercinary *Perſians*, and a great body of *Zagathatan Tartars*, from whom originally deſcended, came in accordingly: diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Badurius*, conſiſting of 150000 horſe, and 500000 foot, in two ſet battels, the firſt at *Doceti*,the next at *Mandao*; and following his blow poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Kingdom of *Cambaia*. But not content with that ſucceſs, quarrelled the *Mandoan* King in whoſe aid he came; beſieged him in his principal City,which at laſt he won, and therewithal the

Kingdom alſo: the wretched King ſhewing hereby a fair both evidence and example to ſucceeding ages, that the eaſieſt way for a Prince to ruine his own eſtate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Forrein power into his own Dominions; which he cannot as eaſily thruſt out, as he hath brought them in.

4. Delly.

4. DELLY.

DELLY is bounded on the Weſt, with *Mandao*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdom of *Botanter*; on the North, with the Eaſtern parts of *Pengab*; on the South, with the Eaſtern parts alſo of the Kingdom of *Agra*. So named from DELLY the chief City of it, by ſome called *Delin*.

The Country, beſides what is common to it with the reſt of *India*, is ſaid to be more abundantly ſtored than any other part of it, with Horſes, Elephants, and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing ſingular, except it be that many of them taking more delight in theevery than honeſt trades, live for the moſt part upon ſpoil: but thoſe eſpecially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being ſuch of the nobility or better ſort, who ſince the conqueſt of their Country by the *Great Moguls*, have lived like *Out-Laws* on the Mountains. Of the ſame temper with the *Reſbutes* in *Cambaia*, and the *Agwans* in *Sanga* and *Dulſinda*; who rather than ſubmit themſelves to a Forrein yoak, (as they count that of the *Mongul*) chooſe to forſake their proper dwellings, and all honeſt ways and means of living.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Delly*, A City not onely honoured heretofore with the reſidence of the great *Moguls*, who from hence paſs in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongſt their moſt knowing Subjects; but beautified with many ſepulchres of their ancient Kings, whoſe funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deſerted of late times, by the *Great Moguls*, moving their Courts from place to place, as they inlarged their Empire, and increaſed their conqueſts: yet ſtill a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains and Commanders, do frequent the ſame; and have their houſes and pleaſure of retirement in it. 2. *Tremel*, upon the Weſtern ſide of the River *Mandova*; but not much obſervable. 3. *Doceti*, memorable for the great battle fought, neer unto it, in which *Merhamed* the *Mongul* overthrew the forces of *Badurius*, and thereby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambaia*.

This Country governed a long time by its natural Princes, was at laſt conquered by ſome *Moores*, or *Saracens*, coming from *Perſia* and *Arabia*, but I find not which; who grew to ſo great power and wealth, that *Sanoſaradine*, a *Mahometan*, one of their *Deſcendants*, dreamt of no leſs than the conqueſt of all *India*, if not of the whole Continent of *Aſia* alſo. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for the beginning of the *Ottoman* Empire) ſubdued by little and little all the neighbouring Princes, which made head againſt him; he pierced at laſt into *Canora*, now called *Decan*: and conquering a great part of it returned back to *Delly*. The purſuit of his victories he left unto one *Abdeſſa* his Lieutenant there, who added the reſt of that Country to his Maſters Territories; but kept the poſſeſſion to himſelf: confirmed therein by *Sanoſaradine*, with the title of *Regent*. But *Sanoſaradine* dying in a war againſt the *Perſians*, left for his Succeſſor a ſon ſo unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him unto other *Maſters*, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithſtanding of ſufficient power to preſerve it ſelf, from any of their equal neighbors, till the riſing of the *Great Monguls*: whoſe puiſſance being unable to withſtand, it ſubmitted at the laſt to *Adabar*, the ſon of *Merhamed*, the ſecond Emperor of this line: who to aſſure himſelf of the peoples loyalty, and confirm his conqueſts, ſettled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next proſperous emergency, as before was noted.

5. AGRA.

THe Realm of AGRA is bounded on the North, with *Delly*, and *Mandao*; on the South with *Sanga*, and *Cambaia*; on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the Kingdom of *Cambaia*; on the Eaſt, with *Oriſtan*, or *Orixa*. So called from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal, of late times, of the *Great Monguls*.

The Country ſaid to be the beſt and moſt pleaſant of *India*, plentiful in all things, and ſuch a delicate, even piece of ground, as the like is hardly to be ſeen. Well watered, as with other Rivers, ſo moſt eſpecially with thoſe of *Tamlico*. and *Jemena*; which laſt runneth thorow the middeſt of it, North and South, or rather from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt, from whence bending more directly Eaſt-wards, it falleth at laſt into the *Ganges*, or that which is ſuppoſed to be *Ganges*, for the bed of that great River is not certainly known. The people for the moſt part Gentiles, *Mahometaniſm* coming in with the *Great Moguls* and generally inclining ſomewhat to the *Pythagorean*. For ſuch as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena* neither eat fleſh, nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they eſteem ſo ſacred, that thereof they uſually make their Temple, and ſay their prayers therein, but naked (in which poſture they both dreſs their meat and eat it) lodging upon the ground, being impoſed by them as a penance, and ſo conceived.

Places of moſt eſteem herein, 1. *Fatepore*, or *Fettibarri*, on the Weſt-ſide of the River, a very fair and goodly City; once beautified with a Royal Pallace here built by *Echebar* (after the removal of his Court from *Caſcimer*) with many ſpacious gardens belonging to it; but much decaied, ſince the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which moſt of the ſtones are carried, and no ſmall quantity of Corn ſowed within the Walls. 2. *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*, inferiour to *Lahor* for wealth and greatneſs, but far more populous: the conſtant reſidence of the Court here in theſe latter times, drawing to it great reſort of all ſorts of people. By ſome ſuppoſed to be the *Negara* of *Ptolomy*, but ſuch a ſuppoſition as is built on no better ground, than ſome reſemblance of the names. For *Ptolomies Nigara* is by him placed on the Weſtern-ſide of *Indus*, in the Latitude of 33. whereas this *Agra* ſtandeth on the Eaſt of the River *Jemena*, five degrees more Southwards, in the Latitude of 28. But what it loſeth in Antiquity, it hath got in honour: the Town and Territory being a peculiar Kingdom, till *Echebar* the *Mogull* ſubdued it, Anno 1598. in his paſſage from *Lahor* to *Decan*. But it loſt nothing by the hand. For *Echebar* delighted in the ſcituation of it (and that withall it ſtood in the middeſt of his Kingdoms) made it the Seat Royal of his Empire; fixt there, for the moſt part ever ſince: by means whereof exceedingly increaſed in wealth, beauty and greatneſs: the very Caſtle in which the *Mogul* uſually reſideth, being two miles in compaſs, invironed with moſt high and unſcalable wals, and fortified with great ſtore of Ordnance. The whole ſpace betwixt it and *Fatipore*, being 18 miles, beautified with many *Mahometan* Temples, and with one alſo built by *Echabar*, for the uſe of ſuch *Chriſtians*, as had been gained unto the faith, by the care and diligence of the *Jeſuits* for the ſupply hereof with victuals, and other neceſſary proviſions, and the ſecurity of ſuch as reſort unto it, affirmed to be a continual Market: and all the *Intervall* from hence to the Town of *Lahor* (from which diſtant 400 miles towards the South) adorned with continual Rows of Trees on both ſides of the waies, moſt of them bearing a kind of Mulberry; and at every ten miles end, houſes erected by the King or ſome of the Nobles, for beautifying the way to the Regal City, for preſerving their own memory, and the ſafe lodging of Paſſengers, in danger otherwiſe by night, of Theeves and Cut-throats. 3. *Hendee*, a Town more towards the South, beautified with a fair Caſtle of the Kings, cut out of the main Rock, and wrought with carved work round about; fortified with 50 pieces of Ordnance, and thought impregnable: for that cauſe made a Priſon for great perſons. Here are alſo two Hoſpitals for ſuch Captains (and Captains only) as are maimed in the Wars. 4. *Biani*, twelve courſe or 18 miles from *Pattipore*; the moſt noted place for *Indico* in all the *Indies*; for the making whereof they have here twelve Mills: Which *Indico* (by the way) groweth on a ſmall ſhrub like our Gooſe-berry-buſhes, bearing ſeed like a Cabbage-ſeed; which being cut down, are laid in heaps for half a year, and when rotten, brought into a vault, to be troden with oxen from the Stalks; and being ground ſmall and fine at the Mills, is laſt of all boyled in Furnaces, refined, and ſorted, and ſo ſold to the Merchants.

To this diviſion alſo we may reduce the Kingdom of *Gwaliar*, ſo called of *Groaliar* the chief City, where the *Mogul* hath a very rich treaſury of Gold and Silver; kept in a very ſtrong Caſtle, wherein his Priſoners are ſecured likewiſe; And for thoſe reaſons, continually guarded by a ſtrong Company of ſtout and well-appointed Souldiers.

6. *SANGA.*

SANGA is bounded on the North, with the Eaſt parts of the Realm of *Agra*; on the South, and Weſt, with *Cambaia*; from which parted on the Weſt, by the Mountain *Gate*; and on the Eaſt with *Oriſtan*. The reaſon of the Name I find not: this Country being too far South to be ſo called from *Sangalaſſa*, a Town of chief note near the Fountains of *INDUS*, where placed by *Arianus*, Lib. 5.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Azmere*, or *Agimer*, 180 miles from *Agra*. At the end of every courſe (each courſe a mile and a half) a fair pillar erected, and at every tenth courſe a fair *Seraglio*, (ſuch as we call Inns) for the entertainment of Travellers. All built by *Echebar*, who wanting children, is ſaid to have gone in pilgrimage, on foot from *Agra* to *Azimere*; ſaying his prayers at the end of every courſe, and lodging all night at the tenth. 2. *Citor*, the chief City of *Sanga*, and once a Kingdom of it ſelf, or the chief of that Kingdom. Scituate in the middle way betwixt *Surat*, a known Port of *Cambaia*, and *Agra* ſpoken of before; and moſt magnificently built on the top of a rocky hill, to which the paſſage is ſo narrow, and ſo well fortified (there being in it three Gates, at the top, the middle, and the bottom) that thereby, and by other advantages of Art and Nature, it was thought impregnable. Affirmed to be 12 miles in compaſs, beautified with many goodly buildings both publick and private; but once more glorious then it is; here being to be ſeen the ruines of 100 Temples, and above 100000 houſes, either demoliſhed by the wars, or ſuffered to decay by the *Great Moguls*, who would not willingly have any thing in the *Indies* of more Antiquity then themſelves; and therefore are rather inclined to build new Cities, then uphold the old. The greatneſs and Antiquity of it have made ſome men think, that it was the Royal ſeat of *Porus*. Others affirm the ſame of *Delly*, but neither rightly: the Kingdom of *Porus* lying more towards the River *Indus*, and not ſo far South. Governed not long ſince by a Queen called *Crementina*, not more fair then valiant, who revolting from *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, to whom ſhe formerly had paid tribute, was diſpoſſeſſed of the Town of *Citor*, where ſhe had fortified her ſelf with 30000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe: the people in a deſperate reſolution, laying all their treaſures on a heap, which they burnt together with themſelves; in which flame it is ſaid that there periſhed 70000 perſons. But the *Cambaian* did not long enjoy his victory. For not long after, both the City and a great part of the Country, was conquered by the *Great Mogul*; the mountainous parts hereof being held againſt him by *Ramee*, the Son or Succeſſor of Q. *Crementina*: till ſeeing himſelf deſtitute of all better helps, he put himſelf into the hands of one of the Sons of the late Sultan, by whom reconciled unto his Father. Some other Towns there are in this Province, and in the reſt before mentioned, and thoſe of good eſteem perhaps among the natives; but of no obſervation or importance in the courſe of buſineſs. Under this name we may alſo comprehend the Kingdom of *Nagracol*, ſo called of the chief City of it; and that moſt memorable for a rich and ſumptuous Chappel, ſeeled and paved with Plate of pure Silver, moſt curiouſly imbaſſed over head in ſeveral figures, which they keep exceeding bright, often rubbing, and continual burniſhing. *Malway*, another of theſe Kingdoms, ſar as near neighbourhood to *Citer*, may be placed here alſo, affirmed to be a fruitful Province, and the chief City of it to be called *Rantipere*.

7. CAMBAIA.

CAMBAIA hath on the Eaſt, *Delly*, and part of *Mandao*; on the Weſt, *Gedroſia* a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, on the North, *Dulſinda*, and the reſt of *Mandao*; on the South, the main Ocean; and ſome part of *Decan*. It lieth on both ſides of the *Indus*; and is ſo called from *Cambaia*, the chief Province of it. The whole divided into. 1. *Sinda*. 2. *Guzarate*, and 3. *Cambaia* eſpecially ſo called.

1. SINDA (by ſome called the Kingdom of *Tatta*, from *Tatta* the chief City of it) hath on the Eaſt the River *Indus*, by which ſeparated from *Mandao*; on the North, that part of *India* which is called *Dulſinda*; on the Weſt, parts of *Gedroſia*, and *Guzarate*; and on the South, the reſt of *Guzarate* only: coaſting along the Weſtern Banks of the River *Indus*, whence it had the name; that River being now called *Sind*, as was ſaid before. And for this reaſon, as I take it, the Weſtern part of *India* lying North of this, took the name of *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* (with a C) as moſt commonly written.

The Country for the generality very rich and fertile; but in ſome places nothing but a ſandy *Deſart*, inhabited for the moſt part by wild Aſſes, Foxes, Deer, and ſome wilder beaſts: but none ſo wild as the *Calies*, a robbing Nation, ſo numerous withal, that they ſomtimes rob whole *Caravans* as they paſs that way; notwithſtanding the many Forts and Caſtles built on purpoſe to ſecure thoſe paſſages.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Tutta* (or *Gutn Negar Tutta*) on the banks of *Indus*, a Town of great Trade, but moſt frequented by the *Portugals*; who here receive ſuch *Indian* Commodities as come down the water from *Labor*; returning Pepper in exchange, which they bring up the River from their other *Factories*. 2. *Lawribander*, at the mouth or out let of the *Indus*, three daies journey from *Tutta*, the Port-town unto which it is, notwithſtanding that diſtance. Suppoſed to be ſcituate in or near the place of that *Alexandria* which *Alexander* built in memory of his Navigation down this River to the *Indian* Ocean. An Haven much frequented, becauſe free from worms; which about *Surat*, and other Havens on theſe Seas, ſo infeſt the Ships, that without much coſt and care beſtowed upon them, they make them unable to return. 3. *Calwalla*, memorable for the *Tenure*; as given by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, to a Company of Women and their Poſterity for ever, to bring up their Daughters to Dancing, and more wanton exerciſes. 4. *Radempoore*, a great Town with a ſtrong Caſtle, ſeated at the edge of the *Deſarts*: through which thoſe that are to paſs, uſe here to provide themſelves of water and other neceſſaries for their journey. 5. *Nuraquemire*, a pretty Town on the further ſide of the Deſarts, eſteemed a *Paradiſe* by ſuch as have paſſed through thoſe dangerous and uncomfortable ſands, for the ſpace of ten or twelve daies journey. 6. *Sarrama*, a large Town, twenty miles from *Tutta*; the Center in which all lines meet, and from whence the diſtances of all Towns in *Sinda*, are accuſtomably meaſured.

The Countrey anciently ſubject to the King of *Cambaia*, and in the right of that Crown to the Great *Mongul*: but the people for the moſt part ſo untamed and maſterful, that except in ſome of the greater Towns, they pay no *Tributes*; and in ſome places even within half a daies journey of *Tutta*, will acknowledge no King, but rob and ſpare whom they pleaſe. If at any time the *Mongul* ſends a force againſt them (as he doth ſomtimes) they fire their houſes, made like a *Bee-hive* of ſtraw and mortar, which are ſoon rebuilded; and retire themſelves unto the Mountains. Yet one good quality they have amongſt many ill ones. When they have robbed a *Traveller*, took money of him in the way of toll or cuſtom for his paſſage by them, they will conduct him honeſtly to the end of the *Deſarts*, leſt any ſhould rob him but themſelves.

2. GUZARATE hath on the North, *Sinda*; on the South, the main Ocean; the River *Indus* on the Eaſt; on the Weſt, *Gedroſia*, which the *Indians* call *Nawatacos*, but the *Perſians*, *Circam*.

The Soyl of the ſame temper and fertility with that of *Cambaia*, ſpecially ſo called; and there we ſhall ſpeak further of it. The common people whom they call *Guzorates*, of the ſame diſpoſition generally with the reſt of the *Indians*: but the greateſt part of the Countrey is poſſeſſed by the *Resbutes* or *Rasboocbes*, the ancient Inhabitants of this tract. Who when their Countrey was ſubdued by the *Moores* or *Saracens*, retired into the Mountains and faſtneſſes of it; ſtanding upon their guard, and were never yet ſubdued by the great *Monguls*. Who though poſſeſſed of the Sea-ſhores, and moſt Towns of conſequence, are fain to leave the In-land parts and open Countries to the power of theſe *Out-lawes*: who either prey upon the people, or force them to compound for their peace and quiet at uncertain prices. Their Arms moſt commonly a Sword, Buckler, and Launce; well-horſed, and reſolute in any thing which they undertake: which made one of the *Moguls* ſay of them, *that no men in the world knew to die, but they*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Diu*, in a *Peninſula* looking towards *Perſia*, but on the Eaſt-ſide thereof, near the mouth of *Indus*. Poſſeſſed by the *Portugal*, and by them fortified with a ſtrong and impregnable Citadel; built with the leave and liking of King *Badurius*, thereby to buy their aid againſt *Merhamed* the *Mongul*, who had newly vanquiſhed him. A matter of ſuch conſequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Botelius* confined to *India* for ſome Crimes by him committed, undertook (in hope by the merit of that ſervice to obtain his pardon) to carry the firſt news of it in a ſmall veſſel, not above 18 foot long, and but 6 foot broad (the beſt which for the preſent could be provided) which with

great

Cambaia.

great courage he performed, and thorow that large, wide and tempeſtuous Ocean came in ſafety with his news to *Lisbon*; to the great joy of the King, but greater admiration of all ſorts of people. Scarce ſettled in their new poſſeſſion, when beſieged by *Solyman Baſſa*, Admiral to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 Ships and Gallies, *Anno* 1537. offended with the *Portugalls* for aiding the King of *Perſia*, more for diverting the Spice-trade from *Alexandria*. In which he had ſo ill ſucceſs, that having aſſaulted it in vain with his Land-forces, he was fain to raiſe his ſiege in ſuch haſt and tumult, that he left his great Ordnance behind him. 2. *Sauran*, a Town and Caſtle of the *Resbutes*, ſpoken of before; and by them held againſt the power of the *Great Mongul*. 3. *Boldra*, a very fair and beautiful City, but of no great compaſs. 4. *Ardovat*, not far from the banks of the *Indus*, on the North of this Region towards *Sinda*. 5. *Madabat*: by ſome called *Amadabat*, aſſirmed to be both for wealth and greatneſs the chief of *Guzarate*, near as big as *London*; well walled, and ſcituate on a plain near the Rivers ſide: ſeldom without Merchants of all Religions: *Jews*, *Gentiles*; *Chriſtians*, *Moors*, ſome of all, and neither. 6. *Saringa*, 7. *Periano*, 8. *Serkeſſe*; this laſt remarkable for the Sepulchres of the old Kings of *Cambaia*; fair, and well kept, and viſited from all parts of the Kingdom.

Nothing conſiderable in this part of the Countrey: as to point of ſtory, but what is common to them with the reſt of *Cambaia*; but that the *Resbutes*, or *Rasboothes* ſtill remain unconquered. Poſſeſſed not only of the hills and Mountains, but of ſome ſtrong holds; and governed by the Heads of their *Caſts* or Tribes, all which acknowledge the *Mongul* for their *Superiour* in regard of his power, but none of them obey him as their Lord or Soveraign: conceiving it to be ſome abaſement of their own authority, if they admit of him as an Umpire to compoſe their differences, which they ſometimes do.

3. *CAMBAIA* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the North, *Mandao*, on the South, the main Ocean, and ſome part of *Decan*; on the Eaſt, *Surat*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains; on the Weſt, the Main Ocean, with ſome part of *Guzarate*. It ſtandeth on the Eaſt-ſides of the out-lets of *Indus*, running along the Sea-ſhore for 500 miles, and took this name from *Cambaia* the chief City of it.

The Countrey ſaid to be the moſt fruitful of all *India*, abounding in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Spices of all ſorts, and choiceſt fruits: of Silk and Cotton ſo great plenty, that they fraught yearly forty or fifty ſhips with thoſe commodities. In the mountains they find *Diamonds*, *Chalcedonies*, and a kind of *Onyx*-ſtone, which are called *Cornelines*, and corruptly *Cornelians*. Amongſt the rarities hereof, they reckon the *Abades*, a great Beaſt, twice as big as a Bull, having on their ſnowts a little horn, and the hide ſo hard, as no man can pierce it with a thruſt; which is the *Rhinoceros* of the Antients.

The people effeminate and unwarlike, and therefore not much uſed by the *Moguls* in a war of conſequence; to ſupply which defect he furniſheth himſelf with Souldiers out of *Perſia*, of which his ſtanding bands conſiſt; moſt of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation alſo. More given to Merchandiſe than war, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitful withal) as any people in the world: treacherous in their truſt, proud in their carriage, bloody upon advantage, and much given to *Venerie*; ignorant of letters, but well practiſed in *Mechanical* Arts. In matters of Religion for the moſt part *Gentiles*, not knowing or contemning the Law of *Mahomet*; but very punctual in their own heatheniſh ſuperſtitions. The *Bannians* in this Countrey: being natural *Indians*, nuſled in Paganiſm, and ſo wedded to their old Idolatries, that no perſwaſions can prevail with them, make the greateſt number, and ſeem to be all *Pythagoreans* in ſome opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath blood or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plantons and ſuch natural fruits; paying a large *Revenue* yearly to the *Great Mogul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongſt them. And becauſe new opinions ſhould not grow amongſt them, they marry in their own *Tribes* onely, and never out of their own *Trades*; ſecure thereby as they conceive from all *innovations*.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Cambaia*, three miles from the *Indus*, and as many in compaſs, one of the neateſt and beſt built in all the Eaſt. So populous withal, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families, and is therefore called the *Caire* of the *Indies*. Of moſt eſteem in all this Kingdom (though far leſs than *Modabat*) to which it doth impart its name. 2. *Barocho*, Southwards of *Cambaia* on the top of an hill, with a fair River underneath it: well-walled, and noted for the beſt *Calicuts* (a kind of linnen Cloth ſo called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was firſt made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. 3. *Swalley*, ſtill more unto the South, and about a mile from the Sea ſhore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the ſhips ride which trade at *Surat*. 4. *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Swalley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and ſhallops fortified with a Caſtle of ſtone well ſtored with Ordnance. The houſes for the moſt part of Sun-dried bricks, very large and laſting: built with flat roofs, but battlemented on all ſides for fear of falling; and beautified with goodly Gardens of Pomegranates, Melons, Figs, and Limons, interlaced with Riverets and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the *Engliſh* Merchants, who have here their Preſident, and a magnificent houſe for the reception, and ſtaple of their Commodities. 5. *Neriand*, a great Town, and as remarkable for the making of *Indico*, of the matter and making whereof we have ſpoken already, when we were at *Biani*, Town or City of the Kingdom, or Diviſion of *Agra*, as memorable for that commodity as this *Neriand*, or any other of all *India*. 6. *Daman*, upon the Sea-ſide over againſt *Diu*, and poſſeſſed as that is by the *Portugals*. A beautiful and pleaſant Town fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle at the North-end of it, of white chalky ſtone, well planted with Ordnance: oppoſite whereunto on the South-ſide of the Town, a goodly Church, edged a top with white. Which with the houſes for the moſt part of the ſame colour alſo: afford a pleaſant proſpect to the Sailors by. 7. *Campanel*, ſcituate on the top of an high mountain, and environed with a ſeven-fold wall, once the ſeat Royal of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8. *Dacaiotote*, a place of ſuch ſtrength, that the great *Moguls* could never get it by force. Rendred at the laſt upon compoſition, conditioned they ſhould ſtill be governed by a King of their own. 9. *Netherby*, a

great

Decan.

great market of brazen ware, beaſts, and Armour. 10. *Bandore.* 11. *Tanai*, &c.

This Kingdom taken in *Guzarate* and *Sinda*, as parts hereof, is extremely populous; ſaid to contain 60000 Towns and Villages, very well inhabited: but the people not accuſtomed to, or unfit for wars. Antiently governed by Kings of their own, it was firſt ſubdued by the *Arabians* or *Moors*, Anno 1423 under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machamut*; who having forced the *Resbutes* or naturals of the Country to betake themſelves unto the Mountain, was made King hereof. To him ſucceeded his ſon *Mamudius*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was ſupplied by his ſon *Badurius*; who having conquered the Kingdom of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandao* alſo. His Army for that war conſiſted of 500000 foot, 150000 horſe, 1000 great pieces of Ordnance, 500 wagons loaded with powder and ſhot, and as many wain-loads of gold and ſilver to pay his Army. But being diſcomfited in two great battels by *Merhamed* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgee* the *Mandoan* King had called in to his aid; he ſhaved his beard, and fled in a diſguiſe to *Diu* then poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, whom he licenced in that diſtreſs to build the *Citadel*: ſlain afterwards by a mean Mariner, at his return from the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, whom he had viſited on ſhip-board. And though *Mamudius* his Succeſſor endeavoured to free his Kingdom from both pretenders; yet weakned with the loſs of ſo great an Army, he was not able to effect it. Firſt driven from *Diu*, which he had beſieged both by Sea and Land, to his great diſhonour; and after vanquiſhed in battel by *Adabar* the ſon of *Merhamed*, not far from *Serkeſſe*, the antient burial-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but then the Sepulchre of the Kingdom; which by that victory fell to the *Great Monguls*, who have ſince enjoyed it.

8. *DECAN.*

D*ECAN* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with the *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Cambaia*; on the South with *Malavar*, and *Canara*. The reaſon of the Name we ſhall have anon.

It lieth along the Sea-coaſt, for the ſpace of 250 miles, betwixt *Aliga*, and *Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending Eaſt, as far as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thruſting into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and thoſe mountains, till it meet with *Cambaia*. The ſoil much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *India*, but not ſo flouriſhing as *Cambaia*. The people for the moſt part *Mahometans*, which Religion was firſt planted there by the Conqueſts of *Sa Noſaradine*, 350 years ago; yet not without ſome entermixture of their antient *Gentiliſm*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Bider*, the Seat Royal of *Mamudza*, once ſole King of this Country, Who to beautifie and adorn this City, commanded every one of his *Prefects*, or ſubordinate Governors, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reſide therein certain moneths in the year; each one to leave a ſon there in perpetual hoſtage. Scituate in the moſt Northern parts of the Country more neer the borders of *Delly*: from the King whereof *Mamudza* had then newly revolted; and therefore would make ſure of this place, as moſt in danger. 2. *Viſapore*, bordering on *Cambaia*, the Princely Seat of *Idalcan*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, after it was diſmembred into ſeveral Kingdoms. 3. *Danager*, confining on *Canara*, a beautiful and flouriſhing City, once the chief Seat of *Niſalamoccus*, or *Nizolmoxa*, another of the Kings hereof, after that diviſion. 4. *Decan*, ſo called by the name of the Province, of which the chief City next to *Bider*, the Imperial Seat. Six miles from which there is an hill encompaſſed with an high wall, and kept by a ſtrong Garriſon, becauſe of the great ſtore of *Diamonds* which are digged out of it. The town ſo wealthy, that the people generally are attired in ſilks, or the pureſt *tiffany*. 5. *Sinracora*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, where it falleth into the Sea. 6. *Goa*, a Sea-town alſo, ſcituate in a little but moſt pleaſant Iſland called *Ticuarinum*, fifteen miles in compaſs; oppoſite to the mouth or out-let of the River *Mandavo*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and pleaſantneſs of ſcituation, one of moſt note in all this Country. Poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, who have here their *Arſenal*, and harbour for their *Indian* Fleet; by which they do command theſe Seas. So ſtrongly fortified withal, that though *beleagured* by *Idalcan* (of whom before) with 35000 horſe, 6000 Elephants, and 250 piece of Ordnance, Anno 1573 yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient ſcituation and ſtrength thereof, the ordinary Reſidence of the *Portugal Vice-roy*, who hath here his Counſel, Chancellor, and other Officers, for the government of ſuch parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as alſo of the Arch-Biſhop or Primate of the *Indian* Churches planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Arch-Biſhop of *Goa*. 7. *Chaul*, a Sea-town, in the hands of the *Portugals* alſo, and by them well fortified: Inſomuch as *Niſamalocco*, aſſaulting it at the ſame time with a very great Army, was fain to leave it as he found it. 8. *Balaguate*, in the uplands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name: *Bala* in the *Perſian* language ſignifying a top, or ſummit of a mountain; and *Guate* an Hill. 9. *Brampore*, once the chief ſeat of another Kingdom, called the Kingdom of *Chandis*, now the chief City of thoſe parts of *Decan* which are ſubject to the *Great Mongul*. Scituate on a great River in the midſt of a ſpacious Plain, beautiful, and of very great trading; in bigneſs equal unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mogul*, without any reſiſtance, Anno 1600. *Miram* then King thereof forſaking it, and betaking himſelf to 10. *Syra*, a ſtrong hold both by Art and Nature. Scituate on the top of an hill, which is in compaſs five leagues, and environed with a triple wall: furniſhed with victuals, and all other neceſſary proviſions, ſufficient to maintain 60000 men many years; 3000 great pieces of Ordnance planted on the walls. Beſieged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting men, he held out againſt him, till overcome by promiſes of fair correſpondence, drawn out of his hold (ſome of his Counſellers being bribed to perſwade him to it) he was detained by the *Mogul*: and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes yielded up the Fort, and therein all the Princes of the Royal family, accuſtomably kept therein when the *Throne* was full; which vacant, the next Heir

Canara.

was taken hence, to ſucceed unto it. Of the ſame nature, as it ſeemeth, with the hill *Amara* in *Ethiopia*, or the *Abaſſive* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a people called *Venazarari*, by Religion Gentiles, and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sanoſaradine*, a *Mahometan*, and King of *Delly*: who driving the Inhabitants into the Hill-Countries, poſſeſſed himſelf of a great part of it, compelling them to ſubmit unto his Religion, The reſidue hereof ſubdued by *Abdeſſa*, whom *Sa Noſaradine* left here to purſue the war, was by him governed with great juſtice for 20 years; when dying, he left his government to his ſon *Mamudza*, confirmed by the Succeſſor of *Sa Noſaradine* in his Fathers *Regency*, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudza* ſoon finding that the young King was of no great Spirit, not only refuſed to pay the tribute impoſed upon him, but took unto himſelf the title of K. of *Decan*: giving this name unto the country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a Mungril body of *Chriſtians*, *Mahometans*, and *Gentiles*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Cuſtoms, or Religion; the word *Decan* ſignifying in that Tongue, as much as an illegitimate brood, or a body of Baſtards. Out of theſe he made choice of twelve (others ſay eighteen) whom he appointed Governors of ſo many Provinces: not daring to truſt any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the country; and hoping that theſe *Slaves* thus prompted by him, would be more ſubject to command. But here his ſilly hopes deceived him. For theſe *Slaves* either governed by their maſters example, who had done the like unto the Son and Heir of *Sa Noſaradine*; or preſuming on their own ſtrength, and ſome forein aids, left to their maſter nothing but an empty title; each one becoming abſolute in his ſeveral Province. Nor did his Succeſſors for any long time enjoy that title; *Daquem* the laſt of them being taken at *Bidor* his chief City: and thereupon the name of King uſurped by every one of thoſe petit Tyrants. Reduced at laſt into fewer hands, ſuch of them as were left became conſiderable Princes; as appeareth by the great Army raiſed by *Idalcan* for the ſiege of *Goa*. But in the end, diſtreſſed on the one ſide by the *Portugals*, who embarred their trade, and invaded on the other ſide by the *Great Mogul* with moſt puiſſant Armies; *Melic* entituled K. of *Decan*, and *Miram* K. of *Brampore*, were in fine ſubdued by *Echebar*, about the year 1600. Againſt whom and his Succeſſors, though the *Venazararii* ſtill hold out, as the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Amdanager*, and perhaps ſome other petit Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country; the reſidue of theſe *Roytelets*, and petit Princes, (if any of them be remaining) being *Homagers* or Vaſſals to him. Againſt whoſe further Progreſs to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* ſo greedily aimed at, the puiſſant Kings of *Narſinga*, and thoſe of *Malabar*, have oppoſed their power: whoſe Kingdoms and Eſtates we muſt next ſurvey, before we take a view of thoſe other Provinces, which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9. CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof anciently it was a part) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the Eaſt, with *Narſinga*, from which ſeparated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the Weſt, with the Ocean. The reaſon of the name I finde not, nor much worth the ſearching.

The Countrey hath a fair Sea-coaſt, with many capacious Harbors to it, which cannot but add much to the wealth thereof; as liberally furniſhed in the in-land parts, with Rice, Figs, and Sugars; but deſtitute of Wheat, Pulſe, and Barley. Not much the poorer for that want, the people either not knowing or not regarding the uſe of bread; but living on ſuch fruits as the earth produceth of it ſelf, without the charge or care of the husband-man. In other things, but little differing, if at all, from the reſt of the *Indians*: their Religion for the moſt part *Paganiſh*, but intermixt with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it, 1. *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2. *Onor*. a Port-Town of good note, ſometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3. *Baticalia*, ſcituate in the richeſt part of all this Country; never poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4. *Mangalor*, a Town of great wealth and Trade; fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, once deſtroyed by the *Portugueze*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narſinga*, who is Lord of this Country. 5. *Mayendre*, more within the land. And ſo is alſo, 6. *Liſpor*, famous for her Quarries of Adamant. 7. *Selſette*, in a *Peninſula* of 20 miles compaſs, containing 36 Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants; the Town about 9 miles from *Goa*, and ſubject with the whole *Peninſula*, to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now ſubject to the Kings of *Narſinga*; but formerly under the command of its own Princes: the name of *Canara*, comprehending in thoſe times all that Countrey alſo, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Noſaradine* and *Abdeſſa*, and by *Mamudza* cantoned into many *Præfectures*, this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narſingan*, who taking his advantages, in the minority of one of their Princes, became Maſter of it. And when the *Idalcan*, (for I take that not ſo much for the name of a man, as a Title of dignity) quarrelled his poſſeſſion of it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdoms of *Decan*; *Chriſmarao* then King of *Narſinga*, brought a powerful *Advocate* to defend his right; that is to ſay, an Army of 606000 Foot, 29650 Horſe, and 537 Elephants; every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four men in it; With which ſtrong *Argument* the *Idalcan* being confuted in the *Schools* of War, with much difficulty ſaved himſelf, though he loſt his cauſe: the *Narſingan* ever ſince continuing quiet in the poſſeſſion of this Country; except only ſome of the Sea Towns in the power of the *Portugals*. Who in the year 1567 deſtroyed in thoſe few places by them poſſeſſed, no fewer than 200 of their *Idol-Temples*, with many of their *Pagodes*, or *Idols* in them; converting the Rents and Lands which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raiſed from the ſeveral Ports which they hold herein, to the maintenance of a College of *Jeſuites* in *Salſette*, and other *Religious* houſes founded by them, in their other Cities.

10. MALABAR.

Malabar.

10. MALABAR.

MALABAR is bounded on the North, with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gangeraco*; on the Eaſt, with the great Mountain *Gates*, by which divided from the Realm of *Narſinga*; on the Weſt and South, with the main Ocean. On the Coaſt whereof it doth extend for the ſpace of 300 miles, that is to ſay, from the River *Gangeraco*, to the Cape *Comori*: which I conceive to be the *Commaria Extrema* of *Ptolomy*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing anſwerable to the length, not above 50 miles where broadeſt, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Conns*.

The Country more populous, for the bigneſs, than any in *India*, enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitful Soyl; well watered, and indented with many *Creeks*: unfit for Corn, but plentiful in *Rice*, and all manner of Spices, as Ginger, Cinnamon, *Caſſia*, Pepper, and moſt excellent fruits. Amongſt their Trees, there is one whoſe name my Author ſpeaks not, which bears Dates like unto the Palm; out of which they have not onely wood for Fewel, but they draw from it Wine, Sugar, Oyl, fine Cloth and cordage; another tree, which beareth Cotton, and Cypreſs, or Cobweb-lawn, of the leaves whereof they make a fine ſtuff like to *Sattin* or *Taffata*. They have alſo great ſtore of Apes, and Monkeys, Parats, Paraquitoes, and other Creatures not known in theſe parts but from thence: not to ſay any thing of their Lions, Elephants, Bears, Bugles, common to them with others of their *Indian* neighbours. The flowers there always in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green, by reaſon that the Air is ſo ſweet and temperate.

The people are of coal-black colour (differing therein from the reſt of the *Indians*, ſwarth and complexioned like the *Olive*) well limbed, and wearing their hair long and curled: about their heads an hankerchief wrought with gold and ſilver; and about their middle a cloth, which hangeth down to conceal their nakedneſs. Of manners treacherous and bloody, more properly to be termed deſperate than ſtout and valiant; and for more ſurety in their wars, they uſe poiſoned Arrows, as they do alſo in their thieving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In *Religion* for the moſt part *Gentiles*, and more beſotted generally on their Idolatries, than the reſt of theſe Nations. The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worſhip, ſeated upon a brazen throne, and crowned with a rich Diadem. From his head iſſue out four horns, from his mouth four Tusks; his eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his noſe flat and ugly, his viſage terrible, his hands like claws, his legs and thighs like thoſe of a Lion. In a word, we cannot paint the Devil in a more ugly figure, than they do their *God*. Unto this *Pagode*, or his *Prieſt*, they offer the virginity of all their daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privy parts a *Bodkin* of gold or ſilver, upon which the *Bride* (married moſt commonly at ten or twelve years of age) is forcibly ſet; the ſharpneſs of it being ſuch, that it forceth out the blood in great abundance: and if ſhe prove with child that year, it is ſaid to be of his begetting, and more eſteemed. Others with more humanity, inſtead of torturing their daughters on this wretched *Idol* (parallel almoſt to the offering of their ſons to *Moloch* amongſt the *Syrians*) preſent them to the *Bramini*, or *Idol-Prieſt*, to be deflowred the firſt night of the wedding: and without one of theſe two hand leſs, no man is ſuffered to enjoy the uſe of his wife, not their Kings themſelves, More priviledged yet than many women neighboring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themſelves with their husbands bodies: but may have many husbands either ſucceſſively or at once, as they liſt themſelves: and if at once, ſhe ſends her children to that husband (as we know who did) who ſhe thinks to have the beſt right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we ſaid before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be *cantonned* into many Kingdoms. Divided at preſent, and long ſince, into thoſe of 1. *Cononor*. 2. *Calecut*. 3. *Granganor*. 4. *Cochin*. 5. *Cai-Colam*. 6. *Coulan*, and 7. *Travancor*.

1. *CONONOR*, joyneth to *Canara*, extending Southward on the ſhore about 20 miles, where it bordereth on the Kingdom of *Calicut*. The chief Cities of which, 1. *Cononor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built, and beautified with a very fair Haven, no more ſafe than ſpacious, capacious of the greateſt veſſels, and for that cauſe much frequented by forein Merchants; but eſpecially by the *Portugals*, who for the aſſuring of their trade have here a *Citadel*, erected and well garriſoned with the Kings conſent. 2. *Cota*, not far from *Cangeracco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*, 3. *Peripatan*, on the confines of *Calicute*. 4. *Marabia*. 5. *Tramopatan*. 6. *Main*, intermediate Towns, but not much obſervable.

2. *CALICUTE*, South from *Cononor*, extending on the Sea-ſhore 25 Leagues, and ſcituate in the moſt pleaſant and fruitful part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Pandarane*, on the skirts of *Cononor*. 2. *Tanor*, a retiring place of the Kings. 3. *Partangale*. 4. *Chatua*, on the borders of *Cranganor*. 5. *Chale*, a ſtrong piece, once in the hands of the *Portugueze*, but in the year 1601 recovered by the King of *Calicute*, who had beſieged it with an Army of 90000 men. 6. *Capacote*, the Haven of *Calicute*. 7. *Calicute*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea three miles, and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houſes, but ſtanding ſome of them far aſunder; mean and low built, few of them exceeding the height of a man on horſe-back; the ſoil being ſo hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cauſe unwalled. Inſomuch that Merchanrs houſes are here valued but at 20 Crowns, thoſe of the common ſort at no more than ten. Which notwithſtanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Perſians*, *Syrians*, *Indians*, yea the very *Tartars*; theſe laſt from the furtheſt parts of *Cathay* (taking *Cathay* in that general ſenſe, as it comprehendeth all the Countries of the *Tartars*, between the

Malabar. the mount of *Imaus*, and the Eaſtern *Ocean*) being 6000 miles diſtant from it, inſomuch, that it is ſaid by ſome of the *Spaniſh*-writers, that when *Vaſquies di Gama*, the firſt diſcoverer of the way to the Eaſt Countries by the Cape of good hope firſt arrived in this Haven, he found in it no fewer than 1500 Merchants Ships of all ſorts, but without anchors and the compaſs, few of them fit for a Sea-fight, nor able to ſail (in regard they had not the uſe of the compaſs) but by fore winds onely. The common Staple in thoſe times of all *Indian* Merchandiſe, till diſtracted into ſeveral Ports by the power of the *Portugals*: who being more induſtrious, and better *Architects*, have forced a foundation on the Shore for a very ſtrong Caſtle; by which they do command the Haven, and receive cuſtom of all Merchandiſe going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of *Calicute*, he beſieged it with 100000 men: and though the *Portugals* held it out a whole winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it; but firſt demoliſhed it to the ground, that it might not be made uſeful to thoſe of *Calicute*. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no leſs wantonneſs; the men here uſing to change wives with one another, to confirm their Amities: and the women ſpending their whole time in adorning themſelves with Rings and Jewels, about their ears, necks, legs, arms, and upon their breſts; though going naked for the moſt part, one would think that a little dreſſing might ſuffice them. If covered, it is onely with a ſmock of *Calicute*, a kind of linnen cloth here made, and from hence ſo called: and that not uſed but by thoſe of the better ſort.

3. *CRANGANOR*, lieth on the South of *Calicute*, a ſmall Kingdom, and affording little worth the ſpeaking of: but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of thoſe old *Chriſtians*, whom they call *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*. *Cranganor*, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be ſo full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and expoſed to publick ſcorn both by the *Idolaters* and *Mahometanes*, amongſt whom they live. The City rich, commodiouſly built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with his crooked ſtreams the moſt part of the Country, makes it fat and flouriſhing.

4. *COCHIN*, more South than *Cranganor*, extended on the ſhore for the ſpace of 40 leagues: and therein many *Chriſtians* of the firſt plantation, beſides ſome *converts* made of later times by the *Jeſuites*. Towns of moſt note herein. 1. *Augamale*, the Arch-Biſhops See of thoſe ancient *Chriſtians*, fifteen miles from *Cochin*. 2. *Cochin*, a Biſhops See, but of later *erection*; and the chief City of this Kingdom, which takes name from hence. Scituate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Maugat*, by which almoſt encompaſſed like a *Demy-Iſland*. Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very ſafe and ſpacious; as alſo by the friendſhip of the *Portugal* Nation. By whoſe power and favor they have not onely freed themſelves from the King of *Calicute*, to whom before they did acknowledge ſome ſubjection; but drawn from thence a great part of the traffick alſo: this King permitting them to erect a Caſtle on the Haven, to ſecure their trade, which the other on good reaſons of State forced them to deſtroy. The King hereof in ſome reſpect *ſuperior* unto him of *Calicute*, when a *Vaſſal* to him: this King being the *Pope* or *chief Biſhop*, as it were of all the *Bramines*: for which cauſe reverenced by all the Kings of *Malabar*, (as the Pope by many Princes of theſe Weſtern parts) who look upon him as the head of their *ſuperſtition*, and pay him many annual duties.

5. *CAI-COLAM*, is on the South of *Cochin*, with which agreeing both in the temper of the Air, and fertility of the Earth: which notwithſtanding, the King hereof is not ſo rich as his other neighbours. Here live alſo many of the old *Chriſtians*, taking name from Saint *Thomas*: but thoſe ſo deſtitute of *Prieſts* and Miniſters to inſtruct them in the Principles of *Chriſtianity*: that once in three years there came ſome formerly from the Patriarch of *Muzal* in *Aſſyria*, to baptize their children. Better I hope provided for in thoſe later days, ſince their emboſoming and reconcilement to the Church of *Rome*. Their Chief Town of the ſame name with the Country, hath a very fair Haven, in the faſhion of a *Semi-Circle*; well traded till deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, but ſince that re-edified. Of leſs note there are many both Towns and Villages, but ſuch as do deſerve here no particular mention.

6. *COULAN*, upon the South of *Cai-Colam*, extended 20 Leagues more Southwards upon the Shores; is ſaid to be deſtitute of corn, but plentiful of *pepper*, and moſt ſorts of Spices. So ſtored with Horſes, and fit Riders to ſerve upon them, that the King hereof keeps 20000 Horſe in continual readineſs either for invaſion or Defence. This Kingdom, as the reſt before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Coulan*, 24 miles from *Cochin*, and once a Member of that Kingdom; of great reſort by foreign Merchants, by reaſon of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary ſeat of the *Cobritin*, or chief *Prieſt* of the *Bramines*, till removed to *Cochin*: and held to be the *Metropolis* or Mother City of all *Malabar*; the reſt being thought to be but *Colonies* of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many *Chriſtians*, as well of the original foundation of *Chriſtianity*, as of the late improvements which are made by the *Jeſuites*.

7. *TRAVANCOR*, called alſo *TRANCANOR*, reacheth from the Kingdom of *Coulan*, to the Cape of *Comarim*, and turning towards the Eaſt, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cael* in the Kingdom of *Biſnagar* or *Narſinga*. By which accompt it hath the benefit of the Sea on all ſides except towards the North; reaching in breadth from the Weſt Seas unto the Eaſt about 90 miles. The Country as the reſt before, inhabited by many with the name of *Chriſtians*, if they may be called ſo which want *Sacraments*: the condition of theſe *Thomaan* Chriſtians in former times being ſo unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the *Jeſuites*, (if the *Jeſuites* may be believed from whom we have it) they had ſeen no Prieſt, nor other Miniſter of the Goſpel. Chief Towns hereof, (for of thoſe many others of leſs note I ſhall make no mention) are 1. *Travancor* the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well-built, nor of very much trading. 2. *Quilacare*, the head City of a peculiar

Signeury, but held of the Kings of ***Trancanor***, as their next and immediate Lords, though all thoſe Kings alſo ***Feuditaries*** of the Crown of ***Narſinga***. And were that the worſt ***Tenure*** by which they hold, it might be tolerable: but there is a matter of worſe conſequence which attendeth theſe beſotted Princes. The Kingdom here is but a pomp of 12 years continuance, and then endeth in a ſad *Cataſtrophe*. For at the end of thoſe twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilacare*, prayeth before the *Idol* above mentioned, then mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapeſtry, and in the ſight of all his people, gathered together to behold this ſtrange Solemnity, cutteth off his noſe, ears, lips and other parts, which he caſts towards the *Idol*, and in concluſion cuts his own Throat for his final Sacrifice: his deſigned Succeſſor being preſent at this bloudy Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was *Scepter* bought at ſo dear a rate: For though all *Crowns* be lined with *Thorns*, yet here the pomps of Soveraignty be leſs laſting, then in other places; the *entrance* full of fears, and the end, of horrors.

Theſe Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900. or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into theſe ſeven, by *Sarama Pereimal*, the ſole Monarch. He by the ſollicitation of ſome *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein ſo devout, that he reſolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, there to end his daies. At his departure he divided his eſtates into theſe ſeven parts, diſtributing them amongſt the neareſt of his kindred: aſſigning unto him of *Coulan*, the preheminence in Sacred matters, and the *Imperial* dignity unto him of *Calecute*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to ſay, *Chief Emperor*, or as ſome write, a God on earth. He only priviledged with the right and power of *Coynage*; the reſt to be ſubordinate, if not ſubject to him. From *Pereimals* ſetting forwards to the City of *Meccha*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings and begin their years; as the Chriſtians from the Birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Heſts were punctually obſerved. But the Kingdom of *Calicute* being weakned by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themſelves from that ſubjection, and in the end to caſt off all relation to him, and to his *Prerogatives*. Yet ſtill he is eſteemed of more power and Majeſty, then any of the reſt of the Kings of *Malabar*: and looked on with more reverence then any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have no where met with, but conjecture them to be very great; firſt in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from moſt parts of the world in his Port of *Calicute*; the cuſtoms and Impoſts upon which muſt needs be of exceeding value; and ſecondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are ſaid to equal ſome Kings in *Africk*, and Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

> *Quid Domini facient? audent cum talia* Fures
> And if the man ſuch riches have,
> Then what muſt he that keeps the Knave?

What *Forces* he is able to raiſe may be fully ſeen by that which hath been ſaid before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 men beſieging and taking in the fort of *Chalen*, with another of 100000, beleaguring the Caſtle which the *Portugals* had built near his City of *Calecute*. And when the ſaid *Portugals* ſtirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head againſt him, he fell upon them ſuddenly both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Souldiers, and 200 good Veſſels of War for the Service at Sea. Sufficient Force to reduce the reſt of thoſe petit Kings to their old acknowledgments, but that ſome of them to avoid the danger, have put themſelves under the *Vaſſallage*, or protection at the leaſt, of the *Great Monguls*: others by ſuffering the *Portugals* to build Forts in their Kingdom, have engaged them in defence of their eſtate againſt this pretender. His forces conſiſt moſt of Foot, Horſe being unſerviceable in theſe Countries, by reaſon of thoſe many Rivers which interlace it. and theſe *Foot* are compounded moſt of Gentry, which they there call *Nairos*, trained to their weapons when they are but ſeven years of Age; every one to that weapon which he moſt delighteth in; which makes them very expert and nimble at them: much priviledged for that cauſe by the Laws of the Country; and ſo eſteemed of by the King, that out of them his Siſters chuſe what men they pleaſe to their *Husbands*; ſome of them by that means being made the Fathers of the King ſucceeding.

Nothing elſe memorable touching the affairs of *Calicute*, but the way of Succeſſion to the Kingdom: the Crown deſcending upon none of the Kings Children, but on the Son of his Eldeſt Siſter, or neareſt Kinſwoman. For being that one of the ***Bramines*** hath alwaies the Maydenhead of his Queens, and that ſome of theſe *Stallions* are continually allowed to keep them company; it is preſumed, or very probably ſuppoſed, that the Queens Children are the *Bramines*, and not the Kings.

8. *NARSINGA.*

NARSINGA is bounded on the South, with *Travancor*; on the Weſt, with the Mountain *Gates*; on the North, with *Oriſtan* or *Orixa*; on the Eaſt, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narſinga* the chief City of it, and the Royal Reſidence of the King.

The Country is ſaid to be in length 600 miles, or as ſome ſay, of as much extent as can be travelled in ſix moneths: plentiful in the ſame commodities which the reſt of *India* doth afford, except *Pepper* and ſome other ſpices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not ſo well furniſhed with Rivers as ſome other places: which want is liberally ſupplied by water falling from the mountains, & received into trenches, meers, and *Lakes*, which do wonderfully cool, moiſten and enrich the Land, cauſing the Corn and Cattel to proſper above all imagination. Moſt deſtitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year paſſeth without rain, they fall into ſuch extremities, that they are fain to ſell their Children.

The people in religion *Gentiles*, ſo worſhipping one God, as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they joyn the *Devil* or their *Pagodes* in Commiſſion with him, whereto indu-

Narſinga.

ced by the perſwaſion of their beaſtly *Bramines*, who thereout ſuck no ſmall advantage. Some Chriſtians there are intermixt, of the *old Plantation*, eſpecially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*: but not ſo well inſtructed in the *Principles* of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*, nor to diſſwade them from the uſe of ſome *heatheniſh* cuſtoms, though barbarous, inhumane, and againſt all reaſon; not uſed in any place, but amongſt the *Indians*. Amongſt which I reckon for moſt ſavage, the forcing of poor women to burn themſelves with their husbands bodies, the womens kindred, not the husbands thruſting them on theſe hard conditions, who reckon it a diſgrace to their family, if ſhe ſhould refuſe. And becauſe they will be ſure not to have that infamy ſtick upon them, they have ordered that the woman who ſhall ſo refuſe, muſt ſhave her head, and break her Jewels, and not be ſuffered to eat, drink, or ſleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miſerable then the Flames which they ſeek to ſhun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greedineſs, and to contend which ſhall be formoſt: ſhe being thought to have been moſt loving during his life, which is now moſt willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her ſelf to his *Manes*, at the funeral pile: whereunto thus alludeth the Poet.

Et certamen habent lethi, quæ viva ſequatur.
Conjugium; pudor eſt non licuiſſe mori.
Ardent victrices, & præbent pectora flammæ.
Imponuntq; ſuis ora peruſta viris.

A ſhame 'tis not to die: they therefore ſtrive,
Who may be fam'd to follow him alive.
The Victor burns, yields to the flame her Breaſt;
And her burnt Face doth on her Husband reſt.

Chief Cities of this Country, 1. *Cael*, on the borders of *Travancer*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Coulan*, now to thoſe of *Narſinga*; the people whereabouts called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Chriſtians*, who live for the moſt part by fiſhing for *Pearl*, which they ſell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalan* Merchants. 2. *Golconda*, the chief City of the Province called *Muſulipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian* Sect; but a Vaſſal to the Kings of *Narſinga*. 3. *Chamdagrin*, one of the Seat-Royals of the King. 4. *Prepeti*, three miles from *Chamdagrin*, memorable for a yearly Feaſt here celebrated in honour of *Pereimal* (once ſole King of *Malavar*) reckoned for a Saint at leaſt in theſe parts of *India*: the Offerings at which accuſtomably amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5. *Chadambaram*, the Mother City of thoſe *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Pereimal*, who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of annual Rent, all conſumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Pereimals* Head. 6. *Madura*, honoured with the reſidence of the *Chochanada*, or the Chief *Prelate* of the *Bramines* of this Kingdom; ſo numerous, that in this Town, and the Territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer then an hundred Thouſand. The Seat alſo of one of three *Naichi*, or tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narſinga*: The other two reſiding at 7. *Gingi.* and 8. *Tanajor*, the chief Towns of their Principalities, but not elſe obſervable. 9. *Maliapur*, called alſo St. *Thomas*, from an Opinion that the Body of the Apoſtle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolatrous Indians*, whoſe poſterity in other things like unto other men, are ſaid to have one Leg and Foot as big as an *Elephant*: a Puniſhment inflicted on the whole Generation for ſin of their Anceſtors: How true this is, I cannot ſay, But ſure I am that *Dorotheus* ſaith, that he reſteth at *Calamina*, where he was ſlain with a dart. However the Portugals to make ſome uſe of the old Tradition, removed ſome Bones from this place, which were ſaid to be his, and enſhrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much viſited by profitable *Pilgrimes*, to their great enriching. The City once ſo large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the uſe of divers Nations which reſorted thither. In theſe latter dayes deſolate and forlorn, inhabited only by ſome old Chriſtians, till the *Portugueze* began again to people it with new Colonies. 10. *Choromandel*, giving name to a large Sea-Coaſt, lying on the Weſt ſide of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11. *Caſta*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Countrey, but buried quick in the ſame Grave with him. 12. *Negapatau*, in the ſame Region, inhabited for the moſt part by Saint *Thomas Chriſtians*. 13. *Tarnaſſari*, once the head City of a Kingdom ſo called, the King wherof was able to bring into the Field, 100000 Horſe and Foot, and 100 armed Elephants, but now ſubject to the King of *Narſinga*. The people black, but ſo out of love with their own colour, that they willingly proſtitute their wives or daughters to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14. *Biſnagar*, once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is ſomtimes called the King of *Biſnagar*. In thoſe times 24 miles in compaſs, with nine Gates in it (amongſt others) continually guarded with Souldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elſewhere equalled. In the year 1565. ſacked by four of the *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joynt Forces had invaded this Kingdom, it became deſolate and forſaken; and the Court removed to 15. *Penegardo*, eight daies journey within the Land (*Biſnagar* being ſeated on the Borders of *Decan*, but long it had not ſtaid there, when removed to 16. *Narſinga*, where it hath ever ſince been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdom, unto which it gives name; though the King many times cals himſelf by the name of that City where he reſideth for the preſent.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to ſay, theſe Eaſtern parts not being known at all till theſe latter times, nor well known in theſe. About the year 1550. their King then reigning was impriſoned by 3 of his Captains or Commanders; who ſhewed him only once a year to his Subjects, parting the power and government amongſt themſelves. He being dead, and his Son kept in the like reſtraint, *Romaragio* the firſt Capt. aſcended the Throne, *Timaragio* managed the Eſtate, and *Bengahe* commanded the Army. But theſe Uſurpers being overthrown by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565. *Timaragio* the

Survivor

Oriſtan.

Survivor took the charge of all; whoſe ſon, to make himſelf ſure of the Kingdom, murdered his impriſoned Soveraign (the life and liberty of Kings being much of a date) whence followed many broils and troubles touching the ſucceſſion, till ſetled in the perſon of *Chriſmarao*, the undoubted Heir; who did not onely reſtore peace and quiet to *Narſinga* it ſelf, but recovered *Canara* out of the hands of the *Idalcan*, who had before endangered his eſtate therein. Of the great Army which he led againſt this *Idalcan*, we have ſpoke already: adding here onely, that before he went upon this enterpriſe (called the journey of *Rachiol*) he ſacrificed in nine days 2036 Beaſts to the Countrey Idols, the fleſh whereof he cauſed to be diſtributed amongſt the poor. Routed at firſt, and being perſwaded by ſome about him to go out of the field, he is ſaid, to have made this Noble Anſwer, that he *had rather the Idalcan ſhould boaſt that he had ſlain him, than vanquiſhed him.* And thereupon leaping into the thickeſt of his enemies, and well followed by the valianteſt of his Friends, he obtained the victory. But this vaſt Army of 600000 foot, 30000 Horſe, 537 Elephants, with neceſſaries anſwerable to ſuch infinite multitudes, ſpeaks onely what he can do on extreme neceſſity: or when he hath ſome long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better meaſured by their ſtanding forces, than by premeditated *Levies*. And herein this Prince comes not much ſhort of his greateſt neighbours: his ſtanding bands conſiſting of 40000 *Nairo's*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, which ſerve on foot; 20000 Horſe, who are either *Perſians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants; well paid, and kept in continual readineſs: his foot defraied out of his *Revenues*, his Horſe maintained like the *Turks Timariots*, out of certain Lands diſtributed amongſt his Captains (ſome of which are ſaid to have a million of Crowns *per Annum*) to furniſh him with theſe ſtable bands of Horſes and Elephants.

As for his *Revenue* it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the reſt the expence of his houſhold, and the entertainment of his Foot. This ſum amaſſed together out of the Lands, mines, and forreſts of the Countrey: which are wholly his; and the waters of ſome Rivers (ſold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth; the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which the mines, forreſts, and one third of the lands, he retaineth to himſelf; the other two being divided amongſt his Captains. So that it is no marvel if ſo rich a Countrey yield him ſuch an *income*, conſidering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it ſhould yield no more.

9. ORISTAN.

ORISTAN or ORIXA, is bounded on the South, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with *Delly* and *Sanga*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Botanter*; on the Eaſt with the Gulf of *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*: ſo called from *Oriſſa*, the chief City of it.

The Countrey hath plenty of Rice, cloth of Cotton, and a fine ſtuff like ſilk, made of graſs, and there called *Yerva*; with which together with *Long Pepper*, Ginger, *Mirabolins*, and other commodities here growing, they uſe to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Oriſſa* onely. The people ſo well governed, or ſo hating theft; that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Moguls*, a man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the ſame temper and religion, with the reſt of the *Indians* ſubject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moiſten and refreſh it; but none ſo beneficial to the Kings hereof, as the River *Guangen* (of old called *Chaberis*) the waters whereof eſteemed ſacred by the Kings of *Calicute* and *Narſinga*, and much uſed by them in their ſacrifices and ſuperſtitious purgations; are wholly ingroſſed by this King, who ſelleth them to thoſe Princes at exceſſive rates. Beſides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-coaſt, of 350 miles in length; that is to ſay, from Cape *Guadarino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narſinga*; to Cape *Leegora* in the Eaſt, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, becauſe not ſo well provided of commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far leſs Territory.

Towns of moſt note herein, 1. *Oriſſa*, on the Sea-ſide, or not far from it, the beſt traded Port of all this Kingdom; to which the name thereof is to be aſcribed, as the Head-City of the Countrey. 2. *Cateoba*, ſix days journey within the land, the ordinary reſidence of their Kings, before it was ſubdued by the *Great Monguls*. 3. *Angeli*, a well-frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laden with *Indian* Wares. 4. *Bacolli* or *Bacola*, more within the land, and once the head City of a Kingdom, but a very poor one. 5. *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat fleſh, or kill any beaſt. 6. *Senerpate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deſerves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom; but that the Kings hereof were *Gentiles*, ſubdued not many years ſince by the King of *Patanaw*: and both, grown weaker by that war, by *Echebar*, the *Great Mongul*.

10. BOTANTER.

BOTANTER (under which name I comprehend all thoſe petit Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-Eaſt of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Oriſtan* and *Patanaw*; on the Weſt, the River *Guenga* or *Chaberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Penout* on the North, the *Zagathaian Tartars*, divided from it by ſome branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the Eaſt, the famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Bottia*, the principal City of *Botanter*, which is the chief of theſe ſmall Kingdoms.

The Countrey great, of three moneths journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be ſeen five dayes journey off; in which are ſaid to dwell a people with ears of a ſpan long or more, whom otherwiſe thoſe of the Valleys count as *Apes*. In thoſe parts which are next *Bengab*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more enclined to the *Olive* colour. Their garments they wear cloſe to their bodies, ſo ſtreight that one cannot ſee a pleit or wrinckle; & thoſe they never put off by night nor day, whilſt they are able to hang on: nor do they waſh at any time, for fear of defiling ſo pure a Creature as the water. Content with one wife (deſerved to be held a miracle in theſe Eaſtern parts) and yet *cohabit* not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *Sooth-ſayer* is to tell them what to do with his body; according to whoſe direction (firſt conſulting his Books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongſt them. The principal, 1. *Bottia*, the *Metropolis* of it. 2. *Clamur*, of which little memorable. 2. *Kukares*, the ſecond Kingdom of this rank, large, but exceeding mountainous, as Being over-run by the branches of Mount *Caucaſes*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named of *Kakares* the chief Town thereof, by ſome called *Negariot*, their Staples for the ſale of their cloth, (moſt of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinoys*; and *Tartarian* Merchants, who reſort frequently to thoſe markets. This is a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, the Kings whereof are called *Dermain*, but *Vaſſals* to the great *Mongul*. And ſo is he of 3. *COUCHE*, another Kingdom of this Tract, frontiring upon *Cauchin China*, beyond *Ganges*; ſo called from *Couche*, the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reaſon that it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good paſtures by that means, and thoſe well ſtored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Deer, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build *Hoſpitals* for them, in which when lame and old they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them; their ſmall money being *Almonds*.

4. *GOUREN* or *Citor* the moſt Northern Realm in this General diviſion, ſo called of *Goror*, *Goren* the chief Town of it. The Country in ſome parts mountainous, out of which ſpringeth the River *Sitilly*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*; the reſt a kind of Deſart or unpeopled Country, joyneth cloſe to *Couche*. In which are few Villages, graſs (or reeds rather) longer than a man, and therein many *Buffes*, Tigers, and other wild Beaſts; none wilder than the Thieves, who frequent the wilderneſſes.

In this Tract alſo are the Kingdoms of 5. *RAME*; and 6. *RECON*, joyning upon *Zagathay*, or enclining towards it; poſſeſſed by the *Morgul Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before: but *Feuditaries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachoſia*, who commanded in the North Eaſt of *Perſia*, and theſe North parts of *India*; and from thoſe places drew his Army or the greateſt part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galgee*, the King of *Mandao*. Here is alſo the Kingdom of 7. *TRIPPURA*, naturally fenced with hils and mountains; and by that means hitherto defended againſt the *Mongul Tartars*, their bad neighbours; with whom they have continual wars. But of theſe Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be ſaid, and that little of no certain knowledge; thoſe parts being hitherto ſo untravelled, that they may paſs in the Accompt of a *Terra Incognita*.

11. *PATANAW*.

PATANE or *PATANAW*, is bounded on the North, with the Realms of *Botanter*; on the Eaſt, with *Ganges*; on the Weſt, with *Oriſtan*; and on the South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patane* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom of this name in the further *India*: but whether it were ſo called becauſe a Colony of this; or from ſome reſemblances in the nature of the ſeveral Countries, or from the ſignification of the word in the *Indian* language; I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that though they have the ſame name, yet they are under ſeveral Governments, and ſcituate in far diſtant places: no otherwiſe agreeing than in ſome reſemblances, as *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolnſhire*.

The Country yieldeth veins of Gold, which they dig out of the pits, and waſh away the earth from it in great Bolls. The people tall, and of ſlender making, many of them old: great Praters, and as great diſſemblers. The women ſo bedecked with ſilver and copper, eſpecially about the feet, that they are not able to endure a ſhooe. Both Sexes uſe much waſhing in the open Rivers, and that too intermixt together in their natural nakedneſs; eſpecially ſuch as live neer the banks of the River *Jemena* (eſteemed more holy than the reſt) which from *Agra* paſſing thorow this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Patane*, a large town and a long one, built with very broad ſtreets; but the houſes very mean and poor, made at the beſt of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The *Metropolis* of this Kingdom, becauſe the antienteſt and that which gives the name unto it. 2. *Bannaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the Gentiles from remote Countries uſe to come in *Pilgrimage*, to bathe themſelves in the holy waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flouriſhing, and beautified upon the Rode with handſome Villages. 3. *Sirbpur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of this Country; not yet ſubdued by the Great *Monguls*. 4. *Ciandecan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jeſuites* when blamed by them for the worſhip of ſo many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the law of God and nature. For cauſing them to rehearſe the *Decalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more againſt thoſe commandments in worſhipping ſo many *Pagodes*, than they themſelves in worſhipping ſo many *Saints*. 5. *Satagam*, a fair City (for a City of *Moores*) once part of *Patanaw*, ſince aſcribed to *Bengala*.

The people of this Country properly called *Pataneans*, but corruptly *Parthians*, were once of great command and power in theſe parts of *India*. Lords for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Benga-*

Bengala.

la, into which driven by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grand-father of *Echebar*. Their laſt King being ſlain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joyned in an *Ariſtocracy*, and warring upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their ſucceſſors attempted *Oriſtan*, and added that alſo to their Eſtate, but they could not long make good their fortunes; ſubdued by *Echebar the Mongul*, and made ſubject to him. Three of them, *viz.* the Prince of *Siripur* the King of *Ciandecan*, and he whom they call *Mauſadalim*, retain, as yet (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their antient *Paganiſm*, as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometaniſm*, have vaſſaled themſelves to the great *Mongul*, now the Lord *Paramount* of the Country.

12. BENGALA.

BENGALA is bounded on the North; with *Patanaw*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*; on the South and Weſt, with the *Gulf* of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth in length on the Gulf and River 360 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land. A Country ſtored with all things neceſſary to the life of man, great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and Long-Pepper. Such aboundance of Silk, and Cotton, and of Fleſh and Fiſh, that it is impoſſible that any Country ſhould exceed it in thoſe commodities. And which crowns all, bleſt with ſo temperate and ſweet an air that it draws thither people of all ſorts to inhabit it. Here is alſo, amongſt other rarities, a Tree called *Moſes*, which beareth ſo delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* to ſin.

The natural Inhabitants for the moſt part, are of white complexion, like the *Europæans*, ſubtil of wit, and of a curious diſpoſition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandize, if not ſomewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with ſome ſmattering in *Philoſophy*, *Phyſick*, and *Aſtrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparel: not naked as in others of theſe *Indian* Provinces, but clothed in a ſhirt or ſmock reaching to their feet, with ſome upper Garment over that. The women of an ill name for their unchaſtity, though *Adultry* be puniſhed with cutting off of their Noſes. Neat, if not curious and too coſtly in this one cuſtom, that they never ſeeth meat twice in the ſame Pot, but for every boyling buy a new one. In *Religion*, for the moſt part *Mahometans*, eſpecially on the Sea-ſhores, which lay moſt open and commodious to the *Arabians*, by whom *Mahometaniſm* was here planted many ages ſince.

Of Rivers we need take no care having ſpoken of *Ganges*. That with its many channels may abundantly ſerve to water ſo ſmall a Province. But hereof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now unto the Cities. The principal whereof, 1. *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, ſcituate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the moſt beautiful Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by *Pilgrimages*; by reaſon of the holineſs and divine operations aſcribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it; there being few years in which not viſited by three or four hundred thouſand *Pilgrims*. 2. *Gouro*, the ſeat Royal of the ancient Kings. 3. *Catigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4. *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and ſcituate in thoſe times on the banks of *Ganges*; now by the changing of the Channel (occaſioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a league off from the River. 5. *Porto Grande*, and 6 *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Governments. Places like the *Aſylum*, which was built by *Romulus*: whereunto ſuch as dare not ſtay in their own Countries, or any well-regulated Cities, uſe to make their reſort; priviledged here to live in all kind of licentiouſneſs.

Here is alſo in the North parts of this Province, or adjoyning to it, the City and Kingdom of *ARACHAN*. Lying along the banks of *Ganges*, but ſo remote from the Sea, that it is 50 miles diſtant from the neereſt branch of it. Wealthy and populous withal; governed heretofore by a King of its own, ſo wallowing in wealth and ſenſual pleaſures, that he had in this City and the parts adjoyning twelve Royal Palaces or *Seraglio's*, all ſtowed with women for his luſt. Now ſubject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, betwixt which it lyeth, to the Empire of the Great *Monguls*.

There are alſo ſome ſmall Iſlands in the Gulf of *Bengala*, which I account unto that Kingdom. 1. *Bazacata*, now called *Baſſe*. 2. *Baraſſæ*, of which name there are five in *Ptolomy*, three of them by *Mercator* ſaid to be *Mindanao*, *Cailon*, and *Subut*. 3. Two, called the Iſlands of *Good fortune*, by him placed under the *Æquator*, and ſaid to be inhabited by *Anthropophagy*, or man-eaters; as alſo were three more which he calls. 4. *Sadadibæ*, now named *Cainam*. 5. *Inſula Satyrorum*, or the Iſles of *Satyres*, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like *Satyres*. And 6 thoſe called *Maniolæ*, in number ten, (now *Iſlas de Parcel*) reported by *Ptolomy* to be ſo ſtored with *Adamant* ſtones, that they violently drew to them any ſhips or veſſels, which had iron in them; for which cauſe they which uſed theſe Seas faſtned the planks of their ſhips with wooden pins. But our later *Navigators* find no ſuch matter, unleſs perhaps it may be in the exploits of Sir *Huon* of *Bourdeaux*, where indeed we meet with ſuch an Iſland, in the courſe of his *Errantrie*.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we finde it of a different conſtitution from the reſt of the Kingdoms of theſe parts. Not governed by a family of Succeſſive Princes, deſcended from the Stem of a Royal Anceſtrie, as the others are. Chance, or neceſſity, had brought thither many *Ambaſſines*, or *Æthiopians*, who made a conqueſt of the Country; and choſe a King out of themſelves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regal honour to the *Ambaſſine* Nation, they procured thence yearly certain thouſands of *Slaves*; whom they trained up unto the wars, advanced unto the higheſt commands in *civil* and *military* ſervice; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Soveraign: as the *Mamalucks* in the Kingdom of *Egypt*, whom herein they followed. By ſome *Arabians* trading with them, Mandao.

they came in time to admit *Mahometaniſm* amongſt them; on the Sea-coaſts eſpecially. Diſpoſſeſſed firſt of ſome part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagan*, by the *Pateneans*; when driven to ſeek new dwellings by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*: and of their whole Kingdom, by the valor and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the reſt of his eſtate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this ſide of *Ganges* (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narſinga* being but a *Parentheſis* in the conſtruction of this ſentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his diſcent from the *Mongul Tartars*, one of the five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived originally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almoſt all the greater and leſſer *Aſia*, unto his eſtates: left *Perſia*, with the parts of *India* which lay neereſt to it on the North, to *Myrza Charrok*, his fourth ſon. But his iſſue failing in *Abdula*, the 4th. of that line, thoſe eſtates fell to *Abuſaid*, deſcended from *Maromcha*, the third ſon of *Tamerlane*: Whoſe ſon and Succeſſor called *Zeuzes*, by ſome *Malaoncres*, being deſſeized of the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*: the rights of all, with the poſſeſſion of *Arachoſia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Paropamiſus* (now *Candahor* or *Sableſtan*) together with ſo much of *India* as was held by thoſe Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger ſons of *Abuſaid*: whoſe poſterity laying hold on ſuch opportunities as were offered to them, have made themſelves Maſters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whoſe Succeſſors and their atchievements we ſhall here preſent.

The *Great Mongul.*

1473. 1. *Hamed*, the ſon of *Abuſaid*, of the race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conqueſt of *Perſia* by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, ſucceeded in *Chabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* ſubject to the *Tartars*.

1500. 2. *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, in danger to be diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his Eſtates by the neighbouring *Usbeques*, living upon the borders of *Perſia*, *Tartary*, and *India*, whom at laſt he quieted; enlarging his dominions by the Conqueſt of ſome part of *Patanaw*, and other Kingdoms in the North.

1532. 3. *Hamoyen*, the ſon of *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, commonly called *Emanpaxda*, vanquiſhed by the *Parthians*, or *Pataneans*, and their confederates, craved aid of *Tamas*, the 2d. *Perſian* Monarch of this line, on promiſe to conform to the *Sophian Sect*: and by that aid confirmed and ſetled his affairs, but held himſelf to the former Principles of his *Irreligion*.

4. *Merhamed* or *Miramudius*, ſon of *Emanpaxda*, called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*, againſt *Badurius* the *Cambaian*, vanquiſhed the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields, and conquered the Kingdoms of *Mandao*, and *Balaſſia*, with ſome other Provinces.

5. *Adabar*, the ſon of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambaia*, unto his Dominions.

1550. 6. *Mahomet Selabdin*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the moſt fortunate and victorious Prince of all this family; ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Caximir*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Oriſſa*, *Bengula*, *Patanaw*, and divers other of leſs note.

1605. 7. *Selim*, ſurnamed *Jangheere*, the ſon of *Echebar*, who added nothing that I hear of, to his fathers conqueſts.

1627. 8. *Blockie*, the grand-child of *Selim* by his eldeſt ſon, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* at *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-father; but ſhortly after made away by *Aſaph Chawn*, ſo to make room for

1627. 9. *Curroon*, the third ſon of *Selim* or *Jangheer*, and ſon-in-law unto *Aſſaph Chawn*; having by his own Miniſters, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal blood, ſucceeded into the Eſtates, and was crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, ſtill living for ought I hear to the contrary.

To look a little on theſe Princes, their eſtate and power; in matters of *Religion* they have generally been *Mahometans*, that Religion being long ſince embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally deſcended. But not ſo ſcrupulous or preciſe in that profeſſion, as to endeavour the ſuppreſſing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his ſon *Jangheere*, being ſo inclined unto *Chriſtianity*, that they permitted the *Jeſuites* to build Colleges and Churches in *Agra* it ſelf, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, that being doubtful what *Religion* to adhere unto, he cauſed 30 Infants to be ſo brought up, that neither their Nurſes nor any body elſe ſhould ſpeak unto them; reſolving to addict himſelf to the Religion of that Country, whoſe language ſhould be ſpoken by them, as moſt agreeable to nature: and he did accordingly. For as thoſe Children ſpoke no language, ſo was he poſitive, and reſolved in no Religion. Able to ſee the vanities of *Mahomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the ſtrictneſs of *Chriſtianity*. And though *Selim* who ſucceeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects, declared himſelf for that *Religion*; yet his affairs being once ſettled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as *Neutral* as his Father. Sultan *Curroon* now Reigning, of the ſame *Neutrality*, and tis well he is ſo; there being no Religion ſo impure and bloody, which he would not diſhonour by his known ungraciouſneſs.

India, &c.

The Language ſpoken by theſe Princes, and their natural Subjects the *Magores*, or *Mougul-Tartars*, is ſaid by ſome to be the *Turkiſh*. But I think rather that it is ſome Language near it, than the very ſame: And that the Language which they ſpeak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* people) differ but in *Dialect*, a ſprinkling of the *Perſian* intermixt amongſt them. A mixture not to be denied, in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the entercourſe which their Subjects of thoſe parts have with theſe of *India*; and that the greateſt part of their Souldiers, Officers and Commanders, are ſupplied from thence.

Their Government is abſolute, if not *Tyrannical*, the *Great Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every mans eſtate which is worth the having: the perſons and purſes of his Subjects at his ſole diſpoſing; ſo that he may amaſs what treaſures, and raiſe what forces for the Wars his need requireth, or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Miniſters ſhall ſuggeſt unto him. Firſt, for his *Treaſures*, it is conceived that his *Revenue* doth amount yearly to fifty Millions of Crowns, and there are reaſons to perſwade that it may be more. The Country very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the world, the *Impoſt* upon which is of infinite value; beſides the vaſt ſums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countrys whatſoever, which hold traffick here; their commodities not being to be parted with but for ready coin. The whole land being alſo his, he eſtates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himſelf, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleaſure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themſelves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbants death, to enter on the whole eſtate of the *Tenant* by the way of *Eſcheat*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him of courſe, the wife and children of the deceaſed being fairly dealt with, if he content himſelf with the perſonal eſtate, and leave the Land to them to begin anew. For inſtance, of thoſe huge ſums which in ſo rich a Country may be had this way, it is ſaid that when the *Vice Roy* of *Lahor* died, he left to *Echebar* three millions of Gold, beſides Silver, Jewels, Horſes, Elephants, Furniture and Goods, almoſt invaluable: And of one *Raga Gagnar*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the Great *Mogul* ſeized of his into his hands 3300 pound weight of Gold, beſides Plate and Jewels. Beſides theſe means of heaping treaſure, all the Mines of the Country are wholly his, and the *Preſents* given by all ſorts of *Suters*, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his preſence which comes empty handed. Finally, if *Badurius*, which was King of *Cambaia* only, could bring into the field at once 500 Tun of gold and ſilver to pay his Army; and after the loſs of all that treaſure, advanced upon the ſudden the ſum of 600000 Crowns, which he ſent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to ſuccor him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite *Treaſures* muſt we think this Prince to be maſter of, who hath more than four times the eſtate of the King of *Cambaia*, and far more trading now than in former times.

By the like Parallel we may conjecture ſomewhat at his *Forces* alſo, *Badurius* the *Cambaian* brought into the field againſt *Merhamed*, and the King of *Mandao*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horſe, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 pieces of braſs Ordnance, of which were 4 *Baſilisks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen; and 500 Carts loaded with powder and ſhot. What then may we conceive of this Prince, who is Lord of ſo much a greater eſtate then he, but that his *Levies* may be raiſed proportionably to ſo great Dominions? But becauſe poſſibly *Badurius* did extend himſelf to the utmoſt of his power, and having loſt two Battels, was never able to recruit again, which no wiſe Prince would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any ſuch hazards on the loſs of a Battel, can in an inſtant raiſe 50000 Elephants, 300000 Horſe, and Foot proportionable, and yet have ſtock enough for an *After-game*, if that he ſhould chance to loſe the firſt. But it is ſeldom that he hath advanced to ſo high a *Muſter*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an Hundred thouſand men, and a thouſand Elephants for fight; though poſſibly of all ſorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in time of *Progreſs*, it is ſaid that his followers of all ſorts amount unto two hundred thouſand; and that his Tents do uſually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithſtanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire have not onely been at a ſtand, ſince the death of *Echebar*; but the *Rasbooches* in *Cambaia*, the *Venazarari* in *Decan*, and other puiſſant Rebels in other parts of his Dominions, hold out ſtill againſt him; ſome of them being ſaid to command as much land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in readineſs 20000 Horſe, and 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature or Divine Providence hath given to Empires, as to men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

2. INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM is that part of the great *Continent* of *India*, which lieth on the further ſide of the River *Ganges*, from the ſpring or fountain of it, whereſoever it be, to the fall thereof into the ſea by the fift and laſt mouth thereof, which is called *Antiboli*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this ſide of that River. From hence extended Eaſtward as far as *China* and the *Oriental* Ocean, on other parts bounded as before.

The Country in thoſe elder times ſo renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it had the name of *The Silver Region*, and another of *The Golden Cherſoneſe*: this laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Ophir* of *Solomon*, of which more hereafter. The People of the ſame nature and diſpoſition, in the elder times, as thoſe which did inhabit on the hither ſide of the *Ganges*: not ſo well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reaſon of the remoteneſs of their ſcituation; nor ſo well diſcovered at the preſent. So that the beſt accompt we ſhall be able to give of it, will not be ſo exact and punctual as of that before; with

Bramia. reference either to the ſtate hereof in the times of the Ancients, or the affairs of it in theſe days.

Mountains of moſt note in it, 1. *Bepyrrus*, 2. *Mæandrus*, 3. *Semanthinus*; and 4 thoſe called *Damaſi*, touched upon before, in our general diſcourſe of *India*. Out of which, and from other ſprings, flow theſe following Rivers, 1. *Catabeda*, 2. *Bocoſanna*, 3. *Sadus*, 4. *Temala*, 5. *Beſynga*, 6. *Chryſaoras*, 7. *Polandas*, 8. *Attabas*, theſe three laſt in the part hereof called the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, 9. *Daonas*, and 10. *Dorias*, riſing out of the Mountains called *Damaſi*. Others there are whoſe names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now diſtinguiſhed, it is hard to ſay. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1. *Balanga*, 2. *Cirtatha*, 3. *Taſale*, 4. *Tagma*, and 5. *Malthura*, have the name of being the *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Nations. 6. *Triglyphon*, onely honoured with the name of *Regia*: more memorable perhaps for the *white Crows*, and *bearded Hens*, which are ſaid to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat-Royal of ſome petit Prince. After theſe 1. *Sada* on the banks of the River *Sadus*, 2. *Samba*, 3. *Sabara*, 4. *Coli*, 5. *Zaba*, and 6. *Sinda*, have the name of Cities. 7. *Baracura*, 8. *Berabonna*, 9. *Bebynga*, 10. *Tacola*, 11. *Sabana* and 12. *Thibonobaſtus*: are marked out for the moſt noted *Empories*, or Towns of trade; the memory of *Sabana* being ſtill preſerved in the Frith of *Sabaon*, betwixt this *Cherſoneſe* and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by thoſe ſpecial Adjuncts, of which, 1. *Cocconagara*, and 2. *Balonca*, in the *Golden Cherſoneſe*; 3. *Rhandamarcotta*, in the Midlands, 4. *Pentapolis*, near the mouth of *Ganges* called *Antibolum*; 5. *Aganagara*, near the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6. *Corygaza*, one of the principal Towns of the *Marande*, may be ſome of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Maranda* laſt ſpoken of, were the *Gangarides*, and *Gangani*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacorei*, bordering on the Mountain *Bepyrrus*; as the *Tiladæ* on *Meandrus*; and the *Animachæ*, and *Cabocæ*, near the hills called *Damaſi*. The *Baſada*, ſaid to be crooked, ſhort, and thick; but of a cheerful aſpect, and clear complexion: of which compoſition alſo the inhabitants of the *Golden Cherſoneſe* were obſerved to be: the *Barræ*, and *Cudutæ*, on the Bay called *Sinus magnus*; the *Leſtori*, a thieviſh and Piratical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of ſo hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow. Theſe, with the reſt, too many to be here recited, the iſſue in moſt likelyhood of *Chavilah* and *Saba* the ſons of *Jocktan*; of whom we find ſo many footſteps in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabaraco*, *Siam*, *Sabana Emporio*, *Sobanus Fluvio*; and in the Countrys now called *Ava*, and the Kingdom of *Cavelan*. Of any of their actions we find little in ancient ſtories, or of the power of any of their former Kings: but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander* (that beyond the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Agramenes* (the moſt powerful King of all thoſe Countryes) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horſe, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to try Maſteries with him; yet his Souldiers were ſo terrified with it (remembring the hard bout which they had with *Porus*) that no perſwaſions could prevail with them to go further Eaſtward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unleſs the converſion of the *Indians* in the time of *Conſtantine*, may be applyed to thoſe on that ſide of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the later obſervations and diſcoveries of it, we find it (as moſt barbarous Countryes elſe till reduced to Order) diſmembred and ſubdivided into many eſtates; almoſt as many Realms as Cities, and diſtinct governments amongſt them, as Tribes and Nations. Moſt of them *Gentiles* in Religion, with whom the name of *Chriſt* and *Chriſtianity* not ſo much as heard of, till the coming of the *Jeſuites* thither; who have not only obtained leave, but ſome invitations, for the promoting of the *Goſpel*. And for *Mahometaniſm*, though it had got ſome footing on the Sea-coaſts of the Gulf of *Bengala*, as lying moſt convenient for the trade of the *Arabian* Merchants: yet on the North, and midland parts, and thoſe towards *China*, and the *Oriental* Seas, it was as little heard of as *Chriſtianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them, to which as many of the reſt as are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are thoſe of, 1. *Brama*, or *Barma*, 2. *Cauchin-China*, 3. *Camboia*, 4. *Jangoma*, 5. *Siam*, and 6. *Pegu*.

BRAMA.

THe Kingdoms of *BRAMA* or *BARMA* have on the Weſt, the River *Ganges*; on the North, part of *Cathay* in *Tartary*; on the Eaſt *Cauchin-China*; and on the Sonth, the Kingdom of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramanes*, or *Brames*, poſſeſſed for many ages paſt of theſe North-Weſt Countryes. By the tranſpoſing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdoms of *Barma*.

The Country of theſe *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the neareſt of the *Peguan* Kingdoms, for the ſpace of 150 Leagues, but far more from Weſt to Eaſt: watered with many great and remarkable Rivers, iſſuing from the Lake *Chiamay*, which though 600 miles from the Sea, and emptying it ſelf continually into ſo many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compaſs, and is nevertheleſs full of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and the commodiouſneſs of the Lake, the Country is wonderfully enriched, as *Ægypt* by the overflowings of *Nilus*. Which notwithſtanding, there are in it many huge forreſts, in the Weſt eſpecially; and therein many Lyons, Tigers, Ounces, Serpents, and other Creatures of a miſchievous and hurtful Nature.

The whole Country containeth the Kingdom of 1. *Calam*; 2. *Prom*, 3. *Melinta*, 4. *Miranda*, 5. *Bacan*, 6. *Tangu*, 7. *Ava*, and 8. *Brama*.

Of 1. MELINTAY and 2. MIRANDA, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the reſt, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the firſt riſing of his fortunes; becoming the foundation of his following greatneſs. Of 3. BACAM, it is ſaid that it is plentifully enriched with Mines, both of Gold and Silver. In 4. CAVILAN, commonly and contractedly called GALAM, we find apparent foot-ſteps of the name of *Cavilah* the ſon of *Jocktan*. Of the reſt more is to be ſaid, not much.

5. *PROM*, though it be a little Kingdom, is exceeding populous, and ſtored with a warlike people. Given by the ſecond King of *Pegu* of the *Tangum* Race, to a younger ſon; who being by his Father commanded to the ſiege of *Marmolan* which had then revolted, not only did decline the ſervice, but rebelled againſt him; and by the ſtrength of this ſmall Kingdom held it out three years. But ſeeing his Fathers fortunes in a manner deſperate, he repented of his diſobedience; and went unto his aid, with an Army of 50000 men of his Natural Subjects. Treacherouſly poiſoned on the way by his chiefeſt Counſeller, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6. *TANGU*, is the name of one of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms, ſo called from the chief Town thereof: formerly ſubject with the reſt of the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their ſeveral Vice-Royes. One of which taking his advantage of the wars between the Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to ſet up for himſelf; and husbanded his affairs ſo well, that he became ſole Lord of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the reſt in this part of *India*. Not long enjoyed by his Succeſſor, when diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by one whom he married to his Siſter, and made Governour of this very Province. In which he bore himſelf ſo ſtiffly, that being ſent for by his King to aid him againſt ſome of his Rebels, and to bring all the Inhabitants of the Country with him: he anſwered that he would ſend one half; to ſend all, unreaſonable. Incenſed with which denial, the King armed againſt him; but he put the Leaders to the ſword, and ſeized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and diſpairing of reconcilement, he took upon himſelf the title of King of *Tangu*; and to ſecure himſelf therein, joyned with the King of *Arrachan* againſt his Soveraign; whom he moſt barbarouſly ſlew (after he had put himſelf into his hands) with his wife and children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of his villany, ſubdued not long after, with the reſt of theſe *Indian* Princes, by the King of *Barma*; of which more hereafter.

7. *AVA*, another of theſe Kingdoms, and one of the plantations of *Cavilah* alſo; is liberally furniſhed with all things neceſſary for the life of man. It affordeth alſo ſtore of *Rubies*; which they dig out of the Mountains; a certain creature which breeds *Musk*, together with great plenty of horſe and Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*, which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built, iſſuing out of the Lake of *Chamay*, and communicates the ſame to the whole Province. Subject for many ages paſt to the King of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is ſaid; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling againſt the ſon and ſucceſſor of his Benefactor, and by him ſlain in ſingle Combat; this Kingdom was conferred on a ſon of the Conqueror. A Prince of more vertue than his Brother; and one which grew at laſt unto ſo great power, that in the buſtle or cumbuſtions of the Kingdom of *Pegu*, he ſurpriſed or forced the Fort of *Siriangh*, formerly given unto the *Portugals* by the King of *Arrachan*; ſlew all the Souldiers, and ſpitted *Philip de Britto*, who commanded it. After which, gathering together the diſperſed *Peguans*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himſelf a good bargain by it; if the ſudden coming of the King of *Barma*, had not ſpoiled his markets.

8. *BRAMA* or *BARMA*, the moſt Southern of theſe *Bramain* kingdoms, the King whereof was *Feudatarie* to the Kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no accompt when the *Portugals* came firſt acquainted with *India*, nor in many years after; now of moſt renown. For ſitting ſtill when all the reſt of their neighbours were embroiled in wars, they gathered ſo much power and ſtrength, that in the end, one of the later Kings hereof obſerving how the forces of his neighbouring Princes were conſumed, and their treaſures waſted; levying an Army of 300000 fighting men, 40000 Elephants, with all things ſuitable. And with this power ſubdued the kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odia*, (the two chief Cities of theſe parts) invaded the Kingdom of *Siam*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of it; making in little time all the leſſer Princes to become his *Tributaries*; as they ſtill continue.

CHAUCHIN-CHINA.

CHAUCHIN-CHINA is bounded on the Weſt, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the Eaſt, with part of the Great Realm of *China*; on the North extending towards *Tartary*; on the South, bordering on *Camboia*.

The Country aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great ſtore of ſilks, of which the Inhabitants make *Taffata*, and other ſtuffes. It affordeth alſo plenty of *Porcellane* Earth, which being made into Cups, Diſhes, and other Utenſils of houſhold, is ſold by the name of *China-ware*: well counterfeited of late amongſt us, by putting a white cruſt on our *Potters* earth, as neat for uſe and ſhew as the natural *China*.

The people very ſtout and warlike, eſpecially for Foot-ſervice, though they have many horſes here, and thoſe fit for war. Well-practiſed on their *Peeces* alſo, on which they ſpend great ſtore of powder, but not ſo much in war, as in ſports and triumphs: yet making much more than they ſpend, the earth in ſome parts yielding very fit *materials* for that commodity. Trained up to *Manufactures*, eſpecially to the make-

ing

Camboia. ing of Powder, Silks, and *Precellane*, which they ſell to the *Chineſe*. *Idolaters*, for the moſt part, as are thoſe of *China*, whoſe Characters and language they alſo uſe: but ſo that there appear ſome inclinations unto *Chriſtianity*, in many of them, who have erected many *Croſſes*, and do admit the pictures of the *Bleſſed Virgin*, and the final judgement. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progreſs in the Goſpel, if they had met with better Teachers than theſe *Laymens*-books.

The chief City hereof is called *Chauchin-China* by the name of the Province, ſituate on a River coming out of *China*; and paſſing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Country divided into three Provinces, and as many Kings, over which one *Paramount*: but he and they the Tributaries of the King of *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Iſland called *Ainao*, ten miles from the land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fiſhing for *Pearls*. The only Province of the *Indies*, which is wholly ſubject to the power of a foreign Prince; the *Portugals* holding in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces.

3. *CAMBOIA.*

CAMBOIA is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin-China*; on the Eaſt and South, and the Ocean; on the Weſt, with parts of the Kingdom of *Siam*, and the Realms of *Jangoma*. So called from *Camboia* the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Camboia* ſpecially ſo called.

1. *CHAMPA*, the Northern part hereof bordereth *Chauchin-China*, and is liberally provided of all neceſſaries: beſides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in ſilver, much uſed in *Bathes*, and at the funerals of great perſons. This a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject with the reſt to the King of *Barma*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Country, is ſcituate near the Sea-ſide, and of very good traffick.

2. *CAMBOIA* ſpecially ſo called, lieth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Countrey, well ſtored with Elephants and *Rhinocerots*, which laſt the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth alſo great plenty of a ſweet-wood, which they call *Calumba*, as precious and as much eſteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the ſame, or ſome *Species* of it, as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Fleſh, and Fiſh; Well-watred with the River *Mecon*, which iſſuing out of *China*, and having received many leſſer ſtreams falleth firſt into a great Lake of 200 miles compaſs, and thence into the *Indian* Ocean; making betwixt the Lake and that an hundred Iſlands.. By the overflowings of this River the whole Country is enriched (as *Egypt* by the like overflowing of *Nilus*:) the inhabitants at thoſe times betaking themſelves to their upper Rooms, and paſſing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be ſtrong and warlike, though more enclined to merchandiſe and navigation than to deeds of Arms: *Idolaters* of the worſt kind, eſteeming Men and Beaſts of a like condition in regard of any future judgement: of late beginning to ſet up, and adore the *Croſs*, which is (it ſeems) the firſt *Principle of Religion*, in which the *Friers* are wont to inſtruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet, by theſe new Teachers, from burning the women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning their Nobles with the King, uſed only here; but voluntarily to expreſs their loves, not upon conſtraint.

The chief Towns of it, 1. *Camboia*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia* and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Scituate on the River *Mecon* before deſtroyed: where it hath its fall into the Sea; well traded, as the Staple for all this Country, the commodities whereof are brought hither, and here ſold to the Merchant. 2. *Cudurmuch*, twelve leagues from *Camboia*, on the ſame River alſo. 3. *Coul*, on the Sea-ſide in the very South-weſt Angle of all the Country. The Kings whereof, once abſolute, and at their own diſpoſing, till invaded by a vaſt Army of the neighbouring *Laos*: in which their King being ſlain, and his forces weakned, his ſon and Succeſſor was conſtrained to become a *Vaſſal* to the crown of *Siam*. But fearing the loſs of his eſtate, when that Kingdom was made ſubject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598. he applied himſelf unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninſula* (part of his dominions) extending three leagues into the Sea; and ſent to the *Jeſuites* for ſome of their *Society* to live and preach amongſt his people. Not able for all theſe honeſt Policies to preſerve himſelf from being made a *Feudatary* of the King of *Barma*.

4. *JANGOMA.*

IANGOMA or the Country of the LAOS, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Camboia* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Menon*; on the Weſt, with the River of *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdom; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Brama*.

It took its name from *Jangoma* the chief Province of it; the other two (for here be three of them in all) being thoſe of *Lavea*, and *Curroy*, All of them joyned together called the Country of *Laos*, by the name of the people, a mighty Nation and a ſtout, by Religion Gentiles, naked from the middle upwards, and truſſing up their hair like a cap. Their Country very rich and level, but very ill neighboured by the

Gueoni

Siam.

Gueoni (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name *Gangigu*) who poſſeſs the mountains: whence falling in great companies to hunt for men whom they kill and eat, they commit cruel butcheries amongſt them. Inſomuch as this people, not able to defend themſelves againſt their fury, or rather wanting good Leaders to conduct and order them (for it is ſaid that they can make a million of men) were fain to put themſelves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no further than the humour took them.

Towns they have none of any note, except thoſe three which give name to the ſeveral Provinces; and thoſe of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the moſt part live on the banks of their Rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber; or elſe upon the Rivers in boats and ſhallops, as the *Tartarians* of the Deſarts in their Carts or wheel-houſes. One of their Rivers (commonly called River of *Laos*) ſaid to extend 400 leagues within the land, as far as *Tartary* & *China*; and from *July* to *September* to invert its courſe, and flow back ſtrongly toward its fountain. Not governed by any certain Rule or Order, till they ſubmitted to the patronage of the King of *Siam*; and then no other then they liſted; though for their ſakes, that King engaged himſelf in a war againſt the *Cannibals*, their moſt deadly enemies, accompanied with 25000 foot, 20000 Horſe and 10000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of thoſe *Cannibals* (of whom otherwiſe they had been devoured) in the year 1578 they deſcended the River in great multitudes, to the number of 200000, and fell into the Realm of *Camboia*. But they made an unproſperous adventure of it. For though the King of *Camboia* loſt his life in the battel, yet he gave them ſuch a fatal blow, that they were almoſt all ſlain, drowned, or captived in the fight. Weakned wherewith, they became an eaſie prey to the *Vice-Roy* of *Tangu*, when he firſt made himſelf ſole maſter of this part of *India*. Who giving to his Brother the Kingdom of *Ava*, and leaving to his eldeſt Son the Kingdom of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, conferred this Country, with the title of King of *Jangoma*, on a younger Son. But he, begotten on a daughter of the King of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole *Indian* Empire, was eaſily perſwaded by the *Talapoies* (ſo they call their Prieſts) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his Claim, by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*, by whom that King was ſlain, and his Kingdom waſted. How he ſped afterwards, I find not. But probable it is, that he ſubmitted with the reſt to the King of *Barma*.

5. *SIAM*.

SIAM, is bounded on the North, with *Jangoma*, and part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, ſave that it toucheth on the Eaſt, with a part of *Camboia*, and on the Weſt, with a point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all thoſe Kingdoms which paſs under this name, as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Country of greater length then breadth, ſtretcheth it ſelf South-wards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninſula* or *Demy-Iland*, called anciently *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe*: One of the five famous *Cherſoneſes* or *Peninſulaes* of the elder Writers; the other four being *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Cherſoneſe* near *Propontis*, the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in the *Euxine*, and *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* in the North of *Germany*, now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the Golden, ſuper-added to it, from its plenty of Gold, for which much celebrated by the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans* (and therefore not improbably thought by ſome to be *Solomons Ophir*) ſtill famous with the reſt of the Countries of the Kingdom of *Siam*, for abundance of Gold, Silver, Tin, and other metals; great quantity of Pepper ſent yearly thence, with ſtore of Elephants, and Horſes: the whole Country very fat, and fertile, well ſtored with Rice, Corn, Graſs, and all other Neceſſaries.

The people generally much addicted to pleaſures, if not to Luxury; delighted much with Muſick and rich apparel; and ſuch as ſtand much upon their honour. For their inſtruction in good Letters they have *publick Schools*, where their own Laws, and the myſteries of their own Religion, are taught them in their natural Language; all other Sciences in ſtrange tongues, underſtood by none but by the learned. To tillage they can frame themſelves, and are painful in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanical* Arts, which they put over to their *Slaves*. In Religion for the moſt part Gentiles, worſhipping the four Elements amongſt other gods; to each of which as they are ſeverally affected, ſo are their bodies to be diſpoſed of: either burnt, buried, hanged, or drowned, after their deceaſe; as in their lives they were moſt devoted to the Fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some Chriſtians here alſo in and about the parts poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*; but more *Mahometans*: who poſſeſſing two hundred Leagues of the Sea-coaſts of this Country, have planted that Religion in moſt parts of the Country now by them poſſeſſed.

It containeth in it many Kingdoms, ſome of little note; thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1. *Malaca*. 2. *Putane*. 3. *Jor*. 4. *Muantay*. and 4. *Siam*, properly and eſpecially ſo called. Of which *Malaca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, *Jor* and *Putane* are poſſeſſed by the *Arabians* or *Saracens*, the other two have followed the fortunes of the Kings of *Siam*.

1. The Kingdom of *MALACA* taketh up the South part of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Ptolomy* calleth *Malanconin*, in the extreme South-point hereof near unto *Sabana*, then a noted *Emporie*, for the ſpace of 270 miles. So called from *Malaca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Muſicana*, or built very near it, from whence this Tract is called by *Strabo*, *Muſicani terra*. The City ſeated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here ſaid to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflowings whereof, and the nearneſs of it to the *Line* (being

Chreſon. Aurea.

ing but two degrees in the North) the Air hereof, and all the territory belonging to it, is very unwholſom; and for that cauſe the Country but meanly populous. In compaſs it is ſaid to be 20 miles, of great wealth, becauſe of almoſt infinite trading; for Spices, *Unguents*, Gold, Silver, Pearls, and precious Stones, the moſt noted *Empory* of the Eaſt. Inſomuch that it is ſaid by *Ludovico Barthema*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more Ships then any one City in the world, more by far ſince the coming of the *Portugals* to it, then it was before. The people (as in all this Tract) of an Aſh-colour, with long hair hanging over their faces; bloudy and murderous, eſpecially when they meet one another in the night. Few other Towns of any note in a place ſo unhealthy, except 2. *Sincapura*, ſcituate Eaſt of *Malaca*, near the Promontory of old called *Magnum*; ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Zaba* of *Ptolomy*; and that more probably then that it ſhould be his *Palura*, as *Maginus* would have it; *Palura* being a City of the *Hither India*, and different at the leaſt 20 degrees of Longitude from any part of this *Cherſoneſe*. But whatſoever it was called in the former times, it was in theſe latter Ages the Mother of *Malaca*; the greateſt part of the trade and people being removed from thence to this newer foundation; before which time it was the beſt frequented *Emporie* in theſe parts of the Eaſt. 3. *Palo Zambilan* 120 miles on the Weſt of *Malaca*, from whence to *Sincapura*, coaſting about the Southern Cape (now called *Cape Liampo*) we have a Sea-ſhore of 270 miles, as before was ſaid. No other habitation of any reckoning, but a few ſheds upon the ſhore for the uſe of Fiſhermen, and ſome ſcattered Villages in the Land: the people dwelling moſt on trees for fear of Tigers.

This Tract in former times poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1258 became a Kingdom of it ſelf; founded by *Paramiſera*, and ſome other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the tyranny of their own King, came into this Country, where they were lovingly received by *Sangeſinga*, then reigning under the *Siamite*, in *Sincapura*. Him they perfidiouſly ſlew, and inveſted *Paramiſera* in his Dominion. Outed of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to ſeek a new dwelling, and after two or three Removes, fell upon the place where *Malaca* now ſtandeth, which City, pleaſed with the commodiouſneſs of the ſcituation, he is ſaid to have built. The trade of *Sincapura* in ſhort time removed hither alſo, which ſo increaſed the wealth and power of the Kings thereof, that joyning with the *Moores* who began to plant themſelves on the ſhores adjoyning, and receiving withal the Law of *Mahomet*, they began to caſt off all ſubjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the Son and Succeſſour of *Paramiſera* had ſubmitted his new-raiſed Kingdom, and became their *Homager*. Incenſed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500 ſent out a Navy af 200 Sayl to diſtreſs it by Sea, and an Army of 30000 men and 400 Elephants to beſiege it by land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindred by Tempeſts, and the Inſolencies of ſome of his Souldiers, the *Portugals*, in the year 1511. under the conduct of *Albuquerque* had poſſeſſed themſelves of it, who built there a Fortreſs and a Church. And though *Alodinus* the Son of the expelled King whoſe name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Eſtate, and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the Kings of *Jor* and *Achen* (two neigbouring Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have ſeverally and ſucceſſively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they ſtill keep it in defiance of all oppoſition which hath been hitherto made againſt them.

2. North unto that of *Malaca* lieth the Kingdom of *YOR*, *JOR*, or *JOHOR*; ſo called of *Jor*, or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the moſt part by *Moores*, or *Saracens*, *Mahometaniſm* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Country alſo. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of ſo much power, that joyning his Land-forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he beſieged *Malaca*, and built a Royal Fort before it: in which, when taken by *Paul de Lima*, by the defeat of this King, were found 900 pieces of braſs Ordnance. After this, picking a quarrel with the King of *Pahan*, he burnt his Houſes, Barns, Proviſions, and the Suburbs of the City it ſelf, but in the courſe of his affairs, was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Iſle of *Sumatra*) his old confederate, who after 29 daies ſiege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this King or Kingdom, I am not able to reſolve. In former times it did acknowledge him of *Siam* for the *Lord* in *Chief*.

3. More Northward yet lieth the Kingdom of *PATHANE*, denominated from *Patane* the chief City of it: but different from *Patane*, in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *York-ſhire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* from *Holland* in *Lincolnſhire*, as hath been fully ſhewn before. The City made of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and compoſed together: the *Meſquit* only (moſt of the people being *Mahometans*) is built of Brick: The *Chinois* make a great part of the Inhabitants of it, inſomuch that in this ſmall City there are ſpoke three Languages, *viz.* the *Chineſe*, uſed by that people, the *Malayan* (or Language of *Malaca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this ſmall Crown is *Feuditary*. Built of ſuch light ſtuffe and combuſtible matter, it muſt needs be in great danger of fire; and was moſt miſerably burnt in the year 1613. by ſome *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of ſome of their Fellows: at which time the whole City was conſumed with fire, the *Meſquit*, the *Queens* Court, and ſome few Houſes, excepted only. The Country governed of late years by Queens, who have been very kind to the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories* in *Patane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late Queen a little before that diſmal fire, offended with the King of *Pan* or *Pahan*, who had married her Siſter, and reigned in a little Iſland not far off, ſhe ſent againſt him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 men: by which compelled to correſpond with her deſires, he brought his Queen and her Children with him to make up the Breach.

4. The Kingdom of *SIAM*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, is ſcituate on the main-land (the reſt before deſcribed being in the *Cherſoneſe*) betwixt *Camboia* on the Eaſt, *Pegu* on the Weſt, the Kingdom of *Muntay* on the North, and the main Ocean on the South. The Chief Cities of it, 1. *Socotai*, memorable for a Temple made wholly of mettal 80 ſpans in height, raiſed by one of the Kings; it being

the cuſtom of this Country, that every King at his firſt coming to the Crown, is to build a *Temple*; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2. *Quedda*, renowned for the beſt Pepper, and for that cauſe very much frequented by forraign Merchants. 3. *Tavay*, upon the ſea-coaſt, where it joyneth to *Pegu*. Whence meaſuring along the ſhoars till we come to *Champa* before mentioned; being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Cherſoneſe* into this Accompt) we have a Sea-coaſt of the length of 600 leagues. 4. *Lugor*, upon the Sea-ſide alſo, near that little *Iſthmus*, which joyneth the *Cherſoneſe* to the land; from whence to *Malaca* is 600 miles ſail all along the Coaſt. 5. *Calantan*, the head City of a little Kingdom, but ſubject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6. *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Menam*, for trade and Merchandiſe. So populous, and frequented by forreign Nations, that beſides the Natives, here are ſaid to be thirty thouſand houſholds of *Arabians*. The Houſes of it high built, by reaſon of the *Annual* deluge, during which time they live in the upper rooms; and unto every houſe a Boat for the uſe of the family. thoſe of the poorer ſort dwell in little ſheds, made of reed and timber; which they remove from place to place for the beſt convenience of their markets. And yet ſo ſtrong, that being beſieged by the *Tanguan* Conqueror, then King of *Pegu*. *Anno* 1567. with an Army of fourteen hundred thouſand fighting men, for the ſpace of twenty moneths together; it reſolutely held good againſt him: not gained at laſt by force but treaſon, one of the Gates being ſet open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Chriſtianity; but hitherto ſo ill inſtructed in the principles of it, that they maintain amongſt many other ſtrange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years (from what time I know not) the world ſhall be conſumed with fire; and that under the Aſhes of it ſhall remain two Eggs, out of which ſhall come one man and one woman, who ſhall people the world anew.

5. *MUANTAY* the laſt of theſe Kingdoms, lieth betwixt *Jangoma* and *Siam*; memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Udie*, the principal of all the Kingdoms of *Siam*, and the uſual reſidence of thoſe Kings. Scituate on the banks of the River *Caipumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the wars, and in continual readineſs for preſent Service. For though this King be Lord of nine ſeveral Kingdoms, yet he uſeth none of them in his wars, but the natural *Siamites*, and thoſe of this City, and the reſt of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is ſaid that for the uſe of this City only (being ſeated like *Venice* upon many little Iſlands not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 skiffes, and ſhallops; ſerving to waft the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great ſtrength, and almoſt impregnable. But being beleagured by the *Tanguan* or *Bramain* Conqueror with ten hundred thouſand fighting men (an Army big enough to have buried a greater City than this; if every man had but caſt a ſhovel full of earth upon it) it was wonne at laſt.

The Government of theſe Kings of *Siam*, was abſolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being ſole Lord of all the Land in his Kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to Husbandmen, during life or pleaſure, but never paſſed over unto any, the right of Inheritance. And theſe he grants unto his Subjects, beſides rents in money, upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horſe, Foot, and Elephants: thereby inabled without further charge unto the Subject, to levy 20000 Horſe, and 250000 Foot for preſent ſervice; beſides far greater numbers out of the reſidue of his people, if occaſion be. And for his ordinary *Guard* he was ſaid to keep 6000 Souldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which beaſts he is reported to have 30000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the war. By reaſon of ſo great a power he became Maſter of the Realms of *Camboia*, and *Champa*; held thoſe of *Malaca*, *Jor*, *Pahan*, and *Patane*, as his Vaſſals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangoma* and the *Laos*, under his Protection. But when the fatal time was come, and that his City of *Siam* was betrayed to the King of *Pegu*; he poyſoned himſelf upon the news: his Son becoming *Tributary* to the *Peguan* Victor. This Son of his, too much a Prince to be a Subject, revolted from a Son of the *Peguan*, a vicious and tyrannical King (degenerating from the gallantries of ſo worthy a Father, by whom he was beſieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting men. Unable to reſiſt his Army if he had preſently declared ſuch a reſolution, he entertained the King with Treaties, and promiſes of delivering the City to him, till the third moneth after (which was *March*) when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Countrey, for 120 miles about; by which ſudden and violent inundation, and the ſword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there periſhed all of this great Army except 70 thouſand. After this blow, the conquering *Siamite*, *Anno* 1600 beſieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon: and dying in the year 1605. left his eſtate unto his Brother. Whoſe Son ſucceeding, ſetled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *Engliſh* Merchants, *Anno* 1612. and was in a fair way of obtaining the ſoveraignty of *Pegu*, then deſtroyed and waſted; if the violent and unreſiſtable coming of the King of *Barma* had not croſſed him in it: to whom now ſubject with the reſt of the *Indian* Princes, on that ſide of the River.

6. *PEGU.*

PEGU is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Jangoma*, and a part of *Siam*: on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the Weſt and South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City, as that is by the name of the River upon which it ſtandeth. Divided commonly into the Kingdoms and eſtates of 1. *Verma*, 2. *Macin*, 3. *Orrachan*, 4. *Martavan*, and 5. *Pegu* ſpecially ſo called.

Pegu.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a ſmall Kingdom bordering upon *Bengala*; and ſo denominated from *Verma*, the chief Town thereof. A Kingdom which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moores* and *Mahometans*, which can be ſaid of no other of theſe *Indian* Kingdoms.

The people black, naked about the Waſte, and covered beneath it only with a veil of Cotton: in matter of Religon *Gentiles*, and in war right valiant. This laſt apparent by the long and frequent wars which they had with the *Peguans*; to whom made tributary in concluſion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN*, ſo called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of theſe *Peguan* Kingdoms. Of ſmall eſteem but for the great quantity of the ſweet wood, by the *Latins* called *Lignum Vitæ*, by the Natives *Calamba*, ſo much in uſe for Funerals and Baths (as was ſaid before) held alſo by the *Indians* for a ſoveraign and unparallel'd *Medicine* againſt many dangerous diſeaſes; great quantities whereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchant. One of the firſt Kingdoms which was conquered by the King of *Barma* (upon whom it bordereth) in the beginning of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN* or *Arrachan*, lieth on the Weſt of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*; environed round with mountains, and impaſſable woods. Chief Towns thereof, 1. *Dianga*, taken and deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the King of *Arrachan*, *Anno* 1608. 2. *Sundiva*, ſcituate in an Iſland unto which it gives name, ſix leagues off from the continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, *Anno* 1602. and from them taken by this King about two years after, and made a Member of his Kingdom. The Iſland 30 Leagues in compaſs, very ſtrong, fruitful, and the Town well fortified. 3. *Arrachan* the head City, which gives name to all, diſtant from the Sea 45 miles, but ſeated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the ruines of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the deſolation of which State the King hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, beſieged the ſecond *Peguan* King in the Caſtle of *Mecao*; and had betwixt them the whole pillage of that wealthy City, together with the poſſeſſion of the beſt Towns of it. After this Victory, he returned to *Arrachan* in triumph, leading with him the *white Elephant* of the King of *Pegu*, ſumptuouſly adorned; the brother and two ſons of the *Peguan* following in the *Pageant*. A ſolemn and magnificent entry. The better to aſſure himſelf of his new dominions, this King beſtowed upon the *Portugals* the Fort of *Siriangh*, on the River of *Pegu*. For which favour, ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taken his Son, and put him to a grievous ranſom; they brake out into open wars. In the purſuit whereof, after many loſſes, the King recovered from them the Iſle of *Sundiva*; and manning out a Fleet of 1200 ſail (of which 75 were of ſo great burden, as to carry every one, twelve pieces of Ordnance) and in that Fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 greater Pieces, beſieged the Fortreſs: aſſiſted in that action alſo by the King of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his deſign, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613. as before is ſaid, had he not been outed in the mean time of his own Kingdom, by the King of *Barma*: of whoſe great riſe, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Arrachan*, were the firſt foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richeſt of theſe Kingdoms lieth South to *Arrachan*, a little turning towards the Weſt. The Soyl ſo fertil, that it yieldeth three Harveſts in a year; and ſent annually 15 ſhips to *Cochin*, and as many to *Malaca*, laden with Rice. Rich alſo in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steel, Braſs, Silver, Gold, and *Rubies*, and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forreſts well-ſtored with Harts, Boars, and *Buffoles*; ſtore of Pines and Palms: the woods with *Sugar-Canes*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and ſhrubs either *Medicinal* or *odoriferous*. The principal City of it called alſo *Martavan*, ſcituate on an Haven open at all times of the year, and not choaked with Sands, as uſually other Havens are in the *Indian winter*: of great trading, much ſplendor, and a temperate Ayr. Faithful unto the laſt to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were ſubject; and in that conſtancy they twice repulſed the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the moſt part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* cauſed two of his cowardly Captains to be caſt into a chaldron of ſcalding Oyl; and at the third Aſſault became maſter of it. *Bannalaius* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themſelves in the woods and Deſarts.

5. *PEGU*, the moſt predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Creſcent* or half moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on that coaſt from *Negrais* unto *Tavan*, the next Town of *Siam*, for the ſpace of three hundred miles, and upwards; but little leſs in breadth, if not quite as much. So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs through the midſt of it, and gives this name alſo unto *Pegu* the moſt Noted City.

The Soyl hereof exceeding fruitful, by reaſon of the annual overflowings of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear Wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth alſo many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make Wax) ſtore of *Elephants*, and abundance of Parats which ſpeak plainer, and are much fairer than in any place elſe.

The people of a mean ſtature, ſomwhat corpulent, and naturally beardleſs. If any ſtragling hair thruſt forth, they alwaies carry Pincers with them, to pull them out. Nimble and ſtrong, but yet not very fit for War; ſpending too much of their ſtrength in the love of women, to which moſt paſſionately addicted. They black their teeth, becauſe they ſay that dogs teeth be white; and wear no cloaths but on their heads, and about their nakedneſs. Said by the *Jews* to be deſcended from ſome of the *Tribes* of *Iſrael*, confined hither by *Solomon*: but by the *Peguans* themſelves, to be begotten of a dog and a *China woman*, which

were

Pegu.

were ſaved here upon a Shipwrack. By *Religion* for the moſt part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable worlds one after another, and a determinate number of gods for every world: more *Orthodox*, in aſſigning after this life according to the merits of the party deceaſed, one place of *Torments*, and another of *Delights* and pleaſures, if they had not added a third alſo for *Satisfaction*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, 1. *Coſmi*, ſeated in a territory full of Woods, as thoſe Woods of Tigers, Wild Bores, Apes, and Parats; the houſes made of *Canes*, which ſerve here for timber (ſome of them being as big as Hogs-heads) covered over with Thatch. 2. *Jocabel*, a great City on the River *Pegu*, 3. *Dian*, on the ſame River alſo, where they make Barks or Veſſels as big as *Galeaſſes*; which ſerve both for Trade and habitation. 4. *Coilan*, a City four-ſquare, and each ſquare four miles. 5. *Lanagon*, a pleaſant Town, and full of *Palm-trees*. 6. *Dala*, in which were the Kings Stables for his ordinary Elephants: his four *White Elephants* (for ſo many he had) being alwaies kept about the Court, not ſeen abroad, but in great ſolemnities, when trapped in Furnitures of Gold, and no leſs honoured by the people, than the King himſelf; called therefore King of the *White Elephant*, by the neighbouring Princes. 7. *Silvanpede*, where many victualing Barks are made to ſerve for dwelling on the Sea. 8. *Meccao*, where they uſe to unload ſuch Goods, as are to paſs by Land to *Pegu*. Neighboured by the ſtrongeſt Caſtle in all this Kingdom, and therefore choſen by the King for his place of Retreat; when diſtreſſed by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*. To the laſt of which, making choyce to yield up his Perſon, with his Wife and Children, becauſe he had married him to his Siſter; he was by him perfidiouſly and baſely murdered. 9. *Siriangh*, a ſtrong piece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arrachan* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Britto*, in the year one thouſand ſix hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good againſt him, and the King of *Tangu* his Aſſociate, for the ſpace of Thirteen Years together: was at laſt forced to yield himſelf Priſoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a Spit. 10. *Pegu*, the Glory of theſe Parts, great, ſtrong, and beautiful: Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old* inhabited by Merchants, the New by the King and his Nobility. The Houſes made of Wood, but covered with Tiles; a *Coco-Tree* before every Houſe, yielding a comfortable ſhade, and a pleaſant ſhew. The Streets as ſtraight as any Line, and ſo broad that ten or twelve men may ride abreſt in the narroweſt of them. In Figure ſquare, each ſquare having five Gates, beſides many Turrets; all of them beautifully guilded. The whole well walled with Wals of Stone, environed on all ſides with great Ditches; and in the midſt the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, moſt ſumptuouſly guilded: but ſpecially the Temple or *Idol-Chappel*, the Wals were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleaſure as the world could yield: his Empire not extending only over theſe Kingdoms now deſcribed, but over all the Provinces or Kingdoms of the *Bramanes* alſo; which he governed by his ſeveral *Vice-Roys*, or rather *TRIBUTARY* Kings. A happineſs too great to continue long. For in the year 1567. the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his faction, and reputation of his Vertues, entred into rebellion, and ſlaying the Nobles of the Land, uſurped that Kingdom. After this he ſubdued the cities and kingdoms of *Calam*, *Melintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* and *Bramanes*, and therefore taking to himſelf the title of the King of *Brama*, becauſe his fame and Fortunes took their Riſe from his Victories over them. Following the courſe of his ſucceſſes, he firſt aſſailed the Cities of *Odia* and *Siam*, but repulſed with loſſe. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleagured *Pegu*, and ſubdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the Siege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying, he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his Brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grandſons, the Kingdom of *Jangoma* to a younger ſon, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, to his eldeſt Son, a Prince of vicious and tyrannical nature; and not more cruel to his Subjects, than they diſobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both ſides, the people to defend their liberty, the King to preſerve his Royalty. During theſe civil diſcords, the [illegible] King of *Siam*, whoſe late overthrow was not yet fully digeſted, came violently into the Countrey of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Graſs, and Fruits, killing man, woman, and child, and having ſatisfied his Fury, returned to his home. This ſpoyl of the Fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unſupportable famine, which conſumed all the inhabitants of this flouriſhing Kingdom, except ſuch whom the *Granaries* of the City of *Pegu* preſerved, *Anno* 1598. For here the Fathers devoured their children, the ſtronger preyed upon the weaker; not only devouring their more fleſhy parts, but their Entrals alſo: nay they broke up the skuls of ſuch as they had ſlain, and ſucked out their brains. This calamity incited another Tributary Prince of *Tangu*, to make his beſt advantage out of his neighbours affliction; though made his Brother-in-law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For juſtly fearing the diſpleaſure of his angry Prince, to whoſe aid he had refuſed to come, when ſent for by him; he joyned himſelf with the King of *Arrachan*, beſieged his Lord and Soveraign in the Fort of *Meccao*. Brought to extremities, the unfortunate Prince, thought beſt to put himſelf into the hands of his brother *Tangu*; who aſſaulted and entred *Pegu*, where he found as much treaſure as 600 Elephants, and as many horſes could conveniently carry away, this havock being made, he villanouſly murdered the King, Queen and their Children, and departed; leaving the Gleaning of his Spoil to the King of *Arrachan*: who *Anno* 1600. was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Barma* having with an Army of an hundred thouſand fighting men, and fourty

Pegu. ty thouſand Elephants, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*, followed the Currents of his Victories; conquered *Siam*, drove the King thereof from *PEGU*, where he hath built a moſt Magnificent Palace: and is now the ſole Monarch of the twelve Kingdoms of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-ſettled Eſtate, we cannot yet underſtand: what his *Revenues* are, what his Government, what his Forces. Merchants, whoſe inquiſitiveneſs into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full ſatisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statiſts* are not permitted to obſerve; and ſuch of the Natives as could give us the moſt light, are not ſuffered to travel. Only we may conjecture by the great wealth of thoſe ſeveral Princes, and the vaſt Armies by them raiſed in their ſeveral Territories; that his *Annual Revenues*, *Caſualties*, and united Forces muſt be almoſt infinite.

And ſo much for *INDIA*.

* * *

OF

* * *

OF THE ORIENTAL ISLAND.

THE ORIENTAL ISLANDS, ſo called from their ſcituation in the *Oriental* or Eaſtern Seas, may be divided into the Iſlands of 1. *Japan*, 2. the *Philippinæ*, and Iſles adjoyning, 3. the Iſlands of *Bantam*, 4. the *Moluccoes*, 5. thoſe called *Sindæ*, or the *Celebes*, 6. *Java*, 7. *Borneo*, 8. *Sumatra*, 9. *Ceilan*, and 10. certain others of leſs note

1. JAPAN

JAPAN is an aggregate body of many Iſlands, ſeparated by ſmall *Gulfs*, Streights, and turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be *66*. in all; others aſcribe that number to ſo many Kingdoms, into which theſe Iſlands (be they in number more or leſs) uſe to be divided. But whatſoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find) there are three only of accompt, to which the ſeveral petit Kingdoms are now reduced: that is to ſay, I. *Japan* ſpecially ſo called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms; of which 26 are under the King of *Meaco*, 12 under the King of *Amagunce*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferior note. II. *Ximo*, which containeth in it nine Realms, the principal whereof are thoſe of *Bungo* and *Figen*. III. *Xicoum*, which comprehendeth four only of theſe petit *Seigneuries*.

JAPAN, the chief of all theſe Iſlands, to which the reſidue may be accompted of but as *Appurtenances*, is ſcituate over againſt the ſtreights of *Anian*, towards which it looketh to the North: diſtant from *New Spain* on the Eaſt 150 leagues, or 450 *Engliſh* miles; and 60 leagues from *Cantan*, a Province of *China*, oppoſite to it on the Weſt. On the South it hath the vaſt Ocean, and thoſe infinite ſholes of Iſlands which are called the *Phillippinæ*, and the Iſles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from Weſt to Eaſt 200 leagues, but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in ſome places not above ten leagues over, and in the broadeſt parts but thirty.

The Country Mountainous and barren, but of a very healthy air, if not too much ſubject unto cold: yet in ſome places they have Wheat ripe in the moneth of *May*; but their Rice, which is their principal ſuſtenance, they gather not before *September*. The ſurface of the Earth clothed with woods and forreſts, in which ſome *Cedars* of ſo tall and large a body that one of them onely is ſufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it ſtored with divers metals, and amongſt others with ſuch inexhauſtable mines of gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth ſome of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in his time, with ſheets of gold, as ours in *Europe* are with lead. But I find no ſuch matter in our latter travellors. Their fields and Medows full of Cattle, but hitherto not made acquainted with the making of *Butter*; their fens much viſited by wild Ducks, as their houſe-yards with Pigeons, Turtles, Quails, and Pullen.

The People for the moſt part of good underſtanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and ſubtile in their dealings. Of body vigorous and ſtrong, accuſtomed to bear Arms until 60 years old. Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads ſhaved off. Patient they are of Pain, ambitious of glory, uncapable of ſuffering wrong, but can withal diſſemble their reſentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no man for his poverty, ſo it come not by his own unthriftineſs, for which cauſe they deteſt all kinds of *gaming*, as the ways of ill-husbandry and generally abhor *Slandering*, *Theft*, and *Swearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feaſts in black; their teeth they colour black alſo to make them beautiful; they mount on the right ſide of the horſe, and ſit, (as we are uſed to riſe) when they entertain. In *Phyſick* they eat ſalt things, ſharp and raw; and in *their ſalutations, they put off their ſhooes*. The very *Antipodes* of our world in cuſtoms, though not in ſite: and the true type or Figure of the *old Engliſh Puritan*, oppoſite to the *Papiſts* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that oppoſition. In other things they do much reſemble thoſe of *China*, if not the more *ceremonious* of the two: waſhing their Infant-children in the neareſt River, as ſoon as born; and putting off their ſhooes when they go to meat.

The People have but one *language*, but that ſo intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it ſeems rather to be many languages than one. They have long uſed the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough they might have from *China*: the *Characters* whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and ſignifie not only letters, but ſome whole words alſo. In matter of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring antiently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven; and giving divine honor to wild beaſts, and the Stags of the Forreſts: but

Japan.

ſpecially worſhipping ſome of their deceaſed Prieſts and *Princes*, by the names of *Fotoques*, and *Cames*; to the firſt of which they uſe to pray for goods of the other world, and to the laſt for *Temporal* bleſſings. Their Prieſts they call by the name of *Bonzes*, ſetled in goodly *Convents*, and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the providence of God, and the immortality of the ſoul. Of late times by the care and diligence of the *Jeſuits*, *Chriſtianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with ſuch a large increaſe as their letters, called *Epiſtolæ Japanicæ*, have been pleaſed to tell us, I am ſomewhat doubtful. They tell us there of ſome Kings of theſe Iſlands, whom they have converted and baptized; that within 50 miles of *Meaco*, they had 50 Churches, 200 at the leaſt in all; and that in the year 1587 the number of their Converts was two hundred thouſand. Of this, if the one half be but true, we have great cauſe to praiſe God for it, and to give them the commendation of their pains and induſtry: not letting paſs the memory of the firſt *Adventurer*, who was Father *Xavier*, one of the firſt foundation of this *Society*, (employed in this buſineſs by *Ignatius*, the firſt founder of it) who landed here about the year 1556.

Rivers of note I find not any, though the Iſland be generally well-watered: more memorable for two mountains in it, than for all the Rivers. One of which called *Figenoiama*, is ſaid to tranſcend the clouds in hight; the other (but without a name) uſeth to caſt forth dreadful flames, like *Sicilian Ætna*: on the top whereof the *Devil* environed with a white and ſhining cloud, doth ſometimes ſhew himſelf unto ſuch of his *Votaries*, as live about this hill an abſtemious life, like the ancient *Hermits*.

Chief Cities of the whole Iſlands, 1. *Meaco*, ſeated in *Japan*, and the chief of that Iſland, formerly 21 miles in compaſs, but now by reaſon of their wars, ſcarce a third part of it. The ordinary reſidence of the *Triumviri*, or three principal Magiſtrates, which ſway the affairs of all theſe Iſlands: of whom the firſt entituled *Zazo*, hath the chief care in *ſacred* matters; the 2d named *Voo*, doth preſide in *Civil*; and the third called *Cabacuma*, manageth the concernments of *Peace* and *War*. At this time it is uſed for the common *Empory* of the trade of *China*: that people not permitting Merchants to come amongſt them, but bringing to this place their merchandiſe, as the common *Staple*; where they are ſure to meet Chapmen to buy it of them. 2. *Oſſacay*, a great and renowned City, conceived to be the richeſt in all the Eaſt; of ſo great trade, that every ordinary Merchant is ſaid to be worth 30000 Crowns. 3. *Fenoiama*, or *Figenoiama*, at the foot of the hill ſo called, and about nine miles from *Meaco*. An Univerſity of *Bonzes*, for whoſe convenience and ſtudy, one of the Kings of *Japan* is ſaid to have founded in this Town, and about that Mountain, 3800 *Convents*, and to indow it with the third part of the *Revenues* of the Kingdom of *Vorn*. Theſe Colledges or Convents now reduced to 800 only: but ſtill the Univerſity of ſuch fame and credit, that they give not the command or government of it unto any but the Kings ſon, or his neareſt kinſman. 4. *Banoum*, another of their Univerſities, where they give degrees; affirmed to be as big as *Paris*. 5. *Bongo*, the chief of all that Province; in which the *Jeſuites* have a Colledge; the *Japonites* learn the *Portugal* language, and the *Europæans* that of *Japan*. 6. *Coia*, the ſepulture of their Princes, or of ſome part of them: it being anciently ordained, that if their whole bodies be not here interred, they muſt at leaſt ſend one of their teeth. 7. *Fiongo*, about 18 leagues from *Meaco*, the ſubject of many great misfortunes. Deſtroyed in part by *Nabunanga* one of the Kings of *Meaco*, the ſubject of many great misfortunes. Deſtroyed in part by *Nabunanga* one of the Kings of this Iſland, who lived Anno 1550. that which he left, terribly ſcattered by an *Earth-quake*, Anno 1596. moſt of the ruins of it ſince conſumed by fire. 8. *Amangaſaqui*, five leagues from the Sea. 9. *Surungo*, as big as *London* with the Suburbs. 10. *Edoo*, a much fairer then that, and the chief ſeat of one of their Kings. 11. *Firando*, a Seat-Royal alſo of ſome other King, where, in the year 1613. there was a *Factory* eſtabliſhed for the *Engliſh* Merchants. 12. *Ochinoſamanus*, one of their moſt noted Havens. 13. *Toſa*, or *Touſa*, giving name to one of the Iſlands.

Theſe Iſlands utterly unknown to the Antients, were firſt diſcovered by *Antonio Mota*, a *Portugal*, in the year 1542. I know *Mercator* taketh it for the *Aurea Cherſoneſus* ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; and I cannot chuſe but wonder at it. The ſituation of it ſo far diſtant from that of the *Cherſoneſe*, that either *Mercator* muſt be groſſely out in his conjecture; or *Ptolomy* as much miſtaken in his informations; which no man hitherto can juſtly accuſe him of. But paſſing by the improbability of *Mercators* fancy, we are to know, that in former times theſe Iſlands were ſubject to one Prince, whom they obeyed & reverenced with great affection; which government continued, as themſelves report, 1600 years in great State and Majeſty. But in the end, the *Dairi*, (ſo they call their King) addicting himſelf wholly unto pleaſures, and laying the burden of Government upon other mens ſhoulders; his Deputies or inferiour Officers uſurped *Regal* power, plumed themſelves with the Eagles feathers, uſed in their ſtile the name of *Jucatas*, or Kings; and in a word, left nothing but the name of *Dairi*, to their Lord and Soveraign. His iſſue to this day do enjoy that title, but little elſe: the Princes bordering on *Meaco*, once his Royal-ſeat, hardly allowing him ſufficient means to find himſelf Victual and Apparel; but otherwiſe befooling him with as glorious titles, as if he were poſſeſſed ſtill of his ancient power. Only they let him execute the place of an *Harald*, in giving Arms, & ſelling dignities and honours; which brings him in the greateſt profit he hath to trnſt to. Of all theſe Kings, he which can make himſelf Lord of *Coquinai* (which are the five Realms about *Meaco*) is called Prince of *Tenza*, and eſteemed Soveraign of the reſt. Which hight of dignity, *Nabunanga* before mentioned, in his time attained to; after him *Faxiba*, and ſince him *Taicoſuma*: that ſovereignty being now in a likely way to become *hereditary*. For *Faxiba* having brought under his command moſt of theſe ſmall Kingdoms; tranſported the vanquiſhed Kings, & the chief of their Nobles, out of one Country into another: to the end that being removed out of their own Realms, and amongſt ſtrange ſubjects, they ſhould remain without means to revolt againſt him. A merciful and prudent courſe. Having reduced into his power at leaſt 50 of theſe petit Kingdoms, he divided the greateſt part of the conquered territories, amongſt his own faithful friends and followers: binding them to ſupply him with certain numbers of men upon all occaſions. By which, and other politick courſes, he ſo ſetled himſelf in thoſe eſtates, that *Taicoſuma* his ſon ſucceeded without oppoſition; who had he lived would have aboliſhed the vain title of the *Dairi*, or took it to himſelf as he had the power; ſolicited thereto by the King of *China*. But dying in or about the year 1607. *Fereiciſama* his ſon ſucceeded; and may be ſtill alive for ought I can learn.

What the *Revenues* of this King are, it is hard to ſay. I gueſs them to be very great, in regard he maketh two millions of Crowns yearly, of the very Rice which he reſerveth to himſelf from his own demeaſn. The ſtore of Gold, and precious ſtones which theſe Iſlands yield, being wholly his, muſt needs add much unto his Coffers. And for his power, it is ſaid that *Faxiba* was able to raiſe ſo good an Army out of the eſtates demiſed by him to his faithful followers; that he reſolved once on the Conqueſt of *China*: and to that end had cauſed Timber to be felled for 2000 veſſels for the tranſporting of his Army. And had he lived a little longer, tis probable enough he might have ſhaken that great Kingdom, the *Japonois* being ſo much the better Souldiers, that a ſmall party of them would defeat a good Army of *Chineſe*. The fear whereof made the King of *China* after his deceaſe, correſpond ſo fairly with his Succeſſour.

2. The PHILIPPINÆ, and Iſles adjoyning.

South of *Japan*, lieth a great fry of Iſlands which are now called PHILIPPINÆ, in honour of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*; in whoſe time diſcovered by *Legaſpi* a *Spaniſh* Captain, *Anno* 1564. Strangely miſtaken by *Mercator* for the *Baruſſæ* of *Ptolomy*, thoſe being placed by him in the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, five degrees South of the *Æquator*; theſe ſcituate on the Eaſt of *China*, in 13 or 14 degrees of Northern Latitude: thoſe being only five in number, theſe reckoned as above ten thouſand.

The Air in all of them generally very mild and temperate, eſpecially in the mid-land parts; that on the ſhores, ſomewhat inclining unto heat. The ſoil abundantly fruitful of all Commodities both for neceſſity, and delights; that is to ſay, Rice, Pulſe, Wax, Honey, Sugar Canes, many pleaſant Fruits, the faireſt Figs of all the world, plenty of Fiſh, variety of Birds and Beaſts, as well wild as tame, great ſtore of Cotton-Wool, ſome Mines of Gold, and of other Mettals great abundance.

Of all theſe Iſlands there are only fourty in poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*, belonging properly to *Aſia*, but by him placed under the Government of *New Spain* in *America*; becauſe Diſcovered by *Legaſpi* at the inſtigation or procurement of *Don Lewis de Velaſco*, who was then Vice-Roy of that Province. In theſe fourty Iſlands there are thought to be at the leaſt a million of people, ſubject to that Crown; many of which have been converted by the *Friers* and *Jeſuites* unto *Chriſtianity*. Of theſe the principal in account are, I. LUSSON, affirmed to contain in compaſs 1000 miles; beautified by the *Spaniards* with a fair City, ſeated on a commodious Haven, which they call *Manilla*; in which reſides the Deputy or Lieutenant Governor for all theſe Iſlands; and the Biſhop of the *Philippines* for ordering all affairs of thoſe Churches. II. MINDANAO, 380 Leagues in compaſs; in which are many good Towns, as 1. *Cailon*, 2. *Pavados*, 3. *Subut*, 4. *Dapiro*, and ſome others, III. TANDAIR, more fruitful then any of the reſt, and of good extent, 160 Leagues in circuit; more ſpecially called *Philippina*, becauſe firſt diſcovered and ſo named. IV. PALLOHAN, as much miſtaken by *Mercator* for the *Bazacata* of *Ptolomy*.

Theſe, with the reſt, ſubject in former times to the king of *China*, till they did voluntarily abandon them, and confine their Empire within the Continent. On this relinquiſhment the people fell into Civil Wars, every man getting what he could for himſelf, and the ſtronger preying on the weaker: which factions and diviſions gave great help to the *Spaniard*, in the conqueſt of thoſe few which are under their power. Iſlands of more importance to the *Spaniards*, than is commonly thought, and therefore furniſhed by them at their firſt Plantations, with Bulls, Kine, Horſes, and Mares, which before they wanted, and do now reaſonably abound with. For beſides the abundance of victuals, and ſome plenty of Gold which they find therein, the ſcituation is very fit to ſubdue the reſt of the neighbouring Iſlands; to ſettle the commerce betwixt *China*, and *Mexico*; to bring on a continual Trade betwixt the Iſlands of this Sea, and thoſe of *America*; and finally to prevent the *Moors* or *Arabians* from planting their *Mahometaniſm* any further Eaſtwards.

Not far from theſe, on the South of *Japan* bending towards the weſt, is another great heap of Rocks and Iſlands. Some of them rich in Gold, and furniſhed with very choiſe fruits, and other neceſſaries; and peopled with a ſtout and warlike breed of men, well skilled in *Archerie*. The chief whereof have the names of 1. *Lequin Major*, 2. *Lequin Minor*, 3. *Hermoſa*, 4. *Reix Magos*, &c. of which little memorable, but that *Hermoſa*, as the *Spaniards*, or *Formoſa* as the *Latines* call it, hath lately got the name of *New-Holland*, becauſe not long ſince taken, planted, and ſtrongly fortified by ſome Adventurers of that Country. And not far off are thoſe called 5. *Ciumbabon*, in which is ſaid to be a *Plant-animal*, or ſenſible tree; 6. *Mattan*, unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Megallanus*, ſlain there in a battel with the Natives, in favor of the king of 7. *Sebat*, an adjoyning Iſland; by the King whereof he had been kindly entertained, and whom by his perſwaſions he had gained to the Chriſtian Faith, and baptized him by the name of *Charles*, in honor of *Charles* Emperor and king of *Spain*, under whom he ſerved in this preſent voyage. But long this miſcreant King (*Hamabar* he was called before his Baptiſm) continued not in this good opinion; treacherouſly killing *John de Serran* chief *Pilot* of *Magellanus*'s ſmall Navy, with about 70 of his men, and probably relapſing to his former *Gentiliſm*.

Bandan.

3. The Iſles of *BANDAN.*

THE Iſles of *BANDAN* are in number ſeven, that is to ſay, 1. *Mira*, 2. *Roſalargium*, 3. *Aii*, 4. *Rom*, 5. *Nerra.* 6. *Ganuape*, the leaſt of all, continually burning, and for that cauſe deſerted of its inhabitants, and 7. *Bandan*, bigger than any of the reſt, and therefore giving name to all. Scituate South of the *Philippines*, in the ſeventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitful of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all theſe parts, for which cauſe never without the concourſe of foreign Merchants from *Java*, *Malaca*, and *China*; and of late times from theſe Northen Countries of *Europe* alſo. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a *Peach*, or *Peach-tree*, the innermoſt part whereof is the *Nutmeg* it ſelf, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the *Arabian* name of *Maciz*, or *Mace*; and over that the fruit it ſelf, as it is in Peaches, *Malacotons*, and ſuch fruits as thoſe.

The People barbarous and rude, ſlothful, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living confuſedly together without rule or order. Some of them ſtill continue in their ancient *Paganiſm*; but the greateſt part are thought to be *Mahometans*; in which *Religion* very zealous, and ſo devout, that they will not go unto their work or worldly buſineſſes, till they have viſited the *Meſquits*, and done their devotions. A ſhame or Pattern ſhall I ſay in this, unto many *Chriſtians*. All of them bloody and revengeful; but yet ſo far from wronging the body of a Dead Enemy, that they uſe to Bury with ſweet Odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principal, 1. *Nera*, and 2. *Lontoor*, joyned in a league againſt the reſt; the quarrel riſing from the cutting down of certain trees, proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loſs of their common liberty. Subject in ſhew to the King of *Botone*, one of the *Moluccoes*, but too much at their own diſpoſing. They had not elſe entred into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchful *Hollanders*, they did not only ſettle four *Factories* there; but for the ſecurity of their trade, and to aw the *Natives*, they have built three Forts. They had alſo turned one of their *Meſquits* to a *Fortreſs*. Whereat the people were ſo incenſed that they promiſed liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it: who falling deſperately on, fired it over their heads, and killed every man of them. The *Engliſh* Merchants have ſome trading in theſe Iſlands, more acceptable than the other, becauſe not ſo inſolent, and grounding their poſſeſſion on a better title; the people of *Lantore*, voluntarily ſubmitting themſelves to the protection of King *James*, the firſt Monarch of the *Britiſh* Iſlands, and to his uſe giving poſſeſſion of their Country to Captain *Robert Hayes*, November 24. 1620. The like done at the ſame time by the Inhabitants of *Wayre*, and *Roſingeng*, two other Iſlands, which if they be not the ſame with thoſe of *Mira*, and *Roſolorgium* ſpoken of before, are probably ſome leſſer Iſlands, neighbouring to *Poleron* and *Poolaway*, of which more hereafter.

There is not far off another Iſland, not in this accompt, called *Timor*, ſcituate in the tenth degree of *Southern* Latitude; the chief of many little Iſlands which lie round about it; but not elſe obſervable; except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants, for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. The *MOLUCCOES.*

THE *MOLUCCOES* are in number many, the King of *Terenate* which is one of them, being ſaid to have dominion over 70 Iſlands; but the *determinate* number of them I do no where find. Scituate on both ſides of the *Æquator*, and conſequently of an hot and intemperate air: the ſoyl ſo dry and ſpongious, that it ſucketh up the greateſt ſhowre of Rain that doth fall amongſt them, before it can paſs into the Sea. Not very well furniſhed with neceſſaries for the life of man; but that defect ſupplied with the abundance of ſpices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Maſtick*, *Alloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities; for which, the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of theſe Iſlands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees, yielding bloſſoms, firſt white, then green (at which time they yield the pleaſanteſt ſmell in the world) and laſt of all Red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature ſo extreme hot, that if a Pail of water ſhould only ſtand in the Room in which they are cleanſed and ſorted, the *Cloves* in two days would dry it up. Of which nature the unſpun ſilks of *China* are affirmed to be.

The People for the moſt part *Idolaters*, intermixt with ſome *Mahometans* dwelling on the ſhores; and of late times with *Chriſtians* in their ſeveral *Factories*. Of ſeveral *Originals*, and different languages, but all in general fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedneſs. Few of them clothed, nor much caring to hide their ſhame. Not civillized by the cohabitation of more modeſt and civil Nations. Pitty ſuch ill conditions ſhould be lodged in ſuch handſome bodies: the people being ſaid to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for ſtrength and valour not followed by any of them.

Of all the Iſlands which paſs under this name, there are not above five or ſix of any reckoning: that is to ſay, 1. *Terenate*, 2. *Tidor*, 3. *Macir*, 4. *Rachian*, 5. *Machian*, and 6. *Botone*: none of them above ſix leagues in compaſs, many not ſo much; the whole cluſter of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 leagues in the circumference, yet of ſuch conſequence and importance, that the two famous voyages of *Americus Veſputius*, and *Ferdinand Magelanus* the firſt, employed by *Emanuel* King of

Portugal,

Selebes.

gal, the other by *Charles* Emperor and King of *Spain*, were undertaken only to find out the next way unto them.

Of the reſt, *Kachian* and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; So hath *Botone* alſo, if that be one of them: the King whereof had anciently ſome title and authority over thoſe of *Bandan*, *Macir*, and *Machian*, are ſubject to the King of *Terenate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion, and ſaid to be the Lord of 70 Iſlands. This the moſt puiſſant Member of this ſcattered body; and for that cauſe moſt aimed at by all Competitors; the *Spaniards* having here one Fortreſs, and the *Hollanders* three: both Nations hated by the Natives, whom they conſume and waſt in the wars betwixt them, but of the two, the *Spaniard* looked on by the people as the more a *Gentleman*; the other ſtomached and deſpiſed for their *ſordid* dealings. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory of *Chorography* of them, but that they were diſcovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the Reign of *Charles* the Fifth, who employed him in it, *Anno* 1519. And that there is in *Ternate* a prodigious Mountain, in height above the clouds of the Air, and in nature agreeing with the Element of Fire, which it ſeems to mount to; huge flames whereof, with dreadful thunders, and a dark ſmoak, it ſends forth continually. Reckoned by ſome amongſt theſe Iſlands, but howſoever neighbouring near them are thoſe of *Polerone*, and *Poolaway*; the firſt more plentiful of Cloves, the ſecond more proper for the Nutmeg, but both acknowledging the Soveraignty of the Kings of *England*; for *Polerone* by the general and voluntary Act of all the chief men of the Countrey, was ſurrendred into the power of King *James*, the poſſeſſion of it being given for his Majeſties uſe to Captain *Courtop*, *December* 23, *Anno* 1616. no other Nation at that time having intereſt in it, or Pretenſions to it, which notwithſtanding, it was not long after ſeiſed on by the inſolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to reſtore it upon compoſition, cut down all the *Clove-trees*, ſo to deprive the *Engliſh* of the benefit of them; *Poolaway* made the like ſurrender at the ſame time alſo, declared by ſetting up the *Engliſh* Colours on the top of their Caſtle, giving to *Courtop* a green *Turf* (whereby as by livery and ſeiſin) to take poſſeſſion of the Countrey, promiſing the annual Tribute of a Branch of *Nutmegs*, and that they ſhould ſell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmegs* to any, but to theſe of the *Engliſh* Nation. The like done alſo at or near the ſame time, by *Wayre* and *Roſingen*, two other Iſlands of theſe Seas, which if they be not theſe two of *Bandoo* pointed at before, muſt needs be brought within the number of this ſcattered Company.

5. The SINDÆ or SELEBES.

NEar the *Moluccoes*, and almoſt intermingled with them, are a ſet of Iſlands which *Ptolomy* calleth *SINDÆ*, and the Moderns, *SELEBES*; many in *tale*, but not above four of any *weight*, that is to ſay, 1. *SELEBES*. 2. *Gilolo*. 3. *Amboina*. 4. *Macaſſer*; of which the two firſt are ſcituate under the *Æquator*, and the laſt ſomwhat on the South of it: all of them in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, and a long time after; inſomuch as the Kings of the *Moluccoes*, did uſe to ſend their condemned perſons into theſe Iſlands, there to be devoured. Which ſaid in general, we will take a more particular view of them, as they lie before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the reſt, and hath under it many leſſer Iſlands, is large and rich. The Soyl thereof exceeding fertile, the people tall and comly, and of colour, not ſo much black as ruddy, much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late. Governed by many Kings or petit Princes, the cauſe of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are ſaid to have been converted to Chriſtianity, and for that cauſe much hated by their heatheniſh Subjects, who thereupon rebelled againſt them. It is ſcituate Weſt of the *Moluccoes*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Chriſtian Kings: but poſſibly not ſo called until their converſion; the proper name thereof being *Cian*. 2. *Nibon*, in the South, and 3. *Terolli* in the North parts of it.

2. *GILOLO*, called alſo *Batachina*, is one of thoſe Iſlands, which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Moro*. Of large extent, conceived to be half as big as *Italy*. By that accompt (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater then *Zeilan* is in compaſs, though of leſs reputation; that being governed by its own Princes, this ſubject for the moſt part to the King of *Ternate*. Scituate Eaſt of the *Moluccos*, exceeding plentiful of Rice, well ſtored with wild Hens, and on the ſhores, Provided of a kind of *Shell-fiſh*, which in taſt much reſembleth Mutton. A Tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their Bread; and of the ſap or juice of it they compoſe a pleaſing drink, which ſerveth them in ſtead of Wine. The Air intemperately hot; the People well proportioned, but rude and ſavage; ſome of them *Gentiles*, ſome *Mahometans*, of which laſt Religion is their King; the chief Town of it is *Batchame*, or *Batachina* (whence the new name unto the Iſland) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3. *AMBOINA* South of the *Æquator*, and the third of the *Sindæ*, hath many Iſlands of leſs note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compaſs about five hundred miles, ſaid by *Maginus* to be extreamly rough and barren; which muſt be underſtood with reference to ſome kinds of Grain. For otherwiſe it is very fertile, abundantly productive of Rice, Citrons, Limons, Orenges, *Coquo-nuts*, *Sugar-Canes*, and other Fruits; and very plentiful of *Cloves*. Which laſt, as it makes ſome to reckon it amongſt the *Moluccos*, ſo may it be the Reaſon why the Iſland is defective in ſuch Fruits as require much moyſture: the *Clove* being of ſo hot a temper, as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moyſture of the Earth, which is near unto it.

The people much given to *Piracy*, wherewith they do infeſt all the neighbouring Iſlands. Defamed for *Cannibals*, or man-eaters: it being here a conſtant cuſtom, that when their Parents were grown old, or ſick of any incurable diſeaſe, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note then other, which they call *Amboyna*, by the name of the Iſland. Firſt taken by the *Portugals*,

gals, and by them ſecured with a ſtrong Fortreſs: during whoſe power here, the *Jeſuites* who had in it their ſeveral Reſidences, converted many to *Chriſtianity*. But in the year 1605. the Iſland and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen* of *Hagan*, for the States of the United Provinces: who having cleared the Country of the *Portugal* Forces, poſſeſſed themſelves of it. Received by the Natives at their firſt coming, with Joy and Triumphs: but they got little by the change, as they found ſoon after; their new Maſters being more burdenſom, and inſufferable, than the old had been. For claiming in the right of Conqueſt, they think they may oppreſs the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingroſs all trade unto themſelves as the true *Proprietaries*. Infamous even amongſt the rude and ſavage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity executed upon ſome of the *Engliſh* (the greateſt Patrons under God which they have in the world) whom in the year 1618. they moſt cruelly tortured, and moſt wickedly murdered; under colour of ſome Plot to betray their Fortreſs: but in plain truth for no other reaſon but becauſe they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their Trade.

4. Weſt of *Amboina*, and South-weſt of *Celebes*, lieth the fourth of theſe Iſlands called MACASSAR, ſaid to contain from Eaſt to Weſt 600 miles; plentiful of Rice, Fleſh, Fiſh, Salt, and Cotton-wool; not deſtitute of Gold and Pearls, and well ſtored with *Sander* (*Sandalum* it is called in *Latin*) a medicinal Wood, growing like a Nut-tree: of ſeveral colours, white, red, yellow, but the red, the beſt: the fruit in making like a Cherry, but of no eſteem. In ſome parts overgrown with Woods, in which certain *fiery Flies* make nightly ſuch ſhining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the middle covered with high Mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The people for the moſt part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the Sea-coaſts with ſome *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Senderem*, the Kings Seat, Scituate near a large *Lake*, very commodiouſly for traffick. 2. *Macaſſar*, an *Engliſh Factory*, ſo called according to the name of the Iſland.

Near to theſe Iſlands, and ſomwhat North to *Batachina*, are ſome other Iſles, plentiful of all things neceſſary for the life of man, but inhabited by a thieviſh and *Piratical* people: the principal of which 1. *Torrao*. 2. *Sanguin*. 3. *Solor*. 4. *Moratay*, in which laſt they eat *Battata* Roots in ſtead of bread, beſides ſome others of leſs note. Moſt of the people *Gentiles*, except thoſe of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Chriſtian Faith, by ſome of the *Jeſuites*, hath brought many of his Subjects to the ſame Religion.

6. BORNEO.

WEſt of theſe *Celebes* lieth BORNEO, of more note and greatneſs, than any hitherto deſcribed, in theſe *Indian* Seas. In compaſs after their accompt who ſpeak moſt ſparingly, 2200 miles; but as ſome ſay, no leſs than three moneths ſayl about. Scituate under the *Æquator*, which parteth the dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Laus* oppoſite on the North to *Camboia*; on the South, to *Java*; on the Eaſt, to *Celebes*; on the Weſt, unto the Iſle of *Sumatra*.

The Country ſaid to be provided naturally of all things neceſſary; yet ſaid withal to be unfurniſhed of Aſſes, Oxen, Herds of Cattel, except only Horſes, and theſe but of ſmall ſtature neither: the greateſt riches of it being *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and ſome mines of *Adamants*, erroneouſly conceived by *Mercator* to be the *Inſula bona fortuna* ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; that being ſeated oppoſite to the out-lets of *Ganges*, in the *Latitude* of a hundred fourty five degrees, and fifteen Minutes; this Eaſtward ſome degrees of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, and conſequently twenty Degrees diſtant at the leaſt from that Iſland in *Ptolomy*.

The people generally more white than the reſt of the *Indians*, of good wits, and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans* or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two *Religions*; the King of *Borneo* and his Subjects being all *Mahometans*; thoſe of *Laus* ſtill remaining in their ancient *Gentiliſm*. Theſe think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their Children; aſcribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* eſpecially; whom they ſalute at his firſt Riſing with great Reverence, ſaying certain Verſes. Their publick buſineſſes are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Counſellers* of *State* meet, and aſcend ſome tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* riſe, and then go to the *Senate-houſe*. The ſame Apparel generally of both *Religions*; but thin, by reaſon of the great heat of the Air: A ſhirt of Silk, or of *Calicut*, or ſome ſuch ſlight ſtuffe, worn more for modeſty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Borneo*, ſcituate in the North-weſt, part of the Iſland near a goodly Bay, but in the middle of the Fens like the City of *Venice*, and ſeated as that is, on *Piles*, the building ſumptuous, of hewed Stones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-Tree*. The Town ſo large as to contain 25000. 3. *Taiopura*. 4. *Tamaoratas*. 5. *Malano*; all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodious Havens. 6. *Sagadana*, a Factory of *Engliſh*. 7. *Lavi*, on a large Bay in the South-Eaſt part of the Iſland, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Laus*. 8. *Paro*, on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*, and directly oppoſite to *Borneo*: that being ſeated on the North-weſt, and this on the South-Eaſt of the Iſland. Betwixt theſe two Kings is the whole divided; but ſo that he of *Borneo* hath the greateſt part of it, and therefore keeps the greater State: not to be ſpoken with, but by the mouth of ſome of his own *Interpreters*; and in his Palace ſerved by no other Attendants, than *Maids* or *Women*.

7. JAVA.

OPpoſite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Iſles of JAVA, two in number; both ſcituate South of the *Æquator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly diſtinguiſhed into *Major* and *Minor*, or the greater and the leſſer *Java*.

Java.

1. *JAVA MAJOR*, the more Northward of the two, and by much the bigger, is ſaid to be in compaſs 3000 miles, and that by them who elſewhere reckon *Borneo* for the biggeſt of theſe Seas. But the truth is, that the South-parts of this Iſland not being perfectly diſcovered, make the ameaſurement thereof to be very uncertain. Conceived moſt probably to be the *Jabadin* of *Ptolomy*, the moſt Northern part whereof is placed by him in the eighth degree of *Southern* Latitude: ſaid by him to afford much gold and ſilver, to be exceeding fruitful of all other neceſſaries; and finally that the name did ſignifie κριθῆς νῆσον, or the Iſland of Barly. All which agreeth punctually with the preſent Iſland, the word *Jabad* ſignifying a kind of Grain much like our *Barly*; and *Din* in the *Perſian* and *Indian* Tongues ſignifying an Iſland, And ſo in *Jabadin*, we have found the Iſland of *Java*, the mutation of B. into V. being very ordinary.

Then for the riches and fertility of it, it is ſaid to yield great plenty of Fruits, and Corn, but of *Rice* eſpecially; fleſh of all ſorts, ſalted, and ſent from hence into other Countries; great ſtore of Fowl, both wild and tame; plenty of Gold, ſome precious Stones, and the beſt kind of Braſs; Silks in abundance, and great quantities of Pepper, Ginger, Cinamon, and ſome other Spices. In a word ſo befriended by the bounty of Nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitomy Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a leſſer Volume. But withal it is much expoſed unto ſtorms and Tempeſts, rom which ſeldom free.

The people of a middle ſtature, corpulent, and of broad Faces, moſt of them naked or covered only with a ſlight ſilken ſtuffe, and that no lower than the knee: accompted the moſt *Civil* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their deſcent from *China*: but withal treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careleſs of their words; to which ſo uſed, that they count it not amongſt their *Faults*. And therefore when a King of theirs had broke promiſe with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he anſwered that *tongue was not made of bone*. Cruel they are alſo ſaid to be, and implacable, if once offended: accuſtomed of old to eat the bodies of their Friends: accounting no burial ſo honourable, nor obſequy, ſo applauſive. This alſo a cuſtom amongſt many of the reſt of the *Indians*, ſo hath been ever ſince the beginning of the *Perſian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hyſtaſpes* underſtanding of this Cuſtom, and withal knowing how the *Gracians* uſe to burn their dead; ſent to the *Greeks*, that it was his pleaſure they ſhould eat the bodies of their dead: But they uſed all means of perſwaſion and entreaty, not to be forced to ſo bruitiſh and barbarous a cuſtom. Then commanded he the *Indians* to conform themſelves to the faſhion of the *Gracians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greeks* did to eat them. So impoſſible it is for a cuſtom either to be ſuddenly left off, or to ſeem undecent and inconvenient, if once thorowly ſetled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*, according to the fancy of their ſeveral Kings, whereof in this Iſland there are very many; one for every great Tribe, or more powerful Family. Zealous in their Religion which ſoever it be, as appears by the ſad Story of the Daughter of the King of *Ballambua*; murdered by her Husband the King of *Paſſarva*, the ſecond night after her wedding, with all her Attendants, becauſe they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in ſome common *Principles* they agree well enough, puniſhing *Adultery* with death; in which caſe the woman chuſeth her neareſt Kinſman for her *Executioner*: but otherwiſe ſpending the day and night in much Sloth and Dalliance. Of the two *Gentiliſm* is the more diffuſed, becauſe moſt ancient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very ſwift growth, and of a great encreaſe for ſo ſhort a time.

Their chief Towns, 1. *Panarucan*, near a burning hill, which in the year 1586. brake forth exceedingly, oppreſſed infinite numbers of men, and caſt great Stones into the City for three daies together, 2. *Jortam*, a Town of 1000 Houſholds, the Inhabitants whereof are *Gentiles*, and have their Temples in the Woods: the *Chief-Prieſt* of whoſe Superſtition hath his dwelling here, of great authority and power over all the Iſland. 3. *Ballambua*, 4. *Paſſarva*, 5. *Taban*. 6. *Matara*. 7. *Daunia*, 8. *Taggal*, 9. *Surrabaia*, 10. *Catabaon*; the Seats of ſo many of their Kings; ſome of them alſo furniſhed of convenient Havens, 11. *BANTAM*, the ſeat alſo of a King, but of moſt trade in all the Iſland, ſeldom without the company of *Engliſh*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*; the principal *Factory* of the *Engliſh* in all the *Indies*, though they have many beſides this, the Town unwholſomly ſeated in a mooriſh ground, and much ſubject to fire. 12. *Sunda*, ſcituate in a place abounding in Pepper. 13. *Agracan*, a convenient Port; here was alſo in the time of *Ptolomy* a Town called 14. *Argyropolis*, or the *Silver City*, long ago deſtroyed. And now there is, 15. *Sura*, a new Town in the territories of the King of *Bantam*, built by ſome of the Subjects of the King of *Paſſarva*, who being oppreſſed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a conſtant Succeſſion; adopting ſome of the other *Javans* into their *Society*, as they find their number to diminiſh.

Of the Story of this Iſland I can ſay but little. Divided into many petit and inconſiderable Kingdoms; and thoſe divided too by Mountains; croſſing the Iſland in the middle from Weſt to Eaſt, which cut off all commerce and correſpondence betwixt one another. Some of theſe Kings *Mahometans*, ſome *Gentiles*, as before was ſaid; all ſubject or *Homagers* at leaſt to one of the Kings of the *Gentiles*, who hath his dwelling in the midſt of the Iſland. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be the richeſt, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greateſt territory; whoſe Family, after long war and blood-ſhed, begun in the murder of his Daughter, is ſaid to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Paſſarva*. Theſe Kings much reverenced by their Subjects, and ſo well obeyed, that whatſoever they command, is done, be it never ſo dangerous.

Java. 2. *JAVA-MINOR*, ſcituate on the South of the other, is ſaid to be 2000 miles in compaſs, and to be very near the firm land *Terra Auſtralis incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not ſo much on certain knowledge as unſure conjecture) to be of the ſame nature and condition with the *greater Java*. The Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and deareſt friends, and to worſhip all day whatſoever they ſaw firſt in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, diſtinguiſhed by the names of their principal towns. Six whereof he had ſeen, which are theſe that follow. 1. *Felech*, where the Townſmen were *Moores*, and the Paiſant *Gentiles*. 2. *Baſma*, which did acknowledge the *Great-Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any *Tribute*. 3. *Samara*. where none of the *North-ſtars* could be ſeen. 4. *Sambri*, in which ſome men were ſaid to have tails like dogs. 5. *Fanfur*, in which they have a Tree, the wood whereof put in water, will ſink like Iron; of which they uſe to make *Launces* that will pierce an Armour. And 6. *Dragorian*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious, but that the people of it uſe to eat their neareſt kinſmen; and that no *Prodigy* at all, becauſe uſed by others.

To theſe two we may joyn *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Java*, fertile of *Rice*, but otherwiſe of ſo wateriſh and moiſt a Soyl, that the men and Cattel uſe to go knee-deep when they ſow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the Eaſt of the ſame *Java* the Iſland *Baly*, exceeding populous for the bigneſs, ſuppoſed to contain 600000 Inabitants; and very well provided of *Buls*, *Buffals*, Goats, Horſes Swine, many kind of fruits, and ſome ſtore of mettals.

8. *SUMATRA.*

SUMATRA lieth on the North of the *Greater Java*, betwixt it and the *Streight* of *Sincapura* the moſt Southern Town of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*. The *Streight* in that place ſo ſtreight and narrow, not above a Musket ſhot in breadth; that ſome conceive this Iſland to have been formerly joyned unto, it by ſome little *Iſthmus*; ſince worn away by the violence and working of the Sea: and that this Iſland and not the Land of *Malaca*, was that *Golden Cherſoneſe*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. More probably by far, than that we ſhould run after to the Iſle of *Japan*, ſcituate on the Eaſt of *China*, ſo far from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North-weſt to the South-Eaſt, is ſaid by ſome to be 900. by others but 700 miles, the breadth 200. and the whole compaſs one and twenty hundred. Strangly affirmed by ſome writers to be the biggeſt of all the Eaſt; who yet aſſign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Scituate under the *Æquator*, which divideth it into two parts, very near an equality: that on the North-ſide reaching unto five degrees, that on the South-ſide but to ſeven degrees from the line it ſelf. By which account there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by conſequence muſt be very hot, but withal unwholſom: not ſo much in regard of the extreme heats, as by reaſon of the groſs vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers, which are found to be in it; and the thick woods which intercept the free courſe of a purging wind. The ſoyl not capable of ſuch grain as in other places, except Rice or *Millet* (for I know not otherwiſe how to render the *Latine*, *Milium*) but yielding Ginger, Pepper, *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and *Caſſia*, in great abundnace. It affordeth alſo great plenty of Wax and Honey, ſtore of Silks and Cottons, rich mines not only of Tin, Iron, Sulphur, and other Minerals; but of Gold ſuch quantity, that ſome conceive this Iſland to be *Solomons Ophir*. And if *Pedrunka Sirie* one of the Kings of this Iſland, in a Letter written to King *James* did not brag too impudently, it may be probable enough. For by that Letter it appeareth that all the Furnitures of his Houſe, and trappings of his Elephants, and Horſes, with all his Armour, were of pure Gold, and that he had in his Dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entituleth himſelf in his *Regal Stile*.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cunning *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundred and thirty years ſince, at what time by the diligence of ſome *Arabian* Merchants trading to this Iſland, *Mahometaniſm* began to ſpread upon the Coaſts. But in the inland parts of the Country they are *Gentiles* ſtill, and ſtill retain amongſt them their old barbarous cuſtoms. The moſt loving men unto their enemies that were ever known; for otherwiſe they would never eat them. Having eaten they uſe their skuls in ſtead of money, which they exchange or barter for ſuch neceſſaries, as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthieſt man amongſt them, who hath moſt of this coyn. Thoſe of the other Religion though in moſt points and cuſtoms they agree with the reſt of the *Mahometans*, have this one ſingular to themſelves: which is, that once every year on a certain day they go ſolemnly unto their *Meſquits* to ſee if *Mahomet* be come; leading a ſpare horſe for him to ride upon: which (miſſing him) is mounted at their coming back, by the beſt man in the company. Of any great progreſs that *Chriſtianity* hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That here are many and great Rivers, hath been ſaid before, but their names I find not. Here are alſo many Mountains, and thoſe great and high; that of moſt note called *Balalvanus*, ſaid to burn continually. Out of which, or not far off, do ariſe two Fountains, of which the one is ſaid to run pure Oyl, and the other the beſt *Balſamum*: which I bind no man to believe but ſuch as have ſeen it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Achen*, the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom, beautified with the Regal Palace.

Seilan.

lace, to which they paſs thorow ſeven Gates one after another, with green Courts between the three outermoſt; thoſe three continually guarded with women expert at their weapons, and uſing both ſwords, and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his perſon. The materials of this Palace, mean, but the furniture, coſtly; the walls thereof being hanged commonly with *Velvet* and *Damask*, and ſometimes with cloth of Gold. 2. *Pedir*, 3. *Pacem*, 4. *Cambar*, 5. *Menantabo*, 6. *Aura*, and 7. *Andragide*, the ſeats of ſo many of their Kings, 8. *Paſſaman*, a Town of great Trade; but ſituate in a Mooriſh and unhealthy place; found ſo experimentally by too many of the *Engliſh*, who have there their Factory, 9. *Priamon*, and 10. *Tecoo*, of a more healthy air, but not ſo commodious in their Havens as is that of *Paſſamane* theſe three Towns ſtanding in that part of the Country where the *Pepper* groweth.

All that we know touching the ſtory of this Country, is, that the *Portugals*, when they firſt came hither, found in it nine and twenty kings; reduced ſince to a ſmaller number. For *Abraham*, ſometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Arabians* ſubdued the Realms of *Pedir* and *Pacem*. *Aladine* who ſucceeded him, being once a *Fiſherman* and grown famous for his exploits at Sea; was by this King preferred to the marriage of one of his Kinſwomen, made his Lord *Admiral*, and by him truſted with the protection of his ſon and heir: of whom inſtead of a Protector he became the murtherer, and uſurped the State unto himſelf. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdoms of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Manncabo*; and almoſt all the reſt in the North part of the Iſland. In this kings time, the *Engliſh* were firſt ſetled in their Factory there. Grown old (an hundred years at leaſt) he was impriſoned by his eldeſt Son, impatient of a longer ſtay, alledging that his age had made him unfit for Government, *Anno* 1604. The name of the New King *Sultan Pedrucka Sirie*, who in his Letter to King *James* ſpoken of before, ſtiles himſelf the *Sole King* of *Sumatra*: either with greater brags, than truth, or elſe becauſe the Kingdoms of *Tecoo*, *Priaman*, and *Baronſe*, being conquered by him, all the reſt were become his *Tributaries*. Aſſociated with the forces of the King of *Ior*, or *Iohor*, who had married his Siſter, he beſieged *Malaca*, and diſtreſſed it: But being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his diſpleaſure upon his *Confederate*, and ſubdued that Kingdom; who with the King of *Siak* (ſome other petit Prince near *Ior*) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1613. brought Priſoners to *Achem*.

The Government of this King is abſolute, and meerly arbitrary, executing what he hath a mind to, without *form of Law*. So cautelous, that without his *Placard* no ſtranger can have *Ingreſs* into his dominions, or free *Egreſs* out of them. Nor is admittance to his preſence granted unto any whom he firſt ſends not for by an Officer with a *Gilded-Staff*. He is conceived to be ſtrong both by Sea, and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained; able to put to Sea 120, or if need be 200 Gallies and *Frigots* fit for any ſervice, moſt of which carry *Demi-Cannon*, Culverin, Sakar, Minion, and other the like Ordnance of Braſs. So great a Maſter of his Subjects, that in 21 days he had a goodly Channel drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Of his *Revenues* I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of Golden Furnitures which he hath about him.

And now I am fallen on this Kings Gold, I cannot but take notice of ſome Iſlands on the Weſt of *Sumatra*, called *Aurea Inſula*, or the *Golden Iſlands*; the chief of which named *Andramania*, is poſſeſſed by *Cannibals*, or Man-eaters. Oppoſite unto which on the Eaſt ſide of this Iſland, are thoſe called *Linga*, *Banca*, and *Bintam*; which laſt is ſaid to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious *Station* for ſhipping. The houſes built of ſtone, but thatched, except that of the King (for even theſe ſorry Iſlands love to have a King of their own, whoſe houſe more eminently ſeated, is more handſomly covered.

9. ZEILAN.

WEſt of *Sumatra*, ſomewhat inclining to the North, is the Iſland of ZEILAN, ten Degrees diſtant from the *Æquator*, and near adjoyning to the Promontory in the hither *India* which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only; the whole circumference at 700 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the ſituation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the antient Writers. *Ortelius* and moſt other intelligent men of theſe latter times are of that opinion. Only *Mercator*, who hath carried the *Golden Cherſoneſe* to the Iſle of *Japan*; and fixed *Taprobane* in that of *Sumatra*, (in which laſt I muſt confeſs he hath many Partners) will have this Iſland to be that which *Ptolomy* calls *Nanigeris*, though that be four Degrees more Weſt than the Promontory of *Cory*, to which this Iſle in former times ſeems to have been joyned.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, that this *Zeilan* or *Ceilan* is the *Taprobane* of the Antients, we will a little look on the State of that Iſland, with reference to the times when thoſe Authors lived. By *Ptolomy* affirmed to be plentiful in Rice, Honey, Ginger, Gold, Silver, Precious, Stones, and all kind of metals; By *Pliny*, that the Gold is purer, and the Gems fairer than any in *India*; that there were alſo Groves of Palm-trees, and great ſtore of Elephants, is declared by *Ælian* and ſome others. Watered with many fair and pleaſant Rivers, *viz.* 1. *Soana*, 2. *Azanus*, 3. *Baracus*, 4. *Gandes*. 5. *Phaſis*: the hills in many places having a full proſpect over the adjoyning Vallie; the chief of which were *Malea*, and thoſe called *Calibi*, the vales perpetually enriched with the choiceſt fruits. Exceeding populous for the bigneſs, and ſtored with many Towns of note. Of which *Magrammum* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*. 1. *Margana*, 2. *Jogana*, 3. *Sindocanda*, 4. *Hodoca*, 5. *Nabartha*, 6. *Dogana*, 7. *Dionyſiopolis*, 8. *Bocana*, 9. *Abaratha*, 10. *Procurum*, 11. *Nagadiba*, Seilan. and 12. *Anubingara*, have the name of Cities. 13. *Moduttum*, and 14. *Talacorum*, noted for the Town of traffick; 15. *Priapis*, 16. *Mardus*, 17. *Rhizala*, 18. *Spatana*, and 19. that of the *Sun*, for commodious Havens, 20. *Anurogrammum* being honoured with the Title of *Regia*, or the Royal City. As for the name, it is ſaid by *Ptolomy* to have been firſt called *Taprobane*, then *Simondi Inſula*, and finally in his time *Salice*; and the People *Sala*; from whence the name of *Selan* or *Seilan* ſeems to be derived.

To take a view of it at the preſent, I find it ſaid to be of an *Oval* form, divided from the main land by a narrow Channel, the Heavens refreſhing it with their dews, the Air with a fragant freſhneſs, and the waters with their many Rivers and Fountains; the Earth diverſifyed into lofty hills, and lowly valleys; her inward Chambers filled with Metals, and Jewels, her outward Coat of the pleaſanteſt colour, ſtored with whole woods of *Cinnamon*; beſides *Fruits, Limons, Oringes*, &c. bettering thoſe of *Spain*. Of *Fouls* and *Beaſts* great plenty both wild and tame; and the beſt breed of Elephants in all the world. Deſtitute only of the *Vine*, the want of which ſupplied with a pleaſant drink made of the juyce of fruits, more natural to them than the other, and ſo preſervative of life that the people are reported to be longer lived than in any other parts. In a word ſo abounding in all contentments, that the *Indians* hold it to be *Paradiſe*, and take upon them to point out ſome of *Adams* footings, left for a memorial in ſome parts of it. And to confirm them in their Error, they have an Hill there which the *Spaniards* call by the name of *Pico de Adam*, affirmed to be ſeven Leagues in height, from whence *Adam* aſcended into Heaven: for that cauſe viſited by the *Moors* or *Arabians*, with continual *Pilgrimages*.

The people for the moſt part tall and ſtrait of body, naked from the girdle upwards, unwarlike, and much given unto eaſe and pleaſures; So queaſie ſtomached that the pooreſt of them will not eat that meat which another hath touched; inclined to bravery, and therefore make wide holes in their ears, which they ſtretch out with *Jewels* to their very ſhoulders. Cunning *Artificers* in all metals, one of them making a *Crucifix* of ſuch exquiſite workmanſhip, that it ſeemed to give life to the dead; and was ſent by the Archbiſhop of *Goa* to the King of *Spain*, as the rareſt *Jewel* which had ever graced his Royal *Cabinet*. They are alſo very active, and well ſkilled in *Jugling*, both men and women, travelling thorow *India* with their tricks and *Hobby-horſes*, by which they get themſelves both delight and money. In matter of *Religion*, they are generally *Idolaters*, eſpecially the *Natives*, whom they call *Cingalas*, which live in the Inlands; the Sea-coaſts (as in other Ilands) being filled with *Mahometans*. No *Chriſtians* that I hear of but in *Columbo*, a Town of the *Portugals*.

Cities of moſt repute amongſt them, 1. *Candie*, the Seat of one of their Kings, ſuppoſed to be the *Sindocande* of *Ptolomy*, memorable for the *ſtatues* of their ſuppoſed *Adam*, moſt artificially wrought, of five or ſix Fathoms high, *Symetrically* proportionable to the print of his foot, which they conceive to have amongſt them, 2. *Ventane*, of great renown for an *Idol-Temple*, in compaſs 130 paces, of great height, and all white except the top, which hath the *Spires* thereof ſo gilded, that when the Sun ſhines, men are not able to look upon them. 3. *Janaſipatan*, 4. *Triqui Lemale* (ſuppoſed to be the *Tarichi* of *Ptolomy*, 5. *Batecolom*, 6. *Vilaſſem*, 7. *Tanamaca*, 8. *Laula*, 9. *Galle*, the Seats of ſo many of their Kings, 10. *Nagarita*, conceived to be the *Nagiri*; as 11. *Agena*, the *Jogana* of *Ptolomy*, 12. *Colmuchi*, the Seat Royal of the chief King of this Iſland, ſituate on a capacious Bay in the Southweſt of it, aud of moſt trade in all this Country: many great ſhips laden with *Cinnamon*, Gems, Elephants, and other *Indian* commodities, going yearly hence. Fortified by the *Portugals* (by whom called *Columbo*) with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built with the Kings leave at firſt, to ſecure their trading; but ſince uſed by them as a curb to hold him in with, and to compel him to pay *tribute*.

This Country firſt diſcovered to be an Iſland by *Oneſicritus*, Admiral of *Alexanders* Fleet, was in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by ſeveral Nations. The principal of which were the *Galthi*, and *Mudutta* dwelling in the North, the *Rhogandani*, and *Nanigiri* in the South; the *Sindocanda* in the Weſt, and the *Tarachi* in the Eaſt; the middle parts being taken up by the *Anurogrammi, Nagabdi, Soani, Semni*. But little or nothing is ſaid of them in the way of ſtory, but that they were good *Mimicks*, did imitate the tunes of Birds, and could ſpeak to two at once, as if *double-tongued*; that they were very ſtudious of Aſtrology, and worſhipped the Sun and the Hoſt of Heaven; that ſome of their Ambaſſadors coming to *Rome*, in the time of *Claudius Cæſar, Solem à Læva oriri mirati ſunt, &c.* admired to ſee the Sun riſe on the wrong ſide of them; and finally that the King was choſen by the people with reſpect had to his age and clemency; who being inthroned, appointed thirty Judges to adminiſter Juſtice to the Subject, without the *Major part* of whom, ſentence of death was to paſs on no man. In following times this *Monarchy* (for ſuch it was in the time of thoſe Authors) was broken into many pieces: the *Portugals* finding nine Kings in it, at their firſt coming hither, all *Homagers* or Tributaries to the King of *Colmuchi*. After that this their chief King was wickedly murdered by his *Barber*, who drove the other Kings out of the Country, and for a while uſurped the *Monarchy* to himſelf. Since which time, having once again recovered their Kingdoms, ſix of them (as I have ſomewhere read, but remember not where) put themſelves under the protection of the *Great Mogul*, and became his *Feudataries*.

Neer hereunto on the Coaſts of *Malabar*, are the Iſlands which they call *Maldiva*, many in number, but ſo called from the principal of them, as that from *Maldiva*, a noted and well-traded *Empery*, where the King reſideth: Not very plentiful of neceſſaries for the uſe of man, did not the *Palm* alone ſupply them in all other wants. Inhabited by an induſtrious and ſober people, who make themſelves long garments of Silk or Flax brought from other places, wherewith more modeſtly adorned than the reſt of the *Indians*: and by their Fiſhing draw up ſhels of ſuch mingled colours, that they ſerve amongſt the *Siametes* inſtead of mony.

10. ISLANDS *of leſs note.*

BEſides theſe *Iſlands* repreſented to us by their ſeveral names, and ſome who have nothing but their names to take notice of; there be many thouſands of leſs note which we find in groſs: theſe *Indian* Seas being ſo prodigiouſly full of Iſlands, that it is almoſt impoſſible to believe there ſhould be ſuch multitudes; but utterly impoſſible to credit what is told us of them. Some of the moſt remarkable of them we have touched upon, as *Acceſſories* or *Appurtenances* to ſome greater Iſlands. The reſt we ſhall preſent only in the general *muſter*, together with a taſt of ſome of thoſe ſtrange reports, with which ſome men have fouled their Papers, and abuſed their Readers. Of the *Philippines*, there are ſaid to be 11000 though but 40 of them in poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. More South, but over againſt *China*, is another *frie* of them, affirmed by *Mariners* to be no fewer than 7448 and (as if nature had delighted to diſport her ſelf by ſowing Iſlands in theſe Seas) another Shoal of them about *India*, no fewer in number than 127000. all which laid together would make a Continent as large as three or four parts of *Europe*; and are ſtill groaning under the burthen of *Heatheniſm*. Theſe *Iſlands* ſtand ſo nigh unto one another, that they ſeem not only to ſuch as are afar to be all but one *firm Land*; but whoſoever alſo paſſeth between them, may with his hands touch the boughs of the trees on the one ſide, and on the other. Of theſe and the other *Indian* Iſlands, Travellers relate many incredible fables; *viz.* that here be *hogs* that have two teeth growing out of their ſnowts, and as many behind their ears, of a ſpan and a half long; a *tree* whoſe Weſtern part is rank poiſon; and the Eaſtern part an excellent preſervative againſt it. They tell us alſo of a Fruit, that whoſoever eateth, ſhall for the ſpace of 12 hours be out of his wits; and of a ſtone, on which whoſoever ſitteth, ſhall ſuddenly have a *rapture* in his body. We are told alſo that hereabouts are taken *Tortoiſes* of that bigneſs, that ten men might ſit and dine within one of the ſhells; And that there is a Tree, which all the day time hath not a flower on it, but within half an hour after Sun-ſet, is full of them. All huge and monſtrous lies, and not fit for credit. *Galvano* reporteth alſo, that in ſome of theſe Iſlands there is a *fruit*, of which if a woman that is with child eat, her child will preſently move; that there is a River plentifully ſtored with fiſh, whoſe water is yet ſo hot, that it doth immediately ſcald off the skin of any beaſt that is caſt into it; that ſome of the men have tails; and moſt of their ſwine horns; that they have *oyſters* which they call *Braſs*, the ſhells whereof are of ſo large compaſs, that they *Chriſten* Children in them; that in the Sea there are ſtones which grow and increaſe like fiſh, of which the beſt Lime is made; that there is a bird called *Monicodiata*, which having no feet is in a continual motion: and that there is a hole in the back of the Cock, in which the Hen doth lay her eggs, and hatch her young ones. I bid no man to believe theſe Relations: for my part I ſay with *Horace*,

Quocunq; oſtendis mihi ſic, incredulus odi.
What ever thus thou tell'ſt me, I
Will always hate it as a lye.

And ſo much for theſe *Eaſtern-Iſlands*.

An Advertiſement to the Reader touching the Errata of this part.

I*N the firſt place the Reader is to be advertiſed that Fol.* *I have adventured to prove the* Alamatha *of* Ptolomy *to be the* Chamath, *or* Hamath-Sobab, *of the Holy Scriptures: The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will eaſily find out the ſcope and meaning. Yet if this ſhall not be approved of, I ſhould then think it to be that* Elam *or* Helam, *where* David *diſcomfited the Army of the* Meſopotamians; *mention whereof is made* 2 Sam. 10. *v.* 16, 17. *In the next place he is to know, that Fol.* *within the compaſs of five lines, the victory which* Aſa *King of* Judah *obtained againſt the numerous Army of* Ethiopians, *is twice repeated: in the firſt place aſcribed to* Jethir, *in the next to* Mareſha. *But being that Scripture doth more clearly aſcribe it unto* Mareſha, (*though the other alſo hath good Authors*) *let that of* Jethir *be ſupplied in this manner following.* 5. Jethir, *or* Jatthir, *in the North Border of this Tribe, towards* Eleutheropolis: *a City anciently of the* Levites, *in S.* Hieroms *time called by the name of* Jethira, *and then repleniſhed altogether with* Chriſtians; *now nothing but the name remaining,* 6. Mareſa, *&c. And finally whereas* Ajalon *p.* *is placed in the Tribe of* Ephraim, *and page* *in the Tribes of* Dan, *the reaſon is, becauſe being ſituate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by ſome writers aſcribed to* Dan, *and by others to* Ephraim. *The like may be alſo ſaid of* Michpas, *mentioned alſo in two Tribes according as it is diſpoſed on by ſeveral Authors.*

A Table of the Longitude and Latitude of the Chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Book.

A				
Achem	132	30	3	40
Aden	82	0	13	50
Agra	118	10	44	0
Aleppo	72	30	38	0
Amboino	162	50	4	20*A*
Amodabat	169	50	23	10
Antioch	72	30	39	0
Apamoa	61	30	43	40
Arachan	129	10	10	24
Ardovat	140	50	25	0
Arminig	76			41
Avaa	142	30	27	50
Amaſtro	66	30	44	30
B				
Babylon	82	20	33	0
Baccu	88	50	42	
Balſora	82	40	31	10
Banda	164	0	45	0*A*
Baticalla	111	30	12	40
Bengala	125	10	21	20
Bethlehem	65	45	31	50
Biſnagar	114	20	14	10
Bulgar	88	30	54	30
C				
Cabul	112	20	31	0
Caindu	137	30	47	40
Calecut	112	40	10	30
Cambalu	161	10	51	40
Camboia	142	20	11	40
Campion	148	0	57	30
Cananor	112	50	11	0
Candahor	110	40	33	40
Capha	68	50	48	0
Calamines	149	0	9	0
Cauchin China	140	30	20	0
Cranganor	113	0	9	40
Ceraſo	73	0	44	40
Choromandel	115	20	22	30
Cheſmur	115	10	3	0
Chianfu	147	30	27	30
Chirman	98	30	27	30
Cincapura	136	43	1	20
Cochin	114	0	9	40
Colmucho	117	30	6	40
Comori	115	10	7	10
Coulan	114	30	7	10
Cantan	149		25	
Chaul	109	40	17	30
D				
Damaſcus	74	30	35	0
Decan	113	20	14	0
Delly	114	0	19	10
Derbent	84	53	42	20
Diu	108	0	20	30
Dornate	137	50	7	50
E				
Epheſus	60	30	39	40
Eres	87	40	40	50
Ergimul	150	0	58	20
F				
Famaguſta	69	20	30	30
Faſſo	57	50	45	40
G				
Gabara	80	50	36	10
Gaza	70	50	39	10
Geſt	107	30	26	30
Gilolo	161	30	1	10
Goa	112	20	14	40
H				
Heri	99	53	30	0
Hormar	165	25	35	10
Hieruſalem	72	20	33	0
I				
Jeſdi	94	40	32	0
Indio	105	40	38	0
Jericho	73		33	0
Joppa	71	20	34	0
Iſtigias	110	30	39	40
L				
Lequin Major	165	0	28	0
Liompo	160	20	34	40
Lop	134	20	53	0
M				
Macao	140	10	23	20
Machan	160	40	0	30
Macin	85	30	25	50
Malaca	136	30	2	50
Maldiva	113	0	3	0
Maliapar	118	0	13	20
Mamora	155	40	0	40
Mandao	121	0	25	0
Mangalor	112	0	11	30
Martavan	134	30	17	10
Meccha	73	30	25	0
Medina Talnabi	73	0	27	30
Meaco	170	30	37	0
Mindanao	160	40	7	0
Moltan	114	20	24	30
Multan	109	50	29	20
Mongul	159	27	60	40
Muſhal	84	0	34	50
N				
Naguian	97	0	53	30
Naim	94	10	33	40
Nayman	140	0	65	10
Narſinga	119	0	18	0
Nazareth	72	40	34	10
Nicomedio	63	10	44	20
Niſabul	102	10	38	40
Nice	57	41	40	
Nineve	82	36	40	
O				
Odia	138	30	12	0
Onor	111	40	19	10
Orixa	118	40	20	40
Ormus	91	0	27	30
Oxiana	107	41	20	
P				
Pacem	132	0	4	0
Pedir	131	10	4	0
Pegu	135	0	20	10
Ptolemais	66	40	29	40
Perſepolis	90	40	30	40
Patane	138	10	6	50
Q				
Quianſu	144	40	42	30
Quinſay	153	0	40	0
R				
Rhabana	196	30	47	0
Rhodes	61	40	37	20
Rages	79	10	28	0
Regis	82	10	36	0
S				
Sableſtan	114	0	30	0
Sarmachan	130	0	47	0
Samaria	72	20	33	40
Seiro	57	30	41	10
Siam	139	10	14	30
Siden	72	10	36	30
Sind	109	30	27	0
Siras	90	40	30	40
Smirna	60	20	40	30
Sigeſtan	105	0	31	0
Sultania	92	40	37	20
Succuit	143	10	56	0
Sunda	138	86	40	*A*
Suſis	73	40	48	
Scarpanto	62	10	36	0
T				
Tangu	152	0	63	30
Talcan	85	0	47	0
Tarnaſſur	119	40	17	10
Tarſus	71	20	40	0
Taurus	90	30	38	10
Tenduc	168	30	67	30
Thebet	138	50	44	0
Trabezond	74	30	44	40
Tripolis	72	20	37	0
Troy	59	0	42	30
Tyre	72	10	38	3
Tidore	160	40	0	
V				
Van	86	30	36	50
Varma	130	20	20	10
X				
Xamdu	168	40	55	40
Xara	130	0	17	0
Z				
Zagaſpi	101	20	42	30
Zama	74	40	11	40
Zibit	70	0	22	20

The end of the third Book

COSMOGRAPHY,
The fourth Book.

PART. I.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF
AFRICA,
And all the principal Kingdoms,
Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

C. JUL. SOLIN. cap. 33.

Vltra hos (Ethiopes) monſtroſæ gentium facies; Aliæ ſine naribus æquali totius oris planitie, informes habent cultus: Aliis concreta Ora ſunt modicoque tantum foramine calamis avenarum paſtus hauriunt. Nonnullæ linguis carent; in vicem ſermonis utentes nutibus, manibusque.

PTOLOM. GEOG. l. 1. cap. 5.

Conſtat per ipſas temporum traditiones, quaſdam partes Continentis terræ quæ a nobis habitatur, nondum propter difficilem magnitudinis peragrationem, ad notitiam perveniſſe: quaſdam vero non tales, ac fertur, eſſe, &c. neceſſe ergo eſt ut ibi noviſſimis temporis noſtri traditionibus penitus quaſi adhæreamus.

LONDON,
Printed for *Philip Chetwind*, 1662.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AFRICK, And all the principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

OF AFRICK.

AFRICK is bounded on the Eaſt by the *Red-Sea*, and Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Aſia*; on the Weſt, by the main *Atlantick* Ocean, interpoſing betwixt it and *America*; on the North by the *Mediterranean* Sea, which divides it from *Europe* and *Anatolia*: and on the South, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean, ſeparating it from *Terra Auſtralis incognita*, or the Southern Continent, parted from all the reſt of the World, except *Aſia* only, to which joyned by a narrow *Iſthmus*, not above 60 miles in length, and memorable for the great deſign which *Cleopatra* the laſt Queen of *Egypt* had upon it, which in brief was this. When *Mark Anthony* was encountred by *Auguſtus* in the Naval battel of *Actium*, *Cleopatra* fearing the ſucceſs, fled through the midſt of all his Fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her guard. Being come to the North part of this *Iſthmus*, ſhe gathered together all her portable treaſures, and intended to hoiſt her Shippping out of the *Mediterranean*, and hale them over the Land to the *Red-Sea*: whence ſhe had purpoſed to take ſail, and together with her Sweet-heart *Anthony*, and ſome other choiceſt friends, to ſeek out ſome other place of dwelling far enough from the *Romans*. But from this, *Anthony*, who fled after her, and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at laſt diſſwade her.

The Form hereof is like a *Pyramis* reverſed; the *Baſis* of which, from *Tanger* on the Streight of *Gibraltar*, to the point where it joyneth unto *Aſia*, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 *Italian* miles, the *Conus* of it very narrow. But from the *Conus* or *Pyris* to the moſt Northern part of the *Baſis*, it extendeth it ſelf the ſpace of 4155 miles, being much leſs then *Aſia*, and far bigger then *Europe*.

By the *Grecians* it is called moſt commonly *Libya* (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the *Æthiopians*, *Alkebulam*; by the *Indians*, *Beſecath*. But the moſt noted name thereof is *Africa*, which *Joſephus* out of *Cleodemus* and *Polyhiſtor*, deriveth from *Epher* or *Apher*, one of the Nephews of *Abraham*, by *Midian* the Son of *Keturah*. The *Arabians*, by whom it is called *Iſrichea*, derive it from the Verb *Faraoh*, ſignifying to *divide*; becauſe more viſibly divided both from their own Country, and the reſt of the World, then any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the Greek Fablers fetch it from one *Aſer*, a Companion of *Hercules*, whom he attended unto *Spain*; Some fetch it out of *Aphar*, an Hebrew word, ſignifying *Duſt*, agreeable to its ſandy and duſty ſoyl: *Feſtus* an old Grammarian, from *A Privativum*, and the Greek word φρίκη, which imports a Country void of Cold, as ſutable to the fiery temper of the Air. By *Bochartus*, who brings all from the old *Phœnician*, it is ſaid to be derived from *Peruc*, *Spica*, an ear of Corn; which mollified into *Feric*, came at laſt to *Africa*, that is to ſay, a *Country plentiful in Corn*. Which Etymology of his may receive ſome countenance, from that great plenty of Corn, which was bred in this Country: eſpecially in thoſe parts thereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africk*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africk*. But in my mind (if that from the Hebrew *Epher* or *Aphar*, be not worth accepting) I ſhould prefer the *Etymon* of *Feſtus* before any other: unleſs we might be ſure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Sudias* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we would ſeek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in ſome elder Writers, *i. e. Olympia*, *Oceanica*, *Eſchatica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonis*, *Heſperia*, *Ortygia*, and perhaps ſome others; it is enough to our deſign to take notice of them.

It is ſcituate for the moſt part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Æquator* croſſing it almoſt in the very midſt: and for that cauſe ſuppoſed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with ſuch ſtrange people, as hardly did deſerve to be counted men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, gueſſing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by ſuch ſtrange Bruits, as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like Dogs; 2. The *Sciapodæ*, who with the ſhadow of their foot, could, and did uſe to hide themſelves from the heat of the Sun; 3. The *Gamoſaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the uſe of weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the ſight of men; 4. The *Blemmyæ*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their Breaſts; 5. The *Ægypani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be men, but the ſhape and making of their bodies. Theſe people (as they thought) poſſeſſed ſome ſmall portion of the midland parts of this great Country; the reſt they know not, or conceived to be uninhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late diſcoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Country proving in moſt parts to be well inhabited; and the coolneſs of the nights, by miſts, dews, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

> *Quodq; die Solis vehementi excanduit æſtu,*
> *Humida nox reficit, paribuſq; refrigerat horis.*
> That is to ſay,
> *What the Sun burns by day, the night renews.*
> *And doth as much refreſh with moyſtning dews.*

For notwithſtanding that it be in ſome places full of ſandy deſarts, a diſeaſe incident to ſome parts of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and other Countries of a more Northerly ſcituation: yet it is ſaid by ſome, who ſpeak it upon knowledge, that the greateſt part of thoſe Regions which lie under the Line, or near it (both in *America* and here) have ſo many goodly Fountains, Rivers and little Brooks, ſuch abundance of Cedars and other ſtately Trees of ſhade, ſo many ſorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing, and at all times beautified with Bloſſoms; as may make them hold compariſon with any others, ſuppoſed to be of a more temperate ſcituation.

But as was ſaid before, the Ancients knew not much of this Countrey, and therefore ſpoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful hear-ſay. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian*, employed by that State, diſcovered much of the Weſtern Shores of this great *Peninſula*, yet he ventured not much into the Land: nor did his *Journal* (either ſuppreſſed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to purſue thoſe Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* tongue, but ſince tranſlated into Greek, and publiſhed at *Baſil* by *Sigiſmund Gelenius*, Anno 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that ſome *Phœnicians* in the daies of *Pharao Neco*, paſſing down the *Red Sea*, ſhould ſail about the Coaſts of *Africk* to the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and ſo return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what thoſe Ages diſbelieved or eſteemed impoſſible, is now grown ordinary; the *Circumnavigations* about this Country being very frequent, ſince firſt performed by *Vaſques de Gama*, an adventurous *Portugal*, in the year *Anno* 1497. being 80 years after or thereabouts, from the time that the *Portugals* firſt attempted the diſcovery and circumnavigation of the Coaſts of *Africk*, which at the laſt, to the no ſmall Glory of their Nation, was accompliſhed by them. For ſo it happened, that having extended their Dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*, and having withal a large Sea-coaſt, and fit for ſhipping, they turned their Forces on the *Moors*, which dwelled in *Africk*, from whom they took many of their beſt Towns which lay along upon the ſhores of the main *Atlantick*. Encouraged by this good ſucceſs, *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the firſt, reſolved to ſpend his purſe and Credit upon new Diſcoveries. And to that purpoſe, having had ſome Conference with men of Knowledge and Experience in Coſmography, he draweth together the beſt men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means and his own good fortune he firſt diſcovers the Iſle of *Madera*, An. 1420. The Iſle of *Holy-Port*, Anno 1428. The Iſlands of Cape *Verd*, Anno 1440. the maritine parts of the Land of *Guinea*, Anno 1452. which fair foundations being laid, and the way opened to thoſe great diſcoveries, which after followed that Glorious Prince deceaſed in a good old Age, *Anno* 1463. leaving this Character behind him, that he was the firſt that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; diſcontinued after his deceaſe above 20 years, it was reſumed again by King *John*, the ſecond of that name, who by the conduct of *Diego Con*, Anno 1486. diſcovered the Realms of *Angola*, and *Congo*, with the Iſle of S. *George*, and thereupon reſolves in the next year following to try his fortunes for compaſſing the whole Coaſts of *Africk*, thereby to find a way to the wealth of *India*, in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diaz*, who paſſing beyond Cape *Verd*, diſcovered firſt the *Princes* Iſland, and ſailing from thence Southward to the furtheſt Promontory (ſince called the *Cape* of *Good Hope*) returned home again; either diſcouraged by croſs winds, or unruly Seas, or the untractableneſs of his Mariners, or by altogether. The man to whom the honour of this enterprize was reſerved, was that *Vaſques de Gama* above mentioned, employed in this ſervice by King *Emanuel*, Anno 1597. who having in his way, diſcovered the Iſlands of S. *James*, and S. *Hellens*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew de Diaz* durſt not paſs, gave it the name of *Cabo di Buena eſperonza*; or the *Cape of good Hope*, becauſe of the good hope it gave him of finding the deſired way to the trade of *India*, and having ſo doubled this *Cape*, and got *Africk* on the left hand of him, he kept his courſe on towards the North, till he diſcovered the Countries of *Quiloa*, *Moſambique*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which laſt he contracted an eſpecial friendſhip, and by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Caliculo* in *Eaſt India*, from whence with infinite joy and honour, he returned to *Lisbone*, Anno 1500. The deſign followed the next year by *Alvarez Capralde*, furniſhed with 12 ſhips and 1500 Souldiers, but he being loſt upon the Coaſts of *Braſil*, and diverting wholly in a manner, on the diſcovery of that large Country, it was purſued the next year with greater ſtrength, by *Vaſques* and his Brother *Stephan*, afterwards by *Ferdinand de Almeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuguerque*, and divers others of that Nation, and finally by the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, Merchants of almoſt every Country, which have any trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the latter Ages are better inſtructed in the particulars of it, than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman* Empire and ſome parts adjoyning upon *Egypt*: more then the ſtrange Beaſts, and more ſtrange Reports which they had from hence; occaſioning hereby the By-word, *Africa ſemper aliquid apportat novi.*

Touching the State of *Chriſtianity* in this great Continent, it is very weak; moſt of thoſe Regions which *Chriſtian Religion* had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mahometaniſm* having ſince regained from *Chriſtianity*: Inſomuch that not only the North part of *Afric* near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Goſpel once ſo exceedingly flouriſhed; that three hundred *Catholick* Biſhops were at one time baniſhed thence by *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*; is at this preſent utterly void of *Chriſtians*, (except ſome few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*:) but even in all this vaſt Country, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely *Chriſtian*, but the Kingdom of *Habaſſia* only, and perhaps not that; none where the *Chriſtians* are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but only *Egypt*; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Angola*, and ſome few Towns upon thoſe Coaſts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have thoſe Nations gotten by our late Diſcoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godlineſs*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Country, or diſperſed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly ſo called, *Egyptians*, *Habaſſines*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and ſome *Europæan* Chriſtians: the *Europæan* Chriſtians only in their Forts and Garriſons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns, where Trade is ſtirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-coaſts bordering on the Red-Sea; but wandering in great herds or companies all about the Country with their wives and children: the *Habaſſines* and *Egyptians*, in their ſeveral Kingdoms: The *Africans* again ſubdivided into *Moors*, and *Caferes*: of which the *Moors* are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*; the *Caferes* dwelling in the inland and more Southern parts, not diſcovered antiently, in their wonted *Gentiliſm*. Accordingly, the Languages herein ſpoken are different alſo; The *Portugal* or *Spaniſh* being uſed by the *Europæans*; 2. The *Chaldee* or *Syriack* by the *Jews*; 3. The *Arabick*, by thoſe of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* only; 4. The *Habaſſine*, and 5. The *Egyptian*, in thoſe Kingdoms: 6. That called *Aquel-amarig*, or the *Noble language*, ſuppoſed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with ſome *Arabian* words, and ſpoken generally in *Morocco*, and ſo amongſt ſome of the inhabitants of *Barbary*, neareſt to Mount *Atlas*: 7. That named *Sungai*, uſed in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8. That called *Gubeo*, ſpoke by thoſe of *Æthiopia inferior*, and ſuch of the *Land of Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the State of the Roman Empire, it contained only the *Dioceſes* of *Egypt*, *Africk*, and part of the Dioceſe of *Spain*. The Dioceſe of *Egypt* ſubdivided into the Provinces of, 1. *Lybia ſuperior*, 2. *Libya inferior*, 3. *Thebais*, 4. *Auguſtanica*, 5. *Arcadia*, and 6. *Ægyptus* eſpecially ſo called; diſtinguiſhed by other names in the *Nicene* Council: That of *Africk*, into *Tripolitana*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Zeugitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Caſarienſis*, 6. and *Mauritania Sitifenſis*; the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the Dioceſe of *Spain*. The reſt of this *Peninſula*, as they never conquered, ſo it never was much taken into conſideration. But being more perfectly diſcovered now then in former times, (though not ſo perfectly as that I can be able to promiſe an exact accompt of it) it is divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts; 1. *Egypt*, 2. *Barbary* or the *Roman Africk*, 3. *Numidia*, 4. *Libya*, neither of which the ſame with thoſe of the antient *Romans*; 5. *Terra Nigritarum*, 6. *Æthiopia ſuperior*, and 7. *Æthiopia inferior* Such of the Iſlands as do not properly belong unto any of theſe, ſhall make up the eighth. In the Deſcriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plantations*, and begin with *Egypt*; as being peopled and poſſeſſed before all the reſidue.

OF

OF EGYPT.

EGYPT is bounded on the Eaſt with *Idumaa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the Weſt with *Barbary*, *Numidia*, and part of *Libya*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the South with *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Abaſſine* Empire.

This Country in the holy Scriptures is called *Miſraim*, from *Miſraim* the ſon of *Chus*, and grandſon of *Cham*, by whom firſt planted after the flood; the footſteps of which name do remain amongſt the *Arabians*, who ſtill call it *Miſre*. Named in the ſame regard in the Book of *Pſalms*, the *Land of Ham*: a name retained in ſome of the ſacred offices of the old *Egyptians*, where (as *Plutarch* witneſſeth) it was called *Chemia*; for *Chamia* no doubt, as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the firſt ſtock of their nation. In Prophane Authors it hath had the ſeveral names of 1. *Aeira*, from the ſerenity of the Air, which is never clouded; 2. *Potamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, waſhing two ſides of it; 3. *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges* a ſuppoſed King thereof; 4. *Melampodus*, from the black colour of the ſoil; 5. *Oſiria*, from their God *Oſiris*, here in high eſteem: 6. and finally, it was called *Ægyptus*, which in the end prevailed over all the reſt, either from *Ægyptus* the Brother of *Danaus* once King hereof, (in the ſtories of this Nation better known by the name of *Rameſes*); or from *Ægyptus* the old name of the River *Nilus*, by whoſe annual overflowings made both rich and famous; and of the ſoil and rubbiſh which that River brought with it from the higher Countries, it was by ſome ſuppoſed to have been raiſed into firm land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in ſome Writers by the name of *Nili donum*, or the gift of *Nilus*. Yet ſome there be who would have it called *Ægyptus* for *Aiguphus*, and that derived from *Ai*, and *Coptus*, which ſignifieth the Land or Country of *Coptus*; that being ſuppoſed to have been anciently the chief City of it. And ſome again will have the name derived from *Chioth*, by which the *Ægyptians* call themſelves to this very day.

It containeth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Aſna*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Æthiopia*, 562 *Italian* miles: in breadth (excluſively of *Cyrene* and *Libya*) from *Roſetta* unto *Damiata*, or from the moſt Weſterly Branch of *Nilus* to the fartheſt Eaſt, 160 of the ſame miles; to which the adding of thoſe two Provinces, make a great acceſſion: Situate under the ſecond and fift *Climates*, ſo that the longeſt day in ſummer is but 13 hours and an half.

By reaſon of this Southernly ſituation of it, the Air is here very hot and offenſive; ſo that to avoid the inſupportable heats thereof, and to have the benefit of ſome freſh wind, the Inhabitants are accuſtomed to build high Towers in all their Towns, on which they uſe to ſolace and refreſh themſelves. The ſoyl made fruitful by the overflowings of *Nilus*, (whereof more anon) is ſo exceeding plentifull of all ſorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum populi Romani*, the *Granary* or Store-houſe of the People of *Rome*: which City it did annually furniſh with four months proviſion; inſomuch that it was ſaid by *Pliny*, that the greatneſs of the *Roman* Empire could not long continne without the corn and wealth of *Egyyt*, the plenty or famine of that City depending wholly on this Country. It abounds alſo with rich Paſtures, in which they feed great ſtore of *Camels*, Horſes, Aſſes, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, greater of growth then uſually in moſt places elſe; and by reaſon of the mooriſhneſs of the Country, they have great ſtore of Fowls. Of Poultry they have alſo good numbers about their houſes, hatched in a different manner from all other Countries, not by the ſitting of the *Hen*, but the heat of *Furnaces*, or Ovens; in which their eggs are orderly laid in dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is alſo liberally furniſhed with great plenty of Mettals, ſome precious Stones, good Wines, and the choiceſt Fruits, as Limons, Orenges, Pomegranets, Citrons, Figs, Cherries, and ſuch as theſe, excellent both for taſt and colour. Of Palm-trees alſo great abundance; of which though we have ſpoke before, yet we ſhall here more fully declare the nature and ſtrange properties of them. They grow in couples, **Male** and **Female**, both thruſt forth Cods full of ſeed, but the Female is only fruitful, and that not except growing by the Male, and having his ſeeds mixt with hers. The pith of theſe Trees is an excellent Sallad, better than an *Hartichoke*, which in taſt it very much reſembleth. Of the branches they make Bedſteads, Latices, &c. of the leaves, Baskets, Mats, Fans, &c. of the outward husk of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner, Bruſhes. The fruit it bears, beſt known by the name of *Dates*, are in taſt like Figs: and finally, it is ſaid to yield whatſoever is neceſſary to the life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never ſo ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the burden; but ſtill to reſiſt the heavineſs of it, and to endeavour to lift and raiſe it ſelf the more upwards. For this cauſe planted in *Church-yards* in the *Eaſtern* Countries, as an *Embleme* of the *Reſurrection*: inſtead whereof we uſe the *Ewe-tree* in theſe cold Regions. For the ſame reaſon, given to *Conquerours* as a token of *Victory*; it being the Embleme of *Hieroglyphick* of a Souldiers life. Hence *figuratively* uſed for precedency, as, *Huic equidem conſilio palmam do*, in *Terence*; ſometimes for the Victory it ſelf; as *Non auferent tamen hanc palmam*, in *Plinie*; & plurimarum *palmarum* homo, for a man that had won many prizes in the *Fence-School*, as in *Tully*, *pro Roſcio*: more naturally for the ſign of Victory, as in that of *Horace*,

——— Palmaque nobilis,
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.
That is to ſay,
The Palm, *of Victory a ſigne,*
Equal's men to the Powers Divine.

The People, though the Country lie in the ſame Clime with *Barbary*, are not black, but twany, or *Olive-coloured*, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela* to weep and mourn over the bodies of their dead, daubed over with dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having imbalmed them to lay them in ſome inward room of their Houſes: the men to keep themſelves at home, for the houſhold buſineſſes, the women to follow merchandiſe and affairs abroad; the men to carry burdens upon their heads, and the women theirs upon their ſhoulders: *Antipodes* in theſe laſt to moſt other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenious People, the firſt Inventers of *Geometry*, *Arithmetick*, *Phyſick*, as alſo of *Aſtronomy*, *Necromancy*, and *Sorcery*. They firſt taught the uſe of *Letters* to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accuſtomed at the firſt to expreſs their conceits in the ſhape of Birds, Beaſts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*; of which two or three Examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity* they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: for a *Year*, they painted a ſnake, with his tail in his mouth, to ſhew how one year ſucceeding another, kept the World ſtill in an endleſs circle. For a *moneth*, they painted a Palm-tree, becauſe at every new Moon, it ſendeth forth a new branch. For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; as well for that he ſoared ſo high, as that he governeth the leſſer birds. For *integrity* of life, they painted fire and water, both becauſe theſe Elements are in themſelves moſt pure, and becauſe all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was *abominable* to the Gods, they painted a Fiſh, becauſe in their Sacrifices the Prieſts never uſed them; and the like. From this manner of expreſſing ones ſelf, the invention of *Letters* is thought to have had its original (though learnt by them no queſtion of the children of *Iſrael*, when they lived amongſt them:) the "Hiſtory whereof, take briefly and word for word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formas animalium Ægy-* "*ptii, &c.* The *Egyptians* firſt of all expreſſed the conceptions of the minde, by the ſhapes of beaſts; "and the moſt ancient monuments of mans memory, are ſeen graven in ſtones; and they ſay, that they "are the firſt inventers of *Letters*. Then the *Phœnicians*, becauſe they were ſtrong at Sea, brought "them into *Greece*; and ſo they had the glory of that, which they received from others: For there goeth "a report, that *Cadmus* ſailing thither in a *Phœnician* ſhip, was the Inventer of that Art among the "*Greeks*, when they were yet unexpert and rude. Some report that *Cecrops* the *Athenian*, or *Livius* the "*Theban*, and *Palamedes* the *Græcian*, did find out ſixteen Characters at the time of the *Trojan* War; "and that afterward *Simonides* added the reſt. But in *Italy* the *Etrurians* learned them of *Demaratus* the "*Corinthian*; and the *Aborigines*, of *Evander* the *Arcadian*. So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phœnicians* were the firſt inventers of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-maſters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with ſafety maintain, having *Lucan* in conſent with *Tacitus*.

Phœnices *primi* (*fama ſi creditur*) *auſi*
Manſuram rudibus vocem ſignare figuris.

Phœnicians *firſt* (*if fame may credit have*)
Dar'd in rude Characters *our words ingrave.*

Of this mind alſo is *Iſidore* of *Sevil* in the firſt book of *Originations*, who alſo addeth, that for that cauſe the *Fronts* of Books, and the *Titles* of Chapters were written in *red letters*, as it is by ſome ſtill in uſe. *Hinc eſt quod &* Phœniceo colore *librorum capita deſcribantur*, *quia ab ipſis literæ initium habuere*, *cap.* 3. As for theſe leſs vulgar Letters, which the *Latines* call *Cyphræ*, and whereof every exerciſed *Stateſman* have peculiar to himſelf; they were firſt invented by *Julius Cæſar*, when he firſt began to think of the *Roman* Monarchy: and were uſed by him in his Letters to his more private and tryed friends, that if by misfortune they ſhould be intercepted, the contents of them ſhould not be underſtood; ὅπως ἄγνωστα τοῖς πολλοῖς τὰ γραφόμενα, *ne obvia literarum lectio cuivis eſſet.* *Auguſtus* one of the greateſt *Politicians* of the World, had another kinde of obſcure writing; for in his Letters of more ſecrecy and importance, he always uſed τὸ δεύτερον ἀντὶ στοιχεῖον, to put the letter immediately following in the order of the *Alphabet*, for that which in ordinary writing he ſhould have uſed. As for *Brachigraphie*, or the Art of writing by ſhort *Characters*, ſo uſeful for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is ſpoken: I find in *Dion*, that *Mœcenas* that great *favourite* of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and favourer of Learning, did firſt invent them, *ad celeritatem ſcribendi*, for the ſpeedier diſpatch of writing; ϗ πρῶτος σημεῖα γραμμάτων τινὰ (they are the very words of my Author) πρὸς τάχος ἐξεῦρε. *Iſidor* in the ſecond Chapter of his book above mentioned, aſcribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Libertus* or *freed man* of his *Mœcenas*; and to *Tertius Perſannius*, and *Philargius*, who added to this invention. Yet had all they their chief light in it from *Tullius Tito*, a *freed man* of *Cicero*'s; who had undertaken and compaſſed it in the *Prepoſitions*, but went no further. At the laſt it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into order and method; the whole volume of his contractions conſiſting of 5000 words. *Deinde* Seneca *contracto omnium, digeſtoque & aucto numero, opus effecit in quinque millia.* But now I make haſt to take a ſurvey of theſe *Egyptians* as they ſtand at the preſent, much differing from the ingenuity and abilities of their Predeceſſors.

For ſuch as have obſerved the nature of the Modern *Egyptians*, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Anceſtors; prone to innovations, devoted to luxury, cowardly, cruel, addicted naturally to cavil, and to detract from whatſoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other men more obſervant than faithful, of a wit much inclining to craftineſs, and very eager on their profit:

Of perſon, of a mean ſtature, tawny of complexion, and ſpare of body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themſelves to *merchandiſe*; grow rich by Trading, reaſonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in their dreſs and Faſhion. Thoſe in the Country, who betake themſelves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a ſavage and naſty People, cruſted over with dirt, and ſtinking of ſmoak; fit company for none but thoſe of their own condition. Nothing now left amongſt them of the *Arts* of their Anceſtors, but an affectation which they have unto *Divinations*; to *Fortune-telling* great pretenders: by which, and by ſome *cheating-tricks* in which very well-practiſed, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and ſo get their livelyhood; occaſioning the *vagabonds* and ſtraglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the ſame falſe Arts, to aſſume their names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an *Hochpot* or medley of many Nations, *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, the natural *Egyptian* making up the leaſt part of the reckoning.

The *women* of the ſame complexion with the men, but well formed and featured, did they not too much affect a ſeeming *corpulency*; which if they cannot get in fleſh, they will have in cloaths. Very fruitful in child-bearing, and quick of diſpatch when they are in labour: ſome of them having three or four children at a Birth; thoſe that are born in the eighth moneth living to good Age, aud not in danger of death, as in other Countries. Such of them as dwell in Cities, cover their faces with black *Cypres* beſpotted with red; their arms, and ancles garniſhed with bracelets and hoops of gold, ſilver, or ſome other Metal. Thoſe in the Country, for a vail, uſe ſome dirty clout, having holes onely for their eyes, which little is too much to ſee and abſtain from loathing. Both in the City and the Country, contrary to the cuſtom in all places elſe, the women uſe to make water ſtanding, and the men couring on their knees.

The old *Egyptians* were ſo eminent in Arts and Learning, that from them *Pythagoras*, and *Democritus* learnt their *Philoſophy*; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their Forms of Government. *Orpheus*, and *Homer*, their Poetical fictions of the Gods. Particularly, here flouriſhed *Ariſtarchus* that famous and learned *Grammarian*; 2. *Herodian*, a diligent Student and ſearcher into curious Arts; 3. *Ammonius*, the Maſter of *Plotinus*; 4. *Didymus*, ſurnamed *Chalcenteros*, for his indefatigable induſtry in ſeveral Sciences; 5. *Manethon*, an old *Hiſtorian*, of whom we have nothing but ſome fragments; 6. *Appianus*, an Hiſtorian of later date, whoſe works are extant, 7. *Didymus* the *Grammarian*, 8. *Cl. Ptolomaus*, the Geographer; 9. *Achilles Statius* the Poet; 10. And before all, the profound Philoſopher *Mercurius*, ſirnamed *Triſmegiſtus*. And after their converſion to the faith of *Chriſt*, 1. *Pamanus* the firſt Reader of Divinity in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2, *Origen* and 3. *Clemens Alexandrinus*, both ſkilled in the univerſality of Learning; 4. *Dionyſius*; 5. *Athanaſius*, and 6. *Cyril*; all three Biſhops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their ſeveral times. Now nothing but ignorance and Barbariſm to be found amongſt them.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt here planted by *S. Mark*, whom all Antiquity maketh the firſt Biſhop of *Alexandria*. His ſucceſſors, till the time of *Heraclus* and *Dionyſius*, choſen continually out of the *Presbytery* or Cathedral-Clergy; afterwards out of the *Clergy* at large. Their Juriſdiction ſetled by a Canon of the Council of *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole *Dioceſs* of *Egypt*, (taking the word *Dioceſs* in the Civil notion) containing *Libya*, *Pentapolis* and *Egypt* ſpecially ſo called: to which, though *Epiphanius* addes *Thebais*, *Mareotica*, and *Ammoniaca*, yet he addes nothing in effect; *Thebais*, and *Mareotica* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniaca* was of *Libya*. Afterwards the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine* Churches became ſubject to this *Patriarch* alſo, and do acknowledge to this day ſome relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens*, and the ſubjugation of this Countrey, *Chriſtianity* fell here into great decay; languiſhing ſo ſenſibly ſince thoſe times, eſpecially ſince the conqueſt of it by the *Turks*: that whereas *Brochardus* in his time reckoned three hundred thouſand *Chriſtians*; in the laſt eſtimate which was made of them, they were found to be but fifty thouſand. This ſmall remainder of them, commonly called *Cophti*, either from the Greek word κόπτω, *ſcindo*, becauſe they retained the uſe of *Circumciſion* with their *Chriſtianity*; or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reſide; or finally by *abbreviation* from *Ægopthi*, corrupted from *Ægyptii*, their own National name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithſtanding in ſome particulars, in ſome from all other *Chriſtians* Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The points moſt proper to them, 1. Uſing *Circumciſion* with their *Baptiſm*, but rather as a *National* than *Religious* cuſtome; though in that ſenſe alſo laid aſide, as is ſaid by ſome, by the perſwaſion of ſome *Legates* from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Caire*, An. 1583. 2*ly*. Conferring all ſacred Orders under the *Prieſthood*, on Infants immediately after Baptiſm; their Parents, till they come to ſixteen years of age, performing what they promiſed in their behalf, *viz.* Chaſtity, faſting on Wedneſday and Friday, and the four Lents of the year. 3*ly*. Reputing Baptiſm not to be of any efficacy, except miniſtred by the Prieſt, in the open Church, in what extremity ſoever: 4*ly*. And yet not *baptizing* any Children till the fortieth day, though they die in the *interim*. 5*ly*. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt*, aſſoon as Chriſtened; 6. Contracting marriages even in the ſecond Degree of Conſanguinity, without diſpenſation; 7. Obſerving not the *Lords day*, nor any of the *Feſtivals*, except onely in *Cities*; 8*ly*. And in their Liturgies, reading the Goſpel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, 1. Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Lords Supper* under both kinds, 2*ly*. Adminiſtring in leavened bread; 3*ly*. Admitting neither *Extreme Unction*, nor the uſe of the *Euchariſt*, to thoſe that are ſick; 4*ly*. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead, 5*ly*. Not uſing Elevation in the act of Adminiſtring; And 6. Reckoning the *Roman* Church for *Heretical*, and eſteeming no better of the *Latines* than they do of the *Jews*. In theſe opinions they continue hitherto againſt all *Opponents* and perſwaſions: For though *Baronius* in the end of the ſixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath regiſtred an Ambaſſage from *Marcus*, the then Patriarch of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8; wherein he is ſaid to have ſubmitted himſelf and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*: yet upon further ſearch made, it was found but a *Cheat*, deviſed to hold up the reputation of a ſinking cauſe. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* ſtill adhereth to his own Authority; though many of late, by the practiſe and ſolicitation of ſome buſie *Friars*, have been drawn to be of the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, and to uſe her *Liturgies*.

What their Religion was before *Chriſtianity*, is obvious to the eye of a vulgar Reader; even the worſt of *Gentiliſm*; theſe people not only worſhipping the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, creatures of greateſt uſe and glory; nor only ſacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the reſt of the gods (many of whom were Authors in their ſeveral times of ſome publick benefit to mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing divine honour to *Crocodiles*, Snakes, Serpents, *Garlick*, Leeks and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the *Chriſtian* Fathers, ſo moſt deſervedly expoſed unto publick ſcorn, by the pens of the Poets.

Porrum & cæpe nefas violare, & lædere morſu,
Felices populi, quibus hæc naſcuntur in hortis
Numina.——*Quis neſcit qualia demens*
Ægyptus portenta *colat*, &c.

Which may be rendred to this purpoſe.

To bite an Onion *or a* Leek, *is more*
Than deadly ſin. The Numen *they adore*
Growes in their Gardens. *And who doth not know*
What monſtrous Shapes for gods in Egypt *go?*

But the God moſt eſteemed by them, and by all ſorts of the *Egyptians* the moſt adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Oxe, with a white ſtar in his forehead, the *Effigies* of an Eagle on his Back, and two hairs only in his Tail. But it ſeemeth his *Godſhip* was not ſo much reſpected by Strangers. For *Cambyſes* when he conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his ſword through the Thigh, and cauſed all his Prieſts to be ſcourged: And *Auguſtus* being here, would not vouchſafe to ſee him, ſaying, Θεὺς ἀλλ᾽ οὐχὶ βοῦς προσκυνεῖν εἴθισμαι, that that the Gods and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the Object of his Devotions. A ſpeech moſt truly worthy ſo brave an Emperour.

Among the *Rarities* of this Country, ſome were the works of Nature, and ſome of induſtry and magnificence. Of this laſt kind I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramides*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their ſeveral kinds, the envy of the Ages paſt, and the aſtoniſhment of the preſent. Of the *Labyrinth* we ſhall ſpeak anon, in the courſe of our buſineſs. Look we now on the *Pyramides*, many in number, three moſt celebrated, and one the principal of all; ſituate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Weſtern banks of *Nilus*. This laſt, the chief of the Worlds *ſeven wonders*, ſquare at the bottom, is ſuppoſed to take up eight acres of ground. Every ſquare 300 ſingle paces in length, aſcended by 255 ſteps, each ſtep above 3 Foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top conſiſting but of three Stones only, yet large enough for 60 men to ſtand upon. No Stone ſo little in the whole, as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted, is an equal wonder, Built for the Sepulchre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the reſt for others of thoſe mighty Princes) who employed in it day by day twenty years together, no fewer then 366000 men continually working on it. The Charges which they put him to, in no other Food then *Garlick*, Radiſhes, and Onions, being computed at a thouſand and eight hundred *Talents*. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is ſaid to be the Work of a Daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finiſh her Fathers undertaking, and raiſe her own unto the height, by the proſtitution of her body, requiring but one ſtone towards the Work from each one of her Cuſtomers; but the Tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater truth, though affirmed by *Joſephus*, and ſuppoſed by many good *Divines*, that the drudgery put upon the *Iſraelites* did concern theſe *Pyramides*: the *Materials* of theſe Works being *ſtone*; their employment *Brick*: But paſt all doubt, advanced by thoſe conſiderate Princes upon good advice, and not for oſtentation only of their power and glories. For by this means they did not only eternize their memory to ſucceeding Ages, but for the preſent kept the Subject from ſloath and Idleneſs; who being a people prone unto *Innovations*, were otherwiſe like enough to have fed that ſin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

Next theſe *Pyramides*, I place the Iſle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Iſland oppoſite unto *Alexandria*, once a mile diſtant from the Land, but joyned to the Continent by *Cleopatra*, on this occaſion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea, uſed to exact ſome tribute or acknowledgment out of every Iſland within thoſe Seas; and conſequently out of this. Their Ambaſſadors ſent unto *Cleopatra* to demand this tribute, ſhe detained with her ſeven daies, under colour of celebrating ſome ſolemn *Feſtivals*; and in the mean time, by making huge dams and banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and ſpeed, united the Iſland to the Shore; Which finiſhed, ſhe ſent the *Rhodians* away empty-handed, with this witty *jeere*, telling them, *that they were to take Toll of the Iſlands, and not of the Continent*. A work of great rarity and magnificence, both for the bigneſs of it, taking up ſeven furlongs of ground, and for that cauſe called *Heptaſtadium*; and that incredible ſpeed, wherewith it was finiſhed. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in *Greek* and *Latin Pharos*, by the name of the *Iſland*; it was built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, for the benefit of Saylors (the Seas upon that coaſt being very unſafe and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deſervedly eſteemed another of the Worlds ſeven Wonders: the other five being 1. The *Mauſolæum*, 2. The Temple of *Epheſus*, 3. The Wals of *Babylon* 4. The *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes*, and 5. the *Statue* of *Jupiter Olympicus*. This Watch-tower, or *Pharos*, was of wonderful height, aſcended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein lights burned nightly, as a direction to ſuch as ſailed by Sea. The *Materials* were white Marble; the chief Architect, *Soſtratus* of *Gnidos*, who engraved on the work this Inſcription, *Soſtratus of* Gnidos, *the Son of* Dexiphanes, *to the Gods protectors, for the ſafeguard of Sailers*. This Inſcription he covered with *Plaiſter*, and thereon engraved the name and title of the King, the Founder: to the end that the Kings name being ſoon waſted and waſhed away, his own, which was written in marble, might be eternized to poſterity, as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cæſar* purſuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*; and having diſcontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Souldiers, had his Navy which here lay at anchor, aſſaulted by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolomies* Servants, *Cæſar* himſelf being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the skirmiſh he haſted to the *Pharos*, meaning to ſuccour his Navy in perſon: but the *Egyptians* making towards him on all ſides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and ſwim for his life. And though (to avoid their darts) he somtimes ducked; yet held he ſtill his left hand above the water, and in it divers Books, which he carried ſafe unto his Ships; and animating his men, got the victory. It is ſaid that *Egypt* hath only two doors; the one by land, which is the ſtrong town of *Peleuſium*, or *Damiata*; the other by water, which is this *Pharos*: *Tota Æ*gyptus *maritimo acceſſu*, Phar[illegible]; *pedeſtre vero*, Peluſio, *velut clauſtris munita exiſtimatur*, ſaith *Oppins*.

Amongſt the rarites of Nature, we may reckon thoſe ſtrange Beaſts and Fiſhes, proper almoſt unto this Countrey, *i. e.* the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horſe) the *Ibis*, the *Aſpe*, and many ſeveral ſorts of Serpents. To ſpeak of which particularly, were a work more proper to a *Natural* Hiſtory, then a *Geographical*. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* then all the reſt, cannot be parted with in ſilence; A creature of a ſtrange nature, hatched of an Egge no bigger than that of a *Turkie*; and yet increaſing to the length of thirty foot; his tail as long as all the reſt of his body, with which he is accuſtomed to enchain his prey, and draw it into the River; his feet armed with claws, and his back with impenetrable Scales; his mouth ſo wide (of which he moveth only the upper jaw) that he is able to ſwallow a whole Heifer; equally uſed to both Elements, but better ſighted in the water, than on the land; Cowardly, though a Creature of Prey, and ſuch as uſually flies from thoſe which dare ſet upon him; and eaſily vanquiſhed by the *Dolphin*, who ſwimming under the water, woundeth him in the belly, where aſſaultable only. Whether ſo eaſily deſtroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kind of water-Rat) skipping into his mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers ſay, hath of late been queſtioned. That which I look on as a Rarity of the greateſt moment (if not rather to be accounted *ſupernatural*) is that about five miles from the City of *Caire*, there is a place in which on every *Good-Friday* yearly, there appear the heads, legs and arms of men riſing out of the ground, to a very great number; which if a man draw near unto them, or touch any of them, will ſhrink again into the earth. Suppoſed by ſome to be an *Impoſture* of ſome *Watermen*, only, who ſtick them over-night in the ſands, and keeping them ſecret to themſelves, obtain thereby the *Ferrying* over of many thouſands of People, to behold the ſight. But *Stephen Dupleis*, a ſober and diſcerning man, in the opinion of *Goulartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwiſe of it: affirming ſoberly that he was an eye-witneſs of the wonder, that he had touched divers of theſe riſing Members; and that (as he was once ſo doing to the head of a Child) a man of *Caire* cried out unto him, *Kali, Kali, ante materaſde*, that is to ſay, *Hold, Hold, you know not what you do*. A ſtrange *Fore-runner* (if it be of undoubted credit) of the *Reſurrection* of the whole Body, preſented yearly in the riſing of theſe ſeveral parts.

Of leſs diſpute, but not leſs *rarity* in nature, are theſe that follow. 1. That in all this Country it never raineth, or if a cloud do ſomtimes happen to diſſolve upon them, it bringeth on their bodies innumerable ſores, and ſtrange diſeaſes. 2. The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are ſaid to follow on the ſame. Of which it is thus ſaid by *Lucan*;

Terra ſuis contenta bonis, non indiga mercis,
Aut Jovis; *in ſolo tanta eſt fiducia* Nilo:

The earth content with its own wealth, doth crave
No Forreign Mart, *nor* Jove *himſelf; they have*
Their hopes alone in Nilus *fruitful wave.*

This *Nilus* hath his head, not in the *Mountains* of the *Moon*, as the Ancients thought, but in the Lake *Zembre*, in *Æthiopia Interior*: and running in one continual *Channel* (excepting where it brancheth into little Iſlands, as it ſomtimes doth) till it waſheth the mid-land of *Egypt*, is before its influx into the Sea, divided into ſeven great ſtreams, opening into the ſea with ſo many mouths. Namely, 1. *Heracleoticum*, 2. *Bolviticum*. 3. *Sebanniticum*, 4. *Patinicum*, 5. *Mendeſium*, 6. *Caniticum*, 7. *Peluſaicum*. The firſt and laſt of theſe Currents (which are the only two now left) being far diſtant from other, and growing into one, at the firſt point of the Rivers diviſion, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*, becauſe to ſuch as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy* or *Anatolia*, it reſembleth the *Greek* Letter Δ. The other part is called *Thebais*, from *Thebe*, the chief City of it.

This *Nilus from* the 15 day of *June*, ſwelleth above its Banks, for the ſpace of 40 daies; and in as many more gathereth his waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen *Cubits*, then the earth is deficient in her abundance of increaſe, for want of moyſture: and if the waters ſurmount the *ſuperficies* of the Earth, more then ſeventeen Cubits, then like a drunken man, it cannot produce its natural operation, as having his ſtomack (as it were) over-laid, and ſurcharged with too much liquor: but if the mean be granted, there is no Countrey which can brag of the like fertility; the Corn being all houſed before the 20th of *May*. During this *Inundation*, they keep their Beaſts and Cattel on the tops of ſuch little hils, which either the Providence of Nature, or the Induſtry of man, hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decreaſe of the Waters: and on theſe hils alſo ſtand the moſt of their towns and villages, appearing in the time of the Flood, like ſo many Iſlands; and holding a commerce and continual Traffick by the entercourſe of Boats and Shallops, by which they do tranſport their Markettable commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth not thus overflow the Country, it is not only the Fore-runner to a following dearth, but prognoſticateth ſome enſuing miſchief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the teſtimony of good and creditable Authors, who have told us that in the 10 and 11 years of *Cleopatra*, the River increaſed not at all; and that it was noted as a Foreteller of the Fall of thoſe two great, but unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweetheart *Antonius*. A Second commodity which ariſeth from the overflowings of *Nilus*, is the health which it bringeth with it in moſt parts of the Countrey; the Plague which oftentimes miſerably rageth, upon the firſt day of the Floud, abating inſtantly; inſomuch that whereas 500 may die of that diſeaſe in the City of *Caire* but the day before, there dieth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River, is, that keeping its waters united in a body together, after it falleth into the Sea; it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further then any part of it can be ſeen from the ſhore. Add unto theſe, the many living creatures which the ſlime thereof ingendreth, on the withdrawing of the River to its natural channel: whereof *Ovid* thus,

> *Sic ubi deſeruit madidos* ſeptemfluus *agros*
> Nilus, *& antiquo ſua flumina reddidit alveo*;
> *Plurima Cultores verſis* Animalia *glebis*
> *Inveniunt.*

Which I *Engliſh* thus.

> *So when the ſeven-mouth'd* Nile *the fields forſakes,*
> *And to his ancient Channel him betakes;*
> *The Ploughmen many living Creatures find,*
> *By turning up the mud that's left behind.*

Amongſt which Creatures ſo ingendred, are ſaid to be ſuch innumerable heaps of *Frogs*, that if Nature, or *Divine Providence* rather, did not furniſh this Country with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured; the *Plague* of *Frogs* would come a ſecond time upon them, to their utter deſtruction. Now becauſe *Nilus* runneth in its certain *Channels*, and that the people have no other water to make uſe of, for all neceſſities; there are many By-trenches and deep Ditches cut in convenient places (by the care and munificence of their Kings) to receive its waters, and to communicate them to the people; who know almoſt no other drink then the waters thereof, and indeed they need not; the water of this River being of ſuch excellent, both taſt and vertue, that when *Peſcominus Niger* ſaw his Souldiers murmure for want of Wine; *What* (ſaid he) *do you grumble for Wine, having the waters of* Nile *to drink?*

On the Banks of the River ſtood that famous *Labyrinth* built by *Pſamniticus*, which we have touched upon before; ſituate on the South of the *Pyramides*, and North of *Arſinoe*, or the City of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compaſs of one continued wall, a thouſand houſes, and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had only one entrance, but innumerable turnings and returnings, ſometimes one over another; and all in a manner invious to ſuch as were not well acquainted with them: The building more under the ground, then above; the Marble-ſtones laid with ſuch art, that neither Wood nor Cement was employed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers ſo diſpoſed, that the Doors upon their opening did give a report no leſs terrible, then a crack of Thunder; the main entrance all of white-Marble, adorned with ſtately Columns, and moſt curious Imagery. The end at length being attained, a pair of ſtairs of 90 ſteps conducted into a gallant *Portice*, ſupported with Pillars of *Theban* ſtone; which was the Entrance into a fair and ſpacious Hall (the place of their general Conventions) all of poliſhed Marble, ſet out with the *Statues* of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Dædalus* in the *Cretane* Labyrinth; though that fell as ſhort of the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferiour unto *Pſamniticus* in power and riches.

On the Banks of this River alſo grew thoſe ſedgy Weeds called *Papyri*, of which Paper was made in former times. They divided it into thin flakes (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moyſtening them with the glutinous waters of the River, they preſſed them together, and after dried them in the Sun. By means of this Invention, Books being eaſier to be tranſcribed and reſerved then formerly, *Ptolomy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*: and underſtanding how *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this *Egyptian* Paper, ſtrived to exceed him in that kind of magnificence, prohibited the carrying of it out of *Egypt*. Hereupon *Attalus* invented the uſe of Parchments, made of the skins of Calves and Sheep; from the materials called *Membranæ*, and *Pergamenæ* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cauſe, that in ſhort time the *Egyptian* Paper was worn out of uſe; in place whereof ſucceeded our Paper made of Rags; the Authours of which excellent Invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the uſe of theſe Papers and Parchments were firſt made known, I obſerve three waies of Writing amongſt the

Ancients (I hope I ſhall be pardoned this ſhort digreſſion) 1. On the inward ſide of the Bark of a Tree, which is in Latine called *Liber*; and whence Books have the name of *Libri*. 2ly. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Caudex*, gave the *Latines* occaſion to call a book *Codex*. 3ly. They uſed to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to ſignifie; from whence a Letter-carrier was called *Tabellarius*. The Inſtrument wherewith they wrote, was a ſharp-pointed Iron, which they named *Stylus*; a word now ſignifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of *Phraſe* which any man uſeth: as *Negligens Stylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus Stylus*, in *Cicero*. I ſhould have alſo noted, that they uſed ſomtimes to write in *Leaves*; That the *Sibyls* Oracles being ſo written and ſcattered abroad, had the name of *Sibyllæ Folia*; and that from thence we have the phraſe of a *Leaf of Paper*. But of this Argument enough.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus*, and that great increaſe of wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural Commodities of the Earth: Let us next look on the *Red-Sea*, and the great riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of *Trading*. A Sea whereof we have ſpoke already, as to the reaſon of the name, the extent thereof, and the ſeveral Iſlands contained in it; and therefore ſhall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to this Countrey, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous paſſage of the *Iſraelites* through it as upon dry-land, and the drowning of *Pharaoh Cenchres* and all his people, at large commemorated in the books of Holy Scriptures: as alſo for that through it Spices of *India* and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria*; and thence by the *Venetians* diſperſed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Aſia*. I ſuppoſe I ſhall not do amiſs to ſet down Hiſtorically out of *Galuano*, a relation of the begininng, continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received ſo great Commodity. *Know then* (ſaith he) *that* Ptolomy Philadelphus, 277 *years before the* Incarnation, *was the firſt that ſet on foot this Navigation*: Coſir (*of old called* Myos: Hormos) *on the Seaſide being the ordinary Haven, out of which they hoyſed ſail for* India; *and into which they returned, full fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by land conveighed to* Coptus, *and ſo down the* Nile *to* Alexandria: *by which Traffick the City grew exceeding rich; inſomuch that the Cuſtom-houſe there yielded* Ptol. Auletes 7 *Millions and an half of Gold yearly. The* Romans *being Lords of* Egypt, *enhanſed the Cuſtomes to double that ſum: they ſent into* India *every year* (*as* Pliny *witneſſeth*) 120 *ſhips, whoſe lading was worth* 1200000 *Crowns; and there was made in return of every Crown*, 100. *When the* Vandals, Lombards, Goths, *and* Moors *had torn in pieces the* Roman *Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to ceaſe. At laſt perceiving the inconvenience, they began anew; conveighing the* Indian *Commodities, partly by land, partly by water, unto* Capha *in* Taurica Cherſoneſus, *belonging to the* Genoeſe. *Next* Trabezond *was made the Mart-Town, then* Sarmachand *in* Zagataie, *where the* Indian, Turkiſh, *and* Perſian *Merchants met to barter wares: the* Turks *conveighing their merchandiſe to* Damaſcus, Baratti, *and* Aleppo; *from whence the* Venetians *tranſported it to* Venice, *making that the common* Emporium *of Chriſtendom. Once again*, viz. *Anno* 1300. *the* Soldans *of* Egypt *reſtored the paſſage by the* Red-Sea; *which having continued more then* 200 *years, is now diſcontinued by the* Portugal, Spaniard, Engliſh *and* Dutch, *which bring them to their ſeveral homes by the back-ſide of* Africk: *So that not only the Traffick of* Alexandria *is almoſt decayed, and the Riches of the* Venetians *much diminiſhed; but the Drugs and Spices have loſt much of their vertue, as impaired by too much moyſture.* So much ſaith he, touching the courſe and alteration of this Trading: To which I ſhall take leave to add, That for the better and more quick return of ſuch Commodities as were uſually brought into this Sea, ſome of the Kings of *Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it to the River *Nilus*, paſſable by Ships of greateſt Burden; the marks of whoſe proud attempts are remaining ſtill. *Seſoſtris* was the firſt who deſigned the work, having before with good ſucceſs cut many Trenches from the River, and ſome Navigable, into many places of the Country; by which unprofitable Mariſhes were drained, the Country ſtrengthened, Trade made eaſie, and the people better furniſhed with water then in former times. *Darius* the great *Perſian* Monarch, ſeconded the ſame *Project*; ſo did one of the *Ptolomies*; The like is ſaid of a capricious *Portugal* in theſe latter times. But they all gave it over on the ſame conſideration; which was a fear leſt by letting in the *Red-Sea*, they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a ſecond Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Aſia Minor*, which lay neareſt to them: that Sea being found to be much higher then the *Mediterranean*, and the flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to underſtand, that all which hitherto hath been ſpoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* ſtrictly, and ſpecially ſo called; containing only ſo much of the Country of *Egypt*, as lieth upon the Banks and Channels of the River *Nilus*: and not to all that tract of ground which lay betwixt the *Red-Sea*, and the borders of *Libya*, which was reckoned in the compaſs of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, much leſs as comprehending *Libya* and *Cyrene* alſo, though now accounted Members of that great body, and anciently parts or Provinces of the *Dioceſe* of it. For *Egypt*, in the largeſt ſenſe and acception of the word, may be, and generally is divided into theſe three parts, *viz.* 1. *Egypt*, in the general Notion, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean* from the borders of *Idumæa*, to the *Roman Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying Weſtward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleoticum*: and on the Borders of *Æthiopia Superior*, from the ſaid *Red-Sea*, to the Countrey of *Libya Interior*. 2. *Libya*, or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly ſo called, and the Province of *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*. And 3. *Cyrene*, or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Lybia*, to the greater *Syrtis*; where it bordered with that part of the *African Dioceſe*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this firſt acception of it we ſhall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains, and Chief Cities; which done, we ſhall deſcribe the other in their proper places; and then unite them all in the *General Story*.

As for the Mountains of this Countrey, there are very many: there were no living elſe for the people in the time of the overflowings of the River. The principal of thoſe, 1. Thoſe called *Montes Libyci*, lying in a long chain on the Weſt of *Nilus*; 2. *Alabaſtrinus*; 3. *Porphyritus*; 4. *Troigus*; 5. *Baſanitus* on the Eaſt thereof. Betwixt theſe Hills the courſe of the River is ſo hemmed in on both ſides, that at the upper part of the ſtream, where it firſt entreth into *Egypt*, the ſpace betwixt the Mountains is not above four miles broad; enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Caire* to thirty ſeven; then opening wider and wider, till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Countrey doth increaſe in breadth. On theſe and other of the Mountains and leſſer Hills, ſtand moſt part of the Towns, the receptacles of the Countrey people in the time of the Floud, riſing when leaſt, to fifteen *cubits*, or ſeven yards and an half.

Rivers of note here are none but *Nilus*, nor indeed any one but that; that being ſufficient of it ſelf to enrich this Countrey, which otherwiſe would be nothing but a *Sandy Deſart*. But what they want in Rivers, is ſupplied with *Lakes* and Trenches, which ſerve for watering their Cattel, tempering of Mortar for their buildings, and other ſuch inferior uſes; ſometimes perhaps for drink for the poorer ſort, who cannot be conveniently furniſhed with the waters of *Nile*. Amongſt the Trenches (which were many, as before was ſaid) thoſe of moſt eſtimation were the Works of *Ptolomy*, and the Emperour *Trajan*; the firſt falling into that branch of the *Nile*, which maketh the Iſle called *Heracleotis*; the other into the main body of it, not far from *Caire*. Theſe two, by reaſon of the many freſh ſprings which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authours: and betwixt theſe was ſeated the Land of *Goſhen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea*, on the Eaſt and Weſt. The chief of note amongſt the Lakes, were thoſe called, 1. *Mareotis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Pliny* called *Arapotes*, *Maria* by *Ptolomy*; all which names are now loſt, and changed into that of *Lagodi Antacon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2. *Laccus*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which in the book of *Maccabees* is called *Aſphar*, lib. 1, cap. 9. And 3. *Moeris*, now called *Bucheira*, more memorable than the reſt. In compaſs 3500 furlongs, 50 fathom deep, in the midſt whereof were two *Pyramides* 50 fathoms above the water, and as much beneath it: the Fiſh of this Lake, for one ſix moneths in the year, ſaid to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the Kings Exchequer; for the other ſix, each day a Talent. 4. The Lakes called *Amari*, into which the Trench, or River called *Ptolomeus*, doth diſcharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided anciently into two parts onely. 1. That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extream branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which letter it reſembleth to him who ſtanding on the Sea-ſhore could take a view of it. 2. That called *Thebais*, from *Thebe* the principal City of it, comprehending all the reſt of the courſe of that River, ſhut up on both ſides with the Mountains ſpoken of before. But this Diviſion leaving out all thoſe parts hereof, which lay on the Eaſt-ſide towards the *Arabian Golfs*, and on the Weſt, as far as to the borders of *Libya Marmarica*: the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 *Cantreds*, or Diſtricts, by them called *Nomi*; increaſed in the time of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, to 46. *Ortelius* out of divers Authours hath found 20 more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a *Dioceſs* of the Empire, it was divided into four Provinces, nor reckoning *Marmarica*, and *Cyrene* into the accompt;) that is to ſay, 1. *Ægyptus* ſpecially ſo called, containing all the *Delta*, and the Diſtrict or *Nomus* of *Mareotica*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2. *Auguſtanica*, ſo called from *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on the Eaſt of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petræa*. 3. *Arcadia*, ſo called from the Emperour *Arcadius*, in whoſe time it was taken out of *Thebais*, lying on both ſides of the River, from the *Delta* to the City of *Antinous*. 4. *Thebais*, extending on both ſides of the River from the borders of *Liyba Marmarica* to the *Red-Sea*, (as the other doth) from *Antinous*, unto *Æthiopia*; Divided otherwiſe by ſome, into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Æthiopia* to the City of *Aminous*, *Mediam*, ſtretching thence to the point of the *Delta*; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the reſt. But at this time, that part hereof, which lieth on the South and Eaſt of *Caire*, is called *Saud*, or *Salid*; honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the ancient *Pharaohs*, becauſe neareſt unto *Æthiopia* their moſt puiſſant neighbour. 2. That betwixt *Caire*, *Roſetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Errifia*, wherein the *Ptolomæan* Princes did moſt reſide; becauſe moſt convenient for receiving ſupplies of men, from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Caire*, to *Teneſe* and *Damiata*, is now called *Maremna*, in which the *Turks* and *Mamalucks* made the ſeat of their Empire: becauſe more neighbouring to the *Chriſtians*, whom they ſtood in fear of, as likelieſt to invade them upon that ſide. In the whole Countrey there was reckoned in the time of *Amaſis* the 2d, no fewer than 20000 Cities: but if the Towns and Villages be not reckoned in, I ſhould much doubt of the accompt. By *Diodorus Siculus* it is ſaid that there were 3000 in his time: but *Ortelius*, on a diligent ſearch, finds 300 onely.

Thoſe of moſt note in the Province of *Auguſtanica*, 1. *Peluſium*, the moſt eaſtern City of *Egypt* towards *Idumæa*, ſituate on the moſt Eaſtern Channel of *Nilus*, called hence *Peluſiacum*; by *Ammianus* ſaid to be the work of *Peleus* the Father of *Achilles*, commanded by the Gods to purge himſelf in the Lake adjoyning, for the murder of his brother *Phocus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to thoſe who came thither by Sea; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Auguſtanica*, the birth-place of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, and the Epiſcopal See of S. *Iſidore*, ſurnamed *Peluſiotes*, whoſe eloquent and pious Epiſtles are ſtill extant. Out of the ruines hereof (if not the ſame under another title) aroſe, 2. *Damiata*, memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the *Chriſtian* Armies; for none more than that under *John de Brenne*, the titulary King of *Jeruſalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, Anno. 1220. During which (being of 18 months continuance) the Famine and the Peſtilence ſo extreamly raged, that the Town in a manner was diſpeopled, before the *Beſiegers* knew any thing of their condition; till in the end two venturous Souldiers, admiring the ſilence and ſolitude of ſo great a City, in a *Bravado* ſcaled the walls; but found no man to make reſiſtance. The next day the whole Army entred, where they found in every houſe, and every corner of the ſtreets, whole heaps of dead bodies, none to give them burial; A lamentable and ruthful ſpectacle! 3. *Heros*, or *Civitas Heroum*, in the *Ara-*

bian Iſthmus, at the very bottom of the *Golf*; remarkable for the firſt interview betwixt *Jacob* and *Joſeph*, after his coming into *Egypt*. 4. *Heliopolis*, or the *City of the Sun*, now called *Betſames*, in the Scriptures *On*, of which *Potiphar* the Father of *Aſenath* (whom *Pharaoh* married unto *Joſeph*) was Prieſt, or Prince, as is ſaid *Gen*.41.45. Given (as *Joſephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the ſons of *Jacob*; by conſequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Rameſes*, or *Goſhen*: and memorable in times ſucceeding for a publick Temple built for the *Jews*, with the conſent of *Ptolomy* ſirnamed *Philadelphus*, by *Onias* the High-Prieſt, then diſpoſſeſſed of his Authority and Office by the power of *Antiochus*: a Temple much eſteemed by the *Helliniſts*, or *Grecizing Jews*; and though *Schiſmatical* at the beſt in its firſt original, yet not *Schiſmatical* and *Idolatrous* too, as was that of Mount *Garizim*. 5. *Bubuſtis*, ſomewhat more North then *Heliopolis*, by ſome of the ancients called *Avaris*, by the Scriptures *Pibeſeth*, another City of that tract; now better known by the name of *Zioth*: ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the *Notitia* calleth *Caſtra Judæorum*; memorable in times of *Paganiſme*, for a famous Temple of *Diana*. 6. *Arſinoe*, on the ſhore of the *Red-ſea*, ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe*, ſiſter of *Philadelphus*, and wife to *Lyſimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards called *Cleopatris*, in honour of Queen *Cleopatra*; now better known by the name of *Sues*? Of great commerce and trading in the time of the *Ptolomies*; Now almoſt abandoned; and would be utterly deſerted, were it not made the ſtation of the *Turkiſh* Gallies, that command the *Gulf*: which being framed at *Cair* of ſuch Timber as is brought thither by ſea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and ſometimes from the ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea; are again taken in peeces, carried from *Carie* unto this City on backs of Camels, and here joyned together. Conceived to be the ſame which in former times was called *Baal Zephon* (of which ſee *Exod*.14.9.) the laſt incamping-place of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, who from hence paſſed through the *Red-ſea*, as upon dry land. 7. *Gleba Rubra*, by the *Greeks* called *Hiera Bolus*, and ſometimes *Erythra Bolus* alſo, more near the *Latine*; the redneſs of the ſoil giving name unto it: ſituate on the River or Trench of *Tralan*: more memorable for a misfortune that beſel it than for any thing elſe; purpoſely burnt by *Amenophis* the fift, upon this occaſion: Being blind, he was aſſured by ſome of his *Wizards*, that if he waſhed his eyes with the Urine of a Woman, which had never known any but her own husband, he ſhould be reſtored unto his ſight. After a long ſearch and many vain trials, he met with one whoſe water cured him; whom he took to wife: and cauſing all the reſt whom he had made trial of, to be brought together to this Town, he ſet fire on the City, and burnt both it and all the women there aſſembled; which tale, if true, is little to the credit of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of moſt note and obſervation in the Province of *Egypt*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called, are 1. *Alexandria* ſituate Weſtward of the *Delta*, over againſt the Iſle of *Pharos*; and built upon a Promontory thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; with which on the one ſide, and the Lake *Mareotis* on the other, it is exceeding well defended: the Work of *Alexander* the *Great*, and by him peopled with *Greeks*, immediately after his conqueſt of *Egypt*. The Regal Seat of the *Ptolomies*, whilſt *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom: and afterwards the *Metropolis* of it, when a *Roman* Dioceſe. Adorned with many ſtately buildings; of which moſt memorable the *Serapium*, (or Temple of their God *Separis*) for ſumptuous workmanſhip, and the magnificence of the Fabrick; inferiour to none but the *Roman* Capitol: and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had ſtored it with 700000 Volums; unfortunately burnt in the War againſt *Julius Cæſar*? A City of great trading, and infinite Riches; μέγισον ἐμπόριον τῆς οἰκουμένης, the greateſt *Empory* of the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens ſo abounded in all licentiouſneſs both of life, and ſpeech, that they ſpared not the Emperour himſelf, if he came in their way. But they paid dearly for their folly. For *Caracalla* not ſo patient of a Contumely as ſome wiſer Princes, having felt the laſhes of their tongues, when he was amongſt them; aſſembled all the youth of the City, as if out of them he would have choſen ſome to attend his Perſon: and ſuddenly gave command to his Souldiers, to put them all to the ſword. A ſlaughter ſo great and univerſal, that the River *Nilus* coloured with the blood of the ſlain, might not improperly at that time be called a *Red-ſea*. In this City, *Anno* 180 *Gantenus* read both *Divinity* and *Philoſophy* to all ſuch as would come to hear him: which as it is conceived to give the firſt hint to the inſtituting of *Univerſities*, in the reſt of *Chriſtendom*; ſo from that ſmall beginning the *Schools* of *Alexandria* grew ſo great and eminent, that *Nazianzen* calleth them Παντοίας παιδεύσεως ἐργαστήριον, the ſhop, or work-houſe, as it were, of all kinds of Learning. Much ſhort of what it was even in point of *trading*, eſpecially ſince the diverſion of the Trading from the Bay of *Arabia*; and utterly diveſted of thoſe beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the preſent by a mixture of Nations, *Moors*, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Chriſtian Cophtives*; more for ſome little gain which they reap by Traffick, than any pleaſure in the place: Now called *Scanderia* by the *Turks*, remarkable onely for the houſe of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the moſt part in *Caire*) and a Church in which S. *Mark* their firſt Biſhop was ſaid to be buried. 2. *Canopus*, ſituate Eaſt of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*: ſo called from *Canopus* the Pilot of *Menelaus*, who having ſuffered ſhipwrack upon this coaſt, was there interred by his Maſter? A Town ſo branded in old times, for varieties of all kind of beaſtlineſs, and luxury; that as *Seneca* very well obſerved, he that avoided the viciouſneſs and debauchery of it, could not ſcape the infamy: the very place adminiſtring matter for ſuſpition. 3. *Roſetta*, on the ſame branch of the River, and not far from *Canopus*, out of whoſe ruines it aroſe; built by a *Slave* of one of the *Egyptian Caliphs*; unwalled and deſtitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all ſorts of commodities, and well frequented by the Merchant. 4. *Nicopolis*, now called *Munia*, the Monument of ſome eminent Victory, and probably of the conqueſt of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town ſtanding within 30 Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5. *Aphrodites* and *Aphroditopolis*, ſo called from *Venus* who was here worſhipped: ſituate betwixt the two middle branches of the

Nile. 6. *Sais*, betwixt the ſame branches of the River alſo; whence that *Nomus* or Diviſion had the name of *Saites*. It is now called *Sibnit*, or *Signiti*. 7. *Plinthine*, on the Sea-ſide; and 8. *Hierax*, more within the land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Maraotica*.

In *Arcadia*, called alſo *Heptanomus*, becauſe it contained ſeven of the *Nomi* or Diviſions, into which *Egypt* was diſtributed by the *Macedonians*, the Places of moſt note were and are 1. *Memphis*, on the Weſtern bank of *Nile*, not far from the ſharp point of the *Delta*, where the River firſt beginneth to divide it ſelf; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*: by one of which who removed the Seat Royal from *Thebo* hither, it is ſaid to be built; and called thus by the name of his daughter. In compaſs, when it flouriſhed, about 20 miles: Great, populous, and adorned with a world of Antiquities; amongſt others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, and *Serapis*, beſet with *Sphynxes*: now nothing left of the Ruines of it, but the Statues of ſome monſtrous Reſemblances, ſufficient to ſhew that it hath been formerly. The *Pyramides* before deſcribed, ſtood not far from hence; to which the Poet relateth, ſaying,

> *Barbara Pyramidum ſileat miracula Memphis.*
>
> *Let barbarous* Memphis *brag no more*
> *Of her* Pyramides, *as before.*

2. *Babylon*, called for diſtinctions ſake, *Babylon Ægyptiorum*, built on the other ſide of the River, and ſomewhat more unto the North: ſaid to be founded by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian* Monarch, the firſt that made this Kingdom ſtoop to the yoke of a forreiner; and by him peopled with ſome *Babylonians* or *Chaldæans*, tranſplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruines; amongſt which, many of the *Chriſtian* Temples and Monaſteries do lie there in rubbiſh; the Caſtle whereof ſerved long after for the Garriſon of the three Legions, appointed to defend this Countrey in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by ſome to be the *Babylon* mentioned by S. *Peter*, in his 1 Epiſtle *cap. ult.* which the following words, *and Mark my ſon*, (S. *Mark* being the firſt Biſhop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apoſtle of *Egypt*) may make ſomewhat probable, but the truth and reality hereof, I diſpute not now. Out of the ruines of this City aroſe, 3. *Caire*, now, and for many Ages paſt, the chief of this Countrey: raiſed from the aſhes of old *Babylon* by the *Chaliphs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamalucks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compaſs not above eight miles, but full of Streets, the number of which ſaid to be 18000 every one of them fortified with a Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every ſeveral ſtreet an impregnable fortreſs. Found ſo by *Selymus* the firſt, when he conquered *Egypt*, who ſpent three days in forcing his way through it, with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean; the publique, ſpecially the *Moſques*, beyond thought magnificent. Viſited every ſeventh year with a dreadful Peſtilence; yet ſtill ſo populous, that it is conceived to be in good health, if there die not above a thouſand in a day, or 300000 within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards, both within the City, and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleaſant Lake; but made more pleaſant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual ſolace and delights. Fortified at the South end with a ſtately Caſtle (the Palace of the *Mamaluck Sultans*) ſituate on the top of a Mountain; overlooking the City, and a great part of the Countrey alſo. So large, that it ſeemeth a City of it ſelf, immured with high walls, divided into many partitions or ſeveral Courts, in times paſt the places of exerciſe; and entred by doors of iron. Deſtroyed for the moſt part, by *Selimus*, for fear of giving opportunity to ſome rebellion; or envying the *Mamalucks* the glory of having been the Maſters of ſo brave a Manſion: that which is left, now ſerving for the habitation of the *Turkiſh Baſſa*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4. *Matared*, or *Matarea*, not far from *Caire*; the ſoil whereof is ſaid to be ſo rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with ſand or gravel, ſo moderating the extreme rankneſs of it. 5. *Arſinoe*, on the Weſt ſide of the *Nile*, and ſomewhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before deſcribed; called alſo (to difference it from another of the ſame name on the ſhore of the *Red-ſea*) the *City of Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monſter. 6. *Nilopolis*, or *Nili Civitas*, in the Iſland called *Heracleotis*, made by the imbracements of the River: moſt memorable for being the Epiſcopal See of *Cheramon*, a right godly Prelate; of whom ſee *Euſebius* in the 6 Book and 34 Chap. of his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory. 7. *Troia*, on the Eaſtern ſtream which makes that Iſland, not much obſervable but for giving name to the *Montes Troici* lying neer unto it; out of which were digged the ſtones which made the *Pyramides*. 8. *Cynopolis*, in a little Iſland up the water. 9. *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercurie*; called alſo *Hermopolis magna*, to difference it from another of that name not far from *Alexandria*, to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10. *Antonius*, now *Antius*, founded by *Adrian* the Emperour, in honour of *Antinous* his eſpecial favourite; the moſt Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11. *Dionyſias*, or the City of *Bacchus*, ſituate on the Southern end of the Lake of *Moeris*, in the *Nomus* or Diviſion called *Oaſis parva*. 12. *Clyſma*, upon the ſhores of the *Golf*, a *Roman* Garriſon.

Cities of moſt note in the Province of *Thebais*, 1. *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antoninus*, one of the greateſt of this part. 2. *Ptolomais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolomies*, and the goodlieſt City of this Province, ſucceeding unto *Thebe* both in power and greatneſs. 3. *Saiet*, a fair and large Town, ſix days journy from *Caire*, going up the water; but by what name called amongſt the Antients, I do no where find. Affirmed erroneouſly, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joſeph* and *Mary*, when they fled with CHRIST our Saviour from the fury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now ſomewhat ruinous, of the foundation of *Helena* the mother of *Conſtantine*. The City much reſorted to (on the ſtrength of this Tradition onely) by many aged *Chriſtian Cophties*, who deſire to die there. 4. *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the banks of the River. 5. *Tentyra*, in a little Iſle ſo called, made by the circlings of the *Nile*: The inhabitants whereof were the onely men who durſt encounter the *Crocodile*, A creature of a terrible name, but a cowardly nature; of which it is ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that it aſſaulteth thoſe which flie from it, and flieth from thoſe who do aſſault it: In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is ſaid by the Apoſtle *James*, 4. 7. that if he be *reſiſted, he will flie from us.* Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Eſt Leo, *ſi fugias*; *ſi ſtas, quaſi* Muſca *recedit.*

Give ground, a Lyon he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.

6. *Coptos* upon the head of a Trench or water-courſe, which falleth into the *Nilus*, on the South of *Tentyra*, but on the other ſide of the River; in old times a moſt noted *Emporie* for *Indian* and *Arabian* wares: from whence not onely the *Chriſtians* of this Countrey, are thought to have the name of *Cophties*; but the whole Countrey to be originally called *Ægyptus*, from *Ai-Coptus*, or the land of *Coptus*.

7. *Thebe*, the reſidence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Buſiris*, in compaſs 140 furlongs, or 17 miles and an half; called alſo *Hecatompylæ*, from the number of an hundred Gates which were ſaid to be in it. So beautified with Coloſſes, Temples, Palaces, the Sepulchres of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State; that it was thought μηδεμίαν τῶν ὑπὸ τὸν ἥλιον οὕτω κεκοσμῆσθαι, to be the *Noneſuch* of the world. Decayed on the removing of the Court to *Memphis*, it became a ruine ſo long ſince, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Juvenal*; as he telleth us, ſaying,

Atque vetus Thebe *centum jacet obruta portis.*

Old Thebe, *yielding to the Fates,*
Lies buried with its hundred Gates.

8. *Abydus*, now called *Abutick*, once the Seat-royal of *Memnon*, from thence called *Memnonium*, renowned for the Temple of *Oſiris*; more for the *Statue* of *Memnon*, which though made of ſtone, did at the riſing of the ſun yield a vocal ſound. 9. *Elephantis*, on the banks of *Nile*, neighboured by *Crophi* and *Mophi*, two ſharp Rocks, betwixt which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the *Leſſer Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we ſhall ſpeak more fully in *Æthiopia*. The City ſeated in an Iſland of the River *Nile*, on the borders of *Æthiopia ſub Ægypto*, (as the Antients called it) known unto *Ptolomy* by the name of *Elephantina*, but to our Eccleſiaſtical writers by the name of *Tabenna*. Memorable in times of Heatheniſm for the Town and Temple of *Onuchis*, wherein ſtood the *Nilometrium* or ſtanding pillar, by which they did obſerve the increaſe of the River; removed ſince to the Caſtle of *Michias*, two miles from *Caire*: in times of *Chriſtianity*, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tabeniſiotæ*. 10. *Syene*, (now *Aſna*) a little North of *Elephantis*, ſituate directly under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by ſome *Aſtronomers*; which when the Sun entred into that Sign, was wholly enlightned with his beams, without any ſhadow: ſo perpendicularly did the body of it ſtand over the pit. This the laſt City of *Egypt*, towards *Æthiopia*.

And now I ſhould proceed, according to my Method in other places, to the Story of *Egypt*: but being that *Libya*, and *Cyrene*, are now accompted Members of it; the fortunes whereof they have alſo followed in all or moſt of the mutations of State and Government; I ſhall firſt take a view of them as the limbs of this body, and ſhew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed.

2. *MARMARICA.*

2. L*IBYA* or *MARMARICA*, hath on the Eaſt, *Egypt*, properly ſo called; on the Weſt, *Cyrene*; on the North, that part of the *Mediterranean* Sea, which was hence called *Mare Libycum*, and ſometimes *Parthenium*; and on the South, ſome part of *Æthiopia Superior*.

It had the name of *Libya*, from the old *Greek* word λίβυς, ſignifying *black*, agreeable to the complexion of the people, which is black and ſwarthy; λίβυς, *antiqua lingua Græca niger*, ſaith a learned Writer: or poſſibly enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word ſignifying *thirſt*, as ſuitable unto the nature of the ſoil, which is dry and *ſandy*, in which reſpect called by the Greeks *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya ſicca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from theſe Coaſts towards *Greece*; and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybs*, and the Promontory in *Sicilie* oppoſite unto it, that of *Lilybæum*. It was alſo called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmarida*, a chief People of it, though placed by *Ptolomy* in *Cyrene*: and ſometimes *Barca*, from *Barce* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Mamarica*, by both names united.

The Countrey for the moſt part very dry and barren, and but meanly peopled; inſomuch as *Alexander* paſſing through part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the ſpace of four days ſaw neither Man, Beaſt, Bird, Tree, nor River. Covered over in moſt places with a thick light ſand, which the winds remove up and down continually, turning vallies into hills, and hills into vallies. Found by *Cam-*

byſes to his coſt, who as baſely eſteeming of the *Gods* as he did of his Subjects, ſent part of his Army into this Countrey to deſtroy the Temple above mentioned: but in the paſſage towards that prohibited place, fifty thouſand of them were overwhelmed and ſmothered in a ſtorm of Sand; the reſt with much ado eſcaping. Called therefore *Xero-Libya*, or *Libya Sicca*, as before was noted; and *Libya ſitiens*, thirſty *Libya*, (——*per calidas* Libyæ ſitientis *arenas*) in that Verſe of *Lucan*.

The people Neighbours unto *Egypt*; and conſequently much of the ſame condition. Said by *Herodotus* (by whom they are called *Adyrnachidæ*) to be governed by the like Laws and Cuſtoms, as the *Egyptians* were; but to differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark and black, of conſtitution lean and dry, and inclining to *Melancholy*; angry on every light occaſion, very litigious, and eager proſecutors of their dues. By an old obſervation among themſelves, they abſtained both from Beef and Hogs-meat. So obſtinate in denying their accuſtomed *Tributes*, that he who could not ſhew the marks of his ſufferings for it, either *black* or *blue*, was accounted no body: And ſo reſolved to conceal any thing diſgraceful to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a robbery, no torment could compel him to tell his name. At this time, little differing in perſon, temper, or condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Moors*, and *Arabes*, intermixt amongſt them.

Converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*, with, or not long after the reſt of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the *Patriarchate* of *Alexandria*; whoſe juriſdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*: to the calling of which famous Council, this Countrey occaſionally concurred, by bringing into the world that wretched *Arius*; who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils* had diſturbed the Church. His *Hereſie* condemned in that famous Council, but his Perſon, by the Divine Juſtice of God, reſerved to a more remarkable puniſhment. Being ſent for by the Emperour *Conſtantine* to make a *Recantation* of his former *Hereſies*, he firſt writ out a Copy of his own Opinions, which he hid in his boſom; and then writing out the *Recantation* expected from him, took Oath that he did really mean as he had written: which words the Emperor referred to the *Recantation*, he to the Paper in his boſom. But God would not be ſo cozened, though the Emperor was. For as he paſſed in triumph through the ſtreets of *Conſtantinople*, he drew aſide into a private houſe of eaſe, where he voided his guts into the draught; and ſent his ſoul as a *Harbinger* to the Devil, to make room for his body.

Not more infamous for the birth of this *Miſcreant*, who denied the *Divinity* of *Chriſt*, then famous for the birth of one of the *Sibyls*, hence ſirnamed *Libyca*, by whom the ſame had been fore-ſhewn. Which *Sibyls* ſeem to have taken denomination from σιο βόλαι, i. e *Jovis conſiliorum conſcia*. They were in number ten, viz. 1. *Perſica*, 2. *Libyca*, 3, *Delphica*, 4. *Cumæa*, 5. *Samia*, 6. *Helleſpontiaca*, 7. *Tiburtina*, 8. *Albunea*, 9. *Erythræa*, and 10. *Cumana*; which laſt is affirmed to have written the nine Books of the *Sibyls*. They were all preſented by an old Woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay ſo great a ſum of money as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the Old Woman burnt three of them, requiring as much money for the other ſix, as for all: which being denied, ſhe alſo burnt the other three, asking as much for the three remaining, as for the reſt; which *Superbus*, amazed, gave, and the old Trot vaniſhed. Theſe Books contained manifeſt Tokens of the Kingdom of *Chriſt*, his Name, his Birth and Death. They were burned by the Arch-Traytor *Stilico*. So that thoſe Prophecies of theirs, which are now extant, are for the moſt part only ſuch as have been extracted out of other writings, where their authority hath been quoted. Concerning which, though *Cauſabon* and ſome other of our great *Philologers*, conceive them to be *pia fraudes*; compoſed of purpoſe by the Fathers of the *Primitive* times, to win credit to the Faith of CHRIST: yet dare I not ſo far diſparage thoſe moſt godly men, as to believe they would ſupport ſo ſtrong an *Edifice* with ſo weak a prop; or borrow help from falſhood to evict a Truth. Or if they durſt have been ſo impudently venturous, how eaſie had it been for their learned Adverſaries, *Porphyrie*, *Julian*, and the reſt of more eminent note, to have detected the *Impoſture*; and ſilenced the Chriſtian *Advocates* with reproach and ſcorn? But of this enough here, more at large elſewhere.

Rivers of note I find not any. 'Tis well if in a Country ſo full of *Sands*, there be any at all: ſome *Lakes* I meet with in my Authors, the principal of which, 1. *Laccus*, 2. *Lacus* L*acomedis*, now L*inxamo*, 3. *Cleartus*; ſufficient to preſerve their few Cattel from the taint of thirſt. The Mountains of moſt note, thoſe called *Anogombri*, 2. and that named *Azar*; this laſt extended Weſt and Eaſt in a ſtraight Line, from the 51 degree of L*ongitude*, to the 53. 3. *Aliphus*, 4. *Ogdomus*, 5. *Tmodes*, 6. *Alpis*, not much obſervable, but that they ſerve for L*and-marks* to diſcover the Countrey.

Towns of note, there are none now in it. Of moſt eſteem in former times, 1. *Batrachus*, by ſome called *Menelaus*, an Haven-Town, 2. *Phthia*, and 3. *Aneſiſphyra*, two Port-towns alſo. 4. *Tetrapyrgia*, ſo called from its four Towers, the *Antipyrgus* of *Ptolomy*, 5. *Meſuchis*, more within the Land. 6. *Mazacila*, another mid-land Town. 7. *Chæreola*, mentioned among the chief Cities of this tract, by *Ammianus*. 8. *Paratonium*, now *Porto-raſſa*, which with *Peluſium* are by *Florus* called the two *Hornes* of *Egypt*; which whoſoever held faſt, would be ſure to maſter it. By ſome Old Writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus* and *Strabo*; from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, ſeated very near it. So anciently honoured with an *Oracle* (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is ſaid to have come hither to enquire of her death; *Perſeus*, and *Hercules*, touching their adventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great: but the *Oracle* by that time had learned to flatter, and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the ſon of that God whom he came to worſhip. The Temple ſeated in the midſt of a vaſt ſandy *Deſart*, environed with a pleaſant and delightful *Grove*, about ſix miles, or more in circuit; watered with wholſom Springs, refreſhed with a temperate air, and ſhaded with fruitbearing Trees, which carried in their leaves a perpetual Spring. Fortified with a triple wall, within the firſt whereof was a *Royal Palace* of the Kings, within the ſecond a *Seraglio* for his women;

men, in the third Lodgings for the Officers of Court; the *Oracle* fitly placed (ſo the *Prieſts* would have it) near the *Seraglio* of the Ladies; Before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the *Oblations* were firſt waſhed, then offered. A place of great repute in *ſacred* and *civil* eſtimate; all the adjoyning Countrey taking hence the name of *Ammoniaca*, and by that name reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*. 9. *Antiphra*, on the Eaſt border of it, towards *Alexandria*. 10. *Barce*, called afterwards *Ptolomais*, by the name of one of the *Ptolomies*, by whom repaired and beautified. Of ſuch account, that from hence the whole Countrey had the name of *Barca*, and the Inhabitants of *Barcæi*, (——*Lateq; furentes Barcæi*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Libyarchæ* and *Baſſachitæ*, in the North; the *Ogdoni*, *Buzes*, and *Adyrmachidæ*, in the South; the *Goniatæ* and *Proſadita*, in the mid-land parts; the *Lybiægyptii*, bordering neareſt unto *Egypt*, with the people whereof ſo intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one name and Nation. Others there were of leſs, or as little note, but all deſcended properly of *Naphtuhim*, the Son of *Miſraim*; from whom the name of *Neptune*, originally a *Libyan* Deity, ſeems to be derived: yet ſo, that *Lehabin*, his Brother muſt come in for a ſhare; the Founder, as it is conceived, of the *Libyægyptii* before mentioned. Being then of the ſame Original with thoſe of *Egypt*, they followed the ſame fortunes alſo, till the times of the *Ptolomies*; by whom ſomtimes given for portion, with the title of a Kingdom, to their younger Children. By the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Apion*, the laſt King hereof, a Baſtard-ſon of *Ptolomy* ſirnamed *Euergetes*, the ſeventh King of that houſe; bequeathed unto the Senate and People of *Rome*. By whom firſt ſuffered to live under them, as a *Free-Eſtate*, till the Conqueſt of *Egypt*; then reckoned as a part of that, and ſo accordingly deſcribed by *Ptolomy*: where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammoniaca*, occur amongſt the *Nomi*, or *Diviſions* of it. Afterwards made a diſtinct Province of that *Dioceſe*, and governed by a *Lord Preſident*, under the *Præfectus Auguſtalis*, or Supream Commander for the Emperours.

3. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Marmarica*; on the Weſt, with *Africa propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and ſome part of the *Mediterranean*, and the greater *Syrtis*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya inferior*, or the *Deſarts* of *Libya*.

It took this name from *Cyrene* the chief City of it, from whence ſomtimes alſo called *Cyrenaica*; by *Pliny* and ſome other *Roman* Writers it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, *viz.* 1. *Cyrene*, 2. *Ptolomais*, 3. *Arſinoe*, 4. *Darnis*, 5. *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the ſame reaſon *Libya Pentapolis*, the name of *Libya* extending over many of theſe *Roman* Provinces. And finally, at the preſent, it paſſeth with that laſt deſcribed by the name of *Barca*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the greater *Syrtis*, unto *Egypt*, is no leſs then 1300 miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Countrey in the South parts deſolate and barren, ſtored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the people living up and down in ſcattered houſes, and at ſuch a diſtance, as if it were in ſo many Iſlands. Deſtitute not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping: if any fell, it was dried up preſently by the Sands. But within fifteen miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful, and well inhabited.

The people in old times were ſaid to have been utterly ignorant of buying and ſelling, of fraud and ſtealing, not knowing, or not caring for the uſe of money; content with little, not ſuperfluous in their Cloaths, or Buildings, their Houſes for the moſt part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Oſier-twigs. Much altered in the firſt part of their *character*, ſince the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thieviſh Nation, given wholly to robbery and ſpoil. So lazy, that they will not manure, or till their Land, but provide themſelves of Corn from *Sicily*; laying their Children to *pawn* for it, till by their Thieving they can raiſe a ſufficient ſum to diſcharge the debt.

One only River I find in it, but of fame enough to ſerve for many; By *Ptolomy* called *Lathon*, by *Pliny*, *Lethon*, by the Poets, *Lethe*. Swallowed by the earth not far from its firſt original, it riſeth up again about *Berenice*; fained therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create *forgetfulneſs* in all them that drink of it; it being the condition of the dead to remember nothing. Thence the occaſion of the fancy. Some *Lakes* I find alſo in it, whereof one occaſioned by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the Land (where indeed more neceſſary) near *Paliurus*. With Mountains better ſtored, (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, 1. Thoſe called *Herculis Arenæ*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Countrey Eaſt and Weſt. 2. *Bucolicus*, on the South of thoſe; and 3. *Velpos*, a long ridge of hils, bordering upon *Africa propria*.

Cities of moſt note in it, 1. *Apollonia*, in the Eaſt parts, near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the Confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*. 2. *Cyrene*, in the Weſt of that; once of ſuch power, that it contended with *Carthage* for ſome prebeminencies: Then the chief Lady of this Tract, which it gave this name to. The Birth-place of *Eratoſthenes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jews* compelled to carry our *Saviours* Croſs. 3. *Ptolomais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arſinoe*, built or repaired by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*: the Epiſcopal City of *Sineſius*, a Learned and Religious Biſhop of the primitive times, as appears by his Epiſtles extant. 4. *Arſinoe*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the River *Lathon*; ſo called in honour of *Arſinoe*, the Siſter of *Philadelphus*, and Wife of *Magas* once King of this Countrey. 5. *Berenice*, on the Weſtern bank of the ſaid River; ſo called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the ſame name) the daughter of *Magas*: the furtheſt Town of all this Countrey, bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the *greater Syrtis*. This laſt a Quick-ſand very dangerous to *Mariners*, in compaſs 635 miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6. *Paliurus*, more within the Land, but on the borders of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7. *Aptungis*, now *Lungifari*, by *Ptolomy* called *Aptuchi Fanum*. 8. *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules*, near the *greater Syrtis*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing the Orchards of the *Heſperides*, of their golden Apples. Thoſe *Eſperides* ſaid to be *Aegle*, *Arethuſa*, *and Heſperethuſa*, the three Daughters of *Atlas*; their Orchard placed by *Ptolomy* betwixt this Tower and *Paliurus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantick* Iſlands; by *Virgil*, in *Mauritania Tingitania*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and poſſibly in all alike. 9. *Zemythus*. 10. *Acabis*, in the midlands; all worn out of memory. 11. *Feſſan*, of greateſt name now, though ſcarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, were the *Asbeta*, on the Eaſt, the *Barcita* near the *Greater Syrtis*, the *Macatuta* and *Laganici*, near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably deſcended from *Naphtuhim* the Son of *Mizraim*; of whom there ſtill remain ſome footſteps in *Aptuchi Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Aptuchus*. This *Aptuchus* by ſome miſtakingly called *Autuchus*, and by the *Grecians* ſaid to be the ſon of *Cyrene*, and the Brother of *Ariſtaus*: who being ſent out to ſeek their fortunes, *Ariſtaus* fell into the Iſle named *Caos*; and *Aptuchus* or *Autuchus* into *Libya*, both by them firſt planted. *Neptune*, the Deity of this Countrey, by the *Egyptians* called *Neptitim*; ſeems to come from *Naphtuhim*; moſt highly worſhipped by this people, becauſe he firſt taught them τὴν τῶν ἁρμάτων καταζεῦξιν, the Art of training horſes to the Coach or Chariot; in which the *Cyreneans* after grew ſo expert, that they could drive their *Chariots* in a Round or Circle, and alwaies keep their Chariot-wheels in the ſelf ſame tract. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan* landing in this Countrey, had built the City of *Cyrene*; and found it in ſo good a courſe of Life and Diſcipline, that in ſhort time it came to have dominion over the moſt part of this Countrey, and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warred on by *Apryes* King of *Egypt*, they ſued unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their aſſiſtance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themſelves, they craved aid of *Ptolomy* the firſt of that race; by whom they were finally ſubdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a ſon of his laſt Wife by a former Husband whom he had married to *Arſinoe* one of his Daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the Marriage of *Berenice* the Daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the Son of *Ptolomy Philadelphus*. Alien'd from which Crown again, for the preferment of ſome of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of he *Ptolomies*, the laſt King hereof, to the people of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by whom united in one Government with the Iſle of *Crete*: but made a Province of it ſelf by the following Emperours: never ſince ſeparated from the fortune and affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we haſten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the queſtion in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythian*, being not eaſily decided. Whether it were ſo ancient, as the *Egyptians* ſay, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, that they had the memory and ſtory of 13000 years; and a Succeſſion of 330 Kings in the time of *Amaſis* the ſecond, who was Contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if underſtood of *Solary* years, meaſured by the courſe of the Sun, muſt not be allowed of; becauſe it maketh them many thouſand years older than the Creation: but if of *Lunary*, which is moſt agreeable unto the accompt of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their years by moneths: it will amount unto no more than to 1000, or 1100 years, and ſo fall anſwerably to the times following after the Floud. But for their Kings, 330 in their Reckonings, and thoſe of 24 or 25 ſeveral *Dynaſties*; the matter is not ſo ſoon made up. For either thoſe Kings, muſt not be all Kings, or Supreme Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their ſeveral *Regents*, or *Vicegerents*, armed with Regall power; thoſe *Dynaſties* not the Succeſſions of ſo many Regal Families, but of their *Subſtitutes* and Lieutenants, many of which might live ſucceſſively under one *Supream*: or elſe we muſt needs look on *Egypt*, as diſtracted in thoſe times, into ſeveral Kingdoms, amongſt the Princes of thoſe *Dynaſties* before remembred; or finally, we muſt look for ſome of thoſe Kings and Princes before the Floud. By either of theſe waies, the buſineſs may be well agreed. For if that moſt of them were but the names of ſeveral *Regents* (as probable enough it is) there might be many ſuch in the Reign of one King; according to the Kings Fancy, the merits of particular perſons, or the neceſſities of State: Changes of great Officers, eſpecially if grown too great, are not new nor ſtrange. If they were all Kings, or Supream Rulers (as is alſo probable) we find not any thing of moment to perſwade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their ſeveral parts (as in other Countries in thoſe times) till the greater had devoured the leſs. Or if they were the names of ſuch Soveraign Princes, as had the ſole command of *Egypt* before the Floud, (as ſome think they were) they might amount in all to ſo great a number, and ſo many *Dynaſties*; the iniquity of thoſe times, the ambition of great perſons, and conſequently the ſhort lives of the Kings being duly pondered. That *Egypt* and moſt part of the world was peopled before the Floud, hath been already proved in our *General Preface*: If peopled, then no queſtion under ſome form of Government: the names of which Governours (call them Kings, or Rulers, or what elſe we pleaſe) might be preſerved in *Egypt* on pillars of braſs or ſtone; or otherwiſe tranſmitted by Tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Mizraim*, by whom this countrey was firſt planted after the *Confuſion* of *Babel*. But that old ſtock of Kings and people being deſtroyed in the General Deluge, the children of *Mizraim* ſucceeded next in their deſolate dwellings: yet ſo, that the poſterity of *Chus* and *Lehabim*, two others of the Sons of *Cham*, had their ſhares therein. From the firſt of which deſcended the Inhabitants of thoſe parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: in which reſpect, not only one of the *Nomi*, or diviſions bordering on the *Iſthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*: but the people dwelling on thoſe ſhores; were called *Arabes*; divided into the *Arabes Azarei*, and *Arabes Adei*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Liby-Ægyptii*, or *Libyans* and *Egyptians* intermixt together: inhabiting in *Maraeotica* and the Weſtern parts. But though theſe people were derived from ſeveral Anceſtors, they made one Nation in the total: Subject to *Mizraim* as their Chief, and after his deceaſe, unto his Succeſſors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may obſerve, that in *Cham*, our greateſt Antiquaries find the name of *Jupiter Hammon*; *Mizraim* they gueſs to be *Oſiris* the great God of *Egypt*. To him ſucceeded *Typhon*, not by right of Bloud, but by Uſurpation. Who diſpoſſeſſed by *Lehabim*, the brother of *Mizraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Ægyptius*) the Kingdom was reſtored to *Orus*, the Son of *Oſiris*. During the time of theſe few Princes, happened all thoſe things which are recorded in the Scriptures, concerning *Egypt*; from the firſt going down of *Abraham*, in the time of *Oſiris*, to the advancement of *Joſeph*, in the Reign of *Orus*: in which there paſſed the 15, 16, and 17 *Dynaſties* of Regal Vice-Roys ; Lieutenants only, as I take it, to thoſe mighty Princes. The Kings themſelves called generally by the name of *Pharaoh*, though they had all their proper and peculiar Names: as afterwards their Succeſſors here had the name of *Ptolomy*, and the *Roman* Emperors, that of *Cæſar*. Not troubling our ſelves therefore with their many *Dynaſties*, we will lay down the Succeſſion of their Kings, as well as we can; the diſagreement of Hiſtorians and Chronologers, touching this Succeſſion, being irreconcileable.

The PHARAOHS, or Kings of EGYPT, of EGYPTIAN Race.

A. M.	
	1 *Mizraim*, the ſon of *Cham*, by the *Grecians* called *Oſiris*; in whoſe time *Abraham* went into *Egypt*.
	2. *Typhon*, an Uſurper.
	3 *Orus*, the ſon of *Oſiris*, reſtored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lehabim*; the Advancer of *Joſeph*.
2207.	4. *Amaſis*, *Themoſis*, or *Amos*, in whoſe time *Jacob* went down into *Egypt*, 25.
2233.	5 *Chebron*, 12.
2245.	6 *Amenophis*, or *Amenophthis*. 21.
2266.	7 *Amarſis*, the ſiſter of *Amenophthis*, 22.
2288.	8 *Mephres*.
2300.	9 *Meſpharmutheſis*. 25.
2325.	10 *Thamoſis*, or *Thuthmoſis*, 10.
2335.	11 *Amenophthis* II. ſuppoſed to be *Memnon*, and the *Vocal Statue*, 31.
2366.	12 *Orus* II. the *Buſiris* of the *Grecians*, a bloudy Tyrant; who commanded the male-children of *Iſrael* to be ſlain, 37.
2403.	13 *Acencheres*, by ſome called *Thermutis*, the daughter of *Amenophthis* the ſecond, and afterwards the wife of *Orus*; who preſerved *Moſes*, and ſurvived her Husband, 13.
2416.	14 *Rathoſis* the ſon of *Orus*, 6.
2422.	15 *Acencherus*, 12.
2449.	16 *Cenchres*, by ſome called *Arenaſis*, *Boccheris*, by others; drowned in the *Red-Sea* with his horſe and Chariots, 16.
2453.	17 *Acherres*, 8.
2462.	18 *Cherres*, 10.
2472.	19 *Armais*, by the *Grecians* called *Danaus*, whoſe 50 daughters being married to the 50 ſons of his brother *Egyptus*, murdered their husbands: for which cauſe *Danaus* being forced out of *Egypt*, paſſed into *Greece*; where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the *Grecians*, the name of *Danai*.
2575.	20 *Rameſes*, ſirnamed *Egyptus*, the brother of *Danaus*.
2550.	21 *Amenophthis* III.
2590.	22 *Sethos*, or *Seſothis*, 55.
2645.	23 *Raphſaces*, or *Ranſes*, 66.
2711.	24 *Amenophthis* IV, 40.
2751.	25 *Rameſes* II, 26.
2777.	26 *Thuoris* 7. After whoſe death ſucceeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Dioſpolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the ſpace of 177 years. Their names we find not, but that one of the lateſt of them whoſe daughter *Solomon* married, was called *Vaphra*; and perhaps *Ogdoos*, who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.
2961.	39 *Smendes*, the *Siſac* of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Rehoboam* the ſon of *Solomon*; conceived to be the *Seſoſtris* of *Herodotus* and others of the ancient writers. Of whom it is reported, that being a King of great wealth and puiſſance, he had brought under ſubjection all his neigbouring Princes: Whom he compelled in turns to draw his *Chariot*. It happned that one of theſe unfortunate Princes caſt his eye many times on the Coach wheels: and being by *Seſoſtris* demanded the cauſe of his ſo doing, he replied: that the falling of that ſpoke loweſt, which but juſt before was in the height of the wheel, put him in mind of the inſtability of fortune. The king deeply weighing the Parable, would never after be ſo drawn in his *Chariot*. He alſo was the firſt

that

A. M.

that encountred the *Scythians* in battel; having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army againſt them. The *Scythians* much marvelled that a King of ſo great Revenues would wage War againſt a Nation ſo poor: with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unprofitable; but to be vanquiſhed a perpetual infamy and diſgrace. For their parts they reſolved to meet him; as an Enemy, whoſe overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to joyn, the *Egyptians* were diſcomfited, and purſued even to their own doors by the Enemy. But the *Scythians* could not enter the Countrey, becauſe of the Fens, with whoſe paſſage they were unacquainted, and ſo they returned.

2987. 40 *Pſeuſenes*, conceived to be the *Cheops* of *Herodotus*; founder of the vaſt *Pyramis* before deſcribed, 41.

3028. 41 *Nepher-Cherres*, 4.

3032. 42 *Amnoiphtis*, V.

3041. 43 *Opſochon*, the *Aſychis* of *Herodotus*.

3047. 44 *Pſammuchos*, 9.

3056. 45 *Pluſennes*, II. 14.

3070. 46 *Seſonchis*, 21.

3091. 47 *Uſorthon*, 15.

3106. 48 *Takellotis*, 13.

3119. 49 *Patubaſtis*, 40.

3159. 50 *Oſorchon*, the ſecond *Hercules Ægyptius*, as ſome will have it, 8.

3167. 51 *Pſammis*, 15.

3185. 52 *Bochoris*, called *ſo*, 2 *King*. 17. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacon* the King of *Ethiopia*, 44.

3229. 53 *Sabacon* King of *Ethiopia*, 8.

3238. 54 *Sevucus* ſon of *Sabacon*, 14.

3252. 55 *Tarachon*, falſly ſuppoſed to be the *Zerah* of the Scriptures, 18.

3270. 56 *Stephinates*, 7.

3277. 57 *Niclupſes*, 6.

3288. 58 *Pſamniticus*, who firſt made the *Grecians* acquainted with *Egypt*. 54

3335. 59 *Necho*, who ſlew *Joſiah* at the battel of *Megiddo*, 25.

3360. 60 *Pſamnis* II. 6.

3366. 61 *Aprios*, called *Hophra*, Jer. 44. ſubdued by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and depoſed by *Amaſis*, 25.

3391. 62 *Amaſis* II. 44.

3435. 63 *Pſamnites*, or *Pſamniticus* II. a King of ſix moneths onely; vanquiſhed by *Cambyſes*, the ſecond Monarch of *Perſia*, who united *Egypt* to that Empire, under which it continued till the time of *Darius*, the ſixth King of the *Medes* and *Perſians*: in the 11. year of whoſe reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of it ſelf, as in former times.

3555. 64 *Amyrtæus*, the firſt King after the Revolt, 6.

A. M.

3561. 65 *Nepherites*, 6.

3567. 66 *Achoris*, 12.

3579. 67 *Pſamnites* III. 1.

3580. 68 *Nephrites* II. a King of two moneths onely.

69 *Nectanebos*, 18.

3598. 70 *Teos*, 2.

3600. 71 *Nectanebos* II. the laſt King of the natural Egyptian race, that ever governed *Egypt*, by the name of a King. For in the 18th. of the reign of this King, *Egypt* was again recovered by the valour of *Ochus* the eighth Emperour of Perſia. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, & without blows won this fertile Kingdom; which yielded him, during his life, the yearly value of 6000 talents. After his death, this Kingdom fell to the ſhare of *Ptolmeus* the ſon of *Lagus*, from whom all the ſubſequent Kings of *Egypt* were called *Ptolomies*.

A. M. The ſecond *Dynaſtie*, or the *Ptolomean* Kings of *Egypt*.

3641. 1 *Ptolomy*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, reputed the ſon of *Lagus*; but ſuppoſed to be the ſon of *Philip* of *Macedon*, and half brother to *Alexander*, 40.

3681. 2 *Ptol. Philadelphus* who filled the *Library of Alexandria* wth 700000 *Volumes*, and cauſed the 72 *Interpreters* to tranſlate the Bible.

3717. 3 *Ptol. Euergetes*, the ſon of *Philadelphus*, vanquiſhed *Seleucus Callinicus*, and probably had ſubdued that Kingdom, if not called back by domeſtick diſſentions, 26.

3743. 4. *Ptol. Philopater*, a cruel, voluptuous, and inceſtuous Prince; cruelly ſlew *Cleomenes* the laſt King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his father for relief, in the time of his exile. 17

3760. 5 *Ptol. Epiphanes*, at the age of five years ſucceeded his father; protected by the *Romans* againſt *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his Kingdom, 28.

3784. 6 *Ptol. Philometor*, the ſon of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* the daughter of the *great Antiochus*; protected in his nonage by the *Romans* alſo: cauſed himſelf to be Crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquiſhed it, 35.

3829. 7 *Ptol. Euergetes* II. for his deformity called *Phyſcon*, the brother of P*tol*.P*hilometor*: A wicked Prince, and one that ſpent the greateſt part of his reign in a cauſeleſs war againſt *Cleopatra*, his wife and ſiſter, 29.

3858. 8 P*tol*. *Lathurus* reigned 16 years with *Cleopatra* his mother, by whom diſpoſſeſſed of his eſtate for the

A. M.

the ſpace of ten years; after her death was ſole Lord of *Egypt*. His brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Aſſociate, in the time of his deprivation, and paſſing in the Accompt of the Kings of *Egypt*.

3892. 9 *Ptol. Auletes*, the ſon of *Lathurus*, ſirnamed alſo *Dionyſius*, whoſe brother being ſetled by him in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, was moſt unjuſtly ſtripped of it by the power of the *Romans*.: and he himſelf outed of *Egypt* by his own ſubjects, but reſtored by the aid and love of *Pompey*.

3922. 10 *Ptol. Dionyſius*, called alſo *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his wife and ſiſter, ſucceeded *Auletes* in the throne, wch they held together by the ſpace of three years. In the laſt of which, *Pompey* was barbarouſly ſlain on the ſhores of *Egypt*, by the command of *Achilles* the young Kings Governour; and the young King himſelf unfortunately ſlain in the *Alexandrian* tumult againſt *Julius Cæſar*.

3925. 11 *Cleopatra*, the wife and ſiſter of *Dionyſius*, reſtored to the Crown of *Egypt* by the bounty of *Cæſar*; of whom exceedingly beloved for her wit and beauty. After which ſhe governed *Egypt* 19 years in her own ſole right, with great pomp and ſplendor: when being imbarqued in the bed and fortunes of *Marc. Antony*, ſhe killed her ſelf not long after his fatal overthrow at the battel of *Actium*; that ſhe might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.

Theſe Ptolomean Princes of *Egypt*, were for the moſt part in wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns victorious, and vanquiſhed; neither Prince having cauſe to boaſt of his bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whoſe life and love with *Marcus Antonius* I will not now relate; this Countrey fell to the ſhare of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour hereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*; no *Senator* being permitted to come into it; it being a maxime of State, not to ſuffer men of great houſes to come into that Countrey, whoſe revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was *Egypt*. For beſides the natural ſituation of the place, very defenſible; and beſides the abundance of money, with which it was ſtored; this Country alone furniſhed the City of *Rome* with Corn, for four Moneths yearly. Whence *Veſpaſian* being choſen Emperour by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his concurrent *Vitellius*, haſtened hither; to this end onely, that detaining the ordinary proviſion of victuals, he might by famine compel the City of *Rome* to ſtand at his devotion: *Ut urbem quoque externa opis indigam fame urgeret*, as the Hiſtorian hath obſerved. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperours ſole *Peculiar*: afterwards made (as well it might) an entire *Dioceſe* of it ſelf, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*. In the diviſion of the Empire allotted to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, whoſe Government being thought to be inſupportable by this wanton people, they called in the *Saracens*: by whom the *Greek* Garriſons were caſt out, and the Countrey made ſubject to *Haumar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards, weary of them alſo, they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. So that from this time forwards we ſhall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time; the one reſiding at *Caire* in *Egypt*, to whom the *Saracens*, or *Moors* of *Spain* and *Africk* did ſubmit themſelves: the other at *Bagdat*, who Lorded it over all the reſt, at leaſt as to the ſupream title, and ſome chief Prerogatives; though the main power was *cantonned* and diſpoſed of among their Sultans.

The third Dynaſtie, or the CALIPHS of EGYPT.

A.Ch.	*A.H.*	
870.	247.	1 *Achmades*, or *Achmat*. 10.
880.	257.	2 *Tolen*. 3.
883.	260.	3 *Hamaria*. 29.
903.	280.	4 *Abarun*, ſlain by *Muſtaphi*, the Caliph of *Babylon*.
940.	317.	5 *Achid Muhamid*, the ſon of *Tangi*. 3.
943.	320.	6 *Abigud*, the ſon of *Achid*. 27.
970.	347.	7 *Meaz Ledin*, *Illahi*, of the race of Phatime and *Hali*. 5.
975.	352.	8 *Aziz*, the ſon of *Meaz*. 21.
996.	373.	9 *Elhachain*. 23.
1019.	396.	10 *Etaber Leazizdin Illahi*. 16.
1035.	412.	11 *Muſteratzer Billahi*. 60.
1096.	472.	12 *Muſteale*. 5.
1100.	477.	13 *Elamir Bahacan Illahi*. 35.
1135.	512.	14 *Elhapit Ladin Illahi*.
		15 *Etzahar*.
		16 *Elphaiz*.
		17 *Etzar Ledin Illahi*, the ſon of Elphaiz, the laſt *Caliph*, or King of Egypt, of the race of Phatime: the *Turks* ſuceeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning which we are to know, that Elphaiz the father of *Etzar*, being

being over-power'd by *Almericus* King of *Hieruſalem*, craved aid of *Norradine* the *Turkiſh* Sultan of *Damaſcus*; which he received under the conduct of *Sarracon*, or *Shirachoch*, a right valiant and ſtout Commander: who taking his advantages, not onely cleared the Countrey of *Almericus*, but got the whole kingdom to himſelf; daſhing out the brains of *Elphaiz* with his horſemans-mace. And though *Etzar*, his ſon aſſumed for a while the title of *Caliph*: yet the deſtruction of himſelf, and the whole *Phatimean* family, rooted out by *Sarracon*, ſoon put an end to that claim; and left the kingdom in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Turkiſh* Sultans.

The fourth DYNASTIE, or the Race of the TURKISH Kings or CALIPHS of EGYPT.

1163. 1 *Aſereddin*, ſirnamed *Shirachoch*, called *Sarracon* by the Chriſtian writers; the firſt of the *Turks* which reigned in *Egypt*: of the Noble family of *Aiub*.

1186. 2 *Zeli-heddin*, called *Saladine* by the Chriſtian writers, the ſon (or as ſome ſay, the nephew) of *Sarracon* or *Shirachoch*; confirmed in his eſtate by the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*, under whoſe juriſdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schiſmaticks. He obtained alſo the kingdom of *Damaſcus*, conquered *Meſopotamia*. and *Paleſtine*; & in the year 1190 regained the City of *Hieruſalem*. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to ſucceeding Ages, nor to glorifie him in the kingdom of Heaven; but the ſaving knowledge of *CHRIST JESUS*.

1199. 3 *Elaziz*, the ſecond ſon of *Saladine*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Egypt*; which he exchanged afterwards with his brother *Eladel* for the Kingdom of *Damaſcus*.

4 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphtzel*, by the Chriſtian writers called *Meledine*, ſucceeded upon this exchange, in the kingdom of *Egypt*: and overcame the *Chriſtians*, without the loſs of a man, at the ſiege of *Caire*, by letting looſe the Sluces of *Nilus*; which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleaſure.

1210. 5 *Elchamul*.

1237. 6 *Melech Eſſalach*, by the Chriſtian writers called *Melechſala*, the ſon of *Elchamul*, who overcame *Lewis* the ninth of *France*: and going with that King towards *Damiata*, was ſlain by the ſouldiers of his guard, called *Mamalucks*.

1242. 7 *Elmutan*, the ſon of *Melech Eſſalach*, ſucceeded, for a time, in his Fathers throne. But the *Mamalucks* being reſolved to obtaine the Kingdom for themſelves, inforced him to flie to a Tower of Wood, which they ſet on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran cloſe by it) was there drowned: & the *Mamalucks* ſetled in the kingdom, *An.* 1245.

These *Mamalucks* were the off-ſpring of a People on the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, vulgarly called the *Circaſſians*: who *Melechſala* either bought of their Parents, or (at the ſecond hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Maſters of thoſe Countries, to ſupply the want of valour in the idle and effeminate people of *Egypt*; and out of them ſelected a choice Band of men, for the guard of his perſon. Knowing their ſtrength, and finding their opportunity, they treacherouſly ſlew *Melechſala* their Lord and Maſter; appointing one *Azeddin Ibek*, a *Turco-man* by nation, and therefore by moſt Chriſtian writers called *Turquimeneius*, (one of their own number) a man of great ſpirit and valour, to ſucceed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supreme Authority into the hands of the *Egyptians*, and not permitting their own ſons to enjoy the name and priviledge of *Mamalucks*; they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circaſſian* ſlaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, by them to be inſtructed in the *Egyptian* language, and the Law of *Mahomet*. Being thus fitted for imployment, they were taught the Diſcipline of War, and by degrees advanced unto the higheſt Offices of Power and truſt; as now the *Janizaries* are in the *Turkiſh* Empire: in choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman Turks* were Precedented by thoſe of *Egypt*; ſo it is poſſible enough that the *Janizaries* may make as great a Change in the *Turkiſh* Empire, as the *Mamalucks* did in the *Egyptians*. So unſafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the ſole guard of his perſon, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of ſuch, whom not the ſenſe of natural duty, but the hopes of profit or preferment, may make uſeful to him. For thus we find, that *Conſtantius* a King of the *Britans*, was murdered by his Guard of *Picts*: moſt of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of thoſe, whom they intruſted, either with the guard of their perſons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Eſtates of *Italy*, have been brought into the extremeſt dangers, by truſting too much to the honeſty of mercenary Souldiers and Commanders. Take we for inſtance the proceedings of *Giacopo Picinino*, who with his Followers firſt took Pay of *Ferdinand* the firſt of *Naples*; left him, to fight for his vowed Enemy, *John* Duke of *Calabria*, the ſon of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, whom alſo he forſook in his greateſt need. The like we find of *Franciſco Sforza*, firſt entertained by the Duke of *Millain*, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*, from them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the Pay of the State of *Millain*, made uſe of their own Army to ſubdue that City.

Nor can I ſpeak better of the *Switzers*; or their dealing in this kind with the *French* Kings, the *Sforza*'s Dukes of *Milan*; and with whom not, (to ſay the truth) that ever truſted, or employed them.

Now as it is unſafe for a Prince to commit the cuſtody of his perſon, or the defence of his Eſtates to the faith of Forreiners; ſo is it dangerous to him to call in ſuch aids, and to commit his fortunes either wholly, or principally, unto their fidelity. A moderate ſupply of men, money, or munition, from a confederate King, is, I confeſs, in moſt caſes convenient, in ſome neceſſary: as well to ſave their Natives from the ſword, as to trie a friend, and intereſt an Allie in the ſame cauſe. But to invite ſo great a number of Succours, as from Helpers may become *Maſters*, and oppreſs the people whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have ſuffered ſhip-wrack, and which a good *Pilot* of the State ſhould with all care avoid. For as in the ſickneſs of the body *natural*, it is hurtful to a mans health and life, to take more *phyſick*; than it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digeſt, or put out again: ſo in the body *politick*, it is a perilous matter to receive more ſuccours, than what (after they have done the deed they were ſent for) we may either with conveniency reward and ſettle with us, or at liberty expel. Of all Surfeits, this of Forraign ſupplies is moſt uncureable; and *Ne quid nimis*, if in nothing elſe true, is in this caſe, oracle. There is no Kingdom (I am verily perſwaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all examples, were infinite and tedious; to inſer ſome, pleaſing to the Reader, and to illuſtrate the point, not unneceſſary. To begin with former times, *Philip* of *Macedon*, called into *Greece* to aſſiſt the *Thebans* againſt the *Phocians*; brought all that Countrey, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans* by aiding the *Sicilians* againſt the *Carthaginians*, poſſeſſed themſelves of that flouriſhing Iſland; by aſſiſting the *Hedui* againſt the *Sequani*, maſtered *Gallia*; by ſuccouring *Androgeus* againſt *Caſſibelan*, ſeiſed on *Britain*; by ſiding with the *Ætolians* againſt *Perſeus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of *Macedon*; and by the ſame courſe what not? In after ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thruſt out of all; the *Iriſh* called in the *Engliſh*, by whom they were in proceſs of time totally ſubdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mogul-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. Theſe forrein ſupplies are invited, or let into a Countrey, commonly in four caſes. Firſt, when ſome one man upon diſcontent, or deſire of revenge, openeth them a way into a Countrey: upon which motives, *Narſes* invited the *Lombards* into *Italy*; and Count *Julian* brought the *Moors* into *Spain*: the one to be revenged on the Empreſs *Sophia*, who had deſpitefully reviled him; the other to revenge himſelf on King *Roderick*, who had raviſhed his daughter. Secondly, when a weaker Faction makes way for them, to maintain their cauſe againſt a ſtronger. On which ground, the Duke of *Burgundy* being oppreſſed by the faction of *Orleans*, made way for *Henry* the fifth to paſs into *France*; and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining cauſe againſt *Henry* the fourth. Thirdly, when an ambitious Prince makes uſe of a forrein power, to uſurp upon the rights of another man. And for that cauſe *Ludowick Sforza* perſwaded Charls the eight to undertake the Conqueſt of the Realm of *Naples*; that by the countenance of his Arms, he might appropriate to himſelf the Dukedom of Millain. Fourthly, when a King overburthened by a forrein, or domeſtick force, which he is not able to reſiſt, requires the help of a forrein friend: in which caſe, *Plus à medico quam à morbo mali*, the *phyſick* proves many times worſe than the *diſeaſe*. For thus the Kings of *Naples* of the houſe of *Aragon*, being in danger of the *French*, drew in the Aids of *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, the Couſin German once removed of the King then being; And the *Caliphs* of *Egypt*, not able to withſtand the forces of *Almericus*, craved aid of the *Turks*: by which means, both thoſe Kingdoms were made a prey to their forrein friends, and by avoiding *Scylla* fled into *Charybdis*. Nay many times it ſo hapneth, that theſe forrein ſuccours joyn in deſign with thoſe, againſt whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them. And ſo we find that the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into *Gaul*, to prevent the breaking in of the *Franks*, or *French*; joyned with them in a common league againſt the *Romans*, whom they diſpoſſeſſed at laſt of all that Countrey. Onely amongſt ſo many examples to this purpoſe, we find the *Low-Countrey-men* to have proſpered by theſe forrein aids; who by the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, ranſomed themſelves from that yoke of bondage, which was intended to be put upon them by the King of *Spain*. This I acknowledge to be true, and look upon it as a great Argument of the integrity and honeſty of the *Engliſh* Nation; although it be as true withal, that the *Engliſh* never had ſuch an Army there, as to be able to ſubdue them. But give me ſuch another inſtance, I will quit the cauſe: for the ſame *Low-Countrey-men* found it otherwiſe with the Duke of *Anjou*, brother to *Henry* the third of *France*, whom they created Duke of *Brabant*, and their Governour-General; permitting him to bring in as many of the *French*, as either his authority, or their own monies were able to raiſe: who was no ſooner ſetled in that command, but he made it his chief buſineſs to ſeize upon their ſtrongeſt Holds, and to be a more abſolute Prince amongſt them, than ever the *Spaniards*, or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, that theſe forrein Succours are the laſt to be tried, and the leaſt to be truſted, of any remedies in State. But it's now more than time to return to the *Mamalucks*; and in them to

The fift Dynastie of the Egyptian Kings, or the Race of the Mamalucks.

A. Ch.

1255. 1 *Turquimenenis*, who being promoted to the Kingdom, releaſed King *Lewis*, whom *Melechſala* his predeceſſor had taken priſoner; but performed not half of the conditions agreed upon.

2 *Clothes* (by ſome called *Elmutabaz*) taking advantage of the miſeries of the *Turks*, then diſtreſſed by the *Tartars*, ſeized on the greateſt part of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*.

1260. 3 *Bandocader* perfected the begun-conqueſts of *Clothes*, and took from the *Chriſtians* the ſtrong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much ſpoil.

4 *Melechſait*, or *Melechſares*, reſtored the power of the *Mamalucks* in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*, where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the ſon of *Henry* the 3 of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.

1289. 5 *Elpis*, or *Alphix*, recovered from the diſſenting *Chriſtians* the ſtrong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre*, and *Sidon*, all which he razed to the ground, that they might not be any more ſerviceable to the affairs of the *Chriſtians*.

1291. 6 *Araphus*, or *Euſtrephus*, by birth a *German*, releaſed *Henry* Duke of *Mecklebourg*, after he had been priſoner 26 years. He rooted the *Chriſtians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolomais* the laſt Town they there held, and ſo razed it, that he made it fit to be ploughed.

7 *Melechneſar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Araphus*, was diſcomfited by *Caſſanes*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the loſs of 40000 *Egyptians*: but *Caſſanes* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*, for which ſervice he was afterward made Sultan of Egypt.

8. *Melechadel*, whom I ſuppoſe to be that Sultan that governed Egypt, when *Tamberlane* with unreſiſtable violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain: neither can I meet with any conſtant and continued *ſeries* (which I dare relie on) of his Succeſſors in this Kingdom, till I come to

A. Ch.

9 *Melecnella*, or *Melechnaſer*, who in the year 1423. ſubdued the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluck* Sultans.

1465. 10 *Cathbeyus*, who much reformed the State of Egypt, and was a profeſſed enemy of *Bajazet* 2^{d}. the 8 King of the *Ottomans*.

1498. 11 *Mahomet* the ſon of *Cathbeyus*, depoſed by the *Mamalucks*, for fear the kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being againſt their uſual cuſtom, that the ſon ſhould ſucceed his Father, in the name and priviledges of a *Mamaluck*.

1499. 12 *Campſon Chiarſeſius*, ſucceeded on the depoſing of *Mahomet*.

13 *Zanballat*, who dethroned *Campſon*, and not long after was depoſed by

1500. 14 *Tonombeius*, outed of his Eſtate by the joynt conſent of the *Mamalucks*, ſo to make way for *Campſon Gaurus*.

1501. 15 *Campſon* II. ſirnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the diſordered and factious eſtate both of Court and Countrey; and for the ſpace of 16 years governed very proſperouſly. But ſiding at the laſt with *Hyſmael* the *Perſian Sophie*, againſt *Selimus* the firſt of that name, the 3^{d} Emperor, and ninth King of the *Ottoman* family, he drew his Kingdom into a war, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himſelf ſlain in battel.

1517. 16 *Tonombeſius* II. ſucceeded *Campſon Gaurus* both in his Kingdom & misfortunes: vanquiſhed in his firſt year by the ſaid *Selimus* the firſt, *An.* 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was uſed to ſay, *That he had gotten a Farm to feed his* Gomoglans, *or young Souldiers*. So Egypt became a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, as it ſtill continueth.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they muſt be, beyond the proportion of belief, or elſe they could never have been Maſters of ſufficient Treaſure, to finiſh thoſe vaſt ſtructures which they undertook. Twelve thouſand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted annually unto, in the time of the *Ptolomies*; which of our money makes the ſumme of Two *Millions* and 347750 pounds. Which ſumme *Auguſtus Cæſar* (appropriating this Province to himſelf)

ſelf) is ſaid to have doubled: but whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the reſt in Corn, I determine not. Certain it is, that there was yearly ſhipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperor, Two hundred thouſand Meaſures of Wheat, every Meaſure weighing twenty hundred pound weight; which cometh to ſeven Millions and an hundred forty thouſand of our *Engliſh* Buſhels, ſold by him, or diſtributed *gratis* amongſt the Poor, as he ſaw occaſion. So that there might be very well ſome abatement in Money, conſidering that the Corn amounted to ſo great a ſum. Nor were they much leſs, if ought at all, when the *Mamalucks* ruled in this Countrey. For *Campſon Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no leſs than ten Millions of *Ducats*, at one clap, amongſt his Souldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyrannical Government, and partly through the diſcontinuance of the uſual Traffick through the *Red-Sea*, receive no more than three *Millions*: one of which is hoorded in his own Coffers; the ſecond is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Baſhaw*, for ſupport of his charge; the third is diſtributed among his Garriſon-Souldiers, and ſuch of them as by land guard his own Million to *Conſtantinople*; for by ſea he dareth not venture it, for fear of the *Florentine*, who with a few ſhips Lordeth it in the *Mediterranean*.

And ſo much for EGYPT.

OF
BARBARY.

BARBARY is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Cyrenaica*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and ſome part of the *Atlantick* alſo; on the South with Mount *Atlas*, by which ſeparated from *Libya Inferior*, or the Deſarts of *Libya*,

It containeth in it the whole *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, and part of the *Dioceſe* of *Spain*: ſubject in former times to the Commonwealth of *Carthage*, and the great Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they give to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninſula*; and afterwards extended it over all the reſt of the Countrey, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the ſubjugation of it by the *Saracens*, by whom called *BARBARY*: either from *Barbar*, ſignifying in their Language an uncertain murmur, ſuch as the ſpeech of the *Africans* ſeemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, ſignifying a *Deſart*, which doubled, made up firſt *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It is ſituate under the third and fourth *Climates*: ſo that the longeſt Summers day in the parts moſt South amounteth to thirteen hours three quarters, increaſed in the moſt Northern parts to fourteen hours and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantick* Ocean to the *greater Syrtis*, for the ſpace of 1500 miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narroweſt, 100 miles; but towards the *Straits*, where broadeſt, almoſt three hundred.

The Countrey in ſuch parts as lie neareſt to the *Mediterranean*, is full of hils, covered with woods, and ſtored with plenty of wild-Beaſts, provided reaſonably well of moſt ſorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, inſomuch that moſt of the Inhabitants live of *Barley*-bread. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champain Countrey, watered with many pleaſant Rivers iſſuing from that Mountain, and liberally furniſhed with Cherries, Figs, Pears, Plummes: Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oyl, Honey, Sugar: ſome Mines of Gold, and that for purity and fineneſs no where to be bettered. Here are alſo beſides large Herds of Cattel, ſome Elephants, Lyons, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like ſavage nature, and of Apes great multitudes: Horſes good ſtore, of excellent both ſtrength and beauty. But taking it in the beſt parts, it falleth extreamly ſhort of that infinite fertility, which is aſcribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For beſides the miracle of five hundred Ears of Corn growing on one ſtalk (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, that not far from the City of *Tacape*, in the way to *Leptis*, a man might ſee a great Date-tree overſhadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig-tree, under that a Pomegranate, under that a Vine, and under all, Peaſe, Wheat, and Herbs, all growing and flouriſhing at one time. It is affirmed alſo by the ſame Authour, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that ſome fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year, and that a piece of ground of four cubits ſquare, was uſually rented out at ſo many *Denarii*: by which account (as the Learned *Budaus* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground muſt be worth yearly, 12800 of the *Roman Seſtertii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparallel'd increaſe of the fruits of the earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The people are of a duskiſh colour, but inclining to *Blackneſs*: much of the ſame nature with the *Arabians*, by whoſe numerous families formerly they were overſpread; but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of body, well skilled in Horſemanſhip, but impatient of labour, covetous of honour, inconſtant, crafty, and unfaithful, ſtudious in matters of their Law, and in ſome of the Liberal Sciences, eſpecially *Philoſophy* and the *Mathematicks*, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countries they are admitted to be Readers: They are alſo ſaid to be ſtately of gate, exceedingly diſtruſtful, in their hate implacable, and jealous of their women beyond all compare. The women of a comely body, and well featured, beautiful in blackneſs, of delicate ſoft skins, and in their habit and apparel beyond meaſure ſumptuous: ſo dreſt, to make themſelves more amiable in the eyes of their husbands: for otherwiſe not permitted to ſtir abroad, and ſeldom to ſee any body but thoſe of their own honſes.

The Language ſpoken at the preſent in moſt of the *Maritime* Towns, except thoſe of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabick* tongue. In thoſe two Kingdoms, and moſt part of the Countrey-villages, the *Punick* or old *African*, the ancient languages of the Countrey: the *Punick*, ſpoken in all places where anciently the *Carthaginians* were of any power; the *African* (whatſoever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not ſubject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder; which though it was the Language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it ſpread ſo far as to extinguiſh or ſuppreſs the old natural tongues: and in the *Colonies* themſelves ſo much degenerated in ſhort time, ſo barbarouſly and imperfectly ſpoken, that a Siſter of the Emperour *Severus*, who lived in *Leptic*, a *Roman* Colony, coming to *Rome* to ſee her Brother, ſpoke it ſo incongruouſly, that the Emperor was aſhamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of S. *Auguſtine*, an *African* Biſhop, were preached in *Latin*, becauſe preached in *Hippo* his Epiſcopal See, which was then a Colony of the *Romans*, yet he confeſſeth that he was ſomtimes fain to uſe ſuch words as were not *Latine*, to be the better underſtood of his Congrogation.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt planted, in that part hereof, which was called *Africa propria*, by *Epenetus*, one of the 70 Diſciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopſis*, affirmed to be the firſt Biſhop of *Carthage*; In *Mauritania*, by S. *Simon* the Apoſtle, ſirnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphraſtes* addeth, that S. *Simon Peter* preached here alſo, when by the decree of *Claudius Cæſar* he was forced from *Rome*; and at his going hence, left *Creſcens* his Diſciple to promote the work. But by whomſoever planted firſt, it found good increaſe, and was ſo propagated in ſhort time over all this Country, that in the year 250. or before, there were in it above 90 Biſhops; for ſo many were aſſembled in the Synod of *Labeſitum*: and in the year 398. when the faction of the *Donatiſts* was of greateſt power, we find no fewer than 214 *Catholick* Biſhops, met together in the Council of *Carthage*. Which as it is an argument of the great increaſe of *Chriſtianity* in thoſe parts of *Africa*, ſo it ſhews alſo that the Church was in an ill condition, ſo overpowered by the violence of that mighty faction, who had at leaſt 270 Biſhops of their own opinion, that the *Orthodox* party was neceſſitated to increaſe the number of Biſhops, for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary ſide, if ever the difference ſhould come to be examined in a publick Meeting. Theſe Biſhops ranked into ſix Claſſes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Biſhops of each Province ſubject to their own *Metropolitan*, who in this *Dioceſe* (contrary to the uſage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them ſubordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally inveſted with *Patriarchal* Juriſdiction over all theſe parts. *Latius fuſa eſt noſtra* Provincia: *Habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritanias duas ſibi cohærentes*, are S. *Cyprians* words. Which ſhew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better *Geographer*, than an Hiſtorian or Divine. He would not elſe have told us in ſuch poſitive terms, that thoſe of *Barbary* remained in their old *Idolatry*, till 250 years before *Mahomets* Birth; at what time they received the *Goſpel*, and not before. But the good man miſtook the reviving of the *Orthodox* faith, in the time of *Juſtinian*, after it had been long ſuppreſſed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* Faction (who at one time baniſhed hence 300 *Catholick* Biſhops) for the firſt planting of the Goſpel. Otherwiſe not to be excuſed. But after this *Reviver*, it held not long, when ſuppreſſed by the *Saracens*, and ſo ſuppreſſed, that except it be in ſome few Towns poſſeſſed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of *Chriſtianity* to be diſcerned in all this Country; *Mahometiſm* being elſewhere univerſally embraced amongſt them.

Amongſt the men of moſt note for Souldiery, which have been born in this Countrey, we may reckon *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three Sons, 2. *Annibal*, 3. *Aſdrubal*, and 4. *Mago*; men hardly to be parallel'd in any Ages: 5. *Maſiniſſa*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Cotemporaries: and in the following times, 6. *Septimus Severus*, the Roman Emperor. Amongſt thoſe addicted to the Muſes, thoſe of moſt note, 1. *Terence*, 2. *Apuleius*. But for Divines, no Region in the world afforded men of more eminent note, nor better deſerving of the Church. 1. *Tertullian*, 2. *Cyprian*, 3. *Julius Africanus*, 4. *Arnobius*, 5. *Lactantius*, 6. *Victorinus Afer*, 7. *Optatus* Melevitanus, 8. *Victor Uticenſis*, 9. *Fulgentius*, 10. *Primaſius*. And above all, the moſt learned and divine S. *Auguſtine*, a man of ſuch admirable abilities, and indefatigable induſtry, ſo conſtant a Defender of all Orthodox Doctrine againſt the *Hereticks* of thoſe times, that he deſervedly got the name of Malleus *Hæreticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Countrey beſides Mount *Atlas* (of which hereafter by it ſelf) 1. *Phocra*, 2. *Heptadelphus*, and 3. *Atlas minor* in Mauritania Tingitania, 4. *Cinnaba*, 5. *Garas*, 6. Madethubadus, and 7. thoſe called *Gariphi*, in *Cæſarienſis*, 8. *Thambes*, 9. Mampſarus, 10. *Uſaletus*, and 11. *Zuchabarus*, in *Africa propria*. Of which, and others, we may ſpeak more, if occaſion be, in our deſcription of the Provinces in which they are. And for the Rivers of moſt note, though none of any long courſe in ſo narrow a Countrey; we have in *Tigintana*, 1. *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantick*, out of *Atlas Minor*; 2. another of the ſame name, and the ſame *exit* alſo, but far more to the North, towards the Streight of *Gibraltar*; 3. *Molochath*, mollified by *Salus* the Hiſtorian into *Mulucha*, and by him placed betwixt the *Numidians* and the *Moors*; 4. *Malva*, the boundary at this day, betwixt the Kingdoms of *Feſſe* an *Algiers*; 5. *Phthuth*, of more fame than any, of which more anon: in *Cæſarienſis*, 6. *Naſabath*, 7. *Siſaris*, and *Sorbetos*: in *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunes*, 8. *Rubicatus*, which iſſuing out of Mount *Thambes*, falleth into the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*. 9. *Triton*, which iſſuing out of the hill called *Uſaletus*, and making the great Fen called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its courſe alſo in the Mediterranean; and finally, 10. *Bagradas*, the greateſt in all this tract, which riſing out of Mount *Atlas*, firſt runneth towards the Eaſt, and then receiving from the hill called Mampſarus the addition of another Stream, paſſeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his courſe.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and *Land-marks*, I ſhould now proceed to the deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces hereof, as in other places. But becauſe each part almoſt hath had for theſe latter times its particular Hiſtory, and that it is divided at the preſent into ſeveral Governments, and under the command of ſeveral Princes, I will here lay down ſo much of the Story of it as concerns the whole, before ſuch diviſion; and afterwards purſue the *Hiſtory* and *Chonography* of the ſeveral parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Countrey was firſt peopled by *Phut* the third ſon of *Cham*: who leaving his Brother M*izraim* well ſetled in the Land of *Egypt*, paſſed towards the Weſt; and leaving L*ehabim* his Nephew betwixt him and M*izraim*, poſſeſſed himſelf of all the reſt from the *Greater Syrtis* to the *Ocean*. Remainders of whoſe name we find in the River *Phut* (by *Ptolomy* called *Phthuth*, with but little difference, ſave that it ſavoureth more of the *African* roughneſs) near which *Joſephus* findeth a Region called the Countrey of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phuteans*: ſeconded herein by S. *Hierome*, who ſpeaking of this *Regis Phutenſis*. in M*auritania*, (where the River *Phuth* is placed by *Ptolomy*) voucheth in general terms the teſtimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and L*atine*. So that, of this there is no queſtion to be made. Such Nations as deſcended of this Plantation, ſhall be hereafter ſpoke of in their ſeveral Provinces. Governed at firſt by the Chiefs of their ſeveral Families; but in the end, reduced under the command of the Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two firſt, Natives of this Countrey, of the race of *Phut*; the laſt deſcended alſo of the ſeed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the conqueſt of their Countrey by the Children of *Iſrael*, forced to ſeek new dwellings; and having ſtore of ſhips to tranſplant themſelves and their Families, ſetled in the maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa* properly ſo called. For, that the people of thoſe parts, though loſt into other names and families, were anciently of a *Canaanitiſh*, or *Phœnician* race, may be made apparent, 1. By the nearneſs of their Language, the *Punick*, or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* tongue, differing onely in the dialect and pronunciation. 2*ly*. By the name *Pœni*, or *Phœni*, little differing from that of the *Phœnices*. 3*ly*. By this teſtimony of S. *Auguſtine*, who telleth us in the Comment on S. *Pauls* Epiſtle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finiſhed by him, *Interrogati Ruſtici noſtri quid ſint, reſpondent* Punici *Chanani*; that is to ſay, that when any of the Inhabitants of this Countrey (he himſelf was one) were aſked what they were they anſwered, *Chanaanites*. 4*ly*. We find in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyſes* having totally conquered *Egypt*, intended a war againſt the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it ſeemeth) of ſome power: but the *Phœnicians*, being the onely Sea-faring men *Cambyſes* then had, abſolutely denied to be imployed in that ſervice; they being ſprung from the ſame Tree, that the *Carthaginians* were. 5*ly*. We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagrius Scholaſticus*) how on two marble pillars, ſituate nigh unto *Tingis*, or *Tanger*, there was in the *Phœnician* language and Character engraved, *Nos fugimus à facie* Joſhuah *prædonis, filii* Nave; that is to ſay, *We flie from the face of that Robber*, Joſhuah *the ſon of* Nun. The ſetling of this people there, a great incitement queſtionleſs unto *Dido*, to come thither alſo: who feared as much danger from her brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whoſe hands had been embrued in the bloud of her huſband; as the others did from the ſword of *Joſhuah*. Gathering together all her Treaſures, which were very great, accompanied with her brother *Barca*, and her ſiſter *Anna*, ſhe ſet ſail for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after ſtood the City of *Carthage*, ſhe obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigneſs, than ſhe could compaſs round about with an Oxes hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byrſa*, which at firſt it had. Firſt founded in, or about the year of the world 3070. which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomons* Temple; 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the deſtruction of *Troy*. By which accompt (I note this onely by the way) it is impoſſible that *Dido*, or *Eliſa* (for by both theſe names we find her called) ſhould ever ſee the face of *Æneas*, unleſs it were in picture, or imagination; and therefore as impoſſible ſhe ſhould either fall in love with him, or be got with Child by him, or finally kill her ſelf on her being forſaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with moſt ſorts of men. Hereunto conſenteth *Auſonius*, who honouring the *Statua* of this abuſed Princeſs with an *Epigram* of 18 verſes, among others gives us theſe four.

Invida cur in me ſtimulaſti Muſa Maronem,
Fingeret ut noſtræ damna pudicitiæ?
Vos magis Hiſtoricis (*Lectores*) *credite de me,*
Quam qui furta deum, concubituſque canunt.

Why didſt thou ſtir up Virgil, *envious Muſe,*
Falſly my name and honour to abuſe?
Of me let Hiſtories *be heard, not thoſe,*
Who to the World, Jove's *theft and luſts expoſe.*

Credible it is, that *Æneas* being driven on the Coaſt of *Africk*, was by ſome Prince there courteouſly entertained, as a man whoſe fame had been his *harbinger*: but why the ſtory ſhould be faſtened on *Dido*, I ſee not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her ſelf, gave occaſion to the Poet to fain, that it was for the love of *Æneas*: whereas it was indeed to avoid the luſt and fury of *Jarbas*, a potent King of the *Getuli*, a powerful Nation of thoſe parts of *Africa*, in which *Carthage* ſtood, who violently deſired to have his pleaſure on her.

But to proceed. This City thus founded in a place commodious for Trade and Merchandiſe, in ſhort time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire *mercenary* Souldiers (of which the needy *Mauritanians*, and *Numidians*, did afford good ſtore) they conquered all the Sea-Coaſts from *Cyrene* to the Streits of *Hercules* (now called the Streits of *Gibraltar*:) and ſo much alſo towards the South, as was worth the conquering; within which ſpace poſſeſſed of 300 Cities. Grown to ſuch height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongſt them the Kings of *Numidia*, and *Mauritania*, were at their devotion: They began to caſt their eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy Iſland, lying near unto their Coaſt; which queſtionleſs they had poſſeſſed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatneſs, and fearing their neighbour-hood, had not took upon them the defence of the *Mumertines*, and under that pretence got ſome footing in it. The end of this war, after many brave exploits on both ſides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*; their abandoning all the Iſlands, betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 *Talents*, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And ſuch end had the firſt *Punick* war, managed for the moſt part in *Sicil*. During which time, and the firſt war there managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it ſelf was twice invaded; firſt by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracuſe*, (or ſo commonly call'd) and afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General; but with no other great ſucceſs, than the ſpoil of the Countrey. The ſecond followed not long after, but the *Scene* was altered; begun in *Spain*, proſecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the ſon of *Amilcar*, deſcended from *Barca* the brother of

Dido or *Eliſa*: who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increaſed his reputation and experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes*, into *Italy* it ſelf; defeated the Armies of the *Romans*, and ſlew ſome of their Conſuls: ſo proſperous in the battel of *Cannæ*, where the whole ſtrength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good fortune, and made uſe of his victory, he might within four, or five days after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently tranſlated the war to *Carthage*. The iſſue was, that on the loſs of the battel of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were neceſſitated to ſubmit themſelves to the will of the Conquerour: that is to ſay, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships, and Gallies excepting ten; to make no war without leave of the *Romans*, to pay for the charges of the war, 10000 *Talents*; and ſuch other extremities. So ended the 2. *Punick* war, *An. V. C.* 602. And the third followed not long after, not any way occaſioned by thoſe of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the people of *Rome*; who would not think themſelves ſafe whileſt that City ſtood: and therefore ſent another *Scipio* to lay ſiege unto it. By whom, after a long and ſtout reſiſtance, it was at laſt taken and deſtroyed: the Treaſure which was found in it, notwithſtanding their former loſſes, and the low eſtate it was reduced to, beſides what was conſumed by fire, and reſerved by the Souldiers; amounting to 470000 pound weight of ſilver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thouſand pounds of our *Engliſh* money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewith all the reſt of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed againſt her, and aided the *Romans* in theſe wars; yet they ſoon found their own fortunes buried in the ſelf-ſame Grave. Subverted, one after another, as occaſion was, they became all ſubject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Eſtates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of theſe were reckoned ſeven in all, that is to ſay, 1. *Africa Propria*, called alſo *Zeugitana*; and *Proconſularis*, 2. *Byzacena*, 3. *Tripolitana*, 4. *Numidia*, 5. *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*, 6. *Sitiſenſis*, and 7. *Tingitana*. Of which the laſt (I know not why) was laid to the *Dioceſe* of *Spain*, called therefore *Hiſpania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, by ſome elder Writers: the other ſix made up the *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Pretorius* for *Italy*, who had here his *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till ſubdued by the *Vandals*, a *German* Nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb*, on the Coaſt of the *Baltick*; where now lie the Dukedoms of *Mecklenbourg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory ſtill retained there in the ſtile of thoſe Princes, who call themſelves *Duces Vandalorum*; and in the Confederacy of the *Hanſe-towns*, called by ſome *Latine* Writers, *Civitates Vandalicæ*. A Nation of great power, and numbers, (the *Burgundians* being onely a part of theſe) one of the five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11th year of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul*, by the treacherous practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Weſtern Empire; and after an abode of three years, paſſed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi*, and *Alani*, their Aſſociates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them alſo. So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperours Vicegerent in *Africa*: who ſtomacking to ſee his Office beſtowed on *Caſtinus* an unworthy man, and his enemy; betrayed the Countrey to theſe *Vandals*, in the laſt year of the life and reign of *Gundericus*, an *Arian* in Religion, as were the reſt of the Nation, to which induced by their neighbourhood and acquaintance with the *Goths*: which *Hereſie* as they brought with them into *Africk*, driving thence all the Orthodox *Chriſtians*; ſo they continued in it till their extirpation.

The VANDAL Kings of AFRICA.

A. C.	
412.	1 *Gundericus*, who firſt invaded *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Africk*. 16.
428.	2 *Genſericus*, who at the requeſt of *Eudoxia* the widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy*, and ſacked the City of *Rome*, the ſpoil whereof for 14 days he gave to his Souldiers: but at the requeſt of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterward married, he did not burn it. This *Eudoxia* was wife to the Weſtern Emperor *Valentinian*; who having a minde to a Lady of *Rome*, the wife of one *Maximus*, he cunningly ſlipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his finger, and by that token ſent for the Lady to the Court; and when ſhe was come raviſhed her. To revenge this diſgrace, *Maximus* ſlew *Valentinian*, made himſelf Emperor, and forced *Eudoxia* to be his wife. But ſhe ſtomacking a match ſo unequal to her high birth, and having ſome incling of the manner of her husbands death, ſent for *Genſericus* into *Italy*. This *Genſericus* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.
476.	3 *Honoricus*, ſon of *Genſericus*. 7.
484.	4 *Gundebundus*, ſon to *Genzo* the brother of *Honoricus*. 15.
499.	5 *Traſimundus*, brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.
523.	6 *Hildericus*, the ſon of *Honoricus*, depoſed by
530.	7 *Gilmir*, the ſon of *Genzo*, one of the Deſcendents of *Genſericus*; overcome by *Beliſarius* a worthy and politique Leader, whom the Emperour *Juſtinian* imployed in that ſervice.

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals*, (having continued in *Spain*, and *Africa*, 146 years) by the valour of *Beliſarins*. Who after this good ſervice, was imployed by *Juſtiniap* againſt the *Gothes*, then reigning in *Italy*; againſt whom he proceeded very fortunately: but being, on I know not what envy, called to *Conſtantinople*, his eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his bread at the Gate of the Temple of S. *Sophia*. A bad reward for ſo good a ſervant. But to go on, *Juſtinian* having regained *Africk*, to honour his new Conqueſt, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio-Præfectus* of *Italy*, to which formerly ſubject; and increaſing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of it ſelf: appointing his *Præfectus Prætorio Africæ* to reſide in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his charge; which he then alſo raiſed to a *Conſular* Province, having in former times been *Proconſular* onely. But long it held not in this ſtate: For in the year 647 the *Romans* were finally expulſed by *Hucba*, a famous Leader, whom *Oſmen*, the third *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, had deſigned to this ſervice. *Africk*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the *Saracenical* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the *Caliphs* growing leſs and leſs, and every one of their *Sultans* or *Provincial* Officers, getting what he could for himſelf: this Countrey was diſtracted into many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at laſt reduced to four of moſt conſideration: that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of 1. *Tunis*, 2. *Tremeſen* or *Algiers*, 3. *Feſſo*, and 4. *Morocco*. To the *Chorography* and *Hiſtory* whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the fifth place, the Iſles of *Barbary*.

1. TUNIS.

THe Kingdom of **TUNIS** (in Latine called *Regnum Tunetanum*) hath on the Eaſt *Cyrene*; on the Weſt, the Kingdom of *Algeirs*, or *Tremeſin*; on the North the *Mediterranean*; on the South Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis* the chief City of it; extended all along the Coaſt of the *Mediterranean* for the ſpace of 800 miles or thereabout, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The Countrey towards the Eaſt, barren and deſtitute of water; but in the Weſtern parts, ſufficiently plentiful of Corn, and other fruits, and generally well ſet with Trees. The people more patient of labour than the reſt of *Barbary*, and for that cauſe perhaps more healthy: but queſtionleſs of ſo good conſtitution, that they live commonly to great Age, unleſs a violent death prevent them; and are not much afraid of ſickneſs, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as ſome call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*; called ſince *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the preſent *Numidia*, lying on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countries, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, were 1. *Audas*, 2. *Buzara*, 3. *Cinna*, 4. *Dios*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5. *Gillius*, by ſome named *Gigion*, and 6 thoſe called *Thizibi*. Rivers of moſt eſteem with them, though not much with others, beſides thoſe mentioned before, 1. *Ampſaga*, now called *Collo*, and by ſome *Sat Gemar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremeſen*, 2. *Catada*, 3. *Cyniphus*, iſſuing from the hills called *Zuchabarus*, and falling into the Sea not far from *Tripolis*. Beſides which there were ſome great *Lakes*; the chief whereof, 1. *Hipponites* near Mount *Cinna*, 2. the Lake of *Pallas*, or that called *Palus Tritonia*, where *Minerva* was ſaid to have ſhewed her ſelf the Inventreſs of Spinning and of Oyl, and for that much worſhipped by this People. 3. *Sylura*, another great Lake, but not ſo famous as the former, becauſe not honoured by a Goddeſs.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1. *Africa* ſpecially ſo called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Ampſaga* to the Leſſer *Syrtis*, 2. *Tripolitana*, from the Leſſer *Syrtis* to the Greater, 3. *Numidia*, lying on the Weſt of *Zeugitana*, or *Africa Propria*: and 4. *Byzacena*, ſo called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the territory whereof ſo extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of corn were ſent to *Rome* in the time of *Auguſtus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitius Nero*, growing on one ſtalk. But this Diviſion being long ſince worn out of memory, it is divided at the preſent into the Provinces of, 1. *Ezzab*, 2. *Tripolis*, 3. *Tunis*, 4. *Conſtantina*, 5. *Bugia*.

1. **EZZAB** is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A ſmall Region, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich, (the richer, in regard they are free from *tributes*:) their wealth not riſing from the commodities of their own Countrey, which affordeth them little elſe beſides *Dates* and *Olives*; but from ſuch merchandiſe which they buy of the *Venetians*, and ſell to the *Numidians*. The richeſt, thoſe of *Meſrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath ſome, but none of note: the chief of which, 1. *Meſurata*, 2. *Sibeca*, both upon the Sea; of which the firſt gives name unto that little Province ſpoken of before. Of more note in the former times was *Phileni Villa*, ſituate on the Greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory then called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoyning *Altars*, called *Phileni Aræ*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occaſion. Some controverſies being grown betwixt thoſe of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their bounds; it was agreed, that two men at a ſet hour ſhould be ſent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meer-ſtone* of their ſeveral Territories. The *Phileni*, two brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were ſo quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Countrey of the *Cyrenenſes*, before they were met; wherewith the *Cyreneans* much enraged, put to them this choice, either to go ſo much back again, or to die in the place. This laſt accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Countrey before their own; for preſervation of whoſe name and honour to ſucceeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect theſe *Altars*.

2. Weſt of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of *TRIPOLIS*, which together with *Ezzab* made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in Barley; but more commodiouſly ſeated in regard of the Sea, which is here more ſafe for naviga-

tion; the former lying wholly on the *greater Syrtis.* Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leptis Magna,* ſo called, to diſtinguiſh it from another, but of leſs note, and therefore called *Leptis Parva,* ſituate in the (now) Province of *Tunis.* A town of ſo great wealth and trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Carthaginians.* 2. *Euphranta,* called alſo *Pyrgos Euphranta,* from ſome ſtrong Tower in it on the Weſtern bank of the *greater Syrtis.* 3. *Cinſterna,* on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Cyniphus.* 4. *Cabis,* the utmoſt City of this Province weſtward; the ſame which *Ptolomy* calls *Tacapa,* ſituate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the *leſſer Syrtis,* 5. *Sabratha,* and 6. *Heva*; not elſe obſervable, but that together with *Leptis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis.* 7. *Tripolis,* founded by the *Romans,* and by them peopled with *Colonies* from thoſe three Cities before mentioned. A City of great name and riches, till deſtroyed by the *Saracens.* By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colledges, and Hoſpitals; and flouriſhing in much wealth and luſtre, it became a Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject to the Kings of *Tunis,* till taken by the *Genoes* with a Fleet of 20 ſail, and by them ſold to the King of *Feſſe.* Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis,* it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter* of *Navar,* it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the *Catholique,* the firſt Monarch of *Spain*: whoſe Nephew *Charles* the 5. conferred it on the Knights of S. *John* of *Hieruſalem,* then expelled from *Rhodes*: whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Baſa* General of *Selimus* the ſecond, diſpoſſeſſed by force, *Anno* 1551. Since that the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Begterbeg,* for theſe *African* Provinces; and made an uſual retreat for *Pyrats,* who infeſt theſe Seas, and do much miſchief to the Coaſts of *Sicile, Italy,* and others of the *Chriſtian* Countries.

3. The Province of *TUNIS,* lying Weſtward to that of *Tripolis,* taketh up ſo much of this Kingdom, as antiently conteined the Province of *Bizacena*; and ſo much of the *Roman Africk,* as lieth on the Eaſt of the River called *Gaudilbarbar,* the *Hipponites Lacus* of the Antient writers. The Country antiently ſo fruitful, that it yielded uſually an increaſe of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, beſides the teſtimony of approved Authors, the wonderful, if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may ſerve ſufficiently. Now indigent, and ſo unprovided of all Grain for the uſe of their families, that they are fain to furniſh themſelves out of other places: the People not daring to manure or ſow their land, for fear of the *Arabians*; who ever and anon fall into theſe parts, and ſpoil what they meet with.

Places of moſt note in it, in the elder times, 1. *Adrumetum* or *Adrumyſtus,* now called *Machometta,* once a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Byzacena,* by conſequence, in the times of *Chriſtianity,* an Archbiſhops See: walled and repaired by the Emperour *Juſtinian*; and by his command called *Juſtiniana.* 2. *Zama,* the incamping place of *Annibal,* before his battel with *Scipio.* 3. *Nadagora,* memorable for the great battel, betwixt the two renowned *Generals* of *Rome* and *Carthage*; not parallel'd ſince their own times, nor in thoſe before them. In which the great Controverſie between thoſe Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* ſhewed his ſingular judgement in ordering his Souldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in horſe, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage* to fight in a place of diſadvantage, he could do no marvels: the *Romans,* with the loſs of no more then 1500 of their own men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians,* in the fight and chaſe. 4. *Salera* the firſt place took by *Scipio,* after the landing of his Army. 5. *Utica,* a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greateſt ſhips; much ſpoke of in the wars of *Carthage*; and memorable for the death of *Cato* (hence ſirnamed *Utican*) who here ſlew himſelf, for fear of falling into the hands of *Caſar.* It is now called *Biſerta.* 6. *Bizacium,* ſeated in liberal and fruitful ſoils, as was ſhewn before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena.* 7. *Ruſpinum,* made by *Caſar* the ſeat of his war in *Africk,* againſt the ſons and faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times ſucceeding, for being the Epiſcopal See of S. *Fulgentius.* 8. *Thyſtrus,* remarkable for the Tragedy of the *Gordiani*: Of which the Father in this City was ſaluted Emperour by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximinus* then their Emperour, whoſe *Procurator* they had ſlain in a tumult: but his party being diſcomfited by *Capellianus,* whom *Maximinus,* ſent againſt him, and his ſon killed in the defeat; upon the hearing of the news, he here hanged himſelf. 9. *Hippagreta,* on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held out longeſt for the *Mercinaries,* in their deſperate Rebellion againſt the *Carthaginians*; by which the Eſtate of that great City was in danger of ruine, at the end of the firſt *Punick* war. 10. *CARTHAGE,* once the Lady and Miſtreſs of *Africk,* ſituate in the bottom of a ſafe and capacious Bay, the entrances whereof were very ſtrongly fortified both by art and nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one ſide only, where joyned unto the Land by a narrow *Iſthmus,* about two miles and an half in breadth. In compaſs 24 miles, but meaſuring by the outward wall, it was 45. For without the wall of the City it ſelf, there were three walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults under ground of 30 foot deep; wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horſe, and all their Provender, and Lodging in thoſe Out-ſtreets for the *Riders* of the ſaid Horſe, and for 20000 Foot beſides, which never came within the City to annoy or peſter it. On the South-ſide ſtood the Caſtle called *Byrſa,* which took up two miles and an half in compaſs: firſt built by *Dido,* on that ground which ſhe obtained of the *Libyans,* when ſhe got leave to buy onely ſo much land of them, as ſhe could compaſs round about with an Oxes hide. In that, the ſumptuous Temple of their antient Deities, *Juno, Apollo, Æſculapius, Belus.* On the Weſt-ſide, a ſtanding Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by ſo narrow a paſſage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a ſtately *Arſenal,* with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the foundation and affairs of this mighty City we have ſpoke already. The Government of it firſt by Kings, thoſe *abſolute* enough at firſt, afterwards limited by the *Senate*; and finally made meerly *titulary* by the power of the People: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Ariſtotle,* in the 2. of his *Politicks.* Their Territories, before the ſecond

Punick war, when they were at the greateſt, extended on the Sea-coaſts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syrtis* to the *Streights*, and ſo unto the River *Iberus*, for the ſpace of 2000 miles in length: their *Revenues* anſwerable, and readily brought in, by reaſon of their infinite trading. Which made the *Roman* people think themſelves unſafe, whilſt this City ſtood. Reſolved on the deſtruction of it, they ſent againſt it L. *Martius*, and M. *Manlius*, their two *Conſuls*, with a puiſſant Army: to whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the preſervation of the City it ſelf, which was faithfully promiſed. But when they had withal given up the Sons of their principal men, to be ſent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future Loyalty, they were told, that a *City conſiſted not in wals, but in Lawes and Government*. Theſe with the *Corporation*, ſhould remain as formerly; the Town to be removed ten miles further off, where there was no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was reſolved to abide the utmoſt: but they wanted neceſſaries for reſiſtance. That want ſupplied for want of Iron to make Arms, with Gold and Silver; the Houſes pulled down to furniſh them with timber to build a Navy, the noble Ladies cutting off the hair of their heads, to make Ropes and Cordage; 25000 women liſted to defend the wals. But the fatal moment being come, a ſecond *Scipio* is ſent thither to diſpatch the work; by whom at laſt the Town was taken, and for 17 dayes together conſumed with fire: the Queen and multitudes of the people burning themſelves in the Temple of *Æſculapius*, becauſe they would not fall into the hands of the *Romans*. Re-edified by *Julius Cæſar*, and made a Colony, it recovered ſome part of her former luſtre; but ſo, that her chief glory was rather to be ſought for in her ancient, than her preſent fortunes. *Populi Romani* Colonia, *olim Imperii ejus pertinax æmula, & priorum exidio rerum, quam ope præſentium clarior*; was her character in the times of *Ponponius Mela*. But in this laſt Eſtate, accompted for the *Metropolis* of the *Dioceſe* of *Africk*, the Reſidence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate* of the *African* Churches; who had 164 Biſhops under him in that one Prvoince wherein *Carthage* ſtood. Deſtroyed in the ſucceeding times by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the reputation of a City of no mean importance, till the year 1270. at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9th. and thereupon deſerted by its old Inhabitants, it began to languiſh, and was at laſt reduced to nothing but a few ſcattered houſes, not above five and twenty ſhops, one Temple; all the reſt a ruine. So truly ſaid the ancient Poet,

> *Sic patet exemplis Oppida poſſe mori.*
> *Thus by examples do we ſee,*
> *That Towns may die as well as we.*

Of chief note at the preſent, 1. *Tunis*, ſuppoſed to be the *Themiſa*, or *Thumiſa* of *Ptolomy*, of ſmall accompt till the laſt deſtruction of *Carthage*, by whoſe fall it roſe. Situate not far from the ruines of that famous City, in compaſs about five miles, and in that compaſs ſaid to contain 10000 houſholds. Of great traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of forreign Nations; chiefly from *Genoa* and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the *Holy Wars*, for the Sieges and ſucceſſes of two of our *Engliſh* Princes, that namely of King *Edward* the firſt, in his Fathers life-time; and that of *Henry* the fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*; by both which (though the laſt ſerved only under the command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a compoſition; *Lewis* the 9. commonly called S. *Lewis*, dying at the firſt ſiege of it, 2. *Goletta*, a ſtrong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a Demy-Iland, divided from the main Land by two narrow paſſages, but ſo that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extream difficulty by *Charles* 5. *An.* 1535. together with the *Turkiſh* Navy riding in the Lake faſt by it, but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years after, *An.* 1574. 3. *Cairoan*, built by *Hucba*, who firſt conquered *Africk* for the *Saracens*, in a ſandy Deſart, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36. from any part of the Sea, to ſecure himſelf from any Invaſion, which the commodiouſneſs of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the firſt founder of it, with an admirable Temple raiſed on Pillars of Marble; who placed alſo in it a Colledge of Prieſts, and made it the chief Reſidence of his Poſterity for the ſpace of 170 years, who reigned here under the great *Caliphs* as the *Sultans* of *Africk*. Deſtroyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424 year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco*, and ſtill of ſuch eſteem amongſt theſe *Mahometans*, that their chief men are brought thither to be buried from all parts of the Country; hoping by the prayers of thoſe *Prieſts* to find a ſhorter way to Heaven, than in other places.

4. More Weſtward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, ſo called from *Conſtantina* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hipponites*, now named *Guadilharbar*, to *Conſtantine* a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the ſame with *Mons Andus* in *Ptolomy*. The ſoil hereof ſaid to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great ſtore of Butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Oroſius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1. *Tabraca*, on the Eaſt; and 2. *Hippo Regius*, on the Weſtern Bank of *Rubricatus*: both *Roman* Colonies, but this laſt moſt famous, in being the *Epiſcopal* See of renowned S. *Auguſtine*. 3. *Bona*, the birthplace of that Father, built by the *Romans* about an hundred miles from the Sea; but ſituate in a large plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: ſo rich and fertile, that the Town flouriſheth to this day; adorned with a ſumptuous *Moſque*, and never without the company of *Merchants* coming from *Genoa*, *Tunes*, and the Iſle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits and Butter. 4. *Thuburnica*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 5. *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the ſame nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6. *Culcua*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moors* now called *Cucutina*, but *Conſtantina* by the *Latines*, and moſt Nations elſe, now the chief City of this Province, ſituate near a Mountain of the ſame name, near the edge of *Bugia*, An ancient City, but containing ſtill 8000 families, many ſumptuous Buildings; amongſt which a large Temple, two Colledges, and three or four Monaſteries: frequently viſited by the Merchants, every Trade having here its peculiar Street; their chief Commodities, Wool, Cloth, Silks, Oyl, and ſome ſorts of Fruits, which they exchange for *Dates* or *Slaves*, who are here good Merchandiſe. The City for the moſt part, fenced about with high craggy Rocks, and where thoſe want, with ſtrong Wals, of a great height, and moſt exquiſite workmanſhip, declaring the antiquity of it. A further Argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal Arch* not far from the City, and ſome *Hot Bathes*, after the manner of the *Romans*.

5. Moſt Weſtward lieth the Province of ***BUGIA***, extended from Mount *Conſtantine* to the River *Ampſa*, now called *Chollo*, or *Seſ-Gemar*: which with ſo much of *Conſtantina*, as lieth on the Weſt-ſide of *Rubricatus*, made up that Province, which the *Romans* called by the name of *Numidia*. The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half ſo much. Narrower than *Mauritania*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; *ſed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Countrey of a fat ſoyl, plentiful both in fruits and corn, but moſt fit for paſturage: to which the people were ſo addicted, that many of them cared not for building Houſes (in ſtead whereof they uſed the *Hold* of a ſhip with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from one place to another, as their Paſtures failed them. From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, ἀπὸ τῦ νέμειν, ſignifying to feed or graſe. The people of good mettall, ſwift of foot, and well skilled in Horſemanſhip: but better in the onſet and to give a charge, than in ſtanding to it; ſuch as the wild *Arabians* are now ſaid to be.

Chief Towns hereof (beſides *Thuburnica*, *Culcua*, *Bona*, *Hippo*, ſpoken of before, belonging to *Numidia*, thought not to *Bugia*) 1. *Bugia*, built by the *Romans* on the ſide of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by ſome conceived to have been the *Thebuaca* of *Ptolomy*, now the chief City of this Province; adorned with many ſumptuous *Moſques*, ſome Monaſteries and Colledges for ſtudents in the Law of *Mahomet*, and many fair *Hoſpitals* for relief of the poor, fenced alſo with a ſtrong Caſtle. Secured by the ſtrength whereof, and growing rich by the Fruitfulneſs of the ſituation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton; working much miſchief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies, which they had at Sea; till taught more modeſty by *Peter* of *Navar* a *Spaniſh* Captain, A. 1508. by whom the Town was taken, and the people plundered. 2. *Chollo*, upon the Sea-ſide, the *Chollops Magnus* (as I take it) of *Ptolomy*; reported for a wealthy City. 3. *Nicaus*, ſeated towards Mount *Atlas*, in a pleaſant and delightful Country: which though interſperſed with many hils, yet being thoſe hils are cloathed with woods, yield them good ſtore of Goats and Horſes, and feed the Vallies with freſh Springs, which do iſſue from them; they rather adde than detract any thing from the pleaſures of it. 4. *Madaura*, by ſome called *Madurus*, the birth-place of *Apuleius*. 5. *Tunudromum*, another of the *Roman* Colonies. 6. *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Numidia*, when a *Roman* Province, and formerly the Seat-Royal of *Sypax* King of the *Maſæſyli*, within whoſe Country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid unto this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Ampſaga*, and memorable for the tragedy of *Sophonisba*, the daughter of *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*, a Lady of moſt exquiſite beauty, and yet carried more charms in her tongue than in her Eyes. Eſpouſed firſt unto *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, but after, upon reaſon of State, married unto *Syphax*, who being took priſoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of Liberty and Honour both, beſtowed her ſelf on her firſt Lover; but *Scipio* fearing leſt that Marriage might withdraw *Maſiniſſa* from the *Roman* party, cauſed the Lady to be ſeized on; which *Maſiniſſa* not being otherwiſe able to prevent or remedy, ſent her a cup of poyſon, which ſhe drank and died.

Of theſe *Numidians* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*; employed by this laſt City in all their wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicil*. Siding at laſt with *Scipio* againſt that State, they did good Service to the *Romans* in the weakning and deſtruction of that City: whoſe fall they did not long ſurvive: firſt conquered in the war of *Jugurth*; after the death of *Juba*, made a *Roman* Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the ſucceſſion of them, follow in this Order.

The Kings of the NUMIDIANS.

1 *Gala*, the Father of *Maſiniſſa*.

2 *Deſalces*, the brother of *Gala*; according to the Laws of the Countrey, which gave the Crown unto the Brother, not the Son of the former King (like the Law of *Taniſtry* in *Ireland*) ſucceeded *Gala*.

3 *N. N.* a ſon of *Deſalces*, in the abſence of *Maſiniſſa*, then ſerving under the *Carthaginians* in the Wars of *Spain*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the Throne: Slain not long after by a Rebel.

4 *Maſiniſſa*, ſon of *Gala*, recovered the Kingdom of his Fathers; but again outed by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*, betwixt whom and *Maſiniſſa*, touching *Sophoniſba*, there was deadly Feud. Aided by *Scipio* and the *Romans*, with whom aſſociated againſt *Carthage*, he not only recovered his own Kingdom, but was gratified with the greateſt part of that which belonged to *Syphax*. A profeſſed Enemy to *Carthage* (the final ruine whereof he lived to ſee) till the time of his death, being then ninety years of Age.

5 *Micipſa*, the ſon of *Maſiniſſa*, of whom nothing memorable.

6 *Jugurth*, the ſon of *Maſtanabilis*, one of the Brethren of *Micipſa*, having wickedly made away the two ſons of *Micipſa*, uſurped the Kingdom; and manifeſtly withſtood the *Romans*, whoſe attempts ſomtimes by force, ſomtimes by ſubtilty, but chiefly by money and bribes, he overthrew and made fruſtrate: *Et fuit in Jugurtha* (ſaith *Florus*) *quod poſt*

Annibalem timeretur. At laſt, being broken by *Metellus*, vanquiſhed by *Marius*, and by *Bocchus* delivered into the hands of *Sylla*; he was by *Marius* led in Triumph to *Rome*. In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver-wedges, 5775 pound weight; and in ready Coyn, 28900 Crowns: it being the cuſtom of the *Romans* in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the riches and money, which they had brought out of the conquered Countreys, to put into the common Treaſury.

7 *Hiempſal*, ſon of *Bocchus* King of *Mauritania*, gratified for his Fathers treachery in betraying *Jugurth*, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*; Relieved *Marius* in his exile.

8 *Hiarbas*, another of the *Marian* faction, preferred to the *Numidian* Crown; but vanquiſh'd and deprived by *Pompey*, at that time one of *Sylla*'s Captains.

9 *Hiempſal* II. preferred by *Pompey* to this Kingdom.

10 *Juba*, the ſon of *Hiempſal* the ſecond, who ſiding with *Pompey* againſt *Cæſar* in the Civil Wars, gave a great Overthrow to *Curio*, one of *Cæſars* Lieutenants; *Curio* himſelf ſlain, his whole Army routed, ſuch as were taken priſoners murdered in cold bloud. But being diſcomfited by *Cæſar* after *Pompey*'s death, *Numidia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Thus by the fall of *Carthage*, and the death of *Juba*, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the *Romans*. Of which, the Nations of moſt note were the *Nigitimi*, on the Eaſtern parts of the *Mediterranean*, the *Machyni*, near the leſſer *Syrtis*; the *Libya-Phænices* and *Medini*, bordering upon *Carthage*, the *Ionii*, *Navaira*, and *Cirteſii*, taking up all the Sea-coaſts of *Numidia*. Such as inhabited more Southwards on the back of theſe, not ſo much conſiderable: none of them to be ſtaid upon, but the *Libyæ-Phœnices*, a mixt people of the old *Libyans*, and new *Phœnicians*, as the *Liby-Ægyptii* were of the ſaid *Libyans* and the neighbouring *Egyptians*. The memory of all of them ſo defaced by the violent inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is ſcarce any tract, or footſteps of them in all the Countrey. When conquered by the *Saracens*, they were at firſt ſubject to the *Caliph*, or *Sultan* of *Cairoan*: after the ſpoil whereof by the *Arabians*, ſubdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of *Morocco*, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the diſtractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by ſome one of the Relicks of the Stock of the *Almohades*, who took unto himſelf the title of King of *Tunis*, that City being his chief Seat. By him tranſmitted unto his poſterity, till the dayes of our Grandfathers; when *Muleaſſes*, one of the youngeſt Sons of *Sultan Mahomet*, having firſt murdered *Maimon* his eldeſt Brother, and put out the eyes of twenty of the reſt, uſurped the Soveraignty. *Roſetta*, the only one of thoſe Princes who eſcaped this Maſſacre, upheld a while by the *Arabians*, and by them deſerted, was fain to put himſelf into the hands of *Barbaraſſa*, King of *Algieres*, and Admiral of the Turkiſh Navy; by whom he was carried to *Conſtantinople*, and ſo preſented to *Solyman*, who under colour of reſtoring him to the Throne of his Fathers, conquered that Kingdom for himſelf; outed thereof not long after by **Charles** the fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleaſſes*, Anno 1535. But the Tyrant did not long enjoy his ill-gotten Soveraignty, when his eyes were alſo put out by his own ſon *Amida*, and ſo committed to cloſe priſon, Nor did *Amida* enjoy it long, diſpoſſeſſed by *Abdamelech* his Fathers Brother. To *Abdamelech*. *Mahomet* his ſon ſucceeded: who being a child, and by affairs ill-governed by his Tutors, and other Miniſters of State, gave opportunity to *Amida* to regain the Kingdom. During which Broyls, the Turks again recovered footing, poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of the Countrey, and forced *Arayda* into Exile, who flying to *Don John* of *Auſtria*, then newly victorious at *Lepanto*, invited him to the conqueſt of *Tunis*, but he got little by the bargain; for *Don John* having ſubdued the Kings, conferred the ſame on *Mahomet* the Brother of *Amida*, and carried *Amida* in bonds to the Iſle of *Sicily*, where he after died. Nor did *Mahomet* enjoy it long, for the next year the Turks beſieged and took the City of *Tunis*, with the ſtrong Fort of *Galetta*, with all the other Forts and holds of that Kingdom, made ever ſince a Province of the Turkiſh Empire; The poor King being carried priſoner to *Conſtantinople* at the end of the war, which was in the year 1574. and the laſt of *Selymus* the ſecond.

2. *TREMESEN*, or *ALGIERS*.

THe Kingdom of TREMESEN is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Ampſaga*, (now called *Major*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the Weſt, with the Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, from which ſeparated by the River *Malutha*, or *Malva*. So called from *Tremeſen*, or *Teleuſine*, the chief City of it. Called alſo the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the City ſo named, ſomtimes the Seat Royal of their Kings.

In the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*: *Mauritania*, becauſe a part of the Kingdom of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Cæſarienſis*, from *Cæſarea* the chief City of it, as that ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on whom the Kings hereof depended. More anciently the Kingdom of the *Maſæſyli*, one of the moſt powerful Nations in all this Tract, over whom reigned *Syphax* before mentioned, called therefore by *Strabo*, *Maſæſylilia*, with good propriety; and corruptedly, *Maſſylia*.

The Kingdom extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt, for the ſpace of 380 miles, but of breadth not anſwerable; Is generally of the ſame nature (as to the Soyl and Ayr) with the reſt of *Barbary*: ſufficiently fruitful towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in the Southern parts. But meanly peopled, by reaſon of the continual ſpoyls made by the *Arabians*, who poſſeſs the *Deſarts*; and the Cities of it much waſted by continual wars. Nor have the people any peculiar *Character*, but what belongeth to others of theſe *Africans* alſo.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Guagyda*, inconveniently ſeated, as paying their accuſtomed Tributes to the King of T*remeſen*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here ſo numerous and powerful, that the Kings themſelves of this ſmall Kingdom were fain to buy their peace of them at exceſſive Rates. 2. T*igedent*, ſomtimes famous, and abounding with men of Learning; now almoſt forſaken, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of theſe *Arabians*. 3. T*ebocrit*, inhabited for the moſt part by Weavers. 4. *Breſch*, the Inhabitants whereof uſe to paint a black Croſs on their cheek, and another on the palm of their hands: the reaſon of which cuſtom they are ignorant of, but ſome conceive it to be a remembrance of their *Chriſtianity*. 5. *Ned-Roma*, built as the people do pretend, by the ancient *Romans*, as an *Epitome*, or Abridgment of that mighty City, to which it is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance; and that imported by the name, which ſignifieth in their Language, *Like to Rome*. Perhaps the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Novum oppidum*, or the New-Town, then a *Roman* Colony. 6. *Batha*, once a great City, ſince decayed by wars. 7. *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, ſaid to contain no fewer than 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infeſting with their Gallies the coaſts of *Spain*; till taken for *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* by *Peter* of *Navar*, An. 1506. ſince which time peopled and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*: In vain beſieged by the *Turks*, An. 1562. 8. *Maſalquivir*, a fair and capacious Haven on the ſame Sea alſo, and taken by the ſaid *Peter* of *Navar*, about the ſame time. 9. *Hareſgol*, in former times of much eſteem amongſt the *Moors*; but being deſtroyed by the King, or Sultan of *Cairoan*, it bequeathed his greatneſs unto *Tremeſen*, which after grew into renown. 10. *Tremeſen*, once adorned with many beautiful *Moſques*, and five ſumptuous *Colledges*, curiouſly wrought with *Moſaick* work. So populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 Families, and ſo well fortified, that it held out ſeven years againſt *Joſeph* the great King of *Feſſe*: not taken after that, though they were very much weakned by *Abulthaſen*, or *Albohacen* his ſon Succeſſor, under a ſiege of 30 moneths. By thoſe, and the ſucceeding troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in ſtrength and beauty. More ancient, 11. *Siga*, an *African* City, and a *Roman* Colony; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bocchus*, ſomtimes Kings of this Countrey. 12. *Arſenaria*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13. *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Bocchus*, after ſuch time as this Countrey was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*, called afterwards *Cæſarea*, in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whoſe *Feudatories* the Kings hereof were then accounted; or as ſome ſay, in honour of *Claudius Cæſar*, by whom made a Colony: the *Metropolis* of it alſo when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cæſarienſis*. Situate in or near the place where *Oran* now ſtands, which ſeemeth to have riſen out of the ruines of it. 14. *Salda*, a *Roman* Colony alſo, out of whoſe ruines roſe *Algiers*. 15. *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gezeir*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, ſituate near the Sea, in the form of a *Triangle*, with an Haven to it; but neither great, nor ſafe from the North-winds, which do much annoy it. The buildings very beautiful; the publick Inns, *Bathes*, and *Moſques*, exceeding ſumptuous, every Trade having a ſeveral place, or ſtreet by it ſelf. But that which is the greateſt grace of it, is the ſituation of the Houſes ſtanding in even ſtreets one above another, upon the riſing of a ſteep Hill; ſo that the Windows of one ſtreet, or row of houſing do all along over-look the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a moſt pleaſant proſpect. A City not ſo large, as ſtrong; and not ſo ſtrong, as famous. Famous for being the Receptacle and retrait-place of the *Turkiſh* Pirates, who domineer ſo infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great dammage of the Merchants of all Nations, that frequent thoſe Seas. Famous alſo for the ſhipwrack which *Charles* the fifth here ſuffered, who beſieging this Town, loſt in the Haven of it at one Tempeſt, beſides an infinite number of Karvels and ſmall Boats, divers ſtrong Gallies, 140 Ships, a great many excellent pieces of Ordnance, ſuch a number of gallant Horſes, that in *Spain* the race of Horſes for ſervice had like to have been loſt for ever; and above half his men. It long enjoyed the benefit of proprietary Princes (but *Homagers*, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremeſen*) till ſuch time as *Selimes*, and *Mahomet*, falling out, made the firſt, and that an irreparable breach in the Government. For *Selimes*, to ſtrengthen his ſide, implored the aid of *Hairaccius Barbaroſſa* a noble Pirate, who taking his beſt advantage, ſlew the disjoynted brethren, and ſetled himſelf in the Kingdom: which he had ſcarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſa* his Brother, *An.* 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Bugia*, and was ſo renowned for Martial proweſs, that *Solyman* the *magnificent* made him Lord *High Admiral* of his Fleet: which Office, when to the prejudice of *Chriſtendom* he had fortunately and for long time undergone, he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom, the Kingdom of *Tremeſen* being made ſubject to the *Turks* much about that time. 16. *Tetuan*, and 17. *Sargel*, ſituate Weſtward of *Algiers*, towns of Trade and Pyracy.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpiditani*, *Taladuſii*, *Thaluſſii*, *Malchubii*, *Maccurebi*, *Chituæ*, and others of as little note; the moſt predominant Nation being the *Maſæſyli*, over whom (and in that over all the reſt) reigned *Syphax*, ſpoken of before, unfortunately famous for his tragical love to *Sophonisba*: for whoſe ſake ſiding with the *Carthaginians* againſt the *Romans*, he was vanquiſhed and ſent priſoner to *Rome*. His Kingdom given to *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then beſtowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*, part of whoſe Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperor *Claudius*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Vandals*, and then by the *Saracens*, it followed the fortunes of theſe laſt, while they ſtood and flouriſhed: But growing into many diſtractions, and every *Sultan*, or *Provincial* Governour ſhifting for himſelf, it became a Kingdom, under the ſtile and title of the Kingdom of T*remeſen*. The Majeſty of it much impaired by *Abulthaſen*, or *Albohacen* King of *Feſſe*, who brought it, not long after, under his command. Recovering after ſome ſhort time its former liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and ſo continued till the time of *Abuchemen*: who incurring the hatred of his people, becauſe by his ſupine neglect the *Spaniards* had ſurpriſed and taken *Oran* and *Maſalquivir*, their two beſt Havens; made an eaſie paſſage for his brother *Abuzeiden* to the Regal diadem. *Abuzeiden* ſcarce well ſetled, loſt it to *Hairadine Barbaroſo*, Anno 1515. and he to *Charles* the fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was reſtored, becoming *Homager* and *Tributary* to the Crown of *Spain*. But his ſucceſſor *Abdulla*, weary of the *Spaniſh* ſervitude, put himſelf under the protection of *Solyman* the *magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his deceaſe, he left the poſſeſſion of his Kingdom alſo; ever ſince ſubject to the *Turks*: whoſe *Beglerbeg* or Supreme Officer for theſe *African* Provinces, reſides for the moſt part in *Algiers*, and hath 40000 *Timariots* under his command.

3. *FESSE*, & 4. *MOROCCO*.

THeſe Kingdoms I have joyned in title, becauſe united for the moſt part in the ſtory and affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Eſtate under the *Xeriffes* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of *Hiſtory*, though of a different conſideration in the way of *Chorographie*.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly ſo called; divided anciently into *Tingitana*, and *Sitifenſis*; *Cæſarienſis* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Maſæſyli* and the reſt of the Inhabitants of it, of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accompted any part thereof, till the death of *Jugurth*; when given to *Bocchus* King hereof, in reward of his treaſon, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name firſt given; the word *Tania*, ſignifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britannia*, *Luſitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps ſome others; and the name of *Mauri* given them ἀπὸ τοῦ Μαύρου, which ſignifieth amongſt other things *obſcure* or black, by reaſon of the darkneſs of their complexion. Accompted in their times, an hardy, but a bloody people; careleſs of life, fearleſs of death; implacable, if once offended, their thirſt of revenge not to be quenched but by blood. *Mauri ſunt genus hominum ſuapte natura cædis avidiſſimum, nihilque non facile audens, & deſperatis ſimiles, contemptu, viz. mortis & periculorum.* A character given of them in *Herodians* time, and it holds good ſtill: notwithſtanding the intermixture of *Goths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the ſame nation with them, and paſſing by the ſame name in the Writers of the middle time. *Poſt hac* Mauri *totam Hiſpaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam, &c. dominio ſuo manciparunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Moors* we are to underſtand the *Saracens*, which came out of *Africk*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1. *Atlas Minor*, ſo called, to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is ſeven degrees more North, but ſhooteth, as that doth, with a point or Promontory into the main *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South of *Salla*. 2. *Durdus*, extended alſo into *Cæſarienſis*. 3. *Diur*. 4. *Phocra*, of which little memorable. Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Sala*. 2. *Subur*, 3. *Zilia*, 4. *Phuth*, 5. *Diur*, 6. *Cuſa*; all falling into the *Atlantick*: this laſt the ſame, as I conjecture, which our modern Writers call *Ommirabili*. And for the reſt, we muſt find amongſt them, 1. *Siſelmel*, 2. *Tenſift*. 3. *Niffis*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Metagonitæ* neer the Streits, giving name unto *Metagonitis* an adjoyning Promontory; the *Succoſii*, *Verbicæ*, *Nectiberes*, *Vacuatæ*, *Voli*; and on the Eaſt-ſide the *Mauruſii*: Theſe laſt participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the Latines, *Mauri*; by the Greeks, *Mauruſii*: The Etymologie as before. Their deſcent originally from *Phut*, the ſon of *Cham*; whoſe memory preſerved here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Chanaanites*, of the ſame extraction, ſerved but as an *Acceſſory*. From thoſe two fountains ſprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*. Governed by Kings; the moſt conſiderable of which, when firſt known to the *Romans*, was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his friend and ſon in law, into the hands of the *Romans*: gratified for that treachery with the Country of the *Maſæſyli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hiempſal* one of his ſons was, not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole Eſtates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax* and *Maſiniſſa* united by this means in the perſon of *Juba*, one of his poſterity; the moſt potent Prince of all theſe parts: who falling in the *African* war againſt *Julius Cæſar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Criſpus Saluſtius* being made the firſt Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Ampſagus*, he gave to *Bocchus*, and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but deſcended of the old Regal family. *Bogud* unluckily taking part with *Mark Antony* againſt *Auguſtus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other ſide, diſpoſſeſſed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Feſſe*;) in which confirmed for his good ſervice, by the conquering Emperour. *Juba*, the ſon of the former *Juba*, grown famous for his eminent learning, was of a Priſoner made a Prince: inveſted after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his father, except *Numidia*: and by the bounty of *Auguſtus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the marriage of *Selene*, daughter of *Antony* and *Cleopatra*. After whoſe death, and the death of *Ptolomy* their ſon, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the patrimony of the *Roman* Empire: divided into two Provinces, *viz. Cæſarienſis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Ampſaga*, now the Kingdom of *Tremenſen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Weſtern Ocean. This laſt divided into *Tingitana*, and *Sitifenſis*, (the River now called *Ommirabili* being the boundary betwixt them) by the Emperour *Conſtantine*: who leaving *Sitifenſis* to the Dioceſe of *Africk*. laid *Tingitania* (why I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*; they became members of thoſe Empires; in the declining of the laſt, divided into the two Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, to the deſcription and hiſtory whereof we do now proceed.

3. *MOROCCO.*

THe Kingdom of *MOROCCO* hath on the Eaſt the River *Malva*,by which parted from *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North the Kingdom of *Feſſe*, So called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it; in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Sitifenſis*. from *Sitiphis*, in thoſe times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Countrey ſaid to be fruitful of all things neceſſary to life, pleaſing to the ſight, and ſweet to ſmell to: particularly, well ſtored with Grain and Pulſe, plentiful of Oyl, Honey and Sugar, liberally furniſhed with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all ſorts of fruits: exceedingly well ſtocked with Cattel, but with Goats eſpecially; whoſe skins afford a very excellent kind of leather, and of their fleece materials for the fineſt Chamlets, which are here made in moſt of their Cities. The whole Country divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts, *viz.* 1. *Guzzula*, 2. *Sus*, 3. *Morocco* ſpecially ſo called, 4. *Hea*, 5. *Haſcora*, 6. *Duccala*, and 7. *Tedles*.

1. *GUZZULA*, the moſt Southern Province of this Kingdom, hath on the Eaſt, ſome part of *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, *Sus* or *Suſa*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains called *Ilda*; on the South Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the territory of *Morocco*, and the reſt of *Suſa*. The Countrey rich in Mines of Braſs, Iron, and other metals,of which are made many *Vtenſils* for domeſtick uſes, exported hence into other places.

The People Barbarous and rude, not eaſily acknowledging ſubjection to the Kings of *Morocco*; and at continual wars amongſt themſelves, except only for two moneths in the year; which being the time of their publike Marts, and then much viſited with Strangers from other Countries, they lay aſide their private quarrels, and cheerfully entertain ſuch *Merchants* as repair unto them. Walled Towns here are not any,but ſome very great Villages: the chief whereof, 1. *Guzzula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sus*, whence the name of the Province. 2. *Tagreſſa*, not far off, but on the other ſide of the water, towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Tedza*, inclining towards the borders of *Morocco*. Of theſe nothing memorable.

2. Weſt of *Guzzula*, lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, ſo called from the River *Sus*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold-Mines, the cauſe of continual wars amongſt the people: well ſtored with *Sugar-Canes*, which the Inhabitants know neither how to boil nor purifie; and on the Sea-ſhores, furniſhed with great plenty of *Amber*, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an eaſie rate. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Cape D'Aguer*, on a Promontory ſo called; a place of ſuch importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* then King of *Sus* (after of *Morocco* alſo) made them quit all the Forts which they had in this Countrey. 2. *Tagavaſt*, a rich and wealthy Town; the greateſt in the Province, and ſituate in a large plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3. *Teijent*, ſituate in a ſpacious Plain alſo, but on the Banks of the River *Sus*: divided into three parts, each a mile from the other; which joyned together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. 4. *Meſſa*, or *Maſſa*, ſeated at the influx of the ſaid River, on the Promontory called *Cape Gilon*; three Towns in one: not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land, as ſeated in a barren and unpleaſing ſoil; remarkable for a fair Temple, the beams and rafters of which are made of the bones of *Whales*, which uſually are left dead on the ſhore. 5. *Tarodant*, a large Town, built by the *Africans*,before the conqueſt of this Countrey by the *Goths* or *Saracens*: the Reſidence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Feſſe*, when the Lords of this Kingdom; but more enriched of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce,the people made more civil than in other parts of this Province: the whole number of them thought to amount to 3000 families. 6. *Tedza*, more within the land, bigger than *Taradant*, but leſs wealthy; the chief Ornament of it being a fair *Mahometan* Temple, liberally furniſhed with Prieſts and Readers of that Law,at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchiſa*, where it ſnoweth at all ſeaſons of the year, and yet the people go extreme thin in the ſharpeſt Winter. Nothing elſe memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriffe* made himſelf King of *Morocco*, it had the title of a Kingdom; and gave the title of King to *Mahomet* the ſecond *Xeriffe*, made King of *Taradant* or *Sus*, before he diſpoſſeſſed his brother of the Crown of *Morocco*.

3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCCO*, ſpecially ſo called, the moſt fruitful and beſt peopled part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lombardy* in wealth, and pleaſures; the very Hills hereof as fruitful as the Vallies in other places. To which fertility of the ſoil, the Rivers, 1. *Tenſift*, and 2. *Aſifinuad*, give no ſmall advantage; though much defaced by the frequent incurſions of the *Portugals*, who have extreamly ſpoiled this Country. Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Delgumaba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills; at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Aſifinuad*. 2. *Elgiumba*, a ſmall but ancient Town, on the River *Siſſeva*. 3. *Teſraſt*, a ſmall Town upon *Aſifinuad*. 4. *Imizmizi*, ſituate on a Rock, ſpacious, and ſeated neer the entrance of a narrow way leading into *Guzzala*. 5. *Tenezze*, an old Town, but very well fortified. 6. *Agnet*, upon the River *Tenſift*, all ruined except the Fort, and ſome ſcattered houſes: formerly ſecond unto none but *Morocco*, (from which diſtant 24 miles;) the Hills and Valley about it adorned with pleaſant Gardens, fruitful Vineyards, a fair River, and Fields ſo fertile, that they yield a fifty fold increaſe. 7. *Secſina*, where they have ſnow at all times of the year. 8. *Temnella*, an *Heretical* Town, differing in opinion from the reſt of the *Mahometan* Sect; and ſo well-grounded in their Tenets, that they challenge all their *Oppoſites* to a Diſ-

putation. 9. *Hantera*, very full of *Jews*. 10. *Morocco*, the principal of this Province, and of all the Kingdom, ſituate in or near the place where once ſtood the *Bocanum Hemerum* of *Ptolomy*. Once reckoned amongſt the greateſt Cities of the World, at what time it was ſaid to contain 100000 families: ſince ſo defaced and waſted by the depredations of the *Arabians*, and the removal of the Seat-Royal to *Feſſe*, when that Kingdom was in the *Aſcendent*, that it is hardly a third part ſo great as formerly. The founder of it *Joſeph*, ſirnamed *Teleſinus*, the ſecond King of the houſe of the *Almoravides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Mumen*, one of his ſucceſſors. The principal buildings in it, are the Church and the Caſtle: the Church or *Moſque*; one of the greateſt in the World, adorned with many ſumptuous pillars, brought out of *Spain*, when the *Mores* had the poſſeſſion of that Country: and beautified with a ſtately Steeple, in compaſs at the bottom an hundred yards, and of ſo great height, that the Hills of *Azati* (one of the branches of the Leſſer *Atlas*) being 130 miles diſtant, may be thence eaſily diſcerned: the Caſtle very large, and ſtrong, on a Tower whereof ſtand three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary* Duckets: which divers Kings have gone about to take down, and convert into money, but all deſiſted in regard of ſome croſs accident or other which befel them in it; inſomuch that the common people think them to be guarded with ſpirits.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further ſide of *Tenſift* and *Aſiſinnad*, is the Province of *HEA*: rough, mountainous, and woody, yet watered with many pleaſant Rils, and would be plentiful enough in all commodities, if the induſtry of the people were not wanting to it. A ſort of people little better than meerly barbarous, without all *Artiſts*, either Ingenious or Mechanick; except ſome *Chirurgeans*, whom they keep to *circumciſe* their Children; and ſome few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their food a Pap made of Barley-meal, which in ſtead of Spoons, they claw forth with their fingers; the Ground they eat on, ſerving for table, ſtools and napkins. At endleſs feud with one another; yet ſo kind to ſtrangers, that in one of their chief Towns, called *Tedneſt*, the Gentlemen uſed to caſt lots who ſhould entertain them. A town of good eſteem in former times, ſituate in a large Plain on the River *Tenſift*; but in the year 1514. almoſt wholly abandoned, upon a rumor that the *Arabians* had a purpoſe to ſell it to the *Portugals*, 2. *Teculeth*, ſeated on a good Port, and once very well traded, there being in it at that time 1000 families, ſome Hoſpitals, and a beautiful *Moſque*; in the year 1514. deſtroyed by the *Portugals*. 3. *Tenent*, a Sea-town in the hands of the *Portugals*. 4. *Elmuridin*, a ſtrong peece, as the name importeth, the word ſignifying the *Diſciples Fort*, ſo called, becauſe a certain *Heretick* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yields good plenty) retired hither with his *Diſciples*; fortified it and defended it againſt the King of *Morocco*. 5. *Iguillinguiguil*, ſeated on the top of an hill, and fortified, by the Country-people (or old *African-Moors*) againſt the *Arabians*, 6. *Teſethne*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great ſhipping. 7. *Tagleſſe*, a Den of Thieves and Cutthroats. 8. *Teſegdelt*; as courteous and civil, as the other barbarous; At the Gates whereof a Guard is ſet for entertainment of Strangers: whom, if they have no acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in ſome Gentlemans houſe, where it coſts them nothing but thanks, and ſome kind acknowledgment.

5. Northwards of *Hea*, ſtands the Province of *DUCALA*, bounded on the Weſt, with the main *Atlantick*; and on the North, with the River *Ommirobili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Feſſe*. Of three dayes journey long, about two in breadth; thruſting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which ſome of the Ancients called *Ulagium*, others the Promontory of the *Sun*; but by the *Chriſtians* of *Europe* called the Cape of *Cantin*; by the *Moors*, *Gebelelhudic*. Populous enough, the quality of the men conſidered; ignorant both of letters and of all good manners: Yet not ſo populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandoned for fear of the *Portugals*; who have taken all their beſt towns on the Sea-coaſt, and deſtroyed the reſt. Amongſt theſe, 1. *Azaſi*, at the foot of the hills ſo called; ſurpriſed by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Storehouſe for their Merchandiſe. 2. *Azame*, ſeated at the mouth of the River *Ommirobili*, the furtheſt town of this Kingdom towards that of *Feſſe*; the people whereof were extremely addicted unto *Sodomy*, till ſubdued by the *Portugeze*. 3. *Elmedina*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province; but now for fear of thoſe Invaders, in a manner deſolated, 4. *Conte* of the foundation of the *Gothes*, 5. *Tic*, built by the old *African Moors*, but poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, 6. *Subeit*, 7. *Teneracoſt*, 8. *Centpuis*, 9. *Terga*, 10. *Bulahuan*; all ſacked and ruined by the ſame people, when they took *Azomor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is ſaid, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe* paſſing through this Province with an Army, to repreſs theſe inſolencies, at every *Altar* (whereof here are many in the Roads) kneeled, and ſaid unto this effect: *Lord, thou knoweſt that the cauſe of my coming into this wild place, is onely to free this people of* Duccola *from the rebellious and wicked* Arabians, *and their cruel Enemies the* Chriſtians, *which purpoſe, if thou doeſt not approve of, let the puniſhment fall upon my perſon, but not upon my followers, who deſerve it not.* With greater piety, than could be looked for from a blind *Mahometan*.

6. Eaſtward of *Duccala*, along the banks of *Ommirobili*, lieth the Province of *HASCORA*, a fruitful Country, intermixt of rich fields and pleaſant gardens: furniſhed with moſt ſorts of choiſeſt fruits; and amongſt others, Grapes of ſuch extraordinary greatneſs, that they are ſaid to be as big as a Pullets egg. Good ſtore of Honey it hath alſo, and ſome Mines of Iron: Inhabited by a more civil people than any of the reſt, and conſequently more deſerving ſo rich a ſoil. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Ezo*, an old town, ſituate on a lofty mountain, 2. *Elvinina*, of a later erection. *Alemdine*, conquered for the King of *Feſſe* by a Merchant, whoſe Paramour the Prince or Governour hereof had taken from him: Situate in a pleaſant, but little Valley, but begirt with hills, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers, 4. *Tagodaſt*, on the top of an hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More Eaſt, betwixt *Haſcora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDLES*, bounded on the Eaſt, with the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the North, with that of *Feſſe*: from which laſt parted by the

River *Servi*, which on the North-eaſt border of it meets with *Ommirobili*. The whole Province in form *triangular*, of no great either length or breadth, but ſufficiently fruitful, and well inhabited for the bigneſs. Some Towns it hath, and thoſe not meanly populous for ſo ſmall a Province; the chief whereof, 1. *Teſza*, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan* Moſques; the walls of which made of a kinde of Marble, which they here call *Teſza*, whence the name of the Town. 2. *Eſza*, ſeated on the River *Ommirobili*, where it receiveth that of *Deyme*; which riſing out of *Atlas Minor*, and paſſing by *Teſza* laſt mentioned, doth here loſe its name. 3. *Chythite*, renowned for the ſtout reſiſtance, which it hath made from time to time againſt thoſe of *Feſſe*. 4. *Ethiad*, abounding in all ſorts of victuals.

Theſe Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*: infeſted miſerably while it remained ſubject to the Kings of *Feſſe*, by the *Portugals* on the one ſide, and the wilde *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which laſt people we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Africk*, they contented themſelves with the command, and left unto the *Natives* the poſſeſſion of it, forbidding the *Arabians* (with whoſe courſe of life they were well acquainted) to paſs over *Nilus*. *Elcain*, the laſt of the Succeſſors of *Hucba* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, having ſubdued the reſt of *Africk*, and added it unto his Eſtate, paſſed forwards into *Egypt*, which he conquered alſo; aſſuming to himſelf the title of *Caliph*: But in his abſence, the Lieutenant, whom he left in *Africk*, rebelled againſt him; and acknowledging the *Caliph* of *Bagdet* for his lawful Lord, received of him for this good ſervice, the Kingdom of *Africa*. Deſpairing to recover his loſt Eſtate, and yet not willing that it ſhould be uſeful unto his Enemies, he licenced the *Arabians* for a *Ducat* a man, to paſs over the *Nile* with their Tents and Families. On which agreement, almoſt half the Tribes of *Arabia Deſerta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africa*; where they ſacked *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the reſt of the principal Cities: tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till reſtrained at laſt by *Joſeph* the founder of *Morocco*, (of whom more hereafter.) Since which time, though they loſt their unlimited Empire, yet they ſtill ſwarm like *Locuſts* over all the Countrey; and neither apply themſelves to tillage, or building houſes, or any civil courſe of life; nor ſuffer thoſe to live in quiet, who would otherwiſe manure and improve the Countrey. The reſt of the Story of theſe Kingdoms we ſhall have anon, when we have taken a Survey of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*.

4. *FESSE*.

THe Kingdom of *FESSE* is bounded on the South, with the Realm of *Morocco*, on the North, with parts of the *Atlantick*, and *Mediterranean*; on the Eaſt, with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* wholly.

It takes this name from *Feſſe* the chief City of it. Known to the ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, ſo called from the City *Tingis* (now *Tanger*) then of greateſt note. Called alſo *Hiſpania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, becauſe a part of that *Dioceſe*: and by ſome (*Pliny* amongſt others) *Bogudiania*, from *Bogud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Caſar*: by others *Ampeluſia*, from its abundance of Vines. The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The Countrey of good temperature in regard of the aire, if not in ſome places of the coldeſt: but very unequally diſpoſed of in reſpect of the earth; here being in it many Deſarts and large Forreſts, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightful Fields. So that taking the eſtimate in the groſs, it may be ſaid to be a rich and flouriſhing Countrey, hardly inferior unto any. The particularities of which are to be conſidered in the *Characters* of the ſeveral Provinces, into which it now doth ſtand divided, that is to ſay, 1. *Temeſna*. 2. *Feſſe*, ſpecially ſo called, 3. *Elchaus*, or *Chaus*, 4. *Garet*, 5. *Algara*. 6. *Erriffe*, and 7. *Habat*.

1. *TEMESNA* hath on the South, the River *Ommirabili*, on the Weſt, the Ocean; extended in length from Weſt to Eaſt 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A champain Countrey, very level; and once ſo populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Caſtles; moſt of them ruined by the wars, and the wilde *Arabians*, the greater deſtroyer of the two. The principal of thoſe remaining. 1. *Teyeget*, near the River *Ommirabili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited onely by poor people, and a few *Smiths* compelled to live there for the making of Iron-inſtruments to manure the land. 2. *Thagia*, on the courſe of the ſaid River; much viſited by thoſe of *Feſſe*, for the Sepulchre of an holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Feſſans* going thither in *pilgrimage* with ſuch numbers of men, women and children, that their Tents ſeem ſufficient to lodge an Army. 3. *Adendun*, more towards the Sea, but on a ſmall River called *Guirla*; well walled, and fenced on one ſide by a Lake, or Pool. 4. *Amſa*, on the ſhore of the *Atlantick*, once of great Trade, and well frequented, both by the *Engliſh* and the *Portugals*, by which laſt deſtroyed. 5. *Munſor*, deſtroyed in like manner by the wilde *Arabians*. 6. *Nuchaida*, ſituate in ſo fertile and rich a ſoil; that the inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of ſhooes. Nothing now left of it but one Steeple, and a piece of the wall. 7. *Rabut*, or *Rubut*, built by *Manſor*, or *Almanſor*, a King of *Morocco*, near the mouth of the River *Burugrug*; and by him made one of the beſt peopled Towns in *Africk*: built after the model of *Morocco*, but now ſo waſted, that there are not in it above 500 families; moſt of the ground within the walls being turned into Meadows, Vine-yards, and Gardens. 8. *Fanzara*, on the River *Subu*, the *Subur* of *Ptolomy*, falling not far off into the other. 9. *Mahmora*, in the ſame tract alſo, once poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; near which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Feſſe*, for want of good intelligence betwixt them and the *Caſtilians*. 10. *Sala*, the *Sala* of *Ptolomy*, by the Inhabitants called *Zale*, in ordinary Maps by miſtaking, *Cale*; at the mouth of the River *Rebata*, which the ancient Writers called *Sala*, as they named the Town. Beautified by King *Almanſor* (who is here interred) with a ſtately Palace, a goodly Hoſpital, a fair Temple, and an Hall of Marble, cut in *Moſaick* works: intended for the burial-place of his poſterity. A Town much

traded formerly by the Chriſtian Merchants of *England*, *Flanders*, *Genoa*, and the Golf of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards*, An.1287. and within ten dayes loſt again: and of late times made a neſt of *Pirates*, as dangerous to thoſe which ſailed in the Ocean, as the *Pirates* of *Algiers* to the *Mediterranean*. Whoſe Inſolencies the King of *Morocco* not able to ſuppreſs for want of ſhipping, deſired the Aid of his Majeſty *Charles*, King of *Great Britain*: by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and beſieged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at laſt compelled to yield; the works thereof diſmantled, the *Pirates* executed, and 300 Chriſtian Captives ſent unto His Majeſty, to be by him reſtored to their former Liberty; to the great honour of his Majeſty, and the *Engliſh* Nation, An. 1632.

As for the fortunes of this Province, they have been ſomwhat different from the reſt of this Kingdom trained by a factious Prophet to revolt from the King of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, whoſe Eſtate they very much endangered; ſending an Army of 50000 men to the Gates of *Morocco*; but being diſcomfited by *Joſeph*, ſirnamed *Telephinus*, he followed them into their own Country, which he waſted with great cruelty for ten moneths together; conſuming above a Million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lions. Repeopled afterwards by *Almanſor* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* Family, to more civil Inhabitants; by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province conſequently reduced into ſome good order.

2. Weſtward of *Temeſna* lieth the Province of *FESSE*, properly and ſpecially ſo called. Extended in length from the River *Burugrug*, to the River *Inavis*, for the ſpace of 100 miles. A very fruitful Province, well ſtored with Cattel, and exceeding populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better ſort of Towns in other places: but contrary to the cuſtom of other Countreys, better inhabited on the hils than amongſt the Vallies; the people making choyce of the Mountains for their habitation, as places of defence and ſafety, but husbanding the vallies which lie neareſt to them. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Macarmeda*, on the River *Inavis*, in a goodly plain, but in a manner all ruined, except the Walls. 2. *Gualili*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the firſt Founder of *Feſſe*. 3. *Peitra Roſſa*, where they have ſome Lyons ſo tame, that they will gather up bones in the ſtreets like Dogs, without hurting any body. 4. *Agla*, where they have brought their Lyons to ſo ſtrange a cowardiſe, that they will run away at the voyce of a child; whence a *Bracchadochio* is called proverbially a *Lyon* of *Agata*. 5. *Pharao*, by reaſon of the name, thought by the vulgar to be founded by ſome King of *Egypt*; but the *Latine* Inſcriptions therein found, declare it to have been ſome work of the ancient *Romans*. 6. *Maquille*, of more antiquity than note. 7. *Feſſe*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, ſuppoſed to be the *Volabilis* of *Ptolomy*, but much enlarged and beautified by ſome new Acceſſions. Situate for the moſt part upon little hillocks, and watered by a pleaſant and gentle River (derived by *Aquaducts* and Conduits, into all parts of the City) which they now call the River of *Feſſe*, conceived by ſome learned men to be that which was anciently called *Phuth*, from *Phut* the firſt Planter of the *African* Nations. A City ſo beautiful and well ſeated, as if Nature and Art had played the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their dalliance. The Founder or Enlarger of it, one of the Race of the falſe Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the Eaſt-ſide of the River; that on the Weſt-ſide, being the Work of one of his Sons: both ſo increaſing, that at laſt they were joyned together. To theſe the Suburbs being added, have made a third. The whole called *Feſſe*, from *Fez*, an *Arabick* word, ſignifying *Gold*; whereof great quantity was found when they digged the Foundations. Divided into three parts by the River, all of which contain 82000 houſholds, and 700 *Moſchees*, or *Saracenical* Temples: the chief of which is *Carne* or *Carnuen*, being a mile and a half in compaſs. It hath 31 Gates, great and high; the roof 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about, divers Porches, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, the publick ſtore-houſes of the Town. About the wals are Pulpits of divers ſorts, wherein the Maſters of their Law read unto the People, ſuch things, as they think to pertain to their ſalvation. The *Revenue* hereof is 200 Ducats a day of the old Rents, for ſo it was, *An.* 1526. when *Leo Afer* wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or *Exchange*, incloſed with a ſtrong wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 ſtreets. There is alſo a Colledge called *Amarodoc*, a moſt curious and delicate Building. It hath three Cloyſters of admirable beauty, ſupported with eight ſquare pillars of divers colours: The roof curiouſly carved, and the Arches of *Moſaique* work, of Gold and Azure. The Gates of Braſs, fair wrought; and the doors of the private Chambers of inlayed work. This Colledge did coſt the Founder, King *Abuchenen*, or *Abu Henen*, 480000 Crowns. Here are finally ſaid to be in it many *Hoſpitals*, little inferiour to the Colledges in building and beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred *hot Bathes* well built, with four Hals to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their Cloaths when they go to bath themſelves: and beſides theſe 200 Innes, built three Stories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with Galleries before all the doors for their Gueſts to walk in.

3. Eaſtward of the Territory of *Feſſe*, lieth the Province of *CHAUS*, extended in length from the River *Gurngrut*, or *Gurgnigarn*, by which parted from *Temeſna*, and *Feſſe*, to the borders of *Tremeſen*, for the ſpace of 190 miles, and 170 miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom: but meanly populous for the bigneſs, the Countrey being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants fierce and warlike; more given to proſecute their quarrels, than to trade, or Tillage. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Ham Liſnan*, a Town built in the more mountainous parts of the Countrey, by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worſhipped; to which at certain times men and women reſorted in the night; where, after their devotions ended, and the *Candles* put out, every man lay with the woman he firſt touched; the exact platform of the *Family of Love*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but falſly, charged on the *Primitive* Chriſtians. 2. *Tezza*, adorned

with three Colledges, many Baths, and Hoſpitals; and ſome beautiful Temples; one of them larger though not fairer than that of *Feſſe*, in both Towns men of the ſame trade have a ſtreet by themſelves; for greatneſs, wealth, and numbers of People, eſteemed the third City of this Kingdom. 3. *Dubdu*, an ancient town, but not much obſervable. 4. *Teurert*, ſeated on the top of an hill, in the midſt of a Plain, but compaſſed about with *Deſarts*. 5. *Beni Jeſſeten*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greateſt bravery and wealth conſiſteth: the women here wearing Iron-rings, for Ornaments to their ears and fingers. 6. *Tezergui*, ſubject to the *Arabians*. 7. *Adaggia*, the moſt Eaſtern Town of all this Region; ſituate in a *Peninſula*, made by the confluences of *Muluſo* and *Malva*. In this Country is the head of the River *Subur*, which riſing out of a great Lake in the woods of the Mountain *Seligus*, and receiving many leſſer waters, with a large and navigable ſtream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northwards of *Chaus* lieth the Region called *GARET*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*, and reaching Eaſt and Weſt, from the River *Malva*, where it bordereth on *Tremeſen*, to that of *Nochor*, where it toucheth on *Errif*, and *Aſgara*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but twenty. The ſoyl in moſt places dry and deſart, like the Sands of *Numidia*: eſpecially all along the banks of the *Malva*, near unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Chaus*, it is wholly *deſart* and unpeopled, not well inhabited in the moſt fruitful parts of it, being full of mountains, the worſe for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, poſſeſſed of 1. *Cheſuſa*, and 2. *Medela*, two chief Towns hereof. 3. *Pennon* de *Veles*, by ſome called *Velez de Gomera*, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains; built by the *Africans* or *Gothes*, but now in the poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards* alſo. 4. *Jafferin*, ſituate on the Sea alſo, founded by the *Mahometans* of the *Marine* Family. 5. *Tezzora* ſtanding on an hill, to which there is but one paſſage only.

5. Weſtward of *Garet* lieth *ASGARA*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: Shut up on the South eaſt-ſide with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which laſt runneth the River *Luccus*, called *Lix* by *Ptolomy*. The Air hereof very temperate, and the ſoyl as fertile; ſupplying with the overplus of its commodities, the mountainous parts of *Feſſe*, and the Deſarts of *Garet*. Once full of Towns, till ruined and deſtroyed by the wars. A Monument whereof, 1. *Giumba*, built by the ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2. *Larache*, in *Latine Lariſſa*, the *Lixa* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Luccus*, and furniſhed with a good Port, but of difficult entrance; garriſoned when poſſeſſed by the *Moors* with 300 light horſe, and 300 *Harcabuziers*; but better fortified than before, ſince poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, into whoſe hands it was put by *Muley-Shek*, King of *Morocco* and *Feſſe*; when worſted by *Muley Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the civil Wars betwixt them. 3. *Cuſar Elcabir*, given by *Almanſer* to a poor Fiſher, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his cottage, when he loſt his company in Hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one College of Students, and a ſtately Hoſpital.

6. On the North of *Aſgara* is the Province of *EL-HABAT*, or *HABAT* coaſting along the *Atlantick* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streights*, in length 100 miles, about 80 in breadth. The Countrey very plentiful of all manner of neceſſaries, and very well peopled; the Mountains which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times repleniſhed with many Cities, both of the foundation of the *Gothes*, *Romans*, and old *African Moors*, now much diminiſhed by the wars. Thoſe of moſt note, 1. *Ezaggen*, the Inhabitants whereof by an ancient priviledge granted by the Kings of *Feſſe*, were licenſed to drink Wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a mountain, near the River *Guarga*, about 35 Leagues from *Feſſe*; and garriſoned with 400 Horſe for fear of the *Portugals*, who ſomtimes make their excurſions thither. 2. *Baſra*, once a walled Town, and the wals ſtill ſtanding, but very little or no Town in them. 3. *Homar*, ſomtimes well-peopled, but now little inhabited, by reaſon of the ill-neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coaſt. 4. *Banirendo*, in a manner deſerted for the ſame reaſon. 5. *Alcazaer*, to diſtinguiſh it from another of this name, called *Alcazer Guer*, taken together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier* by *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1470. Nigh to which Town the three Kings *Sebaſtian*, of *Portugal*, *Mahomet*, and *Abdemelech*, Competitors for this Kingdom, were ſlain in a day. There was alſo ſlain at the ſame time, the great *Engliſh* Rebel *Stuckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, *Anno* 1570. Where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church; by whom appointed for the conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for that end furniſhed with 800 Souldiers paid by the King of *Spain*, and by his *Holineſs* created Marqueſs of *Leinſter*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Caterlogh*, Viſcount *Murraugh*, and Baron of *Roſſe*. Thus furniſhed, he began his Journey toward *Ireland*, *Anno* 1578. But hearing of theſe Wars, and deſirous to make a party in them, he loſt all his Honours with his Life. 6. *Arzilla*, a Sea-town, 70 miles diſtant from the *Streights*, now poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. 7. *Tanger*, a great Town, and very ancient, diſtant from the *Streits* about 30 miles, belonging to the *Portugals* alſo. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Canaanites*, and by them built at their firſt coming thither, when they fled from the Sword of *Joſuah*; teſtified by the two Pillars erected near this City, which before we ſpoke of: and from that name cauſed all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingitania*. Made afterwards a Colony by the Emperour *Claudius*, who named it *Traducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and out-lived the new. Near to this Town it is ſaid that *Hercules* overcame *Antæus*, a monſtrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was an high Mountain called *Abyla*, oppoſite to which in the Coaſt of *Spain*, was another called *Calpe*, on which the ſaid *Hercules* placed his ſo famous Pillars. 8. *Septa*, or *Seuta*, ſituate on, or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the title of an Earl to *Julian*, who firſt brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colledges, and Learned men: taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *Engliſh*, An. 1415. and now in the poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the Eſtates of *Portugal*, which in the late

revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. 9. *Julia Conſtantia*, ſo called, and made a *Roman* Colony, by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 10. *Laxus*, a *Roman* Colony of the plantation of *Claudius*, in old times ſaid to have been the Court or Palace of the Giant *Antæus*. Not far from whence (that *Antæus* might not dwell alone) the old *Geographers* have placed the habitation of *Gerion*, as proper a Gentleman as himſelf, in a ſmall Iſland of the *Streits*, called *Gerionis Inſula*, and by ſome *Erythia*.

7. Eaſtward of *Habat* is the Province of *ERRIF*, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Nochor* (ſuppoſed to be the *Meluchath* of the ancient Writers) by which parted from *Garit*: A mountainous and cold Countrey in reſpect of the reſt of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Forreſts; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives, and not without ſome herds of Goats, though otherwiſe not well ſtored with Cattel. In length 140 miles, in breadth 40 only; inhabited by a Race of valiant men, but exceſſive *Drunkards*. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages: The chief of which, 1. *Mazagon*, near unto the *Streits*, a very ſtrong Town, and of great importance, but poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*: in vain beſieged by *Abdalla* the firſt, with an Army of 200000 men, *An.* 1562. 2. *Mezemme*, ſeated on a Mountain. 3. *Beni-Jerſo*, of like ſituation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Profeſſors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publickly taught it, as in an Univerſity; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all Exactions. Deſtroyed together with the *Library* of it, by ſome wicked Tyrant, *Anno* 1509. the Books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats. 4. *Terga*. 5. *Tegaſſa*. 6. *Gebbe*, of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of theſe two Kingdoms, we muſt next look upon them alſo in the general ſtory, from the time of the *Saracenical* conqueſt; Firſt let into this Countrey by the Treaſon of *Julian*, and for a while ſubject to the great *Caliph*, or Succeſſor of *Mahomet*: afterwards to the King, or *Caliph* of *Cairoan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, theſe Provinces with the reſt were afflicted by them; till the riſing of the Kingdom of *Fez*: begun in the perſon of *Idris*, of the bloud of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his Daughter *Fatima*; commonly called the Family of *Alaveci*; who perſecuted by the oppoſite Faction, fled into *Mauritania*, where he grew into ſuch reputation, that in ſhort time he got both ſwords into his hands. Dying about the 185 year of the *Hegira*, he left his power unto his ſon, of the ſame name with his Father, the firſt Founder of *Feſſe*. Oppoſite whereunto on the other ſide of the waters one of his ſons, (but his name I find not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raiſing by that means a Faction in the Houſe of *Idris*, which occaſioned the ſubverſion of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alaveci*, for the ſpace of 270 years. The eſtate hereof firſt weakned by *Abu Teſin*, or *Texifien*, of the houſe of the *Almoravides*, or *Lantunes*, and ſo weakned, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Joſeph Aben Teiſin*, or *Telephine*, his Son and Succeſſor, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocca*, to ſuppreſs that Family: Who killing the Princes of that Line, and 30000 of their Subjects, brake down the wals which parted the two Cities from one another, united them by Bridges, and ſo made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the Diſſention of the *Saracens* there amongſt themſelves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom, unto his Dominions: held by his Succeſſors, as long as they were able to hold **Morocco**: the Catalogue of which Princes, called the houſe or family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almohades*, is this which followeth.

The Kings, or MIRAMOMOLIMS of MOROCCO.

A.Ch.

1068. 1 *Teiſin*, *Texifion*, or *Telephine*, the firſt of the *Almoravides*, that reigned in *Africk*.

2 *Joſeph*, ſirnamed *Telephinus*, the ſon of *Teiſin*, founded **Morocco**, ſubdued the Kingdom of *Feſſe*; and added the Eſtate of the **Moors** in *Spain* unto his Dominions, An. 1091.

3 *Hali*, the ſon of *Joſeph*.

4 *Albo-Halis*, the ſon of *Hali*, ſuppoſed to be the Publiſher of the Works now extant in the name of *Avicenne*, compiled at his command by ſome of the moſt Learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquiſhed and ſlain by

5 **Abdelmon**, or **Abdel-Mumen**, the firſt of the *Almohades*; of obſcure Parentage, but raiſed to ſo great power by the practiſes of **Almohad**, a jugling *Prophet* of thoſe times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of the *Almoravides*, both in *Spain* and *Africk*, An. 1150. to which he alſo added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoan*.

6 *Joſeph* II. or *Aben-Joſeph*, the ſon of *Abdelmon*.

7 *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, ſirnamed **Almanſor**, a puiſſant and prudent Prince, of whom much before; ſon of *Joſeph* II.

8 **Mahomet**, ſirnamed *Enaſer*, or the *Green*, the Brother of **Almanſor**. Diſcomfited by the *Chriſtians* of *Spain*, at the Battel of *Sierra Morena*, An. 1214. loſt his Dominions; there being ſlain in this battel 200000 of the **Moors**, as ſome Writers ſay; who add, that the *Spaniards* for two dayes together burnt no other fewel but the Pikes, Lances, and Arrows of their ſlaughtered Enemies, yet could not conſume the one half of them.

9 *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of **Mahomet** *Enaſer*, by his ſon *Buxaf*, ſlain at the ſiege of *Tremezezir*, a Caſtle of *Tremeſin*, which was held againſt him.

10 *Almorcada*, a Kinſman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his eſtate, and ſlain by *Budebuz*, of the ſame houſe of the **Almohades**,

11 *Budebuz*, the laſt of the houſe of the *Almohades*, ſetled in this eſtate by the aid and valour of *Jacob Aben-Joſeph* the new King

of *Feſſe*: but dealing faithleſſely and ungratefully with him, he was warred on by the ſaid *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*, vanquiſhed and ſlain in battel; the ſoveraignty by that means tranſlated unto thoſe of the *Marine* family, An. 1270. or thereabouts.

But before I do proceed further with this *Marine* family, I muſt again look back upon *Mahomet Enaſer*, whom I conceive (the putation of the time being ſo agreeable) to be the *Admiralius Murmelius* mentioned by *Matthew Paris*, to whom our King *John*, An. 1214. is ſaid to have ſent ſuch a degenerous and unchriſtian Embaſſage. Which ſtrange name of *Admiralius Murmelius*, was by that good Writer unhappily ſtumbled at, in ſtead of *Miramomolim* (which alſo is corrupted from *Amir Elmumenim*, that is to ſay, *Princeps fidelium*) an Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen-Moors* did much affect, and retained it long time amongſt them. The Story this, King *John* being overlaid by his *Barons* wars, and the Invaſion of the *French*, ſent Ambaſſadors to this great Prince (then ruling over a great part of *Spain* and *Barbary*) for aid againſt them: offering to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive withal the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moor* exceedingly offended at it, told the Ambaſſadors, that he had lately read the Book of *Pauls* Epiſtles, which he liked ſo well, that were he now to chuſe a Religion, he would have embraced *Chriſtianity* before any other: But every man (ſaith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greateſt thing which he diſliked in that Apoſtle, being (as he ſaid) the changing of the *Faith* in which he was born. This ſaid, he called unto him *Robert* of *London* Clark, one of the Ambaſſadors (a man ill choſe for ſuch an Errand, if the tale be true) of whom he demanded the Form of the *Engliſh* Government, the ſituation and wealth of the Countrey, the manners of the people, the Life and Perſon of the King: in which being ſatisfied, he grew into ſuch a diſlike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the ſubſtance of the ſtory in **Matthew Paris**: But you muſt know he was a *Monk*, to which brood of men King *John* was held for a mortal Enemy; and therefore this Relation not to paſs for Goſpel.

But whatſoever opinion King *John* might have of the power of this King (to whom 'tis poſſible enough he might ſend for aid) certain it is, that he was grown ſo low in his reputation, after the loſs of that great battel in *Siera Morena*: that not only the *Spaniſh Moors* withdrew their obedience from him (as a Prince unable to ſupport them, but thoſe of *Africk* did revolt alſo from the Crown of M*orocco* (extreamly weakned by that blow) after his deceaſe. For *Gomoranca Aben Zein* of the houſe of *Abdaluad*, ſeized upon *Tremeſen*, in the time of *Caid Arrax* his Succeſſour; as *Bucar Aben* Merin of the noble M*arine* Family deſcended from a *Chriſtian* ſtock) did the like at *Fez*. Setled in his eſtate by the vanquiſhment of *Almorcada* the Miramomolim; he left it to *Hiaja* his ſon, under the governance and protection of a Brother of his called *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*. But the young Prince dying ſhortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle; who aiding *Budebuz* (before mentioned) diſpoſſeſſed *Almorcada* of the Realm of Morocco, and afterwards having juſt cauſe of quarrel againſt this *Budebuz*, invaded his Dominions, overcame and ſlew him; and once again transferred the Imperial Seat from M*orocco* to *Fez*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine* Family, who held their reſidence in *Fez*, as the firſt Seat of their power; *Morocco* being governed by an under King, the reſt of the Provinces of that Kingdom *cantonned* into ſeveral States; the Sea-coaſts in ſome tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his Line (but with great confuſions) the royal Dignity remained till the year 1500. and ſomwhat after. Three only were of note in the courſe of buſineſs, that is to ſay, 1. *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*, the advancer of the *Marine* Family to the Realm of *Morocco*; the eſtabliſher thereof in that of *Feſſe*; and of great power and influence in the affairs of the M*oors* in *Spain*, where he held *Algarir* and *Tariffe*, Towns of great importance; ſlain treacherouſly by one of his familiar friends, at the ſiege of *Tremeſen*. 2. *Aben-Joſeph* the ſecond, a younger ſon of this firſt *Joſeph* (the iſſue of *Bucalo* his elder Brother being quite extinct) ſucceeded after *Abortado*, the ſixth of the M*arine* Family, in the Throne of his Father; and had added thereunto the Realm of *Tremeſen*, if not diverted by the revolt of *Alboali* his eldeſt ſon, continually in Arms againſt him. 3. *Alboacen*, the ſon of this *Aben-Joſeph*, and the eighth of the M*arine* Family, who after a ſiege of 30 moneths, took the City of *Tremeſen*, and with that the Kingdom. But not ſo fortunate in his wars againſt the *Chriſtian* Kings of *Spain*, againſt whom he led an Army of 400000 Foot, and 70000 Horſe, with all other neceſſaries: but vanquiſhed by the two Kings of *Caſtile* and *Portugal*, with far leſſer Forces (their Army conſiſting but of 25000 Foot, and 14000 horſe) at the River of *Salado*, not far from *Tariffe*, An. 1340. Depoſed ſoon after his return by his Son *Alboanen*, who loſt all which his Father and the firſt of the *Aben Joſephs* had gained in *Spain*; their Empire after this declining even in *Africk* it ſelf: the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*, and the greateſt part of the new Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themſelves from their obedience in the Eaſt parts of *Barbary*; as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the Weſt. The Kingdom of the M*arines* thus approaching near its fatal period, it fortuned about the year 1508. that M*ahomet Ben Amet* a Native of *Dara*, in the further *Numidia*, or *Bilodulgerid*, pretending a deſcent from their Prophet M*ahomet*, cauſed himſelf to be called *Xeriffe*, the name by which the kindred and Succeſſors of that *Impoſtor* uſe to call themſelves: and being a poor *Hermit* only (with which **Mountebanks** and the high opinion of their Sanctity, this people have from time to time been extreamly fooled) plotted to make his ſons the chief Princes of M*auritania*. To this end he ſent them in Pilgrimage to M*eccha*, whence they returned with ſuch an opinion of Sanctity, that M*ahomet* King of *Feſſe*, made *Amet* the ſecond of them Governour of the famous Colledge of *Amadurach*; the youngeſt called M*ahomet*, Tutor to his Children; the eldeſt named *Abdel*, ſtaying at home with his Father, to expect the iſſue, ſlain afterwards in the war undertaken by the other two againſt the *Portugals*. In thoſe dayes the *Portugals* grievouſly infeſted the Provinces of the Realm of M*orocco*; to repreſs whoſe Inſolencies, M*ahomet* and *Amet* obtained Commiſſion: though much oppoſed therein by *Muley* the Kings brother, who told him how unſafe it was to truſt to an armed hypocriſie: aſſuring him, that if they once came unto any power (which under colour of Religion they might quickly raiſe) it would not be eaſie to ſuppreſs them. But this good counſel was rejected, and the war went forward. Furniſhed with an Army, they diſcomfit *Lopes Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* forces under King *Emanuel*; compel that King to abandon all his footing there; they ſubdue *Duccala*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City, poiſon the tributary King, and ſalute *Amet* King thereof by the name of the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, inveſting *Mahomet* the other brother in the Kingdom of *Sus*. In the career of their ſucceſſes died the King of *Feſſe*; and *Amet* his ſucceſſor, an improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam*-Tutors in their new Eſtates, conditioned they ſhould hold of him as the Lord in chief; and pay him the accuſtomed tributes.

The XERIFFES of MOROCCO.

A.C.

1 *Amet* denied both tribute and ſuperiority to the King of *Fez*, whom he overthrew in a ſet field; and was after vanquiſhed and diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdom, (upon ſome quarrel breaking out) by his brother *Mahomet*.

1544. 2 *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Feſſe* unto it alſo by the vanquiſhment of *Amet* the King thereof; ſlain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.

1557. 3 *Abdalla*, the ſon of *Mahomet*.

1572. 4 *Abdalla* II. Son of the former, had twelve Brothers, of which he ſlew ten: *Hamet* being ſpared by reaſon of his ſuppoſed ſimplicity, and *Abdelmelech* eſcaping to the *Turks*.

5 *Mahomet* II. Son of *Abdalla* the ſecond, expelled by *Abdelmelech* and the *Turks*, fled to *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugal*, who together with the two Competitors were ſlain in one day at the battel of *Alcazar Guer*, Anno 1578.

A.C.

1578. 6 *Hamet* II. the Brother of *Abdalla* the 2d. who added parts of *Libya*, and *Numidia*, to the Realm of *Morocco*, not abſolutely ſubdued before.

1603. 7 *Muley Sheck* the eldeſt ſon of *Hamet*, oppoſed in his Succeſſion by *Boferes*, and *Sidan*, his two younger brethren; in which War he dyed; as did alſo *Boferes* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, the ſon of *Muley Sheck* had regained *Morocco*.

1607. 8 *Sidan* the third ſon of *Hamet*, immediately on the death of his Father, cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed King of *Fez* (where he was with his father when he died) and having won *Morocco* from *Abdalla* the ſon of *Muley Sheck*, became maſter of that kingdom alſo. Stripped afterwards of *Feſſe* and *Morocco* both, by the oppoſite factions; diſtreſſed by *Hamet Ben Abdela* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himſelf; and aided by *Side Hean* one of like hypocriſie, who ſeemed to aim but at a Limb of that great Eſtate; by whoſe aſſiſtance he was once more poſſeſſed of *Morocco*. Theſe tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Country brought to ſome degree of peace and quietneſs, (though never abſolutely reduced under his command, as in former times;) a Rabble of Pyrats neſt themſelves in *Salla*, a Port-town of the Realm of *Feſſe*: creating thence great miſchief to him both by ſea and land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countries, whoſe buſineſs led them towards thoſe Seas. Unable to ſuppreſs them for want of ſhipping, he craved aid of King *Charles* of *England*: by whoſe aſſiſtance he became Maſter of the Port, deſtroyed the Pyrates, and ſent Three hundred *Chriſtian* Captives for a Preſent to his Sacred Majeſty, *Anno* 1562. Nor ſtaid he here; but aiming at the general good of Trade, and Mankind, he ſent a Letter to His Majeſty to lend him the like aid againſt thoſe of *Algiers*, who did as much infeſt the *Mediterranean*, as the Pyrats of *Salla* did the *Ocean*. The tenor of which Letter, as ſavouring of more piety than could be poſſibly expected from a *Mahometan*, and much conducing to the honour of his Sacred Majeſty, I have here ſubjoyned.

The Letter of the King of MOROCCO, to the King of ENGLAND.

WHen theſe our Letters ſhall be ſo happy as to come to your Majeſties ſight, I wiſh the Spirit of the righteous God may ſo direct your mind, that you may joyfully imbrace the Meſſage I ſend; preſenting to you the means of exalting the Majeſty of God, and your own Reward amongſt men. The Regal power allotted to us, makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of thoſe People whom we govern: So that obſerving the duties we owe to God, we deliver bleſſings to the World; in providing for the publike good of our States, we magnifie the honour of God, like the Celeſtial Bodies, which though they have much veneration, yet ſerve onely to the benefit of the World. It is the Excellencie of our Office, to be

Inſtruments, whereby happineſs is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me Sir! This is not to inſtruct, (for I know I ſpeak to one of a more cleer and quick ſight than my ſelf) but I ſpeak this, becauſe God hath pleaſed to grant me a happy Victory over ſome part of thoſe Rebellious Pyrats, *that have ſo long moleſted the peaceful Trade of* Europe; *and hath preſented further occaſion to root out the generation of thoſe, who have been ſo pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, ſince it hath pleaſed God to be ſo auſpicious to our beginnings in the Conqueſt of* Salla, *that we might joyn and proceed in hope of like ſucceſs, in the war againſt* Tunis, Algier, *and other places (Dens and Receptacles for the inhumane villanies of thoſe who abhor Rule and Government.) Herein whileſt we interrupt the corruption of malignant Spirits of the World, we ſhall glorifie the great God; and perform a Duty that will ſhine as glorions as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may ſee and reverence: A work that ſhall aſcend as ſweet as the perfume of the moſt precious Odours, in the noſtrils of the Lord; A work grateful and happy to men. A work whoſe memory ſhall be reverenced ſo long, as there ſhall be any that delight to hear the Actions of Heroick and magnanimous Spirits; that ſhall laſt as long as there be any remaining amongſt men that love and honour the piety and vertue of Noble minds. This Action I here willingly preſent to You, whoſe piety and vertues equal the greatneſs of your power: that we, who are Servants to the Great and mighty* GOD, *may hand in hand triumph in the glory which this Action preſents unto us. Now becauſe the Iſlands which you govern, have been ever famous for the unconquered ſtrength of their Shipping, I have ſent this my truſty Servant and Ambaſſador, to know whether in your Princely wiſdom you ſhall think fit to aſſiſt me with ſuch Forces by Sea, as ſhall be anſwerable to thoſe I provide by Land: which if you pleaſe to grant, I doubt not but the* Lord of Hoſts *will protect and aſſiſt thoſe that fight in ſo glorious a Cauſe; Nor ought you to think this ſtrange, that I, who much reverence the Peace and accord of Nations, ſhould exhort to a War. Your great Prophet* CHRIST JESUS *was the* Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH, *as well as the* Lord *and* Giver of Peace: *which may ſignifie unto you, that he which is a lover and maintainer of Peace, muſt always appear with the terror of his Sword, and wading through Seas of blood, muſt arrive to Tranquillity. This made* JAMES *your Father of glorious memory, ſo happily renowned amongſt all Nations. It was the noble fame of your Princely vertues, which reſounds to the utmoſt corners of the Earth, that perſwaded me to invite you to partake of that Bleſſing, wherein I boaſt my ſelf moſt happy. I wiſh God may heap riches of his bleſſings on you, increaſe your happineſs with your dayes, and hereafter perpetuate the greatneſs of your Name in all Ages.*

Such was the Letter of that King; whoſe motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles, which not long after brake out in *Scotland*, put off the deſign. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purpoſes, let us take a view of the *Revenues* and *Forces* of this mighty Empire; before the late diſtractions made it leſs conſiderable. And firſt for the *Revenues* of it, the *Xeriffes* are the abſolute Lords of the whole Eſtate, and of his ſubjects, goods and bodies. The tenth and firſt fruits of all ſorts of Fruits, Corn and Cattel, he demands of courſe; though many times contented in the name of the firſts fruits, with one in twenty. The fifth part of a *Ducat* he receiveth for every Acre of Land, throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head whether male or female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandiſe he receiveth of every Native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impoſt alſo upon every Mill. When any of his greater Officers or Judges die, he is ſole Heir of all their Goods: and yet advanceth great ſums by the ſale of thoſe Offices. And in the levying of ſuch Taxes as are extraordinary, he uſeth to demand more than he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate ſomewhat of his Due, may think themſelves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their *Forces*, it is evident in matter of Fact, that *Abdulla* the firſt, at the ſiege of *Mazagon*, a Town held by the *Portugals*, Anno 1562. had no leſs then 200000 men; and that *Abdel-Melech* at the battel of *Alcazar Guez*, againſt King *Sebaſtian*, had 40000 Horſe, and 80000 Foot, beſides Voluntaries, and wild *Arabians*; it being ſuppoſed that he might have raiſed 30000 Horſe more (notwithſtanding the ſtrong party which was made againſt him) had he thought it neceſſary. It is ſaid alſo that *Abdalla* kept in conſtant pay 60000 Horſe, of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of *Sus*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other 20000 in the Kingdom of *Feſſe*: out of which he called 5000 of the beſt and ableſt for the guard of his perſon, well mounted and as richly furniſhed. Beſides theſe he hath bodies of Horſe in continual readineſs, maintained according to the manner of the *Turks Timariots*: and by Penſions given amongſt the Chiefs of the *Arabians*, who live like Outlaws in the mountains, and up and down in the skirts of his Country; is furniſhed at his need with ſupplies from them. Well ſtored with Ammunition alſo, there being 46 *Quintals* of Gun-powder laid up monethly in his famous *Arſenal* at *Morocco*: and yet not able to ſtay long (not above three months) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Proviſions are conſumed, to diſſolve and ſcatter.

THE ISLES OF BARBARY.

THe *ISLES* of *BARBARY*, which make up the fifth and laſt part thereof, are ſituate neer the *African* ſhores of the *Mediterranean*, aſſigned by *Ptolomy* to the Province of *Africa Propria*. In number ſixteen: 1. *Hydras*, 2. *Calathe*, 3. *Dracontias*, now called *Chelbi*, 4. *Ægymnus*, by *Strabo* called *Æginarus*, and now *Gnietta*. 5. *Larunesia*, now *Mollium*, 6. *Lapeduſa*, now *Lampedoſa*, 7. *Meſyrus*, 8. *Pontia*, 9. *Gaia*; all of little note, 10. *Inſula Glauconis*, with a City of the ſame name in it, now called *Goza*, and ſubject to the Knights of *Malta*, 11. *Æthuſa*, by ſome called *Ægusa*, and conſequently miſtaken for *Ægates*, which lieth neer *Sicily*. Of more note are the five that follow, *viz*.

1. *COSTRA*, now called *Pantalaria*, equally diſtant from *Africk* and the Iſle of *Sicil*, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten: Mountainous for the moſt part, and full of a black kind of Stone: the ſoil not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cotton-wool; well ſtored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horſes. The People poor; by Religion *Chriſtians*, and ſubject to the King of *Spain*: very good Swimmers of both ſexes, and in their ſpeech and habit coming neer the *Moors*. It hath a Town in it of the ſame name with the Iſland, ſituate on the Sea-ſide in the Northern part of it, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle.

2. *CERCINA*, now with little difference called *Carchana*, ſituate neer the coaſt of *Africk*, at the entrance (as it were) of the leſſer *Syrtis*: In length 25 miles, in breadth half as much, but in ſome places not above five. Exceeding fruitful in old times, able to furniſh (as they did) the wants of *Cæſar* and his Army, when he warred in *Africk*; *Magno frumenti numero* Cercinæ *invento, naves onerarias, quarum ibi ſatis magna copia, complet, atque in caſtra ad* Cæſarem *mittit*, are the words of the Hiſtory. It hath a Town of the ſame name. Of no great note in way of ſtory, but for an handſome piece of wit here ſhewed by *Annibal*. Who flying from *Carthage*, met here ſome Merchants of that City, who had there ſome ſhipping in the Haven, and ſtanding in ſome doubt leſt by their diſcovery of his flight he might be purſued, pretended a Sacrifice to *Hercules* the *Tyrian* Deity, to which he invited all the Sailers, and borrowed all their Sails to ſet up a tent for their entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them aſleep, he made on for *Aſia*; ſecure enough not to be purſued until out of danger.

3. *LOTOPHAGITIS*, now called *Zerby*, and by ſome *Gerbe*, is ſituate in the bottom of the Bay of *Tripolis*, divided from the main Land by a narrow Ford. The Iſland full of Bogs and Mariſhes, without other water, and in the midſt of it ſomewhat hilly; indifferently fruitful, yielding Dates, Olives, Barley, Mill and the like commodities; inhabited by 30000 men, dwelling in low Cottages, and but ſimply apparelled. It had in it anciently two Cities, 1. *Meninx*, which ſometimes gave name unto the Iſland called *Meninx* by ſome elder Writers, 2. *Gerrapolis*, both now deſtroyed: inſtead whereof there is now one of more note than the reſt, called by the ſame name with the Iſland, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle. Subject unto the *Turks*, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Iſland taken by the *Chriſtian* Fleet, in the year 1559. for the King of *Spain*, to whom *Caravanus* the King thereof did ſubmit himſelf; conditioning to pay the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns, one Camel, four Oſtriches, four Sparrow Hawks, and four Falcons. But the *Chriſtians* were ſcarce warm in their new poſſeſſion, when beſieged in the Caſtle by *Pial Baſſa*, to whom after ſome extremities they were fain to yield: there periſhing in this unfortunate Action, by ſword, famine, and ſickneſs, 15000 *Chriſtians*.

4. *GAULOS*, or *GAUDUS*, by the Inhabitants called *Gaudica*, is diſtant about five miles from the Iſle of *Malta*; to the Knights whereof it doth belong: given to them by the bounty of *Charles* the fift. The Iſland 30 miles in compaſs, well watered and very fruitful. So great an Enemy to Serpents and all venemous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here brought from other places. The People *Chriſtians*, but they ſpeak the ſame Language with the neighbouring *Saracens*. The chief Town is of the ſame name with the Iſland, beautified with a Capacious Haven, lying betwixt the Weſt and South, and ſtrongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the *Turks* in the year 1551. who carried hence 3000 Souls, into endleſs thraldom.

5. *MALTA*, the chief of the *African* Iſlands, lieth betwixt *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, and the Iſle of *Sicil*: diſtant from this laſt about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about ſixty miles, in length 20, and in breadth 12. ſituate in the beginning of the fourth *Clime*, and eighth *Parallel*; ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is but 14 hours.

Anciently it was called *Melite*, and by that name occurreth not only in *Ptolomy* and other Writers, but alſo in the Book of the *Acts*, in the ſtory of S. *Pauls* Ship-wrack; this being the place where he and all his company were caſt on land: in memory whereof was built a little Chappel in the place of his Landing. So called moſt probably ἀπὸ τοῦ μέλιτος, from the abundance of honey which it yielded in former times: *Cicero* charging it on *Verres*, that he came home loaded with 400 meaſures of honey, and ſtore of *Melitenſian* Rayments: *Jam non quæro unde* 400 *amphoras mellis habueris, unde tantum* Melitenſium *Veſtium*, ſaith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the ſame place for both; this Iſland being a neer neighbour of *Sicil*, which *Verres* governed then as Prætor. Nor is it ſtrange that an Iſland of the coaſt of *Africk*, and uſing for the moſt part the *Phœnician* or *Punick* Language, ſhould borrow its Appellation from the *Greek*: many of that Nation coming hither from the Iſle of *Sicil*, and inhabiting here; and the whole Iſland ſometimes ſubject to the power of the *Sicilian Greeks*, though for the moſt part under the command of the State of *Carthage*.

It is ſituate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by conſequence, of no great fertility, the want of which is ſupplied with the plenties of *Sicil*. Yet have they here no ſmall ſtore of Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent fruits, both for taſte and colour. They have alſo great abundance of Cotten Wool (*Goſſypium* the *Latiniſts* call it) which they ſowe as we do our Corn; the growth and ordering of which Wooll, hath been ſhewn already, when we were in *Syria*. For the commodity of this Wool, and the cloth made of it, the *Romans* had this Iſland in great eſteem; thinking themſelves happy when they gained it from the *Carthaginians*.

The natural Inhabitants of it are ſaid to be churliſh and uncivil; of the *African* Language and complexion; but followers of the Church of *Rome*, the *Religion* whereof theſe Knights are ſworn to defend. The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number of both Sexes, ſuppoſed to be 20000 poſſeſſed of 90 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note, 1. *Malta*, ſo called by the name of the Iland, in the middle of which it is ſituate; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the ſtrength and ſafety of the Iland lying in defence of the Shores and Havens. 2 St. *Hermes* a ſtrong Caſtle at the point of a long *Languet* or tongue of Rock, thruſting out betwixt the two beſt Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1565, but at no cheaper rate then 20000 ſhot of Cannon, and the loſs of 10000 of their men. 3 *Valette* ſituate on the ſame Languet, not far from the Caſtle of S. *Hermes*, (or rather lying cloſe unto it) extended the whole breadth of the ſaid Languet from the one Sea to the other: and ſo commanding both the Havens. Built ſince the departure of the *Turks*, impregnably fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valets*, the great Maſter, who ſo gallantly repulſed their fury. In this Town the *great Maſter* hath his Palace, and the Knights their ſeveral *Alberges* or Seminaries; all very fair and handſome buildings, 4. *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Languet*, lying in the Eaſtern Haven: at the extremity of which Promontory in a Demy Iſland ſtands the ſtrong Caſtle of 5. S. *Angelo*, built on a Rock, oppoſite to *Valette*, on the other ſide of the Haven; and found impregnable by the *Turks*, who in vain beſieged it. 6. *Iſola* a ſmall City and better deſerving the name of a Town, ſituate in another Promontory, on the South of the other, defended on the Weſtſide by a ſtrong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*; and on the Eaſtſide, by the impregnable Caſtle of S. *Michael*; in vain aſſaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill ſucceſs at the Siege hereof, gave over the enterprize, and ſailed home.

The people of this Iſland originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with ſome *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicil*, as before was ſaid. For the moſt part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till ſubdued by the *Saracens*: By the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moors*, and by *Charles* the fiſt given to the Knights of the *Rhodes*; not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1522. Theſe Knights are in number 1000. of whom, 500 are always to be reſident in the Iſland. The other 500 are diſperſed thorow *Chriſtendom*, at their ſeveral Seminaries, in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy* and *Germany*; and at any ſummons, are to make their perſonal appearance. Theſe Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number ſeven, *viz.* one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergn*, one of *Provence*, one of *Caſtile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Countrey where he liveth, is of great reputation. An eighth *Seminary* they had in *England*, till the ſuppreſſion of it by *Henry* the 8th, yet they have ſome one or other, to whom they give the title of *Grand Prior* of *England*. Concerning the orignal and riches of theſe Knights, we have ſpoken when we were in *Paleſtine*; now a word or two onely of their places, and the election of their *great Maſter*. None are admitted into the Order, but ſuch as can bring a teſtimony of their *Gentry* for ſix deſcents: and when the Ceremonies of their Admiſſion (which are many) are performed, they ſwear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiours*, to live upon the Revenues of their *Order*, onely, and withal to live chaſtly. Of theſe there be 16 of great authority (*Counſellours of State* we may fitly call them) called the *Great Croſſes*; out of whom the Officers of their Order, as the *Marſhal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellour*, &c. are choſen: and who, together with the *Maſter*, puniſh ſuch as are convict of any crime, 1. by degrading him, 2*ly*. by ſtrangling him, and 3*ly*. by throwing him into the Sea. Now when the *Great Maſter* is dead, they ſuffer no Veſſel to go out of this Iſland, till another be *elected*, leſt the *Pope* ſhould intrude on their *election*; which is performed in this manner. The ſeveral *Seminaries* nominate two Knights, and two alſo are nominated for the *Engliſh*: theſe 16 from amongſt themſelves chooſe eight; theſe eight chooſe a Knight, a Prieſt, and a Frier-ſervant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Croſſes*, elect the *great Maſter*. The *great Maſter* being thus choſen, is ſtiled (though but a Frier) *The moſt illuſtrious, and moſt reverend Prince, the* Lord Frier N. N. Great Maſter *of the Hoſpital of* S. John of Jeruſalem, *Prince of* Malta, Gaules, *and* Goza. Far different I aſſure you, from that of the firſt Maſters of this Order, who called themſelves onely *Servant to the poor Servitors of the Hoſpital of* Jeruſalem; or that of the Maſter of the *Templers*, who was onely intituled *The humble Miniſter of the poor Knights of the Temple.*

This Iſland is conceived to yield to the *great Maſter* the yearly rent of 10000 *Ducats*, the greateſt part whereof ariſeth out of *Cotten wool*: beſides which, he hath towards the maintaining of his Eſtate, the tenth part of the prizes which are won from the *Turks*; and certain thouſands of Crowns yearly out of the treaſure of the Order, which is great and rich; and one of the beſt *Commanderis* in every Nation. And for the ſcowring of the Seas, and ſecuring their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 Souldiers, and to carry 16 piece of Ordnance; with which they make excurſions many times to the coaſts of *Greece*.

And ſo much for BARBARY.

MOUNT

MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Libya Interior*, we muſt paſs over *Mount Atlas*, a Ridge of hils, of exceeding great heighth, and of no ſmall length. So high, that the top, or *Summit* of it is above the Clouds, at leaſt ſo high that the eye of man is not able to diſcern the top of it. *Extat in hoc Mari mons cui nomen* Atlas (ſaith *Herodotus*) *ita ſublimis, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non poſſint*. Yet notwithſtanding, it is alwaies covered with Snow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of aſcent by reaſon of the ſharp and craggy *Precipices*, which occur in many places of it; the reſt were plainer, and more even, of ſuch wondrous ſteepneſs, that the *Precipices* of the Rocks ſeem the ſafer way. Full of thick Woods, and yielding to the Countreys on the North-ſide of it, the greateſt part of the Rivers, which refreſh and moyſten them: and where it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman Africa*, of ſuch ſelf-fertility, that it affordeth excellent Fruits of its natural growth; not planted, graffed, or inoculated by the hand of man. The beginning of it is on the ſhores of the Weſtern Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick* Ocean; in the 26 Degrees, and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude: and paſſing on directly Eaſtward, draw near unto the Borders of *Egypt*, part of *Marmarica*, or the *Roman Libya*, only interpoſing. It is now called *Anchiſa*, and *Montes Clari*: And took the name of *Atlas* from *Atlas* a King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; fained by the Poets to be turned into this Hill by *Perſeus*, and the head of *Meduſa*. Of the daughters of this King, their Golden fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Heſperides*, we have ſpoke already, though ſome remove the place of their Habitation more into the Weſt (then by us diſpoſed of) and others into certain Iſlands of the *Weſtern* Ocean, which we ſhall meet withal hereafter. He was ſaid to have been a man of ſuch wondrous height, that the Heavens reſted on his ſhoulders; of which, when weary, he diſcharged his burden on the ſhoulders of *Hercules*; the ground of the Fiction either taken from the *height* of the Mountain, the top whereof ſeemeth to touch the sky; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Aſtronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets; in which knowledge he inſtructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more *Authentick* deſcription of it, take it thus from *Virgil*.

——*Jamq; volans apicem & latera ardua cernit*
Atlantis *duri, Cœlum qui vertice fulcit.*
Atlantis, *cinctum aſſidue cui nubibus atris*
Piniferum caput, & vento pulſatur & imbri.
Nix humeros infuſa tegit, tum flumina mento
Præcipitant ſenis; & glacie riget horrida barba.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words.

Then flying, he the top and ſides deſcries
Of Atlas, *whoſe proud head ſupports the skies.*
Atlas, *whoſe Pinie head with Clouds incloſed*
Is to the ſtorms of wind and rain expoſed.
Now hid's the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
Upon his Chin; his Beard with Ice o'regrown.

OF LIBYA INTERIOR.

L*IBYA INTERIOR* is bounded on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary*, and *Cyrenaica*; on the Eaſt, with *Libya Marmarica*, interpoſed betwixt it and *Egypt*, and part of *Æthiopia ſuperior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire; on the South, with *Æthiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Nigro's*; and on the Weſt with the main *Atlantick* Ocean.

The reaſon of the name we have ſeen before, given to this Countrey in regard of its contiguouſneſs and reſemblance to the other *Libya*, or elſe becauſe deſcended from the Children of *Lehabim*, by which that Countrey was firſt planted. For of King *Libs*, or Queen *Libya* (the daughter of *Epaphus*, and *Caſſiopaa*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I ſhall take no notice. Diſtinguiſhed from the other, by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main land of *Africa*; the other being partly a *Maritime* Countrey.

Of the nature of the ſoyl and people we ſhall ſpeak anon, when we come to take a view of its ſeveral parts. Look we now on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*: when, though not ſo well travelled, or diſcovered as in theſe laſt times, yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and ſituation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, than any of our latter Writers have preſented to us. The Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Salathus*. 2. *Chuſarus*. 3. *Ophiodus*. 4. *Noius*. 5. *Maſſa*. 6. *Sobus*. 7. *Daradus*. 8. *Stachiris*, and 9. *Maſithelus*; all of them paying tribute to the Weſtern, or *Atlantick* Ocean. Mountains of moſt note, 1. *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salatus*. 2. *Sagapola*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*. 3. *Ryſſadius*, from whence *Stachiris*. 4. the Mountain called *Deorum Currus* (of which more anon) whence *Maſſitholus*, and Mount *Capas*, out of which *Daradas*, have their firſt Originals. Then there are, 5. Mount *Uſurgala*, and 6. Mount *Girgiris*; from the firſt of which the River *Bagradas*, and from the laſt that of *Cyniphus* do derive their waters: and paſſing through the breaches of *Atlas* (of which theſe Mountains ſeem to be ſome diſmembred limbs) croſs the whole breadth of the *Roman Africk*, to make themſelves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Beſides theſe, more within the Land, we find the famous Rivers of *Gir*, and *Niger*: Of which the firſt maketh the two great Lakes of *Nuba*, and *Cheloindas*; the ſecond, thoſe as great, or greater, called *Nigritis*, and the Lake of *Libya*, which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Countrey ſo well watered as this ſeems to be, our modern Writers ſhould complain of ſuch want of water; as if there were, neither Spring nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moiſten and refreſh the earth, but the dews of Heaven, or ſome Pits of Salt and brackiſh water, not worth the taſting. *Ptolomy* muſt either be miſtaken, which I hardly think; or our late *Travellers* not ſo punctual in their obſervations, which I rather credit: or elſe the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, *In his arenarum vaſtitatibus diſperduntur*, muſt be dried-up and ſwallowed in theſe ſandy Deſarts, as *Maginus* telleth us; or finally there hath happened ſome later conflagration, than that of *Phaeton*, to which the want of water may be better attributed, than it was to his. Of which thus the Poet:

Hinc facta eſt Libya, *raptis humoribus æſtu*
Arida. ——— Which *Geo. Sandys* thus rendreth.
A Sandy Deſart Libya *then became,*
Her full veins emptied by the thirſty flame.

Places of note and name in thoſe elder times, 1. *Salathes*, on the River ſo named. 2. *Bagaxi*, 3. *Iarzitha*, and 4. *Babiba*, all honoured with the name of *Cities*. 5. *Garama*, 6. *Gira*, and *Nigira*, the *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Nations. Then there were two Havens of ſome good eſteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphoſius*; beſides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of theſe on the Binks of the River *Niger*;) whoſe names and ſituation do occur in *Ptolomy*; which ſhews the Countrey not to be ſo unhabitable and void of people, as was pretended by ſome other (but leſs diligent) Writers.

Nations of moſt note in it in the former times, were the *Getuli*, on the back of *Mauritania*, a reſolute and unconquered people, *Genus inſuperabile bello*, as we find in *Virgil*: 2. the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenaica*, and giving name to a large and ſpacious territory, called *Vallis Garamantica*; ſuppoſed to be the moſt remote Nation towards the South, as the *Indians* were towards the Eaſt; whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Indos*, in another Poet. 3. The *Pyrrhæi*, an *Æthiopick* Nation, on the South of the River *Gir*: 4. the *Nigritæ*, originally *Æthiopians* alſo, inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*; 5. the *Odranguli*, of the ſame original extraction, poſſeſſing the Countrey between the Mountains *Capha* and *Thala*; 6. the *Perorſori*, dwelling near the hils called *Deorum Currus*; 7. the *Meinaci*, at the foot of Mount *Thala*; 8. the *Naba*, on the Weſt of *Vallis Garamantica*. 9. the *Derbici*, dwelling on the Weſt of the hill *Aranga*. And 10. the *Pſylli*, placed by *Ptolomy* amongſt the Inhabitants of *Cyrene*; but ſo near the borders of this Countrey, and ſo far from the civilities of thoſe Nations which converſed either with *Rome* or *Carthage*; that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a nature ſo venomous, that they could poyſon a Snake. Inſomuch, that when their Wives were delivered, they would throw their children amongſt a bed of *Serpents*; ſuppoſing that Child to be born of an *adulterate* bed, the very ſmell of whoſe body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poyſonous vermine. Others there were of leſs note, which that Author calleth *Minores Gentes*; many in number, of ſmall fame, and therefore not material to be here inſerted; thoſe of moſt note, the *Africerones* (whom ſome Authors call the *Gampſaphantes*) honoured with the Attribute of *Gens Magna*, the greateſt as it ſeems of thoſe leſſer Nations. None of them of much note in the way of ſtory, except they were theſe *Libyans*, which are ſo famouſed in *Herodotus's* for an expedition they made againſt the *South winde*. For when this wind blowing abroad the hils and deſarts of ſand, had dried up thoſe many Rills and waters they had among them; they to revenge this Injury, by common conſent armed themſelves, and went to fight againſt him. But they took not the *South wind* unprepared. For he muſtered up his forces, incountred them with ſuch a brave volley of ſand, that he overwhelmed and ſlew them all. A better friend was the North wind to the Citizens of *Rhegium*, in *Italy*, and better was he rewarded for it: for having ſcattered a mighty Fleet, which *Dyoniſius* prepared againſt them, he was by the Common-Council, made free of their City. That part of *Cæſars* war, which was managed here, we ſhall hereafeer meet with on another occaſion.

Thus having took a view of the ſtate of this Countrey, as it ſtood of old; we will next look upon it in its preſent condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1. *Biledulgerid*, or *Numidia*: 2. *Libya Deſerta*, or *Sarra*; and 3. a great part of that Countrey which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But becauſe the greateſt part of this laſt Countrey is to come under another accompt, we will here only take the two firſt into conſideration.

1. NUMIDIA.

1. NUMIDIA, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Egypt*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with Mount *Atlas* which parteth it from *Barbary*, and *Cyrene*; on the South, with *Libya Deſerta*.

It was thus firſt called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whoſe deſcription of all *Africk* we are much beholding, becauſe of that reſemblance which the people of it have to the old *Numidians*; which is after the cuſtom of the *Nomades*, living without houſes, under their Wagons, and Carts, as *Lucan* teſtifieth of them, thus:

> *Nulla domus, plauſtris habitant, migrare per arva*
> *Mos, atq; errantes circumvectare Penates.*
>
> *They dwell in wains, not houſes; and do ſtray*
> *Through fields, and with them lead their gods each way.*

And worthily may they owe their names to them, from whom they borrow ſo much of their Nature: for the people to this day ſpend their lives in hunting, and ſtay but three or four daies in a place, as long as the graſs will ſerve the *Camels*. This is the cauſe why this Countrey is ſo ill peopled, the Towns ſo ſmall in themſelves, and ſo remote from others. An example hereof is *Teſſet* a great City in their eſteem, which yet containeth but 400 houſholds, and hath no neighbours within 300 Miles of it.

The Countrey aboundeth with *Dates*, whence it is called *Dactylorum regio*, and in the Arabick *Biledulgerid*, which ſignifieth alſo a *Date-region*. Theſe *Dates* (to ſpeak properly) the fruit of the Palm Trees, uſually growing in hot Countreys, of which, ſome are male, ſome female; the firſt bringing forth only Flowers, the other Fruit: and yet the male ſo beneficial to the increaſe of the *Dates*, that unleſs a flowred bough of the male be ingrafted into the female, the *Dates* never prove good, in caſe they bear any *Dates* at all, as before was noted. This fruit is the chief diet of the people: but this ſweet meat hath ſowr ſauce; for it commonly rotteth their teeth betimes. As for the Stones of theſe *Dates*, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow fat, and yield ſtore of Milk. The Ayre hereof, of ſo ſound a nature, that if a man be troubled with the *French Diſeaſe*, he ſhall there, without any courſe of *Phyſick*, find a preſent remedy.

The natural Inhabitants of this Countrey are ſaid to be a baſe and vile people, Thieves, Murderers, treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding moſt commonly on *Dates*, Barley, and Carrion; accounting Bread a diet for their Feſtival daies. But the *Arabians*, who are intermingled with them, in moſt part of the Countrey, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) ingenuous, liberal, and civil. The Garments of theſe *Numidians*, of the courſeſt cloath, ſo ſhort, that they cover not half the body: the richer ſort, diſtinguiſhed by a *Jacket* of *blew Cotton* with wide ſlieves. Their Steeds are *Camels*, which they ride on without a *ſtirrop*, or ſo much as a *ſaddle*; a leather thruſt through an hole made in the noſe of the *Camel*, ſerves them for a *Bridle*; and to ſave the charge of *Spurs*, they make uſe of a goad. Their Religion, *Mahometiſme*, to which perverted (*Chriſtianity* having once had ſome footing here) in the year 710. the *Azanaghi*, and other people of thoſe parts then ſubdued by the *Saracens*, who held them for a Nation of ſo little reckoning, that no man of accompt amongſt them would deſcend ſo low, as to be their Prince; but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the *Chiefs*, or Heads of their ſeveral *Clans*.

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and poſſibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Ptolomy*. The reſt which are mentioned in that Author, riſing out of *Mount Atlas*, and falling headily this way, finding theſe barren wilderneſſes to afford them readieſt *Channels*, are trained along by the allurements of the Sands, and are either ſwallowed up in great Lakes, or being too liberal to the thirſty Sands, in their way to the Sea, die at the laſt for thirſt in the midſt of the *Deſarts*.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a diſtinction into better and worſe) 1. *DARA*, more cultivated than the reſt, becauſe of the River running through it, whence it hath its name: 250 miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of ſo different a nature from all the reſt, that here the Countrey people have ſome ſcattered Villages, the better ſort their ſeveral Caſtles. 2. *PESCARA*, ſo called from the chief town of it, exceedingly infeſted with Scorpions, the ſting whereof is preſent death. 3. *FIGHIG*, ſo called from the chief Town, alſo, inhabited by an induſtrious and witty people (in reſpect of the reſt) ſome of which betake themſelves to *Merchandiſe*; ſome to the ſtudy of the Law, which they ſtudy at *Feſſe*, and grow rich upon it. 4. *TEGORARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited, better than any except *Dara*; as having in it 50 Caſtles or Gentlemens houſes, and 100 Villages. The people wealthy, in regard of the great trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good Husbands in manuring their land, on which they are forced to lay much ſoyl; and will therefore let ſome of it *Rent-free* to ſtrangers, reſerving only the dung of themſelves and their Cattel. 5. *BILEDULGERID*, ſpecially ſo called, abundantly fruitful in *Dates*, whence it had the name; but deſtitute of Corn, by reaſon of the extream dryneſs of the ſoyl: and yet hath in it many Towns of good note among them. Of leſs note, 6. *Teſſet*, 7. *Segelmeſſe*, 8. *Zeb*, 9. *Tebelbeti*, and 10. *Feſſen*, ſo called from the chiefeſt of their Towns and Villages.

Towns of moſt note both now and in former times, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before; 1. *Timugedit*, in the Province of *Dara*, the Birth-place of *Mahomet Ben Amet* and his three ſons, the founders of the *Xeriffian* Empire. 2. *Tafilete*, in the ſaid Province, to which place *Mahomet* the ſecond of theſe ſons, and ſecond King of *Morocco* of that family, confined his eldeſt Brother *Amet*, having took him Priſoner, *Anno* 1544. 3. *Teſſet*, a great Town of 400 houſes, but ſo poorly neighboured, that there is no other inhabited place within 300 miles of it; but of that before, 4. *Techort*; the Inhabitants whereof are very courteous to ſtrangers, whom they entertain at *free-coſt*; and chuſe rather to marry their Daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. 5. *Ebeucah*, the moſt Eaſtern Town in all this Countrey, diſtant about 100 miles from the borders of *Egypt*. 6. *Dobris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for Wells or *Fountain* of the *Sun*. The waters whereof being luke-warm at the Sun-riſing, cooled more and more till noon, was then very cold, and ſo continued until midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural *Antipathy* with the Sun, hotteſt when that was furtheſt off: and cold when neareſt. 7. *Maſucha*, ſeated on a Rock, garriſoned by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marius*, in the proſecution of that war. 8. *Capſa*, the chief City of all this Tract, ſaid to be built by *Hercules*; but queſtionleſs of very great ſtrength; *anguibus arenisq́; vallata*, made inacceſſible (ſaith the Hiſtorian) by the thick *Sands*, and multitudes of *Serpents* which were harboured in them; but eaſily forced by *Marius* in his Wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly deſtroyed by *Ceſar* in his war againſt *Juba*.

It ſeems by this, that thoſe people neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the diſpoſal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing; and ſo they have been alſo in theſe latter times: For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of wiſdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698. but within twelve years (*Anno* 710.) they ſubdued this Countrey, and planted their *Religion* in it, though not themſelves. Nor was *Amet*, the firſt *Xeriffe* of *Morocco* warm in that eſtate, when he thought it beſt for him to ſecure himſelf in it by the conqueſt of this: to whoſe ſucceſſors, the chiefes of the Tribes hereof render ſome acknowledgements.

2. *LIBYA DESERTA*.

2. *LIBYA DESERTA*, is bounded on the North with *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid*, to which contiguous; on the Eaſt, with *Nubia*, a Kingdom and Province of the Land of the *Negroes*; on the South, with the land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the Weſt, with *Gualata*, another Province of theſe *Negroes* interpoſed betwixt it and the *Atlantick*.

The reaſon of the name of *Libya* we have had before. To which *Deſerta* was added upon very good reaſons, as well to difference it from the other *Libya*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to expreſs the barren and ſandy condition of it: in which reſpect by the *Arabians* called *Sara*, ſignifying in their language a rude and inhabitable *Deſart*, as this Countrey is. So truly ſuch, that men may travel in it eight daies together without finding water, or ſeeing any tree, and no graſs at all. The water which they have is drawn out of Pits, exceeding brackiſh; and many times thoſe pits ſo covered with the Sands, that men die for thirſt; the *Merchants* therefore carrying their water with them on the backs of *Camels*; which if it fail, they kill their *Camels*, and drink a water which they wring out of their guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as theſe *Deſarts* be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Feſſe*, and *Tremeſen*, trading to *Agades* and *Tombatum*, in the land of *Negroes*.

The people differ not much from the *Numidians* in ſhape or qualities; but if a worſe of quality, it muſt be the *Libyan*. They did once worſhip a God called *Pſaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then ſet at liberty, to ſay theſe words, *viz. Pſaphon is a great God*: which the ſimple people hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine Honours. Converted at laſt to the *Chriſtian* Faith, they remained a while in the profeſſion of the Goſpel: exterminated by the *Saracens* about the year 710.. who having added *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid* to their former conqueſts, planted their *Superſtitions* in this Countrey alſo.

This Countrey is divided (as others into *Provinces*) into five great *Deſarts*, to which thoſe of leſs note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the borders of *Gualata* (interpoſed betwixt it and the *Atlantick* Ocean) and extending Eaſtward to the Salt-pits of *Tegaza*; having on the South, *Gualata* and *Tombutum* in the land of *Negroes*; ſo deſtitute of water, that there is one pit only at the end of each hundred mile, brackiſh and unwholſom; and in the *Deſarts* of *Azaoad* and *Araoan*, which are parts of this, but one in an 150 or 200 miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eaſtward, to the *Deſart* of *Targa*: bounded on the North, with *Segelmeſſe*, and *Tebelbeti*, *Numidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the *Deſarts* of *Gbir* and *Guber*. So void of water (eſpecially in that part thereof which is called *Goguden*) that in nine dayes travel there is not ſo much as one drop to be ſeen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended Eaſtward to the *Deſart* of *Ighidi*; and reaching from *Tegorarin* in the North, to the *Deſart* of *Agader* in the South: the beſt conditioned part of all this Countrey, well watered, of a temperate Ayre, and a ſoyl reaſonably fruitful. In length from North to South 300 miles; and liberally ſtored with Manna, which they gather into little Veſſels, and carry to *Agades* to ſell. Mingled in water or with Pottage it is very cooling; and drank of in their Feaſts, as a ſpecial dainty.

4. *LEMBTA*, extendeth from the *Deſarts* of *Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of theſe two there is little to be ſaid in ſeveral, but that this laſt was diſcovered lately by one *Hamar*, a guide to a *Caravan* of Merchants; who blinded with the ſands, wandred out of his way, and cauſing ſand to be given him at every twenty miles end, found by the ſmell at laſt that they begun to draw nigh ſome inhabited place, and told them of it 40 miles before they came to it.

Cities of note we hope for none, where we find no water. Of ſuch as go for Cities here, the moſt conſiderable, 1. *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, reſembling Marble; which the Inhabitants, being 20 days diſtant from any habitation, and conſequently many times in danger to die for famine; exchange for Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutum*, who come hither for it. Much troubled with the *South winds*, which doth ſo drive the ſands upon them; that it cauſeth many of them to looſe their ſight. 2. *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known reſting place, and a great refreſhment to the *Merchant* in the midſt of theſe Deſarts, 3. *Guargata* on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building; and inhabited by a wealthy people, 4. *Toberaum*, of little note, but that it ſerveth for a Stage or *baiting place* to the weary Traveller. Of which kind there are ſaid to be others at the extremities or ends of each ſeveral *Deſarts*; the *Havens* of ſuch men as *ſail* in theſe ſandy *Seas*, but not elſe obſervable.

Nor is there much, if any thing, obſervable of them in the way of *Story*, but that not looked after by any of the great *Conquerours*, either *Greeks* or *Romans*; much of the Countrey was poſſeſſed by *Arabian* Colonies (men fit enough to plant in ſuch barbarous Nations:) at ſuch time as the *Saracens* planted their *Religion* here. The Government of the Countrey ſince, as it was before, by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clans*, or Families, who as they know no Law themſelves, ſo do the people ſhew as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions: differing but little from brute Beaſts, more than ſhape and ſpeech.

And ſo much for *LIBYA INTERIOR*.

OF

OF
TERRA NIGRITARUM.

TERRA NIGRITARUM, or THE LAND OF NEGROES, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Æthiopia Superior*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick Ocean*, on the North with *Libya Deſerta*; and on the South, with the *Æthiopick Ocean*, and part of *Æthiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigrita*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolomy*: and they ſo named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

The Country very hot by reaſon of its ſituation under the *Torrid Zone*; yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in ſome places alwayes green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, ſpecially in thoſe parts which lie within the compaſs of the overflowings of the River *Niger*; and on the further ſide of the River *Sanaga*: abundantly well ſtored both with Corn, Cattel, and Garden-ware for the uſe of their Kitchins; well Wooded, and thoſe Woods well furniſhed with *Elephants* and other Beaſts, both wild and tame. Their greateſt want (but ſuch a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-trees*, few of which they have; and thoſe they have, bear one kind of fruit onely, which is like the *Cheſnut*, but ſomewhat bitterer. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greateſt welfare conſiſting in the overflowings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the inundations of *Nile*. In ſome parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver, very fine and pure: ſo that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of diſcovering *New-Worlds* as much as *Wealth*; they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as at the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the moſt part ſo rude and barbarous, that they ſeem to want that uſe of Reaſon which is peculiar unto man; of little wit and deſtitute of all Arts and ſciences; prone to luxury, and for the greateſt part Idolaters, though not without ſome ſmall admixture of *Mahumetans*. When the *Portugals* firſt ſailed into theſe Coaſts, the People hereof took the Ships for great *Birds* with white wings: and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were caſually painted on the beaks of the ſhips, were the eyes by which they ſaw how to direct themſelves in their courſe. *Guns* ſeemed to them, for their hideous noiſe, to be the works of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be perſwaded but that they were the work of *Gods own hands*. The very *Nobles* (if ſo noble a name may without offence be given to ſuch blockiſh people) are ſo dull and ſtupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to civil ſociety: and yet ſo reverent of their *King*, that when they are in his preſence, they never look him in the face, but ſit flat on their buttock, with their elbows on their knees, and their hands on their faces. They uſe to anoint their hair with the fat of Fiſhes, which makes them ſtink more wretchedly than they would do otherwiſe. Of complexion they are for the moſt part Cole-black, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South-ſide of the River *Senaga*, they are only Tawny: the *Blacks* ſo much in love with their own complexion, that they uſe to paint the Devil *white*; which I find thus verſified.

The Land of Negroes *is not far from thence,*
Neerer extended to th' Atlantick *Main;*
Wherein the Black Prince *keeps his reſidence,*
Attended by his jetty coloured Train:
Who in their native beauty moſt delight,
And in contempt do paint the Devil *white.*

They have tried all *Religions*, but agree in none. *Idolaters* at the firſt, as others the Deſcendants of *Cham*: Afterwards it is ſaid that they received the *Rites* and *Religion* of the *Jews*, (but the time and occaſion of it I do no where find;) in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the laſt, *Chriſtianity* prevailed in ſome Kingdoms of it. In the year 973. *Mahumetiſm* began to get ground amongſt them, by the diligence and zeal of ſome of the Preachers of that Law: the firſt who were ſeduced that way being thoſe of *Melli*; after which *Tombuto*, and then *Gualata*, were infected with the ſame poyſon alſo. In the end, all the reſt of this Country followed their example, except the Kingdom of *Borneo*, ſome part of *Nubia*, and the Coaſts of the *Atlantick* Ocean, which continue in their antient *Gentiliſm*: *Chriſtianity* being confined to a corner of *Nubia* (if ſtill there remaining) and ſome few Garriſons belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*. And as they are of different *Religions*, ſo are they alſo of ſeveral *Languages*: thoſe of *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Tombutum*, *Melli*, and *Gugonti*, ſpeaking the Language called *Sungai*; the *Guberoi*, *Canontes*, *Chæſena*, and *Gangrates*, &c. that called *Guber*; *Gualata*, a language of its own; and thoſe of *Nubia*, one reſembling the *Arabick*, *Chaldæan*, and *Egyptian*.

Mountains of moſt note in it, in the former times, were thoſe of 1. *Arvaltes*, and 2. *Arangus*, and 3. that called *Deorum currus*; this laſt ſuppoſed to be the ſame which is now called *Punta de Lopes Gonſales*, but that more probably, which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large *Promontory*, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; diſcerned afar off by the Saylor and the Country-people, as well by reaſon of his height, reaching to the clouds, as the continual lightnings and thunders, which do iſſue thence.

Rivers of moſt note, beſides *Nile*, which watereth it on the Eaſt, 1. *Senaga*, or *Canaga*, which riſeth out of the Lake of *Gnoga*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Lacum Chelonidem*. And if ſo, then muſt this be the River *Gir*, of which he ſaith, that having fallen into that *Lake*, and there ſwallowed up, it thence produced another River, whoſe name he telleth not; little inferiour unto *Nilus* for the length of its courſe, the variety of ſtrange Creatures which are bred therein, or the diſtinction which it maketh in the face of this Country: the people on the one ſide of it, being Black, on the other Tawny; the ſoil on the one ſide very barren, on the other fruitful. In the end having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantick* by two great Out-lets. 2. *Niger* a River better known to *Ptolomy* by name than nature; now found to have its riſe from a great Lake, within two degrees of the *Equinoctial*; whence running northwards for a time, he hideth himſelf under ground for the ſpace of 60 miles together: when riſing up again, and making a great Lake, called the Lake of *Borneo*, he bendeth his courſe directly Weſtward; and taking in many leſs *Channels*, he teareth the earth into many Iſlands, and at laſt falleth into the Sea. Of as long courſe, and the ſame wondrous nature as the River *Nilus*. For from the fifteenth day of *June*, it overfloweth all the adjacent fields, the ſpace of 40 days together; and in ſo many more, recollecteth his waters, into their proper *Channels*: the whole Country being indebted to theſe inundations, for its fertility, which otherwiſe could be but ſmall, ſince the dryneſs of the ſoyl can afford no *exhalations*, whereby clouds may be generated, and the earth refreſhed with moyſtures, or revived with dewes.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Ptolomy*, 1. *Nigira*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, 2. *Panagra*, 3. *Malachath*, 4. *Anygath*, 5. *Thumondacana*, 6. *Suluce*; and others to the number of 17 in all; ſituate all along the courſe of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the ſituation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the Ancient Towns and People being quite defaced; we muſt look upon it now as it ſtandeth divided at this time into ſeveral Kingdoms, 25 at the leaſt in all (ſome ſay many more) the chief of which are theſe that follow.

1. *ORA ANTEROSA*, A large tract of ground on the *Weſtern Ocean*, extended from *Cape Blance* to the River *Carmuga*, ſandy and barren, but reaſonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanaghi*, were accompted formerly very rude and barbarous; much civilized ſince the *Portugals* and other *Chriſtian* Nations began to trade there; of middle ſtature, complexioned between black and aſh colour; great lyers, very treacherous, poor and parſimonious, and very patient in extreams both of heat, and hunger. The chief Towns, 1. *Porto di Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*) and 2. *Porto del Riſcatto*, two frequented Havens, thus named occaſionally by the *Portugueze*, at their firſt coming thither. 3. *Arquin*, a ſtrong Fortreſs of the *Portugals*, ſituate on or neer the Promontory now called *Cape Blance*; and giving name unto ſome Iſlands, five or ſix in number lying neer unto it, called the Iſles of *Arquin*; inhabited by a barbarous People, named the *Azanhays*; but of no great note. Theſe coaſts diſcovered firſt by the *Portugals*, *An.* 1452. under the conduct of Prince *Henry*, ſon of *John* the firſt; or by his incouragement and directions.

2. *GUALATA*, diſtant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of *Ora Anteroſa* being interpoſed) is but a ſmall Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with ſome Territorie of ground and petty *Hamlets* belonging to them. Fruitful onely in *Dates*, Mill, and Pulſe; but of theſe two laſt no great abundance. The Inhabitants Cole-black, hoſpitable towards ſtrangers to their power, but poor and miſerable; without Laws, ſetled form of Government, Gentry and Judges.

2. *AGADEZ* bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Deſarts* of *Libya*; the People of it generally given to grazing, their houſes made of green boughs, which upon every change of Paſture they carry with them. So that we are to look for few Towns among them, but theſe moveable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the moſt part by *Merchants Strangers*, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremeſen*. The Town well walled, the houſes of a better building than the Country promiſeth; the People civiller, and more fair conditioned than the reſt of the *Negroes*, ſeated commodiouſly on a River which falleth into the *Senaga*, and by that means hath correſpondence with the Ocean alſo. The King hereof, a Tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, payeth him 15000 Crowns of Annual tribute.

4. *CANO*, a large Province on this ſide of the River *Canaga*, full of woods, mountainous, and in ſome parts deſart; but plentiful enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons, and Pomegranates, with good ſtore of *Cotton-wooll*. Well-watered beſides that great River, with ſome leſſer Streams. Sufficiently populous, and ſtored with good Towns and Villages, the habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen; as the chief Town called *Cano*, is of wealthy Merchants. This the Seat-royal of their King, a *Tributary* alſo unto him of *Tombuto*, environed with a wall, built of a Chalk-ſtone, as moſt part of the houſes are.

5. *CASENA*, on the Eaſt of *Cano*, but leſs fruitful far; the Country over-grown with vaſt woods, and the ſoyl untractable; affording only Mill, and Barley, but of that good plenty. The People as black as any Coal, with great noſes, and moſt prominent lips. Their houſes very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly, none of them numbring more than 300 Families.

6. *SANAGA*, lying on the other ſide of that River, from which thus named; extendeth to the *Atlantick* Ocean, as far as to the Promontory, which by *Ptolomy* named *Arſinarium*, is now called *Cape Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Paſtures, goodly Trees, and moſt ſorts of Fruits; plentiful enough of Mill and Pulſe, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with *Lakes* and Rivers. No tame beaſts about their fields, but Goats, Cows and Oxen; of Lyons,

Leopards, Wolves, and Elephants, too great a plenty. The people extream black, much given to lying, treacherous, very full of talk, exceſſively venereous, and extreamly jealous. A King they have, but ſuch a one as holdeth but by *courteſie* onely, having no certain Rents, or Revenues, but what is given by his Nobles.

7. *GAMBRA*, or *GAMBEA*, a ſmall Kingdom on the River ſo named, but bordering in ſome places on the *Atlantick*. In thoſe parts very pleaſant, the Trees alwayes flouriſhing, the air very hot; in other parts, of the ſame nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good ſtore of Rice, which the other doth not.

8. *TOMBUTUM*, on the further ſide of the River *Sanaga*: exceeding plentiful of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Deſtitute of Salt, but what they buy of forrein Merchants at exceſſive rates; and ſmall ſtore of Horſes. Well watered by a branch alſo of the River *Niger*, and many wells of purpoſe made to receive ſuch waters, as by artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The people courteous, rich, and pleaſant, ſpending whole dayes and nights in ſinging and dancing. Their food, Fleſh, Butter, Milk, and Fiſh, which they mingle together, and make it neither toothſome nor wholſome. The chief Towns, 1. *Tombuto*, which gives name to this Kingdom, ſituate about twelve miles from a branch of the *Niger* and founded by the *Saracens*, or *Arabians* in the 610th. year of their *Hegira*. The houſes all of mud and thatch, except one fair Church, and the Kings Palace, both of lime and ſtone. Inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great trade betwixt this and *Feſſe*. 2. *Gago*, the reſidence of the King; large, without walls, the buildings very poor and mean, except ſuch as belong unto the King or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their wares ſumptuous and precious, but exceſſive dear. The Town about 400 miles diſtant from *Tombuto*, ſituate in a fruitful Countrey for Rice, Fruits, and Fleſh, and well repleniſhed with freſh water. 3. *Cabra*, a large Town, but unwalled, and of no better building than the other two.

9. *MELLI*, lying on the Eaſt of *Tombutum*, is a ſpacious and fruitful Province, ſituate all along on a branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, eſpecially in Corn, Cattel, and *Cotton Wooll*: the people generally very wealthy; of greater wit, civility and induſtry than the reſt of the *Negroes*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwalled, but large, as containing in it 6000 families; furniſhed with many Temples, Prieſts, and Readers of the *Mahometan* Law, which thoſe of this Countrey did firſt unhappily admit of. This the Seat-royal of their Kings, who are very courteous unto ſtrangers; but *Homagers* and Tributaries to the King of *Tombutum*.

10. *GHENEOA*, ſituate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombutum*, and *Melli*, but ſo that it bordereth in one place on the *Ocean* alſo; is a wealthy Countrey: but hath neither Town, or Caſtle in it, except that wherein the King reſideth, who is a Vaſſal alſo to the King of *Tombutum*. That Town the reſidence alſo of their Prieſts, Doctors, and Merchants: of which the *Prieſts* and *Doctors* are apparelled in white, but all the reſt in black, or *blue Cotton*. The people have great traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*; and though made very rich by the overflowings of *Niger*, and the wealth of the Countrey, they have great ſtore of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and ſelling at home, they uſe iron-mony.

11. *GUBER* lieth on the Eaſt of the former Province; of the ſame length, and naturally well fenced with lofty mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick ſet with Villages, in which dwell their Husband-men and Shepherds; rich in their numerous herds of all ſorts of Cattel, as alſo great quantities of Rice and Pulſe: the people very induſtrious, and good Artificers. Their principal Town is called *Guber* alſo, a Town of 6000 families, the uſual reſidence of their King; full of wealthy Merchants, and rich in *Manufactures*.

12. *GIALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The people whereof are of ſuch admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an horſe when he is in his full gallop, ſtand in the ſaddle when he runneth faſteſt; turn themſelves about upon his back, and ſuddenly down. Of their Countrey I find little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bemoin* one of their Kings, being overlaid with Civil wars, in the year 1489 went for aid to the King of *Portugal*, and gave great hopes of his converſion to the *Chriſtian* faith. But being ſhamefully murdered by *Pedro de Vas* the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts fell together with him.

13. *GUINEA*, is a Sea-coaſt Countrey, extended from *Sierra Leona* (ſo called from the *Lyon-like* roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory) in the tenth degree of *Longitude*, to the borders of *Benin* in the 30th. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this name the whole Sea-coaſt of *Africk* from *Cape Blanco* and the Countrey of *Ora Anteroſa*, to *Angola*, and *Congo*, incluſively, in the *Lower Æthiopia*. But take it in the proper ſenſe, as before limited, and we ſhall find it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barley, Cotton-wooll, and a ſort of Pepper, which the *Portugals* call *Pimienta del Rabo*, the Natives *Melegneta*, and we *Guinie-pepper*: of double the efficacy of the *Pepper* which comes from *India*; and therefore forbidden to be ſold by the Kings of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian* trade ſhould be diſcontinued. Well ſtored with Sheep and Poultry, and of *Dates* good plenty. All other Fruits which they want, or care for, are brought thither from *Gualata*. Birds in abundance, and of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut doth afford a moſt excellent liquor, more pleaſant, ſtrong, and nouriſhing, than the choiceſt Wines; which they drink of in their great Feaſts, even to drunkenneſs. The people of both Sexes very rude and barbarous, as well in their habit, as their manners; yet amongſt many barbarous cuſtomes they have one moſt commendable, which is the breeding of their *Maidens*. When marriable, they place them in an houſe ſevered from the reſt of their Cities, like a *Cloyſter*, or *Monaſtery*; where for a years ſpace, they are trained up by ſome old man of beſt eſtimation. At the years end they are brought out well apparelled with *Muſick* & dances; where the young men pleaſe themſelves in

the choyce of their wives: for whom having bargained with their *Parents*, they ſatisfie the old man for his care and pains in their Education. They keep one day of reſt weekly, but therein differ from all Nations in the world beſides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tueſday*. Diſtracted into as many Kingdoms, as great *Tribes*, or Families: the Kings thereof ſubordinate unto one another, as they lie more within the Land, till they end all in a ſubjection to the King of *Mandinga*. Places of moſt note. 1. *Songus*, the principal of *Mandinga*, about 100 leagues Eaſtward from the Cape of *Palmes*. 2. *Budomel*, the chief Town of the Kingdom ſo called. 3. *Uxoo* in the Center of all the Countrey. 4. *Mina*, a ſtrong Hold of the *Portugals*, ſituate near the Cape, called *Cabo de Trois Pentas*, the three-pointed Cape; named ſomtimes alſo S. *George de Mina*, by the name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the *Mines* of *Gold*, which they hoped to find there. By which, and by the Fort of *Arquin*, which they have upon Cape *Blanco*, in the North part of this Land of the *Negroes*; they command all the Countreys which they call by the name of *Guinea*. This Town not built until the year 1486. in the beginning of the reign of *John* the 2d. though the diſcovery of theſe Coaſts had been made before, An. 1452. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* Duke of *Viſeo*, Son of *John* the firſt. By whoſe encouragement the *Portugueze* did firſt imploy themſelves in forreign diſcoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas. For in this Interval, the *Portingals* being more covetous of new diſcoveries, than of fortifying and ſecuring the old, gave opportunity to the *Caſtilians* to look after this Countrey, who having took a view of it, in the year 1477. purſued the Enterprize the next year with a Fleet of 35 ſhips, under the command of *Pedro de Cobides*, who brought thence great quantity of Gold: but in the year 1479. by an agreement, or capitulation between thoſe Princes, the trade hereof was again left free to the *Portugals*; who thereupon diſcovering the Iſle of St. *George*, and finding it a fit place to ſecure, and command the reſt, built in it the ſtrong Fort or Caſtle of *Mina*, which before we ſpoke of.

14. BENIN, lieth directly Eaſt of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province, or Kingdom of it: the King whereof is ſaid to have 600 wives, with all which twice a year he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuſe not the name) have moſt of them 80 wives, ſome more; he that is pooreſt, ten, or twelve, and the more the merrier. The people thereof do cut and raſe their skin with three lines drawn to the Navel; eſteeming it neceſſary to Salvation. They uſe all, both men and women, to go naked till they are married; and then to be cloathed only from the waſte to the knees: ſo that had our Sir *Thomas Moor* lived in theſe parts, he had in ſome meaſure had his deſire. For he among other ſtrange plots in his *Utopian* Common-wealth, telleth us, how there it is the cuſtom, for ſome reverend *old Sire* to bring in naked the young man, and ſome *hoary* old Matron, to preſent naked, the young woman; between whom a Marriage is propounded. For, ſaith he, in buying a Horſe, the Chapman not only vieweth his naked Carcaſe, but taketh off all his Trappings and Saddle, leſt under them ſome blame might be hidden: why then in chuſing of a wife, ſhould we take one, of whom we ſee no more than the face (*unius palmæ ſpatium*) and perhaps ſcarce that. The learned and ingenuous Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he diſlike of Marriages made upon ſuch uncertainties, yet he would have this diſcovery made by ſome friends of the parties, not by them themſelves: it being, as he ſaith, very inconvenient that after ſuch a plain and familiar ſight of each others perſon, there ſhould be a refuſal upon either ſide. But theſe new *Projects*, I refer to your modeſt Cenſures.

15. GUANGARA, lieth on the North of *Benin*, a wealthy and well-peopled Country; but their Towns and Villages very mean, except that called by the ſame name with the Country, where the King reſideth, which is ſomwhat better than the reſt, well traded, and full of rich Merchants. The King hereof of ſo great Revenues, that he keepeth ſeven thouſand Archers, and five hundred Horſe in continual pay, but *Homager* and Tributary to the King of *Bornum*.

16. BORNUM, a large and opulent Countrey on the Weſt of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Diſtinguiſhed equally in a manner into hils, and vallies: the hils inhabited by Neatherds, and Sheepherds, breeding great flocks and herds of Cattel, with Mill, and many other fruits to us unknown; the *Valleys* repleniſhed with many Market-towns, and as full of Corn. The people are of no *Religion*, but live like beaſts, without *propriety* ſo much as in their Wives, or Children: nor are they differenced by names, as in other places, but by ſome mark upon their bodies. Which though it ſeem ſtrange to us of this preſent age, yet was it thus in part, with our *Saxon* Anceſtors. Whence have we elſe the names of *White*, *Brown*, *Black*, *Gray*, *Green*, and *Tawny*, or thoſe of *Long*, *Short*, *Low*, *Curle*, *Criſpe*, and others, but from ſuch *Originals*? Not to ſay any thing of the names of Trades, and Occupations, ſo familiar with us. The name of their chief City is *Borneo*, where their King reſideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay three thouſand Horſe, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is ſaid to have no other *Revenue*, than what he getteth by ſtrong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, thoſe Kings muſt needs be good Warriors, and have great ſucceſſes alſo in their undertakings: it being alſo ſaid of theſe Kings of *Borneo*, that all the Furniture of their Horſes, all the Diſhes, Cups and Platters which they eat or drink in, yea the very chains of his Dogs, were of fineſt Gold.

17. *Gaoga* lieth betwixt *Borneo*, and the Deſarts of *Nubia*: the Countrey almoſt ſquare, each ſide thereof extended 500 miles. The people ignorant, rude uncivil, but ſpecially thoſe which dwell in the Mountains: their houſes built moſt of boughs and leaves, which once dry, eaſily take fire; but the beſt is, they are ſoon repaired: their greateſt wealth is in their Cattel, which they keep moſt tenderly. About the year 1420. they were brought into ſubjection by a *Negro Slave*, who having ſlain his Maſter, by the help of his wealth grew ſtrong enough to incroach on his Neighbours: and ſelling ſuch captives as he took, for horſes of *Egypt*, became King of *Gaoga*, and in fine very gracious with the *Mamaluck* Sultans. His Succeſſors have ſince ſo enlarged their Territories, that they are ſecond unto none but the Kings of *Tombutum*.

18. ***NUBIA*** hath on the Weſt *Gaoga*, bounded on the North with *Egypt*, extended Eaſtward unto *Nilus*, by which parted from *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire. So called from the *Nuba*, an ancient and potent people of this Tract, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*: the great Lake, anciently called *Nubæ Palus*, being hence denominated. A diſtinct people from thoſe of the ſame name, dwelling on the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, near unto *Sinus Avalites*, who from the ſhortneſs of their ſtature, paſſed in accompt for *Pigmies*; Νύβαι Πυγμαῖοι, ſaith *Heſychius* an old Grammarian: theſe being a ſtrong and potent Nation, and well skilled in wars. Inſomuch as *Cyriacus* once a King hereof, underſtanding of ſome preſſures laid upon the *Chriſtians* of *Egypt*, is ſaid to have raiſed 100000 Horſe for their aid and ſuccour, but by the perſwaſions of the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, went back unfought with. For at that time the Countrey was wholly *Chriſtian*, and had been ſo from the very daies of the Apoſtles: but are now fallen off again to their former *Idolatries*, or become *Mahometans*, for want of Miniſters to inſtruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarez*, the Writer of the *Æthiopick* Hiſtory, that at his being in the Court of the *Abaſſine* Emperour, there came Ambaſſadors out of *Nubia*, to intreat a ſupply of Paſtors to inſtruct their Nation, and repair *Chriſtianity* amongſt them; but were unchriſtianly rejected.

Here is a *Poyſon* in this Countrey, of which the tenth part of a grain will diſpatch a man in a quarter of an hour, and is ſold for ten Ducats an Ounce; the Cuſtoms, for which, unto the King is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill commodity, they have many good; that is to ſay, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; ſome ſtore of Gold, and other Metals. The Countrey naturally ſandy; but well refreſhed with Lakes and Rivers, which do much enrich it; inſomuch as the people generally are very wealthy, and manage a great trade with the Merchants of *Caire* and *Egypt*. Their chief City is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; ſaid to contain no fewer than 10000 families; but their houſes built of nothing but thatch and mortar. In other parts, eſpecially towards the River *Nilus*, they have many Villages; few, or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, beſides thoſe in *Guinea*, but of leſſer note; as 19. ***BITO***. 20. ***TEMIANO***. 21. ***ZEGZEG***. 22. ***ZANFARA***. 23. ***GOTHAN***. 24. ***MEDRA***. 25. ***DAUM***. Of which there is nothing to be ſpoken, but of their Poverty, or Riches, Bleſſings, or Curſes common to them with the reſt of theſe Nations; and therefore I purpoſely omit them.

This Countrey, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Libya Interior*; inhabited beſides the *Nuba* and *Nigritæ* ſpoken of before, by the *Nabathræ* dwelling about the hill *Arvates*, the *Aroncæ*, near the hill *Arangus*, the *Agarginæ*, *Xylinces*, and *Alchalinces*, *Æthiopick* Nations. Not much conſiderable in the buſineſs of former times; nor much diſcovered (not very perfectly at this day) till the year 973. at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a ſuperſtitious zeal to propagate their Sect, firſt opened the way into theſe Countreys: the people then living like bruit beaſts, without King, Law, or any Form of Government; ſcarce knowing how to ſow their Lands, clad in the skins of as very beaſts as themſelves, and challenging no propriety in wives or children. Firſt conquered by *Joſeph* King of *Morocco*, of the race of the *Almohades*, and after that by the *five Nations* of *Libya Deſerta*, who divided them into fifteen parts, every one of thoſe *five Nations* poſſeſſing three of them. One of the Kings of theſe *Libyans*, named *Soni Heli*, being ſlain by *Abuaci Iſchia* General of his Forces, and the reſt terrified with that blow, *An.* 1526. the *Negroes* once again recovered their long loſt Liberty, and inſtituted divers Kings of their own. Amongſt them, *Izchia* was moſt deſervedly made King of *Tombutum*, who managed his affairs ſo well, that he conquered the Kings of *Guber*, *Agadez*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfora*, *Zegzeg*, *Ghenaoa*, *Gambea*, and *Caſena*, which he made his *Tributaries*. So that his Succeſſors are now the greateſt of thoſe five Kings, who have the ſupream power over all the reſt. The other four. 1. The King of *Mandinga*, Lording it over the Realms of *Benin*, *Gioloſi*, and the Kings of *Guinea*.; 2. The King of *Borneo*, the only one that is deſcended of the *Libyan* race, in greatneſs of command next to him of *Tombuto*; 3. The King of *Gualata*, whoſe Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein abſolute and ſupream; and 4. the King of *Goaga*, Paramount over all the reſt of theſe Provinces.

But becauſe the greateſt power is in the hands of the Kings of *Tombuto*, who poſſibly enough may in ſhort time bring all the reſt under his command, we will take a more particular view of his eſtate; affirmed to be the richeſt Prince in theſe parts of *Africk*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of Gold, ſome of which weigh 1300 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him, they kneel on both their knees, and bowing their heads unto the ground, caſt ſand over their ſhoulders, and upon their head, going forwards ſtill upon their knees. His Court he keeps in a royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horſe, but with many more Foot, all armed with Bowes and empoyſoned Arrows. To the *Jews* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to trade in his Kingdoms, and confiſcateth the goods of all ſuch of his Subjects as hold traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law, and liberal in ſtipends to the Doctors & Profeſſors of it. Of greater power than any other beyond *Atlas*, but the *Habaſſine* Emperour. And though *Amet* the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, in the year 1589. had ſome hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this Kingdom, even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire ſix moneths Journey, by Camels, beyond *Morocco*; yet it held not long: this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being ſince that time in as eminent power, as ever in any times before.

And ſo much for *Terra NIGRITARUM*.

OF

OF
ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Sinus Barbaricus*; on the Weſt, with *Libya Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia*, in the land of the *Negroes*, and part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Æthiopia*; on the North, with *Egypt*, and *Libya Marmarica*; and on the South, with the Mountains of the *Moon*, by which parted from the main body of *Æthiopia Inferior*.

It was firſt called *Ætheria*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Pliny* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Æthiopia*, from the *Greek* words Αἴθω, ſignifying to *burn*, and ὤψ a *Countenance*; becauſe the violent heats of the Sun had ſo ſcorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The additions of *Sub Ægypto*, *Superior*, and *Interior*, ſerve only to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Æthiopia*, which lieth further off from *Egypt*, on the outſide of this. It is called alſo ***Regnum Abyſſinorum***, from the *Abaſeni*, or *Abyſſini*, a people of *Arabin Felix*; who paſſing over the ***Red-Sea***, (not above ſeven miles broad in the narroweſt place) came and ſetled here. And in the Scripture it is ſtiled by the name of ***Ludim***, from ***Lud*** the Son of *Mizraim*, who firſt planted it; as hath been proved by many ſtrong and concluding Arguments in our *general Preface*.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the *Equinoctial*, extending from the South *Parallel* of ſeven Degrees, where it meeteth with ſome part of the other *Æthiopia*; to the Northern end of the Iſle of *Meroe*, ſituate under the fifth *Parallel* on the North of that Circle. And though by this accompt it fall ſhort of the dimenſions aſſigned by ſome, who extend it from one *Tropick* unto the other; yet is it of a very great length, no leſs than 1500 miles; the breadth about half as much, the whole circumference amounting to 4300 miles. Yet ſo, that all this vaſt tract of ground, is not to be underſtood of that part of the Countrey, which is under the command of the *Abaſſine* Emperor, commonly, but miſtakingly called *Preſtor John*: but of the whole Countrey of *Æthiopia*, as before limited and extended; containing beſides his Eſtate, the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Aden*, and the Provinces of *Quiloa* and *Melindi*; which two laſt are now reckoned of as parts of *Æthiopia Inferior*. The Iſle of *Meroe* in the North is poſſeſſed by *Mahometans*, the moſt bitter Enemies of this King: all on the Weſt of *Nilus*, betwixt it and the South-eaſt of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anzichi*, an *Idolatrous* and man-eating Nation, ſubject to a great Prince of their own: and all the Coaſts of the *Red-Sea*, as well within the *Streights* of *Babel Mandel*, as without, except the Port of *Erocco* only, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no ſubjection unto his Commands; but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Adea* before mentioned.

But taking it in the largeſt ſignification and extent hereof (according unto which we muſt here deſcribe it) it comprehendeth the three Countries called anciently *Æthiopin Sub Egypto*, *Trogloditica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera*. Of theſe the two laſt are by ſome reckoned but as parts of the firſt: though certainly the *Throglodites* were a different Nation from the *Æthiopians*. For paſt all doubt the *Troglodites* were Originally an *Arabian* people, ſo called *quia* τρῶγλας *ſubeunt*, from their living in *Caves* and dens: in which reſpect their part of this Countrey had the name of *Arabia Trogloditica*, in *Dioſcorides*, and ſome others of the Ancient Writers. Of theſe it is affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, that they were not the Maſters of any wealth, and that their ſpeech was rather a gnaſhing of the teeth, than any articulate and intelligible Pronuntiation. ***Nullarum opum Domini ſunt*** Trogloditæ, ***ſtrident magis quam loquuntur***. As for their houſes, they were (ſaith he) no better than *Caves*, and their Food, than *Serpents*. With whom concurreth *Pliny* alſo for their dwelling in Caves, and conſequently for the reaſon of the name, ſaying poſitively, *Trogloditæ ſpeluncas excavant*. Called for the ſame reaſon in the Holy Scripture, 2 *Chron*. 12.3. by the name of *Succhai*; the word *Succoth* (whence that name derived) not only ſignifying in the *Hebrew*, Tents, or Tabernacles, but Caves and Dens; and ſo tranſlated, *Pſal*. 10. *v*. 9. and *Job* 38. *v*. 40. As for that part hereof which was called ***Regio Cinnamomifera***, taking up the Southern parts in the time of *Ptolomy*, it took that name from the abundance of *Cinnamon*, which was then growing by it; now not a Tree of it to be found in all this Countrey, as the *Portugals*, who have looked narrowly for it, have affirmed unto us. Shipped at *Moſylon*, a noted Emporie, placed by *Ptolomy* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence tranſported into *Egypt*, and other Countries; as is ſaid by *Pliny*, ***Portus*** *Moſylitus* ***quo*** Cinnamomum ***devehitur***: the Spice in ſome Authors being called *Moſulum*, by the name of the Town. ἄρισον δὲ τὸ λεγόμενον Μόσυλον, τὸ ἀπὸ Μοσύλλυ πόλεως. Of *Cinnamon* the beſt is that which is called *Moſulon*, becauſe brought from the City of that name in *Æthiopia*, ſaith *Simeon Sethi* in his Tract *de Facultatibus Ciborum*. As for this *Cinnamon* (I note this only by the way) it is the inner Bark of a Tree, as big as an *Olive*, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three years is renewed, and ſtripped off again. Some think it came firſt from the *Sina* or the Countrey which the *Romans* called *Sinarum Regio*, the Moderns *China*; and that it was ſo called, ***quaſi Sina Amomum***, the *Amomum* of the *Sina*; *Amomum* being the name of a ſweet Perfume growing in *Aſſyria*, and *Armenia*. But then it ſhould be written *Sinamomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*: yet to give the greater credit to the former Opinion, they of *Ormus* call it ***Bar-China***, or the Wood of ***China***. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Æthiopia* it ſelf. The people of it in old time were ſaid to have been great *Aſtrologers*; the firſt Ordainers alſo of Sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were alſo noted to be very good *Archers*, and to draw the longeſt and ſtrongeſt Bowes of any Nation: the *Perſian* Bow (though thoſe the greateſt of all *Aſia*) being only three Cubits long; but theſe of *Æthiopia* four. *Utuntur etiam* Æthiopes *quatuor cubitorum arcubus*, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is ſaid alſo by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their *Arrows* ſmall but ſtrong, for the moſt part poyſoned; *Æthiopum geminata venenis vulnera*, as we find in *Claudian*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to ſpend our time too much upon theſe particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two ſtrange things of this Country. 1. That the *Ayr* & *ground* are ſo parching hot, that the people not only dare not go out of doors without ſhooes, but that they roſt their meat alſo by ſetting it in the Sun. 2. That there is a *Lake*, whoſe waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding ſalt and unpleaſing: but at all other times moſt ſweet and delicate to the palate.

The Countrey being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy* laid together; is but meanly populous; the *diſtemperature* of the *Climate* and the dry barrenneſs of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cauſe *Africk* is by *Strabo* compared to a *Leopards* skin, the diſtance of whoſe ſpots ſheweth the diſperſedneſs of the Towns and Habitations in thoſe *torrid* Countries. A Countrey ſcarce in Wheat, but ſufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barly, Beans, Peaſe, and the like; they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all ſorts, and infinite Herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally, there is no Countrey under Heaven fitter for increaſe of Plants, and living creatures, if induſtry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are deſtitute of many neceſſary things, which otherwiſe the natural commodities of the Countrey would ſupply them with. For they have here great ſtore of *Flax*, but make no *Cloth*; plenty of *Vines*, yet make no *Wine*, except it be to ſerve the Palaces of the King and the *Patriarh*; Abundance of *Sugar-canes*, and Mines of *Iron*; but know not how to make uſe of either unto any advantage. Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig *Channels* or trenches to derive their waters to the reſt of the Land which want them; thoſe Rivers almoſt choaked with *Fiſh*, their Woods crammed with *Veniſon*, which they trouble not themſelves to catch.

By this we may conjecture ſomwhat of the people alſo; Lazie and given unto their eaſe, ill-cloathed, and not much better houſed; extreamly inclined unto *Barbariſm*, deſtitute of all Learning, not to be credited unleſs they ſwear by the life of their Emperors; they hate a *Smith* equally with the Devil: their colour is generally olive-tawny, excepting only their King himſelf, who is alwaies of a white complexion (a wonderful prerogative, if true. This blackneſs of their bodies, by the Poet attributed to the burning of the world by *Phaeton*.

> *Sanguine tum credunt, in corpora ſumma vocato,*
> Æthiopum *populos nigrum traxiſſe colorem.*

Which may be *Engliſhed*:

> *Their Blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part*
> *The* Æthiopians *grew ſo black and ſwart.*

But the true cauſe hereof, whatſoever it be, may perhaps be looked on hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt made known in this Countrey, by the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip* the *Evangeliſt*, and one of the *Seven*; more generally embraced by the pains and preaching of S. *Matthew* the Apoſtle hereof; but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the Reign of A*braham*, An. 470. who in his life entituled himſelf the Defender and propagater of the *Religion* of CHRIST, and after his death, was generally honoured as a *Saint*. Suppreſſed in part by the coming in of the A*baſſenes*, and other A*rabians*, it was again revived and more univerſally received than in former times, in the Reign of *David* King of the A*xumite Æthiopians*: who in a war againſt *Dunmus* King of the *Homerites* in A*rabia Felix*, ſolemnly vowed to the God of the *Chriſtians*, to become one of his Followers, if he got the Victory: And ſo accordingly he did, ſending his Ambaſſadors to the Emperor *Juſtinian*, for ſome Biſhops and other Learned men to inſtruct his people. The Particulars of thoſe Opinions wherewith they have ſince corrupted the purity of the true Religion, I find thus regiſtred. 1. They uſe to *circumciſe* their Children, both males and Females; 2. They baptize the Males 40 and the Females 80 dayes after their *Circumciſion*: 3. After the receipt of the Sacrament, they are not to ſpit till Sun-ſet, 4. They profeſs but *one Nature*, & one will in CHRIST: 5. They accept only three firſt General Councils; 6. Their *Prieſts* live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg; 7. They *baptize* themſelves every *Epiphany*-day in Lakes and ponds, becauſe that day they ſuppoſe *Chriſt* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan*. 8. They eat not of thoſe Beaſts, which in the old Law are reckoned for *unclean*; 9. They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewiſh Sabbath* equally ſolemn with the *Lords Day*; 10. They adminiſter the *Euchariſt* to Infants preſently after Baptiſm; 11. They teach, that the Reaſonable ſoul of man is derived from their Parents by *Seminal propagation*; 12. That Infants *dying unbaptized*, are ſanctified in the Womb, by vertue of the *Euchariſt* received by the Mother after her *Conception*. And finally, they ſhew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they ſay, by the A*poſtles* aſſembled at *Hieruſalem* for that purpoſe; the Contents whereof they obſerve moſt ſolemnly. Theſe are the moſt material points in which they differ from the Tendries of the *Catholique* Church. And there are other points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, as *viz.* 1. Adminiſtring in *both kinds*; 2. Without either *Elevation*, or *Reſervation*, 3. Rejecting maſſie Images, and 4. *Extreme Unction*, 5. Allowing the firſt marriages to their Prieſts and Biſhops: and 6. In renouncing all relation to the Pope of *Rome*; who to the buſineſs of theſe Churches is a very ſtranger, and ſo hath been from the very firſt foundation of them. For it appears by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabick*, and tranſlated into *Latine* by *Piſanus*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna*, as they call'd him) of theſe *Abaſſine* Churches, was in thoſe times ſubordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacie by the Fathers, which were there aſſembled; and conſtantly ever ſince approved and practiſed by theſe Churches: in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembred before their own. To this Patriarch, by an antient priviledge belongeth the ſeventh place in the *Seſſions* of all *General Councils*; the Archbiſhop of *Seleucia* (or *Babylon*) onely interpoſing betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*. Elected by the *Abaſſine* Monks of S. *Antonies* Order remaining in *Hieruſalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, (of which *Order*, and of whoſe juriſdiction he muſt alwayes be) he is ſent into this Countrey to take his charge: where in ſome points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal priviledge with the Emperour himſelf; and in *Spiritual*, hath the ſole power of excommunicating an obſtinate Sinner. All other *Eccleſiaſtical* Dignities, from the Biſhoprick to the loweſt Benefice, are conferred by the Emperour onely.

The principal Mountains of it in the former times, had the names of 1 *Prionotus*, 2. *Iſius*, 3. *Monodactylus*, 4. *Gaurus*, and 5. *Mons Satyrorum*; all of them in that part which was called *Troglodítica*: 6. *Garbala*, 7. *Elephas*, and 8. *Maſte* in the Iſle of *Meroe*: the reſt of the Countrey flat and level, or the hills not eminent. Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Aſtapus* (now *Abanni*) ariſing out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena*, 2. *Aſtaboras*, now *Tacaſſi*; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3. *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whoſe ſpring unprofitably ſought for in the elder times, is now ſaid to be out of the Lake *Zembre* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Æquator*: whence paſſing through ſpacious *Deſarts*, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms, he at laſt entreth into this. Here in ſome places ſtrugling amongſt broken Rocks, and leſs free paſſages, he falleth with ſuch a wonderful noiſe into the Vallies beneath; that a Colony planted by the *Perſians* neer one of theſe *Cataracts*, (ſo they call thoſe huge falls of his) were ſo dulled and deafned with the noiſe, that they were fain to abandon their habitations. Nor doth it onely dull and deafen the neighbouring people, but the very hills do ſeem to tremble at the noiſe it maketh. Of which thus the Poet,

Cuncta tremunt undis, & multo murmure montis,
Spumeus invictis albeſcit fluctibus amnis.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words;

The noiſe the Mountains ſhakes, who roar for ſpite
To ſee th' unvanquiſh'd Waves cloth'd all in white.

Of theſe *Cataracts* there are two moſt noted: the one called *Catarractes Major*, in the borders of this Countrey towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Philæ*, and *Pſelcis*, Æthiopian cities; the other called *Catarractes Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syens*, the laſt City of that Countrey towards this. So turbulent is this River amongſt the Hills. And yet as terrible as theſe Falls are ſuppoſed to be, one may divers times ſee the Countrey people in a little Boat not able to contain above two perſons, to venture down them without fear; appearing after they have been long toſſed in the waters a great diſtance off, as if they had been ſhot out of an *Engine*. Nor is he of ſuch quiet paſſage in the open Countries, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels to receive his waters; which if not curbed and leſſened by ſuch wayes as theſe, might by ſome ſudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in reſpect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for long time to the *Abaſſine* Emperours, an annual tribute. Which when the *Great Turk*, ſuppoſing it a needleſs charge, had once denied: this people, by the command of their Emperour, did open their Sluces, and break down the Dams; whereby the water fell ſo violently and ſo faſt unto *Egypt*, that the *Turk* was not onely glad to continue the tribute, but to give them great ſums of mony to make up their works. But others ſay, that this acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptian* Kings, not ſo much for keeping up the waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Habaſſine* Emperours ſhould divert the Stream, and ſo deprive that Countrey of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are alſo ſaid to be ſome *Lakes* of that poyſonous nature, that whoſoever drinketh of them, doth either immediately fall mad, or elſe is troubled for long time with continual *drowſineſs*. Of which thus *Ovid*,

Æthiopeſque Lacus; quos ſi quis faucibus hauſit,
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate ſoporem.

Which may be paraphraſed in theſe words:

Who doth not know the Æthiopian Lake?
Of which whoever drinks, his thirſt to ſlake,

Either grows mad, *or doth his ſoul oppreſs*
With an unheard of heavy drowſineſs.

To look upon the State, as it ſtood in the former times, we find in it beſides the *Lakes* and Rivers before mentioned, three capacious Bays, that is to ſay, 1. *Sinus Adulicus*, 2. *Sinus Avalites*, and 3. *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two laſt neighboured by the now Countries of *Adel* and *Melinde*. Havens of note, and Rodes for ſhipping, there were five in all, *viz.* 1. *Bathus*, or the deep Haven, 2. *Dioſcorum Portus*, or the Haven of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, 3. *Theon Soterum*, or the Haven of the *Saviour-Gods*, 4. *Portus Evangeliorum*, *Goſpel-Port*, or the Port of good News. And 5. *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the ſame name neer adjoyning to it. For other Promontories, which in ſo long a tract of Sea muſt needs be many; the principal were, 1. *Baſium*, 2. *Mnemium*, 3. *Dimetris*, 4. *Aſpis*, 5. *Ara Amoris*, 6. *Colobon*, the Promontory of *Saturn*, 8. *Moſylon*, with a noted *Empory* of the ſame name, 9. *Aromata*, neer another well frequented *Empory* of the ſame name alſo; and 10 that of *Noti-cornu*. Then for the Towns of greateſt Trading, beſides thoſe laſt mentioned, we have, 1. *Avalites*, 2. *Malao*, 3. *Mundi*, 4. *Cube*, and 5. *Acane*, in the Bay of *Avalites*, 6. *Opone* in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7. *Eſſina*, on the South of the *Æquinoctial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongſt many others, the names of 1. *Epitherias*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ptolemais Ferarum*, 2. *Adulis*, and 3. *Avalites*, giving names unto their ſeveral Bays, 4. *Rapta*, the *Metropolis* of that part of this Countrey which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the ſhores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Raptus*, upon which it is ſituate; ſo they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Raptum*, 5. *Meree*, the chief City of the Iſle ſo called, 6. *Sabath* in the Bay of *Adutis*, which poſſibly might be ſome Colony of the *Sabæans*, in *Arabia Felix*, 7. *Coloe*, by *Pliny* called *Tolen*, not far from the great *Lake* ſo named, 8. *Cambuſis*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cambyſi Ærarium*, from ſome treaſures laid up here by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian*, in his invaſion of this Countrey, 9. *Auxumi* the chief City of the *Auxumites*, a moſt potent people of theſe parts; and the Seat-royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings, 10. *Napata*, as *Ptolomy*; but by moſt others called *Tanape*, of old the reſidence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, ſacked and ruined by *Petronius*, Preſident of *Egypt*. For when Candace (the Predeceſſor, I believe, of her whoſe *Eunuch* was baptized by *Philip*) had ranſacked and waſted *Egypt* with fire and ſword; *Petronius*, Lieutenant to *Auguſtus*, drave them home, harried the whole Countrey, put this City to the ſpoil; and to prevent the like inrodes, fortified the Frontires of his Province, 11. *Phila*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, garriſoned by the *Romans* till the time of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned. Of ſome of theſe, and others not here mentioned, we may have opportunity to ſpeak more hereafter; in the ſurvey of ſome of theſe particular Provinces, into which this Countrey ſtands divided at this preſent time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are ſaid to make up 70 Kingdoms; moſt of them ſubject to the *Abaſsine* Emperour. The principal of which are, 1. *Guagere*, 2. *Tigremaon*, 3. *Angote*, 4. *Amma*, 5. *Damut*, 6. *Goijami*, 7. *Bagamedrum*, 8. *Barnagaſſum*, 9. *Adel*, 10. *Adea*, 11. *Dancali*, 12. *Dobas*, 13. *Fatigar*, 14. *Xoa*, 15. *Barus*. Concerning which I muſt premiſe, that I find the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times diſagreeing, ſometimes falſe: So that I muſt profeſs my ſelf to be leſs ſatisfied in the deſcription of this Countrey, than in any of the reſt which have gone before. Such as it is, I here preſent it to the Reader.

1. GUAGERE.

GUAGERE containeth onely the Iſland of *Meroe*, an Iſland of much note and fame amongſt the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Aſtaborus*, the two chief Rivers of this Countrey. The length hereof 350 miles, the breadth 125. abundantly plentiful of Gold, Silver, Braſs, Iron, Ivory, Precious ſtones, and an excellent kind of *Mineral* Salt. Well ſtored with moſt ſorts of beaſts, both tame and wilde; and of the laſt ſort with Lyons, Leopards, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants, and Dragons.

The people are of the ſame nature and complexion with the reſt; *Mahometans* by Religion, and the profeſſed Enemies of the *Abaſsine* Emperour; againſt whom they do not onely defend themſelves, by the advantages and benefit of their ſituation; but confederating with the *Turks*, and *Arabians*, fall many times with great forces into his Dominions. It is ſaid by *Pliny* of the Inhabitants of this Iſland, that twice a year, *viz.* When the Sun is in the 16th. degree of *Taurus*, and the 14th. of *Leo*, they have the Sun ſo perpendicular above their heads, that he caſts no ſhadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, than their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to 120 years of Age; and therefore called *Macrobii* by the old *Greek* Writers. The women ſaid to be of ſuch great breſts in the former times, that they did ſuckle their children over their ſhoulders (as ſome women are now ſaid to do neer the *Cape of good Hope*:) the dug being bigger than the childe. Of which thus *Juvenal*.

In Meroe, *craſſo majorem Infante mamillam.*

In Meroe *the Mothers pap*
Is bigger than the childe in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof, 1. *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Iſland, but took the ſame from *Meroe*, a ſiſter of *Cambyſes* King of *Perſia*; or as *Euſebius* ſaith, from *Merida*, the mother of

Chenephris, a King of **Egypt**. *Joſephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Saba*; on authority of whoſe miſtake it hath been made the *Regal* City of that Queen of *Sheba* (the Queen of *Egypt*, and *Æthiopia*, as *Joſeph* calleth her) who came to *Solomon*. An opinion ſo received amongſt theſe Iſlanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have reſtored the name of *Saba* to this City, as of greater eminence. The City ſaid by ſome to contain about 5000 houſes, great and ſumptuous; the ſtreets thereof to be large and ſpacious, with Galleries on each ſide before the doors of their houſes, where men walk ſafe from all extremities of heat, or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (beſides others of inferiour note) built of *Alabaſter* and *Jaſper*, wrought with *Antick* works: the doors belonging to thoſe Gates, of *Cedar*, curiouſly wrought; the wayes which lead unto them, for the ſpace of two Leagues, beſet with Palms, Orange-trees, Cedars, Cypreſſes, and others no leſs uſeful both for ſhade and fruit. In the place where the four ſtreets going from theſe Gates, do croſs each other, a goodly Arch erected upon ſtately Pillars, fairly wrought and gilded; with the *Statue* of S. *Matthew*, made of braſs, but guilded, on the top thereof. Such it is ſaid to be by ſome. Others think there is no ſuch City; it may not be ſo beautiful, as ſome have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times, 2. *Sacolche*, 3. *Darorum Vicus*, 4. *Eſer*, of which we have little but the names.

This Iſland was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being choſen for their King, who excelled the reſt in ſtrength, perſon, or in ſtock of Cattel; but thoſe Kings ſo ſubject to their *Prieſts*, that by a Meſſenger, or *Herald* they were ſentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the Throne. And thus it ſtood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his armed Souldiers, ſlew all theſe *Prieſts*; and freed himſelf and his Succeſſours from ſo great a *ſlavery*. Afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; honoured for the moſt part with the Seat of thoſe Kings, and memorable in thoſe times for the *Table* of the *Sun*: which was a place near the City of *Meroe*, always furniſhed with variety of roſted meats, ſet there by night at the charge, and command of the King (much taken as it ſeemeth with this coſtly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would; called therefore the Table of the Sun, becauſe aſcribed unto his bounty by the ignorant people. In the declining of this Kingdom, occaſioned by the inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Iſland was ſeized on by that people, and hath been ever ſince kept by them; together with the reſt of the Countrey, lying betwixt it and *Egypt*; in which are contained, as ſome write, the Kingdom of *Damote*, *Sua*, and *Jaſculum*, anciently belonging to this Empire, now diſmembred from it: not much obſervable, but for being a thorowfare to great troups of *Pilgrims*, which every *Lent* paſs by them out of the *Abaſſine* Dominions, to the *Sepulchre*, and other like places in and near *Jeruſalem*.

2. TIGREMAON.

TIGREMAON, hath on the north, *Guagere*, and the River *Marabo*, by which laſt parted from *Barnagaſſo*; on the South, the Realm of *Angote*; on the Weſt, *Nilus*. On the Eaſt it is ſaid to extend to the *Red-Sea*; but the Sea-parts thereof poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, and the adjoyning Coaſts by the *Moors* and *Arabians*: the inland parts promiſcuouſly inhabited, eſpecially more towards the Sea, by *Chriſtians* and *Ethnicks*. Divided into many inferiour Regions, the principal whereof, 1. *Sabian*, 2. *Torrates*, 3. *Balgada*, ſo called perhaps from the chief Towns of them, and 4. *Tigrai*; the moſt large and ample of all theſe ſubordinate Provinces; as containing in it 17 great tracts under ſo many Lieutenants, which rule all affairs both of Peace and War. The people black of colour, deformed of ſhape, in condition miſerable, of conditions wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet ſo that with a little digging they find water in them. Their chief City *Caxumo*, or *Caſſumo*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Auxume*, *Stephanus Axomites*, *Procopius Auzomide*: by all of them eſteemed the *Metropolitan* City of *Ethiopia*, and the Seat-royal of their Kings. In witneſs whereof are many ancient buildings yet remaining, ſome Pillars which reſemble the *Ægyptian Obelisks*, admirable for their height and workmanſhip: 60 foot high, and full of *Characters*, or Letters ingraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian Auxumites*, the moſt potent Nation of this Countrey, had their name from hence: more probably conceived to be the Regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) than any other of the Kingdom; and ſtill affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperours. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Beimalechi*, but I know not in what part to find it: ſome in a Royal Palace near that Lake of *Zembre*, built in the year 1570. by ſome *Europæan Architects* ſent hither by *Francis* Duke of *Florence*: and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all, but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a *Royal Progreſs* from one place to another; which *wandring Court*, or *moving City*, is ſaid to be no leſs than ten miles in compaſs, when the *Pavilions*, which belong to it, are diſpoſed of into rank and order.

This Kingdom is governed by a Prince of its own, but one who is an *Homager* and Tributary to the *Abaſſine* Emperour: to whom he payeth yearly 200 horſes of the beſt *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of ſilks, great ſtore of *Cotton-wool*, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion I have no where met with.

3. ANGOTE.

ANGOTE is bounded on the North, with *Tigremahon*; on the Weſt, with *Nilus*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Amara*; on the Eaſt, with *Dancali* and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of Hills and Vallies, both extreamly fertile, productive of the choiceſt fruits, and great herds of Cattel. The people eat but once in 24 hours, and for the moſt part make that meal in the night; their diet raw Veniſon, or ſmoaked Beef; the money moſt in uſe amongſt them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which cuſtome of uſing Salt, Pepper, and the like inſtead of money, was in former times amongſt moſt people the onely bartery, or way of exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glaucus* golden Armour was valued at an hundred Kine, and *Diomedes* Armour at ten onely. Afterward in Juſtice *commutative*, it was deemed convenient, to have ſome common Judge, or valuation, of the equality, or inequality of goods: the invention of which the *Jews* attribute to *Cain*, the *Grecians* to *Hermodice* the wife of *Midas*, the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nummus*, or νόμισμα from νόμος, becauſe it was ordained by Law: *Pecunia*, either becauſe in elder times the chief of their wealth conſiſted in Cattel, as now among the *Iriſh*; or from a Cow (*Pecus*) which was ſtamped on it: and *Moneta*, *à monendo*, as *Suidas* ſaith; becauſe when the *Romans* ſtood in need of money, *Juno monebat*, *Juno* admoniſhed them that they ſhould uſe Juſtice, and there ſhould be no want of money. To this Goddeſs, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worſhipped it in the figure of a Woman, holding a pair of Scales in one hand, and a *Cornucopia* in the other: by the Poet called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfitly, the greatneſs of her power conſidered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I find not much ſpoken of the Countrey in the way of ſtory; nor meet I with the names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unleſs that 1. *Angote* it ſelf, as alſo 2. *Abugana*, 3. *Giannamora*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may poſſibly be ſo called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4. AMARA.

AMARA hath on the North, *Angote*; on the South, *Damut*; on the Weſt, it ſtretcheth towards the *Nile*; and on the Eaſt, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Countrey very plain and champaigne, little ſwelled with hills, ſufficiently fruitful, and well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattel. The chief City of it called *Amara*, by the name of the Province, ſituate in the midſt of the Empire, and though not much diſtant from the *Æquator*, if not plainly under it, yet bleſſed with ſuch a temperate air, ſuch a fruitful ſoil, ſuch raviſhing pleaſures of all ſorts, that ſome have taken (but miſtaken) it for the place of *Paradiſe*: So ſtrangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and Humane induſtry, have joyned their helps together to enrich and beautifie it.

But that which is the greateſt Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, ſituate in a large and delightful plain: the bottom of the Hill in circuit 90 Miles, and a days journey high; the Rock ſo ſmooth and even (but leſſer and leſſer towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly poliſhed: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the light; ſo eaſie of aſcent, that one may ride up with great pleaſure, and in the midſt of the Aſcent a ſpacious Hall, as it were to reſt in: the top it ſelf is a large plain, 20 leagues in circuit, compaſſed with an high wall, to the end that neither man nor beaſt fall down upon any chance; beautified towards the South with a riſing hill, out of which iſſueth a ſweet Spring, which watering the ſeveral Palaces and Gardens of it, uniteth it ſelf into a Lake for the uſe of Cattel; the plain enriched with all ſorts, both of fruit and grain; adorned with two magnificent *Monaſteries*, in each of which are founded 1500 Knights of the Order of S. *Anthony*, a Religious *Militia*; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger ſons of the *Emperour* are continually incloſed, to avoid ſedition. They enjoy there whatſoever is fit for delight, or *Princely education*; and from hence ſome one of them, who is moſt hopeful, or beſt liked, is again brought out, if the Emperour die ſon-leſs, to be made ſucceſſour. This Mountain hath but one aſcent up, as before was ſaid, which is impregnably fortified; and was deſtinate to this uſe *Anno* 470, or thereabouts, by the Emperour *Abraham Philip*, adviſed hereunto, as he gave out, by an heavenly viſion. In one of theſe Palaces is a famous *Library*, wherein are ſaid to be many books, which with us are either in part, or totally loſt: as the Oracles of *Enoch*, with the myſteries which eſcaped the floud, being by him engraven on pillars; the whole works of *Livy*, and others. Which being heretofore tranſlated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabick* tongue (when having plundered all the moſt famous *Libraries* of the Eaſt and Weſt, they burnt the *Originals*, out of a plot to make that language as renowned and as generally ſtudied, as the *Greek*, or *Latine*) are ſaid by ſome good fortune to be here preſerved.

5. DAMUT.

DAMUT hath on the North, *Amara*; on the Weſt, *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Goiamy*, and on the Eaſt, the great Lake of *Barcena*, and ſome part of *Zanguebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior*. The Countrey plentifully furniſhed with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and living Creatures of all ſorts. For none more famed than for their *Slaves*, ſold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Perſia*, *India*; and much eſteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in war, dexterity in buſineſs, but ſpecially for their fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this cauſe placed in Offices of great truſt and power, by many of the *Eaſtern* Princes: who uſing a tyrannical Form of Government, and not daring to truſt the ſword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto places of Court, or Counſel, do for the moſt part arm theſe *Slaves*, and truſt them alſo with the conduct of their chief Affairs. A Truſt, in which they never falſified, or failed in a true diſcharge, but when preſuming of their power, and thoſe advantages, which ſo great a truſt and power had preſented to them, they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Bengala*; and kept it many years in a ſucceſſion of the *Abaſſine Slaves*, wherewith they ſtill made up their numbers; till outed long ſince by the *Great Mongul*.

The Oxen of this Countrey are ſaid to be near as great as Elephants; their Horns ſo large that they ſerve as *Tankards* to carry, and as *Barrels* to keep either Wine, or water. Here is alſo ſaid to be a kind of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wild, faſhioned like an Horſe, but no bigger than an Aſs; but we muſt think theſe *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinocerots*, or elſe we ſhall very much miſtake the truth of the matter. And for the people (to go them both over once again) they are for the moſt part *Gentiles*; ſome *Chriſtians* intermixt amongſt them, who have ſuudry Monaſteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the Principality of *Conche*, ſaid to have more Gold in it than all *Peru*, a *mountain all of Gold*, if the *Friers* ſay true. The people *Gentiles*, but the Prince not long ſince gained to the Chriſtian *Faith*; into which he was baptized by the *Abbot*, or chief Governour of the *Monaſteries* on the hill *Amara*: *Gradeus* the Emperor being his *Godfather*, by whom named *Andrew*. And here they have an hill of great height, and very difficult aſcent; from the top whereof they uſe to caſt headlong ſuch of the Nobility, as by the Emperours ſentence are condemned to die. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom, or this Principality, I am not able to reſolve, unleſs, 1. *Damut*, and 2. *Conche* may be two, and the two moſt eminent, as giving name to thoſe Eſtates.

6. GOIAMY.

GOIAMY, hath on the North, *Damut*; on the Weſt, *Bagamedrum*; on the South, and Eaſt, ſome Provinces of the other *Æthiopia*. The Countrey in the North parts full of *Deſarts* and Rocky Mountains; in the reſidue plentifully furniſhed with all things neceſſary. Great ſtore of Gold they find, but *droſſie*; the people not knowing how to refine and purifie it; or loath here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way, for fear of drawing in the *Turks* and *Arabians*, to partake of the Booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers, or rather *Torrents*, which come tumbling down the hils with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall; making a noyſe, not much inferiour to a clap of thunder: and amongſt other *Lakes*, two of ſpecial note, which for their greatneſs ſeem to be Seas; in which, as ſome report, *Mermaids*, and *Tritons*, or Men-fiſhes uſe to ſhew themſelves; and out of which it is thought by others, that the Fountains of *Nilus* do ariſe; and both true alike. But paſt all doubt, the *Abaſſines* themſelves are of this opinion, and therefore in the ſtile of the *Negaz* (ſo they call their Emperour) he is termed King of *Goiamy*, with this addition, *In which are found the Fountains of Nilus*. Deceived alike in their Opinion, touching this particular, the Springs, or Fountains of that River, being further South: though poſſibly having loſt himſelf in theſe vaſt *Lakes*, and iſſuing hence into a more contracted Channel, he may be ſaid to have a ſecond birth from hence, thongh not the firſt. And theſe I take to be the *Lakes*, which were diſcovered by the *Romans* in the time of *Nero*. Who following the deſign of ſome other great *Potentates*, *Seſoſtris*, *Cambyſes*, *Alexander*, and *Philadelphus*, in diſcovering the true *Original* of this famous River; imployed two *Centurions* in that ſervice; who aided in it by the then King of the *Æthiopians*, are ſaid to have come at laſt unto certain great *Mariſhes* (moſt probably the lower and ſedgy parts of theſe *Lakes* now mentioned) of whoſe extent the Inhabitants themſelves were ignorant; nor poſſible to be diſcovered any further, the Weeds having ſo overgrown the water, that there was no further paſſage to be made by Boat, and leſs by wading.

Betwixt this Countrey and *Damut*, which we laſt paſſed thorow, is ſaid to be a Province of *Amazons*; warlike and fierce, and very expert at the Bow; whoſe Queen knoweth no man, and by the reſt honoured as a Goddeſs. Theſe, they ſay, were firſt inſtituted by the Queen of *Saba*, as true, as that which ſome have added of the *Phœnix* viſible in this Countrey, of *Griffons*, and of *Fowls* ſo big that they make a ſhadow like a Cloud. Which ſtrange reports I have here added, to ſupply the defect of Towns and Cities, of which I meet not with ſo much as the naked names; as undiſcovered places in our *Maps* and *Charts*, are filled up with *Monſters*.

7. BAGAMEDRUM.

BAGAMEDRUM, or SAGAMEDRUM (for I find both names) lieth on the Weſt of *Goiamy*; betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nilus*: and keeping all along the courſe of that River, as far as *Guagere* or *Meroe*, encountreth with the Southern point of *Barnagaſſo*. Some do extend it alſo beyond that Iſland, but making the whole length thereof but 600 miles, do confute themſelves. The greateſt Province of this Empire it may probably be, *cateris hujus Æthiopia ampliſſimum*, as they ſay it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it muſt be 1500 miles, not 600 only.

The Countrey plentiful in Mines of the pureſt *Silver*, which they cannot draw thence but by fire, which makes it run like long Rods, or Ropes of Mettal. And yet as large, and wealthy as they ſay it is, I am more to ſeek for Towns and Cities in it, than in the *Deſarts* of *Libia*, or the ſands of *Arabia*.

Merchants and Travellers for the moſt part go no further than the Sea-coaſts of the Countrey, of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the Inlands; and of the Natives ſuch as have travelled abroad into other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant men, know little more of their own Empire, than the place they lived in. Or probably their beſt Cities not containing above 2000 houſes, few of them ſo many, and thoſe patched up of thatch, dirt, and hurdles (unleſs ſome of the Nobility, or wealthier Merchants are provided better) they may have no great reaſon to ſpeak much of them; or to acquaint us with the names of ſuch ſorry places, as are indeed not worth the naming. Which I conceive to be the true condition of moſt, or all the Inland Towns in this large Eſtate.

8. BARNAGASSO.

BARNAGNES, or BARNAGASSUM, hath on the Weſt, *Guagere*, or the Iſle of *Meroe*; on the Southweſt as ſome ſay, a point of *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Dangali* and *Adel*; on the Eaſt, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it ſtretcheth towards *Egypt*; the Kingdoms of *Jaſculum* and *Sua*, poſſeſſed by the *Mahometans*, being interpoſed.

The Countrey very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well ſtored with pleaſant Rivulets, beſides the neighbourhood of the *Red-Sea* on the one ſide, *Nile* and *Abanhi* on the other. Remarkable for a *Mountain* in the weſtern part of it, which being ſpatious in the beginning groweth ſtrait by little and little, and then enlargeth it ſelf again to a League in circuit. On the top thereof a *Royal Palace*, a Church, and a Monaſtery, and two very large Ciſterns, with a piece of ground able to entertain and keep 500 men. To be aſcended one way only, and that but to a certain Mark; to which being come, they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets to the top of all; not to be took by force, by reaſon of the impoſſibility of aſcent; nor by long ſiege, or any extremity of Famine, in regard it yields proviſion enough to maintain it ſelf. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province againſt *Turks* and *Moors*.

It containeth beſides *Barnagaſſo* it ſelf, the two Provinces of *Canſila* and *Daſila*, though rather ſubject to the Governour or Vice-Roy of it, than parts and members of the ſame. Towns of moſt moment in the whole, 1. *Beroa*, or *Barua*, conceived by ſome to be the *Colony* of *Ptolomy*, the Reſidence of the *Vice*-Roy, ſituate on a pleaſant and fiſh-ful River. 2. *Zameta*, honoured ſomtimes alſo with the *Vice-Royes* preſence; but rather as a retiring place in times of leiſure, than a Town of ſtrength. 3. *Suachen*, ſituate in an Iſland of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richeſt Cities of the Eaſtern parts; and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, ſecured by nature from all ſtorms, of ſmooth Tides, ſure Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great ſhips of burden. Situate in a little Iſland, the whole circumference whereof it taketh up; inſomuch that Veſſels of all ſorts, both within the Haven and without, do uſually unlade themſelves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the ſhip-beaks ſerve for Bridges. A wealthy and well traded Town both by Sea and Land, to which from the more In-land parts of the *Habaſſine* Empire, the Mountains open a ſafe paſſage for the carriage and re-carriage of their commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long ſince with all the reſt of the Countrey lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the Seat of a *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, or *Baſſa*: whom in imitation of the Romans, they call the *Beglerbeg* of *Abaſſia*; as if by the poſſeſſion of this ſmall part of that Empire, they would entitle the *grand Signieur* unto all the reſt. The Town conceived by ſome, to be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Oſtium Sabaſticum*, or rather *Sabaiticum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Ptolemais ferarum*, or the *Epitherias*, as *Pliny* calleth it, of the ancient Writers. And ſome again will have it to be the *Succha* of *Pliny*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodites* (who are called *Succhai* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whoſe part of the Countrey it is ſeated, and to which name it hath ſome reſemblance. 4. *Biſam*, not far from *Erocco*, remarkeable for a Monaſtery ſituate on the top of an high Rock, environed with dreadful Precipices upon every ſide; in which live 3000 *Monks*, eating by three and three together, in a common *Refectorie*,: this being the chief of ſix others in this Province of *Barnagaſſo*, the furtheſt not above 30 miles diſtant. For maintenance of whom, and a great number of poor children which they daily feed, beſides the Tythes of all the Mountain, in which it ſtandeth (fruitful and rich, and at leaſt 30 miles in compaſs) they have many good Farms at the foot of the ſaid Mountain, and an hundred ſmall Villages appertaining to them, out of which they raiſe yearly great proviſion of Corn, and above 2000 head of *Cattel*, their *Revenues* out of *Tigremaon* being reckoned in. A Revenue able to maintain them and their Hoſpitality, in regard their *Novices*, or young *Monks* are ſent abroad to earn their living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the Husbandry of the houſe: the elder only being found at the charge of the Monaſtery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5. *Erocco*, another noted Port on the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a paſſage openeth through the *Streits* of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suachen*, conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolomy*, the *Aduliton* of *Pliny*: Now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, or at their command. 6 *Santar*. 7 *Giabel*. 8 *Laccari*. 9 *Abarach*: theſe four laſt in the Province of *Daſila*.

This Country at the preſent, and for long time paſt, is ſubject both to the Great *Neguz*, or the *Freſtegian* of *Æthiopia*, and the *Grand-Signeur* of the *Turks*; naturally ſubject to the one, and *Tributary* to the other. Governed by a King of their own, whom they call *Barnagaſſus*, by the name of his Province, a Vaſſal and *Homager* to the *Æthiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly tribute of 150 of the beſt breed of Horſes, beſides ſome quantity of Silk, and ſome other commodities: but ſo ill neighboured by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay alſo to the *Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa* reſident at *Suachen*, 1000 Ounces of Gold yearly for a *compoſition*. For the *Turks* having by the conqueſt of *Egypt* made themſelves Maſters of thoſe Countries towards *Æthiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Ma-*

maluck Sultans; within ſhort time (*viz.* An. 1558.) poſſeſſed themſelves alſo of the town of *Suachen*, and the parts adjoyning; made it the reſidence of one of their *Beglerbegs* or *Baſſa's*, and gave him the title of *Beglerbeg* of *Abaſſia*, as Before was ſaid; Forgot by the induſtrious Collector of the *Turkiſh Hiſtory*, in his enumeration of the *Beglerbegs* or *Baſſa's* of *Africk*. To this they added not long after all the reſt of the Sea-coaſts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after ſome ſhort breathing, made a further inroad; in which they did ſo waſt the Countrey, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagaſſian* (not being aided by the *Neguz*) to this *Compoſition*.

9. DANGALI, & 10. DOBAS.

SOuth and South-eaſt of *Barnagaſſo*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI*, and *DOBAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red-Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahometans* or *Arabian Moors*, both in continual enmity with the *Abaſſine* Emperors; and both of like nature, in regard of the Soyl, and people.

DANGALI hath on the North, *Barnagaſſo*, on the South, ſome part of the Kingdom of *Adel*, on the Eaſt, the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*, on the Weſt, *Dobas*, before mentioned. It taketh up ſome part of the *Arabick Bay*, within the Streits of *Babel-Mandel*; and without thoſe Streits, the greateſt part of that ſpacious Bay, which anciently was called *Sinus Avaliticus*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Moſylon* (neighboured by a noted *Emporie* of the ſame) now the Cape of *Docono*; near unto which the Sea makes a little *Gulf*, and ſuddenly ſtreitneth it ſelf again; ſo as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve leagues broad. And in this *Channel* are five or ſix Iſlands, which hinder the paſſage; ſo as Sailers muſt have good experience to avoid the Rocks which lie near thoſe Iſlands.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Bebul*, or *Babel*, which gives name to the Streits of *Babel mandel*; a narrow *Frith*; opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* Ocean. 2. *Vella*, a well-frequented Port, conceived to be the ſame which *Strabo* calleth *Antiphila*; not found by that name in *Ptolomy*; 3. *Zagnani*, and 4. *Zama*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Lacca*, 5. *Docono*, near the Cape ſo called, and therefore probably the *Moſylon* of the ancient Writers. 6. *Dangali*, not far from the Sea-ſide, which gives name to the Kingdom. Nothing elſe memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great *Lakes*, wherein live *Crocodiles*, as in *Nilus*.

On the South-weſt of *Dangali*, lieth the Realm of *DOBAS*, extended on the weſt to the Borders of *Angote*. The Countrey large, containing twelve, or as ſome ſay, 24 ſeveral *Prefectures*: Of ſo good Paſturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater ſize than in other places, and thoſe for number not eaſily matched in all this Empire. The people ſuch profeſſed enemies of the *Chriſtian* Faith, that they ſuffer not any man to marry, till he hath killed twelve *Chriſtians*. Some reckon them for *Tributaries* to the *Prete*, or *Negus*; but it is only when they liſt: ſo far from being *Contributioners* towards the ſupport of his eſtate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their towns, 1. *Doba*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom. 2. *Bally*, upon the ſame River, on which *Dobas* ſtandeth, but more neat the head.

11. ADEL.

ADEL is bounded on the North, with ſome parts of *Dangali*, and the *Red-Sea*, on the South, with *Adea*; on the Eaſt, with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean; on the Weſt, with *Fatigur*: extended on the Sea-coaſt from the Cape of *Docono*, to the Cape of *Guardafu*; conceived moſt probably to be the *Ardmata* of *Ptolomy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Countrey plentiful of Fleſh, Hony, Wax, Corn, Gold and Ivory; great Flocks of Sheep, and many of thoſe Sheep of ſuch burdenſom Fleeces, that their Tails weigh 25 pounds: ſome Kine they have, which have horns like a Stag; others, but one horn only, and that in the Forehead, about a foot and an half long, but bending backwards. The people inhabiting on the Sea-coaſts, are of *Arabian* Parentage, and of the *Mahometan* Religion; thoſe towards the In-land Countreys, of the old *Æthiopick* race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief towns hereof, 1. *Zeila*, a noted Port-town, ſituate in or near the place where *Ptolomy* placeth *Avalites*: ſtored with variety of merchandiſe, and yielding ſome repreſentation of *Antiquity* in the building thereof, being *lime* and *ſtone*; materials not much uſed amongſt them in theſe latter times. Of great both beauty and eſteem, till the year 1516. when ſacked and burnt by the *Portugals*; before that time, the moſt noted Emporie of all *Æthiopia*, for the *Indian* trade. 2. *Barbora*, ſeated on the ſame Sea-coaſt, well frequented by Merchants, and poſſibly may be the *Mundi* or *Malao* of *Ptolomy*; neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mount Fellez*. 3. *Mette*, another of the Sea-towns near the Cape of *Guardafuni*; ſuppoſed to be the *Acane* of the Ancient Writers. 4. *Aſſam*, 5. *Selir*, and 6. *Bidar*, on the Sea-coaſts alſo. 7. *Arar*, the principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Countrey formerly a member of the *Æthiopian* Empire, is of late grown to ſo great ſtrength and reputation: that the Kings hereof have freed themſelves from all ſigns of ſubjection to that Crown, and think themſelves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power, by *Gradogna*, or *Guadameth*, who reigned here in the year 1540. by whom *Claudius* the *Neguz* was ſo overlaid, and his Countrey ſo deſtroyed by continual incurſions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himſelf into the heart of his Eſtates, and crave aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their aſſiſtance, and the help of their ſhot, he was twice victorious; yet in the third battel he was vanquiſhed, and in the fourth, *An.* 1559. ſlain upon the place. This King accounted for a *Saint* by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual wars againſt the *Chriſtians*; did ſo eſtabliſh the affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it ſo well ſetled unto his Succeſſors, that the *Abaſſine* Emperor hath ever ſince left it out of his *Titles*; though many other of thoſe ſmall Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial ſtile*, in which he hath as little power as he hath in this. It is ſaid alſo, that in the battel wherein *Claudius* was ſlain, and his Army routed, conſiſting of 60000 Foot, and 500 Horſe of his own Subjects, beſides the *Portugals*: the King of *Adel* got into his poſſeſſion the greateſt maſs of Coyn and Treaſure that was ever ſeen. A Victory obtained as well by policy, as force: the *Abaſſines* being ſeldom fought with, or their Countrey waſted and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the ſtrict obſervance of their *Lenten* Faſt, they were grown ſo weak, that they were not able to diſcharge their domeſtick buſineſſes, and therefore moſt unable to reſiſt a prevailing Enemy.

12. *ADEA.*

ADEA, or ABEX, as ſome call it, hath on the North, the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South and Weſt, ſome parts of the *Abaſſine* Empire; on the Eaſt, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafu*, where it joyneth with *Adel*, along the greateſt part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the reaſon of which name hereafter.

The Countrey plentifully fertile, ſhaded with Woods and ſpatious forreſts, and thoſe Woods liberally furniſhed both with Fruits and Cattel; the *Champagn* Countrey not leſs fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other neceſſaries, beſides a great ſtore of Horſes. The people of an *Olive-colour*, in ſome places more inclined to black: Not cloathed, but from the girdle downward; not very well armed in time of war, but with poyſoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original extraction, whoſe Language they retain with ſome little difference in pronunciation.

Places of moſt obſervation in it. 1. *Adea*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, becauſe the old reſidence of the Kings. 2. *Carfur*, upon the Sea-coaſt ſomtimes called *Opone*, then a noted *Emporie*, and ſituate near the Promontory, called *Zingis extrema*. 3. *Azun*, and 4. *Zazelle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eſſina*, and *Tonica*, of the Ancient Writers. 5. *Magadazo*, a petit Kingdom of it ſelf; a wealthy and well traded Town, ſituate in a fruitful and delightful ſoyl, and neighboured by a ſafe and capacious Haven, much traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Ada* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambaia* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* Commodities; which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abaſſine Slaves*, which laſt they value as the chiefeſt *merchandiſe* which this Countrey yieldeth. Firſt built by ſome *Arabian Moors*, who flying from the King of *Laza*, their mortal enemy, under the conduct of ſeven Brethren, came into theſe parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was ſaid; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-coaſts of both *Æthiopia's*, as far as to the *Cape dos Correntes*, which is ſomwhat to the South of the *Tropick of Capricorn*. The Kings hereof in former times, *Vaſſals*, to the *Abaſſine* Emperor, to whom they paid an yearly *tribute*; this Kingdom ſtill remaining amongſt his Titles: but ſince the taking of *Magadazo*, made ſo obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Eſtate of the *Abaſſine* in it is but meerly *titular*.

13. *FATIGAR*, & 14. *XOA.*

FATIGAR hath on the Eaſt, *Adel*, and ſome part of *Adea*, on the Weſt, the little Realm of *Xoa*; on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Countrey *Champagne*, ſufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furniſhed with pleaſant and delicious Fruits. Moſt memorable for a *Lake* of twelve miles compaſs, on the top of a Mountain, well ſtored with Fiſh; from whence and from the reſt of the Mountain iſſue many Rivers, which much inrich the Vallies & Fields adjoyning. The chief Town hereof (if any one be better than other) I conceive to be *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or ſo called from it.

Weſtward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of *XOA*, bordering Weſt on *Amara*; Southward upon *Damut*; furniſhed with great ſtore of Corn and Cattel, but not much beautified with Towns of any conſideration. Nothing obſervable in the Hiſtory or Deſcription of it, but that together with *Fatigar* and others of the mid-land Provinces, it hath continued conſtant in obedience to the *Abaſſine* Emperors; notwithſtanding all thoſe *miſadventures* which have hapned to that Empire in theſe latter dayes.

15. *BARUS.*

ON the South-Eaſt of *Adea*, lieth the Province of BARUS, extended Eaſtward to ſome part of *Sinus Barbaricus*, and touching at the Weſtern point, upon that of *Fatigar*. The ſoyl and People much of the ſame condition, with the reſt of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Chriſtians* for the generality in the mid-land parts. Thoſe *Chriſtians* ſubject (as the reſt) to the *Abaſſine* Emperour: but he hath neither place of ſtrength, or conſideration in all the Countrey; thoſe of moſt note. 1. *Brava*, once a Free Town, and governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*, by twelve Aldermen, or *Common-Councellors*, deſcended from the ſeven *Arabian* Brethren by whom firſt built; the Founders of *Magadora* alſo, as before was ſaid. But now, together with 2. *Pate*, and 3. *Gogia*, all upon the Sea, made ſubject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken under the Conduct of *Triſtran de Cugna*.

Beſides theſe, there are many other Kingdoms muſtered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the ſwelling vanity whereof we ſhall ſee anon) but of ſo little obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs, and ſo obſcure in the eſteem of ſuch as have ſpoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to finde their names: and having found their names, to bid you not to ſeek for more; there being nothing elſe in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the body aggregated of theſe ſeveral Members, it was firſt planted, as is noted and proved elſewhere, by *Ludim* the ſon of *Mizraim*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the firſt Ages of time, but by an Errour of *Joſephus*: who giving too much credit to ſome *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the reputation of the *Jews* to the higheſt pitch; telleth us a ſtory, how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moſes*; the City of *Meroe* beſieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his hands, by *Tharbis* the daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married to him. All this not onely queſtioned, but rejected by diſcerning men, as a *Jewiſh* Fable, that hath no ground to ſtand upon in true Antiquity. With little better fortune, and as little truth, do the *Æthiopians* tell the ſtory of their own *Original*. By whom we are informed, that *Chus* the ſon of *Cham*, firſt reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom ſucceeded his ſon *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*: that from the death of *Dedan* till the reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the people lived in Caves and holes digged under the ground; as did the *Troglodites*, an ancient Nation of this Countrey, in the times long after: that *Arac* firſt built the City of *Aruma*, and by that pattern taught them the uſe of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend is the ſtory of *Maqueda* a Queen hereof, and the fourth from *Aruch*; whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Teſtaments, for the *Royal Viſit* which ſhe beſtowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Child by *Solomon* when ſhe was in his Court, ſhe was delivered of a Son, whom ſhe cauſed to be called *Melech*, or *Melilech*; and at the age of 20 years, to be ſent to his Father. By whom inſtructed in the Law, and *circumciſed*, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into his Countrey, with *Azarias* the Son of *Zadok* the Prieſt, who had ſtollen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen reſigned the Empire to her Son. His ſucceſſours afterwards called *David*, till *Indion* (as they call him) the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace* returning home, baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the ſubſtance of the *Legend*, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Goſpel.) That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been ſhewn already, as alſo what abſurdities muſt needs ariſe from ſuppoſing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore moſt probable it is, that this Countrey was firſt peopled by the children of *Ludim*, as before was ſaid. To whom the *Abaſſenes* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added: and in ſome tract of time be of ſuch great power, as to put their name upon the Countrey. For that the *Abaſſenes* were originally an *Arabian* people, appeared by *Stephanus*, one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Uranius* (An Ancienter Author than himſelf) hath told us this, Ἀβασηνοὶ ἔθνος Ἀραβίας. Another *Stephanus*, and he a very learned Grammarian and *Lexicographer*, hath, as he thinks, decided the controverſie, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus* the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Æthiopians*: and for this cauſe, hath fitted us with this pretty *Criticiſm*, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Samech*, muſt be rendred *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia*, when writ with *Shin*, But this by no means will be found to agree the controverſie: it being evidently clear, that both *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, were originally ſetled in *Arabia*, as hath there been ſhewn, though I deny not but that ſome of the Poſterity of *Chus* in thoſe elder times, (before the coming over of the *Abaſsine* Nations) might either out of too much populoſity, or deſire of change croſs over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up ſuch parts of this Countrey as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled, with whom conjunct at laſt, both in name and government. And for *Mayneda* (ſuppoſing that to be her name) ſhe was doubtleſs Queen of the *Sabæans* in *Arabia Felix*; not of the *Æthiopians*, in the waſte of *Africk*. For beſides the longſomneſs of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* by this Lady, would never have ſuffered *Egypt* to have layen in quiet, whilſt *Seſac* the King thereof made war upon *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon* alſo, and ſo by conſequence his half brother. But to leave theſe uncertain Fables, the firſt action of moment which we meet with in unqueſtioned Story, touching theſe *Æthiopians*, is that which hapned betwixt them and *Cambyſes* the *Perſian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Perſia*; conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Ethiopia* unto *Ægypt* alſo. Upon this reſolution, he ſent Ambaſſadours to that King, to ſearch into the paſſages of his Countrey, and diſcover his ſtrengths; and by them ſent a Tun of wine, ſome Bracelets, a purple habit, and a box of ſweet oyntments, to preſent him with. Which Preſents being tendred to him, he looked upon the Unguents and the purple Robe as too ſlight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be bonds, or fetters, and openly laught at them, as too weak to hold in a priſoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleaſed, and ſorrowed that his Countrey yielded no ſuch liquour. But underſtanding well enough what this *viſit* aimed at, he gave the Ambaſſadours at their parting (amongſt other gifts) an *Æthiopian* Bow of great length and ſtrength; requiring them to tell their Maſter, that until every *Perſian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the *Perſian*, as before was noted) it would be no ſafe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cauſe to thank the Gods, for giving the *Æthiopians* ſo contented mindes, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from *Egypt* by vaſt Mountains, we find then not looked after by the *Macedonians*. Nor had the *Romans* medled with them, had they not been provoked by *Candace*, the Queen hereof, during the Empire of *Auguſtus*; who having made a War on *Egypt*, was by *Petronius*, Governour of that Province, brought to ſuch conformity, that ſhe was fain to ſue for peace, and to purchaſe it with the loſs of ſome part of her Countrey. To keep them quiet for the future, *Phila* an *Æthiopian* City, but on the borders of *Egypt*, is made a Garriſon by the *Romans*, and the Seat of their *Deputy* for theſe parts: held by them till the Empire of *Diocleſian*, and by him abandoned, becauſe the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the *Æthiopian* Kings were reckoned of as friends to the *Roman* Empire: in ſo much as *Juſtinian* ſent unto *Heliſtheus*, as *Juſtin* his Succeſſour did unto *Archetas*, the then Kings of this Countrey; to crave their brotherly aſſiſtance againſt the *Perſians*.

Of their Converſion to the Faith in the reign of a ſecond *Candace*, (unleſs as *Pliny* thinketh, *Candace* was the general name of all their Queens) we have ſpoke already. To which the *Æthiopians* add, that after the baptizing of their firſt *Philip* (the Son of that *Candace*) By the hands of the *Eunuch*, the Emperours ſucceeding had the name of *Philip*. Till the religious life of *John*, a Cotemporary of the Emperour *Conſtans*, honoured as a Saint after his deceaſe; made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of *John* prefixed that of *Presbyter*, becauſe (as they affirm) he executeth as well the *Sacerdotal* as the *Regal Office*; *Rex idem hominum Divumque Sacerdos*, the very *Anius* of the Poet: And this ſo commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Preſter John*, and his Eſtate the Empire of *Preſter John*; with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive, that this vulgar name of *Preſter John*, is but a corruption, or miſtake for *Prætegian*, or *Precious John*, and that the word *Prete* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no leſs. And yet I more incline to thoſe, who finding that the word *Preſtegan* ſignifieth an *Apoſtle*, in the *Perſian* tongue; and *Preſtigani*, an *Apoſtolical* man; do thereupon inſer that the title of *Padeſcha Preſtigiani*, an *Apoſtolick King*, was given unto him for the *Orthodoxie* of his belief. Which not being underſtood by ſome, inſtead of *Preſtegian*, they have made *Prieſt John*, in Latine *Presbyter Johannes*: as by a like miſtake, one *Pregent* (or *Pragian* as the *French* pronounce it) commander of ſome Gallies under *Lewis* the 12th. was by the *Engliſh* of thoſe times, called *Prior John*. *Preſtegian then*, not *Prieſt John*, is his proper adjunct; contractedly, but commonly called the *Prete*, by the Modern *French*, who uſually leave out *ſ* before a *conſonant*. Their Empire greater heretofore, than it is at the preſent, ſhrewdly impaired of late times by the *Turks*, and *Arabians*: of which the firſt have taken from him all his Countrey, from the Iſle of *Meroe* unto *Egypt*, with all the Sea-coaſts of *Barnagaſſo*; the later as much encroaching on them, on the reſt of the *Maritine* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they ſuffered more, than the Kings of *Adel*; who have divers times laid waſte their Countrey, diſcomfited ſome of them in the open Field, and in the year 1558. ſlain their King in battel. Not cured of thoſe wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who ſucceeded *Claudius* that was ſlain in battel, was ſo far from being able to revenge the death of his Predeceſſour; that being ſuſpected to incline to *Mahometaniſm*, he was defeated by the *under King* of *Barnagaſſo*. Since which time they have ſo languiſhed by inteſtine diſſentions, that though *Alexander* the third (if there were ever ſuch a King, which I find much doubted) is ſaid to have ſetled his affairs by the aid of the *Portugals*; and that ſome ſtrange ſucceſſes have been ſince reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Eſtate hereof hath been ſo imbroyled in *civil* Wars, and ſo many of their Emperours ſucceſſively murdered; that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakned, and the Countrey made a prey to impuiſſant Enemies. For in the year 603. the Emperour *Melech Gogad*, who ſucceeded in the Throne by the depoſition and impriſonment of his Predeceſſour (under colour of baſtardy) was not long after ſlain by one *Zezelezeus*; and *James*, or *Jacob* advanced unto the Empire: *James* not long after vanquiſhed, and ſlain in the Fields of *Guera*, by one *Sazinoſius* (contractedly by ſome called *Suſneas*) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for their ſafety. What became of the two eldeſt I have no where found. The youngeſt called *Zaga Chriſtos*, after many hazardous wandrings, and accidents arrived at laſt into *Italy*, and thence he came to *Paris*, An. 1638 where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being reſtored to the Throne of his Fathers: For *Sazinoſius*, or *Suſneas*, immediately upon the victory had poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Empire; though for a time ſo terribly diſquieted with Treaſons and Conſpiracies, that in the year 1607. he was fain to ſue for aide to the King of *Spain*, and tender a ſubmiſſion of the *Abaſſine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the ſpirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not ſo eaſily be laid down (though there followed a long calm between) but that it brake out again within few years after (that is to ſay, about the year 1628) more violently than it did before: a powerful Rebel ſtarting up, who followed by an Army of 50000 had queſtionleſs diſpoſſeſſed the *Prete* of his whole Dominions, if not prevented and diſcomfited beyond expectation. For it hapned that one *Vermeile* a *French-man*, a Jueller by Trade, but exerciſed in the wars of *Holland*, underſtanding that the *Abbaſsine* Empreſs was much delighted with the rarities and Jewels of *Beraſe*, found means to convey himſelf into the Court, where underſtanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels in the Arts of war, he gat leave to have the diſciplining, or training of 8000 men, with which ſmall Army he utterly diſcomfited and routed that vaſt body of Rebels, and was thereupon deſervedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the laſt news of any certainty that hath come from thence: (it being *Anno* 1634. in which that victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of ſome new commotions, *Anno* 1648. the particulars and truth whereof muſt be ſought elſewhere.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe diſaſters, theſe later Emperours have ſtill preſerved their Majeſty amongſt their Subjects, whom they hold in ſervitude enough, though they keep not ſuch a diſtance as in former

Ages, when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and uſed to ſhew himſelf but thrice in [illegible] year, *viz.* on *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, and *Holy-rood* day: by which retiredneſs it was thought that he made his preſence more acceptable; ſome holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majeſty of a King, than to make himſelf too common an object for the eye of the vulgar. The like kind of ſtate was once kept by thoſe Kings of *France* of the firſt *Merovignian* line; who withdrawing themſelves from all publick affairs, uſed only to ſhew themſelves (as we have already ſaid) on *May-day*. A greater retiredneſs than this, was that which *Valleda* Queen of the *Tencteri* (a people of the *Rhene*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have uſed; for when the reſt of the *Germans* then in arms, ſent Ambaſſadors to her, to inform her of their victory againſt the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to ſpeak to her, or to ſee her, *Arcebantur aſpectu, quo venerationis plus ineſſet.* Such a keeping of ſtate, the politick Prince *Tiberius* uſed, when the *German* legions mutined; for he daigned not himſelf to ſee them pacified, but ſent his Son; the reaſon was, *quia majeſtati major è longinquo reverentia.* And no doubt the ſame keeping of diſtance ſwayed much with him, when he forſook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Caprea*: though I deny not, but a propenſion to follow his *unnatural* pleaſures the more ſecurely, together with his deformities on his face, had alſo their powers upon his reſolution.

The title of this great and mighty Emperour (but neither ſo great, or mighty in power, as title) runneth thus: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the Beloved of GOD, the Pillar of Faith, ſprung from the ſtock of* Judah, *the Son of* David, *the Son of* Solomon, *the Son of the Columne of* Sion, *the Son of the Seed of* Jacob, *the Son of the hand of* Mary, *the Son of* Nahu *after the fleſh, the Son of St.* Peter *and* Paul *after the ſpirit; Emperour of the higher and leſſer* Æthiopia, *and of the moſt mighty Kingdoms, Dominions, and Countries of* Xoa, Goa, Caffares, Fatigar, Angotæ, Balignazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, *where are the Fountains of* Nile, Amara, Binguimedron, Ambea, Vangucum, Tigremean, Sabaim, *the birth-place of the Queen of* Saba, Bernagaſſum, *and Lord of all the Regions unto the confines of* Egypt.

It ſeemeth by this title, that theſe *Æthiopian* Emperours however the truth of ſtory goeth, conceive themſelves to be ſprung from *Solomon*, and *Maqueda* (or *Nizaule*, as *Joſeph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by ſome reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the ſame with thoſe of the Tribe of *Juda*, which are a *Lyon rampant* in a field *Or*, and that the Motto of them is to this effect, *viz. The* Lyon *of the Tribe of* Judah *ſhall overcome.* But *Bara*, an expert Herauld, giveth this Prince no ſuch Coat-armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a croſs portate *Mars*, charged with a Crucifix *Sol*, between two Scourges of the Second. And yet not altogether to diſcredit the old Tradition, ſo generally received amongſt them, it may be probable enough, that when the *Abaſſens* came into *Æthiopia*, ſome of the *Sabæans* their next Neighbours came along for company, and amongſt them ſome of the *Royal race* of the Queen of *Sheba*; with ſome of which, by reaſon of their great Nobility, ſome of the *Abaſſine* Emperors might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impoſſibility, but that *Solomon* (conſidering his courſe of life) might get a ſon upon the body of that Queen, from whom the *Æthiopian* Princes might be thus deſcended.

As for the Government of theſe Emperors, it is abſolutely *Regal*, or to ſay better, perfectly *Deſpotical*: the people being treated by them more like ſlaves, than Subjects; taking away *Signeuries*, and giving them unto whom he pleaſeth, the deprived party not daring to expreſs the leaſt diſcontent. By them ſo reverenced, that it was anciently a cuſtom, if the King were *blind*, or *lame*, or *maimed*, for the Subject to inflict on his own body the like *impreſſion*: ſtill had in ſo much honour by the greateſt Subject, that at his bare name, they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his *Pavilion* as they paſs by, though he be not in it. He on the other ſide, ſeldom appeareth to his Subjects, but with his *Crown* upon his head, and a *Silver Crucifix* in his hand; his face then covered with a piece of *Watchet Taffata*, which he lifteth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his *Forces* and *Revenues*, ſome of our late Obſervators ſpeak nothing but wonders. Some ſay his Empire reacheth from the *Red-Sea*, to the *Atlantick* Ocean, and from one *Tropick* to the other: Some that he is of ſo great Riches, that he is able to purchaſe a *moyety* of all the world, if it were to be ſold; others, that he is able to raiſe for any preſent ſervice, a Million of men. And he himſelf is ſaid to have offered to the *Portugals*, one *Million* of money, and another of men, if they would employ it in a war againſt the *Infidels*. But notwithſtanding theſe great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be ſuch a *Miracle*, as ſome of theſe Reports have made him. For they that ſpeak moſt knowingly of his *Revenues*, affirm that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being diſcharged, he coffereth up but three *Millions* of Crowns *per annum*; which is no great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of war and trouble, will be eaſily waſted, or brought into a narrower compaſs. And yet to make up this *Revenue*, beſides the Crown Lands, or *Demain Imperial*, he layeth ſome *Tax*, or other upon every Houſe, receiveth the *Tenth* of all that is digged out of their Mines: and levieth on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaſeth to chuſe, ſo it be not that in which the Lords themſelves inhabit.

This, though it be no great *Intrado*, conſidering the large extent of his Dominions, and form of his Government; yet it is greater in proportion, than his *Forces* are. For notwithſtanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag, of raiſing a *Million* of men for preſent ſervice; it is well known that he was never able to advance half that number, in his greateſt neceſſity; and amongſt thoſe whom he can raiſe, there are but few who can deſerve the name of Souldiers. For the people being poor and beggerly, and brought up in a ſervile and baſe condition, are naturally deſtitute of that courage and alacrity of ſpirit, which ſhould be in men profeſſing *Armes*, or fit for noble undertakings; and are beſides, on certain *jealouſies* of State, ſo diſuſed from war, that they know not how to uſe their weapons when there is occaſion. So that for my part I conſider him as a weak and *impuiſſant* Prince of no authority, or influence out of his Dominions; nor able to defend himſelf from the continual incurſions of his Neighbours (ſome of them mean and petit Princes) which lie neareſt to him. *Land-locked* on every ſide from Traffick and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon Northward, by the *Turks*; confronted on the Weſt, by the King of *Borneo*, who poſſeſſeth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the Eaſt, continually bearded and baffled by the King of *Adel*, ſomtimes a *Vaſſal* of his own; and on the South, with the *Galla*, a barbarous Nation of the other *Æthiopia*, who lay all waſt before them, whereſoever they come, and finally in theſe latter times by his own Subjects alſo. Injuries not to be endured, had he power to help it.

But the chief Stay of this Eſtate, is an *Order* of *Knighthood*, entituled by the name of St. *Antony*, to which every Father that is of the degree of a Gentleman, is to deſtinate one of his Sons, if he have above two, but not the Eldeſt. And out of theſe they cull about 12000 Horſe, which are to be the ſtanding Guard of the Emperours perſon: Their Oath is, To defend the *Frontiers* of the Empire, to preſerve *Religion*, and to make head againſt the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbots* of this Order (for it is partly *Religious*, partly *Military*) live in the Mountain of *Amara*, where they have two *Monaſteries*; as well for the training up of theſe Knights in the time of their youth, as their *retirement* when grown old and diſcharged from ſervice.

And ſo much for *Æthiopia Superior*.

OF ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Red-Sea* (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulf of *Arabia*, to the Southern Ocean) on the Weſt, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean; on the North, with *Terra Nigritarum*, and the *higher Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Conus*, with the Main Ocean parting it from the Southern undiſcovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reaſon before delivered. *Inferior* was added for diſtinctions ſake, becauſe ſomewhat of a lower ſituation than the other is. By *Ptolomy* called *Æthiopia Interior*, becauſe lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge than the neerer did: and by late writers for the contrary reaſon, called *Æthiopia Exterior*, becauſe ſituat without and beyond the other.

It comprehendeth all *Ptolomies Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia Sub Ægypto*, and all thoſe Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of *Terra Incognita*. The Country ſo little diſcovered in thoſe elder times, that we find mention only of ſome eminent Mountains, as 1. *Canchis*, 2. *Lon*, 3. *Ziphia*, 4. *Barditis*, 5. *Moſchi*, one onely Region known by name, called *Agiſimba*, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a large extent. The people not diſtinguiſhed here, as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but only by their kind of diet; ſome of them being called *Anthropophagi*, from their eating of men, and others *Ichthyophagi* from their living on fiſh. Of theſe, the firſt inhabited on the Eaſtern ſhores, near the Bay of *Barbaria*; the principal of which had the name of *Rapſii*: the laſt on the ſhores of the Weſtern Ocean, near *Magnus Sinus*, or the Great Bay; called alſo from their Weſtern ſituation, by the name of *Heſperii*. Nothing elſe told us of theſe parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the *Lakes* or Fens of *Nilus*, were occaſioned by the great abundance of ſnow which fell from the *Mountains* of the *Moon*: and that in many parts hereof, there were *Rhinocerots*, Tygers, Elephants, but theſe laſt all white.

Such was the face of this Countrey in thoſe elder days. The Character of it at the preſent, generally and in brief, is thus given by *Aubanus*, viz. That it is *mountainous* in the Weſt, *ſandy* in the midſt, and *deſart* towards the Eaſt. But for the ſeveral qualities of the ſoil and people, being of very different tempers; we ſhall give the better deſcription of them in their ſeveral *incloſures*, than as preſented thus in *common*. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills, & Rivers, of moſt reckoning in it; the principal of their Mountains are 1. thoſe called *Cantaberes* in the Province of *Angola*, 2. *Lunæ Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopias*, now found to belong unto this alone. A chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the *Tropick* of *Capricon*; full of ſharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous and ſavage People: the valleys underneath of ſo great a *depth*, that they ſeem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Countrey is the Lake of *Zembre*, ſo much renowned for giving birth to the greateſt Rivers of the world; though it ſelf but 50 miles in compaſs. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1 *Nilus*, which paſſing thorow ſome part of this Countrey, and traverſing the whole length of the *Abaſſian* and *Egyptian* Empires, endeth its long courſe in the *Mediterranean*. 2. *Zaire* the greateſt of all *Africk*, but unknown to the Antients, which running Eaſtward thorow the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the leſſer ſtreams of 1. *Vamba*, 2. *Barbela*, 3. *Coanza*, 4. *Lelunda*, makes many Iſlands in his way; and at the laſt by a mouth of 28 miles wideneſs diſgorgeth his full ſtomack in the Weſtern Ocean. 3. *Cuama*, which making his paſſage towards the Eaſt, and much increaſed by the addition of ſix great Rivers; after a long courſe of 700 miles (in all which it is navigable) loſeth it ſelf in the *Indian*, or *Æthiopick* Ocean, and 4. *Fluvius Spiritus Sancti*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, which ſhaping a courſe oppoſite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in concluſion in the Southern Seas. It is divided moſt properly into theſe four parts, that is to ſay, 1. *Zangnebar*, 2. *Monomotapa*, 3. *Cafraria*, 4. *Manicongo*. Some alſo adde the Countrey of *Aian*, ſubdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel*, and *Adea*. But theſe we have aſcribed, with better reaſon, to the other *Æthiopia*, within the bounds whereof they are wholly ſituate.

1. SANGUEBAR.

ZANGUEBAR, or **ZANZIBAR** is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Red-Sea*, or the *Indian* Ocean; on the Weſt, with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*: on the North, with the *higher Æthiopia* only; on the South, with *Monomopata*. The reaſon of the name I find not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agiſimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia Interior*, and in ſo much of the other alſo as lieth on the South of the River *Raptus*; now called Quilimanci, by which parted from the Kingdoms of *Adel*, and *Adea*. The Countrey on both ſides of that River, known in old times by the name of *Barbaria*, giveth to a large adjoyning bay the name of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and was much famed in thoſe elder times, for the beſt ſort of *Myrrhe*: the *Myrrha Trogloditica*, and *Myrrha Barbara*, or *Barbarica*, being uſed for the ſame, by ſome of the Antients; becauſe the *Troglodites* and the people of this *Barbaria* joyned on one another. Here was alſo in thoſe elder times a good race of Ginger, of which ſaith *Diſcorides*, Μάκερ φλοιός ἐςὶ κομιζόμενος ἐκ τȣ̃ Βαρϐάρȣ, that it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbara*. Where by the way, the *Scholiaſts* upon that Author, and *Pliny* in the 12 *Book* have been much miſtaken; of which the firſt takes this *Barbara* or *Barbaria* for ſome part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh that the *Myrrha* of theſe parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the droſſineſs and courſneſs of it, as if ſo called only becauſe unrefined. The principal Town hereof called *Rapta*, by the name of the River; ſeated not far from the Sea; and by reaſon of the great Trade of it, eſteemed the *Metropolis* of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolomy*. A noted Promontory of the ſame name was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called, the Countrey is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflown with unruly Rivers; and withal ſo full of Woods and Forreſts, that for want of paſſage for the wind, the air is generally (as in all Fenny Countreys of the like obſtruction) exceeding *peſtilent*. The people of complexion black, and of curled hair; *Mahometans* on the Sea-coaſts; in the In-land parts *Idolaters*; extreamly given to Witchcraft, and Divinations. Naked above the waſte, and beneath covered onely with the skins of beaſts, or ſome ſuch mingled colour ſtuff as the *Scottiſh Plad*. The *Moors* which dwell on the Sea-coaſts, uſe to adventure on the Seas in little Veſſels, ſowed together with leathern thongs, and calked with *Gum*; having no other ſails in them then the leaves of Palm-trees. Boats of as ſlight a making, as thoſe uſed anciently by the *Britans*, whereof thus the Poet:

Primum cana ſilix, madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim; cæſoque induta juvenco
Vectoris patiens, tumidum ſupernatat Amnem.

Which I find thus rendred to my hand:

The moiſtued Oſier *of the hoary Willow*
Is woven firſt into a little Boat;
Then cloath'd in Bullocks hides, upon the Billow
Of a proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to ſay, 1. *Melinde*, 2. *Mombaza*, 3. *Quiloa*, 4. *Moſambique*, 5. *Sofala*, all along the Coaſts; 6. *Moenhemage*, 7. *Corova*, 8. *Calen*, 9. *Anzuga*, 10. *Monzalo*, 11. *Badin*, 12. *Mombra*, 13. *Mombizo*, 14. *Embroe*, and 15. *Macaos*, more within the Land. Of the nine laſt, not being perfectly diſcovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we ſhall now be ſilent. But the firſt ſix lying upon the Shores, or neer it, and conſequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like *Adventurers*, ſhall be ſurveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of *Adea*, in the *Higher Æthiopia*, from which parted by the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimanci*: So named from *Melinde*, the chief City of it, well walled, and ſeated in a fruitful and delightful ſoil; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Fleſh, Limons, Citrons, and moſt ſorts of fruits; but not well furniſhed with Corn, the greateſt part whereof is brought out of *Cambaia*, a Province of *India*. The houſes built of lime and ſtone, after the manner of *Europe*. The Inhabitants on the Sea-coaſts, of *Arabian* breed, and of that Religion; thoſe of the In-lands, which are of the original Natives, for the moſt part *Heathens*. Moſt of them of an *Olive colour*, but inclining to white; the Women generally of as white complexions as in other places; but they have ſome black people alſo: And all of them more *civil* in their Habit, courſe of life, and entertainment in their houſes, than the reſt of this Countrey. Great friends unto the *Portugals*, and beſtiended by them, ever ſince the kinde entertainment which they gave unto *Vaſques de Gama*; whom they furniſhed with *Pilots* to direct him in his way to *India*, when firſt diſcovered by that people, An. 1497.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of theſe petit Kingdoms, of the ſame nature for the temper of the ſoil and people, that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombaza* the chief City of it, ſituate from *Melinde* about 70 miles, in a little Iſland of 12 miles compaſs; but of good influence on ſome part of the *Continent* alſo. The Iſle and City ſaid to have ſome reſemblance unto the *Rhodes*. The Town about a league in circuit, environed with a wall, and fortified with a Caſtle; the ſtreets thereof very narrow, but well built, moſt of the houſes being brick, and the *Moſques* capacious. The King hereof a *Mahometan*, as are moſt of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the *Chriſtians*. For which cauſe, and upon ſome diſcourteſies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vaſques de Gama*, An. 1500. but abandoned again by reaſon of the unhealthy air, not well agreeing with the conſtitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards having taken in *Alibeg* and five *Turkiſh* Gallies, the better to enable themſelves againſt the *Protugals*; the Town was taken and ruinated by *Thomas de Cotigno*, ſent thither *An.* 1589. by the *Portugal* Vice-Roy reſiding in *Goa*; there being taken at that time (beſides the ſpoil of the City) all the *Turkiſh* Gallies, and in them 23 greater, and as many leſſer Pieces of Ordnance. Such of the *Turks* and Citizens as eſcaped the ſlaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themſelves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Imbians*, a man-eating people, who had before beſieged the City: and gathering up ſuch gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King; and as many of the principal Citizens, as they could get into their hands, 2. *Ampaza*, the ſecond Town of note, was taken by the *Portugals*, about two years after.

3. *QUILOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Countrey rich and pleaſant, the Inhabitants for the moſt part of *Arabian* Anceſtry; of complexion near unto a white: their women comely, ſumptuous in attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their houſes, which are generally well built and richly furniſhed. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whoſe honour they are very tender) the people of this *Quiloa* are ſaid to have a ſtrange cuſtome amongſt them, more to be mentioned for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the ſowing up of the private paſſages of nature in their female Children, leaving onely a ſmall vent for their urine. Thus ſowed, they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be married. And ſhe that is by her Husband found to want this ſign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kind of ignominy ſent back to her Parents, and by them as diſgracefully received.

It took this name from *Quilon* the chief Town thereof, ſituate in a little Iſland, but neer the ſhore, from which parted by a narrow *Fryth*, oppoſite to the mouth of the River *Conva*, by ſome called *Quiloa*. Firſt built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*, by *Ali*, the ſon of *Sultan Hiſchen*; who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, becauſe their Mothers were *Perſians*, and his an *Abaſſine*; ſought new Adventures in theſe parts, and bought this Iſland. His Succeſſors grown rich and powerful by the trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land: and ſo adorned *Quiloa*, the chief Town of their Kingdom, that for ſumptuous and magnificent buildings, there were few like it in thoſe parts. Proud of their many good ſucceſſes they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom under the conduct of *Vaſques de Gama*, An. 1500. the City it ſelf was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave ſome Fortreſſes erected by them in convenient places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a quarrel with *Abraham*, then the King of this Countrey; whom in the year 1505 they depoſed from his Kingdom, and placed another in his Throne, under colour of not paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* roſe in Arms, diſplaced their new King, demoliſhed their Fortifications, and ſent them to learn better moderation in their proſperous Fortunes, *An.* 1509. The buſineſs coming after to a compoſition, the *Quiloan* covenanted for the yearly *Tribute* of 1500 Marks of Gold paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble.

4. *MOSAMBIQUE* lieth on the South of *Quiloa*? So called of *Moſambique* the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iſland, the principal of three; oppoſite all of them to the mouth of the River *Moghincats*, and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Praſſum*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, and by him made the furtheſt known place of all this Coaſt. In the Iſland there are ſaid to be ſheep whoſe tails are 25 pound weight, as in other places of theſe Countries, and ſome parts of *Syria*; Hens, *black* in feathers, fleſh, and bone; and if ſodden make the water as black as ink, but yet ſweeter in taſte than any other. Of *Pork* good ſtore, the more, becauſe the people are for the moſt part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all hog-meat is forbidden. The in-land parts more barren, but very populous: ſo ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* firſt came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they ſold fifteen Kine; and then fell out among themſelves; who ſhould have the *Bell*. The Town conveniently ſeated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, in the hands of the *Portugals*; who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, uſe to call in here, and fit themſelves with all things neceſſary to purſue their voyage. A Town of ſo great wealth and trading, that the Captain of the Caſtle in the time of his Government, (which continueth onely for three years) is ſaid to lay up 300000 *Ducats* for his Lawful gains, out of the Gold, that cometh from *Sofala*. A gain ſo great, that at the end of his three years, he is to ſerve for three years more at ſome place or other of the *Eaſt Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return to his native Countrey. Such of that Nation as are ſuffered to inhabit here, are enjoyned to be married, to the end the Iſland ſhould be well peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwiſe perhaps might have few elſe in it, but the Garriſon Souldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants.

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Moſambique*, from which parted by the River *Cuama*, the greateſt River of thoſe parts, and thence extended to the mountains which they call *Manica*, by which ſeparated from *Monomotapa*. So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iſland (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoyning. Both Town and Iſland ſubject unto the power of the *Portugals*; who have a Fort, the better to ſecure the *Factory* by them here erected, one of the richeſt in the world; the People bringing hither great quantity of *Gold* (of which they have moſt plentiful Mines) which they exchange with them for their cloth, and other commodities. It is ſuppoſed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two *Millions* yearly. The ſuppoſition ſo agreeable to all other circumſtances, that little queſtion need be made of the truth thereof. Inſomuch as this Countrey for its abundance of *Gold* and *Ivory*, is by ſome thought to be that land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* ſent; and of this opinion *Ortelius* in his *Theſaurus* was the firſt Author; but in my mind, upon no probable conjectures, and againſt very ſtrong preſumption. For firſt, *Ophir* the ſon of *Joctan*, of whom mention is made in the 10 of *Gen. verſ.* 29. and from whom the land of *Ophir*, in all likelyhood took its name; is in the next verſe ſaid to have planted in the Eaſt: whereas this *Sofala* is ſituate South-weſt from *Chaldea*; in which the confuſion of Tongues, and diſperſing of the People, began. And ſecondly, it is impoſſible for the Navy of *Solomon* which lay at *Ezion-Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*; to have ſpent three years in coming hither, and returning: which we find to have been the uſual time, of finiſhing the voyage to *Ophir*, 1 *Kings ch.*10. *Ophir* then is ſome part of *India*; But whether it were the Iſland of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*, or one of the *Molucco's*, or the land of *Malaza*, called by the Ancient *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I dare not determine; conſidering what worthy men maintain theſe ſeveral opinions.

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMUG*, the only inland Province of any note, hath on the Eaſt *Mombaza*, and *Quiloa*; on the Weſt, the famous River *Nilus*; on the North, ſome part of the Dominions of the *Abaſsine* Emperours; on the South, *Moſambique*. The Countrey very plentiful of Mines of *Gold*, yet the People uſe it not for *money*; but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and *Taffatas*, with which they uſe to cloath themſelves from the Girdle downwards; In ſtead of money, they make uſe of *Red Counters*, much reſembling Glaſs. Governed by a King of their own, who holds confederacy with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are alſo ſubject a wild and cruel people, called *Agag*, inhabiting on Lake *Zembre*, and the banks of the *Nilus*; diſperſed about the fields in their homely cottages, black, *Cannibals*, and of an horrible aſpect; more horrible than otherwiſe they would be, by drawing lines upon their cheeks with an iron-inſtrument, and forcing their eye-lids to turn backwards. By the aſſiſtance of this people,

the King of *Moenhemage* hath hitherto preſerved his Eſtate againſt the King of *Monomotapa*: and they themſelves by ſome of their own Leaders did ſo diſtreſs the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a ſmall Iſland, where he hardly ſcaped a violent and untimely death, moſt of his people being ſtarved. Of which more hereafter.

Touching the reſt of theſe Provinces, we can ſay but little, and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the moſt part from one another, both in ſpeech and behaviour; each Village under a ſeveral King, and each in continual quarrel with its next neighbours; whom if they overcome, they eat. At leaſure times they live by hunting, and the fleſh of Elephants. And amongſt theſe, but more upon the Borders of the *Abaſſine* Empire, I place the *Galla*; a Nationleſs nation, as it were, without houſe or dwelling, without Law or Government; as barbarous and horrid as the *Agags* (whom ſome call *Jagge* or *Giacqui*) are affirmed to be; who watching their advantages, and joyned together in ſome Arts of doing miſchief, have made of late ſuch deſolations in the Countries of the *Preſtor John*.

2. *MONOMOTAPA.*

M*ONOMOTAPA*, *BENOMOTANA*, or *BENOMOTAXA* (for by all theſe names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Cuama*, by which and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt, and South, by the River of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, by which ſeparated from *Cafraria*; and on the Eaſt, by the main Ocean. So that it is almoſt an Iſland; ſaid to contain in compaſs 750 *Spaniſh* leagues, or 3250 *Italian* miles.

The Air hereof is ſaid to be very temperate, and the Countrey very good and pleaſant, yet full of Forreſts. Well watered, beſides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1. *Panami*, 2. *Luanga*, 3. *Arruga*, 4. *Mangeano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their ſands. By means whereof, it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great ſtore of Paſturage; on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beaſts very large and great: ſuch ſtore of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reaſon, but to make merchandiſe of their Teeth: their *Gold*-Mines great and ſmall, reckoned to 3000; ſome in the hills of *Magnice*, others in the Provinces of *Matuca*, and *Boro*: the places where the Mines are, known without further Art in the diſcovery of them, by the dryneſs and barrenneſs of the ſoil; as if Nature could not hoord up gold in her ſpacious boſom, but ſhe muſt needs be barren of all good works.

The People are of mean ſtature, and black complexions; but ſtrong and active, couragious, and of ſuch footmanſhip, that they out-run horſes. Their Apparel *Cotton-Cloth*, which they make, or buy from ſome other place: their Diet Fleſh, Fiſh, Rice, Mill, and an Oyl called *Suſiman*. Their Religion, *Paganiſm* for the moſt part; yet they worſhip not Idols, but believe in one God onely, which they call *Mozimo*; and ſeem not much averſe from the *Chriſtian* faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They puniſh nothing more ſeverely than *Witch-craft*, *Adultery*, and *Theft*: and in the puniſhment of *Delinquents* they uſe no Priſons, but execute them as ſoon as apprehended; which is the reaſon that the Vulgar have no doors to their houſes, that being a priviledge for the Nobles. They may have as many Wives as they will, but the firſt the principal, and her Children only to be heirs: the women here very much reſpected (as a ſecond *England*) the Emperor himſelf, if he meeteth any of them in the ſtreets, giving them the way. Not to be married, till their *Menſtrua* or Natural purgations teſtifie their ability for conception; and therefore they ſolemnize the firſt *Flux* thereof with a liberal Feaſt.

Provinces of moſt note in it, and adjoyning to it, but reckoned as Members of this Empire, are

1. *MATUCA*, rich in Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botonghi*; who though they dwell between the *Line* and the *Tropick*, have in the winter ſuch deep ſnows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not ſpeedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy-Ghoſt*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrientes* (*Caput Currentium* in the *Latines*) wealthy in fat paſtures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her unexhauſtible Mines of Gold. Moſt memorable for a large, and in thoſe times an impregnable Fortreſs, built formerly by ſome forrein Prince to ſecure the Mines; built of ſquare ſtones, and every ſtone of marvellous greatneſs, without any ſign of cement or other mortar; the walls hereof 25 ſpans thick, but the height not anſwerable; over the Gate certain characters written, which the moſt learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of ſome of the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine*, Emperours, when their power and Empire was at the higheſt. By the Inhabitants, who conceive it to be a work beyond humane power, it is thought to have been built by Devils: but by thoſe who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, aſcribed to *Solomon*; though ſituate 510 miles more Weſtward than *Sofala*, by their own accompt. The Air here very cold, by reaſon of the ſharp blaſts coming from the *Pole-Antartick*; ſo much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other fewel, but what they make themſelves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4. *QUITICUI*, both furniſhed with Gold alſo in their Mines and Rivers, but not ſo pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet ſuch as ſerve their turn ſo well, as to ſpoil all induſtry: the people here being very careleſs in providing neceſſaries, which they preſume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5. *INHAMBAN*, governed by a King of its own, but Vaſſal and Tributary to the Emperour of *Monomotapa*; the King whereof in the year 1560 was Chriſtened by *Gonſalvo Silveria* a *Spaniſh Jeſuite*, by the name of *Conſtantine*; his Queen baptized by the name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further progreſs of *Chriſtianity*. Touching 6. *Matana*, 7. *Melemba*, 8. *Quinbebe*, 9. *Berteca*, and 10. *Bavagul*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their names.

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages: the houſes being here ſo thin, that from the border of *Soſala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is ſaid, there is no ſign of any building either old or new. The principal of thoſe that be, 1. *Tongum* in the Province of *Inhamban*, and the Seat-royal of thoſe Kings; memorable for the Baptiſm of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2. *Simbus*, ſuppoſed to be ſo called from the *Agiſymba* of *Ptolomy*, the chief town of the Province of *Torre*, or *Batne*; diſtant from *Soſala* one and twenty dayes journey, and neighboured by the remains or ruines of the old Fortreſs before deſcribed. 3. *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperour makes his uſual reſidence; giving this name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himſelf, whom they call *Benomotaxa*, or *Monomotapa*, the word in their Language ſignifying a King or Emperor.

The King hereof, accounted one of the greateſt of *Africk*, hath under his Command, beſides the Provinces deſcribed, ſome part of *Cafraria*. Of great riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which ſo abundantly ſupply all the Royal occaſions, that he exacteth no kind of tribute from his Subjects, but ſome certain dayes ſervice in his Works; and from his Nobles Gifts and Preſents, without which none of them are to come before him. His Forces great, the multitude of men conſidered, but weak, for want of skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for modern Service, the Arms they moſt uſe being only Darts and Targets. For which cauſe (and in regard the people of the ſubject Kingdoms are ſo prone to *Rebellions*, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the *Tributary* Kings as Hoſtages of their Fathers Loyalty) he wageth *mercenary* Souldiers of other Nations, whom he diſtributeth abroad in his ſeveral Provinces: and amongſt theſe it is affirmed, that he hath a ſtrong Battallion of *Amazons*, a warlike Race of women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the out-skirts of *Zanzibar*, compared by ſome for their fidelity and prowesſ, to the *Turkiſh Janizaries*. And yet not truſting wholly to the Faith of theſe *Mercenaries*, it is ſaid, that he keeps 200 *Maſtives* for the Guard of his perſon. Much reverenced by his Subjects, by whom he is ſerved upon the knee; and when he cougheth or drinketh, all thoſe that are about him, make ſuch a ſhout, that the town rings of it. In one particular they differ from moſt Nations elſe, which is, that ſuch as are admitted into his preſence are bound to ſit down, in token of reverence; to ſtand before him, being a ſign of the greateſt Dignity, which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced *Chriſtianity* in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonſalvo* the Jeſuite, by the name of *Sebaſtian* (that being the name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning) But afterward on the ſuggeſtions of ſome *Arabians* then in great place about him, having cauſed the *Jeſuite* to be ſlain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 men, under the conduct of *Franciſco Barretio*, to whom he offered very honourable amends for the injury done; but *Barretio* having in hope ſwallowed all the Gold in the Countrey, would not admit of any peaceable agreement; but referred the buſineſs to a battel; in which being overcome himſelf, and his whole Forces not long after conſumed by ſickneſs, the hopes of *Chriſtianity*, and the *Portugals* intereſt in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. CAFRARIA.

CAFRARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*; on the South, and Weſt, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to ſome parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Cafras*, which in the *Arabian* tongue ſignifieth an *Heretick*; a name by them given to *Chriſtians*, *Heathens*, and thoſe of their own Religion alſo, which differ in *opinion* from them; but given to this Region by ſome late Writers, becauſe deſtitute of another name.

The Countrey, for ſo much of it as hath been diſcovered, is ſaid to be full of great herds of Cattel, and flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, Foxes, Hares, Oſtriches, *Pelicans*, Herons, Geeſe, Ducks, Pheaſants, Partridges, in a word, all things neceſſary for the life of man, were it ſomwhat better ſtored with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally ſtored with Woods, and Forreſts: the Hils thereof ſo intermixt with Graſſie Vallies, that pity 'tis ſo beautiful and rich a Countrey ſhould be inhabited by ſo barbarous and rude a people; who being utterly unprovided of towns and houſes, live in Woods like beaſts. Of colour black, thick lips, flat Noſes, long-ſhaped heads, and moſt monſtrous ears; extended far beneath their ſhoulders, by hanging in them Iron chains, glaſs, bullets, bels, and ſuch ponderous bables. Theſe Ornaments common to both Sexes, who alſo uſe (for their greater beauty) moſt hideouſly to ſlaſh themſelves in all parts of their bodies, even their very bellies, as if no lace could better ſort with their naked skins; with which only, except ſome flap of an Hide, or other leather to hide their privities, they are here apparelled.

Their beſt Habits for the moſt part are the Hides of Beaſts, undreſſed, unfaſhioned, juſt as they tear them from the fleſh; but when they cloath themſelves with Sheep-skins, they have ſo much wit as to wear the Fleece next to their bodies in cold weather, which at other times they expoſe (with no ſmall pride and glory) to the open view. Their voyce ſo inarticulate, that it is hard to be diſtinguiſhed into words and Syllables; which, being compoſed with that bruitiſhneſs, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to ſay, whether the people generally may be thought to be men in the skins of beaſts, or beaſts created in the likeneſs and ſhape of men. But they make a greater uſe of their Cattel, than for Garments only, their raw fleſh ſerving them for Food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks uncleanſed, and with all the filth in them, in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearl, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countries. Gold here ſo vilified, that they exchange it gladly for Braſs or Iron, and that quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in ſuch ſenſeleſs diſproportion, as rendreth Braſs and Iron the more excellent Metals.

But amongſt all the ſeveral Nations which inhabit this moſt flouriſhing Countrey, none are more barbarous than thoſe, whom they call the *Imbians*, dwelling not far from the *Cape of good Hope*; tall, ſquare, and ſtrong, addicted alwaies to War and *Rapine*, and feeding on the fleſh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying Friends, whoſe death they haſten for the *Shambles*. The skuls of whom they uſe for their drinking Cups. Their Weapons poyſoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they alwaies carry *fire* before them, menacing thereby to roſt, or boyl all ſuch as they overcome. Their King (if ſuch a ſacred name become ſuch an impious Monſter) they account for *Lord* of all the earth; as the *Portugals*, of all the Seas: and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not only threatneth the deſtruction of men, but ſhooteth his poyſoned Arrows againſt Heaven it ſelf, as often as the Rain, or Heat offends him. In the year 1589. about 80000 of them made an inrode into *Zanzibar*, laid deſolate all the Countrey as far as *Mombaza*, which City they beſieged, ſacked, and devoured the people of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our deſcription of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, ſcarce ſo much as houſes; and thoſe ſo mean, that they deſerve not to be ſo called: except it be ſome ſheds on the Sea-ſides, for the uſe of Saylors. Of moſt note in it is, *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen, or ſixteen Leagues from the *Cape of Good Hope*; not ſo much noted for the buildings adjoyning to it (if there be any ſuch) as the Bay it ſelf; environed on all ſides with a pleaſant Countrey, enriched with variety of Herbs, not only pleaſing to the ſence, but very Medicinal alſo for many diſeaſes, eſpecially for thoſe that are troubled with the *Scarbute* (or *Scurvy*, as we uſe to call it) the Hils adjoyning, ſtored with great multitudes of Cattel, both Sheep and Cowes, though leſs in ſize than thoſe in theſe Northern parts: great helps unto our Sea-men in their Eaſtern voyages, for here ſuch as are to ſayl towards the *Indies*, uſe to take in freſh water, and make proviſion of things neceſſary for ſo long a voyage. I have heard that ſome of our *Engliſh* ſhips in their return from the *Eaſt-Indies*, ſeized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on ſhip-board, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end that having learned the *Engliſh* Tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Eſtate and Affairs of this Countrey. One of theſe who was called *Coore*, being brought to *London* (for the other died upon the way) was dieted and clothed according to the *Engliſh* faſhion, gratified alſo with braſs Rings, Beads, and ſuch other things, by which they thought they might moſt gain upon him to affect the change of his condition. But *home* is *home, though it be but homely*, as the ſaying is. For this poor wretch having learned ſo much *Engliſh*, as to bemoan his own misfortunes, would throw himſelf upon the ground, and cry out with great anguiſh, and vexation of ſpirit, *Coore home go, Soldania go, Coree home go*, out of which unquietneſs of humour, when they could not get him, they ſent him back in the next ſhips which were bound for the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he ſaw any ſhip with *Engliſh* Colours, he would very joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his neck (as their cuſtom is) and readily perform all good Offices towards them; yet ſo, that it was found withal, that by diſcovering to the Natives how low eſteem the *Engliſh* had of Braſs and Iron, they thenceforth raiſed the value of thoſe richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for ſuch ſorry Trifles as have ſpoken of before.

But that which is of moſt conſideration in all this Countrey, is the *Cape* it ſelf; diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their firſt *Indian* undertakings; by whom, for the continual Tempeſts which he found about it, it was firſt called *Tormentoſa*. But afterwards the *Portugal* having doubled the *Cape*, and thereby finding good hopes of a proſperous Voyage, they cauſed it to be called *Cabo di Bunna Speranza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*: *Vaſques di Gama*, the firſt diſcoverer of this way to the wealth of *India*, being then their *Admiral*, *An.* 1597. It conſiſteth of three great points or headlands, of which that which is neareſt us, is the *Cape of good Hope*: the middlemoſt hath the name of *Cabo Falſo*, becauſe miſtaken for the other, by ſome of the *Portugals*, returning homewards: the third called *Cabo della Guglia*, or the *Cape of Needles*, by reaſon of thoſe ſharp points which ſhoot towards the Sea. On the top of the *Cape*, a large and pleaſing Plain, adorned with great variety of Flowers, and covered with a Carpet of graſs; it is called the *Table* of the *Cape*, and yieldeth a large proſpect over the Sea on all ſides. The Sea here is very rough and tempeſtuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkind: whereupon a *Spaniſh* Captain being ſore vexed with a ſtorm, expoſtulated with GOD, why he ſuffered his *good Catholicks* to endure ſuch torments; and permitted the *Engliſh Hereticks* and Blaſphemers, to paſs ſo eaſily.

The Countrey is not ſubjected unto any one Prince, the *Natives* being governed by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Glans*; nor find I hitherto that either the *Portugals*, or *Spaniards*, have took poſſeſſion of any one part of it, in the name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the beſt title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom poſſeſſion was taken of it, in the Reign of King *James*, by one *Captain Fitz-Herbert*, who called the *Aſcent* unto the *Table* King *James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his beget any good title, or whether the title of a Countrey lying ſo far off, be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *States-men*.

4. *MANICONGO.*

MANICONGO is bounded on the South, with *Cafraria*, and the *Mountains* of the *Moon*, on the Weſt, with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the Realm of *Bein*, and other parts of the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the Eaſt, with *Zanzibar*, and ſome part of the *Abaſſine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the principal of thoſe many Kingdoms, which are united in this Name.

The Air hereof ſo temperate, that their Winter is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*; inſomuch as the people do not uſe to change their garments, or make more *fire* then, than at other times: the Tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the nights ſo equal to the daies, that for the greateſt part of the year there is little difference; the Countrey being ſituate under the *Æquator*, though more of it on the North than the South thereof. Not over hot, notwithſtanding in the heats of Summer, by reaſon of the cool winds which then blow continually, and the great dews, which falling in the night, make ſome compenſation for the extreım fervour of the Day. The Soyl ſo exceeding fruitful in the production of Herbs, Plants, Fruits, and ſuch ſtore of Paſturage, that they have here great Herds of Cattel, Large Flocks of Sheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares and Conies: Elephants of that bigneſs, that their teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of ſo vaſt a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; not to ſay any thing of their *Fowl*, both wild and tame, which they have here in great abundance.

The people of mean ſtature, black of Complexion, thick Lips, and having the Apple of the eye of divers colours, which makes them ghaſtly to behold; ſtrong and long-lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In *Religion* for the moſt part *Heathens*, ſome worſhipping the Sun and Moon, others the Earth, as the Mother and Nurſe of all things; and ſome again, wild Beaſts and Serpents. So populous, that without any ſenſible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is ſuppoſed that they ſell 28000 *Slaves* to the *Portugals* yearly; by whom they are ſent into *Braſil*, there to work in the Mines, and Sugar-houſes. The *Chriſtian* Faith admitted in ſome few of their Provinces, but ſpecially in that of *Congo*; where firſt preached in the Reign of *John* the 2 King of *Portugal*, An. 1490. by *Gonzalvo do Suſa*, who having converted and baptized the Kings Unkle; and one of his Sons, prevailed ſo far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did embrace the *Goſpel*. Received there by the people with ſuch infinite joy, that when their firſt *Biſhop* came to live amongſt them, they cauſed the waies from the Sea-ſide to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fiſh, Veniſon, and other neceſſaries, to teſtifie their rejoycings in that happy change. And though many of the Subjects in the other Provinces were *baptized* accordingly, and for a time embraced the Faith; yet after ſome ſmall trial of it they relapſed to their former *Heatheniſm*; either unable or not willing to conform to ſo ſtrict a Rule.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey, 1. *Bengo.* 2. *Coanza.* 3. *Dande.* 4. *Barbela.* 5. *Ambrizi.* 6. *Loza.* 7. *Zaire.* This laſt the greateſt of them all, if not of all *Africk* alſo: Of which, though we have ſpoke already, we ſhall add this here, that it falleth into the *Æthiopick* Sea with ſo great a violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen ſomtimes, the waters of it do retain their natural ſweetneſs; not intermingled nor corrupted with the Salt Sea-waters. Nor can the people ſayl above five miles againſt the ſtream, by reaſon of the *Cataracts*, or huge fals which it hath from the Mountains; more terrible and turbulent than thoſe of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of moſt note, they are, 1. *Sierra, Complida*, or the long Mountain; 2. *Mons Chriſtalli*, or the *Chriſtalline* Mountain, ſo called from the abundance of *Chriſtal* which is found therein. 3. *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the *Sun*, of exceſſive height: 4. *Montes Sal Nitri*, ſo called from their abounding in that kind of Mineral; and 5. the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich in Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general Muſter in the ſtile Imperial; wherein their King calleth himſelf King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Sandi*, *Bangu*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abandi*, *Matana*, *Quiſoma*, *Angola*, and *Cacango*, Lord of the *Congemes*, *Amolaze*, *Langelungi*, *Anzuichi*, *Cucchi*, and *Zoanghi*. Many of theſe not ſo well diſcovered, as to afford us any matter fit for our diſcourſe; the principal of thoſe that be, are,

1. *ANGOLA*, bounded on the South, with *Cafraria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the Eaſt, with ſome part of *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of *Silver*, and moſt excellent *Copper*; ſome ſtore of Kine and Horſes brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their tails, (the wearing whereof is held for a ſpecial Ornament) then keep for any other uſe; their chiefeſt Diet being *Dogs*, which they fat for the *Shambles*; and to that dainty ſo affected, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give twenty ſlaves and upwards for a good large Dog. By this we may conjecture ſomwhat at the nature of the people, who beſides this, are ſaid to be much given to *ſorcery*, and *divinations* by the flight of Birds, skilful in *medicinal* herbs and poyſons, and by familiarity with the *Devil*, able to tell things to come. Permitted as moſt *Pagans* are, to have as many wives as they will; who with the reſt of the women, whether Maids, or Widows, uſe at the firſt ſight of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare bums in defiance of her, as the cauſe of their troubleſom purgations.

In this Countrey are the Mountains called *Cantaberes*, rich in Mines of Silver; but thoſe Mines not ſuffered to be digged, for fear of drawing ſome unneceſſary war upon them: ſo that they uſe *Glaſſe-beads* for money, and therewith alſo do adorn the perſons of greateſt eminence. Their principal City called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal Reſidence of their Kings; but not elſe obſervable.

This Countrey was firſt diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Diego Can*, Anno 1486. the King hereof at that time *Vaſſal* unto him of *Congo*, and ſo continued till that King did embrace the Goſpel: whereupon they revolted from him, and have ſince ſubſiſted of themſelves without ſuch dependance. At firſt they held good correſpondency with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffick in their Dominions: but after their revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals* were in league, they put to death as many of them as they found in *Cabazza*, An. 1578. under colour of ſome pretended treaſon. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of theſe parts, for the King of *Portugal*, arming ſuch people as he had, with two Gallies and ſome other Veſſels paſſed up the River of *Coanza*, waſting the Countrey on both ſides. Againſt whom the King of *Angola* raiſed an Army of a *Million* of men (as ſome Writers tell us) but amongſt thoſe multitudes of men, there were ſo few Souldiers, that an handful of the *Portugals*, aided with ſome of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, *An.* 1582. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King hereof hath expreſſed ſome good affections unto *Chriſtianity*; ſending unto the King of *Congo* for ſome *Prieſts* to inſtruct him in it, but obtained them not; the ſtate of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the upper hand, built, or repaired a ſtrong Fort, ſituate near a convenient Bay, by which they did not only ſerve their Trade, but command a great part of the countrey, till diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the treachery and falſhood of the *Hollanders*, An. 1640. or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themſelves from the Crown of *Spain*, a ceſſation from all Hoſtility with them, was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after a firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles whereof it was conditioned, that this peace ſhould not begin in the *Eaſt-Indies*, till the end of a year, nor in *Braſil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces which were abroad, to make themſelves Maſters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugals*, which they could lay hold of, who following theſe inſtructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, was by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Caſtles as their ſpecial Friends, which preſently they poſſeſſed themſelves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a vety weak Bark to ſeek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the Iſle of St. *Thomas*.

To this King belong alſo the two Provinces of *Matana*, and *Quiſoma*, thongh both uſed in the titles of the King of *Congo*: of which the firſt lying towards the Sea, is ſaid to be of a wholſom Ayre, and a fertile Soyl; outwardly furniſhed with Fruits, and inwardly with Mines of *Chriſtal*, and other Metals; but not very rich, for want of ſome convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great *Lake* called *Aque Lunda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Commonwealth*, but tributary at that time to the King of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke, by reaſon of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars againſt him.

2. *BAMBA* hath on the South the River of *Conza*, by which parted from *Angola*, on the North the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Songo*, on the Eaſt, *Pemba*; on the Weſt, the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of Silver, well ſtored with Beaſts and Birds, as well tame as wild. Amongſt the Birds, *Parrets* both green and gray, an many which are taught to ſing; not much inferiour for their muſick to the birds of *Canaries*. Amongſt the Beaſts of moſt note, is that called the *Zebre*, ſhaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly ſo ſtreaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and thoſe ſtreaks naturally ſet in ſuch even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye a moſt pleaſing Object. But wild, an of ſo ſwift a foot, that *Velox ut Zebra*, to be *as ſwift as a Zebre*, is grown into a proverb amongſt the *Portugals*. The men ſo ſtrong, that it is ſaid of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Oxe, or ſtrike a Slave quite thorow the middle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a veſſel of Wine, weighing 325 pound weight, containing the fourth part of a But; and hold it ſo till it be quite drawn out. It containeth in it many *Signeuries*, moſt of them called by the names of their principal towns. The chief of which, 1. S. *Paul*, ſituate on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Leanda*; inhabited for the moſt part by *Portugal* families. 2. *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is ſituate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Loſe* and *Ambrizi*.

3. *PEMBA* hath on the Weſt, *Bamba*; on the Eaſt, the Lake *Zombre*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*, and on the South, *Angola*. Eſteemed to be the richeſt and moſt pleaſant Countrey of all *Manicongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beſet with *Palm trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are alwaies green. The water of ſo good a nature, that it never hurteth any that drink of it: the Air exceeding wholſom, and the earth as fruitful; productive of all ſorts of grain, but ſpecially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *Muſtard ſeed*, but bigger, which they grind in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferiour to Wheat. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbariſm* ſince the coming of the *Portugals* thither; whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparel. So well skilled in the vertues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Phyſitian*, *Chirurgion*, and *Apothecary*. Anciently cloathed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained ſtill by the *Villagers* and poorer ſort, in ſome part of the Countrey. Their chief City, formerly had the name of *Banza*, ſo called, becauſe the Kings Court (as the word doth ſignifie;) but ſince the receiving of the *Goſpel*, it is called S. *Saviours*: diſtant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (ſince it became *Chriſtian*) with a *Biſhops* See, and a fair *Cathedral*, in which, are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers, and Ornaments accuſtomably belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it ſelf ſituate on the ſide of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a ſpacious Plain, two Dutch Miles in compaſs, full of Villages, Burroughs and ſcattered houſes; which are thought to houſe 100000 perſons, moſt of them *Portugals*, and their Servants.

4. *BATTA* hath on the Weſt, and South *Pemba*, on the Eaſt, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and thoſe called *Sal Nitri*; on the North, *Pango*. Of the Soyl and people there is nothing ſingular to be ſaid, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more military, and better furniſhed for the Wars than the reſt of theſe Provinces: neceſſitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and ſavage people, dwelling about the ſpurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jagges* or *Giacchi*. Theſe naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Seirra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous parts of this Region, under the conduct of one *Elembe*, where they are ſince grown into a people,

and become a terrour to their neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans fleſh, which they prefer before that of Beeves, or Mutton; not yet ſo qualified by the change of their Countrey, as to build houſes, ſow or plant, or to breed up Cattel; finding it far the eaſier life, to maintain themſelves by the labour and ſpoil of others. And which is yet moſt ſtrange of all, though they have each of them many wives, ten or twenty a piece, yet they have no children; but ſtrangle them aſſoon as born, leſt they ſhould be an hindrance to their often wandrings. But as *Pliny* once ſaid of the *Eſſeni*, *Gens æterna eſt in qua nemo naſcitur*; ſo we may alſo ſay of theſe, that they do not want ſucceſſion, though they breed no children: ſelecting out of their Captives and ſtollen children, ſome of either Sex, (but neither ſteal nor take them captive, under twenty years old) to be the *Seminary* (as it were) of a new poſterity. Againſt theſe *Monſters* thoſe of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwiſe able to defend themſelves, their wives and children, from their hands and teeth: inſomuch as this one Province, though none of the biggeſt, is able to raiſe 70000 men, well armed, and fit for any ſervice. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province; ſituate on the banks of the River *Lelanda*, and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, who is always of the *blood Royal*, honoured ſometimes with ſitting at the Kings own Table, which none elſe may do, and of ſo great authority in all *conſultations*, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. PANGO, is bounded on the South, with *Batta*; on the Eaſt, extended to the Mountains of the *Sun*, which cloſe up this Countrey; on the North, with *Sunda*; and on the Weſt, with parts of *Pemba*, and *Sango*. Of the people, little ſingular, of the Countrey leſs. Neighboured on the North-eaſt towards *Sierra de Chriſtal*, with the *Languelungi*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Æthiopes Heſperii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; a barbarous Nation, but of ſo conſiderable power, that they are found amongſt the reſt in the *Stile Imperial*. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, not ſubject till of late times to the Kings, of *Congo*. The chief Town of it called *Pango*, is ſeated on the Weſtern bank of the River *Barbele*; the ordinary reſidence of the *Vice-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6. SUNDA, is bounded on the South, with *Batta*; on the North, with the great River *Zaire*: on the Eaſt, with *Barbele*; and on the Weſt, with part of *Songo*. The Countrey rich in ſeveral Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other; becauſe it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives, and Armour; well furniſhed alſo with *Martrons*, *Sables*, and other Furrs of great eſteem amongſt Forreign Merchants. This is the beſt Region of this Kingdom, not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*; nor much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which it communicateth to the whole.

7. SONGO, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Batta*, and *Anzichana*; on the Weſt, with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with the Kingdom of *Loanga*; and on the South, with the River *Ambrizi*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both ſides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here ſo turbulent and broad, and ſo full of *Iſlands*, that the one part of it hath little or no commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Countrey; in which is nothing ſingular for the Soil or people.

8. ANZICHANA, hath on the Weſt, part of *Songo* and *Loango*; extended thence unto the Eaſt, as far almoſt as the Lake of *Zembre*; on the North, ſome part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it: The cruelleſt *Cannibals* in the world; for they do not onely eat their Enemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that they may be ſure not to want theſe Dainties, they have *ſhambles* of mans fleſh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous withal, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when ſold joynt by joynt, than if ſold alive; they will cut them out, and ſell them ſo upon the *Shambles*. Yet with theſe barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be ſo cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will diſcharge 28 Arrows (for ſo many do their *Quivers* hold) before the firſt of them falls to ground: and of ſo great fidelity to their Maſters, and to thoſe which truſt them, that they will rather chooſe to be killed, than either to abuſe the truſt, or betray their Maſter. For that cauſe more eſteemed by the *Portugals*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the ſame and that onely, worthy of ſo good a Countrey; ſaid to be rich in Mines of Copper, and very plentiful of *Sanders*, both red and gray; which tempered with *Vineger*, is found by the *Portugals* to be a certain remedy againſt the *Pox*; as the ſmoak thereof againſt the *head-ache*. Towns they have none, or none at leaſt of any reckoning, which deſerve place here.

9. LOANGO hath on the Eaſt, *Anzichana*; on the Weſt, the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guiena*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South, the Province of *Songo*, from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Countrey very hot, as lying under the *Line*, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more ſtored with Elephants, than any other of theſe parts: ſtretching in length 200 miles within the Land, and for the moſt part very well watered. The Inhabitants, whom they call *Bramas*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accuſtomed (as the *Anziqui* and other of theſe barbarous *Africans*) unto *Circumciſion*. Governed by a King of their own, once ſubject to the Kings of *Congo*: but of late times, both he and the King of the *Anziqui* (for they are alſo under the command of one *Soveraign* Prince) have freed themſelves from that ſubjection; though ſtill the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1. *Penga*, the Haven to the reſt, 2. *Morumba*, 30 Leagues more Northwards, and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns, being more civil than the reſt, apparel themſelves with the leaves of *Palm-trees*; but not ſo well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realms of *Congo*, who out of

the leaves thereof well cleanſed and purged draw a fine long thread, of which they make Velvets, Damasks, Sattens, Taffaties, Sarcenets, and the like fine Stuffs.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom ſeated on the Continent, Let us next look upon the Iſlands. The principal of which LOANDA, ſituate over againſt the Town of S. *Paul*, in the Province of *Bamba*; ſaid to be firſt made out of the ſands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coanza*, caſt into an heap; and at laſt made into an Iſland. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the ſame name with the Iſland, poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*. The Iſland deſtitute of Rivers, but ſo well furniſhed with waters, that every where within leſs than half a yard digging, they find ſweet and good Waters, ſo contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be ſalt and brackiſh; when it floweth towards the Iſland, then moſt freſh and ſweet. But moſt remarkable is this Iſland for the *Cockle fiſhing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the ſands, in baskets, and part them from the ſand, as they lie on the ſhore; the *ſhels* of which being naturally diſtinguiſhed into divers colours, ſerve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, inſtead of *money*; which is a matter of ſuch moment unto this King, that he entertains a Governour in the Iſland for no other reaſon, but to take care about this fiſhing.

Beſides this, there are many Iſlands in the River of *Zaire*, now ſubject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars againſt them: fighting in Boats which they made of the bodies of a Tree, by them called *Liconde*. The tree ſo big, that two or three men or more are not able to fathom it: inſomuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largeſt of them, able to contain 200 men. Upon the ſhores of theſe Iſlands, and in others of their *Bays* and *Creeks*, they have ſo great numbers of *Anchioves*, that in winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of theſe ſeveral Members, and of the reſt expreſſed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*: ſo called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now diſtinguiſhed from the reſt by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or of better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diego Can*, An. 1486. at what times theſe Kings were at the greateſt: called by their ſubjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the word *Mani*, ſignifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated ſince to the Kingdom alſo. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath ſince hapned in this Kingdom, may beſt be ſeen in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Kings of CONGO.

1486. 1 *John*, not ſo called till converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*; and then *baptized* by this name, in honour of *John* the 2. King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1490. in whoſe reign this diſcovery and *Converſion* hapned.

2 *Alphonſo*, eldeſt ſon of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Chriſtian* Faith, and for that oppoſed by *Panſe Aquitine* his younger Brother: whom with a very ſmall Army, zealouſly invocating the aſſiſtance of *Jeſus Chriſt*, he is ſaid to have vanquiſhed. A Prince, who during his long reign of 50 years did ſeriouſly promote the *Goſpel*, and cauſed all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furniſhed in convenient places.

3 *Pedro*, the ſon of *Alphonſo*, in whoſe time was founded the Colledge of 28 *Canons*, in the *Cathedral* Church of S. *Croſſe*, in the Town of S. *Saviours*.

4 *Franciſco* the ſon of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.

5 *Diego*, or *James*, one of the kinſmen of *Franciſco*, in whoſe time *Religion* growing into diſcredit, by the ſcandalous lives of ſome of the *Secular Clergie*; *John* the 3. King of *Portugal* ſent four *Jeſuites* thither; who are ſaid to have *converted* in five moneths 5000 perſons, and to build three Churches.

6 *Henry*, the brother of *Diego*, after a ſharp War touching the Succeſſion, in which were ſlain all the *Portugals* of S. *Saviours*, except the *Prieſts*; at laſt ſucceeded: not long after ſlain in battel againſt the *Anziques*.

7 *Alvarez*, the ſon of *Henry*, forced by the *Jagges* or *Giacchi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himſelf, together with the *Portugal* Prieſts, to an Iſland of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till reſtored to his Crown by the aid of *Sebaſtian* King of *Portugal*; after by famine he had loſt almoſt all his company.

8 *Alvarez* II. Son of *Alvarez* the firſt, who much ſollicited *Sebaſtian* and *Henry* Kings of *Portugal*, to ſend him a new ſupply of Preachers; the old ſtore being waſted in the Iſlands of *Zaire*.

9 *Alvarez* III. Son of *Alvarez* the 2. not being born in Lawful wedlock, was oppoſed by one of his Siſters and a younger Brother, both of lawful birth, whom he overthrew, *Anno* 1587. and in the place of the victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revenues* of theſe Kings of *Congo*, I am able to ſay nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great power and riches. His *Riches* viſible by the great treaſures which he draweth from the *Mines* of ſilver, and of other Metals in his Kingdom; from the trade of *Cockle-ſhells*, the onely money of his Realm, which he keeps wholly to himſelf; the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from Elephants teeth; the preſents which he hath in way of Tribute, from the King of *Angola*.

gola. And though it be not eaſie to ſay what he layeth up yearly, becauſe he hath not his *Revenue* in Coin, as moſt Princes have; yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furniſhed with all things, as any Monarch in *Africk.*

As for his *Forces,* they conſiſt moſt in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and uſed to the Wars, would make him formidable to the reſt of the *African* Princes. And though he hath no garriſons or Towns of war, but muſt truſt, if once invaded, unto *Caſtles of bones*; yet he doth reſt ſecure enough from all fear of danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raiſe againſt his *Rebels,* or any of his invading neighbours; 400000 men out of *Bamba* onely; all armed according to their manner, and 70000 men at leaſt, well exerciſed in Wars againſt the *Jagges,* from the Province of *Batta*; beſides what may be draw from his other Provinces.

The *Arms* of this King are *Mars,* five ſwords meeting in Baſe *Sol,* Which Coat was taken by *Alphonſo,* the ſecond King in this Catalogue, becauſe in the battel which he fought againſt *Panſe Aquitine,* he and his Souldiers ſaw (or ſuppoſed they ſaw) ſuch a number of ſhining ſwords hanging in the Air, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And ſo much for *Æthiopia Inferior.*

OF
THE ISLES OF AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Iſles of *AFRICK*, we muſt obſerve another courſe than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Aſia*: theſe Iſlands not belonging to any part of the *Continent*, nor under the command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the accompt of whoſe Eſtates they might be conſidered; but being all of them *independent* and *ſui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themſelves apart. In our *Chorographie* of which, and the ſtories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to travel; beginning firſt with thoſe that lie in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and ſo proceeding by the *Cape of good Hope*, through the main *Atlantick* Ocean to the Streits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the ſhorter paſſage into *America*, and there σὺν θεῷ ϗ ταῖς Μȣσαῖς, conclude our journey. Theſe then we will conſider either joynt, or ſeparate, as delivered to us by the names of 1. The *Æthiopick Iſlands*. 2. *Socotara*, 3. *Madagaſcar*, 4. *Mohelia*, 5. S. *Helens*, 6. S. *Thomas*, 7. The *Princes Iſland*, 8. The *Gorgades*, or Iſlands of *Cape Vird*, 9. The *Canaries*, or the *Fortune Iſlands*, 10. *Madera*, 11. The Iſland of *Holy Port*, and 12. The *HESPERIDES*; of all which, the four firſt onely are diſperſed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, all the reſt ſcattered up and down in the main *Atlantick*, on this ſide of the famous Promontory, called *the Cape of good Hope*.

1. *THE ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.*

1. THE *ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS*, ſo called, becauſe they lie upon the Coaſt of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all theſe which lie on the further ſide of *the Cape of Good Hope*, or ſcattered, or diſperſed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean* (for by thoſe names theſe mighty Oriental Seas are moſt commonly known) of which we have ſpoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore ſhall ſay nothing here which concerns the ſame, but for the Iſlands of thoſe Seas, ſuch as we comprehend here under the name and notion of *Æthiopick* Iſlands, which were onely known unto the Ancients, they are more in number, than in weight; ſome of them ſituate within the Streits of the *Red-Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*; others without thoſe Streits, in the open Ocean.

1. Of thoſe within the Streits, not reckoning ſuch as lie upon the ſhores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already ſpoken; there is 1. *Aſiarte*, or *Aſtrata*, now called *Cainſſa*, 2. *Ara Palladis*, ſo called from ſome Altar of that Goddeſs, which was there erected, 3. *Gypſeris*, by *Pliny* called *Cyris*, but *Gypſus* in *Juſtinians* Code, renowned in former times for its plenty of metals, 4. *Macaria*, or the *fortunate* Iſlands, ſo called from the fertility and pleaſures of it, 5. *Orneon*, or the *Iſle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein, 6. *Daphnis*, by *Ptolomy* called *Daphnine*, oppoſite to a famous Port-Town of the ſame name in the Continent, 7. *Bacchias*, ſo called from *Bacchus*, unto whom conſecrated, 8. *Anti-Bacchias*, ſo named, becauſe oppoſite to it, 9. *Acanthine*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be now called *Anghotina*, 10. *Inſula Diodori*, conceived by the Learned to be the ſame which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and giveth name unto the *Streits*, or enterance of the Bay of *Arabia*, now called the Streits of *Babel Mandel*, 11. *Iſidis Inſula*, memorable for a Temple dedicated to the Goddeſs *Iſis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Iſidis*; the ſame which is now called *Paſcua*, as *Bel-foreſt* thinketh, 12. *Mundi*, an Iſland in the Bay of *Avalitos*, oppoſite to a noted *Empire* of the ſame name on the ſhores of that Bay. Beſides all which, we find in *Ptolomy* two Iſlands by the name of *Thriſitides*; two more, called *Chelonitides*, or *Cathrata*, two others paſſing by the name of *Gomadao*; together with the Iſles of *Myron*, *Pan*, and that called *Inſula Magorum*: which make up one and twenty in all, but of no note, or obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs, or the conduct of humane affairs.

Thoſe of moſt note in the open Ocean, which ſtill preſerveth the name of the *Red-Sea*, and is ſometimes called the *Indian*, ſometimes the *Arabian* Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypadis*; are but four in number, that is to ſay, 1. *Myrica*, by the Tranſlator of *Ptolomy*, called *Myrſiaca*, 2. 3. two Iſlands called by the name of *Menan*, a degree more Northwards than the other; and 4. *Amicuſia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Inſula*, as called by *Ptolomy*, the moſt North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the moſt noted Iſland of this Sea. I know that many Learned men will have this Iſland to be that, which *Ptolomy* and others of the Ancients call *Dioſcoridis*: but becauſe *Dioſcoridis*, by all thoſe Ancients, is made to be an Iſland of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Iſle of *Africk*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our beſt modern *Geographers*, that *Socotara* lieth over againſt Cape *Guardafu*, (the *Aromata* of *Ptolomy*, as before is ſaid) from which diſtant not above 30 leagues: which ſite and diſtance ſort well with *Amicuſia*, but can by no means be applied unto *Dioſcoridis*: *Amicuſia* being placed but two Degrees on the Eaſt of that Promontory, in the *Longitude* of 85. whereas *Dioſcoridis* is ſituate from it almoſt four degrees, in the *Longitude* of 86. and 40 *Minutes*; beſides as great, or greater difference in their ſeveral *Latitude*. So that ſuppoſing it for granted, that *Socotara* is that Iſland which was anciently called *Amicuſia*; and having cleared my way ſo far; I now proceed to the Deſcription and affairs thereof.

2. SOCOTARA.

SOCOTARA, the greateſt Iſland of theſe Shores, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, againſt Cape *Guardafu*, from which diſtant about 30 leagues; *Abadalenry*, a ſmall Iſland lying in the middeſt; that is to ſay, 15 leagues from the *Cape*, and 14 from the Iſland. The length hereof 60 miles, 25 the breadth; divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height, the top of which are for the moſt part covered with ſands. The Iſland extreamly vexed with winds, and moleſted with dryneſs, inſomuch as it is deſtitute of moſt things neceſſary for the life of man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but ſome ſmall quantity of Mill, Dates, and ſome kind of Fruits. Provided notwithſtanding of ſome good Paſtures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furniſhed with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragons bloud*, which is a *Red Gum* iſſuing from the Bark of a Tree; and the beſt *Aloes* in the world, from hence called *Aloes Socotrina*.

The people of an *Aſh-colour*, very rude and barbarous, their bread for the moſt part of *Dates*; the reſt of their food being Milk and Butter; their hair long, and their cloathing only enough to hide their nakedneſs. The *Women* as good Souldiers as the men, countenancing or occaſioning the tradition of the *Arabians*, that they came from the *Amazons*; And the better Husbands of the two, governing all Affairs both within and without. All of them by profeſſion *Chriſtians*, governed by a *Biſhop* of their own, with ſome few *Prieſts*; but ignorant enough of all things which concern *Religion*. More generally *Circumciſed* than *Chriſtened*, though both uſed among them. *Jacobites* in Sect, as the *Abaſſines* their Neighbours are, and zealous Worſhippers of the *Croſſe*, which they alwaies hang about their necks. So pertinaciouſly addicted unto *Magick*, and therein ſo expert, that they bring incredible things to paſs: not to be weaned from thoſe *Black Arts*, though the Biſhop excommunicate all ſuch as uſe them. They hold opinion that St. *Thomas* ſuffered Shipwrack upon their Coaſts, as he ſayled towards *India*; and that his ſhip being drawn to land, was turned into a Church: but it appeareth neither by their life, or Doctrines, that any *Apoſtolical* man hath ſet foot amongſt them.

They live for the moſt part in *Caves*, or *Cabines*, of no other ſtuffe than the boughs of Trees; ſo that we are to look for few Towns among them. The principal, 1. *Zocotara*, giving name to the Iſland, the place of the Kings reſidence, and a Biſhops See. 2. *Tamarind*, and 3. *Deliſha*, two Port-towns, and reaſonably well traded, in the hands of the Natives: as, 4. *Coro*, and 5. *Benin*, two other Ports, poſſeſſed and garriſon'd by the *Portugals*. The King hereof a Vaſſal to the King of *Fartac*, one of the petit Princes of *Arabia felix*, not far from Aden; in habit and Religion *Turkiſh*: Attended on when the *Relater* was there, An. 1614. by five Camels and five Horſes only, yet thoſe all in the Iſland.

Nigh hereunto are two Iſlands (thoſe poſſibly which *Ptolomy* calleth *Monan*) the one inhabited by men only, and the other by women; who do meet at their accuſtomed times to preſerve their kind, but make no long ſtay; the Air of the one, being found unhealthy for the conſtitution of the other Sex. The other Iſlands of theſe Coaſts, ſcattered up and down in the Bay of *Barbaria* (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolomy*) as, 1. *Don Garcia*. 2. the three brethren. 3. St. *Brandon*. 4. *Francis*, 5. *Maſcadenna*. 6. *Comoro*, and many others of as ſmall note, are not worth the ſpeaking of.

3. MADAGASCAR.

3. MADAGASCAR, the greateſt in the world, is ſituate over againſt *Moſambique* in *Æthiopia Inferior*: ſuppoſed to be the *Menuthias* of *Ptolomy*, the only Iſland by him named on the Coaſt of that Countrey; but by the *Portugals* called the Iſle of St. *Lawrence*, becauſe diſcovered by them on the day of that Saint, An. 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 miles (which is longer than *Italy*) and 4000 in compaſs: the middle part hereof oppoſite to the Promontory, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Praſſum*, now the point of *Moſambique*, from which diſtant 170 miles: in reference to the heavenly bodies, ſituate from the 17 Degree of Southern *Latitude*, to the 26th.

The Countrey plentiful of all things neceſſary for the life of man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Hony, Wax, Cotton-wool, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Limons and other cooling Fruits, ſome ſtore of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from thoſe of *India*, red Sanders. Saffron, Amber, and ſome Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to ſay any thing of their Beeves and Muttons, ſo large and good, and ſo good cheap, that for a two-penny Bead, or ſome ſuch trifle, they will ſell Beeves and Sheep of good taſt and bigneſs, ſuch numbers of Elephants, that they ſend thence yearly great ſtore of *Ivory*. And amongſt other rare Fruits, they have plenty of thoſe, which they call *Cocos*, or *Coconuts*; a kind of *Date* as big as a Cabbage; the liquor in it, about the quantity of a Pint, taſtes like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two men: and like *Good Ale*, it affords not only meat and drink, but cloathing; as alſo furniture for their houſes, tackle for their ſhips, fewel for their fire, and timber for building; the body of the Tree being ſtraight and high, and towards the top diverſified into many Branches. A Countrey far too good for ſo bad a people.

For they, as Travellers report, and moſt Writers teſtifie, are treacherous, inhoſpitable, ignorant, both of Prayers and Feſtivals; deſtitute of the diſtinction of time into years and moneths, not knowing any proper names for the dayes of the Week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked except their *Privities*, which they cover with Cotton; *Idolaters* in the mid-land parts, and *Mahometans* upon the ſhores. Commendable only for their hate to *Polygamy*, and reſtraining themſelves to one Wife; the defiling of the Marriage-bed ſeverely puniſhed: but otherwiſe ſo eager upon *Copulation*, that their Boyes at the age of twelve years, and the Girls at ten, think they ſtay too long, if they keep their *Virginities* any longer;

ſome of them, like *Quartilla* in *Petronius Arbiter*, begin ſo early, *ut nunquam meminerint ſe Virgines fuiſſe*, that they remember not the time when they loſt their *Maidenheads*. Of colour they are black, and of ſtrong compoſition; their breaſts and faces cut and pinkt, to appear more beautiful. Much given unto the wars, well armed according to their Countrey manner, and exceeding good *Archers*. Amongſt them there are ſome white people, ſaid to come from *China*.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their names I find not: and at the mouths of thoſe Rivers ſome convenient Havens, into which they admit the forreign Merchants, but ſuffer none to come on land; which the Merchant hath no cauſe to be ſorry for, finding himſelf not ſafe on ſhip-board from their treacherous practiſes. So that we can give but ſmall account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their names: as *viz.* 1. St. *Auguſtines*, on a fair bay in the South-weſt point, as 2. *Gangomar*, in the North-eaſt of it; 3. *Antaboſta*. 4. *Point-Antogil*. 5. *Santo-Jacobo*. 6. *Matatana*. 7. *Angoda*. 8. *Herendo*. 9. *Andro-arco*; *and* 10. *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, ſo entituled by ſome zealous *Romaniſt*, in hope to have it thought that the Popes of *Rome* have got ſome footing in this Iſland.

This Iſland known, but very imperfectly, in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many ſtrange things of it: but none more ſtrange than that of the Bird called *Ruck*, of ſuch incredible ſtrength and bigneſs, that it could ſnatch up an *Elephant* as eaſily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Diſcovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506, as before was ſaid; and ſince frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further touching the Eſtate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four parts, under ſo many Kings, each of them in continual Wars againſt one another, but well enough agreed to defend themſelves againſt the coming in of ſtrangers. Yet as ſome ſay, they would be well enough content with an *Engliſh Plantation*: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more courteous than the *Portugals*, and not ſo covetous as the *Dutch*; or elſe by the ſtrength of our ſhipping, and the reputation of our *intereſſe* in it, to keep off all others.

4. MOHELIA, and 5. MAURITIUS *Iſland.*

ADjoyning to *Madagaſcar*, and as it were attending on it, I find divers Iſlands; ſome on the North-weſt, ſome directly Eaſt. On the North-weſt we have 1. *Meottey*. 2. *Chamroe*. 3. *Mohelia*, and 4. *Joanna* Iſland; on the Eaſt, 5. the Iſland of *Mauritius*, and 6. *Englands Forreſt*. Of theſe *Mauritius* is the greateſt, but *Mohelia* the beſt inhabited.

4. *MOHELIA* ſituate on the North-weſt of *Madagaſcar*, is about 20 miles in length, and 16 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens, *Coconuts*, Limons, Orenges, Pom-Citrons, Pulſe, *Sugar-Canes*; ſtore of Fiſh taken on the Shores, and other neceſſaries. The people of complexion black, of compoſition large and ſtrong; couragious, affable, leſs treacherous than their neighbours of *Madagaſcar*. Of the ſame Language and *Religion* with thoſe of *Arabia*, from whence they ſeem to have deſcended: but by reaſon of their commerce and intercourſe with the *Portugals*, they ſpeak that tongue alſo. The *Women* of the like complexion, to amend which, and ſeem more lovely, they pink their arms and faces in ſeveral ſhapes. Both ſexes no otherwiſe apparelled than their natural Garments, with ſome *Plantane* Leaves about their middle to hide their ſhame.

Their *Religion* that of *Mahomet*, as before is ſaid: their *Prieſts* in great eſteem amongſt them; ſo their *Temples* alſo: which they keep clean and neatly matted, not ſuffering any man to enter with his ſhooes on his feet. Their chief Town *Meriangnea*, at the Weſt-end of the Iſle, ſtrong and well garriſoned. Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities: one of the laſt Kings leaving two Daughters, the one married to a *Native*, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the Eaſt of *Madagaſcar*, is the Iſle of *MAURITIUS*, ſo called by the *Hollanders* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whoſe time they firſt ſet footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by ſome *Cygnaa*. In compaſs about 100 miles; well ſtored with Beeves, Hogs, Goats, moſt ſorts of Fiſh: and liberally endowed with all the bleſſings of Nature, ſweet Waters, moſt delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any uſe both of Food and Building; plenty of *Ebony* of all colours, but the beſt *coal-black*. Yet altogether deſtitute of humane Inhabitants: inſomuch as we may ſay of this, as the Poet of the World, before man was made:

Sanctius his Animal, *mentiſq; capacius alta*
Deerat adhuc, & quod dominari *in cætera poſſet.*

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

But yet the Chief, *with Supream power poſſeſt,*
Was wanting, he that ſhould command *the reſt.*

Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, *and the Iſles therein.*

Having thus looked upon ſuch Iſlands, as lie on the Eaſtern ſide of *Africk* in the *Indian* Ocean, let us come homeward by the *Cape of good Hope* into the main *Atlantick*, the greateſt body of waters, which is given to us by one name in any of our Coſmographers, either old or new: A name peculiar to that part of the Weſtern Ocean, which lieth between the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and the Land of *Negroes*, to which Mount *Atlas* ſheweth it ſelf with a cloudy top, and gives name to the Seas adjoyning, but generally communicated to all that vaſt Region of waters, which lieth between *Spain* and *Africk*, on the one ſide, and the new world, or *America* on the other ſide: Extended further by *Strabo*, and ſome others of the Ancient writers, who not knowing any thing of the interpoſition of *America*, carry the name of the *Atlantick* to the ſhores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this Sea on the Eaſt and South. *Macrobius* goeth further in it, affirming poſitively, *omnem terram, qua à nobis colitur, Atlantico mari (quod Oceanum appellamus) circumfundi*, that the whole habitable world (ſo far as it was then known, and peopled) was compaſſed round about with the *Atlantick* Ocean. The like affirmed by *Julius Firmicus* alſo, by *Ariſtotle* in his book de *Mundo*, and by others, who have took it up upon their Authority. And though ſome parts hereof, which waſh the Weſtern-ſhores of *Æthiopia Inferior*, be called the *Ethiopick* Ocean; yet that doth derogate no more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantick*, than that ſome parts of the *Mediterranean* ſhould be called *Mare Ciculum, Sardoum, Tyrrhenum, Creticum*, according to the ſhores of thoſe ſeveral places which it paſſeth by, which having ſaid in general of the Sea it ſelf, according to our Method in other places; we next proceed unto the reſt of the *African* Iſlands, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea, and this ſide of *Africa*.

6. S. HELENS, and 7. the Iſles of ASCENTION.

ANd the firſt Iſle we meet with in this ſide of *Africk* is 6. the Iſle of S. *Hellens*, ſituate on the Weſt of the *Cape of good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southernly Latitude, no other Iſland interpoſing betwixt *Madagaſcar* and it, except thoſe of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tiſtram de Acugna*, near the *Cape* it ſelf; but of ſo little note, as not worth the naming. The Iſland very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with ſo ſteep an aſcent, that the *Marriners* have amongſt them a merry ſaying, that *a man may chuſe whether he will break his* heart *going up*, or his neck *coming down*.

It was thus called, becauſe diſcovered by the *Portugals* on S. *Helens* day; not then inhabited, nor ſince; the King of *Spain* ſuffering none to dwell there, becauſe it had been an unlawful *receptacle* for *uncuſtomed* Goods; whereby he loſt exceedingly both in power and profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the firſt Diſcovery, with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as alſo with Figs, Limons, Orenges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly; and grow all the year long. Intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refreſh themſelves, and beſtow their ſick, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Uſed for the ſame purpoſe by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, who ſo domineer about the Iſland, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor near it, or own their *property*, if they ſee any ſhipping in the Rode. No buildings in it but the ruins of a little Chappel, deſtroyed by the *Hollanders*; and ſome fragment of a little Village begun by ſome *Portugal* Mariners, but demoliſhed by the King of *Spain*.

7. Northweſt from hence is the Iſle of *Aſcenſion*, ſo called, becauſe diſcovered on *Aſcenſion* day: but not inhabited, nor any uſe at all made of for ought I can find. Of the ſame bigneſs with S. *Helens*, 30 miles in compaſs, and about 700 *Engliſh* miles diſtant from it.

8. S. THOMAS, 9. the PRINCES Iſland, and 10. the Iſle of ANNIBON.

8. THe Iſland of S. THOMAS is ſituate directly under the *Æquator*; of *Orbicular* form, the *Diameter* being 60 miles, by conſequence the *Perimiter*, or compaſs 180 and juſt ſo many from the ſhore of the Realm of *Congo*. At the firſt diſcovery nothing but a continual *Foreſt*, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negroes*; theſe laſt brought hither from the oppoſite *Continent*: with whom the air agrees ſo well, that they attain generally to 110 years of age, few of the *Portugals* unto fifty. The air ſo vehemently hot, that it ſorteth not with the conſtitution of the *Europæans*.

The Countrey deſtitute of Wheat, which if ſown here, turneth all to *blade*, and brings forth no Ear: nor will any fruits here proſper, that have any ſtone in them: but ſo abundant in *Sugar Canes*, and well ſtored with Sugars, that 40 ſhips are hence loaded yearly, with that one commodity, for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or Sugar-houſes, and in each of them 200 Slaves, in ſome 300 which belong to the works. Six dayes in ſeven theſe Slaves work for their Maſters, and the ſeventh for themſelves; which they ſpend in ſowing and planting their Seeds, Fruits, and Proviſions. Where by the way, theſe Sugar-works, or *Ingenios* are a late invention; the boyling and baking of Sugar (as it is now uſed) not being above 200 years old; and the refining of it more new then that: firſt found out by a *Venetian* in the dayes of our Fathers, who is ſaid to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his ſon a Knight; who (though he was no Knight of the *Poſt*) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of boyling and refining Sugars, our Anceſtors not having ſuch luxurious Palates, ſometimes made uſe of rough Sugar, as it came from the *Canes*; but moſt commonly pleaſed themſelves with honey, more wholſome, becauſe more natural than theſe forced Inventions. But to proceed in the deſcription of this Iſland, in the midſt thereof there is ſaid to be a woody Mountain, over-ſhadowed continually with *Clouds*: which ſo moiſten the Trees that grow there in a great abundance, that from thence falleth a ſufficient quantity of waters to refreſh their fields, and feed their *Sugar-Canes*; notwithſtanding the extream heat of the Clime and Air.

The *Religion* here allowed of is the *Chriſtian* onely, firſt preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a *Biſhop*, his title the Biſhop of S. *Thomas*; but his charge extendeth alſo over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo*. The principal City of it hath the name of *Pavoaſan*, a Colony of *Portugals*, conſiſting of 700 Families, or about that number: ſituate on a fine River, and a pleaſant Haven: ſeldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither in exchange for Sugars, Wheat, Wine, Cheeſe, Hides, and other things more neceſſary than thoſe *Sugars*, for the life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders* in the year 1599. but again recovered, or abandoned; and ſince poſſeſſed again by the *Hollanders*, not as before by force of Arms, but by fraud and falſhood, at the ſame time, and by the ſame diſhoneſt Arts by which they made themſelves Maſters of the Caſtle of *Angola* before mentioned. And though the *Portugal* Ambaſſadour preſented this injurious dealing to the *States* of *Holland*, yet all the anſwer he could get at the preſent was, that their people had done nothing, but what was juſtified by that clauſe of the Article, that both ſides might take and keep, and whatſoever they could within ſuch a time, and though the Ambaſſadour replied very rationally in behalf of his Countrey, and preſt the reſtitution both of this Iſland, and that Caſtle, by all honeſt Arguments, yet he could then get no reaſon from them; and whether they have done the *Portugals* any Juſtice ſince, as to thoſe particulars, I am not able to determine.

9. *THE PRINCES ISLAND*, (*Inſula Principis* in the *Latine*) ſo called, for that the *Revenues* of it were alotted to the Prince of *Portugal*; is ſituate in three Degrees of the Northern *Latitude*. The Countrey very fruitful for the bigneſs of it; but not much obſervable: except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clerehagen*, Anno 1598. abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended, as is fit for a *Princes* Iſland, by a *Meſſe* of *Chaplains*, *viz.* 1. the Iſles of S. *Matthew*, 2. S. *Croſſe*, 3. S. *Paul*, and 4. S. *Conception*: and waited on by *ſeven* ſervants (ſo many Iſlands near *Cape Vero*) all in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbacene*. But becauſe the former four yield no matter of *Hiſtory*, and theſe laſt ſeven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having ſaid thus much of them, to have ſaid enough.

10. South-weſt hereof, but on the other ſide of the Line, lieth the Iſle of *Annobon*, (*Inſula Annaboni* as the *Latines* call it.) So named, becauſe diſcovered upon *New-years-day*. Inhabited, and of very good fiſhing all along the Coaſts of it; but that fiſhing made unſafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venemous and hurtful Creatures, which are ſaid to be about the ſhores in great abundance.

11. The *GORGADES*, or Iſles of *CAPE VERD*.

11. THe *GORGADES*, or Iſlands of *Cape Verd* (*Inſulæ Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are nine in number; called by the laſt name, becauſe ſituate over againſt *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negroes*. Their names 1. S. *Anthony*, 2. S. *Vincent*, 3. *Buena-viſta*, 4. S. *Lucies*, 5. *Inſula Salis*, the Iſle of *Salt*, 6. *Del Fogo*, or the Iſle of *Fire*, 7. S. *Nicholas*, 8. *Maggio*, or *Majo*, 9. S. *Jago*. Some add to theſe a tenth, called *Brava*. Diſcovered all in the year 1440. by a *Geneoſe* called *Antonio de Noli*, imployed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry* Duke of *Viſco*, one of the younger ſons of King *John* of *Portugal*, the firſt of that name. Of the moſt little to be ſaid. The principal, and indeed the onely ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, S. *Jago*, 1. *Majo*, is of moſt repute for a *Lake* of two leagues long; the waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2. *Del. Fogo*, is called from the Flakes of fire which it ſends forth uſually; and fell ſo thick upon the ſhip of Sir *Antony Sherley* when he took the Iſland, An. 1596. that one might have writ his name in the aſhes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger, 3. The principal of all S. *Jago*, yet but ſeven miles long; Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleaſant Valleys, and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Riblera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; ſituate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and ſacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, in the year 1585. and after by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, An. 1596.

The name of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almoſt forgotten. Given to thoſe Iſlands, as ſuppoſed (but I cannot ſee upon what grounds) to be the ſeat of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation, or dwelling place of *Meduſa*, and her two fair ſiſters. This *Meduſa* ſaid, or rather fabled by the Poets, to have been a Woman of great beauty; Who either for ſuffering her body to be abuſed by *Neptune*, in one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her ſelf before *Pallas*, had by the ſaid Goddeſs, her hair turned into *Snakes*; and this property annexed unto them, that whoſoever looked on her, ſhould be turned into *ſtones*: which quality is retained after ſhe was ſlain, and beheaded by *Perſeus*. Thus and far more fabulouſly the Poets. The Hiſtorians (for as ſome think, *omnis fabula fundatur in hiſtoria*) relate, how this *Meduſa* was indeed a Lady of ſuch exceeding beauty, that all men that ſaw her, were amazed: and of ſuch a wiſe and ſubtile brain, that for that cauſe onely men attributed unto her a *Serpents* head. She abounding in wealth, and by *piracy* moleſting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Grecians*, under the leading of *Perſeus*; who in a ſingle combat ſlew her. *Perſeus* when he plucked off her helmet, admiring that beauty which he had deſtroyed; cut off her head, and carried it into *Greece*: where the people beyond meaſure wondred at the rare compoſiture of her face, and the exceeding beauty of her hair; and are therefore ſaid to have by her head been metamorphoſed into ſtones. *Pauſanias* in his *Corinthiacks* ſo reports the ſtory.

12. *The CANARIES.*

THe *CANARIES* are in number ſeven, ſituate over againſt the Coaſt of *Libya Interior*; ſo called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and other of the Ancient Writers they were called *Inſulæ Fortunatæ*, the fortunate Iſlands: and amongſt them of greateſt note, for being made the fixed place of the firſt *Meridian*; removed ſince to S. *Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But thoſe Antients knew but ſix of them by name, and in the naming of theſe ſix do not well agree. By *Pliny*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are ſaid to be 1. *Ombrio*, 2. *Junonia Major*, 3. *Junonia Minor*,

Minor. 4. *Capraria*. 5. *Nivaria*, and 6. *Canaria*. By *Ptolomy* thus reckoned. 1. *Aproſitus*. 2. *Hera* (or *Junonia*) 3. *Pluitania*. 4. *Caſperia*. 5. *Canaria*, and 6. *Pincuria*. Where we may note alſo to our purpoſe, that though theſe Authours diſagree in all the reſt of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Tranſlatour unto *Ptolomies Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one: which ſheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canarie* Iſlands unto all the reſt. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their fruitfulneſs, and other excellencies; in which reſpects, ſeveral Countreys, in thoſe times had the name of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1. *Canarie*. 2. *Palma*. 3. *Tenariffe*. 4. *Gomero*. 5. *Ferro*. 6. *Lanſerotte*, and 7. *Fuerte Ventura*.

1. CANARIA, or *Canaria Magna*, becauſe the biggeſt of the Cluſter, is ſaid to be 90 miles in compaſs, and to contain 9000 perſons: Plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, *Sugar-Canes*, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which, and of their Cheeſe, and the ſkins of Beaſts they raiſe great profit: but from nothing more than from their Woad (whereof they have very great abundance) uſed by the Clothier for the well colouring of his Cloath. From hence and from the other of theſe Iſlands which bear this name, come the fine ſinging Birds called *Canary-birds*; and ſo do alſo thoſe rich Wines, (the fruit of the *Rheniſh* Grape tranſplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A ſort of Wine, if not ſophiſticated and abuſed, which is ſaid to fume leſs into the head, pleaſe the *Palat* more, and better help the natural weakneſs of a cold ſtomack (if moderately and diſcreetly uſed) than any other Wines whatſoever. Brought hence in ſuch abundance to ſupply our luxury, that no leſs than 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yearly into *England* and the *Netherlands* onely.

2. PALMA, one of the leaſt in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in Wine and Sugars, abundantly well ſtored with Cattel, and great plenty of Cheeſe; and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spaniſh* Fleets, as they paſs to *Braſil*, and *Peru*. This Iſland together with *Canary*, and *Tenariffe*, make up the Biſhoprick of the *Canaries*. One of the Biſhops whereof was that *Melchior Canus* a *Dominican* Frier; whoſe works now extant in defence of the Church of *Rome*, ſhew him to have been a moderate and learned man, and Maſter of a perfect *Ciceronian* ſtile. The reſidue of the Iſlands are of the Dioceſe of *Madera*.

3. TENARIFFE, ſomewhat leſs than the *Grand Canarie*, but of the ſame fertility and condition with it, is moſt remarkable for a mountain of ſo great an height, that it may be ſeen 90 leagues at Sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 miles high, others 15 leagues, and ſome advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. With truth enough moſt of our *Travellers* and *Geographers* hold it to be the higheſt in the whole world. The Form, *Pyramidal*, in ſhape agreeing to theſe Prodigies of Art and Wonder, the *Ægyptian Pyramides*. The top whereof ending in a ſharp point, called the *Pike of Tenariffe*, is ſaid to be ſeldom without ſnow; and therefore probably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*.

4. HIERRO, or FERRI *inſula*, ſo called from the *Iron Mines* therein, is by ſome thought to be the *Pluitalia*, by others the *Aproſitus* of *Ptolomy*; and ſome again more probably, the *Ombrio* of *Pliny*, if this and *Ptolomies Pluitalia* be not one and the ſame, as for my part I think they be. And it might poſſibly have thoſe names in the *Greek* and *Latine*, becauſe it hath in it no freſh waters but what they do receive in ſhowres, and preſerve in *Ciſterns*: it being added by late Writers (which the ancients knew not) that theſe ſhowres do dayly fall upon them from the *Leaves* of a Tree, which alwayes covered with a Cloud doth diſtil theſe waters; preſerved in a large *Ciſtern* underneath the Tree, for the uſe of Man and Beaſt throughout the Iſland.

5. GOMERA, now as *civil* and well *cultivated* as any of the reſt, was the moſt barbarous of all when firſt diſcovered: it being here and here onely, the ordinary ſign and evidence of their *Hoſpitality*, to let their friends lie with their wives, and receive theirs in teſtimony of *reciprocal* kindneſs: for which cauſe here as in ſome places of the *Indies*, the ſiſters ſon did uſe accuſtomably to inherit.

6. LANSAROTE the firſt of theſe Iſlands which was made ſubject to the Crown of *Caſtile*, diſcovered by ſome adventurous *Biſcains*, An. 1393. by whom ſpoyled and pillaged, and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality, brought away Priſoners into *Spain*. On this diſcovery the Kings of *Caſtile* challenged a propriety in all theſe Iſlands; of which more anon. In this of *Lanſarote* there was an Epiſcopal See erected by Pope *Martin* the 5th. removed unto the Iſle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*.

7. FUERTE-VENTURA, of the ſame nature with the reſt, ſuppoſed to be the *Capraria* of *Pliny*, and the *Caſperia* of *Ptolomy*; but not elſe obſervable. Near unto theſe, but not within the name and notion of the *Fortunate*, or *Canary* Iſles, are certain others of leſs note, that is to ſay. 1. *Gratioſa*. 2. S. *Clara*. 3. *Roca*. 4. *Lobos*. 5. *Alegranco*; and 6. *Infierno*, ſmall and of no accompt, nor yielding any matter of obſervation.

The knowledge of theſe Iſlands being loſt with the *Roman* Empire, they lay concealed and undiſcovered till the year 1330. or thereabouts, when an *Engliſh*, or as ſome ſay, a *French* ſhip, diſtreſſed by tempeſt, did in that misfortune fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the reign of King *Alphonſo* the fourth, *Lewis de Ordo* was deſigned for the conqueſt of them. Who being repulſed at *Gomera*, Anno 1334. gave the enterprize over, though on this ground the *Portugals* build their firſt claim unto theſe Iſlands. But the news ſpreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the ſixt thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, ſon of *Alphonſo de la Cerda* the right Heir of *Caſtile*, by the old name of the *Fortunate Iſlands*; and to aſſiſt him in the conqueſt, cauſed Levies of Souldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy*. Which coming to the ears of the *Engliſh* Ambaſſadours in the Popes Court, they feared that ſome tranſport had been made of the *Britiſh* Iſlands (than which they thought that none could better deſerve the name of the *Fortunate Iſlands*) and in all haſte diſpatched a Poſt to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the danger. The people at the time of this firſt diſcovery, were ſo rude and ignorant, that they did eat their fleſh raw for want of fire; and tilled, or rather turned up the earth with the horns of Oxen, for want of Ploughs, or Tools of Iron; their Beards they ſhaved with a ſharp flint, and committed the care of their Children to the nurſing of Goats. To kill a beaſt was conceived to be the baſeſt Office that could be poſſibly put upon them, and therefore commonly impoſed on Priſoners and condemned perſons; who being thus made the common *Slaughtermen*, were to live ſeparate from the reſt. Their Government by Kings, in each Iſland one: whom at their deaths, they ſit up naked in a Cave, propped againſt the wall with a ſtaff in his hand, and a veſſel of Milk faſt by him, the better to enable him for his journey to the other world; and leaving him in the Grave with theſe ſolemn words, *Depart in peace, O thou bleſſed Soul.* The like Funeral they beſtowed alſo on the chief of their *Nobles*. Yet was not the Government in thoſe times ſo purely *Regal*, but that they had a Common Councel (as it were) out of all the Iſlands, conſiſting of 130 perſons: who did not only direct in *Civil* matters, but in Sacred alſo, preſcribing to the people both their Faith and Worſhip; and for their pains were priviledged with the firſt nights lodging with every Bride, which the Husband was to offer to ſome one of them.

But to return unto the Story, nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerde*, in purſuance of the Popes Donation, it hapned in the year 1393. that ſome Adventurers of *Biſcay*, ſetting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to ſeek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongſt theſe Iſlands. And having pillaged *Lanſarote* as before was ſaid, and obſerved the number, greatneſs, and ſituation of all the reſt; returned into *Spain*, with great ſtore of Wax, Hides, and other commodities, with which thoſe Iſlands did abound: extremely welcome to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Caſtile*, and did intend from that time forwards to poſſeſs himſelf of them. By *Catharine* the Dowager of this King *Henry*, during the minority of *John* the 2d. the Conqueſt of them was committed to *John* of *Betancourt*, an adventurous *French-man*, (conditioned he ſhould hold them under the ſoveraignty of the Crown of *Caſtile*) by whom four of the Iſlands were ſubdued, though he himſelf periſhed in the action, *An.* 1417. Young *Betancourt* the ſon, not able to ſubdue *Canary*, to which moſt of the Iſlanders had retired; fortified himſelf as well as he could in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*, and took unto himſelf the title of King: which he left not long after to one *Menault*; in whoſe time the Iſlands under his command received the Goſpel, and had a See Epiſcopal in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*. But this new King making money by the ſale of his ſubjects, (as well of the new *Chriſtians*, as the old *Idolaters*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Caſtile*; and *Pedro Barva de Campos* with three ſhips of war is ſent againſt him: with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Caſtile*, he ſold his intereſs in theſe Iſlands to one *Fernando Peres* a Knight of *Sevil*, who by the wealth and power of that City made good his purchaſe, and left it unto his Succeſſors. But we muſt know that the poſterity of this *Peres* enjoyed the four leſſer Iſlands onely; *Canaria* it ſelf, *Tenariffe*, and the Iſle of *Palmes*, being under the command of their own Kings. And ſo continued till the reign of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, who in the year 1483. under the conduct of *Alphonſo* of *Muxica*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two noble Captains, became maſter of them; and tranſlated the Epiſcopal See from *Lanſarote* to the *Great Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim theſe Iſlands in right of the firſt diſcovery, yet the poſſeſſion hath gone always with the Crown of *Caſtile*. Divided at the preſent into two Eſtates, (but the one ſubordinate to the other) *Gomera*, *Lanſarote*, and *Hierra*, being in the hands of ſome private Subjects, thoſe which belong unto the Crown, being *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuerte-Ventura*, are ſaid to yield yearly to the King 50000 *Ducats*; the Seat of Juſtice being fixed in the Iſle of *Canaria*, unto which all the reſt reſort as they have occaſion.

13. *MADERA*, & 14. *HOLY PORT*.

13. *MADERA*, the greateſt Iſland of the *Atlantick*, is ſituate in the Latitude of 32. over againſt the Cape of *Cantin* in *Morocco*; in compaſs 140 miles, ſome adde 20 more. So called of the wilderneſs of Trees there growing, when firſt diſcovered; the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latines* call *Materia*, and we *Engliſh* Timber: with which the Iſle was ſo overgrown, that the beſt way to cleer it and make it habitable, was by conſuming them with fire; which raged ſo horribly for the time, that the people imployed in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refreſh themſelves. But the *Husbandry* was well beſtowed; the *Aſhes* making ſo good *compoſt* to enrich the ſoil, (as burning the Turf of barren land, and ploughing the Aſhes of it, on ſome grounds with us) that at the firſt it yielded *ſixty-fold* increaſe. And though the firſt vertue of that experiment be long ſince decayed, yet ſtill it yieldeth *thirty-fold* in moſt places of it; fruitful withal of a kind of Plant uſed in dying Clothes, which is hence called *Mader*; and of *Sugar Canes* in ſuch a wonderful manner, that for a time the fifths of the *Sugars* herein made amounted yearly to 60000 *Arnobes*; now not half ſo much. The Iſle wonderfully fruitful alſo of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choiceſt Wines; the Slips whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more grapes than leaves, and Cluſters of two, three, and four ſpans long. The Hills well ſtored with Goats, the Plains with numerous Herds of Cattel; the Woods with Peacocks, Thruſhes, Pigeons: theſe laſt ſo ignorant of the injury which Man might do them, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would ſuffer themſelves to be taken up; but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

The whole Iſland in all parts well watered, having beſides many pleaſant Springs, eight handſome *Riverets*, wherewith the Earth refreſh'd and moiſtned, yields the ſweeter Herbage; which otherwiſe by reaſon of the heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be ſo nouriſhing. The chief City of it hath the name of *Fouchial*, the See of an Archbiſhop, and the Seat of Juſtice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Junonis*, or *Antolala*, as many learned men conceive, and again forgotten; it was of later times diſcovered by one *Machan*, an *Engliſhman*, who was caſt upon it by a Tempeſt, *An.* 1344. who burying there his wife, or ſome other woman which he had in his company, writ on her tomb his name, and coming thither, with the cauſe thereof; which gave the *Portugals* occaſion, to look further after it. Deſolate, and unpeopled at the firſt diſcovery, now exceeding populous: and of no ſmall advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which firſt united, *An.* 1420. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* before mentioned.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI*, or the Iſle of *HOLY-PORT*, is diſtant from *Madera* about 40 miles; neighbouring the Coaſts of *Mauritania Tingitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Ptolomy*. So called, becauſe diſcovered by ſome *Portugal*-Mariners (by the direction and encouragement of the ſaid P. *Henry*) on *All-hallows* day, *An.* 1428. Deſolate and unhabited at the firſt diſcovery, but now very well peopled. In compaſs about 15 miles; well ſtored with Corn and Fruits, great ſhoals of Fiſh upon their ſhores, plenty enough of Beeves and Goats: but ſuch abundance of Coneys (bred of one *Doe Coney* brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no leſſe peſtered with them in theſe later times, than the *Baleares* were of old; inſomuch that they were out of hope to withſtand the miſchief, or repair the *damages* ſuſtained by them. A little Iſland not far off, breedeth nothing elſe. The chief Town of it *Porto-Santo*, or *Holy-Port*, ſeated on a convenient Rode, but a ſorry Haven; was taken by Sir *Amias Preſton*, in our wars with *Spain*, An. 1596. but being ſacked and ſpoyled, was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was ſaid, and reckoned for the moſt remote *Colony* which the *Carthaginians* or *Phœnicians* had in the Weſtern Ocean; beyond which they conceived the Sea to be unnavigable (proved otherwiſe by *Hanno's* voyage) choaked with mud and weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (*Æthiopum populos alit ultima Cerne*) by *Feſtus Rufus*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

15. *THE HESPERIDES.*

15. THe *HESPERIDES*, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are ſaid to be two in number, ſituate in the *Atlantick* Seas, but we find not where. Much memorized and chanted by the Antient Poets, for giving a ſafe and pleaſant habitation to the daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the name of *Heſperides* alſo;) the curious Gardens by them planted, and the *Golden Apples* of it which were kept by a Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Hiſtorians* remove theſe Gardens out of the Sea, into the main Land of *Africk*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already ſpoken of. Which notwithſtanding it is granted that there were antiently ſome Iſlands in the *Atlantick* Ocean, noted by this name, and, ſaid to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord: and therefore probably the ſame which *Plutarch* in the Life of *Sertorius* calleth *Inſula Atlantica*, and deſcribes them thus. “Αἱ δύο μὲν εἰσὶ, λεπτῷ παντάπασι “πορθμῷ διακρινόμεναι, &c. They are (ſaith he) two Iſlands parted by a narrow *Streit* of the Sea, diſtant “from the main land of *Africk* 10000 furlongs (which in our accompt cometh to 1250 miles) cal-“led, alſo the Iſles of *Bleſſed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Iſlands*. They have rain there very ſeldom, but a “fine ſweet Dew, which makes the Earth exceeding fruitful both for tillage and planting fruits, which “ſometimes grow without any care or labour of the husband-man; ſufficient by their plenty and ſweet-“neſs to maintain the people, much given to eaſe, and hardly troubling themſelves with any buſineſs. “The Air for the moſt part very temperate, never extreme in any changes of the ſeaſon; the rigor of the “Northern, and Eaſtern winds, being by ſo long a paſſage thither very much abated; as on the other “ſide the Weſtern and South-Eaſtern winds do much refreſh it with ſuch Miſts, as they bring from the “Sea, to the great comfort of the people. A place ſo generally ſweet, that the Barbarous people in it “have a conſtant and approved opinion, that theſe ſhould be the *Elyſian Fields*, the ſeats of the bleſſed “ſouls departed, deſcribed by *Homer*: with the report whereof *Sertorius* was ſo highly taken, that he “intended to have given over the purſuit of the *Civil* wars, and there to ſpend the reſt of his dayes in “peace and happineſs; which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, men accuſtomed unto ſpoil and rapine, had “not took him off. So far and to this purpoſe *Plutarch*. But what theſe Iſlands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great diſtance from the Coaſt of *Africk*, they cannot be the *Fortunate Iſlands* ſpoken of before) I cannot eaſily determine: unleſs we ſhould conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Iſlands of *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola*, on the Coaſts of *America*; to the Story and *Chorographie* whereof we are now to haſten.

And ſo much for the *Iſles* of *Africk*.

A Table of the LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

	Long.	*Latit.*
A		
Agadez	39. 20.	25. 30.
Alexandria	67. 0.	31. 20.
Algiers	33. 0.	35. 20.
Amara	63. 30.	5. 0. *A.*
Angola	45. 10.	7. 0. *A.*
Aſna	66. 30.	25.
Azamor	18. 30.	32. 40.
Arquin	11. 10.	20. 20.
Adrimetum		
B		
Babel Mandel	80. 01.	12. 50.
Bagamedrum	62. 36.	6. 0.
Barca	62.	
Benin	41. 0.	7. 40.
Bona	37. 10.	35. 40.
Borno	44. 30.	17. 10.
Brava	74. 30.	0. 30.
Budomel	10. 20.	14. 30.
Bugia	34. 30.	35. 10.
Babylon Egypt		
C		
Caire	67. 30.	30. 0.
Cyrene	53. 30.	32. 0.
Canaria	9. 30.	27. 20.
Carthage		
Circa		
D		
Damiata	69. 0.	32. 40.
Damut	51. 0.	11. 20.
Dancali	65. 0.	17. 30.
Dara	66. 50.	12. 0.
Docono	78. 20.	12. 30.
F		
Fatigar	74. 0.	2. 40. *A.*
Feſſe	21. 50.	32. 50.
Fierro	6. 20.	26. 30.
Forte ventura	11. 0.	28. 0.
Fouchial	8. 10.	31. 30.
G		
Gamba	64. 49.	17. 30. *A.*
Guoga	55. 0.	22. 0.
Goyami	57. 0.	14. 0. *A.*
Gualata	13. 30.	23. 30.
Guber	29. 20.	10. 40.
H		
Holy Port	10. 0.	32. 30.
L		
Lanſerot	11. 40.	29. 30.
M		
Madagaſcar	77. 0.	19. 0. *A.*
Midazo	78. 0.	5. 10.
Malta	46. 0.	35. 30.
Manicongo	47. 20.	7. 0. *A.*
Morocco	20. 0.	30. 30.
Melinde	71. 20.	3. 20. *A.*
Meroe	68. 20.	16. 15.
Mezzata	47. 40.	30. 40.
Mina	28. 50.	6. 20.
Mombaza	72. 0.	4. 50. *A.*
Moſambique	70. 20.	14. 40.
Memphis		
N		
Nubia	60. 0.	17. 40.
O		
Oran	29. 40.	35. 0.
P		
Palma	6. 20.	28. 0.
Paſcar	59. 40.	1. 20. *A.*
Q		
Quiloa	69. 50.	8. 56.
R		
Rameſes	68. 30.	30. 30.
S		
Sabaim	68. 20.	8. 40.
Septa	22. 0.	35. 40.
Suachem	72. 40.	18. 40.
Sus	27. 30.	
Salla		
T		
Tangier	30. 50.	35. 0.
Teſethne	16. 10.	30. 0.
Tegnit	27. 40.	28. 10.
Teient	17. 0.	30. 30.
Tenariffe	8. 10.	27. 30.
Theſſet	20. 0.	29. 10.
Teleſine	29. 0.	34. 10.
Tigremahon	65. 0.	6. 0.
Tombuto	20. 50.	15. 0.
Tunis	40. 0.	36. 0.
Thebes in *Egypt*		
V		
Vella	77. 0.	13. 0.
Utica		
Z		
Zacatera	88. 0.	12. 50.
Zegreg	36. 40.	14. 40.
Zeila	80. 0.	11. 20.
Zigec	45. 50.	40. 50.
Zimbaus	59. 0	25. 20. *A.*

A. Is the Mark of a Southern Latitude.

The End of the Firſt Part of the Fourth Book.

COSMOGRAPHIE,
The Fourth Book:

PART II.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORIE
OF
AMERICA,
And all the Principal Kingdoms, Provinces,
Seas, and Iſlands of it.

By PETER HEYLIN.

Matth. 24. 14.
Et prædicabitur hoc Evangelium regni, in univerſo orbe, in teſtimonium omnibus Gentibus;
& tunc veniet conſummatio.

S. *Hieronym.* in locum.
Signum Dominici adventus, eſt Evangelium in toto Orbe prædicari, ut nullus ſit excuſabilis:
quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.

LONDON,
Printed for PHILLIP CHETWIND.

COSMOGRAPHIE,

LIB. IV. PART II.

CONTEINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORIE
OF
AMERICA,
And all the Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles of it.

Of AMERICA.

AMERICA, the fourth and laſt part of the World, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and the *Vergivian* Seas, by which parted from *Europe*, and *Africa*; which Seas, the Mariners call *Mare del Nort*; on the Weſt, with the *Pacifique Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Aſia*; on the South, with ſome part of *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, from which ſeparated by a long, but narrow *Streight*, called the *Streights* of *Magellan*; the North bounds of it hitherto not ſo well diſcovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Iſland*, or *Continent*.

It is called by ſome, and that moſt aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: *New*, for the late Diſcovery; and *World*, for the vaſt Greatneſs of it. The moſt uſual, and yet ſomewhat the more improper, name is that of *America*; becauſe *Americus Veſpucius*, an Adventurous *Florentine*, diſcovered a great part of the Continent of it. But ſince the firſt light he had to find out thoſe parts came from the directions and example of *Columbus*, who firſt led the way; and that *Sebaſtian Cabot* touched at many places, which *Americus Veſpucius* never ſaw; it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebaſtiana*, or *Cabotia*. The moſt improper name of all, and yet not much leſs uſed than that of *America*, is, the *Weſt-Indies*: *Weſt*, in regard of the Weſtern ſituation of it, from theſe parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as miſtook for ſome part of *India*, at the firſt Diſcovery, or elſe becauſe the Sea-men uſed to call all Countreys, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on *Conjectural* Preſumptions, than Demonſtrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Diſcoveries. Their Reaſons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the antient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of theſe parts of the World, which are oppoſite to us. But unto this it may be anſwered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongſt the Antients was by Suppoſition, at the beſt by Demonſtration only, and not in Fact; or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2*ly*. It is ſaid that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, diſcovered a great Iſland in the Weſtern Ocean, and after a long Voyage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voyage, (which ſome conceive to be *Hanno* himſelf) informs us that he ſailed not Weſtwards, but more towards the South: and therefore this *great Iſland*, whatſoever it was, (whether *Madera*, or ſome one of the *Fortunate* Iſlands, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3*ly*. It is alleged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* ſpeaks of a great Iſland of the *Atlantick* Ocean, *Libyam* and *Africam adæquans* (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Libya*, and *Africk* properly ſo called: which he confeſſeth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore poſſibly never extant but in ſome mens fancies. *4ly.* That *Ariſtotle* in the Book *de Mundo* (if that Book be his) ſpeaks of an Iſland very fruitfull, and full of navigable Rivers; diſcovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be Planted upon pain of Death. Which Iſland being affirmed by that Author, to be *Multorum dierum itinere à* Gadibus *remota*, hath made ſome men conceive it to be this *America*, or ſome of the great Iſlands of it. As if it might not be as well one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*; or ſome other of the Iſlands in the Road of *Hannos* Voyage. Certain I am, that one of the beſt friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly loſe ſuch an opportunity of enabling their performances in *Navigation*, (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no ſuch place as is there deſcribed by that Author, whoſoever he were. *5ly.* Some have produced theſe Verſes of *Seneca*, to inferr a knowledge of this Country amongſt the antients, *viz.*

Venient annis ſecula ſeris,
Quibus Oceanus *vincula rerum*
Laxet, & ingens pateat tellus,
Novoſque Typhis *detegat Orbes,*
Nec ſit Terris ultima Thule.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

In the laſt dayes an age ſhall come,
Wherein the all-devouring Fome
Shall loſe its former bounds, and ſhew
Another Continent *to view.*
New-worlds, *which Night doth now conceal,*
A ſecond Typhis *ſhall reveal;*
And frozen Thule *ſhall no more*
Be of the Earth the furtheſt Shore.

But this Argument can bring no neceſſary, nor ſo much as a probable inference, of any ſuch Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* ſhewing as well the continual Dangers, as the poſſible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were more Lands diſcovered, than thoſe formerly known. *6ly.* Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is ſaid in the Holy Scrptures to have ſent for Gold. But *Ezion-Geber*, which is there alſo ſaid to be the Station where his Navy lay, was ſituate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had ſent this way, his Shipping muſt have lain at *Joppa*, or ſome other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence ſet forwards through the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and ſo plainly Weſt-ward. *7ly.* Finally, in the Hiſtory of *Wales* writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the Son of *Owen Gwinedth* Prince of *Wales*, of purpoſe to decline ingaging in a *Civil War* raiſed in that Eſtate, in the year 1170. put himſelf to Sea; and after a long courſe of Navigation, came into this Country, where after he had left his men, and fortified ſome places of advantage in it, he returned home for more ſupplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the reſt of that Nation. To which ſome add, that here is ſtill ſome ſmattering of the *Welch*, or *Britiſh* Tongue, to be found amongſt them; as that a Bird with a white Head is called *Pengwin*, and the like: in which regard, ſome ſorry Stateſmen went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the Soveraignty of theſe Countreys; Others more wiſe, diſſwaded from that vain Ambition, conſidering that *Welch-men*, as well as others, might be caſt upon thoſe parts by force of Tempeſt, and eaſily implant ſome few words of their own among the people there inhabiting. And though I needs muſt ſay for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they ſay, than thoſe which look for this New World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Iſlands of *Ariſtotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Diſcoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet am I not ſo far convinced of the truth thereof, the uſe of the Mariners *Compaſs* being not ſo antient (without which ſuch a voyage could not be performed;) but that I may conclude with more ſatisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer ſaid once of *Britain*, then newly Conquered by the *Romans*; Britannia *qualis ſit, qualeſque progeneret, mox certiora & magis explorata dicentur; quippe jam diu clauſam aperit ecce Principum maximus* (he means *Claudius Cæſar*) *nec indomitarum modo ſed & incognitarum ante ſe Gentium Victor*: ſo may we ſay of *America*, on theſe late diſcoveries. What kind of Country it is, and what men it produceth, we do, and ſhall know more certainly than in former times; ſince thoſe puiſſant Kings of *Spain* have laid open all the parts thereof, inhabited not only by unvanquiſhed, but even unknown Nations. For God remembring the promiſe of his Son, that his Goſpel before the end of the World ſhould be preached to all Nations, ſtirred up one *Chriſtopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Nervy*, in the Signeury of *Genoa*, to be the inſtrument for finding out thoſe parts of the World, to which the ſound of the Goſpel had not yet arrived. Who being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not perſwade himſelf (the motion of the Sun conſidered;) but that there was another *World* to which that glorious Planet did impart both his light and heat, when he went from us. This *World* he purpoſed to ſeek after, and opening his Deſign to the State of *Genoa*, An. 1486. was by them rejected. On this repulſe, he ſent his brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*; who in his way hapned unfortunately into the hands of Pirats, by whom detained a long while, but at laſt inlarged. As ſoon as he was ſet at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England* ; where his Propoſition found ſuch a cheerfull entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Chriſtopher Columbus* was ſent for to come thither alſo. But God had otherwiſe diſpoſed of his rich purchaſe. For *Chriſtopher*, not knowing of his brothers impriſonment, not hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his ſervice to have been neglected ; and thereupon made his deſires known at the Court of *Caſtile* : where after many delayes, and ſix years attendance on the buſineſs, hee was at laſt furniſhed with three ſhips only, and thoſe not for Conqueſt, but Diſcovery. With this ſmall ſtrength he ſailed on the Main Ocean more than ſixty dayes, yet could ſee no Land, ſo that the diſcontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny ; and partly out of ſcorn to be under the Command of a Stranger, partly deſirous to return, would not goe a foot forwards. Juſt at that time it hapned, that *Columbus* did diſcern the Clouds to carry a cleerer colour, than they did before ; and probably conceiving that this clearneſs proceeded from ſome nigh habitable place, reſtrained the time of their expectation within the compaſs of three dayes ; paſſing his word to return again, if they did not ſee the Land within that time. Toward the end of the third day, one of the Company called *Rodrigo de Triane* (he deſerves to have his name Recorded, being no otherwiſe rewarded for ſuch joyfull news) deſcried fire ; an evident Argument that they drew near unto ſome ſhore. The place diſcovered was an Iſland on the Coaſt of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guahanani* ; by *Columbus* St. *Saviours* ; now counted one of the *Lucaios*. Landing his men, and cauſing a Tree to be cut down, hee made a Croſs thereof ; which he erected near the place, where he came on Land ; and by that Ceremony took poſſeſſion of this NEVV WORLD, for the Kings of *Spain*, *October* 11. *Anno* 1492. Afterwards he diſcovered, and took poſſeſſion of *Hiſpaniola* ; and with much Treaſure, and content, returned towards *Spain* : Preferred for this good ſervice by the Kings themſelves, firſt to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms, *for Caſtile and Leon, Columbus hath gotten a* NEVV WORLD ; and in concluſion unto the title of Duke *De la Vega*, in the Iſle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Diſcovery being ſent to Pope *Alexander* the 6. by the Kings of *Caſtile*, he very liberally beſtowed upon them all thoſe Countreys, which they already had, or ſhould afterwards diſcover in the Weſtern world ; adviſing them to uſe their diligence and indeavours for converting thoſe people to the Faith, which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furniſhed with 18. ſhips for more Diſcoveries, and his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governour of the Countries diſcovered by him, they took along with them one *Bayl*, a Benedictine Monk, as the Popes Vicar General, accompanied with the Learned Clerks, which were to be aſſiſtants to him in the converting of that people to the Chriſtian Faith. In this ſecond voyage he diſcovered the Iſlands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the Town of *Iſabella* (afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo*) in *Hiſpaniola* ; from whence for ſome ſeverities uſed againſt the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was ſent Priſoner into *Caſtile*, but very honourably entertained, and abſolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third voyage, in which he diſcovered the Countries of *Paria*, and *Camana*, on the firm Land, with the Iſlands of *Cubagna*, and *Margarita*, with many other Iſlands, Capes, and Provinces, which ſhall be touched upon particularly in their ſeveral places. In the year 1500. he began his fourth and laſt voyage, in the courſe whereof, coming to *Hiſpaniola*, he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicholas de Ovendo*, the then Governour of it ; after which ſcowring along the Sea Coaſts, as far as *Nombre de Trias*, but adding little to the fortune of his former diſcoveries, he returned back to *Cuba*, and *Jaimaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about ſix years after (that is to ſay, *An.* 1506.) he departed this life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tomb, bald in it ſelf, and otherwiſe exceeding ſhort of ſo great a merit, of which I muſt tell you by the way, that the *Philip*, whom the *Verſifier* (I do not ſay the Poet) called *Philippus Hiſpanus*, ſhould rather have been called *Philippus Auſtriagus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip* of *Auſtria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Joan*, Sole Daughter and Heir of the Kings of *Spain*, and after the death of *Iſabella* ſucceeded in the Realm of *Caſtile*, or elſe the Epitaph muſt be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the 2. Son of *Charls* the fifth, who was not born untill the year 1527, and came not to the Crown above 20 years after. Now for this Epitaph, ſuch as it is, it is this that followeth:

Chriſtophorus *genuit quem* Genoa *Clara* Columbus,
(Numine perculſus quo neſcio) primus in Altum
Deſcendens Pelagus, ſolem verſuſque cadentem
Directo curſu, noſtro hactenus addita Mundo
Litora detexi, Hiſpano potitura Philippo :
Audenda hinc aliis plura, & majora relinquents.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words :

I Chriſtopher Columbus, *whom the Land*
Of Genoa *firſt brought forth, firſt took in hand*
I know not by what deity incited
To ſcour the Weſterne Seas, and was delighted
To ſeek for Countreys never known before.
Crown'd with ſucceſs, I firſt deſcri'd the ſhore
Of the New World, *then deſtin'd to ſuſtain*
The future yoke of Philip *Lord of* Spain.
And yet I greater matters left behind
For men of more means and a braver mind.

Dying he left two Sons behind him, of which the youngeſt called *Ferdinand*, died unmarried, the eldeſt called *Diego*, ſucceeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedome of *Vega*, and maried *Mary* of *Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*; but having (as it ſeemeth) no iſſue by her, he ſpent the greateſt part of his eſtate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, ſpoken of before, which he furniſhed with 12000 Volumes, and endowed with a liberal revenue to maintain the ſame. But though his Family be extinct, yet his Fame ſhall live, renowned to all poſterities, as the firſt diſcoverer of this new world, and conſequently the greateſt and moſt Fortunate advancer of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy, though in his life time ſo maligned by moſt part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla* being ſent into thoſe parts for redreſs of grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him Priſoner into *Spain*. Nor did they only ſtick after his death, to deprive him of the honour of this *Diſcovery* (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniards*, whoſe *Cards* and deſcriptions hee had ſeen) but in his life would often ſay that it was a matter of no ſuch difficulty to have found theſe Countreys; and that if he had not done it when he did, ſome body elſe might have done it for him. Whoſe peeviſhneſs he confuted by this modeſt artifice, deſiring ſome of them, who inſolently enough had contended with him touching this Diſcovery, to make an Egge ſtand firmly upon one of its ends. Which when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruiſing one end of it, made it ſtand upright; letting them ſee without any further reprehenſion, how eaſie it was to do that thing which we ſee another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was ſeconded by *Americus Veſpuſius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, implyed therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, An. 1501. on a deſign of finding out a nearer way to the *Moluccaes*, than by the *Cape of good Hope*, who though he paſſed not further than the Cape of St. *Auguſtines* in *Braſil*, without ſo much as having a ſight of the great River *de la Plata*, which waſheth the South-Ports of that Countrey; yet from him (to the great injury and neglect of the firſt Diſcoverer) the *Continent*, or main Land of this Countrey, hath the name of *America*; by which ſtill known, and moſt commonly called. To him ſucceeded *John Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the Father of *Sebaſtian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*: who diſcovered all the North-Eaſt Coaſts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *New-found Land*, and *Terra di Laborador* in the North, cauſing the *American Roytelets* to turn *Homagers* to that King and the Crown of *England*. Followed herein by divers private *Adventurers* and undertakers, out of all parts of *Europe*, bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellanus* was the firſt that compaſſed the whole World, and found the South paſſage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake*, and *Cavendiſh*, of *England*. *Frobiſher*, and *Davies* attempted a Diſcovery of the North-weſt paſſage; *Willoughy* and *Burroughs* of the North-eaſt. So that according to that elegant ſaying of the Learned *Verulam*, in his *Advancement* of *Learning*, this great building the World, *had never thorow-lights made in it till theſe our dayes*: by which as almoſt all parts of *Learning*, ſo in eſpecial this of *Navigation*, and by conſequence of *Coſmography* alſo, hath obtained an incredible proficiency in theſe latter times.

For in the infancy and firſt Ages of the World, (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort, but not unprofitable digreſſion) men lived at home, neither intent upon any forein Merchandiſe, not inquiſitive after the lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours: or in the language of the Poet,

Nondum cæſa ſuis peregrinum ut viſeret Orbem,
Montibus, in liquidas Pinus *deſcenderat undas.*

The Pine *left not the Hils on which it ſtood,*
To ſeek ſtrange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had inſtructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preſervation of himſelf and his children from the general *Deluge*; the Poſterity, which deſcended from him, had thereby a pattern for the making of Ships and other Veſſels (perfected in more length of time) whereby to make the waters paſſable, and maintain a neceſſary intercourſe betwixt Nation and Nation. 'Tis true, the Heathen Writers which knew not *Noah*, attribute the invention of ſhipping to ſundry men, according to ſuch informations or traditions, as they had received: *Strabo*, to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus*, to *Neptune*, who was therefore called the God of the Seas; and *Tibullus*, to the people of *Tyre*, a Town indeed of great Wealth and Traffick, and the moſt famous *Empory* of the elder times; ſaying

Prima ratem ventis credere docta Tyrus.

The Tyrians *firſt the Art did find*
To make Ships travel with the wind.

And queſtionleſs the *Tyrians*, and the reſt of the *Phœnicians*, enjoying a large Sea-coaſt, and many ſafe and capacious Havens, being in theſe times moſt ſtrong at Sea, and making ſo many fortunate Navigations into moſt parts of the then known World, might give the Poet ſome good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phœnicians*, the *Egyptians* (their next neighbours) might derive the Art of *Navigation*; though being an ingenious people, they did add much to it. For whereas the firſt Veſſels were either made of the body of ſome great Tree, made hollow by the Art of man; or elſe of divers boards faſhioned into a Boat, and covered with the skins of Beaſts; (ſuch as are ſtill in uſe amongſt theſe *Americans*:) the *Phœnicians* brought them firſt into ſtrength, and form; but the *Egyptians* added Decks unto them. By *Danaus* King of *Egypt* when he fled from his brother *Rameſes*, the uſe of ſhipping was firſt brought amongſt the *Grecians*: who before that time knew no other way of croſſing their narrow Seas, but on Beams or Rafters tied to one another. *Nave primus ab Egypto* Danaus *advenit*, *ante enim* Ratibus *navigabatur*, as it is in *Plinie*: where we may ſee the true and genuine difference betwixt *Ratis*, and *Navis*; though now both uſed indifferently for all ſorts of ſhipping. Amongſt the *Grecians*, thoſe of *Crete* were the ableſt Sea men; which gave occaſion to *Ariſtotle* to call *Crete* the Lady of the Sea; and to *Strabo* to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following times, the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were moſt conſiderable in this kind; and by the benefit of their ſhipping much diſtreſſed the *Romans*. But ſo it hapned (as all things do and muſt concur to Gods publick purpoſes in the alteration of Eſtates) that a Tempeſt ſeparating a *Quinqueremis* or Gallie of five banks of Oars, from the reſt of the *Carthaginian* Fleet; caſt it on the ſhore of *Italy*: by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Ship-wrights, ſoon became Maſters of the Sea. That *France*, and *Spain* were taught the uſe of ſhipping by the *Greeks*, and *Phœnicians*, is a thing paſt queſtioning: *Marſeilles* in the one being a *Phocean*, and *Gades* in the other a *Tyrian* Colony. As for the *Belgians*, and the *Britains*, it is probable that they firſt learnt it of the *Romans* (though formerly they had ſome way to tranſport themſelves from one ſhore to the other.) For *Cæſar* telleth us of the *Belgæ*, *Ad eos Mercatores minimè commeant*, that they were not at all viſited by Forein Merchants. And the ſame *Cæſar* found the Seas betwixt *France*, and *Britain*, ſo ill furniſhed with Veſſels; that he was fain to make Ships to tranſport his Army: *Singulari Militum ſtudio circiter ſexcentas & duodetriginta Naves invenit*, as his own words are.

Having thus brought Navigation to the greateſt height which it had in thoſe dayes; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Veſſels, and the *Tackle* unto them belonging, That the *Phœnicians* firſt invented open Veſſels, and the *Egyptians* ſhips with Decks, hath been ſaid before; and unto them alſo is referred the Invention of Gallies, with two banks of Oars upon a ſide; which kind of Veſſels grew ſo large in the courſe of time, that *Ptolomy Philopater* is ſaid to have made a Gally of fifty banks. Great Ships of burden, called *Ciræra*, we ow to the *Cypriots*; Cock-boats, Skiffs, (*Scaphas*) to the *Illyrians*, or *Liburnians*; Brigantines, (*Celoces*) to the *Rhodians*; and Frigots or light Barks, (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phaſelis*, and *Pamphyli* (which we may render *Men of War*) were the invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phaſelis*, a Town of *Lycia*, in *Aſia Minor*. As for *Tackle*, the *Bœotians* invented the Oare; *Dedalus*, and his Son *Icarus*, the Maſts and Sails: Which gave occaſion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete*, they made wings to their bodies; and that *Icarus* ſoaring too high, melted the Wax which faſtned his Wings unto his ſhoulders, and thereby periſhed; the truth being, that preſuming too much on this new invention, he ran himſelf upon a Rock, and was caſt away. For *Hippagines*, Veſſels for the tranſporting of Horſe, we are indebted to the *Salaminians*; for grapling hooks, to *Anarcharſis*; for Anchors, to the *Tuſcans*; and for the Rudder, Helm, or Art of Steering, to *Typhis* the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*; who noting that a Kite, when ſhe flew, guided her whole body by her Tail, effected that in the devices of Art, which he had obſerved in the works of Nature. By theſe helps ſome great Voyages were performed in the elder times; the greateſt, thoſe of *Jaſon*, *Ulyſſes*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of theſe, *Jaſon* and his companions, ſayled in the ſhip called *Argo*, through the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulyſſes*, through the *Mediterranean* only; ſmall gullets, if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander*'s journey ſo famouſed, and accounted then ſo hazardous, was but ſayling down the River *Indus*, and four hundred furlongs into the *Ocean*. And for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt*, it is very apparent, that they went with great leiſure, and crawled cloſe by the ſhore ſide: otherwiſe it had been impoſſible to have conſumed three whole years in going from *Ezion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the uſual time of theſe voyages, as appeareth in 1 *King.* 10. 22. After the fall of the *Roman* Monarchy, the moſt potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean*, were the *Genoſe*, and *Venetians*; in the Ocean the *Engliſh*, and the *Hanſ-towns*; neither of which ever attempted any great diſcoveries.

But in the year 1300. one *Flavio* of *Malphi* in the Realm of *Naples*, found out the *Compaſs*, or *Pixis Nautica*, conſiſting of 8 winds only, the four principal, and four collateral: And not long after, the people of *Bruges*, and *Antwerp*, perfected that excellent invention; adding 24 other ſubordinate winds or points. By means of this excellent Inſtrument, and withall by the good ſucceſs of *Columbus*, the *Portugals*, Eaſtwards; the *Spaniards*, Weſtward; and the *Engliſh*, Northwards; have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions; which had been utterly impoſſible to have been performed, and had been fooliſhly undertaken, when that help was wanting. I know there hath been much pains taken by ſome learned men, to prove the uſe of the *Mariners Compaſs* to be far more antient, than is now commonly pretended. *Fuller*, a very learned and induſtrious man, but better skilled in the *Hebrew* tongue, than the *Philologie* of the *Greeks*, and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* (the moſt famous Sea-men of old times): but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the cauſe. Nor is it poſſible that ſuch an excellent invention, ſo beneficial to the common good of all mankind, ſhould have been forgotten and diſcontinued, for the ſpace of more than 2000 years; if ever the *Tyrians*, and *Phœnicians* had been Maſters of it: who could not poſſibly conceal it (had they been ſo minded) from the *Common-Mariners*, or they not have communicated it for gain, or deſire of glory, to the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, under whom ſucceſſively they lived. As little moment do I find in ſome other Arguments, as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the Antient writers, or the *Verſoria* of *Plautus*, ſhould be by them intended of the *Mariners Compaſs*. For plainly the *Verſoria* of *Plautus*, is no other than that piece of *Tackle*, which our Mariners now call the *Bolin*; by which they uſe to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every wind. And ſo much doth appear by the Poet himſelf, in the Comedie which he cals *Mercator* ; ſaying; *Hinc ventus nunc ſecundus eſt, cape modo Verſoriam.* So called from *Verſo*, to turn often ; or from *Verſum* the firſt *Supine* of *Verto* : whence *Velum vertere* is a common phraſe amongſt the *Latines*, uſed for the ſhifting of the Sail as the wind doth vary. As for the *Load-ſtone*, it is called indeed *Heraclius Lapis*, Ἡρακλεῖος λίθος by the *Greeks* : not becauſe *Hercules Tyrius*, whom the *Phœnicians* invocated when they were at Sea, had firſt found out the vertue of it, as our *Fuller* thinketh ; but becauſe firſt found neer *Heraclea*, a City of *Lydia*, Κέκληται δ' οὕτως ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείας τῆς ἐν Λυδίᾳ πόλεως, ſaith *Heſychius* the old *Grammarian*. Called for the ſame reaſon *Magnes*, by the writers both *Greek* and *Latine* ; becauſe firſt found in the Territory of *Magneſia*, a City of *Lydia* alſo, whereof *Heraclea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us for the *Greeks*, Ἡράκλειαν λίθον τινὲς τὴν Μαγνησίαν ἀπέδωσαν, διὰ τὸ τὴν Ἡράκλειαν τῆς Μαγνησίας εἶναι : Heraclium *Lapidem quidam* Magneſiam *reddiderunt : quia* Heraclea *pars eſt Magneſiæ*. Called for the very ſame reaſon *Lydius Lapis* alſo, but by them known only as a *Touch ſtone*. Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latines*.

> *Quem* Magneta *vocant patrio de nomine* Graii,
> Magnetum *quia ſit patriis de finibus ortus.*
>
> *Which Stone the* Greeks *do* Magnes *name,*
> *Becauſe it from* Magneſia *came.*

But I have rambled further than I did intend, drawn by the vertue of the *Load-ſtone* too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America* ; where the *Spaniards* at their firſt Arrival found the people without all manner of Apparel, nought skilled in *Agriculture*, making their Bread either of a Plant called *Maize*, or a kind of Root called *Jucca* : a Root wherein is a venemous liquor, not inferior to the moſt deadly poiſons ; but having firſt ſqueezed out this juyce, and after dryed and prepared the Root, they made their bread of it. They worſhipped Deviliſh Spirits, whom they called *Zemes* ; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of *Cotton wool*, like our *Childrens Babies* : to which they did great reverence, as ſuppoſing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them ; and to blind them the more, the *Devil* would cauſe theſe *Puppets* to ſeem to move, and to make a noiſe. They ſtood alſo in ſo great fear of them, that they durſt not diſpleaſe them : for if their wills were not fulfilled, the *Devil* ſtrait executed vengeance upon ſome of their Children ; ſo holding this infatuated people in perpetual thraldome. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not ſeen, that they thought the *Chriſtians* to be immortal : wondring exceedingly at the Sails, Maſts, and Tacklings of their Ships ; themſelves knowing no Ships or other Veſſels, but huge Troughs made of ſome great bodied Tree. But this opinion of the *Chriſtians* immortality (in the ſenſe they meant it) did not long continue : for having taken ſome of them, they held their heads under the water, till they had quite choaked them ; by which they knew them to be mortal like other men. Quite deſtitute of all good Learning, they reckoned their time by a confuſed obſervation of the courſe of the Moon : and ſtrangely admired to ſee the *Spaniards* know the health and affairs of one another, onely by reading of a Letter. Of a plain and honeſt nature, for the moſt part, they were found to be ; Loving and kind in their entertainments, and apt to do good Offices both private and publick, according to their underſtandings : encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond ſome certain Hills (but they knew not where) thoſe which lived honeſtly and juſtly, or offered up their lives in defence of their Countrey, ſhould find a place of everlaſting peace and happineſs. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls immortality, and of ſome *Ubi* for the future reception of it, that we find ſome tract or other of it in moſt barbarous Nations. And as for *Gold* and *Silver*, which the new-come *Chriſtians* ſo adored, they eſteemed them no otherwiſe than as droſs : though many times they adorned themſelves therewith for the colours ſake ; as they did alſo with ſhels, feathers, and the like fine *Gew-gawes*.

Of complexion, moſt of theſe *Americans* were reaſonably fair and clear, little inclining unto blackneſs : notwithſtanding that a great part of this Countrey lieth under the ſame parallel with *Æthiopia*, *Libya*, and the Land of *Negroes*. So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as ſome imagine) the cauſe of that blackneſs ; though accidently it may turn the skin into ſuch a colour : as we ſee in many Countrey-Laſſes, even in colder *Climates*, whoſe faces are continually expoſed to the Sun and Weather. Others more wiſe in their own conceits (but in no bodies elſe) will have the natural Seed of the *Africans* to be black of colour ; contrary both to ſenſe and reaſon, Experience and true natural Philoſophy being both againſt it. And ſome will have this *Blackneſs* laid as a curſe on *Cham*, (from whoſe poſterity the *African* Nations do derive themſelves) becauſe, forſooth, he had carnal knowledge of his wife when they were in the *Ark* : a fancie as ridiculous, as the other falſe. So that we muſt refer it wholly to Gods ſecret pleaſure ; though poſſibly enough the Curſe of God on *Cham* and on his poſterity (though for ſome cauſe unknown to us) hath an influence on it.

Touching the Original of this people, it is moſt probable that they deſcended from the *Tartars* ; for which there are ſome arguments of Eſpecial weight. For firſt, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*, as having no remainder of the Arts, Learning, and Civilities of it. And ſecondly, that they came not from *Africk*, in regard they have no *black men* amongſt them, except ſome few which dwell on the Sea-coaſts over againſt *Guinea* in *Africk* ; from whence they are ſuppoſed, to have been brought hither by ſome Tempeſt, or other. Thirdly, that they have not the leaſt token, or ſhew of the arts and induſtry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that ſide of *Aſia*. The *affirmative* arguments prove firſt, that they came from *Aſia* ; next in particular from *Tartarie*. That they came out of *Aſia*, is more than manifeſt, in that the Weſt-ſide of the Country towards *Aſia*, is far more populous, than the Eaſt towards *Europe*: of which there can be no other reaſon aſſigned, than that theſe parts were firſt Inhabited, and that from hence the reſt was Peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this people, and the particularities thereof, their Incivility, and Barbarous qualities, tell us that they are moſt like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the Weſt-ſide of *America*, if it be not Continent with *Tartary*, is yet diſjoyned by a very ſmall Streight, as may be perceived in all our *Maps* and *Cards*, as alſo in the deſcription of theſe Countreys: ſo that there is into theſe Countreys a very quick and eaſie paſſage. And fourthly, the people of *Quivira*, which of all the Provinces of *America* is the neareſt unto *Tartary*, are ſaid to follow in their whole courſe of their life, the Seaſons and beſt Paſturing of their Cattel, juſt like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*: an evident argument of their Original deſcent.

But from what Root ſoever they did firſt deſcend, certain it is that they had ſetled here many ages ſince, and over-ſpread all the parts and quarters of this ſpacious Continent; there being no place, which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found Deſolate, or Waſte, and without Inhabitants. But their numbers much diminiſhed ſince theſe late Diſcoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themſelves moſt Inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked people: killing them up like Sheep appointed to the ſlaughter, or otherwiſe conſuming them in their Mines and works of Drudgery. And had not *Charls* the fifth ordained with moſt *Chriſtian* prudence, that the *Natives* ſhould not be compelled to work in the *Mines* againſt their wills; but that the *Spaniards* ſhould provide themſelves of *Slaves* elſewhere; the *Natives*, in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of *Chriſtianity* and the Goſpel. For ſo exceeding Barbarous and Bloody were they at their firſt coming thither, that *Haithney*, a Nobleman amongſt them, being perſwaded to imbrace the *Chriſtian* faith, demanded firſt what he ſhould get by being of that Religion; and was anſwered, that he ſhould get *Heaven* and the joyes thereof: Then would he know, what place was deſtinate to ſuch as died *Unbaptized*; and was anſwered, that they went to *Hell*, and the torments of it. Finally, aſking unto which of theſe two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told they went to *Heaven*; he renounced his *Baptiſm*: proteſting that he would rather go to Hell with the Unbaptized, *than to live in* Heaven *with ſo Cruel a people*. The reſt were driven unto the *Font*, like ſo many Horſes to the watering place; and received into the Church of *Chriſt* without any inſtruction: inſomuch that one old *Frier* (as himſelf confeſſed to *Charls* the fifth) had Chriſtned 700000. of them, and another of that rank 300000. never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the *Chriſtian* faith, or points of Religious converſation, (except it were to be obedient to their Paſtors and Teachers.) Yet here I muſt confeſs, (for I am loath to defraud any man of his due) there hath been made a great improvement of *Chriſtianity*: the number of *Chriſtians* in this Country, being thought by ſome Learned man of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all thoſe of the *Latin* Churches in *Europe*. And though perhaps conſtrained at firſt unto it as a *new Religion*, and of a ſtricter Rule than that which before they had; yet by long time and education, it is now grown more plauſible and familiar to them. The Church hereof governed by the four Arch-biſhops of 1. *Mexico*. 2. *Lima*. 3. S. *Foy*, and 4. *Dominico*; who have under them 25. Suffragan Biſhops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this New World came firſt acquainted with the Old, *Iſabel* Queen of *Caſtile*, would not permit any of her Huſband *Ferdinando*'s Subjects to be planted here, viz. *Arragonians*, or *Valentians*; but licenſed the *Caſtilians*, *Andaluſians*, *Biſcains*, and the reſt of her own people only, envying the Wealth hereof to the reſt. When ſhe was dead, *Ferdinando* licenſed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding only the *Portugals*. But ſo rich a Prize could not ſo warily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *Engliſh*, and now of late the *Low-Country Men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniards* Harveſt; who well hoped to have had a *Monopoly* of ſo wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any *Rival* or Competitor the Poſſeſſion, (I cannot ſay the love) of a Country ſo abundantly fruitful. For though ſome of the Kings of *Spain*, have been uſed to ſay, that they loved the *Eaſt-Indies* as their *Miſtreſs* only, in whoſe favour they could patiently enough endure a *Rival*; but eſteemed *America* as their *Wife*, in whoſe love they could not brook a Competitor, without foul diſhonour: yet by his leave (or without it rather) ſome of his Neighbours have made bold with his *Wife*, in theſe later times; though in the affection of his *Miſtreſs* they have greater intereſt. But theſe attempts of the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, have been an occaſion of great ſtrength to the whole Country. For whereas in our firſt Wars with *Spain*, our private *Adventures* found the Sea-coaſts almoſt naked of Defence, and thereupon made many a rich and proſperous Voyage to theſe parts: the *Spaniards* upon ſight of that weakneſs and diſadvantage, ſo ſtrongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, we were not able to accompliſh that with great and publick Forces, which before had been performed by ſmall and private. Which cauſed our *Captains* and Adventurers, failing oftentimes in the *Continent*, to make up their Market on the Seas, in the return of the *Spaniſh* Navies, as they yet do.

This *New World* is very plentifull of Spices, Fruits, and ſuch Creatures which the *Old World* never knew; ſtocked with ſuch ſtore of Kine or Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* ſince the firſt Diſcovery) that the *Spaniards* kill thouſands of them yearly, for their Tallow and Hides only. Bleſt with ſuch abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines, more Gold than Earth: a Metal which the *Americans* not regarding, greedily exchanged for *Hammers*, Knives, Axes, and the like tools of Iron; for before, they were wont to make their *Canoes* or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of fire. Other particularities ſhall be ſpecified in the particular Deſcriptions of the ſeveral Countries. I ſhall now only take a brief view of ſuch of their Beaſts and Fowls, as either this *Old World* did not know, or knew not in ſuch ſhapes and qualities, as are there preſented. Their *Lions* leſs in greatneſs

neſs than thoſe in *Africa*, are ſaid to be of Colour gray, and ſo nimble as to climb Trees; their *Dogs* ſnowted like *Foxes*, but deprived of that property which the *Logicians* call *Proprium quarto modo*, for they could not *Bark*; their *Hogs* with talons ſharp as *Razors*, and the Navil of their bodies on the Ridge of their Backs; their *Stags*, and Deer, without *Horns*; their *Sheep* (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable, as with us, for Food and Raiment, but accuſtomed to the carrying of Burdens, ſome of 150. pound weight. Amongſt ſuch ſtrange *Beaſts* as this *Old World* knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whoſe name I find not) whoſe fore-part reſembleth a *Fox*, the hinder part an *Ape*, except the Feet only, which are like a Mans: beneath her Belly a Receptacle like a Purſe, where ſhe keeps her young, till they be able to ſhift for themſelves; never coming thence but when they ſuck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a Barbed Horſe, ſeeming to be Armed all over, and that with Artificial (rather than natural) Plates, which do ſhut and open. The *Vicugne* reſembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the *Fleece* whereof they make Rugs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the *Belly* find the *Bezoar*, ſometimes two or three, a ſoveraign *Antidote* againſt Poiſons and Venemous Diſeaſes. A kind of *Hare* reſembling a *Want* in his Feet, and a *Cat* in his Tail; under whoſe Chin nature hath faſtned a little Bag, which ſhe hath alſo taught him to uſe as a *Store houſe*: for in this, having filled his Belly, he preſerveth the remnant of his *Proviſion*. The *Pigritia*, a little Beaſt (not ſo named for nought) which in fourteen daies cannot go ſo far as a man may eaſily throw a Stone. Then for their *Birds*, they have them there in ſuch variety of Colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly repreſent in Feathers whatſoever they ſee drawn with Pencils: inſomuch as a *Figure* of S. *Francis* made of *Feathers*, was Preſented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whoſe Eye could not diſcern them to be natural Colours, but thought them Pencil-work, till he made tryal with his fingers. One called the *Tominejo*, of all Colours, ſo little that it ſeems no bigger than a Bee or Butter-flie; the Mouth thereof no bigger than the eye of a Needle; yet yielding not to the *Nightingale* in the ſweetneſs of its Note and Muſick: the Bird and Neſt put into Gold Scales, not weighing above 24. Grains, yet beautified with *Feathers* of ſo many Colours, eſpecially in the Neck and Breſt, that the *Indians* make great uſe of them in their *Feather-pictures*. Others as big, as theſe are little. The *Condores* of ſuch ſtrength and greatneſs, that they will fall upon a *Sheep* or Calf, open it, and eat it. Like Miracles of Nature have they in their *Fruits* and *Plants*, more proper unto *Natural Hiſtory* than to this Diſcourſe: and many *Medicinal* Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the conſideration of the Learned *Herbaliſts*. I am too *much a Fool to be a Phyſician*, and therefore will not deal in ſuch things as are out of my Element. Yet ſomewhat of this kind we may chance to meet with, in the Deſcription and Survey of the ſeveral Provinces, into which this *New World* is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninſulas*; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana*, from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, ſuppoſed (for the moſt Northern parts of it are not yet diſcovered) to contain 13000. miles in compaſs. That towards the South, hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Country of *Peru*; the Circumnavigation whereof is reckoned at 17000. *Italian* miles. The *Iſthmus* which joyneth theſe two together, very long but narrow; in ſome places not above twelve miles from Sea to Sea; in many not above ſeventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the Streight of *Darien*, from a River of that name in *Peruana*, near unto the *Iſthmus*: and is ſo ſmall a Ligament for ſo great a Body, that ſome have thought of turning theſe two *Peninſulas* into perfect Iſlands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Council of *Spain*, the cutting of a navigable Chanel through this ſmall *Iſthmus*, ſo to ſhorten their common Voyages to *China*, and the *Moluccoes*. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly becauſe if he ſhould imploy the *Americans* in this work, he ſhould loſe thoſe few of them, which his people have ſuffered to live; partly becauſe the *Slaves* which they yearly buy out of *Africa*, do but ſuffice for the Mines and Sugar-houſes; but principally, leſt the paſſage by the *Cape of good hope*, being left, thoſe Seas might become a Receptacle of *Pirats*. Which doubtleſs was a very Prudent and Politick conſideration. Many times I have read of the like attempts begun, but never of any finiſhed. *Seſoſtris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius* of *Perſia*, one of the *Ptolomies*, and a late Capricious *Portugal* had the like Plot, to make a paſſage from the *Red-Sea*, to the *Mediterranean*: ſo had *Cæſar*, *Caligula*, and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Iſthmus*. Another of the ſame nature, had *Charls* the *Great*, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danow*; the like had *Lucius Verus*, to joyn the *Rhene*, and the *Roſne*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicanor* alſo, King of *Syria*, intended to have made a Chanel from the *Caſpian* to the *Euxine* Sea; an infinite project. But neither he nor any of the reſt could finiſh theſe works: God, it ſeemeth, being not pleaſed at ſuch proud and haughty enterpriſes. And yet perhaps the want of Treaſure hath not been the leaſt cauſe, why the like projects have not proceeded: beſides the dreadfull noyſes and apparitions, which (as we have already ſaid) continually affrighted the Work-men.

Not leſs obſervable than this great but unſucceſsful deſign of cutting a paſſage thorow this *Iſthmus*, from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but alike ſucceſsleſs Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous *Engliſh-man*, in a paſſage over it by Land. This man being one of the Followers of Sir *Francis Drake*, arriving in a ſmall Bark with 70. of his Companions, a little above *Nombre di Deos*, the chiefeſt Town of all the *Iſthmus*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with Boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entred the South Sea, went to the Iſle of *Pearls*, where he ſtayed ten daies; intercepted in two *Spaniſh* Ships (who feared no Enemy on that ſide) 60000. pound weight of Gold, 200000. pound weight in bars of Silver, and returned in ſafety to the Land. And though by the mutiny of ſome of his own Company, he neither returned into his Country, nor unto his Ship, yet is it an *Adventure* not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other; and by the *Spaniſh* Writers recorded with much admiration.

But to return to the Diviſion of this Country, and the two main parts thereof which this *Streight* uniteth; *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninſula*, may be moſt properly divided into the Continent, and Iſlands: the *Continent* again into the ſeveral Provinces of, 1 *Eſtotiland*, 2 *Nova Francia*, 3 *Virginia*, 4 *Florida*, 5 *California*, 6 *Nova Gallicia*, 7 *Nova Hiſpania*, and 8 *Guatimala*; each of them branched into many ſub-diviſions, and leſſer Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninſula*, taking in ſome part of the *Iſthmus*, as before we did, hath on the *Continent* the Provinces of, 1 *Caſtella Aurea*, 2 *Nova Granado*, 3 *Peru*, 4 *Chile*, 5 *Paragnay*, 6 *Braſil*, 7 *Guiana*, and 8 *Paria*, with their ſeveral members, parts, and particular Regions. The Iſlands which belong to both diſperſed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mare del Zur*; where there is not any one of note, but 1. Thoſe called *Los Ladrones*, and 2 the Iſlands of *Solomon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mare del Norte*, reduced unto 3 the *Caribes*, 4 *Porto Rico*, 5 *Hiſpaniola*, 6 *Cuba*, and 7 *Jamaica*. In the ſurvey of which particulars we will begin with thoſe which lie on the North-eaſt of this great Continent, not poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*: and paſſing thorow the Plantations of ſuch other Nations, as have any footing in the ſame, come by degrees to the Eſtates of the King of *Spain*; that we may lay them altogether without interruption: beginning with *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern part, and that which (as ſome ſay) was diſcovered firſt.

OF ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend thoſe Regions of *Mexicana*, which lie moſt towards the North, and Eaſt; hath on the Eaſt, the main Ocean; on the South, *Canida*, or *Nova Francia*; on the Weſt, ſome unknown Tract not yet diſcovered; and on the North, a Bay, or Inlet of the Sea, called *Hudſons Streights*, and called ſo from *Henry Hudſon* an *Engliſh-man*, who by this way endeavoured to find out a more commodious and quick paſſage to *Cathay* and *China*, than had been formerly diſcovered. It comprehends, 1. *Eſtotiland* ſpecially ſo called, 2. *Terra Corterialis*, 3. *New-found-land*, and 4. the Iſles of *Bacalaos*.

1. And firſt *Eſtotiland*, ſpecially ſo called, is the moſt Northern Region on the Eaſt-ſide of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudſons Streights* on the North; and *Terra Corterialis*, on the South. The ſoyl ſufficiently enriched with natural endowments, ſaid to have in it Mines of Gold and other Metals; but I doubt it lieth too much North for Gold, whatſoever it may do for Braſs and Iron. The people rude and void of goodneſs; naked, notwithſtanding the extreme cold of the Country; not having either the wit, or the care to cover their bodies with the skins of thoſe Beaſts, which they kill by hunting; though their bellies teach them to keep life by the fleſh thereof. Said by the firſt *Diſcoverers* to ſow Corn, to make Beer, or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Groen-land*; as alſo to have many Cities and Caſtles, ſome Temples conſecrate to their Idols, where they firſt ſacrifized men, and after eat them. The Language which they ſpake, expreſſed in *Characters* of their own; but ſome knowledge of the *Latin* tongue there had been amongſt them, and *Latin* books in the Library of one of their Kings, underſtood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Country by the firſt *Diſcoverers*, who were certain *Fiſhermen* of *Freezland*, caſt by a Tempeſt on this Coaſt about the year 1350. Six of them only got on Land, where all died ſave one: who after a long wandring from one Princes Court to another, found means to return into his own Country: the King whereof called *Zichumi*, being a great *Adventurer* in the feats of Arms, prepared for the further Diſcovery and Conqueſt of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice*: who deſiring to ſee the faſhions of the World, furniſhed a Ship at their own charges, and paſſing the Streights of *Gilbraltar* held their courſe North-ward, with an intent to ſee *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by tempeſt on this Iland, *An.* 1380. they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly proſperous in a War againſt thoſe of *Norway*: who liked *Nicolo* ſo well, that he gave him a command in his Navy, and under his good conduct woon many Ilands, diſcovered *Groen-land*, and provided for the conqueſt of *Eſtotiland* alſo. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the buſineſs was purſued by his brother *Antonio*, the King in perſon making one in the undertaking: who liked the Country ſo well, being once poſſeſſed of it, that he built a City in it; and there determining to ſpend the reſt of his dayes, ſent back *Antonio* unto *Freezland*, with the moſt of his people.

This is the ſubſtance of the ſtory of the firſt Diſcovery, publiſhed long ſince by one *Franciſco Marcellino*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been conſidered of as they might have been, we had not ſo long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the World. But whether it were that their reports were eſteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Diſcovery; there was nothing done in purſuance of it: *Zichumi* never going back to his own Country, and *Freezland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite loſt again, till theſe later dayes. Said in the Letters of the *Zeni*, to be well ſtored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for their refreſhing: the Haven where they landed, to be called *Cape Trin*; the people to be of ſmall Stature, fearfull, and to hide themſelves in Caves, at the ſight of the *Freezlanders*: that there was a Mountain alwayes burning, or caſting ſmoak; together with a certain Spring, whence iſſued a water as black as Pitch; but no ſuch Cities, Forts, and Temples, as the *Fiſherman* ſpake of. The Country Weſt from *Freezland* 1000. miles.

To give you the face of it as it ſtands at the preſent, it is ſaid to be well cultivated, fruitfull of all neceſſaries for the life of man, and rich in metals, but extreme cold: watered with four Rivers, which riſing out of an high Mountain in the midſt of the Country, diſperſe themſelves over all parts of it. The people ſaid to be more ingenious, of better judgements, and more skilled in moſt *Mechanick* Arts, than the reſt of the *Americans* were at the firſt Diſcovery; which argueth ſome more civil people to have been formerly amongſt them. Their Garments of the skins of beaſts, or Sea-Calves; with which alſo they covered the out-ſide of their Boats, to keep out the water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whether the name of Cape *Trin* be ſtill remaining, I am not able to diſcover; this Country lying ſtill for the moſt part hidden in a *Northern Miſt*. All we can ſay, is, that ſome *Engliſh* names have been impoſed of late, on ſome Capes and Promontories, lying on the Northern ſhores hereof towards *Hudſons Streights*, by *Hudſon* and ſuch others of the *Engliſh* Nation who purſued that enterpriſe. Of which ſort are *Prince Henry's Foreland*, towards the Eaſt, almoſt at the entries of thoſe *Streights*: and then proceeding towards the Weſt, *Cape Charls*, *Kings Foreland*; and laſt of all, *Cape Wolſtenham*, at the end thereof, where theſe Streights open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudſons Bay*. But of theſe more particularly in another place; where we endeavour the Diſcovery of ſuch parts of the World as are yet *unknown*, and ſo within the compaſs of a *Terra incognita*.

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North, *Eſtotiland*; on the South, *Canada*, or *New-France*. So called from *Gaſper Corterialis*, who in the year 1500 left his name unto it. It is called alſo *Terra di Laborodoro*, both from the pains required of the Huſbandman, and the great recompence which it gives him: in the ſame ſenſe, as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples*, is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the *French*, who ſucceeded in the poſſeſſion hereof after the *Spaniard* had forſook it, it was called *New-Bretagne*; with reference to *Bretagne* in *France*, their own natural Countrey.

The people at the firſt coming of *Corterialis* were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, ſwift of foot, and very good *Archers*: their cloathing of Beaſts ſkins, their habitations *Caves*, or ſome ſorry Cottages; their Religion *Paganiſm*, or none; their directions, *Sooth-ſaying*. Not ſo forgetfull of the Law which Nature had planted in them, as not to know the neceſſary uſe of *marriage*; but extremely jealous. Better conditioned at the preſent than in former times, by their near neighbour-hood to the *French*, and commerce with *Foreiners*: affirmed to be very well diſpoſed, to feed moſt generally on fiſh, and to adorn themſelves with *Bracelets* of braſs, or ſilver. Their chief Towns, 1. *Breſt*. 2. *Sancta Maria*. 3. *Cabo Marzo*, of which little memorable.

The Countrey firſt diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, the ſon of *John Cabot* before mentioned: who in the year 1499. at the charges and encouragement of King *Henry* 7th. ſetting ſayl from *Briſtol*, firſt made the diſcovery of theſe parts, as far as to the *Latitude* of 67. and an half, (which brings *Eſtotiland* within the compaſs alſo of his diſcoveries.) The Land which he firſt ſaw, he called *Prima Veſta*; and an Iſland lying before it he called St. *Johns*, becauſe diſcovered on the day of St. *John Baptiſt*. They found upon the Countrey plenty of *white Bears*, Stags greater than ours, Scut-fiſhes of a yard long, and ſuch ſtore of *Cod-fiſh* (which the Inhabitants called *Baccalaos*) that their multitudes ſometimes ſtayed his ſhips: hence the occaſion of their name. Returning home, he found great preparations for a War in *Scotland*; ſo that nothing elſe was done in this Diſcovery by the *Engliſh* Nation. But three years after, *Gaſpar Corterialis* a *Portugueze*, ſetting ſayl from *Liſbon*, fell upon thoſe parts of *Cabots* Diſcoveries, which ſince bear his name: from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of *Italian* workmanſhip, left there moſt probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of: drowned in the Sea, or ſlain by the *Salvages* on the Land; as was his brother *Michael*, in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the *French* having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, caſt an eye upon it; who gave the name of *Breſt* to a Town hereof, (according to the name of a noted Port in *little Bretagne*:) but whether they ſetled any *Colony* in it, or only did reſort unto it in the way of trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the *Latins* call it) is a great Iſland, lying on the South of *Corterialis*; from which parted by a *Frith*, or Streight, called *Golfe des Chaſteaux*. So called from the late diſcovery of it, when diſcovered firſt, though it be ſome ſcores of years ago: as *Wickhams* College in *Oxford* hath the name of *new-College*, though ſounded divers ages paſt; becauſe it was the *neweſt* when that name was given.

The dimenſions of the Countrey I have no where met with. But for the quantity hereof, it is ſaid to be better inhabited in the North parts, than in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for habitation. Furniſhed upon the Sea-coaſts with abundance of Cod-fiſh, as alſo with Herrings, Salmons, Thornbacks, Smelts, Oyſters, and Muſcles with Pearls in them. Within the land a goodly Countrey, naturally beautified with Roſes, ſown with Peaſe, planted with ſtately Trees, and otherwiſe diverſified, both for pleaſure and profit: the Air hereof never very extreme, more temperate in the depth of Winter than with us in *England*, the brooks being never ſo frozen over, that the Ice is able to bear a Dog; and thoſe little froſts but ſeldom holding three nights together. The people of reaſonable ſtature, full-eyed, broad-faced, but beardleſs, their faces coloured with *Oker*; their Houſes, Poles ſet round meeting together in the top, and covered over with ſkins; an *hearth*, or fire-place in the midſt; their Boats of Bark, twenty foot long, and four in breadth, not weighing above 100 pound weight; either of which will carry four men, and is by them carried to all places of their Removes.

Places of moſt importance in it are the ſeveral *Havens* (of which it is conceived to have more, and more commodious, than any one Iſland of the world for the bigneſs of it:) not beautified with Towns, or buildings, but yielding very ſafe ſtations to the greateſt ſhips. The chief whereof 1. *Rennoſa*, or *Roigneuſe*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-Eaſt Angle of the Iſland; of much reſort for fiſhing, from ſeveral Countreys. 2. *Portus formoſus*, or *Fair-Haven*, three miles North of the other: capable of great ſhips, and bearing into the main Land above 40. miles. Situate in the *Latitude* of 40. and 40 minutes. 3. *Thornbay*, by the *Portugals* named *Enſeada Grande*. 4. *Trinity Bay* on the North of Cape St. *Francis*, by the *Portugals* called *Bahia de la Conception*: a large Bay, five miles broad in the narroweſt place; yet ſafe withall and of very good *Anchorage*. 5. *Bona Veſta*, the name of a Port and Promontory. 6. *White-Bay*, or *Bay-Blanche*, as the *French* call it, ſafe and capacious, on the North of the Promontory of St. *John*. Betwixt which and *Cape de Grat*, on the North-Eaſt Angle of the Iſland, is no Port of note. Then on the South-ſide of the Iſland, and the Weſt of *Cape de Raz*, is 7. *Port Treſpaſſez*. 8. *Port Preſenza*, and 9. *Port des Baſques* (or the *Biſcains* Haven;) and on the Weſt ſide, having doubled the *Cape de Raye*, in the South-weſt Angle of the Iſland, there is 10 St. *Georges Bay*: all of them ſafe, capacious, and of great reſort.

4. Before the Iſland, at the diſtance of 25. leagues from *Cape de Raye*, lyeth a long bank, or ridge of ground, extended in length many hundred leagues, in breadth 24. leagues where broadeſt, in other places but ſixteen: and all about it certain Iſlands, which *Cabot* by one common name called BACALAOS (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitudes of *Cod-fiſh* (by the Natives called *Bacalaos*) which ſwarmed hereabouts; ſo numerous, that they hindred the paſſage of his ſhips, as be-

as before was noted, and lay in ſuch ſhoals upon the Coaſts, that the Bears caught them with their claws and drew them on Land. The Government at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the moſt formal expreſſions of duty and reverence uſed to rub their Noſes, or ſtroke their Foreheads; which if the King obſerved, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had ſo adored him, he turned his head to his left ſhoulder, as a mark of favour.

The firſt Diſcoverers of this Countrey (but not known then to be an Iſland) were the two *Cabots*, *John*, and his Son *Sebaſtian*, imployed herein by *Henry* the 7th. 1497. as before was noted. The buſineſs being laid aſide at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot*, two of *Briſtol*: who taking a more perfect view of it than was took by the *Cabots*, aſcribed to themſelves the diſcovery of it, and animated King *Henry* the 8. unto the Enterprize: which was done *Anno* 1527. but with ill ſucceſs. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britons* of *France* had reſorted to it; and changed the names which by the *Engliſh* had been given to the Bayes and Promontories. But the *Engliſh* would not ſo relinquiſh their pretenſions to the *Premier Seiſin*. And therefore in the year 1583. Sir *Humfrey Gilbert* took poſſeſſion of it in the name of the Queen of *England*, interdicted all other Nations the uſe of fiſhing, and intended to have ſetled there an *Engliſh* Colony. But being wracked in his return, the ſending of the Colony was diſcontinued till the year 1608. when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Briſtol*, who moſt ſucceſſefully performed it: the Colony ſo proſpering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turneps, Coleworts, of their own ſowing; ſome probability of Metals, a certainty of *Sables*, *Musk*, and other precious Commodities, beſides their fiſhing; though that the great occaſion of their ſetling there. Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fiſh, all about the Coaſts, that ordinarily our men take 200. or 300. of them within four hours ſpace; which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*.

OF
CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North, with *Corterialis*; on the South, with *New-England*; on the Eaſt, with the Main Ocean; the Countries lying on the Weſt, either not yet diſcovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greateſt, not of this Province onely, but of all this *Peninſula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiſcovered parts of this Northern Tract; ſometimes inlarged into great Lakes, and preſently reduced to a narrower chanel, with many great winding and *Reaches* in it. Having emboſomed almoſt all the reſt of the Rivers of this Countrey, it emptieth it ſelf into the Great Bay of St. *Lawrence*, over againſt the Iſle of *Aſſumption*; being at the mouth forty Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom deep.

It is alſo called *Nova Francia* from the *French*, who following the tract of *Cabot*, and *Corterialis*, made a further Diſcovery of theſe parts, and planted ſeveral Colonies in them. The buſineſs firſt undertaken by *Jaques Cartier*, *Anno* 1534. received here gladly by the *Natives* with ſinging, dancing, and expreſſing much ſign of joy: purſued by *Monſieur Robarval*, ſent thither in the year 1542. by King *Francis* the firſt, not only to diſcover the Countrey, but to plant ſome parts of it, who built there a fair Fortreſs for his greater ſafety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their ſeveral times.

The nature of the ſoil, and people, we ſhall beſt diſcover in the ſeveral parts of it; each differing from one another, and ſo not eaſily conformed to a general *Character*. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole, 1 *Canada*, of which before, 1 *Pemtegoet* or *Norumbegue*, as ſome call it, of which more hereafter. 3 *Quinibeque* falling into the Ocean as the others do, 4 *Rio* S. *Johan*, ending its courſe in a large Bay called *Bay Francoiſe*, interpoſed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the reſt of this Countrey. 5 *Les trois Riviers*, which riſeth far North, and paſſing thorow two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*, 6 *Sagnenay*, of the ſame original Courſe, and fall. A River of ſo ſtrong a Current, that it ſuffereth not the Sea to flow up its Chanel; ſo deep, that in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards; and having received many leſſer ſtreams, looſeth it ſelf at laſt, where the other doth.

It containeth in it the ſeveral Regions of *Nova Francia*, ſpecially ſo called, 2 *Nova Scotia*, 3 *Norumbegue*, and 4 the *Iſles* adjoyning.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA* eſpecially ſo named, is ſituate on the South of *Corterialis*, and on the North of the great River *Canada*, towards the Eaſt; but on both ſides of it, in the Weſtern and more in land parts. The Countrey naturally full of Stags, Bears, Hares, *Marterns* and Foxes, whoſe fleſh the People did eat raw (till more civilized) having firſt dryed it either in the ſmoak or Sun, as they do their Fiſh. They have alſo ſtore of Conies, Fowle and Fiſh great plenty; one Fiſh more memorable than the reſt, which they call *Adothnel*, whoſe body and head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greateſt Jewels are their Chains of *Eſurgnie*; a ſhell-fiſh of the whiteſt colour, excellent for the ſtanching of blood: which they faſhion into Beads and Bracelets, and ſo wear, or ſell them. Not very plentifull of fruits, or fit for tillage; yet it breedeth ſome Corn, and of pulſe good plenty. The air more cold than in other Countries of like height, partly by reaſon of the greatneſs of the River, which being wholly of freſh water, and ſo large withall, chilleth the Air on both ſides of it; partly becauſe of the abundance of Ice, and thoſe Hills of Snow, which the North-wind paſſeth over in the way to this Countrey.

The people, when the *French* firſt diſcovered them, very rude and barbarous; few of them furniſhed with houſes, but removing from one place to another, as their food decayed; and carrying all their goods with them (a thing eaſily done) upon thoſe removes. Such as lived towards the Sea, or the greater Rivers, ſomewhat better houſed. For in the day time they fiſh in their *Boats*, which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them upſide down, ſleep under them. As ill apparrelled as houſed; for they went all naked, except a little piece of skin before their *Privities*. Some of them had their heads quite ſhaven, excepting one Buſh of hair on the top of the Crown; which they ſuffered to grow to the length of an Horſes tail, tyed up with Leather-ſtrings in a knot. Each man allowed his two or three Wives a piece; and they ſo conſtant to their Husband, that they never marry after his death, but keep themſelves continually in a *mourning habit*: a vizard as it were, made of greaſe and Coal-duſt, which they ſpread over all their bodies. The women labour more than the men, both in fiſhing and husbandry: Digging the ground inſtead of Ploughing, with certain pieces of wood, where they ſow their *Maiz* (a Plant of which they make their bread, in moſt parts of *America*.) *Idolaters* in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are moſt of them at this day; the *French* and others which have planted in theſe Northern parts, having added little more unto *Chriſtianity*, than by the Colonies they brought with them. Yet in the midſt of this darkneſs they ſaw ſo much light, as to believe that when they dyed they went immediately to the *Stars*; from thence conveyed to certain green and pleaſant fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain evidence that they believed the *immortality* of the ſoul, and that there was ſome place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1 *Hochelaga*, round in figure, compaſſed about with three

Courſe of timber Ramparts, one within the other ; ſharp at the top, about two Rods high, with one gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kind) with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50. great houſes, in the midſt of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their fire on. Situate far within the Land, about ſix or ſeven Leagues from the banks of the River *Canada* , in the moſt pleaſant part of the Countrey ; and therefore made the ſeat of their King, whom they highly reverenced, and carried him on their ſhoulders ſitting on a Carpet of skins. 2 *Stadac*, or *Stadacone*, and 3. *Quebecque*, which the *French* tall S. *Croix*, on the courſe of the ſame River alſo ; this laſt a Colony of the *French*. 4. *Tadouſac*, a ſafe but ſmall Haven, not capable of above 20. ſhips ; at the mouth of *Saguenay*. 5. *Franco-Roy*, a Caſtle built by *Monſieur Robarval*, when he came firſt into this Countrey. 7. S. *Lewis*, deſigned for a French Colony by *Monſieur de Champlain*, An. 1611. but never came to great effect : yet ſo much *Champlain* got by the undertaking, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Country (full of little Iſlands) in the Lands of the *Uroqueis*, inhabiting on the South of the River *Canada*, into which it emptieth it ſelf at the laſt.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA* containeth that part of the Countreys of *Canada* or *Nova Francia*, which the *French* call *Accadie*, or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninſula* or Demy-Iſland ;) with ſo much of the main-land as lieth between the River *Canada* and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoiſe*, from the River of S. *Croix* upon the Weſt, to the Iſle of *Aſſumption* on the Eaſt. So called by King *James*, in the Grant of theſe Countries to Sir *William Alexander*, after Lord *Secretary* of *Scotland*, and by King *Charls* for his approved fidelity moſt deſervedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters Patents of which Donation bear Date *Anno* 1621. What time the *French* having been outed of their holds here, by Sir *Sam. Argal* Governour of *Virginia* ; had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themſelves more into the North, and the higher parts of the courſe of that River. And in purſuance of this Grant, the ſaid Sir *William Alexander*, in the year 1622, ſent a Colonie hither ; and having procured a new Map to be made of the Countrey, cauſed the *Peninſula*, lying on this ſide of the *Bay Francoiſe*, to be called *Nova Caledonia* ; that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria* ; giving new names alſo unto moſt of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accompliſhment of which buſineſs, he obtained alſo a Patent for advancing a certain number of Perſons to the hereditary dignity of *Baronets*, or Knights of *Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly ; diſtinguiſhed from others by a Ribbin of *Orange tawney* : the money raiſed upon which Patent, was to be wholly imployed towards this Plantation. But being unable with thoſe helps (as certainly Plantations are of too great burden for a private perſon) or willing to imploy his money [illegible] more profit, he ſold *Port-Royal* to the *French* ; and after diſcontinued his endeavours in it.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Port-Royal*, in *Accade* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay-Francoiſe*, once made a Colonie of the *French* by *Monſieur de Monts*, An. 1604. continued with much difficulty till the year 1613. when deſtroyed by Sir *Samuel Argal* then Governour of the *Engliſh* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reaſon that the *Jeſuites*, whoſe neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to neſt there. Sold ſince again unto the *French*, as before is ſaid, by whom ſtill poſſeſſed. 2. S. *Lukes Bay*, by the *French* called *Port au Mouton*. 3. *Gaſpe*, a noted Port in *New-Alexandria*, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Aſſumption*. 4. *Gachepe*, on a fair Bay in the ſame Coaſt alſo.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the North-eaſt, *Nova Scotia* ; on the South-weſt, *Virginia*. The air is of a good temper, the ſoil fruitfull, and the people indifferently civil ; all of them, as well men as women, Painting their faces. The men are much affected to hunting, and therefore never give their daughters to any, unleſs he be well skilled in that game alſo. The *Women* are here very chaſt, and ſo well love their Husbands, that if at any time they chance to be ſlain, the Widows will neither marry, nor eat fleſh, till the death of their Husbands be revenged. They both dance much ; and for more nimbleneſs, ſometimes ſtark naked. The Sea upon the Coaſts ſo ſhallow and ſo full of ſands, that it is very ill ſailing all along theſe ſhores. The Towns, or Habitations rather, ſo differently called by the *French* , *Portugals*, and *Spaniard*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet moſt have formerly agreed upon *Norumbegua*, or *Arampec*, as the Natives call it ; ſaid to be a large, populous, and well-built Town, and to be ſituate on a fair and capacious River, of the ſame name alſo : But later Obſervations tells us there is no ſuch matter : that the River, which the firſt Relations did intend, is called *Pemtegoet*, neither large nor pleaſant : and that the place by them meant is called *Aggunciа*, ſo far from being a fair City, that there are onely a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the barks of Trees, or the skins of beaſts. Howſoever I have let it ſtand on the firſt reports, it being poſſibly enough that the Town might fall into decay, deſerted on the coming of ſo many ſeveral *Pretenders* ; and that the Sheds, or Cabins which the laſt men ſpeak of, may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoyning to theſe Countreys of *Canada*, are ſeveral Iſlands not joyned in any common name, but yet deſerving ſome conſideration in this place & time. The principal whereof, 1. *NATISCOTEC*, called the Iſle of *Aſſumption*, ſituate in the very mouth of the River, was firſt diſcovered by *Jaques Cartier*, An. 1534. in length 35. leagues, ſeven, or eight in breadth. The Iſland very plain and level, of a fruitfull ſoil, beautified with Trees of ſeveral ſorts, repleniſhed with great plenty both of Fowl and Fiſh, and furniſhed with convenient Rodes, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabited, for ought I can find. 2. *RAMEÆ*, a frie of little Iſlands in the great Gulf of S. *Lawrence* on the South of *Natiſcotec*, firſt found out, or frequented by the Citizens of St. *Malo* in *Bretagne*, An. 1590. of great reſort for the *Morſe-fiſhing*, uſed upon the coaſts, which is here ſo gainfull, that a *French* Bark in a very little time killed 1500. of them. Theſe Morſes (take this by the way) are a kind of Sea-Horſes, or Sea-Oxen, with two Teeth of a foot long growing downwards out of the upper Jaw, ſold dearer than *Ivory*, being eſteemed a ſoveraign *Antidote* againſt poyſons. They have alſo four feet, no Eares, the Horns

about half an ell in length; the skin when dreſſed, twice as thick as that of a Bull;their fleſh when young, as ſweet and tender as Veal. So fat and unctuous,that with the bellies of five of them, there is made uſually an Hogs-Head of *Train-Oil*, as good as that of the *Whale*. 3. *BRION*, a ſmall Iſland on the South of the *Ramea*, about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich ſoyl, fat paſturage, well ſhaded with tall and lofty Trees; and Neighboured by a ſmaller Iſland called *Iſle Blanche*, of the like fertility. 4. *BRITON*, (*Inſula Britonum*) ſo named from *Jaques Breton* a *French man*, in the time of *Francis* the firſt, called alſo the Iſland of St. *Lawrence*; is ſituate on the South-Eaſt of the Iſle of *Brion*: in form *triangular*, in compaſs about 80. leagues; pleaſant and fruitfull, though for the moſt part ſwelled with hills. Deſtitute of Rivers, but interlaced with great Arms of the *Sea*, well ſtored with ſhell-fiſh; and in the midſt thereof a great Lake full of little Iſlands: the Woods repleniſhed with plenty of Deer, *black Foxes*, and a bird called *Pengwin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the *Portugals* did ſometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the Air too cold for them, they again deſerted it. The chief Haven is by the *Engliſh* called *Newport*; by the *French Port aux Anglois*, from the great reſort of the *Engliſh* to it, in regard of their fiſhing. 5. *ISLE DE SABLE*, by the *French* ſo called from the ſands which lie high about it; diſtant from the *Breton-Iſle* about 30. leagues to the South; 15. leagues in compaſs, but more long than broad, and of unſafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the ſafty of the place, attempted twice by the *French*, and once by the *Portugals*; but without ſucceſs. 6. Others of leſs note, as *Menego*, and *Les Iſles des Oiſeaux*, I paſs over purpoſely; there being nothing or but little to be ſpoken of them.

So it appears by this accompt, that though the *French* have given the name of *Nova Francia*, to all theſe Countreys; yet they never had the honour of the firſt diſcovery, wherein the *Engliſh* and the *Portugueze* had precedency of them: nor are poſſeſſed of any conſiderable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large ſhare; the *Engliſh* Maſters of the beſt Ports, and all the Iſlands of the Country in the hands of the *Salvages*. Of theſe ſome great and powerfull Nations over-ſway the reſt. The chief whereof are the *Yroquois* on the North-Eaſt of *Norumbegua*, neighboured by the *Ochataignins*, the *Alboumequins*, and the *Nebicerines*, the *Souriquois*, and *Etechimins*, of *Accadie*, and *new Alexandria*: the *Montagnets*, and the *Attogovantans*, on the banks of the *Canada*. All of them ſtout and hardy people, falſe of their words, treacherous in their practices, and mercileſs in their revenges. So well acquainted with the factions and diviſions of *Europe*, that they know how to make uſe of one Nation againſt another; and by that means to keep themſelves in their firſt eſtate, without being ſubject unto any. So that the footing which the *Engliſh*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtained amongſt them, ſerve rather to ſecure themſelves in the way of their Trading, than to entitle them unto any poſſeſſion, or command in the Country; the *French* being ſhut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*; the *Scots* pretending only to a Bay, or two in the South of *Accadie*; and the *Engliſh* being only *Tenants at the will* of the Natives, for ſuch conveniency of fiſhing, as they have in the adjoyning Iſlands.

OF
VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North, *Canada*; on the South, *Florida*; on the Eaſt, *Mare de Noort*; the Weſtern boundaries not known, or not well diſcovered. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that *Virgin* Monarch; when diſcovered (to any purpoſe) by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, An. 1584. By the natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that name; one of the chief in all the Country.

The Inland parts hereof are Mountainous and barren, full of thick woods, a Receptacle for wild beaſts, and the wilder *Salvages*. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitfull, as will appear by the Survey of its ſeveral Provinces; Premiſſing firſt that *Virginia* in the full Latitude thereof extendeth from the 34th. Degree where it joyns with *Florida*, unto the 44th. where it quartereth on *Norumbega*.

The firſt Diſcovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, *An.* 1497. did firſt entitle the Crown of *England* to this Country. The Deſign after ſeconded by one Mr. *Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petit Kings, or Princes hereof; who did Homage to King *Henry* the 8th. then ſitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Weſtminſter*: but nothing further done in purſuance of it. And though *John Verazzani*, a noble *Florentine*, at the incouragement and charge of King *Francis* the firſt, *Anno* 1524. diſcovered more of the Country than *Cabot* did; yet the *French* too much in love with the pleaſures of *France*, or intangled in Civil wars amongſt themſelves, looked no further after it: Inſomuch that the Country lying thus neglected, was re-diſcovered by the charges and direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then *Captain of the Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1584. who ſending Maſter *Philip Amadas*, and Maſter *Arthur Barlow* upon this employment, did by them take poſſeſſion of it in Queen *Elizabeths* name; in honour of whom he cauſed it to be called *Virginia*. The next year he ſent hither a *Colony*, under the conduct of the noble Sir *Richard Greenvile*: who not ſupplied with neceſſaries for their ſubſiſtence, returned home again. In the year 1587. a ſecond *Colony* is ſent hither, but as ſucceſsleſs as the firſt: the buſineſs being undertaken only on a private Purſe, not owned as the *intereſs* of the State, or of publick moment, till the year 1606. In the mean time the North parts of this Country being more perfectly diſcovered by Captain *Bartholomew Goſnold*, An. 1602. and the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to ſay, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into theſe three parts. 1. *New-England*. 2. *Novum Belgium*. 3. *Virginia* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called. To which the Iſles of the *Bermudas* ſhall come in for a fourth.

NEW-ENGLAND hath on the North-Eaſt, *Norumbegua*; and on the South-Weſt, *Novum Belgium*. So called by the *Adventurers* by whom firſt planted, not ſo much becauſe oppoſite to *Nova Albion*, as ſome men conceive; as in imitation of the like adjuncts of diſtinction, given by the *French* and *Spaniards*, to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hiſpania*, *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like.

The Country ſituate in the middle of the *Temperate Zone*, betwixt the degrees of 41. and 44. equally diſtant from the *Artick Circle*, and the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; by conſequence naturally of the ſame degree of heat, with *France*, or *Italy*: But by reaſon of the thick miſts which ariſe from the Seas adjoyning, thoſe heats ſo moderated, that the Air is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *Engliſh* body. The ſoyl not only fruitfull of ſuch Commodities as grow there naturally; but alſo of all ſorts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great ſtore of Woods, and Trees, both for fruit and building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Salt and Fiſh upon the ſhores; and as for Turkies, Patriges, Swans, Geeſe, Cranes, Ducks, Pigeons, ſuch a full variety, as ſerves not only for neceſſity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of moſt note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many ſorts of Fiſh, ſome Amber, Flax, Linnen, Iron, Pitch, Maſts, Cables, Timber fit for ſhipping: in a word, whatſoever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might be at better rates, and with far leſs trouble be ſupplied from hence; at leaſt, if we believe the *Relations* of it, publiſhed in the year 1622.

The people for the moſt part well enough diſpoſed, if not roughly handled, hoſpitable, and more civil than the reſt of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of *Religion*, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *Engliſh*, at their firſt ſetling there, *An.* 1608. they would uſe to ſay that *King* James *was a good King, and his* God *a good God, but their* Tanto *naught*. Which *Tanto* was an evil ſpirit, which did haunt and trouble them every *Moon*, and therefore they worſhipped him for fear. Which notwithſtanding, I find not any great increaſe of *Chriſtianity* amongſt the *Natives*: our *Engliſh* Undertakers thinking it ſufficient if *they and their houſes ſerved the Lord*, without caring what became of the Souls of the wretched people; which hitherto have *ſate in darkneſs and the ſhadow of death*, notwithſtanding thoſe *New lights* which have ſhined amongſt them. And as for thoſe New-comers which have planted there, all *Engliſh*, though ſome immediately out of *Holland*; I cannot better tell you of what ſtrain they were, than in the words of *John de Laet*, *Novi Orbis lib.* 3. *cap.* 8. where he obſerveth, *Primos hoſce* Colonos, *uti & illos qui poſtea acceſſerunt, potiſſimùm aut omnino fuiſſe ex eorum hominum* Secta, *quos in Anglia* Browniſtas & Puritanos *vocant, quales non pauci & in* Belgium *ſuperioribus annis ſe receperunt, & hinc ad ſocios ſunt profecti.* They were (ſaith he) either for the moſt part, or altogether of that *Sect*, which in *England* are called *Browniſts* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly betaken themſelves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to joyn with their Brethren in *New-England*.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Tameſcot*, where our men found Oyſters of nine inches long. 2 *Nanſic*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this tract. 3 *Sagahadoc*, of moſt note, and deſervedly too. Of a mile and an half broad at the mouth or influx, and ſo upwards for the ſpace of a dayes journey: where it maketh a large Lake three dayes journey broad, with ſix Iſlands in it; nouriſhed with two large Chanels, the one from the North-eaſt, the other from the North-weſt, each of them riſing from a *Lake*, the leaſt of which four dayes journey long, two broad, the other double it. Of leſs note, 4 *Apanawapeſk*, 5 *Ramaſſoc*, 6 *Aſhamahaga*, &c.

The Country on the Sea-ſide full of notable *Havens*, populous, and very well inhabited, inſomuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the ſpace of 70 miles above twenty *Havens*, ſome of them capable of 500 or 1000 ſail: moſt of them ſheltered from the furies of wind and ſea, by the interpoſition of ſome Iſlands, of which about 200 lie upon that Coaſt. In the ſpace of 70 miles he reckoneth forty Villages of the Barbarous people, the chief of which, 1 *Macadacut*, 2 *Segocket*, 3 *Pemmaquid*, 4 *Nuſconcus*, 5 *Kennebecque*, &c. all called by the name of ſome Brook, or water, upon which they were ſeated. Since added by the *Engliſh*, 1 S. *Georges Fort*, the firſt Plantation of the *Engliſh*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagahadoc*, in a Demy-Iſland, *An.* 1607. 2 *New Plimouth*, ſeated in a large and capacious Bay; at the firſt building (*An.* 1620.) conſiſting of nineteen families only, but in ſhort time improved to an handſom Town: which as it was the firſt Town, ſo it was the firſt Church which was ſetled there, modelled according to the form of Mr. *Robinſons* Church in *Holland*, (that notorious *Separatiſt*,) and after made a pattern to the reſt of theſe Churches: each abſolute and *Independent* in it ſelf, without ſubordination unto any Superior. For my part, I behold *Epiſcopacy* as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Chriſt*. But if there were no other Pretenders to it, than *Presbytery*, and *Independency*; I ſhould as ſoon look for the Scepter and Throne of Chriſt (as they pleaſe to phraſe it) in the *Co-ordination* of *New-England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the Kirk of *Scotland*. 3 *Briſtow*, upon the Sea-ſide alſo, but more North than *Plimouth*. 4 *Barſtaple*, ſo called with reference to a noted Sea-town of that name in *Devonſhire*; as 5 *Boſton*, with like reference to as noted a Sea-port in *Lincolnſhire*. 6 *Quillipiack*, on the Bay of *Maſſachuſets*; a Town of an old name, but a new plantation.

This part of *Virginia* firſt diſcovered by Captain *Goſnold*, An. 1602. and the next year more perfectly ſurveyed by ſome of *Briſtol*, was by King *James* An. 1606. granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, to be planted and diſpoſed of for the publike: Sir *John Popham*, then *Chief Juſtice* of the *Common Pleas*, being one of the *Chief* alſo in that Commiſſion. By his encouragement, and principally at his charge, a *Colony* was ſent thither *An.* 1607. under the Preſidency of Captain *George Popham*, and *Ralegh Gilbert*, who built the Fortreſs of S. *George* at the mouth of *Sagahadoc*. But the Preſident dying the next year, and not long after him the *Chief Juſtice* alſo, the *Colony* deſpairing of good ſucceſs, returned home again. Succeſsleſly again attempted *An.* 1614. the *Undertakers* were reſolved to make further trial of their fortune; and in the year 1616. ſent out eight ſhips more: but it never ſetled into form till the year 1620. when by the building of *New-Plimouth*, and ſome encouragements ſent thence to bring others on, it grew in very ſhort time to ſo ſwift a growth, that no *Plantation* for the time, ever went beyond it. The growth of *old Rome* and *New-England* had the like foundation: both Sanctuaries, *Ad quæ turba omnis ex finitimis gentibus* novarum rerum *cupida confluxit*, as *Livy* telleth us of the one; reſorted to by ſuch of the neighbouring Nations, as longed for *innovations* in Church and State.

2. *NOVUM BELGIUM* or *NIEU-NEDERLANDT*, hath on the North-eaſt *New-England*; on the South-weſt *Virginia*, ſpecially ſo called. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their plantation in it *An.* 1614. the Country being then void, and conſequently open to the next *Pretender*, according to that *Maxim* in the Civil laws, *Quæ nullius ſunt, in bonis dantur occupanti*. And yet they had ſome better title than a bare *Intruſion*, having bought *Hudſons* Cards and Maps, and otherwiſe contented him for the charge and pains of his *Diſcovery*, *An.* 1609. Of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38. Degree and an half, to the 41. 15. of a good temperature both of Air and ſoil: fruitfull of thoſe things which the Earth brought forth of its own accord, abundance of wild Grapes, and Nuts, Trees of great height and bulk for ſhipping; plenty of Herbage, ſtore of Plants, the effects of nature: and where the People did their part, ſuch increaſe of *Maize* (a Plant of which they make their Bread) as ſhewed their care and induſtry to be well beſtowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furniſhed (within their command) with Wheat and other ſorts of Grain; as alſo with Flax, Hemp, and ſuch other Commodities, as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The *Woods* repleniſhed with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the *Rivers* not inferiour to any, in *Sturgeons*, Salmons, and other the beſt ſort of Fiſh, which can ſwim in the water.

The People, though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the ſame diſpoſition with the other *Salvages*. Clad in Beaſts skins, for the moſt part without certain dwellings; dwelling together many Families of them under one poor roof, made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the bark of Trees. Their Houſhold ſtuff a *Tabacco Pipe*, a wooden diſh, and an *Hatchet* made of a broad flint; their weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of fiſhes. Their Religion *Idolatry*, or worſe, their chief God the *Devil*, whom they worſhip under the name of *Menetto*: but with leſs pomp and Ceremony than is uſed in *Africk*. Of manners, fearfull and ſuſpicious (not without good cauſe) wonderfull greedy of revenge; but if well uſed, tractable and obedient unto their Superiours; fickle, but very faithfull unto thoſe who truſt them:

conceived to be inclinable to the *Chriſtian* Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of thoſe, who had ſtudied *godlineſs* more than *gain*.

Rivers of note they have not many. That want ſupplied by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coaſt; the principal of thoſe that be, 1 *Manhattes*, by ſome called *Naſſovius*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Noordt Rivier*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-Port*, ſo called by *Cornelius May*, the Maſter of a Ship of *Holland*, at their firſt Plantation: another Chanel of it, which from the noiſe thereof they call *Hell-gate*, emptying it ſelf againſt an Iland called the *Iſle* of *Nuts*. The River about 15, or 16. Fathom deep, at the mouth thereof, affordeth a ſafe Road for ſhipping, but of difficult entrance. 2 *Zuid Rivier*, ſo called, becauſe more Southerly than the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not ſo well diſcovered.

Towns here are few either of the old or *New* Plantations. The *Natural* Inhabitants live together in *Tribes*, many Families of thoſe *Tribes* under one Roof, as before was ſaid; but thoſe Families ſo remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a ſcattered Village. Nor do I find that either the *Hollanders* or the *Engliſh* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to building: The title of the *Dutch* being ſubject unto ſome diſputes; and the Poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh* not confirmed and ſetled. *Hudſon* an *Engliſh-man*, had ſpent ſome time in the Diſcovery of this Country, and given his name to one of the Rivers of it. With him the *Hollanders*, An. 1609. as before is ſaid, compounded for his Charts, and Maps, and whatſoever he could challenge in the right and ſucceſs of that his Voyage. But they were hardly warm in their new Habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governour of *Virginia*, ſpecially ſo called (having diſpoſſeſſed the *French* of that part of *Canada*, now called *Nova Scotia*, *An.* 1613.) diſputed the poſſeſſion with them; alleging that *Hudſon*, under whoſe ſale they claimed that Country, being an *Engliſh-man*, and licenſed to diſcover thoſe Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or diſmember it (being but a part or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governonr ſubmits himſelf and his Plantation to his Majeſty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for, and under him. But a new Governour being ſent from *Amſterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes; but began to fortifie himſelf, and entitle thoſe of *Amſterdam* to a juſt propriety. To which end, he gave unto the Country the name of *New Netherland*, conferred new names on all the Bays and Rivers of it; and poſſeſſed himſelf of a little Iſland near that Branch of the *Noordt Rivier*, which themſelves call *Hell-gate*: where he laid the foundation of a Town, called *New Amſterdam*; and built a Fortreſs by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he garriſonned, and planted with five pieces of Cannon. Complaint whereof being made unto King *Charls*, and by him repreſented to the *States* of *Holland*, it was declared by the ſaid *States* in a publick inſtrument, that they were no ways intereſſed in it, but that it was a private undertaking of the *Weſt-Indian* Company of *Amſterdam*; and ſo referred it wholly to his Majeſties pleaſure. Which being declared, a Commiſſion was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, to plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARY-LAND*: the like not long after to Sir *Edmund Loyden*, for planting and poſſeſſing the more Northern parts which lie towards *New-England*, by the name of *Nova Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then ſeem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there, for the ſum of 2500. l. yet taking advantage of the troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raiſed their demands to a greater height; but furniſhed the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to uſe their Weapons. A moſt miſchievous and wicked Act; not only tending to the damage and diſcouragement of the preſent Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Chriſtians out of all theſe Countries. But the beſt is, they were the firſt that ſmarted by it. The *Salvages* thus armed and trained, fell fowl upon them, deſtroying their Farm Houſes, and forcing them to betake themſelves to their Forts and Faſtneſſes. What hath been ſince done (for the giving of new names to ſome of the old places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *Engliſh*, I can hardly ſay: but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpoſe, till it be made a Work of more publick intereſs.

3. *VIRGINIA* ſpecially ſo called, hath on the North-eaſt *Nieu Netherlandt*, on the South-weſt, *Florida*; the name reſtrained to this part only, ſince the two laſt Plantations, which before was common to the whole. The Country lieth extended from the 34. to the 38. degree of Northern *Latitude*: by conſequence the Air inclined unto heats, if not refreſhed and moderated by a conſtant Gale of Eaſtern winds, which they call the *Brize*; and the blaſts driving on it from the open Seas. Diverſified moſt pleaſantly into hills and valleys; the Mountains clothed with woods, and the Fields with fruits. The ſoil ſo fruitfull, than an Acre of Land well ordered will return 200 Buſhels, or 25 Quarter of Corn. Said alſo to be rich in veins of *Allom*, as alſo Pitch, Turpentine, ſtore of Cedars, Grapes, Oyl, plenty of ſweet Gums, ſeveral ſorts of Plants for the Dyers uſe, ſome Mines of Iron and Copper, of Timber trees almoſt infinite numbers; as alſo great abundance of Cattel, Fiſh, Fowl, Fruit, and of *Maiz* no ſcarcity. Some *Cryſtal* found amongſt the Mountains, on the ſhore ſome *Pearls*; nothing deficient either in the ſoil, or Air, for the incouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The People are but few in number for ſo large a Country, and thoſe as different in ſize, as in ſpeech or manners; Some of them, whom they call *Saſques-hanoxi*, of ſo vaſt a greatneſs, that in compariſon of the *Engliſh* they ſeemed as Giants: clad with the ſkins of Bears, and Wolves, in ſo ſtrange manner, that the head of the Beaſt hung before their breaſts inſtead of a *Jewel*; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other ſide, whom they call *Wigcocomoci*, of ſo low a ſtature, that in relation to the other, they appear as *Pigmies*. But generally they are all of tall ſtature, well limbed, for the moſt part without Beards, and the one half of the head kept ſhaven: cloathed in looſe Mantles made of the ſkins of Deer, with an Apron of the ſame to hide their nakedneſs; the reſt of their bodies painted over with the figures of Serpents, or of ſome other Creature of as horrid ſhape. Strong and accuſtomed to the cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconſtant, crafty, and ſomewhat more induſtrious than the reſt of the *Salvages*; but given to anger, and as greedy of revenge as any. Gods they have many, For they worſhip all things (and them only) which are like to hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, &c. So that it may be ſaid of them, as once *Lactantius* ſaid of the ancient *Romans* (did not the ignorance of theſe poor Wretches render them excuſable, and make them fitter objects for our Prayers and Pitty, than our ſcorns) *Digniſſimi homines qui Deos ſuos ſemper haberent præſentes*. One Devil-God above all the reſt (*they call him Oke*) whom they worſhip, as themſelves confeſs, more for fear than love. Not yet converted from theſe horrible and groſs *Idolatries*, by the long neighbourhood of the *Engliſh*; accuſed in that reſpect moſt juſtly by thoſe of *Rome*.

No Countrey for the bigneſs of it can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers. The principal of which 1. *Pawhatan* (ſo called by the name of that petit *Roitelet*, whoſe Territory it paſſeth through) which having run a courſe of an hundred miles, and Navigable all that way by ſmaller Veſſels; is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad. 2 *Apamatuck*, 3 *Nanſamund*, and 4 *Chikahamania*, all Tributaries to *Pawhatan*. 5 *Pamanuke*, fourteen miles more North than *Pawhatan*, but of leſſer note. 6 *Toppahanock*, Navigable 130 miles. 7 *Patawomeke*, paſſable by Boat 140 miles, and ſix, or ſeven miles broad, where it falleth into the Sea; increaſed by many leſſer ſtreams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well ſtored with Fiſh. 8 *Pawtunxut*, of a ſhorter Race, but a deeper Chanel than moſt of the former (16 or 18 fathom deep) and of more choiſe of Fiſh than the others are.

Along the Banks of theſe Rivers dwell their ſeveral Tribes, ſcarce any one of which making up an hundred men (that of *Patawomeke* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30 and ſome not ſo many. Their habitations not containing above ten, or twelve houſes apiece, but in thoſe houſes ſundry particular families, are for the moſt part covered with the Barks of Trees; ſo placed, that the common Market place ſtandeth in the midſt, at an equal diſtance: the houſes of their *Weroances* (or the *chiefs* of their Tribes) and that which ſerveth them for a Temple, being ſomewhat finer than the reſt. And of theſe habitations ſome are preſented to us by the names of *Ooanoke*, by the *Engliſh* called the *blind Town*. 2 *Pemeoke*. 3 *Shycoake*, ſaid by my Author to be *Civitas ampla*, a large City, but we muſt underſtand him with Relation to the reſt of this Countrey. 4 *Chowanoak*. 5 *Secatan*. 6 *Mattaken*. 7 *Weopomioke*. 8 *Pyſhokonock*, ſaid to be inhabited by none but women. 9 *Chipono*. 10 *Muſcamunge*, both upon the Sea; moſt of them called by the name of thoſe ſeveral *Tribes* which inhabit in them.

In reference to the *Engliſh* and their *Plantations*, we are to know that they made choice of the South-ſide of a large and goodly Bay, for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thruſting it ſelf a great way up into this Countrey, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before mentioned, is by the Natives called *Cheſepoack*, and yieldeth the only ſafe entrance into this part of the Countrey: the *Capes* thereof for that cauſe fortified by the *Engliſh*; that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charls*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of moſt note which have been either ſince built, or frequented by them, 1 *James Town* (*Jacobipolis*) ſo named in honour of King *James*, on the South-ſide of that *Bay*, not far from the River *Chikahamania*: firſt founded in the year 1606. at what time it was trenched about, and ſome Ordnance planted on the Works. 2 *Henries* Town (*Henricopolis*) ſo named in honour of Prince *Henry*, the eldeſt Son of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 18 miles from *James Town*. 3 *Dales-gift*, ſo called, becauſe built and planted at the charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, An. 1610. 4 *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*, 5 *Ketoughtan*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Cheſepoack*, very much traded by the *Engliſh*. 6 *Wicocomoco* the chief Town of *Pawhatan*, one of the Roitelets of this Countrey; much courted by the *Engliſh* at their firſt ſetling here, and a long time after: a *Crown* being ſent him by King *James* with many other Rich preſents, the better to ſweeten and oblige him; but for all that he proved a treacherous and unfaithfull Neighbour.

The ſum of the affairs of this laſt Plantation, is, that the buſineſs being reſumed in the year 1606. and a *Commiſſion* granted to certain Noble men and Merchants to advance the work; they fell in hand, by the Counſel and incouragement of Captain *Smith*, with the building of *James Town* (having firſt fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a *Colony* of 100 men. Theſe being almoſt conſumed by Famine and other miſeries, were the next year recruited with 120 more brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire having caſually conſumed their houſes, once again diſcouraged them. But the Houſes being reedified, and a Church added to the Houſes, by the induſtry of *Smith* their Governour, the *Colony* began to flouriſh, and to increaſe in reputation amongſt the *Salvages*: eſpecially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Pawhatan*. In the year 1609. the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 perſons, (and of them 200 expert Souldiers) 3 Ships 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Muskets, with Victuals and Ammunition neceſſary; and 39 of their *Weroances*, or Petit-Kings Tributaries, and Contributioners to the *Engliſh*. Sir *Thomas Gates* and Sir *George Summers*, ſent thither with nine ſhips and 500 men, loſt a great part of their numbers in the Iſle of *Bermudaz*: the reſt not well according with the old *Plantation*, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three ſhips more, *Anno* 1610. But falling into a deſperate ſickneſs, and come home to *England*, he recommended the Eſtate of the *Engliſh* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furniſhed them with Men, Cattel, and other neceſſaries: after whom came Sir *Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and ſome heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry* Earl of *Souththampton*, the affairs here began to ſettle in a proſperous way: when unexpectedly in the year 1621. the *Salvages* falling on them (fearing no ſuch treachery) killed 340 of their men;

and had alſo then ſurprized *James Town*, if one of the *Salvages*, who had received the *Chriſtian* Faith, had not diſcovered their intention. Since that, recovered of that blow, it went happily forwards: and might by this time have been raiſed to ſome power and greatneſs, if the *Engliſh* by diverting on ſome by Plantations, and by imploying indigent and neceſſitous perſons in ſo great a work, had not diſcouraged the deſign. For certainly one might ſay of this *Plantation*, as the *Scripture* doth of the *Camp of David* in the time of *Saul*, that few, or none were ſent unto it (except the principals) but ſuch as *were in diſtreſs, or debt*, or ſome way or other *diſcontented*: men never likely to advance and purſue a buſineſs of ſuch publick *intereſs*. Commendable howſoever in this particular, (though perhaps that commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themſelves conſtantly to thoſe *forms of Worſhip* which were eſtabliſhed and obſerved in the Church of *England*.

As for the *Natives* of the whole, they were divided (as was ſaid) into ſeveral *Tribes*, every Tribe under the command of their ſeveral *Chiefs*; which *Chiefs*, though many in number, and of little power, knew well enough how to keep their *State* unto their Subjects, and to ſhew it alſo unto ſtrangers. For when *Pawhatan* was pleaſed to give audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the reſt of the *Engliſh* ſent from *Smith*, they found him on a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather imbroidered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of skins like an *Iriſh* Mantle: at his head and feet an handſome young woman; on each ſide of the Room twenty others, with their necks and ſhoulders painted *Red*, and about their Necks a great Chain of Beads; his principal men ſitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithſtanding this great *State*, (and great it was indeed for ſuch petit Princes) he and the reſt became ſo ſubject to the *Engliſh*, that in *Smiths* time they did not only pay their *Tributes*, or Contributions, but at his command would ſend their *Slaves* & Subjects to *James Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the *Colony*. And it is probable enough that thoſe of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerfull Plantation (as followed with the *ſtronger zeal*, and carried on by the united purſes of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence alſo amongſt the *Natives*, though I find it not expreſſed in ſo many particulars.

4. The Iſles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number (ſome ſay 400. at the leaſt) are ſituate directly Eaſt from *Virginia*, from which they are diſtant 500. *Engliſh* miles; 3300. of the ſame miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John Bermudaz* a *Spaniard*, by whom firſt diſcovered. Called alſo the *Summer-Iſlands*, from the ſhipwrack of Sir *George Summers* upon that Coaſt; ſo much delighted with the ſadneſs of the miſadventure, that he endeavoured what he could to ſettle a *Plantation* in it.

That of more fame and greatneſs than all the reſt, to which the name is now moſt properly aſcribed, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 32. & 30. minutes. Well ſtored, when firſt diſcovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers fruits, Mulberries, *Palmitos*, Cedars; as alſo of Silk-worms, *Pearls* and *Amber*, and ſuch rich Commodities: of Fowl ſo infinite an abundance, that our men took a thouſand of one ſort, as big as a Pigeon, within two or three hours. The Air hereof very ſound and healthy, found by experience (the beſt Argument in ſuch a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *Engliſh* man; yet terribly expoſed to Tempeſts of Rain, Thunder, and Lightning. For which, and for the many ſhipwracks happening on the Coaſts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be ſaid to own it, the Mariners have pleaſed to call it the *Iſland of Devils*. The ſoil affirmed to be as fertile as any; well watered, plentifull in *Maize*, of which they have two Harveſts yearly: that which is ſowed in *March*, being cut in *July*; and that which is ſowed in *Auguſt*, being mowed in *December*. No venemous Creature to be found in all the Iſland, or will live, brought hither. And beſides theſe Commodities, of ſo ſafe a being, ſo fenced about with Rocks and Ilets, that without knowledge of the paſſages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the *Haven*; yet with ſuch knowledge, there is entrance for the greateſt ſhips. The *Engliſh* have ſince added to theſe ſtrengths of nature, ſuch additional helps, by Block-houſes, Forts and Bulwarks in convenient places, as may give it the title of *Impregnable*.

It was firſt diſcovered (but rather accidently than upon deſign) by *John Bermudaz*, a *Spaniard*, about the year 1522. and thereupon a Propoſition made in the Council of *Spain*, for ſetling a *Plantation* in it; as a place not to be avoided by the *Spaniſh Fleets*, in their return from the Bay of *Mexico*, by the Streights of *Bahama*. Neglected notwithſtanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George Summers*, ſent to *Virginia* with ſome Companies of *Engliſh* by the Lord *De la Ware*, An. 1609. Who being ſhipwracked on this Coaſt, had the opportunity to ſurvey the Iſland; which he ſo liked, that he endeavoured a *Plantation* in it, at his comming home. *An. 1612.* the firſt *Colony* was ſent over under *Richard More*, who in three years erected eight or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordinance. *An. 1616.* a new ſupply is ſent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applyed themſelves to ſowing Corn, ſetting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and planting that gainfull Weed *Tobacco*. An. 1619. the buſineſs is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the *Publick*, many great Lords and men of Honour being intereſſed in it: Captain *Butler* ſent thither with 500. men, the Iſle divided into *Tribes*, or *Cantreds*, to each Tribe a *Burrough*; the whole reduced to a ſetled Government both in *Church* and *State*, according to the Law of *England*. After this, all things ſo ſucceed, that in the year 1623. here were ſaid to be three thouſand *Engliſh*, ten Forts, and in thoſe Forts fifty pieces of Ordinance; their numbers ſince increaſing daily, both by Children born within the Iſland, and ſupplies from *England*.

OF
FLORIDA.

FLORIDA is bounded on the North-Eaſt, with *Virginia*; on the Eaſt, with *Mare del Noort*; on the South, and ſome part of the Weſt, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the reſt of the Weſt, with part of *New Gallicia*, and ſome Countries hitherto not diſcovered. Extended from the River of *Palmes* in the 25th. degree of *Latitude*, to *Rio de Secco* in the 34th. which evidently ſpeaketh it for a Countrey of large dimenſions.

It was firſt diſcovered by the *Engliſh* under the conduct of *Sebaſtian Cabot*, Anno 1497. afterwards better ſearched into by *John de Ponce*, a *Spaniard*, who took poſſeſſion of it in the name of that King, Anno 1527. and by him called *Florida*, either becauſe he landed there upon *Palm*-Sunday, which the *Spaniards* call *Paſcua di Flores*, or *Paſcha Florida*; or elſe *quia Florida erat Regio*, by reaſon of that freſh verdure and flouriſhing eſtate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is ſaid to be called *Jaquaſa*.

This Country lying *Parallel* to *Caſtile* in *Spain*, it is ſaid to be of the ſame temper both for Air and Soyl, but that it is abundantly more fruitfull: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of *Maize* (the natural bread-Corn of the Countrey) which they ſow twice a year, *viz.* *March* and *June*, and reap in the third month after, laying it in ſome publick Barns, and thence diſtribute it to the neceſſities of particular perſons. Well ſtored with ſeveral ſorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Cheſnuts, Grapes and Plums of both excellent taſte and colour: Beaſt wilde, and tame, of all kinds which theſe Countreys yield; and of like ſorts of Fowl. The Woods and Foreſts full of the largeſt Oaks, and the loftieſt Cedars; ſome Cypreſs-Trees, and Bays, of a large proportion; with great plenty of that Wood which the Inhabitants call *Pavam*, and the *French* name *Saſſafras*, the bark whereof is Medicinal againſt ſome diſeaſes; and another Tree which we call *Eſquine*, affirmed to be a Soveraign and preſent Remedy for the *French* Diſeaſe. It is alſo ſaid to be enriched with ſome Mines of Gold, and Silver; neglected by the *Natives*, till the coming of the *Spaniards*, and *French*, put a price upon them: and to have in it *Emeralds* of great worth and beauty, with many *Turquoiſes* and Pearls. Others report that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongſt them, came from ſome ſhips which had been wracked upon thoſe Coaſts: contrary whereunto it is ſaid by the *Natives*, that in the Hills which the call *Apalatei*, there are found great Veins of a reddiſh Metal, which the *French* concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to ſearch into them.

The people are of an *Olive Colour*, great ſtature, and well proportioned; naked, except their Privities, which they hide with the skins of Stags: their arms and knees ſtained with divers paintings, not to be waſhed off; their hair black, and hanging down as low as their thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of diſſimulation. So ſtomackfull, that they do naturally love War and Revenge, inſomuch that they are continually in War with one, or other. They are crafty alſo and very intelligent, as appeareth by the anſwer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a *Spaniard*, who was here amongſt them, *An.* 1594. for when he went to perſwade the people that he was the ſon of God, and came to teach them the Law: Not ſo, replyed a *Floridan*, for *God never bad thee to kill and ſlay, and work all kind of miſchief againſt us.* The Women when their Husbands are dead, uſe to cut off their hair cloſe to their ears, and ſtrew it on his Sepulchre; and cannot marry again, till their hair be grown long enough to cover their ſhoulders. ***Hermophrodites*** are here alſo in great plenty, whom they uſe as beaſts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kind of drudgery. They have all a groſs belief of the Souls immortality, but are otherwiſe Idolaters.

Mountains this Country hath not many, as being generally plain, and level; the chiefeſt, thoſe called *Apalatei* before mentioned, ſuppoſed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of moſt note. 1. *Rio Secco.* 2. *Rio Grande.* 3. *Serrævahi*; the two firſt named ſo by the *Spaniards*, and the laſt by the *Natives*. 4. *Garunna.* 5. *Ligeis.* 6. *Axona.* 7. *Sequana*, and 8. *Charente*, ſo called by the *French*, according to the names of the beſt Rivers in *France*: both *French* and *Spaniards* having ſeverally and ſucceſſively the poſſeſſion it. Here are alſo 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers; 10. *Rio de Neives*, or the River of *Snow*; and 11. *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular deſcription of theſe Rivers, their riſe, courſe, and greatneſs, I find not in any of my Authors. Onely *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River, called *Porte Riale*, reckoned the chiefeſt of this Country, the mouth whereof is three miles broad; where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the Weſt, and the other pointing to the North. Some of theſe Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with *Crocodiles*, a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water.

The Countrey not ſo well diſcovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly diſtributed into ſeveral *Tribes*; as were all Nations of the World at their firſt *Diſcovery*. The principal of theſe they reckon the *Quevenes*, *Marianes*, *Canagadi*, *Camoni*, *Avavares*, and *Malicones*, the *Suſolas*, *Quitones*, and other names not uſual unto us of *Europe*; though theſe more paſſable than many which have gone before: mollified perhaps by the *French*, and *Spaniards*, and not preſented to us in their natural roughneſs; all governed by their *Paracouſſi*, or ſeveral *Chiefs*, and thoſe at deadly *Feuds*, and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as

Panuca, *Avanares*, *Abarduoſia*, *Joguazia*, *Apalchia*, *Anthia*, *Samovia*, *Solas*; but they acquaint us nether with their ſite nor bounds: except it be that *Panuca* lyeth on the borders of *Hiſpania Nova*, beyond the large and ſpacious Bay of the *Holy Ghoſt*; and *Calos* near the Cape, called *Cape di Florida*. Others diſtinguiſh it by the names of the ſeveral Roitelets; which varying with the change of the perſon, makes that diviſion to be very variable and uncertain alſo. But it is generally agreed that the *Peninſula*, which pointeth on the Iſle of *Cuba*, hath the name of *Tegeſta*, or *Florida* ſpecially ſo called; the name of *Florida* being firſt given by *John Ponce* unto this part only, though afterwards communicated unto all the reſt of this Countrey. A *Demy-Iſland* ſtretching in length from the South to the North, 100. leagues; in breadth where broadeſt 30. leagues, and in ſome places 20. only. Well known by the Cape of *Martyrs*, looking into the Iſle of *Cuba*, the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and three goodly Bays; the chief whereof, that entituled to St. *Joſeph*, all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole environed about, ſave where it is joyned unto the *Continent*, with Bars of Sands, and ſcattered Iſlands, which ſerve unto it as the *out-works* to ſome notable Fortreſs.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. St. *Helens*, on, or near a *Promontory*, ſo named, where this Countrey bordereth on *Virginia*: once fortified and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, but not long ſince abandoned. 2. *Fort de Charls*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Maio*; and ſo called in honour of *Charls* the ninth, in whoſe time the conqueſt of this Countrey was undertaken: but ruined by the *Spaniard* in the War between them. 3. *Port Royal*, a well frequented Haven, on the mouth of the River of that name: but whether there be any Town now remaining, I am not able to ſay. More in the Land (for theſe lye all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*) *Apalche*, ſuppoſed to be a place of great conſideration, in regard of the opinion which was had of the wealth thereof; but found to be a ſmall Town, of but 40. Cottages:) and therefore firſt attempted and took in by the *Spaniard*, in their invaſion of this Countrey under *Pamphilus* of *Narvaez*, An. 1528. recovered by the Natives after his departure. 5. *Ante*, an open Burrough, nine dayes journey from *Apalche*, where the *Salvages* gave the *Spaniards* a ſharp encounter, and ſlew many of them; but being vanquiſhed at the laſt, they forſook the Town, of it ſelf not tenable. 6. *Ocalis*, an unwalled Town, but conſiſting of 600. Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houſes) the chief of the Kingdome of *Acuera*. 7. *Oſachile*, the chief Seat of the King ſo called; and 8. *Vitacuchus*, a Burrough of 200. Cottages, the principal of the Kingdome of *Vitacuchus*, both taken by the *Spaniards* at the ſame time alſo. 9. St. *Matthews*, on the Eaſtern ſhore of the *Demy-Iſland* above mentioned, poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Spaniard*. 10. St. *Auguſtines* on the ſame ſhore, but more South than the other; ſituate at the mouth of a ſmall River ſo named, fortified by the *Spaniard* with many a ſtrong Caſtle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1585. there being found in the Fort of St. *John*, in which the ſtrength of the Town conſiſted, 18. braſs pieces, and 20000. *Florens* in ready money, for the pay of the Garriſon. Repaired afterwards more ſtrongly than ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have alſo Garriſons in two other places of this Countrey, *viz*. St. *Philip*, and St. *Jago*, but I cannot ſay diſtinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Countrey, is of one kind only, though managed by ſeveral perſons: the Supreme power reſiding in the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Tribes*; at ſuch continual enmity with one another, that they very ſeldome joyn together in any Counſels, wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the preſent *Floridans*, as the *Romans* did of the ancient *Britans*, *Nec quicquam adverſus validiſſimas gentes utilius nobis fuit, quam quod in commune non conſulebant*. The not communicating of their Counſels, haſtning on their bondage. Yet in the Government of theſe *Chiefs* there was ſomewhat of the *Parliamentary* way uſed with us in *Europe*. For as in all matters of concernment, thoſe *Chiefs* adviſed with their *Council*: ſo if it were a buſineſs which concerned the *publick*, their *Prieſts* and others of moſt note for gravity and wiſdom, were admitted to the *Conſultation*. But being ſeverally too weak for a ſtrong Invader, and never joyned together to defend themſelves, they made themſelves an eaſie prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*. *Et ſic dum ſinguli pugnabant*, univerſi *vincebantur*; by truſting to their ſingle forces they were all ſubdued. For in the year 1512. *John Ponce* a Native of *Leon* in *Spain*, ſetting ſayl with three ſhips from the Iſland of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm-ſunday* fell on the *Peninſula* before deſcribed; & for that cauſe, or from the flouriſhing verdure of it, called it *Florida*: but did no more than ſcowre along upon the Coaſts, and give new names to ſuch of the Promontories and Rivers as he had diſcovered, and having only a ſlight skirmiſh with ſome of the *Salvages*, returned back again. The buſineſs eight years after was again revived by *Vaſques de Ayllon*, who ſetting ſayl from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hiſpaniola*, attained unto the North-Eaſt parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of St. *Helen*, and the River of *Jordan*; and having treacherouſly enſlaved ſome of the *Natives* (whom he had invited to a Feaſt) prepared for *Spain*; where he obtained the Kings Patent for a new Plantation. But his perfidiouſneſs could not proſper. For in the year 1524 coming with his ſhips upon this Coaſt, one of them periſhed on the Rocks; and 200. of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprize: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more uſe of theſe Diſcoveries, than wickedly to enrich themſelves by ſtealing men, whom as wickedly they ſold for Slaves. Nor had the voyage of *Pamphilus de Narvaez*, Anno 1528. any better end; though undertaken by a band of 400. Foot, and 80. Horſe. For having took poſſeſſion of the Countrey, in the name of his Soveraign *Charls* the fifth, finding ſome hopes of great Treaſures to be had at *Apalche* (diſtant above a months journey from the place of his landing) he would needs march thither. In which action, though he got that and ſome other Towns, yet he loſt himſelf: few of his men returning ſafe into their Countrey, and they not knowing what became of their General. As fruitleſs, but more famous was the enterprize of *Hernandes a Soto*, begun in the year 1538. and continued till 1542. who with a little Army of 350. Horſe, and 90. Foot, over-ran a great part of the Countrey, and brought many of the *Petit*

Princes under the command of *Spain*. But making only a *Deprædatory* War of it to enrich himſelf, and waſte the Country, without ſetling any *Colony*, or building any Fortifications in it to make good his gettings, the Action ended with his life, which he loſt by a Feaver: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the War had ſpared, under the conduct of *Ludovico Muſcoſo di Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties.

And ſo the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter; ſent on this Voyage by *Gaſpar Coligni* Admiral of *France*, Anno 1562. under the conduct of *Ribault*; who falling on that part of the Continent, which lyeth on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Peninſula*, gave the firſt Promontory which he touched at, the name of *Cape Francois*: and after running North-ward along that Coaſt, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Seine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garund*, and others of moſt note in his own Country. Coming as far North as the great River of *Porto-Royal*, he there built a little Fortreſs, which he called *Fort Charls*, where he left 26 of his men to keep poſſeſſion, and returned for *France*: his Souldiers following not long after, as well as they could; deſtitute of ſupplies from home, and not able with ſo ſmall a number to command them there. The Action re-inforced about two years after, under the conduct of *Landonier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former Voyage: by whom ſome further progreſs was made in this undertaking, and a little Town built on the banks of the River *Maio*, (ſo called by *Ribault*, becauſe in that moneth diſcovered by him) which he named *Charls-Fort*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latin*. But a mutiny hapning amongſt his men, and ſome complaints made of him in the Court of *France*, he was called home, and *Ribault* ſent again to purſue the enterprize: Who entring on his charge in *Auguſt*, An. 1565. was preſently ſet on by the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land; his ſhips forced violently on the Rocks, the new Town ſacked, the *Colony* put unto the ſword, very few eſcaping; *Ribault* himſelf murdered in cold blood by the Enemy, after faith given him for his life. It was thought that above 600 *French* were ſlain in this action. So ended the *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new *Civil* War, and loath to engage himſelf againſt the *Spaniard*, till the year 1627. when at the charge of *Dominicus Gurgius* a private perſon, out of an honeſt zeal to the honour of his Country, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Arx Carolina*, and raiſed two Caſtles more on the banks of the *Maio*; which they had furniſhed with ſuch Pieces as they took from the *French*, and Garriſoned with 400 Soldiers; Yet giving a couragious onſet, by the aid of the *Salvages*, (to whom the name and neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them all, demoliſhed the works, and hanged all ſuch of the Souldiers as the ſword had ſpared, and ſo returned into *France*; where inſtead of honour and reward for ſo great a ſervice, he was in danger of loſing both his life and fortunes, compelled to lurk amongſt his friends till the times were changed. The *Spaniards* after this, to keep ſome kind of poſſeſſion, though not finding it in riches anſwerable to their greedy deſires, fortified S. *Matthews*, and S. *Auguſtines*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Demy-Iſland*, with the Caſtles of S. *Philip* and S. *Jago*, in other parts of the Country towards the North-Eaſt: thinking himſelf ſo ſtrong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no forein Forces dare appear on that ſide of the Country. So that it ſeems he playes the part of *Æſops Dog in the Manger*, neither reſolved to plant there himſelf, nor willing that any others ſhould.

Having thus taken a ſurvey of the main Land of *Florida*, let us next take a view of ſuch Iſlands, as lie diſperſed up and down in the Seas adjoyning; called by one general name *LUCAIOS*, or *LUCAIÆ INSULÆ*; many in number, but reducible to theſe three heads. 1. The *Tortugas*. 2. The *Martyres*, and 3. The *Lucaios* ſpecially ſo called.

1. *THE TORTUGAS* are ſeven, or eight little Iſlands, lying on an heap at the South-weſt point of the *Peninſula*, called the *Cape of Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; diſtant from the Port of *Havana* in the Iſle of *Cuba* (oppoſite unto which they lie) about ſix leagues. Well known among the Saylers, becauſe much avoided; or rather avoided becauſe known; the danger of their company making their further acquaintance ſhunned.

2. *THE MARTYRES*, called alſo the *Caios*, are three great Rocks rather than Iſlands, covered with a white ſand, and full of buſhes; the middlemoſt of the three the greateſt: ſituate over againſt the South-Eaſt Promontory of the ſaid *Peninſula*, called from hence *Cabeca de los Martyres*, or the Cape of *Martyrs*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his firſt diſcovery of this Country, becauſe they ſeemed afar off to have ſome reſemblance to men impaled upon Stakes, as many of the *Martyrs* were in the *Primitive* times. Infamous for the many ſhipwracks which have ſince there hapned; but of great obſervation amongſt *Sea-faring* men, becauſe they know by leaving theſe Rocks, or Iſlands on the left hand of them, that they are already entred in the Streights.

3. *THE LUCAIOS* ſpecially ſo called, lie diſperſed on the Eaſt of the *Peninſula*; many in number, and ſo called from *Lucaioneque*, the greateſt and moſt Northern of them, ſituate in the 27 degree of *Latitude*; of more length than breadth, but hitherto known by name only. Of greater note, though not ſo big, is that called 2. *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucaoneam* and the *Peninſula*; in length 13 leagues, and eight in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent current interpoſing betwixt it and the *Demy-Iſland*, called the Streights of *Bahama*: yet not ſo ſtreight but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of ſo forcible a Courſe, that many times neither wind nor Oars can prevail againſt it. 3. *Guanahani*, the moſt famous of all theſe Iſlands, becauſe the firſt that was diſcovered by *Columbus*, being then almoſt out of hope of proceeding further; who thereupon cauſed it to be called S. *Saviours*: well ſhaded at that time with Trees, full of freſh Springs, and very plentifull of *Cotton*; now overgrown with ſhrubs, and buſhes. 4. *Gaanima*, by *Columbus* when firſt diſcovered, called S. *Maria de Conception*; begirt about with Rocks and quick ſands, but otherwiſe of a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoyl, full

of delicate Springs. Others there are to the number of 24. or thereabouts, whoſe names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we find nothing of them but their very names, I ſhall not trouble my ſelf with the *Nomenclature*.

Of all in general it is ſaid that they obeyed their King ſo ſtrictly (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high Rock, they performed the ſame; though he gave no reaſon but his Will. The *Women* of ſo perfect beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forſook their own Countreys, to enjoy their *Loves*: their ſhape and beauty the more diſcernable, in regard not ſuffered to wear any thing till their *purgations*; nor after that but nets of *Cotton*, filled with Leaves of Herbs. But now, and long ſince, there are neither men, nor women, to be found in any of them: the people being long ſince waſted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola*; or conſumed by Famine and Diſeaſes, or otherwiſe made away in Priſons, and by ſeveral Torments; to the number of a Million and 200000. as ſome have told us. And ſo we paſs unto the other ſide of thoſe Northern Countreys; oppoſite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the main Land of *Florida*: that when we fall into the Countreys now poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, we may not wander out of them till this work be finiſhed; except it be to take a progreſs into ſome of the Iſlands, which cannot otherwiſe be viſited but by ſuch a *ſtart*.

OF CALIFORMIA.

CALIFORMIA in the large and general acception of it, containeth all thoſe Provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the Weſt-ſide of that Northern *Peninſula*, beyond *Nova Gallicia*, and *New Spain*: though in the ſtricter, limited to that Province only which lieth on the other ſide of a long and ſpacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *Califormia*. But taking it in the largeſt ſenſe, it hath on the Weſt *New Spain*, and *New Gallicia*, and ſo unto thoſe undiſcovered parts which lie furtheſt North, to the Streights of *Anian*. So witneſſeth *John de Laet*, lib. 6. cap. 11. *CALIFORMIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum* Novæ Hiſpaniæ *atque* Galliciæ *ad Occidentem objicitur, ad extremos* Americæ *Septentrionalis terminos, & Fretum quod vulgo* Anian *vocant*. Limited in the ſtricter ſenſe and acception of it, to an Iſland (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the Weſt hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the *Chorography* and Story of it, we muſt divide it into the Continent, and the Iſland: the Continent ſubdivided into the two large Provinces of, 1. *Quivira*, and 2. *Cibola*; the Iſland into 3. *Califormia* ſpecially ſo called, and 4. *Nova Albion*.

And firſt, the Continent of this part which we call *Califormia*, hath on the Eaſt ſome parts of *Nova Gallicia*; and beſides that, thoſe vaſt and undiſcovered Countreys, which lie on the Weſt-ſide of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the oppoſite ſhore: bounded on the North with the unknown parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-weſt, with the Streights of *Anian*, if ſuch Streights there be; on the Weſt, with the Sea interpoſing betwixt it and the Iſland, called *Mer Vermiglio*; and on the South, and South-weſt, with the reſt of *Nova Gallicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noort*. A River which riſing in the 40. degree of Northern Latitude, firſt parteth *Tignez* a Province of *Quivira*, from that of *New Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*; and after a long courſe falleth into the Sea, called *Mer Vermiglio*, above *Cinoloa*, another of the Provinces of that Diviſion. Divided as before was ſaid, into the two great Provinces of, 1. *Quivira*, and 2. *Cibola*.

1. *QUIVIRA*, taking up the moſt Northern parts of this ſide of *America*, is ſaid to be very plain and level; of few Trees, not many houſes, nor much ſtored of people; quite deſtitute of fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for mans life but the fleſh of beaſts, which they eat raw, and ſwallow down in great bits without any *chewing*. The men apparelled in Bul-skins, from the head to the feet; the women, though in a cold Country, with no other garment than their hair, which they wear ſo long, that it ſerveth them in ſtead of a veil to hide their *nakedneſs*. They live in *Hoords* and companies, like the *Hoords* of the *Tartars*; not having any certain dwellings (except ſome chief men) but remove from one place to another, like the antient *Nomades*. Neer Nighbours unto *Tartary*, from whence (not being much diſtant from it) it is ſuppoſed that the Inhabitants firſt came; and from hence by degrees peopled all *America*.

The Country being full of herbage, breeds great ſtore of Cattel; differing not much in bigneſs from thoſe of *Europe*, but that they have an high bunch betwixt their ſhoulders; briſtled upon the back like Bores, with ſomewhat which reſembleth the mane in Horſes, and the beard in Goats; their legs ſhort, and clad with fetlocks, their horns ſhort, but ſharp; the whole Beaſt of an aſpect ſo horrid, that an Horſe will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in theſe Beaſts lie all their Riches; theſe being to this people, as we ſay with us of our *Ale* to Drunkards, meat, drink, and cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houſes, or at leaſt the covering of them; their bones, bodkins; their hair, thread; their ſinews, ropes; their horns, maws, and bladders, veſſels; their dung, fire; their Calveskins, budgets to draw and keep water; their blood, drink; and their fleſh, meat. There is thought to be ſome traffick from *China*, or *Cathay*, hither. For when *Vaſques di Coronado* conquered it, he ſaw in the further Sea certain ſhips, not of common making, which ſeemed to be well laden, and did bear in their prows the figures of *Pelicans*; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of theſe two. I know ſome place this Country more within the Land: and others are ſo far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it cloſe unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coaſts, upon good authority; though I deny not but that ſome parts hereof may be more remote. Or elſe to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; that the *maritime* parts being known by other names, the *Inlands* might retain more ſpecially the name of *Quivira*; as we have ſeen in many other Countreys before deſcribed.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, becauſe I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Seio*, the other called *Cicuic*, and the third *Tignez*: which I look upon as the *maritime* parts of the ſame one Country, but better peopled and frequented than the *Inlands* are, becauſe lying in the way of traffick. The principal Towns of which *Provinces*, 1. *Acus*, or *Acuco*, a ſmall Town, but ſituate in a ſtrong and defenſible place; about which groweth ſome ſtore of *Cotton*, which from the place the Natives call by the name of *Acuco*. 2. *Tignez*, on the banks of a River ſo called; inhabited by a ſtout and couragious people, who being reſolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when beſieged by *Vaſques de Coronada*, after they had held out above ſix weeks, laid all their houſhold-ſtuff and treaſure in an heap together, which they ſet on fire;

and taking their Wives and Children into the midſt of their ranks, made a deſperate Sally on the Enemy. A reſolution worthy of a better fortune, moſt of them being ſlain in the fight, and the reſt trod under the Horſes feet, or drowned in paſſing over the River. Yet would not thoſe few which were left give up the Town, till it was fired about their ears, and no longer tenable: the *Spaniard* buying this victory (notwithſtanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loſs of moſt of their Horſes, the death of ſeven of their men, and the wounding of eighty. 3. *Cicuick*, a ſmall *Burrough*, but the chief of that Province, four dayes journey from *Tignez*: from whence the whole way unto *Quivira*, ſpecially ſo called, being 90. miles, hath in it neither ſtone nor Tree, nor any land-mark; inſomuch as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of *Cow duug*, to ſerve for their direction in their coming back.

The firſt diſcovery of this Country is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza*, Vice-roy of *Mexico*, who deſirous to get wealth and honour by ſome new *Adventures*, imployed in the diſcovery of theſe Northern parts, Frier *Marco de Niſa*. By him and by a *Negro* which he had for his Guide, there was ſome light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but ſo diſguiſed in lyes, and wrapt up in fictions, that that light was little more than *darkneſs*. Yet by that glimmering, *Franciſco Vaſques di Coronado*, in the year 1540. undertook the buſineſs; and ſped ſo well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tignez*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a further journey by the report of the *Salvages*, (who deſired to haſten him out of their Country) telling him of the wealth of *Tatarax*, who reigned in the In-land parts of *Quivira*: a bearded man (thoſe of this Country wearing none) of a white complexion, and one who in his Chapel worſhipped a *Croſs*, and the Queen of Heaven. On went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tatarax*, a poor naked Prince; maſter of no more treaſure than a brazen plate hanging on his breaſt, and without any ſuch ſign of *Chriſtianity* as they did expect. So fruſtrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their labour for their pains, and the honour of a new diſcovery; with the loſs of many of their men, they returned to *Mexico*, An. 1542. Some *Friers* made bold to ſtay behind, but were all ſlain by the people of *Quivira*, except only one; who like *Jobs* meſſenger was left to carry news of the murder; The *Spaniards* never looking into theſe cold Countreys, where nothing elſe was to be gotten but blows, and hunger.

2. CIBOLA hath on the North, *Quivira*; on the South, and South-Eaſt parts *New Gallicia*, from which divided by the River called *Rio del Nort*, as before was ſaid; the Weſt-ſide of it waſhed with the *Mer Virmiglio*, interpoſed betwixt it and the Iſland, or *Califormia* ſpecially ſo called. By the Natives it is called *Zuni*.

The air hereof indifferently temperate, if not too much ſubject in the Winter, to froſts and ſnows. The Country for the moſt part level, rarely ſwelled with Hills, but thoſe very Rocky. No Trees that bear them any fruit; few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedars, from which abundantly ſupplied both with fewel and timber: plenty of *Maize*, and ſmall white Peaſe, which they make their bread of; great ſtore of Veniſon, but they kill it only for the skin; ſome quantities of Sheep, known for ſuch by their *Fleeces* only, but otherwiſe as big each of them as an Horſe, or Ox, ſome of their Horns weighing fifty pounds. Of Lions, Bears, and Tygers ſo great a number, that they have more than enough for themſelves, and could well ſpare them to their Neighbours.

The people generally well limbed, and tall of ſtature, ingenious in reſpect of ſome other *Salvages*; and though naked except their privities only, or covered only with a Mantle, yet thoſe *Mantles* wrought in divers colours: which, with ſome quantity of *Cotton* which they have amongſt them, (none of it growing in their Country) ſhew them to be an induſtrious Nation, and to maintain a courſe of trade with ſome of their Neighbours. A further Argument of which is thoſe painted skins, which they have from *Cicuique*, or ſome other Country which lies towards the Ocean; my Author telling that they travel for them eight dayes journey towards the North: and probably enough may be ſome of thoſe Commodities, which the Inhabitants of the *maritime* Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cathay*, or *China*, with which they are ſuppoſed to traffick, as before was ſaid. Like induſtry is noted in the women alſo, one of which will grind and knead more *Maize* in a day, than the women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the reſt of the *Salvages*.

This Country was firſt made known to the *Spaniards*, by the Travels of Frier *Marco de Niſa*, employed on new Diſcoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was ſaid. Leaving *Couliacan*, the moſt Northern Province of *Nova Gallicia*, he overcame a tedious *Deſart* four dayes journey long; at the end of which he met ſome people, who told him of a pleaſant Country four dayes journey further, unto which he went. And ſtaying at a place called *Vacapa*, he diſpatched the *Negro*, whom he took with him for his Guide, to ſearch towards the North; by whom he was advertiſed after four dayes abſence, that he had been informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a moneths journey thence: wherein were ſeven great Cities under the Government of one Princeſs, the houſes of which were built of ſtone, many ſtories high, the Lintels of their Doors adorned with *Turquoiſes*; with many other ſtrange reports of their markets, multitudes, and riches. But neither the Frier nor the *Negro* had the hap to ſee it: the *Negro* being killed on the very borders, and the Frier ſo terrified with the news, that he thought it better to return, and ſatisfie the *Vice-Roy* with ſome handſome Fiction, than put himſelf upon the danger of a further journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Reports which the *Negro* ſent him; gave to the *Deſarts* in his way the name of the Kingdoms of *Tonteac*, and *Marata*; aſcribed unto this laſt a great City called *Abacu*, once well inhabited, but at that time deſtroyed by Wars; to the other a more civil and well clothed people, than in other places. Inflamed with which reports, *Vaſques de Coronado* undertook the action, but found the Frier to be a *Frier*;

nothing of moment true in all his *Relations* : the Kingdome of *Marata* to be found only in the Friers brains ; *Tontear* to be nothing but a great *Lake*, on whoſe banks had once been many Cottages, now conſumed by Wars. And as for the ſeven Cities of ſuch Wealth and Bigneſs, he found them to be ſeven poor *Burroughs* ; all ſituate within the compaſs of four leagues, which made up that ſo famous Kingdome which the *Frier* dreamt of. The biggeſt of them held about 500. Cottages ; the reſt of them not above half that number. One of them, leſt he might be ſaid to return without doing ſomething, he beſieged,and took ; but found it ſuch an hot piece of ſervice, that he was twice beaten down with ſtones as he ſcaled the Rampiers ; but having taken it at the laſt, he found in it great plenty of *Maize* to refreſh his Army, and cauſed the Town (conſiſting of 200 houſes, or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for ſome reſemblance which it had to that City in *Spaim* Such as have ſince indeavoured the Diſcovery of theſe North-weſt parts, and ſayled all along the ſhore hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, having added hereunto the names of ſome points, or Promontories : known in the Maps by the name of *Po de* St. *Claras*, not far from the mouth, or influx of *Rhio del Nort.* 2. *Las Plaias.* 3. St. *Michael.* 4. *Rio de Teron.* 5. *Laques del Oro* bordering on *Quivira* ; and 6. *Rey Coronado*, on the Eaſt of that.

Betwixt this Region and *Quivira* ſpecially ſo called, lyeth a Countrey, which the ſaid *Vaſques* names *Tucayan*, memorable for the famous River of *Huex* ; on the banks whereof for the ſpace of 20 leagues ſtand 15 Burroughs well built, and furniſhed with Stoves, (if he hath not in this part of the Story outlied the Frier) as in other cold but more civil Countreys, againſt the extremities of Winter. This region ſtretching ſeven dayes journey to the River of *Cicuique*, I reckon to belong to the North-Eaſt parts of *Cibola*. As I do alſo the fruitfull Valley of *Aroia de Corazones*, which they paſſed in their way hither from *Conliacan* ; with the Town and Territory of *Chichilticala*, and the Valley of *Nueſtro Sennora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts of it : not knowing otherwiſe what Province to referr them to.

Proceed we now unto the Iſland, the other general part of this Diviſion, parted from *Cibola* and *New Gallicia*, by a narrow Sea called *Mer Vermiglio* ; and by ſome the Golf of *Califormia*, environed on all other parts by the main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22th. degree of Northern Latitude, to the 42th. but the breadth not anſwerable. The moſt Northern point hereof, called *Cabo Blance*, of which little memorable. The moſt Southern, called the Cape of St. *Lucas*, remarkable for the great Prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Cavendiſh*, in his Circumnavigation of the World, *Anno* 1587. Suppoſed in former times to have been joyned, in the North parts of it, above the Latitude of 27. to the reſt of the Continent ; and ſo deſcribed in moſt of our later Maps, till the year 1626. and after that in the Chart, or Map of *John de Laet*, Anno 1633. which I wonder at : himſelf affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Iſland ; *lib* 6. *cap*.11. and that he had ſeen a fair Map in Parchment, a very fair and Ancient Draught, *Quæ* Californiam *in ingentis Inſulæ modum, a Continente divideret*, in which it was expreſſed for a ſpacious Iſland, *lib*.6.*cap*.17. The reaſon of the Errour was, that thoſe who firſt indeavoured the Diſcovery of it, ſayling up the Sea of *Mer Vermiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North ; till it ſeemed to be no bigger than ſome mighty River : but that of ſuch a violent current, that no Boat was able to paſs upwards with wind, or Oar, unleſs haled up with Cords by the ſtrength of Men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rhio de Bona Guia* ; known by that name, and continued in the opinion of being a River, till the year 1620. or thereabouts. At what time ſome Adventurers beating on theſe Coaſts, fell accidently upon a ſtraight but violent paſſage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a ſtrong current into *Mer Vermiglio* ; diſcovering by that Accident, that the waters falling into that Sea, was not a River, as formerly had been ſuppoſed, but a violent breaking in of the Northern Ocean ; by conſequence that this part of *Califormia* was not a Demi-Iſland, or *Peninſula*, but a perfect Iſland. And looking on it as an Iſland, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *Califormia* ſpecially ſo called.

1. And firſt *Califormia* ſpecially ſo called, containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38. where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*. Of which Countrey though ſo near to *New Spain*, and *New Gallicia*, and though diſcovered ſo long ſince, we yet know but little : the *Spaniards* either wanting men for new *Plantations*, or finding ſmall incouragements here to invite them to it. Furniſhed on the Sea coaſts with great plenty both of Fiſh and Fowl, which they find in great Iſlands of Weeds, floating on the Seas ; and more within the Land, with a kind of Beaſts haired like a *Goat*, and with teats like a Cow, but otherwiſe reſembling *Deer* ; which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it ſaid to caſt Fire Aſhes, which the *Spaniards* for that reaſon call *Cacofogo*. The people numerous, and thick ſet ; inſomuch that on the banks of the ſuppoſed River of *Bona Guia*, were numbred three and twenty Nations, all of ſeveral Languages. In their perſons like the reſt of the *Salvages*, but of different Dreſſes. Some of them Painting their faces all over, ſome half way only, other with painted *Vizards* reſembling faces : holes in their Noſtrils, for their Pendants ; the tips of their Eares loaded, if not over-loaded, with the bones of Fiſhes hanging at them. A Girdle about their waſte, to which they faſten a bunch of Feathers that hang down behind them like a Tail : the women uſing the like bunches before them alſo. Their chief God the *Sun*, (as that of *Cibola* is the *Water*) which they moſt affectionately Worſhip, as the cauſe of the increaſe of their fruits and plants. Joyned in commiſſion with which God, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to Worſhip a woodden *Croſs* (the more irrational *Idolatry* of the two) which he cauſed to be erected at his coming away ; with inſtructions to kneel before it every morning, at the firſt riſing of the *Sun* : ſo teaching them to Worſhip their two Idols at once, or to tranſlate their devotions from the *Sun* a Creature of *God's*, to a plain woodden *Croſs* (of which they knew nothing but the form) the work of a *Carpenter*.

It is alſo told of this people, that each family is ordered by the Father of it, without other government: yet ſo well managed, that they allowed but one wife to a man, and puniſhed *Adultery* with death; the *Maids* not ſuffered to converſe, or talk with men before their marriage, but to abide at home and work; the *Widows* not to marry again, till they had mourned at leaſt half a year for the death of their Huſbands. Matters more ſavouring an *Utopian* Common-Wealth, than a *Califormian*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it. 1. The *Capes* of S. *Clara*, and S. *Lucas*; the firſt on the South-Eaſt point of the *Peninſula* towards *New Gallicia*; the other on the South-Weſt towards *Aſia*. 2 S. *Croſſes*, (*Sinus S. Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the *Cape* of S. *Clara*; ſo called becauſe diſcovered upon *Holy Rood* day. 3 *Cabo di las Plaias*, more within the Bay; ſo named, becauſe the ſhore ſhewed in little Hillocks, without graſs, or ſhrubs; the *Spaniſh* word ſignifying as much. 4 *Cabo Boxo*, towards the bottome of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other ſide may be eaſily ſeen) in the *Latitude* of 29. 5 S. *Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Iſland of the ſame name, with ſome Cottages in it. 6. S. *Thome*, an Iſland of 25 leagues in compaſs, at the mouth of the *Gulf*; riſing towards the South in an high Mountain, under which a convenient Road for ſhipping, the Sea being thereabout 25 fathoms. Then on the other ſide towards the Sea, we have 7 S. *Abad*, a convenient Haven, ſurrounded with a Countrey which ſeemed Rich and Pleaſant. 8 *Cape Trinidado*, a Promontory well known to Sea-men. 9 *Cape de Cedros*, ſo called from the *Cedars* growing near it, in the *Latitude* of 28. and 15 minutes; with an Iſland not far off of the ſame name alſo. 10 *Cape Enganno*, in the *Latitude* of 31. 11. *Puebla de las Canoas*, ſo named from the multitude of *Boats*, (by themſelves called *Canoes*) which the people uſed; four degrees more Northward than that *Cape*. And 12 *Cabo de Galera*, ſo named from the reſemblance which it had to an *Hat*, in the *Latitude* of 36. But theſe two placed by *John de Laet* within the Countrey of *Seyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quivira*. Underſtand here, that theſe are only the names of places, not of Towns, or Villages, (for whether there be any ſuch, I am yet unſatisfied:) and that there are many other Promontories, Bayes, Rivers and Iſlands on both ſides of this Region, which I find no names for.

The firſt diſcovery of this Countrey we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez* (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534. furniſhed out two Ships from the Haven of St. *Jago* in the Weſtern ſhores of *Hiſpania Nova*, to ſearch theſe Seas: who making ſome ſmall progreſs in it, encouraged him the next year to purſue it in perſon; and paſſing up the Gulf as high as to the River of S. *Peter*, and *Paul*, (ſo called, becauſe diſcovered on the 29 of *June*, the Annual feaſt of thoſe Apoſtles) for want of Victuals and other neceſſary proviſions, returned back again. The buſineſs having ſlept a while, was in the year 1539. awakened by *Franciſco de Ulloa*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before; who did not only ſearch to the bottome of the Gulf, but having throughly canvaſſed all the Eaſtern ſhores, he turned his courſe, and made as fortunate a Diſcovery alſo of the Weſtern Coaſts. Landing, he took poſſeſſion of the Countrey, with the wonted ceremonies, for the King of *Spain*; and in the place ſet up a *Croſs* to ſerve as a remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando* the *Alarcon*, who diſcovered many leagues up the courſe of the ſuppoſed River of *Buena Guia*; where *Naguacatus*, one of the *Chiefs* of their *Clans*, or Tribes, did ſubmit unto him; advancing ſo far towards the North, that at the laſt he heard news of *Sibala*; but unprovided at that time for a journey thither. And on the other ſide, *Rodorico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coaſting along the Weſtern ſhores of this Countrey, diſcovered two ſmall Iſlands beyond Cape *Galera*; the one of which he called S. *Lukes*, and the other the Iſland of *Poſſeſſion*; and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinas*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was *Gold* and *Silver*; and hungry honour yielding but a poor ſubſiſtence; the further ſearch of theſe Countries was quite laid aſide; almoſt as little known now, as before *Columbus* firſt ſet ſail upon *New Diſcoveries*.

4. *NOVA ALBION* formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but ſome part of this Iſland; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and ſo Northwards as far as to Cape *Blanco*, as they call it now. Diſcovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the World, *An.* 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England*, his own Country, which was once called *Albion*.

The Countrey abundantly repleniſhed with Herds of Deer, graſing upon the Hills by thouſands: as alſo with a kind of Conies, in their feet ſomewhat like a *Want*, and on each ſide a Sack where they keep ſuch victuals as they cannot eat. The fleſh of theſe Conies ſerves the people for food; and of their ſkins, the Kings, or Chiefs of their ſeveral Tribes, make their Royal robes. The men quite naked; the women with a piece of Mat inſtead of an Apron, chaſte, and obedient to their Huſbands. Their Houſes made of Turf and Oſier, ſo wrought together, as ſerves to keep them from the cold; in the midſt whereof they have an Hearth where they make fire, about which they lye along upon Beds of Bulruſhes. What Towns they have, and whether they have any, or not, and by what names called, if they have any, muſt be referred to a further Diſcovery: there being nothing to that purpoſe delivered hitherto. And yet not ſeated ſo far North, but that it may be capable of a further light, if any Noble Undertakers would adventure on it.

The *Engliſh* were no ſooner landed, but the Inhabitants preſented themſelves before the *General*, with preſents of Feathers, and Kalls of Net-work made of Bull-ruſhes; which he received and requited with great humanity. The news of their Arrival being carried further, one of their Kings thought fit to beſtow a viſit on them. A perſon of a goodly ſtature, attired in *Cony-ſkins*, with many tall men attending on him; one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of bone, but the Crowns of Knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniouſly compoſed. After him followed many of the common ſort, every one having his face painted with white, black, and ſome other colours ; and every one with ſome preſent, or other in their hands, even the very boyes. Being brought into the *Generals* preſence, the Mace-bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not underſtood : and that being ended, the King cauſed the Crown to be put upon the *Generals* head, and the three Chains about his neck ; the common people offering ſacrifices about the Fields, in great ſolemnity. Not to be interdicted thoſe ſuperſtitions, though the *Engliſh* (whom they took for Gods) ſeemed offended at them. Finally, after much kindneſs expreſſed on both ſides, the *General* promiſing in the name of the Queen of *England*, to take them into his protection ; he cauſed a Pillar to be erected in the place : on which he faſtned the Arms of *England*, the Queens name, and his own ; and ſo returned into his ſhips. But the Country lying ſo far off that no benefit could redound by it to the *Engliſh* Nation, but the honour of the firſt Diſcovery, the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at laſt quite left out of the Maps, or Charts ; only a point, or Promontory, by the name of *Po de Franciſco Draco*, being left unto us to preſerve his memory. And though we have cauſed the name of *Nova Albion* to be reſtored unto the Maps, as it was before : yet we muſt let the Reader know, that the name of *New Albion* hath been given lately with as much propriety, but more hopes of profit and advantage, to that part of *Virginia*, which lyeth betwixt *Mary-Land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Oppoſite to Cape *Blanco*, and the extreme North parts of *America*, the ſuppoſed Kingdome of *ANIAN*, from whence the Streights of *Anian*, which are thought by ſome to part *America* from *Aſia*, do derive their name, is conceived to lye. Suppoſed, and ſuppoſed only, for not certainly known : the very being of ſuch a Kingdome, and ſuch *Streights*, being much ſuſpected.

OF NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the Eaſt and South with *Nova Hiſpania*, or *New Spain*; on the Weſt, with the River *Buena Guia*, and the Gulf of *Califormia*; the Countries beyond it on the North not diſcovered hitherto. So called becauſe of ſome reſemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia*, a Province of *Spain*, in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for diſtinctions ſake.

It is ſituate between the 18th. and 28th. degrees of the Northern *Latitude*, which meaſured from the Port of the *Nativity* (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Navidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the moſt Northern border of *Cinaloa*, makes 300 leagues: the breadth hereof, for ſo much as is poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, but an hundred only. But taking in *New Biſcay*, and *Nova Mexicana* into the Accompt, the breadth will be greater than the length.

The Air hereof generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat than cold; many times ſubject unto Thunders and great ſtorms of rain; but for the moſt part of ſo ſound a conſtitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious diſeaſes ſeldome known amongſt them. The ground by conſequence ſomewhat of the drieſt; if not moiſtned with the morning Dews, which fall very frequently; and whether by the temperature of the Air, or Soil, apt to produce a kind of Gnat (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a bean, which by their ſtings do very often plague the people, and raiſe bliſters on their bodies as big as *Walnuts*.

The Countrey more Mountainous than plain, and in moſt parts ſandy; Quaries of ſtone in many places, but little Marble, or any other ſtone of value. Good ſtore of Mines of Braſs and Silver, few of Gold, or Iron; and amongſt all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The ſoil ſo rich that it yields 60 meaſures of Wheat for one; and for one of *Maize*, above two hundred: the Rivers plentifull of Fiſh, and the Woods of Beaſts; great ſtore of Bees without ſtings, which make their Honey in the Foreſts without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figgs, *Malcotons*, and other *Europæan* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the *Cherry* and the *Olive*; of which the laſt is moſt an end undermined by Emmets; and the firſt thruſts out ſuch an harveſt of Leaves (occaſioned by the natural rankneſs of the ground) that they ſeldom come to their perfection.

The people wavering and inconſtant, apt upon any diſcontent to forſake their houſes, betake themſelves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their antient *Barbariſm*. Crafty, and docile even in matters which concern *Religion*: but ſloathfull and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages. Much given to ſinging, dancing, and ſometimes to drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquor, few of them would betake themſelves to the cares of Husbandry. Of ſtature reaſonably tall; their Garments for the moſt part a ſhirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, faſtned with two buckles about their ſhoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatneſs of their ſeveral Tribes: thoſe *Tribes* commanded by their *Chiefs*, who ſucceed *hereditarily*; but ſubject to the Judges and other Officers of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themſelves generally to *Merchandize*, and the ſearch of Metals; ſome few to Husbandry and graſing, but make not the beſt uſe which they might of the Countrey: For though here be great plenty both of *Sugar-Canes*, and of *Coccineel*, yet they neglect to refine the one, and attend the ordering of the other; finding perhaps an eaſier, or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountain of moſt note in all this Countrey, is that betwixt *Guadalaira* and *Zacatecas*; a league in height, but of ſuch a *precipice* withall, that no Horſe nor Cattel can aſcend it: their other Hils Rocky, but cloathed with woods, full of vaſt Pines, large Oaks, and great ſtore of Wolves. The River of moſt name is that called *Bazania*, which riſing out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hiſpania*, falls down a *Cataract* about four leagues from *Guadalaiara*, of ten fathoms deep, and ſo tumbleth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place fordable, nor having any paſſage over it but on Reeds and *Rafts*, on which the paſſenger ſitteth with his Commodities, his Horſe ſwimming by; nor ſafe at any time, and at moſt times dangerous. Some *Lakes* here be of 20. ſome of 12. leagues compaſs; environed with rich Paſtures on every ſide. Thoſe of leſs note ſhall be remembred in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of 1. *Cinaloa*. 2. *Conliacan*. 3. *Xaliſco*, and 4. *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſtern ſhores. 5. *Zacatecas*. 6. *New Biſcay*. 7. *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all theſe ſomewhat ſhall be ſaid, though of each but little.

1. *CINALOA*, is the moſt Northern Province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the Weſt, with the River of *Buena Guia*, and ſome part of the Bay of *Califormia*; on the Eaſt, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepecſuan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cibola*; on the South, with *Conliacan*.

The Air for the moſt part clear and healthy, the ſoil fat and fruitfull, productive of *Maize*, Pulſe, a ſort of long Peaſe which the *Latines* call *Phaſeoli*, but we have no proper *Engliſh* name for; of which abundantly plentifull. Great ſtore of *Cotton wool*, wherewith both ſexes are apparelled. Well watered with the Rivers, 1. *Petatlan*. 2. *Tamochala*. 3. *Paſcua*. 4. *Taquim*; of no long courſe, all of them riſing from the Hills of *Teperſuam*, and thoſe but 36 leagues diſtant from the Sea ſhores. By reaſon of theſe Rivers here are very rich Paſtures, which breed great ſtore of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattel.

The people are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards* by a hand breadth, warlike and ſtrong, not conquered by the *Spaniards* without great difficulty; their Arms a Bow and poiſoned Arrows, with great maſſie Clubs. Their Garments for the moſt part of *Cotton-wool*; their hair nouriſhed to a great length, which the men tye up in a knot, but the Women ſuffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes at the firſt coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without cloaths at all, but to hide their ſhame; moſt miſerably poor, worſhippers of the Sun, and not a few *Cannibals* amongſt them.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. S. *Philip* and *Jacob*, ſituate on the bank of a River, about 42 leagues from the Town of *Couliacan*, but of no great note. 2. S. *Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards* planted here long ſince; and re-inforced by a ſupply brought thither in the year 1554. by *Franciſco de Tharra*; ſcarce able to defend themſelves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon diſturb them with a freſh Alarm. Beſides theſe here are only ſome ſcattered Villages, and thoſe not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Country, when they firſt made themſelves Maſters of it, under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, Anno 1542. People every where ſubmitting without any reſiſtance, or if they gathered to an head, ſoon diſperſed again. For what could naked men do againſt an Army?

2. *COULIACAN*, or *CULUCAN*, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coaſting along the Bay of *Califormia*, which it hath on the Weſt; and part of *New Biſcay*, on the Eaſt. The Country well provided of fruits, inferiour unto none for all ſorts of proviſions; and not without ſome Mines of *Silver* found out by the *Spaniards*. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Rio de Mucheras*, or the River of *Women*, in the North part of the Province; ſo called becauſe the *Spaniards* found there more women than men, occaſioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*. 2. *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River; both ſides whereof are very well peopled. 3. *Piaſtla*, more towards *Xaliſco*.

The people not much different from the reſt of *Gallicia*, ſave that their *Women* were more handſom, both for dreſs and perſonage: all cloathed in Garments of Cotton-wool, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*; and yet the men not free from the Sin of *Sodom*. Their houſes neatly thatched with ſtraw; and over the *Lintels* of the Doors ſome Paintings, as ſhameleſs as the very fowleſt of *Aretines* Poſtures. Ignorant of *Gold*, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted, to their coſt, with *Silver*; which they are compelled to dig, and refine for the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Piaſtla*, on the River ſo called, about a dayes journey from the Sea; well built, and artificially contrived in reſpect of others; never recovered of that blow which it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conqueſt of this Country waſted all before them. 2. *Quinola*, near *Rio des Mugeres*. 3. *Quatrabarrios*, an old Town, but new named by the *Spaniards*, becauſe it conſiſted of four parts. 4. *El Leon*, an old Burrough which from a *Lyon* there found, had this new name alſo. 5. *Couliacan*, on a River ſo named, once the chief of this Province. 4. S. *Michael*, on the River of *Women*, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25. but afterwards deſerted, or removed rather to a fitter place: and now fixed in the Valley of *Harroba*, two leagues from the Sea, in a flouriſhing and wealthy ſoyl both for Corn and Paſturage. The whole Country conquered by the *Spaniards*, An. 1531. under *Nonnez de Guzman*, moſt barbarouſly burning down the Towns, and deſtroying the people; as if they came not to ſubdue, but root out the Nation.

3. *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as ſome Writers call it, hath on the North, *Couliacan*; on the South, *New Spain*; on the Eaſt, the Province of *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſt, the large Bay of *Califormia*. So called from *Xaliſco* the chief Town of it, when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

The ſoyl hereof very fit for *Maize*, which it yields good ſtore of, but not often herbage good for Cattel; which is reckoned for their greateſt want. The North parts called *Chiametla*, of the two moſt fruitfull, and better peopled; having in it ſtore of Wax and Honey, with ſome Mines of *Silver*. The people formerly *Man-eaters*, and much given to quarrel; from which Reformed ſince their *Converſion* to the Goſpel. Tenacious ſtill of one of their antient Cuſtoms, which is to carry the ſmalleſt burden upon their ſhoulders, and not under their arms; which to do they think very much miſ-becoming.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. S. *Sebaſtians*. 2. *Rio de Spiritu Sancto*, and 3. the great and famous River of *Barania*, ſpoken of before. Upon the banks of which are ſituate their moſt principal Towns, *viz.* 1. *Xaliſco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the *Spaniards Sierra de Xaliſco*, thruſting it ſelf into the Bay of *Califormia*, over againſt the Iſlands called the *Three Maries*; the City taken and deſtroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1530. 2. *Compoſtella*, now the chief City of the Country, and a Biſhops See; founded by the ſaid *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1531. when he had fully conquered the Country: by whom peopled with *Spaniards*, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in ſo ill a place, and ſo bad an air, deſtitute both of food for men, and graſs for horſes, as plainly ſhewed him to have better judgement in Souldiery than in *Architecture*. 3. *Purification*, a ſmall Burrough on the Sea-ſide, and in the extremity of this Country towards *Nova Hiſpania*, near the Port of *Natividad*. 4. S. *Sebaſtian* in *Chiametla*, on the River ſo called, firſt built by *Franciſco de Tharra* above mentioned: who having found hereabouts ſome rich Mines of *Silver*, brought hither in the year 1554. a new *Spaniſh* Colony; and building houſes for his *Miners* in convenient places, occaſioned the whole Tract to be called *de Tharra*.

4. *GUADALAIARA* hath on the Weſt, *Xaliſco*; on the Eaſt and South, ſome parts of *Nova Hiſpania*; on the North, the Province of *Zacatecas*: well watered with the River *Barania*, which runneth through the midſt thereof, ſome of his by-ſtreams moiſtning the other parts. The Country very

wealthy in Mines of *Silver*, plentiful of *Maize*, and fortunate in the production of Wheat and ſuch other fruits, as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the people we have before, applied in general to all the Natives of *New Gallicia*, but moſt peculiar unto theſe.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Guadalaiara*, ſo called with reference to a Town of that name in *New Caſtile*, and giving name unto the Province, ſituate on the banks of the River *Barania*, or ſome branch thereof, in a ſweet air, and a moſt rich and pleaſing ſoyl; where founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1531. when he had perfected his Conqueſt: better adviſed in the choice of the place, than in that of *Compoſtella* before mentioned. A City of ſo good eſteem, that it paſſeth for the *Metropolis* of all *New Gallicia*; honoured with the Courts of *Judicature*, the reſidence of the Kings Treaſurers, and a Biſhops See, removed hither from *Compoſtella*, An. 1570. Beautified on this laſt occaſion with a fair *Cathedral*, a Convent of *Franciſcans*, and another of *Auguſtine* Friers. 2. *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the ſaid *Nonnez* in that part of this Country, which is called *Tepique*: but not elſe obſervable. 3. *Sancta Maria de los Lagos*, built by the ſame founder, 30 leagues on the Eaſt of *Guadalaiara*; and the beſt defence of all this Province againſt the *Chichimicas*, a barbarous and untamed people on the North and Eaſt parts of this Country: who harbouring themſelves in the thickeſt of the Woods, and ſome unknown Caves, do many times prey upon the Country; which they would utterly deſtroy, if not thus repreſſed.

5. *ZACATECAS* is abounded on the South, with *Guadalaiara*; on the North, with *New Biſcay*; on the Weſt, with *Culnacan*, and ſome part of *Xaliſco*; on the Eaſt, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Country of a different nature. In the weſt parts called properly *Los Zacatecas*, rich in Mines of *Silver*, (no one Province more) but deſtitute of Wheat, *Maize*, Water, and all other proviſions; as if it were deſigned for ſome wealthy *Miſer*, who could live upon the ſight of Treaſure. The Eaſtern parts properly called *Uxitipa*, not ſo well furniſhed with *Silver*, but moſt abundantly provided with all ſorts of fruits; their Wooods repleniſhed with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving entertainment to ſome Bird, or other: in a word, nothing wanting in it, either for neceſſity, or pleaſure. Of the people, I find nothing ſingular, but that they are affirmed to be more induſtrious than the moſt of their Neighbours; whether by force, or nature (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their *Silver*-mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Los Zacatecas*, neighboured by moſt wealthy Mines, 40 leagues on the North of *Guadalaiara*; inhabited by about 500. *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciſcans*. 2. *S. Martins*, 27. leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were firſt opened by *Franciſco de Tharra*, before mentioned; who with many ſlaves, and all things neceſſary for a War, was ſent upon that errand by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, An. 1554. The Town inhabited by a Colony of 400. *Spaniards*, beſides women and children. 3. S. *Lukes*, and 4. *De Avinno*, built amongſt *Mines* as wealthy as thoſe before, by the ſame *De Tharra*: as alſo was 5. *Erena*, a ſmall Town, but of the ſame eſtate for *Silver*; diſtant from *Zacatecas* 25 leagues towards the North-weſt. 6. *Nombre di Dios*, in the moſt Northern parts of this Country, 68 leagues from *Guadalaiara*; the foundation of the ſame *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the *Natives*, and quieted them after ſome Rebellions by gentle uſage, built this Town in a pleaſant and fruitfull ſoyl: and having got the Government of the Countreys which he had diſcovered, drew hither ſo many of the *Spaniards* and chief men of the Natives, by granting them the propriety of ſome *Silver*-mines, that it became the chief and beſt peopled Town of all this Province. 7. *Durango*, in the valley of *Guadiana*, about eight leagues diſtant from *Nombre di Dios*, peopled by a Colony of *Spaniards* conducted thither by *Alfonſo Pacheco*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this treaſure. 8. *Xeres de Frontera*, firſt built for the repreſſing of ſome of the *Salvages*, who uſed to infeſt the borders towards *Guadalaiara*, during the Regency of the Marques of *Villa Maurique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *UXITIPA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, ſubdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, imployed therein by *Nonnez de Guzman*, An. 1529. at that time Governour of that Province. Diſmembred from it ſince the conqueſt of *Zacatecas*, and made a Member of the *Præfecture* of *New Gallicia*. The chief Town of it called S. *Lewis*, built in a pleaſant Valley by the ſaid *Pacheco*, and by him peopled with a Colony of *Spaniards*: the Town not diſtant from *Panuco* above twenty leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCAIA*, or *New Biſcay*, hath on the South, *Los Zacatecas*; on the Weſt, *Cinalca*; on the North, *Nova Mexicana*; the Countreys towards the Eaſt not diſcovered hitherto. So called by *Franciſco de Tharra*, by whom firſt ſubdued, from the near neighbourhood which it had unto *Nova Gallicia*, of which ſince reckoned for a part.

The Country ſubject in the Winter to great froſts and ſnows; but notwithſtanding well provided for all things neceſſary; and wonderfully enriched with Mines of *Silver*. They have alſo ſome of *Lead*, which ſerve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the other; uſed to this purpoſe not alone in theſe *Mines* of *New Biſcay*, but in thoſe alſo of *New Spain*. The people reſolute and ſtout, not conquered at the firſt attempt, nor won ſo much by force, as by fair perſwaſions.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. S. *Barbara*, and 2. S. *Johns*, about three leagues diſtant; built only for the benefit of the *Mines* adjoyning. 3. *Ende*, the furtheſt Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North; of whom a Colony was there planted (by reaſon of the adjoyning *Mines*) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did alſo fortifie it, by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Diſtant from S. *Barbara*, and S. *John* about twenty leagues, and an hundred and twenty leagues from *Los Zacatecas*. More North by ſeventy leagues at leaſt, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniard*, are ſaid to be thoſe four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Cienagas*; but I have nothing of them certain.

This Country firſt ſubdued by *Franciſco de Ibarra*, who after he had built *Durango* in the North parts of *Las Zacatecas*, and aſſured that Province, advanced with a Troop of 130. horſe, for the Diſcovery and Conqueſt of his Northern Neighbours. Encountred at the firſt more with hunger and thirſt, than with any oppoſition of the Inhabitants; inſomuch that they were fain to eat their Horſes: and afterwards by the Rebellion of the *Natives*, who killed the greateſt part of ſuch Horſes as were left uneaten. But not diſcouraged herewith, nor with the many difficulties which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his paſſage thorow the Woods by the ſwords of his Souldiers; he prevailed at laſt, and having ſetled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinoloa*, which he alſo Conquered; and planted there a Colony in the Town of *S. Johns*, as was ſaid before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA*, is bounded on the South, with *New Biſcay*; on the Weſt, with *Quivira*; the Countries on the North, and Eaſt, not diſcovered hitherto; though ſome extend it Eaſtwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250. Leagues from the Town and *Mines* of S. *Barbara*, and how much beyond that none can tell; the *Relations* of this Country being ſo uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare ſay nothing poſitively of the ſoil or People, but much leſs of the Towns and Cities which are ſaid to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Citizen of *Mexico* in *New Spain*, by whom diſcovered and ſubdued.

For firſt, they tell us of the People, that they are of great ſtature (and that like enough, but not ſo probable) that they have the Art of dreſſing *Chamois* and other *Leather*, as well as the beſt *Leather-Dreſſer* in all *Flanders*: or that they have Shoes and Boots ſo well ſewed and ſoaled, that no *Shoo-Maker* in all S. *Martins* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the houſes well built of Lime and Stone, ſome of them four Stories, and in moſt of them *Stoves* for the Winter Seaſon. The Streets even, and ordered in an excellent Manner. Particularly they tell us of a Town called, 1. *Chia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cuames*, which is ſaid to contain eight Market-Places, and all the houſes to be plaiſtered and painted in moſt curious Manner. 2. Of *Acoma*, that it is ſituate on the top of a Rock, a great Town, yet no way unto it but by *Ladders*; and in one place a pair of ſtairs, but exceeding narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well fortified by Nature, (they ſay true in that, if any things were true which they tell us of it) and all their water kept in Ciſterns (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3. Of *Conibas*, on a Lake ſo called, the City ſeven Leagues long, two broad, (a ſecond *Ninive*) but the Houſes ſcatteringly built amongſt Hills and Gardens, which takes up a great deal of the room: Inhabited by a People of ſuch ſtrength and courage, that the *Spaniards* only faced it, and ſo went away. Much of this ſtuff I could afford you, but by this taſt we may conjecture of the reſt of the *Feaſt*.

The Country firſt diſcovred by *Auguſtino Royaz*, a *Franciſcan* Frier, *Anno* 1580. who out of Zeal to plant the Goſpel in the North, accompanied with two other Friers of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the *Adventure*. But one of the *Monks* being killed by the *Salvages*, the Souldiers plaid the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram* a Frier of the ſame Order, (from whoſe mouth we muſt have the former Fictions) deſirous to preſerve the lives of his Fellows which ſtaid behind, encouraged one *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Native of *Corduba*, but a Citizen of *Mexico*, to engage in ſuch an *holy Cauſe*: who raiſing a Band of 150. horſe, accompanied with many *Slaves*, and Beaſts of Carriage, undertook the buſineſs. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchi*, *Paſnugates*, *Toboſi*, *Patarabyes*, *Tarrahumares*, *Tepoanes*, and many other as hard names, which he paſſed thorow in his way. But coming at the laſt to a great River which he called *Del Nort*, there he made a ſtand; cauſed the Country on both ſides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, ſituate in the 37th. degree of *Northern* Latitude, and diſtant from old *Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name ſince changed to that of S. *Fogye*, but ſtill the *Metropolis* of that Province, the *Reſidence* of the Governour, and a pretty Garriſon conſiſting of two hundred and fifty *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming hither, *viz.* 2. *Socorro*, ſo called by the *Spaniards* becauſe of that ſuccour and relief they found there for their half ſtarved Bodies. 3. *Senecu*, 4. *Pilabo*, and 5. *Seviletta*, old Towns but new *Chriſtened* by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Goſpel; each of them beautified with a Church. 6. S. *Johns*, built afterwards in the year 1599. by *John de Onnate*, who with an Army of five thouſand followed the ſame way which *Eſpeio* went; and having got a great deal of Treaſure, laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the moſt I dare relie on for this Country: And this hath no ſuch Wonders in it, but what an eaſie Faith may give credit to: though I had rather believe the *Friers* whole Relations, than go thither to diſprove any part thereof.

OF
NOVA HISPANIA.

NOVA HISPANIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Golf of *Mexico*; on the Weſt, with parts of *Nova Gallicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North, with the reſt of *New Gallicia*, ſome part of *Florida*, and the *Golf*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-Sea only. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*; with reference to which the Kings of *Spain* call themſelves *Reges Hiſpaniorum*, in the Plural number.

It extendeth from the 15th. Degree of *Latitude* to the 26th. excluſively, *i.* meaſuring it on the Eaſt-ſide by the Bay of *Mexico* to the North of *Panuco*; but ſix degrees leſs, meaſuring it on the Weſt-ſide to the Port of *Natividad*, where it joyneth with *Gallicia Nova*. Or making our accompt by miles, it is in breadth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200. *Spaniſh* leagues, or 600. *Italian* miles; but hardly half as much on the other ſide. The length hereof from the Eaſt point of *Jucutan*, to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200. *Italian* miles, or 400. leagues; which is juſt double to the breadth.

The air exceeding temperate, though ſituate wholly under the *Torrid Zone*: the heats thereof much qualified by thoſe cooling blaſts, which fan it from the Sea on the three ſides of it; and by thoſe frequent ſhowres which fall continually in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, the hotteſt ſeaſons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhauſtible *Mines* of Gold and Silver, ſome of Braſs and Iron; plenty of *Coco-nuts*, of which we have ſpoke before; great ſtore of *Caſſia*; ſuch a wonderfull increaſe of *Coccineel*, that 5670. *Arrobas* of it, (each *Arroba* containing 25. Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure) have been ſhipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way, this *Coccineel* groweth on a ſmall Tree, or ſhrub having very thick leaves; which they call a *Tuna*; planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: out of the ſeed whereof ariſeth a ſmall worm, at firſt no bigger than a Flea, and the greateſt not much bigger than our common Lady-cows, which they much reſemble; which feeding on the leaves, and over-ſpreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the *Natives* twice a year, ſtifled with aſhes, or with water (but this laſt the beſt) dried to a powder in the ſhade, and ſo tranſported into *Europe*. Here is alſo great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulſe of all ſorts, and of all ſuch Plants and Roots as we ſet in Gardens for the kitchin; Pomgranates, Orenges, Limons, Citrons, *Malcotoons*, Figs and Cherries, even to ſuperfluity; Apples and Pears in leſs abundance, few Grapes, and thoſe few they have not fit for wine; Plenty of *Maize*, and other Plants unknown in *Europe*; Birds and Beaſts, wild and tame of all ſorts, and of each no ſcarcity. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but ſome in one, ſome in another, according to the conſtitution of the ſoyl and air: which is ſo different in this Country, that in ſuch parts hereof as are hot and dry, their ſeed time is in *April*, or *May*, their Harveſt in *October*; but in ſuch places of it as are low and moiſt, they ſow their Corn in *October*, and reap in *May*: thus having two Harveſts in a year, and yet but one.

The people more ingenious than the reſt of the *Salvages*, exquiſite at ſome *Mechanick* Arts, ſpecially in the making of their *Feather-pictures*; and ſo induſtrious withall, ſo patient both of thirſt and hunger, that they will ſit at it an whole day without meat, or drink; turning every Feather to the light, upwards and downwards, every way, to ſee in which poſture it will beſt fit the place intended to it. No better *Gold-ſmiths* in the world, nor men more expert any where in refining Metals, curious in painting upon Cotton, whatſoever was preſented to the eye. But yet ſo *barbarous* withall, that they thought the Gods were pleaſed with the blood of men, which ſometimes they *ſacrificed* unto them. So ignorant, that when they firſt ſaw the *Spaniards* on *Horſe-back*, they thought the horſe and man to have been one creature; and would ask what the Horſes ſaid, when they heard them *neigh*. So careleſs of the worth of *Gold*, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Glaſs-beads, little Bells, and ſuch petit trifles. But whatſoever they once were, is not now material: the *Spaniard's* having made ſuch havock of this wretched people, that in 17. years they deſtroyed above ſix *millions* of them; roaſting ſome, plucking out the eyes of others, conſuming them in their Mines, and mercileſly caſting them amongſt wild Beaſts where they were devoured. And as for thoſe who do remain, beſides their own natural *ingenioſities*, they have ſince learned the *Civilities* and Arts of *Europe*. What elſe concerns this ſoyl and people, we ſhall ſhew more particularly, if we find it neceſſary, in their proper places.

Amongſt the Rarities of this Country (though there be many Plants in it of a ſingular nature) I reckon that which they call *Magney*, or *Meto*, ſaid to be one of the principal: a Tree which they both plant and dreſs as we do our *Vines*. It hath on it 40. kind of Leaves fit for ſeveral uſes. For when they be tender, they make of them Conſerves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shoos, Girdles, and Cordage; upon them there grow certain *Prickles*, ſo ſtrong and ſharp, that the people uſe them in ſtead of *Sawes*. From the top of the Tree cometh a juyce like *Syrrup*; which if you ſeeth it, will become Honey; if purified, Sugar; they may make alſo Wine and Vinegar of it. The *Bark* of it roaſted maketh a good Plaiſter for hurts and ſores; and from the higheſt of the Boughs comes a kind of *Gum*, a ſoveraign Antidote againſt Poiſons.

Nor is it leſs a *Rarity*, though leſs uſefull to the good of Mankind, (except it be to keep them in continual mind of the *Fires* of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Country, called *Propocampeche*, (ſituate in the Province of *Mexico*) which vomiteth flames of fire like *Ætna*: and another in the Province of *Guaxaca*, which ſendeth forth two burning ſtreams, the one of *red Pitch*, and the other of *black*; a fit reſemblance of thoſe Fountains of *Fire* and *Brimſtone*. Though they have many other Mountains, yet theſe moſt memorable. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watry commodity; yet here are none remarkable for length, or greatneſs, but *Panuco* only, of which more preſently. The want thereof ſupplied by ſome famous Lakes, and the neighbourhood of the *Gulf* of *Mexico*. Amongſt the *Lakes*, the principal are thoſe of *Mexico* (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Gallicia Nova*; which for its greatneſs hath the name of *Mare Chapalicum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greateſt beauty is the *Golf* of *Mexico*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of the world: in form completely *Circular*, in compaſs no leſs than 900. miles; environed with the main land, the *Peninſulas* of *Florida* and *Jucutan*, and the Iſle of *Cuba*. Two only paſſages in and out, and both well fortified; the one betwixt the point of *Jucutan*, and the Iſle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent current entreth; the other betwixt the ſaid Iſland and the Cape of *Florida*, where it makes as violent an *exit*: the Sea ſo heady in the middeſt, and yet ſafe enough, that ſhips are not to ſayl in it directly forwards, but muſt bend either towards the North, or South, as their journey lieth. Upon this Golf the King of *Spain* hath alwayes ſome ſhips in readineſs; by which he more aſſureth his Eſtate, in this part of *America*, than by all his Garriſons.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of, 1. *Panuco*, 2. *Mexicana*, 3. *Mechoacan*, 4. *Tlaſcala*, 5. *Gnaxata*, 6. *Chiapa*, 7. *Jucutan*. Some others of leſs note, but reduced to theſe.

1. *PANUCO*, the moſt Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by ſome called *Guaſtecan*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Golf* of *Mexico*; on the Weſt, with *Uxitipa*, a Member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in *New Gallicia*; on the North, with *Florida*, and ſome Countreys not yet diſcovered, from which parted by the River of *Palms*; on the South-weſt, with *Mechuacan*; and on the South, with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which riſing out of the Hills of *Tepecſuan*, bordering upon *Cinoloa* and *Couliacan*, and dividing *New Biſcay* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, paſſeth through the middle of this Country, and ſo at laſt into the *Golf*.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 50. leagues, and the breadth as much. Divided into three Provinces. That towards *Mexicana*, called *Aiotuxetlan*, of a fruitfull ſoyl, and not without ſome Mines of Gold; once very populous, till in the year 1522. diſpeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez*, in his War againſt them. The other called *Chila*, leſs fruitfull, but poſſibly for want of people to improve the Land: for being formerly of a ſtout couragious nature, and truſting over-much to their *Fens* and *Faſtneſſes*, they put the *Spaniards* to ſuch trouble when they warred upon them, that the Conquerours to ſecure themſelves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out and deſtroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palms*, inclined to barrenneſs, and unpleaſant; but the name I find not.

Chief Towns hereof at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, 1. *Las Caxas*, 2. *Yxicuyan*, 3. *Nachapatan*, 4. *Taquinite*, 5. *Tuzeteco*, deſolate and laid waſte by the cruel *Spaniards*. Of moſt note now, 6. *Tanehipa*, and 7. *Tameclipa*, two ſmall Burroughs in the Province of the River of *Palms* (for ſo I call it) inhabited by the *Natives* only. 8. S. *Kallap*, another ſmall Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few *Chriſtians*, with a Convent of *Auguſtinian* Friers; ſacked by the *Salvages* in the year 1571. 9. *Tampice*, or S. *Lewis de Tampice*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, ſituate on the North banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof; where it hath a very large Haven, but ſo barred with ſands, that no ſhip of great burden can make uſe of it: the River otherwiſe ſo deep, that Veſſels of 500. Tun might ſayl 60. leagues at leaſt in it againſt the ſtream. 10. S. *Stevan del Puerto*, on the Southern ſide of that River, in the Latitude of 23. about 65. leagues on the North of *Mexico*, from the Sea eight leagues; now the *Metropolis*, and Town of greateſt Trade in all this Country. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez*, in the place where formerly had ſtood *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, but by him deſtroyed. Oppoſite hereunto on the other ſide of the River, lie great ſtore of *Salt-pits*, out of which the people of this Town raiſe their greateſt profit. 11. S. *Jago de los Valles*, or S. *James* in the *Vallies* 25. leagues Weſt-ward (but inclining to the South withall) from S. *Stevan del Puerto*; ſituate in an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: to the Inhabitants whereof (all *Spaniards*, as in that before) the King of *Spain* hath granted many fair poſſeſſions, to defend thoſe parts (then being the borders of his Eſtates) againſt the *Salvages*.

This Country firſt attempted by *Franciſco Garaio*, but the conqueſt of it finiſhed by *Cortez*, as before is ſaid: each ſtriving, as it ſeemeth, who ſhould moſt deface it, and be enrolled for the greateſt *Manſlayer* of the two. But having carried on the courſe of their Victories almoſt as far as to the River of *Palms*, they deſiſted there; either becauſe already glutted with human blood, or that the conqueſt of thoſe parts would not quit the charge. Inſomuch as in all that Country from the River of *Palms* to the Cape of *Florida*, though lying all along on the *Golf* of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* have not one foot of ground: ſecure enough, becauſe it lieth all along that *Golf*, that no other Nation can poſſeſs it.

2. *MECHUACAN* hath on the North-Eaſt, *Panuco*; on the Eaſt, *Mexicana*; on the South, part of *Tlaſcala*; on the Weſt, the main Ocean; and on the North, the Province of *Xaliſco* in *New Gallicia*. So called from the abundance of Fiſh, which their Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own Language ſignifying *Locum Piſcoſum*, or a Country of *Fiſh*.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-Coaſt is 80. leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana*, but ſixty only. The length I find not yet agreed on. Bleſt with an air ſo ſound and ſweet, that ſick Folk come hither

ther out of other Countreys, to recover their health. Well ſtored with Rivers, ſome Lakes, innumerable ſprings of running water, and here and there ſome *hot Bathes* iſſuing from the Rocks. The ſoyl ſo plentifully productive of all ſorts of Grain (even to admiration) that in ſome parts hereof four meaſures of Seed have brought forth 600. meaſures of the ſame Grain, in the following Harveſt. Well wooded, and by reaſon of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Paſtures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all *America*, for *Medicinal* Herbs, and Plants, of very Soveraign Nature for the good of Mankind. It affordeth alſo ſtore of *Amber*, Mulberry Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and ſuch other things, as chiefly ſerve for Pomp and pleaſure.

The people tall of ſtature, but ſtrong and active: of a good wit, and skilled in many excellent *Manufactures*. They ſpeak four Languages of their own; but that moſt generally uſed, is by the *Spaniards* called the *Taraſcuan* tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious language, yet moſt of them ſpeak the *Spaniſh* alſo. More pliant to the manners and apparel of that Nation, than the reſt of *New Spain* (the *Mexicans* excepted only) and ſo inclinable to the *Goſpel*, that they are almoſt all gained from their old *Idolatries*. Inſomuch that the whole Country being divided into 50. Pariſhes, every Pariſh hath its ſeveral *Prieſts* and inferiour *Miniſters*, who in the language of the place do inſtruct the people, in which they Preach to them, and hear their *Confeſſions*: beſides many Convents of *Dominicans*, and *Auguſtine* Friers.

It containeth in it upwards of 150. Towns, or *Burroughs*, beſides ſcattering Villages; 90. of which have *Free Schools* in them, and almoſt every one a *Spittle* for relief of the ſick. The principal thereof, 1. *Zinzoutza*, the ſeat of the old Kings of *Mechuachan*; in the firſt times of *Chriſtianity* in this Country, made a Biſhops See, till removed to *Paſcuar*. The firſt Biſhop, *Vaſquez de Quiroga*. 2. *Paſcuar*, of no great note at preſent, but that the Biſhops See was removed thither, becauſe nearer to *Mexico*; from which diſtant 47. leagues. 3. *Valladolit*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Biſhops See, removed hither from *Paſcuar*, and here finally ſetled in a fair *Cathedral*, An. 1544. ſituate near a large *Lake* (ſaid to be bigger than that of *Mexico*:) which doth not only afford the City great ſtore of Fiſh, but yieldeth them the opportunity of ſeveral pleaſures which they take in Boats upon the water. The Lake and City by the Natives called *Guayangareo*. 4. S. *Michael*, in the way from *Mexico*, (from which diſtant about 40. leagues) to the ſilver *Mines* of *Zacatecas*. Firſt built by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to defend the people of this Province, from the *Chichamecas*, a barbarous,. and hitherto an unconquered people who terribly moleſt the Nations upon whom they border. 5. S. *Philips*, built at the ſame time by the ſaid *Velaſco*. 6. *Conception de Saylaa*, ſeventeen leagues from *Valladolit*, 35. from *Mexico*; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez* the Vice-Roy, *An.* 1570. to be a Stage for Travellers, in their journeys Northwards. 7. *Guaxanato*, bordering on *Panuco*, and not far from S. *Jago de Los Valles*; rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea, we have 8. *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Gallicia*, two miles from the Ocean; A Town of note, above 30. houſes, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and ſafe Road for ſhipping, (by the *Spaniards* called *Malacca*) which makes it ſeldom without the company of Saylers. 9. *Natividad*, (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly ſet ſail to the *Philippine* Iſlands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendiſh* in his *Circumnavigation* of the World. 10. S. *Jago* (or S. *Jago de Buena Speranza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*; the ſhores whereof are ſaid to be full of *Pearls*. 11. *Colima*, ten leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other, built in the year 1522. by *Gonſalvo de Sandoval*. 12. *Zacatula*, by the *Spaniards* called *Conception*, ſituate on the Banks of a large (but nameleſs) River; which riſing about the City of *Tlaſcala*, paſſeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, was a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, not ſubject nor ſubordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were moſt of the Princes of theſe parts: the Frontires of the Kingdom fenced with ſtakes of wood, like a *Palizado*, to hinder any ſudden incurſion of the *Mexican* Forces. The laſt King called *Tangayvan Bimbicha*, ſubmitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, An. 1522. and willingly offered himſelf to *Baptiſm*. But the *Spaniards* were not pleaſed with either, becauſe deprived thereby of the ſpoil of the Country. But at laſt *Nonnez de Guzman*, then *Preſident* of the Courts of Juſtice in *Mexico*, picked a quarrel with him, accuſed him falſly (as is ſaid by the very *Spaniards*) of ſome practices againſt the King; burnt him alive with moſt barbarous and unheard of cruelty, and ſo confiſcated his eſtate.

3. *Mexicana*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Golf* of *New Spain*; on the Weſt, with *Mechuacan*; on the North with *Panuco*, and ſome part of *Nova Gallicia*; on the South, with *Tlaſcala*, and part of the Southern Sea. So called from *Mexico*, the chief City, not of this Province only, but of all *America*.

It is in breadth from North to South, meaſuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130. leagues; thence growing narrower in the midland parts hardly above ſixty; and on the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*, not above ſeventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other, that is to ſay, from the point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantla*, on the Golf of *Mexico*, to the Haven of *Acapulco*, on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of miles I do no where find. But meaſuring it from 17. degrees and an half of *Latitude*, unto the 22. and allowing ſomething for the ſlope; we may conclude it to be much of the length, as in its breadth, that is to ſay about 130. leagues.

The Country is inferiour to *Peru* in the plenty and purity of *Gold* and *Silver*, but far exceeding it both in the *Mechanical*, and *ingenious* Arts, which are here profeſſed, and in the abundance of fruits and Cattel: of which laſt here is ſuch ſtore, that many a private man hath 40000. Kine and Oxen to himſelf. Fiſh is here alſo in great plenty; that only, which is drawn out of the *Lake* whereon *Mexico* ſtandeth, being reported worth 20000. Crowns yearly, to the Kings *Exchequer*. The people for the moſt part witty and induſtrious, full of valour and courage; good Handy-crafts-men, if they ſtoop ſo low as to *Trades* and *Manufactures*; rich Merchants, if they give themſelves to more gainfull traffick; and hardy Souldiers, if trained up and employed in ſervice. Their ancient Arms were Slings, and Arrows; ſince the coming of the *Spaniards* practiſed on the *Harcubuize*. In a word, what was ſaid before of *New Spain* in general, as to the ſoyl and people of it, is moſt appliable to this.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Los Topes*, which parteth this Province from that of *Tlaſcala*. 2. *Citala*, and 3. *Mitla*, both running Eaſt-ward towards the *Golf*. 4. *Papagaio*, in the way from *Mexico* to *Acapulco*; with a fair bridge over it. 5. *Las Balſas*, of a violent courſe, and in bigneſs equal unto *Tagus* in *Spain*; paſſable only by a bridge made of Rafts and Reeds, not very ſtrongly joyned together. 6. The River of *S. Francis*, both large and ſwift, but in ſome parts fordable. Mountains of note I find not any which require a more particular conſideration; and ſo paſs them over the more eaſily.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Mexico*, the ſeat of an Archbiſhop, and of the *Spaniſh Vice-Roy*, who hath the power to *make Laws* and Ordinances, to give directions, and determine controverſies; unleſs it be in ſuch great cauſes which are thought fit to be referred to the Council of *Spain*. This City was firſt ſituate in the *Lakes* and Iſlands, like *Venice*; every where interlaced with the pleaſant currents of freſh, and ſea-waters; and carrying a face of more civil government than any of *America*; though nothing, if compared with *Europe*. But the Town being deſtroyed by *Cortez*, it was built afterwards on the firm Land, on the Edge of the *Lake*, and bordering on a large and ſpacious *Plain*. The *Plain* on which it bordereth, is ſaid to be 70. leagues in compaſs, environed with high Hills; on the tops whereof the ſnow lieth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great *Lakes*, the leaſt of them forty miles in circuit, the one ſalt, and the other freſh: each of them alternately ebbing and flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the ſalt Lake ſtandeth the City of *Mexico*, with many other goodly Towns, and ſtately houſes: on which *Lake* alſo, 50000. Wherries are continually plying. The Town in compaſs ſix miles, and containeth 6000. houſes of *Spaniards*, and 60000. *Indians*. It is a by-word, that at *Mexico* there are 4. fair things, *viz.* The *Women*, the *Apparel*, the *Horſes*, and the *Streets*. Here is alſo a Printing-houſe, an *Univerſity*, and a Mint; the *Cathedral* Church, ten Convents of *Nuns*, ſeveral houſes of *Ieſuits*, *Dominicans*, *Franciſcans*, *Auguſtinians*, and other Religious Ordes; ſome *Colleges*, many *Spitles* and *Hoſpitals*, and other publick buildings of great ſtate and beauty. By the Natives it was anciently called *Temiſtatan*, the name of *Mexico* being given on a new occaſion, of which more hereafter: moſt miſerably endammaged by the breaking in of the waters, *An.* 1629. which ſwelled ſo high, that they not only over-whelmed the meaner houſes, but the Vice-Roys Palace; drowned many thouſands of the people, and deſtroyed the houſhold ſtuff of the reſt. Occaſioned by the avarice of the Kings Miniſters, who had inverted the money to their private uſe, which ſhould have fortified the banks. 2. *Tezcuco*, ſituate on the ſame *Lake*, but ſix leagues from *Mexico*, heretofore twice as big as *Sevil*: and for the beauty of the ſtreets, and elegancy of the houſes, not inferiour to any. Served with freſh water from the Hills, brought in Pipes and *Conduits*, though ſeated on the brink of a *Salt Lake*. 3. *Quitlavaca*, built wholly in the *Lake* like *Venice*, and therefore by the *Spaniards* called *Venezuela*, a City of 2000. houſholds: the way unto it over a *Cawſey* made of flints, half a league long, and about twenty ſpans in breadth. 4. *Uztacpalapa*, half in the *Lake*, and half without, with many Ponds of freſh water, and a beautifull Fountain. A City of 10000. houſholds, ſix leagues from *Tezcuco*, and two from *Mexico*. 5. *Mexicaltzingo*, a Burrough of 4000. and 6. *Cuyocan*, one of 6000. Families, both upon the *Lake*: beautified in the times of their *Paganiſm* with many Temples, ſo gorgeouſly ſet out to the eye, that afar off they ſeemed of ſilver; moſt of them now converted into *Monaſteries*, and *Religious* houſes. 7. *Chulula*, the faireſt of all the *Lake*, ſcarce excepting *Mexico*, with which it anciently contended both for ſtate and bigneſs: ſaid to contain 20000. Familes, and to be beautified with ſo many Temples, that their *Turrets* equalled the number of the daies of the year. The people ſo addicted unto their *Idolatries*, and ſo barbarous in their bloody and beaſtly *Sacrifices*, that no fewer than 6000. *Infants* of both Sexes were yearly murdered on their *Altars*. 8. *Meſtitlan*, ſeated on an high Hill, begirt about with moſt pleaſant *Groves*, and ſhady Woods. A Town of about 30000. Inhabitants, the Villages about the Hill being reckoned in: ſituate 14. leagues, or two dayes journey from *Mexico*, in the way to the Province of *Panuco*; the high way on both ſides ſet with fruitfull Trees, to the great comfort and refreſhment of the way-faring man. 9. *Clantinolleper*, twenty leagues from *Meſtitlan*, a *Manour* to which 40000. of the *Natives* do owe ſute, and ſervice. 10. *Antepeque*, on the South of the City of *Mexico*, at the foot of the Mountain *Propopampeche*; a Town belonging to the Marquis of *Valla*, and ſeated in the moſt delicious place of all *New Spain*. 11. *Acachicha*, on the North-Eaſt of *Mexico*, betwixt it and the *Golf*, bordering on the Province of *Pepantla*. 12. *Acapulco*, an Haven Town of the South-ſea, ſituate on a ſafe and capacious *Bay*; at the entrance of it a league broad, and in the body of it full of convenient *Stations* and *Docks* for ſhipping: ſo that it is accompted the ſafeſt Haven of all thoſe Seas. At the bottom of it towards the Weſt, ſtands the Town and Caſtle, the Caſtle opportunely ſeated on a little fore-land, both to command the Town, and ſecure the Port; well walled and fortified with four very ſtrong *Bulwarks*, on which are planted good ſtore of Ordnance; the Garriſon conſiſting ordinarily of 400. Souldiers: ſtrengthened the rather in regard of the uſual entercourſe, which is betwixt this Port and the *Philippine* Iſlands.

The Original Inhabitants of this Country, (as far at leaſt as their *Records* are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the moſt rude and barbarous *Salvages* of all theſe parts; together with the *Ottomies*, ſomewhat more civil than the reſt, but yet rude enough. By theſe *poſſeſſed* till about the year 902. as it is conjectured from their *Annals*, when vanquiſhed and diſſeized by ſome new comers, whom they called by one name *Navetlacos*: iſſuing as it is conceived from thoſe parts of *Gallicia Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, An. 720. or thereabouts; but lingring in their march, and waſting all the Countreys as they lay before them. Of theſe there were ſeven *Tribes* in all, *i. e.* the *Sachimilci*, the *Chalcæ*, the *Tepanecæ*, the *Culvæ*, the *Tlaſluici*, the *Tlaſcaltecæ*; all of them ſetled in theſe parts, and the five firſt about the *Lake*, before the coming in of the 7. *Tribe*, which was that of the *Mexicans*, ſo called from *Mexi* their chief Caprain; who much delighted with the ſituation and conveniences of *Temiſtitan* then a ruined town, cauſed it to be rebuilt and beautified, by the name of *Mexico*. This town from that time forwards was reputed the head-City of their *Common-wealth*; the ſix *Tribes* governing in common, or the *Chiefs* rather of thoſe Tribes in the names of the whole, after an *Ariſtocratical* manner. But weary at the laſt of this equal power, which the prevalency of ſome Tribes had made very unequal; the *Mexicans*, one of the weakeſt of the *Tribes*, oppreſſed by the reſt, reſolved to ſeparate themſelves, and to commit the ordering of their affairs to a King of their own. At firſt elected by themſelves, but afterwards when they had conquered moſt of the other *Tribes*, the choice intruſted unto ſix, one for every *Tribe*, (the *Tlaſcaltecæ* which was the ſeventh of their *Tribes*, and the Founders of *Tlaſcala*, governing themſelves long before, as a State apart:) who in their choice had an eſpecial eye on thoſe which were ſtrong and active, and fit for military employments; the people holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their Kings, if once they were reputed Cowards. The *Polity* and *Inſtitutes* of this *Mexican* Kingdom, I forbear to write of, further than as they lie before me in the way of their Story: digeſted by the government and ſucceſſion of their ſeveral Kings, whoſe names and actions do occurr in the following Catalogue, of

The Kings of MEXICO.

A. Ch.	
1322.	1. *Acamapitzli*, Nephew to the King of *Couliacan*, but of the *Mexican* blood by the Fathers ſide, elected for the firſt King; who joyned *Couliacan* and *Tongancam* unto his Eſtate, and ſetled that Kingdom at his death in the way of *Election*.
1373.	2. *Vitzovitzli*, ſon of *Acamapitzli*, ſubdued the Tribe of the *Suchimilchi*, and others of the neighbouring Nations.
1394.	3. *Huizilihuiel*, ſon of *Vitzilovitli*, conquered the Tribes of the *Chalcæ* and *Culvæ*, with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants.
1415.	4. *Chimal Pupuca*, ſon of *Huizilihuiel*, won the Town of *Tequixſuiac*, and reduced the rebellious *Chalcæ* under his command.
1425.	5. *Iſcoalt*, brother of *Huizilihuel*, by the valour of his Couſin *Tlacaellec*, freed himſelf from the yoke of the *Tepaneca*, to whom the *Mexicans* had before been Tributaries; and added their dominions unto his eſtate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whoſe death the *Electors* by a joynt conſent choſe *Tlacaellec* for their King, as a man of whoſe vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refuſed it, ſaying, that it was more convenient for the *Common-wealth*, that another ſhould be King, and that he ſhould execute that which was for the neceſſity of the *State*, than to lay the whole burden upon his back: and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the publick, as well as if he were: Upon this generous refuſal they made choice of *Motecumo* the firſt.
1438.	6. *Motecumo*, one of the Brothers of *Chimalpupuca*, brought in the cuſtom of uſing no other *Sacrifices* at their Coronations, but of ſuch *Priſoners* as the new King ſhould firſt take in the wars. By the valour and good fortune of *Tlacaellec*, he ſubdued ſo many of the Nations (whoſe names I hold unneceſſary to be here repeated) that he extended his eſtate from one Sea to the other.
1467.	7. *Axayacaci*, the Nephew of *Iſchoalt* by his ſon *Tecozomoeliqueto*, enlarged his Empire by the conqueſt of *Tetentepeque*, 200. miles from *Mexico*, to fit himſelf with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of *Tlatelulco* who rebelled againſt him, to ſo hard a ſtreight, that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple.
1479.	8. *Ticoicatzi*, the ſon of *Azayacaci*, added twelve Cities, with their Territories, to the *Mexican* Empire.
1484.	9. *Abuczozin*, brother of *Ticoicatzi*, extended his borders to *Guatimala*, repaired or rebuilt a great part of *Mexico*, and brought thither a chanel of freſh water.
1502.	10. *Motecuma* II. Son of *Axaacaci*, before his Coronation conquered 44. Cities. He ordained that no *Plebeian* ſhould bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18. year of his Reign was ſubdued by *Cortez*.

As for this *Cortez*, to whom the *Spaniards* ſtand indebted for the Kingdom of *Mexico*, he was born in *Medeline*, a Town of *Eſtremadura*, 1485. and in the nineteenth year of his Age, employed himſelf in the Trade and buſineſs of *America*, for the improvement of his Fortunes, *Anno* 1511. he went as *Clark* unto the Treaſurer for the Iſle of *Cuba*, where he huſbanded his Affairs ſo well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep, and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in ſhort time he was able to put in 2000. *Caſtellins* for his ſtock, as *Partner* with *Andrew de Duero*, a wealthy Merchant. Grown richer, he was taken to be Partner with *James Velaſques*, in the Diſcovery of *Tabaſco*, and the parts near *Jucutan*, An. 1518. And now reſolved to venture all his ſtock both of friends and money, he furniſhed himſelf of eleven Ships, and with 550. men ſet ſail from *Spain*, and arrived at the Iland of *Acuſamill* (now called *Santa Crux*:)

and ſailing up the River of *Tabaſco*, ſacked the Town of *Potonchon*, the Inhabitants refuſing to ſell him victual. After this by the help of his Horſe and Ordinance, he diſcomfited 40000. of the naked *Salvages*, gathered together to revenge themſelves for the ſack of that Town; and received the King thereof in Vaſſallage to the Crown of *Spain*. Being told that Weſt-ward he ſhould meet with ſome *Mines* of Gold, he turned his courſe for the Haven of *S. John de Ulloa*; where landing he was entertained by *Tendilli*, Governour of the Town and Country for the King of *Mexico*: who underſtanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of ſo great an Emperour (of which *Tendilla* had informed him by eſpecial Meſſengers) he ſent him many rich Preſents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the ſight hereof, he reſolved to go unto the place where ſuch *Treaſures* were; took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of *Charls* the fifth King of *Spain* and Emperour; and building there the Town *de la vera Crux*, left in it 150. of his men. Attended by no more than 400. Foot, 15. Horſe, and ſix pieces of Ordnance, he purſued his Enterprize; by practice gained unto him thoſe of *Zempoallan*, and *Tlaſcalla*, whom he underſtood to be ill-affected to *Motecuma*: aſſiſted with thoſe Forces he paſſed on for *Mexico*, ſacked the Town of *Chololla* (a Town of 40000. houſholds) in his march, kindly received into *Mexico* by the frighted King, whom he cauſed to acknowledge himſelf a *Vaſſal* to *Spain*, and to preſent him in the name of a Tribute, with ſo much Treaſure, as amounted to 160000. *Caſtellins* of Gold. A quarrel growing not long after, *Motecuma* the unhappy King was by one of his own Subjects killed in the Tumult, and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. But aided with the whole Forces of the *Tlaſcalans*, and a recruit of more *Spaniards* (ſent thither on a Deſign againſt him) he made up an Army of 100000. *Salvages*, 900. *Spaniſh* foot, 80. Horſe, 17. pieces of Ordnance: and having with great diligence made ready a Navy of 13. *Galliots*, and 6000. *Canoes* or Boats, laid ſiege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a Siege of three moneths, the City is taken, ſacked and burnt, *Auguſt* 13. 1521. But afterwards rebuilt more beautifully than it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hands of the *Spaniards*, by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private *Adventurer*; endowed for that good Service by *Charls* the fifth with the Town and Territory of *Tecoantepeque*, in the Province of *Guaxaca*, and many other fair eſtates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the title of Marqueſs of *Valla*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are ſaid to have worn a *Crown* reſembling that which is now uſed by the Dukes of *Venice*. His *Coronation* held with great pomp, but moſt bloody Sacrifices. His *Revenues* thought to be almoſt infinite, raiſed out of all Commodities and paid in kind, whether *Natural* or *Artificial* only: the King participating of the fruits of all mens *Labour*, and ſharing with them in their wealth: ſome paying in, Cups full of powder of Gold, of two handfuls a piece; ſome, *Diadems*, and Beads of Gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; *Turkeſs*-ſtones, Golden Targets, rich *Feather-Pictures*, &c. Not to ſay any thing of matters of inferior value: all which in ſuch a wealthy and large eſtate, muſt needs afford him a *Revenue* equal to the greateſt Monarch. And for the incouragement of his Souldiers and Men of War, here were ordained three Orders of *Knighthood*, (or at leaſt ſuch diſtinctions of perſonal merit, as had reſemblance to ſuch Orders:) the firſt diſtinguiſhed by a *Red Ribband*, the ſecond called the *Lion* or *Tiger-Knight*, and the third the *Gray Knight*, all privileged amongſt other things to be clothed in *Cotton*, wear Breeches, to adorn themſelves with gold and ſilver, and to have Veſſel gilt or painted, high points, and not permitted unto any elſe. But it is time that I proceed to the reſt of the Provinces.

4. *TLASCALA* lieth betwixt *Mexicana*, and *Guaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred Leagues; the breadth along the ſhores of the *Gulf* reckoned 80. Leagues, ou the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of *Maize* which they make their bread of; the word in that Language ſignifying *Locum panis*, or the place of Bread, the ſame with *Bethlehem* in the *Hebrew*.

The Country very plentifull both of Corn and Cattel, full of rich Paſtures, and wonderfully ſtored with *Maize*: Level and plain except towards the Sea, where occurreth a large chain of craggy Mountains. The richer in the fruits of Nature for thoſe fair and pleaſant Rivers, wherewith it is watered, the principal of which, 1. *Rio de Grijalva*, ſo called from *John de Grijalva*, who firſt diſcovered it; employed herein by *James Velaſques*, the advancer of *Cortez*. 2. *Rio de Zempoall*, ſo called from the Town of *Zempoallan* about which it riſeth. 3. *Zahuate*, which makes its way thorow the chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the *Golf*. 4. *Rio de Zacatula*, a River of the longeſt courſe in all this Province; riſing near *Tlaſcala*, and falling many Leagues off into *Mare del Zur*. The People much of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mexico*, though upon jealouſies of State their moſt bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good uſe, to advance their Conqueſts on that Kingdom.

Places of moſt importance in it, *Tlaſcala* it ſelf, which gives name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a *Common-wealth*, according to the *Democratical* Models. Situate on a little Hill betwixt two Rivers: and in the middle of a large, but pleaſant Plain, 60. miles in compaſs. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, that it contained 300000. Inhabitants; now ſcarce 50000. It had four *Streets* (or rather *Quarters*) each of them governed by a Captain in time of war: and in the middeſt a Market-place ſo fair and ſpacious, that 30000. perſons might aſſemble in it, to buy and ſell, or for any other buſineſs. 2. *Puebba de los Angelos*, (the City of *Angels*) but moſt commonly *Angelos*; built by *Sebaſtian Ramirez*, An. 1531. in the way from *Vera Crux* to the City of *Mexico*, from which laſt 22. leagues diſtant. A Biſhops See, and thought to contain in it 1500. families. 3. *Zempoallan*, on the River ſo named, the Inhabitants whereof did great ſervice to *Ferdinando Cortez* in his conqueſt of *Mexico*. 4. *Napuluca*; of great reſort for a Fair of Cattel; and ſuch a kind of Court for ordering the trade thereof, as we call the *Pie-powders*. 5. *Guaxocingo*, a pleaſant and well-peopled town, ſituate at the foot of the burning Mountain before mentioned, by the aſhes and embers whereof the fields are many times annoyed.

6. *Segura*, or *Segura de la Frontera*, in the Region of *Tepeac*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the conqueſt of *Mexico*, with fair ſtreets and handſome houſes; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*. 7. *Vera Crux*, the firſt town built in this Country by the ſaid *Cortez*, now a *Biſhops See*: ſituate near unto the *Gulf*, and a great thorow-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which diſtant about 60. leagues. 8. S. *John de Ullua*, the moſt noted Port of all this Province; fenced with a Peer againſt the fury both of wind and ſea; defended naturally by Rocks and Quick-ſands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both ſides of the entrance. 9. *Medellin*, built by *Cortez*, An. 1525. and planted by *Spaniards*: ſo called in memory of a town of the ſame name in *Eſtremadura*, in which he was born: ſituate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlaſcallans* were originally one of the *ſeven Tribes*, which drave the *Chichimecas* out of their poſſeſſions: and either finding no room left for them on the Banks of the *Lake*, or elſe willing to ſubſiſt alone, withdrew themſelves from the reſt, founded the City of *Tlaſcala*, and there erected a *Democratical* Eſtate. Stomacked for this by the other *Tribes*, and many times invaded by thoſe of *Mexico*, after they had ſubdued the reſt; they ſtill maintained themſelves againſt all attempts; and in the end aſſiſted *Cortez*, in the deſtruction of that Kingdom they ſo deadly hated. Privileged for that reaſon by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of tribute, (except it be an handfull of Wheat for every perſon) and ſuffered to live under his protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name, ſaid to contain 200. good Towns and Burroughs, 1000. Villages and upwards; and in them 150000. of the Natives, beſides *Spaniſh* Colonies. Diſtributed into 36. *Claſſes* or *Rural Deanries*, for *Eccleſiaſtical* Government, in which are thought to be 30. *Convents* and Religious Houſes.

5. *GUAXACA* is bounded on the Weſt, with *Tlaſcala*; on the Eaſt, with *Jucutan*, and *Chiapa*, one of the Provinces of *Guatimala*; on the North, with the Bay of *Mexico*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*. Extended on the South-ſea to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to fifty only: in breadth from Sea to Sea where it bordereth on *Tlaſcala*, 120. leagues; not above 60. where it confineth on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxaca* once the chief town of theſe parts, now named *Antequera*.

The Air hereof very ſound and ſweet, and the Soil as fruitfull: plentifull not only of thoſe commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Country; but of ſuch quantities of *Silks*, and ſtore of *Mulberries*, that if the *Natives* paid their *Tithes* as the *Spaniards* do, that very *Revenue* would ſuffice to endow five Biſhopricks, as good as that which is there already. Scarce any River of this Country, but hath *Sands* of *Gold*: ſuch plenty of *Coccinele*, (a rich grain uſed in dying *Scarlets*, of which before) as alſo of *Caſſia*, Gold, Silver, and other metals, that if the people did but add ſome induſtry to the wealth of the Country, they might be the richeſt men in all *America*. But being naturally ſlothfull, and impatient of labour, they loſe all opportunities of gathering riches, and live but from hand to mouth, as we uſe to ſay. Docile enough, and ſo indulgent unto thoſe who take pains to teach them, that here are reckoned 120. *Convents* of *Dominican* Friers, beſides other Schools: theſe laſt conceived the greateſt number.

It is ſubdivided into many particular Provinces, (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*) as 1. *Miſteca*, 2. *Tutopeque*, 3. *Zapoteca*, 4. *Guazacoalco*, 5. *Gueztaxatla*, and 6. the *Vale* of *Guaxaca*; this laſt moſt memorable, in that it gave the title of Marqueſs *del Valle*, to the famous *Cortez*. Towns of moſt obſervation, 1. *Teozopotlan*, once the chief town of *Zapoteca*, and the ſeat of their King. 2. *Cuertlavaca*, of great note for a *Labyrinth* not far off, hewn out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3. *Antequera*, in the Valley of *Guaxaca*, a ſtately City, and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*; as that with Marble-pillars of great height and thickneſs. 4. *S. Illifonſo* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5. *S. Jago* in the Valley of *Nexapa*, ſeated upon a lofty hill. 6. *Del Spiritu Santo*, diſtant about three leagues from the ſhores of the *Golf*, in the Province of *Guazacoalco*; the foundation of *Gonſalvo de Sandoval*, A. 1526. 7. *Aguatulco*, or *Guatulco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South-ſea; much uſed by thoſe which trade from *Peru* to *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern-ſeas. By conſequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpoſe both by *Drake*, and *Cavendiſh*, in their Voyages about the world. 8. *Tacoantepeque* a Port of the ſame Sea alſo, but of far leſs note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650. inhabited by 150000. of the Natives liable to tribute, beſides women and perſons under age, not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6. *JUCUTAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a *Demi-Iſland*, is faſtened to the Continent only where it meets with *Guaxaca*; the furtheſt point of it oppoſite to the Iſle of *Cuba*. Diſcovered firſt by *Fernandes de Cordova*, employed therein by *Don Chriſtopher Morante*, An. 1517. and called *Jucutan*, not as ſome conceit it, from *Joctan* the ſon of *Heber*, who they think came out of the *Eaſt*, where the Scripture placeth him (*Gen.* 10. 30.) to inhabit here; but from *Jucutan*, which in the language of the Country ſignifieth, *What ſay you*? For when the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither asked the name of the place; the *Salvages* not underſtanding what they meant, replied *Jucutan*, that is, *what ſay you*? whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compaſs of it, taking the Province of *Tobaſco* into the accompt, is ſaid to be 900. miles, or 300. leagues. The Air hot, and the Country deſtitute of Rivers; not otherwiſe provided of water but by pits and trenches, which abundantly ſupply that want. Sufficiently barren, the ſoil not bearing Wheat, or any *Europaean* fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of *Gold* or *Silver*, or any other Metal, to enrich the people; who muſt either live by trades and labour, or elſe beg their bread. Nothing remarkable in the Country, but that here ſeemed to be ſome remnants of *Chriſtianity*, at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither: the people conſtantly obſerving a kind of *Baptiſm*, which they call in their own language a *ſecond birth*, expreſſing by that word a *Regeneration*; not ſuffering any one to marry untill ſo *initiated*. And poſſible enough it is, that this may be the Country upon which *Madoc ap Owen* fell; who though he might by ſome good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he ſhould make any ſuch ſecond voyage hither, as is ſaid in their *Chronicles*, I by no means grant.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Merida*, almoſt in the navel of it, ſituate in the 20. degree of *Latitude*; the ordinary ſeat of the Governour, and the See of a *Biſhop*: diſtant from the Sea on each ſide, about twelve leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought be have ſome reſemblance. 2. *Valladolit*, 30. leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a moſt ſumptuous Monaſtery of *Franciſcan* Friers. 3. *Campeche*, (or S. *Franciſco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) ſituate on the ſhore of the *Golf*. A Town when firſt known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000. Honſes, and beautified with ſuch monuments of art and induſtry, as ſhewed that there was ſomewhat in this people which was not *barbarous*, ſince that no more obſervable, than for being ſuddenly ſurprized by *Parker*, an *Engliſh* Capt. *An.* 1596. who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the Town, and many priſoners; beſides a great ſhip full of Gold, Silver, and other the like precious Commodities, deſigned for the King of *Spains* own uſe. 4. *Tabaſco*, ſituate in the beſt part of this Country, ſo different from all the reſt, that it is made by ſome a diſtinct Province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nueſtra a Sennora de la Victoria*, moſt commonly *Victorio* only; and that in memory of the firſt fortunate victory which *Cortez* had upon the people, arming themſelves againſt him for the ſacking of *Pontonchon*. 5. *Pontonchon* ſacked by *Cortez* for denying to ſupply him with victual. 6. *Salamanca*, ſo called with reference to a Town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coaſt of this Country lie many Iſlands, *viz.* 1. *La Zarza*. 2. *Deſconoſcida*. 3. *Triangulus*. 4. *Vermeia*. 5. *Los Negrillos*. 6. *Los Alacranes*, all within the *Golf*. Without it, 7. *Zaratan*. 8. *Pantoia*. 9. *Lamanay*. 10. *De Mucheres*, or the Iſle of Women; 11. *Cozamul*, by ſome called *Acuſamil*. This laſt the biggeſt, as 15. leagues long, 5. broad; and the moſt remarkable, as being the uſual way which the *Spaniaras* travelled in their diſcoveries of this Country, from the Iſle of *Cuba*. For here firſt landed *Feſdinando de Corduba*, An. 1517. who paſſing over to *Jucutan* (but four leagues diſtant) brought back nothing but ſtripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grijalva*, in the ſame purſuit, who paſſing by *Jncutan* to the Province of *Guacata*, left his name behind him to a River. And finally here landed the moſt fortunate *Cortez*, who coaſting about the *Demi-Iſland*, landed near *Tabaſco*, and there firſt hanſelled his good fortune with a notable victory. Yet neither the Iſland nor *Peninſula* diſcovered perfectly, till the year 1527. when both ſubdued by *Franciſco de Monteio*, to the Crown of *Spain*. The Iſland now called *Santa Crux*.

OF GUATIMALA.

G*UATIMALA* is bounded on the North, by *Jucutan*, and the Golf of *Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, (or the South-eaſt rather) with *Caſtella Aurea*; on the Weſt, with *New Spain*. Extended 300. leagues in length, upon the Coaſts of *Mare del Zur*; but meaſuring by a ſtraight line, not above 240: the breadth thereof 180. leagues, where broadeſt; in moſt places narrower. So called from *Guatimala* the chief Province, as that from the prime City of it; honoured with the ſeat of the Governour, and the *Courts* of *Juſtice*.

The nature of the ſoil and people, (if differing in any material thing from thoſe before) we will conſider in the View of thoſe ſeveral parts, into which this Country is divided. The principal whereof, 1. *Chiapa*, 2. *Verapaz*, 3. *Guatimala* ſpecially ſo called, 4. *Honduras*, 5. *Niceragua*, 6. *Veragua*. The reſt of leſs note, eaſily reduced to theſe.

1. *CHIAPA* hath on the Weſt, *New Spain*; on the Eaſt, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucutan*; and *Mare del Zur*, upon the South. Extended 40. leagues in length, not much leſs in breadth; and antiently inhabited by four Nations, all of ſeveral Languages.

The ſoil not very natural for Corn or Fruits, though Pot-herbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and *Lentils*; yet Vines and other richer fruits ſeldom come to good. *Wood-vines* they have, which yield a very pleaſant pulp; and if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their trees, moſt of them greater than in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the *Cypreſs*; whole Woods of *Walnuts*, but the Nut not ſo big as thoſe of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield *Roſin*, ſome ſuch precious *gums*, as in other places are not uſual; and ſome there are whoſe Leaves being dried into a powder, afford a ſoveraign plaſter for *exulcerate* ſores. And they have need too often to make uſe of theſe *Plaſters*, the Country being full of *Snakes* and other venemous Creatures, (ſome of the *Snakes* no leſs than 20. foot in length) whoſe poiſon being ſtrong and deadly, doth require ſuch helps. Of the People nothing ſingular, that I have met with; but that they are more *muſical* and exact in painting, than the reſt of the Natives.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Cividad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapenſes*, at the foot of an hill; ſituate in a round Plain, encompaſſed about with Mountains like an *Amphitheatre*: afterwards made a Biſhops See, and privileged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by ſuch City-Magiſtrates as they call *Alcaides*. 2. *Chiapa*, in a vale adjoyning; before the building of the other, of moſt note in this Province: yet ſtill before it in regard of its ſituation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and *Maize*, than all the reſt of the Country. 3. *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zoaques*, poſſeſſed of 25. Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monaſtery of *Dominican* Friers. 4. *Capanavatzla*, the principal Town of twenty five, which the *Quelenes* held in this tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the ſame *Dominicans*. 5. S. *Bartholmews*, another town in the territory of the ſame *Quelenes*: near which is ſaid to be a great Pit, or opening of the earth, into which if any man caſts a ſtone, though never ſo little, there preſently followeth a loud and fearfull noiſe, like a clap of thunder. 6. *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvaridi*, when he was Governour of theſe parts; the chief Town of a little Province called *Soconuſco*. 7. *Caſapualca*, a ſmall Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the fields adjoyning; the waters whereof are noted to riſe and fall, as the Ocean doth flow or ebbe, and at equal diſtances of time. Of thirteen Townſhips which the *Zeltales* were poſſeſſed of, I find no one named; though painted all of them, and ſet forth to the eye of the Traveller, with *Coccinele*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon theſe *Rarities* of Nature, I cannot but take notice (though ſomewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which turns wood to ſtones: of a Spring in the *Cantred* of *Tafixa*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry; of another in the ſame *Cantred*, which for one three years, though it rain never ſo little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and ſo ſucceſſively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many leſſer ſtreams, is ſwallowed up near a Village of the *Chiapenſes*, called *Otztutan*, never after ſeen. None of them famed for *Golden Sands*, as are thoſe of *Guaxata*; though it be thought there be ſome Veins of gold and ſilver, but hitherto neglected for want of *Slaves* to work the *Mines*.

2. *VERAPAZ* is bounded on the Weſt, with *Chiapa*; on the Eaſt, with *Guatimala*, and *Hondura*; on the North, with *Jucutan*; and on the South, with the Territory of *Soconuſco*. In *Latin* called *Provincia Vera Pacis*, by the *Spaniards Verapez*; becauſe not conquered by the *ſword*, but won to the obedience of the King of *Spain*, by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friers.

The Country 30. Leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high Hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitfull plains; generally over-grown with Woods, very large and thick, which ſo hinder the free paſſage of the winds, that the Air hereof is very ewery: Inſomuch that for nine moneths in the year they have alwayes rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reaſon of this moyſture much annoyed with *Moſquits*, a kind of *Gnats*, very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwiſe (as with Fiſh and other neceſſaries) they were well provided. No *Mines* of Gold, or *Silver* diſcovered hitherto, though the *Spaniards* have many times in vain attempted it. Inſtead whereof ſome of their Trees drop a kind of *Amber*, which they call *Liquid amber*; ſome, *Maſtick*, and ſome other, Gums: they have alſo many *Medicinal* woods, as *Sarzaparilla*, that called *China-wood*, and many others.

The people tractable and conform to the *Spaniſh* Government, except the *Lecandones*, and *Pachuteci*, ſome Remainders of the ancient *Salvages*: who keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Countrey, have hitherto retained both their Native freedome, and their old *Idolatries*. No Towns herein poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. The principal of theſe St. *Auguſtines*, not ſo much memorable in it ſelf, as for the neighbourhood of a *Cave* betwixt two Mountains; from which the Rain deſcending turns into *Alablaſter*, naturally faſhioned into *Pillars* and other *Pourtraitures*. Into which alſo many ſprings do convey their waters, which there being joyned into a body, make an handſome River, able almoſt at the firſt appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they alſo have at the bottome of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo dulce*: but of ſo little uſe and Trading, that I find no name for it, unleſs it ſhould be that *Yztapa* which *Herrera* ſpeaks of, by whom placed in *Guatimala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Weſt, with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa*; on the Eaſt, with *Nicaragua*; on the North, with *Honduras*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacificque Ocean*. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*, not above ſeventeen, But reckoning in *Yzalcos*, *Chaluteca*, and S. *Saviours*, three adjoyning *Regions*, by ſome made Provinces diſtinct, the dimenſions of it muſt be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Countrey Mountainous, but withall very full of *Rivers*; by conſequence commodious, both for fiſhing and hunting. Fruitfull of Wheat, *Maize*, and other Proviſions, but thoſe fruits not laſting. Not ſo much ſubject unto rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with winds. Full of rich Paſtures, and thoſe Paſtures of great Heards of Cattel. Good ſtore of Cotten-wool, ſome *Balſamum*, and other *Medicinal* Liquors; as alſo of the beſt *Sulphur*, and many *Apothecaries* Drugs, which I have no skill of. The people Puſillanimous and fearfull, greater proficients in *Chriſtianity* and Civility, than moſt of the *Salvages*: but ſo that it is thought they would relapſe again to their ancient *Paganiſm*, and revive again their old barbarous cuſtoms, if not held in by the bridle of fear, and the curb of power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Women good Spinners.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Guecapa*, a River of a courſe but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and Navigable half the way; which falleth into *Mare del Zur*. 2. *Lempas*, watering the Burrough of St. *Saviours*; which hath its riſe from a great *Lake*, and his falls in the ſame Sea alſo. Here is alſo ſaid to be a *Lake* near the Village of *Yſtepeque*, of the waters whereof are made both *Sulphur* and *Allom*. And here is ſaid to be a *Volcana*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being ſpent; yet the ſaid Monuments of his furies do remain among them; another not far off which ſtill caſts out ſmoak.

Towns of moſt note, 1. *Guatimala*, or St. *Jago de Guatimala*, the chief Town of the Province, ſituate on a little River betwixt both *Vulcanos*, by one of which moſt terribly waſted, *Anno* 1541. But being reedified, it hath ſince exceedingly flouriſhed, by reaſon of the Biſhops See, the reſidence of the Governour, and the Courts of Juſtice. 2. St. *Salvador*, 40 leagues Eaſt-wards from *Guatimala*, by the Natives called *Guzculan*; ſituate on the River *Guacapa*, ſeven leagues from the Sea, and neighboured by a great Lake of five leagues compaſs. 3. *Acaxutla*, at the mouth of the ſame River, the Port Town to S. *Saviours*. 4. St. *Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Samſonate*, the moſt noted *Empory* of this Countrey; the place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain*, and thoſe of *Peru*. 5. St. *Michaels*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonſeca*, which ſerves unto it for a Haven. 6. *Xeres de la Fontera*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Chulutecan* (by which name it was formerly known) ſituate on the Frontiers towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South-Eaſt of the Bay of *Fonſeca*: that Bay ſo named in honour of *Roderick Fonſeca* Biſhop of *Burges*, and *Preſident* of the Councel for the *Indies*, An. 1532. by *Giles Gonſales de Avila* who firſt diſcovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Iſlands, four of which inhabited, and plentifully furniſhed with Wood, Water, and Salt.

4. *HONDURA* hath on the South, *Guatimala*, ſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, the Bay, or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*; on the North, and Eaſt, the Sea called *Mare del Nort*; on the South-Eaſt, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatimala*, ſpecially ſo called. In length from Eaſt to Weſt by the Banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras* impoſed upon it from the *depth* of the Sea, about the principal Head-land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Countrey either Hills, or Vallies, little *Champagne* in it; fruitfull of *Maize* and Wheat, and of very rich Paſturage; made ſo by the conſtant over-flowings of their Rivers about *Michaelmas*; which do not only ſoil their grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1. *Hungara*. 2. *Chamalucon*. 3. *Ulna*, all neighboured by fertile fields, and pleaſant Meadows. Some *Mines* of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet diſcovered: the people being ſo ſloathfull and given to idleneſs, that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Land; and therefore not eaſily intreated to toyl for others, but where neceſſity and ſtrong hand do compell them.

Town of moſt note, 1. *Valladolit*, by the Natives called *Commyagna*, 40 leagues diſtant from the Sea, ſituate in a pleaſant and fruitfull Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamalucon* ; and honoured with a Biſhops Sea, fixed here about the year 1558. built near the place where once *Franciſco de Monteio*, Governour of this Province, had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530. by the name of S. *Maria de Commyagna*. 2. *Gracios di Dios*, 30 leagues Weſt-ward of *Valladolit*, built by *Gabriel de Royas*, An. 1530 to be a place of defence for thoſe who worked in the *Mines*, againſt the *Salvages*. But finding himſelf unable to make it good, he defaced and left it ; Re-edified again by *Gonſalvo de Alvarado*, and ſince well inhabited. 3. S. *Peters*, eleven leagues diſtant from the Port of *Cavallos*, but ſeated in a moſt healthy air ; and therefore made the dwelling place of the *Farmers* of the Kings *Cuſtomes*, who have their houſes in this Town, and follow their buſineſs in the other, as occaſion is. 4. *Porto de Cavallos*, ſo called from ſome *horſes* thrown over-board in a violent Tempeſt; the moſt noted Haven of theſe parts, and ſtrong by natural ſituation : but ſo ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Captain *Chriſtopher Newport*, and *An.* 1596. by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deſerted on thoſe ſpoils, and not ſince inhabited. 5. S. *Thomas de Caſtile*, 18 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally ſtrong, and fortified according to the Rules of Art : to which, as to a place of more ſtrength and ſafety, *Alfonſo Briado de Caſtilla*, Preſident of the Seſſions of *Guatimala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6. *Traxillo*, ſeated on the riſing of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers (one of them that which is called *Haguara*) diſtant from *Cavallos* 40 leagues to the Eaſt, and 60 leagues to the North of *Valladolit* : ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh*, An. 1576. Not far hence towards the North-Eaſt lyeth the *Cape* of *Honduras*, from whence the ſhore drawing inwards till it joyn with *Jucutan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay called the Golf of *Honduras*. 7. S. *George de Olancho*, ſo named of the Vally *Olancho*, in which it is ſeated, a Vally noted heretofore for ſome *golden Sands*, which *Guajape*, a River of it, was then ſaid to yeeld.

5. ***NICARAGUA*** is bounded on the North, with *Honduras* ; on the Eaſt, with *Mare del Nort*, and the Province of *Veragua* ; on the South, with *Mare del Zur* ; on the Weſt, with *Guatimala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Salſedo*, who firſt ſubdued it, it was called the *New Kingdome* of *Leon* ; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither, would not ſo be loſt.

The Countrey deſtitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua*, called *Coſta Rica*, reckoned a Province of it ſelf. The want hereof ſupplied by a great *Lake*, or a little Sea, called the *Lake* of *Nicaragua*, 120 leagues in compaſs, ebbing and flowing like the Sea ; upon the banks of which ſtand many pleaſant Villages and ſingle houſes. A *Lake* well ſtored with Fiſh, but as full of *Crocodiles* : and having made its way by a mighty *Cataract*, emptieth it ſelf into the Sea about four leagues off. Not very rich in Corn, (moſt of which is brought them from *Peru*) but well ſtored with Cattel : level and plain, and ſhadowed with frequent Trees ; one amongſt others of that nature, that a man cannot touch any parr of it, but it withereth preſently. Affirmed to be as full of *Parrets*, as *England* of Crows ; ſtored with great plenty of *Cotten-wool*, and abundance of *Sugar-canes*. In a word ſo pleaſing generally to the eye, that the *Spaniards* calls it by the name of *Mahomets Paradiſe*.

The people for the moſt part, ſpeak the *Spaniſh* tongue, and willingly conform themſelves to the *Spaniſh* garb, both of behaviour and apparel : well weaned from their old barbarous cuſtomes, retained only by ſome Mountainers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good ſtature, and of colour indifferent white. They had before they received *Chriſtianity*, a ſetled and politick form of government. Only as *Solon* appointed no Law for a mans killing of his Father, ſo had this people none for the killer of a *King* ; both of them conceiting that men were not ſo unnatural, as to commit ſuch crimes. A *Thief* they judged not to death, but adjudged him to be *ſlave* to that man whom he had robbed, till by his ſervice he had made ſatisfaction. A courſe more mercifull, and not leſs juſt, than the loſs of life.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, ſituate on the *Lake* aforeſaid, the Reſidence of the Governour, and the *Biſhops* Sea ; built in a ſandy ſoil, and begirt with Woods. 2. *Granada*, on the ſame *Lake*, ſixteen leagues from *Leon*, beautified with a fair Church and a ſtrong Caſtle, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova* : the City ſeated in a liberal and wealthy ſoil, well furniſhed with *Sugar-canes*; for the refining of which here are many *Work-houſes*, which they call *Ingenios*. 3. *Segovia*, diſtant from the former about 30 leagues, rich in veins of ſilver. 4. *Jaen*, (all called according to the names of ſome Towns in *Spain*) ſituate at the end of the Lake aforeſaid ; from whence by a long and narrow Chanel it diſembogueth into the Sea, near the Port of S. *John*. 5. *Realeio*, about a league diſtant from the Port of *Poſſeſſion*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees and 40 minutes ; inhabited for the moſt part, by *Shipwrights* and Mariners. 6. *Nicoia*, giving name to a little Territory, within the bounds whereof ſtandeth. 7. *Avarines* alſo. 8. *Cartago*, 40 leagues from *Nicoia*, equally diſtant from both Seas, on each of which it hath a convenient Port : this Town the principal of that part, which is called *Coſta Rica*.

6. ***VERAGUA*** hath on the Weſt, *Coſta Rica* ; on the Eaſt, bounded with the *Diſtrict* of *Panama* ; waſhed on both other ſides by the Sea : extended 50 leagues in length from Weſt to Eaſt; not above 25 where narroweſt, from one Sea to the other. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of greateſt note in it at the firſt diſcovery.

The ſoil hereof mountainous and exceeding barren, not fit for tillage, and leſs uſefull in feeding Cattel ; ſufficiently provided of *Maize* and Pot-herbs : but elſe of little neceſſary for the life of man ; unleſs the people could eat *ſilver*, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but eſpecially of *Gold*, here are ſuch never-periſhing *Mines*, that the *Spaniards* think them able to ſupply all wants, and cure all Diſeaſes. Once being asked what made them ſo greedy of that Metal ; it was anſwered, *That they were* *much troubled with grief of heart, for which Gold was a moſt Soveraign Medicine.* And as the Countrey, ſuch the people, hardy, couragious, and warlike, and ſuch as bear the *Spaniſh* yoke with great impatience: the ſtouteſt and moſt untameable people, being bred moſt commonly in Mountainous and Woody Countreys.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1. *Veragua* which gives name unto it. 2. *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Yebra*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purpoſed to have ſetled a *Spaniſh* Colony, for the better tranſporting of his *Gold*. But finding that the Chanel, on the ceaſing of ſome rain which had fallen before, was become ſo ſhallow, that no ſhip could go in, or out, he gave over that purpoſe. 3. *La Trinidad*. 4. *La Conceptiou*; all falling into *Mare del Nort*. Their chief Towns, 1. *Conception*, on the mouth of that River, the ſeat of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad*, on the banks of that River, near the Port of *Belen*, and ſix leagues Eaſt-wards of *La Conception*. 3. St. *Foy (oppidum* St. *Fidis)* twelve leagues from *Conception* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt, and caſt their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, not far from the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*. 5. *Philippina*, on the Weſt of *Carlos*. Each ſeated on a large and capacious Bay. . Before which Bayes lye a frie of Iſlands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongſt them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco*, *Cabaio*, St. *Marie*, St. *Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented ; the people being dragged into the *Continent* to work in the *Mines*.

This Countrey oweth its firſt Diſcovery unto divers men, according to the ſeveral Members and diviſions of it. The laſt in order, being the firſt that was diſcovered, but the laſt that was conquered, had the honour to be viſited be *Columbus* himſelf. Who driving up and down theſe Coaſts, in the year 1502. hit on the entrances of the River, which afterwards he cauſed to be called *Belen* ; where hearing that there was plenty of *Gold* in the Mines of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him as was ſaid before, and finding nothing fit to ſuſtain his men, he bent himſelf, though unwilling, to a further ſearch. He had before touched upon *Honduras* alſo, but I find not that he landed on it: the ſetling of theſe Countreys being deſtinated to another hand. Twenty years after this the moſt fortunate *Cortez* having fully quieted and compoſed the affairs of *Mexico*, reſolved to make his Maſter Lord of the reſt of *America*. And to that end ſent out his Officers and Commanders into ſeveral parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he ſubdued *Guatimala*; *Hondura*, by *Chriſtopher de Olid*: *Veragua*, and *Nicaragua*, by *Conſalvo de Corduba*. But fearing leſt the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he reſolved to viſit them in perſon. Attended by a choiſe band of 150 horſe, and as many foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his Journey in *October* 1524. and held on his progreſs as far as to *Truxillo* : where finding that *Gonſales de Cordova* had ſo plaid his Game, as there was no neceſſity of going further, he made a ſtand, having marched above 400. leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in *April* 1526. he came home to *Mexico* , with whoſe return we conclude alſo our ſurvey of the Northern *Peninſula*, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexicana*.

And ſo much for *Mexicana*.

OF
PERUANA.

PERUANA, the other of the two great *Peninſulas*, into which the vaſt Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now ſtand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramis* reverſed : more anſwerably thereunto than *Africk*, though that ſo reſembled. Joyned to the other by a ſtraight and narrow *Iſthmus*, called the *Straights* of *Darien*, whereof we ſhall have opportunity to ſpeak more anon : which looks but like a ſtone miſ-laid in ſo great a building ; or the firſt ſtep, by which we are to climb the top, as in other *Pyramids*.

The name derived from *Peru*, the chief Province of it ; the *Circumnavigation* ſaid to be 1700. miles. Nothing elſe to be ſaid in the general, but what will ſerve more fitly for particular places ; except it be the deſcription of ſome prime Mountains and principal Rivers : which being of too long a courſe to be reckoned unto any one particular Province, may more properly deſerve place here. Of theſe the chief 1. *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons*, called by the firſt name from *Franciſco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard* who firſt diſcovered it ; by the ſecond, from the *Amazons*, a kind of ſtout and warlike Women, who are ſaid to have inhabited on the banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Peru*, the fall in the North Sea, or *Mare del Nort*. A river of ſo long a courſe, that the ſaid *Orellana* is reported to have ſailed in it 5000 miles, the ſeveral windings and turnings of it being reckoned in : and of ſo violent a current, that it is ſaid to keep its natural taſte and colour, above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea ; the Chanel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accompted 60. leagues from one point to the other. 2. *Orenoque*, Navigable 1000 miles by ſhips of burden, and 2000. miles by Boats and *Pinnaces*; having received into it an hundred Rivers, openeth into the ſame Sea with 16 mouths, which part the earth into many Iſlands (ſome equal to the Iſle of *Wight* :) the moſt remote of thoſe Chanels 300 miles diſtant from one another. By ſome it is called *Raliana*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the diſcovery and deſcription of it ; or rather in diſcovering it ſo far, as to be able to deſcribe it. 3. *Maragnon*, of a longer courſe than any of the other, affirmed to meaſure at the leaſt 6000 miles, from his firſt riſing to his fall ; and at his fall into the Sea, to be no leſs than 70 leagues from one ſide to the other. More properly to be called a Sea, than many of thoſe great *Lakes*, or largeſt Bays, which uſually enjoy that name. 4. *Rio de la Plata*, a River of a leſs courſe than the other, but equal unto moſt in the world beſides ; in length from its firſt Fountain 2000 mile, in breadth at his fall into the Sea, about 60 leagues : and of ſo violent a ſtream, that the Sea for many leagues together, altereth not the taſte of it. All theſe, as they do end their Race in the *Atlantick*, ſo they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at the leaſt ſome *Spur*, or branch of that great body.

But before we venture further on more particulars, we are to tell you of theſe *Andes*, that they are the greateſt and moſt noted Mountains of all *America* ; beginning at *Timama* a Town of *Popayan*, in the New Realm of *Granada* ; and thence extended South-wards to the ſtraights of *Magellan*, for the ſpace of 1000 leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narroweſt ; and of ſo vaſt an height withall, that they are ſaid to be higher than the *Alpes*, or the head of *Caucaſus*, or any of the moſt noted Mountains in other parts of the World. Not eaſie of aſcent, but in certain Paths, by reaſon of the thick and unpaſſable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof which lye towards *Peru* (for how it is on the other ſide, or by what people it is neighboured, is not yet diſcovered :) barren, and craggy too withall, but ſo full of venomous Beaſts, and poyſonous Serpents, that they are ſaid to have deſtroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Peru*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a people as rude and ſavage as the place, and as little hoſpitable. The moſt noted Mountain of *America*, as before was ſaid, and indeed the greateſt of the World. Of fame ſufficient of themſelves, not to be greatned by the addition of impoſſible Figments, or improbable Fictions. Among which laſt I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius* a right Learned man, who will have theſe Mountains to be that which the Scripture calleth by the name of *Sephar*, Gen. 10.30. and there affirmed to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the Sons of *Joktan* : the vanity and inconſequences of which ſtrange conceit, we have already noted when we were in *India*.

Proceed we now unto the particular deſcriptions of this great *Peninſula*, comprehending thoſe large and wealthy Countreys, which are known to us by the names of 1. *Caſtella Aurea*. 2. The New Realm of *Granada*. 3. *Peru*. 4. *Chile*. 5. *Paragnay*. 6. *Braſil*. 7. *Guyana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their ſeveral Iſlands. Such other Iſles as fall not properly and naturally under ſome of theſe, muſt be referred unto the general head of the *American* Iſlands, in the cloſe of all.

OF
CASTELLA DEL ORO.

CASTELLA *del ORO, Golden Caſtile*, (*Aurea Caſtella*, as the *Latines*) is bounded on the Eaſt and North, with *Mare del Noort*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*, and ſome part of *Veragua*; on the South, with the New Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Caſtile*, with reference to *Caſtile* in *Spain*; under the favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was firſt diſcovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for diſtinctions ſake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the firſt Diſcoverers found in it. It is alſo called *Terra Firma*, becauſe one of the firſt parts of *Firm land*, which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before diſcovered nothing but ſome *Iſlands* only.

The ſoyl and people being of ſuch ſeveral tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will conſider both apart in the ſeveral Provinces of, 1. *Panama*, 2. *Darien*, 3. *Nova Andaluzia*, 4. *S. Martha*, and 5. the little Province *De la Hacha*.

1. *PANAMA*, or the diſtrict of *Panama*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Golf of *Uraba*, by which parted from the main land of this large *Peninſula*; on the Weſt, with *Veragua* one of the Provinces of *Guatimala* in *Mexicana*; waſhed on both the other ſides with the Sea. So called of *Panama* the Town of moſt eſteem herein, and the Juridical reſort of *Caſtella Aurea*.

It taketh up the narroweſt part of the Streight, or *Iſthmus*, which joyns both *Peninſulas* together: not above 7. or 8. leagues over in the narroweſt place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto Bello*, if meaſured by a ſtraight line from one Town to the other; though 18. leagues according to the courſe of the Road betwixt them, which by reaſon of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of ſome attempts to dig a Chanel, through this *Iſthmus*, to let the one Sea into the other; and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by land, we have ſpoke already.

The air hereof foggy, but exceeding hot, and conſequently very unhealthy, chiefly from *May* unto *November*: the ſoyl either mountainous and barren, or low and miery; naturally ſo unfit for grain, that it yieldeth nothing but *Maize*, and that but ſparingly; better for paſturage, in regard of its plenty of graſs, and the goodneſs of it: ſo full of Swine at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither, that they thought they never ſhould deſtroy them; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity. As for the Inhabitants, whatſoever they were formerly, is not now material: moſt of the old ſtock rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room; ſo that the Country in all parts, except towards the Sea, is almoſt deſolated, or forſaken.

The Country, as before was ſaid, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers: the principal whereof, 1. *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Lagartos*, or the River of *Crocodiles*, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noort* betwixt *Nombre de Dios*, and *Porto Beleno*. 2. *Sardinilla*. 3. *Sardina*. 4. *Rio de Colubros*, or the River of *Snakes*; and 5. *Rio de Comagre*, all falling into the ſame Sea. Then on the other ſide 6. *Chepo*, whoſe ſands in former times yielded plenty of Gold. 7. *Rio de las Balſas*, on the banks whereof groweth great ſtore of timber for the building of ſhips. 8. *De Congos*, emptying it ſelf into the Bay of S. *Michaels*.

Towns of moſt note, 1. S. *Philip*, ſeated on a ſafe and ſtrong Haven called *Porto Belo*: built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the ſecond, but by the counſel of *John Baptiſta Antonelli*, to be the ſtaple of the trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama*: partly in regard of the unhealthineſs of *Nombre di Dios*, where it was before; but chiefly becauſe that Town was found to have lien too open to the invaſions of the *Engliſh*. Fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles, (on each ſide of the Haven one) but for all that ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. 2. *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently ſeated in the Upper-ſea, for a Town of trade; and for that reaſon made the *Staple* of ſuch commodities, as were trucked betwixt *Peru*, and *Spain*; which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there ſhipped for *Peru*; or brought from *Peru*, and landed at *Panama*, were by land brought unto this place, and here ſhipped for *Spain*. It took this name from *Didaco Niqueſa* a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, who having been diſtreſſed by tempeſts was driven in here, and bid his men go on ſhore, *en nombre de Dios*, in the name of God. In reference hereunto by the *Latines*, borrowing a *Greek* word, it is called *Theonyma*. Of great trade once, on the occaſion before mentioned: but in the year 1584. the trade was removed unto *Porto Belo*, by the counſel of *Antonelli* before named; and ſome years after that, the Inhabitants alſo. To haſten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake*, ſerved exceeding fitly. 3. *Acla*, on the Coaſt of the ſame Sea alſo, but on the South-Eaſt of *Nombre de Dios*. 4. *Nata*, or S. *Jago de Nata*, ſituate on the lower Sea on the borders of *Veragua*, about 30. leagues on the Weſt of *Panama*: 5. *Panama*, the chief City of *Caſtella Aurea*, the Reſidence of the Governour of the *Courts* of *Juſtice*, honoured with a *Biſhops* See, a *Suffragan* to the Arch-biſhop of *Lima*; and beautified with three fair Monaſteries; and a College of *Jeſuits*. Seated in the 9. degree of Northern *Latitude*; and ſo near the Sea, that the Waves come cloſe unto the Wall. A Town through which the Wealth of *Spain*, and *Peru*, paſſeth every year: yet not containing above 350. houſes; the number of the Souldiers greater than that of the Citizens. 6. S. *Crux la Real*, a league from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes* brought out of *Guinea*.

This Province was the firſt of thoſe on the *Firm land*, which were diſcovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Iland lying on the ſhore near *Porto Belo*, which he cauſed to be called *Los Baſtimentos*; becauſe being caſt hereon by chance, he found good ſtore of *Maize* and other proviſions, called *Baſtimentos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Ilands of this Province, are thoſe which *Columbus* never ſaw, called the *Ilands* of *Pearls*; ſituate in the Southern ſea, oppoſite to *Panama*, from which diſtant 17. leagues or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called *Tarorequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the reſt of them rather *Rocks* than Ilands. Much famed not only for the abundance, but the excellency of the *Pearls* there found; fairer than thoſe of *Margarita*, and *Cubagna*, ſo much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniardt*, till by their *cruelty* and *covetouſneſs* they unpeopled the Ilands, and deſtroyed the *Pearls*. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and ſome *Slaves* of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Maſters Cattel, in the fields and paſtures.

2. *DARIEN* hath on the North, the *Diſtrict* of *Panoma*; on the South, *New Granada*; on the Eaſt, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name, and the *Golf* of *Uraba*; and on the Weſt, the main Southern Ocean.

The Country of a temperate Air, and a fruitfull Soil: ſo happy in the production of *Melons* and ſuch other fruits, that within twenty dayes after they are ſown, they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth *Grapes*, and other fruits; either natural hereunto, or brought hither from *Europe*. A tree here is called *Hovo*, not elſewhere known; the ſhade of which is conceived to be ſo wholſom, that the *Spaniards* ſeek them out to ſleep under them. Out of the *Bloſſoms* of it they diſtill a perfumed Water; of the *Bark*, a Bath or *Lavatory*, good for the opening of the pores, and redreſs of wearineſs; and from the *Roots* they draw a Liquor which they uſe to drink of. Of Beaſts and Fowl great plenty, whether wild or tame; and ſome of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Darien*, whence it hath the name; A clear water, and much drank of, but of a ſlow courſe and a narrow chanel; able to bear no bigger Veſſels than thoſe of one piece of wood uſed among the *Salvages*; we may call them *Troughs*. But with this ſlow courſe it falleth at laſt into the Golf of *Uraba*, a large Arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is ſaid to be eight leagues over. 2. *Rio de las Redas*, and 3. *De la Trepadera*, both emptying themſelves into the *Golf* of *Uraba*. 4. *Corobaci*, on the ſame ſide of the Country alſo. 5. *Beru*, a River of the South-Sea, not much obſervable, but that ſome have laboured to derive the Etymology of *Peru*, from thence.

Towns of moſt note, though few of any, 1. *Darien*, on the Bank of the *Golf* of *Uraba*; oftentimes ſo unhealthy by the Miſts which do thence ariſe, that the Inhabitants uſe to ſend their ſick people to the freſh Air of *Corobary*, to revive their ſpirits. By the *Spaniards* it was called S. *Maria Antiqua*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Euciſus* a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, *An.* 1510. and grew ſo ſuddenly into wealth and reputation, that within four years it was made an *Epiſcopal* Sea. But being built too near the Banks of the *Darien*, in a mooriſh and unhealthy place, both the *Epiſcopal* See, and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forſaken by themſelves, or deſtroyed by the Salvages: ſo that uow from *Acla* to the bottom of the *Golf* of *Uraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but ſome few ſcattered houſes in all that tract, for the uſe of the Natives; who formerly made their Neſts like Birds, on the tops of trees. 2. *Bizu*, 3. *Los Angadeſos*, two ſmall villages on the other ſide of the Country, poſſeſſed by the Salvages. Beſides theſe, and ſome forty ſhreds here and there diſperſed, all the reſt a Deſart. So that not being able to maintain the reputation of a diſtinct Province, the government hereof hath of late been devolved on the *Ptefect* of *Panama*.

3. *NOVA ANDALUSIA* hath on the Weſt, the River *Darien*, and the *Golf* of *Uraba*; on the Eaſt, the Province of S. *Martha*; on the North, the main Ocean; and on the South, the *new Realm* of *Granada*. So called with reference to *Andaluſia* a Province of *Spain*. Called alſo by ſome Writers *Charthagena*, from *Carthagena* now the chief City of it.

It is in length from the *Golf* of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 80. Leagues, and near upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of woods, but in thoſe woods great ſtore of Roſin, Gums, and ſome kinds of *Balſams*. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Tree, which whoſoever toucheth, is in danger of poiſoning. The Soil, by reaſon of the abundance of rain which falls upon it, very moyſt and ſpewie; inſomuch that few of our *Europæan* fruits have proſpered in it. Few veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*; where the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming, found great ſtore of treaſure. But it was taken out of the graves and *Monuments* of the dead, not found in *Mines*, or digged for as in other places: ſuch being the reputation of that Territory in former times, that the *Nations* far and near did carry the bodies of their Dead to be buried in it, with great quantity of *Gold*, *Jewels*, and other Riches. The *Natives* very fierce and ſtout, whiles they were a People: But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrows before fully conquered, they have been ſo conſumed and waſted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Rio de los Redos*, and 2. *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3. *Zenu*, which paſſing thorow the Province above mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean, over againſt the Iland *Fuerte*. 4. S. *Martha*, of long courſe, and much eſtimation: For riſing in the moſt Southern parts of the *New Realm* of *Granada*, near the *Æquinoctial*, it paſſ[illegible] thorow the whole length of that Kingdom, and at the laſt mingleth its ſtreams with that of the Ri[illegible] *Magdalen*, not far from *Mopox*. By the *Natives* it is called *Cauca*. And as for Mountains, thoſe of moſt note are a continual Ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Cordillera*, by the Natives *Abibe*; craggy, and difficult of aſcent; in breadth affirmed to be 20. leagues, but the length uncertain, the furtheſt ends of them towards the South not diſcovered hitherto.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Charthagena*, ſituate in a ſandy *Peninſula*, ten degrees diſtant from the *Æquator*: well built, and for the bigneſs of it of great wealth and ſtate; conſiſting of 500. houſes, or thereabouts, but thoſe neat and handſom. Beautified with a *Cathedral* Church, three Monaſteries, and one of the beſt Havens of all *America*. Well fortified on both ſides, ſince the taking of it by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585. took it by aſſault, and carried thence, beſides ineſtimable ſums of money, 240. braſs pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Tolu*. by the *Spaniards* called S. *Jago*, twelve miles from *Carthagena*; memorable for the moſt ſoveraign *Balſam* of all theſe parts, called the *Balſam* of *Tolu*; little inferior, if at all, to the *Balſam* of *Egypt*. 3. *Mopox*, or *Santa Crux de Mopox*, near the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalens*. 4. *Baranca de Malambo*, on the banks of the River *Magdalen*, ſix leagues from the Ocean; where ſuch Commodities as are brought by Sea for the *New Realm* of *Granada*, uſe to be unſhipped, and carried by *Lighters*, or ſmall Boats, up the River. 5. *Sebaſtian de Buena viſta*, built by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, An. 1508. in his firſt attempt upon this Country; ſituate on a riſing ground near the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a league and a half from the Sea. 6. *Villa de Maria*, 30. leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4. S. *MARTHA* hath on the Weſt, *Nova Andaluſia*; on the Eaſt, *Rio de la Hacha*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, the New Realm of *Granada*: about 70. leagues in length, and as much in breadth. So called from S. *Martha* the chief City of it.

The Country Mountainous and barren, not fit for paſturage, or tillage; productive notwithſtanding of Limons, Orenges, Pomgranates, and ſuch other fruits as are brought hither out of *Spain*. The air on the Sea-Coaſts very hot and ſcalding, and in the midland parts as cold, becauſe of the neighbourhood of ſome Mountains alwayes covered with ſnow. The principal of thoſe Mountains, a long Ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sierras Nievadas*, or the *Snowy Mountains*; diſcernable by the Mariners 30. leagues at Sea; by whom called the Mountains of *Tairona*, from a Valley of that name beneath them; the Inhabitants whereof by the advantage of thoſe Hills, have hitherto preſerved their liberty againſt the *Spaniards*. The reſt, though ſubject to the *Spaniards*, have their ſeveral Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant and ill-natured people; made worſe perhaps than indeed they are, by reaſon of their hate to the *Spaniards*, whoſe government they live under with great unwillingneſs.

Chief Rivers of this Province, 1. *Rio Grando de la Magdalena*; which hath its fountain in the Hills of the *New Realm* of *Granada*, not far from the *Æquator*; but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Carthagena* and S. *Martha*, in the *Latitude* of 12. degrees: where dividing it ſelf, it maketh an Iſland of 5. leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; diſcernable for ten leagues ſpace from the reſt of the *Main*, by the taſte and colour of the water. 2. *Rio de Cazaze*, which falleth into the *Magdalen*, as doth alſo 3. *Cæſar*, by the Natives called *Pompatan*: which having its fountain near the City of Kings in the Vale of *Upar*, paſſeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4. *Ayumas*, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth Weſt-ward for the ſpace of 70. leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalens*, as before is ſaid, near the Foreſt of *Alpuerte*. 5. *Bubia*. 6. *Piras*. 7. *Don Diego*. 8. *Palamini*. 9. *Gayza*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of moſt obſervation, 1. S. *Martha*, ſituate on the ſhores of the Ocean, in the *Latitude* of ten degrees and 30. minutes; neighboured by a ſafe and convenient Haven, defended from the winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an *Epiſcopal* See. Small, and ill built when it was at the beſt; nor well recovered of the ſpoil it ſuffered by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595. and by Sir *Anthony Sherley* the next year after. 2. *Tenariff*, on the Banks of the *Magdalen*, 40. leagues from S. *Martha*. 3. *Tanalameque*, by the *Spaniards* called *Villa de las Palmas*, twenty leagues to the South of *Tenariff*. 4. *Cividad de los Reyes*, or the City of the Kings, ſituate in the Vale of *Upar*, on the banks of a deep and violent River, called *Guatapori*; which not far off falleth into the *Cæſar*: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Toirona*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of *Spain*. 5. *Ramada*, by the *Spaniards* called *New Salamanca*, in the ſame Valley of *Upar*; as liberally furniſhed with veins of Braſs, as it is with ſtones. 6. *Ocanna*, on the Weſtern Reach of the River *Cæſar*, equally diſtant from its confluence with *Ayumas*, and its fall into *Magdalen*.

5. *RIO DE LA HACHA* is the name of a little Province lying on the North-Eaſt of S. *Martha*: environed on two ſides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the Eaſt) with a large and ſpacious Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo de Venezuela*: the extremities hereof North-weſt, called *Cabo la Vola*; on the North-Eaſt, *Cabo di Coqui boccoa*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a ſmall Town, conſiſting of no more than an hundred houſes, but big enough to give name to ſo ſmall a Province. Built on a little Hill about a mile from the Sea; the Haven inconvenient and expoſed to the Northern winds, but the ſoyl about it very rich, fruitfull of all ſuch Plants as are brought from *Spain*; well ſtored with veins of *Gold*, excellent *Saltwiches*, and ſome *Gems* of great worth and vertue. Diſtant eight leagues from *New Salamanca*, and 18. leagues from the *Cape la Vela*: ſurprized and ſacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595. 2. *Rancheria*, ſix leagues on the Eaſt of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the moſt part by ſuch as get their living by *Perlfiſhing*. 3. *Topia*, five leagues from *La Hacha*, and almoſt as much from the Sea: the Fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca*, were terribly waſted by the *Engliſh*, in the year aforeſaid; becauſe the Governour of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000. *Ducats* not to burn that Town, would not ſtand to his bargain.

Theſe Countreys diſcovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was ſaid, were afterwards brought under the power of *Spain*, by two ſeveral men, imployed in the ſubduing of their ſeveral parts, *Anno* 1508. To *Didaco Niqueſa* was allotted the government and conqueſt of thoſe parts hereof, which lie on the Weſt of the Bay of the *Uraba*, containing the Præfectures of *Darien* and *Panama*, by the name of *Caſtella del Oro*: And to *Alfonſo Oreda*, all that lay on the Eaſt of that *Gulf*, by the name of *Nova Andaluſia*. But theſe two finiſhed not the work, though they firſt begun it: *Enciſus* diſcovering further on the River of *Dariene*, than *Niqueſa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panama* and the beſt of their trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Præfectures of S. *Martha* and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and ſubdued by the *Spaniard*) being added to it. One of their laſt Kings which held out againſt the *Spaniards*, was called *Abibeia*, who had his *Palace* on the top of a Tree, (as moſt of his ſubjects had their houſes;) from which when *Franciſco de Vanques* a *Spaniſh* Captain could by no other *Rhetorick* win him to deſcend, he laid his *Axe* to the Root, and began to fell it: which ſeen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his life and *Palace* at the will of his Enemies.

OF NOVA GRANADA.

NOVA GRANADA, or the *New Realm of Granada*, is bounded on the North, with *Caſtella Aurea* ; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur* ; on the Eaſt, with *Veneznela*. The Countreys lying on the South, are not yet diſcovered, ſhut up with vaſt Hills, and impaſſable Mountains ; except only in thoſe parts which lye near the Sea, where the way lyeth open to *Peru*. Thus called by *Gonſalvo Ximenez*, the firſt Diſcoverer ; who being a Native of *Granada* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it.

It is in length 130 leagues, and as much in breadth ; reckoning *Popayan* for a part of it, though by ſome made a diſtinct government. So that we may divide the whole into theſe two parts, *Granada* ſpecially ſo called, lying on the Weſt ; and 2 *Popayana*, lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA*, ſpecially ſo called, hath an Air, for the moſt part, well tempered betwixt heat and cold ; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and ſhortneſs of dayes. The Countrey full of Woods, but of great fertility, well ſtored with Corn and Paſturage, many Herds of Cattel ; ſome veins of Gold and other Metals, and in that part hereof, which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of *Emeralds* ; and amongſt their Woods, that called *Guaiacan*, Medicinable for the *French* diſeaſe, grows in great abundance. The people tall and ſtrong of body, not very induſtrious, the greateſt part of their time being ſpent in Songs and Dances. The *Women* of a white and more clear complexion than any of their neighbours, and more handſomely habited ; apparelled in black, or party-coloured *Mantles*, girt about their middles ; their hair tyed up, and covered moſt an end with *Chaplets* intermixt with Flowers, and artifically compoſed.

Rivers of note I find not any, but thoſe of St. *Martha*, and St. *Magdalen*, deſcribed before : nor any diſtinction of it into ſeveral Provinces, but that the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Panches*, *Colymæ*, and *Muſi*, by which the *Salvages* were diſtinguiſhed, when firſt known to the *Spaniards* ; with reference to which the principal of their Towns are by ſome deſcribed.

Towns then of greateſt note, 1. St. *Foy de Bagota*, but commonly St. *Foy*, the *Metropolis* of this new Realm, the See of an *Archbiſhop*, and the ſeat of the Governour. Built by *Gonſalvo Ximinez de Queſada*, at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the banks of which they uſed to ſacrifize to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, beſides thoſe of the Natives; and ſituate in the fourth degree of Northern *Latitude*. 2. S. *Michael*, twelve leagues on the North of S. *Foy*, a well traded Market. 3. *Tocayma*, in the Territory of the *Panches*, a barbarous and man-eating people, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards* ; and Maſters of the richeſt part of all the Countrey. The Town about 15 leagues from St. *Foy*, towards the North-Eaſt ; and ſeated on the banks of *Pati*, a little River, which not far off is ſwallowed up in the body of *Magdalen*. 4. *Tudela*, is the Countrey of the *Muſi*, and *Colymæ*, two warlike Nations ; ſituate on the banks of the River *Zurbi*, and made a Colony of the *Spaniards* at their firſt coming hither ; but deſerted by them not long after, for fear of the *Salvages*, though the want of Proviſions was pretended. 5. *Trinidado*, on the ſame River, but ſomewhat lower, and more remote from the *Salvages* ; by whom notwithſtanding much annoyed; the fields thereof full of veins of *Chriſtal*, *Emeralds*, *Adamants*, and *Chalcedonians*. 6. *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the ſame territory of the *Muſi* and *Colymæ*, An. 1572. 7. *Tunia*, ſo called according to the name of the *Tribe*, or Province, in which it is ſituate ; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might ſerve for a retreat and Fortreſs againſt the *Salvages* ; now a well traded *Emporie*, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impreſs 280 Horſe for preſent ſervice. 8. *Pampelona*, 60 leagues from St. *Foy*, towards the North-Eaſt, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattel. 9. *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiana*, the furtheſt Town of all this Province on the North-Eaſt towards *Veneznela* : As 10 St. *John de Los Lianos*, or St. *John* upon the *Plains* is in the South-Eaſt, 50 leagues from St. *Foy*, and ſeated in a corner full of veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA* lyeth on the Weſt of *New-Granada*, ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called; from which parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Countrey ; on the North bounded with *Nova Andaluzia*, or *Carthagena* ; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the Weſt. Extended in length from North to South 130 leagues at the leaſt ; and from the River to the Sea, betwixt 30 and 40.

The Country over-cloid with rain, breeds but little *Maiz*, leſs Wheat, and almoſt no Cattel ; though in ſome places richer than it is in others. The people anciently *Man-eaters*, and as rude as any, now more induſtrious and affable than the other *Americans* ; eſpecially about *Popayan*, where the ſoyl is alſo better tempered than in other places. The Rivers of moſt note beſide that of St. *Martha*, which we have ſpoken of already ; and ſome leſſer ſtreams which fall into it ; are 1. *Rio de S. Juan*. 2. *Rio de Cedros*. 3. *Rio de S. Jago* ; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greateſt note, 1. *Popayan*, called by the name of the King hereof, when firſt known to the *Spaniards* ; ſituate on a nameleſs but pleaſant River, in the midſt of a Plain, of great wealth, and a healthy air, in two degrees and 30 minutes of Northern *Latitude* : the ordinary reſidence of the Governour, and See of a Biſhop. The building fair unto the eye, but ſlight ; excepting the *Cathedral*, and a Monaſtery of the Friars called *De mercede*, which are ſtrong and laſting. 2. *Antiochia*, (or *Sancta Fides de Antiochia*) on the borders of *Nova Andaluzia*, 100. leagues diſtant from *Popayan*. Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Martha*, from which twelve leagues diſtant. 3. *Caramanta*, on the *Martha* it ſelf. 4. *Patia*, in a pleaſant Valley, on the banks of a ſmall River, but of excellent water. 5. S. *Anne* in the *Cantred* of *Anzerman*, by which name it is ſometimes called: Built on a little Hill betwixt two ſweet Rivers, and compaſſed round about with a Grove of moſt pleaſant fruits. 6. S. *Jago de Arma*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Arma*; ſituate in a territory very rich in *Gold*, but otherwiſe unprovided of all manner of neceſſaries: Fifty leagues to the North-Eaſt of *Popayan*. 7. *Carthage*, in the Province of *Quimbaia*, 22 leagues from S. *Jago de Arma*, ſeated in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, ſeven leagues from the River of S. *Martha*. 8. *Cali*, a league from that River, but on the banks of another, in the Latitude of four degrees: neighboured by a vaſt and mighty Mountain, at whoſe foot it ſtandeth; where built by *Sebaſtian de Betalcuzar*, the firſt diſcoverer of this Countrey. 9. *Bonaventure*, on a Bay ſo called in the Southern Ocean; a ſmall Town, but of great uſe for the conveyance of the Commodities of *New-Spain*, unto *Popayan*, and other Towns of this Province. 10. *Timanu*, 80. leagues from *Popayan* towards the Eaſt, at the foot of that vaſt ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far South-wards as the ſtreights of *Magellan*. 11. S. *Juan de Paſto*, ſituate in a pleaſant Valley, but one degree from the *Æquator*. 12. *Sebaſtian de la Plata*, ſo called of its Silver *Mines*, in the South-Eaſt confines of the Province. 13. *Almagner*, on the ſides of a plain, but barren Mountain. 14. *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Chicu*; in a barren ſoyl, were not *Gold* a ſupplement of all wants, which is there found in ſome abundance.

To this Province belong alſo ſome Iſlands in the Southern Ocean, that is to ſay, 1. The Iſle of *Palmes*, South of the Cape of *Corrientes*, ſo called from the abundance of *Palms* which are growing in it. 2. *Gorgona*, oppoſite to the mouth, or out-let of *Rio de* S. *Juan*, an Iſland of three leagues in compaſs; the Hills ſo high, the Vallies ſo extremely low, the Sun ſo little ſeen amongſt them, and the Woods ſo dark, that ſome have likened it to Hell. Not much obſervable, but that it did afford a lurking place unto *Francis Pizarro*, in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulſed from landing on that Coaſt. 3. *Del Gallo*, a ſmall Iſland, not a league in circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Countrey thus divided into two *Præfectures*, but both ſubordinate to the *Juridical Reſort* in the City of S. *Foy de Bagota*, is indebted for its firſt Diſcovery to two ſeveral perſons. *Granada* ſpecially ſo called, was firſt diſcovered by *Gonſalvo Ximinez de Queſada*, employed therein by *Ferdinand de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canarie* Iſlands, *An.* 1536. who paſſing up the River of *Magdalen* without moleſtation (more than the difficulties of the wayes through Fens and Forreſts) as far as the *Cantred* of *Bagota*, was there encountred by that King, whom he eaſily vanquiſhed, and waſting all his Territories, carried with him thence great quantity of *Gold*, *Emeralds*, and other Treaſure. The reſidue of thoſe Petit Princes which then governed in their ſeveral *Tribes*, either ſubmitted to him without oppoſition, or elſe were vanquiſhed at the firſt riſing. Having diſcovered and ſubdued every ſeveral Province, and miſerably murdered *Sangipa* the laſt King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made uſe in ſubduing the *Panches*, he cauſed it to be called *The new Realm of Granada*, for the reaſon formerly laid down; and ſumming up the ſpoils he had gotten in this eaſie War, he found them to amount to 1800. *Emeralds*, 191294. *Pezoes* of the fineſt Gold, 35000 of a coarſer and inferiour alloy. In his return he heard the news of *Sebaſtian de Betalcazars* marching on the other ſide of the River of S. *Martha*; who having at the ſame time diſcovered and ſubdued the Province of *Popayana*, was beating out his way towards the North Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Franciſco Pezarro* the Conquerer of *Peru*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having ſecured all the Countrey to the very Sea, reſolved to open a way homewards through thoſe Regions, which lay betwixt his own Province, and *Mare del Noort*: And this he did reſolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Countrey, full of *Gold*, was in that Tract poſſeſſed by *Popayan* and *Columbaz*, two Petit Princes, but yet the greateſt in thoſe parts. Encountred in his march by the Roytelets of *Patia* and *Paſto*, he ſoon made them weary, and retire themſelves into the Woods and impaſſable Mountains; and paſſing ſlowly on, came at laſt to *Popayan*. Where though the *Salvages* entertained him with ſome frequent skirmiſhes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to poſſeſs themſelves of their beſt Towns, and to build others in ſuch places as they thought convenient. But this was after the firſt Conqueſt, according to the coming over of ſucceeding *Colonies*: The firſt Conqueſt being finiſhed, *An.* 1536. when the *New Realm of Granada* was ſubdued by *Ximinez*.

OF PERU.

PERU is bounded on the Eaſt, with that vaſt ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the North with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*; on the South, with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the firſt of note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Countrey, occaſioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700. leagues, but the breadth not equal. In ſome places 100 leagues broad, in others 60. in the reſt but 40. more or leſs according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of ſo different a nature from one another, as if they were far diſtant both in ſite and ſoyl. Theſe parts the *Plains*, the *Hill-Countreys*, and the *Andes*: the *Plains*, extended on the Sea-ſhore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Vallies; the *Sierra*, or Hill-Countries, compoſed of both. Each part ſtretched out from North to South, the whole length of the Country: the *Plains* from the Sea-ſhore to the Hill Countries, for the moſt part ten leagues broad, in ſome places more; the *Hill-Countries* 20 leagues in breadth where narroweſt, and as much the *Andes*. In the *Plains* it never raineth; on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the *Hill-Countries* rain from *September* to *April*, after that fair weather. In the *Hill-Countries* the Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*; in the *Plains* their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*. So that a man may Travel from *Summer*, to *Winter* in one day; be frozen in the morning at his ſetting forth, and ſcorched with heat before he come to his Journeys end. Some other differences there are, as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Forreſts, whereas the *Hill-Countries* are bare and naked; the *Plains*, where there are ſtore of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea beſides, ſandy and dry, and in moſt places deſtitute both of Fruits and Corn; in ſome parts of the *Hill-Countries* where there are no Rivers, and a rain but ſeldome, plenty of Roots, *Maize*, Fruits, and all other neceſſaries. In the *Plains* there never bloweth any but the Southerly wind, though it bring no rain with it; and in the *Hills*, winds from every Coaſt, and of every nature, ſome bringing Rain, ſome Snow, ſome claps of Thunder, and others fair weather at the heels of them. Inſomuch that it is obſerved, that ſuch of the Inhabitants of the *Plains* as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find ſuch pains in the head and ſtomack, as *freſh-water* Souldiers when firſt Sea-ſick.

Not to purſue theſe differences any further in the ſeveral parts, we will look upon the whole in groſs: which we ſhal find but meanly furniſhed for the bigneſs, with thoſe Commodities which ſo large a Countrey might afford: inſomuch as many of the people live moſt on *Roots*, here being little Wheat, and not ſuch quantities of *Maize* (the ordinary bread-grain of the *Americans*) as to ſerve their multitudes. Nor find I that the Cattel of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increaſe. Inſtead of which they have in their Woods and Paſtures infinite numbers of beaſts ſomewhat like wild Goats, (which the call *Vicagues*) and great ſtore of a kind of Sheep, by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for fleece and burden; as big as a ſmall breed of Horſes, but in taſte as pleaſing as our *Mutton*, and no leſs nouriſhing. A Creature ſo well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himſelf over-loaded, no blows, or violence ſhall make him move a foot forward, till his load be leſſened; and of ſo cheap a dyet, that he is content with very little, and ſometimes paſſeth three whole dayes without any water. The *Camels* of theſe parts, and not much unlike them.

This as it is by ſome accompted for a Creature proper to this Countrey onely (though in that miſtaken) ſo may it paſs amongſt the *Rarities* hereof: many of which it hath both in Beaſts, and Plants, and in inanimate bodies alſo. Amongſt their *Plants* they have a *Fig-Tree*, the North part whereof looking towards the Mountains, bringeth forth its Fruits in the *Summer* only; the Southern part looking to the Sea, fruitfull only in *Winter*. Some as deſervedly do count the *Coca* for a wonder, the Leaves whereof being dryed, and formed into *Lozenges*, (or little Pellets) are exceeding uſefull in a Journey. For melting in the mouth, they ſatisfie both hunger and thirſt, and preſerve a man in ſtrength, and his ſpirits in vigour; and generally are eſteemed of ſuch ſoveraign uſe, that it is thought that 100000. Basket full of the Leaves of this Tree are ſold yearly at the Mines of *Potoſia* only, each of which at the Markets of *Cuſco* would yield 12.*d* or 18.*d* a piece. Another *Plant* they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a ſick perſon, will inſtantly diſcover whether he be like to live, or dye. For if on the preſſing it in his hand he look merry and cheerfull, it is an aſſured ſign of his *Recovery*: as on the other ſide, of death, if ſad and troubled. Amongſt their *Beaſts*, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanacu*; of which it is obſerved, that the *Males* ſtand *Centinel* on the Mountains, while the *Females* are feeding in the Vallies: and if they ſee any men coming towards them, they ſet out their throats, to give their *Females* notice of ſome danger near; whom when they come up to them, they put in the front of the *Retreat*, interpoſing their own bodies betwixt them and their enemy. Nor want they Rarities of Nature even in things *inanimate*: here being ſaid to be a round *Lake* near the *Mines* of *Potozi*, whoſe water is ſo hot, though the Countrey be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themſelves are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the banks: there being in the midſt thereof a boyling of above twenty foot ſquare.

A *Lake* which never doth decreaſe, though they have drawn a great ſtream from it to ſerve their *Metal-mills.*

More profitable, though leſs rare, thoſe *Metals*, which thoſe Mills are made for; and no leſs profitable, one of thoſe Vulgar Plants, I mean *Tobacco*, growing more abundantly here than in other Countries of *America*: for which cauſe, and the reſemblance which it hath to *Henbane*, in form and quality, it is called the *Henbane* of *Peru*, by *Gerrad* and ſome others of our Modern *Herbaliſts*.. A Plant, which though in ſome reſpect being moderately taken, it may be ſerviceable for *Phyſick*: yet beſides the conſumption of the purſe, and imparing of our inwards parts, the immoderate, vain, and phantaſtical abuſe of this ſtinking weed, corrupteth the natural ſweetneſs of the breath, ſtupifieth the brain, and indeed is ſo prejudicial to the general eſteem of our Countrey-men, that one ſaith of them, *Anglorum corpora, qui huic plantæ tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degeneraſſe videntur.* The two chief Vertues aſcribed unto it (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort digreſſion) are, that it voideth *Rheume*, and is found to be a ſoveraign *Antitode* againſt *Lues Venerea*, that loathſome diſeaſe of the *French* Pox, For this laſt, like enough it is, that ſo unclean a Diſeaſe may be helped with ſuch an unſavory Medicine. But for the ſecond it may perhaps conſiſt more in opinion, than truth or reality; the *Rheum*, which it is ſaid to void, being no more than what it breedeth at the preſent. We may as well conclude that *Bottle-ale* is good for the breaking of wind (which effect we find commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the ſame wind which it ſelf conveyed into the ſtomack. But *Tobacco* is by few now taken as *Medicinal*; it is of late times grown a *Good-fellow*, and fallen from a Phyſician to a Complement. An humour, which had never ſpread ſo far amongſt us, if the ſame means of prevention had been uſed by the *Chriſtian* Magiſtrates, as was by *Morat-Baſſa* among the *Turks*: who commanded a Pipe to be thruſt thorow the Noſe of a *Turk* whom he found taking *Tobacco*, and ſo to be carried in deriſion all about *Conſtantinople*. It is obſerved, that the taking of Tobacco was firſt brought into *England*, by the *Mariners* of Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1585. And that it hapned not unfitly in the way of an *Antidote* to that immoderate uſe of drinking, which our *Low-Countrey* Souldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time, Anno 1582. Before which time, the *Engliſh* of all Northern people were deemed to be moſt free from that *Swiniſh* Vice, wherein it is to be feared that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch*. Certain it is, that it is taken ſo exceſſively by both theſe Nations, that I may juſtly ſay with a learned *Fleming*, Herbæ *ejus, non dicam uſus, ſed abuſus, non modo in* Anglia, *ſed in* Belgio, *& alibi, inſanum in modum jam adolevit.*

But the greateſt riches of this Countrey is moſt out of ſight, hid in the *Bowels* of the earth, but found in thoſe never-decaying *Mines* of Gold and Silver; more eminently abounding in this one Province than in all *America*. For inſtance whereof we may take the *Silver Mines* of *Potozi*, diſcovered in the year 1545. the fift of which, payable into the Kings Exchequer, amounted in forty years to a 111 millions of *Pezoes*, every *Pezo* being valued at ſix ſhillings and ſix pence; and yet a third part of the whole was diſcharged of that payment. By this one we may gueſs ſomewhat of the reſt, as by the proportion of one member, the *dimenſions* of the whole body may be probably aimed at; unleſs the riches of theſe Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by ſome knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold than Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arias Montanus*, and ſome other very learned men, that this *Peru* is that land of *Ophir* to which *Solomons* Navy went for Gold; induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chron. lib. 2. cap. 3. ver. 6. That the Gold was the Gold of Paruaim.* A fancy not of ſo ſandy a foundation, as many others of that kind, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Countrey, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards*. By means whereof not only *Spain*, but all *Europe* alſo is better furniſhed with Gold and Silver, than ever formerly. For in the firſt ages of the World our Anceſtors the *Britains* (I muſt digreſs here once again) had no other money than *Iron-rings*, and Braſs-rings, which they uſed for Inſtruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the moſt uſual Materials of their coyn, was moſt times Braſs, and ſometimes Leather. *Corium forma publica percuſſum*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which laſt ſort we find that *Frederick* the Emperour made uſe at the ſiege of *Millain*; and the *Engliſh*, in the time of the *Barons* Wars. And why not ſo? conſidering that no longer ſince, in the year 1574. the *Hollanders* being then reduced to ſome extremities, made money of *Paſt-boord*. But this hapneth only in Caſes of neceſſity, the two Metals of Gold and Silver having for many hundred years (though not in ſuch abundance as in later times) been the chief inſtruments of Exchange and Bartery betwixt man and man, and queſtionleſs will ſo continue to the end of the World. I know Sir *Thomas More* in the ſecond Book of his *Utopia*, preferreth Iron before Gold, becauſe more neceſſary for all uſes; *Ut ſine quo non magis quam ſine igne atque aqua vivere Mortales queant*: and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, telling us how the *Utopians* uſe to employ thoſe *Metals*, in making Chamber-pots, and Veſſels of more unclean neceſſities; eating and drinking for the moſt part in glaſs or earth. He telleth us alſo how they make chains and fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious ſlaves, and Malefactors; how they puniſh infamous perſons by putting Gold Rings upon their fingers, Jewels of Gold in their Ears, and chains of Gold about their necks: how they adorn their little children with precious Jewels, which *gayeties*, when they come to Age, and ſee them worn by none but ſuch little children, they uſe to caſt away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys leave off without conſtraint, their Babies, Cobnuts, and other *Crepundia*. He further telleth us how the Ambaſſadors of the *Anemolii* (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongſt them richly and gorgiouſly attired, were took for ſlaves, by reaſon of their Golden Chains, and the meaneſt of their Followers thought to be the Ambaſſadors: how the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing Jewels, as if they had been children ſtill; and how the people laught at their chains of Gold, as being too weak to ſhackle ſuch ſturdy Fellows. Now though it pleaſed that wiſe State to have any Gold or Silver at all amongſt them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any eſteem which themſelves had of it; but therewith to provide themſelves of Forein aids, and pay their Armies, when the neceſſities of their affairs, or other reaſon of State did require the ſame. How this device would ſort with the humours of thoſe People, whom *Lucian* antiently did Fable, and ſome of later times more really do fancy to have their dwelling in the Moon, I am not able to ſay, as having hitherto had no commerce, nor correſpondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though poſſibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and find it to ſort well enough with their condition. Certain I am, this ſublunary World of ours will never brook it. And ſo I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of *Peru*: the extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver, which thoſe and the reſt of the *New world* have furniſhed the *old World* withall, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men, to be the cauſe of the dearneſs of all commodities at the preſent times, compared unto the cheapneſs of the times fore-going. For where much is, there greater prices will be given, than in other places. And yet there want not ſome that add alſo other cauſes, of the high prices of our dayes: *viz. Monopolies*, Combinations of Merchants and Crafts-men; *tranſportation* of Grain, pleaſure of great perſonages, the exceſs of private men, and the like: but theſe laſt I rather take to be *non-cauſes*, the firſt being indeed the principal. For, (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savil*, hath it in the end of his notes on *Tacitus*) the exceſſive abundance of τὰ νόμῳ μόνον ὄντα, things which conſiſt meerly on the conſtitution of men, draweth neceſſarily τὰ φύσει ὄντα, thoſe things which nature requireth, to an higher rate in the Maket. *Capta ab* Auguſto Alexandria (ſaith *Oroſius*) Roma *in tantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quam antehac, rerum venalium pretia ſtatuerentur.* As for that queſtion, whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which ſupplieth it ſelf with money by Traffick and the works of Art; or that which is ſupplied by *Mines* growing, as the gift of nature; I find it by this tale in part reſolved. Two Merchants departing from *Spain* to get gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buyeth *Moors* to dig and delve with; the other fraughteth his veſſel with *ſheep*: and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines, ſet his ſlaves to work, and the other hapning in graſſie ground, put his ſheep to grazing. The *Slaves* grown cold and hungry, call for food and cloathing; which the ſheep-maſter by the increaſe of his ſtock had in great abundance; ſo that what the one got in gold with toil, charges and hazard both of life and health, he gladly gave unto the other in exchange or Bartery, for the continual ſupply of Victuals, Cloths, and other neceſſaries for himſelf and his ſervants. In the end the Mines being exhauſted, and all the money thence ariſing exchanged with the Shepherd for ſuch neceſſaries as his wants required, home comes the Shepherd in great triumph, with abundance of wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the *Engliſh* and the *Hollanders* by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick did in concluſion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the ſecond, and out-vied him (as it were) in wealth and treaſure; notwithſtanding his many Mines of Gold and ſilver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicana*, *Guinea*, ſome in *Spain* and *Italy*, and theſe of *Peruana* which now we handle, and which have given occaſion unto this Diſcourſe, or Digreſſion rather.

It is now time to take a view of the People alſo, affirmed to be (for the moſt part) of great ſimplicity; yet ſome of them (thoſe ſpecially which lie near the *Æquator*) to be great diſſemblers, and never to diſcover their *conceptions* freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in the Wars, well skilled in managing ſuch weapons as they had been uſed to, and fearleſs of death; the rather prompted to this laſt by an old opinion held amongſt them, that in the other world they ſhall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great perſon, who was attended on in his life, they uſe to kill and bury with him one or more of his ſervants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living much like the *Jews*; but not in habit: conform therein to the other *Salvages*, but that thoſe cover their upper parts with ſome decent garment, and leave the other Members bare. But this is only near the *Æquator*; both Sexes elſewhere wearing Mantles to their very *Heels*. Habited in one faſhion over all the Country, except the dreſſing of their heads, wherein ſcarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his faſhion to himſelf. The *Women* leſs eſteemed here than in other places, treated as *Slaves*, and ſometimes cruelly beaten upon ſlight occaſions: the men (as S. *Paul* ſaith of the antient *Gentiles*) leaving the *natural uſe of the woman, and burning in their luſts towards one another*. For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that *recompence which was meet*.

Rivers of moſt note, 1. S. *Jago*, on the borders towards *Popayana*; a River of a violent courſe, and ſo great a depth, that it is 180. Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2. *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over againſt the Iſle of *Puna*, on the further ſide of the *Æquator*; an Iland of twelve Leagues in compaſs, and exceeding fruitfull. 3. *Guagaquil*, of a longer courſe than any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur* on the South of *Tombez*; over againſt the Iſle of *Lobos*. No Iland after this of note upon all this Coaſt. If any come in our way which runneth towards the Eaſt, we ſhall meet with them in the view of the ſeveral Provinces; and ſo we ſhall of the Hills or Mountains which are moſt conſiderable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to loſe themſelves; in compaſs 80. Leagues, and uſually Navigable with ſhips and barks. The waters of it not ſo ſalt as thoſe of the ſea, but ſo thick that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many habitations, as good as any in *Peru*. By a fair water courſe or River it paſſeth into a leſs *Lake*, which they call *Aulaga*; and thence moſt probably findeth a way into the Sea, or elſe is ſwallowed in the Bowels of that thirſty earth; but the firſt more likely.

It is divided commonly into three *Juridical Reſorts*, viz. of 1. *Quito*, 2. *Lima*, and 3. *Charcos*; each having under it many ſeveral and ſubordinate Provinces, too many and of too ſmall note to be here conſidered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greateſt reckoning, 1. *Quito*, 2. *Los Quixos*, 3. *Lima*, 4. *Cuſco*, 5. *Charcos*, and 6. *Collao*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the midlands; to which the Ilands of it ſhall be joyned in the cloſe of all.

1. *QUITO* is bounded on the North with *Popayan*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the Eaſt, with that of *Los Quixos*. So named from *Quito* the chief Town and Province of the firſt diviſion.

The ſoyl as fertile and as fit for the fruits of *Europe*, as any other in *Peru*: well ſtored with Cattel, eſpecially the *Pacos* or *Peruvian* ſheep; and plentifully furniſhed both with Fiſh and Fowl. In many parts great ſtore of *Nitre*, of which they make moſt approved good *Gun-powder*; and in ſome Rivers, eſpecially that of S. *Barbara*, many veins of Gold. The people generally induſtrious, eſpecially in the making of Cloth of *Cotton*, equal almoſt to ſilks for fineneſs; of *conſtitution* ſtrong and healthy, but given to lying, drinking, and ſuch other vices: with which they are ſo much in love, that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the *Chriſtian* Faith, nor willingly reclaimed from their antient *Barbariſm*. Extremely puniſhed with the *Pox*, an hereditary diſeaſe amongſt them; the very Girls and untouched *Virgins* ſo infected with it, that neither *Tobacco*, *Guaiacan*, nor *Sarſaparilla*, all which this Country doth afford in a great abundance, is able to preſerve them from it.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Carangues*, a large and ſumptuous *Palace* of the antient Kings, ſo named becauſe ſituate in the Territory of the *Carangues*, a barbarous, bloody, and man-eating people; ſubdued by *Guayanacapa*, one of the mightieſt of the Kings of *Peru*; from whom revolting, and withall killing many of his Miniſters and Garriſon-Souldiers, they were upon a ſecond conqueſt brought to the banks of a great *Lake*, into which 20000. of them being killed, were thrown. The *Lake* from thenceforth called *Yaguarcocha*, or the Lake of blood. 2. *Otavallu*, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferiour to the other; yet giving name unto the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth. 3. *Quito*, the chief of this Reſort, and once the *Regal* ſeat of its proper Kings (till made ſubject by *Guayanacapa* before mentioned) the ruines of whoſe *Palace* are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called S. *Franciſco*, built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30. minutes from the *Equinoctial*; well fortified, and as well furniſhed with *Ammunition:* inhabited by about 500. *Spaniards* beſides the Natives. The ſtreets whereof ſtraight and broad; the buildings decent: the principal of which, the *Cathedral* Church, the Courts of Juſtice, and two Convents of *Dominican*, and *Franciſcan* Friers. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a *Flaming* Mountain, or *Vulcano*; which in the year 1560. caſt out ſuch abundance of cinders, that if a rain had not hapned beyond expectation, had made great ſpoil upon the place. 4. *Tacunga*, fifteen Leagues from *Quito*; and 5. *Rhiobamba* in the Territory of the *Purvaſti*, 40. Leagues from that; each of them honoured with another of thoſe antient Palaces. 6. *Thomebamba*, neighboured by another of the Kings *Palaces*, but more magnificent than the former; ſituate in the Country of the *Canares*: amongſt whom antiently the *Women* tilled the Land, and did all without doors; whiles the Men ſtaid at home and ſpun, and attended houſewifry. 7. *Cuenca*, 64. Leagues from *Quito*, on another Road, ſituate in a Country full of *Gold*, Silver, Braſs, Iron, and veins of *Sulphur*. 8. *Loxa*, ſixteen Leagues ſouthwards of *Cuenca*, ſituate in the fifth Degree of *Southern* Latitude, and in a ſweet and pleaſant Valley called *Guxibamba*, between two fine Riverets. The Citizens well furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, but not otherwiſe wealthy. 9. *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on the Eaſt of *Loxa*; and 10. *Jaen*, 35. from that: both ſituate in the Province of *Quachimayo*, and both ſo called in reference to two Cities of thoſe names in *Spain*. Then on the Sea coaſts, there are, 11. *Portus Votas* (*Puerto Veio* as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea ſide, but in ſo ill an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the firſt Towns of this Country poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up hereabouts the bones of a monſtrous Giant; whoſe Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12. *Mantu* the Port Town to *Porto Veio*, from whence the trade is driven betwixt *Panuma* and *Peru*; the town it ſelf ſituate in a rich vein of *Emeralds*. 13. *Guayaquil*, or S. *Jago de Guayaquil*, called alſo *Gulata*; ſeated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, near the influx of the River *Guayaquil*; a noted and much frequented Empory. 14. *Caſtro*, a Colony of *Spaniards*, planted, *An.* 1568. in that part of this Country, which they call *Provincia de los Eſmeraldos*, bordering on *Popayan*. 15. S. *Michael*, by the old Natives called *Piura*, the firſt Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation. 16. *Payta*, a ſmall Town, but neighboured by the ſafeſt and moſt frequented Haven of all this Country; as guarded from the wind by the Cape of S. *Helens* on the North, and *Punta Piurina* on the South; two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt *An.* 1587. by Capt. *Cavendiſh*. Who at the ſame time alſo pillaged the Iſle of *Puna*, the moſt noted Iland of this Tract, ſituate in the Bay of *Tombez*, as was ſaid before. Fruitfull of all things neceſſary to the life of man; *Parats* for pleaſure, *Sarſaparilla* for his health. The people in preceding times ſo ſtout and Warlike, that they maintained a long War with thoſe of *Tombez*, till in the end compoſed by the mediation of the Kings of *Peru*, to whom the King hereof (for a King it had) became an Homager, as ſince their embracing of the Goſpel, to the Kings of *Spain*.

2. *LOS QUIXOS*, lieth on the Eaſt of *Quito*, and the Weſt of *El Darada*, (one of the Cantreds of *Guiana*, ſo called from its abundance of Gold:) a little different in the nature of the ſoil and people from the Province of *Quito*; but that this is ſomewhat the more barren, and leſs ſtored with thoſe rich metals which the *Spaniards* come for. The People have alſo a diſtinct tongue of their own, though they both underſtand and ſpeak the *Peruvian* language.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Baeza*, built in the year 1559. (which was within two years of the firſt diſcovery of this Region) by *Giles Ramirez de Avlia*, 18. leagues from *Quito* towards the Eaſt: now the ſeat of the Governour. 2. *Archidona*, 20. leagues on the South-eaſt of *Baeza*. 3. *Avila*, on the North of *Archidona*; ſo called with reference to *Ramirez de Avila* before mentioned, or to a Town of that name in *Spain*. 4. *Sevilla del Oro*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, as the others are.

On the Eaſt of this Province lieth the Cantred of *Canelam*, inhabited by a blockiſh and ignorant People, and deſtitute of all things neceſſary for the comforts of life. Moſt mercileſly tormented, and caſt to dogs to be devoured, by *Pizarro*, becauſe they could not ſhew him the readieſt way to ſome richer Country than their own; this being the moſt barren Region of that part of *Peru*, which they call *La Sierra*, or the *Hill-Countries*. More Eaſt-wards yet, in that part, which they call the *Andes*, lie the Cantreds of the *Bracomori*, commonly called *Juan de Salinas*, by the name of the firſt Diſcoverer of it: A Country not inferior unto many for the quantity of Gold, ſuperior to any for the pureneſs of it. Chief Towns of which, 1 *Valladolit*, 2. *Loiola*, by the Natives called *Cumbinama*, 3. S. *Jago de las Montannas* (or S. *James* of the *Mountains*) all *Spaniſh* Colonies; and all of the foundation of *John de Salinis à Loiola*, once the *Pro-Præfect* of the Province, by whom firſt thorowly ſubdued to the Crown of *Spain*.

3. *LIMA*, called alſo *LOS REYES*, is bounded on the North, with *Quito*; on the South, with *Charcas*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with *Colloa* and the Province of *Cuſco*. So named from *Lima* or *Los Reyes*, the chief City of it. Extended from the 6. to the 16. Degree of *Southern Latitude*: or meaſuring it from the Promontory *del Aguja* North, to *Arequipa* on the South, it reacheth to 250. leagues. The ſoil of the ſame nature with that of *Quito*, but more diſtributed into Vallies, and better peopled.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1. *Miraflores* in the valley of *Zanu*, 110. leagues on the North of *Lima*, and about five leagues diſtant from the Sea; on which it hath an Haven belonging to it, called *Chencepen*. The Town well ſeated, and inhabited by a wealthy people, made ſuch by the abundance of *Sugar-canes* in the neighbouring Valley. 2. *Truxillo*, in the rich and flouriſhing Valley of *Chimo*, on the banks of a ſmall, but pleaſant River, and about two leagues from the Sea, where it hath a large, but unſafe Haven, which they call *El Azzecife de Trugillo*. The Town it ſelf ſituate in the 7. Degree and 30. minutes of *Southern* Latitude: well built and rich, one of the principal of *Peru*; inhabited by 1500. *Spaniards*, beſides the Natives, and beautified with four *Convents* of ſeveral Orders. 3. *La Parilla*, in the valley of the *Santa*, in which it ſtandeth, and by which it is furniſhed with a ſafe and convenient Road for ſhipping; 20. leagues South-wards of *Truxillo*, and neighboured by rich Mines of ſilver, not long ſince diſcovered. 4. *Arnedo*, ſeated amongſt Vineyards in the Valley of *Chancay*, ten leagues North of *Lima*. 5. *Lima*, by the *Spaniards* called *Cividad de los Reyes*, or the City of *Kings*, ſituate in the Valley of *Lima*, the moſt fruitfull part of all *Peru*, in the *Latitude* of twelve Degrees and an half. Built with much art, for all the chief ſtreets anſwer to the Market-place; ſcarce any private houſe which hath not water conveyed into it from the River; environed round about with ſweet fields, and moſt pleaſant gardens. The founder of it *Franciſco Pizarro*, who laid the firſt ſtone on *Twelf* day, (which the *Spaniards* call the *Feaſt* of *Kings*) whence it had the name, *An.* 1553. A Town of greater wealth than bigneſs, the Riches of *Peru* paſſing yearly thorow it: well houſed, whether we reſpect the private, or publick edifices; the *Cathedral* Church, made after the model of that of *Sevil*; the *Convents* of Religious Orders, the *Courts* of Juſtice, and the *Palaces* of the Archbiſhop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly buildings; the Cathedral Church ſo well endowed, that the Revenues of the Archbiſhop do amount yearly to 30000. *Ducats*, beſides what belongeth to the *Canons* and other Miniſters. 6. *Collao*, the Haven town to *Lima*, from which two leagues diſtant, a Town of 600. families, for the moſt part Sea-men; every houſe having ſome Cellar in it for the ſtowage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, &c. for the uſe of Mariners; beſides thoſe, publike ware-houſes for the ſeveral commodities, which paſs from *Lima* hither, or from hence to *Lima*. Unfortified till the year 1579. when ſacked and ſpoiled of infinite treaſures by Sir *Francis Drake*; ſince that time ſtrengthened by two *Bulwarks*, and a wall of earth, with 30. piece of Braſs-Ordnance planted on the works. 7. *Pachacama* in the Valley ſo called, but four leagues on the South of *Lima*: memorable for a Temple, in which *Pizarro* found above 900000. *Ducats* of gold and ſilver, not reckoning in thoſe infinite treaſures which the Souldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8. *Guarco*, a Colony of 300. *Spaniards*, ſixteen leagues on the South of *Pachacama*; environed with the beſt fields for Wheat in all *Peru*. 9. *Valverde*, in a Valley of the ſame name, ſo called from the perpetual *greenneſs* of it; beſt furniſhed with Vines, and thoſe affording the beſt wines of all this Country. A large Town conſiſting of 500. *Spaniards*, beſides women and children, and other inhabitants of the Country: well traded, conſidering its diſtance from the Sea (*Puerto Quemado* the Haven to it, being ſix leagues off) and beautified with a fair Church, an Hoſpital, three Frieries, and the handſomeſt women of theſe parts. Diſtant from *Lima* 35. leagues. 10. *Caſtro Verreyna*, in the Valley of *Chocolocacha*, 60. leagues from *Lima*, enriched with Mines of the pureſt Silver, digged out of a dry and barren hill, alwayes covered with ſnow; and ſtanding in ſo ſharp an air, that the *Spaniſh* women will not be delivered in it, but are carried further off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that vein of *Tobacco*, which our Good-fellows celebrate by the name of the right *Verreinas*. 11. *Arequipa* in the Valley of *Quilca*, 120. leagues from *Lima*, a pleaſing and delightfull town; which ſituate at the foot of a *flaming* mountain, (from which in the year 1600. it received much harm) enjoyeth a freſh and temperate Air, and a ſoil alwayes flouriſhing. The ſilver of *Plata* and *Potoſi* paſſeth thorow this town, and is ſhipped for *Panama*, at an Haven belonging to it; ſituate on the mouth of the

River *Chile* (upon which *Arequipa* ſtandeth) but diſtant from the town about 14. leagues. 12. *Caxamalca*, more within the land, but more towards the North, heretofore beautified with a Royal *Palace* of the Kings of *Peru* ; memorable for the impriſonment and murder of *Atabilaba*, or *Athualpa*, the laſt King of this Country, vanquiſhed not far off by *Franciſco Pizarro*. 13. *Cachapoyare*, in the *Cantred* ſo called, the beſt inhabited of any one *Cantred* of thoſe parts, ſuppoſed to contain in it 20000. of the Natural Inhabitants, which pay duties to the King of *Spain* ; and ſo eſteemed for beautifull women, that from hence the Kings were antiently furniſhed with their *Concubines*. 14. *Leon de Guanuco*, (the addition given it from the Province in which it ſtandeth) a Colony of *Spaniards*, rich, ſweet, and very pleaſantly ſeated : beautified heretofore with a moſt magnificent Palace of the Kings ; as now with ſome *Religious* houſes, a College of *Jeſuits*, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midland Towns there are, but of no great note, and therefore purpoſely paſſed over.

4. *CUSCO* comprehendeth, as the chief, all thoſe ſeveral Provinces of the *Hill-Countries*, and the *Andes*, which lie Southwards of the Province or *Cantred* of *Guanaco*. Bleſt with a ſweet and temperate Air, not over-ſcalded with the Sun, nor dulled with the diſtempers of the *Evening* miſts : the Country full of freſh Rivers, notable good paſturage, and great herds of Cattel ; well ſtored with *Coca*, which is gathered here in ſome abundance, and moſt excellent Veniſon.

Places of moſt repute in it, 1. *Bombon*, in the ſame Latitude with *Lima* ; neighboured by a Lake called *Laguna de Chinca cocha*, ten leagues in compaſs, begirt about with pleaſant hills, and built upon with many rich and as pleaſant villages ; out of which runneth the River *Marannon*, one of the greateſt of theſe parts, ſuppoſed by the Inhabitants to end his courſe in the *Mare del Noort*. 2. *Parcos*, once beautified with a Regal *Palace*, ſeated on the top of a little hill, and begirt about with craggy Mountains. 3. *Guamanga*, by the *Spaniards* called S. *Juan de la Vittoria*, ſituate under the 13. Degree of *Southern* Latitude, on the banks of a freſh and pleaſing ſtream : well built, the houſes being all of ſtone, and tiled or ſlatted ; three Churches, one of them a *Cathedral*, beſides divers Convents. 4. *Bicar*, ſuppoſed to be built in the very Center of *Peru* ; where ſtill remain the ruins of a ſumptuous Palace. 5. *Guancabelica*, a new Town, or but newly raiſed into eſteem, ſuppoſed to contain at the preſent 2000. *Spaniards*, and double that number of the *Natives*. Increaſed ſince the year 1566. from a beggerly Village to this greatneſs, by the Mines of *Quick-ſilver* then diſcovered : *Mines* of ſuch Riches, that the Kings part out of them amounteth yearly to above 40000. *Pezoes*, which is about 130000l. of our *Engliſh* money. And yet this is not all the benefit he receives from them neither ; that *Mineral* being found ſo neceſſary for the purifying and ſpeedy extraction of their *Gold*, that it is not ſaid without cauſe by the *Chymiſts*, that *Quick-ſilver gives the matter to* Gold, *and Sulphur the form*. 6. *CUSCO*, in the *Latitude* of 13. Degrees and 30. minutes, about 130. leagues on the Eaſt of *Lima* ; and ſituate in a rugged and unequal ſoil, begirt with Mountains ; but on both ſides of a pleaſant and commodious River. Once the ſeat-royal of the *Ingas* or *Peruvian* Kings ; who the more to beautifie this City, commanded every one of his *Nobility* to build here a *Palace* for their continual abode ; ſtill of moſt credit in this Country, both for beauty and bigneſs, and the multitudes of Inhabitants ; here being thought to dwell 3000. *Spaniards*, and 10000. of the *Natives*, beſides women and children. The *Palace* of the King advanced on a lofty mountain, was held to be a work of ſo great magnificence, built of ſuch huge and maſſie ſtones, that the *Spaniards* thought it to have been the work rather of devils than of men. Now miſerably defaced, moſt of the ſtones being tumbled down to build private houſes in the City ; ſome of the Churches raiſed alſo by the ruins of it, and amongſt them perhaps both the Biſhops Palace and *Cathedral*, whoſe annual Rents are eſtimated at 20000. *Ducats*. Yet did not this vaſt Building yield more luſtre to the City of *Cuſco*, than a ſpacious *Market-place* ; the *Center* in which thoſe high-wayes did meet together, which the *Ingas* had cauſed to be made croſs the Kingdom, both for length and breadth, with moſt incredible charge and pains, for the uſe of their Subjects. Of which more hereafter. 7. S. *Franciſco de la Vittoria*, at the foot of the *Andes*, a *Spaniſh* Colony, and about 20. leagues from *Cuſco*. 8. S. *Juan del Oro*, in the Valley of *Caravayan*, neighboured with rich Mines of the pureſt Gold, whence it had the name ; a Colony of *Spaniards* alſo. Beyond the *Andes* lie ſome Countries much famed for wealth : the diſcovery whereof hath often been attempted by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes with loſs, not ſeldom with ſome hopes of a better fortune, but hitherto without ſucceſs.

5. *COLLAO* lieth on the South of thoſe Provinces, which we have comprehended under the name of *Cuſco* ; having on the Weſt, the reſt of *Lima* ; on the South, *Los Charchos* ; on the Eaſt, thoſe unknown Countries beyond the *Andes*. Shut up on the Eaſt and Weſt by two mountainous Ridges ; which keeping in one main body till they come beyond the City of *Cuſco*, do there divide themſelves, and grow wider and wider, not to meet again.

The Country plain and full of Rivers, well ſtored with rich paſtures, and thoſe paſtures with great herds of Cattel ; barren of Corn, and not well furniſhed with *Maize* ; inſtead whereof they make their bread of a Root called *Popa*, dried in the ſun and bruiſed to powder ; of which the *Spaniards* make great gain at the Mines of *Potoſi*. Yet notwithſtanding this great want, it is thought to be the moſt populous part of all *Peru* ; the ſoundneſs and temperature of the Air (which is here very much commended) as much conducing to the populoſity of a Country, as the richneſs and plenties of the Soyl. The people alſo of a clearer and more ſolid judgement, than the reſt of *Peru* : and ſo well ſkilled in the obſervations of the courſe of the *Moon*, that the *Spaniards* at their coming hither, found the year diſtinguiſhed into *Moneths*, weeks, dayes ; for each of which they had a proper and ſignificant name. The famous Lake of *Titicaca* is within this Province.

Places of greateſt note in it, 1. *Chuquinga*, naturally ſtrong and almoſt inacceſſible, invironed either with unfordable waters, or impaſſable Mountains: one *Cauſey* only leading to it, which for the ſpace of three leagues, is ſaid to be capable but of one at once. 2. *Ayavire*, enobled with many fair and coſtly buildings; eſpecially with *Monuments* of the dead, which exceed the reſt both in coſt and number; for that cauſe by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sepulturas*. The Inhabitants of this Tract much waſted by the *Civil* Wars, which the *Spaniards* had among themſelves. 3. *Hatuncolla*, the *Metropolis*, or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth ſignifie: not far from which the famous River *Caravaya*, famous for the abundance of *Gold* in the ſands thereof, hath its firſt original. 4. *Chiquita*, a Colony of the *Spaaiards*, on the banks of the Lake of *Titicaca*; a Town of ſo great trade and riches, that the Governour hereof is named immediately by the King; his place being eſtimated at the worth of 50000 *Ducats* yearly. 5. *Tiagnanaco*, at the mouth, or out-let of that Lake; ſuppoſed to be the moſt ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now moſt remarkable for the ruines of certain great and ſtupendious buildings, ſome of the ſtones whereof are ſaid to be 30 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and ſix in thickneſs: not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines (which this people had not till of late) but by ſome ſtrange Arts. 5. *De la Paz*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de la Paz*; by the *Spaniards* called alſo *Pueblo Neuvo*, and by the Natives *Chiquiabo*, according to the name of the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth, is ſituate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of wind and weather, but over-looking a large plain of great fertility; well watered, and well woodded both for fruits and fewel. 7. *Chilane*. 8. *Acos*. 9. *Pomata*. 10. *Cepita*; and others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima*, and *Collao*; on the South, with *Chile*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with ſome Countreys not yet well diſcovered, interpoſed betwixt it and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. This alſo called by the name of *Plata*, according to the name of the chief City of it.

The Countrey extended in length from North to South, but 300. leagues; but meaſuring by the Seaſhores, above 400. Not very rich in Corn, or Cattel, though in many places furniſhed with good Paſture-ground; but for the inexhauſtible Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, not be equalled in *Peru*. Of theſe the principal thoſe of *Porco* and *Potoſi*, but theſe laſt the chief: out of which comes that maſs of *Silver*, which yieldeth the King ſo much profit yearly, as before was mentioned. The *Mines* 200. Fathoms deep, to which they do deſcend by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800. ſteps: ſome of the workmen not ſeeing the Sun many months together; many fall down with their loads of Silver on their backs, pulling others after them; and many dying in the works for want of Air. For the refining of this *Silver* there are 52 *Engines*, or *Silver-mills* upon a River near unto it; 22 more in the Valley of *Tarapia* not far off, beſides many which they turn with horſes. The Poets words never more literally verified than in theſe deep *mines*; where ſpeaking of the *Iron-age*, he deſcribes it thus:

Nec tantum ſegetes, alimentaque debita dives
Poſcebatur humus; ſed itum eſt in viſcera terra;
Quaſque recondiderat, Stygiiſque *admoverat umbris,*
Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.

Which I find thus rendred by *George Sandys*.

Nor with rich Earths juſt nouriſhments content,
For treaſure they her ſecret entrails *rent*;
That powerfull evil, which all power invades,
By her well hid, and wrapt in Stygian *ſhades.*

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Plata*, ſo called from the rich Mines of Silver, and found in Mount *Parco* near adjoyning, well emptied by the ancient *Ingas*, but ſearched into again by *Franciſco Pizarro*; who (it is thought) might have raiſed hence 200000. Ducats of yearly income, if hopes of greater at *Potoſi* had not took him off. The Town commodiouſly ſeated in a fruitfull ſoil, in the 19th. degree of *Latitude*, and 180 leagues diſtant from the City of *Cuſco*; honoured with the ſeat of the Governour, and the *Courts* of Juſtice; and beautified (beſides many religious houſes) with a fair *Cathedral*; the See of the beſt endowed Biſhoprick of all *Peru*; his *Revenues* being eſteemed at 80000 *Ducats* of yearly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Chuquiſacay*. 2. *Oropeſa*, twenty leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francis de Toledo*, when Vice-Roy here, in the rich and pleaſant Valley called *Cochabamba*, An. 1565. 3. *Potoſi*, neighboured by thoſe wealthy Mines already mentioned. Diſcovered firſt in the year 1545. before which time this Town was but a ſorry Village; now the beſt peopled and frequented in all the Province: ſaid to be conſtantly inhabited by four, or five thouſand *Spaniards*, many more of the *Natives*; not ſo few as 30000. workmen appertaining to it, but lodged in the Villages adjoyning: beſides the infinite reſort of *Merchants* in purſute of profit, and idle *Gallants*, who come hither for their luſts and pleaſures. Situate in the 21 Degree, and 40 Minutes of *Southern* Latitude, in a cold and very barren ſoil; yet plentifully furniſhed with all Commodities, both for neceſſity and delight. For as the money is, ſo the *Market* alwaies. 4. *Miſque*, a ſmall Town, but one which furniſheth *Potoſia*, with good plenty of Wine, as 5. *Lagunilla*, and 6. *Tarixa*, do with Wheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of Fruits. 7. *Arica*, the moſt noted *Haven* of this Countrey, in the *Latitude* of 19 Degrees, and 80 Leagues, or thereabouts from the Mines of *Potoſia*; the wealth whereof brought hither on the backs of their ſheep, is here ſhipped for *Lima*; the truth hereof experienced by Sir *Francis Drake*, who ſeized here on three *Spaniſh* ſhips, in one of which was 57 Bars of Silver, each of them twenty pound weight a piece. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this Coaſt, which is altogether Rocky, barren, and unfit for habitation; accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* ſtory, which we ſhall ſum up with as much brevity as we can: The people generally governed by the *Chief* of their *Tribes*, as in all Countreys elſe, where neither the Arms of Foreiners, nor the ambition of ſome few of the Natives, had not diminiſhed any thing of thoſe *Natural* rights. Not ſubject to any one *Supreme* till theſe latter times; the *Ingas*, or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatneſs but a little before their fall. Their Territory at the firſt ſo ſmall, that it was not above five, or ſix leagues in compaſs; ſituate in that part of the Countrey where the City of *Cuſco* now ſtandeth. Oppoſed at their firſt incroachments by the *Cannares* a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Ingas* had not helped themſelves by a piece of wit: giving it out, that their Family had not only been the *Seminary* from which mankind came; but the Authors of that Religion alſo which was then iu uſe; particularly that the whole World, having been deſtroyed by a Flood, except only ſeven (ſo far they hit upon the truth) which ſeven had hid themſelves in a Cave, called *Patacambo*; where having lived in ſafety till the fury of the waters had been aſſwaged, they came abroad at laſt and re-peopled the Countrey; that *Viracocha* the Creator, and great God of Nature, had appeared to one of them, and taught him how, and with what rites he would be worſhipped; which rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*: And finally, that the ſame *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the *Chief* of their Family; aſſuring him that he would aid him with inviſible forces againſt all their Enemies. This tale ſoon gained belief amongſt thoſe *Barbarians*; and that belief drew many to take part with the *Ingas*, by that aid victorious. This is ſuppoſed to have hapned 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an end to this flouriſhing Kingdome, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Countrey, which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoyning Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Ingas*, as the *Ægyptians Pharaoh*, the *Tartars Cham*; the word *Inga* ſignifying an *Emperour*, as *Capa Ingas* (by which they alſo ſometimes called them) the only *Emperours*. Much reverenced by their Subjects, and ſo faithfully ſerved, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of *Treaſon*. Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to *indear* their Subjects, and keep them out of leiſure to foment new factions. The way of *indearment*, by the fair and ſatisfactory diſtribution of the ſpoyls gotten in the Wars, whether Lands, or Goods; alſo which they divided into three parts: allotting the firſt unto the ſervice of the Gods, the ſecond for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A diſtribution far more equal than that of *Lycurgus*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cauſe of Wars, they kept the people buſied in their works of *Magnificence*; as building *Palaces* in every one of the *Conquered* Provinces, which ſerved not only as *Forts* to aſſure the Conqueſt, but were employed as *Store-houſes* to lay up Proviſions, diſtributed amongſt the people in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of great trouble, ſo of chiefeſt uſe was the croſs-wayes they made over all the Countrey, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome* and *Ægypt*. For they were forced to raiſe the ground in many places to the heighth of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flatteſt *Plains*; to cut through ſome Rocks, and under-prop others that were ruinous; to make even ſuch wayes as were uneaſie, and ſupport the *Precipices*; and in the *Plains* to vanquiſh ſo many difficulties, as the uncertain foundation of a ſandy Country muſt needs carry with it. Kept to theſe tasks, the people had no leiſure to think of practices; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they ſaw it tended to the *publick benefit*. And for the *Caciques* (ſo they call the *Nobility*) the *Inga* did not only command them to reſide in *Cuſco*, to be aſſured of their perſons: but cauſed them to ſend their *Children* to be brought up there; that they might ſerve as *Hoſtages* for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered alſo that all ſuch as repaired to *Cuſco* the Imperial City, ſhould be attired according to his own Countrey faſhion; ſo to prevent thoſe *Leagues* and *Aſſociations*, which otherwiſe without any note, or obſervation, might be made amongſt them. Many ſuch *Politick* inſtitutions were by them deviſed, which had little of the *Barbarous* in them; and cleerly ſhewed that there were other Nations which had *Eyes in their Heads*, beſide thoſe of *China*. What elſe concerns the ſtory of them, offereth it ſelf in the following Catalogue of

The Kings of PERU.

1. Mango-Capac, *deſcended of the chief of the firſt ſeven Families, the firſt who laid the foundation of this puiſſant Monarchie; ſubdued the* Cannares, *and built the City of* Cuſco.
2. Sinchi-Rocha, *eldeſt Son of* Mango, *ſubdued a great part of* Collao, *as far as* Chancara.
3. Lonque-Yupanqui, *the Son of* Sinchi, *conquered* Chiquito, Ayavire, *the* Canus, *and the Inhabitants about* Titicaca; *the firſt advancer of the ſervice of* Viracocha, *from whom he did pretend to have many* viſits.
4. Mayta-Capac, *the Son of* Yupanqui, *ſubdued all the reſt of* Collao, *the Provinces of* Chuquiapa, *and a great part of the* Charcas.
5. Capac-Yupanqui, *or* Yupanqui II. *the Son of* Mayta, *enlarged his Kingdome weſtward unto* Mare del Zur.

6. Rocha II. *or* Yncha Rocha, *eldeſt Son of* Yupanqui *the ſecond, enlarged his Kingdome towards the North, by the conqueſt of the great Province of* Antabyallam, *and many others.*

7. Jahuar-Huacac, *Son of* Rocha *the ſecond, added to his Eſtatee (by the valour of his brother* Mayta) *all the Southern parts from* Arequipa *to* Tacaman. *Depoſed by the practice of his Son.*

8. Viracocha, *the Son of* Huacac, *having ſetled and inlarged his Empire, raiſed many great and ſtately works, aud amongſt others many* Aquæducts *of great Uſe but Charge. For fear of him,* Hancohualla, *King of the* Chuncas, *with many thouſands of his people, forſook their Countrey.*

9. Pachacutec-Ynca, *Son of* Virachoca, *improved his Kingdome by the conqueſt of many Provinces lying towards the* Andes, *and South-Sea, with that of* Caxamalcu *Northwards.*

10. Yupanqui III. *or* Yncha Yupanchi, *Son of* Pachatucec, *ſubdued the* Conches, *and* Moxes, *with ſome part of* Chile.

11. Yupanqui IV. *or* Tapac Ynca Yupanchi, *Son of* Yupanqui *the third, extended his Dominions as far as* Quito.

12. Huayna-Capac, *or* Guaynacapac, *Son of* Yupanqui *the fourth, the moſt mighty Monarch of* Peru, *conquered the whole Province of* Quito; *and is ſuppoſed to be the Founder of thoſe two great Roads ſpoken of before.*

13. Huaſcar, *or* Guaſcat Ynca, *the eldeſt Son of* Guaynacapa, *after a Reign of five years depoſed and ſlain by his brother.*

14. Athualpa, *or* Atubaliba, *the third Son of* Guaynacapa, *by the Daughter and Heir of the King of* Quito: *into which Kingdome he ſucceeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his brother to do Homage for the Kingdome of* Quito, *he came upon him with ſuch power, that he over-came him, and ſo gained the Kingdome. Vanquiſhed afterwards by* Pizarro *at the Battel of* Caxamalca, *he was taken Priſoner. And though he gave in Ranſome for his Life and Liberty, an houſe piled up on all ſides with Gold and Silver, valued (as ſome ſay) at ten Millions of Crowns, yet they perfidiouſly ſlew him.*

15. Mango Capac II. *the ſecond Son of* Guaynacapac, *ſubſtituted by* Pizarro *in his Brothers Throne; after many viciſſitudes of Fortune, was at laſt ſlain in the City of* Cuſco; *and ſo the Kingdom of the* Ingas *began and ended in a Prince of the ſame Name; as it had hapned formerly to ſome other Eſtates.*

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who ſubdued this moſt potent and flouriſhing Kingdom, and made it a member of the *Spaniſh* Empire; and we ſhall find that he was born at *Truſiglio*, a Village of *Navar*; and by the poor Whore his Mother, laid in the Church-porch, and ſo left to Gods providence: by whoſe direction (there being none found that would give him the breaſt) he was nouriſhed for certain dayes, by ſucking a Sow. At laſt one *Gonſalles*, a Souldier, acknowledged him for his Son, put him to Nurſe, and when he was ſomewhat grown, ſet him to keep his Swine: ſome of which being ſtrayed, the boy durſt not for fear return home, but betook himſelf to his heels, ran unto *Sevil*, and there ſhipped himſelf for *America*, where he attended *Alfonſo de Oioda* in the diſcovery of the Countreys beyond the Golf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his voyage to the South Sea; and *Pedro di Avila* in the conqueſt of *Panama*. Grown rich by theſe adventures, he aſſociated himſelf with *Diego de Almagro*, and *Fernando Luques* a rich Prieſt: who betwixt them raiſed 220 Souldiers, and in the year 1525. went to ſeek their fortunes on thoſe Southern Seas, which *Balboa* had before diſcovered. After divers repulſes at his landing, and ſome hardſhip which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took ſome of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the wealth of the Countrey; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the Kings Commiſſion for the conqueſt of it: excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furniſhed he landed in *Peru* again, at ſuch time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two brethren, for the Kingdom: and taking part with the faction of *Guaſcar* marched againſt *Atubaliba*; whom he met with in the Plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a parley, than to fight a Battel. *Pizarro* taking this advantage, picked a quarrel with him, and ſuddenly charged upon him with his Horſe and Ordnance, ſlaying his Guard without reſiſtance; and coming near the Kings perſon (who was then carried on mens ſhoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him Priſoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 80000 *Caſtellans*; and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 *Marks* (every *Mark* weighing eight ounces) of his Houſhold Plate; and in the ſoyl of *Caxamalca*, almoſt infinite riches. This, with the Kings Ranſom, came to ſo great a ſumme, that beſides the fiſt part which *Pizarro* ſent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his brethren kept unto themſelves; every Footman had 7200 *Ducats*, and every Horſe-man twice as much, for their part of the ſpoil; beſides what they had gotten in the way of Plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miſerable King, their Priſoner, hath been ſhewn already. Upon which Act, though they put many fair pretences, yet God declared that he was not pleaſed with their proceedings; few of the greateſt undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro* in reward of ſo great a ſervice, was made the firſt Viceroy of *Peru*, and created Marqueſs of *Anatilla*; yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief companion, who had raiſed a ſtrong faction in that State; he was after ſlain at *Lima*, by ſome of that faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befell all the reſt; his brother *John* ſlain by the *Peruvians*; *Martin*, in *Lima* with himſelf; *Ferdinando*, ſecretly made away in priſon; and finally *Gonſales* the fourth brother (with the Son of *Almagro*) ſeverally executed for their Treaſons and Inſurrections, which they had acted in this Countrey againſt their King. So little joy doth wealth ill-gotten bring along with it, to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*, whoſe ſtrange both Fortunes and misfortunes in the courſe of his life, are to be paralleled only with the like of *Sinan*, a great *Baſſa* in the Court of *Selimus* the firſt; who being born of baſe Parentage, as he (being a Child) was ſleeping in the ſhade, had his Genitals bitten off by a *Sow*. The *Turkiſh* Officers which uſually provided young boyes for the ſervice of the *Grand Signieur*, being in *Epyrus* (for that was *Sinans* Countrey) and hearing of this ſo extraordinary an Eunuch; took him among others, along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the great, *Bajazet* the ſecond, and his Son *Selimus*, he ſo exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief *Baſſa* of the Court; and ſo well deſerved it, that he was accounted *Selimus* right hand, and was indeed the man, to whoſe valour eſpecially, the *Turks* owe their Kingdome of *Egypt*; in which Kingdome, then not fully ſetled, he was alſo ſlain.

But to return unto *Peru*, no queſtion but the *Forces* and *Revennes* of it were exceeding great. For though we find no particular muſters which they made of their men; or what great Armies they drew with them into the field; yet by their great ſucceſſes, and many victories, we may conclude them to be maſters of great Bands of men, and skilfull in the Arts of conduct. Nor can we otherwiſe conjecture at the greatneſs of their yearly *income*, but by the greatneſs of their Treaſure; ſo infinite and almoſt incredible, that all the Veſſels of the Kings Houſe, his Table, and Kitchin, were of Gold and Silver; *Statues* of Giants in his Wardrope, together with the reſemblances in proportion and bigneſs, of all the Beaſts, Birds, Trees, Plants, and Fiſhes, which were found in that Kingdome, of the pureſt Gold; Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, Cheſts, all of Gold, or Silver: Billets of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Billets of Wood, cut out for the fire; three houſes full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, beſides infinite other Treaſures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew ſo wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an Horſe, 60 Crowns for a ſmall Veſſel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shooes: Conſuming all upon their luſts, and ſacrifizing their *Gods* of *Gold* to their *God the Belly*.

OF
CHILE.

C*HILE* is bounded on the North, with the *Deſart* of *Alacama*, 90. Leagues in length, interpoſed betwixt it and *Peru*: on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Streights of *Magellan*; and on the Eaſt as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main Atlantick; the Countries lying on the Eaſt, betwixt it and *Paragnay*, not yet well diſcovered.

The Country lyeth wholly beyond the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, by conſequence in the *temperate Zone*: extended in length from the borders of *Peru*, to the mouth of the *Streights*, 500. Leagues; but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile*, from the word *Chil*, (which in more tongues than ours doth ſignifie as much as cold) from the extreme coldneſs of the Air and Clime; ſo vehement here in our Summer *Solſtice*, that many times both the Horſes and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardned like a piece of *Marble*.

The ſoil hereof in the midland parts, Mountainous and unfruitfull; towards the Sea-ſide, level, fertil, and watered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: productive of *Maize*, Wheat, and moſt excellent paſturage; plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, ſtore of Cattel, and Wine enough for the uſe of the people; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* proſpering here exceedingly, as do alſo all the Fruits, and Plants, which are ſent from thence into this Country. The people very tall and warlike, ſome of them of a *Gigantine* ſtature, affirmed (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high; yet well conditioned with this greatneſs, where not much provoked. Their garments of the skins of Beaſts, their Arms Bow and Arrows: white of complexion, but as *hirſute* and ſhaggy haired, as the reſt of the *Salvages*.

Rivers of note there are not any but what will fall within the view of its ſeveral Provinces: Divided commonly into 1. *Chile*, ſpecially ſo called, and 2. *Magellanica*.

1. *CHILE* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the North, with the Deſart of *Alacama*; on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the Eaſt, with ſome unknown Countries, lying betwixt it and *Paragnay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*; not above 20. Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reaſon of the name, together with the nature of the ſoyl and people, we have ſeen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontory near the influx of it, in the Northern borders of this Province. 2. *Rio de Coquimbo*, 3. *La Ligua*, 4. *Topocalma*, 5. *Cacapool*, 6. *Canten*, all falling into *Mare del Zur*; and beſides theſe, a nameleſs, but more famous River, which in the day time runneth with a violent current, and in the night hath no water at all. The reaſon of it is, becauſe this River having no conſtant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the *Snow* falling from the Mountains; which in the heat of the day melted into water, is precipitately carried into the Sea; but congealed in the coldneſs of the night, yields no water at all, whereby the Chanel becometh empty.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Gopiapo*, giving name to a fertil Valley, in the moſt Northern tract hereof; and neighboured by a ſmall, but commodious Haven. 2. *Serena*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from the influx of *Rio de Coquimbo*, on whoſe banks it is ſeated; where built by *Baldivia* the Conquerour and firſt Governour of this Province, *An.* 1544. The territory round about it rich in Mines of Gold: the Town it ſelf of 200. houſes, but ſo well peopled, that at the landing of ſome of the *Engliſh* under Captain *Drake*, they preſently ſent out 300. Horſe and 200. Foot to compell them back unto their ſhips, which they did accordingly. 3. S. *Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80. houſes in it) becauſe the *Reſidence* of the Governour, and the *Courtt* of Juſtice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and ſome Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers; ſituate in the 34. Degree of *Southern* Latitude, on the banks of the River *Topacalma*; at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val paraiſo*, the beſt and moſt noted of this Country; out of which the *Engliſh* under *Drake* took a *Spaniſh* ſhip, and therein 25000. *Pezoes* of the pureſt Gold, beſides other Commodities. 4. *Conception*, 70. Leagues on the South of S. *Jago*, ſituate on the ſhores of a large and capacious Bay (by the Natives called *Penco*) by which and the monntains on all ſides ſo ſtrongly fenced, that the Governour, when diſtreſſed by the *Salvages* (as ſometimes they are) retireth hither for ſafety. Well fortified in ſuch places as are acceſſible, and garriſoned with 500. Souldiers, beſides the Towns-men. Oppoſite hereunto lyeth the Iſle of S. *Mary*, ſo near the ſhore, that it ſeems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea; fruitfull, and very well provided of Swine and Poultry, but the people ſo in fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Conception*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5. *Auraccoa* (ſo I think they call it) a ſtrong Fortreſs in the Country of the *Auracans*, the moſt potent Nation of theſe parts; who weary of the *Spaniſh* yoke, revolted againſt *Baldivia*, over-came him in a ſet fight, and at laſt killed him; this piece being thereupon forſaken, and of no more uſe. 6. *De los Confines*, built by *Baldivia* in the borders of the Country of thoſe *Auracans*, to ſerve for a defence to the Mines of *Ongol* near adjoyning: diſtant from the Sea-ſhores about 18. Leagues, enlarged by *Garſias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Villa Neuva de los infantes*. 7. *Imperiale*, in the 38. Degree and 40. Minutes of *Southern* Latitude, ſituate on the banks of the River *Cauten*, an Epiſcopal See, and the beſt Fortreſs of the *Spaniards* in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colony of *Spaniards* in the year 1551. and by *Baldivia* called *Al Imperiale*, becauſe they found an *Eagle* with *two heads* made in Wood, on the doors of their houſes; a monument perhaps of ſome *Germans*, who had here been ſhipwrackt. A Town of ſo great wealth and power, before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a war betwixt them and the *Araucans*, ſpoken of before, they are ſaid to have brought into the field 300000. men. 8. *Villa Rica*, another Colony of *Spaniards*, 16. leagues on the South-Eaſt of *Imperiale*, and 25. leagues from the ſhores of *Mare del Zur*. 9. *Baldivia*, the moſt noted Town of all theſe parts, ſituate in the Valley of *Guadallanguen*, in the Latitude of 40. degrees, or thereabouts: adorned with a ſafe and capacious *Haven*, and neighboured by *Mines* of Gold of ſuch infinite riches, that *Baldivia* (by whom built for defence of thoſe Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each ſingle work-man, 25000. Crowns a man, and ſometimes more. Sacked by the *Salvages*, An. 1599. ſince repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10. *Oſorno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chilve*, (or *Ancud*, as the *Salvages* call it) ſituate in a barren ſoyl, but well ſtored with *Gold*, and thought to be more populous than *Valdivia* it ſelf. 11. *Caſtro*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Province, in the *Latitude* of 44. built in a large and fruitfull Iſland of the Bay of *Ancud*, ſaid to be 50. leagues in length, but the breadth unequal; in ſome parts nine, in others not above two leagues. 12. S. *Juan de la Frontera*, on the further ſide of the *Andes*, towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong alſo certain Iſlands lying on the Coaſts and ſhores hereof. 1. S. *Maries*, ſpoken of before. 2. *Mocha*, upon the South of that, five leagues from the Continent, fruitfull of Grain, and very good Paſturage; ſufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the deſcendants of thoſe *Americans*, who fled hither to avoid the tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their liberty againſt that Nation: of which ſo jealous, that they would not ſuffer the *Engliſh* under *Drake* and *Cavendiſh* to land amongſt them, for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or ſome friends of theirs. 3. *Caſtro*, which we have ſpoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*; on the South, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Streights of *Magellan*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with *Mare del Noort*, or the main *Atlantick*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom firſt diſcovered, of whom we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the *Streights*, 300. leagues in breadth: from one Sea to the other, where broadeſt, above 400. leagues; in ſome but 90. only, and in others leſs, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramis*. The inlands parts of the Country not yet diſcovered: thoſe on the Sea-ſide obſerved to be rocky and unfruitfull, expoſed for the moſt part of the year to ſuch bitter colds, that the Snow lyeth alwayes on the Mountains. The people ſaid to be tall of ſtature, and ſome of them of a *Gigantine* bigneſs, reported to be ten, or eleven foot high; and by the *Spaniards* for that reaſon are called *Patagons*. Both great and leſs, ſufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurniſhed of any houſes, notwithſtanding the rigour of the cold.

No houſes doth imply no Towns, and therefore we muſt look for none in ſo a rude a Country, as hath not hitherto converſed with more *civil* Nations. So that the moſt that we can do, is to Coaſt the ſhores, and ſee what names of *Ports*, or *Promontories* we can find therein. And firſt upon the Sea-coaſts towards *Mare del Zur*, they place (beginning at the North, and ſo deſcending) 1. The Promontory called *Cabo de las Iſlas*. 2. The *Port*, or Haven of S. *Stephen*. 3. The Valley of *Nueſtra Sennora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4. The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5. *Porto de los Reyes*. 6. *Ancon Sinſalida*, on the banks of a ſemi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few Iſlands. 7. *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of *Victory*, ſituate betwixt that Bay aud the mouth of the *Streights*; ſo called from the name of the ſhip in which ſome of *Magellanes* Souldiers did firſt compaſs the World. For *Ferdinand Magellano* a noble *Portugal*, and well ſkilled in *Navigation*, at the perſwaſion, or command of *Charls* the fifth, to whom (upon ſome diſcontents received in the Court of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*) he had made offer of his ſervice, undertook the finding out (if poſſible) a ſhorter cut to the *Moluccos*, than diſcovered formerly. In the year 1520. he began his voyage, his Fleet conſiſting but of 5. ſhips, whereof that called the S. *Anthonio* forſook him in ſome great diſpleaſure, and returned to *Spain*, another of them being loſt not long after in a ſtorm, keeping along the Coaſt to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October*, fell upon the *Cape* of *Virgins*, at the very entrance of this Streight, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon: and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of theſe *Narrow Seas*, ſince called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entered into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreſhed himſelf in a little Iſland called *Juvaganava*, he paſſed unto that alſo, but not far from the *Philippins*, the Prince whereof called *Hamabar*, he perſwaded to become a Chriſtian, baptized him by the name of *Charls*, and finally engaging in a quarrel of his againſt the King of *Mautan*, or *Mattan*, an adjoyning Iſland, where he was there unfortunately ſlain, *An.* 1521. After his death *Serran* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70. of his men being treacherouſly ſlain by *Hamabar*, the other three ſhips departed with no more than 115. men aboard them, which put them to a neceſſity of burning one of their ſhips, that they might have men enough to make good the others, with theſe two ſhips they came at laſt to the *Moluccos*, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themſelves; that called the *Trinity*, under Cape *Spinoſa*, deſigned for *Panama* in *New Spain*, from which driven back by contrary winds to the Iſle of *Tedoro*, was ſeized on, and ſpoiled by *Anthonio Britoa* Captain, commanding there a ſmall Navy of the King of *Portugals*. The other ſhip, which by a happy *omen* was called *Vittoria*, having in her but 47. *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebaſtian del Cano*, after a long and dangerous voyage, wherein it was thought that he had ſayled at the leaſt 14000. leagues, returned to *Spain* in ſafety, and brought the welcom news of their good ſucceſs.

We uſe to ſay that Sir *Francis Drake* was the firſt that ſayled round about the world, which may be true in a qualified ſenſe; *viz*, that he was the firſt *Captain*, or man of note that atchieved this enterpriſe, *Magellanus* periſhing in the midſt of it; and therefore is reported to have given for his device, a *Globe*, with this motto, *Tu primus circumdediſti me*. This navigation was begun, *An.* 1577. and in two years and an half, with great viciſſitude of fortune, finiſhed; concerning which his famous voyage, a Poet then living, directed to him this *Epigram*.

Drake *pererrati novit quem terminus orbis*,
Quemque ſimul mundi vidit uterque polus:
Si taceant homines, facient te ſydera notum;
Sol *neſcit comitis non memor eſſe ſui.*

Drake, *whom th' encompaſs'd earth ſo fully knew,*
And whom at once both poles of heaven did view:
Should men forget thee, Sol *could not forbear*
To chronicle *his fellow traveller.*

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, theſe *Magellan* ſtreights, are in the 52. degree; and are by M. *John Davis*, who profeſſeth to know every Creek in them, thus deſcribed. " For 14. Leagues within the *Cape* of S. *Mary*, lyeth the firſt *ſtreight*, where it ebbeth and floweth with a violent ſwiftneſs: the *ſtreight* not being fully half a mile broad, and the firſt fall into it very dangerous and doubtfull. Three leagues this ſtreight continueth, when it openeth into a ſea, eight miles long, and as much broad; beyond which, lieth the ſecond ſtreight, right Weſt, South-weſt from the firſt; a perilous and unpleaſing paſſage, three leagues long, and a mile in breadth. This ſtreight openeth it ſelf into another ſea, which is extended even to the *Cape of victory*; where is the ſtreight properly called the *ſtreight of Magellan*; a place of that nature, that which way ſoever a man bend his courſe, he ſhall be ſure to have the wind againſt him. The length hereof is 40. leagues; the breadth in ſome places two leagues over, in others not fully half a mile. The Chanel in depth 200. Fathoms, ſo no hope of Anchorage, the courſe of the water full of turnings and changings; withall ſo violent, that when a ſhip is once entred, there is no returning. On both ſides of it are high Mountains continually covered with ſnow; from which proceed thoſe counter-winds, which beat with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place aſſuredly not pleaſing to view, and very hazardous to paſs. So far, and to this purpoſe M. *Davis*.

But to proceed, the way thus opened, was travelled not long after, An. 1525. by *Garſias de Loyaſa*; next in the year 1534. by *Simon de Alcazavo*, and four years after by three ſhips of the Biſhop of *Placenza* in *Spain*; but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure thorow; till undertaken and performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1577. after which it grew more familiar amongſt the ſea-men. Howſoever, we are ſo much debtors to the attempts of others, as that we owe to them the moſt part of the names of thoſe Bayes and Promontories, which they diſcovered in the *ſearch*: though many of them ſince new named by the *Engliſh*, and *Hollanders*. Thoſe of moſt note, proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, 1. *Cabo de Quade*. 2. *Cape Gallant*. 3. *Cordes Bay*. 4. *Cape Froward*, being the very point or *Conus* of this great *Pyramis*. 5. *Porto Famine*. 6. A little Iſle called *Elizabeths Iland*; and at the *exit* of the ſtreight into *Mare del Noort*, the Cape of *Virgins*. Then bending North-ward toward the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the main Ocean, 1. *Rio de la Crux*, neighboured by a Promontory called *Cabo de las Bareras*; where *Magellano* ſtaid all *September*, and the greateſt part of *October*, in expectation of an opportunity to diſcover further. 2. The Bay of S. *Julian*, out of which he ſet ſayl for this adventure, about the later end of *Auguſt*, leaving there two of his companions condemned of *mutiny*. 3. The Port of *Deſire*. 4. A large Promontory called the *Cape of S. George*. 5. The outlets of a fair River, named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6. A goodly Haven entituled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7. The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8. The Bay of *Amegada*. 9. The Promontory called the Cape of S. *Andrews*. And 10. the River of S. *Anne*, beyond which lyeth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the moſt that I can ſay touching *Magellanica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points and Promontories; and this is nothing (as we ſee) but a *Nomenclator*. It muſt be better peopled and more diſcovered, before it can afford diſcourſe of more variety. All we can adde, is that the paſſage back again from *Mare del Zur* to the *Atlantick*, hath not been found ſo ſafe and eaſie, as from the main *Atlantick* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted firſt by *Ladrillero* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Garcia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*; and attempted only: performed not long after the voyage of Sir *Francis Drake*, by D. *Pedro Sarmiento*, imployed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Vice-roy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no leſs danger; ſo much, that few have ſince endeavoured to return that way.

As for the fortunes and affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to underſtand that it was firſt diſcovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro*'s chief friends and aſſociates. But he having other deſigns in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himſelf, and to out *Pizarro*, did diſcover it only: the conqueſt of it being reſerved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro*, on the ſetling of his affairs by the death of *Almagro*, had imployed in that action. He going ſouldier-like to work, not only did ſubdue the people; but as he gained ground, built ſome Fortreſs, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. This done, about the year 1544. his ill luck was to meet with a more ſtubborn and untractable people, than either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who quickly weary of the yoke, beſieged one of his Forts, encountred *Baldivia* himſelf coming with too ſmall a power to relieve his people, vanquiſhed and ſlew him in the field. Some adde that they poured *Gold* into his throat (as the *Parthians* are reported to have done to *Craſſus*) bidding him *ſatiate himſelf with that which he ſo much thirſted*. After this blow given in the year 1551. the *Salvages* recovered the rich Vallies of *Arranco*, *Tucapel*, and *Purene*; which they keep from them till this day: The Towns of *Los Confines*, and *Villa Rica*, both on the borders of thoſe vallies, then deſerted alſo. Nor ſtaid they there, though they took time to breath a little. For in the year 1599. (having provided themſelves of 200. Corſlets, and ſeventy Muskets) they brake out again; ſurprized and ſacked the Town of *Baldivia*; forced *Imperiale*, after a whole years ſiege, to ſurrender without any conditions; and in the year 1604. took *Oſorno* by famine. Of thirteen Cities, which the *Spaniards* had poſſeſſed amongſt them, they had taken nine; ſome of them ſince recovered, but the moſt demoliſhed. As ill it thrived with them in *Magellanica*, where *Pedro de Starmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies, to command thoſe Streights, *An.* 1584. The one he ſetled near the mouth of the *Streight*, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jeſus*, and left therein 150. of his men; the other he intended on the narroweſt place of the Streight, to be called *Cividad del Roy Philip*, which he reſolved to fortifie, and plant with Ordnance. But winter coming on, he left there others of his men, promiſing to relieve them ſhortly with all things neceſſary. But ſuch was his unhappy fate, that after many ſhipwracks and diſappointments which befell unto him, in the purſute of his deſign; he was at laſt taken by the *Engliſh*, under the command of Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, who was there in perſon: and his two Colonies, for want of timely ſuccours, either ſtarved at home, or eaten by the Salvages, as they ranged the Country.

OF BRASIL.

BRASIL is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Mare del Noort*, or the main *Atlantick*; on the Weſt, with ſome undiſcovered Countreys, lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragnon*; and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reaſon of the name I find not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called *Braſil*-wood, which was found amongſt them; as the famous Iſle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of *Cypreſſes*.

It reacheth from the 29. to the 39. Degree of *Southern* Latitude; or meaſuring it by miles, it is ſaid to be 1500. miles from North to South, and 500. miles in breadth from the Sea to the *Andes*; which muſt be underſtood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwiſe, all that which is poſſeſſed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Braſil*, is ſo ſhort of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they poſſeſs nothing but the Sea-Coaſts, and ſome few leagues (comparatively) within the Land; the greateſt part of it being ſo far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been diſcovered.

The Country full of Mountains, Rivers, and Foreſts, diverſified into Hills and Plains alwayes pleaſant and green. The air for the moſt part ſound and wholſom, by reaſon of the freſh winds which do reign amongſt them; there being all along the Coaſts certain quick winds riſing from the South, about 2. hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants: yet in regard it is ſomewhat moiſt, it is held to be more agreeable to old men than to young. The ſoyl in moſt parts very fruitfull, were it not cloied with too much rain; but howſoever liberally provided of *Sugar-Canes*, (no one Country more) for refining of which they have their *Ingenios* (as they call them) or *Sugar-houſes*, in moſt parts of the Country; in which they entertain many thouſand *ſlaves*, brought hither yearly from *Guinea*, and *Congo*, and other maritime parts of *Africk*. A trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them; there being few years, in each of which they bring not out of *Braſil* to *Portugal*, 150000. *Arrobes* of Sugar, every *Arrobe* containing 25. Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure. Here is alſo infinite quantities of that red *wood* uſed in dying Cloath, which we commonly called *Braſil-wood*; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Country, or the Country rather from the Wood, I determine not:) the Trees whereof are of that incredible greatneſs, that whole familes live on an *Arm* of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the moſt of our Villages. In other Commodities common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular inſtance.

Amongſt the *Rarities* hereof, are reckoned, 1. the *Plant* called *Copiba*, the bark of which being cut doth ſend out a *Balm*, the ſoveraign vertue whereof is ſo well known to the very beaſts, that being bit by venomous Serpents, they reſort unto it for their cure. 2. The Herb called *Sentida*, or *Viva*, which roughly touched will cloſe the leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of ſight. 3. A kind of *Wheat* in the Valley near unto *S. Sebaſtian*, which is continually growing, and alwayes ripe; or never wholly ripe, becauſe alwayes growing: for when one Ear doth grain, another doth bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4. The *Oxfiſh*, with eyes and eye-lids, two arms a cubit long, and at each an hand with five fingers and nails, as in a man; under the arms two teats, inwards like a Cow, in every female. 5. A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All Saints*, which had the face of an Ape, the foot of a Lion, and all the reſt of a man; of ſuch a terrible aſpect, that the Souldier who ſhot him fell down dead: but this I rather look on as an *aberration* of Nature, than a *rarity* in her. 6. Beaſts of ſuch ſtrange ſhapes, and ſuch ſeveral kinds, that it may be ſaid of *Braſil*, as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid apportat novi*; every day ſome new object of Admiration.

The people here are endowed with a pretty underſtanding: as may ſeem by him, who tartly blamed the covetouſneſs of the *Spaniſh*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold; and holding up a wedge of Gold, cried out, *Behold the God of the Chriſtians!* But in moſt placas they are barbarous, the men and women go ſtark naked, and on high *feſtival* dayes hang Jewels in their lips: theſe *feſtival* dayes are when a company of good neighbours come together to be merry, over the roaſted body of a *fat man*; whom they cut in *collops*, called *Boucon*, and eat with great greedineſs, and much delectation. They have two vile qualities, as being mindfull of injuries, and forgetfull of benefits. The men cruel without meaſure, and the women infinitely laſcivious. They cannot prononnce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reaſon of which one being demanded, made anſwer; becauſe they had amongſt them neither *Law*, *Faith*, nor *Rulers*. They are able ſwimmers, as well women as men; and will ſtay under water an hour together. Women in travel are here delivered without any great pain, and preſently go about their buſineſs, belonging to good houſe-wives: The good man (according to the faſhion of our kinder ſorts of Husbands in *England*, who are ſaid to *breed their Wives Children*) being ſick in their ſtead, and keeping their bed; ſo far that he hath broaths made him, is viſited by his *Goſſips*, or Neighbours, and hath *Junkets* ſent to comfort him. And amongſt theſe there are ſome *Rarities*, if not *Monſtroſities* in nature: it being ſaid of thoſe which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like beaſts, ſuch as *Orſon* is feigned to have been in the old *Romance*; and probably ſo ingendered alſo; that the *Guaymares* diſbowel Women with Child, and roaſt the Children; and finally, that the Salvage Nation of *Camacuiara* have their Paps almoſt down unto their knees, which they tye about their waſte when they run, or go faſter than ordinary.

Rivers of note I find not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, than proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way, as we croſs the Country, we ſhall not paſs them over without ſome remembrance. And ſo proceed we to the diviſion of the Country; not into Provinces, or Nations, as in other places, but into *Præfectures*, or Captainſhips as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13. in all, which we ſhall ſeverally touch on as we trace the Coaſt, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata*, unto that of *Guiana*; that is to ſay,

1. The Captainſhip of S. *VINCENT* bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the moſt civil people of all *Braſil*. Chief Towns whereof, 1. *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, capable of good ſhips of burden, but diſtant from the Main three leagues. A Town of no more than 120. houſes, yet the beſt of this *Præfecture*; beautified with a Pariſh Church, and two Convents of Friers. Taken and held two moneths by Sir *Tho. Cavendiſh*, An. 1591. ſince that environed with a Wall, and fortified with two Caſtles. 2. S. *Vincents*, better built, but not ſo well fitted with an Haven; of about 70. houſes, and 100. Inhabitants. 3. *Itange*, and 4. *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of leſſer Veſſels. 5. S. *Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleaſant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River of *Iniambis*. A Town of about 100. houſes, one Church, two Convents, and a College of *Jeſuits*; neighboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains, called *Pernabiacaba*. 6. S. *Philips*, a ſmall Town on the banks of *Iniambis*, which there begins to inlarge it ſelf; and paſſing thence falleth at the laſt in the River *Parana*, one of the greateſt Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. Of *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, ſo called, becauſe entred into that moneth by *John Diaz de Solis*, An. 1515. neglected by the *Portugals*, it was ſeized on by the *French* under the conduct of *Villegagnone*, employed herein by Admiral *Chaſtillon*, a great friend of the *Hugonets*, to whom it was intended for a place of *Refuge*, (as *New-England* afterwards for the like:) but within three years after their firſt coming hither, (*An.* 1558.) regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the ſword. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1. *Collignia*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*, ſo named in honour of *Gaſpar Colligni* (commonly called *Chaſtillon*) by whoſe incouragement it was founded. Situate on the Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2. S. *Sebaſtians*, built at the mouth of the ſame Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French*, and fortified with four ſtrong Bulwarks. 3. *Angra des Reyes*, diſtant twelve leagues Weſt-ward from the mouth of the Bay; not long ſince made a *Portugal* Colony. Beſides theſe, there are two great *Burroughs* of the natural *Braſilians*, in which are ſaid to be above 200. Inhabitants.

3. Of *the HOLY GHOST* (*del Spiritu Santo*) one of the moſt fertile Provinces of all *Braſil*; well ſtored with *Cotton-wool*, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large and full of fiſh. The only Town of note in it, is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200. *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church dedicated to S. *Francis*, a Monaſtery of *Benedictines*, and a College of *Jeſuits*; the chief conveniency, a ſafe and commodious Haven, capable of the greateſt Veſſels.

4. Of *PORTO SEGURO*, the ſecure Haven, ſo called by *Capralis*, who firſt diſcovered it; when being toſſed at Sea by a terrible tempeſt, he had here refreſhed himſelf. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity than *Fame*, of more fame than bigneſs; as not containing fully 200. Families. 2. *Santa Crux*, three leagues from the other; a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: the Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Avera*, in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3. *Santo Amaro*, or S. *Omers*, once of great note for making Sugars, for which uſe here were five *Ingenios*, or *Sugar Engines*: deſerted by the *Portugals* for fear of the Salvages, againſt whom they had not power enough to make good the place; and the Sugars deſtroyed of purpoſe, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. Of *DES ILHEOS*, or of the *Iſles*, ſo named from certain Iſlands lying againſt the Bay on which the principal Town is ſeated, called alſo *Ilheos*; or the Iſland (with like *Analogy* as a Town of good note in *Flanders*, hath the name of *Inſula*, or *Liſle*) The town conſiſting of about 150. or 200. Families, ſituate on a little River, but neighboured by a great *Lake* of 12. leagues in compaſs, (out of which that River doth ariſe:) full of a great but wholſom fiſh, which they call *Monatos*, ſome of which are affirmed to weigh 28. pounds. This Colony, much endangered by the *Guaymuri*, a Race of *Salvages* more *Salvage* than any of their fellows: who being driven out of their own Country fell into this *Præfecture*, which they had utterly deſtroyed, if ſome of S. *George's* Reliques, as the *Jeſuits* tell us, (but I bind no man to believe it) ſent by their General from *Rome*, An. 1581. had not ſtayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. Of *TODOS LOS SANTOS*, or *All Saints*, ſo called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lieth; in breadth two leagues and an half, 18. fathom deep, and full of many little Iſlands: but flouriſhing and pleaſant, and well ſtored with *Cotton-wool*. A Bay in which are many ſafe *Stations* and *Roads* for ſhipping, and therefore of great uſe and conſequence in thoſe furious Seas. Memorable for the hardy Enterprize of *Peter Heyns*, a *Dutch-man*, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*; who in the year 1627. ſeized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, conſiſting of 26. ſayl of ſhips, (four of them being men of War) all lying under the protection of the Forts and Caſtles, built for the ſafety of that *Bay*. For thruſting in amongſt them with his own ſhip only, (the reſt not being able to follow) he ſo laid about him,

OF
PARAGUAY.

PARAGUAY is bounded on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the Eaſt, with the main *Atlantick*; on the North, with *Braſil*; on the Weſt, with ſome unknown Countreys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River *Paraguay*, (one of the greateſt of the world) which runneth through it: the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great ſtore of *Silver* they expected from it.

The Country (for ſo much as hath been diſcovered) is ſaid to be of a fruitfull ſoyl; capable of Wheat and other of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedingly: nor do the *Cattel* increaſe leſs which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horſes multiplying in a wonderfull manner. Well ſtored with *Sugar-canes*, and not unfurniſhed with *Mines*, both of Braſs, and Iron; ſome veins of Gold and Silver, and great plenty of *Amethyſts*. Of Stags great plenty, and of *Monkeys* almoſt infinite numbers; not to ſay any thing of Lions, Tygers, and ſuch hurtfull Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the people there is nothing ſaid, but what hath been before obſerved of the other *Salvages*.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *De la Plata*, whoſe courſe we have deſcribed already. 2. *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, ſo called from the chief Town by which it runneth. 3. *Zarcaranna*, which riſeth in the Country of the *Diaguitas*, and falling into a *Lake* at the end of his courſe, doth from thence paſs into the body of *De la Plata*. 4. *Eſtero*, which riſing in the Valley of *Chalcaqui*, and paſſing through two great *Lakes*, meets with 5. the *Bermeio*, and both together fall into *De la Plata*, near the Town of S. *Foy*. 6. *Pilcomayo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Potoſi*, in the Province of *Charcos*; but his fall in the ſame River with thoſe before. Then on the North-ſide of that River, there is 7. that of S. *Saviour*, or S. *Salvador*, as the *Spaniards* call it; 8. *Rio Nigro*, or the *Black* River, of a longer courſe; but buried in the end, as the other is, in the deeps of *La Plata*. 9. *Yquaan*, and 10. ſeveral others, whoſe united ſtreams make the great River *Parana*, the ſecond River of eſteem in all this Country: But ſwallowed in that of *Plata*. Beſides theſe 11. *Rio de S. Martin*, and 12. *Rio Grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of, 1. *Rio de la Plata*. 2. *Tucaman*, and 3. *La Crux de Sierra*. The reſt not conquered by the *Spaniard*, or not well diſcovered, cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both ſides of that River; aſcending many leagues up the water, but not extended much upon either ſide. The reaſon of the name, the quality of the ſoyl and people we have ſeen before.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Buenos Ayres*, or *Neuſtra Sennora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Cividad de la Trinidad*, ſeated on the Southern bank of the River of *Plata*, where built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, *Anno* 1535. Deſerted by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cabeſa de Vacca*, Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned; and finally in the year 1582. re-edified and planted with a new *Colony*. Situate on the riſing of a little Hill, in the 34. degree and 45. minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64. leagues from the mouth of the River; fortified with a Mud-Wall, and a little Caſtle, with ſome Pieces of Ordnance; yet neither large, nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. 2. S. *Fe*, or S. *Fidei*, 50. leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the ſame ſide of the water, near the confluence of it with the River *Eſtero*: of the ſame bigneſs as the other, but ſomewhat richer; the people here being given to clothing, which *Manufacture* they exchange with the *Braſilians* for *Sugar*, *Rice*, and other neceſſary Commodities. 3. *Neuſtra Sennora del Aſſumption*, but commonly *Aſſumption* only, higher up the River, from the mouth whereof 300. leagues diſtant: ſituate in the *Latitude* of 25. and almoſt in the midſt betwixt *Peru*, and *Braſil*; well built and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Country. Inhabited by three ſorts of men, firſt natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accompted 400. Families; 2. The *Meſtizos*, begotten by the *Spaniard* upon the *Natives*; and 3. *Mulatos*, born of the *Spaniards* and the *Negroes*; of which two laſt here are thought to be many thouſands. Not far off is a great Lake, called *Ytupuam*, in the midſt whereof an huge Rock, above 100. Fathom high above the water. 5. *Cividad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called alſo *Ontiveros*, by the Natives *Guayra*, 80. leagues North from the Town of *Aſſumption*; ſituate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitfull ſoyl, but a ſickly Air; for which cauſe, and the frequent inſurrections of the *Salvages*, but meanly peopled. 6. S. *Ann*, on the banks of the ſame River *Parana*; 7. S. *Salvador*, on a River of the ſame name. Beſides theſe, there are up the River above *Aſſumption*, three noted Ports. 8. *Puerto de Guaybiamo*. 9. *Puerto de la Candelaria*, and 10. *Puerto de los Reyes*; but whether Towns, or only Havens on that River for diſperſing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to ſay. The laſt ſave one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas*, and the death of 80. of his men, by the hands of the *Salvages*.

2. *TUCUMAN* lieth on the Weſt of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the confines of *Chile*, through which they make their way unto *Mare del Zur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Noort*: the exact bounds hereof to the North and South, not yet reſolved on.

The Country, for ſo much hereof as lieth towards *Chile*, well manured and fruitfull; that towards *Magellanica*, barren, untilled, and not well diſcovered, no veins of Gold, or Silver in it, though ſituate in a temperate and agreeable Air. Watered by the two Rivers of, 1. *Salado*, ſo called from the brackiſhneſs and ſaltneſs of it; and 2. *Del Eſtero*, ſpoken of before, ſo named, becauſe ſometimes it breaketh out of his banks. The Inhabitans now civilized both in manners and habit, in both which they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. S. *Jago del Eſtero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Varco*: the principal of that ſmall Province, honoured with a Biſhops See, and the ſeat of the Governour; and diſtant about 180. leagues from *Buenos Airez*. 2. S. *Michael de Tucuman*, ſeated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitfull ſoyl, both for Corn and Paſturage, diſtant 28. leagues from S. *Jago*. 3. *Talavera*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de Talavera*, but by the Natives called *Eſteco*; ſituate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitfull ſoyl, and inhabited by an induſtrious people, grown wealthy by their *Manufactures* of Cotton-wools, which grow hereabouts in great abundance: with which they drive a great trade at the *Mines* of *Potoſi*, from hence diſtant but 140. leagues. 4. *Corduba*, in a convenient place for trade, as being equally diſtant from S. *Juan de la Frontera*, in the Præfecture of *Chile*; and S. *Foy*, in *Rio de la Plata*, 50. leagues from each; and ſeated in a Road from *Peru* unto *Buenos Airez*; much travelled conſequently by thoſe who go from *Peru* to *Braſil*, or *Spain*. 5. *New London*, and 6. *New Cordura*, built at ſuch time as *Garſias de Mendoza*, ſon of the Marqueſs of *Cannete*, and Vice-Roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Beſides theſe, 7. *Morata*. 8. *Chocinoca*. 9. *Sococha*, and 10. *Calabinna*; Townſhips belonging to the *Natives*.

3. S. CRUX DE SIERRA, is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guapay*, and in the Country of the *Chiquitos* and *Cheriguanaes*, two Tribes of the *Salvages*. By ſome accounted to *Peru*, becauſe under the *Juridical Reſort* of *Charcos*: but ſo far diſtant from the neareſt bounds of that Province, (100. *Spaniſh* leagues at leaſt) that I think fitter to accompt it to the Province of *Paraquay*; betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guapay* it is wholly ſeated.

The ſoyl abundantly productive of *Maize* and Wines; plenty of moſt ſorts of *American* fruits, which I can give no *Engliſh* name to; a kind of *Palm*, of whoſe trunk they make great ſtore of meal, of good taſte and nouriſhment. But neither ſoyl nor air agreeable to the fruits of *Europe*, which ripen ſlowly, and ſoon die. So deſtitute of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make uſe of Rain-water, preſerved in pits: the cauſe of no ſmall wants, and of many great murders, the people either dying for thirſt, or killing one another for ſome water to quench it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Sancta Crux*, ſituate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but ſituate in open field, inlarging it ſelf into many Plains, and thirſty Vallies: neighboured by a Brook, or *Torrent* breaking from the Rocks; which four leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth ſupply the Town with Fiſh. 2. *Baranca*, 60. leagues from the Mines of *Potoſi*. 3. *Tomina*. 4. *Lagunilla*, and 5. *Tarixa*; three Forts erected for defence of this Province againſt the Incurſions and Alarms of the *Cherignanaes*. 6. *Neyva Rioja*, once a Colony of the *Spaniards*, but ſacked and diſpeopled by the *Cherignanaes*, when the Count of *Neyva* was Vice-Roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nuflo de Chaves*, who in the year 1548. firſt diſcovered thoſe parts, was treacherouſly ſlain by one of the *Salvages*.

The principal Nations of this Country, when firſt known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Querandies*, *Timbues*, and *Carcares*, the *Chanes*, *Chiminei*, *Guaranyes*, the *Guayacurves*, *Cacoves*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both ſides of the River of *Plata*: the *Tucumanes*, *Juries*, and *Diagnitas*, in the *Cantred* of *Tucuman*; more North-ward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no hold, the *Chuneſſes*, *Xaqueſſes*, *Xacoaes*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerfull Nations, hitherto unconquered. The firſt diſcovery of this Country aſcribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spaniſh* Adventurer; who in the year 1515. paſſing up the River to the *Latitude* of 34. Degrees, and 40. minutes, and unadviſedly landing with too ſmall a power, was there unfortunately ſlain. The deſign after proſecuted by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, Anno 1526. who ſayled againſt the ſtream as high as the River *Parana*: at the reception of which, the great River called, till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortreſs called *Fort Cabot*; and 30. leagues more up the River, that called S. *Ann*, (both long ſince ruined) where *Diego Garcias* a *Portugal* found him, in the year next following. In the year 1535. the buſineſs was reſumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*; and ſent *John de Aiolas* to diſcover Northwards; of whoſe unhappy end we have heard before. Not fully ſetled till the year 1540. when *Alvares Nonnez*, commonly called *Cabeſa de Vacca*, made a more full diſcovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing ſince done for the further planting of the Country, though ſome places have been marked out for new *Plantations*; here being little Gold and Silver, and conſequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the work.

that having ſunk the *Vice-Admiral*, he took all the reſt, conditioning only for their lives; notwithſtanding all the ſhot which was made againſt him from the ſhips and Caſtles, and 42. pieces of Ordnance planted on the ſhore. Chief Towns hereof, 1. S. *Salvador*, built on a little Hill on the North-ſide of the *Bay*, by *Thomas de Souſa*; adorned with many Churches, and Religious houſes, and fortified (beſides the Wall) with three ſtrong Caſtles; the one called S. *Anthony*, the other S. *Philip*, and the third *Tapeſipe*. Yet not ſo ſtrong by reaſon of ſome Hills adjoyning which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders*, An. 1624. recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and ſince loſt again. 2. *Paripe*, more within the Land, four leagues from S. *Saviours*. 3. *Seregippe del Rei*, a ſmall Town, and ſeated on as ſmall a River, but amongſt many rich Paſtures, and ſome veins of ſilver.

7. Of FERNAMBUCK, one of the richeſt *Præfectures* for *Tobacco*, *Sugar*, and the great quantity of *Braſil-wood*, which is brought hence yearly for the *Diers*, in all this Country; but deſtitute of Corn, and moſt other neceſſaries, with which ſupplied from the *Canaries*, and ſometimes from *Portugal*. Chief Towus hereof, 1. *Olinda*, the largeſt and beſt peopled of all *Braſil*, containing above 2000. perſons; not reckoning in the *Church-men*, nor taking the great number of *ſlaves* which they keep for their *Sugar-works* into the accompt: for whoſe uſe they have here eight *Parochial* Churches, five *Religious* houſes, and ſome *Hoſpitals*. Situate near the Sea-ſide, but on ſo uneven a piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a *Regular* fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well built Caſtle; and that well planted with Braſs pieces. Which notwithſtanding, in the year 1595. the Caſtle and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they uſed to ſtow all their chief Commodities) were took by Capt. *James Lancaſter*, and ſome few of the *Engliſh*, who having tarried in the Haven above a moneth, brought home with him eight of his own ſhips, four *French-men*, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance; all laden with the choiceſt Merchandiſe of *Braſil*, and *India*. 2. *Amatta de Braſil*, ten miles from *Olinda*, the Inhabitants whereof live by ſelling the *Braſil wood*. 3. S. *Laurenzo*, a well frequented Village, but as yet unwalled. 4. *Poincur*, upon a River ſo named. 5. *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of S. *Auguſtines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6. *Garaſu*, about five leagues from *Olinda*, inhabited for the moſt part by poor and *Mechanical* perſons, till the year 1632. when taken by the *Hollander*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This *Præfecture*, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque* (a great houſe in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* united: the Town of *Olinda* being took by them in the year 1629. the Port and all the *Avenues* unto it ſo ſtrongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it.

8. Of TAMARACA, ſo called from an Iſland of that name, diſtant about five miles from *Olinda*; of no great note but for the Haven, and an impregnable Caſtle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a ſtrong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and ſo blocked it up, that it hath ſince been of no uſe to the *Spaniard*. This the leaſt *Præfecture* in *Braſil*, but withall the ancienteſt; extended three leagues only in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Monſanto* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly, when entire, thirty thouſand *Ducats*. But his Rents much diminiſhed, if not quite inverted, ſince the loſs of the Haven.

9. Of PARAIBA, ſo called from a River of that name, (but by the *Spaniards* called *Domingo*) of moſt note herein. On the banks whereof ſtandeth *Paraiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, about three leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty good ſhips to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long ſince by 500. *Portugals*, beſides *Slaves* and *Negroes*. Not Walled, till they began to ſtand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loſs of *Olinda*; but more ſecured by a ſtrong Caſtle on the Promontory, called *Cabo Delo*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, than by any works within the Land. A Caſtle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were poſſeſſed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoyning Haven, called *Port Francois*, but outed by the *Portugal*, *An*. 1584. who have ſince held their footing in it, but with fear of the *Hollanders*; eſpecially ſince their taking of a little Iſland lying over againſt them, called the Iſle of *Noronha*.

10. Of RIOGRANDE, ſo called from the River *Poteingi* (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River, not made a *Præfecture* till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next *Pretender* ſome of the *French* began to fix here, *An*. 1597. But the King of *Spain* not willing to have any ſuch neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiba*, to drive them thence: which was done accordingly. But then the *Salvages* beginning to riſe up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to ſeek aid from him of *Fernambuck*; by whoſe help having ſlain five thouſand, and took three thouſand of them, the reſt became *Vaſſals* to the *Portugals*: who built here an impregnable Caſtle (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned and furniſhed with Ammunition and all other neceſſaries; very few *Portugals*, except thoſe of the Garriſon, being yet come over.

11. Of SIARA, a late *Præfecture* alſo, in which the *Portugals* have no more than a Caſtle, with a dozen houſes, or thereabouts, beſides that of the Governour adjoyning to it. So named from an Haven called *Siara*, but of no great note, and capable but of little Veſſels. Of ſome trade in regard of the *Chryſtal*, *Cotton-wool*, and ſome precious ſtones, found in the Country hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and purſue the Conqueſt; here being great plenty of *Sugar-Canes*, but no works to make it.

12. *Of MARAGNON*, an Iſland lying in the mouth of the great River ſo called, in the furtheſt parts of *Braſil* North-wards, and many leagues diſtant from *Siara*, the laſt of their *Præfectures*; the Country intervening not yet diſcovered, or otherwiſe made known unto us, than by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the *Coaſt*. An Iſland of a fruitfull ſoyl, if pains and husbandry were not wanting: affording naturally *Maize*, and a Root called *Maniot*, both which the *Salvages* uſe for bread; good ſtore of Cotton-wools, Saffron, *Braſil wood*, and the beſt *Tobacco*; and in ſome places *Balm* and *Amber*. Watered with many freſh Rivers, and pleaſant Springs; well-wooded both for Timber and Fewel; and in a word, bleſſed with ſo temperate an Air (though ſo near the *Æquator*) that no place can be more commodious for the life of man. The people ſtrong of body, healthy and long-lived without any *baldneſs*; induſtrious in their *Feather-works* and *Manufactures* of Cotton; the *Women* curious in ordering their hair, fruitfull in Child-bearing, and that till 80. years old and ſometimes more. Both Sexes naked till their marriage; and then apparelled only from the waſte to their knees.

The Villages hereof poſſeſſed by the Natives, conſiſted but of four great Houſes; each of them two, or three hundred foot in length, and twenty, or thirty foot in breadth; ſo placed as they reſembled a *Quadrangular* Cloyſter: And in each houſe ſo many houſholds, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves* (for ſo they called them) contained three hundred perſons, and ſome twice that number: Of theſe were twenty ſeven in all, whoſe names I hold impertinent to be muſtered here: The total eſtimate of the people when the *French* came hither, amounting to 12000. Souls. For the *French* trading in this Iſland, and carrying themſelves courteouſly amongſt the *Natives*, found them not unwilling to admit a *Colony of* that Nation, if ſent over to them: by whoſe aide they might free themſelves from all other *Pretenders*, and be inſtructed in the Goſpel. Accordingly a *Colony*, and four *Capuchin* Fryers, are ſent over to them, *An*. 1612. Some *Salvages* gained unto the Faith, and a ſtrong Caſtle, called S. *Lewis*, commodiouſly built, and planted with 22. pieces of Ordnance; the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not reſted there when diſ-ſeized by the *Portugals*, ſent thither under the Conduct of *Hierome de Albuquerque*, *Anno* 1614. Who to the Caſtle of S. *Lewis*, which the *French* had built, added thoſe of S. *Mary*, and S. *Francis*, planted two Villages in the Iſland by the names of S. *Andrew*, and S. *Jago*, and ever ſince have held it without moleſtation.

13. *Of PARA*, the moſt Northern *Præfecture* of *Braſil*, towards *Guiana*; ſo called from the River of *Para*, (ſuppoſed to be a branch of the River of *Amazons*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it, two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Chanel fifteen fathoms deep: on the banks whereof (but on an higher ground than the reſt) the *Portugals* have built the Caſtle of *Para*, in form *Quadrangular*, and well Walled, except towards the River: the Country thereabouts inhabited by 300. *Portuguez*, beſides the Garriſon.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one *Supreme*. Divided into many *Tribes*, and each Tribe governed by their *Chiefs*, as in other Countreys. Theſe Tribes ſo many, and the Muſter of their names ſo uſeleſs, that I now forbear it. In this eſtate they lived, when diſcovered firſt; but by whom firſt diſcovered, will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get ſome colour of a Title for the Crown of *Caſtile*, aſcribe it to *John Pinſone*, and *Diego de Lepe*, two of their own Country; who as they ſay, had landed on it in the year 1500. before the coming of *Capralis*, though the ſame year alſo. The *Portugals* attribute the diſcovery of it to *Pedro Alvarez de Caprali*, ſent by their King *Emanuel* to the *Eaſt-Indies*: who being driven over hither from the Coaſt of *Guinea*, took poſſeſſion of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a *Croſs*, giving the name of *Sanctæ Crucis*, or the *Holy Croſs*, to this new diſcovery. That name changed afterwards to *Braſil* from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongſt them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Veſpucius* a Noble *Florentine*, An. 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation, in the year 1503. were by *Emanuel* employed in a further diſcovery. Who ſpeeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals* did accordingly ſend over ſome *Plantations* thither. But a great controverſie growing betwixt them and the *Spaniard*, to whether of the two it of right belonged: the *Spaniard* was content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull, or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, (by whom the whole undiſcovered World was divided betwixt thoſe two Kings) it ſeemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of *Caſtile*. Enjoyed by this *Emanuel*, and the Kings ſucceeding, till the death of *Sebaſtian*, (which *Sebaſtian* the *Jeſuits* look on as the Founder of all their Colleges in this Country) and by the *Spaniards* ſince the death of *Henry*, (whoſe Reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*; that Nation being ſo prudently jealous of their intereſs in it, that they would ſuffer any of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongſt them. By them poſſeſſed entirely without any Rivals, (I mean for ſo much of the Country as they had ſubdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part; and got the *Præfectures* of *Fernambuck*, and *Todos Los Sanctos* (or the Bay) by the Right of War. The reſt with all the other Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late *Revolt* of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, ſubmitting unto *John* the 4th. of the houſe of *Bragance*, whom the *Portugueze* had made their King, *Anno* 1639.

OF
GUIANA.

GUIANA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Main *Atlantick*; on the Weſt, with the Mountains of *Peru*, or rather ſome undiſcovered Countreys interpoſed betwixt them; on the North, with the River *Orenoque*; and on the South, with that of the *Amazons*. The reaſon of the name I find not, unleſs it be ſo called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the *Line*, extended from the fourth Degree of *Southern*, to the eighth of the *Northern* Latitude. The Air, notwithſtanding this ſituation under the *Æquator*, affirmed to be temperate, the Eaſtern winds (which they call the *Brizes*) conſtantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extreme heats thereof by their cooler blaſts. The Country towards the Sea-ſide flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and ſwelled with hils: in all places ſo adorned with Natures *Tapeſtry*, the boughs and branches of the Trees never unclothed or left naked, fruit either ripe or green growing ſtill upon them, that no Country in the world could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we ſhall ſee anon, when the particular parts hereof come into Diſcourſe.

Of the People it is ſaid in general, that they have amongſt them no ſetled Government; and though they acknowledge ſome ſuperiority in the *Chiefs* of their *Tribes*, yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they pleaſe. *Adultery* and *Murder*, which are only puniſhable, not otherwiſe expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer ſort have two or three Wives, and ſometimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, a like jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any further ceremony or *formalities* of Law, they beat out their brains. Their wives, eſpecially the elder, they uſe for *Servants*; and he which hath moſt ſuch, is the greateſt man. Without *Religion*, or any notion of a *Godhead*; not ſo far onwards on the way to the worſhip of the true God, as to be *Idolaters*: for though *Idolatry* be miſtaken in the proper Object, it ſuppoſeth a *Deity*; and they who have this *Principle*, That there is a God, have learned one, and not the leaſt of the points of their *Catechiſm*. Their *Accompts* amongſt themſelves they keep with a bundle of ſticks; which they diminiſh or increaſe according to the times of their contract. Their *Funerals* they ſolemnize with a Feaſt, but with ſuch diverſity in the deportment of both Sexes, that whiles the *Women* howl extremely, the *Men* perform the *Obſequies* with ſinging and exceſſive *drinking*; the one as improper for a *Feaſt*, as the other for a *Funeral*.

Rivers of moſt note in it, beſides 1. *Orenoque*, and 2. the River of *Amazons*, and thoſe rather boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, than proper unto this alone. 3. *Arrawari*, 4. *Cpnawini*, 5. *Caſpurough*, or *Caſſipure*, all falling into the ſame main *Atlantick*, betwixt the River of *Amazons* and *Wiapoco*: the laſt ariſing out of the Lake of the *Arachoſi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or influx into the Sea, and but five ſpans deep. 6. *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7. *Wia*, 8. *Cajane*, 9. *Marwine*, 10. *Eſſequebe*, a River of twenty dayes journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque* or *Raliana*.

The whole divided commonly into theſe four parts, 1. *Rio de las Amazones*, or the River of *Amazons*, 2. *Wiapoco* or *Guiano* ſpecially ſo called, 3. *Orenoque*, and 4. the Iſles of *Guiana*.

1. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazons*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the tract of that famous River. The ſoil in ſome places dry and barren, in others fertile and productive of the choiceſt fruits. Full of large Woods, and in thoſe Woods moſt ſort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongſt others of moſt note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*) which they call the *Totock*; a tree of great bulk, and as great a fruit; this laſt as big as a mans head, and ſo hard withall, that when the fruit grows ripe and ready to fall, the people dare not go into the Woods without an helmet or ſome ſuch ſhelter over their heads, for fear of beating out their brains. The *kernels* of it, for the moſt part ten or twelve in number, have the taſte of *Almonds*, and are ſaid to be *provocative* in point of *Venery*. Of which the Salvages have this By-word, *Pigue ſecke in Saccowe pingean Totocke*; that is to ſay, Eat *Totock*, if thou wouldſt be potent in the Acts of *Venus*. Here are alſo *Sugar-canes* in ſome places; and the Plant called *Pita*, the taſte whereof is ſaid to be like Strawberries, Claret-wine, and Sugar.

The principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Yaos*, *Cockettuway*, *Pattecui*, *Tackianes*, *Tomoes*, and *Wackehanes* dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons*, and *Arowians* poſſeſſed of the Ilands. Towns of note, I have met with none amongſt them; though every houſe (moſt of them 150. foot in length, 20. in breadth, and entertaining at the leaſt an hundred perſons) might paſs ſufficiently for a Village. Yet they are ſafer houſed than ſo, for otherwiſe their houſes would afford them but little comfort in the over-flowings of the River, which drown all the Country: and therefore they betake themſelves to the tops of trees, and there remain, like Birds, with their ſeveral families, till the waters be drawn in again, and the earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find ſome of theſe their dwellings called by proper names, as 1. *Matarem*, 2. *Roakery*, 3. *Anarcaprock*, 4. *Haaman*, 5. *Womians*, and 6. *Cogemymne*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The firſt Diſcoverer of this River, and the parts adjoyning, was *Orellana* the Lieutenant of *Gonſales Pizarro*, whom his brother *Franciſco Pizarro*, then Vice-roy of *Peru*, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noyſe of ſome rich Countreys beyond the *Andes*, he raiſed ſufficient Forces, and paſſed over thoſe *Mountains*; where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a boat, and ſent this *Orellana* to bring in proviſions. But the River which he chanced into, was ſo ſwift of courſe, that he was not able to go back; and therefore of neceſſity, to obey his fortune in following the courſe of that ſtrong water. Paſſing along by divers deſolate and unpeopled places, he came at laſt into a Country planted and inhabited; where he firſt heard of the *Amazons* (by thoſe *Salvages* called *Comapuyaras*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people: And in the end having ſpent his time in paſſing down this River from the beginning of *January* to the end of *Auguſt* 1540. he came at laſt into the Sea; and getting into the Iſle of *Cubana*, ſayled into *Spain*: the courſe of his voyage down the water he eſtimated at 1800. leagues, (or 5400. *Engliſh* miles) but found no *Amazons* in his paſſage, as himſelf affirmed; only ſome *maſculine* women ſhewed themſelves intermixt with the men, to oppoſe his landing; and in ſome places he found men with *long hair* like women; either of which might make theſe parts believed to be held by *Amazons*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got *Commiſſion* for the conqueſt of the Countreys by him diſcovered; and in the year 1549. he betook himſelf unto the ſervice. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at leaſt, he could never hit upon the *Chanel* which brought him down, though attempted often. Which ill ſucceſs, with the conſideration of his loſs both in fame and fortunes, brought him to his grave; having got nothing but the honour of the firſt diſcovery, and the leaving of his name to that famous River, ſince called *Orellana*. The enterprize purſued, but with like ſucceſs, by one *Pedro de Orſna*, An. 1560. after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *Engliſh* and the *Hollanders* have endeavoured an exact diſcovery, and ſeverally begun ſome *Plantations* in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the others; their *Quarters* being beaten up by the neighbouring *Portugals*, before they were ſufficiently fortified to make any reſiſtance.

2. ***WIAPOCO***, or ***GUIANA*** ſpecially ſo called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both ſides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath its name. A River of a long courſe, but not paſſable, up the ſtream, above 16. miles, by reaſon of a *Cataract*, or great fall from the higher ground: in breadth betwixt that *Cataract* and the *Æſtuarium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Æſtuarium*, or influx, a whole mile at leaſt, and there about two fathoms deep.

The Country on both ſides of this River very rich and fertile; ſo natural for *Tobaccco*, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. *Sugar-Canes* grow here naturally without any planting, and on the ſhrubs great ſtore of *Cotton*, and the Dye by ſome called *Orellana*. Plenty of *Veniſon* in their Woods, and of *Fiſh* in their Rivers, their fields well ſtored with Beaſts, which themſelves call *Moyres*, in ſhape and uſe reſembling Kine, but without any horns. The people generally of a modeſt and ingenious countenance; Naked, but would wear cloaths, if they had them, or knew how to make them. Their bread is made of a Plant called *Caſſavi*; of which alſo being dried and chewed, and then ſtrained through a wicker-veſſel, they make a kind of drink in colour like *new Ale*, but not ſo well taſted, and of leſs continuance. The greateſt part of their food is *Fiſh*, which they intoxicate with a ſtrong ſented wood. and ſo take them up as they lie floating on the top of the water. Much troubled with a Worm like a *Flea*, (by the *Spaniards* called *Nignas*) which get under the Nails of their *Toes*, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no leſs torture of the *Patient*, without ſpeedy prevention: No better remedy found out, than to pour Wax melting hot on the place affected; which being pulled off, when tis cold, draws the *Vermin* with it, ſometimes 800. at a pull. The *Women* of ſuch eaſie *Child-birth*, that they are delivered without help, and preſently bring the Child to his Father, (for they have ſo much natural modeſty as to withdraw from company upon that occaſion) who waſheth it with water, and *painteth* it with ſeveral colours, and ſo returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of moſt note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleaſant and goodly ſtreams. The names of ſome of them on both ſides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long courſe, a goodly River all the way, and at the mouth thereof to be large and broad; which paſſing through the heart of the Country in the fourth degree and 40. minutes of Northern Latitude, may poſſibly occaſion both the whole, and and this part more ſpecially to be called *Wiana*, and by the *Dutch*, who cannot pronounce the *W*, *Guyana*. Certain I am, that by the name of *Wiana*, I have found it written in approved Authours. But what need further ſearch be made after leſſer Rivers, (which will offer themſelves to us of their own accord) when we have a *Lake* to paſs over like a Sea for bigneſs, (*magnum, famoſum, & vaſtum inſtar maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Yaos*, or *Jaos* called *Raponowinin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimen*? Situate about a dayes journey from the River *Eſſequebo*, and neighboured by the great and famous City *Manoa*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado* (or the *Golden* City) from the abundance of Gold, in Coyn, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was ſaid to be in it. The greateſt City, as ſome ſay, not only of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Orgas*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his *Mexican* Wars, and by him condemned for a mutiny, put into a Boat alone without any victual, and ſo caſt off to ſeek his fortune, affirmed at his return, that being taken by ſome of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then reſiding at *Manoa*, he entered the City at high-noon, travelled all the reſt of that day, and the next alſo untill night, before he came to the Kings Palace; but then he ſaith that he was led blind-fold all the way: And therefore poſſibly enough, this City might be no ſuch miracle as the ſtory makes it; *Don Diego* being either abuſed by the reports of the *Salvages*, or willing to abuſe the world with ſuch empty fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *Engliſh* have ſeverally ſought, and that with incredible diligence to find out this City, yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be ſaid in the Poets language,

——— *Et quod non invenis uſquam*;
Eſſe putes nuſquam ——— i. e.

That which is no where to be found,
Think not to be above the ground.

Nor is there much more credit to be given unto his *Relations* of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*; who being forſooth, one of the younger Brethren of *Atabaliba* the laſt King of *Peru*, at the conqueſt of that Kingdom, with many thouſands of his Followers came into this Country, and ſubduing the *Caribes*, erected here a ſecond *Peruvian* Monarchy. For beſides that *Atabaliba* had no brethren but *Guaſcar* and *Mango* who both dyed in *Peru*, how improbable muſt it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing ſo well the thirſt of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either ſuffer him to return and diſcloſe the ſecrets of his State; or ſend him away loaded with Gold, as 'tis ſaid he did; Who ſheweth his Treaſure to a Thief, doth deſerve to loſe it. And therefore letting paſs theſe dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us deſcend to places of leſs *Magnificence*, but of greater reality. Amongſt which I reckon 1 *Caripo*, moſt memorable for a Colony of *Engliſh* there planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, *An.* 1608. ſituate on the banks of the *Wiacopo*, near the mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock ſo difficult of acceſs, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Air ſo ſound and anſwerable to the conſtitution of an *Engliſh* body, that of 30 which were left there for three years together, there dyed but ſix, and thoſe ſix rather by miſfortune, and ſome croſs accident, than by any diſeaſes. 2. *Gomeribo*, on the top of an hill near the mouth of the Bay of *Wiacopo*, poſſeſſed awhile by ſome *Hollanders*, but ſoon deſerted. 3. *Moyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Marwinen*. 4. *Crewinay*, on the other ſide of the ſame River, poſſeſſed by the *Caribes*: the King of the firſt (for each *Tribe* hath its ſeveral Princes) being named *Maperitaka*, affirmed to be a vertuous man, and kind to *ſtrangers*; of the later, *Minapa*. 5. *Tanparamunen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River. And 6 *Moreſhego*, four dayes journey from the other; both poſſeſſed by the *Caribes*. The King, or *Caſique* of thoſe laſt, at Captain *Harcourts* being there (of which time we ſpeak) named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of *Buff*.

The principal Families of this part, beſides the *Yaos*, or *Jagos*, and the *Maraons* ſpoken of before, who poſſeſs almoſt all the Sea-coaſts of this Countrey, are ſaid to be *Arwaccæ*, the *Sapayoy*, the *Mayos*, and the *Ardcouri*; of different Languages, and Cuſtomes, though neer neighbours unto one another. Originally Inhabitants of the Iſland of *Trinidado*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common names of *Caribes*, higher into the Countrey, poſſeſſed themſelves of the Sea-ſhores, and the parts adjoyning; each *Tribe* or *Family* being Governed by its ſeveral *Chief*, as before was intimated. The *Netherlands* for a time had ſome footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their ſhort ſtay amongſt them, than to make the people diſ-affected to the *Engliſh*; of whoſe pretenſions to theſe parts, and deſigns to plant them they had good Intelligence. And ſo much was confeſſed by ſome of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance, how much the *Engliſh* were abuſed in thoſe miſ-reports. Afterwards in the year 1604. Captain *Charls Leigh* ſet Sail from *Woolwich* on the *Thames*, and in *May* fell upon the River of *Wiapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, gratified with an Houſe and Garden, and his Aid craved againſt the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took poſſeſſion of the Country in the name of King *James*, and the Crown of *England*; and cauſed the River of *Wiapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caroleigh*: but that name ended with his life, and that ſhortly after, he dying in his return on Ship-board. The deſign went forwards notwithſtanding, and in the year 1608. an *Engliſh* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new poſſeſſion taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned; the Countrey further ſearched into by that Noble Gentleman, than ever formerly by any, or by many ſince. After three years, the Colony wanting fit ſupply, returned home again; the Plantation never ſince purſued, though by ſome projected. Yet ſo far are theſe *Salvages* beholding to the *Engliſh* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there againſt the *Caribes*, ſo at their going off they taught them the uſe of Arms; and put them into a *poſture of defence*; enabling them thereby to preſerve themſelves againſt all their Enemies.

3. *ORENOQUE*, or the Province of the River of *Orenoque* comprehendeth the North parts of *Guyana*, lying upon and towards the banks of that famous River of which we have already ſpoken. The Countrey very Rich and pleaſant, conſiſting of large Plains, many miles in compaſs, adorned with the embroydery of Flowers, and unknown Plants, exceeding pleaſant to the eye; and ſometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furniſhed with rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Rivers liberally ſtored with Fiſh, and the *Foreſts* both with Beaſts and *Fowls*. No Countrey in *America*, not *Peru* it ſelf, ſaid to be comparable to it for abundance of Treaſure. Some alſo add a whole Mountain of *Chryſtal* to be ſeen afar off from *Winecaporo*; and tell us (but in general termes) of more goodly Cities than elſewhere in all *Peruana*, but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *Engliſh* could ever ſee them, though they diligently ſearched into moſt parts of this Country.

The people, as of ſeveral Nations, ſo of ſeveral Natures : The *Capuri*, and *Macureos*, for the moſt part *Carpenters*, live by making *Canoas* or Boats, which they ſell into *Guiana* for *Gold*, and to *Trinidado* for *Tobacco*, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dyeth, they make great lamentation ; and after the fleſh is putrified and fallen from the bones, they take up the *Skeleton*, and hang it up in the houſe where he dwelt, decking his skull with *Feathers* of all colours, and hanging Gold plates about the bones of his arms and thighs. Of the *Tivitivas* dwelling upon ſome of the Northern branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Water Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant people, and to have the moſt manly and moſt deliberate ſpeech of any Nation in the World. A People which eat of nothing that is ſet or ſown : the children of Dame *Nature*, and therefore will not be beholding for their lively-hood unto Art, or Induſtry ; uſing the tops of the *Palmito* Trees for bread ; Fiſh, Deer, and Swines-fleſh, for the reſt of their ſuſtenance. The *Aſſawy*, *Saymæ*, *Wikeri*, and *Aroras*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with ſmoother hair : And to uſe Arrows dipt in ſo ſtrange a poyſon, as doth not only bring death, but death with moſt unſpeakable torments, eſpecially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwaca* of this Tract I find nothing ſingular, but that when any of their Kings or *Caciques* die, their Wives and neereſt of the Kindred beat their bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink like ſpice.

Places of moſt importance in it (for to ſpeak any thing particularly of thoſe many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque*, were an endleſs labour) 1 *Comolaha*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but ſomewhat diſtant, in which they keep ſome Annual Fairs for the ſale of *Women*. One of our *Engliſh* men, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1595. affirmed that he bought eight of them (the eldeſt not above eighteen) for a half-penny red-hafted knife, which he brought from *England* : but withall telleth us for his credit, that he gave them to ſome *Salvages* of his acquaintance. 2. *Morequito*, a known Port upon ſome branch of the *Orenoque* ; of much uſe to the *Engliſh* in their firſt diſcovery of theſe parts. 3. *Wenicapora*, ſo called from another branch of that River bearing this name ; from whence was ſhewed an high Hill ſaid to be of *Chryſtal*, but ſo far off, that it was thought better to believe than to go and ſee. Others report of this Mountain, that above it there is a mighty River, which falling down this *Cataract* on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noiſe, as if 1000 Bells were knocked one againſt another. And poſſible enough it is, that this great fall of water diſcerned far off, may (with the help of Sun-ſhine) carry ſome reſemblance of a *Chryſtalline* Mountain. 4. S. *Thome*, ſituate on the Main Chanel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 houſes, ſtretched out in length for halfe a mile, but ſlightly built, a Pariſh Church in the midſt of it, and at the Weſt end a Convent of *Franciſcan* Friers. The only Town of all *Guiana* poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards* ; not fortified till againſt the laſt coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1617. but taken by him at that time, and ſince that by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1629. though by both quitted not long after, it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The ſeveral Nations of this Tract have been named before, Diſcovered firſt by *Diego de Ordas*, Anno 1531. furniſhed with a Patent for the conqueſt of it by *Charls* the fift. But not hitting on the right Chanel, or otherwiſe not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain* : effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hierom de Ortal*, Anno 1533. and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded further than the others, *Anno* 1536. and finally by *Gonſalvo Ximenez de Queſada* and *Antonio Berreo* with far better fortune ; who beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the ſearch of *Guiana*, fell caſually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly diſcovered till the year 1595. in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Priſoner this *Antonio Berreo*, and learning of him the ſucceſs of his Expedition, reſolved upon the undertaking : and ſearched ſo far into the Countrey by the courſe of this River, that ſome have ſince called it *Raliana*. The buſineſs followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Lawrence Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that ſervice, who at his coming found the Countrey poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable houſes of the *Salvages* had been laid together like a Town ; and all the *Natives*, who wiſhed well to the *Engliſh*, diſperſed and ſcattered. So that without any other effect of his journey, than the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he firſt diſcovered) he ſet ſail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the *Court*, that a Colony of *Engliſh* ſhould be planted there, and ſome proportionable force ſent over to make good the Action. But the motion upon good advice rejected, firſt in regard of the diſtance of it from the main body of our ſtrength : And ſecondly becauſe the *Spaniards* bordering neer upon it, might eaſily caſt out ſmall Forces and make the enterpriſe diſhonourable to the *Engliſh* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of Honourable Archievements. It was permitted notwithſtanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State : whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh*, and *Harcourt*, before ſpoken of. But they not being able to go thorow with ſo great a buſineſs, let it fall again. And ſo it reſted till the laſt unfortunate Voyage of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licenſed by Commiſſion under the great Seal to ſearch into ſome *Mines* of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Countrey. A deſign followed with great hopes, by the *Undertakers*, moſt of them being Perſons of Honour, and well attended : but ſo unfortunate in the iſſue (the *Spaniards* being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking St. *Thome*, he loſt his own Son, and a great part of his forces ; and after his return (not able with the reſidue to make good his ground againſt the Enemy) was executed on a former *Attaindure*, in the old *Palace* of *Weſtminſter*, Octob. 29. *An.* 1618. Of whom I cannot chooſe but note what is ſaid by *Camden Clarentieux*, in his *Annals* : *Vir erat nunquam ſatis laudato ſtudio, & Regiones remotas detegendi, & Navalem* Angliæ *gloriam promovendi*. And ſo I leave him to his reſt in the bed of peace.

4. *THE ISLANDS* which properly are accompted of as parts of *Guiana*, lie either ſcattered on the ſhore, in the mouths, or bodies of the greateſt Rivers: ſome of them not inhabited, others of no name; and none at all of any reckoning. Only the Iſle of 1. *Trinidado*, and 2. *Tabago*, are of ſome eſteem: which though ſomewhat further off from the ſhores of this Countrey, yet being that of *Trinidado* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* paſs but for one *Præfecture*, or *Provincial Government*, we ſhall deſcribe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDADO*, or *Inſula* S. *Trinitatis*, lyeth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque* over againſt *Paria*, from which ſeparated by a *Frith*, or *Streight*, by *Columbus*, who firſt diſcovered it, called *Boca del Drago*, or the *Dragons mouth*, becauſe of the dangerouſneſs of the paſſage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth Degree of *Northern* Latitude; the moſt Southern Angle of it, called *Punta de Gallo*, as that on the North-Eaſt *Punta de Galera*. The *Frith*, or *Streight*, but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the interpoſition of four, or five little Iſlands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving only two entrances for ſhipping into the Golf, called the *Golf of Paria*. The length hereof 25. leagues, the breadth 18. of a cloudy and unhealthy air, but a fertile ſoil, abundantly well ſtored with ſuch commodities as are of the natural growth of *America*, viz. *Maize*, *Sugar-Canes*, *Cotton-wool*, and the beſt kind of *Tobacco*, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidado*. Here is alſo a ſufficiency of Fruits and Cattel for the uſe of the *Natives*; and here and there ſome veins of Gold, and other Metals: ſuch ſtore of *Pitch*, that inumerable ſhips might be laden with it; but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of ſhips, becauſe it ſoftneth in the Sun. The place in which it groweth, by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Brea*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The people of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with the other *Americans*: diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral *Tribes*, but moſt of them reduced under the power of two petit Princes. But the greateſt part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, forſook their Country, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called S. *Joſephs*, ſituate on the South ſide of the Iſland, on the banks of a little River which the *Natives* call *Carone*, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour, who hath under him beſides this Iſland the Provinces of *Guiana* and *El Dorado* (for ſo go his titles) yet a ſmall Town, conſiſting but of forty houſes, when it was taken, *An.* 1595. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; *Antoneo Berreo* the Governour of it being then made Priſoner, who furniſhed his Taker with many notions (and ſome meerly fabulous) towards the diſcovery of *Guiana*.

This Iſland firſt diſcovered by *Chriſtopher Columbus* in his third voyage, *An.* 1497. was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with ſome reference to the form hereof, ſhooting into the Sea with three *Points* or Promontories. Nothing elſe memorable in the fortunes and ſtory of it, but what was touched upon before.

2. *TOBAGO* lyeth on the North-Eaſt of *La Trinidad*, from which 8 miles diſtant: full of ſafe Harbours for the bigneſs, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well ſtored with Woods; amongſt which ſome *Palmito* Trees, ſome like that of the *Braſil-Wood*, others not elſewhere to be found. Of Fowl and Fiſh ſufficient to maintain it ſelf. Now called *New-Walcheren*, with reference to an Iſland of that name in *Zealand*, by ſome of the *Low-Countrey-men*, who begin to plant there.

OF
PARIA.

PARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Guiana*, and the Iſlands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*; on the Weſt with the *Golf*, or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*; on the North, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean, or *Mare del Noort*; the Countreys lying on the South not diſcovered hitherto.

It took this name from a miſtake of the *Spaniards* (as *Peru*, and *Jucutan* on the like) who asking, as all men do, the names of thoſe new Regions which they diſcovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were anſwered *Paria*, that is to ſay, *high Hills*, or Mountains (for here begins that ledge of Mountains which are thence continued for the ſpace of 3600 miles, to the Streights of *Magellane*) and ſo hath it ever ſince held the name of *Paria*. By ſome writers it is alſo called *Nova Andaluſia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the ſoyl and people being very different, will be more properly conſidered in the ſeveral parts: The whole divided into the Continent and the Iſlands; which with their ſubdiviſions, may be branched into theſe particulars, viz. 1. *Cumana*. 2. *Venezuela*. 3. S. *Margarita*. 4. *Cubagna*, and 5. the leſſer Iſlands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the Eaſt the Golf of *Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the Weſt *Venezuela*; on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it; on the banks whereof ſome Dominican Fryers (who firſt ſet footing in this Country) built themſelves a *Monaſterie*; that name communicated afterwards unto all the reſt of this Tract.

It is extended Eaſt and Weſt to the breadth of 110 leagues; the length thereof from North to South, ſaid to be 400. But there is little of it known; and leſs of it planted by the *Europæans*; except ſome places near the Sea; there being no part of all *America*, the deſcription whereof hath come ſo imperfectly to our hands, as they have of this. For except it be the names of ſome *Bayes*, or *Promontories*, and of two or three moſt noted Rivers, there is not much that doth require our conſideration.

The Country, for ſo much as hath been diſcovered, neither rich nor pleaſant; and conſequently the leſs looked after; covered with ſhrubs, and over-grown with unprofitable bryers and buſhes. Heretofore famed for *Pearl-fiſhing*, all along the Coaſt, from the *Golf* of *Paria* to that of *Venezuela* called therefore *Coſta de las Perlas*; but that gainfull trade hath long ſince failed it. Now only of eſteem for a vein of moſt excellent *Salt*, found near the Promontory of *Araya*, and the Bay of *Cariaco*; gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and yet never diminiſhing. The parts adjoyning take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontories bordering on the Frith, called *Boca del Drago*, the title, or appellation of Cape *Salinus*. Of ſome ſtrange Creatures in this Country, as the beaſt called *Capa*, the ſoles of whoſe feet are like a ſhooe; a kind of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants, or Piſmires; Parrots, and Bats, of more than ordinary greatneſs, I forbear to ſpeak.

Of the people I find nothing ſingular, except it be, that having plenty of good fruits, as of fiſh and fleſh, they uſe themſelves to a far worſe dyet, feeding on *Horſleeches*, *Batts*, *Spiders*, *Graſhoppers*, *Worms*, *Lice*, and ſuch other *Vermin*. In other things they ſeem to have a mixture of all ill-cuſtomes uſed amongſt the *Salvages* of *Aſia*, *Africk*, and *America*; as multitudes of Wives, proſtituting theſe Wives for the firſt nights lodging, to the *Piacos*, or *Prieſts*; and for any after, to their *Gueſts*; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting ſtrange colours on their bodies inſtead of Garments; high minded, treacherous, and revengeful; accuſtomed to the uſe of poyſoned Arrows, which they envenom with Snakes bloud, and other mixtures. In one thing only different from the reſt of their neighbours, which is the fencing of their Grounds, or Orchards with a *Cotten-thred*, as high as ones Girdle; and an opinion which they have, that whoſoever breaketh it, or goes over, or under it, ſhall die immediately. More ſafe in that perſwaſion, than by brazen Walls.

Rivers of moſt note, though of little, 1. *Rio de Canoas*. 2. *Rio de Neveri*. 3. *Cumana de Bardones*. The chief Havens, or Roads for ſhipping, 1. *Moxino*. 2. *S. Foy*. And 3. that called *Commenagot*. The places of moſt conſideration, 1. *Cumana*, a Colony of *Spaniards*, on the bank of the River of that name; but diſtant about two miles from the Sea, on which it hath a ſafe and convenient Harbour; the Town ſo hedged about with Woods, that nothing can be ſeen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governours houſe, ſeated upon the top of a lofty Mountain. 2. S. *Jago*, a ſtrong Fortreſs built by the *Spaniards* for defence of the Salt-Lake, or *Salinas*, in the year 1622. on ſome intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpoſe to take them from him; fortified by the rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of Braſs. 3. S. *Michael de Neveri*, on the River ſo called, a Fort of the *Spaniards*. 4. *Guaniba*, a Village of the *Natives*.

The Country firſt diſcovered in the third Voyage of *Chriſtopher Columbus*; but the poſſeſſion of it was firſt taken by two *Dominicans*; who out of a *Religious* zeal to plant the Goſpel in theſe parts founded themſelves a little *Cell* in the place where the Burrough of *Cumana* was after built, *Anno* 1513. and doubtleſs had ſped very well in their *holy* purpoſe, if ſome covetous *Spaniards* had not treacherouſly ſeized upon one of the *Chiefs* of their *Tribes*, and carried him with his Wife and Train into *Spaniſh* bondage.

For this the poor *Monks* ſuffered death; I may call it *martyrdom*; their death revenged by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, Anno 1520. and he not long after ſlain by the *Salvages*, who alſo at the ſame time deſtroyed two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers, which had been founded in the year 1518. A ſecond force ſent hither under *Gonſalvo de Ocampo*, waſteth a great part of the Country, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs ſome of his people. But that ſtrength being withdrawn, or defeated alſo, *Diego de Caſtellon* is ſent over by the Councel reſident in *Hiſpaniola*, to ſecure the poſſeſſion of the Country; by whom the Caſtle firſt, and after the Burrough of *Cumana*, was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a further conqueſt, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the Caſtle of S. *Michael de Neveri*, by *Hieroms* of *Ortal*, and the diſcovery of ſome of the in-land Provinces, 150. leagues from the Sea-ſide, by *Antonio Sedenno*, An. 1537. of which nothing followed, but the Regiſtring of that tedious march.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Cumana*; on the Weſt, with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, one of the firſt Diſcoverers of it, *An.* 1599. becauſe he found a Burrough of ſome of the *Salvages* ſituate in the middeſt of the waters, to which was no paſſage but by boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt, 130. leagues; in breadth where broadeſt about 80. The ſoyl ſo plentifull of all ſorts both of Fruit and Grain; the Country ſo repleniſhed with all kind of Cattel, and excellent Paſtures to maintain them, that the neighbouring Nations call it by the name of *the Granary*. Such ſtore there goeth from hence of Wheaten-meal, *Biſcott*, Cheeſe, Hogs-fleſh, Ox-hides, and Cloath of Cotton ready made, as very well deſerves that title. Here is alſo very great plenty of Fiſh, Wilde beaſts for hunting, *Mines* of Gold and other Metals; beſides an infinite deal of *Sarzaparilla* ſent to *Europe* yearly.

The people of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with thoſe of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that *Character*. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and ſwim, as well as the men; to till the Land, and look to the buſineſs of the houſe, whileſt the men hunt, or fiſh, to bring in proviſion. They count it a great part of beauty, to have very thick thighs; which they effect, by binding their legs hard below the knee, from their very Child-hood. Shameleſs enough till married, after more reſerved; though rather for fear of a Divorce, than for love of modeſty.

Rivers of note, I meet with none; inſtead of which many convenient Harbours and capacious Bayes. The chief, that called *Golfo triſte*, from ſome ſhip-wracks, or the like miſfortune hapning to the Namer of it. 2. The Bay of *Coro*, or *Venezuela*, large and ſpacious, which by a *Frith*, or Streight of half a league over, receiveth the tribute of 3. The great Lake called the *Lake* of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lugo de Nueſtra Sennora*, or our *Ladies Lake*, in compaſs about 80. leagues; on the banks whereof dwell many Nations of the *Salvages*, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain commerce with one another.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Maracapana*, the furtheſt Port upon the Eaſt, and one of the beſt on all this Coaſt; in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagna* had once a Garriſon, under colour of defending the Country againſt the *Salvages*, but in plain truth to uſe it for an opportunity to ſeize upon their perſons, and carry them away for *Slaves*. Thoſe parts hereby unpeopled, or but meanly populous. 2. *Venezuela*, the moſt Weſtern Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro*, ſituate in the *Latitude* of 11. Degrees: built on the Sea, where it hath an Haven on each ſide; the one capacious, but not ſafe; the other ſafe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a ſweet and healthy air, and neighboured by the richeſt ſoyl of all the Country, it hath been long the ordinary ſeat of the *Governour*, and the See of a *Biſhop* (Suffragan to the Arch-biſhop of *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*) Once ſuddenly ſurprized by the *Engliſh*, An. 1595. and burnt to aſhes, but as ſuddenly repaired again. 3. *Caravalleda*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de Caravalada*, 80. leagues from *Coro* towards the Eaſt, ſeated upon the Sea near an unſafe Haven, and defended from aſſault by the Caſtle of *Caracas*, ſo called from the name of the *Tribe* in which it ſtandeth. Near unto which the Hills ariſe to ſo great an height, that they ſeem to equal the *Pike* of *Tenariff* ſo much talked of. 4. S. *Jago de Leon*, in the ſame tribe of the *Caracas*, took by the *Engliſh* the ſame year. 5. *Nova Valentia*, 25. leagues from S. *Jago de Leon*, and from *Coro* 60. 6. *New Xeres*, lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *New Valentia*. 7. *Nova Segovia*, one league only from *New Xeres*; ſituate on the banks of *Baraquicemiti*, the moſt noted River of this tract. 8. *Tucuyo*, in the Valley ſo called; not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich *Sugar-Canes*, for which ſome *Sugar-works*, or *Ingenios* are here lately built. 9. *Touxillo*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de la Paz*, eighteen leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a *Factory* for the ſale of their wares. 10. *Laguna*, on the bottom of the *Lake* it ſelf; not elſe obſervable but for the multitude of *Tygers* which do haunt about it.

The Country diſcovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alfonſo de Oreda*, as before is ſaid, was firſt pretended to for Neighbourhoods-ſake, by the *Spaniards* planted in *Cubagna*. Afterwards *John de Anpuez*, by order from the Council reſident at *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*, was employed in the Diſcovery of it, *Anno* 1527. But *Charles* the fifth having taken up great ſums of money of the *Velſeri* a wealthy Family of *Augſpurg*, pawned this Country to them: by whom *Ambroſius Alfinger* was ſent with 400. foot and 80. horſe, to take poſſeſſion. But he and his Succeſſors in that employment, not minding ſo much the Conqueſt as the ſpoyl of the Country, the Council of *Domingo* undertook the buſineſs once again, and in the year 1545. ſent over one *John de Caravayal*, who treading in the ſteps of the *Germans*, or rather out-going them in all ſorts of Rapine, was outed on a ſecond order by one *John Perez de Tolaſa*, by whom the Province was reduced into ſome good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africk*, began to mutiny; but their Deſign diſcovered, and themſelves all ſlain. Peace and contentment following after all theſe troubles, the Country was in little time ſo thorowly planted, and the Natives ſo incouraged in their ſeveral Tribes, that notwithſtanding the deſtructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*, here were reckoned not long ſince above 100000. of the *Salvages*, not numbring thoſe above fifty or under eighteen years of *Age*; who by an Order of the Councel of *Spain* for theſe parts of *America*, are exempt from *Taxes*.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Iland ſituate over againſt the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*; from the Main-land whereof it is diſtant about ſeven Leagues. So called from the abundance of *Pearls* which the *Spaniards* found at the firſt Diſcovery, which the *Latiniſts* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it ſignifie no other than the Vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were alſo ſtore of thoſe of the greater eſtimate, ſuch as the *Romans* by the figure of *Antiphraſis* called *Uniones*, becauſe they always grew in couples. *Nulli duo reperiuntur indiſcreti*, ſaith *Pliny*; *unde nomen* Unionum *ſcilicet* Romanæ *impoſuere deliciæ*.

The Iſle affirmed to be 16. Leagues in length, and ſix in breadth; ſituate under the 11. Degree of *Northern* Latitude. Well ſtored with *Pearls* upon the Shores, when firſt diſcovered; but even then when moſt plentifully ſtored with that Commodity, ſhe had not water of her own to quench her thirſt, compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwiſe plentifull enough both of *Maize*, and Fruits. The People obſequiouſly ſervile to their Lords, the *Spaniards*; ſo long accuſtomed unto bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Monpater*, in the Eaſt corner of the Iland, a Fort of the *Spaniards*, built for ſecuring their rich Trade of *Pearl-fiſhing*, and to defend their ſhips which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the houſe of the Governour. 2. *El valle de Santa Luzia*, two Leagues from the Sea, a *Spaniſh* Colony. 3. *Makanao*, the chief Village of the *Natives*.

This Iland firſt diſcovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, Anno 1498. grew ſuddenly into great eſteem, by reaſon of the rich *Pearl-fiſhing*, which they found on the ſhores thereof. And in regard the *Natives* were ſo ready to betray their Treaſures (of which themſelves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the *Spaniards*, and obtained more liberties from the King, than the reſt of the *Salvages*. Inſomuch that the *Spaniard* either could not or would not compell them to dive into the Sea for *Pearl*; but bought *Negro* ſlaves from *Guinea*, and the Coaſts of *Africk*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive unto the bottom of the Sea, many times ſeven or eight Fathom deep, to bring up the *ſhels*, in which that Treaſure was included: where many of them were drowned, and ſome maimed with *Sharks*, and other Fiſhes. But that rich Trade is much diminiſhed of late, if it fail not quite. The cauſe thereof to be imputed to the unſatiable avarice of the *Spaniards*, ſo greedy upon *Pearl*, that they deſtroyed the very *Seed*, and making gain of whatſoever they could meet with, for a little preſent profit loſt the hopes of the future. The Iland ſince leſs famous, and not much frequented. Viſited to its coſt in the year 1601. by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, who received here 500. l. in Pearls for the ranſom of Priſoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coaſt of *Angola*, laden with 370. *Negroes*, to be ſold for *Slaves*.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Iland lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the firſt diſtant but one League, from the other ſix; it ſelf in compaſs about three. Rich on the ſhores, by the abundance of *Pearls* which were found about them, but very beggerly on the Land. Deſtitute both of graſs and water, by conſequence of Cattel alſo, except only *Conies*, and but few of thoſe. So that like many a Gallant who ſpend all upon the *back*, and nothing on the *belly*, ſhe had her out-ſide laced with *Pearls*, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their bread and water brought them out of other Countries; and their Fruits too, if they deſired to have any; here being very few Trees, and thoſe moſt of *Guayacan*. But ſo abundant in this Treaſure, that the Kings Fifths for many years amounted to 15000. *Ducats* yearly out of this poor Iland.

In this reſpect it was preſently reſorted to, and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony which they called *New Cadiz*: and grew in ſhort time unto ſo great power, that they made themſelves Maſters of the Port of *Maracapana Venezuela*, one of the beſt upon thoſe Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the *Salvages* of *Cumana* had deſtroyed the Convent of *Franciſcans* on the oppoſite Shore, they cowardly forſook the Iland, and fled to *Hiſpaniola*. Sent back again by the *Councel* there, under the conduct of *James de Caſtellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautifull and ſtrong than ever formerly. In great eſteem as long as the *Pearl-fiſhing* did continue; now, with that decayed. Yet ſtill the Iland doth deſerve ſome conſideration, for a Fountain on the Eaſt part of it near unto the Sea: continuing, though the *Pearls* be gone; which yieldeth a *Bituminous* ſubſtance like oyl, *Medicinable* for diſeaſes, and is found two or three Leagues off, floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of Mankind, and more eaſily found, than the *Pearls* which ſunk unto the bottom, and maintained our pride.

Four miles from hence, but appendent to it, lieth a little Iſland called *Coche*, three miles in compaſs, but ſo abundantly ſtored with *Pearls*, that it hath been worth in that one commodity for ſome moneths together, above a thouſand pounds a moneth of our *Engliſh* money. Firſt peopled, upon that occaſion, *An.* 1529. but the occaſion failing, the *Plantation* ended, the Iſle being now unpeopled, as not worth the looking after.

5. *THE LESSER ISLANDS* of this *Præfecture* or *Provincial* Government, lie all along upon the Coaſt of *Venezuela*, from Eaſt to Weſt; the principal of which, 1. *Tortuga*, 12. or 14. miles on the Weſt of *Margarita*: four miles in length, hardly one in breadth; but yielding ſuch good ſtore of Salt, that three or four ſhips are laded with it every year. Well furniſhed with Goats and *Guayacan*; but not elſe conſiderable: except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the uſe of Mariners. 2. *Catelina*, by the *Engliſh* called the Iſle of *Providence*, as the former is by the name of *Aſſociation*; both which being void of all inhabitants and tame beaſts, were poſſeſſed by them about the year 1619. at ſuch time as there was often War between *England* and *Spain*; After which, not being claimed by the *Spaniards* in making up the peace enſuing, they were granted by King *Charls* by his Letters Patents under the great Seal of *England*, to certain Noble men and Gentlemen, and their Succeſſors, who for the ſpace of 20. years, or there abouts, have enjoyed them quietly; the Ilands being planted by them with their ſeveral Colonies, and all things neceſſary to maintain and enrich the ſame. 3. *Bonaire*, oppoſite to the Bay of *Golfo triſte*, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees; well furniſhed with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattel brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with ſome *Salvages* out of *Hiſpaniola*, whom the Spaniards Chriſtned and ſent thither: ſome Spaniards with their Government intermixt amongſt them. The Iland 6. miles in compaſs; not fruitfull naturally but in trees, which are great and numerous. 4. *Curacaos*, nine miles on the Weſt of *Bonaire*; and as many in compaſs. Of a more fertile ſoil by far, and of very rich Paſtures: the People given to grazing, and make good ſtore of Cheeſe, tranſported thence to other places; the Iland having towards the North, a convenient Harbour. 5. *Aruba*, on the North-eaſt of *Curacaos*, from which nine miles diſtant, in compaſs not above five miles, for the moſt part level; One hill it hath (amongſt ſome others) faſhioned like a *Sugar-loaf*. Inhabited by few *Salvages*, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Ilands on this Coaſt, as the *Toſtigos*, lying Eaſt-ward of 1. *Margarita*. 2. *Blanca*. 3. *Orchilla*, 4. *Rocca*, and 5. the Iſle *des Aves*, or of Birds, interpoſed betwixt *Tortuga* and *Bonaire*; ſome of them rather Rocks than Ilands: few ſtored with any living creatures for the uſe of men; and none of them at all with men to manure and dreſs them, I paſs over here: and ſo proceed from theſe Ilands of the Province of *Paria*, to thoſe which are ſubordinate to the Councel of S. *Domingo*, and make a Province of themſelves. But firſt we muſt go back, and bring up ſome of the Ilands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And ſo much of PERUANA.

OF THE AMERICAN ILANDS: And firſt of thoſe which are in MARE DEL ZUR.

THe *AMERICAN ILANDS*, ſcattered up and down the ſhores of this *New World*, are commonly divided into thoſe of *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacifique* Ocean; and thoſe of the *Atlantick*, or *Mare del Noort*. The firſt ſo called by *Magellanus*, the firſt Diſcoverer: who paſſing thorow thoſe troubleſome and tempeſtuous Streights which now bear this name, found ſuch a change upon his comming into the Main, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur*, (*quod à tranquillitate vocavit Mare del Sur*, ſaith the Author of the *Atlas Minor*) from the calm and peaceable temper of it. By the Latines called *Mare Pacificum*, in the ſame regard. Called alſo the *Southern* Ocean, becauſe of its ſituation on the South ſide of *America*, in reference to ſome part of the *Golf* of *Mexico*, and the Streights of *Anian*. Not known unto the *Spaniards*, till diſcovered by *Nonnius Vaſques de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Caciques* or pety Kings of the Country about *Nombre di Dios*; Who ſeeing the Spaniards ſo greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirſt ſhould be ſatisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the oppoſite ſhore, this *Balboa* being the chief man in that Adventure: who diſcovering further on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the reſt that followed to the *golden treaſures of Peru*: Executed notwithſtanding this good ſervice by *Don Pedro de Avila*, within ſhort time after. But the more full diſcovery of it is to be aſcribed unto *Magellanus* and ſome later Adventurers, though the Spaniards got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as the *Southern* ſea was unknown to any but themſelves, they conveyed their Gold and treaſures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loſs or charge, and thought their Ports upon that ſhore to be unacceſſible. But after the way unto this Sea was found out by *Magelanus*, *Drake*. *Cavendiſh*, and the reſt of our *Engliſh* Adventurers did ſo ſcoure theſe Coaſts, that they left them neither Port nor ſhip, which they did not ranſack; as hath been evidenced before in ſome particulars.

As for the Ilands of this Sea, they lie moſt of them ſo near the ſhores, as if placed there by Nature to ſerve as *Out-works* to defend the *Continent*. Many in tale, but few of conſideration; and of thoſe few ſome of the chief have been deſcribed already in their proper places, as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The reſidue which lie too far off to come under ſuch conſideration, muſt be mentioned here; and thoſe reduced to theſe two heads, 1. *Los Ladrones*, and 2. the Ilands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Ilands, ſituate betwixt the main Land of *America* and the *Philippine* Ilands, in the Longitude of 185. and the 4. Degree of *Northern* Latitude. So called by *Magellanus* who firſt diſcovered them becauſe of the *theiviſhneſs* of the Inhabitants, (*Inſulæ Latronum* is their name in Latin) who had ſtoln his *cock-boat*, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue ſtill both their name and nature. Found ſuch by *Cavendiſh* and *Noort* in their ſeveral Voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying *Iron*, (a Commodity which they highly prize) but either cloſely or openly ſtealing whatſoever they met with. The people tall of ſtature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extremely active, and good *Divers*, continuing a long time under the water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; in ſo much as the *Hollanders* then with *Noort*, to make trial of it, caſt five pieces of *Iron* into the Sea, all fetched out by one of them. The *Women* as good at it as the men. Both ſexes given to filthy and promiſcuous luſts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their incontinency, the *Pox* having eaten up both their Lips and their Noſes.

Their Religion is worſhipping the *Devil*, whoſe Images they have in wood on the head of their Boats; the Chapel and the Saints fit for ſuch devotions. But for the nature of theſe Iſlands, and what ſubjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of *Spain*, I am yet to ſeek. But like enough they yield as little as ſome others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authors to be parts of *America*.

2. The Ilands of *John Fernandes*, are two in nnmber: ſo called from *John Fernandes* the firſt Diſcoverer, *An.* 1574. each of them five or ſix miles in compaſs, and about 300. miles diſtant from the ſhores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33. Degree of *Southern* Latitude; rocky and barren, but well wooded, and theſe woods repleniſhed with Goats, but their fleſh not ſo ſavory as in other places. Some ſtore of *Sanders* there is in them, and of Palms no ſcarcity. Plenty of Fiſh upon the ſhores, for which cauſe viſited ſometimes by the Spaniards lying in *Peru*: and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for ſhipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they paſs this way. None elſe of note in all this Sea, but ſuch as lie upon the ſhores of their ſeveral Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore paſſing thorow the *Streights*, and comming up unto the Ilands of *Paria*, where before we left; we will now look on thoſe of *Mare del Noort*, or that part of the *Atlantick* which waſheth the ſhores of this *New world*, (the reaſon of which names we have ſeen before) ſub-

ordinate to the Counſel or Government of S. *Domingo*, viz. 1. the *Caribes*. 2. *Porto Rico*. 3. *Hiſpaniola*. 4. *Cuba*, and 5. *Jamaica*. The reſt already ſpoken of in their proper places.

1. *THE CARIBES.*

THe *CARIBES* or *Canibal Ilands* are in number many; 27. of them known by their proper names; the reſt, of leſs note (though ſome of theſe of little enough) not yet ſo diſtinguiſhed. Called thus in general, becauſe inhabited by *Canibals* and Man-eating people (at their firſt Diſcovery) as the word *Caribes* doth import. They lie extended like a Bow from the coaſt of *Paria* unto the Iſle of *Porto Rico*: of different temper, as muſt needs be in ſuch variety; and therefore not within the compaſs of a general *Character*. Some of the principal we ſhall conſider more diſtinctly; and for the reſt it will be trouble enough to name them, or elſe paſs them by.

1. *GRANADA*, the neareſt of this crew to the Main-land of *Cumana*, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 20. degrees and 15. Minutes; in form like a *Creſcent* or half Moon, the two horns not a mile a ſunder, the whole length but ſix. Shaded all over with thick Woods, but notwithſtanding of a rich and fruitfull ſoil. A Haven in it of good uſe, but no Town of note. The people of the ſame ill condition with the other *Salvages*, but more wit to hide it; moſt miſchievouſly intended when they ſeem moſt kind; and then the more to be avoyded.

2. S. *VINCENT*, 18. miles on the North of *Granada*, is of ſo bleſſed a ſoil, that it brings forth abundance of *Sugar-Canes* without charge to the Husbandman. Watered with many pleaſant Rivers, and full of ſafe and convenient *Bayes* for the uſe of Mariners. In figure *Circular*, the *Diameter* being ſix miles over; the *Circle* by conſequence eighteen. The people but of mean ſtature, ſlothfull, and ſtudious only for their Belly: their love to which makes them to adventure in their ſmall Boats, hewn out of the body of a Tree, to paſs into the *Continent*, and return again, without help of the Compaſs; though diſtant from it at the neareſt, above 30. miles.

3. *BARBADOS* on the North-eaſt of S. *Vincent*, in the *Latitude* of 13. Degrees, and 20. Minutes. Of an *Oval* form, 17. or 18. miles in compaſs. The ſoil in ſhew like that of *England*, but far more fruitfull: on the Eaſt-ſide thruſting out it ſelf with Points and Angles, which yield ſome *Bayes*, but full of *Quick-ſands*, and unſafe for ſhipping; on the South furniſhed with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very well provided of for fruits or Cattel, till made a Colony of the *Engliſh*; who have brought thither from their own Country, Swine and Kine; *Orenges*, and the like from others. The chief Commodity made hitherto of this Plantation, comes by the planting of *Tobacco*; and by a kind of coarſe Sugar called *Barbadoes Sugar*, which muſt be quickly ſpent, or will melt to nothing. Were they in ſtock, and not forced to make a quick return of their Commodities, they might make here as good Sugars as in other places. Yet this Plantation ſaid to be worth all the reſt which are made by the *Engliſh*; who (as I take it) are the ſole Colony in it. The Iland but at the courteſie of the *Spaniard*; without whoſe leave and liking not of force to hold it.

4. *MATININO* on the North-weſt of the *Barbados*, by the Salvages called *Madaninam*, with little difference. Every where ſwelled with Hills, of which three moſt eminent for height: one of them, which way ſoever a man looks upon it, carrying the reſemblance of an *Hat*: Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian, with none but *Women*: afterwards, with a more fierce and barbarous people than the reſt of theſe Ilands: but neither Men or Women to be ſeen of late: whether deſtroyed, or removed further from the ſhores for fear of their deſtruction, is a thing uncertain.

5. *DOMINICA*, ſeated on the North of *Matinino*, twelve Leagues in length; exceeding fruitfull of *Tobacco*, which they ſell unto the *Europæans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other Inſtruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of *Hot-water*, and a commodious Haven at the Weſt-ſide of it, into which falleth a River 20. paces broad. The people as barbarous as ever *Canibals* or *Man-eaters* to this very day: At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, and to no man truſty, but where they cannot hurt or dare not. Both ſexes wear their hair long, and colour their bodies over with *Oaker*. Yet bloody and barbarous though they be, they are ruled by a King of their own, diſtinguiſhed from the reſt in his dreſs or habit, whom they moſt readily obey.

6. *DESSEADA*, or the Land of *Deſire*, on the North-eaſt of *Dominica*, Diſcovered by *Columbus* in his ſecond Voyage; naked of Trees, and at the firſt ſight afar off, not unlike a *Galley*. Of great uſe to the Spaniards, who alwaies take it in their way from the *Canaries* to the parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The like uſe do they make of 7. The Iſle of *GUADALUPE*, *parallel* to this, but directly Weſtward: at which the Fleets which come from *Spain* uſe to take freſh water, and there diſperſe themſelves to their ſeveral Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in moſt parts of the Sea adjoyning. North-eaſt from hence lieth

8. S. *Maria del Antigna*, commonly called *ANTIGNA* only, and by ſome miſtakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven Leagues in length, and as much in breadth; difficult of acceſs, and deſtitute of freſh water, but well repleniſhed of Woods, and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colony of the Engliſh, who do ſtill poſſeſs it.

9. S. *CHRISTOPHER*, on the North-weſt of *Guadalupe*, in the *Latitude* of 17. Degrees and 20. Minutes. The length ſix miles, the breadth in many places four, and in ſome but two: much ſwelled with hils, and towards the Eaſt provided of ſeveral *Salt wiches*. The *French* and *Engliſh* had ſometimes in it ſeveral Colonies: by whom the *Natives* were deſtroyed, or otherwiſe compelled to forſake their dwellings; convict, as was pretended, of ſome manifeſt treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the ſole poſſeſſion; ejected by *Frederick de Toledo*, as he paſſed this way with his Navy; though ſuffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable than dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief employment and commodity lies in their *Tobacco*, by ſome much commended. Joyning hereto, or but a League from it at the moſt, is

10. The Iſle of *NIEVES*, affirmed to be five leagues in compaſs; well wooded, and as pleaſantly watered; inſomuch as the Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Dominica* uſed to come hither for their pleaſures, but for hunting chiefly. Now famed for ſome *Bathes* or *Hot-waters*, found out by the *Engliſh*, who in the year 1528. placed a Colony in it. But whether ſubſiſting of it ſelf, or a part of their Plantation in S. *Chriſtophers*, I am yet to learn.

11. *SANCTA CRUX*, by the inhabitants called *Ayay*, on the North-weſt of S. *Chriſtophers*, and the South-eaſt of *Porto Rico*, from which laſt diſtant 15. leagues. Woody and mountainous; not well provided of freſh waters; but on the Weſt-ſide furniſhed with a ſafe and commodious Road, under the covert of the mountains. Amongſt their fruits ſome that reſemble a *green Apple*; which taſted, ſo inflames the tongue, that for 24. hours it ſwelleth in ſo great extremity, as makes it altogether uſeleſs, but after that by little and little it abates again. The like hapneth alſo to the face, if waſhed before Sun-riſing with their *Fen-waters*, which are very frequent in this Iland; after the riſing of the ſun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colony of the *Engliſh* alſo, but of later ſtanding than thoſe of S. *Chriſtophers* and *Barbados*.

Some of the principal of the reſt, 1. *Anguilla*, 2. *Barbada*, 3. S. *Bartholmews*, 4. S. *Lucies*, 5. S. *Martins*, 6. *Montferrat*, 7. *Rotunda*, 8. *Saba*, 9. *Virgo Gorda*, and 10. *Sumbrero*; of which we have little but the names: the reſt, though known by ſeveral names, are not worth the naming. Only we are to add concerning the whole Nation of *Caribes*, once here inhabiting, that they did uſually hunt for Men, as Men for Beaſts, roving as far as *Porto Rico* to ſeek after their prey; and what they caught, was ſure to *go to the pot*, in the worſt ſenſe too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Iſle of *Guadalupe*, found 30. Captive Children which were reſerved to be eaten, and in their houſes divers veſſels filled with *Mans fleſh*, and ſome upon the *ſpit* ready to be roaſted. Nor had they laid aſide this diet, till after the year 1564. but how long I know not: For at that time, a *Spaniſh* ſhip coming to water at the Iſle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Ilands have been of late times well cleared of thoſe Monſters; ſome of them brought unto better order, but the moſt deſtroyed as the common Enemies of mankind; the Ilands where they dwelt being either totally deſerted, or taken up by the *Europaans* and their ſeveral Colonies.

2. *PORTO RICO*, And 3. *MONICO*.

PORTO RICO lyeth on the North-weſt of *Sancta Crux*, from which diſtant about 15. Leagues and near upon as many from *Hiſpaniola*, 136. Leagues from the main Land of *Paria*, and not much leſs from the Cape of *Coquibocco* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Caſtella Aurea*. It took this name from the chief Town and Haven of it; but was called by *Columbus* at the firſt diſcovery, S. *Johannis Inſula*, or the Iſle of S. *Johns*; by the Natives *Boriguen*.

It is ſituate under the 18. and 19. Degrees of Northern *Latitude*; in form *quadrangular*, but of a greater length than breadth, ſuch as the *Geometricians* call *oblongum*: The length thereof being 30. Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Ayr hereof very pleaſant and temperate, not ſcorched with furious heats in Summer, nor made offenſive by the fall of continual rains; expoſed ſometimes (chiefly in *Auguſt*, and *September*) to the troubleſomneſs of ſudden tempeſts, called *Hericanos*. The ſoyl indifferently fruitfull, though ſomewhat Mountainous: here being (beſides other Hills of inferiour note) a ridge of high Hills which run croſs the Country from the one end unto the other. Their chief commodities *Sugar-canes*, *Ginger*, *Caſſia*, and great ſtore of Hides: the *Europaan* Cattel having ſo abundantly increaſed, that they kill thouſands for their skins, leaving the fleſh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some *Mines* here were of Gold and Silver, but conſumed long ſince. And ſo are all the *Natives* alſo; of whom, in that reſpect, impertinent to give any Character.

Chief Rivers of the Iſland, 1. *Cairobon*, 2. *Boyaman*: of divers fountains, and of ſeveral and divided courſes. 3. *Luyſa*, and 4. *Toa*, two Rivers growing out of one. The Spring of that one in the Mountains of *Guayamo*, whence running North-wards in one Chanel 16. Leagues together, doth afterwards divide it ſelf into thoſe two ſtreams. 5. *Guiano*. 6. *Arezibo*. 7. *Guadiabo*; of leſſer note, but all of them, as well as all the reſt before, concluding in ſome ſafe and capacious *Haven*.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Porto Rico* the chief town, built in a little Iland, on the North-ſide of the greater, but joyned unto it with huge piles, and vaſt expences, by the command of *Philip* the firſt, *An*. 1514. Well built, with large ſtreets, and convenient houſes, according to the model of the Cities of *Spain*; and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*; the Biſhop one of the *Suffragans* of the Archbiſhop of S. *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*. The town unwalled, but fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles: the one of which ſecures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loſs of 40. or 50. men, by

Sir *Francis Drake*, An. 1595. but taken two years after by *George* Earl of *Cumberland*, who had a purpoſe to have peopled it with an *Engliſh* Colony. Diſcouraged from it by the death of 400. of his men, by change of Ayr, and ſome intemperance of Diet, he ſet ſayl for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Iland, but the diſfurniſhing it of 70. piece of Ordnance, and ſome part of their treaſure, which he brought home with him. 2. S. *Germans*, in the Weſtern part of the Iland, but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Iland, now both unfortified, and ſmall. 3. *Arezibo*, on the River ſo called. 4. *Luyſa*, the moſt noted Port of the Eaſtern parts, ſituate on the mouth of the River ſo named.

Eaſt-ward hereof betwixt it and *Hiſpaniola*, lies the Iland of *Mona*, (might not this think we be ſo called by *Madoc ap Owen Guinedth*, of whom before?) three leagues in compaſs; rocky and of a brackiſh earth; but fit for the production of Limons, Orenges, and ſuch kind of fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off, but more towards the Weſt, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *Engliſh* call it, where they found ſuch infinite ſtore of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as hail, and made them almoſt deaf with the very noiſe; their Eggs ſo thick upon the ground, that they loaded two boats with them in three hours, and could hardly paſs forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Iſle of S. *Johns*, is was firſt touched upon by *Columbus* in his ſecond voyage, *An.* 1493. but firſt inhabited by *John Ponce of Leon*, An. 1510. who being curteouſly entertained by *Aiguabana*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colony of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Iſland, which he called *Caparra*. The Colony ten years after that removed to *Guanica*, and from thence to S. *Germans*: carrying with it the repute of the chief Town of all the Iland, upon every remove, till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it ſince hath fixed. The Iland very populous for the bigneſs of it, when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives long ago conſumed by ſeveral *Butcheries*; and as ſome write, not above 1500. *Spaniards* in all the Country. What elſe concerns the ſtory of it, we have ſeen before.

HISPANIOLA.

HISPANIOLA, lyeth on the Weſt of *Porto Rico*; the diſtance we have ſeen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haitia*, and by ſome *Quiſqueia*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hiſpaniola*, or *little Spain*; and of late times beginneth to be called S. *Domingo*, from the chief Town of it.

The form thereof *Triangular*, extended in a ſharp *Angle*, called *Cabo del Enganno*, towards *Porto Rico*: the Weſtern end faſhioned like a large Bay, or *Semicircle*; the Northern point of which is named S. *Nicholas*; the Southern, *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150. Leagues, the breadth in ſome places 60. in ſome but 30. thence growing leſs and leſs till it come unto the Eaſtern Angle; the whole compaſs eſtimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18. and 20. Degrees of Northern *Latitude*. Of an Air much infeſted with Morning-heats, but cooler in the Afternoon by the conſtant blowing of a Sea-gale, which they there call *Viraſon*.

The Country for the moſt part beautifull and flouriſhing; the Trees alwayes in their *Summer-livery*, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual Spring. In many places ſwelled with high craggy Mountains, whence the name of *Hayty*, that word ſo ſignifying in the natural language of the *Natives*. Of ſuch an excellent herbage, that the Cattel brought hither out of *Spain* have increaſed almoſt beyond *Arithmetick*; grown wilde for want of *proper Owners*; and hunted unto death like the Stags of the foreſt, though only to rob them of their skins. The ſoil ſo fertile, that in the ſpace of ſixteen dayes Herbs and Roots will grow ripe, and be fit to be eaten. So plentifully ſtored with *Ginger*, and *Sugar-canes*, that in the year 1587. there were ſhipped hence 27500. pound weight of Ginger, and 900. Cheſts of refined Sugar; an evident argument of the riches and fertility of it. A further proof hereof may be, the rich *Mines* of Gold, in which they uſed to find Gold without mixture of droſs or other metals. 2. The great increaſe of Sugar, one Cane here filling twenty, ſometimes thirty meaſures. 3. The wonderfull yield of Corn, amounting in ſome places to an hundred fold. But the *Mines* were long ago exhauſted, inſomuch as the Inhabitants are fain to uſe braſs-money: but inſtead of thoſe of Gold, they have found out others of Braſs and Iron, and ſome few of *Silver*; but not much ſearched into of late for want of Work-men.

The reaſon of that want to be aſcribed unto the Covetouſneſs and Cruelty of the *Spaniſh* Nation: who out of an unſatiable thirſt for Gold, conſumed the people in their *Mines*; and out of the like thirſt for Blood, killed ſo many of them, that in few years they deſtroyed three *Millions* of the Natives. And it is probably ſuppoſed, that had not *Charls* the 5. reſtrained them by a *Penal Edict* from compelling the *Natives* againſt their wils to thoſe works of ſervitude, there had not been one *Native* left in all this Iſland, nor in any other part of their *Plantation*. Such as are left, are ſaid to be of low ſtature, of black hair, and a complexion ſomewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in manners, habit, or Religion from the *Spaniards* there.

Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Ozama*, on whoſe Banks ſtands *Domingo*, the chief Town of that Iſland, capable of the greateſt ſhips to the very Wharf. 2. *Nigua*, which paſſing thorow rich Paſtnres, or making the Paſtures rich, by its ſecret vertue, runneth towards the Weſt, as do alſo, 3. *Yaquimo*. 4. *Nizao*, and 5. *Neyba*. 6. *Hayna*, of a contrary courſe to the other three. 7. *Yaqui*, or *Jacho*, which falleth into the Northern Seas. 8. *Nicayagu*. 9. *Cocitemico*. 10. *Xanique*. Theſe three laſt famous heretofore for their *Sands of Gold*. Some ſpeak of 30000. Brooks and Rivers, which are found in this Country; two parts of which vaſt number had their *Golden Sands*. A thing ſo far beyond the charity of the ſtrongeſt Faith, (though reported by a grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what Interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-courſe, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided, when the *Spaniards* firſt came amongſt them, into ſeveral Provinces or Kingdoms, as 1. *Higuey.* 2. *Jacuaguia.* 3. *Samana,* in the Eaſtern parts. 4. *Yaquimo.* 5. *Boaruco*, and 6. *Xaragua*, towards the South. 7. *Guahabu*, and 8. *Cabaya*, in the Weſt: and in the North, 9. *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold; 10. *Marien*, the Landing place of *Columbsn*; and 11. *Maguana*, in the center of the Iland, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Conabo*, of greateſt power of any of thoſe petit Roytelets. Another diviſion of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all riſing from one Mountain in the midſt of the Iſland, into four Diviſions: the River *Jache* running towards the North; 2. *Nubiba* haſtning to the South; 3. *Yuna*, or *Junna* towards the Eaſt; and 4. *Hatibonico* to the Weſt. But theſe diviſions being long ſince grown out of uſe, we will ſurvey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are, 1. S. *Domingo*, firſt built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, Anno 1484. on the Eaſt bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1502.) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governour of the Iland, to the oppoſite ſhore. Situate in a pleaſant Country, amongſt wealthy Paſtures, and neighboured with a ſafe and capacious *Haven*: the houſes elegantly built, moſt of them of ſtone, and the whole well walled, beſide a Caſtle at the Weſt end of the Peer to defend the Haven: enriched by the reſidence of the Governour, the *Courts* of Juſtice, the See of an *Archbiſhop*, (and beſides many Convents and Religious honſes) an *Hoſpital* endowed with 20000. *Ducats* of yearly Rent. Eſteemed of greateſt Trade and concourſe of Merchants till the taking of *Mexico*, and the Diſcovery of *Peru*; ſince that time ſenſibly decaying; and now reduced unto the number of 600. Families of *Spaniards*; the greateſt part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negroes*, *Mulatos*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586. took it by force, and held it for the ſpace of a moneth, burning the greateſt part of the houſes, and ſuffering the reſt to be redeemed at a certain price. 2. S. *Salvador*, 28. Leagues to the Eaſt of *Domingo*. 3. *Jaguana*, called alſo *Sancta Mare del Porto*, from a ſafe and beautifull Haven adjoyning to it; ſituate in the Weſt part of the Iland, of no great bigneſs, conſiſting of no more then 150. houſes, when it was at the greateſt; but made much leſs by Captain *Newport*, who in the year 1591. burnt it to the ground. 4. *Cotuy*, in the North of the Iſland, oppoſite to S. *Domingo*, from which diſtant almoſt 60. Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great eſteem for its *Mines* of Gold. 5. *Conception de la Vega*, the foundation of *Chriſtopher Columbus*; for whoſe ſake afterwards adorned with a See *Epiſcopal*. 6. *Puerto de la Plata*, 40. Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern ſhore; where built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando*, before mentioned, by whom alſo fortified: the ſecond Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Iland. 7. *Azua*, now called *Compoſtella*, a noted Haven, and reſorted to for *Sugars*, which it yields abundantly.

This Iland was firſt diſcovered by *Columbus*, (for I believe not that it was any of the *fortunate Ilands* which we read of in the life of *Sertorius*) in the firſt voyage which he made: conducted hither by ſome of the Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Cuba*. Landing, and gaining the good will of the *Salvages*, by gentle uſage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or *Caciques* to build a Fortreſs in his Country, which he called *Navidad*, or *Natividad*, leaving in it 36. *Spaniards* to keep poſſeſſion: whom he found both maſtered and murdered at his coming back. Being now better furniſhed for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Iſabella*, (in honour of *Iſabella* Queen of *Caſtile*) near the *Mines* of *Cibao*; which afterwards was deſerted alſo, and the Colony removed unto S. *Domingo*: the *Spaniards* ſending one Colony after another, till at laſt their number was increaſed unto 14000. beſides women and children. But having rooted out the *Natives* by their infinite *cruelties*, and exhauſted the riches of the Country with as infinite *covetouſneſs*, they betook themſelves to freſher *Quarters*, abandoning the Iland to devour the *Continent*. Once had the Ilanders rebelled, and fortified themſelves in the Province of *Baoruco*; a place ſo naturally ſtrong, that there was little need of the helps of Art. Not brought to leave that *faſtneſs* but on ſuch conditions as made the *Spaniards* leſs inſolent, and themſelves leſs *ſlaves*.

5. *CUBA.*

CUBA lyeth on the Weſt of *Hiſpaniola*, from which parted by a *Frith* or narrow Chanel, interpoſed betwixt the two Capes of S. *Nicholas*, and that of *Mayzi*, Backed on the North with a frie of Ilands, called the *Lucaios*, and ſome part of the *Peninſula* of *Florida*; extended towards the Eaſt to the extreme point or Foreland of *Jucutan*, called *Cape de Cotache*, from which diſtant about 50. Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Iſle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt, that is to ſay, from Cape *Maxie* towards *Hiſpaniola*, to the Cape of S. *Anthony*, 230. Leagues; in breadth where broadeſt hardly 40. but fifteen in others. For the fertility of the ſoil contending with *Hiſpaniola* for the preheminence; but in the temperature of the Air a great deal before it. Liberally ſtored with *Ginger*, *Caſſia*, *Maſtick*, *Aloes*, *Cinamon* and *Sugar*, (not reckoning ſuch Commodities as are common unto this with others) beſides great plenty of Fleſh, and Fiſh; and of Fowl no ſcarcity. The *Gold* more droſſie in the Mine, than in *Hiſpaniola*, but the *Braſs* more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but thoſe Mountains clad with divers trees, ſome of which drop the pureſt *Roſin*, and the Hills ſending to the Valleys many notable Rivers. Peſtered with many ſorts of Serpents, not ſo much out of any ill condition of the Soyl and Air, as by an old Superſtition of the *Salvages*: in former times not ſuffered to kill them when they might, (this being a Diſh reſerved for the higher Powers) not able afterwards to deſtroy them when it would have been ſuffered.

What other *Salvage* Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they ſhould not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may add in memory of the firſt Inhabitants, that an old man of 80. years, one of the *Caciques* of the Iland, addreſſed himſelf unto *Columbus* at his firſt coming hither, adviſing him to uſe his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the ſouls of men have two journeys when they leave this World; the one foul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel perſon; the other delectable and pleaſant for the men of peace. It is ſaid alſo of them, they knew not the uſe of *money*, nor underſtood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*: *Tenants in common* to the bleſſings which the earth brought forth, and *Coheirs* of Nature.

Amongſt the *Rarities* of this Iland, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy ſubſtance, which is found frequently on the Seas into which it falleth, excellent for the *Calking* of ſhips: Secondly, a Navigable River (but the name not told us) the waters of which were ſo hot, that a man could not endure to hold his hand in them. They tell us alſo thirdly of a Valley 15. leagues from S. *Jago*, which produceth ſtones exactly round, as if made for pleaſure; but yet meerly natural. But theſe no greater *Rarities* than in other places: nor altogether ſo great as in *Hiſpaniola*. Of which they tell us of a fair River, whoſe waters are Salt, and yet none but freſh ſtreams fall into it: Of another Lake (three Leagues in compaſs) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any *Exit*. Neither of theſe ſo ſtrange or rare as the *Cucuyo*, a kind of *Scarabe* or *Beetle*: the eyes and wings whereof when opened give ſo great a light, in the darkeſt places, that a man may ſee to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle.

Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Cante*, much annoyed with *Crocodiles*, (a Beaſt not common in theſe Ilands, nor elſewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to ſuch as repoſe themſelves on the Banks of the River. 2. *Arimao*, which disburtheneth it ſelf near the Port of *Xagua*. 3. *Ria de Porcos*, full of Rocks and quick-ſands, at the entrances of it. 4. *Rio Eſcondida*, paſſing betwixt *Habana*, and the Port of *Marcanas*. 5. *Marien*, and 6. *Taane*, of leſs note: Beſides theſe there is *Xagua*, a ſafe *Station* and Road for ſhipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and ſpacious when once entred, above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all ſides from the winds, that ſhips lie here in ſafety without any Anchor. Some other *Baies* there be as uſefull, though not ſo conſiderable.

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1. S. *Jago*, in the South part of the Iland, ſituate about two Leagues from the *Main*, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the moſt noted Port of all theſe Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velaſques*, An. 1514. Afterwards made a *Biſhops* See, beautified with a *Cathedral*; ſome *Religious* houſes: once not inferiour unto any for numbers of People, though now few enough. *Baracao*, 30. Leagues on the Eaſt of S. *Jago*, the ſame Foundation as the other; and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben-wood*. 3. S. *Salvador*, by ſome called *Baymo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it ſtandeth; built by *Velaſco* in the moſt pleaſant and richeſt part of all the Iland; but not ſo fitly, as the other, for Trade and Merchandiſe. 4. *Porto del Principe*, an Haven Town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchy or bituminous liquor, ſpoken of before; which I conceive to be much of the ſame nature with the Fountains of *Naphta* in the Eaſt. 5. *Trinidad*, another of *Velaſcos* foundations, nine or ten leagues Eaſt-ward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now forſaken, and meer nothing. 6. *Havana* in the North parts, oppoſite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port; ſo ſtrongly ſituate and fortified both by Nature and Art, that it ſeems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Caſtles; a greater than either oppoſite to the mouth of the Haven; all ſo commodiouſly built, and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and ſcatter the greateſt Navy. Near one of them ſtandeth an high Tower, from the top whereof notice is given unto the *Guards*, of every ſhip that cometh within view of the *Watch-men*. The beſt aſſurance, not only of this Iland but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the moſt part with the ſeat of the *Governour*, and the greateſt Trade of all theſe Seas: the ſhips which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the *Golf*, tarrying here for one another, till all met together, and ſetting ſail from hence by the *Streights* of *Bahama*, amongſt the Iſles of the *Ducaios*.

This Iland one of the firſt which was diſcovered by *Columbus*: who having almoſt tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, firſt fell upon the Iland of *Guahanani*, one of the *Lucaios*, to which he gave the name of S. *Saviours*. From thence he ſailed to *Baracoa*, on the North of this Iland, which he cauſed to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*; at whoſe charge, and the incouragement of *Iſabella* his *Heroick* Queen, he purſued this enterprize. Landing, he asked the People if they knew *Cipango*, (by which name *Paulus Venetus* calls the Iſle of *Japan*) and they conceiving that he enquired after *Cibao* (of great note for the richeſt *Mines* in *Hiſpaniola*) pointed towards *Hayty*; ſome of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* by this means laid aſide, and all the thoughts of *Spain* upon *Hiſpaniola*, where they found many *golden provocations* to invite their ſtay; till hungring after more Gold, and ſome new Plantations, they paſſed over hither: and in few years by the prudent conduct of *Velaſco*, got ſuch footing in it, and made that footing good by ſo many Colonies; that their title and poſſeſſion was beyond diſpute; and ſo continued to this day.

6. *JAMAICA.*

IAMAICA lyeth on the South of *Cuba*, from which diſtant 20. Leagues, and as mnch, or very little more, from *Hiſpaniola*. Diſcovered in the ſecond voyage of *Columlus*, by whom named S. *Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jamaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt about 50. Leagues, and in breadth 20. the whole compaſs eſtimated at 150. the middle of it under the 18. Degree of Northern *Latitude*. Of a rich ſoyl, abundantly provided of all things neceſſary: well ſtocked with Cattel, and no leſs plentifully ſtored with moſt ſorts of Fruits, which either Induſtry or Nature have ſupplyed it with. Great ſtore of *Cotton-wool*; and ſuch abundance of *Jaccu*, (a Root whereof the *Salvages* once made their bread) that it was deemed the *Granary* of the neighbouring Ilands. And were it not diſfurniſhed of convenient Ports (which is all the want of it) would be as much frequented by the ſea-faring men, as any other in thoſe parts. Once very populous, now deſtitute of all the natural Inhabitants: this Iland, and that of *Porto Rico*, loſing in few years 60000. by the *Spaniards* cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the men, but deſtroyed poſterity: the *Women*, here and elſewhere ſo abominating their ſad condition, that they ſtrangled their Children in the birth, to the end they might not live to ſerve ſuch a cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof, (for though it be well-waterd, it hath no great Rivers) 1. *Sevilla*, in the North-part of the Iland, beautified with a goodly Monaſtery, the Abbot whereof hath all *Epiſcopal* juriſdiction, and is privileged to wear a *Miter*; in nothing more enobled, then that *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian, (to whoſe *Decades* all ſucceeding Ages are to be beholding, for the *Chorography*, and *Hiſtory* of theſe parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2. *Mellilla*, a ſmall Town, but memorable for the unfortunate ſhipwrack of *Columbus*, on the ſhores adjoyning. 3. *Oriſtan*, on the South of the Iland, fourteen Leagues from *Sevil*. 4. *De la Vega*, now a ruine only, once a *Spaniſh* Colony; and of great fame for giving the title of *Dukes* to *Chriſtopher Columbus*, and his brother *Bartholomew*. Since whoſe time nothing hapned prejudicial to the State of this Iland by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*; till conquered, but not held, by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, An. 1596.

Thus having took a ſhort Survey of the ſeveral parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government committed chiefly to two great *Vice-Roycs*, the one of *Nova Hiſpania*, who reſides at *Mexico*; the other of *Peru*, who abideth at *Lima*; the principal Cities of thoſe Kingdoms. The firſt hath juriſdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Galicia*, *Nova Hiſpania*, *Guatimala*, *Caſtella Aurea*, and the Provinces of the *Mexican Ilands*; the other over thoſe of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. Such ſcattered pieces as they hold in *Guyana*, *Paria*, and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to ſome of thoſe. Of theſe the Vice-Roy of *Peru* is of greateſt power, becauſe he hath the nomination of all the *Commanders* and Officers within his Government: which in the other are reſerved to the King himſelf. But that of *New Spain* counted for the better preferment, becauſe of its nearneſs unto *Spain* (in reſpect of the other) the beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the people. For the adminiſtration of *Juſtice*, & ordering the Affaires of the ſeveral Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lyeth no Appeal: that is to ſay, 1 *Guadalaiara*, for *Gallicia Nova*. 2 *Mexico*, for *New Spain*. 3 *S. Domingo*, for the Province of the *Iland*. 4. *Guatimala*, for the diviſion ſo named. 5. And *Panama*, for *Caſtella Aurea*. Then for the other Government, *Quitos*, *Lima*, and *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*. 9 *Imperiale*, for *Chile*. 10 *S Foy*, for the *New Realm of Granada*. From theſe, though no *Appeal* doth lie in matter of *Juſtice*; yet both from them and the two *Vice-Roys* an *Appeal* may lie in affaires of State, or point of *Grievance*. And to this end there is a ſtanding *Counſel* in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the *Counſel of the Indies*, conſiſting of a *Preſident*, eight Counſellors, two Proctors *Fiſcal* (which we call the *Sollicitors* General) and two Secretaries, beſides other Officers: to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of theſe Countries; to appoint the *Vice-Royes*, to diſpoſe of all the great offices (except thoſe of the Government of *Peru*) and ſpiritual Dignities; to appoint *Viſitors* to go into thoſe Provinces for the examining the actions of all Officers, hearing the grievances of the People, and to diſplace or puniſh as they find occaſion; but with the Kings privity and conſent.

As for the Eſtates of private men, they which hold Lands or *Royalties* from the Crown of *Spain*, hold them but for life (except it be the Marqueſs of *Valſa* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*) after their deaths returning to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldeſt ſon or the next of blood; but ſo that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of theſe. And though they have many times attempted to make theſe *Commanderies* and Eſtates hereditary, and offered great ſums of money for it, both to *Charls* the Fifth, and *Philip* the ſecond; yet they could never get it done; the Kings moſt prudently conſidering, that theſe great Lords having the command of the Eſtates and Perſons of their ſeveral *Vaſſals*, would either grinde them into powder without any remedy; or upon any *Inquiſition* into their proceedings, take an occaſion to revolt. Both dangers of no ſmall importance, both by this uncertainty of their preſent *Tenure*, exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King receiveth hence, is ſaid to be three Millions of Ducats yearly: moſt of it riſing out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver: the reſt by Cuſtoms upon Manufactures and all ſorts of Merchandiſe, and the Acknowledgments reſerved upon Lands and Royalty. But out of this there goeth great *Exits*, that is to ſay to the two Vice-roys 12000. Ducats; to the Preſident and Officers of the Counſel of the Indies in *Spain* 20000. Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the ſeveral Courts of Judicature very liberal Penſions; to every Arch-biſhop and Biſhop, of which there are 29. in all, 2000. Ducats at the leaſt, and to ſome much more to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite Charges, in maintaining Garriſons, and entertaining ſtanding Bands both of Horſe and Foot, in ſeveral parts of this Eſtate; and the continual keeping of a ſtrong *Armada*, to conduct his *Plate fleets* to *Spain*, there muſt be made a great abatement, and the ſum will bear it. For howſoever at the firſt his Revenue came from thence without any great charge more than the keeping of a few Souldiers to aw the Salvages; yet after he fell fowl with *England*, and ſtartled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortifie all his Havens, and ſecure his Ports, and to maintain a ſtrong *Armada* at the Sea to Convoy his Treaſures. Before which time, the Engliſh (as is inſtanced in ſeveral places) did ſo ſhare in his Harveſt, that they left him ſcarce enough to pay his Workmen; which if they ſhould attempt again upon any breach, they would find it very difficult, if not impoſſible, to effect any thing on the Coaſts, as in former times; or indeed any other way but by making themſelves too ſtrong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from coming to him to ſupply his needs. *And ſo much for the* AMERICAN Ilands.

Having thus travelled over (with Gods bleſſing) the *known parts* of the World, and ſailed through the moſt difficult Seas which embrace the ſame: we ſhould now man our Barque again, and try what diſcovery we can make of the *Parts unknown*, or not ſo fully known to us as the others are.

——————— *atqui*
Quo properas mea cymba? redi, ſatis ardua Ponti
Navimus; *ecce* Auſter *pluvias jam cogere nubes*
Incipit, hic tutum non eſt (mihi crede) morari.
Dum licet in Portum tendamus; *nubila clavum*
Reddiderint ubi pulſa diem, revocabit ab Alto
Nos Triton Scopulo, *atq; iterum tentabimus æquor.*

That is to ſay,

But whether goes my Bark? Return, for we
Have ſlic'd the carporing Brine enough; ſee, ſee,
The South-wind 'gins to gather clouds apace,
'Tis no ſafe tarrying in ſo fierce a place.
Whilſt thou haſt time retire thou wearied Bark
Into ſafe Harbour; when the clouds which dark
The Worlds bright eye ſhall be diſpell'd away,
And ſhining *Phœbus* make a lightſome day,
Tritons ſhrill Trump ſhall thee recall again,
From the ſafe Harbour to the foaming main;
And we with all our powers will boldly try,
What of this UNKNOWN WORLD we can deſcry.

A TABLE

A TABLE
OF
The *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

	Longit.		*Latit.*	
A				
Acapulo	276	0	18	0
Almeria	272	15	20	0
Ancon	321	0	6	20
Anegadas	296	0	50	0 *A.*
S. Anna Equitum	318	10	27	30 *A.*
Antigna	330	20	16	10
Antiochia	300	50	6	40
Arica	300	30	20	0 *A.*
Aſcenſion	353	20	18	50 *A.*
Aravalo	298	10	1	30
Acuzamil	289	30	19	0
S. Auguſtin	293	0	29	50
B				
Bahama	296	30	27	0
Barbados	322	0	13	0
Bovincas	296	50	15	50
C				
Campa	351	40	62	50
Cartagena	300	0	20	10
Carthago	299	30	3	10
Caxamalca	298	30	11	30 *A.*
Cheſſapiake	308	0	38	0
Chiaſmetlan	260	0	25	40
Chile	299	0	36	30 *A.*
Colima	267	20	19	50
Collao	300	0	16	0 *A.*
Coquimbo	301	20	20	40 *A.*
Corduba	316	20	33	0 *A.*
Coano	259	40	31	
Couliacan	266	30	27	0
Cuſco	297	20	13	30 *A.*
D				
Darien	295	40	5	30
Deſeada	320	0	15	20
Dominica	359	40	14	0
E F				
Eſtade	305	10	47	40
Fernambuc	351	40	9	20
G				
Gorgona	295	10	3	20
Granada	318	20	11	0
Guajaquil	294	30	2	30 *A.*
Guadalquabol	282	20	31	0
Guanape	294	50	8	10 *A.*
Guardalupe	319	20	15	20
Guatimala	303	0	24	20
H				
Hangnedo	310	30	54	0
Havana	292	10	20	0
Hochelaga	300	50	44	10
Hunedo	324	0	51	30
I				
Jabaque	315	15	17	15
S. Jago	298	10	30	10
Iſabella	305	20	18	50
L				
Lempa	174	10	16	50
Lima	296	40	23	30
Loxa	293	30	9	50 *A.*
M				
Malagnana	306	0	23	40
Malones	279	40	13	40
Maracapana	312	10	8	0
Margarita	314	10	10	50
Mexico	283	0	38	30
Martha	301	20	10	40
S. Michael	291	40	6	10 *A.*
S. Michael	327	10	47	20
Mona	309	30	18	0
Monſorate	319	10	15	40
Montroyal	301	0	45	40
Mopox	301	10	10	0
N				
Navaga	300	20	17	10
Nicoia	284	30	10	40
Nives	318	40	16	20
Nombre de Dios	294	30	9	20
Norumbega	315	40	43	40
P.				
Paca	302	50	13	10 *A.*
Paito	290	30	5	10 *A.*
Panama	294	30	8	30
Panuco	270	10	22	20
Paſto	304	0	11	40 *A.*
Pina	296	20	3	0
Plata	305	0	19	50 *A.*
Popayan	297	20	1	50
Poſſeſſion	241	30	32	20
Potoſi	315	10	21	10 *A.*
Q				
Quilcon	298	50	16	30 *A.*
Quintere	303	40	34	40 *A.*
Quiro	293	10	0	10
Quivira	233	0	41	40

R

Roca	311	0	11	10
Roquelay	314	10	50	0

S

Saba	317	30	17	20
Salinas	321	40	53	0
S. Salvadore	321	10	5	0
Sante	294	40	9	30 *A.*
Saona	309	0	16	50
Sorand	351	40	61	0

T

Tabaco	322	10	10	40
Tarnaco	270	15	24	40
Tavaſco	275	40	18	20
Teſtigos	316	12	11	0
Thomebamba	293	40	1	50 *A.*
Tiquiſana	305	20	16	0 *A.*
Tochtipec	274	40	19	0
Tortuga	303	50	20	20
Totonteac	248	20	36	0
Trinidad	295	50	21	20
Tumbez	291	40	4	10 *A.*

V

Valparaiſo	300	0	33	0 *A.*
Ullao	242	10	30	30
Uraba	297	20	7	30
Urcos	301	0	14	50 *A.*
Wococan	307	30	34	0

Z

Zacatula	269	4	20	0

A is the mark of Southern Latitude.

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

AN

AN APPENDIX

To the Former Work,

ENDEAVOURING

A DISCOVERY

OF THE

UNKNOWN PARTS

OF THE

WORLD.

ESPECIALLY OF

Terra Auſtralis Incognita,

OR THE

Southern Continent.

BY

PETER HEYLIN.

Horat. De Arte Poet.

———————*Pictoribus atque Poetis*
Quidlibet audendi ſemper fuit æqua Poteſtas.

LONDON,
Printed for *Philip Chetwinde.* 1662.

AN APPENDIX
To the Former VVork,
Endeavouring a Diſcovery
Of the *UNKNOWN PARTS* of the
WORLD.

AND here we are upon a new and ſtrange *Adventure*, which no *Knight Errant* ever undertook before. Of things *Unknown*, as there is commonly no deſire, ſo leſs diſcourſe can probably me made upon them. By *Unknown* therefore we muſt underſtand *Leſs known*, or not well diſcovered; and in that ſenſe we may as well endeavour to ſay ſomewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the *Diſcovery*. And to ſay truth, even in the *Known* parts of the World there is much *Unknown*; as in the beſt and moſt flouriſhing Kingdoms of the Earth there is ſome waſte ground, either not cultivated at all, or not ſo well inhabited as the reſt of the Country. For beſides many vaſt tracts of ground in the North and North-weſt parts of *Tartary*, and ſuch parts of *India* as lye Northwards towards *Delanguer*, *Nancrocot*, the Eaſt parts of *Caucaſus*, and the Realms of *Cathay*: it is conceived that the greateſt part of the midlands of *Africk* are *Undiſcovered* to this day, or the knowledge of them ſo imperfect as comes near a *neſcience*. And for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders (which are in part to be the ſubject of this enquiry,) it is affirmed of the *Midlands* by *John de Laet* (who hath made the moſt exact deſcription of it that was ever extant) *Minima ſui parte perluſtratum eſſe*, that the leaſt part of them hath been diſcovered hitherto to any purpoſe. Leaving theſe therefore as before without further ſearch, we will divide the *Unknown World* into theſe two parts, 1. *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2. *Terra Incognita Auſtralis*; which with their Sub-diviſions we will now purſue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TErra *Incognita Borealis*, is that part of the *Unknown VVorld* which lyeth towards the North; and is to be conſidered in theſe three notions. 1. As directly under the *Pole*, which for diſtinctions ſake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2. As lying to the *North-Eaſt* on the back of *Europe*, and *Aſia*; or 3. on the *North-weſt*, on the back of *America*.

1. *Orbis Arcticus* is that part of *Terra Borealis incognita*, which lyeth under or about the *Arctick Pole*; the ſituation and dimenſions of which being taken with the *Aſtrolabe* by an *Oxford Frier*, are by *Mercator* thus deſcribed out of the Itinerary of *James Cnox* of *Bois le duc*, or the *Boſche* a Town of *Brabant*.

“ Under the *Arctick Pole* (ſaith he) is ſaid to be a *black Rock* of wondrous height, about 33 leagues
“ in compaſs, the Land adjoyning being torn by the Sea into four great Iſlands. For the *Ocean* violently
“ breaking thorow it, and diſgorging it ſelf by 19 Chanels, maketh four *Euripi*, or fierce *VVhirl-pools*,
“ by which the waters are finally carried towards the North, and there ſwallowed into the *Bowels* of
“ the Earth. That *Euripus* or *Whirl-pool* which is made by the *Scythick* Ocean hath five *Inlets*, and by
“ reaſon of his ſtreight paſſage, and violent courſe, is never frozen: the other on the back of *Groenland*,
“ being 37 leagues long, hath three inlets, and remaineth frozen three months yearly. Between theſe
“ two there lyeth an Iſland, on the North of *Lappia* and *Biarmia*, inhabited as they ſay by *Pygmies*, the
“ talleſt of them not above four foot high. A certain *Scholar* of *Oxford* reporteth, that theſe four *Euripi*
“ are carried with ſuch furious violence towards ſome *Gulf*, in which they are finally ſwallowed up,
“ that no ſhip is able with never ſo ſtrong a Gale to *ſtem* the *Current*, and yet that there is never ſo
“ ſtrong a wind as to blow a *Wind-mill*. The like reported by *Giraldus Cambrenſis* in his Book *De mirabilibus Hiberniæ*. So far and to this purpoſe he. But *Blundevile* our Country-man is of another opi-

North-East parts.

nion, as indeed who not ?) neither believing that *Plinie* or any other of the *Roman* writers came hither to deſcribe this *Promontory* : or that the *Oxford Frier*, without the aſſiſtance of ſome cold *Devil* of the *middle Region* of the Air (and conſequently able to endure all weathers,) could approach ſo near as to meaſure theſe cold Countries with his *Aſtrolabe*, or take the heighth of this *Black Rock* with his *Jacobs Staff*. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucians Dialogues*, than any ſerious diſcourſe, we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The *NORTH-WEST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis*, are thoſe which lye on the back of *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern Province of *America* : by which it hath been much endeavoured to find out a paſſage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go ſo far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the ſtreights of *Magellan*. Attempted firſt by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, An. 1497. at the charge of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*. But having diſcovered as far as to the 67. Degree of *Northern* Latitude, by the mutiny of his Mariners he was forced to return ; where finding great preparations for a War with *Scotland*, that buſineſs for the preſent was laid aſide. Reſumed by *Gaſper Corteriaglis*, a *Portugal*, An. 1500. and after by *Stephen Gomez*, a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525. but neither of them went ſo far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithſtanding would not ſo give over, but firſt with five ſhips from the *Groyn*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, ſent out by *Cortez*, purſued the enterprize, which proving as ſucceſleſs as the former had been, occaſion'd *Charls* the 5th. then preparing for *Italy*, on the payment of 35000. Ducats by King *John* the third, to ſuſpend the proſecution of it. Followed with greater induſtry, but as bad ſucceſs, by Sir *Martin Frobiſher*, who made three Voyages for theſe parts (the firſt of them in the year 1579) and brought home ſome of the *Natives*, a Sea Unicorns horn (ſtill kept in the great Wardrobe of *Windſor* Caſtle) and a great deal of the *Ore* of that Country, found upon tryal, when in *England*, not to quit the coſt. A great Promontory which he paſſed by, he called Queen *Elizabeths Foreland*, in whoſe name he took poſſeſſion of it ; and the Sea running not far off, he called *Frobiſhers ſtreights*. The Seas full ſet with Icy Iſlands, ſome of them half a mile about, and 80 Fathoms above water ; the people like the *Samoeds*, the worſt kind of *Tartars*, in their lives and habit. *John Davies* followed the deſign, *An.* 1585. at the incouragement of Sir *Francis Walſingham*, then principal Secretary of Eſtate ; and having in 3. Voyages diſcovered to the Latitude of 73. by reaſon of the many difficulties which he found in the enterprize, and the death of Mr. *Secretary*, he was fain to give over ; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Eſtotiland*, the name of *Fretum Davies*, in the Latitude of 65. and 20. Minutes, by which name ſtill called. After him followed *Weymouth*, *Hall*, *Hudſon*, *Buton*, *Baffin*, *Smith*, all *Engliſh*. The reſult of whoſe endeavours was the finding of ſome cold Iſles and points of Land, which they named King *James* his *Cape*, Queen *Anns Cape*, Prince *Henries Foreland*, *Saddle-Iſland*, *Barren-Iſland*, *Red-gooſe Iſland*, *Diggs his Iſland* ; all of them betwixt 80 and 81, and the impoſing on ſome paſſages and parts of the Sea, the names of *Hackluyts*, *Hendland*, *Smiths Bay*, *Hudſons ſtreights*, *Maudlins Sound*, *Fair Haven*, and the like marks and Monuments of their undertakings. Nothing atchieved of publick moment but the Diſcovery of an Iſland called *Cherry Iſland* in the Latitude of 74. and the ſhores of a large piece of the Continent, which they cauſed to be called King *James* his *New-Land*, moſt commonly *Greenland* ; where they found many white *Bears*, with white, grey, and dun Foxes, Patridges, Geeſe, and ſome other Proviſions, Sea Unicorns Horns, great ſtore of *Morſes*, (or Sea-horſes) the Oyl and Teeth whereof yield no ſmall Commodity. But moſt conſiderable for the Trade of *Whale-fiſhing*, which our men uſe yearly upon thoſe Coaſts ; of whoſe Oyl, Bones, and Brain (this laſt ſuppoſed to be the true *Sperma Cœti*, now uſed as *Medicinal*) they raiſe very great profit.

3. The *NORTH-EAST-PARTS* of *Terra Incognita Borealis* ; are thoſe which lye on the North of *Ruſſia* and *Tartaria* ; by which the like paſſage towards *Catha* and *Chinay* hath been oft attempted ; and hitherto with like ſucceſs. Endeavoured firſt by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, the Son of *John Cabot*, ſo often mentioned before, by whom trained up in the Diſcovery of the North-eaſt parts of *America*. His employment failing here in *England*, he betook himſelf unto the ſervice of the King of *Spain* ; and coming out of *Spain*, An. 1549. was by King *Edward* the ſixt made *Grand Pilot* of *England*, with an Annual Penſion of 166 l. 13 s. 4 d. In the year 1553. he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Diſcovery of *Ruſſia*, and the *North-Eaſt* Voyages, undertaken and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *Chancellour*, *Burrough*, *Jenkinſon*, and after proſecuted by *Pet* and *Jackman*. Some of which periſhed in the Action, and were frozen to death ; their ſhip being found the next year hemmed about with Ice. and a particular account of all things which had hapned to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Ruſſia* (ſince that time made a common Voyage, without dread or danger) and paſſing down the *Volga* to the *Caſpian* Sea, and by that to *Perſia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophie*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594. and in ſome years after, tryed their Fortune alſo, under the conduct and direction of one *William Barendſon*, their chief *Pilot* ; but went no further than the *Engliſh* had gon before them ; yet gave new names unto all places as they paſſed, as if they had been the firſt *Diſcoverers*; with pride and arrogance enough. Nothing ſince done of any note or conſideration for the opening of this North-Eaſt paſſage, or giving us any better accompt of the North of *Tartary*, or any Countries beyond that ; but what we had many ages ſince out of *Paulus Venetus* ; ſo that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly diſcourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant undertakings ; yet when I look upon the natures of thoſe ſhores and Seas, thoſe tedious Winters of ten months, with no Summer following ; the winds continually in the North, and the *Main* Ocean paved with Ice ſo long together : I cannot chooſe but rank the hopes of theſe Northern Paſſages amongſt thoſe Adventures which are onely commendable for the difficulties preſented in them.

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

Terra Auſtralis.

WIth better hopes we may go forwards on the next diſcovery, and try what may be done on *Terra Auſtralis*, or the *Southern* Continent, though hitherto *Incognita* alſo, almoſt as much unknown as the *Artick* Iſlands, which none but my good *Frier* of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our Learned *Brerewood*, to be as large as *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africk* : and that upon ſuch ſtrength of Reaſons, as cannot be eaſily over-born by any oppoſite. His Arguments in brief are theſe, 1. That as touching *Latitude*, ſome parts thereof come very near to the *Æquator*, if they come not alſo on this ſide of it : and as for *Longuitude*, it keepeth along, though at ſeveral diſtances, the whole continual courſe of the other Continents. 2. It is cleerly known, that in the other two Continents, the Land which lyeth on the North-ſide of that Line, is four times at the leaſt as large as that which lyes South thereof; and therefore ſince the earth is equally poized on both ſides of the *Center* ; it muſt needs be that the Earth in anſwerable meaſure and proportion muſt advance it ſelf in ſome places above the Sea, on the South-ſide of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By conſequence, what is wanting in the South parts of the other two *Continents*, to countervail the North-parts of them, muſt of neceſſity be ſupplied in the *Southern* Continent.

The Country being ſo large, ſo free from the Incumbrances of Froſts and Ice, and endleſs Winters; I have oft marvelled with my ſelf that no further progreſs hath been made in Diſcovery of it : conſidering chiefly by the ſite and poſition of the Countrey, eſpecially in thoſe parts which lye neareſt *Aſia*, that there is nothing to be looked for elſewhere, either of profit or of pleaſures, but may there be found. Whether it be, that there is ſome *Nil ultra* put to human endeavours ; or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the *Goſpel* ; or that the great Princes of the earth think it no good policy to engage themſelves in *New Diſcoveries*, till the *Old* be thoroughly planted, and made ſure unto them ; or that the *Merchant*, who in matters of this nature hath a powerfull influence, thinks his hands full enough already ; and being ſetled in ſo many and ſo Wealthy *Factories*, will not adventure upon more. Which of all theſe, or whether of all theſe together be the cauſe of this ſtop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that here is a large field, enough for Covetouſneſs, Ambition, or Deſire of glory to ſpend themſelves in ; enough to ſatisfie the greateſt and moſt hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth, and worldly pleaſures; beſide the *Gallantry* and merit of ſo brave an Action. Moſt which hath hitherto been done in it, hath been by the incouragements of the Vice-Royes of *New Spain* and *Peru* : by the firſt of which we came acquainted with the Coaſts of *Nova Guinea*; by the latter, with thoſe Countries called the *Iſlands* of *Solomon*, but whether Continents or Iſlands, not yet fully known.

And yet we muſt not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the Honour, who paſſing thorough the *Streights*, which now bear his name, diſcovered thoſe parts of it which from the *fire* thence ſeen he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Iſland. Nor do the *Engliſh* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did, was rather *Accidental*, than upon Deſign. For in the year 1593. Sir *Richard Hawkins* being bound for the *Streights* of *Magellan*, was by a croſs wind driven on ſome parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hawkins* his *Mayden-Land* : A Promontery of it ſhooting into the Sea with three points he called *Point Tremontein* ; and a pleaſant Iſle not far off, by the name of *Fair Iſland*. Sayling along theſe Coaſts in the fifty Degree of *Southern Latitude*, for the ſpace of ſixty miles and upwards, he found the Countrey as he paſſed to be very pleaſant ; and by the fires which he ſaw in the night to be well inhabited. By the like accident, *Anno* 1599. *Sibald de Weert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the *ſtreights* of *Magellan* fell upon ſome Iſlands of this *Southern* Continent, in the *Latitude* of fifty Degrees and forty minutes, which he cauſed to be called *Sibalds* Iſlands. And beſides theſe we owe to the *Portugals* the Diſcovery of ſuch parts hereof, as they fell on in their way to the Eaſtern *Indies* ; of which we have little but the names, as *Pſittacorum Terra*, ſo called from the abundance of *Parrats* which they ſaw on the Coaſts, over againſt the *Cape of good Hope*. 2. *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and poſſeſſed by *Idolaters*, with the two Kingdomes of 3. *Lucach*, and 4. *Maletur* ; all three againſt the Iſles of *Java*, from which little diſtant.

But the greateſt light we have to ſee by into this dark buſineſs, is by the Voyages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Voyce-Royes of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was ſaid. For in the year 1543. the Governour of *New-Spain* then being, ſent *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccos*, who in that Voyage made a Diſcovery of a rich and flouriſhing Countrey which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others ſince his time called *Terra de Piccinacoli* ; and in the year 1563. *Caſtro* the *Licentiate*, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, ſent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the Conduct of *Lopes Garcia de Caſtro*, diſcovered the *Iſlands* of *Solomon*. To which if we ſubjoyn the ſucceſs of the *Hollanders* in the Diſcovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Lands adjoyning, The beſt deſcription we can make of this Southern Continent, muſt be in the Chorography and Hiſtory of their Adventures; *viz.* 1. *Terra del Fogo*, 2. *Inſulæ Solomonis*, 3. *Nova Guinea* ; beginning firſt with *Terra del Fogo*, becauſe neareſt to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO*, lyes on the other ſide of the *Streights* of *Magellan*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now diſcovered to be an Iſland by one *Jacob Mayre* of *Amſterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Horn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voyage on the 15. of *June*, Anno 1615. and on the 19. of *January* following they fell even with the *ſtreight* of *Magellan*. On the 24 of the ſame Month they had the ſight of another

Inſulæ Solomon.

another *Streight*, which ſeemed to ſeparate this *Terra del fuego* from the reſt of the *Southern Continent*; and on the 25 they entred into it. That part of the Land which (being entered into the *Streights*) they had on the Weſt,they called *Terra Mauritii de Naſſaw*; that on the Eaſt, *Statenland*; the ſtreight it ſelf, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the *Streight* they found to be in 55. degrees of Southern *Latitude*, and 50 Minutes; the water running into the North Sea with ſo violent an *Eddie*, *Ut adverſum maris æſtum difficulter ſuperare poſſemus*, ſaith he, who in the way of *Journal* or *Ephemerides*, hath deſcribed the whole courſe of this Voyage. In the whole courſe whereof nothing ſo much obſervable (beſides this Diſcovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had loſt a day (as muſt needs happen unto ſuch, as in ſo tedious a Voyage had Travelled Weſtward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders*, and the reſt of *Europe*; though they had calculated the dayes ſince their going out with all exactneſs. So that if there were any ſuch *Morality* in the *Sabbath*, as ſome men pretend, theſe men muſt either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the reſt of their Countrymen, or otherwiſe to comply with them, muſt be guilty of the breach of the *Sabbath* all the reſt of their Lives. But of this more at large elſewhere. To return therefore to this *ſtreight*, it is ſaid to be ſeven *Dutch* miles, or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentifull of good fiſh; eſpecially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the inſerting of which *ſtreight* into the third Edition of my *Microcoſm*, I received a Letter at ſuch time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon*, *An.* 1625. ſubſcribed *G. B.* and a little under that, *Sub granda floridus*: which whether it were the Gentlemans *Motto*, or the *Anagram* of his Name, I am not able to ſay, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his deſires were ſatisfied in the next Edition of that work. For my encouragement "wherein he gave me this direction following, The News (ſaith he) of this *New ſtreight* coming in-"to *Spain*, it pleaſed the King, in the year 1618. to ſend and ſearch whether the truth were anſwera-"ble unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader than the other, and not above ſeven *Dutch* "miles long; decreed, that being the more eaſie and compendious way for Navigators, and leſs ſub-"ject to dangers; his Auxiliary Forces ſhould be ſent that way into the *Eaſt Indies*, to defend the *Phi-*"*lippine* and *Molucco* Iſlands, and the way by the *Cape of good Hope* to be left. In regard that every ſuch "Voyage requireth twice as much time: beſides the Variety of winds, and often change of the Air, "not onely troubleſome, but full of diſeaſes, conſumeth the one half of the men before they return. "Whereas this way gaineth time (and if need be, they may diſpatch buſineſs in the *Weſt* as they travel "into the *Eaſt*) without any extraordinary danger or loſs of men. So far the very words of my Letter. The Intelligence given me in this Letter, I find confirm'd in a *Relation* of the Voyage made by Captain *Don Juan de More*, *An.* 1618. at the command and charge of the King of *Spain*, who preſently arm'd and furniſh'd eight tall ſhips to ſend this new way unto his *Philippines* and *Moluccos*; under the conduct of *Petrus Michaelus de Cordoelen*. Since it hath been found by experience, that even from our parts to the *Moluccos*, through this *Fretum de Mayre*, is but a paſſage of eight months: *Sine ulla inſigni navigantium clade*, ſaith the *Narrator*. But of this ſtreight enough, to ſatisfie my *unknown well-willers* requeſt, and enform my Reader: extremely ſorry that the Gentleman was not pleaſed to impart his name, that ſo his memory might have lived in theſe papers, if they themſelves be deſtinate to a longer life.

Now for the nature of the ſoil, it is ſaid to be very full of Mountains; but thoſe Hills apparelled with Woods, intermixt with Vallies; the Vallies for the moſt part full of little *Brooks* which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good paſturage; the Sea-coaſts well provided with Bayes and Roads, not unſafe for ſhipping: though the Air every where, but chiefly near the Sea, be much ſubject to Tempeſts. As for the People, they are ſaid to be of a white Complexion: but their Faces, Arms, and Thighs, coloured with a kind of *Oker*: of full ſtature and well-proportioned, their hair black, which they wear long, to ſeem more terrible. The men moſt generally naked, the women only ſhaded on their ſecret parts, with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deſerve the name of houſes; ſo that the moſt which we can do is to Coaſt the Iſland. In which we find towards *Mare del Noort*, 1. A large Arm of the Sea, called *Entrado de S. Sebaſtian*. 2. The Cape of S. *Ives*. 3. *Mauritius* Land. 4. *Promontorio de Buen Suſeio*, or the Cape of *Good ſucceſs*. Oppoſite whereunto in another Iſland is the Cape of S. *Bartholomews*; and betwixt them the ſtreight called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *New South Sea*, as they call it, there are 5. *Barnwelts* Iſland. 6. The Iſlands of S. *Ildefonſo*. 7. Cape *Horn* on a fair Promontory,in the South-weſt *Ande*: which doubled, the Country goes along with a ſtraight ſhore,on which I find ſome Bayes and Capes, but no names unto them; till we come to the Weſtern entrances of the ſtreight of *Magellan*, oppoſite unto Cape *Victoria*, ſo often mentioned.

2. *INSULÆ SOLOMONIS*, or the Iſlands of *Solomon*, are ſituate on the Weſt of *Terra del Fogo*, 11 Degrees on the South of the *Equinoctical*. Diſcovered in the year 1567. by *Lopes Garcia de Caſtro*, ſent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find out new Countries. By whom thus named, in hope that men would be rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from theſe Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18. the principal: Some of which 300. miles in compaſs, others 200. and others of them leſs, till we come to fifty, and beneath that, none. All liberally furniſhed with Doggs, Hoggs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and ſome Veins of Gold. The chief of theſe eighteen are, 1. *Guadalcanal*, ſuppoſed to be the greateſt of them; upon the Coaſt whereof the *Spaniards* ſailed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and ſacked, becauſe the people of it in a ſudden ſurprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2. S. *Iſabella*, 150. Leagues in length, and 18 in breadth the Inhabitants,ſome black, ome white, ſome of brown complexion. 38. *Nicolas*,100. Leagues in compaſs, inhabited by a People which are black of hue, but ſaid to be more witty than the other Salvages. All of them ſituate betwixt the ſtreights of *Magellan*, and the Iſlands of *Theeves* ; and yet not well agreed upon amongſt our Authors, whether to be accompted Iſlands, or a part of the Continent : The *Spaniards* having ſailed 700. Leagues on the Coaſts hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they paſs generally in accompt for Iſlands, and by that name are under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governours, let them paſs ſo ſtill.

Nova Guinea.

3. *NOVA GUINEA* lyeth beyond the Iſlands of *Solomon*, in reſpect of us, proceeding as we have begun from the Land of Fire. Diſcovered, as before was ſaid, *An.* 1543. by *Villa Lobos* (*Herrera* attributes the diſcovery of it to *Alvarez de Saavedra*, and ſets it higher in the year 1527.) more perfectly made known, if I gueſs aright, by *Fernando de Quir*. Who being ſent with two Ships to make a more full diſcovery of the *Iſlands of Solomon*, and taking his courſe about the height of the *Magellan ſtreights*, diſcovered a main Land coming up cloſe to the *Æquinoctical*, on the Coaſts whereof he ſailled 800. leagues, till hee found himſelf at laſt in the *Latitude* of 15. Degrees,diſcovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purpoſed to ſettle a *Plantation*, and to that end preſented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Country I conceive by the ſite and poſition of it to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up cloſe as that doth, to the *Æquinoctial* ; and after turning to the South towards the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Maletur*. And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I ſhall afford the Reader this Deſcription of it, out of his *Memorials* ; in which it is ſoberly affirmed to be a *Terreſtrial Paradiſe* for wealth and pleaſures. The Country plentifull of Fruits, *Coco-nuts*, *Almonds* of four ſorts, *Pom-citrons*, *Dates*, *Sugar-canes*, and *Apples* : plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Patridges, and other Fowl, with ſome Kine and *Buffals*. Nothing inferiour (as it ſeemeth) to *Guinea*, in the *Land of Negros* ; and from thence ſo named. For, as he ſaith, he ſaw amongſt them Silver and Pearls, and ſome told him of Gold ; the Countries on the Coaſt ſeeming to promiſe much felicity within the Land. The air he found to be whole and temperate, the Sea-ſhores to be full of *Baies*, *Havens*, and the *Exits* of Rivers, making ſhew as of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, ſome *white*, ſome like the *Mulatos*, others like the *Negros* ; diverſified in Habit, as well as Colour. Their bread made of three ſorts of *Roots* : without Government, but not without *Religion* ; for they had their ſeveral *Oratories* and places of burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in dayly wars with one another ; their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other weapons, but all made of wood. Of this Country, whatſoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took poſſeſſion in the name of the *Catholike* King, and ſet up both a *Croſs* and a *Chapel* in it ; the Chapel dedicated to the *Lady* of *Loretto*.

The preciſe time of this *Diſcovery* I have no where found, but that the time ſpent about it is by him affirmed to be 14. years, to the no ſmall endamagement of his health and fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his *Petition*, or any thing elſe done by others in purſuance of his *Propoſitions*. Whether it were on any of the reaſons before laid down ; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the *Baies* or *Promontories*, as he paſſed along ; but either took ſuch names as were given before,or found not any thing worth the naming. And for ſuch names as were given before (ſtill taking *Ferdinando Quir*'s new Country for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontary called *Cape Hermoſo*, in the Eaſt parts hereof near the Iſlands of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Æquator*. 2. Another in the Weſtern part, but as near the *Æquinox*, called *Point Primiro*. A third in the firſt bendings of the Coaſt towards the South, called *Capa de Buena Deſeada*, or the *Cape* of *good deſires*. 4. *Rio de Valcanes*. 5. *Rio de Lorenzo*. 6. *Rio de S. Auguſtino*, on the Eaſt of Cape *Formoſo* towards the ſtreights. 7. The Rivers of S. *Peter*. 8. S. *Paul*. 9. S. *Andrew*. And 10. S. *James*, betwixt Cape *Formoſo* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certain of theſe laſt diſcoveries, and the greateſt certainty we have of that little, is nothing but a Liſt of names without any thing obſervable in the ſtate and ſtory of the ſame, they may ſtill retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore I will try my fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Royes of *Peru*, and *Mexico*, or taking out *Commiſſion* for a new Diſcovery, will make a ſearch into this *Terra Auſtralis* for ſome other Regions, which muſt be found either here or no where. The names of which, 1. *Mundus alter & idem*, 2. *Utopia*, 3. *New Atlantis*, 4. *Fairy Land*, 5. *The Painters Wives Iſland*, 6. The Lands of *Chivalrie*, And 7. The *New World in the Moon*.

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, another world, and yet the ſame,is a witty and ingenious invention of a Learned *Prelate*, writ by him in his younger dayes (but well enough becoming the auſterity of the graveſt head) in which he diſtinguiſheth the *Vices*, *Paſſions*, *Humours*,and ill *Affections* moſt commonly incident to mankind, into ſeveral *Provinces* ; give us the *Character* of each, as in the deſcriptions of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it ; and ſets them forth unto the eye in ſuch lively colours, that the vitious man may ſee there in his own *Deformities*, and the well-minded man his own imperfections. The Scene of this deſign laid by the Reverend Author in this *Terra Auſtralis* ; the *Decorum* happily preſerved in the whole *Diſcovery* ; the ſtyle acurely cleer, the invention ſingular. Of whom and his *New World* I ſhall give you that *Eulogie*, which the *Hiſtorian* doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neque poſt illum qui eum imitari poſſet inventus eſt.*

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country firſt diſcovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord *Chancellor of England* ; and by him made a Scene of a *Common-wealth*, which neither *Solon*, nor *Lycurgus*, nor any of the *Legiſlators* of former times did ever dream of ; nor had been fancied by *Plato*, *Ariſtotle*, *Tullie*, or any who have written the *Ideas* of a form of Goverment, though not reduceable to practice. Some of his Plots we have took notice of already, as *viz*. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt by

New Atlantis.

making of thoſe metals, Chains and Fetters for their *Malefactors*, Pans of Cloſe-ſtools, Chamber-pots and veſſels of ſuch unclean uſe ; by impoſing it as a penalty on infamous perſons, to wear Gold Rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices : as alſo his device to prevent miſtakes and diſlikes in mariages, by giving the parties a full view of each other, naked. Many more projects of this nature, ſome of them poſſible enough, but ſo *unpracticable*, ſo beyond hope of being looked on in the *modelling* of a *Common-Wealth*, that we may reckon this device amongſt thoſe ſtrange fancies, *quæ nunquam antea ſpe concepta, nedum opere tentata erant*. The man indeed (conſidering the times he lived in) of rare abilities ; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the *Meridian* of this *Southern* Continent, this *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place elſe.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Iſland of this *Southern* Continent diſcovered by Sir *Francis Bacon*, the Learned Viſcount of St. *Albans* ; one of Sir *Thomas Mores* Succeſſors in the place of Lord *Chancellour*, but far before him in the Excellency and feaſibility of his invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Iſland of the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike inviſible. But for his falling into this Iſland, his deſcription of it, the City of *Benſalem*, and the manner of his reception there, ſuch handſome probabilities, and ſo fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the *State* of the *World*, it would ſeem a *Reality*. But above all things, the Inventions and deſigns of *Solomons Houſe*, for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving nature to the beſt advantages of life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond compariſon. The man I muſt confeſs had his perſonal errours (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded, *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtiſſimi*, as *Paterculus* once ſaid of *Piſo* : not one amongſt many thouſand (to purſue that *Character*) *qui aut otium validius diligat, aut facilius ſufficiat negotio*. A man of a moſt ſtrong Brain, and a *Chymical* Head. Who if he had been entertained with ſome liberal *Salarie*, abſtracted from all Affairs both of *State* and *Judicature*, and furniſhed with ſufficiency both of means and helps, for the going on in his *deſign*, would, I am confident, have given us ſuch a body of *natural Philoſophy*, and made it ſo ſubſervient to the publick good, that neither *Ariſtotle* or *Theophraſtus* amongſt the Antients, nor *Paracelſus*, or the reſt of our later *Chymiſts*, would have been conſiderable.

4. *FAERIE LAND*, is another part of this *Terra Incognita* ; the habitation of the *Faeries*, a pretty kind of *little Fiends*, or *Pigmey Devils*, but more inclined to ſport than miſchief, of which old Women, who remember the times of *Popery*, tell us many fine ſtories. A cleanlier and more innocent cheat was never put upon poor ignorant people, by the *Monks* and *Friers*. Their habitation here or no where ; though ſent occaſionally by *Oberon*, and their other Kings, to our parts of the World. For not being reckoned amongſt the *good Angels*, nor having malice enough to make them *Devils* (but ſuch a kind of midling *Spirits*, as the *Latines* call *Lemures Larvæ*) we muſt find out ſome place for them, neither *Heaven* or *Hell*, and moſt likely this. Their Country never more enobled, than by being made the *Scene* of that excellent Poem, called the *Faerie Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greateſt perſons in her Court : but ſhadowed in ſuch lively colours, framed ſo exactly by the Rules of *Poeſie*, and repreſenting ſuch *Idæas* of all moral goodneſs ; that as there never was a *Poem* more *Artificial* ; ſo can no *Ethical* diſcourſe, more faſhion and inflame the mind to the love of virtue. *Inviſurum facilius aliquem quam imitaturum*, ſhall be *Spencers Motto* ; and ſo I leave him to his reſt.

5. *PAINTERS WIVES ILAND*, is an Iſland of this *Tract*, mentioned by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his *Hiſtory of the World*. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedo de Sarmiento*, a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, imployed by his King in planting ſome Colonies on the *ſtreights* of *Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) Who being taken Priſoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about ſome *Iſland* which the *Maps* preſented in thoſe *ſtreights*, and might have been of great uſe to him in his undertaking. To which he merrily replyed, that it was to be called the *Painters Wives Iſland*, ſaying, that whilſt the Painter drew that *Map*, his Wife ſitting by, *deſired him to put in one Country for her, that ſhe in her imagination might have an* Iſland *of her own*. His meaning was, that there was no ſuch *Iſland* as the *Maps* preſented. And I fear the *Painters Wife* hath many *Iſlands* and ſome Countries too upon the *Continent* in our common *Maps*, which are not really to be found on the ſtricteſt ſearch.

6. The *LANDS OF CHIVALRIE* are ſuch *Iſlands*, *Provinces* and *Kingdoms*, in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any *known* part of the *World*, and therefore muſt be ſought in this. A groſs abſurdity, but frequent in thoſe kind of *Writers*, who in deſcribing the *Adventures* of their Knights, in deſpight of *Geography* (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not onely disjoyned Countries which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote ; but given us the deſcription of many *Iſlands*, *Provinces*, and mighty *Kingdoms*, which as the Ingenious Author of the *Hiſtory* of *Don Quixot* merrily obſerveth, *are not to be found in all the Map*. Of this ſort is the Iſle of *Adamants* in Sir *Huon* of *Burdeaux* ; the *Firm Iſland* in the Hiſtory of *Amadis de Gaul* ; the hidden Iſland, and that of the *Sage Aliart* in St. *Palmerin* of *England* ; the Iſlands of *Lindaraza*, and the *deviliſh Fauno*, with the Kingdome of *Lyra* (of which the *Amazonian* Lady *Archiſilora* was the rightfull Queen) and many others of that kind in the *Mirrour* of *Knighthood* ; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primalion*, and *Belianis of Greece*, *Pariſmus*, the *Romance of Romances*, and indeed who not of all that *Rabble* ? handſomely humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his *Iſland* of *Barataria*, of which the famous *Sanco Panca* was ſometimes Governour, and the Kingdome of *Micomicona*. And yet I cannot but confeſs (for I have been a great ſtudent in theſe books of *Chivalrie*) that they may be of very good uſe to Children or young Boyes in their *Adoleſcency*. For beſides that they

divert the mind from worſe cogitations, they perfect him that take pleaſure in them in the way of *Reading*, beget in him an habit of *Speaking*, and animate him many times to ſuch high conceptions as really may make him fit for great undertakings.

7. *THE NEW WORLD IN THE MOON*, was firſt of *Lucians* diſcovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a conſcience, apoſtatizing from the faith in which he was bred. *Ariſtophanes* had before told us in own of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcygia*, or a City of Cuckoes in the Clouds. But *Lucian* was the firſt who found out this *New-World* in the *Moon*; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his *Dialogues* a conceited *Character*. But of late times, that world which he there *fancied*, and propoſed but as a *fancy* only, is become a matter of a more *ſerious debate*: and ſome have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another *World* in the *Moon*, inhabited as this is, by perſons of divers *Languages*, *Cuſtoms*, *Polities*, and *Religions*: and more than ſo, ſome means and wayes propoſed to conſideration for maintaining an *intercourſe* and commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like endeavours to prove that the *Earth may be a Planet*, why may not this *Southern Continent* be that *Planet*, and more particularly that *Moon*, in which this other *World* is ſuppoſed to be? Certainly there are ſtronger hopes of finding a *New World* in this *Terra Auſtralis*, than in the Body of that *Planet*; and ſuch perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleaſure the later *diſcoveries* of *America*.

But I am no diſcourager of Induſtry and Ingenuity, which I love and honour wheresoever I find it. I know great *Truths* have many times been ſtarted upon leſs *preſumptions*. Nor would I be miſtook, as if in my purſute of this *Terra Incognita*, I put ſcorn on any of *ſublimer* thoughts; or that I would have any man ſo much in Love with the *preſent World*, as not to look for another *World* in the *Heaven* above. It is reported, that in ſome controverſie betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Muſcovy*, the King of *Poland* ſent the *Muſcovite* a curious *Globe*, repreſenting the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each ſeveral Sphere. To which the *Muſcovite* returned this unworthy Anſwer, *Tu mihi* Cœlum *mittis*, *Redde mihi* Terras *de quibus contendimus*: You ſend me *Heaven*, ſaith he, but that will not ſatisfie, unleſs you give me back thoſe *Lands* which are now in Queſtion. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not loſe their part on *Earth* for all *Heaven* it ſelf. Whom I deſire, if any ſuch peruſe theſe papers, to conſider, that as much as the moſt flouriſhing Country which is here deſcribed, doth fall ſhort of that *Paradiſe* wherein God placed our Father *Adam*, ſo much and infinitely more did that Earthly *Paradiſe* fall ſhort of the unſpeakable glories of the Kingdom of *Heaven*. To the diligent and carefull ſearch of which *Heavenly* Kingdome I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of *God* which are here preſented, and that *viciſſitude* of Human affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to ſome ſerious thoughts of that mighty *God* who made all theſe Works, in whom is no ſhew nor *ſhadow of change*. To whom be given all Glory, both in this *World*, and that to *come*.

Quicquid enim Lunæ *gremio complectitur Orbis,*
Permutat variatque vices, trepidoque tumultu
Æſtuat, & nunquam ſentit pars una quietem.
Nam ruit in ſeſe, & civili vulnere ſemper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; alioque renaſcitur ore,
Rurſus ut intereat; ſic non eſt omnibus unum
Partibus ingenium, non vis nativa. Sed Orbes
Aſtriferi, *& nitidi ſublimis* Regia *Cœli*
Immunis ſenii, & vultu immutabilis uno
Perpetuum ſervat ſolida & ſincera tenorem.

The Verſes are *G. Buchanans*, in his Book *De Sphæra*. Which I thus Tranſlate, and therewithall conclude this Work.

The *World beneath the Moon* its ſhapes doth varie,
And change from this to that; nor can it tarry
Long in one ſtate; but with it ſelf doth jar,
Kils, and is kill'd, in endleſs Civil war.
New form'd again, 'tis but to dye. The frame
Neither of *Bodies* nor of *Minds* the ſame.
But *That above the Spheres*, the Heavens on high,
In which *God* reigns in Glorious Majeſty,
Free from old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Alwaies preſents it ſelf in equal Grace.

***Non nobis*, Domine, *non nobis*, *ſed Nomini tuo detur* Gloria.**

FINIS.

An Advertiſement to the Reader, concerning the enſuing TABLES.

Short Tables may not ſeem proportionable to ſo long a Work, eſpecially in an Age wherein there are ſo many that pretend to Learning, who ſtudy more the Index *than they do the* Book. *But to this Work ſhort Tables will be long enough, conſidering that the Running Titles on the top of each leaf, direct the Reader to a view of thoſe Countreys which he is to Travel; and conſequently to as much knowledge of thoſe things which concern thoſe Countreys as this work can give him. Howſoever, that I may not be wanting in any point to the Readers eaſe, I have drawn thoſe Titles into* Method *by the courſe of the* Alphabet; *and added all the reſt of the* Provinces *both great and ſmall, which are herein mentioned and deſcribed; with the names of thoſe Eſtates and Nations, whether old or new, the ſum of whoſe affairs is here drawn together. This being done in the firſt of theſe* Tables, *I have reduced into a ſecond, the names of thoſe particular Nations, with their ſeveral Tribes (the Principal of them at the leaſt) which antiently inhabited thoſe Kingdomes, Provinces, and Iſlands, the Chorography and Hiſtory whereof is my chief endeavour: that being* marſhalled *by themſelves, they be no hindrance to the Reader in the ſearch of thoſe places, which he hath more deſire to viſit. And finally, whereas there are many things in this work looking towards* Philology, *and ſome particulars not eaſily reduceable to the other* Tables, *I have digeſted the chief of them into a* third; *leaving the reſt unto the conſideration of the ſtudious Reader, who poſſibly might take it ill if nothing ſhould be left to his care and memory.*

A Table of the Principal Countreys, Provinces, Mountains, Seas, and Iſlands, contained and deſcribed in this Book.

A

Abruzzo 71
Apulia 73
Apennine hills 37
Alps M 152
Ænaria 78
Æolian Iſles 86
Adriatick Seas 122
Argow 166
Aquitanica 181
Aquitain 209
Anjou 197
Auxerrois 187, 227
Amiens Vidamate 189
Auvergn 203
Aubigni 206
Angoleſm 208
Armaignac 214
Albret *ib.*
Agenois *ib.*
Aurange 219
Avignon 220
Alderny 231
Andaluzia 260
Algarve 276
Azore *ib.*
Auſturia 257
Aragon 285, 249
Arran 350
Angleſey 351

Lib. II.

Auſtraſia 409, 424
Artois 367
Alſatia 420
Algow 428
Arthuſen 488
Aggerrhuis 494
Aſt achan 518
Auſtria 435
Ausbach 444
Aria 491
Allen *ib.*
Abſyrtides 555
Anhalt 446
Arbe 556
Achaia propria 578
Arcadia 481
Argolis 584
Achaia 587
Attica 588
Athens *ib.*
Ætolia 595
Athamania 596
Acarnania 597
Albania 599
Ægean 613
Ægina 616
Andros 617
Anaphe 619
Aſtydalea *ib.*

Lib. III.

Aſia 639
Aſia minor 641
Aſia propria 650
Aſia ſpecialius dicta 657
Anatolia 641
Amazons 645
Æolis 656
Amathuſia 679
Ammonites 713
Auranitis 718
Aſer 721
Arabia 767
Deſerta 768
Petroſa 769
Felix 773
Amalekites 771
Aſſyria 787
Adiabene *ib.*
Atrapachitis *ib.*
Aladeule 756
Armenia major 798
Armenia minor 650
Albania 805
Atropatia 815
Arachoſia 824
Aria 826
Altai 856
Anian 860
Agra 885
Aurea Cherſoneſus 909
Ava 907
Arrachan 903, 912
Amboina 919

Lib IV.

Africa 932
Africa propria 945
Auguſtanica 927
Arcadia Egyptiaca 929
Ammoniaca 931
Aſgara 956
Algeirs 949, 950
Atlas M. 965
Agadez 971
Æthiopia ſuperior 975
Æthiopia inferior 989
Æthiopick Iſles 1000
Angote, Amara 980
Adel 983
Adea 984
Agaſymba 989
Agags, or *Giacchi* 991, 996
Angola 995
Anzichana 997
Aſcenſion Iſle 1003
Annibon 1004
Atlanticæ Inſ. 1007
America 1011
Andes M. 1056
Amazons 1083
Antigo 1093
Auſtralis Incognita 1091

B

Baſilicate 77
Bari 75
Belgica 181 & *l.* 2, 3
Barrois 187
Brie *ib*
Boulogrois 189
Bretagne 194
Beauſſe 200
Blois 201
Berry 205
Bourbone 202
Beaupolis 203
Buche 211
Bearn *ib.*
Bigorre 213
Breſſe 224
Burgundy *K.* 221
Burgundy *D.* 226

Burgundy *C.* 228
Burgundy Transjurane 153
Biſcay 254
Betica 248
Bæturia 263
Baleares 284
Britain 293
Bardſey 351
The borders 330

Lib. II.

Belgium 359
Bovillon *D.* 377
Brabant 378
Buren *E.* 389
Beverland 3 5
[illegible] 411
Briſgow 428
Bavaria 430
Bamberg *B.* 444
Baden 447
Bohemia 450
Brandenburg 456
Brunſwick 471
Bremen *B.* 476
Borglave 489
Baltick Sea ib.
Baltick Iſlands ib.
Bornholm 491
Bleſcica 492
Bochus 494
Beggerhuis *ib.*
Bodia *or* Bodner 505
Biarmia 516
Boſnia 552
Beſſarabia 563
Bulgaria 568
Bœotia 591
Boſphorus Thracius 613
Boſp. Cimmerius 842

Lib. III.

Bithynia 642
Batanea 717
Beth. Rehob. 718
Benjamen 731
Babylonia 783
Bahaman *K.* 796
Bactria 830
Bargu 860
Botantur 901
Bengala 903
Barma *or* Brama 906,907
Bandam 918
Borneo 920
Bantam 921

Lib. IV.

Barbary 941
Barbaria Antiqua 73
Bugia 948
Biledulgerid 967
Benin }
Bornum } 973
Bagamedrum 981
Bornagaſſum 982
Barus 984
Batta }
Bambu } 996
Bucaalaos 1021
Brion 1025
Briton Iſle *ib.*
Bermudyz 1030
Braſil 1079
Bahama 1033
Bonaire 127
Barbados 1093
Borealis Incognita 1089

C

Celtica 181
Campania 69
Campagna di Roma 100
Calabria 76
  Superior *ib.*
  Inferior 77
Capitanate 74
Capreæ 78
Capraria 133
Camerine 96
Chioggia 123
Corſica Cyrnus 139
Champaigne 186
Cominges 213
Charrolois 227
Corduba *K.* 260
Corvo 277
Caſtile 270
Catalonia 281
Cerdagne 283
Connaught 344
Caſſiterides 351

Lib. II.

Cambray *B.* 371
Cleveland 409
Colon *B.* 414
Carinthia 438
Carniola *ib.*
Cimbrick Cherſoneſe 484
Codonama 491
Corelia 515
Curland 527
Condora 516
Caſan 518
Croatia 552
Carpathian Mountains 540
Contado di Zara 554
Corinthia 586
Chaonia 597
Conſtantinople 609
Cyclades 616
Cythera 619
Crete *ib.*
Candie 620, 623
Canea *ib.*
Claudia 624
Cia 619
Corcyra 627
Curzola 556
Cephalonia 626

Lib. III.

Cappadocia 648
Caria 661
Cilicia 666
Chios 672
Claros 674
Coos *ib.*
Carpathos 675
Cyprus 677
Coel-Syria 700
Comagena 697
Chuſites 772
Colchis 801
Caſpian Sea 829
Circaſſians 845
Chaldæa 783
Carmania 821
Cathay 853
Caſcar 856
Cheſmur }
Camul }
Carazen } 857
Cardandan }
Caindu }
China 864
Citar *K.* 886
Cambaia 887, 888
Canara 890
Cononor 887
Calecut 887
Cranganor 898
Cochin }
Cai-Coulan } 898
Coulan }
Couche 902
Champa 908
Camboia *ib.*
Cauchin China 907

Lib. IV.

Cyrene 932
Carthage 943, 946
Conſtantina 947
Chaus 953
Couche 981
Gafraria 993
Canarie Iſlands 104
Coſyra 964
Cercina *ib.*
Cano }
Caſena } 971
Canada 1023
Cicuic 1035
Cibola 1036
Couliacan 1041
Cinaloa 1040
Califormia 1035, 1037
Chiapa 1052
Coſtu Rica 1054
Chiametla 1041
Caſtella Aurea 1057
Carthagena 1059
Cuſco 1068
Collao 1068
Crux de la Sierra 1078
Charcha 1069
Clide 1073
Capitaniæ de S Vincent. }
  di rio di Janiere }
  di Spirito Sancto } 1080
  di Porto Seguro }
  dos Ilheos }
  di Todos los ſan }
  di Fernambuc }
  di Timaraca }
  di Paraiba } 1081
  di Rio Grande }
  di Siara }
  di Muzagnon }
  di Paria } 1082
Cumana 1088
Cubagna 1090
Coche *ib.*
Caribes 1093
S. Chriſtopher 1094
S. Crux *ib.*
Cuba 1096

D

Daulphine 223

Lib. II.

Duveland 385
Denmark 481
Ditmarſh 486
Dwina 519
Dalmatia 552
Dacia 558
Dardania 614
Doris 595
Delos 616

Lib. III.

Doris 662
Druſians 693
Decapolis 719
Dan 719, 782
Dead ſea 711
Drangiana 824
Dulſinda 883
Delby 885
Diu 887
Decan 889

Lib. IV.

Duccala 953
Dara 967
Damut 980
Dancali }
Dobas } 983
Darien 1058
Dominica 1093
Deſeada *ib.*
Domingo 1095

E

Europe 32
Exarchate 93
Extremadura 263
Ebuiſa 284
England 294
Eaſt-Angles 314
Eaſt-Saxons 313

Lib. II.

Eaſt-Friſeland 477
Eaſtland 526
Elis 579
Epirus 597
Euxine ſea 612
Erithynnus 613
Eubœa 615
Echinades 625

Lib. III.

Ephraim 725
Ergimul 856

Lib. IV.

Egypt 934, 928
Erriffe 957
El-Habat 956
Eſtotiland 1020

F

Favognana 86
Ferrara 93
Flaminia 91
Friuli 120
Florence *D.* 430
France 173
France ſpecial 182
Iſle of France 184
Forreſt 203
Foix 212
Flores *ib.*
Faial 277
Frumentaria 284

Lib. II.

Flanders 365
  Flammengant *ib.*
  Imperial 366
  Gallicant *ib.*
Franconia 442
Fionia *or* Fuinen 490
Fimera 491
Falſtri 490
Frozen Ocean 495
Finmark 505
Finland *ib.*
Freezland 496

Lib. IV.

Feſſe 954, 955
Fatigar 984

Fuert

Fuerte ventura 1005
Florida 1031
Fretum Davis 1090
Fretum le Maire 1092
Fairy-land 1094

G

Giglio 133
Genoa *S.* 136
Geneva *S.* 159
Griſons *B.* 170
Gallia 173
Ciſalpina, Togata 141
Comata 181
Braccata *ib.*
Gaſtinois 184
Guiſnes 188
Guiſe 191
Gurenne 210
Gaſcoign 211
Garneſey 231
Guipaſcoa 254
Gallicia 259
Gades 262
Gibraltar 261
Granada 265
Gratioſa 277
S. Georges *ib.*

Lib. II.

Gelderland 388
Groyningen 390
Germany 396
Gulick 410
Gothland *Cont.* 502
Gothland Iſle 506
Groinland 497
Greece 574
Gyaros 617

Lib. III.

Galatia 647
Gadites 715
Gilead M. 706
Galilee 719
Geſhur 718
Gaulonitis 717
Georgia 803
Geodroſia 823
Gazurate 887
Goa 889
Gouren 902
Gilopo 919

Lib. IV.

Guzzala 952
Garet 956
Goza 45
Gaulos 964
Gualata 971
Gumbra
Ghenega
Gialoſi 972
Guber
Guinea
Guangara
Gaega 973
Guagere 978
Goyami 981
Gorgades 1004
Gomera 1005
Guanahani 1033
Guanima *ib.*
Guadalaiara 1041
Guaxaca 1050
Guatimala 1052, 1053
Guiana 1083, 1084
Granada 1093
Guadalupe *ib.*

H

Hiero 87
Hiſtria 121
Hetruria 129
Hapsburg *E.* 166
Helvetia 167
Heurepoix 183
Hiſpania 241
Hebrides 349
Holy-land 353

Lib. II.

Hainhalt 369
Holland 382
South Holland *ib.*
North Holland 383
Horn *E.* 379
Hegow 427
Hanow 442
Henneberg *E.* 445
Haſſia 473
Holſtein 485, 486
Hollandia 491
Hemodes *ib*
Hyperborean M. 513
Hungarie 541
Hæmus M. 572
Helleſpont 613
Helene 619

Lib. III.

Hermon M. 706
Hieruſalem 732
Hyrcania 826

Lib. IV.

Hea 953
Haſcora *ib.*
S. Helens 1003
Hierro 1005
Holy Port 1007
Heſperides *ib.*
Hondura 1053
Hiſpaniola 1095

I

Italy 34
Iſle of Naples 78
Iſchia *ib.*
Iſles of the *Adriatick* 100, 196
Judecha 123
Ilva 133
Ividot 191
Jarſey 231
Ireland 340
Ila 349
Iona *ib.*

Lib. II.

Juitland 487
Iſeland 495
Jugra 516
Illyricum 551
Imbrus 614
Ionian Sea 624
Ithaca 628
Illyris 554

Lib. III.

Ionia 657
Iſauria 666
Icaria 673
Icarean Sea 674
Iſhtob 718
Ituræa 716
Iſſachar 723
Judæa 727
Judah 729
Idumæa 736
Iſmalites 771
Iberia 803
Imaus M. 856
India 876
Intra Gangem 879
Extra Gangem 905
Iſles of Bengala 903
Jangoma 908
Jor 910
Japan 915
Java major 921
Java minor 922

Lib. IV.

Inhamban 992
Imbians 994
S. Jago 1004
Jucatan 1050
Jamaica 1097
Inſulæ Solomonis 1092

K

Kent *K.* 311
Kenites 771
Kirgeſs. 847

L

Latium 34
Lipara 86
Land of the Church 91
Luca *S.* 135
Lombardie 141
Liguria 136
Lugdunenſis 181, 225
Limaign 203
Limoſin 208
La March *ib.*
Languedock 215
Lionois 225
Luſitanica 248, 274
Leon and Oviedo 257
Lemſter 343
Lundie 351

Lib. II.

Limbourg 375
Luxenbourg 373
Leige 375
Luickland *ib.*
Lorein 422
Luchtenberg 449
Lunenbourg 471
Lawenburg 467
Luſatia 455
Lippe *E.* 476
Langeland 490
Lawland *ib.*
Lapland 504
Livonia 525
Lettenland 527
Lituania 528
Laconia 581
Liburnades 555
Locris 594
Lemnos 594
Leucadia 614

Lib. III.

Leuco-Syria 646
Lydia 659
Lycia 662
Lycaonia 664
Lesbos 671
Lapethia 671
Lop 857
Lahor 884
Laos 908
Lequin 917
Luſſon *ib.*

Lib. IV.

Libya 930
Libya interior 965
Libya Deſerta 968
Latophagitis 964
Loango 997
Loande 998
Lanſerotte 1005
Lucaios 1033
Lima 1067
Ladrones 1092
Lands of Chivalry 1094

M

Moloſſe 72
Mazara 85
Mona 86
Muriano 123
Marca Anconitana 96
Marca Trevigiana 118
Mediterranian Sea 81
Malamocco 122
Millain 143
Mantua 146
Modena 147
Montferrat 149
Maine 198
Monpenſier 216
Murcia 267
Montpelier 283
Majorca *K.* 283
Majorca Iſland 284
Minorca 285
Mercia 315
Munſter 345
Meath 343
Man 350
S. Maries 277
S. Michael *ib.*

Lib. II.

Marquiſate of the Empire 379
Machlyn 380
Mark 412
Muers 409
Mentz *B.* 416
Montbelgard 422
Moravia 454
Mecklenburg 461
Magdeburg 464
Miſnia 463
Mansfield 466
Moſcovia 514
Moſaiskie *ib.*
Mordwitz 518
Maſſovia 531
Mellida 556
Moldavia 562
Mæſia 569
Meſſene 580
Mycenæ 584
Megaris 591
Macedon 601, 603
Mygdonia 604
Melos 619

Lib. III.

Metapontus 644
Myſia 654
Myſia Olympena 656
Mœonia 659
Menteſia 662
Midianites 712, 771
Moabites 712

Manaſſes 717, 724
Meſopotamia 789
Media 814
Margiana 830
Mandao 884
Moultan ib
Moguls 904
Malabar 896
Maletur
Malaca 909
Muantay 911
Martavan 912
Macin ib.
Meaco 916
Mindanao 917
Macaſſar 920
Madura 922
Maldivæ 924
Moluccoes 918

Lib. IV.

Mauritania 35
 Cæſarienſis 449
 Sitifenſis 951
 Tingitana 954
Morocco K.
Morocco P } 952
Mamalucks 937
Malta 934
Mally 972
Meroe 978
Melinde
Mombaza } 990
Moſambique
Moinhemage } 991
Monomotapa 992
Matuca 992
Manicongo 994
Madagaſcar 1001
Mohelia 1002
Mauritius ib.
Madera 1006
Mary-land 1028
Mexico 1047
Mexicana 1046
Mechuacan 1045
Martyres Iſles 1033
S. Martha 1059
Magellanica 1074
Magellane Straights 1075
Maragnon 1082
Margarita 1090
Matinino 1093
Mona
Monico } 1095
Mundus alter & idem 1093

N

Naples K. 68
Narbonenſis 181, 216, 217
Normandy 191
Nivernois 202
Navarre 250
Northumberland K. 314
North-Wales 327

Lib. II.

Namur 371
Naſſaw 440
Northgoia 448
Novogorod the Great 515
Novogrod Inferior 518
Northern Ocean 495
Norwey 494
Nova Zemla 520
Noricum 435
Negropont 615
Naxos 617
Nurenberg 449

Lib. III.

Naphthali 719
Nabathæa 769
Nagaians 847
Narſinga 899

Lib. IV.

Numidia antiqua 948
Numidia nova 960
Nubia 974
Norumbeega 1024
Natiſcoet 1024
Nicaragua 1054
New Bretagne 1021
Nova Francia 1023
New-found-land 1021
Nova Scotia 1024
New-England 1026
Novum Belgium 1027
Nova Albion 1028
Nova Gallicia 1040
New Biſcay 1042
New Mexico 1043
Nova Hiſpania 1044
Nova Andaluſia 1058
New Granado 1060
Nieves 1094
Nova Guinea 1093
New Atlantis 1094
New World in the Moon 1095

O

Orleanois 200
Oleron 230
Orange, *v.* Aurange
Olava 250
Oviedo 257
The Ocean 27
Orcades 349

Lib. II.

Overyſſel 388
Oldenburg 478
Oeland 506
Obdora 516
Oſilia 527
Oebalia 581
Ortygia 617

Lib. III.

Oſroene 790
Ormus 822
Oriſtan 901

Lib. IV.

Ora Anteroſa 971
Orenoque 1085
Orbis Arcticus 1089

P

Puglia 73
Prochita 78
Principate 71
Papacie 86, 87, &c.
S. Peters patrimony 99
Povegia 123
Pila *S* 132
Planaſia 134
Parma *D.* 148
Piemont 155
Paris 185
Picardy 188
Pontheia 189
Perch 193
Poictou 206
Perigort 208
Province 218
Pirenæan mountains 240
Portugal 277
Pico 276
Powiſlan 327
Pomona 349
Pictland 334

Lib. II.

S. Paul *E.* 367
Pfirtz 422
Palatinate of the Rhene 417
 of Northgoia 448
Pannonia 541
Pomerania 459
Permia 517
Petzora 516
Pleſcow 515
Poland K. 524
Poland *Pr.* 535
Podolia 530
Podlaſſia 532
Pruſſia ib.
Pharus 553
Pontus 569
Peloponneſus 577
Phocis 592
Propontis 613
Proconneſus ib
Paros 617

Lib III.

Pontus 644
 Galaticus ib.
 Pelemoniacus 645
 Cappadocius ib.
Paphlagonia 646
Phrygia major 653
 minor 651
Pergamus K. 656
Piſidia 664
Pamphilia 665
Patmos 674
Paphia 679
Phœnicia 688
Palmyrene 699
Paleſtine 707
Philiſtims 727
Peræa 712
Panchaia 774
Panea 720
Perſia 816
Perſis 819
Parapomiſus 825
Parthia 827
Penega 883
Patenaw 902
Patane 910
Prom 907
Pegu 911, 912
Pallohan 917
Polerone 919
Poolaway ib.
Philippine Iſlands 917

Lib. IV.

Pharos 923
Pemba 996
Pango 997
Princes Iſland 1004
Palma 1005
Panuco 1045
Peruana 1056
Panama 1057
Popayana 1061
De la Plata 1077
Providence 1091
Peru 1063
Paria 1088
Porto Rico 1094
Pſittacorum Regio 1091
Painters Wives Iſland ib.

Q

Quleetu 209

Lib. IV.

Quiloa 990
Quiticui 992
Quivira 1035
Quitos
Quixos } 1066

R

Romandiola 91
Rome 101
Rhœtia 170
Rethelois 191
Rochelois 209
Rouvergn 216
Rhe Iſle 231
Rouſillou 288
Rothſay 350

Lib. II.

Raveſtein 379
Ravensburg 476
Rip 488
Ruſſia 510
Ruſſia Nigra 531
Rhezan 517
Raguſi 553, 556
Raſcia 565
Rhetimo 623

Lib. III.

Rhodes 675
Reubenites 714
Rio di la Hacha 1059
Red ſea 774
Rame 902
Ramea 1024

S

Sicil 81
Stromboli 86
Sardinia 89
Sabinia 98
Spoletano Ducato 97
Sienna *S.* 132
Savoy 155, 156
Saluzzes 156
Switzerland 163
Saniterre 189
Soiſſons K. 190
Sologne 200
Sancerre 205
Sark 131
Spain 240
Sobrarbe 151
South-Saxons K. 311
South-wales 327
Scotland 330
Sodore 349
Schecland ib.
Sorlinges or Silly Iſles 351
Sunderland 353

Lib. II.

Sedan 373
Schowen 385
Spires *B.* 418
Sungow 421
Suevla or Schwaben 427
Saltzburg *B.* 432
Stiermark 437
Solm *E.* 442
Swartzenberg *E.* 445
Sileſia 455
Saxonie *D.* 462
Saxonie *Pr.* 465
Storemarſh 485
Sleſwick 488
Seland 489
Scandia 491
Sconia 492
Swethland 500
Sweden 504
Scricfinia 505
Smolensko 514
Severia 517
Sarmatia Europæa 520
Aſiatica *l.* 3. 190
Samogitia 528
Sclavonia 550

TABLE I.

Servia 566
Savia 541, 551
Sicyonia 578
Sparta 581
Samothracia 614
Salamis 616
Scyros 618
Seriphia 619
Sporades ib.
Sittia 622
Strophades 624

Lib. III.

Solæ 667
Samos 673
Salaminia 680
Syria 684
Syria propria 693
Syria Sobab 700
Syria Maacha 697
Samaria 723
Simeon 729
Saracens 770, 779
Sophene 800
Suſiana 818
Scythia 852
Sacæ 848
Sogdiana 849
Samoyeds 851
Serica 854
Sinda 887
Sanga 886
Siam *K.* 909
Siam *Pr.* 910
Sinda *or* Selebes 919
Sumatra 922

Lib. IV.

Sus 952
Sara 968
Sanaga 971
Sofala 991
Sunda 997
Songo ib.
Iſle of Sable 1025
Seio 1035
Solomonis Inſ. 1092

T

Terra di Lavoro 99
Terra di Otranto 75
Torcellan 122
Tuſcanie *D.* 129
Tyrrhenia ib.
Tuſcan Iſles 133
Tieraſche 191
Tourein 198
Tarraconenſis 543
Toledo *K.* 268
Tercera 276
Thule 349, 496
Thanet 352

Lib. II.

Tolen 385
Triers *B.* 415
Tirol 439
Toſinge 491
Tuver 519
Trondheim 495
Tutingia 446
Tranſylvania 559
Thebes 591
Theſſalia 602
Thrace 607
Thracius Boſphorus 613
Thynnius ib.
Thaſſus 614
Thera 619
Tenos 617

Lib. III.

Troy *K.* 651
Tenedos 670
Trabezond *Emp.* 645
Thachonitis 716
Taurus *M.* 796
Turcomania 798
Turks 806
Turcheſtan 850
Tartaria 840
  Precopenſis 841
  Deſerta 844
  Antiqua 859
Tartar *Pr.* 860
Thumenſes 847
Tainfu 857
Tanguth 857
Thebet }
Tabor }
Tenduc } 859
Tarnaſſar 900
Travancor 898
Tangu 907
Trippara 902
Tandair 917
Timore 918
Terenate ib.

Lib. IV.

Thebais 929
Tunis *K.* 645, 646
Tripolis 645
Tremeſen 949
Taradant 952
Tedies 953
Temeſna 954
Targa 968
Terra Nigritarum 970
Tombutum 972
Trogloditica 975
Tigrenaon 979
Torra 992
S. Thomas 1003
Tenariſſe 1005
Terra Corterialis 1021
Tortugas 1033
Tiguez 1035
Tlaſcalla 1049
Tabaſco 1051
Tucayan 1037
Tucuman ib.
Trinidado 1087
Tabaga 1077
Toruga 1091
Terra del Fuego ib.

U

Val de Noto 84
Vulcanian Iſles 86
Urbine *D.* 95
Umbria 97
Venice *S.* 118
Venice *C.* 123
Valeſia 163
Valois 183
Veromandois 190
Vendoſm 201
Venuiſcine 226
Valentia 280
Ulſter 344

Lib. II.

Voorn 384
Utrecht 387
Vindelicia 431
Veteravia 440
Voitland 446
Volodomir 519
Volhinia 530
Valachia 563
Valeria 541, 551
Veggia 555

Lib. III.

Verma 912

Lib. IV.

Virginia 1026, 1128
Uxitipa 1041
Utrapaz 1051
Veragua 1054
Venezuela 1089
S. Vincent 1093
Utopia 1195

W

Walliſland 162
Weſt-Saxon K. 312
Wales 322
  North-Wales 316
  South-Wales 317
Wight 352

Lib. II.

Walchere 385
Weſt-Friſeland 386
Wurtzburg *B.* 444
Wirtenberg 446
Waldeck 474
Weſtphalia 475
Walferſdike 385
Worms *B.* 418
Waggerland 485
Wardhuis 495
Wheen 490
Wiatka 517
Worotine 519
Wolodomir 519
Willoughbies Iſland 520
Windiſchland 551

X

Xantoign 209

Lib. IV.

Xoa 984
Xaliſco 1041

Z

Lib. II.

Zeland 384
Zutphen 389
Zemla Nova 520
Zaculeia 560
Zara 554, 556
Zant 625

Lib. III.

Zabulon 721
Zavolhenſes 846
Zagathay 848, 849
Zeilan *or* Seilan 923

Lib. IV.

Zerby Iſle 964
Zanaga 968
Zuenziga ib.
Zanzibar 989
Zocatora 1001
Zacatecas 1042
Mare del Zur 1092

The end of the Firſt Table.

TABLE II.

A Table of the ancient Names of the Tribes and Nations which are herein ſpecified; as they are delivered by Ptolomy, Strabo, Pliny, and the reſt of the old Geographers.

A

APuli 73
Allobroges 152
Ambiani 157, 188
Abrincantes 192
Armorici 196
Ambiliates 195
Andes *or* Andegavi 197
Arverni 204, 227
Aguenſes 211
Auſcii ib.
Agathenſes 217
Albigenſes 216, 227
Arecomaci 217
Apincenſes 224
Acuſiani 223
Aſtures 257
Antrigones 255
Arivacæ 271
Auxitani 282
Attrebatii 308
Auteri 346

Lib. II.

Attrebates 367
Aduatici 363
Alemanni 396
Angeli 431
Alauni 435, 520
Ambilici 435
Ambiſontii ib.
Ambridamuni ib.
Angrivarii 475
Achæi 578
Achivi 587
Ambrones 479
Argivi 574
Arii 491, 536
Agathyrſi 520
Aorſi 529
Avarini 534
Avares 436, 546, 846
Azuli 544
Aravici 545
Anarti 561
Aroteres 570
Athamanes 596
Æſtræi 600

Lib. III.

Auſitæ 768
Adubeni 769
Agræi ib
Adramitæ }
Avaritiæ } 777
Abuceni }
Ægæi ib.
Albani 599, 805
Arymphæi 806
Amariacli 816
Aræ 822
Arbituri 824
Agriaſpæ ib.
Aromaſpæ 825
Arii 826
Aſtorani ib.
Arſitenſes ib.
Amariſpæ 831
Aſtorbeni 829
Æſchienſes 174
Alani 843, 851
Arinchi 843
Argaritæ 848
Anabi 856
Alanoeſi 851
Aſiotæ ib.
Aletrophagi 856
Abæi ib.
Aſpithræ 870
Acadræ ib.
Anabaſtæ ib.
Aii }
Arvari } 881
Adiſathræ }
Animachæ 906
Anurogrammi 924

Lib. IV.

Ægypiani 932
Adyrmachidæ 931
Arabes Azari }
Arabes Adri } 934
Asbetæ 933
Africerones 966
Auroncæ }
Agargeni } 974
Achalinces }

B

BRutii 77
Balari 139
Bellovaci 183
Bellocaſſi 193
Baiocenſes ib
Bituriges Cubi 205
Bituriges & Ubiſci 210
Boii 142, 203, 492, 433, 450
Bigerrones 213
Bitterenſes 217
Bedii 259
Baſtuli 264
Baſtitani 272, 281
Bructeri 232, 388
Belgæ 308, 360
Brigantes 308, 346
Blanii ib.

Lib. II.

Batavi 386
Brixantes 429
Biephi 561
Boiemi 450
Bemi ib
Baurii 455
Baſtarnæ 567
Boruſſi 532, 534
Breuci 544
Burredenſii 561
B[illegible]ſſi 552, 563
Bardi 611

Lib. III.

Byceni 647
Batrii 824
Borgii 826
Baſilici 848
Bylci ib.
Batæ 856
Bittigi 881
Baſadæ 906
Barræ ib.

Lib. IV.

Belemmyæ 932
Baſſachites ib.
Bures ib.
Barcæi ib.
Barcitæ 933

C

CAraceni 72
Campans 69
Calabri 76
Cyclopes 82
Cenomani 119, 142, 197, 198
Corſi 139
Carni 152
Centrones 157
Celtæ 173
Catalauni 186
Caletes 193
Carnutes 200
Cadurci 209
Convenares 211
Conſerani ib.
Cavari 224
Cheruſci 232
Cantabri 255
Cariſti ib.
Cilini 259
Capori ib.
Carpentani 268, 271
Celtici 264, 278
Caſtellini 271
Conteſtani 281
Celtiberi 271, 281, 286
Cerretani 283
Caſerani 282
Cantiani 308
Cattiduchlani ib.
Coritani ib.
Cornavii ib.
Caledonii 334
Cantæ ib.
Cantini ib.
Cornubii ib.
Cauci 346
Cariendi ib.

Lib. II.

Caninefates 386
Caleucones 429
Carni 438
Charitini 442
Chaſmari 465
Cheruſci 468, 475
Catti 441
Chauci 472
Chauci majores 475
Chauci minores 478
C[illegible]nai 475
C[illegible]i 489
Charades 489
Cimbri 484, 489
Cobandi ib.
Chuni 544
Chedni 497
Ceraunii 556
Cucoenſii 561
Cribizi 569
Curetes 596, 620

Lib. III.

Cures 666
Caſſanitæ 777
Chaucabeni 769
Cynædecolpitæ 777
Gattabani ib.
Chalives 804
Gaucaſii 805
Coſſæi 819
Caduſii 816
Carmani 821
Chetonophagi 822
Cabadini ib.
Charadræ 822
Caſpii 829
Chirondi ib.
Chariſpæ 831
Coamini ib.
Gimmerii 846
Coaxtræ ib.
Caſſoritæ 826
Canapſeni 848
Chænides ib.
Garatæ ib.
Camari }
Comedæ } ib.
Candari 849
Cheraſmii ib.
Cabocæ 906
Chatæ 855, 856
Chauranæi ib.
Caſpiræi }
Chatzæ } 881
Chadrammotitæ }
Cadutæ 906

Lib. IV.

Cynophanes 932
Cirteſii 949
Chituæ 950

D

DEcenſes 224
Decroates 137, 221
Dittani 271
Danmonii 308
Durotriges ib.
Dobuni ib.
Damnii 334
Dimetæ 323
Darnii 346. *l.* 2
Daucione's 492
Daci 544
Davi 558
Daurſii 556
Danduti 446
Derii 556
Dardani 267
Dinenſii 569
Danai 574

Dolopes

Dores 595
Dolopes 601
Dolongi 611
Lib. III.
Debryces 816
Darandæ 824
Drachamæ 826
Derbicæ 830
Drepſiani 849
Dryllophitæ 881
Lib. IV.
Derbici 966

E

Euganei 121
Euburiades 137
Eburones 192, 193, 375
Engoliſmenſes 208
Edetani 281
Ericni 346
Lib. II.
Elyſii 491, 536
Eſtii 526, 527
Ercuniates 544
Epicnemidii 595
Lib. III.
Epicteti 651
Eleſari 777
Elymæi 819
Euergetæ 825
Eoritæ *ib.*

F

Ferentini 72
Faliſci 130
Fidenates 100
Fluſſates 212
Friſii 232, 386, 477
Lib. II.
Francones 442
Finni 505
Franks 442

G

Gubbales 217
Gagari 257
Gallaici 259
Gallaici Braccarii 278
Gallaici Lucenſes 278
Gereſæni 268
Gadeni 334
Gaugani 346
Lib. II.
Gothini 455
Gutæ 492
Gothones 502
Gythones 534
Galindæ 534
Gepidæ 546
Lib. III.
Gerræi 777
Georgi 803
Gordiæi 803
Gerri 848
Grynæi 848
Geranæi 856
Galactophagi 851
Gandarides 906, 881
Gangeni 906
Galthi 924
Lib. IV.
Goniatæ 932
Getuli } 966
Garamantes }
Gamoſaphantes 932
Galla 992

H

Hirpini 72
Hetruſci 129
Heneti 125
Hedui 143, 203, 225, 227
Helvetii 167
Helvii 216, 217
Lib. II.
Hermanduri 432
Heruli 459, 460, 461
Helveronæ 536
Hunni 547, 846
Hunugari *ib.*
Helotes 584
Lib. III.
Heptacometæ 647
Homeritæ 777
Hyrcani 829
Hamaxobii 843
Hyperborei 848
Hippophagi 821. *ib.*
Lib. IV.
Heſperii 989
Herpiditani 950

I

Iapyges 73, 75
Ingauni 137
Inſubres 142, 143
Indigetes 288
Illercones 282
Illergetes 249
Jaccetani 282, 286
Iceni 308
Lib. II.
Intuergi 418, 447
Jazyges Metanaſtæ 544
Jaſſii *ib.*
Japides 556
Inachii 226
Lib. III.
Iberi 804
Jazyges 843
Jaſii 849
Jaxartæ 851
Iſſedones 855
Indo-Scythæ 881
Lib. IV.
Jonii 949
Jerbicæ 35
Ichthyophagi 989, 870

L

Latini 38
Laurentini *ib.*
Lucani 77
Læſtrigones 82
Lepontii 152
Libyci 155
Lingones 186
Lexobii 193
Lemovices 209
Leſtoraces 211
Lancienſes 257
Lemari 259
Luſitani 276, 278
Laccetani 286
Lib. II.
Leuci 423
Longimani 460
Longiduni *ib.*
Longobardi 468, 545, 546
Livoni 526, 527
Liburni 554
Latovici 544
Leleges 581
Lapithæ 601
Lib. III.
Leucoſyri 646
Lydians 660
Lycii 663
Lycaones 664
Leonitæ 777
Limyrices 881
Leſtori 906
Lambatiæ 881
Lib. IV.
Libyarchæ 932
Lybi Ægyptii 932
Libyi Phœnices 949
Loganici 933

M

Meſapii 73. 75
Medalli 157
Meldi 187
Morini 189, 367
Maſſilienſes 221
Marbogi 255
Meatæ 334
Menapii 346, 390
Lib. II.
Mattiaci 386
Medionatrices 423
Marſi 409, 485
Marcomanni 436
Marſigni 455
Mazæi 556
Mœli 567
Myrmidons 601
Moloſſi 598
Lib. III.
Maſſinoeci 647
Myſi 655
Materni 769
Maſoni 769
Minœi 777
Margaſi 816
Meſabatæ 821
Megores *ib.*
Maſarnæ 824
Maſdorami 826
Maxeræ 829
Maricæ 831
Mœtæ 842, 846
Merdi 848
Maſſagetæ 830, 848
Maſſæi 851
Mazagæ 881
Malli *ib.*
Mologeni 851
Muſicani 881
Mandalæ *ib.*
Marandæ 906
Muduttæ 924
Lib. IV.
Marmaridæ 930
Macututæ 933
Mathymi 949
Medini *ib.*
Malchubii 950
Maccharobi *ib.*
Mauri }
Mauruſii } 951
Metagonitæ }
Maſæſili 949
Meinari 966
Macrobii 978

N

Nannetes 191
Novantes 334
Nagnatæ 444
Lib. II.
Nervii 370, 372
Nemetes 418
Norici 432, 435
Noriſci 432, 449
Naithones 457
Neteriates 464
Naharvali 536
Lib. III.
Nyſæi 826
Nabathæi 769
Napæi 843
Nanigeri } 924
Nagaudi }
Lib. IV.
Nigitimi 949
Novatæ *ib.*
Nectiberres 659
Nigritæ } 966
Nubæ }
Nabatræ 974

O

Oxilii 137
Oſiſmi 195
Oretani 271
Ortadini 308
Ordovices 323
Lib. II.
Obitriti 461
Oſyli 520
Oſoniates 544
Ozolæ 595
Opuntii *ib.*
Lib. III.
Olympeni 655
Orbitæ 824
Orcheni 769
Obares 826
Olandæ 848
Oxydracæ 849
880
Oxiani 149
Ottocororæ 856
Lib. IV.
Ogdoni 932
Odranguli 966

P

Peligni 72
Precutini *ib.*
Piceni 71
Picentes 96
Picentini 71
Piſæ 132
Pariſii 183
Pictones 206
Petrigorii 208
Peſici 257
Pictis 334
Lib. II.
Phrunduſii 489
Pagiritæ 520
Phinni 534
Pagirini 529
Phrungudiones 534
Pæones 544
Parii 555

TABLE. II.

Peiruſtæ 556
Picentii 567
Peucini 569
Piarenſii ib.
Pelaſgi 574
Lib. III.
Preſelimnitæ 647
Phryges 653
Piſidæ 664
Paſagartæ 822
Parſuræ 824
Pargyetæ 825
Parambi 826
Parni 830
Pſelli 846
Piaſæ 856
Piratæ
Pezuari
Polindæ 881
Phyllitæ
Pandiani
Lib. IV.
Proſiditæ 932
Pœni 943
Peraſori 966
Pyrrhæi
Pſilli ib.

Q

Quadi *l.*2.436,454

R

Rutuli 100
Rhæti 152,170
Rhemi 186
Rhodones 195
Ruteni 216
Regni 308
Rhobogdii 344
Lib. II.
Ramuraci 422
Ruguſci 429
Rugii 459
Reudigni 460
Rutheni 520
Roxolani 520, 843
Roſſi 510
Rhatacenſii 561
Raſciani 565
Lib. III.
Raubeni 769
Ramnæ 824
Rochitæ 825
Rhabbanæi 856
Rapſii 821, 989
Rhogandani 924

S

Samnites 72
Salentini 73, 75
Sicani 82
Siculi ib.
Sabini 98
Sadani 152
Salii 152, 219
Salaſſi 155
Senones 142,186,187
Silvanectes 183
Salures 193
Sueſſiones 183
Samnitæ 200
Seguſiani 203
Sautones 209
Senitii 221
Sigeſtorii ib.
Secuſiani 225
Sequani 228
Scyrani 194, 195
Securi 259
Segalauni 224
Silures 322
Selgovæ 334
Lib. II.
Sicambri 81,232,390
Suentes 429
Sevates 435
Salii 443 & *l.* 1. 198
Suardones 464
Saxons 310,468,475
186
Sigalones 486
Subalingii ib.
Suethidi 506,500,504
Sitones 506
Suiones ib. 507
Syculi 560
Sauromatæ 520
Savari 529
Sudini 534
Sulanes ib.
Scordiſci 544
Sclavini 557
Siculotæ 556
Sardiotæ ib.
Scirtones ib.
Soravi ſervi 567
Strimonii 611
Sapæi ib.
Sali ib.
Sulanes 534
Lib. III.
Solymi 664
Soli 667
Sachalites 777
Sabæi ib.
Soani 805
Suſeani 819
Suzæi 821
Stabæi ib.
Sagartii 816
Sazaræ 822
Sieri 825
Salateræ 831
Scordæ ib.
Savadii ib.
Sinchi 843
Sythi 852
Samocolchi 848
Socani ib.
Seci ib.
Seres 855
Scimnitæ 848
Sozyges 856
Semantini 870
Saubeni 851
Saſones ib.
Sadani
Soringi 881
Sabari
Sindocandæ
Soani 924
Semni
Lib. IV.
Sciapolæ 932
Succuſii 951

T

Tarentini 75, 77
Tyrrheni 129
Tuſci ib.
Taurini 155
Tricaſſes 186
Tectoſages 216, 647, 851
Toloſates 216
Turones 197
Tricaſſini 224
Teucteri 232
Turdetani 244, 264
Turduli ib.
Tuditani 278
Trinobantes 308
Talzalli 334
Lib. II.
Tungri 363, 376
Treveri 416
Tribochi 422
Tauriſci 438, 561
Turingi 464
Tricorneſii 567
Teutones 491
Triballi 569
Tegeates 581
Talautii 600
Lib III.
Thynni 642
Themiſcyrii 645
Tibareni 647
Trogmi ib.
Toliboſti ib.
Turcæ 806,846
Thyrſagetæ ib.
Tapyri 816, 830
Tombyzi 831
Thocati ib.
Tauri 841, 843
Tauro-ſcythæ ib.
Thyrambæ 846
Tachozi 849
Taporæi 852
Thoani 856
Tacoræi 906
Tilædæ ib.
Tarachi 924
Lib. IV.
Taladuſii 950
Thaloſſii
Troglodites 569, 975

U

Veſtini 72
Umbri 97
Volſci 100
Veneti 123, 125, 195
Veii 130
Veragri 152
Valenſes 152, 162
Vacontii 152
Veromandui 118, 190
Venelhocaſſi 193
Vaſſates 211
Vaccæi 212, 271
Velauni 216
Volciæ 217
Vencienſes 220
Vaſionenſes ib.
Valentini 223
Vocontii 214
Vaſcones 252, 254
Varduli 255
Ventones 271
Vermines 334
Vacomagi ib.
Volentii 346
Veniculi ib.
Velibori ib.
Utarni ib.
Vodii ib.
Lib. II.
Ubii 414
Vangiones 418
Veredonenſes 423
Vindelici 428, 429, 430, 431
Virthungi 446
Varini 457
Vandali 461
Venedi 456, 534
Vardæ 556
Lib. IV.
Veli
Vacuatæ 951
Verbiſæ

W

Winithi *l.* 2. 456, 460, 551
Werciani *l.* 2. 544
Winnili *l.* 2. 545

X

Xilines 974
Xanthi 660

Z

Zoclæ [illegible]57
Lib. III.
Zaviaſpæ 831
Zigæ 845, 846
Zychi *or* Zinchi 845
Zararæ 851

The end of the ſecond Table.

A Table of ſome principal things herein contained, not properly reducible to the other two.

A.

ABades, a ſtrange beaſt, the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients 888

Abaſſines, by whom converted 976. their Heterodoxies and opinions *ibid.*

Abilene, the Tetrarchy of *Lyſanias*, where it was 701, 718. why reckoned *Luke* 3. amongſt the portions of *Herod*'s Children 701

Abydus beſieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and in diſtreſs, is fired by the Inhabitants, who likewiſe ſlew themſelves 655. betrayed ſince to the *Turks* by the Governours daughter *ibid.*

Adamites, why ſo called, and what 450. by whom deſtroyed *ib.*

Adolphus II. Earl of *Berg*, ſhut up in an Iron veſſel, and miſerably ſtung to death by Bees 411

Adriatick-Sea, whence it had the name 122. the great extent thereof in ſome ancient Writers *ib.* married to the Duke of *Venice* every holy Thurſday *ib.*

Adviſe of an old Caſique to *Columbus* 1097

Æolus, why made the God of the Winds 86

Æs Corinthium, what it was, how highly prized, and how occaſioned 587

Ætna, the violent burnings of it 83. and the cauſe thereof 84

Africa, whence it had the name 931, 932. the eſtate of Chriſtianity in it, how much decayed 933. the ſeveral languages therein ſpoken *ibid.* The monſtrous things reported of it by ſome of the ancients 932

Agbarus, Prince of *Edeſſa*, his meſſage to our Saviour 789

Albigenſes, what they were, and why ſo called 226. The ſumm and ſubſtance of their ſtory 225, 226

Alcoran, the book of the *Mahometan* Law, why ſo called 778. how highly reverenced *ib.* The Doctrinals thereof reduced, *&c.* reduced unto eight Commandments *ib.*

Alfonſine, Tables by whom compiled, and the coſt beſtowed in the compiling of them 272

Alluſion, of a *French* Gentleman, concerning the cauſe of their civil broils 179

Almans, from whence ſo called 396. of what ſeveral Nations they conſiſted 419. their affairs and ſtory. *ib.*

Almodad, the ſon of *Jocktan*, where moſt probably fixed 11

Aloes a precious Wood, worth its weight in ſilver 908. *Aloes Zocatrina*, from what place it comes 1001

Amara, a Mountain in *Æthiopia*, deſcribed 980

Amazons, why ſo called 145. their dwelling place *ib.* 848. the ſum and ſubſtance of their affairs 645

Amber, where it groweth, how gathered, and the vertues of it, 532. *Amber liquid* 1053

America, not known to the Ancients 1011. by whom firſt diſcovered 1012, 1013. the people of it not ſo black as the *Africans* 1016. that they are deſcended of the *Tartars* ib. The eſtate of Chriſtianity in it *ibid.* The ingenuity of the people in their Feather pictures 1018

Amethyſt, a precious ſtone, and the vertues of it 647

Amianthus, a ſtone whereof cloath is made 615. which ſtained, is cleanſed by fire *ib.*

Amphictynes, what they were, and of their Authority 593

Amphiſcii, why ſo called, and what they are in Geography 24

Amycles ſilentium perdidit, a by-word, and from whence it came 77

Amyris inſanit, an old proverb, the meaning and occaſion of it 77

Anabaptiſt cuts off his brothers head 165. their furies and proceeding in the City of *Munſter* 476. their demands in the inſurrection of the Boors 542

Anakim, the name of a *Gigantine* race of men, and why given unto them 729

Ananim, the father of the *Hamanientes*, an *African* people 13

Ἁναπχριδίζειν, an old by-word, and the meaning of it 617

Anchorets, whence ſo called 116. buried whileſt alive *ib.*

Annals, what they are 20. & how they differ from Hiſtories *ib.*

Anſwer, a feeling one of an *Engliſh* Captain to a ſcoffing demand of the *French* 179. a ſmart one of *Spinola* to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange* 68. of *Richard* I. to the Pope, writing for the Releaſment of the Biſhop of *Beauvois* 183. of the *Conquerour* concerning his impriſoning of *B. Odo* 192. of Dr. *Dale* to the *Spaniſh* Commiſſioners 765

Anticyram naviget, a proverb, and to whom applicable 593

Antipodes, what they are 24. The tenet touching them derided by ſome of the ancients *ib.* condemned of Hereſie in the darker times of the Church *ib.*

Antioch, the ſame with *Riblath* 694. its ſtory 696

Antoeci, what they are in Geography 24

Antonius Army in diſtreſs, relieved by the prayers of Chriſtians 454

Apennage, what 177

Archery, where moſt practiſed in elder times 827. *Cezeremiſſi*, good Archers 518. the excellency of the *Engliſh* at it 827. whether Guns, or that to be preferred *ib.*

Aram the ſon of *Sem*, the founder of the *Syrians* 9, 684. the large extent of that name in Holy Scripture *ib.*

Areopagites, what they were, and from whence ſo called 590

Argonauts, who they were, and whence ſo denominated 802. their expedition into *Colchis* ib.

Argoſies, great ſhips of burden, whence they had their name 554

Ariamnes, a *Galatian* feaſted the whole Nation for a year together *ib.*

Ariſtomenes, ſtrange eſcape out of priſon 589

Ariſtotle, the Precurſor of Chriſt, *in rebus naturalibus* 2. Why he conceived the World to have been eternal *ib.*

Arius, the Heretick his diſſimulation and death 931

Ark of *Noah*, where made 788. in what place it reſted after the floud 7, 8, 830.

Armadilla, a ſtrange beaſt in *America*, 429 the deſcription of it 1018

Armenians, in what point they differ from other Chriſtians, 799. how, and by whom their Church is governed *ib.*

Arms, why firſt uſed 62. by whom firſt quartered 259. why thoſe of *England* give place in the ſame *Eſcocheon* to the Arms of *France* 321
Arphaxad, the father of the *Chaldeans* 9. firſt ſetled in the Region, called *Arrapactitis*, ib. and 787.
Arroba, a *Spaniſh* meaſure, the content thereof 1044
Arviſian, Wines much celebrated 672. in what place they grow *ib.*
Arundel, created a Count of the Empire by the Emperour *Rodolphus*, and afterwards Lord *Arundel* of *Wardour*, by King *James* 544
Aſia, whence ſo called at firſt 639. the ſeveral notions of the word, and in what ſenſe uſed in holy Scripture 641. the eſtate of Chriſtianity in it 640. amongſt whom divided *ib.*
Askenaz, the ſon of *Gomer*, firſt ſetled in *Bithynia* and *Phrygia minor* 14, 642, 654
Aſpendus Cithariſta, a proverb, and the meaning of it 665
Aſſur, the ſon of *Sem*, where planted 9, 787. the *Aſſyrians* deſcended of him *ib.* why ſo eaſily conquered by all Invaders 794
Athens 588
Attila, the *Hun*, why called *Flagellum Dei* 217, 545. his bloody end, *ib.* his Coat of Arms 549
Augur, and *Aruſpex*, how they differ 793. whence they had their names. *ib.*
Auguſtane Confeſſion, why ſo called 428. by whom, and where confirmed 428, 432.
St. *Auguſtines* tart reply to an Atheiſtical demand 2. the Order of *Friers* by him founded 114
Auguſtus, or an Eſſay of the Means and Counſels, by which he reduced the Commonwealth of *Rome* to the ſtate of Monarchy 44
Avi ſiniſtra, what it meaneth, and the reaſon of it. 793.
Aulæa, Tapeſtries, why ſo called, and by whom invented 656
Auſtraſia, what Provinces it contained, when firſt made a Kingdom 424. the ſtory and Kings thereof *ib.*
Auſtralis incognita, the vaſt greatneſs of it 1091, why not yet diſcovered *ib.*

B.

Babel, the attempt only of ſome bold adventurers, and not of all the ſons of *Noah* 16. the languages occaſioned then, not 72. in number, as by ſome ſuppoſed 9. the ſtupendious greatneſs of the Project 785
Babylon 785
Bacchus, called *Mœonius*, why 659
Baleares why ſo called 284
Baltick-Sea, why ſo called 489. why it doth not ebb and flow like other Seas *ib.*
Bathes not permitted by the Emperour *Adrian* to be uſed promiſcuouſly by both Sexes 165. The inconveniency ariſing from that intermixture *ib.*
Battel at *Mutina*, and the ſucceſs thereof 147. between the *Sarmatians* & their ſlaves 515.518. of *Kereſture* 544. of *Lepanto* 626. the laſt betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, King of *Perſia* 788
Bdellium, mentioned *Geneſ.* 2.12. what conceived to be 819
Beaufort, why made the ſurname of the Children of *John* of *Gaunt* 197
Bel and *Baal*, whence the names derived 792. why called *Belzebub*, the Lord of Flies 727
Belerophontis Literas, a by-word, the occaſion of it 663
Belgæ, the valianteſt of the *Galls* in the time of *Cæſar*, and for what reaſons 360
Benedictines, or *black Monks*, by whom inſtituted 115. their habit and increaſe *ibid.*
Berrie, abundantly ſtored with Sheep 205. *Charls* the 7th. in deriſion called King of *Berrie* ibid.
Bezar, the Soveraign nature of it 1018. found in the belly of a beaſt, called the *Vicague* ibid. that of *China*, and the Eaſt more excellent than that of *America* 864
Biſhop of *Spalato*, his Levity, Apoſtacy, and death 553
Biſhops coæval in moſt places with Chriſtianity 36, 171, 175, 301, 488, 575, 710, 922. how, and why hated by the *Biſcanes* 256. and the ill conſequents thereof *ib.* Biſhops not anciently interdicted from the Acts of War 709
Black Friers, or *Dominicans*, by whom founded 115. why ſo called *ib.*
Blind & Lame, mentioned 1 *Sam.* 5.6. what they were moſt probably 733
Bos in Lingua, a proverb, the meaning and original of it 885
Botelius his ſtrange adventure 887
Brachmanes, what they were amongſt the Indians 878. their authority and courſe of life *ib.* ſucceeded in the firſt by the modern *Bramines* *ib.*
Bracca, what 142
Brachygraphie, or the Art of ſhort writing, by whom firſt invented 921
Britain, from whence the name probably derived 294. not from *Brutus* ib. that there was no ſuch man, proved *ib.* Southern parts thereof called *England* 295. Its plenty and ornaments briefly ſet forth *ib.* Plenty of Mines therein 297. and number of Parks *ib.* Its Seas ſtored with fiſh 298, 361. Quantity of fleſh ſpent in one City thereof 298. Chriſtian faith planted therein by whom 301. firſt peopled out of *Gaul* 307
Bucentaure 146
Burgundians, why ſo called 222. when firſt converted to the faith *ib.* their affairs and ſtory *ib.*
Biſcainers, ſome of their Cuſtoms 253

C.

Cæſar, the name at firſt of the *Roman* Emperours 59. after of the deſigned Succeſſour *ib.* the unfortunate end of moſt of them 60. *Julius Cæſar's* eſcape at *Pharus* 924
Cæſar Borgia, ſon of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, after divers changes of fortune where ſlain 251
Calais taken by the *Engliſh*, and re-taken by the *French*, when 188
Cales taken by the Earl of *Eſſex*, 263
Caliph, the name of the Succeſſors of *Mahomet* 780. the ſucceſſion of them 780, 781, 937
Caloirs, what, and where ſeated 604. their number, and manner of life *ib.*
Cambyſes his preſent to the King of *Æthiopia*, with the Kings anſwer return'd 985
Campi Catalaunici, where 115
Canes ſepulchrales, what 830
Capuam eſſe Cannas Annibali, a by-word, and the occaſion of it 70
Capuchin Friers, by whom firſt inſtituted, and why ſo called 116
Cappadocians generally ſo lewd, that they grew a by word 649. not only morally wicked, but naturally venomous 650

Caracalla

Caracalla the Emperour ſlain by *Macrinus*, where, and upon what occaſion 790

Capthorim to be found in *Coptus*, a Town of *Ægypt* 13. carried againſt all reaſon into *Cappadocia* ib. & 650

Cardinals, by whom firſt ordain'd 107. the Election of the Popes aſſigned to them only, and by whoſe authority 146

Carmel, a Mountain of *Syria* 689. miſtook by the Gentiles for a God *ib.* The Friers Carmelites thence named *ib.* & 114

Carthuſian Monks, by whom inſtituted 115. their ſtraight kind of life *ib.*

Caſluhim, more likely to be found in *Caſiotis* than *Cholcis* 13

Centaurs, the fable of them, whence it took beginning 601

Chaldæans, great Aſtrologers 784. the name communicated unto all, who profeſſed that Art *ib.* ſo called from *Cheſed*, the ſon of *Nachor* 783

Charls the 8th. of *Navar* his ſtrange death 253

Chaos, or firſt matter of the world, expreſly by *Moſes* in the names of Heaven and Earth 3. how deſcribed by *Ovid*. *ib.*

Chatſermaveth, the father of the *Chadromatitæ*, and *Indian* people 12

Cherſoneſes, what they are, why ſo called, and how many of them 484

Chimæra the Monſter, what it was 663. and how tamed by *Bellerophon* *ib.*

Chorography, what it is 28. how it differeth from *Geography* *ib.*

Chriſtians, where firſt ſo called, and with what ſolemnity 685. extremely hated by the *Gentiles* 686. their perſecutions and increaſe *ib.*

Chriſtmas ſports in *Twelf-tide*, by whom firſt inſtituted 310

Chronologies, how they differ from Hiſtory 20. by whom beſt performed *ib.*

Chus, the ſon of *Cham*, firſt planted in *Arabia* 12,772. His poſterity (the *Chuſites*) why called *Æthiopians* 772. miſtaken for the *Æthiopians* of *Africk* 12, 772, 985

Chuſites, why rendred *Ethiopians* in our *Engliſh* Bibles 772. the Tranſlation juſtified *ibid.* the actions aſcribed unto them not poſſible to be underſtood of the *Ethiopians* of *Africk* 985. the miſtake laid on the Expoſitors 772

Cimmerians the poſterity of *Gomer* 14,180. firſt ſetled in *Albania*, and *Phrygia Major* ib. & 654. gave name to *Boſphorus Cimmerius* 404,842. In *Europe* better known by the name of *Cimbri*, the ſame with the *Cimmerians* 180,404. the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe* named from them 484. their attempt upon the *Roman* Empire, and overthrow by *Marius* 219

Cimon in one day overthrew the Sea and Land-forces of the *Perſians* 665

Cinnamon, what it is, where, and how it groweth, & from whence ſo called 975

Ciphers, or private Characters for writing, by whom firſt invented 921

Carcaſſians, where they dwell 845 their opinions and practice 846

Ciſtercians, or *White Monks*, whence ſo called 115. by whom ordained *ib.*

Cities, by whom firſt built, and on what deſign 6. the cauſes of the greatneſs and magnificence of them 5

Citim, the ſon of *Japhet*, firſt ſetled in the Iſle of *Cyprus* 15, 680. his poſterity ſpreading into *Macedonia* 601,605. from thence into *Ætolia*, and ſo into *Italy* 37

Climes, what they be, how many, and how diſtinguiſhed 23

Cloves, where they grow moſt plentifully, and the nature of them 918

Coa, and *Veſtis Coa*, a light Garment much uſed by the Dames of *Rome* 675. the *Coan* Wine (*vinum Cos*) as much cried up by the good fellows of that City 674

Coconuts, a moſt excellent fruit, and of ſeveral uſes 1001

Cochinele, a precious Die, how, and where it groweth 1044

Codrus his love to his Country 589

Colonies, why planted by the *Romans* 216. the number of them, and how diſtributed *ib.* whether more uſefull than a Fortreſs *ib*

Colophonem addere, a proverb, and from whence it came 658

Coloſſus of *Rhodes* 676

Commentaries, what they properly are, and how they differ from Hiſtory 20

Conſtantine converted to the Faith, and on what occaſion 60. his new Modelling of the Empire 62. of which one of the chief ſubverters *ib.* He caſſed the Pretorian Guards 61. his Donation forged 109

Conſtance, the Council there holden 417

Conſuls, when firſt ordained in *Rome* 40. who the firſt ſole Conſul *ib.* when the Office ended *ib.*

Cophti, the name of the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, whence to be derived 922. their Tenets in matters of Religion, and Eſtate at the preſent *ib.*

Corybantes, the Prieſts of *Cybele* 621

Coſmography defined 28. the general Latitude of the Notion *ib.*

Cotys his rare temper in maſtering and preventing paſſion 608

Cotton-wool, where it groweth, and how 694. 964. *& paſſim alibi.*

Council of *Trent* 434

Creation of the World, and the Motives of it 1. the concurrence of each perſon to it 3. the matter of it, and the Method *ibid.* how long ſince done *ib.*

Crete, things moſt obſervable there 622

Cretenſe mendacium 620

Cretenſis neſcit Pelagus, a Proverb, the occaſion of it 622

Crocodiles their monſtrous ſhape, and where moſt uſual 924

Curetes, what they were, and from whence ſo called 596,620

Cuſpinians happy gueſs at the Arms of *Germany* 482

Cyprian women their Unchaſtity 678. The *Heroik* Act of a *Cyprian* Lady 682

Cyzicum beſieged in vain by *Mithridates* 656. its glorious Temple 655

D.

Dayes obſerved as lucky, or unlucky unto divers men 99

Damaſcus, how ſituated 701. *Damaſcen* Plums, *Damask* Roſes, and *Daſmask* Linnen, thence ſo called *ib.*

Damiata beſieged and taken by the Chriſtians *ib.*

Darius his fruitleſs War againſt the *Scythians* 84

David George a monſtrous Heretick, and what his Tenets 383

Dedan the ſon of *Regma*, planted on the ſhores of the *Perſian* Gulf 13

Delinquents, how to be proceeded with 72,73. gained more by favours than by rigour *ib.*

Deſpot the title of Heir apparent in the Eaſtern Empire 565. commu-

municated to inferiour Princes *ib.* the Deſpots of *Raſcra ib.* of *Servia ib.* of *Bulgarea* *ib.*
Diaries, what they are, and how they differ from Hiſtory 20
Dictators, what they were in the ſtate of *Rome* 42. a Catalogue of them 42, 43
Divination by Birds, and the kinds thereof 793
Diocleſian depoſes himſelf, and follows the Trade of a Gardener 553
Dodanim, the ſon of *Javan*, firſt ſetled in *Rhodes* 16, 676. his poſterity paſſing into *Epirus* 598. and there naming the *Dodonian* Grove 599
Dog-fiſh, how taken 386
Doſitheans, a *Samaritan* Sect, and their ſuperſtitions 723
Drake Sir *Francis*, how ſaid to be the firſt that ſayled about the World 1075. by whom followed *ib.*
Drahimira her cruelty 450. ſwallowed alive *ib*
Druides, what they were, and from whence ſo called. Their chief ſeat in *France* 200. in *Britain* 351
Druſians, what they are 685. of their power and ſtrength 693

E.

Ecco la Fico, a ſcoff uſed amongſt the *Italians* 144
Edgar rowed over *Dee*, by eight Kings 324
Edward the 3d. his claim unto the Crown of *France*, miſtaken in our common Chronicles 178, 179. not prejudiced at all by the *Salique* Law *ib.*
Egypt peopled in probability before the Floud 933. ſome of the Dynaſties of their Kings to have been before it *ib.*
Elam the ſon of *Sem*, where planted 9, 816
Election of Popes 112, 113. of the Dukes of *Venice* 127. of the *German* Emperours 481. of the great Maſter of *Malta* 964. the ordinary means for obtaining the Crown of *Bohemia*.
Electors of *Germany*, how many 480. by whom ordained *ib.* their Offices, and how performed *ib.*
Elephants their vaſt greatneſs, and docile nature 878
Eliſha the ſon of *Javan*, ſetled in *Elis* of *Peloponneſus* 15. and after in the Iſles of *Greece* 579. thence called the Iſles of *Eliſha*, *Ezek.* 27. 7, 15.
Emir of *Sidon*, what he is 691. his power and ſtrength 693
Endymionis ſomnium, a Proverb, the occaſion of it 661
Enemies to be licenſed flight 207. how to be dealt withall when they are in our power 73
Enterviews betwixt great Princes reckoned inconvenient 138
Epaminondus ſlain at *Mantinea* 581
Eſcurial 271
Eſſeni, why ſo called, their opinions and *Dogmata* 708
Etymologies, ridiculous of *Europe* 32. of the *Hugonots* 198. of the *Wallons* 361. of the *Lombards* 545
Epheſus, and the Temple there dedicated to *Diana* 658
Epoche, what it is in account of time 20. the ſeveral *Epoches* in ſtory *ib.*
Eunuchs, why moſt employed by the Eaſtern Monarchs 839
Europe, whence ſo called 32. the Original languages ſtill in it 33
Exarch, what he was, and by whom ordained 93. his proper Territory *ib.* the Catalogue and ſucceſſion of them *ib.*

F.

Fides Attica, a Proverb, the Original of it 588
Fieds, a barbarous cuſtom among the *Scots* 331. abrogated by *K. James* *ib.*
Fig-Tree, why curſed by our Saviour 710
Fire, Worſhipped by the *Lituani* 529. and by the *Perſians* 817. carried in ſtate before the *Romans* *ib.*
Fleas drive the Inhabitants from the City *Myas* 658
Flight, to be permitted an Enemy, and debarred a Souldier 207
Formalities of the Homage done by *Edw.* the 3d. to the *French* King 215. at the Degradation of Prieſts 427. at the Inveſtiture of the Dukes of *Carinthia* 439. of *Maurice* Duke of *Saxonie* 439. of *Albert* Duke of *Pruſſia* 534. of the Duke of *Moſcovie* 522. at the admitting the new Duke of *Wurtzburg*, and interring the old 444. at the marriages of the Neſtorians 787. at the Coronation of the *Great Cham* 862. at the preſenting of Ambaſſadours to the *Grand* Signeur 810, 811. at the Funerals in *China* 937
Forein Guard dangerous to a Princes perſon 937. as forein Aids unto a Kingdom 938. on what occaſions uſually ſought, and when moſt neceſſary *ib.*
Fornication and Adultery puniſh'd with death 542
Franks, or *French*, of what Nations they conſiſted 232. Their actions and atchievements *ib.* By whom converted to the Faith, and on what occaſion 175. their Character 174. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards* 179. the vaſtneſs of their Empire, and the reaſons of the decay thereof 232, 233. The name of *Franks* given by the *Turks* to all Weſtern Chriſtians 691
Frankincenſe, where it groweth, and how 773, 774. offered to the Gods 775. Frankincenſe growing out of the 454
Franciſcans, or *Grey Friers*, why ſo called, and by whom founded 115. by the *French* called Cordeliers *ib.*
Frederick the 1. ſuddenly drown'd 667
Free Cities, what they are, how many, and in what Eſtates 403
Friers, and their ſeveral Orders 114. &c. in what eſteem amongſt the people 116
Fruitfulneſs of *Rheſan* 517. and *Podolia* 530

G.

Gabats, a Leprous kind of people, in what parts they dwell 213
Galileans, of what ſtock they were 719, 722. ſcorned by the *Jews* 722. Their zeal unto Religion 709, 723. our Saviour called a *Galilean* 719
Gallican Church, the power and privileges of it 176
Gaulonites, what they were 709. for what cauſe named *Galileans* *ib.*
Gentlemen of *Venice*, what they are, and in what eſteem 127
Geography defin'd 21, 28. the benefit thereof 19
S. *George* the *Cappadocian*, a famous Martyr 658. his *Cenotaphium* at *Lidda* in the Holy Land 725. highly eſteemed among the *Turks* 698. his bank in *Genoa* 140. made Patron of the moſt noble Order of the Garter 322
Germans, whence ſo named 396. how terrible at firſt to the *Romans* 404. their Original extraction 404. poſſeſſed of the Weſtern Empire *ib.* the power of the Emperours impaired, and by what means 408. now meerly titular 480

Geter, the ſon of *Aram* planted in *Albania* 10, 805

Gipſies, from whence they have both their name and ſeats 922

Gomer, the ſon of *Japhet*, firſt ſetled in *Albania* alſo 14, 404. of his poſterity, ſee *Cimmerians*.

Gothes, their Original, and firſt ſeat 502. their Kings before they left the Eaſt 503. their ſucceſſes and affairs in *Italy* 63. in *France* 217. in *Spain* 248, 249.

Grecians, in what they differ from the Church of *Rome* 276. by which maliciouſly, and unjuſtly perſecuted *ibid.* their language not of ſuch extent as in former times *ib.*

Gortheni 723

Guelfs and *Gibellines* whence ſo called, and when 131, 449. the fancy of the *Elfs* and *Goblins* derived from thence 131

Guelphian family, their Original 472

Guicciardine gelded by the Inquiſition 109. and the ſubſtance of him in that place *ib.*

Guns, where invented, and by whom 399. not uſed in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* 865

Gyges, how he came to be King of *Lydia* 661. whence ſaid to have a Ring, by which made inviſible *ib.*

H.

HA Letter *ominous* to the State of *England* 633

Hamath, or the Land of *Hamath* 693

Hanſe-Towns, why ſo called, how many, and of what power at Sea 403

Harlots, whence uſed for the name a common Proſtitute 192

Harpies, the Fable and the Moral 624, 625

Hatto, Arch-Biſhop of *Mentz*, devoured of Rats and Mice 417. So alſo *Popielus* Duke of *Poland* 535

Havilah, the ſon of *Chus*, firſt planted about *Babylonia* 12. called thence the Land of *Havilah*, in the ſecond of *Gen.* 818

Havilah, the ſon of *Joktan*, firſt ſeated in *India* 12. the Kingdoms of *Ava* and *Chavilah*, ſo called from him *ib.* 906

Hebrew not the primitive language 17. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews* *ib.*

Hegira, the Mahometan Epoche 20. from whence ſo called 779. the unſteadfaſtneſs of *Scaliger* about it. *ib.*

Helleniſts, what they were, and why ſo called 574, 707. in what differing from the other *Jews* ib.

Hercynian Foreſt, the beginning and extent thereof 404

Hermias the Tyrant ſewed in an Oxes hide, and baited to death 756

Herodians, what they were, and from whence denominated 709

Heteroſcii, what they are in *Geography*, and from whence ſo called 24

Hieroglyphicks, what they were, and by whom firſt uſed 921. ſome particulars of them *ib.*

S. *Hierome*, a Father of the Church, where born 544. the Order of Monkes by him inſtituted 114

Hiſtory defined 20. the neceſſary uſe of it, and to whom 18, 19. how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commentaries*, &c. 20

Hock-tide ſports, the Original of them, and from whence ſo named 318

Hollanders, their great ſtrength at Sea 382. the great benefit they make by fiſhing on the Coaſt of *England* 298, 361. Their baſe cheat put upon the *Engliſh* at *Polerone* 919. and bloody butchery at *Amboyna* 920

Holy Oyl of *Rhemes*, in what ſtate attended 186. not ſo ancient as the *French* pretend *ib.*

Homers birth, how contended for 658. where born, and why call'd *Mœonides* 659

Huanacu, a ſtrange beaſt, and the nature of it 1063

Hugonots, whence ſo called 198. Their great power once, and preſent condition 176

Hul, or *Chul*, the ſon of *Aram*, in what parts firſt ſetled 9, 800, 802

Hydrography, what it is, and by whom beſt written. 28

I.

JAcobites, what they are, and where moſt numerous 789 their opinions 790

Janizaries, their inſtitution and number 809. their Office and power *ib.* their inſolencies and puniſhments 809, 810. the likelieſt men to carry the *Turkiſh* Empire, if the line of *Ottomon* ſhould fail 913

Japhet, how made partaker of the bleſſing of God, *Geneſis* 9, 27. both in the literal ſenſe, and the myſtical 33

Japyx, the name of the North-weſt wind, and why given unto it 75

Jarach, the ſon of *Jocktan*, more probably to be found in *Arachoſia*, than *Inſula Hieracum* 10, 11

Javan, the ſon of *Japhet*, the father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* 15, 578, 651

Jealouſie, a predominant paſſion amongſt the *Italians* 67. as alſo amongſt the *Moors* and *Spaniards* 242. the *Engliſh* little ſubject to it *ib.* 296. and the *Dutch* much leſs 361

Jeſuits by whom firſt inſtituted 116. their vow of *Miſſion* ib. grown formidable to the Pope *ibid.* induſtrious in planting Chriſtianity in the barbarous Nations 867. Chief Factors for the Kings of *Spain* 246. They and the *Preſbyterian*, or *Puritan* Preachers the greateſt Incendaries of Chriſtendom 116. expell'd *Georgia*, on what occaſion 804

Jetur the ſon of *Iſmael*, the father of the *Itureans* 716

Jews not ſuffered to land in *Cyprus* 678. expulſed out of *England*, *France*, & *Spain* 762. in danger to be ſtoned every *Maunday Thurſday* ib. The hopes and hinderances of their converſion *ib.* the reſtitution of their Kingdom not denied by Chriſt 763

Iſlands, how cauſed 21. whether better ſeated than the Continent 22

Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where ſetled 418. *Imperial Cities* v. Free.

Indians, or *Chriſtians* of S. *Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion 877. The ſubmiſſion of their Churches to the Pope 878

Indico, where, and how it groweth 886

Influence of the heavenly bodies on particular Countreys 17

Inquiſition, when, and why ordained 245. the manner of proceeding in it *ib.* not admitted into many of the Papal Countreys *ib.*

Interim of *Germany*, what it was, and how ill liked of all parties 428

Invention of Clocks and Watches 361. of Pictures in glaſs, and laying colours in Oyl *ibid.* of Printing 384. of Guns 399. leather Ordnance 535. of wild-fire 630. of the Battel-ax 645. of Dice, Cheſs, *&c.* 659. of Tragedies 671. of Sayls for Ships 674. of Arithmetick and Aſtronomy 689. of the purple Die 690. of Chryſtil glaſs 691.

of Paſtorals, Hour-glaſſes, Military Engines 83. of Comedies 84. of the Mariners Compaſs 71, 1015. of Tackle or Ships *ib.* of Letters and Ciphers 921. of Brachygraphy *ib.* of Paper 925. of Watch-words 615

Ireland, why never Conquered till the reign of King *Iames* 347

Iriſh, their barbarous cuſtoms 341

Iſthmian Games 586

Iſrael and *Judah*, when divided 738. the reaſons why no more United, though ſome opportunities were offered 738. *b.*

Italians derived from *Citim*, the ſon of *Japhet* 37. ſo called from the *Ætolians* 37, 38. by whom converted to the faith 36. their ſcandalous lives, how puniſhed, and by what inſtruments 64

Italy the name at firſt of the Eaſt parts of the Country only 76. communicated after to the whole 34, 76 the Kings thereo after the ruine of the Empire 66. abandoned by the Emperours, and for what reaſons 66 67

Joan the Virgin, not a Witch, as the *Engliſh* 424. not ſo miraculouſly ſent as the *French* pretend *ib.* what ſhe was indeed *ib.*

Joctan, and his poſterity ſetled originally in the Eaſt 10, 11, 878. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix* 10. greater, of their tranſplanting into *America* 878, 1050

John Baptiſts head, how pitifully mangled by the Papiſts

Julius Scaliger his cenſure of *Heſiodus* controuled by *Veleius* 592. his baſe character of the *Engliſh* 299

Joſeph Scaliger, his ſingularity about *Nabonidus* 794. and *Darius Medus* ib. His unſteadfaſtneſs about the *Hegira* 779

Julian the Apoſtate where he died 786

Judges of Hell, what, and who they were 616, 621. and why ſo accounted of *ib.*

Juſtus Lipſius his unjuſt Cenſure of *Caſars* commentaries

K.

Τϱιὰ Κακιςὰ, a Proverb, and of whom intended 6 0

Καππαδόκης & Καππαδόκον τέϱας, proverbially uſed for a wicked perſon 648

Kings called an Ordinance of man, and why 5. who of them anciently anointed 252. how they take precedency 321. not to uſe their people to the wars 394. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen* 415. Kings but for twelve years, and then muſt ſacrifize themſelves 899. Kings ſubject to Prieſts, where 979

Kings-evil a diſeaſe 152. the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of *England* 318

Knight-hood vid. Orders.

L.

Labyrinth of *Egypt* 925. imitated by *Minos*, in that of *Crete* 621

Lachryma Chriſti 138. the expreſſion of a *Dutch-man* thereon *ib.*

Lady of *Loretto* her Legend 722. the ſumptuoſity of her Temple 97

Lamiſſus thrown an Infant into a fiſh-pond, found by King *Agilmond*, brought up in Court, and after choſen King of *Longobards* 546

Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence ſo called 34. The *Latine* tongue not the language of *Italy* 36. The reaſons of the ſpreading and extent thereof *ib.*

Lampſacus, how ſaved by *Anaximenes* when threatned by *Alexander* *ib.*

Laws of *Oleron* 230

League between *France* and *Scotland* 335. the condition thereof *ib.*

Lehabim the Father of the *Liby-Ægypti* 13, 632

Lemmers an infectious beaſt 494

Lemnia, or *Terra Lemnia*, the ſoveraign vertues of it 614. how made and ordered *ib.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ib.*

Letters, the firſt Original, and Hiſtory of them 921

Levites, why ſcattered and divided among the Tribes 735. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ibid.*

Libanus a famous Mountain, why ſo named 687. the length, courſe and branches of it *ib.*

Libertas prophetandi, what, and where moſt in uſe 525

Liburni the name of a light Veſſel 554. and of ſuch Chairs as we call *Sedans* ib. and from whence ſo named *ib.*

Lions 225. Its famous Mart *ib.* in it a Temple dedicated to *Auguſtus* ib. before whoſe Altar exerciſes inſtituted of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence *ib.*

Lomi a ſtrange beaſt in *Bohemia* 450

Lombards their Original and firſt Kings 545, 546. their affairs in *Italy* 64. the ſubverſion of their Kingdom there 65

Lud the ſon of *Sem*, the father of the *Lydians* in *Aſia minor* 9, 659

Ludim the ſon of *Mizraim*, the father of the Ethiopians in *Africk* 13. improperly rendred *Lydians* in our *Engliſh* Bibles *Jer.* 46. 9. *ib.*

Luther his birth 466. his firſt contention with the Pope 400. the ſucceſs and ſpreading of his Doctrine *ib.* and by what means eſpecially 402. the Government of the *Lutherans* Churches *ibid.* the condition of their Miniſters 403. their Rites & Ceremonies not much different from thoſe in the Church of *England* ib.

Lyſanias the Tetrarch of *Abylene*, whoſe ſon he was 701. why reckoned *Luke* 3. among *Herod's* Children *ib.*

M.

Machbeth his ſtory 336

Madai the third ſon of *Japhet*, the father of the *Medes* 15, 814

Magi, what they were in *Perſia* 817. Their eſteem & power *ib.*

Magnes, why uſed to ſignifie the Load-ſtone by the *Latine* writers 1016

Magog the ſon of *Iaphet* ſetled in *Cœleſyria*, and the Borders of *Iberia* 14, 694

Mahomet his birth and breeding 777. his deſign to Coyn a new Religion *ib.* the cauſes of the great growth and increaſe thereof 779. his ſucceſs and victories *ib.*

Maires of the Palace, their inſtitution and Authority 233. the Catalogue and ſucceſſion of them *ib.*

Malefactors flying to *Geneva*, how puniſh'd 161

Man, why created unarmed and naked 4. the Image of God in him what it doth conſiſt in *ib.*

Manly exerciſes allowed at *Geneva* on the Lords-day 161

Marcheta mulieris, a barbarous cuſtom of the *Scots* 331. whence named, and by whom abrogated *ib.*

Mares, why uſed in battel among ſome of the Ancients 570

Margaret Counteſs of *Henneberg*, delivered at one birth of 365. Children 384

Mariners Compaſs, by whom firſt invented, and by whom perfected

perfected 71, 1015. erroniouſly aſcribed to *Solomon* *ib.*

Maronites, whence ſo called, their Tenets, and place of dwelling 686. Their reconciliation with the Pope, but a matter of complement *ib.*

Marulla her valour in preſerving *Hephæſtias* from being ſurpriz'd by the *Turks* 615

Maſſacres, of the *Scythians* by the Medes 832, 848. of the *Romans* by *Mithridates* 646. of the *Danes* by the *Engliſh* 317. of the *French* in *Sicil* 88. of the *Hugonots* by the *French* 176

Maſtick, what it is, where growing, and how gathered 672

Maſtiff Dogs, why called *Moloſſi* by the *Latines* 598

Mamalukes, their inſtitution, Office and power 937

Meduſa, the Fable, and true ſtory thereof 1004

Melchites, what they are, and from whence denominated 686

Merced, an Order of Religious perſons, their inſtitution and imployment 598

Meſech the ſon of *Aram* planted about *Mons Maſius* 10, 800

Meſech, or *Moſoch* the ſon of *Iaphet*, ſetled amongſt the *Montes Moſchici* in *Armenia major* 15, 799

Meſha, and Mount *Sephir*, mentioned, *Geneſ.* 10. in what place they were 11, 790, 791

Meſſage of *Waldermar* K. of *Denmark* to the Pope 484

Meſſene Servilior, a Proverb, the occaſion of it 581

Minotaur, the Fable, and true ſtory of it 623

Mithridates, the Authonr of the Antidote ſo named 646. the ſum and ſubſtance of his ſtory *ib.*

Miramomoline, what the word doth ſignify 958. the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco* 957

Mizraim the ſon of *Cham*, the father of the Nation of *Egypt* 13, 134

Monarchy the neareſt form of Government to that of God 5. The Monarchs of *Spain* 289. of the *Engliſh Saxons* 316. of the *Aſſyrians* 792. of the *Medes* and *Perſians* 833

Monaſtick life, how accounted of in former times 116. whether to be preferred before a ſociable 117

Money not the only inſtrument of exchange in ancient times 980. by what names called and why *ibid.* made ſometimes of Leather and Paſt-board 1064

Monks their Original and increaſe 114. by whom firſt brought under certain rules *ib.* their ſeveral and particular Orders 114, 115, 116

Mongul, a Tribe of the *Tartars* 860. the Title of the great Emperour of the hither *India* 904. the Catalogue and ſucceſſion of them *ib.*

Monument of *Iohn* Duke of *Bedford*, with the anſwer of *Charls* the 8th. to a Courtier, who perſwaded him to deface it 192

Montmorency, the family extinct 184

Moors, the luſt of *Roderick* occaſioned their coming into *Spain* 249. and the luſt of *Magnutza* their expulſion thence 258. forced to quit *Spain* 267

Morſes, or Sea-horſes, the deſcription, and uſe made of them 1024

Moſaick work, what it is 124

Muſcovites, by whom converted, and of what opinions in religion 511, 512. from what Original they come 520. their government Tyrannical 523. the great Dukes habit, and Royal ſtate 523

Muſuli, or *Muſrones* a ſtrange beaſt 139

Muſick, the ſeveral ſorts and effects thereof 653. uſed by the primitive Chriſtians in Gods publick ſervice *ib.*

Myrtoum Mare, where it was, and from whence ſo named 674

Myſiorum poſtremus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it

N.

NAmes fatal to ſome Kingdoms 632

Naphtha, the nature of it, and where moſt uſed 814, 819

Naphtuchim ſon of *Mizraim*, where firſt planted 13, 932, 933. the name of *Neptune*, by ſome ſaid to be thence derived *ib.*

National Animoſities, to what cauſe aſcribed 18

Navigation, the Original and ſtory of it 1014. what Nations moſt famous for it in former times 1015. and who at preſent *ib.*

Nemæan Games, by whom firſt inſtituted, and on what occaſion 585

Nethinims what they were, and in what imployed 731

Neſtorians, whence ſo called 787. their Tenets in Religion *ibid.* Solemnities they uſe in contracting Marriage *ib.* much hated of the Pope, and why 789

Nimrod, the Founder of the *Babylonian*, and *Aſſyrian* Kingdoms 12, 791

Ninive 788

Noahs ſeven Precepts, or the Precepts of the ſons of *Noah* 708

Nomades, where they dwelt, and from whence denominated 848, 948

Norandine's gallant anſwer made to his Commanders 705

Normans what they were Originally 193, 495. Their actions and Atchievements *ib.* when firſt fixt in *France* 193

North-Eaſt paſſage, by whom attempted and purſued 1090. of the North-Weſt paſſage *ibid.* the little probability of doing any good in either *ib.*

Nuns, why ſo called, and by whom firſt inſtituted 117. their particular Orders *ib.* of ill report for their unchaſtity *ib.* Nunnery of *Valdrude* in *Hainalt* 396

Nutmegs, how they grow, and where moſt plentifull 918

O.

O*Bits* of the Saints kept as Feſtivals 608

Ocean the Collection of waters 17. the cauſes of its ebbing and flowing *ib.* the Etymologie of the name, and vaſt greatneſs of it 292

Offa's Dike 322

Oleum Mediacum, ſee *Naphta*

Olympick Games, by whom firſt inſtituted and reſtored 579, 580. where held, and who were Judges of them 579. All the Victors at one time of one City in *Italy* 77

῾Ονομαντία, a kind of Divination 64. an experiment of it *ib.*

Ophir not the Province of *Sofala* in *Ethiopia* 991. where it rather was 11

Oracles which moſt famous 593. their ambiguity and decay 593, 594

Oratorians an Order of Religious perſons, by whom firſt inſtituted 116. uſed for a counterpoiſe to the *Jeſuits* *ib.*

Orders of Knighthood, of *Avis* 280. *Alcantara* 276. of the *Annunciada* 159. of S. *Andrew* 340. of S. *Anthony* 986. of the *Blood of Lord Jeſus Chriſt* 147. of the *Bath* 322. of *Baronets* 322. of the *Creſcent* 200. of *Calatrava* 276. of Dutch *Knights* 539. of the *Port glaive* 539. of the *Dragon* 549. of the *Elephant* 500. of the *Golden Fleece* 292. of the *Gennet* 238. of the *Gar-*

ter 322. of the *Holy Ghoſt* 139. of S. *Jago* 276. of S. *John* 765. Great Maſter, how choſen, his title 964. of *Jeſus Chriſt* 280. of S. *Michael* 239. of S. *Mark* 129. of *Merced* 275. of *Monteſa* 288. of *Nova Scotia* 340, 1024. of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers 238. of the *Round Table* 321. of the *Star* 238. of S. *Stephen* 135. of the *Sepulchre* 765. of the *Templars* 765. of S. *Saviour* 288. of the *Glorious Virgin* 129. of the *Lilly* 254

Oſtraciſm, what it was, whence called, and with whom in uſe 588

Oſtrich Feathers, why, and how long the Cognizance of the Princes of *Wales* 329

Ovation, how it differeth from a Triumph 41. from whence ſo called *ib.* in what caſes granted *ibid.*

Ovid, why baniſhed into *Pontus* 569

Oxenham his adventurous attempt 1018

Oyſters grow on Trees 556

P.

P*Aiſants* ſlavery in *Livonia* 526

Palms anciently uſed as a ſign of victory 934. ſet by the Chriſtians in Church-yards, and for what reaſon *ib.* of the rare nature of the Tree 934, 967

Pamphyli, what they were 137

Paper, where firſt invented, and why ſo called 925

Paradiſe, where it was indeed 783. the ſeveral fancies and opinions touching that particular *ib.*

Paradiſe terreſtrial of *Aladine* 824

Parchment, in Latine *Pergamena*, where invented firſt 656

Paris 185. never taken by force, why *ib.*

Paſiphae, how far the Fable of her may be thought hiſtorical 621

Pathruſim firſt planted in the land of *Pathros* 13

Partition-wall, alluded to *Eph.* 2. 14. what, and where it was 734

Patriaciatus a new Order deviſed by *Conſtantine*, and what it was 63

Pelethites, who, and why ſo called 725

Pillenaa veſtis, a by-word, and the meaning of it 578

Perſepolis 820

Petaliſme, what it was, and where moſt in uſe 85

Peter-pence, by whom firſt granted to the Pope 113

Periſcii and *Perixci*, what they are in Geography 24

Phaleg, where probably firſt planted 10

Phariſees whence they had their name 708. Their *Dogmata*, and Authority amongſt the people 709

Pharos 923

Phaſelus, whence ſo named 663

Phileni ara 945

Philippicks given by *Tullie* for the name of his Orations againſt *M. Antony* 595

Phut, the ſon of *Cham*, father of the *Moors*, or *Mauritanians* 14, 940

Phryges ſero ſapiunt 653

Picts, what they were, and the ſtory of them 334

Pigritia, a ſtrange Creature in *America* 1018

Pied piper 560

Pigeons Letter-carriers 786

Piſarro his birth, breeding, riſe, and death 1072

Pledging one another, why firſt uſed in *England* 318

Pluto, why fancied by the Poets for the God of Hell 598

Pompey's ſucceſsfull War againſt the *Cilicians* 668

Polycrates for long time fortunate, dies miſerably 673

Pope, or *Papa*, what it ſignifieth 104. Common at firſt to other Biſhops *ib.* the opportunities thoſe of *Rome* had to advance their greatnes 103. the means & ſteps by which they did attain to their temporal power 110. and ſtill keep the ſame 111. how eaſie to be made Hereditary 112. Their Forces and Revenue 113, 114

Portugals their Character 275. their Antipathy to the *Caſtilians* ib. *Portugals*, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Italians*, compared *ib.*

Poultry hatched in Ovens by heat 934

Prediction of the *Moors* conquering *Spain* 249

Prætorian guards, by whom inſtituted, and by whom caſhiered 61. Their power, the great Authority of their Captains 51

Presbyter John, the name of the King of *Tenduc* 860. erroniouſly aſcribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abaſſine* Emper. *ib.* The ground of the miſtake and right name of that Prince 986

Presbyterian Diſcipline, by whom firſt framed 160. and how after propagared 160, 161. The introduction of it into the Seigneury of *Geneva* 160. and the Realm of *Scotland* 332. why ſo importunately deſired by ſome in *England* 302

Prieſts of the *Jews* provided of a liberal maintenance 735. who they were, whom they called the Chief Prieſts 710. of the High-Prieſt, and when made a ſaleable Office *ibid.* how *Annas* and *Caiaphas* were High-Prieſts at the ſame time *ib.* Their power and ſucceſſion after the Captivity 739

Printing, where firſt invented, and by whom 384. how much abuſed in theſe latter times 865. ſaid to have been long uſed in *China* 865

Prometheus, why feigned to be tortured by a Vulture 825

Proteſtants, where firſt ſo called, and why 400, 418. the whole ſtory of them 400, 401. the cauſes of the great increaſe of their Doctrines 402. their principal over-ſight *ib.*

Pſalms of *Degrees*, how many, and why ſo named 734

Pyramides of *Egypt* their vaſt greatneſs, by whom built, and why 923

Q.

Q*uivira*, a ſtrange beaſt there which ſupplies them with moſt neceſſaries 1035

R.

R*Ain* falling turns to *Alabaſter* 1053. Rain obtained by the prayer of *Helena* 624

Rarities in *Egypt* 924. in *America* 1018. in *Nova Hiſpania* 1044. in *Chiapa* 1052. in *Peru* 1062. in *Braſil* 1079. in *Cuba* and *Hiſpaniola* 1097

Red-Sea, whence it had the name 776. how far extended by that name *ib.*

Regma the ſon of *Chus* firſt planted on the ſhores of the *Perſian* Gulf 12, 775

Religion naturally ingraffed in the heart of man 31. how it ſtandeth in relation to the parts of the World 31, 32

Retiredneſs from the vulgar eye uſed by divers Princes 987

Rex Romanorum, what he is 408, 481. by whom, and for what cauſe ordained *ib.*

Richard the firſt, terrible to the *Turks* 690. taketh *Cyprus* 681. his ſpeech concerning the Siege of *Verneville* 192. is ſlain by a ſhot from an *Arbaliſt* 208. the man

man that ſhot him ſet at liberty, and rewarded ib.
Riphah the Son of *Gomer*, found in *Paphlagonia* 14
Rivers, their uſe, and conditions requiſite for Navigation 27. the banks of great Rivers how defenſible 655
Rhabarb, or *Rhubarb*, where it groweth 853,857
Rhamnuſia, why given for an adjunct unto *Nemeſis*, and what *Nemeſis* was 588
Rhene, the Fountain and courſe thereof 362, 403. the ſeveral branches by which it falleth into the Ocean 362
Rochel 210
Rhodes taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent 676
Rhodian Laws, the Rule in former times of all marine cauſes 676. and for how long they ſo continued ib.
Rome, of what Circuit in her glory 101. the number of its inhabitants *ib.* the extent of her dominions 61. once made a Goddeſſe, and by whom 660. Her Revenues computed at 150. millions of Crowns 61. Her Empire ſubverted by *Conſtantine*, and how 62
Roman Emperors, the ſucceſſion of them 59. cut off by violent deaths till the time of *Conſtantine* 60. and the cauſe thereof 61. their negligence and degenerate ſloth 63
Roſamond wife to *Alboinus*, King of the *Lombards*, procures her Husband to be Murdered, why 65. her death. ib.
Roy d' Ividot, a *French* by-word, the meaning and occaſion of it 192

S.

SAbæans of *Arabia* the *Deſert*, from what race they came 775
Sacrilege a Crime unpardonable even amongſt Heathens 594
Sadduces whence they had their name 708. their opinions and *dogmata.* ib.
Salique Law, what it truly is 177. not ſo ancient as the *French* pretend *ib.* not at all regarded by them, but to ſerve the turns of ſome Uſurpers 778. the inconveniences, and injuſtice of it ib.
Salmacida ſpolia, a Proverb, and the meaning of it 661
Salvages lately found in *Spain* 270
Samia vaſa, what, and how highly prized 673
Samaritans, what they were 723 their Religion, Tenets, and Sects 723, 724. how hated by the *Jews* and why 723, 726.
Saracens, why ſo called 767, 770. their Character in former times 770. they reſort to *Mahomet* 779. their ſucceſſes, victories, and Caliphs. 780.
Sardanapalus an effeminate King, why he burnt his Treaſure 793.
Sardonicus Riſus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it 70
Scæva's valour 599
Scanderbeg his life and ſtory 600, 601. what became of his body *ib.* & 555
Sclaves, or *Sclavonians*, whence ſo called 557. Their affairs and ſtory *ibid.* given as a name to Bond-men, and on what occaſion 550
Schola Salerni, by whom written, and to whom dedicated 71
Scots, why ſo called 331. their proceedings in the Reformation 333. their Kingdome held in Vaſſalage to the Crown of *England* 339
Scribes, what they were, when inſtituted, and of what Authority 709
Scythians their Original, Antiquity, and Archievements 852 Their expedition into *Media* 848. and ſucceſs in *Lydia* 846
Sebe the Son of *Jocktan*, planted upon the River *Indus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe* 11
Sebvians 723
Sela the Son of *Arphaxad*, in what parts ſetled 10, 819
Seleucus a great builder 695. his ſtrange riſe and fortunes 702
Semiramis 792
Seminaries for the *Engliſh*, by whom firſt erected, and where 186
Seneca's happy memory 244
Seriphia Rana, an old Proverb, the occaſion and meaning of it 619
Serpents worſhipped by the *Samogites*, and *Lituani* 529. the barbarous Cuſtomes of thoſe people *ibid.*
Sforza 144
Sheba, *Sabta*, and *Sabteca*, the Sons of *Chus*, all planted in *Arabia Felix*, and there the founders of the puiſſant Nation of the *Sabæans* 12, 775
Sibyls, what they were, how many, and where they dwelt 931. not counterfeited by the Fathers *ibid*
Siculæ Gerræ 83. *Veſperi Siculi* 88. *Siculi Tyranni* 87. three by-words, & the meaning of them.
Silks, why called *Serica* by the *Latines* 793
Silver and *Gold* where moſt plentifull 1064. the Rich Mines of *Potoſi* 1069. how vilified by the *Utopians* 1064. the cauſes of the dearneſs of things in our dayes 1065. not ſo advantagious to a State, as Trade and Merchandiſe ib.
Simeon the Son of *Jacob*, how diſperſed in *Iſrael*, as his Father prophesied 720
Solœciſmus, whence 667
Solomons Porch, mentioned *John* 10. 23. where, and what it was 733
Sooth-ſaying, how many kinds thereof 793
Souldiers and great Commanders unfortunate for the moſt part, and why 588, 589
Spa, Medicinal waters, where, and for what moſt uſefull 378
Spaniards from whence they do deſcend 247. by whom converted to the Faith 244. The dependence of the Popes on the Crown thereof 246. their aim at the fifth Monarchy *ib.* the greatneſs of their Empire, and weakneſs of it 290. *Spaniſh* Nobility very ſerviceable to their King, why 291. *Spaniards* their cruelty towards the *Americans* 1017
Squilachi a theeviſh beaſt 666
Sterling-money, why ſo called 333
Streights of Mountains, not to be abandoned by the Defendants 667. the loſing of ſuch Paſſes of what fatal conſequence 655
Stukely, where, and when ſlain 956
Styx, a River of *Greece*, the uſual Oath of the Gods 581
Sugars, when, and by whom firſt refined 1003. what uſed inſtead thereof in elder times *ibid.* the great quantities thereof ſent yearly by the *Portugals* from the Iſle of St. *Thomas* ib. and from their Sugar works in *Braſil* ib.
Syrian Language, what it was, and of what ingredients 687, 709 when firſt made vulgar to the *Jews* ib.
Syrian Goddeſs, what ſhe was 695. her magnificent Temple *ib.* the deceit and jugling of her Prieſts ib.
Syrorum multa olera; *Syri contra Phœnices*; two Proverbs, and the meaning of them 694

T.

TAbacco, where moſt plentifull 1064. why called the Henbane of *Peru* ib. the fantaſtick uſe thereof condemned, and the vertues aſcribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom firſt brought into *England* 1064
Tails of Sheep (and of no beaſt elſe) why uſed in Sacrifice 694
Tamerlane his birth and Parentage 850. the ſumm and ſubſtance of his ſtory *ib.*
Tarſhiſh the Son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarſus* in *Cilicia* 15. not in *Tarteſſus*, as ſome ſay, 15
Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Iſrael* 841. from whom moſt probably deſcended *ib.* their affairs and victories 860
Taxus 139
Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differed from the former 733. repaired and beautified by *Herod* ib. the ſeveral Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* 610
Tenedia Securis, a By-word, the occaſion of it 671
Themiſtocles baniſhed his Countrey flyes to, and is entertained by *Artaxerxes* 656
Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by *God* himſelf 738
Thyras the Father of the *Thracians*, by ſome called *Thraſians* 16, 607
Sir. *Thomas Moore* no friend to the *Friers* 117. his new plot of wooing not approved of 973. his deviſe to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Utopians* 1064
Thracians their Cuſtoms 607
Tigranes his frankneſs 798
Timariots, what they be, their inſtitution and number 809
Titus Biſhop of *Crete* 621
Title of moſt *Chriſtian* King, why given unto the Kings of *France* 234. of *Catholike* King, to the Kings of *Spain* 280. of *Defender of the Faith*, to *England* 320. of *Defender* of the *Church*, to the *Switzers* 168. of *Baſileus*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* 570. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns* 217
Togarma, or *Torgama*, the Son of *Japhet*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* 650
Toloſanum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occaſion of it 217
Tomineio, a bird in *America* 1018
Topographie, what it is 28. how it differeth from Geography *ib.*
Traffick, and the ſtory of it 1065 more advantagious to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver. *ib.*
Treaſon, how rewarded 544
Tragedies, by whom invented 671
Tree that withereth if touched 1054. beneficial Trees in *India* 887, 1001, 1058.
Triumphs their Original and Majeſty 41. in what they differed from an *Ovation* ib. in what caſes denied a Conqueror 41, 42. when diſcontinued and laid by 42
Troy not beſieged ten years together by the *Greeks*, and at laſt how taken 652. *Fimbria*'s boaſt of taking *Troy* in eleven dayes tartly anſwered *ib.*
Tubal the Son of *Javan* firſt planted in *Iberia* 15, 804. the *Spaniards* how derived from him 247
Turks their Original and Conqueſts 806. their Kings and Emperors *ib.* Their perſons, cuſtoms, and religion 808. Their eſtate and power 809, *&c.*

V.

VAivod, the meaning of the word 261. the *Vaivods* of *Tranſylvania* *ib.*
Vandals, their firſt ſeat 944. their affairs, ſtory, and the ſucceſſion of their Kings 944
Vandois the ſame with the *Waldenſes* 226. their Life and Doctrines *ib.*
Venus, whence called *Erycina* 85 whence *Cytheraa* 619. whence *Dea Cypr.* 678. whence *Paphia* 679. whence *Dea Cnidea* 662. the brutiſhneſs of the *Cypriots* both men and women in their Feaſts and Sacrifices 679
Verſoria in *Plautus*, what it is 1015. not uſed there for the Mariners Compaſs, as by ſome ſuppoſed *ib.*
Victorie of *Annibal* at *Cannæ* 74
Vidames in *France*, how many and what they are 190
Viengue, a ſtrange, but profitable beaſt among the *Americans*, and the nature of it 1014. the Bezar found in the belly of it *ib.*
Vina Maſſica, whence ſo called, and of what eſteem 71
Virgils Fable of *Dido* diſproved 943. his *Æneas* ſuſpected 652
Ulyſſes not ſo far as *Lisbon* 275 the ſumm and ſubſtance of his ſtory 628
Ur, the birth-place of *Abraham*, a Town of *Meſopotamia* 990 that it was not in *Chaldaa*, as by moſt ſuppoſed 791
Uſurie, the *Genoeſe* much addicted to it 137. the ſaying of a merry fellow thereon *ib.*
Uz, or *Hus*, the Countrey and dwelling of *Job*, whereabouts it was 768

W.

WAllons, what they are, and why ſo called 322, 361
Whales their dimenſions and vaſt greatneſs 878. how driven from the Coaſt of *Norwey* 494
White Friers, from whence ſo called, and by whom firſt inſtituted 115. called alſo *Carmelites*, and why *ib.*
Wolves deſtroyed in *England*, how 298
World, why Created 1. How long ſince 3. Peopled before the general Floud 6. Eaſt parts planted before the attempt at *Babel* 16, 17, 881. called *Coſmos* by the *Greeks*, and *Mundus* by the *Latines* from the beauties of it 31. unequally divided in reſpect of Religion 31, 32
Writing, the Original of it 921, 926. and the ſeveral forms. *ib.*

X.

XEriffe, why uſed for the Title of the Kings of *Morocco* 958. the Catalogue and ſucceſſion of them 959
Xerxes his numerous Army, *&c.* 613

Y.

YEugh-trees, why planted in Church-yards 934

Z.

ZAleucus his Laws 76
Zenobia a moſt Maſculine Lady, her ſtory 700
Zopyrus, his act 785

A Computation of the forein Coins herein mentioned, with the ENGLISH.

	l.	s.	d.
HEbrew Talent in Gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandr. Talent	375		
Ægyptian Talent	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Seſtertium of Rome	7	16	3
A Shekel	00	2	6
Argenteus Mat. *26. 15.*	00	2	6
A Drachma	00	00	7 ob
A Rubble	00	13	4
A Sultany	00	7	6
A Ducat	0	6	8
A French Crown	0	6	6
A Xeriffe	0	6	0
A Rix Doller	0	4	8
A Floren	0	3	0
A Frank	0	2	0
A Livre	0	2	0
A Gulden	0	2	0
A Spaniſh Real	0	0	6
A Sous	0	0	1 ob
A Turkiſh Aſper	0	0	1 q
A Maravidis	0	0	0 q

FINIS.

An Alphabetical and exact Table, wherein is ſet down, the Names (Ancient and Modern) of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Iſlands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Foreſts, *&c. of any Remarque in the whole World, as they are deſcribed and contained in theſe Four Books of the incomparable Coſmographer* Dr. Heylyn.

Lib. I.

A Ada, *fl.* 171
AaZ, *fl.* 163
Abavilla, *u.* 189
Abdera, *u.* 266
Abargaveny, *u* 323
Abdua *fl.* 143
Aberdon, *u.* 333
Aberfraw, *u.* 325,351
Abricantes, *p.* 192
Abruzzo, *pr.* 71
Abule, *u* 276
Abus, *fl.* 296
Acacius, *fl.* 84
Acates, *inſ.* 78
Accipitrum, *inſ.* 91
Acheſtra, *u.* 86
Acolin *fl.* 202
Acuſiani, *p.* 223
Or. Acques, *u.* 211
Adige, *fl.* 118
Adour, *fl.* 213
Adria, *u.* 97,122
Adriatium, *mare* 34,122
Adros, *inſ.* 351
Ægates, *inſ.* 86
Ægilora, *inſ.* 133
Ægyde, *u.* 111
Æguſa, *inſ.* 86
Ælia Recina, *u.* 97
Æmilia, *p* 142
Ænariæ, *inſ* 78
Æoliæ, *inſ.* 86
Æqui, *p.* 100
Æthalia, 133
Ætna, *m.* 83
Agatha, Agde, *u.* 216
Agathenſes, *p.* 217
Ageloſis, *u.* 308
Agen, *u.* 214
Agenois, *p.* 214
Agendicum, *u.* 187
Agnes, *inſ* 351
Agrigentum, *u.* 82,85
Agryllis, *u.* 89
Agyllina, *u.* 130
Ajazze, *u.* 140
Aigre, *fl.* 201
Aiqueperſe, *u* 204
Aique Aquenſis, *u.* 150
Agendicum, *u.* 187
Aix, *u.* 219
Alanſon, *u.* 192
Alates, *p.* 333
Alax, *fl.* 77
Alba, *u.* 100,149
Helviorum, 216
Albania, *p.* 330,334
Albanies, *m.* 331
St. Alban, *u.* 308,316
Albemarle, *u.* 191
Albegois, *p.* 216
Albion, *inſ.* 293
Albon, *u.* 157
Albret, *p.* 214
Alby, *u. fl.* 216
Alcala de Henares, *u.* 271
Alcantara, *u.* 263
Alcoraz, *u.* 271
Aldborough, *u.* 308
Alderny, *inſ.* 231
Aleria, *u.* 140
Aleth, *u.* 216
Aletium, *u.* 75
Alexia, *u.* 217
Alexandria, *u.* 143
Alaques, *inſ.* 284
Alfatenia, *u.* 98
Algaruc, *p.* 274
Algeziro, *u.* 261
Alghes Boſa, *u.* 90
Alhama, *u.* 265,267
Alicante, *u.* 280
Alizia, *u.* 227
Allier, *fl.* 202
Allobriges, *p.* 152
Almanca, *u.* 267
Almeria, *u.* 266
Alpes, *m.* 152
Coctiæ, 156
Grajæ, 221
Maritimæ, 223
Peninnæ, 221
Alpaxaras, *m.* 247,265
Altavilla, *u.* 76
Altemberg, *u.* 166
Altine, *u.* 119
Altomont, *u.* 77
Amalfi, *u.* 71
St. Amand, *u.* 203
Amballe, *u.* 195
Amballiates, *p.* 195
Ambiani, *p.* 188
Ambrun, *u.* 223
Amboice, *u,* 198
Amiens, *u.* 189
Ampurias, *u.* 282
Ameria, *u.* 98
Ancele, *u.* 77
Ana, *fl.* 246,260
Anacapræ, *u.* 78
Ancona, *u.* 97
Andaluzia, *p.* 260
Andegaria, *u.* 197
St. Andera, *u.* 257
Andes, *p.* 197
St Andrews, *inſ* 78, *u* 333
Anduiar, *u.* 257
Anemus, *fl.* 91
St Angelo, *m* 74
Angeruille, *u.* 200
Angiers, *u.* 197
Angleſey, *pr* 324 *Inſ.* 350
Anglia R. 295
Angoleſme, *p.* 208
Angra, *u* 277
L'Anguillado, *Inſ.* 230
Anguis *p.* 334
Anguſtoritum, *u.* 206
Ani ene, / o *fl.* 97
Anjou, *p.* 197
Anſer, *fl.* 308
Annaudale, *p.* 334
Annunciada, *u.* 157
Anſenis, *u.* 195
Ante, *fl.* 192
Anteri, *p* 346
Anteſiodorum, *u.* 227
Antibi, Antipolis, *u.* 219
Antiquera, *u.* 266
Antium, *u.* 100
Antona, *fl.* 315
Antrigonis, *p.* 255
Antrim, *p.* 344
Anxur, *u.* 100
Aoſt, *u.* 155
Apencenſes, *p.* 224
Apenzel, *p.* 164
Apoſa, *fl.* 92
Aprutium, *p.* 72
Apulia, *p.* 73
Peucetia 75
Daunia 73
Siticuloſa, *p.* 75
Aquæ Auguſtæ, *u.* 211
Calidæ, *u.* 308,259
Sextiæ, *u.* 219
Solis, *u.* 312
Bellæ, *u.* 157
Aquenſes, *p.* 211
Aquenſis, *u.* 150
Aquilaſtro, *u.* 96
Aquilegia, *u, p.* 120
Aquila, *u.* 92
Aquino, *u.* 72
Aquitain, *p.* 209
Aquitania *prima*, 204,209
ſecunda, 207,209
Aragon, *pr. fl.* 285
Arac is / axis *fl.* 80,226
Arauſia, *u.* 220
Arbia, *fl.* 132
Arboys, *u.* 229
L. Aarche, *fl.* 157
Ardea, *u.* 73,100
Ardoa, *p.* 162
Ardres, *u.* 188
Arduarius, *l.* 74
Arecomiſi, *u.* 217
Arelatum, *u.* 219
Arethuſa, *fl.* 84
Are tium, / zzo *u.* 131
Arevacæ, *p,* 271
Arga, *fl.* 251
Argentario, *m.* 99
Argenton, *u.* 205
Argile, *p.* 334
Argow, *p.* 163
Argyrippa, *pr.* 74
Arica, *fl.* 251
Aricomium, *u.* 315
Arilla *u.* 204
Arlo, *u.* 219
Ariminum, *u, fl.* 92
Armacan, *u.* 216
Armagh, *u,* 344
Armaignac, *p.* 214
Armath, *inſ.* 352
Arme, *inſ,* 231
Armorica *p.* 195
Arnon, *fl.* 205
Arnus, *fl.* 37
Aron, *fl.* 202
Arpinum, *u.* 72
Arq, *u.* 183
Arran, *inſ.* 345
Arſia, *fl.* 121
Artimeſia, *fl.* 134
Arthur, *inſ.* 352
Arulat, *fl.* 166
Arverni, *p.* 217
Arundel, *u.* 311
St Aſaph, *u.* 324
Aſcoli, *u.* 74,97
Aſculum, *u.* 97
Aſinda Cæſariana, *u.* 261
Aſinaria, *inſ.* 91
Aſſiſium, *u.* 98
Aſt, *u.* 156
Aſta, *u.* 261
Aſtorga, *u.* 257
Aſturia, *p.* 25
Aſtygi, *u.* 265
Ateſte, *u.* 94,119
Athanatos, *inſ.* 353
Athenry, *u.* 345
Atheſis *fl.* 118,153
Athol, *pr.* 334
Athlone, *u.* 345
Atlanticum, *mare* 241
Atrebatii, *p.* 308
Atricum *u.* 200
Avales, *u.* 219
Avaticum, *u.* 205
Aubigni, *p.* 206
Audematurum, *u.* 187
Aude, *fl.* 216
Aven, *fl.* 192
Avenio, *u.* 220
Averni, *p.* 229
Avernus, *p.* 70
Averſa, *u.* 71
Aufidus, *fl.* 69
Augubio, *u.* 95 98
Augaunum, *u.* 162
Auguſta, *u.* 85
Auſciorum 214
Aſturica 256
Emerita, *u.* 265
Firmia, *u.* 265
Prætoria, *u.* 155
Sueſſionum, *r.* 190
Taurinorum 155
Trinobantum. 308
Auguſtani, *p.* 252
Auguſtodunum, *u.* 227
Agustoritum, *u.* 206
Avia, *fl.* 274
Avignion, *u.* 220
Avila, *u, m.* 270
Aviles, *u* 257
Aumarl, *u. m.* 192
Auneau, *u.* 200
Avon, *fl.* 306
Aurance, *fl.* 216
Auranches, *u.* 192
Aurange, *u.* 219
Aurantius Saltus, *m* 247
Aurelia, *u.* 200
Aurette, *fl.* 205
Auriacus, *u.* 216
Aur igni / ney *inſ.* 231
Auſcii, *p.* 211
Auſonium, *p.* 34
Auſtraſia, *p.* 173
Auton, *u.* 227
Avergne, *p.* 203
Auvillar, *u.* 214
Aviduff, *fl.* 342
Aux, *u.* 214
Auzere, *u.* 187,227
Auxitani, *p.* 282
Auzan, *u.* 214
Axelodunum, *u.* 314
Axophanos, *fl.* 91
Azgow, *p.* 163
Azores, *inſ.* 276

Lib. 2.

A A, *fl.* 367
Abantis, *inſ.* 615
Abdera, *u* 608
Abnoda, *m.* 404
Abo, *u.* 506
Abra, *fl.* 474
Abrincum, *u.* 543
Abl orus / ertides *inſ.* 555
Abſtod, *u.* 466
Abſyrtus, *fl.* 555
Abuys, *u.* 491
Acanthus, *u.* 604
Ac-Germen, *u.* 563
Acarnania, *pr.* 597
Acce-chiſar, *r.* 613
Ac-Germen, *r.* 563
Ach, *fl* 428,519
Achia, *pr.* 287
Propria, *pr.* 278
Achelous, *fl.* 579,595
Acheron, *fl.* 597
Achilleia, *u.* 563
Achrida, *u.* 569
Acre, *u.* 569
Acro Corinthus, *m.* 586
Acronius, *l.* 427
Actium, *u.* 598
Adenburg, *u.* 411
Adiſe, *fl.* 438
Adrianople, *u* 572,609
Adriaticum, *mare* 577
Aduatici, *p.* 363,380
Æas, *fl.* 577
Ædiſſa, *u.* 603
Ænſtel, *fl.* 383
Ægra, *u.* 615
Ægras, *u.* 603
Ægrum, *u.* 578
mare 613
Ægiala, *pr.* 578, *inſ.* 624
Ægilia, *inſ.* 624
Ægira, *inſ.* 578
Ægina, 616
Æmathia, *pr.* 601
Æmera, *u.* 585
Æmonia, *pr.* 601
Æmus, *m.* 578

The TABLE.

Ænona, *u.* 554
Ænus, *u.* 604
Æria, *inſ.* 614
Æſtræi, *p.* 600
Æſtus, *fl.* 443
Æthra, *inſ.* 614
Ætolia, *pr.* 595
Aganzia, *pr.* 506
Agathyrſi, *p.* 510
Agernis, *inſ.* 491
Age oe, *inſ.* 489
Aggerhuis, *r. p.* 494
Agiſtiman, *u.* 613
Agria, *u.* 544
Colonia Agrippina, *u.* 414
Alba, *fl.* 475
Aichſtadium, *u.* 449
Aiomama, *ſ.* 603
Aire, *u.* 367
Aix, *Azen, v.* 410
Alaicmon, *fl.* 577
Abauni, *p.* 415,520
Alba Græca, *u.* 544
  Julia 562
  Regalis, 543
Albania, *pr.* 599
Alberg, *m.* 489
Albis, *fl.* 403
Alborch, *u.* 489
Albona, *u.* 489
Albus, *l.* 513
Alcmer, *u.* 383
Alderburg, *u.* 417
Aleſius, *u.* 553
Aleta, *u.* 552
Algow, *pr.* 4 8
Alla, *fl.* 532
Allendorf, *u.* 473
Alloneſus, *inſ.* 615
Alluta, *fl.* 559,564
Almanſi, *pr.* 396,4 9
Almelo, *u.* 388
Almene, *pr.* 597
Almiſſa, *u.* 553
Almopes, *p.* 603
Almul, *fl.* 448
Aloſt, *pr. u.* 366
Alpes Juliæ, *m.* 432
  Rhæticæ, 438
  Suevi, 429
Alphæus, *fl.* 579
Alſatia, *pr.* 420
Alſen, *inſ.* 491
Al ze / ſnutius, *fl.* 373
Alta Ripa, Altrip, *u.* 421
Altiburgum, *u, ſ.* 479
Altemark, *pr.* 457
Altena, *u.* 412
Altenburgh, *u.* 543
Altkirk, *u.* 422
Altomara, *u.* 622
Altorf, *u.* 449
Amadoci, *m.* 513
Am ager / igria, *inſ.* 489
Amalchium *mare* 495
Amance, *u.* 424
St. Amand, *u.* 366
Amberg, *u.* 448
Ambidraunum, *pr.* 435
Ambilici, *p.* 435
Ambilontes, *p.* 435
Ambra, *fl.* 432
Ambracia, *u.* 598
Ambrones, *p.* 479
Amelungsbame, *u.* 471
Amerlander, *pr.* 479
Amesfort, *u.* 387
Amiſius, *fl.* 363,404 387
Ampelas, *u.* 604,622
Amphaxatis, *pr* 604
Amphilochia, *pr.* 597
Amphipolis, *u.* 603
Amphriſe, *fl.* 577
Amphyſia, *u.* 595
Amſte rdam / lodanum, *u.* 383
Amurgos, *inſ.* 618
Amycle, *u.* 582
Anactorium, *u.* 598
Anaphe, *inſ.* 619
Anarti, *p.* 561
Anchiola, *u.* 572
Anclara, *u.* 459
Andeſort, *u.* 497
Andernach, *u.* 414
S. Andrews, *inſ.* 389
Andros, *inſ.* 617
Caſtello St Angelo, *u.* 627
Angeloſtadium, *u.* 431
Angerburg, *u.* 533
Angerman, *pr.* 504
Angermond, *u.* 411
Anghien, *u.* 370
Angli, *p.* 485,489
Angra, *fl.* 409,457
Angrivaria, *pr.* 475
Anhalt, *pr.* 466
Aniſus, *fl.* 435
Annium, *u.* 560
Ansbach, *pr. u.* 444
Anſeling, *u.* 477
Anſlo, *u.* 494
Antandros, *inſ.* 617
Anteriacum, *u.* 414
Antebari, *u.* 553
Antigonia, *u.* 598,604
Antirhium, *c.* 578
Antonina, *u.* 387
Antwerp, *u.* 379
Anticyra, *u.* 593
Aorſi, *p.* 529
Apia, *p.* 578
Apidanus, *fl.* 577
Apnus, *fl.* 560
Apollonia, *u.* 600,604,609
Apſalus, *u.* 603
Apſus, *fl.* 599
Apulum, *u.* 560
Aquen, *u.* 410
Aquiſgranum, *u.* 410
Arrabon, *u.* 543
Aracthus, *u. fl.* 596
Aranias Zeek, *p.* 561
Aranaſci, *p.* 545
Araxum, *c.* 578
Arbe, *inſ. u.* 556
Arbogel, *u.* 504
Arbo n / r ſelix, *u.* 417
Arcadia, *pr.* 581
Archangel, *u.* 519
Arches, *inſ.* 614
Archingen, *u.* 447
Archipelago, 614
Van Arckel, *p.* 383
Arcudia, *u.* 580
Arcueli, *p.* 383
Ardenno, *u.* 362, *p.* 364
  373, *u.* 365
Ardium, *m.* 551
Aredato, *u.* 435
Aremberg, *u.* 476
Arenacum, *u.* 389
Arethuſa, *u.* 604
Argentoratū, *u* 421, *m.* 573
Argolis, *p.* 584
Argos, *u.* 584,598
Argaſtolis, *u.* 626
Argyro Caſtro, *u.* 598
Argyrutum, *u.* 554
Aria, *inſ.* 491, *pr* 607
Arii, *p.* 536
Arluno, *u.* 373
Armenia, *ſ.* 602
Armentiers, *u.* 366
Armyden, *u.* 385
Arnhem, *u.* 389
Archetamii, *p.* 506
Aroe, *inſ.* 491, *u.* 578
Aroſe, *u.* 504
Arras, *u.* 367
Arſchot, *u.* 379
Arſia, *fl.* 552
Arſus, *fl.* 609
Arthuſen, *pr. u.* 488
Artoys, *pr. u.* 366
Aruncis, *u.* 421
Arusberg, *u.* 375,412
Aruſten, *r.* 477
Arx Britannica, *u.* 384
Aſcandt, *u.* 466
Aſcens, *u.* 491
Aſciburgius, *m,* 454
Aſcræa, *u.* 592
Aſcruvium, *u* 553
Aſilia, *u.* 516
Aſiocaſtron, *u.* 613
Aſloia, *u.* 494
Aſprocaſtron, *u.* 563
Aſopus, *fl.* 587
Aſſenedo, *u.* 364
Aſſorus, *u.* 604
Aſtragan, *pr. u.* 518
Aſtypale, *inſ. u.* 619
Ath, *u.* 370
Athamanes, *p.* 596
Athaneum, *u.* 596
Athelin, *pr.* 506
Athens, *u.* 588
Atheſis, *fl.* 438
Athicus, *fl.* 577
Athos, *m* 604
Athyras, *fl.* 608
Attica, *pr.* 588
Attrebates, *p.* 363,367
Avares, *p.* 438
Avarini, *p.* 533
Audomarus, *u.* 367
Aveſes ex Hainault, *u.* 371
Aveſnes le ſec. 371
Auf de Berne, *u.* 409
Augſt, *u.* 451
Augur, *u.* 409
Auguſta Tiberii, 432
Auguſta Veromand. 373
Auguſtow, 532
Aulis, *u.* 592
Aulon, *u.* 600
Auricts, *u.* 477
Ausberg, *u.* 428
Auſtralia, *pr.* 390,405,424
Auſtria, *pr.* 435
Awerback, *u.* 449
Axele, *u.* 366
Axenus, *mare* 612
Axius *fl.* 603
Axi opolis / um *u.* 559,468
Azorium, *u.* 602
Azuli, *p.* 544

Lib. 3.

Abanah, *fl.* 700
Abaras, *fl.* 733
Abaratha, *u.* 923
Abardal, *u.* 804
Abarim, *m* 711
Abaſſebant, *u.* 829
Abel, *u.* 717
  Maacha, 717
  Sittim, *u,* 714
  Vinearum, 713
Abi s. *fl* 850
Abii, *p.* 856
Abela, *u.* 701,714
Abos, *m.* 799
Abuieni, *p.* 777
Abydos *u.* 653
Acadiæ, *p.* 454
Acamas, *c.* 677
Acarnea, *u.* 657
Acbaſſa, *pr.* 856
Accabene, *p.* 790
Accad, *u.* 788
Accarnon, *u.* 727
Ace, *u.* 689
Aceſines, *fl.* 879,863
Achæmenides, *p.* 816
Achatara, *u.* 867
Achen, *u.* 922
Collis acchillæ, *m.* 730
Achillis Curſus *u.* 842
Achindana, *fl.* 821
Acon, *u.* 689
Acra, *m.* 732
Acie, *u.* 689
Acrabata, *u.* 724
Leuca acte, *u.* 695
Adada, *u.* 699
Adam, *u.* 715
Adana, *u.* 783
Adani, *inſ.* 776
Ada pa / ra, *u.* 698
Adarſa, *u.* 725
Aden, *u.* 775
Adena, *u.* 667
Adiabene, *pr.* 787
Adiavas, *fl.* 772,78
Adida, *u.* 701
Adiſathri, *m.* 878, *p* 881
Adonis, *fl.* 689,700
Adopiſſus, *u.* 664
Adoram, *u.* 730
Adorne, *u.* 880
Adrama, *u.* 717
Adramitæ, *p.* 777
Adramytium, *u.* 656
Adrapſia, *u.* 819
Adraſtia, *u.* 656
Adrinſa, *p.* 787
Adubeni, *p.* 769
Æapolis, *u.* 802
Æchera, *u.* 687
Ægæi, *p.* 777
Ægæum, *u.* 646
Ægypti Torrens, 770
Ælam, *u.* 699
Ælia, *u.* 734
Æni, *inſ.* 776
Æolis, *pr* 773
Æroſa, *inſ.* 677
Æſcitæ, *p.* 768
Æſopus, *fl* 651
Æthrea, *inſ.* 675
Aganagora, *u.* 906
Agaris, *fl.* 842
Agaritæ *p.* 832
Agathoclis, *inſ.* 777
Agbath a / ana, *u.* 815
Agemer, *u.* 886
Agena, *u.* 924
Agra, *u.* 819, *p u.* 889
Agracan, *u.* 911
Agræi, *p.* 769
Agriaſpæ, *p* 824
Agrinoma, *u.* 647
Agrippias, *u.* 737
Agris, *u.* 821
Agubeni, *p.* 769
Agwans, *pr.* 885
Ai, *u.* 731
Ajalon, *u* 725,728
Aiazzo, *u. ſ.* 668
Adini a / illi, *p.* 658
Aii, *p.* 881. *inſ.* 918
Ainao, *inſ.* 908
Alabanda, *u.* 660
Aladeules, *p.* 796
Alamatha, *u.* 699
Alani, *p.* 843, *m* 851
Alanorſi, *p.* 851
Albania, *pr.* 805
Albanis, *u.* *ibid.*
Albaria, *u.* 695
Aleppo, *u.* *ibid.* 698
Alexandri, *inſ.* 823
Alexandria, *u.* 651,668
  821,825,826,830,849
Algiar, *u.* 775
Alicodra, *u.* 831
Aliga, *fl.* 889
Alitrophagi, *p.* 855
Alnata, *fl.* 845,849
Alſadamus, *m.* 700,706
Altay, *m.* 640. *p.* 856
Altuncala, *u.* 804
Aluati, *u.* 802
Alydda, *u.* 656
Amadabat, *u.* 888
Amagance, *pr.* 915
Amalec, *m.* 725
Amalekites, *p.* 771
Aman, *u* 698
Amamus, *m* 666,706,708
Amandus, *fl.* 814
Amangaſaqui, *u.* 916
Amariace, *p.* 814
Amariacle, *u.* 816
Amaſia, *u.* 644
Amaſtris, *u.* *ibid.*
Amatha, *u.* 695
Amathyſia *i* 677. *p. u* 679
Amaveıza, *u.* 668
Ambaſtus, *fl.* 867
Amboina, *inſ u.* 919
Amdanager, *p.* 890
Amida, *u.* 791
Amiſta, *m,* 672
Amiſſus, *u.* 646
Ammonites, *p.* 713
Amorites, *p.* 739
Amnia, *C.* 728
Ampſacis, *u.* 846
Anabaſtæ, *p.* 870
Anabi, *p.* 856
Anactoria, *u.* 662
Anak ms, *p.* 728
Anaræi, *m.* 854
Anaritæ, *p.* 777
Anaroſa, *u.* 829
Anathemuſa, *inſ.* 673
Anathoth, *u.* 731
Anatolia, *pr.* 641
Anchiola, *u.* 667
Anchorabites, *p.* 790
Ancyra, *u.* 647
Andanius, *fl.* 821
Andirene, *u.* 693
Andraca, *u.* 649
Andragide, *u.* 901,923
Andramania, *inſ.* *ibid.*
Andrap a / us, *u.* 646, 647
St. andrea, *c.* 677,683
Andraſia, *u.* 647
Anganri, *u.* *ibid.*
Angeli, *u.* 901
Anian, *fretum,* 859,860
Animachæ, *p.* 906
Anith, *u* 737
Annibæ, *m.* 855
Antandrus, *u.* 650
Antaradus, 691
Anthedon, *u.* 737
Anthemalia, *pr.* 790
Anthropophagi, *p.* 850
Antiboli, *fl.* 879,606
Anticus, *fl* 845
Antigonia, *u.* 643,996
Antilibanus, *m.* 688
Antioch, *u.* 696
  Piſidiæ, *u.* 664
  Migdoniæ, 790

Antiochia

Antiochia, 930
Penes Taurum. 698
Antiochiana, p. 650
Antiopia, u. 720
Antipatris, u. 724
Antitaurus, m. 648,796
Anubingara, u. 923
Anurogrammum, u. 924
Aornus, u. 880
Apamra, u. 654,760
Apamene, p. 695
Apathurum, u. 846
Apanomera, pr. 672
Aphec, u. 721
Aphipolis, u. 735
Aphæema, u. 732
Aphraim, u. 722
Aphrodiſium, u. 680
Apollonia, u 651,656,788
Apocopi, m. 879
Apphona, inſ. 761
Arabia, pr. 767, u. 775
Deſerta, 769
Felix, 773
Petrea, 769
Arabicus, ſ. 776
Arabyſſus, u. 650
Aracca, u. 819
Arach, pr. 827
Arachan, pr. u. 903
Arachoſia, pr. u. 825
Arachatos, u. l. 825
Arad, u. 729
Aradus, u, 691,696,694
Aræ, p. 822
Aram, pr. 684
Sobati 685,699
Damaſeck, p. 700
Naharaiim, p. 800
Maachah 800
Aramathea, u. 725
Ararat, m. 799
Aravari, p. 881
Aravena, pr. 650
Araxates, fl. 851
Arazes, fl. 799,820
Araza, u. 846
Arbaca, u. 825
Arbela, u. 722
Arbelites, u. 788
Arbis, u. 813
Arbituri, p. 824
Arbius, fl 823
Arceſſine, inſ. 676
Archelaus, u. 649
Archichelech, u. 800
Ardock, fl. 851
Ardovar, u. 888
Ardoville, u. 816
Are, u. 774. inſ. 776
Arga, u. 775
Argadina, u. 830
Argari, u. 880
Argentea Regio, 905
Argeus, m. 648
Argis, l. 814
Argyropolis, u. 921
Aria, pr. u l. fl. 816
Ariaſpe, u. 824
Arimaſpæ p. 825
Arinchi, p. 843
Arivada, u. 814
Armaſtica, u. 804
Armenia major, 798
minor, 650
Arminig, u. 800
Armuz a / um, u. 822
Arnon, fl m. 711
Aroer, u. 715
Arosbay, u. 900,922
Arphad, inſ. 694
Arrachan, pr. u. 912
Arraphachilis, pr. 731

Arſacia, u. 815
Arſarata, u. 800
Arſamoſara, u. 800
Arſimoto, u. 800
Arſing, u. 699
Arſinoe, u. 679,796
Arſione, u. 680
Arſitenſes, p. 829
Arſonazata
Artacona, u. 828
Artacanda, u. 826
Artamis, fl. 831
Artaſata, u. 8 6
Artaxata, u. 744
Artaxiſſa, u. 804
Aru, p. 913
Arvad, inſ. 694
Arvari, p. 881
Arvis, m. 672
Arxata, u. 800
Arymphrani, p. 806
Arzerum, pr. 787, u. 789
Aſcalon, u 727
Aſcanius, fl ſ. l. 642
Aſcania, p. i. 654
Aſcatanas, m. 848
Aſher, pr. 721, u 719
Aſharaffe, u. 829
Aſhdod, u. 727
Aſia, pr. 639
Minor, 641
Proconſularis, 657
Propria, 650
Aſiotæ, p 851
Askenaz, m. 798
Aſmiræi, m. 855
Aſophon, u. 724
Aſpabota, u. 851
Aſpendus, u. 665
Aſpeiia, inſ. 677
Aſphalites, l. 711
Aſpitii, m. 850
Aſpithra, u. 867, p. 870
Aſpthara, fl. 866
Aſſa, u 727
Aſſiria, pr. 787
Aſſus, u. 651
Aſtabeni, p. 829
Aſtareni, p. 826
Aſtaroth, u. 717
Alerian, u 670, inſ. 675
Ataberia, inſ. 675
Athec, u 884
Atropatia, pr. 815
Attabas, fl. 906
Attalia u 665
Ava, p. u fl. 907
Avares, p. 846
Audima, p. 678
Avernus, u. 880
Augamale, u. 898
Avim, pr 718
Aura, u. 923
Auranitis, p. 718
Aurer, inſ 923
Aureum, fl. 862
Aureus Cherſoneſus, 909
Auſinza, u 810
Auſitis, pr. 768
Auſtrale mare, 776
Auzatia, u. 856. m. 855
Axima, u. 810
Aza, u 646
Azac, u 843
Azania, pr. 783
Azara, u 851
Azannus, fl. 913
Azekah, u. 730
Azmere, u. 886
Azor, u 720
Azotus, u. 727

Lib. 4.

St. Abad, ſ. 1032
Abadalenry, inſ 1001
Abanni, fl. 977
Abrach, u. 982
Abarduoſia, pr. 1032
Abaſeni, p. 975
Abex, pr. u. 984
Abibe, m. 1059
Abugana, pr u. 980
Abundi, p. 995
Ab utick, / ydes, u. 930
Abyla, m. 956
Acabis, u. 933
Acachica, u. 1047
Acano, u. 983,978
Acanthine, inſ. 1000
Acapulco, u. 1047
Acatlan, u. 1046
Acaxutla, 1053
Accadie, p. 1024
Acla, u. 1057
Acoma, u. 1043
Acos, u. 1068
Acu co / s, u. 1035
Acuerra, pr. 1032
Triſtiam de acugna, u. 1003
Acuſamil inſ. 1051
Adaggia, u. 956
Adea, pr. 984
Adel, pr. 983
Adendum, u. 954
Adrum etum / yſtus, u. 946
Adulacus, ſ. 978
Adulis, u. 978,982
Adyrnachydæ, pr. 932
Ægynarus, inſ. 962
Ægyptus, R. 934
Æguſa, inſ. 962
Ægymnus, inſ. 962
Æeria, pr. 934
Æripani, p. 932
Ætheria, pr. 975
Æthiopia ſuperior, 975
inferior, 986
Æthiopicæ, inſ. 1000
Æthuſa, inſ. 962
Africa, p. 931
Africerones, p. 960
Agadez, pr. u. 971
Agag, pr. 991
Agargynæ, p. 974
Aggencia, u. 1024
Aggiſimba, pr 989,993
Agla, u. 955
Agner, u. 952
Agver, c. u. 9 2
Agvia, c. 1067
Aiotuxettan, pr. 1645
Aquatulco, r. 1050
Alabaſtrinus, m. 926
Alacama, u. 1073
Alacranes, inſ. 1051
Alaibes, p. 954
Albion Nova, 1028, 1038
Albnumequins, pr. 1025
Alcazaer, u. 956
Alchalinces, p. 974
Alagranco, inſ 1005
Alemdine, u. 953
Alexandria, u. 928
Nova, pr. 1020
Algiers, pr u. 950
Aliphus, m. 931
Alcteburlam, pr. 931
Almaguer, u. 1074
Alpis, m. 921
Alpuerte, u. 10 9
All Saints, 1077

Alvarez, inſ. 1003
Amaro, pr. u. m. 980
Amari, l. 927
St. Amaro, u. 1079
Amatha, u. 1081
Amazons, pr. 993,1083
fl. 1056
Ambrici, fl. 995
Amegada, ſ. 1075
America, 1011
Amicuſia, inſ. 1000
Ammonia, pr. u. 931
Amozake, pr. 995
Ampaza, u. 940
Ampeluſia, pr. 954
Ampſage, fl. 945
Amſa, u. 954
New Amſterdam, u. 1028
Anades, fl. 1058
Anarcaprock, u. 1083
Anchiſa, m. 965
Anchon Sincalica ſ 1074
Ancud, ſ. 1074
Nova Andaluſia, pr. 1058
1088
Andes, m. 1056, i. 1038
St. Andrews, u. 1082
c. 1075, ſ. 1015
Andro-arco, u. 1002
Angedeſos, u. 1058
St angelo, u. 963
De los angelos, u. 1049
Anghotina, inſ. 1000
Port au x anglois, u. 1025
Angoda, u. 1002
Angola, pr. 995
Angote, pr. u. 980
Angra des Reyes, u. 1080
Anguilla, inſ. 1093
Anian, fret, 1039
Aniſiphyra, u. 931
St. ann, u. 1062,1077
1090
Annobon, inſ. 1004
Annogambri, m. 931
Antaboſta, u. 1002
Antacon, l. u. 927
Ante, u. 1032
Ant ego, / igua, inſ. 1094
Antequera, u. 1050
Ora anteroſa, pr. 971
Anthia, pr. 1032
St. anthonies, inſ. 1004
fl 1081, c 1097
Anthropophagi, p. 989
Antibacchias, inſ. 1000
Antiochia, u. 1062
Antiphila, u. 983
Antiphra, u. 932
Antipyrgus, u. 931
Ant ius, / onius, u. 929
Point antogil, u. 1002
Antolaba, inſ. 1006
Antonio de Cabo, u. 1076
Anygath, u. 971
Anzerman, pr 1062
Anzichana, pr. 997
Anziqui, p. 997
Anzuga, pr. 960
Anzuichi, p. 995
Apalachei, m. 1031
Apalchia, pr. u. 1032
Apalchen, p. u. 1026
Apamatuc, fl. 1029
Apanawapesk, pr. 1027
Aproſitus, inſ. 1005
Apollonia, u. 932
Aphrodit es / opolis, u. 929
Aptu chi Fanum / ngis, u. 913
Aque Lunda, l. 996

Ara amoris, c. 978
Palladis, inſ. 928
Aracoſi, l. 1083
Arampec, u. 1024
Aran a / gu s, m. 970,966
Araoan deſ. 968
Arapous, l. 927
Arar, u. 983
Aray, c. 1088
Arcadia, pr. 917 919
Archidona, u. 1066
Orbii arcticus, p. 1089
Arequippa, pr. u. 1067
Arezibæ, fl. u. 1095
Arica, u. 1069
Arimao, fl. 1097
Arma, pr. 1062
Herculi, m. 932
Arnedo, u. 1067
Aroia de Coraz. pr. 1037
Aromata, c. 978
Aroncæ, pr. 974
Aroras, pr. 1086
Arowiani, p. 1083
Arquire, inſ. u. 971
Arrawary, fl. 1083
Arruga, fl. 992
Arſenaria, u. 950
Arſinarium, c. 971
arſinos, u. 928 933
arvaſſes, m. 974
aruba, inſ. 1091
arwaccæ, p. 1086
arzilla, u. [illegible]
asbetæ, p. 933
aſcentionis, inſ. 1003
aſgara, pr. 956
aſha-mahaga, fl. 1027
aſifinuad, fl. 952
aſna, u. 1034
aſphar, l. 927
aſpis, c. 978
aſſam, u. 983
aſſawy, p. 1086
aſſociation, inſ. 1091
aſſumption, inſ. 1024,1077
aſtaboras, fl. 977
aſtapus, fl. 979
aſt arre, / rata, inſ. 1000
atlantia, pr. 975
atlanticæ, inſ. 1007
atlanticus Oceanus, 1002
atlantis Nova, pr. 1094
atlas, m. 965
minor, m. 951
attagovantani, p. 1025
avalites, u. ſ. 974,978
983
avavares, p. 1031
avarines, u. 1054
avaris, pr. 928
audes, m. 945,947
auguſtania, pr. 931
St. auguſtine. u. 1002
1032, 1053. fl. 1093
aves, inſ. 1091
avila, u. 1070
De avinno, u. 1042
aulaga, l. 1065
auracona, u. 1073
auranco, pr. 1076
Terra auſtralis Incognita, pr. 1091
autepſque, u. 1047
auxumi, u. 978
auzomide, u. 979
axomite u. 979
axona, fl. 1031
ayavire, u. 1068
ayay, inſ. 1094
Buenos ayeres, u. fl. 1077
ayumas, fl. 1059

Azaſi, u. 993
Azame. u. 953
Azanaghi, p. 971
Azanhages, p. 971
Azachad, des. 968
Azar, m. 1035
Azaii, m. 1057
Azna, u. 1096
Azun, u. 984
Azzeciſe, ſ. 1067

Lib. 1.

Bachano, u. 99
Bachilo, fl, 118
Badaios, u. 263
Baden ſuperior, u. 165
Bætica, p. 248
Bætis, fl. 240, 260
Bæturia, pr. 263
Baignores, u. 181
Bajæ, u. 71
Bajoux, u. 192
Baiocaſſes, p. 192
Baiona, u. 259
Baize, f. pr. 210, 214
Balacuri, u. 350
Balaceleigh, u. 343
Balbaſtro, u. 286
Baldus, m. 118
Balares, fl, 284
Balleum, u. 322
Balſa, u. 276
Baltimore, u. 345
Banatia, u. 334
Banchor, u. 323, 325
Bancornaburg, u. 325
Bangor, u. 325
Banne, fl. 342, 344
Bannoc, fl. 332
Bar, pr. 187
St. Lucar de Barameda, u 26
St. Barbara, u, 277
Barcelone, u. 282
Bardſey, Inſ. 351
Barganey, u. 334
Barkſhire, 308
Bari, p. u. 75
Barleduc, u. 87
Barlette, u. 75
Barrow, fl. 243
Barwick, u. 330
Barroys, p. 187
Baſa, u. 266
Baſſentus, fl. 69
Baſil, u. 165
St. Baſile, u. 211
Baſilicate, p. 77
Baſſigni, pr. 186
Baſtia, u. 140
Baſtitanes, p. 271, 281
Baſtuli, p. 264
Bath, u. 308, 312
Baugy, u. 197
Baule, u. 71
Bayonne, u. 211
Bazadas, u. 211
Bearn, pr. 211
St. Braton, u. 213
Beaucairo, u. 220
Beaufort, u. 197
Beajeu, u. 203
Beajoloys, p. 203
Beauin, u. 227
Beaumaris, u. 351
Beaumoire, u. 207
Beaudregard, u. 204
Beaurpaire, u. 223
Beauois, u. 183
Bebriacum, u. 119
Bedford, p. 304, u. 306
Bedii, p. 259
Begorre, p. 213
Beia, u. 275
Belcaſtro, u. 76
Bele, u. 157
Belgæ, p. 308
Belgica, prima, pr. 181
ſecunda, 183
Bellay, u. 224
Belle-Iſle, 230
Belmont, u. 208
Bellevile, u. 203
Bellinzana, u. 165
Bellemont, u. 77, 208
Bellocaſſi, p. 193
Bellovaſi, p. 183
Belſia, pr. 200
Belzale, u. 150
Belzin, p. 192
Benacus, l. 118
Benearnum, u. 211
Benventum, u. 72, 257
St. Bennet Le Chaſtow, u. 303
Berehaven, u. 345
Bergamo, u. 119
Bergel, p. 171
Bergerac, u. 208
Berigonium, u. 334
Berkes, 304, 308
St. Bernard minor, m. 153
St. Bernardino, u. 171
St. Bernaud, u. 213
Bern, p. 164, u. 165
Bernao, u. 255
Bernicia, p. 314
Berry, pr. 205
Beſanſon, u. 228
Beſignan, u. 76
Beſons, u. 281
Beterenſes, p. 216, 217
Beverly, 308
Bevio, u. 171
Beziers, u. 216
Biatia, u. 219
Biel, u. 164
Bieterſes, l. 163
Bigerones, p. 213
Bilbilis, u. 286
Billon, u. 204
Bincheſter, u. 308
Birat, u. 208
Birgus, fl. 343
Birho, u. 255
Biſcay, p. 254
Biſigli, u. 75
Bitorrum, u. 75
Bituriges Cubi, 205
Ubilci, 210
Liberi, 206
Blackneſs, C 189
Blackwater, fl. 342
Blanii, p. 346
Blanos, u. 282
Blaſcon, Inſ 230
Blavet, u. f. 195
Blaye, u. 208
Bloys, u. 201, fl. 186
Boactus, fl. 130
Boanda, fl. 344
Bodenſer, l. 163
Bodetria, fretum 330
Boch ri erum, u. 284
Bojane, u. 72
Boii. c, 82, 93, 142
Boiſſon. u. 208
Bolonia, u. 91
St. Boniface, u. 140
Boys de St. Pol, u. 220
Bonium, u. 323
Bononia, u. 91
Borgo St. Sepulchro, u 131
Borders, p. 330
Bormio, u. 171
Boſſa, u. 90
Bov erton, ium, u. 323
Bovianum, u. 72
Boullenberg, C. 169
Boullogne, u. 189
Boulogne, u. 91
Bourton, p. u. 202
Bourdeaux, u. 210
Bourg, u. 224
Bourgſurlamer, u. 209
Bourges, x. 205
Bouton[illegible] 209
Boyne, [illegible] 342, 343, &c.
Boys de St. Pol. 220
Vincennes, C. 185
Boyſſon, u. 208
Bozilia, u. 146
Bracaria Auguſta, u, 275
Bracciani, l. 130
Bracciano, u. 99
Brading, u. 352
Braga, u. 275
Bragane, u. 275
Braid Albin, p. 330
Branogenium, u. 308
Brocken, m. 324
Brecknock, p. 324
St. Brier, u. 195
Bremenium, u. 308
Bronta, fl. 118
Brengarten, u. 264
Bronnorville u. 183
Breſcia, u. 118
Breſſi. p. 224
Breſt. u. 195
Bretagne, pr. 194
Brotti, p. 77
Brianſon, u. 223
Bridg. caſterton, u. 308
Brio, p. 187
Brig, pr. 162
Brigantes, p. 308, 346
Brignoli, 219
Brienne, u. 165
Briganio, u. 223
Brionde, u. 274
St. Brioci fanum, u. 195
Brixellum, u. 148
Briſtol, u. 306
Britannia, prima & ſecunda, 309
Britannia, Inſ. 292
Brittanodunum, u. 334
Brous la Galliard, u. 208
Bruck, u. 166
Brunduſium, d. 75
Bruno, f. 226
Bruttii, p. 77
Brye, pr. 187
Buche, pr. 211
Buckingham, p. 304, u. 316
Buolth, u. 322
Bugyo, u. 225
Buguham, p. 334
Burgedala, u. 210
Burette, u. 208
Burgos, u 270
Burgundy { Comit, 228
Ducat, 226
Regnum, 221
Burgundia Tranſſurana, 153
Burtina, u. 286
Buſontus, f. 77
Buſque, u. 156
Buſhe, Inſ. 350
La Butte du Mont, u. 231
Byrſa, f. 165

Lib. 2.

Baba, m. 444
Baccharach, u. 417
Merde Bachu, 513
Baden, pr. u. 427
Baden, vil. u. 447, 428
Badiſſinum, u. 455
Bæbii, p. 552
Bæotia, pr. 591
Balaton, l. 542
Balcan, m. 575
Ballenſtede
Balzigorod, C. 514
Balthia, u. 489
Baltia p. 491
Baltcium mare, 484, 489
Bamberg, u. 444
Bapaulme, u. 367
Baphyrus l. 604
Bard, fl. 535
Bardi, p. 611
Barbara, u. 505
Barleben, u. 467
Barth, u. 459
Bartonia, pr. 533
Bartize, fl. 459
La Baſei, u. 367
Baſilia, pr. 491
Baſternæ, p 567
Batavi, p. 363, 386
Batauodunum, u. 387
Bathinias, fl. 608
Ba varia, yaren, pr. 431
Bautzen, u. 415
Beaumont, u 370
Beauois, u. 370
Auf de Beaurne, u. 409
Becke, fl. 516
Beckem, u. 476
Beckhuſen, u. 478
Bedgoſt, u. 535
Bedſtede, u. 496
Befort u. 422
Beggerhuis, p. 494
Behaimer, u. 404
Beirani, p. 457
Belgica, pr. 409
prima, 415, 424
Belgium, pr. 359
Belgrado, u. 544
Bellen, fl. 485
Belſterne, u. 416
Belvidero, u. 623
Belzo, u. 531
Bemi p. 450
Bender, u. 563
Benoner, p. 456
Berea, u. 603
Berg, pr. 410
Berga, u. 459, 603
Bergen u 494
Ap Zome, u. 379
Bergina, pr. 506
Berbe, u. 414
Berbel, fl. 389
Berben, u. 410
Berblen, u. 410
Berlin, u. 457
Berlind, u. 457
Bernberg, u. 466
Beſſarabia, pr. 563
Beſſerburg, u. 417
Beſſi, p. 563
Berhom, u. 455
Betune, u. 367
Betuiwe, u. 388
Beverland, Inſ. 385
Beybar, l. 516
Bialo, fl. 536
Biana, u. 436
Biaolograd, u. 563
Biarmia, pr. 516
Biblus, Inſ.
Bibrach, u. 428
Bicla, u. 514
Bideloyſiero, l. 513
Bielſco, u. 532
Biephi, p. 561
Bieruliet, u. 365
Berſcid, m. 540
Bigla, u. 528
Bihigen, u. 552
Bitlew, fl. 485
Bilſen, u. 376
Bineche, u. 370
Bing, x. 416
Binget, u. 459
Bipontini, u. 418
Birbholm, Inſ. 491
Biſcoffſtain, u 417
Biſhoppſtoſſe, u. 432
Biſtrice, fl, u. 560
Bitterfelt, u. 453
Bium, u. 595
Black Sea, 602
Towers, 613
Blanch, fl. 370
Blancoſtein, u. 412
Blangis, fl. 367
Blaur, fl. 419
Ble cting, ſcia, pr, 492
Blida, u. 569
Blokawes, u. 426
Bock, fl. 575
Bodenzee, l. 417
Bodenia, p. 505
Bodmin, C. 427
Bodnerſea, 504, p. 505
Bodicus, ſ. 500
Bodobuca, u. 415
Bodon, u 565
Bodum, Inſ. 488
Bogens, u. 490
Bogh, fl. 525. 530
Bohemia, R. 450
Bohus, pr. fl. 494
Boiaria, pr. 431
Boiemi, p. 450
Boiodunum, u. 432
Boiohemum, u. 450
Boion, u. 595
Bolduc, u. 378
Bolla, fl. 471
Bolgiano, u. 437
Boko, fl. 498
Boleſgrave, u. 563
Bomel, u. 389
Bonifacio, u. 563
Bonnea, u. 414
Boppart, u. 415
Boptingen, u. 429
Bor bromagus, u. 418
Borcholm, u. 516
Borelem, u. 376
Boreoſtoma, fl. 559
Bornehem, u. 366
Borneholme, Inſ. u. 491
Boreholm, u. 486
Borſule, u. 385
Boruſſi, p. 532
Boryſthines, fl. 513
Boſcum Ducis, 378
Boſerlitz, u. 454
Boſnia, pr. fl. 552
Boſphorus, 613
Boſtizan. u. 578
Boſtonach, u. 373
Bouchant, u. 370
Bouillon, pr. u. 377
Bouines, u. 372
Bouquinon, u. 414
Bourburg, u. 365
Boys Le Duc, u. 378

Brabant, *pr.* 378
Bracant, *p.* 366
Bracklaw, *u.* 530
Bragingliac, *u.* 444
Bragodunum, *u.* 428
Brakel, *u.* 476
Brala, *u* 475
Bramſted, *u.* 486
Brandenburg *pr* 456,53
Brando, *in* 49
Branionarium, *u.* 444
Branki, *u.* 517
Brailovia, *u.* 564
Braſſovia, *u* 560
Bratuſpantium, *u.* 378
Braunsberg, *u.* 533
Brazia, *Inſ* 556
Breda, *u.* 379
Bredenberg, *u.* 486
Bredrode, *u* 386
Bredervode, *u.* 389
Bregen, *fl* 429
Breme, *pr. u.* 496
Breſlaw, *u.* 455
Breit *pr.* 519 535
Breitys, *pr* 535
Brewers Haven, *u.* 38
Brill, *u.* 384
Brin, *u* 459
Brigartinus, *l.* 4 7
arx Brittanica, *C* 3 4
Briſa ch chus, *u.* 418
Briſgow. *pr.* 4 8
Brianes, *p.* 429
Broick *u.* 476
Brockhurſt, *u.* 389
Bros, *u.* 560
Brouci, *p.* 54
Brutteri, *p* 363,388,4
Brug, *fl.* 365
Bruges, *u.* 365
Brunsells, *u.* 442
Brunsko *u.* 532
Brunſwick *pr. u.* 471
Bruſch, *fl.* 421
Bru ſtella, xella, *u.* 379
Bucareſta, *u.* 564
Buchaw, *u.* 418
Bucorne, *u.* 427
Buda, *u.* 543
Buden, *inſ.* 459
Budina, *u.* 569
Budweis, *u.* 451
Bulgaria *pr.* 568
Bullenſted, *u.* 466
Buren, *pr. u.* 389
Burglaus, *pr.* 489
Burgundi, *p.* 461
Burich, *u.* 409
Burii, *p.* 455
Burredentii, *p.* 561
Buſhorum, *u* 598
Buriada, *pr.* 479
Butrinto, *u.* 598
Butzaw, *u.* 457
Buxtertrude, *u.* 477
Byzantium, *u.* 609

Lib 3.

BAaloth, *u.* 699
Babel, *u.* 785
Babelmandel fretum, 776
Babilonia, *pr* 785
Babylon, *u.* 785
Bacam, *pr.* 902
Bacolia, *u.* 901
Bactria, *pr.* 830
Badeo, *u.* 775
Bærius, *m.* 813
Baſto, *u.* 679
Bagarda, *u.* 816
Bagdat, *u.* 785
Bagoas, *m.* 826
Bagradas, *fl.* 796
Bahaman, *pr.* 797
Bala, *u* 724
Balachium, *u.* 843
Balaguata, *u.* 889
Ballambua, *u.* 921
Balalvanus, *m.* 922
Balanga, *u.* 906
Bal hee tebec, *u.* 701
Balſigovod, *C.* 514
Balonca, *u.* 906
Balſora, *u.* 786, 842
Baly, *Inſ.* 922
Bamath, *u.* 712
Bamath baal, *u.* 715
Banca, *Inſ.* 923
Bandan, *Inſ.* 918
Bandore, *u.* 889
Bannaras, *u.* 902
Bannaraw, *u* 820
Banoam, *u.* 916
Bantam, *u.* 921
Baraab, *pr* 769
Barachus, *fl.* 923
Baracura, *u.* 906
Baraſſe, *Inſ,* 903
Barathene, *u.* 700
Barathrum, *l* 736
Baraza, *u.* 800
Barbaniſſa, *u.* 645
Barbariſſus *u.* 695
Bataxema, *u.* 881
Barrulhdee, *u.* 829
Bargu, *p* 860
Baris, *fl* 879, *m.* 799
Barma *pr.* 906
Barocho, *u.* 888
Baronſe, *pr.* 923
Baronta, *fl.* 815
Barræ, *p* 906
Barſita, *u.* 786
Barulſæ, *inſ.* 917
Barutti, *u.* 691
Barygaza, *u.* 880
Barthaliba, *pr.* 769
Baſadæ, *p* 906
Baſare *m.* 711, *p.* 718
Baſcapan, *u.* 804
Baſcurides, *p.* 847
Baſilici, *p.* 848
Baſilius, *fl.* 819
Baſiſine, *p.* 800
Baſma, *u.* 922
Biſſe, *inſ.* 903
Bata, *ſ.* 845, *p.* 340
Batachina, *inſ.* 919
Batana, *u.* 880
Batanea, *pr.* 717
Bataramptha, *u.* 715
Batax, *u.* 826
Bate, *fl.* 889
Bate colom. *u.* 924
Batchame, *u.* 919
Bathiras, *u.* 717
Baticalia, *u.* 89
Bat, *pr.* 993
Batri, *p.* 824
Batter, *pr* 830
Bautiſus, *fl.* 855
Bayrema, *l.* 736
Bayren, *inſ.* 777
Bazacata *inſ.* 903,917
Bebricia, *pr.* 642
Behynga, *u* 906
Beerſheba, *u.* 719
Beganna, *u.* 769
Bela, u. 730
Belfort, *u.* 721
Bolgion, *m.* 660, *pr* 816
Bengala, *ſ.* 879, *p. u.* 903
Benjamin, *pr.* 731
Bepirthus, *m.* 906,878
Berabonna, *u* 906
Berenice, *u.* 770
Beriara, *p.* 768
Beritus, *u.* 691
Berothæi, *u.* 700
Berrhæa, *u.* 695
Berry, *u.* 820
Berſake, *u.* 722
Berzamna, *u.* 737
Beſor, *fl* 727, 337
Beſynga, *fl.* 906
Betah, *u.* 700
Betarampha, *u.* 715
Bethabora, *u.* 714
Bethel, *u.* 732
Bethezob, *u.* 715
Betharam, *u.* 715
Eden, *pr.* 701
Horon, *u.* 725
Bethlem, *u.* 731
Nimrah, 715
Rehob, *p.* 718
Saida, *u.* 719,721
San, *u.* 724
Somes, *u.* 721,729
S ora, ur, *u.* 730
Bethulia, *u.* 722
Betius, *fl* 774
Bezabde, *u.* 791
Bezek, *u.* 724
Bianco, *c* 677,711, *l.* 842
Biani, *u.* 886
Biblis *u.* 691
Bichend, *u.* 850
Bidaſpes, *fl.* 879
Bider, *u*, 889
Billezuga, *u.* 654
Bindimir, *fl.* 820
Bintam, *inſ.* 923
Birrha, *u.* 788,799
Biſeries, 804
Biſnagar, *u.* 900
Bitigo, *m.* 640,856
Bithinia, *pr.* 641
Bittigi, *p.* 881
Bittigo, *m.* 878
Blacktower, *u.* 654
Blouſa, *u.* 687
Boas, *fl.* 802
Bocaria, *u.* 923
Bochor, *u.* 831
Bochu, *u.* 815
Bodeus, *fl.* 794
Boldra, *u.* 899
Bolgar, *u.* 847
Boloſa, *u.* 687
Bongo, *pr. u.* 916
Borgi, *p* 816
Borgylia, *u.* 662
Borneo, *inſ. u.* 910
Borſanna, *fl.* 906
Borſyppa, *u,* 786
Boryſthenes, *fl.* 841
Boſor, *u.* 714,715
Boſphorus cimerius, 842
Thracius, 641
Boſra, *u.* 770
Botanter, *pr.* 901
Botone, *inſ.* 918
Bottia, *u*, 901
Bozra, *u.* 715
Brama, *pr.* 906
Bramina *u.* 867
Brampore, *u.* 889
Briſoaria, *fl* 810
Bucephalus, *u.* 880
Buchort, *pr.* 884
Bucorſuccot. 884
Bugiales, *inſ.* 676
Burſa, *u.* 643
Buſſereth, *u.* 770
Butis, *u.* 717
Byconi, *pr.* 647
Byces, *fl.* 845
Bylcæ, *p.* 848
Byra, *u.* 725
Byrra, *u.* 698

Lib. 4.

BAalzephon, *u.* 928
Babel, *u.* 983
Babel mandel, *inſ.* 1000
Babiba, *u.* 966
Babylon Ægypt, *u.* 929
Bacalaos, *p inſ.* 1021
Bacchias, *inſ.* 1000
Badin, *pr.* 990
Baeza, *u.* 1066
Bagamedeum, *pr.* 981
Bagaxi *u.* 966
Bagota, *pr.* 1061
Bagradas, *fl.* 946
Bahama, *inſ.* 1033
Baldiria, *u* 1074
Balgada, *pr u.* 979
Bally, *u.* 983
Balta, *fl.* 1047,1053
Bamba, *pr. u.* 996
Bangu, *pr.* 995
Banirendo, *u.* 956
Banza, *u.* 996
Baoruco, *u.* 1096
Baranca, *u.* 1059, 1078
Barania, *fl.* 1041
Baraquicemiti, *fl.* 1089
Barbacene, *inſ.* 1004
Barbar da, dos, *inſ.* 1093
S. Barbara, *u.* 1042 *fl* 1066
Barbaricus, *ſ.* 978 989
Barbary, *pr.* 995
Barbola, *fl.* 985,995
Barbora, *u.* 982
Barca, *pr. u.* 930
Barce, *pr. u.* 931
Barcena, *l.* 977
Barcitæ, *p.* 933
Barditis, *m.* 989
Bardones, *p.* 1088
Barceras, *c.* 1079
Barna, *u.* 982
Barnag aſſum, nes, *pr.* 98
Barnwelts, *inſ.* 1092
Barren, *inſ* 1090
Barſtable. *u.* 10 7
St. Bartholomew, *u.* 105
inſ. 1094, *c.* 1091
Barus, *pr.* 98
Baſnithus, *m.* 9 7
Baſſium, *c.* 978
Port le baſques, 1011
Baſra, *u.* 956
Baſſachiræ, *p.* 932
Los Baſtimentos, *inſ.* 1058
Batha, *u.* 9050
Bathus, *u.* 9078
Batrachus, *u.* 9031
Batra, *pr u* 9096
Bavagul, *pr.* 909
Bayamo, *u.* 1097
Bazania, *fl.* 1040
Bay blanch, *ſ.* 1020
Beach, *pr* 1091
Bebul, *u.* 983
Belmalechi, *p.* 976
Belen, *fl.* 1055
Belgium Novum, 10 7
Bengo *fl* 995
Beni Jeſro, *u.* 957
Jeſſeten, *u* 956
Benin, *pr.* 973
Benomatana, *p.* 992
Berenice, *u.* 933
Bermeio, *fl.* 1077
Bermuda, *u.* 1029
Bermudaz, *inſ.* 1030
Beroa, *u.* 982
Bertecca, *pr.* 999
Beru, *f.* 1052
Beſecath, *p.* 931
Bathames, *u.* 928
Bicar, *u.* 1062
Bidar, *u.* 983
Biledulgared, *pr.* 467
Biſam, *u.* 982
Biſcaia Nova, *pr.* 1042
Biſerta, *u.* 946
Bito, *pr.* 974
Bizu, *u.* 1057
Blanca, *inſ.* 1091
Blance, *c.* 471
Blanch, *ſ.* 1081, *inſ.* 1025
Bleminri, *p.* 932
Blanco, *fl.* 1052
Blind Town, *u.* 1019
Boaruſco, *pr.* 1025
Bocanum, *u.* 453
Bogudiania, *pr.* 954
Bocadel brago *fret.* 1087
Boluiticum, *f.* 917
Bolus Erithra, Hiera, *u.* 928
Bonben, *u.* 1068
Bona, *u.* 946
Bonæ Spei, *c.* 994
Bonaire, *inſ.* 1099
Bona viſta, *c.* 1021
Bonaventure, *u.* 1062
Bordea, *deſ.* 968
Borealis, Terra incognita, 1089
Boreum, *c.* 933
Boriguen, *inſ.* 1094
Borneo, *fl.* 971, *u.* 973
Bornum, *pr.* 973
Boro, *pr.* 992
Boſton, *u.* 1027
Botongi, *pr.* 992
Boxo, *c.* 1038
Boyaman, *fl.* 1095
Bracomori, *p.* 1066
Bramas, *p.* 957
St. Brandon, *inſ.* 1101
Braſile, *p.* 1079
Brava, *u.* 984. *inſ.* 1004
Terra de brea, *pr.* 1087
Breſh, *u.* 950
Breſt, *u.* 1021
Brion, *inſ.* 1025
Bubia, *fl.* 1059
Bubaſtis, *u.* 918
Bubia, *fl.* 1059
Buchira, *l.* 912
Bucolicus, *m.* 932
Budomel, *r.* 973
Buenaviſta *inſ.* 1004
Buenos ayres, *fl. u.* 1077
Bugia, *pr. u.* 948
Burgo, *u.* 964
Burugrug, *fl.* 955
Burna, *pr* 992
Buzara, *m.* 945
Buzes, *pr.* 932
Byrſa, *u.* 946
Byzacena, *pr.* 946

C

Lib. 1.

CAballinum, *u.* 226
Cavall io, on, *u.* 210
Cabocagli, *u.* 95
Cabo de crux, *c.* 240
Cabo finis terræ, *c.* 259
Cabo Ortegal, *c.* 259

Cabo derſpinas, c. 254
Cabreta, inſ. 284
Cadi,, u. 263
Cadomum, u. 192
Cardurci, p. 209
Caen, u. 192
Cæri, u. 130
Caer cubi, u. 351
Cardigan, u. 323
Caer glowy, u. 307
Caer laverack, u. 334
Caer-lion, u. 309
Carmarthen, p. u. 325
Caerſeont, u. 323
Cæſarea, inſ. 231, u. 143
  Auguſta, u 286
Cæſaris Burgum, u. 143
Cæſarodunum, u. 198
Cæſaromagus, u. 183
Cagedo, fl. 286
Cagliare, c. u. 90
Cahoes, u. 209
Cajeta, u 70
Calabria, pr. 76
  inferior, 77
  ſuperior, 76
    Horra
Cala Gorina } u. 251
    Guris,
Calais, u. 188
Calaris, u. 90
Calataiub, u. 286
Calatum, u. 309
Calatravia, u. 208
Caledonia, pr. 330, 334
Caletes, p. 193
Callota de Neſquin, u. 227
Calpe, m. 261
Calypſo, inſ. 78
Cam, fl 313
Camalodunum, u. 308
Camargue, p. 219
Camboritum, u. 388, 313
Cambridge, pr. 304, u. 307, 313
Cameracaſtruſis, u. 184
camerine, u. 149
campagan de Roma, 100
campania,
  Antiqua, p. 69
  Nova 100
campaigne p. 186
campi canini, p. 170
campi Lapidei, p. 219
campi catalaunici, pr. 217
can, fl 314
candale, u. 314
cannæ, u. 74
can us, igo, m. 240
cantabri, p 255
cantabriæ, m 247
cantabricum Mare, 242
cantæ, p. 334
canterbury, u. 308, 310
cantiani, p. 308
cantini, p. 334
cantire, p 334
cantium, inſ. 352
canulium, u 75
cape de Iſtrie, u. 221
capitinate, p. 74
capori, p 259
capraria, inſ. 133
capreæ, inſ. 78
caprulæ, inſ. 124
capuæ, u. 70
caraceni, p. 72
carara, u. 131
Carbantorigum, u. 334
carcaſone, u. 216
cardano, u. 283
Cardigan, pr. 324
Caribdis, ſ. 82
Carioſergus, u. 344
Cariſti, p. 255
Carinthia, pr. 152
carlat, u. 204
carlingford, u. 344
carlile, u. 314 330
carlough, p. u. 343
carmangvogla, u. 156
carmarden, pr. 324
carmeſunt, ſ. 494
carnarvon, pr. 324, u 325
carnicæ, m p. 152
carniola, pr. 152
carnutes, p. 200
caro, c. 82
carpentani, p. 268, 271
carpentoras, u. 220
carpi, u. 93
carick, p. 334
carrion, fl. 257
carteiæ, u. 261
carthagena, u. 267
carthaginenſis, p. 248
carthenna, u. 266
cæſar, u. 150
caſerte, u 7
caſpium mare, 510
caſſiles, u 311
caſſiterides, inſ. 351
caſtellani, p. 282
caſtellona, u. 132
caſtile, pr 270
caſtillon, u. 189, 225
caſtlefrance, u. 119
caſtles, c. 171
caſtletown, u. 350
caſtro, u 75
caſtro Giovanni, u. 85
Caſtrolda, u. 132
caſtres, u. 184
caſtro villaæ, u. 77
caſtrum latum, u. 333
caſtrum Heraldi, u. 207
caſtrum Theodorici, u 187
caſt ulo, aon, u. 268, 271
caſtulonenſis ſaltus, m. 247
catalaunici campi, pr. 217
catalonia, pr. 28
catana, u. 82, 86
caterlough, p. u. 343
catælauni, p. 186
St. catherines, c. 157
Cathneſs, pr. 334
Catiruchlani, p. 308
Cavan, p. 344
cavati, p. 224
cauci, p. 346
caux, u. 192
ceano, u. 71
cel, l, 163
celtæ, p. 263
celtiberia, p. 271, 286
celtica, pr. 263
celto Galatia, p. 173
cenis, m. 132
cenomani, p. 93, 142, 197
cenomanſes, p. 197
centum cellæ, u. 99
centrones, p. 157
cerdagne, p. 283
cerretani, p. 283
cervia, u. 92
cervillan, u. 267
ceſſina, u. 92
cex, u 265
chabannes, u. 209
chabriers, u. 219
chaldey, inſ. 351
chalarus, u. 89
chalon, u. 186, 226
chaluz, u. 208
chambarie, u. 156
champaigne, pr. 186
chancelle, u. 203
chantille, u. 184
chapelle, u. 190
charboneirs, u. 157
charento, fl. 207, 209
charenton, u. 183
charmis, u. 89
charolles, u. 227
charroux, u. 203
chartres, u. 200
chaſteau Briant, u. 195
  Dun, u. 20
  Moron, 211
  Neuſe, 209
  Portian, 191
  Rous, 205
  Saraſin, 209
  Thierry, 187
chaſteller, u. 191
chaſtel chalons, u. 229
  Herald, 207
  Jalone, 214
  Neau, 214
chaſtillon, u. 210
chattam, 311
chaumont, u. 186, 225
chaunc, u 190
chedlady fl. 324
chenil, fl. 261
cher, fl. 204
cherſunum, u. 140
cheſter, u. 307
cheviot, m. 330
chianus, fl. 131
chiarama u. 171
chiaurna, p. 171
chicheſter, u. 311
chientus fl. 97
chiltern, m. 295
chioggia, inſ. 123
chiuſi, u. 133
chorges, u. 224
chur, u. 171
churburg, u. 193
cilini, p. 259
cimbri, p. 180
cimmeni, p. 180
cimmerius, m. 97
cinia, fl. 281
cinnium, u. 284
circe, u. 101
cirenceſter, 308
ciſſanceſter, u 311
ciſtreux Monaſter, 194
ciſteron, u. 219
citta de caſtella, u. 98
citta del chiera, u. 72
cittadella, u. 284
cita Nova, u 121
civica Vechia, u. 99
cividad de Auſtria, u 121
  Real, u. 257
  Roderigo, u. 270
claerac, u. 214
clarecounty, 344
claſſi, u. 91
clavenna, u. 171
cleri, u. 200
clermont, u. 183, 204
clevenertal, u. 171
cl avius, in, fl. 206
cliſſon, u. 195
St. clode, u. 184
clonmel, u. 345
clugni Monaſter, 229
cluſium, u. 130
cluyd fl. 332
cluydedale, 333
clonmel, u. 311
coctiæ, m. 152
coignac, u. 219
coim, u. 266
coira, u. 171
colcheſter, 313
collebræ, u. 283
coln, fl. 313
colonnes, c. 78
colonia London, u. 313
coltane, pr. 344
comachia, u. 93
comacina, inſ. 143
combraille, p. 202
cominges, p. 213
como, u 143
Compo igne, ndium, u. 183
complutum, u. 272
compoltſchin, pr. 171
compoſtella, u. 259
conirella, inſ. 284
concordia, u. 120
concreſſant, u. 205
condabora, u. 271
condate, u. 195
condivincinum, u. 195
condon, u. 214
conaulat, u. 208
conflans, u. 157
conil, u 261
conimbre, u. 275
connacia, pr. 344
connaught, pr. 344
con ovium, wey, u. 323
conqueſt, u. 195
contenlia, u. 77
conſerans, p. 211, 181
conſerans, p. u. 211, 213
conſtance, l. 165
conſtans, u. 192
conteſſani, p. 281
contin p. 334
convena p. 213
cavenares, p. 212
conwy fl. 324
corbeil, u. 183
corbes, l. 342
corbie, u. 190
corcagia, u. 345
corfinium, u. 72
corinium, u. 308
coriondi, p. 346
corbe. pr. u. 345
corduba, pr. u. 260
coritani, p. 308
cornavii, p. 308
cornero, ſ. 121
cornet, c. 231
cornubii, p. 334
cornwal, 304
coro, c 82
corſica, inſ. 139
cortona, u. 131
corve, ſſ 325
corvo, inſ 277
corunna, u. 259
coſetani, p, 282
coſmopolis, u. 133
coſſa, u 133
coſſium, u. 211
corſwold, m. 295
coventry, u. 315
coure, u. 171
cournvaille, pr. 195
cowes, c. 352
crathii, fl. 77
crato, fl. 109
La craux, pr. 219
crecy, u. 189
crema, u. 119
cremera, fl. 99
cremien, u. 223
cremona, u. 143
crevice, fl. 206
creuſe, fl. 205
cridington, u. 313
croiſſir, u. 195
croſſeto, u. 133
crotona, u. 77
crovy, u. 190
St. crux, u. 277
cubi, p. 171
cuenza, u. 270
cullera, u. 281
cuma, u 76
cumberland, pr. 304
cumici, u. 284
cunningham, pr. 334
curi, fl. 226
curia, u. 171
curlew, m. 311
cyclopes, p. 82
cyclopum Scopuli, inſ 86
cyenos, inſ. 139

Lib. 2.

CÆſarea Lutra, u. 417
calacrium, u. 568
calberg, m. 471
calcar, u. 409
calcis, u. 256
callipolis, u. 609
calliſte, inſ. 619
calmigoria, u. 538
caloſtoma, fl. 559
calucones, p. 429
calydon, n. u. 595
cambray, pr. u. 371
chaſteau cambreſis, 371
cameracum, pr. u. 371
camfore, u. 385
camienex, u. 530
camin, n. 459
camits, u. 456
Val de campare, inſ. 627
campen, u. 388
campodunum, u. 428
canche, fl. 367
cancoentii, p. 561
camden, u. 527
candr, r. 466
candy, inſ. 619, u. 623
canra, pr. u. 623
canini fater, p. 386
caniſia, u. 438
capareus, u. 615
Saltus carbonaricus, 369
cardia, u. 609
careſſus, u. 618
carinthia, pr. 436
cariſte, u. 615
carloſtadt, u. 417
carmeſont, ſ.
carni, p. 437
carniola, pr. 437
carnuntum, u. 543
carodunum, u. 535
carpathii, m. 540
carthea, u. 618
carpen, u. 375
caſan pr. u. 518
caſimir, u. 536
caſpium Mare,
caſſandria, u. 604
caſſandt, inſ. u. 366
caſſels, u 474
caſſiope, u. 498
caſſovia, u. 543
caſtegnaza, m. 573
caſtol, u. 445, 449
  Novo, u. 623, 553
caſter, u. 410
Vetera caſtra, 410

The TABLE.

Argiro Caſtro, 598
Caſtrolin, *u.* 506
Catena, Mundi. *m.* 573
Catharo, *ſ. u.* 553
Catti, *p.* 441, 474
Catzenebbogen, *u.* 441
Cauron, *inſ.* 619
Cazach, *u.* 552.
Cebium, *u.* 564
Cecropria, *u.* 588
Cel, *l.* 427
Celidnus, *fl.* 597
Cella, *u.* 471
Celeya, *u* 437
Cenchrea, *u.* 586
Centauri, *p.* 601
Centron, *u.* 376
Ceos, *inſ.* 618
Cephalenia, *inſ. u.* 626
Cephalo, *u.* 617
Celiſus, *fl* 577, 587
Ceratus, *u. fl.* 622
Ceraunii, *p.* 556
Cereſi, *u.* 603
Cerigo, *inſ.* 619
Ceronia, *u.* 592
Ceſſine, *u.* 455
Ceterigo, *inſ.* 624
Cetius, *u.* 404
Chabris, *fl.* 603
Chalcidice, *p.* 604
Chalcis, *u.* 595, 615
Chali, *p.* 489
Cham, *u.* 449
Chaminiſa, *u.* 578
Charrani, *p.* 475
Chaonia, *pr.* 597
Charaſon, *fl.* 608
La'Charbonniere, *u.* 362
Charitni, *p.* 447
Charlemont, *u.* 372
Charudes. *p.* 48
Charmes, *u.* 424
Caſnari, *p.* 465
Chatti, *p.* 473
Chauci, *p.*. 472, 475
Chedini, *p.* 497
Cheitcheen, *u.*
Chelme, *pr. u.* 537
Cherona, *u.* 592
Cherſo, *inſ.* 555
Cheruſci, *p.* 468, 472
Cheſtire, *c.* 620
Chianenza, *u. c.* 578
Chiers *fl.* 373
Chilonites, *c.* 580
Chilonium, *u.* 486
Chimay, *u* 370
Chironia, *u.* 615
Chiſamo, *u.* 613
Chriſtenberge, *u.* 492
Chriſtendorb, *u* 492
Chriſtiania., *u* 492, *inſ.* 624
Chriſtianopolis, *u.* 492
Chronack *u.* 444
Cronus, *fl.* 529
Chryſites, *u.* 604
Chryſonicum, *u.* 566
Chuni, *p.* 545
Chryſites, *u.* 604
Cia, *inſ.* 618
Ciabrus, *fl.* 559
Cibinium, *u fl.* 560
Cicynethus *inſ.* 615
Ciſland, *inſ.* 488
Cimarus, *c.* 620
Cimbri *p.* 404, 484
Cimeris. *u.* 404
Cimolis, *inſ.* 618
Citeus, fl 615
Ciſamunt, *u.* 623
Ciſteum, *u.* 622
Citheron, *m.* 592
Citium, *u.* 605
Clarewany, *u,* 412
Clagnefoot, *u.* 437
Claude, *inſ.* 624
Clau diopo lis
lenberg, *u.* 560
Clereband, *pr. u.* 409
Cliria, *u.* 409
Clyſſa, *u.* 552
Cnemis, *m.* 595
Cobandi, *p.* 489
Cobolentz, *u.* 415
Cochina, *u.* 563
Cochinio, *u.* 614
Cocytus, *fl.* 597
Codonania, *inſ.* 489
Corten, *u.* 466
Cognamus, *m.* 435
Colambes, *u.* 565
Colberg, *u.* 459
Colen, *pr. u.* 414
Colchinium, *u.* 553
Colluga, *u.* 517
Colmagro, *u.* 519
Colmar, *u.* 421, 502
de Cholachino, *ſ.* 581
Colocza, *u.* 544
Colonamich, *u.* 568
Colonia, *u.* 598
Agripina, *u.* 414
Tragana, 409
Colubra, *fl.* 566
Columbella, *u.* 565
Comara, *inſ.* 543
Comenolitati, *p.* 601
Comines, *u.* 365
Conadus, *ſ.* 489
Conde, *u* 370
Condora. *pr.* 516
Confluentes, *p.* 415
Congel, *u.* 494
Connigeberg, *u.* 533
Conſtance *l. u.* 427
Conſtantinople, *u.* 609
Conſtat, *u.* 446
Conteſſo, *ſ.* 603.
Copenhagen *u.* 489
Copperdale, *pr.* 504
Corbach, *u,* 474
Cor cyra
ſu. *inſ.* 627, 556
Corelia, *pr.* 515
Corenberg, *u.* 516
Corinth, *pr. u.* 586
Coritus, *u. c.* 622
Cornati, *u.* 464
Corona, *u.* 560
Corone, *l. u.* 580
Coronea, *u.* 592
Corſira, *u.* 537
ort Chine, *u.* 385
Cortina, *u.* 622
Coryhuſium, *c.* 580
Coſſova, *u.* 569
Coſtin, *u* 459
Cotthuſe, *u* 456
Coub, *u.* 418
Covin, *u.* 565
Courtray, *u.* 565
Crabuts *pr.* 552
Cra covia
cow, *u.* 536
Crapack, *m.* 540
Cratova, *u.* 566
Cravenberg, *u.* 409
Ciem ia
s, *u.* 536
Crempe, *u fl.* 485
Cremſer, *u.* 454
Crenides, *u* 403
Creſſona, *pr.* 607
Creta, *inſ.* 619
Cretaniom Mare, 619
Cribizi, *p* 519
Criſſa, *u.* 593
Croatia. *pr.* 552
Croja, *u.* 600
La Croix, *m.* 496
Cronaburg, *u.* 506
croneberg *u* 442, 489 502
Cronſtadt, *u.* 56
Cronus, *fl.* 525
Croſlen, *u.* 455
Crunitznach, *u.* 417
culemberg, *m.* 404, *pr u.* 389
Culm, *u.* 533
Culmback, *u.* 464
Cumaniza, *m* 552
Curetes, *p.* 590
Curiapegniana, *u.* 464
Curcicum, *u.* 555
Curieta, *inſ.* *ibid*
Curland, *pr.* 527
Curta, *u.* 543
Curzola, *inſ. u.* 556
Curzolari, *inſ.* 616
Cuſtrine, *u.* 457
Cyclades. *inſ.* 616
Cydonia, *u.* 622
Cynthinium, *u.* 595
Cynthus, *m.* 617
Cynus *u.* 595
Cypariſſi, *u.* 580
Cyrra, *u.* 593
Cythera, *inſ.* 619
Cythnus, *pr.* 618
Cytia, *u.* 622
Cytinum, *u.* 595
Cyzicus, *inſ.* 613
Czandre. *u.* 567
Czeremiſſi, *p.* 518
Czeſnigo, *u.* 514
Czirbo, *u.* 532
Czyb, *p* 561

Lib. 3.

CAbadinæ, *p.* 822
Cobandone, *pr.* 803
Cabira, *u.* 644. 649
Cabocæ, *p.* 906
Caboras, *m.* 796
Cabubuthra, *m.* 774
Cabul. *pr. u.* 825
Cacamacon, *fl.* 868
Cacheto, *u,* 804
Caduſii, *pr,* 815
Cael, *u.* 900
Cælene, *m.* 797
Cæle Syria, *pr.* 700
Cæſarea, *u.* 649, 725
Philippi, *u.* 719
Dio Cæſarea, *u.* 649
Flavia Cæſarea, *u* 726
Cæſius, *fl.* 805
Caffa, *u.* 842
Calcolam, *p. u.* 876, 898
Caicus, *fl.* 655
Caiſung, *u.* 869
Cailon, *u.* 895, *inſ.* 903
Cainaum, *inſ.* 903
Caindu, *pr u.* 857
Caipumo, *f.* 911
Caiton, *u.* 869
Calacte, *u.* 788
Calacine, *p.* 788, 772
Calani, *p.* 907
Calamo, *inſ.* 674
Calautan, *u.* 911
Calba, *u.* 851
Calbis, *fl.* 642
Calcedoi, *u.* 643
Calcadnus, *fl.* 666
Calibi, *m.* 923
Calicute, *pr. u.* 891
Caledoni. caput, 677
Callinice, *u.* 695
Callithoe, *u.* 714
Calne, *u.* 796
Calvarie, *m.* 711
Calwalla, *u.* 887
Camaran, *inſ.* 776
Cambaia, *pr* 887, *u* 887
Cambris, *f.* 855
Cambyſis, *fl.* 799
Cambyſum, *fl.* 874
Camelorum, Regio, 848
Camiſſene, *pr.* 818
Campæ, *u.* 649
Campane, *u.* 888
Campion, *u.* 857
Camul, *pr.* 857
Cana *Major u.* 721
Minor,
Canaan, *pr.* 688, 707
Canac, *fl.* 814
Canara, *pr.* 890
Candahor *pr. u.* 815
Canbari, *p.* 849
Candie *u.* 924
Cano, *u.* 657
Caniclu, *l.* 854
Canis, *fl.* 689
Cannæ, *u.* 657, 664, 786
Canſay, *p.* 860
Cantharis, *u.* 821
Canthymus, *u.* 880
Canton, *pr.* 864, *u.* 868
Capacote, *u.* 891
Caparorſa, *u.* 737
Caparnaum *u.* 719
Capitolias, *u* 701
Cappadocia. *pr. fl.* 648
ſecunda, 649
Caprus, *f* 786
Caput Calidoni *c.* 677
Gentis, *u.* 784, 800.
Caracencium, *u.* 665
Caracoras, *u.* 860
Canigu, *u.* 854
Carami, *l.* 854
caramania, *pr.* 666
caramit, *u.* 791
caratæ, *u.* 880
caraſia, *pr.* 653
caratæ, *p.* 848
carathra, *u.* 664
carazan, *pr.* 857
carabalia, *pr.* 665
carcimitis, *fl.* 842
cardimine, *inſ.* 776
cardandan, 857
careanſu, *u.* 854
caria, *p. inſ.* 674
cariathiarim, *u,* 718
cariath Sephir, 728
carindas, *fl.* 814
carioth, *u.* 729
cariphi, *fl.* 878
carman, *u* 775
carmania, *pr* 805, *u.* 806
carmel, *m.* 687
carnaim, *u* 717
caromarum, *fl.* 854
carpaſiæ, *inſ.* 683
carpaſſus, *pr.* 678
carpathos, *inſ. u.* 675
carpathiummare, 939
carpella, *c.* 822
carræ, *u.* 791
carthau, *u.* 721
caſa, *u.* 819
casbin, *u.* 815
caſcar, *pr.* 856
caſcimir, *u.* 883
caſchan, *u.* 818
caſias, *p.* 857
caſeii, *m.* 855
caſilmach. *fl.* 642
caſiotis, *pr.* 695
caſius, *m.* 685, 736
caſluim, *p.* 727
caſmer, *fl.* 687
caſpia, *pr.* 829
caſpiæ portæ, *m.* 640, 828
caſpiu, *u.* 718
caſpiræi, *p.* 881
caſp ria, *pr.* 884
caſpium mare, 805
caſſanito, *pr.* 877
caſſirotæ, *p.* 816
caſta, *u.* 900
caſtamono, *u.* 644
caſtol-Geta, *u.* 671
caſtrum Perigrinorũ, 723
Regium, 722
catabeda, *m.* 908
catamorea, *p.* 672
catamul, *fl.* 879
cataonia, *pr.* 650
cataraches, *fl.* 665
catecha, *u.* 901
cathay, *pr.* 853
cathraxpis, *fl.* 821
catigai, *u.* 903
catio, *u.* 737
catatareagara, *u.* 867
cattabani, *p.* 777
De la catti, *c.* 677
cattigara, *u.* 868
caucaliæ portæ, *m.* 640
caucaſus, *m.* 796, 886
caudriaces, *fl.* 835
cauchin china, *p.* 907
cavilare, *p* 907
caulanitis, *pr.* 790
caximer, *u.* 883
cayſtrus, *fl.* 659
cebcha, *fl.* 879
ceder Nepthalim, *u.* 719
cedrei, *p.* 768
cedron, *u.* 728, *fl.* 711
cedar, *u.* 718
ceila, *u.* 730
ceilan, *inſ.* 983
cene, *u.* 657
cephene, *pr* 819, *u.* 821
cepaltis, *inſ.* 677
ceraſus, *u.* 645
ceraunii, *m.* 845
cerertis, *ſ.* 845
cerchane, *p.* 859
cergiran, *u.* 869
cerguth, *pr.* 859
cerinos, *p. u.* 680
cerioth, *u.* 729
ceſi, *inſ.* 676
ceſtrus, *fl.* 665
cethinia, *inſ.* 677
cethlan, *u.* 721
cetium, *u.* 679
cetania, *u.* 680
Chabal a,
aca, *u.* 805
chabaras, *fl.* 821, 820
chaberis, *fl.* 859 *u.* 860
chaboras, *m.* 814
chabor, *u.* 815
chadambaram, *u.* 900
chad, *u.* 732
chadeamoritæ, *p.* 881
cheænides, *p.* 848
chæriſtus, *fl.* 802
chagnian, *p.* 864
chalato, *u.* 815
chalnitides, *p.* 786
chalatene, *pr.* 812
chalcidice, *p.* 695
chalcis, *u.* 695, 701, 720
chalcitis, *p.* 774
chaldea, *pr.* 767
chalderani, campi, 784
chale, *u.* 891
chalipium, *u.* 675
chalmodora, *u,* 698

Corymbia, *inſ.* 675
Chalyban, *u.* 804
Chalybantis, *pr.* 695
Chalybes, *pr.* 804
Chamatha, *u.* 699
Chambel, *fl.* 879
Chamdagrin, *u.* 900
Champa, *p.* 910
Chatha, *u.* 842
Characeno, *pr.* 829
Charaehiſar, *u.* 654
Charadræ, *p.* 822
Charax, *u.* 828
Themnah Chares, *u.* 725
Chariſpe, *u* 831
Charomithrene, *p.* 814
Charraeharta, *u.* 831
Chars, *u.* 800
Chaſdim, *pr.* 783
Chatæ, *p.* 853
Chathing, *u.* 869
Chathrapis, *fl.* 821
Chatzarhevam, *u.* 891
Chatua, *u.* 891
Chatzar, *u.* 720
Chatziæi, *p.* 881
Chatzor, *u.* 730
Chaucabeni, *p.* 769
Chau {elei, las, *p.* lateni,} 819
Chaul, *u.* 889
Chauzana *u.* 718,840
Chawchin-china, *p.* 907
Chelonophagi, *p.* 822
Chenao, *fl.* 879
Chequiare, *p.* 867
Cheraſmii, *p.* 849
Cherſoneſus, *u.* 842
Aurea, *pr.* 909
Cheſel, *fl.* 849
Cheſmur, *pr* 857
Chethlan, *u.* 857
Cheuxon, *p* 870
Chiacoporo, *u.* 829
Chiamy, *l.* 906
Chimara, *m.* 663
China, *pr.* 884
Chinchintales, *p.* 859
Chinchianzu, *u.* 849
Chios, *inſ. u.* 672
Chiſon, *fl.* 687,711
Chiti, *c* 677
Choapſa, *u. fl.* 825
Cholna, *u.* 784
Cholobatene, *pr.* 784
Chorassin, *p* 830
Chorazim, *u.* 719
Chornia. *u.* 729
Chorodemus, *c.* 760
Choromandel, *u.* 900
Chorſa, *u.* 800
Chorſeus, *fl.* 687,711
Chrindi, *p.* 829
Chryſopolis, *u.* 643
Chryſorrhas, *fl.* 700,903
Chus, *pr.* 753,803,756
Chufeltan, *p.* 819
Chuſmur, *u.* 883
Chyrman, *pr.* 821, *u.* 822
Cialie, *u.* 856
Cian, *u.* 919
Ciandecan, *u.* 902
Cianthang, *fl.* 867
Cidnus, *fl.* 667
Cilicia, Aſpera, *p.* 665
Cilicia, *pr.* 666
Ciliciæ portæ, *m.* 667
Cimmeris, *u.* 656
Cimmerii, *p.* 842
Cimmerium, *u. c.* 83
Cinædocolpita, *p.* 777
Cingeu, *u.* 869
Cinnereth, *u.* 721
Cipariſea, *inſ.* 673
Circane, *pr* 887
Circan, *p.* 823
Circaſſiani, *p.* 845
Circum, *u.* 843
Cirtatha, *u.* 906
Ciſteion, *u.* 722
Ciſſia, *pr.* 819
Cithera, *u.* 679
Citium, *u.* 679
Citer, *u.* 886
Ciumbabon, *inſ.* 917
Clamanienſes, *p.* 658
Clamaſſum, *u.* 764
Clamur, *u.* 902
Claros, *inſ.* 790
Claudiopolis, *u.* 644.666
Clazomene, *inſ u.* 658
Clides, *c.* 677, *inſ.* 683
Climachus, *u.* 646
Climax, *m.* 774
Cnidus, *u. c.* 662
Coa, *fl.* 879
Coacus, *fl.* 825
Coa {th, f,} ras, *m.* 787,796
Co {amni, amani,} *p.* 831
Coaxtræ, *p.* 846
Cocalia, *u.* 646
Cocconagora *u.* 906
Cocconati, *inſ.* 761
Cochin, *pr. u.* 898
Cogni, *u.* 664
Coia, *u.* 916
Coilan, *u.* 913
Coine, *r.* 800
Colans, *u.* 869
Colchi, *u.* 880
Colchis, *pr.* 801
Coli, *u.* 906
Collinia, *inſ.* 677
Colmuchi, *u.* 924
Colobraſſius, *u.* 665
Cologenbar, *u.* 790
Colonia, *u.* 800
Colophon, *u.* 658
Coloſſa, *u.* 653, *inſ.* 676
Coſthene, p. 800
Coliumbo, *u.* 924,902
Comagena, *pr.* 697
Comana, *u.* 645 649
Comari, *c.* 460,848
879
Combuſta, *inſ.* 776
Comodæ, *p.* 848
Commaria *extrema*, *c.* 879
Comochiette, *c.*
Conapſoni, *p.* 848
Coniata, *u.* 646
Conica, *u.* 646
Conioce, *u.* 846
Connelia, *u.* 679
Cononor, *u pr.* 891
Conſtantia, *u.* 677,680
Contaciſſyla, *u.* 880
Coos cous, *inſ.* 674
Copthorim, *p.* 717
Coquinai, *p.* 916
Coras, *u.* 860
corax, *fl. m.* 845
corcam, *p.* 829
cordiæi, *m.* 800
corduene, *pr.* 800
cordyle, *u.* 646
corea, *inſ.* 870
cornaræ, *p.*
coronyum, *c.* 677
cornochyette, 677
coronus, *m.* 795,814
corſunum, *u.* 842
cory, *c.* 891
corydalla, *u.* 662
corygaza, *u.* 906
coſmi, *u.* 913
coſſæi, *p.* 819
cota, *u.* 891
cotacene, *p.* 800
cotiaris, *fl.* 867
cottiara, *u.* 880
couche, *pr. u.* 902
coul, *u.* 908
coula, *pr. u.* 898
coy, *u.* 800
cragus, *u. m.* 663
cranganor, *pr. u.* 898
crat, *u.* 770
cremam, *u.* 845
creme {n, r,} *u.* 804
cremna, *u.* 664
creſſa, *u.* 662
cretopolis, *u.* 665
crim, *u. pr.* 843
croceus, *fl.* 867
croom, *u.* 828
cruſocus, *pr.* 678
cruſtinæ, *u.* 851
cryptos, *u.* 775
cryſaora, *fl.* 906
cteſyphon, *u.* 776
cucuſon, *u.* 650
cudute, *p.* 906
cuia, *u.* 775
cuma, *u.* 657
cumpanel, *u.* 888
cupreſſitum, *u.* 788
cuprus, *fl.* 787
curdi, *p.* 685
curdiſtan, *pr.* 679
curdurmuch, *u.* 908
curias, *c.* 677, *u.* 679
curroy, *p.* 908
curſus Achillis, *u.* 842
curula, *u* 880
cuſia, *pr.* 856
cuſh cuſha, *pr.* 818
cuſiana, *pr.* 819
cutheans, *p.* 726
cyaneus, *fl.* 802
cybros, *u.* 695
cylendrine, *p.* 884
cyprus, *inſ* 677, *fl.* 787
cyreckbata, *u.* 815
cyreſtica, *pr.* 695
cyrnus, *fl.* 805
cyropolis, *u.* 815,849
cyroſchata, *u.* 849
cyrruhs, *u.* 695
cyrus, *fl.* 799,805
cyrza, *u.* 821
cyzicus, *inſ. u.* 655

Lib. 4.

CAbaio, *inſ.* 1043
cabambe, *m.* 995
cabaya, *pr.* 1096
cabazza, *u.* 995
cabis, *u.* 946
cabot, *u.* 1076
cabra, *u.* 972
cacango, *pr.* 995
cacapool, *fl.* 1073
cachapiaro, *u.* 1067
cacofogo, *m.* 1037
cacoues, *p.* 1078
cadiz, *pr* 1024
cadiz nova *u.* 1090
cæſar, *fl* 1001
cæſarea, *u.* 950
cafraria, *pr.* 993
cajane, *fl.* 1083
caire, *u.* 929
cairoan, *u.* 947
cairoban, *inſ.* 1095
cajuſſa, *inſ.* 1000
calabinda, *u.* 1078
calathe, *inſ*, 962
cale, *u.* 953
caledonia Nova, *pr* 1024
calen, *u.* 990
cali, *u.* 1062
califormia, *pr.* 1037
calpe, *m.* 956
De los camerones, *fl.* 1075
cambylis, *u.* 978
cambizeranium
camolaha, *u.* 1076
camoni, *p.* 1031
campeche, *u.* 1051
camucuiara, *p.* 1080
canada, *pr fl.* 1023
canaga, *fl.* 970
canagadi, *pr.* 1031
cananea, *u.* 1080
canaries, *inſ.* 1044
canares, *p.* 1504
canchis, *m.* 989
candelaria, *u.* 1077
canelam, *pr.* 1066
canfila, *pr.* 982
caniticum, *fl.* 927
cano, *pr. u.* 971
canoas, *pr.* 1016, *fl.* 1088
canopus, *u.* 928
cantaberes, *m.* 989,995
canten, *fl.* 1073
cantire, *c.* 945
capanavatzic, *u.* 1052
caparea, *u.* 1095
capas, *m.* 969
capha, *m* 966
capraria, *inſ.* 1005
capſa, *u* 968
capuri, *p.* 1086
caput currentium, *c* 99
caracas, *u.* 1089
caramanta, *u.* 1071
carangues, *u.* 1066
caravalleda, *u.* 1089
caravaya, *pr.* 1068
carcares, *p.* 16
carfur, *u.* 984
carchana, *inſ.* 963
cariache, *ſ.* 1088
carlos, *u.* 1055
carone, *fl.* 1087
carnuga, *fl.* 971
caribes, *p.* 1054, *inſ.* 1093
caripo, *u.* 1085
carthage, *u.* 935, 938, 1061
cartago, *u.* 1054
carthagina, *pr u.* 1058
caſa, pualca, *u.* 1052
caſena, *pr.* 971
caſperia, *inſ.* 1005
caſ {turough, ſipure,} *fl.* 1083
caſſume, *u* 975
caſteaux, *ſ.* 1021
caſtella aurea, *pr.* 1057
caſtra Judæorum, *u.* 928
caſtro, *u.* 1066,1074
cataractus major, 977
minor, 930
catelina, *inſ.* 1091
cathratæ, *inſ.* 1000
catuda, *fl.* 945
Porto de cauallos, *u.* 1054
cauca, *fl.* 1059
caxamalca, *u.* 1067
Las caxas, *u.* 1045
caxumo, *u.* 979
cazaze, *fl.* 1059
De cedros, *c.* 1038, *fl.* 1061
centpuis, *u.* 953
cepita, *u.* 1069
cercina, *inſ. u.* 964
cerne, *inſ.* 1002, 1005
chagre, *fl.* 1057
chalce, *p.* 1048
chalcaqui, *p.* 1077
chaluteca, *pr* 1053
chamalucoi *fl.* 1053
chamnoe, *inſ.* 1002
champlaire, *l.* 1024
chancay, *p.* 1067
chanes, *p.* 1078
chapala, *l.* 1045
chapan chicu, *u.* 1062
charcas, *pr.* 1069
charcana, *i.* 964
charente, *fl.* 1031
Cape charles, *c.* 1020
Fort de charles, *u.* 1032
Golf de chaſteaux, *ſ.* 1021
chaus, *pr.* 951
cheibi, *inſ.* 962
chelonidas, *l.* 966
chelonides, *l.* 971
chelonitides, *inſ.* 1000
chemia, *pr.* 934
chepor, *fl.* 1057
chereola, *u.* 931
cheriguaria, *pr.* 1078
cherry, *inſ.* 1090
cheſepeacke, *u.* 1029
cheſuſa, *u.* 956
chia, *u.* 1043
chiametla, *pr.* 1041
chiapa, *pr. u.* 1052
chicahamania, *fl.* 1029
chichemeci, *p.* 1046
chichilticala, *p.* 1037
chila, *p.* 1045
chile, *fl.* 1067,1073
chilane, *u.* 1069
chilue, *ſ.* 1074
chimenſes, *p.* 1078
chimo, *pr.* 1067
chinca cocha, *pr.* 1067
chioth, *pr.* 934
chiquiabo, *pr. u.* 1068
chiquitos, *pr.* 1078
chipano, *u.* 1029
chiſica cocha, *l.* 1068
chiticæ, *u.* 989.
chivaldy, *p.* 1094
chocinoca, *u.* 1078
chocolococha, *pr.* 1067
chollo, *u.* 948
chollops magnus, *u.* 948
chontales, *p.* 1056
chowanoake, *u.* 1029
chriſtalli, *m.* 995
St. chriſtophers, *inſ.* 1094
chuluſa, *u.* 1047
chulutecan, *pr.* 1053
chuneſſes, *p.* 1078
chuquinga, *u.* 156
chuquiſaca, *u.* 1069
chubarus, *fl.* 965
chythite, *u.* 954
Le quatre cienagas, *u.* 1042
cibao, *pr.* 1096
cibola, *pr.* 1036
cicnic, *p.* 1035, *u.* 1036
cicuique, *fl.* 1037
cinaloa, *pr.* 1040
cinna, *m.* 945
cinnaba, *m.* 942
cinnamomifera, *pr* 975
cinſterna, *u.* 946
cipango, *inſ.* 1097
cirta, *u.* 948
cirteſii, *p.* 949
citala, *fl.* 1047
cividad Real, *u.* 1052
clantinolleper, *u.* 1047
St. clara, *inſ.* 995
c. 1037, 1038

Clari, *m.* 965
Cleartus, *l.* 931
Cleopatris, *u.* 928
Clyſma, *u* 919
Coanza, *fl.* 989.995
Coava, *fl.* 991
Cochabamba, *pr.* 1069
Coche, *inſ.* 1090
Cocite muco, *fl.* 1096
Cocktuway, *p.* 1083
Cogemymne, *u.* *ibid*
Colas, *p.* 1032
Colima, *u.* 1066
Collao, *u. pr.* 1088
Collignia, *u.* 1080
Collo, *fl.* 945
Collobon, *c.* 978
Color, *l.* 977, *fl* 978
De Colubros, *fl.* 1057
Colymæ, *p.* 1061
De Comagie, *f.* 1057
Comapayaras, *pr* 1084
Commenagot, *port*, 1080
Commyagna, *u.* 1054
Comolalia, *pr.* 1086
Comoro, *inſ.* 1001
Complida, *m.* 995
Compoſtella, *u.* 1041, 1096
Conawini, *fl.* 1083
St. Conception, *inſ.* 1004
Conception, *ſ.* 1011
fl. 1055, *u.* 1073
De Salaya, *u.* 1046
De la Urga, 1097
Conchi, *p.* 1043
Confines, *u.* 1073
Congemes, *p.* 995
Congo, *pr.* 994
De Congos, *fl.* 1057
Conibas, *u. l.* 1043
Julia Conſtantia, *u.* 957
Conſtantina, *pr. u. m.* 947
Conte, *u.* 953
Conza, *fl.* 995
Copayapa, *fl.* 1073
Coptus, *u.* 928
Coquiboccoa, *c.* 1059
Coquimba, *fl.* 1073
Avoia de Corazanes, *pr* 1037
Cordes, *ſ.* 1075
Cordillera, *m.* 1059
Corduba, *u.* 1078
Nova Cordura, *u.* *ibid*
Coro, *u.* 1001, *ſ. u.* 1089
Corobaci, *fl.* 1058
Coronado, *c.* 1037
Corova, *pr.* 984
Corrientes, *c.* 1062, 984
Corterialis terra, 1021
Cotyphe, *p.* 932
Coſtarica, *pr.* 1059
Coſyra, *inſ. u.* 962
Cotache, *c.* 1097
Cotui, *u.* 1096
Couche *pr. u.* 981
Couliacan, *p.* 1036
Cozamul, *inſ.* 1051
Crewinay, *p.* 1085
Crocodilorom, *fl.* 145
u 919
St. Croix, *u.* 1024
Crophy rupes, 930
St. Croſs, *inſ.* 952
De la Crux, *fl* 1075 *ſ* 1038
St. Crux, *inſ.* 1051, 1094
u. 1059, 1080
De Real, *u.* 1058
Sierra, 1078
Vera Crux, *u.* 1050
Cuama, *fl.* 989, 99
Cuames, *p.* 1043
Cuba, *inſ.* 1096
Cubagna, *inſ.* 1090
Cube, *u.* 978
Cuechi, *p.* 995
Cuentina, *u.* 947
Cuenca, *u.* 1066
Cuertlavaca, *u.* 1050
Culahuan, *u.* 954
Culcua, *u.* 947
Culican, *pr.* 1041
Culvæ, *p.* 1048
Cumana, *fl pr. u.*
Cumbinama, *u.* 1067
Curallaos, *inſ.* 1091
Currentium caput, *c.* 992
Deorum currus, *m.* 966
Cuſa, *fl.* 951
Cuſco, *pr. u.* 1067
Cuyocan, *u.* 1047
Cuſar Elcabir, *u.* 956
Cygnea, *inſ.* 1002
Cyniphus, *fl.* 945, 966
Cyrone, *pr. u* 932
Cyropolis, *u.* 929
Cyris, *inſ.* 1060
Cynophanus, *p.* 932

D.

Lib. 1.

D'Acqs, *u.* 211
Damnii, *p.* 334
Dandillæ, *u.* 225
Dannonii, *p.* 308
Darby, *pr.* 304, *u.* 315
Darian, *inſ* 265
Darnii, *p.* 346
Darwent, *fl.* 315
St Davids, *u.* 324
Daulſine, *pr.* 152
Daulphine, 223
Daunia, *pr.* 73
Deceatus, *p.* 221
Decenſes, *p.* 224
Decenti, *p.* 137
Dedier, *u.* 186
Dedyme, *inſ.* 87
Dee, *fl.* 307, 322, 332
Deheubarth, *p.* 327
Deira, *p.* 314
Delvin, *u.* 343
Denbigh, *pr.* 324, *u.* 325
Denia, *fl.* 255, *u.* 281
St Dennis, *u.* 184
Dervogel, *m.* 171
Deſmond, *pr.* 345
Deva, *fl.* 307, 324
Devana, *u.* 334
Devonſhire, *pr.* 304
Devania, *u.* 308, 323
Dian, Dianium, *u.* 281
Die, *u.* 224
Die Furchen, *p.* 153
Diepe, *u. fl.* 193
Diion, *u.* 226
Dimetæ, *p.* 323
Dinau, *u.* 195
Dinevour, *fl* 326
St Deſiderii fanum, *u* 186
Diomedes, *inſ.* 78
Dioſcores, *inſ.* *ibid*
Diſentis, *u.* 171
Dittani, *p.* 271
Dive, *fl.* 197
Divio, *u.* 226
Dobuni, *p.* 308
Doglian, *u.* 156
Do *u.* 195
Dole, *u.* 219
St Dominico, *inſ.* 78
Donne, *fl.* 333
Dorat, *u.* 268
Dorcheſter, *u.* 308, 312
Dorcinia, *u* 308
Dordonne, *fl.* 180, 208
Dorſetſhire, 304
Dorta, *u.* 277
Dove, *fl.* 226
Dover, 308, 310
Douſenac, *u.* 208
Downe, *pr.* 344
Doux, *fl.* 228
Dragonago, *inſ.* 284
Dragonera, *inſ.* *ib.*
Drepanum, *u.* 85
Dreux, *u.* 200
Drogheda *u.* 343
Droſne, *fl* 224
Druentus, *fl.* 68
Duorzo, *fl.* 255
Dublin, *pr. u.* 343
Dubris, *u.* 308, 311
Dundalk, *u.* 310
Dundee, *u.* 333
Duerus, *fl.* 242, 270
Dumna, *inſ.* 349
Dumo, *u.* *ib.*
Dunbritton, *u.* 334
Dundalk, *u.* 344
Dundee, *u.* 298
Dungal, *u.* 344
Dunholm, *u.* 314
Dunckerau, *u.* 345
Dunois, *p.* 201
Dunſtable, *u.* 308
Dunwich, 313
Durance, *fl.* 153, 219
Durham, *u.* 314. *p.* 304
Duria, *fl.* 155
Durias, *fl.* 281
Durnovaria, *u.* 308, 312
Durobrivis, *u.* 311
Durocorti, *p.* 186
Durolis, *u.* 308
Durotriges, *p.* 308, 312
Durovernium, *u.* 308

Lib. 2.

Dacia, *pr.* 544, 558
Dagna, *u.* 600
Dalearle, *fl.* 501, *pr.* 504
Dalem, *u.* 375
Dalliart, *fl.* 477
Dalmatia *pr.* 552
Dalminium, *u.* 553
Dam, *u.* 390
Damalis, *u.* 613
Danimin, *u.* 561
Dandutii, *p.* 464
Dani, *p.* 483
Dan ow ubius *fl.* 402
Dant iſcum zick *u.* 534
Danvilliers, *u.* 373
Dardanelli, *C.* 613
Dardania, *pr.* 567
inſ. 614
Darmſtadt *u.* 473
Darſhaw, *u.* 534
Daucianes, *p.* 492
Davi, *p.* 558, 562
Daulis, *u.* 593
Daurſii, *p.* 556
Dayna, *u.* 600
Darſ ow ovia *u.* 534
Deborus, *u.* 600
Deckala, *u.* 506
Deſe, *fl.* 378
Denden, *u.* 383
Dele *fl.* 379
Delf, *u.* 383
Delm, *fl* 477
Delmenhorſt, *u.* 478
Deloſ, *inſ. u.* 616
Delphos, *u.* 593
Demetrias, *u.* 602
Dender, *fl.* 366, 369
Dendermond, *u.* 366
Denmark, *R.* 483
Denere, *fl.* 379
Derborck *u.* 491
Der bren pt *u.* 526
Derii, *p.* 556
Derris, *u.* 604
Deſna, *fl.* 529
Deſſaw, *u.* 466
Deva, *u.* 560
Deventer, *u.* 388
Deuxponts, *u.* 418
Dia, *inſ.* 624
Diina, *fl.* 513
Dibra, *u.* 600
Dictæa, *inſ.* 622
Dicte, *m.* *ibid*
Dict ammm inna *u.* *ibid*
St Die, *u.* 424
Dieſt, *u.* 379
Dietz, *u.* 474
Dikiloppe, *p.* 516
Diles, *inſ.* 617
Dille, *fl.* 442
Dillingbourg, *u.* 440
Dimenſii, *p.* 569
Dimula, *fl.* 476
Dinand, *u.* 476
Dinkelſpuel, *u.* 429
Din igu oge cia, *u.* 568
Dioclea, *u.* 553
Dyoniſia, *inſ.* 617
Dioniſipolis, *u.* 568
Dioſopolis, *inſ.* 614
Dioſteine, *pr.* 376
Dipdoſus, *fons.* 617
Dirſhaw, *u.* 534
Ditmarſh, *pr.* 486
Dium, *u.* 596, 603
Divodurum, *u.* 423
Divorro, *fl* 622
Dobelein, *u.* 427
Dobezin, *pr.* 535
Doccum, *u.* 486
Dodona, *u.* 597
Doesburgh, *u.* 389
Dotecum, *u.* *ibid*
Dofrine, *m.* 501
Dogeden, *inſ.* 527
Dolcigno, *u.* 553
Doliche, *u.* 602
Dollaert, *fl.* 477
Dolongi, *p.* 611
Dolopes, *p.* 601
Don, *fl.* 510, 513
Donaire, *p.* 366
Donawert, *u* 428
Donchiery, *u* 373
Dor t dectum *u.* 382
Doris, *pr. u.* 595
Dorobiza, *u.* 552
Doroſtorum, *u.* 569
Dornick, *u.* 366
Dortmond, *u.* 412
Doſtna, *fl.* 517
Dotricum, *u.* 389
Dove, *u* 362
Douge *fl.* 379
Doway, *u.* 366
Dray, *fl.* 436
Draun *fl.* 435
Drauus, *fl.* 436, 542
Drebnicz, *fl.* 532
Drent, *pr.* 388
Dreſden, *u.* 463
Di ana nus *fl.* 550
Drimago, *u.* 568
Drionis, *pr.* 602
Droit, *u.* 532
Dromos, *inſ.* 619
Druſomagus, *u.* 428
Duacum, *u.* 366
Dubin, *u.* 517
Duerin, *u.* 410
Duerſted, *u.* 387
Duglubini, *p.* 472
Duiffele, *u.* 409
Duina, *fl* 515
Duisberg, *u.* 409
Duiſlake, *u.* 412
Dunamund, *u.* 527
Dulichium, *inſ.* 627
dulſigno, *u.* 553
durazzo, *u.* 599
duringen, *pr.* 464
dunkirk, *u.* 366
dunort, *u.* 478
durengerwold, *m. n.* 464
durtach, *u.* 447
duro, *fl* 421
duſſel, *fl.* 409
duſſeldorp, *u.* 411
duveland, *inſ.* 385
dwina, *pr. u.* 519
fl. 513
dyctimeum, *c.* 618
dyle, *fl.* 379
dyne, *u.* 578
dyracchium, *u.* 599

Lib. 3.

Dabarath, *u.* 723
dacaiotore, *u.* 888
dache, *pr.* 825
darma, *u.* 729
dajuta, *u.* 656
daix, *fl.* 849
dala, *n.* 913
dalaqua, *inſ.* 776
dalmanutha, *u.* 720
daman, *u.* 888
damanum, *inſ.* 776
damaſcus, *u.* 701
Aram damaſec, *p.* 700
damaſi, *m.* 906
dammana, *u.* 825
damna, *u.* 853
damoan, *u.* 816
damuſi, *m.* 878
dan, *fl.* 711, 719, *p.* 728
danager, *u.* 889
daonas, *fl.* 906
daphne, *u.* 696
daphnis *fl.* 720
dapiro, *u.* 917
dara, *fl.* 821
darandæ, *p.* 824
darapſa, *u.* 849
dardamana, *n.* 828
dardania, *u.* 651
dargamanis, *fl.* 825
daritis, *pr.* 814
dathema, *u.* 713
daunia, *u.* 921
daxata, *u.* 855
dea-chow, *u.* 822
debir, *u.* 729
debrices, *p.* 816
decan, *p. u.* 889
decapolis, *pr.* 719
delanguere, *m.* 796
delly, *pr. u.* 885
demir-can, *u.* 805
lerbo, *u.* 664
derbent, *u.* 805
lerbiciæ, *p.* 830

Diamna, *fl.* 879
Dian, *u.* 913
Dianga, *u.* 912
Diarbeck, *pr.* 789
Diargument, *pr.* 829
Dianus, *fl.* 788
Diblatham, *u.* 712
Didymi, *m.* 774
Dihon, *u.* 715
Dilop, *fl.* 642
St Dimitri, *u.* 656
Dindimus, *m.* 654
Dinhalah, *u.* 737
Dio-Cæſaria, *u.* 659
Dionyſiopolis *u.* 860,923
Dioplis, *u.* 644
Dioſcoris, *inſ. u.* 777
Dioſcuriaſſu, *u.* 802
Dioſpolis, *u.* 644,725
Diu, *u.* 887
Doceti, *u.* 885
Dogana, *u.* 921
Doliche, *inſ.* 673;*u*,698
Don, *fl.* 841
Dora, *u.* 724
Dorias, *fl.* 906
Doris, *pr.* 662
Doroacana, *u.* 826
Doryleum, *u.* 654
Dothane, *u.* 721
Drachamæ, *p.* 826
Dragorian, *u.* 922
Dragiana, *pr.* 824,808
Drangius, *fl.* *ibid*
Drepanum, *c.*677, *u.* 679
Drepſa, *u.* 849
Droſack, *u.* 855
Dryllophitæ, *p.* 881
Dryuſa, *inſ.* 673
Duckee, *caſt.* 883
Dulcinda, *pr.* 821
Dulſinda, *pr.* 883
Dymnus, *fl.* 849

Lib. 4.

Dactylorum Regio 967
Daſila, *pr.* 981
Ladies Dale, *pr.* 1037
Daleſgift, *u.* 1029
Damiata, *u.* 927
Damote, *pr.* 974
Damut, *p. u.* 900
Dande, *fl.* 995
Dangala, *u.* 974
Dangali, *pr. u.* 983
Daphnis, *inſ.* 1000
Dara, *fl pr* 967
Daradus, *fl.* 965
Darien, *u. pr. fl.* 1058
Darorum Vicus, *u.* 979
Davis, *fretum.* 1090
Daum, *pr.* 974
Debris, *u.* 968
Delgado, *c.* 1074
Delgumaba, *u.* 952
Deliſha, *u.* 1001
Delo, *c.* 1081
Delta, *pr.* 927
Deorum Currus, *m.* 973
Derbici, *p.* 966
Deſconoſſida, *inſ.* 1051
Deſire, *port*, 1075
Deſſeada, *inſ.* 1033, *c.* 1093
Deyme, *fl.* 954
Diagnitas, *pr.* 1077
Diagnitæ, *p.* 1078
Don Diego, *fl.* 1059
Digges, *inſ.* 1042
Dimetris, *c.* 978
Porto de Dio, *u.* 971
Diodori, *inſ.* 1000
Dionyſius, *u.* 929
Dios, *m.* 945
Dioſcoridis, *inſ.* 1000
Dioſcorum, *portus*, *u.* 978
Dioſpolis, *u.* 930
Divels, *inſ.* 1030
Diur, *m. fl.* 951
Dobas, *pr. u.* 983
Doc$^{a}_{o}$no, *c. u.* 983
Dominica, *inſ.* 1093
Domingo, *fl.* 1081
St Domingo, *inſ. u.* 1096
Doradæ, *p.* 1066
Dracontias, *inſ.* 962
Boca del Drago, *fret.* 1087
Dubdu, *u.* 956
Ducala, *p.* 953
Dulce, *ſ.* 1053
Durango, *u.* 1042
Durdus, *m.* 951

Lib. 1.

EAſt Angles, 313
Saxons, 312
Eblana, *u.* 343
Ebora, *u.* 275
Eboracum, *u.* 308
Ebro, *fl.* 250
Ebrodunum, *u.* 223
Ebudæ, *inſ.* 349
Eburones, *p.* 192
Ebuſa, *inſ. u.* 284
Eccia, *u.* 261
Echni, *inſ.* 351
Ecque, *fl.* 219
Edri, *inſ.* 351
Eden, *fl.* 314
Edenburg, *u.* 333
Editani, *p* 281
St Edmundsbury, 308
Egbaud, *fl.* 216
Egeſta, *u.* 86
Elba, *inſ.* 133
Elamites, *p.* 9
Elizabeth, *fl.* 231
Elvire, *m.* 265
Elwy, *fl.* 325
Elwyenſes, *p.* 323
Ely, *inſ. u.* 313
Auguſta Eremita, *u.* 263
Emonia, *u.* 121
Emporia, *u.* 282
Engaden, *p.* 171
England, *R.* 294
Engoliſmenſes, *p.* 208
Enlhy, *or* Edri, *inſ.* 351
Enna, *u.* 85
Ephintia, *l.* 84
Epiacum, *u.* 308
Epidia, *inſ.* 349
Eporedia, *u.* 155
Equilina, *inſ.* 123
Erdini, *p.* 346
Eres, *inſ.* 230
Eresberg, *C.* 153
Ericoſu, *inſ.* 87
Eridanus, *fl.* 37
Erix *u.* 85
Erotenus, *fl.* 118
Eſchalas, *u.* 225
Eſcurial, *mon.* 271
Eskedan, *pr.* 334
Eſparrez, *u.* 211
Eſſex, *pr.* 304
Eſſiles, *u.* 224
Eſſons, *fl.* 183
Eſtampes, *u.* 184
Eſte, *u.* 119,94
Eſtella, *u.* 252
Eſterac, *pr.* 212
Eſtienno, *u.* 203
Eſtrange, *u.* 220
St Evaſius, *u.* 150
Eubariades, *p.* 137
Eubonia, *inſ.* 350
Euganei, *p.* 121
Eugubium, *u.* 98
St. Euphemia, *u.* 77
Eunymos, *inſ.* 87
Eureux, *u.* 192, *fl.* 200
205
Europa, 31
Euſedale, 334
Ewe, *u.* 192
Ex, *fl. u.* 312
Exeter, *u.* 308, 312
Extremadura, *pr.* 263
Eyn, *fl.* 344

Lib. 2.

Ebelo, *inſ.* 491
Eburones, *p.* 363,365
Ecgrodzerco, *u.* 532
Echedorus, *fl.* 603
Echinades, *inſ.* 625
Echinu, *u.* 598
Echinuſa, *inſ.* 618
Echterwald, *n.* 388
Edam, *u.* 384
Eder, *fl.* 473
Edil, *fl.* 513
Edonis, *pr.* 603
Eger, *fl.* 448
Egholm, *inſ.* 488
Egmond, *u.* 384
Egra, *fl.* 419, *u.* 451
Einbeck, *fl.* 516
Eiſenberg, *u.* 474
Eiſhimp, *fl.* 457
Eiſted, *u.* 449
Elatra, *u.* 593
Elb. *fl.* 403,450,486
Elbering. *u.* 533
Elbing, *fl.* 552
Elbogen, *u.* 451,491
Elcebas, *u.* 421
Elcoln, *u.* 502
Elderſtadt, *u.* 486
Eleuſis, *u.* 588
Eleuthera, *u.* 622
Elis, *pr. u.* 579
Ellemanberg, *m.* 488
Elſat Savern, *u*, 421
Elſatz, *pr.* 420
Elſinure, *u.* 490
Elſter, *fl.* 463
Elenaw, *fl.* 471
Elyſia, *pr.* 536 *inſ.* 531
Elzeburg, *u.* 502
Emath^{ia}, *p.* 603
Emath$_{us}$, *fl.* 600
Embreſtein, *u.* 415
Embden, *pr. u.* 477
Ems, *fl.* 363,387,404
Emmerick, *u.* 409
Enageræ, *p.* 506
Enchuiſen, *u.* 384
Endele, *inſ.* 491
Enge, *pr.* 415
Engerne, *pr. u.* 475
De Engia, *ſ.* 577
Engie, *inſ.* 616
Engleberg, *caſt.* 422
Enguodine, *u.* 560
Eningia, *u.* 506
Enipeus, *fl.* 577
Ens, *fl.* 435,447
Enſchide, *u.* 388
Enſ$^{heim,}_{iſheim,}$ *u.* 411
Ensberch, *u.* 410
Entz *fl* 447
Eperia, *u.* 543
Ephyra, *u.* 586
Epicaria, *u.* 600
Epicidnus, *fl.* 622
Epicnemidii, *p.* 595
Epidamnum, *u.* 599
Epidaurus, *u.* 582,584
Epirus, *pr.* 597
Equartru, *u.* 478
Ercunealis, *pr.* 545
Erdenberg, *u.* 468
Erdford, *u.* 464
Erdol, *m.* 542
Erfrae, *fl.* 410
Eribos, *u.* 615
Eribæa, *u.* 604
Erigon, *fl.* 577
Erineus, *u.* 595
Erithinus, *inſ.* 613
Erithæa, *u.* 622
Ernace, *u.* 414
Erp, *fl.* 410
Erſpruch, *u.* 449
Eryſſa, *u.* 604
Eſca, *fl.* 471
Eſcheburg, *C.* 490
Eſchewego, *u.* 473
Don eſchingen, *u.* 429
Eſdan, *u.*
Eſen, *u.* 477
Eſling, *u.* 437,447
Eſpinal, *u.* 424
Eſſendia, *u.* 411
Eſt$^{ii,}_{iones,}$ *p.* 527
Eſtiotis, *pr.* 602
Eſtland, *pr.* 526
Etchterwald, *n.* 362
Euantia, *u.* 595
Eubæa, *inſ.* 615
Euenus, *fl.* 595
Euonus, *inſ.* 615
Europus, *n.* 603
Eurotas, *fl.* 581
Euxinus Portus, 607
Eydore, *fl.* 486
Eyphalia, *pr.* 410
Ezfar, *fl.* 409
Ezling, *u.* 437

Lib. 3.

Eaſis, *u.* 824
Ebuſmi, *u.* 831
Ecbatana, *u.* 315
Eden, *u.* 701
Ediſſa, *u.* 790
Edi, *fl.* 845
Edom, *pr.* 736
Edonis, *u.* 656
Edoo, *u.* 916
Edreg, *u.* 717
Egra, *u.* 775
Egrigaia, *pr.* 859
Einegiol, *u.* 654
Elam, *pr.* 816
Elama, *u.* 791
Elancorum, *u.* 880
Elaſa, *u.* 737
Eldemæi, *p.* 819
Elea, *u.* 657, *ſ.* 654
Elere, *u.* 717
Eleſari, *p.* 777
Eleutheropolis, *u.* 730
Eleutherus, *fl.* 687
St. Elieroe, 672
Elinctieus, *ſ.* 774
Eliſæi, *p.* 657
Elkatiz, *ſ.* 777, 822
Eltor, *u.* 776
Elymæi, *p.* 814
Elymais, *u.* 819
Emaus, *u.* 730
Emeſa, *u.* 695
Emmines, *p.* 712
Enhadda, *u.* 712
Ennodorus, *m.* 855
Endor, *u.* 722
Engaddi, *m.* 730
Eoritæ, *p.* 825
Epheſus, *u.* 658
Ephra, *u.* 724
Ephraim, *p.* 725
Ephron, *u.* 717
Epictetus, *pr. u.* 651
Epidaphne, *u.* 696
Epiphania, *u.* 667,695
Epiſcopio, *u.* 679
Erech, *u.* 819
Eres, *u.* 815
Erethræa, *mare*, 776
Ergimul, *pr.* 857
Eri, *pr. u.* 826
Ervan, *u.* 800
Erythra, *u.* 658
Erzyrum, *u.* 649
Eſechia, *u.* 784,800,
Eſion-Geber, *u.* 771
Ethiopia, *pr.* 769
Ethrea, *inſ.* 675
Euchatæ, *u.* 646
Eucratidia, *u.* 831
Euergetæ, *p.* 825
Eulæus, *fl.* 818
Eupateria, *u.* 842
Euphrates, *fl.* 650, 783,
799
Euphrate$^{neis,}_{ſia,}$ *pr*, 697
Europus, *u.* 816
Eurymedon, *fl.* 665
Euxinum, *mare.* 641

Lib. 4.

Eboacah, *u.* 968
Egypt, *R.* 914,927
Cuſar elcaber, *u.* 956
Elephantis, *u.* 910
Elephas, *m.* 977
Elgiumuba, *u.* 952
El-habar, *pr.* 956
Elizabeth, *inſ.* 1075
c. 1090
Elmedina, *u.* 953
Elmuriden, *u.* *ibid.*
Elvinina, *u.* *ibid.*
Embroe, *pr.* 990
Ende, *u.* 1042
Enganno, *c.* 1038,1095
New England, *pr.* 1026
Englands Foreſt, *inſ.* 1002
Enſeada grande, *u.* 1021
Epithe$^{r}_{ſ}$ias, *u.* 978
Erena, *u.* 1042
Erithea bolus, *u.* 928
Eroico, *u.* 982
Errifia, *p.* 927,957
Eriphia, *inſ.* 957
eſchatica, *pr.* 932
eſcondida, *fl.* 1097
eſer, *u.* 979
eſſequebo, *fl.* 1083
eſſina, *u.* 978,984
eſtero, *u.* 1077
eſtero, *fl.* 1077
eſtotiland, *pr.* 1010
eſza, *u.* 954
etechimines, *p.* 1025
ethiad, *u.* 954
evangeliorum portus, *u.*
978
euphrauta, *u.* 946
eythia, *inſ.* 956
ezaggen, *u.* *ibid*
ezo, *u.* 953
ezzab, *pr.* 945

Lib.

The TABLE.

Lib. 1.

FAenza, *u.* 92
Fage, *fl.* 205
Faigueres, *u.* 213
Faire Foreland, *C.* 344
Faire Iſle, *inſ.* 349
Falaiſe, *u.* 192
Falaris, *u.* 130
Faliſci, *p.* 130
Falkland, *u,* 333
Falmouth, *u.* 308, 311
Fano, *u* 95
Fanum S. Brioli, *u.* 195
  Deſiderii, 186
  Fortunæ, *u.* 95
  Reguli, *u.* 333
Farfarus, *fl.* 98
Farneſs, *u.* 99
Farneſſus, *u.* 284
Faro, *u.* 236
Fauciana, *inſ.* 86
Faventia, *u* 92
Favognana, *inſ.* 86
Fayal, *inſ.* 277
St felix, *u.* 101
Felſina, *u.* 91
Felteia, *u.* 119
La fere, *u.* 190
Ferentani, *p.* 72
Feriolds, *u.* 219
Fetneze, *u.* 99
Ferara, *pr.* 93, *u.* 94
Feraria, *c.* 281
Fermanath, *pr.* 344
La fert, *u.* 200
Feſulæ, *u.* 129, 131
Fienner, *u.* 188
Febres, *u.* 203
Fidenates, *p.* 100
Fiſe, *pr.* 333, 334
Finale, *u.* 138
Fino, *u.* *ibid*
Fior, *fl* 91
Auguſta firmia, *u.* 26
Firmo, *u.* 97
Flaminia, *pr* 91
Flannaticus Sinus, 111
Flat-holme, *inſ.* 351
Flavia Cæſarienſis, p. 309
Flaviobriga, *u.* 255
Flavionavie, *u* 257
Flavium Brigantiū *u.* 259
La fleſch, *u.* 198
Flint, *pr.* 324
Florence, *pr.* 130 *u.* 131
Flores, *inſ.* 277
Floure, *u.* 203
Fluſcates, *p.* 212
Foglio, *fl.* 91
Foix, *pr* *u.* 212
Fontenay, *u.* 187
Fonterabia, *u.* 255
Forcelli, *inſ.* 92
Forlimpoli, *u.* 93
Formicæ, *inſ.* 124
Formiæ, *u.* 181, 121, *fl* 120
Fornaces, *fl.* 118
De foro, *c.* 82
Fortore, *inſ.* 73
Forreſt, 203
Forum Cornelii, *u.* 92
  Julii, *pr.* 110
  Julium, *u.* 219
  Livii, *u.* 92
  Secuſianorum, 215
  Sempronii, *n* 95
Foſſa Claudia, *inſ* 123
Foſſe-mariana, *fl.* 219
Foſſigni, *p.* 157
Foſſonibrune, *u.* 95
Fountainbleau, *u.* 180
Le four, *u.* 195
Foy, 214
France, *R.* 171. *inſ.* 184
Francheville, *u.* 225
Franciſcopolis, *u.* 225
Franks, *p.* 192
Francolino, *fl.* 195
Fraxinetum, *caſt.* 150
Fregou, *u.* 213
French County, *pr.* 228
Friburg, *u.* 165
Firuli, *p.* 120
Froome, *fl.* 306
Fronſac, *u.* 210
Fronſadaze, *p.* 211
Frumentaria, *inſ.* 284
Fluentes, *caſt.* 172
Furcæ Caudinæ, 72
Die furcken, *p.* 162
Furlii, *u.* 92
Fuxium, *u.* 212

Lib. 2.

Fabiana, *u.* 436
Faborch, *u.* 490
De fangd, *n.* 369
Falza, *fl.* 465
Falconora, *inſ.* 618
Falkenburg *u.* 455
Falkendorch, *u.* 491
Falkenſtein, *u* 440
Falſtre, *inſ.* 490
Faucities, *m.* 404
Fauverno, *pr.* 363
Fauquemont, *u.* 375
Fazeling, *u.* 563
Fetcht *fl* 421
Feder Zee, *l.* 428
Femeren, *inſ.* 491
Fenuſchium, *u.* 560
Feichrelberg, *m.* 448
Ferrete, *pr.* 422
La ferte, *u.* 373
Fivekerken, *u.* 544
Figulo, *c.* 598
Fineck, *u.* 543
Fimera, *inſ.* 491
Finland, *pr.* 505
Finmarch, *pr.* *ibid.*
Finni, *p.* *ibid*
Finniſh Sea, 491
Fionia, *inſ.* 490
Fitchtel, *u.* 561
Flaccia, *pr.* 563
Flackgulph, 384
Flanaticus, *ſ.* 551
Fland ria, ers, *pr.* 365
  Flammegant, 365
  Gallicant, 366
  Imperial, *ibid.*
Fla n v ona, *u.* 554
Flensburg, *u.* 488
Floren, *u.* 372
Florenge, *u.* 377
Fluſhing, *u.* 385
Follen, *u.* 438
Forechein, *u.* 444
Foſſa, Druſiana, 389
Fran conia kenland *pr.* 418, 442
Franchemont, *u.* 376
Franekar, *u.* 386, 490
Frankenberg, *u.* 473
Frankendale, *u.* 418
Frankford, *u.* 445, 457
Frawenberg, *u.* 533
Fraxinum, *u.* 432
Frederborch, *u.* 475
Fredericksberg, *u.* 490
Frederickſtead, *u.* 494
Freezland, *inſ.* *u.* 496
Freiſach, *u.* 437
Freiſland Weſt, 386
  Eaſt, 477
Freſtadt, *u.* 432, 436
Friberg *u.* 442
Friburg, *u.* 428, 463
Fridburg, *u.* 431
Fridland, *u* 461
Friſchhaffe, *ſ.* 533
Friſii, *pr* 387
  Majores, *p.* 390
  Minores, 363
Friſing, *u.* 432
Friſlar, *u.* 473
Friſons, *pr.* 586
Fucciania, *u.* 563
Fuinen, *inſ.* 490
Fuld, *u.* *fl.* 473
Fulmina, *fl.* 564
Funium, *u.* 552
Furſtenberg, *u.* 429

Lib. 3.

Famaguſta, *pr.* *u.* 680
Fanfur, *u.* 922
Farabant, *u.* 819
Fai s ſiſtan, *pr.* 819
Faſſum, *u.* 803
Fatepore, *u.* 885
Favagoria, *u.* 644
Fauſtinopolis, *u.* 649
Felech, *u.* 92
Fenoiama, *u.* 916
Fernathis Rupes, 673
Fettibari, *u.* 885
Figere, *p.* 916
Figenoiama, *m.* *u.* *ibid*
Fienga, *u.* *ibid*
Firande, *u.* *ibid*
Flavia Cæſaria, *pr.* 725
Firma-ſura, *u.* 699
Flaviopolis, *u.* 644
Focheau, *u.* 869
Foquien, *pr.* 864
Formola, *inſ.* 915
Good Fortune, *inſ.* 903
Frat, *inſ.* 783

Lib. 4.

Fairland, *inſ.* 1091
  haven, 1090
Falſo, *c.* 994
Porto Famine, 175
Fanzara, *u.* 954
Fatigar, *pr.* *u.* 984
Ferarum ptolemais, *u* 978
Fernambuck, *pr.* 1081
John Fernandes, *inſ.* 1092
Fernandina, *inſ.* 1097
Ferro, *inſ.* 1005
Fellez, *c.* 983
Feſſan, *u.* 977
Feſſe, *pr.* *u.* 951, 955
Feſſen, *pr.* *u.* 952
St Fides, *u.* 1062, 1077
Fighig, *pr.* *u.* 967
Terra Firma, *pr.* 1037
De Flores *fl.* 1031
Florida *pr.* *ibid*
Del Fogo, *inſ.* 1004
Fonduras, *c.* 1053
Fonſeca, *ſ.* *ibid*
Formoſo, *c.* 1093
Portus Formoſus, 1090
Fortunatæ, *inſ.* 994
Fouchial, *u.* 1068
St. Foy, *u.* 1077 1043, 1055, 1061
  Port, 1088
Nova Francia, 1023
St Francis, *inſ.* 991, *c.* 1021 *fl.* 1047, *u.* 1082
St. Franciſco, *u.* 1016 1068
Port de Franciſco Diaco, *c.* 1034
Bay Francois, *ſ.* 1013, 1081
Franco Roy, *fl* 1024
Tres Fratres *inſ.* 1001
Frobiſhers *fretum*, 1090
De Frontera, *u.* 1042, 1053
Froward, *c.* 1075
Terra de Fuego, *inſ.* 1091
Fuerte Ventura, *inſ.* 105
Fuerte, *inſ.* 1059

G.

Lib. 1.

GAbales, *p.* 217
Gabii, *u.* 100
Goda, *fl.* 270
Gadeni, *p.* 334
Gades, *inſ.* 262
Gaditanum, *fretum*, 267
Gaham, *u.* 314
St. Gal, *u.* 165
Gallaici, *p.* 278
Gallankter, *u.* 171
Gallatia, *pr.* 173
Gallego, *fl.* 286
Gallia, *R.* 173
  Baacata, *pr.* 181
  Cettica, *pr.* 200
  Ciſalpina, 141, 186
  Comata, *pr.* 181
  Togata, *pr.* 142
  Tranſalpina, 173
Gallicanum, *m.* 70, 71
Gallicia, *pr* 259
Gallinaria, *inſ.* 134
Gallipolis, *u.* 75
Gallipſo, *inſ.* 78
Galoway, *p.* 334, *u.* 345
Gandia, *u.* 281
Galpe, *m.* 261
Gangani, *p.* 346
Gappe, *u.* 224
Garcia, *fl.* 119
De Garda, *l.* 118
Gardon, *fl.* 204
Garesbrook, *u.* *ſ.* 352
Garganes, *m.* 74
Gariglia, *fl.* 69
Gar ond umna *fl.* 180, 209, 210
Garuine, *fl.* 257
Gaſcoign, *pr.* 211
Gaſties, *p.* 241
Gaſtinois, *p.* 184
Gauſonnæ, *u.* 308
Gebenna, *m.* 180
Gela, *u.* 82
Gelo, *fl.* 140
Genabum, *u.* 200
Genueva, *u.* 159
Genoa, *u.* 138
Genſer, *l.* 163
St. Georges, *inſ.* *u.* 277
Gergenti, *u.* 83
St. Germans, *u.* 184, 203
Gergovia, *u.* 204
Gernſey, *inſ.* 231
Geſſoraicus portus, *u.* 189
Gevices, *p.* 309
Gez, *fl* 214
Gibralter, *u.* 261
Gigari, *p.* 257
Giglio, *inſ.* 133
St. Gillis, *u.* 219
Giroune, *u.* 282
Giacii, *p.* 313
Giſars, *u.* 192
Glamorgan, *p.* 324
Glan d um *u.* 219
Glari, *p.* 164
Glaſco, *u.* 333
Glevum, *u.* 307
Gloceſter, 307, 304
Glotta, *fretum.* 330
Gobannium, *u.* 323
Godmancheſter, 308
Godmandin, *u.* 314
Godmanham, *u.* *ibid.*
Golfo de Squillacy, *ſ.* 76
Gombes, *p.* 162
Gorgona, *inſ.* 134
Gothicana, *p.* 216
Govæum, *prom.* 195
La Grace, *u.* 219
Grade, *inſ.* 123
Graffignan, *u.* 93
Graiiæ, *m.* 152
Grampius, *m.* 332
Granada, *pr.* *u.* 265
Grant, *fl* 313
Gratianopolis, *u.* 223
Gratioſa, *inſ.* 277
Graunpunter, *pr.* 170
Gray, *u.* 219
Grenade, *u.* 211
Grenoble, *u.* 223
Griſſinaudare, *p.* 223
Griſons, *p.* 170
Groine, *u.* 259
Guadalander, *fl.* 280
Guadalcanal, *u.* 263
Guadalquioir, *fl.* 246, 261
Guadalupe, *u.* 263
Guadarama, *fl.* 270, 263
Guadiana, *fl.* 246
Guadix, *u.* 265
Guallena, *u.* 308, 312
Gualne, *u.* 277
St. Gueemier, *u.* 203
Guernica, *u.* 255
Guetaria, *u.* *ib.*
Guienne, *pr.* 210
Guilford, 310
Guipuſcoa, *pr.* 254
Guiſe, *u.* 191
Guiſnes, *p.* 188, *u.* 189
Guiſors, *u.* 192
Guith, *inſ.* 352
Gurdes, *p.* 162
Gymnaſiæ, *inſ.* 285
Gyreſoem, *u.* 268

Lib. 2.

Gabraſſe, *c.* 620
Gabreta, *u.* 404
Gadzick, *u.* 532
Galat ia, a, *u.* 568, 609
Galatz, *n.* 564
Galindæ, *p.* 531
Gamelgard, *u.* 491
Gandavum, *u.* 365
Gardlake, *l.* 424
Gargapol, *u.* 519
Gariſcus, *u.* 603
Gaudos, *u.* 624
Gaulos, *inſ.* *ib.*
Gaunt, *u.* 365
Gaurode, *inſ* *u.* 384
Gaurigoth, *pr.* 506
Gebwiler, *u.* 421
Genanum, *u.* 534
Geit, *fl.* 379
Geiſen, *u.* 474
Gela, *n.* 560

The TABLE.

Geldres, 389
Gemand, *u.* 459
Germerſheim, *u.* 417
Gemunder Zee, *l.* 435
Genappe, *u.* 381
Genechiſar, *u.* 613
Gergenbael, *u.* 428
Gennep, *u.* 409
St. Georges arme, *c.* 609
St. Georgio, *u.* 564
Gepping, *u.* 447
Gerapetra, *u.* 622
Gebreviliar *u.* 424
Mons Gerhard, *u.* 366
Germania *inferior,* 360
prima, 409, 416, 429
ſecunda, 380, 409, 414
Germany, 396
Gernia, *u.* 505
Gerno, *inſ.* 48
Gerhard, *m.* 366
Gers *inſ.* 464
Gerſpach, *u.* 447
Gertrutenberg, *u,* 379
Gerultis, *u.* 384
Geleke, *u.* 475
Gelodunum, *u.* 435
Geſtricia, *pr.* 504
Gethem, *u.* 471
Ghent, *u.* 389
Ginſtandil, *u* 5 9
Glacialis Oceanus, *u.* 495
Glan, *fl.* 436
Glatz, *u.* 455
Glocow, *u.* *ib.*
Glackſtadt, *u.* 486
Gmand, *u.* 429
Gmund, *u.* 435
Gnoſſus, *u.* 622
Goes, *u.* 385
Goldberg, *u.* 502
Goldengen, *u.* 527
Golo, *u inſ.* 614
Gomerini, *p.* 404, 484
Gomphy, *u.* 602
Gopla, *l.* 535
Gorichom, *u.* 383
Goritz, *u.* 438
Goſe, *fl.* 471
Goſlar, *u.* *ib,*
Gotha, *u.* 464
Gothini, *p.* 455
Gothlani, *p.* 502, *inſ.* 506
Gothones, *p.* 502
Gottenburg, *u.* *ib.*
Gottorp, *c.* 488
Göteberg, *u.* 464
Goude, *u.* 383
Grabatz, *u.* 467
Gradiſco, *u.* 454, 553
Gragingliac, *u.* 444
Gran, *u.* 544
Granmont, *u.* 366
Grandric, *ſ.* 518
Granionarum, *u.* 444
Granii, *p.* 506
Grans, *u.* 412
Grave, *u.* 379
Graveling, *u* 365
Gravenhague, *u.* 384
Gravoſa, *inſ.* 506
Gratz, *u.* 437
Greece, *pr.* 574
Greenland, *inſ.* 497
Greek Weſſemberg, *u.* 544
Griethuſen, *u.* 409
Grienengen, *u.* 447
Griffenberg, 459
Grinbergen, *u.* 379
Griſons *p.* 429
Gripſwald, *u.* 459
Grodeck, *u.* 531
Grodna, *u.* 529
Groining *pr. u.* 390
Grol, *u.* 389
Gronneberg, *u.* 485
Gronsfolden, *u.* 449
Groyſholm, *inſ.* 489
Grubenhagen, *u.* 471
Grubin, *u.* 227
Gruminſton, *u.* 465
Grumwald, *u.* 529
Guelderland, *pr.* 388
Guelna, *u.* 535
Gulike, *pr. u.* 410
Gurch, *u.* 438
Gurdleben, *u.* 457
Gutæ, *p.* 491
Gyaros, *inſ.* 617
Gyrgio, *pr.* 561
Gythones, *p.* 534
Gyula, *u.* 544

Lib. 3.

Gabala, *u.* 721
Gabela, *u.* 695
Gaber, *u.* 724
Gad, *pr,* 715
Gadara, *u.* 701, 717
Gades, *c.* 677
Gaguamela, *u.*
Galaad, *m.* 606
Galacthophagi, *p.* 851
Galatia, *pr* 647
Salutaris, *pr.* 648
Galico, *pr.* 719
Gentium, *ibid*
Galle, *u.* 924
Gallim, *u.* 712
Gallo-Græcia, *pr.* 647
Gamala, *pr.* 717
Galthi *p* 914
Gammararis, *u.* 737
Gandes, *fl.* 923
Gan $^{d}_{g}$ arides, *p.* 906
Gangæni *p* *ib.*
Gangeraco, *fl.* 891
Ganges, *fl* 783, *u.* 879
Gangra, *u* 646
Gannape, *inſ* 918, 896
Garduacrata, *pr.* 649
Gargaſa, *u.* 846
Garizim, *m.* 725, 711
Garnace, *u.* 650
Gates, *m.* 856, 878
Gath, *u.* 727
Gattabaon, *u.* 921
Gatte, *c.* 677
Gaulanites, *pr.* 780
Gaulon, *u.* 717
Gaulonitis, *pr.* 718
Gauzania, *u.* 815
Gaza, *u.* 727 *fl.* 905
Gazaca, *u.* 826
Gebah, *u.* 731
Gebala, *u.* 665
Eſſon Geber, *u.* 791
Gedroſia, *pr.* 823
Gegna mela, *u.* 788
Gelan, *u.* 815
Genech, *pr,* 650
Geneſareth, *u. l.* 711, 721
Genonia, *u.* 818
Caput Gentis, *u* 80
St. George, *u.* 725, 846
Georgia, *pr.* 803
Caſtle Gera, *u.* 671
Geranæi, *pr.* 856
Gerar, *u.* 729
Geraſa *u.* 701, 717
Gergeſits, *pr.* 717, 739
Geris, *u.* 691
Germanic $^{ia}_{opolis,}$ *u.* 698
Germanopolis, *u.* 647
Sani- Germanum, *u.* 843
German *ibid.*
Gerra, *u.* 717
Gerræi, *p,* 261
Gerri, *p.* 847
Gerrus, *fl.* 805
Gerus, *fl.* 842
Geruſa, *u.* 846
Geſſur, *pr,* 716, *u.* 718
Geſt, *pr. u.* 823
Getarra, *u.* 805
Geth, *u.* 727
Gezer, *u.* 699
Gibbethop, *u.* 728
Gibbea, *u.* 731
Gibeon, *u.* *ibid*
Gihon, *fl.* 783
Gilboa, *m.* 711, 722
Gilead, *m.* 706
Ramoth, *u.* 715
Gilgal, *u.* 732
Gilolo, *inſ.* 919
Gingi, *u.* 900
Giſcala, *u.* 721
Gliſca, *u.* 804
Goa, *u.* 889
Gocharta, *u.* 821
Golchonda, *u.* 900
Gomorrah, *u.* 711
Gonſiar, *inſ.* 772
Gonza, *u.* 854
Gordiæi, *m.* 796, 799
Gondiene, *pr,* 800
Gordium, *u.* 653
Gorgos, *fl.* 787
Gorneas, *u.* 650
Gouren, *pr. u.* 902
Gouro, *u* 903
Goyaam, *u,* 820
Gozalvia, *u.* 645
Gozan, *fl.* 815
Porto Grande, *u.* 903
Granicus, *inſ.* 655
de Griego, *c.* 793
Gynei, *p.* 848
Guadarino, *c.* 901
Guangen, *fl.* *ibid*
Gueone, *u.* 909
Gunbroone, *u.* 821
Gupi, *p.* 858
Guttu-negar-tutta, *u.* 887
Guzarare, *pr* 887
Gwaliare, *pr. u.* 886

Lib. 4.

Gamara, *u.* 966
Gachepo, *u.* 1014
Gaia, *inſ.* 962
Gaco, *u.* 972, 962
de Galeza, *c.* 1038, 1059
Galelco, *pr.* 1041
Galle, *p.* 982
Gallant, zee, 1074
Gallicia Nova, *p.* 1040
del Galle, *inſ.* 1062
ſ. 1036
Gambra Cambere, *pr. fl.* 972
Gamoſaphantis, *pr* 932
Gampſaphantis, *pr.* 966
Ganabara, *ſ.* 1080
Gangomar, *u.* 1002
Gaoga, *pr.* 973
Garamantes, *p.* 966
Garas, *m.* 942
Garaſu, *u.* 1081
Garbala, *m.* 979
don Garcea, *inſ.* 1001
Garet, *pr.* 956
Gariphi, *m.* 942
Garunna, *fl.* 1031
Gaſpe *u.* 1024
Gau { ſdus los dicæ } *inſ.* 951
Gaurus, *m.* 977
gayra, *fl.* 1059
gebbe, *u.* 957
gebelelhudic, *c.* 953
St. gemar, *fl.* 945
St. george, *fl.* 1021, *u,* 1027
c. 1075
de Mina, *u.* 973
Olanca, *u.* 1054
gerbe, *inſ.* 1065
St. germans, *u.* 1095
gerrapolis, *u.* 964
geryonis, *inſ.* 957
getuli, *p.* 966
gevetland, *u.* 1052
gezeir, *u.* 950
gheneo, *pr.* 972
ghir, *deſ.* 968
giabel, *u.* 982
giacci, *p.* 992
gialofi, *p.* 972
ginnamera, *pr. u.* 980
gi { gion llius } *m.* 945
gi { eiſon } *c.* 952
gir, *fl.* 666
gira, *u.* *ib*
girgiris, *m.* *ib*
giumba, *u.* 956
glauconis, *inſ.* 962
glebarubra, *u.* 928
go $^{u}_{g}$ den, *deſ.* 968
gogia, *u.* 984
goiamy, *pr.* 981
goletta, *fl.* 947
golfo trieto, *ſ.* 1089
gomadææ, *inſ.* 1000
gomara, *m.* 956
Velez de gomerena, *u.* 956
gomero, *inſ.* 1005
gomeribo, *u.* 1085
goniatæ, *p.* 932
good Hope, *c.* 994
gopiapo, *u.* 1073
Virgo gordæ, *inſ.* 1094
gargades, *inſ.* 1004
gorgona, *inſ.* 1062
goſhen, *pr.* 927
gothan, *pr.* 974
goza, *u.* 962
granada, *u.* 1037, 1044
inſ 1093
Nova, *pr* 1061
grande, *fl.* 1031, 1077
p. 1081
de gret, *c.* 1021
gratias de dios, *u.* 1054
gratioſa, *inſ* 1005
greenland, *pr.* 1090
grijalva, *ſ.* 1049
guadiabo, *fl.* 1095
guacapo, *fl* 1053
guadalaira, *pr.* 1041
guadalcanal, *inſ.* 1095
guadallanguen, *u.* 1074
guadalupe, *inſ.* 1094
guadiana, *pr.* 1042
guadilharber, *l.* 946
guagaquil, *fl.* 1065
guagere, *pr.* 978
guagyda, *u.* 950
guah aka, *pr.* 1096
guahanani, *inſ.* 1097
gualata, *pr.* 971
gualili, *u.* 955
guamanga, *u.* 1068
guanakani, *inſ.* 1033
guancabelica, *u.* 1068
guagara, *pr.* 973
guapiba, *u.* 1088
guanica, *u.* 1095
guanima, *inſ.* 1012
guanuca, *pr.* 1067
guaranyes, *p.* 1078
guardatu, *c.* 981
guarga, *fl.* 956
guargata, *u.* 962
guaſtecan, *pr.* 1045
guatopori, *fl.* 1059
guajape, *fl.* 1054
guarco, *u.* 1067
guapii, *fl.* 1078
guatemela, *pr.* 152, 1053
guatulco, *u.* 1050
guaxaca, *pr. u.* *ibid*
guaxanato, *r.* 1046
guaxarapi, *p.* 1078
guaxocingo, *u.* 1050
guaya curoes, *p.* 1078
guayamo, *m.* 1095
guayngareo, *u.* 1046
guayaquil, *u* 1066
guaybiamo, *u.* 1077
guaymuri, *p.* 1080
guayra, *u.* 1077
guazacoalco, *pr.* 1050
guber, *deſ.* 968, *p. u.* 972
guevelthan, *u.* 1052
gueztaxalta, *pr.* 1050
guglia, *c.* 994
de bona guia, *fl.* 1037
guiana, *p.* 1083, *fl.* 1095
guietta, *inſ.* 962
guinea, *pr.* 972
Nova, *pr,* 1066
guirla, *fl.* 954
gulata, *u.* 1066
guoga, *l.* 971
gurguigarn, *fl.* 955
gurngrut, *fl* *ibid*
guxitamba, *pr.* 1066
guzculan, *u.* 1053
guzzula, *pr. u.* 952
gypſeris, } *inſ.* 1000
gypſus,

H.

Lib. 1.

HAbſpurg, *u.* 166
Hagge, *c.* 231
Haguſtade, *u.* 314
Halifax, *ibid*
Hamme, *c* 188
Han, *u.* 190
Hantſhire, *pr.* 308 312
Harcourt, *u.* 193
Harflew, u. *ibid*
Hartford, *pr.* 304, *u.* 313
Haſtings *u.* 311
Haverford Weſt, 325
Hauredugrace, *u.* 193
Hebuda, *inſ.* 349
Hedui, *p.* 203, 225
St Helens, *inſ.* 352
Helna, *u.* 283
Helvii, *p.* 216
Heneti, *p.* 125
Heraclea, *u,* 82 *inſ.* 123
Herculanum, *u.* 70
Hercules, *inſ.* 91, 284
Herculeum, *fretum,* 363
Hereford, *p.* 304, *u.* 315
Herudford, *u.* 313
Heruli, *u.* 156
Heſperia, *pr.* 241
Heth, *inſ.* 349
Hetruria, *pr.* 129
Heſtruſſi, *p.*
Herepoix, *pr.* 183
Hexham, 314
Hextold, *ibid*

Hey

The TABLE.

Hey, u. 224, inſ. 349
Hibernia, inſ. 340
Hibrides, inſ. 349
Hiero, inſ. 87
Hieracum, inſ. 91
St. Hilary, u. 231
Himera, fl. 84
Hirpini, p. 72
Hiſpalis, u. 292
Hiſpaniack 241
Hiſtria, pr. 121
Holy croſs . 342
head, 351
Holy Iſland, 353
St. Honoratus, inſ. 230
Honflew, u. 193
Hueſca, u. 286
Huine, fl. 198
Humana, u. 97
Humber, fl. 295
Huntington, pr. 304 u 315
Hurſt C. 352
Hybla, u. 82, m 83
Hydra, fl. 120
Hydruntum, 76
Hypſa, fl. 84
Hab ſ c, ay, u. 526
Hadeiſlave, u. 488
Hæmimontum, pr. 572
Hæmus, m. 567,572,601
Haff en nia, u. 489
Haffeniort, u. 496
Hagenow, u. 421
Hagenſcheis, m. 447
Hagenſhow, C. 490
Hague, u. 384
Haibrum, u. 447
Hailbrun, u. 444
Haimburg, m. u. 435
Haine, fl. 369
Hainault, pr. ibid
Hal, u. 440
Halar, u. 496
Halberſtadt, u. 471
Hale, u. 465
Halen pot, u. 517
Halitz, u. 531
Hall, u. 370
Hallandia, pr. 491
Hallin, pr. 560
Halmſtadt, u. 491
Hamburg, u. 486
Hamelen, m. u. 471
Hammar, u. 494
Hammone, u. 412
Haneret, p. 489
Hania, fl. 369
Hannoi a pr, 369
ver, u. 471
Hannow pr. u. 442
Hanſholm, inſ. 488
Harderwick, u. 389
Harland, pr. 526
Harlem, u. 384
Harlengen, u. 386
Harmanduri, pr. 464
Hartz, u. ibid
Hartzholm, inſ. 489
Haſe, fl. 476
Hasford, u. 417
Haſle, u. 421
Haſſia, pr. 473
Hatteren, u. 412
Hattem, u. 389
Hatroan, u. 544
Havel, fl 457
Hebrus, fl. 608
Hecatompolis, p. 581, inſ. 610
Hecle, m. 496
Hedinfort, n. 367
Hegow, pr. 417

Heidelberg, u. 417
Heidenkein, u. 447
Heininkſtre, u. 480
Helderung, u. 466
Helene, inſ. 619
Helge, m. 49
Helice, u. 578
Helicon, m. 591
Hellas, pr. 574
Hellenis, inſ. 491
Helleſpont, 613
Helmitat, u. 471
Helſemberg, u. 493
Helſing ellac ne, u. 505
Helſingen, pr. 504
Helſingore, u. 490
Helverenæ, p. 536
Helvoldi, p. 457
Hemodes, inſ. 491
Henneberg, u. 445
Hennegow, pr. 369
Hephettias, u. 614
Heraclea, u. 603, 609
Herpipolis, u. 444
Herborn, u. 441
Hercinia, n. 404, 450
Herman ſtadt opolis, u. 560
Hernia, c. 619
Heruli, p. 561
Hervorden, u. 476
Heſdin, u. 367
Heſſi, p. 473
Herteild, u. 471
Heulden, u. 383
Hexholm, u. 516
Heydebui, u. 488
Heyſt, u. 380
Hiarance, inſ. 488
Hielſo, u. 505
Hieraſus, fl, 559
Hierke, u. 377
Hildeſham, u. 471
Hilgenes, inſ
Hillinis, c. 498
Hildeloppen, u. 386
Hinsgagel, c. 490
Hiolm, inſ. 488
Hipani, fl 525
Hippium, pr. 584
Hippolit, u. 424
Hobenberg, u. 429
Hochberg, u. 428
Hoctſtadt, u. 444
Hoffe, n. 464
Hoffen, u. 543
Hoey, u. fl. 376
Hohenberg, caſt. 429
Hohenloe, u. 445
Hogerland, pr. 533
Holland, pr. 382
Holm, u. 504
Holſtein, pr. 485
Homberg, u. 475
Hont a e inſ. 384,477
Hormia, u. 603
Horn, u. 384
Horpach, u. 405
Hoſtela, l 506
St. Hubert, u. 362
Huens inſ. 490
Hulbenrade, pr. 412
Hulſt, u. 366
Hungary. R. 541
Hunni, p. 545
Huris, u. 678
Huſem, u. 488
Huy, u. fl 376
Hydruſa, inſ. 617
Hymettus, m. 587
Hypata, u. 601
Hyperborri, m. 513

Lib. 3.

Habor, u. 815
Hadid, u 732
Hadrinople, u. 699
Hadullan, u. 730
Hajacan, pr. 884
Hajin, u. 729
Halah, u. 815
Haleb, u. 720
Halicarnaſſus, u. 662
Halis, fl. 646,649
Hamadum, u. 815
Hamath, pr. 693, u. 695
698, 720
Hamaxebii, p. 843
Hamones, 737
Hamſa, u. 665
Hamſe, u. 695
Hamſeu, u. 869
Hangehen, u. 867
Hapraraim, u. 722
Haran, u. 791
Hariſa, n. 737
Harman, fl. 774
Harmaſtis, u. 804
Harmozonta, c. 822
Harunda, fl. 819
Haſor, u. 730
Hatchteth, u. 687
Havila, u. 771
Havilah, pr. 818
Hauran, u. 718
Hazor, u. 720
Hebræi, p. 707
Hebron, u. 729
Hecatompyle, u. 828
Helaus, u. 699
Helenopontus, pr. 645
Heliopolis, u. 667, 701
Helleniſtæ, p. 707
Helleſpontus, 641, pr. 653
Helmus, fl. 881
Helon, u. 725
Hena, u. 698
Hendes, u. 886
Heneti, p. 647
Heniochi, p. 802
Heptacometæ, p. 647
Heraclea, u, 644,661,668
695,842
Heri, u. 826
Hermanaſſa, u. 645
Hermione m. 642
Hermon, m. 706 fl. 711
Hermoſa inſ. 917
Hermus, fl. 659
Herodium, u. 731
Hesbod, u. 715
Heſelitts, pr. 847
Hethlan, u. 721
Hetæa, u. 691
Chatzar Henan, u 720
Hiddekil, fl. 799
Hidero, fl. 818
Hieracum, inſ. 776
Hieragerme, u. 656
Hierapolis, u 654, 695
Hieruſalem, u. 732
Hipanes, fl 842
Hippici, m. 845
Hippocura, u. 880
Hippothagi, p. 821 848
856
Hippus, m. 701, 774, u. 701
717, fl, 802
Hiſpaan, u. 828
Hittits, pr. 739
Hivites. p. ibid
Hivit m. 715
Hodoca, u. 923
Hollandia Nova, inſ. 917

Homerita, p. 777
Honan, pr. 864
Honorias, pr. 647
Hophra, u. 724
Hor, u. 712, m. 770
Horeb, m. 770
Horites, p. 737
Hannes, p. 846
Hydaſpis, fl. 796, 879
Hydriacus, fl. 821
Hyperborei, p. 848
Hyrcania, p. u. 829

Lib 4.

Haaman u. 1083
Habar, p 956
Hacha, fl pr. u. 1059
Hackluits, c. 1090
Haguara, fl. 1053
Haina, fl. 1056
Haity, m 1095
Ham, pr. 934
Ham-Liſnan, u. 955
Hantera, u. 953
Haieſgol, u. 950
Harroba, pr. 1091
Haſcora, pr. 953
Hatibonico, fl. 1096
Hatuncolla, u. 1068
Havana, u. 1097
Hawkins Maydenland, 1091
Hea, pr. 953
St. Holens inſ. u. 1032
1003, c. 1066
Heliopolis, u. 928
Hemerum, u. 953
Hergate, inſ. 1028
Hedland, c. 1090
Henries, c. ibid
Henries Town, u. 1029
Cape Henry, c. 1020
Heptadelphus, m. 942
Heptanomus, pr. 929
Hera, inſ. 1005
herculis Arenæ, m. 932
Turris, u. 933
herendo, u. 1002
St. hermes, u. 963
hermopolis, u. 929
hermoſco, c. 1093
herocliotieum, pr. 916
fl 927
heroes, u. 918
hetpiditani, p. 950
heſperia, p. 932
heſperides, p 933 inſ 1007
heſperii, p. 989
heva, u. 946
hiera Bolus, u. 928
hiero, inſ. 1005
hierax, u. 929
higney, pr. 1096
hippagreta, u. 946
hippi, c. 945
hippo Regius, u. 937
hiſpania Nova, pr. 1044
Trapſtretana, pr. 944
hiſpaniola, inſ. 1095
hiuſtla, pr. fl. 1091
hochelaga, u. 1023
hoden, u. 969
holy Port, 1007
homar, u. 956
hondura, pr. 1053
Good hope, c. 994
Myos hormos, u. 926
horn, c. 1092
huaden, u. 969
hudſons, fretum, 1020
1090
hurx, fl 1037

hungaræ, fl. 1053
hydras, inſ. 962
hypadis pel gus, 1000

I.

Lib. I.

IAcca, u 286
Iaccerani, p. 282,286
St. Iacamo, u. 171
Iaen, u. 261
St. Iago, u. 259
Iamno, n. 284
Iapidia, pr. 122
Iapydes, p. 74,75
Iargeau, u. 200
Iarſey, inſ. 231
Iberia, pr. 241
Iberus, fl 247
Iccius portus, u. 188
Iceni, p. 308
Ichnuſa, inſ. 89
Icola Roſſa, inſ. 91
Idubeda, m. 247, 270
Iearne, fl. 210
Ierna, fl. 340
Iet-how, inſ. 231
Ifere, fl. 223
Iglium, pr. 133
Ila, inſ. 349
Ilanter, u. 171
Ilienſes, p. 89
Ilerones, p. 282
Ilerda, u. 286
Iliceas, u. 281
Illiberis, u. 265, 283
Illipulus, m. 247
Illium, c. 188
Illiturgis, u. 261
Ilna, inſ. 133
Imola, u. 92
Incibilis, u. 281
Indigites, p. 282
Indre, fl. 205
Inis Pir, I. 351
Ingenna, n. 192
Inganni, p. 137
Inn, fl. 163
Inſpruch, u. 153
Inſubres, p. 93,142
Interamna, u. 72
Inurea, u. 155
St. John de Angeli, u. 209
Luz, 211
Mons, 231
Pied de port, 251
Town, u. 333
Ioin ville, u. 186
Iolaia, inſ. 89
Ionium-mare, 34
Iona, inſ. 349
Iour, m. 153,180,228
Iourdain, 84
Ipſwich, 313
Ireland, inſ. 340
Iſaurium, u. 308
Iſaurus, f. 84
Iſcha Damoniorum, 95,
308
Silurum, u. 309
Ichia, inſ. 78
Iſis, fl. 306
Iſle de Deiu, pr. 230
Iſaudum, u. 205
Iſtead, fl. 325
Iſola Roſſa, inſ. 91
Iſtria, pr. 21
Cape de Iſtria, n. ibid
Iſuvium, u. 98
Italia, pr. 34

Ithanceſter, 313
Iudecha, I, 123
Ivernis, u. 346
Iuga Aſturun, m, 247
Iubulda, m. ibid
Iuginium, u. 98
Iuidot, pr. 191
St. Iulian, m. 86
Iuliæ, m. 152
Iulia Lybica, u. 283
Iulio-magus, u. 197
Iuſtinapolis, u. 121
Iuſulan, inſ. 123
Iuremont, p. 162, 180
Iura, m. 180

Lib. 2.

Iada, fl. 477
Iadole, u. 479
Iadera, u. 554
Die Iadie, S. 477
Iagendorf, u. 455
Iaitza, u. 552
Iamais, u. 373
Iapodes, p. 556
Iaromir, u. 451
Iaroſlave, u. 514
Iaſſii, p. 544
Iaſſii, u. 563
Iatre, fl. 568
Iavan. p. 598
Iau arine / rinum, u. 543
Iazyga, u. 552
Iazyges, p. 517
Metaneſtæ, pr. 541
Ibac, fl. 559, 566
Icaria, fl. 497
Ida m. 622
Idæa, inſ. 610
Idſtein, u. 441
Iegen, inſ. 488
Iegendorf, u. 455
Iene, u. 464
Iephapinolies, 513
Ierde, inſ. 491
Iervia, pr. 527
Ietzebo, u. 486
Ieurie, u. 478
Iglaw, u. 454
Iler, fl. 489
Ill, fl. 421
Illyricum Occid, pr. 438
Illyris, pr. 551
Ilma, fl. 465
Ilmen, l. 513
Ilſtradt, r. 432
Ilva, u. 497
Imbrus, inſ. u. 614
Ina, fl. 429, 459
Inachus, fl 577, 585
Ingelheim, u. 417
Ingolſtadt, u. 431
Inſpruch, u. 439
Inſtadt, u. 431
Inſula, u. 366
Intuergi, p. 418, 446
Inutrium, u. 431
Inonium Mare, 624
Ioſtphaly, p. 475
Ips, fl. u. 435
Iſ arus / er, fl. 431
Iſland, inſ. 495
Iſleben, u. 466
Iſſa, fl 555
Iſſelmund, u. 383
Iſter, fl. 595
Ithaca, I, 627
Iuch, fl. 513, 519
Iuges, fl. 525
Iu gria / har, u. 516
Iuites, p. 464, 485
Iuitland, pr. 487
Iuliers, / Iuliacum } u. 410
Iulinum, i. u. 459
Iulio Bona, u. 435
Iulis, u. 618
Iuois, u. 373
Iuſtiniana Prima, 569
ſecunda, 566
Iuvania, u. 432
Iuranograd, u. 515
Iwanowefero, p. 513

Lib 3.

Iarroone, u. 819
Iabadiu, inſ. 921
Iabeſh Gilead, u. 717
Iaboc, fl. 711
Iackheel, r. 770
Iaffa, u. 728
Iaheor, u. 715
Iamboli, u. 843
Iamema, fl. 879
Iamnia, u. 728
Ianiſapatan, u. 902
Iangoma, pr. 908
Ianizarie, c. 670
Iapan, inſ. 915
Iapha, u. 722
Iarmuth, u. ibid
Iartus, fl. 849
Ialii, p. ib.
Iaſonium, m. 814, r, 830
Iaſques, u. c. 822
Iatier, u. 729
Ia th / c rib, u. 775
Iava inſ. 920
Iaxaetes, fl. 849
Iazyges, p. 843
Iberia, pr. 803
Iberus, fl. 803
Ibera, u. 646
Icaria, inſ. 673
Ichara inſ. 777
Ichſiæſa, inſ 673
Iemene, fl. 885
Lemene, fl 885
Ichthyopagi, p. 870, ſ. 774
Iconium, u. 664
Ida, m, 651
Idalium, u. m. 680
Idumra, p. 736
Iebuſei, p. 739
Ieffleti, u. 725
Ielphra, u. 818
Ieph thyphagorum, S. 774
Iericho, u. 731
Iether, u. 730
Iews, p. 707
Iez eel, u. 724
Ileron, inſ. 674
Ilium, u. 651
Ilment, fl. 824
Imaus, m. 640, 796, 834
India, pr. 850
intra Gangem, 879
extra, 905
Indicus Oceanus, 776
Indian, u. 830
Indo ſcythæ, p. 841
Indus, fl. 796, 878
Ingermenum, u. 843
Ingine, pr. 790
Ioccabel, u. 913
Iogana, u. 924
Iohor, pr. u. 910
Iokneham, u. 721
Ionacapolis, u. 820
Ionia, pr. 657
Ioppa, u. 728
Ior, fl 711, p. u. 910
Iordan, fl. 711
minor, fl. 687
Iortam, u. 921
Iotopata, u, 719, 722
Ipſus, u. 658
Iris, fl. 649
Iſaur la / us, pr. u. 666
Iſcopolis, u. 645
Iſhmaelitæ, p. 771
Iſhktob, pr. 718
iſnichs, u. 643
Iſrael, p. 707
Iſſachar, p. 722
Iſſedon, u. 854, 856
Iſſus, u. 668
Iſtigias, u. 831
Iſtrianus, fl. 842
Ita, C. 728
Itamos, u. 775
Iturea, p. 716
Ivah, u. 698
Iadah, pr. 729
Iudæa, pr. 707, 727
Iulia felix, u. 691
Iulias, u. 717
Iuliopolis, u. 644, 654, 667
Iuſtiniana, u. 646

Lib. 4.

Iacho, fl. 1096
St Iacobo, u. 1002
Iacuaguia, p. 1096
Iaen, u. 1054, 1066
Iafferin, u. 956
Iagges, p. 992
St. Iago, inſ. 1004 u 1032, 1048, 1046, 1050, 1059, 1073, 1065, 1078, 1088, 1097, fl. 1061, 1065
St. Iago de Arma, u. 1062
de Guyaquil, u. i 1066
de Leon, u. 1089
de montanos, u. 1067
de Nata u. 1057
de vallos, u. 1045
Iaguana, u. 1096
St. Iames, fl. 1093
Iamiaca, I. 1097, 1085
Iames, u. 1029, c. 1090
Ia neiro / nuary, fl. p. 1080
Iaos, p. 1084
Iarzitha, u. 966
Iaſculum, p. 979
Iava, I, 1091
Ichthyophagy, p. 989
Bein Ierſo, u. 957
Bein Ieſſiten, u. 956
Ilrichia, p. 931
Ighidi, deſert. 968
Iguillinguiguil, u. 953
Ilda, m. 952
Ildefonſo, I, 1094
Ilheos, I. u. 1080
S. Illefonſo, u. 1050 I. 1092
Imbiani, p. 990, 994
Imizizim, u. 952
Imperial, u. 1013
Inavis, fl. 955
Les Infantes, u. 1073
Infierno, I. 1005
Inhaban, p. 992
Iniambis, fl. 1080
Ioanna, I 1002
Ioguazia, p. 1022
St. Iohan, fl. 1023
St. Iohn, I 1002, 1094, u. 1043, 1048
St. Iohn de Cinaloa, u. 1041
de los lianos, u. 1061
de Ulla, u. 1050
Iol, u. 950
Ionii, p. 949
St. Ioſeph, u. 1088
Iſabella, u. 1096, I, 1094
Iſidis, I, 1000
Iſius, m. 977
De les Iſlas, c. 1074
Iſola, u. 964
Itange, u. 1080
St, Ivan, fl. 1061
de Frontera, u. 1074
de Oro, u. 1068
de paſto, u. 1062
de ſalinas, p. 1066
de Victoria, u. 1068
Iucuran, p. 1050
St. Ives, c. 1092
Iulia Cirta, u. 948
Conſtantia, u. 958
Traducta, u. 957
St. Iulian, ſ. 1075
Iunna, fl. 1096
Iunonia, I. 1004, 1006
Iuries, p. 1078
uſtiniapu. 76
Iuvaganava, i. 1074

K.

Lib. I.

KAlin, fl. 344
Kantiani, p. 308
Kemper Corentin, u. 195
Kendal, u. 314
Kenner, fl. 312
Kent, pr. 300
Kerry, pr. 345
Kerton, u. 312
Kildare, pr. u. 343
Kings County, pr. ibid
Kingſton in Thames, 311
Kinſale u. 343
Kirckwal, u. 349
Knockfergus, u. 344
Kyle, pr. 334

Lib. 2.

Kinach, fl. 437
Kala, u. 465
Kaliſh, pr. 535
Kalla, u. 488
Kamme, fl. 517
Karinteri, p. 436
Kele, u. 563
Kelhaim, u. 449
Kelton, u. 490
Kemberg, u. 463
Kempenland, pr. 378
Kereſture, u. 544
Keildbec, u. 505
Keromenzeo, u. 550
Kertominde u. 490
Kethim, pr. 601
Keykerks, u. 390
Keſars Berry, u. 421
lautern, u. 417
Werdt, 411
Kexholm, u. 516
Kiburg, u. 428
Kien, inſ. 527
Kies, u. ibid
Kimarorubath, u. 541
Kimbrick fl. 428
Kiovia, Kiof, u 529, 569
Kiratow, u. 566
Kirtomina, u. 490
Kiſdy, p. 561
Kitagorod, C. 514
Kittim, pr. 601
Kilow, pr. u. 429
Kniſſin, u. 532
Koburg, u. 445
Kokenham, u. 527
Koldins, u. 488
Komora, inſ u. 543
Koningsberg, u. 416, 494
Konengſtall, m. 417
Koping, u. 491
Koſcein, u. 535
Kotiim, u. 563
Krain, pr. 438
Krivicne, m. 573
Kruſwick, u. 535
Kyel, u. 486

Lib. 3.

Kadeſh, u. 720
Barnes, u. 771
Kajangehew, u. 869
Kapharſalama, u. 725
Kara Amida, u. 791
Kedat, pr. 768
Kedemeth, u. 715
Kella, u. 730
Keldan, pr. 783
Kenitæ, p. 771
Kiang, fl. 867
Kergeſſi, p. 847
Kirhaſereth, u. 713
Kiriatham, u. 721
Shenith Kiriathaim, u. 712
Kitay, l. 844
Kianſi, p. 869
Kukares, 902

Lib. 4.

St. Kallop, u. 1045
Kennopecque, u. 1027
Ketaughcan, u. 1029
Kings foreland, 1020

L.

Lib. I.

LA Beauſd, pr. 200
Laberus, u. 346
Labinia, u. 119
Laboria, pr. 69
Labrelle, u. 225
La Breſſe, pr. 224
La Butte du mont, u. 231
Lacetani, p. 286
Lacinia, c. 78
Lactaxaces, p. 211
Lacus verbanus, 37
Ladoure, fl. 224
Læſtrigones, p. 82
La Fere, u. 191
La Fert, u. 200
La Flexh, u. 198
Lagier, fl. 212
Laſanto, fl. 73
Lagenia, pr. 343
Lagos, u. 267
La Grace, u. 219
La March, p. 208
L'Amballe, u. 195
L' Amballiates, p. ib.
Lambeſque, u. 187
Lameticus ſinus, 77
Lamotte, u. 187
Lambous, fl. 202

Lancaſter

Lancaſter, *p.* 304
Lanciano, *u.* 72
Lancinencis, *p.* 257
Landa, *u.* 143
Landaffe, *u.* 323
Lanellum, *inſ.* 134
Langris *u.* 187
Languedoc, *pr.* 215
Laugue d, gotia, *p.* *ib.*
L'Anquillade, *inſ.* 230
Lanliangu. 72
Lanuſi, *inſ.* 134
Lao n, dunum, *u.* 190
Lapidei Campi 219
La Plaia, *u.* 277
La Pay, *u.* 216
Laredo, *u.* 255
La Roch, *u.* 223
Larrina, *fl.* 120
Larius, *l.* 143
La Roch, *u.* 208
Larabecua, *u.* 255
Laetoraces, *p.* 211
Latium, *pr.* 100
Lavada, *fl.* 275
La Val, *u.* 198
Lavant, *fl.* 311
Lavarein, *u.* 201
Lauda, *u.* 143
Laudun, *u.* 198
Lavinium, *u.* 100
Lavaro, *pr.* 69
Laurea, *fl.* 205
Lauretania, *u.* 97
Laur on, igi, *u.* 281
Lauſanna, *u.* 165
Laxoal, *u.* 229
Leaſe, *p.* 343
Lebrette, *u.* 225
Lecci, *u.* 75
Lecto durum, dure, *u.* 214
Lefour, *c.* 195
St. Legie, *u.* 227
Legeris, *fl.* 180
Legio, *u.* 257
Legio viceſima vitrix, *u* 308
Leiceſter, *pr.* 304. *u.* 308, 315
Leighlin, *u.* 343
Leith, *p.* 333
Lemaman, *l,* 156
Lemavi, *p.* 259
Lemauſus, *u.* 216
Lemonices, *p.* 209
Leinſter, *pr.* 343
Lennox, *l.* 332. *p.* 334
Lentini, *u.* 85
St Leon, *u.* 59 *caſt.* 96
Leon, *pr. u.* 257
St. *Pol de* Leon, *u.* 195
Leonticem, *u.* 81, 85
Lepontiæ, *m.* 152
Lerida, *u.* 286
Lerina, *inſ.* 230
Lerigi, *u.* 138
Lerina, *u.* 270
Leſcar, *u.* 211
Leſcina, *l.* 74
Leſmore 345
Leſtorarium, *u.* 214
Lethes, *fl.* 275
Lettim, *m.* 342 *pr. u.* 345
Leuco Petra, *c.* 77
Leucopibia, *u,* 334
Levin, *fl.* *ib.*
Leuk, *pr.* 162
Lewis Burg, *u.* 209
Lezobii, *p.* 192
Lewis, viſſa, *inſ.* 349
Libnius, *fl.* 342
Libora *u.* 268
Liburnum, *u.* 132, 150
Libici, *p.* 156
Libourn, *u.* 211
Lichfield, *u.* 315
Liddeſdale, *pr.* 334
Lieran, *fl.* 216
Liſſ, *fl.* 342
Liga Cadi Dio, *pr.* 170
Dittuie, *ib.*
Griſa, *ib.*
Ligeris, *fl.* 186
Lignis, *u.* 132
Ligorne, *u.* 180
Liguria, *pr.* 137
Liguſticæ, *m.* 152
Lilebeum, *c.* 82
Limachus, *fl.* 163
Limagne, *fl. pr.* 204
Limarum, *fl.* 119
Limerick, *pr.* 345
Limoger, *u.* 208
Limoſin, *pr.* *ib.*
Limavi, *p* 259
Lincoln, *p.* 304. *u.* 315
Lindisfærn, *inſ.* 314, 353
Lindum, *u.* 308, 334
Ligones, *p.* 186
Linlithquo, *u.* 334
Lionys, *p.* 225
Lions, *u.* *ib.*
Lipara, *inſ u.* 86
Liris, *fl.* 69
Lisbon, *u.* 275
Liſieux, *u.* 192
Liſle, *fl.* 210
de Jourdain, *u.* 214
in *dort* en-Dodon, *u.* 213
Litleborough, *u.* 308
Livorne, *u.* 132
Lixentes, *fl.* 202
Llanes, *u.* 257
Llanvillin, *u.* 323
Lobrogat, *fl.* 281
Locarna, *u.* 165
Loches, *u.* 357
Locknannier, *m.* 170
Locris, *u.* 76
Lodi, *u.* 143
Logia, *l.* 342
Logrogne, *u.* 252
Loer, *fl.* 180, 195
Lol, *u.* 279
Lombardy, *pr.* 141
Lombes, *u.* 213
London, *u.* 305
Lon, *fl.* 313
London Derry, *u.* 344
Loncaſter, *u.* 314
Longford, *pr.* 343
Longovicus, *u.* 314
Longueville, *u.* 193
Loquehabre, *pr.* 334
Lorca, *u.* 267
Lorette, *u.* 97
Lorn, *p.* 334
Lot, *fl.* 210
Lothean, *pr.* 333
L'ouche, *fl* 216
Lough-eaugh, *l.* 342
Loventium, *u.* 323
Lougleen, *l.* 342
Loughfole, *l.* *ib.*
St. Loup, *u.* 183
Lourile, *u.* 213
Loxa, *u.* 266
Loyr, *fl.* 180
Louth, *pr.* 344
Lozanna, *u.* 165
St. Luca de Barameda, *u.* 261
Lucani *p.* 77
Luceria, *u.* 274
Luceene, 163. *u.* 165
Lucca, *u* 135
Luciieri furum, *u.* 261
Lucopibya, *u.* 334
Lucotetia, *u.* 185
Lucon, *u.* 207
Lucus Aſturum, *u.* 257
Ludlows 325
Lugano, *pr.* 164
Lugdunum, *u.* 225
Lugdunenſis Prima, *pr.* 221
Secunda 191
Tertia 197
Quarta 183, 200
Lugudore, *c.* 89
Luna, *m u.* 136, 275
Lunagiana, *pr.* 136
Lundy, *inſ.* 351
Luneburg *u.* 157
Luparetha, *u.* 72
Luſigna, *u,* 207
Luſitania, *pr.* 248
Luſſon, *u.* 207
Lutetia, *u.* 185
Luzaik, *u.* 183
Ly men, mni *l.* 351

Lib. 2.

Labeates, *l.* 553
Lacedæmon, *u.* 582
Laconia, *p.* 581
Ladin, *u.* 418
Ladinberg, *u.* 417
Ladoga, *l.* 513
Ladon, *fl.* 577
Laguſa, *inſ.* 619
Laholme, *u.* 492
Laibach, *u.* , *fl.* 437
Laiz *u.* 560
Lamia, *u.* 602
Lamboc, *u.* 436
Lancitia, *pr.* 535
Landiſoron, *u.* 492
Landeſhuit, *u.* 432
Langeland, *inſ.* 490
Langurte, *inſ,* 536
Landiecy, *u* 320
Landsberg, *u.* 431
Lapithæ *p.* 601
Lap land, iones, *pr.* 504
Lappa, *u.* 623
Lariſſa, *u.* 601
Larta, *u. ſ.* 598
Laſti, *m.* 622
Lau, *u.* 561
Laus, *ſ.* 599
Lawland, *inſ.* 490
Lawenburg, *pr. u.* 467
Law Ferte, *u.* 373
Lavamundt, *u.* 437
Lavand, *fl.* *ib.*
Lavia, *fl.* 532
Lauben, *u.* 456
Laureacum, *u.* 435
Lauſnitz, *pr.* 455
Lauſtein, *u.* 417
Lautern, *u.* 418
Lebadia, *u.* 592
Lecre *u.* 478
Lecheum, *u.* 586
Leek *fl.* 362, 383
Lecopolis, *u.* 531
Leeſt, *u.* 380
Leere, *u.* 478
Leibnits, *u.* 543
Leiden, *u.* 383
Leige, *pr.* 375, *u.* 376
Leine, *fl.* 471, 530
Lelegia, *pr.* 580
Lelow, *u.* 536
Lemberg, *u.* 445
Lembro *inſ. u.* 614
Lemgow, *u.* 476
Lemnos, *inſ.* 614
Lenæus, *inſ.* 622
Lenovi, *p.,* 527
Lens, *u.* 367
Leoburg, *u* 418
Leodium, *pr.* 375, *u.* 376
Leontari, *u.* 581
Leopolis, *u.* 468
Lepanto, *ſ.* 577. *u.* 595
Leidam, *u.* 383
Lerna, *l.* 582
Lettanland, *pr.* 527
Latua, *inſ.* 624
Levant, *fl.* 436
Levadia, *pr.* 592
Leucas, *u. inſ. c.* 598
Lueci, *p.* 423 *m.* 622 *u.* 623
Leucolia *inſ.* 614
Leuctra, *u.* 592
Leuctres, *u.* 582
Levoni, *p.* 506
Leu-waiden, *u.* 386
Leu-wais, *fl.* *ib.*
Ley, *fl.* 363
Lezina, *inſ. u,* 555
Libetris, *m* 603
Liburnades, *inſ.* 555
Liburnia *pr.* 551
Lica, *fl.* 532
Lichtal, *u.* 447
Lichtebeib, *u.* 442
Liebenzel, *u.* 447
Lieſland, *pr.* 525
Lignitz, *u.* 455
Lilea, *u.* 595
Limburg, *pr. u.* 375, *u.* 445
Limenæ, *fl.* 622
Limene, *inſ.* 615
Limers, *u.* 412
Limford, *ſ.* 488
Lincopen, *u.* 502
Lindau, *u.* 427
Linges, *fl.* 383
Lingen, *u.* 478
Linkaw, *u.* 528
Lintz, *u.* 414, 435
Liothida, *pr.* 506
Lippe, *fl.* 409 *p. u.* 476, 543
Lipſique, *u.* 463
Lis, *fl.* 363, 367
Liſontio, *fl.* 437
Liſſa, *inſ.* 556
Liſſus, *u.* 553
Liſtle, *u.* 366
Littomiſſel, *u.* 451
Lituama, *pr.* 528
Liughæ, *fl.* 389
Livonia, *pr.* 525
Liutz, *u.* 435
Lochen, *u.* 389
Locris, *pr.* 594
Loduſe, *u.* 502
Lon, *fl* 438
Londen, *u.* 486
Londenberg, *u.* 488
Longi-diduni, *u.* 460
Nani, *u.* *ib.*
Longobardi, *p.* 468
Lons, *u.* 377
Lootz, *u.* 376
Lorreine, *pr.* 422
Los, *inſ.* 619
Loſinger, *u.* 504
Lotharingia, *pr.* 422
Lou, *fl.* 438
Lovaine, *u.* 379
Louch, *fl.* 421
Lozara, *u.* 532
Lubbin, *u.* 456
Lubec, *u.* 485
Lublin, *u.* 536
Lutztenberg, *u. p.* 449
Luremburg, *u.* 373
Luceozia, *u.* 530
Lugdunum batavorum, 383
Luickland, *pr.* 375
Lumainge, *u.* 377
Lumburg, *u.* 467
Luna, *u.* 404
Lunden, *u.* 492
Lunenberg, *u. pr.* 471
Lunſtod, *c.* 489
Luſaria, *pr.* 455
Luſen, *fl.* 501
Luter, *fl.* 418
Cæſarea lutra, *u.* *ib.*
Luxinburg, *pr.* 373
Luzke, *u.* 530
Lycoſtomos, *u.* 564
Lycus, *fl.* 429
Lyet, *fl.* 543
Lyſimachia, *u.* 609

Lib. 3.

Laban, *u.* 715
Lachis, *u.* 728
Lagoas, *m.* 814
Lahor, *u.* 884
Laich, *u.* 720
Lambata, *p.* 881
Lambri, *u.* 923
Lampſacus, *u.* 656
Lanagau, *u.* 913
Lange, *inſ.* 974
Lanos, *fl.* 855
Lancilla, *u.* 810
Laodicea, *u.* 654, 660, 695
Laos, *fl. pr.* 608
Lapethia, *p.* 679
Turris lapidea, *caſt.* 848
lapithus, *fl.* 678, *u.* 680
lac. *fl.* 774. *u.* 680
laranda, *u.* 664
lariſſa, *u.* 695, 788
larii Joan, *u.* 797
laca, *u.* 715
latmos. *m.* 661
lavia, *pr.* 908
laviana, *p.* 650
laula, *u* 924
lawribander, *u.* 887
leanites, *l.* 774, *p.* 777
leadang, *u.* 868
lebedus, *u.* 658
lectium, *c.* 651
ledeoncis, *u.* 679
lelegis, *u.* 662
Frigui lemale, *u.* 924
lenteinis, *u.* 679
leogoræ, *c.* 901
leonto polis, *u.* 646, 800
lequin, *i.* 917
lero, *i.* 674
lesbos, *i. u.* 671
leſcare, *u.* 680
leſha, *u.* 715
leſhen, *u.* 720
leſtori, *p.* 906
leuca-Acte, *u.* 695
leuco-Syri, *p.* 646
liampo, *c* 910
libames *m.* 687, 701
libias, *u.* 715
libna, *u.* 730
libuſſa, *u.* 643
limiſſa, *p.* 678
limuries, *p.* 881

Limyeus, fl. 642
Linduon 675
Linga, i. 923
Liſpor, u. 890
Livias, u. 715
Lochiau. u. 869
Lacopp, u. 846
Lod, u. 732
Lombare, fl. 878
Lontoor, u. 918
Lop, p. u. 857
Lori, u. 804
Lubium, u. ib.
Lugor, u. 911
Luſſon, i. 917
Luz, u. 731
Lycaonia, p. 664
Lycia, p 662
Lycus, fl. 658,678,787
832
Lydda, u. 725
Lydia, p. 659
Lyrneſſus, u. 651
Lyſinnia, u. 664
Lyſtra, u. ib.

Lib. 4.

Laborodoro, p. 1021
Lacca, p. 983
Laccari, u. 982
Laccus, u. 927, 931
Lacomedis, l. 931
Los Ladrones, i. 1092
Laganici, p. 933
Lagartos, fl. 1057
Laguna, u. 1089
Lagumilla, u. 1069,1078
Lamanay, i. 1051
Lampedoſa,
pedusa, i. 962,963
Languelungi, p. 997
Lanterotte, i. 1005
Laques del oro, c. 1037
Lacache,
iſſa, u. 956
Larunesia, i. 962,963
St. Laurence, i. 1001,1025
ſ. 1023
St. Laurenzo, u. 1081
Laxus, u. 957
Leanda, i. 998
Lelada,
uda, fl. 987, 997
Lempas, fl 1053
Lempta, des. 968
De ſierra Leone, c. 970
De los Leones, port. 1075
Leon, u 1054,1067,1089
Leptis magna, u. 946
Lethes
on fl. 932,933
St. Lewis, u. 1024, 1042
1082
Libia, p. 931, l. 966
Deſerta, p. 968
Interior, p. 965
Libyægyptii, p 932,933
Libyæ-Phœnices, p. 949
Libyorchæ, p. 932
Libycum, mare, 930
Ligeis, fl. 1031
Ligua, fl. 1073
Lima, p. 1067
Linxamo, l. 931
El Lion, u. 1043
Ham Liſnan, u. 955
Lix, fl. 956
Lixa, u. ib.
Loanda, i. 998
Loango, p. 997
Lobos, i. 1005,1065, c. 1046

Loiola u. 1067
Lon, m. 989
New London, u. 1078
De Lopes Gonzules, m.
970
Lorenzo, fl. 1093
Loſe, fl. 996
Latephagitis, i. 963
Loxa, u. 1066
Loza, fl. 995
Luanga, fl. 992
Lueach, p. 1091
Lucaios, i. 1033
St. Lucas, c. 1037
Luccus, fl. 956
St Lucies, i. 1004,1094
Ludim, p. 975
Ludog, fl. 947
Lugo de nueſtra Senora,
l. 1089
St. Lukes, u. 1024, 1042
i. 1038
Lunæ montes 989
Aquæ Lund, c. 996
Lungiſari, u. 933
Luthon, fl. 932
Luyſa, fl. u. 1095
St. Luzia, u. 1090
Lybici, m. 926
Lybia, p. 931,930
Lybicum, mare, 930

M.

Lib. 1.

MAcera, u. 76
Macerata, u. 97
Macolicum, u. 346
Macea, fl. 129
Madrid, u. 271
Madrit, c. 185
Magia, pr 164
Magiventum, u. 308
Magliano, u. 98
Magni, u. 323
Magra fl. 137
Maguelone, inſ. 230
Mago, u. 284
Maidſtone, 311
Mailleſaye, u. 207
Maine, pr. 198
Mainland, inſ. 349
Maio, pr. 344
Majorca, inſ. 284
Maira, fl. 171
Mala
eos inſ. 349
Malac,
ga, u. 266
portus 118
Malamoro, inſ. 122
Malans, u. 171
Malbourquer, u. 214
Malden, 308
Maleventum 72
Malfi, u. 71
Mallenzay, u. 200
St. Malo, u. 195
Malon, fl. 205
Malucene, m. 295
Man Manning, inſ. 350
Mancheſter, 308
Mandiceſſedium, u. ib.
Mans, u. 198
Mantua, u. 146,271
Maon, u. 284
Mar, pr. 334
Marans, u. 210
Marbogi, p 255
Marca Anconita, pr. 97
Firmiana, ib
Tetrigiana, 118
St. Marceline, u. 223

March, pr. 334
Marchina, u. 261
Marechia, fl. 91
Margis, u. 266
Mariana, u. 140
Marianus, m. 247
Marieburg, u. 343
Maridunum, u. 323,325
St. Maries, inſ. 78, 352
u. 263
Marignan, u. 143
Maritima, m. 152
Marivola, caſt. 96
Marmand, u. 214
Marmoſtier, inſ. 230
Martha, fl. 130
Marn, fl. 184, 186
Marſac. u. 208
De Marſan, u. 214
Marſelles, u. 219
Marſo, m. u. 71
Martinatcht, u. 162
S. Martins, u. 231
Maſcon, u. 225
Maſerors, u. 212
Maſox, u. 171
Maſſa, m. u. 71, p. u. 131
Maſſilienſes, p. 221
Matera, u. 76
Matraval, u. 325
Matiſconum, u. 225
St. Maudits, caſt 312
Maufredonia, u. 74
St. Maurice, u. 162,203
inſ. 352
Maurienne, u. 157
Maxacre, u. 266
Maxima. Cæſarienſis, pr
319
Sequanorum, 221,228
Mayenne, fl. 197, u. 198
Mazara, pr. 85. u. 85
Maziers, u. 191
Mearo, fl. 259
Meatæ, p. 334
Meaux, u. 187,275
Medanched, u. 315
Medena, u. 352
Media, pr. 343
Medilino, u. 263
Medina, u. 352
Cæli, u. 269
Sidonia, 261
Mediolanum, u. 143,289
Mediolanium, u. 192,
209,223
Medoc, pr. 211
Medona, fl. 342
Meduacus major
& minor } fl. 118
Meduana, u. 198
Medulli, p 157
Medway, fl. 296,311
Megaris, u. 84
Meinſeild, u. 171
Meine, fl. 219
Mieſac, u. 208
Meldi, p. 187
Melortæ, inſ. 134
Melodunum,
un, u. 184
Menai, fl. 325
Menapia, u. 343, p. 346
Menavia,
w, inſ. 350
Menew, u. 323
Mendip, m 295
Mendriſio, pr. 164
Menteith, pr. 334
Mercaria, u. 146
Merch, pr. 334
Mercia, pr. 315
Merida, u. 263
Merindal, u. 219

Merionith, pr. 324
Mereville, u. 209
Mervis, p. 334
Meſſana, ſ. 81, u. 82,86
Meſſapia, pr. 75
Metaurus, fl. 95
Meth, pr. 343
Methaucum, inſ. 122
Metremo, fl. 95
St. Michaels, inſ. 277
Middleſex, pr. 308
Milaſe, u. 86
Mileſimo, u. 138
Milford, u. 325
Millan, p. 143, u. 144
Millar, fl. 280
Milly, u. 184
Millengen, u. 164
Minius, fl. 118, 247, 259
175
Minorca, inſ. u. 284
Minturni, u. 69
Miramont, p. 208
Miranda, u. 275
Mirande, u. 212
Mirandula, u. 148
Mirapenſe, u. 212
Mirepoix, u. ib.
Mirton, l. 332
Micenus, u. 71
Mineius, fl. 146
Moandus, fl. 344
Modena, u. 347
Modona, u. 343
Modorcum, u. 143
Molæſinus, 100
Moia, u. 251
Molfette, u. 75
Molifi, p. 72
Molina, u. 271
Molinga, u. 343
Molins, u. 202
Molon, fl. 205
Momblane, u. 282
Mombrum, u. 224
Mona monabia, inſ. 350
Momonia, pr. 345
Mona, pr. 86
Monaco, u. 138
Monaghan, pr. 344
Moncada, u. 282
Monceaux, u. 187
Monco libre, inſ. 284
Mondego, fl. 275
Modeni, u. 155
St. Monhaud, u. 191
Monkcheſter, u. 314
Monmouth, pr. 304 u 325
Monoeda, inſ. 350
Monopolis, u. 75
Monreal, u. 85
Monregeau, u. 213
Monſeguer, u. 211
Mons pepulanus, u. 216
Regis, u. 85,213
Montaigne, u. 202
Montalban, u. 209
Mont Alcino, u. 133
Argentorati, ib.
Argis, u. 184
St. Aubin, c. 231
Briſon, u. 203
Dedior
St Deſiderii } u. 186
Montelimar, u. 223
Montereau, u. 187
Montfalron, u. 120,205
Montfeltre, p. 95
Montierrant, u. 204
Ferrat, pr. 149. m. 282
Montfort, u. 200
Montigibal, m. 83
Montgomeri, pr. 314
Monthault, u. 212

Monticella, u. 148
Montlehorri, u. 184
Montmelian, u. 157
Montmorancy, pr. 184
Montonos, fl. 92
Montorgueil, caſt. 231
Montpellier, u. 260, pr. 283
Montpenſier, u. 204
Montpulſione, u, 131
Montreall, u. 251
Montrille, u. 189
Montrico, u. 254
Montſeguer, u. 211
Montſerrata, m. 282
Moret, u, 185, 213
Morgetes, p. 82
Morici, p. 189
Moriton, u. 193
St. Morits, u. 162
Morlais, u. 195
Morreal, u. 85
Mortaigne, u. 193
Morvedre, u. 281
Moriſcoes, p. 264
Moſon, u. 286
Mounſter, pr. 345
Mown, pr. ib.
Mulhuſen, u. 165
Muliades, fl. 275
Mulſio, fl. 97
Munda, u. 266
Munow, fl. 325
Mur Munus, u. 171
Muralia, u. 267
Murat, u, 204
Murcia, pr. 267
Murgis, u. 266
Muriana, inſ. 123
Murrey, pr. 314
Mutina, u. 147

Lib. 2.

Macara, m. 622
Macaroneſos, inſ. 620
Macedonia, p. 601,603
Salutaris 600
Macchlin, pr. u. 380
St. Macor, r. 622
Macris, inſ. 615
Macroniſco, inſ. 619
Macropolis, u. 568
Mænos, fl. 404,416,443
Mæci, p. 567
Mæcianus, ſ. 494
Maes, fl. 363
Matſecke, u. 376
Maeſland, pr. 378
Maſtricht, u. 379
Magdeburg, pr. u. 467
Magiore, mare, 612
Maine, fl. 404,443
Malcaw, u. 561
Malea, c. 581
Maliacus, ſ. 602
Malk, u. 438
malmoge, u. 491
malo, c. 619
maltz, c. 463
malveſia, u. 582
malviſin, u. 623
mandeus, u. ib.
manbeim, u. 618
manaſelr, pr. u. 466
mantigna,
thra, u. 581
marathon, u. 588
marback, u. 447
marche,
ke, p. 412, fl. 435,454
marcianapolis, u. 568

Marcodurum, u. 410
Marcomanni, p. 438,454
Mariboane, u. 490
Mariemberg, u. 370
Marienberg, u. 533
Marienwerder, u. 533
Mar$^{c}_{i}$h, fl. 559
Mariza, fl. 609
Mark, p. 410, fl. 435
Marmora, inſ. 613
Marobodurum, u. 451
Maron Campi, u. 544
Marone Zeck, pr. 561
Marpurg, u. 473
Marquiſatus Imperii, pr. 379
Marſhow, u. 532
Marſi p. 485
Marſigini, p. 455
Marſperg, u. 438
Marſtrand, u. 494
Marta, fl. 413
Martane, fl. ib
Martenburg, u. 372
Martenwald, u. 432
Martiana, n. 404
St. Martins Dike, u. 486
Maruch, fl 560
Marulius, fl. 559
Maſch, u. 552
Maſz-munſter, u. 422
Maſſovia, pr. 531
Matapan, c. 581
Matium, u. 622
Mattiaci, p. 363.386
Matzan, m. 542
Mawbuige u. 369
St Maure, inſ. u. c. 598
Macæi, p. 556
Mecklenburg, pr u. 561
Medemblick, n. 384
Med$^{iſeus}_{wich}$ u. 560
Mediolanum, u. 476
Mediomatrices, p. 423
Medon, u. 553,580
Megalopolis, u. 461,581
Meg$^{aris}_{ra}$ pr. u. 591
Meiſſen, p. u. 463
Melæna, inſ. 556
Melapſus, m. 608
Melas, fl ib.
Meldorp, u. 486
Melena, inſ, 626
Meler, l. fl. 501, 504
Melibocus, m. 438
Melida, inſ. 556
Melipotamus, u. fl. 623
Meliſſa, u. 585
Mellum, u. 479
Melos, inſ. 618
Melſingen, u. 473
Melvin, u. 533
Menapil. p. 363,390
Menebria, u. 568
Mengerbuiſe, u. 474
Mentz, pr. u. 416
Meran, u. 440
Mecheren, pr. 454
Merellus, u. 604
Merks, fl. 379
Meroden, u. 410
Mersburg, u. 463
Merspurg, u. 417
Meſſembria, u. 568
Meſſenia. pr. u. 580
Meſteo, fl. 608
Metaniſtæ, p. 544
Methon, u. 580
Mers, u. 423
Metz, pr 363
Meuſe, fl. 362
Meuter, fl. 413
Meydenburg, u. 467
St. Michael, u. 519
Micklow, pr. 533
Mieo$^{le}_{nus}$ inſ. 618
Middelſar, u. 490
Midleburg, u. 385,417
St. Miel, u. 424
Mieſlaw, pr. 529
Milberg, u. 448
Miletum, u. 622
Millenbach, u. 560
Milo, inſ. 618
Milopotamos, u. 623
Mimel, u. 533
Mimmegen, u. 428
Minden, u. 476
Minnael, fl. 525
Minoa, u. 622
Minois, inſ. 617
Minsco, pr 529
Mirabello, u. 623
Mirecour, u. 424
Miſceneck, u. 519
Miſnia, pr. 463
Mitaw, u. 527
Mlawa, u. 535
Mockern, u. 467
Modriſh, u. 552
Moeln, u. 468
Moenland, inſ. 490
Mæotis, pal. 562
Mog$^{us}_{anus}$ fl. 416
Moguntiacum, u. ib.
Moldavia, pr. 562
Molmuck, u. 451
Moloſſia, pr. 598
Molyeria, u. 595
Mona, inſ. 527
Monachium, u. 431
Monaſteriú Ephaliæ, 410
Moncaſtrum, u. 563
Monheim, u. 448
Mons Regius, u. 417
Monmedi, u. 373
Montbelgard, pr. u. 422
Montenſes, p. 411
Monſtier u. 372
De Monte ſacro, ſ. 603
Monfert, u. 387
Mont Gerard, u. 366
Monts u. 369
Mora, fl. 423,454
Moravia, pr. 454
Morava, fl. 566
Morea, pr. 478
Mordevit Tartars, 518
Morini, p. 363,367
Morſee pr. 489
Morville, u. 373
Moruſus fl. 560
Moſa, fl. 363
Moſaiski, p. u. 514
Moſco, u. fl. ib.
Moſelle, fl. 373,404
Moſon, fl. 423
Moſopia, u. 588
Moſpach, u. 417
Moſtch, u. 552
La Mothe, u. 424
Moubuige, u. 369
Mouchoſit, u. 366
Mountabor, u. 475
Mouſeturne, caſt. 417
Mouſon, u. 373
Muers, pr. u. 409
Muerte, fl. 422
Muldavius, fl. 450
Mulhanſens u. 422
Mulheim, u. 411
Mulhuiſen, u. 465
Mulmberg, u. 533
Mulsberg, u. 463
Munchen, u. 431
Mund, inſ. 490
Munderpre, u. 497
Munſter, u. 476
munſterberg, u. 455
Munſter Eyphelt, u. 410
Mur, fl. 437
Murgo, inſ. 618
Murſa, u. 544
Muſcovio, pr. 514
Muſeck, u. 376
Muſonium, u. 373
muſon Court, n. 377
Mycenæ, u. 584
Mygdonia, pr. 604
Myrina, u 614
Myrmansby, mare. 495
Myrmidones, p 601
Myrmidonia, inſ. 616
Myſia, pr. 566
Inſerior, 568

Lib. 3.

Maachah, pr. 684,699
Maarſares, fl. 784
Macaan, u. 856
Macao, u. 868
Mocaria, u. 671, inſ. 675, 677
Macaſſar, inſ u. 920
Maces, c. 822
Machæus, u. 714
Machian, inſ. 918
Macin, pr. 912
Macir, inſ. 918
Macris, inſ. 673
Macrones, p. 804
Macuti, u. 718
Madabat, u. 888
Madai, u. 815
Madian, u. 721
Madianites, p. 712,770
Madoce, fret. 776
Madura, u. 900, inſ. 982
Mæander, fl. 654, 658
Mæandrus, m. 906
Mæonia, pr. 659
Mæotis, l. 842
Magdala, u. 720
Magneſia, u. 660
Magnum, fl. 879,910
Magnus, ſ. 900
Magod, u. 714
Magog, u. 695
Magoram, ſ. 774
Reix Magos, inſ. 917
Magrummum, u. 923
Magydis u. 665
Mahacath, u. 718
Mahanaim, u. 761
Main, u. 891
Maioma, u. 228
Makars, pr. 728
Makeloth, u. 771
Malabar, pr. u. 891
Malaca, pr u. 908
Malanchom[illegible] p. ib.
Malanga, u. 880
Malano, 920
Malaxia, u. 650
Maldivæ, inſ. 924
Malea, m. 923
Maliachi, inſ. 776
Maliapar, u. 900
Maliarpha, u. 880
Malli, p, 881
Malmiſtra, fl. 666
Punta Malota, c. 677
Malthura, u. 906
Malway, pr. 891
Mamre Campus, 729
Manambis, u. 775
Manaſſeh, p. 717 724
Mancopin, u. 843
Mandagarſis, u. 815
Mandalæ, p. 881
Mandao, pr. fl. u. 884
Babel Mandel, fret. 890
Mangalor, u. 890
Mangi, p. 864
Mangutum, u. 843
Manilla, u. 917
Maniole, inſ. 902
Maocoſmus, u. 775
Mapha, u. ib.
Maræbia, u, 891
Maræbius, fl. 845
Maracandra. u. 850
Maran, u. 830
Marandæ, p. 906
Maranis, u. 850
Marant, u. 816
Maras, u. 797
Marciane, pr. 804
Mardiene. pr. 820
Mardus, u. 924
Mare mortuum, l. 711
Mareſa, u. 730
Margana, u. 923
margaſi, p. 816
margiana, pr. 830
margus, fl, ib.
St. maria, u. 805
marianna, p. 650
mariſeæ. p. 831
marraſium, u. 820
marſoa, u 729
marſoas, fl. 686
marſias, fl. 653, 797
martavan, pr. u. 912
martiana, l. 800
maruca, u. 849
maſaca, u. 829
maſca, fl. 700
maſdaram, p. 826
maſdoramus, m. 828
maſæus. fl. 819
maſheal, u. 721
maſoni, p. 769
maſopello, u. 880
maſorum pr. 678
maſſada, u. 730
maſſaget$^{æ}_{es}$ p. 830, 848
maſſei, p. 851
maſſycetes, p. 663
matara, u. 921
materni, p. 769
mattæn, inſ. 617
maurgus, fl. 796
mougi, p. 878
maugar, fl. 898
mazei$^{æ}_{as}$ fl. p. 829
maiden tower, c. 643
mayendre, 890
mazaca, 649
mazage, u. 880
maziris, u. ib.
meaco, p. u. 916
meara, u. 775
meccao, u. 913
mecka, u. 775, ſ. 776
mechara, u 775
mechleſſus, u. 802
mecon, fl. 908
medeba, u. 714
media, pr. 814
major, 815
medina, u. 775
mediterraneum mare, 641
megalopolis, u. 645
megaloſſus, u. ib.
megarenſes, p. 643
megiddo, u. 722
megoies, p. 821
melamphylas, inſ. 673
melampurgos. u. 654
melange, u. 880
melani, m. 770,774
melanthii, rupes, 673
melas, fl. 642, 650
melchia, c. 677
melinda, u. 890
melintay, p. 907
melitene, pr. u. 650,819
menama, fl. 911
menantabo, u. 923
menedemum, u. 665
melitopolis, u. 941
mengrelia, pr. 801
menteſia, pr. 662
mercat, pr. 860
merdi, p. 848
merdin, u. 791
merope, inſ. 674
meſabatæ, p. 821
meſandre, u. 829
meſopotamia, pr. 789
meſal, u. 721
meſſanites ſ. 774
meſſora, pr. 678
metapontus, p. 942,644
methimna, u. 671
metrit, p 860
metropolis, u. 843
mezendram, pr. 829
mechmas, u. 725
midajum, u. 653
midian, pr. u. 712
midianites, p. 771
milaſa, u 662
milies, p, 664
miletopolis, u. 843
miletus, u. 662
miltus, u. 823
milæ, p. 777
minchian, pr. 869
mindanao, inſ. 903,917
mindus, u. 662
mingia, pr. 821
mini, p. 799
minneth, u. 713
minyas, inſ. 676
mira, inſ. 918
miranda, pr. 907
miſdia, p. 820
miſpah u. 731
mithridatis Regio, 847
mitſpah, u. 713
mitilene, u. 671
mizpah, u. 713
moab, pr. ib.
modin, u. 718
moduttum, u. 924
modura, u. 880
molgomazone, pr. 847
mologeni, p. 851
moltan, u 884
moluccoes, inſ. 918
monograſſum, u. 880
mongul p, 860
mons Chriſti, m. 721
monfort, u. 921
moplia, p. 665
mopſu eſtria, u. 667
moratay, inſ. 920
moriah, m. 711
Del moro, inſ. 919
moſcha, u. 775
moſchici, m. 796.799
moſſineci, p. 747,796
moſul, u. 788
mount-royal, u. ib.
moyown, u. 820
muantay. pr. 911
mudutiæ, p. 924

Mulebet, *u* 824
Mulierum Portus, *u.* 841
Multan, *pr. u.* 883
Muſa, *u.* 775
Muſarna, *u.* 824
Muſicana, *pr.* 881. *u.* 909
Muſckanat, *u.* 776
Muſolipatan, *pr.* 900
Muthana, *u.* 712
Myas, *u.* 658
Mygdonia, *pr.* 624. *fl.* 790
Mylias, *pr.* 663
Myra, *u.* *ib.*
Myrina, *u.* 657
Myrtoum, *mare.* 674
Myſia, *pr.* 654

Lib. 4.

Macadacut, *u.* 1027
Macaos, *pr.* 990
Macaria, *inſ.* 1000
Macermede, *u.* 955
Macatutæ, *p.* 933
Maccurebi, *p.* 950
Machini, *p.* 949
Machometta, *u.* 946
Macrobi, *p.* 978
Macureos, *pr.* 1086
Madagaſcar, *inſ* 1001
Madaninam, *inſ.* 1093
Madawra, *u.* 948
Madera, *inſ* 1006
Madethubada, *m.* 942
Madrigal, *u.* 1062
Madurus, *u.* 948
Magaduza, *u.* 984
Magdalen, *fl.* 1059
Magellanica, *p.* 1074
Ma ggio io i. 1004, *fl.* 1032
Magnice, *m.* 992
Magnus, *u.* 966, *ſ.* 989
Magnana, *p.* 1096
Magoram, *l.* 1000
Mahmora, *u.* 954
Major, *fl* 949
Makanao, *u.* 1090
Malachath, *u.* 971
Malacca, *u.* 1046
Malambo, *pr.* 1059
Malao, *u.* 578, 983
Malcubii, *p.* 950
Maletur, *p.* 1091
Malicones, *p.* 1031
Maltha, *inſ. u.* 963
Malve, *p.* 942, *inſ.* 949
Malutha, *fl.* 949
Mampſarus, *m.* 942
Babel mandel, *inſ.* 1000
Mandaninam, *l.* 1093
Mandinga, *pr.* 973
Mandrus, *m.* 965
Mangiano, *fl.* 982
Manhattes, *fl.* 1028
Manica, *m.* 992
Manicongo, *pr.* 994
Manoa, *u.* 1084
Mantinino, *l.* 1093
Mantu, *u.* 1066
Maquille, *u.* 955
Marabo, *fl.* 979
Maracapan, *u.* 1089
Maracaybo, *l.* *ib.*
Maragnon, *fl.* 1058,
p 1082
Marannon, *fl.* 1068
Maraons, *p.* 1083
Marcanas, *u.* 1097
Maremna, *pr.* 927
Mareotis, *l.* *ib.*
Margarita, *inſ.* 1090
Bom, maria, *c.* 1095
St. maria, *u.* 1021, 1059
inſ. 10 5, 1073, 1082
del Antigua, *inſ* 1093
Antiqua, *u.* 1058
de lo. Lages, *u.* 1042
del, porto, *u.* 1096
Maria, *l.* 927
de Conception, 1031
Marianes, *p.* *ib.*
Marien, *p.* 1096, *fl.* 1097
Three maries. *inſ.* 1041
Marmarica, *p.* 930
St. martha, *inſ.* 1055
p. u. fl. 1059
St. martin, *u.* 1042,
fl. 1077, *inſ.* 1094
Martyrs, *inſ.* 1033
Marwine, *fl.* 1083
Maryland, *pr.* 1028
Cabo marzo, *u.* 1021
Maſæſyli, *p.* 949
Maſalquivir, *u.* 950
Maſcadenna, *inſ.* 1001
Maſitholus, *fl.* 965
Maſſa, *u.* 958. *fl.* 965
Maſſachuſets, *ſ.* 1029
Maſſylia, *pr.* 949
Maſte, *m* 977
Maſucha, *u.* 968
Matana, *pr.* 992, 996
Matarea, *u.* 929
Matarem, *u.* 1083
Matatana, *u.* 1002
St. Matthew, *inſ.* 1004
u. 1032
Matinino, *inſ.* 1093
Mattaken, *u.* 1029
Mattan, *u.* 1075
Matuca, *pr.* 992
Maudlins Sound, *ſ.* 1090
Mauriſii, *p.* 951
Mauri, *p.* *ib.*
Mauritania, *p.* *ib.*
Cæſarienſis, *pr.* 949
Mauritius, *inſ.* 992, 1092
de Naſſaw, *pr.* 1092
Mautan, *inſ.* 1074
Mayos, *p.* 1085
Maxie, *c.* 1097
Mayport, *u.* 1028
Mayre *fretum*, 1093
Mazacila, *u* 931
Mazagon, *u i* 657
Mecha. *inſ.* 1074
Mechacan, *pr.* 1045
Medela, *u.* 956
Medellin, *u.* 1050
Medini, *p.* 949
Medra, *p.* 974
Megallanicum, *mare*, 1014
Meinaci, *p.* 766
Melampodes, *p.* 934
Melemba, *p.* 992
Melinde, *pr u.* 990
Melite, *inſ.* 963
Meli, *p u.* 972
Mellilla, *u.* 1097
Memnonium, *u.* 930
Memphis, *u.* 929
Menan, *inſ.* 1001
Mendicum, *fl.* 927
Menego, *inſ.* 1025
Menelaus, *u.* 931
Meninx, *inſ u.* 963
Menuthias, *inſ.* 1001
Meotty, *inſ.* 1002
Meriangufa, *u.* *ib.*
Merida, *u.* 1051, 1061
Meroe, *inſ. u.* 878
Mervermiglic, *fl.* 1040
Meſtitlan, *u.* 1047
Meſtizoes, *p.* 1077
Meſuchis, *u.* 931
Meſſa, *u.* 952
Meſurata, *u.* 945
Meſyrus, *inſ.* 962
Metagonitæ, *p. c.* 951
Mette, *u.* 983
Mexicaltzingo, *u.* 1047
Mexicana, *p.* 1019, 1046
Nova, *p.* 1043
Mexico, *u.* 1047. *ſ.* 1045
Mezemme, *u.* 957
St. Michael, *u.* 954, 1041,
1046, 1053, 1061, 1066
1078, 1088, *c.* 1037
ſ. 1057
Michias, *u.* 930
Mina, *u.* 973
Mira flores, *u.* 1067
Miſque, *u.* 1069
Miſraim, *p.* 934
Miſteca, *p.* 1050
Mitla, *fl.* 1047
Mnemium, *c.* 978
Moenhemage, *p* 991
Moeris, *l* 927, 929
Mogincats, *fl.* 991
Mohelia, *inſ.* 1002
mollium, *inſ.* 962
mollocath, *fl.* 941, 957
mombaza, *p. u.* 990
mombra, *p.* *ib.*
mona, *inſ.* 1093
a
monetta, *inſ.* 1094
ica
monodactylus, *m.* 977
monoemug, *pr.* 991
monomotapa, *pr.* 992
monpater, *u.* 1039
montagnets, *p.* 1029
montferrat, *inſ.* 1094
Port au monton, *u.* 1024
monzalo, *p.* 990
mophi rupes 930
mopox, *u.* 1059
morata, *u.* 1078
morequito, *u.* 1086
morelhigo, *u.* 1085
morocco, *p.* 952, *u.* 953
morumba, *u.* 997
moſambique, *p. u.* 991
moſchi, *m* 989
moſylon, *u.* 983, *c.* 978
moxino, *port.* 1088
moyemon, *u.* 1085
mucheras, *fl.* 1091
inſ. 1051
muhatos, *p.* 1077
mulucha, *fl.* 942
muluſo, *fl.* 956
mundi, *u.* 978, 983
munia, *u.* 929
munſor, *u.* 954
muſcamunge, *u.* 1029
muſi, *p.* 1061
mundus alter & idem, *p.* 1095
myos Hormos, *u.* 926
myron, *inſ.* 1000
myr ica ſiaca *inſ.* 1000

Lib. 1.

NAgnatæ *p.* 344
346
Namonburger, *l* 163
Nannetes, *p.* 195
Nantes, *u.* *ibid.*
Naples, *u.* 70
Naphthia, *l.* 84
Nar, *fl.* 97
Narbonne, *u.* 216
Narbonnenſis, *pr.* 18
Prima, 217
Secunda 218
Narnia, *u.* 98
Natiſco, *fl.* 120
Navarre, *pr.* 250
Navarreux, *u.* *ib.*
Nauportus, *fl.* 121
Naxos, *u.* 82
Nazareth, *u.* 229
Nazarette, *u.* 209
Naiz, *u.* 227
Neæ, *u* 82
Neara, *fl.* 97
Nebbia, *u.* 140
Negro, *fl.* 98
Nemauſus, *u.* 216
Nemours, *u.* 184
Neomagus, *u.* 308
Neptunum, *u.* 100
Ner, *fl.* 316
Nerac, *u.* 214
Nereum, *c.* 259
Neſtes, *u.* 214
Nevers, *u.* 201
Ne ury orus *fl.* 343
Neuidum, *u.* 157
Neuſtria, *pr.* 193
Newark on Trent, 308
Newburg, *u.* 351
Newcaſtle, *u.* 323
Newhaven, *u.* 193
Newport, *u.* 352
Nicaſtro, *u.* 77
Nicea, *u.* 155, 219
Nicoſia, *u.* 86
Niddeſdale, *pr.* 334
Niebla, *u.* 276
Nigre pellice, *u.* 209
Ninſius, *fl.* 146
Nirton, *l.* 332
Niſmes, *u.* 216
Nivern ois *p.* ium *u.* 202
Nies, *pr.* 162
Nizze, *p. u.* 155
Noceria, *u.* 98
Nogent le Retrou, *u.* 193
Noironde, *u.* 203
Nola, *u.* 70, 138
Nontron, *u.* 208
Norba Cæſaria, *u.* 263
Norfolk, 304
Noricum Mediterraneum,
r. 157
Normandy, *pr.* 191
North Elmham, *u.* 313
Hampton, *p.* 304, *u* 308
Thumberland, 204
Norwich, 306, 313
Nottingham, *p.* 304, *u.*
315
Noto, *p* 84, *u.* 85
Novantes, *p.* 334
Novara, *u.* 143
Nomenpopulonia, *pr.* 211
Noviodunum, *u.* 157, 190
Noyers, *u.* 227
Nigon, *u.* 190
Nuceria, *u.* 71, 74
Numantia, *u.* 270
Nun, *u.* 157
Nurſia, *p. u.* 98
Newenburg, *u.* 194

Lib. 2.

Nabus, *fl.* 448
Nadtavla, *pr.* 514
Naerden, *u.* 384
Naf, Naſny, *fl.* 515
Naharvali, *p.* 536
Naithones, *p.* 457
Naniſio, *inſ.* 619
Namur, *p.* 371
Nancey, *u.* 423
Napoli, *ſ.* 582, *u.* 585
Naracuſtoma, *fl.* 559
Nar ento ſo *fl.* 551, 553
Narew, *u.* 532
Nariſci, *p.* 449
Narſchow, *u.* 532
Narve, *u.* 506, 515
Naſco, *u.* 490
Naſſaw, *pr. u.* 440
Natangia, *pr.* 533
Naumberg, *u.* 463
Naupactus, *u.* 595
Nauplia, *u.* 585
Nauportus, *u.* 438
Naxos, *inſ.* 617
Neapolis, *u.* 585
Neauf Chatteau, *u.* 424
Neleus, *fl.* 615
Neccar, *fl.* 404, 446
Neglinna, *fl.* 514
Negropont, *inſ. u.* 615
Neimunſter, *u.* 486
Nemavia, *u.* 428
Nemea, *u.* 585
Nemetes, *p.* 418, 422
Neoburg, *m.* 435
Neocaſtron, *u.* 613
Neomagus, *u.* 418
Neritos, *u.* 598
Nertereates, *p.* 464
Nervii, *p.* 363, 370
Neſſum, *u.* 566
Neſſus, *fl.* 608
Netherlands, *p.* 359
Newbourg, *u.* 490, 534
Newburg, *u.* 431, 448, 454
New enſol ſol *u.* 543
Newful, *l. u.* 435
Newkirk, *u.* 422, 485
Newmarkt, *u.* 437, 449
Newnburg, *u.* 447
Newport, *u.* 336
Newſtat, *u.* 417, 435
Nibourch, *u.* 490
Niburg, *u.* 491
Nicalidi, *u.* 604
Niclasberg, *u.* 454
St. Nicolas, *u.* 423, 519
ſ. 518
Nicopen, *u.* 489, 490, 504
Nicopolis, *u.* 568, 598, 609
Nicſia, *inſ.* 617
Nid, *fl.* 536
Nider, *fl.* 494
Nidroſia, *u.* 495
Niemen, *fl.* 525
Niepe, *u.* 362
Nieper, *fl.* 513
Nieſſe, *u, fl.* 455
Nieſter, *fl.* 525
Nigebol, *u.* 568
Niger, *fl.* 608
Nimmegent, *u.* 388
Nirſi, *fl.* 409
Niſſa, *fl.* 456, *u.* 566
Niſus, *fl.* 577
Nitri, *u.* 543
Nivello, *u.* 379
Niveſia, *u.* 414
Nogat, *fl.* 532
Nona, *u.* 554
Nonven, *u.* 362
Norborch, *u.* 491
Norden, *u.* 478
Nordenburg, *u.* 516, 533
Nordluidi, *p.* 494
Noreia, *u.* 437

Noren-

Noren, *u.* 560
Noriacia, *p.* 438,504
Noricum mediterraneum, *p.* 431
Ripenſe, *p.* 435
Nori cum/mbega *u.* 449
Norlingen, *u.* 419
Normault, *u.* 362, 369
Norſmunſter, *u.* 412
Northern Sea, 495
Northgoia, *p.* 448
North-huiſen, *u.* 465
North-Schawben, *pr.* 419
Norway, *K.* 494
Novarino, *u.* 580
Novebard, *u.* 565
Novegrad, *u.* 566
Novelium, *u.* 414
Novigrod, *u.* 551
Noviomagus, *u.* 388
Novog or/ro d, *p. u.* 515,518
Nuremberg, *u.* 445,449
Nuys, *u.* 414
Nyſtat, *u.* 490

Lib. 3.

Naar, *fl.* 721
Nabarcha, *u.* 829
Nabartha, *u.* 923
Nabathæa, *pr.* 769
Nagadiba, *u.* 913
Nagaian, *p.* 842
Nagara, *u.* 880,883
Nagarita, *u.* 924
Nagiri, *u.* *ibid.*
Nagracol, *p. u.* 886
Aram Naharaim, *p.* 684
Naim, *u.* 722
Naioth, *u.* 725
Namechia, *u.* 805
Nanchang, *u.* 869
Nanigeris, *I.* 923, *p.* 924
Nanquin, *u.* 868
Napæi, *p.* 843
Naphthæa *fl.* 711
Naphthali, *p.* 719,720
Navagonas, *fl.* 879
Narſinga, *p.* 899, *u* 900
Naſ vana/ſivan *u.* 816
Nathaliel, *u.* 712
Natolia *p.* 641
Natoroth *u.* 715
Nava Claudiopolis, *u.* 647
Naugrocot, *m.* 796
Naulibis, *u.* 816
Nawatacos, *p.* 887
Naymanes *p.* 860
Nazareth, *u.* 721
Nazianzum, *u.* 649
Neapolis, *u.* 802
Nebo, *m.* 711,715
Negapatan, *u.* 900
Negara, *u.* 775
Negariot, *u.* 902
Neicheia, *u.* 643
Nelaxa, *u.* 717
Neo-Cæſarea, *u.* 649
Neogilla, *ſ.* 774
Neva *u* 918
Neriand, *u.* 888
Neronia, *u.* 7 0
Nerra, *inſ.* 918
Nerper, *fl.* 841
Neſi, *u* 662
Netherby *u.* 888
Nethinims, *p.* 731
Nibon, *u.* 919
Nicæa, *u.* 643
Nicator, *m.* 788

Niceria, *inſ.* 673
Niceſorius, *fl.* 800
Nicomedia, *p.* 643
Nicopolis *u.* 650,668,670
725
Nicoſia, *pr. u.* 679
Nieper, *fl.* 841
Nigama, *u.* 880
Nigra, *u.* 830
Nihulhan, *pr.* 858
Nilus, *u.* 783
Ninguiven, *u.* 829
Nimphæa, *inſ.* 674
Ninive, *u.* 788
Niphates, *m.* 796,799
Niſa, *u.* 724
Niſæi, *p.* 826
Niſibis, *u.* 790,886
Niſſa, *u.* 830
Nitra, *u.* 880.
Nivehe, *pr.* 858
Nixaria, *u.* 645
Nob, *u.* 732
Noiacenſes, *p.* 847
Nomades, *p.* 848
Nora, *u.* 880
Noroſus, *m.* 849
Noſygue, *u.* 880
Notium, *c.* 867
Nuraquimere, *u.* 887
Nymphas, *u* 870
Nyſa, *u* 880
Nyſea, *u.* 830
Nyſſa, *u* 649

Lib. 4.

Nabæ, *p.* 966
Nabathræ, *p.* 979
Nacapatan, *u.* 1045
Nadagara, *u.* 946
Nanſamund, *fl.* 1029
Nanſic, *fl.* 1027
Napata, *u.* 978
Napuluca, *u.* 1040
Naſabath, *fl.* 942
Naſſovius, *fl.* 1029
Nata, *u.* 1057
Natiſcores, *inſ.* 1024
Natividad, *u.* 1040,1046
Navatlocoes, *p.* 1047
Navatræ, *p.* 949
Nebicerines *p.* 1025
Nictiberes, *p.* 951
Ned Roma, *u.* 950
Needles, *c.* 994
Nigera, *u.* 966
Los Negrillos, *inſ.* 1051
Negro's, *p.* 973
Rio de Neives. *fl.* 1031
Neveri, *fl* 1088
Newfoundland, *pr.* 1021
Newport, *u.* 1025
Nexapa. *u* 1050
Neyba, *fl.* 1096
Neyva-rioya, *u.* 1078
Nicaragua, *fl.* 1054
Nicæus, *u.* 948
Nicayagua, *fl.* 1056
Nicoia, *u.* 1054
St. Nicolas, *inſ* 1004,1093
c. 1095
Nicopolis, *u* 919
Nievados, *m* 1059
Nieves *fl.* 1031, *inſ.* 1094
Niſlis, *fl.* 951
Niger *fl.* 966,971
Nigira, *u.* 971
Nigitimi, *p.* 949
Nigritæ, *p.* 966, 970
Nigritis, *pr. l.* 966
Nigro, *fl.* 1077
Nigua, *fl.* 1096

Nilopolis, *u.* 919
Nilus, *fl* 921, 926,989
Nivaria, *inſ.* 1005
nizao, *fl.* 1096
nochor, *fl.* 957
noius, *fl.* 965
nomades, *p.* 948
nombre de Dios, *u.* 1042
1057
de Jeſus, *u.* 1076
nordt rivier, 1028,1036
noronha, *inſ.* 1081
norumbegue, *fl.* 1023
pr. u. 1024
noticornu, *c.* 978
novum oppidum, *u.* 950
nubæ palus, *l.* 974
nubia, *l.* 966, *pr.* 974
nubiba, *fl.* 1096
nichaida, *u.* 954
nueſtra ſennora, *p.* 1037
1074, *l u.* 1089
numidia, *p.* 948,966
nuſconcus *u.* 1027
nuts, *inſ.* 1018

O.

Lib. I.

OBches, *u.* 203
Oca, *m.* 270
Ocaſa, *fl.* 332
Ocaſo, *c.* 240
Occimianum, *u.* 150
Ocetis, *inſ.* 349
Ocriculum, *u.* 98
Octodurus, *u.* 163
Octopitæ, *p.* 323
Odechere, *caſt.* 276
Odier, *fl.* 260
Oenotria, *pr.* 78
Oiarco, *c.* 240
Oiſe, *fl.* 183
Olava, *pr.* 250
Olbia *u.* 219
Olbion, *u.* 89
Oleron, *u.* 211,230
inſ. 239
Oletana, *u.* 270
Olite, *u.* 251
Olivenza, *u.* 275
Ollius, *fl.* 143
Oltadini, *p.* 308
Oliſcippo, *u.* 275
Onhar, *fl.* 281
Ooſtenrich, *pr.* 153
Ophalie, *p.* 343
Ophiuſa, *inſ.* 284
Orbe, *fl.* 163,216
Orbitello, *u.* 133
Orc ades/ney *inſ.* 349
Ordovices, *p.* 323
Orea, *u.* 334
Orenge, *p.* 219
Oreſtagne, *u.* 90
Oretanie, *p.* 271
Orgeler, *u.* 229
Orgueil, *c.* 231
Orgon, *u.* 187
Oria, *fl.* 255
Orivela, *u.* 281
Orius, *u.* 259
Orleanoyſe, *p.* 200
Orleans *u.* *ibid*
Orne, *fl.* 192
Oroſpeda, *m.* 247, 265
Ortegal, *c.* 259
Orches *u.* 281
Ortona, *u.* 72
Ortygia, *inſ.* 85
Orvietto, *u.* 99,130

Oſa, *fl.* 130
Oſaniano, *u.* 150
Oſea, *u.* 286
Offiſmi. *p.* 195
Oſſonaba, *u.* 276
Oſſuna, *u.* 261
Oſſory, *u.* 343
Oſtia, *u.* 100
Terra d' Otranto, *pr.* 75
Ottadini, *p.* 308
Ottilana, *pr.* 216
Oviedo, *pr. u.* 257
D' Ourlans, *u.* 190
Ouſe, *fl.* 306, 316
Oxford, *u.* 304, 306
Oxilii, *p.* 137
Oyſe, *fl.* 192

Lib. 2.

Oby, *fl.* 516
Obdo r/z a *pr.* *ibid*
Oberhuſen, *c.* 432
Oberſax, *pr.* 462
Obertweſel, *u.* 416
Obotriti, *p.* 461
Occa, *fl.* 513
Occazoma, *u.* 563
Ochenberg, *m.* 490
L' Ochrida, *u.* 569
Ock, *fl* 517
Ocyne, *fl.* 513
Odenberg, *m.* 454
Oden Chaſteau, *u.* 424
Odenſee, *u.* 490
Odera, *fl.* 404, 454
Odenburg, *u.* 457
Odinpen, *pr.* 527
Odnuſa, *inſ.* 580
Oeantia, *u.* 595
Oebalia, *pr.* 581
Oeland, *inſ.* 506
Oenipons, *u.* 439
Oeno n/p e, *inſ.* 616
Oenus, *fl.* 432
Oeſcus, *u.* 569
Oeſel, *inſ. u.* 527
Oeta, *m.* 591, 602
Offenbach, *u.* 428
Okonitszkilies, *u.* 513
Oland, *inſ.* 489
Oldenburch, *p. u.* 478
Oldendorp, *u.* 471
Oldenſel, *u.* 388
Oldeſlo, *u.* 485
Oldhaven, *u.* 390
Olents, *u.* 455
Olenus, *u.* 578,596
Oleza, *fl.* 437
Olibria, *u.* 609
Olinthus, *u.* *ibid*
Olmunts, *u.* 454
Olnits, *u.* 494
Olyaros, *inſ.* 618
Olympia, *u.* 579
Olympus, *m.* 601
St. Omar, *u.* 367
Omback, *fl.* 421
Ommelandts, *pr.* 390
Onacter, *fl.* 471
Onaldsbach, *pr u.* 444
Oncheſimus, *u.* 598
Ooſtphali, *p.* 475
Ooſt Zee, 489
Openheim, *u.* 417
Ophiuſſa, *inſ.* 617
Oppolen, *u.* 455
Opuntii, *p.* 595
Opus, *u.* *ibid*
Oratas, *fl.* 560
Orbay, *pr.* 561

Orbelus, *m,* 608
Orchemus, *u.* 598
Orchies, *u.* 366
Orchomenon, *u.* 592
Oreſtia, *u.* 581
Orozakow, *u.* 530
Orſey, *u.* 490
Ortygia, *inſ.* 617
Orumne, *c.* 489
Oſenbridge, *u.* 477
Oſeriates, *p.* 544
Oſero, *inſ.* 555
Oſilia, *inſ.* 527
Oſnaburg, *u.* 476
Oſſa, *fl.* 532. *m.* 601
Oſſendorp, *u.* 476
Oſtend, *u.* 366
Oſtenreick, *pr.* 363,435
Oſterberg, *u.* 456
Oſtergoe, *pr.* 386
Oſterholme, *u.* 491
Oſterhour, *pr.* 379
Oſterwick, *pr.* 378
Oſtholm, *inſ.* 488
Oſtreſow, *u.* 535
Oſtrich, *p.* 435
Oſtrinand, *p.* 370
Oſtrowitz, *u.* 552
Oſwitz, *pr.* 455
Oſyli, *p.* 520
Oſterenberg, *u.* 477
Othingii, *p.* 506
Oth enſchee,/oni, *u.* 490
Othrys, *m.* 601
Ottelberg, *u.* 533
Otuver, *pr.* 519
Oudenard, *u.* 366
Oudwater, *u.* 383
Ovelgard *u.* 478
Overyſſel, *pr.* 388
Ovilabis, *u.* 437
Ourbo, *u.* 504
Oxenford, *u.* 417
Oxholme, *inſ.* 489
Oyſtinger, *pr.* 479
Ozbelus, *m.* 559
Ozebo, *u.* 504
Ozera, *l.* 516
Ozolæ, *p.* 595
Ozwitz, *pr.* 455

Lib. 3

Ob, *fl.* 845
Obares, *p.* 826
Oboth, *u.* 769
Ooroatis, *u.* 8.0
Oceanus, *u.* 766
Ocelis, *u.* *ib.*
Ocerra, *u.* 851
Ochlan, *p.* 864
Ochinoſamanus, *u.* 916
Ochus, *fl.* 818, *u.* 831
Oczaco w/via, *u.* 843
Odalla, *u.* 730
Odia, *u.* 911
Oebalia, *pr.* 663
Oechardes, *fl.* 859
Oenoanda, *u.* 663
Oenuntia, *u.* 846
Olam, *pr.* 864
Olandæ, *p.* 848
Olbanaſſa, *u.* 664
Olbia, *u.* 665
Olbi ah/opolis, *u.* 843
Olenus, *u.* 647
Olimpeni, *p.* 655
Olivet, *m.* 711
Olſanenſes, *p.* 843
Olympus, *m.* 655, 678

Omoſi

Omoal, *u.* 829
Ono, *u.* 732
Onor, *u.* 890
Ophir, *p.* 909
Ophiuſſa, *inſ.* 675
Oran, *u.* 776
Orbitæ, *p.* 824
Orbitana, *u.* 816
Orcheni, *p.* 769
Orebatis, *u.* 820
Orel, *m.* 770
Organa, *inſ.* 777
Orgomanes, *u.* 829
Orientalis, *pr.* 640
Oriſſa, *u.* 901
Ori ſtan xa *pr.* *ibid*
Ormus, *inſ.* 822
Orodii, *m.* 879
Oromandus, *u.* 650
Orontes, *fl.* 687, 696, *m.* 814
Oroſana, 855
Orrachan, *pr.* 912
Orthoſia, *u.* 691
Orthura, *u.* 880
Ortoſpana, *u.* 821
Orymagdus, *fl.* 666
Oſrhoene, *pr.* 790
Oſſacay, *u.* 916
Oſtracine, *u.* 737
Ottomangruch, *fl.* 642
Ottorocorus, *m. u.* 855
Oxiana *u. l.* 849
Oxus, *fl.* 818, 825
Oxydrace, *pr.* 849, *u.* 820
Oxene, *u.* 880

Lib. 4.

Oaſis, *pr.* 929
Ocalis, *u.* 1032
Ocanna, *u.* 1059
Ocatagnini, *p.* 1025
Oceanica, *p.* 932
Odranguli, *p.* 966
Ogdomus, *m.* 933
Ogdoni, *p.* 832
Ogygia, *p.* 934
Des Oiſeauxs, *inſ.* 1025
Olanco, *p.* 1054
Olinda, *u.* 1081
Olympia, *p.* 932
Ombrio *inſ.* 1004
St. Omers, *u.* 1080
Ommirabili, *fl.* 951, 953
On, *u.* 928
Ongol, *m.* 1073
Ontivoros, 1077
Ooanoke, *u.* 1019
Ophiodus, *fl.* 965
Ophir, *pr.* 991
Opone, *u.* 978, 984
Ora anteroſa, *pr.* 471
Oran, *u.* 450
Orange, *u.* 1028
Orchilla, *inſ.* 1091
Orbis Arcticus, 1089
Ordalia, *fl.* 947
Orellana, *fl.* 1056
Orenoque, *fl.* 1056, *pr* 1085
Oriſtin, *u* 1097
Orneon, *inſ.* 1000
St. Ivan del Oro, *u.* 1068
Laques del Oro, *c.* 1037
Sevilla del Oro, *u.* 1037
Oropeſa, *u.* 1069
Ortygia, *p.* 932
Oſachila, *u.* 1032
Oſiria, *p.* 934
Oſorno, *u.* 1074
Oſtium Saboticum, *u* 982

Ottavallu, *u.* 1066
Ottomies, *p.* 1047
Otziutan *u.* 1052
Ozama, *fl.* 1096

P.

Lib. 1.

PAchinus, *c.* 82
Padua, *u.* 118
Padus, *fl.* 118, 143, 153
Pæni, *m.* 152
Palamos, *u.* 282
Palentia, *u.* 284
Palenza, *u.* 257
Palermo, *u.* 85
Palia, *fl.* 130
Palicoro, *l.* 84
Paliſſe, *u.* 203
Palantium, *u.* 257
Palma, *u.* 121, 284
Palmarde, *inſ.* 68
Pannieres, *u.* 212
Pampelun, *u.* 251
Panaro, *fl.* 91
Panditaria, *inſ.* 78
Panormus, *u.* 85
Pap-caſtle, *u.* 208
Papia, *u.* 143
Parenze, *u.* 121
Paris, *u.* 184
Pariſii, *p.* 183
Parma, *u.* 184
Parnieres, *u.* 212
Parthenope, *u.* 70
Partheis, *p.* 186
Paſſora, *c.* 82
Patrimonium Petri, *p.* 99
Pau, *u.* 211
Pavia, *u.* 143
St. Paul, de Vences, *u.* 220
Pax Julia, *u.* 275
Peak, *m.* 295
Pedeleuca, *l.* 98
Peligni, *p.* 72
Pelorus, *c*, 82
Pembroke, *pr.* 314
Pendennis, *c*, 312
Penkridge, *u.* 208
Penmarch, *c.* 195
Pennocrium, *u.* 308
Perch, *pr.* 193
Petiglia, *u.* 99
Perigott, *pr.* 208
Periguex, *u.* *ibid*
Peronne, *u.* 189
Perpi gnian nianum, *u.* 283
Pert, *u.* 186
Pertenſis, *agat*, *ibid*
Perth, *u.* 333, 334
Peru glia lia *u.* 99
Peſcara, *fl.* 69, 72
Peſici, *p.* 257
Peſt, *u.* 78
Peſara, *u.* 95
Peravium, *u.* 128
Peterburgh, *u.* 315
St. Peters Port, *u.* 231
Petilia, *u.* 76
Petro c g orii, *p.* 208
Petuaria, *u.* 308
Petula, *u.* 146
Peucetia, *pr.* 75
Peuplement, *u.* 251
Phænicuſſæ, *inſ.* 87
Phæniſſa, *u.* 285
Phaleria, *u.* 130
Phintaris *inſ.* 9
Phocenſes, *p.* 216

Philips Town, *u.* 343
Philernus, *fl.* 73
Picardy, *pr.* 188
Picentini, *p.* 71
Pico. *inſ.* 277
Picentes, *p.* 96
Pictavia, *p.* 206
Picti, *p.* 334
Pictones, *p.* 206
Piod de Port, *u.* 251
Piemont, *pr.* 155
Pienza, *u.* 133
Piera St. *u.* 132
Pierrefort, *u.* 186
Pietas Julia, *u.* 121
Pignarolle, *u.* 156
Des Pinas, *c.* 257
Pintia, *u.* 270
Piombino, *u.* 133
Piquigni, *u.* 190
Pira Sancta, *u.* 132
Piſa, *p u* *ibid*
Piſaurum, *u.* 95
Piſea, *fl.* 91, 99
Piſatello, *fl* 91
Piſtoia, *u.* 131
Piſuarga, *ſ.* 270
Pity odes uſx *inſ.* 284
Pizoria, *u.* 131
Placentia, *u.* 148
Placiuz, *u.* 255
Planaſia, *inſ.* 134
Plinlimon, *m.* 324
Pli n, *u.* 121
Plu ra rs *u.* 171
Plumbino, *u.* 131
Po, *fl* 91, 118, 153
Podia, *u.* 216
Poictiers, *u.* 206
Poictou, *pr.* *ibid*
Poliſſy, *u.* 184
St. Pol de Leon, *u.* 195
Pola, *u.* 12
poleſine *pr.* 94
Polignano, *u.* 75
Poligni, *u.* 229
Polycaſtro, *r.* 78
Pomegues, *inſ.* 230
Pomonia, *inſ.* 349
Pompeii, *u.* 70
Pompeiopolis, *u.* 251
Pont. del *Arch*, *u.* 193
Podtana, *u.* 343
Pontevedre, *u.* 259
Pontheiu, *pr.* 189
pontigni, *u.* 202
Pontia, *inſ.* 78
Pontius Pilat, *m.* 165
Pontoyſe, *u.* 192
Pontremuli, *u.* 138
Ponſture, *p.* 150
Populonia, *p.* 132
St. Porcin, *u.* 203
Portalegre, *u* 275
Port Hercule, *u.* 133
  Telamon, *u.* *ibid*
Porto, *u.* 99, 275
  Barrato, *u.* 132
  Ferraria, *u.* 133
  Cruate, *u.* 120
  Longone, *u.* 133
  Real, *u.* 262
  Urecchio, 140
Portugallia, *R.* 274
Portugalerte, *u.* 255
Portus Delphinus, *u.* 138
  Iccius, *u.* 188
  Romatinus, *u.* 120
  Syracuſanus, *u.* 140
Poſſidonia. *u.* 78
Potentia *fl.* 97
Povegia, *u.* 123

Poville, *pr.* 68
Piana, *pr.* 74
Powiſland, *pr.* 325
Præcatini, *p.* 72
Præneſto, *u.* 100
Piato, *u.* 131
Praye, *u.* 277
Prettegowesberg, *m.* 131
Principate, *pr.* 71
Privernum, *u.* 101
Prochita, *inſ.* 78
Provence, *pr.* 218
Province, *u.* 187
Puglia, *p.* 72
monte Pulſiano, *u.* 131
Punta del gada, *u.* 270
Puteolis, *u.* 70
Pyrænei, *m.* 240
S. Patricks Purgatory *l* 342

Lib. 2.

Pactia, *inſ.* 617
Paderborn, *u.* 476
Pæones, *p.* 544
Pægæi, *u.* 591
Pagarina, *p.* 529
Pagaſa, *u.* 602
Pagiopoli, *u.* 627
Pagiritæ, *p.* 510
Pago, *inſ u.* 555
Palatinatus inferior *pr.* 417
  Rheni, *pr.* *ibid*
  Superiour, *pr.* 448
Pallene, *u.* 604
Pamportum, *u.* 438
Pangæus, *m.* 608
Paniaſus, *fl.* 599
Pannodacia, *pr.* 559
Pannonia, *pr.* 441, 544
Panormus, *u.* 588, 598 604, 622
Paraſtlaba, *u.* 569
Paraxia, *pr.* 604
Parde, *fl.* 463
Par ia os *inſ.* 617
Parnaſſus, *m.* 592
Parocæcopolis, *u.* 603
Paſſaria, *fl.* 532
Paſſaw, *u.* 404, *u.* 432
Paſſewang, *u.* 422
Paravia, *u.* 432
Patræ, *u.* 578
Patras, *ſ.* 577
St Paul, *p. u.* 367
Pechora, *pr. fl. u.* 516
peeland, *p.* 378
Pegæ, *u.* 591
Pegaſa, *u.* 602
Pegniani, curia, *u.* 464
peiruſtæ, *p.* 556
pelaſgia, *pr.* 581, *ſ.* 602
pelli, *u.* 603
pellene, *u.* 578
pelion, *m.* 601
pelodes, *u* 598
peloponneſus, *pr.* 577
pence, *fl.* 559
peneus, *fl* 577
peparinthus, *u.* 615
pera, *u.* 609
perinthus. *u.* *ib*
permia, *pr. u.* 517
perne, *u.* 367
pernow, *u.* 516
perſant, *fl.* 459
perſtalaw, *u.* 569
perſtlaba, *u.* 568
peruli, *p.* 560
peſt, *u.* 544
petali a ne *pr.* 604

peta via w *u.* 437
petra alba *u.* 600
petrella, *u.* *ibid*
petrocow, *u.* 535
petrowya, *u.* 551
petzora, *pr. fl. u.* 516
peuce, *fl.* 569
pezechium, *u.* *ibid*
pfaffenhoſen, *u.* 442
pfirt, *u. pr.* 422
pfortheim, *u.* 447
pfriend, *u.* 449
pfulſinium, *u.* 555
phæacia, *inſ.* 627
phæcacia, *inſ.* 619
phæ, *u.* 598
pharſalis, *u.* 602
pharus, *inſ.* 555
phavonæ, *p.* 506
pheva, *u.* 578, 602
phialia, *u.* 581
philac, *u.* 604
phile, *u.* 588
philippe Ville, *u*, 370
philippi, *u* 602, 603
philippolis, *u.* 609
philipsberg, *u.* 418
philocandros, *inſ.* 419
phiniotis, *pr.* 505
phini, *p.* 533
phinopolis, *u*, 609
phiræſi, *p.* 506
phlegta, *pr.* 604
phocis, *pr.* 592
phocuſa, *inſ.* 619
phrungudiones, *p.* 533
phthyotis, *pr.* 602
phundufii, *p.* 489
phylace, *u.* 604
physco, *u.* *ibid*
piarenzii. *p.* 569
pycardy Inferior, *pr.* 369
picenſii, *p.* 567
pieria, *pr.* 603
pierſchille, *inſ. u.* 384
pietersborn, *u.* 491
pigiada, *u.* 585
pyguritium, *u.* 553
pillen, *u.* 451
pimple, *m*, 603
pindus, *m*, 597
pinnegue, *u.* 519
pippenberg, *u.* 486
piræus, *u.* 588
pirethi, *u.* 567
piſa, *u.* 580
pizina, *fl. inſ.* 569
platea, *u.* 591
platze, *l.* 542
plenfelt, *u.* 444
plendoſtoma, *fl.* 559
pleurona, *pr. u.* 596
pliskow, *u.* 515
pliſſes, *fl.* 463
plocksko, *pr. u.* 535
podlaſſia, *pr.* 532
podolia, *pr.* 530
pogonock, *u.* 438
polada, *u.* 563
poland, *p.* 524, 535
polino, *inſ.* 618
pollen, *u.* 440
poln, *fl.* 510
polotskie *pr*, 529
poltovoskie, *u.* 532
polyegros, *inſ.* 618
polyſtillo, *u.* 608
pomerania, *pr.* 459
pomerella, *pr.* 533
pomeſan, *u.* 533
pomorzi, *p.* 459
pone, *fl* *ibid*
ponsko, *u.* 519

pons:

Pons, Sarvix, *u.* 415
Pondsberg, *u.* 362
Pont a moſon, *u.* 413
Pontico, *inſ.* 615
Ponticum, *mare,* 612
Pontus, *pr.* 569
Populear, *fl* 622
Porphyris, *inſ.* 619
Poſna, *u.* 553
Poſonium, *u.* 543
Potidæa, *u.* 604, 608
Potuvolo, *u.* 517
Pozo via, w *u.* 515
Prague, *u.* 451
Prailaba, *u.* 564
Pregel *fl.* 525, 532
Premiſten, *u.* 531
Presburg, *u.* 543
Prevalitana, *pr.* 600
Preveſa, *u.* 598
Prignitz, *pr. u.* 455
Priſden, *u* 516
Proconneſus, *inſ.* 613
Propont1cum, *mare* ibid
Propontis, *fretum,* ibid
Propo of Flanders, *pr.* 366
Pruck, *u.* 437
Pruſſia, *pr.* 532
Pruth, *fl.* 563
Pſalts, *caſt.* 418
Pſaffenhoſen, *u.* 442
Pſiloriti, *m.* 622
Pſirt, .*u* 422
Pskow, *pr.* 515
Pſophis, *u.* 581
Pſullendorf, *u.* 438
Puente *l.* 506
Puellach, *u.* 446
Puſtozrea, *u.* 516
Pydna, *u.* 603
Pylos, *u.* 580
Pyrene, *fons* 586
Pyraa, *pr.* 601
Pyrth æum, ion *u.* 602
Pyth o *u.* 593

Lib. 3.

Pacatiana, *pr.* 654
Pacom, *u.* 913
Pactolus, *fl.* 659
Padan Aram, *pr.* 684
Pæeſſa, *inſ.* 675
Pagnia, *inſ.* 864, *u* 868
Palæmonium, *u.* 646
Palæpharphos, *u.* 679
Paleſcepſis, *u.* 656
Paleſtina ſecunda, *pr,* 726
Paleſtine, *pr.* 707, 880
Palibothra, *u.* 884
Palmoſa *inſ.* 674
Palmyra, *u.* 699
Palmyrene, *pr* ibid
Palohan, *inſ.* 917
Palo- Zambilan, *u.* 910
Palura, *u.* 880
Pamphilia, *pr.* 881
Pan, *u.* 737
Panarucan, *u.* 911
Panda, *u.* 849
Pandarana, *u.* 891
Pandioni, *p.* 881
Paneas, *pr. u.* 710
Panticapeum, *u.* 843
Paph ia, os *inſ.* 677, *u.* 679
Paphlagonia, *pr.* 646
Paracanticene, *pr.* 818
Paradiſus. *pr.* 783
Paralais, *u.* 664
Parenti, *p.* 826
Parapamiſus, *m.* 796
Paraponiſus, *pr.* 825
Paras, *pr.* 816
Paraticene, *p.* 820
Paravi, *p.* 900
Parchoatras, *m.* 828
Parſar, *fl.* 696
Pargyetæ, *p.* 825
Pari ardi, edri *m.* 296
Parium, *u.* 656
Parni, *p.* 830
Paro, *u.* 920
Paroetes, *m.* 825
Parſiana, *u.* 826
Parſiræ, *p.* 824
Parſis, *u.* ibid
Partangale, *u.* 841
Parthemius, *fl.* 642
Parthia, *pr.* 827
Parthiene, *pr.* 828
Paſacarta, *u.* ibid
Paſa igada, grada *u.* 820
Paſagardæ, *p.* 822
Paſarraca, *u* 820
Paliaſcus, *fl.* 842
Paſini valium, *fl.* 819
Paſi-tygris, *fl.* ibid
Paſſaman, *u.* 923
Paſſarva, *u.* 921
Patanaw, *pr u.* 902
Patangale, *u.* 891
Parara *u.* 663
Pathane, *pr.* 910
Patmos, *inſ.* 674
Patras, *u.* 663
Patura, *u.* 910
Pavados, *u.* 917
Pedir, *u.* 923
Pegia, *pr.* 650
Pegu, *pr. fl. u.* 912
Peitara, *fl.* 855
Pelaſgia, *inſ.* 671
Pelethi, *u.* 725
Pella, *u.* 717
Pendalium, *c.* 677
Penegord, *u.* 900
Pengab, *pr.* 883
Pentalia, *pr.* 678
Pentapolis, *pr* 711, *u.* 906
Penuel, *u.* 715
Peot, *m* 715
Pequeno Porto, *u.* 903
Pequin, *u.* 868
Peran, *fl.* 799
Perea, *pr.* 712
Pergamus, *u.* 651, 655
Perge, *u.* 665
Periano, *u.* 888
Petiar d g es, *m.* 299
Perigrimorum, *caſt,* 722
Perizits, *p.* 737
Peripatan, *u.* 891
Perſepolis, *u.* 820
Perſia, *p.* 816
Perſicus, *ſ* 769, 777, 822
Perſidis Pilæ, *m.* 820
Perſis *pr.* 819
Peſinus, *u.* 653
Petra, *u.* 770
Petræorum civitas, 646
Petyndra, 890
Pezuari, *p.* 881
Phabarena, *u.* 947
Phænica, *u.* 791
Phænicia, *pr.* 688
  Lybanenſis, *pr.* 700
  maritima, *pr.* ibid
Syro Phænicia, *pr.* ibid
Phaligg a æ *u.* 791
Phanagotia, *u.* 846
Phara, *u.* 770
Pharamica, *u.* 737
Pharan, *deſ.* 769
Pharas, *pr.* 816, 819
Pharazana, *u.* 829
Pharga, *u.* 791
Pharnacia, *u.* 645
Pharphar, *fl.* 700
Pharſiſtan, *pr.* 819
Pharſelis, *u.* 663
Phaſis, *fl. u.* 802 923
Phaſſum, *u.* 802
Phiara, *u.* 649
Philadelphia, *u.* 660, 701
Caſarea Philippi, *u.* 720
Philippinæ *inſ.* 917
Phillis, *fl.* 642, 644
Phillium, *u.* 644
Philomenia, *pr.* 647
Philiſtins, *p.* 707, 727
Phorea, *u.* 657
Phoclis, *u.* 825
Phradag, *u.* 824
Phrigia major, *pr.* 653
Minor, *pr.* 651
Phryx, *fl.* ibid
Phunton, *u.* 769
Phylittæ, *p.* 881
Pialæ, *p.* 856
Pieria, *m.* 687, *pr.* 698
St. Piano, *c.* 877
Pigrine, *u.* 672
Pilæ, *c.* 677
  Ciliciæ, *m.* 640, 667
  perſidis, *m.* 420
  ſarmatiæ, *m.* 845
pilgrims, *caſt.* 722
pinara, *u* 698
parathon, *u.* 725
piretæ, *p.* 880
piſgah, *m.* 711, 715
piſidia, *pr.* 664
piſon, *fl.* 783, 818
piſo-tygris, *fl.* 784 819
pitante, *u. fl.* 657
pityndra, *u.* 880
pityuſa, *u.* 656
plutaneſſus, *u.* 664
podalia, *u.* 663
poduca, *u.* 880
polandas, *fl.* 906
polemonium, *pr.* 645
poleroone, *inſ.* 919
polindæ, *p.* 881
polybii, *inſ.* 776
polymbothy, *u.* 884
polyſanga. *fl.* 854, 867
polytimetas, *pr.* 849
pompeyopolis, *u.* 647, 667
842
pontus, *u.* 640
  Cappadocius, *pr.* 645
  Gallaticus, *pr.* 644
pelomoniacus, *pr.* 645
poolaway, *inſ.* 919
portæ Caſpiæ, *m.* 819
  Caucaſiæ, 640, 805
  Ferreæ *caſt,* 805
porto Grande, *u.* 903
  pequeno, *u.* ibid
portoſpania, *u.* 821
poſſidium, *inſ* 676
pracel, *inſ.* 903
præpemiſſus, *u.* 656
praſiii, *p.* 884
precopia, *u.* 842
prepeti, *u.* 900
priamon *u.* 923
priapis, *u.* 924
priene, *u.* 658
prion, *fl.* 774
prionotus, *m.* ib.
procurum, *u.* 923
prom, *p.* 907
propontis, 64
propthaſia, *u.* 819
proſeliminitæ, *p.* 647
protoſeline, *u.* 656
pruſa, *u.* 643
pſathis, *fl.* 845
pſellii, *p.* 846
pſeudoſtomum, *fl.* 879
pſitara, *fl.* 855
pterium, *u.* 649
ptolemais *u.* 689
punta malota, *c.* 677
pyramus, *fl.* 666

Lib. 4.

pychacama, *u.* 1067
pacificum, *mare* 1092
pæni, *p.* 943
painters Wives, *inſ.* 1099
palamim, *fl.* 1059
paliurus, *u.* 933
pallas, *l.* 945
palladis ara, *inſ.* 1011
palma *inſ.* 1005, *u.* 1061
palmarum, *c.* 973, *fl.* 1031
palmas, *u.* 1059, *inſ.* 1062
palms, *fl.* 1045
pamanuke, *fl.* 1029
pampelone, *u.* 1061
pan, *inſ.* 1000
panagra, *u.* 971
panama, *pr.* 1054, 1057
panami, *fl.* 992
panches, *p.* 1061
pango, *pr. u.* 997
panopolis, *u.* 919
pantoia, *inſ.* 1051
pantilaria, *inſ. u.* 962
panuca, *pr.* 1032
panuco, *pr.* 1045
papagaio, *fl.* 1047
papantla, *pr.* 1046
para, *fl pr.* 1082
paratonium, *u.* 931
paragoti, *p.* 1085
paraguay, *fl pr.* 1077
paraiba, *fl. pr u.* 1081
Val paraiſo, *u.* 1073
parana, *fl.* 1077
pareos, *u.* 1068
paria, *pr.* 1088
parilla, *u.* 1067
parimen, *l.* 1084
paripe, *u.* 1081
parthenium, *mare,* 930
paſcua, *u.* 1000, *fl* 1041
paſcuar, *u.* 1046
paſnugates, *p.* 1043
St Ivan de paſto, *u.* 1062
patarabyes, *p.* 1043
patawomece, *fl.* 1019
pate, *u.* 984
patia, *u.* 1062
patinicum, *fl.* 923
patecui. *p.* 1062
St. paul, *u.* 996, 1080
1093, *inſ.* 994
pavoaſan *u.* 1003
pawatan, *fl.* 1019
pawtunxut, *fl.* ibid
payta, *u.* 1066
De la paz *u.* 1068, 1089
pearles, *inſ* 1058
peitra Roſſia *u.* 955
peluſiacum, *fl.* 927
peluſium, *u.* ibid
pemba *pr.* 995
pemeoke, *u.* 1029
penon aquid, *u.* 1027
pemtegonet, *fl,* 1023
penco, *S.* 1073
enga, *u.* 997
pennon de veles, *u.* 956
pentapolis, *p.* 932
pepantla, *pr.* 1047
De les perlas, *pr.* 1088
pernabiacaba, 1080
peroſori, *m.* 966
perphoſius, *u.* ib.
peru, *pr. fl.* 1063
pervana, *pr.* 1056
peſcara, *pr. u.* 967
petatlan, *fl.* 1041
St. peter, *u.* 1054, *fl.* 1093
peublo neuvo, *u.* 1068
pharao, *u.* 955
pharos, *inſ. caſt.* 932
philæni villa, *u.* 945
phile, *u.* 978
ſt. philip, *u.* 1032, 2046
1057, 1080, 1081
ſt. philip, ſt. Jacob, *u.* 1041
philippina, *u.* 1055
phorca, *m.* 942
phthia, *u.* 931
phthuth, *fl.* 942
phut, *pr.* ibid
phuth, *fl.* 951
piaſtla, *fl.* 1041
pibeſeth, *pr.* 932
piccinacoli, *p.* 1091
pichen, *pr.* 1087
pilabo, *u.* 1043
pilcomayo, *fl.* 1077
pincuria, *inſ.* 1008
piras, *fl.* 1059
piura, *u.* 1066
De la plata, *fl.* 1056, 1077
u. 1096
Las plaias, *c.* 1037, 1038
plata, *pr u.* 1069, 1077
Sebaſtian de la plata *u.* 1062
New plimmouth, *u.* 1017
plinthine, *u* 929
pluitania, *inſ.* 1005
poincur, *u. fl.* 1081
point Antogil, *u.* 1002
pomata, *u.* 1068
pompatao, *fl.* 1059
pontia, *inſ.* 962
pontonchan, *u.* 1051
popaiana, *pr. u.* 1061
porco, *m.* 1069
Des porcos, *fl.* 1095
porphiritus, *m.* 916
porto de Dio, *u.* 971
  del principe, *u.* 1095
  Raſſa *u.* 931
porto Rico, I, 1094
  del Riſcatto, *u.* 971
  Seguro, *u* 1080
  ſancto, *inſ. u.* 1007
porto Bello, *u.* 1057
  præſenza, *u.* 1021
  Royal, *u.* 1024, 1032
  fl. 1032
  Treſpaſſez, *u.* 1021
portus dioſcurorum *u.* 978
  Evangelorum, *u.* ibid
  Formoſus, *u.* 1021
  Magnus, 966
  perphoſius, *u.* 966
  Vetus, *u.* 1066
poſſeſſion *inſ.* 1038
potamia, *pr.* 939
poteingi, *fl.* 1081
potoſi, *p. u.* 1069
powhatan, *fl.* 1029
praſſum, *c.* 991
prima viſta, *pr.* 1021
primiro, *c* 1093
principis, *inſ,* 1004
prionotus, *m.* 977
prophyritus, *m.* 926

Propocampeche, m. 1047
Proſaditæ, p. 932
Providence, inſ. 1091
Pſelci, fl. 977
Pſitticorum terra, 1091
Pſylli, p. 966
Ptolemæus, fl. 927
Ptolemais, u. 929, 932
  Ferarum, u. 978, 982
Puebba de los Angelos, u. 1059
Puebla de los Ganoas, p. 1038
Puna, inſ. 1066
Punta de Lopez Gonzales, m. 970
  De Terra plana, c. 1075
Purene, pr. 1076
Purification, u. 1041
Purzaſil, p. 1066
Pyramides, 923
Pyrrhæi, p. 966
Pyſhokonnok, u. 1029

Q.

Lib. 1.

Queens County, 343
Quercu, u. 209
Queico gulphe, 121
Quiers, u. 156
Quietus, fl. 121
Quingey, u. 229
Quinq; Pagici, p. 164
St. Quintaine, u. 190

Lib. 2.

Quadi, p. 438, 454
Quakenburg, u. 476
St. Quaranta, u. 598
Quederberg, u. 471
Quer$^{n}_{u}$ero, ſ. 551, 554
Querfort u. 466
Quimine, inſ. 618
Quinque Eccleſiæ, u. 544

Lib 3.

Quangei, p. 869
Queilin, u. ib.
Quamtung, u. ib.
Queio, fl 867
Quamchen, u. 868
Quedea, u 911
Quiam, fl. 854, 867
Quilacare, u. 898
Quinchen, pr 864
Quinſay, pr 864. u. 868

Lib. 4.

Quachimayo, pr. 1066
Quade, u. 1075
Quatrabarries, u. 1041
Quatre Cianagas, u. 1042
Quebecque, u. 1024
Quelenes, p. 1052
Quemado, ſ. 1067
Querandyes, p. 1078
Quevenes, p. 1031
Quilca, pr. 1067
Quilimanci, fl. 937
Quillipiocke, u. 1027
Quiloa, pr. 990. u. fl. 991
Quimbiaia, pr. 1062
Quimbeque, fl. 1023
Quimbebe, pr. 992
Quinola, u. 1041
Quiſoma, pr. 996
Quiſqueia, inſ. 1095
Quiticui, p. 992
Quito, pr. u. 1063
Quitones, p. 1031
Quitlavaca, u. 1047
Quivira, pr. 1035
Quixos, pr. 1066

R.

Lib. 1.

RAcline, inſ. 349
Radnor, pr. u. 323, 324
Raiz, pr. 195
Rannock, fl. 333
Ramſey, Iſl. 351
Rance, fl. 195
Rapaill, u. 157
Rapenwel, u. 165
Rarduvaure, m. 324
Ratiaſtum, u. 208
Ravellie, u. 156
Ravenna, u. 92
Rawren, pr. 162
Re$^{a}_{i}$te, u. 98
Recanali, u. 97
Recina, u. 97. inſ. 349
Reculver, u. 310
Redding, 312
Ree, inſ. 230
Reggio, u. 148
Regio Pedemontana, 155
Regui, p. 308
Regium Lepidi, u. 148
Reguli fanum, u. 333
Reinelle, fl. 192
Rela$^{nzon,}_{unos,}$ fl. 270
Remes, u. 186
Renes, u. 195
Renfraw, u. 334
Renterea u. 255
St. Reparata, u. 90
Retone, fl. 118
Retraicte, u. 209
Reule, u. 211
Rhæti, p. 170
Rhæge, u. 308
Rheba, u. 346
Rheban, u. 343
Rhedones, p. 195
Rhegium, u. 77
Rhemi, p. 186
Rhene, fl 153
Rhete$^{l,\ u.}_{lois,\ pr.}$ 193
Rheticæ, p. m. 152
Rhetico, m. 171
Rhigia. u. 346
Rhigodunum, u. 308
Rhobognii, p. 346
Rhodes, u. 216
Rho$^{ſne,}_{danus,}$ fl. 180
Rhugo, u. 308
Rhutupæ, u. ibid.
Rialto, inſ. 114
Ribadeo, u. 259
Ribcheſter, u. 308
Riblichaſter, ibid.
Richborough, u. ibid.
Richlieu, u. 198
Rimine, u. 92
Rion, u. 204
Roy, p. 252
Ripaille, u. 157
Rippon, 314
Rippamont, u. 191
Riſano, fl. 121
Rivelli, u. 71
Robee, fl. 192
Rhoboghdium, u. 344
Rhoboretum, u. 144
Rhochelle, u. 209
Rocheſter, u. 310
Rochtalcon, u. 209
Rochfort, pr. 184
Roch-ſur-yon, u. 207
Cividad Roderigo, u. 270
Roffa, u. 311
Rochan, u. 195
Roma, u. 101
Romandiola, pr. 91
St. Rombert, u. 203
Romons, u. 233
Remorantin u. 200
Roncevallis, u. 251
Ronchus, fl. 92
Ronda, u. 265
Roſanna, u. 76
Roſas, u. 282
Roſcommin, pr. u. 344
Roſs, pr. 334. u. 325 inſ 91
Roſſillan, u. 223
Roſſur, u. 351
Rothomagum, u. 192
Rothſay, inſ. 350
Rotwel, u. 165
Rouen, u. 192
Rovigno, u. 121
Rouvergne, pr. 216
Roy, u. 189
Rubiton, fl. 91
Ruddiſdale, pr. 308
Ruel caſt. 185
Rudra, u. 74
Ruſila, u. 171
Rupella, u. 209
Rus, u. 267
Ruſcinonenſis, pr. 283
Ruſco, inſ. 352
Ruſſino, u. 283
Ruſſe, fl. 153, 163
Ruſſin, u. 350
Ruteni, p. 216
Rutland, pr 304
Rutili, p. 74, 100

Lib. 2.

Rab, fl u. 543
Raceburg, u. 468
Rachelſpurg, u. 437
Radiantis, fl. 443
Radiſch, u. 454
Radneby, u. 492
Ragnitz, u. 533
Raguſi, pr. u. 553, inſ. 556
Raidkeping, u. 490
Raine, u. 431
Rammekins, caſt. 385
Ramne, u. ibid
Raſcia, pr. 565
Ratacenſi, p. 561
Ratibor, u. 455
Ratisbona, u. 432
Ratzenberg, u. 561
Rava, pr. 535
Raveniczen, u. 567
Ravensburg, pr. u. 476
Ravenſpurg, u. 428
Ravenſtein, pr. 412
Raveſtein, u. 379
Raumaricæ, p. 506
Rauraci, p. 422
Rauragnicii, p. 506
Rednitz, fl. 444
Rees, u. 404
Regen, fl. 432, 449
Regenberg, u. 432
Regiacum, u. 367
Regimont, u. 533
Regiu, mons, u. 417
Rhichenbach, u. 455
Rempen, u. 383
Rendesberg, u. 486
Renty, u. 367
Reſſel, u. 533
Rets, u. 436
Reu$^{be}_{ho}$n, fl. 525
Reudigni, p. 560
Rutling, u. 447
Rha, fl. 513
Rhæti, p. 404, 429
Rhætia Prima, pr. 429
  Secunda, pr. 431, 438
Rhætiaria, u. 567
Rhætopolis, u. 432
Rhamnus, u. 588
Rheems, fl. 429, 447
Rheichesberg, u. 445
Rheineck, u. ibid
Rhene, fl. 362, 403, inſ. 617
Rhenen, u. 387, 475
Rhetimo, pr. u. 623
Rhezan, pr. u. 517
Rhinsberg, u. 414
Rhium, c. 578
Rhiz$^{ana}_{ius,}$ ſ. 553
Rhode le Duke, u. 375
Rhodope, m, pr. 608
Rhodoſtolon, u. 569
Richecourt, u. 424
Richus, u. 490
Riexwald, u. 409
Riga, u. 527
Ringtlenſtein, u. 479
Rintelen, u. ibid
Rip, Ripen, u. 488
Riphæi, m. 513
Rivallia, u. 526
Rochſort, u. 377
Rocke de match, u. 373
Roclite, n. 464
Rodemburg, u. 365
Roer, fl. 409
Roga, fl. 459
Romania, pr. 607
Roma nova, u. 610
Romberville, u. 424
Romerſwal, u. 385
Romſo, inſ. 491
Roſchild u. 490
Roſindale, pr. 379
Roſtoch, u. 561
Rotelen, u. 447
Rotenberg, u. 418, 432, 445, 466, 472
Rotterdam u. 383
Rotwel, u. 429
Rovelle, fl. 369
Roxalani, p. 520, 532
Rubeacum, u. 421
Ruet, fl. 389
Rufach, u. 421
Rugard, caſt. 490
Rugen, inſ. 459
Rugii, p. ib.
Ruguſci, p. 429
Rupel, fl. 366
Rupelmund, u. ibid
Ruremond, u. 389
Ruſchow, u. 514
Ruſſia, p. 510
  Nigra, pr. 531
Ruſhingen, pr. 479
Ruſtow, u. 514
Rutheni, pr. 520, 531

Lib. 3.

Rabba, u. 713
Rabbat, u. 712
Rachian, inſ. 918
Radempoore, u. 887
Rag$^{a,}_{es}$ u. 816
Rama, u. 728
Ramath, u. 732
Ramatha, u. 725
Rame, pr. 903
Ramoth, u. 715
Ramula, u. 728
Rantipore, u. 887
Raphaims, p. 713
Raphia, u. 737
Rapſii, p. 821
Ravaſſa, u. 880
Raubem, p. 769
Ray, fl. 879
Rebar, pr. 883
Rebeth, fl. 879
Reblatha, u. 696
Reccath, u. 720
Recem, u. 770
Recome, u. 712
Recon, pr. 902
Red Sea, 776
Regia, 695
  Orientis, u. 820
Regius fl. 784
Regma, u 775
Aram Beth Rhehob, pr. 684
Rhehoboth, n. 778
Reix magos, inſ. 917
Cemith, u. 722
Rhephaina, u. 771, p. 718
Res$^{apha,}_{eph}$ u. 700
Resbutes, p. 885
Reuben, p. 714
Rha, fl. 849
Rhabanah, u. 775, 867
Rhabanei, p. 856
Rhadaga, fl. 818
Rhæteune, c. 651
Rhagiana, u. 823
Rhalmathum, u. 712
Rhamantus, u. 695
Rhamnæ, p. 824
Rhamdamrcotta, u. 906
Rhea, u. 830
Rheg$^{ama}_{ima}$ u. 775
Rheganna, u. 769
Rheſen, u. 788
Rhinocurura, u. 737, fl. 770
Rhizala, u. 924
Rhodes, inſ. u. 675
Rhodi$^{a,}_{opelis}$ u. 663
Rhogandini, p. 924
Rhogomants, fl. 820
Rhombites fl. 835
Rhoxolani, p. 843
Rhymnus. fl m. 851
Rhyndacus, fl. 642
Riblah, u. 696, 720
Rithma, u. 713
Rogelim, u, 715
Rom, pr. 647 inſ. 918
Rhophiræ, p. 825
Rorre, u. 883
Roſalargium, inſ. 918
Roſingen, inſ. ibid
Rozelgate, c. 776

Rubrum mare, 776
Rugia, u. 695
Ruſſicare, u. 676
Ryna, u. 797

Lib. 4.

Rabut, u. 954
Raliana, ſl. 1056
Ramada, u. 1059
Ramaſſoc, l. 1017
Rameæ, inſ. 1024
Rameſes, pr, 928
Rancheria, u. 1060
Raponowinin, l. 1084
Rapſii, p. 989
Rapta, ſl. u. c. 978, 990
Raz, c. 1021
Cividad Real, u. 1017
Realeio, u. 1054
Rebato, ſl. 954
Redas, ſl 1058
Redgooſe, inſ. 1090
Reges, u. 1057
Rennoſa, port. 1021
Los Reyes, u. 1074.
port. 1067
Rhiobamba, u. 1066
Riblera, u. 1004
Caſta Rica, pr. 1054
Villa Rica, u. 1074
Porto Rico, I. u. 1093
Del Rio, inſ. 1058
Ney va Rioya, u 1078
Porto del Riſcata, u 971
Les troyes Rivicres, ſl 1083
Roakery, u. 1083
Roca, inſ. 1005
Rocca, inſ. 1091
Roigneuſe, port. 1021
Ned Roma, u. 950
Roma nova, u. 1002
Roſetta, u. 928
Pietra Roſſa, u. 951
Rotunda, inſ. 1094
Rubicatus, ſl. 942
Rubra Gleba, u. 928
Rubricatus, ſl. 947
Ruſpinum, u. 946
Rubur, u. 954
Ryſſadius, m. 965

S.

Lib. 1.

SAbatinus, l. 130
Sabaudia, pr 156
Sabinia. pr. 98
Sabrina, ſl. 295
Sacrum promentoriú, 276
Saguntum, u. 281
Sainctes, u. 209
Sainctterræ, u. 211
Saineterræ, u. ib.
Sainterre, pr. 189
St. Albans, u 316
Amand, u. 203
Andera, 257
Andre, 223
Andrews I 78, u. 333
Angelo m. 74
Aſaph, u. 324
Aubin, caſt. 231
Barbara, u. 272
Baſilia, 211
Beat, u. 213
Bennet le Chauſa, 203
Bernardino, u. 171
Bernard, u. 213
Boniface u. 140
Bregou, u. 213
Brienne, u. 195
Bri eu oci u. ib.
Catherines, caſt. 157
Cl ode audius u. 684
Orax, u. 277
Davids, 324
Dennis, 184
Dominico, inſ. 78
Deſi er derii u. 186
Edmundsbury, u 308
Eſtienne, u. 203
Evaſius, u. 150
Euphemia, 77
Felix, u. 101
Florence, 140
Floure, u. 203
Fregou, u. 213
Gal, u. 165
George, u inſ. 277
Germans, u. 184, 203
Gillis, u. 219
Guermier, u. 203
Hellens, inſ. 351
Hilary, u. 231
Jacamo, u. 171
Jago, u. 259
John de Angelie, 209
Luz, 211
Pied Port, 215
Mons, 231
Johnſtown, 333
Julian, m. 86
Laurence, m, 271
Legier, u. 227
Leon, u 95. caſt. 96
Loup, u. 183
Lucar de Baramada, 261
Malo, u, 195
Marceline, u. 223
Maria, u. 263
Maries, inſ. 78, 352
u. 277
Martins, u. 231
Maudits. c. 312
Maurice, u. 162, 203
inſ. 352
Michael inſ. 277
Monhaud, u. 191
Morites, 162
Palæi, u. 250
Paul de Vences, 220
Peters, inſ. 91
Peters port, u, 231
Pol de Leon, u. 195
Porcin, u. 203
Quintain, u. 190
Reperata, u. 90
Rimberg, u. 203
Rombert, u. 203
Saviours, u. 150
ſebaſtians u 254, 277
Severine, u. 74
Stephens, u. 203
Vas, u, 150
Valeryes, u. 192
Vincent, c. 276
Urbin, u. 186
Salaies, p. 193
Salaſci, p. 155
Salamanca, u. 270
Salduba, u. 286
Salentini, p. 75
Salern, u. 71
Salii, p. 152, 219
Salinellus, ſl. 69
Salines, u. 229
Salisbury, u. 307
Sallien, pr. 162
Salop. pr. 309
Salpe, u. 174
Salſ ulæ us u, 283
Salui, u. 71
Saluſſi, p. 155
Saluzzes, p. u. 156
Samathan, u. 213
Samnitæ, p. 200
Samnites, p. 72
Samnium, u. ib.
Samona, ſl. 180
Samſon inſ. 352
Sana, ſl. 165
Sanarre, u. 205
Sandalione, inſ. 89
Sandham, caſt. 252
Sangueſſa, u. 251
Saniſera, u. 284
Santa Crux, u. 277
Santillana, u. 257
Santomes, p. 209
Saragoſſa, u. 286
Saraval, u. 119
Sarazal, u. 267
Sarca, ſl. 118, 146
Sardaigne, pr. 283
Sardano, u. ib.
Sardinia, inſ. 89
Serenaza, u. 138
Sarezana, caſt. 129
Sargan, u. 164
Sark, inſ. 231
Sarlat, u. 208
Sarnia, inſ. 231
Sarſina, u. 92
Sartre, ſl. 197
Sarum, u. 312
Saſſari, u. 90
Savardum, u 212
Saubize, u. 210
Savillan, u. 156
Sault, ſl. 186
Saumur, u. 197
Savona, u. 138
Savoy, pr. 155
Saxole, u. 93
Scabiliſcus, u. 275
Sceaful, m. 350
Schaffehauſen, u. 165
Schetland, inſ. 349
Seilleticus ſinus, 76
Scombraria, inſ, 284
Scone, u. 333
Scopuli cyclopum, inſ. 86
Scotia minor, inſ. 340
Scotland, R. 330
Scultenna ſl. 91
Sealſy, u. 311
Secuſiani, p. 225
Sedani, p. 152
Sedunum, u. 162
Segalauni, p. 224
Segiſta, u. 86
Segiſana, u. 270
Segobriga, u. 281
Segontium, u. 323
Segovia, u. 155, 234, m 230
Segre, u. 281
Seguri, ſl. ib.
Seguſiani, p. 203
Seile, ſl. 219
Seine, ſl. 180, 226
Seira Molina, m. 247
Morena, m. ib.
Selame, inſ. 351
Selgovæ, p. 334
Selinus, u. 83
Semur, u. 227
Semnones, p. 142
Sena Gallica, u. 95
Senones, p. 186
Sens, p u. 186
Senes, ſl. 342
Senga, ſl. 286
Sengal, u. 165
Seniſii, p. 221
Senlis, u. 183
Senogalle, u. 95
Sentica. u 270
Sentinus, ſl. 97
Sequana, ſl. 180
Sequani, p. 218
Sercius, ſl. 130
Sergorno, u. 281
Seraval, u. 119
Serum, ſl. 226
Seſſa, u. 71
Seſtri, u. 138
Severn, ſl. 295
Seugne, ſl. 209
Seuri, p. 259
Sex Sexicanum, u. 265
Shanon, ſl. 342
Showre, ſl. ib
Shrewsbury, u. 325
Sibaris, ſl. 69
Sicaria, p. i. 82
Sicilia inſ. 81
Sider pr. 161
Siena, u. 132
Sierra Molina, 247
Novada, m. ib.
Morena, ib.
Sigdiles, inſ. 351
Sigeſtorii, p. 211
Signenca, u. 231
Signi, u. 19
Silarus, ſl. 69, 77
Silinges, p. 260
Silliers, u. 213
Sil linæ ures inſ. 351
Silly, inſ. ib.
Silimnum inſ. ib.
Silvanectus, p. u. 183
Silvis, u. 276
Silures, p. 322 inſ. 351
Silus, ſl. 118
Sinnada, pr. u. 171
Sintra, u. 275
Sinueſſa, u. 71
Sion, u. 162
Sione, ſl. 342
Sipontum, u. 74
Sitomagus, u. 308
Sittim, u. 162
Swell, u. 262
Skie, inſ. 349
Slany, ſl. 342
Slego, pr. u. 345
Snowdon, m. 324
Soana, u. 133
Soaſne, ſl. 180
Sobrarb, p. u. 251
Sodoro, u. 349
Sologne. pr. 200
Solothur u n m, u. 165
Solway, ſret. 309
some ſl. 180
sondrio, u. 171
sonones, p. 93
soria, u. 278
sorlinges, inſ. 351
solway, ſl. 330
somerſet, pr. 304
sorbiodunum, u. 307
soubſterion, u. 208
soulac, u. 209
souldre, ſl. 200
souri, u. 207
sourigne, u. 203
southampton, pr. 304, u 312
southſex, pr. 311
soyſſons, u. 190
spain, R. 241
spartimeute, c. 77
spey, ſl. 332
spolero, u. 97
squiilacy, ſ. 76
strafford, pr. 304
stalla, u. 171
stamſord, u. 308
stepholm, inſ. 351
sterling, pr. u. 333
stæchades, inſ. 230
stonax, u. 353
stowre, ſl. ib.
stombolo, inſ. 86
strada Romana, m. 153
strathern, pr. 334
strathnavern, p. ib.
stromboli, inſ. 86
sture, ſl 150
sublanco, u. 257
sucron ſl. 280, u. 181
suiſſiones, p. 188
suevi, p. 259
suffolk, pr. 304
suiſſa, u. 71
sulchi, u. 89
sulmo, u. 72
sunderland 353
surrey, pr. 304
surus, ſl. 280
suſe, u. 155
suſſex, pr. 304
sutherland, pr. 334
switx, switzerland, 163
sybaris, u. 77
sygni, u. 191
sylla, rupes, 82
syracuſa, u. 84

Lib. 2.

sabaria, u. 543
Di monte sacro, ſ. 603
Sa cb g ano, u. 519, ſl. 513
sagona, u. 553
saii, p. 611
St. Amand, u. 366
Andrews, inſ. 389
Die, u. 424
Georges arm, c. 609
Georgio, u. 564
Hippolite, u. 424
Hubert, u. 362
Macor, u. 622
Maure, u. inſ. c. 598
Michael, u. 519
Miel, u. 424
Nicolas, u. 423, ſ. 518
Omar, u. 367
Paul, pr. u. ib.
Thomas, u. 497
Truden, u. 376
Veit, Viti, u. 436
sale, ſl. 404, 443, 463
salamene, c. 619
salamis, inſ. 616
saland, pr. 388
salaſſia, u. 582
salatz, ſl. 448
salii, p. 388, 443
salinæ, u. 560
salona, u. 553
saloniche, ſ. 604
saltiza, ſl. 572
saltsbach, u. 449
saltsberg, pr. 432, u. 494
saltus Carbonarius, pr. 369
saltzach, ſl. 432
salutaris, pr. 607
salza, ſl 404
samandrachi, inſ. u. 914
sambia, pr. 533
sambre, ſl. 369
sameſcot, u. 497
samman, u. 505
samogitia, pr. 528

The TABLE.

Samonium, *c.* 619
Samothrace, *inſ.* 614
Samotz Kaſelma, *pr.* 528
Samſoe, *inſ.* 488
Samus, *fl.* 565
Santen, *u.* 409
Santi Quaranta, *u.* 598
Santorini, *inſ.* 618
Sapæi, *pr.* 611
Sar, *fl.* 415
Sapientia, *inſ.* 580
Sarbrucken, *u.* 415
Sardica, *u.* 609
Sardiotæ, *p.* 556
Sarentine, *u.* 561
Sarmatia Europæa, *p.* 520
Sarmatici, *m.* 525, 540
Saronicus, *ſ.* 577
Sarquius, *inſ.* 615
Savari, *p.* 529
Savarden, *u.* 424
Saverne, *u.* 421
Savia, *pr. fl.* 541
Sauromatæ, *p.* 520
Sauſi, *u.* 377
Sauſin, *u.* 372
Savus, *fl.* 438, 542
Saxenfelt, *u.* 438
Saxenhauſen, *u.* 445
Saxenkoburg, *u.* 441
Saxony, *pr.* 462, 465, 485
Scacinus, *fl.* 622
Scaffhauſen, *u.* 427
Scagen, *u.* 489
Schalavonia, *pr.* 533
Scaldis, *fl.* 363
Schalholt, *u.* 496
Scandia, *pr.* 491
Scandivania, *pr.* *ib.*
Scania, *pr.* *ib.*
Scanzia, *pr.* *ib*
Scara, *n.* 502
Scardius, *m.* 603
Scardona, *n* 554 *inſ.* 556
Scardonici, *m.* 551
Scardus, *m.* 559
Scarphia, *u.* 593
Schamlat, *u.* 476
Scharpe, *fl.* 366
Scheld, *fl.* 365, 369
Schelink, *inſ.* 386
Scheburg, *n.* 560
Schin, *u.* 494
Schinuſa, *inſ.* 619
Schleſtad, *u.* 421, 444
Schleſi, *pr.* 455
Schneberg, *u.* 464. *m.* 540
Schon, *u.* 494
Schonem, *pr.* 491
Schonhuffen, *u.* 449
Schoonehoven, *u.* 383
Schorndorf, *u.* 447
Schowen, *inſ.* 385
Schwaben, *pr.* 427
Schwanica, *u.* 552
Schwas, *u.* 440
Schwatz, *fl.* 454
Schweinford, *u.* 445
Schyre, *pr.* 431
Sciathos, *inſ.* 115
Scilleum, *c.* 618
Scrit ari, ones, *p.* 556
Sclavi, *p.* 451
Sclavonia, *pr.* 550
Scluſe, *u.* 366
Scodra, *u.* 553
Scombrus, *m.* 573
Scouri, *u.* 580
Scopelos, *inſ.* 615
Scopi, *u.* 566
Scordiſci, *p.* 545
Scotuſa, *u.* 603
Scrieſinnia, *pr.* 505
Scrieſſen, *u.* 417
Scrifia, *u.* 554
Scupi, *u.* 566
Scutari, *u.* 553
Scwanica, *u.* 552
Scwartzwald, *m.* 404
Scyculi, *p.* 560
Scyros, *inſ.* 617
Scythia, *pr.* 607
Scythicum, *mare,* 495
Sebenburgen, *pr.* 559
Sebenic, *u.* 553
Sed an, unum, *pr. u.* 373
Segan, *u.* 455
Segenberg *u.* 485
Segoſwaria, *u.* 566
Seland, *inſ.* 489
Selborch, *u.* 527
Seleſtadium, *u.* 421
Seleucia, *u.* 603
Selimbria, *u.* 609
Selino, *u.* 613
Selle, *fl.* 423
Selts, *u.* 421
Sem, *fl.* 517
Semigallia, *pr.* 527
Semunder, *u.* 566
Senderovia, *u.* *ib.*
Sendomir, *pr. u.* 535, 536
Senhunſen, *u.* 457
Senia, *u.* 554
Senones, *p.* 456
Senoy, *inſ.* 377
Sepſi, *p.* 561
Ser iphus, phena, *inſ.* 618
Septemcaſtrenſis, *pr.* 559
Serveſt, *u.* 466
Servia, *pr.* 566
Seſtos, *u.* 609
Sethia, *m.* 622
Setira, *u.* 615
Sevates, *p.* 435
Sevenwalden, *pr.* 386
Severia, *pr.* 517
Severin, *u.* 565
Sevo, *m,* 525
Sfachia, *u.* 623
Sfetigrade, *u.* 599
Shertogenboſch, *u.* 378
Sibior, *pr. u.* 517
Sicambri, *p.* 363, 390
Sic e i nus, *inſ.* 618
Sicilia minor, *inſ.* 617
Siculoræ, *p.* 556
Sicum, *u.* 553
Sicwiarskey, *u.* 517
Sicyon, *pr u.* 578
Sidion, *u.* 543
Sidre, *u.* 626
Sifino, *inſ.* 618
Sigalones, *p.* 486
Sileſia, *pr.* 455
Siliſtria, *u.* 568
Silva, ducis, *u.* 378
Simandria, *u.* 566
Simeren, *u.* 418
Singeticus, *ſ.* 603
Singidon, *u.* 544
Siniſtrum, *mare,* 612
Sinna, *fl.* 379, 443
Siradia, *pr.* 535
Sirickzea, *u.* 385
Sirmi ſch, um, *u.* 544
Siſſeg. akhen, ia, *u.* 551
Siſſopolis, *u.* 609
Sitones, *p.* 506
Sittia, *pr. u.* 622
Skaringe lint, *rupes,* 489
Slea, *fl.* 488
Sleſwick, *pr. u.* *ib.*
Slobado, *u.* 514
Smalandia, *pr.* 502
Smalcald. *u.* 464
Smolensko, *pr. u.* 514
Sneek, *u.* 386
Soeſt, *u.* 411
Soldin *u.* 457
Solms, *pr. u.* 442
Soltwedel, *u.* 457
Somerſdike, *inſ. u.* 384
Sontina, *u.* 414
Sophia, *u.* 568
Sopr an, onium, *u.* 574
Sora, *fl.* 423
Sorabii, *p.* 464, 566
De ſorants, *inſ.* 488
Sore, *n.* 490
Sorund, *u.* 497
Sound, *fretum.* 489
Spa, *u.* 376
Spachia, *m,* 622. *u.* 623
Spalato, *u.* 553
Spandaw, *u.* 457
Spanhem, *pr.* 419
Sparta, *u.* 582
Spenderole, *u.* 566
Spherchius, *fl.* 577
Spir a, es, *u.* 418
Spireoſtoma, *fl.* 559
Spittal, *u.* 438
Sporades *inſ.* 618
Spre, *fl.* 456
Sprenberg, *u.* *ib.*
stabecopen, *u.* 490
stabul, 491
stad t, ium, *u.* 477
staffanger, *u.* 495
stagira, *u.* 604
stagno, *u.* 553
stalimene, *inſ.* 614
stampalia, *inſ.* 619
standia, *inſ.* 624
staphelſtein, *u.* 444
stargard, *u.* 459, 461
starodus, *u.* 517
staveren. *u.* 386
stauroneſus, *u.* 418
stechaw, *u.* 436
stecholm, *u.* 504
ste ck fan field, *u.* 421
steenberg, *pr. u.* 379
stegoe, *u.* 490
steinaw, *u.* 455
stelluſa, *u.* 600
steltium, *u.* 411
stemberg, *u.* 488
stenay, *u.* 424
stendal, *u.* 457
stendorp, *u.* 485
stephanopolis, *u.* 560
sternberg, *u.* 461, 488
stertius, *fl.* 564
serveſt, *u.* 466
stetin, *u.* 459
sti ermark, ria, *pr.* 436
stockholm, *u.* 504
stode, *u.* 477
stonib rigadum, urg, *u.* 566
store, *fl u.* 485
sroremarch, *pr.* *ib.*
straeſland, *u.* 459
straelen, *u.* 389
straluburg, *caſt.* 417
strasburg *u.* 421, 533
straten. *u.* 455
stratonice, *u.* 604
stregnes, *u.* 504
stri don, gman, *u.* 543
strigonium, *u.* 544
strimon, *fl.* 577
strimonicus, *ſ.* 603
strimonii, *p.* 611
striſſen, *u.* 519
strivali, *inſ.* 624
strophades, *inſ.* *ib.*
struma, *fl.* 467
strybia, *inſ.* 619
strymon, *fl.* 603
studetæ, *m.* 464
stul Weſenburg, *u.* 543
sturgard, *u.* 446
stymalus, *fl.* 577. *u. l.* 581
styx, *fl.* 581
suanetes, *p.* 429
suardones, *p.* 464
subalingii, *p.* 483
sucoma, *fl.* 559
sudavia, *pr.* 533
suderman, *pr.* 504
sudetæ, *m.* 404
sudini, *p.* 533
sueci, *p.* 500
suenits, *u.* 455
suentin, *C.* 485
suevia, *pr.* 427
suevicum, *mare,* 489
suevi Lygii, *p.* 536
suevus, *fl.* 456
sugart, *u.* 459
suiborch, *u.* 491
suiones, *p.* 506
sulanes, *p.* 534
sumium, *u.* 568
sunberg, *u.* 527
sunderberg, *u.* 491
sundt, *fret.* 489
sungo via, w, *pr.* 421
sumium, *c.* 618
sunnerberg, *u.* 457
suras, *u.* 532
sure, *fl.* 518
surick, *u.* *ib.*
surland, *pr.* 475
suſatum, *u.* 411
suſdali, *u.* 519
suſenberg, *u.* 447
swartzach, *fl.* 448
swartzemburg, *u.* 445
swaim, *u.* 454
sweci, *p.* 504
sweden, *R.* *ib.*
sweibruken, *u.* 418
swethici, ans, land, 500
swiote, *fl.* 528
swol, *u.* 388
swerin, *l.* 561
sy bora, oite, *u.* 598
syderocaſpæ, *u.* 604
synrice, *pr.* 603
syphnus, *inſ.* 618

Lib. 3.

Sab a, æ, *u.* 769
sabacamber, *l.* 830
sabadibæ, *inſ.* 903
sabæi, *p.* 777
sabalaſſa, *fl.* 878
sabana, *u.* 906, 909
sabara, *u.* 906
sabaræ, *p.* 881
sabbatha, *u.* 775
sabe, *u.* 775
sabis, *u.* 822
sabota, *u.* 775
sabran, *u.* 809
sacæ, *p.* 840, 848
sacer ſinus, 774
sachalites, *ſ.* 774, 777
sachian, *u.* 857
sada, *u.* 906
sadani, *pr.* 881
sadus, *fl.* 906
sæta, *u.* 856
saffet, *u.* 722
sagadana, *u.* 920
sagalaſſa, *u.* 664
saganis, *fl.* 821
sagappa, *fl.* 878
sagareus, *fl.* 821
sagartii, *p* 816
sagdana *inſ.* 823
sageda, *u.* 880
sagua, *u.* 654
salæ, *p.* 924
salambria, *u.* 649
salamine, *inſ.* 677
salamis, *u.* 680
salarus, *fl.* 821
salataræ, *p.* 831
salchalitæ, *p.* 777
saldino *fl.* 687
salice, *inſ.* 919
salinæ, *p u.* 795
salmacis, *fl.* 661
salur, *u.* 380
salutaris, *pr.* 654, 699, 719
samachonitis, *l.* 711
samara, *u.* 922
samarchand, *u.* 850
samaria, *pr.* 723. *u.* 725
samaritan, *inſ.* 776
samba, *u.* 906
sambri, *u.* 922
samia, *u.* 673
samidace, *fl.* 821
samir, *m.* 700, 706
samocolchi, *p.* 848
simos, *inſ.* 673
samoſata, *u.* 698
samoyedæ, *p.* 845
samrom, *m.* 725
samus, *u.* 880
sancey, *l.* 867
sandabilis, *inſ.* 879
sanga, *pr.* 886
sang arius, ri, *fl.* 641, 647
sungermanicum, *u.* 843
sanglai, *pr.* 869
sanguin, *inſ.* 920
saphan, *u.* 828
saphar, *u.* 775
saphet, *u.* 721
saphta, *u.* 775
sapires, *p.* 804
sappara, *fl.* 878
saraceni, *p.* 770
sarapias, *inſ.* 787
sareta, *u.* 867
sarcan, *pr.* 659
sardis, *u.* 660
sardonix, *m.* 878
sarepta, *u.* 690
sargarenſene, *pr.* 650
sarh, *pr.* 787
saringa, *u.* 888
sarmagana, *u.* 826
sarmatia, *pr.* 844
Aſiatica, *pr.* 840
Europæa, *pr.* 831
saron, *m.* 711. *u.* 725
sarphath, *u.* 690
sarra, *u.* *ib.*
sarrama, *u.* 887
sarug, 791

Saſones p. 854
Saſvar, u. 826
Satagam, u. 880, 903
Sataros, u. 663
Sartalia, u. 665
Satyrorum, ſ. 866, inſ. 903
Savadii, p. 831
Saubeni, p. 851
Saum, u. 819
Sauran, u. 888
Sauromatæ, p. 843
Sauſtene, pr. 884
Sauta, u. 857
Sazotæ, p. 822
Scamander, fl. 651
Scamandria, u. 652
Scandeloro, u. 668
Scanderone, u. ibid
Scaragirzick, u. 847
Scarpanto, inſ. u. 675
Sceheruſal, u. 789
Scenitæ, p. 768
Scepſis u. 656
Scernus, u. fl. 884
Schind, fl. 879
Scianhay, u. 869
Scimnitæ, p. 848
Scirtas. fl. 790
Scordæ, p. 831
Scordiſcus, m. 642, 650
Scutari, u. 643
Scythia, pr. 838, 841
  Extra Imaum, 851
  Intra Imaum, 848
Scythicus Oceanus, 641
Scythopolis, u. 719, 701, 724
Sebaſtia, u. 761, 745, 800
Sebaſtopolis, u. 657
Sebat, inſ. 917
Seboim, u. 730
Secanda, pr. 819
Seci, p. 848
Sede Aram, pr. 684
Segui, u. 854
Seir, m. 736
Sela, u. 819
Selah, u. 770
Selebes, inſ. 919
Seleucia, u. 664, 666, 695
  769, 814
Seleucis, pr. 695
Selge u. 664
Selliſture, u. 847
Semanthinus, m. 878 906
Semantini, p. m. 870
Semia, pr. 639
Semiramis, m. 821
Semiſcaſach, u. 769
Semni, p. 924
Senderem, u. 920
Senespate, u. 901
Senus, fl. 867
Sephar, m. 640, 879
Sepharvaim, u. 698
Sepher, u. 719
Sephoris, u. 722
Sera, u. 855
Serapias, inſ. 777
Seres, p. 640
Serica, m. 854
Seriphi, m. 796, 826
Serkeff, u. 888
Seſtan u. 883
Sera, u. 863
Shamaki, u. 815
Sheirvan, pr. 814
Shenith Kiriathaim, u. 713
Sherry, u. 687
Shiras, u. 810
Shuah, u. 769
Shuſham, u. 203
Siam, pr. 809, 911
Sicaria, pr. 769
Siceleg, u. 729
Sich$^{em}_{or}$ u. 725
Side, u. 665
Sidon, u. 690
Sigæum, u. 651, c. 670
Si$^{gan}_{ngan}$ u. 869
Siganeam, u. 802
Sigara, u. 825
Sige, u. 824
Sigeſtan, u. ibid
Sthon, m. 706
Silo, u. 725
Silvanpede, u. 913
Simeon, p. 728
Simergan, u. 901
Similla, u. 880
Simo$^{eis}_{res}$ fl. 961
Simondi, inſ. 924
Sin, u. 769 u. 825
Sinæ, p. 864
Sinai, m. 770
Sinda, fl. 900, u. 986
Sindæ, inſ. 919
Sincapura, u. 910
Sinchi, p. 843
Sindocanda, pr. u. 923
Singara, u. 775
Singas, fl. 687, u. 698
Sintacora, u. 889
Sinthum, fl. 878
Sio, u. 672
Sion, m. 711, u. 897
Sipilas, m. 639
Sipparum, u. 786
Sipphora, u. 722
Sirace, u. 802
Sirbon, l. 736
Siriangh, eaſt, 907, 913
Siripur, u. 902
Sirne, inſ. 676
Siſnam, pr. 864
Siſtan, u. 824
Sittacene, pr. 788
Sittim, u. 715
Sizyges, p. 856
Smyrna, u. ſ, 670
Soa, fl. 879
Soana, fl. 885, 923, 924
Aram Sobab, pr. 685, 699
Sobura, u. 886
Socani, p. 841
Socotai, u. 910
Socratis, inſ. 776
Sodom, u. 711
Sogdiana, pr. 849
Sogdii, m. 831, 849
Sol$^{æ}_{i}$ u. pr. 667
Solor, inſ. 920
Solſette, 890
Solyma, u. 663
Sommongul, pr. 860
Sophene, pr. 800
Sophtha, inſ. 824
Sor, u. 690
Sora, u. 880
Sorabus, fl. 879
Soria, pr. 881
Soringi, p. 881
Soſippus, u. 775
Sotera, u. 826
Sor$^{hau}_{mawn}$ u. 818
Spane, fl. 841
Spatana, u. 924
Stahæi, u. 821
Stathmus u. 880
Stella, m. 645
Stomalinine, u. 675
Stragioni, u. 737
Stratæ, fl. 814
Straton, u. 725
Strava, u. 829
Strangalus, m. 821
Suaſſia, u. 800
Suaſtus, fl. 881
Subleſtan, pr. 825
Subut, inſ. 903, u. 917
Succoth, u. 715
Succui, u. 857
Sucheau, u. 869
Suchuen, pr. ibid
Suente, u. 701
Sues, u. 776
Sueta, u. 718
Suiria, pr. 805
Sultane puare, u. 884
Sultania, pr. 816
sumachia, u. 815
sumahania, pr. 858
samatra, inſ. 922
sun, u. 924
sunda, u. 921
sundiva, u. 912
suntien, u. 868
sur, pr. u. 690, n. u. 771
snra, u. 699
surat, u. 888
surium, u. 802
surrabaia, u. 921
surungo, u. 916
suſa, u. 819
suſiana, pr. 818
suſnam, pr. 864
suur, u. 650
suræi, u. 841
swalley, u. 888
sybaris u. 802
sychi, m, 850, p. 852
syeri, p. 825
synda, ſ, 845
syndaga, u. 828
syngarus, fl. m. 790
synnada, u. 654
synope, u. 644
syra, u. 889
syria, pr. 684
  Damaſcene, pr. 700
  Maacha, pr. 697
  salutaris, pr. 699
  secunda, pr. ib
  Transfluvialis, pr. 789
  Propria, pr. 693
syzion, m. 700, 706
syro-Media, pr. 798
syro-Phæniſſia, pr. 700

Lib 4.

saba, u. 969, inſ. 1094
sabian, pr. 979
saba$^{it}_{ſt}$icum, u. 982
sabath, u. 978
De sable, inſ. 1020
sabratha, u. 946
sachimilci, p. 1048
sacolche, u. 979
saddle, inſ. 1090
sagahadoc, fl. 1027
sagamedrum, pr. 981
sagapola, m, 965
saguenay, fl. 1023
saiet, u. 919
sais, n. 919
De sal, fl. 1041
sala, fl. 942, 951, u. 954
salado, fl. 1078
salamanca, u. 1051, 1059
salathus, fl. 965, u. 966
De salaya, u. 1046
saldæ, u. 950
Ben salem, u. 1094
salera, u. 948
salen, u. 929
salina, pr. 1088
De salinas, pr. 1066
salis, inſ. 1004
salla, u. 954
sal-nitri, m. 995
St. salvador u. 1077
  u. 1053 1081 1096 1097
salud, pr. 927
samana, pr. 1096
samovia, pr. 1032
samſonate, u. 1053
sanaga, pr fl. 976
sandi, pr. 995
santa, pr. 1067
santar, u. 982
santos, u. 1080
Tedos los sanctos, pr. 1080
ſapayoy, p. 1085
sardinia, inſ. 1038, 1055
sardinilla, fl. 1053
sargel, u. 950
sarra, pr. 967
saſques hanaxi, p. 1028
sat Gemer, fl. 945
saturn, c. 978
satyrorum, m. 977
saud, pr. 927
St. saviour, u. 996, pr. u.
  1049, fl. 1077
seymæ, p. 1086
scanderia, u. 928
scaniticum, fl. 927
scotia Nova, pr. 1014
scyapodæ, p. 932
St. sebaſtian, fl. u. 1041
  u. 1059, ſ. 1080, 1092
  De la Plata, u. 1062
sacatan, u. 1029
secco, fl. 1031
secſina, u. 952
segelmeſſe, pr. u. 967
segocket, u. 1027
segovia, u. 1053, 1089
segura, u. 1050
seguro, pr. u. 1080
seio, pr. 1035
seligus, m. 956
selir, u. 983
senega, fl. 971, 961
senecu, u. 1043
Nueſtra sennora, pr, 1074
septa, u. 956
Las sepulturas, u. 1068
sequana, fl. 1031
serapionis, c. 978
seregippe, u. 1081
serena, u. 1073
serrævatis, fl, 1031
servi, fl. 954
seviletta, u. 1043
sevilla, u. 1097
  Del Oro, u. 1066
seuta, u. 956
shycoake, u. 1029
siara, pr. 1081
sibalds, inſ. 1091
sibeca, u. 945
sibnit, u. 929
sicca Veneria, u. 947
sieira Complida, m. 995
  Leona, c. 970
  De sol, m. 995
siſelmel, fl. 951
sigas u. 950
signiti, p. 929
simbus, u. 993
ſinſalida, ſ. 1074
ſiſaris, fl. 942
ſiſſeva, fl. 952
siticenſis, pr. ibid
sitiphis, u. ib.
smiths Bay, ſ. 1090
sobus, fl. 965
sococha, u. 1078
soconuſco, pr. 1052
socorro, u. 1043
socotara, inſ. 1001
sofala, pr. u. 991
De sol, m. 995
soldania, u. 994
solis phoment, 945, 953
solomonis, inſ. 1092
songo, p. 997
songus, u. 963
sorbetes, fl. 942
Theon soterum, u. 978
souriquois, p. 1025
spiritus sancti, fl. 989
  1031, 1049, u. 1042
  1050, 1080
stachiris, fl. 965
stada$^{c}_{ones.}$ u. 1023
statenland, pr. 1092
St. stephen, port. 1074
St, stephen de puerto, u.
  1045
sua, pr. 979
suachen, u. 982
subeit, u. 953
sub$^{u}_{ur}$ fl. 951, 954
succhæ, u. 982
succhæi, p. 975
ſuccoſii, p. 951
sues, u. 928
suluce, u. 971
sumbrero, inſ. 1094
summer, inſ. 1030
sun, c. 953
sunda, pr. u. 997
De surta, ſ, 945
suſa, fl. pr. 982
De buen suſeia, u. 1092
suſolas, pr. 1031
Syene, u. 930
sylura, l. 945
syrtis major, 933
  Minor, 946

T.

Lib. 1.

TÆnarus, fl. 149
Tævina, fl. 270
Tafalla, u. 251
Taffe, fl. 324
Tagus, fl. 246, 263, 270
Talbora, u. 268
Talente, C. 226
Taluera dela Regna, u.
  268
Talzali, p. 334
Tame, fl. 315
Tamia, u. 334
Tanaus, u. 171
Tankerville, u. 193
Taodunum, u. 333
Taracina, u. 101
Taraſcon, u. 220
Tardera, fl. 281
Tarentias, u. 157
Tarentum, u. 77
Tariffe, u. 261
Taretta, fl. 84
Tarbe, u. 213
Tartas, u. 214
Tarragon, u. 282
Tarteſſus, inſ. u. 261
Tarraconenſis, p. 248
Tavenſis, u. 323
Tavila, u. 276
Taulon, u. 219
Taurini, p. 155
Tauroentium, u. 219
Tauromenium, u. 83

Taus, ſy, fl. 332
Techo, fl. 283
Tectoſages, p. 216
Teio, u. 171
Port Telamon, u. 133
Temd, fl. 325
Tenos, fl. 260
Teranum, u. 72
Tercera, inſ. 276
Tereus, fl. 84
Tergeſtum, u. ſ. 120
Ternay, u. 223
Teraciola, u. 132
Terra de Lavoro, 69
Otranto, 75
Nova, u. 76
Thanet, inſ. 310, 352
Thelis, fl. 283
Theo, fl. 313
Thetford, 308
Tholone, u. 219
Tholouſa, u. 216
Thorney, u. 313
Thouaras, u. 207
Thul enſel e, inſ. 349
Thurles, u. 345
Thraſymene, l. 99
Tibur, u. 100
Tibris, fl. 99
Ticinus, f. u. 143
Tieraſchie, pr. 191
Tiliaventum, fl. 120
Timavo, fl. ibid
Tine, fl. 296, 314
Tingitana, pr. 248
Timavus, fl. 110
Tin netio tzen, u. 171
Tiphendam, u. 98
Tipperary, pr. 345
Terconnel, pr. 344
Tir Oen, pr. ibid
Tirolis, pr. 153
Tividale, pr. 334
Tivoli, u. 100
Toam, u. 345
Todi, u. 98
Toledo, pr. u. 268
Toloſates, p. 216
Toloſ a ette u. 255
Torcella, inſ. u. 122
Torceſter, u. 308
Tormes, fl. 270
Torney, fl. 226
Toro, u. 257
Tordeſillas, u. 270
Tortoſa, u. 282
Toutein, pr. 198
Tourney, u. 189
Tours, u. 198
Tournus, u. 227
Tramontani, p. 257
Tranum, u. 75
Trapani, u. 85
Travaſede, u. 171
Travignano, inſ. 140
Tredagh, u. 343
Treguier, u. 195
Treinac, u. 208
Treiſſa, fl. 132
Tremitana, inſ. 78
Trent, u, 153, fl. 295
Treport, u. 189
Treviſo, u. 118
Tricaſſes, p. 186
Tricaſſin, u. 224
Treiſte, u. 120
Trilenum, u. 259
Trim, u. 343
Trinacria, inſ. 82
Trinobantes, p. 308
Tripontium, u. 308
Troya, u 74, inſ. 134
Tronto, fl. 69, 91
Troys, u. 187
Tude, u. 259
Tudela, u. 251
Tudertum, u. 98
Tueſis, u. 334
Tui, u. 259
Tulles, u. 208
Turduli, p. 264
Turditani, p. ibid
Turenne, u. 204
Turin, u. 155
Turones, p. 197
Turrita, u. 90
Turſaubica, u. 213
Tury, u. 200
Tuſcany, pr. 129
Tuſci, p. ibid
Tuſculum, u. 101
Twedale, pr. 334
Tweed, fl. 330
Twomond, pr. u. 345
Tyrrenium, mare, 107
Tyvie, fl. 324

Lib. 2.

Tabernæ, u. 421
Tabor, m. u. 451
Tænar ia us m. 581
Tagurium, inſ, 555
Talauſii, p. 600
Tanais, fl. 510, 513
Tangermond, u. 457
Tarchzal, m. 540
Tarnaw, u. 552
Tarona, u. 598
Mondwit Tattari, p. 518
Tatri, m. 540
Taureſium, u. 566
Tauriſci, p. 436, 561
Tauru n r um, u. 544
Taygetus, m. 578
Tegra, u. 581
Teſa, fl. 454
Teina, u. 564
Teiſterbant, 410
Telchionia, inſ. 620
Teleboas, inſ. 626
Telge, u. 504
Tellinkſt, u. 486
Teln, fl. 564
Temes, fl. 565
Temeſwar, u. 544
Tempe, pr. 601
Tenos, inſ. 617
Tentiburgium, u, 544
Tergoes, u, 385
Tergoviſta, u. 564
Termes, fl. 559
Terneſt, u. 526
Ternova, u. 569
Terpillus, u, 604
Ter vana win u. 367
Tetrapolis, inſ. 627
Tetrapurgum, u. 566
Teutoburgum, u. 409
Teutoni, p. 491
Texel, inſ. 384
Teya, fl. 436
Thalaſia, inſ. 614
Thann, u. 422
Thuſſes, inſ. u. 614
Thearus, fl. 608
Thebes, u. 591
Themene, u. 623
Theonville, 373
Thon trapeza, inſ. 619
therah, inſ. ib.
Theraſia, inſ. 618
Thermaicus, ſ. 603
Thermopulæ, 591
Thermus, u. 596
Theroven, u. 367
Theſpias, u. fl. 591
Threſpotia, pr. 597
Theſſalonica, u. 604
Theſſaly, pr. 601
Theuſia, inſ. 618
Theuſtad, pr. 506
Thinnius, inſ. 613
St. Thomas, u. 497
Thorda, u. 560
Thrace, pr. 607
Thronium, u. 595
Thulana, u. 582
Thule, inſ. 496
Thyland, pr. 489
Thyamis, fl. 598
Thyras, pr. 607
Thyſtad, u. 489
Tiberina, u. 432
Tibiſcus, fl. 542
Tibiſum, u. 568
Tiel, u. 389
Tilmont, u. 379
Tirangetæ, p. 465
Tirolis, pr. 438
Tiſſe, fl. 542
Titius, fl. 552
Tockay, u. 543
Togrop, u. 490
Tolen, inſ. u. 385
Tolbiacum, u. 414
Tomiſwar, u. 596
Tomos, u. 569
Tonagra, fl. 457
Tongri, p. 363, 376
Tonsberg, u. 494
Tooma, u. 516
Torgow, u. 462
Torneſe, u. 580
Torona, u. 604
Toronicus, ſ. 603
Toul, u. 423
Tourney, u. 366
Trabel, u. 456
Træzen, u. 585
Tragualle, u. 502
Tra gurium hu n u. 555
Trajana-colonia, u. 409
Trajonopolis, u. 609
Trajectum, u. 387
Ad Moſam, 371
Tranſalbini, p 475
Tranſilvania, pr. 559
Tranſiſulania, pr. 388
Traſobus, m. 573
Trave, fl. 484
Traun, fl. 432
Traunſheim, u. ib.
Treiden, fl 527
Trelleberg, u. 492
Tremonia, u. 412
Tremuren, u. 485
Trent, u. 438
Treſcortum, u. 563
Trevers. pr. 363, u. 416
Triballi, p. 569
Tribochi, p. 422
Tribſca, u. 459
Tricia, u. 601
Tricoritum, u. 588
Tricorneſii, p. 567
Tridentum, u. 438
Triers, pr. u. 415
Trieſſe, fl. 428
Trimontium, u. 609
Tripolis, u. 602
Triſtolus, u. 603
Tritæa, u. 578
Trock, pr. 529
Troglodiræ, p. 569
Trophonium antrum, 592
Trotmanni, p. 412
Trulle, fl. 369
Trund en heim pr. u. 495
Tſheerenburg, pr. u. 389
Tubero, fl. 418, 443
Tubingen, p. 446
Tuen, inſ. 488
Tuent, pr. 388
Tuentana, regio, 412
Turſcia, pr. 502
Tuiſcones, p. 404
Tuitchberg, u. 409
Tulla, u. 517
Tullum, u. 423
Tungres, u. 376
Tupatum, u. 526
Turcheis, u. 421
Turcilingii, pr. 465
Turingia, pr. 464
Turlach, u. 447
Turontus, fl. 513
Tulinge, inſ. 491
Tuver, pr. 519
twentzen, pr. 412
twerde, u. 519
twilt, fl. 474
tych enberg opolis u. 486
tydſholmes, inſ. 489
tykdiskin, u. 532
tyna, inſ. 617
tyras, fl. 525
tyrinthia, u. 585
tyriſſa, u. 603

Lib. 3.

Taban, u. 921
tabiana, inſ. 823
tabiene, pr. 828
tabor, m. 711, pr, 859
tabyn, c. 855
tachori, u. 849
tacola, u. 906
Tacoræi, p. ib.
tadmer, u. 699
taggal, u. 921
tagma, u. 906
tagurus, m. 855
taine, pr. 864
tainſa, pr. 857
taiopura, u. 920
taitan, pr. 864
taitung, u. 869
talachbacora, u. 663
talacorum, u. 924
tamaoratas, u. 920
tamaſſus, u. 680
tambrace, u. 829
tamer, u 699
tamlico, fl. 885
De la tana, l. 842
tanai, u. 889
tanaior, u. 900
tanais, fl. 841
tanamaca, u. 924
tanas, u. 843
tandair, inſ. 917
tangis pr. 864
tangu, pr. u. 907
tanguth, pr. 857
tania, pr. 858
tanium, u. 647
tanor, u. 891
taphi, fl. 879
taphr æ os u. 843
taporæi, p. 852
taprabone, inſ. 923
tapiri, p. 268, 830
tarachi, u. pr. 914
tariana, u. 819
tarichæa, u. 722
tarnaſſari, u. 900
tarſiana, u. 819
tarſus, u. 667
tarter, pr. 860
tartaria, pr. 840
Antiqua, pr. 859
Deſerta, pr. 844
Precopienſis, pr. 841
taſale, u. 906
tavai, u. 911
tavium, u. 647
tauri, p. 841
taurica Cherſoneſus, ibid
tauris, u. 815
tauro Scythia, pr. 843
taurus, m. 640, 663
tawgebawt, u. 828
taxda, u. 903
taxiana, inſ. 823
taxigea, u. 880
taxilla, u. ib.
tabinco, pr. 822, 864
tecoa, u. 729, 800, 923
tectoſages, p. 647, 851
teſlis, u. 804
teleba, u. 805
telmediſſa, u. 695
telmeſus, u. 663
temala, fl. 906
tenduc, pr. 859
tenedus, inſ. u. 670
tenza, pr. 916
teos, u. 658
teraſſa, u. 667
terebinth, vallis 730
terenate, inſ. 918
termeſſus, u. 664
terolli, u. 919
terra Incognita, 851
Sancta, 707
terrao, inſ. 920
terſia, u. 667
terzah, u. 724
tetrapolis, inſ 675
teveſa, l. 736
thamnitina, u. 725
thara, u. 755
tharo, inſ. 761
tharſacus, u. 753
thaygin, caſt. 861
thebes, u. 724
thebet, pr. u. 859
thelbis, u. 800
thelpitis, l. 799
theman, u. 769, 776
themiſcyra, pr. u. 644
themnath Chares, u. 725
theodori, u. 671
theodoſia, u 842
theodoſiopolis, u. 800
theophanius, fl. 845
theopolis, u. 696
theredon, u. 786
thermæ, u. 647
thermodon, fl. 645
therſagete, p. 846
theſitis, fl. 845
theſpia, u. 800
thiatyra, u. 660
thiencin, u. 869
thine, u. 867
thini, p. 644
thobeli, p. 804
thocori, p. 831
St. Thomas, u. 900
thonitis, l. 790
thoron, u. 721
throani, p. 856
throni c. 685
thumenenſes, p. 845

Thumenſes, *p.* 847
Thyboncaſtus, *u.* 906
Thyni, *p.* 641
Tibareni, *p.* 647,804
Tiberias, *u. l.* 719,722
Tiberiopolis, *u.* 654
Ticuarinum, *inſ.* 889
Tidor, *inſ.* 918
Tigado, *u.* 824
Tigrane certa, *u.* 800
Tigris, *fl.* 783,799
Tilæda, *pr.* 906
Tilegramocum, *u.* 880
Timagenis, *inſ.* 776
Timocani, *u.* 815
Timor, *inſ.* 918
Tina, *u.* 737, *fl.* 879
Tindis, *fl* *ib.*
Tiphon, *fl.* 687
Tippura, *pr.* 902
Tiſa, *u.* 821
Tiſhbe, *u.* 717
Tmolus, *m.* 659
Tob. *u.* 717
Toi, *pr.* 693
Tolenchia, *pr.* 864
Toli bosti ſtobogi *p.* 647
Tolius, *fl.* 678
Tomanis, *u.* 804
Tophorus, *m.* 85
Torrens, Ægypti, *fl.* 770
Tortora, *u.* 723
Tortoſa, *u.* 691
Toſa, *inſ u.* 916
Toſarene, *pr.* 800
Tou, *pr.* 693
Touſa, *inſ. u.* 916
Black Tower, 654
Maiden Tower 643
Trabezond, *u.* 645
Trachonitæ, *m.* 708, *p.* 716
Trajanopolis, *u.* 651
Trajanus, *fl.* 770
Trallis, *u.* 660
Tramopatan, *u.* 891
Trancanor, *pr. u.* 898
Trapano, *c.* 677, *u.* 679
Trapexus, *u.* 645
Travancor, *pr. u.* 898
Tremel, *u.* 885
Tremigen, *pr.* 830
Tremitus, *u.* 680
Trequi Lemale, *u.* 924
Tretos, *u.* 775
Triala, *u.* 804
Tribarra, *u.* 849
Trinacria, *inſ.* 675
Tripolis, *u.* 691
Troas, *pr. u.* 651
Alexandri, *u.* *ib.*
Tro c g mi, *p.* 647
Trogyllium, *inſ* *c.* 658
Trojanopolis, *u.* 656
Tropatene, *pr.* 814
Troy, *u.* 651
Troyan, *u.* 826
Trulla, *u.* 775
Tryglyphon, *u.* 906
Tſaiah, *u.* 728
Turcæ, *p.* 806,846
Turcheſtan, *pr.* 850
Turcomun, *u.* 826
Turgana, *inſ.* 777
Tuſſagetæ, *p.* 806
Tutta, *pr. u.* 887
Tyana, *u.* 649
Tylus, *inſ.* 777
Tyndis, *u.* 880
Tyrambe, *pr.* 846
Tyre, *u.* 690
Tyrrina, *inſ.* 777
Tzinin, *pr.* 864
Tzor, *u.* 690

Lib. 4.

Tabago, *inſ.* 1087
Tabaſco, *pr.* 1050, *u.* 1051
Tabenna, *u.* 930
Tabraca, *u.* 947
Tacapa, *u.* 946
Tacaſſi, *fl.* 977
Tacoantepeque, *u* 1050
Tacunga, *u.* 1066
Tadonſac, *u.* 1024
Tafilete, *u.* 987
Tafixa, *pr.* 1052
Tagavaſt, *u.* 951
Tagleſſe, *u.* 953
Tairona, *m.* 1059
Tagreſſa, *u.* 952
Taladuſii, *p.* 950
Talaveta, *u.* 1078
Tamachala, *fl.* 1040
Tamaraca, *inſ.* 1077
Tamarind, *u.* 1001
Tameclipa, *u.* 1045
Tameſcot, *fl.* 1027
Tampice, *u.* 1045
Tanalameque, *u.* 1059
Tanape, *u.* 978
Tanchipa, *u.* 1045
Tanger, *u.* 956
Tanne, *fl.* 1097
Tanparamunen, *u.* 1085
Tapeſipe, *u.* 1081
Taquinite, *u.* 1045
Tarapia, *pr.* 1069
Tarentines, *p.* 1027
Targa, *deſert.* 967
Tarixa, *u.* 1069, 1078
Tarodant, *u.* 952
Tarorequi, *inſ.* 1058
Tarrahumares, *p.* 1043
Tebelbeti, *p. u.* 967
Tebocrit, *u.* 950
Techort, *u.* 967
Tecoantipeque, *u.* 1049
Tecpatlan, *u.* 1050
Teculeth, *u.* 953
Tedles, *pr.* *ib*
Tedneſt, *u.* *ib.*
Tedza, *u.* 952
Teſethne, *u.* 953
Teffet, *u.* 967
Tegaſſa, *u.* 957
Tegaza, *u.* 961
Tegeſta, *pr.* 1032
Tegorarin, *pr. u.* 967
Teijent, *u.* 952
Teleuſine, *u.* 949
Temeſna, *pr.* 549
Temiano, *pr.* 974
Temiſtitan, *u.* 1048
Temnella, *u.* 952
Tenariffe, *inſ* 1005, *u.* 1059
Tenent, *u.* 953
Teneracoſt, *u.* *ib.*
Tenezze, *u.* 952
Tenterbeley, *pr.* 1093
Tenſiſt, *fl.* 1003,1004
Tentyra, *inſ. u.* 930
Teczopotlan, *u.* 1050
Tepanecæ *p.* 1048
Tepecſuon, *m.* 1040
Tepique, *pr.* 1042
Tepoanes, *p.* 1043
Terga, *u.* 953,957
Teſegdelt, *u.* 953
Teſraſt, *u.* 952
Teſſet, *pr. u.* 967
Teſza, *u.* 954
Tetrapyrgia, *u.* 931
Tetuan, *u.* 950
Teyeget, *u.* 954
Tezcuco, *u.* 1047
Tezergui, 956
Tezza, *u.* 955
Tezzora, *u.* 956
Thagia, *u.* 954
Thale, *m* 966
Thaluſſii, *p.* 950
Thambes, *m.* 942
Thebais, *pr.* 927, 929
Theb e o *pr.* 930
Tharra, *pr* 1041
Thebuaca, *u.* 948
Themiſa, *u.* 947
Theon-Soterum, *u.* 978
Thizibi, *m.* 945
Thomeebamba, *u.* 1066
St. Thomas, *inſ.* 1003, *u.* 1038, 1086
De Caſtile, *u.* 1054
Thornbay, 1021
Thriſitides, *inſ.* 1000
Thuburnica, *u.* 947
Thumondacana, *u* 971
Thuniſa, *u.* 949
Thyſtrus, *u.* 946
Tiaguanaco, *u.* 1068
Tic, *u.* 953
Tigedent, *u.* 950
Tigrai, *pr. u.* 979
Tigremaon, *pr.* *ib.*
Tiguez, *pr. u. fl.* 1035
Timana, *u.* 1062
Timbues, *p.* 1078
Timugedit, *u.* 967
Tingis, *u.* 956
Tingitana, *pr.* 954
Titicata, *l.* 1065
Tivitivas, *pr.* 1086
Tlaſluici, *p.* 1048
Tlaſcalla, *pr. u.* 1049
Tlaſcaltæche, *p.* 1048
Tmodes, *m.* 931
Toa, *fl.* 1095
Toberaum, *u.* 969
Toboſi, *p.* 1043
Tockianes, *p.* 1083
Todes les Sanctos, *pr. f.* 1080
Togadaſt, *u.* 953
Toirona, *u.* 1059
Tolen, *u.* 978
Tolu, *u.* 1059
Tombez, *fl.* 1065
Tombutum, *pr. u.* 922
Tomina, *u.* 1078
Tomoes, *p.* 1083
Tongum, *u.* 993
Tonica, *u.* 984
Tontrac, *l.* 1037
Topia, *u.* 1060
Topocelma, *fl.* 1073
Toppahanoc, *fl.* 1029
Tormentoſa, *c.* 999
Toron, *fl.* 1037
Torra, *pr.* 992
Torrates, *p. u.* 976
Tortuga, *inſ.* 1033,1091
Togiſtos, *inſ.* *ib.*
Toycama, *u.* 1061
Tradacta, Julia, *u.* 956
Tralan, *fl.* 928
Transfretana Hiſpania, *pr* 954
Traxillo, *u.* 1050
Tremiſen, *pr.* 949, *u* 956
Tremontene, *c.* 1091
Trapadeza, *fl.* 1058
Treſpaſſer, *port.* 1021
Triangulus, *inſ.* 1051
Trin, *c.* 1020
Trinidad, *u.* 1053, 1061, 1077, 1097, *fl* 1055, *inſ.* 1088
Trinidado, *c.* 1038
Trinity Bay, 1021
Tripolis, *pr. u.* 945
Tripolitana, *pr.* 944
Triſtrom de Acugna, *inſ* 1003
Triton, *fl.* 942, *l.* 945
Troglodite, *p.* 975
Troia, *u.* 929
Troigus, *m.* 926
Trois pentas, *c.* 973
Truxillo, *u.* 1067,1089
Tucaian, *pr.* 1037
Tucapel, *pr.* 1076
Tucuman, *u.* 1078
Tucuyo, *u.* 1089
Tudela, *u.* 1061
Tunia, *pr. u.* *ib.*
Tunis, *pr* 946, *u.* 947
Tunudromum, *u.* 948
Turert, *u.* 956
Turopeque, *pr.* 1050
Tuzeteco, *u.* 1045

V.
Lib. 1.

VAccæi, *p.* 212, 271
Vacomagi, *p.* 334
Vaeontes, *p.* 152
Vacemedius, *l.* 98
Vaga, *fl.* 324
Valadolid, *u.* 270
Val de Noto, *pr.* 84
Valence, *u.* 213, *fl.* 226
Valenſes, *p.* 162
Valentia, *pr.* 280, 309
Valentini, *p.* 223
Valeria, *pr.* 98
Vallage, *pr.* 186
Vallis Olitana, 270
Telina, *pr.*, 171
Valois, *pr.* 183
Valtoline, *pr.* 171
Vanduara, *u.* 334
Vannes, *u.* 195
Varandus, *l.* 74
Varduli, *p.* 255
Varennes Gatenat, *u.* 203
Varo, *fl.* 219
Varus, *fl.* 137,155
Vaſates, *p.* 211
Vaſcones, *p.* 211, 252
Vaſ iones, *p.* on, *u.* 220
Vaſle, *fl.* 186
Vaſſey, *u.* *ib.*
Vauge, *m.* 180
Ubeda, *u.* 257
Ud era ina *u.* 121
Vecii, *u.* 99
Vectis, *inſ.* 352
Vedra, *inſ.* 284
Veientes, *p.* 130
Vei, *u.* 99
Velauni, *p.* 216
Veles Malaga, *u.* 265
Velibori, *p.* 341
Velinus, *l.* 98
Velitræ, *u.* 101
Vellica, *u.* 251
Venafre, *u.* 70
Venaſcine, *pr.* 220
Venaſque, *u.* 286
Vencienſes, *p.* 220
Vendoſme, *u.* 201
Venelocaſſi, *p.* 193
Veneris templum, *c.* 240
Veneti, *p.* 195
Venetiæ, *pr.* 118, *u.* 123
Venicnii, *p.* 346
Venieſſimus, *pr.* 220
Venta miglio, *u.* 138
Venceſter, *u.* 312
Venta Belgarum, *u.* 308
Ventones, *p.* 271
Ven oſa uſia *u.* 75
Vera, *u.* 266
Veragei, *p.* 152
Verbanus, *l.* 37
Vercelli, *u.* 155
Verdun, *u.* 227
Verine, *fl.* 183
Vermines, *p.* 334
Vern eville olium *u.* 192
Veromandois, *p.* 188, 190
Veromen, *u.* 225
Verona, *u.* 119
Verulamium, 308, 316
Veſcal, *u.* 229
Veſcontio, *u.* 228
Veſina, *u.* 208
Veſtini, *p.* 72
Veſulus, *m.* 153
Veſuvius, *m.* 71
Veſere, *fl.* 208
Viane, *u.* 251
Viar ron zon *u.* 205
Victoria, *u.* 251
Vidoza, *fl.* 255
Vienna *u.* 223
Vienne, *fl.* 197,206
Viennenſes, *pr.* 221
Vigilia, *u.* 75
Vilaine, *fl.* 195
Villa Faſtini, *u.* 308
Villa Nova, *u.* 150,276
Vltioſa, *u.* 257
Villebois, *u.* 209
Ville Franche, *u.* 156, 203
Villeneuſne, *u.* 214
Vilumbri, *p.* 98
Vincentia, *u.* 118
Vindelis, *u.* 308
Vinderius, *u.* 344
Vindinum, *u.* 168
Vindocinum, *u.* 201
Vinovium, *u.* 308
Virgivium, *mare.* 345
Virgao, *u.* 266
Viſcaria, *pr.* 254
Viterbo, *u.* 99
Vitrey, *u.* 186
Vitrun, *u.* 198
Vivieres, *u.* 216
Ulſie, *u.* 203
Ul tonia ſter *pr.* 344
Uly ſippo, *u.* 275
Umbria, *pr.* 97
Underwald, *pr.* 164
Vocontii, *p.* 224
Vadii, *p.* 346
Der Vogel, *m.* 170
Volca, *u.* 308
Volcæ, *p.* 217
Veleinus, *l.* 130
Volſci, *p.* 100
Voltera, *u.* 131
Voluntii, *p.* 346
Vomanus, *fl.* 69
Urbin, *u.* 95
Ure, *fl.* 306
Uren, *pr.* 164
Urgel, *u.* 282
Uriconium, *u.* 308
Urbe, *fl.* 309
Uterni, *p.* 346
Utina, *u.* 121
Ulcaniæ, *inſ.* 86
Uze c r, *u.* 208

Lib. 2.

Vaceia, u. 543
Vada, iu. 389
Vagoth, pr. 506
Valachia, pr. 563
Valachria, inſ. 385
Valadomire, u. 514
Valentinnes, u. 369
Valencourt, u. 372
Valeria, pr. 436
Valerſleve, u. 467
Vallenhoven, u. 388
Vallona, u. 600
Valpo, u. l. 544
Vames, u. 506
Vandalia, pr. 489
Vandalis, fl. 525
Vandali, p. 561
Vangiones, p. 418
Vanizza, u. 598
Vardæ, p. 556
Varadin, u. 560
Vardari. fl. 603
Varieca, fl. 552
Varini p. 457
Varna, u. 568
Varta, u. 506
Vaſcie, u. 372
Vaſera, fl. 532
Vaſilkow, u. ib.
Vaſilopotomo, fl. 581
Vaſzow, u. 520
Vaucoleur, u. 424
Vaudemont, u. ib,
Vauge, m. 404, 421
Uberlingen, u. 427
Uberlinque, u. 429
Ubii, p. 414
Udden, u. 506
Udenheim, u. 418
Uduarheli, p. 561
Vecht, fl. 388
Vegla, inſ. 555
St. Veit, u. 436
Veldents, u. 416
Vendung, u. 474
Velin, u. 526
Veluwe, pr. 388
Venaw, fl. 47L
Vendenis, u. 567
Venedi, p. 533
Venedicus, J. 489
Veneris, inſ. 617
Venetria pr. 437
Venetus, l. 427
Venlo, u. 389
Vensilia, Venſyſſel, pr. 489
Venuſina, u. 569
Venuſium, u. 560
Verda, u. 472
Verdun, u. 423
Vere, u. 385
Verendia, pr. 502
Verodonentes, p. 423
Veromandui, u. 373
Verma, u. 506
Veſalia, u. 409
Superior, u. 416
Veſtigard, u. 599
Vetera, u. 410
Veteravia, pr. 440
Vetzet, u. 564
Vexim, Vexio, u. 502
Vianen, . u 383
Viburg, u 506
Vick, u. 459
Vidina, u. 566
Vidre, fl. 388
Vienna, u. 435
Vilenskie, u. 529
Villengen, u. 429
Vilna, fl. pr. u. 419
Vindilici, p. 428, 431
Vils, fl. 447
Vindebona, u. 435
Vindis, fl. 431
Vndomania, Viundria, u. 553
Virland, pr. 526
Viridonenſes, p. 424
Virthungi, p. 446
Viſchore, fl. 517
Viſtoma, fl. ib.
Viſtula, fl. 404, 525
Viſurgis, fl. 404, 471
Vitebſco, pr. 529
Vites, p. 464
Sti Viti, u. 436
Vittach, u. ib.
Uladiſlaw, u. 535
Uland, I. 506
Ulcinium, u. 553
Ulme, u. 429
Ulpianum, u. 566
Ulpia Trajana, u. 564
Ultrajectum, u. 387
Unixæ, p. 506
Unna, u. 412
Una, fl. 552
Vobſco, u. 515
Vodena, u. 603
Vogeſus, m. 404
Voiteland, pr. 464
Voitſpetg, u. 436
Volga, fl. l. 513
Volhinia, pr. 530
Volocalue, u. 515
Volodomir, u. 530
Vologda, u. 514
Voloy, fl. 423
Volks, pr. 515
Voorne, inſ. 384
Voſtiza, u. 578
Upland, pr. 504
Upſal, u. ib.
Uranapolis, Urenburg. u. 490
Uraſtiſlavia, Uraſtiſlaw, u. 455
Uredeberg, u. 478
Uteſe, u. 467
Uriciade, u. 479
Uſcudama, u. 609
Uſcudoma, u. 562
Uſedome, inſ. u. 459
Uſted, u. 492
Uſting, u. 519
Utrect, pr. u. 387

Lib. 3.

Vallos, fl. 797
Vallum Paſini, 819
Van, u. 906
Vardunes, fl. 845
Varſa, pr. 880
Vaſada, u. 804
Vaſilica, u. 671
Vaſlan, l. 800
Vaſtthlan, l. 814
Udaceſpes, m. 799
Udie, u. 911
Venazarari. p. 890
Ventane, u. 924
Verma, pr. u. 912
Vetezabra, u. 715
Vidonis, fl. 845
Villaſem, u. 924
Villa Nova, u. 676
Vindius, m. 878
Virta, u. 791
Viſapore, u. 889
Ulai, fl. 819
Unguen, u. 868
Volanus, fl. 688
Volgo, fl. 845
Vologeſia, u. 786
Vorn, pr. 916
Vorochtha, inſ. 886
Voſpeto, u. 842
Ur, u. 790
Us, u. 718
Uxentius, m. 978
Uz, pr. 769

Lib. 4.

Vacapa, u. 1036
Vacatæ, p. 951
Valcanes, fl. 1093
Valentia Nova, u. 1089
Vallette, u. 963
Vallidolid, u. 1046, 1051
1067. fl. 1051
Val Paraiſo, u. 1073
Val-verde, pr. 1067
Vamba, fl. 989
La Vega, u. 1096, 1098
Vela, c. 1059
Velez de Geomenera, u. 956
Vella, u. 983
Veneria, u. 947
Fuerte Ventuc, inſ. 1005
Venezuela, u. 1047. ſ. 1059
pr. u. 1089
Vera Crux. u. 1050
Veragua, pr fl. 1054
Verapaz, pr. 1052
Verbicæ, p. 951
Vergivium, mare, 1000
Vermiglio, ſ. 1037
Vermeia, inſ. 1051
Vert, c. 971. inſ. 1004
Bono Veſta, c. 1021
Vetus Portus, u. 1069
Victoria, u. 1051, 1068
c. 1064
St. Vincent, inſ. 1004, 1093
pr. u. 1080
Virginia, pr. 1026, 1028
Virginum, c. 1074
Viride, c 971. inſ. 1004
Vitacuchus, u. 1032
Ulagium, c. 953
St. John de Ullua, u. 1050
Ulna, fl. 1053
Voli, pr. 951
Volpos, m. 932
Vólubilis, u. 955
Upar, pr. 1059
Uraba, ſ. 1057
Uroqueis, p. 1024
Uſaletus, m. 942
Uſurgala, m. 966
Utica, u. 946
Utopia, u. 1093
Uxitipa, pr. 1042
Uxoo, u. 973
Uztacpalipa, u. 1047

W.

Lib. 1.

WAgenthal, u. 164
Waldſtetſee, l. 163
Wales, pr. 322
Wallingford, 308, 312
Walliſland, pr. 162
Warwick, pr. 304
Waterford, pr. u. 345
Weis, fl. 165
Wexford, u. 343
Weſtemeick, pr. 173
Wells, u. 312
Weſtcheſter, u. 308
Weſtminſter, u. 313
Weſtmorland, pr. 304
Weſtſex, Weſtſazons, pr. 311
Weſtraſia, pr. 173
Wey, fl. 311, 335
Wheaſlop, caſt. 308
Whithorn, u. 334
Wiccienſis, u. 323
Wiſleſpurg, p. u. 163
Wilton, u. 312
Wilrs, pr. 304
Winchelſey, u. 308
Wincheſter, u. ib.
Wight, inſ. 352
Windſor, Windleſtone, u. 312
Wolds, m. 295
Worceſter, p. u. 304, 315
Wroxeter, u. 308

Lib. 2.

Wackat, u. 552
Wadenborch, u. 475
Wael, fl. 362, 382
Waes, pr. 366
Wageria, Wagerland, pr. 435
Wagheningen, u. 389
Waidhoven, u. 485
Walburg, u. 502
Walcheren, inſ. 385
Waldecke, pr. u. 474
Waldſhute, u. 428
Walkenburg, u. 375
Walkenſteine, u. 435
Walpo, u. 543
Warbefoni, u. 552
Warburg, u. 476, 491
Ward, inſ. 495
Warduis, caſt. u. ib.
Warendrop, u. 476
Warſuga, fl. 516
Warlitz, u. 463
Warmia, pr. 533
Warn, fl. 461
Warnitz, fl. 429
Warſaw, u. 535
Warta, fl. 525, 535
Warta, fl. 450, 457
Wana, fl. 552
Waſſenaer, u. 384
Waſtenburg, u. 449
Watweil, u. 421
Weiden, u. 449
Weil, u. 447
Weilborough, u. 441
Weimar, u. 465
Weiſenberg, u. 526, 560
Weiſenberk, u. 463
Weiskorchem, u. 454
Weiſſenberg, u. 411
Wels, u. 435
Welſtre, u. 486
Wenden, u. 527
Wenſlie, pr. 489
Werb, u. 457
Werciani, p. 544
Werden, u. 412
Werdt, u. 429, fl. 431
Werdzee, l. 437
Weret, l. 502
Werlingen, u. 429
Wernberg, u. 527
Werſaw, u. 419
Werte, fl. 473
Weſdo, fl. 375
Weſel, u. 409
Weſer, fl. 404, 471
Weſterberg, u. 479
Weſtergoe, pr. 386
Weſtergoth, pr. 502
Weſterwald, pr. 475
Weſt France, pr. 405
Weſtman, pr. 504
Weſtphalia, pr. 475
Weſtraſia, Weſtreich, pr. 405
Weſtrelch, pr. 418
Weteraw, pr. 440
Weizela, Weizelver, u. 442
Wheen, inſ. 490
Wiathka, pr. u. 517
Wiberg, u. 447
Wiborch, pr. u. 488
Wiburg, u. 506
Wichidaw, pr. 515
Wicke, u. 387
Wien, u. 435
Wieper, fl. u. 466
Wiert, u. 379
Wihits, u. 552
Die Wilde, u. 529
Wildeſmet, u. 432
Wildſhuſen, u. 476
Wilini, p. 457
Willoughbies, inſ. 520
Wilſtre, u. fl. 486
Wiltberg, u. 446
Wimpſen. u. 447
Winde, fl. 525
Winſtiſhland, pr. 551
Windiſch greots, u. 553
Wineta, u. 459
Winheim, u. 417
Winithi, p. 452, 453
Winnili, p. 545
Winds, 449
Winocksberg, u. 365
Winſheim, u. 445
Wittenberg, pr. u. 446
Wisbad, u. 441
Wisbich, u. 506
Wiſlicza, u. 536
Wiſmar, u. 561
Wittenberg, u. 463
Wittenſtein, u. 527
Witterberg. u. 474
Wixel, fl. 404, 525
Wolfehaiten, Wolfen-huttel, u. 471
Wolferſdike, inſ. 385
Wolgaſt, u. 459
Woikonsky, u. 513
Wollin, inſ. 459
Wolmar, u. 527
Wolodomir, pr. u. 519
Wolſperg, u. 437
Woongen, u. 428
Worda, u. 464
Wormes, u. 418
Wormland, pr. 504
Wormſe, inſ. 527
Wormſted, u. 407
Worotine, pr. u. 519
Wortheim, u. 445
Wrangen, inſ. 527
Wunicks, fl. 436
Wurtzburg, pr. u. 444
Wuttxgarten, m. 540
Wyerengeh, inſ. 384

Lib. 3.

Wayre, inſ. 896

Lib. 4.

Wackchanes, p. 1083
New Walcheren, u. 1087
Walſingham, c. 1010

Wenicapora, *fl. u.* 1086
Weopomioke, *u.* 1029
White-Bay, 1011
Wia, *fl.* 1083
Wiapoco, *fl.* 1084
Wigcocomoci, *pr.* 1028
u. 1029
Wikeri, *p.* 1086
Winecoporo, *m. u.* *ib.*
Womiani, *u.* 1083
World in the Moon, 1095

X.

Lib. 1.

Xalon, *fl.* 286
Xaintoigne, *pr.* 209
Xantodor, unum, *u.* 205
Xelua, *u.* 281
Xeres, *u.* 261
Xucar, *fl.* 270, 280

Lib. 2.

Xilocastro, *u.* 578
Xilopolis, *u.* 604

Lib. 3.

Xaindu, *u.* 854
Xamoa, *inſ.* 776
Xanthus, *fl.* 651, 663
Xaoking, *u.* 869
Xensi, *p.* *ibid*
Xicoum, *inſ.* 915
Ximo, *inſ.* *ibid*
Xoana, *u.* 647

Lib. 4.

Xacoras, *p.* 1078
Xagua, *ſ.* 1097
Xaliſco, *pr.* 1041
Xanique, *fl.* 1096
Xaqueſſes, *p.* 1078
Xaragua, *pr.* 1096
Xarages, *p.* 1078
Xeres nova, *u.* 1089
de frontera, *u.* 1042
1053
Xerolybia, *pr.* 923
Xicalapa, *fl.* 1053
Xoa, *pr.* 928
Xylinces, *p.* 974

Y.

Lib. 1.

Yare, *fl.* 313
Yarmouth, 313
552
Yeubade, *fl.* 353
Yeur, *fl.* 205
Yonne, *fl.* 186
York, *pr.* 304, *u.* 306
Youghal, *u.* 345
Your, *fl.* 296
Yſſoire, *u,* 204
Yuica, *inſ. u.* 284
Yurditani, *p.* 264

Lib. 2.

Yaroſlave, *u.* 514
Yas, *u.* 563
Ypres, *u.* 365
Yſſel, *fl.* 363
Yſſeldort, *u.* 389
Yſſellandt, *u.* 388
Yſſelſtein, 383

Lib. 3.

Yalo, *fl.* 867
Yaymans, *p.* 860
Yeka mongul, *pr.* *ibid*
Yor, *pr.* 910

Lib. 4.

Yaguarcoqua, *l.* 1066
Yaos, *pr.* 1083
Yaqui, *fl.* 1096
Yaquim, *fl.* 1041
Yaquimo, *fl pr.* 1096
Yebra, *fl.* 1055
Los Yapes, *fl.* 1047
Yquaan, *fl.* 1077
Yroquois, *p.* 1025
Yſtepeque, *u.* 1053
Ytupuam, *l.* 1077
Yuna, *fl.* 1096
Yxicuyan, *u.* 1045
Yzalcos, *pr.* 1053
Yztapa, *ſ.* *ibid*

Z.

Lib. 1.

Zamora, *u.* 270
Zancle, *u.* 82
Zobia, *u.* 149
Zoelæ, *p.* 257
Zug, *pr.* 164
Zurich, *pr. u. l.* *ibid*

Lib. 2.

Zaberne, *u.* 421
Zaberus, *u.* 560
Zacinthus, *inſ.* 625
Zaculeia, *pr.* 560
Zagabria, *u.* 553, 383
Zanchio, *c.* 580
Zant, *inſ,* 625
Zara, *pr. u.* 554, *inſ,* 556
Zarmigethuſa, *u.* 564
Zarnovia, *u.* 565
Zator, *u.* 455
Zea, *inſ.* 618
Zegedin, *u.* 544
Zegna, *u.* 554
Zel, *u.* 428
Zeland, *inſ.* 384
Zemla nova, *I.* 520
Zendrem, *u.* 566
Zeng, *u.* 552
Zerbenic, *u.* 566
Zerengen, *caſt.* 428
Zeugma, *u.* 560
Zeukerk, *u.* 428
Zigoth, *u.* 544
Zilachi, *u.* 510
Ziton, *ſ.* 602
Zittaw, *u.* 456
Zome, *fl.* 379
Zoroe, *inſ.* 491
Zorza, *u.* 564
Zucconia, *u.* 563
Zuider-Sea, 383
Zuidſen, *pr. u.* 389
Zulp, *u.* 414. *fl.* 551
Zurphen, *pr. u.* 389
Zwinghe, *ſ.* 477

Lib. 3.

Zabæ, *u.* 906, 910
Zabahe, *l.* 841
Zabaſpia, *u.* 850
Zabulon, *pr. u.* 722
Zadris, *u.* 802
Zagathai, *pr.* 849
Zigmais, *u.* 769
Zambilan, *u.* 910
Zamzummims, *p.* 713
Zaphet, *u.* 722
Zaradrus, Zaræ drus, *fl.* 740, 879
Zaratæ, *p.* 851
Zared, *fl.* 710
Zariaſpe, *u.* 831
Zariaſpis, *fl.* *ib.*
Zarval, *u.* 776
Zavolhenſes, *p.* 846
Zebit, *fl. u.* 775
Zebrum, *u.* *ib*
Zeilan, *inſ.* 923
Zela, *u.* 645
Zeman, *u.* 776
Zenobii, *inſ.* 761
Zephiraim, *u.* 646
Zephirium, *c.* 667, 677
Zeugma, *u.* 695
Ziden, *u.* 775
Zigen, *p.* 845
Zigæna, *inſ.* 776
Ziglag, 745
Zinchi, *p.* 845
Zioberis, *fl.* 818, 829
Zion, *m.* 732
Ziph, *u.* 730
Zoar, *u.* *ib.*
Zoramba, *fl.* 821
Zuancheu, *u.* 869
Del Zur, *mare.* 639
Zychi, *p.* 845

Lib. 4.

Zacatecas, *p.* 1042
Zacatula, *u.* 1034. *fl.* 1049
Zagnani, *u.* 983
Zahuate, *fl.* 1049
Zaire, *fl.* 989, 995
Zalaga, *m.* 956
Zale, *u.* 954
Zama, *u.* 946, 983
Zameta, *u.* 982
Zamora, *u.* 1566
Zanfata, *pr.* 974
Zanhaga, *pr.* 968
Zanguebar, *pr.* 989
Zanu, *pr.* 1067
Zanibar, *pr.* 989
Zapoteca, *pr.* 1050
Zaraban, *inſ.* 1051
Zurbi, *fl.* 1061
Zarcaranna, *fl.* 1077
Zaron, *m.* 956
Zarza, *inſ.* 1051
Zazelle, *u.* 984
Zeb, *pr. u.* 967
Zebaco, *inſ.* 1055
Zegzeg, *pr.* 974
Zeila, *u.* 983
Zeltales, *p.* 1052
Zembre, *l.* 989
Zemithus, *u.* 933
Zempoal, *fl. u.* 1049
Zena, *pr.* 1058
Zenu, *fl.* *ib.*
Zephirium, *c.* 932
Baal Zephon, *u.* 936
Zerby, *inſ.* 963
Zeugitana, *pr.* 944
Zilia, *fl.* 951
Zingis extrema, *c.* 984
Zinzoutſa, *u.* 1046
Zioth, *u.* 928
Zipha, *m.* 989
Zoanghi, *p.* 995
Zoaques, *p.* 1052
Zocotara, *u.* 1001
Zuchabarus, *m.* 945
Zuengia, *deſert.* 956
Zuid, *fl.* 1028
Zuni, *p.* 1036
Del Zur, *mare,* 1052, 1092

FINIS.